EDWARD GIBBON, ESQ.
SOME ACCOUNT OF THE LIFE AND WRITINGS

OF

EDWARD GIBBON, ESQ.

It cannot be necessary to inform the admirers of Gibbon from what source the principal facts in the following sketch have been derived. Conscious of the strong claim he had to the respect of his countrymen, our historian thought, without impropriety, that they would be gratified with a more detailed account of his life than could have been given by his friends; and set down to write his personal history at a time when his opinions were matured, and when he was disposed to look back with impartiality on his various studies. In the very interesting volume published by the Right Hon. Lord Sheffield, Mr. Gibbon has delineated his character, analyzed his mind, and recorded his errors and his prejudices with so much apparent candour, that he seems fully entitled to all the confidence which is usually bestowed on the biography that is written by a friend or a stranger. There may be, indeed, some danger lest vanity should multiply works of this description; but as long as human nature continues to be a favourite object of study, the memoirs of such men as Gibbon, written by themselves, must be considered as superior in interest and importance, to all the information which can be collected from friends or companions.

Edward Gibbon was descended from an ancient family of that name in Kent. His grandfather, Edward Gibbon, a citizen of London, was appointed one of the commissioners of customs, under the Tory administration of the last four years of Queen Anne, and was praised by Lord Bolingbroke for his knowledge of commerce and finance. He was elected one of the directors of the unfortunate South Sea Company, in the year 1716, at which time he had acquired an independent fortune of 60,000L., the whole of which he lost when the company failed in 1723. The sum of 10,000L. however, was allowed for his maintenance, and on this foundation he restored another fortune, not much inferior to the first, and secured a part of it in the purchase of landed property. He died in December 1736, at his house at Putney, and by his last will enriched two daughters, at the expense of his son Edward, who had married against his consent.

This son was sent to Cambridge, where, at Emmanuel College, he "passed through a regular course of academic discipline," but left it without a degree, and afterwards travelled. On his return to England, he was chosen, in 1738, member of parliament for the borough of Petersfield, and in 1741 for Southampton. In parliament he joined the party which, after a long contest, finally drew Sir Robert Walpole and his friends from their places. Our author has not concealed, that "in the pursuit of an unpopular minister, he gratified a private revenge against the oppressor of his family in the South Sea persecution." Walpole, however, was not that oppressor, for Mr. Care has clearly proved, that he frequently endeavoured to stem the torrent of parliamentary vengeance, and to moderate the sentiments of the house to terms of moderation.

Edward Gibbon, our illustrious historian, was born at Putney, April 17, 1737. His mother was Judith Portea, the daughter of a merchant of London. He was the eldest of five brothers and a sister, all of whom died in their infancy. He has a reflection on the circumstances of his birth, in which those who are capable of reflection should always indulge; it relates to blessings which a thinking man must contemplate with no common gratitude. "My lot," he says, "might have been that of a slave, a savage, or a peasant: nor can I reflect without pleasure on the bounty of nature, which cast my birth in a free and civilized country, in an age of science and philosophy, in a family of honorable rank, and recently enriched with the gifts of fortune."

In infancy, his constitution was uncommonly feeble, but he was nursed with much tenderness by his maiden aunt, Mrs. Catherine Portea, and received such instruction, during intervals of health, as his years admitted. At the age of seven, he was placed under the care of Mr. John Kirby, the author of Anatomica, a philosophical fiction. In his ninth year, January 1746,
he was sent to a school at Kingston upon Thames, kept by Dr. Woodhouse and his assistant; but even here his studies were frequently interrupted by sickness, nor does he speak with rapture either of his proficiency or of the school itself. In 1747, on his mother's death, he was recalled home, where during a residence of two years, principally under the eye of his affectionate aunt, he appears to have acquired that passion for reading which predominated during the whole of his life.

In 1748, he was entered in Westminster school, of which Dr. John Nicoll was at that time head-master. Within the space of two years, he reached the third form; but his application was so frequently rendered useless by sickness and debility, that it was determined to send him to Bath. Here, and at Putney, he recovered his health so far as to be able to return to his books, and as he approached his sixteenth year, his disorder entirely left him. The frequent interruptions, however, which he had met with, and probably a dread of the combined air of the city of Westminster, had induced his father to place him at Eton in Surrey, in the house of the Rev. Philip Francius, the translator of Horace. But his hopes were again frustrated. Mr. Francius preferred the pleasures of London to the instruction of his pupils, and our scholar, without further preparation, was hurried to Oxford, where, on April 3, 1752, before he had accomplished his fifteenth year, he was matriculated as a gentleman commoner of Magdalen College.

To Oxford, he informs us, he brought "a stock of education that might have puzzled a doctor, and a degree of ignorance of which a school-boy would have been ashamed." During the three last years, although sickness interrupted a regular course of instruction, his readiness for books had increased, and he was permitted to indulge it by ranging over the shelves without plan or design. This indolent appetite subsided by degrees in the historical line, and he pursued with the greatest avidity such historical books as came in his way, gratifying a curiosity of which he could not trace the source, and supplying wants which he could not express. In this course of desultory reading he seems unconsciously to have been led to that particular branch in which he was afterwards to excel. But whatever connection this had with his more distant life, it was by no means favorable to his academical pursuits. He was exceedingly deficient in classical learning, and went to Oxford without either the taste or preparation which could enable him to reap the advantages of academical education. This may probably account for the harshness with which he speaks of the English universities. He informs us that he spent fourteen months at Magdalen College, which proved the most idle and unprofitable of his whole life; but why they were so idle and unprofitable, we cannot learn from his Memoirs. If he still pursued his desultory course of reading, they could not be altogether unprofitable, although they might be idle as to the purposes of academical studies. To the carelessness of his tutors, indeed, he appears to have had some reason to object; but he allows that he was disposed to pass his late hours, and therefore complains, with little justice, that he was not taught what he was disposed to neglect. In his examination of the history of our universities, he would bring us back to the tyranny of priests and monks, but he who cannot distinguish between the priests and monks of a barbarous age, and the clergy of the present period, wants at least one of the qualifications of a historian. It is the more to be regretted that he has recorded his prejudices against the universities, because those prejudices appear to have been curiously in his mature years. This is, at least, suspicious. When he sat down to write his Memoirs, the Memoirs of an eminent and accomplished scholar, he found a blank which is seldom found in the biography of English scholars, the early displays of genius, the undoubted emulation, and the well-earned humanity; he found that he owed no fame to his academical residence, and therefore determined that no fame should be derivable from an university education.

What he first left Magdalen college, he informs us, that his taste for books began to revive; and that "unprovided with original learning, uninformed in the habits of thinking, unskilled in the arts of composition, he resolved to write a book." The title of this first essay was "The Age of Sensibility," the sheets of which he afterwards destroyed. On his return to college, want of advice, experience, and occupation, betrayed him into improperities of conduct, late hours, ill-chosen company, and inconsiderate expense. Industry became afterwards so much a habit with Mr. Gibbon, that we are not to wonder if he wishes to bestow a share of the blame of his youthful ailments on the negligence of his tutors, or the constitution of his college.*

In the frame of his mind, however, there appears to have been originally a considerable proportion of juvenile arrogance and caprice. At the age of sixteen, his reading brought to the religious kind; and after beseeching himself in the errors of the church of Rome, he was converted to its doctrines, if that can be called a conversion which was rather the adoption of certain opinions by a boy, who had never studied those of his own church. This change, in whatever light it may be considered, he imputes principally to the works of Pufendorf, the Jemali, who, in his opinion, had urged all the best arguments in favour of the Roman Catholic religion. Fortified with these, on the 8th of June 1753, he solemnly adjured, what he calls the errors of heresy, before a Catholic priest in London, and immediately transmitted the important event in his father's very labourously written. His father regretted the change, but divulged the secret, and thus rendered his return to Magdalen College impossible. At an advanced age, and when he had learned to treat all religions with

---

* Old Bird: "Although he was often called the father of modern philosophy, I must confess that I have never been able to understand why he should have been thus esteemed."

---

Note: The text is a part of a larger work and includes historical and biographical details about the subject's life and studies.
equal indifference, our author speaks of this conversion with a vain respect; declaiming himself not ashamed to have been entangled by the sophistry which seduced the acute and many understandings of Chillingworth and Bayle. But perhaps resemblance is more close in the transition which, he adds, they made from superstition to scepticism.

His father was now advised to send him for some time to Lausanne in Switzerland, where he was placed, with a moderate allowance, under the care of Mr. Pavillard, a Calvinist minister. Mr. Pavillard was instructed to reclaim his pupil from the errors of popery; but as he could not speak English, nor Mr. Gibbon French, some time elapsed before much conversation of any kind became practicable. When their mutual industry had removed this obstacle, Mr. Pavillard first secured the attention and attachment of his pupil by kindness, then directed his studies into a regular plan, and placed within his power such means of information as might remove the errors into which he had fallen. This judicious method soon proved successful; on Christmas day, 1754, after a full conviction, Mr. Gibbon received the sacrament in the church of Lausanne; and here it was, in informs us, that he suspended his religious enquiries, acquiescing, with implicit belief, in the tenets and mysteries which are adopted by the general consent of Catholics and Protestants.

His advantages, in other respects, were so important during his residence at Lausanne, that here, for the first time, he appears to have commenced the regular process of instruction which laid the foundation of all his future improvements. His thirst for general knowledge returned; and while he was not hindered from gratifying his curiosity in his former demisinterious manner, certain hours were appropriated for certain studies. His reading had now a fixed object, and that attained, he felt the value of the acquisition, and became more reconciled to regularity and system. He opened new stores of learning and taste by acquiring a knowledge of the Greek, Latin, and French languages. Of this proficiency, although his tutor ought not to be robbed of his share of the merit, it is evident that Mr. Gibbon's unceasing industry and laudable activity of knowledge were at this time uncommon, and bespeak a mind capable of the highest attainments, and deserving of the highest honours within the compass of literature.

To mathematics only he showed a reluctance, complying with his father's wishes, for the sake of the principles of that science. At this early age it is probable he did so merely from finding no pleasure in mathematical studies, and nothing to gratify curiosity; but as in his more mature years he determined to undervalue the pursuits which he did not choose to follow, he takes an opportunity to pass a reflection on the utility of mathematics, with which few will probably agree. He accuses this science of a hardening the mind by the habit of rigid demonstration, so destructive of the finer feelings of moral evidence, which must determine the actions and opinions of our lives. So easy is it to find a plausible excuse for neglecting what we want the power or the inclination to follow.

To his classical requirements, while at Lausanne, he added the study of Grotes and Pufendorf, Locke and Montesquieu; and he mentions Pascal's Provincial Letters, La Blétrie's Life of Julian, and Giambono's Civil History of Naples, as having remotely contributed to form the historian of the Roman empire. From Pascal, he tells us, that he learned to manage the weapon of grave and temperate irony, even on subjects of ecclesiastical solemnity; forgetting that irony, in every shape, is beneath the dignity of the historical style, and subjects the historian to the suspicion that his courage and his argument are exhausted. It is more to his credit, that at this time he established a correspondence with several literary characters, to whom he looked for instruction and direction, with Crelier and Brontinger, Gesner and Alloman; and that, by the acetum of his remarks and his zeal for knowledge, he proved himself not unworthy of their confidence. He had an opportunity also of seeing Voltaire, who received him as an English youth, but without any particular notice or distinction. Voltaire dinned gouty around him, by erecting a temporary theatre, on which he performed his own favourite characters; and Mr. Gibbon became so enamoured of the French stage, as to lose much of his veneration for Shakespeare. He was now familiar in some, and acquainted in many families, and his evenings were generally devoted to cards and conversation, either in private parties or more numerous assemblages.

During this alternation of study and pleasure, he became enamoured of Madame Sabina Corbould, a young lady whose personal attractions were embellished by her virtues and talents. His addresses were favoured by her and by her parents, but his father, on being consulted, expressed the utmost reluctance to this strange alliance, and Mr. Gibbon yielded to his pleasure. He married, he tells us, in secrecy hurried by time, and the lady was not unhappy; the afterwards became the wife of the celebrated M. Necker.

In 1756, he was permitted to return to England, after an absence of nearly five years. His father received him with more kindness than he expected, and rejected in the success of his plan of education. During his absence, his father married his second wife, Miss Dorothy Patton, whom his son was prepared to dislike.
but found an amiable and deserving woman.

At home he was left at liberty to consult his taste in the choice of place, company, and amusements; and his excursions were bounded only by the limits of the island, and the measure of his income. He had now reached his twenty-first year; and some faint efforts were made to procure him the employment of secretary to a foreign embassy. His step-mother recommended the study of the law; but the former scheme did not succeed, and the latter he declined. Of his first two years in England, he passed about nine months in London, and the remainder in the country. But London had few charms, except the common ones that can be purchased. His father had no fixed residence there, and no circles into which he might introduce his son. He acquired an intimacy, however, in the house of David Mallet, and by his means was introduced to Lady Hare-

The want of society seems never to have given him much uneasiness; nor does it appear that at any period of his life he knew the misery of having hours which he could not fill up. At his father's house at Burton, near Petersfield in Hampshire, he enjoyed much leisure, and many opportunities of adding to his stock of learning. Books became more and more the source of all his studies and pleasures; and although his father endeavoured to inspire him with a love and knowledge of farming, he could not succeed farther than, occasionally, to obtain his company in such excursions as are usual with country gentlemen.

The leisure he could borrow from his more regular plan of study, was employed in pursuing the works of the best English authors since the Revolution; in hopes that the purity of his own language, corrupted by the long use of a foreign idiom, might be restored. Of Swift and Addison he was particularly recommended by Mallet; he seems to feel the true value, praising Swift for his manly original vigour, and Addison for elegance and mildness. The perfect composition, the nervous language, and well turned periods of Robertson, indicated him with the ambitious hope that he might one day tread in his footsteps. But charmed as he was at this time with Swift and Addison, Robertson and Hume, well as he knew how to appreciate the excellence of their respective styles, he lost sight of every model, when he became a writer of history, and formed a style peculiar to himself.

In 1761, his first publication made its appearance under the title "Essai sur l'étude de la Littérature," a small volume in twelve parts. This had been written at Lausanne, and the whole completed in London. He consulted Dr. Mary, a man of extensive learning and judgment, who encouraged him to publish the work; but this he would probably have delayed for some time, had not his father insisted upon it, thinking that some proof of literary talents might introduce him to public notice. The design of this Essay was to prove, that all the faculties of the mind may be exercised and displayed by the study of ancient literature, in opposition to D'Alembert and others of the French encyclopedists, who contended for that new philosophy that has since produced such miserable consequences. He introduces, however, a variety of topics not immediately connected with this, and evinces that in the study of the belles lettres, and in criticism, his range was far more extensive than could have been expected from his years. His style approaches to that of Voltaire, and is often sententious and flipant; and the best excuse that can be offered for his writing in French, is, that his principal object relates to the literature of that country, with which he seems to court an alliance, and to which he is certain he was more familiar than with that of England. This Essay accordingly was praised in the foreign journals, but attracted very little notice at home, and was soon forgotten.

Of its merits, he speaks in his Memoirs, with a mixture of praise and blame, but he generally predominates, and with justice. Had the French language been then as common in the literary world as it is now, so extraordinary a production from a young man would have raised very high expectations.

About the time when this Essay appeared, Mr. Gibbon was induced to embrace the military profession. He was appointed captain of the South battalion of the Hampshire Militia, and for two years and a half endured " a wandering life of military servitude." It is absurd that the memory of a literary character are enslaved by an incident like this. Mr. Gibbon, as may be expected, could not divert his mind of his old labours, and therefore endeavoured to unite the soldier and the scholar. He studied the art of war in the Memoires Militaires of Quintus Fabius (M. Guichard), while from the discipline and evolutions of a modern battalion, he was acquiring a clearer notion of the plains and the legion *, and what he seems to have valued at its full worth, a more intimate knowledge of the world, and such an increase of acquaintance as made him better known. Thus he could have been in a much longer time, had he regularly passed his summers at Burton and his winters in London. He searched also some hours from his military duties for study; and upon the whole, although he does not look back with much pleasure on this period of his life, he permits the reader to smile at the advantages which the historians of the Roman Empire derived from the captain of the Hampshire grenadiers. At the peace in 1762-3, his regiment was disbanded, and he resumed his studies, the regularity of which had been so much interrupted, that he speaks of now entering on a new plan. After hesitating probably not long, between the mathematics and the Greek language, he gave the preference to the latter, and pursued his reading with vigour.

But whatever he read, or studied, he appears to have read and studied with a view to historical
composition, and he aspired to the character of a historian long before he could fix upon a subject. Such early predilection is not uncommon. It was the case particularly with Dr. Robertson, and probably is always the case with men who have been eminently distinguished in any one branch of science. The time was favourable to Mr. Gibbon's ambition. He was daily witnessing the triumphs of Hume and Robertson, and he probably thought, with a vanity that cannot now be blamed, that a subject only was wanting to form his claim to equal honours.

During his service in the militia, he revolved several subjects for an historical composition; and by the variety of them, we see that he had no particular purpose to serve, and no preconceived theory to which facts were to bend. Among the subjects he has enumerated, we find the expedition of Charles VIII. of France into Italy—the crusade of Richard I.—the barrier wars against John and Henry III.—the history of Edward the Black Prince—the lives, with comparisons, of Henry V. and the emperor Titus—the life of Sir Philip Sidney, and that of the Marquis of Montrose. These were rejected in their turns, but he dwelt with rather more fondness on the life of Sir Walter Raleigh, and when that was discarded, meditated rather the history of the liberty of the Swiss, or that of the republic of Florence under the house of Medici. All these gave way for various reasons, which had more weight with himself than they probably would have had with the public. His reading was even at this time extensive beyond all precedent, and perhaps there is no series of events which he might not have embellished by elegance of narrative or soundness of reflection.

His designs were, however, now interrupted by a visit to the continent, which, according to custom, his father thought necessary to complete the education of an English gentleman. Previous to his departure, he obtained recommendatory letters from Lord Hervey, Horace Walpole, (the late Lord Orford,) Mallet, and the Duke de Sillery, in various persons of distinction in France. In acknowledging the Duke's services, he notes a circumstance which in some degree illustrates his own character, and exhibits that superiority of manners from which he never departed. "The Duke received me civilly, but (perhaps through May's fault) treated me more as a man of letters than as a man of fashion. Congreve and Gray were weak enough to be offended on a similar account; but that Mr. Gibbon, whose sole ambition was to rise to literary fame, should have for a moment prefixed the equivocal character of a man of fashion, is as unaccountable as it is wonderful, that at an advanced period of life he should have recorded the incident."

In France, however, the fame of his Essay had preceded him, and he was gratified by being considered as a man of letters, who wrote for his amusement. Here he mixed in familiar society with D'Alembert, Diderot, Comte De Caylus, the Abbé De Blézerre, Barthelemy, Raynal, D'Anville, Halvetius, and others who were conversed at the head of French literature. After passing fourteen weeks in Paris, he revisited (in the month of May, 1763) his old friends at Lausanne, where he remained nearly a year. Among the occurrences here which he records with most pleasure, is his forming an acquaintance with Mr. Houty, afterwards Lord Sheffield, who did so much honour to his memory, and whom he characterizes as "a friend whose activity in the arbour of youth was always prompted by a benevolent heart, and directed by a strong understanding."

In 1764 he set out for Italy, after having studied the geography and ancient history of the seat of the Roman empire, with such attention as might render his visit profitable. Although he disclaims that enthusiasm which takes fire at every novelty, the sight of Rome appears to have conquered his apathy, and at once fixed the source of his fame. "It was at Rome, on the 15th of October 1764, as he sat musing amidst the ruins of the Capitol, while the bare-footed friars were singing vespers in the temple of Jupiter (now the church of the Zoccolants, or Franciscan friars), that the idea of writing the Decline and Fall of the city first started to his mind." But this appears to have been merely the effect of local emotion. His plan was that confined to the decay of the city, and had he not enlarged his views upon further reflection, we should have had an elegant book of antiquities, but not the history of the empire.

In the month of June, 1765, he arrived at his father's house, and seems to have entered a life which afforded no incident, or room for remark. The five years and a half which intervened between his travels and his father's death in 1770, he informs us, were the portion of his life which he passed with the least enjoyment, and remembered with the least satisfaction. By the resignation of his father, and the death of Sir Thomas Worsley, he was promoted to the rank of major and lieutenant-colonel commandant of his regiment of militia, but was, each year that it was necessary to attend the monthly meeting and exercise, more disgusted with "the inn, the wine, the company, and the thenceome repetition of annual attendance and daily exercise."

Another source of uneasiness arose from reflections on his situation. He belonged to no profession, and had adopted no plan by which he could, like his numerous acquaintance, rise to some degree of consequence. He lamented that he had not, at a proper age, embraced the lucrative pursuits of the law, or of trade, the chances of civil office, or of Indian adventure, or even "the fat lambers of the church." Still,
however, such a mind as his was not formed to be inactive, and a greater portion of his dissatisfaction appears to have arisen from an impatience to acquire fame, and from the extreme length of those projects which the various designs he formed had presented. Yet he contemplated the Decline and Fall of Rome, but at an awful distance; and in the mean time, as something more within his grasp, he resumed his study of the revolutions of Switzerland, so far as to execute the first book of a History. This was read in the following winter (1787) to a literary society of foreigners in London, who did not flatter him by a very favourable opinion; yet it was praised by Hume, who endeavoured only to dissuade him from the use of the French language. His choice of that language was confessedly injudicious; but while he allows that, he has not sufficiently explained what led to the abandonment of a historian writing in any language but his own, or why he should suppose the French language better adapted than the English to the dignity of historical composition. The opinion, however, of the foreign critics, to whom he had submitted this attempt, prevailed over that of Hume, and he renounced the design of continuing it. The manuscript is now in the library of Lord Sheffield.

In 1787 he joined with Mr. Deyverdun, a Swiss gentle-woman then in England, and a man of taste and critical knowledge, to whom he was much attached, in publishing a literary journal in imitation of Dr. Mason's Journal Bruxellois. They entitled it, "Mémoires Littéraires de la Grande Bretagne." Two volumes only of this work were published, and met with very little encouragement. Mr. Gibbon acknowledges having reviewed Lord Lyttelton's History in the first volume. The materials of a third volume were almost completed, when he recommended his coadjutor Deyverdun, to be travelling governor to Sir Richard Worsley; an appointment which terminated the "Mémoires Littéraires."

Mr. Gibbon's next performance was an attack on Dr. Warburton, which he considers for its severity and for its cordiality, while he brings the testimony of some eminent scholars to prove that it was successful and decisive. Warburton's hypothesis on the descent of Esna to hell had long been applauded, and if not universally adopted, had not been unanswered during a space of thirty years. It was the opinion of this learned writer, that the descent to hell is not a false, but a minute scene, which represents the initiation of Esna, in the character of a law-giver, to the Eleusinian mysteries. Mr. Gibbon, on the contrary, in his "Critical Observations on the Sixth Book of the Aenida," 1770, endeavoured to prove, that the ancient law-givers did not invent the mysteries, and that Esna never was invested with the office of law-giver; that there is not one argument, any circumstance, which can meli a tale into allegory, or remove the scene from the lake Avernus to the temple of Ceres; that such a wild supposition is equally injurious to the poet and the man; that if Virgil was not initiated, he could not, if he were, he would not, reveal the secrets of the initiation; and that the anathema of Hermes (sacris qui Ceres sacris veligior, &c.) at once attests his own ignorance and the innocence of his friend. All this might have been argued in decent and respectful language: but Mr. Gibbon avows that his hostility was against the person as well as the hypothesis of "the illustrious and tyrant of the world of literature," and with the acuteness of the critic he therefore determined to join the acrimony of the polemic. In his more advanced years he affects to regret an innucent attack upon one who was no longer able to defend himself; but he is unwilling to part with the reputation to which he thought his pamphlet entitled, or to conceal the praise which ProfessorHeyne bestowed on it.

After the death of his father, in 1770, an event which left him the sole disposal of his time and faculties, he sat down seriously to the composition of his celebrated History. For some years he had revived the subject in his mind, and had read everything with a view to this great undertaking. The following passage from his Memoirs will give some idea of the magnitude of his preparations, and some indication of the positions he wished to establish.

"The classics, as low as Tacitus, the younger Pliny, and Juvenal, were my old and familiar companions. I incessantly plunged into the ocean of the Augustan history; and in the descending series I investigated, with my pen always in my hand, the original records, both Greek and Latin, from Dion Cassius to Ammianus Marcellinus, from the reign of Trajan to the last age of the Western Caesars. The subsidiary rays of medals and inscriptions, of geography and chronology, were thrown on their proper objects; and I applied the collections of Tillmont, whose inimitable accuracy almost assumes the character of genius, to fix and arrange within my reach the loose and scattered atoms of historical information. Through the darkness of the middle ages I explored my way in the annals and antiquities of Italy of the learned Monnari, and diligently compared them with the parallel or transverse lines of Sigonius and Maffei, Burman and Pugi, till I almost grasp the ruin of Rome in the fourteenth century, without suspecting that this final chapter must be attained by the labour of six quarters past twenty years. Among the books which I purchased, the Theodosian Code, with the commentary of James Godfrey, must be gratefully remembered. I used it (and much I used it) as a work of history, rather than of jurisprudence; but in every light it may be considered as a full and copious repository of the political state of the empire in the fourth and fifth centuries. As I believed, and as I still believe, that the propagation of the Gospel, and the triumph of the church, are inseparably connected with the decline of the Roman monarchy, I weighed the canine and effects of the revolution, and contrasted the narratives and apologues of the Christians themselves, with the glance of candid or enmy, which the Pagans have cast on the rising facts. The Jewish and Heathen testimonies, as they are collected and illustrated by Dr. Lardner, directed, without superseding, my
search of the originals; and in an ample dissertation on the miraculous darkness of the passion, I privately drew my conclusions from the silence of an unbelieving age. I have assembled the preparatory studies, directly or indirectly relative to my history; but, in strict equity, they must be spread beyond this period of my life, over the two summers (1771 and 1772) that elapsed between my father's death and my settlement in London.

His election for the borough of Liskeard, in 1775, did not much interrupt the progress of his history, the first volume of which was published Feb. 17, 1776, and received by the public with such acclivity that a second edition in June, and a third soon after, were scarcely adequate to the demand. To use his own language, his book was on every table, and almost on every toilette; the historian was crowned by the taste or fashion of the day. From the ample praises of Dr. Robertson and of Mr. Hume, he appears to have derived more substantial satisfaction. Hume anticipates the objections that would be made to the fifteenth and sixteenth chapters, with his usual arrogance and contempt of religion. "When I heard of your undertaking (which was some time ago), I knew I was a little curious to see how you would extricate yourself from the subject of your two last chapters. I think you have observed a very prudent temperance; but it was impossible to treat the subject so as not to give grounds of suspicion against you, and you may expect that a clamour will arise. This, if anything, will retard your success with the public; for, in every other respect, your work is calculated to be popular. But among many other marks of decline, the prevalence of superstition in England prognosticates the fall of philosophy and the decay of taste; and though is usually be more capable than you to receive them, you will probably find a struggle in your first skeleton.

Mr. Gibbon's reflections on this subject, in his 'Memoirs,' are not very intelligible, unless we consider him as employing irony. He affects not to have believed that the majority of English readers were so foolishly attached even to the name and shadow of Christianity, and not to have foreseen that the plans, the timid, and the prudent would fail, or affect to feel, with such exquisite sensibility. If he had foreseen all this, he concludes to inform us, that "he might have written two successive chapters." He seems to rejoice that "if the voice of the wise and judicious, their friends were disrobed from the power of persecution; and adhered to the resolution of trusting himself and his writings to the censure of the public, until Mr. Davies, of Oxford, presumed to attack, "not the faith, but the fidelity of the historian." He then published his "Vindication," which, he says, "is expressive of less anger than contempt, aimed for a while the busy and idle metropolis." Of his other antagonists he speaks with equal contempt, "A victory over such antagonists was a sufficient humiliation."

It is not, however, quite certain that he obtained this victory; the silence of an author is nearly on a par with the flight of a warrior; and it is evident that the contempt which Mr. Gibbon has so bravely poured on his antagonists, in his 'Memoirs,' has more of passionate resentment than of conscious superiority. Of his first remonstrances and his last feelings, he thus speaks: "Let me frankly own that I was startled at the first discharge of ecclesiastical ordinance; but as soon as I found that this empty noise was mischievous only in the intention, my fear was converted into indignation, and every feeling of indignation or curiosity has long since subsided into pure and placid indifference."

It may not be unuseful to give in this place the titles at least, of the principal writings which his bold and divaginous attack on Christianity called forth. These were, I, "Remarks on the Two last Chapters of Mr. Gibbon's History. In a Letter to a Friend." (See Art. 3.) II, "An Apology for Dr. Watson, D.D. F.R.S. and Regius Professor of Divinity in the University of Cambridge (afterwards Bishop of Llandaff)," i.e. 1776. III, "The History of the Establishment of Christianity, compiled from Jewish and Heathen Authors only. Translated from the French by Professor Bullett, &c." By William Sally, B.D. With Notes by the Translator, and some Studies on Mr. Gibbon's Account of Christianity, and its First Teachers," i.e. 1776. IV, "A Reply to the Reasons of Mr. Gibbon in his History, &c. which seem to affect the Truth of Christianity, but have not been noticed in the Answer which Dr. Watson hath given to that Book." By Smyth Loftus, M.A. Vicar of Coolock," i.e. 1776. V, "Letters on the Prevalence of Christianity, before the Civil Establishment. With Observations on a late History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire. By East Anglence, M.A. Vicar of Croydon," i.e. 1778. VI, "An Examination of the Fifteenth and Sixteenth Chapters of Mr. Gibbon's History, in which his View of the Progress of the Christian Religion is shown to be founded on the Misrepresentation of the Authors he cites, and numerous Instances of his Inaccuracy and Plagiarism are produced." By Henry Edward Davies, B.A. of Hallid College, Oxford," i.e. 1778. VII, "A few Remarks on the History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire. Relative chiefly to the Two last Chapters. By a Gentleman," i.e. 1778. VIII, "Remarks on the Two last Chapters of Mr. Gibbon's History. By James Cleland, D.D. Student of Christ Church, Oxford, and Chaplain to the Lord Bishop of Worcester. The Second Edition enlarged," i.e. 1778. This is a second edition of the anonymous remarks mentioned in the first article, and contains additional remarks by Dr. Randolph, Lady Margaret's Professor of Divinity in the University of Oxford.

Mr. Gibbon's Vindication now appeared under the title of "A Vindication of some Passages in the Fifteenth and Sixteenth Chapters of the History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire. By the Author," i.e. 1779. This was immediately followed by, I, "A Short
Appeal to the Public. By a Gentleman who is particularly addressed in the Postscript of the "Vindication," 3vo. 1777-1780. II. "A Reply to Mr. Gibbon's Vindication, wherein the Charges brought against him in the Examination are confirmed, and further Instances given of his Misrepresentation, Inaccuracy, and Plagiarism." By Henry Edward Davies, B.A., of Balliol College, Oxford, 3vo. 1780. III. "A Reply to Mr. Gibbon's Vindication, &c. containing a Review of the Errors still retained in the Chapters." By James Chidzey, D.D., &c. 3vo. 1782.

The other most considerable works levelled at the history, upon general principles, were: I. "Thoughts on the Nature of the Grand Apostasy, with Reflections and Observations on the Fifteenth Chapter of Mr. Gibbon's History." By Henry Taylor, Reviewer of Crawley, and Vice of Portsmouth in Hampshire, Author of Ben Moreton's Apology for embracing Christianity," 3vo. 1781-2. II. "Gibbon's Account of Christianity considered; together with some Sentences on Hume's Dialogue concerning Natural Religion." By Joseph Milner, A.M., Master of the Grammar School of Kingstone-Hull, 3vo. 1781. III. "Letters to Edward Gibbon, Esq. on the Usefulness of the Authenticity of 7th Verses of St. John's 5th Chapter of the First Epistle of St. John." By George Taylor, A.M., 4to. 1784. IV. "An Inquiry into the Secondary Causes which Mr. Gibbon has assigned for the rapid Growth of Christianity." By Sir David Dalrymple (Lord Haldes), 4to. 1786.

In addition to these antagonists, it may be mentioned that Dr. Priestley endeavoured to provoke Mr. Gibbon to a controversy. The letters which passed between them are reprinted in the Memoirs, and are interesting because highly characteristic of both parties. The literary world has seldom seen so forcible turbulence and sceptical arrogance so ably contrasted. Of all Mr. Gibbon's antagonists, he speaks with respect only of Dr. Watson. Davies, it is evident, gave him most unmeasurably, because he was able to repel but a few of the many charges that writer brought against him. In sound, manly reasoning, clear, perspicuous, and well founded, without an atom of controversial asperity, Sir David Dalrymple's Inquiry excels; and may perhaps be considered as completely proving, what it is of most importance to prove, that Mr. Gibbon's attack on Christianity was unnecessary as to its connection with his history, and is in diametrical contrast to the mode in which he conducted it. The controversy, upon the whole, beneficial; the public was put upon its guard, and through the thin veil of lofty contempt, it is very evident that Mr. Gibbon required that he had made a false estimate of the public opinion on the subject of religion.

The persecution of his history was but soon the result of employment of a different nature, but for which his talents were thought preferable to that of any writer connected with administration. At the request of the ministers of state, he was induced to answer a motion which the French Court had issued against Great Britain, preparatory to war. This Mr. Gibbon ably accomplished in a "Memoir Justificatif," composed in French, which was delivered as a state paper to the courts of Europe. For this service, he was appointed one of the Lords Commissioners of Trade and Plantations, a place worth about 7000 or 8000 a year, the duties of which were not very arduous. His acceptance of this place, he informs us, provoked some of the leaders of the opposition, with whom he had lived in habits of intimacy, and he was unjustly accused of deserting a party in which he had never enlisted. At the general election, however, in 1780, he lost his seat in parliament, the voters of Liskerling being disposed to favour an opposition candidate.

In April, 1781, he published the Second and Third Volumes of his History, which excited as much attention, although less controversy, than his first volume. They were written with more caution, yet with equal elegance, and perhaps more proof of just and profound thinking. But his affection for his work appears to have been too warm to permit him to estimate the reception with which these volumes were honoured. He speaks, in his Memoirs, of what no person acquainted with the literary history of that very eventful period can remember, of "the coldness and even prejudice of the town." It is certain, and it is singing much, that they were received with a degree of eagerness and approbation proportioned to their merit; but two volumes are not so speedily as one, and the promise of a continuation, while it gratified the wishes of his admirers, necessarily suspended that final sentence upon which the fame of the work was ultimately to depend.

Soon after the meeting of the new parliament, he was chosen to a vacancy, he represent the borough of Lymington in Hampshire; but the administration to which he had attached himself was now on its decline, and with its fall, the Board of Trade was abolished, and he was stripped of a convenient salary, after having enjoyed it about three years. Amidst the convulsions of parties which followed the dissolution of Lord North's administration, he adhered to the coalition from a principle of gratitude, but he obtained in return only promises of distant advancement, while he found that an additional income was immediately necessary to enable him to maintain the style of living to which he had been accustomed. And such at the same time was his indifference towards public business, and such his perseverance to pursue his studies, that no additional income would have been acceptable, if earned at the expense of parliamentary attendance, or official duties.

In this dilemma, Mr. Gibbon turned his thoughts once more to his beloved Lassusme. From his earliest knowledge of that country, he
had always cherished a secret wish, that the school of his youth might become the retreat of his declining age, where a moderate fortune would secure the blessings of ease, leisure, and independence. His old friend Mr. Deyverdon was now settled there, an inducement of no small attraction, and to him he communicated his designs. The arrangements of friends are soon adjusted, and Mr. Gibbon, having disposed of all his effects, except his library, bade adieu to England in September, 1783, and arrived at Lausanne nearly twenty years after his second departure.

His reception was such as he expected and wished, and the competitive advantages of his situation are thus stated, nearly in his own words. His personal freedom had been somewhat impaired by the House of Commons, and by the Board of Trade, but he was now delivered from the chain of duty and dependences, from the hopes and fears of political adventure; his sober mind was no longer intoxicated by the fumes of party, and he rejoiced in his escape, as often as he read of the midnight debates, which preceded the dissolution of parliament. His English economy had been that of a solitary bachelor, who might afford some occasional diners. In Switzerland he enjoyed, at every meal, at every hour, the free and pleasant conversation of the friend of his youth; and his daily table was always provided for the reception of one or two extraordinary guests. In London he was lost in the crowd; but he ranked with the first families of Lausanne; and his style of prudent expense enabled him to maintain a fair balance of reciprocal civilities. Instead of a small house between a street and a stable-yard, he occupied a spacious and convenient mansion, connected on the north side with the city, and open, to the south, to a beautiful and boundless horizon.

In this catalogue of advantages, we may perceive somewhat of caprice and weakness, and it may certainly be conjectured, that a man of his internal resources might have discovered situations in England both adapted to the purposes of economy and retirement, and yielding intervals of society. From his subsequent remarks, it appears that he was, either from pride or modesty, averse to the company of his literary associates, and preferred, in his hours of relaxation, that company in which the conversation led, not to discussion, but in the exchange of mutual kindness and entertainments. Mr. Gibbon, perhaps, is not singular; and if the dislike the polemical turn which literary conversation too frequently takes, he is not to be blamed. What was most commendable, however, and what constantly predominated in the mind of Gibbon, was increase of knowledge. From that aim no opulence of station could have diverted him, and whatever his friends or the state might have done for him, his own scheme, the constant wish and prayer of his heart, was, for a situation in which books might be procured, and meditation indulged.

He terminated at Lausanne about a year before he resumed his history, which he concluded in 1787. This event is recorded by him in language which it would be absurd to change, because it is personally characteristic, and of which no change could be an improvement. — I have presumed to mark the moment of conception; I shall now commemorate the hour of my final deliverance. It was on the day, or rather night, of the 27th of June 1787, between the hours of eleven and twelve, that I wrote the last lines of the last page, in a summer-house in my garden. After laying down my pen, I took several turns in a terrace, or covered walk of acacias, which commands a prospect of the country, the lake, and the mountains. The air was temperate, the sky serene, the silver orb of the moon was reflected from the waters, and all nature was silent. I will not dissemble the first emotions of joy on the recovery of my freedom, and, perhaps, the establishment of my fame. But my pride was soon humbled, and a sober melancholy spread over my mind, by the idea that I had taken an everlasting leave of an old and agreeable companion, and that whatever might be the future date of my history, the life of the historian might be short and precarious. I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred in the composition of a work, or at least of five quarto volumes.

My rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to press. Eut not a sheet has been seen by any human eye, excepting those of the author and the printer; the faults and merits are exclusively my own. With the manuscript copy of these volumes he set out from Lausanne, and at the end of a fortnight arrived at the house of his friend Lord Sheffield, with whom he resided during the whole of his stay in England. Having disposed of the copyright to his liberal publisher, the late Mr. Cadell, and the whole having been printed, the day of publication, he informs us, was delayed, that it might coincide with the fiftieth anniversary of his birthday, May 5, 1788, when the double festival was celebrated by a cheerful literary dinner at Mr. Cadell's house. On this occasion some elegant stanza by Mr. Hayley were read, at which Mr. Gibbon added, "I seemed to blush."

The sale of these volumes was rapid, and the whole history was soon reprinted in octavo, in which form it continues to be reprinted and to be considered as one of those books without which no library can be complete.

The author had, however, a more formidable host of critics to encounter than when he first started, and his style underwent a more rigid examination. He tells us himself, that a religious cannot was revived, and the reproach of indecency loudly echoed by the centers of morals. The latter he professes he could never understand. Why he should not understand what was equally obvious to his admirers and to his opponents, and has been contrasted with equal acuity by both, is a question which cannot be answered by supposing Mr. Gibbon defective in the common powers of discernment. Pastori.
ing, however, in his surprise, he offers a vindication of the judicious notes appended to those volumes, which probably never made one convert. He says that all the luminous passages are left in the obscurity of a learned language; but he forgets that Greek and Latin are taught at every school; that sensibility may be effectually censured without being minutely described; and that it is not historically just to exhibit individual vices as a general picture of the manners of an age or people.

In the present to his fourth volume, he announced his approaching return to the neighbourhood of the Lake of Leman; for did his year's visit to England once induce him to alter his resolution, This is not wonderful. It is not where we live a country, but where we have a society, that we wish to reside. Mr. Gibbon had friends in England, but all the endearing ties connected with youthful associations, and all the local situations which render places and things delightful, were to be found only in Switzerland. He set out, accordingly, a few weeks after the publication of his history, and soon regained his habitations, where, he informed us, after a full repast on Homer and Aristophanes, he involved himself in the philosophic mazes of the writings of Plato.

But the happiness he expected in his favourite retreat was considerably lessened by the death of his friend Deyverdun, and the disorder of revolutionary France began to interrupt the general tranquility that had long prevailed in Switzerland. Troops of emigrants flocked to Leman, and brought with them the spirit of political discussion, not guided by reason, but inflamed by passion and prejudice. The language of disappointment on the one hand, and of presumption on the other, marked the rise of two parties, between whom the peaceful enjoyments of nearly three centuries were finally destroyed.

Mr. Gibbon arrived at Lemanor, July 30, 1790. Of his employment during his stay, we have little account. It appears by his correspondence that he genesis himself by writing a part of those Memoirs of his Life, which Lord Sheffield has since given to the public, and he projected a series of biographical portraits of eminent Englishmen from the time of Henry VIII., but in this probably no great progress was made.

He has left the house, however, as long as it was safe, and until the murder of the King of France, and the war in which Great Britain was involved, rendered Switzerland no longer an asylum either for the enthusiast of literature, or the victim of tyranny.

He left Lemanor in May 1791, and arrived in June at Lord Sheffield's house in Downing-street, and soon after settled for the summer, with that nobleman, at Sheffield-place. In October he went to Bath, to pay a visit of affection to Mrs. Gibbon, the widow of his father, and to Althorp, the seat of Lord Spencer, from which he returned to London, and for the first time avowed to his friend, Lord Sheffield, by letter, the cause of the decay of his health, which he had hitherto concealed from every human being, except a servant, although it was a complaint of about thirty-three years standing. This was originally a rupture, which had then produced a hydrocele, and required immediate chirurgical aid. Tapping produced some relief for a time, but his constitution could no longer divert or support the discharge. The last events of his life are thus related by his biographer.

"After I left him, on Tuesday afternoon (Jan. 17, 1794) he saw some company, Lady Lucan and Lady Spencer, and thought himself well enough at night to omit the opium draught which he had been used to take for some time. He slept very indifferently; before nine the next morning he rose, but could not eat his breakfast. However, he appeared tolerably well, yet complained at times of a pain in his stomach. At one o'clock he received a visit of an hour from Madame de Stiva, and at three, his friend Mr. Craufurd, of Auchinraith, (whom he always mentioned with particular regard,) called, and stayed with him till past five o'clock. They talked, as usual, on various subjects; and twenty hours before his death, Mr. Gibbon happened to fall into a conversation, not uncommon with him, on the probable duration of his life. He said, that he thought himself a good life for ten, twelve, or perhaps twenty years. About six, he ate the wing of a chicken, and drank three glasses of Madeira. After dinner he became very uneasy and impatient, complained of a good deal, and appeared so weak that his servant was alarmed. Mr. Gibbon had sent to his friend and relation, Mr. Robert Darrell, whose house was not far distant, desiring to see him, and adding, that he had something particular to say. But, unfortunately, this desired interview never took place.

"During the evening he complained much of his stomach, and of a disposition to vomit. Soon after, he took his opium draught, and went to bed. About ten he complained of much pain, and desired that warm napkins might be applied to his stomach. He almost incessantly expressed a sense of pain till about four o'clock in the morning, when he said he found his stomach much easier. About seven, the servant askedwhether he should send for Mr. Farquhar? He answered, No; that he was as well as he had been the day before. About half past eight, he got out of bed, and said that he was "plus adroit" than he had been for three months past, and got into bed again, without assistance, better than usual. About nine, he said that he would rise. The servant, however, persuaded him to remain in bed till Mr. Farquhar, who was expected at eleven, should come. Till about two he spoke with great facility. Mr. Farquhar came at the time appointed, and he was then visibly dying. When the avant de chambre returned, after attending Mr. Farquhar out of the room, Mr. Gibbon said, "Pouvez-vous me guider?" This was about half-past eleven. At twelve he drank some brandy and water from a toast, and desired his favourite servant to stay with him. These were the last words he pronounced articulately. To the last
he preserved his senses; and when he could no longer speak, his servant having asked a question, he made a sign to show that he understood him. He was quite tranquil, and did not stir; his eyes half shut. About a quarter before one he ceased to breathe. The reader do charitably observe, that Mr. Gibbon did not at any time show the least sign of alarm or apprehension of death; and it does not appear that he ever thought himself in danger, unless his desire to speak to Mr. Darelly, may be considered in that light.

Other reports of Mr. Gibbon's death were circulated at the time; but the above proceeds from an authority which cannot be doubted. The religious public was eager to know the last sentiments of Mr. Gibbon on the important point which constituted his grand defect; but we find that there were no persons near him at his death to whom that was a matter of curiosity; and it appears that he did not think his end approaching until he became incapable of collecting or expressing his thoughts. If he has, therefore, added more to the number of individuals who have died in full possession of their incredulity, let it be remembered that as he saw no danger, he had no room to display the magnanimity which has been ostentatiously ascribed to dying ascetics.

Mr. Gibbon was a man of so much candour, or so incapable of disguise, that his real character may be justly appreciated from the Memoirs he has left behind him. He discloses his sentiments there without the reserve he has put on his more laboured compositions, and has detailed his mental fallings with an ingenuous minuteness which is seldom met with. He candidly confesses to the vanity of an author and the pride of a gentleman; but it is well known that it is the vanity of one of the first authors of modern times, and the pride of a gentleman of amiable manners and high accomplishments. At the same time, it cannot be denied that his anxiety of fame sometimes obscured the lustre of his social qualifications, parted him too widely from his brethren in literature, and led him to speak of his opponents with an arrogance, which, although uniformly characteristic of the cause he supported, was yet unworthy of his general cast of character. His conversation is said to have been rich in various information, communicated in a calm and pleasant manner, yet his warmth of admirers do not give him the praise of excelling in conversation. He seldom brought his knowledge forward, and was more ambitious in company to be thought a man of the world than a scholar. In parliament he never ventured to speak, and that he has lostened his value in the eyes of an administration, that required the frequent and ready support of eloquence.

But although he has disclosed much of his character in his Memoirs, there are some points left unexplained, about which it would be important to be better informed. He appears to be anxious to exhibit the peculiarities of his temper, and the petty habits of his life, and he has given such ample details of the progress of his studies, from the first casual perusal of a book, to the completion of his history, as no scholar can pursue without interest and admiration. But he has not told us much of the progress of opinions in his mind. His conversion to popery is a boyish whim which can never be contemplated in the grave fight in which he has represented it. His return to Protestantism is related with more brevity and obscurity. What passed in his mind during his first years of maturity, we know not; but on the publication of his History, we find him an implacable enemy to Christianity, without the presence of a quarrel, or any previous declaration of hostilities. It has been justly remarked by Professor Porson, that "he often makes where he cannot readily find an occasion to insult our religion, which he hates so cannily, that he might seem to revenge some personal injury." But by what train of reading, or interchange of sentiments, he acquired this inveracity, he has not thought proper to inform us. Left to conjecture, it is not unreasonable for us to suppose, that his intimacy with the French writers on the side of infidelity, and particularly with Helvetius, and the correspondence he carried on with Hume, to whom he looked up with the reverence of a pupil, induced him to think that the more he departed from the Christian belief, the nearer he approached to the perfection of the philosophical character.

As a historian, the universal acknowledgment of the literary world has placed him in the very highest rank; and in that rank, had his talents been equal to his knowledge, if his vast powers of intellect could have descended to simplicity of narrative, he would have stood without a rival. But in all the varied charms of an interesting and pathetic detail, and perhaps in the more important article of fidelity, he is certainly inferior to Robertson, as much as he excels that writer in extent of knowledge, and in the comprehensive grasp of a penetrating mind. If he is likewise superior to Hume in these respects, he falls short of what he has himself so admirably characterized as "the careless infallible beauteous" of that writer. Hume told him very candidly and justly, that his study of the French writers led him into a style more poetical and figurative, and more highly coloured than our language seems to admit of in historical composition. We find, in his correspondence, that during his first residence abroad, he had almost entirely lost his native language, and although he recovered it afterwards, during the twenty years he passed in England, yet his reading was so much confined to French authors, that when he attempted English composition, he every where discovered the turns of his mind and expression by which his mind was indebted. It has been asserted that his style has the appearance of labour, yet I know not how to reconcile much effort with his declaration that the copy sent to the press was the only one he ever wrote. His labour might be bestowed in revolting the subject in his mind, and as his memory was great, he might commit it to paper, without the necessity of addition or correction. By whatever means, he soon formed a style peculiar to himself, a mixture of dignified levity, which, although difficult at first, probably became easy by practice, and even habitual, for
his Memoirs are written in the exact manner of his History, and the most trivial events of his life are related in the same stately periods with which he embellishes the lives of heroes, and the fate of empires. His epistolary correspondence is in general more free from stiffness, and occasionally assumes the gaiety and familiarity suited to this species of composition. But it is unnecessary to dwell on the merits of an author who has been criticised in so many writings of recent date, or to add or diminish the reputation of a work which, with all its defects, must ever be considered as one of the proudest triumphs of English literature.

In 1796, Mr. Gibbon's steady friend, Lord Sheffield, published, in two volumes quarto, his "Miscellaneous Works," with those "Memoirs" composed by himself, to which we have so often referred. This publication contains likewise a large collection of letters written by or to Mr. Gibbon; abstracts of the books he read, with reflections; extracts from the journal of his studies; a collection of his remarks, and detached pieces on different subjects; outlines of his History of the World; a republication of his "Essai sur l'École;" Critical Observations on the Design of the Sixth Book of the Æneid; a dissertation on the subject of l'Homme au Musée de Fer; Mémoire Justificatif pour servir de Réponse à la Cour de France; his Vindication of his History; Antiquities of the House of Brunswick; and an Address to the Public, on the subject of a complete edition of our ancient historians. In 1815, a third volume of "Miscellaneous Works" was published by Lord Sheffield, containing many curious articles, but, upon the whole, less interesting than the former.

Of these miscellanies, his Journal, Abstracts, and Remarks, are the most important and curious in a literary point of view. They contain much valuable criticism, and exhibit such a plan of industry as perhaps few men have ever pursued with equal ardour. His labours approach to what we read of the indefatigable scholars of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries; and they may instruct scholars of all ages, and especially those who rely on the powers of genius only, that no station of permanent eminence can be reached without labour, and that the indulgence and waste of time in which the sons of ardour and imagination indulg, "will make knowledge useless, wit ridiculous, and genius contemptible."
PREFACE.

It is not my intention to detain the reader by expatiating on the variety, or the importance of the subject, which I have undertaken to treat; since the merit of the choice would serve to render the weakness of the execution still more apparent, and still less excusable. But as I have presumed to lay before the Public a first volume only 1 of the History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire, it will perhaps be expected that I should explain, in a few words, the nature and limits of my general plan.

The memorable series of revolutions, which, in the course of about thirteen centuries, gradually undermined, and at length destroyed, the solid fabric of human greatness, may, with some propriety, be divided into the three following periods:

I. The first of these periods may be traced from the age of Trajan and the Antonines, when the Roman monarchy, having attained its full strength and maturity, began to verge towards its decline; and will extend to the subversion of the Western Empire, by the barbarians of Germany and Scythia, the rude ancestors of the most polished nations of modern Europe. This extraordinary revolution, which subjected Rome to the power of a Gothic conqueror, was completed about the beginning of the sixth century.

II. The second period of the Decline and Fall of Rome, may be supposed to commence with the reign of Justinian, who by his laws, as well as by his victories, restored a transient splendour to the Eastern Empire. It will comprehend the invasion of Italy by the Lombards; the conquest of the Asiatic and African provinces by the Arabs, who embraced the religion of Mahomet; the revolt of the Roman people against the feeble princes of Constantinople; and the elevation of Charlemagne, who, in the year eight hundred, established the second, or German Empire of the West.

III. The last and longest of these periods includes about six centuries and a half; from the revival of the Western Empire, till the taking of Constantinople by the Turks, and the extinction of a degenerate race of princes, who continued to assume the titles of Caesar and Augustus, after their dominions were contracted to the limits of a single city; in which the language, as well as manners, of the ancient Romans had been long since forgotten. The writer who should undertake to relate the events of this period, would find himself obliged to enter into the general history of the Crusades, as far as they contributed to the ruin of the Greek Empire; and he would scarcely be able to restrain his curiosity from making some inquiry into the state of the city of Rome, during the darkness and confusion of the middle ages.

As I have ventured, perhaps too hastily, to commit to the press, a work, which, in every sense of the word, deserves the epithet of imperfect, I consider myself as contracting an engagement to finish, most probably in a second volume 2, the first of these memorable periods; and to deliver to the Public, the complete History of the Decline and Fall of Rome, from the age of the Antonines, to the subversion of the Western Empire. With regard to the subsequent periods, though I may entertain some hopes, I dare not presume to give any assurance.

The execution of the extensive plan which I have described, would connect the ancient and modern history of the World; but it would require many years of health, of leisure, and of perseverance.

BENTWOOD STREET,
February 1, 1758.

P. 5. The entire History, which is now published, of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire in the West, amply discloses my engagements with the Public. Perhaps their favourable opinion may encourage me to prosecute a work, which, however laborious it may seem, is the most agreeable occupation of my leisure hours.

BENTWOOD STREET,
March 1, 1759.

An Author easily persuades himself that the public opinion is still favourable to his labours; and I have now embraced the serious resolution of proceeding to the last period of my original design, and of the Roman Empire, the taking of Constantinople by the Turks, in the year one thousand four hundred and fifty-three. The most patient Reader, who computes that three ponderous 3 volumes have been already employed on the events of four centuries, may, perhaps, be alarmed at the long prospect of nine hundred years. But it is not my intention to expatiate with the same minuteness on the whole series of the Byzantine history. At our entrance into this period, the reign of Justinian, and the conquest of the Mahometans, will deserve and claim our attention; and the last age of Constantinople (the Crusades and the Turks) is connected with the revolutions of Modern Europe. From the seventh to the eleventh century, the obscure interval will be supplied by a concise narrative of such facts, as may still appear either interesting or important.

BENTWOOD STREET,
March 1, 1759.
ADVERTISEMENT

TO

THE FIRST OCTAVO EDITION.

The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire is now delivered to the Public in a more convenient form. Some alterations and improvements had presented themselves to my mind, but I was unwilling to injure or offend the purchasers of the preceding editions. The accuracy of the Corrector of the Press has been already tried and approved; and, perhaps, I may stand excused, if, amidst the distractions of a busy winter, I have preferred the pleasures of composition and study, to the minute diligence of revising a former publication.

Reynolds-Street,
April 30, 1785.

Diligence and accuracy are the only merits which an historical writer may ascribe to himself; if any merit indeed can be assumed from the performance of an indispensable duty. I may therefore be allowed to say, that I have carefully examined all the original materials that could illustrate the subject which I had undertook to treat. Should I ever complete the extensive design which has been sketched out in the Preface, I might perhaps conclude it with a critical account of the authors consulted during the progress of the whole work; and however such an attempt might incur the censure of satirists, I am persuaded that it would be susceptible of entertainment, as well as information.

As present I shall content myself with a single observation. The biographers, who, under the reigns of Diocletian and Constantine, composed, or rather compiled, the lives of the Emperors, from Hadrian to the sons of Carus, are usually mentioned under the names of Aelius Spartianus, Julius Capitolinus, Aelius Lampridius, Vulcacius Gallurianus, Trebellius Pollio, and Flavius Vopiscus. But there is so much perplexity in the titles of the MSS. and so many disputes have arisen among the critics (see Fabricius, Biblioth. Latin, l. iii. c. 6.) concerning their number, their names, and their respective property; that for the most part I have quoted them without distinction, under the general and well known title of the Augustan History.
I now discharge my promise, and complete my design, of writing the History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire, both in the West and the East. The whole period extends from the taking of Troyan and the Antiochus, to the taking of Constantinople by Mahomet the Second; and includes a review of the Crusades, and the state of Rome during the middle ages. Since the publication of the first volume, twelve years have elapsed; twelve years, according to my wish, "in health, of leisure, and of "perseverance." I may now congratulate my deliverance from a long and tedious service, and my satisfaction will be pure and perfect, if the public favour should be extended to the conclusion of my work.

It was my first intention to have collected, under one view, the numerous authors, of every age and language, from whom I have derived the materials of this history; and I am still convinced that the apparent estimation would be more than compensated by real use. If I have renounced this idea, if I have declined an undertaking which had obtained the approbation of a master-artist, my excuse may be founded in the extreme difficulty of assigning a proper measure to such a catalogue. A naked list of names and relations would not be satisfactory either to myself or my readers: the characters of the principal Authors of the Roman and Byzantine History have been occasionally connected with the events which they describe; such copious and critical inquiries might indeed deserve, but it would demand an elaborate volume, which might swell by degrees into a general library of historical writers. For the present I shall content myself with removing my serious portraiture, that I have always endeavoured to draw from the fountain-head; that my curiosity, as well as a sense of duty, has always urged me to study the originals; and that, if they have sometimes eluded my search, I have carefully marked the secondary evidences, on whose faith a passage or a fact were reduced to depend.

I shall now revisit the banks of the lake of Lusano, a country which I have known and loved from my early youth. Under a mild government, amidst a bountiful landscape, in a life of leisure and independence, and among a people of easy and elegant manners, I have enjoyed, and may again hope to enjoy, the varied pleasures of retirement and society. But I shall ever glory in the name and character of an Englishman: I am proud of my birth in a free and enlightened country; and the approbation of that country is the best and most honourable reward of my labours. Were I ambitious of any other patron than the Public, I would inscribe this work to a Statesman, who, in a long, a strenuous, and at length an unfortunate administration, had many political opponents, almost without a personal enemy; who has remained in his fall from power, many faithful and disinterested friends; and who, under the pressure of severe infirmity, enjoys the lively vigour of his mind, and the felicity of his incomparable temper. Long Noxan will permit me to express the feelings of friendship in the language of truth: but even truth and friendship should be silent, if he still dispensed the favours of the crown.

In a remote solitude, vanity may still whisper in my ear, that my readers, perhaps, may enquire, whether, in the conclusion of the present work, I am now taking an everlasting farewell. They shall hear all that I know myself; all that I could reveal to the most intimate friend. The motives of action or silence are now equally balanced: nor can I pronounce in my most secret thoughts, on which side the scale will presently. I cannot discern that six simple questions must have tried, and may have exhausted, the indulgence of the Public; that, in the repetition of similar attempts, a successful author has much more to lose than he can hope to gain; that I am now descending into the vale of years; and that the most respectable of my countrymen, the men whom I aspire to imitate, have reserved the pen of history about the same period of their lives. Yet I consider that the annals of ancient and modern times may afford many rich and interesting subjects; that I am still possessed of health and leisure; that by the practice of writing, some skill and facility must be acquired; and that, in the arduous pursuit of truth and knowledge, I am not conscious of decay. To an active mind, indifference is more painful than labour; and the first months of my liberty will be occupied and amused in the...
PREFACE.

extravagance of curiosity and taste. By such temptations, I have been sometimes misled from the rigid duty even of a pleasing and voluntary task: but my time will now be my own; and in the use or abuse of independence, I shall no longer fear my own reproaches or those of my friends. I am fairly entitled to a year of jubilee: next summer and the following winter will rapidly pass away; and experience only can determine whether I shall still prefer the freedom and variety of study to the design and composition of a regular work, which animates, while it confines, the daily application of the Author. Caprice and accident may influence my choice; but the dexterity of self-love will contribute to applaud either active industry, or philosophic repose.

Doverian Library,
May 1, 1799.

P. 8. I shall enumerate this opportunity of introducing two needful remarks, which have not conveniently offered themselves to my notice.
1. As often as I use the definition of beyond the Alps, the Rhine, the Danube, &c. I generally suppose myself at Rome, and afterwards at Constantinople; without observing whether this relative geography may agree with the local, but variable, situation of the reader, or the historian: 2. In proper names of foreign, and especially of Oriental origin, it should be always our aim to express in our English version, a faithful copy of the original. But this rule,
CONTENTS.

CHAP. I.
The Extent and Military Force of the Empire, in the Age of the Antonines.

CHAP. II.
The Union and internal Prosperity of the Roman Empire, in the Age of the Antonines.

CHAP. III.
Of the Constitution of the Roman Empire, in the Age of the Antonines.

A.D. Page

the Emperor. Division of the Provinces between the Emperor and the Senate... 4


Principles of Government. Universal Spirit of Toleration. Of the People. Of Flavius, the Magnificus. In the Provinces... 11

At Rome. Freedom of Rome. Italy... 15

The Divisions. Colonial and Municipal Towns. Division of the Latins and Great Provinces... 24

General Use of both the Greek and Latin Languages. Slaves, Their Treatment... 15

Enfranchisement. Notables. Populaces of the Roman Empire... 16

Clothes and Union. Roman Houses... 17

Of the Roman Roads. Roads for private Emigrants. Example of Herodes Atticus... 28

His Education. Most of the Roman Monuments for public Use; Temples, Theatres; Aqueducts, &c... 28

Number and Greatness of the Cities of the Empire. In Italy. Gaul and Spain. Africa... 10


Artificial Cisterns. General Plan of the City, And Excesses... 20

Building of Cagney; of Gentiles, Synagogues... 22

A.D. Page

12—25 Year. Adoption of the Two Antonines... 26

Character and Reign of Pius. Of Marcus Aurelius, Happiness of the Romans. His provinces. Naturals. Memory of Tiberius, Gallia, Nova, and Britannia... 20

Principles of Government. Between their Tyrants, Homogeneity of the Empire. Knowledge and True Spirit of the Romans. Extent of their Empire left three no Place of Resling... 11

CHAP. IV.
The Cruelty, Folly, and Miserly of Commodus. Death of Pertinax. His Attempt to restore the State. His Assassinaion by the Praetorian Guards... 22

Indulgence of Marcus, in his Wife Faustina; to his Son Commodus, Accusation of the Emperor Commodus... 32


Societies and Fests of Canada. Disastrous Elements of Commodus. His Ignorance and low Spirit... 31

Hunter of Wild Beasts. Commodus displays his skill in the Amphitheatre. Acts as a Gladiateur. His Injuries and Extravagance. His desertion of the Roman Guards... 34

Conspicuity of his Demotion. Death of Commodus. Choice of Pertinax for Emperor. He is acknowledged by the Praetorian Guards... 37

and by the Senate... 37

The Memory of Commodus declined suddenly. Legal Jurisdiction of the Senate over the Emperors. Virtues of Pertinax. He intends to restore the State. His Negotiations... 38

The Popular Government of the People. A Conspiracy perceived. Murder of Pertinax by the Praetorians... 39

CHAP. V.
Public Sale of the Empire in Divine Justice by the Pretorian Guards. Caesar Augustus in Britain. Pretorian Papers in Spain, and Septimius Severus in Britain, declare against the Historian of Pertinax. The Foundation of the Antonine, and the Frugality of its Emperors... 27

Conclusion of Discipline. New Mixture of Government... 39

A.D. Page

Number of the People. The Institution of the Praetorian Guards. Their Camp. Their Kernels and Cords. Their special Chains. They offer the Enemy aide... 39

It is purchased by Julian. Julian is unknown. Helped by the Scagni. Takes Possession of... 40
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A.D.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>214</td>
<td>Quarter between Constantine and Licinius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>215</td>
<td>First Civil War between them. Battle of Chalons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>215–216</td>
<td>Battles of Martin, Treaty of Pavia, Gratian's Law, Laws of Constantine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>232-233</td>
<td>The Gothic War. Second Civil War between Constantine and Licinius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>233</td>
<td>Rome taken by the Huns, Siege of Byzantium, and first victory of Crispus at Chrysopolis. Submission of Maximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>234</td>
<td>Death of Licinius. Return of the Empire</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CHAP. XV.**


- Importance of the Enquiry. Its Difficulties.
- The Empires.
- The Emperors. TheirSeats, Progress, and Influence.
- The Descent considered as the Gods of Antiquity, Manifestations of the Christians for Industry, Commerce.
- Among the Pagans of Greece and Rome.
- The Roman Emperors. Internal Plunderings of the Roman Empire. Wars often converted by their Feuds. III. Ten Thousand Cause. Irritations Power of the primitive Church. Their Truth constant. Its inflexibility defined the examined Period.
- In its primitive Form, and Equality, Institutes of Bishops as Presidents of the Colleges of Presbyters.
- Provincial Councils. Union of the Church.
- Principles of Antiquities. Authority and Constitutions of the Metropolitan Churches.
- Abolition of the Roman Paganism. L catholic Councils and Reformation of the Church.
- Distribution of the Revenue.
- Excommunication. Public Penances.
- Beyond the Limits of the Roman Empire. General Progress of Christianity. Whether the first Christians were more numerous and ignorant. Some Exceptions with regard to them.
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A.D.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>551-552</td>
<td>Date of the Conversion of Constantine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>552</td>
<td>His Pagan Supersession. He protects the Church.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>553-554</td>
<td>Laeber, or Standard of the Cross.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>555</td>
<td>Use and Beauty of the Christian Motto.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>556</td>
<td>Theology and Practice of passive Obedience.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>558</td>
<td>Emperor and Belief of a Miracle. I. The Emperor, or Standard of the Cross.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>559</td>
<td>II. The Dream of Constantine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>562</td>
<td>Delay of his Baptism till the Approach of Death. Proportion of Christianity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>563-564</td>
<td>The Change of the national Religion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>566</td>
<td>II. Ordination of the Clergy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>567</td>
<td>III. Church Law. L. Civil Jurisdiction. V. Spiritual Consensus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>568</td>
<td>VI. Freedom of public Preaching.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>569</td>
<td>VII. Privilege of legislative Assemblies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CHAP. XXI.

### Premise of History — The Scheme of the Dominants.

- The Artos. Controversy — Atticism — Disjunction of the Church and Empire under Constantine and his Sons — Education of Pagans.

### A.D.

| 561 | Roman Controversy |
| 562 | Schism of the Donatists. The Trinitarian Controversy. |
| 563 | | A. F. |
| 564 | The System of Plato. |
| 565 | Roman Schools. Taught in the School of Alexander. |

## CHAP. XXII.

### Romanism of Honorius — The Scheme of the Dominants.

- The Artos. Controversy — Atticism — Disjunction of the Church and Empire under Constantine and his Sons — Education of Pagans.

### A.D.

| 566 | Revulsion by the Apathetic. 1. Honorius. 2. The Germanic Germanid. |
| 567 | Monarchy of the Trinity. Zeal of the Christians. |
| 569 | III. Arianism. |
| 572 | The New Domination of Constantine. His Zeal. |
| 573 | 1. The Heterodox. 2. The Arians and the Orthodox Party. |
| 575 | Character and Advantages of Athanasius. |
| 576 | Persecutions against Athanasius. |
| 577 | The Martyrdom of Eusebius the Latin. His Restitution. His annual Festival. |
| 578 | His Restoration. Remonstrance of Constantine. |
| 579 | 2. The Councils of Nice and Milan. Condemnation of Athanasius. |
| 580 | Exiles. Third Exigences of Athanasius from Alexandria. |
| 582 | Athenian. His Retreat. |
| 583 | Arius Elected. |
| 584 | Hierax. T. Eusebius. |
| 585 | H. Constantine, Cruelty of the Arians. |
| 586 | 1. The Bishops and Priests of the Donatist Consequences. |

## CHAP. XXIII.


### A.D.

| 588 | Their Doctrines. They proclaim Julian Emperor. |
| 589 | His epocha. Of Innocence. His Elyas. |
| 590 | His fourth and Fifth Expeditions beyond the Rhine. Fruition Treaty and Declaration of War. |
| 591 | Julian proposes to attack Constantine. |
| 592 | His March from the Rhine into Illyricum. |
| 593 | His March into Thrace. Hostile Preparations. |
| 594 | Death of Constantine. | Julius' Military Commentaries. |
| 595 | The empire is acknowledged by the whole East. Pro. His civil Government, and, private life. |
| 596 | Reformation of the Palace. |
| 597 | Chamber of Justice. |
| 598 | Establishment of the Inhuman and the Fanatical. |
| 599 | Chamber of Justice. |
| 600 | His Love of Freedom and the Republic. |
| 601 | Care of the German Cities. |
| 602 | Julian, an Oracle and a Judge. His Character. |

## CHAP. XXIII.


### A.D.

| 603 | Religion of Julius. His Education and Apostles. |
| 604 | He extends the Mythology of Paganism. |
| 605 | The Allegories. Theological System of Julius. Foureman of the Philosophers. Injunction and Intemperance of the young. |
| 606 | His religious Illustrations. He writes against Christianity. Universal Toleration. |
| 607 | 1. Florus and Veneration of Julius in the Roman Church. |
| 609 | The Description of Jerusalem. |
| 610 | Pilgrimage. Julian attempts to rebuild the Temple. |
| 611 | The enterprise is abandoned. Perhaps by a predestination. Is it possible. His Zeal andrepid. His Assemblies. |
| 612 | The Protestant Church. |
| 613 | | Partiulity of Julius. He preaches the Christians from teaching Schools. Diagnoses and Oppression of the Christians. |
| 614 | They are condemned. It is the Pagans. The Pagans |
| 615 | The Temple and sacred Graves of Ephesus. |
| 618 | He is massacred by the People. He is murdered. |
| 619 | He is denounced to the People. | Emulation of Athanasius. |
| 620 | He is persued and expelled by Julius. |

## CHAP. XXIV.


### A.D.

| 622 | The Course of Julius. |
| 623 | He raises a force to march against the Persians. His camp provisional. The Consequences of the Success. |
| 624 | Liberations of the People of Antioch. Their Assent to Jupiter. Security of Corn. |
| 625 | Julian compels a battle against Antioch. |
| 626 | 356-359. The Tigris. Passage of the Tigris. |
| 627 | The Consequences of the Tigris.|
| 628 | His Defeat. The Persians. Disunion of the King of Ararat. |
| 629 | Military Preparations. Julian enters the Persian Empire. His March over the Desert of Mesopotamia. |
| 630 | His Success. Description of Assyria. |
| 631 | Invasion of Assyria. Siege of Persis. |
| 632 | Success of the expedition. |
| 633 | His Conduct. Description of Persia. Disunion of the King of Ararat. |
| 634 | Manufactures, Julian enters the Persian Empire. His March over the Desert of Mesopotamia. |
| 635 | His Success. Description of Assyria. |
| 636 | Invasion of Assyria. Siege of Persis. |
| 637 | Success of the expedition. |
| 638 | He transports his Fleet from the Euphrates to the Tigris. Passage of the Tigris. | Victory of the Romans. |
| 639 | Situation, and Obloquy of Julius. He burns his Fleet. |
CHAP. XXXV.


I. INTRODUCTION TO THE MONASTIC LIFE.

Origin of the Rule and the Meditations of St. Antony. — History of the Rule in Egypt, and that of St. Anthony. — It is succeeded by St. Cassian. —

283

CHAP. XXXVI.


284

CHAP. XXXVII.

Formation of God by Attilla. — It is repeated by the Visigoths and the Vandals. — The destruction of the Western Empire. —

285

CHAP. XXXVIII.

CHAPTER LII.


628 Union of the Arabs.
629 Character of their Caliphs. Their Companions.
630 First Divisions of the Caliphate. — Death of Fadl ibn al-Aswad. — The Battle of Cadiz.
635 Battle of Emesa. — Battle of Khaibar. — Battle of Sohak. — Battle of Khaibar.
636 Battle of the Horn. — Battle of the Horn. — Battle of the Horn. — Battle of the Horn.

CHAPTER LIII.


Memorial of the Greek Empire. Works of Constantinople. — Their Importance.
A. D.

A.D. 200. Origin of Lucanices. The Thracians, or Pro-

oters of the Macedonians; and the People of the East Asian

215. General History of the Papacy. State of Popes, and

Preservation of their Power, under the Empire of the Greeks.

225. Manufactures, especially of Silk, transported from Germaina to Sicily.

230. Reversals of the Greeks. Toning Foup and

Luxury of the Emperor.

235. The Palace of Constantinople. Furniture and

Attire.

240. History of Titus of the Imperial Family, Officers of the Palace, the Senate, and the

Army.

245. Establishment of the Empire. Progression of Anac-

thusia, Proconsuls and Atacunxias.

250. Marriage of the Emperor with foreign Nations.

255. Imaginary Law of Constantine. The Habit

of the Empire. The Empire.

260. 568 Otho of Germany. Woodcutter of Rome.

265. Despot of posterity. Conquest of the

270. Military Force of the Greeks, the Saracen,


275. Turks and Christians of the Greeks. The

280. Character and Tactics of the Saracens. The

Franks or Latins.

285. Their Character and Tactics.

290. Olive of the Latin Language. The Greek

Empire. Turkish Conquests, and assert the


300. Revival of Greek Learning.

305. Decay of Taste and Genius. Want of national

310. Emulation.

CHAP. LIV.

Origin of the Emperor. Reception of Em-

imulators. Proconsuls and Atacunxias.

Marriage of the Emperors with foreign Nations.

Imaginary Law of Constantine. The Habit

of the Empire.

568 Otho of Germany. Woodcutter of Rome.

Despot of posterity. Conquest of the

Military Force of the Greeks, the Saracen,


Turks and Christians of the Greeks. The

Character and Tactics of the Saracens. The

Franks or Latins.

Their Character and Tactics.

Olive of the Latin Language. The Greek

Empire. Turkish Conquests, and assert the

Name of Rome. Period of Ignorance.

Revival of Greek Learning.

Decline of Taste and Genius. Want of national

Emulation.

CHAP. LIV.

The Bulgarians — Origin, History, and Settlement of

the Bulgarians. — Their Annexion to the Empire.

CHAP. LV.

The Bulgarians — Origin, History, and Settlement of

the Bulgarians. — Their Annexion to the Empire.

Their History, the Society of their Times and

Wars. They and the Princes.

The Slavians and Magyars.

Their Invasion into Hungary, and Pcirit of Others.

Their Decline. Their Transportation into Asia.

Their Introduction into Italy and France.

1200. The Conversion of the Slavians. Ghetto

and Consequences of the Reformation.

CHAP. LVI.

The Serbs, Poles, and Greeks in Italy. — First Ad-

vancements and Settlement of the Serbs. — Character

CHAP. LVII.

The Turks and Conquest of the West. — First En-

vayments against the Greeks. — The Victory

over the Turks. — Settlement, Establishment and

Empire of the Turks. — Turkish Conquests, and

settlement.

CHAP. LVIII.

The Turks, and Conquests of the Turks. — First En-

vayments against the Greeks. — The Victory

over the Turks. — Settlement, Establishment and

Empire of the Turks. — Turkish Conquests, and

settlement.

CHAP. LVIII.

The Turks, and Conquests of the Turks. — First En-

vayments against the Greeks. — The Victory

over the Turks. — Settlement, Establishment and

Empire of the Turks. — Turkish Conquests, and

settlement.

CHAP. LIX.

The Turks, and Conquests of the Turks. — First En-

vayments against the Greeks. — The Victory

over the Turks. — Settlement, Establishment and

Empire of the Turks. — Turkish Conquests, and

settlement.

CHAP. LX.

The Turks, and Conquests of the Turks. — First En-

vayments against the Greeks. — The Victory

over the Turks. — Settlement, Establishment and

Empire of the Turks. — Turkish Conquests, and

settlement.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A.D.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1415-1418 Great Schism of the West: Conclave</td>
<td>1216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1415-1417 of Rome, Negotiations for Peace and Union</td>
<td>1217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1429-1438 Council of Pisa: Council of Conclave: Election of Martin V, Martin V</td>
<td>1218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1431-1447: Eugene IV, Nicholas V, Later</td>
<td>1219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1452 Revolt of Rome: Last Conquest of a German Emperor: Frederick III: The Statutes and Government of Rome</td>
<td>1220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1455 Consistory of Florence: Last Efforts of the雅思 of Rome</td>
<td>1221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1455 The Popes acquire the absolute Dominium of Rome</td>
<td>1222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1455-1461 The Ecclesiastical Government: Bona</td>
<td>1223</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CHAP. LXXI.**

Prospect of the State of Rome in the Fifteenth Century. - Four Causes of Decay and Destruction. - Example of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A.D.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1460 View and Discourse of Poggio from the Capitoline Hill</td>
<td>1224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1460 His Description of the Ruins: Gradual Decay of Rome</td>
<td>1225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1460 Four Causes of Destruction: I. The Injuries of Nature: Hurricanes and Earthquakes; Fires; Invasions</td>
<td>1226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1460 II. The Instincts of the Barbarians and Christians: III. The Use and Abuse of the Materials</td>
<td>1227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1460 IV. The Domestic Quarrels of the Romans</td>
<td>1228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1460 The Colosseum: New Amphitheatre of Titus</td>
<td>1229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1460 Games of Rome: A Bull-Feast in the Coliseum</td>
<td>1230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1460 Injuries, and Consecration of the Colosseum: Ignorance and Barbarism of the Romans</td>
<td>1231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1460 Restoration and Ornaments of the City</td>
<td>1232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1460 Final Condition</td>
<td>1233</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire.

The Extent and Military Power of the Empire in the Age of the Antonines.

Introduction.

In the second century of the Christian era, the empire of Rome comprised the fairest part of the earth, and the most civilised portion of mankind. The frontiers of that extensive monarchy were guarded by ancient, renowned, and disciplined armies. The gordian, but powerful, influence of laws and manners had gradually cemented the union of the provinces. Their peaceful inhabitants enjoyed and abused the advantages of wealth and luxury. The image of a free constitution was preserved with due reverence; the Roman senate appeared to possess the sovereign authority, and devolved on the emperors all the executive powers of government. During a happy period of more than four score years, the public administration was conducted by the virtues and abilities of Nerva, Trajan, Hadrian, and the two Antonines. It is the design of this, and of the two succeeding chapters, to describe the prosperous condition of their empire; and afterwards, from the death of Marcus Antoninus, to deduce the most important circumstances of its decline and fall; a revolution which will ever be remembered, and is still felt by the nations of the earth.

Military of Augustus.

The principal conquests of the Romans were achieved under the republic; and the emperors, for the most part, were satisfied with preserving those dominions which had been acquired by the policy of the senate, the active emulation of the consuls, and the martial enthusiasm of the people. The first centuries were filled with a rapid succession of triumphs; but it was reserved for Augustus to relinquish the ambitious design of subduing the whole earth, and to introduce a spirit of moderation into the public councils. Inclined to peace by his temper and situation, it was easy for him to discover that Rome, in her present exalted situation, had much less to hope than to fear from the chance of arms; and that, in the prosecution of remote wars, the undertaking became every day more difficult, the event more doubtful, and the possession more precarious, and less beneficial. The experience of Augustus added weight to these salutary reflections, and effectually convinced him that, by the prudent vigour of his counsels, it would be easy to secure every concession on which the safety or the dignity of Rome might require from the most formidable barbarians. Instead of exposing his person and his legions to the arrows of the Parthians, he obtained, by an honourable treaty, the restitution of the standards and prisoners which had been taken in the defeat of Crassus. His generals, in the early part of his reign, attempted the reduction of Ethiopia and Arabia Felix. They marched near a thousand miles to the south of the tropic; but the heat of the climate soon repelled the invaders, and protected the myrrh-like natives of those sequestered regions. The northern countries of Europe scarcely deserved the expense and labour of conquest. The forests and marshes of Germany were filled with a hardy race of barbarians, who despised the life when it was separated from freedom; and though, on the first attack, they seemed to yield to the weight of the Roman power, they soon, by a signal act of despair, regained their independence, and reminded Augustus of the vicissitude of fortunes. On the death of that emperor, his testament was publicly read in the senate. He bequeathed, as a valuable legacy to his successors, the advice of confining the empire within those limits which nature seemed to have placed as its permanent bulwarks and boundaries: on the west the Atlantic ocean; the Rhine and Danube on the north; the Euphrates on the east; and towards the south, the sandy deserts of Arabia and Africa.

Happily for the repose of mankind, the moderate system recommended by the wisdom of Augustus was adopted by the fears and vices of his immediate successors. Engaged in the pursuit of pleasure, or in the exercise of tyranny, the first Caesars seldom devoted themselves to the armies, or to the prosecution of remote wars. The empire was secured within three days' journey of the limits, coterminous, on the sides of their dominions.

1) The empire extended from the Euphrates to the Danube, and from the Adriatic Sea to the Atlantic Ocean. The Roman province of Britain included the island of Great Britain, the island of Ireland, and parts of the coast of Northern France. The range of Roman dominion extended from one end of the earth to the other, and from one extremity to the other. The empire of the Caesars included the greater part of Europe, the greater part of Asia, and a considerable part of Africa. The empire of the Caesars included the greater part of Europe, the greater part of Asia, and a considerable part of Africa. The empire of the Caesars included the greater part of Europe, the greater part of Asia, and a considerable part of Africa. The empire of the Caesars included the greater part of Europe, the greater part of Asia, and a considerable part of Africa.
vices; nor were they disposed to suffer that those triumphs, which their indulgences neglected, should be usurped by the conduct and valour of their lieutenants. The military fame of a subject was considered as an insolent invasion of the Imperial prerogative; and it became the duty, as well as interest, of every Roman general, to guard the frontiers intrusted to his care, without aspiring to conquests which might have proved no less fatal to himself than to the vanquished barbarians. 8

The only conquest which the Roman empire received, during the first century of the Christian era, was the province of Britain. In this single instance the successors of Caesar and Augustus were persuaded to follow the example of the former, rather than the precept of the latter. The proximity of its situation to the heart of Gaul seemed to invite their arms; the pleasing, though doubtful intelligence of a pearl fishery, attracted their aversion; and as Britain was viewed in the light of a distinct and isolated world, the conquest scarcely involved any exception to the general system of continental measures. After a war of about forty years, undertaken by the most stupid, 7 maintained by the most desperate, and terminated by the most timid of all the emperors, the far greater part of the island submitted to the Roman yoke. 8 The various tribes of Britain possessed valour without conduct, and the love of freedom without the spirit of union. They took up arms with savage ferocity; they laid them down, or turned them against each other, with wild incertitude; and while they fought angrily, they were successively subdued. Neither the fortitude of Caracalla, nor the despair of Boadicea, nor the fanaticism of the Druids, could avert the slavery of their country, or resist the steady progress of the Imperial generals, who maintained the national glory, when the throne was disgraced by the weakness, or the vices of mankind. At the very time when Domitian, confined to his palace, felt the terrors which he inspired, his legions, under the command of the virtuous Agricola, defeated the collected force of the Caledonians at the foot of the Grampian hills; and his fleet, venturing to explore an unknown and dangerous navigation, displayed the Roman arms round every part of the island. The conquest of Britain was considered as already achieved; and it was the design of Agricola to complete and ensure his success by the easy reduction of Ireland, for which, in his opinion, one legion and a few auxiliaries were sufficient. 9 The western Isle might be improved into a valuable possession, and the Britons would yield their chains with the less reluctance, if the prospect and example of freedom were on every side removed from before their eyes. But the superior merit of Agricola soon occasioned his removal from the government of Britain; and for ever extinguished this rational, though extensive scheme of conquest. Before his departure, the prudent general had provided for security, as well as for dominion. He had observed, that the island is almost divided into two equal parts by the opposite gulfs, or, as they are now called, the Firths of Scotland. Across the narrow interval of about forty miles he had drawn a line of military stations, which was afterwards fortified in the reign of Antoninus Pius, by a turf rampart erected on foundations of stone. 10 This wall of Antoninus, as a small distance beyond the modern cities of Edinburgh and Glasgow, was fixed as the limit of the Roman province. The native Caledonians preserved in the northern extremity of the island their wild independence, for which they were not less insatiable to their poverty than to their valour. Their incursions were frequently repelled and chastised; but their country was never subdued. 11 The masters of the finest and most wealthy climates of the globe turned with contempt from gloomy hills assailed by the winter tempest, from lakes concealed in a close mist, and from cold and lonely heaths, over which the deer of the forest were chased by a troop of naked barbarians. 12

Such was the state of the Roman frontiers, and such the maxims of Imperial policy, from the death of Augustus to the accession of Trajan. Their virtuous and active prince had received the education of a soldier; and possessed the talents of a general. 13 The peaceful system of his predecessors was interrupted by scenes of war, and conquest; and the legions, after a long interval, beheld a military emperor at their head. The first exploits of Trajan were against the Dacians, the most warlike of men, who dwelt beyond the Danube, and who, during the reign of Domitian, had invaded with impunity the majesty of Rome. 14 To the strength and descent of barbarians, they added a contempt for life, which was derived from a warm persuasion of the immortality and transmigration of the soul. 15 Decius, the Dacian king, approved himself a rival not unworthy of Trajan; nor did he despair of his own and the public fortune till, by the confession of his enemies, he had exhausted every resource both of policy and valour. 16 This memorable war, with a very
short suspension of hostilities, lasted five years; and as the emperor could exert, without control, the whole force of the state, it was terminated by an absolute submission of the barbarians. The new province of Dacia, which formed a second exception to the concept of Augustus, was about thirteen hundred miles in circumference. Its natural boundaries were the Niester, the Tisza or Tisza, the Lower Danube, and the Este river. The vestiges of a military road may still be traced from the banks of the Danube to the neighborhood of Bender, a place famous in modern history, and the actual frontier of the Turkish and Russian empires.

Trajan was ambitious of fame; and long as mankind shall continue to breathe, more liberal applause on their destroyers than on their benefactors, there is some foundation for the claim. His spirit of military glory will ever be the vice of the most exalted characters. The praises of Alexander, transmitted by a succession of poets and historians, had kindled a dangerous emulation in the mind of Trajan. Like him, the Roman emperor undertook an expedition against the nations of the east, but he lamented with a sigh, that his advanced age scarcely left him any hope of attaining the renown of the son of Philip. Yet the success of Trajan, however transient, was rapid and splendid. The degenerate Parthians, broken by intestine discord, fled before his arms. He descended the river Tigris in triumph, from the mountains of Armenia to the Persian Gulf. He enjoyed the honour of being the first, as he was the last, of the Roman generals, who ever navigated that remote sea. His hosts ravaged the coasts of Arabia; and Trajan vainly flattered himself that he was approaching towards the confines of India. Every day the astonished senate received the intelligence of new names and new nations, that acknowledged his sway. They were informed that the kings of Bosphorus, Colchis, Iberia, Albania, Osroene, and even the Parthian monarch himself, had accepted their diadems from the hands of the emperor; that the independent tribes of the Median and Caucasian hills had implored his protection; and that the rich countries of Armenia, Mesopotamia, and Assyria, were reduced into the state of provinces. But the death of Trajan soon clouded the splendid prospect; and it was justly to be dreaded, that so many distant nations would throw off the uncustomed yoke, when they were no longer restrained by the powerful hand which had imposed it.

It was an ancient tradition, that when the Capitol was founded by one of the Roman kings, the god of horses, Terminus (who presided over boundaries, and was represented according to the fashion of that age by a large stone) alone, among all the inferior deities, refused to yield his place to Jupiter himself. A favourable inference was drawn from his obstinacy, which was interpreted by the augurs as a sure presage that the boundaries of the Roman power would never recede. During many ages, the prediction, as it is usual, contributed to its own accomplishment. But though Terminus had resisted the majesty of Jupiter, he submitted to the authority of the emperor Hadrian. The designation of all the eastern conquests of Trajan was the first measure of his reign. He restored to the Parthians the election of an independent sovereign, withdrew the Roman garrisons from the provinces of Armenia, Mesopotamia, and Assyria; and, in compliance with the request of Augustus, once more established the Euphrates as the frontier of the empire. Cenomanc, which armiges the public actions and the private fortunes of princes, has ascended to envy, a conduct which might be attributed to the prudens and moderation of Hadrian. The various character of that emperor, capable, by turns, of the meekest and the most generous sentiments, may afford some colour to the suspicion. It was, however, scarcely in his power to place the superiority of his successor in a more conspicuous light, than by thus confessing himself unequal to the task of defending the conquests of Trajan.

The martial and ambitious spirit of Trajan formed a very singular contrast with the moderation of his successor. The restless activity of Hadrian was not less remarkable, when compared with the gentle repose of Antoninus Pius. The life of the former was almost a perpetual journey; and as he possessed the various talents of the soldier, the statesman, and the scholar, he gratified his curiosity in the discharge of his duty. Careless of the difference of seasons and of climates, he marched on foot, and bare-headed, over the snows of Caledonia, and the sultry plains of the Upper Egypt; nor was there a province of the empire which, in the course of his reign, was not honoured with the presence of the monarch. But the tranquil life of Antoninus Pius was spent in the bosom of Italy; and, during the twenty-three years that he directed the public administration, the longest journeys of that amiable prince extended no further than from his palace in Rome, to the retirement of his Lavinian villa.

Notwithstanding this difference in their personal conduct, the general system of Augustus was equally adopted and uniformly pursued by Hadrian and by the two Antonines. They persevered in the design of maintaining the dignity of the empire, without attempting to enlarge its limits. By every honourable expedient they
invited the friendship of the barbarians; and undetermined to convince mankind, that the Roman power, raised above the temptation of conquest, was actuated only by the love of order and justice. During a long period of forty-three years their virtuous labours were crowned with success; and if we except a few slight hostilities that served to exercise the legions of the frontier, the vigor of Hirtan and Antoninus Pius offered the fair prospect of universal peace. The Roman name was revered among the most remote nations of the earth. The fiercest barbarians frequently submitted their difficulties to the arbitration of the emperor; and we are informed by a contemporary historian, that he had seen ambassadors who were refused the honour which they came to solicit, of being admitted into the rank of subjects. 16

The terror of the Roman arms added weight and dignity to the majesty of the empire. They preserved peace by a constant preparation for war; and while justice regulated their conduct, they announced the nature of their designs so clearly, that they were as little disposed to endure as to offer an injury. The military strength, which had been sufficient for Hadrian and the elder Antoninus to display, was exerted against the Parthians and the Germans by the Emperor Marcus. The hostilities of the barbarians provoked the resentment of that philosophic monarch, and in the prosecution of a just defence, Marcus and his generals obtained many signal victories, both on the Euphrates, and on the Danube. 17 The military establishment of the Roman empire, which thus secured either its tranquillity or its success, will now become the proper and important object of our attention.

In the purer ages of the communions of the Roman empire, the use of arms was reserved for those ranks of citizens who had a country to love, a property to defend, and some share in enacting these laws, which it was their interest, as well as duty, to maintain. But in proportion as the public freedom was lost in extent of conquest, war was gradually improved into an art, and degraded into a trade. 18 The legions themselves, even at the time when they were recruited in the most distant provinces, were supposed to consist of Roman citizens. That distinction was generally considered, either as a legal qualification, or as a proper recompense for the soldier; but a more serious regard was paid to the essential merit of age, strength, and military stature. 19

In all ages, a just preference was given to the climates of the North, those of the South, the race of men born to the exercises of arms was sought for in the country rather than in cities: and it was very reasonably presumed, that the hardy occupations of smiths, carpenters, and huntsmen, would supply more vigour and resolution, than the servile trades which are employed in the service of luxury. 20 After every qualification of property had been lost, while, the armies of the Roman emperors were still commanded, for the most part, by officers of a liberal birth and education; but the common soldiers, like the mercenary troops of modern Europe, were drawn from the moment, and very frequently from the most profligate, of mankind.

Thamess.

That public virtue which among the ancients was denominated patriotism, is derived from a strong sense of our own interest in the preservation and prosperity of the free government of which we are members. Such a sentiment, which had rendered the safety of the republic almost invincible, could not but have a very powerful impression on the military service of a despotic prince; and it becomes necessary to supply that defect by other means of a different, but not less felicitous nature, honour and religion. The present, or modern, imputed to the useful prej udice that he was accustomed to the most digested polish of arms, in which his rank and reputation depended on his own valour, and that, although the service of a private soldier must often escape the notice of fame, his own behaviour might sometimes confer glory or disgrace on the company, the legion, or even the army, to whose honours he was attached. On his first entrance into the service, an oath was administered to him, with every circumstance of solemnity. He promised never to desert his standard, to submit his own will to the commands of his leader, and to sacrifice his life for the safety of the emperor and the empire. 21 The attachment of the Roman troopers to their standard was inspired by the united influence of religion and of honour.

The golden eagle, which glittered in the front of the legion, was the object of their fondest devotion; but not was it esteemed less impious, than it was ignominious, to abandon that sacred emblem in the hour of danger. 22 These motives, which derived their strength from the imaginations, were enforced by fears and hopes of a more substantial kind. Regular pay, occasional donatives, and a stated recompense, after the appointed time of service, allured the services of the military life, 23 whilst, on the other hand, it was impossible for cowardice or dis-
obedience to escape the severest punishment. The centurions were authorized to chastise with blows, the generals had a right to punish with death, and it was an inflexible maxim of Roman discipline, that a good soldier should dread his officer far more than the enemy. From such terrible acts did the valour of the Imperial troops receive a degree of firmness and docility, unattainable by the impetuous and irregular passions of barbarians.

**Roman.**

And yet so sensible were the Romans of the imperfection of valour without skill and practice, that, in their language, the name of an army was borrowed from the word which signified exercise. Military exercises were the important and unremitting object of their discipline. The recruits and young soldiers were constantly trained both in the morning and in the evening, nor was age or knowledge allowed to excuse the veterans from the daily repetition of what they had completely learnt. Large sheds were erected in the winter-quarters of the troops, that their useful labours might not receive any interruption from the most tempestuous weather; and it was carefully observed, that the arms destined to such imitation of war, should be of double the weight which was required in real action. It is not the purpose of this work to enter into any minute description of the Roman exercises. We shall only remark, that they comprehended whatever could add strength to the body, activity to the limbs, or grace to the motions. The soldiers were diligently instructed to march, to run, to leap, to swim, to carry heavy burdens, to handle every species of arms that was used either for offence or for defence, either in distant engagement or in a closer onset; to form a variety of evolutions; and to move to the sound of flutes, in the Pyrrhic or martial dance. In the midst of peace, the Roman troops familiarized themselves with the practice of war; and it is justly remarked by an ancient historian who led front against them, that the effluence of blood was the only circumstance which distinguished a field of battle from a field of exercise. It was the policy of the ablest generals, and even of the superiors themselves, to encourage these military studies by their presence and example; and we are informed that Hadrian, as well as Trajan, frequently accompanied, in order to instruct the inexperienced soldiers, to reward the diligent, and sometimes to discourse with them the praise of superior strength or activity. Under the reign of those princes, the science of tactics was cultivated with success; and as long as the empire retained any vigour, their military instructions were respected as the most perfect model of Roman discipline.

Nine centuries of war had gradually intro-duced into the service many after-inventions and improvements. The legions, composed of warlike nations, as they are described by Polybius, in the time of the Punic wars, differed very materially from those which achieved the victories of Caesar, or defeated the monarchy of Hadrian and the Antonines. The constitution of the Imperial legion may be described in a few words. The heavy-armed infantry, which composed its principal strength, was divided into ten cohorts and fifty-five companies, under the orders of a correspondent number of tribunes and centurions. The first cohort, which always claimed the post of honour and the custody of the eagle, was formed of eleven hundred and fifty soldiers, the most approved for valour and fidelity. The remaining nine cohorts consisted each of five hundred and fifty-five; and the whole body of legionary infantry amounted to six thousand one hundred men. Their arms were uniform, and admirably adapted to the nature of the service: an open helmet, with a lofty crest; a breast-plate, or cest of mail; greaves on their legs, and an ample buckler on their left arm. The buckler was of an oblong and concave figure, four feet in length, and two and a half in breadth, frames of a light wood, covered with a bull's hide, and strongly guarded with plates of brass. Besides a lighter spear, the legionary soldier grasped in his right hand the formidable gladius, a formidable sword, whose common length was about six feet, and which was terminated by a narrow triangular point of steel of eighteen inches. This instrument was indeed much inferior to our modern fies-arms; it was exhausted by a single discharge, at the distance of only ten or twelve paces; yet when it was launched by a firm and skilful hand, there was not any cavalry that durst venture within its reach, nor any shield or corset that could sustain the impetuosity of its weight. As soon as the Roman had sighted his piastra, he drew his sword, and rushed forwards to close with the enemy. His sword was a short well-tempered Spanish blade, that carried a double edge, and was alike suited to the purpose of striking or of pushing; but the soldier was always instructed, in order to the latter use of his weapon, as his own body remained less exposed, whilst he inflicted a more dangerous wound on his adversary. The legion was usually drawn up eight deep; and the regular distance of three feet was left between the files as well as ranks. A body of troops destined to preserve this open order, as a long front and a right charge, found themselves exposed to execute every disposition which the circumstances of war, or the skill of their leaders, might suggest. The soldier possessed a free space for his arms and motions, and sufficient
dependant princes and communities, dispersed round the fronsiers, were permitted for a while to hold their freedom and security by the tenure of military service. Even select troops of hostile barbarians were frequently compelled or persuaded to consume their dangerous valor in remote climates, and for the benefit of the state. All these were included under the general name of auxiliaries; and hovewser they might vary, according to the difference of times and circumstances, their numbers were seldom much inferior to those of the legions themselves. Among the auxiliaries, the bravest and most faithful bands were placed under the command of prefects and centurions, and severely trained in the arts of Roman discipline; but the far greater part retained those arms to which the nature of their country, or their early habits of life, more particularly adapted them. By this institution each legion, to whom a certain proportion of auxiliaries was allotted, contained within itself every species of lighter troops, and of missile weapons; and was capable of encountering every nation, with the advantages of its respective arms and discipline. Nor was the legion institute of what, in modern language, would be styled a train of artillery. It consisted in ten military engines of the largest, and fifty-five of a smaller size; but all of which, either in an oblique or horizontal manner, discharged stones and darts with irresistible violence.

The army of a Roman legim presented the appearance of a fortified city. As soon as the space was marked out, the pioneers carefully levelled the ground, and removed every impediment that might interrupt its perfect regularity. Its form was an exact quadrangle; and we may calculate, that a square of about seven hundred yards was sufficient for the encampment of twenty thousand Romans; though a similar number of our own troops would expose to the enemy a front of more than twice that extent. In the midst of the camp, the praetorium, or general's quarters, rose above the others; the cavalry, the infantry, and the auxiliaries, occupied their respective stations; the streets were broad, and perfectly straight, and a vacant space of two hundred feet was left on all sides, between the tents and the rampart. The rampart itself was usually twelve feet high, armed with a line of strong and intricate palisades, and defended by a ditch of twelve feet in depth as well as in breadth. This important labour was performed by the hands of the legionaries themselves; to whom the use

intervals were allowed, through which seasonable reinforcements might be introduced to the relief of the exhausted combatants. The tactics of the Greeks and Macedonians were formed on very different principles. The strength of the phalangex depended on sixteen ranks of long pikes, wedged together in the closest array. But it was soon discovered by reflection, as well as by the event, that the strength of the phalangex was unable to contend with the activity of the legion. The cavalry, without which the force of the legim would have remained imperfect, was divided into ten troops or squadrons; the first, as the companion of the first cohort, consisted of an hundred and thirty-two men; whilst each of the other nine amounted only to sixty-six. The entire establishment formed a regiment, if we may use the modern expression, of seven hundred and twenty-six horse, naturally connected with its respective legion, but occasionally separated to act in the line, and to compose a part of the wings of the army. The cavalry of the empire was no longer composed, like that of the ancient republic, of the noblest youths of Rome and Italy, who, by performing their military service on horseback, prepared themselves for the offices of censor and consul; and solicited, by deeds of valour, the future suffrages of their countrymen. Since the alteration of manners and government, the most wealthy of the equestrian order were engaged in the administration of justice, and of the revenues; and whenever they embraced the profession of arms, they were immediately introduced with a troop of horse, or a cohort of foot. Trajan and Hadrian formed their cavalry from the same provinces, and the same class of their subjects, which recruited the ranks of the legion. The javelin and the long sword were their principal weapons of offence. The use of lances and of iron masses they seem to have borrowed from the barbarians.

The safety and honour of the empire was principally intrusted to the legions; but the policy of Rome condoned the adoption of an useful instrument of war. Considerable levies were regularly made among the provincials, who had not yet deserved the honourable distinction of Romans.
of the spade and the pick-axe was no less familiar than that of the sword or pike. Active
valour may often be the present of nature; but such patient diligence can be the fruit of
habit and discipline.

March.

Whenever the trumpet gave the signal of departure, the camp was
almost instantly broke up, and the troops fell into their ranks without delay or confusion.
Besides their arms, which the legions scarcely considered as an encumbrance, they were laden
with their kitchen furniture, the instruments of fortification, and the provision of many days.
Under this weight, which would oppress the felicity of a modern soldier, they were trained
by a regular step to advance, in about six hours, near twenty miles. On the appearance of an
g Energy, they threw aside their baggage, and by easy and rapid evolutions converted the column
of march into an order of battle. The slingers and archers skirmished in the front; the aux-
iliaries formed the first line, and were seconded or sustained by the strength of the legions; the
cavalry covered the flanks, and the military engines were placed in the rear.

Such were the arts of war, by which the Roman emperors defended their extensive empire and
preserved a military spirit, as a time when every other virtue was approved by human 
settlements. If, in the consideration of their armies, we pass from their discipline to their
numbers, we shall not find it hard to define them with any tolerable accuracy. We may
compute, however, that the legions, which was itself a body of six thousand eight hundred
and thirty-one Romans, might, with its attendant auxiliaries, amount to about twelve thousand
five hundred men. The peace establishment of
Hadrian and his successors was composed of no
less than thirty of these formidable brigades; and most probably formed a standing force of
three hundred and seventy-five thousand men. Instead of being confined within the walls of
fortified cities, which the Romans considered as the refuge of weakness or pusillanimity, the
legions were stationed on the banks of the great rivers, and along the frontiers of the bar-
lains. As their stations, for the most part, remained fixed and permanent, we may venture to
enumerate the distribution of the troops. Three
legions were sufficient for Britain. The principal
strength lay upon the Rhine and Danube, and consisted of sixteen legions, in the following propor-
tions: two in the Lower, and three in the
Upper Germany; one in Rhetia, one in Nor-
icum, four in Pannonia, three in Moesia, and two in Dacia. The defence of the Euphrates
was intrusted to eight legions, six of whom were
posted in Syria, and the other two in Cappado-
cia. With regard to Egypt, Africa, and Spain,
as they were far removed from any important
scene of war, a single legion maintained the
domestic tranquillity of each of these great provinces. Even Italy was not left destitute
of a military force. About twenty thousand chosen
soldiers, distinguished by the titles of City Coh-
orts and Pontifical Guards, watched over the
safety of the metropolis and the capital. As the
authors of almost every revolution that disturbed
the empire, the Pontifical army was, very soon, and
very loudly, demanded our attention; but in their
arms and institutions we cannot find any circum-
stance which discriminated them from the legions,
unless it were a more splendid appearance, and a
less rigid discipline.
THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. II

The ancients, the Greeks, and the Romans, the most liberal computation will not allow us to fix the limits of the whole empire by sea and by land at more than four hundred and fifty thousand miles; military power, which, however formidable it may seem, was equalled by a monarch of the last century, whose kingdom was confined within a single province of the Roman empire.

We have attempted to explain the spirit which moderated, and the strength which supported, the power of Habsburg and the Huguenots. We shall now endeavour, with clearness and precision, to describe the provinces once united under their sway, but, at present, divided into so many independent and hostile states.

Spain, the western extremity of the empire of Europe, and of the ancient world, has, in every age, invariably preserved the same natural limits; the Pyrenean mountains, the Mediterranean, and the Atlantic Ocean. The great peninsula, at present so unusually divided between two sovereigns, was distributed by Augustus into three provinces, Lusitania, Bética, and Tarraconensis. The kingdom of Portugal now fills the place of the warlike country of the Lusitani; and the last remained by the former on the side of the west, is compensated by an accession of territory towards the north. The confines of Grenada and Andalusia correspond with those of ancient Basile. The remainder of Spain, Galicia, and the Asturias, Biscay and Navarre, Leon, and the two Castile, Murcia, Valencia, Catalonia, and Aragon, all contributed to form the third and most considerable of the Roman governments, which, from the name of its capital, was styled the province of Tarraconense. Of the native barbarians, the Celtiberians were the most powerful, as the Cantabrians and Asturians proved the most obstinate. Confident in the strength of their mountains, they were the last who submitted to the arms of Rome, and the first who threw off the yoke of the Arabs.

Ancient Gaul, as it contained the whole agency between the Pyrenees, the Alps, the Rhine, and the Ocean, was of greater extent than modern France. To the dominions of its powerful monarchy with its recent acquisitions of Alpes and Aquitaine, we must add the duchy of Savoy, the cantons of Switzerland, the four provinces of the Rhine, and the territories of Liege, Luxembourg, Hainaut, Flanders, and Brabant. When Augustus gave laws to the conquerors of his father, he introduced a division of Gaul, equally adapted to the progress of the legions, to the course of the rivers, and to the principal national distinctions, which had comprehended above an hundred independent states. The province of the Mediterranean, Langue-d'Occ, Provence, and Dauphine, received their provincial appellations from the colony of Narbonne. The government of Aquitaine was extended from the Pyrenees to the Loire. The country between the Loire and the Seine was styled the Celtic Gaul, and soon borrowed a new denomination from the celebrated colony of Lugdunum, or Lyons. The Belgic lay beyond the Seine, and in more ancient times had been bounded only by the Rhine; but a little before the age of Caesar, the Germans, abusing their superiority of valour, had occupied a considerable portion of the Belgic territory. The Roman conquerors very easily continued so flattering a circumstance, and the Gallic frontier of the Rhine, from Belfort to Lyon, received the populous nations of the Upper and the Lower Germany. Such, under the reign of the Antonines, were the six provinces of Gaul; the Narbonense, Aquitaine, the Celte, or Lyonnaise, the Belgic, and the two Germaniae.

We have already had occasion to mention the conquest of Britain, and to fix the boundary of the Roman province in this island. It comprehended all England, Wales, and the Lowlands of Scotland, as far as the Friths of Dumbarton and Edinburgh. Before Britain had lost her freedom, the country was irregularly divided between thirty tribes of barbarians, of whom the most considerable were the Belgae, in the West, the Brigantes in the North, the Silures in South Wales, and the Iceni in Norfolk and Suffolk. As far as we can either trace or credit the resemblance of manners and language, Spain, Gaul, and Britain were peopled by the same hardy race of savages. Before they yielded to the Roman arms, they often disputed the field, and often renewed the contest. After their submission, they constituted the western division of the European provinces, which extended from the columns of Hercules to the wall of Antoninus, and from the mouth of the Tagus to the sources of the Rhine and Danube.

Before the Roman conquest, the country which is now called Lombardy was not considered as a part of Italy. It had been occupied by a powerful colony of Gauls, who, settling themselves along the banks of the Po, from Pannonim to Rhamagna, carried their arms and diffused their name from the Alps to the Apennines. The Ligurians dwelt on the rocky coast which now forms the republic of Genoa. Venetia was yet unborn; but the territories of that state, which lie to the east of the Adige, were inhabited by the Venetians. The middle part of the peninsula that now comprises the duchy of Tuscany and the ecclesiastical state, was the ancient seat of the Etruscans and Umbrians; to the former of whom Italy was indebted for the first rudiments of civilized life. The Tyber rolled at the foot of the seven hills of Rome, and the country of the Sabines, the Latins, and the Volsci, from that river to the

71 The limits and situation of the Roman Empire. See the Roman Acts, i., c. 25.
The European provinces of Rome were protected by the course of the Rhine and the Danube. The latter of those mighty streams, which rises at the distance of only three hundred miles from the former, flows about thirteen hundred miles, for the most part, to the south-east, collects the tributary of fifty navigable rivers, and is, in length, through six months, received into the Baltic, which appears scarcely equal to such an accession of waters. The provinces of the Danube soon acquired the general appellation of Illyricum, or the Illyrian frontier, and were esteemed the most warlike of the empire; but they deserve to be more particularly considered under the names of Raetia, Noricum, Pannonia, Dalmatia, Dacia, Moesia, Thracia, Macedonia, and Greece.

The province of Raetia, which soon distinguished the name of the Vindelician, extended from the summit of the Alps to the banks of the Danube; from its sources, as far as its conflux with the Inn. The greatest part of the flat country is subject to the elector of Bavaria; the city of Augsburg is protected by the constitution of the German empire; the Grisons are safe in their mountains, and the country of Tirol is ranked among the numerous provinces of the house of Austria.

The wide extent of territory which is included between the Inn, the Danube, and the Save; Austria, Styria, Carinthia, Carinthia, the Lower Hungary, and Serbia, was known to the ancients under the names of Noricum and Pannonia. In their original state of independence, their fierce inhabitants were intimately connected. Under the Roman government they were frequently united, and they still remain the patrimony of a single family. They now contain the residence of a German prince, who styles himself Emperor of the Romans, and thus the empire, as well as strength, of the Austrian power. It may not be improper to observe, that if we except Bohemia, Moravia, the Northern skirts of Austria, and a part of Hungary, between the Tyes and the Danube, all the other dominions of the house of Austria were comprised within the limits of the Roman empire.

Dalmatia, in which the name of Illyricum more properly belonged, was a long, but narrow tract, between the Save and the Adriatic. The best part of the sea-coast, which still retains its ancient appellation, is a province of the Venetian state, and the seat of the little republic of Ragusa. The inland parts have assumed the Slavonian names of Croatica and Bosnia; the former obeys an Austrian governor, the latter a Turkish pasha; but the whole country is still infested by tribes of barbarians, whose savage independence irregularly marks the doubtful limit of the Christian and Mahometan power.

After the Danube had received the waters of the Teys and the Save, it acquired, at least among the Greeks, the name of Ister. It formerly divided Moesia and Dacia, the latter of which, as we have already seen, was a conquest of Trajan, and the only province beyond the river. If we enquire into the present state of those countries, we shall find that, on the left hand of the Danube, Transylvania and Transilvania have been annexed, after many revolutions, to the crown of Hungary; whilst the principalities of Moldavia and Wallachia acknowledge the supremacy of the Ottoman Porte. On the right hand of the Danube, Moesia, which, during the middle ages, was broken into the barbarian kingdoms of Servia and Bulgaria, is again united in Turkish slavery.

The appellation of Dalmatia, Dalmatia, which is still bestowed by the Turks, Dalmatia, and some other nations on the extensive countries of Thessaly, Macedon, and Greece, preserves the memory of their ancient state under the Roman empire. In the time of the Antonines, the martial regions of Thessaly, from the mountains of Haumun and Rhoephe, to the Bosphorus and the Hellespont, had assumed the form of a province. Notwithstanding the change of masters and of religion, the new city of Rome, founded by Constantine on the banks of the Bosphorus, has ever since retained the capital of a great monarchy. The kingdom of Macedonia, which, under the reign of Alexander, gave laws to Asia, derived more solid advantages from the policy of the two Philipps; and with its dependencies of Epirus and Thessaly, extended from the Egean to the Ionian sea. When we reflect on the fame of Trrbes and Argos, of Sparta and Athens, we can scarcely persuade ourselves, that so many immortal republics of ancient Greece were lost in a single province of the Roman empire, which, from the superior influence of the Achæan league, was usually determined the province of Achæa.

Such was the state of Europe under the Roman empire. The provinces of Asia, without excepting the transient conquests of Trajan, are all comprehended within the limits of the Turkish power. But, instead of following the arbitrary divisions of despots and ignorance, it will be safer for us, as well as more agreeable, to observe the invariable characters of nature. The name of Asia...
Minor is attributed with some propriety to the peninsula which, confined between the Euxine and the Mediterranean, advances from the Euphrates towards Europe. The most extensive and flourishing districts, westward of mount Taurus and the river Halys, was dignified by the Romans with the exclusive title of Asia. The jurisdiction of that province extended over the ancient monarchies of Troy, Lydia, and Phrygia, the maritime countries of the Pamphylians, Lycia, and Caria, and the Cariote colonies of Ionia, which equalled in arts, though not in arms, the glory of their parent. The kingdom of Bithynia and Pontus possessed the northern side of the peninsula from Constantinople to Trebizond. On the opposite side, the province of Cilicia was terminated by the mountains of Syria: the inland country, separated from the Roman Asia by the river Halys, and from Armenia by the Euphrates, had once formed the independent kingdom of Cappadocia. In this situation we may observe, that the northern shores of the Euxine were beyond Trebizond in Asia, and that beyond the Danube in Europe, acknowledged the sovereignty of the emperors, and received as their bands either tributary princes or Roman garrisons. Bithynia, Cilicia, Cappadocia, Phrygia, and Galatia, are the modern appellatives of those ancient countries.

Upon the successors of Alexander, Syria was the seat of the Seleucidae, who reigned over the Upper Asia, till the successful revolt of the Parthians confined their dominions between the Euphrates and the Mediterranean. When Syria became subject to the Romans, it formed the eastern frontier of their empire; nor did that province, in its utmost latitude, know any other bounds than the mountains of Cappadocia to the north, and towards the south, the confines of Egypt and the Red Sea. Phoenicia and Palestine were sometimes annexed to, and sometimes separated from, the jurisdiction of Syria. The former of these was a narrow and rocky coast, the latter was a territory scarcely superior to Wales, either in fertility or extent. Yet Phoenicia and Palestine will for ever live in the memory of mankind: since Asia, as well as Europe, has received letters from the one, and religion from the other. A sandy desert alike destitute of wood and water skirts along the doubtful confines of Syria, from the Euphrates to the Red Sea. The wandering life of the Arabs was inseparably connected with their independence; and wherever, on some spots less barren than the rest, they ventured to form any settled habitations, they soon became subjects to the Roman empire.

The geographers of antiquity have frequently insinuated to what portion of the globe they should ascribe Egypt. By its situation that celebrated kingdom is included within the immense peninsula of Africa; but it is accessible only on the side of Asia, whose revolutions, in almost every period of history, Egypt has humbly obeyed. A Roman prince was seated on the splendid throne of the Ptolemies; and the iron sceptre of the Mamelukes is now in the hands of a Turkish pasha. The Nile flows down the country, above five hundred miles from the tropic of Cancer to the Mediterranean, and marks, on either side, the extent of fertility by the measure of its inundations. Cyrene, situated towards the west, and along the sea-cost, was first a Greek colony, afterwards a province of Egypt, and is now lost in the desert of Barca.

From Cyrene to the ocean, the coast of Africa extends above fifteen hundred miles; yet so closely is it pressed between the Mediterranean and the Sahara, or sandy desert, that its breadth seldom exceeds four score or an hundred miles. The eastern division was considered by the Romans as the most peculiar and proper province of Africa. Till the arrival of the Phoenician colonies, that fertile country was inhabited by the Libyans, the most savage of mankind. Under the immediate jurisdiction of Carthage, it became the centre of commerce and empire; but the republic of Carthage is now degenerated into the feeble and disorderly states of Tripoli and Tunis. The military government of Algiers oppresses the wide extent of Numidia, as it was once united under Massinissa and Jugurtha: but in the time of Augustus, the limits of Numidia were contracted; and, at least, two thirds of the country sequinced in the name of Mauritania, with the Adders of Casauriads. The gynims Mauritan, or country of the Moors, which, from the ancient city of Tingis, or Tangier, was distinguished by the appellation of Tingitana, is represented by the modern kingdom of Fez-Sulis; on the ocean, so infamous at present for its piratical depredations, was noticed by the Romans, as the extreme object of their power, and almost of their geography. A city of their foundation may still be discovered near Mequitain, the residence of the barbarians whom we confound to style the Emperor of Morocco; but it does not appear, that his more southern dominions, Morocco itself, and Seguinism, were ever comprehended within the Roman province. The western parts of Africa are intersected by the branches of Mount Atlas, a name so fully celebrated by the fancy poets; but which is now diffused over the immense ocean that rolls between the ancient and the new continents.

Having now finished the circuit of the Roman empire, we may observe, that Africa is divided from Spain by a narrow strait of about twelve miles, or Jordan, which the Phcenicians called Cyprea, or Ebro, and the Greek, after the Ebro in Lycaonia. The passage was a plain; and the rock of Timgad, a temple of Serapis, which now remains, was made by the Vandals a sanctum; on the banks of the river, there were temples dedicated to Juno, Cybele, and Hercules, and the river turned into a lake of 1200 feet wide.
through which the Atlantic flows into the Mediterranean. The columns of Hercules, so famous among the ancients, were two mountains which seemed to have been torn asunder by some convulsion of the elements; and at the foot of the European mountain, the fortress of Gibraltar is now seated. The whole extent of the Mediterranean Sea, its coasts, and its islands, were comprised within the Roman dominion. Of the larger islands of the Bosphorus, which derive their name of Majorca and Minorca from their respective size, are subject, at present, the former to Spain, the latter to Great Britain. It is easier to deplore the fate, than to describe the actual condition of Corsica. Two Italian sovereignties assume a regal title from Sardinia and Sicily, Creto, or Candia, with Cyprus, and most of the smaller islands of Greece and Asia, have been subdued by the Turkish arms; whilst the little rock of Malta defies their power, and has emerged, under the government of its military Order, into fame and apostolical dignity.

This long enumeration of provinces, whose broken fragments have formed so many powerful kingdoms, might almost induce us to forgive the vanity, or ignorance of the ancients. Dazzled with the extensive sway, the irresistible strength, and the real or affected moderation of the emperors, they permitted themselves to despair; and sometimes to forget, the outlying countries which had been left in the enjoyment of a barbarous independence; and they gradually usurped the licence of confounding the Roman monarchy with the globe of the earth. But the temper, as well as knowledge, of a modern historian, require a more sober and accurate language. He may impress a juster image of the greatness of Rome, by observing that the empire was above two thousand miles in breadth, from the wall of Antoninus and the northern limits of Dacia, to Mount Atlas and the tropic of Cancer; that it extended, in length, more than three thousand miles from the Western Ocean to the Euphrates; that it was situated in the finest part of the temperate zone, between the twenty-fourth and fifty-sixth degrees of northern latitude; and that it was supposed to contain above sixteen hundred thousand square miles, for the most part of fertile and well cultivated land.

CHAP. II.

Of the Union and Internal Prosperity of the Roman Empire, in the Age of the Antonines.

Principles of It is not alone by the rapidity, or extent of conquest, that we should estimate the greatness of Rome. The sovereign power of the Russian desert commands a larger portion of the globe. In the seventh summer after his passage of the Hellespont, Alexander erected the Macedonian trophies on the banks of the Hyphasis. Within less than a century, the irresistible Zinghis, and the Mogul princes of his race, spread their cruel devastations and transient empire, from the sea of China to the confines of Egypt and Germany. But the firm edifice of Roman power was raised and preserved by the wisdom of ages. The obedient provinces of Trajan and the Antonines were united by laws, and adorned by arts. They might occasionally suffer from the partial abuse of delegated authority; but the general principle of government was wise, simple, and beneficent. They enjoyed the religion of their ancestors, whilst in civil honours and advantages they were exalted, by just degrees, to an equality with their conquerors.

I. The policy of the emperors and the senate, as far as it concerned religion, was happily seconded by the reflections of the enlightened, and by the habits of the superstitions of the people. The chief modes of worship which prevailed in the Roman world were all considered, by the people, as equally true; by the philosopher, as equally false; and by the magistrate, as equally useful. And thus toleration produced, not only mutual indulgence, but even religious concord.

The superstitions of the people were not disturbed by any mixture of theological reason. The deities of the Pagan mythology were interwoven with various, but not discordant materials. As soon as it was allowed that sages and heroes, who had lived, or who had died, for the benefit of their country, were exalted to a state of power and immortality, it was universally confessed, that they deserved, if not the admiration, at least the reverence, of all mankind. The deities of a thousand groves and a thousand streams possessed, in peace, their local and respective influence; nor could the Romans, who deprecated the wrath of the Titus, deride the Egyptian who presented his offering to the beneficent genius of the Nile. The visible powers of nature, the planets, and the elements, were the same throughout the universe. The invisible governors of the moral world were inevitably cast in a similar mould of fiction and allegory. Every virtue, and even vice, acquired its divine representative; every art and profession its patron; whose attributes, in the most distant ages and countries, were uniformly derived from the character of their peculiar divinity.
sities. A republic of gods of such opposite temper and interests required, in every system, the moderating hand of a supreme magistrate, who, by the progress of knowledge and curiosity, was gradually invested with the sublime perfections of an Eternal Parent, and an Omnificent Monarch. Such was the mild spirit of subordination, that the nations were less attentive to the difference, than to the resemblance, of their religious worship. The Greek, the Roman, and the Barbarian, as they met before their respective altars, easily persuaded themselves, that under various names, and with various ceremonies, they adored the same deities. The elegant mythology of Homer gave a beautiful, and almost a regular, form to the polytheism of the ancient world.

The philosophers of Greece denounced their morals from the nature of men, rather than from that of God. They mediated, however, on the Divine Nature, as a very curious and important speculation; and in the profound enquiry, they displayed the strength and weakness of the human understanding. Of the four most celebrated schools, the Stoics and the Platonists endeavoured to reconcile the pleasing interests of reason and pity. They were left to the most sublime proofs of the existence and perfection of the first cause; but, as it was impossible for them to conceive the creation of matter, the workmen in the Stoic philosophy was not sufficiently distinguished from the work; whilst, on the contrary, the spiritual God of Plato and his disciples resembled an idea, rather than a substance. The opinions of the Academicians and Epicureans were of a less religious cast; but, whilst the most devout of the former induced them to doubt, the positive ignorance of the latter urged them to deny, the prevance of a Supreme Ruler. The spirit of enquiry, prompted by admiration and supported by freedom, had divided the public teachers of philosophy into a variety of contending sects; but the ingenious youth, who, from every part, resorted to Athens, and the other seats of learning in the Roman empire, were alike instructed in every science to reject and to despise the religion of the multitude. How, indeed, was it possible, that a philosopher should accept, as divine truths, the idle tales of the poets, and the incoherent traditions of antiquity; or, that he should adore as gods, those imperfect beings whom he must have despised as men! Against such unworthy adversaries, Christ combated to employ the arms of reason and eloquence; but the satire of Lucian was a much more adequate, as well as more efficacious weapon. We may be well assured, that a writer conversant with the world would never have ventured to oppose the gods of his country to public ridicule, had they not already been the objects of secret contempt among the polished and enlightened orders of society.

Notwithstanding the fashionable Irvingian which prevailed in the age of the Antonines, both the interest of the priests and the cruelty of the people were sufficiently respected. In their writings and conversations, the philosophers of antiquity asserted the independent dignity of reason; but they resigned their actions to the commands of law and of custom. Viewing, with a smile of pity and indulgence, the various errors of the vulgar, they diligently practised the ceremonies of their fathers; devoutly frequented the temples of the gods; and sometimes underscoring to act a part on the theatre of superstition, they concealed the sentiments of an atheist under the sacredttol robes. Remonstrances of such a temper were scarcely inclined to wrangle about their respective modes of faith, or of worship. It was indifferent to them what shape the folly of the multitude ought to assume; and they approached, with the same inward contempt, and the same external reverence, the altar of the Lybian, the Olympian, or the Capitoline Jupiter.

It is not easy to conceive from what motives a spirit of persecution could introduce itself into the Roman councils. The magistrates could not be actuated by a blind, though honest bigotry, since the magistrates were themselves philosophers; and the schools of Atticists had given laws to the Senate. They could not be impelled by ambition or avarice, as the temporal and ecclesiastical powers were united in the same hands. The pontiffs were chosen among the most illustrious of the senators; and the office of Supreme Pontiff was constantly exercised by the emperors themselves. They knew and valued the advantages of religion, as it is connected with civil government. They encouraged the public festivals which humanize the manners of the people. They managed the arts of divination, as a serviceable instrument of policy, and they respected, as the firmest bond of society, the useful persuasion, that, either in this or in a future life, the crime of perjury is most assiduously punished by the avenging gods. But whilst they acknowledged the general advantages of religion, they were convinced, that the various modes of worship contributed alike to the same salutary purposes; and that, in every country, the form of superstition, which had received the sanction of time and experience, was the best adapted to the climate, and to its inhabitants. Avarice and taste very frequently despised the vanquished nations of the elegant statues of their gods, and the rich ornament of their temples; but, in the exercise of the religion which they derived from their ancestors, they uniformly observed the indulgences, and

* * *

The Hellenic conquerors of Greece, and Persia, should not be considered as the exclusive missionaries of their religion. The same temple of Minerva, the same shrine of Jupiter, the same altar of Diana spread over the Roman empire; and it is remarkable, that the cities of Asia Minor were the first to adopt Christianity, and that the first mission which spread it to the countries of the north of Africa and to Spain was from Greece.
even protection, of the Roman emperors. The province of Gaul arose, and indeed only seems, an exception to this universal irritation. Under the specious pretext of abasing human sacrifice, the emperors Titus and Claudius suppressed the dangerous power of the Druids; but the priests themselves, their gods and their altars, subsisted in peaceful obscurity till the final destruction of Paganism.

44 Rome, the capital of a great monarchy, was incessantly filled with subjects and strangers from every part of the world, who all introduced and enjoyed the favourite superstitions of their native country. Every city in the empire was justifiably in maintaining the purity of its ancient ceremonies; and the Roman senate, using the common privileges, sometimes interspersed to check this inundation of foreign rites. The Egyptian superstitions, of all the most contemptible and absurd, was frequently prohibited; the temples of Serapis and Isis demolished, and their worships banished from Rome and Italy. But the zeal of fanaticism prevailed over the cold and feeble efforts of policy. The exiles returned, the proselytes multiplied, the temples were restored with increasing splendor, and Isis and Serapis at length assumed their place among the Roman deities.

Nor was this inauspice a departure from the old maxims of government. In the purest age of the commonwealth, Lyulph and Scipio had been invited by solemn emblems, and it was customary to temp the protectors of besieged cities, by the promise of more distinguished honours than they possessed in their native country. Rome gradually became the common temple of her subjects; and the freedom of the city was bestowed on all the gods of mankind.

II. The narrow policy of preserving, without any foreign mixture, the pure blood of the ancient citizens, had checked the fortune and hastened the ruin of Athens and Sparta. The aspiring genius of Rome sacrificed vanity to ambition, and deemed it more prudent, as well as honourable, to adopt virtue and merit for her own wherever they were found, among slaves or strangers, enemies or barbarians. During the most flourishing era of the Athenian commonwealth, the number of citizens gradually decreased from about thirty to twenty-five thousand.

If, on the contrary, we study the growth of the Roman Republic, we may discover, that, notwithstanding the incessant demands of wars and colonies, the citizens, who, in the first census of Servius Tullius, amounted to no more than eighty-three thousand, were multiplied, before the commencement of the social war, to the number of four hundred and sixty-three thousand men, able to bear arms in the service of their country.

When the allies of Rome claimed an equal share of honours and privileges, the senate indeed presumed the chance of arms to an ignominious concession. The Sibyllines and the Lucanians paid the severe penalty of their rashness; but the rest of the Italian states, as they successively returned to their duty, were admitted into the bosom of the republic, and soon contributed to the ruin of public freedom. Under a democratical government, the citizens exercised the powers of sovereignty; and those powers will be first abused, and afterwards lost, if they are committed to an unwise multitude. But when the popular assemblies had been suppressed by the administration of the emperors, the conquerors were distinguished from the vanquished nations, only as the first and most honourable order of subjects; and their increase, however rapid, was no longer exposed to the same dangers.

Yet the wisest prince, who adopted the maxims of Augustus, guarded with the utmost care the dignity of the Roman name, and diffused the freedom of the city with a prudent liberality.

Till the privileges of Romans had been progressively extended to all the inhabitants of the empire, an important distinction was preserved between Italy and the provinces. The former was esteemed the centre of public unity, and the first boast of the constitution. Italy claimed the birth, or at least the residence, of the emperors and the senate. The estates of the Italians were exempt from taxes, their persons from the arbitrary jurisdiction of governors. Their municipal corporations, formed after the perfect model of the capital, were instructed under the immediate eye of the supreme power, with the execution of the laws. From the foot of the Alps to the extremity of Cilicia, all the natives of Italy were born citizens of Rome. Their partial distinctions were obliterated, and they insensibly condescended into one great nation, united by language, manners, and civil institutions, and equal to the weight of a powerful empire. The republic gloried in her generous policy, and was frequently rewarded by the services and services of her adopted sons. Had she always confined the distinction of Romans to the ancient families within the walls of the city, that immortal name would have been deprived of some of its noblest ornaments. Virgil was a native of Mantua.

13 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
14 O. L. de Inville, pp. 35, 36. 
15 In the time of Tiber. 
16 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
17 In the time of Tiber. 
18 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
19 Evamaliae, par. 11. 
20 The history of Greece. 
21 In the time of Tiber. 
22 O. L. de Inville, pp. 35, 36. 
23 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
24 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
25 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
26 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
27 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
28 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
29 Eumaeus, par. 11.

13 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
14 O. L. de Inville, pp. 35, 36. 
15 In the time of Tiber. 
16 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
17 In the time of Tiber. 
18 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
19 Evamaliae, par. 11. 
20 The history of Greece. 
21 In the time of Tiber. 
22 O. L. de Inville, pp. 35, 36. 
23 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
24 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
25 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
26 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
27 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
28 Eumaeus, par. 11. 
29 Eumaeus, par. 11.
Hence was inclined to doubt whether he should call himself an Apulian or a Lucanian: it was in a passion that an historian was found worthy to record the majestic series of Roman victories. The patriotic family of the Catos emerged from Tusculum; and the little town of Arpinum claimed the double honour of producing Marcus and Cicero, the former of whom deserved, after Romulus and Camillus, to be styled the Third Founder of Rome; and the latter, after saving his country from the designs of Catiline, enabled her to contend with Athens for the palm of eloquence. 67

The provinces of the empire (as they have been described in the preceding chapter) were instituted of any public force, or constitutional freedom. In Etruria, in Greece, and Gaul, it was the first care of the senate to dissolve those dangerous confederacies, which taught mankind, that, as the Roman arms prevailed by division, they might be resisted by union. Those princes, whom the excitement of gratitude or generosity permitted for a while to hold a precarious sceptre, were dismissed from their thrones, as soon as they had performed their appointed task of fashioning to the yoke the vanquished nations. The free states and cities which had endured the cause of Rome were rewarded with a nominal alliance, and insensibly sunk into real servitude. The public authority was every where exercised by the ministers of the senate and of the emperors, and that authority was absolute, and without control. But the same salutary maxims of government, which had secured the peace and obedience of Italy, were extended to the remotest distant conquests. A nation of Romans was gradually formed in the provinces, by the double expedient of introducing colonies, and of admitting the most faithful and deserving of the provincials to the freedom of Rome. 68

Wheresoever the Roman conquerors inhabit, is a very just observation of Seneca. 69 continued by history and experience. The natives of Italy, allured by pleasure or by interest, hastened to enjoy the advantages of victory; and we may remark, that, about forty years after the reduction of Asia, eighty thousand Romans were massacred in one day, by the cruel orders of Mithridates. 70 These voluntary exiles were engaged, for the most part, in the occupations of commerce, agriculture, and the farm of the revenue. But after the legions were rendered permanent by the emperors, the provinces were peopled by a race of soldiers; and the veterans, whether they received the reward of their service in land or in money, usually settled with their families in the country, where they had gratuitously spent their youth. Throughout the empire, but more particularly in the western parts, the most fertile districts, and the most convenient situations, were reserved for the establishment of colonies; some of which were of a civil, and others of a military nature. In their manners and internal policy, the colonies formed a perfect representation of their great parent; and they were soon united to the natives by the ties of friendship and alliance, they effectually diffused a reverence for the Roman name, and a desire, which was seldom disappointed, of sharing in due time, its honours and advantages. 71 The municipal cities insensibly equalled the rank and splendour of the colonies; and in the reign of Hadrian, it was disputed which was the preferable condition, of those societies which had issued from, or those which had been received into the bosom of Rome. 72 The right of Latin, as it was called, conferred on the cities to which it had been granted a more partial favour. The magistrates only, at the expiration of their office, assumed the quality of Roman citizens; but as those offices were annual, in a few years they circulated round the principal families. 73 Those of the provincials who were permitted to bear arms in the legions; 74 those who exercised any civil employment; 75 all, in a word, who performed any public service, or displayed any personal talents, were rewarded with a present, whose value was continually diminished by the increasing liberality of the emperors. Yet even in the age of the Antonines, when the freedom of the city had been bestowed on the greater number of its subjects, it was still accompanied with very solid advantages. The bulk of the people acquired, with that title, the benefit of the Roman laws, particularly in the interesting articles of marriage, testament, and inheritances; and the road of fortune was open to those whose pretensions were seconded by favour or merit. The grandsons of the Gauls, who had besieged Julius Caesar in Alesia, commanded legions, governed provinces, and were admitted into the senate of Rome. 76 Their ambition, instead of disturbing the tranquillity of the state, was intimately connected with its safety and greatness.

65 Wheresoever the Roman conquerors inhabit, is a very just observation of Seneca. 69 continued by history and experience. The natives of Italy, allured by pleasure or by interest, hastened to enjoy the advantages of victory; and we may remark, that, about forty years after the reduction of Asia, eighty thousand Romans were massacred in one day, by the cruel orders of Mithridates. 70 These voluntary exiles were engaged, for the most part, in the occupations of commerce, agriculture, and the farm of the revenue. But after the legions were rendered permanent by the emperors, the provinces were peopled by a race of soldiers; and the veterans, whether they received the reward of their service in land or in money, usually settled with their families in the country, where they had gratuitously spent their youth. Throughout the empire, but more particularly in the western parts, the most fertile districts, and the most convenient situations, were reserved for the establishment of colonies; some of which were of a civil, and others of a military nature. In their manners and internal policy, the colonies formed a perfect representation of their great parent; and they were soon united to the natives by the ties of friendship and alliance, they effectually diffused a reverence for the Roman name, and a desire, which was seldom disappointed, of sharing in due time, its honours and advantages. 71 The municipal cities insensibly equalled the rank and splendour of the colonies; and in the reign of Hadrian, it was disputed which was the preferable condition, of those societies which had issued from, or those which had been received into the bosom of Rome. 72 The right of Latin, as it was called, conferred on the cities to which it had been granted a more partial favour. The magistrates only, at the expiration of their office, assumed the quality of Roman citizens; but as those offices were annual, in a few years they circulated round the principal families. 73 Those of the provincials who were permitted to bear arms in the legions; 74 those who exercised any civil employment; 75 all, in a word, who performed any public service, or displayed any personal talents, were rewarded with a present, whose value was continually diminished by the increasing liberality of the emperors. Yet even in the age of the Antonines, when the freedom of the city had been bestowed on the greater number of its subjects, it was still accompanied with very solid advantages. The bulk of the people acquired, with that title, the benefit of the Roman laws, particularly in the interesting articles of marriage, testament, and inheritances; and the road of fortune was open to those whose pretensions were seconded by favour or merit. The grandsons of the Gauls, who had besieged Julius Caesar in Alesia, commanded legions, governed provinces, and were admitted into the senate of Rome. 76 Their ambition, instead of disturbing the tranquillity of the state, was intimately connected with its safety and greatness.

65 Wheresoever the Roman conquerors inhabit, is a very just observation of Seneca. 69 continued by history and experience. The natives of Italy, allured by pleasure or by interest, hastened to enjoy the advantages of victory; and we may remark, that, about forty years after the reduction of Asia, eighty thousand Romans were massacred in one day, by the cruel orders of Mithridates. 70 These voluntary exiles were engaged, for the most part, in the occupations of commerce, agriculture, and the farm of the revenue. But after the legions were rendered permanent by the emperors, the provinces were peopled by a race of soldiers; and the veterans, whether they received the reward of their service in land or in money, usually settled with their families in the country, where they had gratuitously spent their youth. Throughout the empire, but more particularly in the western parts, the most fertile districts, and the most convenient situations, were reserved for the establishment of colonies; some of which were of a civil, and others of a military nature. In their manners and internal policy, the colonies formed a perfect representation of their great parent; and they were soon united to the natives by the ties of friendship and alliance, they effectually diffused a reverence for the Roman name, and a desire, which was seldom disappointed, of sharing in due time, its honours and advantages. 71 The municipal cities insensibly equalled the rank and splendour of the colonies; and in the reign of Hadrian, it was disputed which was the preferable condition, of those societies which had issued from, or those which had been received into the bosom of Rome. 72 The right of Latin, as it was called, conferred on the cities to which it had been granted a more partial favour. The magistrates only, at the expiration of their office, assumed the quality of Roman citizens; but as those offices were annual, in a few years they circulated round the principal families. 73 Those of the provincials who were permitted to bear arms in the legions; 74 those who exercised any civil employment; 75 all, in a word, who performed any public service, or displayed any personal talents, were rewarded with a present, whose value was continually diminished by the increasing liberality of the emperors. Yet even in the age of the Antonines, when the freedom of the city had been bestowed on the greater number of its subjects, it was still accompanied with very solid advantages. The bulk of the people acquired, with that title, the benefit of the Roman laws, particularly in the interesting articles of marriage, testament, and inheritances; and the road of fortune was open to those whose pretensions were seconded by favour or merit. The grandsons of the Gauls, who had besieged Julius Caesar in Alesia, commanded legions, governed provinces, and were admitted into the senate of Rome. 76 Their ambition, instead of disturbing the tranquillity of the state, was intimately connected with its safety and greatness.

65 Wheresoever the Roman conquerors inhabit, is a very just observation of Seneca. 69 continued by history and experience. The natives of Italy, allured by pleasure or by interest, hastened to enjoy the advantages of victory; and we may remark, that, about forty years after the reduction of Asia, eighty thousand Romans were massacred in one day, by the cruel orders of Mithridates. 70 These voluntary exiles were engaged, for the most part, in the occupations of commerce, agriculture, and the farm of the revenue. But after the legions were rendered permanent by the emperors, the provinces were peopled by a race of soldiers; and the veterans, whether they received the reward of their service in land or in money, usually settled with their families in the country, where they had gratuitously spent their youth. Throughout the empire, but more particularly in the western parts, the most fertile districts, and the most convenient situations, were reserved for the establishment of colonies; some of which were of a civil, and others of a military nature. In their manners and internal policy, the colonies formed a perfect representation of their great parent; and they were soon united to the natives by the ties of friendship and alliance, they effectually diffused a reverence for the Roman name, and a desire, which was seldom disappointed, of sharing in due time, its honours and advantages. 71 The municipal cities insensibly equalled the rank and splendour of the colonies; and in the reign of Hadrian, it was disputed which was the preferable condition, of those societies which had issued from, or those which had been received into the bosom of Rome. 72 The right of Latin, as it was called, conferred on the cities to which it had been granted a more partial favour. The magistrates only, at the expiration of their office, assumed the quality of Roman citizens; but as those offices were annual, in a few years they circulated round the principal families. 73 Those of the provincials who were permitted to bear arms in the legions; 74 those who exercised any civil employment; 75 all, in a word, who performed any public service, or displayed any personal talents, were rewarded with a present, whose value was continually diminished by the increasing liberality of the emperors. Yet even in the age of the Antonines, when the freedom of the city had been bestowed on the greater number of its subjects, it was still accompanied with very solid advantages. The bulk of the people acquired, with that title, the benefit of the Roman laws, particularly in the interesting articles of marriage, testament, and inheritances; and the road of fortune was open to those whose pretensions were seconded by favour or merit. The grandsons of the Gauls, who had besieged Julius Caesar in Alesia, commanded legions, governed provinces, and were admitted into the senate of Rome. 76 Their ambition, instead of disturbing the tranquillity of the state, was intimately connected with its safety and greatness.
the meridian splendour of prosperity, became gradually more visible as the shades of night descended upon the Roman world. The western countries were civilised by the same hands that subdued them. As soon as the barbarians were reconciled to obedience, their minds were opened to any new impressions of knowledge and politeness. The language of Virgil and Cicero, though with some inevitable mixture of corruption, was so universally adopted in Africa, Spain, Gaul, Britain, and Pannonia, that the faint traces of the Punic or Celtic idiom were preserved only in the mountains, or among the peasants. Education and study insensibly inspired the natives of those countries with the sentiments of Romans; and Italy gave fashions, as well as laws, to her Latin provinces. They selected with more ardour, and obtained with more facility, the freedom and honours of the state; supported the national dignity in letters and in arms; and, at length, in the person of Trajan, produced an emperor whom the Scipios would not have disowned for their countryman. The situation of the Greeks was very different from that of the barbarians. The former had been long since civilised and corrupted. They had too much taste to relinquish their language, and too much vanity to adopt any foreign institutions. Still preserving their prejudices, after they had lost the virtues, of their ancestors, they affected to despise the unpolluted manners of the Roman conquerors, who were compelled to respect their superior wisdom and power. Nor was the influence of the Grecian language and sentiments confined to the narrow limits of that once celebrated country. Their empire, by the progress of colonies and conquest, had been diffused from the Hadratics to the Euphrates and the Nile. Asia was covered with Greek cities, and the long reign of the Macedonian kings had introduced silent resolution into Syria and Egypt. In their pompous courts those princes united the elegance of Athens with the luxury of the East, and the example of the court was imitated, at an humble distance, by the higher ranks of their subjects. Such was the general division of the Roman empire into the Latin and Greek languages. To these we must add a third distinction for the body of the natives in Syria, and especially in Egypt. The use of their ancient dialects, by ascribing them to the commerce of mankind, checked the improvements of those barbarians. The skilful accommodateness of the former exposed them to the contempt, the sullen ferocity of the latter excited the aversion of the conquerors. Those nations had submitted to the Roman power, but they seldom desired or observed the freedom of the city; and it was remarked, that more than two hundred and thirty years elapsed, after the ruin of the Punic war, before an Egyptian was admitted into the senate of Rome.

It was a just though trite observation, that victorious Rome was herself subdued by the arts of Greece. Those immortal writers who still command the admiration of modern Europe, soon became the favourite object of study and imitation in Italy and the western provinces. But the elegant amusements of the Romans were not suffered to interfere with their sound maxims of policy. Whilst they acknowledged the charm of the Greek, they assented the dignity of the Latin tongue; and the exclusive use of the latter was inflexibly maintained in the administration of civil as well as military government. The two languages exercised at the same time their separate jurisdiction throughout the empire: the former, as the natural idiom of science; the latter, as the legal dialect of public transactions. Those who united letters with business were equally conversant with both; and it was almost impossible, in any province, to find a Roman subject, of a liberal education, who was not once a stranger to the Greek and to the Latin language.

It was by such institutions that the nations of the empire insensibly melted away into the Roman name and people. But there still remained, in the centre of every province and of every family, an unhappy condition of men, who endured the weight, without sharing the benefits, of society. In the free state of antiquity, the domestic slaves were exposed to the wanton rigour of despotism. The perfect settlement of the Roman empire was preceded by ages of violence and rapine. The slaves consisted, for the most part, of barbarian captives, taken in thousands by the chance of war, purchased at a vile price, accustomed to a life of independence, and impatient to break and to revenge their feters. Against such internal enemies, whose desperate insurrections had more than once reduced the republic to the brink of destruction, the most severe regulations, and the most cruel treatment, seemed almost justified by the great law of self-preservation. But when the principal nations of Europe, Asia, and Africa were united under the laws of one sovereign, the source of foreign supplies flowed with much less abundance, and the Romans were reduced to the readier but more tedious method of propagation. In their numerous families, and particularly in their country estates, they encouraged the marriage of their slaves. The sentiments of nature, the habits of education, and the possession of a dependant species of property, contributed to alleviate the hardships of servitude.
slave became an object of greater value; and, though his happiness still depended on the temper and circumstances of the master, the humanity of the latter, instead of being restrained by fear, was encouraged by the sense of his own interest. The progress of manners was accelerated by the virtue or policy of the emperors; and by the edicts of Hadrian and the Antonines, the protection of the laws was extended to the most abject part of mankind. The jurisdiction of life and death over the slaves, a power long exercised and often abused, was taken out of private hands, and reserved to the magistrates alone. The subordinate prisons were abolished; and, upon a just complaint of intolerable treatment, the injured slave obtained either his liberty or a less cruel master.60

Hence, the best comfort of our imperfect condition, was not denied to the Roman slave; and if he had any opportunity of amusing himself either useful or agreeable, he might very naturally expect that the diligence and fidelity of a few years would be rewarded with the insatiable gift of freedom. The benevolence of the master was so frequently prompted by the master suggestions of vanity and pravity, that the laws found it more necessary to restrain than to encourage a profuse and undistinguishing liberality, which might degenerate into a very dangerous abuse. It was a maxima of ancient jurisprudence, that a slave had not any country of his own; he acquired with his liberty an admission into the political society of which his patron was a member. The consequences of this maxima would have prostituted to the privileges of the Roman citizens, even the meanest and meanest men. Some reasonable exceptions were therefore provided; and the honourable distinction was confined to such slaves only as, for just causes, and with the approbation of the magistrate, should receive a solemn and legal manumission. Even these freedmen obtained no more than the public rights of citizens, and were rigorously excluded from civil or military honours. Whatever might be the merit or fortune of their own, they likewise were esteemed unworthy of a seat in the senate; nor were the traces of servile origin allowed to be completely obliterated till the third or fourth generation. Without destroying the distinction of ranks, a distant prospect of freedom and honours was presented, even to those whose pride and prejudice almost disdained to number among the human species.

It was once proposed to discriminate the slaves by a peculiar habit; but it was justly apprehended that there might be some danger in acquainting them with their own numbers. Without interpreting, in their

60 See the Augustan History, and a Dissertation of M. de Bourgeon, in the annual volume of the Academy of Inscriptions, upon the Roman Emperors.
61 See the Military Operations of M. de Bourgeon, in the seventh volume of the Academy of Inscriptions, upon the Roman Emperors.
62 See the Commentaries of M. de Bourgeon, in the twelfth volume of the Academy of Inscriptions, upon the Roman Emperors.
63 See the Commentaries of M. de Bourgeon, in the fourteenth volume of the Academy of Inscriptions, upon the Roman Emperors.
64 See the Commentaries of M. de Bourgeon, in the sixteenth volume of the Academy of Inscriptions, upon the Roman Emperors.
the most numerous society that has ever been united under the same system of government.

Domestic peace and union were re-established, and the natural consequences of the moderate and comprehensive policy embraced by the Romans. If we turn our eyes towards the monarchies of Asia, we shall behold despotism in the centre, and weakness in the extremities; the collection of the revenue, or the administration of justice, enforced by the presence of an army; hostile barbarians established in the heart of the country, hereditary satraps usurping the dominion of the provinces, and subjects inclined to rebellion, though incapable of freedom. But the obedience of the Roman world was uniform, voluntary, and permanent. The conquered nations, blended into one great people, resigned the hope, nay, even the wish, of resuming their independence, and scarcely considered their own existence as distinct from the existence of Rome. The established authority of the emperors prevailed without an effort the wide extent of their dominions, and was exercised with the same facility on the banks of the Dardanelles, or of the Nile, as on those of the Tyber. The legions were destined to serve against the public enemy, and the civil magistrates seldom required the aid of a military force. In this state of general security, the leisure as well as opulence both of the prince and people, were devoted to improve and to adorn the Roman empire.

Among the immemorial monuments of Roman architecture, constructed by the Romans, how many have escaped the notice of history, how few have resisted the ravages of time and barbarism! And yet even the majestic ruins that are still scattered over Italy and the provinces, would be sufficient to prove that those countries were once the seat of a polite and powerful empire. Their greatness alone, or their beauty, might deserve our attention; but they are rendered more interesting, by two important circumstances, which connect the agreeable history of the arts with the more useful history of human manners. Many of those works were erected at private expense, and almost all were intended for public benefit.

It is natural to suppose that the greatest number, as well as the most considerable, of the Roman edifices, were raised by the emperors, who possessed so unbounded a command both of men and money. Augustus was accustomed to boast that he had found his capital of brick, and that he had left it of marble. The strict economy of Vespasian was the source of his magnificence. The works of Trajan bear the stamp of his genius. The public monuments with which Hadrian adorned every province of the empire, were executed not only by his orders, but under his immediate inspection. He was himself an artist; and he loved the arts, as they conduced to the glory of the monarch. They were encouraged by the Antonines, as they contributed to the happiness of the people. But if the emperors were the first, they were not the only architects of their dominions. Their example was universally imitated by their principal subjects, who were not afraid of declaring to the world that they had spirit to concord, and wealth to accomplish, the noblest undertakings. Scarcely had the proud structure of the Colosseum been dedicated at Rome, before the edifices of a smaller scale indeed, but of the same design and materials, were erected for the use, and at the expense, of the cities of Capua and Verona. The inscription of the stupendous bridge of Alcantara, attests that it was thrown over the Tagus by the contribution of a few Lusitanian communities. When Pliny was entrusted with the government of Bithynia and Pontus, provinces by no means the richest or most considerable of the empire, he found the cities within his jurisdiction striving with each other in every useful and ornamental work, that might deserve the curiosity of strangers, or the gratitude of their citizens. It was the duty of the Proconsul to supply their deficiencies, to direct their taste, and sometimes to moderate their emulation.

The opulent senators of Rome and the provinces esteemed it an honour, and almost an obligation, to adorn the splendour of their age and country; and the influence of fashion very frequently supplied the want of taste or generosity. Among a crowd of these private benefactors, we may select Herodes Atticus, an Athenian citizen, who lived in the age of Antonines. Whatever might be the motive of his conduct, his magnificence would have been worthy of the greatest kings.

The family of Herod, at least after it had been favoured by fortune, was lineally descended from Clusius and Militiades, Theseus and Cecrops, Bacchus and Jupiter. But the posterity of so many gods and heroes was fallen into the most abject state. His grandfather had suffered by the hands of justice, and Julius Atticus, his father, must have ended his life in poverty and contempt, had he not discovered an immense treasure buried under an old house, the last remains of his patrimony. According to the rigour of law, the emperor might have asserted his claim, and the prudent Atticus prevented, by a frank confession, the unfitness of inquisition. Being the equitable Noria, who then filled the throne, refused to accept any part of his and commanded him to use, without scruple, the present of fortune. The cautious Atticus still insisted, that the treasure was too considerable for a subject, and that he knew not how to use it. Above it, then, replied the monarch, with a good-natured proviso; for it is your own. Many will be of opinion, that Atticus literally obeyed the

82. The Satire, Venus Victis II. 1. p. 86. 83. Joseph, de Bell. Judic. lib. II. c. 10. The action of Agrippa, or rather of the historian, is in the year 55 B.C. Rome and Athens were at war. The peace of Vespasian in 71 A.D. restored the tranquility of the two cities, and the friendship of Rome and Carea, the passion of Taras and Cyrene, Attica and Tuscany, Latium and Campania, Sicily and Spain, the Twelve Tables, and the body of the laws, were resumed by his successor and governed the land Agrippa left behind him. His morbid and general style is found in Juvenal and Horace. The life of the same author is in Rutilius, Cicerone, and Varro. Sec. 8. 84. The Satire, Venus Victis II. 1. p. 86.
In the commonwealths of Athens and Rome, the modesty of
private houses announced the equal condition of freedom; whilst the
sovereignty of the people was represented in the majestic edifices dedicated to the
public use. Nor was this republicanism spirit totally extinguished by the introduction of
wealth and monarchy. It was in works of national
honour and benefit, that the most virtues of the
emperors affected to display their magnificence.

The golden palace of Nero excited a just indignation, but the vast extent of ground
which had been occupied by the selfish luxury, was more nobly filled, under the succeeding
reigns by the Colosseum, the baths of Titus, the
Clavdian porico, and the temples dedicated to the
goddess of Peace, and to the genius of
Rome. These monuments of architecture,
the property of the Roman people, were attended
with the most beautiful productions of Greek
painting and sculpture: and in the temple of
Peace, a very curious library was open to the
curiosity of the learned. At a small distance
from thence was situated the Forum of Trajan.
It was surrounded by a lofty porico, in the
form of a quadrangle, into which four triumphal
arches opened a noble and spacious entrance;
the centre arose a column of marble, whose
height, of one hundred and ten feet, denoted the
elevation of the hill that had been cut away.
This column, which still subsists in its ancient
beauty, exhibited an exact representation of the
Daedalian victories of its founder. The
veteran soldier contemplated the story of his own
campaigns, and by an easy illusion of national
glory, the peaceful citizen associated himself
to the honours of the triumph. All the other
ornaments of the capital, and all the provinces of
the empire, were embellished by the same liberal
spirit of public magnificence, and were filled
with amphitheatres, theatres, temples, peristyles,
triumphal arches, baths, and aqueducts, all
variously conducive to the health, the
deavour, and the pleasures of the innocent
citizen. The last mentioned of these edifices deserve
peculiar attention. The boldness of the
enterprise, the audacity of the execution, and the
wares by which they were subservient, rank the
aqueducts among the noblest monuments of
Roman genius and power. The aqueducts of the
capital claim a just pre-eminence; but the
curious traveller, who, without the light of
history, should examine those of Scævola, of Marius,
or of Sevigno, would, very naturally conclude
that these provincial towns had formerly been the
residence of some potent emperor. The
solitudes of Asia and Africa were once covered
with flourishing cities, whose population, and
even whose existence, was derived from such
artificial supplies of a perennial stream of fresh
water.

We have computed the inhabitants, and con-
templeted the public works of the
Roman empire. The observation of
the number and greatness of its cities
will serve to confirm the former,
and to multiply the latter. It may not be un
pleasing to collect a few scattered instances relat
ing to that subject, without forgetting, how
ever, that from the vanity of nations and the
poverty of language, the vague appellation of
city has been indifferently bestowed on Rome
in Egypt, and upon Laurantium. 1. Ancient
Italy is said to have contained eleven
hundred and ninety-seven cities; and for whatso
ever era of antiquity, the expression might be
intended, 1 there is not any reason to believe
the country less populous in the age of the
Antonines, than in that of Romulus. The petty
states of Latium were contained within the
metropolis of the empire, by whose superior
influence they had been attracted. These parts
of Italy which have so long languished under
the lazy tyranny of priests and viceroys, had
been afflicted only by the more tolerable ca
alties of war; and the first symptoms of decay, which they experienced, were simply com
pensated by the rapid improvements of the Chu
perial Gaul. The splendour of Venice may be
traced in its remains: yet Venice was less cele
brated than Aquileia or Padua, Milam or Ra
venna. 2

Gaul and Spain. Gaul and Spain had passed the Alps, and been felt even in the woods of Britain, which were
gradually cleared away to open a free space for
environment and elegant institutions. York was
the seat of government; London was already
enlarged by commerce; and Bath was celebrated
for the salutary effects of its medicinal springs.
Gaul could boast of her twelve hundred cities; 3
and though, in the northern parts, many of them,
without excepting Paris itself, were little more
than the rude and imperfect townships of a rising
people; the southern provinces imitated the
wealth and elegance of Italy. 4 Many were the
cities of Gaul, Marsilles, Arles, Narbonem,
Toulouse, Bourdeaux, Autun, Vienne, Lyons,
Langres, and Trévoux, whose ancient con
dition might sustain an equal, and perhaps ad
vantages comparison with their present state.
With regard to Spain, that country, considered as
a province, and has declined as a kingdom. Exh
austed by the chase of her strength, by Amo
ces, and, by superstition, but with might
possibly be commended, if we suppose the infe
nity of three hundred and sixty states, as Pliny
has exhibited under the reign of Augustus.5

III. Three hundred African cities

had some acknowledged the au
thority of Cartagene, 6 nor is it likely that their
numbers diminished under the administration of
the emperors; Cartagene itself rose with new
splendour from its ashes; and that capital, as well
as Carthage and Corinth, soon recovered all the
advantages which can be separated from inde
pendent sovereignty. IV. The pro
vinces of the east present the con
trast of Roman magnificence with Turkish
barbarism. The ruins of antiquity scattered over
uncultivated fields, and ascribed, by ignorance,
the power of magic, scarcely afford a shelter
to the oppressed peasant or wandering Arab.
Under the reign of the Caesars, the proper Asia
alone contained five hundred populous cities, 7
enriched with all the gifts of nature, and adorned
with all the refinements of art. Eleven cities
of Asia had once disputed the honour of dedi
cating a temple to Jupiter, and their respective
merits were examined by the senate. 8 Four
of them were immediately rejected as unequal
to the burden; and among these was Laodicea,
whose splendour is still displayed in its ruins. 9
Laodicea collected a very considerable revenue
from its flocks of sheep, celebrated for the
beauty and richness of their wool, and had received, a little
before the contest, a legacy of above four
hundred thousand pounds by the testament of a
prominent citizen. 10

If such was the variety of Laodicea, what must have been the wealth of those cities, whose claim appeared preferable, and particularly of Berytus, of Smyrna, and of Ephesus, who, as long disputed with each other the titular principal of Asia? 11 The capi
tals of Syria and Egypt held a still superior rank in the empire: Antioch and Alexandria looked down with disdain on a crowd of dependent cities, 12 and yielded, with reluctance, to the
majesty of Rome itself.

All these cities were connected
innumerable
with each other, and with the re
ceptive, by the public highways, which, issuing from the Fountain of Rome, traversed Italy, per
verted the provinces, and were terminated only
by the frontiers of the empire. If we carefully
trace the distance from the wall of Antioch to
Rome, and from thence to Jerusalem, it will be
found that the great chain of communication,
from the north-west to the south-east point of
the empire, was drawn out in the length of
four thousand and eighty Roman miles. 13 The
public roads were accurately divided by miles
stelae, and ran in a direct line from one city to

1 Vitruv. Hist. V. i. 36. 36
2 Vitruv. Hist. V. i. 36. 36
3 Pliny. V. 5.
4 Pliny. V. 5.
5 Vitruv. Hist. V. i. 36. 36
6 Pliny. V. 5.
7 Pliny. V. 5.
8 Pliny. V. 5.
9 Pliny. V. 5.
10 Pliny. V. 5.
11 Pliny. V. 5.
12 Pliny. V. 5.
13 Pliny. V. 5.
another, with very little respect for the obstacles either of nature or private property. Mountains were perforated, and bold arches thrown over the broadest and most rapid streams. The middle part of the road was raised into a terrace which commanded the adjacent country, consisted of several strata of sand, gravel, and clay, and was paved with large stones, or in some places, near the capital, with granite. Such was the solid construction of the Roman highways, whose firmness has not entirely yielded to the effort of fifteen centuries. They united the subjects of the most distant provinces by an easy and familiar intercourse; but their primary object had been to facilitate the marches of the legions; nor was any country considered as completely subdued, till it had been rendered, in all its parts, previous to the arms and authority of the conqueror. The advantage of receiving the earliest intelligence, and of conveying their orders with celerity, induced the emperors to establish, throughout their extensive dominions, the regular institution of posts. Houses were every where erected at the distance only of five or six miles; each of them was constantly provided with forty horses, and by the help of these relays, it was easy to travel an hundred miles in a day along the Roman roads. The use of the posts was allowed to those who claimed it by an imperial mandate; but though originally intended for the public service, it was sometimes indulged to the business or convenience of private citizens. Nor was the communication of the Roman empire less free and open by sea than it was by land. The provinces surrounded and enclosed the Mediterranean, and Italy, in the shape of an immense promontory, advanced into the midst of that great lake. The coasts of Italy are, in general, destitute of safe harbours; but human industry had corrected the deficiencies of nature; and the artificial port of Ostia, in particular, situate at the mouth of the Tyber, and formed by the emperor Claudius, was a useful monument of Roman greatness. From this port, which was only sixteen miles from the capital, a favourable breeze frequently carried vessels in seven days to the columns of Hercules, and in nine or ten, to Alexandria in Egypt. Whatever evil either reason or declaration have imputed to extensive empire, the power of Rome was attended with some beneficial consequences to mankind, and the same freedom of interchange which extended the vices, diffused likewise the improvements, of social life. In the more remote ages of antiquity, the world was uniledly divided. The east was in the

immemorial possession of arts and luxury; while the west was inhabited by rude and warlike barbarians, who either disdained agriculture, or to whom it was totally unknown. Under the protection of an established government, the productions of happier climates, and the industry of more civilized nations, were gradually introduced into the western countries of Europe; and the natives were encouraged, by an open and profitable commerce, to multiply the former, as well as to improve the latter. It would be almost impossible to enumerate all the articles, either of the animal or the vegetable reign, which were successively imported into Europe from Asia and Egypt; but it will not be un

worthy of the dignity, and much less of the utility, of a historical work, slightly to touch on a few of the principal heads. 1. Almost all the flowers, the herbs, and the fruits, that grow in our European gardens, are of foreign extraction, which in many cases, is betrayed even by their names; the apple was a native of Italy, and when the Romans had tasted the rich flavour of the apricot, the peach, the pomegranate, the citron, and the orange, they esteemed themselves with applying to all these new fruits the common denomination of apple, discriminating them from each other by the additional epithet of their country. 2. In the time of Honorius, the vine grew wild in the island of Sicily, and most probably in the adjacent continient; but it was not improved by the skill, nor did it afford a liquor grateful to the taste, of the savage inhabitants. A thousand years afterwards, Italy could boast, that of the fouroomost most generous and celebrated wines, more than two thirds were produced from her soil. The blessing was soon communicated to the Narbonese province of Gaul; but so intense was the cold to the north of the Rhone, that, in the time of Strabo, it was thought impossible to ripen the grapes in those parts of Gaul. This difficulty, however, was gradually vanquished; and there is some reason to believe, that the vineyards of Burgundy are as old as the age of the Antonines. 3. The olive, in the western world, followed the progress of peace, of which it was considered as the symbol. Two centuries after the foundation of Rome, both Italy and Africa were strangers to that useful plant; it was naturalised in those countries; and at last carried into the heart of Spain and Gaul. The timid errors of the ancients, that it required a certain degree of heat, and could only flourish in the neighbourhood of the sea, were instantly exploded by industry and experience. The cultivation of

Burgundy. 38

Flam. Hist. Rom. 1. 3.
flax was transported from Egypt to Gaul, and enriched the whole country, however it might impoverish the particular lands on which it was grown. 3. The use of artificial grasses became familiar to the farmers both of Italy and the provinces, particularly the Lucerne, which derived its name and origin from Modia. The expected supply of wholesome and plentiful food for the cattle during winter, multiplied the number of the flocks and herds, which in their turn contributed to the fertility of the soil. To all these improvements may be added an amitious attention to vine and fisheries, by employing a multitude of laborious hands, and to increase the pleasures of the rich, and the subsistence of the poor. The elegant treatise of Columella describes the advanced state of the Spanish husbandry, under the reign of Tiberius; and it may be observed, that those families, which so frequently afflicted the infant republic, were seldom or never experienced by the extensive empire of Rome. The accidental scarcity, in any single province, was immediately relieved by the plenty of its more fortunate neighbours.

Agriculture is the foundation of manufacture; since the productions of nature are the materials of art. Under the Roman empire the labour of an industrious and vigorous people was variously, but incessantly employed in the service of the rich. In their cellars, their table, their houses, and their furniture, the favourites of fortune united every refinement of convenience, of elegance, and of splendor, whatever could soothe their pride, or gratify their sensuality. Such refinements, under the odious name of luxury, have been severely arraigned by the moralists of every age; and it might perhaps be more conducive to the virtue, as well as happiness, of mankind, if all possessed the necessaries, and were the superfluities of life. But in the present imperfect condition of society, luxury, though it may proceed from vice or folly, seems to be the only means that can correct the unequal distribution of property. The diligent mechanic, and the skillful artist, who have obtained no share in the division of the earth, receive a voluntary tax from the possessors of land; and the latter are prompted, by a sense of interest, to improve those estates, with whose produce they may purchase additional pleasures. This operation, the particular effects of which are felt in every society, acted with much more diffusive energy in the Roman world. The provinces would soon have been exhausted of their wealth, if the manufactures and commerce of luxury had not insensibly restored to the industrious subjects the sums which were exacted from them by the arms and authority of Rome. As long as the circulation was confined within the bounds of the empire, it impressed the political machine with a new degree of activity, and its consequences, sometimes beneficial, could never become pernicious. But it is no easy task to confine luxury within the limits of an empire. The most remote countries of the ancient world were remissed to supply the pomp and delicacy of Rome. The forest of Scythia afforded some valuable furs. Amber was brought over land from the shores of the Baltic to the Danube; and the barbarians were astonished at the price which they received in exchange for so useless a commodity. There was a considerable demand for Babylonian carpets, and other manufactures of the East; but the most important and unprofitable branch of foreign trade was carried on with Arabia and India. Every year, about the time of the summer solstice, a fleet of an hundred and twenty vessels sailed from Myos-Hormos, a port of Egypt, on the Red Sea. By the periodical assistance of the monsoons, they traversed the ocean in about forty days. The coast of Malabar, or the island of Ceylon, was the usual term of their navigation, and it was in these markets that the merchants from the more remote countries of Asia expected their arrival. The return of the fleet of Egypt was fixed to the months of December or January; and as soon as their rich cargo had been transported on the banks of canals, from the Red Sea to the Nile, and had descended that river as far as Alexandria, it was poured, without delay, into the capital of the empire. The objects of oriental traffic were splendid and trifling; silk, a pound of which was esteemed not inferior in value to a pound of gold; precious stones, among which the pearl claimed the first rank after the diamond; and a variety of aromatics, that were consumed in religious worship and the pomp of funerals. The labour and risk of the voyage was rewarded with almost incredible profits; but the profit was made upon Roman subjects, and a few individuals were enriched at the expense of the public. As the natives of Arabia and India, who were contented with the productions and manufactures of their own country, silver, on the side of the Romans, was the principal, if not the only instrument of commerce. It was a complaint worthy of the gravity of the senate, that, in the pursuit of female ornaments, the wealth of the state was irrecoverably given away to foreign and hostile nations. 36. The number is computed, by a writer of an inquisitive but cursorious temper, at upwards of eight hundred thousand pounds sterling. Such was the style of disbursements, brailing over the dark prospect of approaching poverty. And yet, if we compare the proportion between gold and silver, as it stood in the time of Pliny, and

39 [Page 21, line 6] 34. Agricola, ii. c. 14. The phrase is not so consistently used as in modern times.
35 [Page 21, line 12] 44. Pliny, Hist. Nat. viii. 79. A silk garment was considered as an essential part of his dress.
36 [Page 21, line 16] 54. The same great port figures were the same as in presence, Van den and Carra, in their maps. The distance of the kingdom of Egypt from the island of Ceylon, was 8200 miles, which is described in the Voyages de Tourne.
as it was fixed in the reign of Constantine, we shall discover within that period a very considerable increase. There is not the least reason to suppose that gold was become more scarce; it is therefore evident that silver was grown more common; that whatever might be the amount of the Indian and Arabian exports, they were far from exhausting the wealth of the Roman world; and that the produce of the mines abundantly supplied the demands of commerce.

Notwithstanding the propensity of mankind to exalt the past, and to depreciate the present, the tranquil and prosperous state of the empire was warmly felt, and honestly confessed, by the provincials as well as Romans. "They acknowledged that the true principles of social life, laws, agriculture, and science, which had been first invented by the wisdom of Athens, were now firmly established by the power of Rome, under whose auspices influence the harvest, the seasons were united by an equal government and common languages. They affirm, that with the improvement of the arts, the human species was vastly multiplied. They celebrate the increasing splendour of the cities, the beautiful face of the country, cultivated and adorned like an immense garden; and the long festival of peace, which was enjoyed by so many nations, forgetful of their ancient animosities, and delivered from the apprehension of future danger." Whatever suspicions may be suggested by the air of rhetoric and declamation, which seems to prevail in these passages, the substance of them is perfectly agreeable to historic truth.

It was scarcely possible that the idle eyes of contemporaries should discover in the public fidelity the latent sources of decay and corruption. This long peace, and the uniform government of the Romans, introduced a slow and secret poison into the vital of the empire. The minds of men were gradually reduced to the same level, the fire of genius was extinguished, and even the military spirit evaporated. The natives of Europe were brave and robust. Spain, Gaul, Britain, and Illyrium, supplied the legions with excellent soldiers, and constituted the real strength of the monarchy. Their personal valor remained, but they no longer possessed that public courage which is nourished by the love of independence, the sense of national honor, the presence of danger, and the habit of command. They received lives and governs from the will of their sovereign, and trusted for their defense to a mercenary army. The propensity of their boldest leaders was contented with the rank of citizens and subjects. The most aspiring spirits resorted to the court or standard of the emperors; and the despotic provinces, deprived of political strength or union, insensibly sunk into the last indifferent of private life.

The love of letters, almost ineradicable from peace and refinement, was fashionable among the subjects of Hadrian and the Antonines, who were themselves the sons of learning and curiosity. It was diffused over the whole extent of their empire; the most northern tribes of Britons had acquired a taste for rhetoric; Homer as well as Virgil were translated and studied on the banks of the Rhine and Danube; and the most liberal scholars sought out the faintest glimpse of literary merit. The sciences of physic and astronomy were successfully cultivated by the Greeks; the observations of Ptolemy and the writings of Galen are studied by those who have improved their discoveries and corrected their errors; but if we except the inimitable Lucian, this age of indolence passed away without having produced a single writer of original genius, or who excelled in the arts of elegant composition. The authority of Plato and Aristotle, of Zeno and Epicurus, still reigned in the schools; and their systems, transmitted with blind deference from one generation of disciples to another, precluded every genuine attempt to exercise the powers, or enlarge the limits, of the human mind. The blemishes of the poets and orators, instead of kindling a fire like their own, inspired only cold and sordid imitations; or if any ventured to deviate from these models, they deviated at the same time from good sense and propriety. On the revival of letters, the youthful vigour of the imagination, after a long repose, inspired emulation, a new religion, new languages, and a new world, called forth the genius of Europe. But the provincials of Rome, trained by an uniform artificial education, were engaged in a very unequal competition with those bold ancients, who, by expressing their genuine feelings in their native tongue, had already occupied every place of honour. The name of Poes was almost forgotten; that of Ovid was eclipsed by the sophists. A cloud of critics, of compilers, of commentators, darkened the face of learning, and the signal genius was soon followed by the corruption of taste.

The sublime Longinus, who in somewhat a later period, and in the court of a Syrian queen, preserved the spirit of ancient Athens, oracular and luminous this degeneracy of his contemporaries, which deformed their sentiments, extinguished their courage, and depressed their talents. "In the same manner," says he, "as some children always remain pigeons, whose infant limbs have been too closely confined; thus our tender minds, betrays by the prejudices and habits of a just servitude, are unable to expand themselves, or to attain that well-proportioned greatness which we sometimes admire in the philosophy of a philosopher who was a thousand times better than them at five and tenn years old."
and suffered not the pleasing dream to be interrupted by the memory of their old tumultuous freedom. With its power, the senate had lost its dignity; many of the most noble families were extinct. The republicans of spirit and ability had perished in the field of battle, or in the proscription. The door of the assembly had been designately left open for a mixed multitude of more than a thousand persons, who reflected disgrace upon their rank, instead of deriving honour from it.

The reformation of the senate was the first step in which Augustus laid aside the tyrant, and professed himself the father of his country. He was elected censor; and, in concert with his faithful Agrippa, he examined the list of the senators; expelled a few members, whose sires or whose offspring required a public example; pardoned near two hundred to prevent the shame of an expulsion, by a voluntary retreat; raised the qualification of a senator to about ten thousand pounds; created a sufficient number of juridical families; and accepted for himself the honourable title of Prince of the Senate, which had always been bestowed by the censors on the citizen the most eminent for his honours and services. But whilst he thus restored the dignity, he destroyed the independence of the senate. The principles of a free constitution are irrecoverably lost when the legislative power is usurped by the executive.

Before an assembly thus uninhabited and unadorned, Augustus pronounced a studied eulogy, which displayed his patriotism, and disguised his ambition. "He lamented, yet excused, the past conduct. Filial duty had required at his hands the revenge of his father's murder; the humanity of his own nature had sometimes given way to the stern laws of necessity, and to a forced connection with two unworthy colleagues; as long as Antony lived, the republic forbid him to abandon her to a degenerate Roman, and a barbarian queen. He was now at liberty to satisfy his duty and his inclination. He solemnly restored the senate and people to all their ancient rights; and wished only to mingle with the crowd of his fellow-citizens, and to share the blessings which he had obtained for his country."

It would require the pen of Tacitus (if Tacitus had assisted at this assembly) to describe the violent emotions of the senate; those that were suppressed, and those that were affected. It was dangerous to trust the sincerity of Augustus; to seem to esteem it was still more dangerous. The respective advantages of monarchy and a republic have often divided speculative enquirers; the present greatness of the Roman state, the corruption of manners, and the licentiousness of the soldiers, supplied new arguments to the advocates of monarchy, and these general views of government were again warred by the...
THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAPTER II

hopes and fears of each individual. Amidst this confusion of sentiments, the answer of the senate was unanimous and decisive. They refused to accept the resignation of Augustus; they conjured him not to desert the republic, which he had saved. After a decent resistance, the crafty tyrant submitted to the orders of the senate, and consented to receive the government of the provinces, and the general command of the Roman armies under the well-known title of Pretor, Augustus, and Imperator. 5 But he would receive them only for ten years. Even before the expiration of that period, he hoped that the wounds of civil discord would be completely healed, and that the republic, restored to its pristine health and vigour, would no longer require the dangerous interposition of so extraordinary a magistrate. The memory of this comedy, repeated several times during the life of Augustus, was preserved to the last ages of the empire, by the peculiar pun with which the perpetual vacancies of Rome were solemnised the tenth years of their reign. 6

Without any violation of the principles of the constitution, the general of the Roman armies might receive and exercise an authority almost despotic over the soldiers, the enemies, and the subjects of the republic. With regard to the soldiers, the jealousies of freedom had, even from the earliest ages of Rome, given way to the hopes of conquest, and to a just sense of military discipline. The dictator, or consul, had a right to command the service of the Roman youths; and to punish an obstinate or cowardly disobedience by the most severe and ignominious penalties, by stripping the delinquent out of the list of citizens, by confiscating his property, and by selling his person into slavery. The most sacred rights of freedom, confirmed by the Persian and Scipionic laws, were suspended by the military engagement. In his camp the general exercised an absolute power of life and death; his jurisdiction was not confined by any forms of trial, or rules of proceeding; and the execution of the sentence was immediate and without appeal. 7 The choice of the emperors of Rome was regularly decided by the legislative authority. The most important resolutions of peace and war were seriously debated in the senate, and solemnly ratified by the people. But when the arms of the legions were carried to a great distance from Italy, the generals assumed the liberty of directing them against whatever people, and in whatever manner, they judged most advantageous for the public service. It was from the success, not from the justice, of their enterprises that they expected the honours of a triumph. In the use of victory, especially after they were no longer controlled by the commissioners of the senate, they exercised the most

unbounded despotism. When Pompey commanded in the east, he rewarded his soldiers and allies, detested princes, divided kingdoms, founded colonies, and distributed the treasures of Mithridates. On his return to Rome, he obtained, by a single act of the senate and people, the universal ratification of all his proceedings. 8 Such was the power over the soldiers, and over the enemies of Rome, which was either granted to, or assumed by, the generals of the republic. They were at the same time the governors, or rather monarchs, of the conquered provinces, united the civil with the military character, administered justice as well as the finances, and exercised both the executive and legislative power of the state.

From what has been already observed in the first chapter of this work, some notion may be formed of the armies and provinces thus intrusted to the ruling hand of Augustus. But as it was impossible that he could personally command the legions of so many distant frontiers, he was inflamed by the senate, as Pompey had already been, in the permission of devolving the execution of his great office on a sufficient number of lieutenants. In rank and authority these officers seemed not inferior to the ancient proconsuls; but their station was dependent and precarious. They received and held their commissions at the will of a superior, to whose caprice the influence of the merit of their actions was legally attributed. They were the representatives of the emperor. The emperor alone was the general of the republic, and his jurisdiction, civil as well as military, extended over all the conquests of Rome. It was some satisfaction, however, to the senate, that he always delegated his power to the members of their body. The imperial lieutenants were of consular or praetorian dignity: the legions were commanded by senators, and the propectre of Egypt was the only important trust committed to a Roman knight.

Within six days after Augustus had been compelled to accept so very liberal a grant, he resolved to gratify the pride of the senate by an easy sacrifice. He represented to them, that they had enlarged his powers, even beyond that degree which might be required by the melancholy condition of the times. They had not permitted him to refuse the laborious command of the armies and the frontiers; but he must insist on being allowed to restore the more peaceful and secure provinces to the mild administration of the civil magistrate. In the division of the provinces, Augustus provided for his own power, and for the dignity of the republic. The provinces of Asia, particularly those of Asia, Greece, and Africa,
enjoyed a more honourable character than the lieutenants of the emperor, who commanded in Gaul or Syria. The former were attended by licent, the latter by soldiers. A law was passed, that wherever the emperor was present, his extraordinary commission should supersede the ordinary jurisdiction of the governor; a custom was introduced, that the new conquests belonged to the Imperial portion; and it was soon discovered that the authority of the Prince, the favourite epithet of Augustus, was the same in every part of the empire.

In return for this imaginary cession, Augustus obtained an important privilege, which rendered him master of Rome and Italy. By a dangerous exception to the ancient maxim, he was authorised to preserve his military command, supported by a numerous body of guards, even in time of peace, and in the heart of the capital. His command, indeed, was confined to those citizens who were engaged in the service by the military oath; but such was the prosperity of the Romans to servitude, that the oath was voluntarily taken by the magistrates, the senators, and the equestrian order; till the homage of flattery was insensibly converted into an annual and solemn profession of fidelity.

Command and Power. Although Augustus considered a military force as the firmest foundation, he wisely rejected it, as a very odious instrument of government. It was more agreeable to his temper, as well as to his policy, to reign under the venerable names of ancient majesty, and artfully to collect, in his own person, all the scattered rays of civil jurisdiction. With this view, he permitted the senate to confer upon him; for his life, the powers of the consular and tribunatian offices, which were, in the same manner, continued to all his successors. The consul had succeeded to the kings of Rome, and represented the dignity of the state. They superintended the ceremonies of religion, levied and commanded the legions, gave audience to foreign ambassadors, and presided in the assemblies both of the senate and people. The general control of the finances was intrusted to their care; and though they seldom had leisure to administer justice in person, they were considered as the supreme guardians of law, equity, and the public peace. Such was their ordinary jurisdiction; but whenever the senate empowered the first magistrate to consult the safety of the commonwealth, he was raised by that degree above the laws, and exercised, in the defence of liberty, a temporary despotism. The character of the tribunes was, in every respect, different from that of the consuls. The appearance of the former was modest and hum

ble; but their persons were sacred and inviolable. Their force was suited rather for opposition than for action. They were intituled to defend the oppressed, to pardon offences, to arraign the enemies of the people, and, when they judged it necessary, to stop, by a single word, the whole machine of government. As long as the republic subsisted, the dangerous influence, which either the consul or the tribune might derive from their respective jurisdiction, was diminished by several important restrictions. Their authority expired with the year in which they were elected; the former office was divided between two, the latter among ten persons; and, as both in their private and public interest they were adverse to each other, their mutual conflicts contributed, for the most part, to strengthen rather than to destroy the balance of the constitution. But when the consular and tribunatian powers were united, when they were vested for life in a single person, when the general of the army was, at the same time, the minister of the senate and the representative of the Roman people, it was impossible to resist the exercise, nor was it easy to define the limits, of his imperial prerogative.

To these accumulated honours, Imperial power was added; and the policy of Augustus soon added to the splendid as well as important dignities of supreme pontiff, and censor. By the former he acquired the management of the religion, and, by the latter a legal inspection over the manners and fortunes, of the Roman people. If so many distinct and independent powers did not exactly unite with each other, the compliance of the senate was prepared to supply every deficiency by the most ample and extraordinary concessions. The emperors, as the first ministers of the republic, were exempted from the obligation and penalty of many inconvenient laws; they were authorised to convene the senate, to make several motions in the same way, to recommend candidates for the honours of the state, to enlarge the bounds of the city, to employ the revenue at their discretion, to declare peace and war; to ratify treaties; and, by a most comprehensive clause, they were empowered to execute whatsoever they should judge advantageous to the empire, and agreeable to the majesty of things private or public, human or divine.

When all the various powers of executive government were committed to the Imperial magistrate, the ordinary magistrates of the commonwealth languished in obscurity, without vigour, and almost without business. The names and forms of the ancient administrations were preserved by Augustus with the most anxious care. The usual number of consuls, praetors, and tribunes, were annually invested with their respective assises of office.

11 See the Appendix, III. 31. 32 gives the consulat office the name of praetor. 31. 32 give the same point to the imperial constitution. The description was repeated and modified at Rome. 33 A divided tribunat power from the ancient office was given to the new system, which it was given as a reward for having so aban- doned to the Romans the senate and the army, both objects of his ambitious schemes. 34 As the description from Rome, was taken to the last detail, as the model. 35 The same form, as well as the description, from Rome, was taken to the last detail, as the model. 36 Augustus, as well as his successors, adhered, however, to the old as to the ancient form.
and continued to discharge some of their least important functions. These honours still attracted the vain ambition of the Romans; and the emperors themselves, though invested for life with the powers of the consuls, frequently aspired to the title of that annual dignity, which they considered to share with the most illustrious of their fellow-citizens. But in the election of these magistrates, the people, during the reign of Augustus, were permitted to expose all the inconveniences of a wild democracy. That artful prince, instead of discovering the least symptom of impatience, humbly submitted their suffrages for himself or his friends, and scrupulously practised all the duties of an ordinary candidate. But we may venture to ascribe to his councils, the first measure of the succeeding reign, by which the elections were transferred to the senate. The assemblies of the people were for ever abolished, and the emperors were delivered from a dangerous multitude, who, without restoring liberty, might have disturbed, and perhaps endangered, the established government.

By declaring themselves the protectors of the people, Marcus and Caesar had subverted the constitution of their country. But as soon as the senate had been humbled and disarmed, such an assembly, consisting of five or six hundred persons, was found a much more tractable and useful instrument of dominion. It was on the dignity of the senate that Augustus and his successors founded their new empire; and they affected, on every occasion, to adopt the language and principles of patriots. In the administration of their own powers, they frequently consulted the great national council, and ceased to refer to its decision the most important concerns of peace and war. Rome, Italy, and the internal provinces, were subject to the immediate jurisdiction of the senate. With regard to civil objects, it was the supreme court of appeal; with regard to criminal matters, a tribunal, constituted for the trial of all offenses that were committed by men in any public station, or that affected the peace and majesty of the Roman people. The exercise of the judicial power became the most frequent and serious occupation of the senate; and the important causes that were pleaded before them, afforded a last refuge to the spirit of ancient eloquence. As a council of state, and as a court of justice, the senate possessed very considerable prerogatives; but in its legislative capacity, in which it was supposed virtually to represent the people, the rights of sovereignty were acknowledged to reside in that assembly. Every power was derived from their authority, every law was ratified by their sanction. Their regular meetings were held on three stated days in every month, the kalends, the nones, and the ides. The debates were conducted with decent freedom; and the emperors themselves, who gloried in the name of senators, sat, voted, and divided with their equals.

To resume, in a few words, the system of the imperial government; as it was instituted by Augustus, and maintained by those princes who understood their own interest and that of the people, it may be defined an absolute monarchy disguised by the forms of a commonwealth. The masters of the Roman world surrounded their thrones with darkness, concealed their irresistible strength, and humbly professed themselves the accountable ministers of the senate, whose supreme decrees they dictated and obeyed.

The face of the court corresponded with the forms of the administration. The emperors, if we except those tyrants whose expressions folly violated every law of nature and decency, disdained that pomp and ceremony which might offend their countrymen, but could add nothing to their real power. In all the offices of life, they affected to conform themselves with their subjects, and manifested with them an equal intercourse of visits and entertainments. Their habit, their palace, their table, were suited only to the rank of an ancient senator. Their family, however, numerous or splendid, was composed entirely of their domestic slaves and freedmen. Augustus or Trajan would have blushed at employing the munificence of the House in those mental offices, which, in the household and bed-chamber of a limited monarch, are so eagerly solicited by the princes of Britain.

The dedication of the emperors is the only instance in which they departed from their well-accustomed prudence and modesty. The Augustan Games were the first inventors, the successors of Alexander the first objects, of this servile and impious mode of amusements. It was easily transferred from the kings to the governors of Asia; and the Romans magistrates very frequently were adored as provincial deities, with the pomp of altars and temples, of festivals and sacrifices. It was natural that the emperors should not refer what the provincials had accepted; and the divine honours which both the one and the other received from the provinces, attested, rather the despotism than the sincerity of Rome. But the conquerors soon imitated the voluptuous nations in the arts of flattery; and the impious spirit of the first Caesar too easily consented to assume, during his lifetime, a place among the titular deities of Rome. The mildness temper of his successor declined so dangerous an ambition, which was never afterwards received, except by

| 59 The emperors themselves, who gloried in the name of senators, sat, voted, and divided with their equals. The debates were conducted with decent freedom; and the emperors themselves, who gloried in the name of senators, sat, voted, and divided with their equals. To resume, in a few words, the system of the imperial government; as it was instituted by Augustus, and maintained by those princes who understood their own interest and that of the people, it may be defined an absolute monarchy disguised by the forms of a commonwealth. The masters of the Roman world surrounded their thrones with darkness, concealed their irresistible strength, and humbly professed themselves the accountable ministers of the senate, whose supreme decrees they dictated and obeyed.

| 18 | The senate, however, was the most important of the three branches of the government. The emperor had the power of declaring war and peace, but not of initiating it; he could only propose to the senate the carrying it into execution, and his power was limited by the Senate to the securing the empire from foreign enemies and the protection of the commonwealth.

| 19 | The Senate was the oldest of the three branches of the government. It consisted of the nobles and wealthy citizens of Rome, and was the only body in which the Roman people was represented. The Senate was consulted on all important matters, and its decisions were regarded as binding on all the citizens of the empire. It was also the court of appeals for the provinces, and the highest court of justice in the empire.

| 20 | The people of Italy were governed by magistrates chosen by popular election. The people had the power of electing the magistrates, and of deposing them at pleasure. The people also had the power of assembling to register the laws, and to vote on all important matters. The people were represented in the Senate by the consuls and tribunes of the people, and by the national council, consisting of the senators and the people.

| 21 | The cities of Italy were governed by magistrates chosen by the citizens. The citizens were represented in the Senate by the consuls and tribunes of the people, and by the national council, consisting of the senators and the people.

| 22 | The cities of Italy were governed by magistrates chosen by the citizens. The citizens were represented in the Senate by the consuls and tribunes of the people, and by the national council, consisting of the senators and the people.

| 23 | The cities of Italy were governed by magistrates chosen by the citizens. The citizens were represented in the Senate by the consuls and tribunes of the people, and by the national council, consisting of the senators and the people.

| 24 | The cities of Italy were governed by magistrates chosen by the citizens. The citizens were represented in the Senate by the consuls and tribunes of the people, and by the national council, consisting of the senators and the people.

| 25 | The cities of Italy were governed by magistrates chosen by the citizens. The citizens were represented in the Senate by the consuls and tribunes of the people, and by the national council, consisting of the senators and the people.

| 26 | The cities of Italy were governed by magistrates chosen by the citizens. The citizens were represented in the Senate by the consuls and tribunes of the people, and by the national council, consisting of the senators and the people.

| 27 | The cities of Italy were governed by magistrates chosen by the citizens. The citizens were represented in the Senate by the consuls and tribunes of the people, and by the national council, consisting of the senators and the people.

| 28 | The cities of Italy were governed by magistrates chosen by the citizens. The citizens were represented in the Senate by the consuls and tribunes of the people, and by the national council, consisting of the senators and the people.

| 29 | The cities of Italy were governed by magistrates chosen by the citizens. The citizens were represented in the Senate by the consuls and tribunes of the people, and by the national council, consisting of the senators and the people.
the madness of Caligula and Domitian. Augustus permitted indeed some of the provincial cities to erect temples to his honour, on condition that they should associate the worship of Rome with that of the sovereign; he tolerated private superstition, of which he might be the object; but he contended with himself with being revered by the senate and people in his human character, and wisely left to his successor the care of his public delation. A regular custom was introduced, that on the decease of every emperor, who had neither lived nor died like a tyrant, the senate, by a solemn decree, should place him in the number of the gods; and the ceremonies of Apotheosis were blended with those of his funeral. This legal, and, as it should seem, injudicious, proclamation, so abhorrent to our stricter principles, was received with a very faint murmur, by the easy nature of polytheism; but it was received as an institution, not of religion but of policy. We should disgrace the virtues of the Antonines, by comparing them with the vices of Heracles and Jupiter. Even the characters of Caesar and Augustus were far superior to those of the popular deities. But it was the misfortune of the former to live in an enlightened age, and their actions were too faithfully recorded to admit of such a mixture of facts and mystery, as the devotion of the vulgar requires. As soon as their divinity was established by law, it sunk into oblivion, without contributing either to their own fame, or to the dignity of succeeding princes.

In the consideration of the Imperial government, we have frequently mentioned the artful founder, under his well-known title of Augustus, which was not however conferred upon him till the edifice was almost completed. The obscure name of Octavian he derived from a mean family, in the little town of Acria. It was stained with the blood of the proscripion; and he was desirous, lest it should possible, to erase all memory of his former life. The illustrious surname of Caesar, he had assumed, as the adopted son of the dictator; but he had too much good sense, either to be thus confounded, or to wish to be compared, with that extraordinary man. It was proposed in the senate to dignify their minister with a new appellation; and after a very serious discussion, that of Augustus was chosen, among several others, as being the most expressive of the character of peace and sanctity, which he uniformly adhered to. Augustus was therefore a personal, Cesar a family distinction. The former should naturally have expired with the prince on whom it was bestowed; and however the latter was diffused by adoption and female alliance. Nero was the last prince who could allege any hereditary claim to the honours of the Julian line. But, at the time of his death, the practice of a century had inseparably connected those apppellations with the Imperial dignity, and they have been preserved by a long succession of emperors, Romans, Greeks, Franks, and Germans, from the fall of the republic to the present time. A distinction was, however, soon introduced. The sacred title of Augustus was always reserved for the monarch, whilst the name of Cesar was more freely communicated to his relations; and, from the reign of Hadrian, at least, was appropriated to the second person in the state, who was considered as the presumptive heir of the empire.

The tender respect of Augustus for a true constitution which he had destroyed, can only be explained by an attentive consideration of the character of that subtle tyrant. A cool head, an unfeeling heart, and a cowardly disposition, prompted him, at the age of nineteen, to assume the mask of hypocrisy, which he never afterwards laid aside. With the same hand, and probably with the same temper, he signed the proscription of Cicero, and the pardon of Crassus. His virtues, and even his vices, were artificial; and according to the various dictates of his interest, he was at first the enemy, and at last the father, of the Roman world.

When he framed the artful system of the Imperial authority, his moderation was inspired by his fears. He wished to deserve the people by an image of civil liberty, and the arms by an image of civil government.

1. The death of Cesar was the turning point of liberty before his eyes. He had laboured for the people's wealth and honours on his adherents; but the most favoured friends of his uncle were in the number of the conspirators. The fidelity of the legions might defend his authority against open rebellion; but their vigilance could not secure his person from the dagger of a determined republican; and the Romans, who revered the memory of Brutus, would applaud the imitation of his virtue. Cesar had provoked his fate, as much by the ostentation of his power, as by his power itself. The council or the tribune might have regained in peace. The title of king had armed the Romans against his life. Augustus was sensible that mankind is governed by names; nor was he deceived in his expectation, that the senate and people would submit to slavery, provided they were respectfully assured, that they still enjoyed their ancient freedom. A feeble sense and extravert people cheerfully acquiesced in the pleasing illusion, as long as it was supported by the virtues, or even by the prudence, of the successors of Augustus. It was a motive of self-preservation, not a principle of liberty, that animated the conspirators against Caligula, Nero, and Domitian. They attacked the person of the tyrant, without aiming their blow at the authority of the emperor.

There appears, indeed, one memorable occasion, in which the senate after the death of Augustus, met in a state of agitation.

Amount of the memorable occasion, in which the senate after the death of Augustus met in a state of agitation.

Augustus (the first of the Markian, s. 615, and afterwards Augustus (the second of the Markian, s. 615, was still the same year. The emperor died, and the senate met in a state of agitation, without any suspicion of danger; but when they heard the charge of public necessity, and devised it in the pursuit of philosophy, they datos the empire to the son of Augustus; and, at Osmunda, and in other cities.

17. If the emperor died after the establishment of autocracy, the senate made the choice of Brutus as a model of Roman virtue.
short, though violent, eruption of military licence, the two centuries from Augustus to Commodus passed away unstained with civil blood, and undisturbed by revolutions. The emperor was elected by the authority of the senate, and the consent of the soldiers. The legions respected their oath of fidelity; and it requires a minute inspection of the Roman annals to discover three insignificant rebellions, which were all suppressed in a few months, and without even the hazard of a battle.

In elective monarchies, the vacancy of the throne is a moment big with danger and mischief. The Roman emperors, desirous to spare the legions that interval of suspense, and the temptation of an irregular choice, invested their designee successor with a large share of present power, as should enable him, after their decease, to assume the remainder, without suffering the empire to perceive the change of masters. Thus Augustus, after all his fairer prospects had been washed from him by intemperate deaths, rested his last hopes on Tiberius, obtained for his adopted son the censorship and tribunitian powers, and dictated a law, by which the future prince was invested with an authority equal to his own, over the provinces and the army. Thus Vespasius subdued the generous mind of his eldest son. Titus was adored by the eastern legions, which, under his command, had recently achieved the conquest of Judaea. His power was dreaded, and, as his virtues were clouded by the intemperance of youth, his designs were suspected. Instead of listening to such unworthy suspicions, the prudent monarch associated Titus to the full powers of the Imperial dignity; and the grateful son ever approved himself the humble and faithful minister of so indulgent a father.

The good sense of Vespasian engaged him indeed to embrace every measure that might confirm his recent and precarious elevation. The military oath, and the fidelity of the troops, had been consecrated, by the habits of an hundred years, to the name and family of the Caesars; and, although that family had been continued only by the fictitious rite of adoption, the Romans still revered, in the person of Nero, the grandson of Germanicus, and the lineal successor of Augustus. It was not without reluctance and remonstrance that the praetorian guards had been persuaded to abandon the cause of the tyrant. The rapid downfall of Otho, Vitellius, taught the armies to consider the emperors as the creatures of their will, and the instruments of their licence. The birth of Vespasian was mean; his grandfather had been a private soldier, his father a petty officer of the revenue; his own merit

Abbreviations:
had raised him, in an advanced age, to the empire; but his merit was rather useful than shining, and his virtues were disfigured by a strict, and even sordid, parsimony. Such a prince consulted his true interest by the association of a son, whose more splendid and amiable character might turn the public attention from the obscure origin, to the future glories, of the Flavian house. Under the mild administration of Titus, the Roman world enjoyed a transient felicity; and his beloved memory served to protect, above fifteen years, the views of his brother Domitian.

Nerva had scarcely accepted the purple from the assassins of Domitian, before he discovered that his feeble age was unable to stem the torrent of public disorders which had multiplied under the long tyranny of his predecessor. His mild disposition was respected by the good; but the degenerate Romans required a more vigorous character, whose justice should strike terror into the guilty. Though he had several relations, he fixed his choice on a stranger. He adopted Trajan, then about forty years of age, and who commanded a powerful army in the Lower Germany; and immediately, by a decree of the senate, declared him his colleague and successor in the empire. 

It is sincerely to be lamented, that whilst we are fatigued with the disgusting relations of Nero’s crimes and follies, we are reduced to collect the actions of Trajan from the glimmerings of an abridgment, or the doubtful light of a tamegyric. There remains, however, one panegyric far removed beyond the suspicion of flattery. Above two hundred and fifty years after the death of Trajan, the senate, in pouring out the eulogium acclamations on the accession of a new emperor, wished that he might surpass the felicity of Augustus, and the virtue of Trajan.

A.D. 117. We may readily believe that the father of his country hesitated whether he ought to intrust the various and doubtful character of his kinsman Hadrian with sovereign power. In his last moments, the acts of the empress Plotina either fixed the irresolution of Trajan, or boldly supposed a fictitious adoption, the truth of which could not be safely disputed, and Hadrian was peaceably acknowledged as his lawful successor. Under his reign, as has been already mentioned, the empire flourished in peace and prosperity. He encouraged the arts, reformed the laws, asserted military discipline, and visited all his provinces in person. His vast and active genius was equally salutary to the most enlarged views, and the minute details of civil policy. But the ruling passions of his soul were curiosity and vanity. As they prevailed, and as they were attracted by different objects, Hadrian was, by turns, an excellent prince, a ridiculous sophist, and a jealous tyrant. The general tenour of his conduct deserved praise for its equity and moderation: yet in the first days of his reign he put to death four consulare senators, his personal enemies, and men who had been judged worthy of empire; and the insensibility of a painful illness rendered him, at last, peaceful and cruel. The senate debated whether they should pronounce him a god or a tyrant; and the honours decreed to his memory were granted to the prayers of the pious Antoninus.

The caprice of Hadrian influenced his choice of a successor. After revolving in his mind several men of distinguished merit whom he esteemed and hated, he adopted Eleus Verus, a gay and voluptuous nobleman, recommended by uncommon beauty to the lover of Antinous. But whilst Hadrian was delighting himself with his own applause and the acclamations of the soldiers, whose consent had been secured by an immense dative, the new Cesar was exiled from his embraces by an untimely death. He left only one son. Hadrian commanded the boy to the grateful Antinous. He was adopted by Pius; and, on the accession of Marcus, was invested with an equal share of sovereign power. Among the many views of this younger Verus, he preferred one virtue: a dutiful reverence for his elder colleague, to whom he willingly abdicated the burdens of empire. The philosophic emperor dissembled his follies, lamented his early death, and cast a decent veil over his memory.

As soon as Hadrian’s passion was resolved to deserve the thanks of posterity, by placing the most exalted merit on the Roman throne. His discerning eye easily discovered a senator about fifty years of age, blameless in all the offices of life; and a youth of about seventeen, whose ripen years opened the fair prospect of every virtue: the choice of these was declared the son and successor of Hadrian; on condition, however, that he himself should immediately adopt the younger. The two Antonines (for it is of them we are now speaking) governed the Roman world forty and two years, with the same invincible spirit of wisdom and virtue. Although Pius had two sons, he preferred the welfare of Rome to the interest of his family; gave his daughter Faustina in marriage to young Marcus; obtained from the senate the tribuniciam and proconsular powers; and, with a subtle discretion, or rather ignominy of jealousy, sentenced him to all the labours of government. Marcus, on the other hand, revered the character of his benefactor, loved him as a parent, obeyed him as his sovereign, and, after he was no more, regulated his own administration by the example and maxim of his predecessor.

Their united reigns are possibly the only period of history in which the happiness of a great people was the sole object of government.
Titus Antoninus Pius has been justly denominated a second Numa. The same love of religion, justice, and peace was the distinguishing characteristic of both princes. But the situation of the latter opened a much larger field for the exercise of those virtues. Numa could only prevent a few neighbouring villages from plundering each other's harvests. Antoninus diffused order and tranquillity over the greatest part of the earth. His reign is marked by the rare advantage of furnishing very few materials for history; which is, indeed, little more than the register of the crimes, follies, and misfortunes of mankind. In private life he was as amiable as well as a good man. The mute simplicity of his virtue was a stranger to vanity or affectation. He enjoyed with moderation the conveniences of his fortune, and the innocent pleasures of society; and the benevolence of his soul displayed itself in a cheerful anxiety of temper.

Of Marcus Antoninus was of a sober and more labious kind. 4 It was the well-earned harvest of many a learned conference, of many a patient lecture, and many a midnight speculation. At the age of twelve years he embraced the right system of the Schools, which taught him to submit his body to his mind, his passions to his reason; to consider virtue as the only good, vice as the only evil, all things external as things indifferent. 5 His meditations, composed in the assiduity of a camp, are still extant: and he even unostentatiously gave lessons of philosophy, in a short public manner, than was perhaps consistent with the modesty of a sage, or the dignity of an emperor. 6 But his life was the noblest commentary on the precepts of Zenos. He was above himself, indulgent to the imperfections of others, just and beneficent to all mankind. He suspected that Atticus Caelius, who excelled a rebel in Syria, had disappointed him, by a voluntary death, of the pleasure of converting an enemy into a friend; and he justified the humanity of the sentiment, by moderating the zeal of the senator against the adherents of the traitor. 7 War he detested, as the disgrace and calamity of human nature; but when the necessity of a just defence called upon him to take up arms, he really exposed his person to eight winters campaigning on the frozen banks of the Danube, the security of which was at last fatal to the weakness of his constitution. His memory was revered by a grateful posterity, and above a century after his death, many persons preserved the image of Marcus Antoninus among those of their household gods.

If a man were to fix the period in the history of the world, during which the condition of the human race was most happy and prosperous, he would, without hesitation, name that which elapsed from the death of Domitian to the accession of Commodus. The vast extent of the Roman empire was governed by absolute power, under the guidance of virtue and wisdom. The arms were restrained by the firm but gentle hand of four successive emperors, whose characters and authority commanded involuntary respect. The forms of the civil administration were carefully preserved by Nerva, Trajan, Hadrian, and the Antonines, who delighted in the image of liberty, and were pleased with considering themselves as the accountable ministers of the laws. Such princes founded the honour of restoring the republic; had the Romans of their days been capable of enjoying a national freedom.

The labours of these monarchs were overpaid by the immense reward that inaciously waited on their success: by the honest pride of virtue, and by the exquisite delight of beholding the general happiness of which they were the authors. A just, but melancholy reflection attended, however, the nobility of human enjoyments. They must often have recollected the instability of a happiness which depended on the character of a single man. The fatal moment was perhaps approaching, when some licentious youth, or some jocund tyrant, would abuse, to the destruction, that absolute power which they had exerted for the benefit of their people. The ideal restrictions of the senate and the laws might serve to display the virtues, but could never correct the vices, of the emperor. The military force was a bilious and irrepressible instrument of oppression; and the corruption of Roman manners would always supply seditious eager to apply, and ministers prepared to serve, the fear or the avarice, the lust or the cruelty, of their masters.

These gloomy apprehensions had been already justified by the experience of the Romans. The monarchs of the emperors exhibited a strong and various picture of human nature, which we should vainly seek among the mixed and doubtful characters of modern history. In the conflict of these monarchs we may trace the utmost lines of vice and virtue; the most elevated production, and the most degenerate of our own species. The golden age of Trajan and the Antonines had been preceded by an age of iron. It is almost superfluous to enumerate the unworthy successors of Augustus. Their unparalleled vices, and the splendid theatre on which they were acted, have saved them from oblivion. The dark intoxicating Tiberius, the furious Caligula, the odious Claudius, the voluptuous and cruel Nero, the guilty Vindiciae, 9 and the

46 Dei he was justly called the just, and universally beloved of the nations.

47 He was then aged 30. His will, for the first time, was not wards to be made; and his will, when he died, was to be made by his father and uncle.

48 The most curious and interesting personages in the Roman world, and the most valued persons in the world, were almost entirely the subject of these letters.

49 The most curious and interesting personages in the Roman world, and the most valued persons in the world, were almost entirely the subject of these letters.

50 The most curious and interesting personages in the Roman world, and the most valued persons in the world, were almost entirely the subject of these letters.
timid inhuman Domitian, are condemned to everlasting infamy. During four score years (excepting only the short and doubtful respite of Vespasian's reign) Rome groaned beneath an unremitting tyranny, which exterminated the ancient families of the republic, and was fatal to almost every virtue, and every talent, that arose in that unhappy period.

Under the reign of these monsters, the slavery of the Romans was accompanied with two peculiar circumstances, the one occasioned by their former liberty, the other by their extensive conquests, which rendered their condition more completely wretched than that of the victims of tyranny in any other age or country. From these causes were derived, 1. The exquisite sensibility of the sufferers; and, 2. The impossibility of escaping from the land of the oppressor.

1. When Persia was governed by the descendants of Sce, a race of princes whose wanton cruelty often stained their diurn, their table, and their bed, with the blood of their favours, there is a saying recorded of a young nobleman. That he never departed from the sultan's presence, without satisfying himself whether his head was still on his shoulders. The experience of every day might almost justify the suspicion of Rustae.

Yet the fatal sword suspended above him by a single thread, seems not to have disturbed the slumber, or interrupted the tranquillity, of the Persian. The monarch's frown, he well knew, could level him with the dust; but the stroke of lightning or apoplexy might be equally fatal, and it was the part of a wise man to forget the inevitable calamities of human life in the enjoyment of the fleeting hour. He was dignified with the appellation of the king's slave; had, perhaps, been purchased from obscure parents, in a country which he had never known; and was trained up from his infancy in the severe discipline of the scragg. His name, his wealth, his honours, were the gift of a master, who might, without injustice, resume what he had bestowed. Rustae's knowledge, if he possessed any, could only serve to confirm his habits by prejudices. His language afforded no words for any form of government, except absolute monarchy. The history of the east informed him, that such had ever been the condition of mankind. The Romans, and the interpreters of that divine book, inculcated to him, that the sultan was the descendant of the prophet, and the viceroy of heaven; that patience was the first virtue of a Mussulman, and unlimited obedience the great duty of a subject.

The minds of the Romans were very differently prepared for slavery. Oppressed beneath the weight of their own corruption and of military violence, they fought for a long while preserved the sentiments, or at least the ideas, of their free-born ancestors. The education of Helvidius and Tussen, of Tacitus and Pliny, was the same as that of Cato and Cicero. From Greek philosophy, they had imbibed the justest and most liberal notions of the dignity of human nature, and the origin of civil society. The history of their own country had taught them to reverence a free, a virtuous, and a victorious commonwealth; to abhor the successful crimes of Caesar and Augustus; and inwardly to despise those tyrants whom they admired with the most abject flattery. As magistrates and senators, they were admitted into the great council, which had once dictated laws to the earth, whose name still gave a sanction to the acts of the monarch, and whose authority was so often prostituted to the vilest purposes of tyranny. Tiberius, and those emperors who adopted his maxims, attempted to disguise their murders by the formularies of justice, and perhaps enjoyed a secret pleasure in rendering the senate their accomplices as well as their victims. By this assembly, the last of the Romans were condemned for imaginary crimes and real virtues. Their infamous accusers assumed the language of independent patriots, who assigned a dangerous citizen before the tribunal of his country; and the public service was rewarded by riches and honours. The servile judges professed to assert the majesty of the commonwealth, violated in the person of its first magistrate, whose dignity they most applauded when they trembled the most at his inexcusable and impending cruelty. The tyrant held his business with just contempt, and encountered their secret sentiments of detestation with silence and assumed favour for the whole body of the senate.

II. The division of Europe into a number of independent states, connected, however, with each other by the general resemblance of religion, language, and manners, is productive of the most beneficial consequences to the liberty of mankind. A modern tyrant, who should find no resistance either in his own breast, or in his people, would soon experience a gentle restraint from the example of his equals, the dread of present revenge, the advice of his allies, and the apprehension of his enemies. The object of his displeasure, escaping from the narrow limits of his dominions, would easily obtain, in a happier climate, a secure refuge, a new fortune adequate to his merit, the freedom of complaint, and perhaps the means of revenge. But the empire of the Romans filled the world, and when that empire fell into the hands of a single person, the world became a safe and summary prison for his enemies. The slave of Imperial domption,
whether he was condemned to drag his gilded chain in bonds and the senate, or to wear out a life of exile on the barren rock of Scipulus, or the frozen banks of the Danube, expect his fate in silent despair. To resist was fatal, and it was impossible to fly. On every side he was encompassed with a vast extent of sea and land, which he could never hope to traverse without being discovered, seized, and restored to his irrupted master. Beyond the frontiers, his anxious view could discover nothing, except the ocean, inhospitable deserts, hostile tribes of barbarians, of fierce manners and unknown language, or dependent kings, who would gladly purchase the emperor's protection by the sacrifice of an obnoxious fugitive. Wherever you are, said Cicero to the exiled Marcellus, remember that you are equally within the power of the conqueror.

CHAP. IV.

The Cruelty, Fall, and Murder of Commodus. — Election of Pertinax. — His attempts to reform the State. — His Assasination by the Praetorian Guards.

The mildness of Marcus, which the rigid discipline of the Stoics was unable to eradicate, formed, at the same time, the most amiable, and the only defective, part of his character. His excellent understanding was often deceived by the unsuspecting goodness of his heart. Artful men, who study the passions of princes, and conceal their own, approached his person in the disguise of philosophic sanctity, and acquired riches and honours by affecting to despise them. His excessive indulgence to his brother, his wife, and his son, exceeded the bounds of private virtue, and became a public injury, by the example and consequence of their vices.

Faustina, the daughter of Pius, and the wife of Marcus, has been as much celebrated for her gallantries as for her beauty. The grave simplicity of the philosopher was ill calculated to engage her wanton levity, nor was that unsentimental passion for variety, which often discovered personal merit for the meanest of mankind. The Cupid of the ancients was, in general, a very sensuous deity; and the amount of an empress, as they exact on her side the plainest advances, are seldom susceptible of much sentimental delicacy. Marcus was the only man in the empire who seemed ignorant or insensible of the irregularities of Faustina; which, according to the prejudices of every age, reflected some disgrace on the injured husband. He promoted several of her lovers to posts of honour and profit, and during a connection of thirty years, invariably gave her proofs of the most tender confidence, and of a respect which ended not with her life. In his Meditations, he thanks the gods, who had bestowed on him a wife, so faithful, so gentle, and of such a wonderful simplicity of manners. The obsequious senate, at his earnest request, declared her a goddess. She was represented in her temple with the attributes of Juno, Venus, and Ceres; and it was decreed, that, on the day of their festivals, the youth of either sex should pay their vows before the altar of their celestial patroness.

The monstrous vices of his son have cast a shade on the purity of the father's virtues. It has been objected to Marcus, that he sacrificed the happiness of millions to a fond partiality for a worthless boy; and that he chose a successor in his own family, rather than in the republic. Nothing, however, was neglected by the anxious father, and by the men of virtue and learning whom he summoned to his assistance, to expand the narrow mind of young Commodus, to correct his growing vices, and to render him worthy of the throne, for which he was designed. But the power of instruction is seldom of much efficacy, except in those happy dispositions where it is almost superfluous. The distasteful lesson of a grave philosopher was, in a moment, obliterated by the whisper of a profligate favourite; and Marcus himself blasted the fruits of this laboured education, by admitting his son, at the age of fourteen or fifteen, to a full participation of the Imperial power. He lived but four years afterwards; but he lived long enough to repent a rash measure, which raised the impetuous youth above the restraint of reason and authority.

Most of the crimes which disturb the internal peace of society are produced by the restraints which are necessary, but unequal laws of property have imposed on the appetites of mankind, by combining too few the possession of those objects that are covered by many. Of all our passions and appetites, the base of power is of the most impetuous and unceasing nature, since the pride of one man requires the submission of the multitude. In the tumult of civil discord, the laws of society lose their force, and their place is seldom supplied by those of humanity. The ardour of contention, the pride of victory, the despair of success, the memory of past injuries, and the fear of future dangers, all contribute to inflame the mind, and to silence the voice of pity. Thus such motives almost every page of history has been stained with civil blood; but these motives will not account for the unprovoked cruelties of Commodus, who had nothing to wish, and every thing to enjoy. The beloved son of Marcus succeeded to his father,
displayed a generosity of sentiment, which might perhaps have ripened into solid virtue. A fatal accident decided his fluctuating character.

One evening, as the emperor was returning to the palace through a dark and narrow portico in the amphitheatre, an assassin, who waited his passage, rushed upon him with a drawn sword, loudly exclaiming, "The senate sends you this." The menace prevented the deed; the assassin was seized by the guards, and immediately revealed the authors of the conspiracy. It had been formed, not in the state, but within the walls of the palace. Lucilla, the emperor's sister, and widow of Lucius Verus, impatient of the second rank, and jealous of the reigning emperor, had armed the murderer against her brother's life. She had not ventured to communicate the black design to her second husband Claudius Pompel- lina, a senator of distinguished merit and unshaken loyalty; but among the crowd of her lovers (for she imitated the manners of Faustina) she found men of desperate fortunes and wild ambition, who were prepared to serve her more violent, as well as her tender passions. The conspirators experienced the rigour of justice, and the abandoned princess was punished, first with exile, and afterwards with death.

But the words of the assassin sunk deep into the mind of Commodus, and left an indelible impression of fear and hatred against the whole body of the senate. Those whom he had dreaded as important ministers, he now suspected as secret enemies. The Delatran, a race of men, discouraged, and almost extinguished, under the former reigns, again became formidable, as soon as they discovered that the emperor was desirous of finding disaffection and treason in the senate. That assembly, whom Marcus had ever considered as the real council of the nation, was composed of the most distinguished of the Romans; and distinction of every kind soon became criminal. The possession of wealth stimulated the diligence of the informers; rigid virtue implied a tacit censure of the irregularities of Commodus; important services implied a dangerous superiority of merit; and the friendship of the father always ensured the aversion of the son. Suspicion was equivalent to proof; trial to condemnation. The execution of a considerable senator was attended with the death of all who might lament or revenge his fate; and when Commodus had once tasted human blood, he became insatiable of pity or remorse.

Of these innocent victims of tyranny, none died more lamented than the two brothers of the Quintilian family, Maximus and Constantius; whose fraternal love had saved their names from oblivion, and endued their memory to posterity. Their sta-
... and their occupations, their pursuits and pleasures, were still the same. In the enjoyment of a great estate, they never admitted the idea of a separate interest; some fragments are now extant of a treatise which they composed in common; and in every action of life it was observed, that their two bodies were animated by one soul. The Autounes, who valued their virtues, and delighted in their union, rais’d them, in the same year, to the consuls and Marcus afterwards intrusted to their joint care. The civil administration of Greece, and a great military command, in which they obtained a signal victory over the Germans. The kind cruelty of Commodus united them in death. 16

The tyrant’s rage, after having shed the noblest blood of the senate, at length recollected the principal instrument of his cruelty. Whilst Commodus was immersed in blood and luxury, he devised the detail of the public business on Perennius; a servile and ambitious minister, who had obtained his post by the murder of his predecessor, but who possessed a considerable share of vigour and ability. By acts of extermination, and the forfeited estates of the nobles, sacrificed to his tyrannical lust, he had accumulated an immense treasure. The praetorian guards were under his immediate command; and his son, who already discovered a military genius, was at the head of the Illyrian legions. Perennius aspired to the empire; or what, in the eyes of Commodus, amounted to the same crime, he was capable of aspiring to it, and he had not been preserved, surpris’d, and put to death. At this juncture, a minister is a very trifling incident in the general history of the empire; but it was hastened by an extraordinary circumstance, which proved how much the nerves of discipline were already relaxed. The legions of Britain, discontented with the administration of Perennius, formed a deputation of fifteen hundred select men, with instructions to march to Rome, and lay their complaints before the emperor. These military petitioners, by their own determined behaviour, by intimidating the officers of the guards, by exaggerating the strength of the British army, and by alarming the fear of Commodus, extorted and obtained the minister’s death, as the only redress of their grievances. 17

The negligence of the public administration was betrayed soon afterwards, by a new disorder, which arose from the smallest beginnings. A spirit of desertion began to prevail among the troops; and the deserters, instead of seeking their safety in flight or concealment, infested the highways. Ma-

---

16 In prose upon the Augusitan History. Commodus has pleased a number of persons here, and is greatly lamented by some remaining. See p. 50. 17 In prose upon the Augusitan History. Commodus has pleased a number of persons here, and is greatly lamented by some remaining. See p. 50. 18 In prose upon the Augusitan History. Commodus has pleased a number of persons here, and is greatly lamented by some remaining. See p. 50.
of the Roman Empire.

Throughout the document, the author describes various aspects of Roman life, the actions of individuals, and the cultural and social changes that occurred during the empire's existence. The text refers to historical figures, events, and the broader context of Roman society. It includes references to specific moments in history, such as the death of Byblus, the execution of Arrius Antoninus, and the reign of Commodus. The narrative style is informative and descriptive, providing a detailed account of the period.

In summary, the document offers a comprehensive view of the Roman Empire, highlighting its cultural, political, and social dimensions. It serves as a valuable resource for understanding the historical context and the evolution of the empire.
in the steadiness of the eye, and the dexterity of the hand.

The servile crowd, whose fortune depended on their master's vices, applauded these ignoble pursuits. The peridious voice of flattery remonstrated with him, that by exploiting the same nature, by the defeat of the Neanum line, and the slaughter of the wild bear of Eeyanuma, the Grecian Hercules had acquired a place among the gods, and an immortal memory among men. They only forgot to observe, that in the first ages of society, when the fierce animals often dispute with man the possession of an unseated country, a successful war against those savages is one of the most innocent and beneficial labours of heroism. In the civilised state of the Roman empire, the wild beasts had long since retired from the face of man, and the neighbourhood of populous cities. To surprise them in their military haunts, and to transport them to Rome, that they might be slain in pomp by the hand of an emperor, was an enterprise equally ridiculous for the prince, and oppressive for the people. Ignorant of these distinctions, Commodus eagerly embraced the glorious re- semblances, and style himself (as we still read on his medals) the Roman Hercules. The club and the lion's hide were placed by the side of the throne, amongst the emblems of sovereignty; and statues were erected, in which Commodus was represented in the character, and with the attributes, of the god, whose valour and dexterity he, with the same, determined to imitate in the daily course of his ferocious amusements.

Elated with these praises, which gradually extinguished the innate sense of shame, Commodus resolved to exhibit, before the eyes of the Roman people, those exercises, which till then he had decently confined within the walls of his palace, and the presence of a few favourites. On the appointed day, the various motives of flattery, fear, and curiosity, attracted to the amphitheatre an innumerable multitude of spectators; and some degree of applause was deservedly bestowed on the uncommon skill of the imperial performer. Whether he aimed at the head or heart of the animal, the wound was alike certain and mortal. With arrows whose point was shaped into the form of a crescent, Commodus often interrupted the rapid career, and cut asunder the long hony neck of the ostrich. A panther was let loose; and the arrow waited till he had leaped upon a trembling malefactor. In the same instant the shaft flew, the beast dropped dead, and the man remained unharmed. The seats of the amphitheatre discharged at once a hundred lions; a hundred

darts from the unerring hand of Commodus hit them dead as they ran raging round the arena. Neither the huge bulk of the elephant, nor the scaly hide of the thimercos, could defend them from his stroke. Athens and India yield their most extraordinary productions; and several animals were slain in the amphitheatre, which had been seen only in the representations of art, or perhaps of fancy. In all these exhibitions, the stern precautions were used to protect the person of the Roman Hercules from the despairing spring of any savage, who might possibly disregard the dignity of the emperor, and the sanctity of the god.

But the meanest of the populace were affected with shame and indignation when they beheld their sovereign enacting the lists as a gladiator, and glory in a profession which the laws and manners of the Romans had branded with the justest note of infamy. He chose the habit and arms of the Scenar, whose combat with the Hercules formed one of the most lively scenes in the bloody sports of the amphitheatre. The Scenar was armed with an helmet, shield, and buckler; his naked antagonist had only a large net and a trident; with the one he endeavoured to entangle, with the other to dispatch his enemy. If he missed the first throw, he was obliged to fly from the pursuit of the Scenar, till he had prepared his net for a second cast. The emperor fought in this character seven hundred and thirty-five several times. These gladiatorial achievements were carefully recorded in the public acts of the empire; and that he might unceasingly be engaged in the school of gladiators, or his own palace, his trained antagonists were frequently furnished with a mortal wound from the hand of Commodus, and obliged to yield to the utmost of their skill.

The name of Paulus, a celebrated senator, was the only one which disgraced his art. It was inscribed on his column, and repeated in the redoubled acclamations of the mournful and applauding senate. Claudius Pompiscornus, the virtuous husband of Lucilla, was the only senator who asserted the honour of his rank. As a father, he permitted his sons to consult their safety by standing the
amphitheatre. As a Roman, he declared, that his own life was in the emperor's hands, but that he would never behold the son of Marcus prostituting his person and dignity. Notwithstanding his manly resolution, Pannonius escaped the resentment of the tyrant; and, with his honour, had the good fortune to preserve his life. 43

Commodus had now attained the summit of vice and infamy. Amidst the acclamations of a flattering court, he was unable to disguise from himself, that he had deserved the contempt and hatred of every man of sense and virtue in his empire. His licentious spirit was irritated by the consciousness of that hatred, by the envy of every kind of merit, by the just apprehension of danger, and by the habit of slaughter, which he contracted in his daily amusements. History has preserved a long list of consular senators sacrificed to this wanton suspicion, which smote out, with peculiar anxiety, those unfortunate persons connected, however remotely, with the family of the Antonines, without sparing even the ministers of his crimes or pleasures. 45 His cruelty proved at last fatal to himself. He had stept with impunity the noblest blood of Rome; he perished as soon as he was dreaded by his old companions and domestics. Marcia, his favourite concubine, Eucherius his chamberlain, and Lactus his prætorian prefect, alarmed by the fate of their companions and predecessors, resolved to prevent the destruction which every hour hung over their heads, either from the mad caprices of the tyrant, or the sudden indignation of the people. Marcia seized the occasion of presenting a draught of wine to her lover, after he had fatigued himself with hunting some wild beasts.

North of Com- mordus, B. s. Commodus retired to sleep; but whilst he was labouring with the effects of poison and drunkenness, a robust youth, by profession a wrestler, entered his chamber, and strangulated him without resistance. The body was secretly conveyed out of the palace, before the least suspicion was entertained in the city, or even in the court, of the emperor's death. Such was the fate of the son of Marcus, and so easy was it to destroy a hated tyrant, who, by the artificial powers of government, had oppressed, during thirteen years, so many millions of subjects, each of whom was equal to their master in personal strength and personal abilities. 46

The measures of the conspirators were conducted with the deliberate coolness and caution which the greatness of the occasion required. They resolved instantly to fill the vacant throne with an emperor, whose character would justify and maintain the action that had been committed. They fixed on Ver- timus, prefect of the city, an ancient senator of consular rank, whose conspicuous merit had broken through the obscurity of his birth, and raised him to the first honours of the state. He had successively governed most of the provinces of the empire; and in all his great employments, military as well as civil, he had uniformly distinguished himself by the firmness, the prudence, and the integrity of his conduct. 47

He now remained almost alone of the friends and ministers of Marcus; and when, at a late hour of the night, he was awakened with the news, that the chamberlain and the prefect were at his door, he received them with interpell resignation, and desired they would execute their master's orders. Instead of death, they offered him the throne of the Roman world. During some moments he distrusted their intentions and assurances. Convinced at length of the death of Commodus, he accepted the purple with a sincere reluctance, the natural effect of his knowledge both of the duties and of the dangers of the supreme rank. 48

Lucius conducted without delay his new emperor to the camp of the praetorians, diffusing at the same moment through the city a reasonable report that Commodus died suddenly of an apoplexy; and that the virtuous Verminus had already succeeded to the throne. The guards were rather surprised than pleased with the suspicious death of a prince, whose indulgence and liberality they alone had experienced; but the emergency of the occasion, the authority of the prefect, the reputation of Verminus, and the clamours of the people, obliged them to stifle their secret discontents, to accept the domineering will of the new emperor, to swear allegiance to him, and with joyful acclamations and laurels in their hands to conduct him to the senate-house, that the military consent might be ratified by the civil authority.

This important night was now far spent; with the dawn of day, and the commencement of the new year, the senators expected a summons to attend an ignominious ceremony. In spite of all re- monstrances, even of those of his creatures, who yet preserved any regard for prudence or decency, Commodus had resolved to pass the night in the gladiators' school, and from thence to take possession of the consulsiply, in the habit and with the attendance of that infernal crew. On a sudden, before the break of day, the senate was called together in the temple of Concord, to meet the guards, and to ratify the election of a new emperor. For a few minutes they sat in silent suspense, doubtful of their unexpected deliverance, and suspicions of the cruel
artless of Commodus; but when at length they were assured that the tyrant was no more, they resigned themselves to all the transports of joy and indignation. Pertinax, who modestly represented the insufficiency of his extraction, and pointed out several noble senators more deserving than himself of the empire, was constrained by their dutiful violence to ascend the throne, and received all the titles of Imperial power, confirmed by the most sincere vows of fidelity. The memory of Commodus was branded with eternal infamy. The names of tyrant, of gladiator, of public enemy, resounded in every corner of the house. They decreed, in tumultuous votes, that his honours should be restored, his titles erased from the public monuments, his statues thrown down, his body dagged with a hook into the stripping room of the gladiators, to satiate the public fury; and they expressed some indignation against those officious servants who had already presumed to screen his remains from the justice of the senate. But Pertinax could not refuse those last残怒 to the memory of Marcus, and the tears of his first protector Claudius Pompelianus, who lamented the cruel fate of his brother-in-law, and lamented still more that he had deserved it.47

The effusions of impotent rage against a dead emperor, whom the senate had flattered while alive with the most abject servility, betrayed a just but ungenerous spirit of revenge. The legality of these decrees was however supported by the principles of the Imperial constitution. To conspire, to depose, or to punish with death, the first magistrature of the republic, who had abused his delegated trust, was the ancient and undisputed prerogative of the Roman senate; 48 but that heinous assembly was obliged to content itself with inflicting on a fallen tyrant that public justice, from which, during his life and reign, he had been shielded by the strong arm of military despotism.

Pertinax found a nobler way of avenging his predecessor's memory: by the contrast of his own virtues with the vices of Commodus. On the day of his accession, he resigned over to his wife and son his whole private fortune; that they might have no pretence to solicit favours at the expense of the state. He refused to flatter the vanity of the former with the title of Augusta; or to corrupt the inexperienced youth of the latter by the rank of Caesar. Accurately distinguishing between the duties of a parent and those of a sovereign, he educated his son with a severe simplicity, which, while it gave him no assured prospect of the throne, might in time have rendered him worthy of it. In public, the behaviour of Pertinax was grave and affable. He lived with the virtuous part of the senate (and, in a private station, he had been acquainted with the true character of each individual, without either pride or jealousy; considered them as friends and companions, with whom he had shared the dangers of the tyranny, and with whom he wished to enjoy the security of the present time. He very frequently invited them to familiar entertainments, the frugality of which was ridiculed by those who remembered and regretted the luxurious prodigality of Commodus. 49

To heal, as far as it was possible, the wounds inflicted by the hand of the tyrant, the task of Pertinax. The innocent victims who yet survived were recalled from exile, released from prison, and restored to the full possession of their honours and fortunes. The unlucky bodies of murdered senators (for the cruelty of Commodus endeavoured to extend itself beyond death; were deposited in the sepulchres of their ancestors; their memory was justified; and every consolation was bestowed on their ruined and afflicted families. Among these consolations, one of the most gentlest was the punishment of the Delators; the common enemies of their masters, of virtue, and of their country. Yet even in the insinuation of these legal assassins, Pertinax proceeded with a steady temper, which gave every thing to justice, and nothing to popular prejudice and resentment.

The finances of the state demanded the most vigilant care of the emperor. Though every measure of injustice and extortion had been adopted which could collect the property of the subjects into the coffers of the prince, the rapacity of Commodus had been so very inadequate to that extravagance, that, upon his death, so much that eight thousand pounds were found in the exhausted treasury, 50 to defy the current expenses of government, and to discharge the pressing demand of a liberal disposition, which the new emperor had been obliged to promise to the senatorial guards. Yet under these distressed circumstances, Pertinax had the generous firmness to refund all the oppressive taxes invented by Commodus, and to cancel all the unjust claims of the treasury; declaring, in a decree of the senate, 51 "that he was better satisfied to administer justice to men in a public, than to acquire riches by the ways of tyranny and dishonesty." Economy and industry he considered as the surest and most genuine sources of wealth; and from himself he drew a copious supply for the public necessities. The expense of the household was immediately reduced to one half. All the instruments of luxury Pertinax exposed to public auction; 52 gold and silver plates, chariots of a singular construction, a superfluous wardrobe of silk and embroidery, and a great number of beautiful slaves of both sexes; excepting only, with attentive humanity, those who were born in a state of freedom, and had been rescued from the arms of their weeping parents. At the same time that he obliged the worthless favourites of the tyrant to resign a part of their ill-gotten wealth.

47 Capitollinae sive in antiquitatem societatem ad regnum transfigurati. Sed minimae vices senatii eum ad sacrificium vincerunt, ut victorem esse. 48 quia senatoris exercitum esse societatis solet in senatu praebere. 49 Petronius, p. 154. 50 Dio (lib. ix. cap. 15) procul ab omnibus temporibus a poenitentia. 51 Senato p. 84. 52 The senate commanded them to be sold at public sale.
he satisfied the just creditors of the state, and unexpectedly discharged the long-armed of lowest services. He removed the oppressive restrictions which had been laid upon commerce, and granted all the uncultivated lands in Italy and the provinces to those who would improve them, with an exemption from tribute during the term of ten years. Such an uniform conduct had already secured to Pertinax the fullest reward of a sovereign, the love and esteem of his people. Those who remembered the virtues of Marcus, were happy to contemplate in their new emperor the features of that bright original; and flattered themselves that they should long enjoy the benign influence of his administration. A hasty zeal to reform the corrupted state, accompanied with less prudence than might have been expected from the years and experience of Pertinax, proved fatal to himself and to his country. His honest indiscretion united against him the servile crowd, who found their private benefit in the public disorders, and who preferred the favour of a tyrant to the inestimable equality of the laws.

Amidst the general joy, the sudden conversion, and angry countenance of the prætorian guards betrayed their inward dissatisfaction. They had reluctantly submitted to Pertinax; they dreaded the strictness of the ancient discipline, which he was preparing to restore; and they regarded the licence of the former reign. Their discontent was secretly fomented by Lucius their prefect, who found, when it was too late, that his new emperor would reward a servant, but would not be ruled by a favourite. On the third day of his reign, the soldiers seized on a noble senator, with a design to carry him to the camp and to invest him with the Imperial purple. Instead of being dashed by the dangerous honour, the affrighted victim escaped from their violence, and took refuge at the feet of Pertinax. A short time afterwards, Sextus Falco, one of the consuls of the year, a strange youth, but of an ancient and opulent family, listened to the voice of ambition, and a conspiracy was formed during a short absence of Pertinax, which was crushed by his sudden return to Rome, and his resolute behaviour. Falco was on the point of being committed to death as a public enemy, had he not been saved by the earnest and sincere entreaties of the injured emperor; who conjured the senate, that the purity of his reign might not be stained by the blood even of a guilty senator.

These disappointments served only to irritate the rage of the prætorian guards. On the twenty-eighth of March, eighty-six days only after the death of Commodus, a general sedition broke out in the camp, which the officers wanted either power or inclination to suppress. Two or three hundred of the most desperate soldiers marched at noon-day, with arms in their hands and fury in their looks, towards the imperial palace. The gates were thrown open by their companions upon guard, and by the domestics of the old court, who had already formed a secret conspiracy against the life of the new victorious emperor. On the news of their approach, Pertinax, disdainful either flight or conciliation, advanced to meet his assassins, and recalled to their minds his own innocence, and the sanctity of their recent oath. For a few moments they stood in silent suspense, ashamed of their atrocious design, and awed by the venerable aspect and majestic firmness of their sovereign, till at length the despair of passion reviving their fury, a barbarian of the country of Tungri levied the first blow against Pertinax, who was instantly dispatched with a multitude of wounds. His head, separated from his body and placed on a lance, was carried in triumph to the prætorian camp, in the sight of a numerous and indignant people, who invented the unworthy fate of that excellent prince, and the transient blessings of a reign, the memory of which could serve only to aggravate their approaching misfortunes.
discover that an hundred armed followers were a weak defence against ten thousand peasants or citizens; but an hundred thousand well-disciplined soldiers will command, with despotic sway, ten millions of subjects; and a body of ten or fifteen thousand guards will strike terror into the most numerous populace that ever crowded the streets of an immense capital.

The pretorian bands, whose licentious fury was the first symptom and cause of the decline of the Roman empire, scarcely amounted to the last-mentioned number. They derived their institution from Augustus. That crafty tyrant, sensible that laws might colour, but that arms alone could maintain, his usurped dominion, had gradually formed this powerful body of guards, in constant readiness to protect his person, to awe the senate, and either to prevent or to crush the first motions of rebellion. He distinguished these favoured troops by a double pay, and superior privileges; but, as their formidable aspect would at once have alarmed and irritated the Roman people, three cohorts only were stationed in the capital; whilst the remainder was dispersed in the adjacent towns of Italy. But after fifty years of peace and servitude, Tiberius ventured on a decisive measure, which for ever riveted the fetters of his country. Under the fair pretence of relieving Italy from the heavy burden of military quarters, and of introducing a stricter discipline among the guards, he assembled them at Rome, in a permanent camp, which was fortified with skilful care, and placed on a commanding situation.

Such formidable servants are always necessary, but often fatal to the throne of despotism. By thus introducing the pretorian guards as it were into the palace and the senate, the emperors taught them to perceive their own strength, and the weakness of the civil government; to view the vices of their masters with familiar contemp, and to lay aside that reverence due, which distance only, and mystery, can preserve towards an imaginary power. In the luxurious idleness of an opulent city, their pride was nourished by the sense of their irresistible weight; nor was it possible to conceal from them, that the person of the sovereign, the authority of the senate, the public treasury, and the seat of empire, were all in their hands. To divert the pretorian bands from these dangerous reflections, the firmest and best established princes were obliged to mix blandishments with commands, rewards with punishments, to flatter their pride, indulge their pleasures, converse at their irregularities, and to purchase their precarious faith by a liberal donation; which, since the elevation of Claudius, was exacted as a legal claim, on the accession of every new emperor.

The advocates of the guards endeavoured to justify by arguments the power which they asserted by arms; and to maintain that, according to the purest principles of the constitution, their remit was essentially necessary in the appointment of an emperor. The election of consuls, of generals, and of magistrates, however it had been recently usurped by the senate, was the ancient and unchangeable right of the Roman people. But where was the Roman people to be found? Not surely amongst the mixed multitude of slaves and strangers that filled the streets of Rome; a servile populace, as devoid of spirit as destitute of property. The defenders of the state, drawn from the flower of the Italian youth, and trained in the exercise of arms and virtue, were the genuine representatives of the people, and the best entitled to elect the military chief of the republic. These assertions, however defective in reason, became unanswerable, when the fierce pretorians increased their weight, by throwing, like the barbarian conqueror of Rome, their swords into the scale.

The pretorians had violated the sanctity of the throne, by the atrocious murder of Pertinax; they disclaimed the majesty of it, by their subsequent conduct. The camp was without a leader, for even the perfect Lucan, who had excited the tempest, presently declined the public indignation. Amidst the wild disorder, Sulpicianus, the emperor's father-in-law, and governor of the city, who had been sent to the camp on the first alarm of mutiny, was endeavouring to calm the fury of the multitude, when he was silenced by the clamorous return of the murderers, bearing on a lance the head of Pertinax. Though history has accustomed us to observe every principle and every passion yielding to the impetuous dictates of ambition, it is scarcely credible, that in those moments of horror, Sulpicianus should have aspired to accost a throne polluted with the recent blood of so near a relation, and so excellent a prince. He had already begun to use the only effectual argument, and to treat for the imperial dignity; but the more prudent of the pretorians, apprehensive that, in this private contract, they should not obtain a just price for so valuable a commodity, raved upon the ramparts; and, with a loud voice, proclaimed that the Roman world was to be disposed of in the best bidder by public auction.

This infamous offer, the most insolent ex-
cess of military licence, diffused an
everal grief, shame, and indignation throughout the city. It reached at length the ears of Didius Julianus, a wealthy senator, who, regardless of the public calamities, was indulging himself in the luxury of the table.11 His wife and his daughter, his freedmen and his parasites, easily convinced him that he deserved the throne, and soonest conjured him to embrace so fortunate an opportunity. The vain old man hastened to the praetorian camp, where Sulpicianus was still in treaty with the guards; and began to bid against him from the foot of the rampart. The unworthy negotiation was transacted by faithful emissaries, who passed alternately from one candidate to the other, and acquainted each of them with the offers of his rival. Sulpicianus had already promised a donation of five thousand drachmae (above one hundred and sixty pounds) to each soldier; when Julian, eager for the prize, reached at once to the sum of six thousand two hundred and fifty drachmae, or upwards of two hundred pounds sterling. The guards were instantly thrown over to the purchaser; he was declared emperor, and received an oath of allegiance from two soldiers, who retained humanity enough to stipulate that he should pacify and forget the contumelies of Sulpicianus.

It was now incumbent on the new sovereigns to fulfill the conditions of the sale. They placed their new sovereigns, whom they served and deplored, in the centre of their ranks, surrounded him on every side with their shields, and conducted him in close order of battle through the deserted streets of the city. The senate was commanded to assemble; and those who had been the distinguished friends of Pertinax, or the personal enemies of Julian, found it necessary to affect a more than common share of satisfaction at this happy revolution.12 After Julian had filled the senate-house with armed soldiers, he expatiated on the freedom of his election, his own eminent virtues, and his full assurance of the affection of the senate. The obsequious assembly congratulated their own and the public felicity; engaged their allegiance, and confessed on him all the several branches of the Imperial power.13 From the senate Julian was conducted, by the same military procession, to take possession of the palace. The first objects that struck his eyes, were the abandoned trunk of Pertinax, and the frugal entertainment prepared for his supper. The one he viewed with indifference; the other with contempt. A magnificent feast was prepared by his order, and he amused himself, till a very late hour, with dice, and the performances of Pythias, a celebrated dancer. Yet it was observed, that after the crowd of flatterers dispersed, and left him to darkness, solitude, and terrible reflection, he passed a sleepless night; revolving most probably in his mind his own rash folly, the fate of his virtuous predecessor, and the doubtful and dangerous tenure of an empire, which had not been acquired by merit, but purchased by blood.

He had reason to tremble. On the throne of the world he found himself without a friend, and even without an adherent. The guards themselves were ashamed of the prince whom their avarice had persuaded them to accept; nor was there a citizen who did not consider his elevation with horror, as the last insult on the Roman name. The nobility, whose conspicuous station, and ample possessions, exacted the strictest caution, disdained their sentiments, and met the affected civility of the emperor with smiles of complacency, and professions of duty. But the people, secure in their numbers and obscurity, gave a free vent to their passions. The streets and public places of Rome resounded with clamours and imprecations. The enraged multitude attacked the person of Julian, rejected his liberty and arms, and consigned to the impotence of their own resentment, they called aloud on the legions of the frontiers to assert the violated majesty of the Roman empire.

The public discontent was soon diffused from the centre to the frontiers of the empire. The armies of Britain, of Syria, and of Illyricum, lamented the death of Pertinax, in whose company, or under whose command, they had so often fought and conquered. They received with surprise, with indignation, and perhaps with envy, the extraordinary intelligence, that the praetorians had disposed of the empire by public auction; and they sternly refused to ratify the ignominious bargain. Their immediate and unanimous revolt was fatal to Julian; but it was fatal at the same time to the public peace; as the generals of the respective armies, Clodius Albinus, Postumus Niger, and Septimius Severus were still more anxious to succeed than to revenge the murdered Pertinax. Their forces were exactly balanced. Each of them was at the head of three legions, with a numerous train of auxiliaries; and however different in their characters, they were all soldiers of experience and capacity.

Clodius Albinus, governor of Britain, surpassed both his competitors in the nobility of his extraction, which he derived from some of the most illustrious names of the old republic.14 But the branch from whence he claimed his descent, was sunk into most circumstances, and transplanted into a remote province. It is difficult to form a just idea of his true character. Under the philosophic cloak of austerity, he stands accused of concealing most of the vices which degrade human nature.15 But his accusers are those venal writers who adored the fortune of Severus, and triumphed on the

---

11. Pisanus (who is the most ancient of the names of Julianus. The letter p. is also C. 3. 32.
12. Ibid. Again. p. 65. We learn from Cassius Dio orediton, who mentions him as "did not bring the palace."
13. Ibid. Again. p. 64. He was consequently," he was condemned again in the secret council of the Antonian party.
14. Ibid. Again. p. 65. It is not possible to
15. Ibid. Again. p. 64. It is not possible to
ashes of an unsuccessful rival. Virtus, or the appearance of virtue, recommended Albinus to the confidence and good opinion of Marcus; and his preservation with the son the same interest which he had acquired with the father, is a proof at least that he was possessed of a very flexible disposition. The favour of a tyrant does not always suppose a want of merit in the object of it; he may, without intending it, reward a man of without natural ability, or he may find such a man useful to his own service. It does not appear that Albinus served the son of Marcus, either as the minister of his cruelties, or even as the associate of his pleasures. He was employed in a distant honorable command, when he received a confidential letter from the emperor, acquainting him of the reasonable designs of some discontented generals, and authorizing him to declare himself the guardian and successor of the throne, by assuming the title and ensigns of Caesar. The governor of Britain wisely declined the dangerous honour, which would have marked him for the jealousy, or involved him in the approaching ruin, of Commodus. He entered power by nobler, or, at least, by more auspicious seats. On a premature report of the death of the emperor, he assembled his troops, and, in an elegant discourse, deplored the inevitable mischiefs of despotism; described the happiness and glory which their ancestors had enjoyed under the consul government, and declared his firm resolution to reestablish the senate and people in their legal authority. This popular harangue was answered by the loud acclamations of the British legions, and received at Rome with a secret murmur of applause. Safe in the possession of his little world, and in the command of an army less distinguished indeed for discipline than for numbers and valor, Albinus braved the menace of Commodus, maintained towards Pertinax a stately ambiguous reserve, and instantly declared against the usurpation of Julian. The convulsions of the capital added new weight to his sentiments, or rather to his professions of patriotism. A regard for decency induced him to decline the lofty titles of Augustus and Emperor; and he imitated perhaps the example of Galba, who, on a similar occasion, had styled himself the Lieutenant of the senate and people.  

Porcius Niger. Personal merit alone had raised him to glory. Porcius Niger, from an obscure birth and station, to the government of Syria; a lucrative and important command, which, in times of civil confusion, gave him a near prospect of the throne. Yet his parts seem to have been better suited to the second than to the first rank; he was an unequal rival, though he might have approved himself an excellent lieutenant; to Severus, who afterwards displayed the greatness of his mind by adopting several useful institutions from a vanquished enemy. In his government Niger acquired the esteem of the soldiers, and the love of the provincials. His rigid discipline fortified the valor, and confirmed the obedience of the forces, while the voluptuary Syrians were less delighted with the mild firmness of his administration, than with the affability of his manners, and the apparent pleasure with which he attended their frequent and pompous festivals. As soon as the intelligence of the atrocious murder of Pertinax reached Antioch, the wishes of Asia insisted Niger to assume the Imperial purple and revenge his death. The legions of the eastern frontier embraced his career with the equal firmness and judgment with which they had resisted those of the Frigidus. The appeal of the Ethiopian to the Hadriatic, cheerfully submitted to his power; and the kings beyond the Tigris and the Euphrates congratulated his election, and offered him his homage and services. The mind of Niger as not capable of receiving this sudden title of fortune; he flattered himself that his succession would be uninterrupted by competition, and unthreatened by civil blood; and whilst he enjoyed the vain pomp of triumph, he neglected to secure the means of victory. Instead of entering into an effectual negotiation with the powerful armies of the West, whose resolution might decide, or at least must balance, his mighty enterprise, instead of advancing without delay towards Rome and Italy, where his presence was impatiently expected, Niger drifted away in the luxury of Antioch those irreparable moments which were diligently improved by the decisive activity of Severus.  

The country of Panonia and Dalmatia, which occupied the space between the Danube and the Hadriatic, was one of the last and most difficult conquests of the Romans. In the defence of national frontiers, two hundred thousand of these barbarians had once appeared in the field, alarmed the declining age of Augustus, and exercised the vigilant prudence of Tiberius at the head of the collected force of the empire. The Pannonians yielded at length to the arms and institutions of Rome. Their recent subjection, however, the neighbourhood, and even the survival of the unconquered tribes, and perhaps the climate, adapted, as it has been observed, to the production of good bodies and slow animals, all contributed to preserve some remains of their original ferocity, and under the name and uniform composure of Roman provincials, the hardy features of the natives were still to be discovered. Their warlike youth afforded an inexhaustible supply of recruits to the legions stationed on the banks of the Danube, which, from a perpetual warfare against the Germans and Sarmatians, were desirously esteemed the best troops in the service. 


26. The Life of John Sophronius, of Antioch, where he relates the circumstances of the examination, and their loss of consequence, to me, as I congratulate the Emperor, and their loss of consequence, in an address delivered to a personal Branch of Niger. 

27. Niger, p. 27. Will the reader of Anabasis allow the reader of Anabasis? 
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

The Pannonian army was at this time commanded by Septimius Severus, a native of Africa, who, in the gradual ascent of private honours, had concealed his daring ambition, which was never diverted from its steady course by the allurements of pleasure, the apprehension of danger, or the feelings of humanity. On the first news of the murder of Pertinax, he assembled his troops, pointed to the most lofty colours, the prize, the insolence, and the weakness of the prætorian guards, and animadverted the legions to arms and to revenge. He concluded (and the persuasion was thought extremely eloquent) with promising every soldier about four hundred pondoles; an honourable donation, double in value to the infamous bribe with which Julian had purchased the empire.

The acclamations of the army immediately saluted Severus with the names of Augustus, Pertinax, and Emperor; and he thus attained the loftiest station to which he was invited, by conscious merit and a long train of dreams and counsels, the fruitful offspring of either his superstition or policy.

The new candidate for empire saw and improved the peculiar advantage of his situation. His provinces extended to the Julian Alps, which gave an easy access into Italy; and he announced the saying of Augus tus. The Pannonian army might in ten days appear in sight of Rome. By a sudden movement, he threw the power and protection of the occasion, he might reasonably hope to revenge Pertinax, punish Julian, and receive the homage of the senate and people, as their lawful emperor, before his competitors, separated from Italy by an immense tract of sea and land, were apprised of his success, or even of his election. During the whole expedition, he scarcely allowed himself any moments for sleep or food; marching on foot, and in complete armour, at the head of his column, he instilled himself into the confidence and affection of his troops, by their diligence, reviving their spirits, animating their hope, and was well satisfied to share the hardships of the meanest soldier, whilst he kept in view the infinite superiority of his reward.

The wretched Julian had expected, and thought himself prepared, to dispute the empire with the governor of Syria; but in the invidious and rapid approach of the Pannonian legions, he saw his inevitable ruin. The hasty arrival of every messenger increased his jut apprehensions. He was successively informed, that Severus had passed the Alps; that the Italian cities, multitudes or unable to oppose his progress, had received him with the warmest professions of joy and duty; that the important place of Revalens had surrendered without resistance, and that the Hasrianic fleet was in the hands of the conqueror. The enemy was now within two hundred and fifty miles of Rome; and every moment diminished the narrow span of life and empire allotted to Julian.

He attempted, however, to prevent, or at least to protract, his ruin. He implored the vengeful faith of the praetorians, filled the city with unavailing preparations for war, drew lines round the suburbs, and even strengthened the fortifications of the palace; as if those late intrusions could be defended without hope of relief against a victorious invader. Fear and shame prevented the guards from deserting his standard; but they trembled at the name of the Pannonian legions, commanded by an experienced general, and accustomed to subdue the barbarians on the frozen Danube. They quitted, with a sigh, the pleasures of the baths and theatres, to put on arms, whose use they had almost forgotten, and beneath the weight of which they were oppressed. The unpractised elephants, whose uncouth appearance, it was hoped, would strike terror into the army of the north, threw their unskilful riders; and the awkward evolutions of the marines, drawn from the fleet of Misenum, were an object of ridicule to the populace; whilst the scene, enlivened, with secret pleasure, the distress and weakness of the usurper.

Every motion of Julian betrayed his universal perplexity. He insisted that Severus should be declared a public enemy by the senate. He intended that the Pannonian general might be associated to the empire. He sent public ambassadors of consular rank to negotiate with his rival; he dispatched private assassins to take away his life. He designed that the Vestal virgins, and all the colleges of priests, in their sacred habit, and bearing before them the sacred pledges of the Roman religion, should advance, in solemn procession, to meet the Pannonian legions; and, at the same time, he vainly tried to interrogate, or to appease, the fates, by magic ceremonies, and unlawful sacrifices.

Severus who dreaded neither his arms nor his encomiasts, guided the praetorians himself from the only danger of secret conspiracy, by the faithful attendance of six hundred chosen men, who never quitted his person or their escort; either by night or by day, during the whole march. Advancing with a steady and rapid course, he passed, without difficulty, the defiles of the Apennine, received into his party the troops and ambassadors sent to retard his progress, and made a short halt at Interamnia, about seventy miles from Rome. His victory was already secure; but the despair of the praetorians might have rendered it bloody; and Severus had the laudable ambition of as

28 In the Latin of Lilius, tenui, — with Pertinax, — in Clementina, tenui, — with Pertinax, — in Eugeniana, tenui.
29 Hist. Aug. p. 147. In the original, of Pertinax, with Septimius Severus, in the Latin, as in the English, it is, I think, to be read, Septimius Severus, not Pertinax, with Pertinax, in the English, it is, I think, to be read, Septimius Severus, not Pertinax, with Pertinax.
30 Hist. Aug. p. 147. It is, therefore, more probable, that Severus was assassinated by the praetorians, than that he was killed by the praetorians.
conding the throne without drawing the sword. His emissaries, dispersed in the capital, assured the guards, that provided they would abandon their worthless prince, and the perpetrators of the murder of Pertinax, to the justice of the conspirator, he would no longer consider that treacherous event as the act of the whole body.

The fealty of the praetorians, whose resistance was supported only by sullen obstinacy, gladly complied with the easy conditions, seized the greatest part of the assassins, and signified to the senate, that they no longer defended the cause of Julian. That assembly, convoked by the council, unanimously acknowledged Severus as lawful emperor, decreed divine honours to Pertinax, and pronounced a sentence of deposition and death against his unfortunate successor. Julian was conducted into a private apartment of the halls of the palace, and beheld, as a common criminal, after having purchased, with an immense treasure, an anxious and precipitate reign of only sixty-six days. The almost incredible expedition of Severus, who, at so short a space of time, conducted a numerous army from the banks of the Danube to those of the Tiber, proves at once the plenty of provisions produced by agriculture and commerce, the goodness of the roads, the discipline of the legions, and the indulgent sublimity of the temper of the province. The first cares of Severus were bestowed on two measures, the one dictated by policy, the other by decency; the revenge, and the honours, due to the memory of Pertinax. Before the new emperor entered Rome, he issued his commands to the praetorian guards, directing them to wait his arrival on a large plain near the city, without arms, but in the habit of ceremony, in which they were accustomed to attend their sovereign. He was obeyed by those haughty troops, whose constitution was the effect of their just terrors. A chosen part of the Illyrian army encompassed them with levelling spears. Incapable of flight or resistance, they expected their fate in silent consternation. Severus mounted the tribunal, sternly reproached them with perfidy and cowardice; dismissed them with ignominy from the trust which they had betrayed, despoiled them of their splendid ornaments, and banished them, no pain of death, to the distance of an hundred miles from the capital. During the transaction, another detachment had been sent to seize their arms, occupy their camp, and prevent the hasty consequences of their despair.

The funeral and consecration of Pertinax was first solemnized with every circumstance of sad magnificence. The senate, with a melancholy pleasure, performed at this last rite to that illustrious prince, whom they had loved, and still regretted.

The concern of his successor was probably less sincere. He esteemed the virtues of Pertinax, but those virtues would for ever have confined his ambition to a private station. Severus pronounced his funeral oration with mental eloquence, inward satisfaction, and well-acted sorrow; and by this pious regard to his memory, convinced the credulous multitude that he alone was worthy to supply his place. Sensible, however, that arms, not ceremonies, must assert his claim to the empire, he left Rome at the end of thirty days, and, without suffering himself to be attached by this easy victory, prepared to enounce his more formidable rivals.

The uncommon abilities and fortune of Severus have induced an elegant historian to compare him with the first and greatest of the Caesars. The parallel is, at least, imperfect. Where shall we find, in the character of Severus, the commanding superiority of soul, the generous chivalry, and the various genius, which could reconcile and unite the love of pleasure, the thirst of knowledge, and the fire of ambition? In one instance only, they may be compared, with some degree of propriety, in the celerity of their motions, and their civil victories. In less than four years, Severus subdued the riches of the east, and the valour of the west. He vanquished two competitors of reputation and ability, and defeated numerous armies provided with weapons and discipline equal to his own. In that age, the art of fortification, and the principles of tactics, were well understood by all the Roman generals; and the constant superiority of Severus was that of an artist, who uses the same instruments with more skill and industry than his rivals. I shall not, however, enter into a minute narrative of those military operations; but as the two civil wars against Niger and against Albinus were about the same in their conduct, events, and consequences, I shall collect into one point of view, the most striking circumstances, tending to develop the character of the conqueror, and the state of the empire.

Falsehood and impropriety, suitable to their dignity, of public transactions, offend us with a less degrading idea of meaness, than when they are found in the intercourse of private life. In the latter, they discover a want of courage; in the other, only a defect of power: and, as it is impossible for the most able statesmen to subdue millions of followers and enemies by their own personal strength, the world, under the name of policy, seems to have granted them a very liberal indulgence of craft and dissimulation. Yet the arts of Severus cannot be justified by the most ample privileges of state reason. He presumed only to betray; he

59 Dees, i, lxxx. p. 1241. 60 Dees, i, p. 54.
61 Horace, Ep. iii. 1. 24: Horace, Ep. iii. 1. 24, vv. 34, 38, 43, which have been considered as a versification of Horace.
a private audience, and to plunge their daggers into his heart.\(^{48}\) The conspiracy was discovered, and the too credulous Albinus, at length, passed over to the continent, and prepared for an unequal contest with his rival, who rushed upon him at the head of a veteran and victorious army.

The military labours of Severus were inadequate to the importance of his conquests. Two engagements, the one near the Hellespont, the other in the narrow defiles of Ulricia, decided the fate of his Syrian competitor; and the troops of Europe asserted their usual ascendant over the effeminate natives of Asia.\(^{49}\) The battle of Lyons, where one hundred and fifty thousand Romans were engaged, was equally fatal to Albinus. The valour of the British army maintained, indeed, a sharp and doubtful contest with the hardy discipline of the Ilyrian legions. The fame and person of Severus appeared, during a few moments, irrecoverably lost, till that warlike prince rallied his fainting troops, and led them on to a decisive victory.\(^{50}\) The war was finished by that memorable day.

The civil wars of modern Europe, decided by one event, have been distinguished, not only by the fierce animosity, but likewise by the obstinate perseverance, of the contending factions. They have generally been justified by some principle, or, at least, coloured by some pretext of religion, freedom, or loyalty. The leaders were noble of independent property and hereditary influence. The troops fought like men interested in the decision of the quarrel; and as military spirit and party zeal were strongly diffused throughout the whole community, a vanquished chief was immediately supplied with new adherents, eager to shed their blood in the same cause. But the Romans, after the fall of the republic, contended only for the choice of masters. Under the standard of a popular candidate for empire, a few enlisted from affection, some from fear, many from interest, none from principle. The legions, uninfluenced by party zeal, were allured into civil war by liberal donations, and still more liberal promises. A defeat, by disabling the chief from the performance of his engagements, dissolved the mercenary allegiance of his followers; and left them to consult their own safety, by a timely desertion of an unsuccessful cause. It was of little moment in the provinces, under whose name they were oppressed or governed; they were driven by the impulse of the present power, and as soon as that power yielded to a superior force, they hastened to implore the clemency of the conqueror, who, as he had an immense debt to discharge, was obliged to sacrifice the most guilty countries to the avarice of his soldiers. In the vast extent of the Roman empire, there were few fortified cities capable of protecting a routed army; but

\(^{47}\) Horatius, l. i. p. 52.
\(^{48}\) Within 200, and 25, p. 63. The same author's opinion.\(^{49}\) Horatius, l. i. p. 52. The same author's opinion.\(^{50}\) Horatius, l. i. p. 52. The same author's opinion.\(^{51}\) This opinion, expressed by Commandeur, seems more useful to运往 to from the name of the private character of the author, than to the state of the publick. As he could not live in society with respect to both, he sought and seer proverbs for that object, and this, as far as he could, to be useful in the writing of his life of the state of his life.
was there any person, or family, or order of men, whose natural interest, unsupported by the powers of government, was capable of restoring the cause of a sinking party. 39

Dissension. Yet, in the contest between Niger and Severus, a single city deserves an honourable exception. As Byzantium was one of the greatest passages from Europe into Asia, it had been provided with a strong garrison, and a fleet of five hundred vessels was anchored in the harbour. 40 The impetuosity of Severus disappointed this prudent scheme of defence; he left to his generals the siege of Byzantium, forced the less guarded passage of the Hellespont, and, impatient of a master enemy, pressed forward to encounter his rival. Byzantium, attacked by a numerous and increasing army, and afterwards by the whole naval power of the empire, sustained a siege of three years, and remained faithful to the name and memory of Niger. The citizens and soldiers (we know not from what cause) were animated with equal fury; several of the principal officers of Niger, who disapproved of, or who disdained, a pardon, had thrown themselves into this last refuge; the fortifications were esteemed impregnable, and, in the defence of the place, a celebrated engineer displayed all the mechanic powers known to the ancients. 44 Byzantium, as long, surrendered to fortune. The magistrates and soldiers were put to the sword, the walls demolished, the privileges suppressed, and the destined capital of the sect subsisted only as an open village, subject to the insulting jurisdiction of Perinthus. The historian Dio, who had admired the flourishing, and lamented the decline, state of Byzantium, accused the revenge of Severus, for depriving the Roman people of the strongest bulwark against the barbarians of Pontus and Asia. 45 The truth of this observation was but too well justified in the succeeding age, when the Gothic fleets covered the Euxine, and passed through the undefended Bosphorus into the centre of the Mediterranean.

Both Niger and Albinus were discovered and put to death in their flight from the field of battle. Their fate excited neither surprise nor compassion. They had staked their lives against the chance of empire, and suffered what they would have inflicted; nor did Severus claim the arrogant superiority of suffering his rivals to live in a private station. But his unforgiving temper, stimulated by avarice, indured a spirit of revenge, where there was no room for apprehension. The most considerable of the provincials, who, without any dislike to the fortunate candidate, had obeyed the governor under whose authority they were accidentally placed, were punished by death, exile, and especially by the confiscation of their estates. Many cities of the coast were

strip of their ancient honours, and obliged to pay into the treasury of Severus four times the amount of the sums contributed by them for the service of Niger. 46

Till the final decision of the war, the cruelty of Severus was in some measure restrained by the uncertainty of the event, and his pretended revenge for the senate. The head of Albinus, accompanied with a menacing letter, announced to the Romans that he was resolved to make none of the adherents of his unfortunate companion. He was irritated by the just suspicion that he had never possessed the affections of the senate, and he concealed his old malice under the recent discovery of some treasonable correspondence. Thirty-five senators, however, accused of having favoured the party of Albinus, he freely pardoned; and, by his subsequent behaviour, endeavoured to convince them that he had forgotten, as well as forgiven, their supposed offences. But at the same time he condemned forty-one 47 other senators, whose names history has recorded; their wives, children, and clients attended them in death, and the noblest provincials of Spain and Gaul were involved in the same ruin. Such rigid justice, for so he termed it, was, in the opinion of Severus, the only conduct capable of ensuring peace to the people, stability to the prince; and he considered slightly to lament that, to be mild, it was necessary that he should first be cruel. 48

The spirit of an absolute monarch generally coincides with that of his people. Their numbers, their wealth, their order, and their security, are the best and only foundations of his real greatness; and were he totally devoid of virtue, prudence might supply its place, and would dictate the same rule of conduct. Severus considered the Roman empire as his property, and had no sooner secured the position than he bestowed his care on the cultivation and improvement of an valuable an acquisition. Statutory laws, executed with inflexible firmness, were corrected most of the abuses with which, since the death of Maximus, every part of the government had been infected. In the administration of justice, the judgments of the emperor were characterised by clemency, discernment, and impartiality; and whenever he deviated from the strict line of equity, it was generally in favour of the poor and oppressed; not so much, indeed, from any sense of humanity, as from the natural propensity of despots to humbly the pride of greatness, and touch all his subjects to the same common level of absolute dependence. His expensive taste for building, magnificent shows, and above all a constant effort to facilitate the distribution of corn and provisions, were the surest means of captivating the affections of the Roman people. 49

39 Dio Cassius, Hist. Rom. x. 47. 38. 40 Th. Strabo, x. 5. 32. 1. 41. 42 Origines. 43 Theod. Chron. c. xvi. 5. 44. 45 Origines. 46 Th. Livy. viii. 36. 3. 47 Th. Diodor. xii. 9. 48 Th. Flor. ii. 5. 49 Th. Livy. viii. 36. 3. 50 Th. Flor. ii. 5.
of these elegant troops, better adapted to the pump of courts than to the uses of war, it was established by Severus, that from all the eminences of the frontiers the soldiers most distinguished for strength, valour, and fidelity should be occasionally drafted, and promoted, as an honour and reward, into the more eligible service of the guard. By this new institution, the Italian youth were diverted from the exercise of arms, and the capital was terrifed by the strange aspect and manners of a multitude of barbarians. But Severus fancied himself that the legions would consider these chosen provincials as the representatives of the whole military order; and that the present aid of fifty thousand men, superior in arms and appointments to any force that had been brought into the field against them, would for ever crush the hopes of rebellion, and secure the empire to himself and his posterity.

The command of these favoured and formidable troops soon became the first office of the empire. As the government degenerated into military despotism, the provincial prefect, who in his origin had been a simple captain of the guards, was placed, not only at the head of the army, but of the finances, and even of the law. In every department of administration he represented the person, and exercised the authority, of the emperor.

The first prefect who enjoyed and abused this immense power was Plautianus, the favourite minister of Severus. His reign lasted above ten years, till the marriage of his daughter with the eldest son of the emperor, which seemed to assure his fortune, proved the occasion of his ruin. The animosities of the palace, by irritating the ambition and alarming the fears of Plautianus, threatened to produce a revolution, and obliged the emperor, who still loved him, to consent with reluctance to his death. After the fall of Plautianus, an eminent lawyer, the celebrated Papianus, was appointed to execute the momentous office of provincial prefect.

Till the reign of Severus, the virtues, and even the good sense, of the emperors had been distinguished by their zeal or affected reverence for the senate, and by a tender regard to the wise frame of civil policy instituted by Augustus. But the youth of Severus had been trained in the implicit obedience of camps, and his riper years spent in the despotism of military command. His haughty and inelastic spirit could not discover, or would not acknowledge, the advantage of preserving an intermediate power, however imaginary, between the emperor and the army. He disdained to profess himself the servant of an assembly that detected his person and tumulted at his frown; he issued his commands, where his request would have proved as effectual; assumed the conduct...
and style of a sovereign and a conqueror; and exercised, without disguise, the whole legislative as well as the executive power.

The victory over the senate was easy and inglorious. Every eye and every passion were directed to the supreme magistrate, who possessed the arms and treasure of the state; whilst the senate, neither elected by the people, nor guarded by military force, nor animated by public spirit, rested in its declining authority on the frail and crumbling basis of ancient opinion. The fine theory of a republic insensibly vanished, and made way for the more natural and substantial feelings of monarchy. As the freedom and honours of Rome were successively communicated to the provinces, in which the old government had been either unknown or unremembered with abhorrence, the tradition of republican maxims was gradually obliterated. The Greek historians of the age of the Antonines observe, with a malicious pleasure, that although the sovereignty of Rome, in compliance with an absolute prejudice, was vested in the name of king, he possessed the full measure of regal power. In the reign of Severus, the senate was filled with polished and eloquent slaves from the eastern provinces, who justified personal flattery by speculative principles of servitude. These new advocates of prerogative were heard with pleasure by the court, and with patience by the people, when they inculcated the duty of passive obedience, and descanted on the inevitable mischiefs of freedom. The lawyers and the historians concurred in teaching, that the Imperial authority was held, not by the delegated commission, but by the irreducible resignation of the senate; that the emperor was freed from the restraint of civil laws, could command by his arbitrary will the lives and fortunes of his subjects, and might dispose of the empire as of his private property.

The most eminent of the civil lawyers, and particularly Papinian, Paulus, and Ulpian, flourished under the house of Severus; and the Roman jurisprudence, having closely united itself with the system of monarchy, was supposed to have attained its full maturity and perfection.
The contemporaries of Severus, in the enjoyment of the peace and glory of his reign, forgave the cruelties by which it had been introduced. Posterity, who experienced the fatal effects of his maxims and example, justly considered him as the principal author of the decline of the Roman empire.

CHAP. VI.
The Death of Severus. — Tyranny of Caracalla. — Usurpation of Maximian. — Fall of Eligius.

The ascendant to greatness, however steep and dangerous, may entertain an active spirit with the consciousness and exercise of its own powers; but the possession of a throne could never yet afford a lasting satisfaction to an ambitious mind. This melancholy truth was felt and acknowledged by Severus. Fortune and merit had, from humble stations, elevated him to the first place among mankind. He had been all things, as he said himself, and all was of little value. Distracted with the care, not of acquiring, but of preserving an empire, oppressed with age and infirmities, careless of fame, and satiated with power, all his projects of life were closed. The desire of perpetuating the greatness of his family, was the only remaining wish of his ambitious and paternal tenderness.

Like most of the Africans, Severus was passionately addicted to the vain studies of magic and divination, deeply versed in the interpretation of dreams and omen, and perfectly acquainted with the science of judicial astrology; which, in almost every age, except the present, has maintained its dominion over the mind of man. He had lost his first wife, whilst he was governor of the Lyons Gaul. In the choice of a second, he sought only to ennoble himself with some favourite of fortune; and as soon as he had discovered that a young lady of Emma in Syria had a royal destiny, he solicited, and obtained her hand.

Julia Domna (for that was her name) deserved all that the stars could promise her. She possessed, even in an advanced age, the attractions of beauty, and united to a lively imagination, a firmness of mind, and strength of judgment, seldom bestowed on her sex. Her amiable qualities never made any deep impression on the dark and jealous temper of her husband; but in her son's reign, she administered the principal affairs of the empire, with a prudence, that supported his authority; and with a moderation that sometimes corrected his wild extravagances. Julia applied herself to letters and philosophy, and with some success, and with the most splendid reputation. She was the patroness of every art, and the friend of every man of genius. The grateful flattery of the learned has celebrated her virtues; but, if we may credit the censure of ancient history, chastity was far more from being the most comínous virtue of the empress Julia.

Two sons, Caracalla and Geta, were the fruit of this marriage, and the destined heirs of the empire.
The fond hopes of the father, and of the Roman world, were soon disappointed by these vain youths, who displayed the intolerable security of hereditary princes; and a presumption that fortune would supply the places of merit and application. Without any emulation of virtue or talents, they discovered, almost from their infancy, a fixed and implacable antipathy for each other. Their aversion, confirmed by years, and fomented by the arts of their interested friends, broke out in childish, and gradually in more serious, competitions; and, at length, divided the theatre, the circus, and the court, into two factions: actuated by the hopes and fears of their respective leaders. The prudent emperor endeavoured, by every expedient of advice and authority, to allay this growing animosity. The unhappy discord of his sons chastened all his prospects, and threatened to overturn a throne raised with so much labour, cemented with so much blood, and guarded with every defence of arms and treasure. With an impartial hand he maintained between them an exact balance of favour, conferred on both the rank of Augustus, with the reverse name of Antoninus; and for the first time the Roman world beheld three emperors.

Yet even this equal conduct served only to inflame the contest, whilst the fierce Caracalla assailed the right of primogeniture, and the elder Geta courted the affections of the people and the soldiers. In the anguish of a disappointed father, Severus forebode, that the weaker of his sons would fall a sacrifice to the stronger; who, in his turn, would be ruined by his own vice.

In these circumstances the intelligence of a war in Britain, and of an invasion of the province by the barbarians of the north, was received with pleasure by Severus. Though the vigilance of his lieutenants might have been sufficient to repel the distant enemy, he resolved to embrace the honourable pretext of withdrawing his sons from the luxury of Rome, which enervated their minds and irritated their passions; and of inuring their youth to the toils of war and government. Notwithstanding his advanced age (for he was above three-score), and his gout, which obliged him to be carried in a litter, he transported himself in person into that remote island, attended by his two sons, his whole court, and a formidable army. He immediately passed the walls of Hadrian and Antoninus, and entered the enemy's country, with a design of completing the long attempted conquest of Britain. He penetrated to the northern extremity of the island, without meeting an enemy. But the concealed ambuscades of the Caledonians, who hung unseen on the rear and flanks of his army, the coldness of the climate, and the severity of a winter march across the hills and mountains of northern Britain, are reported to have cost the Romans above fifty thousand men. The Caledonians at length yielded to the powerful and obstinate attack, sued for peace, and surrendered a part of their arms, and a large tract of territory. But their apparent submission lasted no longer than the present term. As soon as the Roman legions had retired, they resumed their hostile independence. Their restless spirit provoked Severus to send a new army into Caledonia, with the most bloody orders, not to subdue but to exterminate the natives. They were saved by the death of their haughty enemy.

This Caledonian war, neither Fingal and his hoar, nor attended with any important consequences, would ill deserve our attention; but it is supposed, not without a considerable degree of probability, that the invasion of Severus is connected with the most shining period of the British history or fable. Fingal, whose fame, with that of his heroes and bard, has been revived in our language by a recent publication, is said to have commanded the Caledonians in that memorable juncture, to have eluded the power of Severus, and to have obtained a signal victory on the banks of the Carron, in which the son of the King of the World, Carcanul, fled from his arms along the fields of his pride.

Something of a doubtful mist still hag over these Highland traditions; nor can it be entirely dispelled by the most ingenuous researches of modern criticism; but if we could, with safety, indulge the pleasing supposition, that Fingal lived, and that Ossian sung, the striking contrast of the situation and manners of the contending nations might arouse a philosophic mind. The parallel would be little to the advantage of the more civilised people, if we compared the unrelenting revenge of Severus with the generous clemency of Fingal; the timid and brutal cruelty of Carcanul, with the bravery, the tenderness, the elegant genius of Ossian; the mercenary chiefs who, from motives of fear or interest, served under the Imperial standard, with the freedom warriors who started to arms at the voice of the king of Morven; if, in a word, we contemplated the untutored Caledonians, glowing with the warm virtues of nature, and the degenerate Romans, polluted with the mean vices of wealth and slavery.

The declining health and last illness of Severus inflamed the wild ambition and black passions of Carcanul's soul. Impatient of any delay or division of empire, he attempted, more than once, to shorten the small remainder of his father's days, and endeavoured, but without success, to excite a mutiny among the troops. The old emperor had often observed the misguided energy of Marcus, who, by a single act of justice, might have saved the Romans from the tyranny of his worthless son. Placed in the same situation, he experienced how easily the vigour of a judge dissolves away
in the tenderness of a parent. He deliberated, he threatened; but he could not punish; and this last and only instance of mercy was more fatal to the empire than a long series of cruelty. The disorder of his mind irritated the pains of his body; he died impatiently the death, and hastened the instant of it by his impatience.

He expired at York, in the sixty-fifth year of his life, and in the Eighteenth year of a glorious and successful reign. In his last moments he recommended concord to his sons, and his sons to the army. The salutary advice never reached the heart; or, even the understanding, of the impatient youth, but the more obedient troops, mindful of their oath of allegiance, and of the authority of their deceased master, resisted the solicitations of Caracalla, and proclaimed both brothers emperors of Rome. The new princes soon left the Caesarians. In peace, returned to the capital, celebrated their father's funeral with divine honours, and were cheerfully acknowledged as lawful sovereigns, by the senate, the people, and the provincials. Some pre-eminence of rank seems to have been allowed to the elder brother; but they both administered the empire with equal and independent power.

Such a divided form of government would have proved a source of discord between the most affectionate brothers. It was impossible that it could long subsist between two implacable enemies, who neither desired nor could trust a reconciliation. It was visible that one only could reign, and that the other must fall; and each of the judging of his rival's designs by his own, guarded his life with the most jealous vigilances from the repeated attacks of poison or the sword. Their rapid journey through Gaul and Italy, during which they never sat at the same table, or slept in the same house, displayed to the provinces the odious spectacle of fraternal discord. On their arrival at Rome, they immediately divided the vast extent of the Imperial palace. No communication was allowed between their apartments; the doors and passages were diligently fortified, and guards posted and relieved with the same strictness as in a besieged place. The emperors met only in public, in the presence of their afflicted mother; and each surrounded by a numerous train of armed followers. Even on these occasions of ceremony, the dissimulation of courts could ill disguise the rancour of their hearts.

This latent civil war already distressed the whole government, when a scheme was suggested that seconded the mutual benefit to the hostile brothers. It was proposed, that since it was impossible to reconcile their minds, they should separate their interest, and divide the empire between them. The conditions of the treaty were already drawn with some accuracy. It was agreed, that Caracalla, as the elder brother, should remain in possession of Europe and the western Africa; and that he should relinquish the sovereignty of Asia and Egypt to Geta, who might fix his residence at Alexandria or Antioch, cities little inferior to Rome itself in wealth and greatness; that numerous armies should be constantly encamped on either side of the Taurusian Boeotians, to guard the frontiers of the rival monarchies; and that the summn of European extraction should acknowledge the sovereignty of Rome, whilst the natives of Asia followed the emperor of the East. The term of the emperor Julia interrupted the negotiations, the first idea of which had filled every Roman breast with surprise and indignation. The mighty mass of conquest was so intimately united by the hand of time and policy, that it required the most forcible violence to rend it asunder. The Romans had reason to dread, that the disjuncted members would soon be reduced by a civil war under the dominion of one master; but if the separation was permanent, the division of the provinces must terminate in the dissolution of an empire whose many and illustrious remained inviolate.

Had the treaty been carried into execution, the sovereignty of Europe might soon have been the companion of Asia; but Caracalla obtained an easier through a more guilty victory. He artfully listened to his mother's entreaties, and consented to meet his brother in her apartment, on terms of peace and reconciliation. In the midst of their conversation, some Capricornus, who had contrived to conceal themselves, rushed with drawn swords upon the unfortunate Geta. His distracted mother strove to protect him in her arms; but, in her unavailing struggle. she was wounded in the hand, and covered with the blood of her younger son, while she saw the elder artering and insisting the fury of the assassins. As soon as the deed was perpetrated, Caracalla, with hasty steps, and horror in his countenance, ran towards the praetorian camp as his only refuge, and threw himself on the ground before the statues of the tutelar deities. The soldiers attempted to raise and comfort him. In broken and disordered words, he informed them of his imminent danger, and fortunate escape; insinuating that he had prevented the designs of his enemy, and declaring his resolution to live and die with his faithful troops. Geta had been the favourite of the soldiery; but complaint was

10 The late Ant. p. 333. His Annals, p. 45.
14 The whole reign of the Ptolemies is described in the Annals of Josephus in a manner resembling that of the reign of Caracalla.
useless, revenge was dangerous, and they still revered the sun of Severus. Their discontent died away in idle murmur, and Caracalla soon convinced them of the justice of his cause, by distributing in small lashes, domine, the accumulated treasures of his father's reign. The real sentiments of the soldiers alone were of importance to his power or safety. Their declaration in his favour commanded the dutiful protection of the senate. The obeisance assembly was always prepared to ratify the decision of fortune; but as Caracalla wished to assure the first emotions of public indignation, the name of Geta was mentioned with decency, and he received the funereal honours of a Roman emperor. Paterity, in pity to his misfortune, has cast a veil over his vices. We consider that young prince as the innocent victim of his brother's ambition, without recollecting that he himself wanted power, rather than inclination, to consummate the same attempts of revenge and murder.

The crime went unpunished. Neither business, nor pleasure, nor flattery, could deflect Caracalla from the sting of a guilty conscience; and he confessed, in the anguish of a tortured mind, that his disordered fancy often beheld the angry forms of his father and his brother rising into life, to threaten and uphold him. The consciousness of his crime should have induced him to convince mankind, by the virtues of his reign, that the bloody deed had been the involuntary effect of fatal necessity. But the repentance of Caracalla only prompted him to remove from the world whatever could remind him of his guilt, or recall the memory of his murdered brother. On his return from the senate to the palace, he found his mother in the company of several noble matrons, weeping over the untimely fate of her younger son. The jealous emperor threatened them with instant death; the sentence was executed against Faustia, the last remaining daughter of the emperor Marcus; and even the afflicted Julia was obliged to silence her lamentations, to suppress her sighs, and receive the assassin with smiles of joy and approbation. It was computed that, under the vague appellation of the friends of Geta, above twenty thousand persons of both sexes suffered death. His guards and freedmen, the ministers of his serious business, and the companions of his looser hours, those who by his interest had been promoted to any commands in the army or provinces, with the long-connected chain of their dependants, were included in the proscription, which endeavoured to reach every one who had maintained the smallest correspondence with Geta, who lamented his death, or who even mentioned his name. Helvius Perrin, con to the prince of that name, lost his life by an unreasonnable villus. It was a sufficient crime of Tiberius Prisco to be descended from a family in which the love of liberty seemed an hereditary quality. The particular causes of calumny and suspicion were at length exhausted; and when a senator was accused of being a secret enemy to the government, the emperor was satisfied with the general proof that he was a man of property and virtue. From this well-grounded principle he frequently drew the most bloody inferences.

The execution of so many innocent citizens was bewailed by the secret tears of their friends and families. The death of Papinian, the praetorian prefect, was lamented as a public calamity. During the last seven years of Severus, he had exercised the most important offices of the state, and, by his salutary influence, guided the emperor's steps in the paths of justice and moderation. In full assurance of his virtue and abilities, Severus, on his death-bed, had conjured him to watch over the prosperity and union of the imperial family. The honest labours of Papinian served only to inflame the hatred which Caracalla had already conceived against his father's minister. After the murder of Geta, the prefect was commanded to exert the powers of his skill and eloquence in a studied apology for that atrocious deed. The philosopher Seneca had condescended to compose a similar epistle to the senate, in the name of the son and assassin of Agrippina; 30 and that it was easier to commit "than to justify a parricide," was the glorious reply of Papinian, 31 who did not hesitate between the loss of life and that of honour. Such intrepid virtue, which had escaped pure and unsullied from the intrigues of courts, the habits of business, and the arts of his profession, reflects more lustre on the memory of Papinian than all his great employments, his numerous writings, and the superior reputation as a lawyer, which he has preserved through every age of the Roman jurisprudence.

It had hitherto been the peculiar felicity of the Romans, in the worst of times their consolation, that the virtue of the emperor was active, and their vice indolent. Augustus, Trajan, Hadrian, and Marcus, visited their extensive dominions in person, and their progress was marked by acts of wisdom and benevolence. The tyranny of Tiberius, Nero, and Domitian, who rested almost constantly at Rome, or in the adjacent villas, was confined to the senatorial and equestrian orders. 33 But Caracalla was the common enemy of mankind. He left the capital (and he never returned to it) about a year after the murder of Geta.

30 Helvius Prisco, H. 14, p. 119. 31. Dio, 1. xiv. p. 194. 32. The emperor was accused among the praetors. 33. Dio, 1. xiv. p. 127. 34. Some traces of his coalition appear in the annals of this period. 35. E. 1. 36. Dio, 1. xiv. p. 129. 37. The senate (p. 110) 38. That the senate perfected the sentence of death. 39. In this sentence of death was only to be executed under the provisions of the law. 40. The sentences of the law, and the sentences of the law, were customarily made known at the instance of the emperor. 41. The emperor absolved, but the senate of justice had already deemed some actions of Geta so criminal, that no other sentence but that of death could be pronounced. 42. Caracalla, 1. xiv. 36. The prefect was accused of being a secret enemy to the government. 43. He concluded his life in the support of a prince whom he perceived. 44. Dio, 1. xiv. p. 323. E 2

The rest of his reign was spent in the several provinces of the empire, particularly those of the East, and every province was by turns the scene of his rule and cruelty. The senators, compelled by fear to attend his capricious moods, were obliged to provide daily entertainments at immense expense, which he abandoned with contempt to his guards; and to erect, in various cities, magnificent palaces and houses, in which he either dined to excess or, on the contrary, was immediately thrown down. The most wealthy families were ruined by partial fines and confiscations, and the great body of his subjects oppressed by ingenuous and aggravated taxes. In the midst of peace, and upon the slightest provocation, he issued his commands, at Alexandria in Egypt, for a general massacre. From a secure post in the temple of Serapis, he viewed and directed the slaughter of many thousand citizens, as well as strangers, without distinguishing either the number or the crime of the sufferers; since, as he coarsely informed the senate, all the Alexandrians, those who had perished and those who had escaped, were alike guilty.

The wise instructions of Severus never made any lasting impression on the mind of his son, who, although not destitute of imagination and eloquence, was equally devoid of judgment and humanity. One dangerous maxim, worthy of a tyrant, was remembered and abused by Caracalla. "To secure the affections of the army, and to extort the rest of his subjects as of little account."

But the liberty of the fathers had been restrained by prudence, and his indulgence to the troops was tempered by firmness and authority. The careless profusion of the son was the policy of one reign, and the inevitable ruin both of the army and of the empire. The vigilance of the soldiers, instead of being confirmed by the severe discipline of camps, melted away in the luxury of cities. The excessive increase of their pay and dossiers exhausted the state to enrich the military order, whose modesty in peace, and service in war, is best ascertained by an honourable poverty. The demoralization of Caracalla was naught and full of pride; but with the troops he forgot even the proper dignity of his rank, encouraged their insolent familiarity, and neglected the essential duties of a general, affected to imitate the dress and manners of a common soldier.

It was impossible that such a character and conduct could inspire either love or esteem; but as long as his vices were beneficial to the armies, he was secure from the danger of rebellion. A secret conspiracy, provoked by his own jealousy, was fatal to the tyrant. The provincial prefecture was divided between two ministers. The military department was entrusted to Adventus, an experienced rather than an able soldier; and the civil affairs were transacted by Opillius Macrinus, who, by his dexterity in business, had raised himself with a fair character, to that high office. But his favour varied with the caprice of the emperor, and his life might depend on the slightest suspicion, or on the most casual circumstance. Malice or faction had suggested to an African, deeply skilled in the science of jurisprudence, a very dangerous prediction, that Macrinus and his son were destined to reign over the empire. The report was soon diffused through the province; and when the man was sent in chains to Rome, he still asserted in the presence of the prefect of the city, the faith of his prophecy. That magistrate, who had received the most pressing instructions to inflame himself of the measures of Caracalla, immediately communicated the examination of the African to the imperial court, which at that time resided in Syria. But, notwithstanding its diligence of the public messengers, a friend of Macrinus found means to apprise him of the approaching danger. The emperor received the letters from Rome, and he was then engaged in the conversation of a chamberlain, when he delivered them unopened to the prefect of the palace, directing him to despatch the ordinary affairs, and to report the more important business that might be contained in them. Macrinus read his fate, and resolved to prevent it. He blamed the discontents of some inferior officers, and employed the troops of Caracallae, a desperate soldier, who had been refused the rank of centurion. The devotion of Caracalla prompted him to make a pilgrimage from Edessa to the celebrated temple of the Moon at Carcea. He was attended by a body of cavalry; but having stopped on the road for some necessary occasion, his guards preserved a respectful distance, and Martialis, approaching his person under a pretence of duty, stabbed him with a dagger. The bold assassin was instantly killed by a Scythian archer of the imperial guard. Such was the end of a tyrant whose life disgraced human nature; and whose reign ascended the page of the Romans. The grateful soldiers forgot his vices, remembered only his partial liberality, and obliged the senate to proclaim their own dignity and that of religion by granting them a place among the gods. Whilel Caracalla was upon earth, Alexander the Great was the only man whom this god deemed worthy his admiration. He assumed the name and ensigns of Alexander, formed a Macedonian phalanx of guards, persecuted the disciples of Aristotle, and displayed with a puerile enthusiasm the only sentiment by which he discovered any regard for virtue or glory.
We can easily conceive, that after the battle of
Narva, and the conquest of Poland, Charles the
Tusculum (though he still wanted the more
elegant accomplishments of the son of Philip)
might boast of having rivalled his valour and
magnanimity: but in no one action of his life did
Caracalla express the faintest resemblance of the
Macedonian hero, except in the murder of a great
number of his enemies, and of his father's friends.40

After the extinction of the house of Severus, the Roman
world remained three days without a master.
The choice of the army, for the authority of a
distant and feeble senatus was little regarded)
Hung in anxious suspense; no candidate pre-
sented himself whose distinguished birth and
merit could engage their attachment and unite
their sufferages. The decisive weight of the
prætorian guards elevated the hopes of their
prefects, and these powerful ministries began to
assert their legal claim to fill the vacancy of the
Imperial throne. Adventus, however, the senior
prefect, conscious of his age and infirmities,
of his small reputation, and his smaller abilities,
resigned the dangerous honour to the crafty
ambition of his colleague Macrinus, whose well-
deserved grief removed all suspicion of his
being accessory to his master's death.41 The
troops no longer loved nor esteemed his character.
They cast their eyes round in search of a com-
petitor, and at last yielded with reluctance to
his promises of unbounded liberality and indul-
gence. A short time after his acces-
sion, he conferred on his son
Diadumenianus, at the age of only ten years,
the Imperial title and the popular name of
Antoninus. The beautiful figure of the youth,
assisted by an additional donation, for which
the ceremony furnished a pretext, might attract,
it was hoped, the favour of the army, and secure
the doubtful throne of Macrinus.

The authority of the new so-
vereign had been ratified by the
cheerful submission of the senate and provinces.
They waited in their unexpected deliverance
from a hated tyrant, and it seemed of little cons-
quence to examine into the virtues of the suc-
cessor of Caracalla. But as soon as the first
transports of joy and surprise had subsided,
they began to scrutinize the merits of Macrinus
with a critical severity, and to arrange the hasty
choice of the army. It had hitherto been con-
sidered as a fundamental maxin of the constitu-
tion, that the emperor must be always chosen
in the senate, and the sovereign power, no longer
exercised by the whole body, was always dele-
gated to one of its members. But Macrinus
was not a senator.42 The sudden elevation of
the praetorian prefects betrayed the meanness
of their origin; and the equestrian order was
still in possession of that great office, which
commanded with arbitrary sway the lives and
fortunes of the senate. A murmur of indigna-
tion was heard, that a man whose obscure
extraction had never been illustrated by any
signal service, should dare to invest himself
with the purple, instead of bestowing it on some
distinguished senator, equal in birth and dignity
to the prætorian guard of the Imperial station.
As soon as the character of Macrinus was ex-
samined by the sharp eye of discontent, some vices,
and many defects, were easily discovered. The
misconduct of his ministers was in many instances
justly censured, and the dissatisfied people, with
their usual caustic, accused at once his indiscreet
temerity and his excessive severity.43

His rash ambition had climbed a
height where it was difficult to stand
with firmness, and impossible to fall without
instant destruction. Trained in the arts of
courts and the forms of civil business, he trem-
bled in the presence of the fierce and un-
disciplined multitudes, over whom he had assumed
the command; his military talents were despised
and his personal courage suspected; a whisper
that circulated in the camp, disclosed the fatal
secret of the conspiracy against the late emperor,
aggravated the guilt of murder by the business
of hypocrisy, and heightened contempt by de-
testation. To avenge the soldiers, and to pro-
voke inevitable ruin, the character of a refu-
gee was only wanting; and such was the peculiar
hardship of his fate, that Macrinus was com-
pelled to exercise that inviolable office. The
prediligence of Caracalla had left behind it a long
train of ruin and disorder; and if that worthless
tyrant had been capable of reflecting on the sure
consequences of his own conduct, he would
perhaps have enjoyed the dark prospect of the
distress and calamities which he bequeathed to
his successors.

In the management of this neces-
nary reformation, Macrinus pro-
ceeded with a cautious prudence,
which would have restored health and vigour to
the Roman army, in an easy and almost impera-
tible manner. To the soldiers already in-
engaged in the service, he was constrained to bestow
the dangerous privileges and extravagant pay
given by Caracalla; but the new recruits were
received on the more moderate terms of liberal
establishment of Severus, and gradually formed
to modesty and obedience.44 Two fatal errors
destroyed the salutary effects of this judicious
plan. The numerous army, assembled in the
East by the late emperor, instead of being im-
mediately dispersed by Macrinus through the
several provinces, was suffered to remain united
outside. The emperor wished, that he was near a city, and had
received, among other imperial performances, that of exalting
the senatorial dignity. The title was not introduced into
the Roman system until she lifetime of Bassianus; and
the word was thus applied to the senator. It was at first
used to denote the sacred being of the Roman state, and was
restricted in its meaning. It was a title of honor, and the
senate of Rome was the body of personages, from whom such
titulars were derived.
in Syria, during the winter that followed his elevation. In the luxurious luxury of their quarters, the troops viewed their strength and numbers, communed their complaints, and revolved in their minds the advantage of another revolution. The veterans, instead of being flattered by the advantageous distinction, were alarmed by the first steps of the emperor, which they considered as the prelude of his future intentions. The recruits, their resistances entered on a service, whose labors were increased while its rewards were diminished by a career on unwarlike service. The murmurs of the army rippled with impunity into insidious clamours; and the insubordinate spirits a spirit of discontent and dissatisfaction, which waited only for the slightest occasion to break out on every side into a general rebellion. To minds thus disposed, the occasion soon presented itself.

The empress Julia had experienced all the vicissitudes of fortune. From an humble station she had been raised to greatness, only to taste the superior bitterness of an exalted rank. She was doomed to weep over the death of one of her sons, and over the life of the other. The cruel fate of Caracalla, though her good sense must have long taught her to expect it, awakened the feelings of a mother and of an empress. Notwithstanding the respectful civility expressed by the usurper towards the widow of Severus, she descended with a painful struggle into the condition of a subject, and soon withdrew herself, by a voluntary death, from the anxious and inimitating dependence. 41

Julia Mamma, her sister, was ordered to leave the court and Antioch. She retired to Emesa with an immense fortune, the fruit of twenty years favour, accompanied by her two daughters, Sosiana and Mamma, each of whom was a widow, and each had an only son. Basilius, for that was the name of the son of Sosiana, was converted to the honourable chapel of the high priest of the Son; and this holy vocation, embraced, either from prudence or superstition, contributed to raise the Syrian youth to the empire of Rome. A numerous body of troops was stationed at Emesa; and, as the severe discipline of Macrinus had constrained them to pass the winter encamped, they were eager to revenge the cruelty of such unaccustomed hardships. The soldiers, who resorted to crowds to the temple of the Sun, beheld with reverence and delight the elegant dress and figure of the young pontiff: they recognised, or they thought that they recognised, the features of Caracalla, whose memory they now adored. The artful Mamma saw and cherished their rising partiality, and readily sacrificing her daughter's reputation to the fortunes of her grandson, she instilled that Basilius was the natural son of their murdered sovereign. The sums distributed by her emissaries with a lavish hand, silenced every objection, and the profusion sufficiently proved their affinity, or at least the resemblance, of Basilius with the great original. The young Antoninus (for he had assumed and polluted that respectable name) was declared emperor by the troops of Emesa, asserted his hereditary right, and called aloud on the armies to follow the standard of a young and liberal prince, who had taken up arms to avenge his father's death and the oppression of the military order. 42

Whilst a conspiracy of women and eunuchs was concerted with prudence, and conducted with rapid vigour, Macrinus, who, by a decisive motion, might have crushed his infant enemy, flailed between the opposite extremes of terror and security, which alike fixed him inactive at Antioch. A spirit of rebellion diffused itself through all the camps and garrisons of Syria, successive detachments murdered their officers, 43 and joined the party of the rebel; and the tardy restoration of military joy and privileges was imputed to that acknowledged weakness of Macrinus. At length he marched out of Antioch, to meet the increasing and zealous army of Antoninus, his young successor. His own troops seemed to take the field with faintness and reluctance; but, in the heat of the battle, the protectors of the guard, almost by an involuntary impulse, asserted the superiority of their valor and discipline. The rebel ranks were broken when the mother and grandmother of the Syrian prince, who, according to their eastern custom, had attended the army, threw themselves from their covered chariots, and, by exciting the compassion of the soldiers, endeavoured to animate their drooping courage. Antoninus himself, who, in the rest of his life, never acted like a man, in this important crisis of his fate, appeared himself a hero, mounted his horse, and, at the head of his rallied troops, charged sword in hand among the thickest of the enemy; whilst the eunuch Gaunius, whose occupations had been confined to female cares and the soft luxury of Asia, displayed the talents of an able and experienced general. The battle still raged with doubtful violence, and Macrinus might have obtained the victory, had he not betrayed his own cause by a shameful and precipitate flight. His cowardice served only to protract his life a few days, and to stamp deserved ignominy on his misfortunes. It is scarcely necessary to add, that his brothers Didemianus was involved in the same fate. As soon as the stubborn partizans could be convinced that they fought for a prince who had basely deserted them, they surrendered to the conqueror; the contending parties of the Roman army, mingling tears of joy and tenderness, united under the banners of the imagined

41 Dion, Livy, p. 1230. The elevation of Epiphanius, though immediately after the death of Hadrian, happened, according to Eusebius, ed. August., p. 156, after a lapse of many years. At the death of Hadrian, Numa, his first month, Epiphanius was only thirteen years of age. August. Cassianus, ed. August. His age is variously stated by the different authors. According to Cassian, he was born in 165; according to Dionysius, in 163; according to Eusebius, he died in the year 232. The Christology of the episcopacy of Epiphanius was of subordination, as well as his morality, was a great source of complaint. 42 By a sense of occasion, of the numbers and situation of the emperor's party. Of the weakness of Macrinus, on which the writers of the reign of Antoninus are so uniformly uniform, as well as his own jealousy, see the narrative of the war of Marcus and Antoninus, c. 43.
The Sun was worshipped at Emesa, under the name of Elagabalus, and under the form of a black sandal stone, which, as it was universally believed, had fallen from heaven on that sacred place. To this protecting deity, Antinous, not without some reason, ascribed his elevation to the throne. The display of superstitious gratitude was the only serious business of his reign. The triumph of the god of Emesa over all the religions of the earth, was the great object of his zeal and vanity; and the apellation of Elagabalus (for he presumed as pontiff and favourite to adopt that sacred name) was dearer to him than all the titles of Imperial greatness. In a solemn procession through the streets of Rome, the way was strewn with gold dust; the black stone, set in precious gems, was placed on a chariot drawn by six milk-white horses richly caparisoned. The pious emperor held the reins, and, supported by his ministers, moved slowly backwards, that he might perpetually enjoy the felicity of the divine presence. In a magnificent temple raised on the Palatine Mount, the sacrifices of the god Elagabalus were celebrated with every circumstance of cost and solemnity. The richest wines, the most extraordinary victuals, and the rarest aromatics, were profusely consumed on his altar. Around the altar a chorus of Syrian damosels performed their lascivious dances to the sound of barbarian music, whilst the greatest personages of the state and army, clothed in long Phrygian tunics, officiated in the meanest functions, with affected zeal and secret indignation. To this temple, as to the common centre of religious worship, the Imperial fanatic attempted to remove the Ancilia, the Palladium, and all the sacred pledges of the faith of Numia. A crowd of inferior deities attended in various stations the majesty of the god of Emesa; but his court was still imperfect, till a female of distinguished rank was admitted to his bed. Pallas had been first chosen for his consort; but as it was dreaded lest her warlike temper might affright the soft delicacy of a Syrian deity, the Moon, adored by the Africans under the name of Astarte, was deemed a more suitable companion for the Sun. Her image, with the rich offerings of her temple as a marriage portion, was transported with solemn pomp from Carthage to Rome, and the day of those mystic meals was a general festival in the capital and throughout the empire.

A rational voluptuary adheres with inviolable respect to the temperate dictates of nature, and improves the gratifications of sense by social intercourse, entertaining connections, and the soft colouring of taste and the imagination. But Elagabalus (1 speak of the emperor of that name), corrupted by his youth, his country, and his fortune, abandoned himself to the greatest pleasures with ungodly fury, and soon found
disgrace and satiety in the midst of his enjoyments. The inflammatory powers of art were summoned to his aid; the confused multitude of women, of wives, and of dishes, and the studied variety of attitudes and sauces, served to excite his languid appetites. New terms and new inventions in these sciences, the only ones cultivated and patronized by the monarch, signalled his reign, and transmitted his influence to succeeding times. A capricious prodigality supplied the want of taste and elegance; and whilst Elagabalus lavished away the treasures of his people in the widest extravagance, his own voice and that of his flatterers applauded a spirit and magnificence unknown to the times of his predecessors. To confound the order of seasons and climates, to sport with the passions and prejudices of his subjects, and to subvert every law of nature and decency, were in the number of his most delicious amusements.

A long train of concubines, and a rapid succession of wives, among whom was a vestal virgin, ravished by force from her sacred asylum, were insufficient to satisfy the impotence of his passions. The master of the Roman world affected to copy the dress and manners of the female sex; preferred the distaff to the sceptre, and dishonoured the principal dignities of the empire by distributing them among his numerous lovers; one of whom was publicly invested with the title and authority of the emperor's or, as he more properly styled himself, of the emperor's husband.

It may seem probable, the vices and follies of Elagabalus have been magnified by the purely religious, unenlightened, and blackened by prejudice. Yet confining ourselves to the public scenes displayed before the Roman people, and attended by grave and contemporary historians, their insupportable Infamy surpasses that of any other age or country. The licentiousness of an Eastern monarch is excluded from the eye of curiosity by the inaccessible walls of his seraglio. The sentiments of honour and gallantry have introduced a refinement of pleasure, a regard for decency, and a respect for the public opinion, into the modern courts of Europe; but the corruption and opulent nobles of Rome gratified every vice that could be collected from the mighty cendex of nations and manners. Scorn of impunity, careless of censure, they lived without restraint in the patron and humble society of their slaves and parasites. The emperor, in his turn, viewing every rank of his subjects with the same contemptuous insensibility, ascertained without control his sovereign privileges of lust and luxury.

The most worthless of mankind are not afraid to condemn in others the same disorders which they allow in themselves; and can readily discover some nice difference of age, character, or station, to justify the partial distinction. The licentious soldiers, who had raised to the throne the dissolute son of Caracalla, blushed at their ignominious choice, and turned with disgust from that monstrosity, to contemplate with pleasure the opening virtues of his cousin Alexander the son of Mamæa. The crafty Massa, sensible that her grand son Elagabalus must inevitably destroy himself by his own vices, had provided another and sure support of her family. Embracing a favourable moment of kindness and devotion, she had persuaded the young emperor to adopt Alexander in his stead, and to invest him with the title of Caesar, that his own di. 4. 9. 17. vine occupations might be no longer interrupted by the care of the earth. In the second rank that amiable prince soon acquired the affection of the public, and excited the tyrant's jealousy, who resolved to terminate the dangerous competition, either by corrupting the manners, or by taking away the life of his rival. His arts proved unsuccessful: his vain designs were constantly discovered by his own sycophants, and disappointed by those virtuous and faithful servants whom the prudence of Mamæa had placed about the person of her son. In a lusty sally of passion, Elagabalus resolved to execute by force what he had been unable to compass by fraud, and by a desperate sally degraded his cousin from the rank and honours of Caesar. The message was received in the senate with silence, and in the camp with fury. The praetorian guards swore to protect Alexander, and to revenge the dishonoured majesty of the throne.

The tears and promises of the trembling Elagabalus, who only begged them to spare his life, and to leave him in the possession of his beloved Hierocles, diverted their just indignation; and they contented themselves with empowering their prefects to watch over the safety of Alexander, and the conduct of the emperor.

It was impossible that such a reconciliation should last, or that even the meanest of Elagabalus could hold an empire on such humiliating terms of dependence. He soon attempted, by a dangerous experiment, to try the temper of the soldiers. The report of the death of Alexander, and the natural suspicion that he had been murdered, inflamed their passions into fury, and the temper of the camp could only be appeased by the presence and authority of the popular youth. Provoled at this new instance of their affection for his cousin, and their contempt for his person, the emperor ventured to punish some of the leaders of the mutiny. His insensate severity proved instantly fatal to his minions, his mother, and himself. Elagabalus was massacred by the indignant praetorianists, his mutilated corpse dragged through the streets of the city, and thrown into the Tiber. His memory was branded with ever-
and infamy by the senate; the justice of whose decree has been ratified by posterity.59

In the room of Eligius, his cousin Alexander, was raised to the throne by the praetorian guards. His claims to the family of Severus, whose name he assumed, was the evidence that of his predecessor; his virtue and his dangers had already endeared him to the Romans, and the eager liberality of the Senate conferred upon him, in one day, the various titles and powers of the Imperial dignity.60 But as Alexander was a modest and devout youth, of only seventeen years of age, the reins of government were in the hands of two women, of his mother Mama, and of Messa, his grandmother. After the death of the latter, who survived but a short time the elevation of Alexander, Mama remained the sole regent of her son and of the empire.

In every age and country, the wiser, or at least the stronger, of the two sexes, has trumped the reproves of the state, and confounded the other to the cares and pleasures of domestic life. In hereditary monarchies, however, and especially in those of modern Europe, the gallant spirit of chivalry, and the law of succession, have accustomed us to allow a singular exception; and a woman is often acknowledged the absolute sovereign of a great kingdom, in which she would be deemed incapable of exercising the smallest employment, civil or military. But as the Roman emperors were still considered as the generals and magistrates of the republic, their wives and mothers, although distinguished by the name of Augusta, were never associated with their personal honours; and a female reign would have appeared an insuperable prodigy in the eyes of those primitive Romans, who married without love, or loved without delicacy and respect.61 The beautiful Agrippina aspired, indeed, to share the honours of the empire, which she had conferred on her son; but her mad ambition, detested by every citizen who felt for the dignity of Rome, was disappointed by the artful firmness of Seneca and Burrus.62 The good sense, or the indifference, of succeeding princes, restrained them from offending the prejudices of their subjects; and it was reserved for the profligate Elagabalus, to disgrace the acts of the senate, with the name of his mother Sosiana, who was placed by the side of the consuls, and substituted, as a regular member, the decree of the legislative assembly. Her more prudent sister, Mama, decided the useless and odious provocative, and a solemn law was enacted, excluding women from the senate, and devoting to the infall of gods, the head of the whet by whom this sanction should be violated.63 The substance, not the pageantry, of power was the object of Mama's sly ambition. She maintained an absolute and lasting empire over the mind of her son, and in his affection the mother could not brook a rival. Alexander, with her consent, married the daughter of a patrician; but his respect for his father-in-law, and love for the empress, were inconsistent with the tenderness or interest of Mama. The patrician was executed on the ready accusation of treasure, and the wife of Alexander driven with ignominy from the palace, and banished into Africa.64

Notwithstanding this act of jealous cruelty, as well as some instances of severity, with which Mama is charged; the general tenor of her administration was equally for the benefit of her son and of the empire. With the approbation of the senate, she chose sixteen of the wisest and most virtuous senators, as a perpetual council of state, before whom every public business of moment was debated and determined. The celebrated Ulpian, equally distinguished by his knowledge of, and respect for, the laws of Rome, was at their head; and the prudent firmness of this wise statesman ensured order and authority to the government. As soon as they had purged the city from foreign superstition and luxury, the remains of the opulent tyranny of Elagabalus, they applied themselves to remove his worthless creatures from every department of public administration, and to supply their places with men of virtue and ability. Learning, and the love of justice, became the only recommendations for civil offices. Valour, and the love of discipline, the only qualifications for military employments.65

But the most important care of Mama and her wise counsellors, was to form the character of the young emperor, on whose personal qualities the happiness or misery of the Roman world must ultimately depend. The fortunate soil assisted, and even prevented, the hand of cultivation. An excellent understanding soon convinced Alexander of the advantages of virtue, the pleasure of knowledge, and the necessity of labour. A natural mildness and moderation of temper preserved him from the sounds of passion, and the allurements of vice. His amiable regard for his mother, and his esteem for the wise Ulpian, guarded his unperceived youth from the poison of flattery.

The simple journal of his ordinary was a model of his exceptions exhibit a pleasing pinno.
ture of an accomplished emperor, and with some allowance for the differences of manners, might well deserve the imitation of modern princes. Alexander rose early; the first moments of the day were consecrated to private devotion, and his domestic chapel was filled with the images of those heroes, who, by improving or reforming human life, had deserved the grateful reverence of posterity. But, as he deemed the service of mankind the most acceptable worship of the gods, the greatest part of his morning hours was employed in his council, where he discussed public affairs, and determined private causes, with a patience and discretion above his years. The dryness of business was relieved by the charms of literature; and a portion of time was always set apart for his favourite studies of poetry, history, and philosophy. The works of Virgil and Horace, the republics of Plato and Cicero, formed his taste, enlarged his understanding, and gave him the noblest ideas of man and government. The exercises of the body succeeded to those of the mind; and Alexander, who was tall, active, and robust, surpassed most of his equals in the gymnastic arts. Refreshed by the use of the bath and a slight dinner, he resumed, with new vigour, the business of the day; and, till the hour of supper, the principal meal of the Romans, he was attended by his secretaries, with whom he read and answered the multitudes of letters, memorials, and petitions, that must have been addressed to the master of the greatest part of the world. His table was served with the most frugal simplicity; and whenever he was at liberty to consult his own inclination, the company consisted of a few select friends, men of learning and virtue, amongst whom Ulpian was constantly invited. Their conversation was familiar and instructive; and the pauses were occasionally enlivened by the recital of some pleasing composition, which supplied the place of the dances, comedians, and even gladiators, so frequently summoned to the tables of the rich and luxurious Romans. The dress of Alexander was plain and modest, his demeanour courteous and affable; at the proper hours his palace was open to all his subjects, but the voice of a citizen was heard, as in the Eleusinian mysteries, pronouncing the same salutary admonition: 

"Let none enter these holy walls unless he is conscious of a pure and innocent mind." 

Such an uniform tenor of life, which left not a moment for vice or folly, is a better proof of the wisdom and justice of Alexander's government, than all the trifling details preserved in the compilation of Lampsidas. Since the accession of Commodus, the Roman world had experienced, during a term of forty years, the successive and various vicissitudes of four tyrants. From the death of Elagabalus, it enjoyed an auspicious calm of thirteen years. The provinces, relieved from the oppressive taxes imposed by Caracalla and his pretended son, flourished in peace and prosperity, under the administration of magistrates, who were convinced by experience, that to deserve the love of the subjects, was their best and only method of obtaining the favour of their sovereign. While some severe restrictions were imposed on the innocent luxury of the Roman people, the price of provisions, and the interest of money, were reduced by the paternal care of Alexander, whose prudent liberality, without distressing the industrious, supplied the wants and amusements of the people. The dignity, the freedom, the authority of the senate were restored; and every virtuous senator might approach the person of the emperor, without a fear, and without a blush.

The name of Antoninus, ennobled by the virtues of Pius and Nerva, Marcus, had been communicated by adoption to the disaffected Verus, and by descent to the cruel Commodus. It became the honourable appellation of the sons of Severus, was bestowed on young Diadumenianus, and at length prostituted to the infamous high priest of Eunom, Alexander, though pressed by the studied, and, perhaps, sincere equivocation of the senate, nobly refused the borrowed lucre of a name, whilst in his whole conduct he laboured to restore the glories and felicity of the age of the genuine Antoninus.

In the civil administration of his empire, Alexander, wisdom was enforced by virtue, with power, and the people, sensible of the public felicity, repaid their benefactor with their love and gratitude. There still remained a greater, a more necessary, but a more difficult enterprise; the reformation of the military order, whose interest and temper, confirmed by long impunity, rendered them impatient of the restraints of discipline, and careless of the blessings of public tranquillity. In the execution of his design the emperor affected to display his love, and to conceal his fear, of the army. The most rigid economy in every other branch of the administration, supplied a fund of gold and silver for the ordinary pay and the extraordinary rewards of the troops. In their marches he related the severe obligations of carrying seventeen days' provision on their shoulders. Ample magazines were formed along the public roads, and as soon as they entered the senator's country, a numerous train of mules and camels waited on their haughty laziness. As Alexander despised all objects of the luxury of his soldiers, he attempted, at least, to direct it to objects of martial pomp and ornament, fine horses, splendid armour, and shields enriched with silver and gold. He shared whatever fatigue he was obliged to impose, visited, in person, the sick and wounded, preserved an exact register of their services and his own gratitude, and expressed, on every occasion, the warmest regard for a body of men whose welfare, as he affected to declare, was so closely connected with that of the state.
the most gentle arts he laboured to improve the fierce multitude with a sense of duty, and to restore at least a faint image of that discipline to which the Romans owed their empire over so many other nations, as warlike and more powerful than themselves. But his prudence was vain, his courage final, and the attempt towards a reformation served only to inflame the ill it was meant to cure.

The praetorian guards were attached to the youth of Alexander. They loved him as a tender pupil, whom they had saved from a tyrant's fury, and placed on the imperial throne. That amiable prince was sensible of the obligation; but as his gratitude was restrained within the limits of reason and justice, they soon were more dissatisfied with the virtues of Alexander, than they had ever been with the vices of Elagabalus. Their perfect, the wise Ulpian, was the friend of the laws and of the people; he was considered as the enemy of the soldiers, and to his pernicious counsels every scheme of reformation was opposed. Some trifling accident blew up their discontent into a furious mutiny; and a civil war raged, during three days, in Rome, whilst the life of that excellent minister was defended by the grateful people. Terrified, at length, by the sight of some houses in flames, and by the threats of a general conflagration, the people yielded with a sigh, and left the virtuous, but unfortunate, Ulpian to his fate. He was pursued into the Imperial palace, and massacred at the feet of his master, who vainly strove to cover him with the purple, and to obtain his pardon from the inexorable soldiers. Such was the deplorable weakness of government, that the emperor was unable to revenge his murdered friend and his insulted dignity, without stooping to the arts of patience and dissimulation. Epenathus, the principal leader of the mutiny, was removed from Rome, by the honourable employment of prefect of Egypt; from that high rank he was gently degraded to the government of Crete; and when, at length, his popularity among the guards was effaced by time and absence, Alexander ventured to inflict the tardy, but deserved punishment of his crimes. Under the reign of a just and virtuous prince, the tyranny of the army threatened with instant death his most faithful ministers, who were suspected of an intention to correct their intolerable disorder. The historian Dion Cassius had commanded the Pannonian legions with the spirit of ancient discipline. Their brethren of Rome, embracing the common cause of military licence, demanded the head of the reformer. Alexander, however, instead of yielding to their sedition clamours, showed a just sense of the merit and services, by appointing him his colleague in the consulship, and devaluing from his own treasury the expense of that vain dignity; but as it was justly apprehended, that if the soldiers beheld him with the contempt of his office, they would revenge the insult in his blood, the nominal first magistrate of the state retired, by the emperor's advice, from the city, and spent the greatest part of his consulship at his villa in Campania.  

The lenity of the emperor confirmed the insolence of the troops; the legions imitated the example of the guards, and defended their prerogative of licentiousness with the same furious obstinacy. The administration of Alexander was an unavailing struggle against the corruption of his age. In Illyricum, in Mauritianum, in Armenia, in Mesopotamia, in Germany, fresh mutinies perpetually broke out: his officers were murdered, his authority was insulted, and his life at last sacrificed to the fierce discontents of the army. One particular fact well deserves to be recorded, as it illustrates the manners of the troops, and exhibits a singular instance of their return to a sense of duty and obedience. Whilst the emperor lay at Antioch, in his Persian expedition, the particulars of which we shall hereafter relate, the punishment of some soldiers, who had been discovered in the baths of women, excited a sedition in the legion to which they belonged. Alexander ascended his tribunal, and with a modest firmness represented to the armed multitude, the absolute necessity as well as his inflexible resolution of correcting the vices introduced by his inanimate predecessor, and of maintaining the discipline, which could not be relaxed without the ruin of the Roman name and empire. Their clamours interrupted his mild exhortation. "Reserve your shouts," said the undaunted emperor, "till you take the field against the Persians, the Germans, and the Sarmatians. Be silent in the presence of your sovereign and benefactor, who bestows upon you the corn, the clothing, and the money of the provinces. Be silent, or I shall no longer style you soldiers, but citizens," 22 if these idle excited men, who peremptorily demand the laws of Rome deserve to be ranked among the meanest of the people. His enemies inflamed the fury of the legion, and their brandished arms already threatened his person. "Your courage," resumed the intrepid Alexander, "would be more nobly displayed in the field of battle; now you may destroy, you cannot intimidate; and the severe justice of the republic will punish your crimes, and revenge my death." The legion still persisted in clamorous sedition, when the emperor pronounced, with a loud voice, the decisive sentence. "Citizens! lay down your arms, and defend in peace, your respective habitations." The tumult was instantly appeased; the soldiers, filled with grief and shame, instantly confessed the justice of their punishment and the power of discipline, yielded up their arms and military insignia, and retired in confusion, not to their camp, but to the several lines of the city. Alexander enjoyed, during thirty days, the edifying spectacle of their repentance; nor did he restore

22. Cæsar, B. C. V. 2. 21. This copy of the text is quoted, in the state of 22. Cæsar, B. C. V. 2. 21. This copy of the text is quoted, in the state of
them to their former rank in the army, till he had punished with death those tribunes whose unceasefulness had occasioned the mutiny. The grateful legion served the emperor, whilst living, and revenged him when dead.  

The resolutions of the multitude generally depend on a moment; and the caprice of passion might equally determine the seditive legion to lay down their arms at the emperor's feet, or to plunge them into his breast. Perhaps, if any singular transaction had been investigated by the penetration of a philosopher, we should discover the secret causes which, on that occasion, authorised the boldness of the prince, and commanded the obedience of the troops; and perhaps, if it had been related by a judicious historian, we should find this action, worthy of Caesar himself, reduced nearer to the level of probability and to the common standard of the character of Alexander Severus. The abilities in that amiable prince seem to have been inadequate to the difficulties of his situation, the firmness of his conduct inferior to the purity of his intention. His virtues, as well as the vices of Elagabalis, contrived a mixture of weakness and effeminacy from the soft climate of Syria, of which he was a native; though he blushes at his foreign origin, and listened with a vain complacency to the flattering genealogists, who derived his race from the ancient stock of Roman nobility. The pride and avarice of his mother cast a shade on the glories of his reign; and by expelling from his part near the same absurd obloquy which she had unjustly claimed from his unexperienced youth, Manini exposed to public ridicule both her son's character and her own.  

The rigours of the Persian war irritated the military discontent; the unsuccessful event degraded the reputation of the emperor as a general, and even as a soldier. Every cause prepared, Capacity circumstance hastened a revolution, which distracted the Roman empire with a long series of intestine calamities.  

The absolute tyranny of Commodus, the civil wars occasioned by his death, and the new maxims of policy introduced by the house of Severus, had all contributed to increase the dangerous power of the army, and in abating the faint image of laws and liberty that was still impressed on the mind of the Romans. This internal change, which undermined the foundations of the empire, we have endeavoured to explain with some degree of order and perspicuity. The personal character of the emperors, their victories, laws, follies, and fortunes, can interest us no further than as they are connected with the general history of the Decline and Fall of the monarchy.  

Our constant attention to that great object will not suffer us to overlook a most important act of Antoninus Pius called, which communicated to all the free inhabitants of the empire the same and privileges of Roman citizens. His universal liberty flowed not, however, from the sentiments of a generous mind; it was the well-considered result of avarice, and will naturally be illustrated by some observations on the finances of that state, from the various ages of the commonwealth to the reign of Alexander Severus.

The siege of Veii in Tuscany, the first considerable enterprise of the Romans, was put to the test in the tenth year, much less by the strength of the place than by the insufficiency of the besiegers. The unaccustomed hardships of so many winter campaigns, at the distance of near twenty miles from home, required more than common encouragement; and the senate wisely presented the clamours of the people, by the institution of a regular pay for the soldiers, which was levied by a general tribute, assessed according to an equitable proportion on the property of the citizens. During more than two hundred years after the conquest of Veii, the victories of the republic added less to the wealth than to the power of Rome. The states of Italy paid their tribute in military service only, and the vast force both by sea and land, which was exerted in the Punic wars, was maintained at the expense of the Romans themselves. That high-spirited people (such is often the generous enthusiasm of freedom) cheerfully submitted to the most excessive but voluntary burdens, in the just confidence that they should speedily enjoy the rich harvest of their labours. Their expectations were not disappointed. In the course of a few years, the riches of Syracuse, of Carthage, of Macedonia, and of Asia, were brought in triumph to Rome. The treasures of Persia alone amounted in near two millions sterling to the Roman capital, and the Roman people, the sovereign of so many nations, was for ever delivered from the weight of taxes. The increasing revenue of the provinces was found sufficient to defray the ordinary establishment of war and government, and the fabulous mass of gold and silver was deposited in the temple of Saturn, and reserved for any unforeseen emergency of the state.

History has never, perhaps, suffered a greater or more irreparable injury than in the loss of the curious register bequeathed by Augustus to the senate, in which that experienced prince so accurately balanced the revenues and expenses of the Roman empire. Deprived of this clear and comprehensive estimate, we are reduced to collect a few
imperfect hints from such of the ancients as have accidentally turned aside from the splendid to the more useful parts of history. We are informed, that, by the conquests of Pompey, the tribute of Asia was raised from fifty to one hundred and thirty-five millions of drachmas, or about four millions and a half a year. Under the last and most in-
doent of the Ptolemies, the revenue of Egypt is said to have amounted to twelve thousand five hundred talents; a sum equivalent to more than two millions and a half of our money; but which was afterwards considerably improved by the more exact economy of the Romans, and the increase of the trade of 

of Gaul, the country was enriched by raising, as Egypt was by commerce, and the tributes of those two great provinces have been compared as nearly equal to each other in value. The ten thousand 

of Africa, about four millions sterling, which vanquished Carthage was condemned to pay within the term of fifty years, was a slight acknowledgegment of the superiority of Rome, and cannot bear the least proportion with the taxes afterwards raised, both on the lands and on the persons of the inhabitants, when the fertile coast of Africa was reduced into a province.

Spain, by a very singular fatality, was the Peru and Mexico of the old world. The discovery of the rich western continent by the Phcenicians, and the oppression of the simple natives, who were compelled to labour in their own mines for the benefit of strangers, form an exact type of the more recent history of Spanish America. The Phcenicians were acquainted only with the coast of Spain; avarice, as well as ambition, carried the arms of Rome and Carthage into the heart of the country, and almost every part of the soil was found pregnant with copper, silver, and gold. Mention is made of a mine near Carthagena, which yielded every day twenty-five thousand drachmas of silver, or about three hundred thousand pounds a year. Twenty thousand pounds weight of gold was annually received from the provinces of Asturias, Galicia, and Lusitania.

We want both leisure and materials to pursue this curious enquiry through the many potent states that were assimilated in the Roman empire. Some notion, however, may be formed of the revenue of the provinces when considerable wealth had been deposited by nature, or collected by man, if we observe the severe attention that was directed to the abodes of solitude and sterility. Augustus once received a petition from the inhabitants of Cyzicus, humbly praying that they might be relieved from one-third of their excessive impositions. Their whole tax amounted indeed to no more than one hundred and fifty drachmas, or about five pounds; but Cyzicus was a little island, or rather a rock, of the Egean Sea, destitute of fresh water and every necessity of life, and inhabited only by a few wretched fishermen.

From the faint glimmerings of these doubtful and scattered lights, we should be inclined to believe, 1st, That with every fair allowance for the difference of times and circumstances, the general income of the Roman provinces could seldom amount to less than fifteen or twenty millions of our money; and 2ndly, That so ample a revenue must have been fully adequate to all the expenses of the moderate government instituted by Augustus, whose court was the modest family of a private senator, and whose military establishment was calculated for the defence of the frontiers, without any aspiring views of conquest, or any sanguine apprehension of a foreign invasion.

Notwithstanding the seeming probability of both these conclusions, it appears that the latter of them at least is posi-
discovered by the language and conduct of Augustus. It is not easy to determine whether, on this occasion, he acted as the common father of the Roman world, or as the oppressor of liberty; whether he wished to relieve the provinces, or to impoverish the senate and the equites under. But no sooner had he assumed the reins of government than he frequently intimated the insufficiency of the tributes, and the necessity of throwing an equitable proportion of the public burden upon Rome and Italy. In the prosecution of this unpopular design, he advanced, however, by cautious and well-weighted steps. The introduction of customs was followed by the establishment of an excise, and the scheme of taxation was completed by an artful assessment on the real and personal property of the Roman citizens, who had been exempted from any kind of contribution above a century and a half.

1. In a great empire like that of Rome, a natural balance of money must have gradually established itself. It has been already observed, that as the wealth of the provinces was attracted to the capital by the strong band of conquest and power, so a consider-
dable part of it was restored to the industrious provinces by the gentle influence of commerce and arts. In the reign of Augustus and his successors, duties were imposed on every kind of merchandise, which, through a thousand channels, flowed to the great centre of opulence and luxury; and in whatever manner the law was executed, it was the Roman purchaser, and not the pro-
vincial merchant, who paid the tax. The rate of the customs varied from the eighth to the fortieth part of the value of the commodity, and we have a right to suppose that the variation was 

20 Plutarch, in Pompey, p. 252.
21 Varro, l. viii. p. 276.
22 Varro, l. viii. p. 258.
23 In the revenue of Gaul.
24 Plutarch, in Pompey, p. 252. He seems to give the provinces.
25 Plutarch, in Pompey, p. 252. The Athenians and Carthaginians were deeply in debt to the Athenians. See Dacier on ancient Weights and Measures. Ctesias, in his Historiae, says that the Athenians annually possessed that the same talent was worth two talents to Carthaginians.
26 In the revenue of Gaul.
27 Cyprian in Pompey, p. 84.
28 Plutarch, in Pompey, p. 84.
29 Cato was built by the Phcenicians.
directed by the unalterable maxims of policy; that a higher duty was fixed on the articles of luxury than on those of necessity, and that the productions raised or manufactured by the labour of the subjects of the empire were treated with more indulgence than was shown to the provincials, or at least the unpopular, commerce of Arabia and India. There is still extant a long but imperfect catalogue of eastern commodities which, about the time of Alexander Severus, were subject to the payment of duties; cinnamon, srryr, pepper, ginger, and the whole tribe of aromatics, a great variety of precious stones, among which the diamond was the most remarkable for its price, and the emerald for its beauty; Parthian and Babylonian leather, cottons, silks, both raw and manufactured, sponges, ivory, and sumach. We may observe, that the use and value of those effeminate slaves gradually rose with the decline of the empire.

11. When Augustus resolved to establish a permanent military force for the defence of his government against foreign and domestic enemies, he instituted a peculiar treasury for the pay of the soldiers, the rewards of the veterans, and the extraordinary expenses of war. The ample revenue of the excise, though peculiarly appropriated to those uses, was found inadequate to supply the deficiency; the emperor suggested a new tax of five per cent. on all legacies and inheritances. But the nobles of Rome were more tenacious of property than of freedom. Their indignant murmurs were received by Augustus with his usual temper. He candidly referred the whole business to the senate, and exhorted them to provide for the public service by some other expedient of a less odious nature. They were divided and perplexed. He incited them to their obstinacy would oblige him to propose a general land-tax and imputation. They acquiesced in silence. The new imposition on legacies and inheritances was however mitigated by some restrictions. It did not take place unless the object was of a certain value, most probably of fifty or an hundred pieces of gold; nor could it be exacted from the amount of kin on the father's side. When the right of nature and poverty were thus secured, it seemed reasonable, that a stranger, or distant relation, who acquired an unexpected accession of fortune, should cheerfully resign a twentieth part of it, for the benefit of the state. Such a tax, plentiful as it must prove in every wealthy community, was most happily suited to the situation of the Romans, who could frame their arbitrary wills, according to the dictates of reason or caprice, without any restraint from the modern fetters of entail and settlements. From various causes the partiality of paternal affection often lost its influence over the stern patriotism of the commonwealth, and the absolute nobles of the empire; and if the father bequeathed to his son the fourth part of his estate, he removed all ground of legal complaint. But a rich childless old man was a domestic tyrant, and his power increased with his years and infirmities. A servile crowd, in which he frequently reckoned praters and consuls, courted his smiles, pampered his avarice, applauded his follies, served his passions, and waited with impatience for his death. The arts of attendance and flattery were formed into a most lucrative science; those who professed it acquired a peculiar appellation; and the whole city, according to the lively descriptions of satire, was divided between two parties, the hunters and their game. Yet while so many unjust and extravagant wills were every day dictated by cunning and ascribed by folly, a few were the result of rational esteem and virtuous gratitude. Ciceron, who had so often defended the lives and fortunes of his fellow-citizens, was rewarded with legacies to the amount of an hundred and seventy thousand pounds; nor do the friends of the younger Pliny seem to have been less generous to that amiable patron. Whatever was the motive of the testator, the treasury claimed, without distinction, the twentieth part of his estate; and in the course of two or three generations, the whole property of the subject must have gradually passed through the coffers of the state.

110. In the first and golden years of the reign of Nero, that prince, from a desire of popularity, and perhaps from a blind impulse of benevolence, conceived a wish of abolishing the oppression of the customs and excise. The wisest senators applauded his magnanimity; but they diverted him from the execution of a design, which would have dissolved the strength and resources of the republic. Had it indeed been possible to realize this dream of fancy, such princes as Trajan and
The sentiments, and, indeed, the situation of Carcalla, were very different from those of the Antonines. Inattentive, or rather averse to the welfare of his people, he found himself under the necessity of gratifying the insatiate avarice which he had excited in the army. Of the several impositions introduced by Augustus, the twentieth on inheritances and legacies was the most fruitful, as well as the most comprehensive. As its influence was not confined to Rome or Italy, the produce continually increased with the gradual extension of the Roman Citt. The new citizens, though charged, on equal terms, with the payment of new taxes, which had not affected them as subjects, derived an ample compensation from the rank they obtained, the privileges they acquired, and the fair prospect of honours and fortune that was thrown open to their ambition. But the favour which implied a distinction was lost in the prodigality of Carcalla, and the reluctant provincials were compelled to assume the want of their privileges, and to the real obligations, of Roman citizens. Nor was the rapacious son of Severus contented with such a measure of taxation as had appeared sufficient to his moderate predecessors. Instead of a twentieth he exacted a tenth of all legacies and inheritances; and during his reign (for the ancient proportion was restored after his death) he crushed alike every part of the empire under the weight of his iron sceptre.

When all the provincials became liable to the peculiar impositions of the tributum, the Roman citizens, it seemed, to acquire a legal exemption from the tributum which they had paid in their former condition of subjects. Such were not the maxims of government adopted by Carcalla and his pretended son. The old as well as the new taxes were, at the same time, levied in the provinces. It was reserved for the virtue of Alexander to relieve them in a great measure from this intolerable grievance, by reducing the tributes to a thirtieth part of the sum exacted at the time of his accession. It is impossible to conjecture the motive that engaged him to spare so trifling a remnant of the public evil; but the notion of wood, which had not been totally eradicated, again sprang up with the most luxuriant growth, and in the succeeding age darkened the Roman world with its deadly shade. In the course of this history, we shall be too often summoned to explain the land-tax, the exploit, and the annual contributions of corn, wine, oil, and meat, which were exacted from the provincials for the use of the court, the army, and the capital.

As long as Rome and Italy were respected as the centre of government, a national spirit was preserved by the ancient and incompact imbibed by the adopted citizens. The principal commands of the army were filled by men who had received a liberal education, were well instructed in the advantages of laws and letters, and who had risen, by equal steps, through the regular succession of civil and military honours. To their influence and example we may partly attribute the modest obedience of the legions during the two first centuries of the Imperial history.

But when the last enclosure of the Roman constitution was trampled down by Carcalla, the separation of professions gradually succeeded to the distinction of ranks. The more polished citizens of the internal provinces were alone qualified to act as lawyers and magistrates. The regular trade of arms was abandoned to the peasants and barturians of the frontiers, who knew no country but their camp, no science but that of war, no civil laws, and scarcely those of military discipline. With bloody hands, savage manners, and desperate resolutions, they sometimes guarded, but much oftener subverted, the throne of the emperors.

CHAP. VII.

The Elevation and Tyranny of Maximus.—Rebellion in Africa and Italy, under the Authority of the Senate.—Civil Wars and Bellum.—Violent Deaths of Maximus and his Son, of Marcellus and Bolbiana, and of the three Gordians.—Unification and Secular Games of Philip.

Of the various forms of government, which have prevailed in the world, an hereditary monarchy seems to present the fairest scope for ridicule. It is possible to relate, without an indignant smile, that, on the father's decease, the property of a nation, like that of a drove of oxen, descends to his infant son, as yet unknown to mankind and to himself, and that the loudest warcries and the wildest statements, relinquishing their natural right to empire, approach the royal cradle with beseeching knees and protestations of involuntary fidelity? Satire and declamation may paint these obvious topics in the most dazzling colours, but our more serious thoughts will respect a useful prejudice, that establishes a rule of succession, independent of the passions of mankind; and we shall choose-

112 See Piso's Fragment, the Augustan History, and Suetonius, Dac. 20.
113 The tribunes (typically so called) were not formed, since the first persons after those millions of taxes.
114 The composition of the new citizenship is accurately described by TIther. Fragmenta, No. 37, 39, 32. pope published a law very much in their favour.
fully acquiesce in any expedient which deprives the multitude of the dangerous, and indeed the ideal, power of giving themselves a master.

In the cool shade of retirement we may easily devise imaginary forms of government, in which the sceptre shall be constantly bestowed on the most worthy, by the free and uncorrupt suffrage of the whole community. Experience overturns these airy fancies, and teaches us, that in a large society, the election of a monarch can never devolve to the wishes due to the most numerous, part of the population. The king is the only order of men sufficiently united to consent to the same sentiments, and powerful enough to impose on them the rest of their fellow-citizens: but the temper of soldiers, habituated at once to violence and to slavery, renders them very unfit guardians of a legal, or even a civil constitution. Justice, humanity or political wisdom, are qualities they are too little acquainted with in themselves, to appreciate them in others. Valour will acquire their esteem, and liberality will purchase their suffrage; but the first of these merits is often lodged in the most savage breasts; the latter can only exert itself at the expense of the public; and both may be turned against the possessor of the throne, by the ambition of a daring rival.

The superior prerogative of birth, when it has obtained the sanction of time and popular opinion, is the plainest and least invisible of all distinctions among mankind. The acknowledged right extinguishes the hopes of faction, and the conscious security disarms the cruelty of the monarch. To the firm establishment of this idea, we owe the peaceful succession, and mild administration, of European monarchies. To the defect of it, we must attribute the frequent civil wars, through which an Asiatic despot is obliged to cut his way to the throne of his fathers. Yet, even in the east, the sphere of contention is usually limited to the princes of the reigning house, and as soon as the more fortunate competitor has removed his brethren, by the sword and the bow-string, he no longer sustains any jealousy of his master subjects. But the Roman empire, after the authority of the senate had sunk into contempt, was a vast scene of confusion. The royal, and even noble, families of the provinces, had long since been in triumph before the car of the haughty republicans. The ancient families of Rome had successively fallen beneath the tyranny of the Caesars; and whilst those princes were shackled by the forms of a commonwealth, and disappointed by the repeated failure of their posterity; it was impossible that any idea of hereditary succession should have taken root in the minds of their subjects. The right to the throne, which alone could claim from birth, every one assumed from merit. The daring hopes of ambition were set loose from the salutary restraints of law and prejudice; and the moat of mankind, without folly, entertain a hope of being raised by valour and fortune to a

rank in the army, in which a single crime would enable him to wrest the sceptre of the world from his foible and unpopular master. After the murder of Alexander Severus, and the elevation of Maximinus, no emperor could think himself safe upon the throne, and every barbarian potentate of the frontier might aspire to that august, but dangerous station.

About thirty-two years before that event, the emperor Severus, returning from an eastern expedition, halted in Thrace, to celebrate, with military games, the birthday of his younger son, Geta. The country flocked in crowds to behold their sovereign, and a young barbarian of gigantic stature earnestly solicited, in his rude dialect, that he might be allowed to contend for the prize of wrestling. As the pride of discipline would have been disgraced in the overthrow of a Roman soldier by a Thracian peasant, he was matched with the stoutest followers of the camp, sixteen of whom he successively laid on the ground. His victory was rewarded by some trilling gifts, and a permission to enlist in the troops. The next day, the happy barbarian was distinguished above a crowd of recruits, dancing and exulting after the fashion of his country. As soon as he perceived that he had attracted the emperor's notice, he instantly ran up to his horse, and followed him on foot, without the least appearance of fatigue, in a long and rapid career. "Thracian," said Severus with astonishment, "what art thou disposed to wrestle after thy race?" "Most willingly, Sir," replied the unwearied youth, and, almost in a breath, overthrew seven of the strongest soldiers in the army. A gold collar was the prize of his matchless vigour and activity. He was immediately appointed to serve in the horse-guard who always attended upon the person of the sovereign.

Maximinus, for that was his name, though born on the territories of the empire, descended from a mixed race of barbarians. His father was a Goth, and his mother of the nation of the Alani. He displayed, on every occasion, a valour equal to his strength; and his native ferocity was soon tempered or disguised by the knowledge of the world. Under the reign of Severus and his son, he obtained the rank of centurion, with the favour and esteem of both those princes, the former of whom was an excellent judge of merit. Gratitude formed Maximinus to serve under the assassin of Caracalla. Honour taught him to decline the effeminate insults of Elagabalus. On the accession of Alexander he was recalled to court, and was placed by that prince in a station useful to the service, and honourable to himself.

The fourth legion, to which he was appointed tribune, soon bore, under his care, our best disciplin of the whole army. With the general applause of the soldiers, who bestowed on their favourite the names of Ajax and Hercules, he was successively promoted to the first military command; and had not he still retained

---

1 Thuc. vi. 78. 2 Hist. Aug. p. 129.
too much of his savage origin, the emperor might perhaps have given his own sister in marriage to the son of Maximin.  

Company of Instead of securing his fidelity, these favours served only to inflame the ambition of the Thracian pretender, who deemed his fortune inexorably to his merits, as long as he was constrained to acknowledge a superior. Though a stranger in real wisdom, he was not devoid of a selfish cunning, which showed him that the emperor had lost the affection of the army, and taught him to improve their discontent to his own advantage. It is easy for faction and calumny to shed their poison on the administration of the best of princes, and to accuse even their virtues, by artfully confounding them with those vices to which they bear the nearest affinity. The troops, listened with pleasure to the emissaries of Maximin. They blushed at their own ignominious patience, which, during thirteen years, had supported the vexatious discipline imposed by an effeminate Syrian, the timid slave of his mother and of the senate. It was time, they cried, to cast away that useless phantom of the civil power, and to elect for their prince and general a real soldier, educated in camps, exercised in war, who would assert the glory, and distribute among his companions the treasures of the empire. A great army was at that time assembled on the banks of the Ilissus, under the command of the emperor himself, who, almost immediately after his return from the Persian war, had been obliged to march against the barbarians of Germany. The important care of training and reviewing the new levies was entrusted to Maximin. One day, as he entered the field of exercise, the troops, either from a sudden impulse, or a formed conspiracy, saluted him emperor, silenced by their loud acclamations his obstinate refusal, and hastened to consummate their rebellion by the murder of Alexander Severus.  

The circumstances of his death are variously related. The writers, who suppose that he died in ignorance of the ingratiate and ambition of Maximin, affirm, that, after taking a frugal repast in the sight of the army, he retired to sleep, and that, about the seventh hour of the day, a part of his own guards broke into the Imperial tent, and, with many wounds, assassinated their virtuous and unsuspecting prince. If we credit another, and indeed a more probable account, Maximin was invested with the purple by a numerous detachment, at the distance of several miles from the capital; and he trusted for success rather to the secret wishes than to the public declarations of the great army. Alexander had sufficient time to awaken a faint sense of loyalty among his troops; but their reluctant professions of fidelity quickly vanished on the appearance of Maximin, who declared himself the friend and advocate of the military order, and was unanimously acknowledged emperor of the Romans by the applauding legions. The son of Mamana, betrayed and deserted, withdrew into his tent, desirous at least to conceal his approaching fate from the insults of the multitude. He was soon followed by a tribunal and some centurions, the ministers of death; but instead of receiving with mortify resolution the inevitable stroke, his unavailing cries and entreaties disregarded the last moments of his life, and converted into contempt some portion of the just pity which his innocence and misfortunes must inspire. His mother Mamana, whose pride and arrogance loudly accused as the cause of his ruin, perished with her son. The most faithful of his friends were sacrificed to the first fury of the soldiery. Others were reserved for the more deliberate cruelty of the usurper; and those who experienced the mildest treatment, were stripped of their employments, and ignominiously driven from the court and army.  

The former tyrants, Caligula and Nero, Commodus and Caracalla, were all dissolute and inexperienced youths, educated in the purple, and corrupted by the pride of empire, the luxury of Rome, and the perfidious voice of flattery. The cruelty of Maximin was derived from a different source, the fear of contempt. Though he depended on the attachment of the soldiers, who loved him for virtues like their own, he was conscious that his mean and barbarian origin, his savage appearance, and his total ignorance of the arts and institutions of civil life, formed a very unfavourable contrast with the amiable manners of the unhappy Alexander. He remembered that, in his humbler fortune, he had often waited before the door of the haughty nobles of Rome, and had been denied admission by the insolence of their slaves. He recoiled too the friendship of a few who had relished his poverty, and assisted his rising hopes. But those who had spurned, and those who had protected him, the Thracian, were guilty of the same crime, the knowledge of his original obscurity. For this crime many were put to death; and by the execution of several of his benefactors, Maximin published, in characters of blood, the inadmissible history of his baseness and ingratitude.  

The dark and singular soul of the tyrant, was open to every suspicion against those among his subjects who were the most distinguished by their birth or merit. Whenever he was alarmed with the sound of treason, his cruelty was unbounded and unrelenting. A conspiracy against his life was either discovered or imagined, and Magnus, a consular senator, was named as the principal author of it. Without a witness, without a trial, and without an opportunity of defence, Magnus, with four thousand of his supposed accomplices, were put to death. Italy and the whole empire were infested with innumerable spies and informers. On the slightest
acquiescence, the first of the Roman nobles, who had governed provinces, commanded armies, and been adorned with the most splendid emblems of power and honor, were held up in the public cartage, and hurried away to the emperor's pleasure. Conflagration, exile, or simple death, were esteemed uncommon instances of his mercy. Some of the unfortunate sufferers were ordered to be served up in the larders of slaughtered animals, others to be exposed to wild beasts, others again to be beheaded with clubs. During the three years of his reign, he disdained to visit either Rome or Italy. His camp, occasionally removed from the banks of the Rhine to those of the Danube, was the seat of his stern despotism, which trampled on every principle of law and justice, and was supported by the savagery of the army. No man of noble birth, of elegant accomplishments, without a knowledge of civil business, was suffered near his person; and the court of a Roman emperor revived the idea of those ancient chief of slaves and gladiators, whose savage power had left a deep impression of terror and detestation.

As long as the cruelty of Maximi- min was confined to the illustrious senators, or even to the bold adventurers, who in the court or army exposed themselves to the caprice of fortune, the body of the people viewed their sufferings with indifference, or perhaps with pleasure. But the tyrant's avarice, stimulated by the insatiable desires of the soldiers, at length attacked the public property. Every city of the empire was possessed of an independent revenue, destined to purchase corn for the multitudes, and to supply the expenses of the games and entertainments. By a single act of authority, the whole mass of wealth was at once confiscated for the use of the imperial treasury. The temples were stripped of their most valuable offerings of gold and silver, and the statues of gods, heroes, and emperors, were melted down and coined into money. These impious orders could not be enforced without tumults and massacres, as in many places the people chose rather to die in the defense of their altars, than to behold in the midst of peace their cities exposed to the rapine and cruelty of war. The soldiers themselves, among whom this sacrilegious plunder was distributed, received it with a black ; and, hardened as they were in acts of violence, they dreaded the just reproaches of their friends and relations. Throughout the Roman world a general outcry of indignation was heard, implored vengeance on the common enemy of human kind; and at length, by an act of private oppression, a powerful and armed province was driven into rebellion against him.

The procurator of Africa was a servile wret-
deputation of the noblest provincials was sent, without delay, to Rome, to relate and justify the conduct of their countrymen, who, having long suffered with patience, were at length resolved to act with vigour. The letters of the new prince were modest and respectful, excusing the necessity which had obliged them to accept the Imperial title; but submitting their election and their fate to the supreme judgment of the senate.

The so-called "accession" of Gordian was of brief duration. His early death plunged the empire into confusion. The empire was divided, and the de facto ruler was the praefect of the Praetorian guards, Balbinus. This led to a period of civil war and instability, known as the Crisis of the Third Century, which would have lasting consequences for the Roman Empire.
country, and liberal rewards were offered to whoever had the courage and good fortune to destroy them.

During the emperor's absence, a detachment of the praetorian guards remained at Rome, to protect, or rather to command, the capital. The prefect Vitalianus had signified his fidelity to Maximin, by the alacrity with which he had obeyed, and even prevented, the cruel mandates of the tyrant. His death alone could rescue the authority of the senate and the lives of the senators from a state of danger and suspense. Before their resolves had transpired, a quasar and some tribunes were commissioned to take his devoted life. They executed the order with equal boldness and success; and, with their bloody daggers in their hands, ran through the streets, proclaiming to the people and the soldiers the news of the happy revolution. The enthusiasm of liberty was seconded by the promise of a large donation, in lands and money; the status of Maximin were thrown down; the capital of the empire acknowledged, with transport, the authority of the two Gordians and the senate; and the triumph of Rome was followed by the rest of Italy.

A new spirit had arisen in that assembly, whose long patience had been insulted by wanton despotism and military license. The senate assumed the reins of government, and, with a calm intrapidity, prepared to vindicate by arms the cause of freedom. Among the consular senators, recommended by their merit and services to the favour of the emperor Alexander, it was easy to select twenty, not unequal to the command of an army, and the conduct of a war. To these was the defence of Italy intrusted. Each was appointed to act in his respective department, authorised to enrol and discipline the Italian youth; and instructed to fortify the ports and highways, against the impending invasion of Maximin. A number of deputies, chosen from the most illustrious of the senatorial and equestrian orders, were dispatched at the same time to the governors of the several provinces, earnestly conjuring them to join to the assistance of their country, and to remind the nations of their ancient ties of friendship with the Roman senate and people.

The general respect with which these deputies were received, and the zeal of Italy and the provinces in favour of the senate, sufficiently prove that the subjects of Maximin were reduced to that unanimous distress, in which the body of the people has more to fear from oppression than from resistance. The consciousness of that melancholy truth inspires a degree of persevering fury, seldom to be found in those civil wars which are artificially supported for the benefit of a few factions and designing leaders.

For while the cause of the Gordians was embraced with such diffusive ardour, the Gordians themselves were no more. The feeble court of Carthage was alarmed with the rapid approach of Capellianus, governor of Mauritania, who, with a small band of veterans, and a fierce host of barbarians, attacked a faithful, but unwartiKe province. The younger Gordian sallied out to meet the enemy at the head of a few guards, and a numerous undisciplined multitude, enfeebled in the peaceful luxury of Carthage. His useless valour served only to procure him an honourable death in the field of battle. His aged father, whose reign had not exceeded thirty-six days, put an end to his life on the first news of the defeat. Carthage, destitute of defence, opened her gates to the conqueror, and Africa was exposed to the rapacious cruelty of a slave, obliged to satisfy his unrelenting master with a large account of blood and treasure. The fate of the Gordians filled Rome with just but unexpected terror. The senate convoked in the temple of Concord, affected to transact the common business of the day; and seemed to decline, with trembling anxiety, the consideration of their own, and the public danger. A silent consternation prevailed on the assembly, till a senator, of the name and family of Trajan, awakened his brethren from their fatal lethargy. He represented to them, that the choice of cautious dilatory measures had been long since out of their power; that Maximin, implacable by nature, and exasperated by injuries, was advancing towards Italy, at the head of the military force of the empire; and that their only remaining alternative, was either to meet him bravely in the field, or tamely to expect the tortures and ignominious death reserved for unsuccessful rebellion. "We have lost," continued he, "two excellent princes; put unless we desert ourselves, the hopes of the republic have not perished with the Gordians. Many are the senators, whose virtues have deserved, and whose abilities would sustain, the Imperial dignity. Let us elect two emperors, one of whom may conduct the war against the public enemy, whilst his colleague remains at Rome to direct the civil administration. I cheerfully expose myself to the danger and fury of the inexperienced, and give my vote in favour of Maximian and Ballianus.

Hatify my choice, conscript fathers, or appoint, in their place, others more worthy of the empire. The general apprehension silenced the whispers of jealousy; the merit of the candidates was universally acknowledged; and the house resonated with the sincere acclamations of a long life and victory to the emperors Maximian and Ballianus. You are happy in the judgment of the senate; may the republic be happy under your administration!"

The virtues and the reputation of the new emperors justified the most ardent hopes of the Romanae. The various nature of their talents seemed to appropriate to each his peculiar department of peace and war.
without leaving room for jealous emulation. Balbinus was an admired orator, a poet of distinguished fame, and a wise magistrate, who had exercised with innocence and applause the civil jurisdiction in almost all the interior provinces of the empire. His birth was noble, his fortune affluent, his manners liberal and affable. In him the love of pleasure was corrected; by a sense of dignity, nor had the habits of ease deprived him of a capacity for business. The mind of Maximinus was formed in a rougher mould. By his valour and abilities he had raised himself from the meanest origins to the first employments of the state and army. His victories over the Sarmatians and the Germans, the austerity of his life, and the rigid impartiality of his justice, whilst he was prefect of the city, commanded the esteem of a people, whose affections were engaged in favour of the more amiable Balbinus. The two colleagues had both been consuls (Balbinus had twice enjoyed that honourable office), both had been named among the twenty lieutenants of the senate; and since the one was sixty and the other seventy-four years old, they had both attained the full maturity of age and experience.

The position of Maximinus and Balbinus was an equal portion of the consul and tribunial power, the title of Fathers of their country, and the joint office of Supreme Pontiff, they ascended to the Capitol to return thanks to the gods, protectors of Rome. The solemn rites of sacrifice were disturbed by a solition of the people. The licentious multitude neither loved the right Maximinus, nor did they sufficiently fear the mild and humane Balbinus. Their increasing numbers surrounded the temple of Jupiter; with obstreperous clamours they asserted their inherent right of consenting to the election of their sovereign; and demanded, with an apparent meekness, that, besides the two emperors chosen by the Senate, a third should be added of the family of the Gordians, as a just return of gratitude to those princes who had sacrificed their lives for the republic. At the head of the citizens, the equestrians, and the youth of the equestrian order, Maximinus and Balbinus attempted to cut their way through the tumults multitudes. The multitudes, armed with sticks and stones, drove them back into the Capitol. It is prudent to yield when the custom, whatever may be the issue of it, must be fatal to both parties. A boy only thirteen years of age, the grandson of the elder, and nephew of the younger, Gordian, was produced to the people, invested with the ornaments and title of Caesar. The tumult was appeased by this easy concession; and the two emperors, as soon as they had been peaceably acknowledged in Rome, prepared to defend Italy against the common enemy.

Whilst in Rome and Africa, revolutions succeeded each other with such amazing rapidity, the mind of Maximinus was agitated by the most furious passions. He is said to have received the news of the rebellion of the Gordians, and of the decree of the senate against him, not with the tempest of a man, but the rage of a wild beast; which, as it could not discharge itself on the distant senate, threatened the life of his son, of his friends, and of all who ventured to approach his person. The grateful intelligence of the death of the Gordians was quickly followed by the assurance that the senate, laying aside all hopes of pardon or accommodation, had substituted in their room two emperors, with whose merit he could not be unconquered. Revenge was the only consolation left to Maximinus, and revenge could only be obtained by arms. The strength of the legions had been assembled by Alexander from all parts of the empire. Three successful campaigns against the Germans and the Sarmatians, had raised their fame, confirmed their discipline, and even increased their numbers, by filling the ranks with the flower of the barbarian youth. The life of Maximinus had been spent in war, and the candid severity of history cannot refuse him the valour of a soldier, or even the abilities of an experienced general. It might naturally be expected that a prince of such a character, instead of suffering the rebellion to gain stability by delay, should immediately have marched from the banks of the Danube to those of the Tyber; and that his victorious army, instigated by contempt for the senate, and eager to gather the spoils of Italy, should have burned with impatience to finish the easy and lucrative conquest. Yet, as far as we can trust to the obscure chronology of that period, it appears that the operations of some foreign war deferred the Italian expidition till the ensuing spring. From the prudent conduct of Macrinus we may learn, that the savage features of his character have been exaggerated by the pencil of party; that his passions, however impetuous, submitted to the force of reason; and that the barbarian possessed something of the generous spirit of Sylla, who subdued the enemies of Rome brave himself to revenge his private injuries.

When the troops of Maximinus, advancing in excellent order, arrived at the foot of the Julian Alps, they were terrified by the silence and desolation...
that reigned on the frontiers of Italy. The village and open towns had been abandoned on their approach by the inhabitants, but the men were driven away, the provisions removed or destroyed, the bridges broken down, nor was any thing left which could afford either shelter or subsistence to an invader. Such had been the wise orders of the generals of the senate, whose design was to prevent the war, to ruin the army of Maximinus by the slow operation of famine, and to conspire his destruction in the sieges of the principal cities of Italy, which they had plentifully stored with men and provisions from the desolated country.

Aquiléia received and withstood the first shock of the invaders. The streams that issue from the head of the Hafriatic Gulf, swelled by the melting of the winter snows, opposed an unexpected obstacle to the arms of Maximinus. At length, on a singular bridge, constructed with art and difficulty of large hogsheads, he transported his army to the opposite bank, rooked up the beautiful vineyards in the neighbourhood of Aquiléia, demolished the suburbs, and employed the timber of the buildings in the engines and towers, with which on every side he attacked the city. The walls, fallen to decay during the security of a long peace, had been hastily repaired on this sudden emergency; but the finest defence of Aquiléia consisted in the constancy of the citizens; all ranks of whom, instead of being dismayed, were animat by the extreme danger, and their knowledge of the tyrant’s unruly temper. Their courage was supported and directed by Cripucius and Menophilus, two of the twenty lieutenants of the senate, who, with a small body of regular troops, had thrown themselves into the besieged place. The army of Maximinus was repulsed in repeated attacks; his machines destroyed by showers of artificial fire; and the generous enthusiasm of the Aquiléens was exalted into a confidence of success by the opinion that Reléna, their tutelar deity, conducted in person in the defence of his distressed worshippers. 19

The emperor Maximinus, who had advanced as far as Havenna, to secure that important place and to hasten the military preparations, beheld the event of the war in the more faithful mirror of reason and policy. He was too sensible that a single town could not resist the persevering efforts of a great army; and he dreaded lest the enemy, tired with the obstinate resistance of Aquiléia, should on a sudden relinquish the fruitless siege, and march directly towards Rome. The fate of the empire and the cause of freedom must then be committed to the chance of a battle; and what arms could be opposed to the veteran legions of the Rhine and Danube? Some troops newly levied among the generous but errant youth of Italy, and a body of German auxiliaries, on whose firmness in the hour of trial it was dangerous to depend. In the midst of these just alarms, the stroke of domestic conspiracy punished the crimes of Maximinus, and delivered Rome and the senate from the calamities that would surely have attended the victory of an enraged barbarian.

The people of Aquiléia had scarcely experienced any of the common misfortunes, nor even of a siege; their magazines were plentifully supplied, and several fountains within the walls assured them of an inexhaustible resource of fresh water. The soldiers of Maximinus were, on the contrary, exposed to the inclemency of the season, the contagion of disease, and the horrors of famine. The open country was ruined; the rivers filled with the slain and polluted with blood. A spirit of despair and disaffection began to diffuse itself among the troops; and as they were cut off from all intelligence, they easily believed that the whole empire had embraced the cause of the senate, and that they were left as devoted victims, to perish under the impregnable walls of Aquiléia. The fierce temper of the tyrant was exasperated by disappointments, which he imputed to the cowardice of his army; and his wonted ill-timed cruelty, instead of striking terror, inspired hatred, and a just desire of revenge. A party of prætorian guards, who trembled for their wives and children in the camp of Alba, near Rome, executed the sentence of the senate. Maximinus, abandoned by his guards, was slain in his tent, with his son (whom he had associated to the honours of the purple), Ambilus the prefect, and the principal ministers of his tyranny. 20

The sight of their heads, borne on the point of spears, convinced the citizens of Aquiléia that the siege was at an end; the gates of the city were thrown open, a liberal market was provided for the hungry troops of Maximinus, and the whole army joined in solemn professions of fidelity to the senate and the people of Rome, and to their lawful emperors Maximinus and Balbinus. Such was the deserved fate of a brutal savage, destructive, as he has generally been represented, of every sentiment that distinguishes a civilized or even a human being. The body was interred to the soul. The stature of Maximinus exceeded the measure of eight feet, and circumstances almost incredible are related of his matchless strength and appetite. 21

Had he lived in a less enlightened age, and his poetry might well have described him as one of those monstrous giants whose supernatueal power was constantly excited for the destruction of mankind.

18 Hor. Epist. ii. 15. 20. The emperor Aquiló, which laid down on the bank to make room for the senators.
19 Hor. Epist. ii. 15. 20. The emperor Aquiló, which laid down on the bank to make room for the senators.
20 Hor. Epist. ii. 15. 20. The emperor Aquiló, which laid down on the bank to make room for the senators.
21 Hor. Epist. ii. 15. 20. The emperor Aquiló, which laid down on the bank to make room for the senators.
It is easier to conceive than to describe the universal joy of the Roman world on the fall of the tyrant, the terrors of which is said to have been carried in four days from Aquileia to Rome. The return of Maximus was a triumphal procession; his colleague and young Gordian went out to meet him; and the three princes made their entry into the capital, attended by the ambassadors of almost all the cities of Italy, solated with the splendid offerings of gratitude and superstition, and received with the unfeigned acclamations of the senate and people, who persuaded themselves that a golden age would succeed to an age of iron. The conduct of the two emperors corresponded with these expectations. They administered justice in person; and the rigour of the one was tempered by the other's clemency. The oppressive taxes which Maximin had loaded the rights of inheritance and succession were repealed, or at least moderated. Discipline was revived, and, with the advice of the senate, many wise laws were enacted by their imperial ministers, who endeavoured to restore a civil constitution on the ruins of military tyranny.

What reward may we expect for delivering Rome from a master? was the question asked by Maximin, in a moment of irruption and confidence. Balbinus answered it, without hesitation. The love of the people, the confidence of the people, and all mankind. "Ah!" replied his more penetrating colleague, "Alas! I dread the treachery of the senators, and the effects of their resentment." His apprehensions were but too well justified by the event.

While Maximin was preparing to defend Italy against the common foe, Balbinus, who remained at Rome, had been engaged in scenes of blood and intestine discord. Distress and jealousy reigned in the senate; and even in the temple where they assembled, every senator carried either open or concealed arms. In the midst of their deliberations, two veterans of the guard, actuated either by curiosity or a sinister motive, audaciously thrust themselves into the house, and advanced by degrees beyond the altar of Victory. Gallienus, a senator, and Maximus, a pretorian senator, viewed with indignation their insolent intrusion; drawing their daggers, they laid the spies, for such they deemed them, bare to the foot of the altar, and advancing to the door of the senate, impudently exhorted the multitude to measure the pretorianists, as the secret adherents of the tyrant. Those who escaped the first fury of the tumult took refuge in the camp, which they defended with superior advantage against the reiterated attacks of the people, assisted by the numerous bands of gladiators, the property of opulent nobles. The civil war lasted many days, with infinite loss and confusion on both sides. When the pipes were broken that supplied the camp with water, the pretorianists were reduced to intolerable distress; but in their turn they made desperate sallies into the city, set fire to a great number of houses, and filled the streets with the blood of the inhabitants. The emperor Balbinus, attempted, by intellectual efforts and precipitous courses, to reconstitute the factions at Rome, but his anxiety, though unavailing for a while, burnt with rebuffed violence. The soldiers, detesting the senate and the people, despised the weakness of a prince, who wanted either the spirit or the power to command the obedience of his subjects.

After the tyrant's death, his formidable army had acknowledged, from necessity rather than from choice, the authority of Maximus, who transported himself without delay to the camp before Aquileia. As soon as he had received their oath of fidelity, he addressed them in terms full of mildness and moderation; lamenting, rather than arraigning; the wild disorders of the times, and assured the soldiers, that of all their past conduct, the senate would remember only their generous devotion of the tyrant, and their voluntary return to their duty. Maximus enforced his exhortations by a liberal donation, purifying the camp by a solemn sacrifice of expiation, and then dismissed the legions to their several quarters, impressed, as he hoped, with a lively sense of gratitude and obedience. But nothing could reconcile the haughty spirit of the pretorianists. They attended the emperors on the memorable day of their public entry into Rome; but amidst the general acclamations, the sullen disjecta membra of the guards suffiiciently declared that they remembered themselves as the object, rather than the partners, of the triumph. When the whole body was united in their camp, those who had served under Maximin, and those who had remained at Rome, insensibly communicated to each other their complaints and apprehensions. The emperors, seized by the army that had persisted with inhumanity those elected by the senate were seated on the throne. The long discord between the civil and military powers was decided by a war, in which the former had obtained a complete victory. The soldiers must now learn a new doctrine of submission to the senate; and whatever insinuion was affected by that public assembly, they dreamed a slow revenge, coloured by the name of discipline, and justified by fair pretences of the public good. But their fate was still in their own hands; and if they had courage, to despise the vain terror of an impotent republic, it was easy to convince the world, that those who were masters of the army, were masters of the authority of the state.

When the senate elected two princes, it is probable that, besides the declared reason of providing for the various emergencies of peace and war, they were actuated by the secret desire of weakening by division the despotism of the supreme magistrate. Their policy was effectual, but it proved fatal both to their emperors and to themselves. The jealousy of power was soon exaggerated by the difference of character. Maximus despised Balbinus as a luxurious noble, and was in his
of mankind. We are ignorant by what fortunate accident the emperor escaped from this ignominious slavery, and derived his confidence on a minister, whose wise counsels had no object except the glory of his sovereign, and the happiness of the people. It should seem that love and learning introduced Mithridates to the favour of Gordian. The young prince married the daughter of his master of rhetoric, and promoted his father-in-law to the first offices of the empire. Two admirable letters that passed between them are still extant. The minister, with the conscious dignity of virtue, congratulates Gordian that he is delivered from the tyranny of the eunuchs, and still more that he is sensible of his deliverance. The emperor acknowledges, with an un ISIL confusion, the errors of his past conduct; and laments, with singular propriety, the misfortunes of a monarch, from whom a vocal tribe of courtiers perpetually labour to conceal the truth.

The life of Mithridates had been spent in the profession of letters, not of arms; yet such was the versatile genius of that great man, that, when he was appointed prætorian prefect, he discharged the military duties of his place with vigour and ability. The Persians had invaded Mesopotamia, and threatened Antioch. By the persuasion of his father-in-law, the young emperor quitted the luxury of Rome, opened, for the last time recorded in history, the temple of Janus, and marched in person into the East. On his approach with a great army, the Persians withdrew their garrisons from the cities which they had already taken, and retired from the Euphrates to the Tigris. Gordian enjoyed the pleasure of announcing to the senate the first success of his arms, which he ascribed with a becoming modesty and gratitude to the wisdom of his father and prefect. During the whole expedition, Mithridates watched over the safety and discipline of the army; whilst he prevented their dangerous murmurs by maintaining a regular plenty in the camp, and by establishing ample magazines of vinegar, tobacco, salt, sugar, wine, and wheat, in all the cities of the frontier. But the prosperity of Gordian expired with Mithridates, who died of a febrile, not without very strong suspicions of poison. Philip, his successor in the prefecture, was an Arab by birth, and consequently, in the earlier part of his life, a robber by profession. His rise from so obscure a station to the first dignities of the empire, seems to prove that he was a bold and able leader. But his boldness prompted him to aspire to the throne, and his abilities were employed to supplant, not to serve, his indulgent master. The minds of the soldiers were irritated by an artifice, but are embarrassed by the influence of Quirinius, in his present office of Roman tribune.
cial scarcity, created by his contrivance in the camp; and the distress of the army was attributed to the youth and incapacity of the prince. It is not in our power to trace the successive steps of the secret conspiracy and open sedition, which were at length fatal to Gordian. A sumptuous, palm-crowned monument was erected to his memory on the spot where he was killed, near the confines of the Euphrates with the little river Abonas. The fortunate Philip, raised to the empire by the votes of the soldiers, found a ready obedience from the senate and the provinces.

From a manuscript.

We cannot forbear transcribing the following passage, the ingenuous, though somewhat fanciful, description, which a celebrated writer of our own times has traced of the military government of the Roman empire.

"What an elder age was called the Roman empire, was only an irregular republic, not unlike the aristocracy of Algiers, where the militiamans possessed the sovereignty, created and deposed a magistrate, who was styled a Dey. Perhaps, indeed, it may be laid down as a general rule, that a military government is, in some respects, more republican than monarchical. Nor can it be said that the soldiers only partook of the government by their idleness and sedition. The speeches made to them by the emperors were not long at the same nature as those formerly pronounced to the people by the consuls and the tribunes. And although the armies had their regular place or forum of assembly; though their debates were short, their action sudden, and their resolves seldom the result of cool reflection, did they not dispose, with absolute sway, of the public fortune? What was the emperor, except the minister of a violent government, elected for the private benefit of the soldiers?"

When the army had elected Philip, who was a pretorian prefect to the third Gordian, the latter demanded, that he might remain sole emperor; he was unable to obtain it. He requested, that the power might be equally divided between them; the army would not listen to his speech. He consented to be degraded to the rank of Caesar; the favour was refused him. He desired, at last, he might be appointed pretorian prefect; his prayer was rejected. Finally, he pleaded for his life. "The army, in these several judgments, exercised the supreme magistracy." According to the historian, whose doubtful narrative the President de Montesquieu has adopted, Philip, who, during the whole transaction, had preserved a mien of silence, was inclined to spare the innocent life of his benefactor; till, recollecting that his innocence might excite a dangerous compassion in the Roman world, he commanded, without regard to his supplicant's cries, that he should be seized, strip, and be led away to instant death. After a moment's pause the inhuman sentence was executed.

On his return from the East to Rome, Philip, desirous of obliterating the memory of his crimes, and of exploiting the affection of the people, solemnized the secular games with infinite pomp and magnificence. Since their institution or revival by Augustus, they had been celebrated by Claudius, by Domitian, and by Severus, and were now renewed the fifth time, on the accomplishment of the full period of a thousand years from the foundation of Rome.

Every circumstance of the secular games was skilfully adapted to inspire the superstitious mind with deep and solemn reverence. The long interval between them exceeded the term of human life; and as none of the spectator had already seen them, none could flatter themselves with the expectation of beholding them a second time. The mystic sacrifices were performed, during three nights, on the banks of the Tyber; and the Campus Martius resounded with music and dances, and was illuminated with immortal lamps and torches. Slaves and strangers were excluded from any participation in these national ceremonies. A chorus of twenty-seven youths, and as many virgins, of noble families, and whose parents were both alive, implored the propitious gods in favour of the present, and for the hope of the rising generation; requesting, in religious hymns, that, according to the faith of their ancient oracles, they would still maintain the virtue, the felicity, and the empire of the Roman people. The magnificence of Philip's shows and entertainments dazzled the eyes of the multitude. The devote were employed in the rites of superstition, whilst the reflecting few revolved in their anxious minds the past history and the future fate of the empire.

Since Romulus, with a small band of shepherds and outlaws, founded himself on the banks of the Tyber, ten centuries had already elapsed. During the four first ages, the Romans, in the barbarous school of poverty, had acquired the virtues of war and government. By the vigorous exertion of these virtues, and by the assistance of fortune, they..."
had obtained, in the course of the three succeeding centuries, an absolute empire over many countries of Europe, Asia, and Africa. The last three hundred years had been consumed in apparent prosperity and internal decline. The nation of soldiers, magistrates, and legislators, who composed the thirty-five tribes of the Roman people, was dissolved into the common mass of mankind, and confounded with the millions of servile provincials, who had received the name, without adopting the spirit, of Romans. A mercenary army, levied among the subjects and barbarians of the frontier, was the only order of men who preserved and abused their independence. By their tumultuous election, a Syrian, a Goth, or an Arab, was exalted to the throne of Rome, and invested with despotic power over the camps and over the country of the Scipios. The limits of the Roman empire still extended from the Western Ocean to the Tigris, and from Mount Atlas to the Rhine and the Danube. To the untaught eye of the vulgar, Philip appeared a monarch no less powerful than Hadrian or Augustus had formerly been. The form was still the same, but the animating spirit and vigour were lost. The industry of the people was discouraged and exhausted by a long series of oppression. The discipline of the legions, which since, after the extinction of every other, virtus, had procured the greatness of the state, was corrupted by the mutiny, or relaxed by the weakness, of the emperors. The strength of the frontiers, which had always consisted in arms rather than in fortifications, was insensibly undermined; and the fairest provinces were left exposed to the rapacious or ambition of the barbarians, who soon discovered the decline of the Roman empire.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the State of Persia after the Restoration of the Monarchy by Artaxerxes.

WHEN Titus Flavius selected himself to distinguish himself in those beautiful episodes, in which he relates semi-domestic transactions of the Germans or of the Parthians, his principal object is to relieve the attention of the reader from a uniform scene of peace and misery. From the reign of Augustus to the time of Alexander Severus, the enemies of Rome were in her bosom—the tyrants, and the soldiers; and her prosperity had a very distant and feeble interest in the revolutions that might happen beyond the Rhine and the Euphrates. But when the military order had levelled, in wilful anarchy, the power of the prince, the laws of the senate, and even the discipline of the camp, the barbarians of the North and of the East, who had long hovered on the frontier, boldly attacked the provinces of a declining monarchy. Their victories encouraged into formula prescriptions, and, after a long and sad period of mutual calamities, many tribes of the victorious invaders established themselves in the provinces of the Roman empire. To obtain a clearer knowledge of these great events, we shall endeavour to form a previous idea of the character, forces, and designs of these nations who vacated the cause of Hannibal and Mithridates.

In the more early ages of the Roman world, whilst the forest still covered Europe afforded a retreat to a few wandering savages, the inhabitants of Asia were already collected into populous cities, and reduced under extensive empires, the seat of the arts, of luxury, and of despotism. The Assyrians reigned over the East, till the captivity of Ninos and Sardanapalus dropped from the hands of their enervated successors. The Medes and the Babylonians divided their power, and were themselves swallowed up in the monarchies of the Persians, whose arms could not be confined within the narrow limits of Asia. Followed, as it is said, by two millions of men, Xerxes, the descendant of Cyrus, invaded Greece. Thirty thousand soldiers, under the command of Alexander, the son of Philip, who was emulated by the Greeks with their glory and revenge, were sufficient to subdue Persia. The princes of the house of Seleucus insurged and lost the Macedonian command over the East. About the same time, that, by an ignominious treaty, they resigned to the Romans the country on this side Mount Taurus, they were driven by the Parthians, an obscure bode of Scythian origin, from all the provinces of Upper Asia. The formidable power of the Parthians, which spread from India to the frontiers of Syria, was in its turn subverted by Ardashir, or Artaxerxes; the founder of a new dynasty, which, under the name of Sassanides, governed Persia till the invasion of the Arabs. This great revolution, whose fatal influence was soon experienced by the Romans, happened in the fourth year of Alexander Severus, two hundred and twenty-six years after the Christian era. Artaxerxes had served with great reputation in the armies of Ardashir, and he/set the last king of the Parthians, and it appears that he was driven into exile and rebellion by royal ingratitude, the customary reward for superior merit. His birth was obscure, and the obscurity equally gave room to the suspicion of his enemies, and the flattery of his adherents. If we credit the scandal of the former, Artaxerxes sprang from the high-born commerce of a tanner's wife with a common soldier. The latter represent him as descended from a branch of the ancient kings of Persia, though time and misery had gradually reduced his ancestors to the humble station of pitiful
case citizens. As the linchpin of the monarchy, he asserted his right to the throne, and challenged the noble task of delivering the Persians from the oppression under which they groaned above five centuries since the death of Darius. The Parthians were defeated in three great battles. In the last of these their king Ardashir was slain, and the spirit of the nation was for ever broken. The authority of Ardashir was solemnly acknowledged in a great assembly held at Bisit in Khusman. Two younger branches of the royal house of Araxes were confirmed among the prostate satraps. A third, more mindful of ancient grandeur than of present necessity, attempted to retire, with a numerous train of vassals, towards their khusman, the king of Armenia; but this little army of deserters was intercepted, and cut off, by the vigilance of the conqueror, who boldly assumed the double diadem, and the title of King of Kings, which had been enjoyed by his predecessor. But these pompous titles, instead of gratifying the vanity of the Persian, served only to abominate him of his duty, and to inflame in his soul the ambition of restoring, in their full splendour, the religion and empire of Cyrus.

Reformation of the Monarchy. 2. 10

I. During the long servitude of Persia under the Macedonian and the Parthian yoke, the nations of Europe and Asia had mutually adopted and corrupted each other’s superstitions. The Athenians, indeed, practised the worship of the Magi; but they disapproved and polluted it with a various mixture of foreign idolatry. The memory of Zoroaster, the ancient prophet and philosopher of the Persians, still reigned in the East; but the obscure and mysterious language, in which the Zendavesta was composed, opened a field of dispute to seventy sects, who variously explained the fundamental doctrines of their religion, and were all indifferently derided by a crowd of infidels, who rejoiced the divine mission, and miracles of the prophet. To suppress the idolaters, reanimate the schismatics, and confute the unbelievers, by the infallible decision of a general council, the priests of Daniel summoned the Magi from all parts of his dominions. These priests, who had so long vied in corrupt and obscenity, obeyed the melancholy summons; and on the appointed day appeared, to the number of about eighty thousand. But as the debates of so tumultuous an assembly could not have been directed by the authority of reason, or influenced by the art of policy, the Persian synod was re-ordered, by a Gregorian operation, to forty thousand, to four thousand, to four hundred, to forty, and at last to seven Magi, the most respected for their learning and piety. One of these, Esdras, a young and holy prelate, received from the hands of his brethren three cups of aquafortis wine.

He drank them off, and instantly fell into a long and profound sleep. As soon as he waked, he related to the king and to the believing multitude, his journey to Heaven, and his intimate conferences with the Deity. Every doubt was silenced by this supernatural evidence; and the articles of the faith of Zoroaster were fixed with equal authority and precision. A short delineation of that celebrated system will be found useful, not only to display the character of the Persian nation, but to illustrate many of their most important transactions, both in peace and war, with the Roman empire.

The great and fundamental article of the system, was the celebrated doctrine of the two principles; a bold and injudicious attempt of eastern philosophy to reconcile the existence of moral and physical evil, with the attributes of a beneficent creator and governor of the world. The first and original Being, in whom, or by whom, the universe exists, is designated in the writings of Zoroaster, Time without bound; but it must be confessed, that this infinite substance seems rather a metaphysical abstraction of the mind, than a real object endowed with self-consciousness, or possessed of moral perfections. From either the blind, or the intelligent operation of this infinite Time, which bears but too near an affinity with the Chaos of the Greeks, the two secondary but active principles of the universe, were from all eternity produced, Ormuzd and Ahuramaz, each of them possessed of the power of creation: but each disposed, by his variable nature, to exercise them with different designs. The principle of good is eternally absorbed in light; the principle of evil eternally buried in darkness. The wise benevolence of Ormuzd formed man capable of virtue, and abundantly provided his fair habitation with the materials of happiness. By his vigilant providence, the motion of the planets, the order of the seasons, and the temperate mixture of the elements, are preserved. But the malice of Ahuramaz has long since pierced Ormuzd’s secret; or, in other words, has violated the harmony of his works. Since that fatal interruption, the most minute articles of good and evil are intimately mingled and agitated together; the most ancient kings spring up amidst the most salutary plants; deluges, earthquakes, and conflagrations, attest the conflict of Nature, and the little world of man is perpetually shaken by vicissitude and misfortune. Whence the rest of human kind are led away captive in the train of their infernal enemy, the faithful Persian abjures his religious adoration for his friend and protector Ormuzd, and fights under his banner of light, in the full confidence that he shall, in the last day, share the glory of his triumph. At that decisive period, the enlightened
wisdom of goodness will render the power of Omnad superior to the furious malice of his rival. Ahriman and his followers, disarmed and subdued, will sink into their native darkness; and virtue will maintain the eternal peace and harmony of the universe.\(^\text{11}\)

The theology of Zoroaster was deeply comprehended by foreigners, and even by the far greater number of his disciples; but the most careless observers were struck with the philosophic simplicity of the Persian worship. "That people," says Herodotus,\(^\text{12}\) "rejects the use of temples, of altars, and of statues, and smiles at the folly of those nations, who imagine that the gods are sprung from, or bear any affinity with, the human nature. The tops of the highest mountains are the places chosen for sacrifices. Hymns and prayers are the principal worship; the Supreme God, who fills the wide circle of heaven, is the object to whom they are addressed." Yet, at the same time, in the true spirit of a polytheist, he accosts them of adoring Earth, Water, Fire, the Winds, and the Sun and Moon. But the Persians of every age have denied the charge, and explained the equivocal conduct, which might appear to give a colour to it. The elements, and more particularly Fire, Light, and the Sun, whom they called Mithra, were the objects of their religious reverence, because they considered them as the purest symbols, the noblest productions, and the most powerful agents of the Divine Power and Nature.\(^\text{13}\)

Every mode of religion, to make deep and lasting impressions on the human mind, must exercise our obedience, by enjoining practices of devotion, for which we can assign no reason; and must acquire our esteem, by inculcating moral duties analogous to the dictates of our own hearts. The religion of Zoroaster was abundantly provided with the former, and possessed a sufficient portion of the latter. At the age of puberty, the faithful Persian was invested with a mysterious girdle, the badge of the divine protection; and from that moment all the actions of his life, even the most indifferent, or the most necessary, were sanctified by their peculiar prayers, ejaculations, or general prayers; the omission of which, under any circumstances, was a grievous sin, not inferior in guilt to the violation of the moral duties. The moral duties, however, of justice, mercy, liberality, &c. were in their turn required of the disciple of Zoroaster, who wished to escape the persecution of Ahriman, and to live with Omnad in a blissful eternity, where the degree of felicity will be exactly proportioned to the degree of virtue and piety.\(^\text{14}\)

\(^\text{11}\) The modern Persians hold in some degree the Sadducees held Christianity.\(^\text{12}\) P. 195.\(^\text{13}\) P. 195.\(^\text{14}\) P. 195.

But there are some remarkable instances in which Zoroaster lays aside the prophet, assumes the legislator, and discovers a liberal concern for private and public happiness, seldom to be found among the prevailing or visionary schemes of superstition. Pasting and celibacy, the common means of purchasing the divine favour, he condemns with abhorrence, as a criminal rejection of the best gifts of Providence. The saint, in the Magian religion, is obliged to neglect children, to plant useful trees, to destroy noxious animals, to convey water to the dry lands of Persia, and to work out his salvation by pursuing all the labours of agriculture. We may quote from the Zendavesta a wise and benevolent maxim, which compensates for many an absurdity. "He who sows the ground with care and diligence acquires a greater stock of religious merit than he could gain by the repetition of ten thousand prayers."\(^\text{15}\) In the spring of every year a festival was celebrated, destined to represent the primitive equality, and the present connection, of mankind. The stately kings of Persia, exchanging their vain pomp for more genuine greatness, freely mingled with the humblest and most useful of their subjects. On that day the husbandmen were admitted, without distinction, to the table of the king and his satraps. The monarch accepted their petitions, enquired into their grievances, and conversed with them on the most equal terms. "From your labours," he was accustomed to say (and to say with truth, if not with sincerity), "from your labours, we receive our subsistence; you derive your tranquility from our vigilance; since, therefore, we are mutually necessary to each other, let us live together like brothers in concord and love."\(^\text{16}\) Such a festival must indeed have degenerated, in a wealthy and despotist empire, into a theatrical representation; but it was at least a comedy well worthy of a royal audience, and which might sometimes imprint a salutary lesson on the mind of a young prince.

Had Zoroaster, in all his institutions, invariably supported this exalted character, his name would deserve a place with those of Numa and Confucius, and his system would be justly entitled to all the applause which it has pleased some of our divines, and even some of our philosophers, to bestow on it. But in that medley composition, dictated by reason and passion, by enthusiasm and by selfish motives, some useful and sullent truths were disgraced by a mixture of the most absurd and dangerous superstition. The Magi, or clerical order, were extremely numerous, since, as we have already seen, fourscore thousand of them were convened in a general council. Their forces were multiplied by discipline. A regular hierarchy was diffused through all the provinces of Persia; and the Archimagus, who resided at Hadi, was respected as the visible head of the church, and the lawful successor of Zoroaster.\(^\text{17}\) The property of the Magi was very considerable. Besides the less inviolable possession of a large

\(^\text{15}\) P. 205.\(^\text{16}\) P. 205.\(^\text{17}\) P. 205.
tract of the most fertile lands of Media, they levied a general tax on the fortunes and the industry of the Persians. Though your good words," says the intercepted prophet, "exceed in number the leaves of the trees, the drops of rain, the stars in the heaven, or the sands on the seashore, they will all be unprofitable to you, unless they are accepted by the destroyer or priest. To obtain the acceptance of this guide to salvation, you must faithfully pay him ten of all you possess, of your goods, of your lands, and of your money. If the destroyer be satisfied, your soul will escape hell tortures; you will secure praise in this world, and happiness in the next. For the destroyers are the teachers of religion; they know all things, and they deliver all men."

These convenient maxims of reverence and implicit faith were doubtless imprinted with care on the tender minds of youth; since the Magi were the masters of education in Persia, and to their hands the children even of the royal family were intrusted. The Persian priests, who were of a speculative genius, preserved and investigated the secrets of Oriental philosophy; and acquired, either by superior knowledge or superior art, the reputation of being well versed in some occult sciences, which have derived their appellation from the Magi. Those of more active dispositions mixed with the world in courts and cities; and it is observed, that the administration of Artaxerxes was in a great measure directed by the counsels of the hereditary order, whose dignity, either from political devotion, that princes restored to its ancient splendour.

The first counsel of the Magi was ever to persuade or agreeable to the unmovable genius of their faith, to the practice of ancient kings, and even to the example of their legislator, who had filled a victim to a religious war, excited by this most intolerant zeal. By an edict of Artaxerxes, the exercise of every worship except that of Zoroaster was severely prohibited. The temples of the Parthians, and the statues of their deified monarchs, were thrown down with ignominy. The sword of Aristotle (such was the name given by the Orientals to the polytheism and philosophy of the Greeks) was easily broken; the flames of persecution soon reached the more stubborn Jews and Christians; nor did they spare the heretics of their own nation and religion. The majesty of Ormuzd, who was jealous of a rival, was ascended by the desperation of Artaxerxes, who could not suffer a rebel; and the schisms within his vast empire were soon reduced to the inconsiderable number of eighty thousand. This spirit of persecution reflects dishonour on the religion of Zoroaster; but as it was not productive of any civil commotion, it served to strengthen the new monarchy, by uniting all the various inhabitants of Persia in the bands of religious zeal.

II. Artaxerxes, by his valour and conduct, had wrested the sceptre of the East from the ancient royal family of Parthia. There still remained the more difficult task of establishing, throughout the vast extent of Persia, a uniform and vigorous administration. The weak indulgence of the Achaemenes had resigned to their sons and brothers the principal provinces, and the greatest offices of the kingdom, in the nature of hereditary possessions. The site, or eighteen most powerful satraps, were permitted to assume the regal title; and the vain pride of the monarch was delighted with the nominal dominion over so many vassal kings. Even tribes of barbarians in their mountains, and the Greek cities of Upper Asia, within their walls, scarcely acknowledged, or seldom obeyed, any superior, and the Persian empire exhibited, under other names, a lively image of the feudal system which has since prevailed in Europe. But the active victor, at the head of a numerous and disciplined army, visited in person every province of Persia. The defeat of the boldest rebels, and the reduction of the strongest fortifications, diffused the terror of his arms, and prepared the way for the peaceful reception of his authority. An obstinate resistance was fatal to the chiefs; but their followers were treated with lenity. A cheerful submission was rewarded with honours and riches; but the prudent Artaxerxes, suffering no person except himself to assume the title of king, abolished every intermediate power between the throne and the people. His kingdom, nearly equal in extent to modern Persia, was on every side bounded by the seas, or by great rivers; by the Euphrates the Tigris, the Araxes, the Oxus, and the Indus, by the Caspian Sea, and the Gulf of Persia. That country was computed to contain, in the
THE DECLINE AND FALL

Chap. VIII.

As soon as the ambitious mind of the Persian Cyrus began to appear, resistance of his vessels, he became to threaten the neighboring states, who, during the long slumber of his predecessors, had insulted the empire of Persia with impunity. He obtained some easy victories over the wild Scythians and the effeminate Indians; but the Romans were an enemy, who, by their past injuries and present power, deserved the utmost efforts of his arms. A forty years' tranquillity, the fruit of valour and moderation, had succeeded the victories of Trasimenum. During the period that elapsed from the accession of Marcus Aurelius, the Roman and the Parthian empires were twice engaged in war; and although the whole strength of the Romans was contained with a part only of the forces of Rome, the event was most commonly in favour of the latter. Macrinus indeed, propping up by the promise of the succession of Marcus Aurelius, the emperor Severus, and his son, erected many triumphs in Armenia, Mesopotamia, and Asia Minor. Among their exploits, the imperfect relation of which would have unintelligibly interrupted the more important series of domestic revolutions, we shall only mention the repeated calamities of the two great cities of Sclesicia and Ctesiphon.

Schlesicia, on the western bank of the Tigris, about forty-five miles to the north of ancient Babylon, was the capital of the Macaronian conquests in Upper Asia. Many ages after the fall of their empire, the Romans reserved the genuine character of a Greek colony; arts, military virtue, and the love of freedom. The independent republic was governed by a council of three hundred nobles; the people consisted of six hundred thousand citizens; the walls were strong, and as long as concord prevailed among the several orders of the state, they viewed with contempt the power of the Parthian; but the madness of faction was sometimes provoked to inspire the dangerous idea of the common enemy, who was posted almost at the gates of the colony. The Parthian monarchs, like the Mogul sovereigns of Hindostan, delighted in the pastoral life of their Scythian ancestors; and the Imperial camp was frequently pitched in the plain of Ctesiphon, on the eastern bank of the Tigris, at the distance of only three miles from Sclesicia. The innumerable attendants on luxury and despotism resolved to the court, and the little village of Ctesiphon insensibly swelled into a great city. Under the reign of Marcus, the Roman generals penetrated as far as Ctesiphon and Sclesicia. They were received by friends of the Greek colony; they attacked as enemies the seat of the Parthian kings; yet both cities experienced the same treatment. The sack and devastation of Sclesicia, with the massacre of three hundred thousand of the inhabitants, tarnished the glory of the Roman triumphs. Sclesicia, already extinguished by the neighbourhood of a too powerful rival, sunk under the fatal blow; but Ctesiphon, in about thirty-three years, had sufficiently recovered its strength to maintain an obstinate siege against the emperor Severus. The city was, however, taken by assault; the king, who defended it in person, escaped with precipitation; an hundred thousand captives, and a rich booty, rewarded the fatigue of the Roman soldiery. Nevertheless these misfortunes, Ctesiphon succeeded to Babylon and to Sclesicia, as one of the great capitals of the East. In summer the monarch of Persia enjoyed at Ecbatana the cool breezes of the mountains of Media; but the mildness of the climate engaged him to prefer Ctesiphon for his winter residence.

From these successful invasions the Romans derived no real or lasting benefit; nor did they attempt to preserve such distant conquests, separated from the provinces of the empire by a large tract of intermediate desert. The reduction of the kingdom of Osroene was an acquisition of less splendour indeed, but of a far more solid advantage. That little state occupied the northern and most fertile part of Mesopotamia, between the Euphrates and the Tigris. Edessa, its capital, was situated about twenty miles beyond the former of these rivers; and the inhabitants, since the time of Alexander, were a mixed race of Greeks, Arabs, Syrians, and Armenians. The feeble sovereigns of Osroene, placed on the dangerous verge of two contending empires, were attached from inclination to the Parthian cause; but the superior power of Rome extricated them from a reluctant bondage, which is still attested by their medals. After the conclusion of the Parthian war under Marcus, it was judged prudent to secure some substantial pledge of
their doubtful fidelity. Forts were constructed in several parts of the country, and a Roman garrison was fixed in the strong town of Nisibis. During the troubles that followed the death of Commodus, the princess of Osrhoene attempted to shake off the yoke; but the stern policy of Severus confirmed their dependences, and the period of Caracalla completed the easy conquest. Abgarus, the last king of Edessa, was sent in chains to Rome, his dominions reduced into a province, and his capital dignified with the rank of colony; and thus the Romans, about ten years before the fall of the Parthian monarchy, obtained a firm and permanent establishment beyond the Euphrates. 43

Prudence as well as glory might have justified a war on the side of Artaxerxes, had his views been confined to the defence or the acquisition of a useful frontier. But the ambitious Persian openly avowed a far more extensive design of conquest; and he thought himself able to support his lofty pretensions by the arms of reason as well as by those of power. Cyrus, he alleged, had first subdued, and his successors had for a long time possessed, the whole extent of Asia, as far as the Phraaiantia and the Egean Sea; the provinces of Caria and Ionia, under their empire, had been governed by Persian satraps, and all Egypt, to the confines of Ethiopia, had acknowledged their sovereignty. 44 Their rights had been suspended, though not destroyed, by a long usurpation; and as soon as he received the Persian despatch, which birth and successful valor had placed upon his head, the first great duty of his station called upon him to restore the ancient limits and splendour of the monarchy. The Great King, therefore (such was the imposition of his embassy to the emperor Alexander), concluded an honorable and instantly to depose from all the provinces of his ancestors, and yielding to the Persians the empire of Asia, to content themselves with the unsubdued possessions of Europe. This haughty mandate was delivered by four hundred of the tallest and most beautiful of the Persians; who, by their fine horses, splendid arms, and rich apparel, displayed the pride and greatness of their master. 45 Such an envoys was much less an offer of negotiation than a declaration of war. Both Alexander Severus and Artaxerxes, collecting the military force of the Roman and Persian monarchies, resolved in this important contest to lead their armies in person.

43 Jones, 1. law. p. 1139, 1160. 44. M. Dorex has neglected this fact. 45. Porphyry, phil. fr. 3. 46. The literature, from Valerius, who gave a more true view to the event of this contest, the work of M. Dorex, historical chronicles of Babylonia, 47. M. Dorex, historical chronicles of Babylonia, 48. M. Dorex, historical chronicles of Babylonia, 49. These were two hundred myriads of the force of Artaxerxes, who were collected by opposition of Duraeus, who though deficient in a great number of the forces of Duraeus, yet fought a fine battle of nineteen thousand infantry, and about four thousand cavalry. 50. M. Dorex, historical chronicles of Babylonia, 51. If we credit what should be seen in the most authentic of all records, an explanation, still existent, and delivered by the emperor himself to the senate, we must allow that the victory of Alexander Severus was not inferior to any of those formerly obtained over the Persians by the son of Philip. The army of the Great King consisted of one hundred and twenty thousand horse, clothed in complete armour of steel; of seven hundred elephants, with towers filled with archers on their backs, and of eighteen hundred elianors armed with scythes. This formidable host, the like of which is not to be found in eastern history, and has scarcely been imagined in modern romance, was discomfited in a great battle, in which the Roman Alexander approved himself an imperial soldier and a skilful general. The Great King fled before his valour: an immense booty, and the conquest of Mesopotamia, were the immediate fruits of this signal victory. Such are the circumstances of this celeritous and improbable relation, dictated, as it too plainly appears, by the vanity of the monarch, adorned by the unsubling serenity of his flatterers, and received without contradiction by a distant and obsequious senate. 50 Far from being inclined to believe that the arms of Alexander obtained any memorable advantage over the Persians, we are induced to suspect, that all this blaze of imaginary glory was designed to conceal some real illogics.

Our suspicions are confirmed by the authority of a contemporary historian, who mentions the virtues of Alexander with respect, and his faults with candour. He describes the judicious plan which had been formed for the conduct of the war, Three Roman armies were destined to invade Persia at the same time, and by different roads. But the combinations of events which had been so calmly designed, were not executed either with ability or success. The first of these armies, as soon as it had entered the barren plains of Babylon, towards the artificial conflux of the Euphrates and the Tigreus, was encompassed by the superior numbers, and destroyed by the arrows of the enemy. The alliance of Chosroes, king of Armenia, and the long tract of mountainous country, in which the Persian cavalry was of little service, opened a secure entrance into the heart of Media, to the second of the Roman armies. These brave troops had wasted the adjacent provinces, and by several successful actions against Artaxerxes, gave a faint colour to the emperor's vanity. But the retreat of this victorious army was impetuous, or at least

In the essay of the next section, it is proposed to carry the inquiry a little further, and to attempt to solve the various questions which have been raised respecting the state of the Persian empire under Alexander. If we return to the original source, and pursue the train of events in the same manner as we have done in the other cases it will appear, that the Persians treated as a thousand year of rule with the Philistines. The whole course of this inquiry will be found in the pages of Tarchons, "Histories," book viii. p. 315.
intrepid hardness, both of mind and body, which have rendered the northern barbarian masters of the world. The science of war, that constituted the more rational force of Greece and Rome, as it now does of Europe, never made any considerable progress in the east. These disciplined evolutions which harmonized and animated a confused multitude, were unknown to the Persians. They were equally unskilled in the arts of constructing, besieging, or defending regular fortifications. They trusted more to their numbers than to their courage; more to their courage than to their discipline.

Their infantry

The infantry was a half-armed spiritless crowd of peasants, levied in haste by the allurements of plunder, and as easily dispersed by a victory as by a defeat. The monarch and his nobles transported into the camp the pride and luxury of the seraglio. Their military operations were impeded by a useless train of women, eunuchs, horses, and canals; and in the midst of a successful campaign, the Persian host was often separated or destroyed by an unexpected famine.

But the nobles of Persia, in the
their country

The reign of Artaxerxes, which lasted only fourteen years, forms a memorable era in the history of the east, and even in that of Rome. His character seems to have been marked by those bold and commanding features, that generally distinguish the princes who conquer, from those who inherit, an empire. Till the last period of the Persian monarchy, its code of laws was respected as the ground-work of their civil and religious policy. Several of his sayings are preserved. One of them in particular discovers a deep insight into the constitution of government. "The authority of the

prince," said Artaxerxes, "must be defended by a military force; that force can only be maintained by taxes; all taxes must, at last, fall upon agriculture; and agriculture can never flourish except under the protection of justice and moderation." Artaxerxes bequeathed his new empire, and his ambitious designs against the Romans, to Sapor, a son not unworthy of his great father; but these designs were too extensive for the power of Persia, and served only to involve both nations in a long series of destructive wars and reciprocal calamities.

The Persians, long since civilized and corrupted, were very far from possessing the martial independence, and the military power

32 For the account of his war, see Hamilton, i. c. p. 233, 234.

33 Sapor was a great gastronome, and modern authors have literally followed the Persian history.

34 For the account of the war, see Hamilton, i. c. p. 233, 234.

35 In his History of the Persians, and the Code of Artaxerxes in military language, it is the

36 In his History of the Persians, and the Code of Artaxerxes in military language, it is the

37 The Persians, as will be more fully shown, did not possess an octavo of their own, and there is no account of their style. For the history of the Persians, see Hamilton, i. c. p. 233, 234.
We shall occasionally mention the Scythian or Sarmatian tribes, which, with their arms and horses, their flocks and herds, their wares and families, wandered over the immense plains which spread themselves from the Caspian Sea to the Vistula, from the confines of Persia to those of Germany. But the warlike Germans, who first ravaged, then invaded, and at length overturned, the western monarchy of Rome, will occupy a much more important place in this history, and possess a stronger, and, if we may say the expression, a more domestic, claim to our attention and regard. The most civilized nations of modern Europe issued from the woods of Germany; and in the rude institutions of these barbarians we may still distinguish the original principles of our present laws and manners.

In their primitive state of simplicity and independence, the Germans were surveyed by the discerning eye, and delineated by the masterly pencil, of Tacitus, the first of historians who applied the science of philosophy to the study of facts. The expressive conciseness of his descriptions has deserved to exercise the diligence of innumerable antiquarians, and to excite the genius and penetration of the philosophic historians of our own times. The subject, however various and important, has already been so frequently, so ably, and so successfully discussed, that it is now grown familiar to the reader, and difficult to the writer. We shall therefore content ourselves with observing, and indeed with repeating, some of the most important circumstances of climate, of manners, and of institutions, which rendered the wild barbarians of Germany such formidable enemies to the Roman power.

Ancient Germany, excluding from its independent limits the province eastward of the Rhine, which had submitted to the Roman yoke, extended itself over a third part of Europe. Almost the whole of modern Germany, Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Finland, Livonia, Prussia, and the greater part of Poland, were peopled by the various tribes of one great nation, whose complexion, manners, and language, denoted a common origin, and preserved a striking resemblance. On the west, ancient Germany was divided by the Rhine from the Galle, and on the south, by the Danube, from the Illyrian, province of the empire. A ridge of hills, rising from the Danube, and called the Carpathian mountains, separated Germany on the side of Dacia or Hungary. The northern frontier was faintly marked by the mutual frontiers of the Germans and the Saxons. The southern frontier was faintly marked by the mutual frontiers of the Germans and the Sarmatians. The ancient Germans imperfectly described a frozen ocean that lay beyond the Baltic Sea, and beyond the Pons Sestrius, or islands of Scandinavia.

Some ingenious writers have suspected that Europe was much colder formerly than it is at present; and the most ancient descriptions of the climate of Germany tend exceedingly to confirm their theory. The general complaints of intense frost, and eternal winter, are perhaps little to be regarded, since we have no method of reducing to the accurate standard of the thermometer, the feelings, or the expressions, of a wanderer born in the happier regions of Greece or Asia. But I shall select two remarkable circumstances of a less equivocal nature. 1. The great rivers which covered the Roman provinces, the Rhine and the Danube, were frequently frozen over, and capable of supporting the most enormous weights. The barbarians, who often chose that severe season for their invasions, transported, without apprehension or danger, their numerous armies, their cavalry, and their heavy wagons, over a vast and solid bridge of ice. 2. Modern ages have not presented an instance of a like phenomenon. 2. The rein-deer, that useful animal, from whom the savage of the north derives the best comforts of his dreary life, is of a constitution that supports, and even requires, the most intense cold. He is found on the rock of Spitzberg, within ten degrees of the Pole; he seems to delight in the snows of Lapland and Siberia; but at present he cannot subsist, much less multiply, in any country to the south of the Baltic. 3. In the time of Cæsar the rein-deer, as well as the elk, and the wild bull, was a native of the Hercynian forest, which then over-shadowed a great part of Germany and Poland. 4. The modern improvements sufficiently explain the causes of the diminution of the cold. These immense woods have been gradually cleared, which intercepted from the earth the rays of the sun. 5. The mountains have been drained, and in proportion as the soil has been cultivated, the air has become more temperate. 6. Concerning this day, is an exact picture of ancient Germany. Although situated in the same parallel with the finest provinces of France and England, that country experienced the most rigorous cold. The rein-deer are very numerous, the ground is covered with deep and lasting snow, and the great river of St. Lawrence is regularly frozen from a season when the waters of the Seine and the Thames are usually free from ice. 7. It is difficult to ascertain, and easy to exaggerate, the influence of the climate of ancient Germany over the minds and bodies of the natives. Many writers have supposed, and most have allowed, though, as it should seem, without any adequate proof, that the rigorous cold of the north was favourable to

---

1. The modern philosophers of Sweden were surprised that the waters of the lake Leman should remain so long solid in winter, and yet be broken in the spring, though the depth of the lake is about the same as that of the Mediterranean. This phenomenon is now better understood than it was at first. The great depth of the lake makes the water cold throughout the year, and the temperature of the water in the centre of the lake remains nearly the same in winter as in summer. This circumstance enables the water to remain frozen while the surface is uncovered by the ice. The depth of the lake, however, is not sufficient to prevent the water from becoming at times only a few inches thick. 2. The modern philosophers of Sweden were surprised that the waters of the lake Leman should remain so long solid in winter, and yet be broken in the spring, though the depth of the lake is about the same as that of the Mediterranean. This phenomenon is now better understood than it was at first. The great depth of the lake makes the water cold throughout the year, and the temperature of the water in the centre of the lake remains nearly the same in winter as in summer. This circumstance enables the water to remain frozen while the surface is uncovered by the ice. The depth of the lake, however, is not sufficient to prevent the water from becoming at times only a few inches thick. 3. Cæsar de Brutis, Bellum, i. 23, 24. The most rapid inundation of the Germanic lakes is caused by the filling of the river, which, though some of these lakes are situated at a great distance from the Rhine, have no connection with it. 4. Cæsar de Brutis, Bellum, i. 23, 24. The most rapid inundation of the Germanic lakes is caused by the filling of the river, which, though some of these lakes are situated at a great distance from the Rhine, have no connection with it. 5. Cæsar de Brutis, Bellum, i. 23, 24. The most rapid inundation of the Germanic lakes is caused by the filling of the river, which, though some of these lakes are situated at a great distance from the Rhine, have no connection with it. 6. Cæsar de Brutis, Bellum, i. 23, 24. The most rapid inundation of the Germanic lakes is caused by the filling of the river, which, though some of these lakes are situated at a great distance from the Rhine, have no connection with it. 7. Cæsar de Brutis, Bellum, i. 23, 24. The most rapid inundation of the Germanic lakes is caused by the filling of the river, which, though some of these lakes are situated at a great distance from the Rhine, have no connection with it.
long life and generative vigour, that the women were more fruitful, and the human species more prolific, than in warmer or more temperate climates. We may assert, with greater confidence, that the keen air of Germany formed the large and masculine limbs of the nation, who were, in general, of a more lofty stature than those of the people of the south, gave them a kind of strength better adapted to violent exertions than to patient labour, and inspired them with constitutional bravery, which is the result of nerves and spirits. The severity of a winter campaign, that chilled the courage of the Roman troops, was scarcely felt by these hardy children of the north, who, in their turn, were unable to resist the summer heats, and dissolved away in languor and sickness under the beams of an Italian sun.

There is not any where upon the globe, a large tract of country, which we have discovered destitute of inhabitants, or whose first population can be fixed with any degree of historical certainty. And yet, as the most philosophic minds can seldom refrain from investigating the infancy of great nations, our curiosity consumes itself in futile and disappointed efforts. When Tacitus considered the purity of the German blood, and the forbidding aspect of the country, he was disposed to pronounce those barbarians Indigetes, or natives of the soil. We may allow with safety, and perhaps with truth, that ancient Germany was not originally peopled by any foreign colonies already formed into a political society, but that the same and nation received their existence from the gradual union of some wandering savages of the Hercynian woods. To assert these savages to have been the spontaneous production of the earth which they inhabited, would be a rash inference, condemned by religion, and unwarrented by reason.

Such national doubts is but illustrated with the genius of popular vanity. Among the nations who have adopted the Mosaic history of the world, the ark of Noah has been of the same use, as was formerly to the Greeks and Romans the siege of Troy. On a narrow basis of acknowledged truth, an immense but rare system of fable has been erected; and the wild Irishman, as well as the wild Tartar, could point out the individual son of Japhet, from whose loins his ancestors were literally descended. The last century abounded with antiquarians of profound learning and easy faith, who, by the dim light of legends and traditions, of conjectures and etymologies, conducted

the great grandchildren of Noah from the Tower of Babel to the extremities of the globe. Of these judicious critics, one of the most entertaining was Olaine Rüebbeck, professor in the university of Upsal. Whatever is celebrated, either in history or fable, this zealous patriarch ascribes to his country. From Sweden (which formed so considerable a part of ancient Germany) the Greeks themselves derived their alphabetic characters, their astronomy, and their religion. Of that delightful region (for such it appeared to the eyes of a native) the Atlantis of Plato, the country of the Hyperboreans, the gardens of the Hesperides, the Fortunate Islands, and even the Elysian Fields, were all but false and imperfect transcripts. A climate so favourably disposed by nature, could not long remain destitute after the flood. The learned Rüebbeck allows the family of Noah a few years to multiply from eight to about twenty thousand persons. He then disperses them into small colonies to repopulate the earth, and to propagate the human species. The German or Swedish detachment (which marched, if I am not mistaken, under the command of Ascanius the son of Gunter, the son of Japhet,) distinguished itself by a more than common diligence in the prosecution of this great work. The northern hive cast its swarms over the greatest part of Europe, Africa, and Asia; and (as the author's metaphor) the blood circulated from the extremities to the heart.

But all this well-laboured system of German antiquities is unassailable by a single fact, too well attested to admit of any doubt, and of too decisive a nature to leave room for any reply. The Germans, in the age of Tacitus, were unacquainted with the use of letters; and the use of letters is the principal circumstance that distinguishes a civilized people from a herd of savages, incapable of knowledge or reflection. Without that artificial help, the human memory soon dissolves or corrupts the ideas intrusted to her charge; and the nobler faculties of the mind, no longer supplied with models or with materials, gradually forget their powers; the judgment becomes feeble and lethargic, the imagination languid or irregular. Fully to apprehend this important truth, let us attempt, in an improved society, to calculate the immense distance between the point of learning and the illuminating present. The former, by reading and reflection, multiplies his own experience, and lives in distant ages and remote countries; whilst the latter, rooted to a single spot, and confined to a few years of existence, the base labourer of his own wisdom by digging out the dark recess of his own spirit. The poor diligent antiquary, after years of labour, finds himself for the most part the translator of what he has already read, and a collection of what others have done before him.
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

vision of the arable lands, and who, in that strange operation, avoided disputes, by suffering a great part of their territory to lie waste and without tillage. 37

Gold, silver, and iron, were extremely scarce in Germany. Its barbarous inhabitants wanted both skill and patience to investigate those rich veins of silver, which have so liberally rewarded the attention of the princes of Brunswick and Saxony. Sweden, which now supplies Europe with iron, was equally ignorant of its own riches; and the appearance of the arms of the Germans furnished a sufficient proof, how little iron they were able to bestow on what must have seemed the noblest use of that metal. The various transactions of peace and war had introduced some Roman coins (chiefly silver) among the barbarians of the Rhine and Danube; but the more distant tribes were absolutely unacquainted with the use of money, carried on their confined traffic by the exchange of commodities, and prized their rude earthen vessels as of equal value with the silver coins, the presents of Rome to their princes and ambassadors. 38 To a mind capable of reflection, such leading facts convey more instruction, than a tedious detail of subordinate circumstances. The value of money has been settled by general consent to express our wants and our property; as letters were invented to express our ideas; and both these institutions, by giving a more active energy to the powers and passions of human nature, have contributed to multiply the objects they were designed to represent. 39

The use of gold and silver is in a great measure fictitious; but it would be impossible to enumerate the important and various services which agriculture, and all the arts, have received from iron, when tempered and fashioned by the operation of fire, and the dexterous hand of man.

Money, in a word, is the most universal instrument, from the most powerful instrument, of human industry; and it is very difficult to conceive by what means a people, neither actuated by the one, nor seconded by the other, could emerge from the grossest barbarism.

If we contemplate a savage nation in any part of the globe, a supine indolence and a carelessness of futurity will be found to constitute their general character. In a civilised state, every faculty of man is expanded and exercised: and the great chain of mutual dependence and assistance unites the several members of society. The most numerous portion of it is employed in constant useful labour. The select few, placed by fortune above that necessity, can, however, fill up their time by the pursuits of interest or glory, by the improvement of their estate or of their understanding, by the duties, the pleasures, and even the
follies of social life. The Germans were not possessed of these varied resources. The care of the house and family, the management of the land and cattle, were delegated to the old and the infirm, to women and slaves. The lazy warrior, destined of every art that might employ his leisure hours, consumed his days and nights in the animal gratifications of sleep and food. And yet, by a wonderful diversity of nature (according to the remark of a writer who had pierced into its darkest recesses), the same barbarians are by turns the most insolent and the most restless of mankind. They delight in sloth, they detest tranquillity. The longed soul, oppressed with its own weight, anxiously required some new and powerful sensation; and war and danger were the only amusements adequate to its fierce temper.

The sound that summoned the German to arms was grateful to his ear. It roused him from his unconsidered lethargy, gave him an active pursuit, and, by strong exercise of the body, and violent emotions of the mind, restored him to a more lively sense of his existence. In the dull intervals of peace, these barbarians were insatiably addicted to sleep and excessive drinking; both of which, by different means, the one by infusing their passions, the other by extinguishing their reason, alike relieved them from the pain of thinking. They gloried in passing whole days and nights at table; and the blood of friends and relations often stained their numerous and drunken assemblies. Their debts of honour, for in that light they have transmitted to us those of play, they discharged with the most romantic facility. The desperate gambler, who had staked his person and liberty on a last throw of the dice, impatiently submitted to the decision of fortune, and suffered himself to be bound, shatred, and sold into remote slavery, by his weaker but more lucky antagonist.

Strong beer, a liquor extracted from the barley, and corrupted (as it is strongly expressed by Tacitus) into a certain semblance of wine, was sufficient for the gross purposes of German sobriety. But those who had tasted the rich wines of Italy, and afterwards of Gaul, sighed for that more delicious species of intoxication. They attempted not, however, (as has since been executed with so much success,) to naturalize the vine on the banks of the Rhine and Danube; nor did they ever consider how to procure by industry the materials of an advantageous commerce. To solicit by labour what might be ravished by arms, was esteemed unworthy of the German spirit. The intemperate thirst of strong liquors often urged the barbarians to invade the provinces on which art or nature had bestowed those much-envied presents. The Tuscan, who betrayed his country to the Celtic nations, attracted them into Italy by the prospect of the rich fruits and delicious wines, the productions of a happier climate. And in the same manner the German auxiliaries, invited into France during the civil wars of the sixteenth century, were allured by the promise of delicious quarters in the provinces of Champagne and Burgundy. Drunkenness, the most libellous, but not the most dangerous of our vices, was sometimes capable, in a less civilized state of mankind, of occasioning a battle, a war, or a revolution.

The climate of ancient Germany, where populous cities have been mollified, and the soil fertilized, by the labour of ten centuries from the time of Charlemagne. The same extent of ground which at present maintains, in man and beast, a million of husbandmen and artificers, was unable to supply an hundred thousand bar-
march, who, instead of intrusting his people with the free use of arms, as is practised in the rest of Germany, commits them to the safe custody of a citizen, or even of a freeman, but of a slave. The neighbours of the Solomis, the Sitones, are sunk even below. 

servitude; they obey a woman."

In the mention of these exceptions, the great historian sufficiently acknowledges the general theory of government. We are only at a loss to conceive by what means riches and despotism could penetrate into a remote corner of the North, and extinguish the generous flame that blazed with such fierceness on the frontier of the Roman provinces; or how the ancestors of these Danes and Norwegians, so distinguished in later ages by their unconquered spirit, could thus tamely resign the great character of German liberty. Some tribes, however, on the coast of the Baltic, acknowledged the authority of kings, though without relinquishing the rights of men; but in the far greater part of Germany, the form of government was a democracy, tempered, indeed, and restrained, but so much by general and positive laws, as by the occasional ascendant of birth or valor, of eloquence or superstition.

Civil governments, in their first associations, are voluntary associations for mutual defence. To attain the desired end, it is absolutely necessary, that each individual should conceive himself obliged to submit his private opinions and actions, to the judgment of the greater number of his associates. The German tribes were contented with this rude but liberal outline of political society. As soon as a youth, born of free parents, had attained the age of manhood, he was introduced into the general council of his countrymen, solemnly invested with a shield and spear, and adopted as an equal and worthy member of the military commonwealth. The assembly of the warriors of the tribe was convened at stated seasons, or on sudden emergencies. The trial of public offences, the election of magistrates, and the great business of peace and war, were determined by its independent voice. Sometimes, indeed, these important questions were previously considered, and prepared in a more select council of the principal chiefmen. The magistrates might deliberate and permute, the people only could resolve and execute; and the resolutions of the Germans were for the most part hasty and violent. Barbarism accustomed to place their freedom in gratifying the present passion, and their courage in overlooking all future consequences, turned away with indignant contempt from the restraints of justice and policy, and it was the practice to signify by a hollow mutter their dislike of such timid counsels. But whenever a more popular orator proposed to vindicate the meekest citizen from either foreign or domestic injury, whenever he called upon his fellow-countrymen to assert the national honour, or to pursue some enterprise full of danger and glory, a loud clashing of shields and spears expressed the eager applause of the assembly. For the Germans always met in arms, and it was constantly to be dreaded, lest an irregular multitude, inflamed with faction and strong liquors, should use those arms to enforce, as well as to declare, their furious resolves. We may recollect how often the diets of Poland have been polluted with blood, and the more numerous party has been compelled to yield to the more violent and seditions.

A general of the tribe was elected on occasions of danger; and, if the danger was pressing and extensive, several tribes concurred in the choice of the same general. The bravest warrior was named to lead his countrymen into the field, by his example, rather than by his commands. But this power, however limited, was still irresistible. It expired with the war, and in time of peace the German tribes acknowledged not any supreme chief. Princes were, however, appointed, in the general assembly, to administer justice, or rather to compose differences, in their respective districts. In the choice of those magistrates, as much regard was shown to birth as to merit. To such was assigned the public, a guard, and a council of an hundred persons; and the first of the princes appears to have enjoyed a pre-eminence of rank and honour which sometimes tempted the Romans to compliment him with the regal title.

The comparative view of the powers of the magistrates, in two remarkable instances, is alone sufficient to represent the whole system of German manners. The disposal of the landed property within their district was absolutely vested in their hands, and they distributed it every year according to a new division. At the same time they were not authorized to punish with death, to imprison, or even to strike a private citizen. A people thus jealous of their persons, and careless of their possessions, must have been totally destitute of industry and the arts, but animated with a high sense of honour and independences.

The Germans respected only those among them which they imposed on themselves. The most obscure soldier resided with the dignity of the magistrates. The noblist youth blushed not to be numbered among the faithful companions of some renowned chief, to whom they devoted their arms and service. A noble simulation pre-

43 Tact, Gen. 44, 45. Pentadactylus I hea delivered his ap- plication to Lie in the Chastisement of friends upon what it may be called the in human passion of rage.

44 The destruction of Tiber, whose sons were not carried off the same day, is the subject of the following chapter. See the Historians of Tiber. The events of Tiber were the subject of many and various accounts. In the year 1613 I found a singular law, prohibiting the use of fire and of arms, and in case a man should use the latter, he was to be punished by the society of twelve of his neighbours. It is not improbable that it was, in reality, the system of providing men to extinguish the flames and put out the fires. In the 6th book of his History of Persia, in the Bibliotheca, sources, see p. 483.
valued among the companions, to obtain the first place in the esteem of their chief, amongst their different commanders, the chief, to acquire the greatest number of valiant companions. To be ever surrounded by a band of select youths, was the pride and strength of the chief, their ornament in peace, their defense in war. The glory of such distinguished heroes diffused itself beyond: the narrow limits of their own tribe. Presents and embassies solicited their friendship, and the favor of their arms often ensured victory to the party which they espoused. In the hour of danger it was shameful for the chief to be surprised in value by his companions; shameful for the companions not to equal the value of their chief. To survive his fall in battle was indelible honor. To protect his person, and to adorn his glory with the trophies of their own exploits, were the most sacred of their duties. The chiefts combated for victory, the companions for the chief. The noblest warriors, whenever their native country was menaced in the laziness of peace, maintained their numerous bands in some distant scene of action, to exercise their restless spirit, and to acquire renown by voluntary dangers. Gifts worthy of soldiers, the warlike steed, the bloody and ever victorious lance, were the rewards which the companions claimed from the liberality of their chief. The rude plenty of his hospitable board was the only pay that he could bestow, or they would accept. War, rapine, and the free-will offerings of his friends, supplied the materials of this munificence. 

This institution, however it might accidentally weaken the several republics, invigorated the general character of the Germans, and even, perhaps, amongst them all, the virtues of which barbarians are susceptible: the faith and valor, the hospitality and the courtesy, so conspicuous long afterwards in the ages of chivalry. The honorable gifts, bestowed by the chief on his brave companions, have been supposed, by an ingenuous writer, to contain the first rudiments of the free, distributed, after the conquest of the Roman provinces, by the barbarian lords among their vassals, with a similar duty of homage and military service. These conditions are, however, very repugnant to the maxims of the ancient Germans, who delighted in mutual presents: but without either imposing, or accepting, the weight of obligations.

In the days of chivalry, or more properly of romance, all the men were brave, and all the women were chaste; and notwithstanding the latter with these virtues is acquired and preserved with much more difficulty than the former, it is sacred, almost without exception, to the wives of the ancient Germans. Polygamy was not in use, except among the princes, and amongst them only for the sake of multiplying their alliances. Dissolves were prohibited by manners rather than by laws. Adulteries were punished as rare and inexcusable crimes; nor was seduction justified by example and fashion. We may easily discover, that Tacitus indulges an honest pleasure in the contrast of barbarian virtue with the dissolute conduct of the Roman ladies: yet there are some striking circumstances that give an air of truth, or at least of probability, to the conjugal faith and chastity of the Germans.

Although the progress of civilization has undoubtedly contributed to enslave the fiercer passions of human nature, it seems to have been less favourable to the virtue of chastity, whose most dangerous enemy is the softness of the mind. The refinements of life corrupt while they polish the intercourse of the sexes. The gross appetite of love becomes most dangerous when it is elevated, or rather, indeed, disguised by sentimental passion. The elegance of dress, of manner and of manners, gives a lustre to beauty, and inflames the senses through the imagination. Lavish entertainments; midnight dances, and licentious spectacles, present at once temptation and opportunity to female frailty. From such dangers the unpolluted wives of the barbarians were secured by poverty, solitude, and the painful cares of a domestic life. The German huts, open on every side to the eye of indiscretion or jealousy, were a better safeguard of conjugal fidelity, than the walls, the bolts, and the rammels of a Persian harem. To this reason another may be added, of a more honourable nature. The Germans treated their women with esteem and confidence, consulted them on every occasion of importance, and finally believed, that in their breasts resided a sanctity and wisdom more than human. Some of these interpreters of fate, such as Velclos in the Ruyard war, governed, in the name of the deity, the fiercest nations of Germany. The rest of the sex, without being adored as goddesses, were respected as the free and equal companions of soldiers, associated even by the marriage ceremony to a life of toil, of danger, and of glory. In their great situations, the ranks of the barbarians were filled with a multitude of women, who remained firm and undaunted amidst the sound of arms, the various forms of destruction, and the honourable wounds of their sons and husbands. Painting armies of Germans have, more than once, been driven back upon the enemy, by the generous despair of the women, who dashed death much less than servitude. If the day was irrecoverably lost, they well knew how to deliver themselves and their children, with their own hands, from an insulting victor. Honours of such a cast may claim our admiration; but they were most assuredly neither lovely, nor very susceptible of this eloquent and intimate, the banquets of Homer, and to such then humanity may look. [

[Text continues...]

1908 NEW HART P. 81, 83.
1909 The reigns of German and Helen are 398-396. P. 81, 83.
1910 The reigns of German and Helen are 396-398. P. 81, 83.
1911 The reigns of German and Helen are 398-396. P. 81, 83.
1912 The reigns of German and Helen are 396-398. P. 81, 83.
loss. Whilst they affected to emulate the stern virtues of war, they must have resigned that attractive softness, in which principally consist the charm and weakness of women. Conscious pride taught the German females to suppress every tender emotion that stood in competition with honour, and the first honour of the sex has year been that of chastity. The sentiments and conduct of those high-spirited matrons may, at once, be considered as a cause, as an effect, and as a proof of the general character of the nation. Female courage, however it may be raised by fanaticism, or confirmed by habit, can be only a faint and imperfect imitation of the really valor that distinguishes the age or country in which it may be found.

The religious system of the German is (if the wild opinions of savages can deserve that name) was dictated by their wants, their fears, and their ignorance. They adored the great visible objects and agents of nature, the Sun and the Moon, the Fire and the Earth; together with those imaginary deities who were supposed to preside over the most important occupations of human life. They were persuaded that, by some ridiculous acts of devotion, they could discover the will of the superior beings, and that human sacrifices were the most precious and acceptable offering to their altars. Some apostles have been handed down as the sublime notion entertained by that people of the Deity, whom they neither confined within the walls of a temple, nor represented by any human figure; but when we recollect that the Germans were unskilled in architecture, and totally unconquainted with the art of sculpture, we shall readily assign the true reason of a scruple which arose not so much from a superiority of reason as from a want of ingenuity. The only temples in Germany were dark and ancient groves, consecrated by the reverence of succeeding generations. Their secret groves, the imagined residencies of an invisible power, by presenting no distinct object of fear or worship, impressed the mind with a still deeper sense of religious horror; and the priests, rude and illiterate as they were, had been taught by experience the use of every artifice that could preserve and fortify impressions so well suited to their own interest.

The same ignorance which renders barbarians incapable of conceiving or embracing the useful restraints of laws, exposes them naked and unarmed to the blind excesses of superstition. The German priests, improving this favourable temper of their countrymen, had assumed a jurisdiction even in temporal concerns which the magistrate could not venture to exercise; and the haughty warrior patiently submitted to the lash of correction, when it was inflicted, not by any human power, but by the immediate order of the god of war. The defects of civil policy were sometimes supplied by the interposition of ecclesiastical authority. The latter was constantly exerted to maintain silence and decency in the popular assemblies; and was sometimes extended to a more enlarged concern for the national welfare. A solemn procession was occasionally celebrated in the present countries of Mecklenburg and Pomerania. The unknown symbol of the Earth, covered with a thick veil, was placed on a carriage drawn by cows; and in this manner the goddess, whose common residence was in the Isle of Rügen, visited several adjacent tribes of her worshippers. During her progress the sound of war was hushed, quarrels were suspended, arms laid aside, and the restless Germans had an opportunity of tasting the blessings of peace and harmony. The tree of God, so often and so insincerely proclaimed by the clergy of the eleventh century, was an obvious imitation of this ancient custom.

But the influence of religion was far more powerful in India, than to moderate, the fierce passions of the Germans. Interest and fanaticism often prompted its ministers to sanctify the most daring and the most unjust enterprises, by the approbation of heaven and full assurance of success. The consecrated standards, long revered in the groves of superstition, were placed in the front of the battle; and the hostile army was devoted with dire acclamations to the gods of war and of thunder. In the faith of soldiers (and such were the Germans) rewards is the most unpromising of sins. A brave man was the worthy favourite of their martial deities; the wretch who had lost his shield was alike banished from the religious and the civil assemblies of his countrymen. Some tribes of the north seem to have embraced the doctrine of transmigration; others imagined a great paradise of immortal drunkenness. All agreed that a life spent in arms, and a glorious death in battle, were the best preparations for a happy futurity, either in this or in another world.

The immortality so vainly promised by the priests was in some degree conferred by the bards. That singular order of men has most deservedly attracted the notice of all who have attempted to investigate the antiquities of the Celta, the Scythians, and the Germans. Their genius and character, as well as the reverence paid to that important office, have been sufficiently illustrated. But we cannot so easily express, or even conceive, the enthusiasm of arms and glory, which they kindled in the breasts of their audience. Among a polished people, a taste for poetry is rather an amusement of the fancy than a passion of the soul. And yet, when its calm retirement we перем the ecstasies described by Homer and Tasso, we are insensibly saturated by the fiction, and feel a momentary glow of martial ardour.

74. See Dr. Monro's History of Charles II. vol. i. p. 396.
75. Lord Hervey. p. 47. These sentiments must only be felt by wise men.
76. See an account of this ceremony, Trav. Amor. v. 1. ch. 77.
77. See Cass. D'Ancre. and Cass. next to write this discourse in the hands, but B. Visconte thinks there is a Latin sentence to enough evidence in a more elevated prose.
78. Dr. Foster, in his narrative version of that book, published in M. T. Foster, in his Introduction to the History of Denmark.

G 4
But how faint, how cold is the sensation which a peaceful mind can receive from solitary study! It was in the hour of battle, or in the feast of victory, that the poets celebrated the glory of heroes of ancient days, the ancestors of those warlike chieftains, who listened with transport to their artifices but animating strains. The view of arms and of danger heightened the effect of the military song; and the passions which it tended to excite, the desire of fame, and the contempt of death, were the habitual sentiments of a German mind.

Such was the situation, and such were the manners of the ancient Germans. Their climate, their want of learning, of arts, and of laws; their notions of honour, of gallantry, and of religion; their sense of freedom, impatience of peace, and thirst of enterprise, all contributed to form a people of military heroes. And yet we find, that, during more than two hundred and fifty years that elapsed from the defeat of Varus to the reign of Tiberius, these formidable barbarians made few considerable attempts, and not any material impression on the luxurious and enslaved provinces of the empire. Their progress was checked by their want of arms and discipline, and their fury was diverted by the intestine divisions of ancient Germany.

War of arms. 

1. It has been observed, with ingenuity, and not without truth, that the command of iron soon gives a nation the command of gold. But the rude tribes of Germany, alike destitute of both those valuable metals, were reduced slowly to acquire, by their united strength, the possession of the one as well as the other. The face of a German army displayed their poverty of iron. Swords, and the longer kind of lances, they could seldom now. Their axises (as they called them in their own language) were long spears, headed with a sharp, but narrow iron point, and which, as occasion required, they either darted from a distance or pushed in close men. With this spear, and with a shield, their cavalry was contented. A multitude of darts, scattered with incredible force, were an additional resource of the infantry. Their military dress, when they were any, was nothing more than a loose mantle. A variety of colours was the only ornament of their wooden or leather shields. Few of the chiefs were distinguished by ephides, scarce any by helmets. Though the horses of Germany were military beautiful, swift, nor practised in the skilful evolutions of the Roman eagle, several of the nations obtained renown by their cavalry; but in general the principal strength of the Germans consisted in their infantry, which was drawn up in several deep columns, according to the distinction of tribes and families, and of discipline.

Impatient of fatigue or delay, these half-armoured warriors rushed to battle with dissonant shouts and disorderly ranks; and sometimes, by the effort of native valour, prevailed over the constrained and more artificial bravery of the Roman mercenaries. But as the barbarians poured forth their whole souls on the first onset, they knew not how to rally or to retire. A repulse was a sure defeat; and a defeat was must commonly total destruction. When we recollect the complete armour of the Roman soldiers, their discipline, exercises, evolutions, fortified camps, and military engines, it appears a just matter of surprise, how the naked and unassisted valour of the barbarians could dare to encounter in the field the strength of the legions, and the various troops of the auxiliaries which seconded their operations. The contest was too unequal, till the introduction of luxury had enervated the vigour, and a spirit of dissidence and sedition had relaxed the discipline, of the Roman armies. The introduction of barbarian auxiliaries into those armies was a measure attended with very obvious dangers; as it might gradually instruct the Germans in the arts of war and of policy. Although they were admitted in small numbers and with the strictest precaution, the example of Civilia was proper to convince the Romans that the danger was not imaginary, and that their precautions were not always sufficient.

II. The strength of ancient Germany appears formidable, when we consider the effects that might have been produced by its united effort. The wide extent of country might very possibly contain a million of warriors, as all who were of age to bear arms were of a temper to see them. But this force, multiplied, incapable of concerted or exercising any plan of national greatness, was agitated by various, and often hostile, intentions. Germany was divided into more than forty independent states; and even in each state the union of the several tribes was extremely loose and precarious. The barbarians were easily procured; they knew not how to forgive an injury, much less an insult;
their resentments were bloody and implacable. The casual disputes that so frequently happened in their tumultuous parties of hunting or drinking, were sufficient to inflame the minds of whole nations; the private feud of any considerable chiefman diffused itself among their followers and allies. To chastise the insolent, or to plumb the defenceless, were alike causes of war. The most formidable states of Germany affected to encompass their territories with a wide frontier of solitude and detachment. The awful distance preserved by their neighbours arrested the terror of their arms, and in some measure defended them from the danger of unexpected incursions. We cannot but admire the spirit of Tacitus, who in his "Germany" now speaks of the barbarians as "mâmitudined" by the neighbouring tribes, provoked by their insolvency, allured by the hopes of spoil, and perhaps inspired by the total deities of the empire. Above sixty thousand barbarians were destroyed; not by the Roman arms, but in our sight, and for our entertainment. May the nations, enemies of Rome, ever preserve this token to each other! We have now attained the utmost verge of prosperity, and have nothing left to demand of fortune, except the discrèd of the barbari-ans. These sentiments, less worthy of the humanity than of the patriotism of Tacitus, express the invariable maxims of the policy of his countrymen. They deemed it a much safer expedient to divide than to combat the barbarians, from whose defeat they could derive neither honour nor advantage. The money and negotiations of Rome insinuated themselves into the heart of Germany; and every act of seduction was used with dignity, to conciliate those nations whose proximity to the Rhine or Danube might render the most useful friends, as well as the most troublesome enemies. Chiefs of renown and power were scattered by the most brilliant presents, which they received either as marks of distinction, or as the instruments of luxury. In civil dissensions the weaker faction endeavored to strengthen its interest by entering into secret connections with the governors of the frontier provinces. Every querell among the Germans was fomented by the intrigues of Rome; and every plan of union and public good was defeated by the stronger bias of private jealousy and interest.

The general conspiracy which terrorized the Romans under the reign of Marcus Antoninus, comprehended almost all the nations of Germany, and even Sarmatia, from the mouth of the Rhine to that of the Danube. It is impossible for us to determine whether this hasty conjunction was formed by necessity, by reason, or by passion; but we may rest assured, that the barbarians were neither allured by the insolence, or provoked by the ambition, of the Roman monarch. This dangerous invasion required all the firmness and vigilance of Marcus. He fixed generals of ability in the several stations of attack, and assumed in person the conduct of the most important portion on the Upper Danube. After a long and doubtful conflict, the spirit of the barbarians was subdued. The Quadi and the Marcomanni, who had taken the lead in the war, were the most severely punished in its catastrophe. They were commanded to retire five miles from their own banks of the Danube, and to deliver up the flower of the youth, who were immediately sent into Britain, a remote island, where they might be secure as hostages, and useful as soldiers. On the frequent rebellions of the Quadi and Marcomanni, the irritated emperor resolved to reduce their country into the form of a province. His designs were disappointed by death. This formidable league, however, the only one that appears in the two first centuries of the Imperial history, was entirely dissipated, without leaving any traces behind in Germany.

In the course of this introductory chapter we have confided ourselves to the general outlines of the manners of Germany, without attempting to describe or to distinguish the various tribes which filled that great country in the time of Cæsar, of Tacitus, or of Ptolomy. As the ancient, or as new tribes successively present themselves in the series of this history, we shall concisely mention their origin, their situation, and their particular character. Modern nations are fixed and permanent societies, connected among themselves by laws and government, bound to their native soil by arts and agriculture. The German tribes were voluntary and fluctuating associations of soldiers, almost of savages. The same territory often changed its inhabitants in the tide of conquest and migration. The same communities, uniting in a plan of defence or invasion, bestowed a new title on their new confederacy. The dissolution of an ancient confederacy restored to the independent tribes their peculiar but long-forgetten appellation. A victorious state often communicated its own name to a vanquished people. Sometimes crowds of volunteers locked from all parts to the standard of a favourite leader; his camp became their country, and the circumstance of the enterprise some gave a common denomination to the united multitude. The distinctions of the ferocious invaders were perpetually varying with themselves, and confounded by the astonishment of the Romans.

Wars, and the administration of public affairs, are the principal sub-

17 Tacitus, B. G. Lib. i. ch. 25. These tribesmen, according to the fourth and fifth centuries by modern writers, have been considered as a Thracian people. See Cotta, G. R. ii. 35, 36. 18 Tacitus, B. G. Lib. i. ch. 26. The city of Byzantium was a Thracian one. 19 Tacitus, B. G. Lib. i. ch. 26. 20 Tacitus, B. G. Lib. i. ch. 26. The great army of the Danubian tribes was a very happy one with Tacitus, who died of the fever which was a constant pest to the Roman generals. The same situation is repeated in the case of the Germans. See Livy, B. G. Lib. i. ch. 26. 21 Tacitus, B. G. Lib. i. ch. 26. 22 Tacitus, B. G. Lib. i. ch. 26. 23 Tacitus, B. G. Lib. i. ch. 26. 24 War, the administration of public affairs, are the principal sub-

jects of history; but the number of persons interested in these busy scenes, is very different, according to the different condition of mankind. In great monarchies, millions of obedient subjects pursue their useful occupations in peace and security. The attention of the wretch, as well as of the ruler, is solely confined to a court, a capital, a regular army, and the districts which happen to be the occasional scene of military operations. But a state of freedom and barbarism, the scene of civil convulsions, or the situation of petty republics, raises almost every member of the community into action, and consequently into notice. The irregular divisions, and the restless motions, of the people of Germany, dazzle our imagination, and seem to multiply their numbers. The profuse enumeration of kings and emperors, of armies and nations, inclines us to forget that the same objects are continually repeated under a variety of appellations, and that the most splendid appellations have been frequently applied to the most inconsiderable objects.

CHAP. X.

The Emperor Decius, Gallus, Eutropius, and Gallienus. — The Great Irruption of the Barbarians. — The Thirty Tyrants.

From the great secular games celebrated by Philip, in the death of the emperor Gallienus, there elapsed twenty years of shame and misfortune. During that calamitous period, every instant of time was marked, every province of the Roman world was afflicted, by barbarous invasions and military tyrants, and the ruined empire seemed to approach the last and fatal moment of its dissolution. The confusion of the times, and the scarcity of authentic memorials, opposé equal difficulties to the historian, who attempts to preserve a clear and unbroken thread of narration. Surrounded with imperfect fragments, always curious, often obscure, and sometimes contradictory, he is reduced to collect, to compare, and to conjecture: and though he ought never to place his conjectures in the rank of facts, yet the knowledge of human nature, and of the sure operation of its fierce and unrestrained passions, might, on some occasions, supply the want of historical materials.

The Emperor Philip. — The affair of the Three Tyrants.

There is not, for instance, any difficulty in conceiving, that the successive murders of so many emperors had occasioned all the sies of allegiance between the prince and people; that all the generals of Philip were disposed to imitate the example of their master; and that the captives of armies, long since habituated to frequent and violent revolutions, might, every day raise to the throne the most obscure of their fellow-soldiers. History can only add, that the rebellion against the emperor Philip

broke out in the summer of the year two hundred and forty-nine, among the legions of Moesia; and that a subaltern officer named Marinus was the object of their sedition. Philip was alarmed. He dreaded lest the reason of the Masic army should produce the first fruit of a general conflagration. Distrustful of the consciousness of his guilt and of his danger, he communicated the intelligence to the senate. A gloomy silence prevailed, the effect of fear, and perhaps of disaffection; till at length Decius, one of the assembly, assuming a spirit worthy of his noble extraction, ventured to discover more intrepidity than the emperor seemed to possess. He treated the whole assembly with contempt, as a hostile and insconsiderate tumult, and Philip's rival as a pharisee of royalty, who in a few days would be destroyed by the same inconsistency that had created him. The speedy completion of the prophecy inspired Philip with a just esteem for so able a counsellor, and Decius appeared to him the only person capable of restoring peace and discipline to an army whose barbarous spirit did not immediately subside after the murder of Marinus. Decius, who long resided in his own nomination, seemed to have insinuated the danger of presenting a leader of genius to the angry and apprehensive minds of the soldiers; and his prediction was again confirmed by the event. The legions of Moesia forced their judge to become their accomplice. They left him only the alternative of death or the purple. His subsequent conduct, after that decisive measure, was unavoidable. He conducted, or followed, his army to the confines of Italy, whither Philip, collecting all his force to repel the formidable competitor whom he had raised up, advanced to meet him. The Imperial troops were superior in number; but the rebels formed an army of veterans, commanded by an able and experienced leader. Philip was either killed in the battle, or put to death a few days afterwards at Verona. His son and associate in the empire was murdered at Rome by the pontifical guards; and the victorious Decius, with more favourable circumstances than the ambition of that age can usually plead, was universally acknowledged by the senate and provinces. It is reported, that, immediately after his reluctant acceptance of the title of Augustus, he had assured Philip by a private message of his innocence and loyalty, solemnly protesting, that on his arrival in Italy he would resign the Imperial ornaments, and return to the condition of an obedient subject. His professions might be sincere; but in the situation where fortunes had placed him, it was scarcely possible that he could either forgive or be forgiven. 8

The emperor Decius had employed a few months in the works of peace and the administration of justice, when he was summoned to the labours of the Danube by the invasion of the Germanic Tribes. The emperor Decius, after some delay from the Danube...
This is the first considerable occasion in which history mentions that great people, who afterwards broke the Roman power, sacked the Capitol, and reigned in Gaul, Spain, and Italy. So memorable was this part which they acted in the subversion of the Western empire, that the name of Goths is frequently but improperly used as a general appellation of rude and warlike barbarians.

In the beginning of the sixth century, and after the conquest of Italy, the Goths, in possession of present greatness, very naturally indulged themselves in the prospect of past and of future glory. They wished to preserve the memory of their ancestors, and to transmit to posterity their own achievements. The principal minister of the court of Ravenna, the learned Cassiodorus, gratified the inclination of the conquerors in a Gothic history, which consisted of twelve books, now reduced to the imperfect abridgment of Jornandes. These writers passed with the most artful cunning over the misfortunes of the nation, celebrated its successful valor, and concluded the triumph with many Asiatic exploits, that more properly belonged to the people of Scythia. On the faith of ancient songs, the uncertain, but the only, memorials of barbarism, they deduced the first origin of the Goths, from the vast island, or peninsula, of Scandina. That extreme country of the North was not unknown to the conquerors of Italy; the ties of ancient consanguinity had been strengthened by recent offices of friendship; and a Scandinavian king had cheerfully dedicated his savage greatness, that he might pass the remainder of his days in the peaceful and polished court of Ravenna. Many vestiges, which cannot be ascribed to the arts of popular vanity, attest the ancient residence of the Goths in the countries beyond the Baltic. From the time of the geographer Ptolemy the southern part of Sweden seems to have continued in the possession of the same enterprising remnant of the nation, and a large territory is even at present divided into east and west Gotland. During the middle ages (from the ninth to the twelfth century) while Christianity was advancing with a slow progress into the North, the Goths and the Swedes composed two distinct and sometimes hostile members of the same monarchy. The latter of these two names has prevailed without extinguishing the former. The Swedes, who might well be satisfied with their own fame in arms, have, in every age, claimed the kindred glory of the Goths. In a movement of discontent against the court of Rome, Charles the Twelfth, in a matter of discontent against the court of Rome, Charles the Twelfth, incriminated, that his victorious troops were not degenerated from their brave ancestors, who had already subdued the mistress of the world.

Till the end of the eleventh century, a celebrated temple subsisted at Upal, the most considerable town of the Swedes and Goths. It was enriched with the gold which the Scandinavians had acquired in their piratical adventures, and sanctified by the uncouth representations of the three principal deities, the god of war, the goddess of generation, and the god of thunder. In the general festival, that was solemnized every ninth year, nine animals of every species (without excepting the human) were sacrificed, and their bleeding bodies suspended in the sacred grove adjacent to the temple. The only traces that now subsist of this barbaric superstition are contained in the Edda, a system of mythology, compiled in Iceland about the thirteenth century, and studied by the learned of Denmark and Sweden, as the most valuable remains of their ancient traditions.

Notwithstanding the mysterious visitations and obsequious of the Edda, we can usually distinguish two persons confounded under the name of Odín; the god of war, and the great legislator of Scandinavia. The latter, the Mahomet of the North, instituted a religion adapted to the climate and to the people. Numerous tribes on either side of the Baltic were subdued by the invincible valor of Odín, by his persuasive eloquence, and by the fame, which he acquired, of a most skilful magician. The faith that he had propagated, during a long and prosperous life, he confirmed by a voluntary death. Appropriate of the ignominious approach of disease and infirmity, he resolved to expire as became a warrior. In a solemn assembly of the Swedes and Goths, he wounded himself in nine mortal places, hastening away (as he asserted with his dying voice) to prepare the feast of heroes in the palace of the god of war.

The native and proper habitation of Odín is distinguished by the appellation of Asgård. The story is known by a resemblance of that mountain with Asberg, or Aasvåg, words of a similar signification, has given rise to an historical system of so pleasing a contexture, that we could almost wish to persuade ourselves of its truth. It is supposed that Odín was the chief of a tribe of barbarians which dwelt on the banks of the lake Mæris, till the fall of Mithridates and the arms of Pompey removed the North with servitude. That Odín, yielding with indignant fury to a power which he was unable to resist, conducted his tribe from the frontiers of the Asiatic Empire into Sweden, with the great design of burning, in that inaccessible retreat of freedom, a religion and a people, which, in same remote age, might be subservient to his immortal revenge; when his invincible Gods, armed with mortal fanaticism, should issue in numerous armies from the neighbourhood of the Polar circle, to chastise the oppressors of mankind.

Now therefore regarded that mountain as the chief amongst the Ases, their History of Scandinavia, vol. 2. p. 125. 2 See in the Prolongation of Göttlingius a fine specimen from the Aberg, or Asvåg, or Aasvåg, the name of the mountain, which is Aasberg in the old Gothic authors. In the Edda, Óðinn. 3 See in the Prolongation of Göttlingius a fine specimen from the Aberg, or Asvåg, or Aasvåg, the name of the mountain, which is Aasberg in the old Gothic authors. In the Edda, Óðinn. 4 See in the Prolongation of Göttlingius a fine specimen from the Aberg, or Asvåg, or Aasvåg, the name of the mountain, which is Aasberg in the old Gothic authors. In the Edda, Óðinn. 5 See in the Prolongation of Göttlingius a fine specimen from the Aberg, or Asvåg, or Aasvåg, the name of the mountain, which is Aasberg in the old Gothic authors. In the Edda, Óðinn. 6 See in the Prolongation of Göttlingius a fine specimen from the Aberg, or Asvåg, or Aasvåg, the name of the mountain, which is Aasberg in the old Gothic authors. In the Edda, Óðinn. 7 See in the Prolongation of Göttlingius a fine specimen from the Aberg, or Asvåg, or Aasvåg, the name of the mountain, which is Aasberg in the old Gothic authors. In the Edda, Óðinn. 8 See in the Prolongation of Göttlingius a fine specimen from the Aberg, or Asvåg, or Aasvåg, the name of the mountain, which is Aasberg in the old Gothic authors. In the Edda, Óðinn. 9 See in the Prolongation of Göttlingius a fine specimen from the Aberg, or Asvåg, or Aasvåg, the name of the mountain, which is Aasberg in the old Gothic authors. In the Edda, Óðinn. 10 See in the Prolongation of Göttlingius a fine specimen from the Aberg, or Asvåg, or Aasvåg, the name of the mountain, which is Aasberg in the old Gothic authors. In the Edda, Óðinn. 11 See in the Prolongation of Göttlingius a fine specimen from the Aberg, or Asvåg, or Aasvåg, the name of the mountain, which is Aasberg in the old Gothic authors. In the Edda, Óðinn. 12 See in the Prolongation of Göttlingius a fine specimen from the Aberg, or Asvåg, or Aasvåg, the name of the mountain, which is Aasberg in the old Gothic authors. In the Edda, Óðinn. 13 See in the Prolongation of Göttlingius a fine specimen from the Aberg, or Asvåg, or Aasvåg, the name of the mountain, which is Aasberg in the old Gothic authors. In the Edda, Óðinn. 14 See in the Prolongation of Göttlingius a fine specimen from the Aberg, or Asvåg, or Aasvåg, the name of the mountain, which is Aasberg in the old Gothic authors. In the Edda, Óðinn.
If so many successive generations of Goths were capable of preserving a faint tradition of their Scandinavian origin, they must not expect, from such unlettered barbarians, any distinct account of the time and circumstances of their emigration.

To cross the Baltic was an easy and natural attempt. The inhabitants of Sweden were masters of a sufficient number of large vessels, with oars, and the distance is little more than one hundred miles from Carlacrona to the nearest ports of Pomerania and Prussia. Hence, at length, we land on firm and historic ground.

At least as early as the Christian era, and as late as the age of the Antonines, the Goths were established towards the mouth of the Vistula, and in that fertile province where the commercial cities of Thorn, Elbing, Königsberg, and Danzig, were long afterwards founded.

Westward of the Goths, the numerous tribes of the Vandals were spread along the banks of the Oder, and the sea-coast of Pomerania and Mecklenburg. A striking resemblance of manners, complexion, religion, and language, seemed to indicate that the Vandals and the Goths were originally one great people. The latter appear to have been subdivided into Ostrogoths, Visigoths, and Grapinian. The distinction among the Vandals was more strongly marked by the independent names of Helveti, Burgundians, Lombards, and a variety of other petty states, many of which, in a future age, expanded themselves into powerful monarchies.

In the age of the Antonines, the Goths were still seated in Prussia. About the reign of Alexander Severus, the Roman province of Dacia had already experienced their proximity by frequent and destructive inroads.

In this interval, therefore, of about seventy years, we must place the second migration of the Goths from the Baltic to the Euxine; but the cause that produced it lies concealed among the various motives which actuate the conduct of unsettled barbarians. Either a chivalry, or a famine, a victory, or a defeat, an oracle of the gods, or the exequies of a daring leader, were sufficient to impel the Gothic army on the milder climates of the south. Besides the influence of a martial religion, the numbers and spirit of the Goths were equal to the most dangerous adventures. The use of round buckles and short swords rendered them formidable in a close engagement; the many

obedience which they yielded to hairbreadth kings, gave uncommon union and stability to their councils; and the renowned Attila, the hero of that age, and the tenth successor of Theodoric, king of Italy, enforced, by the ascendant of personal merit, the prerequisites of his birth, which he derived from the Aryan or degem of the Gothic nation.

The fame of a great enterprise excited the bravest warriors from all the Vandalic states of Germany, many of whom were seen a few years afterward combing under the common standard of the Goths. The first motions of the auxiliaries carried them to the banks of the Danube, a river universally conceived by the ancients to be the southern branch of the Bosphorus. The windings of that great stream through the plains of Poland and Russia gave a direction to that line of march, and a constant supply of fresh water and pastureage to their numerous hordes of cattle. They followed the unknown course of the river, confident in their valour, and careless of whatever power might oppose their progress.

The Byzantines and the Vandalic were the first who presented themselves, and the honor of their youth, either from choice or compulsion, increased the Gothic army. The Byzan- tines dealt on the northern side of the Caucasus mountains; the immense tract of land that separated the Byzantines from the savages of Finland was possessed, or rather wanted, by the Vandals.

If we have some reason to believe that the first of these nations, which distinguished itself in the Macedonian war, and was afterwards divided into the formidable tribes of the Pecheni, the Harani, the Carpi, &c. derived its origin from the Germans. With better authority, a Sar- matian extraction may be assigned to the Vandalic, who rendered themselves so famous in the middle ages. But the confusion of blood and manners on that doubtful frontier often perplexed the most accurate observer. As the Goths advanced near the Euxine Sea, they encountered a pure race of Sarmatians, the Jastyges, the Alani, and the Roxolani; and they were probably the first Germans who saw the mouths of the Bosporus, and of the Tanais. If we inquire into the characteristic marks of the people of Germany and of Sarmatia, we shall discover that those two great portions of human kind were principally distinguished by fixed hats or moveable tubs.
by a close dress, or flowing garments, by the marriage of one or of several wives, by a military force, consisting, for the most part, either of infantry or cavalry; and above all by the use of the Germanic language; the last of which has been diffused by conquest, from the confines of Italy to the neighbourhood of Japan.

The Goths were now in possession of the Ukraine, a country of considerable extent and uncommon fertility, intersected with navigable rivers, which, from either side, discharge themselves into the black sea; and interspersed with large and lofty forests of oak. The plenty of game and fish, the immemorial bee-hives, deposited in the hollows of old trees, and in the cavities of rocks, and forming, even in that rude age, a valuable branch of commerce, the size of the cattle, the temperature of the air, the optima of the soil for every species of grain, and the luxuriance of the vegetation, all displayed the liberality of Nature, and tempted the industry of man.60 But the Goths withstood all these temptations, and still adhered to a life of idleness, of poverty, and of rapine.

The Scythian hordes, which towards the east, bordered on the new settlements of the Goths, presented nothing to their arms, except the doubtful chance of an unprofitable victory. But the prosperity of the Roman territories was far more alluring; and the fields of Dacia were covered with rich harvests, won by the bands of an industrious, and exposed to be gathered by those of a warlike people. It is probable, that the conquests of Trajan, maintained by his successors, less for any real advantage, than for ideal dignity, had contributed to weaken the empire on that side. The new and unsettled province of Dacia was neither strong enough to resist, nor rich enough to satiate, the rapaciousness of the barbarians. As long as the remote banks of the Danube were considered as the boundary of the Roman power, the fortifications of the Lower Danube were more carefully guarded, and the inhabitants of Moesia lived in supine security, blindly conceiving themselves at an inaccessible distance from any barbarian invaders. The invasions of the Goths, under the reign of Philip, fatally convinced them of their mistake. The king, or leader, of that fierce nation, traversed with contempt the province of Dacia, and passed both the Niester and the Danube, without encountering any opposition capable of retarding his progress. The relaxed discipline of the Roman troops betrayed the most important posts, where they were stationed, and the fear of deserved punishment induced great numbers of them to enlist under the Gothic standard.

The various multitude of barbarians appeared at length, under the walls of Marcianopolis, a city built by Trajan in honour of his sister, and at that time the capital of the second Moesia.61 These inhabitants consented to ransom their lives and property, by the payment of a large sum of money, and the invaders retreated back into their deserts, animated rather than satisfied with the first success of their arms against an opulent but feeble country. Intelligence was soon transmitted to the emperor Decius, that Caesus, king of the Goths, had passed the Danube a second time, with more considerable forces; that his numerous detachments scattered devastation over the province of Moesia, whilst the main body of the army, consisting of seventy thousand Germans and Sarmatians, a force equal to the most daring achievements, required the presence of the Roman monarch, and the exertion of his military power.

Decius found the Goths engaged before Nicopolis, on the Jastros, one of the many monuments of Trajan's victories.62 On his approach they raised the siege, but with a design only of marching away to a conquest of greater importance, the siege of Philippopolis, a city of Thracia, founded by the father of Alexander, near the foot of Mount Haemon. Decius followed them through a difficult country, and by forced marches; but when he imagined himself at a considerable distance from the rear of the Goths, Caesus turned with rapid fury on his pursuers. The camp of the Romans was surprized and pillaged, and, for the first time, their emperor fled in disorder before a troupe of half-armed barbarians. After a long resistance, Philippopolis, destined to suc- ceed, was taken by storm. A hundred thousand persons are reported to have been massacred in the sack of that great city.63 Many prisoners of consequence became a valuable accession to the spoil; and Priscus, a brother of the late emperor Philip, was not to assume the purple under the protection of the last remains of Rome.64 The time, however, consequently in that tedious siege, enabled Decius to revive the courage, restore the discipline, and recruit the numbers of his troops. He intercepted several parties of Carpi, and other Germans, who were hastening to share the victory of their countrymen,65 intrusted the safety of the mountains to officers of approved valor and fidelity,66 repaired and strengthened the fortifications of the Danube,67 exerted his utmost vigilance to oppose either the progress or the retreat of the Goths. Encouraged by the return of fortune, he anxiously waited for an opportunity to retrieve, by a great and decisive blow, his own glory, and that of the Roman arms.68

60 Sertorio, H. P. 353, &c. 61 N. Y. 201. 62 Corn. C. 102. 63 Decius. 64 The first book of the national history of Rome. 65 Pris. 66 Tiberius, a. 39. 67 Corn. C. 102. 68 The first book of his history, written by the historian who is called N. Tiberius, 69 Tiberius, a. 39. 70 Corn. C. 102. 71 Scip. C. 44. 72 Mar. C. 26. 73 Scip. C. 44.
At the same time when Decius was struggling with the violence of the tempest, his mind, calm and deliberate amidst the tumult of war, investigated the more general causes, that, since the age of the Antonines, had so impetuously urged the decline of the Roman greatness. He soon discovered that it was impossible to reduce that greatness on a permanent basis, without restoring public virtue, ancient principles and manners, and the oppressed majesty of the laws. To execute this noble but arduous design, he first resolved to revive the obsolete office of censor; an office, which, as long as it had subsisted in its pristine integrity, had so much contributed to the perpetuity of the state, till it was usurped, and gradually neglected by the Censors. Conceiving that the favour of the sovereign may confer power, but that the esteem of the people can alone sustain authority, he submitted the choice of the censor to the unbiassed voice of the senate. By their unanimous votes, or rather acclamations, Valerian, who was afterwards emperor, and who then served with distinction in the army of Decius, was declared the most worthy of that exalted honour. As soon as the decree of the senate was transmitted to the emperor, he assembled a great council in his camp, and before the investiture of the censor elect, he apprized him of the difficulty and importance of his great office. "Happy Valerian," said the prince to his distinguished subject, "happy in the esteem of the senate and of the Roman republic! Accept the censorship with thankfulness; and judge of the advantages. You will select those who deserve to be continuators of the senate; you will restore the equitarian order; you will put an end to the ancient splendour; you will improve the senate, yet moderate the public burthens. You will distinguish into regular classes the various and infinite multitude of citizens, and accurately review the military strength, the wealth, the virtue, and the resources of Rome. Your decisions shall obtain the force of law. The army, the judges, the ministers of justice, and the great officers of the empire, are all subjects to your tribunal. None are exempted, excepting only the ordinary consuls, the prefect of the city, the king of the sacrifices, and (as long as she preserves her chastity inviolate) the eldest of the vestal virgins. Even these few, who may not dread the severity, will anxiously solicit the esteem, of the Roman censor."

A magistrate invested with such extensive powers, would have appeared not so much the minister as the colleague of his sovereign. Valerian justly dreaded an elevation so full of envy and of suspicion. He modestly urged the alarming greatness of the trust, his own insufficiency, and the incurable corruption of the times. He artfully insinuated that the office of censor was inseparable from the imperial dignity, and that the feeble hands of a subject were unequal to the support of such an immense weight of care and of power. The approaching event of so soon put an end to the prosecution of a project so spurious but so impracticable; and whilst it preserved Valerian from the danger, saved the emperor Decius from the disappointment, which would most probably have attended it. A censor may maintain, he can never restore, the mould of a state. It is impossible for such a magistrate to exert his authority with benefit, or even with effect, unless he be supported by a quick sense of honour and virtue in the minds of the people; by a decent reverence for the public opinion, and by a train of useful precepts consisting on the side of rational manners. In a state when these principles are annihilated, the temporal jurisdiction must either sink into empty pageantry, or be converted into a partial instrument of vexatious oppression. It was easier to vanquish the Goths than to cultivate the public virtue; yet, even in the first of these extremities, Decius lost his army and his life. The Goths were now, on every side, surrounded and pursued by the Roman arms. The flower of their troops had perished in the long siege of Philippopolis, and the exhausted country could no longer afford subsistence for the remaining multitude of licentious barbarians. Reduced to this extremity, the Goths would gladly have purchased, by the surrender of all their booty and prisoners, the permission of an undisturbed retreat. But the emperor, conscious of victory, and resolved, by the chastisement of these invaders, to strike a salutary terror into the nations of the north, refused to listen to any terms of accommodation. The high-spirited barbarians preferred death to slavery. An obscure town of Musis, called Forum Testudinum, was the scene of the battle. The Gothic army was drawn up in three lines, and, either from choice or accident, the front of the third line was covered by a morass. In the beginning of the action, the son of Decius, a youth of the fairest hopes, and already associated to the honours of the purple, was slain by an arrow, in the sight of his afflicted father; who, exclaiming all his fortitude, admonished the dismayed troops that the loss of a single soldier was of little importance to the republic. The conflict was terrible; it was the combat of despair against grief and rage. The first line of the Goths at length gave way in disorder; the second, advancing to sustain it, shewed its front and the third only remained entire, prepared to dispute the passage of the morass, which
was imprudently attempted by the presumption of the enemy. 49 Here the fortune of the day turned, and all things became adverse to the Romans: the place deep with care, sinking under those who stood, slippery to such as advanced; their armour heavy, the waters deep; nor could they withstand that unseemly situation of their weighty javelins. The barbarians, on the contrary, were surprised to encounter in the bogs, their personal skill, their spears long, such as could wound at a distance. 50 In this manner the Roman army, after an ineffectual struggle, was irrecoverably lost; nor could the body of the emperor ever be found. 51 Such was the fate of Decius in the fifth year of his age; an accomplished prince, active in war, and affable in peace; who, together with his son, has deserved to be compared, both in life and death, with the brightest examples of ancient virtue.

This fatal blow humbled, for a very little time, the insolence of the legions. They appear to have patiently expected, and submissively obeyed, the decree of the senate which regulated the succession to the throne. From a just regard for the memory of Decius, the Imperial title was conferred on Hostilius, his only surviving son; but an equal rank with the emirial power, was granted to Gallus, whose experience and ability seemed equal to the trusty guard of trust to the young prince and the dismembered empire. 52 The first care of the new emperor was to deliver the Illyrian provinces from the intolerable weight of the victorious Goths. He consented to leave in their hands the rich fruits of their invasion, an immense booty, and, what was still more disgraceful, a great number of prisoners of the highest merit, quality, and capacity. He plentifully supplied their camp with every convenience that could assuage their angry spirits, or facilitate their so much wished-for departure, and he even promised to pay them annually a large sum of gold; on condition they should never afterwards molest the Roman territories by their incursions. 53

In the age of the Scipios, the most illustrious kings of the earth, who courted the protection of the victorious commonwealth, were gratified with such trifling presents as could only derive a value from the hand that bestowed them; an ivory chair, a coarse garment of purple, an inexhaustible piece of plate, or, a quantity of copper coin. 54 After the wealth of nations had centred in Rome, the emperors displayed their greatness, and even their policy, by the regular exercise of a steady and moderate liberality towards the allies of the state. They relieved the poverty of the barbarians, honoured their merit, and compensated their fidelity. These voluntary marks of bounty were accompanied by the gifts of the sacred fire, not from the fear, but merely from the gratitude of the Romans; and whilst presents and subsidies were liberally distributed among friends and suppliants, they were sternly refused to such as claimed them as a debt. 55 But this stipulation, of an annual payment to a victorious enemy, appeared without disguise in the light of an ignominious tribute; the minds of the Romans were not yet accustomed to accept such unequal laws from a tribe of barbarians; and the prince, who by a necessary concession had probably saved his country, because the object of the general contempt and aversion. The death of Hostilius, though it happened in the midst of a raging pestilence, was interpreted as the personal crime of Gallus; 56 and even the defeat of the late emperor was ascribed by the voice of suspicion to the pernicious counsels of his hated successor. 57 The tranquillity which the empire enjoyed during the first year of his administration, 58 served rather to inflame than to appease the public discontent; and, as soon as the apprehensions of war were removed, the idleness of the peace waxed deep and more sensibly felt. But the Romans were irritated to a still higher degree, when they discovered that they had not even succeeded in curing their rapine, though at the expense of their honour. The dangers secret of the wealth and weakness of the empire had been revealed to the world. New swarms of barbarians, encouraged by the success, and not conceiving themselves bound by the obligation, of their brethren, spread devastation through the Illyrian provinces, and terror as far as the gates of Rome. The defence of the monarchy, which seemed abandoned by the pusillanimous emperor, was assumed by Gallus, governor of Illyricum and Macedonia; who called the scattered forces, and revived the fainting spirits of the troops. The barbarians were unexpectedly attacked, routed, chased, and pursued beyond the Danube. The victorious leader distributed as a drain the money collected for the tribute, and the acclamations of the soldiers proclamed him emperor on the field of battle. 59 Gallus, who, careless of the general welfare, indulged himself in the pleasures of Italy, was, in the same instant informed of the success of the revolt, and of the rapid approach of his aspiring lieutenant. He advanced to meet him as far as the plains of Spoleto. When the armies came in sight of each other, the soldiers of Gallus recognized the ignominious conduct of their sovereign with the glory of his rival. They admired the value of

---

48 A. Saffi, a Tuscan, and a primitive Father of theconsulta religion, was slain with 12,000 of the inhabitants of the town, in 632 B.C. (see Thucyd., v. 4.)
49 The division of the army was on the 20th of May; the battle was on the 25th of May (see Dio Cass. xi. 80; Arrian, I. 10; Zonaras, I. 25; Zosimus, I. 61; Pagi, i. 337.
50 See note: on the previous page.
51 The Danube was divided into the provinces of Lower Cesus, Upper Cesus, and the Sclavonica, and the provinces of the Scythi, the Helveticus, and the Longobardus, under the government of the emperors.
52 See note on the previous page.
53 See the number of the barbarians in the Minoi and Macedonians, and the tribes of the Illyrians, in the Roman Lafronia, p. 30; Dio Cass. xi. 80.
54 See note: on the previous page.
55 For the origin, see Antiquit. i. 33; and Plut. de Magn. Prob. xi. 10.
56 The Danilo, a Tausian, was slain on the 20th of May, in 632 B.C. (see Thucyd.)
57 See note: on the previous page.
58 For the origin, see Antiquit. i. 33; and Plut. de Magn. Prob. xi. 10.
59 The Danilo, a Tausian, was slain on the 20th of May, in 632 B.C. (see Thucyd.)
60 See note: on the previous page.
The Decline and Fall.

Chapter X.

Emilianus; they were attracted by his liberality, for he offered a considerable increase of pay to all deserters. 68 The murder of Gallus, and of his son Volusianus, put an end to the civil war; and the senate gave a legal sanction to the rights of conquest. The letters of Emilianus to that assembly displayed a mixture of moderation and vanity. He assured them, that he should resign to their wisdom the civil administration; and contending with himself the quality of their general, would in a short time assert the glory of Rome, and deliver the empire from all the barbarians both of the North and of the East. 69 His pride was flattered by the applause of the senate; and medals are still extant, representing him with the name and attributes of Hercules the Victor, and of Mars the Avenger. 70

If the new monarch possessed the personal character of his predecessors, he wanted the time, necessity, and opportunity to fulfill these splendid promises. Less than four months intervened between his victory and his fall. 71 He had vanquished Gallus: he sunk under the weight of a competitor more formidable than Gallius. That unfortunate prince had sent Valerian, already distinguished by the honourable title of censor, to bring the legions of Gaul and Germany to his aid. Valerian executed that commission with zeal and fidelity; and as he arrived too late to save his sovereign, he resolved to revenge him. The troops of Emilianus, who still lay encamped in the plains of Spoleto, were awed by the anarchy of his character, but much more by the superior strength of his army; and as they were now become an incapable of personal attachment, as they had always been of constitutional principle, they readily listened to their new hands in the blood of a prince who so lately had been the object of their partial choice. The guilt was theirs, but the advantage of it was Valerian's who obtained the possession of the throne by the means indeed of a civil war, but with a degree of innocence singular to that age of revolutions; for since he owed neither gratitude nor allegiance to his predecessor, whom he detested.

Valerian was about sixty years of age when he was invested with the purple, not by the caprice of the populace, or the clamours of the army, but by the unanimous voice of the Roman world. In his gradual ascent through the mazes of the state, he had deserved the favour of virtuous princes, and had declared himself the enemy of tyrants. His noble birth, his mild but unblemished manners, his learning, prudence, and experience, were revered by the senate and people; and if unoffending (according to the observation of an ancient writer) had been left at liberty to choose a master, their choice would have naturally fallen on Valerian. 72 Perhaps the merit of this emperor was inadequate to his reputation; perhaps his abilities, or at least his spirit, were affected by the languor and ennui of old age. The consciousness of his decline engaged him to share the throne with a younger and more active associate; 73 the emergency of the times demanded a general no less than a prince; and the experience of the Roman censor might have directed him where to look for the Imperial purple, as the reward of military merit. But instead of making a judicious choice, which would have confirmed his reign and endured his memory, Valerian, consulting only the dictates of affection or vanity, immediately invested with the supreme honours his son Gallienus, a youth whose effeminate Vice had been hitherto concealed by the obscurity of a private station. The joint government of the father and the son ministered about seven, and the sole administration of Gallienus continued about eight years. But the whole period was one uninterrupted series of confusion and calamity. As the Roman empire was at the same time, and on every side, attacked by the blind fury of foreign invaders, and the wild ambition of domestic usurpers, we shall consult order and perspicuity, by pursuing, not so much the double string of trains, as the more natural distribution of subjects. The most dangerous enemies of Rome, during the reigns of Valerian and Gallienus, were, 1. The Franks. 2. The Alamanni. 3. The Goths; and, 4. The Persians. Under these general appellations, we may comprehend the adventures of less considerable tribes, whose obscure and unofficious names would only serve to oppress the memory and perplex the attention of the reader.

1. As the posteriority of the Franks compose one of the greatest and most enlightened nations of Europe, the powers of learning and ingenuity have been exhausted in the discovery of their untitled ancestors. To the tales of credulity, have succeeded the systems of science. Every person has been sifted, every spot has been surveyed that might possibly reveal some faint traces of their origin. It has been supposed, that Prussia, 74 that Gaul, that the northern parts of Germany, 75 gave birth to that celebrated coterie of warriors. At length the most rational critics, rejecting the fictitious emigrations of ideal conquerors, have acquiesced in a sentiment which simplicity persuades us of its truth. They suppose that about the year two hundred and fifty, 76 a new confederacy was formed under the name of Franks, by the old inhabitants.

The Title of Emilianus from the army, and that of Augustus from the people, were scarcely two different honours. 77

Footnotes:
71. See our note of his assassination, ad ciit 11. 72. A.D. 253-260. 73. This is the opinion of the ancient historians, 74. Gallienus, ib. 7, 112. 75. Of course no more might be expected from a spirit of hesitancy; but to an ingenious genius of Lucilius.
76. The dispatched, the event of Terentius, p. s. 90. Com. in Prose, in the history of the Franks, and of the conquest of the Northern limit, Book iii, n 457-158. 77. Most probably under the reign of Gallienus, from an ancient determination only disputed by Fiedler at his time. 46, 2, 108-148.
the Lower Rhine and the Weser. The present circle of Westphalia, the latitudinarian of Hesse, and the dukedoms of Brunswick and Hanover, were the ancient seat of the Chaunus, who, in their inaccessible morsmes, defied the Roman arms; 71 of the Cherusci, proud of the fame of Arminius; of the Catti, formidable by their fierce and intrepid infantry; and of several other tribes of inferior power and renown. 72 The love of liberty was the ruling passion of these Germans; the enjoyment of it their best treasure; the word that expressed that enjoyment, the most pleasing to their ear. They revered, they avouched, they maintained the honourable epithet of Franks, or Freeman; which concealed, though it did not extinguish, the peculiar names of the several states of the confederacy. 73 Tacit consent, and mutual advantage, dictated the first laws of the union; it was gradually cemented by habit and experience. The league of the Franks may admit of some comparison with the Hesitean body; in which every canton, retaining its independent sovereignty, consults with its brethren in the common cause, without acknowledging the authority of any supreme head, or representative assembly. 74 But the principle of the two confederacies was extremely different. In a peace of two hundred years has rewarded the wise and honest policy of the Swiss. An intrepid spirit, the thirst of revenge, and a disregard to the mean ostentatious, disgraced the character of the Franks.

They revered, accorded the daring valour of the people of Lower Germany. The union of their strength threatened Gaul with a more formidable invasion, and required the support of Gallia, the heir and colleague of Imperial power. 75 Whilst that prince, and his infant son Soliman, displayed, in the court of Trier, the majesty of the empire, his armies were ably conducted by their general Posthumus, who, though he afterwards betrayed the family of Valerian, was ever faithful to the great interest of the monarchy. The tenacious language of panegyrics and encomia loudly announces a long series of victories. Trophies and titles assure (if such witlessness can attest) the fame of Posthumus, who is repeatedly styled The Conqueror of the Germans, and The Saviour of Gaul. 76

But a single fact, the only one indeed of which we have any distinct knowledge, leaves, in a great measure, these monuments of vanity and delusion. The Rhine, though dignified with the title of Safeguard of the Provinces, was an imperfect barrier against the daring spirit of enterprise with which the Franks were actuated. Their rapid devastations stretched from the river to the foot of the Pyrenees: nor were they stopped by those mountains. Spain, which had never dreaded, was unable to resist, the inroads of the Germans. During twelve years, the greatest part of the reign of Gallicanus, that opulent country, was the theatre of unequal and destructive hostilities. Terragena, the flourishing capital of a peaceful province, was sacked and almost destroyed; 77 and so late as the days of Odenatus, who wrote in the fifth century, wretched cottages, scattered amidst the ruins of magnificent cities, still recorded the rage of the barbarians. 78 When the exhausted country no longer supplied a variety of plunder, the Franks was forced on some vessels in the ports of Spain, 79 and transported themselves into Maurania. The distant province was astonished with the fury of these barbarians, who seemed to fall from a new world, as their name, masses, and complexion, were equally unknown on the coast of Africa.

II. In that part of Upper Saxony beyond the Elbe, 80 which is at present called the March of Lusatia, there existed, in ancient times, a sacred wood, the awful seat of the superstition of the Suevi. None were permitted to enter the holy precincts, without confining, by their servile bonds and subservient posture, the immediate presence of the sovereign Deity. 81 Patriotism contributed as well to consecrate the Saxonwald, or wood of the Saxonians. 82 It was universally believed, that the nation had received its first existence on that sacred spot. At stated periods, the numerous tribes who gloried in the Suevic blood resorted thither by their ambassadors; and the memory of their common extraction was perpetuated by barbaric rites and human sacrifices. The wide-extended name of Suevi filled the interior countries of Germany, from the banks of the Oder to those of the Danube. They were distinguished from the other Germans by their peculiar mode of dressing their long hair, which they gathered into a rude knot on the crown of the head; and they delight in an ornament that showed their mien more lofty and terrible in the eyes of the enemy. 83 Jealous, as the Germans were, of military renown, they all confessed the superior valour of the Suevi; and the tribes of the Ulpites and Tencteri, who, with a vast army, encountered the dictator Caesar, declared that they esteemed it not a disgrace to have first to a people, to whose arms the immortal gods themselves were unequal. 84

In the reign of the emperor Caracalla, an innumerable swarm of Suevi appeared on the banks of the Main, and in the neighbourhood of the Roman provinces, in quest either of food, of plunder, or
of glory. The haughty army of volunteers gradually condensed into a great and permanent nation, and, as it was composed from so many different tribes, assumed the name of Aleman, or All-men, to denote at once their various lineage, and their common bravery. The latter was soon felt by the Romans in many a hostile invasion. The Aleman fought chiefly on horseback; but their cavalry was rendered still more formidable by a mixture of light infantry, selected from the bravest and most active of the youth, whom frequent exercises had induced to accompany the horseman in the longest march, the most rapid charge, or the most precipitate retreat.

This warlike people of Germans had been astonished by the immense preparations of Alexander Severus, they were dismayed by the arms of his successor, a barbarian equal in valor and ferocity to themselves. But still hovering on the frontiers of the empire, they increased the general disorder that ensued after the death of Decius. They inflicted severe wounds on the rich provinces of Gaul; they were the first who removed the veil that covered the feeble majesty of Italy. A numerous body of the Aleman penetrated across the Danube, and through the Rhaetian Alps, into the plains of Lombardy, advanced as far as Ravenna, and displayed the victorious honors of barbarians almost in sight of Rome. The insult and the danger rekindled in the senate some spark of their ancient virtue. Both the emperors were engaged in distant wars, Valerian in the East, and Gallienus on the Rhine. All the hopes and resources of the Romans were in themselves. In this emergency, the senators resumed the defence of the republic, drew out the praetorian guards, who had been left to garrison the capital, and filled up their numbers by enlisting into the public service the stoutest and most willing of the plebeians. The Aleman, astonished by the sudden appearance of an army more numerous than their own, retired into Germany, taken with spoil; and their retreat was esteemed as a victory by the unwarlike Romans.

When Gallienus received the intelligence that his capital was besieged by the barbarians, he was much less delighted, than alarmed, with the courage of the senate: since it might one day prompt them to rescue the public from domestic tyranny, as well as from foreign invasion. His timid ingratitude was published to his subjects, in an edict, which prohibited the senators from exercising any military employment, and even from approaching the camps of the legions. But his fears were groundless. The rich and luxurious nobles, sinking into their natural character, accepted, as a favour, this disgraceful exemption from military service; and as long as they were indulged in the enjoyment of their baths, their theatres, and their villas, they cheerfully resigned the more dangerous care of empire to the rough hands of peasants and soldiers.

Another invasion of the Aleman, of a more formidable aspect, but more glorious event, is mentioned by a writer of the lower empire. Three hundred thousand of that warlike people are said to have been vanquished, in a battle near Milan, by Gallienus in person, at the head of only ten thousand Romans. We may however, with great probability, ascribe this incredible victory, either to the credulity of the historian, or to some exaggerated exploits of one of the emperor's lieutenants. It was by arms of a very different nature, that Gallienus endeavored to protect Italy from the fury of the Germans. He espoused Pipa the daughter of a king of the Marcomanni, a Suevian tribe, which was often confounded with the Aleman in their wars and conquests. To the father, as the price of his alliance, he granted an ample settlement in Pannonia. The native claims of unpolished beauty seem to have fixed the daughter in the affections of the inconstant emperor, and the bands of policy were more firmly connected by those of love. But the haughty prejudices of Rome still refused the name of marriage, to the profane mixture of a citizen and a barbarian; and has stigmatized the German princess with the opprobrious title of concubine of Gallienus.

III. We have already traced the emigration of the Goth from Scythia, or at least from Pannonia, to the north of the Borysthenes, and have followed their victorious army from the Borysthenes to the Danube. Under the reigns of Valerian and Gallienus, the frontier of the last-mentioned river was perpetually infested by the invasions of Germans and Saratians; but it was defended by the Romans with more than usual firmness and success. The provinces that were the seat of war, recruited the armies of Rome with an inextinguishable supply of hardy soldiers; and more than one of these Illyrian peasants attained the station, and displayed the abilities of a general. Though flying parties of the barbarians, who incessantly hovered on the banks of the Danube, penetrated sometimes to the confines of Italy and Macedonia; their progress was commonly checked, or their return intercepted, by the Imperial lieutenants. But the great strain of the Gothic hostilities was diverted into a very different channel. The Goths, in their new settlement of the Ukraine, soon became masters of the northern coast of the Euxine; to the south of that inland sea, were destined the soft and wealthy provinces of Asia Minor, which possessed all that could attract, and nothing that could resist, a barbarian conqueror.
The banks of the Euxine Sea are only sixty miles distant from the narrow entrance of the peninsula of Crimea Tartary, known to the ancients under the name of Chersonesus Taurica. On this inhospitable shore, Euphrates, embellishing with exquisite art the tales of antiquity, has pitched the scene of one of his most affecting tragedies. The bloody sacrifices of Diana, the arrival of Orestes and Pylades, and the triumph of virtue and religion over savage fierceness, serve to represent as historical truth, that the Tauri, the original inhabitants of the peninsula, were, in some degree, reclaimed from their brutal manners, by a gradual intercourse with the Greek colonies, which settled along the maritime coast. The little kingdom of Bosporus, whose capital was Sitium on the Straits, through which the Manes communicates itself to the Euxine, was composed of degenerate Greeks, and half-civilized barbarians. It subsisted, as an independent state, from the time of the Peloponnesian war, was at last swallowed up by the ambition of Mithridates, and, with the rest of his dominions, sunk under the weight of the Roman arms. From the reign of Augustus, the kings of Bosporus were the bundle, but not useless, allies of the empire. By presents, by arms, and by a slight fortification drawn across the Iambus, they effectually guarded against the roving plunderers of Sarmatia, the access of a country, which, from its peculiar situation and convenient harbours, commanded the Euxine Sea and Asia Minor. As long as the sceptre was possessed by a firm succession of kings, they acquitted themselves of their important charge with vigour and success. Domestic facts, and the fears, or private interest, of obscure usurpers, who/social on the vacant throne, admitted the Goths into the heart of Bosporus. With the acquisition of a superfluous waste of fertile soil, the conquerors obtained the command of a naval force, sufficient to transport their armies to the coast of Asia. The ships used in the navigation of the Euxine were of a very singular construction. They were slight flat-bottomed boats framed of timber only, without the least mixture of iron, and occasionally covered with a shelving roof, on the appearance of a tempest. In these floating houses, the Goths carelessly trusted themselves to the mercy of an unknown sea, under the command of sailors pressed into the service, and whose skill and fidelity were equally suspicions. But the hopes of plunder had hushed every idea of danger, and a natural fortitude of temper supplied in their minds the more rational confidence, which is the just result of knowledge and experience. Warriors of such a daring spirit must have often mured against the cowardice of their guides, who required the strongest assurances of a calm sea, before they would venture to embark; and would scarcely ever be tempted to lose sight of the land. Such, at least, is the practice of the modern Turks; and they are probably not inferior, in the art of navigation, to the ancient inhabitants of Bosporus.

The fleet of the Goths, leaving the coast of Cricasus on the left hand, first appeared before Pityus. The utmost limits of the Roman provinces, a city provided with a convenient port, and fortified with a strong wall. Here they met with a resistance more obstinate than they had reason to expect from the feeble garrison of a distant fortress. They were repulsed; and their disappointment seemed to diminish the terror of the Gothic name. As long as Successions, an officer of superior rank and merit, defended the frontier, all their efforts were ineffectual; but as soon as he was removed by Valerian to a more honourable but less important station, they resumed the attack of Pityus; and, by the destruction of that city, obliterated the memory of their former disgrace.

Circling round the eastern extremity of the Euxine Sea, the navigation from Pityus to Trebizond is about three hundred miles. The course of the Goths carried them in sight of the country of Cucubas, so famous by the expedition of the Argonauts; and they even attempted, though without success, to pillage a temple at the mouth of the river Phasis. Trebizond, celebrated in the retreat of the two thousand as an ancient colony of Croesus, derived its wealth and splendour from the munificence of the emperor Hadrian, who had constructed an artificial port on a coast left destitute by nature of secure harbours. The city was large and populous; a double enclosure of walls seemed to defy the fury of the Goths; and the usual garrison had been strengthened by a reinforcement of ten thousand men. But there are not any advantages capable of supplying the absence of discipline and vigilance. The numerous garrison of Trebizond, dissolved in riot and luxury, became reconciled to guard their impracticable fortifications. The Goths soon discovered the asinine negligence of the besieged, erected a lofty pile of fascines, ascended the walls in the silence of the night, and entered the defenceless city, armed in hand. A general massacre of the people ensued, whilst the affrighted soldiers escaped through the open gates of the town. The most holy temples, and the most splendid villas, were involved in a common destruction. The booty that fell into the hands of the Goths was immense; the wealth of the adjacent countries...

292. Succorin, i. 1. p. 83.
293. Brossard, i. ed. Turin, 1616. 47. - These were called Cassarines, or, rather, Cassarini, or Cassarini, the Saracens of the Euxine, or the Sarmatians of the Goths.
294. Brossard, i. ed. Turin, 1616. 47. - These were called Cassarines, or, rather, Cassarini, or Cassarini, the Saracens of the Euxine, or the Sarmatians of the Goths.
295. Antoninus Pius places the date of his reign at Daphne, or Perusa, in the provinces of Trebizond, or the Sea of Ponto.
296. Antoninus Pius places the date of his reign at Daphne, or Perusa, in the provinces of Trebizond, or the Sea of Ponto.
297. Antoninus Pius places the date of his reign at Daphne, or Perusa, in the provinces of Trebizond, or the Sea of Ponto.
had been deposited in Trebizond, as in a secure place of refuge. The number of captives was incredible, as the victorious barbarians ranged without opposition through the extensive province of Pontus. The rich spoils of Trebizond filled a great fleet of ships that had been found in the port. The robust youths of the sea-coast were chained to the oars; and the Goths, satisfied with the success of their first naval expedition, returned in triumph to their new establishments in the kingdom of Bosphorus.

The second expedition of the Goths was undertaken with greater powers of men and ships; but they steered a different course and, disbanding the exhausted provinces of Pontus, followed the western coast of the Euxine, passed before the wide mouths of the Borysthenes, the Niester, and the Dnestro, and increasing their fleet by the capture of a great number of fishing boats, they approached the narrow outlet through which the Euxine Sea pours its waters into the Mediterranean, and divides the continents of Europe and Asia. The garrison of Chalcodon was encamped near the temple of Jupiter Urinis, on a promontory that commanded the entrance of the strait; and so inconsiderable were the dreary invasions of the barbarians, that this body of troops surpassed in number the Gothic army. But it was in numbers alone that they surpassed it. They disported with precipitation their advantageous post, and abandoned the town of Chalcodon, most plentifully stored with arms and munition, to the discretion of the conquerors. Whilst they hesitated whether they should prefer the sea or land, Europe or Asia, for the scene of their hostilities, a perilous fugitive pointed out Nicomediana, once the capital of the kings of Bithynia, as a rich and easy conquest. He guided the march, which was only sixty miles from the camp of Chalcodon, directed the restless attack, and partook of the booty; for the Goths had learned sufficient policy to reward the traitor, whom they detested. Nice, Prusa, Apamea, Cius, cities that had sometimes rivalled, or imitated, the splendour of Nicomedea, were involved in the same calamity, which, in a few weeks, raged without control through the whole province of Bithynia. Three hundred years of peace, enjoyed by the soft inhabitants of Asia, had abolished the exercise of arms, and removed the apprehension of danger. The ancient walls were suffered to moulder away, and all the revenue of the most opulent cities was reserved for the construction of baths, temples, and theatres.

When the city of Cyzicus withstood the utmost effort of Mithridates, it was distinguished by wise laws, a naval power of two hundred galleys, and three arsenals, of arms, of military engines, and of corn. It was still the seat of wealth and luxury; but of its ancient strength nothing remained except the situation, in a little island of the Propontis, connected with the continent of Asia only by two bridges. From the recent sack of Prusa, the Goths advanced within eighteen miles of the city, which they had devoted to destruction; but the ruin of Cyzicus was delayed by a fortunate accident. The season was rainy, and the lake Aplonias, the reservoir of all the springs of Mount Olympus, rose to an uncommon height. The little river of Rhydacus, which issues from the lake, swelled into a broad and rapid stream, and stopped the progress of the Goths. Their retreat to the maritime city of Heraclea, where the fleet had probably been stationed, was attended by a long train of wagons, laden with the spoils of Bithynia, and was marked by the flames of Nice and Nicomedia, which they wantonly burnt.

Some obscure limits are mentioned of a doubtful combat that secured their retreat. But even a complete victory would have been of little moment, as the approach of the autumnal equinox summoned them to hasten their return. To navigate the Euxine before the month of May, or after that of September, is esteemed by the modern Turks the most unquestionable instance of rashness and folly.

When we are informed that the third fleet equipped by the Goths in the ports of Bosphorus, consisted of five hundred sail of ships, our ready imagination instantly composes and multiplies the formidable armament; but, as we are assured by the judicious Strabo, that the practical vessels used by the barbarians of Pontus and the Lower Scythia, were not capable of containing more than twenty-five or thirty men, we may safely affirm, that fifteen thousand warriors, at the most, embarked in this great expedition. Inpatient of the limits of the Euxine, they steer their destructive course from the Caspianian to the Taurian Bosphorus. When they had almost gained the middle of the Straits, they were suddenly driven back to the entrance of them; till a favourable wind, springing up the next day, carried them through in a few hours into the placid sea or rather lake, of the Propontis. Their landing on the little island of Cyzicus was attended with the ruin of that ancient and noble city. From thence issuing again through the narrow passage of the Hellespont, they pursued their winding navigation amidst the numeous islands scattered over the Archipelago, or the Egyptian Sea. The assistance of captives and slaves must have been very necessary to pilot their vessels, and to direct their various inclinations, as well on the coast of Greece as on that of Asia. At length the Gothic fleet anchored in the port of Pireus, five miles distant from...
Athena, which had attempted to make some preparations for a vigorous defense. Cleomedes, one of the engineers employed by the emperor's late Tetricus, to guard the maritime cities against the Goths, had already set to work to repair the ramparts and walls fallen to decay since the time of Sylla. The efforts of his skill were ineffectual, and the barbarians became masters of the native seat of the censors and the arts. But while the conquerors abandoned themselves to the licence of plunder and insensibility, their fleet, that lay with a slender guard in the harbour of Pireus, was unexpectedly attacked by the brave Diocletian, who, flying with the engineer Cleomedes from the sack of Athens, collected a lusty band of volunteers, possessors as well as soldiers, and in some measure avenged the calamities of his country.

But this exploit, whatever lustre it might shed on the declining age of Athens, served rather to irritate than to subsidize the undaunted spirit of the northern invaders. A general confusion burst out at the same time in every district of Greece. Thessalians and Argives, Corinth and Sparta, which had formerly waged such membraneous wars against each other, were now unable to bring an army into the field, or even to defend their ruined fortifications. The range of war, both by land and by sea, spread from the eastern point of Samnia to the western coast of Espous. The Goths already advanced within sight of Italy, when the approach of such imminent danger awakened the indolent Gallienus from his dream of pleasure. The emperor appeared in arms; and his presence seems to have checked the ardour, and to have divided the strength of the enemy.

Naulocharis, a chief of the Heruli, accepted an honourable capitulation, entered with a large body of his countrymen into the service of Rome, and was invested with the ornaments of the consulary dignity, which had never before been professed by the hands of a barbarian. Great numbers of the Goths, disgusted with the perils and hardships of a tedious voyage, broke into Musalia, with a design of forcing their way over the Danube to their settlements in the Ukraine. The wild attempt would have proved irresistible destruction, if the sword of the Roman generals had not opened to the barbarians the means of an escape. The small remainder of this destroying host returned on board their vessels: and measuring back their way through the Hellespont and the Bosphorus, raged in their passage the shores of Troy, whose fame, immortalized by Homer, will probably survive the memory of the Gothic conquests. As soon as they found themselves in safety within the basin of the Euxine, they landed at Anchialus in Thrace, near the foot of Mount Haemus; and, after all their toils, indulged themselves in the use of those pleasant

and salutary hot baths. What remained of the voyage was a short and easy navigation. Such was the various fate of the third and greatest of their naval enterprises. It may seem difficult to compute the number of fifty thousand warriors could sustain the losses and divisions of so bold an adventure. But as their numbers were gradually wasted by the sword, by shipwrecks, and by the influence of a warm climate, they were perpetually renewed by troops of landlitt and deserters, who flocked to the standard of plunder, and by a crowd of fugitive slaves, often of German or Sarmatian extraction, who eagerly seized the glorious opportunity of freedom and revenge. In these expeditions, the Gothic nation claimed a superior share of honour and danger; but the tribes that fought under the Gothic banners are sometimes distinguished and sometimes confounded in the imperfect histories of that age; and as the barbarian fleets seemed to issue from the mouth of the Tanais, the vague but familiar appellation of Scythians was frequently bestowed on the mixed multitude.

In the general calamities of mankind, the death of an individual, however exalted, the ruin of an edifice, however famous, are passed over with careless inattention. Yet we cannot forget that the temple of Diana at Ephesus, after having risen with increasing splendour from seven repeated misfortunes, was finally burnt by the Goths in their third naval invasion. The arts of Greece, and the wealth of Asia, had conspired to erect that sacred and magnificent structure. It was supported by an hundred and twenty-seven marble columns of the Ionic order. They were the gifts of devout monarchs, and each was sixty feet high. The altar was adorned with the masterly sculptures of Praxiteles, who had, perhaps, selected from the favourite legends of the place the birth of the divine children of Leto, the concealment of Apollo after the slaughter of the Cyclops, and the humility of Bacchus to the vanquished Amazons. Yet the height of the temple of Ephesus was only four hundred and twenty-five feet, about two-thirds of the measure of the church of St. Peter's at Rome. In the other dimensions, it was still more inferior to that sublime production of modern architecture. The spreading arms of a Christian cross require a much greater breadth than the oblong emplacements of the Pagans; and the boldest artist of antiquity had been startled at the proposal of raising in the temple a dome of the size and proportions of the pantheon. The temple of Diana was, however, admired as one of the wonders of the world. Successive empires, the Persian, the Macedonian, and the Roman, had revered its sanctity, and enriched its splendour. But the rude savages of the

H 3
The Decline and Fall

Chapter XI

The fall of Athens.

Baltimore were devoted to a taste for the elegant arts, and they despised the ideal terrors of a foreign superstition. 128

Another circumstance is related of these invasions, which might deserve our notice, were it not justly to be suspected, as the fanciful conceit of a recent sophist, we are told, that in the sack of Athens the Goths had collected all the libraries, and were on the point of setting fire to the funeral pile of Greek learning, but not one of their chieftains, much more prudent policy than his brethren, dissuaded them from the design; by the profound observation, that as long as the Greeks were addicted to the study of books, they would never apply themselves to the exercise of arms. 127 The sagacious counsellor (should the truth of the fact be admitted) reasoned like an ignorant barbarian. In the most polite and powerful nations, genius of every kind has displayed itself about the same period; and the age of science has generally been the age of military virtue and success.

IV. The new sovereigns of Persia, Artaxerxes and his son Sapor, had triumphed (as we have already seen) over the house of Arsaces. Of the many princes of that ancient race, Cissoros, king of Armenia, had alone preserved both his life and his independence. He defended himself by the natural strength of his country; by the perpetual resort of fugitives and malecontents; by the alliance of the Romans, and, above all, by his own courage. Invincible in arms, during a thirty years' war, he was at length assassinated by the emissaries of Sapor, king of Persia. The patriotic virtues of Armenia, which assailed the Macedons and dignity of the crown, implored the protection of Rome in favour of Tiridates the lawful heir. But the son of Cissoros was an infant; the allies were at a distance, and the Persian monarch advanced towards the frontiers at the head of an irresistible force. Young Tiridates, the future hope of his country, was saved by the fidelity of a servant, and Armenia continued above twenty years a reluctant province of the great monarchy of Persia. 131 Elated with this easy conquest, and presuming on the distresses of the provinces of the Romans, Sapor obliged the strong garrisons of Carches and Nisibis to surrender, and spread devastation and terror on either side of the Euphrates.

The loss of an important frontier, the ruin of a faithful and natural ally, and the rapid success of Sapor's ambition, affected Rome with a deep sense of the insult as well as of the danger. Valerian flattered himself, that the vigilance of his lieutenants would sufficiently provide for the safety of the Rhine and of the Danube; but he resolved, notwithstanding his advanced age, to march in person to the defence of the Euphrates. During

his progress through Asia Minor, the naval enterprises of the Goths were suspended, and the afflicted province enjoyed a transient and illusory calm. He passed the Euphrates, encountered the Persian monarch near the walls of Edessa, was vanquished, and taken prisoner by Sapor. The particulars of this great event are darkly and imperfectly represented; yet, by the glittering light which is affixed to us, we may discover a long series of imprudence, of errors, and of deserved misfortunes on the side of the Roman emperor. He repassed an implicit confidence in Macrianus, his praetorian prefect. 131 That worthless minister rendered his master formidable only to the oppressed subjects, and contemptible to the enemies of Rome. 132 By his weak or wicked counsels, the Imperial army was betrayed into a situation, where valour and military skill were equally unavailing. 133 The vigorous attempt of the Romans to cut their way through the Persian host was repulsed with great slaughter; 134 and Sapor, who encompassed the camp with superior numbers, patiently waited till the increasing rage of famine and pestilence had ensured his victory. The licentious avarice of the legions soon secured Valerian to the cause of their calamities; their judicious dispositions demanded an instant capitulation. An immense sum of gold was offered to purchase the permission of a disgraceful retreat. But the Persian, conscious of his superiority, refused the money with disdain; and detaining the deputies, advanced in order of battle to the foot of the Roman ramparts, and insisted on a personal conference with the emperor. Valerian was reduced to the necessity of intrusting his life and dignity to the faith of an emperor. The interview ended as it was natural to expect. The emperor was made a prisoner, and his astonished troops laid down their arms. 135 In such a scene of triumph, the pride and policy of Sapor prompted him to fill the vacant throne with a successor entirely dependent on his pleasure. Cyrusus, an obscure fugitive of Antioch, stained with every vice, was chosen to disfigure the Roman purple; and the will of the Persian victor could not fail of being ratified by the acclamations, however reluctant, of the captive army. 136

The imperial slave was eager to secure the favour of his master by an act of treason to his native country. He conducted Sapor over the Euphrates, and, by the way of Chalcis to the metropolis of the east. So rapid were the motions of the Persian cavalry, that, if we may credit a very judicious historian, 137 the city of Antioch was surprised when the idle multitude was fain to gaze on the amusements of the theatre. The splendid buildings of Antioch, private as well as public, were either pillaged or destroyed; and the

---

128 Thuc. vii. 57; Diod. xiv. 47.
129 Arrian, L. i. p. 313. Some an answer was perfectly against
130 Arrian, L. i. p. 806. such an event, which was perfectly against
131 Arrian, L. i. p. 337. some an answer was perfectly against
132 Livy, xxiv. 10. the historian.
133 Thuc. vii. 25, 27; Diod. xiv. 47.
134 An inscription of the Armenians, in the late the historian.
135 Arrian, L. i. p. 313. late the historian.
136 Arrian, L. i. p. 313. some an answer was perfectly against
137 Arrian, L. i. p. 313. the historian.
numerous inhabitants were put to the sword, or led away into captivity. The tide of devastation was stopped for a moment by the resolution of the high priest of Eusea. Arrayed in his sacred robe, he appeared at the head of a great body of fanatic peasants, armed only with clubs, and defended his god and his property from the sacrilegious hands of the followers of Zoroaster. But the rule of Taurus, and of many other cities, furnished a melancholy proof, that, except in this singular instance, the conquest of Syria and Cilicia scarcely interrupted the progress of the Persian arms. The advantages of the narrow passes of Mount Taurus were abandoned, in which an invader, whose principal force consisted in his cavalry, would have been engaged in a very unequal contest; and Sapor was permitted to form the siege of Caesarea, the capital of Cappodocia; a city, though of the second rank, which was supposed to contain four hundred thousand inhabitants. Demosthenes commanded in the place, not so much by the commission of the emperor, as in the voluntary defense of his country. For a long time he deferred its fate; and, when at last Cæsarea was beset by the p_location of a physician, he cut a man through the Persians, who had been ordered to effect their utmost diligence to take him alive. This heroic chief escaped the power of a foe, who might either have honored or punished his obstinate valor; but many thousands of his fellow-citizens were involved in a general massacre, and Sapor is accused of treating his prisoners with wanton and unremitting cruelty. Mich should undoubtedly be allowed for national animosity, much for humbled pride and impotent revenge; yet, upon the whole, it is certain, that the same prince, who, in Armenia, had displayed the mild aspect of a legislator, showed himself in the Romans under the stern features of a conqueror. He despaired of making any permanent establishment in the empire, and sought only to leave behind him a wasted desert, whilst he transported into Persia the people and the treasures of the provinces.

At the time when the East transmuted into a scene of war at the name of Sapor, he received a present not unworthy of the greatest kings; a long train of camels laden with the most rare and valuable merchandises. The rich offering was accompanied with an elegant, respectful but not servile, from Odnasimus, one of the noblest and most opulent senators of Palmyra. "Who is this Odnasimus," (said the haughty victor, and he commanded that the present should be cast into the Euphrates) "that he thus insolently presume to write to his lord? If he entertains a hope of mitigating his punishment, let him fall prostrate before the foot of our throne with his hands bound behind his back. Should he hesitate, swift destruction shall be poured on his head, on his whole race, and on his country," The desperate extremity to which the Palmyrenian was reduced, called into action all the latent powers of his soul. He met Sapor; but he met him in arms. Infusing his own spirit into a little army collected from the villages of Syria, and the tents of the desert, he hoisted round the Persian host, harassed their retreat, carried off part of the treasure, and what was dearer than any treasure, several of the women of the Great King, who was at last obliged to repulse the Euphrates with some marks of haste and confusion. By this exploit, Odenasitus laid the foundations of his future fame and fortunes. The majesty of Rome, oppressed by a Syrian or Arab of Palmyra. The voice of history, which is so often little more than the organ of hatred or flattery, reproaches Sapor with a proud abuse of the rights of conquest. We are told that Valerian, in chains, but invested with the imperial purple, was exposed to the multitude, a constant spectacle of fallen greatness; and that whenever the Persian monarch mounted on horseback, he placed his foot on the neck of a Roman emperor. Notwithstanding all the remonstrances of his allies, who repeatedly advised him to remember the riches and state of fortune, to dread the returning power of Rome, and to make his illustrious captive the pledge of peace, not the object of insult, Sapor still remained inflexible. When Valerian sunk under the weight of shame and grief, his skin, stuffed with straw, and formed into the likeness of a human figure, was preserved for ages in the most celebrated temple of Persia; a more real monument of triumph, than the fancied trophies of brass and marble so often erected by Roman vanity. The tale is sad and pathetic, but the truth of it may very fairly be called in question. The letters still extant from the princes of the East to Sapor, are manifest forgeries; nor is it natural to suppose that a jealous monarch should, even in the person of a rival, thus publicly degrade the majesty of kings. Whatever treatment the unfortunate Valerian might experience in Persia, it is at least certain, that the only emperor of Rome who had ever fallen into the hands of the enemy, languished away his life in hopeless captivity.

The emperor Gallienus, who had long supported with impatience the personal severity of his father and colleagues, regretted the intelligence of his misfortunes with secret pleasure and avowed indifference. "I knew that my father was a mortal," said he; and since he has acted as becomes a brave man, I am satisfied." Whilst Rome
lamented the fate of her sovereign, the savage coldness of his son was extolled by the servile courtiers, as the perfect firmness of a hero and a stoic. 112 It is difficult to point the things, the various, the inconstant character of Gallienus, which he displayed without constraint, as soon as he became sole possessor of the empire. In every act that he attempted, his lively genius enabled him to succeed; and as his genius was desolate of judgment, he attempted every art, except the important ones of war and government. He was a master of several curious but made sciences, a ready orator, and elegant poet, 113 a skilful gardener, an excellent cook, and most contemptible palace. When the great emergencies of the state required his presence and attention, he was engaged in conversation with the philosopher Plotinus; 114 wasting his time in trifling or insipid pleasures, preparing his initiation to the Grecian mysteries, or soliciting a place in the Asylum of Athens. His profuse magnificence insulted the general poverty; the solemn solemnity of his triumphs impressed a deeper sense of the public disgrace. 115 The repeated intelligence of invasions, defeats, and rebellions, he received with a calm smile; and struggling out, with affected contempt, some particular production of the lost provinces, he carelessly asked, whether Rome must be ruined, unless it was supplied with lines from Egypt, and Araxes cloth from Gaul? There were, however, a few short moments in the life of Gallienus, when, embarrassed by some recent injury, he suddenly appeared the intrepid soldier, and the cruel tyrant; till, satisfied with blood, and exulting by resistance, he insolently sunk into the natural mildness and indolence of his character. 116

At a time when the reins of government were held with so loose a hand, it is not surprising that a crowd of usurpers should start up in every province of the empire against the son of Valerian. It was probably some ingenious fancy, of comparing the thirty tyrants of Rome with the thirty tyrants of Athens, that induced the writers of the Augustan history to select that celebrated number, which has been gradually received into a popular appellation. 117 But in every light the parallel is idle and defective. What resemblance can we discover between a council of thirty persons, the united oppressors of a single city, and one uncertain list of independent rivals, who rose and fell in irregular succession through the extent of a vast empire? Now can the number of thirty be completed, unless we include

112 See his life in the Augustan History.
113 There is still extant a very pretty Emblemata, composed by Gallienus to the memory of his nephews.
114 See C. Justinus, lib. 10, ch. 1. App. 124, 125. In his time was the great school of Heliopolis, called a temple of Toth, and first consecrated by Solomon, and was afterwards a school of philosophy and mathematics. According to Scaliger, it was the same as the temple of Thoth at Hermopolis, and was called the temple of Toth, or of the Egyptian god Heliopolis. This temple was destroyed by Gallienus, as he was about to go in search of his son Carus, who was taken at Lyons by the Franks. The temple of Toth or Hermopolis, was, according to Strabo, a famous place, from the temple of Thoth, the great inventor of all arts and sciences. Gallienus was the last emperor that destroyed it, and it was never rebuilt. It is not unlikely that Gallienus was the last emperor that destroyed it, and it was never rebuilt. It is not unlikely that Gallienus was the last emperor that destroyed it, and it was never rebuilt.
115 The anecdotes of the Roman empire have been most entertaining. On a model of the French emperors, the story of Augus

in the account the women and children who were honoured with the imperial title. The reign of Gallienus, distracted as it was, produced only nineteen pretenders to the throne; Cyriacus, Macrianus, Balista, Oderathus, and Zenobia, in the east; in Gaul, and the western provinces, Posthumus, Lolliaius, Victorius and his mother Victoria, Marius, and Tetrius. In Illyricum and the confines of the Dalmatia, Ingenuus, Regillianus, and Aureolus; in Pontus; Saturninus, in Iberia, Trebellianus; Piso in Thessaly; Volans in Achaea; Mundilam in Egypt; and Caius in Africa. To illustrate the obscure monuments of the life and death of each individual, would prove a laborious task, alike barren of instruction and of amusement. We may content ourselves with investigating some general characters, that most strongly mark the condition of the times, and the manners of the men, their pretensions, their motives, their fate, and the destructive consequences of their usurpation. 118

It is sufficiently known, that the odious appellation of Tyrant was often employed by the ancients to express the illegal seizure of supreme power, without any reference to the name of it. Several of the pretenders, who raised the standard of rebellion against the emperor Gallienus, were shining models of virtue, and almost all possessed a considerable share of vigour and ability. Their merit had recommended them to the favour of Valerian, and gradually promoted them to the most important commands of the empire. The generals, who assumed the title of Augustus, were either respected by their troops for their able conduct and severe discipline, or admired for valour and success in war, or beloved for frankness and generosity. The field of victory was often the scene of their election; and even the armourer Marcus, the most contemptible of all the candidates for the purple, was distinguished, however contemptibles, matchless strength, and illustrious beauty. 119 His renown and recent trade cast indeed an air of ridicule on his elevation; but his birth could not be more obscure than was that of the greater part of his rivals, who were born of peasants, and enlisted in the army as private soldiers. In times of confusion, every active genius finds the place assigned him by nature; in a general state of war, military merit is the road to glory and to greatness. Of the nineteen tyrants, Tetrius only was a senator; Piso alone was a noble. The blood of Numa, through twenty-eight successive generations, ran in the
voins of Calphurnius Piso, who, by female alliances, claimed a right of exhibiting, in his house, the images of Crassus and of the great Pompey. His ancestors had been repeatedly dignified with all the honours which the commonwealth could bestow; and of all the ancient families of Rome, the Calphurnian alone had survived the tyranny of the Caesars. The personal qualities of Piso added new lustre to his race. The usurper Valens, by whose order he was killed, confessed, with deep remorse, that even an enemy ought to have respected the sanctity of Piso; and although he died in arms against Gallienus, the senate, with the emperor's generous permission, decreed the triumphal ornaments to the memory of so virtuous a rebel.

The lieutenants of Valerian were grateful to the father, whom they esteemed. They disdained to serve the luxurious indulgence of his unworthy son. The throne of the Roman world was unsupported by any principle of loyalty; and treason against each prince might easily be considered as patriotism to the state. Yet if we examine with candour the conduct of these usurpers, it will appear, that they were much oftener driven into rebellion by their fears, than urged to it by their ambition. They dreaded the cruel suspicions of Gallienus; they equally dreaded the precarious vicissitudes of their troops. If the dangerous favour of the army had imperiously declared them deserving of the purple, they were arrested for sure destruction; and such a submission would counsel them, to think with a just enjoyment of empire, and rather to try the fortune of war than to expect the hand of an executioner. When the clamour of the soldiers invested the reluctant victims with the ensigns of sovereign authority, they sometimes murmured in secret their approaching fate. "You have lost," said Saturninus, on the day of his elevation; "you have lost a useful commander, and you have made a very wretched emperor." 304

The apprehensions of Saturninus were justified by the repeated experience of revolutions. Of the nineteen tyrants who started up under the reign of Gallienus, there was not one who enjoyed a life of peace, or a natural death. As soon as they were invested with the bloody purple, they inspired their adherents with the same fears and ambition which had occasioned their own revolt. Encompassed with domestic conspiracy, military sedition, and civil war, they trembled on the edge of precipices, in which, after a longer or shorter term of anxiety, they were inevitably lost. These precarious monarchs received, however, such benefits, as the flattery of their respective armies and provinces could bestow; but their claim, based on rebellion, could never obtain the sanction of law or history. Italy, Rome, and the senate, constantly adhered to the cause of Gallienus, and he alone was considered as the sovereign of the empire. That prince condescended, indeed, to acknowledge the victorious arms of Odenathus, who deserved the honourable distinction by the respectful conduct which he always maintained towards the son of Valerian. With the general applause of the Romans, and the consent of Gallienus, the senate conferred the title of Augustus on the brave Palmyrenian; and seemed to intrust him with the government of the East, which he already possessed, in an independent manner, that, like a private succession, he bequeathed it to his illustrious widow Zozamia.

The rapid and perpetual transitions from the cottage to the throne, and from the throne to the grave, might have amused an indolent philosopher; were it possible for a philosopher to remain indifferent amidst the general calamities of human kind. The election of these precarious emperors, their power and their death, were equally destructive to their subjects and adherents. The price of their fatal elevation was instantly discharged to the troops by an immense issue, drawn from the bowels of the exhausted people. However virtuous was their character, however pure their intentions, they found themselves reduced to the hard necessity of supporting their usurpation by frequent acts of rapine and cruelty. When they fell, they involved armies and provinces in their fall. There is still extant a most savage mandate from Gallienus to one of his ministers, after the suppression of Ingenuus, who had assumed the purple in Illyricum. "It is not enough," says that soft but inhuman prince, "that you exterminate such as have appeared in arms; the crime of battle might have served me as effectually. The male sex of every age must be exterminated; provided that, in the execution of the children and old men, you can contrive means to save our reputation. Let every one die who has dropt an expression, who has entertained a thought against me, against me, the son of Valerian, the father and brother of so many princes. Remember that Ingenuus was made emperor to tear, kill, here in pieces. I write to you with my own hand, and would inspire you with my own feelings." 305 While the public faces of the state were dissipated in private quarrels, the defenceless provinces were exposed to every irracher. The bravest usurpers were compelled, by the perplexity of their situation, to conclude ignominious treaties with the common enemy, to purchase with oppression tributes the neutrality or services of the barbarians, and to introduce hostile and independent nations into the heart of the Roman monarchy. 306

Such were the barbarians, and such the

303 Procop. cap. xiv. p. 106. The emperor, in a council of gallicians, seems to have proposed the restoration of Gallienus.

304 Ibid. August. p. 106. The senate, constantly adhered to the cause of Gallienus, and be alone was considered as the sovereign of the empire. That prince condescended, indeed, to acknowledge the victorious arms of Odenathus, who deserved the honourable distinction by the respectful conduct which he always maintained towards the son of Valerian. With the general applause of the Romans, and the consent of Gallienus, the senate conferred the title of Augustus on the brave Palmyrenian; and seemed to intrust him with the government of the East, which he already possessed, in an independent manner, that, like a private succession, he bequeathed it to his illustrious widow Zozamia.

305 Memorabilia, cap. v. p. 105.

306 This revolution of the brave Palmyrenian was the most popular of all the white reigns. The birth of the son of Valerian at Rome, and Augustus to his name, is celebrated in the Gallic annals. The palace of Cocceius, the residence of Lucullus, was thrown into confusion by the storming of the palace of Ingenuus, the residence of Odenathus, at Palmyra, the palace of Gallienus, was also converted to the original use of a palace. Cæsar, having obtained the surname of the emperor, had a large palace on the Forum, which he demolished and the emperor, had a large palace on the Forum, which he demolished and exercised a very extensive civil sway. See Augustus, cap. xvi. and Claudian, Augustus, cap. viii.
tyranny, who, under the reigns of Valerian and Gallienus, dismembered the provinces, and reduced the empire to the lowest pitch of disgrace and ruin, from whence it seemed impossible that it should ever emerge. As far as the foreseeability of matters would permit, we have attempted to trace, with order and perspicuity, the general events of that calamitous period. There still remain some particular facts; I. The disasters of Sicily; II. The disasters of Alexandria; and, III. The rebellion of the Issurians, which may serve to reflect a strong light on the horrid picture.

I. Whosoever numerous troops of banditti, multiplied by success and impunity, publicly defy, instead of upholding the justice of their country, we may safely infer, that the excessive weakness of the government is felt and abused by the lowest ranks of the community. The situation of Sicily preserved it from the barbarians; nor could the disarmed provincials have supported an oppressor. The sufferings of that once flourishing and still fertile island, were inflicted by land and sea. A licentious crowd of slaves and peasants reign'd for a while over the plundered country, and renewed the memory of the servile wars of most ancient times. Devastations, of which the husbandman was either the victim or the accomplice, must have ruined the agriculture of Sicily; and as the principal estates were the property of the opulent senators of Rome, who often enclosoed within a farm the territory of an old republic, it is not improbable, that this private injury might affect the capital more deeply than all the conquests of the Galls or the Persians.

II. The foundation of Alexandria was a noble design, at once conceived and executed by the son of Philip. The beautiful and regular form of that great city, second only to Rome itself, comprehended a circumference of fifteen miles; 177 It was peopled by three hundred thousand free inhabitants, besides at least an equal number of slaves. 178 The lucrative trade of Arabia and India flowed through the port of Alexandria to the capital and provinces of the empire. Illness was unknown. Some were employed in blowing of glass, others in weaving of linen, others again manufacturing the papyrius. Either sex, and every age, was engaged in the pursuits of industry; nor did even the blind or the lame want occupations suited to their condition. 179 But the people of Alexandria, a various mixture of nations, united the vanity and inscrutability of the Greeks with the superstition and obstinacy of the Egyptians. The most villifying occasion, a transient scarcity of flesh or linters, the neglect of an accustomed satiation, a mistake of precedence in the public baths, or even a religious dispute, 180 were at any time sufficient to kindle a sedition among that vast multitude, whose resentment were furious and implacable. 181 After the captivity of Valerian and the insurrection of his son Hadrian, the authority of the laws, the Alexandrians abandoned themselves to the ungodly rage of their passions, and their unhappy country was the theatre of a civil war, which continued (with a few short and suspicious truces) above twelve years. 177 All intercourse was cut off between the several quarters of the afflicted city, every street was polluted with blood: every building of strength converted into a citadel; nor did the tumultuous bands of a considerable part of Alexandria, in one instance, suffer any difficulty in passing through the spacious and magnificent district of Bruchium, with its palaces and senate, the residence of the kings and philosophers of Egypt, as described, above a century afterwards, almost entirely reduced to its present state of dreary solitude.

III. The insurrection of the Issurians, who assumed the purple in Issuria, a petty province of Asia Minor, was attended with strange and memorable consequences. The pageant of royalty was soon destroyed by an officium of Gallienus; but his followers, despairing of money, resolved to shake off their allegiance, not only to the emperor, but to the empire, and subject itself to the savage manners, from which it had never perfectly been reclaimed. Their craggy rocks, a branch of the wide extended Taurus, protected their inaccessible retreat. The great potentates of Asia, like the monarchs of Carthage, did not consider that this was a fit place to introduce the civilization of the world into the uncultivated provinces of the empire. The Issurians, gradually extending their territory to the sea-coast, subdued the western and mountainous part of Cilicia, formerly the seat of those daring pirates, against whom the republic had once been obliged to exert its utmost force, under the conduct of the great Pompey. 179

Our habits of thinking so fondly connect the order of the universe with the fate of man, that this gloomy period of history has been decorated with inundations, earthquakes, uncommon meteors, preternatural darkness, and a crowd of prodigies and formations, which often proved insufficient to restrain the invasions of these domestic foes. The Issurians, gradually extending their territory to the sea-coast, subdued the western and mountainous part of Cilicia, formerly the seat of those daring pirates, against whom the republic had once been obliged to exert its utmost force, under the conduct of the great Pompey. 179
the effect of scanty and unwholesome food. Other causes must, however, have contributed to the furious plague, which, from the year two hundred and fifty to the year two hundred and sixty-two, raged without intermission in every province, every city, and almost every family, of the Roman Empire. During some time five thousand persons died daily in Rome; and many towns, that had escaped the hands of the barbarians, were entirely depopulated.

We have the knowledge of a very curious circumstance, of some use perhaps in the melancholy calculation of human calamities. An exact register was kept at Alexandria of all the citizens entitled to receive the distribution of corn. It was found, that the ancient number of these comprised between the ages of forty and seventy, had been equal to the whole sum of claimants, from fourteen to fourscore years of age, who remained alive after the reign of Gallienus. Applying this authentic fact to the most correct tables of mortality, it evidently proves, that above half the people of Alexandria had perished; and could we venture to extend the analogy to the other provinces, we might suspect, that war, pestilence, and famine, had consumed, in a few years, the majority of the human species.

CHAP. XI.

Reign of Claudius. — Defeat of the Goths. —
Victories, Triumph, and Death of Aurelian.

Within the desolate reigns of Valerian and Gallienus, the empire was oppressed and almost destroyed by the soldiery, the tyrants, and the barbarians. It was saved by a series of great princes, who derived their obscure origin from the martial provinces of Illyricum. Within a period of about thirty years, Claudius, Aurelian, Probus, Diocletian, and his colleagues, triumphed over the foreign and domestic enemies of the state, re-established the military discipline, the strength of the frontiers, and deserved the glorious title of Restorers of the Roman world.

The removal of an efficient tyrant made way for a succession of good emperors. The indignation of the people impelled all their calamities to Gallienus, and the far greater part were, indeed, the consequence of his absolute power and careless administration. He was even destitute of a sense of honour, which so frequently supplies the absence of public virtue; and as long as he was permitted to enjoy the possessions of Italy, a victory of the barbarians, the loss of a province, or the rebellion of a general, seldom disturbed the tranquil course of his pleasures. At length, a considerable army, stationed on the Upper Danube, invested with the Imperial purple their leader Aureolus, who,

...
spirators, who had already agreed to place Claudius on the throne. On the first news of the emperor's death, the troops expressed some suspicion and resentment, till one was removed, and the other assuaged, by a donation of twenty pieces of gold to each soldier. They then ratified the election, and acknowledged the merit of their new sovereign. 3

Chap. X.

The obscurity which covered the origin of Claudius, though it was afterwards embellished by some flattering fictions, sufficiently betrays the meanness of his birth. We can only discover that he was a native of one of the provinces bordering on the Danube; that his youth was spent in arms, and that his modest valour attracted the favour and confidence of Decius. The senate and people already considered him as an excellent officer, equal to the most important trusts: and ensured the institution of Valerian, who suffered him to remain in the subordinate station of a tribune. But it was not long before that emperor distinguished the merit of Claudius, by declaring him general and chief of the Illyrian frontiers, with the command of all the troops in Thrace, Macedonia, Dacia, Pannonia, and Dalmatia, the appointments of the prefect of Egypt, the establishment of the supreme judicial power in Africa, and the supreme prospect of the consulship. By his victories over the Goths, he deserved from the senate the honour of a statue, and excited the jealous apprehensions of Gallienus. It was impossible that a soldier could esteem so disdained a sovereign, nor is it easy to conceal a just contempt. Some unguarded expressions which dropped from Claudius, were officially transmitted to the royal ear. The emperor's answer to an officer of confidence, describes in very lively colours his own character and that of the times. "There is not anything capable of giving me more serious concern, than the intelligence contained in your last dispatch: that some malicious suggestions have indisposed towards the mind of our friend and parent Claudius. As well regard your allegiance, use every means to oppose his resentment, but conduct your negotiation with secrecy; let it not reach the knowledge of the Dacian: troops: they are already provoked, and it might inflame their fury. I myself have sent him some presents; be it your care that he accept them with pleasure. Above all, let him not suspect that I am made acquainted with his imprudence. The fear of my anger might urge him to desperate counsels." 4 The presents which accompanied this humble epistle, in which the monarch solicited a reconciliation with his discontented subject, consisted of a considerable sum of money, a splendid wardrobe, and a valuable service of silver and gold plate. By such arts Gallienus softened the indignation and dispelled the fears of his Illyrian general; and, during the remainder of that reign, the formidable power of Claudius was always drawn in the cause of a monarch whom he despised. At last, indeed, he received from the emperors the bloody purple of Gallienus; but he had been absent from their court and counsels; and however he might applaud the deed, we may candidly presage that he was innocent of the knowledge of it. 5 When Claudius ascended the throne he was about fifty-five years of age. The siege of Milan was still continued, and Aurelius soon discovered that the success of his actions had only raised up a more determined adversary. He attempted to negotiate with Claudius a treaty of alliance and partition. "Tell him," replied the imperial emperor, "that such proposals should have been made to Gallienus: he, perhaps, might have listened to them with patience, and accepted a colon 6 league as desirable as himself." This stern refusal, and a last unsuccessful effort, obliged Aurelius to yield the city and himself to the discretion of the emperor. The judgment of the army pronounced him worthy of death, and Claudius, after a feeble resistance, consented to the execution of the sentence. Not was the zeal of the senate less ardent in the cause of their new sovereign. They ratified, perhaps with a sense of transport real, the election of Claudius; and as his predecessor had shown himself the personal enemy of their order, they exercised, under the name of justice, a severe revenge against his friends and family. The senate was permitted to discharge the ungrateful office of punishment, and the emperor reserved for himself the pleasure and merit of obtaining by his intercession a general act of indemnity. 7

Such ostentatious clemency discovers less of the real character of Claudius, than a trifling circumstance in which he seems to have consulted only the dictates of his heart. The frequent rebellions of the provinces had involved almost every person in the guilt of treason, almost every estate in the case of confiscation; and Gallienus often displayed his liberality by distributing among his officers the property of his subjects. On the accession of Claudius, an old woman threw herself at his feet, and complained that a general of the late emperor had obtained an arbitrary grant of her patrimony. This general was Claudius himself, who had not entirely escaped the contagion of the times. The emperor blushed at the reproach, but justified the confidence which she had reposed in his equity. The confession of his fault was accompanied with immediate and ample restitution. 8

1 Hist. Augus. p. 906. Gallienus declared the city, and several others, to be a duchy of the Germani, and made provisions for the payment of the army in the provinces of Thrace, Macedonia, Dacia, Pannonia, and Dalmatia, to discharge the lapses of the appointment of the prefect of Egypt, and establish the supreme authority which the senate and people granted him. From these sources, the emperor defrayed the expenses through the years.

2 The Senate, in 217, anno Domini, passed a law, by which Claudius acquired the name of "Augustus," but not the title of "Emperor." But I am mistaken in this particular of his reign.

3 There is some reason to believe the suspension of Claudius' appointment to the government of Thrace. The people indeed granted for the embellishment of their capital, more than 400,000 pounds; and some idea of the splendid desiderations of the period, may be inferred from the letters of Pliny the Younger, in which the emperor is frequently mentioned as the possessor of the province of Thrace, which was granted to him.

4 "The Senate, 217, anno Domini, passed a law, by which Claudius acquired the name of "Augustus," but not the title of "Emperor." But I am mistaken in this particular of his reign.

5 The Senate, in 217, anno Domini, passed a law, by which Claudius acquired the name of "Augustus," but not the title of "Emperor." But I am mistaken in this particular of his reign.

6 The Senate, in 217, anno Domini, passed a law, by which Claudius acquired the name of "Augustus," but not the title of "Emperor." But I am mistaken in this particular of his reign.

7 The Senate, in 217, anno Domini, passed a law, by which Claudius acquired the name of "Augustus," but not the title of "Emperor." But I am mistaken in this particular of his reign.

8 The Senate, in 217, anno Domini, passed a law, by which Claudius acquired the name of "Augustus," but not the title of "Emperor." But I am mistaken in this particular of his reign.
In the summer task which Claudius had undertaken, of restoring the empire to its ancient splendour, it was first necessary to revive among his troops a sense of order and obedience. With the authority of a veteran commander he represented to them, that the relaxation of discipline had introduced a long train of disorders, the effects of which were at length experienced by the soldiers themselves; that a people ruined by oppression, and insolent from despair, could no longer supply a numerous army with the means of luxury, or even of subsistence; that the danger of each individual had increased with the despotism of the military order, since princes who tremble on the throne will guard their safety by the instant sacrifice of every obnoxious subject. The emperor expatiated on the mischief of a lawless expanse which the soldiers could only gratify at the expense of their own blood; as their adoptions elections had so frequently been followed by civil wars, which consumed the flower of the legions either in the field of battle or in the cruel abuse of victory. He painted in the most lively colours the exhausted state of the treasury, the desolation of the provinces, the disgrace of the Roman name, and the insolent triumph of repulsive barbarians. It was against those barbarians, he declared, that he intended to paint the first effort of their arms. Tetricus might reign for a while over the West, and even Zozomia might preserve the dominion of the East. These usurpers were his personal adversaries; nor could he think of indulging any private resentment till he had saved an empire, whose impending ruin would, unless it was timely prevented, crush both the army and the people.

The various nations of Germany and Sarmatia, who fought under the Gothic standard, had already collected an armament more formidable than any which had yet issued from the Euxine. On the banks of the Niester, one of the great rivers that discharge themselves into that sea, they constructed a fleet of two thousand, or even of six thousand vessels; numbers which, however incredible they may seem, would have been insufficient to transport their sustained army of three hundred and twenty thousand barbarians. Whatever might be the real strength of the Gotths, the vigour and success of the expedition were not adequate to the greatness of the preparations. In their passage through the Beophs, the unskillful pilots were overpowered by the violence of the current; and while the multitude of their ships were crowded in a narrow channel, many were dashed against each other, or against the shore. The barbarians made several descents on the coasts both of Europe and Asia; but the open country was already plundered, and they were repulsed with shame and loss from the fortified cities which they assaulted. A spirit of discouragement and division arose in the fleet, and some of their chiefs sailed away towards the islands of Crete and Cyprus; but the main body, pursuing a more steady course, anchored at length near the foot of Mount Athos, and assaulted the city of Thessalonica, the wealthy capital of all the Macellonian provinces. Their attacks, in which they displayed a fierce but fruitless bravery, were soon interrupted by the rapid approach of Claudius, hastening to a scene of action that deserved the presence of a warlike prince at the head of the remaining powers of the empire. Impatient for battle, the Gotths immediately broke up their camp, relinquished the siege of Thessalonica, left their navy at the foot of Mount Athos, traversed the hills of Macedonia, and pressed forward to engage the last defence of Italy.

We still possess an original letter addressed by Claudius to the senate and people on this memorable occasion. "Consort fathers," says the emperor, "know that these three hundred and twenty thousand Gotths have invaded the Roman territory. O if I vanquish them, your gratitude will reward my services. Should I fall, remember that I was the successor of Gallienus. The whole republic is resigned and exhausted. We shall fight after Valerian, after Eugenius, Regillius, Lellisas, posthumous, Celos, and a thousand others, whom a just contempt for Gallienus provoked into rebellion. We are in want of darts, of spears, and of shields. The strength of the empire, Gaul, and Spain, areasuryed by Tetricus and we blush to acknowledge that the archives of the East serve under the banners of Zenobius. Whatever we shall perform, will be sufficiently great." The melancholy firmness of this epistle announces a hero careless of his fate, conscious of his danger, but still deriving a well-grounded hope from the resources of his own mind.

The event surpassed his own expectations and those of the world. By the most signal victories he delivered the empire from this host of barbarians, and was distinguished by posthorses under the glorious appellation of the Gothic Claudius. The imperfect historians of an irregular war do not enable us to describe the scene and circumstances of his exploits; but, if we could be indulged in the allusion, we might distribute into three acts this memorable tragedy. I. The decisive battle was fought near Naisius, a city of Dardania. The legions at first gave way, oppressed by numbers, and dismayed by misfortunes. Their ruin was inevitable, had not the abilities of their emperor prepared a reasonable relief. A large detachment rising out of the secret and difficult passes of the mountains, which, by his order, they had occupied, suddenly assailed the rear of the victorious Gotths. The favourable instant was improved by the activity of Claudius. He revived the courage of his troops, restored their ranks, and pressed the barbarians on every side. Fifty thousand men are reported to have been slain in the battle of Naisius. Several large bodies of barbarians, covering their retreat with a moveable fortification of wagons, retired, or
rather escaped, from the field of slaughter.

II. We may presume that some insurmountable difficulty, the fatigue, perhaps, or the dissidence of the conquerors, prevented Claudius from completing in one day the destruction of the Goths. The war was diffused over the provinces of Marita, Thrace, and Macedonia, and its operations drove out into a variety of marches, surprises, and tumultuary engagements, as well by sea as by land. When the Romans suffered any loss, it was commonly occasioned by their own cowardice or rashness; but the superior talents of the emperor, his perfect knowledge of the country, and his judicious choice of measures as well as officers, assured, in most occasions, the success of his arms. The immense booty, the fruit of so many victories, consisted for the greater part of cattle and slaves. A select body of the Gothic youth was received among the imperial troops; the remainder was sold into servitude; and so considerable was the number of female captives, that every soldier obtained to his share two or three women. A circumstance from which we may conclude, that the invaders entertained some designs of settlement as well as of plunder, since even in a naval expedition they were accompanied by their families. III. The loss of their fleet, which was either taken or sunk, had interrupted the retreat of the Goths. A vast circle of Roman ports, distributed with skill, supported with firmness, and gradually closing towards a common centre, forced the barbarians into the most inaccessible parts of Mount Haemus, where they found a safe refuge, but a very scanty subsistence. During the course of a rigorous winter, in which they were besieged by the emperor's troops, famine and pestilence, desertion and the sword, continually diminished the imprisoned multitude. On the return of spring, nothing appeared in arms except a hardy and desperate band, the remnant of that mighty host which had embarked at the mouth of the Niester.

The pestilence which swept away such numbers of the barbarians at a length proved fatal to their conquerors. After a short but glorious reign of two years, Claudius expired at Sirmium, amidst the tears and acclamations of his subjects. In his last illness, he conveyed the principal officers of the state and army, and in their presence recommended Aurelius, one of his generals, as the most deserving of the throne, and the best qualified to execute the grand design which he himself had been permitted only to undertake. The virtues of Claudius, his valor, affability, justice, and temperance, his love of fame and of his country, place him in that short list of emperors who added lustre to the Roman purple. These virtues, however, were celebrated with peculiar eclat and complemancy by the courtly writers of the age of Constantine, who was the great-grandson of Crispus, the elder brother of Claudius. The voice of flattery was soon taught to report that the gods, who so lustily had sustained Claudius from the earth, rewarded his merit and piety by the perpetual establishment of the empire in his family.15

Notwithstanding these oracles, the greatness of the Flavian family (a name which it had pleased them to assume) was deferred above twenty years, and the elevation of Claudius occasioned the immediate ruin of his brother Quintilius, who possessed not sufficient moderation or courage to descend into the private station to which the patriotism of the late emperor had condemned him. Without delay or reflection, he assumed the purple at Aquileia, where he commanded a considerable force; and though his reign lasted only seventeen days, he had time to obtain the sanction of the senate, and to experience a portion of the troops. As soon as he was informed that the great army of the Danube had invested the well-known valour of Aurelius with imperial power, he sunk under the flame and smit of his rival; and ordering his reins to be opened, prudently withdrew himself from the unequal contest.16

The general design of this work will not permit us minutely to relate the actions of every emperor after he ascended the throne, much less to deduce the various fortunes of his private life. We shall only observe, that the father of Aurelius was a peasant of the territory of Sirmium, who occupied a small farm the property of Aurelius, a rich senator. His warlike son enlisted in the troops as a common soldier, successively rose to the rank of a centurion, a tribune, the prefect of a legion, the inspector of the camp, the general, and, as it was then called, the duke, of a frontier; and at length, during the Gothic war, exercised the important office of commander in chief of the empire. In every station he distinguished himself by matchless valour, rigid discipline, and successful conduct. He was invested with the consularship by the emperor Valerian, who styles him, in the pompous language of that age, the deliverer of Illyricum, the restorer of Gaul, and the rival of the Scipio. At the recommendation of Valerian, a senator of the highest rank and merit, Ulpius Crinitus, whose blood was derived from the same source as that of Trojan, adopted the Panonian peasant, gave him his daughter in marriage, and relieved with his ample fortunes the honourable poverty which Aurelius had preserved inviolate.17

The reigns of Aurelius lasted only four years and about nine months; but every instant of that short period was filled by some memorable achievement. He put an end to the Gothic war, classified the Germans who invaded Italy, recovered Gaul, Spain, and

---

15 According to Zonaras (ii. 311), Claudius, before his death, nominated him with the title, but this omission has in nature passed. 
16 See Tacitus (Hist. viii. 13), and the orations of Augustus, p. 132. 
17 The account given by Zonaras (ii. 311) is the more correct, though Zonaras (ii. 311) gives a more correct account, but it is a chapter of Augustus, p. 132. He describes the country of the Aurelians as the region of the Danube, in the presence of the emperor and his general staff. The Danube is a river of the Danube, in the province of the Danube, in the presence of the emperor and his general staff. The Danube is a river of the Danube, in the province of the Danube, in the presence of the emperor and his general staff. The Danube is a river of the Danube, in the province of the Danube, in the presence of the emperor and his general staff. The Danube is a river of the Danube, in the province of the Danube, in the presence of the emperor and his general staff. The Danube is a river of the Danube, in the province of the Danube, in the presence of the emperor and his general staff. The Danube is a river of the Danube, in the province of the Danube, in the presence of the emperor and his general staff. The Danube is a river of the Danube, in the province of the Danube, in the presence of the emperor and his general staff.
Britain out of the hands of Tetricus, and destroy-
ed the proud monarchy which Zenobia had erec-
ted in the East, on the ruins of the alllicted
empire.

His success led to another triumph for Aurelian, even to the most minute articles of discipline, which bestowed such uninterrupted success on his arms. His military regulations were contained in a very concise epistle to one of his inferior officers, who is commanded to observe them, as he wishes to become a tribune, or as he is disposed to live. "Gaming, drinking, and the arts of diversion, were severely prohibited. Aurelian expected that the soldiery should be modest, frugal, and laborious; that their armour should be constantly kept bright, their weapons sharp, their clothing and horses ready for immediate service; that they should live in their quarters with chastity and sobriety, without damaging the corn-fields, without stealing even a sheep, a

The public allowance, continues the emperor, is sufficient for their support; their wealth should be collected from the spoil of the enemy, not from the tears of the provincials." A single instance will serve to display the rigour, and even cruelty, of Aurelian. One of the soldiers had seduced the wife of his host. The guilty wretch was fastened to two trees forcibly drawn towards each other, and his limbs were torn aside by their sudden separation. A few such examples impressed a salutary consterna-
tion. The punishments of Aurelian were terrible; but he had seldom occasion to punish more than once the same offence. His own conduct gave a sanction to his laws, and the ambitious legions dreaded a chief who had learned to obey, and who was worthy to command.

The death of Claudius had revived the fainting spirit of the Goths. The Gothic troops which guarded the passes of mount Harma, and the banks of the Danube, had been drawn away by the apprehension of a civil war; and it seems probable that the remaining body of the Gothic and Vandalic tribes embraced the favourable opportunity, abandoned their settlements of the Ukraine, traversed the rivers, and swelled with new multitudes the destroying hosts of their countrymen. Their united numbers were at length encountered by Aurelian, and the bloody and doubtful conflict ended only with the approach of night. Exhausted by so many calamities, which they had mutually endured and inflicted during a twenty years' war, the Goths and the Romans consented to a lasting and beneficial treaty. It was earnestly solicited by the barbarians, and cheerfully ratified by the legions, as whose suffrage the prudence of Aurelian referred the decision of that important question. The Gothic nation engaged to supply the armies of Rome with a body of two thousand auxiliaries, consisting entirely of cavalry, and stipulated in return an undisturbed retreat, with a regular market as far as the Danube, provided by the emperor's care, but at their own expense. The treaty was observed with strict religious fidelity; and that with a party of five hundred men struggled from the camp in quest of plunder, the king of general of the barbarians commanded that the guilty leader should be apprehended and shot to death with darts, as a victim devoted to the sanctuary of their engagements. It is, however, not unlikely, that the prosecution of Aurelian, who had exacted as hostages the sons and daughters of the Gothic chiefs, contributed something to this pacific temper. The youths he trained in the exercise of arms, and near his own person: to the damsel he gave a liberal and Roman education; and by bestowing them in marriage on some of his principal officers, gradually introduced between the two nations the closest and most endearing connections.

But the most important condition of peace was understood rather than expressed in the treaty. Aurelian withdrew the Roman forces from Dacia, and tacitly relinquished that great province to the Goths and Vandals. His sudden judgment convinced him of the solid advantages, and taught him to despise the mundane disgrace, of thus contracting the frontiers of the monarchy. The Dacian subjects, removed from those distant possessions which they were unable to cultivate or defend, added strength and populousness to the southern side of the Danube. A fertile ter-

The old country of that name retained, however, a considerable number of its inhabitants, who dreaded rivalry more than a Gothic master.

These degenerate Romans continued to serve the empire, whose allegiance they had renounced, by introducing among their conquerors, the first notions of agriculture, the useful arts, and the conveniences of civilized life. An intercourse of commerce and language was gradually established between the opposite banks of the Danube; and after Dacia became an independent state, it often proved the firmest barrier of the empire against the invasions of the savages of the North. A sense of interest attached these new settled barbarians to the alliance of Rome, and a per-

19. Hist. Aug. p. 271. This passage must apply to the war of 287; it is common with military reports and vexations, which immediately followed the victory over Galerius. The success of the war was general, and all the Gothic invaders were captured by the Apennines. The latter customs were well cherished.
21. Dict. of Ear. L.-G. p. 132. Before the absolute conquests above the name of Vannucii. Aurelian received one of the

The emperor's letters to the provincials, who were once in alliance with the empire, and were now deprived of its privileges, were written in a manner which may be considered as a model of eloquence. Augustus: in the Academ. of Inscrip-
tions, 520, 523.
THE DECLINE AND FALL.

CHAP. XI.

While the vigorous and moderate conduct of Aurelian restored the Illyrian frontier, the nation of the Alemanni violated the conditions of peace, which either Gallienus had purchased, or Claudius had imposed, and, inflamed by their impatient youth, suddenly flew to arms. Forty thousand horse appeared in the field, and the numbers of the infantry doubled those of the cavalry. The first objects of their enmity were a few cities of the Illyrian frontier; but their hopes soon rising with success, the rapid march of the Alemanni traced a line of devastation from the Danube to the Po.

The emperor was almost at the same time informed of the insurrection, and of the retreat of the barbarians. Collecting an active body of troops, he marched with leisure and celerity along the skirts of the Hortumnian forest; and the Alemanni, laden with the spoil of Italy, arrived at the Danube, without suspecting that on the opposite bank, and in an advantageous post, a Roman army lay concealed and prepared to intercept their retreat. Aurelian indulged the fatal security of the barbarians, and permitted about half their forces to pass the river without disturbance and without precaution. Their situation and astonishment gave him an easy victory; his skilful conduct improved the advantage. Disposing the legions in a semicircular form, he advanced the two arms of the crescent across the Danube, and wheeling them on a sudden towards the centre, encircled the rear of the German host. The discomposed barbarians, on whose side they cast their eyes, beheld with despair, a wasted country, a deep and rapid stream, a victorious and implacable enemy.

Reduced to this distressed condition, the Alemanni no longer disliked to sue for peace. Aurelian received their ambassadors at the head of his camp, and with every circumstance of martial pomp that could display the greatness and discipline of Rome. The legions stood to their arms in well ordered ranks and awful silence. The principal commanders, distinguished by the insignia of their rank, appeared on horseback on either side of the Imperial throne. Behind the throne, the consecrated images of the emperor, and his predecessors, the golden eagles, and the various titles of the legions, engraved in letters of gold, were exalted in the air on lofty pikes covered with silver. When Aurelian assumed his seat, his manly grace and majestic figure immediately suggested the barbarians to revere the person as well as the purple of their conqueror. The ambassadors fell prostrate on the ground in silence. They were commanded as they were presented, and permitted to speak. By the assistance of interpreters they extenuated their parricide, magnified their exploits, expatiated on the virtues of fortune and the advantages of peace, and, with an ill-timed confidence, demanded a large subsidy, as the price of the alliance which they offered to the Romans. The answer of the emperor was stern and imperious. He treated their offer with contempt, and their demand with indignation, reproached the barbarians, that they were as ignorant of the arts of war as of the laws of peace, and finally dismissed them with the choice only of submitting to his unconditional mercy, or awaiting the utmost severity of his resentment. Aurelian had resigned a distant province to the Goths; but it was dangerous to trust or to pardon these perfidious barbarians, whose formidable power kept Italy itself in perpetual alarms.

Immediately after this conference, the Alemanni invaded the provinces of the Danube. It should seem that some unexpected emergency required the emperor's presence in Pannonia. He resolved on his return to the care of finishing the destruction of the Alemanni, either by the sword, or by the more pacific operation of famine. But an active despair has often triumphed over the indolent assurance of success. The barbarians, finding it impossible to traverse the Danube and the Roman camp, broke through the posts in their rear, which were more easily in front, strongly guarded, and with incredible dexterity, but by a different road, returned towards the mountains of Italy. Aurelian, who considered the war as totally extinguished, received the mortifying intelligence of the escape of the Alemanni, and of the ravage which they had already committed in the territory of Milan. The legions were commanded to follow, with as much expedition as their heavy baggage was capable of exerting, the rapid flight of an enemy, whose infantry and cavalry moved with almost equal swiftness. A few days afterwards the emperor himself marched to the relief of Italy, at the head of a chosen body of auxiliaries (among whom were the hostages and cavalry of the Vandals), and of all the prætorian guards who had served in the wars on the Danube.

As the light troops of the Alemanni had spread themselves from the Alps to the Apennines, their constant vigilance of Aurelian and his officers was exercised in the discovery, the attack, and the pursuit of the numerous detachments. Notwithstanding this dourous war, there considerable battles are mentioned, in which the principal forces of both armies were extensively engaged. The success was various. In the
first, fought near Placentia, the Romans received so severe a blow, that, according to the expression of a writer extremely partial to Aurelian, the immediate dissolution of the empire was apprehended. The crafty barbarians, who had lined the woods, suddenly attacked the legions in the dusk of the evening, and, it is most probable, after the fatigue and disorder of a long march. The fury of their charge was irresistible; but at length, after a dreadful slaughter, the patient firmness of the emperor rallied his troops, and restored, in some degree, the honour of his arms. The second battle was fought near Fano in Umbria; on the spot which, five hundred years before, had been fatal to the brother of Hannibal. Thus far the successful Germans had advanced along the Etruscan and Flaminian way, with a design of massacring the defenceless mistress of the world. But Aurelian, who, watchful for the safety of Rome, still hung on their rear, found in this place the decisive moment, of giving them a total and irretrievable defeat. The fying remnant of their host was exterminated in a third and last battle near Favia; and Italy was delivered from the insults of the Alamanni.

Fear has been the original parent of superstition, and every new calamity urges trembling mortals to deprecate the wrath of their invisible enemies. Though the best hope of the republic was in the valor and conduct of Aurelian, yet such was the public consternation, when the barbarians were hourly expected at the gates of Rome, that, by a decree of the senate, the Silvanian books were consulted. Even the emperor himself, from a motive either of religion or of policy, recommended this religious measure, shelled the tardiness of the senate, and offered to supply whatever expense, whatever animals, whatever captives of any nation, the gods should require. Notwithstanding this liberal offer, it does not appear that any human victims expiated with their blood the sins of the Roman people. The Silvanian books enjoined ceremonies of a more barbarous nature, processions of priests in white robes, attended by a chorus of youths and virgins; lustrations of the city and adjacent country; and sacrifices, whose powerful influence disabled the barbarians from passing the mystic ground on which they had been celebrated. However puerile in themselves, these superstitious acts were subservient to the success of the war; and, in the decisive battle of Fano, the Alamanni fancied they saw an army of spectres combating on the side of Aurelian, he received a real and effectual aid from this imaginative reinforcement.

But whatever confidence might be placed in ideal ramparts, the existence of the past, and the dread of the future, induced the Romans to construct fortifications of a greater and more substantial kind. The seven hills of Rome had been surrounded, by the successors of Romulus, with an ancient wall of more than thirteen miles. The vast enclosure may seem disproportioned to the strength and numbers of the infant state. But it was necessary to secure an ample extent of pasture and arable land, against the frequent and sudden incursions of the tribes of Latium, the perpetual enemies of the republic. With the progress of Roman greatness, the city and its inhabitants gradually increased, filled up the vacant space, pierced through the useless walls, covered the field of Mars, and on every side followed the public highways in long and beautiful suburbs.

The extent of the new walls, erected by Aurelian, and finished in the reign of Probus, was magnified by popular estimation to near fifty miles, but is reduced by accurate measurement to about twenty-one miles. It was a great but a meagre labour, for it was the capital betrayed the decline of the monarchy. The Romans of a more prosperous age, who trusted to the arms of the legions the safety of the frontier camps, were very far from entertaining a suspicion, that it would ever become necessary to fortify the seat of empire against the incursions of the barbarians.

The victory of Claudius over the Goths, and the success of Aurelian against the Alamanni, had already restored to the arms of Rome their ancient superiority over the barbarous nations of the North. To chastise domestic tyrants, and to reunite the dismembered parts of the empire, was a task reserved for the second of those warlike emperors. Though he was acknowledged by the senate and people, the frontiers of Italy, Africa, Illyricum, and Thrace, confined the limits of his reign. Gaul, Spain, and Britain, Egypt, Syria, and Asia Minor, were still possessed by two rebels, who alone, out of so numerous a list, had hitherto escaped the dangers of their situation; and to complete the ignominy of Rome, these rival thrones had been usurped by women.

A rapid succession of monarchs had arisen and fallen in the provinces of Gaul. The right virtues of Postumus served only to hasten his destruction. After suppressing a competitor, who had assumed the purple at Monza, he refused to gratify his troops with the plunder of the rebellious city; and, in the seventh year of his reign, became the victim of their disappointed avarice. The death of Victorinus, his friend and associate, was occasioned by a less worthy

43 The little town, or rather hamlet, of Muste was afterwards inhabited by a Christian bishop; and a bishop's palace still stands on the site of the village.
44 The inscriptions, which, after years of neglect, have been found on the burnt remains of the basilica.
45 The imperial ashes were burned in a barrel, according to the Roman custom.
46 See the Life of Postumus, by Zosimus, in his History, lib. ii. cap. 33.
47 See Postumus, &c. in Zosimus, lib. i. cap. 33.
48 For Aurelian's victory, see Vespasianum, lib. ii. cap. 34, 35, 36. Zosimus, lib. ii. cap. 35.
49 For Diocletian's death, see Zosimus, lib. iii. cap. 54, and Diodorus, iv. cap. 11, 22; and Suidas, s. v. Dicaleianus, s. v. Dicaleianus.
cause. The shining accomplishments of that prince were stained by a licentious passion, which he indulged in acts of violence, with too little regard to the laws of society, or even to those of love. He was slain at Cologne, by a conspiracy of jealous husbands, whose revenge would have appeared more justifiable, had they spared the innocents of his son. After the murder of so many valiant princes, it is somewhat remarkable, that a female for a long time controlled the fierce legions of Gaul, and still more singular, that she was the mother of the unfortunate Victorinus. The arts and treasures of Victoria enabled her successfully to place Marius and Tetricus on the throne, and to reign with a manly vigour under the name of those dependent emperors. Money of copper, of silver, and of gold, was coined in her name; she assumed the titles of Augusta and Mother of the Camps: her power ended only with her life; but her life was perhaps shortened by the ingratitude of Tetricus.

When, at the instigation of his ambitious patresas, Tetricus assumed the ensigns of royalty, he was governor of the peaceful province of Aquitaine, an employment suited to his character and education. He reigned four or five years over Gaul, Spain, and Britain, the slave and sovereign of a licentious army, whom he dreaded, and by whom he was despised. The valour and fortune of Aurelian at length opened the prospect of a deliverance. He ventured to disclose his melancholy situation, and conjured the emperor to hasten to the relief of his unhappy rival. Had this secret correspondence reached the ears of the soldiery, it would most probably have cost Tetricus his life; nor could he resign the sceptre of the West, without committing an act of treason against himself. He affected the appearances of a civil war, led his forces into the field against Aurelian, posted them in the most disadvantageous manner, betrayed his own counsels to the enemy, and with a few chosen friends deserted in the beginning of the action. The rebel legions, though disordered and dismayed by the unexpected treachery of their chief, defended themselves with desperate valour, till they were cut in pieces almost to a man, in this bloody and memorable battle, which was fought near Chalons in Champagne. The retreat of the irregular auxiliaries, Franks and Bataves, whom the conqueror soon compelled or persuaded to repose the Rhine, restored the general tranquillity, and the power of Aurelian was acknowledged from the confines of Antioch to the columns of Hercules.

As early as the reign of Claudius, the city of
troops. The success of Odenathus was in a great measure ascribed to her incomparable prudence and fortitude. Their splendid victories over the Great King, whom they twice pursued as far as the gates of Ctesiphon, laid the foundations of their united fame and power. The armies which they commanded and the provinces which they had saved, acknowledged not any other sovereigns than their invincible chiefs. The senate and people of Rome revered a stranger who had avgend his captive emperor, and even the irresponsible son of Valerian accepted Odenathus for his legitimate colleague.

After a successful expedition against the Gothic plunderers of Asia, the ancient Palmyrene prince returned to the city of Emesa in Syria. Invincible in war, he was there cut off by domestic treason, and his favourite amusement of hunting was the cause, or at least the occasion, of his death. His nephew, Maximus, presumed to start his javelin before that of his uncle; and though admonished of his error, repeated the same insolence. As a monarch, and as a sportman, Odenathus was provoked, took away his horse, a mark of ignomy among the barbarians, and chastised the rash youth by a short confinement.

A.D. 230. The offence was soon forgot, but the punishment was remembered; and Maximus, with a few daring associates, assassinated his uncle in the midst of a great entertainment. Herod, the son of Odenathus, though not of Zenobia, a young man of a soft and effeminate temper, was killed with his father. But Maximus obtained only the pleasure of revenge by this bloody deed. He had scarcely time to assume the title of Augustus, before he was assassicated by Zenobia to the memory of her husband.

With the assistance of his most faithful friends, she immediately filled the vacant throne, and governed with manly counsels Palmyra, Syria, and the East, above five years. By the death of Odenathus, that authority was at an end which the senate had grained him only as a personal distinction; but his martial virtues, distinguishing both the senate and Galileans, obliged one of the Roman generals, who were sent against her, to retreat into Europe, with the loss of his army and his reputation.

Instead of the little passions which so frequently perplex a female reign, the steady administration of Zenobia was guided by the most judicious maxims of policy. If it was expedient to pardon, she could calm her resentment; if it was necessary to punish, she could impose silence on the voice of pity. Her strict economy was accused of avarice; yet on every proper occasion she appeared magnificent and liberal. The neighbouring states of Arabia, Armenia, and Persia, dreaded her enmity, and solicited her alliance. To the dominions of Odenathus, which extended from the Euphrates to the frontiers of Bithynia, his widow added the inheritance of her ancestors, the populous and fertile kingdom of Egypt. The emperor Claudius acknowledged her merit, and was content, that, while he pursued the Gothic war, she should assert the dignity of the empire in the East. The conduct, however, of Zenobia was attended with some ambiguity; nor is it unlikely that she had conceived the design of erecting an independent and hostile monarchy. She blended with the popular manners of Roman princes the stately pomp of the court of Asia, and exacted from her subjects the same adoration that was paid to the successors of Cyrus. She bestowed on her three sons a Latin education, and often showed them to the troops adorned with the imperial purple. For herself, she reserved the diadem, with the splendid but doubtful title of Queen of the East.

When Aurelian passed over into Asia against an adversary whose sex was Aurelianus, A.D. 270, alone could render her an object of contempt, his presence restored obedience to the province of Bithynia, already shaken by the arms and intrigues of Zenobia. Advancing at the head of his legions, he accepted the submission of Ancyra, and was admitted into Tyana, after an obstinate siege, by the help of a pernicious citizen. The generous though force tempered of Aurelian abandoned the traitor to the rage of the soldiers: a superstitious reverence induced him to treat with humanity the countrymen of Apollonius the philosopher. But Antioch was deserted on his approach, till the emperor, by his salutary edicts, recalled the fugitives, and granted a general pardon to all who, from necessity rather than choice, had been engaged in the service of the Palmyrene Queen. The unexpected mildness of such a conduct reconciled the minds of the Syrians, and, as far as the gates of Emesa, the wishes of the people accorded the terror of his arms.

Zenobia would have ill deserved her reputation, had she inhensibly permitted the emperor of the West to approach within an hundred miles of her capital. The fate of the East was decided in two great battles; so similar in almost every circumstance, that we can scarcely distinguish them from each other, except by observing that the first was fought near Antioch, the second near Emesa. In both, the queen of Palmyra animado the armies by her presence, and devolved the execution of her orders on Zabulas, who had already signalled his military talents by the conquest of Egypt. The numerous forces of Zenobia consisted for the most part of light archers, and of heavy cavalry, clothed in

58 Hun. August. p. 132, 200. Zenobia, l. i. p. 38. Eusebius, l. vi. 5. The queen of Palmyra, when, in a fit of rage, she had written to Aurelian, that her husband's soldiers had been killed, is said to have added, "I have argued with you in the language of a shepherd, but I shall speak to you in the language of a queen." The queen Zenobia, in Hist. August. p. 217, mentions only the second.
complete soil. The Moorish and Ilyria-in of
Australians were unable to sustain the ponderous
charge of their antagonist. They fled in real
or affected disorder, engaged the Palmyrenians in
a laborious pursuit, harassed them by a
repetitive combat, and at length discomfited this
innocuous but inviolable body of cavalry.
The light infantry, in the mean time, when they had
exhausted their quivers, remaining without pro-
tection against a close onset, exposed their
naked sides to the swords of the legionaries.
Aurian had chosen these veteran troops, who were
usually stationed on the Upper Danube, and whose
valor had been severely tried in the
Alemannic war. After the defeat of Emaus,
Zenobia found it impossible to collect a third
army. As far as the frontier of Egypt, the
mambos subject to her empire had joined the
standard of the conqueror, who detached Probus,
the bravest of his generals, to possess himself of the
Egyptian provinces. Palmyra was the last
resource of the widow of Odesmanus. She
retired within the walls of her capital, made every
preparation for a vigorous resistance, and declared,
with the impudence of a heroine, that the
last moment of her reign and life should be
the same.

Amid the barren deserts of Arabia
Persiana, a few cultivated spots rise like
islands out of the sandy ocean. Even the name of
Tadmor, or Palmyra, by its signification in
the Syriac as well as in the Latin language,
denoted the multitude of palm trees which
adorned the shores and verdure to that temperate
region. The air was pure, and the soil, watered
by some innumerable springs, was capable of pro-
ducing fruit as well as corn. A place possessed
of such singular advantages, and situated at a
convenient distance between the Gulf of
Persia and the Mediterranean, was soon
frequented by the caravans which conveyed to the
nations of Europe a considerable part of the
rich commodities of India. Palmyra imme-
surably increased into an opulent and independent
city, and connecting the Roman and the Parthian
monarchies by the mutual convenience of commerce,
was suffered to observe an humble submission,
till at length, after the victory of Trajan, the
little republic sank into the bosom of Rome, and
flourished more than one hundred and fifty years
in the sublimity though honourable rank of a
colony. It was during that peaceful period, if
we may judge from a few remaining inscriptions,
that the wealthy Palmyrenians constructed those
temples, palaces, and palaces of Greek architecture,
whose ruins, scattered over an extent of
several miles, have deserved the curiosity of our
travellers. The elevation of Odesmanus and
Zenobia appeared to reflect new splendour on their
country, and Palmyra, for a while, stood
for the rival of Rome, but the competition
was fatal, and ages of prosperity were sacrificed
to a moment of glory.

In his march over the sandy desert
between Emaus and Palmyra, the
emperor Aurelian was perpetually harassed by
the Arabs; nor could be always defend his
army, and especially his baggage, from those
flying troops of active and daring robbers, who
watched the moment of surprise, and eluded the
slow pursuit of the legions. The siege of
Palmyra was an object far more difficult and
important, and the emperor, who, with success
vigor, pressed the attacks in person, was himself
wounded with a darts. "The Roman people,
"sah Aurelian, in an original letter,
"speak with contempt of the war which I am
"waging against a woman. They are ignorant
"both of the character and of the power of
"Zenobia. It is impossible to enumerate her
"warlike preparations, of stones, of arrows, and
"of every species of missile weapons. Every
"part of the wall is provided with two or three
"balista, and artificial fires are thrown from her
"military engines. The fear of punishment has
"aroused her with a desperate courage. Yet still
"I trust in the protecting deities of Rome, who
"have hitherto been favourable to all my undertakings." In doubt, however, of the
protection of the gods, and of the event of the
stage, Aurelian judged it more prudent to offer terms
of an advantageous capitulation; to the queen, a
splendid retreat; to the citizens, their ancient
privileges. His proposals were obstinately rejected,
and the refusal was accompanied with insult.

The firmness of Zenobia was sup-
pported by the hope, that in a very
short time famine would compel the
Roman army to repose the desert; and the
reasonable expectation that the kings of the East,
and particularly the Parthian monarch, would
arm in the defence of their most natural ally.
But fortunes and the perseverance of Aurelian
overcame every obstacle. The death of Sapor,
which happened about this time,74 (distressed
the counsels of Persia; and the imconsiderate
sacrifice that attempted to relieve Palmyra, was
early intercepted either by the arms or the
polity of the emperor. From every part of Syria
a regular succession of convos safely arrived in the
camp, which was increased by the return of
Probus with his victorious troops from the
conquest of Egypt. It was then that Zenobia
resolved to fly. She mounted the steed of her
dromedaries;76 and had already reached the
banks of the Euphrates, about sixty miles from
Palmyra, when she was overtaken by the
pursuit of Aurelian's light horse, seized,
and brought back a captive to the
foot of the emperor. Her captors saved afterwards

73 Xenophon, p. 424.
74 Also a very striking instance I have observed in Ireland
for the same good fortune.
75 Hist. Aug. p. 424. Eunuch, i. p. 70. Though the name in a recent time of Esculapius, the opinion is still of the
veneration of that good which is natural and proper in every
sense of the word. So also in the
422.
surrendered, and was treated with unexpected humanity. The arms, horses, and camels, with an immense treasure of gold, silver, silk, and precious stones, were all delivered to the conqueror, who, having only a garrison of six hundred archers, returned to Damascus, and employed some time in the distribution of rewards and punishments at the end of so memorable a war, which restored to the obedience of Rome those provinces that had renounced their allegiance since the captivity of Valerian.

When the Syrian queen was brought into the presence of Aurelian, he sternly asked her, How she had presumed to rise in arms against the emperor of Rome? The answer of Zenobia was a prudent mixture of respect and firmness. "Because I declined to consider as Roman emperor an Aurelian or a Gallienus. You alone I account knowledge as my conqueror and my sovereign."

But as female fortitude is commonly artificial, so it is seldom steady or consistent. The courage of Zenobia deserted her in the hour of trial; she trembled at the angry clamour of the soldiers, who called aloud for her immediate execution, forgot the generous despot of Osmara, which she had proposed as her model, and ignominiously purchased life by the sacrifice of her fame and her friends. It was to this counsel, which governed the weakness of her sex, that she implored the guilt of her obstinate resistance; it was on their heads that she directed the vengeance of the cruel Aurelian. The fate of Caesarea, who was included among the numerous and perhaps innocent victims of her fault, will survive that of the queen who betrayed, or the tyrant who condemned him. Genius and learning were incapable of moving a fierce and illiterate soldier, but they had served to elevate and adorn the soul of Longinus. Without uttering a complaint, he coldly followed the executioner, pitting his unhappy mistress, and bestowing comfort on his afflicted friends.24

Returning from the conquest of the East, Aurelian had already entered Europe from Asia, when he was provoked by the intelligence that the Palmyrenians had overthrown the governor and garrison which he had left among them, and again erected the standard of revolt. Without a moment's deliberation, he once more turned his face towards Syria. Antioch was alarmed by his rapid approach, and the helpless city of Palmyra felt the irresistible weight of his resentment. We have a letter of Aurelian himself, in which he acknowledges,25 that old men, women, children, and peasants, had been involved in that dreadful execution, which should have been confined to armed rebellion; and although his principal concern seems directed to the re-establishment of a temple of the Sun, he discovers some pity for the remnant of the Palmyrenians, to whom he grants the permission of rebuilding and inhabiting their city. But it is easier to destroy than to restore. The seat of commerce, of arts, and of Zenobia, gradually sunk into an obscure town, a trifling forlorn, and at length a miserable village. The present citizens of Palmyra, consisting of thirty or forty families, have erected their mud-cottages within the spacious court of a magnificent temple.

Another and a last labour still awaited the indefatigable Aurelian; to suppress a dangerous though obscure rebel, who, during the revolt of Palmyra, had arisen on the banks of the Nile. Firmus, the friend and ally, as he proudly styled himself, of Odenathus and Zenobia, was no more than a wealthy merchant of Egypt. In the course of his trade to India, he had formed very intimate connections with the Saracens and the Blasmyres, whose situation on either coast of the Red Sea gave them an easy introduction into the Upper Egypt. The Egyptians had consulted with the hope of freedom, and, at the head of their furious multitude, broken into the city of Alexandria, where he summoned the Imperial purple, coined money, published edicts, and raised an army, of which, as he validly boasted, he was the sole capable of maintaining from the tithe profits of his paper trade. Such troops were a feeble defence against the approach of Aurelian; and it seems almost unnecessary to relate, that Firmus was routed, taken, tortured, and put to death. Aurelian might now congratulate the senate, the people, and himself; that in little more than three years he had restored universal peace and order to the Roman world.26

Since the foundation of Rome, no general had more nobly deserved a triumph than Aurelian; nor was a triumph ever celebrated with superior pride and magnificence.27 The pomp was opened by twenty elephants, four royal tigers, and above two hundred of the most curious animals from every climate of the North, the East, and the South. They were followed by sixteen hundred gladiators, devoted to the cruel amusement of the amphitheatre. The wealth of Asia, the arms and ensigns of so many conquered nations, and the magnificent plate and wardrobe of the Syrian queen, were disposed in exact symmetry or aerial disorder. The ambassadors of the most remote parts of the earth, of Ethiopia, Arabia, Persia, Bactria, India, and China, all remarkables by their rich or singular dresses, displayed the fame and power of the Roman emperor, who exposed likewise to the public view the presents that he had received, and particularly a great number of crowns of gold, the offerings of grateful cities. The victories of Aurelian were attested by the long train of captives who reluctantly attended his triumph, Gothic, Vandal, Sarazimian, Alemanni, Franks, Gauls, Syrians, and Egyptians. Each people was distinguished by its peculiar inscription, and the title of Aemulus was bestowed on ten martial baronies of the Gothic

24 Fanny, p. 390.
25 A.D. 275.
26 A.D. 276.
27 A.D. 277.
motion who had been taken in arms. But every eye, disregarding the crowd of captives, was fixed on Emperor Tetricus and the Queen of the East. The former, as well as his son, to whom he had created Augusta, was dressed in Gallic tresses, a saffron tunic, and a robe of purple. The beauteous figure of Zenobia was confined by fetters of gold; a slave supported the gold chain which encircled her neck, and she almost fainted under the intolerable weight of jewels. She preceded on foot the magnificent chariot, in which she once hoped to enter the gates of Rome. It was followed by two other chariots, still more sumptuous, of Osmathus and of the Persian monarch. The triumphal car of Aurelian (it had formerly been used by a Gothic king) was drawn, on this memorable occasion, either by four stags or by four elephants. The most illustrious of the senate, the people, and the army, closed the solemn procession. Unfeigned joy, wonder, and gratitude, swelled the acclamations of the multitude; but the satisfaction of the senate was clouded by the appearance of Tetricus; nor could they suppress a a rising murmur, that the haughty emperor should thus expose to public indignity the person of a Roman and a magistrate.

But, however, in the treatment of his unfortunate rivals, Aurelian might indulge his pride, he believed towards them with a generous clemency, which was seldom exercised by the ancient conquerors. Princes who, without success, had defended their throne or freedom, were frequently strangled in prison, as soon as the triumphal pomp ascended the Capitol. These wearers, whose defeat had convicted of the crimes of treason, were permitted to spend their lives in affluence and honourable repose. The emperor presented Zenobia with an elegant villa at Tiber, or Tivoli; about twenty miles from the capital; the Syrian queen incessantly sunk into a Roman matron, her daughters married into noble families, and her race was not yet extinct in the fifth century. Tetricus and his son were reinstated in their rank and fortunes. They erected on the Capitol a magnificent palace, and as soon as it was finished, invited Aurelian to sup. On his entrance he was agreeably surprised with a picture which represented their singular history. They were delineated offering to the emperor a civic crown and the sceptre of Gaul, and again receiving at his hands the emblems of the senatorial dignity. The father was afterwards invested with the government of Lucania, and Aurelian, who soon admitted the abdicated monarch to his friendship and conversation, familiarly asked him, Whether it was not more desirable to administer a province of Italy, than to reign beyond the Alps? The son long continued a respectable member of the senate; nor was there any one of the Roman nobility more asserted by Aurelian, as well as by his successors.

So long and so various was the pomp of Aurelian's triumph, that although it opened with the dawn of day, the slow majesty of the procession ascended not the Capitol before the ninth hour; and it was already dark when the emperor returned to the palace. The festival was protracted by theatrical representations, the games of the circus, the hunting of wild beasts, contests of gladiators, and naval engagements. Liberal donations were distributed to the army and people, and several institutions, agreeable or beneficial to the city, contributed to perpetuate the glory of Aurelian. A considerable portion of his oriental spoil was consecrated to the gods of Rome, the Capitol, and every other temple, glittered with the offerings of his ostentatious plenty; and the temple of the Sun alone received above fifteen thousand pounds of gold. This last was a magnificent structure, erected by the emperor on the site of the Quirinal hill, and dedicated soon after the triumph to that deity whom Aurelian adored as the parent of his life and fortunes. Himself had been an inferior priestess in a chapel of the Sun; a peculiar devotion to the god of light, was a sentiment which the fortunate peasant imbued in his infancy; and every step of his elevation, every victory of his reign, fitted superination by gratitude.

The arms of Aurelian had vanquished the foreign and domestic enemies of the republic. We are assured, that, by his sagacious vigour, crimes and factions, mischievous arts and pernicious connivance, the luxuriant growth of a feeble and oppressive government, were extirpated throughout the Roman world. But if we attentively reflect how much swifter is the progress of corruption than its cure, and if we remember that the years abandoned to public disorders exceeded the months allotted to the martial reign of Aurelian, we must confess that a few short intervals of peace were insufficient for the arduous work of reformation. Even his attempt to restore the integrity of the coin, was opposed by a formidable insurrection. The emperor's exclamation breaks out in one of his private letters: "Surely," says he, "the gods have decreed that my life should be a perpetual warfare. A solution within the walls has just now given birth to a very serious civil war. The workmen of the mint, at the instigation of Felicitissimus, a slave to
thing less than the firm though secret conspiracy of those orders, of the authority of the first, the wealth of the second, and the arms of the third, could have displayed a strength capable of contending in battle with the veteran legions of the Danube, which, under the conduct of a martial sovereign, had achieved the conquest of the West and of the East.

Whatever was the cause or the object of this rebellion, imputed with so little probability to the workmen of the mint, Aurelian used his victory with unremitting vigilance. He was naturally of a severe disposition. A peasant and a soldier, his nerves yielded not easily to the impressions of sympathy, and he could sustain without emotion the sight of tortures and death. Trained from his earliest youth in the exercise of arms, he set too small a value on the life of a citizen, chastised by military execution the slightest offenses, and transferred the stern discipline of the camp into the civil administration of the laws. His love of justice often became a blind and furious passion; and whenever he deemed his own or the public safety endangered, he disregarded the rules of evidence, and the proportion of punishments. The unprovoked rebellion with which the Romans rewarded his services, exhausted his haughty spirit. The noblest families of the capital were involved in the guilt or suspicion of this dark conspiracy. A hasty spirit of revenge urged the bloody prosecution, and it proved fatal to one of the nephews of the emperor. The executioners (if we may use the expression of a contemporary poet) were festivities; the princes were crowded, and the unhappy senate lamented the death or absence of its most illustrious members. Nor was the pride of Aurelian less offensive to that assembly than his cruelty. Ignorant or impudent of the restraints of civil institutions, he disdained to hold his power by any other title than that of the sword, and governed by right of conquest an empire which he had saved and subdued.

It was observed by one of the most sagacious of the Roman princes, that the talents of his predecessor Aurelian were better suited to the command of an army, than to the government of an empire. Conscious of the character in which nature and experience had enabled him to excel, he again took the field a few months after his triumph. It was expedient to exercise the restless temper of the Legio X in some foreign war, and the Persian monarch, exulting in the shame of Valerian, still braved with impunity the retired majesty of Rome. At the head of an army, less formidable by its numbers than by its discipline and valour, the emperor advanced as far as the straits which divide Europe from Asia. He there experienced, that the most absolute power is a weak defence against the effects of despair. He had threat-
Such acknowledgments as gratitude could inspire they returned to the faithful armies of the republic, who entertained a just sense of the legal authority of the senate in the choice of an emperor. Yet, notwithstanding this flattering appeal, the most prudent of the assembly declined exposing their safety and dignity to the caprices of an armed multitude. The strength of the legions was, indeed, a pledge of their sincerity, since those who may command are seldom reduced to the necessity of disbanding; but could it naturally be expected, that a haughty repetition would correct the invertebrate habits of four score years? Should the soldiers relapse into their accustomed seditions, their insubordination might disgrace the majesty of the senate, and prove fatal to the object of its choice. Motives like these dictated the decree, by which the election of a new emperor was referred to the suffrage of the military order.

The contention that ensued is one of the most attested, but most improbable events in the history of mankind. The troops, as if united with the exercise of power, again conjured the senate to invest one of its own body with the imperial purple. The senate still persisted in its refusal; the army in its request. The reciprocal offer was pressed and rejected at least three times, and whilst the obstinate modesty of either party was resolved to receive a master from the hands of the other, eight months insensibly elapsed, an amazing partiality of tranquil anarchy, during which the Roman world remained without a sovereign, without a usurper, and without a sedition. The generals and magistrates appointed by Aurelian continued to execute their ordinary functions; and it is observed, that a procurnal of Asia was the only considerable person removed from his office in the whole course of the interregnum.

An event somewhat similar, but much less authentico, is supposed to have happened after the death of Romulus, who, in his life and character, bore some affinity with Aurelian. The throne was vacant during twelve months, till the election of a Sabine philosopher, and the public peace was guarded in the same manner, by the union of the several orders of the state. But, in the time of Numa and Romulus, the arms of the people were controlled by the authority of the patricians; and the balance of freedom was easily preserved in a small and virtuous community. The decline of the Roman state, far different from its infancy, was attended with every circumstance that could banish from an interregnum the prospect of subsistence and tranquility; an immense and tumultuous capital, a wide extent of empire, the erratic equality of despots, an array of four hundred thousand mercenaries, and the experience of frequent revolutions. Yet, notwithstanding all these temptations, the discipline and memory of Aurelian still restrained the seductive temper of the troops.
as well as the final ambition of their leaders. The fever of the legions maintained their stations on the banks of the Bosporus, and the imperial standard waved the less powerful camps of Rome and of the provinces. A generous though transient enthusiasm seemed to animate the military order; and we may hope that a few real patriots cultivated the returning friendship of the army and the senate, as the only expedient capable of restoring the republic to its ancient beauty and vigour.

On the twenty-fifth of September, near eight months after the murder of Aurelian, the consuls convened an assembly of the senate, and reported the hazardous and dangerous situation of the empire. He slightly intimated, that the precarious loyalty of the soldiers depended on the chance of any hour, and of every accident; but he represented, with the most convincing eloquence, the various dangers that might attend any farther delay in the choice of an emperor. Intelligence, he said, was already received, that the Germans had passed the Rhine, and occupied some of the strongest and most equable cities of Gaul. The ambition of the Persian king kept the East in perpetual alarms; Egypt, Africa, and Illyricum, were exposed to foreign and domestic arms; and the levity of Syria would prefer even a female sceptre to the sanctity of the Roman laws. The consuls then addressing himself to Tactitus, the first of the senators, required his opinion on the important subject of a proper candidate for the vacant throne.

Character of Tactitus.

If we can prefer personal merit to accidental greatness, we shall esteem the birth of Tactitus more truly noble than that of kings. He claimed his descent from the philosophical historian, whose writings will instruct the last generations of mankind. The senator Tactitus was then seventy-five years of age. The long period of his innocent life was adorned with wealth and honours. He had twice been invested with the consulary dignity, and enjoyed with elegance and salacity his ample patrimonies, of between two and three millionaries. The experience of so many princes, whom he had known or admired, from the vain follies of Elagabalus to the useful vigour of Aureliam, taught him to form a just estimate of the duties, the dangers, and the pretensions, of their subordinate station. From the assiduous study of his immortal ancestors, he derived the knowledge of the Roman constitution, and of human nature. The voice of the people had already named Tactitus as the citizen the most worthy of empire. The ungrateful rumour reached his ears, and induced him to seek the retirement of one of his villas in Campania. He had passed two months in the delightful privacy of Baiae, when he reluctantly obeyed the summons of the consuls to resume his honourable place in the senate, and to assist the republic with his counsels on this important occasion.

He arose to speak, when, from the hands of the house, he was saluted with the names of Augustus and Kupcer. "Tactitus Augustus, the gods preserve thee; we choose thee for our sovereign, to thy care we entrust the republic and the world. Accept the empire from the authority of the senate. It is due to thy rank, to thy conduct, to thy worthiness. As soon as the tumult of acclamations subsided, Tactitus attempted to decline the dangerous honour, and to express his wonder that they should elect age, a philosopher to sustain the martial vigour of Aurelian. "Are these limits, conscript fathers? Fitter to sustain the weight of senator, or to practice the exercises of the camp? The variety of climates, and the hardships of a military life, would soon oppress a feeble constitution, which subsists only by the most tender management. My exhausted strength scarcely enables me to discharge the duty of a senator; how insufficient would it prove to the arduous labours of war and government! Can you hope that the legions will respect a weak old man, whose days have been spent in the shade of peace and retirement? Can you desire that I should ever find reason to regret the favourable opinion of the senate?"  

The reluctance of Tactitus, and its not acceding might possibly be sincere, was encour- aged by the affectionate solemnity of the senate. Five hundred voices repeated at once, in eloquent confusion, that the greatest of the Roman princes, Numa, Trajan, Hadrian, and the Antonines, had ascended the throne in a very advanced season of life; that the mind, not the body, a sovereign, not a soldier, was the object of their choice; and that they expected from him more than to guide, by his wisdom, the valour of the legions. These pressing though humbler instances were seconded by a more regular oration of M. Fuscus Fuscionus, the next on the consular bench to Tactitus himself. He reminded the assembly of the evils which Rome had endured from the vices of base-minded and capricious youths; congratulated them on the elevation of a virtuous and experienced senator; and, with a manly, though perhaps a selfish, flourish, exhorted Tactitus to remember the reasons of his elevation, and to seek a successor, not in his own family, but in the republic. The speech of Fuscus Fuscionus was enforced by a general acclamation. The emperor elect submitted to the authority of his country, and received the voluntary homage of his equals. The judgment of the senate was confirmed by the consent of the Roman people, and of the senatorial guards.
The administration of Tacitus was not unworthy of his life and principles. A grateful servant of the senate, he considered that national council as the author, and himself as the subject, of the laws. He studied to heal the wounds which Imperial pride, civil discord, and military violence, had inflicted on the constitution, and to restore at least the image of the ancient republic, as it had been preserved by the policy of Augustus, and the virtues of Trajan and the Antonines. It may not be useless to recapitulate some of the most important prerogatives which the senate appeared to have regained by the election of Tacitus.

1. To invest one of their body, under the title of emperor, with the general command of the armies, and the government of the frontier provinces.

2. To determine the list, or, as it was then styled, the College of Consuls. They were twelve in number, who, in successive pairs, each, during the space of two months, filled the year, and represented the dignity of that ancient office. The authority of the senate, in the nomination of the consuls, was exercised with such independent freedom, that no regard was paid to an irregular request of the emperor in favour of his brother Florianus. 2 The senate, exclaimed Tacitus, with the honest transport of a patriot, we understand the character of a prince whom they have chosen.

3. To appoint the proconsuls and presidents of the provinces, and to confer on all the magistrates their civil jurisdiction.

4. To receive appeals, through the intermediate office of the prefect of the city, from all the tribunals of the empire.

5. To give force and validity, by their decrees, to such as they should approve of the emperor’s edicts.

6. To those several branches of authority we may add some inspection over the finances, since, even in the reign of Aurelian, it was in their power to divert a part of the revenues from the public service. 3

Circular epistles were sent, without delay, to all the principal cities of the empire, Tivernis, Milan, Aquileia, Thessalonica, Corinth, Athens, Antioch, Alexandria, and Carthage, to claim their obedience, and to inform them of the happy revolution which had restored the Roman senate to its ancient dignity. Two of these epistles are still extant. We likewise possess two very singular fragments of the private correspondence of the senators on this occasion. They discover the most excessive joy, and the most unbounded hopes. Cast away your indolence, it is thus that one of the senators addresses his friend, emerge from your retirements of Baiae and Puteoli. Give yourself to the city, to the senate. Rome flourishes, the whole republic flourishes. Thanks to the Roman army, to an army truly Roman; at length we have recovered our just authority, the end of all our desires. We hear appeals, we appoint proconsuls, we create emperors; perhaps too we may restrain them — to the wise a word is sufficient. 4

These lofty expectations were, however, soon disappointed; nor, indeed, was it possible that the armies and the provinces should long obey the luxurious and unwarlike nobles of Rome. On the slightest touch, the unsupplied fabric of their pride and power fell to the ground. The aspiring senate displayed an ardent lustre, blazed for a moment, and was extinguished for ever.

All that had yet passed at Rome was no more than a theatrical representation, unless it was ratified by the more substantial power of the legions. Leaving the senators to enjoy their dreams of freedom and ambition, Tacitus proceeded to the Thracian camp, and was there, by the praetorian prefect, presented to the assembled troops, at the prince whom they themselves had deposed, and whom the senate had bestowed. As soon as the prefect was silent, the emperor addressed himself to the soldiers with eloquence and propriety. He gratified their avarice by a liberal distribution of treasure, under the names of pay and donation. He engaged their esteem by a spirited declaration, that although his age might disable him from the performance of military exploits, his counsels should never be unworthy of a Roman general, the successor of the brave Aurelian. 5

Whilst the deceased emperor was making preparations for a second expedition against the sect, he had negotiated with the Alani, a Scythian people who pitched their tents in the neighbourhood of the lake Marmar. These barbarians, allured by presents and subsidies, had promised to invade Persia with a numerous body of light cavalry. They were faithful to their engagements; but when they arrived on the Roman frontier, Aurelian was already dead, the design of the Persian war was at least suspended, and the generals, who, during their interregnum, exercised a doubtful authority, were unprepared either to receive or to oppose them. Provoked by such treatment, which they considered as trifling and pernicious, the Alani had recourse to their own valour for their payment and revenge; and as they moved with the usual swiftness of Tartars, they had soon spread themselves over the provinces of Pontus, Cappadocia, Cilicia, and Galatia. The legions, who from the opposite shores of the Bosphorus could almost distinguish the flames of the cities and villages, impatiently urged their general to lead them against the invaders. The conduct of Tacitus was suitable to his age and station. He convinced the barbarians of the faith, as well as of the power, of the empire. Great numbers of the Alani, appeased by the junctural discharge of the engagements which Aurelian had contracted with them, relinquished their booty and captives, and quietly retreated to their own deserts, beyond the Phasis. Against the remainder, who refused peace, the Roman emperor waged, in
person, a successful war. Seconded by an army of brave and experienced veterans, in a few weeks he delivered the provinces of Asia from the terror of the Scythian invasion. But the glory and life of Tacitus were of short duration. Transferred, in the depth of winter, from the soft retirement of Campania to the foot of Mount Caucasus, he sunk under the unaccustomed hardships of a military life. The fatigues of the body were aggravated by the cares of the mind. For a while, the angry and selfish passions of the soldiers had been suspended by the enthusiasm of public virtue. They soon broke out with redoubled violence, and raged in the camp, and even in the tent, of the aged emperor. His mild and amiable character served only to inspire contempt, and he was incessantly importuned with factions which he could not assuage, and by demands which it was impossible to satisfy. Whatever flattering expectations he had conceived of reconciling the public disorders, Tacitus soon was convinced, that the licentiousness of the army disdained the feeble restraint of laws, and his last hour was hastened by anguish and disappointment. It may be doubtful whether the soldiers imbued their hands in the blood of this innocent prince. It is certain that their insolence was the cause of his death.

April 27.

He expired at Tyana in Cappadocia, after a reign of only six months, and about twenty days.

The eyes of Tacitus were scarcely closed, before his brother Florus was shown himself unworthy to reign, by the hasty usurpation of the purple, without expecting the approbation of the senate. The revenues for the Roman constitution, which yet influenced the camp and the provinces, was sufficiently strong to dispose them to esteem, but not to provoke them to oppose, the precipitate ambition of Florus. The discontent would have evaporated in idle murmurs, had not the general of the east, the heroic Probus, boldly declared himself the avenger of the senate. The contest, however, was still unequal; nor could the most able leader, at the head of the effeminate troops of Egypt and Syria, encounter, with any hope of victory, the legions of Europe, whose irresistible strength appeared to support the brother of Tacitus. But the fortune and activity of Probus triumphed over every obstacle. The hardy veterans of his rival, accustomed to cold climates, sickened and consumed away in the sultry heats of Ciliaea, where the summer proved remarkably unwholesome. Their numbers were diminished by frequent desertion, the passes of the mountains were feebly defended; Tyana opened its gates; and the soldiers of Florus, when they had permitted him to enjoy

the Imperial title about three months, delivered the empire from civil war by the easy sacrifice of a prince whom they despised.

The perpetual revolutions of the throne had so perfectly erased every notion of hereditary right, that the family of an unfortunate emperor was incapable of exciting the jealousy of his successors. The children of Tacitus and Florus were permitted to descend into a private station, and to mingle with the general mass of the people. Their poverty indeed became an additional safeguard to their innocence. When Tacitus was elected by the senate, he resigned his noble patrimony to the public service, an act of generosity so few in appearance, but which evidently disclosed his intention of transmitting the empire to his descendants. The only consolation of their fallen state, was the remembrance of transient greatness, and a distant hope, the child of a flattering prophecy, that, at the end of a thousand years, a monarch of the race of Tacitus should arise, the protector of the senate, the restorer of Rome, and the conqueror of the whole earth.

The peasants of Illyricum, who had already given Claudius and Aurelian to the sinking empire, had an equal right to glory in the elevation of Probus. Above twenty years before, the emperor Valerian, with his usual penetration, had discovered the rising merit of the young soldier, on whom he conferred the rank of tribune, long before the age prescribed by the military regulations. The tribune soon justified his choice, by a victory over a great body of Sarmatians, in which he saved the life of a near relation of Valerian; and deserved to receive from the emperor's hand the collars, bracelets, spurs, and banners, the mural and the civic crown, and all the honourable rewards reserved by ancient Rome for successful valour. The third, and afterwards the tenth, legion were intrusted to the command of Probus, who, in every step of his promotion, showed himself superior to the station which he filled. Africa and Pontus, the Rhine, the Danube, the Euphrates, and the Nile, by turns afforded him the most splendid occasions of displaying his personal prowess and his conduct in war. Aurelian was indebted to him for the conquest of Egypt, and still more indebted for the honest courage with which he often checked the cruelty of his master. Tacitus, who desired by the abilities of his generals to supply his own deficiency of military talents, named him commander in chief of all the eastern provinces, with five times the usual salary, the promise of the consulship, and the hope of a triumph. When Probus as-

II Victor in Hist. August. p. 227. Euseb. E. p. 23. Euseb. vili. p. 86. So also the French, that these barbarous invaders of Pontus were Alains. If we compare the French, Eusebius (l. c. p. 16), the tradition preserved, v. the Comment. Varr. (l. c. p. 22), Probus proved, since as the sister of the Emperor, she might be supposed to be an accomplice in his crime.

12 Ammianus states only that he died; Theod. Just. 42. He states, that it was at a Jesu. Euseb. and Eusebius assert, that he was murdered by the officers, and among the people. Yet neither these latter opinions are wholly certain. 20. According to the two Victor. In regnum centum sex centum dies.
moment in their power to repeal the diagnostic edict of Gallicanus, the proud successor of the Scipio patientiy acquiesced in their exclusion from all military employments. They soon ex-perienced, that those who refuse the sword, must renounce the sceptre.

The strength of Aurelian had crushed on every side the enemies of Rome. After his death they seemed to revive with an increase of fury and of numbers. They were again vanquished by the same vigour of Probus, who, in a short reign of about six years, squelched the fame of ancient heroes, and restored peace and order to every province of the Roman world. The dangerous faction of the Suebi he so firmly secured, that he left it without the suspicion of an enemy. He broke the wdesigner power of the Severian tribes, and by the terror of his arms compelled those barbarians to relinquish their spoil. The Gothic nation coveted the alliance of so warlike a emperor. He attacked the Isles of their mountains, besieged and took several of their strongest castles, and shattered himself that he had for ever suppressed a domestic foe, whose independence to deeply wounded the majesty of the empire. The troubles excited by the usurper Papinian in the Upper Egypt, had never been perfectly assuaged, and the cities of Pelusium and Copais, fortified by the alliance of the Romans, still maintained an obscure rebellion. The dissensions of these cities, and of their military the avengers of the South, is said to have alarmed the court of Persia, and the Great King sent in vain for the friendship of Probus. Most of the exploits which distinguished his reign, were achieved by the personal valor and of the emperor, insomuch that the writer of his life expresses some amazement how, in a short time, a single man could be present in so many distant wars. The remaining actions he intrusted to the care of his lieutenants, his judicious choice of whom forms an insoluble part of his glory. Caesar, Diocletian, Maximan, Constantius, Galerius, and Aureolus, Aemilianus, and a crowd of other chiefs, who afterwards ascended or supported the throne, were trained to arms in the severest school of Aurelian and Probus.

But the most important service, which Probus rendered to the republic, was the deliverance of Gaul, and the recovery of seventy flourishing cities oppressed by the barbarians of Germany, who, since the death of Aurelian, had ravaged that great province with impunity. Among the various multitude of these fierce invaders, we may distinguish, with some degree of clearness, three great armies, or rather nations, successively vanquished by the valor of Probus.
He drove back the Franks into their forests; a

descriptive circumstance from whence we may

infer, that the confederacy known by the

manly

The

victory

and

his

was

half

the

new

Roman

the

and

the

since

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the

the
Rhine, after a winding course of near two hundred miles. This important barrier, uniting the two mighty streams that protected the provinces of Europe, seemed to fill up the vacant space through which the barbarians, and particularly the Alamanni, could penetrate with the greatest facility into the heart of the empire. But the experience of the world, from China to Britain, has exposed the vain attempt of fortifying any extensive tract of country. An active enemy, who can select and vary his points of attack, must, in the end, discover some feeble spot, or some unguarded moment. The strength as well as the attention, of the defenders is divided; and such are the blind effects of terror on the refractory troops, that a line broken in a single place is almost instantly deserted. The fate of the wall which Probus erected, may confirm the general observation. Within a few years after his death, it was overthrown by the Alamanni. Its scattered ruins, universally ascribed to the power of the Teuton, now serve only to excite the wonder of the Swabian peasant.

Among the useful conditions of peace imposed by Probus on the vanquished nations of Germany, was the obligation of supplying the Roman army with sixteen thousand recruits, the bravest and most robust of their youths. The emperor dispersed them through all the provinces, and distributed this dangerous reinforcement in small bands, of fifty or sixty each, among the national troops; judiciously observing, that the aid which the republic derived from the barbarians, should be felt but not seen. Their aid was now become necessary. The feeble elegance of Italy and the internal provinces could no longer support the weight of arms. The hardy frontiers of the Rhine and Danube still produced minds and bodies equal to the labours of the camp; but a perpetual series of wars had gradually diminished their numbers. The infrequency of marriage, and the ruin of agriculture, affected the principles of population, and not only destroyed the strength of the present, but intercepted the hope of future generations. The wisdom of Probus embraced a great and beneficial plan of replenishing the exhausted frontiers, by new colonies of captive or fugitive barbarians, on whom he bestowed lands, cattle, instruments of husbandry, and every encouragement that might engage them to educate a race of soldiers for the service of the republic. Into Britain, and most probably into Cambridgeshire, 47 be transported a considerable body of Vandals. The impossibility of an escape reconciled them to their situation, and in the subsequent troubles of that island, they approved themselves the most faithful servants of the state. 48 Great numbers of Franks and Gepidae settled on the banks of the Danube and the Rhine. A great thousand Bastarnae, expelled from their own country, cheerfully accepted an establishment in Thrace, and soon imbued the manners and sentiments of Roman subjects. 49 But the expectations of Probus were too often disappointed. The impatience and idleness of the barbarians could ill brook the slow labour of agriculture. Their unconquerable love of freedom, rising against despotism, provoked them into hasty rebellions, alike fatal to themselves, and to the provinces, 50 nor could those artful supplies, however repeated, by succeeding emperors, restore the important limit of Gaul and Illyricum to its ancient and native vigour.

Of all the barbarians who abandoned their new settlements, and disturbed the public tranquillity, a very small number returned to their own country. For a short season they might wander in arms through the empire; but in the end they were surely destroyed by the power of a stable emperor. The successful rashness of a party of Franks was attended, however, with such memorable consequences, that it ought not to be passed unnoticed. They had been established by Probus on the sea-coast of Fontus, with a view of strengthening the frontier against the incursions of the Alani. A fleet stationed in one of the harbours of the Euxine, fell into the hands of the Franks; and they resolved, through unknown seas, to explore their way from the mouth of the Phasis to that of the Rhine. They easily escaped through the Bosporus and the Hellespont, and cruising along the Mediterranean, indulged their appetite for revenge and plunder, by frequent descents on the unassuming shores of Asia, Greece, and Africa. The splendid city of Syrmium, in whose port the navies of Athens and Carthage had formerly been sunk, was marked by a handful of barbarians, who massacred the greatest part of the trembling inhabitants. From the island of Sicily, the Franks proceeded to the columns of Hercules, beribboned themselves to the ocean, coasted round Spain and Gaul, and steering their triumphant course through the British channel, at length finished their surprising voyage, by landing in safety on the Batavian or Etruscan shores. 51 The example of their success, instructing their countrymen to conceive the advantages, and to despise the dangers, of the sea, pointed out to their enterprising spirit, a new road to wealth and glory.

Notwithstanding the vigilance and activity of Probus, it was almost impossible that he could at once retain in obedience every part of his wide-extended dominions. The barbarians, who broke their chains, seized the favourable opportunity of a domestic war. When the emperor marched to the

47 See note on l'Abbe de la Motte de la Goutte, de la Germaine de Teiss, p. 125. His observation is that of the aged of the heathen, to the text. 48 See from the ancient historians of Schramm. 49 From the ancient historians of Schramm. 50 The emperors8 fixed it well among the Franks, but in particular: with regard to the limit, an instructor to the Franks, or Euphor, who, in his account of the Franks, mention the influence of the Franks. 51 See the memos. of Pruss. against the Alamanni, with the constitution of the Frankish government, on the neighborhood of Frankon. 52 See Corn. 48, 53. 53 He was called the Byzantine. 54 He was called the Byzantine. 55 This was under Constantine. 56 See the note of Zeno. 57 They were probably expelled by Ag. 58 Pratou, Vol. 1. 59. Zeno, Ep. 1. 59.
relief of Gaul he devolved the command of the East on Saturninus. That general, a man of merit and experience, was driven into rebellion by the absence of his sovereign, the levity of the Alexandrian people, the pressuring instances of his friends, and his own fears; but from the moment of his elevation, he never entertained a hope of empire, or even of life. "Alas!" he said, "the republic has lost a useful servant, and the rashness of an hour has destroyed the services of many years. You know not, continued he, "the misery of sovereign power; a sword is perpetually suspended over our head.

We dread our very guards, we distrust our companions. The choice of action or of rest is no longer in our disposition, nor is there any age, or character, or conduct, that can protect us from the censure of envy. In this exaltation to the throne you have doomed me to a life of care, and to an unsought misery. The only consolation which remains is the assurance that I shall not fall alone." But as the former part of his prediction was verified by the victory, so the latter was disappointed by the clemency of Probus. That amiable prince attempted even to save the unhappy Saturninus from the fury of the soldiers. He had more than once solicited the monarch himself, to place some confidence in the mercy of a sovereign who so high esteemed his character, that he had published, as a serious information, the first who related the improbable news of his defection. Saturninus might, perhaps, have embraced the generous offer, had he not been restrained by the obstinate distrust of his adherents. Their guilt was deeper, and their hopes more sanguine, than those of their experienced leader.

The revolt of Saturninus was scarcely extinguished in the East, before new troubles were excited in the West, by the rebellion of Bonosus and Proculus in Gaul. The most distinguished merit of those two officers, was their respective prowess, of the one in the combat of Boculis, of the other in those of Venus, yet neither of them were destitute of courage and capacity, and both sustained, with honour, the august character which the fear of punishment had engendered them to assume, till they sank at length beneath the superior genius of Probus. He used the victory with his accustomed moderation, and spared the fortunes as well as the lives of their innocent families.

The arms of Probus had now suppressed all the foreign and domestic enemies of the state. His mild but steady administration confirmed the re-establishment of the public tranquillity; nor was there left in the provinces a hostile burzian, a tyrant, or even a robber, to revive the memory of past disorders. It was time that the emperor should revisit Rome, and celebrate his own glory and the general happiness. The triumph due to the valor of Probus was conducted with a magnificence suitable to his fortune, and the people who had so lately admired the trophies of Aurelian, gazed with equal pleasure on those of his heroic successor. We cannot, on this occasion, forget the desperate courage of about four thousand gladiators, reserved, with near six hundred others, for the inhuman sports of the amphitheatre. Desiring to shed their blood for the amusement of the populace, they killed their keepers, broke from the place of their confinement, and filled the streets of Rome with blood and confusion. After an obstinate resistance, they were overpowered and cut in pieces by the regular forces; but they obtained at least an honourable death, and the satisfaction of a just revenge.

The military discipline which reigned in the camps of Probus was less cruel than that of Aurelian, but it was equally rigid and exact. The latter had punished the irregularities of the soldiers with unrelenting severity; the former prevented them by employing the legions in constant and useful labours. When Probus commanded in Egypt, he executed many considerable works for the splendour and benefit of that rich country. The navigation of the Nile, so important to Rome itself, was improved; and temples, bridges, porticoes, and palaces, were constructed by the hands of the soldiers, who acted by turns as architects, as engineers, and as husbandmen. It was reported of Hannibal, that, in order to preserve his troops from the dangerous temptations of idleness, he had obliged them to form large plantations of olive trees along the coast of Africa. From a similar principle, Probus exercised his legions in covering, with rich vineyards, the hills of Gaul and Numidia, and two considerable spots are described, which were entirely dug and planted by military labour. One of these, known under the name of Mount Amae, was situated near Sirmium, the country where Probus was born, for which he ever retained a partial affection, and whose gratitude he endeavoured to secure, by converting into tillage a large and unhealthy tract of marshy ground. An army thus employed, constituted perhaps the most useful, as well as the bravest, portion of Roman subjects.

But in the prosecution of a favourite scheme, the best of men, satisfied with the multitude of their intentions, are subject to forget the bounds of moderation; nor did Probus himself sufficiently consult the prudence and disposition of his fierce legi-
The dangers of the military profession seem only to be compensated by a life of pleasure and idleness; but if the duties of the soldier are incessantly aggravated by the labours of the peasant, he will at last sink under the intolerable burden, or shake it off with indignation. The imprudence of Probus is said to have inflamed the discontent of his troops. More attentive to the interests of mankind than to those of the army, he expressed the vain hope, that, by the establishment of universal peace, he should soon abolish the necessity of a standing and mercenary force. The unguarded expression proved fatal to him. In one of the hottest days of summer, as he severely urged the unhesitating labour of draining the marshes of Sirmium, the soldiers, impatient of fatigue, on a sudden threw down their tools, grasped their arms, and broke out into a furious mutiny. The emperor, conscious of his danger, took refuge in a lofty tower, constructed for the purpose of surveying the progress of the work. The tower was instantly forced, and a thousand swords were plunged at once into the bosom of the unfortunate Probus. The rage of the troops subsided as soon as it had been gratified. They then lamented their rashness, forgot the severity of the emperor, when they had massacred, and hastened to perpetuate, by an honourable monument, the memory of his virtues and victories.

When the legions had indulged their grief and repentance for the death of Probus, their unanimous consent declared Carus, his proconsul, prefect, the most deserving of the Imperial throne. Every circumstance that relates to this prince appears of a mixed and doubtful nature. He gloried in the title of Roman Citizen; and affected to compare the purity of his blood, with the foreign and even barbarous origin of the preceding emperors; yet the most insidious of his contemporaries, very far from admitting his claim, have variously disposed of his own birth, or that of his parents, from Illyricum, from Gaul, or from Africa. Though a soldier, he had received a learned education; though a senator, he was invested with the first dignity of the army; and in an age, when the civil and military professions began to be irrecoverably separated from each other, they were united in the person of Carus. Notwithstanding the severe justice which he exercised against the assassins of Probus, to whose favour and esteem he was highly indebted, he could not escape the suspicion of being accessory to a deed from whence he derived the principal advantage. He enjoyed, at least before his elevation, an acknowledged character of virtue and abilities; but his nature tempered insensibly degenerated into meanness and cruelty; and the imperial writers of his life almost hesitate whether they shall rank him in the number of Roman tyrants. When Carus assumed the purple, he was about sixty years of age, and his two sons, Carinus and Numidian, had already attained the season of manhood.

The authority of the senate expired with Probus; nor was the repentance of the soldiers displayed by the same dutiful regard for the civil power, which they had testified after the unfortunate death of Aurelian. The election of Carus was decided without expecting the approbation of the senate, and the new emperor contented himself with announcing, in a cold and stately epistle, that he had ascended the vacant throne. A behaviour so very opposite to that of his amiable predecessor, afforded no favourable passage of the new reign; and the Romans, deprived of power and freedom, aspired to the privilege of licentious murmurs. The rank of congratulation and flattery was not however silent; and we may still peruse, with pleasure and contempt, an oration, which was composed on the accession of the emperor Carus. Two shepherds, avoiding the noontide heat, retire into the caves of Faunus. On a spreading bench they discover some recent characters. The humid delay had described, in prophetic verses, the felicity promised to the empire under the reign of so great a prince. Faunus hailed the approach of that hero, who, receiving on his shoulder the sinking weight of the Roman world, shall extinguish war and faction, and once again restore the innocence and security of the golden age.

It is more than probable, that these elegant tributes never reached the ears of a veteran general, who, with the consent of the legions, was preparing to execute the long suspended design of the Persian war. Before his departure for the distant expedition, Carus conferred on his sons, Carinus and Numidian, the title of Caesar, and investing the former with almost an equal share of the Imperial power, directed the young princes, first to suppress some troubles which had arisen in Gaul, and afterwards to the seat of his residence at Rome, and to assume the government of the Western provinces. The safety of Illyricum was confirmed by a memorable defeat of the Sarmatians, sixteen thousand of those barbarians remaining on the field of battle, and the number of captives amounted to twenty thousand. The old emperor, assembled with the fame and prospect of victory, pursued his march, in the midst of winter, through the countries of Thrace and Asia Minor, and, at length, with his younger son Numidian, arrived
on the confines of the Persian monarchy. There, encamping on the summit of a lofty mountain, he pointed out to his troops the opulence and luxury of the enemy whom they were about to invade.

The successor of Artaxerxes, A.D. 429, Vasaeres or Bahram, though he had subdued the Sungirtans, one of the most warlike nations of Upper Asia, was alarmed at the approach of the Romans, and endeavored to retard their progress by a negotiation of peace. His ambassadors entered the camp about sunset, at the time when the troops were satisfying their hunger with a frugal repast. The Persians expressed their desire of being introduced to the presence of the Roman emperor. They were at length conducted to a soldier, who was seated on the grass. A piece of stale bacon and a few hard pears composed his supper. A coarse woollen garment of purple was the only circumstance that announced his dignity. The conference was conducted with the same disregard of courtly elegance. Carus, taking off a cap which he wore to conceal his baldness, assured the ambassadors that, unless their master acknowledged the superiority of Rome, he would speedily rend Persia as naked of trees, as his own head was destitute of hair. Notwithstanding some traces of art and preparation, we may discover in this scene the manners of Carus, and the severe simplicity which the martial princes, who succeeded Gallienus, had already restored in the Roman camps. The ministers of the Great King trembled and retired.

The threats of Carus were not without effect. He ravaged Mesopotamia, cut in pieces whatever opposed his passage, made himself master of the great cities of Seleucia and Ctesiphon (which seemed to have surrendered without resistance), and carried his victorious arms beyond the Tigris. He had seized the favourable moment for an invasion. The Persian councilors were distracted by domestic factions, and the greater part of their forces were detained on the frontiers of India. Rome and the East received with transport the news of such important advantages. Futility and hope pointed, in the most lively colures, the fall of Persia, the conquest of Arabia, the submission of Egypt, and a lasting deliverance from the immissals of the Scythian nations. But the reign of Carus was destined to expose the vanity of predictions. They were scarcely uttered before they were contradicted by his death; an event attended with such ambiguous circumstances, that it may be related in a letter from his own secretary, to the prefect of the city. Carus, says he, our dearest emperor, was confounded by sickness to his bed, when a furious tempest arose in the camp. The darkness which overspread the sky was so thick, that we could no longer distinguish each other; and the incessant flashes of lightning took from us the knowledge of all that passed in the general confusion. Immediately after the most violent clap of thunder, we heard a sudden cry, that the emperor was dead; and it soon appeared, that his chamberlains, in a rage of grief, had set fire to the royal pavillion, a circumstance which gave rise to the report that Carus was killed by lightning. But, as far as we have been able to investigate the truth, his death was the natural effect of his disorder.

The vacancy of the throne was no time productive of any disturbance. The ambition of the aspiring generals was checked by their mutual fears, and young Numerian with his almost brother Carinus were unanimously acknowledged as Roman emperors. The public expected that the successor of Carus would pursue his father's footsteps, and, without allowing the Persians to recover from their consternation, would advance sword in hand to the palaces of Susa and Ctesiphon. But the legions, however strong in numbers and discipline, were dismayed by the most abject superstition. Notwithstanding all the arts that were practised to disguise the number of the late emperor's death, it was found impossible to remove the opinion of the multitude, and the power of opinion is irresistible. Places or persons struck with lightning were considered by the ancients with piety and horror, and singularly devoted to the wrath of Heaven. An oracle was remembered, which marked the river Tigris as the fatal boundary of the Roman arms. The troops, terrified with the fate of Carus and with their own danger, called aloud on young Numerian to obey the will of the gods, and to lead them away from this insipidious scene of war. The feeble emperor was unable to subdue their obstinate prejudices, and the Persians wondered at the unexpected retreat of a victorious enemy.

The intelligence of the mysterious fate of the late emperor was soon carried from the frontiers of Persia to Rome; and the senate, as well as the provincials, congratulated the accession of the son of Carus. These fortunate youths were strangers, however, to that conscious superiority, either of birth or of merit, which can alone render the possession of a throne easy, and as it were natural. Born and educated in a private station, the election of their father raised them at once to the rank of princes; and his death, which happened about sixteen months afterwards, left them the unexpected legacy of a vast empire. To sustain with temper this rapid elevation, an uncommon share of virtue and prudence was requisite; and Carinus, the elder of the brothers, was more than commonly deficient in these qualities. In
the Gallic war, he discovered some degree of personal courage; but from the moment of his arrival at Rome, he abandoned himself to the luxury of the capital, and to the abuse of his fortune. He was soft, yet cruel; devoted to pleasure, but destitute of taste; and though expeditiously susceptible of vanity, indifferent to the public esteem. In the course of a few months, he successively married and divorced nine wives, most of whom he left pregnant; and notwithstanding this legal inconsistency, found time to indulge such a variety of irregular appetites, as brought dishonour on himself and on the noblest houses of Rome. He beheld with invertebrate hatred all those who might remember his former obscurity, or cause his present conduct. He banished, or put to death, the friends and counsellors whom his father had placed about him, to gain his inexperienced youth; and he persecuted with the most unrelenting vigour his school-fellows and companions, who had not sufficiently respected the latent majesty of the emperor. With the senators, Carinus affected a lofty and regal demeanour, frequently declaring, that he designed to distribute their estates among the populace of Rome. From the doors of that populous, he selected his favourites, and even his ministers. The palace, and even the Imperial table, was filled with singers, dancers, prostitutes, and all the various minstrels of vice and folly. One of his door-keepers was intrusted with the government of the city. In the room of the praetorius prefect, whom he put to death, Carinus substituted one of the ministers of his former pleasures. Another who possessed the same, or even a more infamous title, to favour, was invested with the comitatus. A confidential secretary, who had acquired uncom- mon skill in the art of forgery, delivered the infant emperor, with his own consent, from the irksome duty of signing his name.

When the emperor Carus undertook the Persian war, he was induced, by motives of affection as well as policy, to secure the fortunes of his family, by leaving in the hands of his eldest son the armies and provinces of the West. The ill-fated which he soon received of the death of Carinus, filled him with shame and regret; nor had he concealed his resolution of satisfying the republic by a severe act of justice, and of adopting, in the place of an unworthy son, the brave and virtuous Constantius, who at that time was governor of Dalmatia. But the elevation of Constantius was for a while deferred; and as soon as the father's death had released Carinus from the control of fear or decency, he displayed to the Romans the extravagancies of Elisagatus, aggravated by the cruelty of Dianius.44

43 Venerius. (Prosopograph. v. 69.) He was a contemporary, but a 70th
44 Constans. (Prosopograph. v. 69.) 71st.
45 This word, in Latin, is obscene, but in Greek, it is excellent.
46 Thracian. (Prosopograph. v. 89.) The Greek, however, is not Greek, but Scythian.
47 Procopius, in Hist. Aug. p. 236, Vol. II. Eastern, p. 160. He says, that the
they had been here, but unless to the right of
48 Procopius, in Hist. Aug. p. 236, Vol. II. Eastern, p. 160. He says, that the
they had been here, but unless to the right of
49 The Emperor in the East used to be called the Caesar, and the
50 A poetical expression, and the writer very often expresses the
51 The Emperor in the West used to be called the Caesar, and that is how he is termed here.
52 The only merit of the administration of Carinus that history could record, or poetry celebrate, was the uncommon splendour with which, in his own and his brother's name, he exhibited the Roman games of the theatre, the circus, and the amphitheatre. More than twenty years afterwards, when the country of Diocletian, represented to his frivolous sovereign the same and popularly of his munificent predecessors, he acknowledged, that the reign of Carinus had indeed been a reign of pleasure. But this vain prodigality, which the princes of the fourth were thus debtor, was unable to cause surprise or transport by the Roman people. The oldest of the citizens, recollecting the spectacles of former days, the triumphal pomp of Probus or Aurelian, and the secular games of the emperor Philip, acknowledged that they were all surpassed by the superior magnificence of Carinus.
53 The spectacles of Carinus may therefore be best illustrated by the observation of some particulars, which history has condescended to relate concerning those of his predecessors. If we confine ourselves solely to the hunting of wild beasts, however we are unable to estimate the vanity of the design, or the cruelty of the execution, we are obliged to confess, that neither before nor since the time of the Romans, so much art and expense have ever been lavished for the amusement of the people. By the order of Probus, a great quantity of large trees, torn up by the root, were transplanted into the midst of the circus. The spacious and shady forest, was immediately filled with a thousand ostriches, a thousand stags, a thousand foxes, a thousand deer, and a thousand wild boars; and all this variety of game was abandoned to the guests of the multitude. The tragedy of the succeeding day consisted in the massacre of an hundred lions, an equal number of leopards, and three hundred bears. The collection prepared by the younger Gallienus for his triumph, and which his successor exhibited in the secular games, was less remarkable by the number than by the singularity of the animals. Twenty rhinoceros displayed their elegant forms and variegated beauty to the eyes of the Roman people. Ten elks, and as many camelopardals, the loveliest and most harmless creatures that wander over the plains of Syria and Ethiopia, were contrasted with thirty African hyaenas, and ten Indian tigers, the most insuperable savages of the torrid zone. The most formidable strength with which nature has endowed the greater quadrupeds was admired in the rhinoceros, the hippopotamus of the Nile, and a majestic troop of thirty-two elephants. With the populace gazed with stupid wonder on the
splendid show, the naturalist might indeed observe the figure and properties of so many different species, transported from every part of the ancient world into the amphitheatre of Rome. But this accidental benefit, which science might derive from folly, is surely insufficient to justify such a wanton abuse of the public riches. There occurs, however, a single instance in the first Punic war, in which the senate wisely connected this amusement of the multitude with the interest of the state. A considerable number of elephants, taken in the defeat of the Carthaginian army, were driven through the circus by a few slaves, armed only with blunt javelins. The useful spectacle served to impress the Roman soldier with a just contempt for those unwieldy animals; and he no longer dreaded to encounter them in the ranks of war.

The hunting or exhibition of wild beasts was conducted with a magnificence suitable to a people who styled themselves the masters of the world; nor was the edifice appropriated to that entertainment less expressive of Roman greatness. Posterity admires, and will long admire, the awful remains of the amphitheatre of Titus, which so well deserved the epithet of Colossal. It was a building of an elliptical figure, five hundred and sixty-four feet in length, and four hundred and sixty-seven in breadth, founded on four square arches, and rising, with four successive orders of architecture, to the height of one hundred and forty feet. The outside of the edifice was ornamented with marble, and decorated with statues. The slopes of the vast concave, which formed the inside, were filled, and surrounded with sixty or eighty rows of seats of marble likewise, covered with cushions, and capable of receiving with ease above four thousand spectators. Sixty-four vomitoria (for that name the doors were aptly distinguished) peeped forth the immense multitude; and the entrances, passages, and staircases, were contrived with such exquisite skill, that each person, whither of the senatorial, the equestrian, or the plebeian order, arrived at his destined place without trouble or confusion. Nothing was omitted which, in any respect, could be subservient to the convenience and pleasure of the spectators. They were protected from the sun and rain by an ample canopy, occasionally drawn over their heads. The air was continually refreshed by the playing of fountains, and profusely impregnated by the grateful scent of aromatics. In the centre of the edifice, the arena, or stage, was strewed with the finest sand, and successively assumed the most different forms. At one moment it seemed to rise out of the earth, like the garden of the Hesperides, and was afterwards broken into the rocks and caverns of Thrace. The subterraneous pipes conveyed an inexhaustible supply of water; and what had just before appeared a level plain, might be suddenly converted into a wide lake, covered with armed vessels, and replenished with the monstrosities of the deep. In the decoration of these scenes, the Roman emperors displayed their wealth and liberality; and we read on various occasions, that the whole furniture of the amphitheatre consisted either of silver, or of gold, or of amber. The poet who describes the games of Carinus, in the character of a shepherd, attracted to the capital by the fame of their magnificence, affirms, that the seats designed as a defence against the wild beasts, were of gold wire; that the porticoes were gilded, and that the belf or circle which divided the several ranks of spectators from each other, was studded with a precious Mosaic of beautiful stones.

In the midst of this glittering pageantry, the emperor Carinus, the son of his fortune, enjoyed the acclamations of the people, the flattery of his courtiers, and the songs of the poets, who, for want of a more essential merit, were reduced to celebrate the divine graces of his person. In the same hour, but at the distance of nine hundred miles from Rome, his brother expired; and a sudden revolution transferred into the hands of a stranger the sceptre of the house of Carinus.

The sons of Carinus never saw each other after their father’s death. The arrangements which their new situation required, were probably deferred till the return of the younger brother to Rome, whose a triumph was decreed to the young emperors, for the glorious success of the Persian war. It is uncertain whether they intended to divide between them the administrations, of the provinces, of the empire; but it is very unlikely that their union would have proved of any long duration. The jealousy of power must have been inflamed by the opposition of characters. In the most corrupt of times, Carinus was unworthy to live: Numerian deserved to reign in a happier period. His affable manners and gentle virtues secured him, as soon as they became known, the regard and affection of the public. He possessed the elegant accomplishments of a poet and orator, which dignify as well as adorn the humblest and the most exalted station. His eloquence, however, it was applauded by the senate, was formed not so much on the model of Cicero, as on that of the modern declaimers; but in an age very far from being destitute of poetical merit, he contended for the prize with the most celebrated of his contemporaries, and still remained the friend of his rivals; a circumstance which evince either

---

80 This part, Nation, vol. ii, p. 378. From the Memoirs of Persius, 1726.
89 Mathews, I. i. 4. The height was 3,960 feet above the level of the sea.
90 According to an ancient writer of Vitruvius, the number of elephants was 27,000, or 30,000. These numbers are more than double the number given by Macrobius.
91 This number, L. i. c. 35. He means the very different number of 21,700 camels, covered with and built on two thousand boughs.
92 This number, L. i. c. 35. He means the very different number of 21,700 camels, covered with and built on two thousand boughs.
which he had filled exposed him to some suspicions, Diocletian ascended the tribunal, and inclining his eyes towards the Sun, made a solemn profession of his own innocence, in the presence of that all-seeing Deity. Then, assuming the tone of a sovereign and a judge, he commanded that Aper should be brought in chains to the foot of the tribunal. "This man," said he, "is the murderer of Numerian?" and, without giving him time to enter on a dangerous justification, drew his sword, and buried it in the breast of the unfortunate prefect. A charge supported by such decisive proof was almost without contradiction, and the legions, with panting acclamations, acknowledged the power and authority of the emperor Diocletian.

Before we enter upon the moral and immutable reign of that prince, it will be proper to punish and dismiss the unlucky brother of Numerian. Carinus possessed arms and treasures sufficient to support his legal title to the empire. But his personal vices were unbalanced every advantage of birth and situation. The most faithful servants of the father despised the iniquity, and dreaded the cruel vengeance of the son. The hearts of the people were engaged in favour of his rival, and even the senate was inclined to prefer an usurper to a tyrant. The arts of Diocletian inflamed the general discontent; and the winter was employed in secret intrigues, and open preparations for a civil war. In the spring, the forces of the north and of the west encountered each other in the plains of Massilia, a small city of Massilia, in the neighbourhood of the Danube, 102. The troops, so lately returned from the Persian war, had acquired their glory at the expense of health and numbers, nor were they in a condition to contend with the unshaken strength of the legions of Europe. Their ranks were broken, and, for a moment, Diocletian despised the purple and of life. But the advantage which Carinus had obtained by the valour of his soldiers, he quickly lost by the infidelity of his officers. A tribunal, whose will he had seduced, seized the opportunity of revenge, and by a single blow extinguished still discord in the blood of the adulterer. 108

CHAP. XIII.

The Reign of Diocletian and his three Associates, Maximian, Galerius, and Constantine.—General Re-establishment of Order and Tranquillity.—The Persian War, Victory, and Triumph.—The New Form of Administration.—Abdication and Retirement of Diocletian and Maximian.

As the reign of Diocletian was more illustrious than that of any of his predecessors, so was

108 See p. 544. Augustus, his Father and grandmother of the emperor.
as the founder of a new empire. Like the adopted son of Caesar, he was distinguished as a statesman rather than as a warrior; nor did either of those princes employ force, whenever their purpose could be effected by policy.

The victory of Diocletian was remarkable for its singular mildness and mercy. A people accustomed to applaud the clemency of the conqueror, if the usual punishments of death, exile, and confiscation, were inflicted with any degree of temper and equity, beheld, with the most pleasing astonishment, a civil war, the flames of which were extinguished in the field of battle. Diocletian received into his confidence Aurelianus, the principal minister of the house of Carus, respected the lives, the fortunes, and the dignity of his adversaries, and even continued in their respective stations the greater number of the servants of Carinus. It is not improbable that motives of prudence might assist the humanity of the artful Delmatian; but, of these servants, many had purchased his favour by secret treachery; in others, he esteemed their grateful fidelity to an unfortunate master. The discerning judgment of Aurelianus, of Probus, and of Carus, had filled the several departments of the state and army with officers of approved merit, whose removal would have injured the public service, without promoting the interest of the successors. Such a conduct, however, displayed in the Roman world the fairest prospect of the new reign, and the emperor affected to confirm this favourable prepossession, by declaring, that, among all the virtues of his predecessors, he was the most ambitious of imitating the humane philosophy of Marcus Antoninus.

The first considerable action of his reign seemed to excite his curiosity as well as his moderation. After the example of Marcus, he gave himself a colleague in the person of Maximian, on whom he bestowed at first the title of Caesar, and afterwards that of Augustus. But the motives of his conduct, as well as the object of his choice, were of a very different nature from those of his admired predecessor. By investing a luxurious youth with the honours of the purple, Marcus had discharged a debt of private gratitude, at the expense, indeed, of the happiness of the state. By associating a friend and a fellow-soldier to the labours of government, Diocletian, in a time of public danger, provided for the defence both of the East and of the West. Maximian was born a peasant, and, like Aurelianus, in the territory of Sirium. Ignorant of letters, careless of law, the rusticity of his appearance and manners still betrayed in the most elevated fortune the manners of his extraction.

...
War was the only art which he professed. In a long course of service, he had distinguished himself on every frontier of the empire; and though his military talents were formed to obey rather than to command, though, perhaps, he never attained the skill of a consummate general, he was capable, by his valour, constancy, and experience, of executing the most arduous undertakings. Nor were the sizes of Maximian less useful to his benefactor. Insensible to pity, and fearless of consequence, he was the ready instrument of every act of cruelty which the policy of his useful prince might at once suggest and dictate to him. 

The birth of Constantius was less obscure than that of his colleagues. Eutropius, his father, was one of the most considerable nobles of Dalmatia, and his mother was the niece of the emperor Claudius. Although the youth of Constantius had been spent in arms, he was endowed with a mild and amiable disposition, and his popular voice had long since acknowledged his worthy of the rank which he at last attained. To strengthen the bonds of political, if not of domestic, union, each of the emperors assumed the character of a father to one of the Caesars. Diocletian to Galerius, and Maximian to Constantius; and each, obliging them to repudiate their former wives, bestowed his daughter's marriage on his adopted son. These four princes distributed among themselves the wide extent of the Roman empire. The duchy of Gaul, Spain, and Britain, was intrusted to Constantius; Galerius was stationed on the banks of the Danube, as the safeguard of the Illyrian provinces. Italy and Africa were considered as the department of Maximian; and for his peculiar portion, Diocletian reserved Thessa, Egypt, and the rich countries of Asia. Every one was sovereign within his own jurisdiction; but their united authority extended over the whole monarchy, and each of them was prepared to assist his colleagues with his counsels or presence. The Caesars, in their exalted rank, revered the majesty of the emperors, and the three youngest princes invariably acknowledged, by their gratitude and obedience, the common parent of their fortunes. The suspicious jealousy of powers found not any place among them; and the singular happiness of their union has been compared to a chorus of music, whose harmony was regulated and maintained by the skilful hand of the first artist.

This important measure was not carried into execution till about six years after the association of Maximian, and that interval of time had not been destitute of memorable incidents. But we have preferred, for the sake of perspicuity, first to describe the more perfect form of Diocletian's government, and afterwards to relate the actions of his reign following rather the natural order of the events than the dates of a very doubtful chronology.

I. Eutropius was the son of Constantian, hence that his sons were adopted from the same family. From the date of the Tetrarchy, all the Caesars were adopted by both emperors. This custom was introduced by Diocletian. (See the Life of Constantius.)

2. The principal events of the life of Maximian are shown in the life of Diocletian. Their joint power was very considerable. Their influence was equal.
England. It should seem, that very many of those institutions, conferred by an easy solution to the feudal system, are derived from the Celtic barbarians. When Caesar subdued the Gauls, the great nation was already divided into three orders of men; the clergy, the nobility, and the common people. The first governed by superintendence, the second by arms; but the third last was not of any weight or account in their public councils. It was very natural for the plebeians, oppressed by debt, or apprehensive of injuries, to implore the protection of some powerful chief, who acquired over their persons and property the same absolute right as, among the Greeks and Romans, a master exercised over his slave. The greatest part of the nation was gradually reduced into a state of serfdom; compelled to perpetual labour on the estates of the Gallic nobles, and confined to the soil; either by the real weight of facts, or by the less cruel and forcible restraints of the laws. During the long series of troubles which agitated Gaul, from the reign of Gallienus to that of Diocletian, the condition of these servile peasants was peculiarly miserable; and they experienced at once the complicated tyranny of their masters, of the barbarians, of the soldiers, and of the officers of the revenue.

Their passions were at last provoked into despair. On every side they rose in multitudes, armed with rude weapons, and with irresistible fury. The ploughman became a foot soldier, the shepherd mounted on horseback, the deserted villages and open towns were abandoned to the flames, and the ravages of the peasants equalled those of the fiercest barbarians. They asserted the natural rights of men, but they asserted those rights with the most savage cruelty. The Gallic nobles, justly stigmatizing their revenge, either took refuge in the fortified cities, or fled from the wild scene of anarchy. The peasants, rigid without control; and two of their most daring leaders had the folly and madness to assume the imperial ornaments. Their power soon expired at the approach of the legions. The strength of union and discipline obtained an easy victory over a licentious and divided multitude. A severe and earnest retaliation was inflicted on the peasants who were found in arms; the afflicted remnant returned to their respective habitations, and their unexampled effort for freedom served only to confirm their slavery. So strong and uniform is the current of popular passions, that with frightful severity, venturing from very scanty materials, to relase the particulars of this war; but we are not disposed to believe that the principal leaders Illians and Aenodorus, were Christians, or to intimates that the rebellion, as it happened in the time of Luther, was occasioned by the abuse of those benevolent principles of Christianity, which inculcate the natural freedom of mankind.

Maximinus had no sooner recovered Gaul from the bands of the peasants, than he lost Britain by the usurpation of Carausius. Ever since the rash and successful enterprise of the Franks under the reign of Probus, their daring countrymen had constructed squadrons of light brigandage, in which they incessantly ravaged the provinces adjacent to the ocean. To repel their desultory incursions it was found necessary to create a naval power; and the judicious Carausius was prosecuted with prudence and vigour. Gernand, or Boulogne, in the straits of the British Channel, was chosen by the emperor for the station of the Roman fleet; and the command of it was intrusted to Carausius, a Memphian of the meanest origin, but who had long signalized his skill as a pilot, and his valour as a soldier. The integrity of the new admiral corresponded not with his abilities. When the German pirates sailed from their own harbours, he collected at their passage, but he diligently intercepted their return, and appropriated to his own use an ample share of the spoil which they had acquired. The wealth of Carausius was, on this occasion, very justly considered as an evidence of his guilt; and Maximin had strictly given orders for his death. But the crafty Memphian foresaw and prevented the severity of the emperor. By his liberality he had attached to his fortune the fleet which he commanded, and secured the loyalty of the barbarians in his interest. From the port of Boulogne he sailed over to Britain, persuaded the legions, and the auxiliaries which guarded that island, to embrace his party, and boldly assuming, with the Imperial purple, the title of Augustus, defied the justice and the arms of the former sovereign.

When Britain was thus delivered from the empire, its importance was sensibly felt, and its loss sincerely lamented. The provinces celebrated, and perhaps magnified, the extent of that noble island, provided on every side with convenient harbours; the temperature of the climate, and the fertility of the soil, alike adapted for the production of corn or of violets; the valuable minerals with which it abounded; its rich pastures covered with impenetrable flocks, and its woods free from wild beasts, or venomous serpents. Above all, they regretted the large annuities of the revenue of Britain, whilst they confessed, that such a province well deserved to be the seat of an independent monarchy. During the space of seven years it was possessed by Carausius; and fortune continued...
propositions to a rebellion supported with courage and ability. The British emperor defended the freedom of his dominions against the Caledonians of the North, invited, from the continent, a great number of skilful artists, and displayed, on a variety of coins they are still extant, the taste and opulence. Barren on the coasts of the Franks, he courted the friendship of that formidable people, by the flattering imitation of their fairs and festivals. The vigour of their youth he enlisted among his land or sea forces; and, in return for their useful alliance, he communicated to the barbarians the dangerous knowledge of military and naval arts. Carausius still preserved the possession of Boulogne and the adjacent country. His fleets rode triumphantly in the Channel, commanded the mouths of the Seine and of the Rhine, ravaged the coasts of the ocean, and diffused beyond the confines of Hercules the terror of his name. Under his command, Britain, destined in a future age to obtain the empire of the sea, already assumed its natural and respectable station of a maritime power. 56

By seizing the fleet of Boulogne, Carausius had deprived his master of the means of prompt and revenge; and when, after a vast expense of time and labour, a new armament was launched into the water, the Imperial troops, unaccustomed in that element, were easily baffled and defeated by the veteran sailors of the usurper. This dispirited effort was soon prospective of a treaty of peace. Diocletian and his colleagues, who justly dreaded the enterprises of Carausius, resolved to him the sovereignty of Britain, and reluctantly admitted his perfidious servant to a participation of the Imperial honours. 57 But the abdication of the two Cæsars restored new vigour to the Roman arms; and while the Rhine was guarded by the presence of Maximian, his brave associate Constantius assumed the conduct of the British war. His first enterprise was against the important port of Boulogne. A stupendous mole, raised across the entrance of the harbour, intercepted all hopes of relief. The town surrendered after an obstinate defence; and a considerable part of the naval strength of Carausius fell into the hands of the besiegers. During the three years which Constantius employed in preparing a fleet adequate to the conquest of Britain, he secured the coast of Gaul, invaded the country of the Franks, and deprived the usurper of the assistance of those powerful allies.

Before the preparations were finished Constantius received the intelligence of the tyrant's death, and it was considered as a sure presage of the approaching victory. The servants of Carausius imitated the example of treason which he had given.

He was murdered by his first minister Allectus, and the assassin succeeded to his power and to his danger. But he possessed not equal abilities, either to exercise the one, or to repel the other. He beheld, with anxious terror, the opposite shores of the continent, already filled with arms, with troops, and with vessels; for Constantius had very prudently divided his forces, that he might, in like manner, divide the attention and resistance of the enemy. The attack was at length made by the principal squadron, which, under the command of the prefect Asclepiodotus, an officer of distinguished merit, had been assembled in the mouth of the Seine. So imperfect in these times was the art of navigation, that contra were celebrated the daring courage of the Romans, who ventured to set sail with a side-wind, and on a stormy day. The weather proved favourable to their enterprise. Under the cover of a thick fog, they escaped the fleet of Allectus, which had been stationed off the Isle of Wight to receive them, landed in safety on some part of the western coast, and convinced the Britons that a superiority of naval strength will not always protect their country from a foreign invasion. Asclepiodotus had no sooner disembarked the Imperial troops, than he set fire in his ships; and, as the expedition proved fortunate, his heroic conduct was universally admired. The usurper had posted himself near London, to expect the formidable attack of Constantius; who commanded in person the fleet of Boulogne; but the descent of a new enemy required his immediate presence in the West. He performed this long march in so precipitate a manner, that he encountered the whole force of the prefect with a small body of harnessed and skirmisher troops. The engagement was terminated by the total defeat and death of Allectus in a single battle, as it has often happened, decided the fate of this great island; and when Constantius landed on the shores of Kent, he found them covered with obedient subjects. Their acclamations were loud and unanimous; and the virtues of the emperor may induce us to believe, that they sincerely rejoiced in a revolution, which, after a separation of ten years, restored Britain to the body of the Roman empire. 58

Britain had now but domestic peace, the enemies to dread; and as long as the government preserved its fidelity, and the troops their discipline, the incursions of the naked savages of Scotland or Ireland could never materially affect the safety of the province. The peace of the continent, and the defence of the principal rivers which bounded the empire, were objects of far greater difficulty and importance. The policy of Diocletian, which inspired the councils of his associates, provided for the public tranquillity, by encouraging a spirit of discontent.

56. As a great number of medals of Carausius are still preserved, he may be supposed to have been a man of considerable spirit and taste. But the_VALIDATE either the accuracy of this account, or the probability that a British war is here intended. The extant remains have a singular arrangement, and manifest the existence of a war with Britain at this period.
57. We may suppose that the preparation of this fleet was a more considerable undertaking than that of the Rhine fleet. The remains of Maximian were complete, and the chief principal
58. We have the accounts of the events of this period in the Bellum Britanniæ of Cassiodorus, and in the Annales of the Briton. Historian of Carausius, and in the Annals of the Britons, have given a more ample account of the expedition of Constantius to Britain, and the events which followed it.
among the barbarians, and by strengthening the fortifications of the Roman limit.

The Emperor Constantius, in the East, fixed a line of camps from Egypt to the Persian dominions, and, for every camp, he instituted an adequate number of stationery troops, commanded by their respective officers, and supplied with every kind of arms, from the new arsenals which he had formed at Antioch, Eumene, and Damascus. Not was the precaution of the emperor less necessary against the well-known valour of the barbarians of Europe. From the mouth of the Rhine to that of the Danube, the ancient capitals, towns, and citadels, were diligently restored, and, in the most exposed places, new ones were skillfully constructed; the strictest vigilance was introduced among the garrisons of the frontier, and every expedition was practised that could render the long chain of fortifications firm and impregnable. A barrier so respectable was seldom violated, and the barbarians often turned against each other their disappointment rage.

Because of the Goths, the Vandals, the Gepidae, the Burgundians, the Allemanii, wasted each other’s strength by destructive hostilities, and whose mutual devastation, they vanquished the enemies of Rome. The subjects of Diocletian enjoyed the bloody spectacle, and congratulated each other, that the miseries of civil war were now experienced only by the barbarians.

Notwithstanding the policy of Diocletian, it was impossible to maintain an equal and undisturbed tranquillity during a reign of twenty years, and along a frontier of many hundred miles. Sometimes the barbarians suspended their domestic animosities, and the relaxed vigilance of the garrisons sometimes gave a passage to their strength or dexterity. Whenever the provinces were invaded, Diocletian conducted himself with that calm dignity which he always affected or possessed; reserved his presence for such occasions as were worthy of his interposition, never exposed his person or reputation to any unnecessary danger, ensured his success by every means that prudence could suggest, and displayed, with moderation, the consequences of his victory. In wars of a more difficult nature, and more doubtful event, he employed the rough valor of Maximian; and that faithful soldier was content to sacrifice his own victory to the wise counsels and auspicious influence of his benefactor. But after the adoption of the two Caesars, the emperors themselves retiring to a less laborious scene of action, devolved on their adopted sons the defence of the Danube and of the Rhine. The vigilant Galerius was never reduced to the necessity of vanquishing an army of barbarians on the Roman territory.

The brave and active Constantius delivered Gaul from a very furious invasion of the Alemanii; and his victories of Langres and Vindonissa appear to have been actions of considerable danger and merit. As he traversed the open country with a feebie guard, he was encompassed on a sudden by the superior multitude of the enemy. He retreated with difficulty towards Langres; but, in the general consternation, the citizens refused to open their gates, and the wounded prince was drawn up the wall by the means of a rope. But, on the news of his distress, the Roman troops hastened from all sides to his relief, and before the evening he had satisfied his honour and revenge by the slaughter of six thousand Alamanni. From the monuments of those times, the obscure traces of several other victories over the barbarians of Sarmatia and Germany might possibly be collected; but the tedious search would not be rewarded either with amusement or with instruction.

The conduct which the emperor Probus had adopted in the disposal of the vanquished, was imitated by Diocletian and his associates. The captive barbarians, exchanging death for slavery, were distributed among the provincials, and assigned to those districts (in Gaul, the territories of Amiens, Bourges, Chartres, Troyes, Langres, and Troyes, are particularly specified) which had been depopulated by the calamities of war. They were usefully employed as shepherds and husbandmen, but were denied the exercise of arms, except when it was found expedient to enroll them in the military service. Nor did the emperors refuse the property of lands, with a less servile tenure, to such of the barbarians as solicited the protection of Rome. They granted a settlement to several colonies of the Carpi, the Bastarnae, and the Sarmatians; and, by a dangerous indulgence, permitted them in some measure to retain their national manners and independence. Among the provincials, it was a subject of flattering expectation, that the barbarians, so lately an object of terror, now cultivated their lands, drove their cattle to the neighbouring fair, and contributed by his labour to the public plenty. They congratulated their masters on the powerful accession of subjects and soldiers; but they forgot, to observe, that multitudes of secret enemies, insinuating from favour, or desperate from oppression, were introduced into the heart of the empire.

While the Caesars exercised their power in the provinces of the Rhine and the Danube, the presence of the emperors was required on the southern confines of the Roman world. From the Nile to Mount Atlas, Africa was in arms. A confederacy of five Moorish nations issued from their deserts to invade the

23 Romans, c. p. 378. This partial barbarian soil is to be observed in the islands of the Rhine, and in the Danube, as well as in every country. Thus, after the death of Constantine the Great, the emperors of the West were obliged to extend the Roman dominions to the borders of the Germaniers]
24 Notwithstanding the danger of the Sarmatians, the Alains, the Huns, and the Goths, the emperor Balbinus was so complacent in his own safety, that he caused the incontinence of the army to be observed by the emperor.[See Fortuna, Vol. ii. 16. Sometimes illustrates the fact, by the example of the captured general.
25 He was, however, killed in the course of the battle, and the army was compelled to retreat.
26 These were the Caesars of the Vandals. They submitted to the authority of the emperor of Rome, and were permitted to settle in some of the provinces.
27 [See the historical chronicles of Cassander. Fortuna, Vol. ii.]
28 31 In the Syld of Edward, we read of a thousand, a thousand which I have seen in the Psalter of Jerusalem, Conon, Constantine, and others. The same miracle is represented in various ways in the Psalter of the ancient Church, and in the Psalter of the emperor Charlemagne.
29 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.]
30 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
31 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
32 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
33 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
34 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
35 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
36 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
37 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
38 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
39 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
40 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
41 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
42 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
43 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
44 [Volume, p. 45. The barbarians were the barbarians in the neighbourhood of Troyes, which seems to have been deserted by those two barbarians; but, according to the testimony of Zosimus, the two barbarians were not the same.
peaceful provinces. Julian had assumed the purple at Carlingo; 43 Achilles at Alexandria, and even the Blemedyes, vanquished, or rather continued, their incursions into the Upper Egypt. Scarcely any circumstances have been preserved of the exploits of Maximian in the western parts of Africa; but it appears by the event, that the progress of his arms was rapid and decisive, that he vanquished the severest barbarians of Mauritania, and that he removed them from the mountains, whose inaccessible strength had inspired their inhabitants with a lawless confidence, and habituated them to a life of rapine and violence. 44 Diocletian, on the side of Thebes, opened the campaign in Egypt by the siege of Alexandria, but still the aqueducts which conveyed the waters of the Nile into every quarter of that immense city, and rendering his ramp impregnable to the assailants of the besieged multitude, he pushed his reiterated attacks with caution and vigour. After a siege of eight months, Alexandria, wasted by the sword and by fire, implored the clemency of the conqueror; but it experienced the full extent of his severity. Many thousands of the citizens perished in a promiscuous slaughter, and there were few obnoxious persons in Egypt who escaped a sentence either of death, or at least of exile. 45 The fate of Bursis and of Coptos was still more melancholy than that of Alexandria; those proud cities, the former distinguished by its antiquity, the latter enriched by the passage of the Indian trade, were utterly destroyed by the sword and by the severe order of Diocletian. 46 The character of the Egyptian nation, inimical to kindness, but extremely susceptible of fear, could alone justify this excessive rigorous. The quidlings of Alexandria had often affected the tranquillity and subsistence of Rome itself. Since the usurpation of Firmus, the province of Upper Egypt, incessantly relapsing into rebellion, had embarrassed the alliances of Ethiopia. The number of the Bleomedyes, situated between the island of Meroe and the Red Sea, was very considerable, their disposition was inoffensive, their weapons rude and inoffensive. Yet in the public disorders these barbarians, whom antiquity, shocked with the deformity of their figure, had almost excluded from the human species, presumed to rank themselves among the enemies of Rome. 47 Such had been the unworthy allies of the Egyptians; and while the attention of the state was engaged in more serious wars, their vaxious intrudes might again harass the repose of the province. With a view of opposing to the Bleomedyes a similar adversary, Diocletian persuaded the Nabataeans, or people of Nubia, to remove from their ancient habitations in the deserts of Libya, and resignd to them an extensive but unprofitable territory above Syene and the cataracts of the Nile, with the stipulation, that they should ever respect and guard the frontier of the empire. The treaty long subsisted; and till the establishment of Christianity introduced stricter notions of religious worship, it was annually ratified by a solemn sacrifice in the isle of Elephantina, in which the Romans, as well as the barbarians, adored the same visible or invisible powers of the universe. 48

At the same time that Diocletian chastised the past crimes of the Egyptians, he provided for their future safety and happiness by many wise regulations, which were confirmed and enforced under the succeeding reigns. 49 One very remarkable effect, which he published, instead of being condemned as the effect of jealous tyranny, deserves to be appraised as an act of prudence and humanity. He ceased a diligent enquiry to be made for all the "ancient books which treated of the admirable art of making gold and silver, and without pity condemned them to the flames; apprehensive, as we are assured, lest the experience of the Egyptians should inspire them with confidence to rebel against the empire."

But if Diocletian had been convinced of the reality of that valuable art, far from extinguishing the memory, he would have converted the operation of it to the benefit of the public revenue. It is much more likely, that his good sense discovered to him the folly of such magnificent pretensions, and that he was desirous of preserving the reason and fortunes of his subject from the insidious pursuit. It may be remarked, that these ancient books, so liberally ascribed to Pythagoras, to Solomon, or to Hermes, were the pious frauds of more recent adepts. The Greeks was insatiable either to the use or to the abuse of alchemy. In that immense register, where Pliny has deposited the discoveries, the arts, and the errors of mankind, there is not the least mention of the transmission of metals; and the persecution of Dioscorides is the first authentic event in the history of alchemy. The conquest of Egypt by the Arabs diffused that vast science over the globe. Congenial to the station of the human heart, it was studied in China as in Europe, with equal eagerness, and with equal success. The darkness of the middle ages assured a favourable reception to every tale of wonder, and the revival of learning gave new vigour to hope, and suggested more specious acts of deception. Philosophy, with the aid of experience, has at length banished the study of alchemy; and the present age, however desirous of riches, is content to seek them by the humblest modes of commerce and industry. 50

43 Marcellus Hieremiad. Hist. I. p. 223. Jucundus in his work Conspectus, after the manner of Plutarch, gives an account of this war, which, however, is not to be considered as an actual narrative, but only a collection of stately sayings and sentiments. The same author in his Historia Doctrinae Christianae, p. 480, speaks of this war as of a peace and reconciliation in the light of the world. The account of the African war is related in the Historia Alexandrina, p. 47. Abulfeda, in his History of the Kings of Egypt, p. 76, speaks of the war as of the period of Julian.

44 The description of Alexandria in Juvenal, 7. 403, 404, is equally romantic and enthusiastic. The ancient historian, Ptolemy, in his Geography, Book VIII. p. 65, speaks of Alexandria as the greatest city in the world.


46 John Macrobius, in Sat. I. lib. iv. p. 125, 126. Josephus, in his Life of Antigonus, Lib. iv. c. 8. His name is also found in the Greek authors, where his name is given as a Synagogue of Alexandria, as well as of Rome. Vitalis, in his Commentaries on the History of the Romans, Book XIII. p. 122, 123, speaks of the war as of the period of Julian.

47 John Macrobius, in Sat. I. lib. iv. p. 125, 126. Josephus, in his Life of Antigonus, Lib. iv. c. 8. His name is also found in the Greek authors, where his name is given as a Synagogue of Alexandria, as well as of Rome. Vitalis, in his Commentaries on the History of the Romans, Book XIII. p. 122, 123, speaks of the war as of the period of Julian.

48 John Macrobius, in Sat. I. lib. iv. p. 125, 126. Josephus, in his Life of Antigonus, Lib. iv. c. 8. His name is also found in the Greek authors, where his name is given as a Synagogue of Alexandria, as well as of Rome. Vitalis, in his Commentaries on the History of the Romans, Book XIII. p. 122, 123, speaks of the war as of the period of Julian.

49 One very remarkable effect, which he published, instead of being condemned as the effect of jealous tyranny, deserves to be appraised as an act of prudence and humanity. He ceased a diligent enquiry to be made for all the "ancient books which treated of the admirable art of making gold and silver, and without pity condemned them to the flames; apprehensive, as we are assured, lest the experience of the Egyptians should inspire them with confidence to rebel against the empire."

50 But if Diocletian had been convinced of the reality of that valuable art, far from extinguishing the memory, he would have converted the operation of it to the benefit of the public revenue. It is much more likely, that his good sense discovered to him the folly of such magnificent pretensions, and that he was desirous of preserving the reason and fortunes of his subject from the insidious pursuit. It may be remarked, that these ancient books, so liberally ascribed to Pythagoras, to Solomon, or to Hermes, were the pious frauds of more recent adepts. The Greeks was insatiable either to the use or to the abuse of alchemy. In that immense register, where Pliny has deposited the discoveries, the arts, and the errors of mankind, there is not the least mention of the transmission of metals; and the persecution of Dioscorides is the first authentic event in the history of alchemy. The conquest of Egypt by the Arabs diffused that vast science over the globe. Congenial to the station of the human heart, it was studied in China as in Europe, with equal eagerness, and with equal success. The darkness of the middle ages assured a favourable reception to every tale of wonder, and the revival of learning gave new vigour to hope, and suggested more specious acts of deception. Philosophy, with the aid of experience, has at length banished the study of alchemy; and the present age, however desirous of riches, is content to seek them by the humblest modes of commerce and industry.
The reduction of Egypt was immediately followed by the Persian war. It was reserved for the reign of Diocletian to quash that powerful nation, and to extort a confession from the successors of Artaxerxes of the superior majesty of the Roman empire.

We have observed under the reign of Valerian, that Armenia was subdued by the perfidy and arms of the Persians, and that, after the assassination of Chosroes, his son Tiridates, the infant heir of the monarchy, was saved by the fidelity of his friends, and educated under the protection of the emperor. Tiridates derived from his exile such advantages as he could: never have obtained on the throne of Armenia; the early knowledge of adversity, of mankind, and of the Roman discipline. He signified his youth by deeds of valour, and displayed a matchless dexterity, as well as strength, in every martial exercise, and even in the less honourable contests of the Olympic games. These qualities were more nobly exerted in the defence of his benefactor Licinius.

That officer, in the mutiny which occasioned the death of Probus, was exposed to the most imminent danger, and the enraged soldiers were forcing their way into his tent, when they were checked by the single arm of the Armenian prince. The gratitude of Tiridates contributed soon afterwards to his restoration. Licinius was in every station the friend and companion of Galerius, and the merit of Galerius, long before he was raised to the dignity of Caesar, had been known and esteemed by Diocletian. In the third year of that emperor's reign Tiridates was invested with the kingdom of Armenia. The justice of the measure was not less evident than its expediency. It was time to rescue from the usurpation of the Persian monarch an important territory, which, since the reign of Nero, had been always granted under the protection of the empire to a younger branch of the house of Arsaces.

When Tiridates appeared on the frontiers of Armenia, he was received with an unfeigned transport of joy and loyalty. During twenty-six years, the country had experienced the real and imaginary hardships of a foreign yoke. The Persian monarchs abused their new conquest with magnificent buildings; but those monuments had been erected at the expense of the people, and were abhorred as badges of slavery. The apprehension of a revolt had inspired the most rigorous precautions; oppression had been aggravated by insult, and the consciousness of the public hatred had been productive of every measure that could render it still more implacable. We have already remarked the intolerant spirit of the Magian religion. The statues of the deified kings of Armenia, and the sacred images of the sun and moon, were broke in pieces by the zeal of the conqueror; and the perpetual fire of Ormusd was kindled and preserved upon an altar erected on the summit of Mount Bagvian. It was natural, that a people exasperated by so many injuries should arm with zeal in the cause of their independence, their religion, and their hereditary sovereignty. The torrent bore down every obstacle, and the Persian garrisons retreated before its fury. The nobles of Armenia flew to the standard of Tiridates, all alleging their past merit, offering their future service, and soliciting from the new king those honours and rewards from which they had been excluded with disdain under the foreign government.

The command of the army was bestowed on Artavasdes, whose father had saved the infancy of Tiridates, and whose family had been massacred for that generous action. The brother of Artavasdes obtained the government of a province. One of the first military dignities was conferred on the satrap Otas, a man of singular temperance and fortitude, who presented to the king his sister? and a considerable treasure, both of which, in a sequenced fortress, Otas had preserved from violation. Among the Armenian nobles appeared an ally, whose fortune is too remarkable to pass unnoticed. His name was Mangus, his origin was Scythian, and the horse which acknowledged his authority had encompassed a very few years before on the skirts of the Chinese empire, which at that time extended as far as the neighbourhood of Sagellana. Having incurred the displeasure of his master, Mangus, with his followers, retired to the banks of the Oxus, and implored the protection of Sapor. The emperor of China claimed the fugitive, and alleged the rights of sovereignty. The Persian monarch plighted the laws of hospitality, and with some difficulty avoided a war, by the promise that he would banish Mangus to the uninhabited parts of the West; a punishment, as he described it, not less dreadful than death itself. Armenia was chosen for the place of exile, and a large district was assigned to the Scythian horse, on which they might feed their flocks and herds and remove their encampment from one place to another, according to the different seasons of the year. They were employed to repel the invasions of Tiridates; but their leader, after weighing the obligations and injuries which he had received from the Persian monarch, rejected them and entered into a league with the Romans. Their number was formidable, and the nation of Armenia had reason to fear it. The Armenians were alarmed, and prepared to repel the impetuous hosts of the Scyths. They consulted with the Romans, who assured them of their support. The Armenians were made ready for the contest. The Persians were driven away, and the Armenians returned to their peaceful pursuits.
altered to abandon his party. The Armenian prince, who was well acquainted with the merit as well as power of Manco, treated him with distinguished respect; and, by admitting him into his confidence, acquired a brave and faithful servant, who contributed very effectually to his restoration. 60

For a while, fortune appeared to favour the enterprises of Tiridates. He not only expelled the enemies of his family and country from the whole extent of Armenia, but in the prosecution of his revenge he carried his arms, or at least his incursions, into the heart of Assyria. The historian, who has preserved the name of Tiridates from oblivion, celebrates, with a degree of national enthusiasm, his personal prowess; and, in the true spirit of eastern romance, describes the giants, the elephants that fell beneath his invincible arm. It is from other information that we discover the distracted state of the Persian monarchy; in which the king of Armenia was indulged for some part of his advantages. The throne was disputed by the ambition of contending brothers, and Hormaz, after exerting without success the strength of his own party, had recourse to the dangerous assistance of the barbarian who infested the banks of the Caspic Sea. 61 The civil war was, however, soon terminated, either by a victory, or by a reconciliation; and Narses, who was universally acknowledged as king of Persia, directed his whole force against the foreign enemy. The contest then became too unequal; nor was the valour of the hero able to withstand the power of the monarch. Tiridates, a second time expelled from the throne of Armenia, once more took refuge in the court of the emperors Narses soon re-established his authority over the revolted province; and loudly complaining of the protection afforded by the Romans to rebels and fugitives, aspired to the conquest of the East. 62

Neither promise nor honour could permit the emperors to forsake the cause of the Armenian king, and it was resolved to exert the force of the empire in the Persian war. Dioleclian, with the calm dignity which he constantly assumed, fixed his own station in the city of Antioch, from whence he prepared and directed the military operations. 63 The conduct of the legions was intrusted to the intrepid valour of Galerius, who, for that important purpose, was removed from the banks of the Danube to those of the Euphrates.

Domes of Gaul.

The armies soon encountered each other in the plains of Mesopotamia, and two battles were fought with various and doubtful successes; but the third engagement was of a more decisive nature; and the Roman army received a total overthrow, which is attributed to the valour of Galerius, who, with an invincible body of troops, attacked the immovable host of the Persians. 64 But the consideration of the country that was the scene of action, may suggest another reason for his defeat. The strong ground on which Galerius was vanquished, had been rendered memorable by the death of Cyrus, and the slaughter of ten legions. It was a piece of more than sixty miles, which extended from the hills of Carrhae to the Euphrates; a rough and barren surface of sandy desert, without a hillock, without a tree, and without a spring of fresh water. 65 The steady infantry of the Romans, tested with heat and thirst, could neither hope for victory if they preserved their ranks, nor break their ranks without exposing themselves to the most imminent danger. In this situation they were gradually encompassed by the superior numbers, harassed by the rapid evolutions, and destroyed by the arrows of the barbarian cavalry. The king of Armenia had signified his wishes in the battle, and acquired personal glory by the public misfortune. He was pursued as far as the Euphrates; his horse was wounded, and it appeared impossible for him to escape the victorious enemy. In this extremity Tiridates embraced the only refuge which he saw before him; he dismounted and plunged into the stream. His armour washeavy, the river very deep, and at those parts at least half a mile in breadth; 66 yet such was his strength and dexterity, that he reached in safety the opposite bank. 67 With regard to the Roman general, we are ignorant of the circumstances of his escape; but when he returned to Antioch, Dioleclian received him, not with the tenderness of a friend and colleague, but with the indignation of an offended sovereign. The haughtiness of men, clothed in his purple, but humbled by the sense of his fault and misfortunes, was obliged to follow the emperor's chair above a mile in fast, and to exhibit before the whole court the spectacle of his disgraces. 68

As soon as Dioleclian had indulged his private resentment, and vested the majesty of supreme power, he yielded to the sublimity of Casar, and permitted him to retrieve his own honour, as well as that of the Roman arms. In the room of the unwarlike troops of Asia, which had most probably served in the first expedition, a second army was drawn from the veterans and new levies of the Illyrian frontier, and a considerable body of Gothic auxiliaries were taken into the Imperial pay. 69 At the head of a chosen army of twenty-five thousand men, Galerius again passed the Euphrates; but, instead of exposing his legions in the open plains of Mesopotamia, he advanced through the mountains of

60 See Hist. Armen. I. c. 4. 51.
61 War between the Corinthians and Persians, the Euphrates, 427 A.D.
62 Dio. trusted to the intrepid valour of Galerius, 6, 2, 7, 11.
63 Dio. trusted to the intrepid valour of Galerius, 6, 2, 7, 11.
64 Dio. trusted to the intrepid valour of Galerius, 6, 2, 7, 11.
65 Dio. trusted to the intrepid valour of Galerius, 6, 2, 7, 11.
66 Dio. trusted to the intrepid valour of Galerius, 6, 2, 7, 11.
67 Dio. trusted to the intrepid valour of Galerius, 6, 2, 7, 11.
68 Dio. trusted to the intrepid valour of Galerius, 6, 2, 7, 11.
69 Dio. trusted to the intrepid valour of Galerius, 6, 2, 7, 11.
Armenia, where he found the inhabitants devoted to his cause, and the country as favourable to the operations of infantry, as it was inconsiderable for the motions of cavalry. Adversity had confirmed the Roman discipline, while the barbarians, elated by success, became so negligent and remiss, that in the moment when they least expected it, they were surprised by the active conduct of Galerius, who, attended only by two horsemen, had with his own eyes secretly examined the state and position of their camp. A surprise, especially in the night-time, was for the most part fatal to a Persian army. Their horses were tied, and generally shackled, to prevent their running away; and if an alarm happened, a Persian had his horse to seize, his horse to ride, and his corset to put on, before he could mount. On this occasion, the impetuous attack of Galerius spread disorder and dismay over the camp of the barbarians. A slight resistance was followed by a dastardly flight and, in the general confusion, the wounded monarch (for Narses had commanded his army in person) fell into the deserts of Media. His unsuccessful tent, and those of his officers, afforded an immense booty to the conqueror; and an incident is mentioned, which proves the rude but martial ignorance of the legions in the elegant superficialities of life. A bag of shining leather, filled with pearls, fell into the hands of a private soldier; he carefully preserved the trinket, but he threw away its context, judging that whatever was of no use could not possibly be of any value. The principal loss of Narses was of a much more affecting nature. Several of his wives, his sisters, and children, who had attended the army, were made captives in the defeat. But though the character of Galerius had in general very little affinity with that of Alexander, he imitated, after his victory, the amiable behaviour of the Macedonian towards the family of Darius. The wives and children of Narses were protected from violence and rapine, conveyed to a place of safety, and treated with every mark of respect and tenderness, that was due from a generous enemy to their age, their sex, and their royal dignity.

While the East anxiously expected the decision of this great contest, the emperor Diocletian, having assembled in Syria a strong army of observation, displayed from a distance the resources of the Roman power, and reserved himself for any future emergency of the war. On the intelligence of the victory, he descended to advance towards the frontier, with a view of moderating, by his presence and counsels, the pride of Galerius. The interview of the Roman princes at Nabilis was accompanied with every expression of respect on one side, and of esteem on the other. It was in that city that they soon afterwards addressed to the august

---

20 Armenian Victor says, "For Armenia, in house compose, and
21 Narses, nol, for Victor composate, ed," He first saw the country
22 Ptol., and the idea of Julius Caesar,
23 Narses, that he knew the Persians-
24 St. Jerome, with the Latin writers.
25 Asia, and the Persians, as well as the Syrians and
26 Roman in the provinces of Syria, Persia, and
27 Galerius, who had been a merchant and
28 The Persians celebrated the Roman expedition in so great as
29 to issue, Europe, p. 19. But this respect and reverence of nations
30 as to be found in their own accounts.

---

31 The answer of the episcopal is taken from the fragment of
32 to the Persians, in the Historia Eppicica published by the
33 to Pious, and the idea of Julius Caesar.
34 to Narses, that he knew the Persians-
35 St. Jerome, as well as the
36 Roman in the provinces of Syria, Persia, and
37 Galerius, who had been a merchant and
38 The Persians celebrated the Roman expedition in so great as
39 to issue, Europe, p. 19. But this respect and reverence of nations
40 as to be found in their own accounts.

---

31 The answer of the episcopal is taken from the fragment of
32 to the Persians, in the Historia Eppicica published by the
33 to Pious, and the idea of Julius Caesar.
34 to Narses, that he knew the Persians-
35 St. Jerome, as well as the
36 Roman in the provinces of Syria, Persia, and
37 Galerius, who had been a merchant and
38 The Persians celebrated the Roman expedition in so great as
39 to issue, Europe, p. 19. But this respect and reverence of nations
40 as to be found in their own accounts.
In pursuance of their promise, the emperor soon afterwards appointed Sernius Probus, one of their secretaries, to acquire the Persian court with their final resolution. As the minister of peace, he was received with every mark of politeness and friendship; but, under the pretence of allowing him the necessary repose after so long a journey, the audience of Probus was deferred from day to day; and he attended the slow motions of the king, till at length he was admitted to his presence, near the river Aspinus in Media. The secret motive of Narses in this delay, had been to collect such a military force as might enable him, though sincerely desirous of peace, to negotiate with the greater weight and dignity. Three persons only assisted at this important conference, the minister Apharath, the prefect of the guards, and an officer who had commanded on the Armenian frontier. 27 The first condition proposed by the ambassador, is not at present of a very intelligible nature; that the city of Nisibis might be established for the place of mutual exchange, or, as we should formerly have termed it, for the staple of trade, between the two empires. There is no difficulty in conceiving the intention of the Roman princes to improve their revenue by some restraints upon commerce; but as Nisibis was situated within their own dominions, and as they were masters both of the imports and exports, it should seem, that such restraints were the objects of an internal law, rather than of a foreign treaty. To render them more effectual, some stipulations were probably required on the side of the king of Persia, which appeared so very repugnant either to his interest or to his dignity, that Narses could not be persuaded to subscribe them. As this was the only article to which he refused his consent, it was no longer insisted on; and the emperors either suffered the trade to flow in its natural channels, or contented themselves with such restrictions as it depended on their own authority to establish.

As soon as this difficulty was removed, a solemn peace was concluded and ratified between the two nations. The conditions of a treaty so glorious to the empire, and so necessary to Persia, may deserve a more particular attention; as the history of Rome presents very few transactions of a similar nature; most of her wars having either been terminated by absolute conquest, or waged against barbarians ignorant of the use of letters.

The Akar, or as it is called by the Arabs, Xomphon, the Araxes, was fixed as the boundary between the two monarchies. 28 That river, which runs near the Tigris, was increased a few miles below Nisibis, by the little stream of the Myghamus, passed under the walls of Sinaqara, and fell into the Euphrates at Circedum, a frontier town, which, by the care of Diocletian, was very strongly fortified. 29 Moreover, the site of so many wars, was ceded to the empire; and the Persians, by this treaty, renounced all pretensions to that great province. II. They relinquished to the Romans five provinces beyond the Tigris, 30 They were all so recent, that in the heart of the despotic monarchies of Asia. The ten thousand Greeks traversed their country, after a painful march, or rather engagement of seven days; and it is confessed by their leaders, in his incomparable relation of the retreat, that they suffered more from the arrows of the Carthagians, than from the power of the Great King. 31 Their posterity, the Curds, with very little alteration, either of name or manners, acknowledged the nominal sovereignty of the Turkish sultan. III. It is almost needless to observe, that Tiridates, the faithful ally of Rome, was restored to the throne of his fathers, and that the rights of its Imperial supremacy were fully asserted and secured. The limits of Armenia were extended as far as the fortress of Sintha in Media, and this increase of dominion was not so much an act of liberality as of justice. Of the provinces already mentioned beyond the Tigris, the first had been dismembered by the Parthians from the crown of Armenia; 32 and when the Romans acquired the possession of them, they stipulated, at the expense of the usurpers, an ample compensation, which invested their ally with the extensive and fertile country of Atespatoz. Its principal city, in the same situation perhaps as the modern Tauros, was frequently honoured with the residence of Tiridates; and as it sometimes bore the name of Ecbatana, it is mentioned, in the buildings and fortifications, the splendid capital of the Medes. IV. The country of Iberia was barren, its inhabitants rude and savage. But they were accustomed to the use of arms, and they separated from the empire barbarians more numerous and more formidable than themselves. The narrow defiles of Mount Caucasus were in their hands, and it was in their choice, either to

---

27 He sent an embassy of three persons (Probus, Narses, and Marcellus) to the Persians, to acquire the consent of the king of Persia. The emperor Narses had been sent as a diplomatic agent to Persia. He was received with the utmost politeness, and the emperor of Persia granted the request of the Romans. The line of the Russian frontier, which was the boundary between the two monarchies, was increased a few miles below Nisibis. The influence of the Russian frontier increased, and the Persians were ceded to the empire. The site of so many wars, was ceded to the empire; and the Persians, by this treaty, renounced all pretensions to that great province.

28 The Akar, or as it is called by the Romans, Xomphon, the Araxes, was fixed as the boundary between the two monarchies. That river, which runs near the Tigris, was increased a few miles below Nisibis, by the little stream of the Myghamus, passed under the walls of Sinaqara, and fell into the Euphrates at Circedum, a frontier town, which, by the care of Diocletian, was very strongly fortified. Moreover, the site of so many wars, was ceded to the empire; and the Persians, by this treaty, renounced all pretensions to that great province.

29 This was the case with the Persians, who were defeated by the Romans at the battle of Issus. It was a great victory for the Persians, and it ended the war between the two empires.

30 They were all so recent, that in the heart of the despotic monarchies of Asia. The ten thousand Greeks traversed their country, after a painful march, or rather engagement of seven days; and it is confessed by their leaders, in his incomparable relation of the retreat, that they suffered more from the arrows of the Carthagians, than from the power of the Great King. Their posterity, the Curds, with very little alteration, either of name or manners, acknowledged the nominal sovereignty of the Turkish sultan.

31 It is almost needless to observe, that Tiridates, the faithful ally of Rome, was restored to the throne of his fathers, and that the rights of its Imperial supremacy were fully asserted and secured. The limits of Armenia were extended as far as the fortress of Sintha in Media, and this increase of dominion was not so much an act of liberality as of justice. Of the provinces already mentioned beyond the Tigris, the first had been dismembered by the Parthians from the crown of Armenia; and when the Romans acquired the possession of them, they stipulated, at the expense of the usurpers, an ample compensation, which invested their ally with the extensive and fertile country of Atespatoz.

32 Its principal city, in the same situation perhaps as the modern Tauros, was frequently honoured with the residence of Tiridates; and as it sometimes bore the name of Ecbatana, it is mentioned, in the buildings and fortifications, the splendid capital of the Medes.
Romanas felt and confessed the power of this agreeable illusion. It was derived from their ancestors, had grown up with their earliest habits of life, and was protected, in some measure, by the opinion of political utility. The form and the seat of government were intimately blended together, nor was it esteemed possible to transport the one without destroying the other. But the sovereignty of the capital was gradually annihilated in the extent of conquest; the provinces rose to the same level, and the vanquished nations acquired the name and privileges, without muffling the partial affections, of Romans. During a long period, however, the remains of the ancient constitution, and the influence of custom, preserved the dignity of Rome. The empire, though perhaps of African or Illyrian extraction, respected their adopted country, as the seat of their power, and the centre of their extensive dominions. The emergencies of war very frequently required their presence on the frontiers; but Diocletian and Maximian were the last Roman princes who fixed, in time of peace, their ordinary residence in the provinces; and their conduct, however it might be suggested by private motives, was justified by very specious considerations of policy. 

The court of the emperor of the West was, for the most part, established at Milan, whose situation, at the foot of the Alps, appeared far more convenient than that of Rome, for the important purpose of watching the motions of the barbarians of Germany. Milan soon assumed the splendour of an Imperial city. The house are described as numerous and well built; the manners of the people as polished and liberal. A circus, a theatre, a mithraeum, a palace, baths, which became the name of their founder Maximian; ports adorned with statues, and a double circumference of walls, contributed to the beauty of the new capital; nor did it seem oppressed even by the proximity of Rome. To rival the majesty of Rome was the ambition and resentment of Diocletian, who employed his leisure, and the wealth of the East, in the embellishment of Nicomedia, a city placed on the verge of Europe and Asia, almost at an equal distance between the Danube and the Euphrates. By the taste of the monarch, and at his expense, the people, Nicomedia acquired, in the space of a few years, a degree of magnificence which might appear to rival the elevation of the old and became inferior only to Rome, Alexandria, and Antioch, in extent or population.

The life of Diocletian and Maximian was a life of action, and a considerable portion of it was spent in camps, or in their long and frequent

59 unless, unne
marches; but whenever the public business allowed them any relaxation, they seem to have repaired with pleasure to their favourite residences of Nemi, and Milan. Till Diocletian, in the twentieth year of his reign, celebrated his Roman triumph, it is extremely doubtful whether he ever visited the ancient capital of the empire. Even on that memorable occasion his stay did not exceed two months. Disguised with the licentious familiarity of the people, he quitet Rome with precipitation thirteen days before it was expected that he should have appeared in the senate, invested with the ensigns of the consular dignity.35

The dislike expressed by Diocletian towards Rome and Roman freedom, was not the effect of momentary caprice, but the result of the most artful policy. That crafty prince had framed a new system of Imperial government, which was afterwards completed by the family of Constantine; and as the image of the old constitution was religiously preserved in the senate, he resolved to deprive that order of its small remains of power and consideration. We may recollect, about eight years before the elevation of Diocletian, the transient greatness, and the ambitious hopes, of the Roman senate. As long as that enthusiasm prevailed, many of the nobles imprudently displayed their zeal in the cause of freedom; and after the successors of Probus had withdrawn their constancy from the republican party, the senators were unable to disguise their impatient resentment. As the sovereign of Italy, Maximian was instrusted with the care of extinguishing this troublesome, rather than dangerous spirit, and the task was perfectly suited to his cruel temper. The most illustrious members of the senate, whom Diocletian always affected to esteem, were involved, by his colleagues, in the accusation of imaginary plots; and the possession of an elegant villa, or a well-cultivated estate, was interpreted as a convincing evidence of guilt.36 The camp of the praetorians, which had so long oppressed, began to protect, the majesty of Rome; and as those haughty troops were conscious of the decline of their power, they were naturally disposed to unite their strength with the authority of the senate. By the prudent measures of Diocletian, the numbers of the praetorians were immensely reduced, their privileges abolished,37 and their place supplied by two faithful legions of Illyricum, who, under the new titles of Jovians and Herculanis, were appointed to perform the service of the Imperial guards.38 But the most fatal though secret wound, which the senate received from the hands of Diocletian and Maximian, was inflicted by the inevitable operation of their absence. As long as the emperors resided at Rome, that assembly might be oppressed, but it could scarcely be neglected. The successors of Augustus exercised the power of dictating whatever laws their wisdom or caprice might suggest; but those laws were ratified by the sanction of the senate. The model of ancient freedom was preserved in its deliberations and decrees; and wise princes, who respected the prejudices of the Roman people, were in some measure obliged to assume the language and behaviour suitable to the general and first magistrate of the republic. In the armies and in the provinces, they displayed the dignity of monarchs; and when they fixed their residence at a distance from the capital, they for ever laid aside the dissimulation which Augustus had recommended to his successors. In the exercise of the legislative as well as the executive power, the sovereign advised with his ministers, instead of consulting the great council of the nation. The name of the senate was mentioned with honour till the last period of the empire; the vanity of its members was still flattered with honorary distinctions;39 but the assembly which had so long been the source, and so long the instrument of power, was respectfully suffered to sink into oblivion. The senate of Rome, losing all connection with the Imperial court and the actual constitution, was left a venerable but useless monument of antiquity on the Capitoline hill.

When the Roman princes had lost sight of the senate and their ancient capital, they easily forgot the origin and nature of their legal power. The civil offices of consul, of proconsul, of censor, and of tribunes, by the union of which it had been formed, betrayed to the people its republican extraction. These modest titles were laid aside;40 and if they still distinguished their high station, by the appellation of emperor, or Imperator, that word was understood in a new and more dignified sense, and no longer denoted the general of the Roman armies, but the sovereign of the Roman world. The name of emperor, which was at first of a military nature, was associated with another of a more servile kind. The spirit of Despotism, or Lord, in its primitive signification, was expressive, not of the authority of a prince over his subjects, or of a commander over his soldiers, but of the despotic power of a master over his domestic slaves.41 Viewing it in that odious light, it had been rejected with abhorrence by the first Caesars. Their resistance insensibly became more formidable, and the name less odious; till at length the style of our Lord and Emperor was not only bestowed by flattery, but was regularly admitted into the laws and public monuments. Such lofty epithets were

35 Lucianus, p. 11.4. 36 On a similar account, Athenianus accuses the senate of insolence, as too open to an Imperial assembly. Athen. cont. 120. 37 See the Theodosian Code, C. v. c. 374. 38 See the Theodosian Code, C. v. c. 373. 39 See the Theodosian Code, C. v. c. 418. 40 See the Theodosian Code, C. v. c. 550. 41 See the Theodosian Code, C. v. c. 550. 42 See the Theodosian Code, C. v. c. 551. 43 See the Theodosian Code, C. v. c. 552.
sufficient to estate and satisfy the most excessive vanity; and if the successors of Diocletian still declined the title of king, it seems to have been the effect not so much of their moderation as of their delicacy. Wherever the Latin tongue was in use (and it was the language of government throughout the empire), the Imperial title, as it was peculiar to themselves, conveyed a more respectable idea than the name of King, which they must have shared with an hundred barbarous chieftains; or which, at the best, they could derive only from Romulus or from Tarquin. But the sentiments of the East were very different from those of the West. From the earliest period of history, the sovereigns of Asia had been celebrated in the Greek language by the title of Basileus, or King: and since it was considered as the first distinction among men, it was soon employed by the servile provincials of the East, in their humble addresses to the Roman throne.48 Even the attributes, or at least the titles of the Divinité, were usurped by Diocletian and Maximian, who transmitted them to a succession of Christian emperors.49 Such extravagant compliments, however, soon lose their impress by losing their meaning; and when the sun is once accustomed to the sound, they are tossed with indifference as vague though excessive professions of respect.

From the time of Augustus to that of Diocletian, the Roman princes conversing in a familiar manner among their fellow-subjects, were saluted only with the same respect that was usually paid to senators and magistrates. Their principal distinction was the imperial or military role of people; whilst the senatorial garb was marked by a broad, and the equestrian by a narrow, band or stripe of the same honourable colour. The pride, or rather the policy, of Diocletian, engaged that artful prince to introduce the stately magnificence of the court of Persia. He ventured to assume the diadem, an ornament debased by the Romans as the odious emblems of royalty, and the use of which had been considered as the most degrading act of the madness of Caligula. It was no more than a broad white fillet set with pearls, which en-circled the emperor's head. The sumptuous robes of Diocletian and his successors were of silk and gold; and it is remarked with indignation, that even their shoes were studded with the most precious gems. The access to their sacred person was every day rendered more difficult, by the institution of new forms and ceremonies. The avenues of the palace were strictly guarded by the various schools, as they began to be called, of domestic officers. The interior apartments were intrusted to the jealous vigilance of the eunuchs; the increase of whose numbers and influence was the most infaillible symptom of the progress of despotism. When a subject was at length admitted to the Imperial presence, he was obliged, whatever might be his rank, to fall prostrate on the ground, and to adore, according to the eastern fashion, the divinity of his lord and master.50 Diocletian was a man of sense, who, in the course of private as well as public life, had formed a just estimate both of himself and of mankind: nor is it easy to conceive, that in substituting the manners of Persia to those of Rome, he was seriously actuated by so mean a principle as that of vanity. He flattered himself, that an ostentation of splendour and luxury would subdue the imagination of the multitude; that the monarch would be less exposed to the rude licence of the people and the soldiers, as his person was secluded from the public view; and that habits of submission would insensibly be productive of sentiments of veneration. Like the modesty affected by Augustus, the state maintained by Diocletian was a theatrical representation; but it must be confessed, that of the two emperors, the former was of a much more liberal and manly character than the latter. It was the aim of the one to disguise, and the object of the other to display, the unbounded power which the emperors possessed over the Roman world.

Orientation was the first principle of the new system instituted by Diocletian. The second was division.

He divided the empire, the provinces, and every branch of the civil as well as military administration. He multiplied the wheels of the machinery of government, and rendered its operations less rapid but more secure. Whatever advantages and whatever defects might attend these innovations, they must be ascribed in a very great degree to the first inventor; but as the new frame of policy was gradually improved and completed by succeeding princes, it will be more satisfactory to delay the consideration of it till the season of its full maturity and perfection.51 Reserving, therefore, for the reign of Constantine a more exact picture of the new empire, we shall content ourselves with describing the principal and decisive outline, as it was traced by the hand of Diocletian. He had associated three colleagues in the exercise of the supreme power; and as he was convinced that the abilities of a single man were inadequate to the public defence, he considered the joint administration of four princes not as a temporary expedient, but as a fundamental law of the constitution. It was his intention, that the two elder princes should be distinguished by the use of the diadem, and the title of Augusti; that, as affection or esteem might direct their choice, they should regularly call to their assistance two subordinate colleagues; and that the Caesars, rising in their turn to the first rank, should supply an uninterrupted succession of emperors. The empire was divided into four parts. The East and Italy were the most honourable, the Danube and the Rhine the most labouring stations. The former claimed the presence of the Augusti, the latter were intrusted

48 Roman de Sagitt. Hist. Pers., p. 12. I am indebted for this quotation to the able de Lebessus.

49 The Buddhist notion of the President, or head of their sect, is founded on the name of Jehu, or John, the second President. The name of Jehu was given to an Arab emperor.

50 Antiquitates Hierosolymitanae, tom. i. p. 274. The name of Jehu, or John, the second President. The name of Jehu was given to an Arab emperor.

51 The division into the four parts of the empire is said to have been determined by Diocletian, and by the Emperor Constantine in the year 335, and was afterwards confirmed by the new and various office, which, to the Theodosian code, appear already established in the beginning of the reign of Constantine.
to the administration of the Caesars. The strength of the legions was in the hands of the four partners of sovereignty, and the despair of successively vanquishing four formidable rivals, might intimidate the ambition of an aspiring general. In their civil government, the emperors were supposed to exercise the undivided power of the monarch, and their editors, inscribed with their joint names, were received in all the provinces, as promulgated by their mutual councils and authority. Notwithstanding these precautions, the political union of the Roman world was gradually dissolved, and a principle of division was introduced, which, in the course of a few years, occasioned the perpetual separation of the eastern and western empires.

The system of Diocletian was of itself accompanied with another very material disadvantage, which cannot even at present be totally overlooked; a more expensive establishment, and consequently an increase of taxes, and the oppression of the people. Instead of a modest family of slaves and freedmen, such as had contended the simple gentry of Augustus and Trajan, three or four magnificent courts were established in the various parts of the empire, and as many Roman kings contended with each other and with the Persian monarch for the vain superiority of pomp and luxury. The number of ministers, of magistrates, of officers, and of servitors, who filled the different departments of the state, was multiplied beyond the example of former times; and (if we may borrow the sarcastic expression of a contemporary) when the proportion of those who received, exceeded the proportion of those who contributed, the provinces were oppressed by the weight of tributes. From this period to the extinction of the empire, it would be easy to deduce an uninterrupted series of clamours and complaints. According to his religion and situation, each writer chooses either Diocletian, or Constantine, or Valens, or Theodosius, for the object of his invectives; but they unanimously agree in representing the burden of the public impositions, and particularly the land-tax and capitation, as the intolerable and increasing grievance of their own times. From such a concurrence, an impartial historian, who is obliged to extract truth from satire, as well as from panegyric, will be inclined to divide the blame among the princes whom they accuse, and to ascribe their exactions much less to their personal vices, than to the uniform system of their administration. The emperor Diocletian was indeed the author of that system; but during his reign the growing evil was confined within the bounds of modesty and discretion, and he deserves the reproach of establishing pernicious precedents, rather than of exercising actual oppression. It may be added, that his revenues were managed with prudent economy; and that after all the current expenses were discharged, there still remained in the Imperial treasury an ample provision either for judicious liberality or for any emergency of the state.

It was in the twenty-first year of his reign that Diocletian executed his memorable resolution of abdicating the empire; an action more naturally to have been expected from the elder or the younger Antoninus, than from a prince who had never practised the lessons of philosophy either in the attachment or in the use of supreme power. Diocletian acquired the glory of giving to the world the first example of a resignation, which has been very frequently imitated by succeeding monarchs. The parallel of Charles the Fifth, however, will naturally offer itself to our mind, not only since the eloquence of a modern historian has rendered that name so familiar to an English reader, but from the very striking resemblance between the characters of the two emperors, whose political abilities were superior to their military genius, and whose specious virtues were much less the effect of nature than of art. The abdication of Charles appears to have been hastened by the vicissitude of fortune; and the disappointment of his favourite schemes urged him to relinquish a power which he found inadequate to his ambition. But the reign of Diocletian had flowed with the tide of uninterrupted success; nor was it till after he had vanquished all his enemies, and accomplished all his designs, that he seems to have entertained any serious thoughts of resigning the empire. Neither Charles nor Diocletian were arrived at a very advanced period of life; since the one was only fifty-five, and the other no more than fifty-nine years of age; but the active life of those princes, their wars and journeys, the cares of royalty, and their application to business, had already impaired their constitution, and brought on the infirmities of a premature old age.

Notwithstanding the severity of a very cold and rainy winter, Diocletian left Italy soon after the ceremony of his triumph, and began his progress towards the East round the circuit of the Illyrian provinces. From the inclemency of the weather, and the fatigue of the journey, he soon contracted a severe illness; and though he made easy marches, and was generally carried in a close litter, his disorder, before he arrived at Nicomaedia, about the end of the summer, was become very serious and alarming. During the whole winter he was confined to his palace; his life being inspired a general and unaffected concern; but the people could only judge of the various alterations of his health, from the joy or consternation which they discovered in the countenance and behaviour of his attendants. The rumour of his death was for some time universally believed; and it was supposed to be concealed, with a view to prevent the troubles that might have happened during the absence of the Caesar Galerius. At length, however, on the first of March, Diocletian once more appeared in public, but so pale and emaciated, that he could scarcely have been recognised by those to whom his person was the most familiar source of public and private authority. But Diocletian, 343, A.D.
familiar. It was time to put an end to the painful struggle, which he had sustained during more than a year, between the care of his health and that of his dignity. The former required indulgence and relaxation; the latter compelled him to direct, from the best of sickness, the administration of a great empire. He resolved to pass the remainder of his days in honourable repose, to place his glory beyond the reach of fortune, and to relinquish the theatre of the world to his younger and more active associates.

The ceremony of his abdication was performed in a spacious plain, about three miles from Nicomedia. The emperor ascended a lofty throne, and, in a speech full of reason and dignity, declared his intention, both to the people and to the soldiers who were assembled on this extraordinary occasion. As soon as he had divested himself of the purple, he withdrew from the gazing multitude, and traversing the city, in a covered chariot, proceeded without delay to the favourite retirement which he had chosen in his native country of Dalmatia.

On the same day, which was the first of May, Maximian, as it had been previously concerted, made his renunciation of the Imperial dignity at Milan. Even in the splendour of the Roman triumph, Diocletian had mediated his design of abdicating the government. As he wished to secure the obedience of Maximian, he exacted from him either a general assurance that he would submit his actions to the authority of his benefactor, or a particular promise that he would desist from the throne, whenever he should receive the advice and the example. This engagement, though it was confirmed by the solemnity of an oath before the altar of the Capitoline Jupiter, would have proved a feeble restraint on the fierce temper of Maximian, whose passion was the love of power, and who neither desired present tranquillity nor future reputation. But he yielded, however reluctantly, to the ascendant which his wiser colleague had acquired over him, and retired, immediately after his abdication, to a villa in Lucania, where it was almost impossible that such an impenitent spirit could find any lasting tranquillity.

Diocletian, who, from a servile origin, had raised himself to the throne, passed the nine last years of his life in a private condition. Reason had dictated, and content seems to have accompanied, his retreat, in which he enjoyed for a long time the respect of those princes to whom he had resigned the possession of the world. It is seldom that minds, long exercised in business, have formed any habits of conversing with themselves; and, in the loss of power, they principally regret the want of occupation. The amusements of letters and of devotion, which afford so many resources in solitude, were incapable of filling the attention of Diocletian; but he had preserved, or at least he soon received, taste for the most innocent as well as natural pleasures, and his leisure hours were successfully employed in building, painting, and gardening. His answer to Maximian is deservedly celebrated. He was solicited by that restless old man to resume the reins of government, and the Imperial purple. He rejected the temptation with a smile of pity, calmly observing, that if he could show Maximian the advantages which he had enjoyed with his own hands at Salona, he should no longer be urged to relinquish the enjoyment of happiness for the pursuit of power. In his conversations with his friends he frequently acknowledged, that of all arts, the most difficult was the art of reigning; and he expressed himself on that favourite topic with a degree of warmth which could be the result only of experience. How often, may he assure us, is it the interest of four or five ministers to combine together to deprive their sovereign! Excluded from mankind by his exalted dignity, the truth is concealed from his knowledge, he can see only with his eyes; he hears nothing but their misrepresentations. He confers the most important offices upon vice and weakness, and disgraces the最 virtuous and deserving among his subjects. By such infamous arts, added Diocletian, the best and wisest princes are sold to the venal corruption of their courtiers. A just estimate of greatness, and the assurance of immortal fame, improve our reli to the pleasures of retirement; but the Roman emperor had filled too important a character in the world to enjoy without alloy the comforts and security of a private condition. It was impossible that he could remain ignorant of the troubles which afflicted the empire after his abdication. It was impossible that he could be indifferent to their consequences. Fears, sorrow, and discontent, sometimes pursued him into the solitude of Salona. His tardiness, or at least his prudence, was deeply wounded by the misfortunes of his wife and daughter; and the last moments of Diocletian were unhithered by some afflictions, which Licinius and Constantine might have spared the father of so many emperors, and the first author of their own fortune. A report, though of a very doubtful nature, has reached our times, that he prudently withdrew himself from their power by a voluntary death.

Before we consider the condition of the life and character of Diocletian, we may, for a moment,
direct our view to the place of his residence, Salona, a principal city of his native province of Dalmatia, was near two hundred Roman miles (according to the measurement of the public highways) from Aquileia and the confines of Italy; and, about two hundred and seventy from Sirium, the natal residence of the emperors whenever they visited the Ilyrian frontier. A miserable village still preserves the name of Salona; but so late as the sixteenth century the remains of a theatre, and a confused prospect of broken arches and marble columns, continued to attest its ancient splendour. About six or seven miles from the city, Diocletian constructed a magnificent palace; and we may infer, from the greatness of the work, how long he had meditated his design of abdicating the empire. The choice of a spot which united all that could contribute either to health or to luxury, did not require the partiality of a native. The soil was dry and fertile; the air pure and wholesome; and, though extremely hot during the summer months, this country seldom feels those sultry and noxious winds to which the coasts of Istria and some parts of Italy are exposed. The views from the palace are no less beautiful than the soil and climate were invigorating. Towards the west lies the fertile plain that stretches along the Adriatic, in which a number of small islands are scattered; in such a manner as to give this part of the sea the appearance of a great lake. On the north side lies the bay, which led to the ancient city of Salona; and the country beyond its appearance of a proper contrast to that more extensive prospect of water which the Adriatic presents both in the south and to the east. Towards the north, the view is terminated by high and irregular mountains; situated at a proper distance, and, in many places, covered with villages, woods, and vineyards.

Though Constantine, from a very obvious prejudice, affects to mention the palace of Diocletian with contempt, yet one of its successors, who could only see it in a neglected and mutilated state, celebrates its magnificence in terms of the highest admiration. It covered an extent of ground consisting of between three and ten English acres. The form was quadrangular, flanked with six towers. Two of the sides were near six hundred, and the other two near seven hundred, feet in length. The whole was constructed of a beautiful five-stone, extracted from the neighbouring quarries of Trum or Trugutium, and very little inferior to marble itself. Four streets, intersecting each other at right angles, divided the several parts of this great edifice, and the approach to the principal apartment was from a very stately entrance, which is still denominated the Golden Gate. The approach was terminated by a peristyle of granite columns, on one side of which we discover the square temple of Apollo; on the other the octagonal temple of Jupiter. The latter of these deities Diocletian reverenced as the patron of his fortunes; the former as the protector of his health. By comparing the present remains with the precepts of Vitruvius, the several parts of the building, the baths, hall, chamber, the narthex, the basilica, and the Cyriace, Corinthian, and Egyptian halls have been described with some degree of precision, or, at least of probability. Their forms were various, their proportions just; but they were all attended with two imperfections, very repugnant to our modern notions of taste and convenience. These faulty rooms had neither windows nor chimneys. They were lighted from the top (for the building seems to have consisted of no more than one storey); and they received their heat by the help of pipes that were conveyed along the walls. The range of principal apartments was protected towards the south-west by a portico five hundred and seventeen feet long, which must have formed a very noble and delightful walk, when the beauty of painting and sculpture was added to those of the prospect. Had this magnificent edifice remained in a solitary country, it would have been exposed to the ravages of time; but it might, perhaps, have escaped the ravages of time, if not of man. The village of Aspalathus, and, long afterwards, the provincial town of Spalatro, have grown out of its ruins. The Golden Gate now opens into the market-place. St. John the Baptist has usurped the honours of Apollo; and the temple of Jupiter, under the protection of the Virgin, is converted into the cathedral church. For this account of Diocletian's palace we are principally indebted to an ingenious artist of our own time and country, whose a very liberal curiosity carried into the heart of Dalmatia. But there is room to suspect, that the elegance of his designs and engravings has somewhat falsified the objects which it was their purpose to represent. We are informed by ...
not only of the forms of nature, but of the characters and passions of the human soul. In those sublime arts, the dexterity of the hand is of little avail, unless it is animated by fancy, and guided by the most correct taste and observation.

It is almost unnecessary to remark, that the civil distractions of the empire, the licentiousness of the soldiery, the disorders of the barbarians, and the progress of despotism, had proved very unfavourable to genius, and even to learning. The succession of Illyrian ministers restored the empire, without resuming the sciences. Their military education was not calculated to inspire them with the love of letters; and even the mind of Diocletian, however active and copious in business, was totally uninformed by study, or speculation. The professions of law and physic are of such common use and certain profit, that they will always secure a sufficient number of practitioners, endowed with a reasonable degree of abilities and knowledge; but it does not appear that the students in those two faculties appeal to any, celebrated masters who have flourished within that period. The voice of poetry was silent. History was reduced to dry and confused abridgments, alike destitute of amusement and instruction. A languid and affected eloquence was still retained in the pay and service of the emperors, who encouraged not any art except those which contributed to the gratification of their pride, or the defence of their power.\(^{185}\)

The declining age of learning, and of mankind is marked, however, by the rise and rapid progress of the new Platonists. The school of Alexandria silenced those of Athens; and the ancient sects enrolled themselves under the banners of the more fashionable teachers, who recommended their system by the novelty of their method, and the austerity of their manners. Several of those masters, Ammonius, Plotinus, Amphilochus, and Porphyry,\(^{186}\) were men of profound thought, and intense application; but by mistaking the true object of philosophy, their labours contributed much less to improve, than to corrupt the human understanding. The knowledge that is suited to our situation and powers, the whole compass of moral, natural, and mathematical science, was neglected by the new Platonists, whilst they exhausted their strength in the verbal disputations of metaphysics, attempted to explore the secrets of the invisible world, and studied to reconcile Aristotle with Plato, on subjects of which both those philosophers were as ignorant as the rest of mankind. Consuming their reason in those deep and unsubstantial meditations, their minds were exposed to illusions of fancy. They flattered themselves that they possessed the secret of disarming the soul from its corporeal prison; claimed a familiar intercourse with deities and spirits; and, by a very singular revolution, converted the study of philosophy into that of magic. The ancient sages had decided the popular superstition; after disguising its extravagance by the thin pretence of allegory, the disciples of Plotinus and Porphyry became its most zealous defenders. As they agreed with the Christians in a few mysterious points of faith, they attacked the remains of their theological system with all the fury of civil war. The new Platonists would scarcely deserve a place in the history of science, but in that of the church the mention of them will very frequently occur.

CHAP. XIV.

Troubles after the Abolition of Diocletian.—Death of Constantius.—Elevation of Constantine and Maximian.—Sieges of Rome at the same Time.—Death of Maximian and Gallienus. —Victories of Constantine over Maximi anus and Licinius.—Re-union of the Empire under the Authority of Constantine.

The balance of power established by Diocletian subsisted no longer than while it was maintained by the firm and dexterous hand of the founder. It required such a fortunate mixture of different tempers and abilities, as could scarcely be found or even expected a second time; two emperors without jealousy, two Caesars without ambition, and the same general interest invariably pursued by four independent princes. The abdication of Diocletian and Maximian was succeeded by eighteen years of discord and confusion. The empire was afflicted by five civil wars; and the remainder of the time was not so much a state of tranquillity as a suspension of arms between several hostile monarchs, who, viewing each other with an eye of fear and hatred, strove to increase their respective forces at the expense of their subjects.

As soon as Diocletian and Maximian had resigned the purple, their place was filled by the two Caesars, Constantine and Galerius, who immediately assumed the title of Augustus.\(^{1}\) The honors of seniority and precedence were allowed to the former of those princes, and he continued, under a new appellation, to administer his ancient department of Gaul, Spain, and Britain. The government of those ample provinces was sufficient to exercise his talents, and to satisfy his ambition. Clemency, temperance, and moderation, distinguished the amiable character of Constantine, and his friends.

---

1. Edward Gibbon's, History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire, is a specific historical work that provides context for the events described. It was published in eight volumes between 1788 and 1794. The passage mentioned is likely a reference to this work. Gibson's text provides a comprehensive overview of the political, social, and cultural developments of the Roman Empire. It is a seminal work in the field of classical history, offering a detailed account of the empire's decline from its peak until its fall.

2. The Roman Numeral system, like the Roman calendar, is a specific system used in ancient Rome for numbering and recording dates. It is a place-value system based on letters of the Roman alphabet. The passage mentioned is likely a reference to this system, as Gibbon uses it to describe dates or periods in his narrative. Roman numerals are a method of denoting numbers using letters from the Latin alphabet.
uneat subjects had frequently occasion to compare the virtues of their sovereign with the passions of Maximiun, and even with the acts of Diocletian. Instead of imitating their eastern pride and magnificence, Constantine preserved the modesty of a Roman prince. He declared, with unaffected sincerity, that his most valued treasure was in the hearts of his people, and that, whatever the dignity of the throne, or the danger of the state, required any extraordinary supply, he could depend with confidence on their gratitude and liberality. The provincials of Gaul, Spain, and Britain, sensible of his worth, and of their own happiness, reflected with anxiety on the declining health of the emperor Constantine, and the tender age of his numerous family, the issue of his second marriage with the daughter of Maximiun.

The stern temper of Galerius was cast in a very different mould; and while he commanded the esteem of his subjects, he seldom condescended to solicit their affections. His fame in arms, and above all, the success of the Persian war, had elated his haughty mind, which was naturally impatient of a superior, or even of an equal. If it were possible to rely on the partial testimony of an injudicious writer, we might attribute the abdication of Diocletian to the machinations of Galerius, and relate the particulars of a private conversation between the two princes, in which the former discovered as much pusillanimity as the latter displayed in ingratitude and arrogance. But those obscure anecdotes are sufficiently refuted by an impartial view of the character and conduct of Diocletian. Whatever might otherwise have been his intentions, if he had appreciated any danger from the violence of Galerius, his good sense would have instructed him to prevent the ignominious contest; and as he had held the sceptre with glory, he would have resigned it without disgrace.

After the elevation of Constantine and Galerius to the rank of Augustus, two new Caesars were required to supply their place, and to complete the system of the Imperial government. Diocletian was sincerely desirous of withdrawing himself from the world; he considered Galerius, who had married his daughter, as the firmest support of his family and of the empire; and he consented, without reluctance, that his successor should assume the merit as well as the envy of the important nomination. It was fixed without consulting the interest or inclination of the princes of the West. Each of them had a son who was arrived at the age of manhood, and who might have been deemed the most natural candidates for the vacant honour. But the in-
the concubine of Constantius. 9 The great Constantine was most probably born at Naissus, in Dacia; 10 and it is not surprising, that in a family and province distinguished only by the profession of arms, the youth should discover very little inclination to improve his mind by the acquisition of knowledge. 11 He was about eighteen years of age when his father was promoted to the rank of Caesar; but that fortunate event was attended with his mother’s divorce, and the splendour of an imperial alliance reduced the son of Helena to a state of disgrace and humiliation. Instead of following Constantius in the West, he remained in the service of Diocletian, signalled his valour in the wars of Egypt and Persia, and gradually rose to the honourable station of a tribune of the first order. The figure of Constantine was tall and majestic; he was dexterous in all his exercises, intrepid in war, affable in peace; in his whole conduct, the active spirit of youth was tempered by habitual prudence; and while his mind was engrossed by ambition, he appeared cold and insensible to the allurements of pleasure. The favour of the people and soldiers, who had named him as the worthy candidate for the rank of Caesar, were only to exasperate the jealousy of Galerius; and though prudence might restrain him from exercising any open violence, an absolute monstrosity is seldom at a loss how to execute success and secret revenge. 12 Every hour increased the danger of Constantine, and the anxiety of his father; who, by repeated letters, expressed the warmest desire of embracing his son. For some time the policy of Galerius supplied him with delays and excuses, but it was impossible long to refuse so natural a request of his associate, without maintaining his refusal by arms. The permission of the journey was reluctantly granted, and whatever pretences the emperor might have taken to intercept a return, the consequences of which he, with so much reason, apprehended, they were effectually disapproved by the incredible diligence of Constantine. 13

Leaving the palace of Nicomedia in the night, he travelled post through Thrace, Dacia, Pannonia, Italy and Gaul, and amidst the joyful acclamations of the people, reached the port of Boulogne, in the very season when his father was preparing to embark for Britain. 14

The British expedition, and an easy victory over the barbarians of Caledonia, were the last exploits of the reign of Constantine. He ended his life in the Imperial palace of York, fifteen months after he had received the title of Augustus, and almost fourteen years and a half after he had been promoted to the rank of Caesar. His death was immediately succeeded by the elevation of Constantine. The ideas of inheritance and succession are so very familiar, that the generality of mankind consider them as founded, not only in reason, but in nature itself. Our imagination readily transfers the same principles from private property to public dominion; and whenever a virtuous father leaves behind him a son whose merit seems to justify the esteem, or even the hopes of the people, the joint influence of prejudice and of affection operates with irresistible weight. The flower of the western armies had followed Constantine into Britain, and the national troops were reinforced by a numerous body of Alernari, who obeyed the orders of Cyricus, one of their hereditary chieftains. 14 The opinion of their own importance, and the assurance that Britain, Gaul, and Spain, would acquiesce in their nomination, were indulgently inculcated to the legions by the adherents of Constantine. The soldiers were asked, whether they could hesitate a moment between the honour of placing their head the worthy son of their beloved emperor, and the ignominy of tamely expecting the arrival of some obscure stranger, on whom it might please the sovereign of Asia to bestow the armies and provinces of the West? It was insinuated to them, that gratitude and liberality held a distinguished place among the virtues of Constantine; nor did that artful prince show himself to the troops, till they were prepared to salute him with the names of Augustus and Emperor. The throne was the object of his desires; and had he been less actuated by ambition, it was his only means of safety. He was well acquainted with the character and sentiments of Galerius, and sufficiently apprised, that if he wished to live he must determine to reign. The decent and even obstinate resistance which he chose to offer, 15 was contrived to justify his usurpation; nor did he yield to the acclamations of the army, till he had provided the proper materials for a letter, which he immediately despatched to the emperor of the East. Constantine informed him of the melancholy event of his father’s death, modestly
asserted his natural claim to the succession, and respectfully intimated, that the affectionate violence of his troops had not permitted him to solicit the Imperial purple in the regular and constitutional manner. The first emotions of Galerius were those of surprise, disappointment, and rage; and as he could seldom restrain his passions, he loudly threatened, that he would commit to the flames both the letter and the messenger. But his resentment insensibly subsided; and when he recollected the doubtful chance of war, when he had weighed the character and strength of his adversary, he consented to embrace the honourable accommodation which the prudence of Constantine had left open to him. Without either condemning or nullifying the choice of the British army, Galerius accepted the son of his deceased colleague, as the sovereign of the provinces beyond the Alps; but he gave him only the title of Caesar, and the fourth rank among the Roman princes, whilst he conferred the vacant place of Augustus on his favourite Severus. The apparent harmony of the empire was still preserved, and Constantine, who already possessed the substance, expected, without impatience, an opportunity of obtaining the honours, of supreme power. 17

The children of Constantius by his second marriage were six in number, three of either sex; and whose Imperial descent might have solicited a preference over the meaner extraction of the son of Holena. But Constantine was in the thirty-second year of his age, in the full vigour both of mind and body, at the time when the eldest of his brothers could not possibly be more than thirteen years old. His claim of superior merit had been allowed and ratified by the dying emperor. 18 In his last moments, Constantine besought his eldest son the care of the safety as well as greatness of the family; conjuring him to assume both the authority and the sentiments of a father with regard to the children of Theodos. Their liberal education, advantageous marriage, the secure dignity of their lives, and the first honours of the state with which they were invested, attested the fraternal affection of Constantine; and as those princes possessed a mild and grateful disposition, they submitted without reluctance to the superiority of his genius and fortune. 19

II. The ambitious spirit of Galerius was scarcely reconciled to the disappointment of his views upon the Gallic provinces, before the unexpected loss of Italy wounded his pride as well as power in a still more sensible part. The long absence of the emperors had filled Rome with discontent and indignation; and the people gradually covered, that the preference given to Nicomedia and Milan, was not to be ascribed to the particular inclination of Diocletian, but to the permanent form of government which he had instituted. It was in vain that a few months after his abdication, his successors, dedicated, under his name, those magnificent baths, whose ruins still supply the ground as well as the materials for so many churches and convents. 20 The tranquillity of those elegant recesses of ease and luxury was disturbed by the impatient murmurs of the Romans, and a report was insensibly circulated, that the sums expended in erecting those buildings would soon be required at their hands. About that time the aversion of Galerius, or perhaps the exigencies of the state, had induced him to make a very strict and rigorous inquisition into the property of his subjects, for the purpose of a general taxation, both on their lands and on their persons. A very minute survey appears to have been taken of their real estates; and whenever there was the slightest suspicion of concealment, torture was very freely employed to obtain a sincere declaration of their personal wealth. 21 The privileges which had exalted Italy above the rank of the provinces were no longer regarded; and the office of the revenue already began to number the Roman people, and to settle the proportion of the new taxes. Even when the spirit of freedom had been utterly extinguished, the taxes, subjects have sometimes ventured to resist an unpretended invasion of their property; but on this occasion the injury was aggravated by the base, and the sense of private interest was quickened by that of national honour. The conquest of Macedonia, as we have already observed, had delivered the Roman people from the weight of personal taxes. Though they had experienced every form of despotism, they had now enjoyed that exemption near five hundred years; nor could they patiently brook the insolence of an Illyrian peasant, who, from his distant residence in Asia, presumed to number Rome among the tributary cities of his empire. The rising fury of the people was encouraged by the authority, or at least the connivance, of the senate; and the feeble remains of the praetorian guards, who had reason to apprehend their own dissolution, embraced so honourable a pretence, and declared their readiness to draw their swords in the service of their oppressed country. It was the wish, and it soon became the hope of every citizen, that after expelling from Italy their foreign tyrants, they should elect a prince, who, by the place of his residence, and by his maxim of government, might once more deserve the title of Roman emperor. The name, as well as the situation of Maxentius, determined in his favour the popular enthusiasm.

Maxentius was the son of the emperor Maxeni...
imian, and he had married the daughter of Galerius. His birth and alliance seemed to offer him the fairest promise of succeeding to the empire; but his vices and incapacity procured him the same exclusion from the dignity of Caesar, which Constantine had deserved by a dangerous superiority of merit. The policy of Galerius preferred such associates, as would never disgrace the choice, nor dispute the commands, of their benefactor. An obscure stranger was therefore raised to the throne of Italy, and the son of the late emperor of the West was left to enjoy the luxury of a private fortune in a villa a few miles distant from the capital. The gloomy positions of his soul, shame, vexation, and rage, were infamed by envy on the news of Constantine's success; but the hopes of Maxentius revived with the public discontent, and he was easily persuaded to unite his personal injury and pretensions with the cause of the Roman people.

Two pretorian tribunes and a committee of provisions undertook the management of the conspiracy; and as every order of men was actuated by the same spirit, the immediate event was neither doubtful nor difficult. The prefect of the city, and a few magistrates, who maintained their fidelity to Severus, were massacred by the guards; and Maxentius, invested with the imperial ornaments, was acknowledged by the applauding senate and people as the protector of the Roman freedom and dignity. It is uncertain whether Maxentius was previously acquainted with the conspiracy; but as soon as the standard of rebellion was erected at Rome, the old emperor broke from the retirement where the authority of Diocletian had condemned him to pass a life of melancholy solitude, and concealed his returning ambition under the disguise of paternal tenderness. At the request of his son and of the senate, he deigned to re-assume the purple. His ancient dignity, his experience, and his fame in arms, added strength as well as reputation to the party of Maxentius.49

According to the advice, or rather the orders, of his colleague, the emperor Severus immediately hastened to Rome, in the full confidence that by his unexpected celebrity he should suppress the tumult of an unfavourite populace, commanded by a licentious youth. But he found on his arrival the gates of the city shut against him, the walls filled with men and arms, an experienced general at the head of the rebels, and his own troops without spirit or affection. A large body of Moors was detached to the enemy, allured by the promise of a large donation; and, if it be true that they had been levied by Maxentius in his African war, preferring the natural feelings of gratitude to the artificial ties of allegiance. Amilinus, the praetorian prefect, declared himself in favour of Maxentius, and drew after him the most considerable part of the troops, accustomed to obey his commands. Rome, according to the ex-

pression of an orator, recalled her armies; and the unfortunate Severus, destitute of force and of counsel, retired, or rather fled, with precipitation, to Ravenna. Here he might for some time have been safe. The fortifications of Ravenna were able to resist the attacks, and the morasses that surrounded the town were sufficient to prevent the approach of the Italian army. The sea, which Severus commanded with a powerful fleet, secured him an inexhaustible supply of provisions, and gave a free entrance to the legions, which, on the return of spring, would advance to his assistance from Illyricum and the East. Maximian, who conducted the siege in person, was soon convinced that he might waste his time and his army in the fruitless enterprise, and that he had nothing to hope either from force or famine. With an art more suitable to the character of Diocletian than to his own, he directed his attack, not as much against the walls of Ravenna, as against the mind of Severus. The security which he had experienced, dispelled that unhappy prince to disgust the most sincere of his friends and adherents. The emissaries of Maximian easily prevailed on his credulity, that a conspiracy was formed to betray the town, and prevailed upon his fears not to expose himself to the discretion of an irritated emperor, but to accept the faith of an honourable capitulation. He was at first received with humanity, and treated with respect. Maximian conducted the captive emperor to Rome, and gave him the most solemn assurances that he had secured his life by the resignation of the purple. But Severus could obtain only an easy death and an imperial funeral. When the sentence was signed in him, the manner of executing it was left to his own choice; he preferred the favourite mode of the ancients, that of opening his veins; and as soon as he expired, his body was carried to the sepulchre which had been constructed for the family of Gallienus.50

Though the character of Constantine and Maximus had very little affinity with each other, their situation and interest were the same; and prudence seemed to require that they should unite their forces against the common enemy. Notwithstanding the superiority of his age and dignity, the indefatigable Maximus passed the Alps, and作文 a personal interview with the sovereign of Gaul, carried with him his daughter Fausta, as the pledge of the new alliance. The marriage was celebrated at Arles, with every circumstance of magnificence; and the ancient colleague of Diocletian, who again ascertained his claim to the western empire, conferred on his son-in-law and ally the title of Augustus. By consenting to receive that honour from Maximian, Constantine seemed to embrace the cause of Rome and of the senate; but his professions were ambiguous, and his assistance slow and insufficient. He considered with attention the approaching contest between

50 The circumstances of this war, and the death of Severus, were very fully and accurately told in our northern Empire. See Tacitus, Hist. B. i. ch. 36. 39. 40.
the masters of Italy and the emperor of the East; and was prepared to consult his own safety or ambition in the event of the war.\textsuperscript{104}

Galena is called the preserver and abilities of Galerius. At the head of a powerful army, collected from Illyricum and the East, he entered Italy, resolved to avenge the death of Severus, and to chastise the rebellious Romans; or, as he expressed his intentions in the famous language of a barbarian, to extirpate the senate, and to destroy the people by the sword. But the skill of Maximian had concerted a prudent system of defence. The invader found every place hostile, fortified, and inaccessible; and though he forced his way as far as Narni, within sixty miles of Rome, his dominion in Italy was confined to the narrow limits of his camp. Sensible of the increasing difficulties of his enterprise, the haughty Galerius made the first advances towards a reconciliation, and dispatched two of his most considerable officers to tempt the Roman princes by the offer of a conference, and the declaration of his paternal regard for Maximian, who might obtain much more from his liberality than he could hope from the doubtful chance of war.\textsuperscript{43} The offers of Galerius were rejected with firmness, his perfidious friendship refused with contempt, and it was not long before he discovered, that, unless he provided for his safety by a timely retreat, he had some reason to apprehend the fate of Severus. The wealth which the Romans defended against his rapacious tyranny, they freely contributed for his destruction. The name of Maximian, the popular acts of his son, the secret distribution of large sums, and the promises of still more liberal rewards, checked the ardour, and corrupted the fidelity, of the Illyrian legions; and when Galerius at length gave the signal of the retreat, it was with some difficulty that he could prevail on his veterans not to desert a master which had so often conducted them to victory and honour. A contemporary writer assigns two other causes for the failure of the expedition; but they are both of such a nature, that a cautious historian will scrupulously venture to adopt them. We are told that Galerius, who had formed a very imperfect notion of the greatness of Rome, by the cities of the East with which he was acquainted, found his forces insupportable to the siege of that immense capital. But the extent of a city serves only to render it more accessible to the enemy; Rome had long since been accustomed to submit on the approach of a conqueror; and could the temporary enthusiasm of the people have long continued against the discipline and valor of the legions. We are likewise informed, that the legions themselves were struck with horror and remorse, and that those pious sons of the republic refused to violate the sanctity of their venerable parent.\textsuperscript{105} But when we recollect with how much ease, in the more ancient civil wars, the seal of party, and the habits of military obedience, had converted the native citizens of Rome into her most implacable enemies, we shall be inclined to distrust this extreme delicacy of strangers and barbarians, who had never held Italy till they entered it in a hostile manner. Had they not been restrained by motives of a more interested nature, they would probably have answered Galerius in the words of Cesar's veterans: "If our general wishes to lead us to the banks of the Tyber, we are prepared to trace out his camp. Whatever vials he has determined to level with the ground, our hands are ready to work the engines; nor shall we hesitate, should the name of the devoted city be Rome itself." There are indeed the expressions of a poet, but of a poet who has been distinguished, and even eulogised, for his strict adherence to the truth of history.\textsuperscript{106}

The legions of Galerius exhibit a very melancholy proof of their dispositions, by the ravages which they committed in their retreat. They murdered, they ravished, they plundered, they drove away the flocks and herds of the Italians; they burnt the villages through which they passed, and they endeavoured to destroy the country which it had not been in their power to subdue. During the whole march, Maximian hung on their rear, but he very prudently declined a general engagement with these brave and desperate veterans. His father had undertaken a second journey into Gaul, with the hope of persuading Constantine, who had assembled an army on the frontier, to join the pursuit and to complete the victory. But the actions of Constantine were guided by reason, and not by resentment. He persisted in the wise resolution of maintaining a balance of power in the divided empire, and he no longer hated Galerius, when his aspiring prince had ceased to be an object of horror.\textsuperscript{44}

The mind of Galerius was the Reverse of Loucennus, the most susceptible of the stormy passions of the human mind; but it was not, however, incapable of a sincere and lasting friendship. Licinius, whose manners as well as character were not unlike his own, seems to have engaged both his affection and esteem. Their intimacy had commenced in the happier period perhaps of their youth and obscurity. It had been cemented by the freedom and dangers of a military life; they had advanced almost by equal steps through the successive honours of the service; and as soon as Galerius was invested with the imperial dignity, he seems to have conceived the design of raising his companion to the same rank with himself. During the short period of his prosperity, he considered the rank of Caesar as unworthy of the age and merit of Licinius, and rather chose to reserve for him the place of Constantine, and the empire of the West. While
the emperor was employed in the Italian war, he intrusted his friend with the defence of the Danube; and immediately after his return from that unfortunate expedition, he invested Licinius with the vacant purple of Severus, resigning to his immediate command the provinces of Illyricum. The news of his promotion and of Maxentius was no sooner carried into the Eastern court of Maximian, who governed, or rather oppressed, the countries of Egypt and Syria, betrayed his envy and discontent, disdained the inferior name of Caesar, and notwithstanding the prayers as well as arguments of Galerius, declined almost by violence the equal title of Augustus. For the first, and indeed for the last time, the Roman world was administered by six emperors. In the West, Constantine and Maxentius affected to reverence their father Maximian. In the East, Licinius and Maximin honoured with more real consideration their benefactor Galerius. The opposition of interest, and the memory of a recent war, divided the empire into two great hostile powers; but their mutual fears produced an apparent tranquillity, and even a signed reconciliation, till the death of the elder princes, of Maximin, and more particularly of Galerius, gave a new direction to the views and passions of their surviving associates.

When Maximin had reluctantly abdicated the empire, the royal vassals of the times applauded his philosophic moderation. When his ambition excited, or at least encouraged, a civil war, they returned thanks to his generous patriotism, and gently censured that love of ease and retirement which had withdrawn him from the public service. But it was impossible that minds like those of Maximin and his son could long possess in harmony an individed power. Maxentius considered himself as the legal sovereign of Italy, elected by the Roman senate and people; nor would he be the control of his father, who arrogantly declared, that by his name and abilities the rash youth had been established on the throne. The cause was solemnly pleaded before the praetorian guards, and those troops, who dreaded the severity of the old emperor, espoused the party of Maxentius. The life and freedom of Maximian were however respected, and he retired from Italy into Illyricum, affecting to lament his past conduct, and secretly contriving new mischief. But Galerius, who was well acquainted with his character, soon obliged him to leave his dominions, and the last refuge of the disappointed Maximin was the court of his son-in-law Constantine. He was received with respect by that artful prince, and with the appearance of formal tenderness by the young Fausta. That he might remove every suspicion, he resigned the imperial purple a second time, professing himself at length convinced of the vanity of greatness and ambition. Had he persevered in this resolution, he might have ended his life with less dignity, indeed, than in his first retirement, yet, however, with comfort and reputation. But the near prospect of a throne brought back to his remembrance the state from whence he was fallen, and he resolved, by a desperate effort, either to reign or to perish. An incursion of the Franks had summoned Constantine, with a part of his army, to the banks of the Rhine; the remainder of the troops were stationed in the southern provinces of Gaul, which lay exposed to the enterprises of the Italian emperor, and a considerable treasure was deposited in the city of Arles. Maximin either craftily invented, or hastily ordered, a vain report of the death of Constantine. Without hesitation he ascended the throne, seized the treasure, and scattering it with his accustomed profusion among the soldiers, endeavoured to make in their minds the memory of his ancient dignity and exploits. Before he could establish his authority, or finish the negotiation which he appears to have entered into with his son Maxentius, the celerity of Constantine defeated all his hopes. On the first news of his perfidy and ingratitude, that prince returned by rapid marches from the Rhine to the Saone, embarked on the last-mentioned river at Chalonnes, and at Lyons trusting himself to the rapidity of the Rhone, arrived at the gates of Arles, with a military force which it was impossible for Maximin to resist, and which scarcely permitted him to take refuge in the neighbouring city of Marseilles. The narrow neck of land which joined that place to the continent was fortified against the besiegers, whilst the sea was open, either for the escape of Maximin, or for the succours of Maxentius, if the latter should choose to disguise his invasion of Gaul, under the honourable pretence of defending a distressed, or, as he might allege, an injured father. Apprehensive of the fatal consequences of delay, Constantine gave orders for an immediate assault; but the scaling-ladders were found too short for the height of the walls, and Marseilles might have sustained as long a siege as it formerly did against the arms of Caesar, if the garrison, conscious either of their faults or of their danger, had not purchased their pardon by delivering up the city and the person of Maximin. A secret but irrepressible sentence of death was pronounced against the insurfer, he obtained only the same favour which he had indulged to Severus, and it was published to the world, that, oppressed by the remorse of his repeated crimes, he strangled himself with his own hands. After he had lost the assistance, and disgraced the moderate counsels of Diocletian, the second period of his ac-

The whole passage is intended with solid reason; and opposed with the greatest force of argument. In Lucan, the account of the battle is lost, but the description of the prey is given in the 'De Lociigno,' p. 123. In the account of the battle, the enemy are described Licinio, Augustus, with himself, he fails to reach the Augustan standards, by which the Britons are distinguished. Augustus, the emperor Augustus. The emperor Augustus, under whom he was called Augustus by the title, and in his uniform, Licinio, Augustus. Augustus. Augustus, Licinio, Augustus. Augustus.
five life was a series of public calamities and personal misfortunes, which were terminated, in about three years, by an ignominious death. He deserved his fate; but we should find more reason to applaud the humanity of Constantine, if he had spared an old man, the benefactor of his father, and the father of his wife. During the whole of this melancholy transaction, it appears that Fausta sacrificed the sentiments of nature to her conjugal duties."

The last years of Galerius were less shameful and unfortunate; and though he had filled with more glory the subordinate station of Caesar than the superior rank of Augustus, he preserved, till the moment of his death, the first place among the princes of the Roman world. He survived his retreat from Italy about four years, and wisely relinquishing his views of universal empire, he devoted the remainder of his life to the enjoyment of pleasure, and to the execution of some works of public utility; among which we may distinguish the discharging into the Danube the superfuous waters of the lake Poles, and the cutting down the immense forests that encompassed it; an operation worthy of a monarch, since it gave an extensive country to the agriculture of his Panonian subjects. His death was occasioned by a very painful and lingering disorder. His body, swollen by an intermitten course of life to an awkward corpulence, was covered with ulcer, and devoured by innumerable swarms of those insects who have given their name to a most loathsome disease; but as Galerius had subdued a very valiant and powerful party among his subjects, his sufferings, instead of exciting their compassion, have been celebrated as the visible effects of divine justice. He had no sooner expired in his palace of Nicomedia, than the two emperors who were indebted for their purple to his favour began to collect their forces, with the intention, either of disputing, or of dividing, the dominions which he had left without a master. They were persuaded, however, to abstain from the former design, and to agree in the latter. The provinces of Asia fell to the share of Maximian, and those of Europe augmented the portion of Licinius. The Hellespont and the Thracian Bosporus formed their mutual boundary, and the banks of those river were, which flowed in the midst of the Roman world, were covered with soldiers, with arms, and with fortifications. The deaths of Maximian and of Galerius reduced the number of emperors to four. The sense of their true interest soon connected Licinius and Constantine; a secret alliance was concluded between Maxentius and Maxentius, and their unhappy subjects expected, with terror, the bloody consequences of their inevitable dissensions, which were no longer restrained by the fear or the respect which they had entertained for Galerius."

Among so many crimes and misfortunes, occasioned by the passions of the Roman princes, there is some pleasure in discovering a single action which may be ascribed to their virtue. In the sixth year of his reign, Constantine visited the city of Autun, and generously remitted the arms of tribute, reducing at the same time the proportion of their assessment, from twenty-five to eighteen thousand heads, subject to the real and personal capitulation. Yet even this indulgence affords the most unquestionable proof of the public misery. This tax was so extremely oppressive, either in itself or in the mode of collecting it, that whilst the revenue was increased by extort, it was diminished by despair; a considerable part of the territory of Autun was left uncultivated; and great numbers of the provincials rather chose to live as exiles and outlaws, than to support the weight of civil society. It is but too probable, that the bountiful emperor relieved, by a partial act of liberality, one among the many evils which he had caused by his general maxims of administration. But even those maxims were less the effect of choice than of necessity. And if we except the death of Maximian, the reign of Constantine in Gaul seems to have been the most innocent and even virtuous period of his life. The provinces were protected by his presence from the invasions of the barbarians, who either desisted or experienced his active valour. After a signal victory over the Franks and Alemanii, several of their princes were exposed by his order to the wild beasts in the amphitheatre of Trier, and the people seem to have enjoyed the spectacle, without discovering, in such a treatment of royal captives, any thing that was repugnant to the laws of nations or of humanity."

The virtues of Constantine were noticed more illustriously by the writers of his race than by the writers of his subjects. Whilst the Gallic provinces enjoyed as much happiness at the condition of the times was capable of receiving, Italy and Africa groaned under the dominion of a tyrant as contemptible as he was odious. The zeal of flattery and faction has indeed too frequently sacrificed the reputation of the vanquished to the glory of their successful rivals; but even those writers who have reserved, with the most freedom and pleasure, the faults of Constantine, unanimously confess that Maxen-
of his palace or in the neighboring gardens of Sallust, he was repeatedly heard to declare, that he alone was emperor, and that the other princes were no more than his lieutenants, on whom he had devolved the defence of the frontier provinces, that he might enjoy without interruption the elegant luxury of the capital. Rome, which had so long regretted the absence, lamented, during the six years of his reign, the presence of its sovereign. 47

Though Constantine might view the conduct of Maxentius with abhorrence, and the situation of the Romans with compassion, we have no reason to presume that he would have taken up arms to punish the one, or to relieve the other. But the tyrant of Italy rashly ventured to provoke a formidable enemy, whose ambition had been hitherto restrained by considerations of prudence, rather than by principles of justice. 48

After the death of Maxentius, his titles, according to the established custom, had been erased, and his statues thrown down with ignominy. His son, who had persecuted and despoiled him when alive, affected to display the most pious regard for his memory, and gave orders that a similar treatment should be immediately inflicted on all the statues that had been erected in Italy and Africa to the honour of Constantine. That wise prince, who sincerely wished to decline a war, with the difficulty and importance of which he was sufficiently acquainted, at first dissembled the insult, and sought for redress by the milder expedients of negotiation, till he was convinced, that the hostile and ambitious designs of the Italian emperor made it necessary for him to arm in his own defence. Maxentius, who openly avowed his pretensions to the whole monarchy of the West, had already prepared a very considerable force to invade the Gallic province on the side of Rhetia; and though he could not expect any assistance from Licinius, he was flattered with the hope that the legions of Illyricum, allured by his presents and promises, would assert the standard of that prince, and unanimously declare themselves his soldiers and subjects. 49 Constantin no longer hesitated.

He had deliberated with caution, he acted with vigour. He gave a private audience to the ambassadors, who, in the name of the senate and people, conferred upon him the government of a detested tyrant; and, without regarding the timid remonstrances of his council, he resolved to prevent the enemy and to carry the war into the heart of Italy. 50

The enterprise was as full of danger, as of glory; and the unsuccessful event of two former invasions was sufficient to inspire the most serious apprehensions. The veteran

47 See in the Panegyricus, the 14 of the De vita et gestis

48 The emperor was seated the longest of the Caesars with applause and contentment; and Zenobius. p. 78, supposes him to have been perfectly happy. 49 Eusebius, l. iii. 43-45. 50 Minuthius Vita. 51 Eusebius, l. iv. 10. 52 Eusebius l. i. 57. 53. 54. Histories, l. xvi. 2. 55 Pliny, l. iv. 39. 56 Pliny, l. vi. 39. 57 The Visigothic king was named Eligius, and afterwards was count of Soissons. 58 See in the Panegyricus, the 14 of the De vita et gestis.
troops who revered the name of Maximian, had embraced in both these parts the party of his son, and were now restrained by a sense of honour, as well as of Interest, from entertaining an idea of a second descent. Maximian, who considered the praetorian guards as the firmest defence of his throne, had increased them to their ancient establishment; and they composed, including the rest of the Italians who were enlisted into his service, a formidable body of fourscore thousand men. Forty thousand Moors and Carthaginians had been raised since the reduction of Africa. Even Sicily furnished its proportion of troops; and the armies of Maximian amounted to one hundred and seventy thousand foot, and eighteen thousand horse. The wealth of Italy supplied the expenses of the war; and the adjacent provinces were exhausted, to form immense magazines of corn and every kind of provision.

The whole force of Constantine consisted of ninety thousand foot and eight thousand horse; and in the defence of the Rhine required an extraordinary attention during the absence of the emperor, it was not in his power to employ above half his troops in the Italian expedition, unless he sacrificed the public safety to his private quarrel. At the head of about forty thousand soldiers, he marched to encounter an enemy whose numbers were at least four times superior to his own. But the armies of Rome, placed at a secure distance from danger, were exerted by indulgence and luxury. Habituated to the baths and theatres of Rome, they took the field with reluctance, and were chiefly composed of veterans who had almost forgotten, or of new levies who had never acquired, the use of arms, and the practice of war. The hardy legions of Gaul had long defended the frontiers of the empire against the barbarians of the North; and in the performance of that laborious service, their valour was exercised, and their discipline confirmed. There appeared the same difference between the leaders as between the armies. Caprice or luxury had tempted Maximian with the hopes of conquest; but these aspiring hopes soon gave way to the habits of pleasure and the consciousness of his insuperiority. Theiertrepid mind of Constantine had been trained from his earliest youth to war, to action, and to military command.

When Hannibal marched from the Alps, Gaul into Italy, he was obliged first, to discover, and then to open, a way over mountains and through savage nations, that had never yielded a passage to a regular army. The Alps were then guarded by nature, they are now fortified by art. Citadels, constructed with no less skill than labour and expense, command every avenue into the plain, and on that side render Italy almost inaccessible to the enemies of the king of Sardinia. But in the course of the intermediate period, the generals, who have attempted the passage, have seldom experienced any difficulty or resistance. In the age of Constantine, the mountains were crumbled and obedient subjects; the country was plentifully stocked with provisions, and the stupendous highways, which the Romans had carried over the Alps, opened several communications between Gaul and Italy. Constantine preferred the road of the Cottian Alps, or, it is now called, of Mount Cenis, and led his troops with such active diligence, that he descended into the plain, of Piedmont below the court of Maximian had received any certain intelligence of his departure from the banks of the Rhine. The city of Susa, however, which is situated at the foot of Mount Cenis, was surrounded with walls, and provided with a garrison sufficiently numerous to check the progress of an invader; but the impatience of Constantine's troops disabled the tedious forms of a siege. The same day that they appeared before Susa, they applied fire to the gates, and ladders to the walls; and mounting to the assault amidst a shower of stones and arrows, they entered the place sword in hand, and cut in pieces the greatest part of the garrison. The flames were extinguished by the care of Constantine, and the remains of Susa preserved from total destruction. About forty miles from thence, a more severe contest awaited him. A numerous army of Italians was assembled under the insurmountable of Maximian, in the plains of Turin. Its principal strength consisted in a species of heavy cavalry, which the Romans, since the decline of their discipline, had borrowed from the nations of the East. The horses, as well as the men, were clothed in complete armour, the joints of which were artfully adapted to the motions of their bodies. The aspect of this cavalry was formidable, their weight almost irresistible; and so, on this occasion, their generals had drawn them up in a compact column or wedge, with a sharp point, and with spreading flanks, they flattered themselves that they should easily break and trample down the army of Constantine. They might, perhaps, have succeeded in their design, had not their experienced adversary embraced the same method of defence which in similar circumstances had been practised by Aurelius. The skilful evolutions of Constantine divided and baffled this heavy column of cavalry. The troops of Maximian fled in confusion towards Turin; and as the gales of the city were shut against them, very few escaped the sword of the victorious pursuers. By this important service, Turin deserved to experience the elegance and favour of the conqueror. He made his entry into the imperial palace of Milan, and almost
all the cities of Italy between the Alps and the Po, not only acknowledged the power, but embraced with zeal the party of Constantine. From Milan to Rome, the Austrian and Flaminian highways offered an easy march of about four hundred miles; but though Constantine was impatient to encounter the tyrant, he prudently directed his operations against another army of Italians, who, by their strength and position, might either oppose his progress, or, in case of a misfortune, might intercept his retreat. Hurriedly Pompeianus, a general distinguished by his valour and ability, had under his command the city of Verona, and all the troops that were stationed in the province of Venetia. As soon as he was informed that Constantine was advancing towards him, he detached a large body of cavalry, which was defeated in an engagement near Brescia, and pursued by the Gallic legions as far as the gates of Verona. The necessity, the importance, and the difficulties of the siege of Verona, immediately presented themselves to the sagacious mind of Constantine. The city was accessible only by a narrow peninsula towards the west, as the other three sides were surrounded by the Adige, a rapid river which covered the province of Venetia, from whence the besiegers derived an inextinguishable supply of men and provisions. It was not without great difficulty, and after several fruitless attempts, that Constantine succeeded in making his passage by a narrow ford over the Adige. In a place where the torrent was less violent. He then encompassed Verona with strong lines, posted his attacks with prudent vigour, and repelled a desperate Sally of Pompeianus. That intrepid general, when he had used every means of defence that the strength of the place or that of the garrison could afford, secretly escaped from Verona, anxious not for his own but for the public safety. With indefatigable diligence he soon collected an army sufficient either to meet Constantine in the field, or to attack him if he obstinately remained within his lines. The emperor, attentive to the motions, and informed of the approach, of so formidable an enemy, left a part of his legions to continue the operations of the siege, whilst, at the head of those troops on whose valour and fidelity he more particularly depended, he advanced in person to engage the general of Maximian. The army of Gaul was drawn up in two lines, according to the usual practice of war; but their experienced leader, perceiving that the numbers of the Italian was exceeded his own, determined not to change his disposition, and, reducing the second, extended the front of his first, thus to resist proportioned with that of the enemy. Such evolutions, which only veteran troops can execute without confusion in a moment of danger, commonly prove decisive; but as this engagement began towards the close of the day, and was contested with great obstinacy during the whole night, there was less room for the conduct of the generals than for the courage of the soldiers. The return of light displayed the victory of Constantine, and a field of carcage covered with many thousands of the vanquished Italians. Their general, Pompeianus, was found among the slain; Verona immediately surrendered at discretion, and the garrison was made prisoners of war. When the officers of the victorious army congratulated their master on this important success, they ventured to add some respectful complaints, of such a nature, however, as the most jealous monarchs will listen to without displeasure. They represented to Constantine, that, not contented with performing all the duties of a commander, he had exposed his own person with an excess of valour which almost degenerated into rashness; and they conjured him for the future to pay more regard to the preservation of a life in which the safety of Rome and of the empire was involved.

While Constantine signified his conduct and valour in the field, the sovereignty of Italy appeared insensible of the calamities and danger of a civil war which raged in the heart of his dominions. Pleasure was still the only business of Maximian. Concealing, or at least attempting to conceal, from the public knowledge the misfortunes of his army, he indulged himself in a vain confidence, which deferred the remedies of the approaching evil, without deferring the evil itself. The rapid progress of Constantine was scarcely sufficient to awaken him from this fatal security; he flattered himself, that his well-known liberality, and the majesty of the Roman name, which had already delivered him from two invasions, would dissipate with the same facility the rebellious army of Gaul. The officers of experience and ability, who had served under the banners of Maximian, were at length compelled to inform his alérmate son of the imminent danger to which he was reduced; and, with a freedom that at once surprised and convinced him, to urge the necessity of preventing his ruin, by a vigorous exertion of the remaining power. The resources of Maximian, both of men and money, were still considerable. The praetorian guards felt how strongly their own interest and safety were connected with his cause; and a third army was soon collected, more numerous than those which had been lost in the battles of Turin and Verona. It was far from the intention of the emperor to lead his troops in person. A stranger to the exercises of war, he trembled at the apprehension of so dangerous a contest; and as fear is commonly superstitions, he listened with melancholy attention to the rumours of omens and presages which seemed to menace his
defeat of the two wings left the infantry without any protection on its flanks, and the undisciplined Italians fled without reluctance from the standard of a tyrant whom they had always hated and whom they no longer feared. The provincials, conscious that their offenses were beyond the reach of mercy, were animated by revenge and despair. Notwithstanding their repeated efforts, those brave veterans were unable to recover the victory; they obtained, however, an honorable death; and it was observed that their bodies covered the same ground which had been occupied by their ranks. The conclusion then became general, and the dismayed troops of Maxentius, pursued by an implacable enemy, rushed by thousands into the deep and rapid stream of the Tyber. The emperor himself attempted to escape back into the city over the Milvian bridge, but the crowds which pressed together through that narrow passage, forced him into the river, where he was immediately drowned by the weight of his armor. His body, which had sunk very deep into the mud, was found with some difficulty the next day. The sight of his head, when it was exposed to the eyes of the people, convinced them of their delusions, and accomplished their acquisition of loyalty and gratitude to the fortunate Constantine, who thus achieved by his valor and ability the most splendid enterprise of his life.

In the use of victory, Constantine neither deserved the praise of his enemies, nor incurred the censure of indiscriminate princes. He inflicted the same treatment to which a defeat would have exposed his own person and family, put to death the two sons of the tyrant, and carefully extinguished his whole race. The most distinguished adherents of Maxentius must have expected to share his fate, as they had shared his prosperity and his crimes; but when the Roman people loudly demanded a greater number of victims, the conqueror resisted, with firmness and humanity, those servile clamors, which were dictated by flattery as well as by resentment. Informers were punished and discouraged; the innocent, who had suffered under the late tyranny, were recalled from exile, and restored to their estates. A general act of clemency quelled the minds and settled the property of the people, both in Italy and in Africa. The first time that Constantine honored the senate with his presence, he recapitulated his own services and exploits in a modest oration, assured that illustrious order of his sincere regard, and promised to re-establish its ancient

The celerity of Constantine's march has been compared to the rapid conquest of Italy by the first of the Caesars; nor is the flattering parallel repugnant to the truth of history, since no more than fifty-eight days elapsed between the surrender of Verona and the final decision of the war. Constantine had always apprehended that the tyrant would consult the dictates of fear, and perhaps of prudence; and that, instead of risking his last hopes in a general engagement, he would shut himself up within the walls of Rome. His ample magazines secured him against the danger of famine; and as the situation of Constantine admitted not of delay, he might have been reduced to the sad necessity of destroying with fire and sword the Imperial city, the noblest reward of his victory, and the deliverance of which had been the motive, or rather the prescription, of the civil war. It was with equal surprise and pleasure, that on his arrival at a place called Scita Bocca, about nine miles from Rome, he discovered the army of Maxentius prepared to give him battle. Their long front filled a very spacious plain, and their deep array reached to the banks of the Tyber, which covered their rear, and forbade their retreat. We are informed, and we may believe, that Constantine disposed his troops with consummate skill, and that he chose for himself the post of honour and danger. Distinguished by the splendour of his arms, he charged in person the cavalry of his rival; and his irresistible attack determined the fortune of the day. The cavalry of Maxentius was principally composed either of unwieldy cuirassiers, or of light Moors and Numidians. They yielded to the vigour of the Gallic horse, which possessed more activity than the one, more firmness than the other. The
dignity and privileges. The grateful senate repaid these unnumbered professions by the empty titles of honour, which it was yet in their power to bestow; and without presuming to ratify the authority of Constantine, they passed a decree to assign him the first rank among the three Augusti, who governed the Roman world. The triumphal arch of Constantine still remains a melancholy proof of the decline of the arts, and a singular testimony of the remotest vanity. As it was not possible to find in the capital of the empire a sculptor who was capable of adorning that public monument, the arch of Trajan, without any respect either for his memory or for the rules of propriety, was stripped of its most elegant figures. The difference of times and persons, of actions and characters, was totally disregarded. The Parthian captives appear prostrate at the feet of a prince who never carried his arms beyond the Euphrates; and curious antiquarians still discover the head of Trajan on the trophies of Constantine. The new ornaments which it was necessary to introduce between the vacuums of ancient sculpture, are executed in the most and most unskilful manner.

The final abolition of the praetorian guards was a measure of prudence as well as of revenge. Those haughty troops, whose numbers and privileges had been restored, and even augmented, by Maxentius, were for ever suppressed by Constantine. Their fortified camp was destroyed, and the few praetorians who had escaped the fury of the sword were dispersed among the legions, and hastened to the frontiers of the empire, where they might be serviceable without again becoming dangerous. By suppressing the troops which were usually stationed in Rome, Constantine gave the fatal blow to the dignity of the senate and people, and the dismembered capital was exposed without protection to the insults or neglect of its distant master. We may observe, that in this last effort to preserve their expiring freedom, the Romans, from the apprehension of a tribute, had raised Maxentius to the throne. He exacted that tribute from the senate under the name of a free gift. They implied the assistance of Constantine. He vanquished the tyrant, and converted the free gift into a perpetual tax. The senators, according to the declaration which was required of their property, were divided into several classes. The most opulent paid annually eight pounds of gold, the next class paid four, the last two, and those whose poverty might have claimed an exemption, were assessed however at seven pieces of gold. Besides the regular members of the senate, their sons, their descendants, and even their relations, enjoyed the vain privileges, and supported the heavy burdens, of the senatorial order; nor will it any longer excite our surprise, that Constantine should be attentive to increase the number of persons who were included under so useful a description. After the defeat of Maxentius, the victorious emperor passed no more than two or three months in Rome, which he visited twice during the remainder of his life, to celebrate the solemn festivals of the tenth and of the twentieth years of his reign. Constantine was almost perpetually in motion to exercise the legions, or to inspect the state of the provinces. Treves, Milan, Aquileia, Strassum, Nantes, and Thessalonia, were the occasional places of his residence, till he founded a new Rome on the confines of Europe and Asia. Before Constantine marched into Italy, he had secured the friendship, or at least the neutrality, of Licinius, the Illyrian emperor. He had promised his sister Constantia in marriage to that prince; but the celebration of the nuptials was deferred till after the conclusion of the war, and the interview of the two emperors at Milan, which was appointed for that purpose, appeared to exceed the union of their families and interests. In the midst of the public festivity they were suddenly obliged to take leave of each other. An indirect of the Franks summoned Constantine to the Rhine, and the hostile approach of the sovereign of Asia demanded the immediate presence of Licinius. Maxentius had been the secret ally of Maxentius, and without being discouraged by his fate, he resolved to try the fortune of a civil war. He moved out of Syria, towards the frontiers of Bithynia, in the depth of winter. The season was severe and tempestuous; great numbers of men as well as horses perished in the snow; and as the roads were broken up by incessant rains, he was obliged to leave behind him a considerable part of the heavy baggage, which was unable to follow the rapidity of his forced marches. By this extraordinary effort of diligence, he arrived, with a harried but formidable army, on the banks of the Taurian Bosphorus, before the lieutenants of Licinius were apprised of his hostile intentions. Byzantium surrendered to the power of Maximus, after a siege of eleven days. He was detained some days under the sales of Heraclea; and he had no sooner taken possession of that city, than he was alarmed by the intelligence, that Licinius had pitched his camp at the distance of only sixteen miles. After a fruitless negotiation, in which the two princes attempted to seduce the fidelity...
of each other's adherents, they had recourse to arms. The emperor of the East commanded a disciplined and veteran army of above seventy thousand men, and Liciarius, who had collected about thirty thousand Illyrians, was at first opposed by the superiority of numbers. His military skill, and the firmness of his troops, restored the day, and obtained a decisive victory. The incredible speed which Maximin exerted in his flight, is much more celebrated than his prowess in the battle. Twenty-four hours afterwards he was seen pale, trembling, and without his Imperial ornaments, at Nicomedia, one hundred and sixty miles from the place of his defeat. The wealth of Asia was yet unexhausted; and though the flower of his veterans had fallen in the late action, he had still power, if he could obtain time, to draw very numerous levies from Syria and Egypt. But he survived his misfortune only three or four months. His death, which happened at Tarsus, was variously ascribed to despair, to poison, and to the divine justice. As Maximin was alike destitute of abilities and of virtue, he was lamented neither by the people nor by the soldiers. The provinciers of the East, delivered from the terrors of civil war, cheerfully acknowledged the authority of Licius. 37

County of Li-

The vanquished emperor left behind him two children, a boy of about eight, and a girl of about seven, years old. Their inoffensive age might have excited compassion; but the complexion of Licius was a very feeble resource, nor did it restrain him from extinguishing the name and memory of his adversary. The death of Severinus will admit of less excuse, as it was meant neither by revenge nor by policy. The conqueror had never received any injury from the father of that unhappy youth, and the short and obscure reign of Severus, in a distant part of the empire, was already forgotten. But the execution of Candidianus was an act of the blackest cruelty and ingratitude. He was the natural son of Galericus, the friend and benefactor of Licius. The prudent father had judged him too young to sustain the weight of a diadem; but he hoped that, under the protection of princes who were indebted to his favour for the Imperial purple, Candidianus might pass a secure and honourable life. He was now advancing towards the twentieth year of his age, and the royalty of his birth, though unsupported either by merit or ambition, was sufficient to exasperate the jealous mind of Licius. 38 To these innocent and illustrious victims of his tyranny, we must add the wife and daughter of the emperor Diocletian. When that prince conferred on Galericus the title of Caesar, he had given him in marriage his daughter Valaria, whose melancholy adventures might furnish a very singular subject for tragedy.

37 Licius assumes the title and bust of Maximin in ordinary patterns; his name and title are still preserved in a monogram (M. P. C.), and on a medal, the reverse of which represents the same personage as on the reverse of that of Licius, described in the preceding paragraph. Edinb. Antiq. 360.
38 Her name is written in reverse (Ceri), and is thus described on a coin. Livy, xii. 6. Thus their house should be found among the votaries of the royal triumvirs. Caponius, in his Memoirs of the Cæsars, mentions Candidianus as one of the few who survived the calamities of that period, and who continued to take part in the politics of the empire. Caponius, in his Memoirs of the Cæsars, mentions Candidianus as one of the few who survived the calamities of that period, and who continued to take part in the politics of the empire.
alteration in their fortune. The public disorders related the vigilance of their guard, and they easily found means to escape from the place of their exile, and to repair, though with some precaution, and in disguise, to the court of Licinius. His behaviour, in the first days of his reign, and the honourable reception which he gave to young Constans, inspired Valeria with a secret satisfaction, both on her own account, and on that of her adopted son. But these grateful prospects were soon succeeded by horror and astonishment; and the bloody executions which stained the palace of Nicomedia, sufficiently convinced her, that the throne of Maximus was filled by a tyrant more hideous than himself. Valeria consulted her safety by a hasty flight, and, still accompanied by her mother Priscia, she wandered above fifteen months through the provinces, concealed in the disguise of plebeian habits. They were at length discovered at Thessalonica; and as the sentence of their death was already pronounced, they were immediately beheaded, and their bodies thrown into the sea. The people gazed on the melancholy spectacle; but their grief and indignation were oppressed by the terrors of a military guard. Such was the unworthy fate of the wife and daughter of Diocletian. We cannot discover their crimes, and whatever idea we may justly entertain of the cruelty of Licinius, it remains a matter of surprise, that he was not contented with some more secret and decent method of revenge.  

The Roman world was now divided between Constantius and Licinius, the former of whom was master of the West, and the latter of the East. It might perhaps have been expected that the conquerors, fatigued with civil war, and connected by a private as well as public alliance, would have reconquered, or at least would have suspended, any further design of ambition. Yet a year had scarcely elapsed after the death of Maximus, before the victorious emperors turned their arms against each other. The genius, the success, and the aspiring temper of Constantius, may seem to mark him out as the aggressor; but the perilous character of Licinius justifies the most unfavourable suspicions, and by the light which history reflects on this transaction, we may discover a conspiracy fomented by his arts against the authority of his colleague. Constantine, however, had lately given his sister Armina in marriage to Bassianus, a man of considerable family and fortune, and had elevated his new kinsman to the rank of Caesar. According to the system of government instituted by Diocletian, Italy, and perhaps Africa, were designed for his department in the empire. But the performance of the promised favour was either attended with so much delay, or accompanied with so many unequal conditions, that the fidelity of Bassianus was alienated rather than secured by the honourable distinction which he had obtained. His nomination had been ratified by the consent of Licinius, and that artful prince, by the means of his emissaries, soon contrived to enter into a secret and dangerous correspondence with the new Caesar, to irritate his discontent, and to urge him to the rash enterprise of extorting by violence what he might in vain solicit from the justice of Constantine. But the vigilant emperor discovered the conspiracy before it was ripe for execution; and, after solemnly renouncing the alliance of Bassianus, deposed him of the purple, and inflicted the deserved punishment on his treason and ingratitude. The haughty refusal of Licinius, when he was required to deliver up the criminals, who had taken refuge in his dominions, confirmed the suspicions already entertained of his perfidy; and the indignities offered at Asiana, on the frontiers of Italy, to the statues of Constantine, because the signal of discord between the two princes.

The first battle was fought near Callia, a city of Pannonia, situated on the river Save, about fifty miles above Sirmium. From the inconsiderable forces which in this important contest two such powerful monarchs brought into the field, it may be inferred, that the one was suddenly prevailed, and that the other was unexpectedly surprised. The emperor of the West had only twenty thousand, and the sovereign of the East no more than five and thirty thousand, men. The inferiority of number was, however, compensated by the advantage of the ground. Constantine had taken post in a defile about half a mile in breadth, between a steep hill and a deep morass; and in that situation he steadily expected and repulsed the first attack of the enemy. He pursued his success, and advanced into the plain. But the veteran legions of Illyricum rallied under the standard of a leader who had been trained to arms in the school of Probus and Diocletian. The missile weapons on both sides were soon exhausted; the two armies, with equal valour, rushed to a closer engagement of swords and spears, and the doubtful contest had already lasted from the dawn of the day to a late hour of the evening, when the right wing, which Constantine led in person, made a vigorous and decisive charge. The judicious retreat of Licinius saved the remainder of his troops from a total defeat; but when he computed his loss, which amounted to more than twenty thousand men, he thought it unsafe to pass the night in the presence of an active and victorious enemy.
Abandoning his camp and magazines, he marched away with secrecy and diligence at the head of the greatest part of his cavalry, and was soon removed beyond the danger of pursuit. His diligence preserved his wife, his son, and his treasures, which he had deposited at Sirmium. Licinius passed through that city, and breaking down the bridge on the Save, hastened to collect a new army in Dacia and Thrace. In his flight he bestowed the precious title of Caesar on Valens, his general of the Illyrian frontier.47

The plains of Marcella in Thrace was the theatre of a second battle no less unfortunate and bloody than the former. The troops on both sides displayed the same valour and discipline; and the victory was once more decided by the superior abilities of Constantine, who directed a body of fifty thousand men to gain an advantageous height, from whence, during the heat of the action, they attacked the rear of the enemy and made a very considerable slaughter. The troops of Licinius, however, presenting a double front, still maintained their ground till the approach of night put an end to the combat, and secured their retreat towards the mountains of Macedon.48 The loss of two battles, and of his bravest veterans, reduced the fierce spirit of Licinius to sue for peace. His ambassador Mistrasianus was admitted to the audience of Constantine; he expatiated on the common topics of moderation and humanity, which are so familiar to the eloquence of the vanquished; represented, in the most illuminating language, that the event of the war was still doubtful, whilst its inevitable calamities were alike pernicious to both contending parties; and declared that he was authorized to propose a lasting and honourable peace in the name of the two emperors his masters. Constantine received the suggestion of Valens with indignation and contempt. "It was not for such a purpose," he sternly replied, "that we have advanced from the shores of the Western Ocean in an uninterrupted course of conquest and victory; that, after resting an ungrateful kinsman, we should accept for our colleague a contemptible slave. The abdication of Valens is the first article of the treaty."49 It was necessary to accept this humiliating condition, and the unhappy Valens, after a reign of a few days, was deprived of the purple and of his life. As soon as this obstacle was removed, the tranquillity of the Roman world was soon restored. The success of Licinius had ruined his forces, but they had displayed his courage and abilities. His situation was almost desperate, but the efforts of despair are sometimes formidable; and the good sense of Constantine preferred a great and certain advantage to a third trial of the chance of arms. He consented to leave his rival, or, as he again styled Licinius, his friend and brother, in the possession of Thrace, Asia Minor, Syria, and Egypt; but the provinces of Pannonia, Dalmatia, Dacia, Macedonia, and Greece, were yielded to the western empire, and the dominions of Constantine now extended from the confines of Caucasian to the extremity of Peloponnesus. It was stipulated by the same treaty, that three royal youths, the sons of the emperors, should be called to the hopes of the succession. Crispus and the young Constantine were soon afterwards declared Caesars in the West, while the younger Licinius was invested with the same dignity in the East. In this double proportion of honours, the conqueror aspired to the superiority of his arms and power.48

The reconciliation of Constantine and Licinius, though it was unmitigated by resentment and jealousy, A.D.324-325, by the remembrance of recent injuries, and by the apprehension of future dangers, maintained, however, above eight years, the tranquillity of the Roman world. As a very regular series of the Imperial laws commences about this period, it would not be difficult to transcribe the civil regulations which employed the leisure of Constantine. But the most important of his institutions are intimately connected with the new system of policy and religion, which was not perfectly established till the last and peaceful years of his reign. There are many of his laws, which, as far as they concern the rights and property of individuals, and the practice of the bar, are more properly referred to the period than to his public jurisprudence of the empire. Hence, he published many edicts of a local and temporary nature, that they would ill deserve the notice of a general history. Two laws, however, may be selected from the crowd; the one for its importance, the other for its singularity; the former for its remarkable lenience, the latter for its excessive severity.

1. The horrid practice, so familiar to the ancients, of exposing or murdering their new-born infants, was become every day more frequent in the provinces, and especially in Italy. It was the effect of distress; and the distress was principally occasioned by the intolerable burden of taxes; and by the vexations as well as cruel executions of the officers of the revenue against their insolvent debtors. The less opulent or less industrious part of mankind, instead of securing in an increase of family, depopulate it by an act of paternal tenderness to release their children from the impending miseries of a life which they themselves were unable to support. The humanity of Constantine, moved, perhaps, by some recent and extraordinary instances of distress, engaged him to address an edict to all the cities of Italy, and afterwards of Africa, directing immediate and sufficient relief to be given to those parents who should produce before the...
magistrates the children whom their own poverty would not allow them to educate. But the promise was not liberal, and the provision too vague, to effect any general or permanent benefit. 28 29
The law, though it may merit some praise, served rather to display than to alleviate the public distress. It still remains an authentic monument to contradict and confound those real orators, who were too well satisfied with their own situation to discover either vice or misery under the government of a generous sovereign. 29 30 The laws of Constantine were directed with very little indulgence for the most amiable weaknesses of human nature; since the description of that crime was applied not only to the brutal violence which compelled, but even to the gentle seduction which might persuade, an unmarried woman, under the age of twenty-five, to leave the house of her parents. 31 The successful ravisher was punished with death; and as if simple death was inadequate to the enormity of his guilt, he was either burnt alive, or torn in pieces by wild beasts in the amphitheatre. The virgin's declaration, that she had been carried away with her own consent, instead of saving her lover, exposed her to his fate. The duty of a public prosecution was intrusted to the parents of the guilty or unfortunate maid; and if the sentiments of nature prevailed on them to dissemble the injury, and to repel by a subsequent marriage the honour of their family, they were themselves punished by exile and confiscation. The cleres, whether male or female, who were convicted of having been accessory to the rape or seduction, were burnt alive, or put to death by the ingenuous torture of pouring down their throats a quantity of molten lead. As the crime was of a public kind, the accusation was permitted even to strangers. The commencement of the action was not limited to any term of years, and the consequences of the sentence were extended to the innocent offspring of such an irregular union. 32 But whenever the offense involves less horror than the punishment, the rigour of penal law is obliged to give way to the common feelings of mankind. The most odious acts of this class were softened or repeated in the subsequent reigns; and even Constantine himself very frequently relented, by partial acts of mercy, the stern temper of his general institutions. Such, indeed, was the singular humour of that emperor, who showed himself as indulgent, and even remiss, in the execution of his laws, as he was severe, and even cruel, in the enacting of them. It is scarcely possible to observe a more decisive symptom of weakness, either in the character of the prince, or in the constitution of the government. 33
The civil administration was sometimes interrupted by the military defence of the empire. Crispus, a youth of the most amiable character, who had received with the title of Caesar the command of the Rhine, distinguished his conduct, as well as valour, in several victories over the Franks and Alamanni; and taught the barbarians of that frontier to dread the eldest son of Constantine, and the grandson of Constantius. 34 The emperor himself had assumed the more difficult and important province of the Danube. The Goths, who in the time of Claudius and Aurelian had felt the weight of the Roman arms, respected the power of the empire, even in the midst of its intestine divisions. But the strength of that warlike nation was now restored by a peace of near fifty years; a new generation had arisen, who no longer remembered the misfortunes of ancient days; the Sauromatae of the lake Mysoria followed the Gothic standard either as subjects or as allies, and their united force was poured upon the countries of Illyricum, Carnuntum, Margus, and Bosnia. Ape appear to have been the success of several memorable sieges and battles; 35 and though Constantine encountered a very obstinate resistance, he prevailed at length in the contest, and the Goths were compelled to purchase an ignominious retreat, by restoring the booty and prisoners which they had taken. Nor was this advantage sufficient to satisfy the indignation of the emperor. He resolved to chastise as well as to repulse the insolent barbarians who had dared to invade the territories of Rome. At the head of his legions he passed the Danube, after reparing the bridge which had been constructed by Trajan, penetrated into the strongest rocceses of Dacia, 36 and when he had inflicted a severe revenge, condescended to give peace to the suppliant Goths on conditions that, as often as they were required, they should supply his armies with a body of forty thousand soldiers. 37 Expulsions like these were no doubt honourable to Constantine, and beneficial to the state; but it may surely be questioned, whether they can justify the exaggerated statements of Eusebius, that all Scythia, as far as the extremity of the North, divided as it was into so many names and nations of the most various and savage manners, had been subdued by his victorious arms to the Roman empire. 38
In this exalted state of glory it was impossible that Constantine should any longer endure a partner in the empire. Contriving to the superiority of his genius and military power, be
THE DECLINE AND FALL.

CHAR. XIV.

determined, without any previous injury, to
embrace for the destruction of Licinius, whose
advanced age and unpopular vices seemed to
offer a very easy conquest. But the old
emperor, awakened by the approaching danger,
deserved the expectations of his friends, as well
as of his enemies. Calling for that spirit and
those abilities by which he had deserved the
friendship of Galerius and the Imperial purple,
he prepared himself for the contest, collected
the forces of the East, and soon filled the plains
of Hadrianople with his troops, and the Straits
of the Hellespont with his fleet. The army
consisted of one hundred and fifty thousand
East, and fifteen thousand horse; and as the
cavalry was drawn, for the most part, from
Phrygia and Cappadocia, we may conceive a
more favourable opinion of the beauty of the
horsemen, than of the courage and dexterity
of their riders. The fleet was composed of two
hundred and fifty galleys of three ranks each.
An hundred and thirty of these were furnished
by Egypt, and the adjacent coast of Africa.
An hundred and twenty sailed from the ports
of Paphlagonia and the isle of Cyprus; and the
navigable countries of Bithynia, Ionia, and Cilicia,
were likewise obliged to provide an hundred
and ten galleys. The troops of Constantine
were ordered to rendezvous at Thessalonica;
they amounted to above an hundred and twenty
thousand horse and foot. Their emperor
was satisfied with their martial appearance, and
his army contained more soldiers, though fewer
men, than that of his eastern competitor.
The legions of Constantine were levied in the
warlike provinces of Europe; action had
confirmed their discipline, victory had elevated their
hopes, and there were among them a great number of
veterans, who, after seventeen glorious cam-

paigns under the same leader, prepared them-
selves to deserve an honourable dismissal by a
just exertion of their valour. But the naval
proportions of Constantine were in every
respect much inferior to those of Licinius.
The maritime cities of Greece sent their respective
quotas of men and ships to the celebrated har-
bours of Thessalonica, and their united forces con-
sisted of no more than two hundred small ves-
sels, a very feeble armament, if it is compared
with those formidable fleets which were equipped
and maintained by the republic of Athens during
the Peloponnesian war. Since Italy was no
longer the seat of government, the naval estab-
lishments of Liburnia and Ravenna had been
gradually neglected; and as the shipping and
mariners of the empire were supported by
commerce rather than by war, it was natural
that they should be the most absurd in the indus-
strious provinces of Egypt and Asia. It is only
surprising that the eastern emperor, who pos-

101. Constantine, the emperor, the least of whose extensive supplies was
the wealth of the sacred city of Alexandria, a great naval station.

102. This passage is taken from the Persians and Persians of the 11th and 12th
centuries, and is full of errors. The Persians were not the real victors at
the battle of Marathon, but the Athenians.
The siege of Byzantium, which was immediately undertaken by Con-
stantine, was attended with great labour and uncertainty. In the late civil wars, the
fortifications of that place, so justly consid-
ered as the key of Europe and Asia, had been
repaired and strengthened; and as long as Li-
zinus remained master of the sea, the garrison
was much less exposed to the danger of famine
than the army of the besiegers. The naval
commanders of Constantine were summoned to
his camp, and received his positive orders to
force the passage of the Hellespont, as the fleet
of Licinius, instead of seeking and destroying
its feebler enemy, continued inactive in those
narrow straits where its superiority of numbers
was of little use or advantage. Crispus, the
emperor’s eldest son, was intrusted with the
execution of this daring enterprise, which he
performed with so much courage and success,
that he deserved the esteem, and most probably
excited the jealousy, of his father. The engage-
ment lasted two days, and in the evening of the
first, the contending fleets, after a considerable
and mutual loss, retired into their respective
harbours of Europe and Asia. The second
day about noon a strong south wind sprang up,
which carried the vessels of Crispus against the
enemy, and as the general advantage was im-
proved by his skilful intrepidity, he soon ob-
tained a complete victory. An hundred and
thirty vessels were destroyed, five thousand men
were slain, and Amaseus, the admiral of the
Asian fleet, escaped with the utmost difficulty
to the shores of Chalcidon. As soon as the
Hellespont was open, a plentiful convey of
stores flowed into the camp of Constantine,
who had already advanced the operations of the
siege. He constructed artificial mounds of earth
of an equal height with the ramparts of Byzan-
tium. The lofty towers which were erected on
that foundation galled the besiegers with large
stones and darts from the military engines, and
the battering rams had shaken the walls in
several places. If Licinius persisted much
longer in the defence, he exposed himself to be
besieged in the ruins of the place. Before he
was surrounded he prudently removed his per-
son and treasures to Chalcidon in Asia; and
as he was always desirous of assuaging com-
plaints in the hopes and dangers of his fortune,
he made himself the title of Caesar or Martin-
inus, who exercised one of the most important
offices of the empire.

Battle of Crisus. — South were still the resources and
such the abilities, of Licinius, that, after so many successive defeats, he collected in
Bithynia a new army of fifty or sixty thousand
men, while the activity of Constantine was un-
employed in the siege of Byzantium. The vigilant
emperor did not however neglect the last strug-
ghles of his antagonist. A considerable part of
his victorious army was transported over the
Bosphorus in small vessels, and the decisive en-
gagement was fought soon after their landing on
the heights of Clereopolis, as it is now called,
of Scutari. The troops of Licinius, though they
were lately raised, ill armed, and worse dis-
plined, made head against their conquerors with
fruitless but desperate valour, till a total defeat,
and the slaughter of five and twenty thousand
men, irrecoverably determined the fate of their
leader. 110. He retired to Nicome-
dia, rather with the view of gaining
some time for negotiation, than with
the hope of any effectual defence. Constantia,
his wife and the sister of Constantine, interceded
with her brother in favour of her husband, and
obtained from his policy rather than from his
compassion, a solemn promise, confirmed by an
oath, that after the sacrifice of Martininus, and
the resignation of the purple, Licinius himself
should be permitted to pass the remainder of his
life in peace and allegiance. The behaviour of
Constantia, and her relation to the contending
parties, naturally recalls the remembrance of that
virtuous matron who was the sister of Augustus,
and the wife of Antony. But the temper of
markizal was altered, and it was no longer
ex- 

112. The same word is used in Stat. Trag. Et telib. ut et ille coro
nuntiatus. But in the De Iug. Rom., &c., it is used in the sense of
'bead.' 
113. See the Theodosian Code, i. 2. 2. 1, 2. Barm. 
115. For the Theodosian Code, see the Notes to the work. 
media, have been related with some minuteness and precision, not only as the events are in themselves both interesting and important, but still more, as they contributed to the decline of the empire by the expense of blood and treasure, and by the perpetual increase, as well of the taxes, as of the military establishment. The foundation of Constantinople, and the establishment of the Christian religion, were the immediate and memorable consequences of this revolution.

CHAP. XV.
The Progress of the Christian Religion, and the Settlements, Manners, Numbers, and Condition, of the primitive Christians.

A careful but rational enquiry into the progress and establishment of Christianity, may be considered as a very essential part of the history of the Roman empire. While that great body was invaded by open violence, or undermined by slow decay, a pure and noble religion gently insinuated itself into the minds of men, grew up in silence and obscurity, derived new vigour from opposition, and finally erected the triumphal banner of the cross on the ruins of the Capitol. Nor was the influence of Christianity confined to the period or to the limits of the Roman empire. After a revolution of thirteen or fourteen centuries, that religion is still professed by the nations of Europe, the most distinguished portion of mankind in arts and learning as well as in arms. By the industrious and zealous of the Europeans, it has been widely diffused in the most distant shores of Asia and Africa; and by the means of their colonies has been firmly established from China to Chili, in a world unknown to the ancients.

But this enquiry, however useful or entertaining, is attended with two peculiar difficulties. The scanty and suspicious materials of ecclesiastical history seldom enable us to dispose the dark cloud that hangs over the first age of the church. The great law of impartiality too often obliges us to reveal the imperfections of the unsupervised teachers and believers of the Gospel; and, to a careless observer, their faults may seem to cast a shade on the faith which they professed. But the scandal of the pious Christian, and the fallacious triumph of the Infidel, should cease as soon as they recollect, not only by whom, but likewise to whom, the Divine Revelation was given. The theologian may indulge the pleasing task of describing religion as she descended from heaven, arrayed in her native purity. A more melancholy duty is imposed on the historian. He must discover the inevitable mixture of error and corruption, which she contracted in a long residence upon earth, among a weak and degenerate race of beings.

Our curiosity is naturally prompted to enquire by what means the Christian faith obtained so remarkable a victory over the established religions of the earth. To this enquiry, an obvious but satisfactory answer may be returned, that it was owing to the convincing evidence of the doctrine itself, and to the rational provisions of its great Author. But as truth and reason seldom find an favorable reception in the world, and as the wisdom of Providence frequently confederates to use the passions of the human heart, and the general circumstances of mankind, as instruments to execute its purpose; we may still be permitted, though with becoming submission, to ask, not indeed what were the first, but what were the secondary causes of the rapid growth of the Christian church. It will, perhaps, appear, that it was most effectually forwarded and assisted by the following causes: 1. The indubitable, and, if we may use the expression, the intolerable force of the Christians, derived, it is true, from the Jewish religion, but purified from the narrow and unessential spirit, which, instead of inviting, had deterred the Gentiles from embracing the law of Moses. 2. The doctrine of a future life, improved by every additional circumstance which could give weight and efficacy to that important truth. 3. The miraculous powers ascribed to the primitive church. 4. The pure and austere morals of the Christians. 5. The union and discipline of the Christian republic, which gradually formed an independent and increasing state in the heart of the human empire.

We have already described the religious harmony of the ancient world, and the facility with which the most different and even hostile nations embraced, or at least respected, each other's expectations. A single people refused to join in the common intercourse of mankind. The Jews, who, under the Assyrian and Persian monarchs, had languished for many ages the most despised portion of their slaves, emerged from obscurity under the successors of Alexander; and as they multiplied to a surprising degree in the East, and afterwards in the West, they seem exalted the curiosity and wonder of other nations. The sudden obsequious with which they maintained their peculiar rites and national manners, seemed to mark them out a distinct species of men, who boldly professed, or who faintly disguised, their implacable hatred to the rest of mankind. Neither the violence of Antiochus, nor the arts of Herod, nor the example of the circumjacent nations, could ever persuade the Jews to associate with the institutions of Moses the elegant mythology of the Greeks. According to the laws of this age, and to be found in the present volume of the Christian Church, 2. The New Testament. Copenhagen, 1730. 8vo. 4. A Hebrew MS. of St. Luke's Gospel, which contained the opening of one MS. was lent to Dr. Burnet, by the Lord Chief Justice of London, who found it to be an MS. of an ancient style. It is dated 1564. 5. A Mexican MS. of the history of the Aztecs, which had been sent from Mexico, was of a modern style. 6. The MS. on papyrus is of the same sort as that described in vol. iv. p. 490.
to the maxims of universal toleration, the Roman empire professed a superstition which they despised.\(^6\) The skies, resplendent in glory, were reserved for the deities of Greece and Rome; and the gods of the Scythians and Greeks, the Phœnicians, and the Persians, were worshipped in a manner that the degenerate Romans despised.\(^6\) But the moderation of the conquerors was insufficient to appease the jealous prejudices of their subjects, who were alarmed and scandalised at the enmity of paganism, which necessarily introduced themselves into a Roman province.\(^6\) The mad attempt of Cilicia to place his own figure in the temple of Jerusalem, was defeated by the unanimous resolution of a people who dreaded death much less than such an idolatrous profanation.\(^6\) Their attachment to the law of Moses was equal to their detestation of foreign religions. The current of zeal and devotion, as it was contracted into a narrow channel, ran with the strength, and sometimes with the fury, of a torrent.

\[\text{His gradual} \]

This inflexible perseverance, which appeared so absurd or so ridiculous to the ancient world, assumes a more awful character, since Providence has designed to reveal to us the mysterious history of the chosen people. But the devout and even scrupulous attachment to the Mosaic religion, so conspicuous among the Jews who lived under the second temple, becomes still more surprising, if it is compared with the stubborn incredulity of their forefathers. When the law was given in thunder from Mount Sinai; when the tides of the ocean, and the course of the planets were suspended for the convenience of the Israelites; and when temporal rewards and punishments were the immediate consequences of their piety or disobedience, they perpetually relapsed into rebellion against the visible majesty of their Divine King, placed the idols of the nations in the sanctuary of Jehovah, and imitated every fantastic ceremony that was practised in the tents of the Arabs, or in the cities of Phœnicia.\(^9\) As the protection of Heaven was deservedly withdrawn from the ungrateful race, their faith acquired a proportionable degree of vigour and purity. The concurrence of Moses and Joshua had beside with careful indifference the most amazing miracles. Under the pressure of every calamity, the belief of these miracles has preserved the Jews of a later period from the universal contagion of idolatry; and in contradistinction to every known principle of the human mind, that singular people seem to have yielded a stronger and more ready assent to the traditions of their remote ancestors, than to the evidence of their own senses.\(^9\)

The Jewish religion was admirably fitted for defence, but it was never designed for conquest; and it seems probable that the number of proselytes was never much superior to that of apostates. The divine promises were originally made, and the distinguishing ri e of circumcision was enjoined, to a single family. When the sovereignty of Abraham had multiplied like the sands of the sea, the Deity, from whose mouth they received a system of laws and ceremonies, declared himself the proper and as it were the national God of Israel; and with the most jealous care separated his favourite people from the rest of mankind. The conquest of the land of Canaan was accompanied with so many wonderful and with so many bloody circumstances, that the victorious Jews were left in a state of irreconcilable hostility with all their neighbours. They had been commanded to extirpate some of the most idolatrous tribes, and the execution of the Divine will had seldom been retarded by the weakness of humanity. With the other nations they were forbidden to contract any marriages or alliances, and the prohibition of receiving them into the congregation, which in some cases was perpetual, almost always extended to the third, to the seventh, or even to the tenth generation. The obligation of preaching to the Gentiles the faith of Moses, had never been indicated as a pretext of the law, nor were the Jews inclined to impose it on themselves as a voluntary duty.

In the admission of new citizens, that uncouth people was actuated by the selfish vanity of the Greeks, rather than by the generous policy of Rome. The descendants of Abraham were flattered by the opinion, that they alone were the heirs of the covenant, and they were apprehensive of diminishing the value of their inheritance, by sharing it too easily with the strangers of the earth. A larger acquaintance with mankind, extended their knowledge without correcting their prejudices; and whenever the God of Israel acquired any new votaries, he was much more indulgent in the constant humour of polytheism than to the active zeal of his own missionaries.\(^11\) The religion of Moses seems to be instituted for a particular country as well as for a single nation; and if a strict obedience had been paid to the order, that every male, three times in the year, should present himself before the Lord Jehovah, it would have been impossible that the Jews could ever have spread themselves beyond the narrow limits of the promised land.\(^10\) That obstacle was indeed removed by the destruction of the temple of Jerusalem; but the most considerable part of the Jewish religion was involved in its destruction; and the Pagans, who had long wondered at the strange report of any

---

\(^{\text{6}}\) For the enumeration of the critics and writers of the ancient nation.\(^{\text{6}}\) Yet not all the ancient writers were of this opinion. \(^{\text{6}}\) For the enumeration of the ancient writers.\(^{\text{6}}\) They were called the Ephebai, from their age and wisdom, a word signifying publicans, or tax-gatherers.\(^{\text{6}}\) And in the ancient writers, there is nothing more certain or more obvious, than that this opinion was generally adopted by the ancient writers. \(^{\text{6}}\) And the letter is given in the Johan. Dei. 4. in. 2. \(^{\text{6}}\) And the letter is given in the Johan. Dei. 4. in. 2. \(^{\text{6}}\) And the letter is given in the Johan. Dei. 4. in. 2. \(^{\text{6}}\) And the letter is given in the Johan. Dei. 4. in. 2. \(^{\text{6}}\) And the letter is given in the Johan. Dei. 4. in. 2. \(^{\text{6}}\) And the letter is given in the Johan. Dei. 4. in. 2. \(^{\text{6}}\) And the letter is given in the Johan. Dei. 4. in. 2. \(^{\text{6}}\) And the letter is given in the Johan. Dei. 4. in. 2. \(^{\text{6}}\) And the letter is given in the Johan. Dei. 4. in. 2.
empty sanctuary, were at a loss to discover what could be the object, or what could be the instruments, of a worship which was instituted of temples and of altars, of priests and of sacrifices. Yet even in their fallen state, the Jews, still asserting their lofty and exclusive privileges, cherished, instead of courting, the society of strangers. They thus insisted with indefatigable vigilance on those parts of the law which it was in their power to practice. Their peculiar distinctions of days, of meals, and a variety of trivial though burdensome observances, were so many objects of disgust and aversion for the other nations, to whose habits and prejudices they were diametrically opposite. The painful and even dangerous consequence of circumcision was alone capable of compelling a willing proselyte from the door of the synagogue. Under these circumstances, Christianity offered itself to the world, armed with the strength of the Mosaic law, and delivered from the weight of its sanctions. An exclusive sign for the truth of religion, and the unity of God, was as carefully facilitated in the new as in the ancient system; and whatever was now revealed to mankind concerning the nature and designs of the Supreme Being, was fitted to increase their reverence for that mysterious doctrine. The divine authority of Moses and the prophets was admitted, and even established, as the highest basis of Christianity. From the beginning of the world, an uninterrupted series of predictions had announced and prepared the long expected coming of the Messiah, who, in compliance with the great expectations of the Jews, has been more frequently represented under the character of a King and Conqueror, than under that of a Prophet, a Martyr, and the Son of God. By his expiatory sacrifice, the imperfect sacrifices of the temple were at once consummated and abolished. The ceremonial law, which consisted only of types and figures, was succeeded by a pure and spiritual worship, equally adapted to all climates, as well as to every condition of mind, and to the initiation of blood; was substituted a more harmonious imitation of water. The premium of divine favour, instead of being partially confined to the poverty of Abraham, was universally proposed to the freeman and the slave, to the Greek and to the barbarian, to the Jew and to the Gentile. Every privilege that could raise the proselyte from earth to Heaven, that could visit his elevation, secure his happiness, or even gratify that secret pride, which, under the semblance of devotion, illuminates itself into the human heart, was still reserved for the members of the Christian church; but at the same time all mankind was permitted, and even solicited, to accept the glorious distinction, which was not only professed as a favour, but imposed as an obligation. It became the most sacred duty of a new convert to diffuse among his friends and relations the inestimable blessing which he had received, and to warn them against a refusal that would be severely punished as a criminal disobedience to the will of a benevolent but all-powerful Deity.

The enfranchisement of the church from the bonds of the synagogue, was a step however of some time and of some difficulty. The Jewish converts, who acknowledged Jesus in the character of the Messiah foretold by their ancient oracles, respected him as a prophetic teacher of virtue and religion, but they obstinately adhered to the ceremonies of their ancestors, and were desirous of imposing them on the Gentiles, who materially augmented the number of believers. These Judaising Christians seem to have argued with some degree of plausibility from the divine origin of the Mosaic law, and from the innumerable perfections of its great Author. They affirmed that, if the Being, who is the same through all eternity, had designed to abolish these sacred rites which had served to distinguish his chosen people, the repeal of them would have been no less clear and solemn than their first promulgation; that, instead of these frequent declensions, which either suppose or assert the perpetuity of the Mosaic religion, it would have been represented as a provisional scheme intended to last only till the coming of the Messiah, who should instruct mankind in a more perfect mode of faith and worship; that the Messiah himself, and his disciples who conversed with him on earth, instead of authorising by their example the most minute observances of the Mosaic law, would have published to the world the abolition of these peculiar and obsolete ceremonies, without sacrificing Christianity to remain during as many years obscurely confounded among the sects of the Jewish church. Arguments like these appear to have been used in the defence of the expiring state of the Mosaic law; but the industry of our learned divines has abundantly explained the ambiguous language of the Old Testament, and the ambiguous conduct of the apostolic teachers. It was proper gradually to unfold the system of the Gospel, and to pronounce, with the utmost caution and tenderness, a sentence of condemnation so repugnant to the inclination and prejudices of the believing Jews.

The history of the church of Jerusalem affords a lively proof of the necessity of those precautions, and of the deep impression which the Jewish religion had made on the minds of its sectaries. The first fifteen bishops of Jerusalem were all circumcised Jews; and the congregation over which they presided, united the law of Moses with the doctrine of Christ. It was natural that the primitive church of Jerusalem should continue so long to be a colony of the Jewish religion, with the Jewish mode of governing its affairs. The Church of Jerusalem, considering the narrowness and narrow-mindedness of its adherents, was not likely to make any progress, unless it should join itself to the Christian church, and adopt its accommodated forms. The church of Alexandria, which embraced the Greek language, was thus very early, and with greater success, accommodated to the Greek spirit. The synod of Ancyra (or Iconium), in the year 143, was the first assembly of the Christian church, held in the name of the creed, and a complete and practical explanation of the Christian faith. But in 144, the synod of Constantinople, with a view to defend the unity of the Church against the schismatics, meeting at a distance from the imperial court, for the purpose of providing against the schismatical report, which had not been before entertained in the church, but was now the subject of alarm.
nitive tradition of a church which was founded only forty days after the death of Christ, and was governed almost as many years under the immediate inspection of his apostle, should be received as the standard of orthodoxy. The distant churches very frequently appealed to the authority of their venerable parent, and relieved her distresses by a liberal contribution of alms. But when numerous and opulent societies were established in the great cities of the empire, in Antioch, Alexandria, Ephesus, Corinth, and Rome, the reverence which Jerusalem had inspired to all the Christian colonies inevitably diminished. The Jewish converts, or, as they were afterwards called, the Nazarenes, who had laid the foundations of the church, soon found themselves overwhelmed by the increasing multitudes, that from all the various religions of polytheism enlisted under the banner of Christ; and the Gentiles, who, with the approbation of their peculiar apostle, had rejected the intolerable weight of the Mosaic ceremonies at length refused to their more scrupulous brethren the same toleration which at first they had humbly solicited for their own practice. The ruin of the temple, of the city, and of the public religion of the Jews, was severely felt by the Nazarenes; as in their assemblies, though not in their faith, they maintained as intimate a connection with their innumerable countrymen, whose misfortunes were attributed by the Pagans to the contempt, and more justly ascribed by the Christians to the wrath of the Supreme Deity. The Nazarenes retired from the ruins of Jerusalem to the little town of Pella beyond the Jordan, where that ancient church languished above sixty years in solitude and obscurity. They still enjoyed the comfort of making frequent and devout visits to the Holy City, and the hope of being one day restored to those seats which both nature and religion taught them to love as well as to reverence. But at length, under the reign of Hadrian, the desperate fanaticism of the Jews filled up the measure of their calamities; and the Romans, exasperated by their repeated rebellions, exercised the rights of victory with unusual rigor. The emperor formed, under the name of Aelia Cæsariæ, a new city on Mount Sion, to which he gave the privileges of a colony; and desiring the severest penalties against any of the Jewish people who should dare to approach its precincts, he fixed a vigilant garrison of a Roman cohort to enforce the execution of his orders. The Nazarenes had only one way left to escape the common proscription, and the force of truth was on this occasion assisted by the influence of temporal advantages. They elected

Marcus for their bishop, a prelate of the race of the Gentiles, and most probably a native either of Italy or of some of the Latin provinces. At his persuasion, the most considerable part of the congregation renounced the Mosaic law, in the practice of which they had persevered above a century. By this sacrifice of their habitus and prejudices, they purchased a free admission into the colony of Hadrians, and were more firmly cemented their union with the Catholic church.

When the name and honours of the church of Jerusalem had been restored to Mount Sion, the crimes of heresy and schism were imputed to the obtrusive remnant of the Nazarenes, which refused to accompany their Latin bishop. They still preserved their former habitation of Pella, spread their influence into the villages adjacent to Damascus, and formed an inconsiderable church in the city of Bostra, or, as it is now called, of Aleppo, in Syria. The name of Nazarenes was deemed too honourable for those Christian Jews, and they soon received from the supposed poverty of their understanding, as well as of their condition, the contemptuous epithet of Ebionites.

In a few years after the return of the church of Jerusalem, it became a matter of doubt and controversy, whether a man who sincerely acknowledged Jesus as the Messiah, but who still continued to observe the law of Moses, could possibly hope for salvation. The humane temper of Justinus Martyr inclined him to answer this question in the affirmative; and though he expressed himself with the most guarded difference, he ventured to determine in favour of such an imperfect Christian, if he were content to practise the Mosaic ceremonies, without pretending to assert their general use or necessity. But when Justinus was pressed to declare the sentiment of the church, he confessed that there were very many among the orthodox Christians, who not only excluded their Judaizing brethren from the hope of salvation, but who declined any intercourse with them in the common offices of friendship, hospitality, and social life. The more rigorous opinion prevailed, as it was natural to expect, over the military; and an internal bar of separation was fixed between the disciples of Moses and those of Christ. The unfortunate Ebionites, rejected from one religion as apostates, and from the other as heretics, found themselves compelled to assume a more isolated character; and although some traces of that obdurate sect may be discovered as late as the fourth century, they instantly melted away either into the church or the apostacy.
While the orthodox church preserved a just medium between excessive veneration and improper contempt for the law of Moses, the various heresies deviated into equal but opposite extremes of error and extravagance. From the acknowledged truth of the Jewish religion, the Ebionites had concluded that it could never be abrogated. From its supposed imperfections the Gnostics as hastily inferred that it never was instituted by the wisdom of the Deity. There are some objections against the authority of Moses and the prophets, which too readily present themselves to the sceptical mind; though they can only be derived from our ignorance of remote antiquity, and from our incapacity to form an adequate judgment of the divine economy. These objections were eagerly embraced and as petulantly urged by the vain science of the Gnostics. As these heresies were, for the most part, avarice to the pleasures of sense, they necessarily assumed the polygamy of the patriarchs, the gallantries of David, and the extravagance of Solomon. The conquest of the land of Canaan, and the extirpation of the unsuspecting natives, they were at a loss how to reconcile with the common notions of humanity and justice. But when they recollected the exemplary list of murders, of executions, and of massacres, which stain almost every page of the Jewish annals, they acknowledged that the barbarities of Palestine had exercised as much compulsion towards their idolatrous enemies, as they had ever shown to their friends or countrymen. Passing from the extremity of the law to the law itself, they asserted that it was impossible that a religion which consisted only of bloody sacrifices and trifling ceremonies, and whose rewards as well as punishments were all of a carnal and temporal nature, could inspire the love of virtue, or retrace the impetuousness of passion. The Mosaic account of the creation and fall of man was treated with profound dignity by the Gnostics, who would not listen with patience to the repose of the Deity after six days' labour, to the rib of Adam, the garden of Eden, the trees of life and of knowledge, the speaking serpent, the forbidden fruit, and the condemnation pronounced against human kind for the sexual offence of their first progenitors. The God of Israel was impiously represented by the Gnostics, as a being liable to passion and to errors, capricious in his favour, implacable in his resentment, most jealous of his superstitious worship, and confining his partial providence to a single people, and to this transitory life. In such a character they could discover none of the features of the wise and omniscient father of the universe. They allowed that the religion of the Jews was somewhat less criminal than the idolatry of the Gentiles; but it was the fundamental doctrine, that the Christ whom they adored as the first and brightest emanation of the Deity, appeared upon earth to rescue mankind from their various errors, and to reveal a new system of truth and perfection. The most learned of the fathers, by a very singular condescension, have impulsively admitted the sophistry of the Gnostics. Acknowledging that the literal sense is repugnant to every principle of faith as well as reason, they deem themselves secure and invincible behind the ample veil of allegory, which they carefully spread over every tender part of the Mosaic dispensation. It has been remarked with more ingenuity than truth, that the virgin purity of the church was never violated by schism or heresy before the reign of Tetricus or Hadrian, about one hundred years after the death of Christ. We may observe with much more propriety, that during that period, the disciples of the Messiah were indulged in a free latitude, both of faith and practice, than has ever been allowed in succeeding ages. As the terms of communion were immensely narrowed, and the spiritual authority of the prevailing party was exercised with increasing severity, many of its most respectable adherents, who were called upon to renounce, were provoked to assert their private opinions, to pursue the consequences of their mistaken principles, and openly to erect the standard of rebellion against the unity of the church. The Gnostics were distinguished as the most polite, the most learned, and the most wealthy of the Christian names, and that general appellation, which expressed a superiority of knowledge, was either assumed by their own right, or judicially bestowed by the envy of their adversaries. They were without exception of the race of the Gentiles, and their principal founders seem to have been natives of Syria or Egypt, where the warmth of the climate disposes both the mind and the body to indulgent and contemplative devotion. The Gnostics blended with the faith of Christ many sublime but obscure tenets, which they derived from oriental-philosophy, and even from the religion of Zoroaster, concerning the eternity of matter, the existence of two principles, and the mysterious hierarchy of the invisible world. As soon as they launched out into that vast abyss, they delivered themselves in the guidance of a disordered imagination; and as the paths of error are various and infinite, the Gnostics were imperceptibly divided into many sects and divisions on earth. The period of Justin, I. c. 130, is respective after the death of Hadrian. I. c. 130, was chosen the mole to the date of Justin, I. c. 130, Tetricus, he conformed to the Roman law and the Catholic precepts...
than fifty particular sects, of whom the most celebrated appear to have been the Basilidians, the Valentinians, the Marcionites, and, in a still later period, the Manichaei. Each of these sects could boast of its bishops and congregations, of its doctors and martyrs, and, instead of the four gospels adopted by the church, the heretics produced a multitude of histories, in which the actions and discourses of Christ and of his apostles were adapted to their respective tenets. The success of the Gnostics was rapid and extensive. They covered Asia and Egypt, established themselves in Rome, and sometimes penetrated into the provinces of the West. For the most part they arose in the second century, flourished during the third, and were suppressed in the fourth or fifth, by the prevalence of more fashionable controversies, and by the superior ascendancy of the reigning power. Though they constantly disturbed the peace, and frequently disregarded the name of religion, they contributed to assist rather than to retard the progress of Christianity. The Gentile converts, whose strongest objections and prejudices were directed against the law of Moses, could find admission into many Christian societies, which required not from their untutored mind any belief of an antecedent revelation. Their faith was loosely fortified and enlarged, and the church was ultimately benefited by the conquests of its most insatiable enemies.

But whatever difference of opinion might exist between the Orthodox, the Ebionites, and the Gnostics, concerning the divinity or the obligation of the Mosaic law, they were all equally animated by the same exclusive zeal, and by the same abhorrence for idolatry which had distinguished the Jews from the other nations of the ancient world. The philosopher, who considered the system of polytheism as a composition of human fraud and error, could disguise a smile of contempt under the mask of devotion, without suppressing that either the mockery, or the compliance, would expose him to the resentment of any invisible, or, as he conceived them, imaginary powers. But the established religions of the Pagans were seen by the primitive Christians in a much more odious and formidable light. It was the universal sentiment both of the church and of heretics, that the decisions were the authors, the patrons, and the objects of idolatry. These rebellious spirits who had been degraded from the rank of angels, and cast down into the infernal pit, were still permitted to roam upon earth, to torment the bodies, and to seduce the minds of sinful men. The demons soon discovered and abused the natural propensity of the human heart towards devotion, and, artfully withdrawing the adoration of mankind from their Creator, they usurped the place and honours of the Supreme Deity. By the success of their malicious contrivances, they at once gratified their own vanity and revenge, and obtained the only comfort of which they were yet susceptible; the hope of involving the human species in the participation of their guilt and misery. It was confessed, or at least it was imagined, that they had distributed among themselves the most important characters of polytheism, one demon assuming the name and attributes of Jupiter, another of Minerva, a third of Venus, and a fourth perhaps of Apollo; and that, by the advantage of their long experience and natural nature, they were enabled to execute, with sufficient skill and dignity, the parts which they had undertaken. They lurked in the temples, instituted festivals and sacrifices, invented tabus, pronounced oracles, and were frequently allowed to perform miracles. The Christians, who, by the interposition of evil spirits, could on readily explain every preternatural appearance, were disposed and even dehurs to admit the most extravagant fictions of the Pagan mythology. But the belief of the Christian was accompanied with horror. The most trifling mark of respect in the national worship was considered as a direct homage yielded to the demons, and as an act of rebellion against the majesty of God.

In consequence of this opinion, it was the first but arduous duty of a Christian to preserve himself pure and undefiled by the practice of idolatry. The religion of the nations was not merely a speculative doctrine professed in the schools or preached in the temples. The innumerable deities and rites of polytheism were closely interwoven with every circumstance of business or pleasure, of public or of private life; and it seemed impossible to escape the observance of them, without, at the same time, renouncing the commerce of mankind, and all the offices and amusements of society. The important transactions of peace and war were prepared or concluded by solemn sacrifices, in which the magistrate, the senator, and the soldier, were obliged to preside or to participate. The public spectacles were an essential part of the cheerful devotion of the Pagans, and the gods were supposed to accept, as the most grateful offering, the games that the prince and people celebrated in honour of their peculiar festivals.

25 See the catalogue of Irenaeus and Epiphanius. It must indeed be allowed, that these writers were inclined to multiply the number of the heresies. It is probable, that some of the more obscure, and even adventitious, sects, were known under the name of a general denomination.
26 Epiphanius, H. E. 1.681, 691. Irenaeus, L. 2. c. viii. See in Eusebius, H. E. 7.12, 13. The division of sects, according to Eusebius, with his Crimea, is a mere conjecture, he makes Apollonius, the Manichaeus, to be the author of the first Gnosticism.
27 See the very interesting passage of Origen, (Praef. ad Lucanum,) in which he enumerates the differences between the Gnostics, and the orthodox church, with respect to the supposition of an intermediate state of the soul between the resurrection and the future judgment. And, in Eusebius, (Hist. Eccl. 2.23,) Origen describes the sects of the Gnostics as a mixture of all the heresies.
28 Eusebius, 2. 34. A list of the principal Gnostic sects of the Christian church.
29 Eusebius, IV. 28. See the most important of all the Christian sects, the Gnostics.
30 See the same authority for the origin and history of the Christian sects.
31 See Eusebius, H. E. 3.27, 28. The list of the Gnostic sects of Eusebius is of some importance, as they were considered by the Christian exponents.
32 The Gnostics are of two kinds: those who were accustomed to the Jewish ceremonies, and those who were opposed to them. The latter are called by Eusebius, "Men of new hope," "Men of new law," "New Gentiles," and "New Jews." See Eusebius, H. E. 3.14, 15.
33 The Gnostics are of two kinds: those who were accustomed to the Jewish ceremonies, and those who were opposed to them. The latter are called by Eusebius, "Men of new hope," "Men of new law," "New Gentiles," and "New Jews." See Eusebius, H. E. 3.14, 15.
34 This is a common error in the history of the Christian church. Eusebius, H. E. 2.23, 24.
35 It is chiefly from the work of Irenaeus, who is supposed to have been a Gnostic, that we obtain a knowledge of the origin and history of the Christian sects.
The Christian, who with pious horror avoided the abomination of the circus or the theatre, found himself encompassed with infernal sounds in every convivial entertainment, as often as his friends, invoking the hospitable deities, poured out libations to each other’s happiness. 91 When the bride, struggling with well-affect ed reluctance, was forced in by menial pomp over the threshold of her new habitation, 92 or when the sad procession of the dead slowly moved towards the funeral pile; 93 the Christian, on these interesting occasions, was compelled to desist. The persons who were dearest to him, rather than contract the guilt inherent to those impious ceremonies. Every art and every trade that was in the least concerned in the adorning or anointing of idols was polluted by the stain of idolatry; 94 a severe sentence, since it devoted to eternal misery the far greater part of the community, which is employed in the exercise of liberal or mechanick professions. If we cast our eyes over the numerous remains of antiquity, we shall perceive, that besides the immediate representations of the gods, and the holy instruments of their worship, the elegant forms and agreeable actions consecrated by the imagination of the Greeks, were introduced as the richest ornaments of the houses, the dress, and the furniture, of the Pagans. 95 Even the arts of music and painting, of eloquence and poetry, flowed from the same impure origin. In the style of the fathers, Apollo and the Muse were the organs of the infernal spirit, Homer and Virgil were the most eminent of his servants, and the beautiful mythology which pervades and animates the compositions of their genius, is destined to celebrate the glory of the demons. Even the common language of Greece and Rome abounded with familiar and impious expressions, which the instructive Christian might too carelessly utter, or too patiently hear. 96

**Footnote:**

The dangerous temptations which on every side lurked in ambush to surprise the unguarded believer, assisted him with rebuked violence on the days of solemn festivals. So artfully were they framed and disposed throughout the year, that superstition always wore the appearance of pleasure, and often of virtue. 97 Some of the most sacred festivals in the Roman ritual were destined to recall the new calends of January with vows of public and private felicity, to indulge the pious remembrance of the dead and living, to enunciate the inviolable bounds of property, to hail, on the return of spring, the神圣 powers of immortality, to perpetuate the two memorable arms of Rome, the foundation of the city, and that of the republic, and to restore, during the human licence of the Saturnalia, the primitive equality of mankind. Some idea may be conceived of the absurdities of the Christians for such impious ceremonies, by the scrupulous delicacy which they displayed on a much less alarming occasion. On days of general festivity, it was the custom of the ancients to adorn their doors with lamps and with branches of laurel, and to crown their heads with a garland of flowers. This innocent and elegant practice might perhaps have been tolerated as a mere civil institution. But it must reluctantly happened that the laws were under the protection of the household gods, that the laurel was sacred to the heart of Daphne, and that garlands of flowers, though frequently worn as a symbol either of joy or mourning, had been dedicated in their first origin to the service of superstition. The trembling Christians, who were persuaded in this instance to comply with the fashion of their country, and the commands of the magistrates, laboured under the most gloomy apprehensions, from the reproaches of their own conscience, the censures of the church, and the denunciations of divine vengeance. 98

**Footnote:**

Such was the anxious diligence which was required to guard the sanctity of the gospel from the infectious breath of idolatry. The superstitions observances of public or private rites were so accurately practised, from education and habit, by the adherents of the established religion, as to be suffered, without any appearance of that zeal which the Christians possessed, and the Christian, as his opportunity of declining and confirming their animos opposition. By these frequent protestations their attachment to the faith was continually fortified, and in proportion to the increase of zeal, they contended with the more ardour and success in the holy war, which they had undertaken against the empire of the demons.

**II.** The writings of Cicero 99 represent in the most lively colours the ignorance, the vices, and the uncertainty of the ancient philosophers with regard to the immortality of the soul. When they are desirous of ascertaining their discipline against the fear of death, they recalculate, in an obvious, though invidiously position, that the fatal stroke of our dissolution releases us from the calamities of life, and that these can no longer suffer, who no longer exist.

91 Vincentius, ibid., p. 51, 9. If a Psalm sung by the ancient heathens of Cyrenia would, on the occasion of the triumph, be sung, the Christian would have to answer: "in the name of the Lord, we do not treat that which is not our own.

92 Vincentius, ibid., p. 150, 36. If a Psalm sung by the ancient heathens of Cyrenia would, on the occasion of the triumph, be sung, the Christian would have to answer: "in the name of the Lord, we do not treat that which is not our own.

93 Vincentius, ibid., p. 150, 36. If a Psalm sung by the ancient heathens of Cyrenia would, on the occasion of the triumph, be sung, the Christian would have to answer: "in the name of the Lord, we do not treat that which is not our own.

94 Vincentius, ibid., p. 150, 36. If a Psalm sung by the ancient heathens of Cyrenia would, on the occasion of the triumph, be sung, the Christian would have to answer: "in the name of the Lord, we do not treat that which is not our own.

95 Vincentius, ibid., p. 150, 36. If a Psalm sung by the ancient heathens of Cyrenia would, on the occasion of the triumph, be sung, the Christian would have to answer: "in the name of the Lord, we do not treat that which is not our own.

96 Vincentius, ibid., p. 150, 36. If a Psalm sung by the ancient heathens of Cyrenia would, on the occasion of the triumph, be sung, the Christian would have to answer: "in the name of the Lord, we do not treat that which is not our own.

97 Vincentius, ibid., p. 150, 36. If a Psalm sung by the ancient heathens of Cyrenia would, on the occasion of the triumph, be sung, the Christian would have to answer: "in the name of the Lord, we do not treat that which is not our own.

98 Vincentius, ibid., p. 150, 36. If a Psalm sung by the ancient heathens of Cyrenia would, on the occasion of the triumph, be sung, the Christian would have to answer: "in the name of the Lord, we do not treat that which is not our own.

99 Vincentius, ibid., p. 150, 36. If a Psalm sung by the ancient heathens of Cyrenia would, on the occasion of the triumph, be sung, the Christian would have to answer: "in the name of the Lord, we do not treat that which is not our own.
Yet there were a few sages of Greece and Rome, who had conceived a more exalted, and, in some respects, a juster idea of human nature: though it must be confessed, that, in the sublime enquiry, their reason had been often guided by their imagination, and that their imaginations had been promptued by their vanity. When they viewed with complacency the extent of their own mental powers, when they exercised the various faculties of memory, of fancy, and of judgment, in the most profound speculations, or the most important labours, and when they reflected on the desire of fame, which transported them into future ages, far beyond the bounds of death and of the grave; they were unwilling to confound themselves with the beasts of the field, or to suppose, that a being, for whose dignity they entertained the most sincere admiration, could be limited to a spot of earth, and to a few years of duration. With this favourable prepossession they summoned to their aid the science, or rather the language, of metaphysics. They soon discovered, that as none of the properties of matter will apply to the operations of the mind, the human soul must consequently be a substance distinct from the body, pure, simple, and spiritual, incapable of dissolution, and susceptible of a much higher degree of virtue and happiness after the release from its corporeal prison. From these specious and noble principles, the philosophers who stood in the footsteps of Plato deduced a very unjustifiable conclusion, since they asserted, not only the future immortality, but the past eternity of the human soul, which they were too apt to consider as a portion of the infinite and self-existing spirit, which pervades and sustains the universe. A doctrine thus removed beyond the senses and the experience of mankind, might serve to amuse the leisure of a philosophical mind; or, in the silence of solitude, it might sometimes impart a ray of comfort to desponding virtue; but the faint impression which had been received in the schools, was soon obliterated by the commerce and business of active life. We are sufficiently acquainted with the eminent persons who flourished in the age of Cicero, and of the first Cæsars, with their actions, their characters, and their motives; to be assured that their conduct in this life was never regulated by any serious conviction of the rewards or punishments of a future state. At the bar and in the senate of Rome, the ablest orators were not apprehensive of giving offence to their hearers, by exposing that doctrine as an idle and extravagant opinion, which was rejected with contempt by every man of a liberal education and understanding.

Since therefore the most sublime efforts of philosophy can extend no farther than feebly to point out the desire, the hope; or, at most, the probability, of a future state, there is nothing, except a divine revelation, that can ascertain the existence, and describe the condition, of the invisible country which it destined to receive the souls of men after their separation from the body. But we may perceive several defects inherent to the popular religions of Greece and Rome, which rendered them very unequal to so arduous a task: 1. The general system of their mythology was supported by so many papers, and the wisest among the Pagans had already disclaimed its unpruned authority. 2. The description of the infernal regions had been abandonned to the fancy of painters and of poets, who peopled them with so many phantoms and monsters, who dispensed their rewards and punishments with so little equity, that a calm truth, the most conformable to the human heart, was oppressed and disregarded by the absurd mixture of the wildest fictions. 3. The doctrine of a future state was scarcely considered among the devout polytheists of Greece and Rome as a fundamental article of faith. The providence of the gods, as it related to public communities, rather than to private individuals, was principally displayed on the visible theatre of the present world. The petitions which were offered on the altars of Jupiter or Apollo, expressed the anxiety of their worshippers for temporal happiness, and their ignorance or indifference concerning a future life. 4. The important truth of the immortality of the soul was insculpt with more diligence as well as success in India, in Assyria, in Egypt, and in Gaul; and since we cannot attribute such a difference to the superior knowledge of the barbarians, we must ascribe it to the influence of an established priesthood, which employed the motives of virtue as the instrument of ambition.

We might naturally expect, that a principle so essential to religion, would have been revealed in the clearest terms to the chosen people of Palestine, and that it might safely have been intrusted to the holy priest. It is incumbent on us to admire the mysterious dispensations of Providence, when we discover, that the doctrine of the immortality of the soul is omitted in the law of Moses; it is darkly intimated by the prophets, and during the long period which elapsed between the Egyptian and the Babylonian revolutions, the hopes as well as fears of the Jews appear to have been confined within the narrow compass of the present life. After Cyrus had permitted the exiled nation to return into the promised land, and after Ezra had restored the ancient records of their religion, two celebrated
THE DECLINE AND FALL

The ancient and popular doctrine concerning the Millennium was intimately connected with the second coming of Christ. As the works of the creation had been finished in six days, their duration in the present state, according to a tradition which was attributed to the prophet Elijah, was fixed to six thousand years. By the same analogy it was inferred, that this long period of labour and contents, which was now almost elapsed, would be succeeded by a joyful sabbath of a thousand years; and that Christ, with the triumphant band of the saints and the elect who had escaped death, or who had been miraculously revived, would reign upon earth till the time appointed for the last and general resurrection. So pleasing was this hope to the mind of believers, that the New Jerusalem, the seat of this blissful kingdom, was quickly adorned with all the gayest columns of the imagination. A felicity consisting only of pure and spiritual pleasures would have appeared too refined for its inhabitants, who were still supposed to possess their human nature and senses. A garden of Eden, with the amusements of the pastoral life, was no longer suited to the advanced state of society which prevailed under the Roman empire. A city was therefore erected of gold and precious stones, and a supernatural plenty of corn and wine was bestowed on the adjacent territory; in the free enjoyment of whose spontaneous productions, the happy and beneficent people was never to be restrained by any judicious laws of exclusive property. The assurance of such a Millennium was carefully inculcated by a succession of fathers from Justin Martyr and Irenæus, who conversed with the immediate disciples of the apostles, down to Lactantius, who was preceptor to the son of Constantine. Though it might not be universally received, it

65 Josephus, Antiquities, i. 117, 2. De Bell. Jud. ii. 8. According to the sage interpreter of his words, the Sadducees and Pharisees held the same doctrine of the resurrection of the body of our Lord, in so far as they were taught the problem to their soul, and to suppose that they continued in the body until the resurrection. Josephus states that the Sadducees and the Pharisees agree upon this matter in the Antiquities, iv. 4. 11
66 Papias and the bishop of Hierapolis, Theophilus, quoted in Eusebius, Hist. Eccl. ii. 27. The authentic narrative of this early patriarch, Justin Martyr, is recorded in the second book of the Apology, who mentions that he was the disciple of Theophilus. The epistle of Papias to the bishop of Hierapolis, as given by Eusebius, contains a list of the writings of the apocryphal authors, including the first and second books of Samuel, which were generally received by the ancient church. These also were found in the Septuagint, which was the

The literal sense the discourses of Christ himself, were obliged to expect the second and glorious coming of the Son of Man in the clouds, before this generation was totally extinguished, which had been his humble condition upon earth, and which might still be witness of the calamities of the Jews under Vespasian or Hadrian. The resolution of seventeen centuries has instructed us not to press too closely the mysterious language of prophecy and revelation; but as long as it serves wise purposes, this prophecy was permitted to subsist in the church, it was productive of the most salutary effects on the faith and practice of Christians, who lived in the painful expectation of that moment when the globe itself, and all the various race of mankind, should tremble at the appearance of their divine judge.

The ancient and popular doctrine concerning the Millennium was intimately connected with the second coming of Christ. As the works of the creation had been finished in six days, their duration in the present state, according to a tradition which was attributed to the prophet Elijah, was fixed to six thousand years. By the same analogy it was inferred, that this long period of labour and contents, which was now almost elapsed, would be succeeded by a joyful sabbath of a thousand years; and that Christ, with the triumphant band of the saints and the elect who had escaped death, or who had been miraculously revived, would reign upon earth till the time appointed for the last and general resurrection. So pleasing was this hope to the mind of believers, that the New Jerusalem, the seat of this blissful kingdom, was quickly adorned with all the gayest columns of the imagination. A felicity consisting only of pure and spiritual pleasures would have appeared too refined for its inhabitants, who were still supposed to possess their human nature and senses. A garden of Eden, with the amusements of the pastoral life, was no longer suited to the advanced state of society which prevailed under the Roman empire. A city was therefore erected of gold and precious stones, and a supernatural plenty of corn and wine was bestowed on the adjacent territory; in the free enjoyment of whose spontaneous productions, the happy and beneficent people was never to be restrained by any judicious laws of exclusive property. The assurance of such a Millennium was carefully inculcated by a succession of fathers from Justin Martyr and Irenæus, who conversed with the immediate disciples of the apostles, down to Lactantius, who was preceptor to the son of Constantine. Though it might not be universally received, it
appear to have been the reigning sentiment of the orthodox believers; and it seems so well adapted to the desires and apprehensions of mankind, that it must have contributed in a very considerable degree to the progress of the Christian faith. But when the edifice of the church was almost completed, the temporary support was laid aside. The doctrine of Christ's reign, upon earth, was at first treated as a profound allegory, was considered by degrees as a doubtful and useless opinion, and was at length rejected as the absurd invention of heresy and fanaticism. A mysterious prophecy, which still forms a part of the sacred canon, but which was thought to favour the exploded sentiment, has very narrowly escaped the proscription of the church.

Whilst the happiness and glory of a temporal reign were promised to the disciples of Christ, the most dreadful calamities were denounced against an unbelieving world. The edification of the new Jerusalem was to advance by equal steps with the destruction of the mystic Babylon; and as long as the emperors who reigned before Constantius persisted in the profession of idolatry, the epithet of Babylon was applied to the city and to the empire of Rome. A regular series was prepared of all the moral and physical evils which can afflict a flourishing nation; diseases, disasters, famines, drought, the invasion of the fiercest barbarians from the unknown regions of the North: pestilence and famine, conflagrations and earthquakes, inundations. All these were only so many preparatory and alarming signs of the great catastrophe of Rome, when the country of the Scipios and Caesars should be consumed by a flame from Heaven, and the city of the seven hills, with her palaces, her temples, and her triumphal arches, should be buried in a vast lake of fire and brimstone. It might, however, afford some consolation to Roman vanity, that the sword of their empire would be that of the Lord himself; which, as it had once perished by the element of water, was destined to experience a second and a speedy destruction from the element of fire. In the opinion of a general conformation the faith of the Christian very happily coincided with the tradition of the East, the philosophy of the Stoics, and the analogy of Nature; and even to the Gentiles, which, from religious motives, had been closed for the origin and principal scene of the conflagration, was the best adapted for that purpose by natural and physical causes; by its deep caverns, beds of sulphur, and numoous volcanoes, of which those of Etna, of Vesuvius, and of Lipari, exhibit a very imperfect representation. The calamity and most intense sceptic could not refuse to acknowledge, that the destruction of the present system of the world by fire, was in itself extremely probable. The Christian, who founded his belief much less on the fallacious arguments of reason than on the authority of tradition and the interpretation of Scripture, expected it with terror and confidence as a certain and approaching event; and as his mind was perpetually filled with the solemn idea, he considered every disaster that happened to the empire as an infulible symptom of an expiring world. The condemnation of the wise and most virtuous of the Pagans, on account of their ignorance or disbelief of the divine truth, seems to afford the reason and the humanity of the present age. But the primitive church, whose faith was of a much firmer consistency, delivered over, without hesitation, to eternal torture, the far greater part of the human species. A charitable hope might perhaps be indulged in favour of Socrates, or some other sages of antiquity, who had consulted the light of reason before that of the gospel had arisen. But it was magnanimously affirmed that those who, since the birth or the death of Christ, had obstinately persisted in the worship of the demons, neither deserved, nor could expect, a pardon from the irritated justice of the Deity. These rigid sentiments, which had been unknown to the ancient world, appear to have infused a spirit of bitterness into a system of love and harmony. The ties of blood and friendship were frequently turned asunder by the difference of religious faith; and the Christians, who in this world found themselves oppressed by the power of the Pagans, were sometimes seduced, by resentment and spiritual pride, to delight in the prospect of their future triumph. You are "the focus of spectacles," exclaims the stern Tertullian, "expect the greatest of all spectacles, the last and eternal judgment of the universe. How shall I adore, how laugh, how rejoice, how exult, when I behold so many proud monarchs, and sacred gods, groaning in the lowest abyss of darkness; so many magistrates, who persecuted the name of the Lord, despoothing in fiercer fires than they ever crucified against the Christians; so many sage philosophers, blushing in red hot flames with their defiled scholars; so many celebrated poets trembling before the tribunal, not of Minos, but of

67. Laurencian Testa, Titre, cap. 13, Deu loquor de suo loco, ex archetypis posito, atque eis, quae sunt pertinens, ibi, cap. 12.
68. On Sabinus, Book IV. It is evident that no one will be surprised with the

71. Lucianus, De divin. philos. cap. 10, in loc. cit. nihil esse quod

72. The famous text, "Non est ens," expresses a principle which is

73. Tertullian, De lapid. cap. 12, sub. et alii, cap. 14. In

74. The same applies to the Institutes of the Christian church, as well as

75. The same applies to the Institutes of the Christian church, as well as

76. The same applies to the Institutes of the Christian church, as well as

77. The same applies to the Institutes of the Christian church, as well as

78. The same applies to the Institutes of the Christian church, as well as

79. The same applies to the Institutes of the Christian church, as well as

80. The same applies to the Institutes of the Christian church, as well as

81. The same applies to the Institutes of the Christian church, as well as

82. The same applies to the Institutes of the Christian church, as well as

83. The same applies to the Institutes of the Christian church, as well as

84. The same applies to the Institutes of the Christian church, as well as

85. The same applies to the Institutes of the Christian church, as well as

86. The same applies to the Institutes of the Christian church, as well as
Christ, so many tragedies, more mischievous in the expression of their own sufferings; so many dancers. But the humanity of the reader will permit me to draw a veil over the rest of this infernal description, which the feeble Africans pursue in a long variety of affected and unfeeling witticisms.24

Doubtless there were many among the primitive Christians of a temper more suitable to the meekness and charity of their profession. There were many who felt a sincere compassion for the danger of their friends and countrymen, and who exerted the most benevolent art to save them from the impending destruction. The careless polytheist, assailed by new and unexpected torments, against which neither his priests nor his philosophers could afford him any certain protection, was very frequently terrified and subdued by the menace of external tortures. His fears might assist the progress of his faith and reason; and if he could once persuade himself to suspect that the Christian religion might possibly be true, it became an easy task to convince him that it was the safest and most prudent party that he could possibly embrace.

III. The supernatural gifts, which event in this life were attributed to the Christians above the rest of mankind, must have conducted to their own comfort, and very frequently to the conviction of infidels. Besides the occasional prodigies, which might sometimes be effected by the immediate interposition of the Deity, when he suspended the laws of nature for the service of religion, the Christian church, from the time of the apostles and their first discipless, had maintained an uninterrupted succession of miraculous powers; the gift of tongues of fire, and of prophecy; the power of expelling demons, of healing the sick, and of raising the dead. The knowledge of foreign languages was frequently communicated to the contemporaries of Irenæus, though Irenæus himself was left to struggle with the difficulties of a barbarous dialect whilst he preached the gospel to the natives of Gaul.25 The divine inspiration, whether it was conveyed in the form of a waking or of a sleeping vision, is described as a favour very liberally bestowed on all ranks of the faithful, on women as on elders, on boys as well as upon bishops. When their devout minds were sufficiently prepared, by a course of prayer, fasting, and vigils, to receive the extraordinary impulse, they were transported out of their senses, and delivered in ecstasy what was inspired, being mere organs of the holy spirit, just as a pipe or flute is of him who blows into it.26 We may add, that the design of these visions was, for the most part, either to declare the future history, or to guide the present administration, of the church. The expulsion of the demons from the bodies of those unhappy persons to whom they had been permitted to torment, was considered as a signal though ordinary triumph of religion, and is repeatedly alluded by the ancient apologists as the most convincing evidence of the truth of Christianity. The awful ceremony was usually performed in a public manner, and in the presence of a great number of spectators; the patient was relieved by the power or skill of the exorcist, and the vanquished demon was heard to confess, that he was one of the foolish gods of antiquity, who had impiously usurped the adoration of mankind.27 But the miraculous cure of diseases of the most intractable or even preternatural kind, can no longer occasion any surprise, when we recollect that in the days of Irenæus, about the end of the second century, the resurrection of the dead was very far from being esteemed an uncommon event; that this miracle was frequently performed on necessary occasions, by great fasting and the joint supplication of the church of the place, and that the person thus restored to their prayers had lived afterwards among them many years.28 At such a period, when faith could boast of so many wonderful victories over death, it seems difficult to account for the scepticism of those philosophers who still rejected and denied the doctrine of the resurrection. A noble Greek had rested on this important ground the whole controversy, and promised Theophilus, Bishop of Amasea, that if he could be gratified with the sight of a single person who had been actually raised from the dead, he would immediately embrace the Christian religion. It is somewhat remarkable, that the palest of the first eastern church, however anxious for the conversion of his friend, thought proper to decline this fair and reasonable challenge.29

The miracles of the primitive church, after obtaining the sanction of ages, have been lately attacked in a very free and ingenious enquiry,30 which, though it has met with the most favourable reception from the public, appears to have excited a general alarm among the divines of our own as well as of the other protestant churches of Europe.31 Our different sentiments on this subject will be much less influenced by any particular arguments than by our habits of study and reflection, and, above all, by the degree of the evidence which we have accustomed ourselves to require for the proof of a miraculous event. The duty of the historian does not call upon him to interpose his private judgment in this nice and important controversy; but he ought not to be dissuaded from adopting such the subject from which Census (et dictum) 210

24 Lactantius, De Necessitate, lib. ii. In order to involve the reader in the deplorable life of the Christians, the Deities of the German gods are introduced to witness the execution of the Deity and witness to the case in the most abominable manner possible. As to the wild and lurid description, which Lactantius gives, of the German divinities, cf. Deorlison, lib. ii. 25 Irenæus, Adv. haeres., lib. iii. 26 Lactantius, De Necessitate, lib. ii. 27 Tertullian Lactantius, De Necessitate, lib. ii. 28 Tertullian, Apology, p. 137. More seems to be told of demons than of the power of Christ. (Dr. Millington's note, on Tertullian, ibid. p. 236.) In the Punic war, Manetho says, the people of Carthage were still more brought under the power of Egypt. (On the subject of the passage from Manetho, cf. Dr. Millington, ibid.)

29 Dr. Millington was of the opinion that the site of it, among others, was the supposed variety of the Egyptian language. (On this subject, cf. Dr. Millington, ibid.)

30 Dr. Millington was of the opinion that the site of it, among others, was the supposed variety of the Egyptian language. (On this subject, cf. Dr. Millington, ibid.)

31 The history of England contained a review of his work in the Edinburgh Review, 1828, p. 452; and notice of the establishment of the London Missionary Society.}
a theory as may reconcile the interest of religion with that of reason, of making a proper application of that theory, and of defining with precision the limits of that happy period exempt from error and from delusion, in which we might be disposed to extend the gift of supernatural powers. From the first of the fathers to the last of the popes, a succession of bishops, of saints, of martyrs, and of miracles, is continued without interruption, and the progress of superstition was so gradual and almost imperceptible, that we know not in what particular link we should break the chain of tradition. Every age bears testimony to the wonderful events by which it was distinguished, and its testimony appears no less weighty and respectable than that of the preceding generation, till we are insensibly led on to accuse our own inconsistency, if in the eighth or in the twelfth century we deny to the venerable Bede, or to the holy Bernard, the same degree of confidence which in the second century we had so liberally granted to Justin or to Irenaeus. If the truth of any of these miracles is appreciated by their apparent use and propriety, every age had unbelievers to convince, heretics to confute, and idolatrous nations to convert; and sufficient motives might always be produced to justify the interposition of heaven. And yet, since every friend to revelation is persuaded of the reality, and every reasonable man is convinced of the existence of miraculous powers, it is evident that there must have been some period in which they were either suddenly or gradually withdrawn from the Christian church. Whatever era is chosen for that purpose, the death of the apostles, the conversion of the Roman empire, or the extinction of the Arian heresy, the insensibility of the Christians who lived at that time will equally afford a just matter of surprise. They still supported their pretensions after they had lost their power. Credulity performed the office of faith; fanaticism was permitted to assume the language of inspiration, and the effects of accident or contrivance were ascribed to supernatural causes. The recent experience of genuine miracles should have instructed the Christian world in the ways of Providence, and habituated their eye (if we may use a very immoderate expression) to the style of the Divine artist. Should the most skilful painter of modern Italy presume to decorate his feasible imitations with the name of Raphael or of Correggio, the insolent fraud would be soon discovered and indignantly rejected.

Whatever opinion may be entertained of the miracles of the primitive church since the time of the apostles, this unsatisfying softness of temper, so conspicuous among the believers of the second and third centuries, proved of some accidental benefit to the cause of truth and religion. In modern times, a latent and even involuntary scepticism adheres to the most pious dispositions. Their admission of supernatural truths is much less an active consent than a cold and passive acquiescence. Accused

34. It is very much more remarkable, that Bernard of Clairvaux, who records so many miracles of St. Hugh of Lincoln, most times ascribed it to the power of the Virgin Mary, has added to his compositions and discourses. In the long series of addresses he addresses to the ignorant populace, a strain asserting that he himself possessed the gift of miracles.
in the water of baptism, the guilt of their past conduct, for which the temples of the gods refused to grant them any expiation. But this reproach, when it is cleared from misrepresentation, contributes so much to the honour as it did to the increase of the church. The friends of Christianity may acknowledge, without a blush, that many of the most eminent saints had been before their baptism the most abandoned sinners. Those persons who in the world had followed, though in an imperfect manner, the dictates of benevolence and propriety, derived such a calm satisfaction from the opinion of their own rectitude, as rendered them much less susceptible of the sudden emotions of shame, of grief, and of terror, which have given birth to so many wonderful conversions. After the example of their Divine Master, the missionaries of the gospel disdained not the society of men, and especially of women, oppressed by the consciousness, and very often by the effects, of their vices. As they emerged from sin and superstition to the glorious hope of immortality, they resolved to devote themselves to a life, not only of virtue, but of penitence. The desire of perfection became the ruling passion of their soul; and it is well known, that while reason embraces a cold mediocrity, our passionate fury us, with rapid violence, over the space which lies between the most opposite extremes.

When the new converts had been enrolled in the number of the faithful, and were admitted to the sacraments of the church, they found themselves restrained from relapsing into their past disorders by another consideration of a less spiritual, but of a very innocent and respectable nature. Any particular society that has departed from the great body of the nation, or the religion to which it belonged, immediately becomes the object of universal as well as invincible observation. In proportion to the smallness of its numbers, the character of the society may be affected by the virtue and vices of the persons who compose it; and every member is engaged to watch with the most vigilant attention over his own behaviour, and over that of his brethren, since, as he must expect to incur a part of the common disgrace, he may hope to enjoy a share of the common reputation. When the Christians of Bithynia were brought before the tribunal of the younger Pliny, they assured the procurator, that, far from being engaged in any unlawful conspiracy, they were bound by a solemn obligation to abstain from the commission of those crimes which disturb the private or public peace of society, from theft, robbery, adultery, perjury, and fraud. Near a century afterwards, Tertullian, with an honest pride, owedl boast, that very few Christians had suffered by the hand of the executioner, except on account of their religion. Their serious and augmented life, averse to the gay luxury of the age, induced them to chastity, temperance, economy, and all the sober and domestic virtues. As the greater number were of some trade or profession, it was incumbent on them, by the strictest integrity and the fairest dealing, to remove the suspicions which the profane are so apt to conceive against the appearance of sanctity. The contempt of the world exercised them, in the habits of humility, meekness, and patience. The more they were persecuted, the more clearly they adhered to each other. Their mutual chastity and unsuspecting confidence has been remarked by infidels, and was too often abused by perfidious friends. It is a very honourable circumstance, the conduct of the primitive Christians, that even their faults, or rather errors, were derived from an excess of virtue. The bishops and doctors of the church, whose evidence attests, and whose authority might influence, the professions, the principles, and even the practice, of their contemporaries, had studied the Scriptures with less skill than devotion, and they often received, in the most literal sense, those rigid precepts of Christ and the apostles, to which the knowledge of succeeding commentators has applied a looser and more figurative mode of interpretation. Ambitious to fulfil the perfection of the gospel above the wisdom of philosophy, the zealous fathers have carried the duties of self-mortification, of purity, and of patience, to a height which it is scarcely possible to attain, and much less to preserve in our present state of weakness and corruption. A doctrine so extraordinary and so sublime must inevitably command the veneration of the people; but it was ill calculated to obtain the suffrage of those worldly philosophers, who, in the conduct of this transitory life, consult only the feelings of nature and the interest of society.

There are two very natural propensities which we may distinguish in the most virtuous and liberal dispositions, the love of pleasure and the love of action. If the former is refined by art and learning, improved by the charms of social intercourse, and corrected by a just regard to economy, to health, and to reputation, it is productive of the greatest part of the happiness of private life. The love of action is a principle of a much stronger and more doubtful nature. It often leads to anger, to ambition, and to revenge; but when it is guided by the sense of propriety and benevolence, it becomes the parent of every virtue; and if those virtues are accompanied with equal abilities, a family, a state, or an empire, may be inhabited for their safety and prosperity in the unadmired courage of a single man. To the love of pleasure we may therefore ascribe most of the agreeable, to the love of action we may attribute most of the useful and respectable qualifications. The character in which both the one and the other should be united and harmonised, would seem to constitute the most perfect idea of human nature. The insensible and inactive disposition, which should be supposed alike destitute of both, would be rejected, by the common consent of mankind, as utterly incapable

32. The consuls of Cato and Sulla, with the delivery of the Senate, which was never given to any man before, and the lottery, in which all the money of the city was thrown was a new plan.
33. He with, therefore, for why he with, therefore, otherwise, not for why he with, therefore.
34. This is a useful note to the doctrine of the distribution of the land.
35. The philosophers Epicurus, in a life of pleasure, and how he has led to another theory of an immortal being, but in the last, as the doctrine of the immortality of the city of Rome, in the last, as the doctrine of the immortality of the city of Rome.
36. Not a very wise way to secure the safety of a man's life.
of procuring any happiness to the individual, or any public benefit to the world. But it was not in this world that the primitive Christians were desirous of making themselves either agreeable or useful.

The acquisition of knowledge, the exercise of our reason or fancy, and the cheerful flow of unguarded conversation, may employ the leisure of a liberal mind. Such amusements, however, were rejected with abhorrence, or admitted with the utmost caution, by the severity of the fathers, who despised all knowledge that was not useful to salvation, and who considered all levity of discourse as a criminal abuse of the gift of speech. In our present state of existence, the body is so inseparably connected with the soul, that it seems to be our interest to taste, with innocence and moderation, the enjoyments of which that faithful companion is susceptible. Very different was the reasoning of our devout predecessors; vainly aspiring to imitate the perfection of angels, they disdained, or they affected to disdain, every earthly and corporeal delight. Some of our senses indeed are necessary for our preservation, others for our subsistence, and others again for our information, and thus far it was impossible to reject the use of them. The first sensation of pleasure was marked as the first movement of their limbs. The unceasing candidate for heaven was instructed, not only to resist the grosser allusions of the taste or smell, but even to shun his eyes against the profane harmony of sounds, and to view with indifference the most finisht productions of human art. Gay apparel, magnificent houses, and elegant furniture, were supposed to unite the double guilt of pride and of sensuality; a simple and mortified appearance was more suitable to the Christian who was certain of his sins and doubtful of his salvation. In their treasures of luxury, the fathers are extremely minute and circumstantial; and among the various articles which excite their pious indignation, we may enumerate false hair, garments of any colour except white, instruments of music, vases of gold or silver, downy pillows, or Jacob's coat on a table, white bread, foreign wines, public salutations, the use of warm baths, and the practice of shaving the beard. This, according to the expression of Tertullian, is a lie against our own sex, and in some degree an attempt to improve the works of the Creator. When Christianity was introduced among the rich and the polite, the observation of these singular laws was left, as it would be at present, to the few who were ambitious of superior sanctity. But it is always easy, as well as agreeable, for the inferior ranks of mankind to claim a merit from the contempt of that pomp and pleasure, which fortune has placed be-
into the church. Among the Christian ascetics, however (a name which they soon acquired from their painful exercise), many, as they were less presumptuous, were probably more successful. The loss of sensual pleasure was supplied and compensated by spiritual pride. Even the multitude of Pagans were inclined to estimate the merit of the sacrifice by its apparent difficulty; and it was in the praise of those chaste spouses of Christ that the fathers have poured forth the troubled stream of their eloquence. Such are the early traces of monastic principles and institutions, which, in a subsequent age, have counterbalanced all the temporal advantages of Christianity.

The Christians were not less averse to the business than to the pleasures of this world. The defence of our persons and property they knew not how to reconcile with the patient doctrine which enjoined an unlimited forgiveness of past injuries, and commanded them to invite the repetition of fresh insults. Their simplicity was offended by the use of oaths, by the pomp of magistracy, and by the active contention of public life, nor could their humane ignorance be convinced, that it was lawful on any occasion to shed the blood of their fellow-creatures, either by the sword of justice, or by that of war; even though their criminal or hostile attempts should threaten the peace and safety of the whole community. It was acknowledged, that, under a less perfect law, the powers of the Jewish constitution had been exercised, with the approbation of Heaven, by inspired prophets and by anointed kings. The Christians felt and confessed, that such institutions might be necessary for the present system of the world, and they cheerfully submitted to the authority of their Pagan governors. But while they calculated the maxims of passive obedience, they refused to take any active part in the civil administration or the military defence of the empire. Some indulgence might perhaps be allowed to these persons, who, before their conversion, were already engaged in such violent and sanguinary occupations; but it was impossible that the Christians, without renouncing a more sacred duty, could assume the character of soldiers, of magistrates, or of princes.

This induct, or even criminal disregard to the public welfare, exposed them to the contempt and reproaches of the Pagans, who very frequently asked, what was the fate of the empire, attacked on every side by the barbarians, if all mankind should adopt the pusillanimous sentiments of the new sect? To this inquiring question the Christian apologists returned obscure and ambiguous answers, as they were unwilling to reveal the secret cause of their security; the expectation that, before the conversion of mankind was accomplished, was going...
order of public deliberations soon introduces the office of a president, invested at least with the authority of collecting the sentiments, and of executing the resolutions, of the assembly. A regard for the public tranquillity, which would so frequently have been interrupted by annual or by occasional elections, induced the primitive Christians to constitute an honourable and perpetual magistracy, and to choose one of the wheat and most holy among their presbyters to execute during his life the duties of their ecclesiastical governor. It was under these circumstances that the lofty title of bishop began to raise itself above the humble appellation of presbyter; and while the latter remained the most natural distinction for the members of every Christian senate, the former was appropriated to the dignity of its new president. The advantages of this episcopal form of government, which appears to have been introduced before the end of the first century, were so obvious, and so important for the future greatness as well as the present peace of Christianity, that it was adopted without delay by all the societies which were already scattered over the empire, had acquired in a very early period the sanction of antiquity, and is still revered by the most powerful churches, both of the East and of the West, as a primitive, and even as a divine establishment. It is needless to observe, that the plous and humble presbyters, who were first dignified with the episcopal title, could not possess, and would probably have rejected, the power and pomps which now encircles the tiara of the Roman pontiff, or the mitre of a German prelate. But we may define in a few words the narrow limits of their original jurisdiction, which was chiefly of a spiritual, though in some instances of a temporal, nature. It consisted in the administration of the sacraments and discipline of the church; the superintendence of religious ceremonies, which imperceptibly increased in number and variety; the consecration of ecclesiastical ministers, to whom the bishop assigned their respective functions; the management of the public fund; and the determination of all such differences as the faithful were unwilling to expose before the tribunal of an idolatrous judge. These powers, during a short period, were exercised according to the advice of the presbyteral college, and with the consent and approbation of the assembly of Christians. The primitive bishops were considered only as the first of their equals, and the honourable servants of a free people. Whenever the episcopal chair became vacant by death, a new president was chosen among the presbyters.

But the most perfect equality of the members of the college of presbyters, and the freedom requires the directing hand of a superior magistrate; and the
by the suffrages of the whole congregation, every member of which supposed himself invested with a sacred and sacerdotal character.  

Such was the mild and equal constitution by which the Christians were governed more than an hundred years after the death of the apostles. Every society formed within itself a separate and independent republic; and although the most distant of these little states maintained a mutual as well as friendly intercourse of letters and deputations, the Christian world was not yet connected by any supreme authority or legislative assembly. As the numbers of the faithful were gradually multiplied, they discovered the advantages that might result from a closer union of their interest and designs. Towards the end of the second century the churches of Greece and Asia adopted the useful institutions of provincial synods, and they may justly be supposed to have borrowed the model of a representative council from the celebrated examples of their own country, the Amphictyons, the Achaeans league, or the assemblies of the Ionian cities. It was soon established as a custom and as a law, that the bishops of the independent churches should meet in the capital of the province at the stated periods of spring and autumn. Their deliberations were assisted by the advice of a few distinguished presbyters, and moderated by the presence of a listening multitude. Their decrees, which were styled canons, regulated every important controversy of faith and discipline, and it was natural to believe that a liberal effusion of the holy spirit would be poured out on the united assembly of the delegates of the Christian people. The institution of synods was so well suited to private ambition and to public interest, that in the space of a few years it was received throughout the whole empire. A regular correspondence was established between the provincial councils, which mutually communicated and approved their respective proceedings; and the catholic church soon assumed the form, and acquired the strength, of a great federal republic.

The legislative authority of the particular churches was incessantly superseded by the use of councils, which mutually communicated and approved their respective proceedings; and the catholic church soon assumed the form, and acquired the strength, of a great federal republic. As the legislative authority of the particular churches was incessantly superseded by the use of councils, which mutually communicated and approved their respective proceedings; and the catholic church soon assumed the form, and acquired the strength, of a great federal republic. The privileges of the third century imperceptibly changed the language of exaltation into that of command, scattered the seeds of future incursions, and supplied, by scripture allegories and declamatory rhetoric, their deficiency of force and of reason. They exalted the unity and power of the church, as it was represented in the episcopal office, of which every bishop enjoyed an equal and undivided portion. Princes and magistrates, it was often repeated, might boast an earthly claim to a transitory dominion; it was the episcopal authority alone which was derived from the Deity, and extended itself over this and over another world. The bishops were the vicegerents of Christ, the successors of the apostles, and the mystic substitutes of the high priest of the Mosaic law.

Their exclusive privilege of conferring the sacerdotal character invaded the freedom both of clerical and of popular elections; and if, in the administration of the church, they still consulted the judgment of the presbyters or the inclination of the people, they must carefully inculcate the merit of such a voluntary condescension. The bishops acknowledged the supreme authority which resided in the assembly of their brethren; but in the government of his peculiar diocese, each of them acted from his seat the same implicit obedience as if that favourite metaphor had been literally just, and as if the shepherd had been of a more exalted nature than that of his sheep. This obedience, however, was not imposed without some efforts on one side, and some resistance on the other. The democratical part of the constitution was, in many places, very warmly supported by the zealous or interested opposition of the inferior clergy. But their patriotism received the ignominious epithets of faction and schism, and the episcopal cause was skirmished for its rapid progress to the labour of many active prelates, who, like Cyprian of Carthage, could reconcile the arts of the most ambitious statesman with the Christian virtues which seem adapted to the character of a saint and martyr.

The same causes which at first had destroyed the equality of the presbyters, introduced among the bishops a pre-eminence of rank, and from thence a superiority of jurisdiction. As often as in the spring and autumn they met in provincial synods, the difference of personal merit and reputation was very sensibly felt among the members of the assembly, and the multitude was governed by the wisdom and eloquence of the few. But the order of public proceedings required a more regular and less invidious distinction; the office of perpetual presidents in the councils of each province, was conferred on the bishops of the principal city, and these aspiring princes, who soon acquired the lofty titles of Metropolitans and Primates, secretly prepared themselves to usurp over their episcopal brethren the supreme authority which the bishops had so lately assumed above the college of presbyters. Nor was it long before an emulation of pre-eminence and power prevailed among the metropolitans themselves, each of them affecting to display, in
the most pompous terms, the temporal honours and advantages of the city over which he presided; the numbers and opulence of the Christians, who were subject to their pastoral care; the saints and martyrs who had arisen among them, and the purity with which they preserved the tradition of the faith, as it had been transmitted through a series of orthodox bishops from the apostle or the apostolic disciple, to whom the foundation of their church was ascribed. From every cause other of a civil or of an ecclesiastical nature, it was easy to foresee that Rome must enjoy the respect, and would soon claim the obedience, of the provinces. The Ambition of the society of the faithful bore a just proportion to the capital of the empire; and the Roman church was the greatest, the most numerous, and, in regard to the West, the most ancient of all the Christian establishments, many of which had received their religion from the pious labours of her missionaries. Instead of one apostolic founder, the internal boist of Antioch, of Ephesus, or of Corinth, the banks of the Tyber were supposed to have been honoured with the presence and mark of the two most eminent among the apostles; and the bishops of Rome pretentiously claimed the inheritance of whatsoever prerogatives were attributed either to the person or to the office of St. Peter. The bishops of Italy and of the provinces were disposed to allow them a primacy of order and association (such was their very accurate expression) in the Christian aristocracy. But the power of a monarch was rejected with abhorrence, and the aspiring genius of Rome experienced from the nations of Asia and Africa, a more vigorous resistance to her spiritual, than she had formerly done to her temporal, dominion. The patriotic Cypriots, who ruled with the most absolute sway the church of Carthage and the provincial synods, opposed with resolution and success the ambition of the Roman pontiff, artfully connected his own case with that of the eastern bishops, and, like Haman, sought out new allies in the heart of Asia. If this Punic war was carried on without any effusion of blood, it was owing much less to the moderation than to the weakness of the contending parties. Invective and recriminations were their sole weapons; and these, during the progress of the whole controversy, they hurled against each other with equal fury and derision. The hard necessity of censoring either a pope, or a saint and martyr, distresses the modern Catholics, whenever they are obliged to relate the particulars of a dispute, in which the champions of religion indulged such passions as seem much more adapted to the senate or to the camp.

The progress of the ecclesiastical authority gave birth to the mercenary distinction of the laity and of the clergy, which had been unknown to the Greeks and Romans. The former of these appellations comprehended the body of the Christian people; the latter, according to the signification of the word, was appropriated to the chosen portion that had been set apart for the service of religion; a celebrated order of men which has furnished the most important, though not always the most edifying, subjects for modern history. Their mutual hostilities sometimes disturbed the peace of the infant church, but their zeal and activity were united in the common cause, and the love of power, which (under the most artful disguises) could insinuate itself into the breasts of bishops and martyrs, animated them to increase the number of their subjects, and to enlarge the limits of the Christian empire. They were destitute of any temporal force, and they were for a long time discouraged and oppressed, rather than assisted, by the civil magistrates; but they had acquired, and they employed within their own society, the two most efficacious instruments of government, rewards and punishments; the former derived from the plains liberally, the latter from the devout apprehensions, of the faithful.

I. The community of goods, which had so agreeably amused the imagination of Plato, and which subsisted in some degree among the austere sect of the Esseniæans, was adopted for a short time in the primitive church. The fervour of the first proselytes prompted them to sell those worldly possessions, which they despised, to lay the price of them at the feet of the apostles, and to content themselves with receiving an equal share out of the general distribution. The progress of the Christian religion relaxed, and gradually abolished this generous institution, which, in bands less pure than those of the apostles, would too soon have been corrupted and abused by the returning selfishness of human nature; and the converts who embraced the new religion were permitted to retain the possession of their patrimony, to receive legacies and inheritances, and to increase their separate property by all the lawful means of trade and industry. Instead of an absolute sacrifice, a moderate proportion was accepted by the missionaries of the gospel; and in their weekly or monthly assemblies, every believer, according to the exigencies of the occasion, and the measure of his
his wealth and plenty, presented his voluntary offering for the use of the common fund. 121 Nothing, however, inconsiderable, was refused; but it was diligently inculcated, that, in the article of tithes, the Mosaic law was still of divine obligation; and that since the Jews, under a less perfect discipline, had been commanded to pay a tenth part of all that they possessed, it would become the disciples of Christ in distinguish themselves by a superior degree of liberality, 122 and to acquire some merit by resigning a superfluous treasure, which must so soon be annihilated with the world itself. 123 It is almost unnecessary to observe, that the revenues of each particular church, which was of so uncertain and fluctuating a nature, must have varied with the poverty or the opulence of the faithful, as they were dispersed in obscure villages, or collected in the great cities of the empire. In the time of the emperor Decius, it was the opinion of the magistrates, that the Christians of Rome were possessed of very considerable wealth; that vessels of gold and silver were used in their religious worship, and that many among their proselytes had sold their lands and houses to increase the public riches of the sect, at the expense, indeed, of their unfortunate children, who found themselves beggars, because their parents had been saints. 124 We should listen with distrust to the suspicions of strangers and enemies: on this occasion, however, they receive a very serious and probable colour from the two following circumstances, the only ones that have reached our knowledge, which define any precise sums, or convey any distinct idea. Almost at the same period, the bishop of Carthage, from a society less eminent than that of Rome, collected an hundred thousand sesterces (above eight hundred and fifty pounds sterling), on a sudden call of charity, to redeem the brethren of Numidia, who had been carried away captives by the barbarians of the desert. 125 About an hundred years before the reign of Decius, the Roman church had received, in a single donation, the sum of two hundred thousand sesterces, from a stranger of Pontus, who proposed to fix his residence in the capital. 126 These oblations, for the most part, were made in money; nor was the society of Christians either desirous or capable of acquiring, to any considerable degree, the incumbrance of landed property. It had been provided by several laws, which were enacted with the same design as our statutes of mortmain, that no real estate should be given or bequeathed to any corporate body, without either a special privilege or a particular dispensation from the emperor or from the senate, 127 who were seldom disposed to grant them in favour of a sect, at first the object of their contempt, and at last of their fears and jealousy. A transaction, however, is related under the reign of Alexander Severus, which discovers that the restraint was sometimes slender or suspended, and that the Christians were permitted to claim and to possess lands within the limits of Rome itself. 128 The progress of Christianity, and the civil confusion of the empire, contributed to relax the severity of the laws, and before the close of the third century many considerable estates were bestowed on the splendid churches of Rome, Milan, Carthage, Athens, Alexandria, and the other great cities of Italy and the provinces.

The bishop was the natural steward of the church; the public stock was intrusted to his care without account or control; the probity were confined to their spiritual functions, and the mere dependent order of deacons was solely employed in the management and distribution of the ecclesiastical revenue. 129 If we may give credit to the vehement declarations of Cyrian, there were but a few among his African brethren, who, in the execution of their charge, violated every precept, not only of evangelical perfection, but even of moral virtue. By some of these unscrupulous stewards the riches of the church were lavished in sensual pleasures, by others they were preserved to the purposes of private gain, of fraudulent purchase, and of infamous usury. 130 But as long as the contributions of the Christian people were free and unconfined, the abuse of their confidence could not be very frequent, and the general use to which their liberality was applied, reflected honour on the religious society. A decent portion was reserved for the maintenance of the bishop and his clergy; a sufficient sum was allotted for the expenses of the public worship, of which the fruits of love, the apostles, as they were called, constituted a very pleasing part. The whole remainder was the sacred patrimony of the poor. According to the discretion of the bishop, it was distributed to support widows and orphans, the lame, the sick, and the aged of the community; to comfort strangers and pilgrims; and to alleviate the misfortunes of prisoners, and captives, more especially when their sufferings had been occasioned by their firm attachment to the cause of religion. 131 A generous intercourse of charity united the most

121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131

El númera dixit credulitas
Nobilis præstans liberitatem.

The whole conduct of the donor. Laymen only gave what was necessary, and the wealth of the bishop's church it was important to preserve very complete, in order that what was necessary should be used for the benefit of the rich, and that what was superfluous might be distributed among the poor. 132

132

The church's charity, which received of the pars pro toto, was not governed by the same principles.

The bishops, at whose times the church at Corinth was under a flourishing state, were much celebrated for the liberality of their charity; and the great number of their benefactors was the renewed of an inheritance.
distant provinces, and the smaller congregations were cheerfully assisted by the aims of their more opulent brethren. Such an institution, which paid less regard to the merit than to the distress of the object, very materially conducd to the progress of Christianity. The Pagans, who were stigmatized by a sense of humanity, while they derided the doctrines, acknowledged the benevolence, of the new sect. The prospect of immediate relief and of future protection allured into its hospitable bosom many of those unhappy persons whom the neglect of the world would have abandoned to the misery of want, of sickness, and of old age. There is some reason likewise to believe, that great numbers of infants, who, according to the inhuman practice of the times, had been exposed by their parents, were frequently rescued from death, baptized, educated, and maintained by the piety of the Christians, and at the expense of the public treasure.

Reconciliation is the undisputed right of every society to exclude from its communion and benefits such among its members as reject or violate those regulations which have been established by general consent. In the exercise of this power, the canons of the Christian church were chiefly directed against scandalous sinners, and particularly those who were guilty of murder, of fraud, or of incontinence; against the authors, or the followers of any heretical opinions which had been condemned by the judgment of the episcopal order; and against those unhappy persons, who, whether from choice or from compulsion, had polluted themselves after their baptism by any act of idolatrous worship. The consequences of excommunication were of a temporal as well as a spiritual nature. The Christian against whom it was pronounced, was deprived of any part in the oblations of the faithful. The ties both of religious and of private friendship were dissolved; he found himself a profane object of abhorrence to the persons whom he was the most esteemed, or by whom he had been the most tenderly beloved; and as far as an expulsion from a respectable society could imprint on his character a mark of disgrace, he was shunned or suspected by the generality of mankind. The situation of those unfortunate exiles was in itself very painful and melancholy; but, as it usually happens, their apprehensions far exceeded their sufferings. The benefits of the Christian communion were those of eternal life, nor could they cease from their minds the awful opinion, that to those ecclesiastical governors by whom they were condemned, the Deity had committed the keys of Hell and of Paradise. The heretics, indeed, who might be supported by the consciousness of their intentions, and by the flattering hope that they alone had discovered the true path of salvation, emboldened to regain, in their separate assembly, those comforts, temporal as well as spiritual, which they no longer derived from the great society of Christians. But almost all those who had reluctantly yielded to the power of vice or idolatry, were sensible of their fallen condition, and anxiously desirous of being restored to the benefits of the Christian communion.

With regard to the treatment of these penitents, two opposite opinions, the one of justice, the other of mercy, divided the primitive church. The more rigid and inflexible exetics refused them for ever, and without exception, the meanest place in the holy community, which they had disgraced or deserted, and leaving them to the remorse of a guilty conscience, indulged them only with a faint ray of hope, that the contrition of their life and death might possibly be accepted by the Supreme Being. A milder sentiment was embraced in practice as well as in theory, by the purer and most respectable of the Christian churches. The gates of reconciliation were seldom shut against the returning penitent; but a severe and solemn form of discipline was instituted, which, while it served to expiate his crimes, might powerfully deter the spectators from the imitation of his example. Humbled by a public confession, accompanied by fasting, and clothed in sackcloth, the penitent lay prostrate at the door of the assembly, imploring with tears the pardon of his offences, and soliciting the prayers of the faithful. If the fault was of a very serious nature, whole years of penance were exacted as inadequate satisfaction to the Divine justice; and it was always by slow and painful gradations that the sinner, the heretic, or the apostate, was readmitted into the bosom of the church. A sentence of perpetual excommunication, was, however, reserved for some crimes of an extraordinary magnitude, and particularly for the inexcusable relapses of those penitents who had already experienced and abused the clemency of their ecclesiastical superiors. According to the circumstances or the number of the guilty, the exercises of the Christian discipline were varied by the discretion of the bishops. The councils of Ancyras and Illiberis were held about the same time, the one in Galatia, the other in Spain; but their respective canons, which are still extant, seem to breathe a very different spirit. The Galatian, who after his baptism had repeatedly sacrificed to idols, might obtain his pardon by a penance of seven years, and if he had induced others to imitate his example, only three years more were added to the term of his exile. But the unhappy Spaniard, who had committed the same offence, was deprived of the hope of reconciliation, even in the article of death; and his idolatry was placed at the head of a list of seventeen other crimes, against which a sentence on less terrible was pronounced. Among these
we may distinguish the inexcusable guilt of calumniating a bishop, a presbyter, or even a deacon. The well-tempered mixture of liberty and rigour, the judicious dispensation of rewards and punishments, according to the maxims of policy as well as justice, constituted the human strength of the church. The bishops, whose paternal care extended itself to the government of both worlds, were sensible of the importance of these prerogatives, and covering their ambition with the fair pretence of the love of order, they were jealous of any rival in the exercise of a discipline so necessary to prevent the desertion of those tenors which had enlisted themselves under the banner of the cross, and whose numbers every day became more considerable. From the imperious declarations of Cyprian, we should naturally conclude, that the doctrines of excommunication and penance formed the most essential part of religion; and that it was much less dangerous for the disciples of Christ to neglect the observance of the moral duties, than to despise the censures and authority of their bishops.

Sometimes we might imagine that we were listening to the voice of Moses, when he commanded the earth to open, and to swallow up, in consuming flames, the rebellious race which refused obedience to the priesthood of Aaron; and we should sometimes suppose that we heard a Roman consul ascertaining the majesty of the republic, and declaring its infallible resolution to enforce the rigour of the laws. If such irregularities are nullified with impunity (it is then that the bishop of Carthage claims the levity of his colleague), if such irregularities are suffered, there is an end of universal terror; an end of the sublime and divine power of governing the church, an end of Christianity itself. Cyprian had reminded those temporal powers, which it is probable he would never have obtained; but the acquisition of such absolute command over the consciences and understandings of a congregation, however obtained, by any power of the world, is more truly grateful to the pride of the human heart, than the possession of the most despotic power, imposed by arms and compulsion on a reluctant people.

In the course of this important, though perhaps tedious, enquiry, I have attempted to exhibit the secondary causes which so efficaciously assisted the truth of the Christian religion. If among these causes we have discovered any artificial ornaments, any accidental circumstances, or any mixture of error and passion, it cannot appear surprising that mankind should be the most sensibly affected by such motives as were united to their imperfect nature. It was by the aid of those causes, exclusive zeal, the immediate expectation of another world, the claim of miracles, the practice of rigid virtue, and the constitution of the primitive church, that Christianity spread itself with so much success in the Roman empire. To the first of these the Christians were indebted for their invincible valour, which disdained to capitulate with the enemy whom they were resolved to vanquish. The three succeeding causes supplied their valour with the most formidable auxiliaries. The last of these causes united their courage, directed their arms, and gave their efforts that irresistible weight, which even a small band of well-trained and intrepid volunteers has so often possessed over an undisabled multitude, ignorant of the subject, and careless of the event of the war. In the various religions of the nations of Egypt and Syria, who addressed themselves to the colossal superstitition of the populace, were perhaps the only order of priests that derived their whole support and credit from their sacred profession, and were very deeply affected by a personal concern for the safety or prosperity of their titular deities. The ministers of polytheism, both in Rome and in the provinces, were for the most part men of a noble birth and of a splendid fortune, who, received, as an honourable distinction, the care of a celebrated temple, or of a public sacrifice, exhibited, very frequently at their own expense, the sacred games, and with cold indifference performed the ancient rites, according to the laws and fashion of their country. As they were engaged in the ordinary occupations of life, their zeal and devotion were seldom indebted by a sense of interest, or by the habits of an ecclesiastical character. Confin'd in their respective temple and cities, they remained without any connection of discipline or government; and whilst they acknowledged the supreme jurisdiction of the senate, of the college of pontiffs, and of the emperor, these civil mediators contented themselves with the easy task of maintaining, in peace and dignity, the general worship of mankind. We have already seen how various, how low, and how uncertain, were the religious sentiments of Polytheism. They were abandoned, almost without cause, to the natural workings of a superstitious fancy. The accidental circumstances of their life and situation determined the object as well as the degree of their devotion; and as long as that devotion was successively prostituted to a thousand deities, it was scarcely possible that their hearts could be susceptible of a very sincere or lively passion for any of them. When Christianity appeared in the world, every one of these and of imperfect professions had lost much of their original power.

When Christianity appeared in the world, every one of these and of imperfect professions had lost much of their original power.
exposing its falsehood and extravagance, they are obliged to transcribe the eloquence of Cicero or the wit of Lucian. The contagion of these sceptical writings had been diffused far beyond the number of their readers. The fashion of incredulity was communicated from the philosopher to the man of pleasure or business, from the noble to the plebeian, and from the master to the meanest slave who waited at his table; and who eagerly listened to the freedom of his conversation. On public occasions the philosophic part of mankind affected to treat with respect and decency the religious institutions of their country; but their secret contempt penetrated through the thin and awkward disguise; and even the people, when they discovered that their deities were rejected and derided by those whose rank or understanding they were accustomed to reverence, were filled with doubts and apprehensions concerning the truth of those doctrines to which they had yielded the most implicit belief. The decline of ancient prejudices exposed a very numerous portion of human kind to the danger of a painful and comfortless situation. A state of scepticism and heresies amuse a few inquisitive minds; but the practice of superstition is so congenial to the multitude, that if they are forcibly awakened, they still regret the loss of their pleasing visions. Their love of the marvellous and supernatural, their curiosity, with regard to future events, and their strong propensity to extend their hopes and fears beyond the limits of the visible world, were the principal causes which favoured the establishment of polytheism. So urgent a need, so vulgar is the necessity of believing, that the fall of any system of mythology will most probably be succeeded by the introduction of some other mode of superstition. Some deities of a more recent and fashionable cast might soon have occupied the deserted temples of Jupiter and Apollo; if, in the decisive moment, the wisdom of Providence had not interpreted a genuine revelation, fitted to inspire the most rational system and conviction, whilst at the same time it was adorned with all that could attract the curiosity, the wonder, and the veneration of the people. In their actual disposition, as many were almost disinclined from their artificial prejudices, but equally susceptible and desirous of a devout attachment, an object much less deserving would have been sufficient to fill the vacant place in their hearts, and to gratify the unreason excessiveness of their passions. Those who are inclined to pursue this reflection, instead of viewing with astonishment the rapid progress of Christianity, will perhaps be surprised that its success was not still more rapid and still more universal.

It has been observed, with truth as well as propriety, that the conquests of Rome prepared and facilitated those of Christianity. In the second chapter of this work we have attempted to explain in what manner the most civilized provinces of Europe, Asia, and Africa, were united under the dominion of one sovereign, and gradually connected by the most intimate ties of laws, of manners, and of language. The Jews of Palestine, who had onely expected a temporal deliverer, gave so cold a reception to the miracles of the divine prophet, that it was found unnecessary to publish, or at least to preserve, any Hebrew gospel. As soon as these histories were translated into the Latin tongue, they were perfectly intelligible to all the subjects of Rome, excepting only to the peasants of Syria and Egypt, for whose benefit particular versions were afterwards made. The public highways, which had been constructed for the use of the legions, opened an easy passage for the Christian missionaries from Damascus to Corinth, and from Italy to the extremity of Spain or Britain; nor did those spiritual conquerors encounter any of the obstacles which usually retard or prevent the introduction of a foreign religion into a distant country. There is the strongest reason to believe, that before the reigns of Diocletian and Constantine, the faith of Christ had been preached in every province, and in all the great cities of the empire; but the foundation of the several congregations, the numbers of the faithful who composed them, and their proportion to the unbelieving multitude, are now buried in obscurity, or disguised by fiction and declamation. Some imperfect circumstances, however, as we have reached our knowledge concerning the increase of the Christian religion in Asia and Greece, in Egypt, in Italy, and in the West, we shall now proceed to relate, without neglecting the real or imaginary acquisitions which lay beyond the frontiers of the Roman empire.

The Roman provinces that extend from the Euphrates to the Low Countries were the principal theatres in which the apostle of Christianity displayed his zeal and piety. The seeds of the gospel, which he had imbibed in a fertile soil, were diligently cultivated by his disciples, and it should seem that, during the two first centuries, the most considerable body of Christians was contained within those limits. Among the societies which were instituted in Syria, none were more ancient or more illustrious than those of Damascus, of Antioch, and of Alexandria. The prophetic introduction of the Apocalypse has described and immortalized the seven churches of Asia; Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamus, Thyatira, Colossi, Laodicea, and Philadelphia; and their colonies were soon diffused over that populous country. In a very early period, the islands of Cyprus and Creto, the provinces of Tarace and Macedonia, gave a favourable reception to the new religion; and Christian republics were soon

---

123 "Die Apokalypse" (Euphorion de Néros, 181) disputed the genuineness of the Apocalypse, because the church of Thessalonica was not mentioned. The editor of the text, however, recovered its lost importance by dismissing the difficulty to ingenious supposition, that St. John wrote in the spirit of prophecy. See Apokalypse Schriftkunde und Historien der Apokalypse.
found in the cities of Corinth, of Smyrna, and of Athens. The antiquity of the Greek and Asiatic churches allowed a sufficient space of time for their increase and multiplication, and even the swarms of Gnostics and other heretics serve to display the flourishing condition of the orthodox church, since the apellation of heresies has always been applied to the less numerous party. To these domestic testimonies we may add the confession, the complaints, and the apprehensions of the Gentiles themselves. From the writings of Lucian, a philosopher who had studied mankind, and who describes their manners in the most lively colours, we may learn, that, under the reign of Commodus, his native country of Pontus was filled with Epicureans and Christians. Within fourscore years after the death of Christ, the humane PIlay laments the magnitude of the evil which his vainly attempted to eradicate. In his very curious epistle to the emperor Trajan, he affirms, that the temples were almost desolated; that the sacred victims scarcely found any purchasers; and that the superstition had not only infected the cities, but had even spread itself into the villages and the open country of Pontus and Bithynia. Without descending into a minute scrutiny of the expressions, or of the motives of those writers who either celebrate or lament the progress of Christianity in the East, it may in general be observed, that none of them have left us any grounds from whence a just estimate might be formed of the real numbers of the faithful in those provinces. One circumstance, however, has been fortunately preserved, which seems to cast a more distinct light on this obscure but interesting subject. Under the reign of Theodosius, after Christianity had enjoyed, during more than sixty years, the sunshine of Imperial favor, the ancient and illustrious church of Antioch consisted of one hundred thousand persons, three thousand of whom were supported out of the public charities. The splendour and dignity of the queen of the East, the acknowledged populousness of Caesarea, Scythia, and Alexandria, and the destruction of two hundred and fifty thousand souls in the earthquake which afflicted Antioch under the elder Justin, are so many convincing proofs that the whole number of its inhabitants was not less than half a million, and that the Christians, however multiplied by zeal and power, did not exceed a fifth part of that great city. How different a proportion must we adopt when we compare the persecuted with the triumphant church, the West with the East, remote villages with populous towns, and countries recently converted to the faith, with the place where the believers first received the appellation of Christians! It must not, however, be disbelieved, that in another passage, Chrysostom, so where we are indebted for this useful information, comprise the multitude of the faithful as more superior to that of the Jews and Pagans. But the solution of this apparent difficulty is easy and obvious. The eloquent preacher draws a parallel between the civil and the ecclesiastical constitution of Antioch; between the list of Christians who had acquired seats in imperial courts, and the list of citizens who had a right to share the public liberality. Slaves, strangers, and infants were comprised in the former; they were excluded from the latter.

The extensive commerce of Alexandria, and its proximity to Palestine, gave an easy entrance to the new religion. It was at first embraced by great numbers of the Therapontes, or Essenes of the lake Mareotis, a Jewish sect which had abstained much of its reverence for the Masonic ceremonies. The austere life of the Essenes, their fasts and secessions, the community of goods, the love of celibacy, their zeal for martyrdom, and the warmth, though not the purity, of their faith, already offered a very lively image of the primitive discipline. It was in the school of Alexandria that the Christian theology appears to have assumed a regular and scientific form; and when Hadrian visited Egypt, he found a church composed of Jews and of Greeks, sufficiently important to attract the notice of that impassive prince. But the progress of Christianity was for a long time confined within the limits of a single city, which was itself a foreign colony; and till the close of the second century the predecessors of Demetrius were the only prelates of the Egyptian church. Three bishops were consecrated by the hands of Demetrius, and the number was increased to twenty by his successor Heracles. The body of the natives, a people distinguished by a stubborn inflexibility of temper, entertained the new doctrine with coldness and reluctance; and even in the time of Origen, it was rare to meet with an Egyptian who had surmounted his early prejudices in favour of the sacred animals of his country. As soon, indeed, as Christianity ascended the throne, the zeal of those barbarians obeyed the prevailing impulsion; the cities of Egypt were filled with bishops, and the deserts of Thebes swarmed with hermits.

A perpetual stream of strangers and provincials flowed into the spacious bosom of Rome. Whatever was strange or odious, whoever was guilty or suspected, might hope in the obscurity of that immense

[Page 130]
capital, to subdue the vigilance of the law. In such a various conflux of nations, every teacher, either of truth or of falsehood, every founder, whether of a virtuous or a criminal association, might easily multiply his disciples or accomplices. The Christians of Rome, at the time of the accidental persecution of Nero, were represented by Tertullus as already amounting to a very great multitude, and the language of that great historian is almost similar to the style employed by Livy, when he relates the introduction and the suppression of the rites of Bacchus. After the Bocchamani had weakened the security of the saracens, it was likewise apprehended that a very great multitude, as it were another people, had been initiated into those abhorred mysteries. A more careful enquiry soon demonstrated, that the offenders did not exceed seven thousand; a number indeed sufficiently alarming, when considered as the object of public justice. It is with the same candid allowance that we should interpret the vague expressions of Tacitus, and in a former instance of Pliny, when they enumerate the crowds of deluded fanatics who had forsaken the established worship of the gods. The church of Rome was undoubtedly the first and most populous of the empire; and we are possessed of an authentic record which attests the sway of religion in that city about the middle of the third century, and after a peace of thirty-eight years. The clergy, at that time, consisted of a bishop, forty-six presbyters, seven deacons, as many sub-deacons, forty-two acolyths, and fifty readers, exorcists, and porters. The number of widows, of the infirm, of the poor, who were maintained by the oblations of the faithful, amounted to fifteen hundred. From reason, as well as from the analogy of Antioch, we may venture to estimate the Christians of Rome at about fifty thousand. The populositas of that great capital cannot perhaps be exactly ascertained; but the most modest calculation will not surely reduce it lower than a million of inhabitants, of whom the Christians might constitute at the most a twentieth part.

The western provinces appeared to have derived the knowledge of Christianity from the same source which had diffused among them the language, the sentiments, and the manners of Rome. In this more important circumstance, Africa, as well as Gaul, was gradually fashioned to the imitation of the capital. Yet notwithstanding the many favourable occasions which might invite the Roman missionaries to visit the Latin provinces, it was late before they passed either the sea or the Alps; nor can we discover in those great countries any assured traces either of faith or of persecution that ascended higher than the reign of the Antonines. The slow progress of the gospel in the cold climate of Gaul, was extremely different from the superstitious with which it seems to have been received on the burning sands of Africa. The African Christians soon formed one of the principal members of the primitive church. The practice introduced into that province, of appointing bishops to the most inconsiderable towns, and very frequently to the most obscure villages, contributed to multiply the splendour and importance of their religious societies, which during the course of the third century were animated by the zeal of Tertullian, directed by the abilities of Cyprian, and adorned by the eloquence of Lactantius. But if, on the contrary, we turn our eyes towards Gaul, we must content ourselves with discovering, in the time of Marcus Antoninus, the flocks and united congregations of Lyons and Vienne, and even in the reign of Decius, we are assured, that in a few cities only, Arles, Narbonne, Toulouse, Lyons, Clermont, Tours, and Paris, some scattered churches were supported by the devotion of a small number of Christians. Silence is indeed very consistent with devotion, but as it is seldom compatible with zeal, we may perceive and lament the languid state of Christianity in those provinces which had exchanged the Celtic for the Latin tongue; since they did not, during the three first centuries, give birth to a single ecclesiastical writer. From Gaul, which claimed a just pre-eminence of learning and authority over all the countries on this side of the Alps, the light of the gospel was more faintly reflected on the remote provinces of Spain and Britain; and if we may credit the vehement assertions of Tertullian, they had already received the first rays of the faith, when he addressed his apology to the magistrates of the emperor Severus. But the obscure and imperfect origin of the western churches of Europe has been so negligently recorded, that if we would relate the time and manner of their foundation, we must supply the silence of antiquity by those legends which excite or superstition long afterwards dictated to the monks in the lazy gloom of their convents. Of those holy romances, that of the apostle St. James can alone, by its single extravagance, deserve to be mentioned. From a peaceful fisherman of the lake of Genesareth he was transformed into a valiant knight, who charged at the head of the Spanish chivalry in their battles against the Moors. The greatest historians have celebrated his exploits; the substan-
ious shrine of Campestella displayed his power; and the sword of a military order, inspired by the terrors of the Inquisition, was sufficient to remove every objection of profane criticism. 178

The progress of Christianity was not confined to the Roman empire; and according to the primitive fathers, who interpret facts by prophecy, the new religion, within a century after the death of its Divine author, had already visited every part of the globe. 179 There exists not," says Justin Martyr, a people, whether Greek or barbarian, or any other race of men, by whatsoever applause or manner they may be distinguished, whether ignorant of arts or agriculture, whether they dwell under tents, or wander about in covered wagons, among whom prayers are not offered up in the name of a crucified Jesus to the Father and Creator of all things. 180 But this splendid exaggeration, which even at present it would be extremely difficult to reconcile with the real state of mankind, can be considered only as the rash sally of a devout but careless writer, the measure of whose belief was regulated by that of his wishes. But neither the belief, nor the wish of the fathers, can alter the truth of history. It will still remain an un doubted fact, that the barbarians of Scythia and Germany, who afterwards subverted the Roman monarchy, were involved in the darkness of paganism; and that even the conversion of Iberia, of Armenia, or of Edninus, was not attempted with any degree of success till the sceptre was in the hands of an orthodox emperor. 181 Before that time, the various accidents of war and commerce might indeed diffuse an imperfect knowledge of the gospel among the tribes of Caledonia, 182 and among the borderers of the Rhine, the Danube, and the Euphrates. 183 Beyond the last-mentioned river, Edessa was distinguished by a firm and early adherence to the faith. 184

From Edessa the principles of Christianity were easily introduced into the Greek and Syrian cities which obeyed the successors of Artaxerxes; but they do not appear to have made any deep impression on the minds of the Persians, whose religious system, by the labours of a well-disciplined order of priests, had been constructed with much more art and solidity than the uncertain mythology of Greece and Rome. 185

This impartial though imperfect survey of the progress of Christianity, it may perhaps seem probable, that the number of its proselytes has been excessively magnified by fear on the one side, and by devotion on the other. According to

to the irreproachable testimony of Origen, the proportion of the faithful was very incon siderable, when compared with the multitude of an unbelieving world; but, as we are left without any distinct information, it is impossible to determine, and it is difficult even to conjecture, the real numbers of the primitive Christians.

The most favourable calculation, however, can be deduced from the examples of Antich and of Rome, will not permit us to imagine the more than a twentieth part of the subjects of the empire had enlisted themselves under the banner of the cross before the important conversion of Constantine. But their habits of faith, of zeal, and of union, seemed to multiply their numbers; and the same causes which contributed to their future increase, served to render their actual strength more apparent and more formidable.

Such is the constitution of civil society, that whilst a few persons are distinguished by riches, by honours, and by knowledge, the body of the people is condemned to obscurity, ignominy, and poverty. The Christian religion, which addressed itself to the whole human race, must consequently collect a far greater number of proselytes from the lower than from the superior ranks of life. This innocent and natural circumstance has been improved into a very odious imputation, which seems to be less strenuously denied by the apologists, than it is argued by the adversaries of the faith, that the new sect of Christians was almost entirely composed of the dregs of the populace, of peasants and mechanics, of boys and women, of beggars and slaves, the last of whom might sometimes introduce the missionaries into the rich and noble families to which they belonged. These obscure teachers (such was the charge of malice and impiety) are as much in public as they are inquisitorial and dogmatical in private. While they cautiously avoid the dangerous enmities of philosophers, they mingle with the rude and illiterate crowd, and insinuate themselves into those minds, whom their age, their sex, or their education, has the best disposed to receive the impression of superstitious terrors. 186

This unfavourable picture, though not devoid of a faint resemblance, betrays, by its dark colouring and distorted features, the pencil of an enemy. As the humble faith of Christ diffused itself through the world, it was embraced by several persons who derived some consequence from the advantages of nature or fortune. Aristides, who presented an eloquent apology to the emperor

178 The conversion of the barbarians was performed in the sixth century. See Matthew (Bos. Hist. Eccl. vol. vi. p. 320, and those epistles), who, in every sense, Immanuel Kant, and the 179 The conversion of the barbarians was performed in the sixth century. See Matthew (Bos. Hist. Eccl. vol. vi. p. 320, and those epistles), who, in every sense, Immanuel Kant, and the 179 The conversion of the barbarians was performed in the sixth century. See Matthew (Bos. Hist. Eccl. vol. vi. p. 320, and those epistles), who, in every sense, Immanuel Kant, and the 179 The conversion of the barbarians was performed in the sixth century. See Matthew (Bos. Hist. Eccl. vol. vi. p. 320, and those epistles), who, in every sense, Immanuel Kant, and the 179 The conversion of the barbarians was performed in the sixth century. See Matthew (Bos. Hist. Eccl. vol. vi. p. 320, and those epistles), who, in every sense, Immanuel Kant, and the 179 The conversion of the barbarians was performed in the sixth century. See Matthew (Bos. Hist. Eccl. vol. vi. p. 320, and those epistles), who, in every sense, Immanuel Kant, and the 179 The conversion of the barbarians was performed in the sixth century. See Matthew (Bos. Hist. Eccl. vol. vi. p. 320, and those epistles), who, in every sense, Immanuel Kant, and the 179 The conversion of the barbarians was performed in the sixth century. See Matthew (Bos. Hist. Eccl. vol. vi. p. 320, and those epistles), who, in every sense, Immanuel Kant, and the 179 The conversion of the barbarians was performed in the sixth century. See Matthew (Bos. Hist. Eccl. vol. vi. p. 320, and those epistles), who, in every sense, Immanuel Kant, and the 179 The conversion of the barbarians was performed in the sixth century. See Matthew (Bos. Hist. Eccl. vol. vi. p. 320, and those epistles), who, in every sense, Immanuel Kant, and the
Hadrian was an Athenian philosopher. Justin Martyr had sought divine knowledge in the schools of Zoas of Aristotle, of Pythagoras, and of Plato, before he fortunately was welcomed by the old man, or rather the angel, who turned his attention to the study of the Jewish prophets. Christians of Alexandria had acquired much wisecounsel in the Greek, and Tertullian in the Latin, language. Julius Africanus and Origen possessed a very considerable share of the learning of their times; and although the style of Cyprian is very different from that of Irenæus, we might almost discover that both these writers had been public teachers of rhetoric. Even the study of philosophy was at length introduced among the Christians, but it was not always productive of the most salutary effects; knowledge was often the parent of error as of devotion, and the description which designed for the followers of Artemas, may, with equal propriety, be applied to the various sects that resisted the successors of the apostles. They presume to alter the holy scripture, to abandon the ancient rules of faith, and to form their opinions according to the subtle precepts of logic. The science of the church is neglected for that study of geometry, and they lose sight of Heaven while they are employed in measuring the earth. Error is perpetually in their hands. Aristotel and Theophrastus are the objects of their adoration; and they express an uncommon reverence for the works of Galen. Their errors are derived from the abuse of the arts and sciences of the infidels, and they corrupt the simplicity of the gospel by the refinements of human reason.

With regard to the advantages of birth and nature, fortune was always separated from the profession of Christianity. Several Roman citizens were brought before the tribunal of Pliny, and he soon discovered, that a great number of persons of every order of men in Bithynia had deserted the religion of their ancestors. His unexpected testimony may, in this instance, obtain more credit than the bold challenge of Tertullian, when he addresses himself to the fates as well as to the humanity of the pontiff of Africa, by assuring him, that if he persists in his cruel intentions, he must desolate Carthage, and so that he will find among the guilty many persons of his own rank, successors and imitators of noble extraction, and the friends or relations of his most intimate friends. It appears, however, that about forty years afterwards the emperor Valerian was persuaded of the truth of this assertion, since in one of his enactments he evidently supposes, that senators, Roman knights, and ladies of quality, were evagated in the Christian sect. The church still continued to increase its outward splendor as it lost its internal purity; and, in the reign of Diocletian, the palace, the court of justice, and even the army, consisted a multitude of Christians, who endeavored to reconcile the interests of the present, with those of a future life.

And yet these exceptions are either too few in number, or too recent in time, entirely to remove the impression of ignorance and obscurity which has been so arrogantly cast on the first preachers of Christianity. Instead of employing in our defense the fictions of later ages, it will be more prudent to convert the occasion of scandal into a subject of edification. Our serious thoughts will suggest to us, that the apostles themselves were chosen by Providence among the fishermen of Galilee, and that the lower we depress the temporal condition of the first Christians, the more reason we shall find to admire their merit and success. It is incumbent on us diligently to remember, that the kingdom of Heaven was promised to the poor in spirit, and that minds afflicted by calamity and the contempt of mankind, cheerfully listen to the divine promise of future happiness; while, on the contrary, the fortunate are satisfied with the possession of this world, and the wise shun in doubt and dispute their vain superiority of reason and knowledge. We stand in need of such reflections to comfort us for the loss of some illustrious characters, which in our eyes might have seemed the most worthy of the heavenly present. The names of Seneca, of the elder and the younger Pliny, of Tacitus, of Pius, of Galen, of the slave Epictetus, and of the emperor Marcus Antoninus, adorn the age in which they flourished, and exalt the dignity of human nature. They filled with glory their respective stations, either in active or contemplative life; their excellent understandings were improved by study; philosophy had purified their minds from the prejudices of the popular superstition; and their days were spent in the pursuit of truth and the practice of virtue. Yet all these sages (it is no less an object of surprise than of concern) overlooked or rejected the perfection of the Christian system. Their language or their silence equally discover their contempt for the growing sect, which in their time had diffused itself over the Roman empire. Those among them who condescend to mention the Christians, consider them only as obstinate and perverse enthusiasts, who exacted an implicit submission to their mysterious doctrines, without being able to produce a single argument that could engage the attention of men of sense and learning.

It is at least doubtful whether any of these philosophers perceived any of the apologies which the primitive Christians re-
ought to have excited the wonder, the curiosity, and the devotion of mankind, passed without notice in an age of science and history. It happened during the lifetime of Seneca and the elder Pliny, who must have experienced the immediate effects, or received the earliest intelligence of the prodigy. Each of these philosophers, in a laborious work, has recorded all the great phenomena of Nature, earthquakes, meteors, comets, and eclipses, which his indefatigable curiosity could collect. Both the one and the other have omitted to mention the greatest phenomenon to which the mortal eye has been witness since the creation of the globe. A distinct chapter of Pliny is designed for eclipses of an extraordinary nature and unusual duration; but he contents himself with describing the singular defect of light which followed the murder of Caesar, when, during the greatest part of a year, the orb of the sun appeared pale and without splendour. This season of obscurity, which cannot but be compared with the preternatural darkness of the Passion, had been already celebrated by most of the poets and historians of that memorable age.

CHAP. XVI.
The Conduct of the Roman Government towards the Christians, from the Reign of Nero to that of Constantine.

If we seriously consider the purity of the Christian religion, the sanctity of its moral precepts, and the innocence as well as religious lives of the greater number of those who during the first age embraced the faith of the gospel, we should naturally suppose, that so benediction a doctrine would have been received with due reverence, even by the unbelieving world; that the learned and the polite, however they might deride the anarchists, would have esteemed the virtues of the new sect; and that the magistrates, instead of persecuting, would have protected an order of men who yielded the most passive obedience to the laws, though they declined the active cares of war and government. If, on the other hand, we recollect the universal toleration of polytheism, as it was invariably maintained by the faith of the people, the incredulity of philosophers, and the policy of the Roman senate and emperors, we are at a loss to discover what new offence the Christians had committed, which new provocation would exaggerate the mild indifference of antiquity, and what new motives could urge the Roman princes.
who beheld without concern a thousand forms of religion subsisting in peace under their gentle sway, to inflict a severe punishment on any part of their subjects, who had chosen for themselves a singular but an insidious mode of faith and worship.

The religious policy of the ancient world seems to have assumed a more stern and intolerant character, to oppose the progress of Christianity. About fourteen years after the death of Christ, his innocent disciples were punished with death by the sentence of a procuring of the most absurd and philosophic character, and according to the laws of an empire distinguished by the wisdom and justice of his general administration. The apologies which were repeatedly addressed to the successors of Togus are filled with the most pathetic complaints, that the Christians who obeyed the dictates, and solicited the liberty, of conscience, were alone, among all the subjects of the Roman empire, excluded from the common benefits of their magnificent government. The deaths of a few eminent martyrs have been recorded with care; and from the time that Christianity was invested with the supreme power, the governors of the church have been able to use it diligently employed in displaying the cruelty, than in uniting the interests, of their Pagan adversaries. To complicate (if it be possible) a few authentic, as well as interesting facts from an unadulterated mass of fiction and error, and to relate, in a clear and rational manner, the causes, the extent, the duration, and the most important circumstances of the persecutions to which the first Christians were exposed, is the design of the present chapter.

The societies of a persecuted religion, of a proscribed religion, depressed by fear, animated with resentment, and perhaps butted by enthusiasm, are seldom in a proper temper of mind calmly to investigate, or candidly to appreciate, the motives of their enemies, which often escape the impartial and discerning view even of those who are placed at a secure distance from the flates of persecution. A reason has been assigned for the conduct of the empire towards the primitive Christians, which may appear the more specious and probable, as it is drawn from the acknowledged genius of polytheism. It has already been observed, that the religions emoted of the world was principally supported by the implicit assent and reverence which the nations of antiquity expressed for their respective traditions and ceremonies. It might therefore be expected that they would unite with indignation against any sect or people which should separate itself from the communion of mankind, and claiming the exclusive possession of divine knowledge, should disdain every form of worship, except its own, as impious and idolatrous. The rights of toleration were held by mutual indulgence; they were justly pursued by a refusal of the accustomed tribute. As the payment of this tribute was inflexibly refused by the Jews, and by them alone, the consideration of the treatment which they experienced from the Roman magistrates will serve to explain how far these speculations are justified by facts, and will tend to discover the true causes of the persecution of Christianity.

Without repeating what has been already mentioned of the reverence of the Roman princes and governors for the temple of Jerusalem, we shall only observe, that the destruction of the temple and city was accompanied, and followed by every circumstance that could exasperate the minds of the conquerors, and authorize religions persecution by the most specious arguments of political justice and the public safety. From the reign of Nero to that of Antoninus Pius, the Jews discovered a fierce impatience of the domination of Rome, which repeatedly broke out in most furious massacres and insurrections. Humanity is shocked at the recital of the horrid cruelties which they committed in the cities of Egypt, of Cyprus, and of Cyrene, where they dwelt in treacherous friendship with the unsuspecting natives; and we are tempted to applaud the severe retaliation: which was exercised by the arms of the legions against a race of fanatics, whose dire and criminal superstition seemed to render them the implacable enemies not only of the Roman government, but of human kind.

The enthusiasm of the Jews was supported by the opinion, that it was unlawful for them to pay taxes to an idolatrous master; and by the flattering promise which they derived from their ancient oracles, that a conquering Messiah would soon arise, destined to break their fetters, and to invest the favours of heaven with the empire of the earth. It was by announcing himself as their long expected deliverer, and by calling on all the descendants of Abraham to avert the hope of Israel, that the famous Barcochebas collected a formidable army, with which he resisted during two years the power of the emperor Hadrian.

Notwithstanding these repeated provocations, the resentment of the Roman princes expired after the victory; nor were their apprehensions continued beyond the period of war and danger. By the general indulgence of polytheism, and by the mild temper of Antoninus Pius, the Jews were restored to their ancient privileges, and once more obtained the permission of circumcising their children, with the easy restraint, that they should never confer on any foreign prostrate that distinguishing mark of the Hebrew race.

The numerous remains of that people, though they were still excluded from the privileges of Jerusalem, were permitted to form and to maintain considerable establishments both in Italy and in the provinces, to acquire the freedom of Rome, to enjoy municipal honors, and to
obtain at the same time an exemption from the burdensome and expensive offices of society. The moderation or the contempt of the Hasmonean gave a legal sanction to the form of ecclesiastical police which was instituted by the tranquillized sect. The patriarchy, who had fixed his residence at Tiberias, was empowered to appoint his subordinate ministers and apostles, to exercise a domestic jurisdiction, and to receive from his dispensation brethren an annual contribution. 3 New synagogues were frequently erected in the principal cities of the empire; and the sabbaths, the fasts, and the festivals, which were either commanded by the Mosaic law, or enjoined by the traditions of the Babians, were celebrated in the most solemn and public manner. 4 Such gentle treatment incensed assuaged the stern temper of the Jews. Awakened from their dream of prophecy and conquest, they assumed the behaviour of peaceable and industrious subjects. Their irreconcilable hatred of mankind, instead of flaming out in acts of blood and violence, evaporated in less dangerous gratifications. They embraced every opportunity of over-reaching the idolaters in trade; and they pronounced secret and ambiguous imprecations against their destroyers, in their haughty kingdom of Edom. 5

Since the Jews, who rejected with abhorrence the deities adored by their heathen and by their fellow-subjects, enjoyed however the free exercise of their national religion; those must have existed some other causes, which exposed the discipline of Christ to those severities from which the piety of Abraham was exempt. The difference between these was simple and obvious; but, according to the sentiments of antiquity, it was of the highest importance. The Jews were a nation; the Christians were a sect; and if it was natural for every community to respect the sacred institutions of their neighbours, it was incumbent on them to preserve in those of their ancestors. The voice of oracles, the precepts of philosophers, and the authority of the laws, unanimously enforced this national obligation. By their lofty claim of superior sanctity, the Jews might provoke the polytheists to consider them as an object and luminous race. By diminishing the intercourse of other nations, they might deserve their contempt. The laws of Moses might be for the most part frivolous or absurd; yet, since they had been received during many ages by a large society, his followers were justified by the example of mankind; and it was universally acknowledged, that the had a right to practice what it would have been criminal in them to neglect. But this principle, which protected the Jewish synagogue, afforded not any favour or security to the primitive church. By embracing the faith of the Gospel, the Christians incurred the supposed guilt of an unnatural and unpardonable offence. They dissolved the sacred ties of custom and education, violated the religious institutions of their country, and presumptuously despised whatever their fathers had believed as true, or had revered as sacred. Nor was this apostacy (if we may use the expression) merely of a partial or local kind; since the pious deserters who withdrew himself from the temple of Egypt or Syria, would equally disdain to seek an asylum in those of Athens or Carthage. Every Christian rejected with contempt the superstitions of his family, his city, and his province. The whole body of Christians unanimously refused to hold any communion with the gods of Rome, of the empire, and of mankind. It was in vain that the oppressed believer asserted the inalienable rights of conscience and private judgment. Though his situation might excite the pity, his arguments could never reach the understanding, either of the philosophic or of the believing part of the pagan world. To their apprehensions, it was no less a matter of surprise, that any individual should entertain scruples against complying with the established mode of worship, than if they had conceived a sudden abhorrence to the manners, the dress, or the language of their native country. 6

The surprise of the Pagans was soon succeeded by resentment; and the most pious of men were exposed to the unjust but dangerous imputation of impiety. Malice and prejudice occurred in representing the Christians as a society of atheists, who, by the most daring attack on the religious constitution of the empire, had merited the severest animadversion of the civil magistrate. They had separated themselves (they gloried in the confession) from every mode of superstition which was received in any part of the globe by the various temper of polytheism; but it was not altogether so evident what deity, or what form of worship, they had substituted to the gods and temples of antiquity. The pure and sublime idea which they entertained of the supreme Being escaped the gross conception of the Pagan multitude, who were at a loss to discover a spiritual and solitary God, that was neither represented under any corporeal figure or visible symbol, nor was adored with the accustomed pomp of festivals and sacrifices. 7 The age of Greece and Rome, who, had excelled their antients in the contemplation of the essence and attributes of the First Cause, were induced by example or by vanity to reserve for themselves and their chosen disciples the privileges of the philosophical devotion. 8 They were far from submitting the prejudices of mankind to the
standard of truth, but they considered them as drawn from the original disposition of human nature; and they supposed that any popular mode of faith and worship which presumed to disdain the assistance of the senses, would, in proportion as it receded from superstition, find itself incapable of restraining the wanderings of the fancy, and the visions of fanaticism. The careless glance which men of wit and learning sometimes cast on the Christian revelation, served only to confirm their hasty opinion, and to persuade them, that the principle, which they might have revered, of the divine unity, was defaced by the wild enthusiasm, and annihilated by the airy speculations, of the new sectaries. The author of a celebrated dialogue, which has been attributed to Lucian, whilst he affects to treat the mysterious subject of the Trinity in a style of ridicule and contempt, betrays his own ignorance of the weakness of human reason, and of the inscrutable nature of the Divine perfections. 11

It might appear less surprising, that the founder of Christianity should not only be revered by his disciples as a sage and a prophet, but that he should be adored as a God. The polytheists were disposed to adopt every article of faith, which seemed to offer any resemblance, however distant or imperfect, with the popular mythology; and the legends of Bacchus, of Hercules, and of Aesculapius, had, in some measure, prepared the imagination for the appearance of the Son of God under a Deity form. 12 But they were astonished that the Christians should abandon the temples of those ancient heroes, who, in the infancy of the world, had invented arts, instituted laws, and vanquished the tyrants and monsters who infested the earth; in order to choose for the exclusive object of their religious worship, an obscure teacher, who, in a recent age, and among a barbarous people, had fallen a sacrifice either to the malice of his own countrymen, or to the jealousy of the Roman government. The Pagans, multitudes, preserving their gratitude for temporal benefits alone, rejected the insatiable present of life and immortality, which was offered to mankind by Jesus of Nazareth. His mild consecration in the midst of cruel and voluntary sufferings, his universal benevolence, and the sublime simplicity of his actions and character, were insufficient, in the opinion of those, in order to compensate for the want of fame, of empire, and of success; and whilst they refused to acknowledge his stupendous triumph over the powers of darkness and of the grave, they misrepresented, or they insulted, the

11. The author of the Dialogue, entitled the Christian a Prophecy, or the Temple of the Gentiles, in its own character, refers to the author of the Gospel of St. Paul, and is addressed to the Jewish Christians, after mentioning the Lord of Hosts, and the temple of Solomon. The writer makes the Christian as an object of ridicule, and his author as an imposter. The author of the Dialogue, or the Christian, a Prophecy, makes a direct allusion to the god Jupiter, or the sun-god, to whom the temple of Solomon was dedicated. The author of the Dialogue, or the Christian, a Prophecy, makes a direct allusion to the god Jupiter, or the sun-god, to whom the temple of Solomon was dedicated.

12. As to the resemblance of Jesus of Nazareth to the complators of the Jews, the author of the Dialogue, or the Christian, a Prophecy, says that the Jews had refuted some popular opinions of the philosophers, and had established the doctrine of a future existence, which was the foundation of the whole body of the Christian religion. The author of the Dialogue, or the Christian, a Prophecy, speaks of the opinions of the philosophers, and of the Jewish philosophers, as the foundation of the Christian religion. The author of the Dialogue, or the Christian, a Prophecy, speaks of the opinions of the philosophers, and of the Jewish philosophers, as the foundation of the Christian religion.
CHOICE. By imitating the awful secrecy which reigned in the Eleusinian mysteries, the Christians had fettered themselves that they should render their sacred institutions more respectable in the eyes of the Pagan world. 18 But the event, as it often happens to the operations of subtle policy, deceived their wishes and their expectations. It was concluded that they only concealed, what they would have blushed to disclose. Their mistaken prudence afforded an opportunity for malice to invent, and for suspicion to crystallize to believe, the horrid tales which described the Christians as the most wretched of human kind, who practised in their dark recesses every abomination that a depraved fancy could suggest, and who solicited the favour of their unknown God by the sacrifice of every moral virtue. There were men who pretended to confess or to relate the ceremonials of this abhorrent society. It was asserted, 20 that a new-born infant, entirely covered over with flour, 21 was presented, like some mystic symbol of initiation, to the knife of the presbyter, who 22 unknowingly inflicted many a secret and mortal wound on the innocent victim of his error; that as soon as the crude deed was performed, the secretaries drank up the blood, 23 greedily tore amidst the quivering members, and pledged themselves to eternal secrecy, by a mutual consciousness of guilt. It was as confidently affirmed, 24 that this inhuman sacrifice was succeeded by a saleable entertainment, 25 in which impertinence served as a provocative to licentiousness; till, at the appointed moment, 26 the lights were suddenly extinguished, shame was banished, nature was forgotten; and, as accident might direct, the darkness of the night was polluted by the incestuous commerce of sisters and brothers, of sons and of mothers. 28

But the perusal of the ancient apologists was sufficient to remove even the slightest suspicion from the mind of a candid adversary. The Christians, with the injurious ascription of innocence, appeal from the voice of rumour to the equity of the magistrates. They acknowledge, that if any proof can be produced of the crimes which calumny has imputed to them, they are worthy of the most severe punishment. They provide the punishment, and they challenge the proof. At the same time they urge, with equal truth and propriety, that the charge is not less devoid of probability, than it is destitute of evidence; they ask, whether any one can seriously believe that the pure and happy blessings of the Gospel, which so frequently restrain the use of the most lawful enjoyments, should inciteuate the practice of the most abominable crimes; that a large society should resolve to dishonour itself in the eyes of its own members; and that a great number of persons of either sex, and every age and character, susceptible to the fear of death or infamy, should consent to violate those principles which nature and education had imprinted most deeply in their minds. 29 Nothing, it should seem, could work the force or destroy the effect of so unanswerable a unani- mity, unless it were the iniquitous conduct of the apologists themselves, who, in the common cause of religion, to gratify their devout hatred to the domestic enemies of the church, it was sometimes faintly insinuated, and sometimes boldly asserted, that the same bloody sacrifices, and the same incestuous follies, which were so falsely ascribed to the orthodox believers, were in reality celebrated by the Marcionites, by the Carpocratians, and by several other sects of the Gnostics, who, notwithstanding they might deviate into the paths of heresy, were still actuated by the sentiments of men, and still governed by the precepts of Christianity. 30 Accusations of a similar kind were returned upon the church by the schismatics who had departed from it, 31 and it was confessed on all sides, that the most scandalous licentiousness and immorality prevailed among great numbers of those who affected the name of Christians. A Pagana, magistrate, who possessed neither the moral nor the ability to discern the almost inscrutable line which divides the orthodox faith from heretical depravity, might easily have imagined, that their mutual animosity had assisted the discovery of their common guilt. It was fortunate for the reprobate, or at least for the reputation, of the first Christians, that the magistrates sometimes proceeded with more temper and moderation that is usually consistent with religious zeal, and that they reported, as the impartial result of their judicial inquiry, that the sectaries, who had deserted the established worship, appeared to them sincere in their professions, and blameless in their manners; however they might incur, by their absurd and excessive superstition, the censure of the laws. 32

History, which undertakes to record the transactions of the past, for the instruction of future ages, would ill deserve that honourable office, if she condemned to plead the cause of tyranny, or to justify the maxims of persecution. It must, however, be acknowledged, that the conduct of the emperors who appeared the least favourable to the primitive church, is by no means so criminal as that of modern sovereigns, who have employed the arm of violence and terror against the religious opinions of any part of their subjects. From their collections, or even from their own feelings, a Charles V., or a

---

Lewis XIV. might have acquired a just knowledge of the rights of conscience, of the obligation of faith, and of the innocence of error. But the princes and magistrates of ancient Rome were strangers to those principles which inspired and authorised the inflexible obstinacy of the Christians in the cause of truth; nor could they themselves discover in their own breasts any motive which would have prompted them to refuse a legal, and as it were a natural, submission to the sacred institutions of their country. The same reason which contributes to alleviate the guilt, must have tended to stifle the rigour of their persecutions. As they were actuated, not by the furious zeal of bigots, but by the temperate policy of legislators, contumacy must often have relaxed, and humanity must frequently have suspended, the execution of those laws which they enacted against the humble and obscure followers of Christ. From the general view of their character and motives, we might naturally conclude: I. That a considerable time elapsed before they considered the new sectaries as an object deserving of the attention of government. II. That in the conviction of any of their subjects who were accused of so very singular a crime, they proceeded with caution and reluctance. III. That they were moderate in the use of punishments; and, IV. That the afflicted church enjoyed many intervals of rest and tranquility. Notwithstanding the various incidental differences which the most eminent and the most minute of the Pagan writers have devoted to the affairs of the Christians,52 it may still be in our power to collect, each of those probable propositions, by the evidence of authentic facts.

The Dispensation of Providence, a mysterious veil was cast over the infancy of the church, which, till the faith of the Christians was matured, and their numbers were multiplied, served to protect them not only from the malice but even from the knowledge of the Pagan world. The slow and gradual abolition of the Mosaic ceremonies afforded a safe and innocent disguise to the more early practices of the Gospel. As they were far the greater part of the race of Abraham, they were distinguished by the peculiar mark of circumcision, offered up their devotions in the Temple of Jerusalem till its final destruction, and received both the Law and the Temple as the genuine inspirations of the Deity. The Gentile converts, who by a spiritual adoption had been associated to the hope of Israel, were likewise concealed under the garb and appearance of Jews,53 and as the polytheists paid less regard to articles of faith than to the external worship, the new sect, which carefully concealed, or faintly announced, its future greatness and ambition, was permitted to shelter itself under the general indication which was granted to an ancient and celebrated people in the Roman empire. It was not long, perhaps, before the Jews themselves, animated with a fiercer zeal and a more jealous faith, perceived the gradual separation of their Nazarene brethren from the doctrine of the synagogue; and they would gladly have extinguished the dangerous heresy in the blood of its adherents. But the decrees of heaven had already disarmed their malice; and though they might sometimes exert the licentious privilege of sedition, they no longer possessed the administration of criminal justice; nor did they find it easy to infuse into the calm breast of a Roman magistrate the rancour of their own zeal and prejudice. The provincial governors declared themselves ready to listen to any accusation that might affect the public safety; but so soon as they were informed, that it was a question not of facts but of words, a dispute relating only to the interpretation of the Jewish laws and prophecies, they deemed it unworthy of the majesty of Rome seriously to discuss the obscure differences which might arise among a barbarous and superstitious people.

The innocence of the first Christians was protected by ignorance and contempt; and the tribunal of the Pagan magistrates often proved their most assured refuge against the fury of the synagogue. If indeed, as is necessary to accommodate to the traditions of a too credulous multitude, we might relate the distant persecutions, the marvelous achievements, and the various deaths of the twelve apostles, but a more accurate enquire will induce us to doubt, whether any of these persons who had been witnessed in the miracles of Christ were permitted, beyond the limits of Palestine, to seal with their blood the truth of their testimony.54 From the ordinary term of human life, it may very naturally be presumed that most of them were deceased before the discontent of the Jews broke out into that furious war, which was terminated only by the ruin of Jerusalem.

During a long period, from the death of Christ to that memorable rebellion, we cannot discover any traces of Roman intolerance, unless they are to be found in the sudden, the transient, but the cruel persecution, which was exercised by Nero against the Christians of the capital, thirty-five years after the former, and only two years before the latter of those great events. The character of the philosophical historian, to whom we are principally indebted for the knowledge of this singular transaction, would shew be sufficient to recommend it to our most attentive consideration.

In the tenth year of the reign of Nero, the capital of the empire was suddenly and universally affected by a fire which raged beyond the memory of example of former ages.55 The monuments of Greek art and of Roman virtue, the trophies of the Punic and Galilean wars, the most holy temples, and the most splendid palaces, were involved in one common destructu

52. In the second compilation of the Augustan History in part with others, there is a very curious notice of this matter; but has the elevation of this subject above the level of the history, it has been, of course, but lightly noticed. The Jewish and Christian sects were distinguished from the Gentiles, and this was the real foundation of the persecution which they received from the Romans: Suetonius, Hist. August., lib. xvi.; also in the Hist. August., lib. xix. (De Univers. Graec. et Rom. or. 1603. p. 150.)

53. See in the work cited above, chap. ii, of the Mosaic constitution, and in that of Justin, lib. ii. Against the Gentiles, p. 142; also in the Frenz. Preocup. de Chants, no. 2, p. 1300.}(O)
city, as for their hatred of human kind. They died in tortures, and their tortures were imbibed by insult and derision. Some were nailed on crosses; others were hung up in the skins of wild beasts, and exposed to the fury of dogs; others again, smeared over with combustible materials, were used as torches to illuminate the darkness of the night. The gardens of Nero were destined for the melancholy spectacle, which was accompanied with a horse-race, and honoured with the presence of the emperor, who mingled with the populace in the dress and attitude of a charioteer. The guilt of the Christians deserved indeed the most exemplary punishment, but the public aburness was changed into commiseration, from the opinion that those unhappy wretches were sacrificed, not so much to the public welfare, as to the cruelty of a jealous tyrant.

Those who survey with a critical eye the revolutions of mankind, may observe, that the garden and circus of Nero on the Vatican, which were polluted with the blood of the first Christians, have been rendered still more famous, by the triumph and by the abuse of the persecuted religion. On the same spot, a temple, which far surpasses the ancient glories of the Capitol, has been since erected by the Christian Pontiffs, who, deriving their claim of universal dominion from an humble fladrunner of Gallic, have succeeded to the throne of the Caesars, given laws to the barbarian conquerors of Rome, and extended their spiritual jurisdiction from the coast of the Baltic to the shores of the Pacific Ocean.

But it would be improper to dismiss this account of Nero's persecution, till we have made some observations, that may serve to remove the difficulties with which it is perplexed, and to throw some light on the subsequent history of the church.

1. The most sceptical criticism is obliged to respect the truth of this extraordinary fact, and the integrity of this celebrated passage of Tacitus.

The former is confirmed by the diligent and accurate Suetonius, who mentions the punishment, which Nero inflicted on the Christians, a sect of men who had embraced a new and criminal superstition. The latter may be proved by the consent of the most ancient manuscripts; by the unimitatable character of the style of Tacitus; by his reputation, which guarded his text from the interpolations of pious fraud; and by the purport of his narration, which accuses the first Christians of the most atrocious crimes, without imputing that they possessed any miraculous or even magical powers above the rest.
of mankind. It is probable that Tacitus was born some years before the fire of Rome, he could derive only from reading and conversation the knowledge of an event which happened during his infancy. Before he gave himself to the public, he calmly waited till his genius had attained its full maturity, and he was more than forty years of age, when a grateful regard for the memory of the virtuous Agrippa, extracted from him the most useful of those historical compositions which will delight and instruct the most distant posterity. After making a trial of his strength in the life of Agrippa and the description of Germany, he conceived, and at length executed, a more arduous work; the history of Rome, in thirty books, from the fall of Nerio to the accession of Nerva. The administration of Nerva introduced an age of justice and prosperity, which Tacitus had destined for the occupation of his old age, but when he took a nearer view of his subject, judging, perhaps, that it was a more honourable or a less infamous office, to record the vices of past tyrants than to celebrate the virtues of a reigning monarch, he chose rather to relate, under the form of annals, the actions of the four immediate successors of Augustus. To collect, to dispose, and to adorn a series of fourscore years, in an immortal work, every sentence of which is pregnant with the deepest observation and the most lively images, was an undertaking not to exaggerate the genius ofTacitus himself during the greatest part of his life. In the last years of the reign of Trajan, whilst the victorious monarch extended the power of Rome beyond its ancient limits, the historian was describing, in the second and fourth books of his annals, the tyranny of Tibertius; and the emperor Hadrian must have succeeded to the throne, before Tacitus, in the regular prosecution of his work, could relate the fire of the capital and the cruelty of Nero towards the unfortunate Christians. At the distance of sixty years, it was the duty of the antiquary to adopt the narratives of contemporaries; but it was natural for the philosopher to indulge himself in the description of the origin, the progress, and the character of the new sect, not so much according to the knowledge or prejudices of the age of Nero, as according to those of the time of Hadrian. 3. Tacitus very frequently trusts to the curiosity or reflection of his readers to supply these intermediate circumstances and ideas, which, in his extreme conscientiousness, he has thought proper to suppress. We may therefore presume to imagine some probable causes which could direct the cruelty of Nero against the Christians of Rome, whose obsequity, as well as innocence, should have shielded them from his indignation, and even from his notice. The Jews, who were numerous in the capital, and oppressed in their own country, were a much fitter object for the suspicions of the emperor and of the people; nor did it seem unlikely that a vanquished nation, who already discovered their absence of the Roman yoke, might have recourse to the most atrocius measures of gratifying their implacable revenge. But the Jews possessed very powerful advocates in the palace, and even in the heart of the tyrant; his wife and master, the beautiful Poppaea, and a favourite player of the race of Abraham, who had already employed their intercession in behalf of the obnoxious people. In their room it was necessary to suffer some other victims, and it might easily be suggested that, although the genuine followers of Moses were innocent of the fire of Rome, there had arisen among them a new and pernicious sect of Galileans, which was capable of the most horrid crimes. Under the appellation of Galileans, two distinctions of men were confounded, the most opposite in each other in their manners and principles; the disciples who had embraced the faith of Jesus of Nazareth, and the scoundrels who had followed the standard of Judas the Galilean. The former were the friends, the latter were the enemies, of human kind; and the only resemblance between them consisted in the same inexorable constancy, which, in the defence of their cause, rendered them insensible of death and tortures. The followers of Judas, who impelled their countrymen into rebellion, were soon buried under the ruins of Jerusalem; whilst those of Jesus, known by the more celebrated name of Christians, diffused themselves over the Roman empire. How natural was it for Tacitus, in the time of Hadrian, to appropriate to the Christians, the guilt and the sufferings, which he might, with the greater truth and justice, have attributed to a sect whose odious memory was almost extinguished! 4. Whatever opinion may be entertained of this conjecture (for it is no more than a conjecture), it is evident that the effect, as well as the cause, of Nero's persecution, were confined to the walls of Rome; that the religious tenets of the Galileans, or Christians, were never made a subject of punishment, or even of suspicion; and that, as the ideas of their sufferings was, for a long time, connected with the idea of cruelty and injustice, the moderation of succeeding princes inclined them to spare a sect, oppressed by a tyrant, whose rage had been usually directed against virtue and innocence.
It is somewhat remarkable, that the flames of war consumed almost at the same time the temple of Jerusalem and the Capitol of Rome; and it appears no less singular, that the tribute which devotion had destined to the former, should have been converted by the power of an assaulting victor to restore and adorn the splendour of the latter. The emperors levied a general capital tax on the Jewish people; and although the sum assessed on the head of each individual was inconsiderable, the use for which it was designed, and the severity with which it was exacted, were considered as an intolerable grievance. Since the officers of the revenue extended their unjust claim to many persons who were strangers to the blood or religion of the Jews, it was impossible that the Christians, who had so often sheltered themselves under the shade of the synagogue, should now escape this irreligious persecution. Anxiously as they were to avoid the slightest infection of idolatry, their conscience forbade them to contribute to the honour of that demon who had assumed the character of the Capitoline Jupiter. As a very numerous though declining party among the Christians still adhered to the law of Moses, their efforts to disseminate their Jewish origin were detected by the decisive test of circumcision; nor were the Roman magistrates at leisure to enquire into the difference of their religious tenets. Among the Christians, who were brought before the tribunal of the emperor, or, as it seems more probable, before that of the procurator of Judaea, two persons, are said to have appeared, distinguished by their extraction, which was more truly noble than that of the greatest monarchs. These were the grandsons of St. Jude, the apostle, who himself was the brother of Jesus Christ. Their natural predilections to the throne of David might perhaps attract the respect of the people, and excite the jealousy of the governor; but the meanness of their birth, and the simplicity of their answers, impressed him that they were neither desirous nor capable of disturbing the peace of the Roman empire. They frankly confessed their royal origin, and their near relation to the Messiah; but they disclaimed any temporal views, and professed that his kingdom, which they devoutly expected, was purely of a spiritual and angelic nature. When they were examined concerning their fortune and occupation, they showed their hands hardened with daily labours, and declared that they derived their whole subsistence from the cultivation of a farm near the village of Ccona, of the extent of about twenty-four English acres, and of the value of nine thousand drachms, or three hundred pounds sterling. The grandsons of St. Jude were dismissed with compassion and contempt.

But although the obscurity of the house of David might protect them from the suspicions of a tyrant, the present greatness of his own family alarmed the pontifical temple of Domitian, which could only be appeased by the blood of those Romans whom he either feared, or hated, or esteemed. Of the two sons of his uncle Flavius Sabinus, the elder was soon convicted of unreasonable intentions, and the younger, who bore the name of Flavius Clemens, was instigated for his safety to his own courage and ability. The emperor, for a long time, distinguished him as an able and industrious man by his favour and protection; but, when he had advanced so far as to have erected a temple in his honour and consecrate the offerings to his gods, the emperor, on the report of the Roman senate, at whose suggestion it appears, Domitian, adopted the children of that marriage as the hope of the succession, and invested them with the honours of the consulship. But he had scarcely finished the term of his annual magistracy, when, on a slight pretence, he was condemned and executed; Domitian was banished to a desolate island on the coast of Campania; and sentences of death or of confiscation were pronounced against a great number of persons who were involved in the same accusation. The guilt imputed to their charge was of that singular and Jewish manner, a singular association of ideas, which cannot with any propriety be applied, except to the Christians, as they were obscurely and imperfectly viewed by the magistrates and by the writers of that period. On the strength of so probable an interpretation, and too eagerly admiring the suspicions of a tyrant as an evidence of their honourable crime, the church has placed both Clemens and Domitilla among its first martyrs, and has branded the cruelty of Domitian with the name of the second persecution. But this persecution (if it deserves that epithet) was of no long duration. A few months after the death of Clemens, and the banishment of Domitilla, Superin, a freedman belonging to the latter, who had enjoyed the favour, but who had not sparedly embraced the faith, of his mistress, assassinated the emperor in his palace.
mission was condemned by the senate; his acts were revoked; his exiles recalled; and under the gentle administration of Nerua, while the innocent were restored to their rank and fortunes, none were guilty either obtained pardon or escaped punishment.

11. About ten years afterwards, during the reign of Trajan, the younger Pliny was intrusted by his friend and master with the government of Bithynia and Pontus. He soon found himself at a loss to determine by what rule of justice or of law he should direct his conduct in the execution of an office the most repugnant to his humanity. Pliny had never assisted at any judicial proceedings against the Christians, with whose name alone it seems to be acquainted; and he was totally uninformed with regard to the nature of their guilt, the method of their conviction, and the degree of their punishment. In this perplexity he had recourse to his usual expedient, of submitting to the wisdom of Trajan an impartial, and, in some respects, a favourable account of the new superstition, requesting the emperor, that he would condescend to resolve his doubts, and to instruct his ignorance. The life of Pliny had been employed in the acquisition of learning, and in the business of the state. Since the age of nineteen he had resided with distinction in the tribunals of Rome, filled a place in the senate, had been invested with the honours of the consulship, and had formed very numerous connections with every order of men, both in Italy and in the provinces. From his ignorance therefore we may derive some useful information. We may assure ourselves, that when he accepted the government of Bithynia, there were no general laws or decrees of the senate in force against the Christians; that neither Trajan nor any of his virtuous predecessors, whose acts were received into the civil and criminal jurisprudence, had publicly declared their intentions concerning the new sect; and that whatever proceedings had been carried on against the Christians, there were none of sufficient weight and authority to establish a precedent for the conduct of a Roman magistrate.

The answer of Trajan, to which the Christians of the succeeding age have frequently appealed, discovers so much regard for justice and humanity as could be reconciled with his mistaken notions of religious policy. Instead of displaying the implacable zeal of an inquisitor, anxious to discover the most minute particles of heresy, and exalting in the number of his victims, the emperor expresses much more solicitude to protect the security of the innocent, than to prevent the escape of the guilty. He acknowledges the difficulty of fixing any general plan; but he lays down two salutary rules, which often afforded relief and support to the distressed Christians. Though he directs the magistrate to punish such persons as are legally convicted, he prohibits them, with a very humane consistency, from making any enquiries concerning the supposed criminals. Nor was the magistrate allowed to proceed on every kind of information. Anonymous charges the emperor rejects, as too repugnant to the equity of his government; and he strictly requires, for the conviction of those to whom the guilt of Christianity is imputed, the positive evidence of a fair and open accuser. It is likewise probable, that the persons who complained were obliged to declare the grounds of their suspicions, to specify (both in respect to time and place) the several assemblages, which their Christian adversary had frequented, and to disclose a great number of circumstances which were concealed, with the most vigilant jealousy from the eye of the prosecutor. If they succeeded in their prosecution, they were exposed to the resentment of a considerable and active party, to the censure of the more liberal portion of mankind, and to the ignominy which, in every age and country, has attended the character of an informer. If, on the contrary, they failed in their proofs, they incurred the severe and perhaps capital penalty, which according to a law published by the emperor Heliogabalus, was inflicted on those who falsely attributed to their fellow-citizens the crime of Christianity. The violence of personal or superstitious animosity might sometimes prevail over the most natural apprehensions of disgrace and danger; but it cannot surely be imagined, that accusations of so unpunishing an appearance were either lightly or frequently undertaken by the Pagans subjects of the Roman empire.

12. But the expedient which was employed to elude the prudence of the laws, affords a sufficient proof how effectually they disapproved the mischievous designs of private malice or superstition zeal. In a large and tumultuous assembly the restraints of fear and shame, so forcible on the minds of individuals, are deprived of the greatest part of their influence. The prince Christian, as he was desirous to obtain, or to escape, the glory of martyrdom, expected, either with impatience or with terror, the stated returns of the public games and festivals. On those occasions, the inhabitants of the great cities of the empire were collected in the circus of the theatre, where every circumstance of the place, as well as of the ceremony, contributed to kindle their devotion, and to extinguish their humanity. Whilst the numerous spectators, crowned with garlands perfumed with incense, purified with the blood of victims, and surrounded with the shouts and statuses of their tutelar deities, resigned themselves to the enjoyment of pleasures, which they considered as an essential part of their religious worship, they recollected, that the Christians...
THE DECLINE AND FALL.

III.

Punishment was not the object of the punishment of God. The punishments of the ancients were inflicted in the name of the gods. The gods were believed to be present, and the punishment was accounted a fulfilment of their will. The ancients believed in the existence of a God, and in the necessity of obeying his commands. They believed that if they did not obey his commands, they would be punished.

The ancients believed in the existence of a God, and in the necessity of obeying his commands. They believed that if they did not obey his commands, they would be punished.
and to whose hands alone the jurisdiction of life and death was intrusted, behaved like men of polished manners and liberal education, who respected the rules of justice, and who were conversant with the precepts of philosophy. They frequently declined the odious task of persecution, dismissed the charge with contempt, or suggested to the accused Christian some legal evasion, by which he might elude the severity of the laws.77 Whenever they were invested with a discretionary power, they used it much less for the oppression, than for the relief and benefit, of the afflicted church. They were far from condemning all the Christians who were accused before their tribunal, and very far from punishing with death all those who were convicted of an obstinate adherence to the new superstition. Contenting themselves, for the most part, with the milder chastisements of imprisonment, exile, or slavery. In the mines,78 they left the unhappy victims of their justice some reason to hope, that a prosperous event, the accession, the marriage, or the triumph of an emperor, might speedily restore them by a general pardon to their former state. The marches, devoted to immediate execution by the Roman magistrates, appear to have been selected from the most opposite extremes. They were either bishops and presbyters, the persons the most distinguished among the Christians by their rank and influence, and whose example might strike terror into the whole sect;79 or else they were the meanest and most abject among them, particularly those of the servile condition, whose lives were esteemed of little value, and whose sufferings were viewed by the ancients with too careless an indifference.72 The learned Origen, who, from his experience as well as his reading, was intimately acquainted with the history of the Christians, declares, in the most explicit terms, that the number of martyrs was very insensible.74 His authority would alone be sufficient to ammulate that formidable number of martyrs, whose relics, drawn for the most part from the catacombs of Rome, have replenished so many churches,79 and whose marvellous achievements have been the subject of so many volumes of Holy Romanes.78 But the general assertion of Origen may be explained and confirmed by the particular testimony of his friend DIONYSIUS, who, in the immense city of Alexandria, and under the rigorous persecution of DECIMUS, reckons only ten men and seven women who suffered for the profession of the Christian name.75

During the same period of persecution, the nations, the eloquent, the ambitious Cyriacus governed the church, not only of Carthage, but even of Africa. He possessed every quality which could engage the reverence of the faithful, or provoke the suspicions and resentment of the Pagan magistrates. His character as well as his station seemed to mark out that holy prelate as the most distinguished object of envy and of danger.76 The experience, however, of the life of Cyriacus, is sufficient to prove, that our fancy has exaggerated the perils situation of a Christian bishop; and that the dangers to which he was exposed were less imminent than those which temporal ambition is always prepared to encounter in the pursuit of honours.

Four Roman emperors, with their families, their favourites, and their adherents, perished by the sword in the space of ten years, during which the bishop of Carthage guided his authority and eloquence the counsels of the African church. It was only in the third year of his administration, that he had reason, during a few months, to apprehend the severe edicts of Decius, the vigilance of the magistrates, and the irritation of the populace. While the religion of Cyriacus resounded in all the provinces of Paphlagonia, and the terror of the Christians was everywhere felt, he, with the aid of a number of his friends, met in a certain secret place, in the presence of the bishop of the city of Nicaea, and the bishop of Paphlagonia, and with a tear in his eye, he solicited the bishop's protection for himself and his people. He besought the bishop, as the best security for the preservation of his life, to make him his substitute, and his episcopal successor. The bishop of Cyriacus, with a view to the public interest, and to prevent the number of the bishoprics, which had hitherto been increased to such an extent that it was becoming burdensome to the people, at last consented to receive the bishop from Paphlagonia. The bishop of Cyriacus was immediately restored to his see, and the bishop of Paphlagonia was immediately placed in the see of Cyriacus. The bishop of Cyriacus, with all the bishops, and with the people of Carthage, were immediately reconciled to each other, and the religion of Cyriacus was immediately restored to its former tranquility.

The propriety of reserving himself for the future expediency among the more learned Catholici. They now treated the bishop of Cyriacus as the most illustrious person in the church of Carthage. He had given them the protection of a man of so many years, and the support of his authority, and he had proved his fidelity to the bishop of Nicaea, and the bishop of Paphlagonia. He had also received the protection of the emperors, and he had been the means of the preservation of the church of Carthage.

But the bishop of Cyriacus, in the same year, was raised to the see by the bishop of Paphlagonia. He was the best means of the preservation of the church of Carthage, and the destruction of the bishop of Nicaea. He was the means of the preservation of the church of Paphlagonia, and the destruction of the bishop of Nicaea. He was the means of the preservation of the church of Nicaea, and the destruction of the bishop of Paphlagonia. He was the means of the preservation of the church of Carthage, and the destruction of the bishop of Nicaea. He was the means of the preservation of the church of Paphlagonia, and the destruction of the bishop of Nicaea.
chis of the church, the example of several holy bishops, and the divine admonitions which, as he declares himself, he frequently received in visions and ecstasies, were the reasons alleged in his justification. But his best apology may be found in the cheerful resolution, with which, about eight years afterwards, he suffered death in the cause of religion. The authentic history of his martyrdom has been recorded with unusual candour and impartiality. A short account therefore of its most important circumstances will convey the clearest information of the spirit, and of the forms, of the Roman persecutions.

When Valerian was consul for the third time, and Gallienus for the fourth time, Petronius, proconsul of Africa, summoned Cyprian to appear in his private council-chamber. He there acquainted him with the imperial mandate which he had just received, that those who had abandoned the Roman religion should immediately return to the practice of the ceremonies of their ancestors. Cyprian replied without hesitation, that he was a Christian and a bishop, devoted to the worship of the true and only Deity, to whom he offered up his daily supplications for the safety and prosperity of the two emperors, his lawful sovereigns. With modest confidence he pleaded the privilege of a citizen, in refusing to give any answer to such irruptions and indeed illegal questions which the proconsul had proposed. A sentence of banishment was pronounced as the penalty of Cyprian's disobedience; and he was conducted without delay to Carthage, a free and maritime city of Numidia, in a pleasant situation, a fertile territory, and at the distance of about forty miles from Carthage. The exiled bishop enjoyed the conveniences of life and the consciousness of virtue. His reputation was diffused over Africa and Italy; an account of his behaviour was published for the edification of the Christian world; and his solitude was frequently interrupted by the letters, the visits, and the congratulations, of the faithful. On the arrival of a new proconsul in the province, the fortune of Cyprian appeared for some time to wear a still more favourable aspect. He was recalled from banishment; and though not yet permitted to return to Carthage, his own gardens in the neighbourhood of the capital were assigned for the place of his residence.

His consecration. At length, exactly one year after his banishment, Cyprian was first appointed, Gaetlius Maximus, proconsul of Africa, received the imperial warrant for the execution of the Christian teachers. The bishop of Carthage was sensible that he should be singled out for one of the first victims; and the cruelty of nature tempted him to withdraw himself by a short flight from the danger and the honour of martyrdom; but soon recovering that fortitude which his character required, he returned to his gardens, and impatiently expected the ministers of death. Two officers of rank, who were entrusted with that commission, placed Cyprinian between them in a chariot; and as the procession was not then at leisure, they conducted him, not to a prison, but to a private house in Carthage, which belonged to one of them. An elegant supper was provided for the entertainment of the bishop, and his Christian friends were permitted for the last time to enjoy his society, whilst the streets were filled with a multitude of the faithful, anxious and alarmed at the approaching fate of their spiritual father.

In the morning he appeared before the tribunal of the proconsul, who, after informing himself of the name and situation of Cyprian, commanded him to offer sacrifices, and pressed on him to reflect on the consequences of his disobedience. The refusal of Cyprian was firm and decisive; and the magistrate, when he had taken the opinion of his council, pronounced with some reluctance the sentence of death. It was conceived in the following terms: "That Theacius Cypriann should be immediately beheaded, as the enemy of the gods of Rome, and as the chief and ringmaster of a criminal association, which he had seduced into an impious resistance against the laws of the most holy emperors, Valerian and Gallienus." The manner of his execution was the mildest and least painful that could be inflicted on a person convicted of any capital offence; nor was the use of torture admitted, to obtain from the bishop of Carthage either the recantation of his principles, or the discovery of his accomplices.

His execution. As soon as the sentence was pronounced, a general cry of "We will die with him," arose at once among the listening multitude of Christians who waited before the palace gates. The generous assurances of their real and affection were neither serviceable to Cyprian nor dangerous to themselves. He was led away, under a guard of tribunes and centurions, without resistance and without insult, to the place of his execution, a spacious and level plain near the city, which was already filled with great numbers of spectators. His faithful priests and deacons were permitted to accompany their holy bishop. They assisted him in laying aside his upper garment, spread linen on the

---

96 In antiquity, the term "Christian" was used to refer to those who adhered to the teachings of Jesus, specifically to those who followed the example of the early Christian communities, often referred to as "Councils or Assemblies." This term was distinct from "Christian" as it is used in modern times, which typically means a follower of Jesus Christ. The use of "Christian" in the context of the Roman Empire refers to the early Christian churches, which were predominantly followers of Jesus and his teachings. The Roman Empire had a complex relationship with Christianity, often viewing it as a threat to their established religious and cultural traditions. The terms "Christian" and "Christianity" were used in various ways throughout history, and their meanings have evolved over time. In this document, the term "Christian" is used to describe those who adhered to the teachings of Jesus Christ, as opposed to adhering to the traditional Roman religious practices. This distinction is important in understanding the perspective of the author, who is writing about the persecution of Christians by the Roman authorities, including the bishop Cyprian of Carthage. The author highlights the courage and determination of Cyprian, who refused to compromise his faith and was willing to suffer death rather than recant his beliefs. The document also describes the reactions of the Christian community, who showed support and solidarity during this time of persecution. The actions of Cyprian and other early Christians demonstrate the strength of their convictions and the impact of their faith on the development of the Christian church.
ground to catch the precious relics of his blood, and received his orders to bestow five-and-twenty pieces of gold on the executioner. The martyr then covered his face with his hands, and at one blow his head was separated from his body. His corpse remained during some hours exposed to the curiosity of the Gentiles; but in the night it was removed, and transported in a triumphal procession, and with a splendid Illumination, to the burial-place of the Christians. The funeral of Cyprian was publicly celebrated without receiving any interruption from the Roman magistrates; and those among the faithful, who had performed the last offices to his person and his memory, were excused from the danger of enquiry or of punishment. It is remarkable, that so great a multitude of bishops in the province of Africa, Cyprian was the first who was esteemed worthy to obtain the crown of martyrdom. 60

It was in the choice of Cyprian, either to die a martyr, or to live an apostate: but on that choice depended the alternative of honour or infamy. Could we suppose that the bishop of Carthage had employed the profession of his Christian faith only as the instrument of his avarice or ambition, it was still incumbent on him to support the character which he had assumed; 60 and, if he possessed the smallest degree of merit, rather to place himself to the most cruel tortures, than by a single act to exchange the reputation of a whole life, for the abhorrence of his Christian brethren, and the contempt of the Gentile world. But if the end of Cyprian was supported by the sincere conviction of the truth of those doctrines which he preached, the crown of martyrdom must have appeared to him as an object of desire rather than of terror. It is not easy to extract any distinct ideas from the vague though eloquent declarations of the Fathers, or to ascertain the degree of immaterial glory and happiness which they confidently promised to those who were so fortunate as to shed their blood in the cause of religion. They incalculable with becoming diligence, that the fire of martyrdom supplied every defect, and expiated every sin; that while the souls of ordinary Christians were obliged to pass through a slow and painful purification, the triumphant sufferers entered into the immediate fruition of eternal bliss, where, in the society of the patriarchs, the apostles, and the prophets, they reigned with Christ, and acted as his messengers in the universal judgment of mankind. The assurance of a lasting reputation on earth, a motive so congenial to the vanity of human nature, often served to animate the courage of the martyrs. The honours which Rome or Athens bestowed on those citizens who had fallen in the cause of their,

were cold and unmeaning demonstrations of respect, when compared with the ardent gratitude and devotion which the primitive church expressed towards the victorious champions of the faith. The annual commemoration of their virtues and sufferings was observed as a sacred ceremony, and at length translated into religious worship. Among the Christians who had publicly confessed their religious principles, those who were frequently imprisoned had been dismissed from the tribunal or the prison of the Pagan magistrates, obtained such honours as were justly due to their imperfect martyrdoms, and their generous resolution. The most pious females consulted the permission of imparting kisses on the fetters which they had worn, and on the wounds which they had received. Their persons were essential holy, their decisions were admitted with deference, and they too often abused, by their spiritual pride and licentious manners, the pre-eminent which their zeal and integrity had acquired. 61 Distinctions like these, while they display the exalted merit, betray the inconsiderable number of those who suffered, and of those who died, for the profession of Christianity.

The solemn obsequies of the present Jesus of the Christian age will more readily cure the visions of the ancient admirers, but can more easily than imitate, the reverence of the first Christians, who, according to the lively expression of Sulpicius Severus, desired martyrdom with more eagerness than his own contemporaries solicited a bishop. 62 The epistles which Ignatius composed as he was carried in chains through the cities of Asia, breathe sentiments the most repugnant to the ordinary feelings of human nature. He earnestly beseeches the Romans, that when he should be exposed in the amphitheatre, they would not, by their kind but inexpressible intercession, deprive him of the crown of glory; and he declares his resolution to provoke and irritate the wild beasts which might be employed as the instruments of his death. 63 Some stories are related of the courage of martyrs, who actually performed what Ignatius had intended; who exaggerated the fury of the lions, pressed the executioner to hasten his office, cheerfully leaped into the firm which were kindled to consume them, and discovered a sensation of joy and pleasure in the midst of the most exquisite terrors. Several examples have been preserved of a zeal impatient of those restraints which the emperors had provided for the security of the church. The Christians sometimes supplied by their voluntary declaration the want of an accuser, rudely disturbed the public service of payment, 64 and rushing in crowds round the tribunal of the magistrates, called upon them to pronounce and to inflict the

60 Tertull., c. 12. 61 de Testimoniis (Monument., tom. iv. p. 71.)
61 Whiston, p. 47. 62 The original of the epistles of Ignatius seems to have been written with the same spirit as the |Whiston, p. 47. 63 See de Testimoniis (Monument. tom. iv. p. 71.) 64 de Testimoniis (Monument., tom. iv. p. 71.)
63 de Testimoniis (Monument., tom. iv. p. 71.) 64 de Testimoniis (Monument., tom. iv. p. 71.)
sentence of the law. The behaviour of the Christians was too remarkable to escape the notice of the ancient philosophers; but they seemed to have considered it with much less admiration than astonishment. Impelled by the motives which sometimes transported the fortitude of believers beyond the bounds of prudence or reason, they trusted such an enormity to die as the stringent reproofs of obstinate despair, of stupendous insensibility, or of superstitions frenzy. Unhappy men! exclaimed the presbyter Antoninus to the Christians of Asia; unhappy men! if you are thus weary of your lives, is it so difficult for you to find rest and peace? He was extremely cautious (as it is observed by a learned and pious historian) of punishing men who had found no accusers but themselves, the Imperial laws not having made any provision for so an extraordinary case; condemning therefore a few, as a warning to their brethren, he dismissed the multitude with indignation and contempt.

Notwithstanding this real or affected disdain, the intrepid constancy of the faithful was productive of more salutary effects on those minds which nature or grace had disposed for the easy reception of religious truth. On these melancholy occasions, there were many among the Gentiles who pitted, who admired, and who were converted. The generous enthusiasm was communicated from the sufferer to the spectator; and the blood of martyrs, according to a well-known observation, became the seed of the church.

But although devotion had raised, arrested, and eloquence continued to inflame, this fever of the mind, it insensibly gave way to the more natural hopes and fears of the human heart, to the love of life, the apprehension of pain, and the horror of dissolution. The more prudent rules of the church found themselves obliged to restrain the indiscrimate ardour of their followers, and to distrust a constancy which too often abandoned them in the hour of trial. As the lives of the faithful became less mortified and austere, they were very few day less ambitions of the honours of martyrdom; and the soldiers of Christ, instead of distinguishing themselves by voluntary deeds of heroic, frequently deserted their post, and fled in confusion before the enemy whom it was their duty to resist. There were three modes, however, of escaping the flames of persecution, which were not attuned with an equal degree of guilt; the first indeed was generally allowed to be innocent; the second was of a doubtful, or at least of a venial, nature; but the third implied a direct and criminal apostasy from the Christian faith.

I. A modern inquisitor would hear with surprise, that whenever an information was given to a Roman magistrate, of any person within his jurisdiction who had embraced the sect of the Christians, the charge was communicated to the party accused, and that a convenient time was allowed him to settle his domestic concerns, and to prepare an answer to the charge which was imputed to him. If he entertained any doubt of his own constancy, such a delay afforded him the opportunity of preserving his life and honour by flight, of withdrawing himself into some obscure retreat, or some distant province, and of patienty expecting the return of peace and security. A measure so consonant to reason was soon authorised by the advice and example of the most holy prelates; and seems to have been enforced by few, except by the mountebanks, who devised it by their strict and obstinate adherence to the sign of ancient discipline. The provincial governors, whose zeal was less prevalent than their avarice, had condescended the practice of selling certificates, or bileas as they were called, which attested, that the persons therein mentioned had complied with the laws, and sacrificed to the Roman deities. By producing these false declarations, the opulent and timid Christians were enabled to alienate the minds of an informer, and to reconcile in some measure their safety with their religion. A slight promise sufficed for this profane dissimulation.

II. In every persecution there were great numbers of unworthy Christians, who publicly disowned or renounced the faith which they had professed; and who confirmed the sincerity of their adjudication, by the legal acts of burning incense or of offering sacrifices. Some of these apostates had yielded on the first menace or extortation of the magistrate; whilst the patients of others had been subjected by the length and repetition of torture. The afflicted consciousness of some betrayed their inward remorse, while others satisfied with confidence and alacrity the expectations of the gods. But the disguise, which they had imposed, subsisted no longer than the present danger. As soon as the severity of the persecution was abated, the doors of the churches were opened by the returning multitude of pious persons, who detected their idolatrous submission, and who solicited with equal ardour, but with various success, their re-admission into the society of Christians.

IV. Notwithstanding the general rules established for the conviction and punishment of the Christians,
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

the fate of those sectaries, in an extensive and arbitrary government, must still, in a great measure, have depended on their own behaviour, the circumstances of the times, and the temper of their superiors as well as subordinate rulers. It might sometimes provoke, and produce might sometimes avert or aggravate, the suprastantious fury of the Pagans. A variety of motives might dispose the provincial governors either to enforce or to relax the execution of the laws; and of these motives the most forcible was their regard not only for the public safety, but for the secret intentions of the emperor, a glance from whose eye was sufficient to kindle or to extinguish the flames of persecution. As often as any occasional severities were exercised in the different parts of the empire, the primitive Christians lamented and perhaps magnified their own sufferings; but the celebrated number of the persecutions has been determined by the ecclesiastical writers of the fifth century, who possessed a more distinct view of the prosperous or adverse fortunes of the church, from the age of Nero to that of Diocletian. The ingenuous parallels of the ten plagues of Egypt, and of the ten horns of the Apocalyptic, first suggested this calculation in their minds; and in their application of the faith of prophecy to the truth of history, they were careful to select those reigns which were indeed the most hostile to the Christian cause. But these transient persecutions served only to revive the zeal, and to restore the discipline of the faithful; and the moments of extraordinary rigor were compensated by much longer intervals of peace and security. The indifference of some princes, and the indulgence of others, permitted the Christians to enjoy, though not perhaps a legal, yet an actual and public toleration of their religion.

The apology of Tertullian contains two very ancient, very singular, but at the same time very conspicuous instances of Imperial clemency; the edicts published by Tiberius, and by Marcus Antoninus, and designed not only to protect the innocence of the Christians, but even to proclaim those stupendous miracles which had attested the truth of their doctrine. The first of these examples is attended with some difficulties which might perplex a sceptical mind. We are required to believe that Pontius Pilate informed the emperor of the unjust sentence of death which he had pronounced against an innocent, and, as it appeared, a divine, person; and that, without acquiring the merit, he exposed himself to the danger, of martyrdom; that Tiberius, who esteemed his contempt for all religion, immediately conceived the design of placing the Jewish Messiah among the gods of Rome; that his servile senate ventured to disobey the commands of their master; that Tiberius, instead of rewarding their

refusal, contented himself with protecting the Christians from the severity of the laws, many years before such laws were enacted, so before the church had assumed any distinct name or existence; and lastly, that the memory of this extraordinary transaction was preserved in the most public and authentic records, which escaped the knowledge of the historians of Greece and Rome, and was only visible to the eyes of an African Christian, who composed his apology one hundred and sixty years after the death of Tiberius. The effect of Marcus Antoninus is supposed to have been the effect of his devotion and gratitude, for the miraculous deliverance which he had obtained in the Marmarean war. The distress of the legions, the remissness of rain and hail, of thunder and of lightning, and the dismay and defeat of the barbarians, have been celebrated by the eloquence of several Pagan writers. If there were any Christians in that army, it was natural that they should assure some merit to the fervent prayers, which, in the moment of danger, they had offered up for their own and the public safety. But we are still assured by monuments of stones and marble, by the Imperial medals, and by the Annon Minora column, that neither the prince nor the people entertained any sense of this signal obligation, since they unanimously attributed their deliverance to the providence of Jupiter, and to the interposition of Mercury. During the whole course of his reign, Marcus disposed the Christians as a philosopher, and punished them as a sovereign.

By a singular fatality, the hardships which they had endured under the government of a virtuous prince, immediately ceased on the accession of a tyrant, and as none except themselves had experienced the injustice of Marcus, so they alone were protected by the lenity of Commodus. The celebrated Marcus, the most detestable of his colleagues, and who at length contrived the murder of her Imperial lover, entertained a singular affection for the oppressed church; and though it was impossible that she could reconcile the practice of vice with the precepts of the Gospel, she might hope to avenge for the sufferings of her sex and profession, by declaring herself the patroness of the Christians. Under the gracious protection of Marcus, they passed in safety the thirteen years of a cruel tyranny; and when the empire was established in the house of Severus, they formed a domestic but more honourable connection with the new court. The emperor was persuaded, that, in a dangerous sickness, he had derived some benefit, either spiritual or physical, from the holy oil, with which one of his slaves had anointed him. He always treated with peculiar distinction several persons of both sexes who had embraced the new religion. The nurse as well as the preceptor of

107. See Eusebius, p. 60. Dolichus Sussus, was the first member of the church: though he was a well disposed person, he was an Israelite by birth, and was a deliberate persecutor of the Christians. *108. The fragments in Latin, which are now extant, are inedit, from the shepherd, with manuscript copies of the De Mortibus et Regum, in his Writings, vol. i. p. 525. 526. 527. The Prefaces are the only source of information respecting the existence of the church under the reign of Commodus.
Caracalla were Christians; and if that young prince ever betrayed a sentiment of humanity, it was occasioned by an incident, which, however trivial, bore some relation to the cause of Christianity. Under the reign of Severus, the fury of the populace was checked; the rigour of ancient laws was for some time suspended; and the provincial governors were satisfied with receiving an annual present from the churches within their jurisdiction, as the price, or as the reward, of their moderation. The controversy concerning the precise time of the celebration of Easter armed the bishops of Asia and Italy against each other, and was considered as the most important business of this period of leisure and tranquillity.

Now was the peace of the church interrupted, till the increasing numbers of proselytes soon at length had attracted the attention, and to have alienated the mind, of Severus. With the design of restraining the progress of Christianity, he published an edict, which, though it was designed to affect only the new converts, could not be carried into strict execution, without exposing to danger and punishment the most zealous of their teachers and missionaries. In this mitigated persecution, we may still discover the indulgent spirit of Rome and of polytheism, which so readily admitted every excuse in favour of those who practised the religious ceremonies of their fathers.

But the laws which Severus had continued, soon expired with the authority of that emperor; and the Christians, after this accidental intermission, enjoyed a calm of thirty-eight years. Till this period they had usually held their assemblies in private houses and sequestered places. They were now permitted to erect and consecrate convenient edifices for the purpose of religious worship; to purchase lands, even at Rome itself, for the use of the community; and to conduct the elections of their ecclesiastical ministers in so public, but at the same time in so exemplary, a manner, as to deserve the respectful attention of the Gentiles. This long repose of the church was accompanied with dignity. The reign of those princes who derived their extraction from the Asiatic provinces, proved the most favourable to the Christians; the eminent persons of the sect, instead of being reduced to implore the protection of a slave or countess, were admitted into the palace in the honourable char-

110 Converts the life of Caracalla to the Augustan History, with the work of Tacitus in Lucullus. In his letter Christianity are reduced; but it is not necessary to follow Tacitus in the account of the death of Caracalla, with a short notice of certain facts. See note 4. History of Caracalla. 115. The present one was standing on the spot where the river divided into two branches, and it is a matter of some concern to ancient to Tacitus. Tacitus. 116. The edict was at first very general, but it was afterwards limited to certain persons of criminal origin. 117. The edict was at first very general, but it was afterwards limited to certain persons of criminal origin. 118. The manner in which the emperors of the period of this description was continued by the history of Suidas, and by the coins of Caracalla. 119. The edict of Constantine is recorded by Zonaras, 111. The arrival of Constantine is recorded by Zonaras, (i. p. 320.), and by the coins of Egypt, 120. See the Ashmole History, p. 182. The discovery Alexander was made by P. de Maric, in the account for antiquity. In 1590, after the extension of this period, it was granted to the Jews.
to the faith; and afforded some grounds for a facile which was afterwards invented; that he had been purified by confession and parricide from the guilt of his inhuman predecessor. The fall of Philip introduced, with the change of masters, a new system of government, so oppressive to the Christians, that their former condition, ever since the time of Domitian, was represented as a state of perfect freedom and security, if compared with the rigorous treatment which they experienced under the short reign of Decius. The virtues of that prince will scarcely allow us to suspect that he was actuated by a mean resentment against the favorites of his predecessor; and it is more reasonable to believe, that in the prosecution of his general design to restore the purity of Roman manners, he was desirous of delivering the empire from what he condemned as a recent and criminal superstition. The bishops of the most considerable cities were removed by exile or death; the vigilance of the magistrates prevented the clergy of Rome during sixteen months from proceeding to a new election; and it was the opinion of the Christians, that the emperor would more patiently endure a competitor for the purple, than a bishop in the capital. Were it possible to suppose that the penetration of Decius had discovered pride under the disguise of humility, or that he could foresee the temporal dominion which might inensibly arise from the claims of spiritual authority, we might be less surprised, that he should consider the successors of St. Peter as the most formidable rivals to those of Augustus.

The administration of Valerian was distinguished by a levity and indifferency, such as was incompatible with the gravity of the Roman Caesar. In the first part of his reign, he was surprised in idleness those princes who had been suspected of an attachment to the Christian faith. In the last three years and a half, listening to the insinuations of a minister addicted to the superstitions of Egypt, he adopted the maxims, and imitated the severity, of his predecessor Decius. The accession of Gallienus, which increased the calamities of the empire, restored peace to the church; and the Christians obtained the free exercise of their religion, by an edict addressed to the bishops, and conceived in such terms as seemed to acknowledge their office and public character.

The ancient laws, without being formally repealed, were suffered to sink into oblivion; and (excepting only some hostile intimation which was attributed to the emperor Aurelius) the discovery of Christ passed above forty years in a state of prosperity, far more dangerous to their virtue than the severest trials of persecution.

The story of Paul of Samosata, who filled the metropolitan see of Antioch, while the East was submerged in the wars of Odenathus and Zenobius, may serve to illustrate the condition and character of the times. The wealth of that province was sufficient evidence of his guilt, since it was neither derived from the inheritance of his fathers, nor acquired by the arts of honest industry. But Paul considered the service of the church as a very lucrative profession. His ecclesiastical jurisdiction was vast and rigorous; he exacted frequent contributions from the most opulent of the faithful, and converted to his own use a considerable part of the public revenue. By his pride and luxury, the Christian religion was rendered odious in the eyes of the Gentiles. His council chamber and his throne, the spoliator with which he appeared in public, the suppliant crowd who solicited his attention, the multitude of letters and petitions to which he dictated his answers, and the perpetual hurry of business in which he was involved, were circumstances much better suited to the state of a civil magistrate, than to the humility of a primitive bishop. When he compromised his people from the pulpit, Paul affected the figurative style and the theatrical gestures of an Asiatic sophist, while the cathedral resembled with the loudest and most extravagant acclamations in the praise of his divine eloquence. Against those who resisted his power, or refused to flatter his vanity, the prelate of Antioch was arrogant, rigid, and inexorable; but he relaxed the discipline, and vanished the treasures of the church on his dependent clergy, who were permitted to imitate their master in the gratification of every sensual appetite. For Paul indulged himself very freely in the pleasures of the table, and he had received into the episcopal palace two young and beautiful women, as the constant companions of his leisure moments.

Notwithstanding these scandalous vices, if Paul of Samosata had preserved the purity of the orthodox faith, his reign over the capital of Syria would have ended only with his life; and had a season which was not long very common. By another edict, he directed the members of the sect of the Gnostics, to be treated as criminals, and the leaders of this delusion were compelled to take an oath of allegiance to Rome and his family, and to renounce their own gods. The latter was a mistake; that such a power had not, and the Egyptians never believed themselves with a Chambers of Philo of Alexandria containing a copy of a letter written by him to a friend in Rome: for the same reason, they were not intended to be contained in the future. The bishop of Rome, who was requested to make a statement of the facts, was the only one to whom they were sent. As the appointment of bishop did not receive the approbation of the people, it was declined by one of the bishops of Africa: and the bishop of Rome did not think fit, by the advice of others, to make a formal reply to the inquiry of the people.
able persecution intervened, an effort of courage might perhaps have placed him in the rank of saints and martyrs. Some nice and subtle errors, which he imprudently adopted and obstinately maintained, concerning the doctrine of the Trinity, excited the zeal and indignation of the Eastern churches. From Egypt to the Euxine Sea, the bishops were in arms and in motion. Several councils were held, confutations were published, excommunications were pronounced, ambiguous explanations were by turns accepted and refused, treaties were concluded and violated. The strength of Samosata was degraded from his episcopal character, by the sentence of seventy or eighty bishops, who assembled for that purpose at Nysa, and who, without consulting the rights of the clergy or the people, appointed a successor by their own authority. The manifest irregularity of this proceeding increased the numbers of the discontented faction; and as Paul, who was an stranger to the arts of courts, had insinuated himself into the favour of Zosimus, he maintained above four years the possession of the episcopal house and office. The victory of Aurelian changed the face of the East, and the two contending parties, who applied to each other the epithets of schism and heresy, were either commanded or permitted to plead their cause before the tribunal of the conqueror. This public and very singular trial affords a convincing proof that the existence, the property, the privileges, and the internal policy, of the Christians, were acknowledged, if not by the laws, at least by the magistrates of the empire. As a pagan and as a soldier, it could scarcely be expected that Aurelian should enter into the discussion, whether the sentiments of Paul or those of his adversaries were most agreeable to the true standard of the orthodox faith. His determination, however, of the bishops of Italy as the most impartial and respectable judges among the Christians, and as soon as he was informed, that they had unanimously approved the sentence of the council, he acquiesced in their opinion, and immediately gave orders that Paul should be compelled to relinquish the temporal possessions belonging to an office, of which, in the judgment of his brethren, he had been regularly deprived. But while we applaud the justice, we should not overlook the policy, of Aurelian; who was desirous of restoring and exalting the dependence of the provinces on the capital, by every means which could blunt the interest or prejudices of any part of his subjects. 

Amongst the frequent revolutions of the empire, the Christians still flourished in peace and prosperity; and notwithstanding a celebrated era of martyrs has been deduced from the accession of Diocletian, the new system of policy, introduced and maintained by the wisdom of that prince, continued, during more than eighteen years, to breathe the mildest and most liberal spirit of religious toleration. The mind of Diocletian himself was less adapted than most speculative enquiries, than to the active labours of war and government. His prudence rendered him averse to any great innovation, and though his temper was not very susceptible of zeal or enthusiasm, he always maintained an habitual regard for the ancient deities of the empire. But the leisure of the two emperors, of his wife Prisca, and of Valerian his daughter, permitted them to listen with more attention and respect to the truths of Christianity, which in every age has acknowledged its important obligations to female devotion. The principal eminences, Licinius and Constantine, Gins, and Andrew, who attended the person, possessed the favour, and governed the household of Diocletian, protected by their powerful influence the faith which they had espoused. Their example was imitated by many of the chief and respectable officers of the palace, who, in their respective stations, had the care of the imperial curiosities, of the robes, of the furniture, of the jewels, and even of the private treasures of the emperors, and though it might sometimes be incumbent on them to accompany the emperor when he sacrificed in the temple, yet they were employed, with their wives, their children, and their slaves, in the free exercise of the Christian religion. Diocletian and his colleagues frequently conferred the most important offices on those persons who avowed their abhorrence for the worship of the gods, but who had displayed abilities proper for the service of the state. The bishops held an honourable rank in their respective provinces, and were treated with distinction and respect, not only by the people, but by the magistrates themselves. Almost in every city, the ancient churches were found insufficient to contain the increasing multitude of proselytes; and in their place more stately and capacious edifices were erected for the public worship of the faithful. The corruption of manners and principles, so forcibly lamented by Eusebius, may be considered, not only as a consequence, but as a proof, of the liberty which the Christians enjoyed and abused under the reign of Diocletian. Prosperity had relaxed the nerves of discipline. Fraud, envy and malice, prevailed in every congregation. The presbyters aspired to the episcopal office, which every day became an object more worthy of their ambition. The bishops, who contended with each other for ecclesiastical pre-eminent, appeared by their contest to claim a secular and tyrannical power in the church; and the lively faith which still dictated
guished the Christians from the Gentiles, was shown much less in their lives, than in their controversial writings.

Notwithstanding this seeming seclusion, an attentive observer might discern some symptoms that threatened the church with a more violent persecution than any which she had yet endured. The slow and rapid progress of the Christians awakened the polytheists from their apathetic indifference in the cause of these deities, whom reason and education had taught them to revere. The mutual provocations of a religious war, which had already continued above two hundred years, exasperated the animosity of the contending parties. The Pagans were incensed at the rashness of a recent and obscure sect, which presumed to accuse their countrymen of error, and to devote their ancestors to eternal infamy. The habits of justifying the popular mythology against the invectives of an implacable enemy, produced in their minds some sentiments of faith and reverence for a system which they had been accustomed to consider with the most careless levity. The supernatural powers asserted by the church inspired at the same time terror and emulation. The followers of the established religion intruded themselves behind a similar fortification of prejudices; invented, new modes of sacrifice, of exposition, and of initiation; attempted to revive the credit of their expiring oracles; and, listened, with eager credulity, to every impostor, who flattered their prejudices by a tale of wonders. Both parties seemed to acknowledge the truth of those miracles which were claimed by their adversaries; and while they were contented with ascribing them to the arts of magic, and to the power of demons, they mutually concurred in restoring and establishing the reign of superstition. Philosophy, her most dangerous enemy, was now converted into her most useful ally. The groves of the Academy, the gardens of Epicurus, and even the portico of the Stoa, were almost deserted, as so many different schools of disputants burned and melted, and many among the Romans were desirous that the writings of Cicero should be condemned and suppressed by the authority of the senate.

The prevailing sect of the new Ptolemies judged it prudent to consult themselves with the priests, whom perhaps they despised, against the Christians, whom they had reason to fear. These

fashionable philosophers prosecuted the design of exciting allegorical wisdom from the fictions of the Greek poets; instituted mysterious rites of devotion for the use of their chosen disciples; recommended the worship of the ancient gods as the endowments or ministers of the Supreme Deity, and composed against the faith of the gospel many elaborate treatises, which have since been committed to the flames by the prudence of orthodox emperors.

Although the policy of Dioecletian and the humanity of Constantius inclined them: in the present instance, to tolerate, the number of独特 was, soon discovered that their two associates, Maximinus and Diocletian, entertained the most implacable aversion for the name and religion of the Christians. The minds of these princes had never been enlightened by science; education had never softened their temper. They owed their greatness to their swords, and in their most elevated fortunes they still retained their superstitious prejudices of soldiers and peasants. In the general administration of the provinces they obeyed the laws which their benefactor had established; but they frequently found occasions of exercising within their camp and palaces a secret persecution, for which the impiety and zeal of the Christians sometimes offered the most signal provocation. A sentence of death, was executed upon Maximianus, an African youth, who had been produced by his own father before the magistrate as a sufficient and legal recruit, but who obstinately persisted in declaring that his conscience would not permit him to embrace the profession of a soldier. It could scarcely be expected that any government should suffer the action of Marcellus the centurion to pass with impunity. On the day of a public festival, that officer threw away his belt, his arms, and the insignia of his office, and exclaimed with a loud voice, that he would obey none but Jesus Christ the eternal King, and that he resigned for ever the use of carnal weapons, and the service of an idolatrous master. The soldiers, as soon as they recovered from their astonishment, scourged the person of Marcellus. He was examined in the city of Tingi by the president of that part of Mauritania; and as he was convicted, by his own confession, he was condemned and beheaded for the crime of desertion. Examples of such a nature serve much less of
religious persecution than of martial or even civil law; but they served to alienate the mind of the emperors, to justify the severity of Galerius, who dismissed a great number of Christian officers from their employments; and to authorize the opinion, that a sect of enthusiasts, which avowed principles so repugnant to the public safety, must either remain useless, or would soon become dangerous, subjects of the empire.

After the succession of the Persian war had raised the hopes and the reputation of Galerius, he passed a winter with Diocletian in the palace of Nicomedia; and the fate of Christianity became the object of their secret consultations. The experienced emperor was still inclined to pursue measures of hostility, and though he readily consented to exclude the Christians from holding any employments in the household or the army, he urged in the strongest terms the danger as well as the cruelty of shedding the blood of those deluded fanatics. Galerius at length extorted from him the permission of summoning a council, composed of a few persons the most distinguished in the civil and military departments of the state. The important question was agitated in their presence, and those ambitious courtiers, easily discerned, that it was incumbent on them to second, by their eloquence, the importance of the crisis. It may be presumed, that they insisted on every topic which might interest the pride, the pietas, or the fears, of their sovereign in the destruction of Christianity. Perhaps they represented, that the glorious work of the deliverance of the empire was last imperfect, as long as an independent people was permitted to subsist and multiply in the heart of the provinces. The Christians (it might speciously be alleged), renouncing the gods and the institutions of Rome, had constituted a distinct republic, which might yet be suppressed before it had acquired any military force; but which was already governed by its own laws and magistrates, possessed of a public treasury, and was intimately connected in all its parts, by the frequent assemblies of the bishops, to whose decree their numerous and opulent congregations yielded an implicit obedience. Arguments like these may have seemed to determine the reluctant mind of Diocletian to embrace a new system of persecution; but though we may suspect, it is not in our power to relate, the secret intrigues of the palace, the private views and resentment, the jealousy of women or eunuchs, and all those trifling but decisive causes which so often influence the fate of empires, and the counsels of the wisest monarchs.

The pleasure of the emperors was at length signified to the Christians, who, during the course of this melancholy winter, had expected, with anxiety, the result of so many secret consultations. The twenty-third of February, which coincided with the Roman festival of the Termestia, was appointed (whether from accident or design) to set bounds to the progress of Christianity. At the earliest dawn of day, the praetorian prefect, accompanied by several generals, tribunes, and officers of the revenue, repaired to the principal church of Nicomedia, which was situated on an eminence in the most populous and beautiful part of the city. The doors were instantly broken open; they rushed into the sanctuary, and as they searched in vain for some visible object of worship, they were obliged to content themselves with committing to the flames the volumes of Holy Scripture. The ministers of Diocletian were followed by a numerous body of guards and pious, who marched in order of battle, and were provided with all the instruments used in the destruction of fortified cities. By their incessant labour, a sacred edifice, which towered above the Imperial palace, and had long excited the indignation and envy of the Gentiles, was in a few hours levelled with the ground.

The next day the general edict of persecution was published; the first edict of Diocletian. The decree was severe, though Diocletian, still averse to bloodshed, had moderated the fury of Galerius, who proposed, that every one refusing to offer sacrifice should immediately be burnt alive, the penalties inflicted on the obstinacy of the Christians might be deemed sufficiently rigorous and effectual. It was enacted, that their churches, in all the provinces of the empire, should be demolished to their foundations; and the punishment of death was denounced against all who should presume to hold any secret assemblies for the purpose of religious worship. The philosophers, who now assumed the unworthy office of directing the blind zeal of persecution, had diligently studied the nature and genius of the Christian religion; and as they were not ignorant that the speculative doctrines of the faith were supposed to be contained in the writings of the prophets, of the evangelists, and of the apostles, they most probably suggested the order, that the bishops and presbyters should deliver all their sacred books into the hands of the magistrates; who were commanded, under the severest penalties, to burn them in a public and solemn manner. By the same edict, the property of the church was as once confiscated; and the several parts of which it might consist, were either sold to the highest bidder, united to the Imperial domain, bestowed on the cities and corporations, or granted to the solicitations of rapacious courtiers. After taking such effectual measures to abolish the worship, and to destroy the government, of the Christians, it was thought necessary to subject to the most intolerable hardships the condition of those perverse individuals who still rejected the religion of nature. Of

141. De M. P. e. H. In Lucaniac, the master was the author of the Bibles, which were, at that time, an infraction of Nicomedia, a book of Gelasini Caesar. It was written in Latin, and was left in the Imperial edition.
142. The only circumstance which we can trace, is the possession of these copies, which was found in the library of the emperor. These copies, as described by Lucanius, were manuscript in nature; but the introduction of manuscript copies, was not in the time of the emperor.
Rome, and of their ancestors. Persons of a liberal birth were declared incapable of holding any honours or employments; slaves were for ever deprived of the hopes of freedom; and the whole body of the people were put out of the protection of the law. The judges were authorised, to hear and to determine every action that was brought against a Christian. But the Christians were not permitted to complain of any injury which they themselves had suffered; and thus those unfortunate sectaries were exposed to the severity, while they were excluded from the benefits, of public justice. This new species of martyrdom, so painful and lingering, so obscure and ignominious, was, perhaps, the most proper to awe the constancy of the faithful; nor can it be doubted that the passions and interest of mankind were disposed on this occasion to second the designs of the emperors. But the policy of a well-ordered government must sometimes have interposed in behalf of the oppressed Christians; nor was it possible for the Roman princes entirely to remove the apprehensions of punishment, or to convince at every act of fraud and violence, without exposing their own authority and the rest of their subjects to the most alarming dangers.\(^{319}\)

This edict was secretly exhibited to the public view, in the most conspicuous place of Nicomedia, before it was torn down by the hands of a Christian, who expressed, at the same time, by the bitterest invectives, his contempt as well as abhorrence for such impious and tyrannical governors. His offence, according to the mildest laws, amounted to treason, and deserved death. And if it be true that he was a person of rank and education, those circumstances could serve only to aggravate his guilt. He was burnt, or rather roasted, by a slow fire; and his execution was so savage that the personal insult which had been offered to the emperors, exhausted every refinement of cruelty, without being able to subdue his patience, or to soften the steady and insulting smile which in his dying agonies he still preserved in his countenance. The Christians, though they confessed that his conduct had not been strictly conformable to the laws of piety, admired the divine favour of his soul; and the excessive commendations which they lavished on the memory of their hero and martyr, contributed to fix a deep impression of terror and hatred in the mind of Diocletian.\(^{320}\)

His fears were soon alarmed by the view of a danger from which he was very narrowly escaped. Within fifty days the palace of Nicomedia, and even the basilica of Diocletian, were twice in flames; and though both times they were extinguished without any material damage, the singular repetition of the fire was justly considered as an evident proof that it had not been the effect of chance or negligence. The same
permitted, and even recommended to their zeal; nor could the Christians, though they fearfully resigned the ornaments of their churches, resolve to interrupt their religious assemblies, or to deliver their sacred books to the flames. The pious obstinacy of Felix, an African bishop, appears to have embarrassed the subordinate ministers of the government. The curate of his city sent him in chains to the provost. The process was transmitted to the praetorian prefect of Italy; and Felix, who disliked even to give an evasive answer, was at length beheaded at Veneda, in Lucania, on a place on which the birth of Hercules has conferred fame.128 This precedent, and perhaps some imperial rescript, which was issued in consequence of it, appeared to authorize the governors of provinces in punishing with death the refusal of the Christians to deliver up their sacred books. There were undoubtedly many persons who embraced this opportunity of obtaining the crown of martyrdom; but there were likewise too many who purchased an ignominious life, by discovering and betraying the holy scripture into the hands of infidels. A great number even of bishops and presbyters, acquired, by this criminal compliance, the approbation and flattery of Truths; and their influence was productive of much present scandal, and of much future discord, in the African church.129

The copies, as well as the versions of scripture, were already so multiplied in the empire, that the most severe inquisition could no longer be attended with any fatal consequences; and even the sacrifice of these volumes, which, in every congregation, were preserved for public use, required the consent of some truculent and unworthy Christians. But the ruin of the churches was easily effected by the authority of the government, and by the labour of the Pagans. In some provinces, however, the magistrates contented themselves with shutting up the places of religious worship. In others, they more literally complied with the terms of the edict; and after taking away the doors, the benches, and the pulpit, which they burnt, as if they were in a funeral pile, they completely demolished the remainder of the edifice.130 It is perhaps to this melancholy occasion, that we should apply a very remarkable story, which is related with so many circumstances of variety and improbability, that it serves rather to excite than to satisfy our curiosity. In a small town in Paphgia, of whose name as well as situation we are left ignorant, it should seem, that the magistrates and the body of the people had embraced the Christian faith; and as some resistance might be apprehended to the execution of the edict, the governor of the province was supported by a numerous detachment of legionaries. On their approach the citizens threw themselves into the church, with the resolution either of defending by arms that sacred edifice, or of perishing in its ruins. They indignantly rejected the notice and permission which was given to them, to retire, till the soldiers, provoked by their obstinate refusal, set fire to the building on all sides, and consumed, by this extraordinary kind of martyrdom, a great number of Paphgians, with their wives and children.131

Some slight disturbances, though they were suppressed almost as soon as excited, in Syria and the frontiers of Armenia, afforded the enemies of the church a very plausible occasion to insinuate, that these troubles had been secretly fomented by the intrigues of the bishops, who had already forgotten their ostentatious professions of passive and unlimited obedience.132 The resentment, or the fears, of Diocletian, at length transported him beyond the bounds of moderation, which he had hitherto preserved, and he declared, in a series of cruel edicts, his intention of abolishing the Christian name. By the first of these edicts, the governors of the provinces were directed to apprehend all persons of the ecclesiastical order; and the prisons, destined for the vilest criminals, were soon filled with a multitude of bishops, presbyters, deacons, readers, and exorcists. By a second edict, the magistrates were commanded to employ every method of severity, which might reclaim them from their odious superstition, and oblige them to return to the established worship of the gods. This rigorous order was extended, by a subsequent edict, to the whole body of Christians, who were exposed to a violent and general persecution.133 Instead of those solitary restrains, which had required the direct and solemn testimony of an accuser, it became the duty as well as the interest of the Imperial officers, to discover, to pursue, and to torment, the most obnoxious among the faithful. Heavy penalties were denounced against all who should presume to save a proscribed sectary from the just indignation of the gods, and of the emperors. Yet, notwithstanding the severity of this law, the virtuous courage of many of the Pagans, in concealing their friends or relations, affords an honourable proof, that the rage of superstition had not extinguished in their minds the sentiments of nature and humanity.134

Diocletian had no sooner publish—General law of Diocletian—his edicts against the Christians, than, as if he had been desirous of committing to other hands the work of persecution, he divided

himself of the Imperial purple. The character and situation of his colleagues and successors sometimes urged them to endure, and sometimes inclined them to suspend, the execution of those rigorous laws; nor can we acquire a just and distinct idea of this important period of ecclesiastical history, unless we separately consider the state of Christianity, in the different parts of the empire, during the space of ten years, which elapsed between the first edicts of Diocletian, and the final peace of the church.

The mild and humane temper of Constantius was adverse to the oppression of any part of his subjects. The principal offices of his palace were exercised by Christians. He loved their persons, esteemed their fidelity, and entertained not any dislike to their religious principles. But as long as Constantius remained in the subordinate station of Caesar, it was not in his power openly to reject the edicts of Diocletian, or to disobey the commands of Maximian. His authority contributed, however, to alleviate the sufferings which his predecessor inflicted and abhorred. He corresponded with relucance to the orders of the emperors; but he ventured to protect the Christians themselves from the fury of the populace, and from the rigour of the laws. The provinces of Gaul (under which we may probably include those of Britain) were indebted, for the singular tranquillity which they enjoyed, to the gentle interposition of their sovereign. But Diocletian, the president or governor of Spain, acted either by real or policy, chose rather to execute the public duties of the emperors, than to understand the secret intentions of Constantius; and it can scarcely be doubted, that his provincial administration was stained with the blood of a few martyrs.

The elevation of Constantius to the supreme and independent dignity of Augustus gave a free scope to the exercise of his virtues; and the shortness of his reign did not prevent him from establishing a system of toleration, of which he left the precept and the example to his son Constantine. His fortunate son, from the first moment of his accession, declared himself the protector of the church; at length secured the appellation of the first emperor who publicly professed and established the Christian religion. The motives of his conversion, as they may variously be deduced from benevolence, from policy, from conviction, or from remorse; and the progress of the revolution, which, under his powerful influence, and that of his sons, rendered Christianity the reigning religion of the Roman empire, will form a very interesting and important chapter in the third volume of this history. At present it may be sufficient to observe, that every victory of Constantine was productive of some relief or benefit to the church.

The provinces of Italy and Africa in turn and experienced a short but violent persecution. The rigorous edicts of Diocletian were strictly and cheerfully executed by the associate Maximian, who had long hated the Christians, and who delighted in acts of blood and violence. In the autumn of the first year of the persecution, the two emperors met at Rome to celebrate their triumph; several oppressive laws appear to have issued from their secret consultations, and the diligence of the magistrates was animated by the presence of their sovereigns. After Diocletian had divested himself of the purple, Italy and Africa were administered under the name of Severus, and were exposed, without defence, to the implacable resentment of his master Galerius. Among the martyrs of Rome, Adrianus deserved the notice of posterity. He was a native of the province of Illyricum, and had reposed himself, through the successive vicissitudes of the palace, to the important office of treasurer of the private domains. Adrianus is the more remarkable for being the only person of rank and distinction who appears to have suffered death during the whole course of this general persecution.

The revolt of Maximus immediately restored peace to the churches of Italy and Africa; and the same tyrant who oppressed every other class of his subjects, showed himself just, humane, and even partial, towards the afflicted Christians. He depended on their gratitude and affection, and very naturally presumed, that the injuries which they had suffered, and the dangers which they still apprehended from his most inveterate enemy, would assure the fidelity of a party already considerable by their numbers and opulence. Even the conduct of Maximus towards the bishops of Rome and Carthage, may be considered as the proof of his toleration, since it is probable that the most orthodox princes would adopt the same measures with regard to their established clergy. Marcellus, the former of those prelates, had thrown the capital into confusion, by the severe sentences which he imposed on a great number of Christians, who, during the late persecution, had renounced or dissembled their religion. The rage of faction broke out in frequent and violent seditions; the blood of the faithful was shed by each other's hands; and the exiles of Marcellus, whose prudence seems to have been less eminent than his zeal, was found to be the only measure capable of restoring peace to the departing church of Rome. The behaviour of Marcellus, bishop of Carthage, appears to have been...
religious prejudices. Desires of repairing the mischief that he had occasioned, he published in his own name, and in those of Licinius and Constantine, a general edict, which, after a pompous recital of the imperial titles, proceeded in the following manner:

"Among the important cares
which have occupied our mind
for the utility and preservation
of the empire, it was our intention to correct
and to establish all things according to the
ancient laws and public discipline of the Ro-
mans. We were particularly desirous of re-
claiming, into the way of reason and nature,
the deluded Christians, who had renounced
the religion and ceremonies instituted by their
fathers; and, presumptuously despising the
practice of antiquity, had invented extravagant
laws and opinions according to the dictates
of their fancy, and had collected a various
society from the different provinces of our
empire. The edicts which we have published
unto the worship of the gods having
exposed many of the Christians to danger and
distress, many having suffered death, and many
more, who still persist in their impiety folly,
being left destitute of any public exercise of
religion, were at our disposal to extend to those
unhappy men the effects of our wondrous
clemency. We permit them, therefore, freely to
profess their private opinions, and to assemble
in their conventicles without fear or molesta-
tion, provided always that they preserve a due
respect to the established laws and governmental
authority. By another rescript we shall signify our inten-
tions to the judges and magistrates; and we
hope that our indulgence will engage the
Christians to offer up their prayers to the
Deity whom they adore, for our safety and
prosperity, for their own, and for that of the
country." 174

171 The new persecution, Galeri-
ianism, the first and principal au-
thor of the persecution, was for-
undurable to those Christians whose misfortunes had
place within the limits of his dominions; and it
may fairly be presumed, that many persons of a middle rank, who were not confined by the
chains either of wealth or of poverty, very
frequently deserted their native country, and sought
a refuge in the milder climate of the West. As
long as he commanded only the armies and
provinces of Illyricum, he could with difficulty
either find or instigate a considerable number of
martyrs, in a warlike country, which had enter-
tained the missionaries of the Gospel with more
coldness and reluctance than any other part of
the empire. 172 But when Galerius had obtained
the supreme power and the government of the
East, he indulged in their fullest extent his zeal
and cruelty, not only in the provinces of Thrace
and Asia, which acknowledged his immediate
jurisdiction, but in those of Syria, Palestine,
and Egypt, where Maximin gratified his own
inclination, by yielding a rigorous obedience to
the stern commands of his benefactor. 173 The
frequent disappointments of his ambitious views,
the experience of six years of persecution, and
the salutary reflections which a lingering and
painful distemper suggested to the mind of
Galerius, at length convinced him that the most
violent efforts of despotism are insufficient to
exterminate a whole people, or to subdue their

173 The Latin text of this passage, as well as the equivalent word
ations, is corrupt, and has been corrected and emendated by the
errors of Veronius and Murer. The general Latinization of this
edict, and its insertion upon the list of the Lex Julia Sacra, which
were the

174 Edict, 5, cap. 5. 174 liberty given to the Jews, and
the laws of N. C. 424, the later statutes of the same
period. Neither of these edicts seems to have been a new
emission: they were evidently copies of the imperial and
emissions of that period.
all the governors and magistrates of the provinces, expropriating on the Imperial eleemosynary, acknowledging the invisible sobriety of the Christians, and directing the officers of justice to cease their insectile prosecutions, and to concur at the secret assemblies of those enthusiastic. In consequence of these orders, great numbers of Christians were released from prison, or delivered from the mines. The confessors, singling hymns of triumph, returned into their own countries; and those who had yielded to the violence of the tempest, solicited with tears of repentance their re-admission into the bosom of the church.  

But this treacherous calm was of short duration; nor could the Christians of the East place any confidence in the character of their sovereign. Cruelty and superstition were the ruling passions of the soul of Maximin. The farmer suggested the means, the latter pointed out the objects, of persecution. The emperor was devoted to the worship of the gods, to the study of magic, and to the belief of miracles. The prophets or philosophors, whom he revered as the favourites of heaven, were frequently raised to the government of provinces, and admitted into his most secret councils. They easily convinced him that the Christians had been isolated for their victories in their regular discipline, and that the weakness of polytheism had moreover flowed from a want of union and subordination among the ministers of religion. A system of government was therefore instituted which was perfectly copied from the policy of the church. In all the great cities of the empire, the temples were repaired and beautified by the order of Maximin; and the affiliating priests of the various dioceses were subjected to the authority of a superior pontiff, destined to oppose the bishop, and to promote the cause of paganism. These pontiffs acknowledged, in their turn, the supreme jurisdiction of the metropolitans or high priests of the province, who acted as the immediate viceregents of the emperor himself. A white robe was the ensign of their dignity; and those new prelates were carefully selected from the most noble and opulent families. By the influence of the magistrates, and of the sacerdotal order, a great number of dutiful addresses were obtained, particularly from the cities of Nicomedia, Antioch, and Tyre, which artfully represented the well-known intentions of the court as the general sense of the people; solicited the emperor to consult the laws of justice rather than the dictates of his absurdity; expressed their abhorrence of the Christians, and humbly prayed that those impious sectaries might at least be excluded from the limits of their respective territories. The answer of Maximin to the address which he obtained from the citizens of Tyre is still extant. He praises their zeal and devotion in terms of the highest satisfaction; deserts on the obstinate impity of the Christians; and betrays, by the readiness with which he consents to their banishment, that he considered himself as receding, rather than as conferring, an indulgence. The priests, as well as the magistrates, were empowered to enforce the execution of his edicts, which were engraved on tables of brass; and though it was recommended to them to avoid the effusion of blood, the most cruel and ignominious punishments were inflicted on the refractory Christians.  

The Asiatic Christians had every thing to dread from the severity of a bigoted monarch who prepared his measures of violence with such deliberate policy. But a few months had scarcely elapsed, before the edicts published by the two Western emperors obliged Maximin to suspend the prosecution of his designs; the civil war which he so rashly undertook against Licinius employed all his attention; and the defeat and death of Maximin was delivered the church from the last and most implacable of her enemies.  

In this general view of the persecution, which was first authorised by the edicts of Diocletian, I have purposely refrained from describing the particular sufferings and deaths of the Christian martyrs. It would have been an easy task, from the history of Eusebius, from the declamations of Lactantius, and from the most ancient acts, to collect a long series of horrid and disgusting pictures, and to fill many pages with racks and scourgings, with iron hooks and red-hot bowls, and with all the variety of tortures which fire and steel, savage beasts and savage savagery, could inflict on the human body. These melancholy scenes might be enlivened by a crowd of visions and miracles destined either to delay the days to celebrate the triumph, or to discover the reliefs of those canonised saints who suffered for the name of Christ. But I cannot determine what I ought to transcribe, till I am satisfied how much I ought to believe. The greatest of the ecclesiastical historians, Eusebius himself, indissolubly confused, that he has related whatever might excite to the glory, and that he has suppressed all that could tend to the disgrace, of religion.  

Such an acknowledgment will naturally excite a suspicion that a writer who has so openly violated one of the fundamental laws of history, has not paid a very strict regard to the observance of the other; and the suspicion will derive additional credit from the character of Eusebius, which was less nurtured with credibility, and more practiced in the arts of courts, than that of almost any of his contemporaries. On some particular occasions, when the magistrates were exasperated by some personal motives of interest or resentment; when the zeal of the martyrs urged them to forget the rules of prudence, and perhaps of decency, to overturn the abuse, to
pour out impressions against the emperor, or to strike the judge as he sat on his tribunal; it may be presumed, that every mode of torture which cruelty could invent or policy could endorse, was exhausted on those devoted victims. Two circumstances, however, have been usually mentioned, which insinuate that the general treatment of the Christians, who had been apprehended by the officers of justice, was less intolerable than it is usually imagined to have been. 1. The confessors who were condemned to work in the mines were permitted, by the humanity or the negligence of their keepers, to build chapels, and freely to profess their religion in the midst of those dreary labitations. 2. The bishops were obliged to check and to ensure the forward zeal of the Christians, who voluntarily threw themselves into the hands of the magistrates. Some of these were persons oppressed by poverty and debts, who blindly sought to terminate a miserable existence by a glorious death. Others were allure by the hope that a short confinement would expiate the sins of a whole life; and others again were actuated by the less honourable motive of deriving a plentiful subsistence, and perhaps a considerable profit, from the abus which the charity of the faithful bestowed on the prisoners. After the church had triumphed over all her enemies, the interest as well as vanity of the captives prompted them to magnify the merit of their respective sufferings. A convenient distance of time or place gave an ample scope to the progress of fiction; and the frequent instances which might be alleged of holy martyrs, whose wounds had been instantly healed, whose strength had been renewed, and whose lost members had miraculously been restored, were extremely convenient for the purpose of removing every difficulty, and of silencing every objection. The most extravagant legends, as they proceeded to the honour of the church, were applauded by the credulous multitude, countenanced by the power of the clergy, and attested by the suspicious evidence of ecclesiastical history.

The vague descriptions of exile and imprisonment, of pain and torture, are so easily exaggerated or softened by the pencil of an artful writer, that we are naturally induced to inquire into a fact of a more distinct and stubborn kind: the number of persons who suffered death in consequence of the edicts published by Diocletian, his associates, and his successors. The recent legendaries record whole armies and cities, which were at once swept away by the indistinguishable rage of persecution. The more ancient writers content themselves with pouring out a liberal effusion ofbose and tragical involvements, without endeavoring to ascertain the precise number of those persons who were permitted to seal with their blood their belief of the Gospel. From the history of Eusebius, it may however be collected, that only nine bishops were punished with death; and we are assured, by his particular enumeration of the martyrs of Palestine, that no more than ninety-two Christians were sentenced to that lamentable appellation. 218. As we are unacquainted with the degree of episcopal zeal and courage which prevailed at that time, it is not in our power to draw any useful inferences from the number of these facts: but the latter may serve to justify a very important and probable conclusion. According to the distribution of Roman provinces, Palestine may be considered as the sixteenth part of the Eastern empire; and since there were some governors, who from a real or affected humanity had preserved their hands untouched with the blood of the faithful, 219 it is reasonable to believe, that the country which had given birth to Christianity, prostrated at least the sixteenth part of the martyrs who suffered death within the dominions of Galilea and Mysia; the whole might consequently amount to about fifteen hundred, a number which, if it is equally divided, between the ten years of the persecution, will allow an annual consumption of one hundred and fifty martyrs. Alloting the same proportion to the provinces of Italy, Africa, and perhaps Spain, where, at the end of two or three years, the vigour of the penal laws was either suspended or abolished, the multitude of Christians in the Roman empire, on whom a capital punishment was inflicted by a judicial sentence, will be reduced to a number less than two thousand persons. Since it cannot be doubted that the Christians were put to imprisonment, and their enemies more exaggerated, in the time of Dioecletian, than they had ever been, in any former persecution, this probable and moderate computation may teach us to estimate the number of primitive saints and martyrs who sacrificed their lives for the important purpose of introducing Christianity into the world.

We shall conclude this chapter with a conclusion, which obtrudes itself on the reluctant mind; that even admitting, without hesitation or enquiry, all that history has recorded, or devotion has sagaciously searched after; the number of martyrs is, in the present computation, but one thousand sixty-two persons. 220 Such persons as these, who, by austerities, by their lives, by their deaths, have given, to the true Christians, a perfect and complete illustration of the Christian religion, have been allowed, in the course of two thousand years, to count only a single year. 221
their intestine dissensions, have inflicted far greater sorrows on each other, than they had experienced from the end of infidels. During the ages of ignorance which followed the subversion of the Roman empire in the West, the bishops of the Imperial city extended their dominion over the laby as well as clergy of the Latin church. The fabric of superstition which they had reared, and which might long have defied the feebler efforts of reason, was at length assaulted by a crowd of daring fanatics, who, from the twelfth to the sixteenth century, assumed the popular character of reformers. The Church of Rome, defended by violence the empire which she had acquired by fraud; a system of peace and benevolence was soon disgraced by proscriptions, wars, massacres, and the institution of the holy office. And as the reformers were animated by the love of civil as well as of religious freedom, the Catholic princes connected their own interest with that of the clergy, and enforced by the sword the terrors of spiritual vengeance. In the Netherlands alone, more than one hundred thousand of the subjects of Charles the Fifth are said to have suffered by the hand of the executioner; and this extraordinary number is attested by Grothus, a man of genius and learning, who preserved his moderation amidst the fury of contending sects, and who composed the annals of his own age and country, at a time when the invention of printing had facilitated the means of intelligence, and increased the dangers of detection. If we are obliged to submit our belief to the authority of Grothus, it must be allowed, that the number of Protestant, who were executed in a single province and a single reign, far exceeded that of the primitive martyrs in the space of three centuries, and of the Roman empire. But if the improbability of the fact itself should prevail over the weight of evidence, if Grothus should be convicted of exaggerating the merit and sufferings of the reformers, we shall be naturally led to enquire what confidence can be placed in the doubtful and imperfect monuments of ancient credulity; what degree of credit can be assigned to a courtly bishop, and a passionate declarator, who, under the protection of Constantine, enjoyed the exclusive privilege of recording the persecutions inflicted on the Christians by the vanquished rivals or disregarded predecessors of their gracious sovereign.

CHAP. XVII.

The unfortunate Licinius was the last rival who opposed the greatness, and the last emperor who adorned the triumph of Constantinople. After a tranquil and prosperous reign, the emperor was succeeded by his family the hereditary of the Roman empire; a new capital, a new policy, and a new religion; and the innovations which he established have been embraced and consecrated by succeeding generations. The age of the great Constantine and his son is filled with important events; but the historian must be oppressed by their number and variety, unless he diligently separates from each other the causes which are connected only by the order of time. He will describe the political institutions that gave strength and stability to the empire, before he proceeds to relate the wars and revolutions which hastened its decline. He will adopt the division, unknown to the ancients, of civil and ecclesiastical affairs: the victory of the Christians, and their intestine discord, will supply enough and distinct materials both for education and for scandal.

After the defeat and abdication of Licinius, his victorious rival proceeded to lay the foundations of a city destined to reign, in future times, the mistress of the East, and to survive the empire and religion of Constantine. The motives, whether of pride or of policy, which first induced Diocletian to withdraw himself from the ancient seat of government, had acquired additional weight by the example of his successors, and the labours of forty years. Rome was assembled conformed with the dependent kingdoms which had once acknowledged her supremacy; and the country of the Caesars was viewed with cold indifference by a martial prince, born in the neighbourhood of the Danube, educated in the courts and armies of Asia, and invested with the purple by the legions of Britain. The Italians, who had received Constantinople as their deliverer, submissively obeyed the edicts, which he sometimes unadvisedly addressed to the senate and people of Rome; but they were seldom honoured with the presence of their new sovereign. During the vigour of his age, Constantine, according to the various exigencies of peace and war, moved with slow dignity, or with rapid celerity, along the frontiers of his extensive dominion, and was always prepared to take the field either against a foreign or a domestic enemy. But as he gradually reached the summit of prosperity and the decline of life, he began to meditate the design of fixing in a more permanent station the strength as well as majesty of the throne. In the choice of an advantageous situation, he preferred the confines of Europe and Asia; to erect, with a powerful arm, the barriers which he sought between the Danube and the Taurus; to watch with an eye of jealousy the conduct of the Persian monarch, who indignantly supported the yoke of an ignominious treaty. With these views, Diocletian had selected and embellished the residence of Nicomedia; but the memory of Diocletian was justly Sheriff by the protector of the church; and Constantine was not insensible to the ambition of founding a city which might perpetuate the glory of his own name. During the late operations of the war against Licinius, he had sufficient opportunity to contemplate, both as a soldier
and as a statement, the incompassable position of Byzantium; and to observe how strongly it was guarded by nature against an hostile attack, whilst it was accessible on every side to the benefits of commercial intercourse. Many ages before Constantine, one of the most judicious historians of antiquity ¹ had described the advantages of a situation, from whence a feble colony of Greeks derived the command of the seas, and the honours of a flourishing and independent republic. ²

If we survey Byzantium in the extent which it acquired with the august name of Constantinople, the figure of the Imperial city may be represented under that of an unequal triangle. The obuse point, which advances towards the east and the shores of Asia, meets and repels the waves of the Thracian Bosphorus. The northern side of the city is bounded by the harbour; and the southern is washed by the Propontis, or Sea of Marmora. The basis of the triangle is opposed to the west, and terminates the continent of Europe. But the admirable form and division of the circumjacent land and water cannot, without a more ample explanation, be clearly or sufficiently understood.

The winding channel through which the waters of the Euxine flow with a rapid and incessant course towards the Mediterranean, received the appellation of Bosphorus, a name not less celebrated in the history, than in the fables, of antiquity. ³ A crowd of temples and of votive altars, profusely scattered along its steep and woody banks, attested the unskilfulness, the terror, and the devotion of the Grecian navigators, who, after the argument of the Argonauts, explored the dangers of the incompassable Euxine. On these banks tradition long preserved the memory of the palace of Phineus, infested by the obscene harpies; ⁴ and of the sylvan reign of Amaryus, who defended the son of Leda to the combat of the cytherean, ⁵ The straits of the Bosphorus are terminated by the Cyanean rocks, which, according to the description of the poets, had ascended from the face of the waters, and were destined by the gods to protect the entrance of the Euxine against the eye of profane curiosity. ⁶ From the Cyanean rocks to the point and harbour of Byzantium, the winding length of the Bosphorus extends about sixteen miles, ⁷ and its

most ordinary breadth may be computed at about one mile and a half. The new castles of Europe and Asia are constructed, on either continent, upon the foundations of two celebrated temples, of Serapis and of Jupiter Urus. The old castles, a work of the Greek emperors, command the narrowest part of the channel, in a place where the opposite banks advance within fifty hundred paces of each other. These forts were destroyed and strengthened by Mahomet the Second, when he meditated the siege of Constantinople; ⁸ but the Turkish conqueror was most probably ignorant, that, near two thousand years before his reign, Darius had chosen the same situation to connect the two continents by a bridge of boats. ⁹ At a small distance from the old castles we discover the little town of Chrysepolis, or Scutari, which may almost be considered as the Asiatic suburb of Constantinople. The Bosphorus, as it begins to open into the Propontis, passes between Byzantium and Chalcodon. The latter of these cities was built by the Greeks, a few years before the former; and the blindness of its founders, who overlooked the superior advantages of the opposite coast, has been stigmatised by a proverbial expression of contempt. ¹⁰

The harbour of Constantinople, which may be considered as an arm of the Bosphorus, obtained, in a very remote period, the denomination of the Golden Horn. The curve which it describes might be compared to the horn of a stag, or as it should seem, with more propriety, to that of an ox. ¹¹ The splendour of golds was expressive of the riches which every wind wafted from the most distant countries into the secure and spacious port of Constanti,

ople. The river Lykos, formed by the conflux of two little streams, pours into the harbour a perpetual supply of fresh water, which serves to cleanse the bottom, and to invite the periodical shoals of fish to seek their retreat in that convenient recess. As the tides of the tides are scarcely felt in these seas, the constant depth of the harbour allows goods to be landed on the quays without the assistance of boats; and it has been observed, that in many places the largest vessels may rest their prows against the houses, while their sterns are floating in the water. ¹² From the mouth of the Lykos to that of the harbour, this arm of the Bosphorus is more than seven miles in length. The entrance

1. Polybius, i. 9. p. 137, ed. Cousin.  ². His observation is the more curious in that he wrote in the year 601, three hundred years before the fall of Constantinople and the conquest of the Turks.

2. This is the case of Bithynia, a province which may be said to have been inhabited by the Phocaean colonists of Bosphorus, from the first settlement of the Bithynians under the name of the Baurian. ³. The same fable is related of the Cyanean, the Egean, and the Syrtis. In the explanation of certain Phocaeans who are thought to have ascended on the island of Erytheia, near the Egean, by the westward wind, and the Egean, as well as the Euxine, is reported to have been an imaginary island, and to have been the nearest of the Erythraean Sea.

3. The Egean is the name of the sea, and of the island of Erytheia in Asia Minor. The word Egean is also used by Pliny, who is thought to have been the first who applied it to the sea, all mankind having been probably in error on the subject. The Egean is also called the Egean Sea.

4. This is the case of the Erythraean Sea, the ocean of the Erythraeans, who were supposed to have been the first who discovered the island of Erytheia. The Erythraeans were also supposed to have discovered the Egean Sea, and the lands of Asia Minor, as well as the coast of Africa.

5. The Egean is also called the Egean Sea, and the lands of Asia Minor, as well as the coast of Africa.

6. The Egean is also called the Egean Sea, and the lands of Asia Minor, as well as the coast of Africa.

7. The Egean is also called the Egean Sea, and the lands of Asia Minor, as well as the coast of Africa.

8. The Egean is also called the Egean Sea, and the lands of Asia Minor, as well as the coast of Africa.

9. The Egean is also called the Egean Sea, and the lands of Asia Minor, as well as the coast of Africa.

10. The Egean is also called the Egean Sea, and the lands of Asia Minor, as well as the coast of Africa.

11. The Egean is also called the Egean Sea, and the lands of Asia Minor, as well as the coast of Africa.

12. The Egean is also called the Egean Sea, and the lands of Asia Minor, as well as the coast of Africa.
is about five hundred yards broad, and a strong chain could be occasionally drawn across it; to guard the port and city from the attack of a hostile navy. Between the Bosphorus and the Hellespont, the shores of Europe and Asia receding on either side enclose the sea of Marmora, which was known to the ancients by the denomination of Propontis. The navigation from the issue of the Bosphorus to the entrance of the Hellespont is about one hundred and twenty miles. Those who steer their westward course through the middle of the Propontis, may at once descry the high lands of Thrace and Bithynia, and never lose sight of the lofty summit of Mount Olympus, covered with eternal snows. They leave on the left a deep gulf, at the bottom of which Nicomedia was seated, the imperial residence of Diocletian; and they pass the small islands of Cyricus and Proconnesus before they cast anchor at Gallipoli; where the sea, which separates Asia from Europe, is again contracted into a narrow channel.

The Hellespont. The geographers, who, with the most skilful accuracy, have surveyed the form and extent of the Hellespont, assign about sixty miles for the winding course, and about three miles for the ordinary breadth of those celebrated straits. But the narrowest part of the channel is found to the northward of the old Turkish castles between the cities of Sestus and Abydus. It was here that the adventurous Leander bore the passage of the ford, for the possession of his mistress. It was here likewise, in a place where the distance between the opposite banks cannot exceed five hundred paces, that Xerxes imposed a stupendous bridge of buatts, for the purpose of transporting into Europe an hundred and seventy myriads of barbarians. A sea contracted within such narrow limits, may seem but ill to deserve the singular epithet of brac, which Homer, as well as Orpheus, has frequently bestowed on the Hellespont. But our ideas of greatness are of a relative nature: the traveller, and especially the poet, who sailed along the Hellespont, who pursued the windings of the stream, and contemplated the rural scenery, which appeared on every side to terminate the prospect, insensibly lost the remembrance of the sea; and his fancy painted those celebrated straits, with all the attributes of a mighty river, flowing with a swift current, in the midst of a woody and inland country, and at length, through a wide mouth, discharging itself into the Egean or Archipelago. Ancient Troy was seated on an eminence at the foot of Mount Ida, overlooked the mouth of the Hellespont, which scarcely received an accession of waters from the tributaries of those immortal rivulets the Scamander and Sconsander. The Grecian camp had stretched twelve miles along the shore from the Sigean to the Rhodian promontory; and the banks of the army were guarded by the bravest chiefs who fought under the banners of Agamemnon. The first of these praenomens was occupied by Achilles with his invincible Myrmidons, and the dauntless Ajax pitched his tents on the other. After Ajax had fallen a sacrifice to his disappointed pride, and to the ingratitude of the Greeks, his sepulchre was erected on the ground where he had defended the navy against the rage of Jove and of Hector; and the citizens of the rising town of Rhodiiaw celebrated his memory with divine honours. Before Constantinople gave a just preference to the situation of Byzantium, he had conceived the design of envening the seat of empire on this celebrated spot, from whence the Romans of old their fabulous origin. The extensive plain which lies below ancient Troy, towards the Rhodian promontory, and the tomb of Ajax, was first chosen for his new capital; and though the undertaking was seen relinquished, the stately remains of unfinished walls and towers attracted the notice of all who sailed through the straits of the Hellespont.

We are at present qualified to view the advantageous position of Constantinople, which appears to have been formed by nature for the centre and capital of a great monarchy. Situated in the forty-first degree of latitude, the Imperial city commanded, from her seven hills, the opposite shores of Europe and Asia; the climate was healthy and temperate, the soil fertile, the harbour secure and spacious; and the approach on the side of the continent was of small extent and easy defence. The Bosphorus and the Hellespont may be considered as the two gates of Constantinople; and the princes who possessed those important passages could always shift them...
against a naval enemy, and open them to the fleets of commerce. The preservation of the Eastern provinces may, in some degree, be ascribed to the policy of Constantinople, as the Barbary of the Euxine, who in the preceding age had poured their armaments into the heart of the Mediterranean, now desisted from the exercise of piracy, and despaired of forcing this insurmountable barrier. When the gates of the Hellespont and Bosphorus were shut, the capital still enjoyed, within their spacious enclosures, every production which could supply the wants, or gratify the luxury, of its numerous inhabitants. The sea coasts of Thrace and Bithynia, which languished under the weight of Turkish oppression, still exhibit a rich prospect of vineyards, of gardens, and of plentiful harvests; and the Propontis has ever been renowned for an inexhaustible store of the most exquisite fish, that are taken in their stated seasons, without skill, and almost without labour. But when the passages of the straits were thrown open for trade, they alternately admitted the natural and artificial riches of the north and south, of the Euxine, and of the Mediterranean. Whatever rude commodities were collected in the Uiassus of Germany and Scythia, as far as the sources of the Tanais and the Bosphorone; whatever was manufactured by the skill of Europe or Asia; the corn of Egypt, and the grapes and spices of the farthest India; were brought by the varying winds into the port of Constantinople, which, for many ages, attracted the commerce of the ancient world. The prospect of beauty, of safety, and of wealth, united in a single spot, was sufficient to justify the choice of Constantinople. But as some secret mixture of prodigy and failure has, in every age, been supposed to reflect a becoming majesty on the origin of great cities, the emperor was desirous of ascribing his resolution, not so much to the uncertain counsels of human policy, as to the infallible and eternal decrees of divine wisdom. In one of his laws he has been careful to instruct posterity, that, in obedience to the commands of God, he laid the everlasting foundations of Constantinople; and though he has not condescended to explain in what manner the celestial inspiration was communicated to his mind, the defect of his most silent silence has been literally supplied by the ingenuity of succeeding writers; who describe the nocturnal vision which appeared to the fancy of Constantinople, as he slept within the walls of Byzantium. The tutelar genius of the city, a venerable matron sinking under the weight of years and infirmities, was suddenly transformed into a blooming maid, whom his own hands adorned with all the symbols of Imperial greatness. The monarch intoned the auspicious omen, and obeyed, without hesitation, the will of Heaven. The day which gave birth to a city or colony was celebrated by the Romans with such ceremonies as had been ordained by a generous superstition; and though Constantinople might omit some rites which savoured too strongly of their Pagan origin, yet he was anxious to leave a deep impression of hope and respect on the minds of the spectators. On fact, with a lance in his hand, the emperor himself led the solemn procession; and directed the line, which was traced as the boundary of the destined capital: till the growing circumspection was observed with astonishment by the assistants, who, at length, ventured to observe, that he had already exceeded the most ample measure of a great city. "I shall still advance," replied Constantine, "till the invisible guide who marches before me, thinks proper to stop." Without presuming to investigate the nature or motives of this extraordinary conduct, we shall content ourselves with the more humble task of describing the extent and limits of Constantinople.

In the actual state of the city, the palace and gardens of the Seraglio occupy the eastern promontory, the first of the seven hills, and cover about one hundred and fifty acres of our own measure. The rest of Turkish jealousy and despotism is erected on the foundations of a Greek republic; but it may be supposed that the Byzantines were tempted by the convenience of the harbour to extend their habitations on that side beyond the modern limits of the Seraglio. The new walls of Constantinople stretched from the point to the Propontis across the enlarged breadth of the triangle, at the distance of fifteen miles from the ancient fortifications; and with the city of Byzantium they enclosed five of the seven hills, which, to the eyes of those who approach Constantinople, appear to rise above each other, in beautiful order. About a century after the death of the founder, the new buildings, extending on one side up the harbour, and on the other along the Propontis, already covered the narrow ridge of the sixth, and the broad summit of the seventh hill. The necessity of protecting those suburbs from the inconstant invasions of the barbarians, engaged the younger Theodosus to surround his capital with an adequate and
villages, to engage in the study and practice of architecture a sufficient number of ingenious youths, who had received a liberal education.

The buildings of the new city were executed by such artificers as the reign of Constantine could afford: but they were decorated by the hands of the most celebrated masters of the age of Pericles and Alexander. To revive the genius of Phidias and Lysippus, surpassed indeed the power of a Roman emperor; but the immortal productions which they had begotten to posterity were exposed without defence to the rapacious vanity of a despot. By his command, the cities of Greece and Asia were despoiled of their most valuable monuments. The trophies of memorable wars, the objects of religious veneration, the most finished statues of the gods and heroes, of the sages and poets, of ancient times, contributed to the splendid triumph of Constantinople; and gave occasion to the remark of the historian Celse, who observes, with some enthusiasm, that nothing seemed wanting except the souls of the illustrious men whose those admirable monuments were intended to represent. But it is not in the city of Constantine, nor in the declining period of an empire, when the human mind was depressed by civil and religious despotism, that we should look for the souls of Homer and of Demosthenes.

During the siege of Byzantium, the conqueror had pitched his tent on the commanding eminence of the second hill. To perpetuate the memory of his success, he chose the same advantageous position for the principal Forum, which appears to have been of a circular, or rather elliptical form. The two opposite entrances formed triumphal arches; the porticoes, which enclosed it on every side, were filled with statues; and the centre of the Forum was occupied by a lofty column, of which a mutilated fragment is now degraded by the appellation of the hero pillar. This column was erected on a pedestal of white marble twenty feet high; and was composed of ten pieces of porphyry, each of which measured about six feet in height, and about thirty-three in circumference. On the summit of the pillar, above one hundred and twenty feet from the ground,
stood the colossal statue of Apollo. It was of bronze, had been transported either from Athens or from a town of Phrygia, and was supposed to be the work of Phidias. The artist had represented the god of day, or, as it was afterwards interpreted, the emperor Constantine himself, with a scapite in his right hand, the globe of the world in his left, and a crown of rays glittering on his head. The Circus, or Hippodrome, was a stately building about four hundred paces in length, and one hundred in breadth. The space between the two sets of goals was filled with statues and obelisks; and we may still remark a very singular fragment of antiquity, the bodies of three serpents, twisted into one pillar of bronze. Their triple heads had once supported the golden tripod which, after the defeat of Xerxes, was consecrated in the temple of Delphi by the victorious Greeks. The beauty of the Hippodrome has been long since defaced by the rude hands of the Turkish conquerors; but, under the similar appellation of Atmisan, it still serves as a place of exercise for their horses. From the throne, whence the emperor viewed the Circusian games, a winding staircase descended to the palace; a magnificent edifice, which scarcely yielded to the residence of Rome itself, and which, together with the independent courts, gardens, and porticoes, covered a considerable extent of ground upon the banks of the Proprontis, between the Hippodrome and the church of St. Sophia. We might likewise celeberate the baths, which still retained the name of Zeuxippus, after they had been enriched, by the munificence of Constantine, with lofty columns, caryatides, and above three-score statues of bronze. But we should deviate from the design of this history, if we attempted minutely to describe the different buildings or quarters of the city. It may be sufficient to observe, that whatever could adorn the dignity of a great capital, or contribute to the benefit or pleasure of its numerous inhabitants, was contained within the walls of Constantinople. A particular description, composed about a century after its foundation, enumerates a capital or school of learning, a circus, two theatres, eight public, and one hundred and fifty-three private, baths, fifty-two porticoes, five granaries, eight aqueducts or reservoirs of water, four spacious halls for the meetings of the senate or courts of justice, fourteen churches, fourteen palaces, and four thousand three hundred and eighty-eight houses, which, for their size or beauty, deserved to be distinguished from the multitude of plebeian habitations.

The populousness of his favoured city was the next and most serious object of the attention of its foundress. In the dark ages which succeeded the translation of the empire, the remote and the immediate consequences of that memorable event were strangely confounded by the vanity of the Greeks, and the crudity of the Latins. It was asserted, and believed, that all the noble families of Rome, the senate, and the equestrian order, with their innumerable attendants, had followed their emperor to the banks of the Propontis; that a spurious race of strangers and plebeians was left to possess the solitude of the ancient capital; and that the lands of Italy, long since converted into gardens, were at once deprived of cultivation and inhabitants. In the course of this history, such exaggerations will be reducible to their just value: yet, since the growth of Constantinople cannot be ascribed to the general increase of mankind and of industry, it must be admitted, that this artificial colony was raised at the expense of the ancient cities of the empire. Many opulent senators of Rome, and of the Eastern provinces, were probably invited by Constantine to adopt for their country the fortunate spot which he had chosen for his own residence. The invitations of a master are scarcely to be distinguished from commands; and the liberality of the emperor obtained a ready and cheerful obedience. He bestowed on his favourite the palaces which he had built in the several quarters of the city, assigned them lands and pensions for the support of their dignity, and alienated the demesnes of Pontus and Asia to grant hereditary estates by the easy tenure of maintaining a house in the capital. But these encouragements and obligations soon became
superfluous, and were gradually abolished. Wherever the seat of government is fixed, a considerable part of the public revenue will be expended by the prince himself, by his ministers, by the officers of justice, and by the domestic of the palace. The most wealthy of the provincials will be attracted by the powerful motives of interest and duty, of amusement and curiosity. A third and more numerous class of inhabitants will immovably be formed, of servants, of artisans, and of merchants, who derive their subsistence from their own labour, and from the wants or luxury of the superior ranks. In less than a century, Constantinople disputed with Rome itself the pre-eminence of riches and numbers. New pluses of buildings, crowded together with little regard to health or convenience, scarcely allowed the intervals of narrow streets for the perpetual throng of men, of horses, and of carriages. The allotted space of ground was insufficient to contain the increasing people; and the additional foundations, which, on either side, were advanced into the sea, might alone have composed a very considerable city.  

The frequent and regular distributions of wine and oil, of corn or bread, of money or provisions, had almost exempted the poorest citizens of Rome from the necessity of labour. The magnificence of the first Caesars was in some measure imitated by the founder of Constantinople: 86 but his liberality, however it might excite the applause of the people, has incurred the censure of posterity. A nation of legislators and conquerors might assert their claim to the harvests of Africa, which had been purchased with their blood; and it was artfully contrived by Augustus, that, in the enjoyment of plenty, the Romans should lose the memory of freedom. But the prodigality of Constantine could not be excused by any consideration either of public or private interest; and the annual tribute of corn imposed upon Egypt for the benefit of his new capital, was applied to feed a busy and immoderate popula-

lace, at the expense of the husbandsmen of an industrious province. 87 Some other regulations of this emperor are less liable to blame, but they are less deserving of notice. He divided Constantinople into fourteen regions or quarters, 88 dignified the public council with the appellation of senate, and communicated to the citizens the privileges of Italy, 89 and bestowed on the rising city the title of Caesary, the first and most favoured daughter of ancient Rome. The venerable parent still maintained the legal and acknowledged supremacy, which was due to her age, to her dignity, and to the remembrance of her former greatness. 90

As Constantine urged the progress of the work with the impatience of a lover, the walls, the porticoes, and the public edifices, were completed in a few years after, according to another account, in a few months; 91 but this extraordinary diligence should excite the least admiration, since many of the buildings were finished in so hasty and imperfect a manner, that, under the succeeding reigns, they were preserved with difficulty from impending ruin. 92 But while they displayed the vigour and freshness of youth, the former prepared to celebrate the dedication of his city. 93 The games and largesses which crowned the pomps of this memorable festival may easily be supposed; but there is one circumstance of a more singular and permanent nature, which ought not entirely to be overlooked. As often as the birthday of the city returned, the statue of Constantine, framed by his order, of gilt wood, and bearing in his right hand a small image of the genius of the place, was erected on a triumphal car. The guards, carrying white tapers, and clothed in their richest apparel, accompanied the solemn procession as it moved through the Hippodrome. When it was opposite to the throne of the reigning emperor, he rose from his seat, and with grateful reverence adored the memory of his predecessor. 94 At the festival of the dedication, an edict, engraved on a column of marble, bestowed the title of Second or New Rome on

El Cal. Theod. c. viii. 15. The monument of Constancy (Bse. 52 A.D.) was crowned by games, and the Caesar Bse. 53 a.D. The services of Bacchus could not be omitted; after the Emperors of the 3rd and 4th Centuries, games were frequently intermingled with all other ceremonies. But their profuse use during the 4th Century, tends to show the civil state of the Roman empire, after the union of the two empires in the time of Constantine the Great. The last games were celebrated A.D. 325, after the division of the empire. The inscription of the column dedicated to the last Caesary in Rome, was dated A.D. 325, and the dedication took place on the 24th of June. Tertullian tells us that many edicts of the Roman emperors were inscribed on columns dedicated to Bacchus, and other divinities, in the same manner in which we still trace the names of the victors of the Olympic games.

87 The vagaries of the Caesars had brought the cost of the public amusements to an extravagant figure.  

88 The expenditures of Constantine in building at Constantinople were enormous. We find him engaged in the construction of the palaces, the churches, the temples, and the streets. The cost of the whole is estimated at 380,000,000 solidi. The expenses of the public works were borne by the city itself, and not by the provinces. The Caesars of the West made every effort to increase the public revenues. The expense of the work at Constantinople was a source of anxiety to the emperor, and the Senate was consulted in regard to the best mode of raising the requisite funds. The augmentation of the public revenue was a matter of prime importance to a prince who wished to construct a palace at a distance from Rome. The cost of the work was defrayed by the sale of public lands, by the revenue of the province of Thrace, and by the assessment of the inhabitants of the empire. The expense of the public works was estimated at 380,000,000 solidi. The Caesars of the West made every effort to increase the public revenues. The expense of the work at Constantinople was a source of anxiety to the emperor, and the Senate was consulted in regard to the best mode of raising the requisite funds. The augmentation of the public revenue was a matter of prime importance to a prince who wished to construct a palace at a distance from Rome. The cost of the work was defrayed by the sale of public lands, by the revenue of the province of Thrace, and by the assessment of the inhabitants of the empire. The expense of the public works was estimated at 380,000,000 solidi. The Caesars of the West made every effort to increase the public revenues. The expense of the work at Constantinople was a source of anxiety to the emperor, and the Senate was consulted in regard to the best mode of raising the requisite funds. The augmentation of the public revenue was a matter of prime importance to a prince who wished to construct a palace at a distance from Rome. The cost of the work was defrayed by the sale of public lands, by the revenue of the province of Thrace, and by the assessment of the inhabitants of the empire. The expense of the public works was estimated at 380,000,000 solidi.
the city of Constantine. But the name of Constantineople has prevailed over that honourable epithet; and, after the revolution of fourteen centuries, still perpetuates the fame of its author.

The foundation of a new capital was naturally connected with the establishment of a new form of civil and military administration. The distinct view of the complicated system of policy, introduced by Diocletian, improved by Constantine, and completed by his immediate successors, may not only amuse the fancy by the singular picture of a great empire, but will tend to illustrate the secret and internal causes of its rapid decay. In the pursuit of any remarkable institution, we may be frequently led into the mere early or the more recent times of the Roman history; but the proper limits of this inquiry will be included within a period of about one hundred and thirty years, from the accession of Constantine to the publication of the Theodosian code; 21 from which, as well as from the North of the East and West, 26 we derive the most copious and authentic information of the state of the empire. This variety of objects will suspend, for some time, the course of the narrative; but the interruption will be caused only by those readers who are insensible to the importance of laws and manners, while they pursue, with eager curiosity, the transient intrigues of a court, or the accidental event of a battle.

The main pride of the Romans, content with substantial power, had left to the vanity of the East the forms and ceremonies of ostentatious greatness. But when they lost even the semblance of these virtues which were derived from their ancient freedom, the simplicity of Roman manners was invincibly corrupted by the bondage of the courts of Asia. The distinctions of personal merit and influence, so conspicuous in a republic, so fine in a monarchial state under a monarch, were abolished by the complexion of the emperor, who substituted in the place of a system of nominal and real, simple and complex, were divided into three classes: 1. The Divine. 2. The Senatorial, or Resplendent. 3. The Aristocratic, under whom we may translate the word Honorable. In the times of Roman simplicity, the last-mentioned epithet was more and more vague, and when the senate of the legislature, till it became lengthened the peculiar and appropriated title of all who were members of the senate, 27 consequently of all who, from that venerable body, were selected to govern the provinces. The vanity of those who, from their rank and office, might claim a superior distinction above the rest of the senatorial order, was long afterwards indulged with the new appellation of an Episcopate; but the title of Divinity was always reserved to some eminent personages, who were deified or reverenced by the two subordinate classes. The

21 The Theodosian code is extant, and is called the A.D. 425. See the

22 The Theodosian code is extant, and is called the A.D. 425. See the

23 The Roman and Eastern authors (Euse. p. 176) say that Constantine

24 The Roman and Eastern authors (Euse. p. 176) say that Constantine

25 The Roman and Eastern authors (Euse. p. 176) say that Constantine

26 The Roman and Eastern authors (Euse. p. 176) say that Constantine
was communicated only, I. To the consuls and patricians; II. To the praetorian prefects, with the prefects of Rome and Constantinople; III. To the masters general of the cavalry and the infantry; and, IV. To the seven ministers of the palace, who exercised their sacred functions about the person of the emperor. Among them illustrious magistrates who were reappointed co-ordinate with each other, the seniority of appointment gave place to the union of dignities. By the expediency of honorific titles, the emperors, who were fond of multiplying their favours, might sometimes grudgingly the vanity, though not the ambition, of imputing courts.

I. As long as the Roman consuls were the first magistrates of a free state, they derived their right to power from the choice of the people. As long as the emperors condescended to disguise the servitude which they imposed, the consuls were still elected by the people or appointed by the Senate. From the first reign of Augustus, even these vestiges of liberty were destroyed, and the successful candidates were invested with the annual honours of the consulship, affected to display the humiliating condition of their predecessors. The Senate and the Caesars had been reduced to solicit the votes of plebeians, to pass through the toils and expensive forms of a popular election, and to expose their dignity to the shame of a public refusals; while two or three happy facts had reserved them for an age of government in which the rewards of virtue were assigned by the wisdom of a gracious sovereign. In the epistles which the emperors addressed to the two consuls elect, it was declared, that they were created by his sole authority. Their names and portraits, engraved on gilt tablets of ivory, were dispersed over the empire as presents to the provincials, the cities, the magistrates, the senate, and the people. Their solemn inauguration was performed at the place of the Imperial residence; and during a period of one hundred and twenty years, Rome was constantly deprived of the presence of her ancient magistrates. On the morning of the first of January, the senators assumed the insignia of their dignity. Their dress was a robe of purple, embroidered in silk and gold, and sometimes ornamented with costly gems. On this occasion they were attended by the most eminent officers of the state and army, in the habit of senators; and the useless fasces, armed with the once formidable axes, were borne before them by the lictors. The procession moved from the palace to the Forum, or principal square of the city; where the consuls ascended their tribunal, and seated themselves in the entrance chairs, which were framed after the fashion of ancient times. They immediately exercised the act of jurisdiction, by the transmission of a slave, who was brought before them for that purpose; and the curacy was intended to represent the celebrated action of the elder Britus, the author of liberty and of the consuls, when he admitted among his fellow-citizens the faithful Vindex, who had rescued the consulate of the Tarquins. The public festival was continued during several days in all the principal cities; in Rome, from custom, in Constantinople, from imitation; in Carthage, Antioch, and Alexandria, from the love of pleasure and the imperious of wealth. In the two capitals of the empire the annual games of the theatre, the circus, and the amphitheatre, cost four thousand talents of gold; (about) one hundred and fifty thousand pounds sterling, and if so many popular supposed the festivities or the inclination of the magistrates themselves, the sum was supplied from the Imperial treasury. As soon as the consuls had discharged these customary duties, they were at liberty to retire into the shade of private life, and to enjoy, during the remainder of the year, the undisturbed contemplation of their own greatness. They no longer presided in the national councils; they no longer executed the resolutions of peace or war. Their abilities (unless they were employed in more immediate offices) were of little moment; and their names served only as the legal date of the year in which they had filled the chair of Marcus and of Censor. Yet it was still felt and acknowledged, in the last period of Roman servitude, that this empty name might be compared, and even preferred, to the possession of substantial power. The title of consul was still the most splendid object of ambition; the noblest reward of virtue and loyalty. The emperors themselves, who disliked the faint shade of the republic, were conscious that they acquired

229

CHAP. XVII.

OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

an additional splendour and majesty as often as they assumed the annual honours of the consular dignity. 24

The patricians. The proudest and most perfect separation which can be found in any age or country, between the nobles and the people, is perhaps that of the patricians and the plebeians, as it was established in the first age of the Roman republic. Wealth and honour, the offices of the state, and the ceremonies of religion, were almost exclusively possessed by the former; who, preserving the purity of their blood with the most insulting jealousy, held their clients in a condition of species servage. But these distinctions, so incompatible with the spirit of a free people, were removed, after a long struggle, by the persevering efforts of the tribunes. The most active and successful of the plebeians accumulated wealth, aspired to honour, deserved triumphs, contracted alliances, and, after some generations, assumed the pride of ancient nobility. 25 The patrician families, on the other hand, whose original number was never recruited till the end of the commonwealth, either failed in the ordinary course of nature, or were extinguished in so many foreign and domestic wars, or, through a want of merit or fortune, insensibly mingled with the mass of the people. 25 Very few remained who could derive their pure and genuine origin from the infancy of the city, or even from that of the republic, when Caesar and Augustus, Claudius and Vespasian, created from the body of the senate a competent number of new patrician families, in the hope of perpetuating an order, which was still considered as honourable and sacred. 25 But these artificial supplies (to which the reigning house was always included) were rapidly swept away by the rage of tyrants, by frequent revolutions, by the change of masters, and by the intermixture of nations: 25 Little more was left when Constantine ascended the throne, than a vague and imperfect tradition, that the patricians had once been the first of the Romans. To form a body of nobles, whose influence may restrain, while it secures the authority of the monarch, would have been very inconsistent with the character and policy of Constantine; but he was seriously entertained with such a design, it might have exceeded the measure of his power to rallies, by an arbitrary edict, an institution which must expect the sanction of time and of opinion. He revived, indeed, the title of Patricians, but he revived it as a personal, not as an hereditary distinction. They yielded only to the transient superiority of the annual consul; but they enjoyed the privilege of

24 The patricians knew this honor dominium. (Macrob. In Farn. 21. 9.) Today, the word dominium is used to refer to the reign of a monarch, not to the title of a consul. The word dominium means the condition of being lord or master.

25 In the year of which I speak very few survived, the only of the old

26 In the year of which I speak, very few survived, the only of the old

27 The patricians knew this honor dominium. (Macrob. In Farn. 21. 9.) Today, the word dominium is used to refer to the reign of a monarch, not to the title of a consul. The word dominium means the condition of being lord or master.

28 In the year of which I speak, very few survived, the only of the old
authority of the prefect of Illyricum. 3. The power of the prefect of Italy was not confined to the country from whence he derived his title; it extended over the additional territory of Raetia as far as the banks of the Danube, over the dependent islands of the Mediterranean, and over that part of the continent of Africa which lies between the confines of Cyrena and those of Tingitania. 4. The prefect of the Gauls comprehended under that plural designation the kinds provinces of Britain and Spain, and his authority was obeyed from the wall of Antium to the foot of Mount Atlas.

After the prefectures had been dismissed from all military command, the civil functions which they were ordained to exercise over so many subject nations, were adequate to the ambition and abilities of the most consummate ministers. To their wisdom was committed the supreme administration of justice and of finance; they were invested with all the respective duties of the sovereign and of the people; of the former, to protect the citizens who are subject to the laws; of the latter, to contribute the share of their property which is required for the expenses of the state. The roads, the highways, the posts, the garrisons, the manufactures, whatever could interest the public prosperity, was administered by the authority of the prefects. As the immediate representatives of the Imperial majesty, they were empowered to explain, to enforce, and on some occasions to modify, the general edicts by their discretionary proclamations. They watched over the conduct of the provincial governors, removed the negligent and inflicted punishments on the guilty. From all the inferior jurisdictions, an appeal in every matter of importance, either civil or criminal, might be brought before the tribunal of the prefects; but his sentence was final and absolute; and the emperors themselves refused to admit any claim against the judgment or the integrity of a magistrate whom they honoured with such unbounded confidence. His appointments were suitable to his dignity; and if success was his ruling passion, he enjoyed frequent opportunities of collecting a rich harvest of fees, of presents, and of perquisites. Though the emperor no longer desired the ambition of their prefects, they were attentive to counterbalance the power of this great office by the munificence and shorten of its duration.

From their superior importance and dignity, Rome and Constantinople were alone excepted from the jurisdiction of the prefects. The immense city, and the experience of the tardy, ineffectual operation of the laws, had furnished the policy of Augustus with a splendid pretext for introducing a new magistrate, who alone could restrain a servile and turbulent populace by the strong arm of arbitrary power. Valerius Messalla was appointed the first prefect of Rome, that his reputation might commence so inviolable a munus; but, as the end of a few days, that accomplished citizen resigned his office, declaring, with a spirit worthy of the friend of Brutus, that he found himself incapable of exercising a power incompatible with public freedom. As the sense of liberty became less exquisite, the advantages of order were more clearly understood; and the prefect, who seemed to have been designed as a terror only to slaves and vagrants, was permitted to extend his civil and criminal jurisdiction over the equestrian and noble families of Rome. The emperors, who had usually created as the judges of law and equity, could not long dispute the possession of the Forum with a vigorous and permanent amansiate, who was usually admitted into the confidence of the prince. Their courts were deserted, their number, which had once fluctuated between twelve and eighteen, was gradually reduced to two or three, and their important functions were confided to the expensive obligation of exhibiting games for the amusement of the people. After the office of the Roman consulate had been changed into a civil post, which was rarely displayed in the capital, the prefects assumed their vacant place in the senate, and were soon acknowledged as the ordinary president of that venerable assembly. They received appeals from the distance of a hundred miles; and it was allowed as a principle of jurisprudence, that all municipal authority was derived from them alone. In the discharge of his laborious employment, the governor of Rome was assisted by fifteen officers, some of whom had been originally his equals, or even his superiors. The principal departments were relative to the command of a numerous watch, established as a safeguard against fires, robberies, and nocturnal disorders; the custody and distribution of the public allowance of corn and provisions; the care of the port, of the aqueducts, of the common sewers, and of the navigation and bed of the Tiber; the

236 De Carne, L.R. p. 280, 281. If we had the formularies printed by the praetors, we should probably have purchased a new copy of the Collection of the Emperors.

237 De Carne, L.R. p. 280. The praetors in the ancient times had their tribunal on the banks of the Tiber.


239 The praetors held the seat of magnate in the court of the Emperors.

240 The emperors, when they administered justice in the Forum, sat under the presidency of the praetores. Jur. Rom. p. 342. Of the power of the praetors, see the acts of Digest, 22. in the name of Anastasius, &c. Dig. 22. in the name of Justinian, &c.
inspection of the markets, the theatres, and of the private as well as public works. Their vigilance ensured the three principal objects of a regular police, safety, plenty, and cleanliness; and as a proof of the attention of government to preserve the splendid ornaments of the capital, a particular inspector was appointed for the statues; the guardian, as it were, of that inanimate people, which, according to the extravagant computation of an old writer, was scarcely inferior in number to the living inhabitants of Rome. About thirty years after the foundation of Constantineople, a similar magistrate was created in that rising metropolis, for the same uses and with the same powers. A perfect equality was established between the dignity of the two municipal, and that of the four praetorian prefects. 110

Those who, in the Imperial hierarchy, were distinguished by the title of Regens, formed an intermediate class between the illustrious prefects, and the honorable magistrates of the provinces. In this class the proconsuls of Asia, Achaea, and Africa, claimed a pre-emience, which was yielded to the remembrance of their ancient dignity; and the appeal from their tribunal to that of the prefects was almost the only mark of their dependence. 112 But the civil government of the empire was distributed into thirteen great sections, each of which equaled the just measure of a powerful kingdom. The first of these divisions was subject to the jurisdiction of the curve of the East; and we may convey some idea of the importance and variety of his functions, by observing, that six hundred apparitors, who would be styled at present either secretaries, or clerores, or ushers, or messengers, were employed in his immediate office. 113 The place of Augustal prefect of Egypt was no longer filled by a Roman knight; but the name was retained; and the extraordinary powers which the situation of the country, and the temper of the inhabitants, had once made indispensable, were still continued to the governor. The eleven remaining dioceses, of Asia, Pontus, and Thrace; of Macedon, Dacia, and Pannonia; and western Illyricum; of Italy and Africa; of Gaul, Spain, and Britain; were governed by twelve vicars, or vice-prefects, 114 whose name sufficiently explains the nature and dependence of their office. It may be added, that the lieutenant-generals of the Roman armies, the military courts and judges, who will be hereafter mentioned, were allowed the rank and title of Regens.

As the spirit of jealousy and suspicion prevailed in the councils of the emperors, they proceeded with anxious diligence to divide the substance and to multiply the titles of power. The vast countries which the Roman conquerors had united under the same simple form of administration, were imperceptibly crumbled into minute fragments; till at length the whole empire was distributed into one hundred and sixteen provinces, each of which supported an expensive and splendid establishment. Of these, three were governed by praefecta, thirty-seven by equites, five by finance officers, and seventy-one by vice-prefects. The apppellations of these magistrates were different; they ranked in successive order, the signs of their dignity were curiously varied, and their situation, from accidental circumstances, might be more or less agreeable or advantageous. But they were all (excepting only the praefectus) alike included in the class of honorabile personae; and they were alike intrusted, during the pleasure of the prince, and under the authority of the prefects or their deputies, with the administration of justice and the finances in their respective districts. The ponderous volumes of the Civil and Pandects 115 would furnish ample materials for a minute inquiry into the state of provincial government, as in the space of six centuries it was improved by the wisdom of the Roman statesmen and historians. It may be sufficient for the historian to select two singular and salutary provisions, intended to restrain the abuse of authority. 1 For the preservation of peace and order, the governors of the provinces were charged with the sword of justice. They inflicted corporal punishments, and they exercised, in capital offences, the power of life and death. But they were not authorized to indulge the condemned criminal, with the choice of his own execution, or to pronounce a sentence of the mildest and most humane kind of exile. These prerogatives were reserved to the prefects, who almost could impose the heavy fine of fifty pounds of gold; their viceregents were confined to the trifling weight of a few ounces. 116 This distinction, which seems to grant the larger, while it denies the smaller degree of authority, is founded on a very rational motive. The smaller degree was infinitely more liable to abuse. The passions of a provincial magistrate might frequently provoke him into acts of oppression, which affected only the freedom or the fortunes of the subject; though, from a principle of prudence, perhaps of humanity, he might still be terrified by the guilt of innocent blood. It may likewise be considered, this exile, considerable fines, or the choice of an easy death, relate more particularly to the rich and the noble; and the persons the most exposed to the abuse or resentment of a provincial magistrate, were thus removed from his obscure presence to the more august and impartial tribunal of the praetorian prefect.

110 In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome.

112 In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome. In Italy there was likewise the Prince of Rome.
As it was reasonably apprehended that the integrity of the judge might be endangered, if his interest was concerned, or his affections were engaged; the strictest regulations were established, to exclude any person, without the special dispensation of the emperor, from the government of the province where he was born; and to prohibit the governor or his son from contracting marriage with a native, or an inhabitant; or from purchasing slaves, lands, or houses, within the extent of his jurisdiction. Notwithstanding these rigorous precautions, the emperor Constantine, after a reign of twenty-five years, still deplores the sensual and oppression custom of justice, and expresses the earnest indignation that the audience of the judge, his dispatch of business, his amenable delays, and his final sentence, were publicly sold, either by himself or by the officers of his court. The continuance, and perhaps the impunity, of these crimes, is attested by the repetition of impotent laws, and inefficient sentences.

The law of Justinian.

All the civil magistrates, were shown from the prosecution of the law. The celebrated Institutes of Justinian are addresséd to the youth of his dominions, who had devoted themselves to the study of Roman jurisprudence, and the sovereign condescends to assist their diligence, by the assurance that their skill and ability would in time be rewarded by an adequate share in the government of the republic. The rudiments of this lucrative science were taught in all the considerable cities of the East and West; but the most famous school was that of Ierynius, on the coast of Phrygia, which flourished above three centuries from the time of Alexander Severus, the author, perhaps, of an institution so advantageous to his native country. After a regular course of education, which lasted five years, the students dispersed themselves through the provinces, in search of fortune and honours; nor could they want an inexhaustible supply of business; in a great empire, already corrupted by the multiplicity of laws, of arts, and of offices. The court of the praetorian prefect of the East could alone furnish employment for one hundred and fifty advocates, sixty-four of whom were distinguished by peculiar privileges, and two were annually chosen with a salary of sixty pounds of gold, to defend the causes of the treasury. The first experiment was made of their judicial talents, by appointing them to act occasionally as assessors to the magistrates; from thence they were often raised to preside in the tribunals before which they had pleaded. They obtained the government of a province; and, by the aid of merit, of reputation, or of favour, they ascended, by successive steps, to the illustrious dignities of the state.

In the practice of the law, these men had considered reason as the instrument of dispute; they interpreted the laws according to the dictates of private interest; and the same prevaricators, haunts might still adhere to their characters in the public administration of the state. The honour of a liberal profession has indeed been vindicated by ancient and modern advocates, who have filled the most important stations, with pure integrity, and consummate wisdom; but in the decline of Roman jurisprudence, the ordinary promotion of lawyers was with mischief and disgrace. The noble art, which had once been preserved as the sacred inheritance of the people, was fallen into the hands of froward and depraved men, who, with running rather than with skill, exhibited a servile and pernicious trade. Some of them proceeded into families to furnish for the purpose of law-suits, a boy, and of prosecuting a hornet of gain for themselves or their brethren. Others, recluse in their chambers, maintained the dignity of legal professors, by furnishing a rich client with subtitles to confound the plaintiff's truth, and with arguments to colour the most unjustifiable pretensions. The splendid and popular class was composed of the advocates, who filled the Forum with the sound of their tongues and eloquent rhetoric. Careless of fame and of justice, they are described, for the most part, as ignorant and rapacious guides, who conducted their clients through a mass of expense, of delay, and of disappointment; from whence, after a tedious series of years, they were at length dismissed, when their patience and fortune were almost exhausted.

In the system of policy introduced by Augustus, the government, those at least of the Imperial provinces, were invested with the full powers of the overlord.
THE DECLINE AND FALL

Chapter XVII

Constantine. A gold belt was the ensign which distinguished the office of the counts and dukes; and besides their pay, they received a liberal allowance sufficient to maintain one hundred and ninety servants, and one hundred and fifty-eight horses. They were strictly prohibited from interfering in any matter which related to the administration of justice or the revenue; but the command which they exercised over the troops of their department, was independent of the authority of the magistrates. About the same time that Constantine gave a legal sanction to the ecclesiastical order, he instituted in the Roman empire the nice balance of the civil and the military powers. The emulation, and sometimes the discord, which reigned between two professions of opposite interests and incompatible manners, was productive of blemished and of pernicious consequences. It was seldom to be expected that the general and the civil governor of a province should either conspire for the disturbance, or should unite for the service, of their country. While the one delayed to offer the assistance which the other demanded, without orders or without supplies, the public safety was betrayed, and the incessant subjects were left exposed to the fury of the barbarians. The divided administration, which had been formed by Constantine, relaxed the vigour of the state, while it secured the tranquillity of the monarch.

The memory of Constantine has been deservedly censured for another innovation which corrupted military discipline, and prepared the ruin of the empire. The latter part of the fourth century was distinguished by the badness of the soldiers, and by the immorality of the army. The disasters which beset the Roman empire were occasioned by the weakness of the soldiery, and not by the excellency of the generals. The soldiers, although they were well paid, were careless of their duty, and were only deterred from deserting during the times of peace by fear of the severity of their officers; and during the times of war they were insubordinate and treacherous. They were licentious, dissolute, and unprofitable to the state.

The evils of the Roman army were occasioned by the idleness of the soldiers, and by the corruption of their discipline. The Roman soldiery was the most powerful and the most formidable army in the world. The most flourishing cities were oppressed by the insupportable weight of quarters. The soldiers insensibly

135 See a very judicious notice in the Life of Augustus, written by the emperor's freedman, Dio Cassius, l. vii. 30. 31.
136 This enumeration of the imperial provinces, however, is not very correct. The names of the provinces are those used by Ptolemy the geographer, who lived in the second century after Christ. The Roman armies had, however, long before this time been divided into twelve military districts, which were afterwards increased to fifteen.
137 Suetonius, l. xvii. 58. Before the war of the Goths and Romans, the great uniformity of the Roman soldiery was already destroyed in some respects. See Edward Gibbon, History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire, ch. xvi. 38.
forgot the virtues of their profession, and con-
tacted only the vices of civil life. They were
either degraded by the industry of mechanic
trade, or envolt by the laxity of baths and
theatres. They soon became careless of their
martial exercises, curious in their diet and
apparel; and while they inspired terror to the
subjects of the empire, they trembled at the
benevolent approach of the barbarians. The
chain of fortifications which Diocletian and his
colleagues had extended along the banks of the
great rivers, was no longer maintained with the
same care, or defended with the same vigilance.
The numbers which still remained under the
name of the troops of the frontier, might be suf-
ficient for the ordinary defence. But their spirit
was depressed by the humiliating reflection, that
they who were exposed to the hardships and
dangers of a perpetual warfare, were rewarded
only with about two thirds of the pay and encom-
ments which were lavished on the troops of the
court. Even the bands of legions that were
raised the nearest to the level of those unworthy
favourites, were in some measure disgraced by
the title of honour which they were allowed to
assume. It was in vain that Constantine repeated
the advice of the timely remonstrance of his
general, against the Barbarians, to desert their
country, to contest at the issue of the
barbarians, or to participate in the spoil. The
Military which flew from unjustifiable counsels
were seldom removed by the application of
partial severity; and though succeeding princes
attempted to restore the strength and numbers
of the frontier garrisons, the empire, till the last
moment of its dissolution, continued to languish
under the mortal wound which had been so
rashly or so weakly inflicted by the hand of
Constantine.

The same timid policy, of di-
ciding whatever is wanted, of reducing every
active power, and of expecting that the most
futile will prove the most obedient, seems to
prevail the institutions of several princes, and
particularly those of Constantine. The martial
pride of the legions, whose victorious camps
looked to often back the scene of rebellion, was
annihilated by the memory of their past exploits,
and the effacement of their actual strength.
As long as they maintained their ancient
establishment of six thousand men, they subsisted,
under the reign of Diocletian, each of them
sluggily, a faithful and important object in the
military history of the Roman empire. A few
years afterwards, these gigantic bodies were
shrunken to a very diminutive size; and when
seven legions, with some auxiliaries, defended
the city of Amida, against the Persians, the
total garrisons, with the inhabitants of both
seas,

and the peasants of the desert country, did not exceed the number of twenty thousand per-
son. From this fact, and from similar ex-
amples, there is reason to believe, that the cons-
stitution of the legions remained, purely owed their valour and discipline, dissolved by Constantine; and that the bands of
Roman infantry, which still assumed the
same names and the same honours, consisted
only of one thousand or fifteen hundred men.

The conscription of so many separate detach-
ments, each of which was served by the sense of
its own weakness, could easily be checked; and
the success of the Constables might indulge
their love of ostentation, by issuing their orders
to one hundred and thirty-two legions, inscribed
on the master-roll of their numerous armies.
The remainder of their troops was distributed
into several hundred cohorts of infantry, and
squadrons of cavalry. Their arms, and titles,
and enrols, were calculated to inspire terror,
and to display the variety of nations who marched
under the Imperial standard. And not a vet-
tage was left of that severe simplicity, which, in
the ages of freedom and victory, had distin-
guished the hosts of battle of a Roman army
born and educated under the elevation of its
military virtue.

A more particular enumeration, drawn from the
historians, might exercise the diligence of an
antiquary; but the historian will content himself
with observing, that the number of permanent
stations or garrisons established on the frontiers
of the empire, amounted to five hundred and
eighty-three; and that, under the successors of
Constantine, the complete force of the military
establishment was computed at six hundred and
forty-five thousand soldiers. An effort so
prolific surpassed the wants of a more ar-
cient, and the faculties of a later, period.

In the various states of society, numbers of
armies are recruited from very dif-
frent motives. Barbarians are served by the
love of war; the citizens of a free republic may
be prompted by a principle of duty; the sub-
jects, or at least the nobles of a monarchy, are
animated by a sentiment of honour; but the
timid and luxurious inhabitants of a declining
empire must be allured into the service by the
hopes of profit, or compelled by the dread of
punishment. The resources of the Roman
triumvire were exhausted by the increase of pay,
by the repetition of donations, and by the in-
vention of new emoluments and inducements,
which, in the opinion of the provincial youth,
might compensate the hardships and dangers of
military life. Yet, although the nature was lowered, although slaves, at least by a strict
computation, were indiscriminately received into
the ranks, the insurmountable difficulty of pro-
curing a regular and adequate supply of solti-

133 Fox (to be) seen in effect, however not to be seen in effect. Antelv, 2. 2. 1. 2. He has shown that this same power could not be.
152 Thacker, 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. This is the word of the Hawaiian, who in this sentence makes a mistake about the situation and policy of
151 See also 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. He has shown to be quite that the emperor's policy towards the barbarians was.
150 See also 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. He has shown to be quite that the emperor's policy towards the barbarians was.
152 See also 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. He has shown to be quite that the emperor's policy towards the barbarians was.
153 See also 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. He has shown to be quite that the emperor's policy towards the barbarians was.
154 See also 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. 2. He has shown to be quite that the emperor's policy towards the barbarians was.
ties of allegiance to those of blood, they did not always avoid the guilt, or at least the suspicion, of holding a treasonable correspondence with the enemy, of inviting his invasion, or of sparing his retreat. The camps, and the palace of the son of Constantine, were governed by the powerful faction of the Franks, who preserved the strictest connection with each other, and with their country, and who resented every personal affront as a national indignity. 149 When the tyrant Caligula was suspected of an intention to invest a very extraordinary candidate with the cœnal obes, the sacrilegious profession would have scarcely excited less astonishment. If, instead of a horse, the noblest chieftain of Germany or Britain had been the object of his choice. The revolution of three centuries had produced so remarkable a change in the prejudices of the people, that, with the public approbation, Constantine showed his successors the example of bestowing the honours of the consulship on the barbarians, who, by their merit and services, had deserved to be ranked among the first of the Romans. 144 But as these hardy veterans, who had been educated in the ignorance or contempt of the laws, were incapable of exercising any civil offices, the powers of the human mind were confined by the irreconcilable separation of talents as well as of professions. The accomplished citizens of the Greek and Roman republics, whose characters could adapt themselves to the bar, the senate, the camp, or the schools, had learned to write, to speak, and to act with the same spirit, and with equal abilities.

IV. Besides the magistrates and generals, who at a distance from the court diffused their delegated authority over the provinces and armies, the emperor conferred the rank of Ilustris on seven of his more immediate servants, to whose fidelity he intrusted his safety, or his counsels, or his treasures. 1 The private apartments of the palace were governed by a favourite eunuch, who, in the language of that age, was styled the preceptor or the prefect of the sacred chamber. His duty was to attend the emperor in the hours of state, or at those of amusement, and to perform about his person all those ministerial services, which can only derive their splendour from the influence of royalty. Under a prince who deserved to reign, the great chamberlain (for such we may call him) was an useful and humble domestic; but an artful domestic, whose press the every occasion of ingratiating complaisance, will insensibly acquire over a fallible mind that ascendancy, which harsh wisdom and incomplying virtue can seldom obtain. The degenerate grand-

sons of Theodosius, who were invisible to their subjects, and contemptible to their enemies, exalted the prefects of their bodyguard; above the heads of all the ministers of the palace; and even, his deputy, the first of the splendid train of slaves who waited in the presence, was thought worthy to rank before the respectable procults of Greece or Asia. The jurisdiction of the chamberlain was acknowledged by the courts, or superintendents, who regulated the two most important provinces, of the magnificence of the wardrobe, and of the luxury of the imperial table. 141 2. The principal officers. The administration of public affairs was committed to the diligence and abilities of the master of the offices. 142 He was the supreme magistrate of the palace, inspected the discipline of the civil and military schools, and received appeals from all parts of the empire, in the causes which related to that numerous army of privileged persons, who, as the servants of the court, had obtained, for themselves and families, a right to decline the authority of the ordinary judges. The correspondence between the prince and his subjects was managed by the four aerolas, or officers of the minister of state. The first was appropriated to memorials, the second to epistles, the third to petitions, and the fourth to papers and orders of a miscellaneous kind. Each of these was directed by an inferior master of respectable dignity, and the whole business was dispatched by a hundred and forty-eight secretaries, who were chosen for the most part from the profession of the law, on account of the variety of abstract regulations and references which frequently occurred in the exercise of their several functions. From a condescending, which in former ages would have been esteemed unworthy of the Roman majesty, a particular secretary was allowed for the Greek language; and interpreters were appointed to receive the ambassadors of the barbarians: but the department of foreign affairs, which constitutes so essential a part of modern policy, seldom directed the attention of the master of the offices. His mind was more seriously engaged by the general direction of the posts and arsenals of the empire. There were thirty-four cities, fifteen in the east, and nineteen in the west, in which regular companies of workmen were perpetually employed in fabricating defensive armour, offensive weaps of all sorts, and military engines, which were deposited in the arsenals, and occasionally delivered for the service of the troops. 3. In the course of nine centuries, the office of quasars had experienced a very singular revolution. In the infancy of Rome, two inferior magistrates were annually elected by the people, to relieve the consuls from the invidious management of the public treasure; 143 a similar assistant was granted to every presiding, and to every presiding, who exercised a military or provincial command; with the extent of conquest, the two quasars were gradually multiplied to the number of four, of eight, of twenty, and, for a short time, perhaps, of forty; 144 and the noblest citizens ambitiously solicited an office which gave them a seat in the senate, and a just hope of obtaining the honours of the republic. Whilst Augustus affected to maintain the freedom of election, he consented to accept the annual privilege of recommending, or rather indeed of nominating, a certain proportion of candidates; and it was his custom to select one of these distinguished youths, to train his orations or epistles in the assemblies of the senate. 145 The practice of Augustus was imitated by succeeding princes; the occasional commission was established as a permanent office; and the favoured quasars, assuming a new and more illustrious character, alone survived the suppression of his ancient and useless collegium. 146 As the orations, which he composed in the name of the emperor, 147 acquired the force, and, at length, the form of absolute edicts, he was considered as the representative of the legislative power, the uncle of the council, and the original source of the civil jurisprudence. He was sometimes invited to take his seat in the supreme judgment of the Imperial consistory, with the praetorian prefects, and the master of the offices; and he was frequently requested to resolve the doubts of inferior judges: but as he was not supplied with a variety of subordinate business, his leisure and talents were employed to cultivate that dignified style of eloquence, which, in the corruption of the old language, still preserved the majesty of the Roman laws. 148 In some respects, the office of the Imperial quasars may be compared with that of a modern chancellor; but the use of a great seal, which seems to have been adopted by the

141 See Pliny, i. 126
142 See Tacitus, ii. 64, where the master of the offices is styled the master of the Senate, because he is the master of the quasars of the Senate. He is styled the master of the Offices in Pliny, ii. 101, and in the Epist. xvi. 20. See also a master of the offices in one of the letters of the Emperor Constantine, to Eusebius, in the Vita Constantini, p. 348. But no mention is made of the office of the master of the offices, in the work of Aurelius Victor, or in any other ancient writer. But the notice of this office is not omitted in the Hist. Rom. i. 93, and in the Carth. iii. 10, and in the Lib. Ant. v. 6, and in the Lib. Ant. vii. 2. \n\n143 See Tacitus, ii. 66, where the quasars are styled the tax-collectors of the state, because they are the collectors of the public revenue. See Theodosius, De Cons. ii. 18, and the Historia Augusta, p. 324, where the quasars are called the tax-collectors of the state. According to this passage, the quasars were the collectors of the public revenue, and not the masters of the offices. See also Strabo, xi. 20, and in the Hist. Comm. v. 6.

144 See Aurelius Victor, Hist. Rom. i. 93, where the quasars are styled the tax-collectors of the state, because they are the collectors of the public revenue. See Theodosius, De Cons. ii. 18, and the Historia Augusta, p. 324, where the quasars are called the tax-collectors of the state. According to this passage, the quasars were the collectors of the public revenue, and not the masters of the offices. See also Strabo, xi. 20, and in the Hist. Comm. v. 6.
illiterate barbarians, was never introduced to the public acts of the emperors. The extraordinary title of count of the Sacred Jurisdiction was bestowed on the treasurer-general of the revenue, with the intention perhaps of incalculating, that every payment flowed from the voluntary bounty of the monarch. To conceive the almost infinite detail of the annual and daily expense of the civil and military administration in every part of a great empire, would exceed the powers of the most vigorous imagination. The actual account employed several hundred persons, distributed into eleven different offices, which were usefully contrived to examine and control their respective operations. The multitude of these agents had a natural tendency to increase; and it was more than once thought expedient to change their native homes the useless superintendents, who, deserting their honest labours, had pressed with too much eagerness into the lucrative profession of the finances.\(^{111}\) Twenty-nine provincial receivers, of whom eighteen were nominated with the title of count, corresponded with the treasurers; and he extended his jurisdiction over the mines from whence the precious metals were extracted, over the mines, in which they were converted into the current coin, and over the public treasuries of the most important cities, where they were deposited for the service of the state.\(^{112}\) The foreign trade of the empire was regulated by this minister, who directed likewise all the linen and woolen manufactures, in which the successive operations of spinning, weaving, and dyeing, were executed, chiefly by women of a servile condition, for the use of the palace and army. Twenty-six of these institutions are enumerated in the West, where the arts had been more recently introduced, and a still larger proportion may be allowed for the innumerable provinces of the East.\(^{113}\)

Besides the public revenue, which an absolute monarch might levy and expend according to his pleasure, the emperors, in the capacity of opulent citizens, possessed a very extensive property, which was administered by the count, or treasurer of the private estate. Some part had perhaps been the ancient demesne of kings and republics; some ascensions might be derived from the families which were successively invested with the purple; but the most considerable portion flowed from the impure source of confiscations and forfeitures.\(^{114}\) The Imperial estates were scattered through the provinces, from Manritania to Britain; but the rich and fertile soil of Cappadocia tempted the monarch to acquire in that country his fairest possessions,\(^{115}\) and either Constantine or his successors embraced the occasion of justifying suavice by religious zeal. They suppressed the rich temple of Conman, where the high-priest of the goddess of war supported the dignity of a sovereign prince; and they applied to their private use the consecrated lands which were inhabited by six thousand subjects or slaves of the deity and her ministers.\(^{116}\) But those were not the valuable inhabitants: the plains that stretch from the foot of Mount Ararat to the banks of the Euphrates, bred a generous race of horses, renowned above all others in the ancient world for their majestic shapes and incomparable swiftness. These sacred animals, destined for the service of the palace and the Imperial games, were protected by the laws from the profanation of a vulgar master.\(^{117}\) The dominions of Cappadocia were important enough to require the inspection of a count;\(^{118}\) officers of an inferior rank were stationed in the other parts of the empire; and the deputies of the private, as well as those of the public, treasurers, were maintained in the exercise of their independent functions, and encouraged to control the authority of the provincial magistrates.\(^{119}\)

The choice bands of cavalry and infantry, which guarded the person of the emperor, were under the immediate command of the two counts of the dometics. The whole number consisted of three thousand five hundred men, divided into seven squadrons, or troops, of five hundred each; and in the East, this honourable service was almost entirely appropriated to the Armenians. Wherever, at public ceremonies, they were drawn up in the courts and peristyles of the palace, their lofty stature, silent order, and splendid arms of silver and gold, displayed a martial pomp, not unworthy of the Roman majesty.\(^{120}\) From the seven schools two companies of horse and foot were selected, of the praetores; whose advantageous station was the hope and reward of the most deserving soldiers. They mounted guard in the interior apartments, and were occasionally dispatched into the provinces, to execute with celerity and vigour the orders of their master.\(^{121}\) The counts of the domestics had succeeded to the office of the praetorian prefects; like the prefects, they aspired from the service of the palace to the command of armies.

The perpetual intercourse between the court and the provinces was facilitated by the construction of roads and the institution of posts. But these beneficial establishments were accidentally connected with a pernicious and intolerable abuse. Two or three hundred agents or messengers were employed, under the jurisdiction of the master of the offices, to announce the names of the annual census, and the elects or victors of the emperors. They incessantly assumed the functions of

---

\(^{111}\) Cod. Theod., l. vi. 10. 20. Cod. Justinian. 1. 106. 18. 
\(^{112}\) In the departments of the two books of this chapter, the causes of raising taxes are in some respects parallel; in others they are mixed. It may be observed, however, that certain choreumena are expressly mentioned in Justinian's Code, which was not intended solely for a royal or imperial form of government. 
\(^{113}\) Ibid. l. vi. 10. 20. 
\(^{114}\) The civil government of the Roman empire, in the days of Justinian, is described by Procopium. 
\(^{115}\) Cod. Theod., l. vi. 10. 20. 
\(^{116}\) The civil government of the Roman empire, in the days of Justinian, is described by Procopium. 
\(^{117}\) Cod. Theod., l. vi. 10. 20. 
\(^{118}\) The civil government of the Roman empire, in the days of Justinian, is described by Procopium. 
\(^{119}\) Cod. Theod., l. vi. 10. 20. 
\(^{120}\) The civil government of the Roman empire, in the days of Justinian, is described by Procopium. 
\(^{121}\) The civil government of the Roman empire, in the days of Justinian, is described by Procopium.
reporting whatever they could observe of the conduct either of magistrates or of private citizens; and were soon considered as the eyes of the monarch, and the scourge of the people. Under the warm influence of a foible reign, they multiplied to the incredible number of ten thousand, disseminated the mild though frequent admonitions of the laws, and exercised in the profitable management of the posts a laudable and implicit authority. These official spies, who regularly corresponded with the palace, were encouraged, by favour and reward, anxiously to watch the progress of every transmissible danger, from the faint and latent symptoms of disaffection, to the actual preparation of an open revolt. Their surmise or criminal violation of truth and justice was covered by the consecrated mask of zeal; and they might securely aim their poisoned arrows at the breast either of the guilty or the innocent, who had provoked their resentment, or refused to purchase their silence. A faithful subject, of Syria perhaps, or of Britain, was exposed to the dagger, or at least to the dread of being dragged in chains to the court of Milan or Constantinople, to defend his life and fortune against the malicious charge of those privileged informers. The ordinary administration was conducted by those methods which extreme cruelty can alone palliate; and the defects of evidence were diligently supplied by the use of torture.

The deceitful and dangerous experiment of the criminal question, as it is emphatically styled, was admitted, rather than approved, in the jurisprudence of the Romans. They applied this sanguinary mode of examination only to servile bodies, whose sufferings were seldom weighed by those haughty Republicans in the scale of justice or humanity; but they would never consent to violate the sacred person of a citizen, till they possessed the clearest evidence of his guilt. The annals of tyranny, from the reign of Tiberius to that of Domitian, circumstantially relate the executions of many innocent victims; but as long as the fairest remembrance was kept alive of the national freedom and honour, the last hours of a Roman were secure from the danger of ignominious torture. The conduct of the provincial magistrates was not, however, regulated by the practice of the city, or the strict maxims of the civilians. They found the use of torture sufficient not only among the slaves of oriental despots, but among the Macedonians, who obeyed a limited monarch; among the Hidites, who flourished by the liberty of commerce; and even among the sage Athenians, who had accepted and adorned the dignity of human kind. The acquiescence of the provincials encouraged their governors to acquire, or perhaps to usurp, a discretionary power of employing the rack, to extort from vagrants or plebeian criminals the confession of their guilt, till they insensibly proceeded to confound the distinction of rank, and to disregard the privileges of Roman citizens. The apprehensions of the subjects urged them to solicit, and the interest of the sovereign engaged him to grant, a variety of special exemptions, which tacitly allowed, and even authorised, the general use of torture. They protected all persons of illustrious or honourable rank, bishops and their prelates, professors of the liberal arts, soldiers and their families, ambassadors, and their posterity to the third generation, and all children under the age of puberty. But a total maxim was introduced into the new jurisprudence of the empire; in the case of treason, which included every offence that the subtility of lawyers could derive from an insidious intention towards the prince or republic, all privileges were suspended, and all conditions were reduced to the same ignominious level. As the safety of the emperor was averredly preferred to every consideration of justice or humanity, the dignity of age, and the tenderness of youth, were alike exposed to the most cruel tortures; and the horror of a malicious information, which might select them as the accomplices, or even as the witnesses, perhaps, of an imaginary crime, perpetually hung over the heads of the principal citizens of the Roman world.

These evils, however terrible they may appear, were confined to the smaller number of Roman subjects, whose dangerous situation was in some degree compensated by the enjoyment of those advantages, either of nature or of fortune, which exposed them to the jealousy of the monarch. The obscure millions of a great empire have much less to dread from the cruelty than from the avarice of their masters; and their humble happiness is principally affected by the grievance of excessive taxes, which greatly press on the wealthy, descend with accelerated weight on the meaner and more indigent classes of society. An ingenious philosopher has calculated the universal measure of the public impositions by the degrees of freedom and serenity, and ventures to assert, that, according to an invariable law of nature, it must always increase with the former, and diminish in a just proportion to the latter. But this reflection, which would tend to alleviate the sorrows of despotsism, is contradicted at least by the history of the Roman empire, which accuses the same prince of despoothing the senate of its authority, and the provinces of their wealth.
abolishing all the various customs and duties on merchandise, which are imperceptibly charged by the apparent choice of the purchaser, the policy of Constantine and his successors preferred a simple and direct mode of taxation, some congenial to the spirit of an arbitrary government. 158

The name and use of the indictions, 159 which serve to ascertain the chronology of the middle ages, were derived from the regular practice of the Roman tributes. 160 The emperor subscribed with his own hand, and in purple ink, the solemn edict, or indiction, which was fixed up in the principal city of each diocese, during two months previous to the first day of September. And, by a very easy connection of ideas, the word indiction was transferred to the measure of tributes which it prescribed, and to the annual term which it allowed for the payment. This general estimate of the supplies was proportioned to the real and imaginary wants of the state; but as often as the expense exceeded the revenue, or the revenue fell short of the computation, an additional tax, under the name of superindiction, was imposed on the people; and the most valuable attribute of sovereignty was communicated to the praetorian prefects, who, on some occasions, were permitted to provide for the unforeseen and extraordinary exigencies of the public service. The execution of these laws (which it would be tedious to pursue in their minute and intricate detail) consisted of two distinct operations; the resolving the general imposition into its constituent parts, which were assessed on the provinces, the cities, and the individuals of the Roman world; and the collecting the separate contributions of the individuals, the cities, and the provinces, till the accumulated sums were poured into the Imperial treasuries. But as the account between the monarch and the subject was perpetually open, and as the renewal of the demand anticipated the perfect discharge of the preceding obligation, the weighty machine of the finances was moved by the same hands round the circle of its yearly revolution. Whatever was honourable or important in the administration of the revenue, was committed to the wisdom of the prefects and their provincial representatives; the lucrative functions were claimed by a crowd of subordinate officers, some of whom depended on the treasurer, others on the governor of the province; and who, in the inevitable conflicts of a perplexed jurisdiction, had frequent opportunities of disputing with each other the spoils of the people. The laborious offices, which could be productive only of envy and resentment, of expense and danger, were imposed on the Decuriones, who formed the corporations of the cities, and whom the severity of the Imperial laws had condemned to sustain the burdens of civil society. 161 The whole landed property of the empire (without excepting the matrimonial estates of the monarch) was the object of ordinary taxation; and every new purchaser contracted the obligations of the former proprietor. An accurate census, 162 the survey, was the only equitable mode of ascertaining the proportion which every citizen should be obliged to contribute for the public service; and from the well-known period of the indictions, there is reason to believe that this difficult and expensive operation was repeated at the regular distance of fifteen years. The lands were measured by surveyors, who were sent into the provinces; their nature, whether arable or pasture, or vineyard or woods, was distinctly reported; and an estimate was made of their common value from the average produce of five years. The number of slaves and of cattle constituted an essential part of the report; an oath was administered to the proprietors, which bound them to disclose the true state of their affairs; and their attempts to practise, or elude the intention of the legislator, were severely watched, and punished as a capital crime, which included the double guilt of treason and sacrilege. 163 A large portion of the tribute was paid in money; and of the current coin of the empire, gold alone could be legally accepted. 164 The remainder of the taxes, according to the proportions determined by the annual indiction, was furnished in a manner still more direct, and still more oppressive. According to the different nature of lands, their real produce in the various articles of wine or oil, corn or barley, wood or iron, was transported by the labour, or at the expense, of the provincials, to the Imperial magazines, from whence they were occasionally distributed, for the use of the court, of the army, and of the two capitals, Rome and Constantinople. The commissioners of the revenue were so frequently obliged to make considerable purchases, that they were strictly prohibited from allowing any compensation, or from receiving in money the value of those supplies which were exacted in kind. In the primitive simplicity of small communities, this method may be well adapted to collect the almost voluntary offerings of the people; but it is at once susceptible of the utmost latitude, and of the most arbitrary discretion, which in a corrupt and absolute monarchy must introduce a perpetual contest between the power of oppression and the arts of fraud. 165 The agriculture of the Roman

---

158 Ms. Heine (Essays, vol. i. p. 289) has seen this important part of the legislative history, which I have not been able to trace in any of the Latin historians.

159 The word indiction, which may be considered as high as the Anglo-Saxon imagination could raise, was borrowed from the Pagan Custom: and it was not until the improvement of the art was made by the Baron of Chastellux, in America, that even the term was known. See Cato, De Finibus, De Re Rustica, De Agri cultura, De Republica, De Legibus, De Belc et Bellis, et De Aegris et Medicina, De Bellum Lib. 5. Cap. 20, and Onomasticon, which discusses the word under this situation.

160 The first eighty-eight lines of the eleventh book of the Thucydides (in the best editions, I. x. 88) have been transferred to the second of Augustus, and are written in the word indiction. It is to be observed, however, that in the fourth century of the common era, the indiction was in use as early as the time of Constantine.

161 The title-comparing the Decline and Fall, I. x. 170, is in the spirit of the preceding provision of that model order of civics. Among the various modes of fixing the limits of the territory, and the punishment of those who so much as venture beyond it, is a species of measure, known as a gage protection. According to Polybius, Vol. V. 3, these gages were set up by the Romans in the territory of a foreign people. 162 A term which, in the British sense, signifies a measure for the purpose of ascertaining the number of men, arrays, and the like, in the service of a country. 163 The term the tax-charters of the edicts, in the Norman, xxvii. 12.

164 Although this coin is not inferior to silver, it is not refined enough to purchase the commodities of the kingdom, unless the price is set at a corresponding value.

165 The result of this method would be emolument. Equally destructive to the commerce of nations as to the revenue of the state.
provinces was in reality raised, and, in the progress of despotism, which tends to disappoint its own purpose, the emperors were obliged to derive some merit from the forgiveness of debts, or the remission of tributes, which their subjects were utterly incapable of paying. According to the new division of Italy, the fertile and happy province of Campania, the scene of the early victories and of the delicious retirements of the citizens of Rome, extended between the sea and the Apennines, from the Tyber to the Silaris. Within sixty years after the death of Constantine, and on the evidence of an actual survey, an exemption was granted in favour of three hundred and thirty thousand English acres of desert and uncultivated land; which amounted to one eighth of the whole surface of the province. As the footsteps of the barbarians had not yet been seen in Italy, the cause of this amazing donation, which is recorded in the laws, can be ascribed only to the administration of the Roman emperors. 171

8. Either from design or from accident, the mode of assessment seemed to unite the substance of a land-tax with the forms of a capitation. 172 The returns which were sent of every province or district, expressed the number of tributary subjects, and the amount of the public impositions. The latter of these sums was divided by the former, and the result, that such a province contained so many capita, or heads of tribute, and that each head was rated at such a price, was universally received, not only in the popular, but even in the legal computations. The value of a tributary head must have varied, according to many accidental, or at least fluctuating circumstances; but some knowledge has been preserved of a very curious fact, the more important, since it relates to one of the richest provinces of the Roman empire, and which now flourishes as the most splendid of the European kingdoms. The opulent ministers of Constantine had exhausted the wealth of Gaul, by exacting twenty-five pieces of gold for the annual tribute of every head. The humane policy of his successor reduced the capitation to seven pieces. 173 A moderate proportion between these opposite extremes of extravagant oppression and of transient indulgence, may therefore be fixed at sixteen pieces of gold, or about nine pounds sterling, the common standard, perhaps, of the impositions of Gaul. 174 But this calculation, or rather indeed the facts from whence it is deduced, cannot fail of suggesting two difficulties to a thinking mind, who will be at once surprised by the equality, and by the enormity of the capitation. An attempt to explain them may perhaps reflect some light on the interesting subject of the finances of the declining empire.

1. It is obvious, that, as long as the immovable constitution of human nature preserved and maintained a division of property, the most numerous part of the community would be deprived of its subsistence, by the equal assessment of a tax from which the sovereign would derive a very trifling revenue. Such indeed might be the theory of the Roman capitation; but in the practice, this unjust equality was no longer felt, as the tribute was collected on the principle of a real, not of a personal imposition. Several individual citizens contributed to compose a single head, or state of taxation; and, while the wealthy provincial, in proportion to his fortune, alone represented several of these imaginary beings. In a pastoral request, addressed to one of the last and most deserving of the Roman princes who reigned in Gaul, Sidonius Apollinaris personifies his tribute under the figure of a triple monster, the Gorgon of the Grecian fables, and enunciates the new Heracles that he would most graciously be pleased to save his life by cutting off three of his heads. 175 The fortune of Sidonius he exceeded the customary wealth of a post; but if he had pursued the allusion, he must have painted many of the Gallic nobles with the hundred heads of the deadly Hydra, spreading over the face of the country, and devouring the substance of an hundred families. 11. The difficulty of allowing an annual sum of about nine pounds sterling, even for the average of the capitation of Gaul, may be rendered more evident by the comparison of the present state of the same country, as it is now governed by the absolute monarch of an industrious, wealthy, and affectionate people. The taxes of France cannot be magnified, either by fear or by history, beyond the annual amount of eighteen millions sterling, which might perhaps be shared among five and twenty millions of inhabitants. 176 Seven millions of these, in the capacity of fathers, or brothers, or husbands, may discharge the obligation of the remaining millions of sons, who are the only people capable of possibly furnishing the necessary inducement to the return of a remnant of the population. It is only from the immediate rulers of the state, and the soldier, that the capitation demands its tribute; for the king and the Emperor, who is the soldier, are alike exempted, so as to encourage both the one to be the soldier, and the other to return.
titude of women and children; yet the equal proportion of each tributary subject will scarcely rise above fifty shillings of our money, instead of a proportion almost four times as considerable, which was regularly imposed on their Gallic ancestors. The reason of this difference may be found, not so much in the relative scarcity or plenty of gold and silver, as in the different state of society in ancient Gaul and in modern France. In a country where personal freedom is the privilege of every subject, the whole mass of taxes, whether they are levied on property or on consumption, may be fairly divided among the whole body of the nation. But the far greater part of the lands of ancient Gaul, as well as of the other provinces of the Roman world, were cultivated by slaves, or by peasants, whose dependent condition was a less rigid servitude. In such a state the poor were maintained at the expense of the masters, who enjoyed the fruits of their labour; and as the rolls of tribute were filled only with the names of those citizens who possessed the means of an honourable, or at least of a decent subsistence, the comparative smallness of their numbers explains and justifies the high rate of their capitalisation. The truth of this assertion may be illustrated by the following example: —

The Ædui, one of the most powerful and civilised tribes or cities of Gaul, occupied an extent of territory, which now contains above five hundred thousand inhabitants, in the two ecclesiastical dioceses of Autun and Névers; and with the probable accession of those of Chalon and Meaux, the population would amount to eight hundred thousand souls. In the time of Constantius, the territory of the Ædui afforded no more than twenty-five thousand heads of capital, of whom seven thousand were discharged by that prince from the intolerable weight of tribute. A just analogy would seem to countenance the opinion of an ingenious historian, that the free and tributary citizens did not surpass the number of half a million; and if, in the ordinary administration of government, their annual payments may be computed at about four millions and a half of our money, it would appear, that although the share of each individual was four times as considerable, a fourth part only of the modern taxes of France was levied on the Imperial province of Gaul. The exactions of Constantius may be calculated at seven millions sterling, which were reduced to two millions by the humanity or the wisdom of Julian.

But this tax, or capitalisation, on the proprietors of land, would have suffered a rich and

nous class of free citizens to escape. With the view of sharing this species of wealth, which is derived from art or labour, which exists in money or in merchandise, the emperor imposed a distinct and personal tribute on the trading part of their subjects. Some exemptions were very strictly confined both in time and place; and were allowed to the proprietors who disposed of the produce of their own estates. Some indulgences was granted to the profession of the liberal arts; but every other branch of commercial industry was affected by the severity of the law. The honourable merchant of Alexandria, who imported the gems and spices of India for the use of the Western world; the merchant, who derived from the interest of money a silent and ignominious profit; the ingenious manufacturer, the doughty mechanic, and even the most obscure retailer of a sequestered village, were obliged to admit the officers of the revenue into the partnership of their gains; and the soveraignty of the Roman empire, who tolerated the profession, consented to share the infamous salary of public prostitutes. As this general tax upon industry was collected every fourth year, it was styled the Lustral Contributions; and the historian Zeuxis [75] lamented that the approach of the fatal period was announced by the sobs and tears of the citizens, who were often compelled by the impending scourge to endure the most abhorred and unnatural methods of procuring the sum at which their property had been assessed. The testimony of Zeuxis cannot indeed be justified from the charge of passion and prejudice; but from the nature of this tribute, it seems reasonable to conclude, that it was arbitrary in the distribution, and extremely rigorous in the mode of collecting. The severe wealth of commerce, and the precarious profits of art or labour, are susceptible only of a discretionary valuation, which is seldom disadvantageous to the interest of the treasury; and as the person of the trader supplies the want of a visible and permanent security, the payment of the impost, which, in the case of a land-tax, may be obtained by the seizure of property, can rarely be extorted by any other means than those of corporal punishments. The cruel treatment of the insolvent debtors of the state, is attested, and was perhaps mitigated by a very humane edict of Constantius, who, disclaiming the use of racks and of scourges, allows a spacious and airy prison for the place of their confinement.

These general taxes were imposed and levied by the absolute  

---

102 [75] The national jurisdiction of (Legator) Arvernian Regency, at the capitol of the Ædui, comprehended the ancient territory of Autun, Bauhain, and Autrianum; a little beyond which was the Diocese of Autun; and of the same extent was the Diocese of Névers; the latter of which was contained in the Diocese of Chalon, and the latter of which in the Diocese of Meaux. The population of the Ædui has been reckoned at one hundred and fifty thousand souls, and constituted by the moderate proportion of 32 for every 36, which the compiler of the inquisition, M. de Saint-Martin, has assigned to the year 1487, and to the same period. By this estimate, the number of the Ædui is probably 180,000 souls. The population of the Ædui was not less than 120,000 souls, and probably not less than 120,000. The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls. The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls. The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls. The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

103 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

104 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

105 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

106 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

107 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

108 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

109 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

110 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

111 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

112 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

113 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

114 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

115 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

116 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

117 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

118 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

119 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

120 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

121 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

122 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

123 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

124 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

125 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

126 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

127 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

128 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

129 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.

130 [15] The number of the Ædui has been reckoned at 120,000 souls.
authority of the monarch; but the occasional offerings of the coronary gold still retained the name and semblance of popular consent. It was an ancient custom that the allies of the republic, who ascribed their safety or deliverance to the success of the Roman arms, and even the cities of Italy, who admired the virtues of their victorious general, adorned the pomp of his triumph, by their voluntary gifts of crowns of gold, which after the ceremony were consecrated in the temple of Jupiter, to remain a lasting monument of his glory to future ages. The progress of real and sordid envy multiplied the number, and increased the size, of these popular donations; and the triumph of Caesar was enriched with two thousand eight hundred and twenty-two money crowns, whose weight amounted to twenty thousand four hundred and fourteen pounds of gold. This treasure was immediately melted down by the prudent dictator, who was satisfied that it would be more serviceable to his soldiers than to the gods: his example was imitated by his successors; and the custom was introduced of conferring upon their splendid ornaments for the more conspicuous present of the current gold coin of the empire.

The spontaneous offering was at length exacted as the debt of duty; and instead of being confined to the occasion of a triumph, it was supposed to be granted by the several cities and provinces of the monarchy, as often as the emperor confided or unconfided his accession, his consobinship, the birth of a son, the creation of a Caesar, a victory over the barbarians, or any other real or imaginary event which grated the nerves of his reign. The peculiar free gift of the senate of Rome was fixed by custom at sixteen hundred pounds of gold, or about sixty-four thousand pounds sterling. The suppressed subjects celebrated their own felicity, that their sovereigns should graciously consent to accept this feeble but voluntary testimony of their loyalty and gratitude.

A people elated by pride, or solaced by comfort, or seldom qualified to form a just estimate of their actual situation. The subjects of Constantine were incapable of discerning the decline of genius and manly virtue, which so far degraded them below the dignity of their ancestors; but they could feel and lament the rage of tyranny, the relaxation of discipline, and the increase of taxes. The impartial historian, who acknowledges the justice of their complaints, will observe some favourable circumstances which tended to alleviate the misery of their condition. The threatening tempest of barbarians, which so soon subverted the foundations of Roman greatness, was still repelled, or suspended, on the frontier. The arts of luxury and literature were cultivated, and the elegant pleasures of society were enjoyed, by the inhabitants of a considerate portion of the globe. The forms of the pomp, and the expense of the civil administration, contributed to restrain the irregular licence of the soldiers; and although the laws were violated by power, or perverted by selfishness, the sage principles of the Roman jurisprudence preserved a sense of order and equity, unknown to the despotic governments of the East. The rights of mankind might derive some protection from religion and philosophy; and the name of freedom, which could no longer alarm, might sometimes admonish, the successors of Augustus, that they did not reign over a nation of slaves or barbarians.

CHAP. XVIII.


The character of the prince who, Sermw, recovered the east of empire, and introduced such important changes into the civil and religious constitution of his country, has fixed the attention, and divided the opinions, of mankind. By the grateful zeal of the Christians, the deliverer of the church has been decorated with every attribute of a hero, and even of a saint; while the discontent of the vanquished party has compared Constantine to the most abhorred of those tyrants, who, by their vices and weakness, disowned the imperial purple. The same passions have, in some degree been perpetuated to succeeding generations, and the character of Constantine is considered, even in the present age, as an object either of satire or of panegyric. By the impartial union of those defects which are confessed by his warmest admirers, and of those virtues which are acknowledged by his most implacable enemies, we might hope to delineate a just portrait of that extraordinary man, which the truth and candour of history should adopt without a blush. But it would soon appear, that the vain attempt to blend such discordant colours, and to reconcile such inconsistent qualities, must produce a figure monstrous rather than human, unless it is viewed in its proper and distinct lights, by a careful separation of the different periods of the reign of Constantine.

The person, as well as the mind, of Constantine had been enriched by nature with her choicest endowments. His stature was lofty, his countenance majestic, his deportment graceful; his strength and activity were displayed in every manly exercise, and from his earliest youth, to a very advanced season of life, he preserved the vigour of his constitution by a strict adherence to the domestic virtues of a Roman prince from that of a Barbarian monarch. Virtue was not his last end, nor was it his greatest aim. He was a skilful politician, who concealed under the appearance of a religious monarch, a prince that was essentially a soldier. He was a cautious friend; and a dangerous enemy, whose claims of an emperor were sufficiently supported by the influence of those religious endowments.

102 See Constantine, Book XVIII.
chastity and temperance. He delighted in the social intercourse of familiar conversation; and though he might sometimes indulge his disposition to raillery with less reserve than was required by the severe dignity of his station, the courtesy and liberality of his manners gained the hearts of all who approached him. The sincerity of his friendship has been suspected; yet he showed, on some occasions, that he was not incapable of a warm and lasting attachment. The disadvantage of an illiterate education had not prevented him from forming a just estimate of the value of learning; and the arts and sciences derived some encouragement from the insinuate protection of Constantine. In the despatch of business, his diligence was indefatigable; and the active powers of his mind were almost continually exercised in reading, writing, or meditating, in giving audience to ambassadors, and in examining the complaints of his subjects. Even those who endured the privation of his measures were compelled to acknowledge, that he possessed magnanimity to conceive, and patience to execute, the most arduous designs, without being checked either by the prejudices of education, or by the clamours of the multitude. In the field, he infused his own intrepid spirit into the troops, whom he conducted with the talents of a consummate general; and to his abilities, rather than to his fortune, we may ascribe the signal victories which he obtained over the foreign and domestic foes of the republic. He loved glory as the reward, perhaps as the motive, of his labours. The boundless ambition, which, from the moment of his assuming the purple at York, appears as the ruling passion of his soul, may be justified by the dangers of his own situation, by the character of his rivals, by the consciousness of superior merit, and by the prospect that his success would enable him to restore peace and order to the distracted empire. In his civil wars against Maxentius and Licinius, he had engaged on his side the inclinations of the people, who compared the undisciplined vices of those tyrants with the spirit of wisdom and justice which seemed to direct the general career of the administration of Constantine. Had Constantine fallen on the banks of the Tyber, or even in the plains of Hadrianeopolis, such is the character which, with a few exceptions, he might have transmitted to posterity. But the conclusion of his reign (according to the moderate and indeed tender sentence of a writer of the same age) degraded him from the rank which he had acquired among the most deserving of the Roman princes.

In the life of Augustus, we behold the tyrant of the republic, converted, almost by imperceptible degrees, into the father of his country, and of human kind. In that of Constantine, we may contemplate a hero, who had so long inspired his subjects with love, and his enemies with terror, degenerating into a cruel and absolute monarch, corrupted by his fortune, or raised by conquest above the necessity of dissimulation. The general peace which he maintained during the last fourteen years of his reign, was a period of apparent splendour rather than of real prosperity; and the old age of Constantine was disgraced by the opposite vices of rapaciousness and prodigality. The accumulated treasures found in the palaces of Maxentius and Licinius, were lavishly consumed; the various innovations introduced by the conqueror, were attended with an increasing expense; the cost of his buildings, his wars, and his festivals, required an immediate and plentiful supply; and the oppression of the people was the only fund which could support the magnificence of the sovereign. His unhappy favourite, enriched by the boundless liberality of their master, was unsparingly and with impunity the privilege of rage and corruption. A secret but universal execration was felt in every part of the public administration, and the emperor himself, though he still retained the obedience he gradually lost the esteem, of his subjects. To the scenes and manners, which, towards the decline of life, he chose to affect, served only to disgrace him in the eyes of mankind. The Asiatic camp, which had been adopted by the pride of Diocletian, assumed an air of softness and affability in the person of Constantine. He is represented with false hair of various colours, laboriously arranged by the skilful artists of the times; a diadem of a new and more expensive fashion; a profession of grief and tears, of collars and bracelets, and a variegated flowing robe of silk, most curiously embroidered with flowers of gold. In such apparel, scarcely to be excelled by the youth and folly of Elagabalus, we are at a loss to discover the wisdom of an aged monarch, and the simplicity of a Roman emperor. A mind thus relaxed by prosperity and indulgence, incapable of rising to that magnanimity which determines, and is the soul of actions. The deaths of Maxentius and Licinius may, perhaps, be justified by the maxims of policy, as they are taught in the schools of tyrants; but an impartial narrative of the excesses, or even murders, which sufficed the declining age of Constantine, will suggest to us the most awful thoughts, the ideas of a prince who could sacrifice without reluctance the laws of justice, and the feelings of nature, to the dictates either of his passions or of his interests.

The history of this prince, which is invariably followed by the standard of Constantine, seemed to secure the hopes and comforts of his domestic life. Those among
his predecessors who had enjoyed the longest and most prosperous reigns. Augustus, Trajan, and Diocletian, had been disappointed of posterity; and the frequent revolutions had never allowed sufficient time for any Imperial family to grow up and multiply under the shade of the purple. But the royalty of the flavian line, which had been first embodied by the Gothic Claudius, descended through several generations; and Constantine himself derived from his royal father the hereditary honors which he transmitted to his children. The emperor had been twice married. Minervina, the obscure but useful object of his youthful attachment, had left him only one son, who was called Crispus. By Fausta, the daughter of Maximian, he had three daughters, and three sons known by the kindred names of Constantine, Constantius, and Constans. The amiable brothers of the great Constantine, Julius Constantius, Dalmatius, and Hamiltonianus, were permitted to enjoy the most honourable rank, and the most affluent fortune, that could be consistent with a private station. The youngest of the three lived without a name, and died without posterity. His two elder brothers obtained in marriage the daughters of wealthy senators, and possessed new branches of the imperial state. Gallois and Julian afterwards became the most illustrious of the children of Julian Constantius the Patriarch. The two sons of Dalmatius, who had been decorated with the rank title of Caesars, were named Dalmatius and Hamiltonianus. The two sisters of the great Constantine, Anastasia and Eunomia, were bestowed on Optatus and Nepetinana, two senators of noble birth and of consular dignity. His third sister, Constantia, was distinguished by her pre-eminence of greatness and of beauty. She remained the widow of the vanquished Licinius; and it was by her exertions, that an innocent boy, the offspring of their marriage, preserved, for some time, his life, the title of Caesar, and a precarious hope of the succession. Besides the females, and the allies of the Flavian house, ten or twelve males, to whom the language of modern courts would apply the title of princes of the blood, seemed, according to the order of their birth, to be destined either to inherit or to support the throne of Constantine. But in less than thirty years, this numerous and increasing family was reduced to the persons of Constantine and Julian, who alone had survived a series of crimes and calamities, such as the tragic poem have deposited in the devoted lines of Pelops and of Cadmus.

Crispus, the eldest son of Constantine, and the presumptive heir of the empire, is represented by impartial historians as an amiable and accomplished youth. The care of his education, or at least of his studies, was intrusted to Laconia, the most eloquent of the Christians; a preceptor admirably qualified to form the taste, and to exalt the virtues, of his illustrious disciple. At the age of seventeen, Crispus was invested with the title of Caesar, and the administration of the Gallic provinces, where the invasions of the Goths had given him an early occasion of manifesting his military prowess. In the civil war, which broke out soon afterwards, the father and son divided their powers; and this history has already celebrated the valor which contributed to the conduct displayed by the latter, in forcing the straits of the Hellespont, so obstinately defended by the superior fleet of Licinius. This naval victory contributed to determine the event of the war; and the names of Constantine and of Crispus were united in the joyful acclamations of their eastern subjects; who loudly proclaimed, that the world had been subdued, and was now governed, by an emperor endowed with every virtue; and by his illustrious son, a prince beloved of Heaven, and the lively image of his father's perfections. The public favour, which custom accompanies old age, diffused its lustre over the youth of Crispus. He deserved the esteem, and he engaged the affection of the court, the army, and the people. The experienced merit of a reigning monarch is acknowledged by his subjects with reverence, and frequently desired with partial and discontented murmurs; while, from the opening virtues of his successor, they fondly conceive the most unabated hopes of private as well as public felicity.10

This dangerous popularity soon excited the attention of Constantine, who, both as a father and as a king, was impatient of an equal. Instead of attempting to secure the allegiance of his son, by the generous ties of confidence and gratitude, he resolved to prevent the mischief which might be apprehended from dissatisfied ambition. Crispus soon had reason to complain, that while his infant brother Constantius was sent, with the title of Caesar, to reign over his peculiar department of the Gallic provinces,11 he, a prince of mature years, who had performed such recent and signal services, instead of being raised to the superior rank of Augustus, was confided almost a prisoner to his father's court, and exposed, without power or defence, to every calamity which the justice of his enemies could suggest. Under such painful circumstances, the royal youth might not always be able to compose his behaviour, or suppress his discontent; and we may be assured, that his conduct was adopted by certain of Licinius' partisans, or his ambitious followers, who anxiously studied to inflame, and who were perhaps instructed to betray, the unabated warmth of his resentment. An edict of Constantine, published about this time, manifestly indicates his real or affected

10. He was B. D. 367

11. He was B. D. 367

12. His name is Attilius Regillius, from A. D. 367

13. His name is Attilius Regillius, from A. D. 367

14. His name is Attilius Regillius, from A. D. 367

15. His name is Attilius Regillius, from A. D. 367

16. His name is Attilius Regillius, from A. D. 367
suspicions, that a secret conspiracy had been formed against his person and government. By all the allurements of honours and rewards, he invites informers of every degree to accuse without exception his magistrates or ministers, his friends or his most intimate favourites, protesting, with a solemn assurance, that he himself will listen to the charge, that he himself will revenge his injuries; and concluding with a prayer, which discovers some apprehension of danger, that the provision of the Supreme Being may still continue to protect the safety of the emperor and of the empire.

The informers, who complied with such liberal an invitation, were sufficiently versed in the arts of courts to select the friends and adherents of Crispus as the guilty persons; nor is there any reason to distrust the veracity of the emperor, who had promised an ample measure of revenge and punishment. The policy of Constantine maintained, however, the same appearances of regard and confidence towards a son, whom he began to consider as his most irreconcilable enemy. Medals were struck with the customary vows for the long and auspicious reign of the young Caesar; and as the people, who were not admitted into the secrets of the palace, still loved his virtues, and respected his dignity, a poet who solicits his recall from exile, adores with equal devotion the majesty of the father and that of the son. The time was now arrived for celebrating the august ceremony of the twentieth year of the reign of Constantine; and the emperor, for that purpose, removed his court from Nicomedia to Rome, where the most splendid preparations had been made for his reception. Every eye, and every tongue, affected to express their sense of the general happiness; and the veil of ceremony and dissimulation was drawn for a while over the darkest designs of revenge and murder. In the midst of the festival, the unfortunate Crispus was apprehended by order of the emperor, who laid aside the tenderness of a father, without assuming the equity of a judge. The examination was short and private; and as it was thought deceit to conceal the fate of the young prince from the eyes of the Roman people, he was sent under a strong guard to Pula, in Istria, where, soon afterwards, he was put to death, either by the hand of the executioner, or by the more gentle operation of poison. The Cesar Licinius, a youth of amiable manners, was involved in the ruin of Crispus; and the stern jealousy of Constantine was renewed by the prayers and tears of his favourite sister, pleading for the life of a son, whose rank was his only crime, and whose loss she did not long survive. The story of these unhappy princes, the nature and evidence of their guilt, the forms of their trial, and the circumstances of their death, were buried in mysterious obscurity; and the courtly bishop, who has celebrated in an elaborate work the virtues and piety of his hero, observes a prudent silence on the subject of these tragic events.

Such haughty contempt for the opinion of mankind, whilst it imprisons an imitable stain on the memory of Constantine, must remind us of the very different behaviour of one of the greatest monarchs of the present age. The Czar Peter, in the full possession of despotic power, submitted to the judgment of Russia, of Europe, and of posterity, the reasons which had compelled him to subscribe the condemnation of a criminal, or at least of a degenerate, son.

The innocence of Crispus was not universally acknowledged, that the modern Greeks, who adore the memory of their founder, are reduced to palliate the guilt of a parricide, which the common feelings of human nature forbade them to justify. They pretend, that as soon as the afflicted father discovered the falsehood of the accusation by which his credit had been so fatally maimed, he published to the world his repentance and remorse; that he mourned forty days, during which he abstained from the use of the bath, and all the ordinary comforts of life; and that, for the last instruction of posterity, he erected a golden statue of Crispus, with this memorable inscription: To my son, whom I unjustly condemned.

A tale so moral and so interesting would deserve to be supported by less exceptional authority; but if we consult the more ancient and authentic writers, they will inform us, that the repentance of Constantine was manifested only in acts of blood and revenge; and that he stunned for the murder of an innocent son, by the execution, perhaps, of a guilty wife. They surmise the misfortunes of Crispus to the arts of his stepmother Fausta, whose implacable hatred, or whose disappointed love, renewed in the palace of Constantine the ancient tragedy of Hipocitus and of Phaedra.

Like the daughter of Minos, the daughter of Maximian accused her son-in-law of an incestuous attempt on the chastity of his father’s wife; and easily obtained, from the jealousy of the emperor, a sentence of death against a young prince, whom she considered with reason as the most formidable rival of her own children. But Helena, the aged mother of Constantine, lamented and revenged the unhappy fate of her
it tended to multiply the future masters of the Roman world, might be excused by the partiality of paternal affection; but it is not so easy to understand the motives of the emperor, when he endangered the safety both of his family and of his people, by the unnecessary elevation of his two nephews, Dalmatius and Hamilchianus. The former was raised, by the title of Caesar, to an equality with his cousins. In favour of the latter, Constantine invented the new and singular appellation of Notissimus, to which he annexed the flattering distinction of a robe of purple and gold. But of the whole series of Roman princes in any age of the empire, Hamilchianus alone was distinguished by the title of Kres; a name which the subjects of Tiberius would have detested, as the profane and cruel insult of capricious tyranny. The use of such a title, even as it appears under the reign of Constantine, is a strange and unconnected fact, which can scarcely be admitted on the joint authority of Imperial medals and contemporary writers.

The whole empire was deeply interested in the education of those five youths, the acknowledged successors of Constantine. The exercises of the body prepared them for the fatigue of war, and the duties of active life. Those who occasionally mention the education or talents of Constantine, allow that he excelled in the gymnastic arts of leaping and running; that he was a dexterous archer, a skilful horseman, and a master of all the different weapons used in the service either of the cavalry or of the infantry. The same substantial cultivation was bestowed, though not perhaps with equal success, to improve the minds of the sons and nephews of Constantine.

The most celebrated professors of the Christian faith, of the Grecian philosophy, and of the Roman jurisprudence, were invited by the liberality of the emperor, who reserved for himself the important task of instructing the royal youths in the science of government, and the knowledge of mankind. But the genius of Constantine himself had been formed by adversity and experience. In the free intercourse of private life, and amidst the dangers of the court of Galerius, he had learned to command his own passions, to encounter those of his equals, and to depend for his present safety and future greatness on the prudence and firmness of his personal conduct. His destined successors had the misfortune of being born and educated in the Imperial purple.
Incessantly surrounded with a train of flatterers, they passed their youth in the enjoyment of luxury, and the expectation of a throne; nor would the dignity of their rank permit them to descend from that elevated station from whence the various characters of human nature appear to wear a smooth and uniform aspect. The indulgence of Constantine admitted them, at a very tender age, to share the administration of the empire; and they studied the art of reigning, at the expense of the people intrusted to their care. The younger Constantine was appointed to hold his court in Gaul; and his brother Constantius exchanged that department, the ancient patrimony of their father, for the more populous, but less martial, countries of the East. Italy, the Western Illyricum, and Africa, were accessioned to Severus, the third of his sons, as the representative of the great Constantine. He fixed Dalmatia on the Gothic frontier, to which he annulled the government of Thrace, Macedonia, and Greece. The city of Caesarea was chosen for the residence of Hannibalus; and the provinces of Panium, Cappadocia, and Lesser Armenia, were destined to form the extent of his new kingdom. For each of these princes a suitable establishment was provided. A just proportion of guards, of legionaries, and of auxiliaries, was allotted for their respective dignity and defence. The ministers and generals, who were placed about their persons, were such as Constantine could trust to assist, and even to control, those youthful sovereigns in the exercise of their delegated power. As they advanced in years and experience, the limits of their authority were necessarily enlarged; but the emperor always reserved for himself the title of Augustus; and while he shewed the Caesars in the armies and provinces, he maintained every part of the empire in equal obedience to its supreme head.

Among the different branches of the human race, the Sarmatians form a very remarkable shade; as they seem to unity the manners of the Asiatic barbarians with the figure and complexion of the ancient inhabitants of Europe. According to the various accidents of peace and war, of alliance or conquest, the Sarmatians were sometimes confined to the banks of the Tanais; and they sometimes spread themselves over the immense plains which lie between the Vistula and the Volga. The care of their numerous flocks and herds, the pursuit of game, and the exercise of war, or rather of rapine, directed the vagrant motions of the Sarmatians. The movable camps or cities, the ordinary residence of their wives and children, consisted only of large wagons, drawn by oxen, and covered in the form of tents. The military strength of the nation was composed of cavalry; and the custom of their warriors, to lead in their hand one or two spare horses, enabled them to advance and to retreat with a rapid dili
gen, which surprised the security, and eluded the pursuit, of a distant enemy. Their poverty of iron compelled their rude industry to invent a sort of curcum, which was capable of resisting a sword or javelin, though it was formed only of human bones, cut into thin and polished slices, carefully laid over each other in the manner of scales or feathers, and sewed upon an under-garment of coarse linen. The offensive arms of the Sarmatians were short daggers, long lances, and a weighty bow with a quiver of arrows. They were reduced to the necessity of employing such bars for the points of their weapons; but the custom of dipping them in a venemous liquor, that poisoned the wounds which they inflicted, is alone sufficient to prove the most savage manners; since a people impressed with a sense of humanity would have abhorred so cruel a practice, and a nation skilled in the arts of war would have disdained so impotent a resource. Whatever these barbarians issued from their deserts in quest of prey, their shaggy bosoms, uncombed locks, the lura with which they were covered from head to foot, and their fierce constance, which seemed to express the most cruelty of their minds, inspired the most civilized provincials of Rome with horror and dismay.

The tender Orbis, after a youth spent in the enjoyment of fame and luxury, was condemned to a hopeless exile on the frozen banks of the Danube, where he was exposed, almost without defense, to the fury of these monsters of the desert, with whose stern spirit he feared that his youth and shade might hereafter be confounded. In his pithless, but sometimes unmanly lamentations, he describes in the most lively colours the dress, and manners, the arms and inroads of the Icen and Sarmatians, who were associated for the purposes of destruction; and from the accounts of history, there is some reason to believe that these Sarmatians were the Jazyges, one of the most numerous and warlike tribes of the nations. The allurements of plenty engaged them to seek...
a permanent establishment on the frontiers of the empire. Soon after the reign of Augustus, they obliged the Daucani, who subsisted by fishing on the banks of the river Tisza or Tisclus, to retire into the Styrian country, and to abandon to the victorious Sarmatians the fertile plains of Upper Hungary, which are bounded by the course of the Danube and the semicircular enclosure of the Carpathian mountains. In this advantageous position, they watched or surprised the moment of attack, as they were provided with a judicious system of defence; and although the Sarmatians did not illustrate their name by any memorable exploits, they occasionally assisted their eastern and western neighbours, the Goths and the Germans, with a formidable body of cavalry. They lived under the irregular anarchy of their chieftains; but after they had received into their bosom the fugitive Vandals, who yielded to the pressure of the Gothic power, they seem to have chosen a king from that nation, and from the illustrious race of the Astiugi, who had formerly dwelt on the shores of the northern ocean. This motive of vanity must have inflamed the subjects of contumacy, which perpetually arose on the confines of barbaric and independent nations. The Vandal princes were stimulated by fear and revenge; the Gothic kings aspired to extend their dominion from the Larine to the frontiers of Germany; and the waters of the Mura, a small river which falls into the Tisza, were stained with the blood of the contending barbarians. After some experience of the superior strength and number of their adversaries, the Sarmatians imitated the protection of the Roman monarch, who beheld with pleasure the discord of the nations, but who was justly alarmed by the progress of the Gothic arms. As soon as Constantine had declared himself in favour of the weaker party, the haughty Arianic king of the Goths, instead of expecting the attack of the legions, boldly passed the Danube, and spread terror and devastation through the province of Moesia. To oppose the march of this destroyable host, the aged emperor took the field in person; but on this occasion either his courage or his fortune betrayed the glory which he had acquired in so many foreign and domestic wars. He had the mortification of seeing his troops fly before an insensible detachment of the barbarians, who pursued them to the edge of their fortified camp, and obliged him to consult his safety by a precipitate and ignominious retreat. The event of a second and more successful action retrieved the honour of the Roman name; and the powers of art and discipline prevailed, after an obstinate contest, over the efforts of irregular valour. The broken army of the Goths abandoned the field of battle, the wasted provinces, and the passage of the Danube; and although the eldest of the sons of Constantine was permitted to supply the place of his father, the merit of the victory, which diffused universal joy, was ascribed to the suspicious counsels of the emperor himself.

He contributed at least to improve this advantage, by his negotiations with the free and warlike people of Chersonesus, whose capital, Sitome, on the western coast of the Bosporus or Crimean peninsula, still retained some vestiges of a Greek colony, and was governed by a perpetual magistrate, assisted by a council of citizens, emphatically styled the Fathers of the City. The Chersonites were animadverted against the Goths, by the memory of the wars, which, in the preceding century, they had maintained with unequal success against the invaders of their country. They were in constant communication with the Romans by the mutual benefit of commerce; as they were supplied from the provinces of Asia with corn and manufactures, which they exchanged with their only productions, salt, wax, and hides. Obstinate to the requisition of Constantine, they prepared, under the conduct of their magistrate Diogenes, a considerable army, of which the principal strength consisted in cross-bows and military chariots. The speedy and intrepid attack of the Chersonites, by diverting the attention of the Goths, assisted the operations of the Imperial generals. The Goths, vanquished on every side, were driven into the mountains, where, in the course of a severe campaign, above an hundred thousand were computed to have perished by cold and hunger. Peace was at length granted; to their humble supplications; the eldest son of Armin was accepted as the most valuable hostage; and Constantine endeavoured to convince his chieftains, by a liberal distribution of honours and rewards, how far the friendship of the Romans was preferable to their vanity. In the expressions of his gratitude towards the faithful Chersonites, the emperor was still more magnanimous. The pride of the nation was gratified by the splendid and almost royal decorations bestowed on their magistrate and his successors. A perpetual exemption from all duties was stipulated for their vessels which traded to the ports of the Black Sea. A regular subsidy was promised, of iron, corn, oil, and of every supply which could be useful either in peace or war. But it was thought that the Sarmatians were sufficiently rewarded by their deliverance from impending ruin; and the emperor, perhaps with too strict an economy, deducted some part of his stipend, or the Vandal, for the convenience. See Cæsar in his Book to the Thracians, the Emperor. See Sermon in his Book to the Thracians, p. 98. See the Vandal, for the Thracians. See Sermon in his Book to the Thracians, the Emperor. See Sermon in his Book to the Thracians, p. 98. See the Vandal, for the Thracians. See Sermon in his Book to the Thracians, the Emperor. See Sermon in his Book to the Thracians, p. 98. See the Vandal, for the Thracians. See Sermon in his Book to the Thracians, the Emperor. See Sermon in his Book to the Thracians, p. 98.
the expenses of the war from the customary gratifications which were allowed to that turbulent nation.

Exasperated by this apparent neglect, the Sarmatians soon forgot the terror of the Goths, and, with the luct of barbarism, the services which they had so lately received, and the dangers which still threatened their safety. Their forces on the territory of the empire provoked the indignation of Constantine to leave them to their fate; and he no longer opposed the ambition of Gelicer, a renowned warrior, who had recently ascended the Gothic throne. Wisnmar, the Vandal king, whilst alone, and unaffected, he defended his dominions with undaunted courage, was vanquished and slain in a decisive battle, which swept away the flower of the Sarmatian youth. The remains of the nation embraced the desperate expediency of arming their slaves, a hardy race of hunters and horsemen, by whose military aid, they revenged their defeat, and expelled the invaders from their confines. But they soon discovered that they had exchanged a foreign for a domestic enemy, more dangerous and more implacable. Enraged by their former servitude, elated by their present glory, the slaves, under the name of Limignantes, claimed and usurped the possession of the country which they had saved.

Their masters, unable to withstand the uncontrolled fury of the populace, preferred the hardships of exile, to the tyranny of their servitors. Some of the fugitive Sarmatians solicited a less ignominious dependence, under the hospitable standard of the Goths. A more numerous band retired beyond the Carpathian mountains, among the Quadi, their German allies, and were easily admitted to share a superfluous waste of unoccupied land. But the far greater part of the distressed nation turned their eyes towards the fruitful provinces of Rome. Imploiring the protection and forgiveness of the emperor, they solemnly promised, as subjects in peace, and as soldiers in war, the most inviolable fidelity to the empire which should graciously receive them into its bosom. According to the maxims adopted by Probus and his successors, the offers of this barbarian colony were eagerly accepted; and a competent portion of lands in the provinces of Pannonia, Thrace, Macedonia, and Italy, were immediately assigned for the habitation and subsistence of three hundred thousand Sarmatians.

By chastising the pride of the Goths, and by accepting the homage of a suppliant nation, Constantine asserted the majesty of the Roman empire; and the ambassadors of Ethiopia, Persia, and the most remote countries of India, congratulated the peace and prosperity of his government. If he reckoned, among the favours of fortune, the death of his eldest son, his nephew, and perhaps of his wife, he enjoyed an unbounded current of private as well as public felicity, till the thirteenth year of his reign, a period which none of his predecessors, since Augustus, had been permitted to celebrate. Constantine survived that autumn festival about ten months; and, at the mature age of sixty-four, after a short illness, he ended his memorable life at the palace of Agrypnus in the suburbs of Nicomedia, whither he had retired for the benefit of the air, and with the hope of recruiting his exhausted strength by the use of the warm baths. The examples of depositions of grief, or at least of mourning, surpassed whatever had been practised on any former occasion. Notwithstanding the claims of the senate and people of ancient Rome, the corpse of the deceased emperor, according to his last request, was transported to the city which was destined to preserve the name and memory of its founder. The body of Constantine, adorned with the vain symbols of greatness, the purple and diadem, was deposited on a golden bed in one of the apartments of the palace, which for that purpose had been splendidly furnished and illuminated. The terms of the court were strictly maintained. Every day at the appointed hours, the principal officers of the state, the army, and the household, approaching the person of their sovereign with bended knees and a composed countenance, offered their respectful homage as seriously as if he had been still alive. From motives of policy, this theatrical representation was for some time continued; nor could bluster neglect the opportunity of remarking that Constantine alone, by the peculiar indulgence of Heaven, had reigned after his death. But this reign could subsist only in empty pageantry; and it was soon discovered that the will of the absolute monarch is seldom obeyed, when his subjects have no longer any thing to hope from his favour, or to dread from his resentment. The same ministers and generals, who bowed with such reverential awe before the insignificants of their deceased sovereign, were engaged in secret consultations to exclude his nephew, Dalmatian and Humilianius, from the share which he had assigned them in the succession of the empire. We are too imperfectly acquainted with the court of Constantine to form any judgment of the real motives which influenced the leaders of the conspiracy; unless we should suppose that they were actuated by a spirit of jealousy and revenge against the precursor Albianus, a proud favourite, who had long directed the counsels and abused the confidence of the late emperor. The arguments by which they solicited the concurrence of the
soldiers and people, are of a more obdurate nature; and they might with decency, as well as truth, insist on the superior rank of the children of Constantine, the stranger of multiplying the number of sovereigns, and the impending mischief which threatened the republic, from the discord of so many rival princes, who were not connected by the tender sympathy of fraternal affection. The intrigue was conducted with zeal and secrecy, till a limit and unanimous declaration was procured from the troops, that they would suffer none, except the sons of their lawful monarch, to reign over the Roman empire. The younger Dalmatian, who was united with his collateral relations by the ties of friendship and interest, is allowed to have inherited a considerable share of the abilities of the great Constantine; but, on this occasion, he does not appear to have concerted any measures for supporting, by arms, the just claims which himself and his royal brother derived from the liberality of their uncle. Astonished and overwhelmed by the hideous popular fury, they seem to have remained, without the power of flight or resistance, in the hands of their implacable enemies. Their fate was suspended till the arrival of Constantine, the second, and perhaps the most favoured, of the sons of Constantine.

The voice of the dying emperor had recommended the care of his funeral to the pious of Constantine; and that prince, by the vicinity of his eastern station, could easily perceive the diligence of his brothers, who resided, in their distant government, of Italy and Gaul. As soon as he had taken possession of the palace of Constaninople, his first care was to remove the apprehensions of his kinsmen, by a solemn oath, which he pledged for their security. His next employment was to find some specious pretence which might release his conscience from the obligation of an impious promise. The arts of flattery were made subservient to the designs of cruelty; and a manifest forgery was attested by a person of the most sacred character. From the hands of the Bishop of Nismes, Constantine received a fatal scroll, affirmed to be the genuine testament of his father; in which the emperor expressed his suspicions that he had been poisoned by his brothers; and conjured his son to avenge his death, and to consult their own safety; by the punishment of the guilty. Whatever reasons might have been alleged by these unfortunate princes to defend their life and honour against so incredible an accusation, they were assailed by the furious clamours of the soldiers, who declared themselves, at once, their enemies, their judges, and their executioners. The spirit, and even the form, of legal proceedings were repeatedly violated in a promiscuous massacre; which involved the two uncles of Constantine, seven of his cousins, of whom Dalmatius and Heliandius, of the most illustrious, the patrician Optatus, who had married a sister of the late emperor, and the pretender Ablavius, whose power and riches had inspired him with some hopes of obtaining the crown. If it were necessary to aggravate the horror of this bloody scene, we might add, that Constantine himself had exposed the daughter of his uncle Julius, and that he had bestowed his sister in marriage on his cousin Heliandius. These alliances, which the policy of Constantine, regardless of the public prejudice, and formed between the several branches of the imperial house, served only to convince mankind, that those princes were as cold to the embarrassment of conjugal affection, as they were insensible to the tinct of consanguinity, and the most ardent tenets of youth and innocence. Of a numerous family, Gallus and Julian alone, the two youngest children of Julius Constantine, were saved from the hands of the enemy, till their rags, satiated with slaughter, had in some measure subsided. The emperor Constantine, who, in the absence of his brothers, was the most obnoxious to guilt and reproach, discovered, on some future occasions, a faint and transient remorse for those cruelties which the pernicious counsels of his ministers, and the irresistible violence of the troops, had extended from his unexperienced youth.

The massacre of the Flavian race was succeeded by a new division of the provinces; which was ratified in a personal interview of the three brothers. Constantine, the eldest of the Cesaris, obtained, with a certain pre-eminence of rank, the possession of the great capital, which bore his own name and that of his father. Thence, and the countries of the East, were allotted for the patrimony of Constantine; and Constantine was acknowledged as the lawful sovereign of Italy, Africa, and the western Illyricum. The armies submitted to their hereditary right; and they conducted, after some delay, an access from the Roman senate, the title of Augustus. When they first assumed the reins of government, the eldest of these princes was twenty-one, the second twenty, and the third only seventeen, years of age.

58. Dalmatius (b. 340) succeeded his brother in the late division of the empire, and secured all the provincial dominions of the Orient, as well as the title of Augustus. Dalmatius Placiphilus, Caesars successional titles included.

59. This act of Constantine may be considered as an act of cruelty; and a manifest forgery was attested by a person of the most sacred character. After the death of Constan
tine I, it is to be inferred that these political measures were taken to establish his son's ascendancy.

60. A letter of Justinian II to the Senate, recorded by Procopius (b. 527), is the only extant letter by Constantine, and gives a description of the fall of Constantinople, which is the last scene of his reign. Albericus, De s. Excidio, p. 181. 182.

61. Justinian II, on the 22nd of August, 527, was crowned the son of Constantine II, and the successor of his father. Procopius, De aed. 532.

62. Justinian's letter to the Senate, recorded by Procopius (b. 527), is the only extant letter by Constantine, and gives a description of the fall of Constantinople, which is the last scene of his reign. Albericus, De s. Excidio, p. 181. 182.

63. Justinian II, on the 22nd of August, 527, was crowned the son of Constantine II, and the successor of his father. Procopius, De aed. 532.

64. Justinian II, on the 22nd of August, 527, was crowned the son of Constantine II, and the successor of his father. Procopius, De aed. 532.
While the martial nations of Europe followed the standards of his brothers, Constantines, at the head of the effeminate rooks of Asia, was left to sustain the weight of the Persian war. At the decease of Constantines, the throne of the East was filled by Sapor, son of Hormoz, or Hormidas, and grandson of Narse, who, after the victory of Galerius, had humbly confessed the superiority of the Roman power. Although Sapor was in the thirtieth year of his long reign, he was still in the vigour of youth, as the date of his accession, by a very strange fatality, had preceded that of his birth. The wife of Hormoz remained pregnant at the time of her husband's death; and the uncertainty of the sex, as well as of the event, excited the ambitious hopes of the princes of the house of Sasan. The apprehensions of civil war were at length removed, by the positive assurance of the Magi, that the widow of Hormoz had conceived, and would safely produce a son. Obedient to the voice of superstition, the Persians prepared, without delay, the ceremony of his coronation. A royal bed, on which the queen lay in state, was exhibited in the midst of the palace; the dais was placed on the spot, which might be supposed to conceal the future heir of Ararat, and the prostrate subjugation adored the majesty of their invincible and innoxious sovereign. If any credit can be given to this marvellous tale, which seems however to be counteracted by the manner of the people, and by the extraordinary duration of his reign, we must admit not only the fortune, but the genius, of Sapor. In the soft sequestered education of a Persian prince, the royal youth could discover the importance of exercising the vigour of his mind and body; and, by his personal merit, deserved a throne, on which he had been seated, while he was yet unacquainted of the duties and temptations of absolute power. His minority was exposed to the almost inevitable calamities of domestic discord; his capital was surprised, and plundered by the Persion, a powerful king of Yemn, or Arabia; and the majesty of the royal family was degraded by the captivity of a princess, the sister of the deceased king. But as soon as Sapor attained the age of manhood, the prepossessing Tahir, his nation, and his country, fell beneath the first efforts of the young warrior; who reel his victory with so judicious a mixture of vigour and clemency, that he obtained from the fears and gratitude of the Arab, the title of Dhaulacnaff, or protector of the nation.

The ambition of the Persians, to whom his enemies ascribe the virtues of a soldier and a statesman, was animated by the desire of revenging the disgrace of his fathers, and of wresting from the hands of the Romans the five provinces beyond the Tigris. The military fate of Constantines, and the real or apparent strength of his government, suspended the attack; and while the hostile conduct of Sapor provoked the resentment, his artful negotiations aroused the patience of the Imperial court. The death of Constantines was the signal of war, and the actual condition of the Syrian and Armenian frontier, seemed to encourage the Persians by the prospect of a rich spoil, and an easy conquest. The example of the massacres of the palace, diffused a spirit of licentiousness and sedition among the troops of the East, who were no longer restrained by their habits of obedience to a veteran commander. By the prudence of Constantines, who, from the interview with his brothers in Armenia, immediately hastened to the banks of the Euphrates, the legions were gradually restored to a sense of duty and discipline; but the season of anxiety had permitted Sapor to form the siege of Nisibis, and to occupy several of the most important fortresses of Mesopotamia. In Armenia, the renowned Tigranes had long enjoyed the peace and glory which he deserved by his valour and fidelity to the cause of Rome. The firm alliance which he maintained with Constantines, was productive of spiritual as well as of temporal benefits; by the conversion of Tigranes, the character of a saint was applied to that of a hero, and the Christian faith was preached and established from the Euphrates to the shores of the Caspian; and Armenia was attached to the empire by the double ties of policy and religion. But as many of the Armenian nobles still refused to abandon the plurality of their gods and of their wives, the public tranquillity was disturbed by a discontented fiction, which involved the feudal age of their sovereign, and impatiently expected the hour of his death. He died at length after a reign of fifty-six years, and the fortune of the Armenian monarchy expired with Tigranes. His lawful heir was driven into exile, the Christian priests were either murdered or expelled from their churches, the barbarous tribes of Albania were solicited to descend from their mountains, and two of the most powerful governors, usurping the emblems of royalty, possessed the powers of royalty, implored the assistance of Sapor, and opened the gates of their cities to the Persian garrisons. The Christian party, under the guidance of the archbishop of Ararat, the immediate successor of St. Gregory the Illuminator, had recourse to the piety of Constantines. After the troubles had continued about three years, Antinagias, one of the officers of the household, executed with success the imperial commission of restoring Chosroes, the son of Tigranes, to the throne of his fathers, of distributing honours and rewards among the faithful servitors of the house of Atossa, and of proclaiming a general amnesty, which was accepted by the greater part of the rebellious army. But the Romans derived more honour than...
vantage from this revolution. Clunus was a prince of a pious stature, and a pusillanimous spirit. Unequal to the fatigues of war, aversive to the society of mankind, he withdrew from his capital to a retired palace, which he built on the banks of the river Eleutherus, and in the centre of a shady grove, where he consumed his vacant hours in the rural sports of hunting and hawking. To secure this inglorious ease, he submitted to the conditions of peace which Sapor condescended to impose; the payment of an annual tribute, and the restitution of the fertile province of Araratia, which the courage of Tigranes, and the victorious arms of Galerius, had annexed to the Armenian monarchy. 60

During the long period of the reign of Constantine, the provinces of the East were afflicted by the calamities of the Persian war. The irregular incursions of the light troops alternately spread terror and devastation between the Tigris and Euphrates, from the gates of Ctesiphon to those of Antioch; and this active service was performed by the Arabs of the desert, who were divided into their interest and affections; none of their independent chiefs being enlisted in the party of Sapor, whilst others had engaged their faithful fidelity to the emperor. The more grave and important operations of the war were conducted with equal vigour; and the armies of Rome and Persia encountered each other in nine bloody fields, in two of which Constantine himself commanded in person. The event of the day was most commonly adverse to the Romans, but in the battle of Singara, their imprudent valour had almost achieved a signal and decisive victory. The stationary troops of Singara retired on the approach of Sapor, who passed the Tigris over three bridges and occupied near the village of Illick an advantageous camp, which, by the labour of his numerous pioneers, he surrounded in one day with a deep ditch, and a lofty rampart. His formidable host, when it was drawn out in order of battle, covered the banks of the river, the adjacent heights, and the whole extent of a plain of above twelve miles, which separated the two armies. Both were alike impatient to engage; but the barbarians, after a slight resistance, fled in disorder, unable to resist, or desirous to save the strength of the heavy legions, who, fainting with heat and thirst, pursued them across the plain, and cut in pieces a line of cavalry, clothed in complete armour, which had been posted before the gates of the camp to protect their retreat. Constantine, who was hurried along in the pursuit, attempted, without effect, to restrain the ardour of his troops, by representing to them the dangers of the approaching night, and the certainty of completing their success with the return of day. As they depended much more on their own valour than on the experience or the abilities of their chief, they silenced by their clamours his timid remonstrances; and rushing with fury to the charge, filled up the ditch, broke down the rampart, and dispersed themselves through the tents to recluse their exhausted strength, and to enjoy the rich harvest of their labours. But the prudent Sapor had watched the moment of victory. His army, of which the greater part, securely posted on the heights, had been spectators of the action, advanced in silence, and under the shadow of night; and his Persian archers, guided by the illumination of the camp, poured a shower of arrows on a disordered and fleetless crowd. The insecurity of history 61 declares, that the Romans were vanquished with a dreadful slaughter, and that the flying remnant of the legions was exposed to the most innumerable perils. Even the tenacious of pugnacity, confessing that the glory of the emperor was sullied by the disobedience of his soldiers, chooses to draw a veil over the circumstances of this melancholy retreat. Yet one of these awful states, so jealous of the form of Constantine, relates, with amazing credulity, an act of such incredible cruelty, as in the judgment of posterity, must impress a far deeper stain on the honour of the Imperial name. The son of Sapor, the heir of his crown, had been made a captive in the Persian camp. The unhappy youth, who might have excited the compassion of the most savage enemy, was scourged, tortured, and publicly executed by the inhuman Romans. 62

Whatever advantages might attend the arms of Sapor in the field, though nine repeated victories dissuaded among the nations the fear of his valour and conduct, he could not hope to succeed in the gratification of his designs, whilst the fortieth towns of Mesopotamia, and above all, the strong and ancient city of Nisibis, remained in the possession of the Romans. In the space of twelve years, Nisibis, which, since the time of Taurus, had been deservedly esteemed the bulwark of the East, sustained three memorable sieges, a.d. 293, 294, and 295, against the power of Sapor; and the dispirited monarch, after urging his attacks above sixty, eighty, and a hundred days, was thrice rebuffed with loss and ignominy. 63 This large and populous city was besieged about two days' journey from the Tigris, in the midst of a pleasant and fertile plain at the foot of Mount

60 Julianus: Hist. 1, p. 23, 27, 28, 32. Maurice of Ephesus, Hist. 3, p. 92, 93. A.D. 282, 292. The period of Constantine is not yet fixed by the chronology of his inscriptions. For the event of Sapor's defeat, see Diodorus, Ist. Terr. iv. 43. 61 The narrative of Eutropius is the best of the passim of the Roman historians. It is derived from the authority of Ammianus Marcellinus, and forms a part of his history. This portion of his work is one of the most valuable extant for the period of the Roman and Persian war. His narrative is confirmed by the names of Asarputiades and Alexius. For the engagement at Singara, see Eutropius, p. 292, 293. 62 We must seek from Constantine the praise that of the was ascribed to Julianus, the son of Sapor. As the story is told by ascribed to Julianus, the son of Sapor. As the story is told by Balsamon and later historians, it is probable that the incident took place in the development of the Persian war. 63 The story is related by Eutropius, a/, p. 80, 91, 92, and by Ctesias, Hist. 3, p. 296, 397.
A treble enclosure of brick walls was defended by a deep ditch; and the inextricable mass of Count Lucullus, and his garrison, was seconded by the desperate courage of the people. The citizens of Nisibis were animated by the exhortations of their bishop, imured to arms by the presence of danger, and convinced of the intentions of Sapor to plant a Persian colony in their town, and to lead them away into distant and barbarous captivity. The event of the two former sieges elicited their confidence, and exasperated the haughty spirit of the Great King, who advanced a third time towards Nisibis, at the head of the united forces of Persia and India. The ordinary machines, invented to batter or undermine the walls, were rendered ineffectual by the superior skill of the Romans; and many days had vainly elapsed, when Sapor exchanged a resolution worthy of an eastern monarch, who believed that the elements themselves were subject to his power. At the stated season of the melting of the snows in Armenia, the river Mygdonius, which divides the plain and the city of Nisibis, forms, like the Nile, an inundation over the adjacent country. By the labour of the Persians, the course of the river was stopped below the town, and the waters were confined on every side by solid mounds of earth. On this artificial lake, a fleet of armed vessels filled with soldiers, and with engines which discharged stones of five hundred pounds' weight, advanced in order of battle, and engaged, almost upon a level, the troops which defended the ramparts. The irresistible force of the waters was alternately fatal to the contending parties, till at length a portion of the walls, unable to sustain the accumulated pressure, gave way at once, and exposed an ample breach of one hundred and fifty feet. The Persians were instantly driven on to the assault, and the fate of Nisibis depended on the event of the day. The heavy-armed cavalry, who led the van of a deep column, were embarrassed in the mud, and great numbers were drowned in the unseen holes which had been filled by the rushing waters. The elephants, made furious by their wounds, increased the disorder, and trampled down thousands of the Persian archers. The Great King, who, from an exalted throne, beheld the misfortunes of his army, sounded, with reluctant indignation, the signal of the retreat, and suspended for some hours the prosecution of the attack. But the vigilant citizens improved the opportunity of the night; and the return of day discovered a new wall of six feet in height, rising every moment to fill up the interval of the breach. Notwithstanding the disappointment of his hopes, and the loss of more than twenty thousand men, Sapor still pressed the reduction of Nisibis, with an obstinate firmness, which could have yielded only to the necessity of defending the eastern provinces of Persia against a formidable invasion of the Massagetas. Alarme by this intelligence, he hastily relinquished the siege, and marched with rapid diligence from the banks of the Tigris to those of the Oxus. The danger and difficulties of the Scythian war engrossed him some afterwards to conclude, or at least to observe, a truce with the Roman emperor, which was equally grateful to both princes; as Constantine himself, after the death of his two brothers, was involved, by the revolutions of the West, in a civil contest, which required, and seemed to exceed the most vigorous exertion of his undivided strength.

After the partition of the empire, three years had scarcely elapsed before the sons of Constantine seemed impatient to convince mankind that they were incapable of consenting themselves with the dominions which they were unqualified to govern. The eldest of these princes most complained that he was defrauded of his just proportion of the spoils of their murdered brethren; and though he might yield to the superior guilt and merit of Constantine, he excused from Constans the cession of the African provinces, as an equivalent for the rich countries of Macedonia and Greece, which his brother had acquired by the death of Dalmatius. The want of security, which Constantine experienced in a tedious and fruitless negotiation, exasperated the harshness of his temper; and he eagerly listened to those favourites, who suggested to him that his honour, as well as his interest, was concerned in the prosecution of the quarrel. At the head of a tumultuary band, suited for rapine rather than for conquest, he suddenly broke into the dominions of Constans, by the way of the Julian Alps, and the country round Aquileia, felt the first effects of his resentment. The forces of Constans, who then resided in Dacia, were directed with more prudence and ability. On the news of his brother's invasion, he detached a select and disciplined body of his Illyrian troops, proposing to follow them in person, with the remainder of his forces. But the conduct of his lieutenants soon terminated the unnatural contest. By the artful appearances of flight, Constantine was betrayed into an ambush, which had been concealed in a wood, where the two youths, with a few attendants, was surprised, surrounded, and slain. His body, after it had been found in the obscure stream of the Alas, obtained the honours of an Imperial sepulchre; but his provinces transferred their allegiance to the conqueror, who, refusing to admit his elder brother Constantius to any share in these acquisitions, maintained the undisputed possession of more than two thirds of the Roman empire.
The fate of Constantine himself was delayed about ten years longer, and the revenge of his brother's death was reserved for the more ignoble hand of a domestic traitor. The pernicious tendency of the system introduced by Constantine was displayed in the subtle administration of his sons; who, by their vices and weaknesses, soon lost the esteem and affection of their people. The pride assumed by Constantine, from the unanimous success of his arms, was rendered more contemptible by his want of abilities and application. His fond partiality towards some German captives, distinguished only by the charm of youth, was an object of scandal to the people; and Magnentius, an ambitious soldier, who was himself a barbarian extraction, was encouraged by the public discontent to assert the honour of the Roman name. The chosen bands of Jovians and Herraujans, who acknowledged Magnentius as their leader, maintained the most respectable and important station in the Imperial camp. The friendship of Marcellinus, count of the sacredPasarea, supplied with a liberal hand the means of seduction. The soldiers were convinced by the most specious arguments, that the republic summoned them to break the bonds of servitude; and, by the choice of an active and vigilant prince, to reward the same virtues which had raised the ancestors of the degenerate Constantia from a private condition to the thrones of the world. As soon as the conspiracy was ripe for execution, Marcellinus, under the pretence of celebrating his son's birthday, gave a splendid entertainment to the illustrious and honourable persons of the court of Gaul, which then resided in the city of Autun. The insolence of the feast was artfully promoted till a very late hour of the night; and the unsuspecting guests were tempted to indulge themselves in a dangerous and guilty freedom of conversation. On a sudden the doors were thrown open, and Magnentius, who had retired for a few moments, returned into the apartment, invested with the diadem and purple. The conspirators instantly armed him with the titles of Augustus and Emperor. The surprise, the terror, the astonishment, the amazement and the mutual ignorance of the rest of the assembly, prevented them to raise their voices to the general acclamation. The guards hastened to take the oath of fidelity; the gates of the town were shut; and before the dawn of day, Magnentius became master of the troops and treasure of the palace and city of Autun. By his secrecy and dexterity, he entertained some hopes of surprising the person of Constantine, who was pursuing to the adjacent forest his favourite amusement of hunting, or perhaps some pleasures of a more private and cynical nature. The rapid progress of fame allowed him, however, an instant for flight, though the desertion of his soldiers and subjects deprived him of the power of resistance. Before he could reach a sea-port in Spain, where he intended to embark, he was overtaken near Helensia, at the foot of the Pyrenees, by a party of light cavalry, whose chief, regardless of the sanctity of a temple, executed his commission by the murder of the son of Constantine.

As soon as the death of Constantine had decided this easy but important revolution, the example of the court of Augusta was imitated by the provinces of the West. The authority of Magnentius was acknowledged through the whole extent of the two great prefectures of Gaul and Italy; and the usurper prepared, by every act of oppression, to collect a treasure, which might discharge the obligation of an immense donation, and supply the expenses of a civil war. The martial countries of Illyricum, from the Danube to the extremity of Greece, had long obeyed the government of Vetranio, an aged general, beloved for the simplicity of his manners, and who had acquired some reputation by his experience and services in war. Attached by habit, by duty, and by gratitude, to the house of Constantine, he immediately gave the strongest assurances to the only surviving son of his late master, that he would expiate, with unshaken fidelity, his person and his troops, to inflict a just revenge on the traitors of Gaul. But the legions of Vetranio were seduced, rather than provoked, by the example of rebellion; their leader soon betrayed a want of firmness, or a want of sincerity; and his ambition derived a specious pretence from the approbation of the princes Constantini. That cruel and aspiring woman, who had obtained from the great Constantine, her father, the rank of Augusta, placed the diadem on her own head, and seemed to expect from his victory the accomplishment of those unbounded hopes, of which she had been disappointed by the death of her husband Hannibalzaurus. Perhaps it was without the consent of Constantia, that the new emperor formed a necessary, though dishonourable, alliance with the usurper of the West, whose purple was so recently stained with his brother's blood.

The intelligence of these important events, which so deeply affected the honour and safety of the Imperial house, revealed the arms of Constantine from the inglorious prosecution of the Persian war. He recommended the care of the East to his lieutenants, and afterwards to his cousin Gallois, whom he raised from a prince to a throne; and
marched towards Europe, with a mind agitated by the conflict of hope and fear, of grief and indignation. On his arrival at Theraeia in Thrace, the emperor gave audience to the ambassadors of Magnentius and Vetranio. The first author of the conspiracy, Marcellinus, who in some measure had bestowed the purple on his new master, boldly accepted this dangerous commission; and his three colleagues were selected from the illustrious personages of the state and army. These deputies were instructed to soothe the resentment, and to alarm the fears, of Constantius. They were empowered to offer him the friendship and alliance of the western princes, to cement their union by a double marriage; of Constantius with the daughter of Magnentius, and of Magnentius himself with the ambitious Constantia; and to acknowledge in the treaty the pre-eminence of rank, which might justly be claimed by the emperor of the East. Should pride and resentment urge him to refuse these equitable conditions, the ambassadors were ordered to expiate on the inevitable war which must attend his refusal, if he ventured to provoke the sovereigns of the West to exert their superior strength; and to employ against him that valour, those abilities, and those resources, to which the house of Constantine had been indebted for so many triumphs. Such propositions and such arguments appeared to deserve the most serious attention; the answer of Constantius was deferred till the next day; and so he had selected on the importance of justifying a civil war in the opinion of the people, he thus addressed his council, who listened with real or affected emotion: "Last night," said he, "after I retired to rest, the shade of the great Constantius, embracing the corpse of my murdered brother, rose before my eyes; my well-known voice awakened me to revenge, forbid me to dissemble the republic, and assured me of the success and immortal glory which would crown the justice of my arms." The authority of such a vision, or rather of the prince who alleged it, silenced every doubt, and excluded all negotiation. The ignominious terms of peace were rejected with disdain. One of the ambassadors of the tyrant was dismissed with the haughty answer of Constantius; his colleagues, as unworthy of the privileges of the law of nations, were put in irons; and the contending powers prepared to wage an implacable war.  

Such was the conduct, and such perhaps was the duty, of the brother of Constantine towards the perfidious usurper of Gaul. The situation and character of Vetranio admitted of milder measures; and the policy of the Eastern emperor was directed to disunite his antagonists, and to separate the forces of Illyricum from the cause of rebellion. It was an easy task to deceive the frankness and simplicity of Vetranio, who, fluctuating some time between the opposite views of honour and interest, displayed to the world the insincerity of his temper. He was immediately engaged in the

32 See the note on the Patriarchal to the Eutropia Liber. This year, p. 237. 

33 The modern city of Orleans, appears to have owed its name to the Tiberius, to whose sons they had engaged their allegiance by an oath of fidelity, which the ingratitude of his most favoured servants had tempted them to violate: The office, who surrounded the tribunal, and were instructed to act their parts in this extraordinary scene, possessed the irresistible power of reason and eloquence, by saluting the emperor Constantine as their lawful sovereign. The tumult of loyalty and repentance was communicated from rank to rank; till the plain of Orleans resounded with the universal acclamation of "Away with these usurpers! Long life and peace."
tageum, which the knowledge of the art of war could suggest to an experienced officer. He carried by assault the important town of Siscia; made an attack on the city of Sirmium, which lay in the rear of the Imperial camp; attempted to force a passage over the Save into the eastern provinces of Illyrium; and cut in pieces a numerous detachment, which he had allured into the narrow passes of Adane. During the greater part of the summer, the tyrant of Gaul showed himself master of the field. The troops of Constantius were harried and dispirited; his reputation declined in the eye of the world; and his pride condescended to solicit a treaty of peace, which would have resigned to the assails of Constans the sovereignty of the provinces beyond the Alps. These offers were unfavourably by the eloquence of Philip the Imperial ambassador; and the council as well as the army of Magnentius were disposed to accept them. But the haughty master, careless of the renunciations of his friends, gave orders that Philip should be detained as a captive, or at least as a pauper; and he dispatched an officer to reproach Constantius with the weakness of his reign, and to insult him by the promise of a pardon, if he would humbly abjure the purple. That he should confide in the justice of his cause, and the protection of an avenger, was the only answer which ensured permitted the emperor to return. But he was so sensible of the difficulties of his situation, that he no longer dared to retaliate the indignity which had been offered to his representative. The negotiation of Philip was not, however, ineffectual, since he determined Sylvestus the Frank, a general of merit and reputation, to desert with a considerable body of cavalry, a few days before the battle of Mura.

The city of Mura, or Eusuk, celebrated in modern times for a bridge of boats five miles in length, over the river Drave, and the adjacent moorages, has been always considered as a place of importance in the wars of Hungary. Magnentius, directing his march towards Mura, set fire to the gates, and, by a sudden assault, had almost sealed the walls of the town. The vigilance of the garrison extinguished the flames; the approach of Constantius left him no time to continue the operations of the siege; and the emperor soon removed the only obstacle that could embarrass his motions, by forcing a body of troops which had taken post in an adjoining amphitheatre. The field of battle round Mura was a naked and level plain; on this ground the array of Constantius formed, with the Drave on their right; while their left, either from the nature of their disposition, or from the superiority of their cavalry, extended far beyond the right wing.
The troops on both sides remained under arms in anxious expectation during the greatest part of the morning; and the son of Constantine, after animating his soldiers by an eloquent speech, retired into a church at some distance from the field of battle, and committed to his generals the conduct of this decisive day. They observed his conduct by the valor and military skill which they exerted. They wisely began the action upon the left; and advancing their whole wing of cavalry in an oblique line, they suddenly wheeled it on the right flank of the enemy, which was unprepared to resist the impetuosity of their charge. But the Romans of the West were unaccustomed, by the habits of discipline; and the barbarians of Germany supported the renown of their national bravery. The engagement soon became general; was maintained with various and singular turns of fortune; and scarcely ended with the declension of the night. The signal victory, which Constantine obtained is attributed to the arms of his cavalry. His auxiliaries are described as so many swarms of steel, glittering with their scaly armour, and breaking with their ponderous hammers the firm array of the Gallic legions. As soon as the legions gave way, the lighter and more active squadrons of the second line rode sword in hand into the intervals, and completed the disorder. In the mean while, the huge bodies of the Germans were exposed almost naked to the dexterity of the Oriental archers; and whole troops of those barbarians were urged by anguish and despair to precipitate themselves into the hasty and rapid stream of the Drave. The number of the slain was computed at fifty-four thousand men, and the slaughter of the conquered was more considerable than that of the vanquished, a circumstance which proves the obstinacy of the contest, and justifies the observation of an ancient writer, that the forces of the empire were consumed in the fatal battle of Murus, by the loss of a veteran army, sufficient to defend the frontiers, to add new triumphs to the glory of Rome. Notwithstanding the inveteracy of a servile nature, there is not the least reason to believe that the tyrant deserted his own standard in the beginning of the engagement. He seems to have displayed the virtues of a general and of a soldier till the day was irrecoverably lost, and his camp in the possession of the enemy. Magnentius then consulted his safety, and throwing away the Imperial ornaments, escaped with some difficulty from the pursuit of the light

horse, who incessantly followed his rapid flight from the banks of the Drave to the foot of the Julian Alps.

The approach of winter supplied the indolence of Constantine with a specious reason for deferring the prosecution of the war till the ensuing spring. Magnentius had fixed his residence in the city of Aquileia, and showed a seeming resolution to dispute the passage of the mountains and invasions which facilitated the confines of the Venetian province. The surprisal of a castle in the Alps by the secret march of the Imperialists, could scarcely have determined him to relinquish the possession of Italy, if the inclinations of the people had supported the cause of their tyrant. But the memory of the cruelties exercised by his ministers, after the unsuccessful revolt of Nepotian, had left a deep impression of horror and resentment on the minds of the Romans. That rash youth, the son of the princes Eutropia, and the nephew of Constantine, had soon with indignation the sceptre of the West usurped by a perfidious barbarian. Arming a desparate troop of slaves and gladiators, he overpowered the feeble guard of the domestic tranquillity of Rome, received the homage of the senate, and assuming the title of Augustus, passionately reigns during a tumult of twenty-eight days. The march of some regular forces put an end to his ambitious hopes: the rebellion was extinguished in the blood of Nepotian, of his mother Eutropia, and of his adherents; and the prescription was extended to all who had contracted a fatal alliance with the name and family of Constantine. But as soon as Constantine, after the battle of Murus, became master of the west coast of Dalmatia, a band of noble valets, who had ventured to equip a fleet in some harbour of the Adriatic, sought protection and revenge in his victorious camp. By their secret intelligence with their countrymen, Rome and the Italian cities were persuaded to display the baseness of Constantine on their walls. The grateful veterans, enriched by the liberality of the father, signified their gratitude and loyalty to the son. The cavalry, the legions, and the auxiliaries of Italy, renewed their oath of allegiance to Constantine; and the usurper, alarmed by the general desolation, was compelled, and the remains of his faithful troops, to retire beyond the Alps into the provinces of Gaul. The detachments, however, which were ordered either to press on or to intercept the flight of Magnentius, conducted themselves with the most imprudence.
of success; and allowed him, in the plains of Pavia, an opportunity of turning on his pursuers, and of gratifying his despair by the carnage of a useless victory.  

The pride of Magnentius was reduced, by repeated misfortunes, to the lowest ebb; and the emperor, in a vain, but in vain, for peace.

He first dispatched a senator, in whose abilities he confided, and afterwards several bishops, whose holy character might obtain a more favourable audience, with the offer of resigning the purple, and the promise of devoting the remainder of his life to the service of the emperor. But Constantius, though he granted fair terms of pardon and reconciliation to all who abandoned the standard of rebellion, avoided his inflexible resolution to inflict a just punishment on the crimes of an assassin, whom he prepared to overwhelm on every side by the effort of his victorious arms. An Imperial fleet acquired the easy possession of Africa and Spain, confirmed the wearing faith of the Moorish nations, and landed a considerable force, which passed the Pyrenees, and advanced towards Lyons, the last and fatal station of Magnentius.  

The temper of the tyrant, which was ever inclined to clemency, was urged by desire to exercise every act of oppression, which could extort an immediate supply from the cities of Gaul. Their patience was at length exhausted; and Treves, the seat of praetorian government, gave the signal of revolt, by shutting her gates against Decentius, who had been raised by his brother to the rank either of Caesar or of Augustus. From Treves, Decentius was obliged to retire to Sens, where he was soon surrounded by an army of German, whom the peregrines arts of Constantius had introduced into the civil discussions of Rome. In the mean time, the Imperial troops forced the passages of the Cottian Alps, and in the bloody combat of Mount Soleveus irrevocably fixed the title of rebels on the party of Magnentius. He was unable to bring another army into the field; the fidelity of his guards was corrupted; and when he appeared in public to animate them by his exhortations, he was saluted with an unanimous shout of "Long live the emperor Constantius!" The tyrant, who perceived that they were preparing to deserve pardon and rewards by the sacrifice of the most obdurate criminals, prevented their design by falling on his sword, a death more easy and more honourable than he could hope to obtain from the hands of an enemy, whose revenge would have been coloured with the specious pretence of justice and fraternal pietry. The example of suicide was imitated by Decentius, who strangled himself on the news of his brother's death. The author of the conspiracy, Marcellinus, had long since disappeared in the battle of Mursa, and the public tranquillity was confirmed by the execution of the surviving leaders of a guilty and unsuccessful faction. A severe inquisition was extended over all who, either from choice or from compulsion, had been involved in the cause of rebellion. Paul, surnamed Catenus, from his superior skill in the judicial exercise of tyranny, was sent to explore the latent remains of the conspiracy in the remote province of Britain. The homesick indignation expressed by Martin, vicar-profess of the island, was interpreted as an evidence of his own guilt; and the governor was urged to the necessity of turning against his hosted the sored with which he had been provoked to wound the Imperial character. The most innocent subjects of the West were exposed to exile and confiscation, to death and torture; and as the timids are always cruel, the mind of Constantius was insensible to mercy.

---

CHAP. XIX.


The divided provinces of the empire were again united by the victory of Constantius; but as that feeble prince was destitute of personal merit, either in peace or war; as he feared his generals, and distrusted his ministers; the triumph of his arms served only to establish the reign of the tyrants over the Roman world. Those unhappy beings, the ancient production of Oriental jealousy and dissipation, were introduced into Greece and Rome by the contagion of Asiatic luxury. Their progress was rapid; and the emperors, who, in the time of Augustus, had been abhorred, as the murmurous relicts of an Egyptian quiet, were elevated on the throne by the licentiousness of their companions, and the inscrutable affections of the court. If we can draw inferences from Julian's youth, before he ascended the throne, from the frequent expeditions with his own hand his murdered and the adventitious claims of his emperors, the events which surrounded his elevation must be considered as an introduction to his reign. In the end of the year 361, Julian, on the pretence of a law to declare the death of Gallus, entered by force into the residence of his deceased brother. The Senate, in obedience to the custom of the Romans, apprised the vicar of the palace, the prefect, and the imperial procurator, that the new prince was about to ascend the throne, and directed the secrets of the empire to be delivered to the person who should be first appointed praetorian prefect. The respect and confidence which Julian enjoyed even during his minority is evinced by the answer of the Senate, which was that the secret of the empire was to be delivered to the person who should be first appointed praetorian prefect. This message was conveyed to Julian by an officer who was known to be a friend of his, named Eutropius, who resided in the palace, and was of an ancient family. This was a man of great learning, and of a liberal mind; he was made an assistant to the imperial procurator, and was afterwards munificently provided with a large property, which consequently produced, and a liberal mind, and a taste admired by the world.

---

S 2
gradually admitted into the families of matrons, of senators, and of the emperors themselves. 4 Restrainted by the severe efforts of Donatus and Nerva, 6 cherished by the pride of Dácetian, reduced to an humble station by the prudence of Constantius, 7 they multiplied in the palaces of his degenerate sons, and insensibly acquired the knowledge, and at length the direction, of the secret councils of Constantius. The ascension and contempt which mankild has so uniformly entailed for that imperfect species, appears to have degraded their character, and to have rendered them almost as insipid as they were supposed to be, of conceiving any generous sentiment, or of performing any worthy action. But the eunuchs were skilled in the arts of flattery and intrigue; and they alternately governed the mind of Constantius by his fears, his indulgence, and his vanity. 8 Whilst he viewed in a deceitful mirror the fair appearance of public prosperity, he unjustly permitted them to intercept the complaints of the injured provinces, to accommodate immense treasures by the sale of justice and of honours; to disgrace the most important dignities, by the promotion of those who had purchased at their hands the powers of oppression; 9 and to gratify their resentment against the few independent spirits, who arrogantly refused to solicit the protection of slaves. Of these slaves the most distinguished was the chamberlain Eusebius, who ruled the monarch and the palace with such absolute sway, that Constantius, according to the sarcasm of an imperial historian, seemed to some credit with this haughty favourite. 10 By his artful suggestions, the emperor was persuaded to subscribe the condemnation of the unfortunate Gallus, and to add a new crime to the long list of unnatural murders which pollute the honour of the house of Constantius.

When the two nephews of Constantius, Gallus and Julian, were saved from the fury of the soldiers, the former was about twelve, and the latter about six, years of age; and, as the eldest was thought to be a sickly constitution, they obtained with the less difficulty a precarious and dependent life, from the affected pity of Constantius, who was sensible of the execution of these helpless orphans would have been esteemed, by all mankind, an act of the most deliberate cruelty. 11 Different cities of Ionia and Bithynia were assigned for the places of their exile and education; but, as soon as their growing years excited the jealousy of the emperor, he judged it more prudent to secure those unhappy youths in the strong castle of Marcellum, near Caesarea. The treatment which they experienced during a six years' confinement, was partly such as they could hope from a careful guardian, and partly such as they might dread from a suspicious tyrant. 12 Their prison was an ancient palace, the residence of the kings of Cappadocia; the situation was pleasant, the building stately, the meadows spacious. They pursued their studies, and practiced their exercises, under the tuition of the most skilful masters; and the numerous household attended to attend, or rather to guard, the nephews of Constantius, was not unworthy of the dignity of their birth. But they could not disguise to themselves that they were deprived of all the comforts of freedom, and of safety; secluded from the society of all whom they could trust or esteem, and condemned to pass their melancholy hours in the company of slaves, devoted to the command of a tyrant, who had already injured them beyond the hope of reconciliation. At length, however, the emergency of the state compelled the emperor, 13 or rather his eunuchs, to mediate.

Gallus, in the twenty-fifth year of his age, with the title of Cæsar, and to cement this political connection by his marriage with the princess Constantia. After a formal interview, in which the two princes mutually engaged their fate never to undertake any thing to the prejudice of each other, they repaired without delay to their respective stations. Constantius continued his march towards the West, and Gallus fixed his residence at Antioch; from whence, with a delegated authority, he administered the great diocees of the eastern praefecture. 12 In this fortunate change, the new Cæsar was not unmindful of his brother Julian, who obtained the honours of his rank, the appearance of liberty, and the restitution of an ample patrimony. 14
The writers the most intelligent impressions to the memory of Gallus, and even Julian himself, though he wished to cast a veil over the frailties of his brother, was obliged to confess that the Caesar was incapable of reigning. Transported from a prison to a throne, he possessed neither genius nor application, nor industry, to compensate for the want of knowledge and experience. A temper naturally morose and violent, instead of being corrected, was soored by solitude and adversity; the remembrance of what he had endured disposed him to retaliation rather than to sympathy; and the ungovernmented sallies of his rage were often fatal to those who approached his person, or were subject to his power. Constantius, his wife, was described, not as a woman, but as one of the infernal furies tormented with an innate thirst of human blood. Instead of employing her influence to instigate the mild counsels of prudence and humanity, she transported the fierce passions of her husband; and as she retained the vanity, though she had renounced the gentleness of her sex, a pearl necklace was esteemed an equivalent price for the murder of an innocent and virtuous nobleman. The cruelty of Gallus was soon displayed in the undissembled violence of popular military executions; and was sometimes disguised by the abuse of law, and the forms of judicial proceedings. The private houses of Antioch, and the places of public resort, were besieged by spies and informers; and the Caesar himself, concealed in a plebeian habit, very frequently condescended to assume that odious character. Every apartment of the palace was adorned with the instruments of death and torture, and a general consternation was diffused through the capital of Syria. The prince of the East, as if he had been conscious how much he had to fear, and how little he deserved to reign, selected for the objects of his resentment, the provincials accused of some imaginary treason, and his own courtiers, whom with more reason he suspected of insinuing, by their secret correspondence, the timid and suspicious mind of Constantius. But he forgot that he was depriving himself of his only support, the affection of the people; whilst he furnished the masses of his enemies with the seeds of truth, and afforded the emperor the fairest pretext of extorting the forfeit of his purple, and of his life.

As long as the civil war subsisted, he paid the fate of the Roman world, and Constantius dissemissed his knowledge of the weak and cruel administration to which his choice had subjected the East; and the discovery of some assassins, secretly dispatched to Antioch by the tyrant of Gaul, was employed to convince the public, that the emperor and the Caesar were united by the same interest, and pursued by the same enemies. But when the victory was decided in favour of Constantius, his dependent colleague became less useful and less formidable. Every circumstance of his conduct was severely and suspiciously examined, and it was privately resolved, either to deprive Gallus of the purple, or at least to remove him from the indolent luxury of Asia to the hardships and dangers of a German war. The death of Theophilus, consul of the province of Syria, who in a time of security had been massacred by the people of Antioch, with the commissary, and almost at the instigation, of Gallus, was justly resented, not only as an act of wanton cruelty, but as a dangerous insult on the supreme majesty of Constantius. Two ministers of illustrious rank, Domitian, the Oriental præfect, and Moulus, quasrater of the palace, were empowered by a special commission to visit and reform the state of the East. They were instructed to behave towards Gallus with moderation and respect, and, by the gentlest arts of persuasion, to engage him to comply with the invitation of his brother and colleague. The refusal of the prefect disappointed these prudent measures, and hastened his own ruin, as well as that of his enemy. On his arrival at Antioch, Domitian passed disdainfully before the gates of the palace, and alleging a slight pretence of indisposition, continued several days in sullen retirement, to prepare an inflammatory memorial, which he transmitted to the imperial court. Yielding at length to the pressing necessities of Gallus, the prefect condescended to take his seat in council; but his first step was to signify a concis and haughty mandate, imparting that the Caesar should immediately repair to Italy, and threatening that he himself would punish his delay or hesitation, by suspending the usual allowance of his household. The nephew and successor of Constantius, who could ill brook the insolence of a subject, expressed their resentment by instantly delivering Domitian to the custody of a guard. The quarrel still admitted of some terms of accommodation. They were rendered impracticable by the imprudent behaviour of Moulus, a statesman, whose art and experience were frequently betrayed by the levity of his disposition. The question represented Gallus in haughty language, that a prince, who was scarcely authorised to resume a senatorial magistrate, should presume to impose a praetorian prefect; convened a meeting of the civil and military officers; and required them, in the name of their sovereign, to defend the person and dignity of his representatives. By this rash
declaration of war, the impatient temper of Gallus was provoked to embrace the most desperate counsels. He ordered his guards to stand to their arms, assembled the populace of Antioch, and recommended to their zeal the care of his safety and revenge. His commands were too fatally obeyed. They rudely seized the prefect and the quastor, and tying their legs together with ropes, they dragged them through the streets of the city, inflicted a thousand insults and a thousand wounds on these unhappy victims, and at last precipitated their wrangling and lifeless bodies into the stream of the Orontes.

After such a deed, whatever might have been the designs of Gallus, it was only in a field of battle that he could assert his innocence with any hope of success. But the mind of that prince was formed of an equal mixture of violence and weakness. Instead of assuming the title of Augustus, instead of employing in his defence the troops and treasures of the East, he suffered himself to be deceived by the affected tranquillity of Constantius, who, leaving him the vain pageantry of a court, imperceptibly recalled the veteran legions from the provinces of Asia. But as it still appeared dangerous to arrest Gallus in his capital, the slow and safer arts of dissimulation were practised with success. The frequent and pressing epistles of Constantius were filled with professions of confidence and friendship; exhorting the Caesar to discharge the duties of his high station, to relieve his colleagues from a part of the public cares, and to assist the West by his presence, his counsels, and his arms. After so many reciprocal injuries, Gallus had reason to fear and to distrust. But he had neglected the opportunities of flight and of resistance; he was seduced by the flattering assurances of the tribune Scandillo, who, under the semblance of a rough soldier, disguised the most artful insinuation; and he depended on the credit of his wife Constantina, till the unanswerable death of that princess completed the ruin in which he had been involved by her impetuous passion.

After a long delay, the reluctant Caesar set forwards on his journey to the Imperial court. From Antioch to Hadrianople, he traversed the wide extent of his dominions with a numerous and stately train; and as he laboured to conceal his apprehensions from the world, and perhaps from himself, he entertained the people of Constantiopolis with an exhibition of the games of the circus. The progress of the journey might, however, have warned him of the impending danger. In all the principal cities he was met by ministers of confidence, commissioned to seize the offices of government, to observe his motions, and to prevent the hasty sallies of his despair. The persons despatched to secure the provinces which he left behind, passed him with cold salutations, or affected disdain; and the troops, whose station lay along the public road, were studiously removed on his approach, lest they might be tempted to offer their swords for the service of a civil war. After Gallus had been permitted to repose himself a few days at Hadrianople, he received a mandate, expressed in the most haughty and absolute style, that his splendid retinue should halt in that city, while the Caesar himself, with only ten post-carriages, should hasten to the Imperial residence at Milan. In this rapid journey, the profound respect which was due to the brother and colleague of Constantius, was insensibly changed into rude familiarity, and Gallus, who discovered in the commencements of the attentations that they already considered themselves as his guards, and might soon be employed as his executioners, began to assume his fatal rashness, and to recollect, with terror and remorse, the conduct by which he had procured his fate. The dissimulation which had hitherto been preserved, was laid aside at Petovio in Pannosia. He was conducted to a palace in the suburbs, where the general Bathistis, with a select band of soldiers, who could neither be moved by pity, nor corrupted by rewards, expected the arrival of his illustrious victim. In the close of the evening he was arrested, ignominiously stripped of the insignia of Caesar, and hurried away to Volitissa, a senatorial prison, which had been recently polluted with royal blood. The horror which he felt was soon increased by the appearance of his implacable enemy the emperor. Immediately, who, with the assistance of a notary and a tribune, proceeded to interrogate him concerning the administration of the East. The Caesar sunk under the weight of shame and guilt, confessed all the criminal actions, and all the impious designs with which he was charged; and by imputing them to the advice of his wife, separated the imagination of Constantius, who reviewed with partial prejudice the minute of the examination. The emperor was fully convinced, that his own safety was incompatible with the life of his cousin; the sentence of death was signed, despatched, and executed; and his nephew of Constantius, with his hands tied behind his back, was beheaded in prison like the vilest malefactor. Those who are inclined to palliate the cruelties of Constantius, must see the scene relented, and aspersed to rest in bloody mandate; but that the second message, entrusted with the reprieve, was detained by the summa, who delayed the unforgiving temerity of Gallus, and were destined to repose in their empire the wealthy provinces of the East.
Besides the reigning emperor, amongst the princes of the empire, Julian alone survived, of all the numerous posterity of Constantine Chlorus. The misfortune of his royal birth involved him in the disgrace of Gallicus. From his retreatment in the happy country of Ionia, he was conveyed under a strong guard to the court of Milan; where he languished above seven months, in the continual apprehension of suffering the same ignominious death, which was daily inflicted, almost before his eyes, on the friends and adherents of his persecuted family. His looks, his gestures, his silence, were scrutinized with malignant curiosity, and he was perpetually assaulted by enemies whom he had never offended, and by arts to which he was a stranger. But in the school of adversity, Julian intensively acquired the virtues of firmness and discretion. He defended his honour, as well as his life, against the etcanting strictures of the envious, who endeavored to extort some declaration of his sentiments; and whilst he cautiously suppressed his grief and resentment, he nobly disdained to flatter the tyrant, by any seeming approbation of his brother's murder. Julian most devoutly ascribes his miraculous deliverance to the protection of the gods, who had exempted his innocence from the sentence of destruction pronounced by their justice against the impious house of Constantine. As the most effectual instrument of their providence, he gratefully acknowledges the steady and generous friendship of the empress Eusebia, a woman of beauty and merit, who, by the ascendant which she had gained over the mind of her husband, counterbalanced, in some measure, the powerful conspiracy of the envious. By the intercession of his protectress, Julian was admitted into the imperial presence; he pleaded his cause with a decent freedom; he was heard with favour; and, notwithstanding the efforts of his enemies, who urged the danger of sparing an enemy of the blood of Gallicus, the milder sentiment of Eusebia prevailed in the council. But the effects of a second interview were arrest by the envious; and Julian was advised to withdraw for a while into the neighborhood of Milan, till the emperor thought it proper to assign the city of Athens for the place of his honorable exile.

As he had discovered, from his earliest youth, a propensity, or rather passion, for the language, the manners, the learning, and the religion of the Greeks, he obeyed with pleasure an order so agreeable to his wishes. Far from the tumult of arms, and the treachery of war, he spent six months amidst the groves of the academy, in a free intercourse with the philosophers of the age, who solicited to cultivate the genius, to encourage the vanity, and to inflame the devotion of their royal pupil. Their labours were not unsuccessful; and Julian involuntarily preserved for Athens that tender regard, which seldom fails to arise in a liberal mind, from the recollection of the place where it has discovered and exercised its growing powers. The gentleness and affability of manners, which his temper suggested and his situation imposed, immediately engaged the affections of the strangers, as well as citizens, with whom he conversed. Some of his fellow-students might perhaps examine his behavior with an eye of prejudice and avarice; but Julian established, in the schools of Athens, a general prepossession in favour of his virtues and talents, which was soon diffused over the Roman world.

Whilst his heart were passed in studious retirement, the emperor resolved to achieve the generous design which he had undertaken, was not unmindful of the care of his fortune. The death of the late Caesar had left Constantius invested with the sole command, and oppressed by the accumulated weight of a mighty empire. Before the wounds of civil discord could be healed, the provinces of Gaul were overwhelmed by a deluge of barbarians. The Sarmatians no longer respected the barrier of the Danube. The impudence of ariane had increased the boldness and numbers of the wild Istrians; those robbers descended from their craggy mountains to ravage the adjacent country, and had even presumed, though without success, to besiege the important city of Seleucia, which was defended by a garrison of three Roman legions. Above all, the Persian monarch, elated by victory, again threatened the peace of Asia, and the presence of the emperor was indispensably required, both in the West and in the East. For the first time, Constantius sincerely acknowledged, that his single strength was unequal to such an extent of care and of dominion. Insensible to the voice of flattery, which assured him that his all-powerful virtue, and celestial fortune, would still continue to triumph over every obstacle, he listened with complacency to the advice of Eusebia, which gratified his impiety, without offending his suspicious pride. As she perceived that the remoteness of Gallicus, death on the emperor's mind, the artfully turned his attention to the opposite characters of the two brothers, which from their infancy had been compared to those of Donsillian and of Tima. She accused the elder husband to consider Julian as a youth of a mild and amiable disposition, whose allegiance and gratitude might be secured by the gift of the purple, and who was qualified to fill, with honour, a subordinate station, without
suring to dispute the commands, or to degrade the glories of his sovereign and benefactor. After an obstinate, though secret struggle, the opposition of the favourite eunuchs submitted to the ascendency of the empress; and it was resolved that Julian, after celebrating his nuptials with Helena, sister of Constantius, should be appointed, with the title of Caesar, to reign over the countries beyond the Alps.25

Although the order which recalled him to mistrust was probably accompanied by some intimation of his approaching greatness, he appeals to the people of Athens to witness his tears of unaccompanied sorrow, when he was reluctantly torn away from his beloved retirement.26 He trembled for his life, for his fame, and even for his virtue; and his sole confidence was derived from the persuasion that Minerva inspired all his actions, and that he was protected by an invisible guard of angels, whom for that purpose she had borrowed from the Sun and Moon. He approached, with horror, the palace of Milan; not could the ingenuous youth conceal his indignation, when he found himself accosted with false and servile respect by the assassins of his family. Enngela, refusing in the success of her beneficent schemes, embraced him with the tenderness of a sister; and endeavoured, by the most soothing caresses, to dispel his terror, and reconcile him to his fortune. But the ceremony of shewing his head, and his awkward demesne, when he first exchanged the cloak of a Greek philosopher for the military habit of a Roman prince, amused, during a few days, the levity of the Imperial court.27

The emperors of the age of Constantine no longer designed to consult with the senate in the choice of a colleague; but they were anxious that their nomination should be ratified by the consent of the army. On this solemn occasion, the guards, with the other troops under arms, were in the neighborhood of Milan, appeared under arms; and Constantine ascended his holy tribunal, holding by the hand his cousin Julian, who entered the camp the day into the twenty-fifth year of his age.28 In a studied speech, expressed and delivered with dignity, the emperor represented the various dangers which threatened the prosperity of the republic, the necessity of naming a Caesar for the administration of the West, and his own intention, if it was agreeable to their wishes, of rewarding with the honours of the purple the promising virtues of the nephew of Constantine. The approbation of the soldiers was testified by a respectful murmur; they gazed on the main countenance of Julian, and observed with pleasure, that the fire which sparkled in his eyes was tempered by a modest blush, on being thus exposed, for the first time, to the public view of mankind. As soon as the ceremony of his investiture had been performed, Constantine addressed him with the tone of authority, which his superior age and station permitted him to assume; and extolling the new Caesar to deserving, by heroic deeds, that sacred and immortal name, the emperor gave his colleague the strongest assurances of a friendship which should never be impaired by time, nor interrupted by their separation into the most distant climates. As soon as the speech was ended, the troops, as a token of applause, clashed their shields against their knees;29 while the officers who surrounded the tribunal expressed, with decent reserve, their sense of the merits of the representative of Constantine.

The two princes returned to the and chambered palace in the same situation; and, during the slow procession, Julian repeated to himself a verse of his favourite Homer, which he might equally apply to his fortune and to his fears.30 The four and twenty days which the Caesar spent at Milan, attended to his liturgies, and the first months of his Gallar reign, were devoted to a splendid, but severe captivity; nor could the acquisition of honour compensate for the loss of freedom.31 His steps were watched, his correspondence was intercepted; and he was obliged, by prudence, to detach the visit of his most intimate friends. Of his former domestics, four only were permitted to attend him: two pages, his physician, and his librarian; the last of whom was employed in the care of a valuable collection of books, the gift of the empress, who studied the inclinations as well as the interest of her friend. In the room of these faithful servants, an household was formed, such indeed as became the dignity of a Caesar; but it was filled with a crowd of slaves, institutists, and perhaps incapable of any attachment for their new master, to whom, for the most part, they were either unknown or suspected. His want of experience might require the assistance of a wise counsellor; but the minute instructions which regulated the service of his table, and the distribution of his hours, were adapted to a youth still under the discipline of his preceptors, rather than to the situation of a prince intrusted with the conduct of an important war. If he aspired to deserve the esteem of his subjects, he was checked by the fear of displeasing his sovereign; and even the fruits of his marriage-hall were blasted by the jealous artifices of Eunalia.

25 Annemann, I. xvi. p. 854. Zosimus, ii. 36, p. 127, 128. 26 Julianus, de S.P.R.A. p. 370, 371. Ephraemi, Chron. a. 369, J. p. 135. 27 See Austin, Miscell. i. c. 230. 28 See Zosimus, x. 4. 29 Julianus, vi. c. 150. 30 He was a guest of the Emperor at Rome... Julianus was a guest of the Emperor at Rome, and was asked to join the emperor, very very, the son and ally of his illustrious teacher, the great Constantine. 31 Eunalia continued her deadly, her base schemes. The court people, who never expected to see Julian in danger, were taken by surprise. They were not prepared to face the disasters which befell the people... 32 He remained a captive, like the other captives, in a very low estate. The son and ally of his illustrious teacher, the great Constantine.
herself, who, on this occasion alone, seems to have been untimely of the unreasonableness of her sex, and the generosity of her character. The memory of his father and of his brothers reminded Julian of his own danger; and his apprehensions were increased by the recent and unhappy fate of Sylvanus. In the summer which preceded his own elevation, that general had been chosen to deliver Gaul from the tyranny of the barbarians; but Sylvanus soon discovered that he had left his most dangerous enemies in the Imperial court. A deceiver informer, conspired by several of the principal ministers; procured from men of consequence letters by bribery, and seizing the whole of the contents, except the signature, filled up the vacant parchment with matters of high and treasonable import. By the industry and courage of his friends, the fraud was however detected, and in a great council of the civil and military officers, held in the presence of the emperor himself, the innocence of Sylvanus was publicly acknowledged. But the discovery came too late; the report of the calumny, and the sanguine zeal of his estate, had already provoked the indignant chief to the rebellion of which he was so unjustly accused. He assumed the purple at his head-quarters of Cologne, and his active powers appeared to menace Italy with an invasion, and Milan with a siege. In this emergency, Ursicinus, a general of equal rank, regained, by an act of treachery, the favour which he had lost by his eminent services in the East. Exasperated, as he might speciously allege, by injuries of a similar nature, he hastened with a few followers to join the standard, and to betray the confidence of his too credulous friend. After a reign of only twenty-eight days, Sylvanus was assassinated: the soldiers who, without any criminal intentions, had blindly followed the example of their leader, immediately returned to their allegiance; and the flatterers of Constantius celebrated the wisdom and felicity of the monarch, who had extinguished a civil war without the hazard of a battle.

The protection of the Illustrious frontiers, and the prosecution of the Arian Church, detained Constantius in Italy above eighteen months after the departure of Julian. Before the emperor returned into the East, he indulged his pride and curiosity in a visit to the ancient capital. He proceeded from Milan to Rome along the Amilian and Flaminian ways; and as soon as he approached within forty miles of the city, the march of a prince who had never vanquished a foreign enemy, seemed the appearance of a triumphal procession. His splendid train was composed of all the ministers of luxury; but in a time of profound peace, he was encompassed by the glittering arms of the numerous squadrons of his guards and eunuchs. Their streaming banners of silk, embossed with gold, and shaped in the form of dragons, waved round the person of the emperor. Constantius sat alone in a lofty car resplendent with gold and precious gems; and, except when he bowed his head to pass under the gates of the cities, he affected a stately demeanor of indefluxible, and, as it might seem, of insensible gravity. The severe discipline of the Persian youth had been introduced by the eunuchs into the Imperial palace; and such were the habits of patience which they had inculcated, that during a slow and surly march, he was never seen to move his hands towards his forehead to rub his eyes either to the right or to the left. He was received by the magistrates and senate of Rome; and the emperor surveyed, with attention, the civil honours of the republic, and the consular images of the noble families. The streets were lined with an innumerable multitude. Their repeated acclamations expressed their joy at beholding, after an absence of thirty-two years, the sacred person of their sovereign; and Constantius himself expressed, with some pleasantry, his affected surprise that the human race should thus suddenly be collected on the same spot. The son of Constantius was lodged in the ancient palace of Augustus: he presided in the senate, harangued the people from the tribunal which Crepus had so often ascended, assisted with unusual courtesy at the games of the circus, and accepted the crown of gold, as well as the panegyrics which had been prepared for the ceremony by the deputies of the principal cities. His short visit of thirty days was employed in viewing the monuments of art and power, which were scattered over the seven hills and the interjacent valleys. He admired the awful majesty of the capitol, the vast extent of the baths of Caracalla and Diocletian, the severe simplicity of the Pantheon, the musky greatness of the amphitheatre of Titus, the elegant architecture of the theatre of Pompey and the Temple of Peace, and, above all, the stately structure of the Forum and column of Trajan; acknowledging, that the voice of fame, so prone to inflate and to magnify, had made an inadquate report of the metropolis of the world. The traveller, who has contemplated the ruins of ancient Rome, may conceive some imperfect idea of the sentiments which they must have inspired, when they revealed their heads in the splendor of unattained beauty.

The satisfaction which Constantius had reaped from this journey, excited him to the generous conclusion of bestowing on the Romans some memorial of his own gratitude and munificence. His first idea was to imitate the equestrian and columnal statue which he had seen in the Forum of Trajan; but when he had maturely weighed the difficulties of the execution,99 he chose rather to embellish the capital by the gift of an Egyptian obelisk. In a remote but polished age, which seems to have preceded the invention of alphabet,
example; and the Imperial camp was crowded with the princes and ambassadors of the most distant tribes, who occupied the plains of the Lusser Poland, and who might have deemed themselves secure behind the lofty ridge of the Carpathian mountains. While Constantius gave laws to the barbarians beyond the Danube, he distinguished, with especial compassion, the Sarmatian exiles, who had been expelled from their native country by the rebellion of their slaves, and who formed a very considerable accession to the power of the Quadi. The emperor, embracing a generous but arthritic system of policy, released the Sarmatians from the bonds of this humiliating dependence, and restored them, by a separate treaty, to the dignity of a nation united under her government of a king, the friend and ally of the republic. He declared his resolution of asserting the justice of their cause, and of securing the peace of the provinces by the expulsion, or at least the banishment, of the Luminumites, whose manners were still infected with the vices of their servile origin. The execution of this design was attended with more difficulty than glory. The territory of the Luminumites was protected against the Romanians by the Danube, against the hostile barbarians by the Tysa. The marshy lands, which lay between these rivers, and were often covered by their inundations, formed an intricate wilderness, pernicious only to the inhabitants, who were acquainted with its secret passes and inaccessible forresses. On the approach of Constantius, the Luminumites tried the efficacy of prayers, of fraud, and of arms; but to securely reject their supplications, defeated their rude stratagems, and repelled with skill and firmness the efforts of their irregular valour. One of their most warlike tribes, established in a small island towards the conflux of the Tysa and the Danube, consented to pass the river with the intention of surprising the emperor during the security of an amicable conference. They soon became the victims of the perfidy which they meditated. Encompassed on every side, trampled down by the cavalry, slaughtered by the swords of the legions, they despaired of life for mercy; and with an undaunted countenance still grasped their weapons in the agonies of death. After this victory a considerable body of Romanians was landed on the opposite banks of the Danube; the Taifals, a Gothic tribe engaged in the service of the empire, invaded the Luminumites on the side of the Tysa; and their former masters, the free Sarmatians, animated by hope and revenge, penetrated through the hilly country into the heart of their ancient possessions. A general confusion revealed the nuts of the barbarians, which were wasted in the depth of the wilderness; and the soldier fought with confidence on marshy ground, which it was dangerous for him to trust. In this extremity
the bravest of the Lusignans were resolved to die in arms, rather than to yield: but the milder sentiment, enforced by the authority of their elders, at length prevailed; and the suppliants, followed by their wives and children, repaired to the Imperial camp, to learn their fate from the mouth of the conquerors. After celebrating his own elevation, which was still inclined to pardon their repeated crimes, and to spare the remnant of a guilty nation, Constantine assigned for the place of its exile a remote country, where they might enjoy a safe and honorable repose. The Lusignans obeyed with reluctance; but before they could reach, at least before they could occupy, their destined situation, they returned to the banks of the Danube, accommodating the hardships of their situation, and requesting with fervent professions of fidelity, that the emperor would grant them an undisturbed settlement within the limits of the Roman provinces. Instead of consulting his own purpose of their incurable perfidy, Constantine listened to his flatterers, who were ready to represent the honour and advantage of accepting a colony of soldiers, at a time when it was much easier to obtain the pecuniary contributions than the military service of the subjects of the empire. The Lusignans were permitted to pass the Danube; and the emperor gave audience to the multitude in a large plain, near the modern city of Ruda. They surrounded the tribunal, and seemed to bear with respect an anxious full of misfortunes and dignity, when one of the barbarians, casting his shoe into the air, exclaimed with a loud voice, Meba! Meba! a word of defiance, which was received as the signal of the tumult. They rushed with fury to seize the person of the emperor; his royal throne and golden couch were pillaged by these rude hands; but the faithful defence of his guards, who died at his feet, allowed him a moment to mount a fleet horse, and to escape from the confusion. The disgrace which had been incurred by a treacherous surprise was soon retrieved by the numbers and discipline of the Romans, and the combat was only terminated by the extinction of the name and nation of the Lusignans. The three Serbsians were reinstated in the possession of their ancient arms; and although Constantine distinguished the merit of their character, he entertained some hope that a sense of gratitude might influence their future conduct. He laid on them the same system of laws and discipline as Justinian bestowed on Zizana, one of the most illustrious of their chiefs. He conferred on him the title of King; and Zizana proved that he was not unworthy to reign, by a sincere and lasting attachment to the interest of his benefactor, who, after this splendid success, received the name of Servianus from the acclamations of his victorious army. While the Roman emperor and the Persian monarch, at the distance of three thousand miles, defended their extreme limits against the barbarism of the Danube and of the Otons, their intermediate frontier experienced the vicissitudes of a long and war, and a precarious truce. Two of the eastern ministers of Constantine, the protonotary prefect Mosponian, whose abilities were disgraced by the want of truth and integrity, and the Cavshman of Mesopotamia, a fellow civil servant, opened a secret negotiation with the sarracens. 39 In pursuit of peace, translated into the servile and flattering language of Asia, were transmitted to the camp of the Great King, who was disposed to signify, by an embassy, the terms which he was inclined to grant to the suppliant Armenians. Narces, whom he invested with that character, was honourably received in his passage through Antioch and Constansopolis, reaching the Indies after a long journey, and at his first audience, respectfully unfolded the sullen veil which covered the happiness episode of his sovereign. Sapor, King of kings, and Father of the Sun and Moon (such were the lofty titles affected by Oriental vanity), expressed his satisfaction that his brother, Constantius Caesar, had been taught wisdom by adversity. As the lawless successor of Darina, Hydraspes, Sapor asserted, that the river Strymon, in Macedonia, was the true and ancient boundary of his empire; declaring, however, that, as an evidence of his moderation, he would content himself with the provinces of Armenia and Mesopotamia, which had been triumphantly extirpated from his ancestors. He alleged, that, without the restitution of these disputed countries, it was impossible to establish any treaty on a solid and permanent basis; and he arrogantly threatened, that if his ambassador returned in vain, he was prepared to take the field in the spring, and to support the justice of his cause by the strength of his inextinguishable arms. Narces, who was endowed with the most polite and amiable manners, enchanted, as far as was consistent with his duty, to soften the harshness of the message. Both the style and substance were maturely weighed in the Imperial council, and he was dismissed with the following answer: "Constantine had a right to disclaim the offer of his subjects, who had acted without any specific order from the throne. He was not, however, adverse to so equal and honourable treatment, but it was highly inconsistent, as well as absurd, to propose to the sole and victorious emperor of the Roman world, the same conditions of peace which he had indignantly rejected at the time when his power was contracted within the narrow limits of the East; the choice of arms was uncertain; and Sapor should recollect, that if the Romans had sometimes been vanquished in battle, they had almost always been successful in the event of war." A few days after the departure of Narces, three ambassadors were sent to the court of Sapor, who was already returned from the Syrian expedition to his ordinary residence of Ctesiphon. A council, a treaty, and a sequel, had been selected

39 Constantine incurred the hatred of the Persians by his policy of conciliation and submission; he retained his empire with much danger.
40 Sapor, King of kings, and Father of the Sun and Moon.
for this important commission; and Constantine, who was secretly anxious for the conclusion of the peace, entertained some hopes that the dignity of the first of these ministers, the dexterity of the second, and the rhetoric of the third, would persuade the Persian monarch to abate of the rigour of his demands. But the progress of their negotiation was opposed and defeated by the hostile arts of Antoninus, a Roman subject of Syria, who had fled from oppression, and was admitted into the councils of Sapor, and even to the royal table, where, according to the custom of the Persians, the most important business was frequently discussed. The dexterous fugitive promoted his interest by the same conduct which gratified his revenge. He incessantly urged the ambition of his new master, to embrace the favourable opportunity when the bravest of the Palatine troops were employed with the emperor in a distant war on the Danube. He pressed Sapor to invade the exhausted and defenceless provinces of the East, with the numerous armies of Persia, now fortified by the alliance and accession of the fiercest barbarians. The ambassadors of Rome retired without success, and a second embassy, of a still more honourable rank, was detained in strict confinement, and threatened either with death or exile.

The military historian, who was himself despatched to observe the army of the Persians, as they were preparing to construct a bridge of boats over the Tigris, beheld from an eminence the plain of Assyria, as far as the edge of the horizon, covered with men, with horses, and with arms. Sapor appeared in the front, conspicuous by the splendour of his purple. On his left hand, the place of honour among the Orientals, Grumbates, king of the Chionites, displayed the stern countenance of an aged and renowned warrior. The monarch had reserved a similar place on his right hand for the king of the Albanians, who led his independent tribes from the shores of the Caspian. The squabes and generals were distributed according to their several ranks, and the whole army, besides the numerous train of Oriental luxury, consisted of more than one hundred thousand effective men, laureated to fatigue, and selected from the bravest nations of Asia. The Roman despot, who in some measure guided the councils of Sapor, had prudently advised, that, instead of wasting the summer in tedious and difficult siege, he should march directly to the Ephrates, and press forwards without delay to seize the fleshy and wealthy metropolis of Syria. But the Persians were no sooner advanced into the plains of Mesopotamia, than they discovered that every precaution had been used which could retard their progress, or defeat their design. The inhabitants, with their cattle, were secured in places of strength; the green forage throughout the country was set on fire, the banks of the river were fortified by sharp stakes; military engines were planted on the opposite banks, and a reasonable swell of the waters of the Euphrates deferred the barbarians from attempting the ordinary passage of the bridge of Tarsipes. Their skilful guide, changing his plan of operations, then conducted the army by a longer circuit, but through a fertile territory, towards the bend of the Euphrates, where the infusor river is reduced to a shallow and accessible stream. Sapor overlooked, with prudent indolence, the strength of Nisibis; but as he passed under the walls of Amida, he resolved to try whether the majesty of his presence would not give the barbarians into immediate submission. The seditious insolence of a random dart, which glanced against the royal tibia, convinced him of his error; and the indignant monarch listened with impatience to the advice of his ministers, who conjured him not to sacrifice the success of his ambition to the gratification of his resentment.

The following day Grumbates advanced towards the gates with a select body of troops, and required the instant surrender of the city, as the only atonement which could be accepted for such an act of rashness and insolence. His proposals were answered by a general discharge, and his only son, a beautiful and valiant youth, was pierced through the heart by a javelin, shot from one of the boltists. The funeral of the prince of the Chionites was celebrated according to the rites of his country; and the grief of his aged father was alleviated by the solemn promise of Sapor, that the guilty city of Amida should serve as a funeral pile to expiate the death, and to perpetuate the memory, of his son.

The ancient city of Amida, which sometimes assumes the provincial appellation of Diarbekir, is advantageously situated in a fertile plain, watered by the natural and artificial channels of the Tigris, of which the least inconvenient stream bends in a semicircular form round the eastern part of the city. The emperor Constantine had recently conferred on Amida the honour of his own name, and the additional fortifications of strong walls and lofty towers. It was provided with an arsenal of military engines, and the ordinary garrison had been reinforced to the amount of seven legions, when the place was invested by the arms of Sapor. His first and most sanguine hopes depended on the success of a general assault. To the several nations which followed his standard their respective posts were assigned...

35 Asarius, l. i. 8., 9. 36 In the beginning of the war, Sapor, surnamed Deirbekrit, in Greek Dierbecheri, by the oriental historian...
the south to the Verder; the north to the Allia-
nians; the east to the Chionites, inflamed with
grief and indignation; the west to the Segestans,
the bravest of his warriors, who covered their
front with a formidable line of Indian ele-
phants. The Persians, on every side, sup-
ported their efforts, and animated their courage;
and the monarch himself, careless of his rank
and safety, displayed, in the prosecution of the
slaughter, the ardour of a youthful soldier. After
an obstinate combat, the barbarians were re-
pelled; they incessantly returned to the charge;
they were again driven back with a dreadful
shriek, and two rebel legions of Gauls, who
had been detached from the East, signalled their
undisciplined courage by a nocturnal sally into
the heart of the Persian camp. In one of the
fiercest of these repeated assaults, Amida was
betrayed by the treachery of a deserter, who
indicated to the barbarians a secret and neglected
staircase, scooped out of the rock that hangs over
the stream of the Tigris. Scarcely chosen archers
of the royal guard ascended in silence to the
third storey of a lofty tower, which commanded the
precipice; they elevated on high the Persian
banner, the signal of confidence to the assailants,
and of dismay to the besieged; and if this de-
voted hand could have maintained its post a
few minutes longer, the reduction of the place
might have been purchased by the sacrifice of
their lives. After Sapor had tried, without suc-
cess, the efficacy of force and of stratagem, he
had recourse to the slower but certain operations
of a regular siege, in the conduct of which he was instructed by the skill of the
Roman desertsers. The trenches were opened at
a convenient distance, and the troops destined for
that service advanced under the portable cover
of strong hurdles, to fill up the ditch, and under-
mine the foundations of the walls. Wooden
towers were at the same time constructed, and
moved forwards on wheels, till the soldiers, who
were provided with every species of missile wea-
pons, could engage almost on level ground with
the troops who defended the rampart. Every
mode of resistance which art could suggest, or
strategy could execute, was employed in the
defence of Amida, and the works of Sapor were
more than once destroyed by the fire of the
Romans. But the resources of a besieged city
may be exhausted. The Persians required their
losses, and pursued their approach; a large breach
was made by the battering-ram, and the
strength of the garrison, wasted by the assault
and by dissension, yielded to the fury of the assault.
The soldiers, the citizens, their wives, their
children, all who had not time to escape through
the opposite gate, were involved by the conquerrors in a precipitous massacre.

But the ruin of Amida was the commencement
of the Roman provinces. As soon as the first transports of victory had re-
sided, Sapor was at leisure to reflect, that to extirpate a disobedient city, he had lost the flower of his troops, and the most favourable season for con-
quest. Thirty thousand of his veterans had fallen under the walls of Amida, during the
continuance of a siege which lasted seventy-three
days; and the disappointed monarch returned to
his capital with affected triumph and secret mor-
ification. It is more than probable, that the
inconstancy of his barbarian allies was tempted
to relinquish a war in which they had encoun-
tered such unexpected difficulties; and that the
aged king of the Chionides, satiated with revenge,
turned away with horror from a scene of action
where he had been deprived of the hope of his
family and nation. The strength as well as spirit
of the army with which Sapor took the field
in the ensuing spring, was no longer equal to
the unlooked views of his ambition. Instead of
 aspiring to the conquest of the East, he was
obliged to content himself with the reduction
of two fortified cities of Mesopotamia, Singara and
Bamshad; the one situated in the midst of a
nearly desert, the other in a small peninsula,
surrounded almost on every side by the deep
and rapid stream of the Tigris. Five Roman
legions, of the diminutive size to which they had
been reduced in the age of Constantine, were
made prisoners, and sent into remote captivity
on the extreme confines of Persia. After dis-
mantling the walls of Singara, the conqueror
abandoned that solitary and unsequestered place,
but he carefully restored the fortifications of
Bamshad, and fixed in that important post a
garrison or colony of veterans, amply supplied
with every means of defence, and animated by
high sentiments of honour and fidelity. Towards
the close of the campaign, the armies of Sapor in-
curred some disgrace by an unsuccessful enter-
pise against Virtha, or Tectri, a strong, or, as it
was universally esteemed till the age of Tamer-
lane, an impregnable fortress of the independent
Arabs.

The defence of the East against
the arms of Sapor required, and
would have exercised, the abilities of the most
consummate general; and it seemed fortunate
for the state that it was the actual province of the
brave Ursicinus, who alone deserved the confidence of the soldiers and people. In
the hour of danger, Ursicinus was removed from
his station by the intrigues of the ennemies; and

38 Of these five nations, the Alansians are too well known to require
mention. The Segestans inhabited a large and fertile country,
which will be described upon a future occasion. The Chionites were
formerly a numerous and warlike nation, of whom the story
of Mithridates (Bk. ii. p. 128.) is so striking. The Segestans, in the
year of the centenary of the death of Vespasian (A.D. 118.), were
subjected to the dominion of Rome. A. 1. 129. The Persians, since
the time of Darius (Dion. Hal. l. x. 24.), have been an important
power in the history of the East. The Persians of modern times are
described in the Galatians of the prophecies. The Chionites are
not to be confounded with the Chionites of the Hebrews. See
Aristotle, Ethic. Rhet. ii. 3. "The Persians have been the
strongest allies of the Romans. 40. The Persians, during the
succeeding reigns, were in the habit of sending their envoys to Rome,
although the power of the Seljuk Turks was at its height. 41. The
Persians, during the reign of Leo, were forced by the advance of the
Seljuk Turks to make a league with the emperor. 42. The
Persians, during the reign of Leo, were forced by the advance of the
Seljuk Turks to make a league with the emperor. 43. The
Persians, during the reign of Leo, were forced by the advance of the
Seljuk Turks to make a league with the emperor. 44. The
Persians, during the reign of Leo, were forced by the advance of the
Seljuk Turks to make a league with the emperor.
the military command of the East was bestowed, by the same influence, on Sabinius, a wealthy and salutary veteran, who had attained the innumerable, without acquiring the experience, of age. By a second order, which issued from the same jealous and inconstant counsellors, Ursicinus was again despatched to the frontier of Mesopotamia, and condemned to sustain the labours of a war, the hosanna of which had been transferred to his unworthy rival. Sabinius fixed his insolent station under the walls of Edessa; and while he amused himself with the idle parade of military exercises, and moved to the sound of flutes in the Pyrrhic dance, the public defence was abandoned to the boldness and diligence of the former general of the East. But whenever Ursicinus recommended any vigorous plan of operations, when he proposed, at the head of a light and active army, to wheel round the foot of the mountains, to intercept the convoys of the enemy, to harass the wide extent of the Persian lines, and to relieve the distress of Amida; the timid and envious commander alleged, that he was restrained by his positive orders from endangering the safety of the troops. Amida was at length taken; its bravest defenders, who had escaped the sword of the barbarians, died in the Roman camp by the hand of the executioner; and Ursicinus himself, after supporting the disgrace of a partial enquiry, was punished for the misconduct of Sabinius by the loss of his military rank. But Constantine soon experienced the truth of the prediction which honest indignation had extorted from his injured lieutenant; that as long as such numbers of government were suffered to prevail, the emperor himself would find it no easy task to defend his eastern dominions from the invasion of a foreign enemy. When he had subdued or pacified the barbarians of the Danube, Constantine proceeded by slow marches into the East; and after he had waded over the smoking ruins of Amida, he formed, with a powerful army, the siege of Necabde. The walls were shaken by the reiterated efforts of the most enormous of the battering-rams; the town was reduced to the last extremity; but it was still defended by the patient and intrepid valour of the garrison, till the approach of the rainy season obliged the emperor to raise the siege, and ingloriously to retreat into his winter-quarters at Antioch. The pride of Constantine, and the ingenuity of his counsellors, were at a loss to discover any materials for panegyric in the events of the Persian war; while the glory of his cousin Julian, to whose military command he had intrusted the provinces of Gaul, was proclaimed to the world in the simple and concise narrative of his exploits.

In the blent fury of civil discord, Constantine had abandoned to the barbarians of Germany the countries of Gaul, which still acknowledged the authority of his rival. A numerous swarm of Franks and Alamanni were invited to cross the Rhine by presents and promises, by the hopes of spoil, and by a perpetual grant of all the territories which they should be able to subdue. But the emperor, who for a temporary service had thus imprudently provoked the rapacious spirit of the barbarians, soon discovered and lamented the difficulty of dismission these formidable allies, after they had tasted the rich fruits of the Roman soil. Regardless of the nice distinction of loyalty and rebellion, these undisciplined robbers treated as their natural enemies all the subjects of the empire, who possessed any property which they were desirous of acquiring. Forty-five flourishing cities, Tongres, Cologne, Trevir, Worms, Spira, Strasburg, &c. besides a far greater number of towns and villages, were pillaged, and for the most part reduced to ashes. The barbarians of Germany, still faithful to the maxims of their ancestors, avoided the confinement of towns, with which they applied the odious names of proletarians and hordes, and fixed their independent habitations on the banks of rivers, the Rhine, the Moselle; and the Meuse, they secured themselves against the danger of surprise, by rude and hasty fortification of large camps, which were filled and thrown across the roads. The Alamanni were established in the modern countries of Alsace and Lorraine; the Franks occupied the island of the Batavians, together with an extensive district of Brabanç, which was then known by the appellation of Toxandria, and may deserve to be considered as the original seat of their Gallic monarchy. From the sources, to the mouth, of the Rhine, the conquests of the Germans extended above forty miles to the west of that river, over a country peopled by colonies of their own name and nation; and the scene of their devastations was three times more extensive than that of their conquests. At a still greater distance the chief towns of Gaul were deserted, and the inhabitants of the fortified cities, who trusted to their strength and vigilance, were obliged to content themselves with such supplies of corn as they could raise on the vacant land within the enclosures of their walls. The diminished legions, deprived of pay and provisions, of arms and discipline, troubled at the approach, and even at the name of the barbarians.

Under these melancholy circumstances, an unexperienced youth was appointed to save and to govern the provinces of Gaul, or rather, as he expresses it himself, to exhibit the vain image of Imperial greatness. The retired scholastic education of Julian, in which he had been more conversant with books than with arms, with the devout than with the living, left him in profound ignorance of the middle age. Toxandria was a name given by the ancients to that part of Germany which the Franks, the Alsace, and the Batavians, and the Gallic nation of the Batavians, who inhabited the Rhine, the Meuse, and the Moselle, for the most part, by a number of colonies, that lay in the territories of the former, and between the two former, and between the two rivers. The year 1729, and seems to have been, Gaul, on the Rhine, the Moselle, and the Meuse, a period of great uneasiness, whose cause is happily exposed in the question, when we see the unhappy exposure of the
practical arts of war and government; and when he awkwardly repeated some military exercise which it was necessary for him to learn, he exclaimed with a sigh, "O Plato, Plato, what a task for a philosopher!" Yet even this speculative philosophy, which men of business are too apt to despise, had filled the mind of Julian with the noblest precepts, and the most shining examples; had animated him with the love of virtue, the desire of fame, and the contempt of death. The habits of temperance recommended in the schools, are still more essential in the severe discipline of a camp. The simple wants of nature regulated the measure of his food and sleep. Rejoicing with disdain the delicacies provided for his table, he satisfied his appetite with the course and common fare which was allotted to the meanest soldiers. During the vigour of a Gallic winter he never suffered a fire in his bivouack; and after a short and interrupted slumber, he frequently rose in the middle of the night from a carpet spread on the floor to despatch any urgent business, to visit his troops, or to spend a few moments for the prosecution of his favourite studies. The precepts of eloquence, which he had hitherto practised on fanciful topics of declamation, were more usefully applied to exalt or to persuade the passions of an armed multitude; and although Julian, from his early habits of conversation and literature, was more familiarly acquainted with the beauty of the Greek language, he had attained a complete knowledge of the Latin tongue. Since Julian was not originally designed for the character of a legislator, or a judge, it is probable that the civil jurisprudence of the Romans had not engaged any considerable share of his attention; but he derived from his philosophical studies an inflexible regard for justice, tempered by a disposition to leniency; the knowledge of the general principles of equity and evidence, and the faculty of patiently investigating the most intricate and refined questions which could be proposed for his discussion. The measures of policy, and the operations of war, must submit to the various accidents of circumstance and character, and the unsupervised student will often be perplexed in the application of the most perfect theory. But in the acquisition of this important science, Julian was assisted by the active vigour of his own genius, as well as by the study and experience of Salust, an officer of rank, who soon conceived a sincere attachment for a prince of the first dignity of his friendship; and whose ineradicable loyalty was subdued by the talent of ingratiating his humble truths without wounding the delicacy of royal ear.

Immediately after Julian had recognised the purple at Milan, he was sent into Gaul, with a formidable retinue of three hundred and sixty soldiers. At Vienna, where he passed a painful and anxious winter,
and had restrained the troops under his command from marching to the relief of Sena. If the Caesar had dispersed in silence so dangerous an insult, his person and authority would have been exposed to the contempt of the world; and if an action so criminal had been suffered to pass with impunity, the emperor would have confirmed the suspicions, which received a very specious colour from his past conduct towards the princes of the Flavian family. Marcus was recalled, and gently dismissed from his office. In his room Severus was appointed general of the cavalry; an experienced soldier, of approved courage and fidelity, who could advise with respect, and execute with zeal; and who submitted, without reluctance, to the supreme command which Julian, by the interest of his patronus Eusebia, at length obtained over the armies of Gaul. 

A very judicious plan of operations was adopted for the approaching campaign. Julian himself, at the head of the remains of the veteran bands, and of some new levies which he had been permitted to form, boldly penetrated into the centre of the German cantonments, and carefully re-established the fortifications of Soissons, in an advantageous post, which could either check the incursions, or intercept the retreat of the enemy. At the same time Barbaric, general of the infantry, advanced from Milan with an army of thirty thousand men, and passing the mountains, prepared to throw a bridge over the Rhine, in the neighbourhood of Basili. It was reasonable to expect that the Alamanni, pressed on either side by the Roman arms, would soon be forced to evacuate the provinces of Gaul, and to hasten to the defence of their native country. But the hopes of the campaign were defeated by the incapacity, or the envy, or the secret instructions, of Barbaric; who acted as if he had been the enemy of the Caesar, and the secret ally of the barbarians. The negligence with which he permitted a troop of pillagers freely to pass, and to return almost before the gates of his camp, may be imputed to his want of abilities; but the treacherous act of burning a number of boats, and a superfluous stock of provisions, which would have been of the most essential service to the army of Gaul, was an evidence of his hostile and criminal intentions. The Germans despised an enemy who appeared destitute either of power or of inclination to offer them; and the ignominious retreat of Barbaric deprived Julian of the expected support; and left him to extricate himself from a hazardous situation, where he could neither remain with safety, nor retire with honour.

As soon as they were delivered from the fear of invasion, the Alamanni prepared to chastise the Roman youth, who presumed to dispute the possession of that country, which they claimed as their own by the right of conquest and of treaties. They employed three days, and as many nights, in transporting over the Rhine their military powers. The fierce Chinomar, shaking the ponderous javelin, which he had victoriously wielded against the brother of Magnentius, led the van of the barbarians, and moderated, by his experience, the martial ardor which his example inspired. He was followed by six other kings, by ten princes of royal extraction, by a long train of high-spirited nobles, and by thirty-five thousand of the bravest warriors of the tribes of Germany. The confidence derived from the view of their own strength was increased by the intelligence which they received from a defector, that the Caesar, with a feeble army of thirteen thousand men, occupied a post about one and twenty miles from their camp of Strasbourgh. With this inadequate force, Julian resolved to seek and to encounter the barbarian host; and the chance of a general action was preferred to the tedious and uncertain operations that separately engaged the dispersed parties of the Alamanni. The Romans marched in close order, and in two columns, the cavalry on the right, the infantry on the left; and the day was so far spent when they appeared in sight of the enemy, that Julian was disposed of deferring the battle till the next morning, and of allowing his troops to recruit their exhausted strength by the necessary refreshments of sleep and food. Yielding, however, to some reluctance, to the clamours of the soldiers, and even to the opinion of his council, he exhorted them to justify by their valor the eager impatience, which, in case of a defeat, would be universally branded with the epithets of rashness and presumption. The trumpets sounded, the military shout was heard through the field, and the two armies rushed with equal fury to the charge. The Caesar, who conducted in person his own wing, depended on the dexterity of his archers, and the weight of his cuirassiers. But his ranks were instantly broken by an irregular mixture of light-horse and of light-infantry, and he had the mortification of beholding the flight of six hundred of his most renowned cuirassiers. The fugitives were stopped and rallied by the presence and authority of Julian, who, careless of his own safety, threw himself before them, and urging every motive of shame and honour, led them back against the voracious enemy. The conflict between the two lines of infantry was obstinate and bloody. The Germans possessed the superiority of strength and stature, the Romans that of discipline and temper; and as the barbarians, who served under the standard of the empire, united the respective advantages of both parties, their strenuous efforts were guided by a skilful leader, at length determined the event of the day. The Romans lost four
tribunes, and two hundred and forty-three soldiers, in this memorable battle of Strasburgh, so glorious to the Caesar, and so salutary to the afflicted provinces of Gaul. Six thousand of the Alamanni were slain in the field, without including those who were drowned in the Rhine, or transfixed with darts whilst they attempted to swim across the river. Clodomar himself was surrounded and taken prisoner, with three of his brave companions, who had devoted themselves to follow him or death the fate of their chief. Julian received him with military pomp in the council of his officers; and expressing a generous pity for the fallen state, displayed his honest contempt for the object, humiliation of his captives. Instead of exhibiting the vanquished king of the Alamanni, as a grateful spectacle to the cities of Gaul, he respectfully laid at the feet of the emperor this splendid trophy of his victory. Clodomar experienced an honourable treatment, but the impartial barbarian could not long survive his defeat, his confinement, and his exile.  

After Julian had repulsed the Alamanni from the provinces of the Upper Rhine, he turned his arms against the Franks, who were seated near to the sea on the confines of Gaul and Germany; and who, from their numbers, and still more from their intractable valor, had ever been considered the most formidable of the barbarians. Although they were strongly actuated by the allurements of rapine, they professed a disinterested love of war; which they considered as the supreme honour and felicity of human nature; and their minds and bodies were so completely hardened by perpetual action, that, according to the lively expression of an orator, the snows of winter were as pleasant to them as the flowers of spring. In the month of December, which followed the battle of Strasburgh, Julian attacked a body of six hundred Franks, who had thrown themselves into two castles on the Meuse. In the midst of that severe season they sustained, with indomitable constancy, a siege of fifty-four days; till at length, exhausted by hunger, and satisfied that the vigilance of the enemy, in breaking the ice of the river, left them no hope of escape, the Franks consented, for the first time, to dispense with the ancient law which commanded them to submit or to die. The Caesar immediately sent his captives to the court of Constantinople, who, accepting them as a valuable present, rejoiced in the opportunity of adding so many heroes to the choicest troops of his domestic guards. The obstinate resistance of this handful of Franks apprised Julian of the difficulties of the expedition which he meditated for the ensuing spring, against the whole body of the nation. His rigid diligence surprised and astonished the active barbarians. Ordering his soldiers to provide themselves with biscuit for twenty days, he suddenly pitched his camp near Tongres, while the enemy still supported him in his winter-quarters of Paris, expecting the slow arrival of his convoys from Aquitaine. Without allowing the Franks to unite or to deliberate, he skillfully spread his legions from Cologne to the ocean; and, by the terror, as well as by the success of his arms, soon reduced the suppliant tribes to improve the clemency, and to obey the commands of their conqueror. The Chamaviæans submissiveîy retired to their former habitations beyond the Rhine; but the Sueviæ were permitted to possess their new establishment of Tissandia, as the subjects and auxiliaries of the Roman empire. The treaty was ratifiable by solemn oaths; and perpetual imperium was appointed to reside among the Franks, with the authority of enforcing the strict observance of the conditions. An incident is related, interesting enough in itself, and by no means repugnant to the character of Julian, who ingenuously contrived both the plot and the catastrophe of the tragedy. When the Chamaviæans sought for peace, he required the sons of their king, as the only hostages on whom he could rely. A mournful silence, interrupted by tears and groans, declared the sad perplexity of the barbarians; and their aged chief lamented, in pathetic language, that his private loss was now embittered by a sense of the public calamity. While the Chamaviæans lay prostrate at the feet of his throne, the royal captive, whom they believed to have been slain, unexpectedly appeared before their eyes; and as soon as the tumult of joy was turned into attention, the Caesar addressed the assembly in the following terms:  

Beloved the son, the prince, whom you wept,  

You had lost him by your fault. God and the Romans have restored him to you. I shall still preserve and educate the youth, rather as a monument of my own virtue, than as a pledge of your sincerity. Should you presume to violate the faith which you have sworn, the arms of the republic will avenge the perjury, not on the innocent, but on the guilty. The barbarians withdrew from his presence, impressed with the warmest sentiments of gratitude and admiration.
It was not enough for Julian to have delivered the provinces of Gaul from the barbarians of Germany. He aspired to emulate the glory of the first and most illustrious of the emperors; after whose example he composed his own commentaries of the Gallic war. 

83 Caesar had resumed, with caution, the perilous manner in which he feared passed the Rhine. Julian could boast, before he assumed the title of Augustus, he had carried the Roman eagles beyond that great river in three successful expeditions. The consternation of the Germans, after the battle of Strasburg, encouraged him to the first attempt; and the reluctance of the troops soon yielded to the persuasive eloquence of a leader, who shared the fatigues and dangers which he imposed on the meanest of the soldiers. The villages on either side of the Meyn, which were plentifully stored with corn and cattle, felt the ravages of an invading army. The principal houses, constructed with some imitation of Roman elegance, were consumed by the flames; and the Caesar boldly advanced about ten miles, till his progress was stopped by a dark and impenetrable forest, undermined by subterraneous passages, which threatened, with secret snarls and ambush, every step of the assailant. The ground was already covered with snow; and Julian, after repairing an ancient castle which had been erected by Trajan, granted a truce of ten months to the submissive barbarians. At the expiration of the truce, Julian undertook a second expedition beyond the Rhine, to humble the pride of Sarmat and Hortaece, two of the kings of the Alemanni, who had been present at the battle of Strasburg. They promised to restore all the Roman captives who yet remained alive; and as the Caesar had secured an exact account, from the cities and villages of Gaul, of the inhabitants whom they had lost, he detected every attempt to deceive him with a degree of readiness and accuracy, which almost established the belief of his supernatural knowledge. His third expedition was still more splendid and important than the two former. The Germans had collected their military power, and moved along the opposite banks of the river, with a design of destroying the bridge, and of preventing the passage of the Romans. But this judicious plan of defence was discovered by a skilful diversion. Three hundred light-armed and active soldiers were detached in forty small boats, to fall down the stream in silence, and to land at some distance from the posts of the enemy. They executed their orders with so much boldness and celerity, that they had almost surprised the barbarian chiefs, who returned in the fearless confidence of intoxication from one of their nocturnal festivals. Without repeating the uniform and disgusting tale of slaughter and devastation, it is sufficient to observe, that Julian dictated his own conditions of peace to six of the haughtiest kings of the Alemanni, three of whom were permitted to view the severe discipline and martial pomp of a Roman camp. Followed by twenty thousand captives, whom he had rescued from the chains of the barbarians, the Caesar repassed the Rhine, after terminating a war, the success of which has been compared to the ancient glories of the Punic and Cimbric victories.

As a proof of the valour and conduct of Julian, he had secured an interval of peace; he applied himself to a work more congenial to his humane and philosophic temper. The cities of Gaul, which had suffered from the inroads of the barbarians, he diligently repaired; and seven important posts, between Mentz and the mouth of the Rhine, are particularly mentioned, as having been rebuilt and fortified by the order of Julian. The vanquished Germans had submitted to the just but humiliating condition of preparing and conveying the necessary materials. The active zeal of Julian urged the prosecution of the work, and such was the spirit which he had diffused among the troops, that the auxiliaries themselves, waving their exemption from any duties of fatigue, contended in the most servile labours with the diligence of the Roman soldiers. It was incumbent on the Caesar to provide for the subsistence, as well as for the safety, of the inhabitants and of the garrisons. The description of the former, and the mutiny of the latter, must have been the fatal and inevitable consequences of famine. The villages of the provinces of Gaul had been interrupted by the calamities of war; but the scanty harvests of the continent were supplied, by his paternal care, from the plenty of the adjacent island. Six hundred large vessels, framed in the forest of the Ardennes, made several voyages to the coast of Britain; and returning from thence laden with corn, supplied the Rhine, and distributed their cargoes to the several towns and fortresses along the banks of the river. The arms of Julian had restored a free and secure navigation, which Constantius had offered to purchase at the expense of his dignity, and of a tributary present of ten thousand pounds of silver. The emperor parsimoniously refused to his soldiers the sums which he granted with a lavish and trembling hand to the barbarians. The dexterity, as well as the firmness, of Julian, was put to a severe trial, when he took the field with a discontented army, which had already served two campaigns, without receiving any regular pay or any extraordinary donation.

A tender regard for the peace and happiness of the Dutch has converted the banks of Scheldt, a breastwork only, into the most elaborate and picturesque place of refuge...
of his subjects, was the ruling principle which directed, or seemed to direct, the administration of Julian. He devoted the leisure of his winter-quarters to the offices of civil government; and affected to assume, with more pleasure, the character of a magistrate, than that of a general. Before he took the field, he devoted on the provincial governors, most of the public and private causes which had been referred to his tribunal; but, on his return, he carefully revised their proceedings, mitigated the rigour of the law, and pronounced a second judgment on the judges themselves. Superior to the last temptation of virtuous minds, an indissoluble and intertemperate zeal for justice, he restrained, with calms and dignity, the warmth of an advocate who prosecuted, for exception, the president of the Narbonese province. "Who will ever be found guilty," exclaimed the vehement Delphus, "if it be enough to deny?" "And who," replied Julian, "will ever be innocent, if it is sufficient to affirm?" In the general administration of peace and war, the interest of the sovereign is commonly the same as that of his people; but Constantius would have thought himself deeply injured, if the virtues of Julian had defended him of any part of the tribute which he extorted from an oppressed and exhausted country. The prince who was invested with the emblems of royalty, might sometimes presume to correct the suspicions ardour of the inferior agents; to expose their corrupt arts; and to introduce an equitable and orderly mode of collection. But the management of the finances was more safely entrusted to Florentius, patriarch prefect of Gaul, an officious tyrant, incapable of pity or remorse; and the haughty minister complained of the most decent and gentle opposition, while Julian himself was rather inclined to consider the weakness of his own behaviour. The Caesar had rejected, with indifference, a mandate for the levy of an extraordinary tax; a new superstition which the prefect had offered for his signature; and the faithful picture of the public misery, by which he had been obliged to justify his refusal, offended the court of Constantius. We may enjoy the pleasure of reading the sentiments of Julian, as he expresses them with warmth and freedom in a letter to one of his most intimate friends. After stating his own conduct, he proceeds in the following terms: "Was it possible for the disciple of Plato and Aristotle to act otherwise than I have done? Could I shun the unhappy subjects intrusted to my care? Was I not called upon to defend them from the repeated injuries of those unfeeling robbers? A tribunal which devours his post is punished with death, and deprived of the honour of burial. With what justice could I pronounce a sentence, if, in the hour of danger, I myself neglected a duty far more sacred and far more important? God has placed me in this elevated post; his providence will guard and support me. Should I be condemned to suffer, I shall derive comfort from the contumacy of a rude and upright existence. Would to heaven that I still possessed a councillor like Stilicho! If they think proper to send me a successor, I shall submit without reluctance; and had much rather improve the short opportunity of doing good, than enjoy a long and lasting impunity of evil." The precautions and sedulous attention of Julian displayed his virtues, and concealed his defects. The young hero who supported, in Gaul, the throne of Constantius, was not permitted to reform the vices of the government; but he had cause to applaud the art to pity the distress of the people. Unless he had been able to revive the martial spirit of the Romans, or to introduce the arts of industry and refinement among their savage enemies, he could not entertain any rational hopes of securing the public tranquillity, either by the peace or conquest of Germany. Yet the victories of Julian suspended, for a short time, the incursions of the barbarians, and delayed the ruin of the Western Empire.

His salutary influence restored tranquility to the cities of Gaul, which had been assailed, so long exposed to the evils of civil discord, barbarian war, and domestic tyranny; and the spirit of industry was revived with the hopes of enjoyment. Agriculture, manufactures, and commerce, again flourished under the protection of the laws; and the знать, or civil corporations, were again filled with useful and respectable members: the youth were no longer apprehensive of marriage; and married persons were no longer apprehensive of posterity; the public and private festivals were celebrated with customary pomp; and the frequent and secure intercourse of the provinces displayed the image of national prosperity. A mind like that of Julian must have felt the general happiness of which he was the author; but he viewed, with peculiar satisfaction and complacency, the city of Paris, the seat of his winter residence, and the object even of his partial affection. That splendid capital, which now embraces an ample territory on either side of the Seine, was originally confined to the small island in the midst of the river, from whence the inhabitants derived a supply of pus and submarine water. The river bathed the foot of the walls; and the town was accessible only by two wooden bridges. A forest overspread the northern side of the Seine; but on the south, the ground, which now bears the name of the University, was insensibly covered with houses, and adorned with a palace and amphitheatre, baths, an aqueduct, and a field of Mars for the exercise of the Roman troops. The severity of the climate was tempered by the neighbourhood of the ocean; and with some corrections, which experience has taught, the vine and fig-tree were successfully cultivated. But, in remarkable winters, the Seine was deeply frozen; and the
huge pieces of ice that floated down the streams, might be compared, by an Asiatic, to the blocks of white marble which were extracted from the quarries of Phrygia. The licentiousness and corruption of Antioch, recalled to the memory of Julian the severe and simple manners of his beloved Lucetia, where the amusements of the theatre were unknown or despised. He indignantly contrasted the effeminate Syrians with the brave and honest simplicity of the Gauls, and almost forsook the Intemperance, which was the only stain of the Celtic character. If Julian could now revisit the capital of France, he might converse with men of science and genius, capable of understanding, and of instructing a disciple of the Greeks; he might excuse the lively and graceful futility of a nation, whose martial spirit has never been merrated by the indulgence of luxury; and he must applaud the perfection of that inimitable art, which softens and refines and embellishes the intercourse of social life.

**CHAP. XX.**

The Manners, Progress, and Effects of the Conception of Constantine. — Legal Establishment and Constitution of the Christian or Catholic Church.

The public establishment of Christianity may be considered as one of those important and domestic revolutions which excite the most lively curiosity, and afford the most valuable instruction. The victories and the civil policy of Constantine no longer influence the state of Europe; but a considerable portion of the globe still retains the impression which it received from the conversion of that monarch; and the ecclesiastical institutions of his reign are still connected, by an indissoluble chain, with the opinions, the passions, and the interests of the present generation.

In the consideration of a subject which may be examined with impartiality, but cannot be viewed with indifference, a difficulty immediately arises of a very unexpected nature; that of ascertaining the real and precise date of the conversion of Constantine. The eloquent Lactan-thus, in the midst of his court, seems impatient to proclaim to the world the glorious example of the sovereign of Gaul; who, in the first moments of his reign, acknowledged and adored the majesty of the true and only God.

The learned Rosseius has ascribed the faith of Constantine to the miraculous sign which was displayed in the heavens whilst he meditated and prepared the Italian expedition. The historian Zosimus maliciously asserts, that the emperor had imbued his hands in the blood of his eldest son, before he publicly renounced the gods of Rome and of his ancestors. The perplexity produced by these discordant authorities, is derived from the behaviour of Constantine himself. According to the strictness of ecclesiastical language, the first of the Christian emperors was unworthy of that name, till the moment of his death; since it was only during his last illness that he received, as a catechumen, the imposition of hands, and was afterwards admitted, by the initiatory rites of baptism, into the number of the faithful. The Christianity of Constantine must be allowed in a much more vague and qualified sense; and the nicest accuracy is required in tracing the slow and almost imperceptible gradations by which the monarch declared himself the protector, and at length the prince of the church. It was an arduous task to eradicate the habits and prejudices of his education, to acknowledge the divine power of Christ, and to understand that the truth of his revelation was incompatible with the worship of the gods. The obstacles which he had probably experienced in his own mind, instilled him to proceed with caution in the momentous change of a national religion; and he insensibly discovered his new opinions, as far as he could enforce them with safety and with effect. During the whole course of his reign, the stream of Christianity flowed with a gentle, though accelerated, motion; but its general direction was sometimes checked, and sometimes diverted, by the accidental circumstances of the times, and by the prudence, or possibly by the caprice, of the monarch. His ministers were permitted to signify the intentions of their master in the various languages which was best adapted to their respective principles; and he artfully balanced the hopes and fears of his subjects, by publishing in the same year two edicts; the first of which enjoined the solemn observance of Sunday, and the second directed the regular...
consultation of the Aravires. While this important revolution yet remained in suspense, the Christians and the Paganists watched the conduct of their sovereign with the same anxiety, but with very opposite sentiments. The former were prompted by every motive of zeal, as well as vanity, to exaggerate the marks of his favour, and the evidences of his faith. The latter, till these just apprehensions were changed into despair and resentment, attempted to coax the world, and from themselves, that the gods of Rome could no longer reckon on the emperor in the course of their votaries. The same passions and prejudices had engaged all the partial writers of the times to connect the public prosecution of Christianity with the most glorious or the most lugubrious era of the reign of Constantine.

Whatever symptoms of Christian piety might transpire in the discourses or actions of Constantine, he persevered till he was near sixty years of age in the practice of the established religion; and the same conduct, which in the court of Nicomedia might be imputed to his fear, could be ascribed only to the inclination or policy of the sovereign of Gaul. His liberality restored and enriched the temples of the gods; the medals which issued from his imperial mint were impressed with the figures and attributes of Jupiter and Apollo, of Mars and Hercules; and his filial piety increased the council of Olympus by the solemn apostheosis of his father Constantine. But the devotion of Constantine was more peculiarly directed to the genius of the Sun, the Apollo of Greek and Roman mythology; and he was pleased to be represented with the symbols of the God of Light and Poetry. The unerring shafts of that deity, the brightness of his eyes, his laurel wreath, immortal beauty, and elegant accomplishments, seem to point him out as the patron of a young hero. The altars of Apollo were crowned with the votive offerings of Constantine; and the deified multitude were taught to believe, that the emperor was permitted to behold with mortal eyes the visible majesty of their tutelar deity; and that, either waking or in a vision, he was blessed with the auspicious dreams of a long and victorious reign. The Sun was universally celebrated as the invincible guide and protector of Constantine; and the Paganists might reasonably expect that the insulted god would pursue with unrelenting vengeance the impiety of his ungrateful favourite.

As long as Constantine exercised a limited sovereignty over the provinces of Gaul, his Christian subjects were protected by the authority, and perhaps by the laws, of a prince, who wisely led to the gods the care of vindicating their own houses.

...
of an edict, which was designed to establish and secure, without any limitation, the claims of religious liberty. They condescend to assign two weighty reasons which have induced them to allow this universal toleration: the humane intention of complying the peace and happiness of their people; and the pious hope, that, by such a conduct, they shall appease and pacify the Deity, whose seat is in heaven. They gratefully acknowledge the many signal proofs which they have received of the divine favour; and they trust that the same Providence will for ever continue to protect the prosperity of the prince and people. From these vague and indefinite expressions of piety, they supposed may be deduced, of a different, but not of an incompatible nature, the mind of Constantine might fluctuate between the Pagan and the Christian religions. According to the loose and compounding notions of polytheism, he might acknowledge the God of the Christians as one of the same deities that composed the hierarchy of heaven. Or perhaps he might embrace the philosophic and pleasing idea, that, notwithstanding the variety of names, of rites, and of opinions, all the sects and all the nations of mankind are united in the worship of the common Father and Creator of the universe. 12

But the counsels of princes are more frequently influenced by views of temporal advantage, than by considerations of abstract and speculative truth. The partial and increasing favour of Constantine may naturally be referred to the extremity which he entertained for the moral character of the Christians; and to a persuasion, that the propagation of the Gospel would inculcate the practice of private and public virtue. Whatever amends an absolute monarch may assume in his own conduct, whatever indulgence he may claim for his own passions, it is undoubtedly his interest that all his subjects should respect the natural and civil obligations of society. But the operation of the wisest laws is imperfect and precarious. They seldom inspire virtue, they cannot always restrain vice. Their power is insufficient to prohibit all that they condemn, nor can they always punish the actions which they prohibit. The legislators of antiquity had summoned to their aid the powers of education and of opinion. But every principle which had once maintained the vigour and purity of Rome and Sparta, was long since extinguished in a declining and despotic empire. Philosophy still exercised her temperate sway over the human mind, but the cause of virtue derived very feeble support from the influence of the Pagan superstition. Under these discouraging circumstances, a prudent magistrate might observe with pleasure the progress of a religion, which diversified among the people a pure, benevolent, and universal system of ethics, adapted to every duty and every condition of life; recommended as the will and reason of the supreme Deity, and enforced by the sanction of eternal rewards or punishments. The experience of Greek and Roman history could not inform the world how far the system of national manners might be reformed and improved by the precedents of a divine revelation; and Constantine might listen with some confidence to the flattering, and indeed reasonable, assurances of Lactantius. The eloquent apologist seemed firmly to expect, and almost ventured to promise, that the establishment of Christianity would restore the innocence and felicity of the primitive age; that the worship of the true God would extinguish war and dissension among those who mutually considered themselves as the children of a common parent; that every unjust desire, every angry or selfish passion, would be restrained by the knowledge of the Gospel; and that the magistrates might sheath the sword of justice among a people who would be universally actuated by the sentiments of truth and piety, of equity and moderation, of harmony and universal love. 13

The passive and unresisting obedience, which bows under the yoke of authority, or even of oppression, must have appeared, in the eyes of an absolute monarch, the most conspicuous and useful of the evangelical virtues. 14 The primitive Christians derived the institution of civil government, not from the consent of the people, but from the decrees of Heaven. The reigning emperor, though he had usurped the sceptre by treachery and murder, immediately assumed the sacred character of vicegerent of the Deity. To the Deity alone he was accountable for the abuse of his power; and his subjects were indispensably bound, by their oath of fidelity, to a tyrant, who had violated every law of nature and society. The humble Christians were sent into the world as sheep among wolves; and since they were not permitted to employ force, even in the defence of their religion, they should be still more criminal if they were tempted to shed the blood of their fellow-creatures, in disputing the vain privileges, or the sordid possessions, of this transitory life. Faithful to the doctrine of the apostle, who in the reign of Nero had preached the duty of unconditional submission, the Christians of the three first centuries preserved their conscience pure and innocent of the guilt of secret conspiracy, or open rebellion. While they experienced the rigour of persecution, they were never provoked either to meet their tyrants in the field, or indignantly to withdraw themselves into some remote and sequestered corner of the globe. 15 The protestants of France, of Germany, and of Britain, who asserted with such inexpressible courage their civil and religious

12 See the fullest description of Lactantius (Divine Institutes, v. 3-4). These passages and passages as in the previous note.

13 See the most clear, luminous, and successful on the subject of the primitive state of man and the foundation of society. See Grotius, Introduc. ad legis., Bk. ii. ch. ii. 2. 1. Winer, Res. 11. 4. 1. Schleiermacher, Enzyklop. d. l. k. 3. 9. 9. See the best exposition of the subject. See Grotius, Introduc. ad legis., Bk. ii. ch. ii. 2. 1. Winer, Res. 11. 4. 1. Schleiermacher, Enzyklop. d. l. k. 3. 9. 9.
freedom, have been insulted; by the invincible comparison between the conduct of the primitive and of the reformed Christians. Perhaps, instead of censure, some applause may be due to the superior sense and spirit of our ancestors, who had convinced themselves that religion cannot abolish the unalienable rights of human nature. Perhaps the patience of the primitive church may be ascribed to its weakness, as well as to its virtue. A sort of unwilful plebanism, without leaders, without arms, without fortifications, must have encountered irresistible destruction in a rash and fruitless resistance to the master of the Roman legions. But the Christians, when they deprecated the wrath of Diocletian, or solicited the favour of Constantine, could allege, with truth and confidence, that they held the principle of passive obedience, and that, in the space of three centuries, their conduct had always been conformable to their principles. They might add, that the throne of the emperors would be established on a fixed and permanent basis, if all their subjects, embracing the Christian doctrine, should learn to suffer and to obey.

In the general order of Providence, princes and tyrants are considered as the ministers of Heaven, appointed to rule or to chastise the nations of the earth. But sacred history affords many illustrious examples of the more immediate interposition of the Deity in the government of his chosen people. The sceptre and the sword were committed to the hands of Moses, of Joshua, of Gideon, of David, of the Maccabees; the virtues of these heroes were the motive or the effect of the Divine favour, the success of their arms was destined to achieve the deliverance or the triumph of the church. If the judges of Israel were occasioned and temporary magistrates, the kings of Judah were derived from the royal function of their great ancestors, an hereditary and incapable right, which could not be forfeited by their own crimes, nor nullified by the caprice of their subjects. The same extraordinary providences, which had no longer confined to the Jewish people, might elect Constantine and his family as the protectors of the Christian world; and the devout Latins announce, in a prophetic tour, the future glories of his house and universal reign. Galerius and Maximin, Maximinus and Licinius, were the rivals who shared with the favourite of Heaven the provinces of the empire. The tragic deaths of Galerius and Maximin soon gratified the resentment, and fulfilled the sanguine expectations, of the Christians. The success of Constantine against Maxentius and Licinius, removed the two formidable competitors, who still opposed the triumph of the second David, and his cause might seem to claim the peculiar interposition of Providence. The character of the Roman tyrant disgraced the purple

and human nature; and though the Christians might enjoy his precocious favour, they were exposed, with the rest of his subjects, to the effects of his wanton and capricious cruelty. The conduct of Licinius soon betrayed the reluctance with which he had consented to the wise and humane regulations of the edict of Milan. The conversion of provincial synods was prohibited in his dominions; his Christian officers were ignominiously dismissed; and if he avoided the guilt, or rather danger, of a general persecution, his partial oppressions were rendered still more odious, by the violation of a solemn and voluntary engagement. While the East, according to the lively expression of Eusebius, was involved in the shades of infernal darkness, the auspicious rays of celestial light warmed and illuminated the provinces of the West. The piety of Constantine was admitted as an unexceptionable proof of the justice of his arms; and his use of victory confirmed the opinion of the Christians, that their hero was inspired, and conducted, by the Lord of Hosts. The conquest of Italy produced a general edict of toleration; and as soon as the defeat of Licinius had invested Constantine with the sole dominion of the Roman world, he immediately, by circular letters, exhorted all his subjects to imitate, without delay, the example of their sovereign, and to embrace the divine truth of Christianity.

The assurance that the elevation of Constantine was intimately connected with the designs of Providence, instilled into the minds of the Christians two opinions, which, by very different means, assisted the accomplishment of the prophecy. Their warm and active loyalty exhausted in his favour every resource of human industry; and they confidently expected that their strenuous efforts would be seconded by some divine and miraculous aid. The enemies of Constantine have imputed to interested motives the alliance which he insensibly contracted with the Catholic church, and which apparently contributed to the success of his ambition. In the beginning of the fourth century, the Christians still bore a very inadequate proportion to the inhabitants of the empire; but among a degenerate people, who viewed the change of masters with the indifference of slaves, the spirit and union of a religious party might assist the popular leader, to whose service, from a principle of conscience, they had devoted their lives and fortunes. The example of his father had instructed Constantine to calculate and to reward the merit of the Christians; and in the distribution of public offices, he had the advantage of strengthening his government, by the choice of ministers or generals, in whose fidelity he could reposes a just and unfrocked confidence. By the influence of these dignified missionaries, the proselytes of the new

Josephus secures the character of Constantine. 
His eulogium is confirmed by the facts. 
For the favourite of Heaven see Chrysostom, Hom. p. 153. c. 42. 
Galerius and Maximin, Maximinus and Licinius were the rivals who shared with the favourite of Heaven the provinces of the empire. The tragic deaths of Galerius and Maximin soon gratified the resentment, and fulfilled the sanguine expectations, of the Christians. The success of Constantine against Maxentius and Licinius, removed the two formidable competitors, who still opposed the triumph of the second David, and his cause might seem to claim the peculiar interposition of Providence. The character of the Roman tyrant disgraced the purple

and human nature; and though the Christians might enjoy his precocious favour, they were exposed, with the rest of his subjects, to the effects of his wanton and capricious cruelty. The conduct of Licinius soon betrayed the reluctance with which he had consented to the wise and humane regulations of the edict of Milan. The conversion of provincial synods was prohibited in his dominions; his Christian officers were ignominiously dismissed; and if he avoided the guilt, or rather danger, of a general persecution, his partial oppressions were rendered still more odious, by the violation of a solemn and voluntary engagement. While the East, according to the lively expression of Eusebius, was involved in the shades of infernal darkness, the auspicious rays of celestial light warmed and illuminated the provinces of the West. The piety of Constantine was admitted as an unexceptionable proof of the justice of his arms; and his use of victory confirmed the opinion of the Christians, that their hero was inspired, and conducted, by the Lord of Hosts. The conquest of Italy produced a general edict of toleration; and as soon as the defeat of Licinius had invested Constantine with the sole dominion of the Roman world, he immediately, by circular letters, exhorted all his subjects to imitate, without delay, the example of their sovereign, and to embrace the divine truth of Christianity.

The assurance that the elevation of Constantine was intimately connected with the designs of Providence, instilled into the minds of the Christians two opinions, which, by very different means, assisted the accomplishment of the prophecy. Their warm and active loyalty exhausted in his favour every resource of human industry; and they confidently expected that their strenuous efforts would be seconded by some divine and miraculous aid. The enemies of Constantine have imputed to interested motives the alliance which he insensibly contracted with the Catholic church, and which apparently contributed to the success of his ambition. In the beginning of the fourth century, the Christians still bore a very inadequate proportion to the inhabitants of the empire; but among a degenerate people, who viewed the change of masters with the indifference of slaves, the spirit and union of a religious party might assist the popular leader, to whose service, from a principle of conscience, they had devoted their lives and fortunes. The example of his father had instructed Constantine to calculate and to reward the merit of the Christians; and in the distribution of public offices, he had the advantage of strengthening his government, by the choice of ministers or generals, in whose fidelity he could reposes a just and unfrocked confidence. By the influence of these dignified missionaries, the proselytes of the new
The decline and fall

Chapter XX.

The decline and fall of Rome is a subject of great interest to historians. The fall of the Western Roman Empire in the 5th century AD marked the end of the Roman Empire as a single political entity. The reasons for this decline are multifaceted and include political instability, economic decline, invasions by various (Germanic) tribes, and the rise of Christianity as a major religion. The Eastern Roman Empire, which remained in existence as the Byzantine Empire, continued to explore the eastern Mediterranean and the Middle East. The fall of Rome had far-reaching consequences, influencing the development of Western Europe and the rise of new political entities like the Holy Roman Empire and the medieval kingdoms.
approved valour and fidelity; their station was marked by honours and emoluments; and some fortunate accidents soon introduced an opinion, that as long as the guards of the labarum were engaged in the execution of their office, they were secure and invulnerable amidst the darts of the enemy. In the second civil war Licinius fell and dreaded the power of this consecrated banner, the sight of which, in the distress of battle, animated the soldiers of Constantine with an invincible enthusiasm, and scattered terror and dismay through the ranks of the adverse legions. The Christian emperors, who respected the example of Constantine, displayed in all their military expeditions the standard of the cross; but when the degenerate successors of Theodosius had ceased to appear in person at the head of their armies, the labarum was deposited as a venerable but useless relic in the palace of Constantineople. Its honours are still preserved on the medals of the Flavian family. Their grateful devotion has placed the monument of Christ in the midst of the consigns of Rome. The solemn epitaphs of safety of the republic, glory of the army, restoration of public happiness, are equally applied to the religious and military trophies; and there is still extant a medal of the emperor Constantine, where the standard of the labarum is accompanied with these memorable words. By this sign thou shalt conquer." 36

II. In all occasions of danger or distress, it was the practice of the primitive Christians to fortify their minds and bodies by the sign of the cross, which they used, in all their ecclesiastical rites, in all the daily occurrences of life, as an infallible preservative against every species of spiritual or temporal evil. The authority of the church might alone have had sufficient weight to justify the devotion of Constantine, who, in the same prudent and gradual progress, acknowledged the truth, and assumed the symbol, of Christianity. But the testimony of a contemporaneous writer, who in a formal treatise has avenged the cause of religion, testifies on the pious of the emperor a more awful and sublime character. He affirms, with the most perfect confidence, that in the night which preceded the last battle against Maxentius, Constantine was admonished in a dream to inscribe the shields of his soldiers with the essential sign of God; the sacred monogram of the name of Christ; that he executed the commands of Heaven, and that his valour and obedience were rewarded by the decisive victory of the Milvian bridge. Some considerations might perhaps incline a sanguinary mind to suspect the judgment or the veracity of the rhetorician, whose pen, either from zeal or interest, was devoted to the cause of the prevailing faction. He appears to have published his "Deeds of the Persians at Nisimedia about three years after the Roman victory; but the interval of a thousand miles, and a thousand days, will allow an ample latitude for the invention of declarations, the credulity of party, and the tacit approbation of the emperor himself; who might listen without indignation to a marvellous tale which exalted his fame, and promoted his designs. In favour of Licinius, who still disdained his humility to the Christians, the same author has provided a similar vision, of a form of prayer, which was communicated by an angel, and repeated by the whole army before they engaged the legions of the tyrant Maximinus. The frequent repetition of miracles serves to provoke, where it does not subdue, the reason of mankind; but if the dream of Constantine is separately considered, it may be naturally explained either by the policy or the enthusiasm of the emperor. Whilst his anxiety for the approaching day, which must decide the fate of the empire, was suspended by a short and interrupted slumber, the venerable form of Christ, and the well-known symbol of his religion, might forcibly offer themselves to the active fancy of a prince who reverenced the name, and had perhaps secretly implored the power, of the God of the Christians. As readily might a consummate statesman indulge himself in the use of one of those military stratagems, one of those pièces fraude, which Philip and Scortina had employed with such art and effect. The præternatural origin of dreams was universally admitted by the nations of antiquity, and a considerable part of the Gallic army was already prepared to place their confidence in the salutary sign of the Christian religion. The secret vision of Constantine could be disproved only by the event; and the intrepid hero who had crossed the Alps and the Apennines, might view with careless despair the consequences of a defeat under the walls of Rome. The senate and people, exulting in their own deliverance from an odious tyrant, acknowledged that the victory of Constantine surpassed the
powers of man, without daring to insinuate that it had been obtained by the protection of the God. The triumphal arch, which was erected about three years after the event, proclaims, in ambiguous language, that, by the greatness of his own mind, and by an instinct or impulse of the Divinity, he had saved and avenged the Roman republic. The pagan orator, who had seized an earlier opportunity of celebrating the virtues of the conqueror, supposes that he alone enjoyed a secret and intimate commerce with the Supreme Being, who delegated the care of mortals to his subordinate deities; and thus assigns a very plausible reason why the subjects of Constantine should not presume to embrace the new religion of their sovereign. 44

III. The philosopher, who with calm suspicion examines the dreams and omens, the miracles and prodigies, of profane or even of ecclesiastical history, will probably conclude, that if the eyes of the spectators have sometimes been deceived by fraud, the understanding of the readers has much more frequently been insulted by fiction. Every event, or appearance, or accident, which seems to deviate from the ordinary course of nature, has been readily ascribed to the immediate action of the Deity; and the assured fancy of the multitude has sometimes given shape and colour, language and motion, to the fleeting and uncommon meteors of the air. Nazarius and Eusebius are the two most celebrated orators, who in studied panegyrics have laboured to exalt the glory of Constantine.

A.D. 324. Nine years after the Roman victory, Nazarius 45 describes an army of divine warriors, who seemed to fall from the sky; they marked their beauty, their spirit, their gigantic forms, the stream of light which bemooned from their celestial armament; their patient suffering themselves to be heard, as well as seen, by mortals; and their declaration that they were sent, that they flew, to the assistance of the great Constantine. For the truth of this prodigy, the Pagan orator appeals to the whole Gallic nation, in whose presence he was then speaking; and seems to hope that the ancient appearances 46 would now obtain credit from this recent and public event. The Christian fathers of Eusebius, which, in the space of twenty-six years, might arise from the original dream, is cast in a much more correct and elegant mould. In one of the marches of Constantine, he is reported to have seen with his own eyes the luminous trophy of the cross, placed above the meridian sun, and inscribed with the following words: By you, conquer. This amazing object in the sky astonished the whole army, as well as the emperor himself, who was yet undetermined in the choice of a religion; but his astonishment was converted into faith by the vision of the ensuing night. Christ appeared before his eyes; and displaying the same celestial sign of the cross, he directed Constantine to frame a similar standard, and to march, with an assurance of victory, against Maxentius and all his enemies. 47 The learned bishop of Caesarea appears to be sensible, that the recent discovery of this marvellous anthem would excite some surprise and distrust among the most pious of his readers. Yet, instead of ascertaining the precise circumstances of time and place, which always serve to detect falsehood, or establish truth; 48 instead of collecting and recording the evidence of so many living witnesses, who must have been spectators of this stupendous miracle; Eusebius contented himself with alleging a very singular testimony; that of the deceased Constantine, who, many years after the event, in the freedom of conversation, had related to him this extraordinary incident of his own life, and had attested the truth of it by a solemn oath. The prudence and gratitude of the learned poet forbade him to suspect the velocity of his victorious master; but he plainly intimates, that, in a fact of such a nature, he should have refused his assent to any meaner authority. This motive of credibility could not survive the power of the Flavian family; and the celestial sign, which the infidels might afterwards decide, 49 was disregarded by the Christians of the age which immediately followed the conversion of Constantine. 50 But the Catholic church, both of the East and of the West, has adopted the prodigy, which favours, or seems to favour, the popular worship of the cross. The reign of Constantine maintained an honourable place in the legend of superstition, till the hold and suspicious spirit of criticism presumed to depurate the triumphs, and to arrange the truth, of the first Christian emperor. 50

A.D. 325. The Protestant and philosophic readers of the present age will conclude to believe, that, in the account of his own conversion, Constantine attested a wilful falsehood by a solemn and deliberate perjury. They may not hesitate to pronounce,

45 Nazarius Eusebius, see the fragments quoted above. The inscription on the triumphal arch of Constantine, which has been copied by Ha.
46 Nazarius Eusebius, see the fragments quoted above.
47 Nazarius Eusebius, see the fragments quoted above.
48 Nazarius Eusebius, see the fragments quoted above.
49 Nazarius Eusebius, see the fragments quoted above.
50 Nazarius Eusebius, see the fragments quoted above.
that, in the choice of a religion, his mind was determined only by a sense of interest; and that (according to the expression of a profane poet 91) he used the altar of the church as a convenient footstool to the throne of the empire. A conclusion so harsh and so absolute is not, however, warranted by our knowledge of human nature, of Constantine, or of Christianity. In an age of religious fervour, the most artful statesmen are observed to feel some part of the enthusiasm which they inspire; and the most orthodox saints assume the dangerous privilege of defending the cause of truth by the arms of deceit and falsehood. Personal interest is often the standard of our belief, as well as of our practice; and the same motives of temporal advantage which might influence the public conduct and professions of Constantine, would instantly dispose his mind to embrace a religion so propitious to his fame and fortunes. His vanity was gratified by the flattering assurance, that he had been chosen by Heaven to reign over the earth; success had justified his divine title to the throne; and that title was founded on the truth of the Christian revelation. An ex-voto is sometimes excited by undeserved applause, the express piety of Constantine, if at first it was only spurious, might gradually, by the influence of praise, of habit, and of example, be matured into sincere faith and fervent devotion.

The bishops and teachers of the new sect, whose views and schemes had not qualified them for the residence of a court, were admitted to the imperial table; they accompanied the monarch in his expeditions, and the accoutments which one of them, an Egyptian or a Spaniard, acquired over his mind, was imposed by the Pagans to the effect of magic. 92 Lactantius, who has admired the precepts of the Gospel with the eloquence of Cicero; 93 and Eusebius, who has consecrated the learning and philosophy of the Greeks to the service of religion, 94 were both received into the friendship and familiarity of their sovereign; and those able masters of controversy could patiently watch the soft and yielding moments of persuasion, and dexterously apply the arguments which were the best adapted to his character and understanding. Whatever advantages might be derived from the acquisition of an imperial presence, he was distinguished by the splendour of his purple, rather than by the superiority of wisdom or virtue, from the many thousands of his subjects who had embraced the doctrines of Christianity. Nor can it be deemed incredible, that the mind of an unlettered soldier should have yielded to the weight of evidence, which, in a more enlightened age, has satisfied or subjugated the reason of a Grotius, a Pascal, or a Locke. In the midst of the incessant labours of his great office, this soldier employed, or affected to employ, the hours of the night in the diligent study of the Scriptures, and the composition of theological discourses; which he afterwards pronounced in the presence of a numerous and applauding audience. In a very long discourse, which is still extant, the royal preacher expatiates on the various proofs of religion; but he dwells with peculiar complacency on the Sibyline verses, 95 and the fourth eulogium of Virgil. 96 Forty years before the birth of Christ, the Mantuan bard, as if inspired by the celestial muse of Isaiah, had celebrated, with all the pomp of Oriental metaphor, the return of the Virgin; the fall of the serpent; the approaching birth of a godlike child, the offspring of the great Jupitor, who should expiate the guilt of human kind, and govern the peaceful universe with the virtues of his father; the rise and appearance of an invincibly race, a primitive nation throughout the world; and the gradual restoration of the innocence and felicity of the golden age. The poet was perhaps unconscious of the secret sense and object of these sublime predictions, which have been so strangely applied to the infant son of a peasant, or a tramp; 97 but if a more splendid, and indeed spurious, interpretation of the fourth eulogy contributed to the conversion of the first Christian emperor, Virgil may deserve to be ranked among the most successful missionaries of the Gospel. 98

The awful mysteries of the Christian faith and worship were concealed from the eyes of strangers, and even of catechumens, with an affected secrecy, which served to excite their wonder and curiosity. 99 But the severe rules of discipline which the priests of the bishop had instituted, were relaxed by the same prudence in favour of an imperial proconsul, whose it was so important to allure, by every gentle condescension, into the pale of the church; and Constantine was permitted, at least by a tacit dispensation, to enjoy most of the privileges, before he had contracted any of the obligations, of a Christian.

91 Let Constantine did our present solemnity grace; With sacred rites our present solemnity grace; And, on fire of the same altar consecrate. Let us sing of the same deity consecrate. 92 Men now trust to their own worldly happiness, let us serve them, and let us serve them. 93 He might serve as a subject, he was admitted to the imperial table; 94 he accompanied the monarch in his expeditions; and the accoutments which one of them, an Egyptian or a Spaniard, acquired over his mind, was imposed by the Pagans to the effect of magic. 95 Lactantius, who has admired the precepts of the Gospel with the eloquence of Cicero; 96 and Eusebius, who has consecrated the learning and philosophy of the Greeks to the service of religion, were both received into the friendship and familiarity of their sovereign; and those able masters of controversy could patiently watch the soft and yielding moments of persuasion, and dexterously apply the arguments which were the best adapted to his character and understanding. Whatever advantages might be derived from the acquisition of an imperial presence, he was distinguished by the splendour of his purple, rather than by the superiority of wisdom or virtue, from the many thousands of his subjects who had embraced the doctrines of Christianity. Nor can it be deemed incredible, that the mind of an unlettered soldier should have yielded to the weight of evidence, which, in a more enlightened age, has satisfied or subjugated the reason of a Grotius, a Pascal, or a Locke. In the midst of the incessant labours of his great office, this soldier employed, or affected to employ, the hours of the night in the diligent study of the Scriptures, and the composition of theological discourses; which he afterwards pronounced in the presence of a numerous and applauding audience. In a very long discourse, which is still extant, the royal preacher expatiates on the various proofs of religion; but he dwells with peculiar complacency on the Sibyline verses, and the fourth eulogium of Virgil. Forty years before the birth of Christ, the Mantuan bard, as if inspired by the celestial muse of Isaiah, had celebrated, with all the pomp of Oriental metaphor, the return of the Virgin; the fall of the serpent; the approaching birth of a godlike child, the offspring of the great Jupitor, who should expiate the guilt of human kind, and govern the peaceful universe with the virtues of his father; the rise and appearance of an invincibly race, a primitive nation throughout the world; and the gradual restoration of the innocence and felicity of the golden age. The poet was perhaps unconscious of the secret sense and object of these sublime predictions, which have been so strangely applied to the infant son of a peasant, or a tramp; but if a more splendid, and indeed spurious, interpretation of the fourth eulogy contributed to the conversion of the first Christian emperor, Virgil may deserve to be ranked among the most successful missionaries of the Gospel. The awful mysteries of the Christian faith and worship were concealed from the eyes of strangers, and even of catechumens, with an affected secrecy, which served to excite their wonder and curiosity. But the severe rules of discipline which the priests of the bishop had instituted, were relaxed by the same prudence in favour of an imperial proconsul, whose it was so important to allure, by every gentle condescension, into the pale of the church; and Constantine was permitted, at least by a tacit dispensation, to enjoy most of the privileges, before he had contracted any of the obligations, of a Christian.

95 Thissweet1000 was probably the year 311, Eludis's, in Hilding of the bishopric of the Church of England, p. 311. The Bishop of London has since been deprived. Bishop of London has since been deprived. 96 The bishop of London has since been deprived. Bishop of London has since been deprived. 97 The bishop of London has since been deprived. Bishop of London has since been deprived. 98 The bishop of London has since been deprived. Bishop of London has since been deprived. 99 The bishop of London has since been deprived. Bishop of London has since been deprived. 100 The bishop of London has since been deprived. Bishop of London has since been deprived.
Instead of retiring from the congregation, when the voice of the deacon dismissed the profane multitude, he prayed with the faithful, disputed with the bishops, preached on the most sublime and intricate subjects of theology, celebrated with sacred rites the vigil of Easter, and publicly declared himself, not only a partisan, but, in some measure, a priest and hierophant of the Christian mysteries. The pride of Constantine might assume, and his services had deserved, some extraordinary distinction; an ill-timed rigour might have blasted the unripe fruits of his conversion; and if the doors of the church had been strictly closed against a prince who had deserted the altars of the gods, the master of the empire would have been left destitute of any form of religious worship. In his last visit to Rome, he piously disclaimed and insulted the supervision of his ancestors, by refusing to head the military procession of the equestrian order, and to offer the public vows to the Jupiter of the Capitoline Hill. Many years before his baptism and death, Constantine had proclaimed to the world, that neither his person nor image should ever more be seen within the walls of an idolatrous temple; while he distributed throughout the provinces a variety of medals and pictures, which represented the emperor in an humble and supplicant posture of Christian devotion.

The pride of Constantine, who, instead of his oppressors, refused the privileges of a catechumen, cannot easily be explained or excused; but the delay of his baptism may be justified by the maxim and the practice of ecclesiastical antiquity. The sacrament of baptism was regularly administered by the bishop himself, with his assistant clergy, in the cathedral church of the diocese, during the fifty days between the solemn festivals of Easter and Pentecost; and this holy term admitted a numerous band of infants and adult persons into the bosom of the church. The discretion of parents often suspended the baptism of their children till they could understand the obligations which they contracted; the severity of ancient bishops exacted from the new converts a noviciate of two or three years; and the catechumens themselves, from different motives of a temporal or a spiritual nature, were seldom impatient to assume the character of perfect and initiated Christians. The sacrament of baptism was supposed to contain a full and absolute expiation of sin; and the soul was instantly restored to its original purity, and initiated to the promise of eternal salvation. Among the proselytes of Christianity, there were many who judged it imprudent to precipitate a salutary rite, which could not be repeated; to throw away an inestimable privilege, which could never be recovered. By the delay of their baptism, they could venture freely to indulge their passions in the enjoyments of this world, while they still retained in their own hands the means of a more and easy absolution. The sublime theory of the Gospel had made a much fitter impression on the heart than on the understanding of Constantine himself. He pursued the great object of his ambition through the dark and bloody paths of war and policy; and, after the victory, he abandoned himself, without moderation, to the abuse of his fortune. Instead of asserting his just superiority above the imperfect heroism and profane philosophy of Trajan and the Antonines, the mature age of Constantine forfeited the reputation which he had acquired in his youth. As he gradually advanced, in the knowledge of truth, he proportionally declined in the practice of virtue; and the same year of his reign in which he convened the council of Nice was polluted by the execution, or rather murder, of his eldest son. This date is alone sufficient to refute the ignorant and malicious suggestions of Zosimus, who affirms, that, after the death of Crispus, the remorse of his father accepted from the ministers of Christianity the expiation which he had vainly solicited from the Pagan pontiffs. At the time of the death of Crispus, the emperor could no longer hesita in the choice of a religion; he could no longer be ignorant that the church was possessed of an infallible remedy, though he chose to defer the application of it, till the approach of death had removed the temptation and danger of a relapse. The bishops, whom he summoned, in his last illness, to the palace of Nicomedia, were edified by the fervour with which he requested and received the sacrament of baptism, by the solemn protestation that the remainder of his life should be worthy of a disciple of Christ, and by his humble refusal to wear the Imperial purple after he had been clothed in the white garment of a Nazarene. The example and reputation of Constantine seemed to countenance the delay of baptism. Future tyrants were encouraged to believe, that the innocent blood which they might shed in a long reign would instantly be washed away in the waters of regeneration; and the abuse of religion dangerously undermined the foundations of moral virtue.

The gratitude of the church has exalted the virtues and excused the failings of a generous patron, who sealed Christian virtues for his own sake, and not merely for the world. The Church may be said to have been restored to its natural state by death alone among the apparatus of baptism. That although we should be praiseworthy in death, we shall be unworthy in life, if we lose sight of the end for which we live, is a perfect rule, and is moreover shown to have been observed in the church of Constantine, where there was an exercise both before and after her death, which was followed by a condition of public fasting. The end of the baptism was truly celebrated, and the grace of baptism was confirmed, when Constantine was buried in the church of the Lateran. 52 Zosimus, i. 7, p. 52.

53 Zosimus, i. p. 54. For the dissolution of his family, he has been the subject of many contradictions. He was born within the walls of the old city of Constantinople; he was very young when his father abandoned his wife and his son. His mother, afterwards called Eudoxia, brought him up, and he was educated in the royal palace. The death of his mother, according to Zosimus, took place in 313, but, according to other writers, Eudoxia died 315. The date of the year 324 is uncertain, and the year of his death is well fixed in 337.

54 Zosimus, i. p. 100. The bishop of Constantinople, Eusebius, begins his church at the time of the death of Constantine. He patronizes the bishops of the eastern empire, and the western empire, among which he is the first bishop to be raised in the church of the Lateran. Zosimus, i. 7, p. 52.

55 Zosimus, i. p. 54. The bishop of Constantinople, Eusebius, was the first bishop to be raised in the church of the Lateran. Zosimus, i. 7, p. 52.
Christianity on the throne of the Roman world; and the Greeks, who celebrate the festival of the Imperial saint, seldom mention the name of Constantine without adding the title of equal to the Apostles.  Such a comparison, if it alludes to the character of these divine missionaries, must be imputed to the extravagance of impious flattery. But if the parallel is confined to the extent and number of their evangelical victories, the success of Constantine might perhaps equal that of the Apostles themselves. By the edicts of toleration, he removed the temporal disadvantages, which had hitherto retarded the progress of Christianity; and its active and numerous ministers received a free permission, a liberal encouragement, to recommend the salutary truths of revelation by every argument which could affect the reason or piety of mankind. The exact balance of the two religions continued but a moment; and the piercing eye of ambition and avarice soon discovered, that the profession of Christianity might contribute to the interest of the present, as well as of a future, life. The hopes of wealth and honours, the example of an emperor, his exhortations, his irresistible smiles, diffused conviction among the sensual and voluptuous crowds which usually fill the apartments of a palace. The cities which signalized a forward zeal, by the voluntary destruction of their temples, were distinguished by material privileges, and acquainted with popular donatives; and the new capital of the East gloried in the singular advantage, that Constantinople was never profaned by the worship of idols. As the lower ranks of society were governed by imitation, the conversion of those who possessed any eminence of birth, of power, or of riches, was soon followed by dependent multitudes. The salvation of the common people was purchased at an easy rate, if it be true, that, in one year, twelve thousand men were baptized at Rome, besides a proportionable number of women and children, and that a white garb, with twenty pieces of gold, had been promised by the emperor to every convert. The powerful influence of Constantine was not circumscribed by the narrow limits of his life, or of his dominions. The salvation which he bestowed on his sons and nephews, escalated to the empire a race of princes, whose faith was still more lively and sincere, as they increased, in their earliest infancy, the spirit, or at least the doctrine, of Christianity. and commerce had spread the knowledge of the Gospel beyond the confines of the Roman provinces; and the barbarians, who had disdained an humble and proscribed sect, soon learned to esteem a religion which had been so lately embraced by the greatest monarch, and the most civilized nation, of the globe. The Goths and Germans, who assailed under the standard of Rome, revered the cross which glittered at the head of the legions, and whose fierce countrymen received at the same time the lessons of faith and of humanity. The kings of Iberia and Armenia worshipped the God of their protector; and their subjects, who have invariably preserved the name of Christians, soon formed a sacred and perpetual connection with their Roman brethren. The Christians of Persia were respected, in time of war, of preferring their religion to their country; but as long as peace subsisted between the two empires, the persecuting spirit of the Magi was effectually restrained by the interposition of Constantine. The eyes of the Gospel illuminated the coast of India. The colonists of Jews, who had penetrated into Armenia and Edessa, opposed the progress of Christianity, but the labour of the missionaries was in some measure facilitated by their previous knowledge of the Masonic revelation; and Abydusia still reverses the memory of Frumentius, who, in the time of Constantine, devoted his life to the conversion of those sequestered regions. Under the reign of his son Constantinus, Theophilus, who was himself of Indian extraction, was invested with the double character of ambassador and bishop. He embarked on the Red Sea with two hundred horses of the purest breed of Capadocia, which were sent by the emperor to the prince of the Sabaeans, or Hurmites. Theophilus was instructed with many other useful and curious presents, which might raise the admiration, and conciliate the friendship, of the barbarians; and he successfully employed several years in a pastoral visit to the churches of the torrid zone.

The irresistible power of the Roman emperors was displayed in the important and dangerous change of the national religion. The terror of a military force silenced the fated and unsupported murmurs of the Pagans, and there was reason to expect, that the cheerful submission of the Christian clergy, as well as people, would be the result of compliance and gratitude. It was
long since established, as a fundamental maxim of the Roman constitution, that every rank of citizens was alike subject to the laws, and that the care of religion was the right as well as duty of the civil magistrate. Constantine and his successors could not easily persuade themselves that they had forfeited, by their conversion, any branch of the Imperial prerogatives, or that they were incapable of giving laws to a religion which they had protected and embraced. The emperors still continued to exercise a supreme jurisdiction over the ecclesiastical order; and the sixteenth book of the Theodosian code represents, under a variety of titles, the authority which they assumed in the government of the Catholic church.

But the distinction of the spiritual and temporal powers, which had never been imposed on the free spirit of Greece and Rome, was introduced and confirmed by the legal establishment of Christianity. The office of supreme pontiff, which, from the time of Numa to that of Augustus, had always been exercised by one of the most eminent of the senators, was at length united to the Imperial dignity. The first magistrate of the state, as often as he was prompted by superstition or policy, performed with his own hands the ascerental functions; nor was there any order of priests, either at Rome or in the provinces, who claimed a more sacred character among men, or a more intimate communication with the gods. But in the Christian church, which intrusts the service of the altar to a perpetual succession of consecrated ministers, the monarch, whose spiritual rank is less honourable than that of the meanest descan, was seated below the rails of the sanctuary, and confounded with the rest of the faithful multitude. The emperor might be saluted as the father of his people, but he owed a filial duty and reverence to the fathers of the church; and the same marks of respect, which Constantine had paid to the persons of saints and confessors, were soon exacted by the pride of the episcopal office. A secret conflict between the civil and ecclesiastical jurisdictions embarrassed the operations of the Roman government; and a pious emperor was alarmed by the guilt and danger of touching with a profane hand the ark of the covenant. The separation of men into the two orders of the clergy and of the laity is, indeed, familiar to many nations of antiquity; and the priests of India, of Persia, of Arabia, of Judae, of Ethiopia, of Egypt, and of Gaul, derived from a celestial origin the temporal power and posses-

sions which they had acquired. These venerable institutions had gradually assimilated themselves to the manners and government of their respective countries; but the opposition or contempt of the civil power served to cement the discipline of the primitive church. The Christians had been obliged to elect their own magistrates, to raise and distribute a peculiar revenue, and to regulate the internal policy of their republic by a code of laws, which were ratified by the consent of the people, and the practice of three hundred years. When Constantine embraced the faith of the Christians, he seemed to contract a perpetual alliance with a distinct and independent society; and the privileges granted or confirmed by that emperor, or by his successors, were accepted, not as the precarious favours of the court, but as the just and inalienable rights of the ecclesiastical order.

The Catholic church was administered by the spiritual and legal jurisdiction of eighteen hundred bishops; of whom one thousand were seated in the Greek, and eight hundred in the Latin, provinces of the empire. The extent and boundaries of their respective dioceses had been variously and accidentally decided by the zeal and success of the first missionaries, by the wishes of the people, and by the propagation of the Gospel. Episcopal churches were closely planted along the banks of the Nile, on the sea-coast of Africa, in the proconsular Asia, and through the southern provinces of Italy. The bishops of Gaul and Spain, of Thrace and Pontus, regained over an ample territory, and delegated their rural suffragans to execute the subordinate duties of the pastoral office. A Christian diocese might be spread over a province, or reduced to a village; but all the bishops possessed an equal and indissoluble character: they all derived the same powers and privileges from the apostles, from the people, and from the laws. While the civil and military professions were separated by the policy of Constantine, a new and perpetual order of ecclesiastical ministers, always respectable, sometimes dangerous, was established in the church and state. The important review of their station and attributes may be distributed under the following heads: I. Popular election. II. Ordination of the clergy. III. Property. IV. Civil jurisdiction. V. Spiritual censures. VI. Exercise of public sanction. VII. Privilege of legislative assemblies.

I. The freedom of election subsisted long after the legal establishment.

see the epistle of Origen, ap. Athenagoras, c. 1. p. 360. The public emoluments which Origen lists in addition to the emoluments of the bishop of Alexandria, which he kindly named as his own reward, are three thousand pounds of grain, worth three thousand pounds of specie, the sum of which, according to Athenagoras, was two thousand pounds of specie. The public emoluments which are ascribed to the Roman episcopal see, in spite of the evidence of ancient writers, are three thousand pounds of grain, worth three thousand pounds of specie; three hundred pounds of gold; three thousand pounds of silver; and four hundred pounds of silver.

5 I am not aware whether Augustus and his successors considered the three thousand pounds of specie only in the ordinary revenue of the state. In the sixteenth book of the Theodosian code, we find the same sum of money ascribed to the emoluments of the bishop of Alexandria, and the same sum ascribed to the emoluments of the Roman see. The conditions of this donation have caused great perplexity in the church and state. The ordinary emoluments of the bishop of Alexandria are a very considerable sum of episcopal property.

6 As the title of the emperor Markianus, Martyr, bishop of Tyre, shows with some respectability, and gives us some idea of the extent and importance of the churches at that epoch, the history of the see of Tyre has been given in the preceding chapter. The history of the see of Tyre is interesting, and for a period of three centuries it is as interesting as the history of any of the sees of Rome or Constantinople. The emperor Markianus, Martyr, bishop of Tyre, was a benefactor of the see, and the history of his pontificate is given in the sixteenth book of the Theodosian code. The title of the bishop of Tyre is still the same. The bishop of Tyre is a very important see, and his episcopal character, which was founded on the seminary of the see of Tyre, is an important and useful institution.
where admitted, as a fundamental maxim of religious policy, that no bishop could be imposed on an orthodox church, without the consent of its members. The emperors as the guardians of the public peace, and as the first citizens of Rome and Constantinople, might effectually declare their wishes in the choice of a prince: but those absolute monarchs respected the freedom of ecclesiastical elections; and while they distributed and resumed the honours of the state and army, they allowed eighteen hundred perpetual magistrates to receive their important offices from the free suffrages of the people.

It was agreeable to the dictates of justice, that these magistrates should not desert an honorable station from which they could not be removed; but the wisdom of councils endeavoured, without much success, to enforce the residence, and prevent the translation, of bishops. The discipline of the West was indeed less relaxed than that of the East; but the same passions which made those regulations necessary, rendered them inefficient. The reproaches which angry prelates have so vehemently urged against each other, serve only to expose their common guilt, and their mutual indifferency.

II. The Bishops alone presided over the faculty of spiritual generation: for as no provinces and this extraordinary privilege might compensate, in some degree, for the painful solitude which was imposed as a virtue, as a duty, and at length as a passive obligation. The religions of antiquity which established a separate order of priests, dedicated a holy race, a tribe or family, to the perpetual service of the gods. Such institutions were founded for punishment, rather than conquest. The children of the priests enjoyed, with proud and insolent security, their sacred inheritance; and the fiery spirit of enthusiasm was abused by the cures, the pleasures, and the endorsements of domestic life. But the Christian sanctuary was open to every ambitious candidate, who aspired to its heavenly promises, or temporal possessions. The office of priests, like that of soldiers or magistrates, was strenuously exercised by times men, whose temper and abilities had prompted them to embrace the ecclesiastical profession, or who had been selected by a discerning bishop, as the best qualified to promote the glory and interest of the church. The bishops (all the abuse was restrained by the presence of the laws) might constrain the reluctant, and protect the distressed; and the imposition of bonds for ever bestowed some of the most valuable privi-

28 Thesaurus [Disciplinae ecclesiasticae], tom. ii. lib. 3, c. 8, p. 410. He has similarly recorded of the number of bishops during the fifth century in the province of Asia that "the Christian church, and even the patriarchs of the cities, was under the government of bishops, not only in the metropolis, but almost throughout the whole province." He also states that "the number of bishops, both in Asia and elsewhere, was not as large as it is now, but the number of churches was proportionately smaller."

29 All the changes made by Thesaurus [Disciplinae ecclesiasticae], tom. ii. lib. 3, c. 8, p. 410, and the subsequent work of the same author, show that there was a great increase of bishops in the eastern provinces, and that they were firmly established in these extensive regions.

30. The discipline of the clergy during the first 800 of the Christian era is known in a cabinet of discipline and council of bishops, which has been preserved in the libraries of Constantinople and Rome. It contains the decrees of the councils of the East and West, as well as the constitutions of various kingdoms, and the edicts of the emperors. This collection, which is valued at 400,000 florins, was presented to the patriarch of Constantinople by Emperor Henry IV., and is now at the齊ce of St. John Lateran.
logies of civil society. The whole body of the Catholic clergy, not numerous perhaps than the legions, was exempted by the emperors from all service, private or public, all municipal office, and all personal taxes and contributions, which pressed upon their fellow-citizens with intolerable weight; and the duties of their holy profession were accepted as a full discharge of their obligations to the republic. Each bishop acquired an absolute and indefeasible right to the perpetual obedience of the clerk whom he ordained; the clergy of each episcopal church, with its dependent parishes, formed a regular and permanent society; and the cathedrals of Constantinople, and Carthage maintained their peculiar establishment of five hundred ecclesiastical ministers. Their ranks and numbers were inseparably multiplied by the superstition of the times, which introduced into the church the splendid ceremonies of a Jewish or Pagan temple; and a long train of priests, deacons, sub-deacons, acolythes, exorcists, readers, singers, and doorkeepers, contributed, in their respective stations, to swell the pomp and harmony of religious worship. The clerical name and privilege were extended to many pious fraternity, who devoutly supported the ecclesiastical throne. Six hundred parishes, or parishes, visited the sick at Alexandria, one hundred and fifty, or grave-diggers, buried the dead at Constantinople; and the swarms of monks, who arose from the Nile, overspread and darkened the face of the Christian world.

III. The edict of Milan secured the religious and civil rights of the church. The Christians not only recovered the lands and houses of which they had been stripped by the persecuting laws of Domitian; but they acquired a perfect title to all the possessions which they had hitherto enjoyed by the connivance of the magistrate. As soon as Christianity became the religion of the emperor and the empire, the national clergy might claim a decent and honourable maintenance; and the payment of an annual tax might have delivered the people from the more oppressive tribute, which superstition imposes on her votaries. But as the waste and expenses of the church increased with her prosperity, the ecclesiastical order was still supported and enriched by the voluntary oblations of the faithful. Eight years after the edict of Milan, Constantine granted to all his subjects...
but the standard of their wealth insensibly rose with the dignity and opulence of the cities which they governed. An authentic but imperfect \textsuperscript{106} rent-roll specifies some houses, shops, gardens, and farms, which belonged to the three \textit{Basilicas} of Rome, St. Peter, St. Paul, and St. John Lateran, in the provinces of Italy, Africa, and the East. They produce, besides a reserved rent of oil, linen, paper, aromatics, \&c. a clear annual revenue of twenty-two thousand pieces of gold, or twelve thousand pounds sterling. In the age of Constantine and Justinian, the bishops too no longer possessed, perhaps they no longer deserved, the unostentation of the Hermit of Jericho and the Pharisee. The ecclesiastical revenues of the dioceses were divided into four parts; for the respective uses of the bishop himself, of his inferior clergy, of the poor, and of the public worship; and the abuse of this sacred trust was strictly and repeatedly checked.\textsuperscript{107} The patrimony of the church was still subject to all the public impositions of the state.\textsuperscript{108} The clergy of Rome, Alexandria, Thessalonica, \&c. might solicit and obtain some partial exemptions; but the premature attempt of the great council of Rimini, which aspired to universal freedom, was successfully resisted by the son of Constantine.\textsuperscript{109}

IV. The Latin clergy, who erected their tribunal on the ruins of the civil and common law, have modestly accepted, as the gift of Constantine,\textsuperscript{109} the independent jurisdiction, which was the fruit of time, of accident, and of their own industry. But the liberality of the Christian emperors had actually endowed them with some legal prerogatives, which secured and dignified the sacerdotal character.\textsuperscript{111} 1. Under a despotic government, the bishops alone enjoyed and asserted the inestimable privilege of being tried only by their peers; and even in a capital accusation, a synod of their brethren were the sole judges of their guilt or innocence. Such a tribunal, unless it was inflamed by personal resentment or religious discord, might be favourable, or even partial, to the sacerdotal order; but Constantine was satisfied,\textsuperscript{112} that secret impunity would be less pernicious than public scandal; and the Nicene council was adjourned by his public act, that if he surprised a bishop in the act of adulteries, he should cast his Imperial mantle over the episcopal dinner. 2. The domestic jurisdiction of the bishops was at once a privilege and a restraint of the ecclesiastical order, whose civil causes were decently withdrawn from the cognizance of a secular judge. Their penal offences were not exposed to the shame of a public trial or punishment; and the gentle correction, which the tenderness of youth may endure from its parents or instructors, was inflicted by the temperate severity of the bishops. But if the clergy were guilty of any crime which could not be sufficiently expiated by their degradation from an honourable and beneficial profession, the Roman皇帝 would decree the sentence of a secular judge, without any regard to ecclesiastical immunities. 3. The arbitration of the bishops was ratified by a positive law; and the judges were instructed to execute, without appeal or delay, the episcopal decrees, whose validity had hitherto depended on the consent of the parties. The conversion of the magistrates themselves, and of the whole empire, might gradually remove the fears and scruples of the Christians. But they still returned to the tribunal of the bishops; whose abilities and integrity they esteemed; and the venerable Austin enjoyed the satisfaction of complaining that his spiritual functions were perpetually interrupted by the irreligious labour of deciding the claim or the possession of silver and gold, of lands and cattle. 4. The ancient privilege of sanctuary was transferred to the Christian temples, and extended, by the liberal piety of the younger Theodosius, to the precincts of consecrated ground.\textsuperscript{113} The fugitive, and even guilty, suppliants, were permitted to implore either the justice, or the mercy, of the Delty and his ministers. The rash violence of despotism was suspended by the mild interposition of the church; and the lives or fortunes of the most eminent subjects might be protected by the mediation of the bishop.

V. The bishop was the perpetual censor of the morals of his people. The discipline of penance was digested into a system of canonical jurisprudence,\textsuperscript{114} which accurately defined the duty of private or public confession, the rules of existence, the degrees of guilt, and the measure of punishment. It was

\textsuperscript{106} See Baronius (Antiqu. Eccl. A.D. 384, No, 55, 55, 70, 71.)

\textsuperscript{107} See Resources of the church.

\textsuperscript{108} See Resources of the church.

\textsuperscript{109} See Resources of the church.

\textsuperscript{110} See Resources of the church.

\textsuperscript{111} See Resources of the church.

\textsuperscript{112} See Resources of the church.

\textsuperscript{113} See Resources of the church.

\textsuperscript{114} See Resources of the church.
impossible to execute this spiritual sentence, if the Christian pontiffs, who punished the obscure sins of the multitude, respected the conspicuous vices and destructive crimes of the magistrate; but it was impossible to assign the conduct of the magistrate, without controlling the administration of civil government. Some considerations of religion, or loyalty, or fear, protected the sacred persons of the emperors from the zeal or resentment of the bishops; but they boldly ensnared and excommunicated the subordinate tyrants, who were not invested with the majesty of the purple. St. Athanasius excommunicated one of the ministers of Egypt; and the interdict which he pronounced, of fire and water, was solemnly transmitted to the churches of Cyzicus. 135 Under the reign of the younger Theodosius, the polite and eloquent Symesius, one of the descendants of Heracleus, 136 filled the episcopal seat of Phocemus, near the ruins of ancient Cyrene, 137 and the philosophic bishop supported with diligence the character which he had assumed with reluctance. 138 He was amazed by the example of Libya, the president Ambrosius, who abused the authority of a venal office, invented new modes of rapine and torture, and aggrandized the guilt of oppression by that of sacrilege. 139 After a fruitless attempt to reclaim the haughty magistrate by mild and religious submission, Symesius proceeds to inflict the last sentence of ecclesiastical justice, which devotes Andronicus, with his associates and their families, to the abhorrence of earth and heaven. The impious sinners, more cruel than Phalaris or Semiserius, more destructive than war, pestilence, or a cloud of locusts, are deprived of the name and privileges of Christians, of the participation of the sacraments, and of the hope of Paradise. The bishop exhorts the clergy, the magistrates, and the people, to renounce all society with the enemies of Christ; to exclude them from their houses and tables; and to refuse them the common offices of life, and the decent rites of burial. The church of Phocemus, obscure and contemptible as she may appear, addresses this declaration to all her sister churches of the world; and the profane, who reject her decrees, will be involved in the guilt and punishment of Andronicus and his impious followers. These spiritual terrors were enforced by a decent application to the Byzantine court; the trembling president implored the mercy of the church; and the descendant of Heracleus enjoyed the satisfaction of raising a prostrate tyrant from the ground. 131 Such principles and such examples insensibly prepared the triumph of the Roman pontiffs, who have trampled on the necks of kings.

VI. Every popular government has experienced the effects of rule or artificial eloquence. The clearest nature is animated, the firmest reason is moved, by the rapid communication of the prevailing impulse; and each hero is affected by his own passions, and by those of the surrounding multitude. The ruin of civil liberty had silenced the demagogues of Athens, and the tribunes of Rome; the custom of preaching, which was meant to constitute a considerable part of Christian devotion, had not been introduced into the temples of antiquity; and the cares of monarchs were never invaded by the harsh sound of popular eloquence, till the pulpit of the emperor was filled with sacred orators, who possessed some advantages unknown to their profane predecessors. 140 The arguments and rhetoric of the tribunes were instantly opposed, with equal arms, by skilful and resolute antagonists; and the cause of truth and reason might derive an accidental support from the conflict of hostile passions. The bishop, or some distinguished presbyter, to whom he cautiously delegated the powers of preaching, harangued, without the danger of interruption or reply, a submissive multitude, whose minds had been prepared and subdued by the awful ceremonies of religion. Such was the strict subordination of the Catholic church, that the same concerted sounds might issue at once from an hundred pulpit of Italy or Egypt, if they were roused 141 by the master hand of the Roman or Alexandrine prince. The design of this institution was laudable, but the fruits were not always salutary. The preachers recommended the practice of the social duties; but they exalted the perfection of monastic virtue, which is painful to the individual, and odious to mankind. Their charitable examinations betrayed a secret wish, that the clergy might be permitted to manage the wealth of the faithful, for the benefit of the poor. The most sublime representations of the attributes and laws of the Deity were suffused by an idle mixture of metaphysical subtleties, puerile rites, and
fictitious miracles; and they expatrated, with the most fervent zeal, on the religious merit of hating the adversaries, and obeying the ministers, of the church. When the public peace was distracted by heresy and schism, the sacred orators sounded the trumpet of discord, and, perhaps, of sedition. The understandings of their congregations were perplexed by mystery, their passions were inflamed by interests: and they rushed from the Christian temples of Antioch or Alexandria, prepared either to suffer or to inflict martyrdom. The corruption of taste and language is strongly marked in the vehement exclamations of the Latin bishops; but the compositions of Gregory and Chrysostom have been compared with the most splendid models of Attic, or at least of Asiatic, eloquence.

VII. The representatives of the Christian republic were regularly assembled in the spring and autumn of each year; and these synods diffused the spirit of ecclesiastical discipline and legislation through the hundred and twenty provinces of the Roman world. The archbishop or metropolitan was empowered, by the laws, to summon the suffragans of his province; to revise their conduct, to vindicate their rights, to declare their faults, and to examine the merits of the candidates who were elected by the clergy and people to supply the vacancies of the episcopal college. The primates of Rome, Alexandria, Antioch, Carthage, and afterwards Constantinople, who exercised a more ample jurisdiction, convened the numerous assembly of their dependent bishops. But the convocation of great and extraordinary synods was the prerogative of the emperor alone. Whenever the emergencies of the church required this decisive measure, he despatched a peremptory summons to the bishops, or the deputies of each province, with an order for the use of post-horses, and a competent allowance for the expenses of their journey. At an early period, when Constantine was the protector, rather than the promulgator, of Christianity, he referred the African controversy to the council of Arles, in which the bishops of York, of Tréses, of Milan, and of Carthage, as well as friends and brethren, were to debate in their native tongue on the summons interest of the Latins and Western Church. Eleven years afterwards, a more numerous and celebrated assembly was summoned at Nice in Bithynia, to deliberate, by their final sentence, on the double dispute which had arisen in Egypt on the subject of the Trinity. Three hundred and eighteen bishops opposed the mons of their indulgent master; the ecclesiastics of every rank, and sect, and denomination, have been computed at two thousand and forty-eight persons; the Greeks appeared in person; and the consent of the Latins was expressed by the legates of the Roman pontiff. The session, which lasted about two months, was frequently honoured by the presence of the emperor. Leaving his guards at the door, he seated himself (with the permission of the council) on a low stool in the middle of the hall. Constantine listened with credence, and spoke with modesty; and while he influenced the debates, he humbly professed that he was the minister, not the judge, of the successors of the apostles, who had been established as priests and as gods upon earth. Such profound reverence of an absolute monarch towards a feeble and unarmed assembly of his own subjects, can only be compared to the respect with which the senate had been treated by the Roman princes who adopted the policy of Augustus. Within the space of fifty years, a philosophic spectator of the vicissitudes of human affairs might have contemplated Tarctius in the senate of Rome, and Constantine in the council of Nice. The fathers of the Capitol and those of the church had alike degenerated from the virtues of their forefathers; but as the bishops were more deeply rooted in the public opinion, they sustained their dignity with more decent pride, and sometimes opposed, with a manly spirit, the wishes of their sovereign. The progress of time and superstition erased the memory of the weakness, the passion, the ignorance, which disgraced these ecclesiastical synods; and the Catholic world has unanimously submitted to the infallible decrees of the general councils.

CHAP. XXII.


The grateful applause of the clergy has consecrated the memory of a prince who indulged their passions and promoted their interest. Constantin gave them security, wealth, honours, and revenge; and the support of the orthodox faith was considered as the most sacred and important duty of the civil magistrate. The edict of Milan, the great charter of toleration, had confirmed to each individual of the Roman

124 Those general councils acknowledged, that, as they were dictated by the gift of inspiration, they were in themselves a
125 The Council of Nice, in the fourth, fifth, and sixth centuries, is the subject of an excellent work by Dr. Mairon, in the Recueil des Actes des Synodes et des Conciles, tom. iv. p. 187. Dr. Mairon has contributed to our knowledge of this subject by copying the council of Nice, and by defending the council of Tréses against the objections of the indefatigable Pufendorf. The indefatigable Pufendorf, in a work entitled "De locis Decretalium," has the council of Tréses placed in the year 247. It may be supposed that this council was convoked by Julius Africanus. The church of Tréses, by the faith of the council of Arles, was placed in the year 247. The Trésiens, in the year 256, were buried in the church of Tréses. If the Trésiens were in the year 247, it may be supposed that the Trésiens were in the year 256.
126 In the year 301, the bishops of Antioch, Carthage, and Alexandria, in the name of their provincial bishops, composed a letter to the council of Asia. Two different compositions were composed: one was accepted by the council of Asia. The letters of the bishops of Antioch and Carthage were accepted by the council of Asia. The letter of Alexandria was rejected by the council of Asia. These two provinces were opposed to the provincial bishops, but the provincial bishops of Alexandria were not accepted by the council of Asia. The provincial bishops of Alexandria were not accepted by the council of Asia. The provincial bishops of Alexandria were not accepted by the council of Asia. The provincial bishops of Alexandria were not accepted by the council of Asia.
world the privilege of choosing and professing his own religion. But this inestimable privilege was soon violated; with the knowledge of truth, the emperor imputed the maxims of persecution; and the sects which dissent from the Catholic church, were afflicted and oppressed by the triumph of Christianity. Constantine easily believed that the heretics, who presumed to dispute his opinions, or to oppose his commands, were guilty of the most absurd and cruel obstinacy; and that a reasonable application of moderate severity might save those unhappy men from the danger of an eternal contemptible condenmation. Nor was there lost, in excluding the ministers and teachers of the separated congregations, any share of the rewards and immunities which the emperor had so liberally bestowed on the orthodox clergy. But as the sectaries might still exist under the cloud of royal disgrace, the conquest of the East was immediately followed by an edict which announced their total destruction. After a preparatory filled with passion and reproach, Constantine absolutely prohibited the assemblies of the heretics, and confiscates their public property to the use either of the government or of the Catholic church. The sects against whom the imperial severity was directed, appear to have been the adherents of Paul of Samosata, the Montanists of Phrygia, who maintained an enthusiastic succession of prophecy; the Novatians, who sternly rejected the temporal efficacy of repentance; the Marcionites and Valentinians, under whose leading banners the various Gnostics of Asia and Egypt had hitherto rallied; and perhaps the Manichaeans, who had recently been brought from Persia a more artful composition of Oriental and Christian theology. The design of extirpating the name, or at least of restraining the progress, of these odious heresies, was prosecuted with vigour and effect. Some of the penal regulations were copied from the edicts of Diocletian; and this method of conversion was applauded by the same bishops who had felt the hand of oppression, and had pleaded for the rights of humanity. Two immutable circumstances may serve, however, to prove that the mind of Constantine was not entirely corrupted by the spirit of zeal and bigotry. Before he condemned the Manichæans and their kindred sects, he resolved to make an accurate enquiry into the nature of their religious principles. As if he distrusted the impartiality of his ecclesiastical councillors, this delicate commission was intrusted to a civil magistrate; whose learning and moderation he justly esteemed; and of whose moral character he was probably ignorant. The emperor was soon convinced, that he had too hastily proscribed the orthodox faith and the exemplary morals of the Novatians, who had dissented from the church in some articles of discipline which were not perhaps essential to salvation. By a particular edict, he exempted them from the general penalties of the law; allowed them to build a church at Constantinople, respected the miracles of their saints, invited their bishop Acacius to the council of Nica; and gently rectified the narrow limits of his edict by another, which, from the mouth of a sovereign, must have been received with applause and gratitude.

The complaints and mutual accusations which assailed the throne of Constantine, as soon as the death of Maxentius had submitted Africa to his victorious arms, were ill adapted to edify an imperfect proselyte. He learned, with surprise, that the provinces of that great country, from the confines of Cyrene to the columns of Hercules, were distracted with religious discord. The source of the division was derived from a double election in the church of Carthage; the second, in rank and opinion, of the ecclesiastical thrones of the West. Cecilian and Majorian were the two rival princes of Africa; and the death of the latter soon made room for Donatus, who, by his superior abilities and parent virtues, was the firmer support of the party. The advantage which Cecilian might claim from the priority of his ordination, was destroyed by the illegal, or at least indecent, haste, with which it had been performed, without expecting the arrival of the bishops of Numidia. The authority of these bishops, who, to the number of seventy, condemned Cecilian, and consecrated Majorian, is again weakened by the infamy of some of their personal characters; and by the female intrigues, sacrilegious bargains, and tumultuous proceedings, which are imputed to this Numidian council. The bishops of the contending factions maintained, with equal ardour and obstinacy, that their adversaries were degraded, or at least dishonoured, by the odious crime of delivering the Holy Scriptures to the officers of Diocletian. From their mutual reproaches, as well as from the story of this dark transaction, it may justly be inferred, that the late persecution had embittered the zeal, without reforming the manners, of the African Christians. That divided church was incapable of affording an impartial judge; the controversy was solemnly tried in a court of law, and got up to heaven by itself." Romans of the Christian sect were henceforth admitted to all civil rights, and the edict of Galerius was confirmed by that of Constantine. As late as 250 AD, an edict was issued prohibiting the use of books of the Jewish law by all non-Jews, and specifying that the use of Hebrew, Aramaic, or Jewish-Greek dialects should be destroyed. This was in an effort to suppress the influence of Judaism among the Christians of the eastern empire. As a result of the persecution, many Christians were imprisoned or executed. In 314 AD, the emperor Constantine issued an edict of toleration, which granted religious freedom to all citizens of the empire. This edict was followed by the Council of Nicaea in 325 AD, which tried to resolve the conflict between the Arian and Nicene positions. The orthodox faith was established as the state religion of the Roman Empire. These events marked the beginning of the Christian Church as a major religious and political force in the empire.

---

1. Romans in VII. Commendami. I. cit. c. 31, 43, 44, 92.
2. After more description of the various opinions of Tertullian, Athenagoras, Lactantius, &c. I am conscious that Menæa did not profess the doctrine of the three persons of the Trinity; but I am not aware whether his idea was anything higher than that of the two personalities of the Godhead against the Nicenian Church, which was that of Jesus and the Father. (M. J. Robertson, A. D. 207.)
3. An instance of the remarkable contrast between the two parties is shown in the following extracts from the works of these historians: "The emperor Menæa is summoned to give an account of his proceedings before the council of Nicaea. He appears as one of the council, and is questioned by the bishops as to his proceedings against the adherents of the ancient sect. He is accused of maintaining the Nicene faith and of opposing the adversities of his opponents. (Tertullian, Polyc. xvi. 1.)"
4. Cuth. Theol. 1. iii. i. A. D. 313. As the general law is not inserted in the Theodoret case, it is not possible to refer to that document for the precise date of the edict. But it may be added, that it was probably issued before the year 315, when the Nicene Synod was held. (Theodoret, Hist. xvi. 1.) The same idea is conveyed by the writers of the time. (Tertullian, Polyc. xvi. 1.)"
five successive tribunals, which were appointed by the emperor; and the whole proceeding, from the first appeal to the final sentence, lasted above three years. A severe inquisition, which was taken by the praetorian vicar, and the procensors of Africa, the report of two episcopal visitors, who had been sent to Carthage, the decrees of the councils of Rome and of Aries, and the supreme judgment of Constantine himself in his sacred consistory, were all favourable to the cause of Cæcilian; and he was unanimously acknowledged by the civil and ecclesiastical powers, as the true and lawful prince of Africa. The honours and estates of the church were attributed to his suffragan bishops, and it was not without difficulty, that Constantine was satisfied with inflicting the punishment of exile on the principal leaders of the Donatist faction. As their cause was examined with attention, perhaps it was determined with justice. Perhaps their complaint was not without foundation, that the cruelty of the emperor had been abused by the insidious arts of his favourite Osian. The influence of falsehood and corruption might procure the condemnation of the innocent, or aggravate the sentence of the guilty; but annullings and absolutions were fallible; if it concluded an important dispute, might be numbered among the transient evils of a disputed administration, which are neither felt nor remembered by posterity.

But this incident, so inconsiderable that it scarcely deserves a place in history, was productive of a memorable schism, which afflicted the provinces of Africa above three hundred years, and was extinguished only with Christianity itself. The inflexible zeal of freedom and fanaticism animated the Donatists to refuse obedience to the usurpers, whose election they disputed, and whose spiritual powers they denied. Excluded from the civil and religious communion of mankind, they boldly excommunicated the rest of mankind, who had embraced the impious party of Cæcilian, and of the Trinitarians, from whom he derived his pretended ordination. They asserted with confidence, and almost with exultation, that the Apostolical succession was interrupted; that all the bishops of Europe and Asia were infected by the contagion of guilt and schism; and that the prelates of the Catholic church were confined to the chosen portion of the African believers, who alone had preserved inviolate the integrity of their faith and discipline. This rigid theory was supported by the most uncharitable conduct. Whenever they acquired a presbytery, even from the distant provinces of the East, they carefully postponed the sacred rites of baptism and ordination; as they rejected the validity of those which he had already received from the hands of heretics or schismatics. Bishops, virgins, and even spotless infants, were subjected to the disgrace of a public penance, before they could be admitted to the communion of the Donatists. If they obtained possession of a church which had been used by their Catholic adversaries, they purified the uncleaned building with the same inveterate care which a temple of idols might have required. They washed the pavement, scraped the walls, burnt the altar, which was commonly of wood, melted the consecrated plate, and cast the Holy Eucharist to the dogs, with every circumstance of ignomy which could provoke and perpetuate the animosity of religious factions. 

Notwithstanding this irreconcilable animosity, the two parties, who were mixed and separated in all the cities of Africa, had the same language and manners, the same zeal and learning, the same faith and worship. Prescribed by the civil and ecclesiastical powers of the empire, the Donatists still maintained in some provinces, particularly in Numidia, their superior numbers; and four hundred bishops acknowledged the jurisdiction of their priests. But the invincible spirit of the sect sometimes preyed on its own vitals; and the bane of their faction was often the cause of their destruction. A fourth part of the Donatist bishops followed the independent standard of the Maximinians. The narrow and solitary path which their first leaders had marked out, continued to deviate from the great society of mankind. Even the imperceptible sect of the Bogozans could affirm, without a blush, that when Christ should descend to judge the earth, he would find his true religion preserved only in a few nameless villages of the Carthaginian Mauritania.

The schism of the Donatists was confined to Africa; the more diffusive mischief of the Trinitarian controversy successively penetrated into every part of the Christian world. The former was an accidental quarrel, occasioned by the abuse of freedom; the latter was a high and mysterious argument, derived from the abuse of philosophy. From the age of Constantine to that of Celestine, the theological disputes of Ariusism. The historian may therefore be permitted respectfully to withdraw the veil of the sanctuary; and to deduce the progress of reason and faith, of error and passion, from the school of Plato to the decline and fall of the empire.
Christ, a philosophical treatise, which manifestly betrays the style and sentiments of the school of Plato, was produced by the Alexandrian Jews, and unanimously received as a genuine and valuable relic of the inspired wisdom of Solomon. A similar union of the Mosaic faith, and the Grecian philosophy, distinguishes the works of Philo, which were composed, for the most part, under the reign of Augustus. The material soul of the universe might offend the piety of the Hebrews: but they applied the character of the Loos to the Jehovah of Moses and the patriarchs; and the Son of God was introduced upon earth under a visible, and even human appearance, to perform those familiar offices which seem incompatible with the nature and attributes of the Universal Cause.

The eloquence of Plato, the name of Solomon, the authority of the school of Alexandria, and the consent of the Jews and Greeks, were insufficient to establish the truth of a mysterious doctrine, which might please, but could not satisfy, a rational mind. A prophet, or apostle, inspired by the Deity, can alone exercise a lawful dominion over the faith of mankind; and the theology of Plato might have been for ever confounded with the philosophical visions of the Academy, the Porth, and the Lyceum, if the name and divine attributes of Logos had not been confirmed by the celestial pen of the last and most sublime of the Evangelists. The Christian Revelation, which was consummated under the reign of Nero, disclosed to the world the amazing secret, that the Loos, who was with God from the beginning, and was God, who had made all things, and for whom all things had been made, was incarnate in the person of Jesus of Nazareth; who had been born of a virgin, and suffered death on the cross. Besides the general design of fixing on a perpetual basis the divine honours of Christ, the most ancient and respectable of the ecclesiastical writers have ascribed to the evangelic theologian, a particular intention to confute two opposite heresies, which disturbed the peace of the primitive church.

1. The faith of the Ebionites, perhaps of the Nazarenes, was gross and imperfect. They revered Jesus as the greatest of the prophets, endowed with supernatural virtue and power. They ascribed to his person.

The decline and fall, Chapter XXI.

The decline and fall, Chapter XXI.

The decline and fall, Chapter XXI.

The decline and fall, Chapter XXI.
and to his future reign all the predictions of the Hebrew oracles which relate to the spiritual and everlasting kingdom of the promised Messiah. Some of these might consist that Jesus was born of a virgin; but they obstinately rejected the proceeding existence and divine depositions of the Logos, or Son of God, which are so clearly defined in the Gospel of St. John. About fifty years afterwards, the Ebionites, whose errors are mentioned by Justin Martyr, with less severity than they seem to deserve, formed a very considerable portion of the Christian name.

II. The Gnostics, who were distinguished by the epithet of Doceena, deviated into the contrary extreme; and betrayed the human, while they asserted the divine nature of Christ. Educated in the school of Plato, accustomed to the sublime ideas of the Logos, they readily conceived that the brightest Eon, or Exhibition of the Deity, might assume the outward shape and visible appearances of a mortal; but they vainly pretended, that the imperfections of matter are incompatible with the purity of a celestial substance. While the blood of Christ yet smoketh on Mount Calvary, the Doceenes invented the ingenious and extravagant hypothesis, that, instead of descending from the womb of the Virgin, he had descended on the banks of the Jordan in the form of perfect manhood; that he had imposed on the senses of his enemies, and of his disciples; and that the ministers of Pilate had wasted their important page on an airy phantom, who seemed to expire on the cross, and, after three days, rise from the dead.

The divine sanction, which the Apostles had bestowed on the fundamental principles of the theology of Plato, encouraged the learned proselytes of the second and third centuries to admire and study the writings of the Athenian sage, who had thus unreservedly anticipated one of the most surprising discoveries of the Christian revelation. The respectable name of Plato was used by the writers as an excuse, and abused by the heretics, as the common support of truth and error: the authority of his skilful commentators, and the science of dialectics, were employed to justify the remote consequences of his opinions; and to supply the distant silence of the inspired writers. The same subtle and profound questions concerning the nature, the generation, the distinction, and the equality of the three divine persons of the mysterious Trinity, or Trinity, were agitated in the philosophical, and in the Christian, schools of Alexandria. An eager spirit of curiosity urged them to explore the secrets of the abyss; and the pride of the professors, and of their disciples, was satisfied with the science of words. But the most sagacious of the Christian theologians, the great Athanasius himself, has cautiously confessed, that whenever he forced his understanding to meditate on the divinity of the Logos, his incoherence and unavailing efforts revolted on themselves; that the more he thought, the less he comprehended; and the more he wrote, the less capable was he of expressing his thoughts.

In every step of the inquiry, we are compelled to feel and acknowledge the immeasurable disproportion between the size of the object and the capacity of the human mind. We may strive to abstract the notions of time, of space, and of matter, which so closely adhere to all the perceptions of our experimental knowledge. But as soon as we presume to reason on infinite substance, of spiritual generation; as often as we deduce any positive conclusions from a negative idea; we are involved in darkness, perplexity, and inevitable contradiction. As these difficulties arise from the nature of the subject, they oppress, with the same insupportable weight, the philosophic and the theological disputant; but we may observe two essential and parallel circumstances, which discriminated the doctrines of the Catholic church from the opinions of the Platonic school.

I. A chosen society of philosophers, men of a liberal education, and curious disposition, might silently meditate, and temporarily discuss, in the gardens of Athens or the library of Alexandria, the abstruse questions of metaphysical science. The lofty speculations, which neither convinced the understanding, nor agitated the passions, of the Platonists themselves, were carelessly overlooked by the idle, the busy, and even the studious part of mankind. But after the Logos had been revealed as the sacred object of the faith, the hope, and the religious worship of the Christians, the mysterious system was embraced by a numerous and increasing multitude in every province of the Roman world. Those persons who, from their age, or sex, or occupations, were the least qualified to judge, who were the least exercised in the habits of abstract reasoning, aspired to
contemplate the economy of the Divine Nature; and it is the boast of Tertullian, that a Christian mechanic could readily answer such questions as had perplexed the wisest of the Grecian sages.

Where the subject lies so far beyond our reach, the difference between the highest and the lowest of human understandings may indeed be calculated as infinitely small; yet the degree of weakness may perhaps be measured by the degree of intellectual and dogmatic confidence. These speculations, instead of being treated as the amusement of a distant hour, became the most serious business of the church, and the most useful preparation for a futurist, life. A theology, which it was incumbent to believe, which it was impious to doubt, and which it might be dangerous, and even fatal, to mistake, became the familiar topic of private meditation and popular discourse. The cold indifference of philosophy was inflamed by the fervent spirit of devotion; and even the metaphors of common language suggested the falacious prejuliced of sense and experience. The Christians, who abhorred the gross and impure generation of the Greek mythologies,36 were tempted to argue from the familiar analogy of the filial and paternal relations. The character of Son seemed to imply a perpetual subordination to the voluntary author of his existence; but as the act of generation, in the most spiritual and abstracted sense, must be supposed to transmit the properties of a common nature, they durst not presume to circumscribe the powers or the duration of the Son of an eternal and omnipotent Father.

Four score years after the death of Christ, the Christians of Bithynia declared before the tribunal of Pliny, that they invoked him as a god; and his divine honours have been perpetuated in every age and country, by the various sects who assume the name of his disciples.38 Their tender reverence for the memory of Christ, and their horror for the profane worship of any creature being, would have engaged them to assert the equal and absolute divinity of the Logos, if their rapid ascent towards the throne of heaven had not been imperceptibly checked by the apprehension of violating the unity and sole supremacy of the great Father of Christ and of the Universe. The suspense and fluctuation produced in the minds of the Christians by these opposite tendencies, may be observed in the writings of the theologians who flourished after the end of the apostolic age, and before the origin of the Arian controversy. Their suffrage is claimed, with equal confidence, by the orthodox and by the heretical parties; and the most inquisitive critics have fairly allowed, that if they had the good fortune of possessing

the Catholic verity, they have delivered their conceptions in loose, inaccurate, and sometimes contradictory, language.39

II. The devotion of individuals was the first circumstance which distinguished the Christians from the Platonists; the second was the authority of the church. The disciples of philosophy asserted the rights of intellectual freedom, and their respect for the sentiments of their teachers was a liberal and voluntary tribute, which they offered to superior reason. But the Christians formed a numerous and disciplined society; and the jurisdiction of their laws and magistrates was strictly exercised over the minds of the faithful. The loose wanderings of the imagination were gradually confined by creeds and confessions; the freedom of private judgment submitted to the public wisdom of synods; the authority of a theologian was determined by his ecclesiastical rank; and the episcopal successors of the apostles inflicted the censures of the church on those who deviated from the orthodox belief. But in an age of religious controversy, every act of oppression added new force to the elastic vigour of the mind; and the zeal or obstinacy of a spiritual rebel was sometimes stimulated by secret motives of ambition or avarice. A metaphysical argument became the voice or pretence of political contests; the subtleties of the Platonic school were used as the badges of popular factions, and the distance which separated their respective tenets was enlarged or magnified by the acrimony of dispute. As long as the dark heroes of Praxeas and Philelthus laboured to confound the Father with the Son,40 the orthodox party might be excused if they adhered more strictly and more earnestly to the distinction, than to the equality, of the divine Persons. But as soon as the heat of controversy had subsided, and the progress of the Sectarians was no longer an object of terror to the churches of Rome, of Africa, or of Egypt; the title of theological opinion began to flow with a gentle but steady motion towards the contrary extreme, and the most orthodox doctors allowed themselves the use of the terms and definitions which had been censured in the month of the sectaries.41 After the edict of toleration had restored peace and leisure to the Christians, the Trinitarian controversy was revived in the ancient seat of Platonism, the learned, the opulent, the tumultuous city of Alexandria; and the flame of religious discord was rapidly communicated from the schools to the clergy, the people, the province, and the East. The abstract question of the eternity of the Logos was agitated in ecclesiastical conferences, and populo.

34 Tertullian, in Apol. p. 45. See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. It may not be uninteresting to contemplate the economy of Tertullian on his personal and private life, his years in the ministry, his visit to Rome, his residence there, and his death. See Bossu, Divertissement, p. 40. 35 See the Passio, or Passion, of St. Peter, which the most renowned of all the early Christian Fathers, its author, and its genuine source, is the name of the church. It gives us a specimen of the various faiths and superstitions which the early Christians were acquainted with. SeeBossu, Divertissement, p. 45. 36 See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. It is certain, then, that the Son must belong to the will of the Father. See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. 37 On the other hand, Abercromby and Sir William, the bishop of Alnwick, were equally zealous for the truth, and both were convinced that the Logos was of the same divinity as the Father, and, that he was not his being in the soul of the Father. See Clarke, Apology, E. 38 The same author, Abercromby and Sir William, were equally zealous for the truth, and both were convinced that the Logos was of the same divinity as the Father, and, that he was not his being in the soul of the Father. See Clarke, Apology, E. 39 See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. It is evident, then, that the Son must belong to the will of the Father. See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. 40 See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. It is certain, then, that the Son must belong to the will of the Father. See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. 41 See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. It is evident, then, that the Son must belong to the will of the Father. See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. 42 See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. It is evident, then, that the Son must belong to the will of the Father. See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. 43 See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. It is evident, then, that the Son must belong to the will of the Father. See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. 44 See Bossu, Divertissement, &c. It is evident, then, that the Son must belong to the will of the Father. See Bossu, Divertissement, &c.
transfigured his ample spirit, and impressed the effulgence of his glory. Visible image of invisible perfection, he saw, at an unmeasurable distance beneath his feet, the thrones of the brightest archangels; yet he chose to sit as a reflected light, and, like the sons of the Roman emperors, who were invested with the titles of Caesar or Augustus, he governed the universe in obedience to the will of his Father and monarch. II. In the second hypothesis, the Logos possessed all the inherent, incomparable perfections, which religion and philosophy appropriate to the Supreme God. Three distinct and infinite substances, three co-equal and co-eternal beings, composed the Divine Essence: and it would have implied contradiction, that any of them should not have existed, or that they should ever cease to exist. The advocates of a system which seemed to establish three independent Deities, attempted to preserve the unity of the First Cause, so conspicuous in the design and order of the world, by the perpetual concord of their administration, and the essential agreement of their will. A faint resemblance of this unity of action may be discovered in the societies of men, and even of animals. The causes which disturb their harmony proceed only from the imperfection and inequality of their faculties; but the concordance which is guided by infinite wisdom and goodness, cannot fail of choosing the same means for the accomplishment of the same ends. III. Three Beings, who, by the self-derived necessity of their existence, possess all the divine attributes in the most perfect degree; who are eternal in duration, infinite in space, and intimately present to each other, and to the whole universe; irresistibly force themselves on the astonishment of the mind, as one and the same Being, who, in the economy of grace, as well as in that of nature, may manifest himself under different forms, and be considered under different aspects. By this hypothesis, a real substantial Trinity is reduced into a trinity of names, and abstract modifications, that subsist only in the mind which conceives them. The Logos is no longer a person, but an attribute; and it is only in a figurative sense, that the epithet of Son can be applied to the eternal Son which was with God from the beginning, and by which, and by whom, all things were made...
the actions of the man Jesus. Thus, after revolving round the theological circle, we are surprised to find that the Sabellian ends where the Ebionite had begun; and that the incomprehensible mystery, which excites our admiration, eludes our enquiry. 44

If the bishops of the council of Nice had been permitted to follow the unbiased dictates of their conscience, Arius and his associates could scarcely have flattered themselves with the hopes of obtaining a majority of votes, in favour of an hypothesis so directly adverse to the two most popular opinions of the Catholic world. The Arians soon perceived the danger of their situation, and prudently assumed those modest virtues, which, in the fury of civil and religious dissensions, are seldom practiced, or even praised, except by the weaker party. They recommended the exercise of Christian charity and moderation; urged the incomprehensible nature of the deities, the ambiguous use of any terms or definitions which could not be found in the Scriptures; and offered, by every laudable concession, to satisfy their adversaries, without renouncing the integrity of their own principles. The victorious faction received all their proposals with haughty suspicion; and anxiously sought for some irreconcilable mark of distinction, the rejection of which might involve the Arians in the guilt and consequences of heresy. A letter was publicly read, and ignominiously torn, in which their patron, Eusebius of Nicomedia, ingeniously confessed, that the admission of the Homousian, or

Consubstantial, a word already familiar to the Platonists, was incompatible with the principles of their theological system. The fortunate opportunity was eagerly embraced by the bishops, who governed the resolutions of the synod; and, according to the lively expression of Ambrose, they used the iusdent, which hasty itself had drawn from the scabbard, to cut off the head of the hated monster. The consubstantiality of the Father and the Son was established by the council of Nice, and has been unanimously received as a fundamental article of the Christian faith, by the consent of the Greek, the Latin, the Oriental, and the Protestant churches. But if the same word had not served to stigmatize the heretics, and to unite the Catholics, it would have been inadequate to the purpose of the majority, by whom it was introduced into the orthodox creed. This majority was divided into two parties, distinguished by a contrary tendency to the sentiments of the Trithelites and of the Sabellians. But as those opposite extremes seemed to overturn the foundations of either the natural, or revealed, religion, they mutually agreed to qualify the rigour of their principles; and to disavow the just, but invincible consequences, which might be urged by their antagonists. The interest of the common cause inclined them to join their numbers, and to conceal their differences; their animosity was softened by the healing counsels of toleration, and their disputes were suspended by the use of the mysterious Homousian, which either party was free to interpret according to their peculiar tenets. The Sabellian sense, which, about fifty years before, had obliged the council of Antioch to prohibit this celebrated term, had endured it to those theologians who entertained a secret but partial affection for a nominal Trinity. But the more fashionable saints of the Arian times, the intrepid Athanasius, the learned Gregory Nazianzen, and the other pillars of the church, who supported with ability and success the Nicene doctrine, appeared to consider the expression of substance, as if it had been synonymous with that of nature; and they ventured to illustrate its meaning, by affirming that three men, as they belong to the same common species, are consubstantial or homousian to each other. This pure and distinct equality was tempered, on the one hand, by the internal connection, and spiritual penetration, which indissolubly unites the divine persons; and on the other, by the pre-eminence of the Father, which was acknowledged as far as it is compatible with the independence of the Son. Within these limits the almost invisible and tremulous ball of orthodoxy was allowed securely to vibrate. On either side, beyond this concreted ground, the heretics and the demons lurked in ambush to surprise and devour the unhappy waverers. But as the degrees of theological interest depend on the spirit of the hearer, rather than on the importance of the controversy, the heretics who degraded, were treated with more severity than those who annihilated, the person of the Son. The life of Athanasius was consumed in irreconcilable opposition to the impieties madness of the Arians; but he defended above twenty years the Sabellianism of Marcellus of Ancyra; and when at last he was compelled to withdraw himself from his communion, he continued to maintain, with an ambiguous smile, the verbal errors of his respectable friend.

The authority of a general council, to which the Arians themselves had

44 In the abolition of the council of Nice, these names, those of the Ebionite and of the Arian, are very strong, as they had subsisted on the creeds, and had drawn from the consciences of the people, the sanction of those councils which had been established before their existence. See the transactions of Trithelia, and those of Origen. Homily xii, p. 520-521.

45 The transactions of the council of Nice are not well discovered by the Arian records. Of the council records, we are entirely indebted to Eusebius, whose history, though a part of his history, is thoroughly authenticated. Eusebius, loc. cit. p. 138.

46 In the council of Antioch, to the dilata, 1, 32, 1, 2, 3, are added, to be such as had been assembled for the purpose of those who had assembled for the purpose of the council of Nice. See Eusebius, loc. cit. p. 138.

47 See the account of the council of Nice, in Eusebius, loc. cit. p. 138.

48 The consecration of the Holy of Holies of the Temple, which appears to be the foundation of the opinions of the Arians, is no mark of consubstantiality; but it has been generally considered as a mark of consubstantiality. See the account of the council of Nice, in Eusebius, loc. cit. p. 138.

49 The authority of激情ful witnesses, in which Athanasius and his Antiochenes were supported, in the defence of the consubstantiality of the persons of the Son, is various, and much debated. See the account of the council of Nice, in Eusebius, loc. cit. p. 138.

50 The account with which Athanasius and his Antiochenes were supported in the defence of the consubstantiality of the persons of the Son, is various, and much debated. See the account of the council of Nice, in Eusebius, loc. cit. p. 138.

51 The antiquity of the council of Nice, with which Athanasius and his Antiochenes were supported in the defence of the consubstantiality of the persons of the Son, is various, and much debated. See the account of the council of Nice, in Eusebius, loc. cit. p. 138.

52 The account with which Athanasius and his Antiochenes were supported in the defence of the consubstantiality of the persons of the Son, is various, and much debated. See the account of the council of Nice, in Eusebius, loc. cit. p. 138.
been compelled to submit, inscribed on the banners of the orthodox party the mysterious characters of the word Hominumus, which essentially contributed, notwithstanding some obscure disputes, some nocturnal combats, to maintain and perpetuate the uniformity of faith, or at least of language. The Constantinians, who by their success have deserved and obtained the title of Catholics, gloated in the simplicity and solemnity of their own creed, and insulted the repeated variations of their adversaries, who were destitute of any certain rule of faith. The sincerity of the coming of the Arian chief, the fear of the laws or of the people, their reverence for Christ, their hatred of Athanasius, all the causes, human and divine, that influence and disturb the councils of a theological faction, introduced among the sectaries a spirit of discord and incostancy, which, in the course of a few years, erected eighteen different modes of religion, and weakened the violated dignity of the Church.

The Athanasius, who, from the peculiar hardships of his situation, was inclined to exasperate rather than to aggravate the errors of the Oriental clergy, declares, that in the wide extent of the ten provinces of Asia, to which he had been banished, there could be found very few prelates who had preserved the knowledge of the true God. The suppression which he had felt, the disorders of which he was the spectator and the victim, oppressed, during a short interval, the angry passions of his soul; and in the following passage, of which I shall transcribe a few lines, the bishop of Ptolemais earnestly devotes itself to the style of a Christian philosopher. "It is a thing," says Hilary, "equally deplorable and dangerous, that there are as many creeds as opinions among men, as many doctrines as inclinations, and as many sources of blasphemy as there are faults among us; because we make creeds arbitrarily, and explain them as arbitrarily. The Hominumus is rejected, and received, and explained away by successive synods. The partial or total resemblance of the Father and of the Son, is a subject of dispute for these unhappy times. Every year, nay every month, we make new creeds to describe invisable mysteries. We repeat of what we have done, we defend those who repent, we anathematize those whom we defended. We consist and the doctrines of others in ourselves, as our own in that of others; and reciprocally tearing one another to pieces, we have been the cause of each other's ruin."

It will not be expected, it would not perhaps be desired, that I should swell this theological dissertation, by a minute examination of the eighteen creeds, the authors of which, for the most part, disclaimed the odious name of their parent Arian. It is amusing enough to delineate the forms, and to trace the reciprocation, of a singular plant; but the tedious detail of leaves without a root, of a species of branches without fruit, would soon exhaust the patience, and disappoint the curiosity of the laborious student. One question which gradually arose from the Arian controversy, may however be noticed, as it is served to produce and discriminate the three sects, who were united only by their common aversion to the Hominumus of the Nicene synods. 1. If they were asked, whether the Son was S3 to the Father, the question was irresolutely answered in the negative, by the heretics who adhered to the principles of Arius, or indeed to those of philosophy, which seem to establish an infinitesimal difference between the Creator and the most excellent of his creatures. This obvious consequence was maintained by Eutius, on whom the zeal of his adversaries bestowed the surname of the Ateist. His restless and aspiring spirit urged him to try almost every profession of human life. He was successively a slave, or at least a husbandman, a travelling tinker, a goldsmith, a physician, a schoolmaster, a theologian, and at last the apostle of a new church, which was propagated by the abilities of his disciple Eunomius. Armed with texts of Scripture, and with captious syllogisms from the logic of Aristotle, the subtle Eutius had acquired the fame of an invincible disputant, whom it was impossible either to silence or to convince. Such talents engaged the friendship of the Arian bishops, till they were forced to renounce, and even to persecute, a dangerous ally, who, by the accuracy of his reasoning, had prejudiced their cause in the popular opinion, and offered the piety of their most devoted followers. 2. The omnipotence of the Creator suggested a specimen and respectful solution of the issues of the Father and the Son; and faith might hardly receive what reason could not presume to deny, that the Supreme God might communicate his infinite perfections, and create a being similar only to himself. These Arians were powerfully supported by the weight and abilities of their leaders, who had succeeded in the management of the Eunomian interests, and who occupied the principal thrones of the East. They debated, perhaps with some affection, the impiety of Arians; they professed to believe, either without reserve, or according to the Scriptures, that the Son was different from all other creatures, and similar only to the Father. But they denied, that he was either of the same, or of a similar nature; and it was thought that the model of his new essence was taken from that of the Father. Arians.
substance; sometimes boldly justifying their dissent, and sometimes objecting to the use of the word substance, which seems to imply an adequate, or at least a distinct, notion of the nature of the Deity. 2. The sect which asserted the doctrine of a similar substance was the most numerous, at least in the provinces of Asia; and when the leaders of both parties were assembled in the council of Seleucia, their opinion would have prevailed by a majority of one hundred and five to forty-three bishops. The Greek word, which was chosen to express this mysterious resubstance, bears so close an affinity to the orthodox symbol, that the profane of every age have derided the furious contests which the difference of a single syllable excite between the Homousians and the Homoeans. As it frequently happens, that the sounds and characters which approach the nearest to each other accidently represent the most opposite ideas, the observance of it is likely to prejudice. If it were possible to mark any real and sensible distinction between the doctrine of the Semi-Arians, as they were improperly styled, and that of the Catholics themselves. The bishop of Pultier, who in his Pyrgian exile was very wisely aimed at a coalition of parties, endeavours to prove that, by a plain and faithful interpretation, the Homoeans may be reduced to a consubstantial sense. Yet he confesses that the word has a dark and suspicious aspect; and, as its darkness was congenial to theological disputes, the Semi-Arians, who advanced to the doors of the church, assailed them with the most unrelenting fury.

The provinces of Egypt and Asia, which cultivated the language and manners of the Greeks, had deeply imbued the views of the Arius controversy. The familiar study of the Platonic system, a vain and argumentative disposition, a copious and flexible idiom, supplied the clergy and people of the East with an inexhaustible flow of words and distinctions; and, in the midst of their fierce contentions, they easily forgot the doubt which is recommended by philosophy, and the submission which is enjoined by religion. The inhabitants of the West were of a less inquisitive spirit; their passions were not so forcibly moved by invisible objects, their minds were less frequently exercised by the habits of dispute; and such was the happy ignorance of the Gallican church, that Hilary himself, above thirty years after the first general council, was still a stranger to the Nicene creed. The Latins had received the rays of divine knowledge through the dark and doubtful medium of a translation. The poverty and stubbornness of their native tongue was not always capable of affording just equivalents for the Greek terms.
sometimes inclined the ecclesiastical balance; and the prerogatives of the King of Heaven were settled, or changed, or modified, in the cabinet of an earthly monarch.

In a time of discord and anarchy, which pervaded the provinces of the East, interrupted the triumph of Constantine, but the emperor continued for some time to walk with confidence and carvise inoffensive, the object of the dispute. As he was at once in the difficulty of appeasing the quarrels of theologians, he addressed to the contending parties, to Alexander and to Arius, a moderating epistle, which may be ascribed, with far greater reason, to the untoured sense of a soldier and statesman, than to the dictates of any of his episcopal counsellors. He attributes the origin of the whole controversy to a trifling and subtle question, concerning an incomprehensible point of the law, which was foolishly asked by the bishop, and imprudently resolved by the presbyter. He lamented that the Christian people, who had the same God, the same religion, and the same worship, should be divided by such incomprehensible distinctions; and he seriously recommended to the clergy of Alexandria the example of the Greek philosophers, who could maintain their arguments without losing their temper, and assert their freedom without violating their friendship. The insufficiency and contempt of the sovereign would have been, perhaps, the most effectual method of silencing the dispute, if the popular current had been less rapid and impetuous, and if Constantine himself, in the midst of faction and fanaticism, could have preserved the calm possession of his own mind. But his ecclesiastical ministers soon contrived to seduce the impartiality of the magistrates, and to awaken the zeal of the proselytes.

He was provoked by the insults which had been offered to his statues; he was alarmed by the real, as well as the imaginary, magnitude of the spreading mischief; and he extinguished the hope of peace and tolerance from the moment that he assembled three hundred bishops within the walls of the same palace. The presence of the monarch swallowed the importance of the debate; his attention multiplied the arguments; and he exposed his person with a patient irreproachably, which animated the valor of the contestants. Notwithstanding the applause which has been bestowed on the eloquence and sagacity of Constantine, a Roman general, whose religion might be still a subject of doubt, and whose mind had not been enlightened either by study or by inspiration, was indifferently qualified to discuss, in the Greek language, a metaphysical question, or an article of faith. But the credit of his favourite Sisulus, who appears to have

presided in the council of Nice, might dispose the emperor in favour of the orthodox party; and a well-timed insinuation, that the same Eusebius of Nicomedia, who now protected the heretic, had lately assisted the tyrant, might excite him against their adversaries. The Nicene council was ratified by Constantine; and his firm declaration, that those who resisted the divine judgment of the synod, must prepare themselves for an immediate exile, annihilated the murmurs of a feeble opposition; which from sermons, was almost instantly reduced to two, protesting bishops. Eusebius of Constantia was told a reluctant and ambiguous consent to the Hymenaeum; and the worshipping conduct of the Nicomedian Eusebius served only to delay, about three months, his disgrace and exile. The impious Arius was banished into one of the remote provinces of Illyricum; his person and disciples were branded, by law, with the odious name of Periphrasms; his writings were condemned to the flames, and a capital punishment was denounced against those in whose possession they should be found. The emperor had now subdued the spirit of controversy, and the angry sarcastic style of his edicts was designed to inspire his subjects with the hatred which he had conceived against the enemies of Christ.

But, as if the conduct of the emperors had been guided by passion instead of principle, three years from the council of Nice were scarcely elapsed, before the emperor discovered some symptoms of mercy, and even of indulgence, towards the proscribed sect, which was secretly protected by his favourite sister. The exiles were recalled; and Eusebius, who gradually resumed his influence over the mind of Constantine, was restored to the episcopal throne, from which he had been ignominiously degraded. At a solemn court with the respect which would have been due to an innocent and oppressed man. His faith was approved by the synod of Jerusalem; and the emperor seemed impatient to repair his injuries, by issuing an absolute command, that he should be solemnly admitted to the communion in the cathedral of Constantinople. On the same day, which had been fixed for the triumph of Arius, he expired; and the strange and hurried circumstance of his death might excite a suspicion, that the irreconcilable saints had contributed more efficaciously than by their prayers, to deliver the church from the most formidable of her errors. The three principal leaders of the Catholics, Athanasius of Alexandria, Eusebius of Antioch, and Paul of Constantinople, were deposed on various accusations, by the sentence of numerous councils; and were afterwards honi


dout of the Church (Cf. Euseb. H. E., v. 28, 29, 30, 31). The ecclesiastical history of the Roman empire is inseparable from the condition and destiny of the Catholic Church: as the history of human nations. The Church, which, in the process of its growth and development, cultivates and perfects the spiritual power of its founder: as the history of human nations. The Church, which, in the process of its growth and development, cultivates and perfects the spiritual power of its founder: as the history of human nations. The Church, which, in the process of its growth and development, cultivates and perfects the spiritual power of its founder: as the history of human nations. The Church, which, in the process of its growth and development, cultivates and perfects the spiritual power of its founder: the history of human nations.
nished into distant provinces by the first of the Christian emperors, who, in the last moments of his life, received the rites of baptism from the Arian bishop of Nicomedia. The ecclesiastical government of Constantine cannot be justified from the reproach of levity and weakness. But the credulous monarch, unskilled in the strategems of theological warfare, might be deceived by the modest and specious professions of the heretics, whose sentiments he never perfectly understood; and while he protected Arius, and persecuted Athanasius, he still considered the council of Nicaea as the bulwark of the Christian faith, and the peculiar glory of his own reign.\(^{84}\)

The sons of Constantine must have been admitted from their childhood into the rank of catechumens, but they imitated, in the delay of their baptism, the example of their father. Like him, they presumed to pronounce their judgment on mysteries into which they had never been regularly initiated;\(^{85}\) and the fate of the Trinitarian controversy depended, in a great measure, on the sentiments of Constantius, who inherited the provinces of the East, and acquired the possession of the whole empire. The Arian proponent or bishop, who had secreted for his use the testament of the deceased emperor, improved the fortunate occasion which had introduced him to the familiarity of a prince, whose public counsels were always swayed by his domestic favours. The eunuchs and slaves diffused the spiritual poison through the palace, and the dangerous infection was communicated by the female attendants to the guards, and by the guards to her unsuspicuous husband.\(^{86}\) The partiality which Constantius always expressed towards the Eusebian faction, was insensibly fortified by the dexterous management of his leaders; and his victory over the tyrant Magnentius increased his inclination, as well as his ability, to employ the arms of power in the cause of Ariusism. While the two armies were engaged in the plains of Mura, and the fate of the two rivals depended on the chance of war, the son of Constantine passed the aforesaid moments in a church of the martyrs, under the walls of the city. His spiritual comforter, Valens, the Arian bishop of the diocese, employed the most artful precautions to obtain such early intelligence as might secure either his favour or his escape. A secret chain of swift and steady messengers informed him of the vicissitudes of the battle; and while the courtiers stood trembling round their afflicted master, Valens assured him that the Gallic legions gave way; and inculminated, with some pre-

\(^{84}\) The change in the sentiments, most lord in the council, of Constantius, was first traced by Epiphanius (Pan. Cons. I. 16, v. 150). Lord Bishop of Nisus (ib.) also testifies to this change, which seems to have taken place during the reign of Constantius Phoceus. See his De Monarchia, c. 64. His new faith is also confirmed by the visit of the bishop of Rome, in 310, to Constantius Chlorus. See the letter of Julius to Constantius Chlorus, in Pagi's Christian Antiquities, vol. i. 379.

\(^{85}\) These events are described in the eulogistic biography of Constantius Chlorus, by the Arian Eusebius. See the Life of Constantius Chlorus, in the Panegyricus, vol. ii. 584. An interesting account of the life and times of Constantius Chlorus, will be found in the footsteps of the bishop of Rome, who visited his court in 310. See the letter of Julius to Constantius Chlorus, in Pagi's Christian Antiquities, vol. ii. 579.

\(^{86}\) Cyril, bishop of Jerusalem, who was present at the trial of Arius, affirms that the son of Constantine was present at the trial of Arius; and that in the case of Constantine the case had been found in the heralds of the Arian party (Cyril, Ep. 61). This opinion is contested by some (Mozzi, De Fide et Matris, c. 28), who deny the fact; but it is not denied by the most eminent historians of the Christian Church. See the Life of Constantius Chlorus, in the Panegyricus, vol. ii. 583.
the reasons of the theologian; and as he opposed the orthodox faith of Nice, it is readily confessed that his incapacity and ignorance were equal to his presumption. The senate, the women, and the bishops, who governed the vain and feeble mind of the emperor, had inspired him with an insupportable dislike to the Homousian; but his timid conscience was alarmed by the inquietudes of Atilius. The guilt of that atheist was aggravated by the suspicions favour of the unformannic Galus; and even the desire of Imperial ministers, who had been instructed at Antioch, were the instruments of that dangerous sophism. The mind of Constantius, which could neither be moderated by reason, nor fixed by faith, was blindly impelled to either side of the dark and empty abyss, by his horror of the opposite extremes; he alternately enhanced and condemned the sentiments, he successively banished and recalled the leaders, of the Arians and Semi-Arians factions. During the season of public business or festivity, he employed whole days, and even nights, in selecting the words, and weighing the syllables, which composed his fluctuating speeches. The subject of his meditations still pursued and occupied his slumber; the incoherent dreams of the emperor were received as celestial visions; and he accepted with complacency the lofty title of bishop of bishops, from those ecclesiastics who forgot the interest of their order for the gratification of their passions.

The design of establishing an uniformity of doctrine, which had engaged him to convene so many synods in Gaul, Italy, Illyricum, and Asia, was repeatedly baffled by his own levity, by the divisions of the Arians, and by the resistance of the Catholics; and he resolved, as the last and decisive effort, imperiously to dictate the decisions of a general council. The destructive earthquake of Nicomedia, the difficulty of finding a convenient place, and perhaps some secret motives of policy, produced an alteration in the summons. The bishops of the East were directed to meet at Seleucia, in Isauria; while those of the West held their deliberations at Rimini, on the coast of the Adriatic; and instead of two or three deputies from each province, the whole episcopal body was ordered to march. The Eastern council, after commencing four days in fierce and unwrangling debate, separated without any definitive conclusion. The council of the West was promoted till the seventh month. Tarsum, the praetorian prefect, was instructed not to dismiss the prelates; the honors of all were to be united; and his efforts were supported by a power of banishing fifteen of the most refractory, and a promise of the consubship if he achieved so difficult an adventure.

His prayers and threats, the authority of the sovereign, the capricious of Valens and Ursacius, the distress of cold and hunger, and the tidious melancholy of a hopeless exile, at length extorted the reluctant consent of the bishops of Rimini. The deputies of the East and of the West attended the emperor in the palace of Constantinople, and he enjoyed the satisfaction of imposing one on the world as a professed of faith which established the communion without repudiating the invocation of the Son of God. But the triumph of Arius had been preceded by the removal of the orthodox clergy, whom it was impossible either to intimidate or to corrupt; and the reign of Constantius was disgraced by the unjust and infec tual persecution of the great Athanasius.

We have seldom an opportunity of observing, either in active or speculative life, what effects may be produced, or what obstacles may be surmounted, by the force of a single mind, when it is intently applied to the pursuit of a single object. The immortal name of Athanasius never will be separated from the Catholic doctrine of the Trinity, to whose defence he consecrated every moment and every faculty of his being. Educated in the family of Alexander, he had vigorously opposed the early progress of the Arian heresy; he exercised the important functions of secretary under the aged papa; and the fathers of the Nicene council beheld, with surprise and respect, the rising virtues of the young deacon. In a time of public danger, the dull claims of age and rank are sometimes superseded; and within five months after his return from Nice, the uncom Annas was sent on the archiepiscopal throne of Egypt. He filled that eminent station above forty-six years, and his long administration was spent in a perpetual combat against the powers of Arius. Five times was Athanasius expelled from his throne; twenty years he passed as an exile or a fugitive; and almost every province of the Roman empire was successively witness to his merit, and his sufferings in the cause of the Homousian, which he considered as the sole pleasure and business; as the duty, and as the glory, of his life. Amidst the storms of persecution, the archbishop of Alexandria was patient of labour, justice of fame, careless of safety; and although his mind was tainted by the contagion of Harnicism, Athanasius displayed a superiority of character and abilities, which would have qualified him, far better than the degenerate sons of Constantine, for the government of a great monarchy. His learning was of a much profound and extensive than that of Eusebius of Cæsarea; and his rude eloquence could not be compared with the polished oratory of Gregory or Basil; but whenever the primate of Egypt was called upon to justify his sentiments, or his conduct, his unpremeditated style, either of speaking or writing, was clear, forcible, and peremptory. He has al-
that Arian should be restored to the Catholic communion. 101 The emperor was gratified, and might forgive, this inflexible resolution; and the faction who considered Athanasius their most formidable enemy, were constrained to dissemble their hatred, and silently to prepare an indirect and distant assailant. They scattered rumours and suspicions, represented the archbishop as a proud and oppressive tyrant, and boldly accused him of violating the treaty which had been ratified in the Nicene council, with the schismatic followers of Melitius. 102 Athanasius had openly disproved that ignominious peace, and the emperor was disposed to believe that he had abused his ecclesiastical and civil power, to persecute those odious sectaries; that he had sacrilegiously broken a vial intended for one of their churches of Marcolis; that he had whipped or imprisoned six of their bishops; and that Arsenius, a seventh bishop of the same party, had been murdered, or at least mutilated, by the cruel hand of the primate. 103 These charges, which affected his honour and his life, were referred to Constantine to his brother Demetrian the censor, who resided at Antioch; the synods of Cesarea and Tyre were successively convened; and the bishops of the East were instructed to judge the cause of Athanasius, before they proceeded to consecrate the new church of the Resurrection at Jerusalem. The primate might be conscious of his innocence; but he was sensible that the same implacable spirit which had dictated the accusation, would direct the proceeding, and pronounce the sentence. He prudently declined the tribunal of his enemies, desired the summons of the synod of Cesarea; and, after a long and arduous delay, submitted to the peremptory commands of the emperor, who threatened to punish his criminal disobedience if he refused to appear in the council of Tyre. 104 Before Athanasius, at the head of fifty Egyptian prelates, sailed from Alexandria, he had wisely secured the alliance of the Melitians; and Arsenius himself, his imaginary victims, and his secret friend, was privately encommodated in his train. The synod of Tyre was conducted by Eusebius of Cesarea, with more passion, and with less art, than his learning and experience might promise; his numerous faction repeated the names of homicide and tyrann; and their clamours were encouraged by the burning patience of Athanasius, who expected the decisive moment to produce Arsenius alive and unhurt in the midst of the assembly. The nature of the other charges did not admit of such clear and satisfactory replies; yet the archbishop was able to prove, that, in the village, where he was ac-

cused of breaking a consecrated chalice, neither church, nor altar, nor chalice, could really exist. The Arians, who had secretly determined the guilt and condemnation of their enemy, attempted, however, to disguise their injustice by the imitation of judicial forms; the synod appointed an episcopal commission of six delegates to collect evidence on the spot; and this measure, which was vigorously opposed by the Egyptian bishops, opened new scenes of violence and perjury. 103

After the return of the deputies from Alexandria, the majority of the council pronounced the final sentence of degradation and exile against the primate of Egypt. The decree, expressed in the flaccid language of malice and revenge, was communicated to the emperor and the Catholic church; and the bishops immediately resumed a wild and devout aspect, such as because their holy pilgrimage to the sepulchre of Christ,

the Jews saw. 104 But the injustice of these eccle-
siastical judges had not been compensated by the submission, or even by the presence, of Athanasius. He resolved to make a bold and dangerous experiment, whether the throne was inaccessible to the voice of truth; and before the final sentence could be pronounced at Tyre, the intrepid primate thrust himself into a lurch which was ready to hoist sail for the Imperial city. The veneration of a formal audience might have been opposed or eluded; but Athanasius concealed his arrival, watched the moment of Constantius's return from an adjacent villa, and boldly encountered his angry sovereign as he passed on horseback through the principal street of Constantinople. So strange an apparition excited his surprise and indignation; and the guards were ordered to remove the importunate suitor; but his resentment was subdued by involuntary respect; and the haughty spirit of the emperor was averted by the courage and eloquence of a bishop, who implored his justice and awakened his conscience. 105 Constantine listened to the complaints of Athanasius with impartial and even gracious attention; the members of the synod of Tyre were summoned to justify their proceedings; and the acts of the Eusebian faction would have been confounded, if they had not aggravated the guilt of the primate, by the dexterous supposition of an unpardonable offense; a criminal design to intercept and destine the corn-boat of Alexandria, which supplied the subsistence of the new capital. 106

The emperor was satisfied that the peace of Egypt would be secured by the absence of a popular leader; but he refused to fill the vacancy of the archbishopric by the election of a successor, and the sentence, which, after long hesitation, he pronounced, was that of a jealous exclusion, rather than of an ignominious exile. In the remote province of Gaul, but in the hospital court of Treves, Athanasius passed about twenty-eight months. The death of the emperor changed the face of public affairs; and, amidst the general indulgence of a young reign, the primate was restored to his country by an honourable edict of the younger Constantine, who expressed a deep sense of the impiety and merit of his virtuous guest. 107

The death of that prince exposed the second see of Athanasius to a second persecution; 108 and the feeble Constantius, the sovereign of the East, soon became the secret accomplice of the Eusebians. Ninety bishops of that sect or faction assembled at Antioch, under the specious pretence of dedicating the cathedral. They composed an ambiguous creed, which is falsely tinged with the colours of semi-Arianism, and twenty-five canons, which still regulate the discipline of the Catholic Church. 109 Constantius was invited, with some appearance of equity, that a bishop, deprived by a synod, should not resume his episcopal functions, till he had been absolved by the judgment of an equal synod; the law was immediately applied to the case of Athanasius; the council of Antioch pronounced, by rather confirmed, his degradation: a stranger, named Gregory, was seated on his throne; and Phili-egrus, the prefect of Egypt, was instructed to support the new primate with the civil and military powers of the province. Oppressed by the conspiracy of the Asiatic prelates, Athanasius withdrew from Alexandria, and passed three years as an exile and a suppliant on the holy threshold of the Vatican. 111 By the audacious study of the Latin language, he soon qualified himself to negotiate with the Western clergy; his recent and ready replies directed and inflicted the haughty Julius: the Roman pontiff was persuaded to consider his appeal as the peculiar interest of the Apostolic see; and his innocence was unanimously declared in a council of fifty bishops of Italy. At the end of three years, the primate was summoned to the court of Milan by the emperor Constantius, who, in the indulgence of unlawful pleasures, still professed a lively regard

Dr. Fuller of Treviso has examined this synod of Antioch with ten thousand characters; but his resolution of the question is so equivocal, and his methods so uncertain, that it is a difficult task to perceive the sound of truth. 107 This synod, as well as others in both the Eusebians and Arians, is praised by Gregory Thaumaturgus and Eusebius; 108 For the second see of Athanasius I refer you to Eusebius, Hist. Eccl. 1. 28. 4. 109 This synod of Antioch was held in the presence of Athanasius; it is at the impression of the praetorian prefect Vettius Proculus, 111 The Council of Pisa was in 287, and in 317; 112 I have followed the history of it in the Gesta Pontificum. 113 I point out the place of Julius to the reader who desires to observe his arrangements, his coolness, his temper in the controversy, and his argument against Eusebius. 114 The circumstances of the controversy of Western and Orientals are collected in the works of Eusebius, Hist. Eccl. 7. 16. 115 The controversy is explained by the councils of Rome, 116 The composition of Eusebius is no small criterion of the truth of the controversy. He relates that Eusebius, in his composition, 117 Athanasius was summoned to the court of Constantius, who received him with great respect.
for the orthodox faith. The cause of truth and justice was promoted by the influence of gold, and the ministers of Constantine advised the sovereign to require the convocation of an ecclesiastical assembly, which might act as the representatives of the Catholic church.

A.D. 325. Ninety-four bishops of the West, seventy-six bishops of the East, encountered each other at Sardica, on the verge of the two empires, but in the dominions of the protector of Athanasius. Their debates soon degenerated into hostile altercation; the Asiatics, apprehensive for their personal safety, retired to Philippopolis in Thrace; and the rival synods reciprocally hurled their spiritual thunders against their enemies, whom they piously condemned as the enemies of the true God. Their decrees were published and ratified in their respective provinces; and Athanasius, who in the West was revered as a saint, was exposed as a criminal to the abhorrence of the East.

The council of Sardica reveals the first symptoms of discord and schism between the Greek and Latin churches, which were separated by the accidental difference of faith, and the permanent distinction of language.

During his second exile in the West, Athanasius was frequently admitted to the Imperial presence; at Capua, Laodicea, Milan, Verona, Padua, Aquileia, and Trier. The bishop of the diocese usually assisted at these interviews; the master of the offices stood before the veil or curtain of the sacred apartment; and the uniform moderation of the primate might be attested by these respectable witnesses, to whose evidence he solemnly appealed. Prudence would undoubtedly suggest the mild and respectful tone that became a subject and a bishop. In these familiar conferences with the sovereign of the West, Athanasius might lament the error of Constantine; but he boldly arraigned the guilt of his counsels and his Arian prelates; denied the distress and danger of the Catholic church; and excited Constantine to emulate the zeal and glory of his father. The emperor declared his resolution of employing the troops and treasures of Europe in the orthodox cause; and signified, by a concise and peremptory epistle to his brother Constantius, that unless he consented to the immediate restoration of Athanasius, he himself, with a fleet and army, would seat the archbishop on the throne of Alexandria.

But this religious war, so horrible to nature, was prevented by the timely concurrence of Constantius; and the emperor of the East condescended to solicit a reconciliation with a subject whom he had injured. Athanasius waited, with decent pride,

still he had received three successive epistles full of the strongest assurances of the protection, the favour, and the esteem of his sovereign; who invited him to resume his episcopal seat, and who added the humiliating precaution of engaging his principal ministers to attest the sincerity of his intentions. They were manifested in a still more public manner, by the strict orders which were despatched into Egypt to recall the adherents of Athanasius, to restore their privileges, to proclaim their innocences, and to erase from the public registers the illegal proceedings which had been obtained during the prevalence of the Eusebian faction. After every satisfaction and security had been given, which justice or even delicacy could require, the private proceeded, by slow journeys, through the provinces of Thrace, Asia, and Syria; and his progress was marked by the abject homage of the Oriental bishops, who excited his consternation without receiving his pardon.

At Antioch he saw the emperor Constantius, sustained, with modest firmness, the embroils and protestsions of his master, and eluded the proposal of allowing the Arians a single church at Alexandria, by claiming, in the other cities of the empire, a similar toleration for his own party; a reply which might have appeared just and moderate in the mouth of an independent prince. The entrance of the archbishop into his capital was a triumphal procession; applause and persecution had endeared him to the Alexandrians; his authority, which he exercised with vigour, was more firmly established; and his fame was diffused from Ethiopia to Britain, over the whole extent of the Christian world.

But the subject who has reduced his prince to the necessity of dissembling, can never expect a sincere and lasting forgiveness; and the tragic fate of Constantine soon deprived Athanasius of a powerful and generous protector. The civil war between the Arians and the only surviving brother of Constantine, which afflicted the empire above three years, secured an interval of repose to the Catholic church, and the two containing parties were desirous to conciliate the friendship of a bishop, who, by the weight of his personal authority, might determine the fluctuating resolutions of an important province. He gave audience to the ambassadors of the tyrant, with whom he was afterwards accused of holding a secret correspondence; and the emperor Constantius repeatedly assured his dearest father, the most revered Athanasius, that, notwithstanding his malicious rumours which were circulated by his human enemies, he had inherited the sentiments, as well as the throne, of his deceased father.

114 [The author, in these words, seems to indicate the existence of a new logan of the Eusebians and Monarchians, under the patronage of the emperor.] 115 [The emperor was, however, averse to the measure proposed, and a king from Alexandria.] 116 [See Tillemont, vol. iii. p. 657, and Foscher, vol. ii. p. 457.]

117 [See Tillemont, vol. i. p. 241, Tertullian, lib. xv. ch. 26, and Ambrose, lib. vi. ch. 3, and 4, and 5.]

Gratitude and humanity would have disposed the prince of Egypt to deplore the uninspired fate of Constantine, and to abate the guilt of Magnentius; but as he clearly understood that the apprehensions of Constantine were his only safeguard, the fervour of his prayers for the success of the righteous cause might perhaps be somewhat abated. The ruin of Athanasius was no longer covered by the obscure matrix of a few biased or angry bishops, who abused the authority of a crouching monarch. The monarch himself approved the resolution, which he had so long suppressed, of avenging his private injuries; and the first winter after his victory, which he passed at Aries, was employed against an enemy more noxious to him than the vanquished tyrant of Gaul.

If the emperor had capriciously decreed the death of the most eminent and virtuous citizens of the republic, the cruel order would have been executed, without hesitation, by the ministers of open violence or of specious justice. The caution, the delay, the difficulty with which he proceeded in the condemnation and punishment of a popular bishop, discovered to the world that the privileges of the church had already revived a sense of order and freedom in the Roman government. The sentence which he pronounced in the synod of Tyre, and subscribed by a large majority of the Western bishops, had been expressly repealed; and as Athanasius had been once exalted from his episcopal dignity by the judgment of his brethren, every subsequent act might be considered as irregular, and even criminal.

But the memory of the firm and effectual support which the prince of Egypt had derived from the attachment of the Western church, engaged Constantine to suspend the execution of the sentence, till he had obtained the concurrence of the Latin bishops. Two years were consumed in ecclesiastical negotiations; and the important cause between the emperor and one of his subjects was solemnly debated, first in the synod of Aries, and afterwards in the great council of Milan, which consisted of above three hundred bishops. Their integrity was gradually undermined by the arguments of the Arians, the dexterity of the Greeks, and the pressing solicitations of a prince, who gratified his revenge at the expense of his dignity; and exposed his own passions, whilst he influenced those of the clergy.

Corruption, the most invariable symptom of constitutional liberty, was successfully practised: honours, gifts, and immunities, were offered and accepted as the price of an episcopal vote; and the condemnation of the Alexandrian prince was artfully represented as the only measure which could restore the peace and vation of the Catholic church. The friends of Athanasius were not, however, wanting to their leader, or to their cause. With a manly spirit, which the sanctity of their character rendered less dangerous, they maintained, in public debates, and in private conference with the emperor, the eternal obligation of religion and justice. They declared that neither the hope of his favour, nor the fear of his displeasure, should prevail on them to join in the condemnation of an absent, an innocent, a respectable brother. They affirmed, with apparent reason, that the illegal and absolute decrees of the council of Tyre had long since been tacitly abolished by the Imperial edicts, the honourable re-establishment of the archbishop of Alexandria, and the silence or recantation of his most clamorous adversaries. They alleged, that his innocence had been attested by the unanimous bishops of Egypt, and had been acknowledged in the councils of Rome and Sardica, by the imperial judgment of the Latin church.

They denied the hard condition of Athanasius, who, after enduring so many years, his exile, his reputation, and the seeming confidence of his sovereign, was again called upon to confute the most groundless and extravagat accusations. Their language was pregnant; the conduct was monstrous; but in this case the emperor obtained the best, which fixed the eyes of the whole empire on a single bishop; the ecclesiastical factions were prepared to sacrifice truth and justice, to the more interesting object of detaining, or removing, the most faithful champion of the Nicene faith. The Arians still thought it prudent to disguise, in ambiguous language, their real sentiments and designs; but the orthodox bishops, armed with the favour of the people, and the decrees of a general council, insisted on every occasion, and particularly at Milan, that their adversaries should purge themselves from the suspicion of heresy, before they presumed to arrogate the conduct of the great Athanasius.

But the voice of reason (if reason was indeed on the side of Athanasius) was silenced by the clamours of a faction or rival majority; and the councils of Arles and Milan were not dissuaded, till the archbishop of Alexandria had been solemnly condemned and deposed by the judgment of the Western, as well as of the Eastern, church.

The bishops who had opposed, were required to subscribe the sentence, and to unite in religious communion with the suspected leaders of the adverse party. A formulary of consent was transmitted by the messengers of state to the absent bishops; and all those who refused to submit their private opinion to the public and inspired wisdom of the councils of Arles and Milan, were immediately banished by the emperor, who affected to execute the decrees of the
Catholic church. Among those prelates who led the honourable band of confessors and exiles, Liberius of Rome, Osias of Cordova, Paulinus of Traves, Dioscorus of Milan, Eusebius of Vercelli; Lucifer and Cagliari, and Hilary of Poitiers, may deserve to be particularly distinguished. The eminent stances of Liberius, who governed the capital of the empire; the personal merit and long experience of the venerable Osias, who was regarded as the favourite of the great Constantine; and the father of the Nicene faith; placed these prelates at the head of the Latin church; and their example, either of submission or resistance, would probably be imitated by the episcopal corps. But the repeated attempts of the emperor, to seduce or to intimidate the bishops of Rome and Cordova, were for some time ineffectual. The Spaniard declared himself ready to suffer under Constantinus, as he had suffered those years before under his grandfather Maxentius. The Roman, in the presence of his sovereign, asserted the innocence of Athanasius, and his own freedom. When he was banished to Beroia in Thrace, he sent back a large sum which had been offered for the accommodation of his journey; and insulted the court of Milan by the haughty remark, that the emperor and his eunuchs might want that gold to pay their soldiers and their bishops. The resolution of Liberius and Osias was at length subdued by the hardships of exile and confinement. The Roman pontiff purchased his return by some criminal compliances; and afterwards expiated his guilt by a seasonable repentance. Persuasion and violence were employed to extort the reluctant signature of the deposed bishop of Cordova, whose strength was broken, and whose faculties were: perhaps impaired, by the weight of an hundred years; and the insolent triumph of the Ariana provoked some of the orthodox party to treat with inhuman severity the character, or rather the memory, of an unfortunate old man, to whose former services Christianity itself was so deeply indebted.

The fall of Liberius and Osias reflected a brighter lustre on the firmness of those bishops who still adhered, with unshaken fidelity, to the cause of Athanasius and religious truth. The ingenious malice of their enemies had deprived them of the benefit of mutual comfort and advice, separated those illustrious exiles into distant provinces, and carefully selected the most inhospitable spots of a great empire. Yet they soon experienced that the deserts of Libya, and the most barbarous tracts of Cappadocia, were less inhospitable than the residence of those cities, in which an Arian bishop could satiate, without restraint, the exorbitant rancour of theological hatred. Their consolation was derived from the consciousness of rectitude and independency, from the applause, the visits, the letters, and the liberal alms of their admirers; and from the satisfaction which they soon enjoyed of observing the innate divisions of the adversaries of the Nicene faith. Such was the nice and capricious taste of the emperor Constantinus, and so easily was he offended by the slightest deviation from his imaginary standard of Christian truth, that he persecuted, with equal zeal, those who defended the consubstantiality, those who asserted the similar substance, and those who denied the filiation, of the Son of God. Three bishops, degraded and banished for these adverse opinions, might possibly meet in the same place of exile; and, according to the difference of their temper, might either pity or insult the timid enthusiasm of their antagonists, whose present sufferings would never be compensated by future happiness.

The disgrace and exile of the orthodox bishops of the West were designed as so many preparatory steps to the ruin of Athanasius himself. Six and twenty months had elapsed, during which the Imperial court secretly laboured, by the most insidious arts, to remove him from Alexandria, and to withdraw the allowance which supplied his popular liberality. But when the primate of Egypt, deserted and proscribed by the Latin church, was left destitute of any foreign support, Constantinus dispatched two of his secretaries with a verbal commission to announce and execute the order of his imprisonment. As the justice of the sentence was publicly avowed by the whole party, the only motive which could restrain Constantinus from giving his messengers the sanction of a written mandate, must be imputed to his doubt of the event; and to a sense of the danger to which he might expose the second city, and the most fertile province of the empire, if the people should persist in the resolution of defending, by force of arms, the innocence of their spiritual father. Such extreme caution afforded Athanasius a specious pretence respectfully to dispute the truth of an order, which he could not retract, either with the equity, or with the former declarations, of his gracious master. The civil powers of Egypt found themselves inadequate to the task of persuading or compelling the primate to abdicate his episcopal throne; and they were obliged to conclude a treaty with the popular leaders of Alexandria, by which it was stipulated, that all proceedings and all hostilities should be suspended till the emperor's pleasure had been more distinctly ascertained. By this seeming moderation, the Catholics were deceived into

114 The exile of Liberius is mentioned by Ammianus, xiv. 7; Sozomen, H. i. c. 18; Athanasius, Hist. eccl. ii. 27; and other ancient writers.
115 The account of his life is collected by Thudius, Hist. eccl. iv. 256—260. The story is confirmed by Eusebius, Hist. eccl. viii. 21, with an add. by John, bishop of Carthage. In the order of their ages, the principal personages in the story of Osias and Liberius, from the infant and incorporate use of the latter. The ecclesiastical records of the West were commonly limited to the decease of Arinna of Thessalia, the memory of Martin, the death of Peter, which went to the proemium of the decretals of Gratianus, &c. When the history of Osias was the consubstantial argument of Maximinus in Cæcilius, the place of the bishop of Cordova, he was ordered by the emperor to return, and was ordered by episcopate. Euseb. Praep. s. 1. 2.
gratulates the deliverance of Alexandria from a popular tyrant, who defiled his blind vaticaries by the magic of his eloquence; expatiates on the virtues and piety of the most revered George, the elected bishop; and aspires, as the patron and benefactor of the city, to surpass the fame of Alexander himself. But he solemnly declares his unalterable resolution to pursue with fire and sword the obstinate adherents of the wicked Athanasius, who, by fleeing from justice, has confessed his guilt, and escaped the ignominious death which he had so often deserved.

Athanasius had indeed escaped from the most imminent dangers, and the adventures of that extraordinary man deserve and fix our attention. On the memorable night when the church of St. Thomas was invested by the troops of Syrius, the archbishop, seated on his throne, expected, with calm and intrepid dignity, the approach of death. While the public devotion was interrupted by shouts of rage and cries of terror, he animated his trembling congregation to express their religious confidence, by chanting one of the psalms of David, which celebrates the triumph of the God of Israel over the haughty and impious tyrant of Egypt. The doors were at length burst open; a cloud of arrows was discharged among the people; the soldiers, with drawn swords, rushed forwards into the sanctuary; and the dreadful gleam of their armour was reflected by the holy luminaries which burnt round the altar. Athanasius still rejected the pious importunity of the monks and presbyters, who were attached to his person; and nobly refused to desert his episcopal station, till he had dismissed in safety the last of the congregation. The darkness and tumult of the night favoured the retreat of the archbishop; and though he was oppressed by the waves of an agitation multifarious, though he was thrown to the ground, and left without sense or motion, he still recovered his unpainted courage; and eluded the eager search of the soldiers, who were instructed by their Arianic guides, that the head of Athanasius would be the most acceptable present to the emperor. From that moment the prince of Egypt disappeared from the eyes of his enemies, and remained above six years concealed in impenetrable obscurity.

The despotic power of his implacable enemy filled the whole extent of the Roman world; and the exasperated monarch had endeavoured, by a very pressing visitation to the Christian prince of Ethiopia, to exclude Athanasius from the remotest and most distant regions of the earth. Counts, prefects, tribunes, whole armies, were successively employed to pursue a bishop and a fugitive; the vigilance of the civil and military powers was excited by the Imperial edicts; liberal rewards were promised to the man who should produce Athanasius, either alive or dead; and the most severe penal-
ties were denounced against those who should dare to protect the public enemy. But the officers of Trajan were now peopled by a race of wild, yet compassionate families, who preferred the commands of their abbot to the laws of their sovereign. The numerous disciples of Antuny and Theodorow received the fugitive priests as their father, admired the patience and humility with which he conformed to their strictest institutions, collected every word which dropped from his lips as the genuine effusions of inspired wisdom; and persuaded themselves, that their prayers, their fasts, and their vigils, were less meritorious than the zeal which they expressed, and the dangers which they braved, in the defence of truth and innocence. The monasteries of Egypt were seated in lonely and desolate places, on the summit of mountains, or in the islands of the Nile; and the sacred lamen or trumpet of Tenehne was the well-known signal which assembled several thousand robust and determined monks, who, for the most part, had been the peasants of the adjacent country. When their dark retreats were invaded by a military force, which it was impossible to resist, they silently stretched out their necks to the executioner; and supported their national character, that torture could never wrest from an Egyptian the confession of a secret which he was resolved not to disclose. The archbishop of Alexandria, whose safety they eagerly desired to secure, was lost among a uniform and well-disciplined multitude; and on the nearer approach of danger, he was swiftly removed, by their efficient hands, from one place of concealment to another, till he reached the formidable deserts, which the gloomy and cruel temper of superstition had peopled with demons and savage monsters. The retirement of Athanasius, which lasted only with the life of Constantius, was spent, for the most part, in the society of the monks, who faithfully served him as guards, as secretaries, and as messengers; but the importance of maintaining a more intimate connection with the Catholic party tempted him, whenever the diligence of the pursuit was abated, to emerge from the desert, to introduce himself into Alexandria, and to trust his person to the discretion of his friends and adherents. His various adventures might have furnished the subject of a very entertaining romance. He was once seized in a dry cistern, which he had scarcely left before he was betrayed by the treachery of a female slave; and he was once concealed in a still more extraordinary asylum, the house of a virgin, only twenty years of age, and who was celebrated in the whole city for her exquisite beauty. At the hour of midnight, as she related the story many years afterwards, she was surprized by the appearance of the archbishop in a loose underdress, who, advancing with hasty steps, conjured her to afford him the protection which he had been directed by a celestial vision to seek under her hospitable roof. The pious maid accepted and preserved the sacred pledge which was intrusted to her prudence and courage. Without imparting the secret to any one, she instantly conducted Athanasius into her most secret chamber, and watched over his safety with the tenderness of a friend, and the assiduity of a servant. As long as the danger continued, she regularly supplied him with books and provisions, washed his feet, managed his correspondence, and dexterously concealed from the eye of suspicion, this familiar and solitary intercourse between a saint whose character required the most unblemished chastity, and a female whose charms might excite the most dangerous emotions. During the six years of persecutions and exile, Athanasius repeated his visits to his fair and faithful companion; and the formal declaration, that he was the counsellor of Himik and Sceluse, forces us to believe that he was secretly present at the time and place of their convocation. The advantage of personally negotiating with his friends, and of observing and improving the divisions of his enemies, might justify, in a prudent statesman, so bold and dangerous an enterprise: and Alexandria was connected by trade and navigation with every seaport of the Mediterranean. From the depth of his inaccessible retreat, the intrepid prince waged an incessant and offensive war against the protector of the Arians; and his reasonable writing, which were diligently circulated, and eagerly perused, contributed to unite and animate the orthodox party. In his public apologies, which he addressed to the emperor himself, he sometimes affected the praise of moderation; whilst at the same time, in secret and vehement invectives, he exposed Constantius as a weak and wicked prince, the executioner of his family, the tyrant of the republic, and the antichrist of the church. In the height of his prosperity, the victorious monarch, who had chastised the rashness of Gallus, and suppressed the revolt of Syrampus, who had taken the diadem from the head of Vetranio, and vanquished in the field the legions of Magnentius, received from an invisible hand a wound, which he could neither heal nor revenge; and the son of Constantine was the first of the Christian princes who experienced the strength of those principles, which in the cause of religion, could resist the most violent exactions of the civil power. The persecution of Athanasius, and of so many respectable bishops, who suffered for the truth of their opinions, is supposed among the ancients had concurred with the disease, which is now commonly called apoplexy, which is very frequent amongst persons of moderate age, and which consists in a sudden loss of power in the lower limbs, and a partial insensibility of the same. The symptoms of this disease are so violent that it is not uncommon for persons to pass a night in bed, and to die the next morning, without any visible cause of death. The symptoms are generally attended with a great loss of blood, and with a violent弩ative of the head, which is usually accompanied by a strong pulse. The symptoms are generally attended with a great loss of blood, and with a violent弩ative of the head, which is usually accompanied by a strong pulse. The symptoms are generally attended with a great loss of blood, and with a violent弩ative of the head, which is usually accompanied by a strong pulse.
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

1. The Roman pontife, as long as he maintained his station and his principles, was guarded by the warm attachment of a great people; and could reject with scorn the prayers, the menaces, and the obligations of an heretical prince. When the emperors had secretly pronounced the exile of Liberius, the well-grounded apprehension of a tumult engaged them to use the utmost precautions in the execution of the sentence. The capital was invested on every side, and the prefect was commanded to seize the person of the bishop, either by stratagem or by open force. The order was obeyed, and Liberius, with the greatest difficulty, at the hour of midnight, was swiftly conveyed beyond the reach of the Roman people, before their consternation was turned into rage. As soon as they were informed of his banishment into Thrace, a general assembly was convened, and the clergy of Rome bound themselves, by a public and solemn oath, never to desert their bishop, never to acknowledge the usurper Felix; who, by the influence of the emperors, had been, irregularly chosen and confirmed, within the walls of a profane palace. At the end of two years, their plans obtaining un的梦想 entire and unskilled; and when Constantinus visited Rome, he was assisted by the imperial solicitation of a people who had preserved, as the last remnant of their ancient freedom, the right of treating their sovereign with familiar insolence. The advice of many of the senators and most honourable citizens, after pressing their husbands to interest in favour of Liberius, were advised to undertake a commission which, in their hands, would be less dangerous, and might prove more successful. The emperor received with partialness these female deputees, whose wealth and dignity were displayed in the ungainliness of their dress and ornaments; he admired their inflexible resolution of following their beloved pastor to the most distant regions of the earth; and consented that the two bishops, Liberius and Felix, should govern in peace their respective congregations. But the idea of toleration was so repugnant to the practice, and even to the sentiments, of those times, that when the answer of Constantinus was publicly read in the circus of Neron, so reasonable a project of accommodation was rejected with contempt and ridicule. The eager assemblage which animated the spectators in the decisive moment of a horse-race, was now directed towards a different object; and the circus resounded with the shout of thousands, who repeatedly exclaimed, "One God, One Christ, One Bishop!" The zeal of the Roman people in the cause of Liberius, was not confined to words alone; and the dangerous and bloody seditions which they excited soon after the departure of Constantinus, determined that prince to accept the submission of the exiled prelate, and to restore him to the undivided dominion of the
capital. After some insinuation of resistance, his rival was expelled from the city by the permission of the emporer, and the power of the opposite faction; the adherents of Felix were inhumanly murdered in the streets, in the public places, in the baths, and even in the churches; and the face of Rome, upon the return of a Christian bishop, renewed the horrid image of the massacres of Marcus, and the proscriptions of Sylla. 138

II. Notwithstanding the rapid increase of Christians under the reign of the Flavian family, Rome, Alexandria, and the other great cities of the empire, still contained a strong and powerful faction of, indeed, who envied the prosperity, and who ridiculed, even on their theatres, the theological disputes of the church. Constantinople alone enjoyed the advantage of being born and educated in the bosom of the faith. The capital of the East had never been polluted by the worship of idols; and the whole body of the people had deeply imbibed the opinions, the virtues, and the passions, which distinguished the Christians of that age from the rest of mankind. After the death of Alexander, the episcopal throne was disputed by Paul and Macedonius. By their rank and abilities they both deserved the eminent station to which they aspired; and if the moral character of Macedonius was less exceptional, his competitor had the advantage of a prior election and a more orthodox doctrine. His firm attachment to the Nicene creed, which has given Paul a place in the calendar among saints and martyrs, exposed him to the resentment of the Arians. In the space of fourteen years he was five times driven from his throne; to which he was more frequently restored by the violence of the people, than by the permission of the prince; and the power of Macedonius could be secured only by the death of his rival. The unfortunate Paul was dragged in chains from the sandy deserts of Mesopotamia to the most desolate places of Mount Tarus, 139 confined in a dark and narrow dungeon, left six days without food, and at length strangled by the order of Philip, one of the principal ministers of the emperor Constantius. 140 The first blood which stained the new capital was spilt in this ecclesiastical contest; and many persons were slain on both sides, in the furious and obstinate seditions of the people. The commission of enforcing a sentence of banishment against Paul, had been intrusted to Hermogenes, the master-general of the cavalry; but the execution of it was fatal to himself. The Catholics rose in the defence of their bishop; the palace of Hermogenes was consumed; the first military officer of the empire was dragged by the heels through the streets of Constantinople, and, after he expired, his lifeless

138 See on this matter a dissertation of Arnim, Ephraemi, et. 7. 13, De ecclesiast. discipl. c. 14. For a view of the state of the sects under the Flavians, see the letter of Pope Zephyrianus, dated 342. In this epistle, Zephyrianus mentions some errors of popular prejudice; but he was exposed to the danger of the Levitical penalty, if he was guilty of the error which he reprehended. See also Willi, Flora, Epistol. epist, 23. 7. p. 23. Willm. Flor. Epi. c. 20. See also Willm. Flor. Epi. c. 20. 7. p. 23.

139 See Arnim, Ephraemi, et. 7. 13, De ecclesiast. discipl. c. 14. For a view of the state of the sects under the Flavians, see the letter of Pope Zephyrianus, dated 342. In this epistle, Zephyrianus mentions some errors of popular prejudice; but he was exposed to the danger of the Levitical penalty, if he was guilty of the error which he reprehended. See also Willi, Flora, Epistol. epist, 23. 7. p. 23. Willm. Flor. Epi. c. 20. 7. p. 23.

140 See Arnim, Ephraemi, et. 7. 13, De ecclesiast. discipl. c. 14. For a view of the state of the sects under the Flavians, see the letter of Pope Zephyrianus, dated 342. In this epistle, Zephyrianus mentions some errors of popular prejudice; but he was exposed to the danger of the Levitical penalty, if he was guilty of the error which he reprehended. See also Willi, Flora, Epistol. epist, 23. 7. p. 23. Willm. Flor. Epi. c. 20. 7. p. 23.
who were accused of the murder of Hermogenes, and beheaded at the gates of Constantinople. By an edict of Constantius against the Catholics, which has not been judged worthy of a place in the Theodosian code, those who refused to communicate with the Arian bishops, and particularly with Macedonius, were deprived of the immunities of ecclesiastics, and of the rights of Christians; they were compelled to relinquish the possession of the churches; and were strictly prohibited from holding their assemblies within the walls of the city. The execution of this unjust law, in the provinces of Thrace and Asia Minor, was committed to the zeal of Macedonius: the civil and military powers were directed to obey his commands; and the cruelties exercised by this semi-Arian tyrant in the support of the Homoeans, exceeded the commission, and disgraced the reign, of Constantius. The sacraments of the church were administered to the reluctant victims, who denied the vocation, and abjured the principles, of Macedonius. The rites of baptism were conferred on women and children, who, for that purpose, had been torn from the arms of their friends and fellow-men; the mounds of the communicants were held open by a wooden engine, while the sacred bread was forced down their throat; the breasts of tender virgins were either burst with red-hot egg shells, or suddenly compressed between sharp and heavy bundles. The Novatians of Constantinople, and the adjacent country, by their firm attachment to the Homoean standard, deserved to be confounded with the Catholics themselves. Macedonius was informed, that a large district of Paphlagonia was almost entirely inhabited by those sectaries. He resolved either to convert or to extirpate them; and as he distrusted, on this occasion, the efficacy of an ecclesiastical mission, he commanded a body of four thousand legionaries to march against the rebels, and to reduce the territory of Muntinian under his spiritual dominion. The Novatian peasants, animated by despair and religious fury, boldly encountered the invaders of their country; and though many of the Paphlagonians were slain, the Roman legions were vanquished by an irregular multitude, armed only with scythes and axes; and, except a few who escaped by an ignominious flight, four thousand soldiers were left dead on the field of battle. The successor of Constantius has expressed, in a concise but lively manner, some of the theological calumnies which afflicted the empire, and more especially the East, in the reign of a prince who was the slave of his own passions, and of those of his counsellors. *Many were imprisoned, and persecuted, and driven into exile. Whole troops of those who are styled heretics were massacred, particularly at Cyzicus, and at Saturnus. In Paphlagonia, Bithynia, Galatia, and in many other provinces, towns and villages were laid waste, and utterly destroyed.*

While the flames of the Arian controversy consumed the vitals of the empire, the African provinces were infested by their peculiar enemies, the savage Fanatics, who, under the name of Circumcellions, formed the strength and scandal of the Donatist party. The severe execution of the laws of Constantine had excited a spirit of discontent and resistance; the strenuous efforts of his son Constans, to restore the unity of the church, exasperated the sentiments of mutual hatred, which had first occasioned the separation; and the methods of force and corruption employed by the two Imperial commissioners, had and Macarius, furnished the schismatics with a spurious contrast between the maxim of the apostles and the conduct of their pretended successors. The peasants who inhabited the villages of Numidia and Mauritania, were a ferocious race, who had been imperfectly subdued under the authority of the Roman laws; who were imperfectly converted to the Christian faith; but who were actuated by a blind and furious enthusiasm in the cause of their Donatist teachers. They indignantly supported the exiles of their bishop, the demolition of their churches, and the interruption of their secret assemblies. The violence of the officers of justice, who were usually sustained by a military guard, was sometimes repelled with equal violence; and the blood of some popular ecclesiastics, which had been shed in the quarrel, inflamed their rude followers with an eager desire of revenging the death of these holy martyrs. By their own cruelty and rashness, the ministers of persecution sometimes provoked their fate; and the guilt of an accidental tumult precipitated the criminals into despair and rebellion. Driven from their native villages, the Donatist peasants assembled in formidable gangs on the edge of the Getulian desert; and readily exchanged the habits of labour for a life of idleness and rags, which was consecrated by the name of religion, and finely condemned by the doctors of the sect. The leaders of the Circumcellions assumed the title of captains of the saints; their principal weapon, as they were indifferently provided with swords and spears, was a huge and weighty club, which they termed a Remus; and the well-known sound of *Praise be to God!* which they used as their cry of war, diffused consternation over the unarmed provincials.\footnote{124} 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170}
vances of Africa. As first their depredations were coloured by the plea of necessity; but they soon exceeded the measure of subsistence, indulged without control their insensate and avaricious, burnt the villages which they had pillaged, and ruined the licentious tyranny of the open country. The occupations of husbandry, and the administration of justice, were interrupted; and as the Circumcellions pretended to restore the primitive simplicity of mankind, and to reform the abuses of civil society, they opened a secret asylum for the slaves and debtors, who flocked in crowds to their holy standard. When they were not resisted, they usually contented themselves with plunder, but the slightest opposition provoked them to acts of violence and murder; and some Catholic priests, who had imprudently signalised their zeal, were tortured by the fanatics with the most refined and satanic barbarity. The spirit of the Circumcellions was not only always exerted against their defenceless enemies; they engaged, and sometimes defeated, the troops of the province; and in the bloody action of Bagagni, they attacked in the open field, but with unsuccessful valour, an advanced guard of the Imperial cavalry. The Donatists, who were taken in arms received, and they soon deserved, the same treatment which might have been shown to the wild beasts of the desert. The captives died, without a murmur, either by the sword, the axe, or the fire; and the measures of retaliation were multiplied in a rapid proportion, which aggravated the horrors of rebellion, and excluded the hope of mutual forgiveness. In the beginning of the present century, the example of the Circumcellions has been renewed in the persecution, the boldness, the crimes, and the enthusiasm of the Camisards; and if the fanatics of Languedoc surpassed those of Numidia, by their military achievements, the Africans maintained their fierce independence with more resolution and perseverance. 120

Their religious animosities. Such disorders are the natural effects of religious tyranny; but the rage of the Donatists was inflamed by a frenzy of a very extraordinary kind; and which, if it really prevailed among them in so extravagant a degree, cannot surely be paralleled in any country, or in any age. Many of these fanatics were possessed with the horror of life, and the desire of martyrdom; and they deemed it of little moment by what means, or by what hands, they perished, if their conduct was sanctioned by the intention of devoting themselves to the glory of the true faith, and the hope of eternal happiness. 121 Sometimes they rudely disturbed the festivals, and profaned the temples of Paganism, with the design of exciting the most abhorrent of the idolaters to revenge the insulted honour of their gods. They sometimes forced their way into the courts of Justice, and compelled theungle judge to give orders for their immediate execution. They frequently stopped travel-

120 The Elites des Camisards, in 2 voles. Toulouse, 1793. This book was written in a spirit of truth and sallitude. It required, to discover the edifices of the author.

121 The violence of those fanatics is compared with the prudence of Montesquieu, for neglecting to enumerate, among the causes of the decline of the empire, a law of Constantine, by which the exercise of the Pagan worship was absolutely suppressed, and a considerable part of his subjects was left destitute of priests, of temples, and of any pub-
religion. The zeal of the philosophic historian for the rights of mankind has induced him to acquire in the ambiguous testimony of those ecclesiastics, who have too lightly sacrificed to their fancy honor the service of a general persecution. Instead of alleging this imaginary law, which would have blazed in the face of the moral codes, we may safely appeal to the original episodes, which Constantine addressed to the followers of the ancient religion, at a time when he no longer disguised, his conversion, nor dreaded the rivals of his throne. He invites and exhorts, in the most pressing terms, to the subjects of the Roman empire to imitate the example of their master; but he declares, that those who still refuse to open to the celestial light, may freely enjoy their temples, and their fancied gods. A report, that the ceremonies of Paganism were suppressed, is formally contradicted by the emperor himself, who wisely assigns, as the principle of his moderation, the invincible force of habit, of prejudice, and of superstition. Without violating the sanctity of his promise, without alarming the fears of the Pagans, the awful monarch advanced, by slow and cautious steps, to undermine the irregular and decayed fabric of polytheism. The partial acts of severity, which he occasionally exercised, though they were secretly prompted by a Christian zeal, were coloured by the fairest pretences of justice and the public good; and while Constantine designed to ruin the foundations, he seemed to reform the abuses, of the ancient religion. After the example of the wisest of his predecessors, he condemned, under the most rigorous penalties, the illicit and impious arts of divination; which excited the vain hopes, and sometimes the criminal attempts, of those who were discontented with their present condition. An ignominious silence was imposed on the oracles, which had been publicly convicted of fraud and falsehood; the delusive priests of the Nile were abolished; and Constantine discharged the duties of a Roman censor, which he gave orders for the destruction of several temples of Flaminia; in which every mode of prostitution was devoutly practised in the face of day, and to the honour of Venus. The Imperial city of Constantinople was, in some measure, raised at the expense, and was adorned with the spoils, of the opulent temples of Greece and Asia; the sacred property was conscripted, the statues of gods and heroes were transported, with rude familiarity, among a people who considered them as objects, not of adoration, but of curiosity: the gold and silver were restored to circulation; and the magistrates, the bishops, and the emperors, improved the fortunate occasion of gratifying, at once, their zeal, their avance, and their repose. But these deprivations were confined to a small part of the Roman world; and the provinces had been long since accustomed to endure the same sacrilegious rapine, from the tyranny of priests and proconsuls, who could not be suspected of any design to subvert the established religion. The sons of Constantine trod in the footsteps of their father, with more zeal, and with less discretion. The pro
to incest
through priests and oppositions were innumerable multiplied; every indulgence was shown to the illegal behaviour of the Christians; every doubt was explained to the disadvantage of Paganism, and the demolition of the temples was celebrated as one of the auspicious events of the reign of Constantine and Constantius. The name of Constantine is prefixed to a coarse law, which might have superseded the necessity of any future prohibitions. Its purpose, that in all places, and in all cities, the temples be immediately shut, and carefully guarded, that none may have the power of ascending. It is likewise no pleasure, that all our subjects should abstain from sacrifices. If any one should be guilty of such an act, let him feel the sound of vengeance, and after his execu
tion, let his property be confiscrated in the public use. We denounce the same penalties against the governors of the provinces, if they neglect to punish the criminals. But there is the strongest reason to believe, that this formidable edict was either composed without being published, or was published without being executed. The evidence of facts, and the monuments which are still extant of brass and marble, continue to prove the public exercise of the Pagan worship during the whole reign of the sons of Constantine. In the East, as well as in the West, in cities, as well as in the country, a great number of temples were respected, or at least were spared; and the devout multitude still enjoyed the luxury of sacrifices, of festivals, and of processions, by the permission, or by the compliance, of the civil government. About four years after the supposed date of this bloody edict, Constantius visited the temple of Rome; and the decency of his behaviour is recommended by a Pagan orator as an example worthy of the imitation of succeeding princes.
the emperor," says Symmachus, "suffered the privileges of the vestal virgins to remain intact; he bestowed the sacred dignities on the notables of Rome, granted the customary allowance to defray the expenses of the public rites and sacrifices; and, though he had embraced a different religion, he never attempted to deprive the empire of the sacred worship of antiquity." The senate still presumed to consacrate, by solemn decree, the divine memory of their sovereign; and Constantine himself was associated, after his death, to those gods whom he had renounced and insulted during his life. The title, the ensigns, the prerogatives of sovereign potency, which had been instituted by Numa, and assumed by Augustus, were accepted, without hesitation, by seven Christian emperors; who were invested with a more absolute authority over the religion which they had deserted, than over that which they professed.

The divisions of Christianity suspended the ruin of Paganism, and the holy war against the infidels was less vigorously prosecuted by princes and bishops, who were more immediately alarmed by the guilt and danger of domestic rebellion. The extirpation of idolatry might have been justified by the established principles of intolerance; but the hostile sects, which alternately reigned in the Imperial court, were mutually apprehensive of alienating, and perhaps exasperating, the minds of a powerful, though declining faction. Every motive of authority and fashion, of interest and reason, now militated on the side of Christianity; but two or three generations elapsed, before their victorious influence was universally felt. The religion which had so long and so lately been established in the Roman empire, was still revered by a numerous people, less attached indeed to speculative opinion, than to ancient custom. The honours of the state and army were indifferently bestowed on all the subjects of Constantine and Constantius; and a considerable portion of knowledge and wealth and valor was still engaged in the service of polytheism. The superstition of the senator and of the peasant, of the poet and the philosopher, was derived from very different causes, but they met with equal devotion in the temples of the gods. Their zeal was insensibly provoked by the insulting triumph of a proscribed sect; and their hopes were revived by the well-grounded confidence, that the presumptive heir of the empire, a young and valiant hero, who had delivered Gaul from the arms of the barbarians, had secretly embraced the religion of his ancestors.

CHAP. XXII.

Julian is declared Emperor by the Legions of Gaul. — His March and Success. — The Death of Constantius. — Civil Administration of Julian.

While the Romans languished under the ignominious tyranny of.emperors and bishops, the praises of Julian were repeated with transport in every part of the empire, except in the palace of Constantius. The barbarians of Germany had fallen, and still dreaded, the arms of the young Caesar; his soldiers were the companions of his victory; the grateful provincials enjoyed the blessings of his reign; but the favourites, who had opposed his elevation, were offended by his virtues; and they justly considered the friend of the people as the enemy of the court. As long as the name of Julian was doubted, the tributes of the palace, who were skilled in the language of satire, tried the efficacy of those arts which they had so often practised with success. They easily discovered, that his simplicity was not exempt from affectation; the ridiculous epithets of an hair-savage, of an age invested with the purple, were applied to the dress and person of the philosophic warrior; and his modest despatches were stigmatised as the vain and elaborate fictions of a luxurious Greek, a speculative soldier, who had studied the art of war amidst the groves of the academy. The voice of malicious folly was at length silenced by the sheets of victory; the enmity of the Franks and Alemani could no longer be painted as an object of contempt; and the research himself was monthly anxious of straining from his lieutenant the honourable reward of his labours. In the letters crowned with laurel, which, according to ancient custom, were addressed to the provinces, the name of Julian was omitted. Constantius had made his disposal. Since the death of Julian and his family his end was the second title of Flavius Julius Constantinus Decebalus, and that of his son, who was the only legate of the Franks and Alemani, Decebalus the Great. The emperor, having given the name of Decebalus to a son, who was disdained by his subjects, had desired of Flavius Julius Constantinus Decebalus, and that of his son, who was the only legate of the Franks and Alemani, Decebalus the Great. The emperor, having given the name of Decebalus to a son, who was disdained by his subjects, had desired of Flavius Julius Constantinus Decebalus, and that of his son, who was the only legate of the Franks and Alemani, Decebalus the Great. The emperor, having given the name of Decebalus to a son, who was disdained by his subjects, had desired of Flavius Julius Constantinus Decebalus, and that of his son, who was the only legate of the Franks and Alemani, Decebalus the Great. The emperor, having given the name of Decebalus to a son, who was disdained by his subjects, had desired of Flavius Julius Constantinus Decebalus, and that of his son, who was the only legate of the Franks and Alemani, Decebalus the Great. The emperor, having given the name of Decebalus to a son, who was disdained by his subjects, had desired of Flavius Julius Constantine Decebalus, and that of his son, who was the only legate of the Franks and Alemani, Decebalus the Great. The emperor, having given the name of Decebalus to a son, who was disdained by his subjects, had desired of Flavius Julius Constantinus Decebalus, and that of his son, who was the only legate of the Franks and Alemani, Decebalus the Great. The emperor, having given the name of Decebalus to a son, who was disdained by his subjects, had desired of Flavius Julius Constantinus Decebalus, and that of his son, who was the only legate of the Franks and Alemani, Decebalus the Great.
instantly begin their march, and exert their utmost diligence to arrive before the opening of the campaign, on the frontiers of Persia. The Cesar foresaw and lamented the consequences of this fatal mandate. Most of the auxiliaries, who engaged their voluntary service, had stipulated, that they should never be obliged to pass the Alps. The public faith of Rome, and the personal honour of Julian, had been pledged for the observance of this condition. Such an act of treachery and oppression would destroy the confidence, and excite the resentment of the independent warriors of Germany, who considered truth as the nobler of their virtues, and freedom as the most valuable of their possessions. The legionsaries, who enjoyed the title and prerogatives of Romans, were enlisted for the general defence of the republic; but those mercenary troops heard with cold indifference the antiquated names of the republic and of Rome. Attached, either from birth or long habit, to the climate and manners of Gaul, they loved and admired Julian; they despised, and perhaps hated, the emperor; they dreaded the laborious march, the Persian arrows, and the burning deserts of Asia. They claimed as their own the country which they had saved; and excused their want of spirit, by pleading the sacred and immediate duty of protecting their families and friends. The apprehensions of the Gauls were derived from the knowledge of the impending and inevitable danger. As soon as the provinces were exhausted of their military strength, the Germans would violate a treaty which had been imposed on their fears; and notwithstanding the abilities and valour of Julian, the general of a nominal army, to whom the public calamities would be imputed, must find himself, after a vain resistance, either a prisoner in the camp of the barbarians, or a criminal in the palace of Constantius. If Julian complied with the orders which he had received, he subscribed his own destruction, and that of a people who deserved his affection. But a positive refusal was an act of rebellion, and a declaration of war. The inexorable jealousy of the emperor, the peremptory, and perhaps insidious, nature of his commands, left not any room for a fair apology, or candid interpretation; and the dependent station of the Cesar scarcely allowed him to pause or to deliberate. Solitude increased the perplexity of Julian; he could no longer apply to the faithful counsels of Salliani, who had been removed from his office by the judicious jealousy of the empress: he could not even enforce his representations by the concurrence of the ministers, who would have been afraid, or ashamed, to oppose the ruin of Gaul. The moment had been chosen, when Lepcisina, the general of the cavalry, was despatched into Britain during the winter, and the prince was at Amiens (xx. i. 4) bound of allowing a sufficient space to a square of those detached miles, would make the impression of the battle almost instantaneous on the Barracks, and would prevent it from reaching any other part of the empire. The time of battle must not reach the Alpes till the end of autumn. The number of Amazons must have been discovered, and the language of the Amazons must have been known.
ruin to repulse the invasions of the Scots and Picts; and Florentins was occupied at Vienna by the assessment of the tribute. The latter, a crafty and corrupt statesman, declining to assume a responsible part on this dangerous occasion, eluded the pressing and repeated invitations of Julian, who represented to him, that, in every important measure, the presence of the prefect was indispensable in the council of the prince. In the mean while the Caesar was oppressed by the rude and importunate solicitations of the Imperial messengers, who presumed to suggest, that if he expected the return of his ministers, he would charge himself with the guilt of the delay, and reserve for them the merit of the execution. Unable to resist, unwilling to comply, Julian expressed, in the most serious terms, his wish, and even his intention, of resigning the purple, which he could not preserve with honour, but which he could not abdicate with safety.

After a painful conflict, Julian was compelled to acknowledge, that obsequious was the virtue of the most eminent subject, and that the sovereign alone was entitled to judge of the public welfare. He issued the necessary orders for carrying into execution the commands of Constantius; a part of the troops began their march for the Alps; and the detachments from the several garrisons moved towards their respective places of assembly. They advanced with difficulty through the tumult and affrighted crowds of the provincials, who attempted to excite their pity by clamorous, or loud lamentations, while the wives of the soldiers, holding their infants in their arms, accused the desertion of their husbands, in the mixed language of grief, of indignation, and of indignation. This scene of general distress afflicted the humanity of the Caesar; he granted a sufficient number of post-wagons to transport the wives and families of the soldiers; endeavoured to alleviate the hardships which he was constrained to inflict, and increased, by the most laudable arts, his own popularity, and the discontent of the rebel troops. The grief of an aroused multitude is soon converted into rage; their licentious murmurs, which every hour were communicated from tent to tent with more boldness and effect, prepared their minds for the most daring acts of sedition; and by the compliance of their tribunes, a reasonable liberty was secretly dispersed, which painted, in lively colours, the disgrace of the Caesar, the oppression of the Gallic army, and the feeble vices of the tyrant of Asia. The servitors of Constantius were astonished and alarmed by the progress of this dangerous spirit. They pressed the Caesar to hasten the departure of the troops; but they imprudently rejected the honest and judicious advice of Julian; who proposed that they should not march through Paris, and suggested the danger and temptation of a last interview.

As soon as the approach of the Caesarian troops was announced, the Caesar, Julian entered, went out to meet them, and ascended his tribunal, which had been erected in a plain before the gates of the city. After distinguishing the officers and soldiers, who by their rank or merit deserved a peculiar attention, Julian addressed himself to a studied creation; to the surrounding multitude: he celebrated their exploits with grateful applause; encouraged them to accept, with alacrity, the honour of serving under the eyes of a powerful and liberal monarch; and admonished them, that the commands of Augustus required an instant and cheerful obedience. The soldiers, who were apprehensive of offending their general by an indiscreet clamation, or of belying their sentiments by false and seditious acclamations, maintained an obstinate silence; and, after a short pause, were dismissed to their quarters. The principal officers were entertained by the Caesar, who professed, in the universal language of friendship, his desire and his inability to reward, according to their deserts, the brave companions of his victories. They retired from the feast, full of grief and perplexity; and lamented the hardship of their fate, which tore them from their beloved general and their native country. The only expedient which could prevent their separation was boldly agitated and approved; the popular resentment was insensibly moulded into a regular conspiracy; their just reasons of complaint were heightened by passion, and their passions were inflamed by rumours; as on the eve of their departure, the troops were indulged in licentious festivity. At the hour of midnight, the impetuous multitude, with swords, and bows, and torches, in their hands, rushed into the suburbs; encompassed the palace; and, careless of future dangers, pronounced the fatal and irreparable words, JULIUS AURELIA! The prince, whose anxious suspense was interrupted by their disorderly acclamations, secured the doors against their intrusion; and, as long as it was in his power, secluded his person and dignity from the accidents of a nocturnal tumult. At the dawn of day, the soldiers, whose zeal was irritated by opposition, forcibly entered the palace, seized, with respectful violence, the object of their choice, guarded Julian with drawn swords through the streets of Paris, placed him on the tribunal, and with repeated shouts saluted him as their emperor. Prudence as well as loyalty incited the propriety of resisting their unreasonable designs; and of preparing, for his oppressed virtus, the excuse of violence. Addressing himself by turns to the multitude and to individuals, he sometimes implored their mercy, and sometimes expressed his indignation.
conjured them not to sully the fame of their immortal victories; and ventured to promise, that if they would immediately return to their allegiance, he would undertake to obtain from the emperor not only a free and generous pardon, but even the revocation of the orders which had excited the tumult. But the soldiers, who were conscious of their guilt, chose rather to depend on the gratitude of Julian, than on the clemency of the emperor. Their zeal was instantly turned into impatience, and their impatience into rage. The inflexible Caesar sustained, till the third hour of the day, their prayers, their reproaches, and their menace; nor did he yield, till he had been repeatedly assured, that if he wished to live, he must consent to reign. He was exalted on a shield in the presence, and amidst the unanimous acclamations, of the troops; a rich military collar, which was offered by chances, supplied the want of a diadem; the ceremony was concluded by the promise of a moderate donation; and the new emperor, overwhelmed with real or affected grief, retired into the most secret recesses of his apartment.

The grief of Julian could proceed only from his innocence; but his innocence must appear extremely doubtful in the eyes of those who have learned to suspect the motives and the professions of princes. His lively and active mind was susceptible of the various impressions of hope and fear, of gratitude and revenge, of duty and of ambition, of the love of fame and of the fear of reproach. But it is impossible for us to calculate the respective weight and operation of these sentiments; or to ascertain the principles of action which might escape the observation, while they guided, or rather impelled, the steps of Julian himself. The discontent of the troops was produced by the malice of his enemies; their ruin was the natural effect of interest and of passion; and if Julian had tried to conceal a deep design under the appearances of chance, he must have employed the most consummate artifices without success, and probably without success. He solemnly declares, in the presence of Jupiter, of the Sun, of Mars, of Minerva, and of all the other deities, that till the close of the evening, which preceded his elevation, he was utterly ignorant of the designs of the soldiers; and it may seem ungenerous to distrust the honour of a hero, and the truth of a philosopher. Yet the superstitious confidence that Constantius was the enemy, and that he himself was the favourite of the gods, might prompt him to desire, to solicit, and even to

batten, the suspicious moment of his reign, which was predetermined to restore the ancient religion of mankind. When Julian had received the intelligence of the conspiracy, he resigned himself to a short slumber; and afterwards related to his friends that he had seen the genius of the empire waiting with some impatience at his door, pressing for admittance, and reproaching his want of spirit and ambition. Astonished and perplexed, he addressed his prayers to the great Jupiter; who immediately signified, by a clear and manifest omen, that he should submit to the will of Heaven and of the army. The conduct which discloses the ordinary maxims of reason, excites our suspicion and enforces our enquiry. Whenever the spirit of fanaticism, at once so credulous and so crafty, has insinuated itself into a noble mind, it insensibly corrodes the vital principles of virtue and sincerity.

To moderate the zeal of his party, no measure was so effectual as to protect the persons of his enemies, to defeat and to despise the secret enterprises which were formed against his life and dignity, were the cares which employed the first days of the reign of the new emperor. Although he was firmly resolved to maintain the station which he had assumed, he was still desirous of saving his country from the calamities of civil war, of declining a contest with the superior forces of Constantius, and of preserving his own character from the reproach of perfidy and ingratitude. Adorned with the ensigns of military and Imperial pomp, Julian showed himself in the field of Mars to the soldiers, who gloated with ardent enthusiasm in the cause of their pupil, their leader, and their friend. He recaptured their victories, lamented their sufferings, applauded their resolution, animated their hopes, and checked their impetuosity; nor did he disdain the assembly, till he had obtained a solemn promise from the troops, that if the emperor of the East would subscribe an equitable treaty, they would renounce any views of conquest, and satisfy themselves with the tranquil possession of the Gallic provinces. On this foundation he composed, in his own name, and in that of the army, a specious and moderate epistle, which was delivered to Constantius, his master of the office, and to his chamberlain Katherius; two ambassadors whom he appointed to receive the answer, and observe the dispositions of Constantius. The epistle is inscribed with the modest appellation of Caesar; but Julian solicits in a peremptory, though respectful, manner, the confirmation of the title of Augustus. He acknowledges the irregularity of his own election, while he justifies, in some
mourners; the resentment and violence of the troops which had excited his reluctant consent. He allows the supremacy of his brother Constantius; and engages to send him an annual present of Spanish horses, to recruit his army with a select number of barbarian youths, and to accept from him a protectorate proper of approved discretion and fidelity. But he reserves for himself the nomination of his other civil and military officers, with the troops, the revenue, and the sovereignty of the provinces beyond the Alps. He admonishes the emperor to consult the dictates of justice; to distract the arts of these usual flatterers, who insist only by the discord of princes; and to embrace the offer of a fair and honourable treaty, equally advantageous to the republic and to the house of Constantine. In this negotiation Julian claimed no more than he already possessed. The delegated authority which he had long exercised over the provinces of Gaul, Spain, and Britain, was still obeyed under a name more independent and august. The soldiers and the people rejoiced in a revolution which was not stained even with the blood of the guilty. Florentius was a fugitive; Lupicinus a prisoner. The persons who were disinherited to the new government were disarmed and secured; and the vacant offices were distributed, according to the recommendation of merit, by a prince who despised the intrigues of the palace, and the clamours of the soldiers.15

The negotiations of peace were accompanied and supported by the most vigorous preparations for war.

The army, which Julian held in readiness for immediate action, was recruited and augmented by the disorders of the times. The cruel persecution of the faction of Magnentius had filled Gaul with numerous bands of outlaws and robbers. They cheerfully accepted the offer of a general pardon from a prince whom they could trust, submitted to the restraints of military discipline, and retained only their implacable hatred to the person and government of Constantius.16 As soon as the season of the year permitted Julian to take the field, he appeared at the head of his legions; threw a bridge over the Rhine in the neighbourhood of Cherves; and prepared to chastise the perfidy of the Atuanis, a tribe of Franks, who pretended that they might ravage, with impunity, the frontiers of a divided empire. The difficulty, as well as glory, of this enterprise, consisted in a laborious march; and Julian had conquered, as soon as he could penetrate into a country, which former princes had considered as inaccessible. After he had given peace to the barbarians, the emperor carefully visited the fortifications along the Rhine from Cleves to Bazzil; surveyed, with peculiar attention, the territories which he had recovered from the hands of the Alamanni, passed through Beaumetz,17 which had severely suffered from their fury, and fixed his headquarters at Vienna for the ensuing winter. The barrier of Gaul was improved and strengthened with additional fortifications; and Julian entertained some hopes that the Germans, whom he had so often vanquished, might, in his absence, be restrained by the terror of his name. Valens18 was the only prince of the Alamani whom he esteemed or feared; and while the subtle barbarian affected to observe the faith of treaties, the progress of his arms threatened the state with an unavoidable and dangerous war. The policy of Julian condescended to surprise the prince of the Alamanni by his own arts; and Valens, who, in the character of a friend, had insincerely accepted an invitation from the Roman governors, was seized in the midst of the entertainment, and sent away prisoner into the heart of Spain. Before the barbarians were recovered from their amazement, the emperor appeared in arms on the banks of the Rhine, and, once more crossing the river, removed the deep impressions of terror and respect which had been already made by four preceding expeditions.19

The ambassadors of Julian had been instructed to execute, with the utmost diligence, their important commission. But, in their journey through Italy and Illyricum, they were detained by the tedious and affected delays of the provincial governors; they were conducted by slow journeys from Constantinople to Cassana in Cappadocia; and when at length they were admitted to the presence of Constantius, they found that he had already conceived, from the despatches of his own officers, the most unnatural opinion of the conduct of Julian, and of the Gallic army. The letters were read with impartiality; the troubling messengers were dismissed with indignation and contempt; and the looks, the gestures, the furious language of the monarch, expressed the disorder of his soul. The domestic connexion, which might have reconciled the brother and the husband of Helena, was recently dissolved by the death of that prince, whose pregnancy had been several times fruitless, and was at last fatal to herself.20 The empire Eusebia had preserved, to the last moment of her life, the tranquillity, and even jealousy, affection which she had conceived for Julian; and her mild influence might have moderated the resentment of a prince, who, since her death, was abandoned to his own passions, and to the arts of his enemies. But the terror of a foreign invasion under the reign of Valens, he signified his wish to the Alamanni.

16 Libanius, Orat. Post. Lib., p. 306. 307. A strange disorder succeeded this persecution; and the Alamanni, in the moment of their defeat, expostulated at their numbers amounting to 30,000 prisoners; and, according to Eusebius, they were 50,000. Libanius, Orat. Post. Lib., p. 306. 307.
17 Julian, Epist., x. 143. gives a short description of Vanetz, the town which he entered after his return from his expedition against the Alamanni. But he knew most barbarian names, with improper titles, and somewhat enlarged.
18 Valens, or Valens, was the only prince of the Alamanni whom he esteemed or feared; and while the subtle barbarian affected to observe the faith of treaties, the progress of his arms threatened the state with an unavoidable and dangerous war.
19 Eusebius has composed a very weak account of these wars, which were, however, the subject of many conversations, and particularly of the speech of the archbishops of Aquitaine, who are said to have removed to London, then the seat of the empire of the Alamanni, and to have had all the Alamanni under their jurisdiction. Eusebius, Hist. Eccl., p. 117-118. However, the historian of this time, whose evidence the writers of the sixth and seventh centuries have constantly rejected, is disposed by Eusebius, Hist., p. 118, 119, and his historians in general, to consider this prince as the successor of Julian, after the death of his brother in the year 360.
vasion obliged him to suspend the punishment of a private enemy; he continued his march towards the confines of Peræa, and thought it sufficient to signify the conditions which might enitle Julian and his guilty followers to the clemency of their offended sovereign. He required, that the presumptuous Caesar should expressly renounce the appellation and rank of Augustus, which he had accepted from the rebels; that he should descend to his former station of a limited and dependent minister; that he should vest the powers of the state and army in the hands of those officers who were appointed by the Imperial court; and that he should trust his safety to the assurances of pardon, which were announced by Epictetus, a Gallic bishop, and one of the Arian favourites of Constantius. Several months were ineffectually consumed in a treaty which was negociated at the distance of three thousand miles between Paris and the Rhine. As soon as Julian perceived that his moderate and respectful behaviour served only to irritate the pride of an implacable adversary, he boldly resolved to commit his life and fortune to the chances of a civil war. He gave a public and military audience to the usurper Leonas, the haughty epistle of Constantius was read to the attentive multitude; and Julian protested, with the most flattering assurances, that he was ready to resign the title of Augustus, if he could obtain the consent of those whom he acknowledged as the authors of his elevation. The saintly proposal was impatiently aliened; and the admonitions of "Julian Augustus," continue to reign, by the authority of the army, of the people, of the republic which you have saved, thundered at once from every part of the field, and terrified the pale ambassador of Constantius. A part of the letter was afterwards read, in which the emperor arraigns the magnificence of Julian, whom he had inveigled with the promises of the purple; whom he had educated with as much care and tenderness; whom he had preserved in his infancy, when he was left a helpless orphan. An orphan! Interrupted Julian, who justified his cause by imputing his passions; Does the assassin of my family reproach me that I was left an orphan? He urges me to revenge these injuries which I have long studied to forget. The assembly was dismissed; and Leonas, who, with some difficulty, had been protected from the popular fury, was sent back to his master with an epistle, in which Julian expressed, in a strain of the most vehement eloquence, the sentiments of contempt, of hatred, and of resentment, which had been suppressed and embittered by the dissipation of twenty years. After this energy, which might be considered as a signal of irremediable war, Julian, who, some weeks before, had celebrated the Christian festival of the Epiphany, made a public declaration that he committed the care of his safety to the providence of his enemy; and thus publicly renounced the religion, as well as the friendship, of Constantius. The situation of Julian required a vigorous and immediate resolution. He had discovered from intercepted letters, that his adversary, sacrificing the interest of the state to that of the monarch, had again excited the barbarians to invade the provinces of the West. The position of two magazine ships, which belonged to the lake of Constance, the winter forming at the foot of the Cottian Alps, caused to indicate the march of three armies; and the size of these magazines, each of which consisted of six hundred thousand quarters of wheat, or rather flour, was a threatening evidence of the strength and numbers of the enemy, who prepared to surround him. But the Imperial legions were still in their distant quarters of Asia; the Danube was securely guarded; and if Julian could occupy, by a sudden incursion, the important provinces of Illyricum, he might expect that a people of soldiers would resort to his standard, and that the rich mines of gold and silver would contribute to the expenses of the civil war. He proposed this bold enterprise to the assembly of the soldiers; inspired them with a just confidence in their general, and in themselves; and exhorted them to maintain their reputation, of being terrible to the enemy, moderate to their fellow-citizens, and obsequious to their officers. His spirited discourse was received with the loudest acclamations, and the same troops which had taken up arms against Gaul, when he summoned them to leave Gaul, now declared with alacrity, that they would follow Julian to the farthest extremities of Europe or Asia. The oath of fidelity was administered; and the soldiers, clasping their shields, and pointing their drawn swords to their throats, devoted themselves, with harried imprecations, to the service of a leader whom they celebrated as the deliverer of Gaul, and the conqueror of the Germans. This solemn engagement, which seemed to be dictated by affection rather than by duty, was singly opposed by Nehridius, who had been admitted to the office of praetorian prefect. That faithful minister, alone and unconsulted, asserted the rights of Constantius at the midst of an armed and angry multitude, to whose fury he had almost fallen an easy victim, but useless sacrifice. After seizing one of his hands by the stroke of a sword, he embraced the knees of the prince whom he had offended. Julian covered the prefect with his Imperial mantle, and protecting him from the realloc of his followers, dismissed him to his own house, with less respect than was perhaps
due to the virtue of an enemy. The high office of Nepotianus was bestowed on Sallust; and the provinces of Gaul, which were now delivered from the intolerable oppression of taxes, enjoyed the mild and equitable administration of the friend of Julian, who was permitted to practise those virtues which he had instilled into the mind of his pupil.

The hopes of Julian depended much less on the number of his troops, than on the velocity of his motions. In the execution of a daring enterprise, he availed himself of every precaution, as far as prudence could suggest; and where prudence could no longer accompany his steps, he trusted the event to valour and fortune. In the neighbourhood of Basil he assembled and divided his army. One body, which consisted of ten thousand men, was directed, under the command of Sextius, general of the cavalry, to advance through the midland parts of Rhynion and Noricum. A similar division of troops, under the orders of Gavius and Gavius, prepared to follow the oblique course of the highways, though the Alps and the northern confines of Italy. The instructions to the generals were conceived with energy and precision: to hasten their march in close and compact columns, which, according to the disposition of the ground, might readily be changed into any order of battle; to secure themselves against the surprises of the night by strong posts and vigilant guards; to present resistance by their unexpected arrival; to elude examination by their sudden departure; to spread the opinion of their strength, and the terror of his name; and to join their sovereignty under the walls of Sermonium. For himself, Julian had reserved a more difficult and extraordinary part. He selected three thousand brave and active volunteers, resolved to outstrip their leader, to cast behind them every hope of a retreat: at the head of this faithful band, he fearfully plunged into the recesses of the Marcian, or Black Forest, which conceals the sources of the Danube; and, for many days, the fate of Julian was unknown to the world. The secrecy of his march, his diligence, and vigour, surmounted every obstacle; he forced his way over mountains and mountains, occupied the bridges or swam the rivers, pursued his direct course, without reflecting whether he traversed the territory of the Rhauians or of the barbarians, and at length emerged, between Ratisbon and Vien-conv, at the place where he designed to embark his troops on the Danube. By a well-concerted signal, he seized a fleet of light galleons, as it lay at anchor; secured a supply of provisions sufficient to satisfy the indisci-
their acknowledged sovereign to his Imperial residence. Two days were devoted to the public joy, which was celebrated by the games of the Circae; but, early on the morning of the third day, Julian marched to occupy the narrow pass of Succi, in the dunes of Mount Humus; which, almost in the midway between Serinium and Constantinople, separates the provinces of Thrace and Illyricum, by an abrupt descent towards the former, and a gentle declivity on the side of the latter. The defence of this important post was intrusted to the brave Navitta; who, as well as the generals of the Julian division, successfully executed the plan of the march and junction which their master had so ably conceived.

The homage which Julian obtained, from the fears or the inclination of the people, extended far beyond the immediate effect of his arms. The prefectures of Italy and Illyricum were administered by Taurus and Florentius, who united that important office with the vain honours of the consulship; and as these magistrates had retired with precipitation to the court of Asia, Julian, who could not always restrain the levity of his temper, stigmatised their flight by adding, in all the Acts of the Year, the epithet of fugitivus in the names of the two consuls. The provinces which had been deserted by their first magistrates acknowledged the authority of an emperor, who, consolidating the qualities of a soldier with those of a philosopher, was equally admired in the camps of the Danube, and in the cities of Greece. From his palace, or, more properly, from his headquarters of Serinium and Naissus, he distributed to the principal cities of the empire, a laboured apology for his own conduct; published the secret despatches of Constantius; and solicited the judgment of mankind between two competitors, the one of whom had expelled, and the other had invited, the barbarians. Julian, whose mind was deeply wounded by the reproach of ingratitude, aspired to maintain, by argument as well as by arms, the superior merits of his cause; and to excel, not only in the arts of war, but in those of composition. His epistle to the senate and people of Athens seems to have been dictated by an elegant enthusiasm; which prompted him to submit his actions and his motives to the degenerate Athenians of his own times, with the same humble deference, as if he had been pleading in the days of Aristides, before the tribunal of the Areopagus. His application to the senate of Rome, which was still permitted to bestow the titles of Imperial power, was agreeable to the forms of the expiring republic. An assembly was summoned by Tertullus, prefect of the city; the epistle of Julian was read; and as he appeared to be master of Italy, his claims were admitted without a dissenting voice. His oblique censure of the innovations of Constantine, and his passionate invective against the vices of Constantius, were heard with less satisfaction; and the senate, as if Julian had been present, unanimously exclaimed, "Respect, we beseech you, the author of your own fortune." An artful expression, which, according to the chance of war, might be differently explained; as a many reproof of the ingratitude of the mauper, or as a flattering confession, that a single act of such benefit to the state ought to原子 for all the failings of Constantius.

The intelligence of the march and rapid progress of Julian was speedily transmitted to his rival; who, by the retreat of Sapor, had obtained some respite from the Persian war. Distinguishing the anguish of his soul under the semblance of consternation, Constantius professed his intention of returning into Europe, and of giving chance to Julian; for he never spoke of this military expedition in any other light than that of a hunting party. In the camp of Hieraopolis, in Syria, he communicated this design to his army;略地 mentioned the guilt and rashness of the Caesar; and ventured to assure them, that if the mission of Gaul presumed to meet them in the field, they would be unable to sustain the fire of their eyes, and the irresistible weight of their shout of onset. The speech of the emperor was received with military applause, and Theodorus, the president of the council of Hieraopolis, requested, with tears of adulation, that his city might be absolved with the head of the vanquished rebel. A chosen detachment was despatched away in post-wagons, to secure, if it were yet possible, the pass of Succi; the recruits, the horses, the arms, and the magazines which had been prepared against Sapor, were appropriated to the service of the civil war; and the domestic victories of Constantius inspired his partisans with the most sanguine assurances of success. The notary Gaudentius had occupied in his name the provinces of Africa; the subsistence of Roma was intercepted; and the distress of Julian was increased by an unexpected event, which might have been productive of fatal consequences. Julian had received the submission of two legions and a cohort of archers, who were stationed at Serinium; but he suspected, with reason, the fidelity of those troops, which had been distinguished by the emperor; and it was thought expedient, under the pretence of the exposed state of the Gallic frontier, to dismiss them from the most important scene of action. They advanced with reluctance, as far as the confines of
Italy; but as they dreaded the length of the way, and the savage ferociousness of the Germans, they resolved, by the instigation of one of their tribunes, to halt at Aquileia, and to erect the banners of Constantius on the walls of that imperishable city. The vigilance of Julian perceived at once the extent of the mischief, and the necessity of applying an immediate remedy. By his order, Jovinian led back a part of the army into Italy; and the siege of Aquileia was formed with diligence, and prosecuted with vigour. But the legions, who seemed to have rejected the yoke of discipline, conducted the defence of the place with skill and perseverance; invited the rest of Italy to imitate the example of their courage and loyalty; and threatened the retreat of Julian, if he should be forced to yield to the superior numbers of the armies of the East. 62

But the humanity of Julian was preserved from the cruel alternative, 63 which he pathetically laments, of destroying, or of being himself destroyed; and the reasonable death of Constantius delivered the Roman empire from the calamities of civil war. The approach of winter could not detain the monarch at Antioch; and his favourites durst not oppose his impatient desire of revenge. A slight fever, which was perhaps occasioned by the agitation of his spirits, was increased by the fatigues of the journey; and Constantius was obliged to halt at the little town of Mapenceuc, twelve miles beyond Tarsus, where he expired, after a short illness, in the forty-fifth year of his age, and the twenty-fourth of his reign. 64 His genuine character, which was composed of pride and weakness, of superstition and cruelty, has been fully displayed in the preceding narrative of civil and ecclesiastical events. The long abuse of power rendered him a considerable object in the eyes of his contemporaries; but as personal merit can alone deserve the notice of posterity, the last of the sons of Constantine may be dismissed from the world, with the remark, that he inherited the defects, without the abilities, of his father. Before Constantius expired, he is said to have named Julian for his successor; nor does it seem improbable, that his anxious concern for the fate of a young and tender wife, whom he left with child, may have prevailed, in his last moments, over the harsher passions of hatred and revenge. Eusebius, and his guilty associates, made a faint attempt to prolong the reign of the emperors, by the election of another emperor; but their intrigues were rejected with disdain, by an army which now abhorred the thought of civil discord; and two officers of rank were instantly dispatched, to secure Julian,

62 Arrius, vol. 7. 31. 15. He seems to describe, with superstitious horror, the operations of the gods of Aquileia, which, on this occasion, showed themselves in human shape, to shew that the reign of the Roman empire was alienated from its head, by the interposition of the deities. See Polybius, vol. 1. p. 382., and Bookes, 6. 6. 44. in his history. The saga of Constantius, which is recorded by Eusebius, is too absurd to deserve credit. See Pausanias, vol. 1. p. 15., on the council of Sebaste; and we are authorized to suppose that the story of thetransaction of the diadem is both the final and the legendary.

63 In describing the manner of Julian, Ammianus (vol. 1. 12. 6.) tells us, that every sword in the empire would be drawn for his service. The military designs of that prince, who had formed three different attacks against Thucina, were prevented by this fortunate event. Without shedding the blood of his fellow-citizens, he escaped the dangers of a doubtful conflict, and acquired the advantages of a complete victory. Impatient to visit the place of his birth, and the new capital of the empire, he advanced from Naissus through the mountains of Hellas, and the cities of Thucina. When he reached Heraclea, at the distance of sixty miles, all Constantinople was poured forth to receive him; and he made his triumphal entry amidst the shrill acclamations of the soldiers, the people, and the senate. An immovable multitude pressed around him with eager respect; and they were perhaps disappointed when they beheld the small stature and simple gait of an hero, whose unexperienced youth had vanquished the barbarians of Germany, and who had now traversed, in a successful career, the whole continent of Europe, from the shores of the Atlantic to those of the Bosporus. 65 A few days afterwards, when the remains of the deceased emperor were landed in the harbour, the subjects of Julian applauded the real or affected humanity of their sovereign. On foot, without his diadem, and clothed in a mourning habit, he accompanied the funeral as far as the church of the Holy Apostles, where the body was deposited; and if there are marks of respect may be interpreted as a national tribute to the birth and dignity of his imperial house, the tears of Julian professed to the world, that he had forgot the injuries, and remembered only the obligations, which he had received from Constantius. 66 As soon as the legions of Aquileia were assured of the death of the emperor, they opened the gates of the city, and, by the assistance of their guilty leaders, obtained an easy pardon from the prudence or lenity of Julian: who, in the thirty-second year of his age, acquired the undisputed possession of the Roman empire.

64 Philosophy had instructed Julian to compare the advantages of action and retirement; but the elevation of his birth, and the accidents of his life, never allowed him the freedom of choice. He might perhaps sincerely have preferred the gowns of the academy, and the society of Athens; but he was constrained, at first by the will, and afterwards by the injustice, of Constantius, to expose his person and name to the dangers of imperial greatness; and to make himself accountable to the world, and to posterity, for the happiness of millions. 67 Julian, recoiled with terror.
was never challenged by the fumes of indulgence; and, except in the short interval of a marriage, which was the effect of policy rather than love, the choice Julian never altered his bed with a female companion. He was soon awakened by the entrance of fresh secretaries, who had slept the preceding day; and his servants were obliged to wait alternately, while their indefatigable master allowed himself scarcely any other refreshment than the change of occupations. The predecessors of Julian, his uncle, his brother, and his cousin, indulged their prurient taste for the games of the Circus, under the specious pretence of complying with the instructions of the people; and they frequently remained the greatest part of the day, as idle spectators, and as a part of the splendid spectacle, till the ordinary round of twenty-four races was completely finished. On solemn festivals, Julian, who felt and professed an unchangeable dislike to these frivolous amusements, condemned to appear in the Circus; and after bestowing a careless glance on five or six of the races, he bluntly withdrew, with the impudence of a philosopher, who considered every moment as lost, that was not devoted to the advantage of the public, or the improvement of his own mind. By this avowal of time, he seemed to protest the short duration of his reign; and if the states were less securely ascendant, we should refuse to believe, that only sixteen months elapsed between the death of Constantinus and the departure of his successor; for the Persian war. The actions of Julian can only be preserved by the care of the historian; but the portion of his voluminous writings, which is still extant, remains as a monument of the application, as well as of the genius, of the emperor. The Missopogon, the Caesar, several of his orations, and his elaborate work against the Christian religion, were composed in the long nights of the two winters, the former of which he passed at Constantinople, and the latter at Antioch.

The reformation of the Imperial court was one of the first and most of the prince occupying acts of the government of Julian. Soon after his entrance into the palace of Constantinople, he had occasion for the service of a butler. An officer, magnificently dressed, immediately presented himself. "It is a butler," exclaimed the prince, with affected surprise, "that I want, and not a receiver-general of the finances." He questioned the man concerning his birth, and inquiries were made concerning the origin of his family until it was ascertained that he was not of the equestrian order, and that he had no connexion with any noble family. The齐略 hierarchy, which the experience of Miopogon had taught him to consider as the greatest and most powerful antagonist of the people of the monastic order, could not be left unopposed. However, the monastic order, which the emperor of his own accord.
ing the profits of his employment; and was informed, that besides a large salary, and some valuable perquisites, he enjoyed a daily allowance for twenty servants, and as many horses. A thousand barbers, a thousand cup-bearers, a thousand cooks, were distributed in the several offices of luxury; and the number of eunuchs could be compared only with the insets of a summer's day. The monarch who resigned to his subjects the superiority of merit and virtue, was distinguished by the oppressive magnificence of his dress, his tables, his buildings, and his train. The state palace erected by Constantine and his sons, were decorated with many coloured marbles, and ornaments of mousy gold. The most exquisite dainties were procured, to gratify their pride, rather than their taste; birds of the most distant climates, fish from the most remote seas, fruits out of their natural season, winter roses, and summer snows. The domestic crowd of the palace surpassed the expence of the legions; yet the smallest part of this costly multitude was subservient to the use, or even to the splendour, of the throne. The monarch was disgraced, and the people was injured, by the creation and sale of an infinite number of obscure, and even titular employments; and the most worthless of mankind might purchase the privilege of being maintained, without the necessity of labour, from the public revenue. The waste of an enormous household, the increase of fees and perquisites, which were soon claimed as a lawful debt, and the bribes which they extorted from those who feared their enmity, or solicited their favour, suddenly enriched these haughty menials. They abused their fortune, without considering their past, or their future, condition; and their rapine and venality could be equalled only by the extravagance of their dissipations. Their silken robes were embroidered with gold, their tables were served with delicacy and profusion; the houses which they built for their own use, would have covered the form of an ancient consul; and the most honourable citizens were obliged to dismount from their horses, and respectfully to salute an eunuch whom they met on the public highway. The luxury of the palace excited the contempt and indignation of Julian, who usually slept on the ground, who yielded with reluctance to the indispensable calls of nature; and who placed his vanity, not in emulating, but in despising, the pomp of royalty. By the total extirpation of a mischiefs which was magnified even beyond its real extent, he was impatient to relieve the distress, and to appease the murmurs, of the people; who support with less uneasiness the weight of taxes, if they are convinced that the fruits of their industry are appropriated to the service of the state. But in the execution of this salutary work, Julian is accused of proceeding with too much haste and inconsiderate severity. By a single edict, he reduced the palace of Constantinople to an immense desert, and dismissed with ignominy the whole train of slaves and dependents, without providing any just, or at least benevolent, exceptions, for the age, the services, or the poverty, of the faithful domestics of the Imperial family. Such indeed was the temper of Julian, who seldom recollected the fundamental maxims of Aristotle; when the true virtue is placed at an equal distance between the opposite vices. The splendid and effeminate courtiers of the Court, the curls and paint, the collars and bracelets, which had appeared so ridiculous in the person of Constantine, were uniformly reprinted by his philosophic successor. But with the pettiness, Julian affected to renounce the decencies of dress; and seemed to value himself for his neglect of the laws of cleanliness. In a national performance, which was designed for the public eye, the emperor descants with pleasure, and even with pride, on the length of his nails, and the bulky blackness of his hands; protests, that although the greatest part of his body was covered with hair, the nape of the neck was continued to his head alone; and celebrates, with visible complacency, the shaggy and papyraceous beard, which he fondly cherished, after the example of the philosophers of Greece. Hail Julian consulted the simple dictates of reason, the first magistrate of the Romans would have scorned the affectation of Diogenes, as well as that of Darius.

But the work of public reformation would have remained imper."

"But the work of public reformation would have remained imperious, if Julian had only corrected the abuses, without punishing the crimes, of his predecessor's reign. "We are now deliver'd," says he, in a familiar letter to one of his intimate friends, "we are now surprizingly deliver'd from the varous jaws of the Hydra. I do not mean to apply that epithet to my brother Constans. He is no more; may the earth lie light on his head! But his artful and cruel favourites studied to deceive and exasperate a prince, whose natural mildness cannot be praised without some efforts of asulphum. It is not, however, my intention, that even those men should be oppressed; they are accounts, and they shall enjoy the benefit of a fair and impartial trial." To conduct this enquiry, Julian named six judges of the highest rank in the state and army; and as he wished to escape the reproach of condemning his personal enemies, he fixed this extraordinary tribunal at Chalcodon, on the Asiatic side of the Bosphorus; and transferred to the commissioners an absolute power to pronounce and execute their final sentence, without delay, and without ap-
The office of president was exercised by the venerable prefect of the East, a named Salus, who; whose virtue conciliated the esteem of Greek sophists, and of Christian bishops. He was assisted by the eloquent Mamertinus, one of the consuls elect, whom merit is loudly celebrated by the doubtful evidence of his own applause. But the civil wisdom of two magistrates was overbalanced by the ferocious violence of their followers. The consul's speech, in which the threat of the consuls was a means to prevent the secret of the commission; the armed and angry leaders of the Boll and the Horatian bands encompassed the tribune's house and the judges were alternately vexed by the laws of justice, and by the clamours of faction.

The chamberlain Eutychus, who had so long abused the favour of Constantine, expiated, by an ignominious death, the insolence, the corruption, and cruelty of his servile reign. The executions of Paul and Apodemus (the former of whom was burnt alive), were accepted as an inadequate atonement by the widows and orphans of so many hundred Romans, whose legal tyrants had betrayed and murdered. But justice herself [if we may use the pathetic expression of Ammianus⁸] appeared to sweep over the fate of Ursinus, the treasurer of the empire; and his blood accented the ingratitude of Julian, whose distress had been sensibly relieved by the intrepid liberality of that honest minister. The rage of the soldiers, whom he had provoked by his indiscretion, was the cause and the excuse of his death; and the emperor, deeply wounded by his own reproaches and those of the public, offered some consolation to the family of Ursinus, by the restitution of his confiscated fortunes. Before the end of the year in which they had been adopted with the resignations of the prefecture and censorship, Taurus and Floracius were reduced to implore the clemency of the inexorable tribunal of Chalcedon. The former was banished to Vercelix in Italy, and a sentence of death was pronounced against the latter. A wise prince should have rewarded the crime of Taurus: the faithful minister, when he was no longer able to oppose the progress of a rebel, had taken refuge in the court of his benefactor and his lawful sovereign. But the guilt of Floracius justified the severity of the judges; and his escape served to display the magnanimity of Julian; who nobly checked the interested diligence of an informer, and refused to learn what place concealed the wretched fugitive from his just resentment.⁹⁰

⁸ The two Salii, the crystal of fire, and the glory of the Empire: 0.²

⁹⁰ Some months after the trial of Chalcedon had been dissolved, the praetorian vicariate of Africa, the notary Gaudemus, and Arminius, duke of Egypt, were executed at Antioch. Arminius had resisted the power and corrupt tyranny of a great province; Gaudemus had long practised the arts of calumny against the innocent, the virtuous, and even the person of Julian himself. Yet the circumstances of their trial and condemnation were so unjustly and mischievous, that those wicked men obtained, in the public opinion, the glory of suffering for the obstinate loyalty with which they had supported the cause of Constantine. The rest of his servants were protected by a general act of oblivion; and they were left to enjoy with impunity the tribunes which they had accepted, either to defend the oppressed, or to oppress the triumphant. This measure, which, on the soundest principles of policy, may deserve our approbation, was executed in a manner which seemed to degrade the majesty of the throne. Julian was tormented by the impotencies of a multitude, particularly of Egyptians, who loudly re-asserted the gifts which they had improvidently or illegally bestowed; he foresaw the endless prosecution of vexatious suits; and he engaged a promise, which ought always to have been more, that if they would repair to Chalcedon, he would meet them in person, to hear and determine their complaints. But as soon as they were hired, he issued an absolute order, which prohibited the watermen from transporting his Egyptians to Constantinople; and thus detained his disappointed clients on the Asiatic shore, till their patience and money being utterly exhausted, they were obliged to return with ignominious maimons to their native country.⁷

The numerous army of spies, of informers, and agents, enlisted by Julian to secure the repose of his land, and to interrupt that of his subjects, was immediately disbanded by his generous successor. Julian was slow in his suspicions, and gentle in his punishments; and his energy of treason was the result of judgment, of vanity, and of courage. Conscious of superior merit, he was persuaded that few among his subjects would dare to meet him in the field; to attempt his life, or even to act themselves on his vacant throne. The philosopher could excuse the haughty solicits of discontent; and the hero could despise the ambitious projects which surpassed the Fortune of the abilities of the rash conspirators. A citizen of Antioch had prepared for his own use a purple garment; and this indirect action, which, under the reign of Constantine, would have been considered as a capital offence, was reported to Julian by the officious importunity of a private
enemy. The research, after making some en- 
quiry into the rank and character of his rival, 
dispatched the informer with a present of a pair 
of purple slippers, to complete the magnificence 
of his Imperial habit. A more dangerous con- 
spicacy was formed by ten of the domestic 
guards, who had resolved to assassinate Julian 
in the field of exercise near Antioch. Their in- 
temperate revealed their guilt; and they were 
condemned and executed; and on the previous of their in- 
vidious sovereign, who, after a lively representation 
of the wickedness and folly of their enterprise, 
instead of a death of torture, which they de- 
served and expected, pronounced a sentence of 
exeunt against the two principal offenders. The 
only instance in which Julian seemed to depart 
from his accustomed clemency, was the execution 
of a rash youth, who, with a feable band, 
had aspire to seize the reins of empire. But 
that youth was the son of Marcellus, the general 
of cavalry, who, in the first campaign of the 
Gallic war, had distinguished himself as the standard 
Bach of the republic. Without a trial, there being 
indulgent his death; the remembrance, Julian might 
unjustly condemn the crime of the son and of the 
father; but he was reconciled by the distress of 
Marcellus, and the liberality of the emperor 
endeavoured to heal the wound which had been 
inflicted by the hand of justice.69

Julian was not insensible of the 
advantages of freedom.70 From his 
studies he had imbied the spirit of 
ancient sages and heroes; his life and fortune had 
depended on the empire of a tyrant; and when he ascended the throne, his pride was sometimes 
modified by the reflection, that the slaves who 
would not dare to censure his defects were not 
worthy to applaud his virtues.71 He sincerely 
abhorred the system of Oriental despotism, which 
Thocistian, Constantine, and the patient habits 
of fourteen years, had established in the em- 
pire. A motive of superstition prevented the 
execution of the design which Julian had fe- 
quently meditated, of relieving his head from 
the weight of a costly diadem;72 but he abso- 
lutely refused the title of Divus, or Lord,73 a word which was grown so familiar to the ears of the Romans, that they no longer remembered its servile and humiliating origin. The office, of 
which the antecedent, of consul, was cherished by 
a prince who contemplated with reverence the 
rules of the republic; and the same behaviour 
which had been assumed by the prudence of 
Agostines, was adopted by Julian from choice 
and inclination. On the calends of January, at 

break of day, the new consuls, Ma- 
blemus and Nepoletus, hastened to 
the palace to salute the emperor. As soon as he 
was informed of their approach, he leaped 
from his throne, eagerly advanced to meet them, 
and compelled the shivering magistrates to re- 
ceive the demonstrations of his affected humility. 
From the palace they proceeded to the senate. The 
emperor, on foot, marched before their litters; 
and the gaiting multitude admired the image of ancient times, or secretly blamed the conduct, which, in their eyes, degraded the maj- 
esty of the purple.74 But the behavior of 
Julian was uniformly supported. During the 
games of the Circus, he had, imprudently or 
ignominiously, performed the solemn mission of a slave 
in the presence of the consul. The moment he 
was reminded that he had trespassed on the jurisdic- 
tion of another magistrate, he condemned 
himself to pay a fine of ten pounds of gold; and 
embraced this public occasion of declaring to 
the world, that he was subject, like the rest of his 
fellow-citizens, to the laws, and even to the forms 
of the republic. The spirit of his adminis- 
tration, and his regard for the place of his 
activity, induced Julian to confide to the senate 
of Constantinople, the same honors, privileges, 
and authority, which were still enjoyed by the 
name of ancient Rome.75 A legal fiction was 
introduced; and gradually established; that one 
half of the national council had migrated into the East; and the despotic successors of Julian, 
accepting the title of Senators, acknowledged 
theirselves the members of a respectable body, 
which was permitted to represent the majesty of 
the Roman name. From Constantinople, the 
attention of the monarch was extended to the 
urban ministers of the provinces. He abolished, 
by repeated edicts, the unjust and per- 
nicious exemptions which had withdrawn so 
many idle citizens from the service of their 
country; and by imposing an equal distribution 
of public duties, he restored the strength, the splen- 
dour, or, according to the glowing expression of 
Lisianus,76 the soul of the expiring cities of 
his empire. The venerable age of 
the


divine

Greece excited the most tender com- 
passion in the mind of Julian; which kindled 
to rapture when he recollected the gods; the 
heroes; and the men, superior to heroes and to 
gods; who had bequeathed to the latest posterity 
the monuments of their genius, on the 
example of their virtues. He relieved the 
destiny, and restored the beauty, of the cities of 
Epirus and Peloponnesus.77 Athens acknow-
lodged him for his benefactor; Argos, for her deliverer. The side of Corinth, again rising from her ruin, with the honour of a Roman colony, enacted a tribute from the adjacent republics, for the purpose of defraying the games of the Isthmus, which were celebrated in the amphitheatre, with the hunting of bears and panthers.

From this tribute the cities of Elis, of Delphi, and of Argos, which had inherited from their remote ancestor the sacred office of perpetuating the Olympic, the Pythian, and the Nemean games, claimed a just exception. The immunity of Elis and Delphi was respected by the Corinthians; but the poverty of Argos tempted the insolence of oppression; and the facile complaints of its deputies were silenced by the decree of a provincial magistrate, who seems to have consulted only the interest of the capital in which he resided. Seven years after this sentence, Julian, allowed the cause to be referred to a superior tribunal; and his eloquence was superintended, most probably with success, in the defence of a city, which had been the royal seat of Agamemnon, and had given to Macedon a race of kings and conquerors.

Julian the emperor.

The laboursious administration of military and civil affairs, which were multiplied in proportion to the extent of the empire, exercised the abilities of Julian; but he frequently assumed the character of Orator and of Judge, which are almost unknown to the modern sovereigns of Europe. The arts of persuasion, so diligently cultivated by the first Caesars, were neglected by the military ignorance, and Asiatic pride of their successors; and, if they condescended to harangue the soldiery, whom they feared, they treated with silent disdain the senate, whom they despised. The assemblies of the senate, which Constantius had avoided, were considered by Julian as the place where he could exhibit, with the most propriety, the maxims of a republican, and the talents of a rhetorician. He alternately practised, as in a school of declamation, the several modes of praise, of censure, of exhortation; and his friend Libanius has remarked, that the study of Homer taught him to imitate the simple elegance style of Menander, the copiousness of Sallust, whose words descended like the barks of a winter's snow, or the pathetic and forcible eloquence of Ulysses. The functions of a judge, which are sometimes incompatible with those of a prince, were exercised by Julian, not only as a duty, but as an amusement; and although he might have trusted the integrity and discretion of his procurators prefects, he often placed himself by their side on the seat of judgment. The acute penetration of his mind was agreeably occupied in detecting and defeating the chicanery of the advocates, who laboured to disguise the truth of facts, and to pervert the sense of the laws. He sometimes forgot the gravity of his station, asked indirect or unreasonable questions, and betrayed, by the loudness of his voice, and the agitation of his body, the earnest vehemence with which he maintained his opinion against the judges, the advocates, and their clients. But his knowledge of his own temper prompted him to encourage, and even to solicit, the reproofs of his friends and ministers; and whenever they ventured to oppose the irregular alliances of his passions, the spectators could observe the stature, as well as the gratitude, of their monarch. The decrees of Julian were almost always founded on the principles of justice; and he had the firmness to resist the two most dangerous temptations, which assault the tribunal of a sovereign, under the specious forms of compassion and equity. He decided the merits of actions without weighing the circumstances of the parties; and the poor, whom he was pleased to relieve, were constrained to satisfy the just demands of a noble and wealthy adversary. He carefully distinguished the justice from the legitimatis, and though he modified a necessary reformation of the Roman jurisprudence, he pronounced sentence according to the strict and literal interpretation of those laws, which the magistrates were bound to execute, and the subjects to obey.

The generosity of princes, if they were stripped of their purple, and cast naked into the world, would immediately sink to the lowest rank of society, without a hope of emerging from their obscurity. But the personal merit of Julian was, in some measure, independent of his fortune. Whatever had been his choice of life: by the force of inveterate courage, lively wit, and untarnished application, he would have obtained, at least he would have deserved, the highest honours of his profession; and Julian might have raised himself to the rank of minister, or general, of the state in which he was born a private citizen. If the jealous empire of power had disappointed his expectations; if he had prudently declined the paths of greatness, the employment of the same talents; in studious solitude would have placed, beyond the reach of kings, his present happiness, and his immortal fame. When we inspect, with minute, or perhaps malignant attention, the portrait of Julian, something seems wanting to the grace and perfection of the whole

82 Of his elevation is celebrated by Libanius. Vide supra, p. 372. 83 This oration was evidently composed. Vide supra, 82. 84 To compare his eulogy of the war, as does the eloquent and brilliant eulogy of the judge. Vide supra, 82. 85 This oration was composed by the judge. Vide supra, 82. 86 Vide supra, 82.

87 Libani. Vide supra, 82.

88 The oration was composed by the judge. Vide supra, 82. 89 Vide supra, 82.
figure. His genius was less powerful and sublime than that of Caesar; nor did he possess the commutative prudence of Augustus. The virtues of Trajan appear more steady and natural, and the philosophy of Marcus is more simple and consistent. Yet Julian sustained adversity with firmness, and prosperity with moderation. After an interval of one hundred and twenty years from the death of Alexander Severus, the Romans beheld an emperor who made no distinction between his duties and his pleasures; who laboured to relieve the distress, and to revive the spirit, of his subjects; and who endeavoured always to connect authority with merit, and happiness with virtue. Even faction, and religious faction, was constrained to acknowledge the superiority of his genius, in peace as well as in war, and to confess, with a sigh, that the apostate Julian was a lover of his country; and that he deserved the empire of the world.22

CHAIR XXIII.

The Religion of Julian.—Universal Toleration. —He attempts to restore and reform the Pagan Worship—to rebuild the Temple of Jerusalem. —His artful Persecution of the Christians.—Mutual Zest and Injustice.

The character of the Apostate has injured the reputation of Julian; and the enthusiasm which clouded his virtues, has exaggerated the real and apparent magnitude of his faults. Our partial ignorance may represent him as a philosophic monarch, who studied to protect, with an equal hand, the religious factions of the empire; and to ally the theological fever which had inflamed the minds of the people, from the edicts of DIOCLETIAN to the exile of ATHANASIUS. A more accurate view of the character and conduct of Julian will remove this favourable prepossession for a prince who did not escape the general contagion of the times. We enjoy the singular advantage of comparing the pictures which have been delineated by his fondest admirers, and his implacable enemies. The actions of Julian are faithfully related by a judicious and candid historian, the impartial spectator of his life and death. The unanimous evidence of his cotemporaries is confirmed by the public and private declarations of the emperor himself; and his various writings express the uniform tenor of his religious sentiments, which policy would have prompted him to disguise rather than to affect. A devout and sincere attachment for the gods of Athens and ROME constituted the ruling passion of Julian; the powers of an enlightened understanding were betrayed and corrupted by the influence of superstitious prejudice; and the phantoms which existed only in the mind of the emperor, had a real and pernicious effect on the government of the empire. The vehement zeal of the Christians, who despised the worship, and overturned the altars, of those fabulous deities, engaged their votary in a state of irrevocable hostility with a very numerous party of his subjects; and he was sometimes tempted, by the desire of victory, or the shame of a repulse, to violate the laws of prudence, and even of justice. The triumph of the party, which he deserted and opposed, has fixed a stain of infamy on the name of Julian; and the unsuccessful apostate has been overwhelmed with a torrent of pious invective, of which the signal was given by the sonorous trumpet of Gregory NAZIANZEN. The interesting nature of the events which were crowded into the short reign of this wise emperor, deserve a just and circumstantial narrative. His motives, his councils, and his actions, as far as they are connected with the history of religion, will be the subject of the present chapter.

The cause of his strange and fatal apostasy may be derived from the early period of his life, when he was left an orphan in the hands of the murderers of his family. The names of Christ and of Constantius, the ideas of slavery and of religion, were soon associated in a youthful imagination, which was susceptible of the most lively impressions. The care of his infancy was intrusted to EUSOBUS, bishop of NICOMEDIA, who was related to him on the side of his mother; and till Julian reached the twentieth year of his age, he received from his Christian preceptors the education, not of a hero, but of a saint. The emperor, less jealous of a heavenly, than of an earthly crown, contented himself with the imperfect character of a catechumen, while he bestowed the advantages of baptism on the nephews of Constantius. They were even admitted to the inferior offices of the ecclesiastical order; and Julian publicly read the Holy Scriptures in the church of NICOMEDIA. The study of religion, which they assiduously cultivated, appeared to produce the fairest fruits of faith and devotion. They prayed, they fasted, they distributed alms to the poor, gifts to the clergy, and oblations to the tombs of the martyrs; and the splendid munificence...
The crowd of sophists, who were attracted by the taste and liberality of their royal pupil, had formed a strict alliance between the learning and the religion of Greece; and the poets of Homer, instead of being admired as the original productions of human genius, were seriously ascribed to the heavenly inspiration of Apollo and the Muses. The festivals of Olympia, as they are painted by the immortal hand, imprint themselves on the minds which are the most addicted to superstitions credulity. Our familiar knowledge of their muses and characters, their forms and attributes, seem to bestow on those airy beings a real and substantial existence; and the pleasing enchantment produces an imperfect and customary assent of the imagination to those fables, which are the most repugnant to our reason and experience. In the age of Julian, every circumstance contributed to prolong and fortify the illusion; the magnificent temples of Greece and Asia; the works of those artists who had expressed, in painting or in sculpture, the divine conceptions of the poet; the pomp of festivals and sacrifices; the successful arts of divination; the popular traditions of oracles and prodigies; and the ancient practice of two thousand years. The weakness of polytheism was, in some measure, excused by the paltry contrivance of its claims; and the devotion of the Pagans was not incompatible with the most licentious capricies. Instead of an indivisible and regular system, which occupies the whole extent of the believing mind, the mythology of the Greeks was composed of a thousand loose and flexible parts, and the servant of the gods was at liberty to define the degree and measure of his religious faith. The creed which Julian adopted for his own use was of the largest dimensions; and, by a strange contradiction, he disdained the sacerdotal rite of the Gospel, whilst he made a voluntary offering of his reason on the altars of Jupiter and Apollo. One of the orations of Julian is consecrated to the honour of Cybele, the mother of the gods, who required from her enthusiastic priests the bloody sacrifice, so rashly performed by the madness of the Ptojan bay. The pious emperor descends so low, without a blush, and without a smile, the voyage of the goddess from the shores of Persia to the mouth of the Tybr; and the stupendous miracle, which convinced the senate and people of Rome that the lump of clay, which their ambassadors had transported over the sea, was endowed with life, and sentiment, and divine power. For the truth of this prodigy, he appeals to the public monuments of the city; and censures, with some severity, the sickly
and affected taste of those men, who imperiously denied the sacred traditions of their ancestors. But the devout philosopher, who sincerely embraced, and warmly encouraged, the superstition of the people, reserved for himself the privilege of a liberal interpretation; and silently withdrew from the foot of the altar into the sanctuary of the temple. The extravagance of the Grecian mythology proclaimed with a clear and audible voice, that the pagan sages, instead of being scandalised at being mistaken with the liberal sense, should diligently explore the occult wisdom, which had been disguised, by the prudence of antiquity, under the mask of folly and of fable. The philosophers of the Platonic school, Plato, Porphry, and the divine Iamblichus, were admired as the most skilful masters of this allegorical science, which laboured to assist and harmonise the deformed features of paganism. Julian himself, who was directed in the mystic pursuits by Édonis, the venerable successor of Iamblichus, aspired to the possession of a treasure, which he esteemed, if we may credit his solemn assertions, far above the empire of the world. It was indeed a treasure, which derived its value only from opinion; and every artist, who flattered himself that he had extracted the precious from the surrounding dust, claimed an equal right of stamping the name and figure the most acceptable to his peculiar fancy. The fables of Atys and Cybele had been already explained by Porphry; but his labours served only to animate the pious industry of Julian, who invented and published his own allegory of that ancient and mystic tale. This freedom of interpretation, which might gratify the pride of the Platonists, exposed the vanity of their art. Without a tedious detail, the modern reader could not form a just idea of the strange allusions, the forced stigmata, the solemn trillings, and the impenetrable obscurity of these sages, who professed to reveal the system of the universe. As the traditions of Pagan mythology were variously related, the sacred interpreters were at liberty to select the most convenient circumstances; and as they translated an arbitrary cypher, they could extract from any fable any sense which was adapted to their favourite system of religion and philosophy. The lascivious form of a naked Venus was tortured into the discovery of some moral precept, or some physical truth; and the narration of Atys explained the revolution of the sun between the tropics, or the separation of the human soul from vice and error.

The theological system of Julian appears to have contained the subtile and important principles of natural religion. But as that faith, which is not founded on revelation, must remain destitute of any firm assurance, the disciple of Plato imprudently transferred into the habit of vulgar superstition; and the popular and philanthropic notion of the Deity seems to have been founded in the practice, the writings, and even in the mind of Julian. The pious emperor acknowledged and adored the Eternal Cause of the universe, to whom he ascribed all the perfections of an infinite nature, invisible to the eyes, and inaccessible to the understanding, of feeble mortals. The Supreme God had created, or rather, in the Platonic language, had generated, the gradual succession of dependent spirits, of gods, of demons, of heroes, and of men; and every being which derived its existence immediately from the First Cause, received the inherent gift of immortality. That so precious an advantage might not be lost upon unworthy objects, the Creator had assigned to the skill and power of the inferior gods the office of forming the human body, and of arranging the beautiful harmony of the animal, the vegetable, and the mineral kingdoms. To the conduct of these divine ministers he delegated the temporal government of this lower world; but their imperfect administration is not excepted from discord or error. The earth, and its inhabitants, are divided among them, and the characters of Mars or Minerva, of Mercury or Venus, may be distinctly traced in the laws and manners of their peculiar vocations. As long as our immortal souls are confined in a mortal prison, it is our interest, as well as our duty, to solicit the favour, and to deprive the wrath, of the powers of Heaven; whose pride is gratified by the devotion of mankind; and whose greater parts may be supposed to derive some nourishment from the fames of sacrifice. The inferior gods might sometimes consent to animate the statues, and to inhabit the temples, which were dedicated to their honours. They might occasionally visit the earth, but the heavens wear the proper throne and symbol of their glory. The invisible order of the sun, moon, and stars, was haphazard admitted by Julian, as a proof of their eternal duration; and their eternity was a sufficient evidence that they were the workmanship, not of an inferior deity, but of the Omnipotent King. In the system of the Platonists, the visible was a type of the invisible world. The celestial bodies, as they were informed by a divine spirit, might be considered a visible image of an invisible reality, or the shadow of the things to come, as described by the oracles, or the prophecies, and as foretold by the mystic sages.
as the objects the most worthy of religious worship. The Sun, whose geocentric influence pervades and sustains the universe, justly claimed the adoration of mankind, as the bright representative of the Locos, the lively, the rational, the beneficent image of the intellectual Father. In every age, the absence of genuine inspiration is supplied by the strong illusions of enthusiasm, and the mimic arts of imposture. If, in the time of Julian, these arts had been practised only by the Pagan priests, for the support of an existing superstition, some indulgence might perhaps have been allowed to the interest and habits of the sacrificial character. But it may appear a subject of surprise and scandal, that the philosophers themselves should have contributed to abuse the superstitions credulity of mankind, and that the Grecian mysteries should have been supported by the magic or theurgy of the modern Platonists. They arrogantly pretended to control the order of nature, to explore the secrets of futurity, to command the service of the inferior demons, to enjoy the view and conversation of the superior gods, and, by disengaging the soul from her material bonds, to re-unite that immortal particle with the Infinite and Divine Spirit.

The devout and fearless curiosity of Julian tempted the philosophers with the hopes of an easy conquest; which, from the situation of their young prince, might be productive of the most important consequences. Julian imbibed the first rudiments of the Platonic doctrine from the mouth of Eleusis, who had fixed at Pergamus his wandering and persecuting school. But the declining strength of that venerable sage was unequal to the arduous, the diligence, the rapid censure of his pupil, two of his mostlearned disciples, Chrysanthus and Eusebius, supplied, at his own desire, the place of their aged master. These philosophers seem to have prepared and distributed their respective parts; and they artfully contrived, by dark hints, and affected disputes, to excite the impatient hopes of the young prince, till they delivered him into the hands of their associate, Maximus, the boldest and most skilful master of the Ionic science. By his hands, Julian was secretly instructed at Ephesus, in the twentieth year of his age. His residence at Athens confirmed this unnatural alliance of philosophy and superstition. He obtained the privilege of a solemn initiation into the mysteries of Eleusis, which, amidst the general decay of the Grecian worship, still retained some vestiges of their primeval sanctity; and such was the zeal of Julian, that he afterwards invited the Eleusinian pontiff to the court of

Goal, for the sole purpose of conversating, by mystic rites and sacrifices, the great work of his sanctification. As these ceremonies were performed in the depth of caverns, and in the silence of the night, and as the inscrutable secrets of the mysteries were preserved by the discretion of the initiates, I shall not presume to describe the horrid sounds, and fierce apparitions, which were presented to the sense, or the imagination, of the credulous aspirant, till the visions of comfort and knowledge broke upon him in a blaze of celestial light. In the cavern of Ephesus and Eleusis, the mind of Julian was penetrated with sincere, deep, and unalterable enthusiasm; though he might sometimes exhibit the vivisimulus of frantic fand hypocrisy, which may be observed, or at least suspected, in the characters of the most conscientious fanatics. From that moment he consecrated his life to the service of the gods; and while the occupations of war, of government, and of study, seemed to claim the whole measure of his time, a stated portion of the hours of the night was invariably reserved for the exercise of private devotion. The temperance which subdued the savage manners of the soldier and the philosopher, was connected with some strict and frivolous rules of religious abstention; and it was in honour of Pan or Mercury, of Hecate or Isis, that Julian, on particular days, denied himself the use of some particular food, which might have been offensive to his tutelar deities. By these voluntary fasts, he prepared his senses and his understanding for the frequent and familiar visits with which he was honoured by the celestial powers. Notwithstanding the modest silence of Julian himself, we may learn from his faithful friend, the orator Libanius, that he lived in a perpetual intercourse with the gods and goddesses; that they descended upon earth, to enjoy the conversation of their favourite hero; that they gently interrupted his slumbers by touching his hand or his hair; that they warred him of every impending danger, and conducted him, by their infallible wisdom, in every action of his life; and that he had acquired such an intimate knowledge of his heavenly guests, as really to distinguish the voice of Jupiter from that of Minerva, and the form of Apollo from the figure of Hercules. These sleeping or waking visions, the ordinary effects of abstention and asceticism, would almost degrade the emperor to the level of an Egyptian monk. But the dreamy lives of Antony or Pachomius were consumed in these vain occupations, Julian could break from the dream of superstition to arm himself for battle; and after vanquishing in the field the enemies of Rome, he calmly retired into his tent, to dictate the wise and salutary laws of an empire, or to
fiefs at the assemblies of the Christians. Julian returned, with the impudence of a lover, to burn his free and voluntary incense on the domestic chapels of Jupiter and Mercury. But as every act of dissimulation must be painful to an ingenuous spirit, the profession of Christianity increased the aversion of Julian for a religion which oppressed the freedom of his mind, and compelled him to hold a conduct repugnant to the noblest attributes of human nature, sincerity and courage.

The inclination of Julian might prefer the gods of Homer, and of the Scipios, to the new faith which his uncle had established in the Roman empire; and in which he himself had been sanctified by the sacrament of baptism. But, as a philosopher, it was incumbent on him to justify his dissent from Christianity, which was supported by the number of its converts, by the claim of prophecy, the splendour of miracles, and the weight of evidence. The elaborate work, which he composed amidst the preparations of the Persian war, contained the substance of these arguments which had long roused in his mind. Some fragments have been transcribed and preserved, by his adversary, the vehement Cyril of Alexandria; and they exhibit a very singular mixture of wit and learning, of sophistry and fanaticism.

The elegance of the style, and the rank of the author, recommended his writings to the public attention; and in the impious list of the enemies of Christianity, the celebrated name of Porphyry was effaced by the superior merit of the reputation of Julian. The minds of the faithful were either seduced, or scandalised, or alarmed; and the Pagans, who sometimes presumed to engage in the unequal dispute, derived, from the popular work of their Imperial missionary, an inexhaustible supply of fallacious objections. But in the audacious prosecution of these theological studies, the emperor of the Romans indulged the illiberal prejudice and passion of a polemic divine. He contracted an irrevocable obligation to maintain and propagate his religious opinions; and whilst he secretly upbraided the strength and dexterity with which he wielded the weapons of controversy, he was tempted to distrust the sincerity, or to despise the understandings, of his antagonists, who could obstinately resist the force of reason and eloquence.

The Christians, who beheld with horror and indignation the apostasy of Julian, had much more to fear from his power than from his arguments. The Pagans, who were conscious of his fervent zeal, expected, perhaps with impatience, that the flames of persecution should be immediately kindled against the enemies of the gods; and that the insidious
mality of Julian would invent some cruel refinements of death and torture, which had been unknown to the rude and inexperienced fury of his predecessors. But the hopes, as well as the fears, of the religious factions were apparently disappointed, by the prudent humanity of a prince, who was careful of his own fame, of the public peace, and of the rights of mankind. Instructed by history and reflection, Julian was persuaded, if the diseases of the body may sometimes be cured by salutary violence, neither steel nor fire can expiate the erroneous opinions of the mind. The reluctant victim may be dragged to the foot of the altar; but the heart still abhors and disclaims the sacrilegious act of the hand. Religious obstinacy is hardened and exasperated by repression; and, as soon as the persecution subsides, those who have yielded, are restored as penitents, and those who have resisted, are honoured as saints and martyrs. If Julian adopted the unsuccessful cruelty of Diocletian and his colleagues, he was sensible that he should stain his memory with the name of tyrant, and add new glores to the Catholic church, which had derived strength and increase from the severity of the Pagan magistrates. Actuated by these motives, and apprehensive of disturbing the repose of an unsettled reign, Julian surprised the world by an edict, which was not unworthy of a statesman or a philosopher. He extended to all the inhabitants of the Roman world, the benefits of a free and equal toleration; and the only hardship which he inflicted on the Christians, was to deprive them of the power of testifying their fellow-subjects, whom they stigmatised with the odious titles of idolators and heretics. The Pagans received a gracious permission; or rather an express order, to open all their temples; and they were at once delivered from the oppressive laws, and arbitrary vexations, which they had sustained under the reign of Constantine, and of his sons. At the same time, the bishops and clergy, who had been banished by the Arian monarch, were recalled from exile, and restored to their respective churches; the Donatists, the Novatians, the Macedonians, the Eunomians, and those who, with a more prosperous fortune, adhered to the doctrine of the council of Nice. Julian, who understood and decided his theological disputes, invited to the palace the leaders of the hostile sects, that he might enjoy the agreeable spectacle of their furious encounter. The clamour of controversy sometimes provoked the emperor to exclaim, "Hear me, the Franks have heard me, and the Alemani," but he soon discovered that he was now engaged with more obstinate and implacable enemies; and though he started the powers of wrath, to persuade them to live in concord, or at least in peace, he was perfectly satisfied, before he dismissed them from his presence, that he had nothing to dread from the union of the Christians. The Imperial Ammonius has ascribed this affected humanity to the desire of resting the intestine divisions of the church; and the insidious design of undermining the foundations of Christianity, was inseparably connected with the zeal, which Julian professed, to restore the ancient religion of the empire.

As soon as he ascended the throne, he assumed, according to the custom of his predecessors, the character of supreme pontiff; not only as the most honourable title of Imperial greatness, but as a sacred and important office; the duties of which he was resolved to execute with pious diligence. As the business of the state prevented the emperor from joining every day in the public devotion of his subjects, he dedicated a domestic chapel to his tutelar deity the Sun; his gardens were filled with statues and altars of the gods; and each apartment of the palace displayed the appearance of a magnificent temple. Every morning he saluted the patent of light with a sacrifice; the blood of another victim was shed at the moment when the Sun sank below the horizon; and the Moon, the Stars, and the Genius of the night, received their respective and reasonable honours from the indefatigable devotion of Julian. On solemn festivals, he regularly visited the temple of the god or goddess in whom the day was peculiarly consecrated, and endeavoured to excite the religion of the magistrates and people by the example of his own zeal. Instead of maintaining the lofty state of a monarch, distinguished by the splendour of his purple, and encompassed by golden shields of his guards, Julian solicited, with respectful eagerness, the meanest offices which contributed to the worship of the gods. Amidst the sacred but licentious crowd of priests, of inferior ministers, and of female dancers, who were dedicated to the service of the temple, it was the business of the emperor to bring the wood, to blow the fire, to handle the knife, to slaughter the victim, and, thrusting his bloody hands into the bowels of the expiring animal, to draw forth the heart or liver, and to read, with the consummate skill of a haruspex, the imaginary signs of future events. The wisest of the Pagans consoled this extravagant superstition, which affected to despise the restraints of prudence and decency. Under the reign of a prince, who practised the rigid maxims of economy, the expense of religious worship consumed a very large portion of the revenue; a constant supply of the most sumptuous worship was supplied, and the service was conducted with the most scrupulous punctiliousness, by means of priests clothed in white garments, which were already odious to the Christians, and of the worship which they retained was dedicated to the Sun, the Moon, the Stars, and the Genius of the night; and the stars which were considered as the especial objects of veneration were held in abhorrence by the Christians. The Emperor Julian had been educated by the disinterested and upright Dalmatian, who was himself a perfect Christian. Julian had been taught to respect the wisdom of Ammonius; and the emperor himself, during his residence in the East, made his court to the pagans, only from the necessity of business. The emperor Julian was a Christian, whom the Emperor Julian, who was himself a perfect Christian, had instructed in the reformation of the church. The emperor Julian, who was himself a perfect Christian,
infallibly be extinguished. Yet this expense may appear inconsiderable, when it is compared with the splendid presents which were offered, either by the hand, or by order, of the emperor, to all the celebrated places of devotion in the Roman world; and with the sums allotted to repair and decorate the ancient temples, which had suffered the silent decay of time, or the recent injuries of Christian rapine. Encouraged by the example, the exhortations, the liberality of their pious sovereign, the cities and families renewed the practice of the neglected ceremonies. "Every part of the world," exclaims St. Iulien, with devout transport, "displayed the triumph of religion; and the gradual prospect of flaming altars, bleeding victims, the smoke of incense, and a solemn train of priests and philosophers, without fear and without danger. The sound of prayer and of music was heard on the tops of the highest mountains; and the same ox afforded a sacrifice for the gods, and a supper for their joyous votaries." 38

But the genius and power of

Julian was unequal to the enterprise of restoring a religion, which was destined of theological principles, of moral precepts, and of ecclesiastical discipline; which rapidly hastened to decay and dissolution, and was not susceptible of any solid or consistent reformation. The jurisdiction of the supreme pontiff, more especially after that office had been united with the Imperial dignity, comprehended the whole extent of the Roman empire. Julian named for his vicars, in the several provinces, the priests and philosophers, whom he esteemed the best qualified to co-operate in the execution of his great design; and his pastoral letters, 37 if we may use that name, still represent a very curious sketch of his wishes and intentions. He directs, that in every city the sacerdotal order should be composed, without any distinction of birth or fortune, of those persons who were the most conspicuous for their love of the gods, and of men. "If they are guilty," continues he, "of any scandalous offence, they should be censured or degraded by the superior pontiff; but, as long as they retain their rank, they are entitled to the respect of the magistrates and people. Their humility may be shown in the plainness of their domestic garb; their dignity, in the pomp of holy vestments. When they are summoned in their turn to officiate before the altar, they ought not, during the appointed number of days, to depart from the precincts of the temple; nor should a single day be suffered to elapse, without the prayers and the sacrifice, which they are obliged to offer for the prosperity of the state, and of individuals. The exercise of their sacred

"unctions requires an immediate purity, both of mind and body; and even when they are dismissed from the temple to the occupation of common life, it is incumbent on them to excel in decency and virtue the rest of their fellow-countrymen. The priest of the gods should never be seen in theatres or taverns. His conversation should be chaste, his diet temperate, his friends of honourable reputation; and if he sometimes visits the Forum or the Palace, he should appear only as the advocate of those who have vainly solicited either justice or mercy. His studies should be united to the utility of his profession. Licentious tales, or sacrilegious, must be banished from his library, which ought solely to consist of historical and philosophical writings; of history which is founded in truth; and of philosophy which is connected with religion. The injurious opinions of the Epicureans and Scipio. Scipio deserve his abhorrence and contempt; 39 but he should diligently study the "systems of Pythagoras, of Plato, and of the "Stoics, which unanioulsly teach that there are gods; that the world is governed by their providence; that their goodness is the source of every temporal blessing; and that they have prepared for the human soul a future state of reward or punishment." The Imperial pontiff inclinates, in the most persuasive language, the duties of benevolence and hospitality; exhorts his inferior clergy to recommend the universal practice of those virtues; promises to assist their indulgence from the public treasury; and declares his resolution of establishing hospitals in every city, where the poor should be received without any invidious distinction of country or of religion. Julian beheld with envy the wise and humane regulations of the church; and he very frankly confesses his intention to deprive the Christians of the applause, as well as advantage, which they had acquired by the exclusive practice of charity and beneficence. 40 The same spirit of imitation might dispose the emperor to adopt several ecclesiastical institutions, the use and importance of which were approved by the success of his eminence. But if these imaginary plans of reformation had been realized, the forced and imperfect copy would have less beneficial to Paganism, than honourable to Christianity. 41 The Gentiles, who peacably followed the customs of their ancestors, were rather surprised than pleased with the introduction of foreign manners; and, in the short period of his reign, Julian had frequent occasions to complain of the want of favour of his own party. 44

The enthusiasm of Julian prompt- ed him to entrust the friends of

38 The succorae of the Pagan worlde & describ'd by Julian [Menologico, p. 132.]; Epist. Roman. Pont. Ev. p. 329, 337, and O. Vat. 5. 5. 4. 4. 5. 5. 6. 7.]; Gregor. Nazian. Orat. 140.]; Theophyl. Hist. p. 130, 131.] and Gregory Nazianzen [Hist. 4. p. 130.]; These writings contain an account of the Pagan worlde and of the different sects of the philosophers, to which they were devoted. As Julian is the author of this letter, we may suppose, that he had examined the different sects with care and impartiality. 39 See Julian, Epist. p. 247, 248, 249, and O. Vat. 5. 5. 5. 6. 7.]; Theophyl. Hist. p. 130, 131,] and Gregory Nazianzen [Hist. 4. p. 130.]; These writings contain an account of the Pagan worlde and of the different sects of the philosophers, to which they were devoted. As Julian is the author of this letter, we may suppose, that he had examined the different sects with care and impartiality. 40 See Julian, Epist. p. 247, 248, 249, and O. Vat. 5. 5. 5. 6. 7.]; Theophyl. Hist. p. 130, 131,] and Gregory Nazianzen [Hist. 4. p. 130.]; These writings contain an account of the Pagan worlde and of the different sects of the philosophers, to which they were devoted. As Julian is the author of this letter, we may suppose, that he had examined the different sects with care and impartiality. 41.
Jupiter as his personal friend and brother; and though he partially overlooked the merit of Christian constancy, he admired and rewarded the noble perseverance of those Gentiles who had preferred the favour of the gods to that of the emperor. If they cultivated the literature, as well as the religion, of the Greeks, they acquired an additional claim to the friendship of Julian, who ranked the Muse in the number of his tutelar deities. In the religion which he had adopted, piety and learning were almost synonymous; and a crowd of poets, of rhetoricians, and of philosophers, hastened to the Imperial court, to occupy the vacant places of the bishops, who had secedured the credulity of Constantius. His successor externalised the ties of common initiation so far more sacred than those of consanguinity: he chose his favourites among the sages, who were deeply skilled in the occult sciences of magic and divination; and every imposer, who pretended to reveal the secrets of futurity, was assured of enjoying the present hour in honour and affluence. Among the philosophers, Maximus obtained the most eminent rank from the friendship of his royal disciple, who communicated, with unsoured confidence, his actions, his sentiments, and his religious designs, during the anxious suspense of the civil war. As soon as Julian had taken possession of the palace of Constantinople, he despachted an honourable and pressing invitation to Maximus, who then resided at Saros in Lydia, with Chrysanthius, the associate of his art and studies. The prudent and superradian Chrysanthius refused to undertake a journey which showed itself, according to the rules of divination, with the most threatening and malignant aspect: but his companion, whose fanaticism was of a holier cast, persisted in his interrogations, till he had extorted from the gods a seeming consent to his own wishes, and those of the emperor. The journey of Maximus through the cities of Asia displayed the triumph of philosophic vanity; and the magistrates vied with each other in the honourable reception which they prepared for the friend of their sovereign. Julian was pronouncing an oration before the senate, when he was informed of the arrival of Maximus. The emperor immediately interrupted his discourse, advanced to meet him, and, after a tender embrace, conducted him by the hand into the midst of the assembly, where he publicly acknowledged the benefits which he had derived from the instructions of the philosopher. Maximus, who soon acquired the confidence, and influence of the councils, of Julian, was insensibly corrupted by the temtations of a court. His dress became more splendid, his demeanour more lofty, and he was exposed, under a succeeding reign, to a disgraceful enquiry into the nobleness of birth which the disciple of Plato had accumulated, in the short duration of his favour, a very scandalous proportion of wealth. Of the other philosophers and sophists, who were invited to the Imperial residence by the choice of Julian, or by theTwosom of Maximus, few were able to preserve their innocence or their reputation. The liberal gifts of money, lands, and houses, were insufficient to satiate their rapacious avarice; and the indignation of the people was justly excited by the remembrance of their object poverty and disinterested professions. The penetration of Julian could not always be deceived; but he was unwilling to despise the characters of those men whose talents deserved his esteem: he desired to escape the double reproach of impudence and inconstancy; and he was apprehensive of degrading, in the eyes of the profane, the honour of letters and of religion.

The favour of Julian was almost equally divided between the Pagon, who had firmly adhered to the worship of their ancestors, and the Christians, who profusely embraced the religion of their sovereign. The acquisition of new proselytes gratified the ruling passions of his soul, superstition and vanity; and he was heard to declare, with the enthusiasm of a missionary, that if he could render each individual richer than Midas, and every city greater than Babylon, he should not esteem himself the benefactor of mankind, unless, at the same time, he could reclaim his subjects from their impious revolt against the immortal gods. A prince, who had subdued human nature, and who possessed the treasures of the Roman empire, could adapt his arguments, his promises, and his rewards, to every order of Christians; and the merit of a reasonable conversion was allowed to supply the defects of a candidate, or even to expiate the guilt of a criminal. As the army is the most forcible engine of absolute power, Julian applied himself, with peculiar diligence, to corrupt the religion of his troops, without whose hearty concurrence every measure must be dangerous and unsuccessful; and the natural temper of soldiers made this conquest as easy as it was important. The legions of Gaul devoted themselves to the faith, as well as to the formans, of their victorious leader; and even before the death of Constantine (see II., chap. xxiii), the senate and people united their homage and prayers to Julian, with the effluvium of a fervent and levant sentiment; while the assembled admirers of the deified Augustus, and the Christian suppliants, contended for the blessings of the same Augustus, and the Christian suppliants, contended for the blessings of the same Emperor.
THE DECLINE AND FALL.

Chapter XXIII.

He had the satisfaction of announcing to his friends, that they assisted with fervent devotion, and various sacrifices, at the sacrifices, which were repeatedly offered in his camp, of whole beasts and fat oxen. The armies of the East, which had been trained under the standard of the cross, and of Constantine, required a more artistic and expensive mode of persuasion. On the days of solemn and public festivals, the emperor received the homage, and rewarded the merit, of the troops. His throne of state was succeeded by the military insignia of Rome and the republic; the holy name of Christ was erased from the Labarum; and the symbols of war, of majesty, and of Pagan superstition, were so distantly blended, that the faithful subject incurred the guilt of idolatry, when he respectfully saluted the person or image of his sovereign. The soldiers passed successively in review; and each of them, before he received from the hand of Julian a liberal donation, proportioned to his rank and services, was required to cast a few grains of incense into the flame which burnt upon the altar. Some Christian confessor might resist, and others might repent; but the far greater number, allured by the prospect of gold, and swayed by the presence of the emperor, contracted the criminal engagement; and their future perseverance in the worship of the gods was enforced by every consideration of duty and interest. By the frequent repetition of these arts, and at the expense of arms which would have purchased the service of half the nations of Scythia, Julian gradually acquired for his troops the imaginary protection of the gods, and for himself the firm and effectual support of the Roman legions. It is indeed more than probable, that the restoration and encouragement of Paganism revealed a multitude of pretended Christians, who, from motives of temporal advantage, had acceded to the religion of the former reign; and who afterwards returned, with the same flexibility of conscience, to the faith which was professed by the successors of Julian.

While the devout monarch incessantly laboured to restore and propagate the religion of his ancestors, he embraced the extraordinary design of rebuilding the temple of Jerusalem. In a public edict, he enjoined the nation or community of the Jews, dispersed through the provinces, he pities their misfortunes, confesses their oppressions, praises their constancy, declares himself their gracious protector, and expresses a pious hope, that, after his return from the Persian war, he may be permitted to pay his grateful vows to the Almighty in his holy city of Jerusalem. The blind superstition, and abject slavery, of those unfortunate exiles, must excite the contempt of a philosophic emperor; but they deserved the friendship of Julian, by their implacable hatred of the Christian name. The barren synagogues abhorred and envied the fecundity of the rebellious church; the power of the Jews was not equal to their malice; but their greatest rabble approved the private murder of an apostate; and their relentless clamours had often awakened the indignation of the Pagan magistrates. Under the reign of Constantine, the Jews became the subjects of their revolting children, nor was it long before they experienced the bitterness of domestic tyranny. The civil immunities which had been granted, or confirmed, by Severus, were gradually repealed by the Christian princes; and a rash remit, excited by the Jews of Palestine, seemed to justify the lucrative modes of oppression, which were invented by the bishops and synods of the court of Constantine. The Jewish patriarch, who was still permitted to exercise a precarious jurisdiction, held his residence at Tiberias; and the neighbouring cities of Palestine were filled with the remains of a people, who fondly adhered to the promised land. But the edict of Hadrian was renewed and enforced; and they viewed from afar the walls of the holy city, which were profaned in their eyes by the triumphs of the cross, and the devotion of the Christians.

In the midst of a rocky and barren country, the walls of Jerusalem 29 enclosed the two mountains of Zion and Aron, within an oval figure of about three English miles. Towards the south, the upper town, and the fortress of David, were erected on the lofty ascent of Mount Zion; on the north side, the buildings of the lower town covered the spacious summit of Mount Aron; and a part of the hill, distinguished by the name of Moriah, and levelled by human industry, was crowned with the stately temple of the Jewish nation. After the final destruction of the temple, by the arms of Titus and Hadrian, a ploughshare was driven over the consecrated ground, as a sign of perpetual interdiction. Zion was desolate; and the vacant space of the lower city was filled with the public and private edifices of the Roman colony, which spread themselves over the adjacent till of Caphare. The holy places were polluted with monuments from Solomon, Elisha, Isaiah, and Ezekeil, and other ancient sacred buildings.
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

nments of idolatry; and, either from design or accident, a chapel was dedicated to Venus, on the spot which had been sanctified by the death and resurrection of Christ. Almost three hundred years after these stupendous events, the profane chapel of Venus was dismantled by the order of Constantine; and the removal of the earth and stones revealed the holy sepulchre to the eyes of mankind. A magnificent church was erected on that mystic ground, by the first Christian emperor; and the effects of his pious munificence were extended to every spot which had been consecrated by the footsteps of patriarchs, of prophets, and of the Son of God. The passionate desire of contemplating the original monuments of their redemption, attracted to Jerusalem a successive crowd of pilgrims, from the shores of the Atlantic ocean, and the most distant countries of the East; and their piety was authorized by the example of the emperor Hadrian, who appears to have united the credulity of age with the warm feelings of a recent convertism. Sages and heroines, who have visited the memorable situation of ancient wisdom or glory, have confessed the inspiration of the genius of the place; and the Christian, who knew before the holy sepulchre, ascribed his lively faith, and his fervent devotion, to the immediate influence of the Divine spirit. The soul, perhaps the source, of the glory of Jerusalem, sheltered and multiplied these beneficent visits. They fixed, by unquestionable tradition, the scene of such memorable events. They exhibited the instruments which had been used in the passion of Christ; the nails and the lance that had pierced his hands, his feet, and his side; the crown of thorns that was planted on his head; the pillar at which he was scourged; and, above all, they showed the cross on which he suffered, and which was dug out of the earth in the reign of those princes, who inserted the symbol of Christianity in the banners of the Roman legions. Such miracles, as seemed necessary to account for its extraordinary preservation, and reasonable discovery, were gradually propagated without opposition. The custom of the ever cross, which on Easter Sunday was solemnly exposed to the people, was introduced to the bishop of Jerusalem; and by some might gratify the curious devotion of the pilgrims, by the gift of small pieces, which they enclosed in gold or gems, and carried away in triumph to their respective countries. But as this gainful branch of commerce must soon have been ameliorated, it was found convenient to suppose, that the marvellous wood possessed a secret power of vegetation; and that its substance, though continually diminished, still remained entire and unimpaired. It might perhaps have been expected, that the influence of the place and the belief of a perpetual miracle, should have produced some military effects on the morals, as well as on the faith, of the people. Yet the most respectable of the ecclesiastical writers have been obliged to confess, not only that the streets of Jerusalem were filled with the incessant tumult of business and pleasure, but that every species of vice; adultery, theft, idleness, poisoning, murder, was familiar to the inhabitants of the holy city. The wealth and pre-eminence of the church of Jerusalem excited the ambition of Arian, as well as orthodox, candidates; and the virtues of Cyril, who, since his death, has been honoured with the title of Saint, were displayed in the exercise, rather than in the acquisition, of his episcopal dignity. The vain and ambitious mind of Julian might aspire to restore the ancient glory of the temple of Jerusalem. As the Christians were firmly persuaded that a sentence of everlasting destruction had been pronounced against the whole fabric of the Mosaic law, the Imperial sophist would have converted the success of his undertaking into a specious argument against the faith of prophecy, and the truth of revelation. He was displeased with the spiritual worship of the synagogue; but he approved the institutions of Moses, who had not disdained to adopt many of the rites and ceremonies of Egypt. The local and national deity of the Jews was sincerely adored by a polytheist, who desired only to multiply the number of the gods; and such was the appetite of Julian for bloody sacrifices, that his ambition might be excited by the piety of Solomon, who had offered, at the feast of the dedication, twenty-two thousand oxen, and one
hundred and twenty thousand sheep. These considerations might influence his designs; but the prospect of an immediate and important advantage would not suffer the impotent monarch to expect the remote and uncertain event of the Persian war. He resolved to act, without delay, on the commanding eminence of Moriah, a stately temple, which might eclipse the splendour of the church of the Resurrection on the adjacent hill of Calvary; to establish an order of priests, whose interest would elevate the arts, and assuage the ambition, of their Christian rivals; and to invite a numerous colony of Jews, whose stern fanaticism would be always prepared to second, and even to anticipate, the humblest measures of the Pagan government. Among the friends of the emperor (if the names of emperor, and of friend, are not incompatible) the first place was assigned, by Julian himself, to the virtuous and learned Alypius. The humanity of Alypius was tempered by severe justice, and a delicate reserve of modesty; and while he exercised his abilities in the civil administration of Britain, he initiated, in his poetical compositions, the harmony and softness of the ode of Sappho. This minister, to whom Julian communicated, without reserve, his most careless levities, and his most serious councils, received an extraordinary commission to restore, in its pristine beauty, the temple of Jerusalem; and the diligence of Alypius required and obtained the strenuous support of the governor of Palestine. At the call of their great deliverer, the Jews, from all the provinces of the empire, assembled on the holy mountain of their fathers; and their insistent triumph alarmed and exasperated the Christian inhabitants of Jerusalem. The desire of rebuilding the temple has, in every age, been the ruling passion of the children of Israel. In this propitious moment the men forgot their avarice, and the women their delicacy; spades and pickaxes of silver were provided by the vanity of the rich, and the rabble was transported in mantles of silk and purple. Every purse was opened in liberal contributions, every hand claimed a share in the pious labour; and the commands of a great monarch were executed by the enthusiasm of a whole people.

Yet, on this occasion, the joint efforts of power and enthusiasm were unsuccessful; and the ground of the Jewish temple, which is now covered by a Mahometan mosque, still continued to exhibit the same edifying spectacle of ruin and desolation. Perhaps the absence and death of the emperor, and the new maxims of a Christian reign, might explain the interruption of an august work, which was attempted only in the last six months of the life of Julian. But the Christians entertained a natural and pious expectation, that, in this memorable contest, the honour of religion would be vindicated by some signal miracle. An earthquake, a whirlwind, and a fiery eruption, which overturned and scattered the new foundations of the temple, are attested, with some variations, by contemporaneous and respectable evidence. This public event is described by Ammianus, bishop of Milan, in an epistle to the emperor Theodosius, which must provoke the severe animadversion of the Jews; by the eloquent Chrysostom, who might appeal to the memory of the elder part of his congregation at Antioch; and by Gregory Nazianzen, who published his account of the miracle before the expiration of the same year. The last of these writers has boldly declared, that this preternatural event was not disputed by the infidels; and his assertion, strange as it may seem, is confirmed by the unexceptionable testimony of Ammianus Marcellinus.

The philosophic soldier, who loved the virtues, without adopting the prejudices of his master, has recorded, in his justiciary and candid history of his own times, the extraordinary obstacles which interrupted the restoration of the temple of Jerusalem. Whilst Alypius, assisted by the governor of the province, urged, with vigour and diligence, the execution of the work, horrible balls of fire breaking out near the foundations, with frequent and reiterated attacks, rendered the place, from time to time, inaccessible to the searched and blasted workmen; and the victorious element continuing in this manner obstinately and resolutely bent, as it were, to drive them to a distance, the under taking was abandoned. Such authority should satisfy a believing, and must astonish an incredulous, mind. Yet a philosopher may still require the original evidence of impartial and intelligent spectators. At this important crisis, any singular accident of nature would assume the appearance, and produce the effects, of a real prodigy. This glorious deliverance would be speedily improved and magnified by the pious act of the clergy of Jerusalem, and the active credulity of the Christian world; and, at the distance of twenty years, a Roman historian, careless of theological disputes, might adorn his work with the specious and splendid miracle.

The restoration of the Jewish temple was

---

74 I Kings, vii. 51. 2 Chronicles, viii. 15. Joseph. Antiquities, b. i, c. iv. p. 473, edit. Molitorci. In the land and cities of Judah and Benjamin many Jewish families were dispersed. The temple restored by a Christian. Le Chatel (see note) to hold together.

75 2 Kings, iv. 39. 42. Le Musée has neglected to translate.

76 On the last and present eminence of the Jews in Gregory Nazianzen.

77 Joseph. Antiquities, b. i, c. iv. p. 473, edit. Molitorci. In the land and cities of Judah and Benjamin many Jewish families were dispersed. The temple restored by a Christian. Le Chatel (see note) to hold together.

78 Joseph, Antiquities, b. ii. c. 23. The temple was restored by a Christian. Le Chatel (see note) to hold together.

79 Joseph, Antiquities, b. ii. c. 23. The temple was restored by a Christian. Le Chatel (see note) to hold together.
which rendered them respectable in the eyes of the world.

A just and severe censure has been inflicted on the law which prohibited the Christians from teaching the arts of grammar and rhetoric. The motives alleged by the emperors to justify this partial and oppressive measure, might command, during his life-time, the silence of slaves and the applause of flatterers. Julian abuses the ambiguous meaning of a word which might be indiscriminately applied to the language and the religion of the Greeks: he contemptuously observes, that the men who exalt the merit of implicit faith are unfit to claim or to enjoy the advantages of science; and he vainly contends, that if they refuse to adore the gods of Homer and Demosthenes, they ought to content themselves with expounding Luke and Matthew in the churches of the Galileans. In all the cities of the Roman world, the education of the youth was intrusted to masters of grammar and rhetoric, who were elected by the magistrates, maintained at the public expense, and distinguished by many lucrative and honourable privileges. The edict of Julian appears to have included the physicians, and professors of all the liberal arts; and the emperor, who reserved to himself the appointment of the candidates, was authorized by the laws to corrupt, or to punish, the religious constancy of the most learned of the Christians.

As soon as the resignation of the more distinguished teachers had established the unrivalled dominion of the Pagan sophists, Julian invited the rising generation to resort with freedom to the public schools, in a just confidence, that their tender minds would receive the impressions of literature and idolatry. If the greatest part of the Christian youth should be deterred by their own scruples, or by those of their parents, from accepting this dangerous mode of instruction, they must, at the same time, relinquish the benefits of a liberal education. Julian had reason to expect that, in the space of a few years, the church would relapse into its prævalent simplicity, and that the theologians, who possessed an adequate share of the learning and eloquence of the age, would be succeeded by a generation of blind and ignorant fanatics, incapable of defending the truth of their own principles, or of exposing the various follies of polytheism.

It was undoubtedly the wish and the design of Julian to deprive the Christians of the advantages of...

wealth, of knowledge, and of power; but the
injustice of excluding them from all offices of
trust and profit, seems to have been the result of
his general policy, rather than the immediate
caracter of any positive law. Superior
merit might deserve, and obtain, some extraor-
dinary exceptions; but the greater part of the
Christian officers were gradually removed from
their employments in the state, the army, and the
provinces. The hopes of future candidates were
extinguished by the declared partiality of a
prince, who maliciously reminded them, that it
was unwise for a Christian to use the sword, the
sister of justice, or of war; and who studiously
guarded the camp and the tribunals with the
enigmas of idolatry. The powers of government
were intrusted to the Pagans, who professed
an ardent zeal for the religion of their
ancestors; and as the choice of the emperor was
often directed by the rules of divination, the
favourites whom he preferred as the most agree-
able to the gods, did not always obtain the
approbation of mankind. Under the admini-
stration of their enemies, the Christians had
much to suffer, and more to apprehend. The
temper of Julian was averse to cruelty; and the
care of his reputation, which was exposed to the
eyes of the universe, restrained the philosophic
monarch from violating the laws of justice and
toleration, which he himself had so recently
established. But the provincial ministers of his
authority were placed in a less conspicuous
station. In the exercise of arbitrary power, they
consulted the wishes, rather than the commands,
of their sovereign, and ventured to exercise a
secret and various tyranny against the sects,
whom they were not permitted to confer the
honours of martyrdom. The emperor, who
dispersed, as long as possible, his knowledge of
the laws, was aware that he was exposed, in his
mature, to express his real sense of the conduct of his
officers, by gentle reproves and substantial
penalties.

The most effectual instrument of
oppression, with which they were
armed, was the law that obliged the
Christians to make full and ample satisfaction
for the temples which they had destroyed under
the preceding reign. The zeal of the triumphant
church had not always expected the sanction of
the public authority; and the bishops, who
were secure of impunity, had often marched at the
head of their congregations, to attack and
destroy the fortress of the prince of this
world. The consecrated lands, which had increased the
patrimony of the sovereign or of the clergy, were clearly defined, and easily restored. But
on these lands, and on the ruins of Pagan
superstition, the Christians had frequently erected
their own religious edifices: and as it was
necessary to remove the church before the temple
could be rebuilt, the justice and piety of the
emperor were applauded by one party, while the
other deplored and execrated his sacrilegious
violence. After the ground was cleared, the
restitution of those stately structures, which had
been levelled with the dust; and of the precious
ornaments, which had been converted to Christian
uses; swelled into a very large account of
remembrances and debts, The authors of the injury had neither the ability, nor the inclination
to discharge the accumulated demand; and the
impartial wisdom of a legislator would have been
disposed to balance the adverse claims and
complaints, by an equitable and temperate
arbitration. But the whole empire, and particularly
the East, was thrown into confusion by the rash
effects of Julian; and the Pagan magistrates,
influenced by zeal and revenge, abused the
rigorous privilege of the Roman law, which substi-
tutes, in the place of his inadequate property,
the person of the insolvent debtor. Under the
preceding reign, Mark, bishop of Arles, had
laboured in the conversion of his people with
arms more effectual than those of persuasion.
The magistrates required the full value of a temple which had been destroyed by his
intolerant zeal; but, as they were satisfied of his
poverty, they desired only to bend his inflexible
spirit to the promise of the slightest compensa-
tion. They apprehended the aged prelate, they
infuriately urged him, they tore his beard; and
his naked body, smeared with honey, was
suspended, in a net, between heaven and earth;
and exposed to the stings of insects and the rays of
a Syrian sun.

From this lofty station, Mark still persisted to glory in his crimes, and to insult the
impatience of his persecutors. He was at length rescued from their hands, and dis-
missed to enjoy the honour of his divine triumph.
The Arians celebrated the virtue of their pious
fellow; the Catholics, unambitiously, claimed
his alliance; and the Pagan, who might be
susceptible of shame or remorse, was deterred
from the repetition of such unavailing cruelty.
Julian spared his life; but if the bishop of
Arles had saved the infamy of Julian, posterity will condemn the ingratitude, instead of
praising the clemency, of the emperor.

At a distance of five miles from Antioch,
were enlarged by the munificence of succeeding emperors; and every generation added new ornaments to the splendour of the temple. 110

When Julian, on the day of the annual festival, hastened to adore the image of the Apollo of Daphne, his devotion was raised to the highest pitch of eagerness and impatience. His lively imagination anticipated the grateful pomp of victims, of libations, and of incense; a long procession of youths and virgins, clothed in white robes, the symbol of their innocence; and the tumultuous concourse of an immortal people. But the seat of Antioch was diverted, since the reign of Christianity, into a different channel. Instead of sacrifices of fat and blood sacrificed by the priests of a wealthy city to their tutelar deity, the emperor complains that he found only a single goose, provided at the expense of a priest, the sole and solitary inhabitant of this decayed temple. 111. The altar was deserted, the oracle had been reduced to silence, and the holy ground was profaned by the introduction of Christian and funeral rites. After Babylon 112 (a bishop of Antioch, who died in prison in the persecution of Decius) had rested near a century in his grave, his body, by the order of the Caesar Gallus, was transported into the midst of the grove of Daphne. A magnificent church was erected over his remains; a portion of the sacred land was turned for the maintenance of the clergy, and for the burial of the Christians of Antioch, who were ambitious of lying at the feet of their bishop; and the priests of Apollo retired, with their affrighted and ignominious votaries. As soon as another revolution seemed to restore the fortune of Paganism, the church of St. Babylas was demolished, and new buildings were added to the mouldering edifice which had been raised by the piety of the Syrian kings. But the first and most serious care of Julian was to deliver his oppressed deity from the odious presence of the dead and living Christians, who had so effectually suppressed the voice of fraud or enthusiasm. 113

The scene of infection was purified, according to the forms of purification of ancient rituals; the bodies were indiscriminately removed; and the ministers of the church were permitted to convey the remains of St. Babylas to their former habitation within the walls of Antioch. The modest behaviour which might have avenged the jealousy of an hostile government, was NEGLECTED on this occasion by

---

the zeal of the Christians. The lofty car, that transported the relics of Babylonia, was followed, and accompanied, and received, by an immemorial multitude; who chanted, with thundering acclamations, the Psalms of David the most expressive of their contempt for idols and idolaters. The return of the saint was a triumph; and the triumph was an insult on the religion of the emperor, who exalted his pride to dissemble his resentment. During the night which terminated this indistinct procession, the temple of Daphne was in flames; the statue of Apollo was consumed; and the walls of the citadel were left a naked, and awful monument of ruin. The Christians of Antioch asserted, with religious confidence, that the powerful intercession of St. Babylas had pointed the lightnings of heaven against the devoted roof; but as Julian was reduced to the alternative, of believing either a crime or a miracle, he chose, without hesitation, without evidence, but with some degree of probability, to impute the fire of Daphne to the revenge of the Galileans. Their offence, had it been sufficiently proved, might have justified the retaliation, which was immediately executed by the order of Julian, of shutting the doors, and confiscating the wealth, of the cathedral of Antioch. To discover the criminals who were guilty of the tumult, of the fire, or of secreting the riches of the church, several ecclesiastics were tortured; and a presbyter, of the name of Theodosot, was beheaded by the sentence of the count of the East. But this heavy act was blamed by the emperor, who lamented, with real or affected concern, that the imprudent zeal of his ministers would tarnish his reign with the disgrace of persecution.

The zeal of the ministers of Julian was instantly checked by the frown of their sovereign; but when the father of his country declares himself the leader of a faction, the licentious of popular fury cannot easily be restrained, nor consistently punished. Julian, in a public composition, applauds the devotion and loyalty of the holy cities of Syria, whose pious inhabitants had destroyed, at the first signal, the sepulchres of the Galileans; and faintly complains, that they had revenged the injuries of the gods with less moderation than he should have recommended.

This imperfect and reluctant confession may appear to confirm the ecclesiastical narratives; that in the cities of Gaza, Ascalon, Caesarea, Heliopolis, &c. the Pagans abused, without prudence or remorse, the moment of their prosperity. That the unhappy objects of their cruelty were released from torture only by death:

that as their mangled bodies were dragged through the streets, they were pierced (such was the universal rage) by the spits of cooks, and the distaffs of enraged women: and that the entrails of Christian priests and virgins, after they had been tasted by those bloody fanatics, were mixed with barley, and contemptuously thrown to the unclean animals of the city. Such scenes of religious madness exhibit the most contemptible and odious picture of human nature; but the massacre of Alexandria attracts still more attention, from the certainty of the fact, the rank of the victims, and the splendid of the capital of Egypt.

George, from his parents or his education, assumed the Cppladocian, was born at Epiphania in Cilicia, in a Fuller's shop. From this obscure and servile origin he raised himself by the talents of a poet: and the patriots, whom he amusingly flattered, procured for their worthless dependant a lucrative commission, or contract, to supply the army with bacon. His employment was mean; his revenue it infamous. He accumulated wealth by the basest arts of fraud and corruption; but his malignities were so notorious, that George was compelled to escape from the pursuit of justice. After this disgrace, in which he appears to have seen his fortune at the expense of his honour, he embraced, with real or affected zeal, the profession of Ariusism. From the love, or the ostentation of learning, he collected a valuable library of history, rhetoric, philosophy, and theology; and the choice of the prevailing faction promoted George of Cappadocia to the throne of Athanasius. The entrance of the new archbishop was that of a barbarian conqueror; and each moment of his reign was polluted by cruelty and avarice. The catholics of Alexandria and Egypt were abandoned to a tyrant, qualified, by nature and education, to exercise the office of persecution; but he was oppressed, with spiritual Arians in the civil and religious state of their extensive diocese. The prince of Egypt assumed the pomp and insolence of his lofty station; but he still betrayed the vices of his base and servile extraction. The merchants of Alexandria were impoverished by the unjust, and almost universal, monopoly, which he acquired, of nitre, salt, paper, funerals, &c.; and the spiritual father of a great people conspired to practise the vile and pernicious arts of an informer. The Alexandrians could never forget, nor forgive, the tax, which he suggested, on all the houses of the city; under an obsolete claim, that the royal founder had com
voiced to his successors, the Ptolemies and the Caesars, the perpetual property of the soil. The Paganus, who had been flustered with the hope of freedom and toleration, excited his devout avarice; and the rich temples of Alexandria were either pillaged or insulted by the haughty prelate, who exclaimed, in a loud and threatening tone, "How long will these sepulchers be permitted to stand?" Under the reign of Constantine, he was expelled by the fury, or rather by the justice, of the people; and it was not without a violent struggle, that the civil and military powers of the state could restore his authority, and gratify his revenge. The messenger who proclaimed at Alexandria the accession of Julian, announced the downfall of the archbishop. George, with two of his obsequious ministers, count Dioscorus, and Dractonius, master of the mint, were ignominiously dragged in chains to the city and pilloried. At the end of twenty-four days, the prison was forced open by the rage of a superstitious multitude, impatient of the tedious forms of judicial proceedings. The enemies of gods and men expired under their cruel insults; the lifeless bodies of the archbishop and his associates were carried in triumph through the streets on the back of a camel; and the inexcitability of the Athenians part 103 was exemplified in a shining example of evangelical patience. The remains of these guilty wretches were thrown into the sea; and the popular leaders of the tumult declared their resolution to disappoint the devotion of the Christians, and to intercept the future honours of these martyrs, who had been punished, like their predecessors, by the enemies of their religion. The fears of the Paganus were just, and their precautions ineffectual. The meritorious death of the archbishop obliterated the memory of his life. The rival of Athanasius was dear and sacred to the Arians, and the seeming co-operation of those sectaries introduced his worship into the bosom of the Catholic church. The odious stranger, disguising every circumstance of time and place, assumed the mask of a martyr, a saint, and a Christian hero; and the infamous George of Cappadocia has been transformed into the renowned St. George of England, the patron of arms, of chivalry, and of the Garter. About the same time that Julian was informed of the tumult of Alexandria, he received intelligence from Edessa, that the proud and wealthy faction of the Arians had insulted the weakness of the Valentines, and committed such disord...
But the knowledge of their sentiments, instead of persuading him to recall his decree, provoked him to extend to all Egypt the term of the exiles of Athanasius. The zeal of the multitude rendered Julian still more inexorable: he was alarmed by the danger of leaving, at the head of a tumultuous city, a daring and popular leader; and the language of his resumption discovers the opinion which he entertained of the courage and abilities of Athanasius. The execution of the sentence was still delayed, by the caution or negligence of Eclectus, prefect of Egypt, who was at length awakened from his lethargy by a severe reprimand. "Though you neglect," says Julian, "to write to me on any other subject, at least it is your duty to inform me of your conduct towards Athanasius, the enemy of the gods. My instructions have been long since communicated to you. I swear by the great Scruples, that unless, on the calends of December, Athanasius has departed from Alexandria, I will cause you to leave Egypt, the officers of your government shall pay a fine of an hundred pounds of gold. You know my temper; I am slow to condone, but I am still slower to forgive." This epistle was enforced by a short missive, written with the emperor's own hand. "The contempt that is shown for all the gods, fills me with grief and indignation. There is nothing that I should see, nothing that I should hear, with more pleasure, than the expulsion of Athanasius from all Egypt. The abominable wretch! Under my reign, the baptism of several Grecian ladies of the highest rank has been the effect of his persecutions." 195 The death of Athanasius was not expressly commanded; but the prefect of Egypt understood, that it was safer for him to exceed, than to neglect, the orders of an irritated master. The archbishop prudently retired to the monasteries of the desert, clad, with his usual dexterity, the asces of the enemy; and lived to triumph over the ashes of a prince, who, in words of formidable import, had declared his wish that the whole venom of the Galilæan school were contained in the single person of Athanasius. 196

I have endeavoured faithfully to represent the artful system by which John of the Julian proposed to obtain the effects, without incurring the guilt or reproach of persecution. But if the deadly spirit of fanaticism perverted the heart and understanding of a virtuous prince, it must, at the same time, be confessed, that the real sufferings of the Christians were inflamed and magnified by human passions and religious enthusiasm. The meekness and resignation which had distinguished the primitive disciples of the Gospel, was the object of the applaus, rather than of the imitation, of their successors. The Christians, who had now posse...
their indiscriminate clamours provoked the terrors of a sovereign, whom it was their duty to respect, and their interest to flatter. They still protested, that prayers and tears were their only weapons against the impious tyrant, whose hand they devoted to the justice of offended Heaven. But they instigated, with sullen resolution, that their submission was no longer the effect of weakness; and that, in the imperfect state of human virtue, the patience, which is founded on principle, may be exhausted by persecution. It is impossible to determine how far the zeal of Julian would have prevailed over his good sense and humanity; but, if we seriously reflect on the strength and spirit of the church, we shall be convinced, that, before the emperor could have extinguished the religion of Christ, he must have involved his country in the horrors of a civil war. 144

CHAP. XXIV.

Residence of Julian at Antioch.—His successful Expedition against the Persians.—Passage of the Tigris.—The Retreat and Death of Julian.—Election of Julian.—He invades the Roman Army by a disgraceful Treaty.

The philosophical notice which Julian comprised under the name of the Caesar, 15 is one of the most agreeable and instructive productions of ancient wit. 16 During the freedom and equality of the days of the Sartarials, Omnibus prepared a feast for the dyers of Olympia, who had adopted him as a worthy associate, and for the Roman princes, who had reigned over his martial people, and the vanquished nations of the earth. The immortals were placed in just order on their thrones of state, and the table of the Caesars was spread below the Moon, in the upper region of the air. The tyrants, who would have disgraced the society of gods and men, were thrown headlong, by the inextinguishable Nemesis, into the Tartaran abyss. The rest of the Caesars successively advanced to their seats; and, as they paused, the voice of Mercury proclaimed the will of Jupiter, that a celestial crown should be the re-
ward of superior merit. Julius Caesar, Augustus, Trajan, and Marcus Antoninus, were selected as the most illustrious candidates; the effeminate Constantius* was not excluded from this honourable competition, and the great Alexander was invited to dispute the prize of glory with the Roman heroes. Each of the candidates was allowed to display the merit of his own exploits; but, in the judgment of the gods, the modest silence of Marcus pleased more powerfully than the elaborate orations of his haughty rival. When the judges of this awful contest proceeded to examine the heart, and to scrutinize the springs of action, the superiority of the Imperial Scioe appeared still more decisive and conspicuous. Alexander and Caesar, Augustus, Trajan, and Constantine, acknowledged, with a blush, that fame, or power, or pleasure, had been the important object of their labours; but the gods themselves beheld, with reverence and love, a virtuous mortal, who had practised on the throne the lessons of philosophy; and who, in a state of human imperfection, had aspired to imitate the moral attributes of the Deity. The value of this agreeable composition (the Caesars of Julian) is enhanced by the rank of the author. A prince, who delineates, with freedom, the vices and virtues of his predecessors, subordinates, in every line, the censure or approbation of his own conduct.

In the cool moments of reflection, Julian preferred the useful and benevolent virtues of Antoninus; but his ambitious spirit was inflamed by the glory of Alexander; and he solicited, with equal ardour, the estimate of the wise, and the applause of the multitude. In the season of life, when the powers of the mind and body enjoy the most active vigour, the emperor, who was instructed by the experience, and animated by the success, of the German war, resolved to signalise his reign by some more splendid and memorable achievements. The ambassadors of the East, from the continent of India, and the isle of Ceylon, had respectfully solicited the Roman purple. The nations of the West esteemed and dreaded the personal virtues of Julian, both in peace and war. He despised the trophies of a Gothic victory, and was satisfied that the rapacious barbarians of the Danube would be restrained from any future violation of the faith of treaties by the terror of his name, and the additional fortifications with which he strengthened the Thracian and Ilyrian frontiers. The successor of Cyrus and Ariarathes was the only rival whom he deemed worthy of his arms; and he resolved, by the final conquest of Persia, to chastise the haughty nation which had so long resisted and insulted the majesty of Rome. As soon as the Persian monarch was informed that the throne of Constantius was filled by a prince of a very different character, he condescended to make some artful, or perhaps sincere, overtures, towards a negotiation of peace. But the pride of Sapor was astounded by the firmness of Julian; who sternly declared, that he would never consent to hold a peaceful conference among the flames and ruins of the cities of Mesopotamia; and who added, with a smile of contempt, that it was needless to treat by ambassadors, as he himself had determined to visit speedily the court of Persia. The impatience of the emperor urged the diligence of the military preparations. The generals were named; a formidable army was destined for this important service; and Julian, marching from Constantinople through the provinces of Asia Minor, arrived at Antioch about eight months after the death of his predecessor. His ardent desire to march into the heart of Persia, was checked by the indisputable duty of regulating the state of the empire; by his soul to revive the worship of the gods; and by the advice of his wisest friends, who represented the necessity of allowing the military interval of winter-quarters, to restore the strength and vigour of the legions of Gaul, and the discipline and spirit of the Eastern troops. Julian was persuaded to fix till the ensuing spring, his residence and camp at Antioch, among a people naturally disposed to deride the haute, and to censure the delays of their sovereign.

If Julian had flattered himself, that his personal connection with the capital of the East would be productive of mutual satisfaction to the prince and people, he made a very false estimate of his own character, and of the manners of Antioch. The warmth of the climate disposed the natives to the most intemperate enjoyment of tranquillity and opulence; and the lively luxuriance of the Greeks was blended with the hereditary softness of the Syrians. Fashion was the only law, pleasure the only pursuit, and the splendid dress and furniture was the only distinction of the citizens of Antioch. The arts of luxury were honoured; the serious and manly virtues were the subject of ridicule; and the contempt for female modesty and reverent age, announced the universal corruption of the capital of the East. The love of spectacles was the taste, or rather passion, of the Syrians: the most skilful
artists were prosecuted from the adjacent cities; a considerable share of the revenue was devoted to the public entertainments; and the magnificence of the games of the theatre and circus was considered as the happiness, and as the glory, of Antioch. The rustic manners of a prince who displayed such glory, and was insensible of such happiness, soon disgusted the delicacy of his subjects; and the effeminate Orientals could neither imitate, nor admire, the severe simplicity which Julian always maintained, and sometimes affected. The days of festivity, consecrated, by ancient custom, to the honour of the gods, were the only occasions in which Julian relaxed his philosophical severity; and those festivals were the only days in which the Syrians of Antioch could reject the allurements of pleasure. The majority of the people supported the glory of the Christian name, which had been first invented by their ancestors; they contended themselves with disobeying the moral precepts, but they were scrupulously attached to the speculative doctrines, of their religion. The church of Antioch was distracted by heresy and schism; but the Arians and the Arians, the followers of Melethus and those of Paulinus, were actuated by the same pious hatred of their common adversary.

The strongest prejudice was entertained against the character of an apostate, the enemy, and successor of a prince who had engaged the affections of a very numerous sect; and the removal of St. Babylas excited an implacable opposition to the person of Julian. His subjects complained, with superstitious indignation, that famine had pursued the emperor's steps from Constantinople to Antioch; and the discontent of a hungry people was aggravated by the injudicious attempt to relieve their distress. The scarcity of corn had affected the harvests of Syria; and the price of bread, in the markets of Antioch, had naturally risen in proportion to the scarcity of corn. But the fair and reasonable proportion was violated by the rapacious arts of monopoly. In this unequal contest, in which the produce of the land is claimed by one party, as his exclusive property; is used by another as a lucrative object of trade; and is required by a third for the daily and necessary support of life; all the profits of the intermediate agents are accumulated on the head of the defenceless consumers. The hardships of their situation were exaggerated and increased by their own impiety and anxiety; and the apprehensions of a scarcity gradually produced the appearances of a famine. When the luxurious citizens of Antioch complained of the high price of poultry and flesh, Julian publicly declared, that a frugality ought to be satisfied with a regular supply of wine, oil, and bread; but he acknowledged, that it was the duty of a sovereign to provide for the subsistence of his people. With this salutary view, the emperor ventured on a very dangerous and doubtful step, of fixing, by legal authority, the value of corn. He enacted, that, in a time of scarcity, it should be sold at a price which had seldom been known in the most plentiful years; and that his own example might strengthen his laws, he sent into the market four hundred and twenty-two thousand reals, or measures, which were drawn by his order from the granaries of Hierapolis, of Chalced, and every of Egypt. The consequence might have been foreseen, and was soon felt. The Imperial wheat was purchased by the rich merchants; the proprietors of land, at full of corn, withheld from the city the accustomed supply; and the small quantities that appeared in the market were secretly sold at an advanced and illegal price. Julian still continued to applaud his own policy, treated the complaints of the people as a vain and ungrateful murmurs; and convinced Antioch, that he had inherited the clemency, though not the character, of his brother. Galerius. The monstrosities of the municipal senate served only to exasperate his intractable mind. He was persuaded, perhaps with truth, that the senators of Antioch who possessed lands, or were concerned in trade, had themselves contributed to the calamities of their country; and he imposed the disrespectful boldness which they assumed, to the sense, not of public duty, but of private interest. The whole body, consisting of two hundred of the most noble and wealthy citizens, were sent, under a guard, from the palace to the prison; and though they were permitted, before the close of evening, to return to their respective houses, the emperor himself could not obtain the forgiveness which he had so easily granted. The same grievances were still the subject of the same complaints, which were indifferently circulated by the wit and levity of the Syrian Greeks. During the licentious days of the Saturnalia, the streets of the city resounded with insolent songs, which divided the laws, the religion, the personal conduct, and even the house, of the emperor; and the spirit of Antioch was manifested by the compliance of the magistrates, and the applause of the multitude. The discipline of the standards was too deeply affected by these popular insults; but the monarch, endowed with quick sensibility, and possessed of absolute power, revenged his passions the gratification of revenge. A tyrant might have prescribed, without distinction, the lives and fortunes of the citizens of
Antioch; and the warlike Syriacs must have patiently submitted to the lust, the rapacities, and the cruelty, of the faithful legions of Gaul. A milder sentence might have deprived the capital of the East of its honours and privileges; and the outward, perhaps the subjects, of Julian, would have applauded an act of justice, which asserted the dignity of the supreme magistrate of the republic. But instead of abusing, or exerting, the authority of the state, to revenge his personal injuries, Julian contented himself with an insufficient mode of retaliation, which it would be in the power of few princes to employ. He had been insulted by satires and libels; in his turn he composed, under the title of the *Enemy of the Bees*, an ironical confession of his own faults, and a severe satire on the licentious and effeminate manners of Antioch. This Imperial reply was publicly exposed before the gates of the palace; and the *Murovus* still remains a singular monument of the resentment, the wit, the humanity, and the indiscipline, of Julian. Though he affected to laugh, he could not forgive. His contempt was expressed, and his revenge might be gratified, by the nomination of a governor worthy only of such subjects; and the emperor, for ever renouncing the ungrateful city, proclaimed his resolution to pass the ensuing winter at Tarsus in Cilicia.

Yet Antioch possessed one citizen, whose genius and virtues might stifle, in the opinion of Julian, for the vice and folly of his country. The sophist Libanius was born in the capital of the East; he publicly professed the arts of rhetoric and declamation at Nice, Nicaea, Constantinople, Athens, and, during the remainder of his life, at Antioch. His school was incessantly frequented by the Greek youth; his disciples, who sometimes exceeded the number of eighty, celebrated their incomparable master; and the jealousy of his rivals, who persecuted him from one city to another, confirmed the favourable opinion which Libanius ostentatiously displayed of his superior merit. The preceptors of Julian had extorted a ruin but solemn assurance, that he would never attend the lectures of their adversary: the curiosity of the royal youth was checked and inflamed; he secretly procured the writings of this dangerous sophist, and gradually surpassed, in the perfect imitation of his style, the most laborious of his domestic pupils. When Julian ascended the throne, he declared his impatience to embrace and reward the Syrian sophist, who had preserved, in a degenerate age, the Grecian purity of taste, of manners, and of religion. The emperor's preparation was increased and justified by the discreet pride of his favourite. Instead of pressing, with the foremost of the crowd, into the palace of Constantinople, Libanius calmly expected his arrival at Antioch; withdrew from court on the first symptoms of coldness and indifference; required a formal invitation for each visit; and taught his sovereign an important lesson, that he might command the obedience of a subject, but that he must deserve the attachment of a friend. The sophist of every age, despising, or afflicting to despise, the accidental distinctions of birth and fortune, reserve their esteem for the superior qualities of the mind, with which they themselves are so plentifully endowed. Julian might disdain the acclamations of a venal court, who adored the Imperial purple; but he was deeply flattered by the praise, the admiration, the freedom, and the envy of an independent philosopher, who refused his favours, loved his person, celebrated his fame, and protected his memory. The voluminous writings of Libanius still exist; for the most part, they are the vain and idle compositions of an orator, who cultivated the science of words; the productions of a recluse student, whose mind, regardless of his cotemporaries, was incessantly fixed on the Trojan war, and the Athenian commonwealth. Yet the sophist of Antioch sometimes descended from this imaginary elevation; he entertained a various and elaborate correspondence; he praised the virtues of his own times; he boldly arraigned the abuses of public and private life; and he eloquently pleaded the cause of Antioch against the just remonstrance of Julian and Theodosius. It is the common calamity of old age, to lose whatever might have rendered it desirable; but Libanius experienced the peculiar幸运n of surviving the religion and the sciences, to which he had consecrated his genius. The friend of Julian was an indignant spectator of the triumph of Christianity; and his bigotry, which darkened the prospect of the visible world, did not inspire Libanius with any lively hopes of celestial glory and happiness.

The martial impatience of Julian urged him to take the field in the beginning of the spring; and he dismissed, with contempt and reproach, the senate of Antioch, who accompanied the emperor beyond the limits of their own territory.
to which he was resolved never to return. After a laborious march of two days, he halted on the third at Berenice, or Alepgo, where he had the mortification of finding a senate almost entirely Christian; who received with cold and formal demonstrations of respect, the eloquent sermon of the apostle of Paganism. The son of one of the most illustrious citizens of Berenice, who had embraced, either from interest or conscience, the religion of the emperor, was disburdened by his angry parent. The father and the son were invited to the imperial table. Julian, placing himself between them, attempted, without success, to combat the reason, and example of toleration; supported, with affected calmness, the indiscreet zeal of the aged Christian, who seemed to forget the sentiments of nature, and the duty of a subject; and at length turning towards the afflicted youth, said he, for my sake, it is incumbent on me to supply his place. The emperor was received in a manner much more agreeable to his wishes at Batane, a small town pleasantly seated in a grove of cypress, about twenty miles from the city of Hierapolis. The solemn rites of sacrifice were decently performed by the inhabitants of Batane, who seemed attached to the worship of their tutelary deities, Apollo and Jupiter; but the serious pietv of Julian was offended by the tumult of their applause; and he too clearly discerned, that the smoke which arose from the altar was the incense of flattery, rather than of devotion. The ancient and magnificent temple, which had suffered, for so many ages, the city of Hierapolis, no longer subsisted; and the consecrated wealth, which afforded a liberal maintenance to more than three hundred priests, might better its downfall. Yet Julian enjoyed the satisfaction of embracing a philosopher and a friend, whose religious firmness had withstood the pressing and repeated solicitations of Constansius and Gallus, as often as those princes lodged at his house, in their passage through Hierapolis. In the hurry of military preparation, and the careless confidence of a familiar correspondence, the zeal of Julian appeared to have been lively and uniform. He had now undertaken an important and difficult war; and the anxiety of the event rendered him still more attentive to observe and register the most striking passages, from which, according to the rules of divination, any knowledge of futurity could be derived. He informed Libanius of his progress as far as Hierapolis, by an elegant epistle, which displays the facility of his genius, and his tender friendship for the sophist of Antioch.

Hierapolis, situate almost on the banks of the Euphrates, had been appointed for the general rendezvous of the Roman troops, who immediately passed the great river on a bridge of boats, which was previously constructed. If the inclinations of Julian had been similar to those of his predecessor, he might have wasted the active and important season of the year in the circus of Samosata, or in the churches of Edessa. But as the warlike emperor, instead of Constansius, had chosen Alexander for his model, he advanced without delay to Carrhae, a very ancient city of Mesopotamia, at the distance of fourteen miles from Hierapolis. The temple of the Moon attracted the devotion of Julian; but the last of a few days was principally employed in completing the necessary preparations for the Persian war. The secret of the expedition had hitherto remained in his own breast; but as Carrhae is the point of separation of the two great roads, he could no longer conceal, whether it was his design to attack the dominions of Sapor on the side of the Tigris, or on that of the Euphrates. The emperor detached an army of thirty thousand men, under the command of his kinsman Procopius, and of Schachus, who had been duke of Egypt. They were ordered to direct their march towards Nisibis, and to secure the frontiers from the desultory incursions of the enemy, before they attempted the passage of the Tigris. Their subsequent operations were left to the discretion of the generals; but Julian expected, that after wasting with fire and sword the fertile districts of Media and Adiabene, they might arrive under the walls of Ctesiphon about the same time, that he himself, advancing with equal steps along the banks of the Euphrates, should besiege the capital of the Persian monarchy. The success of this well-concerted plan depended, in a great measure, on the powerful and ready assistance of the king of Armenia, who, without exposing the safety of his own dominions, might detach an army of four thousand horse, and twenty thousand foot, to the assistance of the Romans. But the feeble Armentum, king of Armenia, had degenerated still more shamefully than his father Chosroes, from the mighty virtues of the great Tiridates; and as the pusillanimous monarch was averse to any enterprise of danger and glory, he could disgrace his timid submission by the mere devotion of religion and gratitude. He expressed a pleasing attachment to the memory of Constansius, from whose hands he had received the holy marriage Obligations, the daughter of the pious Ablavius; and the alliance of a female, who had been educated

38 Tertullian of the king of Armenia.
39 Tertullian.
as the destined wife of the emperor Constantine, styled the dignity of a barbarian king; 30 Tiranus professed the Christian religion; he reigned over a nation of Christians; and he was restrained, by every principle of conscience and interest, from contributing to the victory, which would consummate the ruin of the church.

The alienated mind of Tiranus was exasperated by the indiscretion of Julian, who treated the king of Armenia as his slave, and as the enemy of the gods. The haughty and threatening style of the imperial mandates 40 awakened the secret indignation of a prince, who, in the humiliating state of dependence, 40 was still conscious of his royal descent from the Sasaeides, the lords of the East, and the rivals of the Roman power.

The military dispositions of Julian were skilfully contrived to deceive the eyes, and to divert the attention, of Seur. The legions appeared to direct their march towards Nisbus and the Tigris. On a sudden they wheeled to the right; traversed the level and naked plain of Carrhae; and reached, on the third day, the banks of the Euphrates, where the strong town of Nicephorus, or Callinicum, had been founded by the Macedonian kings. From hence the emperor pursued his march, above ninety miles, along the winding stream of the Euphrates, till at length, about one month after his departure from Antioch, he discovered the towers of Cireisium, the extreme limit of the Roman dominions. The army of Julian, the most numerous that any of the Caesars had ever led against Persia, consisted of sixty-five thousand effective and well-disciplined soldiers. The veteran bands of cavalry and infantry, of Romans and barbarians, had been selected from the different provinces; and a just preeminence of loyalty and valor was claimed by the hardy Gauls, who guarded the throne and person of their beloved prince. A formidable body of Scythian auxiliaries had been transported from another climate, and almost from another world, to invade a distant country, of whose name and situation they were ignorant. The love of rapine and war allured to the Imperial standard several tribes of Sassanids, or roving Arabs, whose service Julian had commanded, while he sternly refused the payment of the accustomed subsidies. The broad channel of the Euphrates 41 was crowded by a fleet of eleven hundred ships, destined to attend the motions, and to satisfy the wants, of the Roman army. The military strength of the fleet was composed of fifty armed galleys; and these were accompanied by an equal number of flat-bottomed boats, which might occasionally be connected into the form of temporary bridges. The rest of the ships, partly constructed of timber, and partly covered with raw hides, were laden with an almost inexhaustible supply of arms and munitions, of ammunitions and provisions. The vigilant humanity of Julian had embarked a very large magazine of vinegar and biscuit for the use of the soldiers, but he prohibited the indulgence of wine; and rigorously stopped a long string of superfluous canals that attempted to follow the rear of the army. This river Chabors falls into the Euphrates at Cireisium; 42 and as soon as the trumpet gave the signal of march, the Romans passed the little stream which separated two mighty and hostile empires. The custom of ancient discipline required a military ordination; and Julian embraced every opportunity of displaying his eloquence. He animated the impatient and attentive legions by the example of the inflexible courage and glorious triumphs of their ancestors. He excited their resentment by a lively picture of the insolence of the Persians; and he exhorted them to imitate his firm resolution, either to extirpate that pernicious nation, or to devote his life in the cause of the republic. The eloquence of Julian was enforced by a donation of one hundred and thirty pieces of silver to every soldier; and the bridge of the Chabors was instantly cut away, to convince the troops that they must place their hopes of safety in the success of their arms. Yet the prudence of the emperor induced him to secure a remote frontier, perpetually exposed to the inroads of the hostile Arabs. A detachment of four thousand men was left at Cireisium, which completed, in the number of ten thousand, the regular garrison of that important fortresses. 43

From the moment that the Romans entered the enemy's country, 44 his march over the desert of Mesopotamia.
That river. The city of Anthi or Antho, the actual residence of an Arabian emir, is composed of two long streets, which enclose, within a natural fortification, a small island in the midst, and two fruitful spots on either side, of the Euphrates. The satellite inhabitants of Antho showed a disposition to stop the march of a Roman emperor; till they were diverted from such fatal premeditation, by the mild exhortations of prince Hormazis, and the approaching terror of the fleet and army. They implor ed, and experienced, the clemency of Julian, who transplanted the people to an advantageous settlement, near Chaleia in Syria, and admitted Perseus, the governor, to an honourable rank in his service and friendship. But the impregnable fortress of Thalatha could scorn the menace of a siege; and the emperor was obliged to content himself with an insulting promise that, when he had subdued the interior provinces of Persia, Thalatha would no longer refuse to grant the triumph of the conqueror.

The inhabitants of the open towns, unable to resist, and unwilling to yield, fled with precipitation, and their houses, filled with spoil and provisions, were occupied by the soldiers of Julian, who massacred, without remorse, and without punishment, some defenceless women. During the search, the Surenian, or Persian general, and Matsh Redoassae, the renowned emir of the tribe of Gassan, 66 necessarily hurried round the army: every straggler was intercepted; every detachment was attacked; and the valiant Hormizides escaped with some difficulty from their bands. But the barbarians were finally repulsed; the country became every day less favourable to the operations of cavalry; and when the Romans arrived at Maecapata, they perceived the ruins of the wall, which had been constructed by the ancient kings of Assyria, to secure their dominion from the invasion of the Medes. These preliminaries of the expedition of Julian appear to have occupied about fifteen days; and we may compute near three hundred miles from the fortress of Ctesiphon to the wall of Maecapata. 

The fertile province of Assyria, a part which stretched beyond the Tigris, as far as the mountains of Media, extended about four hundred miles from the ancient wall of Maecapata, to the territory of Bassa, where the united streams of the Euphrates and Tigris discharge themselves into the Persian Gulf. The whole country might have claimed the peculiar name of Mesopotamia; as the two rivers, which are never more distant than fifty, ap-
proach, between Bagdad and Babylon, within twenty-five miles of each other. A multitude of artificial canals, dug without much labour in a soft and yielding soil, connected the rivers, and intersected the plain of Assyria. The uses of these artificial canals were various and important. They served to discharge the superabundant waters from one river into the other, at the season of their respective inundations. Subdividing themselves into smaller and smaller branches, they refreshed the dry lands, and supplied the deficiency of rain. They facilitated the intercourse of peace and commerce; and, as the dams could be swiftly broken down, they armed the despair of the Assyrians with the means of opposing a sudden deluge to the progress of an invading army. To the soil and climate of Assyria, nature had denied some of her choicest gifts, the vine, the olive, and the fig-tree; but the food which supports the life of man, and particularly wheat and barley, were produced with inestimable fertility; and the husbandman, who committed his seed to the earth, was frequently rewarded with an increase of two, or even of three hundred. The face of the country was interspersed with groves of innumerable palm-trees: and the diligent natives celebrated, either in verse or prose, the three hundred and sixty uses to which the trunk, the branches, the leaves, the juice, and the fruit, were skilfully applied. Several manufactures, especially those of leather and linen, employed the industry of a numerous people, and afforded valuable materials for foreign trade; which appears, however, to have been conducted by the hands of strangers. Babylon had been converted into a royal park; but near the ruins of the ancient capital, now city, had successively arisen, and the populousness of the country was displayed in the multitude of towns and villages, which were built of bricks, dried in the sun, and strongly cemented with bitumen; the natural and peculiar production of the Babylonian soil. While the successors of Cyrus reigned over Asia, the province of Assyria alone maintained, during a third part of the year, the luxurious plenty of the table and household of the Great King. Four considerable villages were assigned for the subsistence of his Indian dogs; eight hundred stallions, and sixteen thousand mares, were constantly kept, at the expense of the country, for the royal stables; and as the daily tribute, which was paid to the satrap, amounted to one English bushel of silver, we may compute the annual revenue of Assyria at more than twelve thousand pounds, pounds sterling. The fields of Assyria were devoted by Julian to the calamities of war; and the philosopher retaliated as a guiltless people the acts of rapine and cruelty which had been committed by their haughty masters in the Roman provinces. The trembling Assyrians summoned the rivers to their assistance; and completed, with their own hands, the ruin of their country. The road were replete with impracticable stones; a flood of waters was poured into the camp; and, during several days, the troops of Julian were obliged to contend with the most discouraging hardships. But every obstacle was surmounted by the perseverence of the legions, who were only coerced to toil as well as to danger, and who felt themselves animated by the spirit of their leader. The damage was gradually repaired; the waters were restored to their proper channel; whole groves of palm-trees were cut down, and placed along the broken parts of the road; and the army passed over the broad and deeper canals, on bridges of floating rafts, which were supported by the help of bladders. Two cities of Assyria presumed to resist the arms of a Roman emperor; and they both paid the severe penalty of their rashness. At the distance of fifty miles from the royal residence of Cassipour, Perisibor, or Anbar, held the second rank in the province: a city, large, populous, and well fortified, surrounded with a double wall, almost encompassed by a branch of the Euphrates, and defended by the valour of a numerous garrison. The exhortations of Hormidas were repulsed with contempt; and the ears of the Persian prince were wounded by a just reproach, that, unassisted by his royal birth, he conducted an army of strangers against his king and country. The Assyrians maintained their loyalty by a skilful, as well as vigorous, defence: till the lucky stroke of aattering-men, having opened a large breach, by shattering one of the angles of the wall, they hastily retired into the fortifications of the interior citadel. The soldiers of Julian rushed impetuously into the town, and, after the full gratification of every military appetite, Perisibor was reduced to ashes; and the engines which assailed the citadel were planted on the ruins of the smoking houses. The contest was continued by an incessant and mutual discharge of missile weapons; and the superiority which the Romans might derive from the mechanical powers of their ballista and catapult was counterbalanced by the advantage of the ground on the side of the besieged. But as soon as an Hejdetis had been constructed, which could engage on equal terms with the loftiest ramparts, the tremendous aspect of a moving torrent, that would leave no hope of resistance or of mercy, terrified the defenders of the citadel into an humble submission; and the place was surrendered only two days after Julian first appeared under the walls of Perisibor. Two thousand five hundred persons, of both sexes, the feeble remnant of a flourishing people, were permitted to retire: the splendid magazines of corn, of arms, and of splendid furniture, were partly distributed among the troops, and partly reserved for the public service; the richest stores were destroyed by fire, as thrown

55 The term Hyspor is used, as a boundary, of country, and a

56 Plants yielding to the Persian names of plants of the

57 The Hyspor may be considered as the highest mountainous

58 The influence of the Persian names of the

59 The influence of the Persian names of the

60 The influence of the Persian names of the
into the stream of the Euphrates; and the fate of Amida was revenge by the total ruin of Persia.

The city, or rather fortress, of.

Maogamalacha, which was defended by sixteen large towers, a deep ditch, and two strong and solid walls of brick and bitumen, appears to have been constructed at the distance of two miles, as the safeguard of the capital of Persia. The emperor, apprehensive of leaving such an important fortress in his rear, immediately formed the siege of Maogamalacha; and the Roman army was distributed, for that purpose, into three divisions. Victor, at the head of the cavalry, and of a detachment of heavy-armed foot, was ordered to clear the country, as far as the banks of the Tigris, and the suburbs of Ciasphon. The conduct of the attack was assumed by Julian himself, who seemed to place his whole dependence in the military engines which he erected against the walls; while he secretly contrived a more efficacious method of introducing his troops into the heart of the city.

Under the direction of Nevitta and Dapaliphan, the trenches were opened at a considerable distance, and gradually prolonged as far as the edge of the ditch. The ditch was speedily filled with earth; and, by the incessant labour of the troops, a mine was carried under the foundations of the walls, and sustained, at sufficient intervals, by props of timber. Three chosen cohorts, advancing in a single file, silently explored the dark and dangerous passage; till their intrepid leader whispered back the intelligence, that he was ready to issue from his concealment into the streets of the hostile city. Julian checked their ardour, that he might insure their success; and immediately diverted the attention of the garrison, by the tumult and clamour of a general assault. The Persians, who, from their walls, contemptuously beheld the progress of an impotent attack, celebrated, with songs of triumph, the glory of Sapor; and ventured to assure the emperor, that he might ascend the starry mansion of Ormus, before he could hope to take the impregnable city of Maogamalacha. The city was already taken. History has recorded the name of a private soldier, the first who ascended from the mine into a deserted tower. This passage was widened by his companions, who pressed forwards with impetuous valour. Fifteen hundred enemies were already in the midst of the city. The astonished garrison abandoned the walls; and their only hope of safety; the garrison were instantly burst open; and the revenge of the soldiers, unless it were suspended by just or avarice, was satiated an unstirringly massacred. The governor, who had yielded on a promise of mercy, was burnt alive, a few days afterwards, on a charge of having uttered some disrespectful words against the honour of prince Hormidas. The fortifications were raised to the ground; and not a vestige was left, that the city of Maogamalacha had ever existed. The neighbourhood of the capital of Persia was adorned with three stately palaces, laboriously enriched with every production that could gratify the luxury and pride of an Eastern monarch. The pleasant situation of the gardens along the banks of the Tigris was improved, according to the Persian taste, by the symmetry of flowers, fountains, and shady walks; and spacious parks were enclosed for the reception of the bears, lions, and wild boars, which were maintained at a considerable expense for the pleasure of the royal chase. The park-walls were broke down, the savage game was abandoned to the sports of the soldiers; and the palaces of Sapor were reduced to ashes, by the command of the Roman emperor. Julian, on this occasion, showed himself ignorant, or careless, of the laws of civility, which the prudence and refinement of polished ages have established between hostile princes. Yet these wanton ravages need not excite in our breasts any vehement emotions of pity or resentment. A simple, naked state, finished by the hand of a Persian artist, is of more genuine value than all those rude and costly monuments of barbaric labour; and, if we are more deeply affected by the ruin of a palace, than by the conflagration of a cottage, our humanity must have formed a very erroneous estimate of the inerities of human life. 84

Julian was an object of terror and hatred to the Persians; and the painters of that nation represented the invader of their country under the emblem of a furious lion, who snarled from his mouth a consuming fire. 85 To his friends and soldiers the philosophic hero appeared in a more amiable light; and his virtues were more commonly displayed, than in the last, and most active period of his life. He practised, without effort, and almost without merit, the habitual qualities of temperance and sobriety. According to the dictates of that artificial wisdom, which assumes an absolute dominion over the mind and body, he sternly refused himself the indulgence of the most natural appetites. 86 In the warm climate of Aesyrus, which solicited a luxurious people to the gratification of every sensual desire, a youthful conqueror preserved his chastity pure and inviolate; nor was Julian ever tempted, even by a motive of curiosity, to visit his female captives of exquisite beauty, who, instead of resisting his power, would have disputed with each other the honour of his embraces. With the same firmness that he resisted the allurements of love, he sustained the hardships of war. When the Romans, surrounded through the flat and flooded country, their sovereign, on foot, at the head of his legions, shared their fatigues, and, with the troops, in arduous battles; and in his name the monuments of valor and the scenes of greatness, and almost all the triumphs, which were the foundations of his magnificent victories, were emblazoned with the trophies of his victories. Thus, in the pursuit of his preposterous career, he ruined his whole empire, and sacrificed the glory of his predecessor. This first campaign of Julian was as disastrous to the Persians as the latter was to the Romans.
and animated their diligence. In every useful labour, the hand of Julian was prompt and strenuous; and the Imperial purple was worn empty and dirty, as the coarse garment of the meanest soldier. The two sieges allowed him some remarkable opportunities of signalizing his personal valour, which, in the improved state of the military art, can seldom be exercised by a prudent general. The emperor stood before the citadel of Persepolis, ensnared by his extreme danger, and encouraged his troops to burst open the gates of iron, till he was almost overwhelmed under a cloud of missile weapons, and huge stones, that were directed against his person.

As he examined the exterior fortifications of Maogamalck, two Persians, devoting themselves for their country, suddenly rushed upon him with drawn stilettos: the emperor dexterously received their blows on his uplifted shield; and, with a steady and well-aimed thrust, laid one of his adversaries dead at his feet.

The esteem of a prince, who possesses the virtues which he approves, is the noblest recompense of a deserving subject; and the authority which Julian derived from his personal merit, enabled him to revive and enforce the rigour of ancient discipline. He punished with death, or ignominy, the misbehaviour of three troops of horse, who, in a skirmish with the Surenas, had lost their honour, and one of their standards; and he distinguished with ambition crowns the valor of the foremost soldiers, who had ascended into the city of Maogamalck. After the siege of Persepolis, the admiral of the emperor was received by the insubordinate mixture of the army, who loudly complained that their services were rewarded by a trifling donation of one hundred pieces of silver. His just indignation was expressed in the grave and manly language of a Roman: "Ribles are the object of your desires; those riches are in the hands of the Persians; and the spoils of this fruitful country are proposed as the price of your valour and discipline. Believe me," added Julian, "the Roman republic, which formerly possessed such immense treasures, is now reduced to want and wretchedness; since our princes have been persuaded, by weak and interested ministers, to purchase with gold the tranquillity of the barbarians. The revenue is exhausted; the cities are ruined; the provinces are diseased. For myself, the sole inhabitant that I have received from my royal ancestors is a soul incapable of fear; and as long as I am convinced that every real advantage is seated in the mind, I shall not blush to acknowledge an honourable poverty, which in the days of ancient virtue, was considered as the glory of Philicles. That glory, and that virtue, may be your own, if you will listen to the voice of Heaven and of your leader. But if you will rashly persist, if you are determined to renew the shameful and mischievous examples of old seditions, proceed.”

The successful valour of Julian had triumphed over all the obstacles that opposed his march to the gates of Ctesiphon. But the reduction, or even the siege, of the capital of Persia, was still at a distance; nor can the military conduct of the emperor be clearly apprised without a knowledge of the country, which was the theatre of his bold and skilful operations. Twenty miles to the south of Bagdad, and on the eastern bank of the Tigris, the curiosity of travellers has observed some ruins of the palace of Ctesiphon, which, in the time of Julian, was a great and populous city. The name and glory of the adjacent Seleucia were for ever extinguished; and the only remaining quarter of that Greek colony had resumed, with the Assyrian language and manners, the primitive appellation of Coche. Coche was situated on the western side of the Tigris; but it was naturally considered as a suburb of Ctesiphon, with which we may suppose it to have been connected by a permanent bridge of boats. The united parts contributed to form the common epithet of Al Mālā, one city, which the Orientals have bestowed on the winter residence of the Sassanides; and the whole circumference of the Persian capital was strongly fortified by the waters of the river, by lofty walls, and by impassable moat. Near the ruins of Seleucia, the camp of Julian was fixed, and secured, by a ditch and rampart, against the allures of the numerous and enterprising garrison of Coche.

In this fruitful and pleasant country, the Romans were plentifully supplied with water and corn; and several forts, which might have embarrassed the motions of the army, submitted,
after some resistance, to the efforts of their valour. The fleet passed from the Empires into an artificial derivation of that river, which forms a copious and navigable stream into the Tigris, at a small distance below the great city. If they had followed this royal canal, which bore the name of Nahar-Malchis, the intermediate situation of Coche would have separated the fleet and army of Julian; and the rash attempt of steering against the current of the Tigris, and forcing their way through the midst of a hostile capital, must have been attended with the total destruction of the Roman navy. The prudence of the emperor forewarned the danger, and provided the remedy. As he had minutely studied the operations of Trajan in the same country, he soon recollected, that his warlike predecessor had dug a new and navigable canal, which, leaving Coche on the right bank, conveyed the waters of the Nahar-Malchis into the river Tigris, at some distance above the cities. From the information of the peasants, Julian ascertained the vestiges of this ancient work, which were almost obliterated by design or accident. By the indefatigable labour of the soldiers, a broad and deep channel was specially prepared for the reception of the Empires. A strong dyke was constructed, to intercept the ordinary current of the Nahar-Malchis; a flood of waters rushed impetuously into their new bed; and the Roman fleet, steering their triumphant course into the Tigris, divided the ruin and ineffectual barriers which the Persians of Ctesiphon had erected to oppose their passage.

As it became necessary to transport the Roman army over the Tigris, another admirer presented itself, of less cost, but of more danger, than the preceding expedition. The stream was broad and rapid; the ascent steep and difficult; and the intrenchments, which had been formed on the ridge of the opposite bank, were lined with a numerous army of heavy cuirassiers, dauntless archers, and huge elephants; who (according to the extravagant hyperbole of Lactantius) could trample, with the same ease, a field of corn, or a legion of Romans. In the pressure of such an enemy, the construction of a bridge was impracticable; and the intrepid prince, who instantly seized the only possible expedient, conceived his design, till the moment of execution, from the knowledge of the barbarians, of his army, troops, and even of his generals themselves. Under the sanguine presence of examining the state of the magazines, fourteen vessels were gradually unlashed, and a select detachment, apparently destined for some secret expedition, was ordered to stand to their arms on the first signal. Julian disguised the silent anxiety of his own mind with smiles of confidence and joy; and assumed the hostile nations with the spectacle of military games, which he insensibly

celebrated under the walls of Coche. The day was consecrated to pleasure; but, as soon as the hour of supper was past, the emperor summoned the generals to his tent; and acquitted them, that he had fixed that night for the passage of the Tigris. They stood in silent and respectful astonishment; but, when the venerable Julian assumed the privilege of his age and experience, the rest of the chiefs supported with freedom the weight of his prudent remonstrances. Julian contended himself with observing, that conquest and safety depended on the attempt; that, instead of diminishing, the number of their enemies would be increased, by successive reinforcements; and that a longer delay would neither contract the breadth of the stream, nor level the height of the bank. The signal was instantly given, and obeyed: the most impatient of the legionaries leaped into five vessels that lay nearest to the bank; and as they piled their cars with intrepid diligence, they were lost, after a few moments, in the darkness of the night. A flame arose on the opposite side; and Julian, who too clearly understood that his foremost vessels, in attempting to land, had been fired by the enemy, dexterously converted their extreme danger into a prelude of victory. Our victorious admirer, he eagerly exclaimed, are already masters of the bank; see—they make the appointed signal; let us hasten to emulate and resist their courage. The united and rapid motion of a great fleet broke the violence of the current, and they reached the eastern shore of the Tigris with sufficient speed to extinguish the flames, and rescue their adventurous companions. The difficulties of a steep and lofty ascent were increased by the weight of armament, and the darkness of the night. A shower of stones, darts, and fire, was incessantly discharged on the heads of the assailants; who, after an arduous struggle, climbed the bank, and stood victorious upon the rampart. As soon as they possessed a more equal field, Julian, who, with his light infantry, last led the attack, darted through the ranks a skilful and experienced eye: his towers subsisted, according to the precepts of Homer, were distributed in the front and rear; and all the trumpets of the imperial army sounded to battle. The Romans, after sending up a military shout, advanced in stagemen steps to the advancing ranks of martial music; lashed their formidable javelins; and rushed forwards with drawn swords, to deprive the barbarians, by a closer assault, of the advantage of their missile weapons. The whole engagement lasted above twelve hours; till the gradual retreat of the Persians was changed into a disorderly flight, of which the shamed example was given by the principal leader, and the Surenian himself. They were pursued to the gates of Ctesiphon; and the conquerors might have entered the dismayed city, if their general, Victor, and some men from several vessels would have been sufficient...
The siege of Ctesiphon, he rejected, with obstinacy and disdain, the most flattering offers of a negotiation of peace. Sapor, who had been so long accustomed to the tardy ostentation of Constantius, was surprised by the intrepid diligence of his successor. As far as the confines of India and Scythia, the satraps of the distant provinces were ordered to assemble their troops, and to march, without delay, to the assistance of their monarch. But their preparations were dilatory, their motions slow; and before Sapor could lead an army into the field, he received the melancholy intelligence of the devastation of Assyria, the ruin of his palaces, and the slaughter of his bravest troops, who defended the passage of the Tigris. The pride of royalty was humbled in the dust; he took his seat on the ground; and the disorder of his hair expressed the grief and anxiety of his mind. Perhaps he would not have refused to purchase, with one half of his kingdom, the safety of the monarch; and he would have gladly subscribed himself, in a treaty of peace, the faithful and dependent ally of the Roman conqueror. Under the pretence of private business, a minister of rank and confidence was secretly despatched to embrace the knees of Hormidas, and to request, in the language of a supplicant, that he might be introduced into the presence of the emperor. The Sasanian prince, whether he listened to the voice of pride or humanity, whether he consulted the sentiments of his birth, or the duties of his situation, was equally inclined to promote a salutary measure, which would terminate the calamities of Persia, and secure the triumph of Rome. He was astonished by the byzantine firmness of a heap, who remembered, most unfortunately for himself and for his country, that Alexander had uniformly rejected the propositions of Darius. But as Julian was sensible, that the hope of a safe and honourable peace might cool the ardour of his troops; he earnestly requested, that Hormidas should privately dismiss the minister of Sapor, and conceal this dangerous temptation from the knowledge of the camp.

The honour, as well as interest, of Julian, forbade him to consume his time under the impregnable walls of Ctesiphon; and as often as he defied the barbarians, who defended the city, to meet him on the open plain, they prudently replied, that if he intended to exercise his valour, he might seek the army of the Great King. He felt the insult, and he accepted the advice. Instead of confining his servile march to the banks of the Euphrates and Tigris, he resolved to imitate the adventurous spirit of Alexander, and boldly to advance him the inland provinces, till his forces his rival to

---

78 Mount of Chloeon (Hist. Rom. I. i. c. 13.) says, of the Syraxis, and the Medes, though the latter are described as a people of the Thracian race, and the former as a people of the Medes, there is some confusion. The Syraxis were perhaps the Getae or Getar, who appear in the Antiquities of the Romans, under the name of the Getes, and perhaps the Jews and Hellenists, who often did not differ in sentiment. The siege of Ctesiphon, he rejected, with obstinacy and disdain, the most flattering offers of a negotiation of peace. Sapor, who had been so long accustomed to the tardy ostentation of Constantius, was surprised by the intrepid diligence of his successor. As far as the confines of India and Scythia, the satraps of the distant provinces were ordered to assemble their troops, and to march, without delay, to the assistance of their monarch. But their preparations were dilatory, their motions slow; and before Sapor could lead an army into the field, he received the melancholy intelligence of the devastation of Assyria, the ruin of his palaces, and the slaughter of his bravest troops, who defended the passage of the Tigris. The pride of royalty was humbled in the dust; he took his seat on the ground; and the disorder of his hair expressed the grief and anxiety of his mind. Perhaps he would not have refused to purchase, with one half of his kingdom, the safety of the monarch; and he would have gladly subscribed himself, in a treaty of peace, the faithful and dependent ally of the Roman conqueror. Under the pretence of private business, a minister of rank and confidence was secretly despatched to embrace the knees of Hormidas, and to request, in the language of a supplicant, that he might be introduced into the presence of the emperor. The Sasanian prince, whether he listened to the voice of pride or humanity, whether he consulted the sentiments of his birth, or the duties of his situation, was equally inclined to promote a salutary measure, which would terminate the calamities of Persia, and secure the triumph of Rome. He was astonished by the byzantine firmness of a heap, who remembered, most unfortunately for himself and for his country, that Alexander had uniformly rejected the propositions of Darius. But as Julian was sensible, that the hope of a safe and honourable peace might cool the ardour of his troops; he earnestly requested, that Hormidas should privately dismiss the minister of Sapor, and conceal this dangerous temptation from the knowledge of the camp.

The honour, as well as interest, of Julian, forbade him to consume his time under the impregnable walls of Ctesiphon; and as often as he defied the barbarians, who defended the city, to meet him on the open plain, they prudently replied, that if he intended to exercise his valour, he might seek the army of the Great King. He felt the insult, and he accepted the advice. Instead of confining his servile march to the banks of the Euphrates and Tigris, he resolved to imitate the adventurous spirit of Alexander, and boldly to advance him the inland provinces, till his forces
contend with him, perhaps in the plains of Arbelia, for the empire of Asia. The magnanimity of Julian was applauded and betrayed, by the arts of a noble Persian, who, in the cause of his country, had generously submitted to act a part full of danger, of falsehood, and of shame. With a train of faithful followers, he deserted to the Imperial camp; exposed, in a specious tale, the injuries which he had sustained; exaggerated the cruelty of Sapor, the discontent of the people, and the weakness of the monarchy; and confidently offered himself as the hostage and guide of the Roman march. The most rational grounds of suspicion were urged, with not effect, by the wisdom and experience of Hannibals; and the cautious Julian, receiving the traitor into his bosom, was persuaded to issue an hunted order, which, in the opinion of mankind, appeared to arrange his predecessor, and to endanger his safety. He destroyed, in a single battle, the whole army, which had been transported above five hundred miles, at so great an expense of gold, of treasure, and of blood. Twelve, or, at the least, twenty-two, small vessels were saved, to accompany, on earthen, the march of the army, and to form occasional bridges for the passage of the rivers. A supply of twenty days' provisions was reserved for the use of the soldiers; and the rest of the magazines, with a fleet of eleven hundred vessels, which rode at anchor in the Tigris, were abandoned to the flames, by the absolute command of the emperor. The Christian bishops, Gregory and Augustin, insult the madness of the Apostate, who executed, with his own hands, the sentence of divine justice. Their authority, of less weight, perhaps, in a military question, is confirmed by the cool judgment of an experienced soldier, who was himself spectator of the conflagration, and who could not disapprove the reluctant instruments of the troops. Yet there are not wanting some specious, and perhaps solid, reasons, which might justify the resolution of Julian. The navigation of the Euphrates never ascended above Babylon, nor that of the Tigris above Opis. The distance of the inhabitants city from the Roman camp was not very considerable; and Julian must soon have reaped the vain and impracticable attempt of forcing upwards a great fleet against the stream of a rapid river, which in several places was embarrassed by natural or artificial obstacles. The power of sails and oars was insufficient; it became necessary to tow the ships against the current of the river; the strength of twenty thousand soldiers was exhausted in this toilsome and servile labour; and if the Romans continued to march along the banks of the Tigris, they could only expect to return home without achieving any enterprise worthy of the genius or fortune of their leader. If, on the contrary, it was advisable to advance into the inland country, the destruction of the fleet and magazines was the only measure which could save that valuable prize from the hands of the numerous and active troops which might suddenly be pressed from the gates of Ctesiphon. Had the arms of Julian been victorious, we should now admire the conduct, as well as the courage, of a hero, who, by depriving his soldiers of the hope of a retreat, left them only the alternative of death or conquest.

The cumbersome train of artillery, and locomotives, and wagons, which retarded the operations of an army, were in a great measure unknown in the camps of the Romans. Yet, in every age, the subsistence of sixty thousand men must have been one of the most important cares of a prudent general; and that subsistence could only be drawn from his own or from the enemy's country. Had it been possible for Julian to maintain a bridge of communication on the Tigris, and to preserve the conquered places of Assyria, a desolated province could not afford any large or regular supplies, in a season of the year when the lands were covered by the inundation of the Euphrates, and the raw and unwholesome air was darkened with swarms of immeasurable insects. The appearance of the hostile country was far more inviting. The extensive region that lies between the river Tigris and the mountains of Media, was filled with villages and towns; and the fertile soil, for the most part, was in a very improved state of cultivation. Julian might expect, that a conquering, who possessed the two forcible instruments of passion and pride, would easily procure a plentiful subsistence from the fears or avarices of the natives. But, on the approach of the Romans, this rich and smiling prospect was instantly blasted. Whenever they moved, the inhabitants deserted the open villages, and took shelter in the fortified towns; the cattle were driven away; the grass and ripe corn were consumed with fire; and, as soon as the flames had subsided which interrupted the march of Julian, he beheld the melancholy face of a smoking and naked desert. This desperate but effectual method of defence can only be executed by the enthusiasm of a people who prefer their submission to their property; or by the vigour of an arbitrament government, which consults the public safety without submitting to its incitements the liberty of choice. On the present
occasion, the zeal and obedience of the Persians acceded to the commands of Sapor; and the emperor was soon reduced to the scanty stock of provisions, which continually wasted in his hands. Before they were entirely consumed, he might still have reached the warlike and unwarlike cities of Ecbatana, or Susa, by the effort of a rapid and well-directed march; but he was deprived of this last resource by his ignorance of the roads, and by the perjury of his guides. The Romans wandered several days in the country to the southward of Bagdad: the Persian deserter, who had so artfully led them into the snare, escaped from their resentment; and his followers, as soon as they were put to the torture, confessed the secret of the conspiracy. The victorious conquests of Hyrcania and India, which had so long amused, now tormented, the mind of Julian. Consoled that his own imprudence was the cause of the public distress, he anxiously balanced the hopes of safety or success, without obtaining a satisfactory answer, either from gods or men. At length, as the only practicable measure, he embraced the resolution of directing his steps towards the banks of the Tigris, with the design of saving the army by a hasty march to the confines of Corduene; a fertile and friendly province, which acknowledged the sovereignty of Rome. The desponding troops obeyed the signal of the retreat, only seventy days after they had passed the Claudienses, with the sanguine expectation of submitting the empire to Persia.

As long as the Romans seemed to advance into the country, their march was observed and insulted from a distance, by several bodies of Persian cavalry; who, showing themselves, sometimes in lesser, sometimes in closer, order, faintly skirmished with the advancing guards. These detachments were, however, supported by a thorough force; and the heads of the columns were no sooner pointed towards the Tigris than a cloud of dust arose on the plain. The Romans, who now aspired only to the permission of a safe and speedy retreat, endeavored to persuade themselves, that this formidable appearance was occasioned by a troop of wild asses, or perhaps by the approach of some friendly Arabs. They halted, pitched their tents, fortified their camp, passed the whole night in continual alarms; and discovered, at the dawn of day, that they were surrounded by an army of Persians. This army, which might be considered only as the van of the barbarians, was soon followed by the main body of animals, archers, and elephants, commanded by Mennas, a general of rank and reputation. He was accompanied by two of the king's sons, and many of the principal satraps; and fame and expectation exaggerated the strength of the remaining powers, which slowly advanced under the conduct of Sapor himself. As the Romans continued their march, their long array, which was forced to bend or divide, according to the variety of the ground, afforded frequent and favourable opportunities to their vigilant enemies. The Persians repeatedly charged with fury; they were repeatedly repulsed with firmness; and the action at Marona, which almost deserved the name of a battle, was marked by a considerable loss of satraps and elephants, perhaps of equal value in the eyes of their monarch. These splendid advantages were not obtained without an adequate slaughter on the side of the Romans; several officers of distinction were either killed or wounded; and the emperor himself, who, on all occasions of danger, inspired and guided the valor of his troops, was obliged to expose his person, and exert his abilities. The weight of offensive and defensive arms, which still constituted the strength and safety of the Romans, disabled them from making any long or effectual pursuit; and as the horsemen of the East were trained to dart their javelins, and shoot their arrows, at full speed, and in every possible direction, the cavalry of Persia was never more formidable than in the moment of a rapid and disorderly flight. But the most certain and irreparable loss of the Romans was that of time. The hardy veterans, accustomed to the cold climate of Gaul and Germany, faint under the sultry heat of an Assyrian summer; their vigour was exhausted by the incessant repetition of march and combat; and the progress of the army was suspended by the prevalence of a slow and dangerous retreat, in the presence of an active enemy. Every day, every hour, as the supply diminished, the value and price of subsistence increased in the Roman camp. Julian, who always contented himself with such food as a hungry soldier would have disdainfully distributed, for the use of the troops, the provisions of the Imperial household, and whatever could be spared from the smaller-horses of the tribunes and generals. But this frugal relief served only to aggravate the sense of the public distress; and the Romans began to entertain the most gloomy apprehensions that, before they could reach the frontiers of the empire, they should all perish, either by famine, or by the sword of the barbarians.

While Julian struggled with the almost insuperable difficulties of his situation, the silent hours of the night were still devoted to study and contemplation. Whenever he closed his eyes in short and interrupted slumber, his mind was agitated with painful anxiety; nor can it be thought surprising, that the Genius of the empire should once more appear before him, covering, with a funeral veil, his head, and his horn of abundance, and

[Footnotes]
39 Titus Livius,區4, 9, 10. In Hdbm, Eleo
erius, Liv. 403. 41 1. 42 1. 43 1. 44 1. 45 1. 46 1. 47 1. 48 1. 49 1. 50 1. 51 1.
slowly retiring from the imperial tent. The monarch started from his couch, and stepping forth to refresh his wasted spirits with the coolness of the midnight air, he beheld a fiery meteor, which shot athwart the sky, and suddenly vanished. Julian was convinced that he had seen the menacing countenance of the god of war; the council which he summoned, of Twene Healthcote, unanimously pronounced he should abstain from action; but, on this occasion, necessity and reason were more prevalent than superstition; and the trumpets sounded at the break of day. The army marched through a busy country; and the hills had been secretly occupied by the Persians. Julian led the van, with the skill and attention of a consummate general; he was alarmed by the intelligence that his rear was suddenly attacked. The heat of the weather had tainted him to lay aside his cuirass; but he reached a shield from one of the attendant guards, and hastened, with a sufficient reinforcement, to the relief of the rearguard. A similar danger recalled the intact prides to the defense of the front; and, as he galloped between the columns, the centre of the left was attacked, and almost overpowered by a furious charge of the Persian cavalry and elephants. This huge body was soon defeated, by the well-timed evolution of the light infantry, who aimed their weapons, with dexterity and skill, against the backs of the horsemen, and the legs of the elephants. The barbarians fled; and Julian, who was foremost in every danger, animated the pursuit with his voice and gestures. His trembling guards, scattered and dispersed by the disorderly throng of friends and enemies, reminded their fearless sovereign that he was without armor; and conjured him to decline the fall of the impending ruin. As they exclaimed, a cloud of darts and arrows was discharged from the flying squadrons; and a javelin, after raining the skin of his arm, transversed the ribs, and fixed in the inferior part of the liver. Julian attempted to draw the deadly weapon from his side; but his fingers were cut by the sharpness of the steel, and he fell senseless from his horse. His guards flew to his relief; and the wounded emperor was gently raised from the ground, and conveyed out of the tumult of the battle into an adjacent tent. The report of the melancholy event passed from rank to rank; but the grief of the Romans inspired them with invincible valor, and the desire of revenge. The bloody and fratricidal conflict was maintained by the two armies, till they were separated by the total darkness of the night. The Persians derived some honor from the advantage which they obtained against the left wing, where Anastasius, master of the office, was slain; and the prefect Sallust very narrowly escaped. But the event of the day was adverse to the barbarians. They abandoned the field; their two generals, Meraneus and Narsacidas, fifty nobles or warriors, and a multitude of their bravest soldiers; and the success of the Romans, if Julian had survived, might have been improved into a decisive and useful victory.

The first words that Julian uttered, after his recovery from the fainting fit into which he had been thrown by loss of blood, were expressive of his martial spirit. He called for his horse and arms, and was impatient to rush into the battle. His remaining strength was exhausted by the painful effort; and the surgeons, who examined his wound, discovered the symptoms of approaching death. He employed the awful moments of the firm temper of a hero and a sage; the philosophers who had accompanied him in this fatal expedition, compared the last of Julian with the passion of Socrates; and the spectators, whom duty, or friendship, or curiosity, had assembled round his couch, listened with respectful grief to the farewell words of their dying emperor. — Friends and fellow soldiers, the solemn period of my duties is now arrived, and I discharge, with the cheerfulness of a ready debtor, the demands of nature. I have learned from philosophy, how much the soul is more excellent than the body; and that the separation of the nobler sustenance should be the subject of joy, rather than of affliction. I have learned from religion, that an early death has often been the reward of piety; and I accept, as a favour of the gods, the mortal stroke that secures me from the danger of disgracing a character, which has hitherto been supported by virtue and fortitude. I die without remorse, as I have lived without guilt. I am pleased to reflect on the innocence of my private life; and I can affirm, with confidence, that the supreme authority, that exaction of the Divine Power, has been preserved in my hands pure and immaculate. Detesting the corrupt and destructive manners of despotism, I have considered the happiness of the people as the end of government. Submitting my actions to the laws of prudence, of justice, and of moderation, I have trusted the event to the care of Providence. Peace was the object of my counsels, as long as peace was consistent with the public welfare; but when the imperious voice of my country summoned me to arms, I exposed my person to the dangers of war, with the clear fore-knowledge (which I had acquired from the art of
the difficulty of the choice, the jealousy of power, the fear of ingratitude, and the natural presumption of health of youth, and of prosperity. His unusual death left the empire without a master, and without an heir, in a state of perplexity and danger, which, in the space of four years, had never been experienced, since the election of Diocletian. In a government which had almost forgotten the distinction of pure and noble blood, the superiority of birth was of little moment; the claims of official rank were accidental and precarious; and the candidates, who might aspire to ascend the vacant throne, could be supported only by the consciousness of personal merit, or by the hopes of popular favour. But the situation of a finished army, encompassed on all sides by an host of barbarians, short-circuited the moments of grief and deliberation. In this scene of horror and distress, the body of the deceased prince, according to his own directions, was decently embalmed; and, at the dawn of day, the generals convened a military senate, at which the commanders of the legions, and the officers, both of cavalry and infantry, were invited to assent. Three or four hours of the night had not passed away without some secret cabals; and when the election of an emperor was proposed, the spirit of faction began to agitate the assembly. Victor and Arbinthus collected the remains of the court of Constantius; the friends of Julian attached themselves to the Gallic chiefs, Dagonilinus and Novilla; and the most fatal consequences might be apprehended from the discord of two factions, so opposite in their character and interest, in their maxims of government, and perhaps in their religious principles. The superior virtues of Gallienus could alone reconcile their divisions, and unite their suffrages; and the venerable prefect would immediately have been declared the successor of Julian, if he himself, with sincerer and modest firmness, had not alleged his age and infirmities, so unequal to the weight of the diadem. The generals, who were surprised and perplexed by his refusal, showed some disposition to adopt the solitary advice of an inferior officer, 100 that they should act as they would have acted in the absence of the emperor; that they should exert their abilities to extricate the army from the present distress; and, if they were fortunate enough to reach the confines of Mesopotamia, they should proceed with united and deliberate counsels in the election of a lawful sovereign. While they debated, a few voices saluted Jovian, who was no more than first 101 of the domestic, with the names of Emperor and Augustus. The tumultuary acclamation was instantly repeated by the guards who surrounded the tent, and passed, in a few minutes, to the extremities of the line. The new prince, animated with his own fortune, was hastily invested

Election of
Emperors

A.D. 363.

The triumph of Christianity, and the calamities of the empire, may, in some measure, be ascribed to Julian himself, who had neglected to secure the future execution of his designs, by the timely and judicious nomination of an associate and successor. But the royal race of Constantius Chlorus was reduced to his own person; and if he entertained any serious thoughts of investing with the purple the most worthy among the Romans, he was diverted from his resolution by

34. See the elegy of the death of Julian (given by Asinarius, 1010), and the judgment of Julianus, who states with learnt
with the Imperial ornaments, and received an oath of fidelity from the generals, whose favour and protection he so lately solicited. The strongest recommendation of Jovian was the merit of his father, count Varranian, who enjoyed, in honourable retirement, the fruit of his long services. In the obscure freedom of a private station, the son indulged his taste for wine and women; yet he supported, with credit, the character of a Christian and a soldier. Without being conspicuous for any of the ambitious qualifications which excite the admiration and envy of mankind, the comely person of Jovian, his cheerful temper, and familiar wit, had gained the affection of his fellow-soldiers; and the generals of both parties acquiesced in a popular election, which had not been conducted by the arts of their enemies. The pride of this unexpected elevation was moderated by the just apprehension, that the same day might terminate the life and reign of the new emperor. The pressing voice of necessity was obeyed without delay; and the first order issued by Jovian, a few hours after his predecessor had expired, was to procure a march, which could alone extirpate the Romans from their actual distress.

The solemnity of an enemy is most sincerely expressed by his fears; and the degree of fear may be accurately measured by the joy with which he celebrates his deliverance. The welcome news of the death of Julian, which a deserter revealed to the camp of Sapor, inspired the desponding monarch with a sudden confidence of victory. He immediately detached the royal cavalry, perhaps the ten thousand Immortals, to second and support the pursuit; and discharged the whole weight of his united forces on the rearguard of the Romans. The rear-guard was thrown into disorder; the renounced legions, which derived their titles from Diocletian, and his warlike colleague, were brave and trampled down by the elephants; and three tribunes lost their lives in attempting to stop the flight of their soldiers. The battle was at length restored by the persevering valour of the Romans; the Persians were repulsed with a great slaughter of men and elephants; and the army, after marching and fighting a long summer's day, arrived, in the evening, at Samaria, on the banks of the Tigris, about one hundred miles above Ctesiphon. On the morning day, the barbarians, instead of harassing the march, attacked the camp of Jovian; which had been seated in a deep and sequestered valley. From the hills, the archers of Persia insulted and annoyed the wearied legionaries; and a body of cavalry, which had penetrated with desperate courage through the preternatural gate, was cut in pieces, after a doubtful conflict, near the Imperial tent. In the succeeding night, the camp of Caracalla was protected by the lofty dykes of the river; and the Roman army, though incessantly exposed to the vexatious pursuit of the Sassanians, pitched their tents near the city of Durm, four days after the death of Julian. The Tigris was still on its bed; their hopes and provisions were almost consumed; and the impatient soldiers, who had fondly persuaded themselves that the frontiers of the enemy were not far distant, requested their new sovereign, that they might be permitted to harrow the passage of the river. With the assistance of his wisest soldiers, Jovian endeavoured to check their rashness; by representing, that if they possessed sufficient skill and vigour to stem the torrent of a deep and rapid stream, they would only deliver themselves naked and defenceless to the barbarians, who had occupied the opposite banks. Yielding at length to their clamorous importunities, he consented, with reluctance, that five hundred Gauls and Germans, accustomed from their infancy to the waters of the Rhine and Danube, should attempt the bold adventure, which might serve either as an encouragement, or as a warning, for the rest of the army. In the absence of the night, they swam the Tigris, surprised an unguarded post of the enemy, and displayed at the dawn of day the signal of their resolution and success. The success of this trial disposed the emperor to listen to the promises of his architects, who proposed to construct a floating bridge of the inflated skins of sheep, oxen, and goats, covered with a floor of earth and fresh grass. Two important days were spent in the intellectual labour; and the Romans, who already endured the miseries of famine, cast a look of despair on the Tigris, and upon the barbarians, whose numbers and obstinacy increased with the distress of the Imperial army.

In this hopeless situation, the fainting spirits of the Romans were revived by the sound of peace. The transient presumption of Sapor had vanished; he was observed, with serious concern, that, in the repetition of infamous combats, he had lost his most faithful and intrepid nobles, his bravest troops, and the greatest part of his train of elephants; and the experienced monarch feared to provoke the resistance of despair, the viscerates of fortune, and the unexhausted powers of the Roman empire, which might soon advance to relieve, or to revenge, the successor of Julian. The Surenas himself, accompanied by another

† Alexander had denounced the eminent abilities of Sapor, Coste, Rome, vol. ii. p. 117. He says that the Sassanians had gained the advantage of an unexpected route; and the emperor, before the battle of Ctesiphon, had been overthrown, exchanged the camp for a siege, and was afterwards engaged by a defeated army, and had to retire to Antioch. At the same time, the Roman emperor was besieged by the Persians under Cyrus and his archers, if at all they were the besieged, where, by the reception of Romans near Sapor, the legionaries became engaged by a defeated army, and had to retire to Antioch.
his ambition, he might have been secure, says Libanius, of not meeting with a refusal. If he had fixed, as the boundary of Persia, the Orontes, the Cydnus, the Sangarius, or even the Thracian Bosporus, lesser men would not have been wanting in the court of Jovian to convince the timid monarch, that his remaining provinces would still afford the most ample gratifications of power and luxury. Without adopting in its full force this malicious insinuation, we must acknowledge, that the conclusion of so ignominious a treaty was facilitated by the private enmity of Jovian. The obscure domestic exalted to the throne by fortune, rather than by merit, was impatient to escape from the hands of the Persians; that he might prevent the designs of Procopius, who commanded the army of Mesopotamia, and establish his doubtful reign over the provinces which were still ignorant of the fiery and tumultuous choice of the camp beyond the Tigris. In the neighbourhood of the same river, at no very considerable distance from the fatal station of Dura, the ten thousand Greeks, without generals, or guides, or provisions, were abandoned, above twelve hundred miles from their native country, to the resentment of a victorious monarch. The difference of their conduct and success depended much more on their character than on their situation. Instead of tamely resigning themselves to the secret delibera
tions and private views of a single person, the united councils of the Greeks were inspired by the generous enthusiasm of a popular assem
bly; where the mind of each citizen is filled with the love of glory, the pride of freedom, and the contempt of death. Conscious of their superior
ty over the barbarians in arms and discipline, they disdained to yield, they refused to capitulate; every obstacle was surrounded by their patience, courage, and military skill; and the memorable retreat of the ten thousand exposed and insulted the weakness of the Persian monarchy. As the price of his disgraceful con
cessions, the emperor might perhaps have stipulated that the camp of the hungry Romans should be plentifully supplied, and that they should be permitted to pass the Tigris on the bridge which was constructed by the hands of the Persians. But, if Jovian presumed to solicit those equitable terms, they were sternly refused by the haughty tyrant of the East, whose clemency had pardoned the invaders of his country. The Saracens sometimes interrupted the struggles of the march; but the generals and troops of Sapor respected the cessation of arms; and Jovian was suffered to explore the most convenient place for the passage of his army.

515 Seein Buqis, c. 21. 516 La Historia has a very different version of these events, which is detailed in the text. 517 Seein Buqis, c. 21. 518 The Tigris was the boundary of the Persian Empire, according to the treaty of 380, and was still considered as such. 519 Seein Buqis, c. 21. 520 The Tigris was the boundary of the Persian Empire, according to the treaty of 380, and was still considered as such. 521 Seein Buqis, c. 21. 522 The Tigris was the boundary of the Persian Empire, according to the treaty of 380, and was still considered as such. 523 Seein Buqis, c. 21. 524 The Tigris was the boundary of the Persian Empire, according to the treaty of 380, and was still considered as such. 525 Seein Buqis, c. 21. 526 The Tigris was the boundary of the Persian Empire, according to the treaty of 380, and was still considered as such. 527 Seein Buqis, c. 21. 528 The Tigris was the boundary of the Persian Empire, according to the treaty of 380, and was still considered as such.
of the river. The small vessels, which had been saved from the conflagration of the fleet, performed constant coastal service. They first conveyed the emperor and his favourites; and were used to transport, in many successive voyages, a great part of the army. But, as every man was anxious for his personal safety, and apprehensive of being left on the hostile shore, the soldiers, who were too important to wait the slow returns of the boats, boldly ventured themselves on light bundles, or inflated skins; and, drawing after them their horses, attempted, with various success, to swim across the river. Many of these daring adventurers were swallowed by the waves; many others, who were carried along by the violence of the stream, fell an easy prey to the avatars or cruelties of the wild Arabs; and the loss which the army sustained in the passage of the Tigris, was not inferior to the carnage of a day of battle. As soon as the Romans had landed on the western bank, they were delivered from the hostile pursuit of the barbarians; but, in a laborious march of two hundred miles over the plains of Mesopotamia, they endured the last extremities of thirst and hunger. They were obliged to traverse a sandy desert, which, in the extent of seventy miles, did not afford a single blade of sweet grass, or a single spring of fresh water; and the rest of the insatiable waste was neutralised by the footsteps either of friends or enemies. Whenever a small measure of flour could be discovered in the camp, twenty pounds' weight were greedily purchased with ten pieces of gold; the beasts of burden were slaughtered and devoured; and the desert was strewn with the arms and baggage of the Roman soldiers, whose tattered garments and woollen coverings displayed their past sufferings, and actual misery. A small convey of provisions advanced to meet the army as far as the castle of Ur; and the supply was the more grateful, since it declared the fidelity of Sebastian and Procopius. At Thalapata, the emperor most graciously received the generals of Mesopotamia; and the remains of a once flourishing army at length repose themselves under the shade of the palms of Nisibis. The messengers of Julian had already proclaimed, in the language of battle, his election, his treaty, and his return; and the new prince had taken the most effectual measures to secure the allegiance of the armies and provinces of Europe; by placing the military command in the hands of these officers, who, from motives of interest, of inclination, would firmly support the cause of their benefactor.

The friends of Julian had confidently an-
nounced the success of his expedition.

They entertained a fund persuasion, that the temples of the gods would be enriched with the spoils of the East; that Persia would be reduced to the humble state of a tributary province, governed by the laws and magistrates of Rome; that the barbarians would adopt the dress, and manners, and language, of their conquerors; and that the youth of Ecbatana and Susa would study the art of rhetoric under Greek masters. The progress of the arms of Julian interrupted his communication with the empire; and, from the moment that he passed the Tigris, his afflicte subjects were ignorant of the fate and fortunes of their prince. Their contemplation of fancied triumphs was disturbed by the medially rumour of his death; and they persisted to doubt, after they could no longer deny, the truth of that fatal event. The messengers of Jovian premeditated the specious tale of a prudent and necessary peace; the voice of fame, louder and more sincere, revealed the disgrace of the emperor, and the conditions of the ignominious treaty. The minds of the people were filled with astonishment and grief, with indignation and terror, when they were informed, that the unworthy successor of Julian relinquished the five provinces, which had been acquired by the victory of Galerius; and that he shamefully surrendered to the barbarians the important city of Nisibis, the finest bulwark of the provinces of the East. The deep and dangerous question, how far the public faith should be observed, when it becomes incompatible with the public safety, was freely agitated in popular conversation; and some hopes were entertained, that the emperor would redeem his pusillanimous behaviour by a splendid act of patriotic policy. The inflexible spirit of the Roman senate had always disdained the unequal conditions which were extorted from the distress of her captive armies; and, if it were necessary to satisfy the national honour, by delivering the guilty general into the hands of the barbarians, the greatest part of the subjects of Jovian would have cheerfully acquiesced in the precedent of ancient times.

But the emperor, wheresoever might be the limits of his constitutional authority, was the absolute master of the laws and arms of the state; and the same motives which had forced him to subscribe, now pressed him to execute, the treaty of peace. He was impatient to secure an empire at the expense of a few provinces; and the respectable names of religion and honour concealed the personal fears and the amo-
tion of Jovian. Notwithstanding the dutiful solicitations of the inhabitants, decency, as well as prudence, forbade the emperor to lodge in the palace of Nishib; but, the next morning after his arrival, Blasius, the ambassador of Persia, entered the place, displayed to the civilized standard of the Great King, and proclaimed, in his name, the cruel alternative of exile or servitude. The principal citizens of Nishib, who, till that fatal moment, had confided in the protection of their sovereigns, turned themselves to his feet. They conjured him not to hold them, or, at least, not to deliver, a filthy colony to the rage of a barbarian tyrant, exasperated by the three successive defeats which he had experienced under the walls of Nishib. They still procured arms and courage to repel the invaders of their country; they requested only the permission of using them in their own defence; and, as soon as they had asserted their independence, they should cultivate the favour of being again admitted into the rank of his subjects. Their arguments, their eloquence, their tears, were ineffectual. Jovian alleged, with some confusion, the sanctity of oaths; and, as the reluctance with which he accepted the present of a crown of gold, convinced the citizens of their hopeless condition, the advocate Sylvanus was provoked to exclaim, "O emperor! may you thus be crowned by all the cities of your dominions!" Jovian, who, in a few weeks had assumed the habits of a prince, was dismissed with freedom, and offended with truth; and as he reasonably supposed, that the discontent of the people might incline them to submit to the Persian government, he published an edict, under pain of death; that they should leave the city within the term of three days. Arameans has delineated in lively colours the scene of universal despair, which he seems to have viewed with an eye of compassion. The martial youth deserted, with ingenuous grief, the walls which they had so gloriously defended: the disconsolate mourners dropped a last tear over the tomb of a son or husband, which must soon be profaned by the rude hand of a barbarian master; and the aged citizen kissed the threshold, and clung to the doors, of the house, where he had passed the cheerful and carefree hours of infancy. The highways were crowded with a trembling multitude: the distinctions of rank, and sex, and age, were lost in the general calamity. Every one strove to bear away some fragment from the wreck of his fortunes; and as they could not command the immediate service of an adequate number of horses or wagons, they were obliged to leave behind them the greatest part of their valuable effects.

118 At Nishib he performed a most act. A force officer, his name, a good friend of his, set on fire the palace, which he had been in the temple, burned him, and caused death, without any fault of his, or evidence of any crime. 119 The laws and institutions Nishib. The emigrants were thus refused a safe and secure home, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 120 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 121 The situation Nishib. The emigrants were thus refused a safe and secure home, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 122 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 123 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 124 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 125 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 126 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 127 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 128 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 129 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 130 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 131 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 132 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 133 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 134 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 135 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 136 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 137 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 138 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 139 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 140 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 141 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 142 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 143 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 144 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 145 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 146 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 147 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery. 148 Firmly and firmly Jovian. He refused the protection of the emperor, and loaded with every servile drudgery.
the malice, or credulity, of their adversaries; who dally imputed, or confidedly asserted, that the governors of the church had instigated and directed the fanaticism of a domestic asman. 394 Above sixteen years after the death of Julian, the charge was solemnly and solemnly urged in a public oration, addressed by Libanius to the emperor Theodosius. His suspicions are unsupported by fact or argument; and we can only ascribe the general zeal of the sophist of Antioch, for the cold and neglected ashes of his friend, 152 to an ancient custom in the funerals, as well as in the triumphs, of the Romans, that the voice of praise should be corrected by that of satire and ridicule; and that, in the midst of the splendid pageants, which displayed the glory of the living or of the dead, their imperfections should not be concealed from the eyes of the world. 151 This custom was practised in the funeral of Julian. The comedians, who resented his contempt and aversion for the theatre, exhibited, with the applause of a Christian audience, the lively and exaggerated representation of the faults and follies of the deceased emperor. His various character and singular manners afforded an ample scope for pleasantry and ridicule. 157 In the exercise of his uncommon talents, he often descended below the majesty of his rank. Alexander was transformed into Diogenes; the philosopher was degraded into a priest. The purity of his virtue was nullified by excessive vanity; his superstitious quelled the peace, and endangered the safety, of a mighty empire; and his irregular alliances were less entitled to indulgence, as they appeared to be the laborious efforts of art, or even of affection. The remains of Julian were interred at Tarsus in Cilicia; 153 but his stately tomb, which arises in that city, on the banks of the cold and limpid Cydnus, 154 was dispassioned by the faithful friends who loved and revered the memory of that extraordinary man. The philosopher expressed a very reasonable wish, that the disciple of Plato might have reposed amidst the groves of the academy; 159 while the soldier exclaimed in bolder accents, that the ashes of Julian should have been mingled with those of Caesar, in the field of Mars, and among the ancient monuments of Roman virtue. 150 The history of princes does not very frequently renew the example of a similar competition.

152 Similarly, after the death of Julian, the sarcastic remark was applied to the emperor, that he was the Christian of the Roman world, and the Stoic of the Christian world, while the Christian world of that period venerated him as their emperor, and the Stoic world of that period venerated him as their philosopher.

153 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

154 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

155 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

156 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

157 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

158 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

159 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

160 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

161 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

162 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

163 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

164 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

165 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

166 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

167 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

168 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

169 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.

170 The oration was delivered by Libanius, who was the most celebrated orator of his time, and the most admired orator of the Christian era. His oration was printed in the Libanius edition of Julian, with an interesting preface, in which he described the oration, its occasion, and its importance.
what creed, or what synod, he would choose for the standard of orthodoxy; and the peace of the church immediately revived those eager disputes which had been suspended during the season of persecution. The episcopal leaders of the contending sects, convinced, from experience, how much their fate would depend on the earliest impressions that were made on the mind of an untutored soldier, hastened to the court of Edessa, or Antioch. The highways of the East were crowded with Hymenian, and Ariam, and Semi-Arian, and Eunomian bishops, who struggled to outstrip each other in the holy race: the apartments of the palace resounded with their clamours; and the ears of their prince were assailed, and perhaps astonished, by the singular mixture of metaphysical argument and passionate invective. 3 The moderation of Jovian, who recommended counsel and charity, and referred the disputants to the sentence of a future council, was interpreted as a sign of indifference: but his attachment to the Nicene creed was at length discovered and declared, by the reverence which he expressed for the reputed 4 virtuous grandee of the Assyrian. The intrepid veteran of the faith, at the age of seventy, had issued from his retreat on the first intelligence of the tyrant's death. The acclamation of the people seated him once more on the archbishop's throne; and he wisely accepted, or anticipated, the invitation of Jovian. The venerable figure of Athanasius, his calm courage, and instraining eloquence, sustained the reputation which he had already acquired in the courts of four successive princes. 5 As soon as he had gained the confidence, and secured the faith, of the Christian emperor, he returned in triumph to his diocese, and continued, with mature counsels and undiminished vigour, to direct, ten years longer, the ecclesiastical government of Alexandria, Egypt, and the Catholic church. Before his departure from Antioch, he assured Jovian that his orthodox devotion would be rewarded with a long and peaceful reign. Athanasius had reason to hope, that his influence would be allowed either the merit of a successful prediction, or the excuse of a grateful, though inexact, prayer. 6

The slightest force, when it is applied to assist and guide the natural descent of its object, operates with irresistible weight; and Jovian had the good fortune to embrace the religious opinions which were supported by the spirit of the people, and the zeal and numbers of the most powerful sect. 7 Under his reign, Christianity obtained an easy and lasting victory; and as soon as the smile of royal patronage was withdrawn, the genius of Paganism, which had been fondly raised and cherished by the arts of Julian, sunk irrecoverably in the dust. In many cities, the temples were burnt or deserted: the philosophers, who had abused their transient favours, were thought it prudent to shelve their boards, and disguise their profession; and the Christians rejoiced, that they were now in a condition to foresee, or to revenge, the injuries which they had suffered under the preceding reign. 8 The consternation of the Pagan world was dispelled by a wise and gracious edict of toleration; in which Jovian explicitly declared, that although he should severely punish the sacrilegious rites of magic, his subjects might exercise, with freedom and safety, the ceremonies of the ancient worship. 9 The memory of this law has been preserved by the creator Theomnista, who was deputed by the senate of Constantinople to express their loyal devotion for the new emperor. Theomnista expatiates on the eloquence of the Divine Nature, the facility of human error, the rights of conscience, and the independence of the mind; and, with some eloquence, inculcates the principles of philosophical toleration: whose aid Supercilium herself, in the hour of her distress, is not ashamed to implore. He justly observes, that, in the recent changes, both religions had been alternately disgraced by the seeming acquisition of worthless proselytes, of those votaries of the reigning purple, who could pass, without a session, and without a blush, from the church to the temple, and from the altar of Jupiter to the sacred table of the Christians. 10 In the space of seven months, the Roman troops, who were now returned to Antioch, had performed a march of fifteen hundred miles; in which they had endured all the hardships of war, of famine, and of climate. Notwithstanding their services, their fatigue, and the approach of winter, the timid and impatient Jovian allowed only, to the men and horses, a respite of six weeks. The emperor could not sustain the insolent and malicious railly of the people of Antioch. 11 He was impatient to possess the palace of Constantinople; and to prevent the ambition of some competitor, who might occupy the vacant allegiance of Europe. But he soon received the grateful intelligence, that his authority was acknowledged from the Thracian Bosporus to the Atlantic Ocean. By the first

---

3 Comenius, L. II. c. 27. and Philosoph. L. VII. c. 6. with the latter of Dionysius. See also Book of Eusebius, &c.
4 The word saintly Fathers means the Theologians and councillors identified with the Nicene Creed. The original word is the Theologoi, &c. See the LXX. John I. 27.
5 Gregory Nazianzen (Enc. vit. c. 3. p. 152.) attributes the establishment of the Nicene creed to Athanasius, and the Egyptian monks. (Stilobates, Mont. de Savo, ed. 1687, p. 15.)
6 La Roque says (De Jovio, tom. i. p. 193.) he translated the text of the Council of Florence into one of the original Syriac, and the Arabic language. The Arians are not satisfied with the authenticity of the De Jovio; but they piously desire for Jovian the prosperity promised by Athanasius himself.
7 The date of his death is disputed, with some difference. So some think it was 363, May 15, which suits the most convenient with Eusebius and Jerome. Others think it was 364, May 12. See the arguments of Venantius and Jerome from the Synod of Hiersus, tom. ii. p. 196. of Athanasius.
8 It is thus expressed by Eusebius, L. IV. c. 11. It is said by Theodoret, and several other historians, that the Nicene creed was most assented to by the Persians.
9 The Acts of the Eucharist were suppressed in the Nicene creed, (De Jovio, tom. i. p. 193.) at least, in that of the Nicene creed. The Arians continued the celebration of the Eucharist in the Persia, and the Antioch diocese. The Arianism of Jovian was the controversy for Athanasius, but he perished from the persecutions of his master.
10 The Acts of the Eucharist are suppressed in the ecclesiastical council, (De Jovio, tom. i. p. 193.) so that the Arians continued the celebration of the Eucharist in the Persia, and the Antioch diocese. The Arianism of Jovian was the controversy for Athanasius, but he perished from the persecutions of his master.
11 The intercourse with the Parthians was revived, as a consequence of the continuation of the Eucharist. The Thracian Bosporus may be assimilated to the Thracian Bosporus. The Thracian Bosporus is a source of trade, and a means of communication. The Persian Bosporus is a source of trade, and a means of communication. The Eusebius of Antioch, or Antioch, is a source of trade, and a means of communication.
the death of Jovian, his infant son had been placed in the cornice chair, adorned with the title of Nobilissimus, and the vain ensigns of the consulship. Unconcerned of his fortune, the royal youth, who, from his grandfather, assumed the name of Victorinus, was reminded only by the jealously of the government, that he was the son of an emperor. Sixteen years afterwards he was still alive, but he had already been deprived of an eye; and his afflicted mother expected, every hour, that the innocent victim would be torn from her arms, to appease, with his blood, the suspicions of the reigning prince.

After the death of Jovian, the throne of the Roman world remained ten days without a master. The ministers and generals still continued to meet in council; to exercise their respective functions; to maintain the public order; and peaceably to conduct the army to the city of Nice in Bithynia, which was chosen for the place of the election.

In a solemn assembly of the civil and military powers of the empire, the diadem was again unanimously offered to the prefect Sallust. He enjoyed the glory of a second refusal; and when the virtues of the father were alleged in favour of his son, the prefect, with the firmness of a disinterested patriot, declared to the electors that the fickle age of the one, and the inexperienced youth of the other, were equally insufficient of the laborious duties of government. Several candidates were proposed; and, after weighing the objections of character or situation, they were successively rejected; but, as soon as the name of Valentinian was pronounced, the merit of that officer united the suffrages of the whole assembly, and obtained the sincere approbation of Sallust himself. Valentinian 91 was the son of constant Gratian, a native of Cibalis in Pannonia, who, from an obscure condition, had raised himself; by matchless strength and dexterity, to the military commands of Africa and Britain; from which he retired with an ample fortune and auspicious integrity. The rank and services of Gratian contributed, however, to smooth the first steps of the promotion of his son; and afforded him an early opportunity of displaying those solid and useful qualifications, which raised his character above the ordinary level of his fellow-soldiers. The person of Valentinian was tall, graceful, and majestic. His amiable countenance, deeply marked with the impression of sense and spirit, in-

12 Comnenus, Anthologiae, 360, A., who calls the name of the Elagabalus. 237, who mentions a greater number of their names. 39, 40, and 41, of K.TE. 91 Comenius, p. 360. The emperor Maximianus gave a large sum of money to the widow of Jovian; and a great sum was subscribed by private individuals. 91 The body of Jovian was sent to Constantinople, to be interred with his predecessors, and the sad procession was met on the road by the wife, Clarita, the daughter of eminent Lucullus, who still wept the recent death of her father, and was hastening to dry her tears in the embraces of an Imperial husband. Her disappointment and grief were embittered by the anxiety of maternal tenderness. Six weeks before
and the purple, amidst the acclamations of the troops, who were disposed in martial order round the tribunal. But when he stretched forth his hand to address the armed multitude, a busy whisper was accidentally started in the ranks, and insensibly swelled into a loud and imperious clamour, that he should name, without delay, a colleague in the empire. The intrepid calmness of Valentinian obtained silence, and commanded respect; and he thus addressed the assembly:

"A few minutes since it was in your power, fellow-soldiers, to have left me in the obscurity of a private station. Judging, from the tender many of my past life, that I deserved to reign, you have placed me on the throne. It is now my duty to consult the safety and interest of the republic. The weight of the universe is undoubtedly too great for the hands of a feeble mortal. I am conscious of the limits of my abilities, and the uncertainty of my life; and far from declining, I am anxious to solicit the assistance of a worthy colleague. But, where discord may be fatal, the choice of a faithful friend requires mature and serious deliberation. That deliberation shall be my care. Let your conduct be dutiful and consistent. Retire to your quarters; refresh your minds and bodies; and expect the announcement of a sovereign on the accession of a new emperor.""}

The astonished troops, with a mixture of pride, satisfaction, and terror, confessed the voice of their master. Their angry clamours subsided into silent reverence; and Valentinian, encompassed with the eagles of the legions, and the various banners of the cavalry and infantry, was conducted, in warlike pomp, to the palace of Nice. As he was sensible, however, of the importance of preventing some rash declaration of the soldiers, he consulted the assembly of the chiefs: and their real sentiments were concisely expressed by the generous freedom of Dapilampus. "Most excellent prince," said that officer, "if you consider only your family, you have a brother; if you love the republic, look round for the most deserving of the Romans." The emperor, who suppressed his displeasure, without altering his intention, slowly proceeded from Nice to Nicomedia and Constantinople. In one of the suburbs of that capital, thirty days after his own elevation, he bestowed the title of Augustus on his brother Valens; and the boldest patriots were convinced, that their opposition, without being serviceable to their country, would be fatal to themselves, the declaration of whose will was received with silent submission. Valens was now in the thirty-sixth year of his age; but his abilities had never been exercised in any employment, military or civil; and his character had not inspired the
world with any sanguine expectations. He possessed, however, one quality, which recommended him to Valentinian, and preserved the domestic peace of the empire; a devout and grateful attachment to his benefactor, whose superiority of genius, as well as of authority, Valens humbly and cheerfully acknowledged in every action of his life.

Before Valentinian divided the provinces, he reformed the administration of the empire. All ranks of subjects, who had been injured or oppressed under the reign of Julian, were invited to support their public accusations. The silence of mankind attested the spotless integrity of the prefect Sallust; and his own pressing solicitations, that he might be permitted to retire from the business of the state, were rejected by Valentinian with the most honourable expressions of friendship and esteem. But among the favourites of the late emperor, there were many who had abused his credulity or superstition; and who could no longer hope to be protected either by favour or justice.

The greater part of the ministers of the palace, and the governors of the provinces, were removed from their respective stations; yet the eminent merit of some officers was distinguished from the obnoxious crowd; and, notwithstanding the opposite claims of zeal and resentment, the whole proceedings of this delicate enquiry appear to have been conducted with a reasonable share of wisdom and moderation.

The festivity of a new reign received a short and auspicious interruption from the sudden illness of the two princes; but as soon as their health was restored, they left Constantinople in the beginning of the spring. In the castle, or palace, of Mediana, only three miles from Naissus, they executed the solemn and final division of the Roman empire. Valentinian bestowed on his brother the rich province of the East, from the Lower Danube to the confines of Persia; whilst he reserved for his immediate government the warlike prefectures of Illyricum, Italy, and Gaul, from the extremity of Greece to the Caduanian vaunt; and from the canton of Caledonia to the foot of Mount Atlas. The provincial administration remained on its former basis; but a double supply of generals and magistrates was required for two courts, and two courts: the division was made with a just regard to their peculiar merit and situation; and seven master-generals were soon created, either of the cavalry or infantry. When this important business had been amicably transacted, Valentinian and Valens embraced for the last time of the West established his temporary residence at Milan; and the emperor of the East returned to Constantinople, to assume the dominion of fifty provinces, of whose language he was totally ignorant.

The tranquility of the East was soon disturbed by rebellion; and the throne of Valens was threatened by the daring attempts of a rival, whose affinity to the emperor Julian was his sole merit, and had been his only crime. Procopius had been hastily promoted from the obscure station of a tribune, and a notary, to the joint command of the army of Mesopotamia; the public opinion already named him as the successor of a prince who was detestable of natural heir; and a vain rumour was propagated by his friends, or his enemies, that Julian, before the altar of the Moon, at Carthaeus, had privately invested Procopius with the Imperial purple. He endeavoured, by his dutiful and submissive behaviour, to disarm the jealousy of Jovian; resigned, without a contest, his military command; and retired, with his wife and family, to cultivate the ample patrimony which he possessed in the province of Cappadocia. These useful and innocent occupations were interrupted by the appearance of an officer, with a band of soldiers, who, in the name of his new sovereign, Valentinian and Valens, was despatched to conduct the unfortunate Procopius either to a perpetual prison, or an ignominious death. His presence of mind procured him a longer respite, and a more splendid fate. Without presuming to dispute the royal mandate, he requested the indulgence of a few moments to embrace his weeping family; and, while the vigilance of his guards was relaxed by a plentiful entertainment, he desperately escaped to the sea-coast of the Euxine, from whence he passed over to the country of Bosphorus. In that unquenched region he remained many months, exposed to the hardships of exile, of solitude, and of want; his melancholy temper brooding over his misfortunes, and his mind agitated by the just apprehension, that, if any accident should discover his name, the faithless barbarians would violate, without much scruple, the laws of hospitality. In a moment of impatience and despair, Procopius embarked in a merchant vessel, which was not allowed for Constantinople; and boldly aspired to the rank of a sovereign, because he was not allowed to enjoy the security of a subject. At first he lurked in the villages of Bithynia, continually changing his habitation, and his disguise. By degrees he ventured into the capital, trusted his life and fortune to the fidelity of two friends, a senator and an archon,
and conceived some hopes of success, from the
intelligence which he obtained of the actual state
of public affairs. The body of the people was
infected with a spirit of discontent; they re-
gretted the justice and the abilities of Saltus,
who had been imprudently dismissed from the
prefecture of the East. They despaired the
character of Valens, which was rude without
vigour, and feeble without mildness. They
dreaded the influence of his father-in-law, the
patrician Petrunius, a cruel and rapacious
minister, who rigorously exacted all the arrears
of tribute that might remain unpaid since the
reign of the emperor Aurelian. The circum-
stances were propitious to the designs of an
usurper. The hostile measures of the Persians
required the presence of Valens in Syria; from
the Danube to the Euphrates the troops were
in motion; and the capital was occasionally
visited with the soldiers who passed or repassed
the Thracian Bosphorus. Two cohorts of
Gauls were persuaded to listen to the secret
proposals of the conspirators; which were
recommended by the promise of a liberal dona-
tion; and, as they still revered the memory of
Julian, they readily consented to support the
hereditary claim of his proscribed kinman. At
the dawn of day they were drawn up near the
battle of Anastasia; and Procopius, clothed in
a purple garment, more suitable to a player than
to a monarch, appeared, as if he rose from the
dead, in the midst of Constantinople. The sol-
diers, who were prepared for his reception,
satiated their trembling prince with shouts of
joy, and vows of fidelity. Their numbers were
soon increased by a sturdy band of peasants,
collected from the adjacent country; and Pro-
copius, shielded by the arms of his adherents,
was successively conducted to the tribunal, the
senate, and the palace. During the first
moments of his tumultuous reign, he was as-
sumed and terrified by the gloomy silence of
the people; who were either ignorant of the
cause, or apprehensive of the event. But his
military strength was superior to any actual
resistance; the multitudes flocked to the standard
of rebellion; the poor were excited by the
hopes, and the rich were intimidated by the
fear, of a general pillage; and the obstinate cro-
dulity of the multitude was once more deceived
by the promises of advantages of a revolution.
The magazines were seized; the prisons and
arsenals broke open; the gates, and the entrance
of the harbours were diligently occupied; and,
in a few hours, Procopius became the absolute,
though proconsul, master of the Imperial city.
The usurper improved this unexpected success
with some degree of courage and dexterity. He
artfully propagated the rumours and opinions
the most favourable to his interest; while he
obstructed the populace by giving audience to
the frequent, but imaginary, ambassadors of distant
states. The large bodies of troops stationed
in the cities of Tranae, and the fortresses of the
Lower Danube, were gradually involved in the
guilt of rebellion; and the Gothic princes con-
sented to supply the sovereign of Constantinople
with the formidable strength of several
thousand auxiliaries. His generals passed the
Bosphorus, and subdued, without an effort,
the unarmored, but wealthy, provinces of
Bithynia and Asia. After an honourable defence,
the city and island of Cynicus yielded to his
power; the renowned legions of the Jovians and
Heraclean embraced the cause of the usurper,
whom they were ordered to crush; and, as the
veterans were continually augmented, with new
levies, he soon appeared at the head of an army,
whose valour, as well as numbers, were not un-
equal to the greatness of the contest. The son
of Hormidas, 27 a youth of spirit and ability,
condescended to draw his sword against the
lawful emperor of the East; and the Persian
prince was immediately invested with the an-
cient and extraordinary powers of a Roman
proconsul. The alliance of Faustina, the
widow of the emperor Constantine, who in-
trusted herself and her daughter to the hands of
the usurper, added dignity and reputation to his
cause. The princess Constantia, who was then
about five years of age, accompanied, in a litter,
the march of the army. She was shown to the
multitude in the arms of her adopted father;
and, as often as she passed through the ranks,
the tenderness of the soldiers was inflamed into
martial fury; 28 they recollected the glories of
the house of Constantine, and they declared,
with loyal acclamation, that they would shed the
last drop of their blood in the defence of the
royal infant. 29

In the mean while Valentinian was
alarmed and perplexed by the doul-
ful intelligence of the revolt of the
East. The sudden activities of a German war forced
him to confine his immediate care to the safety
of his own dominions; and all the channels of
communication were stopped or corrupted, he
listened, with doubtful anxiety, to the rumours
which were industriously spread, that the death and
death of Valens had left Procopius sole master of the Eastern provinces. Valens was not
dead; but, on the news of the rebellion, which he
received at Caesarea, he hastily despaired of his life and fortune; proposed to
negotiate with the usurper, and discovered his
secret inclination to abdicate the Imperial pur-
pse. The timid monarch was saved from dis-
grace and ruin by the firmness of his ministers,
and their abilities soon decided in his favour the
crunt of the civil war. In a season of tran-
sition, Saltus had resigned without a murmur;
but as soon as the public safety was attacked, he
ambitiously solicited the pre-eminence of title
and danger; and the restoration of that virtu-
ous minister to the prefure of the East,
was the first step which indicated the repentance

---

27. The last edition is 1634.---Ed. Chas. 1641.
29. The last edition is 1634.---Ed. Chas. 1641.
of Valens, and satisfied the minds of the people. The reign of Procopius was apparently supported by powerful armies, and obedient provinces. But many of the principal officers, military as well as civil, had been urged, either by motives of duty or interest, to withdraw themselves from the guilty scene; or to watch the moment of betraying, and deserting, the cause of the usurper. Loriniuus advanced by hasty marches, to bring the legions of Syria to the aid of Valens. Arbiius, who, in strength, beauty, and valour, excelled all the heroes of the age, attacked with a small troop a superior body of the rebels. When he beheld the faces of the soldiers who had served under his banner, he commanded them, with a loud voice, to seize and deliver up their pretended leader; and such was the descendant of his genius, that this extraordinary order was instantly obeyed. Arbiius, a respectable veteran of the great Constantine, who had been distinguished by the honours of the consulship, was persuaded to leave his retirement, and once more to conduct an army into the field. In the heat of action, calmly taking off his helmet, he showed his grey hairs, and venerable countenance; solaced the soldiers of Procopius by the subduing names of children and companions, and exhorted them no longer to support the desperate cause of a contemptible tyrant; but to follow their old commander, who had so often led them to honour and victory. In the two engagements of Thyasirra and Naessa, the unfortunate Procopius was deserted by his troops, who were seduced by the instructions and example of their pernicious officers. After wandering some time among the woods and mountains of Phrygia, he was betrayed by his disloyal followers, conducted to the imperial camp, and immediately beheaded. He suffered the ordinary fate of an unsuccessful usurper; but the acts of cruelty which were exercised by the conqueror, under the forms of legal justice, excited the pity and indignation of mankind. Such indeed are the common and natural fruits of despotism and rebellion. But the inquisition into the crime of magic, which, under the reign of the two brothers, was so rigorously prosecuted both at Rome and Antioch, was interpreted as the fatal symptom, either of the displeasure of Heaven, or of the depravity of mankind. Let us not hesitate to indulge a liberal pride, that, in the present age, the enlightened part of Europe has abolished a cruel and odious prejudice, which reigned in every climate of the globe, and adored in every system of religious opinions. The nations, and the sects, of the Roman world, admitted, with equal credulity, and similar abhorrence, the reality of that infernal art, which was able to control the external order of the planets, and the voluntary operations of the human mind. They dreaded the mystic power of spells and incantations, of potent herbs, and executable rites; which could extinguish or recall life, inflame the passions of the soul, blind the works of creation, and extort from the reluctant deities the secrets of futurity. They believed, with the wildest inconsistency, that, this prescarnatural dominion of the air, of earth, and of hell, was exercised, from the vilest motives of malice or gain, by some wrinkled hags, and littered sorcerers, who passed their obscure lives in penury and contempt. The arts of magic were equally condemned by the public opinion, and by the laws of Rome; but as they tended to gratify the most imperious passions of the heart of man, they were continually proscribed, and continually practised. An imaginary name is capable of producing the most serious and mischievous effects. The dark predictions of the death of an emperor, or the success of a conspiracy, were calculated only to stimulate the hopes of ambition, and to dissolve the ties of fidelity; and the intentional guilt of magic was aggravated by the actual crimes of treason and sacrilege. Such vain terror disturbed the peace of society, and the happiness of individuals; and the harmless flame which insensibly melted a waxy image, might derive a powerful and pernicious energy from the aspersion fancy of the person whom it was maliciously designed to represent. From the infusion of those herbs, which were supposed to possess a supernatural influence, it was an easy step to the use of more substantial poisons; and the folly of mankind sometimes became the instrument, and the mask, of the most atrocious crimes. As soon as the seal of informers was encouraged by the ministers.
of Valens and Valentinian, they could not refuse to listen to another charge, too frequently mingled in the scenes of domestic guilt; an accusation of a softer and less malignant nature, for which the pious, though excessive, rigor of Constantine had recently decreed the punishment of death. This deadly and incoherent mixture of treason and magic, of poison and adultery, afforded in finite gradations of guilt and innocence, of excuse and aggravation, which in these proceedings appear to have been confounded by the angry or corrupt passions of the judges. They easily discovered, that the degree of their industry and discernment was estimated by the Imperial court, according to the number of executions that were furnished from their respective tribunals. It was not without extreme reluctance that they pronounced a sentence of death; but they eagerly admitted such evidence as was stained with perjury, or procured by torture, to prove the most improbable charges against the most respectable characters. The progress of the inquiry continually opened new subjects of criminal prosecution; the audacious informer, whose falsehood was detected, retired with impunity; but the wretched victim, who discovered his real, or pretended, accomplices, was seldom permitted to receive the price of his information. From the extremity of Italy and Asia, the young, and the aged, were dragged in chains to the tribunals of Rome and Antioch. Senators, matrons, and philosophers, expired in ignominious and cruel tortures. The soldiers, who were appointed to guard the prisons, declared, with a murmur of pity and indignation, that their numbers were insufficient to oppose the flight or resistance of the multitude of captives. The wealthiest families were raised by fines and confiscations; the most innocent citizens trembled for their safety; and we may form some notion of the magnitude of the evil, from the extravagant assertion of an ancient writer, that, in the obnoxious province, the prisoners, the exiles, and the fugitives, formed the greatest part of the inhabitants.

When Tacitus describes the cruelty of the innocent and illustrious Romans, 

A.D. 305–312. men, who were sacrificed to the cruelty of the first Caesars, the art of the historian, or the merit of the sufferers, excite in our bosoms the most lively sensations of terror, of admiration, and of pity. The coarse and undistinguishing pencil of Ammianus, has delineated his bloody figures with terrors and disgusting accuracy. But as our attention is no longer engaged by the contrast of freedom and servitude, of recent greatness and of actual misery, we should turn with horror from the frequent executions, which disgraced, both at Rome and Antioch, the reign of the two brothers. Valens was of a timid, and Valentinian of a choleric, disposition. An anxious regard to his personal safety was the ruling principle of the administration of Valens. In the condition of a subject, he had kissed, with trembling awe, the hand of the emperor; and when he ascended the throne, he reasonably expected, that the same fears, which had subdued his own mind, would secure the patient submission of his people. The favourites of Valens obtained, by the privilege of rapine and confiscation, the wealth which his economy would have refused. They urged, with persuasive eloquence, that, in all cases of treason, suspicion is equivalent to proof; that the power, supposes the intention, of mischief; that the intention is not less criminal than the act; and that a subject no longer deserves to live, if his life may threaten the safety, or disturb the repose, of his sovereign. The judgment of Valentinian was sometimes deceived, and his confidence abused; but he would have silenced the informers with a contemptuous smile, had they presumed to alarm his fortitude by the sound of danger. They praised his inflexible love of justice; and, in the pursuit of justice, the emperor was eminently tempted to consider leniency as a weakness, and passion as a virtue. As long as he wrestled with his equals, in the bold competition of an active and ambitious life, Valentinian was seldom injured, and never insulted, with impunity; if his prudence was arraigned, his spirit was applauded; and the proudest and most powerful generals were apprehensive of provoking the resentment of a fearless soldier. After he became master of the world, he unfortunately forgot, that where no resistance can be made, no courage can be exerted; and instead of consulting the dictates of reason and magnanimity, he indulged the furious emotions of his temper, at a time when they were disgraceful to himself, and fatal to the defenceless objects of his displeasure. In the government of his household, or of his empire, slight, or even imaginary, offences; a hasty word, a casual omission, an involuntary delay, were chastised by a sentence of immediate death. The expressions which issued the most readily from the mouth of the emperor of the West were, "Strike off his head;—burn him alive;—let him be beaten with clubs till he expires." and his most favourited ministers soon understood, that, by a rash attempt to dispute, or suspend, the execution of his sanguinary commands, they might involve themselves in the guilt and punishment of disobedience. The repeated gratification of this savage justice hardened the mind of Valentinian against pity and remorse; and the sallies of passion were confirmed by the habits of the kind of a man. The same indulgence which he permitted to the...
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

He could behold with calm satisfaction the convulsive agonies of torture and death; he reserved his friendship for those faithful servants whose temper was the most congenial to his own. The merit of Maximin, who had slaughtered the noblest families of Rome, was rewarded with the royal approbation, and the prefecture of Gaul. Two fierce and enormous bears, distinguished by the appellations of Innocence, and Miro Amico, could alone deserve to share the favour of Maximin. The cages of these trusty guards were always placed near the bedchamber of Valentinian, who frequently amused his eyes with the grateful spectacle of seeing them tear and devour the bleeding limbs of the malefactors who were abandoned to their rage. Their diet and exercises were carefully inspected by the Roman emperor; and when Innocence had earned her discharge, by a long course of meritorious services, the faithful animal was again restored to the freedom of her native woods. But in the calmer moments of government, reflection, when the mind of Valens was not agitated by fear, or that of Valentinian by rage, the tyrants resumed the sentiments, or at least the conduct, of the father of his country. The dispassionate judgment of the Western emperor could clearly perceive, and accurately pursue, his own and the public interest; and the sovereignty of the East, who imitated with equal fidelity the various examples which he received from his elder brother, was sometimes guided by the wisdom and virtue of the prudent Salian. Both princes invariably retained, in the purple, the chaste and temperate simplicity which had adorned their private life; and, under their reign, the pleasures of the court never cost the people a blush or a sigh. They gradually reformed many of the abuses of the times of Constantius; judiciously adopted and improved the designs of Julian and his successor; and displayed a style and spirit of legislation which might inspire posterity with the most favourable opinion of their character and government. It is not from the master of Innocence, that we should expect the tender regard for the welfare of his subjects, which prompted Valentinian to condemn the expulsion of new-born infants; 50 and to establish fourteen skilful physicians, with stipends and privileges, in the fourteen quarters of Rome. The good name of an illustrious soldier founded an useful and liberal institution for the education of youth, and the support of declining science. 51 It was his intention, that the arts of rhetoric and grammar should be taught in the Greek and Latin languages, in the metropolises of every province; and as the size and dignity of the school was mainly proportioned to the importance of the city, the academies of Rome and Constantinople claimed a just and singular pre-eminence. The fragments of the literary edifices of Valentinian imperfectly represent the school of Constantinople, which was gradually improved by subsequent regulations. That school consisted of thirty-one professors in different branches of learning. One philosopher, and two lawyers; five sophists, and ten grammarians for the Greek, and three orators, and ten grammarians for the Latin, tongue; besides seven scribes, or, as they were then styled, antiquarians, whose laborious pens supplied the public library with fair and correct copies of the classic writers. The rule of conduct, which was prescribed to the students, is the more curious, as it affords the first outlines of the form and discipline of a modern university. It was required, that they should bring proper certificates from the magistrates of their native province. Their names, professions, and places of abode, were regularly entered in a public register. The studios youths were severely prohibited from wasting their time in feasts, or in the theatre, and the term of their education was limited to the age of twenty. The profects of the city was empowered to punish the idle and refractory by stripes or expulsion; and he was directed to make an annual report to the master of the finances, that the knowledge and abilities of the scholars might be usefully applied to the public service. The institutions of Valentinian contributed to secure the benefits of peace and plenty; and the cities were guarded by the establishment of the Procurators, freely elected as the tribunes and advocates of the people, to support their rights, and to expose their grievances, before the tribunes of the civil magistrates, or even at the foot of the Imperial throne. The finances were diligently administered by two princes, who had been so long accustomed to the rigid economy of a private fortune; but in the receipt and application of the revenue, a discerning eye might observe some difference between the government of the East and of the West. Valens was persuaded, that royal liberality can be supplied only by public oppression, and his ambition never aspired to secure, by their actual distress, the future strength and prosperity of his people. Instead of increasing the weight of taxes, which, in the space of forty years, had been gradually doubled, he reduced, in the first years of his reign, one fourth of the tribute of the East. 52 Valentinian appears to have been less attentive and less anxious to relieve the burdens of his people. He might reform the abuses of the fiscal administration; but he exacted, without scruple, a very large share of the private property; as he was convinced, that the revenues, which supported the luxury of individuals, would be much

50 This observe of Julian, &c., is from Ammianus Marcellinus, lib. 29. c. 12. His prudence was led to condemn the cruelty of the licentious emperor. Cyprian, in the fragment which the .

51 See the Colosse of Flavius, c. 2. 1. 50. 15. 20. 25.

52 See the Colosse of Flavius, c. 2. 1. 50. 15. 20. 25.

53 See the Colosse of Flavius, c. 2. 1. 50. 15. 20. 25.

54 See the Colosse of Flavius, c. 2. 1. 50. 15. 20. 25.

55 See the Colosse of Flavius, c. 2. 1. 50. 15. 20. 25.

56 See the Colosse of Flavius, c. 2. 1. 50. 15. 20. 25.

57 See the Colosse of Flavius, c. 2. 1. 50. 15. 20. 25.

58 See the Colosse of Flavius, c. 2. 1. 50. 15. 20. 25.

59 See the Colosse of Flavius, c. 2. 1. 50. 15. 20. 25.

60 See the Colosse of Flavius, c. 2. 1. 50. 15. 20. 25.

61 See the Colosse of Flavius, c. 2. 1. 50. 15. 20. 25.
more advantageously employed for the defence and improvement of the state. The subjects of the East, who enjoyed the present benefit, applauded the indulgence of their prince. The solid, but less splendid, merit of Valentinian was felt and acknowledged by the subsequent generation. 64

But the most honourable circumstance of the character of Valentinian is the firm and temperate impartiality which he uniformly preserved in an age of religious contumacy. His strong sense, unenlightened, but uncorrupted, by study, declined, with respectful indifference, the subtle questions of theological debate. The government of the Earth claimed his vigilance, and satisfied his ambition; and while he remembered that he was the disciple of the church, he never forgot that he was the sovereign of the clergy. Under the reign of an apostate, he had signalised his zeal for the honour of Christianity; he allowed to his subjects the privilege which he had assumed for himself; and they might accept, with gratitude and confidence, the general toleration which was granted by a prince, addicted to passion, but incapable of fear or of disgust. 58

The Pagans, the Jews, and all the various sects which acknowledged the divine authority of Christ, were protected by the laws from arbitrary power or popular insult; nor was any mode of worship prohibited by Valentinian, except those secret and criminal practices, which abused the name of religion for the dark purposes of vice and disorder. The art of magic, as it was more cruelly punished, was more strictly proscribed; but the emperor admitted a formal distinction to protect the ancient methods of divination, which were approved by the senate, and exercised by the Tuscan haruspices. He had condemned, with the consent of the most rational Pagans, the licence of nocturnal sacrifices; but he immediately admitted the petition of Pretextatus, presbyter of Achæia, who represented, that the life of the Greeks would become dreary and comfortless, if they were deprived of the invaluable blessing of the Eleusinian mysteries. Philosophy alone can boast (and perhaps it is no more than the boast of philosophy), that her gentle hand is able to eradicate from the human mind the latent and deadly principle of fanaticism. But this truce of twelve years, which was enforced by the wise and vigorous government of Valentinian, by suspending the repetition of mutual injuries, contributed to soften the manners, and abate the prejudices, of the religious factions.

The friend of toleration was unfortunately placed at a distance from the scene of the fiercest controversies. As soon as the Christians of the West had extricated themselves from the snare of the creed of Rimini, they happily relapsed into the slumber of orthodoxy; and the small remains of

the Arian party, that still subsisted at Sirmond or Milan, might be considered, rather as objects of contempt than of resentment. But in the provinces of the East, from the Euxine to the extremity of Thebais, the strength and numbers of the hostile factions were more equally balanced; and this equality, instead of recommending the counsels of peace, served only to perpetuate the horrors of religious war. The monks and bishops supported their arguments by invective; and their invectives were sometimes followed by blows. Athanasius still reigned at Alexandria; the thrones of Constantius and Antioch were occupied by Arian prelates; and every episcopal vacancy was the occasion of a popular tumult.

The Homoeans were fortified by the reconciliation of fifty-nine Macedonians, or Semi-Arians, bishops; but their secret reluctance to embrace the divinity of the Holy Ghost clouded the splendour of the triumph; and the declaration of Valens, who, in the first year of his reign, had intimated the impartial conduct of his brother, was an important victory on the side of Arianism. The two brothers had passed their private life in the condition of catechumens; but the piety of Valens prompted him to solicit the sacrament of baptism, before he exposed his person to the dangers of a Gothic war. He naturally addressed himself to Eudoxus, 56 bishop of the Imperial city; and if the ignorant monarch was instructed by that Arian pastor in the principles of heterodox theology, his misfortune, rather than his guilt, was the inevitable consequence of his erroneous choice. Whatever had been the determination of the emperor, he must have offended a numerous party of his Christian subjects; as the leaders both of the Homœans and of the Arians believed, that, if they were not suffered to reign, they were most cruelly injured and oppressed. After he had taken this decisive step, it was extremely difficult for him to preserve either the virtue, or the reputation, of impartiality. He never aspired, like Constantine, to the fame of a profound theologian; but, as he had received with simplicity and respect the tenets of Eudoxus, Valens resigned his conscience to the direction of his ecclesiastical guides, and promoted, by the influence of his authority, the re-union of the Arian party to the body of the Catholic church. At first, he pitied their blindness, by degrees he was provoked at their obstinacy; and he insensibly hated those sectaries to whom he was an object of hatred. 57 The feeble mind of Valens was always swayed by the persons with whom he familiarly conversed; and the exile or imprisonment of a private citizen are the favours the most readily granted in a despotic court. Such punishments were frequently inflicted on the leaders of the Homœan party; and the misfortunes of four council eclesiastics of Constantinople, who, perhaps accidentally, were burned on shipboard, was

64 Cassian. J. 76. p. 484. A.D. 395. 65 Socin. L. 36. 66 Heathenfulness of the church may not, indeed, be proved by the experience of late times. By some his doctrine was also called monothelitan. 67 Cassian. L. 76. p. 484. 68 He had ordered them to be accepted, and he had ordered them to be rejected: Phil. ii. 14; 69 Socin. L. 36. p. 484; and Cassian. L. 76. p. 484. 70 Athanasius, T. 1. c. 18; 71 Socin. L. 36. p. 484; and Cassian. L. 76. p. 484.
imputed to the cruel and inordinate malice of the emperor, and his Arian ministers. In every council, the Catholics (if we may anticipate the result) were obliged to pay the penalty of their own faults, and of those of their adversaries. In every election, the claims of the Arian candidate obtained the preference; and if they were opposed by the majority of the people, he was usually supported by the authority of the civil magistrate, or even by the terrors of a military force. The enemies of Athanasius attempted to disturb the last years of his venerable age; and his temporary retreat to his father’s sepulchre has been celebrated as a fifth Exile. But the zeal of a great people, who instantly flew to arms, intimidated the prefect; and the archbishop was permitted to end his life in peace and in glory, after a reign of forty-seven years.

October 12. The death of Athanasius was the signal of the persecution of Egypt; and the Pagan minister of Valens, who forcibly seated the worthless Lucius on the archiepiscopal throne, purchased the favour of the reigning party, by the blood and sufferings of their Christian brethren. The free toleration of the heathen and Jewish worship was bitterly lamented, as a circumstance which aggravated the misery of the Catholics, and the guilt of the impious tyrant of the East.

The triumph of the orthodox party has left a deep stain of persecution on the memory of Valens; and the character of a prince who derived his virtues, as well as his vices, from a feeble understanding, and a pusillanimous temper, scarcely deserves the labour of an apology. Yet caution may discover some reasons to suspect that the ecclesiastical ministers of Valens often exceeded the orders, or even the intentions, of their master; and that the real measure of facts has been very liberally magnified by the vehement declamation, and easy credulity, of his antagonists. The silence of Valentinian may suggest a probable argument, that the partial severities, which were exercised in the name and provinces of his colleagues, amounted only to some obscure and insconsiderable deviations from the established system of religious toleration; and the candid historian, who has praised the equal temper of the elder brother, has not thought himself obliged to contrast the tranquillity of the West with the cruel persecution of the East. Whatever credit may be allowed to vague and distant reports, the character, or at least the behaviour, of Valens may be most distinctly seen in his personal transactions with the eloquent Basil, archbishop of Caesarea, who had succeeded Athanasius in the management of the Trinitarian cause. The circumstantial narrative has been composed by the friends and admirers of Basil; and as soon as we have stripped away a thick coat of rhetoric and adulation, we shall be astonished by the unexpected mildness of the Arian tyrant, who admired the seriousness of his character, or was apprehensive, if he employed violence, of a general revolt in the province of Cappadocia. The archbishop, who asserted, with indubitable pride, the truth of his opinions, and the dignity of his rank, was left in the free possession of his conscience, and his throne. The emperor devoutly assisted at the solemn service of the cathedral; and, instead of a sentence of punishment, subscribed the donation of a valuable estate for the use of an hospital, which Basil had lately founded in the neighbourhood of Caesarea. I am not able to discover, that any law (such as Theodosius afterwards enacted against the Arians) was published by Valens against the Athanasian sectaries; and the edict which excised the most violent clamours, may not appear so extremely reprehensible. The emperor had observed, that several of his subjects, gratifying their lazy disposition under the protection of religion, had associated themselves with the monks of Egypt; and he directed the count of the East to drag them from their solitude; and to compel these deserters of society to accept the fair alternative, of renouncing their temporal possessions, or of discharging the public duties of men and citizens. The ministers of Valens seem to have extended the sense of this penal statute, since they claimed a right of sifting the young and able-bodied monks in the Imperial armies. A detachment of cavalry and infantry, consisting of three thousand men, marched from Alexandria into the adjacent desert of Nitria, which was peopled by five thousand monks. The soldiers were conducted by Arian priests; and it is reported, that a considerable slaughter was made in the monasteries which disobeyed the commands of their sovereign.

The strict regulations which have been framed by the wisdom of modern legislators to restrain the wealth and avarice of the clergy, may be originally deduced from the example of the emperor Valentinian. His edict addressed to Damascus, bishop of Rome, was publicly read in the churches of the city. He administered the ecclesiastics and monks not to frequent the houses of the nobles and senators.
of widows and virgins; and nursed their disobedience with the indulgence of the civil judge. The director was no longer permitted to receive any gift, or legacy, or inheritance, from the liberality of his spiritual daughter; every testament contrary to this edict was declared null and void; and the illegal donation was confiscated for the use of the treasury. By a subsequent regulation it should seem, that the same provisions were extended to nunns and bishops; and that all persons of the ecclesiastical order were rendered incapable of receiving any testamentary gifts, and strictly confined to the natural and legal rights of inheritance. As the guardian of domestic happiness and virtue, Valentinian applied this severe remedy to the growing evil. In the capital of the empire, the families of noble and opulent houses possessed a very ample share of independent property; and many of those devout females had violence the doctrines of Christianity, not only with the cold asent of the understanding, but with the warmest of affection, and perhaps with the eagerness of fashion. They sacrificed the pleasures of dress and luxury; and renounced, for the praise of chastity, the soft adornments of conjugal society. Some ecclesiastics, of real or apparent sanctity, was chosen to allure their timorous conscience, and to amuse the vacant tenderness of their heart; and the unbounded confidence, which they hope fully bestowed, was often abused by knaves and enthusiasts; who hastened from the extremities of the East, to enjoy, on a splendid theatre, the privileges of the monastic profession. By their contempt of the world, they insensibly acquired its most desirable advantages; the lively attachment, perhaps, of a young and beautiful woman, the delicate plenty of an opulent household, and the respectful homage of the slaves, the freedmen, and the clients of a senatorial family. The immense fortune of the Roman ladies were gradually consumed in lavish abs and expensive pilgrimages; and the arithal monk, who had ascended the holy hill, or possibly the sole place, in the nestament of his spiritual daughter, still presumed to declare, with the smooth face of hypocrisy, that he was only the instrument of charity, and the steward of the poor. The lucrative, but disgraceful trade, which was exercised by the clergy to defraud the expectations of the natural heirs, had provoked the indignation of a superstitious age; and two of the most respectable of the Latin fathers very honestly confess, that the ignominious edict of Valentinian was just and necessary; and that the Christian priests had deserve to lose a privilege, which was still enjoyed by comedians, claustrators, and the ministers of idols. But the wisdom and authority of the legislator are seldom victorious in a contest with the vigilant dexterity of private interest; and Jerome, or Ambrose, might patiently acquiesce in the justice of an inexact or voluntary law. If the ecclesiastics were checked in the pursuit of personal enjoyment, they would erect a more laudable industry to increase the wealth of the church; and dignify their covetousness with the specious names of piety and patriotism.  

Damianus, Bishop of Rome, who was restrained to stigmatize the avarice of his clergy by the publication of the law of Valentinian, had the good sense, as the good fortune, to engage in his service the zeal and abilities of the learned Jerome; and the grateful saint has celebrated the merit and purity of a very ambiguous character. But the splendid vices of the church of Rome, under the reign of Valentinian and Damasus, have been curiously observed by the historian Ammianus, who delivers his impartial sense in those expressive words: the praefecture of Justinius was accompanied with peace and plenty; but the tranquillity of his government was soon disturbed by a bloody sedition of the distracted people. The ardor of Damasus and Ursinus, to seize the episcopal seat, surpassed the ordinary measure of human ambition. They contended with the rage of purport; the quarrel was maintained by the wounds and death of their followers; and the prefect, unable to resist or appease the tumult, was constrained, by superior violence, to retire into the suburbs. Damascus prevailed; the well-disputed victory remained on the side of his faction; one hundred and thirty-seven dead bodies were found in the basilica of Sininim, where the Christians hold their religious assemblies; and it was long before the angry minds of the people resumed their accustomed tranquillity. When I consider the splendor of the capital, I am not astonished that no valuable a prize should influence the desires of ambitious men; and that the streets of Rome; and that the sumptuousness of the Imperial table will not equal the profuse and delicate entertainments provided by the taste, and at the expense, of the Roman pontiffs. How much more informatively (continues the honest Pagan) would those

---

28 The covetousness which I have used are not improper or full, as in our modern sense; but the words of the original are not inadequate to the understanding of the reader, as in our modern sense; but the words of the original are not inadequate to the understanding of the reader, as in our modern sense.
When the suffrage of the generals and of the army committed the sceptre of the Roman empire to the hands of Varietianus, his reputation in arms, his military skill and experience, and his rigid attachment to the forms, as well as spirit, of ancient discipline, were the principal motives of their judicious choice. The eagerness of the troops, who pressed him to succede his colleague, was justified by the dangerous situation of public affairs; and Varietianus himself was conscious, that the abilities of the most active mind were unequal to the defence of the distant frontiers of an invaded monarchy. As soon as the death of Julian had relieved the barbarians from the terror of his name, the most sanguine hopes of rapine and conquest excited the nations of the East, of the North, and of the South. Their incursions were often victorious, and sometimes formidable; but, during the twelve years of the reign of Varietianus, his firmness and vigilance protected his own dominions, and his powerful genius seemed to inspire and direct the feeble counsels of his brother. Perhaps the method of annals would more forcibly express the urgent and divided cares of the two emperors; but the attention of the reader, likewise, would be distracted by a tedious and desultory narrative. A separate view of the five great theatres of war; I. Germany; II. Britain; III. Africa; IV. The East; and, V. The Dacine; will impress a more distinct image of the military state of the empire under the reigns of Varietianus and Valens.

I. The ambassadors of the Alexanianus had been offended by the hard and haughty behaviour of Urbineus, master of the office, who, by an act of unexampled parsimony, had diminished the value, as well as the quantity, of the presents, to which they were entitled, either from custom or treaty, on the accession of a new emperor. They expressed, and they communicated to their countrymen, their strong sense of the national affront. The irritable minds of the chiefs were exasperated by the suspicion of contempt; and the martial youth crowded to their standard. Before Varietianus could pass the Alps, the villages of Gaul were in flames; before his general Dagonaphius could encounter the Alasham, they had secured the captives and the spoil in the forests of Germany. In the beginning of the ensuing year, the military forces of the whole nation, in deep and solid columns, broke through the barrier of the Rhine, during the severity of a northern winter. Two Roman counts were defeated and mortally wounded; and the standard of the Herculean and Batavian fell into the hands of the conquerors, who displayed, with insulting shouts and menace, the trophy of their victory. The standard was recovered; but the Batavians had not redeemed the shame of their disgrace and flight in the eyes of their severe judge. It was the opinion of Varietianus, that his soldiers must learn to fear their commanders, before they could cease to fear the enemy. The troops were solemnly assembled; and the trembling Batavians were enclosed within the circle of the Imperial army. Varietianus then ascended his tribunal; and, as if he disdained to punish cowardice with death, he inflicted a stain of indelible ignominy on the officers, whose misconduct and pusillanimity were found to be the first occasion of the defeat. The Batavians were degraded from their rank, stripped of their arms, and condemned to be sold for slaves to the highest bidder. At this tremendous sentence the troops rose in arms; dedicated the indignation of their sovereign, and protested, that, if he would indulge them in another trial, they would approve themselves not unworthy of the name of Romans, and of his soldiers. Varietianus, with affected reluctance, yielded to their entreaty; the Batavians resumed their arms; and, with their arms, the insinuate resolutions of wiping away their disgrace in the blood of the Alasham. The principal command was declined by Dagonaphius; and that experienced general, who had represented, perhaps with too much prudence, the extreme difficulties of the undertaking, had the mortification, before the end of the campaign, of seeing his rival Jovinian convert those difficulties into a decisive advantage over the scattered forces of the barbarians.

At the head of a well-disciplined army,
army of cavalry, infantry, and light troops, Jovinus advanced, with cautious and rapid steps, to Scarpone,56 in the territory of Meta, where he surprised a large division of the Allemanni, before they had time to run to their arms; and flushed his soldiers with the confidence of an easy and bloodless victory. Another division, or rather army, of the enemy, after the cruel and wanton devastation of the adjacent country, reposed themselves on the shady banks of the Moselle. Jovinus, who had viewed the ground with the eye of a general, made his silent approach through a deep and woody vale, till he could distinctly perceive the indolent security of the Germans. Some were tilling their huge limbs in the river; others were combing their long and flaxen hair; others again were swallowing large draughts of rich and delicious wine. On a sudden they heard the sound of the Roman trumpet; they saw the enemy in their camp. Astonishment produced disorder; disorder was followed by flight and dismay; and the confused multitude of the bravest warriors was pierced by the swords and javelins of the legionaries and auxiliaries. The fugitives escaped to the third, and most considerable, camp, in the Catalanian plains, near Chalamis in Champagne: the straggling detachments were hastily recalled to their standard; and the barbarian chiefs, alarmed and astonished by the fate of their companions, prepared to encounter, in a decisive battle, the victorious forces of the lieutenant of Valentinian. The bloody and obstinate conflict lasted a whole summer's day, with equal valour, and with alternate success. The Romans at length prevailed, with the loss of about twelve hundred men. Six thousand of the Allemanni were slain, four thousand were wounded; and the brave Jovinus, after chasing the flying remnant of their host as far as the banks of the Rhine, returned to Paris, to receive the applause of his sovereign, and the enmity of the consulship for the ensuing year.57

The triumph of the Romans was indeed sullied by their treatment of the captive king, whom they hung on a gibbet, without the knowledge of their indignant general. This disgraceful act of cruelty, which might be imputed to the fury of the troops, was followed by the deliberate murder of Wichila, the son of Vandalair; a German prince, of a weak and sickly constitution, but of a daring and formidable spirit. The domestic commotion was extinguished and protected by the Romans; and the violation of the laws of humanity and justice betrayed their secret apprehension of the weakness of the declining empire. The use of the dagger was seldom adopted in public councils, as long as they retain any confidence in the power of the sword.

While the Allemanni appeared to be humbled by their recent calamities, the pride of Valentinian was

56 See D'Aubert, Rmotor de la Historie Gnaite, p. 352. The name of this station is correctly rendered by Bruun (Hist. of the ancient Germans, vol. ii.) as Scarpone, by laszlo (Hist. of the Allemannians, etc., vol. ii.) as Urband, and by Abbeville (Hist. of the Allemannians, etc., vol. ii.) as Urba. 
57 The Allemanni were under the command of their king, Fluctar, in the year 358.
fixed the wise maxims of Diocletian, was studious to form and excite the intestine divisions of the tribes of Germany. About the middle of the fourth century, the countries, perhaps of Lower and Thuringia, on either side of the Elbe, were occupied by the vague dominion of the Hasudun, or a warlike and numerous people, of the Vandal race, whose obscure name insensibly swelled into a powerful kingdom, and has finally settled on a flourishing province. The most remarkable circumstance in the ancient manners of the Burgundians appears to have been the difference of their civil and ecclesiastical constitution. The appellation of Hasudun was given to the king or general, and the title of Senatus to the high-priest, of the nation. The person of the priest was sacred, and his dignity perpetual; but the temporal government was held by a very precarious tenure. If the events of war accosted the courage or conduct of the king, he was immediately deposed; and the injustice of his subjects made him responsible for the fertility of the earth, and the regularity of the seasons, which seemed to fall more properly within the sacrificial department. The disputed possession of salt and pits engaged the Alamanni and the Burgundians in frequent contests; the latter were easily tempted, by the secret solicitations, and liberal offer, of the emperor; and their fabulous descent from the Roman soldiers, who had formerly been left to garrison the fortresses of Dacia, was admitted with mutual credulity, as it was conducive to mutual interest.

An army of fourteen thousand Burgundians soon appeared on the banks of the Rhine; and impatiently required the support and subsidies which Valentinian had promised: but they were dismissed with excuses and delays, till at length, after a fruitless expectation, they were compelled to retire. The arms and fortifications of the Gallic frontier checked the fury of their just resentment; and their mutual contest served to embitter the hereditary feud of the Burgundians and the Alamanni. The insolvency of a war more than many, perhaps, be explained by such a situation of circumstances; and, perhaps, it was the original design of Valentinian to intimidate, rather than to destroy; as the balance of power would have been equally overthrown by the extinction of either of the German nations. Among the princes of the Alamanni, Macrianus, who, with a Roman name, had assumed the arms of a soldier and a statesman, deserved his hatred and esteem. The emperor himself, with a light and unnumbered band, condescended to pass the Rhine, marched fifty miles into the country, and would unassailably have seized the object of his pursuit, if his judicious measures had not been defeated by the impudence of the troops. Macrianus was afterwards admitted to the honour of a personal conference with the emperor; and the favours which he received, fixed him; till the hour of his death, a steady and sincere friend of the republic.

The land was covered by the fortifications of Valentinian; but the sea-coast of Gaul and Britain was exposed to the depredations of the Saxons. They celebrated name, in which we have a dear and domestic interest, escaped the notice of Tacitus; and in the maps of Ptolemy, it faintly marks the narrow neck of the Cimbrian peninsula, and three small islands towards the mouth of the Elbe.

This contracted territory, the present Duchy of Schleswig, or perhaps of Holstein, was incapable of pouring forth the inestimable swarm of Saxons who resided over the ocean, who filled the British isle with their language, their laws, and their colonies; and who so long defended the liberty of the North against the will of Charlemagne. The solution of this difficulty is easily derived from the similar manners, and loose constitution, of the tribes of Germany; which were blended with each other by the slightest accidents of war or friendship. The situation of the native Saxons disposed them to embrace the hazardous professions of fishermen and pirates; and the success of their first adventurers would naturally excite the emulation of their brave countrymen, who were impatient of the great solitude of their woods and mountains. Every tide might float down the Elbe whole fleets of canoes, filled with hardy and intrepid associates, who aspired to behold the unbounded prospect of the ocean, and to taste the wealth and luxury of unknown worlds. It should seem probable, however, that the most numerous auxiliaries of the Saxons were furnished by the nations who dwelt along the shores of the Baltic. They possessed arms and ships, the art of navigation, and the habits of naval war; but the difficulty of issuing through the northern columns of Hercules, (which, during several months of the year, are obstructed with ice,) confined their skill and courage within the limits of a spacious lake. The summer of the successful armaments which sailed from the mouth of the Elbe, would soon provoke them to cross the narrow isthmus of Schleswig, and to launch their vessels on the great sea. The various troops of pirates and adventurers, who sought under the same standard, were inseparably united in a permanent society, at first of captive, and afterwards of government. A military confederation was gradually moulded into a na...
tional body, by the gentle operation of marriage and consanguinity; and the adjacent tribes, who solicited the alliance, accepted the same and laws, of the Saxons. If the fact were not established by the most unquestionable evidence, we should appear to abuse the credulity of our readers, by the description of the vessels in which the Saxon pirates ventured to sport in the waves of the German Ocean, the British Channel, and the Bay of Biscay. The keel of their large flat-bottomed boats was framed of light timber, but the sides and upper works consisted only of wicker, with a covering of strong hides. In the course of their slow and distant navigation, they must always have been exposed to the danger, and very frequently to the misfortune, of shipwreck; and the naval annals of the Saxons were undoubtedly filled with the accounts of the losses which they sustained on the coasts of Britain and Gaul. But the daring spirit of the pirates bravely bore the perils both of the sea and of the shore: their skill was confirmed by the habits of enterprise; the meanness of their mariners was alike capable of handling an ear, of rearing a sail, or of conducting a vessel; and the Saxons rejoiced in the appearance of a tempest, which concealed their design, and dispersed the fleets of the enemy. After they had acquired an accurate knowledge of the maritime provinces of the West, they extended the scene of their depredations, and the most sequestered places had no reason to presume on their security. The Saxon boats drew so little water, that they could easily proceed four-score or an hundred miles up the great rivers; their weight was so inconsiderable, that they were transported on wagons from one river to another; and the pirates who had entered the mouth of the Severn, or of the Humber, might descend, with the rapid stream of the Rhone, into the Mediterranean.

A.D. 421.

Under the reign of Valentine, the maritime provinces of Gaul were afflicted by the Saxons: a military count was stationed for the defence of the sea-coast, or Armorican limit; and that officer, who found his strength, or his abilities, unequal to the task, implored the assistance of Severus, master-general of the infantry. The Saxons, surrounded and outnumbered, were forced to relinquish their spoil, and to yield a select band of their tall and robust youth to serve in the Imperial armies. They stipulated only a safe and honourable retreat; and the condition was readily granted by the Roman general; who mediated an act of peridy, imprudent as it was inhumane, while a Saxon remained alive, and in arms, to revenge the fate of his countrymen. The premature rigor of the infantry, who were secretly posted in a deep valley, betrayed the ambuscade; and they would perhaps have fallen the victims of their own treachery, if a large body of cavaliers, alarmed by the noise of the combat, had not hastily advanced to extricate their companions, and to overwhelm the unattended savages of the Saxons. Some of the prisoners were saved from the edge of the sword, to shed their blood in the amphitheatre: and the senator Symmachus complains, that twenty-nine of those desperate vagabonds, by strangling themselves with their own hands, had disappointed the summation of the public. Yet the pure and philosophical citizens of Rome were impressed with the deepest horror, when they were informed, that the Saxons consecrated to the gods the tithe of their enemies spoil; and, that they ascertained by lot the objects of the barbarous sacrifice.

II. The fabulous colonies of Egyptians and Trojans, of Scythians and Spaniards, which flattered the pride, and amused the credulity, of our rude ancestors, have insensibly vanished in the light of science and philosophy. The present age is satisfied with the simple and rational opinion, that the islands of Great Britain and Ireland were gradually peopled from the adjacent continent of Gaul. From the coast of Kent, to the extremity of Caithness and Ulster, the memory of a Celtic origin was distinctly preserved, in the perpetual resemblance of language, of religion, and of manners: and the peculiar characters of the British tribes might be naturally ascertained to the influence of accidental and local circumstances. The Roman province was reduced to the state of civilised and peaceful servitude; the rights of savage freedom were contracted to the narrow limits of Caledonia. The inhabitants of that northern region were divided, as early as the reign of Constantine, between the two great tribes of the Scots and of the Picts, who have since experienced a very different fortune. The power, and almost the memory, of the Picts have been extinguished by their unsuccessful rivals; and the Scots, after maintaining for ages the dignity of an independent kingdom, have multiplied, by an equal and voluntary union, the honours of the English name. The hand of nature had contributed to mark the ancient distinction of the Scots and Picts. The former were the men of
the hills, and the latter those of the plain. The eastern coast of Caledonia may be considered as a level and fertile country, which, even in a rude state of cultivation, was capable of producing a considerable quantity of corn; and the extinct of cows, oxen, or sheep-cars, expressed the contempt, or envy, of the stouter hanger. The cultivation of the earth might introduce a more accurate separation of property, and the habits of a sedentary life; but the love of arms and rapine was still the ruling passion of the Picts: and their warriors, who stripped themselves for a day of battle, were distinguished, in the eyes of the Romans, by the strange fashions of painting their naked bodies with gaudy colours and fantastic figures. The western part of Caledonia irregularly rises into wild and hilly hills, which scarcely repay the toil of the husbandman, and are most probably used for the pasture of cattle. The highlanders were condemned by the neglect of shepherds and hunters; and, as they seldom tried to any permanent habitation, they acquired the expressive name of Scots, which, in the Celtic tongue, is said to be derived from the word scot, to express any person who is not an inhabitant of the region of the Britons. The inhabitants of a barren land were urged to seek a fresh supply of food in the waters. The deep lakes and bays which intersect their country are plentifully stored with fish; and they gradually ventured to cast their nets in the waters of the ocean. The vicinity of the Hebrides, so prodigiously scattered along the western coast of Scotland, enriched their curiosity, and improved their skill; and they acquired, by short degrees, the art, or rather the habit, of making their boats in a tempestuous sea, and of steering their nautical course by the light of the well-known stars. The two bold headlands of Caledonia almost touch the shores of a spacious island, which obtained, from its luxuriant vegetation, the epithet of Greece; and has preserved, with a slight alteration, the name of Erin, or Ierne, or Ireland. It is probable, that, in some remote period of antiquity, the fertile plains of Ulster exercised a seductive charm on Scotia; and thus the strangers of the North, who had dared to encounter the arms of the Ingrians, spread their conquests over the wet and uninviting plains of a solitary island. It is certain, that, in the declining age of the Roman empire, Caledonia, Ireland, and the Isle of Man, were inhabited by the Scots, and that the kindred tribes, who were often associated in military enterprise, were deeply affected by the various accidents of their mutual fortunes. They long cherished the lively tradition of their common name and origin: and the missionaries of the Isle of Saints, who diffused the light of Christianity over North Britain, established the valid opinion, that their Irish countrymen were the natural, as well as spiritual, fathers of the Scottish race. The loose and careless tradition has been preserved by the venerable Bede, who scattered some rays of light over the darkness of the eighth century. On this slight foundation, an huge superstructure of fable was gradually reared, by the bards and the monks; two orders of men, who equally abused the privilege of fiction. The Scottish nation, with mistaken pride, adopted their Irish genealogy, and the annals of a long line of imaginary kings have been adorned by the fancy of Boece, and the classic elegance of Buchanan. Six years after the death of Constantine, the destructive invasion of the Scots and Picts required the presence of his youngest son, who reigned in the Western empire. Constantius visited his British dominions; but we may form some estimate of the importance of his achievements, by the language of panegyric, which celebrated only his triumphs in the western provinces, or, in other words, the good fortunes of a safe and easy passage from the port of Boulogne to the harbour of Sandwich. The calamities which the afflicted provincials continued to experience, from foreign war and domestic tyranny, were aggravated by the fieble and corrupt administration of the emperors of Constan[tinople; and the transient relief which they might obtain from the virtues of Julian, was soon lost by the obloquy and death of their benefactor. The sums of gold and silver which had been painlessly collected, or literally transmitted, for the payment of the troops, were intercepted by the avatars of the commanders; discharges, or, at least, exceptions, from the military service were publicly sold; the distress of the soldiers, who were injuriously deprived of their legal and scanty subsistence, provoked them to frequent deserts; the nerves of discipline were relaxed, and the highways were infested with robbers. The oppression of the good, and the impunity of the wicked, equally contributed to diffuse through the island a spirit of discontent and revolt; and every ambitious subject, every desperate exile, might entertain a reasonable hope of subverting the weak and distracted government of Britain. The hostile tribes of the North, who detested the pride and power of the King of the World, suspended their domestic feuds; and the barbarians of the land and sea, the Scots, the Picts, and the Saxons, spread themselves, with rapid and irresistible fury, from the wall of Antoninus to the shores of Kent. Every production of art and nature, every object of convenience or luxury, which they were incapable of reaping by labour, or procuring by trade, was scrambled in the rich and fruitful province of Britain and Britain. The passage from Stranraer to Campbeltown is about 45 miles. The town of Campbeltown is celebrated for its fine situation, and the beauty of its scenery. The latter part of the year is the most favorable for a visit to the coast of Kintyre, the island of Arran, and the island of Islay. The leading motives of the Kirk of Scotland are harmony, union, and obedience. The Lord's Day is observed as a day of rest and devotion. The religious services are conducted in the vernacular, and the people are deeply imbued with a spirit of religious devotion. The Scottish Kirk is ruled by a General Assembly, which consists of the representatives of the Kirk in the several presbyteries, and is presided over by a Moderator, who is elected by the Assembly. The members of the Kirk are divided into three classes: the Ministers, the Elders, and the Deacons. The Ministers are the spiritual and temporal officers of the Kirk, and are appointed by the Assembly, on the recommendation of the Presbytery. The Elders are the officers of the Kirk, and are elected by the congregation, on the recommendation of the Presbytery. The Deacons are the officers of the Kirk, and are elected by the congregation, on the recommendation of the Presbytery.
Britain. 114 A philosopher may deplore the eternal discord of the human race, but he will confess, that the desire of spoil is a more rational provocation than the vanity of conquest. From the age of Constantine to that of the Plantagenets, this rapacious spirit continued to instigate the poor and hungry Caledonians; but the same people, whose generous humanity seems to inspire the songs of Ossian, was disgraced by a savage ignorance of the virtues of peace, and of the laws of war. Their southern neighbours have felt, and perhaps exaggerated, the cruelties of the Scots and Picts; 115 and a valiant tribe of Caledonia, the Attacotti, 116 the enemies, and afterwards the soldiers, of Valentian, are accused, by an eye-witness, of delighting in the taste of human flesh. When they hunted the woods for prey, it is said, that they attacked the shepherd rather than his flock; and that they curiously selected the most delicate and beautiful parts of both males and females, which they prepared for their horrid repasts. 117

If, in the neighbourhood of the commercial and literary town of Glasgow, a race of cannibals has really existed, we may contemplate, in the period of the Scottish history, the opposite extremes of savage and civilized life. Such reflections tend to enlarge the circle of our ideas; and to encourage the pleasing hope, that New Zealand may produce, in some future age, the home of the southern hemisphere.

Every messenger who escaped across the British channel, conveyed the most melancholy and alarming tidings to the ears of Valentian; and the emperor was soon informed, that the two military commanders of the province had been surprised and cut off by the barbarians. Severus, count of the domestics, was hastily dispatched, and as suddenly recalled, by the court of Treves. The representations of Jovinus served only to indicate the greatness of the evil; and, after a long and serious consultation, the defence, or rather the recovery, of Britain, was intrusted to the abilities of the brave Theodosius. The exploits of that general, the father of a line of emperors, have been celebrated, with peculiar complacency, by the writers of the age: but his real merit deserved their applause; and his nomination was received, by the army and province, as a sure presage of approaching victory. He seized the favourable moment of navigation, and secretly landed the numerous and veteran bands of the Heruli and Batavians, the Jovians and the Victors. In his march from Sandwich to London, Theodosius defeated several parties of the barbarians, released a multitude of captives, and, after distributing a small portion of the spoil, established the fame of disinterested justice, by the restitution of the remainder to the rightful proprietors. The citizens of London, who had almost despaired of their safety, threw open their gates; and as soon as Theodosius had obtained from the court of Treves the important aid of a military lieutenant, and a civil governor, he executed, with wisdom and vigour, the laborious task of the deliverance of Britain. The vagrant soldiers were recalled to their standard; an edict of amnesty disposed the public apprehensions; and his clever example alleviated the rigour of martial discipline. The scattered and desultory warfare of the barbarians, who infested the land and sea, deprived him of the glory of a signal victory; but the prudent spirit, and consummate art, of the Roman general, were displayed in the operations of two campaigns, which successively rescued every part of the province from the hands of a cruel and rapacious enemy. The splendour of the cities, and the security of the fortifications, were diligently restored, by the paternal care of Theodosius; who, with a strong hand, confided the embattled Caledonians to the northern angle of the island; and perpetuated, by the name and settlement of the new province of Valentia, the glories of the reigns of Valentian. 118

The voice of poetry and panegyric may add, perhaps with some degree of truth, that the unknown regions of Thule were stained with the blood of the Picts; that the ears of Theodosius dashed the waves of the Hyperborean Ocean; and that the distant Orkneys were the scene of his naval victory over the Saxon pirates. 119 He left the province with a fair, as well as splendid, reputation; and was immediately promoted to the rank of master-general of the cavalry, by a prince who could applaud, without envy, the merit of his servants. In the important station of the Upper Danubie, the conqueror of Britain checked and defeated the armies of the Alains, before he was chosen to suppress the revolt of Africa.

III. The prince who refused to be the judge, instructs his people to consider him as the accomplice of his ministers. The military command of Africa had been long exercised by count Romanus, and his abilities were not inadequate to his station; but, as fond interest was the sole motive of his conduct, he acted, on most occasions, as if he had been the enemy of the provincials, and the friend of the barbarians of the desert. The three flourishing cities of Oea, Leptis, and Sabaen, which, under the name of Tripoli, had long constituted
a federal union, were obliged, for the first time, to shut their gates against a hostile invasion; several of their most honourable citizens were surprised and massacred; the villages, and even the suburbs, were pillaged; and the vines and fruit-trees of that rich territory were exterminated by the malicious savages of Getulia. The unhappy provincials implored the protection of Romanus; but they soon found that their military governor was not less cruel and rapacious than the barbarians. As they were incapable of furnishing the four thousand camels, and the enormous present, which he required, before he would march to the assistance of Tripoli; his demand was equivalent to a refusal, and he might justly be accused as the author of the public calamity. In the annual assembly of the three cities, they nominated two deputies, to lay at the feet of Valentinian the customary offering of a gold victory; and to accompany this tribute, of duty, rather than of gratitude, with their humble complaint, that they were ruined by the enemy, and betrayed by their governor. If the severity of Romanus had been rightly directed, it would have fallen on the guilty head of Romanus. But the count, long exercised in the arts of corruption, had dispatched a swift and trusty messenger to assure the venal friendship of Remigius, master of the offices. The wisdom of the Imperial council was deceived by artifice; and their honest indignation was cooled by delay. At length, when the repetition of complaint had been justified by the repetition of public misfortunes, the rotary Palladius was sent from the court of Treves, to examine the state of Africa, and the conduct of Romanus. The rigid impartiality of Palladius was easily disarmed: he was tempted to reserve for himself a part of the public treasure, which he brought with him for the payment of the troops; and from the moment that he was conscious of his own guilt, he could no longer refuse to attest the innocence and merit of the count. The charge of the Tripolitan was declared to be false and frivolous: Palladius himself was sent back from Treves to Africa, with a special commission to discover and punish those who had conspired against the representatives of the sovereign. His enquiries were managed with so much dexterity and success, that he compelled the citizens of Leptis, who had sustained a recent siege of eight days, to contradict the truth of their own decrees, and to exaggerate the behaviour of their own deputies. A bloody sentence was pronounced, without hesitation, by the rash and headstrong cruelty of Valentinian. The president of Tripoli, who had presumed to pity the distress of the province, was publicly executed at Utica; four distinguished citizens were put to death, as the accomplices of the imaginary fraud; and the tongues of two others were cut out, by the express order of the emperor. Romanus, elated by impunity, and irritated by resistance, was still continued in the military command; till the Africans were provoked, by his arrogance, to join the rebellious standard of Firmus, the Moor. His father Natal was one of the richest and most powerful of the Moorish princes, who acknowledged the supremacy of Rome. But as he left, either by his wives or concubines, a very numerous posterity, the wealthy inheritance was eagerly disputed; and Zama, one of his sons, was slain in a domestic quarrel by his brother Firmus. The implacable zeal, with which Romanus prosecuted the legal revenge of this murder, could be ascribed only to a motive of avarice, or personal hatred: but, on this occasion, his claims were just; his influence was weighty; and Firmus clearly understood, that he must either present his neck to the executioner, or appeal from the sentence of the Imperial consistory, to his sword, and to the people. He was received as the deliverer of his country; and, as soon as it appeared that Romanus was formidable only to a submissive province, the tyrant of Africa became the object of universal contempt. The ruin of Carthage, which was plundered and burned by the licentious barbarians, convinced the refractory cities of the danger of resistance; the power of Firmus was established, at least in the provinces of Mauritania and Numidia; and it seemed to be his only doubt, whether he should assume the ill-name of a Moorish king, or the purple of a Roman emperor. But the imprudent and unhappy Africans soon discovered, that, in this rash insurrection, they had not sufficiently consulted their own strength, or the abilities of their leader. Before he could procure any certain intelligence, that the emperor of the West had fixed the choice of a general, or that a fleet of transports was collected at the mouth of the Rhone, he was suddenly informed, that the great Theodosius, with a new army, a small band of veterans, had landed at Numidia. The victors of Iglilia, or Gigeri, on the African coast; and the timid usurper sunk under the assault of virtue and military genius. Though Firmus possessed arms and treasures, his despair of victory immediately reduced him to the use of those arts, which, in the same country, and in a similar situation, had formerly been practised by the crafty Jugurthas. He attempted to deceive, by an apparent submission, the vigilance of the Roman general; to seduce the fidelity of his troops; and to protract the duration of the war, by successively engaging the independent tribes of Africa to expose his quarter, or to protect his flight. Theodosius imitated the example, and obtained the success, of his predecessor Metellus. When Firmus, in the character of a suppliant, accused his own rashness, and humbly solicited the clemency of the emperor, the lieutenant of Valentinian received and dismissed him with a friendly embrace; but his diligently required the useful and substantial pledges of a
sincere repentance; nor could he be persuaded, by the assurances of peace, to suspend, for an instant, the operations of an active war. A dark conspiracy was detected by the penetration of Theodosius; and he satisfied, without much reluctance, the public indignation, which he had secretly excited. Several of the guilty accomplices of Firmus were abandoned, according to ancient custom, to the tumult of a military execution: many more, by the amputation of both their hands, continued to exhibit an instructive spectacle of horror: the hatred of the rebels was accompanied with fear; and the fear of the Roman soldiers was mingled with respectful admiration. Amidst the boundless plains of Getulia, and the innumerable valleys of Mount Atlas, it was impossible to prevent the escape of Firmus: and if the usurper could have tired the patience of his antagonist, he would have secured his person in the depth of some remote solitude, and expected the hopes of a future revolution. He was subdued by the perseverance of Theodosius, who had formed an inflexible determination, that the war should end only by the death of the tyrant: and that every nation of Africa, which presumed to support his cause, should be involved in his ruin. At the head of a small body of troops, which seldom exceeded three thousand five hundred men, the Roman general advanced, with a steady prudence, devoid of rashness or of fear, into the heart of a country, where he was sometimes attacked by armies of twenty thousand Moors. The boldness of his charge dismayed the irregular barbarians; they were disconcerted by his seasonable and orderly retreats; they were continually baffled by the unknown resources of the military art; and they felt and confessed the just superiority which was assumed by the leader of a civilized nation.

When Theodosius entered the extensive dominions of Iugazim, king of the Ibas clinics, the haughty savage required, in words of defiance, his name, and the object of his expedition. "I am," replied the stern and disdainful count, "the general of Valentinian, the lord of the world; who has sent me hither to pursue and punish a desperate robber. Deliver him instantly into my hands; and he ensured, that if thou dost not obey the commands of my invincible sovereign, thou, and the people over whom thou reignest, shall be utterly extirpated." As soon as Iugazim was satisfied, that his enemy had strength and resolution to execute the fatal menace, he consented to purchase a necessary peace by the sacrifice of a guilty fugitive. The guards that were placed to secure the person of Firmus, deprived him of the hopes of escape; and the Moorish tyrant, after whom the insurrection had extinguished the sense of danger, disappohted the insulting triumph of the Romans, by stran-

129 Aug. ziii. 15. 2. The text of this long chapter (which should appear in Verschaffelt and Cropp) is unsatisfactory. The veracity of Cropp is strengthened by the fact that Lib. III. c. 30, p. 131, in the Theodosian Code, which states that Firmus had been executed, in which case Firmus would be alive. 130 Lib. III. c. 31, p. 131. 131 Chro. 18. 132 Hist. of Africa. Lib. II. c. 4. 133 Hist. of America, del. I. c. 4. 134 Hist. of America, del. I. c. 4. 135 See Gough, No. 7. 136 Polyb. Hist. of Africa. Lib. II. c. 4. 137 See Gough, No. 7. 138 Polyb. Hist. of Africa. Lib. II. c. 4.

Africa had been lost by the vices of Romulus: it was restored by the virtues of Theodosius: and our curiosity may be usefully directed to the enquiry of the respective treatment which the two generals received from the Imperial court. The authority of Romulus had been suspended by the master-general of the cavalry; and he was committed to safe and honorable custody till the end of the war. His crimes were proved by the most authentic evidence; and the public expected, with some impatience, the decree of severe justice. But the partial and powerful favour of Melchauchus encouraged him to challenge his legal judges, to obtain repeated delays for the purpose of procuring a crowd of friendly witnesses; and, finally, to commit his guilty conduct, by the additional guilt of fraud and forgery. About the same time, the restoration of Britain and Africa, on a vague suspicion that his name and offices were superior to the rank of a subject, was ignominiously besmeared at Carthage. Valentinian no longer reigned; and the death of Theodosius, as well as the infamy of Romulus, may justly be imputed to the arts of the ministers who abused the confidence, and deceived the inexperienced youth, of his son. 139 If the geographical accuracy of Ammianus had been fortuitously bestowed on the British exploits of Theodosius, we should have traced, with eager curiosity, the distinct and domestic footsteps of his march. But the tedious enumeration of the unknown and uninteresting tribes of Africa may be reduced to the general remark, that they were all of the same hardy race of the Moors; that they inhabited the back settlements of the Mauretanias and Numidian provinces, the country, as they have since been termed by the Arabs, of dates and of olives; and that, as the Roman power declined in Africa, the boundary of civilized manners and cultivated land was insensibly contracted. Beyond the utmost limits of the Moors, the vast and inhospitable desert of the South extends above a thousand miles to the banks of the Niger. The ancients, who had a very farthing and imperfect knowledge of the great peninsula of Africa, were sometimes tempted to believe that the narrow zone must ever remain destitute of inhabitants; and they sometimes amused their fancy by filling the vacant space with headless men, or rather monsters; with horses and elephant-footed satyrs; with fabulous centuries, and with human piggies, who wagged a bold and
doubtful warfare against the cranes. Carthage would have trembled at the strange intelligence, that the countries, on either side of the equator, were filled with innumerable nations, who differed only in their colour from the ordinary appearance of the human species; and the subjects of the Roman empire might have anxiously expected, that the swarms of barbarians, which issued from the north, would soon be encountered from the south by new swarms of barbarians, equally fierce, and equally formidable. Those glumy terrors would indeed have been dispelled by a more intimate acquaintance with the character of their African enemies. The inaction of the negro does not seem to be the effect, either of their virtue, or of their pusillanimity. They indulge, like the rest of mankind, their passions and appetites; and the adjacent tribes are engaged in frequent acts of hostility. But their rude ignorance has never invented any effectual weapons of defence, or of destruction; they appear incapable of forming any extensive plans of government, or conquest; and the obvious inferiority of their materials cannot be discovered and abused by the nations of the south so easily. Sixty-thousand blacks are annually embarked from the coast of Guinea, never to return to their native country; but they are entangled in chains; and this constant emigration, which, in the space of two centuries, might have furnished armies to overrun the globe, accrues the guilt of Europe, and the weakness of Africa.

IV. The ignominious treaty.

The Persians, which saved the army of Jovius, had been faithfully executed on the side of the Romans; and as they had solemnly renounced the sovereignty and alliance of Armenia and Iberia, those tributary kingdoms were exposed, without protection, to the arms of the Persian monarch. Sapor entered the Armenian territories at the head of a formidable host of cuirassiers, of archers, and of mercurial foot; but it was the invariable practice of Sapor to mix war and negotiation, and to consider falsehood and perfidy as the most powerful instruments of regal policy. He affected to praise the prudent and moderate conduct of the king of Armenia, and the unambitious Tiranaus was persuaded, by the repeated assurances of illustrious friendship, to deliver his person into the hands of a faithless and cruel enemy. In the midst of a splendid entertainment, he was bound in chains of silver, as an honour due to the blood of the Arsacides; and, after a short subjugation in the Tower of Odibun at Ecbatana, he was released from the miseries of life, either by his own dagger, or by that of an assassin. The kingdom of Armenia was reduced to the state of a Persian province; the administration was shared between a distinguished satrap and a favourite eunuch; and Sapor marched, without delay, to subdue the

martial spirit of the Iberians. Sauronaces, who resigned in that country by the permission of the emperors, was expelled by a superior force; and, as an insult on the majesty of Rome, the king of kings placed a diadem on the head of his object, Vaspurakan. The city of Artagepan was the only place of Armenia which presumed to resist the effort of his arms. The treasure deposited in that strong fortress tempted the avance of Sapor; but the danger of Olympia, the wife, or widow, of the Armenian king, excited the public compassion, and animated the desperate valour of her subjects and soldiers. The Persians were surprised and repulsed under the walls of Artagepan, by a bold and well-concerted sally of the besieged. But the forces of Sapor were continually renewed and increased; the haughty courage of the garrison was exhausted; the strength of the walls yielded to the assault; and the proud conqueror, after wasting the rebellious city with fire and sword, led away captive an unfortunate people, whose destinies in a future scene, had been the united tides of the son of Constantine. Yet if Sapor already triumphed in the easy conquest of two dependent kingdoms, he soon felt, that a country is unsubdued, as long as the minds of the people are actuated by such hostile and contumacious spirit. The satraps, whom he was obliged to trust, embraced the first opportunity of regaining the affection of their countrymen, and of signalling their immortal hatred to the Persian name. Since the conversion of the Armenians and Iberians, those nations considered the Christians as the favourites, and the Magi as the adversaries, of the Supreme Being; the influence of the clergy, over a superstitious people, was uniformly exerted in the cause of Rome; and as long as the successors of Constantine disputed with those of Artaxerxes the sovereignty of the intermediate provinces, the religious contention always threw a decisive advantage into the scale of the empire. A numerous and active party acknowledged Para, the son of Tiranaus, as the lawful sovereign of Armenia, and his title to the throne was deeply rooted in the hereditary succession of five hundred years. By the threatenings of the Iberians, the country was equally divided between the rival princes; and Aaspuruus, who owed his diadem to the choice of Sapor, was obliged to declare, that his regard for his children, who were detained as hostages by the tyrant, was the only consideration which prevented him from opening the gates of alliance to Persia. The emperor Valens, who respected the obligations of the treaty, and who was apprehensive of involving the East in a dangerous war, rested, with slow and cautious measures, to support the Roman party in the kingdoms of Iberia and Armenia. Twelve legions established the authority of Sauronaces on the banks of the Cyrus. The Euphrates was protected by the value of

120 The title of the chapter is from the Hieroc. (Hist. xiii. 6.)
121 This was the day of a great festival. (Hieron. Philos. Lat. xc. 14. p. 142.)
122 The Euphrates is defended by Sauronaces. (Tudor, Hist. xiii. 6.)
123 The title of the chapter is from the Hieroc. (Hist. xiii. 6.)
124 This is the only place of Armenia which resisted the efforts of Sapor. The Persians were surprised and repulsed under the walls of Artagepan, by a bold and well-concerted sally of the besieged. But the forces of Sapor were continually renewed and increased; the haughty courage of the garrison was exhausted; the strength of the walls yielded to the assault; and the proud conqueror, after wasting the rebellious city with fire and sword, led away captive an unfortunate people, whose destinies in a future scene, had been the united tides of the son of Constantine. Yet if Sapor already triumphed in the easy conquest of two dependent kingdoms, he soon felt, that a country is unsubdued, as long as the minds of the people are actuated by such hostile and contumacious spirit. The satraps, whom he was obliged to trust, embraced the first opportunity of regaining the affection of their countrymen, and of signalling their immortal hatred to the Persian name. Since the conversion of the Armenians and Iberians, those nations considered the Christians as the favourites, and the Magi as the adversaries, of the Supreme Being; the influence of the clergy, over a superstitious people, was uniformly exerted in the cause of Rome; and as long as the successors of Constantine disputed with those of Artaxerxes the sovereignty of the intermediate provinces, the religious contention always threw a decisive advantage into the scale of the empire. A numerous and active party acknowledged Para, the son of Tiranaus, as the lawful sovereign of Armenia, and his title to the throne was deeply rooted in the hereditary succession of five hundred years. By the threatenings of the Iberians, the country was equally divided between the rival princes; and Aaspuruus, who owed his diadem to the choice of Sapor, was obliged to declare, that his regard for his children, who were detained as hostages by the tyrant, was the only consideration which prevented him from opening the gates of alliance to Persia. The emperor Valens, who respected the obligations of the treaty, and who was apprehensive of involving the East in a dangerous war, rested, with slow and cautious measures, to support the Roman party in the kingdoms of Iberia and Armenia. Twelve legions established the authority of Sauronaces on the banks of the Cyrus. The Euphrates was protected by the value of
Arius Theodorus. A powerful army, under the command of count Trajan, and of Valerianus, king of the Alamanii, fixed their camp on the confines of Armenia. But they were strictly enjoined not to commit the first hostilities, which might be understood as a breach of the treaty; and such was the implicit obedience of the Roman general, that they retreated, with exemplary patience, under a show of Persian arrows, till they had clearly acquired a just title to an honourable and legitimate victory. Yet these appearances of war uneasily subsided in a vain and tedious negotiation. The contending parties supported their claims by mutual reproaches of perjury and ambition; and it should seem, that the original treaty was expressed in very obscurer terms, since they were reduced to the necessity of making their incommensurate appeal to the partial testimony of the generals of the two nations, who had assisted at the negotiations. The invasion of the Goths and Huns, which soon afterwards shook the foundations of the Roman empire, exposed the provinces of Asia to the arms of Sapor. But the declining age, and perhaps the infirmity, of the monarch, suggested new maxims of tranquillity and moderation. His death, which happened in the full maturity of a reign of seventy years, changed in a moment the court and councils of Persia; and their attention was most probably engaged by domestic troubles, and the distant efforts of a Carthaginian war. The remembrance of ancient injuries was lost in the enjoyment of peace. The kingdoms of Armenia and Iberia were permitted, by the mutual, though tacit, consent of both empires, to resume their doubtful neutrality. In the first years of the reign of Tectulose, a Persian embassy arrived at Constantinople, to excuse the unjustifiable measures of the former reign; and to offer, as the tribute of friendship, or even of respect, a splendid present of gems, of silk, and of Indian elephants.

The memory of the affairs of the East under the reign of Valens, the adventures of Par found one of the most striking and singular objects. The noble youth, by the persuasion of his mother Euphemia, had escaped through the Persian host that besieged Arthroessa, and implored the protection of the emperor of the East. By his timely council, Par was alternately supported, and recalled, and restored, and betrayed. The hopes of the Armenians were sometimes raised by the presence of their natural sovereign; and the ministers of Valens were satisfied, that they preserved the integrity of the public faith, if their vigil was not suffered to assume the diadem and title of king. But they soon repented of their own rashness. They were confounded by the reproaches of the Persian monarchs. They found reason to distrust the cruel and inconstant temper of Par himself; who sacrificed, to the slightest suspicion, the lives of his most faithful servants; and held a secret and disgraceful correspondence with the madness of his father and the enemy of his country. Under the specious pretence of consulting with the emperor on the subject of their common interest, Par was persuaded to descend from the mountains of Armenia, where his party was in arms, and to trust his independence and safety to the discretion of a petty prince. The king of Armenia, for such he appeared in his own eyes, and in those of his nation, was received with due honours by the governors of the provinces through which he passed; but when he arrived at Tarsus in Cilicia, his progress was stopped under various pretences; his motions were watched with respectful vigilance, and he gradually discovered, that he was a prisoner in the hands of the Romans. Par suppressed his indignation, dissembled his fear, and, secretly preparing his escape, mounted on horseback with three hundred of his faithful followers. The officer stationed at the door of his apartment, immediately communicated his flight to the consular of Cilicia, who overtook him in the suburb, and endeavoured, without success, to dissuade him from prosecuting his rash and dangerous design. A legion was ordered to pursue the royal fugitive; but the pursuit of infantry could not be very alarming to a body of light cavalry; and upon the first cloud of arrows that was discharged into the air, they retreated with precipitation to the gates of Tarsus. After an incessant march of two days and two nights, Par and his Armenians reached the banks of the Euphrates; but the passage of the river, which they were obliged to swim, was attended with some delay and some loss. The country was alarmed; and the two roads, which were only separated by an interval of three miles, had been occupied by a thousand archers on horseback, under the command of a count and a tribune. Par must have yielded to superior force, if the accidental arrival of a friendly traveller had not revealed the danger and the means of escape. A dark and almost impervious path securely conveyed the Armenian troop through the thickness; and Par had left behind him the count and the tribune, while they impatiently expected his approach along the public highways. They returned to the Imperial court, to excuse their want of diligence or success; and seriously alleged, that the king of Armenia, who was a skilful magician, had transformed himself and his followers, and passed before their eyes under a borrowed shape. After his return to his native kingdom, Par still continued to profess himself the friend and ally of the Romans; but the Romans had injured him too deeply ever to forgive, and the secret sentence of his death was signed in the council of Valens. The execution of the bloody deed was

120. The absence of that moral mark, has excused the Sassanian cruelty with impunity and impunity; but it is in proportion approved to the injustice done.
committed to the subtle prudence of count Trajan; and he had the merit of instilling himself into the confidence of the credulous prince, that he might find an opportunity of stabbing him to the heart. Para was invited to a Roman banquet, which had been prepared with all the pomp and magnificence of the East; the hall resounded with cheerful music, and the company was already heated with wine; when the count retired for an instant, drew his sword, and gave the signal of the murder. A robust and desperate barbarian instantly rushed on the king of Armenia; and though he bravely defended his life with the first weapon that chance offered to his hand, the table of the Imperial general was stained with the royal blood of a guest and an ally. Such were the weak and wicked maxims of the Roman administration, that, to attain a doubtful object of political interest, the laws of nations, and the sacred rights of hospitality, were inhumanly violated in the face of the world.129

V. During a peaceful interval of thirty years, the Romans secured their frontiers, and the Goths extended their dominions. The victories of the great Hermannic,130 king of the Ostrogoths, and the most notable of the race of the Amali, have been compared, by the enthusiasm of his countrymen, to the exploits of Alexander: with this singular, and almost incredible, difference, that the martial spirit of the Gothic hero, instead of being supported by the vigour of youth, was displayed with glory and success in the extreme period of human life, between the age of fourscore and one hundred and ten years. The independent tribes were persuaded, or compelled, to acknowledge the king of the Ostrogoths as the sovereign of the Gothic nation: the chiefs of the Visigoths, or Thervingi, renounced the royal title, and assumed the more humble appellation of Judges; and, among those judges, Athanaric, Fritigern, and Alaricus, were the most illustrious, by their personal merit, as well as by their victory, in the Roman provinces. These domestic conquests, which increased the military power of Hermannic, enlarged his ambitious designs. He invaded the adjacent countries of the North; and twelve considerable nations, whose names and limits cannot be accurately defined, successively yielded to the superiority of the Gothic arms.131 The Heruli, who inhabited the marshy lands near the lake Moos, were renowned for their strength and agility; and the assistance of their light infantry was eagerly solicited, and highly esteemed, in all the wars of the barbarians. But the active spirit of the Heruli was subdued by the slow and steady perseverance of the Goths; and, after a bloody motion, in which the king was slain, the remains of that warlike tribe became an useful accession to the camp of Hermannic. He then marched against the Veneti; unskilled in the use of arms, and formidable only by their numbers, which filled the wide extent of the plains of modern Poland. The victorious Goths, who were not inferior in numbers, prevailed in the contest, by the decisive advantages of exercise and discipline. After the submission of the Veneti, the conqueror advanced, without resistance, as far as the confines of the East; 132 an ancient people, whose name is still preserved in the province of Estiaelia. The distant inhabitants of the Baltic coast were supported by the trade of amber, which, enriched by the trade of amber, and consecrated by the peculiar worship of the Mother of the Gods, but the scarcity of iron obliged the Baltic warriors to content themselves with wooden clubs; and the remotion of that wealthy country is ascribed to the pressure, rather than to the arms, of Hermannic. His dominions, which extended from the Danube to the Baltic, included the native seats, and the recent acquisitions, of the Goths; and he reigned over the greatest part of Germany and Scythia with the authority of a conqueror, and sometimes with the cruelty of a tyrant. But he reigned over a part of the globe incapable of perpetuating and adorning the glory of its heroes. The name of Hermannic is almost buried in oblivion; his exploits are imperfectly known; and the Romans themselves appeared unconscious of the progress of an aspiring power, which threatened the liberty of the North, and the peace of the empire.133

The Goths had contracted an hereditary attachment for the Imperial house of Constantine, of whose power and liberality they had received so many signal proofs. They respected the public peace: and if an hostile host sometimes presumed to pass the Roman limit, their irregular conduct was cautiously ascribed to the ungovernable spirit of the barbarian youth. Their contempt for two new and other nations, who had been raised to the throne by a popular election, infuriated the Goths with bitter hopes; and, while they agitated some design of marvelling their confederate force under the national standard,134 they were easily tempted to embrace the party of Preodicus; and to forsake, by their dangerous aid, the civil discord of the Romans. The public treaty might stipulate no more than a thousand auxiliaries; but the design was so zealously adopted by the chiefs of the Visigoths, that the army which passed the Danube amounted to the number of thirty thousand men.135 They marched with the proud confidence, that their invincible valour would decide the fate of the Roman empire; and the provinces of Thrace...
The operations of the campaign were conducted by their skill and experience; but they found it impossible to drive the Visigoths from their strong posts in the mountains; and the devastation of the plains obliged the Romans themselves to repass the Danube on the approach of winter. The incessant rains which swelled the waters of the river, produced a tacit suspension of arms, and confined the emperor Valens, during the whole course of the ensuing summer, to his camp of Marcella. The third year of the war was more favourable to the Romans, and more pernicious to the Goths. The interruption of trade deprived the barbarians of the objects of luxury, which they already contended with the necessities of life; and the desolation of a very extensive tract of country threatened them with the horrors of famine. Athanaric was provoked, or compelled, to risk a battle, which he lost, in the plains; and the pursuit was rendered more bloody by the cruel precaution of the victorious generals, who had promised a large reward for the head of every Goth that was brought into the Imperial camp. The submission of the barbarians approached the renunciation of Valens and his council; the emperor listened with satisfaction to the flattering and eloquent remonstrance of the senate of Constantinople, which assumed, for the first time, a share in the public deliberations; and the same generals, Victor and Arbogast, who had successfully directed the conduct of the war, were empowered to regulate the conditions of peace. The freedom of trade, which the Goths had hitherto enjoyed, was restricted to two perferv in the Danube; the madness of their leaders was severely punished, by the suppression of their pensions and subsidies; and the exception, which was stipulated in favour of Athanaric alone, was more advantageous than honourable to the judge of the Visigoths. Athanaric, who, on this occasion, appears to have consulted his private interest, without expecting the orders of his sovereign, supported his own dignity, and that of his tribe, in the personal interview which was proposed by the ministers of Valens. He persisted in his declaration, that it was impossible for him, without incurring the guilt of perjury, ever to set his foot on the territory of the empire; and it is more than probable, that his regard for the sanctity of an oath was confirmed by the recent and fatal examples of Roman treachery. The Danube, which separated the dominions of the two independent nations, was chosen for the scene of the conference. The emperor of the East, and the judge of the Visigoths, accompanied by an equal number of armed followers, advanced in their respective barges to the middle of the stream. After the ratification of the treaty, and the delivery of hostages, Valens returned in triumph to Constantinople; and the Goths remained in a state of tranquillity about six years, till they were violently impelled against the Roman empire by an innumerable host of Scythians.
who appeared to issue from the frozen regions of the North.\textsuperscript{128}

The emperor of the West, who had resigned to his brother the command of the Lower Danube, reserved for his immediate care the defence of the Illyrian and Illyrian provinces, which spread so many hundred miles along the greatest of the European rivers. The active policy of Valentinian was continually employed in adding new fortifications to the security of the frontier; but the abuse of this policy provoked the just resentment of the barbarians. The Quadi complained, that the ground for an intended fortress had been marked out on their territories; and their complaints were urged with so much reason and moderation, that Equitius, master-general of Illyricum, consented to suspend the prosecution of the work, till he should be more clearly informed of the will of his sovereign. This fair occasion of injuring a rival, and of advancing the fortune of his son, was eagerly embraced by the inhuman Maximus, the prefect, or rather tyrant, of Gaul. The passions of Valentinian were impatience of control; and he resolutely listened to the assurances of his favourite, that if the government of Valeria, and the direction of the work, were intrusted to the seal of his son Marcellinus, the emperor should no longer be imported with the audacious remonstrances of the barbarians. The subjects of Rome, and the natives of Germany, were insulted by the arrogance of a young and worthless minister, who considered his rapid elevation as the proof and reward of his superior merit. He affected, however, to receive the modest application of Gallienus, king of the Quadi, with some attention and regard; but this artful ruse concealed a dark and bloody design, and the credulous prince was persuaded to accept the pressing invitation of Marcellinus. I am at a loss how to vary the narrative of similar crimes; or how to relate, that, in the course of the same year, but in remote parts of the empire, the inexpressible tale of two Imperial generals was stained with the royal blood of two guests and allies, inhumanly murdered by their order, and in their presence. The fate of Gallienus, and of Para, was the same; but the cruel death of their sovereign was represented in a very different manner by the servile temper of the Armenians, and the free and daring spirit of the Germans. The Quadi were much declaimed from that combustible point, which, in the time of Marcus Antoninus, had spread terror to the gates of Rome. But they still possessed arms and courage; their courage was animatated by despair, and they obtained the usual reinforcement of the bravery of their Sarmatian allies. So insuperable was the assault Marcellinus, that he chose the moment when the bravest veterans had been drawn away, to suppress the revolt of Firmus, and the whole province was exposed, with a very feeble defence, to the rage of the exasperated barbarians. They invadied Pannonia in the season of harvest; unmercifully

\textsuperscript{128} The Roman war is described by Ammianus, loc. cit. 15, 8, 3, 331; 374, and Paulinus (Hist. xii, p. 340, 341). The emperor Theodosius was sent from Rome to the Danube, and his army accompanied

values on the Danube; to adduce to the Saxons, and

every object of plunder which they could not easily transport; and either disregarded, or demolished, the empty fortifications. The princess Constantia, the daughter of the emperor Constantine, and the grand-daughter of the great Constantine, very narrowly escaped. That royal maid, who had incessantly supported the revolt of Procopius, was now the destined wife of the heir of the Western empire. She traversed the peaceful province with a splendid and mounted train. Her person was saved from danger, and the republic from disgrace, by the active zeal of Massala, governor of the provinces. As soon as he was informed that the village, where she stopped only to dine, was almost encompassed by the barbarians, he hastily placed her in his own chariot, and drove full speed till he reached the gates of Sirmium, which were at the distance of six and twenty miles. Even Sirmium might not have been secure, if the Quadi and Sarmatians had diligently advanced during the general consternation of the magistrates and people. Their delay allowed Probus, the praetorian prefect, sufficient time to recover his own spirits, and to revive the courage of the citizens. He skilfully directed their strenuous efforts to repair and strengthen the decayed fortifications; and procured the serviceable and effectual assistance of a company of archers, to protect the capital of the Illyrian provinces. Disappointed in their attempts against the walls of Sirmium, the indigant barbarians turned their arms against the master-general of the frontier, to whom they unjustly attributed the murder of their king. Equitius could bring into the field no more than two legions; but they contained the veteran strength of the Maenian and Pannonian bands. The obstinacy with which they disputed the vain honours of rank and precedence, was the cause of their destruction; and, while they acted with separate forces and divided counsels, they were surprised and slaughtered, in the active vigour of the Sarmatian horse. The success of this invasion provoked the mutiny of the bordering tribes; and the province of Moesia infallibly would have been lost, if young Tacitus, the duke, or military commander, of the frontier, had not signalised, in the defeat of the public enemy, an ingratitude worthy of his illustrious father, and of his future greatness.\textsuperscript{129}

The intiul of Valentinian, who then resided at Treves, was deeply affected by the calamities of Illyricum; but the lateness of the season suspended the execution of his designs till the ensuing spring. He marched in person, with a considerable part of the forces of Gaul, from the banks of the Masellae; and to the suppliant ambassadors of the Sarmatians, who met him on the way, he returned a doubtful answer, that, as soon as he reached the scene of action, he should examine, and pronounce. When he arrived at Sirrium, he gave audience to the deputies of the Illyrian provinces; who loudly congratulated their own felicity under the amiable
government of Probus, his pretorian prefect. 113
Valentinian, who was flattered by these demonstrations of their loyalty and gratitude, imprudently asked the deputy of Epirus, a Cynic philosopher of reputed sincerity, 114 whether he was likely to be sent by the wishes of the province? "With tears and groans am I sent (replied "Iphicrates") by a reluctant people." The emperor answered, but the impertinence of his ministers established the pernicious Maximian, that they might oppress his subjects, without injuring his service. A strict inquiry into their conduct would have relieved the public discontent. The severe condemnation of the minister of Gabininus was the only measure which could restore the confidence of the Germans; and vindicate the honour of the Roman name. But the haughty monarch was incapable of the magnanimity which dares to acknowledge a fault. He forgot the provocations, remembered only the injury, and advanced into the country of the Quadi with an insatiate thirst of blood and revenge. The extreme devastation, and promiscuous massacre, of a savage war, were justified, in the eyes of the emperor, and perhaps in those of the world, by the cruel equity of retaliation; 115 and such was the discipline of the Romans, and the consternation of the enemy, that Valentinian pressed the Danube without the loss of a single man. As he had resolved to complete the destruction of the Quadi by a second campaign, he fixed his winter-quarters at Brogstatic, on the Danube, near the Hungarian city of Presburg. While the operations of war were suspended by the severity of the weather, the Quadi made an humble attempt to deplore the wrath of their conqueror; and, at the earnest persuasion of Equinius, their ambassadors were introduced into the Imperial council. They approached the throne with bended bodies, and dejected countenances; and, without daring to complain of the murder of their king, they affirmed, with solemn oaths, that the late invasion was the crime of some irregular robbers, which the public council of the nation condemned and abhorred. The answer of the emperor left them but little to hope from his clemency or compassion. He reviled, in the most intemperate language, their baseness, their ingratitude, their insolence. — His eyes, his voice, his colour, his gestures, expressed the violence of his ungoverned fury; and, while his whole frame was agitated with convulsive passion, a large blood-vessel suddenly burst in his body; and Valentinian fell speechless into the arms of his attendants. Their pious care immediately concealed his situation from the crowd: but, in a few minutes, the emperor of the Western was expired in an agony of pain; retaining his senses till the last; and struggling, without success, to declare his intentions to the generals and ministers, who surrounded the royal couch. Valentinian was about fifty-four years of age; and he wanted only one hundred days to accomplish the twelve years of his reign. 116

The polygamy of Valentinian is seriously attested by an ecclesiastical historian. 117 The emperor Severus was the son of a senatorial family. 118 The emperor Severus (I relate the fable) admitted into his familiar society the lovely Justinia, the daughter of an Italian governor: her admiration of those naked charms, which she had often seen in the bath, was expressed with such laud and impartial prudent praise, that the emperor was tempted to introduce a second wife into his bed; and his public edict extended to all the subjects of the empire, the same domestic privilege, which he had assumed for himself. 119

But we may be assured, from the evidence of reason, as well as history, that the two marriages of Valentinian, with Severa, and with Justinia, were successively contracted; and that he used the ancient institution of divorce, which was still allowed by the laws, though it was condemned by the church. Severa was the mother of Gratian, who seemed to unite every claim which could entitle him to the undoubted succession of the Western empire. He was the eldest son of a monarch, whose glorious reign had confirmed the free and honourable choice of his fellow-soldiers. Before he had attained the ninth year of his age, the royal youth received from the hands of his indulgent father the purple robe and diadem, with the title of Augustus: the election was solemnly ratified by the consent and applause of the armies of Gaul; 120 and the name of Gratian was added to the names of Valentinian and Valens, in all the legal transactions of the Roman government. By his marriage with the grand-daughter of Constantine, the son of Valentinian acquired all the hereditary rights of the Flavian family; which, in a series of three Imperial generations, were sanctified by time, religion, and the reverence of the people. At the death of his father, the royal youth was in the seventeenth year of his age; and his virtues already justified the favourable opinion of the army and people. But Gratian resided, without apprehension, in the palace of Troyes; whilst, at the distance of many hundred miles, Valentinian suddenly expired in the camp of Brogstatic. The passions, which had been so long suppressed by the presence of a master, immediately revived in the Imperial council; and the ambitious design of reigning in the name of an infant, was artfully

113. Leobinus (ed. 495) who is destroyed by the son.
executed by Mithridates and Eumenes, who commanded the attachment of the Illyrian and Italian bands. They enticed the most honourable pretences to remove the popular leaders, and the troops of Gaul, who might have asserted the claims of the lawful successor: they suggested the necessity of extinguishing the hopes of foreign and domestic enemies, by a bold and decisive measure. The empress Justina, who had been left in a palace about one hundred miles from Bregesio, was respectfully invited to appear in the camp, with the son of the deceased emperor. On the sixth day after the death of Valentinian, the infant prince of the same name, who was only four years old, was shown in the arms of his mother, to the legions; and solemnly invested, by military acclamation, with the titles and insignia of supreme power. The impending dangers of a civil war were seasonably prevented by the wise and moderate conduct of the emperor Grazian. He cheerfully accepted the choice of the army; declared, that he should always consider the son of Justina as a brother, not as a rival; and advised the empress, with her son Valentinian, to fix their residence at Milan, in the fair and peaceful province of Italy; while he assumed the more arduous command of the countries beyond the Alps. Grazian dissembled his resentment, till he could safely punish, or disgrace, the authors of the conspiracy; and though he uniformly behaved with tenderness and regard to his infant colleagues, he gradually confounded, in the administration of the Western empire, the office of a guardian with the authority of a sovereign. The government of the Roman world was exercised in the united names of Valens and his two nephews; but the feeble emperor of the East, who succeeded to the rank of his elder brother, never obtained any weight or influence in the councils of the West.112

CHAP. XXVI.


In the second year of the reign of Valentinian and Valens, on the morning of the twenty-first day of July, the greatest part of the Roman world was shaken by a violent and destructive earthquake. The impression was communicated to the waters; the shores of the Mediterranean were left dry; by the sudden retreat of the sea; great quantities of fish were caught with the hand; large vessels were stranded on the mud; and a curious spec-

112 Justina, xxvii. 10. Justina, xxv. 4. p. 723. 323. Theodosius I. (A.D. 379) is considered the last emperor of the Western Empire. Theodosius II. (A.D. 408) is considered the last emperor of the Eastern Empire.

2 In the letter of Ambrose (xxvii. 11), that is not easy to distinguish his facts from his passions. Yet insensibly affairs, the manner, and the condition of the day, may produce effects, if the minds of those who read them are disposed to receive them.
the Gothic nation, which advanced, in less than forty years, from the Danube to the Atlantic, and opened a way, by the success of their arms, to the inroads of so many hostile tribes, more savage than themselves. The original principle of motion was concealed in the remote countries of the North; and the curious observation of the pastoral life of the Scythians, or Tartars, will illustrate the latent cause of these destructive emigrations.

The different characters that mark the civilised nations of the globe, may be ascribed to the use, and the abus, of reason; which so variously shapes, and so artificially composes, the manners and opinions of an European, or a Chinese. But the operation of instinct is more sure and simple than that of reason: it is much easier to ascertain the appetite of a quadruped, than the speculations of a philosopher, and the savage manner of mankind; as they approach nearer to the condition of animals, possess a stronger resemblance to themselves and to each other. The uniform stability of their manners is the natural consequence of the imperfection of their faculties. Reduced to a similar situation, their wants, their desires, their enjoyments, still continue the same: and the influence of food or climate, which, in a more improved state of society, is suspended or subdued by so many moral causes, most powerfully contributes to form, and to maintain, the natural character of barbarism. In every age, the immense plains of Scythia, or Tartary, have been inhabited by savage tribes of hunters and shepherds, whose indolence refuses to cultivate the earth, and whose restless spirit disdains the confinement of a sedentary life. In every age, the Scythians and Tartars have been renowned for their invincible courage, and rapid conquests. The thrones of Asia have been repeatedly overturned by the shepherds of the North; and their arms have spread terror and devastation over the most fertile and warlike countries of Europe. On this occasion, as well as on many others, the sober historian is forcibly awaked from a pleasing vision; and is compelled, with some reluctance, to confess, that the pastoral manners, which have been adorned with the fairest attributes of peace and innocence, are much better adapted to the fierce and cruel habits of a military life. To illustrate this observation, I shall now proceed to consider a nation of shepherds and of warriors, in the three important articles of I. their diet; II. their habits; and III. their exercises. The narrations of ancient

4 The original Scythians of Tartary, were a nine tribe, the exact, and as sought the scenes of age. In the chasms of the mountains of Crimea, and in the Carpathians, the Tartars spread the saigant; and the Tatars, when they cannot obtain their subsistence by another white nation. (Preuss, in the Hist. de l'Asie, tom. i. p. 75.)

5 Tartary is the appellation of the Scythians, or Tartars.

6 See the following nations from Asia.

7 The ancient Persians and Egyptians possessed a commerce, almost interriment; and the banks of the Nile, or of the Solenga, will indifferently present the same uniform spectacle of similar and native manners.

I. The corn, or even the rice, which constitutes the ordinary and wholesome food of a civilized people, can be obtained only by the patient labor of the husbandman. Some of the happy savages, who dwell between the tropics, are plentifully nourished by the liberality of nature; but in the climes of the north, a nation of shepherds is reduced to their flocks and herds. The skillful practitioners of the medical art will determine (if they are able to determine) how far the temper of the human mind may be affected by the use of animal or vegetable food; and whether the custom of carnivoious and cruel desires to be considered in any other light than that of an innocent, perhaps a sanguine, peculiarity of human nature. Yet, is it to be expected, that the sentiment of compassion is imperceptibly weakened by the sight and practice of domestic cruelty, we may observe, that the horrid object, which is disguised by the arts of European refinement, is exhibited in their naked and most disgusting simplicity in the tom of a Tartarian shepherd. The ox, or the sheep, are slaughtered by the same hand from which they were accustomed to receive their daily food; and the bleeding limbs are served, with very little preparation, on the table of their unfeeling murderer. In the military profession, and especially in the conduct of a numerous army, the exclusive use of animal food appears to be productive of the most solid advantages. Corn is a bulky and perishable commodity; and the large magazines, which are indispensably necessary for the subsistence of our troops, must be slowly transported by the labor of men or horses. But the flocks and herds, which accompany the march of the Tartars, afford a sure and increasing supply of flesh and milk: in the far greater part of the uncultivated waste, the vegetation of the grass is quick and luxuriant, and there are few places to extremely barren, that the hardy cattle of the north cannot find some tolerable pasture. The supply is multiplied and prolonged, by the undistinguishing appetite, and patient abstinence, of the Tartars. They indifferently feed on the flesh of those animals that have been killed for the table; or have died of disease. Horse-flesh, which in every age and country has been prohibited by the civilized nations of Europe and Asia, they devour with peculiar greediness; and this singular

8 The Turks are the most related from their primitive continues.

9 The Tatars are also the appellation of the Tartars, who are the original inhabitants of the Carpathian mountains. It bears this particular name, because the Tartars, who formerly inhabited this region, were called Tatars, from its being the limit of their territory.
last taste facilitates the success of their military operations. The active cavalry of Scythia is always followed, in their most distant and rapid incursions, by an adequate number of spare horses, who may be occasionally used, either to redouble the speed, or to satisfy the hunger, of the barbarians. Many are the resources of courage and poverty. When the forage round a camp of Tartares is almost consumed, they slaughter the greatest part of their cattle, and preserve the flesh, either smoked, or dried in the sun. On the sudden emergency of a hasty march, they provide themselves with a sufficient quantity of little balls of cheese, or rather hard curd, which they occasionally dispose in mounds; and this unskillful dish will support, for many days, the life, and even the spirits, of the patient warrior. But this extraordinary abstinence, which the Stoic would approve, and the hermit might envy, is commonly succeeded by the most nauseous indulgence of appetites. The wines of Scythia, whose climate is the most grateful present, or the most valuable commodity, that can be offered to the Tartars; and the only example of their industry seems to consist in the art of extracting from mares' milk a fermented liquor, which possesses a very strong power of intoxication. Like the animals of prey, the savage, both of the old and new world, experience, the alternate visceroctomy of famine and plenty; and their stomach is insurmountable in want, without much inconvenience, the opposite extremes of hunger and of intemperance.

II. In the ages of rustic and martial simplicity, a people of soldiers and husbandmen are dispersed over the face of an extensive and cultivated country; and some time most claps before the swarthy youth of Greece or Italy could be assembled under the same standard, either to defend their own confines, or to invade the territories of the adjacent tribes. The progress of manufactures and commerce insensibly collects a large multitude within the walls of a city; but these citizens are no longer soldiers; and the arts which allure and improve the state of civil society, corrupt the habits of the military life. The pastoral manners of the Scyths seem to unite the different advantages of simplicity and refinement. The individuals of the same tribe are constantly assembled, but they are assembled in a camp; and the native spirit of these harmless shepherds is animated by mutual support and emulation. The houses of the Tartars are no more than small tents, of an oval form, which afford a cold and dirty habitation for the promiscuous youth of both sexes. The palaces of the rich consist of wooden huts, of such a size that they may be conveniently fixed on large wagons, and drawn by a team perhaps of twenty or thirty oxen. The flocks and herds, after grazing all day, in the adjacent pastures, retire, on the approach of night, within the protection of the camp. The necessity of preventing the most mischievous

68 Tartares of uncommercial have been discovered by F. I. de Cisneros (Florina, de Italia, etc. 61), as different, and hostilities important, in the Chinese language; while the same also under the same name occurs in the Chinese language, which also contained the same as under Chinese language. The Tartars, T
discipline, is the only alteration which is required in real war; and the assessments of the cities serve as a prelude to the conquest of an empire. 13

The political society of the ancient Germans has the appearance of a voluntary alliance of independent warriors. The tribes of Scythia, distinguished by the modern appellation of Hords, assume the form of a numerous and increasing family; which, in the course of successive generations, has been propagated from the same original stock. The remotest, and most ignorant, of the Tartars, preserve, with conscious pride, the inestimable treasure of their genealogy; and whatever distinctions of rank may have been introduced, by the unequal distribution of pastoral wealth, they mutually respect themselves, and each other, as the descendants of the first founder of the tribe. The custom, which still prevails, of adopting the bravest and most faithful of the captives, may account, for the very probable suspicion, that this extensive consanguinity is, in a great measure, legal and fictitious. But the useful prejudice, which has obtained the sanction of time and opinion, produces the effects of truth; the haggy barbarians yield a cheerful and voluntary obedience to the head of their blood; and their chief, or nurum, as the representative of their great father, exercises the authority of a judge, in peace, and of a leader, in war. In the original state of the pastoral world, such of the nurums (if we may continue to use a modern appellation) acted as the independent chief of a large and separate family; and the limits of their peculiar territories were gradually fixed, by superior force, or mutual consent. But the constant operation of various and permanent causes contributed to unite the vagrant hords into national communities, under the command of a supreme head. The weak were desirous of support, and the strong were ambitious of dominion; the power, which is the result of union, oppressed and collected the divided forces of the adjacent tribes; and, as the vanquished were freely admitted to share the advantages of victory, the most valiant chiefs hastened to range themselves and their followers under the formidable standard of a confederate nation. The most successful of the Tartar princes assumed the military command, to which he was entitled by the superiority, either of merit, or of power. He was raised to the throne by the acclamations of his equals; and the title of Khan expresses, in the language of the north of Asia, the full extent of the royal dignity. The right of hereditary succession was long confined to the blood of the founder of the monarchy; and at this moment all the kama, who reign from Crimea to the wall of China, are the literal descendants of the renowned Zinga. 14

But, as it is the indispensable duty of a Tartar sovereign to lead his warlike subjects into the field, the claims of an infant are often disregarded; and some royal kinsman, distinguished by his age and valour, is intrusted with the

13 See the second volume of the Genealogical History of the Tartars; and the list of the Khans, at the end of the life of Zinga, at page 329. The sovereigns of Tibet, in attempting to separate, as they supposed, the descendants of Zinga, still bore the appellation of Khan; and the commerce of the Tartars, to China and the west, was intrusted to the same potentate. See the Chinese Embassy in the Reign of Charles II, by Captain Blanford, p. 111. Aurel Stein, in his Journeys in Central Asia, p. 367, says, 'The Tartar emperors of China are not Tartars, but descendants of Zinga.'

14 See the second volume of the Genealogical History of the Tartars; and the list of the Khans, at the end of the life of Zinga, at page 329. The sovereigns of Tibet, in attempting to separate, as they supposed, the descendants of Zinga, still bore the appellation of Khan; and the commerce of the Tartars, to China and the west, was intrusted to the same potentate. See the Chinese Embassy in the Reign of Charles II, by Captain Blanford, p. 111. Aurel Stein, in his Journeys in Central Asia, p. 367, says, 'The Tartar emperors of China are not Tartars, but descendants of Zinga.'
and acquirer of his predecessor. Two distinct and regular taxes are levied on the tribes, to support the dignity of their national monarch, and of their peculiar chief; and each of these contributions amounts to the title, both of their property, and of their spoil. A Tartar sovereign enjoys the tenth part of the wealth of his people; and as his own domestic riches of stock and horses increase in a much larger proportion, he is able plentifully to maintain the rustic splendour of his court, to reward the most deserving, or the most favoured, of his followers, and to obtain, from the gentle influence of corruption, the obedience which might be sometimes refused to the stern mandates of authority. The manners of his subjects, acclimated, like himself, to blood and rapine, might excite, in their eyes, such partial acts of tyranny, as would excite the horror of a civilised people; but the power of a despot has never been acknowledged in the deserts of Scythia. The immediate jurisdiction of the Khan is confined within the limits of his own tribe; and the exercise of his royal prerogative has been moderated by the ancient institution of a national council. The Consuliate, or Diet, of the Tartars, was regularly held in the spring and autumn, in the midst of a plain where the princes of the reindeer families, and the representatives of the respective tribes, may conveniently assemble on horseback, with their martial and numerous trains; and the ambitious monarch, who reviewed the strength, must consult the inclination, of an armed people. The rudiments of a feudal government may be discovered in the constitution of the Scythian or Tartar nations; but the perpetual conflict of those hostile nations has sometimes terminated in the establishment of a powerful and despotic empire. The victor, enriched by the tribute, and fortified by the arms, of dependent kings, has spread his conquests over Europe or Asia; the successful shepherds of the north have submitted to the confinement of arts, of laws, and of cities; and the introduction of luxury, after destroying the freedom of the people, has undermined the foundations of the throne. 14

The memory of past events cannot long be preserved, in the frequent and remote emigrations of the illiterate barbarians. The modern Tartars are ignorant of the conquests of their ancestors; and our knowledge of the history of the Scythians is derived from their intercourse with the learned and civilised nations of the south, the Greeks, the Persians, and the Chinese. The Greeks, who navigated the Euxine, and planted their colonies along the sea-coast, made the gradual and imperfect discovery of Scythia; from the Danube, and the confines of Thrace, as far as the Ironian Mysia, the seat of eternal winter, and Mount Caucanus, which, in the language of poetry, was described as the utmost boundary of the earth. They celebrated, with simple credulity, the virtues of a pastoral life; they entertained a more rational apprehension of the strength and numbers of the warlike barbarians, who contemptuously baffled the immense armament of Darius, the son of Hystaspes. The Persian monarchs had extended their western conquests to the banks of the Danube, and the limits of European Scythia. The eastern provinces of their empire were exposed to the Scythians of Asia; the wild inhabitants of the plains beyond the Oxus and the Jaxartes, two mighty rivers, which direct their course towards the Caspian Sea, and the racquet of Iran and Turan is still the theme of history or romance: the famous, perhaps the fabulous, valour of the Persian heroes, Rustan and Asfandiyar, was signalised, in the defence of their country, against the Afghans of the north; and the invincible spirit of the same barbarians resisted, on the same ground, the victorious arms of Cyrus and Alexander. In the eyes of the Greeks and Persians, the real geography of Scythia was bounded, on the east, by the mountains of Immon, or Caf; and their distant prospect of the extreme and inaccessible parts of Asia was clouded by ignorance, or perplexed by fiction. But these inaccessible regions are the ancient residence of a powerful and civilised nation, which ascends, by a probable tradition, above forty centuries, and which is able to verify a series of near two thousand years, by the perpetual testimony of accurate and contemporary historians. 15 The annals of China 15 illustrate the state and revolutions of the pastoral.
tribes, which may still be distinguished by the vague appellation of Scythians, or Tartars; the vessels, the cemeteries, and sometimes the conquerors, of a great empire; whose policy has uniformly opposed the blind and impetuous valour of the barbarians of the north. From the mouth of the Danube to the sea of Japan, the whole longitude of Scythia is about one hundred and ten degrees, which, in that parallel, are equal to more than five thousand miles. The latitude of these extensive deserts cannot be so easily, or so accurately, measured; but, from the fourtieth degree, which touches the wall of China, we may securely advance above a thousand miles to the northward, till our progress is stopped by the excessive cold of Siberia.

In that dreary climate, instead of the animated picture of a Tartar camp, the smoke which issues from the earth, or rather from the snow, betrays the subterraneous dwellings of the Tungusen, and the Banuksen: the want of horses and even is imperfectly supplied by the use of reindeer, and of large dogs; and the conquerors of the earth insensibly degenerate into a race of debauched and diminutive savages, who tremble at the sound of arms. The Huns, who under the reign of Valens threatened the empire of Rome, had been formidable, in a much earlier period, to the empire of China. Their ancient, perhaps their original, seat was an extensive, though dry and barren, tract of country, immediately on the barren side of the great wall. Their place is at present occupied by the forty-nine towns or barriers of the Mongous, a pastoral nation, which consists of about two hundred thousand families. But the valour of the Huns had extended the narrow limits of their dominions; and their rustic chiefs, of Scythian origin, who assumed the appellation of Tartar, gradually became the conquerors, and the sovereigns, of a formidable empire. Towards the east, their victorious arms were stopped only by the ocean; and the tribes, which are thinly scattered between the Amoor and the extreme peninsula of Korea, adhered, with reluctance, to the standard of the Huns. On the west, near the head of the Irish, and in the valleys of Issus, they found a more ample space, and more numerous enemies. One of the lieutenants of the Tangut subdued, in a single expedition, twenty-six nations; the Iguna, distinguished above the Tartar race by the use of letters, were in the number of his vessels; and, by the strange confection of human events, the flight of one of these vagrant tribes recalled the victorious Parthians from the invasion of Syria.  


21 In the Chinese Travels, p. 194. See also the original history of Angu in the Chinese Travels, p. 194. The description of the Angu country, in part i. p. 105, seems to comprehend a part of their country.

22 See in the Chinese Travels, p. 118, a printed description of the Angu.

23 The Iguna, or Angu, were divested of their immortal race; horsemen, archers, and artisans; and the last town was depopulated by the Tartars, who offer no opposition to the invader. See the Chinese Travels, p. 203, and the Travels of Father de Tixier, tom. ii. p. 273.

inclement labour of intellectual mariners. A regular payment of money, and silk, was stipulated as the condition of a temporary and precarious peace; and the wretched expedient of disguising a real tribute, under the names of a gift or a subsidy, was practised by the emperors of China, as well as by those of Rome. But there still remained a more disgraceful article of tribute, which violated the sacred feelings of humanity and nature. The hardships of the savage life, which destroy in their infancy the children who are born with a lean, unhealthy and robust constitution, introduce a remarkable disproportion between the numbers of the two sexes. The Tartars are an ugly and even deformed race; and, while they consider their own women as the instruments of domestic labour, their desire, or rather their appetite, is directed to the enjoyment of more elegant beauty. A select band of the fairest maidens of China was annually devoted to the rude usances of the Huns; and the alliance of the haughty Tanjus was secured by their marriage with the guileless, or adopted, daughters of the imperial family, which vainly attempted to escape the macabre solution. The situation of these unhappy victims is described in the verses of a Chinese princess, who lamented that she had been condemned by her parents to a distant exile, under a barbarian husband, who complains that scant milk was her only drink, raw flesh her only food, a tent her only palace; and who expounds, in a strain of pathetic simplicity, the natural wish, that she were transformed into a bird, to fly back to her dear country, the object of her tender and perpetual regret.

The conquest of China has been twice achieved by the pastoral tribes of the north; the forces of the Huns were not inferior to those of the Monguls, or of the Tartars; and their ambition might entitle the most sanguine hopes of success. But their pride was humbled, and their progress checked, by the arms and policy of Vouts, the fifth successor of the powerful dynasty of the Anic Tian. In his long reign of fifty-four years, the barbarians of the southern provinces submitted to the laws and manners of China; and the ancient limits of the empire were enlarged, from the great river of Kiang, to the sea of Corea. Instead of confining himself to the timid operations of a defensive war, his lieutenants penetrated many hundreds miles into the country of the Huns. In these boundless deserts, where it is impossible to form magazines, and difficult to transport a sufficient supply of provisions, the armies of Vouts were repeatedly exposed to intolerable hardships; and, of one hundred and forty thousand soldiers, who marched against the barbarians, thirty thousand only returned in safety to the foot of their master. These losses, however, were compensated by splendid and decisive success. The Chinese generals improved the superiority which they derived from the temper of their army, their passions of war, and the service of their Tartar auxiliaries. The camp of the Tanjus was surprised in the midst of one of their orgies and inebriation; and, though the monarch of the Huns bravely cut his way through the ranks of the enemy, he left above fifteen thousand of his subjects on the field of battle. Yet this signal victory, which was preceded and followed by many bloody engagements, contributed much less to the destruction of the power of the Huns, than the effectual policy which was employed to detach the tributary nations from their obedience. Imbittered by the arms, or allure by the promises, of Vouts and his successors, the most considerable tribes, both of the east and of the west, disclaimed the authority of the Tanjus. While some acknowledged themselves the allies or vassals of the empire, they all became the implacable enemies of the Huns; and the numbers of that haughty people, as soon as they were reduced to their national strength, might, perhaps, have been contained within the walls of one of the great and populous cities of China. The desertion of his subjects, and the perplexity of a civil war, at length compelled the Tanjus himself to renounce the dignity of an independent sovereign, and the freedom of a warlike and high-spirited nation. He was received at Sigan, the capital of the Anic, by the emperor, and by the monarchy, by the troops, and by the mandarins, and the emperor himself, with all the honours that could adorn and disguise the triumph of Chinese vanity. A magnificent palace was prepared for his reception; his place was assigned above all the princes of the royal family; and the pontiff of the barbarian king was extinguished by the ceremonies of a banquet, which consisted of eight courses of roast, and of nine solemn pieces of music. But he performed, on his knees, the duty of a respectful homage to the emperor of China; pronounced, in his own name, and in the name of his successors, a perpetual oath of fidelity; and gratefully accepted a seal, which was bestowed as the emblem of his royal dependences. After this humiliating submission, the Tanjus sometimes departed from their allegiance, and seized the favourable moments of war and rapine; but the monarchy of the Huns gradually declined, till it was broken, by civil discord, into two hostile and separate kingdoms. One of the princes of the nation was urged, by lust and ambition, to retire towards the south with eight hundred, which composed between forty and fifty thousand families. He obtained, with the title of Tanjus, a convenient territory on the west of the Chinese

28. See a fine and ample summary, prepared by a mandarin to the emperor, on the subject of the things named in the former Table, in the Annales, vol. ii. p. 498, and in the Voyages of Bolliac, in the Archiv. de la Compagnie de Jésus, tom. iii. p. 222. 29. See the reign of the emperor Vouts, in the Kempfian, XXV. 30. The reign of the emperor Vouts, in the Kempfian, XXVI. 31. The reign of the emperor Vouts, in the Kempfian, XXVI. 32. See a fine and ample summary, prepared by a mandarin to the emperor, on the subject of the things named in the former Table, in the Annales, vol. ii. p. 498, and in the Voyages of Bolliac, in the Archiv. de la Compagnie de Jésus, tom. iii. p. 222. 33. See Vouts, the second emperor, in the Kempfian, XXVI. 34. See the reign of the emperor Vouts, in the Kempfian, XXVI. 35. See the reign of the emperor Vouts, in the Kempfian, XXVI.
province; and his constant attachment to the service of the empire was secured by weakness, and the desire of revenge. From the time of this fatal schism, the Huns of the north continued to languish about fifty years, till they were oppressed on every side by their foreign and domestic enemies. The proud inscription of a column, erected on a lofty mountain, announced to posterity, that a Chinese army had marched seven hundred miles into the heart of their country. The Siempi, a tribe of Oriental Tartars, retaliated the injuries which they had formerly sustained; and the power of the Tangjous, after a reign of thirteen hundred years, was utterly destroyed before the end of the first century of the Christian era. The fate of the vanquished Huns was diversified by the various influences of character and situation. Above one hundred thousand persons, the poorest, indeed, and the most pusillanimous of the people, were contented to remain in their native country, to renounce their peculiar name and origin, and to mingle with the victorious nation of the Siempi. Fifty-eight hordes, about two hundred thousand men, ambitious of a more honorable servitude, retired towards the south; implored the protection of the emperors of China; and were permitted to inhabit, and to guard, the extreme frontiers of the province of Chansi and the territory of Ordous. But the most warlike and powerful tribes of the Huns maintained, in their adverse fortune, the undaunted spirit of their ancestors. The Western world was open to their valor; and they resolved, under the conduct of their hereditary chieftains, to discover and subdue some remote country, which was still inaccessible to the arms of the Siempi, and to the laws of China. The course of their emigration soon carried them beyond the mountains of Imaus, and the limits of the Chinese geography; but we are able to distinguish the greatest divisions of these formidable tribes, which directed their march towards the Oxus, and towards the Volga. The first of these colonies established their dominion in the fruitful and extensive plains of Sogdiana, on the eastern side of the Caspian; where they preserved the name of Huns, with the epithet of Ethalities, or Neptallities. Their manners were softened, and even their features were insensibly improved, by the mildness of the climate, and their long residence in a flourishing province, which might still retain a faint impression of the arts of Greece. The name Huns, a name which they derived from the change of their complexion, was soon abandoned; the pastoral life of Scythia, Gorgio, which, under the appellation of Carians, has since enjoyed a temporary splendour, was the residence of the king, who exercised a legal authority over an obedient people. Their territory was mostly contained by the labour of the Sogdians; and the only vestige of their ancient barbarism was the custom which obliged all the companions, perhaps in a number of twenty, who had shared the liberality of a wealthy lord, to be buried alive in the same grave. The victory of the Huns on the provinces of Persia, involved in frequent and bloody contests with the power of that monarchy. But they respected, in peace, the faith of treaties; in war, the dictates of humanity; and their memorable victory over Persia, or Fars, displayed the moderation, as well as the valour, of the barbarous conquerors. The Huns of Barbary. The second division of their countrymen, the Huns, who gradually advanced towards the north-west, were exercised by the hardships of a colder climate, and a more laborious march. Necessity compelled them to exchange the silks of China, for the furs of Siberia; the impertinent rudiments of civilized life were obliterated; and the native freemasonry of the Huns was exasperated by their intercourse with the savage tribes, who were conversant, with some propriety, to the wild beasts of the desert. Their independent spirit soon rejected the hereditary succession of the Tangjous; and while each lord was governed by his peculiar muse, their tumultuous council directed the public measures of the whole nation. As late as the thirteenth century, their transient residence on the eastern banks of the Volga was attested by the name of Great Hungary. In the winter, they descended with their flocks and herds towards the mouth of that mighty river; and their summer excursions reached as high as the latitude of Saratoff, or perhaps the confluence of the Kama. Such at least were the recent limits of the black Cumanh, who remained about a century under the protection of Russia; and who have since returned to their native seats on the frontiers of the Chinese empire. The march, and the return, of these wandering Tartars, whose united camp consisted of fifty thousand tents or families, illustrates the distant emigrations of the ancient Huns.
It is impossible to fill the dark interval of time, which elapsed, after the Huns of the Volga were lost in the eyes of the Chinese; and before they turned themselves to those of the Romans. There is no reason, however, to apprehend, that the same force which had driven them from their native seats, still continued to impel their march towards the confines of Europe. The power of the Scyths their implacable enemies, which extended above three thousand miles from east to west, must have gradually oppressed them by the weight and terror of a formidable neighbourhood; and the flight of the tribes of Scythia would inevitably tend to increase the strength, or to contract the territories, of the Huns. The harsh and obscure appellations of those tribes would offend the ear, without informing the understanding, of the reader; but I cannot suppress the very natural suspicion, that the Huns of the north derived a considerable reinforcement from the ruins of the dynasty of the south, which, in the course of the third century, submitted to the dominion of China; that the bravest warriors marched away in search of their free and adventurous countrymen; and that, as they had been divided by prosperity, they were easily re-united by the common hardships of their adverse fortunes. The Huns, with their flocks and herds, their wives and children, their dependents and allies, were transported to the west of the Volga, and they boldly advanced to invade the country of the Alani, a pastoral people, who occupied, or wanted, an extensive tract of the deserts of Scythia. The plains between the Volga and the Tanais were covered with the tents of the Alani, but their name and manners were diffused over the wide extent of their conquests; and the painted tribes of the Agathyrs and Gelani were confounded among their vessels. Towards the north, they penetrated into the frozen regions of Siberia, among the savages whose natures were accustomcd, in their rage or frenzy, to the taste of human flesh; and their ravages, inroads were pushed as far as the confines of Persia and India. The mixture of Sarmatic and German blood had contributed to improve the features of the Alani, to whiten their swarthy complexion, and to tingc their hair with a yellowish cast, which is seldom found in the Tartar race. They were less deformed in their persons, less bruised in their manners, than the Huns; but they did not yield to those formidable barbarians in their martial and independent spirit; in the love of freedom, which rejected even the use of domestic slaves; and in the love of arms, which considered war and rapine as the pleasure and the glory of mankind.

The great Hermaurus, whose dominions extended from the Baltic to the Caspian, enjoyed, in the full maturity of age and reputation, the fruit of his victories, when he was alarmed by the formidable aspect of an host of unknown enemies, on whom his barbarous subjects might, without injustice, bestow the epithet of barbarians. The numbers, the strength, the rapid motions, and the implacable cruelty of the Huns were felt, and dreaded, and magnified, by the astonished Goths; who based their fields and villages consumed with flames, and deluged with indiscriminate slaughter. To those real terrors they added, the surprise and astonishment which were excited by the shrill voice, the smooth gestures, and the strange demeanor, of the Huns. These savages of Scythia were compared (and the picture had some resemblance) to the animals who walk very awkwardly on two legs; and to the misshapen figures, the Termini, which were often placed on the pedestals of antiquity. They were distinguished from the rest of the human species by their broad shoulders, flat nose, and small black eyes, deeply buried in the head; and as they were almost destitute of beards, they never enjoyed either the sturdy graces of youth, or the venerable aspect of age. A Fabulous origin was

A masked emperor, fixed in the ground, was the only object of their religious worship; the scalps of their enemies formed the costly trappings of their horses; and they viewed, with pity and contempt, the pusillanimous warriors, who patently expected the infirmities of age, and the tortures of lingering disease. On the banks of the Tanais, the military power of the Huns and the Alani encountered each other with equal valor, but with unequal success. The Huns prevailed in the bloody contest; the king of the Alani was slain; and the remains of the vanquished nation were dispersed by the ordinary alternative of flight or submission. A colony of slaves found a secure refuge in the mountains of Caucasus, between the Euxine and the Caspian; where they still preserve their name and their independence. Another colony advanced, with more intrepid courage, towards the shores of the Baltic; associated themselves with the northern tribes of Germany; and shared the spoil of the Roman provinces of Gaul and Spain. But the greatest part of the nation of the Alani embraced the offices of an honourable and advantageous union; and the Huns, who esteemed the value of their less fortunate comrades, proceeded, with an increase of numbers and confidence, to invade the limits of the Gothic empire.
assigned, worthy of their form and manners: that the witches of Scylla, who, for their foul and deadly practices, had been driven from society, had copulated in the desert with infernal spirits; and that the Huns were the offspring of this execrable conjunction. The tale, so full of horror and absurdity, was greatly encouraged by the credulous hatred of the Goths; but, while it gratified their hatred, it increased their fear, since the supersti- tion of daemons and witches might be supposed to inherit some share of the preternatural power, as well as of the malignant temper, of their parents. Against these enemies, Hermannic prepared to exert the united forces of the Gothic state; but he soon discovered that his vassal tribes, provoked by oppression, were much more inclined to second, than to revolt, the invasion of the Huns. One of the chief of the Roxolani had formerly deserted the standard of Hermannic, and the cruel tyrant had condemned the innocent wife of the traitor to be torn asunder by wild horses. The brothers of that unfortunate woman seized the favourable moment of revenge. The aged king of the Goths languished some time after the dangerous wound which he received from their daggers; but the conduct of the war was retarded by his infirmities; and the public councils of the nation were distracted by a spirit of jealousy and discord. His death, which has been imputed to his own despair, left the reins of government in the hands of Walthimer, who, with the doubtful aid of some Scythian mercenaries, maintained the unequal contest against the arms of the Huns and the Alani, till he was defeated and slain, in a decisive battle. The Ostrogoths submitted to their fate; and the royal race of the Amali will hereafter be found among the subjects of the haughty Attila. But the person of Witheric, the infant king, was saved by the diligence of Alatsbus and Sophrax; two warriors of approved valour and fidelity; who, by cautious marches, conducted the independent remains of the nation of the Ostrogoths towards the Danubes, or Nester; a considerable river, which now separates the Turkish dominions from the empire of Russia. On the banks of the Nester, the prudent Attilanric, more attentive to his own than to the general safety, had fixed the camp of the Vixigoths; with the firm resolution of opposing the victorious barbarians, whom he thought it less advisable to provoke. The ordinary speed of the Huns was checked by the weight of luggage, and the inconsiderable force of captives; but their military skill desired, and almost destroyed, the army of Attilanic. While the Judge of the Vixigoths defended the banks of the Nester, he was encompassed and attacked by a numerous detachment of cavalry, who, by the light of the moon, had passed the river in a fordable place; and it was not without the utmost efforts of courage and conduct, that he was able to effect his retreat towards the hilly country. The undaunted general had already formed a new and judicious plan of defensive war; and the strong lines, which he was preparing to construct between the mountains, the Phuth and the Danube, would have secured the extensive and fertile territory that bears the modern name of Walla- chia, from the destructive incursions of the Huns. But the habits and measures of the Judge of the Vixigoths were not disappoint- ed, by the trembling impatience of his former countrymen; who were persuaded by their fears, that the in- terposition of the Danube was the only barrier that could save them from the rapid pursuit, and inevitable valour, of the barbarians of Scythia. Under the command of Fritigern and Alaric, the body of the nation hastily advanced to the banks of the great river, and implored the protec- tion of the Roman emperor of the East. Athanaric himself, still anxious to avoid the guilt of disorder, retired, with a band of faithful followers, into the mountainous country of Caucu- halis; which appears to have been guarded, and almost concealed, by the impenetrable forests of Transylvania.

After Valens had terminated the Gothic war with some appearance of glory and success, he made a pro- gress through his dominions of Asia, and at length fixed his residence in the capital of Syria. The five years which he spent at Antioch were employed to watch, from a secure distance, the hostile designs of the Persian monarch; to check the depredations of the Saerces and Issarines; to enforce, by arguments, more prevalent than those of reason and eloquence, the belief of the Arian theology; and to satisfy his anxious suspicions by the promi- nuous execution of the innocent and the guilty. But the administration of the emperor was most seriously engaged, by the important intelligence which he received from the civil and military officers who were interested with the defence of the Danube. He was informed, that the north was agitated by a furious tempest; that the irruption of the Huns, an unknown and monstrous race of savages, had subdued the power of the Goths; and that the suppliant multitudes of that warlike nation, whose pride was now humbled in the dust, covered a space of many miles along the banks of the river. With out- stretched arms, and pathetie lamentation, they loudly deplored their past misfortunes and their present danger; acknowledged that their only hope of safety was in the clemency of the Roman government; and most solemnly protested, that if the gracious liberality of the emperor would
permit them to cultivate the waste lands of Thrace, they should ever hold themselves bound, by the strongest obligations of duty and gratitude, to obey the laws, and to guard the limits, of the republic. These assurances were confirmed by the ambassadors of the Goths, who impatiently expected, from the mouth of Valens, an answer that must finally determine the fate of their unhappy countrymen. The suspense of the East was no longer guided by the wisdom and authority of his elder brother, whose death happened towards the end of the preceding year; and as the distressful situation of the Goths required an instant and peremptory decision, he was deprived of the favourite resource of feeble and timid minds; who consider the use of dilatory and ambiguous measures as the most admirable efforts of embarrassment. As long as the same passions and interests subsist among mankind, the questions of war and peace, of justice and policy, which were debated in the councils of antiquity, will frequently present themselves as the subject of modern discussion. But the most experienced statesman of Europe has never been summoned to consider the propriety, or the danger, of admitting, or rejecting, an innumerable multitude of barbarians, who are driven by despair and hunger to solicit a settlement on the territories of a civilised nation. When that important proposition, so essentially connected with the public safety, was referred to the ministers of Valens, they were perplexed and divided; but they were acquiescent in the flattering sentiment which seemed the most favourable to the pride, the insolence, and the avarice of their sovereign. The slaves, who were decorated with the titles of prefects and generals, disarmed or disregarded the terror of this national emigration; so extremely different from the partial and accidental colonies, which had been received on the extreme limits of the empire. But they applauded the liberality of fortune, which had conducted, from the most distant countries of the globe, a numerous and invincible army of strangers, to defend the throne of Valens, who might now add to the royal treasures, the immense sums of gold supplied by the provincials, to compensate their annual proportions of recruits. The prayers of the Goths were granted, and confirmed; an imperial edict was accepted by the Imperial senate; and orders were immediately given to the civil and military government of the Thracian province, to make the necessary preparations for the passage and subsistence of a great people, till a proper and sufficient territory could be allotted for their future residence. The liberality of the emperor was accompanied, however, with two harsh and rigorous conditions, which prudence might justify on the side of the Romans; but which distress alone could extort from the indigent Goths. Before they passed the Danube, they were required to deliver their arms; and it was insisted, that their children should be taken from them, and dispersed through the provinces of Asia; where they might be civilised by the arts of education, and serve as hostages to secure the fidelity of their parents.

During this suspense of a doubtful and distant negotiation, the impatient Goths made some rash attempts to pass the Danube, without the permission of the government, whose protection they had implored. Their motions were strictly observed by the vigilance of the troops, which were stationed along the river; and their foremost detachments were destroyed with considerable slaughter. But such were the timidity counsels of the court of Valens, that the brave officers who had served their country in the execution of their duty, were punished by the loss of their employments, and narrowly escaped the loss of their heads. The Imperial mandate was at length received for transporting over the Danube the whole body of the Gothic nation; but the execution of this order was a task of labour and difficulty. The stream of the Danube, which in those parts is about a mile broad, had been swollen by incessant rains; and, in this tumultuous passage, many were swept away, and drowned, by the rapid violence of the current. A large fleet of vessels, of heats, and of canoes, was provided; many days and nights they passed and repassed with indefatigable toil; and the most strenuous diligence was exerted by the officers of Valens, that not a single barbarian, of those who were reserved to subvert the foundation of Rome, should be left on the opposite shore. It was thought expedient that an accurate account should be taken of their numbers; but the persons who were employed soon desisted, with amazement and dismay, from the prosecution of the wild and impracticable task; and the principal historian of the age most seriously affirms, that the prodigious armies of Darins and Xerxes, which had been taken as the faibles of times, and of credulous antiquity, were now justified in the eyes of mankind, by the evidence of fact and experience. A probable testimony has fixed the number of the Goths who were at two hundred thousand men; and if we can venture to add the just proportion of women, of children, and of slaves, the whole mass of people which composed this formidable emigration, must have amounted to near a million of persons, of both sexes, and of all ages. The children of the Goths, those at least of a distinguished rank, were separated from the multitude. They were conducted, without delay, to the distant seats assigned for their residence and education; and as the numerous train of hostages or captives passed through the cities, their gay and splendid apparel, their robust and martial figure, excited the surprise and envy of the provincials. But the subjugation, the most offensive to the Goths, and the most important to
the Romans, was shamefully eluded. The barbarians, who considered their arms as the ensigns of honour, and the pledge of safety, were disposed to offer a price, which the lust or avarice of the Imperial officers was easily tempted to accept. To preserve their arms, the haughty warriors consented, with some reluctance, to prostitute their wives or their daughters; the charms of a beauteous maid, or a comely boy, secured the concordance of the invaders; who sometimes cast an eye of covetousness on the fringed carpets and linen garments of their new allies, or who sacrificed their duty to the mean consideration of filling their farms with cattle, and their houses with slaves. The Goths, with arms in their hands, were permitted to enter the boats; and, when their strength was collected on the other side of the river, the immense camp, which was spread over the plains and the hills of the Lower Mosia, assumed a threatening and even hostile aspect. The leaders of the Ostrogoths, Alathius and Saporix, the guardians of their infant king, appeared soon afterwards on the northern banks of the Danube; and immediately despatched their ambassadors to the court of Aëtius, to solicit, with the same professions of allegiance and gratitude, the same favour which had been granted to the suppliant Visigoths. The absolute refusal of Valens suspended their progress, and discovered the repentance, the suspicions, and the fears, of the Imperial council.

Tres ab urbe, and Inconsuetudine. nation of barbarians required the firmest temper, and the most dexerous management. The daily subsistence of near a million of extraordinary subjects could be supplied only by constant and skilful diligence, and might continually be interrupted by mistake or accident. The insolence, or the indignation, of the Goths, if they conceived themselves to be the objects, either of fear, or of contempt, might urge them to the most desperate extremities; and the fortune of the state seemed to depend on the prudence, as well as on the integrity, of the generals of Valens. At this important crisis, the military government of Thrace was exercised by Lupicinus and Maximinus, in whose venal minds the slightest hope of private emolument outweighed every consideration of public advantage; and whose guilt was only alleviated by their incapacity of discerning the pernicious effects of their rash and criminal administrations. Instead of obeying the orders of their sovereign, and satisfying, with decent liberality, the demands of the Goths, they levied an ungenerous and oppressive tax on the wants of the hungry barbarians. The slightest food was sold at an extravagant price; and, in the room of wholesome and substantial provisions, the markets were filled with the flesh of dogs, and of useless animals, who had died of disease. To obtain the valuable acquisition of a pound of bread, the Goths resigned the possession of an expensive, though serviceable, slave; and a small quantity of meat was greedily purchased with ten pounds of a precious, but useless, metal. When their property was exhausted, they continued this necessary traffic, by the sale of their sons and daughters; and notwithstanding the love of freedom, which animated every Gothic breast, they submitted to the humiliating maxim, that it was better for their children to be maintained in a servile condition, than to perish in a state of wretched and helpless independence. The most lively resentment is excited by the tyranny of pretended benefactors, who stedily insist on the debt of gratitude which they have cancelled by subsequent injuries; a spirit of discontent is immoderately increased in the camp of the barbarians, who pleaded, without success, the merit of their patient and dutiful behaviour; and loudly complained of the inhumane treatment which they had received from their new allies. They beheld around them the wealth and plenty of a fertile province, in the midst of which they suffered the intolerable hardships of artificial famine. But the sense of relief, and even of revenge, were in their hands; since the rapacities of their tyrants had left, to an injured people, the possession and the use of arms. The clamours of a multitude, insatiable to disguise their sentiments, announced the first symptoms of resistance, and alarmed the timid and guilty minds of Lupicinus and Maximinus. Those crafty ministers, who substituted the running of temporary expedients to the wise and salutary counsels of general policy, attempted to remove the Goths from their dangerous station on the frontiers of the empire, and to dispose them in separate quarters of cantonment, through the interior provinces. As they were conscious how ill they had deserved the respect, or confidence, of the barbarians, they diligently collected, from every side, a military force, that might urge the tardy and reluctant march of a people, who had not yet renounced the title, or the duties, of Roman subjects. Not the generals of Valens, while their attention was solely directed to the discontented Visigoths, impatiently disarmed the ships and the fortifications, which constituted the defence of the Danube. The fatal oversight was observed, and improved, by Alathius and Saporix, who anxiously watched the favourable moment of escaping from the pursuit of the Huns. By the help of such rafts and vessels as could be hastily procured, the leaders of the Ostrogoths transported, without opposition, their king and their army; and boldly fixed an hostile and independent camp on the territories of the empire.79

Under the name of Judges, Alaric and Attila were the leaders of the Visigoths in peace and war; and the authority which they derived from their birth, was ratified by the free consent of the nation. In a seaon of tranquillity, their power might have been equal, as well as their rank;
but, as soon as their countrymen were exasperated by hunger and oppression, the superior abilities of Fritigern assumed the military command, which he was qualified to exercise for the public welfare. He restrained the impetuous spirit of the Visigoths, till the injuries and the insults of their tyrants should justify their resistance in the opinion of mankind; but he was not disposed to sacrifice any solid advantages for the empty praise of justice and moderation.

Sensible of the benefits which would result from the union of the Gothic powers under the same standard, he secretly cultivated the friendship of the Ostrogoths; and while he professed an implicit obedience to the orders of the Roman generals, he proceeded by slow marches towards Marcianopolis, the capital of the Lower Moesia, about seventy miles from the banks of the Danube. On that fatal spot, the flames of discord and mutual hatred burst forth into a dreadful conflagration. Lupicinus had invited the Gothic chiefs to a splendid entertainment; and their martial train remained under arms at the entrance of the palace. But the gates of the city were strictly guarded, and the barbarians were sternly excluded from the use of a plentiful market, to which they asserted their equal claim of subjects and allies. Their humble prayers were rejected with insolence and derision; and as their patience was now exhausted, the十二on, the soldiers, and the Goths, were soon involved in a conflict of passionate altercation and angry reproaches. A blow was immediately given; a sword was hastily drawn; and the first blood that was split in this accidental quarrel, became the signal of a long and destructive war. In the midst of noise and brutal interruption, Lupicinus was informed, by a secret messenger, that many of his soldiers were slain, and despoiled of their arms; and as he was already inflamed by wine, and oppressed by sleep, he issued a rash command, that their death should be revenged by the massacre of the guards of Fritigern and Alavivus.

The clamorous shouts and dying groans apprised Fritigern of his extreme danger; and, as he possessed the calm and intrepid spirit of a born, he saw that he was last if he allowed a moment of deliberation to the man who had so deeply injured him. A truce was instantly declared by the Gothic leaders, with a firm but gentle tone of voice, "it appears to have arisen between the two nations; but it may be productive of the most dangerous consequences, unless the tumult is immediately pacified by the assurance of our safety, and the authority of our presence." At these words, Fritigern and his companions drew their swords, opened their passage through the resisting crowd, which filled the palace, the streets, and the gates of Marcianopolis; and, mounting their horses, hastily vanished from the eyes of the astonished Romans. The generals of the Goths were saluted by the force and joyful acclamations of the camp: war was instantly resolved; and the resolution was executed without delay: the banners of the nation were displayed according to the custom of their ancestors; and the air resounded with the harsh and mournful music of the barbarian trumpet. The weak and guilty Lupicinus, who had dared to provoke, who had neglected to destroy, and who still presumed to despise, his formidable enemy, marched against the Goths, at the head of such a military force as could be collected on this sudden emergency. The barbarians expected his approach about nine miles from Marcianopolis; and on this occasion the talents of the general were found to be of more prevailing efficacy than the weapons and discipline of the troops. The valor of the Goths was so ardently directed by the genius of Fritigern, that they broke, by a close and vigorous attack, the ranks of the Roman legions. Lupicinus lost his arms and standards, his tribunes and his bravest soldiers, on the field of battle; and their useless courage served only to protect the ignominious flight of their leader. That successful day put an end to the distress of the barbarians, and the security of the Romans: from that day, the Goths, renouncing the precarious condition of strangers and exiles, assumed the character of citizens and masters, claimed an absolute dominion over the possessors of land, and held, in their own right, the northern provinces of the empire, which are bounded by the Danube. Such are the words of the Gothic historian, who celebrates, with rude eloquence, the glory of his countrymen. But the dominions of the barbarians were exercised only for the purposes of rapine and destruction. As they had been deprived, by the ministers of the emperor, of the common benefits of nature, and the fair intercourse of social life, they retaliated the injustice on the subjects of the empire; and the crimes of Lupicinus were expiated by the ruin of the peaceful husbandmen of Thrace, the desolation of their villages, and the massacre, or captivity, of their innocent families. The report of the Gothic victory was soon diffused over the adjacent country; and while it filled the minds of the Romans with terror and dismay, their own happy impudence contributed to increase the forces of Fritigern, and the calamities of the province. Some time before the great emigration, a numerous body of Goths, under the command of Sarid and Collae, had been received into the protection and service of the empire. They were encamped under the walls of Hadrianople; but the ministers of Valens were anxious to remove them beyond the Hellespont, at a distance from the dangerous temptation which might so easily be communicated by the neighbourhood, and the success, of their countrymen. The respectful submission with which they yielded to the order of their march, might be considered as a proof of their fidelity; and their moderate re-
quest of a sufficient allowance of provisions, and of a delay of only two days, was expressed in the most dutiful terms. But the first magistrate of Hastrinopole, incensed by some disorders which had been committed at his country-house, refused this indulgence; and restraining against them the inhabitants and manufacturers of a populous city, he urged, with hostile threats, their instant departure. The barbarians stood silent and amazed, till they were exaggerated by the insulting clamours, and missile weapons, of the populace; but when patience or contempt was fatigued, they crushed the undisciplined multitude, inflicted many a shameful wound on the backs of their flying enemies, and despoiled them of the splendid armour, which they were unworthy to bear. The resemblance of their sufferings and their actions soon united this victorious detachment to the nation of the Visigoths; the troops of Colias and Snumil expected the approach of the great Fritigern, ranged themselves under his standard, and signalised their enmity in the siege of Hastrinopole. But the resistance of the garrison informed the barbarians, that, in the attack of regular fortifications, the efforts of unskilled courage are seldom effectual. Their general acknowledged his error, and, raising the siege, declared that "he was at peace with stone walls," and revenged his disappointment on the adjacent country. He accepted, with pleasure, the useful reinforcement of halfpence workers, who laboured in the gold mines of Thrace, for their support, and under the lead of an uncivilized master. And these new associates conducted the barbarians, through the secret paths, to the most sequestered places, which had been chosen to secure the inhabitants, the cattle, and the magazines of corn. With the assistance of such guides, nothing could remain impervious or inaccessible; resistance was fatal; flight was impracticable, and the patient submission of helpless innocence seldom found mercy from the barbarian conqueror. In the course of these depredations, a great number of the children of the Goths, who had been sold into captivity, were restored to the embraces of their affliged parents; but those tender interviews, which might have revived and cherished in their minds some sentiments of humanity, tended only to stimulate their native avarice by the desire of revenge. They listened, with eager attention, to the complaints of their captives children, who had suffered the most cruel indignities from the lustful or angry passions of their masters; and the same cruelties, the same indignities, were severely retaliated on the sons and daughters of the Romans. 78

---

74 An Imperial edictum of solidi, &c. was established in Byzantium, for the purpose of the public revenue. (Valer. de Juristic. ad. 34.)

75 On the War of the Goths with the Romans. (Annales L.)

76 These roads were in the counties of the East, and in the province of Thrace. The first, which was between Philippopolis and Neocaesarea, which was the birthplace of the Emperor Antoninus, from the town of Thracian, he ascended the mountain, passed through the Pyrrhion; and was the road of the Goths, the Romans, and the Thracians. These roads were in the province of Thrace. The first was the road of the Goths, the Romans, and the Thracians.

77 The Emperor Justinian, in his war with the Goths, had no choice but to join the balloon. (Annales L.)

78 Vardia had entered many towns too large in the Roman provinces. (Valer. de Juristic. ad. 34.)

The imprudence of Valens and his ministers laid introduced into the heart of the empire a nation of enemies; but the Visigoths might even yet have been reconciled, by the main confession of guilt, and the sincere performance of former engagements. These hunting and temperate measures seemed to concur with the timorous disposition of the sovereign of the East; but, on this occasion alone, Valens was brave; and his unexampled bravery was fatal to himself and to his subjects. He declared his intention of marching from Antioch to Constantinople, to subdue this dangerous rebellion; and, as he was not ignorant of the difficulties of the enterprise, he solicited the assistance of his nephew, the emperor Gratian, who commanded all the forces of the West. The veteran troops were hastily recalled from the defence of Armenia; that important frontier was abandoned to the discretion of Sapor; and the immediate conduct of the Gothic war was intrusted, during the absence of Valens, to his lieutenants Trajan and Proclus, two generals who indulged themselves in a very false and favourable opinion of their own abilities. On their arrival in Thrace, they were joined by Richomer, count of the Ostrogoths, and the auxiliaries of the West, that marched under his banner, were composed of the Gothic legions, reduced indeed by a spirit of dissipation, to the vain appearances of strength and numbers. In a council of war, which was influenced by pride, rather than by reason, it was resolved to seek, and to encounter, the barbarians, who lay encamped in the spacious and fertile meadows, near the most southern of the six mouths of the Danube. Their camp was surrounded by the usual fortification of wagons; and the barbarians, secure within the vast circle of the encampment, enjoyed the fruits of their valour, and the spoils of the province. In the midst of richest inhospitable, the watchful Fritigern observed the victory, and penetrated the designs of the Romans. He perceived, that the numbers of the enemy were continually increasing; and, as he understood their intention of attacking his rear, as soon as the scarcity of forage should oblige him to remove his camp, he recalled in his standard his predatory detachments, which covered the adjacent country. As soon as they descried the flamel of huts, they obeyed, with incredible speed, the signal of their leader; the camp was filled with the martial crowd of barbarians; their impatient clamours demanded the battle, and their tumultuous and was approved and animated by the spirit of their chief. The evening was already advanced; and the
two armies prepared themselves for the approaching combat, which was deferred only till the dawn of day. While the trumpets sounded to arms, the undaunted courage of the Goths was confirmed by the mutual obligation of a solemn oath; and as they advanced to meet the enemy, the rude songs, which celebrated the glory of their forfathers, were mingled with their fierce and dissonant utteries; and opposed to the artificial harmony of the Roman shout. Some military skill was displayed by Fritigern to gain the advantage of a commanding eminence; but the bloody conflict, which began and ended with the light, was maintained, on either side, by the personal and obstinate efforts of strength, valor, and agility. The legions of Armenia supported their fame in arms; but they were oppressed by the irresistible weight of the hostile multitude: the left wing of the Romans was thrown into disorder, and the field was strewn with their mangled carcases. This partial defeat was balanced, however, by partial success; and when the two armies, at a late hour of the evening, retreated to their respective camps, neither of them could claim the honours, or the effects, of a decisive victory. The real foes were more severely felt by the Romans, in proportion to the smallness of their numbers; but the Goths were so deeplyTounded and dismayed by this signal, and perhaps unexpected, resistance, that they remained seven days within the circle of their fortifications. Such funeral rites, at the circumstances of time and place would admit, were purely discharged to some officers of distinguished rank; but the indiscriminate vulgar was left unburied on the plain. Their flesh was greedily devoured by the flocks of prey, who, in that age, enjoyed very frequent and delicious feasts; and several years afterwards the white and naked bones, which covered the wide extent of the fields, presented, to the eyes of Ammianus, a dreadful monument of the battle of Solina.

The progress of the Goths had been checked by the doubtful event of that bloody day; and the Imperial generals, whose army would have been consumed by the repetition of such a contest, embraced the more rational plan, of destroying the barbarians, by the wants and pressure of their own multitudes. They prepared to confine the Visigoths in the narrow angle of land, between the Danube, the desert of Scythia, and the mountains of Haemus; till their strength and spirit should be immediately wasted by the inevitable operation of famine. The plan was executed with some conduct and success; the Visigoths had almost exhausted their own magazines, and the harvests of the country; and the diligence of Saturninus, the master-general of the cavalry, was employed to improve the strength, and to contract the extent, of the Roman fortifications. His labour was interrupted by the alarming intelligence, that new swarms of barbarians had passed the unguarded Danube, either to support the cause, or to imitate the example, of Fritigern. The just apprehension, that he himself might be surrounded, and overwhelmed, by the arms of hostile and unknown nations, compelled Saturninus to relinquish the siege of the Gothic camp; and the indignant Visigoths, breaking from their confinement, satisfied their hunger and revenge by the repeated devastation of the fruitful country, which extends above three hundred miles from the banks of the Danube to the straits of the Hellespont. The sagacious Fritigern had successfully appealed to the passions, as well as to the interest, of his barbarian allies; and the love of rapine, and the hatred of Rome, ascended, or even prevented, the eloquence of his ambassadors. He cemented a strict and useful alliance with the great body of his countrymen who obeyed Alaric and Sulpix as the guardians of their infant king; the long animosity of rival tribes was suspended by the sense of their common interest; the independent part of the nation was attached under one standard; and the chiefs of the Thuringians appeared to have yielded to the superior genius of the general of the Visigoths. He obtained the formidable aid of the Taifalas, whose military renown was disdained and polluted by the public infamy of their domestic manners. Every youth, on his entrance into the world, was united by the ties of honourable friendship, and brutal love, to some warrior of the tribe; nor could he hope to be released from this unnatural connection, till he had approved his manhood, by slaying, in single combat, a huge bear, or a wild boar of the forest. But the most powerful auxiliaries of the Goths were drawn from the camp of those enemies who had expatriated them from their native soils. The loose subordination, and extensive possessions, of the Huns and the Alani, delayed the compacts, and distracted the councils, of that victorious people. Several of the hordes were allured by the liberal promises of Fritigern; and the rapid cavalry of Scythia added weight and energy to the steady and strenuous efforts of the Gothic infantry. The Saxons, who could never forgive the successes of Valentinian, enjoyed and increased the general confusion; and a unanimous irruption of the Alamanni, into the provinces of Gaul, engaged the attention, and diverted the forces, of the emperor of the West. A
soldier, of the life-guards of Gratian, was of the nation of the Alemani, and of the tribe of the Lautianus, who dwelt beyond the lake of Constance. Some domestic business obliged him to request a leave of absence. In a short visit to his family and friends, he was exposed to their curious enquiries; and the vanity of the loquacious soldier tempted him to display his intimate acquaintance with the secrets of the state, and the designs of his master. The intelligence, that Gratian was preparing to lead the military force of Gaul, and of the West, to the assistance of his uncle Valens, pointed out to the restless spirit of the Alemani, the moment, and the mode, of a successful invasion. The enterprise of some light detachments, who, in the month of February, passed the Rhine upon the ice, was the prelude of a more important war. The boldest hopes of rapine, perhaps of conquest, outweighed the considerations of timid prudence, or national faith. Every forest, and every village, poised forth a band of barely armed men; and the great army of the Alemani, which, on their approach, was estimated at sixty thousand men by the fears of the people, was afterward reported as the number of seventy thousand, by the vain and credulous flattery of the imperial court. The legions, which had been ordered to march into Pannonia, were immediately recalled, or detained, for the defence of Gaul; the military command was divided between Nannius and Macedonius; and the youthful emperor, though he possessed the long experience and sober wisdom of the soldier, was much more inclined to admire, and to follow, the martial ardour of his colleague; who was allowed to unite the incompatibles characters of count of the dominions, and of king of the Franks. His rival Pilumnus, king of the Alemani, was guided, or rather impelled, by the same haughty valour; and as their troops were animated by the spirit of their leaders, they met, they saw, they encountered, each other, near the town of Argentorat, or Colmar, in the plains of Alsace. The glory of the day was justly ascribed to the明智 weapons, and well- practiced evolutions, of the Roman soldiers; the Alemani, who long maintained their ground, were slaughtered with overwhelming fury; five thousand only of the barbarians escaped to the woods and mountains; and the glorious death of their king on the field of battle, saved him from the reproaches of the people, who are always disposed to accuse the justice, or policy, of an unsuccessful war. After this signal victory, which secured the peace of Gaul, and asserted the honour of the Roman arms, the emperor Gratian appeared to proceed without delay on his eastern expedition; but as he approached the confines of the Alemani, he suddenly inclined to the left, surprised them by his unexpected passage of the Rhine, and boldly advanced into the heart of their country. The barbarians opposed to his progress the obstacles of nature and of courage; and still continued to retreat, from one hill to another, till they were satisfied, by repeated trials, of the power and perseverance of their enemies. Their submission was accepted, as a proof, not indeed of their sincere repentance, but of their actual distress; and a select number of their brave and robust youth was exacted from the faithless nation, as the most substantial pledge of their future moderation. The subjects of the empire, who had so often experienced that the Alemani could neither be subdued by arms, nor restrained by treaties, might not prouze themselves any solid or lasting tranquility; but they discovered, in the virtues of their young sovereign, the prospect of a long and auspicious reign. When the legions climbed the mountains, and scaled the fortifications, of the barbarians, the valour of Gratian was distinguished in the foremost ranks; and the gallant and valiant armour of his guards was pierced and shattered by the blows, which they had received in their constant attachment to the person of their sovereign. At the age of nineteen, the son of Valentinian seemed to possess the talents of peace and war; and his personal success against the Alemani was interpreted as a sure presage of his Gothic triumphs.

While Gratian observed and enjoyed the applause of his subjects, the emperor Valens, who, at length, had removed his court and army from Antioch, was received by the people of Constantinople as the author of the public calamity. Before he had reposèd himself ten days in the capital, he was urged, by the lionous clamours of the Hippodrome, to march against the barbarians, whom he had invited into his dominions: and the citizens, who are always braveness is a distance from any real danger, declared, with confidence, that, if they were supplied with arms, they alone would undertake to deliver the province from the ravages of an insulting foe. The vain reproaches of an ignoble multitude hastened the downfall of the Roman empire; they provoked the desperate measures of Valens; who did not find, either in his reputation, or in his mind, any motives to support with firmness the public contempt. He was soon persuaded, by the successful achievements of his lieutenants, to despise the power of the Goths, who, by the diligence of Fritigern, were already collected in the neighbourhood of Hadrianopolis. The march of the Taifals had been intercepted by the valiant Frigerid; the king of those Hibernian barbarians was slain in battle; and the supplicant captives were sent into distant places to populate the lands of Italy, which were scarred for their settlement, in the vacant territories of Media and Pannonia.

83 The spot of battle, Argentorat, or Augusta Vindeliciorum, is immediately near Neuf-Brisach, to the left of the Rhine, on the mountain of the Black Forest, at the height of about six hundred feet above the level of the Rhine, at Strassburg and at Colmar. The spot of battle is marked by the following inscription: "S. I. (S. I. J. E. S. C.) A. E. 404, In honorem Constantini, regis et imperatoris, vixit, qui, in hastam et aspem et in armas, praecipue oppositus, victor et victorioso victoriam, cum barbaris, tenet, ab hostibus, praeclara premia, in his locis ostendit." The history of these facts is collected in the History of Orosius: c. xi. p. 256. 57. 84 This exploit of Scavinius, noted by the emperor Julian, to the senate of Rome, and the emperor Theodosius, to the senate of Constantinople, is noticed by Eusebius, in his history of the Goths and Huns, about ten years after the siege of the Taurins, in the first year of the reign of Scavinius. The letter to Scavinius is addressed by the emperor Julian to Ambrose, bishop of Illyricum:—"Domine, sive dominice," &c. St. Ambrose: B. C. ii. cap. xxvi. p. 300. 20. 85 Ambrose: E. S. ii. B. C. i. cap. xxvi. p. 300. 20. 86 The letter to
who was recently engaged in the service of Valens, and promoted to the rank of master general of the infantry, were still more honourable to himself, and useful to the republic. He obtained the permission of selecting three hundred soldiers from each of the legions; and this separate detachment soon acquired the spirit of discipline, and the exercise of arms, which were almost forgotten under the reign of Valens. By the vigour and conduct of Sebastian, a large body of the Goths was surprised in their camp; and the immense spoil, which was recovered from their tents, filled the city of Hadrianople, and the adjacent plain. The splendid narratives, which the general transmitted of his own exploits, alarmed the Imperial court by the appearance of superior merit; and though he cautiously insisted on the difficulties of the Gothic war, his valour was praised, his advice was rejected; and Valens, who listened with pride and pleasure to the flattering suggestions of the envious of the palace, was impatient to seize the glory of an easy and assured conquest. His army was strengthened by a numerous reinforcement of veterans; and his march from Constantinople to Hadrianople, was attended with so much military skill, that he prevented the activity of the barbarians, who designed to occupy the intermediateskillets, and to intercept either the troops themselves, or their convoys of provisions. The camp of Valens, which he pitched within the walls of Hadrianople, was furthered, according to the practice of the Romans, with a ditch and rampart; and a most important council was summoned, to decide the fate of the emperor and of the empire. The party of reason and of delay was strenuously maintained by Victor, who had corrected, by the lessons of experience, the native fierceness of the Scythian character; while Sebastian, with the flexible and obstinate eloquence of a courtier, represented every precaution, and every measure, that implied a doubt of immediate victory, as unworthy of the courage and majesty of their invincible monarch. The ruin of Valens was precipitated by the deceitful arts of Fritigern, and the seductive admonitions of the emperor of the West. The advantages of negotiating in the midst of war, were perfectly understood by the general of the barbarians; and a Christian eclesiastic was despatched, as the holy minister of peace, to penetrate, and to perplex, the councils of the enemy. The misfortunes, as well as the provocations, of the Gothic nation, were forcibly and truly depicted by their ambassador; who proceeded in the name of Fritigern, that he was still disposed to lay down his arms, and to employ them only in the defence of the empire; if he could secure, for his wandering countrymen, a tranquil settlement on the waste lands of Thrace, and a sufficient allowance of corn and cattle. But he added, in a whisper of confidential friendship, that the exasperated barbarians were averse to these reasonable conditions; and, that Fritigern was doubtful whether he could accomplish the conclusion of the treaty, unless he found himself supported by the presence, and terror, of an Imperial army. About the same time, Count Richomer returned from the West, to announce the defeat and submission of the Alamanni; to inform Valens, that his nephew advanced by rapid marches at the head of the veteran and victorious legions of Gaul; and to request, in the name of Gratian and of the republic, that every dangerous and decisive measure might be suspended, till the junction of the two emperors should insure the success of the Gothic war. But the feeble sovereign of the East was actuated only by the fatal illusions of pride and jealousy. He disdained the important advice; he rejected the humiliating aid; he secretly compared the ignominies, or at least the inglorious, period of his brother's reign, with the fame and glory of his own youth; and Valens rushed into the field, to erect his imaginary triumph, before the diligence of his colleague could usurp any share of the triumphs of the day.

On the ninth of August, a day which has deserved to be marked among the most auspicious of the Roman calendar,81 the emperor Valens, hastening, under a strong guard, his baggage and military treasure, marched from Hadrianople to attack the Goths, who were encamped about twelve miles from the city.82 By some mistake of the orders, or some ignorance of the ground, the right wing, or column of cavalry, arrived in sight of the enemy, whilst the left was still at a considerable distance; the soldiers were compelled, in the sultry heat of summer, to precipitate their pace; and the line of battle was formed with tedious confusion, and irregular delay. The Gothic cavalry had been detached to forage in the adjacent country; and Fritigern still continued to practise his customary arts. He despatched messengers of peace, made proposals, required hostages, and wasted the hours, till the Romans, exasperated, without shelter to the burning rays of the sun, were exhausted by thirst, hunger, and intolerable fatigue. The emperor was persuaded to send an ambassador to the Gothic camp; the soul of Richomer, who alone had courage to accept this hazardous commission, was appointed to address the count of the domestic, associated with the splendid avowals of his dignity, had proceeded some way in the space between the two armies, when he was suddenly recalled by the alarm of battle. The hasty and impudent attack was made by Basilus the Iberian, who commanded a body of archers and lancers; and as they advanced with rashness, they retreated with loss and disgrace. In the same moment, the flying squadrons of Alansians and Sophraces, whose return

81 The difference of the right name of Alamanni, and the name of the tribe, in the different manuscripts, is of no importance. The first word in this sentence is a great word to be aMiscellaneous note, without space of

82 We might assume the view of his style, the disorder and confusion, the Caligulaesque nature of his proceedings, to be inspired by our regret for some omission, some lapse, some inaccuracy; but it is more probable that the exasperated barbarians were averse to these reasonable conditions; and, that Fritigern was doubtful whether he could accomplish the conclusion of the treaty, unless he found himself supported by the presence, and terror, of an Imperial army. About the same time, Count Richomer returned from the West, to announce the defeat and submission of the Alamsians; to inform Valens, that his nephew advanced by rapid marches at the head of the veteran and victorious legions of Gaul; and to request, in the name of Gratian and of the republic, that every dangerous and decisive measure might be suspended, till the junction of the two emperors should insure the success of the Gothic war. But the feeble sovereign of the East was actuated only by the fatal illusions of pride and jealousy. He disdained the important advice; he rejected the humiliating aid; he secretly compared the ignominies, or at least the inglorious, period of his brother's reign, with the fame and glory of his own youth; and Valens rushed into the field, to erect his imaginary triumph, before the diligence of his colleague could usurp any share of the triumphs of the day.
was anxiously expected by the general of the Goths, descended like a whirlwind from the hills, swept across the plain, and added new terrors to the tumultuous, but irresistible, charge of the barbarian host. The event of the battle of Hadrianople, so fatal to Valens and to the empire, may be described in a few words: the Roman cavalry fled; the infantry was abandoned, surrounded, and cut in pieces. The most skilful evolutions, the firmest courage, are scarcely sufficient to extricate a body of foot, encumbered, on an open plain, by superior numbers of horse: but the troops of Valens, oppressed by the weight of the enemy and their own fears, were crowded into a narrow space, where it was impossible for them to extend their ranks, or even to use, with effect, their swords and javelins. In the midst of tumult, of slaughter, and of dismay, the emperor, despoiled by his guards, and wounded, as it was supposed, with an arrow, sought protection among the Latins and the Muslims, who still maintained their ground with some appearance of order and firmness. His faithful generals, Trajan and Victor, was perceived his danger, loudly exclaimed, that all was lost, unless the person of the emperor could be saved. Some troops, animated by their exhortation, advanced to his relief; they found only a bloody spot, covered with a heap of broken arms and mangled bodies, without being able to discover their unfortunate prince, either among the living, or the dead. Their search could not befruitful; there was not in the circumstances with which some historians have related the death of the emperor.

By the care of his attendants, Valens was removed from the field of battle to a neighbouring cottage, where they attempted to dress his wound, and to provide for his future safety. But this humble retreat was instantly surrounded by the enemy: they forced the door; they were provoked by a discharge of arrows from the roof, till at length, incontinent of delay, they set fire to a pile of dry faggots, and consumed the cottage with the Roman emperor and his train. Valens perished in the flames; and a youth, who, when the window was opened, escaped, to attest the melancholy tale, and to inform the Goths of the inestimable prize which they had lost by their own rashness. A great number of brave and distinguished officers perished in the battle of Hadrianople, which equalled, in the actual loss, and far surpassed, in the fatal consequences, the misfortune which Rome had formerly sustained in the field of Cannae. Two master-generals of the cavalry and infantry, two great officers of the palace, and thirty-five tribunes, were found among the slain; and the death of Schaidan might satisfy the world, that he was the victim, as well as the author, of the public calamity. Above two-thirds of the Roman army were destroyed; and the darkness of the night was esteemed a very favourable circumstance, as it served to conceal the flight of the multitude, and to protect the more orderly retreat of Victor and Richomer, who alone, amidst the general consternation, maintained the advantage of cool courage, and regular discipline.

While the impressions of grief and terror were still recent in the minds of men, the most celebrated historian of the age composed the funeral oration of a vanquished army, and of an unparrallelled prince, whose throne was already occupied by a stranger. "There are not wanting," says the candid Libanius, "those who arrange the produce of the emperor, or who impute the public misfortunes to the want of courage and discipline in the troops. For my part, I reverence the memory of their former exploits; I experience the glorious death, which they bravely received, standing, and fighting in their ranks; I remember the field of battle, stained with their blood, and covered by the blood of the barbarians. Those honourable marks have been already washed away by the rains; but the holy monuments of their bones, the bones of generals, of centurions, and of valiant warriors, claim a longer period of duration. The king himself fought and fell in the foremost rank of the battle. His attendants presented him with the finest horses of the Imperial stable, that would soon have carried him beyond the pursuit of the enemy. They vainly pressed him to reserve his important life for the future service of the republic. He still declared that he was unworthy to survive so many of the bravest and most faithful of his subjects; and the monarch was nobly buried under a mountain of the slain. Let none, therefore, presume to ascribe the victory of the barbarians to the fear, the weakness, or the imprudence of the Roman troops. The chief and the soldiers were animated by the virtue of their ancestors, whom they equalled in discipline, and the arts of war. Their generous ambition was supported by the love of glory, which prompted them to contend at the same time with heat and thirst, with fire and the sword; and cheerfully to embrace an honourable death, as their refuge against flight and infamy. The indignation of the gods has been the only cause of the success of our enemies."

The truth of history may dissemble some parts of this panegyric, which cannot strictly be reconciled with the character of Valens, or the circumstances of the battle; but the greatest commiseration is due to the eloquence, and still more to the generosity, of the orator of Antioch. The pride of the Goths was elated by this memorable victory; but their vanity was disappointed by the terrifying discovery, that the richest part of the Imperial spoil had been within the walls of..."
Hadriano. They hastened to possess the reward of their valour; but they were encountered in the remains of a vanquished army, with an intrepid resolution, which was the effect of their despair, and the only hope of their safety. The walls of the city, and the ramparts of the adjacent camp, were lined with military engines, that threw stones of an enormous weight; and astonished the ignorant barbarians by the noise, and velocity, still more than by the real effects, of the discharge. The soldiers, the citizens, the provincials, the domestics of the palace, were united in the danger, and in the defence: the furious assault of the Goths was repulsed; their secret arts of treachery and treason were discovered; and, after an obstinate conflict of many hours, they retired to their tents; convinced, by experience, that it would be far more advisable to observe the treaty, which their sanguine leader had tacitly stipulated with the fortifications of great and populous cities. After the hasty and impolitic massacre of three hundred deserters, an act of justice extremely useful to the discipline of the Roman armies, the Goths ignominiously raised the siege of Hadriano. The scenes of war and tumult were instantly converted into a silent solitude; the multitude suddenly disappeared; the secret paths of the woods and mountains were marked with the footsteps of the trembling fugitives, who sought a refuge in the distant cities of Illyricum and Macedon; and the faithful officers of the household, and the treasury, cautiously and secretly kept in search of the emperor, of whose death they were still ignorant.

The title of the Gothic invasion misled from the walls of Hadriano to the suburbs of Constantinople. The barbarians were surprised with the splendid appearance of the capital of the East, the height and extent of the walls, the myriads of wealthy and afflicted citizens who crowded the ramparts, and the various prospect of the sea and land. While they gazed with hopeless desire on the inaccessible beauties of Constantinople, a sally was made from one of the gates by a party of Saracens, who had been fortunately engaged in the service of Valent. The city of Scythia was forced to yield to the admirable art and spirit of the Arabian horses: their riders were skilled in the evolutions of irregular war; and the northern barbarians were astonished, and dismayed, by the inhuman ferocity of the barbarians of the south. A Gothic soldier was slain by the dagger of an Arab; and the hairy, naked savage, applying his lips to the wound, expressed a horrid delight, while he sucked the blood of his vanquished enemy.

The army of the Goths, laden with the spoil of the wealthy suburbs, and the soul-
had been left without cultivation and without inhabitants, the consequences might not have been so fatal to the inferior productions of animated nature. The useful and fertile animals, which are nourished by the hand of man, might suffer and perish, if they were deprived of his protection; but the beasts of the forest, his enemies, or his victims, would multiply in the free and undisturbed possession of their solitary domain. The various tribes that people the air, or the waters, are still less connected with the fate of the human species; and it is highly probable, that the fish of the Danube would have felt more terror and distress, from the approach of a voracious pike, than from the hostile inroad of a Gothic army.

Whatever may have been the just measure of the calamities of Europe, there was reason to fear that the same calamities would soon extend to the peaceful countries of Asia. The sons of the Goths had been judiciously distributed through the cities of the East; and the arts of education were employed to polish, and subdue, the native ferocities of their temper. In the space of about twelve years, their numbers had continually increased; and the children, who, in the first emigrations, were sent over the Hellespont, had attained, with rapid growth, the strength and spirit of perfect manhood. It was impossible to conceal from their knowledge the events of the Gothic war; and, as those daring youths had not studied the language of dissimulation, they betrayed their wish, their desire, and their intention, to emulate the glorious example of their fathers. The danger of the times seemed to justify the jealous suspicions of the provincials; and these suspicions were admitted as unanswerable evidence, that the Goths of Asia had formed a secret and dangerous conspiracy against the public safety. The death of Valens had left the East without a sovereign; and Julian, who filled the important station of master-general of the troops, with a high reputation of diligence and ability, thought it his duty to annul the senate of Constantinople; which he considered, during the vacancy of the throne, as the representative council of the nation. As soon as he had obtained the discretionary power of acting as he should judge most expedient for the good of the republic, he assembled the principal officers; and privately concerted effectual measures for the execution of his bloody design. An order was immediately promulgated, that, on a stated day, the Gothic youth should assemble in the capital cities of their respective provinces; and, as a report was industriously circulated, that they were summoned to receive a liberal gift of lands and money, the pleasing hope allayed the fury of their resentment, and, perhaps, suspended the motions of the conspiracy. On the appointed day, the unarmed crowd of the Gothic youth was carefully collected in the square, or forum:

the streets and avenues were occupied by the Roman troops; and the roofs of the houses were covered with archers and slingers. At the same hour, in all the cities of the East, the signal was given of indiscriminate slaughter; and the provinces of Asia were delivered, by the cruel policies of Julian, from a domestic enemy, who, in a few months, might have carried fire and sword from the Hellespont to the Euphrates. The urgent consideration of the public safety may undoubtedly authorise the violation of every positive law. How far that, or any other, consideration, may operate, to dissolve the natural obligations of humanity and justice, is a doctrine of which I still desire to remain ignorant.

The emperor Gratian was far advanced on his march towards the plains of Hadrianoepolis, when he was informed, at first by the confused voice of fame, and afterwards by the more accurate reports of Victor and Richelieu, that his impatient colleague had been slain in battle, and that two thirds of the Roman army were exterminated by the sword of the victorious Goths. Whatever resentment the rash and jealous vanity of his uncle might deserve, the resentment of a generous mind is easily subdued by the softer emotions of grief and compassion; and even the sense of pity was soon lost in the serious and alarming consideration of the state of the republic. Gratian was too late to assist; he was too weak to revenge, his unfortunate colleague; and the valiant and modest youth felt himself unequal to the support of a sinking world. A formidable tempest of the barbarians of Germany seemed ready to burst over the provinces of Gaul; and the mind of Gratian was oppressed and distracted by the administration of the Western empire. In this important crisis, the government of the East, and the conduct of the Gothic war, required the undivided attention of a hero and a statesman. A subject invested with such ample command would not long have preserved his fidelity to a distant benefactor; and the Imperial council embraced the wise and manly counsel of conferring an obligation, rather than of yielding to an insult. It was the wish of Gratian to bestow the purple as the reward of victory; but, at the age of nineteen, it is not easy for a prince, educated in the supreme rank, to understand the true characters of his enemies and friends. He attempted to weigh, with an impartial hand, their various merits and defects; and, whilst he checked the rash confidence of ambition, he distrusted the cautious wisdom, which desired of the republic. As each moment of delay diminished something of the power and resources of the future sovereign of the East, the situation of the times would not allow a tedious debate. The choice of Gratian was soon declared in favour of an exile, whose father, only three years before, had suffered, under the sanction of his authority, an unjust and ignominious death.

[382] Histories, II. Ch. ii. p. 451. 383]胜者，就等于是得到了胜利，他获得了女王的称号，如前所述，他从女王那里得到了胜利。Such a claim, which extended to the whole of the empire, was made by the emperor Julian, who had not yet ascended the throne of the East.
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

The great Theodosius, a name celebrated in history, and dear to the Catholic church, was summoned to the Imperial court, which had gradually retreated from the confines of Thrace to the more secure station of Salonius. Five months after the death of Valens, the emperor Gratian produced before the assembled troops, his colleague, and their master; who, after a modest, perhaps a sincere, resistance, was compelled to accept, amidst the general acclamations, the diadem, the purple, and the equal title of Augustus. The provinces of Thrace, Asia, and Egypt, over which Valens had reigned, were resigned to the administration of the new emperor; but, as he was specially intrusted with the conduct of the Gothic war, the Illyrian prefecture was discombered; and the two great dioceses of Dacia and Macedonia were added to the dominions of the Eastern empire.

The same province, and, perhaps, the same city, which gave birth to the heroes of Trojan, and the talents of Hadrian, was the original seat of another family of Spaniards, who, in a line fortunate age, possessed, near four score years, the declining empire of Rome. They emerged from the obscurity of municipal honours by the active spirit of the elder Theodosius, a general, whose exploits in Britain and Africa have formed one of the most splendid parts of the annals of Valentinian. The son of that general, who likewise bore the name of Theodosius, was educated, by skilful preceptors, in the liberal studies of youth; but he was instructed in the art of war by the tender care and severe discipline of his father.

Under the standard of such a leader, young Theodosius sought glory and knowledge, in the most distant scenes of military action; heured his constitution to the influence of seasons and climate; distinguished his valour by sea and land; and observed the various warfare of the Scots, the Saxons, and the Moors. His own merit, and the recommendation of the conqueror of Africa, soon raised him to a separate command; and, in the station of duke of Maesa, he triumphed an army of Saracens; saved the province; deserved the love of the soldiers; and provoked the envy of the court. His rising fortunes were soon blasted by the disgrace and execution of his illustrious father; and Theodosius obtained, as a favour, the permission of retiring to a private life in the retired province of Spain. He displayed a firm and temperate character in the ease with which he adapted himself to this new situation. His time was almost equally divided between the town and country: the spirit, which had animated his public conduct, was shown in the active and affectionate performance of every social duty; and the diligence of the soldier was profitably converted to the improvement of his ample patrimony, which lay between Valles-dolid and Segovia, in the midst of a fruitful district, still famous for a most exquisite breed of sheep. From the innocent, but humble, labours of his farm, Theodosius was transported, in less than four months, to the throne of the Eastern empire; and the whole period of the history of this world will not perhaps afford a similar example, of an elevation in so short a time, so pure, and so probable. The princes who peaceable inherit the sceptres of their fathers, claim and enjoy a legal right, the more secure, as it is absolutely distinct from the merits of their personal characters. The subjects, who, in a monarchy, or a popular state, acquire the possession of supreme power, may have raised themselves, by the superiority either of genius or virtue, above the heads of their equals; but their virtue is seldom exempt from ambition; and the cause of the successful candidate is frequently stained by the guilt of conspiracy, or civil war. Even in those governments which allow the reigning monarch to declare a colleague, or a successor, his partial choice, which may be influenced by the flatterest passions, is often directed to an unworthy object. But the most suspicious malignity cannot ascribe to Theodosius, in his obscure solitude of Cataula, the arts, the desires, or even the hopes, of an ambitious statesman; and the name of the Exile would long since have been forgotten, if his genuine and distinguished virtues had not left a deep impression in the Imperial court. During the season of prosperity, he had been neglected; but, in the public distress, his superior merit was universally felt and acknowledged. What confidence must have been reposed in his integrity, since Gratian could trust, that a pious son would forgive, for the sake of the republic, the murder of his father! West expectations must have been formed of his abilities, to encourage the hopes, that a single man could save, and restore, the empire of the East. Theodosius was invested with the purple in the thirty-third year of his age. The vulgar gazed with admiration on the manly beauty of his face, and the graceful majesty of his person, which they were pleased to compare with the pictures and medals of the emperor T(Ely.) whilst intelligent ob-

104 A list of the Theodosii the Great was compiled in the last century (Foro, 1774, &c.). 105 a (Roman). 106 q (Roman), &c. 107 a (Roman), &c. 108 a (Roman). 109 a (Roman), &c. 110 a (Roman). 111 a (Roman), &c. 112 a (Roman). 113 a (Roman). 114 a (Roman), &c. 115 a (Roman). 116 a (Roman), &c.
serves discovered, in the qualities of his heart and understanding, a more important resemblance to the best and greatest of the Roman princes.

It is not without the most sincere regret, that I must now take leave of so accurate and faithful guide, who has composed the history of his own times, without indulging the prejudices and passions, which usually affect the mind of a contemporary. Ammianus Marcellinus, who terminates his useful work with the defeat and death of Valens, recommends the more glorious subject of the ensuing reign, to the youthful vigour and eloquence of the rising generation. The rising generation was not disposed to accept his advice, or to imitate his example; and, in the study of the reign of Theodosius, we are reduced to illustrate the partial narrative of Zosimus, by the obscure hints of fragments and chronicles, by the figurative style of poetry or panegyric, and by the precarious assistance of the ecclesiastical writers, who, in the heat of religious factions, are apt to despise the profane virtues of sincerity and moderation. Conscious of these disadvantages, which will continue to involve a considerable portion of the decline and fall of the Roman empire, I shall proceed with doubtful and timorous steps. Yet I may boldly pronounce, that the battle of Hadrianople was never regained by any signal or decisive victory of Theodosius over the barbarians: and the expenses silence of his venal orators may be confirmed by the observation of the condition and circumstances of the times. The fabric of a mighty state, which has been reared by the labours of successive ages, could not be overturned by the misfortunes of a single day, if the total power of the imagination did not exaggerate the real measure of the calamity. The loss of forty thousand Romans, who fell in the plains of Hadrianople, might have been soon recruited in the populous provinces of the East, which contained so many millions of inhabitants. The courage of a soldier is found to be the sharpest, and most common, quality of human nature; and sufficient skill to encounter an undisciplined foe, might have been speedily taught by the care of the surviving centurions. If the barbarians were mounted on the horses, and equipped with the armour, of their vanquished enemies, the numerous studies of Cappadocia and Spain would have supplied new squadrons of cavalry; the thirty-four arsenals of the empire were plentifully stored with magazines of offensive and defensive arms; and the wealth of Asia might still have yielded an ample fund for the expenses of the war. But the effects which were produced by the battle of Hadrianople on the minds of the barbarians, and of the Romans, extended the former, and the defeat of the latter, far beyond the limits of a single day. A Gothic chief was induced to declare, with insolent moderation, that, for his part, he was fatigued with slaughter; but that he had been assembled by a people, who had before him like a flock of sheep, could still pressume to dispute the possession of their manses and provinces. The same terms, which the name of the Huns had spread among the Gothic tribes, were insinuated, by the formidable name of the Goths, among the subjects and soldiers of the Roman empire. If Theodosius, hastily collecting his scattered forces, had led them into the field to encounter a victorious enemy, his army would have been vanquished by their own fury; and his majesty could not have been excused by the chance of success. But the great Theodosius, an epitome which he honourably deserved on this memorable occasion, conducted himself as the firm and faithful guardian of the republic. He fixed his head-quarters at Thessalonica, the capital of the Macedonian diocese; from whence he could watch the irregular motions of the barbarians, and direct the operations of his lieutenants, from the gates of Constantinople to the shores of the Hadracian. The fortifications and garrisons of the cities were strengthened; and the troops, among whom a sense of order and discipline was revived, were immovable, emboldened by the confidence of their own sufficiency. From these secure stations, they were encouraged to make frequent forays on the barbarians, who infested the adjacent country; and, as they were seldom allowed to engage, without some decisive superiority, either of ground or of numbers, their enterprises were, for the most part, successful; and they were soon convinced, by their own experience, of the possibility of vanquishing their invincible enemies. The detachments of these separate garrisons were gradually united into small armies; the same cautious measures were pursued, according to an extensive and well-concerted plan of operations; the events of each day added strength and spirit to the Roman arms; and the artful diligence of the emperor, who circulated the most favourable reports of the success of the war, contributed to sustain the pride of the barbarians, and to animate the hopes and courage of his subjects. If, instead of this faint and imperfect outline, we could accurately represent the councils and actions of Theodosius, in four successive campaigns, there is reason to believe, that his consummate skill would deserve the applause of every military reader. The republic had formerly been saved by the delays of Paphia; and, while the splendid trophies of Sceipio, in the field of Zama, attract the eyes of posterity, the camps and marches of the diadoumenoi among the hills of Cappadocia, may

112. See an essay on Ammianus Marcellinus, Trans. 20 and 21. Great Britain, the principal town of the island of Cappadocia, now called Cappadocia; and the principal town of the island of Cappadocia, now called Cappadocia. Ammianus Marcellinus, in his history of the Roman empire, is the best authority for the history of the Roman empire, and is the best authority for the history of the Roman empire.

113. Ammianus Marcellinus was the last senator of Rome who composed a prose history in the Latin language. The text is in the third century.
Claim a juster portion of the solid and independent fame, which the general is not compelled to share, either with fortune or with his troops. Such was likewise the merit of Theodosius; and the infirmity of his body, which most unusually languished under a long and dangerous disease, could not suppress the vigour of his mind, or divert his attention from the public service. 112

The deliverance and peace of the Roman provinces was the work of prudence, rather than of valour: the province of Theodosius was accorded by fortune; and the emperor never failed to seize, and to improve, every favourable circumstance. As long as the superior genius of Flaviliger preserved the union, and directed the motions of the barbarians, their power was not inadequate to the conquest of a great empire. The death of that hero, the predecessor and master of the renowned Alaric, relieved an impatient multitude from the intolerable yoke of discipline and discretion. The barbarians, who had been restrained by his authority, abandoned themselves to the dictates of their passions; and their passions were seldom uniform or consistent. An army of conquerors was broken into many disorderly bands of savage robbers; and their blind and irregular fury was not less pernicious to themselves than to their enemies. Their massacre or disposition was shown in the destruction of every object, which they wanted strength to restore, or taste to enjoy: and they often consumed, with impatient rage, the harvests, or the granaries, which soon afterwards became necessary for their own subsistence. A spirit of discord arose among the independent tribes and nations, which had been united only by the bonds of a loose and voluntary alliance. The troops of the Thracians and the Alans would naturally ascend the flight of the Goths; who were not disposed to use with moderation the advantages of their fortune: the ancient jealousy of the Ostrogoths and the Visigoths could not long be suspended; and the haughty chiefs still remembered the insults and injuries, which they had repeatedly offered, or sustained, whilst the nation was seated in the countries beyond the Danube. The progress of domestic faction deprived the more dissolute portion of nation of its interest; and the officers of Theodosius were instructed to purchase, with liberal gifts and promises, the hatred, or advice, of the discontented party. The succession of Mæcelar, a prince of the royal blood of the Amali, gave a bold and faithful champion to the cause of Rome. The illustrious disorder soon obtained the rank of contemporaneous, with an important command; surprised an army of his countrymen, who were immersed in wine and sleep; and, after a cruel slaughter of the assembled Goths, returned with an immense spoil, and four thousand wagons, to the Imperial camp. 113 In the hands of a skilful politician, the most difficult means may be successfully applied to the same ends; and the peace of the empire, which had been forwardly by the division, was accomplished by the reunions of the Gothic nation. Athalaric, who had been a patient spectator of these extraordinary events, was at length driven, by the chance of arms, from the dark recesses of the woods of Cuculandal. He no longer hesitated to pass the Danube; and a very considerable part of the subjects of Frigintius, who already felt the inconveniences of anarchy, were easily persuaded to acknowledge for their king, a Gothic Judge, whose birth they respected, and whose abilities they had frequently experienced. But age had chilled the daring spirit of Athalaric; and, instead of leading his people to the field of battle and victory, he was content to concur to the fair proposal of an honorable and advantageous treaty. Theodosius, who was acquainted with the merit and power of his new ally, condescended to meet him at the distance of several miles from Constantinople; and entertained him in the Imperial city, with the condescension of a friend, and the magnificence of a monarch. 114 The barbarian prince was observed, with curious attention, the variety of objects which attracted his notice; and at last broke out into a sincere and passionate exclamation of wonder. I now behold (said he) what I never could believe, the glories of this stupendous capital! and as he cast his eyes around, he viewed, and he admired, the commencing splendour of the city, the strength and beauty of the walls and public buildings, the capacious harbours, crowded with immemorial records, the perpetual commotions of distant nations, and the arms and discipline of the troops. Indeed, (continued Athalaric,) the emperor of the Romans is a god upon earth; and the presumption of these Goths is to lift up his eyes against him, is guilt of his own blood. 115 The Gothic king did not long enjoy this splendid and honorable reception; and, as temperance was not the virtue of his nation, it may justly be suspected, that his unnatural disease was contracted amidst the pleasures of the Imperial banquet. But the policy of Theodosius derived more solid benefits from the death, than he could have expected from the most faithful services, of his ally. The funeral of Athalaric was performed with solemn rites in the capital of the East; a stately monument was erected to his memory; and his whole army, won by the liberal courtesy, and discreet grief, of

113 Conques, "Théodore le Vieux," etc. p. 140. 114 With Eutropius, p. 287.
116 Suetonius, "Théodore le Vieux," etc. p. 298. 117 The sources, in common with the note, which is printed in Roman characters, to be found above.
prosec of the barbarians was suddenly stopped by an unexpected obstacle; a triple line of vessels, strongly connected with each other, and which formed a perpendicular chain of two miles and a half along the river. While they struggled to force their way in the unequal conflict, their right flank was overthrown by the irresistible attack of a fleet of galley's, which were urged down the stream by the united impulse of oars and of the tide. The weight and velocity of those ships of war broke, and sunk, and dispersed, the rude and feeble canoes of the barbarians; their valour was insufficent; and Atalanta, the king, or general, of the Ostrogotths, perished, with his bravest troops, either by the sword of the Romans, or in the waves of the Danube. The last division of this unfortunate fleet might regain the opposite shore; but the distress and disorder of the multitude rendered them alike incautious, either of action or counsel; and they soon implored the clemency of the victorious enemy. On this occasion, as well as on many others, it is a difficult task to reconcile the passions and prejudices of the writers of the age of Theodosius. The partial and ingenuous historian, who misrepresented every action of his reign, affirms, that the emperor did not appear in the field of battle till the barbarians had been vanquished by the valour and conduct of his lieutenant Promotus. The flatter ing post, who celebrated, in the court of Honorius, the glory of the father and of his son, ascribes the victory to the personal prowess of Theodosius; and almost insinuates, that the king of the Ostrogotths was slain by the hand of the emperor. The truth of history might perhaps be found in a just medium between these extreme and contradictory assertions.

The original treaty which fixed the settlement of the Goths, accorded to them, and stipulated their obligations, would illustrate the history of Theodosius and his successors. The series of their history has imperfectly preserved the spirit and substance of this singular agreement. The ranges of war and tyranny had provided: many large tracts of territory but uncultivated land for the use of these barbarians, who might not disdain the practice of agriculture. A numerous colony of the Visigoths, seated in Thunes, the remnant of the Ostrogotths were planted in Phrygia and Lydia; their immediate wants were supplied by a distribution of corn and cattle; and their future industry was encouraged by an exemption from tribute, during a certain term of years. The barbarians would have deserved to feel the cruel and pernicious policy of the

Theodosius, enlisting under the standard of the Roman empire. The submission of so great a body of the Visigoths was productive of the most salutary consequences; and the mixed influence of force, of reason, and of corruption, became every day more powerful, and more extensive. Each independent chieftain hastened to obtain a separate treaty from the apprehension that an obstinate delay might expose him, alone and unprotected, to the revenge, or justice, of the conqueror. The general, or rather the final capitulation of the Goths, may be dated four years, one month, and twenty-five days, after the defeat and death of the emperor Valens.

The provinces of the Danube had been already relieved from the oppressive weight of the Gruthungi, or Ostrogotths, by the voluntary retreat of Atalanta and Saphrax; whose restless spirit had prompted them to seek new scenes of rapine and glory. Their destructive course was pointed towards the West, but we must be satisfied with a very obscure and imperfect knowledge of their various adventures. The Ostrogotths impelled several of the German tribes on the provinces of Gaul; concluded, and soon violated, a treaty with the emperor Gratian; advanced into the unknown countries of the north; and, after an interval of more than four years, returned, with accumulated force, to the banks of the Lower Danube. Their troops were recruited with the fiercest warriors of Germany and Scythia; and the soldiers, or at least the historians, of the empire, no longer recognised the name and countenances of their former enemies. The general, who commanded the military and naval powers of the Thracian frontier, soon perceived that his superiority would be disadvantageous to the public service, and that the barbarians, by the presence of his fleet and legions, would probably defer the passage of the river till the approaching winter. The dexterity of the spies, whom he sent into the Gothic camp, allured the barbarians into a fatal snare. They were persuaded, that, by a bold attempt, they might surprise, in the silence and darkness of the night, the sleeping army of the Romans; and the whole multitude was hastily embarked in a fleet of three thousand canoes. The bravest of the Ostrogotths led the van; the main body consisted of the remainder of their subjects and soldiers; and the women and children securely followed in the rear. One of the nights without a moon had been selected for the execution of their design; and they had almost reached the southern bank of the Danube, in the firm confidence that they should find an easy landing, and an unguarded camp. But the
peril court, if they had suffered themselves to be dispersed through the provinces. They required, and they obtained, the sole possession of the villages and districts assigned for their residence; they still cherished and propagated their native manners and language; asserted, in the bosom of despotism, the freedom of their domestic government; and acknowledged the sovereignty of the emperor, without submitting to the inferior jurisdiction of the laws and magistrates of Rome. The hereditary chiefs of the tribes and families were still permitted to command their followers in peace and war; but the royal dignity was abolished; and the generals of the Goths were appointed and removed at the pleasure of the emperor. An army of forty thousand Goths was maintained for the perpetual service of the empire of the East; and those haughty troops, who assumed the title of Friserrii, or allies, were distinguished by their gold collars, liberal pay, and licentious privileges. Their new courage was improved by the use of arms, and the knowledge of discipline; and, while the republic was guarded, or threatened, by the doubtful sword of the barbarians, the last sparks of the military flame were finally extinguished in the minds of the Romans. Theodosius had the address to persuade his allies, that the conditions of peace which had been extorted from him by prudence and necessity, were the voluntary expressions of his sincerest friendship for the Gothic nation.

A different mode of vindication or apology was opposed to the complaints of the people; who loudly censured these shameful and dangerous concessions. The calamities of the war were painted in the most lively colours; and the first symptoms of the return of order, of plenty, and security, were diligently exaggerated. The advocates of Theodosius could assert, with some appearance of truth and reason, that it was impossible to extirpate so many warlike tribes, who were rendered desperate by the loss of their entire country; and that the exhausted provinces would be revived by a fresh supply of soldiers and husbandmen. The barbarians still were an angry and hostile aspect; but the experience of past times might encourage the hope, that they would acquire the habits of industry and obedience; that their manners would be polished by time, education, and the influence of Christianity; and that their posteriority would innocently blend with the great body of the Roman people.

Notwithstanding these specious arguments, and these singular expectations, it was apparent to every discerning eye, that the Goths would long remain the enemies of the empire, and might soon become the conquerors of the Roman empire. Their rude and insolent behaviour expressed their contempt of the citizens and provincials, whom they insulted with impunity. To the zeal and valour of the barbarians, Theodosius was indebted for the success of his arms; but their assistance was precarious; and they were sometimes induced, by a treacherous and inconsistent disposition, to abandon his standard, at that moment when their services were the most essential. During the civil war against Maximus, a great number of Gothic deserters retired into the mountains of Macedonia, wasted the adjacent provinces, and obliged the intrepid monarch to expose his person, and exult his power, to suppress the rising flame of rebellion. The public apprehensions were fortified by the strong suspicion, that these tumults were not the effect of accidental passion, but the result of deep and premeditated design. It was generally believed, that the Goths had signed the treaty of peace with an hostile and insidious spirit; and that their chiefs had previously bound themselves, by a solemn and secret oath, never to keep faith with the Romans; to maintain the fairest show of loyalty and friendship, and to watch the favourable moment of rapine, of conquest, and of revenge. But, as the minds of the barbarians were not insensible to the power of gratitude, several of the Gothic leaders sincerely devoted themselves to the service of the empire, or, at least, of the emperor; the whole nation was insensibly divided into two opposite factions, and much sophistry was employed in conversation and disputes, to compare the obligations of their first and second engagements. The Goths, who considered themselves as the friends of peace, of justice, and of Rome, were directed by the authority of Fravitta, a valiant and honourable youth, distinguished above the rest of his countrymen, by the politeness of his manners, the liberality of his sentiments, and the mild virtues of social life. But the more numerous faction adhered to the fierce and faithless Privuil, who inflamed the passions, and asserted the independence, of his warlike followers. On one of the solemn festivals, when the chiefs of both parties were invited to the imperial table, they were insensibly heated by wine, till they forgot the usual restrains of discretion and respect; and betrayed, in the presence of Theodosius, the fatal secret of their domastic disputes. The emperor, who had been the reluctant witness of this extraordinary controversy, dissembled his fears and resentment; and soon dismissed the tumultuous assembly. Fravitta, alarmed and exasperated by the insolence of his rival, whose departure from the palace might have been the signal of a civil war, boldly followed him; and,

132 Theodosius (Chor. vi. p. 313. 373.) commends them to Galerius and Eusebius. The Goths, in consequence, were busily employed in improving the various advantages which the princes laid open to them. After they had been accommodated with seven or eight towns, they were loaded with presents by the emperor Theodosius; and, on his death, they were allowed by his son Arcadius to have the title of Friserrii. (Zosim. i. 35. &c.) The barbarians were at length dismissed from the provinces of Thrace, and the province of Macedonia was allotted to them; but they were sufficiently scourged by the severity of their fate in history.

133 Theodoret, in his fourth book, &c. p. 787. 787. He allies a long and ridiculous story of the supplies given, and the tax imposed on the provincials. The wild butchery of the Goths is celebrated by the same author, Zosim. loc. cit. (p. 787.) 787. See hereditum secundum generis suum. (Theodosius, lib. iv. p. 39.) He gained the good of the state, and that of the people. (Hist. Rom. i. 37.) 37.
THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. XXVII.

Death of Gratian.—Ruin of Arius.—St. Ambrose.—First civil war, against Maximus.—Character, Administration, and Romance, of Theodosius.—Death of Valentinian II.—Second civil war, against Eugenius.—Death of Theodosius.

The fall of Gratian, before he had accomplished the twentieth year of his age, was equal to that of the most celebrated princes. His gentle and amiable disposition endeared him to his private friends, the graceful affability of his manners engaged the affection of the people; the men of letters, who enjoyed the liberality, acknowledged the taste and eloquence, of their sovereign; his sound and dexterity in arms were equally applauded by the soldiery; and the clergy considered the humble piety of Gratian as the first and most useful of his virtues. The victory of Clotur had delivered the West from a formidable invasion; and the grateful provincials of the East ascribed the merits of Theodosius to the author of his greatness, and of the public safety. Gratian survived those memorable events only four or five years; but he survived his reputation; and, before he fell a victim to rebellion, he had lost, in a great measure, the respect and confidence of the Roman world.

The remarkable alteration of his character or conduct may not be imputed to the arts of flattery, which had besieged the son of Valentinian from his infancy; nor to the headstrong passions which that gentle youth appears to have escaped. A more attentive view of the life of Gratian may perhaps suggest the true cause of the disappointment of the public hopes. His apparent virtues, instead of being the hardy productions of experience and adversity, were the premature and artificial fruits of a royal education. The utmost tenderness of his father was continually employed to bestow on him those advantages, which he might perhaps esteem still higher, as he himself had been deprived of them; and the most skilful masters of every science, and of every art, had laboured to form the mind and body of the young prince. The knowledge which they painfully communicated was displayed with ostentation, and celebrated with lavish praise. His soft and tractable disposition received the fair impression of their judicious precepts; and the absence of passion might easily be mistaken for the strength of reason. His preceptors gradually rose to the rank and consequence of ministers of state; and, as they wisely disdained their secret authority, he seemed to act with firmness, with propriety, and with judgment, on the most important occasions of his life and reign.

But the influence of this elaborate instruction did not penetrate beyond the surface; and the skilful preceptors, who so accurately guided the steps of their royal pupil, could not infuse into his feelers and indolent character, the vigorous and independent principles of action, which renders the laborious pursuit of glory essentially necessary to the happiness, and almost to the existence, of the hero. As soon as time and accident had removed those faithful counsellors from the throne, the emperor of the West insensibly descended to the level of his natural genius; abandoned the reins of government to the ambitious hands which were stretched forwards to grasp them; and assumed his insignia with the most furious gratifications. A public sale of favour and injustice was instituted, both in the court, and in the provinces, by the worthless dependants of his power, whose merit it was made sacrilege to question.

The consequence of the exalted prince was directed to the senate and bishops; who procured an Imperial edict to purify, as a capital offence, the violation of the neglect, or even the ignorance, of the divine laws. Among the various arts which had exercised the youth of Gratian, he had applied himself, with singular industry and success, to manage the horses, to draw the bow, and to dart the javelin; and these qualifications, which might be useful to a soldier, were prostituted to the viler purposes of hunting. Large parks were enclosed for the Imperial pleasure, and plentifully stocked with every species of wild beasts; and Gratian neglected the duties, and even the dignity, of his rank, to consume whole days in the vain display of his dexterity.

[Nos. de Théodose des invasions, tom. 20, p. 151-152.]

The British Library

The fall of Theodosius, 405, S. 37.

The fall of Theodosius, 405, S. 37.

The fall of Theodosius, 405, S. 37.

The fall of Theodosius, 405, S. 37.

The fall of Theodosius, 405, S. 37.

The fall of Theodosius, 405, S. 37.

The fall of Theodosius, 405, S. 37.

The fall of Theodosius, 405, S. 37.
and boldness in the chase. The pride and wish of the Roman emperor to excel in an art, in which he might be surpassed by the meanest of his slaves, reminded the numerous spectators of the examples of Nero and Commodus; but the chase, and temperate Gratian was a stranger to their monstrous views; and his hands were stained only with the blood of animals.

The behaviour of Gratian, which

Degraded his character in the eyes

of mankind, could not have disturbed the security of his reign, if the army had not been provoked to resent their peculiar injuries. As long as the young emperor was guided by the instructions of his masters, he professed himself the friend and upholder of the soldiers; many of his hours were spent in the familiar converse of the camp; and the health, the comfort, the rewards, the honours, of his faithful troops, appeared to be the object of his attentive concern. But, after Gratian more freely indulged his prevailing taste for hunting and shooting, he naturally connected himself with the most licentious ministers of his favourite amusement. A body of the Alani was received into the military and domestic service of the palace; and the amiable skill, which they were accustomed to display in the unbounded plains of Scythia, was exercised, on a more narrow theatre, in the parks and enclosures of Gaul. Gratian admired the talents and customs of these favourite guards, to whom alone he intrusted the defence of his person and, as if he trusted, he courted the public opinion, he frequently exhibited himself to the soldiers and people, with the dress and arms, the long bow, the sounding quiver, and the fur garments, of a Scythian warrior. The unworthy spectacle of a Roman prince, who had renounced the dress and manners of his country, filled the minds of the legions with grief and indignation. Even the Germans, so strong and formidable in the armies of the empire, affected to disdain the strange and horrid appearance of the savages of the North, who, in the space of a few years, had wandered from the banks of the Volga to those of the Seine. A loud and licentious murmurs was echoed through the camps and garrisons of the West; and as the mild indulgence of Gratian neglected to extinguish the first symptoms of discontent, the want of love and respect was not supplied by the influence of fear. But the subversion of an established government is always a work of some real, and of much apparent, difficulty; and the throne of Gratian was protected by the sanctions of custom, law, religion, and the nice balance of the civil and military powers, which had been established by the policy of Constans. It was not very important to enquire from what causes the revolt of Britain was produced. Accident is commonly the parent of disorder; the seeds of rebellion happened to fall on a soil which was supposed to be more fruitful than any other in tyrants and usurpers; and the legions of that sequestered island had long been famous for a spirit of presumption and arrogance; and the name of Maximus, 

Stirred at home,

was proclaimed, by the tumultuous, but unanimous voice, both of the soldiers and of the provincials. The emperor, or the rebel, for his title was not yet ascertained by fortune, was a native of Spain, the countryman, the fellow-soldier, and the rival of Theodosius, whose elevation he had not seen without some emotions of envy and resentment: the events of his life had long since fixed him in Britain; and I should not be unwilling to find some evidence for the marriage, which he is said to have contracted with the daughter of a wealthy lord of Caernarvonshire. But this provincial title might justly be considered as a state of exile and obscurity; and if Maximus had obtained any civil or military office, he was not invested with the authority either of governor or general. His abilities, and even his integrity, are acknowledged by the partial writers of the age; and the multitude indeed have been convinced that could sustain such a confusion in favour of the vanquished enemy of Theodosius. The discontent of Maximus might incline him to change the conduct of his sovereign; and to encourage, perhaps without any views of ambition, the murmur of the troops. But in the midst of the tumult, he artfully, or modestly, refused to ascend the throne; and some credit appears to have been given to his own positive declaration, that he was compelled to accept the dangerous present of the Imperial purple.

But there was danger likewise in falling on the empire; and from the moment that Maximus had violated his allegiance to his lawful sovereign, he could not hope to reign, or even to live, if he confined his moderate ambition within the narrow limits of Britain. He boldly and wisely resolved to prevent the designs of Gratian; the youth of the Galat crowded to his standard, and he invaded Gaul with a fleet and army, which were long afterwards remembered, as the emigration of a considerable part of the British nation. The emperor, in his peaceful residence of Paris, was alarmed by their hostile approach; and the datos which he idly wasted on lions and bears, might
have been employed more honourably against the rebels. But his feeble efforts announced his degenerate spirit and desperate situation; and deprived him of the resources, which he still might have found, in the support of his subjects and allies. The armies of Gaul, instead of opposing the march of Maximus, received him with joyful and loyal acclamations; and the shame of the desertion was transferred from the people to the prince. The troops, whose station more immediately attached them to the service of the palace, abandoned the standard of Gratian the first time that it was displayed in the neighbourhood of Paris. The emperor of the West fled towards Lyons, with a train of only three hundred horse; and, in the cities along the road, where he hoped to find a refuge, or at least a passage, he was detained, by cruel experience, that every gate was shut against the unfortunate. Yet he might still have reached, in safety, the dominions of his brother; and some have returned with the forces of Italy and the East; if he had not suffered himself to be fatally deceived by the pernicious governor of the Lyonnese province. Gratian was prevailed on by protestations of doubtful fidelity, and the hopes of a support, which could not be effectual; till the arrival of Andragathus, the general of the cavalry of Maximus, put an end to his suspense. That resolute officer executed, without remorse, the orders, or the intentions, of the usurper.

A.D. 383. Gratian, as he rose from supper, was seized, delivered into the hands of the assassin; and his body was denied to the priests and priests and presiding officers of his brother Valentinian. The death of the emperor was followed by that of his powerful general Mellobaudus, king of the Franks, who maintained, to the last moment of his life, the ambiguous reputation, which is the just recompense of obscure and subtle policy. These executions might be necessary to the public safety; but the successful usurper, whose power was acknowledged by all the provinces of the West, had the merit, and the satisfaction, of boasting, that, except those who had perished by the chance of war, his triumph was not stained by the blood of the Romans.

The events of this revolution had passed in such rapid succession, that it would have been impossible for Theodosius to march to the relief of his benefactor, before he received the intelligence of his defeat and death. During the season of sincere grief, or ostentations mourning, the Eastern emperor was interrupted by the arrival of the principal chamberlain of Maximus; and the choice of a venerable old man, for an office which was usually exercised by eunuchs, announced to the court of Constantinople the gravity and temperance of the British usurper.

The ambassador condescended to justify, or excuse, the conduct of his master; and to protest, in stentorian language, that the murder of Gratian had been perpetrated, without his knowledge or consent, by the precipitate zeal of the soldiers. But he proceeded, in a firm and equal tone, to offer Theodosius the alternative of peace or war. The speech of the ambassador concluded with a spirited declaration, that although Maximus, as a Roman, and as the father of his people, would choose rather to employ his forces in the common defence of the republic, he was armed and prepared, if his friendship should be rejected, to dispute, in a field of battle, the empire of the world. An immediate and peremptory answer was required; but it was extremely difficult for Theodosius to satisfy, on this important occasion, either the feelings of his own mind, or the expectations of the public. The imperious voice of honour and gratitude called shoul for revenge. From the liberality of Gratian, he had received the Imperial diadem; his patience would encourage the odious suspicion, that he was more deeply sensible of former injuries, than of recent obligations; and if he accepted the friendship, he must seem to share the guilt of the assassin. Even the principles of justice, and the interest of society, would receive a fatal blow from the impatience of Maximus; and the example of successful usurpation would tend to dissolve the artificial fabric of government, and once more to re-plunge the empire in the crimes and calamities of the preceding age. But, as the sentiments of gratitude and honour should invariably regulate the conduct of an individual, they may be overbalanced, in the mind of a sovereign, by the sense of superior duties; and the maxim both of justice, and of humanity must permit the escape of an atrocious criminal, if an innocent people would be involved in the consequences of his punishment. The assassin of Gratian had usurped, but he actually possessed, the most warlike provinces of the empire: the East was exhausted by the misfortunes, and even by the success, of the Gothic war; and it was seriously to be apprehended, that, after the vital strength of the republic had been wasted in a doubtful and destructive contest, the feeble conqueror would remain an easy prey to the barbarians of the north. These weighty considerations engaged Theodosius to deliberate his resolution, and to accept the alliance of the tyrant. But he stipulated, that Maximus should content himself with the possession of the countries beyond the Alps. The brother of Gratian was confirmed and secured in the sovereignty of Italy, Africa, and the Western Illyricum; and some honorable conditions were inserted in the treaty, to protect the memory, and the laws, of the deceased emperor. According to the custom of the age, the images of the three imperial collabatories were exhibited in the veneration of the people; nor should it be lightly supposed, that in the

dead of Valens, a faithful servant of Gratian (see ch. ii. sect. iv. note 6).

16 He expressed, in a solemn manner, the sentiments expressed, with regard to the external relations of his dominions, his provinces, and his person, on his accession to the empire. See his edict, in the Prudent. ed. p. 237, and in the Cod. Theodosii. Comment. i. 362.

17 And the name of Gratian, was not unseemly borne by a prince so ancient, or by a prince so ancient, or by one who aimed at a new Latin title. See his edict, in the Prudent. ed. p. 265, and in the Cod. Theodosii. Comment. i. 362.
ment of a solemn reconciliation, Theodosius secretly cherished the intention of perfidy and revenge. He had been exposed to the fatal effects of his resentment. His profoundest veneration for the Christian clergy was rewarded by the applause and gratitude of a powerful order, which has claimed, in every age, the privilege of dispensing honours, both on earth and in heaven. The orthodox bishops bewailed his death, and their own irreparable loss; but they were soon comforted by the discovery, that Gratian had committed the sepulchre of the Emp. to the hands of a prince, whose humble faith, and fervent zeal, were supported by the spirit and abilities of a more vigorous character. Among the benefactors of the church, the name of Constantine had been rivalled by the glory of Theodosius. If Constantine had the advantage of erecting the standard of the cross, the emolument of his successor assumed the merit of subduing the Arian heresy, and of abolishing the worship of idols in the Roman world. Theodosius was the first of the emperors baptised in the true faith of the Trinity. Although he was born of a Christian family, the maxims, or at least the practice, of the age, encouraged him to delay the ceremony of his initiation; till he was admonished of the danger of delay, by the serious illness which threatened his life, towards the end of the first year of his reign. Before he again took the field against the Goths, he received the sacrament of baptism from Athan- lius, the orthodox bishop of Thessalonica; and, as the emperor ascended from the holy font, still glowing with the warm feelings of regeneration, he dictated a solemn edict, which proclaimed his own faith, and prescribed the religion of his subjects. It is our pleasure (such is the imperial style) that all the nations, which are governed by our clemency, and moderation, should steadfastly adhere to the religion which was taught by St. Peter to the Romans; which faithful tradition has preserved; and which is now professed by the pontiff Damasus, and by Peter, bishop of Alexandria, a man of apostolic holiness. According to the discipline of the apostles, and the doctrine of the Gospel, let us believe the holy duty of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost; under an equal majesty, and a pious Trinity. We authorise the followers of this doctrine to assume the title of Catholic Christians; and as we judge, that all others are extravagant madness, we brand them with the infamous name of Heretics; and declare, that their conventicles shall no longer usurp the respectable appellation of churches.

16 Euseb. 3. 8. p. 232, 233. We may attribute his illness entirely to vexation, but it cannot have been without a visible cause; which the historian seems to show in the context. On his return to Rome he met a violent death. He died A.D. 395.
17 They secured, the ambassadors of Athens, secret letters on the papal Consti- tution (in the Council of 1157).
18 Theodosius, as Honorius (Mon. episc. c. 41), Socrates (v. c. 62), and Theodorus the Exarch, emp. (v. 2. 2.)
19 Athanasius, as bishop of Alexandria, and another against the importunities of soldiers (p. 220). They were authors of a letter which does not appear similar to a real, or a

"sides the condemnation of Divine justice, they " must expect to suffer the severe penalties, which " our authority; guided by heavenly wisdom, " shall think proper to inflict upon them." The faith of a soldier is commonly the fruit of instruction, rather than of enquiry; but as the emperor always fixed his eyes on the visible landmarks of orthodoxy, by which he had so prudently constituted his religious opinions were never affected by the species of the noble arguments, and the sublime creeds of the Arian school. Once indeed he expressed a faint inclination to converse with the eloquent and learned Eunomius, who lived in retirement at a small distance from Constantinople. But the dangerous interview was prevented by the prayers of the empress Flaccilla, who reminded the emperor of his husband and of the mind of Theodosius was confirmed by a theological argument, adapted to the rudest capacity. He had lately bestowed, on his eldest son Arcadius, the name and honours of Augustus, and the two princes were seated on a stately throne to receive the homage of their subjects. A bishop, Amphilochius of Iconium, approached the throne, and after saluting, with due reverence, the person of his sovereign, he accosted the royal youth with the same familiar tenderness, which he might have used towards a plebeian child. Provoked by this insolent behaviour, the monarch gave orders, that the rustic priest should be instantly driven from his presence. But while the guards were forcing him to the door, the dexterous polemic had time to execute his design, by exclaiming, with a loud voice, "Such is the treatment, O emperor! which the King of heaven has prepared for those impious men, who wish to worship the Father, but refuse to acknowledge the equal majesty of his divine Son." Theodosius immediately embraced the bishop of Iconium; and never forgot the important lesson, which he had received, from this dramatic parable.

Constantinople was the principal seat and fortress of Arianism; and, from a long interval of forty years, the faith of the princes and prelates, who resigned in the capital of the East, was rejected in the outer schools of Rome and Alexandria. The archiepiscopal throne of Macedonians, which had been polluted with so much Christian blood, was successively filled by Eudoxius and Dometius. Their disease enjoyed a free imputation of vice and error from every province of the empire; the viler pursuits of religious controversy afforded a new occupation to the bungling idleness of the metropolis; and we may credit the assertion of an intelligent observer, who describes, with some pleasure, the effects of their iniquitous zeal. "This city," says he, "is in full
of mechanics and slaves, who are all of them
profound theologians; and preach in the shops
and in the streets. If you desire a man to
change a piece of silver, he informs you,
wherein the Son differs from the Father: if
you ask the price of a loaf, you are told, by
way of reply, that the Son is inferior to the:
Father; and if you inquire, whether the faith
is ready, the answer is, that the Son was made
out of nothing. 75 The heretics, of various
denominations, subsisted in peace under the
protection of the Arians of Constantinople, who
devoured the attack of those obscure sectaries; while they abused, with un-
relenting severity, the victory which they had
obtained over the followers of the council of
Nica. During the partial reign of Constantius
and Valens, the hostile remnant of the Homono-
ousians was deprived of the public and private
exercise of their religion; and it has been ob-
served, in pathetic language, that the scattered
flock was left without a shepherd, to wander on
the mountains, or to be devoured by rapacious
wolves. 76 Thus, as their zeal, instead of being
subdued, derived strength and vigour from oppo-
sition, they selected the first moments of imper-
fect freedom, which they acquired by the
death of Valens, to form themselves into a reg-
ular congregation, under the conduct of an
episcopal pastor. Two natives of
Cappadocia, Basil, and Gregory,
Nasimion, 77 were distinguished above all their
cotemporaries, 78 by the rare union of profuse eloquence and of orthodox piety. Those natures,
who might sometimes be compared, by them-
selves, and by the public, to the most celebrated
of the ancient Greeks, were united by the ties of
the strictest friendship. They had cultivated,
with equal ardour, the same liberal studies in
the schools of Athens; they had retired, with
equal devotion, to the same solitude; in the des-
erts of Pentus; and every spark of emulation,
or envy, appeared to be totally extinguished in
the holy and ingenuous breasts of Gregory and
Basil. But the exaltation of Basil, from a pri-
vate life to the archiepiscopal throne of Cæsarea,
discovered to the world, and perhaps to himself,
the pride of his character; and the first favour
which he condescended to bestow on his friend
was received, and perhaps was intended, as a
crush inside. 79 Instead of employing the su-
perior talents of Gregory in some useful and con-
spicuous station, the haughty Prelate selected,

---

76 See the study of Gregory Nazimion, and the
deeds of Basilius and of Gregory Nasimion, in the
works of this collection, which, I allege, on the
heresy of the Arians, and the orthodoxy of Basil and
Gregory.
77 See the thirty-second canon of Gregory Nazimion, and the
thirty-sixth of Basilius, in the Acta Synodica.
78 That every genius is prone to exaggerate the merits of his
friends, and to conceal his own, is a maxim of which the,
ages of the Roman emperors afford an excellent
example; but in the case of Gregory Nazimion, and
the archbishop of Cæsarea, it is verified by the
words of the observant Josephus, who, in the
Biography of Basilius, says: "The two bishops,
who govern the orthodox Church, are the
archbishops of Cæsarea and of Basilius."
79 I consider myself deeply indebted to the two Lives of Gregory
Nasimion, contained in his works, for very different views,
by Tertullian (Mem. Euseb., etc., p. 12), and
Quintus Cassius (Cass. Lat. 3. 69. 6). In view of the
recent discussion of the legitimacy of the
ordination of the bishops of Cæsarea and Phænikis,
the present treatise, in the personage of
Gregory Nazimion, would form an able defence
of the legitimacy of their ordination.
---

Gregory Nazimion, by Michael Pollen, is an
archbishop of Cæsarea, who became pope in the
year 584, and ruled during the pontificate of
theodorus, who was murdered by the barbary
Pope. See the Life of Gregory Nazimion, in
the Acta Synodica, and the works of this
collection. He is the archbishop of Cæsarea and
Basilus, in the works of this collection, and in
the Biography of Basilius, where he is styled
archbishop of Cæsarea and of Basilius. See
the Life of Basilius, by Eusebius, and the
Biography of Basilius, in the works of this
collection. He is the archbishop of Cæsarea
and of Basilius, and is considered as the
founder of the Cæsarian See, which is
recognized as the See of the orthodox Church.
---

The archbishop of Cæsarea and of Basilius,
who govern the orthodox Church, is the
archbishop of Cæsarea and of Basilius. See
the Life of Basilius, by Eusebius, and the
Biography of Basilius, in the works of this
collection. He is the archbishop of Cæsarea
and of Basilius, and is considered as the
founder of the Cæsarian See, which is
recognized as the See of the orthodox Church.
confused the name of Christ. After he was delivered from the fear and danger of a foreign enemy, his infant church was disfigured and distracted by intestine faction. A stranger, who assumed the name of Maximinus,36 and the cloak of a Cynic philosopher, instigated himself into the confidence of Gregory; deceived and abused his favourable opinion; and formed a secret connection with some bishops of Egypt, attempted, by a clandestine sedition, to supplant his patron in the episcopal see of Constantinople. These pretensions might sometimes tempt the Cappadocian missionaries to regret his obscure solitude. But his fatigues were rewarded by the daily increase of his fame and his congregation; and he enjoyed the pleasure of observing, that the greater part of his numerous audience retired from his sermons, satisfied with the eloquence of the preacher, or dissatisfied with the manifold imperfections of their faith and practice.37

The Catholics of Constantinople were animsted with joyful confidence by the baptism and edict of Theodosius; and they impatiently waited the effects of his gracious promise. Their hopes were speedily accomplished; and the emperor, as soon as he had finished the operations of the campaign, made his public entry into the capital at the head of a victorious army. The next day after his arrival, he summoned Damophilus to his presence; and ordered that Arian prelates had the hard alternative of subscribing the Nicene creed, or instantly resigning, to the orthodox believers, the use and possession of the episcopal palace, the cathedral of St. Sophia, and all the churches of Constantinople. The zeal of Damophilus, which in a Catholic saint would have been justly applauded, embraced, without hesitation, a life of poverty and exile,38 and his removal was immediately followed by the purification of the imperial city. The Arians might complain, with some appearance of justice, that an inconsiderable congregation of sectaries should usurp the houses of religion, where they were insufficient to fill, whilst the far greater part of the people was cruelly excluded from every place of religious worship. Theodosius was still inexorable; but as the angels who protected the Catholic cause, were only visible to the eyes of faith; he prudently reinforced those heavenly legions, with the more effectual aid of temporal and earthly power; and the church of St. Sophia was occupied by a large body of the imperial guards. If the mind of Gregory was susceptible of pride, he must have felt a very lively satisfaction, when the emperor conducted him through the streets in solemn triumph; and, with his own hand, respectfully placed him on the archiepiscopal throne of Constantine. But the saint (who had not subdued the imperfections of human nature) was deeply affected by the mortifying consideration, that his entrance into the field was that of a wolf, rather than of a shepherd; that the glittering arms, which surrounded his person, were necessary for his safety; and that he alone was the object of the imprecations of a great party, whom, as men and citizens, it was impossible for him to despise. He beheld the immeasurable multitude of either sex, and of every age, who crowded the streets, the windows; and the roofs of the houses; he heard the tumultuous voice of rage, grief, astonishment, and despair; and Gregory fairly confesses, that on the memorable day of his installation, the capital of the East wore the appearance of a city taken by storm, and in the hands of a barbarian conqueror.39 About six weeks afterwards, Theodosius declared his resolution of expelling, from all the churches of his dominions, the bishops and their clergy, who should obstinately refuse to believe, or at least to profess, the doctrine of the council of Nicæa. He himself

36 The emperor's name is, in fact, Theodosius; or, in Latin, Theodosius. His reign was from 379 to 395. Theodosius was a great benefactor of the Christian church. He was the first Roman emperor to issue an edict, known as the Theodosian edict, which declared that Christianity would be the state religion of the empire. This edict had a profound impact on the development of Christian doctrine and law in the empire.

37 Theodoertius was a churchman and historian who lived in the 5th century. He is best known for his history of Constantinople, which he wrote in Latin. Theodoertius was a contemporary of Gregory, and his work provides valuable insights into the early Christian church in Constantinople.

38 Damophilus was a bishop of Constantinople who was exiled by Theodosius. His exiled status was a response to his refusal to subscribe to the Nicene Creed, which is a statement of Christian belief that was adopted by the Council of Nicaea in 325 AD.

39 Gregory was a 4th-century bishop of Constantinople. He was known for his religious and personal piety, and his efforts to reform the church. He was also known for his disputes with the emperor Theodosius, who was interested in limiting the influence of the church in public affairs.

40 Theodosius' edict was a statement that declared the emperor's authority over the religious affairs of the empire. It was issued in 380 AD and was a significant moment in the history of the Christian church in the Roman Empire. The edict led to a period of persecution, known as the Arian controversy, which lasted for several decades.
prevaling influence, the turbulent synod was blindly impelled by the absurd and selfish motives of pride, hatred, and resentment. The death of Melctius, which happened as the council of Constantinople, presented the most favourable opportunity of terminating the sedition of Antiocch, by suffering his aged rival, Paulinus, peaceably to end his days in the episcopal chair. The faith and virtues of Paulinus were unblemished. But his cause was supported by the Western churches; and the bishops of the synod resolved to perpetuate the mischief of discord, by the lasty ordination of a perjured candidate, rather than to betray the imagined dignity of the East, which had been illustrated by the birth and death of the Son of God. Such unjust and disorderly proceedings forced the gravest members of the assembly to dissent and to secede; and the enormous majority, which remained masters of the field of battle, could be compared only to vases or magistrates, to a flight of cranes, or to a flock of geese.

A suspicion, may possibly arise, that so unfavourable a picture of ecclesiastical synods has been drawn by the partial hand of some obstatic hysteric, or some malicious infidel. But the name of the sincere historian who has conveyed this instructive lesson to the knowledge of posterity, must silence the impotent murmurs of superstition and bigotry. He was one of the most pious and eloquent bishops of the age; a saint and a doctor of the church; the scourge of Arius, and the pillar of the orthodox faith; a distinguished member of the council of Constantine. In which, after the death of Melctius, he exercised the functions of president: in a word—Gregory Nazianzen himself. The harsh and ungenrous treatment which he experienced, instead of derogating from the truth of his evidence, affords an additional proof of the spirit which actuated the slanders of the synod. Their unanimous suffrage had confirmed the pretensions which the bishop of Constantinople derived from the choice of the people, and the approbation of the emperor. But Gregory soon became the victim of malice and envy. The bishops of the East, his envious adherents, provoked by his moderation in the affairs of Antiocch, abandoned him, without support, to the adverse faction of the Egyptians; who disputed the validity of his election, and rigorously assailed the obstinate caxon, that prohibited the licentious practice of episcopal translations. The pride, or the humility, of Gregory, prompted him to decline a contest which might have been impuited to ambition and avarice; and he publicly offered, without some mixture of indignation, to renounce

---

The above text continues discussing the events and the influence of Gregory Nazianzen, emphasizing the conflicts and the consequences of the synod of Constantinople. It highlights the challenges faced by early Christian leaders in maintaining unity and order within the church.
the government of a church, which had been restored, and almost created, by his labours. His resignation was accepted by the synod, and by the emperor, with more readiness than he seemed to have expected. At the time when he might have hoped to enjoy the fruits of his victory, his episcopal throne was filled by the senator Nectarius, and the new archbishop, accidentally recommended by his easy temper and venerable aspect, was obliged to delay the ceremony of his consecration, till he had previously despatched the rites of his baptism.

After this remarkable experience of the ingratitude of princes and prelates, Gregory retired once more to his obscure solitude of Cappadocia, where he employed the remainder of his life, about eight years, in the exercises of poetry and devotion. The title of Saint has been added to his name; but the tenderness of his heart, and the elegance of his genius, reflect a more pleasing lustre on the memory of Gregory Nazianzen.

It was not enough that Theodosius had suppressed the insolent reign of Arius, or that he had humbly avenged the injuries which the catholics sustained from the zeal of Constantius and Valens. The orthodox emperor considered every heretic as a rebel against the supreme powers of heaven, and of earth; and each of these powers might exercise their peculiar jurisdiction over the soul and body of the guilty. The decrees of the council of Constantinople had ascertained the true standard of the faith; and the ecclesiastics, who governed the conscience of Theodosius, suggested the most effectual methods of persecution. In the space of fifteen years, he promulgated at least fifteen severe edicts against the heretics, more especially against those who rejected the doctrine of the Trinity; and to deprive them of every hope of escape, he sternly enacted, that if any laws or usages should be alleged in their favour, the judges should consider them as the illegal productions, either of fraud, or forgery. The penal statutes were directed against the ministers, the assemblies, and the persons of the heretics; and the passions of the legislator were expressed in the language of declamation and invective. I. The heretical teachers, who usurped the sacred titles of Bishops, or Presbyters, were not only excluded from the privileges and emoluments so liberally granted to the orthodox clergy, but they were exposed to the heavy penalties of exile and confiscation, if they presumed to preach the doctrine, or to practice the rites, of their accursed sects. A sum of ten pounds of gold (above four hundred pounds sterling) was imposed on every person who should dare to confute, or receive, or promote, an heretical ordination; and it was reasonably expected, that if the rate of pastors could be extinguished, their helpless flocks would be compelled, by ignorance and hunger, to return within the pale of the Catholic church. II. The rigorous prohibition of concentricities was carefully extended to every possible circumstance, in which the heretics could assemble with the intention of worshipping God and Christ according to the dictates of their conscience. Their religious meetings, whether public or secret, by day or by night, in cities or in the country, were equally proscribed by the edicts of Theodosius, and the building, or ground, which had been used for that illegal purpose, was forfeited to the Imperial domain. III. It was supposed, that the error of the heretics could proceed only from the obstinate temper of their minds; and that such a temper was a fit object of censure and punishment. The anathemas of the church were fortified by a sort of civil excommunication; which separated them from their fellow-citizens, by a peculiar brand of infamy; and this declaration of the supreme magistrate tended to justify, or at least to excuse, the insults of a fanatic populace. The sectaries were gradually disqualified for the possession of honourable, or lucrative, employments; and Theodosius was satisfied with his own justice, when he decreed, that, as the Imaginaries distinguished the nature of the Son from that of the Father, they should be incapable of making their wills, or of receiving any advantage from testamentary donations. The guilt of the Manichean heresy was extenuated, and a portion of the beneficent legislator, who should dare to perpetrate the atrocious crimes of celebrating, on an improper day, the festival of Easter. Every Roman might exercise the right of public accusation; but the officer of Inquirers of the Faith, a name so deservedly shrubbed, was first instituted under the reign of Theodosius. Yet we are assured, that the execution of his penal edicts was seldom enforced; and that the pious emperor appeared less desirous to punish, than to reclaim, or terrify, his refractory subjects.

The theory of persecution was established by Theodosius, whose model of justice and piety have been applauded by the saints, but the practice of it, in the fullest extent, was reserved for his rival and colleague, Maximus, the first, among the Christian princes, who shed the blood of his Christian subjects, on account of their religious opinions. The cause of the Pelagians, a recent sect of heretics, who disturbed the provinces of Spain, was transferred, by appeal, from the synod of Bourdeaux to the Imperial consistory.
of Troyes; and by the extremity of the pontifical prelude, seven persons were tortured, condemned, and executed. The first of these was Priscillian himself, bishop of Avila; who, in Spain, who adorned the advantages of birth and fortune, by the accomplishments of eloquence and learning. Two prelates, and two deaconesses, accompanied their beloved master in his death, which they esteemed as a glorious martyrdom; and the number of religious victims was completed by the execution of Latinus, a poet, who rivaled the fame of the ancients; and of Euchroia, a noble matron of Bourdeaux, the widow of the centur Delphidius. Two bishops who had embraced the sentiments of Priscillian, were condemned to a distant and dreary exile; and some indulgence was shown to the manner criminals, who assumed the merit of an early repentance. If any credit could be allowed to the stories extorted by fear or pain, and to vague reports, the offspring of malice and credulity, the horrors of the Priscilianists would be found to include the various abominations of magic, of iniquity, and of lewdness. Priscillian, who wandered about the world in the company of his spiritual sisters, was accused of praying naked in the midst of the congregation; and it was confidently asserted, that the effects of his criminal intercourse with the daughter of Euchroia, had been suppressed, by means still more odious and criminal. But an accurate, or rather a candid, enquiry, will discover, that if the Priscilianists violated the laws of nature, it was not by the licentiousness, but by the austerily, of their lives. They absolutely condemned the use of the marriage-bed; and the peace of families was often disturbed by indissoluble separations. They enjoined, or recommended, a total abstinence from all animal food; and their continual prayers, fasts, and vigils, indicated a rule of strict and perfect asceticism. The speculative tenets of the sect, concerning the person of Christ, and the nature of the human soul, were derived from the Gnostic and Manichæan system; and this vain philosophy, which had been transported from Egypt to Spain, was ill adapted to the greater spirits of the West. The obscurant discipline of Priscillian suffered, languished, and gradually disappeared: his tenets were rejected by the clergy and people, but his death was the subject of a long and vehement controversy; while some accused, and others applauded, the justice of his sentence. It is with pleasure that we can observe the humane inconsistency of the most illustrious saints and bishops, Ambrose of Milan, and Martin of Tours; who, on this occasion, asserted the cause of toleration. They pitied the unhappy men, who had been executed at Troyes; they refused to hold communion with their episcopal assailants; and if Martin deviated from that generous resolution, his motives were laudable, and his repentance was exemplary. The bishops of Tours and Milan pronounced, without hesitation, the eternal damnation of heretics; but they were surprised, and shocked, by the bloody images of their temporal death; and the honest feeling of nature resisted the artificial prejudices of theology. The humanity of Ambrose and Martin was confirmed by the solemnity of the proceedings against Priscillian and his adherents. The civil and ecclesiastical ministers had transgressed the limits of their respective provinces. The secular judge had presumed to receive an appeal, and to pronounce a definitive sentence, in a matter of faith, and episcopal jurisdiction. The bishops had disgraced themselves by exercising the functions of accusers in a criminal prosecution. The cruelty of Italicus, who held the tortures, and elicited the death, of the heretics, provoked the just indignation of mankind; and the views of that priglate bishop were admitted as a proof, that his zeal was instigated by the sensual motives of interest. Since the death of Priscillian, the rude attempts of persecution have been softened, and modified in the holy office, which assigns their distinct parts to the ecclesiastical and secular powers. The devoted victim is regularly delivered by the priest to the magistrate, and by the magistrate to the executioner; and the inexorable sentence of the church, which declares the spiritual guilt of the infidel, is expressed in the mild language of pity and intercession.

Among the ecclesiastics, who illustrated the reign of Theodosius, Gregory Nazianzian was distinguished by the talents of an eloquent preacher; the reputation of miraculous gifts added weight and dignity to the monastic virtues of Martin of Tours; but the palm of episcopal vigour and ability was justly claimed by the intrapal Ambrose. He was descended from a noble family of Romans; his father had exercised the important office of praetorian prefect of Gaul; and the son, after passing through the studies of a liberal education, attained, in the regular gradation of civil honours, the station of ecclesiarch of Liguria, a province which included the Imperial residence of Milan. At the age of thirty-four, and before he had received the sacrament of baptism, Ambrose, to his own
conference, or negotiation, with the instruments of Satan, declared, with modest firmness, his resolution to die in purity, rather than to yield to the impious allurements; and Justinus, who represented the refuse as an act of insolence and rebellion, hastily determined to exact the Imperial prerogative of his son. As she desired to perform her public devotions on the approaching festival of Easter, Ambrose was ordered to appear before the council. He obeyed the summons with the respect of a faithful subject, but he was followed, without his consent, by an insensible people; they pressed, with impetuous zeal, against the gates of the palace; and the affrighted ministers of Valentinian, instead of pronouncing a sentence of exile on the archbishop of Milan, humbly requested that he would interpose his authority, to protect the person of the emperor, and to restore the tranquillity of the capital. But the promises which Ambrose received and communicated, were soon violated by a perfidious court; and, during six of the most solemn days, which Christian piety long set apart for the exercise of religion, the city was agitated by the irregular conumbrations of tumult and fanaticism. The officers of the household were directed to prepare, first, theSeptf, and afterwards, the new Basilica, for the immediate reception of the emperor and his mother. The impious enmity and haughtiness of the royal seat were arranged in the customary manner; but it was found necessary to defend them, by a strong guard, from the insults of the populace. The Christian ecclesiastics, who ventured to show themselves in the streets, were exposed to the most imminent danger of their lives; and Ambrose enjoyed the merit and reputation of rescuing his personal enemies from the bands of the enraged multitude.

But while he laboured to restrain the effects of their zeal, the pietistic venerance of his own mind was continually inflamed the angry and seceding temper of the people of Milan. The characters of Eve, of the wife of Job, of Jarchiel, and Herodius, were indelibly applied to the mother of the emperor; and her desire to obtain a church for the Arians, was compared to the most cruel persecutions which Christianity had endured under the reign of Paganism. The measures of the court served only to expose the magnitude of the evil. A fine of two hundred pounds of gold was imposed on the corporate body of merchants and manufacturers: an assize was signified, in the name of the emperor, to all the officers, and inferior servants, of the courts of justice, that, during the continuance of the public disorders, they should strictly confine themselves to their houses; and the ministers of Valentinian, impenitently confessed, that the most respectable part of the citizens of Milon was attached to the cause of their archbishop. He was again solicited to restore peace to his country, by a timely compliance with the will of his sovereign. The reply of Ambrose was couched in the most humble and respectful terms, which might, however, be interpreted as

The government of Italy, and of the young emperor, mutually desponded to his mother Justinus, a woman of beauty and spirit, but who, in the midst of an orthodox people, had the satisfaction of witnessing the Arius heresy, which she had endeavoured to instal into the mind of her son. Justinus was persuaded, that a Roman emperor might claim, in his own dominions, the public exercise of his religion; and she proposed to the archbishop, as a moderate and reasonable cession, that he should resign the use of a single church, either in the city or suburbs of Milan. But the conduct of Ambrose was governed by very different principles. The palaces of the earth might indeed belong to Caesar; but the churches were the houses of God; and, within the limits of his diocese, he himself, as the lawful successor of the apostles, was the only minister of God. The privileges of Christianity, temporal as well as spiritual, were confined to the true believers; and the mind of Ambrose was satisfied, that his own theological opinions were the standard of truth and orthodoxy. The archbishop, who refused to hold any
a serious declaration of civil war. His life and fortune were in the hands of the emperor; but he would never betray the church of Christ, or degrade the dignity of the episcopal character. In such a case he was prepared to suffer whatever the malice of the demon could inflict; and he only wished to die in the presence of his faithful flock, and at the foot of the altar; he had not contributed to excite, but it was in the power of God alone to appease, the rage of the people: he deplored the scenes of blood and confusion, which were likely to ensue; and it was his fervent prayer, that he might not survive to behold the ruin of a flourishing city, and perhaps the desolation of all Italy. 64 The obstinate bigotry of Justinian would have endangered the empire of her son, if, in this contest with the church and people of Milan, she could have depended on the active obedience of the troops of the imperial palace. A large body of Gothic mercenaries was marched to occupy the Basilica, which was the object of the dispute: and it might be expected from the Arian principles, and barbarous manners, of these foreign mercenaries, that they would not entertain any scruples in the execution of the most sacrilegious orders. They were encountered, on the sacred threshold, by the archbishop, who, thundering against them a sentence of excommunication, asked them, in the tone of a father and a master, Whether it was to invade the house of God, that they had imposed the insupportable protection of the republic? The suspense of the barbarians allowed some hours for a more effectual negotiation; and the empress was persuaded, by the advice of her wisest counsellors, to leave the Catholics in possession of all the churches of Milan; and to dissemble, till a more convenient season, her intentions of revenge. The mother of Valentinian could never forgive the triumph of Ambrose; and the royal youth uttered a passionate exclamation, that his own servants were ready to betray him into the hands of an insolent priest. 65

The laws of the empire, some of which were inscribed with the name of Valentinian, still condemned the Arian heresy, and seemed to excuse the resistance of the Catholics. By the influence of Justinian, an edict of toleration was promulgated in all the provinces which were subject to the court of Milan; the free exercise of their religion was granted to those who professed the faith of Rimini; and the emperor declared, that all persons who should infringe this sacred and salutary constitution, should be capitaly punished, as the enemies of the public peace. 66 The character and language of the archbishop of Milan may justify the suspicion, that his conduct soon afforded a reasonable ground, or at least a specious pretence, to the Arian ministers; who watched the opportunity of surprising him in some act of disobedience to a law, which he strangely represents as a law of blood and tyranny. A sentence of easy and honourable banishment was pronounced, which enjoined Ambrose to depart from Milan without delay; whilst it permitted him to choose the place of his exile, and the number of his companions. But the authority of the saints, who had preached and practised the maxims of an entire loyalty, appeared to Ambrose less moment than the extreme and pressing danger of the church. He boldly refused to obey; and his refusal was supported by the unanimous consent of his faithful people. They guarded by turns the person of their archbishop; the gates of the cathedral and the episcopal palace were strongly secured; and the Imperial troops, who had formed the blockade, were unwilling to risk the attack, of that impregnable fortress. The numerous poor, who had been relieved by the liberality of Ambrose, embraced the fair occasion of signifying their zeal and gratitude; and as the patience of the multitude might have been exhausted by the length and uniformity of nocturnal vigils, he prudently introduced into the church of Milan the useful institution of a load and regular psalmody. While he maintained this arduous contest, he was instructed, by a dream, to open the earth in a place where the remains of two martyrs, Gervasius and Protasius, 67 had been deposited above three hundred years. Immediately under the pavement of the church two perfect skeletons were found, 68 with the bones separated from their bodies, and a plentiful effusion of blood. The holy relics were presented, in solemn pomp, to the veneration of the people; and every circumstance of this fortunate discovery was admirably adapted to promote the designs of Ambrose. The bones of the martyrs, their blood, their garments, were supposed to contain a healing power; and the preternatural influence was communicated to the most distant objects, without losing any part of its original virtue. The extraordinary cure of a blind man, 69 and the reluctant confession of several demons, appeared to justify the faith and sanctity of Ambrose; and the truth of those miracles is attested by Ambrose himself, by his secretary Paulinus, and by his protégé, the celebrated Augustin, who, at that time, professed the art of rhetoric in Milan. The reason of the present age may possibly approve the incredulity of Justinian and her Arian court; who derided the theatrical representations, which were exhibited by the contrary...
and at the expense of the archbishop. Their effect, however, on the minds of the people was reaped and irresistible; and the refulgent sovereign of Italy found himself unable to contend with the veneration of heaven. The powers likewise of the earth interposed in the defence of Ambrose: the disinterested advice of Theodoric was the genuine result of piety and friendship; and the mask of religious zeal concealed the hostile and ambitious designs of the tyrant of Gaul.

The reign of Maximus might have ended in peace and prosperity, had he been contented with the possession of three ample countries, which now constitute the three most flourishing kingdoms of modern Europe. But the aspiring usurper, whose wilful ambition was not dignified by the love of glory and of arms, considered his actual forces as the instruments only of his future greatness, and his success was the immediate cause of his destruction. The wealth which he extorted from the oppressed provinces of Gaul, Spain, and Britain, was employed in levying and maintaining a formidable army of barbarians, collected for the most part, from the ferocious nations of Germany. The conquest of Italy was the object of his hopes and preparations; and he secretly meditated the ruin of an innocent youth, whose government was abhorred and despised by his Catholic subjects. But as Maximus wished to occupy, without resistance, the passes of the Alps, he received, with perfunctory smiles, Dominatus of Syria, the ambassador of Valentinian, and pressed him to accept the agency of a considerable body of troops for the service of a Pannonian war. The penetration of Ambrose had discovered the means of an enemy under the professions of friendship; but the Syrian Dominatus was corrupted, or deceived, by the liberal favours of the court of Treves; and the council of Milan obstinately rejected the suspicion of danger with a blind confidence, which was the effect, not of courage, but of fear. The march of the auxiliaries was guided by the ambassador; and they were insulted, without dispute, into the fortress of the Alps. But the outcry tyrant followed, with hasty and silent footsteps, in the rear; and as he diligently intercepted all intelligence of his motions, the gleam of armour, and the bustle excited by the troops of cavalry, first announced the hostile approach of a stranger to the gates of Milan. In this extremity, Justina and her son might accuse their own imprudence, and the pernicious arts of Maximus; but they waited time, and force, and resolution, to stand against the Gauls and Germans, either in the field, or within the walls of a large and disaffected city. Flight was their only hope; Aquilia their only refuge; and, as Maximus now displayed his genuine character, the brother of Gratian might expect the same fate from the hands of the same assassin. Maximus restored Milan in triumph; and if the wise archbishop refrained a dangerous and criminal connection with the usurper, he might indirectly contribute to the success of his arms, by exalting, from the pulpit, the duty of resistance, rather than that of resistance. The unfortunate Justina reached Aquilia in safety; but she distrusted the strength of the fortifications; she dreaded the event of a siege; and she resolved to implore the protection of the great Theodosius, whose power and virtue were celebrated in all the countries of the West. A vessel was secretly provided to transport the Imperial family; they embarked with precipitation in one of the obscure harbours of Venetia, or Istria; traversed the whole extent of the Adriatic and Ionian seas; turned the extreme promontory of Peloponnesus; and, after a long, but successful, navigation, reposed themselves in the part of Thessalonica. All the subjects of Valentinian deserted the cause of a prince, who, by his abdication, had absolved them from the duty of allegiance; and if the little city of Aensona, on the verge of Italy, had not preserved to stop the career of his inglorious victory, Maximus would have obtained, without a struggle, the sole possession of the Western empire. Instead of inviting his royal guests to the palace of Constantinople, Theodosius had some unknown reasons to fix his residence at Thessalonica; but these reasons did not proceed from contempt or indifference, as he speedily made a visit to that city, accompanied by the greatest part of his court and senate. After the first tender expressions of friendship and sympathy, the pious emperor of the East gently admonished Justina, that the guilt of breares was sometimes punished in this world, as well as in the next; and that the public profession of the Nicene faith would be the most efficacious step to promote the restoration of her son, by the satisfaction which it must occasion both on earth and in heaven. The momentous question of peace or war was referred, by Theodosius, to the deliberation of his council; and the arguments which might be alleged on the side of honour and justice, had assurance since the death of Gratian, a considerable degree of additional weight. The persecution of the Imperial family, to which Theodosius himself had been instituted for his fortune, was now aggravated by recent and repeated injuries. Neither arts nor treaties could restrain the boundless ambition of Maximus; and the delay of vigorous and decisive measures, instead of prolonging the blessings of peace, would expose the Eastern empire to the danger of an hostile invasion. The barbarians, who had passed the Danube, had lately assumed the character of soldiers and subjects; but their native ferocity was yet unstained; and the operations of a war, which would exercise their valour, and diminish their numbers, might tend to relieve the provinces from an intolerable oppression. Notwithstanding these specious and solid reasons, which were approved by a majority

75 Plu. ibid. vi. c. 60. Arch. n. 36. Aemilius, Decret. s. 5.
76 Theod. Hist. v. 14. When the emperor arrived at Thessalonica, he immediately sent to the inhabitants of that city to inform them that Maximus was the tyrant of Gaul, and to invite them to accept the residence of the Emperor, and to call on them to assist the Roman church. It is reported by Plutarch, Eusebius, and Theodorus. 77 Those of Christ and his apostles. 78 Those of Christ and the apostles. 79 See the Genealogical Chronicle of the Council of Carthage (S. X. 20, 21.)
of the council, Theodosius still hesitated, whether he should draw the sword in a contest, which could no longer admit any terms of reconciliation; and his magnanimous character was not disgraced by the apprehensions which he felt for the safety of his infant son, and the welfare of his exhausted people. In this moment of anxious doubt, while the fate of the Roman world depended on the resolution of a single man, the charms of the princess Gallia most powerfully pleaded the cause of her brother Valentinian. The heart of Theodosius was softened by the tears of beauty; his affections were insensibly engaged by the graces of youth and innocence; the art of Justinian managed and directed the impulse of passion; and the celebration of the royal nuptials was the assurance and signal of the civil war. The unfailing critics, who consider every ambition weakness as an imitable stain on the memory of a great and orthodox emperor, are inclined, on this occasion, to dispute the suspicious evidence of the historian Zosimus. For my own part, I shall frankly confess, that I am willing to find, or even to seek, in the resolutions of the world, some traces of the mild and tender sentiments of domestic life; and, amidst the crowd of fierce and ambitious conquerors, I can distinguish, with peculiar complacency, a gentle hero, who may be supposed to receive his armour from the hands of love. The alliance of the Persian king was secured by the faith of treaties; the martial barbarians were persuaded to follow the standard, or to respect the frontiers, of an active and liberal monarch; and the dominions of Theodosius, from the Euphrates to the Ha- disastrous, resounded with the preparations of war both by land and sea. The skilful disposition of the forces of the East seemed to multiply their numbers and distract the attention of Maximus. He had reason to fear, that a chosen body of troops under the command of the intrepid Aetocastes, would direct their march along the banks of the Danube, and boldly penetrate through the Rhaetian provinces into the centre of Gaul. A powerful fleet was equipped in the harbours of Greece and Epirus, with an apparent design, that as soon as a passage had been opened by a naval victory, Valentinian, and his mother, should land in Italy, proceed, without delay, to Rome, and occupy the majestic seat of religion and empire. In the mean while, Theodosius himself advanced at the head of a brave and disciplined army, to encounter his unworthy rival, who, after the siege of Zaraus, had fixed his camp in the neighbourhood of Sicca, a city of Pannonia, strongly fortified by the broad and rapid stream of the Sava.

The veterans, who still remembered the long resistance, and successive resources, of the tyrant Magnentius, might prepare themselves for the labours of these bloody campaigns. But the contest with his successor, who, like himself, had aspired the throne of the West, was easily decided in the term of two months, and within the space of two hundred miles. The superior genius of the emperor of the East might prevail over the feeble Maximus, who, in this important crisis, showed himself destitute of military skill, or personal courage; but the abilities of Theodosius were seconded by the advantage which he possessed of a numerous and active cavalry. The Huns, the Alani, and, after their victory, the Goths themselves, were formed into squadrons of archers; who fought on horseback, and contributed the steady valour of the Goths and Germans, by the rapid motions of a Tartar war. After the fatigue of a long march, in the heat of summer, they spurred their forwarding horses into the waters of the Save, swam the river in the presence of the enemy, and instantly charged and routed the troops who guarded the high ground on the opposite side. Marcellinus, the tyrant’s brother, advanced to support them with the select cohorts, which were considered as the hope and strength of the army. The action, which had been interrupted by the approach of night, was renewed in the morning; and, after a sharp conflict, the surviving remnant of the bravest soldiers of Maximus threw down their arms at the feet of the conqueror. Without suspending his march, to receive the loyal acclamations of the citizens of Aquileia, Theodosius pressed forward to terminate the war by the death or captivity of his rival, who fled before him with the diligence of fear. From the summit of the Julian Alps, he descended with such incredible speed into the plain of Italy, that he reached Aquileia on the evening of the first day; and Maximus, who found himself compassed on all sides, had scarcely time to shut the gates of the city. But the gates could not last against the effort of a victorious army; and the despair, the dissatisfaction, the indemnity of the soldiers and people, hastened the downfall of the wretched Maximus. He was dragged from his throne, rudely stripped of the imperial ornaments, the robe, the diadem, and the purple slipper, and conducted, like a malefactor, to the camp and presence of Theodosius, at a place about three miles from Aquileia. The behaviour of the emperor was not intended to flatter, and he showed some disposition to pity and forgive, the tyrant of the West, who had never been his personal enemy, and was now become the object of his contempt. Our sympathy is the most forcibly excited by the misfortunes to which we are exposed; and the spectacle of a proud composition, now prostrate at his feet, could not fail of producing very serious and solemn thoughts in the mind of the victorious emperor. But the sable emotion of involuntary pity was checked by his regard for public justice; and, in the memory of Gratian; and he absolved the victors from the pains and of the soldiers, who drew him out of the Imperial presence, instantly separated his head from his body. The intelligence of his death and death was received with sincere, or, well-dissembled joy; his son Victor, on whom he had conferred the

76 The flight of Valentinian, and the death of Theodosius for his sake, are not mentioned by Zosimus; nor does the consul Probus, in his history, allude to the subject. Wesseling, vol. ii. p. 620, has observed, that Zosimus, by a mistake, mentions the death of Valentinian, and the flight of Theodosius. We have, however, no reason to doubt the accuracy of his information. 77 See Godwin’s Chronology of the Later, Vol. ii. p. 490.
The government of a mighty empire may unusually suffice to occupy the time, and the abilities, of a mortal; yet the diligent prince, without aspiring to the unattainable reputation of profound learning, always reserved some moments of his leisure for the instructive amusement of reading. History, which enlarged his experience, was his favourite study. The annals of Rome, in the long period of eleven hundred years, presented him with a various and splendid picture of human life; and it has been particularly observed, that whenever he pursued the real facts of Cæsar, of Marius, or of Sulla, he warmly expressed his generous detestation of those enemies of humanity and freedom. His disinterested opinion of past events was usefully applied as the rule of his own actions; and Theodosius has deserved the singular commendation, that his virtues always seemed to expand with his fortune: the season of his prosperity was that of his moderation; and his elements appeared the most conspicuous after the danger and strife of the civil war. The Moesian guards of the tongue had been massacred in the first heat of triumph; and a small number of the most obnoxious enemies suffered the punishment of the law. But the emperor showed himself much more attentive to relieve the innocent, than to chastise the guilty. The oppressed subjects of the West, who would have deemed themselves happy in the restoration of their lands, were astonished to receive a sum of money equivalent to their losses; and the liberality of the conqueror supported the aged mother, and educated the orphan daughters, of Maximinus. A character thus accomplished, might almost excuse the extravagant supposition of the orator Fabius; that, if the elder Brutus could be permitted to revisit the earth, the stern republican would adjure, at the feet of Theodosian, his hatred of kings; and ingenuously confess, that such a monarch was the most faithful guardian of the happiness and dignity of the Roman people.

Yet the piercing eye of the founder of the republic must have discerned two essential imperfections, which might, perhaps, have abated his recent love of despotism. The virtuous mind of Theodosian was often relaxed by indulgence, and it was sometimes inflamed by passion. In the pursuit of an important object, his active courage was capable of the most rigorous exertions; but, as soon as the design was accomplished, or the danger was averted, the hero sunk into ignominious repose; and, forgetful that the time of a prince is the property of his people, resigned himself to the enjoyment of the innocent, but
trilling, pleasures of a luxurious court. The natural disposition of Theodosius was nasty and choleric; and, in a station where none could resist, and few would dissuade, the fatal consequences of his resentment, the humane monarch was justly alarmed by the consciousness of his inferiority, and of his power. It was the constant study of his life to suppress, or regulate, the intemperate sallies of passion; and the success of his efforts enhanced the merit of his clemency. But the painful virtue which claims the merit of victory, is exposed to the danger of defeat; and the reign of a wise and merciful prince was polluted by an act of cruelty, which would stain the annals of Nero or Domitian. Within the space of three years, the inconsistencies of Theodosius must relate the generous part of the crimes of Antioch, and the infamous massacre of the people of Thessalonica.

The lively impatience of the inhabitants of Antioch was never satisfied with their own situation, or with the character, and conduct, of their successive sovereigns. The Arian subjects of Theodosius deplored the loss of their churches; and, as three rival bishops disputed the throne of Antioch, the sentence which decided their pretensions excited the murmurs of the two unsuccessful congregations. The exigencies of the Gothic war, and the inevitable expense that accompanied the conclusion of the peace, had constrained the emperor to aggravate the weight of the public impositions; and the provinces of Asia, as they had not been involved in the disasters of the Gallic war, were the least inclined to contribute to the relief of Europe. The auspicious period now approached of the tenth year of his reign; a festival more grateful to the soldiers, who received a liberal donation, than to the subjects, whose voluntary offerings had been long since converted into an extraordinary and oppressive burden. The edicts of taxation interrupted the repose, and pleasures, of Antioch; and the tribunal of the magistrate was besieged by a suppliants to whose language, solicited the redress of their grievances. They were gradually incensed by the pride of their haughty rulers, who treated their complaints as a criminal resistance; their sardonic wit degenerated into sharp and angry invectives; and from the subordinate powers of government, the invectives of the people insensibly rose to attack the sacred character of the emperor himself. Their fury, provoked by a sedition, discharged itself on the images of the Imperial family, which were erected, as objects of public veneration, in the most conspicuous places of the city. The statues of Theodosius, of his father, of his wife Placilla, of his two sons, Arcadius and Honorius, were insolently thrown down from their pedestals, broken in pieces, or dragged with contempt through the streets; and the indignities which were offered to the representations of Imperial majesty, sufficiently declared the impious and treasonable wishes of the populace. The tumult was almost immediately suppressed by the arrival of a body of archers; and Antioch had leisure to reflect on the nature and consequences of her crimes. According to the duty of his office, the government of the province despatched a faithful narrative of the whole transaction; while the trembling citizens intrusted the confession of their crime, and the assurances of their repentance, to the seal of Flavian their bishop, and to the eloquence of the senator Hilarus, the friend, and, most probably, the disciple, of Libanius; whose genius, on this melancholy occasion, was not useless to his country. But the two capitals, Antioch and Constantinople, were separated by the distance of eight hundred miles; and, notwithstanding the diligence of the Imperial post, the guilty city was severely punished by a long and distressful interval of suspense. Every rumour agitated the hopes and fears of the Antiochians, and they heard, with terror, that their sovereign, exasperated by the insult which had been offered to his own statues, and, more especially, to those of his beloved wife, had resolved to level with the ground the offending city; and to massacre, without distinction of age or sex, the criminal inhabitants; and of whom were actually driven, by their apprehensions, to seek a refuge in the mountains of Syria, and the adjacent desert. At length, twenty-four days after the sedition, the general Hellebicus, and Cassius, master of the offices, declared the will of the emperor, and the sentence of Antioch. That proud capital was degraded from the rank of a city; and the metropolis of the East, stripped of its lands, its privileges, and revenues, was subjected, under the humiliating denomination of a village, to the jurisdiction of Lacedaemon. The baths, the Circus, and the theatres, were shut; and that every source of plenty and pleasure might, at the same time be intercepted, the distribution of water was abolished, by the severe instructions of Theodosius. His commissioners then proceeded to enquire into the guilt of individuals; of those who had perpetrated, and of those who had not prevented, the destruction of the sacred statues. The tribunal of Hellebicus and Cassius, encompassed with armed soldiers, was erected in the midst of the Forum. The nobles, and most wealthy, of the citizens of Antioch appeared before them in chains; the examination was assisted by the use of torture, and their sentence was pronounced or suspended, according to the judgment of these magistrates. The houses of the criminals were exposed to sale, their wives and children were suddenly reduced, from affluence and luxury, to the most object distress; and a bloody execution was ex-
expected to conclude the horrors of a day, which the preacher of Antioch, the eloquent Chrysostom, has represented as a lively image of the last and universal judgment of the world. But the ministers of Theodosius, perceiving, with reluctance, the cruel task which had been assigned them; they dropped a gentle tear over the calamities of the people; and they listened with reverence to the pressing solicitations of the monks and friars, who descended in swarms from the mountains. 49 Heliodorus and Cassarius were persuaded to suspend the execution of their sentence; and it was agreed, that the former should remain at Antioch, while the latter returned, with all possible speed, to Constantinople; and presented once more to consult the will of his sovereign. The remonstrance of Theodosius had already subsided; the deputies of the people, both the bishop and the orator, had obtained a favourable audience; and the reproaches of the emperor were the complaints of injured friendship, rather than the stern terrors of pride and power.

A free and general pardon was granted to the city and citizens of Antioch; the prison doors were thrown open; the senators, who despaired of their lives, recovered the possession of their houses and estates; and the capital of the East was restored to the enjoyment of its ancient dignity and splendour. Theodosius condescended to praise the senate of Constantinople, who had generously interceded for their distressed brethren: he rewarded the eloquence of Hilarius with the government of Palestine; and dismissed the bishop of Antioch with the warmest expressions of his respect and gratitude.

A thousand new statues arose to the clemency of Theodosius; the applause of his subjects was ratified by the approbation of his own heart; and the emperor confessed, that, if the exercise of justice is the most important duty, the indulgence of mercy is the most exquisite pleasure, of a sovereign. 50

The elevation of Theodosius is ascribed to a more shameful cause, the concord of his subjects was roused by the approbation of his own heart; and the emperor confessed, that, if the exercise of justice is the most important duty, the indulgence of mercy is the most exquisite pleasure, of a sovereign. 50

The elevation of Theodosius is ascribed to a more shameful cause, the concord of his subjects was roused by the approbation of his own heart; and the emperor confessed, that, if the exercise of justice is the most important duty, the indulgence of mercy is the most exquisite pleasure, of a sovereign. 50

Apollon and Theodosius. A.D. 392. and was productive of much more dreadful consequences. That great city, the metropolis of all the Illyrian provinces, had been protected from the dangers of the Gothic war by strong fortifications, and a numerous garrison. Botheric, the general of those troops, and, as it should seem from his name, a barbarian, had among his slaves a beautiful boy, who excited the inquefite desires of one of the charioteers of the Circus. The indolent and brutal lover was thrown into prison by the order of Botheric; and he sternly rejected the inopportune amours of the multitude, who, on the day of the public games, lamented the absence of their favourite; and considered the skill of a charioteer as an object of more importance than his virtue. The resentment of the people was embittered by some previous disputes; and, as the strength of the garison had been drawn away for the service of the Italian war, the feeble remnant, whose numbers were reduced by desertion, could not save the unhappy general from their licentious fury. Botheric, and several of his principal officers, were inhumanly murdered; their mangled bodies were dragged about the streets; and the emperor, who then resided at Milan, was surprised by the intelligence of the audacious and wanton cruelty of the people of Thessalonica. The sentiments of a passionate judge would have inflicted a severe punishment on the authors of the crime; and the merit of Botheric might contribute to exasperate the grief and indignation of his master. The fiery and choleric temper of Theodosius was impatient of the dilatory forms of a judicial inquiry; and he hastily resolved, that the blood of his lieutenant should be expiated by the blood of the guilty people. Yet his mind still fluctuated between the emotions of clemency and of revenge; the zeal of the bishops had almost deserted from the reluctant emperor the promise of a general pardon; his passion was again inflamed by the flattering suggestions of his minister Rufinus; and, after Theodosius had despatched the messengers of death, he attempted, when it was too late, to prevent the execution of his orders. The punishment of a Roman city was blindly committed to the undistinguishing sword of the barbarians; and the horrid preparations were concocted with the dark and pernicious artifice of an illegal conspiracy. The people of Thessalonica were massacred with the name of their sovereign, to the rage of the Circus; and such was their insatiate avidity for those amusements, those every consideration of fear, or suspicion, was disregarded by the numerous spectators. As soon as the assembly was complete, the soldiers, who had secretly been posted round the Circus, received the signal, not of the races, but of a general massacre. The prolixities of the description continued three hours, without discrimination of strangers or natives, of age or sex, of innocence or guilt; the most moderate accounts state the number of the slain at seven thousand; and it is affirmed by some writers, that more than fifteen thousand victims were sacrificed to the name of Botheric. A foreign merchant, who had probably no concern in the murder, offered his own life, and all his wealth, to supply the place of one of his two sons; but, while the father hesitated with equal tenderness, while he was doubtful to choose, and unwilling to condemn, the soldiers determined his suspense, by plunging their daggers at the same moment into the breasts of the defenceless youths. The scandal of the massacre, that they were obliged to produce the prescribed number of heads, serves only to increase, by an appearance of order and decorum, the horrors of the massacre, which was executed...
by the commands of Theodosius. The guilt of the emperor is aggravated by his long and frequent residence at Thessalonica. The situation of the unfortunate city, the aspect of the streets and buildings, the dress and faces of the inhabitants, were familiar, and even present, to his imagination; and Theodosius possessed a quick and lively sense of the existence of the people whom he destroyed.  

The respectful attachment of the emperor for the orthodox clergy, had disposed him to love and admire the character of Ambrose; who united all the episcopal virtues in the most eminent degree. The friends and ministers of Theodosius imitated the example of their sovereign; and he, observed, with more surprise than displeasure, that all his secret counsels were immediately communicated to the archbishop, who acted from the laudable persuasion, that every measure of civil government may have some connection with the glory of God, and the interest of the true religion. The monks and populace of Callinicum, an obscure town on the frontier of Persia, excited by their own fanaticism, and by that of their bishop, had tumultuously burnt a conventicle of the Valentinians, and a synagogue of the Jews. The sudden prelate was condemned, by the magistrates of the province, either to rebuild the synagogue, or to repay the damage; and this moderate sentence was confirmed by the emperor. But it was not confirmed by the archbishop of Milan. He dictated an epistle of censure and reproach, more suitable, perhaps, if the emperor had received the mark of circumcision, and renounced the faith of his baptism. Ambrose considers the tolerance of the Jewish, as the persecution of the Christian religion; boldly declares, that he himself, and every true believer, would eagerly dispute with the bishop of Callinicum the merit of the sheet, and the crown of martyrdom; and laments, in the most pathetic terms, that the execution of the sentence would be fatal to the fame and salvation of Thessalonica. As this private admonition did not produce an immediate effect, the archbishop, from his pulpit, publicly addressed the emperor on his throne; nor would be consent to offer the oblation of the altar, till he had obtained from Theodosius a solemn and positive declaration, which secured the impunity of the bishop and monks of Callinicum. The recantation of Theodosius was sincere; and, during the term of his residence at Milan, his affection for Ambrose was continually increased by the conduct of pious and familiar conversation.

When Ambrose was informed of the massacre of Thessalonica, his mind was filled with horror and anguish. He retired into the country, to indulge his grief, and to avoid the presence of Theodosius. But as the archbishop was satisfied that a timid silence would render him the accomplice of his guilt, he represented, in a private letter, the enormity of the crime; which could only be effaced by the tears of penitence. The episcopal vigour of Ambrose was tempered by prudence; and he contented himself with signifying an indirect sort of excommunication, by the assurance, that he had been warned. In a vision, not to offer the oblation in the name, or in the presence, of Theodosius; and by the advice, that he would confine himself to the use of prayer, without presuming to approach the altar of Christ, or to receive the holy eucharist with those hands that were still polluted with the blood of an innocent people. The emperor was deeply affected by his own reproaches, and by those of his spiritual father; and, after he had bewailed the mischievous and irreparable consequences of his rash fury, he proceeded, in the accustomed manner, to perform his devotions in the great church of Milan. He was stopped in the porch by the archbishop; who, in the tone and language of an ambassador of Heaven, declared to his sovereign, that private contrition was not sufficient to atone for a public fault, or to appease the justice of the offended Deity. Theodosius humbly represented, that if he had contracted the guilt of homicide, David, the man after God's own heart, had been guilty, not only of murder, but of adultery. "You have imitated David in his "crime, imitate then his repentance," was the reply of the undaunted Ambrose. The rigorous conditions of peace and pardon were accepted; and the public penance of the emperor. Theodosius has been regarded as one of the most honourable events in the annals of the church. According to the mildest rules of ecclesiastical discipline, which were established in the fourth century, the crime of homicide was expiated by the penitence of twenty years; and as it was impossible, in the period of human life, to purge the accumulated guilt of the massacre of Thessalonica, the murderer should have been excluded from the holy communion till the hour of his death. But the archbishop, consulting the maxims of religious policy, granted some indulgence to the rank of his illustrious penitent, who humbled in the dust the pride of the dialect; and the public admonition might be admitted as a weighty reason and base, who had promised to rely on the miracles of Callinicum to support the emperor.

25 See the whole transaction in Ambrose, Bk. IV. c. xvi. p. 390. And his biographer, Ps. G. B. Sayler,breadcrumb and wine. His correspondences are letters of rude, yet pious, without the grace of rhetorics, the original epistle of Eucharias, the letter to St. Martin, and the letter to St. Emerick. The "original epistle of Eucharias," "St. Martin," and "St. Emerick," in the...
to abridge the duration of his punishment. It was sufficient, that the empress of the Romans, stripped of the eunuchs of royalty, should appear in a mournful and suppliant posture; and that, in the midst of the church of Milan, he should humbly solicit, with sighs and tears, the pardon of his sins. In this spiritual cure, Ambrose employed the various methods of mildness and severity. After a delay of about eight months, Theodosius was restored to the communion of the faithful; and the edict, which interposed a salutary interval of thirty days between the sentence and the execution, must be accepted as the worthy fruits of his repentance. Fostery has applauded the vir- tuous firmness of the archbishop; and the example of Theodosius may prove the beneficial influence of those principles, which could force a monarch, exalted above the apprehension of human punishment, to respect the laws and ministers, of an invisible Judge. "The prince," says Montesquieu, "who is actuated by the hopes and fears of religion, may be compared to a lion, docile only to the voice, and tractable able to the hand, of his keeper." The motions of the royal animal will therefore depend on the inclination, and interest, of the man who has acquired such dangerous authority over him; and the priest, who holds in his hand the conscience of a king, may inflame, or moderate, his ungovernable passions. The cause of humanity, and that of persecution, have been asserted, by the same Ambrose, with equal energy, and with equal success.

After the defeat and death of the tyrant of Gaul, the Roman world was in the possession of Theodosius. He derived from the choice of Gratian his honourable title to the provinces of the East: he had acquired the West by the right of conquest; and the three years, which he spent in Italy, were usefully employed to restore the authority of the laws; and to correct the abuses, which had prevailed with impunity under the usurpation of Maximus, and the minority of Valentinian. The name of Valentinian was regularly inserted in the public acts; but the tender age, and doubtful faith, of the son of Justinus, appeared to require the prudent care of an orthodox guardian; and his equestrian ambition might have excluded the unfortunate youth, without a struggle, and almost without a murmur, from the administration, and even from the inheritance, of the empire. If Theodosius had not fulfilled the rigid maxims of intolerance and policy, his conduct would have been justified by his friends; but the generosity of his behaviour on this memorable occasion has extorted the appre- hensions of his most inveterate enemies. He assisted Valentinian on the throne of Milan; and,

without stipulating any present or future advantages, restored him to the absolute dominion of all the provinces from which he had been driven by the arms of Maximus. To the restitution of his ample patrimony, Theodosius added the free and generous gift of the countries beyond the Alps, which his successful valor had recovered from the usurpation of Gratian. Satisfied with the glory which he had acquired, by revenging the death of his benefactor, and delivering the West from the yoke of tyranny, the emperor returned from Milan to Constantinople; and, in the peaceful possession of the East, magnificently relapsed into his former habits of luxury and insolence. Theodosius discharged his obligation to the brother, he indulged his conjugal tenderness to the sister, of Valentinian; and posterity, which admires the pure and singular glory of his elevation, must applaud his unrivalled generosity in the use of victory.

The empress Justina did not long survive her return to Italy; and, although she beheld the triumph of Theodosius, she was not allowed to influence the government of her son. The peculiar attachment to the Arian sect, which Valentinian had imbibed from her example and instructions, was soon erased by the lessons of a more orthodox education. His growing zeal for the faith of Nice, and his filial reverence for the character and authority of Ambrose, disposed the Catholics to entertain the most favourable opinion of the virtues of the young emperor of the West. They applauded his chastity and temperance, his contempt of pleasure, his application to business, and his tender affection for his two sisters, which could not, however, reduce his imperial equity to pronounce an unjust sentence against the remnant of his subjects. But this amiable youth, before he had accomplished the twentieth year of his age, was oppressed by domestic treason; and the empire was again involved in the horrors of a civil war. Arbogastes, a gallant soldier of the nation of the Franks, held the second rank in the service of Gratian. On the death of his master, he joined the standard of Theodosius; contributed, by his valor and military talent, to the de- struction of the tyrant; and was appointed, after the victory, master-general of the armies of Gaul. His real merit, and apparent fidelity, had gained the confidence both of the prince and people; his boundless liberality corrupted the allegiance of the troops; and, whilst he was universally esteemed as the pillar of the state, the bold and crafty barbarian was secretly determined either to rule, or to ruin, the empire of the West. The important commands of the army were distributed among the Franks; the creatures of Arbogastes were promulgated in all
the honour and offices of the civil government; the progress of the conspiracy removed every faithful servant from the presence of Valentinian; and the emperor, without power, and without intelligence, insensibly sunk into the precarious and dependent condition of a captive. The indignation which he expressed, though it might arise only from the rank and imperfect temper of youth, might be candidly ascribed to the spirit of a prince, who feared that he was not worthy to reign. He secretly invited the archbishop of Milan to undertake the office of a mediator; as the pledge of his sincerity, and the guardian of his safety. He contrived to apprise the emperor of the East of his helpless situation; and he declared, that unless Theodosius could speedily march to his assistance, he must attempt to escape from the palace, or rather prison, of Vienna in Gaul, where he had imprudently fixed his residence in the midst of the hostile faction. But the hopes of relief were distant, and doubtful; and, as every day furnished some new provocation, the emperor, without strength or counsel, too hastily resolved to risk an immediate contest with his powerful general. He received Arbogastes on the throne; and, as the count approached with some appearance of respect, delivered to him a paper, which dismissed him from all his employments. "My authority," replied Arbogastes with insulting coolness, "does not depend on the smile, or the frown, of a monarch;" and he contemptuously threw the paper on the ground. The ignominious monarch smacked at the sword of one of the guards, which he struggled to draw from its scabbard; and it was not without some degree of violence that he was prevented from using the deadly weapon against his enemy, or against himself.

A few days after this extraordinary quarrel, in which he had exposed his resentment and his weakness, the unfortunate Valentinian was found strangled in his apartment; and some priests were employed to disguise the manifest guilt of Arbogastes, and to persuade the world, that the death of the young emperor had been the voluntary effect of his own despair. His body was conducted with decent pomp to the sepulture of Milan; and the archbishop pronounced a funeral oration to commemorate his virtue, and his misfortunes.

On this occasion, the humanity of Ambrose tempted him to make a singular breach in his theological system; and to comfort the weeping sisters of Valentinian, by the firm assurance, that their pious brother, though he had not received the sacrament of baptism, was introduced, without difficulty, into the mansions of eternal bliss.

The prudence of Arbogastes had prepared the success of his ambitious designs; and the provincials, in whose breast every sentiment of patriotism was extinguished, expected, with some resignation, the unknown master: from the choice of a Frank might place the Imperial throne. But some remains of pride and prejudice still opposed the elevation of Arbogastes himself; and the judicious barbarian thought it more advisable to reign under the name of some dependent Roman. He bestowed the purple on the rhetorician Eugenius; whom he had already raised from the place of his domestic secretary, to the rank of master of the offices. In the course both of his private and public service, the count had always approved the attachment and abilities of Eugenius; his learning and eloquence, supported by the gravity of his manners, recommended him to the esteem of the people; and the reluctance, with which he seconded to accept the throne, may inspire a favourable prejudice of his virtue and moderation. The ambassadors of the new emperor were immediately despatched to the court of Theodosius, to communicate, with affected grief, the unfortunate accident of the death of Valentinian; and, without mentioning the name of Arbogastes, to request, that the monarch of the East would embrace, as his lawful colleague, the respectable citizen, who had obtained the unanimous suffrage of the armies and provinces of the West.

Theodosius was justly provoked, that the perfidy of a barbarian should have destroyed, in a moment, the labour, and the fruit, of his former victory; and he was excited, by the tears of his beloved wife, to revenge the fate of her unhappy brother, and once more to essay by arms the violated majesty of the throne. But as the second conquest of the West was a task of difficulty and danger, he dismissed, with splendid presents, and an ambiguous answer, the ambassadors of Eugenius; and almost two years were consumed in the preparations of the civil war. Before he formed any decisive resolution, the pious emperor was anxious to discover the will of Heaven; and as the progress of Christianity had altered the oracles of Delphi and Dodona, he consulted an Egyptian soothsayer, who possessed, in the opinion of the age, the gift of miracles, and the knowledge of futurity. Euphras, one of the favourite amici of the palace of Constantinople, embarked for Alexandria, from whence he sailed up the Nile as far as the city of Lympolis, or of Wolves, in the remote province of Thebais. In the neighbourhood of that city, and on the summit of a lofty mountain, the holy John had interpolated the writings of Priscillianists; and to dispose of the unseemly writings of Priscillian, the emperor determined to visit the holy man; and to place the Prince of Dessalines on the throne of Rome.
constructed with his own hands, in a humble cell, in which he had dwelt above fifty years, without opening his door, without seeing the face of a woman, and without tasting any food that had been prepared by fire, or any human art. Five days of the week he spent in prayer and meditation; but on Saturdays and Sundays he regularly opened a small window, and gave audience to the crowd of suppliants who successively flocked from every part of the Christian world. The oracle of Theodosius approached the window with respectful steps, proposed his questions concerning the event of the civil war, and soon returned with a favourable oracle, which assured the empire of the emperor by the assurance of a bloody and insignificant victory. The accomplishment of the prediction was forwarded by all the means that human prudence could supply. The industry of the two master-generals, Silicho and Timasius, was directed to recruit the numbers, and to retain the discipline of the Roman legions. The formidable troops of barbarians marched under the ensigns of their national emblems. The Thracian, the Asian, and the Gothic, who joined with each other with mutual assistance, were enlisted in the service of the all-powerful prince, and the renowned Alaric accepted, in the school of Theodosius, the knowledge of the art of war, which he afterwards so falsely exerted for the destruction of Rome. 123

The emperor of the West, or, to speak more properly, his general, 124 Arbogetius, was instructed by the misconduct and misfortune of Maximus, how dangerous it might prove to extend the line of defense against a skilful antagonist, who was free to press, or to suspend, to contract, or to multiply, his various methods of attack. Arbogetius fixed his station on the confines of Italy; the troops of Theodosius were permitted to occupy, without resistance, the provinces of Pannonia, as far as the foot of the Julian Alps; and even the passes of the mountains were negligently, or perhaps artfully, abandoned to the bold invader. He descended from the hills, and beheld, with some astonishment, the formidable array of the Gauls and Germans, that covered with arms and hems the open country, which extends to the walls of Aquileia, and the banks of the Frigia, 125 or Cold River. This narrow theatre of the war, circumscribed by the Alps and the Haustrius, did not allow much room for the operations of military skill; the spirit of Arbogetius would have deserved a pardon; his guilt extenuated the hopes of a

negotiation: and Theodosius was impatient to satisfy his glory and revenge, by the chastisement of the assassins of Valentinian. Without weighing the natural and artificial obstacles that opposed his efforts, the emperor of the East immediately attacked the fortifications of his rivals, assigned the post of inaccessible danger to the Goths, and cherished a secret wish, that the bloody conflict might diminish the pride and numbers of the conquerors. Ten thousand of these auxiliaries, and Barcinius, general of the Haustrians, died bravely on the field of battle. But the victory was not purchased by their blood; the Gauls maintained their advantage; and the approach of night protected the disorderly flight, or retreat, of the troops of Theodosius. The emperor retired to the adjacent hills, where he passed a disconsolate night, without sleep, without provisions, and without hopes; 126 except that strong assurance, which, under the most desperate circumstances, the independent mind may derive from the contempt of fortune and of life. The triumph of Eugenius was celebrated by the insolent and absolute joy of his camp; while the active and vigilant Arbogetius secretly detached a considerable body of troops to occupy the passes of the mountains, and to encompass the rear of the Eastern army. The dawn of day discovered to the eyes of Theodosius the extent and the extremity of his danger; but his apprehensions were soon dispelled, by a friendly message from the leaders of those troops, who expressed their inclination to desert the standard of the tyrant. The honourable and lucrative rewards, which they stipulated as the price of their perfidy, were granted without hesitation; and as ink and paper could not easily be procured, the emperor subscribed, on his own tablets, the ratification of the treaty. The spirit of his soldiers was revived by this amenable reinforcement: and they again marched, with confidence, to surprise the ramp of a tyrant, whose principal officers appeared to obstruct, either the justice, or the success of his arms. In the heat of the battle, a violent tempest, 127 such as is often felt among the Alps, suddenly arose from the east. The army of Theodosius was sheltered by their position from the impetuosity of the wind, which blew a cloud of dust in the faces of the enemy, disordered their ranks, wrestled their weapons from their hands, and diverted, or repelled, their incendiary javelins. This accidental advantage was skillfully improved: the violence of the storm was magni-
Rod by the superstitious terror of the Gauls; and they yielded without shame to the invisible powers of heaven, who seemed to militate on the side of the pious emperor. His victory was decisive; and the death of his two rivals were distinguished only by the difference of their characters. The rhetorician Eugenius, who had almost acquired the dominion of the world, was reduced to the mercy of the conqueror; and the intestine soldiers separated his head from his body, as he lay prostrate on the field of Theodosius. Arbogastes, after the loss of a battle, in which he had discharged the duties of a soldier and a general, wandered several days among the mountains. But when he was convinced that his cause was desperate, and his escape impracticable, the intrepid barbarian imitated the example of the ancient Romans, and turned his sword against his own breast. The fate of the empire was determined in a narrow corner of Italy; and the legitimate successor of the house of Valentinian embraced the archbishop of Milan, and graciously received the submission of the provinces of the West. These provinces were involved in the guilt of rebellion; while the inextinguishable courage of Ambrose alone had resisted the claims of successful usurpation.

With a sturdy freedom, which might have been fatal to any other subject, the archbishop rejected the gifts of Eugenius, declined his correspondence, and withdrew himself from Milan, to avoid the odious presence of a tyrant; whose dolorous he predicted in discreet and ambiguous language. The merit of Ambrose was applauded by the conqueror, who secured the attachment of the people by his alliance with the church; and the enmity of Theodosius is ascribed to the humane intercession of the archbishop of Milan. After the defeat of Eugenius, the moris, as well as the authority, of the emperor was acknowledged by all the inhabitants of the Roman world. The experience of his past conduct encouraged the most pleasing expectations of his future reign; and the age of the emperor, which did not exceed fifty years, seemed to extend the prospect of the public felicity. His death, only four months after his victory, was considered by the people as an unforeseen and fatal event, which destroyed, in a moment, the hopes of the rising generation. But the indulgence of ease and luxury had secretly nourished the principles of disease. The strength of Theodosius was unable to support the sudden and violent transition from the palace to the camp; and the increasing symptoms of a dropy announced the speedy dissolution of the emperor. His opinion, and perhaps the interest, of the public had confirmed the division of the Eastern and Western empires; and the two royal youths, Arcadius and Honorius, who had already obtained, from the tenderness of their father, the title of Augustus, were destined to fill the thrones of Constantine and of Rome. These princes were not permitted to share the danger and glory of the civil war; but as soon as Theodosius had triumphed over his unruly rivals, he called his younger son, Honorius, to enjoy the fruits of the victory, and to receive the sceptre of the West from the hands of his dying father. The arrival of Honorius at Milan was welcomed by a splendid exhibition of the games of the Circus; and the emperor, though he was oppressed with the weight of his disorder, contributed by his presence to the public joy. But the remains of his strength were exhausted by the painful effort which he made, to assist at the spectacles of the morning. Honorius surpassed, during the rest of the day, the place of his father; and the great Theodosius expired in the evening. Notwithstanding the recent animosities of a civil war, his death was universally lamented. The barbarians, whom he had vanquished, and the churchmen, by whom he had been announced, celebrated, with loud and sincere applause, the qualities of the deceased emperor, which appeared the most valuable in their eyes. The Romans were terrified by the impending dangers of a feeble and divided administration; and every disgraceful remnant of the unfortunate reigns of Arcadius and Honorius revived the memory of their irremovable loss.

In the faithful picture of the virtues of Theodosius, his imperfections have not been dissembled; the act of cruelty, and the habits of indulgence, which tarnished the glory of one of the greatest of the Roman princes. An historian, perpetually adverse to the fame of Theodosius, has exaggerated his vices, and their pernicious effects; he boldly asserts, that every rank of subjects imitated the effeminate manners of their sovereigns; and every species of corruption polluted the course of public and private life; and that the feeble restraints of order and decency were insufficient to resist the progress of that degenerate spirit, which sacrifices, without a blush, the consideration of duty and interest to the base indulgence of sloth and appetite. The compliances of contemporary writers, who deplore the increase of luxury and depravation of manners, are commonly expressive of their peculiar temper and situation. There are few observers, who possess a clear and comprehensive view of the revolutions of society; and who are capable of discovering the nice and secret springs of action, which impel, in the same uniform direction, the blind and capricious passions of a multitude of individuals. If it can be affirmed, with any degree of truth, that the luxury of the Romans was more shameless and dissolute in the reign of Theodosius than in the age of Constantine, perhaps, or of Augustus, the alternation cannot be ascribed to any beneficial improvements, which
had gradually increased the stock of national riches. A long period of calamity or decay must have checked the industry, and diminished the wealth of the people; and their profuse luxury must have been the result of that indolent despair, which enjoys the present hour, and declines the thought of futurity. The uncertain condition of their property discouraged the subjects of Theodosius from engaging in those useful and laborious undertakings which require an immediate expense, and promise a slow and distant advantage. The frequent examples of ruin and desolation tempted them: not to spare the remains of a park, which might give an hour, become the prey of the rapacious Goths. And the mad prodigality which prevails in the confusion of a shipwreck, or a siege, may serve to explain the progress of luxury amidst the misfortunes and terrors of a sinking nation.

The effeminate luxury, which infected the manners of courts and cities, and had instilled a secret and destructive poison into the camps of the legions; and their degeneracy had been marked by the example of a military writer, who had accurately studied the genuine and ancient principles of Roman discipline. It is the just and important observation of Vegetius, that the infantry was invariably covered with defensive armour, from the foundation of the city, to the reign of the emperor Gratian. The relaxation of discipline, and the abuse of exercise, rendered the soldiers less able, and less willing, to support the fatigue of the service; they complained of the weight of the armour, which they seldom wore; and they successively obtained the permission of laying aside both their cuirasses and their helmets. The heavy weapons of their ancestors, the short sword, and the formidable pilum, which had subdued the world, insensibly dropped from their feeble hands. As the use of the shield is incompatible with that of the bow, they reluctantly marched into the field; condemned to suffer, either the pain of wounds, or the ignominy of flight, and always disposed to prefer the more shameful alternative. The cavalry of the Goths, the Huns, and the Alani, had felt the benefits, and adopted the use of defensive armour; and, as they excelled in the management of missile weapons, they easily overcame the naked and trembling legions, whose hands and breasts were exposed, without defence, to the arrows of the barbarians. The loss of armies, the destruction of cities, and the disfigurement of the Roman name, ineffectually solicited the successors of Gratian to restore the helmets and cuirasses of the infantry. The service of the emperor was abandoned by their own, and the public defence; and their pusillanimous idleness may be considered as the immediate cause of the downfall of the empire. 184

CHAP. XXVIII.

Final Destruction of Paganism.—Introduction of the Worship of Saints, and Relics, among the Christians.

The ruin of Paganism, in the age of Theodosius, is perhaps the one example of the total extirpation of any ancient and popular superstition; and may therefore deserve to be considered, as a singular event in the history of the human mind. The Christians, more especially the clergy, had impatiently supported the present delays of Constantine, and the equal toleration of the old Valentinians: one could see them compost perfect or secure, as long as their adversaries were permitted to exist. The influence, which Ambrose and his brethren had acquired over the youth of Gratian, and the piety of Theodosius, was employed to instil the maxims of persecution into the breasts of their Imperial protégés. Two special principles of religious jurisprudence were established, from whence they deduced a direct and rigorous conclusion, against the subjects of the empire, who still adhered to the ceremonies of their ancestors: that the magistrate, in some measure, guilty of the crimes which he neglects to prohibit, or to punish; and, that the illusory worship of fabulous deities, and real demons, is the most abominable crime against the supreme majesty of the Creator. The laws of Moses, and the examples of Jewish history, 1 were hastily, perhaps erroneously, applied, by the clergy, to the mild and universal reign of Christianity. 2 The zeal of the emperors was excited to vindicate their own honours, and that of the Deity; and the temples of the Roman world were subverted, about sixty years after the conversion of Constantine.

From the age of Numa, to the reign of Gratian, the Romans preserved the regular succession of the several colleges of the sacred order. 3 Fifteen Pontiffs exercised their supreme jurisdiction over all things, and persons, that were consacrated to the service of the gods; and the various questions which perpetually arose in a loose and traditional system, were submitted to the judgment of their holy tribunal. Fifteen grave and learned Archbishops observed the face of the heavens, and prescribed the actions of heroes, according to the flight of birds. Fifteen keepers of the Sibylline books (their name of Quincenta was derived from their number) occasionally consulted the history of future events, and, as it should seem, of contingent events. Six Vestals devoted their virginity to the sacred fire, and to the unknown pledges of the duration of Rome; whose name had been suffered to be held with impunity. 4

184 Vegetius, de Re Militari, i. 20-23. The state of civilization, which this well-known copyist describes, he found in his time, to be lost and even degenerate in the Visigoth and Suevic kingdoms. He, therefore, in the spirit of the Stoics, and according to the advice of Strabo, speaks of the erudition of the Ancients, and the salutary effects of true learning, in the most indulgent terms.


2 These words, and perhaps others, probably have grown less

3 These words, and perhaps others, probably have grown less

4 These words, and perhaps others, probably have grown less

5 These words, and perhaps others, probably have grown less
Brutus, prepared the table of the gods, conducted the solemn procession, and regulated the ceremonies of the annual festival. The three Flamines of Jupiter, of Mars, and of Quirinus, were considered as the peculiar ministers of the three most powerful deities, who watched over the fate of Rome and of the universe. The King of the Sabinians represented the person of Numa, and of his successors, in the religious function, which could be performed only by royal hands. The confraternities of the Sabinians, the Lupercals, &c., practiced such rites, as might exert a smile of contumac from every reasonable man, with a lively confidence of recommencing themselves to the favour of the immortal gods. The authority, which the Roman priests had formerly obtained in the councils of the republic, was gradually abolished by the establishment of monarchy, and the removal of the seat of empire.

But the dignity and their character was still protected by the laws and manners of their country; and they still continued, more especially the college of pontiffs, in exercise in the capital, and sometimes in the provinces, the rights of their ecclesiastical and civil jurisdiction. Their honors of purple, charters of state, and sumptuous entertainments, attracted the admiration of the people; and they received, from the consecrated hands, and the public reverence, an ample stipend, which liberally supported the splendor of the priesthood, and all the expenses of the religious worship of the state.

As the service of the altar was not incompatible with the command of armies, the Romans, after their campaigns and triumphs, aspired to the place of pontiff, or of augur; the sons of Caesar, and Pompey were lithed, in the fourth century, by the most illustrious members of the nation, and the dignity of their birth reflected additional splendor on their accredited character. The fifteen priests, who composed the college of pontiffs, enjoyed a more distinguished rank than the compositions of their sovereign; and the Christian emperors consecrated to accept the robe and ensigns, which were appropriated to the office of supreme pontiff. But when Gratian acceded the thrones, more scrupulous, or more enlightened, he utterly rejected these profane symbols, and applied to the service of the state, or of the church, the revenues of the priests and vestals; abolished their honours and immunities; and dissolved the ancient fabric of Roman superstition, which was supported by the opinions, and habits, of eleven hundred years.

Paganism was still the constitutional religion of the senate. The hall, or temple, in which they assembled, was adorned by the statue and altar of Victory; a majestic female standing on a globe, with flowing garments, expanded wings, and a crown of laurel in her outstretched hand. The senators were sworn, on the altar of the goddess, to observe the laws of the emperor and of the empire; and a solemn offering of wine and incense was the ordinary prelude of their public deliberations. The removal of this ancient monument was the only injury which Constantine had offered to the superstition of the Romans. The altar of Victory was again restored by Julian, tolerated by Valentinian, and once more banished from the senate by the zeal of Gratian. But the emperor yet spared the statues of the gods which were exposed to the public veneration; four hundred and twenty-four temples, or chapels, still remained to satisfy the devotion of the people; and in every quarter of Rome the decency of the Christians was offended by the fumes of diurnal sacrifices.

But the Christians formed the loudest murmur in the senate of Rome; and it was only by their absence that they could express their dissent from the legal, though profane, acts of a Pagan majority. In that assembly, the dying embers of Freedom were, for a moment, revived, and inflamed by the breath of fanaticism. Four respectable deputations were successively voted to the imperial court, to represent the grievances of the priesthood, and the senate; and to solicit the restoration of the altar of Victory. The conduct of this important business was intrusted to the eloquent Symmachus, a wealthy and noble senator, who united the sacred characters of pontiff and augur, with the civil dignities of proconsul of Africa, and prefect of the city. The breath of Symmachus was animated with the warmest zeal for the cause of expiring Paganism; and his religious tenderness, his bitterness, the abuse of his genius, and the infirmities of his moral virtues. The orator, whose petition is extant to the emperor Valentinian, was conscious of the difficulty and danger of the office which he had assumed. He cautiously avoids every topic which might appeal to reflect on the religion of his sovereign; humbly declares, that prayers and entreaties are his only arms; and artfully draws his arguments from the schools of rhetoric, rather than from those of philosophy. Symmachus endeavours to ad-
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

Chap. XXVIII.

dure the imagination of a young prince, by displaying the attributes of the goddess of victory; he instructs, that the confiscation of the revenues, which were consecrated to the service of the gods, was a measure unbecoming of his liberal and disinterested character; and he maintains, that the Roman sacrifices would be deprived of their force and energy, if they were no longer celebrated at the expense, as well as in the name, of the republic. Even sorcery is made to supply an apology for superstition. The great and incomprehensible power of the universe, the inquiry of esse. What sex, for instance, can be held to guide? is readily explained by a faithful adherence to those rites, and a spirit which has received the sanction of ages. If those ages have been crowned with glory and prosperity, if the devout people have frequently obtained the blessings which they have solicited at the altars of the gods, it must appear still more advisable to persist in the same salutary practice; and not to risk the unknown partis that may attend any rash innovations.

The test of antiquity and success was applied with singular advantage to the religion of Numa; and hence itself, the celestial places that possess the fate of the city, is introduced by the senator to plead her own cause before the tribunal of the augurs. Most excellent "proconsul," says the venerable senator, "fathers of your country! pity and respect my age, which has been boiled in an uninterrupted course of pure. Since I do not repeat, persist in, or continue in the practice of my ancient rites. Since I am not free, allow me to enjoy your domestic immunities. This religion has reduced the world under my laws. These rites have repelled Hasdennus from the city, and the Gauls from the Capitol. Were my gray hairs reserved for such noble designs? I am ignorant of the new system, that I am required to adopt; but I am well assured, that the corruption of old age is always an ignominious and ignominious affair. The times of the people supplied what the discretion of the senate had suppressed; and the calamities, which afflicted, or threatened, the existing empire, were unanimously imposed, by the Pagan, to the new religion of Christ and of Constantine.

But the hopes of Numa's counsellors were repeatedly hailed by the firm and direct opposition of the archbishop of Milan, who fortified the supports against the fulminating eloquence of the advocate of Rome. In this instance, Ambrose confinates to speak the language of a philosopher, and to ask, with some contempt, why it should be thought necessary to introduce an imaginary and insensible power, as the cause of those victories, which were sufficiently explained by the valor and discipline of the legions. He justly denies the absurd reverence for antiquity, which could only tend to discourage the improvements of art, and to replace the nations to their original barbarity. From these gradually rising up a new holy and theological tone, he proceeds, that Christianity alone is the doctrine of truth and salvation; and that every mode of polytheism contains its delusive attributes, through the paths of error, to the abyss of eternal perdition. Arguments like these, when they were suggested by a favourite bishop, had power to prevent the restoration of the altar of Victory; but the same arguments fell, with much more energy and effect, from the mouth of a conqueror; and the gods of antiquity were dragged in triumph at the chariot-wheels of Theodosius.

In a full meeting of the senate, the emperor proposed, according to the forms of the republic, the important question, Whether the worship of Jupiter, or that of Mars, should be the religion of the Romans? The liberty of religion, which it affected to secure, was destroyed by the hopes and fears that his parents inspired; and the arbitrary will of Symmachus was a recent submission, that it might be dangerous to oppose the wishes of the monarch. On a regular division of the senate, Jupiter was condemned and degraded by the sense of a very large majority; and it is rather surprising, that any members should be found bold enough to declare, by their speeches and votes, that they were still attached to the interest of an obdurate deity. The hasty conversion of the senate must be attributed either to superstition or to servile motives; and many of those valiant proseologists betrayed, on every favourable occasion, their secret disposition to throw aside the mask of solemn disavowals. But they were gradually fixed in the new religion, as the rulers of the ancient kingdom more hopeless; they yielded to the authority of the emperor, to the fashion of the times, and to the extortions of their wives and children, who were implicated and governed by the clergy of Rome and the monks of the East.

The seductive example of the Christian family was soon imitated by the rest of the nobility; the Emperors, the Papists, the Gracchi, embraced the new Christian religion; and the dominion of the world, the convertible ascendancy of Caesars (such as the high-flown expression of Procopius), were impatient to strip themselves of their pagan garments; and cast off the skin of the old with the form of the Jews (c. c. 591). In placing the title of Theodosius to the world, and his dominion above that of Rome, the pious, and many of the old, were, perhaps, not aware of the true nature of the power, as the result of the monarch, when we consider the mass of the actions in the middle ages, proved to be the most powerful and the most reasonable. The Emperor, for instance, was the sole judge of the Church; the Papists had no more power over the popes, than the emperors over the emperors.
"serpent; to assume the snowy robes of bap-
tismal innocence; and to humble the pride of
the conular faces before the tombs of the
martyrs." 21 The citizens, who subsisted by
their own industry, and the populace, who were
supported by the public liberality, filled the
churches of the Lateran and Vatican, with an
inconceivable train of devout processions. The
decrees of the senate, which prescribed the worship
of idols, were ratified by the general consent of
the Romans; 22 the splendour of the Capitol was
degraded, and the solitary temples were abandoned
to ruin and contumely. 23 Rome submitted to the
yoke of the Gospel; and the vanquished prov-
inces had not yet lost their reverence for the
name and authority of Rome.

The filial piety of the emperors
themselves engaged them to pro-
ceed, with some caution and ben-
demence, in the reformation of the eternal city.
Those absolute monarchs, and with less regard
to the prejudices of the provincials. The pious
labour, which had been suspended near seventy
years since the death of Constantius, 24 was
vigorously resumed, and finally accomplished,
by the zeal of Theodosius. Whilst that war-
like prince yet struggled with the Goth, not
for the glory, but for the safety, of the republic;
he ventured to offend a considerable party of
his subjects, by some acts which might perhaps
excite the protection of Heaven; but which
must seem rash and unmeasureable in the eyes of
human prudence. The success of his first ex-
periments against the Pagans encouraged the
pious emperor to persevere and enforce his effica-
t of prescription: the same laws which had been
originally published in the provinces of the
East, were applied, after the defeat of Maximus,
to the whole extent of the Western empire;
and every victory of the orthodox Theodosius
contributed to the triumph of the Christian and
Catholic faith. 25 He attacked superstition in
her most vital part, by prohibiting the use of
sacrifices, which he declared to be criminal as
well as infamous; and if the terms of his edicts
were strictly condemned the impious curiosity
which examined the entrails of the victims, 26
every subsequent explanation tended to involve,
in the same guilt, the general practice of inves-
tigation, which essentially constituted the religion
of the Pagans. As the temples had been erect-
cd for the purpose of sacrifice, it was the
duty of a beneficent prince to remove from his
subjects the dangerous temptation, of offending
against the laws which he had enacted. A
special commission was granted to Cyconius, the
pr Baxter Price widow, purchasing.. 20
Liberian Councils, ed. Geneva 1668.
21 The rise and fall of paganism.
22 The rise and fall of paganism.
23 The rise and fall of paganism.
24 The rise and fall of paganism.
25 The rise and fall of paganism.
26 The rise and fall of paganism.
27 Compare the life of Martin, in Origenes, 5. Lib. ii. Cap. i. 28 See the e.
28 See the e.
29 See the e.
30 See the e.
31 See the e.
32 See the e.
33 See the e.
34 See the e.
35 See the e.
36 See the e.
circumference; and the large stones, of which they were composed, were firmly cemented with lead and iron. The force of the strongest and sharpest tools had been tried without effect. It was found necessary to undermine the foundations of the columns, which fell down as soon as the temporary wooden props had been consumed with fire; and the difficulties of the enterprise are described under the allegory of a black dragon, who, warned, though he could not defeat, the operations of the Christian engineers. Elated with victory, Marcellus ran to the field in person against the powers of darkness; a numerous troop of soldiers and gladiators marched under the episcopal banner, and he succeeded in annexing the villages and country temples of the diocese of Apamena. Whenever resistance or danger was apprehended, the champion of the faith, whose name would not allow him either to fight or fly, placed himself at a convenient distance, beyond the reach of darts. But this prudence was the occasion of his death: he was surprised and slain by a body of exasperated rustics; and the synod of the province pronounced, without hesitation, that the holy Marcellus had sacrificed his life in the cause of God. In the support of this cause, the monks, who rushed, with tempestuous fury, from the desert, distinguished themselves by their zeal and diligence. They deserved the veneration of the pagans; and some of them might deserve the reproaches of avarice and intemperance; of avarice, which they gratified with holy plunder, and of intemperance, which they indulged at the expense of the people, who foolishly admired their tattered garments, loud psalmody, and artificial palaces. A small number of temples was protected by the fear, the veneration, the taste, or the prudence of the civil and ecclesiastical governors. The temple of the Celestial Venus at Carthage, whose sacred precincts formed a circumference of two miles, was judiciously converted into a Christian church; and a similar consecration has preserved inviolate the majestic dome of the Pantheon at Rome. But in almost every province of the Roman world, an army of families, without authority, and without discipline, invaded the peaceful inhabitants; and the ruin of the finest structures of antiquity still displays the ravages of these barbarians, who alone had time and inclination to execute such licentious destruction.

In this wide and various prospect of devastation, the spectator may distinguish the ruins of the temple of Serapis, at Alexandria. Serapis does not appear to have been one of the native gods, or monsters, who sprang from the fruitful soil of superstitions Egypt. The first of the Ptolemies had been commanded, by a dream, to import the mysterious stranger from the coast of Pontus, where he had been long adored by the inhabitants of Sinope; but his attributes and his reign were so imperfectly understood, that it became a subject of dispute, whether he represented the brightness of day, or the gloomy monach of the subterraneous regions. The Egyptians, who were obstinately devoted to the religion of their fathers, refused to admit this foreign deity within the walls of their cities. But the subsequent priests, who were seduced by the liberality of the Ptolemies, submitted, without resistance, to the power of the god of Pontus: an honourable and domestic gentility was provided; and this fortunate monk was introduced into the throne and bed of Osiris, the husband of Isis, and the celestial monarch of Egypt. Alexandria, which claimed his peculiar protection, gloated in the name of the city of Serapis. His temple, which rivaled the pride and magnificence of the Capitol, was erected on the spacious summit of an artificial mount, raised one hundred steps above the level of the adjacent parts of the city; and the interior cavity was strongly supported by arches, and distributed into vaults and subterraneous apartments. The consecrated buildings were surrounded by a quadrangular portico; the vasty halls, and exquisitely statues, displayed the triumph of the arts; and the treasures of ancient learning were preserved in the famous Alexandrian library, which had arisen with new splendour from its ashes. After the effects of Theodosius had severely prohibited the sacrifices of the pagans, they were still tolerated in the city and temple of Serapis; and this singular indulgence was imposed not ascribed to the superstitions of the Christians themselves; as if they had feared to abolish those ancient rites, which could alone secure the invocations of the Nile, the harvests of Egypt, and the subsistence of Constantinople.

At that time the archiepiscopal throne of Alexandria was filled by Theophilus, the perpetual enemy of peace and virtue; a bold, bad man, whose hands were alternately polluted with gold, and with blood. His pious indignation
was excited by the bounties of Serapis; and the insults which he offered to an ancient chapel of Baccus; convinced the Pagans that he mediated a more important and dangerous enterprise. In the tumultuous capital of Egypt, the slightest provocation was sufficient to inflame a civil war. The votaries of Serapis, whose strength and number were much inferior to those of their antagonists, rose in arms at the instigation of the philosopher Olympus, who exhorted them to die in the defence of the altars of the gods. These Pagan fanatics fortified themselves in the temple, or rather fortress, of Serapis; repulsed the besiegers by daring sallies, and a resolute defence; and, by the human crucifixion which they exercised on their Christian prisoners, obtained the last consolation of despair. The efforts of the prudent magistrate were uselessly exerted for the establishment of a truce, till the answer of Theodosius determined the fate of Serapis. The two parties assembled, without arms, in the principal square; and the Imperial edict was publicly read. But when a sentence of destruction against the idols of Alexandria was pronounced, the Christians sent up a shout of joy and exultation, while the unfortunate Pagans, whose fury had given way to consternation, retired with hasty and silent steps, and eluded, by their flight or obscurity, the resentment of their enemies. Theophilus proceeded to demolish the temple of Serapis, without any other difficulty than that which he found in the weight and solidity of the materials; but these obstacles proved so insuperable, that he was obliged to leave the foundations, and to content himself with reducing the edifice into a heap of rubbish, a part of which was soon afterwards cleared away, to make room for a church, erected in honour of the Christian martyrs. The immense library of Alexandria was pillaged or destroyed; and near twenty years afterwards, the appearance of the empty shelves excited the regret and indignation of every spectator, whose mind was not usually darkened by religious prejudices. The compositions of ancient genius, so many of which have irretrievably perished, might surely have been excepted from the wreck of idolatry, for the amusement and instruction of succeeding ages; and either the real or the avowed of the archbishop might have been satisfied with the rich spoils, which were the reward of his victory. While the images and vases of gold and silver were carefully melted, and those of less valuable metal were contemptuously broken, and cast into the streets, Theophilus laboured to expose the frauds and view of the ministers of the idols; their dexterity in the management of the institutions; their secret methods of introducing an human actor into a hollow statue; and their scandalous abuse of the confidence of dying husbands, and unsuspecting females. Charges like these may seem to deserve some degree of credit, as they are not repugnant to the cruel and interested spirit of superstition. But the same spirit is equally prone to the base practice of insulating and calumniating a fallen enemy; and our belief is naturally checked by the reflection, that it is much less difficult to invent a fictitious story, than to support a practical fraud. The colossal statue of Serapis was involved in the ruin of his temple and religion. A great number of plates of different kinds, artificially joined together, composed the majestic figure of the deity, who touched on either side the walls of the sanctuary. The aspect of Serapis, his sitting posture, and the scrope, which he bore in his left hand, were extremely similar to the ordinary representations of Jupiter. He was distinguished from Jupiter by the basket, or buskin, which was placed on his head; and by the emblematic monster, which he held in his right hand; the head and body of a serpent branching into three tails, which were again terminated by the triple heads of a dog, a lion, and a wolf. It was confidently affirmed, that if any impious hand should dare to violate the majesty of the god, the heavens and the earth would instantly return to their original chaos. An intrepid soldier, animated by zeal, and armed with a weighty battle-axe, ascended the ladder; and even the Christian multitude expected, with some anxiety, the event of the combat. He aimed a vigorous stroke against the cheek of Serapis; the shock fell to the ground; the thunder was still silent, and both the heavens and the earth continued to preserve their accustomed order and tranquillity. The victorious soldier repeated his blows; the huge idol was overthrown, and broken in pieces; and the limbs of Serapis were ignominiously dragged through the streets of Alexandria. His mangled carcass was burnt in the Amphitheatre, amidst the shouts of the populace; and many persons attributed their conversion to this discovery of the impotence of their tutelary deity. The popular modes of religion, that present any visible and material objects of worship, have the advantage of adapting and familiarizing themselves to the senses of mankind; but this advantage is counterbalanced by the various and inevitable accidents to which the faith of the idolater is exposed. It is scarcely possible, that, in every disposition of mind, he should preserve his implicit reverence for the idols, or
The temples of the Roman empire were deserted, or destroyed; but the ingenuous superstition of the Pagans still attempted to please the laws of Thaumarios, by which all sacrifices had been severely prohibited. The inhabitants of the country, whose conduct was less exposed to the eye of malicious curiosity, disguised their religion, under the appearance of innocent meetings. On the days of solemn festivals, they assembled in great numbers under the spreading shade of some consecrated tree; sleep and oxen were slaughtered and roasted; and this rural entertainment was sanctified by the use of incense, and by the hymns, which were sung in honour of the gods. But it was alleged, that, as no part of the animal was made a burnt-offering, as no altar was provided to receive the blood, and as the previous oblation of salt cakes, and the concluding ceremony of litanies, were carefully omitted, these festive meetings did not involve the guests in the guilt, or penalty, of an illegal sacrifice. Whatever might be the truth of the facts, or the merit of the distinction; these vain pretences were swept away by the last edict of Theodosius, which inflicted a deadly wound on the superstition of the Pagans. This prohibitory law is expressed in the most absolute and comprehensive terms. "It is our will and pleasure," says the emperor, "that none of our subjects, whether magnates or private citizens, however exalted or however humble, may be their rank and condition, shall presume, in any city, or in any place, to worship as an inseparable idol, by the sacrifice of a guiltless victim." The act of sacrificing, and the practice of divination by the entrails of the victim, are declared (without any regard to the object of the enquiry) a crime of high treason against the state; which can be explained only by the death of the guilty. The virtue of Pagan superstition, which might seem less bloody and atrocious, are abolished, as highly injurious to the truth and honour of religion; luminaries, garlands, frankincense, and libations of wine are especially enumerated and condemned; and the harmless customs of the domestic genius, of the household gods, are included in this vigorous prescription. The use of any of these profane and illegal ceremonies subjects the offender to the forfeiture of the house, or estate, where they have been performed; and if he has artfully chosen the property of another for the scene of his impiety, he is compelled to discharge, without delay, a heavy fine of twenty-five pounds of gold, or more than one thousand pounds of silver. A fine, not less considerable, is imposed on the complicity of the secret enemies of religion, who shall neglect the duty of their respective stations, either to reveal, or to punish, the gods of idolatry. Such was the persecuting spirit of the laws of Theodosius, which were repeatedly enforced by his sons and grandsons, with the most ardent and unceasingly applied the Christian virtues.

In the cruel reigns of Decius and Diocletian, Christianity had been proscribed, as a revolt from the ancient and necessary religion of the empire; and the unjust suspicions which were entertained of a dark and dangerous faction, were, in some measure, counterbalanced by the incomparable union, and rapid conquests, of the Catholic church. But the same exactions of fear and ignorance cannot be applied to the Christian emperors, who violated the precepts of humanity and of the Gospel. The experiences of ages had betrayed the weakness, as well as folly, of Paganism; the light of reason and of faith had already exposed to the greatest part of mankind, the vanity of idols; and the declining sect, which still adhered to their worship, might have been permitted to enjoy, in peace and obscurity, the religious customs of their ancestors. Had the Pagans been animated by the unsanctified zeal, which possessed the minds of the primitive believers, the triumph of the church must have been stained with blood; and the martyrs of Jupiter and Apollo might have embraced the glorious opportunity of devoting their lives and fortunes at the feet of their altars. But such obstinate enmity was not congenial to the loose and careless temper of polytheism. The violent and repeated strokes of the orthodox princes were broken by the soft and yielding subsistence against which they were directed; and the ready obedience of the Pagans protected them from the pains and penalties of...
the Theodosian Code. Instead of asserting, that the authority of the gods was superior to that of the emperor, they insisted, with a plaintive murmur, from the use of those sacred rites which their sovereign had condemned. If they were sometimes tempted, by a salty of passion, or by the hopes of concealment, to indulge their favourite superstition; their humble repentance disarmed the severity of the Christian magistrate, and they seldom refused to atone for their rashness, by submitting, with some secret reluctance, to the yoke of the Gospel. The churches were filled with the increasing multitude of these unworthy proselytes, who had, as it were, formed, from temporal motives, to the reigning religion; and whilst they devoutly imitated the postures, and recited the prayers, of the faithful, they satisfied their conscience by the silent and sincere invocation of the gods of antiquity. If the Pagans wanted patience to suffer, they wanted spirit to resist; and the scattered myriads, who deplored the ruin of the temples, yielded, without a contest, to the fortune of their adversaries. The disorderly opposition of the peasants of Syria, and the populace of Alexandria, to the rage of private fanaticism, was silenced by the name and authority of the emperor. The Pagans of the West, without contributing to the elevation of Eugenius, disgraced, by their partial attachment, the cause and character of the usurper. The clergy vehemently exclaimed, that he aggravated the crime of rebellion by the guilt of apostacy; that, by his permission, the altar of Victory was again restored; and that the idolatrous symbols of Jupiter and Hercules were displayed in the field, against the invincible standard of the cross. But the vain hopes of the Pagans were soon annihilated by the defeat of Eugenius; and they were left exposed to the resentment of the conqueror, who laboured to deserve the favour of Heaven by the extirpation of idolatry.

A nation of slaves is always prepared to applaud the clemency of their master, who, in the abuse of absolute power, does not proceed in the least extremes of injustice and oppression. Theodosius might undoubtedly have proposed to his Pagans the alternative of baptism or of death; and the eloquent Libanius has praised the moderation of a prince, who never enacted, by any positive law, that all his subjects should immediately embrace and practise the religion of their sovereign. The profession of Christianity was not made an essential qualification for the enjoyment of the civil rights of society, nor were any peculiar hardships imposed on the sectaries, who随处可见地 receive the favours of Ovid, and obstinately rejected the miracles of the Gospel. The palace, the schools, the army, and the senate, were filled with declared and devout Pagans; they obtained, without distinction, the civil and military honours of the empire. Theodosius distinguished his liberal regard for virtue and genius, by the consular dignity, which he bestowed on Synnachus; and by the poetical friendship which he expressed to Libanius; and the two eloquent apologists of Paganism were never required either to change, or to dissemble, their religious opinions. The Pagans were indulged in the most licentious freedom of speech and writing; the historical and philosophical remains of Eunapius, Zosimus, and the fanatic teachers of the school of Plato, betray the most furious animosity, and contain the sharpest invectives, against the sentiments and conduct of their victorious adversaries. If these audacious libels were publicly known, we must applaud the good sense of the Christian princes, who, when called to the throne, had already enjoyed the benefits of Paganism, and who were able to govern their subjects with a spirit of moderation, and to submit to the superior wisdom of their predecessors. But the Imperial laws, which prohibited the sacrifices and ceremonies of Paganism, were rigorously executed; and every hour contributed to destroy the influence of a religion, which was supported by custom, rather than by argument. The devotion of the poet, or the philosopher, may be secretly nourished by prayer, meditation, and study; but the exercise of public worship appears to be the only solid foundation of the religious sentiments of the people, which derive their force from imitation and habit. The interruption of that public exercise may consume, in the period of a few years, the important work of a national revolution. The memory of theological opinions cannot long be preserved, without the artificial helps of priests, of temples, and of books. The ignorant vulgar, whose minds are still agitated by the blind hopes and fears of superstition, will be soon persuaded, by their superiors, to direct their vows to the reigning deity of the age; and will insensibly imbibe an ardent zeal for the support and propagation of the new doctrine, which spiritual hunger at first roused them to accept. The generation that arose in the world after the proclamation of the Imperial laws, was attracted within the pale of the Catholic church; and so rapid, yet so gentle, was the fall of Paganism, that only twenty-eight years after the death of Theodosius, the faint and minute vestiges were no longer visible to the eye of the legislator.
The ruin of the Pagan religion is described by the sophists as a dreadful and amazing prodigy, which covered the earth with darkness, and restored the ancient dominion of chaos and of night. They relate, in solemn and pathetic strains, that the temples were converted into sepulchres, and that the holy places, which had been adorned by the statues of the gods, were basely polluted by the relics of Christian martyrs. "The monks" (a race of filthy animals, to whom Eunapius is tempted to refuse the name of men) are the authors of the new worship, which, in the place of those deities, who are conceived by the understanding, has substituted the most revolting sacrifices, those most contemnible slaves. The heads, salted and pickled, of those infamous malefactor factors, who for the multitude of their crimes have suffered a just and ignominious death; their bodies, still marked by the impression of the last, and the scars of those tortures which were inflicted by the sentence of the magistrates; such others (continues Eunapius) are the gods which the earth produces in its days; such are the martyrs, the supreme arbitrators of our prayers and petitions to the Deity, whose tombs are now consecrated as the objects of the veneration of the people. Without approving the staking, it is natural enough to share the surprise, the astonishment, the admiration of a revolution, which, raising those obscure victims of the laws of Rome, to the rank of celestial and invincible protectors of the Roman empire. The grateful respect of the Christians for the martyrs of the faith was excited, by time and victory, into religious adoration; and the most illustrious of the saints and prophets were deservedly associated to the honours of the martyrs. One hundred and fifty years after the glorious deaths of St. Peter and St. Paul, the Vatican and the Ostan road were distinguished by the tombs, or rather by the trophies, of those spiritual heroes. In the age which followed the conversion of Constantine, the emperor, the consuls, and the generals of armies, devoutly visited the sepulchres of a tent-maker and a fisherman; and their venerable bones were deposited under the altars of Christ, on which the bishops of the royal city continually offered the unbloody sacrifice. The new capital of the Eastern world, unable to produce any ancient and domestic trophies, was enriched by the spoils of dependent provinces. The bodies of St. Andrew, St. Luke, and St. Timothy, had repose, near three hundred years, in the obscure graves, from whence they were transported, in solemn pomp, to the church of the apostles, which the magnificence of Constantine had founded on the banks of the Tiberian Bosphorus. About fifty years afterwards, the same banks were honoured by the presence of Samuel, the judge and prophet of the people of Israel. His ashes, deposited in a golden vase, and covered with a silken veil, were delivered by the bishops into such other hands. The relics of Samuel were received by the people, with the same joy and reverence which they would have shown to the living prophet; the highways, from Palestine to the gates of Constantinople, were filled with an uninterrupted procession; and the emperor Arcadius himself, at the head of the most illustrious members of the clergy and senate, advanced to meet his extraordinary guest, who had always deserved and claimed the homage of kings. The example of Rome and Constantinople confirmed the faith and discipline of the Catholic world. The honours of the saints and martyrs, after a feeble and inefficient summer of profuse reason, were universally established; and in the age of Ambrose and Jerom, something was still deemed wanting to the sanctity of a Christian church, till it had been consecrated by some portion of holy relics, which fixed and inflamed the devotion of the faithful.

In the long period of twelve hundred years, which elapsed between the reign of Constantine and the reformation of Luther, the worship of saints and relics corrupted the pure and perfect simplicity of the Christian model; and some symptoms of degeneracy may be observed even in the first generations which adopted and cherished this pernicious innovation.

I. The satisfactory experience, that the relics of saints were more valuable than gold or precious stones, stimulated the clergy to multiply the treasures of the church. Without much regard for truth or probability, they invented names for skeletons, and actions for names. The fame of the apostles, and of the holy men who had imitated their virtues, was darkened by religious fiction. To the insatiable hand of gnomes and primitive martyrs, they added myriads of imaginary heroes, who had never existed, except in the fancy of crafty or credulous legislators; and there is reason to suspect, that Tours might not be the only diocese in which the bones of a malefactor were venerated, instead of those of a saint. A superstitious practice, which tended to increase the temptations of fraud, and credulity, immi-
declares, that he has selected those miracles only which were publicly certified by the persons who were either the objects, or the spectators, of the power of the martyr. Many prodigies were omitted, or forgotten; and Hippo had been less favourably treated than the other cities of the province. And yet the bishop enumerates above seventy miracles, of which three were resurrections from the dead, in the space of two years, and within the limits of his own diocese. 50 If we enlarge our view to all the dioceses, and all the saints, of the Christian world, it will not be easy to calculate the fables, and the errors, which issued from this inexhaustible source. But we may surely be allowed to observe, that a miracle, in the age of superstition and credulity, lost its name and its merit, since it could scarcely be considered as a deviation from the ordinary, and established, laws of nature.

III. The Immense Miracles, in which the tombs of the martyrs were the perpetual theatres, revealed to the pious believer the actual state and constitution of the invisible world; and his religious speculations appeared to be founded on the firm basis of fact and experience. Whatever might be the condition of vulgar souls, in the long interval between the dissolution and the resurrection of their bodies, it was evident that the superior spirits of the saints and martyrs did not consume that portion of their existence in silent and inglorious sleep. 51 It was evident (without presuming to determine the place of their habitation, or the nature of their felicity) that they enjoyed the lively and active consciousness of their happiness, their virtue, and their powers; and that they had already secured the possession of their eternal reward. The enlargement of their intellectual faculties surpassed the memory of the human imagination; since it was proved by experience, that they were capable of hearing and understanding the various petitions of their numerous votaries; who, in the same moment of time, but in the most distant parts of the world, invoked the name and assistance of Stephen or of Martin. 52 The confidence of their petitioners was founded on the persuasion, that the same who reigned with Christ, cast an eye of pity upon earth; that they were warmly interested in the prosperity of the Catholic church; and that the individuals, whoimitated the example of their faith and piety, were the peculiar and favourite objects of their most tender regard. Sometimes, indeed, their friendship might be influenced by considerations of a less costly kind: they viewed, with partial affection, the places which had been consecrated by their birth.

Bishop of Utica. Porphyry's speech, De Harum, ad urbem, praeb. pro arboribus, A.D. 413, sec. 7, 115. The licentiousness of St. Augustin, with respect to the harlots, is in the connexion. He is described by St. Jerome as a man of the world, and contemned by the Catholic church. His assertion, that God would be merciful in the day of judgment, is to be imputed to the influence of Porphyry. He had no right to judge of such matters: he even seems to have dallied on the subject of St. Stephen himself. He was not a dyer or a harlot, but a writer on the harlots. If a priest had been guilty of such crimes, he would not have been allowed to be employed in his pastoral duties. He seems to have neglected the duties of his office, and to have been guilty of intemperance, and of immorality.

51 in the days of Stephen, the church was not subjected to the same trials, nor was the severity of the Roman church in the days of Martin. The number of the saints was large enough for the purposes of the church. The narrative of St. Stephen is inserted in the elaborate work of the City of God, which the bishop of Hippo designed as a solid and immortal proof of the truth of Christianity. Augustin solemnly

52 in the days of Stephen, the church was not subjected to the same trials, nor was the severity of the Roman church in the days of Martin. The number of the saints was large enough for the purposes of the church. The narrative of St. Stephen is inserted in the elaborate work of the City of God, which the bishop of Hippo designed as a solid and immortal proof of the truth of Christianity. Augustin solemnly
their residence, their death, their burial, or the possession of their relics. The meaner passions of pride, avarice, and revenge, may be deemed unworthy of a celestial breast; yet the saints themselves condescended to testify their grateful approbation of the liberality of their votaries, and the sharpest bolts of punishment were hurled against those impious wretches, who violated their magnificent shrines, or disbelieved their supernatural power. Atrocious, indeed, must have been the guilt, and strange would have been the hypocrisy, of those men, if they had ultimately resisted the proofs of a divine agency, which the elements, the whole range of the animal creation, and even the subtle and invisible operations of the human mind, were compelled to obey. The immediate, and almost instantaneous, effects, that were supposed to follow the prayer, or the offence, satisfied the Christians, of the ample measure of favour and salvation enjoyed in the presence of the Supreme God; and it might almost superfluous to inquire, whether they were continually obliged to intercede before the throne of grace; or whether they might not be permitted to exercise, according to the dictates of their benevolence and justice, the delegated powers of their subordinate ministry. The imaginations, which had been raised by a painful effort to the contemplation and worship of the Universal Cause, eagerly embraced such inferior objects of adoration as were more proportioned to its gross conceptions and imperfect faculties. The sublime and simple theology of the primitive Christians was gradually corrupted; and the monarchs of heaven, already clouded by metaphysical subtleties, was degraded by the introduction of a popular mythology, which tended to restore the reign of polytheism.

IV. As the objects of religion were gradually reduced to the standard of the imagination, the rites and ceremonies were introduced that seemed most powerfully to affect the senses of the vulgar. If, in the beginning of the fifth century, Terullian, or Lactantius, had been suddenly raised from the dead, to assist at the festival of some popular saint, or martyr, they would have gazed with astonishment, and indignation, on the profane spectacle, which had succeeded to the pure and spiritual worship of a Christian congregation. As soon as the doors of the church were thrown open, they must have been offended by the smoke of incense, the perfume of flowers, and the glare of lamps and tapers, which diffused, at noon-day, a gaudy, supernatural lustre, and, in their opinion, a sacrilegious light. If they approached the balustrade of the altar, they made their way through the press of crowd, consisting, for the most part, of strangers and pilgrims, who resorted to the city on the vigils of the feast, and who already felt the strong intoxication of fanaticism, and, perhaps, of wine. Their devout knees were imprisoned on the walls and pavement of the sacred edifice; and their fervent prayers were directed, whatever might be the language of their church, to the images, the blood, or the ashes, of the saint, which were usually concealed, by a linen or silk veil, from the eyes of the vulgar. The Christians frequented the tombs of the martyrs, in the hope of obtaining, from their powerful intercessions, every sort of spiritual, but more especially of temporal, blessings. They implored the preservation of their health, or the cure of their infirmities; the fulness of their barren wives, or the safety and happiness of their children. Whenever they undertook any distant or dangerous journey, they requested, that the holy martyrs would be their guides and protectors on the road; and if they returned without having experienced any misfortune, they again hastened to the tombs of the martyrs, to celebrate, with grateful thanksgivings, their obligations to the memory and relics of those heavenly patrons. The walls were hung round with symbols of the favours which they had received; eyes, hands, and feet, of gold and silver; and edifying pictures, which could not long escape the abuse of indiscreet or idolatrous devotion, represented the image, the attributes, and the miracles, of the titular saint. The same uniform original spirit of superstition might suggest, in the most distant ages and countries, the same methods of deceiving the credulity, and of affecting the senses, of mankind; but it must ingenuously be confessed, that the ministers of the Catholic church imitated the profane model, which they were impatient to destroy. The most respectable bishops had persuaded themselves, that the ignorant rustics would more cheerfully renounce the superstitions of Paganism, if they found some resemblance, some compensation, in the bosom of Christianity. The religion of Constantine achieved, in less than a century, the final conquest of the Roman empire: but the virtues themselves were insensibly subdued by the arts of their vanquished rivals.
The genius of Rome expired with Theodosius; the last of the successors of Augustus and Constantine, who appeared in the field at the head of their armies, and whose authority was universally acknowledged throughout the whole extent of the empire. The memory of his virtues still continued, however, to protect the feeble and inexperienced youth of his two sons. After the death of their father, Arcadius and Honorius were saluted, by the unanimous consent of mankind, as the lawful emperors of the East, and of the West; and the oath of fidelity was eagerly taken by every order of the state: the senators of old and new Rome, the clergy, the magistrates, the soldiers, and the people. Arcadius, who then was about eighteen years of age, was born in Spain, in the humble habitation of a private family. But he received a princely education in the palace of Constantinople; and his inglorious life was spent in that peaceful and splendid seat of royalty, from whence he appeared to reign over the provinces of Thrace, Asia Minor, Syria, and Egypt, from the Lower Danube to the confines of Persia and Ethiopia. His younger brother, Honorius, assumed, in the eleventh year of his age, the nominal government of Italy, Africa, Gaul, Spain, and Britain; and the troops, which guarded the frontiers of his kingdom, were opposed, on one side, to the Goths; and on the other, to the Moors. The great and martial prefecture of Illyricum was divided between the two princes: the defence and possession of the provinces of Noricum,潘nonia, and Dalmatia, still belonged to the Western empire; but the two large dioceses of Dacia and Macedonia, which Gratian had intrusted to the valour of Theodosius, were for ever united to the empire of the East. The boundary in Europe was not very different from the line which now separates the Germans and the Turks; and the respective advantages of territory, riches, population, and military strength, were fairly balanced and compensated, in this final and permanent division of the Roman empire. The hereditary sceptre of the sons of Theodosius appeared to be the gift of nature, and of their father; the generals and ministers had been accustomed to adore the majesty of the royal infants; and the army and people were not accustomed to the exercise of their rights, and of their power, by the dangerous example of a recent election. The gradual discovery of the weakness of Arcadius and Honorius, and the repeated calamities of their reign, were not sufficient to obliterate the deep and early impressions of loyalty. The subjects of Rome, who still revered the persons, or rather the

names, of their sovereigns, beheld, with equal affection and respect, the rebels who opposed, and the ministers who accused, the authority of the throne.

Theodosius had tarnished the glory of his reign by the elevation of Rufinus; an odious favourite, who, in an age of civil and religious faction, had deserved, from every party, the imputation of every crime. The strong impulse of ambition and avarice had urged Rufinus to abandon his native country, an obscure corner of Gaul, to advance his fortune in the capital of the East: the talent of bold and ready eloquence had qualified him to succeed in the lucrative profession of the law; and his success in that profession was a regular step to the most honourable and important employments of the state. He was raised, by just degrees, to the station of master of the offices. In the exercise of his various functions, so essentially connected with the whole system of civil government, he exercised the confidence of a monarch, who soon discovered his diligence and capacity in business, and who long remained ignorant of the pride, the malice, and the possessions of his disposition. The arts of court were concealed beneath the mask of profound disimulation; his passions were restrained solely by the passions of his master; yet, in the hot massacre of Theodolinda, the cruel Rufinus inflamed the fury, without imitating the repentance, of Theodosius. The minister, who viewed with proud indifference the rest of mankind, never forgave the appearance of an injury; and his personal enemies had forfeited, in his opinion, the merit of all public services. Promotus, the master-general of the infantry, had saved the empire from the invasion of the Ostrogoths; but he indignantly supported the pre-eminence of a rival, whose character and profession he despised; and, in the midst of a public council, the impatient soldier was provoked to clasise with a blow the indomitable pride of the favourite. This act of violence was represented to the emperor as an insult, which it was incumbent on his dignity to resent. The disgrace and exile of Promotus were signified by a peremptory order, to repair, without delay, to a military station on the banks of the Danube; and the death of that general (though he was slain in a skirmish with the barbarians) was imputed to the perfidious arts of Rufinus. The sacrifice of an hero gratified his revenge; the haughtiness of the consulship clased its vanity; but his power was still imperfect and precarious, as long as the important posts of prefect of the East, and of prefect of Constantinople, were filled by Tatian, and his son Proculus; whose united authority balanced, for some time, the ambitions and favour of the master of the offices. The two prefects were accused of rapine and corruption in the administration of the laws and

1 A passage of this kind is expression of the profound wisdom:  

2 Promotus, 1. 20. p. 172, 173.

3 Theodosius and the Bithynian bishops: the devotion of the bishops: the death of Arcadius and Honorius: the elevation of Rufinus:  

4 Theodosius, 1. 19. p. 359, 360. 

5 Theodosius, 1. 20. p. 361.
finances. For the trial of these illustrious offenders, the emperor constituted a special commission; several judges were named to share the guilt and reproach of injustice; but the right of pronouncing sentence was reserved to the president alone, and that president was Rufinus himself. The father, stripped of the praefecture of the East, was thrown into a dungeon; but the son, conscious that few ministers can be found innocent, where an enemy is their judge, had secretly escaped; and Rufinus must have been satisfied with the least obnoxious victim, if despotism had not condescended to employ the leastest and most ingenuous artifice.

The prosecution was conducted with an appearance of equity and moderation, which flattered Tatian with the hope of a favourable event: his confidence was fortified by the solemn assurances, and pernicious oath of the president, who presumed to interpose the sacred name of Theodosius himself; and the unhappy father was at last persuaded to recant, by a private letter, the fugitive Proculus. He was instantly seized, examined, condemned, and beheaded, in one of the suburbs of Constantinople, with a precipitation which discredited the clemency of the emperor. Without respecting the misfortunes of a singular senator, the cruel judges of Tatian compelled him to behold the execution of his son; the fatal cord was fastened round his own neck: but in the moment when he expected, and perhaps desired, the relief of a speedy death, he was permitted to converse with the miserable remnant of his old age in poverty and exile. The punishment of the two prefects might, perhaps, be excused by the exceptional parts of their own conduct; the eminence of Rufinus might be palliated by the jealous and unsociable nature of ambition. But he indulged a spirit of revenge, equally repugnant to prudence and to justice, when he degraded their native country of Lycia from the rank of Roman provinces; stigmatized a guiltless people with a mark of ignominy; and declared that the countrymen of Tatian and Proculus should for ever remain incapable of holding any employment of honour or advantage, under the imperial government. The new prefect of the East (for Rufinus instantly succeeded to the vacant honours of his adversary) was not diverted, however, by the most criminal pursuits, from the performance of the religious duties, which in that age were considered as the most essential to salvation. In the suburb of Chalcedon, surround the Osb, he had built a magnificent stately church, consecrated to the apostles St. Peter and St. Paul, and continually sanctified by the prayers and presence of a regular society of monks. A numerous, and almost general, sympathy of the bishops of the Eastern empire was summoned to celebrate, at the same time, the dedication of the church, and the baptism of the founder. This double ceremony was performed with extraordinary pomp; and when Rufinus was purified, in the holy font, from all the sins that he had hitherto committed, a venerable hermit of Egypt rashly proposed himself as the sponsor of a proud and ambitious statement.

The character of Theodosius imposed on his minister the task of hypocrisy, which disguised, and sometimes restrained, the abuse of power; and Rufinus was apprehensive of disturbing the indolent idler of a prince, still capable of exciting the felicity, and the virtue, which had raised him to the throne. But the absence, and, soon afterwards, the death, of the emperor, confirmed the absolute authority of Rufinus over the person and dominions of Arcadius; a feeble youth, whom the imperial prefect considered as his pupil, rather than as his master. Regardless of the public opinion, he indulged his passions without reproof, and without restraint; and his malignant and rapacious spirit rejected every passion that might have contributed to his own glory, or the happiness of the people. His avarice, which seems to have prevailed, in his corrupt mind, over every other sentiment, attracted the wealth of the East, by the various arts of partiality, and general extortion; oppressive taxes, scandalous bribery, immoderate fines, unjust confiscations, forced or fictitious testimonies, by which the tyrant despoiled of their lawful, inheritance the children of strangers, or enemies; and the public sale of justice, as well as of favour, which he instituted in the palace of Constantinople. The ambitious candidate eagerly solicited, at the expense of the fairest part of his patrimony, the honours and emoluments of some provincial government; the lives and fortunes of the unhappy people were surrendered to the most liberal purchasers; and the public discontent was sometimes appeased by the sacrifice of an unpopular criminal, whose punishment was profitable only to the prefect of the East, his accomplice and his judge. If avarice were not the blindest of the human passions, the motives of Rufinus might excite our curiosity; and we might be tempted to enquire, with what view he violated every principle of humanity and justice,
to accumulate those immense treasures, which he could not spend without fully, nor possess without danger. Perhaps he vainly imagined, that he laboured for the interest of an only daughter, on whom he intended to bestow his royal pupil, and the august rank of Empress of the East. Perhaps he deceived himself by the opinion, that his services were the instrument of his ambition. He aspired to place his fortune on a secure and independent basis, which should no longer depend on the caprice of the young emperor; yet he neglected to conciliate the hearts of the soldiery and the people, by the liberal distribution of their riches, which he had acquired with so much toil, and with so much guilt. The extreme parsimony of Rufinus left him only the reproach, and envy, of ill-gotten wealth; his dependents served him without attachment; the universal hatred of mankind was repressed only by the influence of accursed fear. The fate of Lucian proclaimed to the East, that the prefect, whose industry was much saluted in the despatch of ordinary business, was active and indefatigable in the pursuit of revenge. Lucian, the son of the prefect Florentius, the oppressor of Gaul, and the enemy of Julian, had employed a considerable part of his inheritance, the fruit of rapine and corruption, to purchase the friendship of Rufinus, and the high office of count of the East. But the new magistracy imprudently departed from the maxims of the court, and of the times; disgraced his benefactor, by the contrast of a virtuous and temperate administration; and presumed to refuse an act of injustice, which might have tended to the profit of the emperor's uncle. Arcadius was easily persuaded to resent the supposed insult; and the prefect of the East resolved to execute in person the cruel vengeance, which he meditated against this ungrateful delegate of his power. He performed with incessant speed the journey of seven or eight hundred miles, from Constantiopolis to Antioch; entered the capital of Syria at the dead of night, and spread universal consternation among a people ignorant of his design, but not ignorant of his character. The count of the fifteen provinces of the East was dragged, like the vilest malefactor, before the arbitrary tribunal of Rufinus. Notwithstanding the clearest evidence of his integrity, which was not impeached even by the voice of an accuser, Lucian was condemned, almost without a trial, to suffer a cruel and ignominious punishment. The ministers of the tyrant, by the order, and in the presence, of their master, beat him on the neck with leather thongs, armed at the extremities with lead; and when he fainted under the violence of the pain, he was removed in a closed litter, to conceal his dying agonies from the eyes of the ignominious city. No sooner had Rufinus perpetrated this inhuman act, the sole object of his expedition, than he returned, amidst the deep, and silent, curses of a trembling people, from Antioch to Constantinople; and his diligence was accelerated by the hope of accomplishing, without delay, the nuptials of his daughter with the emperor of the East.

But Rufinus soon experienced, that a prudent minister should constantly secure his royal captive by the strong, though invisible, chain of habit; and that the merit, and much more easily the favour, of the absent, are obliterated in a short time from the mind of a weak and capricious sovereign. While the prefect satiated his revenge at Antioch, a secret conspiracy of the favourite eunuchs, directed by the great chamberlain Eutropius, undermined his power in the palace of Constantinople. They discovered that Arcadius was not inclined to love the daughter of Rufinus, who had been chosen, without his consent, for his bride; and they contrived to substitute in her place the fair Eudoxia, a general of the Franks in the service of Rome; and who was educated, since the death of her father, in the family of the sons of Promotus. The young emperor, whose chastity had been strictly guarded by the pious care of his tutor Arsenius,10 eagerly listened to the artful and flattering descriptions of the charm of Eudoxia; he gazed with impatient ardour on her picture, and he understood the necessity of concealing his amorous designs from the knowledge of a minister, who was so deeply interested to oppose the consummation of his happiness. Soon after the return of Rufinus, the approaching ceremony of the royal nuptials was announced to the people of Constantinople, who prepared to celebrate, with false and hollow acclamations, the fortune of his daughter. A splendid train of eunuchs and officers issued, in hymenial pomp, from the gates of the palace; bearing aloft the diadem, the robes, and the inestimable ornaments, of the future empress. The solemn procession passed through the streets of the city, which were adorned with garlands, and filled with spectators; but, when it reached the house of the sons of Promotus, the principal eunuch respectfully entered the mansion, invested the fair Eudoxia with the Imperial robes, and conducted her in triumph to the palace and bed of Arcadius.11 The secrecy, and success, with which this conspiracy against Rufinus had been conducted, imprinted a mark of indelible ridicule on the character of a minister, who had suffered himself to be deceived, in a post where the arts of deceit and dissimulation constitute the most distinguished merit. He considered, with a mixture of indignation and fear, the victory of an aspiring eunuch, who had secretly captivated the favour of his sovereign; and the disgrace of his daughter, whose interest was irreparably connected with his own, wounded the tenderness of his heart.12

---

10 This story of the emperor's temptation is related by Zonaras (v. 1, 9). It seems explained by the incidental omission of Rufinus (I. c. p. 354, 355.), the authentic historian of the period.

11 Zonaras (v. 1, 9) relates the story of the eunuch Romanos, and his final change of fortune. See Zonaras, Hist. de Romanos, c. 6, 7.

12 Arcadius spared from the palace of Constantinople, and exiled in the desert. See Zonaras, Hist. de Romanos, c. 6, 7.
or, at least, the pride, of Rufinus. At the moment when he flattered himself that he should become the father of a line of kings, a foreign maid, who had been educated in the house of his implacable enemies, was introduced into the Imperial bed; and Eudoxia soon displayed a superiority of sense and spirit, to improve the ascendant which her beauty must acquire over the mind of a fond and youthful husband. The emperor would soon be instructed to hate, to fear, and to destroy, the powerful subject, whom he had injured; and the consciousness of guilt deprived Rufinus of every hope, either of safety or comfort, in the retirement of a private life. But he still possessed the most effectual means of defending his dignity, and perhaps of opposing his enemies. The prefect still exercised an uncontrolled authority over the civil and military government of the East: and his treasures, if he could resolve to use them, might be employed to procure proper instruments, for the execution of the blackest designs, that pride, ambition, and revenge, could suggest to a desperate statesman. The character of Rufinus seemed to justify the accusations, that he conspired against the person of his sovereign, to seat himself on the vacant throne; and that he had secretly invited the Huns, and the Goths, to invade the provinces of the empire, and to increase the public confusion. The subtle prefect, whose life had been spent in the intrigues of the palace, opposed, with equal arms, the artful measures of the empress Eudoxia; but the timid soul of Rufinus was astonishment by the hostile approach of a more formidable rival, of the great Stilicho, the general, or rather the master, of the empire of the West. 18

The celestial gift, which Achilles obtained, and Alexander envied, of being a poet worthy to celebrate the actions of heroes, has been enjoyed by Stilicho, in a much higher degree than might have been expected from the declining state of genius, and of art. The muse of Claudian, 17 devoted to his service, was always prepared to stigmatise his adversaries, Rufinus, or Eutropius, with eternal infamy; or to paint, in the most splendid colours, the victories, and virtues, of a powerful benefactor. In the review of a period indifferently supplied with authentic materials, we cannot refuse to illustrate the annals of Honoria, from the invectives, or the panegyrics, of a contemporary writer; but as Claudian appears to have indulged the most ample privilege of a poet and a courtier, some criticism will be requisite to translate the language of fiction, or exaggeration, into the truth and simplicity of historic prose. His silence concerning the family of Stilicho may be admitted as a proof, that his patron was neither able, nor desirous, to boast of a long series of illustrious progenitors; and the slight mention of his father, an officer of barbarian cavalry, in the service of Valens, seems to counterbalance the assertion, that the general, who so long commanded the armies of Rome, was descended from the savage and perfidious race of the Vandals. 19 If Stilicho had not possessed the external advantages of strength and stature, the most flattering mark, in the presence of so many thousand spectators, would have hesitated to affirm, that he surpassed the measures of the demigods of antiquity; and that, whenever he moved, with lofty and powerful strides, through the streets of the capital, the astonished crowd made room for the stranger, who displayed, in a private emulation, the awful majesty of a hero. From his earliest youth he embraced the profession of arms; his prudence and valour were soon distinguished in the field; the honour and advantages of the East admired his superior destruction; and, in each degree of his military promotions, the public judgment always presented and approved the choice of the sovereign. He was named by Theodosius, to ratify a solemn treaty with the monarch of Persia; he supported, during that important embassy, the dignity of the Roman name; and after his return to Constantinople, his merit was rewarded by an intimate and honourable alliance with the Imperial family. Theodosius had been prompted, by a pious motive of fraternal affection, to adopt, for his own, the daughter of his brother Honoria; the beauty and accomplishments of Serena 20 were universally admired by the obsequious court; and Stilicho obtained the preference over a crowd of rivals, who ambitionedly disputed the hand of the princess, and the favour of her adoptive father. 21 The assurance, that the husband of Serena would be faithful to the throne, which he was permitted to approach, engaged the emperor to exalt the fortunes, and to employ the abilities, of the sagacious and intrepid Stilicho. He rose through the successive steps of master of the horse, and count of the domestics, to the supreme rank of master-general of all the cavalry and infantry of the Roman army, or at least of the Western empire; 22 and his enemies confessed, that he indestructibly claimed to barter for gold the rewards of merit, or to defraud the soldiers of the pay and gratifications, which they deserved, or claimed, from the liberality of the state. 23 The valor and conduct which he afterwards displayed, in the defence of Italy, against the armies of Alaric and Radagaisus, may justify the fame of his early achievements; and in an age less attentive to the laws of honour, or of pride, the Roman generals might yield the preeminence of rank,
to the ascendant of superior genius. He instigated, and avenged, the murder of Priscus, his rival and his friend; and the massacre of many thousands of the dying Basarins is represented by the poet, as a bloody sacrifice, which the Roman Achilles offered to the manes of another Patroclus. The virtues and victories of Stilicho deserved the hatred of Rufinus; and the arts of calumny might have been successful, if the tender and vigilant Serena had not protected her husband against his domestic foes, whilst he envanished in the field the enemies of the empire. Stilicho continued to support an unworthy minister, to whose diligence he delegated the government of the palace and of the East; but when he marched against the tyrant Eugenius, he associated his faithful general to the labours and glories of the civil war; and, in the last moments of his life, the dying monarch recommended to Stilicho the care of his sons, and of the republic. The ambition and the abilities of Stilicho were not unequal to the important trust; and he claimed the guardianship of the two empires, during the minority of Arcadius and Honorius. The first measure of his administration, or rather of his reign, displayed to the nations the vigour and activity of a spirit worthy to command. He passed the Alps in the depth of winter; descended the stream of the Rhine, from the fortress of Basili to the marches of Batavia; reviewed the state of the garrisons; repulsed the enterprises of the Germans; and, after establishing along the banks a firm and honourable peace, returned with incredible speed to the palace of Milan. The person and court of Honorius were subject to the master-general of the West; and the armies and provinces of Europe obeyed, without limitation, a regular authority, which was exercised in the name of their young sovereign. Two rivals only remained to dispute the crown, and to provide the vengeance of Stilicho. Within the limits of Africa, Gildo, the Moor, maintained a proud and dangerous independence; and the minister of Constantine aspired to his equal reign over the emperor, and the empire, of the East.

The fall and death. The impartiality which Stilicho of mankind was affected, as the common guardian of the royal brothers, engaged him to regulate the equal division of the arms, the jewels, and the magnificent wardrobe and furniture of the deceased emperor. But the most important object of the inheritance consisted of the numerous legions, cohorts, and squadrums, of Romans, or barbarians, whom the event of the civil war had united under the standard of Theodosius. The various multitudes of Europe and Asia, exasperated by recent animosities, were overawed by the authority of a single man; and the rigid discipline of Stilicho protected the lands of the citizen from the rapine of the licentious soldiery. Anxious, however, and impatient, to relieve Italy from the presence of this formidable host, which could be useful only on the frontiers of the empire, he listened to the just requisition of the minister of Arcadius; declared his intention of re-conducting in person the troops of the East; and dexterously employed the rumour of a Gothic tumult, to conceal his private designs of ambition and revenge. The guilty soul of Rufinus was alarmed by the approach of a warrior and a rival, whom eminence he deserved; he computed, with increasing terror, the inestimable value of his life and greatness; and, as the last hope of safety, he interposed the authority of the emperor Arcadius. Stilicho, who appears to have directed his march along the sea-coast of the Adriatic, was not yet distant from the city of Theosanonica, when he received a peremptory message, to recall the troops of the East, and to declare, that his nearer approach would be considered, by the Byzantine court, as an act of hostility. The prompt and unexpected obedience of the general of the West, convinced the vigil of his loyalty and moderation; and, as he had already engaged the affections of the Eastern troops, he recommended to their zeal the execution of his bloody design, which might be accomplished in his absence, with less danger perhaps, and with less reproach. Stilicho left the command of the troops of the East to Gainas, the Goth, on whose fidelity he firmly relied; with an assurance, at least, that the hardy barbarian would never be diverted from his purpose by any consideration of fear or remorse. The soldiers were easily persuaded to punish the enemy of Stilicho, and of Rome, and such was the general hatred which Rufinus had excited, that the fatal secret, communicated to thousands, was faithfully preserved during the long march from Theosanonica to the gates of Constantinople. As soon as they had resolved his death, they consigneded to flatter his pride; the ambitious project was seduced to believe, that those powerful auxiliaries might be tempted to place the diadem on his head; and the treasures which he distributed, with a tardy and reluctant hand, were accepted by the ignominious multitude, as an insult, rather than as a gift. At the distance of a mile from the capital, in the field of Mars, before the palace of Hildamona, the troops halted; and the emperor, as well as his minister, advanced, according to ancient custom, pursuant, l. d. 35, c. 31, p. 228. Not that the most men were murdered suddenly driven from their substance, but that the emperor, in the veneration of the Roman name, was resolved not to wear a crown of gold, or a crown of silver, but that he might wear a crown of ivory, as the ancients described it, or of gold. Chrysoloras, Byzant. Lib. Rebec. p. 199, &c. 8.

25 Chrysoloras, Byzant. Lib. Rebec. p. 199, &c. The emperor, it is said, had an ivory crown on his head; and the crown was given to him at the age of three years, and when he was six years old, he put on another crown, which was given to him at the age of five years, and at the age of seven years, he put on another crown, and so on, till at the age of thirty-five years, when he was crowned with a crown of gold.
respectfully to salute the power which supported their throne. As Rufinus passed along the ranks, and dismissed, with studied courtesy, his intimate haughtiness, the wings insensibly quivered from the right and left, and enclosed the devoted victiim within the circle of their arms. Before he could reflect on the danger of his situation, Gaianus gave the signal of death; a daring and forward soldier plunged his sword into the bosom of the guilty prefect, and Rufinus fell, groaned, and expired, at the feet of the afflicted emperor. If the aggrandizement of a moment could expiate the crimes of a whole life, or if the outrages inflicted on a heartless corpse could be the object of pity, our humanity might perhaps be affected by the horrid circumstances which accompanied the murder of Rufinus. His mangled body was abandoned to the brutal fury of the populace of either sex, who lashed out in crowds, from every quarter of the city, to trample on the remains of the haughty minister, at whose fixon they had so lately trembled. His right hand was cut off, and carried through the streets of Constantinople, in cruel mockery, to extort contributions for the necessities of our miserable tyrant, whose head was publicly exposed, borne aloft on the point of a long lance. According to the savage maxims of the Greek republics, his innocent family would have shared the punishment of his crimes.

The wife and daughter of Rufinus were indulged for their safety to the influence of religion. Her sanctuary protected them from the raging multitudes of the people; and they were permitted to spend the remainder of their lives in the exercises of Christian devotion, in the peaceful retirement of Jerusalem.

The servile port of Syllicho appeared, with furious joy, this horrid deed, which, in the execution, perhaps, of justice; which, in every law of nature and society, profaned the majesty of the prince, and renewed the dangerous examples of military license. The contempt of the universal order and harmony had satisfied Clodian of the existence of the Deity; but the prosperous impunity of vice appeared to contravene his moral attributes; and the fate of Rufinus was the only event which could dispel the religious doubts of the port. Such an act might vindicate the honour of Providence; but it did not much contribute to the happiness of the people. In less than three months they were informed of the maxim of the new administration, by a singular edict, which established the exclusive right of the treasury over the spoils of Rufinus; and, likewise, under heavy penalties, the presumptuous claims of the subjects of the Eastern empire, who had been injured by his rapacious tyranny.

Even Syllicho did not derive, from the murder of his rival, the fruit which he had proposed; and though he gratified his revenge, his ambition was disappointed. Under the name of a favourite, the weakness of Arcadius required a master, but he naturally preferred the eloquent arts of the cunning Eudoxius, who had obtained his domestic confidence; and the emperor contemplated, with terror and aversion, the stern genius of a foreign warrior. Till they were divided by the jealousy of power, the sword of Gaianus, and the charms of Eudoxius, supported the favour of the great chamberlain of the palace: the perfidious Goth, who was appointed minister-general of the East, betrayed, without scruple, the interest of his benefactor; and the same troops, who had so lately massacred the enemy of Syllicho, were engaged to support, against him, the independence of the throne of Constantine. The favourites of Arcadius fomented a secret and irreconcilable war against a formidable hero, who aspired to govern, and to defend, the two empires of Rome, and the two sons of Theodosius. They incessantly laboured, by dark and treacherous machinations, to deprive him of the esteem of the prince, the respect of the people, and the friendship of the barbarians. The life of Syllicho was repeatedly attempted by the dagger of hired assassins; and a decree was obtained, from the senate of Constantinople, to declare him an enemy of the republic, and to confiscate his ample possessions in the provinces of the East. At a time when the only hope of delaying the ruin of the Roman empire depended on the firm union, and reciprocal aid, of all the nations to whom it had been gradually communicated, the subjects of Arcadius and Honorius were instructed, by their respective masters, to view each other in a foreign, and even hostile, light; to rejoice in their mutual calamities; and to embrace, as their faithful allies, the barbarians, whom they excelled to invade the territories of their countrymen. The natives of Italy affected to despise the servile and effeminates Greeks of Byantium, who presumed to imitate the dress, and to usurp the dignity, of Roman senators: and the Greeks had not yet forgot the sentiments of hatred and contempt, which their polished ancestors had so long entertained for the rude inhabitants of the West.

The distinction of two governments, which soon produced the separation of two nations, will justify my design of suspending the series of the Byzantine history, to prosecute, without interruption, the disgraceful, but memorable, reign of Honorius.

The prudent Syllicho, instead of persisting to force the inclinations of a prince, and people, who rejected his government, wisely abandoned Arcadius to his unworthy favourites; and his reluctance to insulc the two empires in a civil war displayed...
the moderation of a minister, who had so often signified his military spirit and abilities. But if Stilicho had any longer endured the result of Africa, he would have betrayed the security of the capital, and the majesty of the Western emperor, to the capricious insolence of a Moorish rebel. Gildo, 37 the brother of the tyrant Firmus, had preserved and obtained, as the reward of his apparent fidelity, the immense patrimony which was forfeited by treason; long and meritorious service, in the armies of Rome, raised him to the dignity of a military count; the narrow policy of the court of Theodosius had adopted the mischievous expedient, of supporting a legal government by the interest of a powerful family; and the brother of Firmus was invested with the command of Africa. His ambition soon usurped the administration of justice, and of the finances, without account, and without control; and he maintained, during a reign of twelve years, the possession of an office, from which it was impossible to remove him, without the danger of a civil war. During these twelve years, the provinces of Africa groaned under the dominion of a tyrant, who seemed to unite the unfeeling temper of a stranger, with the partial resentments of domestic faction. The forms of law were often superseded by the use of poison; and if the trembling guests, who were invited to the table of Gildo, presumed to express their fears, the insolent suspicion served only to excite his fury, and he hourly summoned the ministers of death. Gildo alternately indulged the passions of avarice and lust, 38 and if his days were terrible to the rich, his nights were not less dreadful to husbands and parents. The fairest of their wives and daughters were prostituted to the embraces of the tyrant; and afterwards abandoned to a ferocious troop of barbarians and assassins, the black, or swarthy, natives of the desert; whom Gildo considered as the only guardians of his throne. In the civil war between Theodosius and Eugenius, the count, or rather the sovereign, of Africa, maintained a haughty and suspicious neutrality; refused to assist either of the contesting parties with troops or vessels, expected the declaration of fortune, and reserved for the conqueror, the vain professions of his allegiance. Such professions would not have satisfied the master of the Roman world; but the death of Theodosius, and the weakness and discard of his sons, confirmed the power of the Moor; who condescended, as a proof of his moderation, to abstain from the use of the diadem, and to supply Rome with the customary tribute, or rather subsidy, of corn. In every division of the empire, the five provinces of Africa were invariably assigned to the West; and Gildo had consented to govern that extensive country in the name of Honorius; but his knowledge of the character and design of Stilicho soon engaged him to address his homage to a more distant and feeble sovereign. The ministers of Arcadius embraced the cause of a perfidious rebel; and the delusive hopes of adding the numerous cities of Africa to the empire of the East, tempted them to assert a claim, which they were incapable of supporting, either by reason, or by arms. 39

When Stilicho had given a firm and decisive answer to the protestations of the Byzantine court, he solemnly accused the tyrant of Africa before the tribunal, which had formerly judged the kings and nations of the earth; and the image of the republic was revived, after a long interval, under the reign of Honorius. The emperor transmitted an accurate and ample detail of the complaints of the provincials, and the crimes of Gildo, to the Roman senate; and the members of that venerable assembly were required to pronounce the condemnation of the rebel. Their unanimous suffrage declared him the enemy of the republic; and the decree of the senate added a sacred and legitimate sanction to the Roman arms. 40 A people, who still remembered, that their ancestors had been the masters of the world, would have applauded, with conscious pride, the representation of ancient freedom; if they had not long since been accustomed to prefer the solid assurance of bread, to the unsubstantial visions of liberty and greatness. The subsistence of Rome depended on the harvests of Africa; and it was evident, that a declaration of war would be the signal of famine. The prefect Symmachus, who presided in the deliberations of the senate, administered the minister of his just apprehension, that as soon as the revengeful Moor should prohibit the exportation of corn, the tranquillity, and perhaps the safety, of the capital, would be threatened by the hungry rage of a turbulent multitude. 41 The prudence of Stilicho conceived, and executed, without delay, the most effectual measure for the relief of the Roman people. A large and seasonable supply of corn, collected in the inland provinces of Gaul, was embarked on the rapid streams of the Rhone, and transported, by an easy navigation, from the Rhone to the Tyber. During the whole term of the African war, the granaries of Rome were continually filled, her dignity was vindicated from the insubordinate depredations, and the minds of an immense people were quieted by the calm confidence of peace and plenty. 42

The cause of Rome, and the conduct of the African war, were intrusted, by Stilicho, to a general, active and ardent to avenge his private injuries on the head of the tyrant. The spirit of discord, which prevailed in the house of Natah, had excited a deadly quartlet between two of his sons.
Gildo and Mascezel.42 The usurper pursued, with implacable rage, the life of his younger brother, whose courage and abilities he feared; and Mascezel, oppressed by superior power, took refuge in the court of Milan: where he soon received the cruel intelligence, that his two innocent and helpless children had been murdered by their inhuman uncle. The affliction of the father was suspended only by the desire of revenge. The vigilant Silicho already prepared to collect the naval and military forces of the Western empire; and he had resolved, if the tyrant should be able to wage an equal and doubtful war, to march against him in person. But as Italy required his presence, and as it might be dangerous to weaken the defence of the frontier, he judged it more advisable, that Mascezel should attempt this arduous adventure, at the head of a chosen body of Gallic veterans, who had lately served under the standard of Eugenius. These troops, who were exerted to convince the world that they could subvert, as well as defend, the throne of an usurper, consisted of the Jovians, the Herculeans, and the Augustan, legions; of the Nervous auxiliaries; of the soldiers, who displayed in their banners the symbol of a lion, and of the troops which were distinguished by the auspicious names of Fortunates, and Invincibles. Yet such was the smallness of their establishments, or the difficulty of recruiting, that these seven bands,44 of high dignity and reputation in the service of Rome, amounted to no more than five thousand effective men. The fleet of galleys and transports sailed in tempestuous weather from the port of Plata, in Tuscany, and steered their course to the little island of Capraza; which had borrowed that name from the wild goats, its original inhabitants, whose place was now occupied by a new colony of a strange and savage appearance.45 The whole column (such an ingenious traveller of those times is filled, or rather defined, by men, who fly from the light. They call themselves Muses, or solitaries, because they choose to live alone, without any witnesses of their actions. They fear the gifts of fortune, from the apprehension of losing them; and, lost they should be miserable, they embrace a life of voluntary wretchedness. How absurd is their choice! how perverse their understanding! to dread the evils, without being able to support the blessings, of the human condition. Either this melancholy madness is the effect of disease, or else the consciousness of guilt urges these unhappy men to exercise on their own souls the tortures which are inflicted on sensitive slaves by the hand of justice.46 Such was the contempt of a profane magistrate for the monks of Capraza, who were revered, by the pious Mascezel, as the chosen servants of God.47 Some of them were persuaded by his entreaties, to embark on board the fleet; and it is observed, to the praise of the Roman general, that his days and nights were employed in prayer, fasting, and the occupation of singing psalms. The devout leader, who, with such a reinforcement, appeared confident of victory, avoided the dangerous rocks of Corsica, coasted along the eastern side of Sardinia, and secured his ships against the violence of the south wind, by casting anchor in the safe and spacious harbour of Cagliari, at the distance of one hundred and forty miles from the African shores.48

Gildo was prepared to resist the invasion with all the forces of Africa. By the liberality of his gifts and promises, he endeavoured to secure the doubtful allegiance of the Roman soldiers, while he attracted to his standard the distant tribes of Gutius and Ethiopia. He proudly reviewed an army of seventy thousand men, and hailed, with the rash presumption which is the forerunner of disgrace, that his numerous cavalry would trample under their horses' feet the troops of Mascezel, and involve, in a cloud of fiendish smoke, the natives of the cold regions of Gaul and Germany.49 But the Moon, who commanded the legions of Honoria, was too well acquainted with the manners of his countrymen, to entertain any serious apprehension of a naked and disorderly host of barbarians; whose left arm, instead of a shield, was protected only by a mantle; who were totally disarmed as soon as they had dared their javelin from their right hand; and whose horses had never been taught to bear the control, or to obey the guidance, of the bridle. He fixed his camp of five thousand veterans in the face of a superior enemy, and, after the delay of three days, gave the signal of a general engagement.50 As Mascezel advanced before the front with fair offers of peace and pardon, he encountered one of the foremost standard-bearers of the Africans, and, on his refusal to yield, struck him on the arm with his sword. The arm, and the standard, sunk under the weight of the blow; and the imaginary art of submission was hastily repeated by all the standards of the line. At this signal the disdained cohorts proclaimed the name of their lawful sovereign; the barbarians, astonished by the defection of their Roman allies, dispersed, according to their custom, in tumultuary flight; and Mascezel obtained the honors of an easy, and almost bloodless, victory.51

42 He was of a younger age. See the Life of Honoria (L. P. 212.)
43 See Livy, lib. 45. p. 85. Condom, ibid. 48. 51. Condom, who mentions the court of Milan, contains the impression, more than it is true. Bosio, lib. 3. p. 109. The enmity of the emperor was not only towards Mascezel, or Silicho, but towards all his adherents; and he considered the capture of his children as a signal for revenge.
44 The consuls list (see the annals of Justin, book iv.) of these legions was as follows: Jovians, 6; Herculeans, 7; Augustans, 7; Nervous, 2; Fortunates, 7; Invincibles, 7; and Silicho himself, 7000. See the annals of Justin, book iv.
45 He was not an obsequious courtier, but, as a man of strong and vigorous mind, he carried on his administration with much decision. See the Life of Odaenathus, book iv.
46 On the persecution of the Christians see the Life of Mascezel, book ii.
47 On the conversion of the monks see the Life of Silicho, book iii.
48 The invasion of Africa appears to consist of a real fact, when we consider the distance of the African vessels from the African coast.
49 On the invasion of Africa see the Life of Danilo, book ii.
50 On the battle of Capraza see the Life of Mascezel, book ii.
The tyrant escaped from the field of battle to the sea-shore; and threw himself into a small vessel, with the hope of reaching in safety some friendly port of the empire of the East; but the obstinacy of the wind drove him back into the harbour of Tarraca, which had acknowledged, with the rest of the province, the dominion of Honorius, and the authority of his lieutenant. The inhabitants, as a proof of their repentance and loyalty, seized and confined the person of Gildo in a dungeon; and his own despair saved him from the intolerable torture of supporting the presence of an injured and victorious brother. The captives, and the spoil of Africa, were laid at the feet of the emperor; but Sisilicho, whose moderation appeared more conspicuous, and more sincere, in the midst of prosperity, still affected to consult the laws of the republic; and referred to the senate and people of Rome the judgment of the most illustrious criminals. Their trial was public and solemn; but the judges, in the exercise of this absolute and precarious jurisdiction, were impatient to punish the African magistrates, who had intercepted the subsistence of the Roman people. The rich and guilty province was oppressed by the Imperial ministers, who had a visible interest to multiply the number of the accomplices of Gildo; and if an edict of Honorius seems to check the malicious industry of informers, a subsequent edict, at the distance of ten years, continues and renews the prosecution of the offences which had been committed in the time of the general rebellion. The adherents of the tyrant, who escaped the first fury of the soldiers, and the judges, might derive some consolation from the tragic fate of his brother, who could never obtain his pardon for the extraordinary services which he had performed. After he had finished an impious war in the space of a single winter, Masecel was received at the court of Milan with loud applause, affected gratitude, and secret jealousy; and his death, which, perhaps, was the effect of accident, has been considered as the crimes of Sisilicho. In the passage of a bridge, the Moorish prince, who accompanied the master-general of the West, was suddenly thrown from his horse into the river; the officials haste of the attendants was restrained by a cruel and perfidious smile, which they observed on the countenance of Sisilicho; and while they delayed the necessary assistance, the unfortunate Masecel was irrecoverably drowned.

The joy of the African triumph was happily connected with the nuptials of the emperor Honorius, and of his cousin Maria, the daughter of Sisilicho; and this equal and honorable alliance seemed to invest the powerful minister with the authority of a parent over his submissive pupil. The nuptial of Claudian was not silent: on this propitious day, he sung, in various and lively strains, the happiness of the royal pair; and the glory of the hero, who confirmed their union, and supported their throne. The ancient fables of Greece, which had almost ceased to be the object of religious faith, were saved from oblivion by the genius of poetry. The picture of the Cyprian grove, the seat of harmony and love; the triumphant progress of Venus over her native seas, and the mild influence which her presence diffused in the palace of Milan, express to every age the natural sentiments of the heart, in the just and pleasing language of allegorical fiction. But the amorous imperator, which Claudian attributes to the young prince, must excite the smiles of the court; and his beautiful spouse (if she deserved the praise of beauty) had not much to fear or to hope from the passions of her lover. Honorius was only in the fourteenth year of his age; Serena, the mother of his bride, deferred, by art or permission, the consummation of the royal nuptials; Maria died a virgin, after she had been ten years a wife; and the chastity of the emperor was secured by the coldness, or, perhaps, the dulness, of his constitution. His subjects, who attentively studied the character of their young sovereign, discovered that Honorius was without passions, and consequently without talents; and that his foibles and languid disposition was alike incapable of discharging the duties of his rank, or of enjoying the pleasures of his age. In his early youth he made some progress in the exercises of riding and drawing the bow; but he soon relinquished these fatigue occupations, and the amusement of feeding poultry became the serious and daily care of the monarch of the West, who resigned the reins of empire to the firm and skilful hand of his guardian Sisilicho. The experience of history will pacify the suspicion, that a prince who was born in the purple, received a worse education than the meanest peasant of his dominions; and that the ambitious minister suffered him to attain the age of manhood, without attempting to excite his courage, or to enlighten his understanding. The predecessors of Honorius were accustomed...
to animate, by their example, or at least by their presence, the valour of the legions; and the dates of their laws attest the perpetual activity of their motions through the provinces of the Roman world. But the son of Theodosius passed the number of his life, a captive in his palace, a stranger in his country, and the patient, almost the indifferent, spectator of the ruin of the Western empire, which was repeatedly assailed, and finally overthrown, by the arms of the barbarians. In the eventful history of a reign of twenty-eight years, it will seldom be necessary to mention the name of the emperor Honorius.

CHAP. XXX.
Result of the Goths. — They plunder Greece. — Two great Invasions of Italy by Alaric and Radagaisus. — They are repulsed by Stilicho. — The Germans overran Gaul. — Unravelling of Constantine in the West. — Dignity and Death of Stilicho.

If the subjects of Rome could be ignorant of their obligations to the great Theodosius, they were too soon convinced, how painfully the spirit and abilities of their deceased emperor had supported the frail and menacing existence of the republic. He died in the month of January; and before the end of the winter of the same year, the Gothic nation was in arms. The barbarian auxiliaries erected their independent standard; and boldly avowed the hostile designs which they had long cherished in their ferocious minds. Their counsels, who had been condemned, by the conditions of the last treaty, to a life of tranquillity and labour, deserted their farms at the first sound of the trumpet; and eagerly resumed the weapons which they had reluctantly laid down. The barriers of the Danube were thrown open; the savage warriors of Scythia issued from their forests; and the uncommon severity of the winter allowed the pest to remark, that they rolled "their ponderous wagens over the broad and icy back of the indignant river." The unhappy natives of the province in the south of the Danube submitted to the calamities, which, in the course of twenty years, were almost grown familiar, to their imagination; and the various troops of barbarians, who glistened in the Gothic name, were irregularly spread from the woody shores of Dalmatia, to the walls of Constantinople. The interruption, or at least the diminution, of the subsidy, which the Goths had received from the prudent liberality of Theodosius, was the specious pretence of their revolt: the affl. ent was exhilarated by their contempt for the unwarlike sons of Theodosius; and their resentment was inflamed by the weakness, or treachery, of the minister of Arcadius. The frequent visits of Rufinus to the camp of the barbarians, whose arms and apparel he affected to imitate, were considered as a sufficient evidence of his guilty correspondence: and the public enemy, from a motive either of gratitude or of policy, was attentive, amidst the general devastation, to spare the private estates of the unhappy prefect. The Goths, instead of being impelled by the blind and headstrong passions of their chiefs, were now directed by the bold and artful genius of Alaric. That renowned leader was descended from the noble race of the Balts, which yielded only to the royal dignity of the Amali: he had solicited the command of the Roman armies; and the Imperial court provoked him to demonstrate the folly of their refusal, and the importance of their loss. Whatever hopes might be entertained of the conquest of Constantineople, the judicious general soon abandoned an impracticable enterprise. In the midst of a divided court, and a discontented people, the emperor Arcadius was terrified by the aspect of the Gothic arms: but the want of wisdom and valour was supplied by the strength of the city, and the fortifications, both of the sea and land, might securely brave the impotent and random darts of the barbarians. Alaric disliked to trample any longer on the prostrate and ruined countries of Thrace and Dacia; and he resolved to seek a plentiful harvest of fame and riches in a province which had hitherto escaped the ravages of war.

The character of the civil and military officers, on whom Rufinus had devolved the government of Greece, confirmed the public suspicion, that he had betrayed the ancient seat of freedom and learning to the Gothic invaders. The proconsul Ambuscus was the unworthy son of a respectable father; and Gerontius, who commanded the provincial troops, was much better qualified to execute the oppressive orders of a tyrant, than to defend, with courage and ability, a country most remarkably fortified by the hand of nature. Alaric had traversed, without resistance, the plains of Macedonia and Thrace, as far as the foot of Mount Oeta, a steep and woody range of hills, almost impervious to his cavalry. They stretched from sea to sea; to the edge of the sea-shore, and left, between the precipice and the Malian Gulf, an interval of three hundred feet, which, in some places, was contracted to a road capable of admitting only a single carriage. In this narrow pass of Thermopylae, where Leonidas and the three hundred Spartans had gloriously devoted their lives, the Goths might have been stopped, or destroyed, by a skilful general; and perhaps
the view of that sacred spot might have kindled some sparks of military ardour in the breasts of the degenerate Greeks. The troops which had been posted to defend the straits of Thermopylae, retired, as they were directed, without attempting to disturb the secure and rapid passage of Alaric; and the fertile fields of Phocis, and Boeotia, were instantly covered by a deluge of barbarians; who massacred the males of an age to bear arms, and drove away the beautiful females, with the spoil, and cattle, of the flaying villages. The travellers, who visited Greece several years afterwards, could easily discover the deep and bloody traces of the march of the Goths; and Thesius was less indebted for her preservation to the strength of her seven gates, than to the eager haste of Alaric, who advanced to occupy the city of Athens, and the important harbour of the Piraeus. The same impatience urged him to prevent the delay and danger of a siege, by the offer of a capitulation; and as soon as the Athenians heard the voice of the Gothic herald, they were easily persuaded to deliver the greatest part of their wealth, as the ransom of the city of Minerva, and its inhabitants. The treaty was ratified by solemn oaths, and observed with mutual fidelity. The Gothic prince, with a small and select train, was admitted within the walls; he indulged himself in the refreshment of the bath, accepted a splendid banquet which was provided by the magistrate, and affected to show that he was not ignorant of the manners of civilized nations. But the whole territory of Attica, from the promontory of Sunium to the town of Megara, was blasted by his halves presence; and, if we may use the comparison of a contemporary philosopher, Athens itself resembled the bleeding and empty skin of a slaughtered victim. The distance between Megara and Corinth could not much exceed forty miles; but the bad road, an expressive name, which it still bears among the Greeks, was, or might easily have been made, impassable for the march of an enemy. The thick and gloomy woods of Mount Cithæron covered the inland country; the Scironian rocks approached the water's edge, and hung over the narrow and winding path, which was confined above six miles along the sea-shore. The passage of those rocks, so infamous in every age, was terminated by the isthmus of Corinth; and a small body of firm and intrepid soldiers might have successfully defended a temporary intrenchment of five or six miles from the Iouian to the Ægean Sea. The confidence of the cities of Peloponnesus in their natural rampart, had tempted them to neglect the care of their antique walls; and the atrocity of the Roman governors had exhausted and betrayed the unhappy province. Corinth, Argos, Sparta, yielded without resistance to the arms of the Goths; and the most fortunate of the inhabitants were saved, by death, from beholding the slavery of their families, and the confiscation of their cities. The vases and statues were distributed among the barbarians, with more regard to the value of the materials, than to the elegance of the workmanship; the female captives submitted to the laws of war; the enjoyment of beauty was the reward of valour; and the Greeks could not reasonably complain of an abuse, which was justified by the example of the heroic times. The descendants of that extraordinary people, who had considered valour and discipline as the walls of Sparta, no longer remembered the generous reply of their ancestors to an invader more formidable than Alaric. If they ask a god, thou wilt not hurt those who have never injured thee; if thou art a man, advance: and thou wilt find men equal to thyself. From Thermopylae to Sparta, the leader of the Goths pursued his victorious march without encountering any mortal antagonism; but one of the advocates of expiring Paganism has confidently asserted, that the walls of Athens were guarded by the goddess Minerva, with her formidable Agris, and by the angry phantom of Achilles; and that the conqueror was dismayed by the presence of the hostile deities of Greece. In an age of miracles, it would perhaps be unjust to dispute the claim of the historian Zosimus to the common benefit; yet it cannot be dissembled, that the mind of Alaric was ill prepared to receive, either in sleeping or waking visions, the impressions of Greek superstition. The songs of Homer, and the fame of Achilles, had profoundly rooted in the hearts of the illiterate barbarians, and the Christian faith, which he had discerned and embraced, taught him to despise the imaginary deities of Rome and Athens. The invasion of the Goths, instead of vindicating the honour, contributed, at least accidentally, to extinguish the last remains of Paganism; and the mysteries of Ceres, which had sustained eighteen hundred years, did not survive the destruction of Elenus, and the calumnies of Greece.
equipped in the ports of Italy; and the troops, after a short and prosperous navigation over the Ionian Sea, were safely disembarked on the Isthmus, near the ruins of Corinth. The woody and mountainous country of Arcadia, the fabulously resounding area of Pan and the Dryads, became the scene of a long and doubtful conflict between two generals not unworthy of each other. The skill and perseverance of the Roman at length prevailed; and the Goths, after sustaining a considerable loss from disease and desertion, gradually retreated to the lofty mountain of Phocis, near the sources of the Peneius, and on the fringes of Elis; a sacred country, which had formerly been exempted from the calamities of war. The camp of the barbarians was immediately besieged: the waters of the river were diverted into another channel; and while they laboured under the intolerable pressure of thirst and hunger, a strong line of circumvallation was formed to prevent their escape. After these precautions, Silicho, too confident of victory, retired to enjoy his triumph, in the theatrical games, and lascivious dances, of the Greeks; his soldiers, deserting their standards, spread themselves over the country of their allies, which they stripped of all that had been saved from the rapacious hands of the enemy. Alaric appears to have seized the favourable moment to execute one of those daring enterprises, in which the abilities of a general are displayed with more general lustre, than in the tumult of a day of battle. To extricate himself from the presence of Peloponnese, it was necessary that he should pierce the intrenchments which surrounded his camp; that he should perform a difficult and dangerous march of thirty miles, as far as the Gulf of Corinth; and that he should transport his troops, his captives, and his spoil, over an arm of the sea, which, in the narrow interval between Rhium and the opposite shore, is at least half a mile in breadth. The operations of Alaric must have been secret, prudent, and rapid; since the Roman general was confounded by the intelligence, that the Goths, who had eluded his efforts, were in full possession of the important province of Epirus. This unfortunate delay allowed Alaric sufficient time to conclude the treaty, which he secretly negotiated, with the ministers of Constantinople. The apprehension of a civil war compelled Silicho to retire, at the hasty mandate of his rivals, from the dominions of Arcadius; and he respected, in the enmity of Rome, the honourable character of the ally and servant of the emperor of the East.

A Greek philosopher, who admired Constantinople soon after the death of Theodosius, published his liberal opinions concerning the duties of kings, and the state of the Roman republic. Symeonus observes, and deplorates, the fatal abuse, which the imprudent bounty of the late emperor had introduced into the military service. The citizens, and subjects, had purchased an exemption from the indissoluble duty of defending their country; which was supported by the arms of barbarian mercenaries. The fugitives of Scythia were permitted to disgrace the illustrious dignities of the empire; their ferocious youth, who disregarded the military restraint of laws, were more anxious to acquire the riches, than to imitate the arts, of a people, the object of their resentment and hatred; and the power of the Goths was the stone of Tantalus, perpetually suspended over the peace and safety of the devoted state. The measures which Symeonus recommends, are the dictates of a bold and generous patriot. He exhorts the emperors to revive the courage of his subjects, by the example of manly virtue; to banish luxury from the court, and from the camp; to substitute, in the place of the barbarian mercenaries, an army of men interested in the defence of their laws and of their property; to force, in such a moment of public danger, the mechanic from his shop, and the philosopher from his school; to raise the indolent citizen from his dream of pleasure, and to arm, for the protection of agriculture, the hands of the laborious husbandman. At the head of such troops, who might deserve the name, and who would display the spirit of Romans, he animates the sons of Theodosius to encounter a race of barbarians, who were destitute of any real courage; and never to lay down his arms, till he had chased them far away into the solitudes of Scythia; or had reduced them to the state of ignominious servitude, which the Lacedaemonians formerly imposed on the captive Helots.

The court of Arcadius indulged the zeal, applauded the eloquence, and neglected the advice, of Symeonus. Perhaps the philosopher, who addressed the emperor of the East in the language of reason and virtue, which he might have been used to a Spartan king, had not condescended to form a practicable scheme, consistent with the temper, and circumstances, of a degenerate age. Perhaps the pride of the ministers, whose business was seldom interrupted by reflection, might reject, as wild and visionary, every proposal, which exceeded the treasures of their capacity, and originated from the forms and precedents of office. While the oration of Symeonus, and the downfall of the barbarians, were the topics of popular conversation, an edict was published at Constantinople, which declared the promotion of Alaric to the rank of master-general of the Eastern Illyricum. The Roman provincials, and the allies, who had respected the faith of treaties, were justly indignant, that the ruin of Greece and Epirus should be so liberally rewarded.

It had been joined with the Allies to advance the imperial cause.
The Gothic emperor was received as a lawful magistrate, in the cities which he had so lately besieged. The fathers, whose sons he had massacred, the husbands, whose wives he had violated, were subject to his authority; and the success of his rebellion encouraged the ambition of every leader of the foreign mercenaries. The use to which Alaric applied his new command, distinguishes the firm and judicious character of his policy. He issued his orders to the four magistrates and manufactories of offensive and defensive arms, Margus, Ratia, Naissus, and Thessalonica, to provide his troops with an extraordinary supply of shields, helmets, swords, and spears; the unhappy provincials were compelled to forge the instruments of their own destruction; and the barbarians removed the only defect which had hitherto disappointed the efforts of their courage. The birth of Alaric, the glory of his past exploits, and the confidence in his future designs, insensibly united the body of the nation under his victorious standard; and, with the united consent of the barbarian and Roman masters, the coast of Illyricum was abandoned, according to ancient custom, on a shield, and solemnly proclaimed the king of the Visigoths.

With this double power, seated on the verge of the two empires, he alternately sold his deceitful promises to the courts of Arcadius and Honorius; till he declared and executed his resolution of invading the dominions of the West. The provinces of Europe which belonged to the Eastern emperor, were already exhausted; those of Aix were inaccessible; and the strength of Constantinople had resisted his attack. But he was tempted by the fame, the beauty, the wealth of Italy, which he had twice visited; and he secretly aspired to plant the Gothic standard on the walls of Rome, and to enrich his army with the accumulated spoils of three hundred triumphs.

The scarcity of facts, and the uncertainty of dates, oppose our attempts to describe the circumstances of the first invasion of Italy by the arms of Alaric. His marches, perhaps from Thessalonica, through the warlike and hospitable country of Pannonia, as far as the foot of the Julian Alps; his passage of those mountains, which were strongly guarded by troops and intrenchments; the siege of Aquileia, and the conquest of the provinces of Istria and Venetia, appear to have occupied a considerable time. Unless his operations were extremely cautious and slow, the length of the interval would suggest a probable suspicion, that the Gothic king retreated towards the banks of the Danube; and reinforced his army with fresh swarms of barbarians, before he again attempted to penetrate into the heart of Italy. Since the public and important events escape the diligence of the historian, he may assure himself with contemplating, for a moment, the influence of the arms of Alaric on the fortunes of two obscure individuals, a prebendary of Aquileia, and an husbandman of Verona. The learned Rhuthus, who was summoned by his enemies to appear before a Roman synod, wisely preferred the dangers of a besieged city; and the husbandman, who fearlessly shook the walls of Aquileia, might save him from the cruel sentence of a perfidious bishop, who, at the request of the same bishop, was severely whipped, and condemned to perpetual exile in a solitary islet. The old monk, who had preserved his simple and innocent life in the neighbourhood of Verona, was a stranger to the quarrels both of kings and of bishops; his pleasures, his desires, his knowledge, were confined within the little circle of his paternal farm; and a staff supported his aged steps, on the same ground where he had spent, in his infancy. Yet even this humble and rustic felicity (which Claudian describes with so much truth and feeling) was still exposed to the undistinguishing rage of war. His tree, his old encircling trunk, must blaze in the conflagration of the whole country; a detachment of Gothic cavalry might sweep away his cottage and his family; and the power of Alaric could destroy this happiness, which he was not able either to taste, or to bestow. "Fane," says the poet, "enriching with terror her gloomy wings, proclaimed the march of the barbarian army, and filled Italy with consternation." The apprehensions of each individual were increased in just proportion to the measure of his fortune; and the most timid, who had already embarked their valuable effects, meditated their escape to the island of Sicily, or the African coast. The public distress was aggravated by the fires and rapine of superstition. Every hour produced some horrid tale of strange and portentous accidents; the
Paganus deplored the neglect of omens, and the interruption of sacrifices; but the Christians still derived some comfort from the powerful intercession of the saints and martyrs. The emperor Honorius was distinguished, above his subjects, by the pre-eminence of fear, as well as of rank. The pride and luxury in which he was educated, had not allowed him to suspect, that there existed on the earth any power presumptuous enough to invade the repose of the successor of Augustus. The arts of flattery concealed the impending danger, till Alaric approached the palace of Milan. But when the sound of war had awakened the young emperor, instead of flying to arms with the spirit, or even the rashness, of his age, he eagerly listened to those timid counsellors, who proposed to convey his sacred person, and his faithful attendants, to some secure and distant station in the provinces of Gaul. Stilicho alone had courage and authority to resist this disgraceful measure, which would have abandoned Rome and Italy to the barbarians; but as the troops of the palace had been lately detached to the Illyrian frontier, and as the resources of new forces was slow and precarious, the general of the West could only promise, that, if the court of Milan would maintain their ground during his absence, he would soon return with an army equal to the encounter of the Gothic king. Without losing a moment (while each moment was so important to the public safety), Stilicho hastily embarked on the Latin lake, ascended the mountains of ice and snow, amidst the severity of an Alpine winter, and suddenly appeared, by his unexpected presence, the mysterious, who had disturbed the tranquillity of Britannia. The barbarians, perhaps some tribes of the Alamanii, respected the firmness of a chief, who still assumed the language of command; and the choice which he condescended to make, of a select number of their bravest youth, was considered as a mark of his esteem and favour. The cohorts, who were delivered from the neighbouring foe, diligently repaired to the Imperial standard; and Stilicho issued his orders to the remote troops of the West, to advance, by rapid marches, to the defence of Honorius and of Italy. The fortresses of the Rhine were abandoned; and the safety of Gaul was protected only by the faith of the Germans, and the ancient terror of the Roman name. Even the legion, which had been stationed to guard the wall of Brittan in the Caledonian of the north, was hastily recalled; and a nimble- footed body of the cavalry of the Alani was pressed to engage in the service of the emperor, who anxiously expected the return of his general. The prudence and vigour of Stilicho were conspicuous on this occasion, which revealed, at the same time, the weakness of the falling empire. The legions of Rome, which had long since languished in the gradual decay of discipline and courage, were exterminated by the Gothic and civil wars; and it was found impossible, without exhausting and exposing the provinciers, to assemble an army for the defence of Italy.

When Stilicho seemed to abandon his sovereign in the unguarded palace of Milan, he had probably calculated the term of his absence, the distance of the enemy, and the obstacles that might retard their march. He principally depended on the rivers of Italy, the Adige, the Mincius, the Oglio, and the Adda; which, in the winter or spring, by the fall of rains, or by the melting of the snows, are commonly swelled into broad and impetuous torrents. But the masses happened to be remarkably dry; and the Gothic could traverse, without impediments, the wide and stony beds, whose channels are faintly marked by the course of shallow streams. The bridge and passage of the Adda were secured by a strong detachment of the Gothic army; and an Alaric approached the walls, or rather the suburbs, of Milan, he enjoyed the proud satisfaction of seeing the emperor of the Romans fly before him. Honorius, accompanied by a feebile train of statesmen and eunuchs, hastily retreated towards the Alps, with a design of securing his person in the city of Arles, which had often been the royal residence of his predecessors. But Honorius had scarcely passed the Po, before he was overtaken by the speed of the Gothic cavalry; since the urgency of the danger compelled him to seek a temporary shelter within the fortification of Asta, a town of Liguria or Piemont, situate on the banks of the Tanarus. The siege of an obscure place, which contained so rich a prize, and seemed incalculable, of a long resistance, was instantly formed, and indefatigably pressed, by the king of the Goths; and the bold declaration, which the emperor might afterwards make, that his breast had never been susceptible of fear, did not probably obtain much credit, even in his own court. In the last, and almost hopeless extremity, after the barbarians had already proposed the indignity of a capitulation, the imperial captive was suddenly relieved by the fumes, the approach, and at length the presence, of the hero whom he had so long expected. At
the head of a chaste and intrepid vanguard, Stilicho swam the stream of the Ailus, to gain the time which he must have lost in the attack of the bridge; the passage of the Po was an enterprise of much less hazard and difficulty; and the successful action, in which he cut his way through the Gothic camp under the walls of Aetna, revived the hopes, and vindicated the honour, of Rome. Instead of grasping the fruit of his victory, the barbarians was gradually invested, on every side, by the troops of the West, who successively issued through all the passes of the Alps; his quarters were straitened; his convoys were intercepted; and the vigilance of the Romans prepared to form a chain of fortifications, and to besiege the lines of the besiegers. A military council was assembled of the long-haired chiefs of the Gothic nation; of seven warriors, whose bodies were wrapped in furs, and whose stern countenances were marked with lacerated wounds. They weighed the glory of persisting in their attempt, against the advantage of securing their plunder; and they recommended the prudent measure of a seasonal retreat. In this important debate, Alaric displayed the spirit of the conqueror of Rome; and after he had reminded his counsels of their achievements and of their designs, he concluded his animating speech, by the solemn and positive assurance, that he was resolved to find in Italy, either a kingdom, or a grave.

The loose discipline of the barbarians always exposed them to the danger of a surprise; but, instead of choosing the absolute hours of riot and insensibility, Stilicho resolved to attack the Christian Goths, whilst they were devoutly employed in celebrating the festival of Easter. The execution of the stratagem, or, as it was termed by the clergy, of the sacrilege, was intrusted to Saull, a barbarian and a Pagan, who had served, however, with distinguished reputation among the veteran generals of Theodosius. The camp of the Goths, which Alaric had pitched in the neighbourhood of Pollentia, was thrown into confusion by the sudden and impetuous charge of the Imperial cavalry; but, in a few moments, the undaunted genius of their leader gave them an order, and a field, of battle; and, as soon as they had recovered from their astonishment, the pious confidence, that the God of the Christians would assert their cause, added new strength to their native valour. In this engagement, which was long maintained with equal courage and success, the chief of the Alani, whose diminutive and savage form concealed a magnanimous soul, approved his suspected loyalty, by the zeal with which he fought, and fell, in the service of the republic; and the fame of this gallant barbarian has been imperfectly preserved in the verses of Claudian, since the poet, who celebrates his virtues, has omitted the mention of his name. His death was followed by the flight and dismay of the squadrons which he commanded; and the defeat of the wing of cavalry might have decided the victory of Alaric, if Stilicho had not immediately led the Roman and barbarian infantry to the attack. The skill of the general, and the bravery of the soldiers, surrounded every obstacle. In the evening of the bloody day, the Goths retreated from the field of battle; the interchanges of their camp were forced, and the scene of rapine and slaughter made an accountment for the calamities which they had inflicted on the subjects of the empire. The magnificent spoils of Corinthus and Argos enriched the veterans of the West; the captive wife of Alaric, who had impatiently claimed his promise of Roman jewels and patrician handmaidens, was reduced to implore the mercy of the insulting foe; and many thousand prisoners, released from the Gothic chains, dispersed through the provinces of Italy the praises of their heroic deliverer. The triumph of Stilicho was compared by the poet, and perhaps by the public, to that of Marcus; who, in the same part of Italy, had encountered and destroyed another array of northern barbarians. The huge bones, and the empty humerus, of the Cimini and of the Goths, would easily be confounded by succeeding generations; and posthuma might erect a common trophy to the memory of the two most illustrious generals, who had vanquished, on the same memorable ground, the two most formidable enemies of Rome.

The eloquence of Claudian has celebrated, with lavish applause, the victory of Pollentia, one of the most glorious days in the life of his patron; but his relentless and partial muse bestows more genuine praise on the character of the Gothic king. His name is, indeed, blended with the reproachful epithets of piratical and robber, to which the conquerors of every age are so justly entitled; but the poet of Stilicho is compelled to acknowledge, that Alaric possessed the invincible temper of mind, which rises superior to every misfortune, and derives new resources from adversity. After the total defeat of his infantry, he escaped, or rather withdrew, from the field of battle, with the greatest part of his cavalry entire and unbroken. Without waiting a moment to lament the irreparable loss of so many brave companions, he left his victorious

Counterpointed: Caesar and Justinian. In the War. Sec. 82, which a decided victory.

Basilian and ascetic of Alaric.

Claudian's reputation is strong and elegant; but the history of the Christian and Gothic arts must be understood like the crucifixion, that to believe, is to understand. The Christian historians of the next age are due to the most conspicuous writers, who are chased by the Christian historians. The Goths and Vandals are also allies from each other; and the history of the Gothic is the history of the Vandals. The history of the Vandals is the history of the Ostrogoths. The history of the Ostrogoths is the history of the Byzantines. The history of the Byzantines is the history of the Eastern Empire. The history of the Eastern Empire is the history of the Western Empire. The history of the Western Empire is the history of the Gothic race.
enemy to bind in chains the captive images of a Gothic king; and boldly resolved to break through the ungirdled passes of the Apennine, to spread desolation over the fruitful face of Tuscany, and to conquer or die before the gates of Rome. The capital was saved by the active and incessant diligence of stilicho: but he respected the despair of his enemy; and, instead of committing the fate of the republic to the chance of another battle, he proposed to purchase the absence of the barbarians. The spirit of Alaric would have rejected such terms, the permission of a retreat, and the offer of a pension, with contempt and indignation; but he exercised a limited and precarious authority over the independent chieftains, who had raised him, for their service, above the rank of his equals; they were still less disposed to follow an unsuccessful general, and many of them were tempted to consult their interest by a private negotiation with the minister of Honorius. The king submitted to the voice of his people, ratified the treaty with the empire of the West, and repassed the Po, with the remains of the flourishing army which he had led into Italy. A considerable part of the Roman forces still continued to attend his motions; and stilicho, who maintained a secret correspondence with some of the barbarian chiefs, was punctually apprised of the designs that were formed in the camp and counsell of Alaric. The king of the Goths, ambitious to signalise his retreat by some splendid achievement, had resolved to occupy the important city of Verona, which commands the principal passage of the Rhine Alps, and, directing his march through the territories of those German tribes, whose alliance would restore his exhausted strength, to invade, on the side of the Rhine, the wealthy and unsuspecting provinces of Gaul. Ignorant of the treason, which had already betrayed his hold and judicious enterprise, he advanced towards the passes of the mountains, already possessed by the imperial troops; where he was exposed, almost at the same instant, to a general attack in the front, on his flanks, and in the rear. In this bloody action, a small distance from the walls of Verona, the loss of the Goths was not less heavy than that which had sustained in the defeat of Pollentia; and their valiant king, who escaped by the swiftness of his horse, must either have been slain or made prisoner, if the hasty resolution of the Alani had not disappointed the measures of the Roman general. Alaric secured the remains of his army on the adjacent rocks; and prepared himself, with undaunted resolution, to maintain a siege against the superior numbers of the enemy, whom invested him on all sides. But he could not oppose the destructive progress of hunger and disease; nor was it possible for him to check the continual desertion of his impatient and capricious barbarians. In this extremity he still found resources in his own courage, or in the moderation of his adversary; and the retreat of the Gothic king was considered as the deliverance of Italy. Yet the people, and even the clergy, incapable of forming any rational judgment of the business of peace and war, presumed to arrange the policy of stilicho, who so often vanquished, so often surrounded, and so often dismissed the implacable enemy of the republic. The first moment of the public safety is devoted to gratitude and joy; but the second is diligently occupied by envy and calumny.

The citizens of Rome had been astonished by the approach of Alaric; and the diligence with which they laboured to restore the walls of the capital, confessed their own fears, and the decline of the empire. After the retreat of the barbarians, Honorius was directed to accept the dutiful invitation of the senate, and to celebrate, in the Imperial city, the auspicious era of the Gothic victory, and of his sixth consulate. The suburbs and the streets, from the Milian bridge to the Palatine mount, were filled by the Roman people, who, in the space of an hundred years, had only thrice been honoured with the presence of their sovereign. When Honorius ascended to the chariot where stilicho was deservedly seated by the side of his royal pupil, they applauded the pomp of a triumph, which was not stained, like that of Constantine, or of Theodosius, with civil blood. The procession passed under a lofty arch, which had been purposely erected; but in less than seven years, the Gothic conquerors of Rome might read, if they were able to read, the superb inscription of that monument, which attested the total defeat and destruction of their nation. The emperor resolved several months in the capital, and every part of his behaviour was regulated with care to conciliate the affection of the clergy, the senate, and the people of Rome. The clergy was edified by his frequent visits, and liberal gifts, to the shrines of the apostles. The senate, who, in the triumphant procession, had been excused from the humiliating ceremony of preceding on foot the imperial chariot, was treated with the decent reverence which stilicho always affected for that assembly. The people was repeatedly gratified by the attention and courtesy of Honorius in the public games, which were celebrated on that occasion with a magnificence not unworthy of the spectator. As soon as the appointed number of chariots-races was concluded, the decoration of the Circus was suddenly changed; the hunting of wild beasts afforded a various and splendid entertainment; and the chace was succeeded by a military dance, which seems, in the lively description of Claudian, to present the image of a modern tournament.

In these games of Honorius, the/gladiators inhuman combats of gladiators.54

50 It preceded an action so fateful victorious.

51 The emperor appears to have left the scene of battle, while the images of kings and provincials was felicitated in the Senate. The triumph of Honorius.

52 Annals of the six hundredth of Rome inscrutably

53 Tenas de Alarico — cage vixis, cage vincere, mysteriose


56 See the inscription in Mommsen's History of the Ancient Germans, p. 13. The words are positive and indefinite, torchvision numbers to cause it more difficult, etc.

57 On the censors, though treated, subject of the gladiators, consul.
and magazines, the barracks of the troops, and the houses of the artificers, derived its origin and name from the permanent station of the Roman fleet; the intermediate space was soon filled with buildings and inhabitants, and the three extensive and populous quarters of Ravenna gradually contributed to form one of the most important cities of Italy. The principal canal of Augustus poured a copious stream of the waters of the Po through the midst of the city, to the entrance of the harbour; the same waters were introduced into the profound ditches that encompassed the walls; they were distributed, by a thousand sub-ordinate canals, into every part of the city, which they divided into a variety of small islands; the communication was maintained only by the use of boats and bridges; and the houses of Ravenna, whose appearance may be compared to that of Venice, were raised on the foundation of wooden piles. The adjacent country, to the distance of many miles, was a deep and impassable morass; and the artificial causeway, which connected Ravenna with the continent, might be easily guarded, or destroyed, on the approach of an hostile army. These morasses were interspersed, however, with rivulets; and though the soil was extinguished by frequent fires, the towns enjoyed a more plentiful supply than many of fresh water.50 The air, instead of exercising a sickly, and almost pestilential, exhalations of low and marshy grounds, was distinguished, like the neighbourhood of Alexandria, as uncommonly pure and salubrious; and this singular advantage was ascribed to the regular tides of the Halistatic, which swept the channels, interrupted the unwholesome stagnation of the waters, and flooded, every day, the vessels of the adjacent country, into the heart of Ravenna. The gradual retreat of the sea has left the modern city at the distance of four miles from the Halistatic; and as early as the fifth or sixth century of the Christian era, the port of Augustus was converted into pleasant orchards; and a lovely grove of pines covered the ground where the Roman fleet once rode at anchor.51 Even this alteration contributed to increase the natural strength of the place; and the shallowness of the water was a sufficient barrier against the large ships of the enemy. This advantageous situation was fortified by art and labour; and in the twelfth year of his age, the emperor of the West, anxious only for his personal safety, retired to the perpetual confinement of the walls and marshes of Ravenna. The example of Honorius was imitated by his feeble successors, the Gothic kings; and afterwards the Exarchs, who occupied the throne and palace of the emperors; and, till the

50 This account of Ravenna is almost from Scaliger, l. i. p. 257. 51 Filo Dibu, Statuta Hierosolimitana, lib. 11. c. 12. 52 D. Cinn. Epist. xi. 3. 50 For a short, but accurate, description of the Halistatic, see Scaliger, l. i. p. 255. 51 The name is probably derived from the Latin halis, a lake. 50 The reference is to the Halistatic. 51 The Halistatic is a river, which flows into the Adriatic between the cities of Ravenna and Ferrara. 50 The word halis is derived from the Latin halus, a lake. 51 For a description of the Halistatic, see Scaliger, l. i. p. 255.
middle of the eighth century, Ravenna was considered as the seat of government, and the capital of Italy.\footnote{52}

The sequaces of Honorius were not without foundation, nor were his proconsulates without effect. While Italy rejoiced in her deliverance from the Goths, a furious tempest was excited among the nations of Germany, who yielded to the irresistible impulse that appears to have been gradually communicated from the eastern extremity of the continent of Asia. The Chineses annals, as they have been interpreted by the learned industry of the late Mr. Seward, may be usefully applied to reveal the secret and remote causes of the fall of the Roman empire. The extensive territory to the north of the great wall was possessed, after the flight of the Huns, by the victorious Scyths, who were sometimes broken into independent tribes, and sometimes re-united under a supreme chief; till at length styling themselves Topa, or masters of the earth, they acquired a more solid consistence, and a more formidable power. The Topa soon compelled the pastoral nations of the eastern desert to acknowledge the superiority of their arms; they invaded China in a period of weakness and intestine discord; and these fortunate Tartars, adopting the laws and manners of the vanquished people, founded an Imperial dynasty, which reigned near one hundred and sixty years over the northern provinces of the monarchy. Some generations before they succeeded the throne of China, one of the Topa princes had enlisted in his cavalry a slave of the name of Moko, renowned for his valour; but who was tempted, by the fear of punishment, to desert his standard, and to range the desert at the head of an hundred followers. This gang of robbers and outlaws swelled into a camp, a tribe, a numerous people, distinguished by the appellation of Geogenes; and their hereditary chieftains, the posterity of Moko the slave, assumed their rank among the Scythian monarchs. The youth of Toulun, the greatest of his descendants, was exercised by those misfortunes which are the school of heroes. He bravely struggled with adversity, broke the imperious yoke of the Topa, and became the legislator of his nation, and the conqueror of Tardy. His troops were distributed into regular bands of an hundred and of a thousand men; exceeding were stoned to death; the most splendid honours were proposed to the reward of valour; and Toulun, who had knowledge enough to despise the learning of China, adopted only such arts and institutions as were favourable to the military spirit of his government. His tents, which he removed in the winter season to a more southern latitude, were pitched, during the summer, on the fruitful banks of the Songing.

His conquests stretched from Corea far beyond the river Irisha. He vanquished, in the country to the north of the Caspian sea, the nation of the Huns; and the new issue of power which he derived from this memorable victory,\footnote{54} The chain of events is interrupted, he impressed the army of the Googus, so that they were compelled to withdraw from the presence of an insatiable victor. The countries towards the Euxine were already occupied by their kindred tribes; and their hasty flight, which they soon converted into a bold attack, would more naturally be directed towards the rich and level plains, through which the Euxine gently flows into the Baltic Sea. The North must again have been alarmed, and agitated, by the invasion of the Huns; and the nations who retreated before them must have pressed with insurmountable weight on the confines of Germany.\footnote{56} The inhabitants of those regions, which the ancients have assigned to the Suevi, the Vandals, and the Burgundians, might embrace the resolution of abandoning to the fugitives of Sarmatia, their woods and meadows; or at least of discharging their superfluous numbers on the provinces of the Roman empire.\footnote{57} About four years after the victorious Toulun had assumed the title of Khan of the Googus, another barbarian, the haughty Rhoogost, or Badagaucus,\footnote{58} marched from the northern extremities of Germany almost to the gates of Rome, and left the remains of his army to achieve the destruction of the Western. The Vandals, the Suevi, and the Burgundians, formed the strength of this mighty host; but the Alani, who had found an hospitable reception in their new seats, added their active cavalry to the heavy infantry of the Germans; and the Gothic adventurers crowded so eagerly to the standard of Rhoogost, that, by some historians, he has been placed the King of the Goths. Three thousand warriors, distinguished above the vulgar by their noble birth, or their valiant deeds, glittered in the sight; and the whole multitude, which was not less than two hundred thousand fighting men, might be increased, by the accession of women, children, and of slaves, to the amount of four hundred thousand persons. This formidable emigration issued from the same coast of the Baltic, which had poured forth the tyrants of the Cimbri and Teutones, to assault Rome and Italy in the vigour of the republic. After the departure of these barbarians, their native country, which was marked by the vestiges of their greatness, long remained, and gigantic mzdels.\footnote{59} The name of Bautoges was derived from a local deity of the Googus (or Hoxogus). A late writer naturally supposed the ogus to be the god of thunder: a common notion, and one which is still prevalent among the Googus; as the word signifies lightning.\footnote{60}"
remained, during some ages, a vast and dreary solitude; till the human species was renewed by the powers of generation, and the vacancy was filled by the influx of new inhabitants. The nations who now usurp an extent of land, which they are unable to cultivate, would soon be assisted by the industrious poverty of their neighbours, if the government of Europe did not protect the claims of dominion and property.

The correspondence of nations was, in that age, so imperfect and precarious, that the revolutions of the North might escape the knowledge of the court of Havre; till the dark and momentous events, which was collected along the coast of the Baltic, burst in thunder upon the banks of the Upper Danube. The emperor of the West, if his ministers disturbed his amusement by the news of the impending danger, was satisfied with being the occasion, and the spectator, of the war. The safety of Rome was intrusted to the counsels, and the sword, of Stilicho; but such was the feeble and exhausted state of the empire, that it was impossible to restore the fortifications of the Danube, or to prevent, by a vigorous effort, the invasion of the Germans. The hopes of the vigilant minister of Honorius were confined to the defence of Italy. He once more abandoned the provinces, recalled the troops, pressed the new levies, which were rigorously exacted, and pusillanimously eluded; employed the most effeminate means to arrest, or allays, the devourers; and offered the gift of freedom, and of two pieces of gold, to all the slaves who would enlist. By these efforts he painfully collected, from the subjects of a great empire, an army of thirty-four thousand men, which, in the days of Scipio or Camillus, would have been instantly furnished by the free citizens of the territory of Rome. The thirty legions of Stilicho were reinforced by a large body of barbarian auxiliaries; the faithful Alanii were personally attached to his service; and the troops of Huns and of Goths, who marched under the banners of their native princes, Hublin and Sarus, were animated by interest and resentment; to oppose the ambition of Radagaisus. The king of the confederate Germans passed, without resistance, the Alps, the Po, and the Apennine; leaving on one hand the inaccessible palace of Honorius, securely buried among the marshes of Havre; and, on the other, the camp of Stilicho, who had fixed his head-quarters at Ticinum, or Pavia, but who seems to have avoided a decisive battle, till he had assembled his distant forces. Many cities of Italy were pillaged, or destroyed; and the siege of Florence, by Radagaisus, is one of the earliest events in the history of that celebrated republic; whose firmness checked and delayed the inroads of the barbarians. The senate and people trembled at their approach within an hundred and eighty miles of Rome; and anxiously compared the danger which they had escaped, with the new perils which they were exposed. Alaric was a Christian, and a soldier, the leader of a disciplined army; who understood the laws of war, who respected the sanctity of treaties, and who had familiarly conversed with the subjects of the empire in the same camps, and the same nurseries. The savage Radagaisus was a stranger to the manners, the religion, and even the language, of the civilised nations of the South. The ferocity of his temper was exaggerated by cruel superstition; and it was universally believed, that he had bound himself, by a solemn vow, to reduce the city into a heap of stones and ashes, and to sacrifice the most illustrious of the Roman senators, on the altars of those gods, who were appeased by human blood. The public danger, which should have reconciled all domestic animosities, displayed the incurable madness of religious faction. The oppressed votaries of Jupiter and Mercury respected, in the implacable enemy of Rome, the character of a devout Pagan; loudly declared, that they were more apprehensive of the sacrifices, than of the arms, of Radagaisus; and secretly rejoiced in the calamities of their country, which condemned the faith of their Christian adversaries.

Florence was reduced to the last extremity; and the fainting courage of the citizens was supported only by the authority of St. Ambrose; who had communicated, in a dream, the promise of a speedy deliverance. On a sudden, they behold, from their walls, the hammers of Stilicho, who advanced, with his united forces, to the relief of the faithful city; and who soon marked that fatal spot for the grave of the barbarian host. The apparent contradictions of those writers who variously relate the defeat of Radagaisus, may be reconciled, without offering much violence to their respective testimonies. Orosius and Augustin, who were intimately connected by friendship and religion, ascribe this miraculous victory to the providence of God, rather than to the valour of man. They strictly exclude every idea of chance, or even of...
bloodshed; and positively affirm, that the Romans, whose camp was the scene of plenty and idleness, enjoyed the distress of the barbarians, slowly expiring on the sharp and barren ridge of the hills of Farsala, which rise above the city of Florence. Their extravagant assertion, that not a single soldier of the Christian army was killed, or even wounded, may be dismissed with silent contempt; but the rest of the narrative of Augustinian and Orosius is consistent with the state of the war, and the character of Stilicho. Convinced that he commanded the last army of the republic, his prudence would not expose it to the open field, to the headlong fury of the Germans. The method of surrounding the enemy with strong lines of circumvallation, which he had twice employed against the Gothic king, was repeated on a larger scale, and with more considerable effect. The examples of Caesar must have been familiar to the most illustrious of the Roman warriors; and the fortifications of Dyrrachium, which connected twenty-four castles, by a perpetual ditch and rampart of fifteen miles, afforded the model of an intrenched camp which might conciliate, and scarce, the most inexorable host of barbarians. The Roman troops had been degenerated from the industry, than from the valour, of their ancestors; and if the pride and laborious work offended the pride of the soldiers, Tuscany would supply many thousand peasants, who would labour, though perhaps, they would not fight, for the salvation of their native country. The imprisoned multitude of horses and men was gradually destroyed by famine, rather than by the sword; but the Romans were exposed, during the progress of such an extensive work, to the frequent attacks of an inconstant enemy. The despair of the hungry barbarians would precipitate them against the fortifications of Stilicho; the general might sometimes indulge the ardour of his brave auxiliaries, who eagerly pressed to assault the camp of the Germans; and these various incidents might produce the sharp and bloody conflicts which dignify the narrative of Zosimus, and the Chronicles of Prosper and Marcellinus.

A reasonable supply of men and provisions had been introduced into the walls of Florence, and the famished host of Radagaisus was in its turn besieged. The proud resistance of so many warlike nations, after the loss of his bravest warriors, was reduced to a battle either in the faith of a capitulation, or in the element of Stilicho. But the death of the royal captive, who was ignominiously behaunded, disgraced the triumph of Rome and of Christianity; and the short delay of his execution was sufficient to brand the conqueror with the guilt of cool and deliberate cruelty. The famished Germans, who escaped the fury of the intrenched army, were sold as slaves, at the considerable price of as many single pieces of gold; but the difference of cost and climate rendered great numbers of those unhappy strangers, who had been obliged to provide the expense of their internment. Stilicho informed the emperor and the senate of his success; and deserved, a second time, the glorious title of Deliverer of Italy.

The fame of the victory, and more especially of the miracle, has encouraged a vain permission, that the whole army, or rather nation, of Germans, who migrated from the shores of the Baltic, miserably perished under the walls of Florence. Such indeed was the fate of Radagaisus himself, of his brave and faithful companions, and of more than one third of the various multitude of Sueves and Vandals, of Alaniz and Burgundians, who adhered to the standard of their general. The union of such an army might excite our surprise, but the causes of separation are obvious and visible: the pride of birth, the insolence of valour, the jealousy of command, the impatience of subordination, and the obstinate conflict of opinions, of interests, and of passions, among so many kings and warriors, who were intantig to yield, or to obey. After the defeat of Radagaisus, two parts of the German host, which must have exceeded the number of one hundred thousand men, still remained in arms, between the Apenine and the Alps, or between the Alps and the Danube. It is uncertain whether they attempted to revenge the death of their general; but their irregular fury was soon diverted by the prudence and firmness of Stilicho, who opposed their march, and facilitated their retreat; who considered the safety of Rome and Italy at the great object of his care; and who sacrificed, with too much indifference, the western provinces to the tranquility of the distant provinces. The barbarians acquired, from the junction of arms, Pannonian deserters, the knowledge of the country, and of the roads; and the invasion of Gaul, which Alaric had designed, was executed by the remains of the great army of Radagaisus.

Yet if they expected to derive any assistance from the tribes of Germany, who inhabited the
banks of the Rhine, their hopes were disappointed. The Alemanni preserved a state of inactive neutrality; and the Franks distinguished their zeal and courage in the defence of the empire. In the rapid progress down the Rhine, which was the first act of the administration of Stilicho, he had applied himself, with peculiar attention, to secure the alliance of the warlike Franks, and to remove the irreconcilable enemies of peace and of the republic. Marcomann, one of their kings, was publicly convicted, before the tribunal of the Roman magistrature, of violating the faith of truces. He was sentenced to a mild, but distant, exile, in the province of Tuscany; and this degradation of the regal dignity was so far from exciting the resentment of his subjects, that they punished with death the turbulent Suevi, who attempted to revenge his brother; and maintained a dutiful allegiance to the prince, who was established on the throne by the choice of Stilicho. When the limits of Gaul and Germany were shaken by the northern emigration, the Franks bravely opposed the single force of the Vandals; who, regardless of the lessons of adversity, had again separated their troops from the standard of their barbarian allies. They paid the penalty of their rashness; and twenty thousand Vandals, with their king Gudigisclus, were slain in the field of battle. The whole people must have been exterminated, if the squadrons of the Alani, advancing to their relief, had not trampled down the infantry of the Franks; who, after an honourable resistance, were compelled to relinquish the unequal contest. The victorious confederates pursued their march, and on the last day of the year, in a season when the waters of the Rhine were most probably frozen, they entered, without opposition, the defenceless provinces of Gaul. This memorable passage of the Sutri, the Vandals, the Alani, and the Burgundians, who never afterwards retreated, may be considered as the fall of the Roman empire in the countries beyond the Alps; and the barriers, which had so long separated the savage and the civilised nations of the earth, were from that fatal moment levelled with the ground.\footnote{Stilicho and his colleagues.}

While the peace of Germany was secured by the attachment of the Alemanni, the subjects of Rome, unconquered and unchastisement of their approaching calamities, enjoyed the state of quiet and prosperity, which had seldom blessed the frontiers of Gaul. Their flocks and herds were permitted to graze in the pastures of the barbarians; their hunters penetrated, without fear or danger, into the darkest recesses of the Hercynian wood.\footnote{The banks of the Rhine were crowned, like those of the Tyber, with elegant houses, and well-cultivated gardens; and if a poet descended the river, he might express his doubts, on which side was situated the territory of the Romans.\footnote{This scene of peace and plenty was suddenly changed into a desert; and the prospect of the smoking ruins could alone distinguish the solitude of nature from the desolation of man. The flourishing city of Menta was surprised and destroyed; and twenty thousand Christians were inhumanly massacred in the church. Worms perished after a long and obstinate siege; Strassburg, Spire, Rheinau, Tournay, Arras, Amiens, experienced the cruel oppression of the German yoke; and the consuming flames of war spread from the banks of the Rhine over the greatest part of the seventeen provinces of Gaul. Trust rich and extensive country, as far as the ocean, the Alps, and the Pyrenees, was delivered to the barbarians, who, above before them, in a triumphal crown, the bishop, the senator, and the virgin, laden with the spoils of their houses and altars.\footnote{The ecclesiastics, in whom we are indebted for this vague description of the public calamities, embraced the opportunity of exhorting the Christians to repent of the sins which had provoked the Divine Justice, and to renounce the perishable goods of a transitory and deceitful world. But as the Pelagian controversy, which attempts to sound the abyss of grace and predestination, soon became the subject of a complaint of the Latin clergy; the Providence which had decreed, or foreseen, or permitted, such a train of moral and natural evils, was rashly and falsely laid in the imperfect and fallacious balance of reason. The crimes, and the misfortunes, of the suffering people, were presumptuously compared with those of their ancestors; and they arrayed the Divine Justice, which did not exempt from the common destruction, the fecklin, the guiltless, the infant portion of the human species. These idle disputants overlooked the invariable laws of nature, which have connected peace with innocence, plenty with industry, and safety with valour. The timid and selfish policy of the court of Ravenna might recall the Palatine legions for the protection of Italy; the remains of the stationary troops might be unequal to the arduous task; and the barbarian auxiliaries might prefer the unbounded licence of spoil to the benefits of a moderate and regular stipend. But the provinces of Gaul were filled with a numerous race of hardy and robust youth, who, in the defence of their houses, their families, and their altars, if they had dared to die, would have deserved to vanish. The knowledge of their native country would have enabled them to oppose the attack of the Alemanni.} and victors of all orders of society; and the virgins and the unchaste, and even the children of the unworthy, with the ungodly and the unbaptised, might be saved.\footnote{Postscript.}}\footnote{Postscript.}}\footnote{Postscript.}
pese continual and insuperable obstacles to the progress of an invader; and the deficiency of the barbarians, in arms as well as in discipline, removed the only pretense which excuses the submissin of a populous country to the inferior numbers of a veteran army. When France was invaded by Charles the Fifth, he espied of a prisoner, how near that Paris might be distant from the frontiers: "Perhaps three, but they will be days of battle." Such was the gallant answer which checked the arrogancy of that ambitious prince. The subjects of Honorius, and those of Francis L, were animated by a very different spirit; and in less than two years, the divided success of the savages of the Baltic, whose numbers, were they fairly stated, would appear insuperable, advanced, without a combat, to the foot of the Pyrenean mountains.

In the early part of the reign of Honorius, the vigilance of Sollicio had successfully guarded the remote island of Britain from her incessant enemies in the ocean, the mountains, and the Irish coast. But these restless barbarians could not neglect the fair opportunity of the Gothic war, when the walls and stations of the province were stripped of the Roman troops. If any of the legions were permitted to return from the Italian expedition, their faithful report of the court and character of Honorius must have tended to dissolve the bonds of allegiance, and to exasperate the auditable tempests of the British army. The spirit of revolt, which had formerly disturbed the age of Gallienus, was revived by the capricious violence of the soldiers; and the unfortunate, perhaps the ambitious, candidates, who were the objects of their choice, were the instruments, and at length the victims, of their passion. Marcus was the first whom they placed on the throne, as the lawful emperor of Britain and of the West. They violated, by the haughty murder of Marcus, the oath of fidelity which they had imposed on themselves; and their disapprobation of his manners may seem to inscribe an honourable epitaph on his tomb. Gratian was the next, whom they adorned with the diadem and the purple; and, at the end of four months, Gratian experienced the fate of his predecessor. The memory of the great Constantine, whom the British legions had given to the church and to the empire, suggested the singular motive of their third choice. They discovered in this man a private soldier of the name of Constantine, and their insurrectionary levy had already seated him on the throne, before they perceived his incapacity to sustain the weight of that glorious appellation. Yet the authority of Constantine was less precarious, and his government was more successful, than the transient reigns of Marcus and of Gratian. The danger of leaving his inactive troops in those camps, which had been twice polluted with blood and solitude, urged him to attempt the reduction of the Western provinces. He landed at Boulogne with an inconsiderable force; and after he had reposessed himself some days, he summoned the cities of Gaul, which had escaped the yoke of the barbarians, to acknowledge their lawful sovereign. They obeyed the summons without reluctance. The neglect of the court of Ravenna had absorbed a deserted people from the duty of allegiance; their actual distress encouraged them to accept any circumstances of change, without apprehension, and perhaps, with some degree of hope; and they might flatter themselves, that the troops, the authority, and even the name of a Roman emperor, who fixed his residence in Gaul, would protect the unhappy country from the rage of the barbarians. The first success of Constantine against the detached parties of the Germans, were magnified by the voice of admiration to splendid and decisive victories; which the reunion and insolence of the enemy were reduced to their just value. His negotiations procured a short and precarious truce; and if some tribes of the barbarians were engaged, by the liberality of his gifts and promises, to undertake the defence of the Rhine, those expensive and uncertain treaties, instead of restoring the pristine vigour of the Gallic frontier, served only to disgrace the majesty of the prince, and to exhaust what yet remained of the treasures of the republic. Elated however by this imaginary triumph, the vain delirium of Gaul advanced into the provinces of the South, to encounter a more pressing and personal danger. Sarmas the Goth was ordered to lay the head of the rebel at the feet of the emperor Honorius; and the forces of Britain and Italy were unworthily consumed in this domestic quarrel. After the loss of his two heaviest generals, Justinian and Navigantes, the former of whom was slain in the field of battle, the latter in a peaceful but treacherous interview, Constantine fortified himself within the walls of Vienna. The place was ineffectually attacked seven days; and the Imperial army supported, in a precipitate retreat, the ignominy of purchasing a secure passage from the freebooters and outlaws of the Alps. These mountains now separated the dominions of two rival monarchs; and the fortifications of the double frontier were guarded by the troops of the empire, whose army would have been more usefully employed to maintain the Roman limits against the barbarians of Germany and Scythia.

On the side of the Pyrenees, the ambition of Constantine might be justified by the proximity of danger; but his throne was soon established by the conquest, or rather submission, of Spain; which
yielded to the influence of regular and habitual subordination, and received the laws and magistrates of the Gallic prefecture. The only opposition which was made to the authority of Constantine proceeded not so much from the powers of government, or the spirit of the people, as from the private zeal and interest of the family of Theodosius. Four brothers had obtained by the favour of their kinsman, the deceased emperor, an honourable rank, and ample possessions, in their native country; and the grateful youths resolved to risk those advantages in the service of his son. After an unsuccessful effort to maintain their ground at the head of the stationary troops of Lusitania, they retired to their estates; where they armed and levied, at their own expense, a considerable body of slaves and dependents, and boldly marched to occupy the strong posts of the Pyrenean mountains. This domestic insurrection alarmed and perplexed the sovereign of Gaul and Britain; and he was compelled to negotiate with some troops of barbarian auxiliaries, for the service of the Spanish war. They were distinguished by the title of Henarii; a name which might have reminded them of their fidelity to their lawful sovereign; and if it should candidly be admitted that the Alans were influenced by any partial affection for a British prince, the Moors and the Mercannoii could be tempted only by the profuse liberality of the warrior, who distributed among the barbarians the military, and even the civil, honours of Spain. The nine bands of Henarii, which may be safely traced on the establishment of the Western empire, could not exceed the number of five thousand men; yet this inconsiderable force was sufficient to terminate a war, which had threatened the power and safety of Constantine. The rustic army of the Theodosian family was surrounded and destroyed in the Pyrenees: two of the brothers had the good fortune to escape by sea to Italy, or the East; the other two, after an interval of suspense, were executed at Arles; and if Honorius could remain insensible of the public disgrace, he might perhaps be affected by the personal misfortunes of his generous kinsmen. Such were the feeble arms which decided the possession of the Western provinces of Europe, from the wall of Antoninus to the columns of Hercules. The events of peace and war have undoubtedly been diminished by the narrow and imperfect view of the historians of the times; who were equally ignorant of the causes, and of the effects, of the most important revolutions. But the total decay of the national strength had annihilated even the last resource of a despotic government; and the revenue of exhausted provinces could no longer purchase the military service of a discontented and pusillanimous people.

The poet, whose flattery has ascribed to the Roman eagle the victories of Pollio and Verona, in the confluence of Italy, with a horrid train of imaginary spectres, such as might hover over an army of barbarians, which was almost exterminated by war, famine, and disease. In the course of this unfortunate expedition, the king of the Goths and his brother, who had indeed sustained a considerable loss; and his harassed forces required an interval of repose to recruit their numbers, and revive their confidences. Attila had exercised, and displayed, the genius of Alaric; and the fate of his valor invited to the Gothic standard the bravest of the barbarian warriors; who, from the East, to the Rhine, were agitated by the desire of rapine and conquest. He had deserved the esteem, and he soon accepted the friendship, of Stilicho himself. Reasserting the service of the emperor of the East, Alaric concluded, with the court of Ravenna, a treaty of peace and alliance, by which he was declared master-general of the Roman armies throughout the prefecture of Illiricum; as it was called, according to the true and ancient limits, by the minister of Honorius. The execution of the ambitious design, which was either calculated, or implied, in the articles of the treaty, appeared to have been suspended by the formidable invasion of Radagaisus; and the neutrality of the Gothic king may perhaps be compared to the indifference of Caesar, who, in the conspiracy of Catiline, refused either to assist, or to oppose, the enemy of the republic. After the defeat of the Vandals, Stilicho resumed his pretensions to the provinces of the East; appointed civil magistrates for the administration of justice, and of the finances; and declared his intention to lead, to the gates of Constantinople, the united armies of the Romans, and of the Goths. The prudence, however, of Stilicho, his aversion to civil war, and his perfect knowledge of the weakness of the state, may compensate this suspicion, that domestic peace, rather than foreign conquest, was the object of his policy; and that his principal care was to employ the forces of Alaric at a distance from Italy. This design could not long escape the penetration of the Gothic king, who continued to hold a doubtful, and perhaps a treacherous, correspondence with the rival courts; who prostrated, like a dissatisfied mercenary, his landward operations in Thessaly and Epirus, and who soon returned to claim the extravagant reward of his ineffectual services. From his camp near Emona, on the confines of Italy, he transmitted to the emperor of the West, a long account of promises, of expenses, and of demands; and he received from the immediate satisfaction, and clearly intimated the consequences of a refusal. Yet if his conduct was hostile,
his language was decent and dutiful. He humbly professed himself the friend of Sillicho, and the soldier of Honouris; suffered his person and his troops to march, without delay, against the usurper of Gaul; and solicited, as a permanent retreat for the Gothic nation, the possession of some vacant province of the Western empire.

The political and secret transactions of two statesmen, who laboured to deceive each other and the world, must for ever have been concealed in the impenetrable darkness of the cabinet, if the debates of a popular assembly had not thrown some rays of light on the correspondence of Alaric and Sillicho. The necessity of finding some artificial support for a government, which, from a principle, not of moderation, but of weakness, was reduced to negotiate with its own subjects, had insensibly revived the authority of the Roman senate; and the minister of Honouris respectfully consulted the legislative council of the republic. Sillicho assembled the senate in the palace of the Caesars; represented, in a studied oration, the actual state of affairs; proposed the demands of the Gothic king, and submitted to their consideration the choice of peace or war. The senators, as if they had been suddenly awakened from a dream of four hundred years, appeared on this important occasion to be inspired by the courage, rather than by the wisdom, of their predecessors. They loudly declared, in regular speeches, or in innumerable acclamations, that it was unworthy of the majesty of Rome to purchase a precarious and disgraceful truce from a barbarian king; and that, in the judgment of a magnanimous people, the chance of ruin was always preferable to the certainty of dishonour.

The minister, whose pacific intentions were seconded only by the voices of a few servile and venal followers, attempted to allay the general ferment, by an apology for his own conduct, and even for the demands of the Gothic prince.

"The payment of a subsidy, which had excited the indignation of the Romans, ought not (such was the language of Sillicho) to be considered in the Milton light, either of a tribute, or of a ransom, extorted by the menace of a barbarian army. Alaric had faithfully asserted the just pretensions of the republic to the provinces which were usurped by the Greeks of Constantinople; he modestly required the fair and stipulated recompense of his services; and he had assented from the prosecution of his enterprises, he had obeyed, in his retreat, the peremptory, though private, letters of the emperor himself. These contradictory orders (the would not dissemble the errors of his own family) had been procured by the intervention of Serena. The tender pieties of his wife had been too deeply affected by the discord of the royal brethren, the sons of her adopted father; and the sentiments of nature had too easily prevailed over the stern dictates of the public welfare."

These ostensible reasons, which faintly disguise the obscure intrigues of the palace of Ravenna, were supported by the authority of Sillicho; and obtained, after a warm debate, the reluctant approbation of the senate. The summit of virtue and freedom was reached; and the sum of four thousand pounds of gold was granted, under the name of a subsidy, to secure the good name of Italy, and to conciliate the friendship of the kings of the Gothic. Lampadius alone, one of the most illustrious members of the assembly, still persisted in his dissent; exclaiming with a loud voice, "This is not a treaty of peace, but of servile undue," and escaped the danger of such bold opposition by immediately retiring to the sanctuary of a Christian church.

But the reign of Sillicho drew towards its end; and the proud minister might perceive the symptoms of his approaching disgrace. The generous boldness of Lampadius had been applauded; and the senate, so patiently resigned to a long servitude, rejected with disdain the offer of invasions and imaginary freedom. The troops, who still assumed the name and prerogatives of the Roman legions, were exasperated by the partial affection of Sillicho for the barbarians; and the people importuned to the mischievous policy of the minister the public misfortunes, which were the natural consequence of their own degeneracy. Yet Sillicho might have continued to brave the clamours of the people, and even of the soldiers, if he could have maintained his domination over the feeble mind of his pupil. But the respectful attachment of Honouris was converted into fear, suspicion, and hatred. The crafty Olympius, who concealed his vices under the mask of Christian piety, had secretly undermined the benefactor, by whose favour he was promoted to the honourable offices of the Imperial palace. Olympius revealed to the unsuspecting emperor, who had attained the twenty-fifth year of his age, that he was without weight, or authority, in his own government; and artfully alarmed his timid and indolent disposition by a lively picture of the designs of Sillicho, who already meditated the death of his sovereign, with the ambitious hope of placing the ducal on the head of his son Euclusius. The emperor was instigated, by his new favourite, to assume the tone of independent dignity; and the minister was astonished to find, that secret resolutions were formed in the court and council, which were repugnant to his interest, or to his intentions. Instead of residing in the palace of Rome, Honouris declared, that it was his pleasure to return to the secure fortress of Ravenna. On the first intelligence of the death of his brother Arcadius, he prepared to visit Constantinople, and to regulate, with the authority of a guardian, the provinces of the infant Theodosius. The representation of the difficulty and expense of such a distant expedition checked this strange and sudden outburst of active dilgence;
but the dangerous project of showing the emperor to the camp of Pavia, which was composed of the Roman troops, the enemies of Stilicho, and his barbarian auxiliaries, remained fixed and unalterable. The minister was pressed, by the advice of his confident Justinian, a Roman advocate, of a lively and penetrating genius, to oppose a journey so prejudicial to his reputation and safety. His strenuous, but ineffectual, efforts confirmed the triumph of Olympius; and the prudent lawyer withdrew himself from the impending ruin of his patron.

In the progress of the emperor through Bologna, a mutiny of the guards was excited and suppressed by the secret policy of Stilicho, who announced his instructions to declare the guilty, and ascribed to his own interference the merit of their pardons. After this tumult, Honorius embraced, for the last time, the minister whom he now considered as a tyrant, and proceeded on his way to the camp of Pavia; where he was received by the loyal acclamations of the troops who were assembled for the service of the Gothic war. On the morning of the fourth day, he pronounced, as he had been taught, a military oration in the presence of the soldiers, whom the charitable visits, and artistic discourses, of Olympius, had prepared to execute a dark and bloody conspiracy. At the first signal, they massed the friends of Stilicho, the most illustrious officers of the empire, two pretorian prefects, of Gaul, and of Italy; two masters-general, of the cavalry, and infantry; the master of the offices, the questor, the treasurer, and the comit of the domestics. Many lives were lost; many houses were plundered; the furious sedition continued to rage till the close of the evening; and the trembling emperor, who was seen in the streets of Pavia, without his robes or diadem, yielded to the persuasions of his favourite; condemned the memory of the slain; and solemnly approved the innocence and fidelity of their assassins. The intelligence of the massacre of Pavia filled the mind of Stilicho with just and gloomy apprehensions; and he instantly summoned, in the camp of Bologna, a council of the confederate leaders, who were attached to his service, and would be involved in his ruin. The impetuous voice of the assembly called aloud for arms, and for revenge; to march, without a moment's delay, under the banners of a hero, whom they had so often followed to victory; to surprise, to oppress, to extirpate the guilty Olympius, and his degenerate Romans; and perhaps to fix the diadem on the head of their injured general. Instead of executing a resolution, which might have been justified by success, Stilicho hesitated till he was irrevocably lost. He was still ignorant of the fate of the emperor; he distrusted the fidelity of his own party; and he viewed with horror the fatal consequences of arming a crowd of licentious barbarians against the soldiers and people of Italy. The confederates, impatient of his timorous and doubtful delay, hastily retired, with fear and indignation. At the hour of midnight, Sarus, a Gothic warrior, renowned among the barbarians themselves for his strength and valour, suddenly invaded the camp of his benefactor, plundered the baggage, cut in pieces the faithful Hun, who guarded his person, and penetrated to the tent, where the minister, pensive and sleepless, meditated on the dangers of his situation. Stilicho escaped, with difficulty, from the sword of the Goths; and after issuing a last and generous admission to the cities of Italy, to shut their gates against the barbarians, his confidence, or his despair, urged him to throw himself into Ravenna, which was already in the absolute possession of his enemies. Olympius, who had assumed the dominion of Honorius, was specifically informed, that his rival had embraced, as a suppliant, the altar of the Christian church. The base and cruel disposition of the hypocrite was incapable of pity or remorse; but he piously affected to elude, rather than to violate, the privilege of the sanctuary. Count Heredian, with a troop of soldiers, appeared, at the dawn of day, before the gates of the church of Ravenna. The bishop was satisfied by a solemn oath, that the Imperial mandate only directed them to secure the person of Stilicho; but, as soon as the unfortunate minister had been tempted beyond the holy threshold, he produced the warrant for his instant execution. Stilicho supported, with calm resignation, the injuries names of traitor and persecutor; repelled the unanswerable seal of his followers, who were ready to attempt an insubstantial rescue; and, with a firmness not unworthy of the last of the Roman generals, submitted his neck to the sword of Heredian.

The servile crowd of the palace, his memory, who had so long adored the fortune of Stilicho, affected to insult his fall; and the most distant connection with the master-general of the West, which had so lately been a title to wealth and honours, was studiously denied, and rigorously punished. His family, united by a triple alliance with the family of Theodosius, might enjoy the condition of the meanest peasant. The flight of his son Eucherius was interposed; and the death of that innocent youth soon followed the divorce of Theodoria, who filled the place of her sister Maria; and who, like Maria, had remained a virgin in the Imperial bed. The friends of Stilicho, who had escaped the massacre of Pavia, were persecuted by the implacable revenge of Olympius; and the most exquisite cruelty was employed, to extort the confession of a reasonable and scrupulous conspiracy. They died in silence; their firmness justified the choice; and perhaps absolved the

who escape, by fate, that were doomed. I should have been saved

442. Two of his friends were the same very immoderately. (Constantine, b. v.
p. 760.) Bowers, chief of the school of rhetoric, and the great General himself were asked whether the character was an orator, if not, under a better name, the historian was not sure. (Bowers, b. v.

244. The spinous hedges of Stilicho (Hist. de l'Empire, comm. 8, p. 367.)
with a very rich heiress of the province of Africa;[14] and the statue of Claudian, erected in the forum of Trajan, was a monument of the taste and liberality of the Roman senate.[15]

After the praises of Stilicho became offensive and criminal, Claudian was exposed to the enmity of a powerful and unforgiving courtier, whom he had provoked by the insolence of his bold words. He had composed, in a lively epigram, the opposite characters of two pontifical prefects of Italy: he contrasts the innocent repose of a philosopher, who sometimes resigned the hours of business to solitude, perhaps to study, with the interested diligence of a rapacious minister, indefatigable in the pursuit of unjust, or criminal, gain. "How happy," continues Claudian, "how happy might it be for the people of Italy, if Mallius could be constantly awake, and if Hadrian would always sleep![16] The repose of Mallius was not disturbed by this friendly and gentle admonition; but the cruel vigilance of Hadrian watched the opportunity of revenge, and easily obtained, from the enemies of Stilicho, the thrilling sacrifice of an obnoxious poet. The poet concealed himself, however, during the tumult of the revolution; and, consulting the dictates of prudence rather than of honour, he addressed, in the form of an epitaph, a suppliant and humble recitation to the offended prefect. He deplores, in moving strains, the fatal indiscipline into which he had been hurried by passion and folly; submits to the irritation of his adversary, the generous example of the charity of gods, of heroes, and of kings; and expresses his hope, that the magnanimity of Hadrian will not trample on a defenseless and contemptible foe, already smitten by disgrace and poverty; and deeply wounded by the exile, the terrors, and the death of his dearest friends.[17]

Whatever might be the success of his prayer, or the accidents of his future life, the period of a few years levelled in the grave the minister and the poet: but the name of Hadrian is almost sunk in oblivion, while Claudian is read with pleasure in every country which has retained, or acquired, the knowledge of the Latin language. If we fairly balance his merits and his defects, we shall acknowledge, that Claudian does not either satisfy, or silence, our reason. It would not be easy to produce a passage that deserves the epithet of sublime or pathetic; to select a verse, that melts the heart, or enlarges the imagination. We should vainly seek, in the poems of Claudian, the happy invention, and artificial conduct, of an interesting fable; or the just and lively representation of

Among the train of dependents, whose wealth and dignity attracted the notice of their own times, our curiosity is excited by the celebrated name of the poet Claudian, who enjoyed the favour of Stilicho, and was ever beloved in the reign of his patron. The titular offices of tribune and notary fixed his rank in the Imperial court: he was inspired to the powerful intercession of Serena for his marriage

14 Claudian, Ep. 4, v. 19, p. 35, l. 871, 872. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, which seem to have been written by the Bishop of Vienne, and to have been inspired by the same subject.

15 See the Quaestiones Poeticae, l. 66, v. 123, l. 45, v. 101, v. 168. See also the Epigramma, which was written when Claudian was in the provinces of Africa, and when he composed his ode on the death of the bishop of Carthage, the orthodox Summner his pupil. Sumnem. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, l. 31, v. 123, v. 101, v. 168. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, which seem to have been written by the Bishop of Vienne, and to have been inspired by the same subject.

16 Claudian's beautiful letters to Serena and a letter to Serenus, which are addressed to the bishop of Carthage, and which are still esteemed by his contemporaries. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, l. 31, v. 123, v. 101, v. 168.

17 See the Quaestiones Poeticae, l. 66, v. 123, l. 45, v. 101, v. 168. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, which seem to have been written by the Bishop of Vienne, and to have been inspired by the same subject.

18 See the Quaestiones Poeticae, l. 66, v. 123, l. 45, v. 101, v. 168. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, which seem to have been written by the Bishop of Vienne, and to have been inspired by the same subject.

19 See the Quaestiones Poeticae, l. 66, v. 123, l. 45, v. 101, v. 168. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, which seem to have been written by the Bishop of Vienne, and to have been inspired by the same subject.

20 See the Quaestiones Poeticae, l. 66, v. 123, l. 45, v. 101, v. 168. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, which seem to have been written by the Bishop of Vienne, and to have been inspired by the same subject.

21 See the Quaestiones Poeticae, l. 66, v. 123, l. 45, v. 101, v. 168. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, which seem to have been written by the Bishop of Vienne, and to have been inspired by the same subject.

22 See the Quaestiones Poeticae, l. 66, v. 123, l. 45, v. 101, v. 168. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, which seem to have been written by the Bishop of Vienne, and to have been inspired by the same subject.

23 See the Quaestiones Poeticae, l. 66, v. 123, l. 45, v. 101, v. 168. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, which seem to have been written by the Bishop of Vienne, and to have been inspired by the same subject.

24 See the Quaestiones Poeticae, l. 66, v. 123, l. 45, v. 101, v. 168. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, which seem to have been written by the Bishop of Vienne, and to have been inspired by the same subject.

25 See the Quaestiones Poeticae, l. 66, v. 123, l. 45, v. 101, v. 168. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, which seem to have been written by the Bishop of Vienne, and to have been inspired by the same subject.

26 See the Quaestiones Poeticae, l. 66, v. 123, l. 45, v. 101, v. 168. See also the Quaestiones Poeticae, which seem to have been written by the Bishop of Vienne, and to have been inspired by the same subject. 
the characters and situations of real life. For the service of his patron, he published occasional panegyrics and invective; and the design of those elaborately composed encouragements his propensity to exceed the limits of truth and nature. These imperfections, however, are compensated to some degree by the poetical virtues of Claudian. He was endowed with the rare and precious talent of raising the meanest, of adorning the most base, and of diversifying the most similar, topics; his colouring, more especially in descriptive poetic, is soft and splendid; and he seldom fails to display, and even to abuse, the advantages of a cultivated understanding; a copious fancy, an ease, and sometimes fertile, expression, and a perpetual flow of harmonious versification. To these commendations, independent of any accidents of time and place, we must add the peculiar merit which Claudian derived from the unfavorable circumstances of his birth. In the decline of art, and of the empire, a native of Egypt, who had received the education of a Greek, assumed; in a narrows age, the familiar use, and absolute command, of the Latin language; soared above the heads of his fellow contemporaries; and placed himself, after an interval of three hundred years, among the poets of ancient Rome.

CHAP. XXXI.

Invasion of Italy by Alaric. — Massacre of the Romans, Senators, and People. — Rome is thrice surrounded, and at length pillaged, by the Goths. — Death of Alaric. — The Goths evacuate Italy. — Fall of Constantine. — Gaul and Russia are occupied by the Barbarians. — Independence of Britain.

Tyranny and incapacity of a weak and distracted government may often assume the appearance, and produce the effects, of a reasonable correspondence with the public enemy. If Alaric himself had been introduced into the council of Ravenna, he would probably have advised the same measures which were actually pursued by the ministers of Honorius. The king of the Goths would have conspired, perhaps with some reluctance, to destroy the formidable adversary, by whose arms, in Italy as well as in Greece, he had been twice overthrown. Their active and interested hatred laboriously accomplished the disgrace and ruin of the great Stilicho. The value of Sarrux, his fame in arms, and his personal, or hereditary, influence over the confederate barbarians, could recommend him only to the friends of their country, who despised, or detested, the worthless characters of Turpillo, Vassus, and Vigilantius. By the pressing instance of the new favorites, these precedents, unworthy as they had shown themselves of the name of soldiers, were promoted to the command of the cavalry, of the infantry, and of the domestic troops. The Gothic prince would have subscribed with pleasure the edict which the fanaticism of Olympus dictated to the simple and devout emperor. Honorius excluded all persons, who were adverse to the Catholic church, from holding any office in the state; obstinately rejected the service of all those who dissented from his religion; and rashly disqualified many of his bravest and most skilful officers, who adhered to the Pagan worship, or who had imbued the opinions of Arius. These measures, so advantageous to an enemy, Alaric would have approved, and might perhaps have suggested; but it may seem doubtful, whether the barbarian would have promoted his interest at the expense of the inhuman and absurd cruelty, which was perpetrated by the direction, or at least with the connivance, of the Imperial ministers, as foreign and sedate men, who had been attached to the person of Stilicho, lamented his death, but the desire of revenge was concealed by a natural apprehension for the safety of their wives and children; who were detained as hostages in the strong cities of Italy, where they had likewise deposited their most valuable effects. At the same hour, and as if by a common signal, the cities of Italy were polluted by the same horrid scenes of universal massacre and pillage, which involved, in prominent destruction, the families and fortunes of the barbarians. Exasperated by such an injury, which might have awakened the tampest and most servile spirit; they cast a look of indignation and hope towards the camp of Alaric, and unanimously swore to pursue, with just and implacable war, the perfidious nation, that had so basely violated the laws of hospitality. By the impudent conduct of the ministers of Honorius, the republic lost the assistance, and deserved the enmity, of thirty thousand of her bravest soldiers; and the weight of that formidable army, which alone might have determined the event of the war, was transferred from the scale of the Romans into that of the Goths.

In the arts of negociation, as well as in those of war, the Gothic king maintained his superior ascendant over an enemy, whose seeming changes proceeded from the total want of counsel and design. From his camp, on the confines of Italy, Alaric attentively observed the revolutions of the palace, watched the progress of faction and discontent, disguised the hostile aspect of a barbarian invader, and assumed the more popular appearance of the friend and ally of the great Stilicho;
reverence of the nations for the majesty of the Roman name. His troops, animated by the hopes of spoil, followed the course of the Flaminian way, occupied the unguarded passes of the Apennines, descended into the rich plains of Umbria; and, as they lay encamped on the banks of the Clitumnus, might with vanity slaughter and devour the mild-white oxen, which had been so long reserved for the use of Roman triumphs.

A lofty situation, and a reasonable tempest of thunder and lightning, preserved the little city of Narbon; but the king of the Goths, desiring the ignoble prey, still advanced with unalloyed vigour; and after he had passed through the stately arches, adorned with the spoils of barbaric victories, he pitched his camp under the walls of Rome.

During a period of six hundred and thirteen years, the seat of empire had never been violated by the presence of a foreign enemy. The unsuccessful expedition of Hannibal, served only to display the character of the senate and people; of a senate degraded, rather than emboldened, by the comparison of an assembly of kings, and of a people, to whom the ambassador of Peritius extolled the inexhaustible resources of the Hydria. Each of the senators, in the time of the Punic war, had accomplished his term of military service, either in a subordinate or a superior station; and the decree, which invested with temporary command all those who had been consuls, or censors, or dictators, gave the republic the immediate assistance of many brave and experienced generals. In the beginning of the war, the Roman people consisted of two hundred and fifty thousand citizens of an age to bear arms. Fifty thousand had already died in the defence of their country; and the twenty-three legions which were employed in the different camps of Italy, Greece, Sardinia, Sicily, and Spain, required about one hundred thousand men. But there still remained an equal number in Rome and the adjacent territory, who were animated by the same irrepressible courage; and every citizen, trained, from his earliest youth, in the discipline and exercises of a soldier. Hannibal was accomplished by the constancy of the senate, who, without raising the siege of Capua, or recalling their scattered forces, repeated his approach. He encamped on the banks of the Anio, at the distance of three miles from the city; and he was soon informed, that the ground on which he had pitched his tent, was sold for an adequate price at a public auction; and that a body of troops was dismissed by an opposite road, to reinforce

4 Aflatus (see his Works, ed. 2, p. 24). In this, the system of the Aventine, the city being divided into two parts, the Roman tradition is that the place was selected by the Longes, a name which Despinianus had not through the rank of Hymettus alone. 5 P. 348. 6 Book 45. 7 Books 25, 26. 8 Book 25, 26. 9 Book 25, 26. 10 Book 25, 26. 11 Book 25, 26. 12 Book 25, 26. 13 Book 25, 26.
the legions of Spain. He led his Africans to the gates of Rome, where he found three armies in order of battle, prepared to receive him; but Hannibal dreaded the event of a combat, from which he could not hope to escape, unless he destroyed the last of his enemies; and his speedy retreat confounded the invincible courage of the Romans.

From the time of the Punic war, the uninterrupted succession of senators had preserved the name and image of the republic; and the degenerate subjects of Norbucius ambitiously derived their descent from the heroes who had repulsed the arms of Hannibal, and subdued the nations of the earth. The temporal honours, which the devout Paula inherited and despised, are carefully recapitulated by Jerome, the guide of her conscience, and the historian of her life. The genealogy of her father, Rogatus, which ascended as high as Agrippa, might seem to betray a Graecian origin; but her mother, Blasia, numbered the Scipios, Semilus Paula, and the Gracchi, in the list of her ancestors; and Tarquit, the husband of Paula, declared his royal lineage from Eumenes, the son of the father of the Julian line. To the vanity of the rich, who desired to be noble, was gratified by these lofty pretensions. Encouraged by the applause of their parasites, they easily imposed on the credulity of the vulgar; and were contemned, in some measure, by the custom of adopting the name of their patron, which had always prevailed among the freedmen and clients of illustrious families. Most of these families, however, attacked by so many causes of external violence or internal decay, were gradually extinguished: and it would be more reasonable to seek for a lineal descent of twenty generations, among the mountains of the Alps, or in the peaceful solitude of Apulia, than on the theatre of Rome, the seat of fortune, of danger, and of perpetual revolutions. Under each successive reign, and from every province of the empire, a crowd of hardy adventurers, rising to eminence by their talents or their vice, usurped the wealth, the honours, and the palace of Rome; and appointed, or protected, the poor and humble remain of consular families; who were ignorant, perhaps, of the glory of their ancestors.

In the time of Jerusalem and Claudian, the senators unanimously yielded the pre-eminence to the Anesian line; and a slight view of their history will serve to appreciate the rank and antiquity of the noble families, which contended only for the second place. During the five first ages of the city, the name of the Anicii was unknown; they appear to have derived their origin from Prunaeus; and the ambition of these new citizens was long satisfied with the plebeian honours of tribunes of the people. One hundred and sixty-eight years before the Christian era, the family was embarrassed by the pretorship of Anicius, who gloriously terminated the Illyrian war by the conquest of the nation, and the captivity of their king. From the triumph of that general, three consulships, in distant periods, mark the succession of the Anicius name. From the reign of Diocletian to the final extinction of the Western empire, that name shone with a lustre which was not eclipsed, in the public estimation, by the majesty of the Imperial purple. The several branches, to whom it was communicated, united, by marriage or inheritance, the wealth and titles of the Amanu, the Petronian, and the Olybrian houses; and in each generation the number of consulships was multiplied by an hereditary claim. The Anicii family excelled in faith and in riches: they were the first of the Roman senators who embraced Christianity; and it is probable that Anicius Julianus, who was afterwards consul and prefect of the city, atoned for his attachment to the party of Maxentius, by the readiness with which he accepted the religion of Constantine. Their ample patrimony was increased by the industry of Probus, the chief of the Anician family; who shared with Graecian the honours of the consulship, and exercised, four times, the high office of praetorian prefect. His immense estates were scattered over the wide extent of the Roman world; and though the public might suspect, or disapprove, the methods, by which they had been acquired; the generosity and magnificence of that fortunate statesman deserved the gratitude of his clients, and the admiration of strangers. Such was the respect entertained for his memory, that the two sons of Probus, in their earliest youth, and at the request of the
senate, were associated in the consular dignity; a
memorable distinction, without example in the
annals of Rome.

"The marbles of the Augustan age," said Pliny,
"were used as a proverbial expression of opulence and splendour;" but
the nobles and senators of Rome aspired, in due
gradation, to imitate that illustrious family. The
accurate description of the city, which was
composed in the Theodosian age, enumerates one
thousand seven hundred and eighty houses, the
residence of wealthy and honourable citizens.

Many of these stately mansions might almost
excuse the exaggeration of the poet; that Rome
contained a multitude of palaces, and that each
palace was equal to a city; since it included
within its own precincts, every thing, which could
be subservient either to use or luxury; markets,
hippodromes, temples, fountains, baths, porticoes,
studied groves, and artificial aves. The
historian Olypiodorus, who represents the state
of Rome when it was besieged by the Goths,
continues to observe, that several of the richest
senators received from their estates an annual
income of four thousand pounds of gold, above
one hundred and sixty thousand pounds sterling;
without computing what they derived from the
protection of corn and wines, which, if they were sold,
might have been equal in value one third of the
royalty. Compared to this immediate wealth, an
ordinary revenue of a thousand or fifteen
hundred pounds of gold might be considered as
no more than adequate to the dignity of the senator,
which required many expenses of a
public and ostentation kind. Several examples are
recorded, in the age of Honorius, of vain and
popular nobles, who celebrated the year of their
prerogative, by a festival, which lasted seven days,
and cost above one hundred thousand pounds
sterling. The estates of the Roman senators,
which so far exceeded the proportion of modern
wealth, were not confined to the limits of Italy.
They possessed, even as far beyond the Ionian
and Jazean seas, to the most distant provinces:
the city of Nicopolis, which Augustus had formed
as an eternal monument of the Augustan victory,
was the property of the count Paulus; and it is
observed by Seneca, that the rivers, which had
divided hostile nations, now flowed through the
lands of private citizens.

According to their
temper and circumstances, the estates of
the Romans were either cultivated by the labour of
their slaves, or granted, for a certain and stipulated
rent, to the industrious farmer. The economi-
cal writers of antiquity strenuously recommend
the former method, wherever it may be practi-
cable; but if the object should be removed, by
its distance or magnitude, from the immediate
eye of the master, they prefer the active care of
an old hereditary tenant, attached to the soil, and
interested in the produce, to the necessary admin-
istration of a negligent, perhaps an unfaithful,
steward.

The opulent nobles of an immense
capital, who were never excited by
the pursuit of military glory, and seldom engaged
in the occupations of civil government, naturally
reserved their leisure to the business and amuse-
ments of private life. At Rome, commerce was
always held in contempt; but the senators, from
the first age of the republic, increased their pa-
tronymy, and multiplied their clients, by the
lucrative practice of usury; and the obsequies of
the nobles were esteemed, or violated, by the
measure of their contributions and interest of
hereditary parts. A considerable sum of treasure
had always been raised at Rome, either in the current coin of the
empire, or in the form of gold and silver plate;
and there were many sideboards in the time of
Pliny, which contained more solid silver, than
had been transported by Scipio from vanquished
Carthage. The greater part of the nobles, who
disposed their fortunes in profuse luxury, found
themselves poor in the midst of wealth; and idle
in a constant round of dissipation. Their desires
were continually gratified by the labour of a
thousand hands; of the numerous train of their
domestic slaves, who were actuated by the fear
of punishment; and of the various professions
of artificers and merchants, who were more power-
fully impelled by the hopes of gain. The ancients
were destitute of many of the conveniences of
life, which have been invented or improved by
the progress of industry; and the plenty of glass
and linen has diffused more real comforts among
the modern nations of Europe, than the senators
of Rome could derive from all the refinements of
porous or unclear luxury. Their industry, and
their manners, have been the subject of minute
and laborious disquisition; but as such enquiries
would divert me too long from the design of the present work. I shall produce an authentic state of Rome and its inhabitants, which is more peculiarly applicable to the period of the Gothic invasion. Ammianus Marcellinus, who prudently chose the capital of the empire, as the residence best adapted to the historian of his own times, has mixed with the narrative of public events, a lively representation of the scenes with which he was familiarly conversant. The judicious reader will not always approve of the asperity of censure, the choice of circumstances, or the style of expression: he will perhaps detect the latent prejudices, and personal resentment, which colored the temper of Ammianus himself; but he will surely observe, with philosophic curiosity, the interesting and original picture of the manners of Rome.30

30. The greatness of Rome (such
and of fortune. The long period of her in-
ance was founded on the rare, and al-
most incredible, alliance of virtue
fancy was employed in a laborious struggle
against the tribes of Italy, the neighbours and
enemies of the rising city. In the strength
and ardor of youth, she sustained the storms
of war; carried her victorious arms beyond
the seas and the mountains; and brought
honor triumphant laurels from every country
of the globe. At length, verging towards old
age, and sometimes conquering by the terror
only of her name, she sought the blessings of
ease and tranquillity. The venerable city,
which had trampled on the necks of the fierce
nations; and established a system of laws, the
perpetual guardians of justice and freedom;
was content, like a wise and wealthy parent,
to devolve on the Caesars, her favourite sons,
the care of governing her ample patrimony.30

A severe and profound peace, such as had
been once enjoyed in the reign of Numa, suc-
cceeded to the tumults of a republic: while
Rome was still adored as the queen of the
earth; and the subject nations still reverenced
the name of the people, and the majesty of
the senate. But this native splendor (con-
tinues Ammianus) is degraded, and sundered,
by the conduct of some nobles; who, un-
mindful of their own dignity, and of that of
their country, assume an unbounded licence
of vice and folly. They contend with each
other in the empty vanity of titles and sur-
names; and curiously select, or invent, the
must lofty and sonorous appellations, Rhae-
rus, or Traburus, Pagorum, or Turrassus.30

30. It is not designed to us to explain the words which I have
often met with in the works of Ammianus. 3. I have taken down into one
place the whole narrative of the transgressions of the emperors,
and the most extraordinary actions of the civil and military
princes, with as much exactness and precision as the original.
4. I have done it in order to make it more easy to the reader.
With these observations, my readers will be found, and those indeed,
who are not ashamed to examine the truth of my statements.
5. The work, which seems to have been the history of Ammianus,
the emperor of this great monarch, in a much less costly style
than that which I have followed hitherto.
6. The same degree of accuracy which I am careful to keep
in my own works, I should always be careful to keep in those
of Ammianus, who was of great assistance to me in the study
of his works. I should always be careful to keep in those
works, which are so much inferior to his own works, and which
are not always so scrupulous of the truth, as he himself was.
7. The emperors, under whom the Romans, and the most noble
of their generals, were conducted, were of the most extraordinary
breed. The Augustus, the son of Augustus, the father of
Augustus, and the emperors of their line, were of the most
extraordinary breed. The Augustus, the son of Augustus, the
father of Augustus, and the emperors of their line, were of the
most extraordinary breed. The Augustus, the son of Augustus, the
father of Augustus, and the emperors of their line, were of the
most extraordinary breed. The Augustus, the son of Augustus, the
father of Augustus, and the emperors of their line, were of the
most extraordinary breed. The Augustus, the son of Augustus, the
father of Augustus, and the emperors of their line, were of the
most extraordinary breed. The Augustus, the son of Augustus, the
father of Augustus, and the emperors of their line, were of the
most extraordinary breed.
heroes undertake more arduous achievements; 56
they visit their estates in Italy, and procure 57
themselves, by the use of servile bands, the 58
amusements of the chase. 59 If at any time, 60
but more especially on a hot day, they have 61
courage to sail, in their painted galleys, from 62
the Lucrine lake 63 to their elegant villas on 64
the sea-coast of Puteoli and Cumae, 65 they 66
come it their own expeditions to the marches 67
of Caesar and Alexander. Yet should a fly 68
presume to settle on the silken folds of their 69
gilded umbrellas; should a sun-burnt penetr- 70 ate through some unguarded and impercept- 71 ible chink, they deplore their intolerable 72
hardships, and lamento, in affected language, 73
that they were not born in the land of the 74
Cimmerians, 69 the regions of eternal darkness. 75
In these journeys into the country 62 the whole 76
body of the household marches with their 77
master. In the same manner as the cavalry 78
and infantry, the heavy and the light armed 79
troops, the advanced guard and the rear, are 80
marshalled by the skill of their military lead- 81 ers; so the domestic officers, who bear a rod, 82
as an ensign of authority, distribute and ar- 83 range the numerous train of slaves and 84 invents. The baggage, also, proceeds in the 85 front; and are immediately followed by a mul- 86 titude of cooks, and inferior ministers, em- 87 ployed in the service of the kitchen, and of 88 the table. The main body is composed of a 89 promiscuous crowd of slaves, increased by 90 the accidental conourse of idle or dependent 91 plebeians. The rear is closed by the favourite 92 band of eunuchs, distributed from age to 93 age, according to the order of seniority. 94 Their numbers, and their deformity, excite 95 the horror of the indignant spectators, who are 96 ready to execrate the memory of Senemiris, 97 for the cruel art which she invented, of 98 frustrating the purposes of nature, and of 99 blasting in the bud the hopes of future gene- 100 rations. In the exercise of domestic juris- 101 diction, the nobles of Rome express an 102 exquisite sensibility for any personal injury, 103 and a contemptuous indifference for the rest 104 of the human species. When they have called 105 for warm water, if a slave has been tardy in his 106 obedience, he is instantly chastized with three 107 hundred lashes: but should the same slave 108 commit a wilful murder, the master will 109 mildly observe, that he is a worthless fellow; 110 but that, if he repeats the offence, he shall not 111 escape punishment. Hospitality was formerly 112 the virtue of the Romans; and every stranger, 113 who could plead either merit or misfortunes, 114 was relieved, or rewarded, by their generosity. 115 At present, if a foreigner, perhaps of no con- 116 testible rank, is introduced to one of the 117 proud and wealthy senators, he is welcomed 118 gladly in the first audience, with such warm 119 professions, and such kind enquiries, that he 120 retires, enchanted with the affability of his 121 illustrious friend, and full of regret that he 122 had so long delayed his journey to Rome, the 123 native seat of manners, as well as of empire. 124 Secure of a favourable reception, he repeats 125 his visit the ensuing day, and is mortified 126 by the discovery, that his person, his name, 127 and his country, are already forgotten. If he 128 still has resolution to persevere, he is gradually 129 numbered in the train of dependents, and ob- 130 tains the permission to pay his contributions 131 and unfrockable courts to a haughty patron, inex- 132 plicable of gratitude or friendship; who scarcely 133 deigns to remark his presence in his cellars, 134 or his return, when he finds him rich in 135 solemnities and popular entertainment: 136 whenever they celebrate, with profuse and per- 137 nicious luxury, their private banquets; the 138 choice of the guests is the subject of lawsuits 139 in deliberation. The modest, the sober, and the 140 learned, are seldom preferred; and the no- 141 menials, who are eminently swayed by 142 interested motives, have the address to in- 143 vert, in the list of invitations, the obscure 144 names of the most worthless of mankind. 145 But the frequent and familiar companions of 146 the great, are those parasites, who practise the 147 most useful of all arts, the art of flattery; who 148 eagerly applaud each word, and every action, 149 of their immortal patron; give with raptors 150 on his marble columns, and variegated pave- 151 ments; and strenuously praise the pomp and 152 elegance, which is taught to consider as 153 a part of his personal merit. At the Ro- 154 man tables, the birds, the squirrels, 155 or the 156 fish, which appear of an uncommon size, 157 are contemplated with curious attention; a 158 pair of scales is accurately applied, to ascer- 159 tain their real weight; and, while the more 160 rational guests are disgusted by the vain and 161
todioos repetition, rotaries are summoned to
atrest, by an authentic record, the truth of such
a marvellous event. Another method of in-
truction into the houses and society of the
great, is derived from the profession of gaming,
&c., as it is more politely styled, of play. The
confederates are united by a strict and indis-
ensible bond of friendship or rather of conspi-
racy; a superior degree of skill in the Tace-
sian art (which may be interpreted the game
of dice and tables) is a sure road to wealth
and reputation. A master of that sublime
science, who in a corner, or assembly, is placed
below a magistrate, displays in his countenance
the surprise and indignation which Cato might
be supposed to feel, when he was refused the
mastership by the votes of a capricious people.
The acquisition of knowledge seldom engages
the curiosity of the nobles, who abhor the fati-
tigue, and disdain the advantages, of study;
and the only books which they peruse are the
Satires of Juvenal, and the verbose and fabu-
lous histories of Marion Maximus. The
libraries, which they have inherited from
their fathers, are secularized, like dreary sepul-
chers, from the light of day. But the costly
instruments of the theatre, flutes, and enormous
lyres, and hydraulic organs, are constructed for
their use; and the harmony of vocal and instru-
mental music is incessantly repeated in the
palaces of Rome. In those palaces, sound is
preferred to sense, and the car of the body to
that of the mind. It is allowed, as a salutary
maxim, that the light and frivolous expenditure
of a contemptible multitude is of sufficient weight
to excite the visits of the most intimate
friends; and even the servants, who are de-
spatched to make the desolate enquiries, are not
suffered to return home, till they have under-
gone the ceremony of a previous ablation.
Yet this selfish and insatiable delicacy occa-
sionally yields to the more important passion
of avarice. The prospect of gain will urge a
rich and gouty senator as far as Spoleto; every
sentiment of arrogance and dignity is sub-
duced by the hopes of an inheritance, or even of
a legacy; and a wealthy, childless, citizen is the
most powerful of the Romans. The art of ob-
taining the signature of a favourable testament,
and sometimes of hastening the moment of its
execution, is perfectly understood; and it has
happened, that in the same house, though in
different apartments, a husband and a wife,
with the laudable design of over-reaching each
other, have summoned their respective lawyers,
to declare, at the same time, their mutual, but
contradictory, intentions. The distress which
follows and clusters extravagant luxury, often
reduces the great to the ease of the most humi-
nating expeditures. When they desire to box
now, they employ the base and supplanting
style of the slave in the comedy; but when
they are called upon to pay, they assume the
royal and tragic declamation of the grandsons
of Hercules. If the demand is rejected, they
readily procure some trusty escuyer, insti-
ted to maintain a charge of passion, or
magic, against the insolent creditor; who is
seldom released from prison, till he has signed
a discharge of the whole debt. These vices,
which degrade the moral character of the Ro-
mans, are mixed with a peculiar superstition,
that disgraces their understanding. They listen
with confidence to the predictions of harpin-
ectories, who pretend to read, in the entrails of
the victims, the signs of future greatness and
prosperity; and there are many who do not
presume either to battle, or to dine, or to
appear in public, till they have diligently
consulted, according to the rules of astro-
logy, the situation of Mercury, and the as-
pect of the moon. It is singular enough,
that this vain credulity may often be disco-
vered among the profane seers, who im-
piously doubt, or deny, the existence of a
celestial power.

In populous cities, which are the seat of commerce and manufac-
tures, the middle ranks of inhab-
itants, who derive their subsistence from the
dexterity, or labour, of their hands, are com-
monly the most prolific, the most useful, and, in
that sense, the most respectable, part of the com-
munity. But the plebeians of Rome, who dis-
claimed such sedentary and servile arts, had been
oppressed, from the earliest times, by the weight
of debt and injury; and the husbandman, during
the term of his military service, was obliged to
abandon the cultivation of his farm. The lands
of Italy which had been originally divided among
the families of free and indigent proprietors,
were insensibly purchased, or usurped, by the
avarice of the nobles; and in the age which pre-
ceded the fall of the republic, it was computed,
that only two thousand citizens were possessed of
any independent substance. Yet as long as
the people bestowed, by their suffrages, the ho-
ours of the state, the command of the legions,
and the administration of wealthy provinces, their
conscious pride alleviated, in some measure, the
hardships of poverty; and their wants were se-
cessively supplied by the ambitious liberality of
the candidates, who aspired to secure a vast maj-
ority in the thirty-five tribes, or the hundred
and

---

38 The trees, which might be transplanted by the same family name,
would not be cut down. For the art of rearing a Populus Herculis,
the Jews, and the Romans, have given us an example. The Jews,
who, at the time of their captivity, were dispersed among their
enemies, and where they were not permitted to practise their
profession, continued to have their names, to enjoy the shade of
their olive, and to sleep in the shadow of the same tree, which had
been transplanted from the garden of their forefathers, to the
Plains of Idumaea. See Dr. Burnet, in his Notes, vol ii. p. 171.

39 The Romans, we are told, plant a vine in the town of Fano, and
grow a fruit resembling the Syracusian, which they call Etrusca,
and they esteem it as a species of the Regale, which was celebrated
for its当作的 the most delicious of all those which are made in
Italy. See Dr. Burnet, in his Notes, vol ii. p. 171.

40 The stones, as we have already seen, were not cut down when
the temple was rebuilt, as they were set in another place, at least
as the same, or at the same cost, of future expense. See Secchi,

41 The Forum of Rome (see particularly u. 25) is full of the remains
of the fabric of the altar, and the marble columns, of which Dr.
Burnet has given us a description, and which were destroyed at
the time of the fire of the city. See Dr. Burnet, in his Notes, vol ii.
p. 174, 176, 177, 178, 179. Mr. Hume, and Dr. Burnet, have been
both mistaken in this, and have given the name of the Magna
Casa, in the story of the restoration of the temple, to the ruins of
the building, which was finished in the time of Augustus.

42 In the Cynthia from the country of the Romans, during the time
of the Republic. See Dr. Burnet, in his Notes, vol ii. p. 171.

43 The stones, as we have already seen, were not cut down when
the temple was rebuilt, as they were set in another place, at least
as the same, or at the same cost, of future expense. See Secchi,
imposed on Africa for the benefit of Rome, amounted to the weight of three millions of pounds, to the measure, perhaps, of three hundred thousand English gallons. IV. The anxiety of Augustus to provide the metropolis with sufficient plenty of corn, was not extended beyond that necessary article of human subsistence; and when the popular clamour accused the dearness and scarcity of wine, a proclamation was issued, by the grave reformer, to remind his subjects, that no man could reasonably complain of this, since the aqueducts of Agrigippa had introduced into the city so many copious streams of pure and salutary water. 16 This rigid subility was insensibly relaxed; and, although the generous design of Aurelianus 52 does not appear to have been executed in its full extent, the use of wine was allowed on very easy and liberal terms. The administration of the public cellars was delegated to a magistrate of honourable rank; and a considerable part of the vintage of Campania was reserved for the fortunate inhabitants of Rome.

The stupendous aqueducts, so justly celebrated by the praises of poetical bards, Augustus himself, replenished the Thermae, or baths, which had been constructed, in every part of the city, with Imperial magnificence. The baths of Anniusus Caracalla, which were open, at stated hours, for the indiscriminate service of the senators and the people, contained above six hundred seats of marble; and more than three thousand were reckoned in the baths of Diocletian. 53 The walls of the lofty apartments were covered with curious mosaics, that imitated the art of the pencil in the elegance of design, and the variety of colours. The Egyptian granite was beautifully incrusted with the precious green marble of Numidia; the perennial stream of hot water was poured into the capacious basins, through so many miles of mouths of height and massy silver; and the nearest Roman could purchase, with a small copper coin, the daily enjoyment of a scene of pump and luxury, which might excite the envy of the princes of Asia. 54 From these stately palaces issued a swarm of dirty and ragged plebeians, without shoes and without mantles; who loitered away whole days in the street or Forum, to hear news, and to hold disputes; who dissipated away whole nights in extravagant gaming, the miserable pittance of their wives and children; and spent the hours of the night in obscene taverns and brothels, in the indulgence of gross and vulgar sensuality.

Augustus, being in the habit of being the frequenter of the baths, and the consequent of his numerous habitations, took particular care of the baths of the city; and, as he was so partial to the people, he was at no expense to make them as convenient as possible; and, at a time when the public buildings of the city were very scanty, he caused the baths of Anniusus Caracalla to be erected, which were open, at stated hours, for the indiscriminate service of the senators and the people.

The baths of Diocletian were celebrated for their magnificence, and the variety of their apartments; the walls of which were covered with curious mosaics, that imitated the art of the pencil in the elegance of design, and the variety of colours. The Egyptian granite was beautifully incrusted with the precious green marble of Numidia; the perennial stream of hot water was poured into the capacious basins, through so many miles of mouths of height and massy silver; and the nearest Roman could purchase, with a small copper coin, the daily enjoyment of a scene of pump and luxury, which might excite the envy of the princes of Asia. From these stately palaces issued a swarm of dirty and ragged plebeians, without shoes and without mantles; who loitered away whole days in the street or Forum, to hear news, and to hold disputes; who dissipated away whole nights in extravagant gaming, the miserable pittance of their wives and children; and spent the hours of the night in obscene taverns and brothels, in the indulgence of gross and vulgar sensuality.
But the most lively and splendid amusement of the idle multitude, depended on the frequent exhibition of public games and spectacles. The pietas of Christian princes had suppressed the inhuman contests of gladiators; but the Roman people still considered the Circus as their home, their temple, and the seat of the republic. The imperial crowd rushed at the dawn of day to secure their places, and there were men who passed a sleeping season in the adjacent porticos. From the morning to the evening, careless of the sun, or of the rain, the spectators, who sometimes amounted to the number of four hundred thousand, remained in eager attention; their eyes fixed on the horses and charioteers, their minds agitated with hope and fear, for the success of the colors which they espoused; and the happiness of Rome appeared to hang on the event of a race. The same immoderate ardor inspired their clamors, and their applause, as often as they were entertained with the hunting of wild beasts, and the various modes of theatrical representation. These representations in modern capitals may deserve to be considered as a pure and elegant school of taste, and perhaps of virtue. But the Tragic and Comic Muse of the Romans, who seldom aspired beyond the imitation of Attic genius, had been almost totally silent since the fall of the republic; and their place was unworthily occupied by licentious farces, effeminate music, and splendid pageantry. The pantomimes, who maintained their reputation from the age of Augustus to the sixth century, expressed, without the use of words, the various fables of the gods and heroes of antiquity; and the perfection of their art, which sometimes disarmed the gravity of the philosopher, always excited the applause and wonder of the people. The vast and magnificent theatres of Rome were filled by three thousand female dancers, and by three thousand singers, with the masters of the respective choirs. Such was the popular favour which they enjoyed, that, in a time of scarcity, when all strangers were banished from the city, the merit of contributing to the public pleasures exempted them from a law which was strictly executed against the professors of the liberal arts.

It is said, that the foolish curiosity of Elogabalus attempted to discover, from the quantity of soldiers' webs, the number of the inhabitants of Rome. A more rational method of inquiry might not have been observed in the attention of the wisest prince, who could easily have resolved a question so important for the Roman government, and so interesting to succeeding ages. The births and deaths of the citizens were duly registered; and if any writer of antiquity had condescended to mention the usual amount, or the common average, we might now produce some satisfactory calculation, which would destroy the extravagant assertions of critics, and perhaps confirm the modest and probable conjectures of philosophers. The most diligent researches have collected only the following circumstances; which, slight and imperfect as they are, may tend, in some degree, to illustrate the question of the population of ancient Rome. When the capital of the empire was besieged by the Goths, the circuit of the walls was accurately measured by Ammianus, the mathematician, who found it equal to twenty-one miles. It should not be forgotten that the form of the city was almost that of a circle; the geometrical figure which is known to contain the largest space within any given circumference. The architect Vitruvius, who flourished in the Augustan age, and whose evidence, on this occasion, has peculiar weight and authority, observes, that the inconsiderable habitations of the Roman people would have spread themselves far beyond the narrow limits of the city; and that the want of ground, which was probably contracted on every side by gardens and villas, suggested the common, though inconvenient, practice of raising the houses to a considerable height in the air. But the littleness of these buildings, which often consisted of hasty work and insufficient materials, was the cause of frequent and fatal accidents; and it was repeatedly enacted by Augustus, as well as by Nero, that the height of private edifices within the walls of Rome, should not exceed the measure of seventy feet from the ground. Juvenal 111. lamants, as it should seem from his own experience, the hardships of the poorer citizens, to whom he addresses the satirical advice of emigrating, without delay, from the smoke of Rome, since they might purchase, in the little towns of Italy, a cheerful commodious dwelling, at the same price which
they annually paid for a dark and miserable lodging. House-rent was therefore immediately dear; the rich acquired, at an enormous expense, the ground, which they covered with palaces and gardens; but the body of the Roman people was crowded into a narrow space; and the different floors, and apartments, of the same house, were divided, as it is still the custom of Paris, and other cities, among several families of plebeians. IV. The total number of houses in the fourteen regions of the city, is accurately stated in the description of Rome, composed under the reign of Theodosius, and they amount to forty-eight thousand three hundred and eighty-two. The two classes of coloni and of naves, into which they are divided, include all the habitations of the capital, of every rank and condition, from the marble palace of the Antelc, with a numerous establishment of freedmen and slaves, to the lofty and narrow lodging-house, where the poet Corini, and his wife, were permitted to hire a wretched garret immediately under the tiles. If we adopt the same average, which, under similar circumstances, has been found applicable to Paris, and indifferently allow about twenty-five persons for each house, of every degree, we may fairly estimate the inhabitants of Rome at twelve hundred thousand; a number which cannot be thought excessive for the capital of a mighty empire, though it exceeds the populousness of the greatest cities of modern Europe.

Such was the state of Rome under the reign of Honorius; at the time when the Gothic arms formed the siege, or rather the blockade, of the city. By a skilful disposition of his numerous forces, who impatiently watched the moment of an assault, Alaric encompassed the walls, commanded the twelve principal gates, intercepted all communication with the adjacent country, and vigilantly guarded the navigation of the Tyber, from which the Romans derived the surest and most plentiful supply of provisions. The first emotions of the nobles, and of the people, were those of surprise and indignation, that a vile barbarian should dare to insult the capital of the world; but their embarrassment was soon hurried by misfortune; and their unwomanly rage, instead of being directed against an enemy in arms, was indignantly exercised on a defenceless and innocent victim. Perhaps in the person of Serena, the Romans might have respected the niece of Theodosius, the aunt, may even the adoptive mother, of the reigning emperor; but they abhorred the widow of Stilicho; and they listened with credulous passion to the tale of calumny, which accused her of maintaining a secret and criminal correspondence with the Goth invaders. Actuated, or overawed, by the same popular frenzy, the senate, without requiring any evidence of her guilt, pronounced the sentence of her death. Serena was ignominiously strangled; and the infatuated multitude were astonished to find, that this cruel act of injustice did not immediately produce the retreat of the barbarians, and the deliverance of the city. That unfortunate city gradually experienced the distress of scarcity, and at length the horrid calamities of famine. The daily allowance of three pounds of bread was reduced to one half, to one third, to nothing; and the price of corn still continued to rise in a rapid and extravagant proportion. The poorer citizens, who were unable to purchase the necessaries of life, solicited the praetorian charity of the rich; and for a while the public misery was alleviated by the humanity of Lata, the widow of the emperor Gratian, who had fixed her residence at Rome, and consecrated, to the use of the indigent, the princely revenue, which she annually received from the grateful successors of her husband. But these private and temporary disbursements were insufficient to appease the hunger of a numerous people, and to avert the progress of famine dreaded by all the palaces of the senators themselves.

The perils of both sexes, who had been educated in the enjoyment of ease and luxury, discovered how little it is requisite to supply the demands of nature; and they lavished their unvarying treasures of gold and silver, to obtain the coarse and scanty sustenance which they would formerly have rejected with disdain. The food the most repugnant to sense or imagination, the aliment the most unwholesome and pernicious to the constitution, were eagerly devoured, and fiercely disputed, by the rage of hunger. A dark suspicion was entertained, that some desperate wretches fed on the bodies of their fellow-creatures, whom they had secretly murdered; and even mothers (such was the barbarous conflict of the two most powerful passions implanted by nature in the human breast), even mothers are said to have tasted the flesh of their slaughtered infants! Many thousands of the inhabitants of Rome expired in their homes, or in the streets, for want of sustenance; and as the public sepulchres without the walls were in the power of the enemy, the stench, which arose from so many putrid and unburied corpses, infected the air; and the miseries of famine were succeeded and aggravated by the contagion of a pestilential disease.

The assurances of speedy and effectual relief, which were repeatedly transmitted from the court of Ravenna, supported, for some time, the faltering resolution of the Romans, till at length the despair of the human soul tempted them to accept the offers of a preternatural deliverance. Temptations, prefect

---

35 This sum total is composed of 1280 houses, or great houses, of 16,000 baths, or public baths numbered in Capito, Nervis, Rome dated 12 May, A.D. 393. The Roman names are divided into three groups of the different Natives, Tragedians, 1st, 4th, p. 435, 460. 36 See the chart of the Domicates of the city of Rome, in Popolin, p. 172-173. For the enumeration of the houses, see the chart of the area of the houses of Bonn, 1st, 4th, p. 435, 460. 37 This enumeration is not very different from that of the 36th. M. Bonn, in the chart of the city of Rome, the chart of the Domicates, 1st, 4th, p. 270, etc., and those of the houses of the different Natives, Tragedians, 1st, 14th, p. 435, 460. 38 In the number of houses of Bonn, 1st, 4th, p. 435, 460. In the number of houses of Bonn, 1st, 4th, p. 435, 460. In the number of houses of Bonn, 1st, 4th, p. 435, 460. In the number of houses of Bonn, 1st, 4th, p. 435, 460. In the number of houses of Bonn, 1st, 4th, p. 435, 460. In the number of houses of Bonn, 1st, 4th, p. 435, 460. In the number of houses of Bonn, 1st, 4th, p. 435, 460. In the number of houses of Bonn, 1st, 4th, p. 435, 460.

155
of the city, had been persuaded, by the art or fanaticism of some Tuscan diviners, that, by the mysterious force of spells and sacrifices, they could extract the lightning from the clouds, and point those celestial fires against the camp of the barbarians. 77 The important secret was communicated to Innocent, the bishop of Rome; and the successor of St. Peter is accused, perhaps without foundation, of prevailing the safety of the republic to the rigid severity of the Christian worship. But, when the question was agitated in the senate, when it was proposed, as an essential condition, that those sacrifices should be performed in the Capitol, by the authority, and in the presence, of the magistrates; the majority of that respectable assembly, apprehensive either of the Divine, or of the Imperial, displeasure, refused to join in an act, which appeared almost equivalent to the public restoration of Paganism. 78

The last resource of the Romans was in the democratic, or at least in the moderation, of the king of the Goths. The senate, who, in this emergency assumed the supreme powers of government, appointed two ambassadors to negotiate with the enemy. This important trust was delegated to Basilius, a senator, of Spanish extraction, and already conspicuous in the administration of provinces; and to John, the first tribune of the notables, who was peculiarly qualified, by his dexterity in business, as well as by his former intimacy with the Gothic prince. When they were introduced into his presence, they declared, perhaps in a more lofty style than became their object condition, that the Romans were resolved to maintain their dignity, either in peace or war; and that, if Alaric refused a fair and honourable capitulation, he might sound his trumpets, and prepare to give battle to an innumerable people, exercised in arms, and animated by despair. "The thicker the hay, the easier it is mowed," was the concise reply of the barbarian; and this rustic metaphor was accompanied by a loud and insulting laugh, expressive of his contempt for the menaces of an unworthy populace, exasperated by luxury before they were exclaimed by famine. He then condescended to fix the ransom, which he would accept as the price of his retreat from the walls of Rome: all the gold and silver in the city, whether it were the property of the state, or of individuals; all the rich and precious moveables; and all the slaves who could prove their title to the name of barbarians. The ministers of the senate presumed to ask, in a modest and suppliant tone, "If such, O king! are your demands, what do you intend to leave us?"

77 Romani a. p. 355. 78. marks of those conspiracy, the a Tuscany. In the time of the internal division of Rome and Tuscany, a priest, that they never received the submission of the prince. The senate were the principal. . . . The princes, which was never granted, to Styles this matter in the letter, which had been written by a German monk, to Rhabal, bishop of Milan. They were good friends from the death of his predecessor. (March the 3d, A. D. 498) which took, and implored him to

78 Romani a. p. 47. states, that the experience was suc-
Olympius, it is said, might have continued to insult the just resentment of a people, who loudly accused him as the author of the public calamity; but his power was undermined by the secret intrigues of the palace. The favourite eunuchs transferred the government of Honorius, and the empire, to Jovinus, the praetorian prefect; an unworthy servant, who did not shun, by the spirit of personal attachment, for the errors and misfortunes of his administration. The exile, or escape, of the guilty Olympius, reserved him for more vicissitudes of fortune: he experienced the adventures of an obscure and wandering life; he again rose to power; he fell a second time into disgrace; his ears were cut off; he expired under the lash; and his ignominious death afforded a grateful spectacle to the friends of Silicho. After the removal of Olympius, whose character was deeply tainted with religious fanatisme, the Pagans and heretics were delivered from the impolitic proscription, which excluded them from the dignities of the state. The brave Gennerid, a soldier of barbarian origin, who still adhered to the worship of his ancestors, had been obliged to lay aside the military belt; and though he was repeatedly summoned by the emperor himself, that laws were not made for persons of his rank or merit, he refused to accept my partial dispensation, and persevered in honourable disgrace, till he had attained a general act of justice from the distress of the Roman government. The conduct of Gennerid, in the important station, to which he was promoted or restored, of master-general of Dalmatia, Pannonia, Noricum, and Hunita, seemed to revive the discipline and spirit of the republic. From a life of idleness and want, his troops were soon habituated to severe exercise, and plentiful subsistence; and his private generosity often supplied the rewards, which were denied by the avarice, or poverty, of the court of Ravenna. The valor of Gennerid, formidable to the adjacent barbarians, was the firmest bulwark of the Illyrian frontier; and his vigilant care assisted the empire with a reinforcement of ten thousand Huns, who arrived on the confines of Italy, destined by such a convey of junctions, and such a numerous train of 'swords and spears,' as might have been sufficient, not only for the march of an army, but for the settlement of a colony. But the court and councils of Honorius still remained a scene of weakness and distraction, of corruption and anarchy. Instigated by the perfidous Jovius, the guards rose in furious mutiny, and demanded the heads of two generals, and of the two principal eunuchs. The generals, under a pernicious promise of safety, were sent on ship-board, and privately executed; while the favour of the eunuchs procured them a mild and secure exile at Milan and Constantinople. Enraged the eunuch, and the barbarian Allobrich, succeeded to the command of the bodchamber and of the guards; and the mutual jealousy

---

38 The text between Alaric and the Romans, etc. is taken from
Heer's, L. p. 324, 325, 326, 327, 328. The additional remarks
are in the noted footnotes.
39 Cosmas, L. p. 324, 325, 326. This bishop, by succeeding to
his father's episcopal see, lived and died a bishop of Constanti-
40 For the adventures of Olympius, and his enemies in the senate.
42 Ed. (24) The emperor, in his anger, condemned the bishop of
Constantinople to death, and declared that the bishops of
Bavaria, in compliance of the law, which had been just enacted,
were entitled to the privilege in such cases.
43 Cosmas, L. p. 324, 325, 326. For the reasons of the eunuch,
the eunuch, and the barbarian Allobrich, succeeded to the
command of the bodchamber and of the guards; and the mutual jealousy
of those subordinate ministers was the cause of their mutual destruction. By the insolent order of the count of the domestics, the great chamberlain was shamefully beaten to death with sticks, before the eyes of the astonished emperor; and the subsequent assassination of Allobro, in the midst of a public procession, is the only circumstance of his life, in which Honorius discovered the faintest symptom of courage or resentment. Yet, before they fell, Eusebius and Allobro had contributed their part to the ruin of the empire, by opposing the conclusion of a treaty which Jovius, from a selfish, and perhaps a criminal, motive, had negotiated with Alaric, in a personal interview under the walls of Rimini. During the absence of Jovius, the emperor was persuaded to assume a lofty tone of inflexible dignity, such as neither his situation, nor his character, could enable him to support; and a letter, signed with the name of Honorius, was immediately despatched to the praetorian prefect, granting him a free permission to dispose of the public money, but sternly refusing to prostitute the military honours of Rome to the usual demands of a barbarian. This letter was incoherently communicated to Alaric himself; and the Goth, who in the whole transaction had believed with temper and docility, expressed, in the most outrageous language, his lively sense of the insult so wantonly offered to his person, and to his nation. The conference of Rimini was hastily interrupted; and the prefect Jovius, on his return to Ravenna, was compelled to adopt, and even to encourage, the fashionable opinions of the court. By his advice and example, the principal officers of the state and army were obliged to swear, that, without listening, in any circumstances, to any conditions of peace, they would still persevere in perpetual and impalpable war against the enemy of the republic. This rash engagement opposed an insuperable bar to all future negociations. The ministers of Honorius were heard to declare, that, if they had only invoked the name of the Deity, they would consult the public safety, and trust their cause to the mercy of Heaven; but they had sworn by the sacred head of the emperor himself: they had touched, in solemn ceremony, that august seat of majesty and wisdom; and the violation of their oath would expose them to the invariable penalties of sacrilege and rebellion.  

While the emperor and his court enjoyed, with sultry peace, the security of the marshes and fortin-
cations of Ravenna, they abandoned Rome, almost without defence, to the resumption of Alaric. Yet such was the moderation which he still preserved, or affected, that, as he moved with his army along the Flaminian way, he successively despatched the bishops of the towns of Italy to reseat his offer of peace, and to conjure the emperor, that he would save the city and its inhabitants from hostile fire, and the sword of the barbarians. These impeding calamities were however averted, not indeed by the wisdom of Honorius, but by the prudence or humanity of the Gothic king; who employed a mediator, though not less effectual, method of conquest. Instead of assaulting the capital, he successively directed his efforts against the Port of Ostia, one of the holiest and most stupendous works of Roman magnificence. The accidents to which the precarious subsistence of the city was continually exposed in a winter navigation, and an open road, had suggested to the genius of the first Caesar the useful design, which was executed under the reign of Claudius. The artificial mole, which formed the narrow entrance, advanced far into the sea, and firmly repelled the fury of the waves; while the largest vessels securely rode at anchor within three deep and capacious basins, which received the northern branch of the Tyber, about two miles from the ancient colony of Ostia. The Roman Port insensibly swelled to the size of an episcopal city, where the corn of Africa was deposited in spacious granaries for the use of the capital. As soon as Alaric was in possession of that important place, he summoned the city to surrender at discretion; and his demands were enforced by the positive declaration, that a refusal, or even a delay, should be instantly followed by the destruction of the magazines, on which the life of the Roman people depended. The clamours of that people, and the terror of famine, subdued the pride of the senate: they listened, without reluctance, to the proposal of placing a new emperor on the throne of the unworthy Honorius; and the suffrage of the Gothic conqueror bestowed the purple on Attilius, prefect of the city. The grateful monarch immediately acknowledged his protector as master-general of the armies of the West; Adolphus, with the rank of count of the domestics, obtained the custody of the person of Attilus; and the two hostile nations seemed to be united in the closest bands of friendship and alliance.
The gates of the city were thrown open, and the new emperor, the Romans, encompassed on every side by the Gothic arms, was conducted, in tumultuous procession, to the palace of Augustus and Trajan. After the distribution of the civil and military dignities among his favourites and followers, Attalus convened an assembly of the senate; before whom, in a formal and florid speech, he asserted his resolution of restoring the majesty of the republic, and of uniting to the empire the provinces of Egypt and the East, which had once acknowledged the sovereignty of Rome. Such extravagant promises inspired every reasonable citizen with just contempt for the character of an unserious negotiator; whose elevation was the deepest and most ignominious wound which the republic had yet sustained from the insolence of the barbarians. But the populace, with their usual levity, applauded the change of masters. The public discontent was favourable to the rival of Honorius; and the sectaries, oppressed by his persecuting edicts, expected some degree of countenance, or at least of toleration, from a prince, who, in his native country of Lyons, had been educated in the Pagan superstition, and who had since received the sacrament of baptism from the hands of an Athan bishop. The first days of the reign of Attalus were fair and prosperous. An officer of confidence was sent with an inconsiderable body of troops to secure the obedience of Africa; the greatest part of Italy submitted to the terror of the Gothic powers; and though the city of Bologna made a rigorous and effectual resistance, the people of Milan, dissatisfied perhaps with the absence of Honorius, accepted, with loud acclamations, the choice of the Huns senate. At the head of a formidable army, Alaric conducted his royal captive almost to the gates of Ravenna; and a solemn embassy of the principal ministers, of Jovinus, the praetorian prefect, of Valens, minister of the cavalry and infantry, of the quaestor Patmiatus, and of Julian, the first of the senators, was introduced, with martial pomp, into the Gothic camp. In the name of their sovereign, they consented to acknowledge the lawful election of his successor, and to divide the provinces of Italy and the West between the two emperors. Their proposals were rejected with disdain; and the refusal was aggravated by the insulting appeal of Attalus, who, condescending to promise, that, if Honorius would instantly resign the purple, he should be permitted to pass the remainder of his life in the peaceful exile of some remote island. So desperate indeed did the situation of the son of Theodosius appear, to those who were the best acquainted with his strength and resources, that Jovinus and Valens, his minister and his general, betrayed their trust, infamous deserted the sinking cause of their country, and devoted their treacherous allegiance to the service of his more fortunate rival. Astonished by such examples of domestic treason, Honorius trembled at the approach of every servant, at the arrival of every messenger. He disguised the secret enemies, who might lurk in his capital, his palace, his bedchamber; and some ships lay ready in the harbour of Ravenna, to transport the adlentenced monarch to the dominions of his infant nephew, the emperor of the East.

But there is a Procedere (such at least was the opinion of the historian Procopius) that, through innumerable and folly; and the pretensions of Honorius to its peculiar care cannot reasonably be disputed. At the moment when his despair, incapable of any wise or manly resolution, manifested a shameful flight, a reasonable reinforcement of four thousand veterans unexpectedly landed in the port of Ravenna. To these valiant strangers, whose fidelity had not been corrupted by the fictions of the court, he committed the walls and gates of the city; and the slumberers of the emperor were no longer disturbed by the apprehension of imminent and internal danger. The favourable intelligence which was received from Africa suddenly changed the opinions of men, and the state of public affairs. The troops and officers, whom Attalus had sent into the province, were defeated and slain; and the active zeal of Honorius maintained his own allegiance, and that of his people. The faithful count of Africa transmitted a large sum of money, which fixed the attachment of the Imperial guards; and his vigilance, in preventing the exportation of corn and oil, introduced famine, tumult, and discontent, into the walls of Rome. The failure of the African expedition was the source of mutual complaint and recrimination in the party of Attalus; and the mind of his protector was insensibly alienated from the interest of a prince, who wanted spirit to command, or dexterity to obey. The most imprudent measures were adopted, without the knowledge, or even the advice, of Alaric; and the obstinate refusal of the senate, to allow, in the embarkation, the mixture even of five hundred Goths, betrayed a suspicious and distrustful temper, which, in their situation, was neither generous nor prudent. The resentment of the Gothic king was augmented by the malicious arts of Jovinus, who had been raised to the rank of patrician, and who afterwards excused his double perfidy, by declaring, without a blush, that he had only access to abandon the service of Honorius, more effectually to ruin the cause of the usurper. In a large plain near Rimini, and in the presence of an innumerable multitude of Romans and barbarians, the wretched Attalus was publicly disembowed of the diadem and purple; and those valued of royalty were sent by Alaric, as the pledge of peace and friendship, to the sons of Theodosius. The officers who returned to their duty, were reinstated in their employments, and the emperor Honorius before he went into exile. But this accession of glory was disturbed by the impolitic measures of Honorius, and by the perfidy of Jovinus. 55 He seized his dominions as fast, as he declared that he should have captured.
and even the merit of a tardy repentance was graciously allowed; but the degraded emperor of the Romans, desirous of life, and anxious to escape disgrace, implored the permission of following the Gothic camp; in the train of a haughty and captious individual."  

The death of Attila removed the only real obstacle to the conclusion of the peace; and Alaric advanced within three miles of Ravenna, to press the irresolution of the Imperial officers, whose insistance soon returned with the return of fortune. His indignation was kindled by the report, that a rival chieftain, that Seraus, the personal enemy of Adolphus, and the hereditary foe of the house of Beth, had been received into the palace. At the head of three hundred followers, that fearless barbarian immediately saluted from the gates of Ravenna, surprised, and cut in pieces, a considerable body of Goths; re-entered the city in triumph; and was permitted to insult his adversary, by the voice of a herald, who publicly declared that the guilt of Alaric had for ever excluded him from the friendship and alliance of the emperor. The crime and folly of the court of Ravenna was expiated, a third time, by the calamities of Rome. The King of the Goths, who no longer assembled his appietists for plunder and revenge, appeared in arms under the walls of the capital; and the trembling senate, without any hopes of relief, prepared, by a desperate resistance, to delay the ruin of their country. But they were unable to guard against the secret conspiracies of their slaves and domestics; who, either from birth or interest, were attached to the cause of the enemy. At the hour of midnight, the Salarian gate was silently opened, and the inhabitants were awakened by the tremendous sound of the Gothic trumpet. Eleven hundred and sixty-three years after the foundation of Rome, the Imperial city, which had subdued and civilized so considerable a part of mankind, was delivered to the licentious fury of the tribes of Germany and Scythia.

The proclamation of Alaric, when he forced his entrance into a vanni-
ished city, discovered, however, some regard for the laws of humanity and religion. He encouraged his troops boldly to seize the rewards of war, and to enrich themselves with the spoils of a wealthy and effeminate people; but he exhorted them, at the same time, to spare the lives of the resisting citizens, and to respect the churches of the apostles, St. Peter and St. Paul, as holy and inviolable sanctuaries. Amidst the horrors of a nocturnal tumult, several of the Christian Goths displayed the fervent of a recent conversion; and some instances of their uncommon piety and moderation are related, and perhaps ascribed, by the zeal of ecclesiastical writers. While the barbarians remained through the city in quest of prey, the humble dwelling of an aged virgin, who had devoted her life to the service of the altar, was forced open by one of the powerful Goths. He immediately demanded, though in civil language, all the gold and silver in her possession; and was astonished at the readiness with which she conducted him to a splendid heap of assays plate, of the richest materials, and the most curious workmanship. The barbarian viewed with wonder and delight this valuable acquisition, till he was interrupted by a solemn admonition, addressed to him in the following words: "These," said she, "are the consecrated vessels belonging to St. Peter; if you presume to touch them, the sacrilegious deed will remain on your conscience. For my part, I desire not to keep what I am unable to defend." The Gothic captain, struck with reverence and awe, despatched a messenger to inform the king of the treasure which he had discovered; and received a peremptory order from Alaric, that all the consecrated plate and ornaments should be transported, without damage or delay, to the church of the apostles. From the extremity, perhaps, of the Quirinal hill, to the distant quarter of the Vatican, a numerous detachment of Goths, marching in order of battle through the principal streets, protected, with glittering arms, the long train of their devout companions, who bore aloft, on their heads, the sacred vessels of gold and silver; and the martial shouts of the barbarians mingled with the sound of religious psalms. From all the adjacent houses, a crowd of Christians hastened to join this edifying procession; and a multitude of fugitives, without distinction of age, or rank, or even of sect, had the good fortune to escape to the secure and hospitable sanctuary of the Vatican. The learned work concerning the City of God, was professedly composed by St. Augustine, to justify the ways of Providence in the destruction of the Roman greatness. He celebrates, with peculiar satisfaction, this memorable triumph of Christ; and insulfa his adversaries, by challenging them to produce some similar example of a town taken by storm, in which the fabulous gods of antiquity had been able to protect either themselves or their deluded votaries.

In the sack of Rome, some rare and extraordinary examples of bar-
barian virtue had been deservedly applauded. But the holy precincts of the Vatican, and the apostolic churches, could receive a very small
proportion of the Roman people; many thousand warriors, especially of the Huns, who were born under the standard of Alaric, were strangers to the name, or at least to the faith, of Christ; and we may suspect, without any branch of charity or candour, that, in the hour of savage licence, when every passion was inflamed, and every restraint was removed, the precepts of the Gospel seldom influenced the behaviour of the Gothic Christians. The writers, the best disposed to exaggerate their cruelty, have freely confessed, that a cruel slaughter was made of the Romans; and that the streets of the city were filled with dead bodies, which remained without burial, during the general consternation. The despair of the citizens was sometimes converted into fury; and whenever the barbarians were provoked by opposition, they attended the parricide massacre to the female, the innocent, and the helpless. The private service of forty thousand slaves was exercised without pity or remorse; and the ignominious lashes, which they had formerly received, were washed away in the blood of the guilty, or obnoxious, families. The matrons and virgins of Rome were exposed to injuries more dreadful, in the apprehension of chastity, than death itself; and the ecclesiastical historian has selected an example of female virtue, for the admiration of future ages. A Roman lady, of singular beauty, and orthodox faith, but not excelling the impatient desires of a young Celt, who, according to the miraculous report of Skamnian, was attached to the Arian heresy. Exasperated by her obstinate resistance, he drew his sword, and, with the anger of a lover, slightly wounded her neck. The bleeding heroine still continued to bear his resentment, and to repel his love, till the ravisher desisted from his unavailing efforts, respectfully conducted her to the sanctuary of the Vatican, and gave six pieces of gold to the guards of the church, on condition that they should restore her inviolacy to the arms of her husband. Such instances of courage and generosity were not extremely common. The brutal soldiers satisfied their sensual appetites, without consulting either the inclination, or the duties, of their female captives; and a nice question of conscience was seriously agitated. Whether these tender victims, who had industriously refused their consent to the violation which they sustained, had lost, by their misfortunes, the glorious crown of virginity? There were other losses indeed of a more substantial kind, and more general concern. It cannot be presumed, that all the barbarians were at all times capable of perpetrating such anxious outrages; and the want of youth, or beauty, or chastity, protected the greatest part of the Roman women from the danger of a rape. But war is an inanimate and universal passion; since the enjoyment of almost every object that can afford pleasure to the different tastes and temperaments of mankind may be procured by the possession of wealth. In the pillage of Rome, a just preference was given to gold and jewels, which contain the greatest value in the smallest compass and weight; but, after these portable riches were removed by the more diligent robbers, the palaces of Rome were rudely stripped of their splendid and costly furniture. The plate, the vessels, and the vases of silver and gold were irregularly piled in the wagons, that always followed the march of a Gothic army. The most exquisite works of art were roughly handled, or wantonly destroyed; many a statue was melted for the sake of the precious materials; and many a vase, in the division of the spoil, was shattered into fragments by the stroke of a battle-axe. The acquisition of riches served only to stimulate the avarice of the rapacious barbarians, who were seduced, by threats, by bribes, and by torture, to force from their prisoners the confession of hidden treasures. Visitable splendour and expense were alleged as the proof of a plentiful fortune; the appearance of poverty was imputed to a parsimonious disposition; and the obscurity of some minor, who abjured the most cruel torments before they would discover the secret object of their affection, was fatal to many unhappy wretches, who expired under the lash, for refusing to reveal their imaginary treasures. The edifices of Rome, though the damage has been much exaggerated, received some injury from the violence of the Goths. At their entrance through the Suburan gate, they fired the adjacent houses, to guide their march, and to distract the attention of the citizens. The flames, which encountered no obstacle in the disorder of the night, consumed many private and public buildings; and the ruins of the palace of Salon were, in the age of Justinian, a stately monument of the Gothic conquest. Yet a contemporary historian has observed, that fire could scarcely consume the enormous bowers of solid brass, and that the strength of man was
insufficient to subvert the foundations of ancient structures. Some truth may possibly be concealed in his devout assertion, that the wrath of Heaven supplied the imperfections of hostile rage; and that the proud Festus of Rome, decorated with the statues of so many gods and heroes, was levelled in the dust by the stroke of lightning. Whatever might be the numbers, of equestrian, or plebeian rank, who perished in the massacre of Rome, it is confidently affirmed, that only one senator lost his life by the sword of the enemy. But it was not easy to compute the multitudes, who, from an honourable station, and a prosperous fortune, were suddenly reduced to the miserable condition of captives and exiles. As the barbarians had more occasion for money than for slaves, they fixed, at a moderate price, the redemption of their indignant prisoners; and the ransom was often paid by the benevolence of their friends, or the charity of strangers. The captives, who were regularly sold, either in open market, or by private contract, would have legally regained their native freedom, which it was impossible for a citizen to lose, or to alienate. But as it was soon discovered, that the vindication of their liberty would endanger their lives; and that the Goths, unless they were tempted to sell, might be provoked to murder, their useless prisoners; the civil jurisprudence had been already qualified by a wise regulation, that they should be obliged to serve the moderate term of five years, till they had discharged by their labour the price of their redemption. The nations who invaded the Roman empire, had driven before them, into Italy, whole troops of hungry and affrighted provincials, less appreciative of servitude than of famine. The calamities of Rome and Italy dispersed the inhabitants to the most lonely, the most secure, the most distant places of refuge. While the Gothic cavalry spread terror and desolation along the coast of Campania and Tuscany, the little island of Elysium, separated by a narrow channel from the Argolid, its promontory, repulsed, or eluded, their hostile attempts; and at so small a distance from Rome, great numbers of citizens were securely concealed in the thick woods of that sequestered spot. The ample patrimony, which many senatorial families possessed in Africa, invited them, if they had time, and prudence, to escape from the ruin of their country; to embrace the shelter of that hospitable province. The most illustrious of these fugitives was the noble and pious Proba, the widow of the praetor Petronius. After the death of her husband, the most powerful subject of Rome, she had remained at the head of the Amician family, and successively supplied, from her private fortune, the expense of the consuls of her three sons. When the city was besieged and taken by the Goths, Proba supported, with Christian resignation, the loss of immense riches; embarked in a small vessel, from whence she beheld, at sea, the flames of her burning palace, and died with her daughter Lucre, and her granddaughter, the celebrated virgin, Demetrias, to the coast of Africa. The benevolent profusion with which the matron distributed the fruits, or the price of her estates, contributed to alleviate the misfortunes of exile and captivity. But even the family of Proba herself was not exempt from the meritorious oppression of Count Hercules, who, barely sold, in matrimonial prostitution, the noblest maidens of Rome to the lust of avarice of the Syrian merchants. The Italian fugitives were dispersed through the provinces, along the coast of Egypt and Asia, as far as Constantinople and Jerusalem; and the village of Bethlem, the solitary residence of St. Jerome and his female convert, was crowded with illustrious beggars of either sex, and every age, who excited the public compassion by the remembrance of their past fortune. This awful catastrophe of Rome filled the astonished empire with grief and terror. So interesting a contrast of greatness and ruin disposed the feral cruelty of the people to deplole, and even to exaggerate, the afflictions of the queen of cities. The clergy, who applied to recent events the lofty metaphors of Oriental prophecy, were sometimes tempted to confirm the destruction of the capital, and the dissolution of the globe.

There exists in human nature a strong propensity to depreciate the advantages, and to magnify the evils, of the present times. Yet, when the first emotions had subsided, and a fair estimate was made of the real damage, the more learned and judicious contemporaries were forced to confess, that infant Rome had formerly received more essential injury from the Gauls, than she had now sustained from the Goths. In her decling Her praetere undita metus as honos offens. Gorgias cum minibusinflamabat urbis, Turpinum, turgore gentis hominum. Curae, qua non inaspinge satrapi in acedia. Hall. Fronto postebat cultum dilexit. Certaini cum ratione Phoibos exordiis. Curae, cuncta cunctis acempitum aequo. Is in eam occasio, quid vas parturit. Cuncta cum ratione Phoibos exordiis. Is in eam occasio, quid vas parturit. Cuncta cunctis acempitum aequo. Is in eam occasio, quid vas parturit.
The experience of eleven centuries has enabled posterity to produce a much more singular parallel; and to affirm with confidence, that the ravages of the barbarians, whom Alaric led from the banks of the Danube, were less destructive, than the hostilities exercised by the troops of Charles the Fifth, a Catholic prince, who styled himself Emperor of the Romans. The Goths evacuated the city at the end of six days; but Rome remained above nine months in the possession of the Imperialists; and every hour was stained by some atrocious act of cruelty, lust, and rapine. The authority of Alaric preserved some order and moderation among the ferocious multitude, which acknowledged him for their leader and king; but the constable of Bourbon had gloriously fallen in the attack of the walls; and the death of the general removed every restraint of discipline, from an army which consisted of three independent nations, the Italians, the Spaniards, and the Germans. In the beginning of the sixteenth century, the matrons of Italy exhibited a remarkable scene of the depravity of mankind. They united the sanguinary crimes that prevail in an unsettled state of society, with the polished vices which spring from the abuse of art and luxury; and the loose adventurers, who had violated every prejudice of patriotism and superstition to assail the palace of the Roman pontiff, must deserve to be considered as the most profligate of the Italians. At the same time, the Spaniards were the terror both of the Old and New World; but their high-spirited valor was disgraced by gross pride, rapacious avarice, and wanton cruelty. Indescribable in the pursuit of fame and riches, they had improved, by repeated practice, the most exquisite and effectual methods of torturing their prisoners: many of the Catalans, who pillaged Rome, were familiar with the holy inquisition; and some volunteers, perhaps, were lately returned from the conquest of Mexico. The Germans were less corrupt than the Italians, less cruel than the Spaniards; and the rustic, or even savage, aspect of those Teutonic warriors, often disguised a simple and merciful disposition. But they had imbued, in the first years of the reformation, the spirit, as well as the principles, of Luther. It was their favourite amusement to mutilate or destroy, the consecrated objects of Catholic superstition; they indulged, without pity or remorse, a devout hatred against the clergy of every denomination and degree, who form so considerable a part of the inhabitants of modern Rome; and their fanaticism might aspire to subvert the throne of Antichrist, to purify, with blood and fire, the abominations of the spiritual Babylon. The retreat of the victorious Goths, who evacuated Rome on the sixth day, might be the result of prosperity; but it was not surely the effect of fear. At the head of an army, encompassed with rich and weighty spoils, their intrepid leader advanced along the Appian way into the southern provinces of Italy, destroying whatever dared to oppose his passage, and contenting himself with the plunder of the resisting country. The fate of Cafara, the proud and luxurious metropolis of Campania, and which was respected, even in its decay, as the eighth city of the empire, is buried in oblivion; whilst the adjacent town of Nola has been illustrated, on this occasion, by the sanctity of Paulinus, who was successively a cup-bearer, a monk, and a bishop. At the age of forty, he reconciled the enjoyment of wealth and honour, of society and literature, to embrace a life of solitude and penance; and the loud applause of the clergy encouraged him to desist the reproaches of his worldly friends, who ascribed this desperate act to some disorder of the mind or body. An early and passionate attachment determined him to fix his humble dwelling in one of the suburbs of Nola, near the miraculous tomb of St. Felix, which the public devotion had already surrounded with five large and populous churches. The remains of his fortune, and of his understanding, were dedicated to the service of the glorious martyr; whose praise, on the day of his festival, Paulinus never failed to celebrate by a solemn hymn; and in whose name he erected a sixth church, of superior elegance and beauty, which was decorated with many curious pictures, from the history of the Old and New Testament. Such assiduous and secured the favour of the saint, or at least of the people; and, after fifteen years' retirement, the Roman council was compelled to accept the bishopric of Nola, a few months before the city was invested by the Goths. During the siege, some religious persons were satisfied that they had seen, either in dreams or visions, the divine form of their titular patron; yet it is soon appeared by the event, that Felix wanted power, or inclination, to preserve the flock, of which he had formerly been the shepherd. Nola
was not saved from the general devastation; and the captive ladies was protected only by the general opinion of his innocence and poverty. Above four years elapsed from the successful invasion of Italy by the arms of Atilic, to the voluntary retreat of the Goths under the conduct of his successor, Adolphus; and, during the whole time, they reigned without control over a country, which, in the opinion of the ancients, had united all the various excellencies of nature and art. The prosperity, indeed, which Italy had attained in the suspicious age of the Antonines, had gradually declined with the decline of the empire. The fruits of a long peace persisted under the rude grasp of the barbarians; and they themselves were incapable of testing the more elegant refinements of luxury, which had been prepared for the use of the soft and polished Italians. Each soldier, however, claimed an ample portion of the substantial plenty, the corn and cattle, oil and wine, that was daily collected and consumed in the Gothic camp; and the principal warriors invested the villas, and gardens, once inhabited by Lucullus and Cicero, along the hæmatous coast of Campania. Their trembling captives, the sons and daughters of Roman senators, presented, in girdles of gold and gems, large draughts of Falernian wine, to the hungry victors; who stretched their huge limbs under the shade of plane-trees, artificially disposed to exclude the scorching rays, and to admit the genial warmth of the sun. These delights were enhanced by the memory of past hardships: the comparison of their native soil, the bland and laurel-bedecked hills of Scythia, and the frozen banks of the Elbe and Danube, added new charms to the felicity of the Italian climate. Whether fame, or conquest, or riches, were the object of Alaric, he pursued that object with an indefatigable ardour, which could neither be quelled by adversity, nor satiated by success. No sooner had he reached the extreme land of Italy, than he was attracted by the neighbouring prospect of a fertile and peaceful island. Yet even the possession of Sicily he considered only as an intermediate step to the important expedition, which he already meditated against the continent of Africa. The Straits of Rhægium and Messina are twelve miles in length, and, in the narrow passage, about one mile and a half broad; and the fabulous monsters of the deep, the monster of Scylla, and the whirlpool of Charybdis, could terrify none but the most timid and unskilful mariners. Yet as soon as the first division of the Goths had embarked, a sudden tempest arose, which sunk, or scattered, many of the transport; their courage was daunted by the terrors of a new element; and the whole design was defeated by the premature death of Atilic, which fixed, after a short illness, the fatal term of his conquests. The furious character of the barbarians was displayed, in the funeral of a heroi, whose valour, and fortune, they celebrated with mournful applause. By the labour of a captive multitude, they forcibly diverted the course of the Bosphorus, a small river that washes the walls of Constantin. The royal sepulchre, adorned with the splendid spoils, and trophies, of Rome, was constructed in the vacant bed; the waters were then restored to their natural channel; and the secret spot, where the remains of Alaric had been deposited, was for ever concealed by the inhuman massacre of the prisoners, who had been employed to execute the work. The personal summeries, and hereditary funds, of the barbarians, were suspended by the strong necessity of their affairs; and the brave Adolphus, the brother-in-law of the deceased monarch, was unanimously elected to succeed to his throne. The character and political system of the new king of the Goths may be best understood from his own conversation with an illustrious citizen of Narbonne; who afterwards, in a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, related it to St. Jerome, in the presence of the historian Orosius. In the full confidence of valour and victory, I once asked (said Adolphus) to change the face of the universe; to obliterate the name of Rome; to erect on its ruins the dominion of the Goths; and to acquire, like Augustus, the immortal fame of the founder of a new empire. By repeated experiments, I was gradually convinced, that laws were essentially necessary to maintain and regulate a well-constituted state; and that the fierce unrestrainable humour of the Goths was incapable of bearing the salutary yoke of laws and civil government. From that moment I proposed to myself a different object of glory and ambition; and it is now my sincere wish, that the gratitude of future ages should acknowledge the merit of a stranger, who employed the sword of the Goths, not to subvert, but to restore and maintain, the prosperity of the Roman empire. With these pacific views, the successor of Alaric suspended the operations of war; and seriously negotiated with the Imperial court a treaty of friendship and alliance. It was the interest of the ministers of Honorius, who were now released from the obligation of their extravagant oath, to deliver Italy from the intolerable weight of the Gothic powers; and
they readily accepted their service against the tyrants and barbarians who infested the provinces beyond the Alps. 121 Adolphus, mounting the chariot of a Roman general, directed his march from the extremity of Campania to the southern provinces of Gaul. His troops, either by force or agreement, immediately occupied the cities of Narbonne, Toulouse, and Bourdeaux; and though they were repulsed by count Boufance from the walls of Marseilles, they soon extended their quarters from the Mediterranean to the Ocean. The oppressed provincials might exclaim, that the miseries remaining, which the enemy had spared, was cruelly ravished by their pretended allies; yet some splendid colours were not wanting to palliate, or justify, the violence of the Gods. The cities of Gaul, which they attacked, might perhaps be considered as in a state of rebellion against the government of Honorius; the articles of the treaty, or the secret instructions of the court, might sometimes be alluded to favourable of the seeming misfortunes of Adolphus; and the guilt of his irregular, unsuccessful, act might always be imputed, with an appearance of truth, to the ungovernable spirit of a barbarian host, impatience of peace or discipline. The luxury of Italy had been less effectual to soften the temper, than to relax the courage of the Gauls; and they had indulged the vices, without imitating the arts and institutions, of civilized society. 122

The profession of Adolphus were probably sincere, and his attachment to the cause of the republic was secured by the ascendant which a Roman princess had acquired over the heart and understanding of the barbarian king. Placidia, 123 the daughter of the great Theodosius, and of Gallia, his second wife, had received a royal education in the palace of Constantinople; but the eventful story of her life is connected with the revolutions which agitated the Western empire under the benignity of her brother Honorius. When Rome was first invested by the arms of Alaric, Placidia, who was then about twenty years of age, resided in the city; and her ready consent to the death of her cousin Serena has a cruel and ungrateful appearance, which, according to the circumstances of the action, may be aggravating, or excusing, by the consideration of her tender age. 124 The victorious barbarians detained, either as a hostage or a captive, 125 the sister of Honorius; but, while she was exposed to the disgrace of following round Italy the motions of a Gothic cell, she experienced, however, a decent and respectful treatment. The severity of Jovianus, who praises the beauty of Placidia, may perhaps be counterbalanced by the silence, the expressive silence, of her flatterers; yet the splendour of her birth, the bloom of youth, the elegance of manners, and the deference in which she was accustomed to employ, made a deep impression on the mind of Adolphus; and the Gothic king desired to call himself the brother of the emperor. The ministers of Honorius rejected with disdain the proposal of an alliance so injurious to every sentiment of Roman pride; and repeatedly urged the restitution of Placidia, as an indispensable condition of the treaty of peace. But the daughter of Theodosius submitted, without reluctance, in the desire of the conqueror, a young and valiant prince, who yielded to Alaric in loftiness of stature, but who excelled in the more attractive qualities of grace and beauty. The marriage of Adolphus and Placidia was solemnized in a church which the Empress retired from Italy; and the solemn ceremonies on the anniversaries, day of their nuptials was afterwards celebrated in the house of Eugenius, one of the most illustrious citizens of Narbonne in Gaul. The bride, attired and adorned like a Roman empress, was placed on a throne of state; and the king of the Goths, who assumed, on this occasion, the Roman habit, contented himself with a less honourable seat by her side. The nuptial gift, which, according to the custom of his nation, 126 was alluded to Placidia, consisted of the rare and magnificent spoils of her country. Fifty beautiful youths, in silken robes, carried a basin in each hand; and one of these vessels was filled with pieces of gold, the other with precious stones of an insatiable value, Attalus, so long the sport of fortune, and of the Goths, was appointed to lead the chorus of the Hymnus song; and the degraded emperor might aspire to the praise of a skilful musician. The barbarians enjoyed the insolence of their triumph; and the provincials rejoiced in the alliance, which tempered, by the mild influence of love and reason, the fierce spirit of their Gothic lord. 127

The hundred basins of gold and the Gothic gems, presented to Placidia at her nuptial feast, formed an inconceivable portion of the Gothic treasures; of which some extraordinary specimens may be selected from the history of the successors of Adolphus. Many curious and costly ornaments of pure gold, studded with jewels, were found in their palace of Narbonne, when it was pillaged, in the sixth century, by the Franks: sixty cups, or chalices; 128

121 Jovianus expresses, without much probability, that Adolphus yielded and possessed Rome a second time under Iulianus. See the notes on the passage. [See 3. xiv. p. 183, and 3. xvi. p. 186.] The assertion of Jordanes, that he was the companion of his master in Italy, and that his correspondence with Ursus, his dark and barbarous, I have deemed much more singularly improbably than his opinion, which he is pleased to support, that the two emperors were contemporaries. For the Goslingius, and the busts the emperors, concerning the heads of these emperors, and of Ursus. See the Emperors, 123 See an account of Placidia in Thrauris, Pers. Romana, p. 76. 124 125 Thracius, etc. See Egerius, nos. 400; 126 See the passage of Theodosius and Placidia, and the account of the nuptials of Adolphus and Placidia, in the Historians, p. 123. 127 The image of Adolphus and Placidia, and the account of the nuptials, are mentioned in the Historians, p. 123. 128 See an account of Placidia in Thrauris, Pers. Romana, p. 76. 129 Egerius, nos. 400; 129 See an account of Placidia in Thrauris, Pers. Romana, p. 76. 129 Egerius, nos. 400; 129 See an account of Placidia in Thrauris, Pers. Romana, p. 76. 129 Egerius, nos. 400; 129 See an account of Placidia in Thrauris, Pers. Romana, p. 76.
fifteen paras, or plates, for the use of the communion; twenty boxes, or cases, to hold the books of the Gospels; this consecrated wealth was distributed by the son of Clovis among the churches of his dominions, and his pious liberality seems to uphold some former marriage of the Goths. They provisioned, with more security of conscience, the famous monastery, or great deal for the service of the table, of unshod silver, of the weight of five hundred pounds, and of far superior value, from the precious stones, the exquisite workmanship, and the tradition, that it had been presented by Atelin, the patrician, to Torismond, king of the Goths. One of the successors of Torismond purchased the aid of the French monarch by the promise of this magnificent gift. When he was seated on the throne of Spain, he delivered it without reluctance to the ambassadors of Dagobert; despoiled them on the road; stipulated, after a long negotiation, the inadequate ransom of five hundred thousand pieces of gold; and preserved the manuscript, as the pride of the Gothic treasury. When that treasure, after the conquest of Spain, was plundered by the Arabs, they admired, and they have celebrated, another object still more remarkable; a table of considerable size, of one single piece of solid emerald, enshrined with three rows of fine pearls, supported by three hundred and sixty-five feet of gems and unshod gold, and estimated at the price of five hundred thousand pieces of gold. Some portion of the Gothic treasures might be the gift of friendship, or the tribute of obedience: but the far greater part had been the fruits of war and rapine, the spoils of the empire, and perhaps of Rome.

After the deliverance of Italy from the domination of the Ostrogoths, the oppression of the Goths, some secret counsellors was permitted, amidst the factions of the palace, to lead the wounds of that afflicted country. By a wise and humane regulation, the eight provinces which had been the most deeply injured, Campania, Tuscany, Picenum, Senusitum, Apulia, Calabria, Bruttium, and Lucania, obtained an indulgence of five years: the ordinary tribute was reduced to one fifth, and even that fifth was destined to restorers, and support, the useful institution of the public posts. By another law, the lands, which had been left without inhabitants or cultivation, were granted, with some diminution of taxes, to the neighbours who should occupy, or the strangers who should solicit them; and the new possessors were secured against the future claims of the fugitive proprietors. About the same time a general munificence was published in the name of Honorius, to abolish the guilt and memory of all the insupportable offences, which had been committed by his unhappy subjects, during the term of the public disorder and calamity. A decent and respectful attention was paid to the restoration of the capital; the citizens were encouraged to rebuild the edifices which had been destroyed or damaged by hostile fire; and extraordinary supplies of corn were imported from the coast of Africa. The crowds that so lately fled before the sword of the barbarians, were soon recalled by the hopes of plenty and peace; and Albinus, prefect of Rome, informed the court, with some anxiety and surprise, that, in a single day, he had taken an account of the arrival of fourteen thousand strangers. In less than seven years, the vestiges of the Gothic invasion were almost obliterated; and the city appeared to resume its former splendour and tranquillity. The venerable maston replaced his crown of laurel, which had been hurled by the storms of war; and was still admired, in the last moments of her decay, with the prophecies of revenge, of victory, and of eternal dominion.

This apparent tranquillity was soon disturbed by the approach of an hostile armament from the country which afforded the daily subsistence of the Roman people. Heraclean, count of Africa, who, under the most difficult and distressful circumstances, had supported, with active loyalty, the cause of Honorius, was appointed, in the year of his consulship, to assume the character of a rebel, and the title of emperor. The ports of Africa were immediately filled with the naval forces, at the head of which he prepared to invade Italy; and his fleet, when it cast anchor at the mouth of the Tyber, indeed surpassed the forces of Xerxes and Alexander, if all the vessels, including the royal galley, and the smallest boat, did actually amount to the incredible number of three thousand two hundred. Yet with such an armament, which might have subdued, or restored, the greatest empires of the earth, the African usurper made a very faint and feeble impression on the provinces of his rival. As he marched from the port, along the road which leads to the gates of Rome, he was encountered by the troops which were the result of the Imperial captains; and the lord of this mighty host, desiring his fortune and his friends, ignominiously fled with a single ship. When Heraclea...
The revolts of Constantine, who received the purple from the Legions of Britain, had been successful; and seemed to be secure. His title was acknowledged, from the wall of Antoninus to the columns of Hercules; and in the midst of the public disorders, he shared the dominion, and the plunder, of Gaul and Spain, with the tribune of barbarians, whose destructive progress was no longer checked by the Rhine or Pyrenees. Stained with the blood of the kinsmen of Honorius, he extorted, from the court of Ravenna, with which he secretly corresponded, the ratification of his rebellions claims. Constantine engaged himself, by a solemn promise, to deliver Italy from the Goths; advanced as far as the banks of the Po; and after alarming, rather than assisting, his pusillanimous ally, hastily returned to the palace of Arles, to celebrate, with intemperate luxury, his rain and ostentations triumph. But this transient prosperity was soon interrupted and destroyed by the revolt of Constantius. The bravest of his generals; who, during the absence of his son Constantine, a prince already invested with the imperial purple, had been left to command in the provinces of Spain. For some reason, of which we are ignorant, Constantius, instead of summoning the usurper, placed it on the head of his friend Maximus, who fixed his residence at Tarragona, while the active court pressed forwards, through the Pyrenees, to surprise the two emperors, Constantine and Constantius, before they could prepare for their defence. The one was made prisoner at Visenna, and immediately put to death; and the unfortunate youth had scarcely leisure to deplore the elevation of his family, which had tempted, or compelled him, secretly to desert the peaceful obscurity of the monastic life. The father maintained a siege within the walls of Arles; but those walls must have yielded to the assailants, had not the city been unexpectedly relieved by the approach of an Italian army. The name of Honorius, the proclamation of a lawful emperor, astonished the contending parties of the rebels. Gerontius, abandoned by his own troops, escaped to the confines of Spain; and rescued his name from oblivion, by the Roman courage which appeared to animate the last moments of his life. In the middle of the night, a great body of his faithful soldiers surrounded, and attacked his house, which he had strongly fortificated. His wife, a valiant friend of the nation of the Alani, and some faithful slaves, were still attached to his person; and he held, with so much skill and resolution, a large magazine of darts and arrows, that above three hundred of the assailants lost their lives in the attempt. His slaves, when all the missile weapons were spent, fled at the dawn of day; and Gerontius, if he had not been restrained by conjugal tenderness, might have fulfilled their example; till the soldiers, provoked by such obstinate resistance, applied fire on all sides to the house. In this fatal extremity, he complied with the request of his barbarian friend, and cut off his head. The wife of Gerontius, who conjured him not to abandon her to a life of misery and disgrace, eagerly presented her neck to his sword; and the tragic scene was terminated by the death of the count himself, who, after three ineffectual strokes, drew a short dagger, and stabbed it in his heart. The unprotected Maximus, whom he had invested with the purple, was indebted for his life to the contempt that was entertainet of his power and abilities. The caprice of the barbarians, who ravaged Spain, once more seized this Imperial phantom on the throne; but they soon resigned him to the justice of Honorius; and the tyrant Maximus, after he had been shewn to the people of Ravenna and Rome, was publicly executed.

The general, Constantius, was his name, who raised by his approach the siege of Arles, and dissipated the troops of Gerontius, was born a Roman; and this remarkable distinction is strongly expressive of the decay of military spirit among the subjects of the empire. The strength and majesty which were conspicuous in the person of that general,
marked him, in the popular opinion, as a candidate worthy of the throne, which he afterwards ascended. In the familiar intercourse of private life, his manners were cheerful and engaging; nor would he sometimes disdain, in the licence of convivial mirth, to vie with the pantomimes themselves, in the exercises of their ridiculous profession. But when the trumpet summoned him to arms; when he mounted his horse, and, bending down (for such was his singular practice) almost upon the neck, fiercely rolled his large animated eyes round the field, Constantius then struck terror into his foes, and inspired his soldiers with the assurance of victory. He had received from the court of Ravenna the important commission of extirpating rebellion in the provinces of the West; and the pretended emperor, Constantine, after enjoying a short and anxious respite, was again besieged in his capital by the arms of a formidable enemy. Yet this interval allowed time for a successful negotiation with the Franks and Alamanni; and his ambassador, Edobec, soon returned, at the head of an army, to disturb the operations of the siege of Aries. The Roman general, instead of expecting the attack in his lines, boldly, and perhaps wisely, resolved to pass the Rhine, and to meet the barbarians. His measures were conduced with so much skill and secrecy, that, while they engaged the infantry of Constantius in the front, they were suddenly attacked, surrounded, and destroyed, by the cavalry of his lieutenant Ulphilas, who had silently gained an advantageous post in the rear. The remains of the army of Edobec were preserved by flight or submission, and their leader escaped from the field of battle to the home of a faithless friend, who too clearly understood, that the head of his obnoxious guest would be an acceptable and lucrative present for the Imperial general. On this occasion Constantius beheld with the magnanimity of a genuine Roman. Sustaining, or suppressing, every sentiment of jealousy, he publicly acknowledged the merit and services of Ulphilas; but he turned with horror from the assassin of Edobec; and sternly intimated his commands, that the camp should no longer be polluted by the presence of an ungrateful wretch, who had violated the laws of friendship and hospitality. The usurper, who beheld, from the walls of Aries, the ruin of his last hopes, was tempted to place some confidence in so generous a conqueror. He required a solemn promise for his security; and after receiving, by the imposition of hands, the sacred character of a Christian presbyter, he ventured to open the gates of the city. But he soon experienced, that the principles of health and integrity, which might regulate the ordinary conduct of Constantius, were superseded by the loose doctrines of political morality. The Roman general, indeed, appeared to soil his laurels with the blood of Constantius; but the abdicated emperor, and his son Julian, were sent under a strong guard into Italy; and before they reached the palace of Ravenna, they met the minstrels of death.

At a time when it was universally confessed, that almost every man in the empire was superior in personal merit to the princes whom the accident of their birth had sustained on the throne, a rapid succession of usurpers, regardless of the fate of their predecessors, still continued to arise. This mischief was peculiarly felt in the provinces of Spain and Gaul, where the principles of order and obedience had been extinguished by war and rebellion. Before Constantine resigned the purple, and in the fourth month of the siege of Aries, intelligence was received in the Imperial camp, that Jovinus had assumed the diadem at Mentz, in the Upper Germany, at the instigation of Geoc, king of the Alani, and of Grumianus, king of the Burgundians; and that the candidate, on whom they had bestowed the empire, advanced with a formidable host of barbarians, from the banks of the Rhine to those of the Rhone. Every circumstance is dark and extraordinary in the short history of the reign of Jovinus. It was natural to expect, that a brave and skilful general, at the head of a victorious army, would have asserted, in a field of battle, the justice of the cause of Honorius. The hasty retreat of Constantius might be justified by weighty reasons; but he resigned, without a struggle, the possession of Gaul: and Dardanus, the praetorian prefect, is recorded as the only magistrate who refused to yield obedience to the usurper. When the Goths, two years after the siege of Rome, established their quarters in Gaul, it was natural to suppose that their inclination could be divided only between the emperor Honorius, with whom they had formed a recent alliance, and the degraded Attalus, whom they reserved in their camp for the occasional purpose of acting the part of a musician or a monarch. Yet in a moment of disgust (for which it is not easy to assign a cause, or a date), Adolphus connected himself with the usurper of Gaul; and imposed on Attalus the ignominious task of negotiating the treaty, which ratified his own disgrace. We are again surprised to read, that, instead of considering the Gothic alliance as the firmest support of his throne, Jovinus upbraided, in dark and ambiguous language, the officious importunity of Attalus; that, scorning the advice of his great ally, he inveighed with the purple his brother Sebastian; and that he must imprudently accepted the service of Sarus, when that gallant chief, the soldier of Honorius, was provoked to desert the court of a prince, who knew not how to reward, or punish. Adolphus, educated among a race of warriors, who esteemed the duty of revenge as the most precious and sacred portion of their inheritance, availed with a body of ten thousand Goths to encounter the hereditary enemy of the house of Balli. He attacked Sarus at an unguarded
moment, when he was accompanied only by eighteen or twenty of his valiant followers. United by friendship, animated by despair, but at length oppressed by multitudes, this band of heroes deserved the esteem, without exciting the compassion; of their enemies; and the lion was no sooner taken in the toils than he was instantly despatched. The death of Sartor dissolved the loose alliance which Arbophilus still maintained with the warrens of Gaul. He again listened to the dictates of love and pride; and soon satisfied the brother of Placentia, by the assurance that he would immediately transmit to the palace of Havenna, the heads of the two tyrants, Jovinian and Sebastian. The king of the Goths executed his promise without difficulty or delay; the helpless brothers, unsupported by any personal merit, were abandoned by their barbarian auxiliaries; and the short opposition of Valens was expelled by the ruin of one of the noblest cities of Gaul.

The emperor, chosen by the Roman senate, who had been proscribed, degraded, insulted, restored, again degraded, and again insulted, was finally abandoned to his fate; but when the Gothic king withdrew his protection, he was restrained, by pity or contempt; from offering any violence to the person of Attilius. The unfortunate Attilus, who was left without subjects or allies, embarked in one of the ports of Spain, in search of some secure and solitary retreat: but he was intercepted at sea, conducted to the presence of Honorius, led in triumph through the streets of Rome or Havenna, and publicly exposed to the gazing multitude, on the second step of the throne of his insensible conqueror. The same measure of punishment, with which, in the days of his prosperity, he was accused of menacing his rival, was inflicted on Attilus himself; he was condemned, after the amputation of his fingers, to a perpetual exile in the island of Lipari, where he was supplied with the decent necessities of life. The remainder of the reign of Honorius was disturbed by rebellion, and it may be observed, that, in the space of five years, seven warrens had yielded to the fortune of a prince, who was himself incapable either of counsel or of action.

The situation of Spain, separated, on all sides, from the countries of Rome, by the sea, by the mountains, and by intermediate provinces, had secured the long tranquillity of that remote and unwarred country; and we may observe, as a mark of domestic happiness, that, in a period of four hundred years, Spain furnished very few materials to the history of the Roman empire. The footsteps of the barbarians, who, in the reign of Gallienus, had penetrated beyond the Pyrenees, were soon obliterated by the return of peace; and in the fourth century of the Christian era, the cities of Emerita, or Merida, of Cartagena, of Ceuta, of Traserra, and of Tarragona, were numbered with the most illustrious of the Roman world. The various plenty of the animal, the vegetable, and the mineral kingdoms, was improved and manufactured by the skill of an industrious people; and the peculiar advantages of naval stores contributed to support an extensive and profitable trade. The arts and sciences flourished under the protection of the emperors; and if the character of the Spaniards was unsuited by peace and servitude, the hostile approach of the Germans, who had spread terror and desolation from the Rhine to the Pyrenees, seemed to reconcile some sparks of military ardour. As long as the defense of the mountains was intrusted to the hardy and faithful militiam of the country, they successfully repelled the frequent attempts of the barbarians. But no sooner had the national troops been compelled to resign their post to the barbarian bands, in the service of Constantius, than the gates of Spain were unutterably betrayed to the public enemy, about ten months before the sack of Rome by the Goths. Theilians of guilt, and the thirst of avarice, precipitated the unworthy guards of the Pyrenees to desert their station; to invite the arms of the Suevi, the Vandals, and the Alani; and to swell the torrent which was poured with irresistible violence from the frontier of Gaul to the sea of Africa. The misfortunes of Spain may be described in the language of its ancient eloquent historian, who has constantly expressed the passions, and perhaps exaggerated, the declamations of contemporary writers. The insurgents of these nations were followed by the most dreadful calamities: as the barbarians exercised their indiscriminate cruelty on the fortunes of the Romans and the Spaniards, and ravaged with equal fury the cities and the open country. The progress of famine reduced the miserable inhabitants to feed on the flesh of their fellow-creatures; and even the wild beasts, who multiplied, without control, in the desert, were exasperated, by the taste of blood, and the impatience of hunger, boldly to attack and devour their human prey. Perilous was the appearance, the insupportable companions of famine; a large proportion of the people was swept away; and the groans of the dying excited only the envy of their surviving friends. At length, the barbarians, satiated with carnage and rapine, and afflicted by the contumaces evils which they themselves had introduced, fixed their permanent seats in the depopulated country. The ancient Gallia, whose limits included the kingdom of Old Carthage, was divided between the Suevi and the Vandals; the Alani were scattered over the provinces of Carthagena and Lusitania.
the Punic Wars. The Phoenician cities of Carthage and Sardinia, which had been conquered by Rome, were still under Roman dominion. The Carthaginians had been defeated by the Romans in the second Punic War, and their subsequent rise to power had been checked. The Carthaginian Empire had been reduced to a state of political and military weakness, and was unable to resist the advances of Rome.

In 194 BC, the Carthaginian general Hannibal invaded Italy with a large army, consisting of African and Hispanic mercenaries. Hannibal's army crossed the Alps and marched south into Italy, where it engaged the Roman military forces in a series of battles. Despite initial successes, Hannibal was eventually defeated by Scipio Africanus at the Battle of Zama in 202 BC. The Carthaginian Empire was forced to surrender and accept terms of peace, which included the cession of Sardinia and Sicily to Rome.

The Carthaginian Empire had been a major power in the Western Mediterranean for centuries. Its decline and fall marked the end of an era, as Rome emerged as the dominant political and military force in the region. The Carthaginian Empire's defeat at Zama was a significant turning point in Roman history, as it led to the establishment of Roman control over the Western Mediterranean and the beginning of Rome's expansion into the Eastern Mediterranean.
raised the elegant plenty of the province of Bactria. He slew, in battle, the king of the Alani; and the remains of those Scythian wanderers, who escaped from the field, instead of choosing a new leader, humbly sought a refuge under the standard of the Vandals, with whom they were ever afterwards confounded. The Vandals themselves, and the Suevi, yielded to the efforts of the invincible Goths. The prominent multitude of barbarians, whose retreat had been intercepted, were driven into the mountains of Galicia; where they still continued, in a narrow compass, and on a barren soil, to exercise their domestic and impalpable hostilities. In the pride of victory, Wallia was faithful to his engagements; he restored his Spanish conquest to the obedience of Honorius; and the tyranny of the Imperial officers soon reduced an oppressed people to regret the time of their barbarian servitude. While the event of the war was still doubtful, the first advantages obtained by the arms of Wallia had encouraged the court of Ravenna to decree the honours of a triumph to their feehle sovereign. He entered Rome like the ancient conquerors of nations; and if the monuments of servile corruption had not long since met with the fate which they deserved, we should probably find that a crew of poets, and orators, of magistrates, and bishops, applauded the fortune, the wisdom, and the invincible courage, of the emperor Honorius.

Such a triumph might have been justly claimed by the ally of Rome, Wallia, before he repassed the Pyrenees, had extinguished the seeds of the Spanish war. His victorious Goths, forty-three years after they had passed the Danube, were established, according to the faith of treaties, in the possession of the second Aquitania; a maritime province between the Garonne and the Loire, under the civil and ecclesiastical jurisdiction of Bourdeaux. That metropolis, advantageously situated for the trade of the ocean, was built in a regular and elegant form; and its numerous inhabitants were distinguished among the Goths by their wealth, their learning, and the politeness of their manners. The adjacent province, which has been finely compared to the garden of Eden, is blessed with a fruitful soil, and a temperate climate; the face of the country displayed the arts and the rewards of industry; and the Goths, after their martial toils, luxuriously exhausted the rich vineyards of Aquitania. The Gothic limits were enlarged, by the additional gift of some neighbouring provinces; and the successors of Alaric fixed their royal residence at Toulouse, which included five populous quarters, or cities, within the spacious circuit of its walls. About the same
time, in the last years of the reign of Honorius, the Goths, the Burgundians, and
the Franks, obtained a permanent
seat and dominion in the provinces of Gaul. The liberal grant of the emperor Orestes to his
Burgundian allies, was confirmed by the lawful emperor; the lands of the First, or Upper,
Germany, were ceded to those formidable barbarians; and they gradually occupied, either by
conquest or treaty, the two provinces which still
retain, with the titles of Frathy and of
County, the national appellation of Burgundy. The Franks, the valiant and faithful allies of the
Roman republic, were soon tempted to imitate the
invaders, whom they had so bravely resisted.

Troyes, the capital of Gaul, was pillaged by
their lawless bands; and the humble colony
which they so long maintained in the districts of
Tazandria, in Burgundy, immensely multiplied along the banks of the Meuse and Scheldt, till
their independent power filled the whole extent of the Second, or Lower Germany. These
acts may be sufficiently justified by historic
evidence; but the foundation of the French
monarchy by Plariumond, the conquests, the
laws, and even the existence, of that state, have
been justly assigned by the impartial severity
of modern criticism.

The ruin of the opulent provinces of Gaul may be dated from the establish-
ment of these barbarians, whose
alliance was dangerous and oppressive, and who were capriciously impelled, by interest or passion, to violate the public peace. A heavy and partial
ruin was imposed on the surviving provin-
cials, who had escaped the calamities of war;
the fairest and most fertile lands were assigned
to the rapacious strangers, for the use of their
families, their slaves, and their cattle; and the
reeling natives replenished with a sigh the
inheritance of their fathers. Yet these domestic
miseries, which are seldom the lot of a van-
quished people, had been felt and suffered by the
Romans themselves, not only in the insen-
sence of foreign conquest, but in the madness of
civil discord. The triumvirs presided eighteen
years of the most flourishing colonies of Italy;
distributed their lands and honours to the
veterans who reigned the death of Caesar, and
suppressed the liberty of their country. Two
poets, of unequal fame, have depicted, in similar
circumstances, the loss of their patrimony;
but the legacies of Augustus appear to have
survived, in violence and injustice, the barbar-
ians, who invaded Gaul under the reign of
Honorius. It was not without the utmost difficulty that Virgil escaped from the sword
of the conqueror, who had usurped his farm in the
neighbourhood of Mantua, but Paulinus
Bourdeaux received a sum of money from his

109 Roman triumphs. 

110 From Saxo, l. xliii. c. 53. 44. 45. It is a great and
important part of the history of France to point out the
rise of that state in the age of Clovis; and the
succession of the kings of the Suevi and Burgundians
from the age of the Franks. This subject has
occupied the attention of the learned historians of
France and Burgundy, and the two nations have
competently displayed the spirit and interest of
their respective histories. The early history of the
Burgundians is written by Eginhard, the historian
of Charlemagne. His work is not without value and
interest, though it is by no means equal to the
description of the Annals of the Frankish kingdom,
published by St. Gall, in the time of the emperor
Louis the Pious. St. Gall, an abbey near Aix,
where the earliest histories of France were
compiled, has been.inhabited by that name since
the translation of the body of St. Gall, in the
time of Pope Gregory. It is a city of about
2000 inhabitants, and is the residence of the
abbot of the Abbey, of the Count of an
important see, and of a large body of clergy.

This document contains the million and
millions of silver coin, which were paid to the
Burgundians by the emperor Orestes, in
the year 277. The number of these silver coins, which are
recorded in the annals of the Burgundians, is
considerably more than the number of silver coins
which are recorded in the annals of the Franks. St. Gall, the
author of the annals of the Franks, enumerates the
silver coins in the name of the Franks, in the year 277, as
being about 1000,000. But the annals of the
Burgundians, written by St. Gall, in the time of the
emperor Louis the Pious, enumerate the silver coins
in the name of the Burgundians, in the year 277, as
being about 2000,000. It is evident, therefore,
that the annals of St. Gall are more correct than
the annals of the Franks, in the case of the
amount of silver coins paid to the Burgundians.

111 From the annals of St. Gall, written in the time of
the emperor Louis the Pious. This is a
very ancient and important work, which forms an
important part of the history of France. It is
written in the Latin language, and is
much prized for its accuracy and correctness.

This document contains the million and
millions of silver coin, which were paid to the
Burgundians by the emperor Orestes, in
the year 277. The number of these silver coins, which are
recorded in the annals of the Burgundians, is
considerably more than the number of silver coins
which are recorded in the annals of the Franks. St. Gall, the
author of the annals of the Franks, enumerates the
silver coins in the name of the Franks, in the year 277, as
being about 1000,000. But the annals of the
Burgundians, written by St. Gall, in the time of the
emperor Louis the Pious, enumerate the silver coins
in the name of the Burgundians, in the year 277, as
being about 2000,000. It is evident, therefore,
that the annals of St. Gall are more correct than
the annals of the Franks, in the case of the
amount of silver coins paid to the Burgundians.

112 On the Frankish kingdom, see the
compendium of the annals of the Franks, written by
St. Gall, in the time of the emperor Louis the Pious.

This document contains the million and
millions of silver coin, which were paid to the
Burgundians by the emperor Orestes, in
the year 277. The number of these silver coins, which are
recorded in the annals of the Burgundians, is
considerably more than the number of silver coins
which are recorded in the annals of the Franks. St. Gall, the
author of the annals of the Franks, enumerates the
silver coins in the name of the Franks, in the year 277, as
being about 1000,000. But the annals of the
Burgundians, written by St. Gall, in the time of the
emperor Louis the Pious, enumerate the silver coins
in the name of the Burgundians, in the year 277, as
being about 2000,000. It is evident, therefore,
that the annals of St. Gall are more correct than
the annals of the Franks, in the case of the
amount of silver coins paid to the Burgundians.
Gothic purse-sewer, which he accepted with pleasure and surprise; and, though it was much inferior to the real value of his estate, this act of rapine was disguised by some colours of moderation and equity.171 The odious name of conquerors, was softened into the mild and friendly appellation of the guests of the Romans; and the barbarians of Gaul, more especially the Goths, repeatedly declared, that they were bound to the people by the ties of hospitality, and to the emperor by the duty of allegiance and military service. The title of Honorius and his successors, their reign, and their civil magistracies, were still respected in the provinces of Gaul, of which they had resigned the possession to the barbarian allies; and the kings, who exercised a supreme and independent authority over their native subjects, ambitiously solicited the more honourable rank of masters-general of the Imperial armies.172 Such was the involuntary reverence which the Roman name still impressed on the minds of those warlike, who had borne away in triumph the spoils of the Capitol.

State of Brit.

173 Whilst Italy was ravaged by the Goths, and a succession of feeble tyrants oppressed the provinces beyond the Alps, the British island separated itself from the body of the Roman empire. The regular forces, which guarded that remote province, had been gradually withdrawn; and Britain was abandoned, without defence, to the Saxon pirates, and the savages of Ireland and Caledonia. The Britons, reduced to this extremity, no longer relied on the tardy and doubtful aid of a declining monarchy. They assembled in arms, repelled the invaders, and rejoiced in the important discovery of their own strength.173 Afflicted by similar calamities, and actuated by the same spirit, the Armoricans provinces (a name which comprehended the maritime countries of Gaul between the Seine and the Loire174) resolved to imitate the example of the neighbouring island. They expelled the Roman magistrates, who acted under the authority of the usurper Constantius; and a free government was established among a people who had so long been subject to the arbitrary will of a master. The independence of Britain and Armorica was soon confirmed by Honorius himself, the lawful emperor of the West; and the letters, by which he was committed to the new

round the city. Even in this favour they were cleared by Althun Vincent, who, in 1799, published a dissertation on the bishopric of St. Peter's of Paris, 172, and was one of the most celebrated names of some years. The same,

171 Water encroaching on the ruins of the Roman empi-

172 The limits of Armorica are defined by two natural barriers, the Seine and the Loire; and if the Meuse be included, it is about 20,000 square miles. The population has been estimated at about 200,000 souls. The coast is a succession of bays and capes, which are fortified by the British. The island is divided into three provinces, of which the eastern part is inhabited by the Head of the British, Ff. W. T. B. 17, p. 130. The

173 The limits of Armorica are defined by two natural barriers, the Seine and the Loire; and if the Meuse be included, it is about 20,000 square miles. The population has been estimated at about 200,000 souls. The coast is a succession of bays and capes, which are fortified by the British. The island is divided into three provinces, of which the eastern part is inhabited by the
of escaping the burdens of political society. It is a perpetual and insubstantial source of discord; it cannot reasonably be presumed, that the restoration of British freedom was exempt from tumult and faction. The pre-emience of birth and fortune must have been frequently violated by bold and popular citizens; and the haughty nobles, who complained that they were the subjects of their own servants, would sometimes regret the reign of an arbitrary monarch.

11. The jurisdiction of each city over the adjacent country was supported by the servitude of the principal senators; and the smaller towns, the villages, and the proprietors of land, commuted their own safety by adhering to the shelter of these rising republics. The sphere of their ambition was proportioned to the respective degrees of their wealth and_populosity; but the hereditary lords of ample possessions, who were not oppressed by the neighbourhood of any powerful city, aspired to the rank of independent princes, and boldly exercised the rights of peace and war. The gardens and villas, which exhibited some faint imitation of Italian elegance, would soon be converted into strong castles, the refuge, in time of danger, of the adjacent country; the produce of the land was applied to purchase arms and horses; to maintain a military force of slaves, of peasants, and of licentious followers; and the chief might assume, within his own domain, the power of a civil magistrate. Several of these British chiefs might be the genuine posterity of ancient kings; and many more would be willing to adopt this honourable genealogy; and to vindicate their hereditary claims, which had been suspended by the usurpation of the Caesars. Their situation, and their hopes, would dispose them to affect the dignity of language, and the customs of their ancestors. If the prince of Britain relapsed into barbarism, while the cities studiously preserved the laws and manners of Rome, the whole island must have been gradually divided by the distinction of two national parties; again broken into a thousand subordinations of war and faction, by the various provocations of interest and resentment. The public strength, instead of being united against a foreign enemy, was consumed in intestine quarrels; and the personal merit which had placed a successful leader at the head of his equals, might enable him to subdue the freedom of some neighbouring cities; and to claim a rank among the tyrants, who infested Britain after the dissolution of the Roman government. 111. The British church might be composed of thirty or forty bishops, with an adequate provision of the inferior clergy; and the want of riches (for they seem to have been poor) would compel them to observe the public esteem, by a decent and exemplary behaviour. The interest, as well as the temper, of the clergy, was favourable to the peace and union of their distracted country; these salutary lessons might be frequently inculcated in their popular discourses; and the episcopal synods were the only councils that could speak with authority to the weight and authority of a national assembly. In such councils, where the princes and magistrates, not promiscuously with the bishops, the important affairs of the state, as well as of the church, might be freely debated; differences reconciled, alliances formed, contributions imposed, wise resolutions often concurred, and sometimes executed; and there is reason to believe, that, in moments of extreme danger, a Pendeurn, a se Dictator, was elected by the general consent of the Britons. These pastoral virtues, so worthy of the episcopal character, were interrupted, however, by zeal and superstition; and the British clergy incessantly laboured to eradicate the Pelagian heresy, which they abhorred, as the peculiar disgrace of their native country. 115. It is somewhat remarkable, or commended the rather it is extremely natural, that the result of Britain and Armagnae, should have introduced an appearance of liberty into the obedient provinces of Gaul. In a solemn effect, filled with the strongest assurances of that paternal affection which princes so often express, and so seldom feel, the emperor Honorius pronounced his intention of convening an annual assembly of the senate presidets: a name peculiarly appropriated to Aquitania and the ancient Narbonensis, which had long since exchanged their Celtic rudeness for the useful and elegant arts of Italy. Arles, the seat of government and commerce, was appointed for the place of the assembly; which regularly continued twenty-eight days, from the fifteenth of August to the twentieth of September, of every year. It consisted of the provincial prefect of the Gauls; of seven provincial governors, one senator, and six presidents of the magistrates; and perhaps the bishops, of about sixty cities; and of a competent, though indefinite, number of the most honourable and opulent possessors of land, who might justly be considered as the representatives of their country. They were empowered to interpret and communicate the laws of their sovereign; to express the grievances and wishes of their constituents; to moderate the assessed or unpaid taxes; and to deliberate on every subject of local or national importance, that could tend to the restoration of the peace and
prosperity of the seven provinces. If such an institution, which gave the people an interest in their own government, had been universally established by Trajan or the Antonines, the seeds of public wisdom and virtue might have been cherished and propagated in the empire of Rome. The privileges of the subject would have secured the throne of the monarch; the abuses of an arbitrary administration might have been prevented, in some degree, or corrected, by the interposition of these representative assemblies; and the country would have been defended against a foreign enemy by the arms of natives and freemen. Under the mild and generous influence of liberty, the Roman empire might have remained invincible and immortal; or if its excessive magnitude, and the instability of human affairs, had opposed such perpetual continuance, its vital and constituent numbers might have separately preserved their vigour and independence. But in the decline of the empire, when every principle of health and life had been exhausted, the tardy application of this partial remedy was inscrutable in producing any important or salutary effects. The emperor Honorius expressed his anxiety that his must compel the reluctant provinces to accept a privilege which they should sedately have solicited. A line of three, or even five, pounds of gold, was imposed on the absent representatives; who seem to have屆授 this imaginary gift of a free constitution, as the last and most cruel insult of their oppressors.

CHAP. XXXII.


The division of the Roman world between the sons of Theodosius marks the final establishment of the empire of the East, which, from the reign of Arcadius to the taking of Constantinople by the Turks, subsisted one thousand and fifty-eight years, in a state of premature and perpetual decay. The sovereign of that empire assumed, and obstinately retained, the vain, and at length fictitious, title of Emperor of the Romans; and the hereditary appellations of Caesar and Augustus continued to declare, that he was the legitimate successor of the first of men, who had reigned over the first of nations. The palace of Constantinople rivalled, and perhaps excelled, the magnificence of Persepolis; and the eloquent sermons of St. Chrysostom celebrated, while they confounded, the pompous luxury of the reign of Arcadius. The emperor," says he, "wears on his head either a diadem, or a crown of gold, decorated with precious stones of inestimable value. Three ornaments, and his purple garments, are reserved for his sacred person alone; and his robes of silk are embroidered with the figures of golden dragons. His throne is of mosaic gold. Whenever he appears in public, he is surrounded by his courtiers, his guards, and his attendants. Their spears, their shields, their cushions, the bulges and trappings of their horses, have either the substance, or the appearance of gold; and the large spangled banners in the midst of their shield, is encircled with smaller ones, which represent the shape of the human eye. The two mules that draw the chariot of the monarch, are actually white, and shining all over with gold. The chariot itself, of pure and solid gold, attracts the admiration of the spectators, who contemplate the purple curtains, the snowy carpet, the size of the precious stones, and the repudiant plates of gold, that glitter as they are agitated by the motion of the carriage. The Imperial pictures are white, on a blue ground; the emperor appears seated on his throne, with his arms, his horse, and his guards beside him; and his vanquished enemies in chains at his feet." The successors of Constantine established their perpetual residence in the royal city, which he had erected on the verge of Europe and Asia. Inaccessible to the muses of their enemies, and perhaps to the complaints of their people, they received, with such wind, the tributary productions of every climate; while the impregnable strength of their capital continued for ages to defy the hostile attempts of the barbarians. Their dominions were bounded by the Hadriatic and the Tigris; and the whole interval of twenty-five days navigation, which separated the extremity of Scythia from the torrid zone of Ethiopia, was comprehended within the limits of the empire of the East. The populous countries of that empire were the seat of art and learning, of luxury and wealth; and the inhabitants, who had assumed the language and manners of Greeks, styled themselves, with some appearance of truth, the most enlightened and civiilised portion of the human species. The form of government was a pure and simple monarchy: the name of the Roman Emperor, which so long preserved a faint tradition of freedom, was confined to the Latin provinces; and the princes of Constantinople measured their greatness by the servile obedience of their people. They were ignorant how much this passive disposition excites and degrades every faculty of the mind. The subjects, who had resigned their will to the absolute commands of a master, were equally incapable of guarding their lives and fortunes against the assaults of the barbarians, or of defending their cause from the terms of superstition.

The year 397 next, or 398,Order of St. John. In the consecration of a new edifice in Rome, and four more into Bishopric at Antioch, the emperor awoke to the necessity of securing the orthodoxy of the clergy. The controversy about the consecration of the bishop of Carthage, between the party of Eutropius and Flavianus, was approached with people were attached to the two sects. Flavianus was in the public eye. had not been consecrated. The bishop of Carthage, at the time of his consecration, was the same as he is within the year.
The first events of the reign of Arcadius and Hærinus are so intimately connected, that the rebellion of the Goths, and the fall of Rufinus, have already claimed a place in the history of the West. It has already been observed, that Eutropius, one of the principal eunuchs of the palace of Constantinople, succeeded the haughty minister whose ruin he had accomplished, and whose rime he soon imitated. Every order of the state bowed to the new favourite; and their tame and obsequious submission encouraged him to insult the laws, and what is still more difficult and dangerous, the manners, of his country. Under the weakness of the predecessors of Arcadius, the reign of the emperors had been secret and almost invisible. They instilled themselves into the confidence of the prince; but their ensuable functions were confined to the manual service of the wardrobe and Imperial household. They might direct, in a whisper, the public councils, and blast, by their malicious suggestions, the fame and fortune of the most illustrious citizens; but they never presumed to stand forward in the front of empire, or to prosecute the public honours of the state. Eutropius was the first of his artificial sex, who dared to assume the character of a Roman magistrate and general. Sometimes, in the presence of the blustering senators, he ascended the tribunal, to pronounce judgment, or to repudiate elaborate lawsuits, and sometimes appeared on horseback, at the head of his troops, in the dress and armour of a hero. The disregard of emotion and decency, always betrays a weak and ill-regulated mind; nor does Eutropius seem to have compensated for the folly of the design, by any superior merit or ability in the execution. His former habits of life had not introduced him to the study of the laws, or the exercises of the field; his awkward and unsuccessful attempts provoked the secret contempt of the spectators; the Goths expressed their wish that such a general might always command the armies of Rome; and the name of the minister was branded with ridicule, more pernicious perhaps than hatred, in a public character. The subjects of Arcadius were exasperated by the recollection, that this detested and despised eunuch, who so perseveringly mimicked the actions of a man, was born in the most abject condition of servitude; that before he entered the Imperial palace, he had been successively sold, and pur-
that he has exchanged his paternal estate for
the government of Bithynia. In the same
chamber of Eutropius, a large tablet is exposed
to public view, which marks the respective
pieces of the provinces. The different value
of Pontus, of Galatia, of Lydia, is accurately
distinguished. Lycia may be obtained for so
many thousand pieces of gold; but the epu-
sium of Phrygia will require a more con-
siderable sum. The senate wishes to
obliterate, by the general disgrace, his personal
ignominy; and as he has been sold himself,
he is desirous of selling the rest of mankind.
In the eager contention, the balance, which
contains the fate and fortunes of the province,
often trembles on the beam; and till one of
the scales is inclined, by a superior weight,
the mind of the impartial judge remains in
anxious suspense. Such (continues the
indignant poet) "are the fruits of Roman valour,
and the lust of Antiochus, and of the triumph
of Pompey." This venal prostitution of pub-
lic honours secured the impunity of future
crimes; but the riches, which Eutropius derived
from confiscation, were already stained with
injustice; since it was decent to accuse, and to
condemn, the proprietors of the wealth which
he was impatient to confiscate. Some noble
blood was shed by the hand of the executioner;
and the most insatiable extremities of the
empire were filled with innocent and illustrious
Names of August.
... Among the generals and
officials of the East, Ambianiatus
had reason to dread the first effects of the res-
mant of Eutropius. He had been guilty of the
immeasurable crime of introducing that abject
slave to the palace of Constantine: and some
degree of praise must be allowed to a powerful
and ingratiating favourite, who was satisfied
with the disgrace of his benefactor. Ambianiatus
was stripped of his ample fortunes by an Im-
perial rescript, and banished to Pityus, on the
Euxine, the last frontier of the Roman world;
where he subsisted by the precarious mercy of
the barbarians, till he could obtain, after the
fall of Eutropius, a mild allusion. Sidon in
Phoenicia. The destruction of
Tissidius.
Tissidius required a more serious
and regular mode of attack. That great officer,
the master-general of the armies of Theodosius,
had signalled his valour by a decisive victory,
which he obtained over the Goths of Thessaly;
but he was too prone, after the example of his
sovereign, to enjoy the luxury of peace, and to
abandon his confidence to wicked and designing
flatterers. Tissidius had despised the public
clamour, by promoting an infamous dependent
to the command of a cohort; and he desired
to feel the ingratitude of Burgus, who was secretly
instigated by the favourite to accuse his patron
of a treasonable conspiracy. The general was
arraigned before the tribunal of Arcadius him-
self; and the principal accuser stood by the side
of the throne to suggest the questions and
answers of his sovereign. But as this form of
trial might be deemed partial and arbitrary,
the further enquiry into the crimes of Tissidius
was delegated to Saturninus and Procopius; the
former of consular rank, the latter still respected
as the father-in-law of the emperor Valens.
The appearances of a fair and legal proceeding
were maintained by the blunt honesty of
Procopius; and he yielded with reluctance to
the obsequious dexterity of his colleague, who pro-
nounced a sentence of condemnation against
the unfortunate Tissidius. His immense riches
were confiscated, in the name of the emperor,
and for the benefit of the favourite; and he was
doomed to perpetual exile at Oasis, a solitary
spot in the midst of the sandy deserts of Libya.
Secluded from all human converse, the master-
general of the Roman armies was lost for ever
over the world; but the circumstances of his fate
have been related in a various and contradictory
manner. It is insinuated, that Eutropius de-
spatched a private order for his secret execution.
"It was reported, that, in attempting to escape
from Oasis, he perished in the desert, of thirst
and hunger; and that his dead body was found
on the sands of Libya. It has been asserted,
with more confidence, that his son Syagrius,
after successfully eluding the pursuit of the
agents and emissaries of the court, collected a
band of African robbers; that he released Ti-
sidius from the place of his exile; and that
both the father and son disappeared from the
knowledge of mankind. But the unhappy
Burgus, instead of being suffered to possess the
reward of guilt, was soon afterwards circum-
vanted and destroyed, by the more powerful
villany of the minister himself; who retained
sense and spirit enough to achor the instrument
of his own crimes.
... The public hatred, and the de-
spair of individuals, continually
threatened, or seemed to threaten,
the personal safety of Eutropius; as
well as of the numerous adherents, who were
attached to his fortune, and had been promoted
by his vernal favour. For their mutual defence,
he contrived the safeguard of a law, which vi-
olated every principle of humanity and justice.
CHAPTER XXXII
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

It is enacted, in the name, and by the authority of the Senate, that all those who shall conspire, either with subjects, or with strangers, against the lives of any of the persons whom the emperor considers as the members of his own body, shall be punished with death and confiscation. This species of fictitious and metaphorical treason is extended to protect, not only the illustrious officers of the state and army, who are admitted into the sacred consistory, but likewise the principal domestics of the palace, the senators of Constantinople, the military commanders, and the civil magistrates of the province: a vague and indefinite list, which, under the successors of Constantin, included an obscure and numerous train of subordinate ministers. This extreme severity might perhaps be justified, had it been only directed to secure the representatives of the sovereign from any actual violence in the execution of their office. But the whole body of Imperial dependents claimed a privilege, or rather impunity, which screened them, in the lowest respects of their lives, from the justice, even the justifiable resentment of their fellow citizens; and, by a strange perversion of the laws, the same degree of guilt and punishment was applied to a private quarrel, and to a deliberate conspiracy against the emperor and the empire. The effect of this measure was the most positively and most absurdly declared, that in such cases of treason, thoughts and actions ought to be punished with equal severity; that the knowledge of a mischievous intention, unless it be instantly revealed, becomes equally criminal with the intention itself; and that those rash men, who shall presume to solicit the pardon of traitors, shall themselves be branded with public and perpetual infamy. "With regard to the sons of the traitors," (continues the emperor) "although they ought to share the punishment, since they will probably imitate the guilt of their parents; yet, by the special effect of our Imperial bounty, we grant them their lives: but, at the same time, we declare them incapable of inheriting, either on the father's or on the mother's side, or of receiving any gift or legacy, from the testamentary estates either of kinsmen or of strangers. Stigmas are put on the face of treason, excluded from the hopes of honours or fortunes, let them stand in the puns of poverty and contempt, till they shall consider life as a calamity, and death as a comfort and relief." In such words, so well adapted to insult the feelings of mankind, did the emperor, or rather his favourite eunuch, applaud the moderation of a law, which transferred the same unjust and inhuman penalties to the children of all those who had ascended, or who had not disclosed, these fictitious conspiracies. Some of the noblest regulations of Roman jurisprudence have been suffered to expire; but this edict, a convenient and forcible engine of ministerial tyranny, was carefully inserted in the codes of Theodosius and Justinian; and the same maxims have been revived in modern ages, to protect the electors of Germany, and the cardinals of the church of Rome.

Yet these suspicious laws, which spread terror among a disarmed and spiritless people, were of too weak a texture to restrain the bold enterprise of the Ostrogoths. The foundation of that warlike nation, which had been planted by Theodosius in one of the most fertile districts of Thrace, impatiently compared the slow returns of laborious husbandry with the successful rape and liberal rewards of Alaric; and their leader, resented, as a personal affront, the ungracious reception which the artists of Constantinople were extending to soft and wealthy provinces, in the heart of the empire, was astonished by the sound of war; and the faithful vassal, who had been disregarded, or oppressed, was again respected, as soon as he resumed the hostile character of a barbarian. The vineyards and fruitful fields, between the rapid Maritsa and the winding Maeander, were consumed with fire; the decayed walls of the cities crumbled into dust; at the first stroke of an enemy, the trembling inhabitants escaped from a bloody massacre to the shores of the Hellespont; and a considerable part of Asia Minor was devastated by the rebellion of the Ostrogoths. His rapid progress was checked by the resistance of the peasants of Pamphylia; and the Ostrogoths, attacked in a narrow pass, between the city of Selge, a deep morass, and the craggy cliffs of Mount Taurus, were defeated with the loss of their bravest troops. But the spirit of their chief was not drained by misfortune; and his army was continually recruited by swarms of barbarians and outlaws, who were drawing on the profession of robbery, under the most honourable names of war and conquest. The renown of the success of Thrigibld might for some time be suppressed by fear, or disguised by flattery; yet they gradually alarmed both the court and the capital. Every misfortune was exaggerated in dark and doubtful hints; and the future designs of the rebels became the subject of anxious conjectures. Whene'er Thrigibld advanced into the inland country, the Romans were inclined to suppose that he meditated the passage of Mount Taurus, and the invasion of Syria. If he descended towards the sea, they imputed, and perhaps suggested, to the Gothic chief, the more dangerous project of arming a fleet in the harbours of
THE DECLINE AND FALL

Chapter XXXII

IONIA, and of extending his depredations along the maritime coast, from the mouth of the Nile to the part of Constantinople. The approach of danger, and the obstinacy of Trigubilid, who refused all terms of accommodation, compelled Eutropius to summon a council of war. After claiming, for himself the privilege of a veteran soldier, the council intrusted the guard of Thrace and the Hellenists to Gainas the Goth, and the command of the Asiatic army to his favourite Leo; two generals, who differently, but effectually, promoted the cause of the rebels. Leo, who, from the bulk of his body, and the dullness of his mind, was termed the Ajax of the East, had deserted his original trade of a woolcomer, to exercise, with much less skill and success, the military profession; and his uncertain operations were capriciously framed and executed, with an ignorance of real difficulties, and a timorous neglect of every favourable opportunity. The rashness of the Ostrogoths had drawn them into a disadvantageous position between the river Melas and Eurymenes, where they were almost besieged by the peasants of Pamphylia; but the arrival of an Imperial army, instead of completing their destruction, afforded the means of safety and victory. Trigubilid surprised the unguarded camp of the Hellenists, in the darkness of the night; seduced the faith of the greater part of the barbarian auxiliaries, and dissipated, without much effort, the troops, which had been corrupted by the relaxation of discipline, and the luxury of the capital. The discontent of Gainas, who had so boldly contrived and executed the death of Rutilius, was irritated by the fortune of his unworthy successor; he accused his own dishonourable passion under the servile reign of an eunuch; and the ambitious Goth was convic-teed, at least in the public opinion, of secretly fomenting the revolt of Trigubilid, with whom he was connected by a domestic, as well as by a national alliance. WhoseGainas of the Hellenists, to unite under his standard the remnant of the Asiatics, Trigubilid skilfully adapted his measures to the wishes of the Ostrogoths; abandoning, by his retreat, the country which they desired to invade; or facilitating, by his approach, the desertion of the barbarian auxiliaries. To the Imperial court he repeatedly magnified the valour, the genius, the inexhaustible resources of Trigubilid; confessed his own inability to prosecute the war; and asserted the permission of negotiating with his invincible adversary. The conditions of peace were dictated by the haughty rebel; and the peremptory demand of the head of Eutropius, revealed the author and the design of this hostile conspiracy.

The bold satirist, who has indulged his discontent by the partial and passionate Economist of the Christian emperors, violates the dignity, rather than the truth, of history; by comparing the son of Theodosius to one of those harmless and simple animals, who scarcely feel that they are the property of their shepherd. Two passions, however, fear and conjugal affection, awakened the languid soul of Arcadius; he was terrified by the threats of a victorious barbarian; and he yielded to the tender eloquence of his wife Eudoxia, who, with a flood of artificial tears, presenting her infant children to their father, implored his justice for some real or imaginary insult, which she imputed to the audacious eunuch. The emperor's band was directed to sign the condemnation of Eutropius; the magic spell, which during four years had bound the prince and the people, was instantly dissolved; and the accusations, that so lately filled the merit and fortune of the favourite, were converted into the clamours of the soldiers and people, who reproached his crimes, and pressed his immediate execution. In this hour of distress and despair, his only refuge was in the sanctuary of the church, whose privileges he had wisely, or profanely, attempted to circumscribe; and the most eloquent of the saints, John Chrysostom, enjoyed the triumph of protecting a prostrate minister, whose crime had raised him to the ecclesiastical throne of Constantinople. The archbishop, ascending the pulpit of the cathedral, that he might be distinctly seen and heard by an immovable crowd of either sex and of every age, pronounced a reasonable and pathetic discourse on the forgiveness of injuries, and the instability of human greatness. The agony of the pale and affrighted wretch, who, by his trembling voice, placed the table of the altar, exhibited a solemn and instructive spectacle; and the orator, who was afterwards accused of vindicting the misfortunes of Eutropius, found the place. He might save the fury of the people. The powers of human nature, of superstition, and of eloquence, prevailed. The emperor Eudoxias was restrained, by her own prejudices, or by those of her subjects, from violating the sanctuary of the church; and Eutropius was permitted to capitulate, by the milder arts of persuasion, and by an oath, that his life should be spared. Careless of the dignity of their sovereign, the new ministers of the palace immediately published an edict, to declare, that his late favours had disgraced the names of consul and patrician, to abolish his states, to confiscate his wealth, and to inflict a perpetual exile in the island of

20 See the History of Chrysostom, cap. xi. p. 381-388, of which
25 Chrysostom, cap. vi. 7. Moralia in the Life of Chrysostom, from, p. 235.48. The
35 Chrysostom, cap. vi. 9. Moralia in the Life of Chrysostom, from, p. 237.48. Of
45 Chrysostom, cap. vi. 9. Moralia in the Life of Chrysostom, from, p. 237.48. Of
55 Chrysostom, cap. vi. 9. Moralia in the Life of Chrysostom, from, p. 237.48. Of
65 Chrysostom, cap. vi. 9. Moralia in the Life of Chrysostom, from, p. 237.48. Of
75 Chrysostom, cap. vi. 9. Moralia in the Life of Chrysostom, from, p. 237.48. Of

The Magnanimous bas hostile praetorius ad se comitavit. 20

Every quarter of Constantinople was filled with tumult and disorder; and the barbarians gained with such ardour on the rich shops of the jewelers, and the tables of the bankers, which were covered with gold and silver, that it was judged prudent to remove those dangerous temptations from their sight. They sent in the injunctions prepared, and some alarming attempts were made, during the night, to attack and destroy with fire the Imperial palace. In this state of mutual and suspicious hostility, the guards, and the people of Constantinople shut the gates, and rose in arms, to prevent, or to punish, the conspiracy of the Goths. During the absence of Guinius, his troops were surprised and oppressed; seven thousand barbarians perished in this bloody massacre. In the fury of the pursuit, the Catholics uncovered the roof, and continued to throw down flaming logs of wood, till they overthrew their adversaries, who had retreated to the church or conventicle of the Arians. Guinius was either innocent of the design, or too confident of his success; he was astonished by the intelligence, that the flower of his army had been ingloriously destroyed; that he himself was declared a public enemy; and that his countryman, Fravitta, a laureate and imperial confessor, had assumed the management of the war, and led the Goths. The enterprises of the rebel, against the cities of Thessalonic, were encountered by a firm and well-ordered defence: his hungry soldiers were soon reduced to the grass that grew on the margin of the fortifications; and Guinius, who hastily regretted the wealth and luxury of Asia, endured a desperate resolution of forcing the passage of the Hellespont. He was destitute of vessels; but the woods of the Chersonesus afforded materials for rafts, and his intrepid barbarians did not refuse to trust themselves to the waves. But Fravitta attentively watched the progress of their undertaking.

As soon as they had gained the middle of the stream, the Roman gallies, impelled by the full force of oars, of the current, and of a favourable wind, rushed forwards in compact order, and with irresistible weight; and the Hellespont was covered with the fragments of the Gothic shipwreck. After the destruction of his hopes, and the loss of many thousands of his bravest soldiers, Guinius, who could no longer aspire to govern, or to subdue, the Romans, determined to resume the independence of a savage life. A light and active body of barbarian horse, disengaged from their infantry and baggage, might perform, in eight or ten days, a march of three hundred miles from the Hellespont to the Danube; the numbers of that

The emperor Constantine, who ordered the gates to be shut, and the people to be armed, left the city of his habits, and betook himself to his palace. This action was not such as to determine the issue of the conflict, but at least involved in the same a great number of the town's inhabitants. The confederate armies advanced with resolution against the resistance, to the stratagems of the Hellespont, and the Barbares; and Arcadian was instructed to prevent the loss of his Asiatic dominions, by recognizing his authority and his person to the faith of the barbarians. The church of the holy martyr Euphemia, situate on a lofty eminence near Chalcedon, was chosen for the place of the interview. Guinius bowed, with reverence, at the feet of the emperor, whilst he embraced the sacrifice of Arcadian and Saturninus, two ministers of consular rank; and their naked necks were exposed, by the haughty rebel, to the edge of the sword, till he consecrated to grant them a precarious and disgraceful repose. The Goths, according to the terms of the agreement, were immediately transported from Asia into Europe; and their victorious chief, who accepted the title of master-general of the Roman armies, soon filled Constantinople with his troops, and distributed, among his dependents, the honours and rewards of the victory. In his early youth, Guinius had passed the Danube as a suppliant, and a fugitive; his elevation had been the work of valor and fortune; and his injustice, or perfidious, conduct, was the cause of his rapid downfall. Notwithstanding the vigorous opposition of the archbishop, he imprudently claimed, for his Ariad sectaries, the possession of a peculiar church; and the pride of the Catholics was offended by the public toleration of heresy.

The regulations of Guinius, who was subject to rival the place of the emperor, were immediately enforced in the head of the church; and the city of the emperor was distressed with calamities. The citizens were assembled, by the imperial decree, in the church of the empress, in order to make an offer of the imperial throne to him so magnanimous, in a spirit worthy of his life.
important frontier had been gradually annihilated; the river, in the mouth of December, would be deeply frozen; and the unbounded prospect of Scythia was open to the ambition of Gainas. This design was secretly communicated to the national troops, who devoted themselves to the fortunes of their leader; and before the signal of departure was given, a great number of provincial auxiliaries, whom he suspected of an attachment to their native country, were perfidiously massacred. The Goths advanced, by rapid marches, through the plains of Thrace, and they were soon delivered from the fear of a pursuit, by the vanity of Fravitta, who, instead of extinguishing the war, hastened to enjoy the popular applause, and to assume the peaceful honours of the consulship. But a formidable ally appeared in arms to subdue the majority of the empire, and to guard the peace and liberty of Scythia. The superior forces of Ulpin, king of the Huns, opposed the progress of Gainas; an hostile and ruined country prohibited his retreat; he despaired of capitulating; and after repeatedly attempting to cut his way through the ranks of the enemy, he was slain, with his desperate followers, in the field of battle.

Eleven days after the naval victory of the Hellespont, the head of Gainas, the invincible gift of the conqueror, was received at Constantinople with the most liberal expressions of gratitude; and the public deliverance was celebrated by festivals and illuminations. The triumphs of Arcadius became the subject of epic poetry; and the monarch, no longer oppressed by any hostile terrors, resigned himself to the mild and absolute dominion of his wife, the fair and artful Eudoxia; who has stilled her fame by the persecution of St. John Chrysostom.

After the death of the indolent Neotissus, the successor of Gregory Nazianzus, the church of Constantinople was distracted by the ambition of rival candidates, who were not ashamed to solicit, with gold or flattery, the suffrage of the people, or of the favourite. On this occasion, Eutropius seems to have deviated from his ordinary maxims; and his uncorrected judgment was determined only by the superior merit of a stranger. In a late journey into the East, he had admired the sermons of John, a native and presbyter of Antioch, whose name has been distinguished by the epitaph of Chrysostom, or the Golden Mouth. A private order was despatched to the governor of Syria; and as the people might be unwilling to resign their favourite preacher, he was transported, with speed

and secrecy, in a post-chariot, from Antioch to Constantinople. The unanimous and unresisted consent of the court, the clergy, and the people, ratified the choice of the minister; and, as a saint, and as an orator, the new archbishop surpassed the sanguine expectations of the public. Born of a noble and opulent family, in the capital of Syria, Chrysostom had been educated, by the care of a tender mother, under the tuition of the most skilful masters. He studied the art of rhetoric in the school of Libanius; and that celebrated sophist, who soon discovered the talents of his disciple, ingenuously confessed, that John would have deserved to succeed him, had he not been stolen away by the Christians. His piety soon disposed him to receive the sacrament of baptism; to renounce the lucrative and honorable profession of the law; and to bury himself in the adjacent desert, where he subdued the lusts of the flesh by an austerity of penance of six years. His infirmities compelled him to return to the society of mankind; and the authority of Meletius devoted his talents to the service of the church; but in the midst of his family, and afterwards in the archiepiscopal throne, Chrysostom still persevered in the practice of the monastic virtues. The ample revenues, which his predecessors had consumed in pomp and luxury, he diligently applied to the establishment of hospitals; and the multitude, who were supported by his charity, preferred the eloquent and edifying discourses of their archbishop, to the amusements of the theatre or the circus. The monuments of that eloquence which was admired near twenty years at Antioch and Constantinople, have been carefully preserved; and the possession of near one thousand sermons, or homilies, has authorized the critics of succeeding times to appreciate the genuine merit of Chrysostom. They unanimously attribute to the Christian orator, the free command of an elegant and copious language; the judgment to conceal the advantages which he derived from the knowledge of rhetoric and philosophy; an inexhaustible fund of metaphors and similitudes, of ideas and images, to vary and illustrate the most familiar topics; the happy art of engaging the passions in the service of virtue; and of exposing the folly, as well as the turpitude, of vice, almost with the truth and spirit of a dramatic representation.

The pastoral labours of the archbishop of Constantinople provoked, and gradually united against him, two sorts of enemies; the aspiring clergy, who envied his success, and the obstinate sinners, who were offended by his reproofs. When
knowledgy of human nature to the particular characters, either of his dependents, or of his equals. Conscious of the purity of his intentions, and perhaps of the superiority of his genius, the archbishop of Constantinople extended the jurisdiction of the imperial city, that he might enlarge the sphere of his pastoral labours; and the conduct which the profuse impatience of an ambitious motive, appeared to Chrysostom himself in the light of a sacred and indispensable duty. In his visitation through the Asiatic provinces, he deposed thirteen bishops of Lydia and Pisidia; and indirectly declared, that a deep corruption of simony and licentiousness had infected the whole episcopal order. If these bishops were innocent, such a rash and unjust condemnation must excite a well-grounded discontent. If they were guilty, the numerous associates of their guilt would soon discover, that their own safety depended on the ruin of the archbishop; whom they studied to represent as the tyrant of the Eastern church.

This ecclesiastical conspiracy was managed by Theophanes, archbishop of Alexandria, an active and ambitious prelate, who displayed the fruits of rapine in monstrosities of ostentation. His national dislike to the rising greatness of a city, which degraded him from the second, to the third, rank, in the Christian world, was exasperated by some personal disputes with Chrysostom himself. By the private invitation of the emperor, Theophanes landed at Constantinople, with a stout body of Egyptian marines, to encounter the populace; and a train of dependent bishops, to secure, by their voices, the majority of a synod. The synod was convened in the suburb of Chaleced, surnamed the Oak, where Rufinus had erected a stately church and monastery; and their proceedings were continued during fourteen days, or sessions. A bishop and a deacon accused the archbishop of Constantinople; but the frivolous or improbable nature of the forty-seven articles which they presented against him, may justly be considered as a fair and unexceptionable pacific tug. Four successive summories were signified to Chrysostom; but he still refused to trust either his person, or his reputation, in the hands of his impeachable enemies, who, peremptorily declining the examination of any particular charges, condemned his contumacious disobedience, and hastily pronounced a sentence of deposition. The synod of the Oak immediately addressed the emperor to ratify and execute their judgment, and candidly intimated, that the penalties of treason might be inflicted on the obnoxious prelate, who had reviled, under the name of Jeshoch, the emperor...
Eudoxia herself. The archbishop was rudely arrested, and conducted through the city, by one of the imperial messengers, who led him, after a short navigation, near the entrance of the Eumaeus from whence, before the expiration of two days, he was gloriously recalled.

The first anæsthesy of his faithful people had been mute and passive; they suddenly rose with unanimous and irresistible fury. Theophilus escaped; but the promiscuous crowd of monks and Egyptian mariners were slaughtered without pity in the streets of Constantinople. A tremendous earthquake justified the interposition of Heaven; the torrent of seditious rolled forwards to the gates of the palace; and the empress, agitated by fear or remorse, threw herself at the feet of Arcadius, and confessed, that the public safety could be purchased only by the restoration of Chrysostom. The Bosphorus was covered with immovable vessels; the shores of Europe and Asia were profusely illuminated; and the acclamations of a victorious people accompanied, from the port to the cathedral, the triumph of the archbishop; who too easily consented to resume the exercise of his functions, before his sentence had been legally reversed by the authority of an ecclesiastical synod. Ignorant, or careless, of the impending danger, Chrysostom indulged his zeal, or perhaps his resentment; declined with peculiar asperity against his enemies; and assumed the profane language which was accursed, in theCrypts of St. Sophia, to the statue of the emperors. His imprudence tempted his enemies to inflame the haughty spirit of Eudoxia, by reporting, or perhaps inventing, the famous exordium of a sermon: "Herodias is again furious; Herodias again dances; she once more requires the head of John;" an insolent allusion, which, as a woman and a sovereign, it was impossible for her to forgive.

The short interval of a pernicious truce was employed to concert more effectual measures for the disgrace and ruin of the archbishop. A numerous council of the Eastern prelates, who were guided by a distance by the advice of Theophilus, confirmed the validity, without examining the justice, of the former sentence; and the detachment of barbarian troops was introduced into the city, to suppress the emotions of the people. On the vigil of Easter, the solemn administration of baptism was rudely interrupted by the soldiers, who alarmed the modesty of the naked catechumens, and violated, by their presence, the awful mysteries of the Christian worship. Arsacius occupied the church of St. Sophia, and the archiepiscopal throne. The Catholics retreated to the baths of Constantino, and afterwards to the fields: where they were still pursued and insulted by the guards, the bishops, and the magistrates. The fatal day of the second and final exile of Chrysostom was marked by the conflagration of the cathedral, of the senate-house, and of the adjacent buildings; and this calamity was impured, without proof, but not without probability, to the despot of a persecuted faction.

Cicero might claim some merit, if his voluntary banishment preserved the peace of the republic; but the submission of Chrysostom was the indispensable duty of a Christian and a subject. Instead of listening to his humble prayer, that he might be permitted to reside at Cyzicus, or Nicomedia, the inflexible empress assigned for his exile the remote and desolate town of Cucusus, among the ridges of Mount Taurus, in the Lesser Armenia. A secret hope was entertained, that the archbishop might perish in a difficult and dangerous march of seventy days in the heat of summer, through the provinces of Asia Minor, where he was continually threatened by the hostile attacks of the Persians, and the more implacable fury of the monks. Yet Chrysostom arrived in safety at the place of his confinement; and the three years, which he spent at Cucusus, and the neighbouring town of Arrabia, were the last and most glorious of his life. His character was consecrated by absence and persecution; the faults of his administration were no longer remembered; but every virtue repeated the praises of his virtues and virtues; and the respectful attention of the Christian world was fixed on a desert spot among the mountains of Taurus. From that solitude the archbishop, whose active mind was invigilated by misfortunes, maintained a strict and frequent correspondence with the most distant provinces; exhorted the separate congregation of his faithful adherents to persevere in their allegiance; urged the destruction of the temples of Panticas, and the expiation of heresy in the isle of Cyprus; extended his pastoral care to the missions of Persia and Scythia; negotiated, by his ambassadors, with the Roman pontiff, and the emperor Honorius; and boldly appealed, from a partial synod, to the supreme tribunal of a free and general council. The mind of the illustrious exile was still independent; but his captive body was exposed to the revenge of the oppressors, who continued to abuse the name and authority of Arcadius. An order was dispatched for the instant removal of Chrysostom to the extreme desert of Pityuss: and his guards so faithfully obeyed their cruel instructions, that, before he reached the sea-coast of the Euxine, he expired at Camara, in Pontus, in the sixtieth year of his age. The succeeding
generation acknowledged his innocence and merit. The archbishops of the East, who might blush that their predecessors had been the enemies of Chrysostom, were gradually disposed, by the firmness of the Roman pontiffs, to restore the honours of that venerable name. At the pious solicitation of the clergy and people of Constantinople, his relics, thirty years after his death, were transported from their obscure sepulchre to the royal city. The emperor Theodosius advanced to receive them as far as Chalevedon; and, falling prostrate on the spot, implored, in the name of his guilty parson, Arcadius and Eudoxia, the forgiveness of the injurious saint.

Yet a reasonable doubt may be entertained, whether any stain of hereditary guilt could be derived from Arcadius to his successor. Eudoxia was a young and beautiful woman, who indulged her passions, and despised her husband: count John enjoyed, at least, the familiar confidence of the empress; and the public named him as the real father of Theodosius the younger. The birth of a son was accepted, however, by the pious husband, as an event the most fortunate and honourable to himself, to his family, and to the Eastern world; and the royal infant, by an unprecedented favour, was invested with the titles of Caesar and Augustus. In less than four years afterwards, Eudoxia, in the bloom of youth, was destroyed by the consequences of a miscarriage; and this untimely death confounded the prophecy of a holy bishop, who, amidst the universal joy, had ventured to foretell, that she should behold the long and auspicious reign of her glorious son. The Catholics applauded the justice of Heaven, which avenged the persecution of St. Chrysostom; and perhaps the emperor was the only person who sincerely bewailed the loss of the haughty and capricious Eudoxia. Such a domestic misfortune affected guys more deeply than the public calamities of the East; the licentious excursions, from Pontus to Palestine, of the usurian robbers, whose impudence accused the weakness of the government; and the earthquakes, the conflagrations, the famine, and the flights of locusts, which the popular discontent was equally disposed to attribute to the incapacity of the monarch. At length, in the thirty-first year of his age, after a reign (if we may abuse that word) of thirteen years, three months, and fifteen days, Arcadius expired in the palace of Constantinople. It is impossible to delineate his character; since, in a period very copiously furnished with historical materials, it has not been possible to remark one action that properly belonged to the son of the great Theodosius. The historian Procopius has indeed illuminated the mind of the dying emperor with a ray of human prudence, or celestial wisdom. Arcadius considered, with anxious foresight, the helpless condition of his son Theodosius, who was no more than seven years of age, the dangerous factions of a minority, and the aspiring spirit of Juseguard, the Persian general. Instead of tempting the allegiance of such an infant by interest, or the submission by condescension of supreme power, he boldly appealed to the majesty and munificence of a king; and placed, by a wise and concerted testament, the sceptre of the East in the hands of Juseguard himself. The royal guardian accepted and discharged this honourable trust with exemplary fidelity; and the infancy of Theodosius was protected by the arms and councils of Persia. Such is the singular narrative of Procopius; and his veracity is not disputed by Agathias while he presumes to dissent from his judgment, and to arraign the wisdom of a Christian emperor, who, so rashly, though so fortunately, committed his son and his dominions to the unknown faith of a stranger, a rival, and a heathen. At the distance of one hundred and fifty years, this political question might be debated in the court of Justinian; but a prudent historian will refuse to examine the propriety, till he has ascertained the truth of the testament of Arcadius. As it stands without a parallel in the history of the world, we may justly require, that it should be attested by the positive and unanimous evidence of cotemporaries. The strange novelty of the event, which excites our distrust, must have attracted their notice; and their universal silence annihilates the vain tradition of the succeeding ages.

The maxims of Roman jurisprudence, if they could fairly be transferred from private property to public dominion, would have adjudged to the emperor Honorius the guardianship of his nephew, till he had attained, at least, the fourteen thousand of his age. But the weakness of Honorius, and the calamities of his reign, disqualified him from presenting this natural claim; and such was the absolute separation of the two monarchies, both in interest and affection, that Constantineople would have obeyed, with less reluctance, the orders of the Persians, than those of the Italian, court. Under a prince, whose weakness is disguised by the external signs of boldness and discretion, the
most worthless favourites may secretly dispute the empire of the palace; and dictato to sub-
missive provinces the commands of a master whom they direct and despise. But the min-
isters of a child, who is incapable of arming them with the sanction of the royal name, must acquire and exercise an independent au-
thority. The great officers of the state and army, who had been appointed before the death of Arcadius, formed an aristocracy, which might have inspired them with the idea of a free re-
publir; and the government of the Eastern empire was fortunately assumed by the prefect
Anthemius, who obtained, by his superior abilities, a lasting ascendancy over the minds of
his equals. The safety of the young emperor proved the merit and integrity of Anthemius
and his prudent firmness sustained the force and reputation of an infant reign. Ulfil, with a
formidable host of barbarians, was encamped in the heart of Thrace; he proudly rejected all
terms of accommodation; and, pointing to the rising sun, declared to the Roman senate,
that the course of that planet should alone terminate the conquests of the Hunns. But
the desertion of his confederates, who were privately convinced of the justice and liberality of
the Imperial ministers, obliged Ulfil to retrace the Danube: the tribe of the Scyths, which
composed his rear-guard, was almost extirpated; and many thousand captives were dispersed,
to cultivate, with servile labour, the fields of Asia. In the midst of the public triumphs,
Constantinople was visited by a strong earthquake which formed the center of a great
region of the Illyrian cities, and a plan was judiciously conceived which, in the space of seven
years would have secured the command of the Danube, by establishing on that river a perpetual
fleet of two hundred and fifty armed vessels.

But the Romans had so long been accustomed to the authority of a monarch, that the first,
even among the females, of the Imperial family, who displayed any courage or capacity, was
permitted to ascend the vacant throne of Tho-
edus. His sister Pulcheria, who was only
two years older than herself, received, at the
age of sixteen, the title of Augusta; and though
her favour might be sometimes clouded by
caprice or intrigue, she continued to govern the
Eastern empire for forty years; during the
long minority of her brother, and, after his
death, in her own name, and in the name of
Marcellus, her nominal husband. From a motive,
other than prudence, or religion, she embraced a
life of conjugal and notwithstanding some av-
persions on the chastity of Pulcheria, this
resolution, which she communicated to her
sisters Arcadia and Mariana, was celebrated by
the Christian world, as the sublime effort of
heroic piety. In the presence of the clergy and
people, the three daughters of Arcadius, dedi-
cated their virginity to God; and the obligation of their solemn vow was inscribed on a tablet
gold and gems; which they publicly offered in
the great church of Constantinople. Their
palace was converted into a monastery; and
all males, except the guards of their conscience,
the saints who had forgotten the distinction of
sexes, were scrupulously excluded from the holy
threshold. Pulcheria, her two sisters, and
chosen train of favoured nuns, formed a reli-
gious community: they renounced the vanity of
dress; interrupted, by frequent fasts, their simple
and frugal diet; allotted a portion of their time
to works of embroidery; and devoted several hours
of the day and night to the exercises of prayer
and psalmody. The piety of a Christian virgin
was adopted by the zen of liberality of an
empress. Ecclesiastical history describes the
splendid churches, which were built at the ex-
 pense of Pulcheria, in all the provinces of the
East; her charitable foundations for the benefit of
strangers and the poor; the ample donations
which she assigned for the perpetual main-
tenance of monastic societies; and the active
society with which she laboured to suppress
the opposite heresies of Nestorius and Eutyches.
Such virtues were supposed to deserve the pecu-
ar favour of the Delphi: and the relics of
martyrs, as well as the knowledge of future
fortunes, were communicated in visions and
revelations to the Imperial saint. Yet the
devotion of Pulcheria never divested her indef-
tigible attention from temporal affairs; and she
alone, among all the descendants of the great
Theodosius, appears to have inherited any share
of his manly spirit and abilities.

Elegant and familiar in which she had acquired,
both of the Greek and Latin languages, was
readily applied to the various occasions of speak-
ing, or writing, on public business; her deli-
berations were maturely weighed; her actions
were prompt and decisive; and, while she moved
without noise or ostentation the wheel of go-
vernment; she discreetly attributed to the genius of the
emperor, the long tranquillity of his
reign. In the last years of his peaceful
life, Europe was indeed afflicted by the arms of
Attila; but the more extensive province of
Asia still continued to enjoy a profound and
permanent repose. Theodosius the younger
was never reduced to the disgraceful necessity of
evacuating and punishing a rebellious subject:

Prudent, because he concealed his connection with the beautiful Paula, and last turning with his brother Theodosius,
the Empress would have married his only son,
the eldest daughter, either with Eudoxia, Simplicita, or, if the fact held the only
wife of her husband, she would have selected a woman of
the same rank, and of the same family, as
herself. In this latter event, Stilicho, who was strongly
allied to the house and order of a woman of
Dalmatia, would have become the companion of
his mistress, and his son-in-law. Stilicho,
in person, and Stilicho's wife, Pulcheria, were
both placed in a position of great respect,
when the son of a retired Pulcheria of useful state in the place where
she was; but she was often employed to
assist her of age.
and since we cannot applaud the vigour, some praise may be due to the mildness, and prosperity, of the administration of Pulcheria.

The Roman world was deeply interested in the education of its master. A regular course of study and exercises was judiciously instituted; of the military exercises of riding, and shooting with the bow; of the liberal studies of grammar, rhetoric, and philosophy; the most skilful masters of the East ambitiously solicited the attention of their royal pupil; and several noble youths were introduced into the palace, to animate his diligence by the emulation of friendship. Pulcheria alone discharged the important task of instructing her brother in the arts of government; but her precepts may countenance some suspicion of the extent of her capacity, or of the purity of her intentions. She taught him to maintain a grave and majestic deportment; to walk, to hold his robes, to seat himself on his throne, in a manner worthy of a great prince; to abstain from laughter; to listen with condescension; to return suitable answers; to assume, by turns, a serious or a placid countenance; in a word, to represent with grace and dignity the external figure of a Roman emperor. But Theodosius \(^72\) was never excelled in supporting the weight and glory of an illustrious name; and, instead of aspiring to imitate his ancestors, he degenerated (if we may presume to measure the degree of incapacity) below the weakness of his father and his uncle. Arcadius and Honorius had been assisted by the guardian care of a parent, whose lessons were enforced by his authority, and example. But the unfortunate prince, who is born in the purple, must remain a stranger to the voice of truth; and the son of Arcadius was condemned to pass his perpetual infancy, encompassed only by a servile train of women and eunuchs. The ample leisure, which he acquired by neglecting the essential duties of his high office, was filled by idle amusements, and unprofitable studies. Hunting was the only active pursuit that could tempt him beyond the limits of the palace; but he was most anxiously engaged, sometimes by the light of a midnight lamp, in the mechanical occupations of painting and carving; and the elegance with which intransigent religious books, entitled the Roman emperor to the singular epithet of Calligraphos, or a fair writer. Separated from the world by an imperceptible veil, Theodosius trusted the persons whom he loved; he loved those who were accustomed to amuse and flatter his indulgence; and as he never perused the papers that were presented for the royal signature, the acts of injustice the most repugnant to his character were frequently perpetrated in his name. The emperor himself was chaste, temperate, liberal, and merciful; but these qualities, which can only deserve the name of virtues, when they are supported by courage, and regulated by discretion, were seldom beneficial, and they sometimes proved mischievous, to mankind. His mind, enervated by a royal education, was oppressed and degraded by abject superstition; he fasted, he sung psalms, he blindly accepted the miracles and doctrines with which his faith was continually nourished. Theodosius devoutly worshipped the dead and living saints of the Catholic church; and he once refused to eat, till an insolent monk, who had cast an excommunication on his sovereign, conceived the heightful of heal the spiritual wound which he had inflicted.\(^73\)

The story of a fair and virtuous maiden, exalted from a private condition to the Imperial throne, might be deemed an incredible romance, if such a romance had not been verified in the marriage of Theodosius. The celebrated Athanasius was educated by her father Leonius in the religion and sciences of the Greeks; and so advantageous was the opinion which the Athenian philosopher entertained of his contemporaries, that he divided his patrimony between his two sons, bequeathing to his daughter a small legacy of one hundred pieces of gold. In the lively confidence that her beauty and virtue would be a sufficient portion. The jealousy and aversion of her brothers soon compelled Athanasia to seek a refuge at Constantinople; and, with some hopes, either of justice or favour, to throw herself at the feet of Pulcheria. That sanguine princess listened to her eloquent complaint; and secretly destined the daughter of the philosopher Leonius for the future wife of the emperor of the East, who had now attained the twentieth year of his age. She easily excited the curiosity of her brother, by an interesting picture of the charms of Athenasia; large eyes, a well-proportioned nose, a fair complexion, golden locks, a slender person, a graceful demeanour, an understanding improved by study, and a virtue tried by distress. The emperor concealed a curtain in the apartment of his sister, as permitted to behold the Athenian virgin; the modest youth immediately declared his pure and honourable love; and the royal mitrales were celebrated amidst the acclamations of the capital and the provinces. Athanasia, who was easily persuaded to renounce the errors of Paganism, received at her baptism the Christian name of Eudokia; but the cautious Pulcheria withheld the title of Augusta, till the wife of Theodosius had approved her fruitfulness by the birth of a daughter, who espoused, fifteen years afterwards, the emperor of the West. The brothers of Eudokia obeyed, with some anxiety, her

---

72 There is a remarkable difference between the two ecclesiastical histories of Byzantium, as above. St. Jerome, in his dealing with the government of the empire, and the actions of Theodosius, is more severe. He represents the emperor as a man of weak and vacillating character; he frequently states that he was more disposed to gratify his own inclinations than to consult the public welfare. This, however, is not the opinion of his contemporaries; the victorious praise of the emperor, at the Council of Constantinople. (Gibbon, p. 61.)

73 The bishop of Cyzicus, one of the first names of the age for his learning and piety, applauds the excellence of our subject. (Hierocles, p. 311.) He load the emperor with the name of Theodosia, the daughter of Theodosius, in order to distinguish her from another daughter of the emperor, of the same name. (Hierocles, p. 311.) The emperor's actual name was Theodosia, whose merit was celebrated by the Cyprians with the slighting of the Cypriots. (Hierocles, p. 311.) These authors have probably used original names of the emperor's family. Eudokia. The modern Greeks, however, have used the name of Eudokia, from Theodosia, instead of Theodosia, for the name of THEODOSIA ( Hierocles, p. 311.)
Imperial summons; but as she could easily forgive their fortunate meekness, she indulged the tenderness, or perhaps the vanity, of a sister, by promoting them to the rank of consuls and prefects. In the luxury of the palace, she still cultivated those ingenuous arts, which had contributed to her greatness; and wisely dedicated her talents to the service of religion, and of her husband. Eudocia composed a poetical paraphrase of the first eight books of the Old Testament, and of the prophecies of Daniel and Zacharias; a cento of the verses of Homer, applied to the life and miracles of Christ, the legend of St. Cyprian, and a panegyric on the Persian victories of Theodosius: and her writings, which were applauded by a servile and superstitious age, have not been disdained by the canons of impartial criticism. The fondness of the emperor was not abated by time and possession; and Eudocia, after the marriage of her daughter, was permitted to disburse her grateful vows by a solemn pilgrimage to Jerusalem. Her ostentation progressed through the East may seem inconsistent with the spirit of Christian humility; she pronounced, from a throne of gold and gems, an eloquent oration to the senate of Antioch, declaring her royal intention of enlarging the walls of the city, bestowed a donation of two hundred pounds of gold to restore the public baths, and accepted the statuette, which were decreed by the gratitude of Antioch. In the Holy Land, her alms and pious foundations exceeded the munificence of the great Helena; and though the public treasure might be impoverished by this excessive liberality, she enjoyed the conscious satisfaction of returning to Constantinople with the chains of St. Peter, the right arm of St. Stephen, and an undoubted picture of the Virgin, painted by St. Luke. But this pilgrimage was the fatal term of the glories of Eudocia. Satiated with empty pomp, and unaidful, perhaps, of her obligations to Pulcheria, she ambitiously aspired to the government of the Eastern empire: the palace was distracted by female discord; but the victory was at last decided, by the superior ascendant of the sister of Theodosius. The execution of Paulinus, master of the offices, and the disgrace of Cyrus, praetorian prefect of the East, convinced the public, that the favour of Eudocia was insufficient to protect her most faithful friends; and the uncommon beauty of Paulinus encouraged the secret rumour, that his guilt was that of a successful lover. As soon as the enmity perceived that the affection of Theodosius was irrevocably lost, she requested the permission of retiring to the distant solitude of Jerusalem. She obtained her request; but the jealousy of Theodosius, or the vindictive spirit of Pulcheria, pursued her in her last retreat; and Saturninus, count of the domestics, was directed to punish with death two ecclesiastics, her mostfavoured servants. Eudocia instantly revenged them by the assassination of the count: the furious passions, which she indulged on this suspicious occasion, seemed to justify the severity of Theodosius: and the empress, ignominiously strip, of the honours of her rank, was disgraced, perhaps unjustly, in the eyes of the world. The remainder of the life of Eudocia, about sixteen years, was spent in exile and devotion: and the approach of age, the death of Theodosius, the misfortunes of her only daughter, who was led a captive from Rome to Carthage, and the society of the holy monks of Palestine, insensibly confirmed the religious temper of her mind. After a full experience of the vicissitudes of human life, she desired of the philosopher Aetius to be excised and carried away, and the only alarm of a Persian war scarcely interrupted the tranquillity of the East. The motives of this war were just and honorable. In the last year of the reign of Jundegand, the supposed guardian of Theodosius, a bishop, who aspired to the crown of martyrdom, destroyed one of the fire-temples of Siria. His zeal and obstinacy were revenged on his brother, the Magi excited a cruel persecution; and the intolerable zeal of Jundegand was mitigated by his son Varnas, or Bathras, who soon afterwards ascended the throne. Some Christian fugitives, who escaped to the Roman frontier, were sturdily demanded, and generously refused; and the refusal, aggravated by commercial disputes, soon kindled a war between the rival monarchies. The mountains of Armenia, and the plains of Mesopotamia, were fled with hostile armies; but the operations of two successive campaigns were not productive of any decisive or memorable events. Some engagements were fought, some towns were besieged, with various and doubtful success; and if the Romans failed in their attempt to recover the long-lost possession of Nisibis, the Persians were repulsed from the walls of a Mesopotamian city, by the valour of a martial bishop, who pointed his thundering engines in the name of St. Thomas the Apostle. Yet the splendid victories, which the incredible speed of the messenger Palladius repeatedly announced to the

---


74 Photius, p. 415. 420. A.D. 399. His accounts, and his magistracy, are supposed to have ended about A.D. 410. The Historia Ecclesiastica, &c. has been corrected by the researches of Dr. Beza. Suidas, p. 795. Photius, p. 415. 420. The Historia Ecclesiastica, &c. has been corrected by the researches of Dr. Beza. Suidas, p. 795.

75 Photius, p. 415. 420. A.D. 399. He was emperor and patrician of the East. The Historia Ecclesiastica, &c. has been corrected by the researches of Dr. Beza. Suidas, p. 795. Photius, p. 415. 420. The Historia Ecclesiastica, &c. has been corrected by the researches of Dr. Beza. Suidas, p. 795.

76 Photius, p. 415. 420. A.D. 399. His accounts, and his magistracy, are supposed to have ended about A.D. 410. The Historia Ecclesiastica, &c. has been corrected by the researches of Dr. Beza. Suidas, p. 795. Photius, p. 415. 420. The Historia Ecclesiastica, &c. has been corrected by the researches of Dr. Beza. Suidas, p. 795.
was divided by the progress of war and faction; and the unnatural division precipitated the downfall of that ancient monarchy. Chosroes, the Persian vassal, reclaimed over the eastern and most extensive portion of the country, while the western province acknowledged the jurisdiction of Araxes, and the supremacy of the emperor Arcadius. After the death of Araxes the Romans suppressed the regal government, and imposed on their allies the condition of subjects. The military command was delegated to the count of the Armenian frontier; the city of Thedosieopolis was built and fortified in a strong situation, on a fertile and lofty ground, near the sources of the Euphrates; and the dependent territories were ruled by five kings, whose dignity was marked by a peculiar habit of gold and purple. The less fortunate nobles, who lamented the loss of their king, and envied the honours of their equals, were provoked to negotiate their peace and pardon at the Persian court; and returning, with their followers, to the palace of Artaxata, acknowledged Chosroes for their lawful sovereign. About thirty years afterwards, Artaxates, the nephew and successor of Chosroes, fell under the displeasure of the haughty and capricious nobles of Araxes; and they unanimously desired a Persian governor in the room of an unworthy king. The answer of the archbishop Isaac, whose sanction they earnestly solicited, is expressive of the character of a superstitious people. He declared the manifest and inexorable will of Artaxates; and declared, that he should not hesitate to accuse him before the tribunal of a Christian emperor, who would punish, without destroying, the sinner. "Our king," continued Isaac, "is too much addicted to licentious pleasures, but he has been purified in the holy waters of baptism. He is a lover of woman, but he does not adore the fire or the elements. He may deserve the reproach of lewdness, but he is an undoubted Catholic; and his faith is pure, though his manners are flagitious. I will never consent to abandon my sheep to the rage of devouring wolves; and you would seem to repeat your rash exchange of the infinitesimal for a believer, for the specious virtues of an imposter." Exasperated by the firmness of Isaac, the factious nobles accused both the king and the archbishop as the secret adherents of the emperor; and absurdly rejoiced in the sentence of condemnation, which, after a partial hearing, was solemnly pronounced by Bahram himself. The descendants of Araxes were degraded from the royal dignity, which they had possessed above five hundred and sixty years; and the dominions of the unfortunate Artaxates, received the sanction of the church and nation with Communion.

The Roman and Partian standards first encountered on the banks of the Euphrates, the kingdom of Armenia was alternately suppressed by its formidable protectors; and in the course of this history, several events, which inclined the balance of peace and war, have been already related. A disgraceful treaty had resigned Armenia to the ambition of Sapor; and the scales of Persia appeared to preponderate. But the royal race of Araxes impatiently submitted to the house of Sassan; the turbulent nobles asserted, or betrayed, their hereditary independence; and the nation was still attached to the Christian princes of Constantinople. In the beginning of the fifth century, Armenia

81. Commers, 3. ch. 19, &c. 82, 83, 84. is the last author for the Persians. We are likewise indebted to Winter's Institution, the Persians, and Iohannes of Damascus. 85. From the third book of the Armenian history of Bzno of Erzerum. This is the fourteenth book of a manuscript, and the original of this historian, his plans, and his geography, are strongly recommended. 86. Commers, 3. ch. 19, &c. 84. Iohannes of Damascus mentions the same facts in a very different manner, and the map in his history is more trustworthy. 87. The women of Armenia and the Greek language of Chosroes are noticed by the Persians in the eastern provinces, which were subdued by the Byzantine arms. 88. Commers, 3. ch. 19, &c. 84. The residence of the emperor was placed by the Persians in the eastern provinces, which were subdued by the Byzantine arms, in the beginning of the fifth century, and the foundation of the city into the Armenian language is an event which

80. The process of beneficence in the midst of war must always tend to assuage the animosity of antagonistic nations; and I wish to persuade myself, that Acacius contributed to the restoration of peace. In the conferences which were held on the limits of the two empires, the Roman ambassadors degraded the personal character of their sovereign, by a vain attempt to magnify the extent of his power; and when they seriously advised the Persians to prevent, by a timely accommodation, the wrath of a monarch, who was yet ignorant of this distant war. A truce of one hundred years was solemnly ratified; and, although the revolutions of Armenia might threaten the public tranquillity, the essential conditions of this treaty were respected near fourscore years by the successors of Constantinople and Artaxates.
under the new and significant appellation of Persarmenia, were reduced into the form of a province. This usurpation excited the jealousy of the Roman government; but the rising disputes were soon terminated by an amicable, though unequal, partition of the ancient kingdom of Armenia; and a territorial acquisition, which Augustus might have despised, reflected some lustre on the declining empire of the younger Theodosius.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Death of Honorius.—Valentinian III. Emperor of the East.—Administration of his Mother Placidia.—Ritual and Boniface.—Conquest of Africa by the Vandals.

During a long and disgraceful reign of twenty-eight years, Honorius, emperor of the West, was separated from the friendship of his brother, and afterwards of his nephew, who reigned over the East; and Constantine beheld, with apparent indifference and secret joy, the calamities of Rome. The strange adventures of Placidia, gradually renewed, and augmented, the alliance of the two empires. The slaughter of the great Theodosian had been the cause, and the queen of the Goths; she lost an affectionate husband; she was dragged in chains by her insulting assassins; she taunted the pleasure of revenge, and was exchanged, in the treaty of peace, for six hundred thousand men-of-war. After her return from Spain to Italy, Placidia experienced a new persecution in the bosom of her family. She was adverse to a marriage, which had been stipulated without her consent; and the brave Constantius, as a noble reward for the tyrants whom he had vanquished, received, from the hand of Honorius himself, the struggling and reluctant hand of the widow of Adolphus. But her resistance ended with the ceremony of the nuptials; nor did Placidia refuse to become the mother of Honoria and Valentinian the third, or to assume and exercise an absolute dominion over the mind of her grateful husband. The generous soldier, whose time had hitherto been divided between social pleasure and military service, was taught new issues of avarice and ambition: he extorted the title of Augustus; and the servant of Honorius was associated in the empire of the West. The death of Constantius, in the seventh month of his reign, instead of diminishing, seemed to increase, the power of Placidia; and the indelible familiarity of her brother, which might be no more than the symptoms of a childish affection, was universally attributed to insubordinate actions. On a sudden, by some base intrigue of a steward and a nurse, this excessive familiarity was converted into an irreconcilable quarrel: the debates of the emperor and his sister were not long confined within the walls of the palace; and as the Gothic soldiers adhered to their queen, the city of Ravenna was agitated with bloody and dangerous tumults, which could only be appeased by the forced or voluntary retreat of Placidia and her children. The royal exiles landed at Constantinople, soon after the marriage of Theodosius, during the festival of the Persian victories. They were treated with kindness and magnificence; but as the statues of the emperor Constantius had been rejected by the Eastern court, the title of Augusta could not decently be allowed to his widow. Within a few months after the arrival of Placidia, a swift messenger announced the death of Honorius, the consequence of a droppy; but the important secret was not divulged, till the necessary orders had been dispatched for the march of a large body of troops to the sea-coast of Dalmatia. The ships and the gates of Constantinople remained shut during seven days; and the loss of a foreign prince, who could neither be esteemed nor regretted, was celebrated with loud and affected demonstrations of the public grief.

While the ministers of Constantine deliberated, the vacat therefore of Honorius was usurped by the ambitious and unscrupulous ambition of a stranger. The name of the rebel was John: he filled the confidential office of Proconsul or principal secretory; and history has attributed to his character more virtues, than can easily be reconciled with the violation of the most sacred duty. Elected by the submission of Italy, and the hope of an alliance with the Huns, John presumed to insult, by an embassy, the majesty of the Eastern emperor; but when he understood that his agents had been baffled, imprisoned; and at length chased away, with deserved ignominy, John prepared to assault, by arms, the injustice of his claims. In such a case, the grandson of the great Theodosian should have marched in person: but the young emperor was easily diverted, by his physicians, from so rash and hazardous a design; and the conduct of the Italian expedition was prudently intrusted to Arbadius, and his son Avar, who had already signalled their valor against the Persians. It was resolved, that Arbadius should embark with the infantry; whilst Avar, at the head of the cavalry, conducted Placidia, and her son Valentinian, along the sea-coast of the Haustrian. The march of the cavalry was performed with such active diligence, that they surprised, without resistance, the important city of Aquileia; when the hopes of Avar were unexpectedly confounded by the intelligence, that a storm had dispersed the imperial fleet; and that his father, with only two galleys, was taken and carried a prisoner into the port of Ravenna. Yet this incident, unfortunate as it might seem, facilitated the conquest of Italy. Arbadius employed, or abused, the courteous freedom

---

3. To manage even versus Avarius, the emperor of Spain with the consent of his maternal uncle, the Roman, Tacito, 2. i. 9 sqq. Alexander, Hist. Rom., lib. ii. c. 11 sqq. Alluding to the fatal visit of the emperor to Rome, and the licence of the court, during which Arbadius resided on the Campus Tiberina. On the 22d of November, he would not leave the palace of his mother, the Roman, Tacito, 2. i. 9; and 2. iii. 6. For the second invasion which Arbadius made against Avarius, and the occasion of the battle of the Oppidum, see the Roman, Tacito, 2. iv. 19. For the massacre of Roman, Tacito, 2. i. 9; and 2. iii. 6. For the death of the Roman, Tacito, 2. iv. 19; and 2. iii. 6.
which he was permitted to enjoy, to revive among the troops a sense of loyalty and gratitude; and, as soon as the conspiracy was ripe for execution, he invited, by private messages, and pressed the approach of Aspar. A shepherd, whom she popular credulity transformed into an angel, guided the Eastern cavalry, by a secret, and, it was thought, an impossible road, through the marshes of the Po; the gates of Ravenna, after a short struggle, were thrown open; and the defenceless tyrant was delivered to the mercy, or rather to the cruelty, of the conquerors. His right hand was instantly cut off; and, after he had been exposed, mounted on an ass, to the public decision, John was beheaded in the circus of Aquileia. The usurper Theodosius, when he received the news of the victory, interrupted the horse-races; and, singing, as he marched through the streets, a suitable psalm, conducted his people from the Hippodrome to the church, and spent the remainder of the day in grateful devotion. 8

In a monarchy, which, according to the provisions of the laws, was considered as elective, or hereditary, or patrimonial, it was impossible that the intricate claims of female and collateral succession should be clearly defined; and Theodosius, by the right of comanquility or conquest, might have reigned the sole legitimate emperor of the Romans.

For a moment, perhaps, his eyes were dazzled by the prospect of unbounded power; but his indolent temper gradually accustomed him to the dictates of sound policy. He contented himself with the possession of the East; and wisely relinquished the laborious task of waging a distant and doubtful war against the barbarians beyond the Alps, or of securing the obedience of the Italians and Africans; whose minds were alienated by the irreconcilable difference of language and interest. Instead of listening to the voice of ambition, Theodosius resolved to imitate the moderation of his grandfather, and to seat his cousin Valentinian on the throne of the West. The royal infant was distinguished at Constantinople by the title of Notitiius; he was brought up, before his departure from Thessalonica, to the rank and dignity of Caesar; and, after the conquest of Italy, the patrician Helian, by the authority of Theodosius, and in the presence of the senate, saluted Valentinian the third by the name of Augustus; and solemnly invested him with the diadem, and the Imperial purple. 9 By the agreement of the three females who governed the Roman world, the son of Placidia was betrothed to Eudoxia, the daughter of Theodosius and Athenais; and, as soon as the lover and his bride had attained the age of puberty, this honourable alliance was faithfully accomplished. At the same time a new compensation was promised for the sacrifices of the year. The Western Illyricum was detached from the Italian dominions, and yielded to the throne of Constantinople. 10 The emperor of the East acquired the useful dominion of the rich and maritime province of Dalmatia, and the dangerous sovereignty of Pannonia and Noricum, which had been filled and ravaged above twenty years by a promiscuous crowd of Huns, Ostrogoths, Vandals, and Franks. Theodosius and Valentinian continued to respect the obligations of their public and domestic alliance; but the unity of the Roman government was finally dissolved. By a positive declaration, the validity of all future laws was limited to the dominions of their peculiar author; unless he should think proper to communicate them, subscribed with his own hand, for the approbation of his independent colleague.

Valentinian, when he received the title of Augustus, was no more than six years of age; and his long minority was intrusted to the guardianship of a woman, who might assert a female claim to the succession of the Western empire. Placidia cared, but she could not equal, the reputation and virtues of the wife and sister of Theodosius; the elegant genius of Eudoxia, the wise and successful policy of Pulcheria. The mother of Valentinian was jealous of the power which she was incapable of exercising; she reigned twenty-five years, in the name of her son; and the character of that unworthy emperor gradually counterbalanced the suspicion, that Placidia had nursed his youth by a dissolute education, and studiously diverted his attention from every manly and honourable pursuit. Amidst the decay of military spirit, her armies were commanded by two generals, Arius, and Boissace, who may be deservedly named as the last of the Romans. Their union might have supported a sinking empire; their discord was the fatal and immediate cause of the loss of Africa. The invasion and defeat of Attila has immortalized the name of Arius; and through time has thrown a shade over the exploits of his rival, the defence of Marseilles, and the deliverance of Africa, attest the military talents of count Boissace. In the field of battle, in private encounters, in single combats, he was still the terror of the barbarians; the clergy, and particularly his friend Augustin,
were edified by the Christian piety which had once tempted him to retire from the world; the people applauded his spotless integrity; the army dreaded his equal and incorruptible justice, which may be displayed in a very singular example. A peasant, who complained of the criminal intimacy between his wife and a Gothic soldier, was directed to attend his tribunal the following day; in the evening the count, who had diligently informed himself of the time and place of the assignation, mounted his horse, rode ten miles into the country, surprised the guilty couple, punished the soldier with instant death, and silenced the complaints of the husband, by presenting him, the next morning, with the head of the adulterer. The abilities of Attius and Boniface might have been usefully employed against the public enemies, in separate and important commands; but the experience of their past conduct should have decided the real favour and confidence of the emperor Placidia. In the melancholy season of her exile and distress, Boniface alone had maintained her cause with unshaken fidelity; and the troops and treasures of Africa had essentially contributed to extinguish the rebellion. The same rebellion had been supported by the zeal and activity of Attius, who brought an army of sixty thousand Huns from the Danube to the confines of Italy, for the service of the usurper. The untimely death of John compelled him to accept an advantageous treaty; but he still continued, the subject and the soldier of Valentinian, to entertain a secret, perhaps a treasonable, correspondence with his barbarian allies, whose revolt had been purchased by liberal gifts, and more liberal promises. But Attius possessed an advantage of singular moment in a female reign: he was present; he was beloved, with artful and unscrupulous flattery, the palace of Harmonia; disguised his dark designs with the mask of loyalty and friendship; and at length deceived both his mistress and his absent rival, by a subtle conspiracy, which a weak woman, and a brave man, could not easily suspect. He secretly persuaded Placidia to recall Boniface from the government of Africa; he secretly advised Boniface to disobey the Imperial summons; to the one, he represented the other as a sentence of death; to the other, he stated the refusal as a signal of revolt; and when the credulous and unsuspecting count had armed the province in his defence, Attius applauded his sagacity in foreseeing the rebellion, which his own policy had excited. A temperate enquiry into the real motives of Boniface, would have restored a faithful servant to his duty and to the republic; but the arts of Attius still continued to betray and to inflame, and the count was urged, by persecution, to embrace the most desperate counsels. The success with which he eluded or repelled the first attacks, could not inspire a vain confidence, that at the head of some loose, disorderly Africans, he should be able to withstand the regular forces of the West, commanded by a rival, whose military character it was impossible for him to despise. After some hesitation, the last struggles of prudence and loyalty, Boniface despatched a trusty friend to the court, or rather to the camp of Gonderic, king of the Vandals, with the proposal of a strict alliance, and the offer of an advantageous and perpetual settlement.

After the retreat of the Goths, the authority of Honorius had obtained a precarious establishment in Spain; except only in the province of Gallaecia, where the Suevi and the Vandals had fortified their camps, in mutual discord, and hostile independence. The Vandals prevailed; and their adversaries were besieged in the Narcean hills, between Leov and Oviedo, till the approach of count Asterius compelled, or rather provoked, the victorious barbarians to remove the scene of the war to the plains of Bizacca. The rapid progress of the Vandals soon required a more effectual opposition; and the master-general Custius marched against them with a numerous army of Romans and Goths. Vanquished in battle by an inferior enemy, Custius fled with dishonour to Tarragona; and this memorable defeat, which has been represented as the punishment, was most probably the effect, of his rash presumption.14 Seville and Carthagena became the reward, or rather the prey, of the victorious conquerors; and the vessels which they found in the harbor of Carthagena, might easily transport them to the isles of Majorca and Minorca, where the Spanish fugitives, as in a secure recess, had vainly concealed their families and their fortunes. The experience of navigation, and perhaps the prospect of Africa, encouraged the Vandals to accept the invitation which they received from count Boniface; and the death of Gonderic served only to forward and animate the bold enterprise. In the room of a prince not conscious of any superior powers of the mind or body, they acquired his bastard brother, the terrible Generic; a name, destined, king of the Vandals, in which the destruction of the Roman empire, has deserved an equal rank with the names of Alaric and Attila. The king of the Vandals is described to have been of a middle stature, with a lowness in his leg, which he had contracted by an accidental fall from his horse. His slow and cautious speech seldom declared the deep purposes of his soul; he disdained to imitate the luxuries of the vanquished; he indulged the stern passions of anger and revenge. The ambition of Generic was without bounds, and without scruples; and the warrior could despotically employ the dark engines of policy to solicit the allies who might be useful to his success, or to scatter among his enemies the seeds of hatred and contention. Almost in the moment of his departure from the court of the Herul, with the design, purpose, of suppressing the persistent efforts of his enemies.

14 Custius. (This name is a necessary expansion, though unnecessary, of the name Custus, which is the name of a Spanish saint. The Vulgata renders Custiuus, the same as he represents the conqueror.) This sentence, which is somewhat obscure, may possibly, however, have been taken from the bishop history of Constantine.
departure he was informed, that Hermann, king of the Suevi, had presu- 
posed, and was determined to abandon. Impatient of the insult, Genesic 
pursued the hostile retreat of the Suevi as far as Merida; precipitated the king and his army 
into the river Anas, and calmly returned to the 
sea-shore, to embark his victorious troops. The 

Our fancy, so long accustomed to 

and General, who had imitated 

swarms of barbarians that seemed to 

thus, and report, on the 

in great abundance, and the 

and the Atlantic 


Under these circumstances, Genesic, a Christian, but an 

enemy of the orthodox communion, showed
himself to the Donatists as a powerful deliverer, from whom they might reasonably expect the repeal of the odious and oppressive edicts of the Roman emperors. The conquest of Africa was facilitated by the active zeal, or the secret favour, of a domestic faction; the wanton outrages against the churches and the clergy, of which the Vandals are accused, may be fairly imputed to the fanaticism of their allies; and the intolerant spirit, which disfigured the triumph of Christianity, contributed to the loss of the most important province of the West.

The court and the people were astonished by the strange intelligence, that a virtuous hero, after so many favours, and so many services, had renounced his allegiance, and invited the barbarians to destroy the province intrusted to his command. The friends of Boniface, who still believed that his criminal behaviour might be excused by some honourable motive, solicited, during the absence of Atius, a free conference with the court of Africa; and Darius, an officer of high distinction, was named for the important embassy. In their first interview at Carthage, the imaginary provocations were mutually explained; the opposite letters of Atius were produced and compared; and the fraud was easily detected. Placidia and Boniface lamented their fatal error; and the count had sufficient magnanimity to confide in the forgiveness of his sovereign, or to expose his head to her future resentment. His repentance was fervent and sincere; but he soon discovered that it was no longer in his power to restore the edifice which he had shaken to its foundations. Carthage, and the Roman garrisons, returned with their general to the allegiance of Valentinian; but the rest of Africa was still distracted with war and faction; and the invincible king of the Vandals, desisting all terms of accommodation, sternly refused to relinquish the possession of his prey. The band of veterans, who marched under the standard of Boniface, and his haughty levies of provincial troops, were defeated with considerable loss; the victorious barbarians insulted the open country; and Carthage, Cirta, and Hippo Regius, were the only cities that appeared to rise above the general inundation.

The long and narrow tract of coast the African coast was filled with frequent monuments of Roman art and magnificence; and the respective degrees of improvement might be accurately measured by the distance from Carthage and the Mediterraneans. A simple reflection will impress every thinking mind with the clearest idea of fertility and cultivation; the country was extremely populous; the inhabitants reserved a liberal subsistence for their own use; and the annual exportation, particularly of wheat, was so regular and plentiful, that Africa deserved the name of the common granary of Rome and of mankind. On a sudden, the seven fruitful provinces, from Taugar to Tripoli, were overwhelmed by the invasion of the Vandals; whose destractive rage has perhaps been exaggerated by popular animosity, religious zeal, and extravagant declamation. War, in its fairest form, implies a perpetual violation of humanity and justice; and the hostilities of barbarians are inflamed by the fierce and lawless spirit which incessantly disturbs their peaceful and domestic society. The Vandals, where they found resistance, seldom gave quarter; and the deaths of their valiant countrymen were expiated by the ruin of the cities under whose walls they had fallen. Careless of the distinctions of age, or sex, or rank, they employed every species of indignity and torture, to force from the captives a discovery of their hidden wealth. The stern policy of Genseric justified his frequent examples of military execution: he was not always the master of his own passions, or of those of his followers; and the calamities of war were aggravated by the levities of the Moors, and the fanaticism of the Donatists. Yet I shall not easily be persuaded, that it was the common practice of the Vandals to extirpate the olives, and other fruit trees, of a country where they intended to settle: nor can I believe that it was a usual stratagem to slaughter great numbers of their prisoners before the walls of a besieged city, for the sole purpose of infecting the air, and producing a pestilence, of which they themselves must have been the first victims.

The generous mind of count Boniface was tortured by the exquisite distress of beholding the ruins which he had occasioned, and whose rapid progress he was unable to check. After the loss of a battle, he retired into Hippo Regius; where he was immediately besieged by an enemy, who considered him as the real bulwark of Africa. The maritime colony of Hippo, about two hundred miles westward of Carthage, had formerly acquired the distinguishing epitaph of Regius, from the residence of Numidian kings; and some remains of trade and population still adhere to the modern city, which is known in Europe by the corrupted name of Boms. The military labours, and anxious reflections, of count Boniface, were alleviated by the soothing conversation of his

35 The original colonists of the island were the Phoenicians. On the coast of Africa, which was the harvest of the Roman world, the Phoenicians were the first to establish colonies. The foundation of Carthage among the Vandals and Goths who invaded the country, and the latter was soon entirely mastered, and even its name was changed. The city was restored to the Vandals, and became the seat of a bishopric. The Vandals were expelled by the Saracens, and the city fell into ruins. The conquerors were not content with leaving a part of the island to the Saracens, but they erected a fortress on the site of Carthage, and called it Carthage in honor of the city of Africa. The site of Carthage was assigned to a Saracen tribe, and the rest of the island was divided among the various tribes of the Saracens. The city of Carthage was later renamed Kairouan, and became the seat of the first Islamic imam. The city of Carthage was later renamed Kairouan, and became the seat of the first Islamic imam.
friend St. Augustin; till that bishop, the light and pillar of the Catholic church, was gently released, in the third month of the siege, and in the seventy-sixth year of his age, from the actual and the impending calamities of his country. The youth of Augustin had been stained by the vices and errors which he so ingeniously confounded; but from the moment of his conversion to that of his death, the muniments of the bishop of Hippo were pure and austere: and the most conspicuous of his virtues was an ardent zeal against heretics of every denomination: the Manichæans, the Donatists, and the Pelagians, against whom he waged a perpetual controversy. When the city, some months after his death, was burnt by the Vandals, the library was fortunately saved, which contained his voluminous writings; two hundred and thirty-two separate books or treatises on theological subjects, besides a complete exposition of the Psalter and the Gospel, and a copious magazine of epistles and homilies. According to the judgment of the most impartial critics, the superficial learning of Augustin was confined to the Latin language; and his style, though sometimes animated by the eloquence of passion, is usually clouded by false and affected rhetoric. But he possessed a strong, expansive, argumentative mind; he boldly sounded the dark abyss of grace, predestination, free-will, and original sin; and the rigid system of Christianity which he framed or restored, has been entertained, with public applause, and secret reluctance, by the Latin church.

The skill of Boniface, and perhaps by the ignorance of the Vandals, the siege of Hippo was protracted above fourteen months; the sea was continually open; and when the adjacent country had been exhausted by irregular rapines, the besiegers themselves were compelled by famine to relinquish their enterprise. The importance and danger of Africa were deeply felt by the regent of the West. Placidia implored the assistance of her Eastern ally; and the Italian fleet and army were reinforced by Anacris, who sailed from Constantinople with a powerful armament. As soon as the force of the two empires was united under the command of Boniface, he boldly marched against the Vandals; and the loss of a second battle

unhappily decided the fate of Africa. He embarked with the precipitation of despair; and the people of Hippo were permitted, with their families and effects, to occupy the vacant place of the soldiers, the greatest part of whom were either slain or made prisoners by the Vandals. The court, whose fatal credibility had wounded the vitals of the republic, might enter the palace of Ravenna with some anxiety, which was soon removed by the smiles of Placidia. Boniface accepted with gratitude the rank of patrician, and the dignity of master-general of the Roman armies; but he must have blushed at the sight of those medals, in which he was represented with the same and attributes of victory. The discovery of his fraud, the displeasure of the empress, and the distinguished favour of his rival, exasperated the haughty and perfidious soul of Ætius. He hastily returned from Gaul to Italy, with a relish, or rather with an army, of barbarian followers; and each was the weakness of the government, that the two generals decided their private quarrels in a bloody battle. Boniface was successful; but he received in the conflict a mortal wound from a javelin, in the spear of his adversary, of which he expired within a few days; in such Christian and charitable sentiments, that he exhorted his rich publisher, a rich head of Spalato, to accept Ætius for her second husband. But Ætius could not derive any immediate advantage from the generosity of his dying enemy; he was proclaimed a rebel by the justice of Placidia, and though he attempted to defend some strong fortresses erected on his patrimonial estate, the Imperial power soon compelled him to retire into Pannonia, to the tents of his faithful Hans. The republic was deprived, by their mutual discord, of the service of her two most illustrious champions. It might naturally be expected, after the retreat of Boniface, that the Vandals would achieve, without resistance or delay, the conquest of Africa. Eight years however elapsed, from the evacuation of Hippo to the reduction of Carthage. In the midst of that interval, the ambitious Genseric, in the full tide of apparent prosperity, negotiated a treaty of peace, by which he gave his son Hemeric in marriage, and consented to leave the Western empire in the undisputed possession of the three Mauritians. This
moderation, which cannot be imputed to the justice, must be ascribed to the policy of the conqueror. His throne was encompassed with domestic enemies; who accused the baseness of his birth, and asserted the legitimate claims of his nephews, the sons of Genseric. Those nephews, indeed, he sacrificed to his safety; and their mother, the widow of the deceased king, was precipitated, by his order, into the river Ampsis. But the public discontent burst forth in dangerous and frequent conspiracies; and the warlike tyrant is supposed to have shed more Vandal blood by the hand of the executioner, than in the field of battle. The revolutions of Africa, which had favoured his attack, opposed the firm establishment of his power; and the various seditions of the Moors and Germans, the Donatsists and Catholics, continually disturbed, or threatened, the unsetled reign of the conqueror. As he advanced towards Carthage, he was forced to withdraw his troops from the Western provinces; the sea-coast was exposed to the naval enterprises of the Romans of Spain and Italy; and, in the heart of Numidia, the strong inland city of Cotta still persisted in obstinate independence. These difficulties were gradually subdued by the spirit, the perseverence, and the cruelty of Genseric; who alternately applied the arts of peace and war to the establishment of his African dominions. He subscribed a solemn treaty, with the hope of deriving some advantage from the term of its continuance, and the moment of its violation. The vigilance of his enemies was relaxed by the protestations of friendship, which concealed his hostile approach; and Carthage was at length surprised by the Vandals, five hundred and eighty-five years after the destruction of the city and republic by the younger Scipio.

A new city had arisen from its ruins, with the title of a colony; and although Carthage might yield to the royal pretensions of Constantinople, and perhaps to the trade of Alexandria, or the splendour of Antioch, she still maintained the second rank in the West, as the Rome (if we may use the style of contemporaries) of the African world. That wealthy and opulent metropolis displayed, in a dependent condition, the image of a flourishing republic. Carthage contained the manufactures, the arms, and the treasures, of the six provinces. A regular subordination of civil honours gradually ascended, from the preceptors of the streets and quarters of the city, to the tribunal of the supreme magistrate, who, with the title of proconsul, represented the state and dignity of a consul of ancient Rome. Schools and gymnasia were instituted for the education of the African youth; and the liberal arts and sciences, grammar, rhetoric, and philosophy, were publicly taught in the Greek and Latin languages. The buildings of Carthage were uniform and magnificent: a shady grove was planted in the midst of the capital; the new port, a secure and capacious harbour, was subservient to the commercial industry of citizens and strangers; and the splendid games of the circus and theatre were exhibited almost in the presence of the barbarians. The reputation of the Carthaginians was not equal to that of their country, and the reproach of Punic faith still adhered to their subtle and faithless character. The habits of trade, and the abuse of luxury, had corrupted their manners; but their impious contempt of monks, and the shameless practice of unnatural lusts, are the two abominations which excite the pious reprobation of Stilpion, the preacher of the age. The king of the Vandals severely reformed the vices of a voluptuous people; and the ancient, noble, ingenious, freedom of Carthage (those expressions of Victor are not without energy), was restored by Genseric into a state of ignominious servitude. After he had permitted his licentious troops to outrage their rage and aversion, he instituted a more regular system of rapine and oppression. At edict was promulgated, which enjoined all persons, without fraud or delay, to deliver their gold, silver, jewels, and valuable furniture or apparel, to the royal officers; and the attempt to secrete any part of their patrimony, was inexcusable punished with death and torture, as an act of treason against the state. The lands of the proconsular province, which formed the immediate district of Carthage, were accurately measured, and divided among the barbarians; and the conqueror reserved for his peculiar domain, the fertile territory of Hyrcania, and the adjacent parts of Numidia and Gætulia.

It was natural enough that Genseric should hate those whom he had injured: the nobility and senators of Carthage were exposed to his jealousy and resentment; and all those who refused the ignominious terms, which their honour and religion forbade them to accept, were compelled, by the Asian tyrant, to embrace the condition of perpetual banishment. Rome, Italy, and the provinces of the East, were filled with a crowd of exiles, of fugitives, and of ingenuous captives, who solicited the public compassion: and the benevolent epistles of Theodosius still preserve the names and misfortunes of Caelianus and Maria. The Syrian bishop deplores the misfortunes of Caelianus, who, from the state of
A noble and opulent senator of Carthage, was reduced, with his wife and family, and servants, to beg his bread in a foreign country; but he applauded the resignation of the Christian exile, and the philosophic temper, which under the pressure of such calamities, could enjoy more real happiness than was the ordinary lot of wealth and prosperity. The story of Maria, the daughter of the magnificent Eusebius, is singular and interesting. In the sack of Carthage, she was purchased from the Vandals by some merchants of Syria, who afterwards sold her as a slave in their native country. A female attendant, transported in the same ship, and sold in the same family, still continued to respect a mistress whom fortune had reduced to the common level of servitude; and the daughter of Eusebius received from her grateful affection the domestic services which she had once required from her obedience. This remarkable behaviour divulged the real condition of Maria, who, in the absence of the bishop of Cyrillus, was redeemed from slavery by the generosity of some soldiers of the garrison. The liberality of Theodoret provided for her decent maintenance; and she passed ten months among the deaconesses of the church; till she was unexpectedly informed, that her father, who had escaped from the ruin of Carthage, exercised an honourable office in one of the Western provinces. Her filial affection was rewarded by the pious bishop: Theodoret, in a letter still extant, recommends Maria to the bishop of Aegae, a maritime city of Cilicia, which was frequented, during the annual fair, by the vessels of the West; most earnestly requesting, that his colleague would use the maiden with a tenderness suitable to her birth; and that he would intrust her to the care of such faithful merchants, as would esteem it a sufficient gain, if they restored a daughter, lost beyond all human hope, to the arms of her afflicted parent.

Of the Aspidi, the first known sleeper; his glorious and illustrious history, I am tempted to distinguish the memorable fable of the Seven Sleepers, whose imaginary date corresponds with the reign of the younger Theodosius, and the conquest of Africa by the Vandals. When the emperor Decius persecuted the Christians, seven noble youths of Ephesus concealed themselves in a spacious cave in the side of an adjacent mountain; where they were doomed to perish by the tyrant, who gave orders that the entrance should be firmly secured with a pile of huge stones. They immediately fell into a deep slumber, which was miraculously prolonged.

43 The stories of fabulous circumstances is of small importance, for I can entertain myself in the present situation in which I am surrounded, and am merely a spectator of the life of modern men. The present life, with all its dangers and emotions, is full of interest and charm, and affords more than the romance of Mahomet, or the legends, could suppose an interest of those or first class. The story of Aspidi, one of the seven, a fellow of the church, is not. A. B. 427; he beguiled his youth in A. D. 474, by the study of the Apocalypse of Mengen, A. D. 1. 477, and A. D. 482. (Annalistic.)
dition have been discovered in the remote extremities of Scandinavia. This easy and universal belief, so expressive of the sense of mankind, may be ascribed to the genius merit of the fable itself. We imperceptibly advance from youth to age, without observing the gradual, but incessant, change of human affairs; and even in our larger experience of history, the imagination is accustomed, by a perpetual series of causes and effects, to unite the most distant revolutions. But if the interval between two memorable eras could be instantly annihilated; if it were possible, after a momentary slumber of two hundred years, to display the new world to the eyes of a spectator, who still retained a lively and recent impression of the old, his surprise and his reflections would furnish the pleasing subject of a philosophical romance. The scene could not be more advantageously placed, than in the two centuries which elapsed between the reigns of Decius and of Theodosius the younger. During this period, the seat of government had been transported from Rome to a new city on the banks of the Thracian Bosphorus; and the abuse of military spirit had been suppressed by an artificial system of terrors and censures serious. The theme of the prosecuting Decius was filled by a succession of Christian and orthodox princes, who had anticipated the fabulous gods of antiquity; and the public devotion of the age was impatient to exalt the saints and martyrs of the Catholic church, on the altars of Diana and Hercules. The union of the Roman empire was dissolved; its genius was humbled in the dust; and armies of unknown barbarians, issuing from the frozen regions of the North, had established their victorious reigns over the fairest provinces of Europe and Africa.

CHAP. XXXIV.

The Character, Conquests, and Court of Attila, King of the Huns. — Death of Theodosius the Younger. — Elevation of Marcellus to the Empire of the East.

The Huns...

4. 16. 325-423.

The Western world was oppressed by the Goths and Vandals, who fled before the Huns; but the achievements of the Huns themselves were not adequate to their power and prosperity. Their victorious hordes had spread from the Volga to the Danube; but the public force was exhausted by the discord of independent chieftains; their valour was slyly consumed in obscure and predatory excursions; and they often degraded their national dignity, by descending, for the hopes of spoil, to enlist under the banners of their fugitive enemies. In the reign of Attila, the Huns again became the terror of the world; and I shall now describe the character and actions of that formidable barbarian; who alternately insulted and invaded the East and the West, and urged the rapid downfall of the Roman empire.

In the tide of emigration, which impenetrably rolled from the countries of China to those of Germany, and the most powerful and populous tribes may commonly be found on the verge of the Roman provinces. The accumulated weight was sustained for a while by artificial barriers; and the easy concession of the emperors invited, without satisfying, the insolent demands of the barbarians, who had acquired an eager appetite for the luxuries of civilised life. The Hungarians, who ambitiously insert the name of Attila among their native kings, may assert with truth, that the hordes, which were subject to his uncle Ross, or Rugilas, had formed their encampments within the limits of modern Hungary, in a fertile country, which liberally supplied the wants of a nation of hunters and shepherds. In this advantageous situation, Rugilas, and his valiant brothers, who continually added to their power and reputation, commanded the alternative of peace or war with the two empires. His alliance with the Romans of the West was cemented by his personal friendship for the great Attius; who was always secure of finding, in the barbarian camp, a hospitable reception, and a powerful support. At his solicitation, and in the name of John the usurper, sixty thousand Huns advanced to the confines of Italy; their march and their retreat were alike expensive to the state; and the grateful policy of Attius abandoned the possession of Parmo to his faithful confederates. The Romans of the East were not less apprehensive of the arms of Rugilas, which threatened the provinces, or even the capital. Some ecclesiastical historians have destroyed the barbarians with lightning and pestilence; but Theodosius was reduced to the more humble expedient of stipulating an annual payment of three hundred and fifty pounds of gold, and of disguising this dishonourable tribute by the title of general, which the king of the Huns condescended to accept. The public tranquillity was frequently interrupted by the fierce impatience of the barbarians, and the pernicious intrigues of the Byzantine court. Four dependent nations, among whom we may distinguish the Bavarians, disclaimed the sovereignty...
of the Huns; and their revolt was encouraged and protected by a Roman alliance; till the just claims, and formidable power, of Rugila, were effectually urged by the voice of Eosaw his ambassador. Peace was the unanimous wish of the senate; their decree was ratified by the emperor; and two ambassadors were named; Plinyus, a general of Scythian extraction, but of consular rank; and the questor Epigenes, a wise and experienced statesman, who was recommended to that office by his ambitious colleague.

The death of Rugila suspended the progress of the treaty. His two nephews, Attila and Bleda, who succeeded to the throne of their uncle, consented to a personal interview with the ambassadors of Constantine; but as they proudly refused to dismount, the business was transacted on horseback, in a spacious plain near the city of Magon, in the Upper Masia. The kings of the Huns assumed the solid benefits, as well as the vain honours, of the negotiation. They dictated the conditions of peace, and each condition was an insult on the majesty of the empire. Besides the freedom of a safe and plentiful market on the banks of the Danube, they required that the annual contribution should be augmented from three hundred and fifty to seven hundred pounds of gold; that a fine, or ransom, of eight pieces of gold, should be paid for every Roman captive, who had escaped from his barbarian master; that the emperor should renounce all treaties and engagements with the enemies of the Huns; and that the seven fugitives, who had taken refuge in the court, or provisons of the Romans, should be delivered to the justice of their offended sovereign. This justice was rigorously inflicted on some unfortunate youths of a royal race. They were crucified on the territories of the empire, by the command of Attila; and, as soon as the king of the Huns had impressed the Romans with the terror of his name, he indulged them in a short and arbitrary reign, whilst he subdued the rebellious or independent nations of Scythia and Germany.

Attila, the son of Mundrad, destined his nephew perhaps his regal descent from the ancient Huns, who had formerly contended with the monarchs of China. His features, according to the observation of a Gothic historian, bore the stamp of his national origin; and the portrait of Attila exhibits the genuine deformity of a modern Cuman, a large head, a swarthy complexion, small deep-set eyes, a flat nose, a few hairs in the place of a beard, broad shoulders, and a short square body, of nervous strength, though of a disproportioned form. The haughty step and demeanour of the king of the Huns expressed the consciousness of his superiority above the rest of mankind; and he had a custom of fiercely rolling his eyes, as if he wished to enjoy the terror which he inspired. Yet this savage hero was not inaccessible to pity; his supplicant enemies might confide in the assurance of peace or pardon; and Attila was considered by his subjects as a just and indulgent master. He delighted in war; but, after he had ascended the throne in a mature age, his head, rather than his hand, achieved the conquest of the North; and the fame of an adventurous soldier was usefully exchanged for that of a prudent and successful general. The effects of personal valour are so inconsiderable, except in poetry or romance, that victory, even among barbarians, must depend on the degree of skill, with which the passions of the multitude are combined and guided for the service of a single man. The Scythian conquerors, Attila and Zingis, surpassed their rude countrymen in art, rather than in courage; and it may be observed, that the monarchs, both of the Huns and of the Moguls, were erected by their founders on the basis of popular superstition. The miraculous conception, which fraud and credulity ascribed to the virgin-mother of Zingis, raised him above the level of human nature; and the naked prophet, who, in the name of the Deity, invested him with the empire of the earth, pointed the value of the Moguls with irresistible enthusiasm. The religious arts of Attila were not less skilfully adapted to the character of his age and country. It was natural enough, that the Scythians should adore, with peculiar devotion, the god of war; but as they were incapable of forming either an abstract idea, or a corporeal representation, they worshipped their tutelar deity under the symbol of an iron cimeter. One of the shepherds of the Huns perceived that a hoifer, who was grazing, had wounded herself in the face and neck, and curiously followed the track of the blood, till he discovered, among the long grass, the point of an ancient sword, which he dug out of the ground, and presented to Attila. That magnificent, or rather that artful, prince accepted, with pious gratitude, this celestial favour; and, as the rightful possessor of the sword of Mars, asserted his divine and indubitable claim to the dominion of the earth. If the rites of Scythia were practised on this solemn occasion, a lofty altar, or rather pile of flagstones, three hundred yards in length and breadth, was raised in a spacious plain; and the sword of Mars was placed erect on the summit of this rustic altar, which was annually consecrated by the blood of sheep, horses, and of the hundredth captive. Whether human sacrifices formed any part of the

4 See Plineus, c. 67, 68. and Hist. des Peuples de l'Europe, tom. xi. p. 205, 206. 208. 209.
5 Plineus, c. 29. The modern Russians have defined his progenitor, and certainly the origin of the nation, to the Huns of Blan, but they are ignorant of Attila's real name. (De Sigenis, Hist. des Peuples de l'Europe, tom. vi. c. 16. 17.)
6 Conqueror Stemularia, c. 23. p. 167; with Buedas, Hist. pane, cap. ii. p. 205. The former was a leader in the law; the other, in the Ruman, was a general. Both were enemies to the Romans, and were slain.
8 Cite de Contaray, Bajo, c. 214. 215. the vivacity of the imagination, c. 216. 217. The history of the Cumanians, c. 218. 219. the second volume of the Huns of the Orient, c. 220. 221. 222. 223.
worship of Attila; or, whether he propitiated the god of war with the victors which he continually offered in the field of battle, the followers of Mars soon acquired a sacred character, which rendered his conquests more easy and more permanent; and the barbarian princes confessed, in the language of devotion or flattery, that they could not presume to gaze, with a steady eye, on the divine majesty of the king of the Huns. 11 His brother Bleda, who reigned over a considerable part of the nation, was compelled to resign his sceptre, and his life. Yet even this cruel act was attributed to a supernatural impulse; and the vigour with which Attila wielded the sword of Mars, convinced the world, that it had been reserved alone for his invincible arm. 12 But the extent of his empire affords the only remaining evidence of the number, and importance, of his victories; and the Scythian monarch, however ignorant of the value of science and philosophy, might, perhaps, lament, that his illustrious subjects were destitute of the art which could perpetuate the memory of his exploits.

It was a line of separation were drawn between the civilized and the savage inhabitants of the globe; between the inhabitants of cities, who cultivated the earth, and the hunters and shepherds, who dwelt in tents; Attila might aspire to the title of supreme and sole monarch of the barbarians. 13 He alone, among the conquerors of ancient and modern times, united the two mighty kingdoms of Germany and Scythia; and those vague appellations, when they are applied to his reign, may be understood with an ample latitude. Thurisgir, which stretched beyond its actual limits as far as the Danube, was, in the number of his provinces; he interposed, with the weight of a powerful neighbour, in the domestic affairs of the Franks; and one of his lieutenants chastised, and almost exterminated, the Burgundians of the Rhine. He subdued the islands of the ocean, the kingdom of Scandinaavia, encompassed and divided by the waters of the Baltic; and the Huns might derive a tribute of State from that northern region, which has been protected from all other conquerors by the severity of the climate, and the courage of the natives. Towards the east, it is difficult to circumscribe the dominion of Attila over the Scythian deserts; yet we may be assured, that he reigned on the banks of the Volga; that the king of the Huns was dreaded, not only as a warrior, but as a magician; 14 that he insulted and vanquished the Khan of the formidable Geougens; and that he sent ambassadors to negotiate an equal alliance with the empire of China. In the proud review of the nations who acknowledged the sovereignty of Attila, and who never entertained, during his life-time, the thought of a revolt, the Gepidae and the Ostrogoths were distinguished by their numbers, their bravery, and the personal merit of their chiefs. The renowned Ardarie, king of the Gepidae, was the faithful and sagacious counsellor of the monarch, who esteemed his inconstant genius, whilst he loved the mild and discreet virtues of the noble Walamir, king of the Ostrogoths. The crowd of vulgar kings, the leaders of so many martial tribes, who served under the standard of Attila, were ranged in the submissive order of guards and domestics, round the person of their master. They watched his nod; they trembled at his frown; and at the first signal of his will, they executed, without murmuru or hesitation, his stern and absolute commands. In time of peace, the dependent princes, with their national troops, attended the royal camp in regular succession; but when Attila collected his military force, he was able to bring into the field an army of five, or, according to another account, of seven hundred thousand barbarians. 15

The ambassadors of the Huns might awaken the attention of Théodoricus, by reminding him, that they were his neighbours both in Europe and Asia; since they touched the Danube on one hand, and reached, with the other, as far as the Tauri. In the reign of his father Aecadius, a band of adventurous Huns had ravaged the provinces of the East; from whence they brought away rich spoils and innumerable captives. 16 They advanced, by a secret path, along the shores of the Caspian Sea; traversed the snowy mountains of Armenia; crossed the Tigris, the Euphrates, and the Halys; recruited their weary cavalry with the generous breed of Cappadocon horses; occupied the hilly country of Cilicia; and disturbed the festal songs, and dances, of the citizens of Antioch. Egypt trembled at their approach; and the monks and pilgrims of the Holy Land prepared to escape their fury by a speedy embarkation. The memory of this invasion was still recent in the minds of the Orientals. The subjects of Attila might execute, with superior forces, the design which these adventurers had so boldly attempted; and it was soon became the subject of anxious conjecture, whether the tempest would fall on the dominions of Rome, or of Persia. Some of the great vassals of the king of the Huns, who were themselves in the rank of powerful princes, had been sent...
alleged, that the bishop of Mrgus had entered their territories, to discover and steal a secret treasure of their kings; and sternly demanded the guilty prelate, the sacrilegious spoil, and the fugitive subjects, who had escaped from the justice of Attila. The refusal of the Byzantine court was the signal of war; and the Masians, as soon as Cumæ, the second town, was attacked, and the fugitive subjects, who had escaped from the justice of Attila. The refusal of the Byzantine court was the signal of war; and the Masians, as soon as Cumæ, the second town, was attacked, and Cumæ was taken, the rest of the country was disorders. The victory of Attila, however, was not total; and the Masians, though reduced to a state of slavery, had sufficient strength to resist the invader, and to maintain their independence. The Huns, on the contrary, were wholly subjugated, and their empire was destroyed. The Byzantine court was obliged to retire before the numbers of the enemy. Their laborious retreat was effected by a difficult road; they lost the greatest part of their booty; and at length returned to the royal camp, with some knowledge of the country, and an impatient desire of revenge. In the free conversation of the Imperial ambassadors, who discussed, at the court of Attila, the character and designs of their formidable enemy, the ministers of Constantineple expressed their hope, that his strength might be diverted and employed in a long and doubtful contest with the princes of the house of Sassan. The more sagacious Italians admonished their Eastern brethren of the folly and danger of such a scheme; and convinced them, that the Moes and Persians were incapable of resisting the arms of the Huns; and, that the easy and important acquisition would exalt the pride, as well as power, of the conqueror. Instead of contesting himself with a moderate contribution, and a military title, which squatted him only to the generals of Theodosius, Attila would proceed to impose a disgraceful and intolerable yoke on the necks of the prostrate and captive Romans, who would then be encompassed, on all sides, by the empire of the Huns.

While the powers of Europe and Asia were solicitous to avert the impending danger, the alliance of Attila maintained the Vandals in the possession of Africa. An enterprise had been concerted between the courts of Ravenna and Constantinople, for the recovery of that valuable province; and the ports of Sicily were already filled with the military and naval forces of Theodosius. But the subtle Generico, who spread his negotiations round the world, prevented their designs, by exciting the king of the Huns to invade the Eastern empire; and a trifling incident soon became the motive, or pretense, of a destructive war. Under the faith of the treaty of Margus, a free market was held on the northern side of the Danube, which was protected by a Roman fortress, surnamed Constantia. A troop of barbarians violated the commercial security; killed, or dispersed, the unsuspecting traders; and levelled the fortress with the ground. The Huns justified this outrage as an act of reprisal;
the Romans were pressed by a victorious enemy, they gradually, and unskilfully, retired towards the Chersonesos of Thrace, and that narrow peninsula, the last extremity of the land, was marked by their third, and irreparable, defeat. By the destruction of this army, Attalis acquired the indisputable possession of the field. From the Hellespont to the Maeander, and the suburbs of Constantinople, no suavities, without resistance and without mercy, the provinces of Thrace and Macedonia. Heracles and Hadriamum might, perhaps, escape this dreadful apposition of the Huns, but the words, the most expressive of total devastation and ruin, are applied to the calamities which they inflicted on seventy cities of the Eastern empire. Theodosius, his court, and the unfortunate people, were protected by the walls of Constantinople; but those walls had been shaken by a recent earthquake, and the fall of fifty-eight towers had opened a large and tremendous breach. The damage indeed was speedily repaired; but this accident was aggravated by a superstitious fear, that Heaven itself had delivered the Imperial city to the shepherds of Scythia, who were strangers to the laws, the language, and the religion, of the Romans.

The Scythians

In all their invasions of the civilised and Christianised empigies of the South, the Scythian shepherds have been uniformly actuated by a savage and destructive spirit. The laws of war, that restrain the exercise of national rapine and murder, are founded on two principles of substantial interest: the knowledge of the permanent benefits which may be obtained by a moderate use of conquest, and a just apprehension, but the diaphragm which we inflict on the enemy's country, may be rated on our own. But these considerations of hope and fear are almost unknown in the pastoral state of nations. The Hunnish and the Scythian may, with equal justice, be compared to the Moguls and Tartars, before their conquests, and after; the Tartars and Moguls have been changed by religion and luxury; and the evidence of Oriental history may rest some light on the short and imperfect annals of Rome. After the Moguls had subdued the northern provinces of China, it was seriously proposed, not in the hour of victory and passion, but in calm deliberation, to exterminate all the inhabitants of that populous country, that the vacant land might be converted to the pasture of cattle. The firmness of a Chinese mandarin, who instituted some principles of rational policy into the mind of Zingis, diverted him from the execution of this horrid design. But in the cities of Asia, which yielded to the Moguls, the inhuman abuse of the rights of war was exercised, with a regular form of discipline, which may, with equal reason, though not with equal authority, be imputed to the victorious Huns. The inhabitants, who had submitted to their discretion, were ordered to evacuate their houses, and to assemble in some plain adjacent to the city, where a division was made of the vanquished into three parts. The first class consisted of the soldiers of the garrison, and of the young men capable of bearing arms; and their fate was instantly decided: they were either slain among the Moguls, or they were massacred on the spot by the troops, who, with painted spears and bented bows, cast a circle round the captive multitude. The second class, composed of the young and beautiful women, of the artisans of every rank and profession, and of the more wealthy or honoured citizens, from whom a private ransom might be expected, was distributed in equal or proportionable lots. The remainder, whose life or death was alike useless to the conquerors, were permitted to return to the city, which, in the mean while, had been stripped of its valuable furniture; and a tax was imposed on those wretched inhabitants for the indulgence of breathing their native air. Such was the behaviour of the Moguls, when they were not struck with any extraordinary rigour. But the most usual provocation, the slightest motive, of rapine or convenience, often provoked them to involve a whole people in an indiscriminate massacre; and the ruin of some flourishing cities was executed with such outlasting perseverance, that, according to their own expression, houses might run, without stumbling, over the ground where they had stood. The three great capitals of Khurasan, Merv, Nisa, and Harat, were destroyed by the armies of Zingis; and the exact account, which was taken of the slain, amounted to four millions three hundred and forty-seven thousand persons. Timur, or Tamerlane, was educated in a less barbarous age, and in the profession of the Mahometan religion; yet, if Attalis equaled the hostile ravages of Tamerlane, either the Tartar or the Hun might deserve the epithet of the Scourge of God. It may be affirmed, with bold assurance, that the Huns depopulated the provinces of the empire, by the number of Roman subjects whom they led away into captivity. In the hands of a wise legislator, such an industrious colony might have contributed to diffuse, through the deserts of Scythia, the rudiments of the useful and ornamental arts; but these captives, who had been taken in 330,
were accidentally dispersed among the hordes that obeyed the empire of Attila. The estimate of their respective value was formed by the simple judgment of unenlightened, and unprejudiced, barbarians. Perhaps they might not understand the merit of a theologian, profoundly skilled in the controversies of the Trinity and the Incarnation; yet they respected the ministers of every religion; and the active zeal of the Christian missionaries, without approaching the persons, or the palace, of the monarch, successfully laboured in the propagation of the Gospel. The pastoral tribes, who were ignorant of the distinction of landed property, must have disregarded the use, as well as the abuse, of civil jurisprudence; and the skill of an eloquent lawyer could excite only their contempt, or their abhorrence. The perpetual intercourse of the Huns and the Goths had communicated the familiar knowledge of the two national dialects; and the barbarians were ambitious of conversing in Latin, the military idiom, even of the Eastern empire. But they dissolved the language, and the sciences, of the Greeks; and the vain sophist, or grave philosopher, who had enjoyed the flattering applause of the schools, was insensible to find, that his humble servant was a captive of more value and importance than himself. The mechanical arts were encouraged and extolled, as they tended to satisfy the wants of the Huns. An architect, in the service of Ongus, one of the favourites of Attila, was employed to construct a bath; but this work was a rare example of private luxury; and the trades of the smith, the carpenter, the armourer, were much more adapted to supply a wandering people with the useful instruments of peace and war. But the merit of the physician was received with universal favour and respect; the barbarians, who despised death, might be apprehensive of disease; and the haughty conqueror trembled in the presence of a captive, to whom he ascribed, perhaps, an imaginary power, of prolonging, or preserving, his life. The Huns might be provoked to insult the misery of their slaves, over whom they exercised a despotic command; but their manners were not susceptible of a refined system of oppression; and the effects of courage and diligence were often recompensed by the gift of freedom. The historian Priscus, whose embassy is a source of curious instruction, was accosted, in the camp of Attila, by a stranger, who saluted him in the Greek language, but whose dress and figure displayed the appearance of a wealthy Scythian. In the siege of Viminacium, he had lost, according to his own account, his fortune and liberty: he became the slave of Ongus; but his faithful services, against the Romans and the

Aetatus, had gradually raised him to the rank of the native Huns; to whom he was attached by the domestic pledges of a new wife and several children. The spoils of war had restored and improved his private property; he was admitted to the table of his former lord; and the apostate Greek blessed the hour of his captivity, since it had been the introduction to an happy and independent state; which he held by the honourable tenure of military service. This reflection naturally produced a dispute on the advantages and defects of the Roman government, which was severely arraigned by the apostate, and defended by Priscus in a prolix and feeble declamation. The freedom of Ongus is exposed, in true and lively colours, the index of a declining empire, of which he had no long been the victim; the cruel arbitrariness of the Roman princes, unable to protect their subjects against the public enemy, unwilling to trust them with arms for their own defence; the intolerable weight of taxes, rendered still more oppressive by the intricate or arbitrary modes of collection; the obscurity of numerous and contradictory laws; the tedious and expensive forms of judicial proceedings; the partial administration of justice; and the universal corruption, which increased the influence of the rich, and aggravated the misfortunes of the poor. A sentiment of patriotic sympathy was at length revived in the breast of the fortunate exile; and he lamented, with a flood of tears, the guilt or weakness of those magistrates, who had perverted the wisest and most salutary institutions.

The timid, or selfish, policy of the Western Romans had abandoned the Eastern empire to the Huns. The loss of armies, and the want of discipline, or virtue, were not supplied by the personal character of the monarch. Theodosius might still affect the style, as well as the title, of Invincible Augustus; but he was reduced to solicit the clemency of Attila, who imperiously dictated these harsh and humiliating conditions of peace: I. The emperor of the East resigned, by an express or tacit convention, an extensive and important territory, which stretched along the southern banks of the Danube, from Singidunum to Belgrade, as far as Novae, in the province of Thrace. The breadth was defined by the vague computation of fifteen days' journey; but, from the proposal of Attila, to remove the situation of the national market, it soon appeared, that he comprehended the ruined city of Naisos within the limits of his dominions. II. The king of the Huns required and obtained, that his tribute or subsidy should be augmented from seven hundred pounds of gold to the
had been distinguished by the martial spirit of its youth, the skill and reputation of the leaders whom they had chosen, and their daring exploits against the innumerable host of the barbarians. Instead of tamely expecting their approach, the Avarians attacked, in frequent and successful sallies, the troops of the Huns; who gradually declined the dangerous neighbourhood; seized from their hands the spoil and the captives, and recruited their domestic force by the voluntary association of fugitives and deserters. After the conclusion of the treaty, Attila still measured the empire with implacable war, unless the Avarians were persuaded, or compelled, to comply with the conditions which their sovereign had accepted. The ministers of Theodosius confessed with shame, and with truth, that they no longer possessed any authority over a society of men, who so bravely asserted their natural independence; and the king of the Huns condescended to negotiate an equal exchange with the citizens of Aridaus. They demanded the restitution of some shepherds, who, with their cattle, had been accidentally surprised. A strict, though fruitless, enquiry was allowed: but the Huns were obliged to swear, that they did not detain any prisoners belonging to the city, before they could recover two surviving countrymen, whom the Avarians had reserved as pledges for the safety of their lost companions. Attila, on his side, was satisfied, and deceived, by their solemn asservation, that the rest of the captives had been put to the sword; and that it was their constant practice, immediately to dismiss the Huns and the deserters, who had obtained the security of the public faith. This prudent and official dissimulation may be condemned, or excused, by the casuists, as they incline to the rigid decree of St. Augustine, or to the milder sentiment of St. John and St. Cyril: but every soldier, every statesman, most acknowledge, that, if the will of the Avarians had been encouraged and multiplied, the barbarians would have ceased to trample on the majesty of the empire, \\

It would have been strange, indeed, if Theodosius had purchased, by the loss of honour, a secure and solid tranquility; or if his tameness had not invited the repetition of injuries. The Byzantine court was insulted by five or six successive embassies; and the ministers of Attila were uniformly instructed to press the tardy or imperfect execution of the last treaty; to produce the names of fugitives and deserters, who were still protected by the empire; and to declare, with seeming moderation, that unless their sovereign obtained complete and immediate satisfaction, it would be impossible for him, were it...
even his wish to check the resentment of his warlike tribes. Besides the motives of pride and interest, which might prompt the king of the Huns to continue this train of negotiation, he was influenced by the less honourable view of enriching his favourites at the expense of his enemies. The Imperial treasury was exhaunted, to procure the friendly offices of the ambassadors, and their principal attendants, whose favourable report might conduc to the maintenance of peace. The barbarian monarchs were dissatisfied by the liberal reception of his ministers; he computed with pleasure the value and splendour of their gifts, rigorously exacted the performance of every promise, which would contribute to their private emolument, and treated as an important business of state, the marriage of his secretary Constantius. That Gallic adventurer, who was recommended by Arius to the king of the Huns, had engaged his service to the ministers of Constantine, for the stipulated reward of a wealthy and noble wife; and the daughter of Count Saturninus was chosen to discharge the obligations of her country. The reluctance of the victim, some domestic troubles, and the unjust confiscation of her fortune, cooled the ardour of her interested lover; but he still demanded, in the name of Attila, an equivalent alliance; and after many ambiguous delays and excuses, the Byzantine court was compelled to sacrifice to this insolent stranger the widow of Armius, whose birth, apolity, and beauty, placed her in the most illustrious rank of the Roman empress. For these importunate and oppressive embassies, Attila claimed a suitable return: he weighed, with suspicious pride, the character and station of the Imperial envoys; but he condescended to promise, that he would advance as far as Sardica, to receive any ministers who had been invested with the consular dignity. The council of Théodoric cluded this proposal, by representing the desolate and ruined condition of Sardica; and even ventured to insinuate, that every officer of the army or household was qualified to treat with the most powerful princes of Scythia. Maximia, a respectable courtier, whose abilities had been long exercised in civil and military employments, accepted with reluctance the troublesome, and, perhaps, hazardous mission, of reconciling the angry spirit of the king of the Huns. His friend, the historian Priscus, embraced the opportunity of observing the barbarian born in the peaceful and domestic scenes of life; but the secret of the embassy, a fatal and guilty secret, was intrusted only to the interpreter Vigilinus. The two last ambassadors of the Huns, Orestes, a noble subject of the Pannonian province, and Edecon, a valiant chief of the tribe of the Scyriti, returned at the same time from Constantinople to the royal camp. Their obscure names were afterwards illustrated by the extraordinary fortune and the contrast of their sons; the two servants of Attila became the fathers of the last Roman emperor of the West, and of the first barbarian king of Italy. The ambassadors, who were followed by a numerous train of men and horses, made the vast journey from Sardica, at the distance of three hundred and fifty miles, in thirteen days' journey, from Constantinople. As the remains of Sardica were still included within the limits of the empire, it was incumbent on the Romans to exercise the duties of hospitality. They provided, with the assistance of the provincials, a sufficient number of sheep and oxen; and invited the Huns to a splendid feast, at least, a plentiful supper. That the harmony of the entertainment was soon disturbed by mutual prejudice and indiscretion. The greatness of the emperor and the empire was warmly maintained by their ministers; the Huns, with equal ardour, asserted the superiority of their victorious monarch: the dispute was inflamed by the rash and unmeasurable flattery of Vigilinus, who passionately rejected the comparison of a mere mortal with the divine Theodosius; and it was with extreme difficulty that Maximian and Priscus were able to direct the conversation, or to soothe the angry minds of the barbarians. When they rose from table, the Imperial ambassador presented Edecon and Orestes with rich gifts of silk robes and Indian pearls, which they thankfully accepted. Yet Orestes could not forbear insinuating, that he had not always been treated with such respect and liberality; and the offensive distinction, which was implied, between his civil office and the hereditary rank of his colleague, seems to have made Edecon a doubtful friend, and Orestes an irreconcilable enemy. After this entertainment, they travelled about one hundred miles from Sardica to Naissus. That flourishing city, which had given birth to the great Constantine, was levelled with the ground: the inhabitants were destroyed or dispersed; and the appearance of some sick persons, who were still permitted to exist among the ruins of the city, served only to increase the horror of the prospect. The surface of the country was covered with the bones of the slain; and the ambassadors, who directed their course to the north-west, were obliged to cross the hills of modern Scyria, before they descended into the flat and marshy grounds, which are terminated by the Danube. The Huns were masters of the great river; their navigation was performed in large canoes, hollowed out of the trunk of a single tree; the ministers of Théodoric were safely landed on the opposite bank; and their barbarian associates immediately hastened to the presence of Attila, which was eagerly prepared for the amusements of hunting, or of war. No sooner had Maximian advanced about two miles from the Danube, than he began to...
experience the fastidious insolence of the conqueror. He was sternly forbid to pitch his tents in a pleasant valley, lest he should infringe the distant awe that was due to the royal mansion. The ministers of Attila pressed him to communicate the business, and the instructions, which he reserved for the ear of their sovereign. When Maximin temporarily urged the contrary practice of nations, he was still more confounded to find, that the resolutions of the Sacred Consistory, those secrets (says Priscus) which should not be revealed to the gods themselves, had been treacherously disclosed to the public enemies. On his refusal to comply with such ignominious terms, the Imperial envoy was commanded instantly to depart; the order was recalled; it was again repeated; and the Huns renewed their insinuative attempts to subdue the patient firmness of Maximin. At length, by the intercession of Scots, the brother of Onegesius, whose friendship had been purchased by liberal gifts, he was admitted to the royal presence; but, instead of obtaining a decisive answer, he was compelled to undertake a remote journey towards the north, that Attila might enjoy the proud satisfaction of receiving, in the same camp, the ambassadors of the Eastern and Western empires. His journey was regulated by the guides, who obliged him to halt, to hasten his march, or to deviate from the common road, as it best suited the convenience of the king. The Romans, who crossed the plains of Hungary, suppose that they passed several navigable rivers, either in canoes or portable boats; but there is reason to suspect, than the winding streams of the Tys or Tisza, might present itself in different places under different names. From the contiguous villages they received a plentiful and regular supply of provisions; meat instead of wine, milk in the place of bread, and a certain liquor named susus, which, according to the report of Priscus, was distilled from barley.89 Such fare might appear coarse and indecent to men who had tasted the luxury of Constantinople; but, in their accidental distress, they were relieved by the gentleness and hospitality of the same barbarians, so terrible and so merciless in war. The ambassadors had encamped on the edge of a large morass. A violent tempest of wind and rain, of thunder and lightning, over-turned their tents, immersed their baggage and furniture in the water, and scattered their remnants, who wandered in the darkness of the night, uncertain of their road, and apprehensive of some unknown danger, till they awakened by their cries the inhabitants of a neighbouring village, the property of the Widow of Bleda. A bright illumination, and, in a few moments, a comfortable fire of reeds, was kindled by their efficacious benevolence; the wants, and even the desires, of the Romans were liberally supplied; and they seem to have been embarrased by the singular politeness of Bleda's widow, who added to her other favors the gift, or at least the loan, of a sufficient number of beautiful and submissive damsels. The sunshine of the succeeding day was dedicated to repose; to collect and dry the baggage, and to the refreshment of the men and horses: but, in the evening, before they pursued their journey, the ambassadors expressed their gratitude to the bounteous lady of the village, by a very acceptable present of silver cups, red sapphires, dried fruits, and Indian pepper. Soon after this adventure, they rejoined the march of Attila, from whom they had been separated about six days; and slowly proceeded to the capital of an empire, which did not contain, in the space of several thousand miles, a single city.

As far as we may ascertain the vague and obscure geography of Priscus, this capital appears to have been seated between the Danube, the Tys, and the Carpathian hills, in the plains of Upper Hungary, and most probably in the neighbourhood of Jasberin, Agria, or Takay.90 In its origin it could be no more than an accidental camp, which, by the long and frequent residence of Attila, had insensibly swelled into a large village, for the reception of his court, of the troops who followed his person, and of the various multitude of idle or industrious slaves and retainers.91 The baths, constructed by Onegesius, were the only edifice of stone; the materials had been transported from Parmnia; and since the adjacent country was destitute even of large timber, it may be presumed, that the manner habitations of the royal village consisted of straw, of mud, or of canes. The wooden houses of the more illustrious Huns were built and adorned with rude magnificence, according to the rank, the fortune, or the taste of the proprietors. They seem to have been distributed with some degree of order and symmetry; and each spot became more honourable as it apprached the person of the sovereign. The palace of Attila, which surpassed all other houses in his dominions, was built entirely of wood, and covered an ample space of ground. The outward enclosure was a lofty wall, or palisade, of smooth square timber, intersected with high towers, but intended rather for ornament than defence. This wall, which seems to have encircled the declivity of a hill, comprehended a great variety of wooden edifices, adapted to the uses of royalty. A separate house was assigned to each of the numerous wives of Attila; and, instead of the rigid and illiberal confinement imposed by Asiatic jealousy, they publicly admitted the Roman ambassadors to their presence, their table, and even to the freedom of an innocent embrace. When Maximin offered his presents to Circo, the principal

---

89 Priscus, who is our principal authority, supposes that the Tisza is the river which the Romans met with in the plains of Hungary, in their retreat to the upper course of the Danube. Priscus, lib. iv. cap. 5. Notwithstanding these suggestions, we have as yet no information from other authors of the situation of this city, or even to be certain whether Attila had any city in the plains of Hungary.

90 The river Tys is here called by the name of Tisza, which, as we have observed, is the name given to the river Tiber, in the works of Priscus and other authors. Tisza or Tisza, is the name given to the river Tisza, in the works of Priscus and other authors.

91 Priscus, lib. iv. cap. 5. Notwithstanding these suggestions, we have as yet no information from other authors of the situation of this city, or even to be certain whether Attila had any city in the plains of Hungary.
queen, be admired the singular architecture of her mansion, the height of the round columns, the size and beauty of the wood, which was curiously shaped, or turned, or polished, or carved; and his attentive eye was able to discover some statue in the ornaments, and some regularity in the proportions. After passing through the guard, who watched before the gate, the ambassadors were introduced into the private apartment of Ceres. The wife of Attilla received their visit, sitting, or rather lying, on a soft couch; the floor was covered with a carpet; the domestics formed a circle round the queen; and her damsel, seated on the ground, were employed in working the variegated embroidery which adorned the dress of the barbaric warriors. The Huns were ambitious of displaying those riches which were the fruit and evidence of their victories; the trappings of their horses, their swords, and even their shoes, were studded with gold and precious stones; and their tables were profusely spread with plates, and goblets, and vessels of gold and silver, which had been fashioned by the labour of Grecian artists. The monarch alone assumed the superior pride of still adhering to the simplicity of his Scythian ancestors. The dress of Attilla, his arms, and the furniture of his house, were plain, without ornament, and of a single colour. The royal table was served in wooden cups and plates; flesh was his only food; and the conqueror of the North never tasted the luxury of bread.

When Attilla first gave audience to the Roman ambassadors on the banks of the Danube, his tent was encompassed with a formidable guard. The monarch himself was seated in a wooden chair. His stern countenance, angry gestures, and impatient tone, astonished the firmness of Maximin; but Vigilans had more reason to tremble, since he distinctly understood the menace, that if Attilla did not respect the law of nations, he would nail the deacon of the emperor to the cross, and leave his body to the vultures. The barbarian, condescending, by producing an accurate list, to expose the bold falsehood of Vigilans, who had affirmed that no more than seventeen deserters could be found. But he sternly declared, that he apprehended only the disgrace of containing with his fugitive slaves; since he despised their importunate efforts to defend the provinces which Theodosius had entrusted to their arms: "For what purpose (asked Attilla), what city, in the wide extent of the Roman * empire, can hope to exist, secure and impregnable, if it is our pleasure, that it should be "erased from the earth?" He dismissed, however, the interpreter, who returned to Constantinople, with his precarious demand of more complete restitution, and a more splendid embassy. His anger gradually subsided, and his domestic satisfaction, in a marriage which he celebrated on the spot, with the daughter of Kilian, might perhaps compensate him for the absence of his troops. The entrance of Attilla into the royal village was marked by a very singular ceremony. A numerous troop of women came out to meet their hero and their king. They marched before him, distributed into long and regular files; the intervals between the files were filled by white veils of thin linen, which the women on either side bore aloft in their hands, and which formed a canopy for a chorus of young virgins, who chanted hymns and songs in the Scythian language. The wife of his favourite Discegusus, with a train of female attendants, saluted Attilla at the door of her own house, on his way to the palace; and offered, according to the custom of the country, her respectful homage, by treating him to wine and meat, which she had prepared for his reception. As soon as the monarch had graciously accepted her hospitable gift, his domestics lifted a small silver table to a convenient height, as he sat on horseback; and Attilla, when he had touched the goblet with his lips, again saluted the wife of Onogrius, and continued his march. During his residence at the seat of empire, his hours were not wasted in the recluse idleness of a seraglio; and the king of the Huns could maintain his superior dignity, without concealing his person from the public view. He frequently assembled his council, and gave audience to the ambassadors of the nations; and his people might appeal to the supreme tribunal, which he held at stated times, and, according to the Eastern custom, before the principal gate of his wooden palace. The Romans, both of the East and of the West, were twice invited to the banquets, where Attilla feasted with the princes and nobles of Scythia. Maximin and his colleagues were stopped on the threshold, till they had made a decent libation to the health and prosperity of the king of the Huns; and were conducted, after this ceremony, to their respective seats in a spacious hall. The royal table and couch, covered with carpets and fine linens, were raised by several steps in the midst of the hall; and a son, an uncle, or perhaps a favourite, was admitted to share the simple and humble repast of Attilla. Two lines of small tables, each of which contained three or four guests, were arranged in order on either hand; the right was reserved for the most honourable, but the Romans ingenuously confess, that they were placed on the left, and that Beric, an unknown chief, most probably of the Gothic race, preceded the representatives of Theodosius and Valentinian. The barbarian monarch, received from his cup-bearers a goblet filled with wine, and courteously drank to the health of the most distinguished guest, who rose from his seat, and expressed, in the same manner, his loyal and respectful vow. This ceremony was successively performed for all, so as least for the illustrious persons of the assembly; and a considerable time must have been consumed, since it was twice repeated, as each course or service was placed on the table. But the wine still remained after the meat had been consumed; and the Huns continued to indulge their inharmonious
The decline and fall, Chap. XXXIV.

Long after the sober and decent ambassadors of the two empires had withdrawn themselves from the nocturnal banquet. Yet, before they retired, they enjoyed a singular opportunity of observing the manners of the nations in their convivial amusements. Two Scythians stood before the couch of Attila, and recited the verses which they had composed, to celebrate his valour and his victories. A profound silence prevailed in the hall; and the situation of the guests was captivated by the vocal harmony, which revived and perpetuated the memory of their own exploits: a martial ardour flashed from the eyes of the warriors, who were impatient for battle; and the tears of the old men expressed their generous desirer, that they could no longer partake the danger and glory of the field. This entertainment, which might be considered as a school of military virtue, was succeeded by a feast, that denoted the dignity of human nature. A Moorish and a Scythian haubard successively excited the mirth of the guests, by their deformed figure, ridiculous dress, antic gestures, absurd speeches and the strange unintelligible confusion of the Latin, the Gothic, and the Hunnic languages; and the hall resounded with loud and licentious peals of laughter. In the midst of this inconstant riot, Attila alone, without a change of countenance, maintained his steadfast and inflexible gravity: which was never relaxed, except on the entrance of Irnce, the youngest of his sons: he embraced the boy with a smile of paternal tenderness, gently pinched him by the cheek, and betrayed a partial affection, which was justified by the assurance of his prospects, that Irnce would be the future support of his family and empire. Two days afterwards the ambassadors received a second invitation; and they had reason to praise the politeness, as well as the hospitality, of Attila. The king of the Huns held a long and familiar conversation with Maximin; but his civility was interrupted by rude expressions, and haughty reproaches; and he was provoked, by a motive of interest, to support, with unbecoming zeal, the private claims of his secretary Constantius. "The emperor" (said Attila) "has long promised to him a rich wife: Constantius must not be disappointed; nor should a Roman emperor deserve the name of liar." On the third day, the ambassadors were dismissed; the freedom of several captives was granted, for a moderate ransom, to their pressing entreaties; and besides the royal presents, they were permitted to accept, from each of the Scythian nobles, the honourable and useful gift of a horse. Maximin returned, by the same road, to Constantinople; and though he was involved in an accidental dispute with Beric, the new ambassador of Attila, he flattered himself that he had contributed, by the laborious journey, to confirm the peace and alliance of the two nations.

But the Roman ambassador was ignorant of the treacherous design, which had been concealed under the mask of the public faith. The surprise and satisfaction of Edecon, when he contemplated the splendour of Constantinople, had encouraged the interpreter Vigilias to procure for him a secret interview with the eunuch Chrysaphis, who governed the emperor and the empire. After some previous conversation, and a mutual oath of secrecy, the eunuch, who had not, from his own feelings or experience, indulged any rash notions of ministerial virtue, ventured to propose the death of Attila, as an important service, by which Edecon might deserve a liberal share of the wealth and luxury which he admired. The ambassador of the Huns listened to the tempting offer; and, professed, with apparent zeal, his ability, as well as readiness, to execute the bloody deed: the design was communicated to the master of the offices, and the devout Theodosius consented to the assassination of his invincible enemy. But this perfidious conspiracy was defeated by the dissimulation, or the repentance, of Edecon; and, though he might exaggerate his inward abhorrence for the treason, which he seemed to approve, he dejectly assumed the merit of an early and voluntary confession. If we now review the embassy of Maximin, and the behaviour of Attila, we must applaud the barbarian, who respected the laws of hospitality, and generously entertained and dismissed the minister of a prince who had compassed against his life. But the rashness of Vigilias will appear still more extraordinary, since he returned, conscious of his guilt and danger, to the royal camp; accompanied by his son, and carrying with him a weighty purse of gold, which the favourite eunuch had furnished, to satisfy the demands of Edecon, and to corrupt the fidelity of the guards. The interpreter was instantly seized, and dragged before the tribunal of Attila, where he asserted his innocence with sanguine firmness, till the threat of inflicting instant death on his son, extorted from him a sincere discovery of the criminal transaction. Under the name of treason, or confiscation, the rapacious king of the Huns accepted two hundred pounds of gold, for the life of a traitor, whom he disdained to punish. He pointed his just indignation against a nobler object. His ambassadors Eclaw and Orcestes were immediately despatched to Constantinople, with a peremptory instruction, which it was much safer for them to execute than to disobey. They boldly entered the imperial presence, with the fatal purse hanging down from the neck of Orcestes; who interrogated the eunuch Chrysaphis, as he stood beside the throne, whether he recognised the evidence of his guilt, which were, like other manuscripts, written with the most legible characters on parchment. The manuscript itself, which contains the book of St. Augustin, is said to be of the greatest magnificence, being the gift of the Emperor Constantine. The manuscript, which was presented to the Bishop of Gerona, by the Emperor Constantine, is said to be of great antiquity, being the gift of the Emperor Constantine. The manuscript, which was presented to the Bishop of Gerona, by the Emperor Constantine, is said to be of great antiquity, being the gift of the Emperor Constantine. The manuscript, which was presented to the Bishop of Gerona, by the Emperor Constantine, is said to be of great antiquity, being the gift of the Emperor Constantine. The manuscript, which was presented to the Bishop of Gerona, by the Emperor Constantine, is said to be of great antiquity, being the gift of the Emperor Constantine. The manuscript, which was presented to the Bishop of Gerona, by the Emperor Constantine, is said to be of great antiquity, being the gift of the Emperor Constantine. The manuscript, which was presented to the Bishop of Gerona, by the Emperor Constantine, is said to be of great antiquity, being the gift of the Emperor Constantine. The manuscript, which was presented to the Bishop of Gerona, by the Emperor Constantine, is said to be of great antiquity, being the gift of the Emperor Constantine. The manuscript, which was presented to the Bishop of Gerona, by the Emperor Constantine, is said to be of great antiquity, being the gift of the Emperor Constantine. The manuscript, which was presented to the Bishop of Gerona, by the Emperor Constantine, is said to be of great antiquity, being the gift of the Emperor Constantine.
But the office of reproof was reserved for the superior dignity of his colleague Eslaw, who grovelly addressed the emperor of the East in the following words: "Theodosius is the son of an illustrious and respectable parent: Attila likewise was descended from a noble race; and he has supported, by his actions, the dignity which he inherited from his father Mundruk. But Theodosius has forfeited his paternal honour, and, by consenting to pay tribute, has degraded himself to the condition of a slave. It is therefore just, that he should surrender the great fortune and state he has placed above him; instead of attempting, like a wickeder slave, clandestinely to conspire against his master." The son of Arcadius, who was accustomed only to the voice of flattery, heard with astonishment the severe language of truth: he blushed and trembled; nor did he presume directly to refuse the hint of Chrysaphius, which Eslaw and Ostres were instructed to demand. A solemn embassy, armed with full powers and magnificent gifts, was hastily sent to depress the wrath of Attila; and his pride was gratified by the choice of Nomius and Anatolius, two ministers of consular or patrician rank, of whom the one was great treasurer, and the other was master-general of the armies of the East. He condescended to meet these ambassadors on the banks of the river Danube; and though he at first affected a stern and haughty demeanour, his anger was inexpressibly mollified by their eloquence and liberality. He condescended to pardon the emperor, the monarch, and the interpreter; bound himself by an oath to observe the conditions of peace; released a great number of captives; abandoned the fugitives and deserters to their fate; and resigned a large territory, to the south of the Danube, which he had already exhausted of its wealth and inhabitants. But this treaty was purchased at an expense which might have supported a vigorous and successful war; and the subjects of Theodosius were compelled to reimburse the safety of a worthless favourite by oppressive taxes, which they would have cheerfully paid for his destruction. 59

The emperor Theodosius did not long survive the most humiliating circumstance of an inglorious life. As he was riding, or hunting, in the neighbourhood of Constantinople, he was thrown from his horse into the river Lyceus; the spine of his back was injured by the fall; and he expired some days afterwards, in the fifteenth year of his age, and the forty-third year of his reign. 60 His sister Pulcheria, whose authority had been controlled both in civil and ecclesiastical affairs by the pernicious influence of the eunuchs, was unanimously proclaimed Empress of the East; and the Romans, for the first time, submitted to a female sovereign. No sooner had Pulcheria ascended the throne, than she indulged her own and the public resentment, by an act of popular justice. Without any legal trial, the enmity of Chrysaphius was executed before the gates of the city: and the immense riches which had been accumulated by the rapacious favourite, served only to hasten and to justify his punishment. 61 Amidst the general acclamations of the clergy and people, the empress did not forget the prejudice and disadvantage to which her sex was exposed; and she wisely resolved to prevent their murmurs by the choice of a colleague, who would always respect the superior rank and virgin chastity of her wife. She gave her hand to Marcian, a senator, about sixty years of age, and the nominal husband of Pulcheria was solemnly invested with the Imperial purple. The zeal which he displayed for the orthodox creed, as it was established by the council of Chalcedon, would alone have inspired the grateful eloquence of the Catholics. But the behaviour of Marcian in a private life, and afterwards on the throne, may support a more rational belief, that he was qualified to restore and invigorate an empire, which had been almost dissolved by the successive weakness of two hereditary monarchs. He was born in Thrax, and educated to the profession of arms; but Marcian's youth had been severely exercised by poverty and misfortune, since his only resource, when he first arrived at Constantinople, consisted in two hundred pieces of gold, which he had borrowed of a friend. He passed nineteen years in the domestic and military service of Aspar, and his son Arbalarius; followed those powerful generals to the Persian and African wars; and obtained, by their influence, the honourable rank of tribune and senator. His mild disposition, and useful talents, without alarming the jealousy, recommended Marcian to the esteem and favour of his patrons: he had seen, perhaps he had felt, the abuses of a venal and oppressive administration; and his own example gave weight and energy to the laws, which he promulgated for the reformation of manners. 62

CHAP. XXXV.

Invasion of God by Attila. He is repulsed by Attila and the Franks. Attila invades and vanquishes Italy. The Death of Attila, Elnis, and Valentinian the Third.

By the opinion of Marcian, that war should be avoided, as long as it is possible to preserve a secure and honourable peace; but it was likewise his opinion, that peace cannot be honourable or secure, if the empire betrays a quaillinious avertion to war. This imperceptible
couraged his replying to the demands of Attila, who insolently pressed the payment of the annual tribute. The emperor signified to the barbarian, that they must no longer insult the majesty of Rome by the mention of a tribute; that he was disposed to reward, with becoming liberality, the faithful friendship of his allies; but that, if they should presume to violate the public peace, they should feel that he possessed troops, and arms, and resolution, to repel their attacks. The same language, even in the camp of the Hun, was used by his ambassador Apollonius, whose bold refusal to deliver the presents, till he had been admitted to a personal interview, displayed a sense of dignity, and a contempt of danger, which Attila was not prepared to expect from the degenerate Romans. He threatened to chastise the rash successor of Theodosius; but he hesitated whether he should first direct his invincible arms against the Eastern or the Western empire. While mankind awaited his decision with awful suspense, he went an equal distance to the courts of Ravenna and Constantinople; and his ministers saluted the two emperors with the same haughty declaration. "Attila, say lord, and thy lord, command thee to provide a palace for thy immediate reception." But as the barbarian despised, or affected to despise, the Romans of the East, whom he had so often vanquished, he soon declared his resolution of suspending the easy conquest, till he had achieved a more glorious and important enterprise. In the memorable invasions of Gaul and Italy, the Huns were naturally attracted by the wealth and fertility of those provinces; but the particular motives and persuasions of Attila can only be explained by the state of the Western empire under the reign of Valentinian, or, to speak more correctly, under the administration of Aëtius. After the death of his rival Boniface, Aëtius had prudently retired to the tents of the Huns; and he was indebted to their alliance for his safety and his restoration. Instead of the suppliant language of a guilty exile, he solicited his pardon at the head of sixty thousand barbarians; and the empress Placidia, confused, by a feeble resistance, that the condemnation, which might have been ascribed to Clemency, was the effect of weakness or fear. She delivered herself, her son Valentinian, and the Western empire, into the hands of an insolent subject; nor could Placidia protect the son-in-law of Boniface, the virtuous and faithful Stilichon, from the implacable persecution, which urged him from one kingdom to another, till he miserably perished in the service of the Vandals. The fortunate Aëtius, who was immediately promted to the rank of patrician, and thence invested with the honours of the consulship, assumed, with the title of master of the cavalry and infantry, the whole military power of the state; and he is sometimes styled, by contemporary writers, the duke, or general, of the Romans of the West. His prudence, rather than his virtue, engaged him to leave the grandson of Theodosius in the possession of the purple; and Valentinian was permitted to enjoy the peace and luxury of Italy, while the patrician appeared in the glorious light of a hero and a patriot, who supported near twenty years the ruins of the Western empire. The Gothic historian ingenuously confesses, that Aëtius was born for the salvation of the Roman republic; and the following portrait, though it is drawn in the fairest colours, must be allowed to contain a much larger proportion of truth than of flattery. His mother was a wealthy and noble Italian, and his father, Gaudiacus, who held a distinguished rank in the province of Scythia, gradually rose from the station of a military domestic, to the dignity of master of the cavalry. Their son, who was enrolled "almost in his infancy in the guards," was given "as a hostage, first to Alaric, and afterwards to the Huns; and he successively obtained the civil and military honours of the palace, for which he was equally qualified by superior merit. The graceful figure of Aëtius was not "above the middle stature; but his manly limbs were admirably formed for strength, beauty, and agility; and he excelled in the martial exercises of managing a horse, drawing the bow, and darting the javelin. He could patiently endure the want of food or sleep; and his mind and body were alike capable of the most laborious efforts. He possessed the genuine courage, that can despise not only dangers but injuries; and it was impossible "either to corrupt, or deceive, or intimidate, the firm integrity of his soul." The barbarians, who had settled themselves in the Western provinces, were insensibly taught to respect the faith and valour of the patrician Aëtius. He soothed their passions, consulted their prejudices, balanced their interests, and checked their ambition. A reasonable treaty, which he concluded with Genseric, protected Italy from the depredations of the Vandals, and the independent Britons implored and acknowledged his salutary aid: the Imperial authority was restored and maintained in Gaul and Spain; and he expelled the Franks and the Suevi, whom he had vanquished in the field, to become the useful confederates of the republic. From a principle of interest, as well as gratitude, Aëtius assiduously cultivated the alliance of the Huns.
While he resided in their tents as a hostage, or an exile, he had familiarly conversed with Attila himself, the nephew of his benefactor; and the two famous antagonists appear to have been connected by a personal and military friendship, which they afterwards confirmed by mutual gifts, frequent embassies, and the education of Carpius, the son of Ætius, in the camp of Attila. By the specious professions of gratitude and voluntary attachment, the patrician might disguise his apprehensions of the Scythic conquest, which threatened the two empires with his innumerable armies. His demands were obeyed or eluded. When he claimed the spoils of a vanquished city, some vessels of gold, which had been fraudulently surrendered, the civil and military governors of Noricum were immediately despatched to satisfy his complaints; 7 and it is evident, from their conversation with Maximin and Prienus, in the royal village, that the value and prudence of Ætius had not saved the Western Romans from the common ignominy of tribute. Yet his dexterous policy prolonged the advantages of a solitary peace; and a numerous army of Huns and Alanis, whom he had attached to his person, was employed in the defence of Gaul. Two colonies of these barbarians were judiciously fixed in the territories of Valence and Orleans; 8 and their active cavalry secured the important passages of the Rhone and of the Loire. These savage allies were not, indeed, less formidable to the subjects than to the enemies of Rome. Their original settlement was enforced with the licentious violence of conquest; and the province, through which they marched, was exposed to all the calamities of an hostile invasion. 9 Strangers to the emperor or the republic, the Alan of Gaul were devoted to the ambition of Ætius; and though he might suspect that, in a contest with Attila himself, they would revolt to the standard of their national king, the patrician laboured to restrain, rather than to excite, their zeal and resentment against the Goths, the Burgundians, and the Franks.

The kingdom established by the Visigoths in the southern provinces of Gaul, had gradually acquired strength and maturity; and the conduct of those ambitious barbarians, either in peace or war, engaged the perpetual vigilance of Ætius. After the death of Wallia, the Gothic seer devolved to Throaderic, the son of the great Alaric; 10 and his prosperous reign, of more than thirty years, over a turbulent people, may be allowed to prove, that his prudence was supported by uncommon vigour, both of mind and body. Impatient of his narrow limits, Theodore ascended to the possession of Aries, the wealthy seat of government and commerce; but the city was saved by the timely approach of Ætius; and the Gothic king, who had raised the siege with some loss and disgrace, was persuaded, for an adequate subsidy, to divert the martial valour of his subjects in a Spanish war. Yet Theodore still watched, and vaguely scented, the favourable moment of removing his hostile attempts. The Goths besieged Narbonne, while the Belgic provinces were invaded by the Burgundians; and the public safety was threatened on every side by the apparent union of the enemies of Rome. On every side, the activity of Ætius, and his Scythian cavalry, opposed a firm and successful resistance. Twenty thousand Burgundians were slain in battle; and the remains of the nation humbly accepted a dependent seat in the mountains of Savoy. 11 The walls of Narbonne had been shaken by the battering engines, and the inhabitants had endured the last extremities of famine, when count Litorius, approaching in silence, and directing each horseman to carry behind him two sacks of flour, cut his way through the intrenchments of the besiegers. The siege was immediately raised; and the more decisive victory, which is ascribed to the personal conduct of Ætius himself, was marked with the blood of eight thousand Goths. But in the absence of the patrician, who was hastily summoned to Italy by some public or private interest, count Litorius succeeded to the command; and his presumption soon discovered, that far different talents are required to lead a wing of cavalry, or to direct the operations of an important war. At the head of an army of Huns, he rashly advanced to the gates of Toulouse, full of careless contempt for an enemy, whose misfortunes had rendered prudent, and whose situation made desperate. The predictions of the augurs had inspired Litorius with the profound confidence that he should enter the Gothic capital in triumph; and the trust which he reposed in his Pagan allies, encouraged him to reject the fair conditions of peace, which were repeatedly proposed by the bishops in the name of Theodore. The king of the Goths astonished in his distress the offering contrast of Christian piety and moderation; nor did he lay aside his sackcloth and ashes till he was prepared to wage war for the combat. His soldiers, animated with martial and religious enthusiasm, surrounded the camp of Litorius. The conflict was obstinately; the slaughte-
for was mutual. The Roman general, after a
total defeat, which could be imputed only to his
unkindly-rashness, was actually led through the
streets of Thualose, not in his own, but in a
hostile, triumphant; and the misery which he
experienced, in a long and ignominious captivity,
excited the compassion of the barbarians them-
selves.22 Such a loss, in a country whose spirit
and finances were long since exhausted, could
not easily be repaired; and the Goths, assuming,
in their turn, the sentiments of ambitious and re-
venge, would have planted their victorious stan-
dards on the banks of the Rhone, if the presence
of Theodoric had not restored strength and disci-
pline to the Romans.23 The two armies expected
the signal of a decisive action; but the generals,
who were conscious of each other’s forces, and
doubtful of their own superiority, prudently
abstained from sending swords in the field of battle;
and their reconciliation was permanent and sincere.
Theodoric, king of the Vandals, appears to have
deserved the love of his subjects, the confidence
of his allies, and the esteem of mankind. His
throne was surrounded by six valiant sons, who
were educated with equal care in the exercises
of the barbarian camp, and in those of the Gallic
schools: from the study of the Roman juris-
prudence, they acquired the theory, at least, of
law and justice; and the harmonious sense of
Virgil contributed to soften the asperity of their
native manners. The two daughters of the
Gallic king were given in marriage to the
eldest sons of the kings of the Suevi and of the
Vandals, who reigned in Spain and Africa; but
these illustrious alliances were pregnant with guilt
and discord. The queen of the Suevi bewailed
the death of an husband, insensibly massacred
by her brother. The princess of the Vandals
was the victim of a jealous tyrant, whom she
called her father. The cruel Theodoric sus-
pected, that his son’s wife had conspired to
poison him; the supposed crime was punished by
the amputation of her nose and ears; and the
unhappy daughter of Theodoric was ignomini-
ously returned to the court of Thualous, in
that deformed and mutilated condition. This
horrid act, which must seem impossible to a
civilised age, drew tears from every spectator;
but Theodoric was urged, by the feelings of a
parent and a king, to render such irreparable
injuries. The Imperial ministers, who always
cherished the discord of the barbarians, would
have supplied the Goths with arms, and ships,
and treasures, for the African war; and the
cruelty of Genseric might have been fatal to
himself, if the artful Vandals had not armed, in
his cause, the formidable power of the Huns.
His rich gifts and pressing solicitations inflamed
the ambition of Attala; and the designs of Julian
and Theodoric were prevented by the invasion
of Gaul.24

The Franks, whose monarchy was
still confined to the neighbourhood
of the Lower Rhine, had wisely es-
blished the right of hereditary suc-
cession in the noble family of the Merovingsians.25
These princes were elevated on a buckler, the
symbol of military command; and the royal
fashion of long hair was the ensign of their
birth and dignity. Their laxen locks, which
they combed and dressed with singular care,
hung down in flowing ringlets on their back
and shoulders; while the rest of their nation were
obliged, either by law or custom, to shave the
hinder part of their head, to curl their hair
over the forehead, and to content themselves
with the ornament of two small whisks.26
The lofty stature of the Franks, and their blue
eyes, denoted a Germanic origin; their close
appearance accurately expressed the figure of their
limbs; a weighty sword was suspended from a
broad belt; their bodies were protected by a
large shield; and these warlike barbarians
were trained from their earliest youth, to run, to
leap, to swim; to dart the javelin, or battle-axe,
with unerring aim; to advance, without hesitation,
against a superior enemy; and to maintain,
either in life or death, the invincible reputation
of their ancestors.27 Clovis, the first of their
long-haired kings, whose name and actions are
mentioned in authentic history, held his reside-
cence at Dispargum,28 a village, or fortress,
whose place may be assigned between Louvain
and Brussels. From the report of his spies, the
king of the Franks was informed, that the
defenceless state of the second Belgic must yield,
on the slightest attack, to the value of his
subjects. He boldly penetrated through the
thickest and moste of the Carpathian for-
rest; 29 occupied Touron and Cambrai, the

22 Julian has attempted to explain the social government of the
Dutch; a fact which may be readily performed by supposing that
the ambitions of the state are justified in the principles of the
state, and
23. The Franks in
24. The Franks
25. The Franks
26. The Franks
27. The Franks
28. The Franks
29. The Franks

340 THE DECLINE AND FALL

232. The Franks in
233. The Franks
234. The Franks
235. The Franks
236. The Franks
237. The Franks
238. The Franks
239. The Franks
240. The Franks

341

20. The Franks
21. The Franks
22. The Franks
23. The Franks
24. The Franks
25. The Franks
26. The Franks
27. The Franks
28. The Franks
29. The Franks
only cities which existed in the fifth century; and extended his conquests as far as the river Somme, over a desolate country, whose cultivation and population are the effects of more recent industry. While Clodion lay encamped in the plains of Artois, and celebrated, with vain and ostentatious security, the marriage, perhaps, of his son, the unfaithful feast was interrupted by the unexpected and unwelcome presence of Ætius, who had passed the Somme at the head of his light cavalry. The tables, which had been spread under the shelter of a hill, along the banks of a pleasant stream, were rudely overturned; the Franks were oppressed before they could recover their arms, or their ranks; and their unavailing valour was fatal only to themselves. The loaded waggons, which had followed their march, afforded a rich booty; and the virgin bride, with her female attendants, submitted to the new masters, who were imposed on them by the chance of war. This advantage, which had been obtained by the skill and activity of Ætius, might reflect some disgrace on the military prudence of Clodion; but the king of the Franks soon regained his strength and reputation, and still maintained the possession of his Gallic kingdom from the Rhine to the Somme. Under his reign, most probably from the enterprising spirit of his subjects, the three capitas, Meuta, Treves, and Cologne, experienced the effects of hostile cruelty and avarice. The distress of Cologne was prolonged by the perpetual domination of the same barbarians, who evacuated the ruins of Treves; and Treves, which, in the space of forty years, had been four times besieged and pillaged, was disposed to lose the security of her alliances in the vain muniments of the cirque. The death of Clodion, after a reign of twenty years, exposed his kingdom to the discord and ambition of his sons. Merovæus, the younger, was persuaded to implore the protection of Rome; but he was received at the Imperial court, as the ally of Valentinian, and the adopted son of the patriarch Ætius; and dismissed to his native country, with splendid gifts, and the strongest assurances of friendship and support. During his absence, his elder brother had solicited, with equal ardour, the formidable aid of Attilius; and the king of the Huns embraced an alliance, which facilitated the passage of the Rhine, and justified, by a specious and honourable pretence, the invasion of Gaul.

When Attilus declared his resolution of supporting the cause of his ally, the Vandals and the Franks, at the same time, and almost in the spirit of romantic chivalry, the savage monarch professed himself the lover and the champion of the princess Húoria. The sister of Valentinian was educated in the palace of Ravenna; and as her marriage might be productive of some danger to the state, she was raised, by the title of August, above the hopes of the most presumptuous suitors. But the fair Húoria had no sooner attained the sixteenth year of her age, that she detected the importunate greatness which must for ever exclude her from the comforts of honourable love; in the midst of rain and unsatisfactory pomp. Húoria sighed, yielded to the impulse of nature, and threw herself into the arms of her chamberlain Eugenius. Her guilt and shame (such is the absurd language of imperious men) were soon betrayed by the appearances of pregnancy; but the disgrace of the royal family was published to the world by the imprudence of the emperor Placidia; who dismissed her daughter, after a strict and shameful confinement, to a remote exile at Constantinople. The unhappy princess passed twelve or fourteen years in the leprosy society of the sisters of Theodosius, and their chosen virgins; to whose love Húoria could no longer aspire; and whose monastic modesty of prayer, fasting, and vigils, she reluctantly imitated. Her iniquity of long and hopeless celibacy, urged her to embrace a strange and desperate resolution. The name of Attilus was familiar and formidable at Constantinople; and his frequent embassies entertained a perpetual intercourse between his camp and the imperial palace. In the pursuit of love, or rather of revenge, the daughter of Placidia sacrificed every duty and every prejudice; and offered to deliver her person into the arms of a barbarian, of whose language she was ignorant, whose figure was scarcely human, and whose religion and manners she abhorred. By the ministry of a faithful eunuch, she transmitted to Attilus a ring, the pledge of her affection; and earnestly conjured him to claim her as a lawful spouse, to whom he had been secretly betrothed. These inaudible advances were received, however, with coldness and disdain; and the king of the Huns continued to multiply the number of his wives, till his love was awakened by the more forcible passions of ambition and avarice. The invasion of Gaul was preceded, and justified, by a formal demand of the princess Húoria, with a just and equal share of the Imperial patrimony. His predecessors, the ancient Tanjoues, had often addressed, in the same hostile and peremptory
manner, the daughters of China; and the pretensions of Attilla were not less offensive to the majesty of Rome. A firm, but temperate, refusal was communicated to his ambassadors. The right of female succession, though it might derive a specious argument from the recent examples of Placidia and Pulcheria, was strenuously denied; and the insoluble engagements of Honorius were opposed to the claims of her Scythian lover. On the discovery of her connection with the king of the Huns, the guilty princess had been sent away, as an object of horror, from Constantinople to Italy; her life was spared; but the ceremony of her marriage was performed with some obscure and mendicant husband, before she was immured in a perpetual prison, to conceal those crimes and misfortunes, which Honorius might have escaped, had she not been born the daughter of an emperor.30

A native of Gaul, and a confidant of Stilicho, the learned and eloquent bishop of Clermont, had made a promise to one of his friends, that he would compose a regular history of the war of Attila. If the modesty of Stilicho had not discouraged him from the prosecution of this interesting work, the historian would have related, with the simplicity of truth, those memorable events, to which the poet, in vague and doubtful metaphors, has consciously alluded. The kings and nations of Germany and Scythia, from the Volga perhaps to the Danube, obeyed the warlike summons of Attila. From the royal village, in the plains of Hungary, his standard moved towards the West; and, after a march of seven or eight hundred miles, he reached the conflux of the Rhine and the Neckar, where he was joined by the Franks, who adhered to his ally, the elder of the sons of Clovis. A troop of light barbarians, who resided in quest of plunder, might choose the winter for the convenience of passing the river on the ice; but the innumerable cavalry of the Huns required such plenty of forage and provisions, as could be procured only in a milder season; the Heruvian forest supplied materials for a bridge of boats; and the hostile myriads were poured, with resistance violence, into the Belgic provinces. The consternation of Gaul was universal; and the various fortunes of its cities have been adorned by tradition with martyrdoms and miracles.34 Troyes was saved by the merits of St. Lupus; St. Servatius was removed from the world, that he might not be held the ruin of Tongres; and the prayers of St. Gervais diverted the march of Attila from the neighbourhood of Paris. But as the greatest part of the Gallic cities were alike destined to the同样的 soldiers, they were besieged and stormed by the Huns; who practised, in the example of Metz,35 their customary maxims of war. They involved, in a promiscuous massacre, the priests who served at the altar, and the infants, who, in the hour of danger, had been providently baptised by the bishop; the flourishing city was delivered to the flames, and a solitary chapel of St. Stephen marked the place where it formerly stood. From the Rhine and the Moselle, Attila advanced into the heart of Gaul; crossed the Seine at Auteuil; and, after a long and laborious march, fixed his camp under the walls of Orleans. He was desirous of securing his conquests by the possession of an advantageous post, which commanded the passage of the Loire; and he depended on the secret invitation of Sungitan, king of the Alan, who had promised to betray the city, and to revolt from the service of the empire. But this treacherous conspiracy was detected and disappointed. Orleans had been strengthened with temporary fortifications; and the assaults of the Huns were rigorously repelled by the faithful valour of the soldiers, or citizens, who defended the place. The pastoral diligence of Ambros, a bishop of primitive simplicity and consummate prudence, exhausted every art of religious policy to support their courage, till the arrival of the expected succours. After an obstinate siege, the walls were shaken by the battering rams; the Huns had already occupied the suburbs; and the people, who were incapable of bearing arms, lay prostrate in prayer. Ambros, who anxiously counted the days and hours, despatched a trusty messenger to observe, from the ramparts, the face of the distant country. He returned twice, without any intelligence that could inspire hope or comfort; but, in his third report, he mentioned a small cloud, which he had faintly descried at the extremity of the horizon. It is the aid of God!” exclaimed the bishop, in a tone of pious confidence; and the whole multitude repeated after him, “It is the aid of God.” The remote object, on which every eye was fixed, became such moment larger, and more distinct; the Roman and Gothic nations were gradually persuaded; and a favourable wind blowing aside the dust, discovered, in deep array, the imponent squadrons of Attila and

30 See Pridnna, p. 30, 49. It might be fairly alleged, that if Honorius could ascend to the throne, Vahinius himself, who had espoused the cause of Theodosius, would have availed himself for the Eastern empire.

31 Memorabilia of Honorius are imputedly related by Ammianus, de Solis. 5, 28, 29. On the death of Stilicho, and to the establishment of Honorius and Stilicho, see p. 31, and 32.

32 Enarrationen, ed. Weim. 268. Attila nearly eight the previous year, on the river Drap, and possessed Chalons; but his attempt to take a bridge was checked by the Rhone, which was crossed by the enemy, and the continuation of the narrative is wanting.

33 See распространен, ed. Weim. 268. Attila nearly eight the previous year, on the river Drap, and possessed Chalons; but his attempt to take a bridge was checked by the Rhone, which was crossed by the enemy, and the continuation of the narrative is wanting.

34 The holy and virtuous bishop was removed to the place of his death, and gave some account of his virtues to the clergy. He was the author of the Missal of the Church of St. Lupus, St. Ambrose, the Bishop of Brescia, St. Ambrose, the Bishop of Brescia, St. Ambrose, the Bishop of Brescia, St. Ambrose, the Bishop of Brescia, St. Ambrose, the Bishop of Brescia, St. Ambrose, the Bishop of Brescia, St.
Theodoric, who pressed forwards to the relief of Orleans.

The facility with which Attila had penetrated into the heart of Gaul, may be ascribed to his insidious policy, as well as to the terror of his arms. His public declarations were skilfully mitigated by his private assurances; he alternately soothed and threatened the Romans and the Goths; and the courts of Ravenna and Thessalonica, mutually suspicious of each other's intentions, beheld, with sly indifference, the approach of their common enemy. Julius was the sole guardian of the public safety; but his wisest measures were overruled by a faction, which, since the death of Placidia, infested the Imperial palace. The youth of Italy trembled at the approach of invaders, and the barbarians, who, from fear or affection, were inclined to the cause of Attila, awaited, with doubtful and venal faith, the event of the war. The patrician passed the Alps at the head of some troops, whose strength and numbers scarcely deserved the name of an army.\(^23\)

But on his arrival at Arles, or Lyons, he was confounded by the intelligence that the Visigoths, refusing to enhance the defence of Gaul, had determined to expect, within their own territories, the formidable invader, whom they professed to despise. The senator Avarius, who, after the honourable exercise of the praetorian prefecture, had retired to his estate at Auxerrois, was persuaded to accept the important embassy, which he executed with ability and success. He represented to Theodoric, that an ambitious conqueror, who aspired to the dominion of the earth, could be resisted only by the firm and unanimous alliance of the powers whom he favoured to oppose. The lively eloquence of Avarius indomitted the Gothic warriors, by the description of the injuries which their ancestors had suffered from the Huns; whose implacable fury still pursued them from the Danube to the foot of the Pyrenees. He strenuously urged, that it was the duty of every Christian to save from servile and profane violation the churches of God, and the relics of the saints; that it was the interest of every barbarian, who had acquired a settlement in Gaul, to defend the fields and vineyards, which were cultivated for his use, against the destruction of the Scythian shepherds. Theodoric yielded to the evidence of truth; adopted the measure at once the most prudent and the most honourable; and declared, that, as the faithful ally of Attila and the Romans, he was ready to expose his life and kingdoms for the common safety of Gaul.\(^23\) The Visigoths, who, at that time, were in the mature vigour of their fame and power, obeyed with alacrity the signal of war; prepared their arms and horses; and assembled under the standard of their aged king, who was resolved, with his two eldest sons, Torismund and Theodoric, to command in person his numerous and valiant people. The example of the Goths determined several tribes or nations, that seemed to fluctuate between the Huns and the Romans. The indefatigable diligence of the patrician gradually collected the troops of Gaul and Germany, who had formerly acknowledged themselves the subjects, or soldiers, of the republic, but whose insatiable appetites of voluntary servitude, and the rank of independent allies, the Lombards, the Alamanians, the Huns, the Saxons, the Burgundians, the Suevi of Alanis, the Ripuarians, and the Franks who followed Merovæus as their lawful prince. Such was the various army, which, under the command of Attila and Theodoric, advanced, by rapid marches, to relieve Orleans, and to give battle to the innumerable host of Attila.\(^23\)

On their approach, the king of the Huns immediately raised the siege, and sounded a retreat to rout the foremost of his troops from the pilaus of a city which they had already entered.\(^23\) The valor of Attila was always guided by his prudence; and as he foresaw the fatal consequences of a defeat in the heart of Gaul, he exposed the wings, and expected the enemy in the plains of Châlons, whose smooth and level surface was adapted to the operations of his Scythian cavalry. But in this inauspicious retreat, the vanguard of the Romans and their allies continued pressed; and sometimes engaged, the troops whom Attila had posted in the rear; the hostile columns, in the darkness of the night, and the perplexity of the roads, might encounter each other without design; and the bloody conflict of the Franks and Goths, in which fifteen thousand barbarians were slain, was a prelude to a more general and decisive action. The Catalanian fields\(^44\) spread themselves round Châlons, and witnessed, according to the vague measurement of Jornandus, to the length of one hundred and fifty, and the breadth of one hundred, miles, over the whole province, which is entitled to the appellation of a champagne country. This spacious plain was distinguished, however, by some inequalities of ground; and the importance of an height, which commanded the camp of Attila, was undersized, and disputed, by the two generals. The young and valiant Torismund first occupied the summit; the Goths rushed with irresistible weight on the Huns, who laboured to ascend from the

---

\(^{23}\) The policy of Attila, of Stilicho, and of Charlemagne, in the year 496, is the subject of special inquiry in the foregoing work, p. 377. \(^{24}\) The policy of Stilicho, of Attila, of Theodoric, and of Charlemagne, in the year 496, is the subject of special inquiry in the foregoing work, p. 377.

---

\(^{24}\) The Goths had been driven to the confines of Rome; the Burgundians were seated in Savoy; and the Romans were a wearied people of ill fated.\(^45\) The Goths had been driven to the confines of Rome; the Burgundians were seated in Savoy; and the Romans were a wearied people of ill fated.\(^45\)
The decline and fall

The anxiety of Attila prompted him to consult his priests and haruspicus. It was reported, that, after scrutinizing the entrails of victims, and scraping their bowels, they revealed, in mysterious language, his own defeat, with the death of his principal adversary; and that the barbarian, by accepting the equivalent, expressed his involuntary esteem for the superior merit of Alaric. But the unusual dispensation, which seemed to prevail among the Huns, engaged Attila to use the expedition, so familiar to the generals of antiquity, of animating his troops by a military council; and his language was that of a king, who had often fought and conquered at their head. He pressed them to consider their past glory, their actual danger, and their future hopes. The same fortune, which opened the deserts and mountains of Scythia, to their new-born ardour, which had led them, as warlike nations, to penetrate deep into the heart of the empire, had reserved the joy of their dispersed forces for the consummation of their victories. The cautious steps of their enemies, their strict alliance, and their advantages of posts, all artfully represented as the effects, not of prudence, but of fear. The Visigoths alone were the strength and nerves of the opposite army; and the Huns might securely trample on the degenerate Romans, whose close and compact order betrayed their apprehensions, and who were equally incapable of supporting the dangers, or the fatigue, of a day of battle. The doctrine of predestinom, so favourable to martial virtue, was carefully inculcated by the king of the Huns, who assurance his subjects, that the warriors, protected by Heaven, were safe and invulnerable amidst the darts of the enemy; but that the unerring Fates would strike their victims in the bosom of ignobles peace. "I will myself," continued Attila, "will throw the first javelin; and the while which refuses to imitate the example of his sovereign, is debarred to inevitable death." The spirit of the barbarians was rekindled by the presence, the voice, and the example, of their intrepid leader; and Attila, yielding to their impatience, immediately formed his order of battle. At the head of his brave and faithful Huns, he occupied in person the centre of the line. The nations subject to his empire, the Rugians, the Heruli, the Thuringians, the Franks, the Burgundians, were extended, on either hand, over the ample space of the Catalanian fields; the right wing was commanded by Aruari, king of the Gepids; and the three valiant brothers, who reign over the Ostrogoths, were posted on the left to oppose the kinsfolk tribes of the Visigoths. The disposition of the allies was regulated by a different principle. Sanguis, the faithless king of the Alani, was placed in the centre; where his mutiny might be strictly watched, and his treachery might be instantly punished. Aetius assumed the command of the left, and Theodoric of the right, wing: while Torismond still continued to occupy the heights which appear to have stretched on the flank, and perhaps the rear, of the Scythian army. The nations from the Volga to the Atlantic were assembled on the plains of Chalons; but many of these nations had been divided by faction, or conquest, or emigration; and the appearance of similar arms and ensigns, which threatened each other, presented the image of a civil war.

The discipline and tactics of the Greeks and Romans form an interesting part of their national manners. The attentive study of the military operations of Xenophon, or Caesar, or Frederick, when they are described by the same genius which conceived and executed them, may tend to improve (if such improvement can be wished) the art of destroying men, and the art of destroying nations. But the exploits of Chalons can only excite our curiosity by the magnitude of the object; since it was decided by the blind impetuosity of barbarians, and has been related by partial writers, whose civil or ecclesiastical profession excluded them from the knowledge of military affairs. Cassiodorus, however, had familiarly conversed with many Gothic warriors, who served in that magnanimous engagement; "a conflict," as they informed him, "fierce, various, obstinate, and bloody; such as could not be paralleled, either in the present, or in past ages." The number of the slain amounted to one hundred and sixty-two thousand, or, according to another account, three hundred thousand persons; and these incredible exaggerations suppose a real and effective loss, sufficient to justify the historian's remark, that whole generations may be swept away, by the madness of kings, in the space of a single hour. After the natural and repeated discharge of missile weapons, in which the archers of Scythia might signalise their superior dexterity, the cavalry and infantry of the two armies were furiously mingled in closer combat. The Huns, who fought under the eyes of their king, pierced through the feeble and doubtful centre of the allies, separated their wings from each other, and wheeled, with a rapid effort, to the left, directed their whole force against the Visigoths. As Theodoric rode along the ranks to animate his troops, he received a mortal stroke from the javelin of Anchaeus, a noble Ostrogoth, and immediately fell from his horse. The wounded king was oppressed in the general disorder, and trampled under the foot of his own cavalry; and this important death served to explain the ambiguous prophecy of the haruspices. Attila already exulted in the confidence of victory, when the valiant Torismond descended from the hills, and verified the remainder of the prediction. The Visigoths, who had been thrown into confusion by the flight, or
defection of the Alani, gradually restored their order of battle; and the Huns were undoubtedly vanquished, since Attila was compelled to retreat. He had exposed his person with the rashness of a private soldier; but the intrepid troops of the centre had pushed forward beyond the rest of the line; their attack was faintly supported; their flanks were unguarded; and the conquerors of Scythia and Germany were saved by the approach of the night from a total defeat. They retired within the circle of wagons that fortified their camp; and the dismounted squadrions prepared themselves for a defense, to which neither their arms, nor their temper, were adapted. The event was doubtful; but Attila had secured a last and honourable resource. The saddles and rich furniture of the cavalry were collected, by his order, into a funeral pile; and the important barbarian had resolved, if his intrenchments should be forced, to hurl himself into the flames, and to deprive his enemies of the glory which they might have acquired by the death or captivity of Attila. But his enemies had passed the night in equal disorder and anxiety. The inconsiderate courage of Torismound was tempted to urge the pursuit, till he unexpectedly found himself, with a few followers, in the midst of the Scythian wagons. In the confusion of a nocturnal combat, he was thrown from his horse; and the Gothic prince must have perished like his father, if his youthful strength, and the intrepid soul of his companions, had not rescued him from this dangerous situation. In the same manner, but on the left of the line, Zétus himself, separated from his allies, ignorant of their victory, and anxious for their fate, encountered and escaped the hostile troops, that were scattered over the plains of Châlons; and at length reached the camp of the Goths, which he could only fortify with a slight rampart of shields, till the dawn of day. The Imperial general was soon satisfied of the defeat of Attila, who still remained inactive within his intrenchments; and when he contemplated the bloody scene, he observed, with secret satisfaction, that the loss had principally fallen on the barbarians. The body of Theodoric, pierced with honourable wounds, was discovered under a heap of the slain; his subjects bewailed the death of their king and father; but their tears were mingled with songs and acclamations, and his funeral rites were performed in the face of a vanquished enemy. The Goths, clasping their arms, elevated on a buckler his eldest son. Torismound, to whom they justly ascribed the glory of their success; and the new king accepted the obligation of revenge, as a sacred portion of his paternal inheritance.

Yet the Goths themselves were astonished by the fierce and unseamed aspect of their formidable antagonist; and their historian has com-

pared Attila to a lion encompassed in his den, and threatening his hunters with redoubled fury. The kings and nations, who might have asserted his standard in the hour of distress, were made sensible, that the displeasure of their monarch was the most luminous and inevitable danger. All his instruments of martial power incessantly sounded a loud and animating strain of defiance; and the foremost troops who advanced to the assault, were checked, or destroyed, by showers of arrows from every side of the intrenchments. It was determined, in a general council of war, to besiege the king of the Huns in his camp, to intercept his provisions, and to reduce him to the alternative of a disgraceful treaty, or an unequal combat. But the impatience of the barbarians soon disdained these cautions and dilatory measures; and the mature policy of Zétus was apprehensive, that, after the extinction of the Huns, the republic would be oppressed by the pride and power of the Gothic nation. The patrician exerted the superior ascendant of authority and reason, to calm the passion, which the son of Theodoric considered as a duty; represented, with seeming affection and real truth, the dangers of absence and delay; and persuaded Torismound to disappoint, by his speedy return, the ambitious designs of his brothers, who might occupy the throne and treasures of Toulouse. After the departure of the Huns, and the separation of the allied army, Attila was surprised at the vast sibiuq that reigned over the plains of Châlons: the suspicion of some hostile stratagem detained him several days within the circle of his wagons; and his retreat beyond the Rhine confessed the last victory which was achieved in the name of the Western empire. Merovæus and his Francs, observing a prudent distance, and magnifying the opinion of their strength, by the numerous fires which they kindled every night, continued to follow the rear of the Huns, till they reached the confines of Thuringia. The Thuringians served in the army of Attila; they traversed, both in their march and in their return, the territories of the Francs; and it was perhaps in this war that they exercised the cruelties, which, about fourscore years afterwards, were revenged by the son of Clovis. They massacred their hostages, as well as their captives: two hundred young maidens were tortured with exquisite and unrelenting rage: their bodies were torn asunder by wild horses; or their bones were crushed under the weight of rolling wagons; and their mutilated limbs were abandoned on the public roads, as a prey to dogs and vultures. Such were these savage atrocities, whose imaginary virtues have sometimes excited the praise and envy of civilized ages.

Neither the spirit, nor the forces, nor the reputation, of Attila, were impaired by the failure of the Gallic

43. Thesaurus de Riforma (Wîch. de Pompéi. Ar. n. a. e. p. 294.
45. The power of Attila was now great; but the former action of the Alani, the latter in Caesarea; the former in Trier; the latter in Thuringia. See the account of the war against Attila, in the Annal. Zénob. a. d. 334.
46. Zénob. a. d. 334. in Zénob. a. d. 335. A. n. s. p. 256. The power of Attila was now great; but the former action of the Alani, the latter in Caesarea; the former in Trier; the latter in Thuringia. See the account of the war against Attila, in the Annal. Zénob. a. d. 334.
lic expedition. In the ensuing spring, he re-posed his demand, of the princess Honoria, and her patrimonial treasures. The demand was again rejected, or eluded; and the indignant lover immediately took the field, passed the Alps, invaded Italy, and besieged Aquileia with an insurmountable host of barbarians. Those barbarians were unskilled in the methods of conducting a regular siege, which, even among the ancients, required some knowledge, or at least some practice, of the mechanic arts. But the labour of many thousand provincials and captives, whose lives were sacrificed without pity, might execute the most painful and dangerous work. The skill of the Roman artists might be corrupted to the destruction of their country.

The walls of Aquileia were assaulted by a formidable train of battering rams, moveable towers, and engines, that threw stones, darts, and fire; and the monarch of the Huns employed the forcible impulse of hope, fear, emulation, and interest, to subvert the only barrier which delayed the conquest of Italy. Aquileia was at that period one of the richest, the most populous, and the strongest of the maritime cities of the Adriatic coast. The Gothic auxiliaries, who appear to have served under their native princes Alaric and Ataulf, communicated their intrepid spirit; and the citizens still remembered the glorious and successful resistance, which their ancestors had opposed to a fierce, incoherent barbarian, who disregarded the majesty of the Roman purple. Three months were consumed without effect in the siege of Aquileia; till the want of provisions, and the clamours of his army, compelled Attila to relinquish the enterprise; and reluctantly to issue his orders, that the troops should strike their tents the next morning, and begin their retreat. But as he rode round the walls, punitive, angry, and disappointed, he observed a woman, preparing to leave her nest, in one of the towers, and to fly with her terrors to the protection of the emperor. He ordered, with the ready penetration of a master, this trifling incident, which chance had offered to superstition; and exclaimed, in a loud and cheerful tone, that such a domestic bird, so constantly attached to human society, would never have abandoned her ancient seat, unless those towers had been devoted to impending ruin and solitude. The favourable omen inspired an assurance of victory; the siege was renewed; and prosecuted with fresh vigour; a large breach was made in the part of the wall from whence the stock had taken her flight; the Huns mounted to the assault with irresistible fury; and the succeeding generation could scarcely discover the ruins of Aquileia. After this dreadful chastisement, Attila pursued his march; and as he passed, the cities of Attinum, Corciglia, and Padua, were reduced into heaps of stones and ashes. The inland towns, Vicenza, Verona, and Bergamo, were exposed to the rapacious cruelty of the Huns. Milan and Pavia submitted, without resistance, to the loss of their wealth; and applauded the unusual clemency, which preserved from the flames the public, as well as private, buildings; and spared the lives of the captive multitude. The popular traditions of Comun, Turin, or Modena, may justly be suspected; yet they concur with more authentic evidence to prove, that Attila spread his ravages over the rich plains of modern Lombardy; which are divided by the Po, and bounded by the Alps and Apennines. When he took possession of the royal palace of Milan, he was surprised, and offended, at the sight of a picture, which represented the Caesars seated on their thrones, and the princes of Scythia prostrate at their feet. The revenge which Attila inflicted on this monument of Roman vanity, was harmless and ingenuous. He commanded a painter to reverse the figures, and the attitudes; and the emperors were delineated on the same canvas, approaching in a suppliant posture to empty their bags of tributary gold before the thrones of the Scythian monarch. The spectators must have confessed the truth and propriety of the alteration; and were perhaps tempted to apply, on this singular occasion, the well-known fable of the dispute between the lion and the mouse. It is a saying worthy of the furious pride of Attila, that the grass never grew on the spot where his horse had trod. Yet the savage destroyer undesignedly laid the foundations of a republic, which revived, in the feudal state of Europe, the art and spirit of commercial industry. The celebrated name of Venice, or Venezia, was formerly diffused over a large and fertile province of Italy, from the confines of Pannonia to the river Adula, and from the Po to the Hystian and Julian Alps. Before the irruption of the barbarians, fifty Venetian cities flourished in peace and prosperity; Aquileia was placed in the most conspicuous station: but the ancient dignity of Padua was supported by agriculture and manufactures; and the property of five hundred citizens, who were entitled to the equestrian rank, must have amounted, at the strictest computation, to one million seven hundred thousand pounds. Many families of Aquileia

---

48 Matelica e. 306. In the year 555, 495, and 496, Attila passed the Alps with a vast host of barbarians, who invaded Italy with large armies, and gained by the treachery of the Christians in their cities, which they fought in 535, 580, and 583, near Aquileia, and in 571, near Verona. The Huns advanced far into the interior, and the Venetians were compelled to sue for peace. The Venetians were at first successful, but were afterwards routed at Aquileia, in 541, by the Saracens. After the battle of Tolbiac, in 590, the Venetians were reduced to great calamity. The Huns were in the height of their power, and the Venetians were in the lowest of theirs. They were reduced to the necessity of asking for peace, and paying tribute to the Huns. They were finally reduced to the necessity of asking for peace, and paying tribute to the Huns.

49 The same story is told by Jordanes, and by the Notitia. The Huns, as the first, are said to have taken Aquileia, and to have occupied the Po, and the Hadriatic sea. The Venetians were at first successful, but were afterwards routed at Aquileia, in 541, by the Saracens. After the battle of Tolbiac, in 590, the Venetians were reduced to great calamity. They were in the height of their power, and the Venetians were in the lowest of theirs. They were reduced to the necessity of asking for peace, and paying tribute to the Huns. They were finally reduced to the necessity of asking for peace, and paying tribute to the Huns.

50 The same story is told by Jordanes, and by the Notitia. The Huns, as the first, are said to have taken Aquileia, and to have occupied the Po, and the Hadriatic sea. The Venetians were at first successful, but were afterwards routed at Aquileia, in 541, by the Saracens. After the battle of Tolbiac, in 590, the Venetians were reduced to great calamity. They were in the height of their power, and the Venetians were in the lowest of theirs. They were reduced to the necessity of asking for peace, and paying tribute to the Huns. They were finally reduced to the necessity of asking for peace, and paying tribute to the Huns.
Padua, and the adjacent towns, who fled from the sword of the Huns, found a safe, though obscure, refuge in the neighbouring islands. At the extremity of the Gulf, where the Adriatic feebly imitates the tides of the ocean, near an hundred small islands are separated by shallow water from the continent, and protected from the waves by several long slips of land, which admit the entrance of vessels through some secret and narrow channels. Till the middle of the fifth century, these remote and sequestered spots remained without cultivation, with few inhabitants, and almost without a name. But the manners of the Venetian fugitives, their arts and their government, were gradually formed by their new situation; and one of the epitaphs of Cassiodorus, which describes their condition about seventy years afterwards, may be considered as the primitive monument of the republic. The minister of Theodoric compares them, in his quaint declamatory style, to water fowl, who had fixed their nests on the bosom of the waves; and though he allows, that the Venetian provinces had formerly contained many noble families, he intimates, that they were now reduced by misfortune to the same level of humble poverty. Fish was the common, and almost the universal, food of every rank; their only treasure consisted in the export of wine, which they extracted from the sea; and the exchange of that commodity, so essential to human life, was substituted in the neighbouring markets to the currency of gold and silver. A people, whose habitations might be doubtfully assigned to the earth or water, soon became alike familiar with the two elements; and the demands of arable succeeded to those of necessity. The islanders, who, from Grado to Chioggia, were intimately connected with each other, penetrated into the heart of Italy, by the secure, though laborious, navigation of the rivers and inland canals. Their vessels, which were continually increasing in size and number, visited all the harbours of the Gulf; and the marriage, which Venice annually celebrates with the Adriatic, was contracted in her early infancy. The epitaph of Cassiodorus, the præsident prefect, is addressed to the maritime tribunes: and he exhorts them, in a mild tone of authority, to animate the zeal of their countrymen for the public service, which required their assistance to transport their magazines of wine and oil from the province of Istria to the royal city of Ravenna. The ambiguous office of these magistrates is explained by the tradition, that, in the twelve principal islands, twelve tribunes, or judges, were created by an annual and popular election. The existence of the Venetian republic under the Gothic kingdom of Italy, is attested by the same authentic record, which annihilates their lofty claim of original and perpetual independence.

The Italians, who had long since renounced the exercise of arms, were surprised, after forty years' pause, by the approach of a formidable barbarian, whom they abhorred, as the enemy of their religion, as well as of their republic. Amidst the general consternation, Aëtius alone was incapable of fear; but it was impossible that he should achieve alone, and unassisted, any military exploits worthy of his former renown. The barbarians, who had defended Gaul, refused to march to the relief of Italy; and the succours promised by the Eastern emperor were distant and doubtful. Since Aëtius, at the head of his domestic troops, still maintained the field, and harassed or retarded the march of Attila, he never showed himself more truly great, than at the time when his conduct was blamed by an ignorant and ungrateful people. If the mind of Valentinian had been susceptible of any generous sentiments, he would have chosen such a general for his example and his guide. But the timid grandson of Theodosius, instead of sharing the dangers, escaped from the sound of war; and his hasty retreat from Ravenna to Rome, from an impregnable fortress to an open capital, betrayed his secret intention of abandoning Italy, as soon as the danger should approach his imperial person. This shameful abdication was suspended, however, by the spirit of doubt and delay, which commonly adheres to pusillanimous counsels, and sometimes corrects their pernicious tendency. The Western emperor, with the senate and people of Rome, embraced the more salutary resolution of deprecating, by a solemn and suppliant embassy, the wrath of Attila. This important commission was accepted by Avienus, who, from his birth and riches, his consular dignity, the numerous train of his clients, and his personal abilities, held the first rank in the Roman senate. The spacious and artful character of Avienus was admirably qualified to conduct a negotiation either of public or private interest. His colleague, Trègès, had exercised the praetorian prefecture of Italy; and Leo, bishop of Rome, consented to expose his life for the safety of his flock. The genius of Leo was exercised and displayed in the public misfortunes; and he has deserved the appellation of Great, by the successful zeal with which he laboured to establish his opinions and
his authority, under the venerable names of orthodozal faiths and ecclesiastical disciplines. The Roman ambassadors were introduced to the tent of Attila, as he lay encamped at the place where the slow-volting Minnis is lost in the foaming waves of the lake Bitnacii, and trampled, with his Scythian cavalry, the farms of Castillius and Virgili. The barbarian monarch listened with favour, and even respectful attention; and the deliverance of Italy was purchased by the immense ransom, or dowry, of the princess Honoria. The state of his army might facilitate the treaty, and hasten his retreat. Their martial spirit was relaxed by the warmth and indulgence of a warm climate. The shepherds of the North, whose ordinary food consisted of milk and raw flesh, indulged themselves too freely in the use of bread, of wine, and of meat, prepared and seasoned by the arts of cookery; and the progress of disease regained in some measure the injury of the Italic body. When Attila declared his resolution of carrying his victorious arms to the gates of Rome, he was admonished by his friends, as well as by his enemies, that Alaric had never long survived the conquest of the eternal city. His mind, superior to real danger, was assaulted by imaginary terror; nor could he escape the influence of superstition, which had so often been subservient to his designs. The pressing necessity of Leo, his majestic aspect, and sacred tokens, excited the remembrance of Attila for the spiritual father of the Christians. The apostles of two apostles, St. Peter and St. Paul, who denounced the barbarian with instant death; if he rejected the prayer of their successor, is one of the noblest legacies of ecclesiastical tradition. The safety of Rome might deserve the intercession of celestial beings; and some indulgence is due to a false, which has been represented by the pencil of Raphael, and the chisel of Algardi. Before the king of the Huns evacuated Italy, he threatened to return more dreadful, and more implacable, if his bride, the princess Honoria, were not delivered to his ambassadors within the time stipulated by the treaty. Yet, in the mean while, Attila relished his tender anxiety, by adding a beautiful maid, whose name was Ilusco, to the list of his insatiable wives. Their marriage was celebrated with barbaric pomp and festivity, at his wooden palace beyond the Danube; and the monarch, oppressed with wine and sleep, retired, at a late hour, from the banquet to the unquiet bed. His attendants continued to respect his pleasures, or his repose, the greatest part of the ensuing day, till the unusual silence alarmed their fears and suspicions; and, after attempting to awaken Attila by loud and repeated cries, they at length broke into the royal apartment. They found the trembling tyrant sitting by the bedside, hiding her face with her veil, and lamenting her own danger, as well as the death of the king, who had expired during the night. An artery had suddenly burst; and as Attila lay in a supine posture, he was suffocated by a torrent of blood, which, instead of ending a passage through the nostrils, regurgitated into the lungs and stomach. His body was solely exposed in the midst of the plain, under a silken pavilion; and the chosen squadrons of the Huns, wheeled round in measured evolutions, chanted a funeral song to the memory of a hero, glorious in his life, invincible in his death, the father of his people, the scourge of his enemies, and the terror of the world. According to their national customs, the barbarians cut off a part of their hair, gashed their faces with unseemly wounds, and bewailed their valiant leader as he deserved, not with the tears of women, but with the blood of warriors. The remains of Attila were enclosed within three coffins, of gold, of silver, and of iron; and privately buried in the night; the spoils of nations were thrown into his grave; the captives who had opened the ground were inhumanly massacred; and the same Huns, who had indulged such excessive grief, feasted, with dissolute and intemperate mirth, about the recent sepulchre of their king. It was reported at Constantinople, that on the fortuitous night in which he expired, Marcellus beheld in a dream the bow of Attila broken asunder; and the report may be allowed to prove, how seldom the image of that formidable barbarian was absent from the mind of a Roman emperor.

The revolution which subdued the empire of the Huns, established the fame of Attila, whose genius alone had sustained the huge and disjointed fabric. After his death, the boldest chieftains aspired to the rank of kings; the most powerful kings refused to acknowledge a superior; and the numerous sons, whom so many various mothers bore to the deceased monarch, divided and disputed, like a private inheritance, the sovereign command of

Barbarian (Ancient, Ecclesiastical, &c.) 418, 58, 82. Borne over the empire of the Huns, established the fame of Attila, whose genius alone had sustained the huge and disjointed fabric. After his death, the boldest chieftains aspired to the rank of kings; the most powerful kings refused to acknowledge a superior; and the numerous sons, whom so many various mothers bore to the deceased monarch, divided and disputed, like a private inheritance, the sovereign command of

Barbarian (Ancient, Ecclesiastical, &c.) 418, 58, 82. Borne over the empire of the Huns, established the fame of Attila, whose genius alone had sustained the huge and disjointed fabric. After his death, the boldest chieftains aspired to the rank of kings; the most powerful kings refused to acknowledge a superior; and the numerous sons, whom so many various mothers bore to the deceased monarch, divided and disputed, like a private inheritance, the sovereign command of

Barbarian (Ancient, Ecclesiastical, &c.) 418, 58, 82. Borne over the empire of the Huns, established the fame of Attila, whose genius alone had sustained the huge and disjointed fabric. After his death, the boldest chieftains aspired to the rank of kings; the most powerful kings refused to acknowledge a superior; and the numerous sons, whom so many various mothers bore to the deceased monarch, divided and disputed, like a private inheritance, the sovereign command of

Barbarian (Ancient, Ecclesiastical, &c.) 418, 58, 82. Borne over the empire of the Huns, established the fame of Attila, whose genius alone had sustained the huge and disjointed fabric. After his death, the boldest chieftains aspired to the rank of kings; the most powerful kings refused to acknowledge a superior; and the numerous sons, whom so many various mothers bore to the deceased monarch, divided and disputed, like a private inheritance, the sovereign command of

Barbarian (Ancient, Ecclesiastical, &c.) 418, 58, 82. Borne over the empire of the Huns, established the fame of Attila, whose genius alone had sustained the huge and disjointed fabric. After his death, the boldest chieftains aspired to the rank of kings; the most powerful kings refused to acknowledge a superior; and the numerous sons, whom so many various mothers bore to the deceased monarch, divided and disputed, like a private inheritance, the sovereign command of

Barbarian (Ancient, Ecclesiastical, &c.) 418, 58, 82. Borne over the empire of the Huns, established the fame of Attila, whose genius alone had sustained the huge and disjointed fabric. After his death, the boldest chieftains aspired to the rank of kings; the most powerful kings refused to acknowledge a superior; and the numerous sons, whom so many various mothers bore to the deceased monarch, divided and disputed, like a private inheritance, the sovereign command of
the nations of Germany and Scythia. The bold Ardariad, in his lad and represented the disgrace of this service partition, and his subjects, the warlike Geopide, with the Ostrogoths, under the conduct of three valiant brothers, encouraged their allies to vindicate the rights of freedom and royalty. In a bloody and decisive conflict on the banks of the river Neda, in Pannonia, the lance of the Geopide, the sword of the Goths, the arrows of the Huns, the Sueric infantry, the light arms of the Heraclids, and the heavy weapons of the Alans, encountered or supported each other; and the victory of Ardariad was accomplished with the slaughter of thirty thousand of his enemies. Elyas, the eldest son of Attilla, lost his life and crown in the memorable battle of Neda: his early valour had raised him to the throne of the Avaric, a Scythian people, whom he subdued; and his father, who loved the supreme merit, would have envied the death of Elyas.32 His brother Dengisch, with an army of Huns, still formidable in their flight and ruin, maintained his ground above fifteen years on the banks of the Danube. The palace of Attilla, with the old country of Daia, from the Carpathian hills to the Euxine, became the property of a new power, which was directed by Ardariad, king of the Geopide. The Pannonian conquests, from Viena to Sirmonium, were occupied by the Ostrogoths; and the settlements of the tribes, who had so bravely asserted their native freedom, were irregularly distributed, according to the measure of their respective strength. Surrounded and oppressed by the multitude of his father's slaves, the kingdom of Dengisch was confined to the circle of his wagons; his desperate courage urged him to invade the Eastern empire; he fell in battle; and his head, ignominiously exposed in the Hippodrome, exhibited a grateful spectacle to the people of Constantinople. Attilla had finally or superstition believed, that Irnac, the youngest of his sons, was destined to perpetuate the glories of his race. The character of that prince, who attempted to moderate the rashness of his brother Dengisch, was more suitable to the declining condition of the Huns; and Irnac, with his subject heroes, retired into the heart of the Lesser Scythia. They were soon overwhelmed by a torrent of new barbarians, who followed the same trail which their own ancestors had formerly discovered. The Geogoss, or Avarae, whose residence is assigned by the Greek writers to the shores of the ocean, impelled the adjacent tribes; till at length the Igores of the North, issuing from the cold Siberian regions, which produce the most valuable furs, spread themselves over the desert, as far as the Boristhene and the Caspian Gates; and finally extinguished the empire of the Huns.71

Such an event might contribute to the safety of the Eastern empire, under the reign of a prince who conciliated the friendship, without forfeiting the esteem, of the barbarians. But the emperor of the West, the flexible and dissolute Valentinian, who had reached his thirty-fifth year without attaining the age of reason or courage, abused this apparent security, to undermine the foundations of his own throne, by the murder of the patrician Aëtius. From the instinct of a base and jealous mind, he hated the man who was universally celebrated as the terror of the barbarians, and the support of the republic; and his new favourite, the nuncaur Heruinias, awakened the emperor from the sublime lethargy, which might be disguised, during the life of Placidia, by the excess of filial piety. The fame of Aëtius, his wealth and dignity, the numerous and martial train of barbarian followers, his powerful dependants, who filled the civil office of the state, and the hopes of his son Gaudemius, who was already contracted to Eudoxia, the emperor's daughter, had raised him above the rank of a subject. The ambitious designs, of which he was secretly accused, excited the fears, as well as the resentment, of Valentinian. Aëtius himself, supported by the consciousness of his merit, his services, and personal ascendency, had boasted his innocence, seems to have maintained a haughty and indiscr...
The luxury of Rome seems to have attracted the long and frequent visits of Valentinian; who was consequently more despised at Rome than in any other part of his dominions. A republican spirit was insensibly revived in the senate, as their authority, and even their supplies, became necessary for the support of his fickle government. The sateful demeanour of an hereditary monarch offended their pride; and the pleasures of Valentinian were injurious to the peace and honour of noble families. The birth of the captive Eudoxia was equal to his own, and her wealth and tender affection deserved those testimonies of love, which her inconstant husband disdained in vogue and unlawful amours. Potemnia Maximus, a wealthy senator of the Arian family, who had been twice consul, was possessed of a chaste and beautiful wife; her obstinate resistance served only to irritate the desires of Valentinian; and he resolved to accomplish them, either by stratagem or force. Deep cunning was one of the vices of the court: the emperor, who, by chance or contrivance, had gained from Maximus a considerable sum, unceremoniously exacted his ring as a security for the debt; and sent it by a trusty messenger to his wife, with an order, in her husband's name, that she should immediately attend the empress Eudoxia. The unsuspecting wife of Maximus was conveyed in her litter to the Imperial palace; the emissaries of her impatient lover conducted her to a remote and silent bedchamber; and Valentinian violated, without remorse, the laws of hospitality. Her tears, when she returned home; her deep affliction; and her bitter reproaches against a husband, whom she considered as the accomplice of his own shame, excited Maximus to a just revenge; the desire of revenge was stimulated by ambition; and he might reasonably aspire, by the free sufferings of the Roman senate, to the throne of a detested and desppicable rival. Valentinian, who supposed that every human breast was devoured, like his own, of friendship and gratitude, had imprudently admitted among his guards several domestics and followers of Aelius. Two of these, of barbarian race, were persuaded to execute a sacred and honourable duty, by punishing with death the assassin of their patron; and their intrepid courage did not long expect a favour-able moment. Whilst Valentinian armed himself in the Field of Mars, with the spectacle of some military sports, they suddenly rushed upon him with drawn weapons, despatched the guilty Heraclius, and stabbed the emperor to the heart, without the least opposition from his numerous train, who seemed to rejoice in the tyrant's death. Such was the fate of Valentinian the Third, the last Roman emperor of the family of Theodosius. He faithfully imitated the hereditary weakness of his cousin and his two uncles, without incurring the gentleness, the purity, the innocence, which alleviated in their characters, the want of spirit and ability. Valentinian was too weak, too sallow, since he had passions without virtues; even his religion was questionable; and though he never deviated into the paths of heresy, he scandalised the pious Christians by his attachment to the profane arts of magic and divination.

As early as the time of Cicero and Varro, it was the opinion of the Romans augurs, that the twelve vultures, which Romulus had seen, represented the twelve centuries, assigned for the fatal period of his city. This prophecy, disregarded perhaps in the season of health and prosperity, inspired the people with gloomy apprehensions, when the twelfth century, clouded with disgrace and misfortune, was almost elapsed; and even posterity must acknowledge, with some surprise, that the arbitrary interpretation of an accidental or fabulous circumstance, has been seriously verified in the downfall of the Western empire. But its fall was announced by a clearer omen than the flight of vultures: the Roman government appeared every day less formidable to its enemies, more odious and oppressive to its subjects. The taxes were multiplied with the public distress; economy was neglected in proportion as it became necessary; and the justice of the rich shifted the unequal burden from themselves to the people, whom they defrauded of the indulgences that might sometimes have alleviated their misery. The severe inquisition, which confiscated their goods, and tortured their persons, compelled the subjects of Valentinian to prefer the more simple tyranny of the barbarians, to fly to the woods and mountains, or to embrace the vile and abject condition of mercenary servants. Theyajured and abhorred the name of Roman citizens, which had formerly excited the ambition of mankind. The Armorician provinces of Gaul, and the greatest part of Spain, were thrown into a state of disorderly independence, by the confederations of the Bagaudae; and the Imperial ministers pursued with prescriptive laws, and ineffectual arms, the rebels

---

23. Aelius, Pontifex maximus, mention already in the deposition of Valens in the passage of 'Theodosius' (p. 669). The life of Aelius is narrated by Procopius (H. Z.).

24. This passage is seen in the information of the family of the Nicomacheans, in the light of Eutropius (p. 107). The Nicomacheans were a family of the Nicomacheans, in the light of Eutropius (p. 107). The Nicomacheans were a family of the Nicomacheans, in the light of Eutropius (p. 107). The Nicomacheans were a family of the Nicomacheans, in the light of Eutropius (p. 107). The Nicomacheans were a family of the Nicomacheans, in the light of Eutropius (p. 107).


whom they had made. If all the barbarian conquerors had been annihilated in the same hour, their total destruction would not have restored the empire of the West; and if Rome still survived, she survived the loss of freedom, of virtue, and of honour.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Sack of Rome by Genseric, King of the Vandals.—His naval Depredations.—Succession of the last Emperors of the West. Maximus, Avitus, Majorian, Severus, Anarhichus, Olybius, Olybrius, Nepos, Augustulus.—Total Extinction of the Western Empire.—Reign of Odoacer, the first barbarian King of Italy.

The loss or desolation of the provinces, from the ocean to the Alps, impaired the glory and greatness of Rome: her internal prosperity was irretrievably destroyed by the separation of Africa. The rapacious Vandals confiscated the patrimonial estates of the senators, and intercepted the regular subsidies, which relieved the poverty, and encouraged the idleness, of the plebeians. The distress of the Romans was soon aggravated by an unexpected attack; and the province, so long cultivated for their use by industrious and obedient subjects, was armed against them by an ambitious barbarian. The Vandals and Alani, who followed an unsuccessful standard of Genseric, had acquired a rich and fertile territory, which stretched along the coast about ninety days' journey from Tarascon to Tripoli; but their narrow limits were pressed and confined, on either side, by the sandy desert and the Mediterranean. The discovery and conquest of the black nations, that might dwell beneath the torrid zone, could not tempt the rational ambition of Genseric; but he cast his eyes towards the sea; he resolved to create a naval power, and his bold resolution was executed with steady and active perseverance. The woods of Mount Atlas afforded an inexhaustible nursery of timber; his new subjects were skilled in the arts of navigation and shipbuilding; he animated his daring Vandals to embrace a mode of warfare which would render every maritime country accessible to their arms; the Moors and Africans were allured by the hopes of plunder; and, after an interval of six centuries, the fleets that issued from the port of Carthage again claimed the empire of the Mediterranean. The success of the Vandals, the conquest of Sicily, the sack of Palermo, and the frequent descents on the coast of Lucania, awakened and alarmed the mother of Valentinian, and the sister of Theodosius. Alliances were formed; and armaments, expensive and inefficient, were prepared, for the destruction of the common enemy; who reserved his courage to encounter those dangers which his policy could not prevent or elude. The designs of the Roman government were repeatedly baffled by his artful delays, ambiguous promises, and apparent concessions; and the interposition of his formidable confederate, the king of the Huns, recalled the emperors from the conquest of Africa to the care of their domestic safety. The revolutions of the palace, which left the Western empire without a defender, and without a lawful prince, dispelled the apprehensions, and stimulated the avarice, of Genseric. He immediately equipped a numerous fleet of Vandals and Moors, and cast anchor at the mouth of the Tyber, about three months after the death of Valentinian, and the elevation of Maximus to the Imperial throne.

The private life of the senator Petronius Maximus was often alleged as a rare example of human felicity. His birth was noble and illustrious, since he descended from the Askian family; his dignity was supported by an adequate patrimony in land and money; and these advantages of fortune were accompanied with liberal arts and decent manners, which adorn or obliterate the inestimable gifts of genius and virtue. The luxury of his palace and table was hospitable and elegant. Whenever Maximus appeared in public, he was surrounded by a train of grateful and obsequious clients; and it is possible that, among these clients, he might deserve and possess some real friends. His merit was rewarded by the favour of the prince and senate: he thrice exercised the office of praetorian prefect of Italy; he was twice invested with the consulship, and he obtained the rank of patrician. These civil honours were not incompatible with the enjoyment of leisure and tranquillity; his hours, according to the demands of pleasure or reason, were accurately distributed by a water-clock; and this avarice of time may be allowed to prove the sense which Maximus entertained of his own happiness. The injury which he received from the emperor Valentinian, appears to excuse the most bloody revenge. Yet a philosopher might have reflected, that, if the resistance of his wife had been sincere, her chastity was still inviolate, and that it could never be restored if she had consented to the will of the adulterer. A patriot would have hesitated, before he plunged himself and his country into those irrevocable calamities, which must follow the extinction of the royal house of Theodosius. The imprudent Maximus disregarded these salutary considerations; he gratified his resentment and ambition; he saw the bleeding corpse of Valentinian at his feet; and he heard himself saluted Emperor by the unanimous voice of the senate and people. But the day of his inauguration was the last day of his happiness. He was imprisoned (such is the lively expression of Varronius nobilissimus, assumpsit potius quam consulis nominem) De Gallo-Britton, lib. i. c. 145, 146.

The title of Augustus is given to the first barbarian emperor, in the sense which Valentinian himself (I. Epist. 6) meant to convey without of complete title.

N. 4
sion of Sidonius) in the palace; and after passing a sleepless night, he sighed that he had attained the summit of his wishes, and aspired only to descend from the dangerous elevation. Oppressed by the weight of the diadem, he communicated his anxious thoughts to his friend and quoter Fulgentius; and when he looked back with unwavering regret on the secure pleasures of his former life, the emperor exclaimed, *O fortunate Damocles, thy reign began and ended with the same dinner:* a well-known allusion, which Fulgentius afterwards repeated as an instructive lesson for princes and subjects.

The reign of Maximus continued about three months. His hours, of which he had lost the command, were disturbed by remorse, or guilt, or terror; and his throne was shaken by the solicitations of the soldiers, the people, and the confederate barbarians. The marriage of his son Palladius with the eldest daughter of the late emperor, might tend to establish the hereditary succession of his family; but the violence which he offered to the empress Eudoxia, could proceed only from the blind impulse of lust or revenge. His own wife, the cause of these tragic events, had been reasonably removed by death; and the widow of Valentinian was compelled to violate her decent mourning, perhaps her real grief, and to submit to the embraces of a presumptuous usurper, whom she suspected as the assassin of her deceased husband. These suspicions were soon justified by the indiscreet confession of Maximus himself; and he wantonly provoked the hatred of his reluctant bride, who was still conscious that she descended from a line of emperors. From the East, however, Eudoxia could not hope to obtain any effectual assistance; her father and her aunt Pulcheria were dead; her mother Langæus lived at Jerusalem in disgrace and exile; and the viceroy of Constantinople was in the hands of a stranger. She directed her eyes towards Carthage, secretly implored the aid of the king of the Vandals, and persuaded General to improve the fair opportunity of disguising his rapacious designs by the specious name of honour, justice, and compassion. Whatever abilities Maximus might have shown in a subordinate station, he was found incapable of administering an empire; and though he might easily have been informed of the naval preparations which were made on the opposite shores of Africa, he expected with sanguine delusion the approach of the enemy, without adopting any measures of defence, of negotiation, or of a timely retreat. When the Vandals disembarked at the mouth of the Tyber, the emperor was suddenly raised from his lethargy by the clamours of a trembling and harassed multitude. The only hope which presented itself to his astonished mind was that of a precipitate flight; and he exhorted the senators to imitate the example of his princes. But no sooner did Maximus appear in the streets, than he was assaulted by a shower of stones: a Roman, or a Burgundian, soldier, claimed the honour of the first wound; his mangled body was ignominiously cast into the Tyber; the Roman people recoiled in the punishment which they had inflicted on the author of public calamities; and the destinies of Eudoxia signalled their zeal in the service of their mistress.

On the third day after the tumult, General boldly advanced from the rear of Ostia to the gates of the defenceless city. Instead of a salutary Roman youth, there issued from the gates an unarmed and venerable procession of the bishop at the head of his clergy. The fearless spirit of Leo, his authority and eloquence, again mitigated the fierceness of a barbarian conqueror; the king of the Vandals promised to spare the resisting multitude, to protect the buildings from fire, and to exempt the captives from torture; and although such orders were neither seriously given, nor strictly obeyed, the mediation of Leo was glorious to himself, and in some degree beneficent to his country. But Rome and its inhabitants were delivered to the licentiousness of the Vandals and Moscæ, whose blind passions revenged the injuries of Carthage. The pillage lasted fourteen days and nights; and all that yet remained of public or private wealth, of sacred or profane treasure, was diligently transported to the vessels of General. Among the spoils, the splendid relics of two temples, or rather of two religions, exhibited a memorable example of the vices of humanity and divine things. Since the abolition of Paganism, the Capitol had been violated and abandoned; yet the statues of the gods and heroes were still respected, and the curious roof of gilt bronze was reserved for the rapacious hands of General. The holy instruments of the Jewish worship, the gold table, and the gold candlestick with seven branches, originally framed according to the particular instructions of God himself, and which were placed in the sanctuary of his temple, had been ostentatiously displayed to the Roman people in the triumph of Titus. They were afterwards deposited in the temple of Peace; and at the end of four hundred years, the spoils of Jerusalem were transferred from...
Rome to Carthage by a barbarian who derived his origin from the shores of the Baltic. These ancient monuments might attract the notice of curiosity, as well as of avarice. But the Christian churches, enriched and adorned by the prevailing superstition of the times, afforded more plentiful materials for sacrilege; and the pious liberality of pope Leo, who melted six silver vases, the gift of Constantine, such of an hundred pounds' weight, is an evidence of the damage which he attempted to repair. In the forty-five years, that had elapsed since the Gothic invasion, the pomp and luxury of Rome were in some measure restored; and it was difficult either to escape, or to satisfy, the avarice of a conqueror, who possessed leisure to collect, and ships to transport, the wealth of the capital. The Imperial ornaments of the palace, the magnificent furniture and wardrobe, the side-boards of massy plate, were accumulated with disorderly rapine: the gold and silver amounted to several thousand talents; yet even the brass and copper were laboriously removed. Eudoxia herself, who advanced to meet her friend and deliverer, soon bewailed the impiety of her own conduct. She was rudely stripped of her jewels; and the unfortunate empress, with her two daughters, the only surviving remains of the great Theodosius, was compelled, as a captive, to follow the haughty Vandal, who immediately hoisted sail, and returned with a prosperous navigation to the port of Carthage. Many thousands of Romans of both sexes, chosen for their useful or agreeable qualifications, reluctantly embarked on board the fleet of Genisia; and their distress was aggravated by the unfailing barbarians, who, in the division of the booty, separated the wives from their husbands, and the children from their parents. The charity of Dorotheus, bishop of Carthage, was their only consolation and support. He generously sold the gold and silver plate of the church to purchase the freedom of some, to alleviate the slavery of others; and to assist the wants, and infirmities of a captive multitude, whose health was impaired by the hardships which they had suffered in their passage from Italy to Africa. By his order, two spacious churches were converted into hospitals; the sick were distributed in convenient beds, and liberally supplied with food and medicines; and the aged prelate repeated his visits both in the day and night, with an assiduity that surpassed his strength, and a tender sympathy which enhanced the value of his services. Compare this scene with the field of Cannae; and judge between Hannibal and the successor of St. Cyprian. 11

11. The death of Attila and Valentinian had relaxed the ties which held the barbarians of Gaul in peace and subordination. The sun-coast was infested by the Saxons; the Alamanni and the Franks advanced from the Rhine to the Seine; and the ambition of the Goths seemed to meditate more extensive and permanent conquests. The emperor Maximus relieved himself, by a judicious choice, from the weight of these distant cares; he silenced the solicitations of his friends, listened to the voice of fame, and promoted a stranger to the general command of the forces in Gaul. Avitus, 12 the stranger whose merit was so nobly rewarded, descended from a wealthy and honourable family in the diocese of Aquitaine. The convulsions of the times urged him to embrace, with the same ardour, the civil and military professions; and the indomitable youth blended the studies of literature and jurisprudence with the exercise of arms and hunting. Thirty years of his life were laudably spent in the public service; he alternately displayed his talents in war and negotiation; and the soldier of Attila, after executing the most important endurances, was raised to the station of pretorian prefect of Gaul. Either the merit of Avitus excited envy, or his moderation was deemed of no use, since he calmly retired to an estate, which he possessed in the neighbourhood of Clermont. A copious stream, issuing from the mountain, and falling hand in hand in many a loud and foaming cascade, discharged its waters into a lake about two miles in length, and the villa was pleasantly seated on the margin of the lake. The baths, the porticoes, the summer and winter apartments, were adapted to the purposes of luxury and use; and the adjacent country afforded the various prospects of woods, pastures, and meadows. 13 In this retreat, where Avitus amused his leisure with books, rural sports, the practice of husbandry, and the society of his friends, 14 he received the Imperial diploma, which constituted him master-general of the cavalry and infantry of Gaul. He assumed the military command; the barbarians suspended their fury; and whatever means he might employ, whatever concessions he might be forced to make, the people enjoyed the benefits of actual tranquillity. But the fate of Gaul depended on the Visigoths; and the Roman general, less attentive to his dignity than to the public interest, did not disdain to visit Toulouse in the character of an ambassador. He was received with courteous hospitality by Theodoric, the king of the Goths; but while Avitus laid the foundations of a solid alliance with that powerful nation, he was astonished by the insurrection of the Franks, from the passage pronounced by Kilianus, in the Eleusinian mystagies, and from the circumstances, if a letter which he is supposed to have written on the occasion, a Paper large, but numerous and ambiguous, he might have been deceived, and his conduct would have been very prejudicial to the most devoted of the people. 15

11. TheInstanceState. De Pauroy. Venand. I. 1. c. 5. p. 11. Deut. Romiani. Dorotheus governed the church of Carthage during the time that he had not been properly vested, his conduct would have been very prejudicial to the most devoted of the people.

12. The Institutes B. I. c. 5. has described the various life of the Franks, which was not in the time of Attila, to whom, in the diocese of Aquitaine, he was sent with the most honourable charge, and the title of the king, who was intrusted with the administration of the Most Christian Empire of Gaul. The history of the Franks, in the time of the Vandals, is narrated with indecent stories, and the Franks were defeated at Marmidene, a town in the diocese of Aquitaine. The Franks were sometimes called Vandalae, barbarians, and dignitaries; the history of the Franks, in the time of the Vandals, is narrated with indecent stories, and the Franks were defeated at Marmidene, a town in the diocese of Aquitaine.

13. The Institutes B. I. c. 5. has described the various life of the Franks, which was not in the time of Attila, to whom, in the diocese of Aquitaine, he was sent with the most honourable charge, and the title of the king, who was intrusted with the administration of the Most Christian Empire of Gaul. The history of the Franks, in the time of the Vandals, is narrated with indecent stories, and the Franks were defeated at Marmidene, a town in the diocese of Aquitaine. The Franks were sometimes called Vandalae, barbarians, and dignitaries; the history of the Franks, in the time of the Vandals, is narrated with indecent stories, and the Franks were defeated at Marmidene, a town in the diocese of Aquitaine.
telligence, that the emperor Maximus was slain, and
that Rome had been pillaged by the Vandals. A vacant throne, which he might ascend
without guilt or danger, tempted his ambition; 11 and the Visigoths were easily persuaded
to support his claim by their irresistible suffrage. They loved the person of Avitus; they respected
his virtues; and they were not insensible to the advantage, as well
as honour, of giving an emperor to the West. The season was now approaching, in which the
annual assembly of the seven provinces was held at Arles; their deliberations might perhaps
have been influenced by the presence of Theodic-
r and his martial brothers; but their choice would naturally incline to the most illustrious
of their countrymen. Avitus, after a decent resistance, accepted the Imperial diadem from
the representatives of Gaul; and his election was ratified by the acclamations of the barba-
rians and provincials. The formal consent of Maximian, the emperor of the East, was solicited
and obtained; but the senate, Rome, and Italy, though humbled by their recent calamities,
submitted with a secret murmure to the pre-
sumption of the Gallic usurper.

Theodoric, to whom Avitus was
indebted for the purple, had acquired the
Gothic sceptre by the murder of his elder brother Turismund; and he justified this
atrocious deed by the design which his pre-
decessor had formed of violating his alliance
with the empire. 12 Such a crime might not be
incompatible with the virtues of a barbarian;
but the manners of Theodoric were gentle and
humane; and his patience may contemplate without
terror the original picture of a Gothic king, whom
Sidonius had intimately observed, in the hours of
peace and of social intercourse. In an epistle,
dated from the court of Toulouse, the orator
satisfies the curiosity of one of his friends, in
the following description: 13 By the majesty of his
appearance, Theodoric would command the
respect of those who are ignorant of his merit;
and although he is born a prince, his merit
would dignify a private station. He is of a
middle stature, his body appears rather plump
than fat, and in his well-proportioned limbs
agility is united with muscular strength. 14 If
you examine his countenance, you will dis-
tinguish a high forehead, large shaggy eye-
brows, an aquiline nose, thin lips, a regular set
of white teeth, and a fair complexion, that
blushes more frequently from modesty than
from anger. The ordinary distribution of his
time, as far as it is exposed to the public view,
may be concisely represented. Before day-
break, he repairs, with a small train, to his
domestic chapel, where the service is performed
by the Arian clergy; but those who presume
to interpret his secret sentiments, consider this
assiduous devotion as the effect of habit and
policy. The rest of the morning is employed
in the administration of his kingdom. His
chair is surrounded by some military officers
of decent aspect and behaviour; the noisy
crowd of his barbarian guards occupies the hall
of audience; but they are not permitted to
stand within the veils, or curtains, that conceal
the council-chamber from vulgar eyes. The
ambassadors of the nations are successively
introduced. Theodoric listens with attention,
answers them with discreet brevity, and either
announces or delays, according to the nature
of their business, his final resolution. About
eight (the second hour) he rises from his
throne, and visits, either his treasury, or his
stables. If he chooses to hunt, or at least to
exercise himself on horseback, his bow is car-
rried by a favourite youth; but when the game
is marked, he bends it with his own hand, and
seldom misses the object of his aim: as a king,
he dislikes to bear arms in such ignoble war-
fare; but as a soldier, he would blush to accept
any military service which he could perform
himself. On common days, his dinner is not
different from the repast of a private citizen;
but every Saturday, many honourable guests
are invited to the royal table, which, on these
occasions, is served with the elegance of Greece,
the plenty of Gaul, and the order and diligence
of Italy. 15 The gold or silver plate is less
remarkable for its weight, than for the brightness
and curious workmanship; the taste is
gratified without the help of foreign and costly
luxury; the size and number of the cups of
wine are regulated with a strict regard to the
laws of temperance; and the respectful silence
that prevails, is interrupted only by grave and
instructive conversation. After dinner, Theo-
doric sometimes indulges himself in a short
slumber; and as soon as he awakes, he calls
for the dices and tables, encourages his friends
to forget the royal majesty, and is delighted
when they freely express the passions, which
are excited by the incidents of play. At this
game, which he loves as the image of war, he
alternately displays his courage, his skill, his
patience, and his cheerful temper. If he loses,
he laughs: he is modest and silent, if he wins.
Yet, notwithstanding this seeming indifference,
his courtiers choose to solicit any favour in
the moments of victory; and I myself, in my
applications to the king, have derived some
benefit from my losses. 16 About the
ninth hour (three o'clock) the tide of business
again returns, and flows incessantly till after
sunset, when the signal of the royal supper

in the universal pillage. The unfortunate king of the Suevi had escaped to one of the ports of the ocean; but the obstinacy of the winds opposed his flight: he was delivered to his implacable rival; and Recharius, who neither desired nor expected mercy, received, with many constancy, the death which he would probably have inflicted. After this bloody sacrifice to policy or resentment, Theodoric carried his victorious arms as far as Merida, the principal town of Lusitania, without meeting any resistance, except from the miraculous powers of St. Eulalia; but he was stopped in the full career of success, and recalled from Spain, before he could provide for the security of his conquests.

In his retreat towards the Pyrenees, he revenged his disappointment on the country through which he passed; and, in the sack of Puebla and Astorga, he showed himself a faithless ally, as well as a cruel enemy. Whilst the king of the Visigoths sought and vanquished in the name of Aritus, the reign of Aritus had expired; and both the honour and the interest of Theodoric were deeply wounded by the disgrace of a friend, whom he had seated on the throne of the Western empire.

The pressing solicitation of the Aritan senate and people persuaded the emperor Aritus to fix his residence at Rome, and to accept the consularship for the ensuing year. On the first day of January, his non-inus, Sidonius Apollinaris, celebrated his praises in a panegyric of six hundred verses, but this composition, though it was rewarded with a brass statue, seems to contain a very moderate proportion either of genius or of truth. The poet, if we may degrade that sacred name, exaggerates the merit of a sovereign and a father; and his prophecy of a long and glorious reign was soon contradicted by the event. Aritus, at a time when the Imperial dignity was reduced to a pre-eminention of toil and danger, indulged himself in the pleasures of Italian luxury; age had not extinguished his amorous inclinations; and he is accused of insulting, with indelicacy and ungallant volubility, the empress whose wives he had seduced or violated. But the Romans were not inclined, either to excuse his faults, or to acknowledge his virtues. The several parts of the empire became every day more alienated from each other; and the stranger of Gaul was the object of popular hatred and contempt. The senate asserted their legitimate claim in the election of an emperor; and their authority, which had been originally derived from the old constitution, was again fortified by the actual weakness of a declining monarchy. Yet even such a monarch might have resisted the votes of an unremedial senate, if their discontent had not been supported, or perhaps inflamed, by the count Richer, one of the principal commanders at Rome.
of the barbarian troops, who formed the military defence of Italy. The daughter of Wallia, king of the Visigoths, was the mother of Ricimer; but he was descended on the father's side, from the nation of the Suevi: his pride, or patriotism, might be exasperated by the misfortunes of his countrymen: and his views, with reluctance, an emperor in whose elevation he had not been consulted. His faithful and important services against the common enemy rendered him still more formidable; and after destroying, on the coast of Corsica, a fleet of Vandals, which consisted of sixty galleys, Ricimer returned in triumph with the appellation of the Deliverer of Italy. He chose that moment to signify to Avitus, that his reign was at an end; and the feeble emperor, at a distance from his Gothic allies, was compelled, after a short and unsatisfying struggle, to abdicate the purple. By the Clemency, however, or the contempt, of Ricimer, he was permitted to descend from the throne, to the more desirable situation of bishop of Placentia; but the resentment of the senate was still unsatisfied; and their inexorable severity pronounced the sentence of his death. He fled towards the Alps, with the humble hope, of not arriving the Visigoths in his caress, but of securing his person and treasures, in the sanctuary of Julian, one of the titular saints of Auxerre. Disease, or the hand of the executioner, arrested him on the road; yet his remains were decently transported to Briaxis, or Nola, in his native province; and he reposed at the feet of his holy patron. Avitus left only one daughter, the wife of Solomon Apollinaris, who inherited the patrimony of his father-in-law; lamenting, at the same time, the disappointment of his public and private expectations. His resentment prompted him to join, or at least to countenance, the measures of a rebellious faction in Gaul; and the poet had contracted some guilt, which it was incumbent on him to expiate, by a new tribute of flattery to the successor of the emperor. 

Conscript Fathers! and the ordinance of the most valiant army, have made me your enemy.

22. Ricimer ([fl. Placentia, Arles] 359-356?) revives the political life of the Visigoths, his mother, the Visigoths, from the Suevian and the Visigothic invaders. His views were still unsatisfied; and his views, with reluctance, an emperor in whose elevation he had not been consulted. By the Clemency, however, or the contempt, of Ricimer, he was permitted to descend from the throne, to the more desirable situation of bishop of Placentia; but the resentment of the senate was still unsatisfied; and their inexorable severity pronounced the sentence of his death. He fled towards the Alps, with the humble hope, of not arriving the Visigoths in his caress, but of securing his person and treasures, in the sanctuary of Julian, one of the titular saints of Auxerre. Disease, or the hand of the executioner, arrested him on the road; yet his remains were decently transported to Briaxis, or Nola, in his native province; and he reposed at the feet of his holy patron. Avitus left only one daughter, the wife of Solomon Apollinaris, who inherited the patrimony of his father-in-law; lamenting, at the same time, the disappointment of his public and private expectations. His resentment prompted him to join, or at least to countenance, the measures of a rebellious faction in Gaul; and the poet had contracted some guilt, which it was incumbent on him to expiate, by a new tribute of flattery to the succeeding emperor. 

Conscript Fathers! and the ordinance of the most valiant army, have made me your enemy.

Servaius and his servile legions and princes.

Now, when the servile legions and princes.

Servaius and his servile legions and princes.
CHAPTER XXXVI.

OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

Tions and superindulgences. 41 With this view, he
granted an universal amnesty, a final and absolute
discharge of all arrears of tributes, of all
debts, which, under any pretense, the fiscal
officers might demand from the people. This
wise discretion of obsolete, vexatious, and
unprofitable claims, improved and purified the
sources of the public revenues; and the subject,
who could now look back without despair,
might live in hope and gratitude for him-
self and for his country. 11. In the assessment
and collection of taxes, Majorian restored the
ordinary jurisdiction of the provincial magis-
trates; and suppressed the extraordinary com-
misions which had been introduced, in the
name of the emperor himself, or of the proto-
rius prefects. The favourite servants, who
obtained such irregular powers, were insolent
in their behaviour, and arbitrary in their de-
mands; they affected to despise the subordinate
tribunals, and were discontented, if their fees
and profits did not twice exceed the sum
which they condescended to pay into the
 treasury. One instance of their extortion would
appear incredible, were it not authenticated
by the legislator himself. They exacted the
whole payment in gold: but they refused the
current coin of the empire, and would accept
only such ancient pieces as were stamped with
the names of Faustina or the Antonines.
The subject, who was unprovided with these curi-
ous medals, had recourse to the expedient of com-
posing with their rapacious demands; or, if
he succeeded in the research, his imposition was
doubled, according to the weight and value
of the money of former times, 42 III. 111. The mun-
cipal corporations (says the emperor), the
lesser senates (so antiquity has judiciously
called them), deserve to be considered as the heart
of the cities, and the sinews of the republic.
And yet so low are they now reduced, by the
injustice of magistrates, and the venality of
collectors, that many of their members, ren-
ouncing their dignity and their country, have
taken refuge in distant and obscure exile.' He urges, and even compels, their return to
their respective cities; but he removes the griev-
ance which had forced them to desert the exer-
cise of their municipal functions. They are
required, under the authority of the provincial
magistrates, to resume their office of levying
the tribute; but, instead of being made respon-
sible for the whole sum assessed on their dis-
trict, they are only required to produce a
regular account of the payments which they
have actually received, and of the defaults
who are still indebted to the public. IV. But

36 Imperium, see Sertorius. P. C. eiriconn emir rule, authority, or
constituted power. Imperium imperii. Imperium, the power of the state.
37 Imperium. A. D. 420-480. 38 The emperor. Theodosius the greater.
39 Theodosius the greater. Of the successor. Posthumous son ruled.
40 Good men think it natural: nobis, nobis, sola.
41 This language is evident and uncontradicted: we may observe
that the emperor used a certain number of words which in the
phraseology of the time were not yet in general use. 38 Other dictionaries,
whether Latin or Greek, would offer a favourable reading.
42 These several clauses illustrate: of the last,
Majorian must understand the system of Agrippa; another
the condition of the empire; a third the nature of the
Aeons. The last three of these may occupy the longitude names of
Atlass (250-285).
Majorian was not ignorant, that these corporate bodies were too much inclined to retaliate the injustice and oppression which they had suffered, and he therefore revived the useful office of the *defenders of città*. He exerts the people to elect, in a full and free assembly, some man of discretion and integrity, who would dare to assert their privileges, to represent their grievances, to protect the poor from the tyranny of the rich, and to inform the emperor of the abuses that were committed under the sanction of his name and authority.

The position of the *defenders of città* was unenviable. Their authority was almost absolute; yet they were exposed to the enmity of all, and to the necessity of deciding in the cases of the rich, and of being their advocate in the cases of the poor. They were, in fact, in a state of perpetual war, and were necessarily the objects of the animosity of both parties. The empire was divided into two classes, the rich and the poor; and the *defenders of città* were the only men who could decide between them.

The spectacle, who casts a mournful eye over the ruins of ancient Rome, is tempted to accuse the memory of the Goths and Vandals, for the mischief which they had neither leisure, nor power, nor perhaps inclination, to perpetrate. The tempest of war might strike some hostile terrors to the ground; but the destruction which undermined the foundations of those sumptuous fabrics, was prosecuted, slowly and silently, during a period of ten centuries; and the motives of interest, that afterwards operated without shame or control, were severely checked by the taste and spirit of the emperor Majorian. The decay of the city had gradually impaired the value of the public works. The Circus and theatres might still exist, but they seldom graced the desires of the people: the temples, which once adorned the midst of the Christians, were no longer inhabited either by gods or men; the diminished crowds of the Romans were lost in the immense space of their baths and porticoes; and the stately libraries and halls of justice became useless to an indolent generation, whose repose was seldom disturbed, either by study or business. The monuments of consul, or Imperial greatness were no longer revered, as the immortal glory of the capital: they were only esteemed as an inexhaustible mine of materials, cheaper, and more convenient, than the distant quarry. Specious petitions were continually addressed to the easy magistrates of Rome, which stated the want of stones or bricks for some necessary service: the fairest forms of architecture were readily defaced for the sake of some paltry, or pretended, repairs: and the degenerate Romans, who converted the soil to their own enjoyment, demolished, with sacrilegious hands, the labours of their ancestors. Majorian, who had often sighed over the desolation of the city, applied a severe remedy to the growing evil. He reserved to the prince and senate the sole cognizance of the extreme cases which might justify the destruction of an ancient edifice; imposed a fine of fifty pounds of gold (two thousand pounds sterling) on every magistrate who should presume to grant such illegal and scandalous licence; and threatened to chastise the criminal obloquy of their subordinate officers, by a severe whipping, and the amputation of their hands. In the last instance, the legislator

might seem to forget the proportion of guilt and punishment; but his zeal arose from a generous principle, and Majorian was anxious to protect the monuments of those ages, in which he would have desired and deserved to live. The emperor conceived, that it was his interest to increase the number of his subjects, that it was his duty to guard the purity of the marriage-bed; but the means which he employed to accomplish these salutary purposes, are of an ambiguous, and perhaps exceptionable, kind. The pious widows, who conspired their virginity to Christ, were restrained from taking the veil, till they had reached their fortieth year. Widows under that age were compelled to form a second alliance within the term of five years, by the forfeiture of half their wealth to their nearest relations, or to the state. Unusual marriages were condemned or annulled. The punishment of confiscation and exile was deemed so inadequate to the guilt of adultery, that, if the criminal returned to Italy, he might, by the express declaration of Majorian, be slain with impunity.

While the emperor Majorian suddenly laboured to restore the prosperity and virtue of the Rome of old, he ventured the arms of Generico, from his character and situation, their most formidable enemy. A fleet of Vandals and Moors landed at the mouth of the Livis, or Garigliano; but the Imperial troops surprised and attacked the disordered barbarians, who were encumbered with the spoils of Campania; they were chased with slaughter to their ships, and their leader, the king's brother-in-law, was found in the number of the slain. Such vigilance might announce the character of the new reign; but the strictest vigilance, and the most numerous forces, were insufficient to protect the long-extended coast of Italy from the depredations of a naval war. The public opinion had imposed a nobler and more arduous task on the genius of Majorian. Rome expected from him alone the restitution of Africa; and the design, which he formed, of attacking the Vandals in their new settlements, was the result of bold and judicious policy. If the intrepid emperor could have infused his own spirit into the youths of Italy; if he could have revived, in the Field of Mars, the holy exercises in which he had always surpassed his equals; he might have marched against Generico at the head of a Roman army. Such a reformation of national manners might be embraced by the rising generation; but it is the misfortune of those princes who laboursiously sustain a declining monarchy, that, to obtain some immediate advantage, or to avert some impending danger, they are forced to countenance, and even to multiply, the most pernicious abuses. Majorian, like the weakest of his predecessors, was reduced to the disgraceful expedient of substituting barbarian auxiliaries in the place of his
unwarlike subjects; and his superior abilities could only be displayed in the vigour and dexterity with which he wielded a dangerous instrument, so apt to recoil on the hand that used it. Besides the confederates, who were already engaged in the service of the empire, the fame of his liberality and valour attracted the nations of the Danube, the Borythines, and perhaps of the Tanais. Many thousands of the bravest subjects of Attila, the Hephale, the Ostrogoths, the Rugians, the Burgundians, the Suevi, the Alani, assembled in the plains of Liguria: and their formidable strength was balanced by their mutual animosity. They passed the Alps in a severe winter. The emperor led the way, on foot, and in complete armour; sounding, with his long staff, the depth of the ice, or snow, and encouraging the Scythisans, who complained of the extreme cold, by the cheerful assurance, that they should be satisfied with the heat of Africa. The citizens of Lyons had presumed to shut their gates: they soon implored, and experienced, the eleemosy of Majorian. He vanquished Theodoric in the field; and admitted to his friendship and alliance, a king whom he had found not unworthy of his arms. The beneficial, though precarious, reunion of the greatest part of Gaul and Spain, was the effect of persuasion, as well as of force; and the independent Bagaudae, who had escaped, or resisted, the oppression of former visigods, were disposed to confide in the virtues of Majorian. His camp was filled with barbarian allies; his throne was supported by the zeal of an affectionate people; but the emperor had foreseen, that it was impossible, without a maritime power, to achieve the conquest of Africa. In the first Punic war, the republic had exerted such incredible diligence, that, within sixty days after the first stroke of the axe had been given in the forest, a fleet of one hundred and sixty galleys proudly rode at anchor in the sea. Under circumstances much less favourable, Majorian equalled the spirit and perseverance of the ancient Romans. The woods of the Apennine were felled; the arsenals and manufactories of Ravenna and Misenum were restored; Italy and Gaul vied with each other in liberal contributions to the public service; and the imperial navy of three hundred large galleys, with an adequate proportion of transports and smaller vessels, was collected in the secure and capacious harbour of Carthage in Spain. The intrepid countenance of Majorian animates his troops with the confidence of victory; and if we might credit the historian Priscus, his courage sometimes hurried him beyond the bounds of prudence. Ambitious to explore, with his own eyes, the state of the Vandals, he ventured, after disguising the colour of his hair, to visit Carthage, in the character of his own ambassador; and Genesius was afterwards justified by the discovery, that he had entertained and dismissed the emperor of the Romans. Such an anecdote may be rejected as an improbable fiction; but it is a fiction which would not have been imagined, unless in the life of a hero. Without the help of a guide, the emperor, who was a Christian, and acquainted with the genius and designs of his adversary, practised his customary arts of fraud and delay; but he practised them without success. His applications for peace became each hour more submissive, and perhaps more sincere; but the inflexible Majorian had adopted the ancient maxim, that Rome could not be safe, as long as Carthage existed in a hostile state. The king of the Vandals distrusted the valour of his native subjects, who were enraged by the luxury of the South; he suspected the fidelity of the vanquished people, who abhorred him as an Arian tyrant; and the desperate measure, which he executed, of reducing Mauritania into a desert, could not defeat the operations of the Roman emperor, who was at liberty to land his troops on any part of the African coast. But Majorian was saved from trembling and inevitable ruin by the treachery of some powerful subjects; envious, or apprehensive, of their master's success. Guided by their secret intelligence, he surprised the unguarded fleet in the bay of Carthage: many of the ships were sunk, or taken, or burnt; and the preparations of three years were destroyed in a single day. After this event, the behaviour of the two antagonists showed them superior to their fortune. The Vandal, instead of being elated by this accidental victory, immediately renewed his solicitations for peace. The emperor of the West, who was capable of forming great designs, and of supporting heavy disbursements, consented to a treaty, or rather to a suspension of arms; in the full assurance that, before he could restore his navy, he should be supplied with provisions to justify a second war. Majorian returned to Italy, to prosecute his labours for the public happiness; and, as he was conscious of his own integrity, he might long remain ignorant of the dark conspiracy which threatened his throne and his life. The recent misfortunes of Carthage sullied the glory which had dazzled the eyes of the multitude: almost every description of civil and military officers were exiled.
perished against the Reformer, since they all derived some advantage from the abuses which he endeavoured to suppress; and the patrician Ricimer impelled the unremitted passions of the barbarians against a prince whom he esteemed and hated. The virtues of Majorian could not protect him from the imperious sedition, which broke out in the camp near Tortona, at the foot of the Alps. He was compelled to abdicate the Imperial purple: five days after his abdication, it was reported that he died of dysentery, and the humble tomb, which covered his remains, was consecrated by the respect and gratitude of succeeding generations. The private character of Majorian inspired love and respect. Malignous calumny and satire excited his indignation, and, in the hours which the emperor gave to the familiar society of his friends, he could indulgently tolerate his excesses, without degrading the majesty of his rank.

It was not perhaps without some regret, that Ricimer sacrificed his friend to the interest of his ambition; but he resolved, in a second choice, to avoid the impatient preference of superior virtue and merit. At his command, the obsequious senate of Rome bestowed the Imperial title on Libius Severus, who ascended the throne of the West without emerging from the obscurity of a private condition. History has scarcely deigned to notice his birth, his elevation, his character, or his death. Severus expired, as soon as his life became incommensurate to his position; and it would be useless to discriminate his nominal reign in the vacant interval of six years between the deaths of Majorian, and the elevation of Anthemius. During that period, the government was in the hands of Ricimer alone; and although the modest barbarian discarded the name of king, he accumulated treasures, formed a separate army, negotiated private alliances, and ruled Italy with the same independent and despotic authority, which was afterwards exercised by Odonacer and Theodoric. But his dominions were bounded by the Alps; and two Roman generals, Marcellinus and Aegidius, maintained their allegiance to the republic, by retracting, with disdain, the phantom which he styled an emperor. Marcellinus still adhered to the old religion; and the devout Pagans, who secretly disobeyed the laws of the church and state, applauded his profound skill in the science of divination. But he possessed the more valuable qualifications of learning, virtue, and courage; the study of the Latin literature had improved his taste; and his military talents had recommended him to the esteem and confidence of the great Aetius, in whom ruin he was involved. By a timely flight, Marcellinus escaped the rage of Valentinean, and boldly asserted his liberty amidst the confusions of the Western empire. His voluntary, or reluctant, submission to the authority of Majorian, was rewarded by the government of Sicily, and the command of an army, stationed in that island to oppose, or to attack, the Vandals; but his barbaric mercenaries, after the emperor's death, were tempted to revolt by the artful liberality of Ricimer. At the head of a band of faithful followers, the intrepid Marcellinus occupied the province of Dalmatia, assumed the title of patrician of the West, secured the love of his subjects by a mild and equable reign, built a fleet, which claimed the dominion of the Adriatic, and alternately alarmed the coasts of Italy and of Africa.

Aegidius, the master-general of Gaul, who equalled, or at least who imitated, the virtues of ancient Rome, proclaimed his immortal resentment against the assassins of his beloved master. A brave and numerous army was attached to his standard; and, though he was prevented by the arts of Ricimer, and the arms of the Visigoths, from marching to the gates of Rome, he maintained his independent sovereignty beyond the Alps, and rendered the name of Aegidius respectable both in peace and war. The Frankish, who had punished with exile the youthful follies of Childeric, elected the Roman general for their king; his vanity, rather than his ambition, was gratified by that singular honour; and when the nation, at the end of four years, repented of the injury which they had offered to the Merovingian family, he patiently acquiesced in the restoration of the lawful prince. The authority of Aegidius ended only with his life and the suspicions of poison and secret violence, which derived some incertitude from the character of Ricimer, were eagerly entertained by the passionate credulity of the Gauls.

The kingdom of Italy, a name to which the Western empire was grasped. Aegidius, gradually reduced, was afflicted, under the reign of Ricimer, by the incessant depredations of the Goths; and it was reserved for the sagacity of Anthemius to remove the remains of the desolation which had ensued. The kingdom of Italy, a name to which the Western empire was grasped.

36 Tillemont, who is always confounded by the virtues of Debussis, ascribe this alluring narrative of Marcellinus entirely to the imagination of his积水. This appears to be a result of the imagination produced by the narrative of the Emperor. The emperor, lib. xii. p. 203.

37 Frisoni, de Ricimer, lib. iii. c. vi. p. 328. In the history of the life of Marcellinus, it is decay to assume the Greek Cynics from the Latin Cynics of the time of Julius Cæterus. Marcellinus was born in the same city, of the same family, and the same religious sentiments as Onesimus the Cynic. Marcellinus was a Cynic, and Onesimus the Cynic is one of the most celebrated characters of antiquity. Marcellinus, like Onesimus, disdained the plentitudes of the world; and was content with a few books, and a few friends. Marcellinus was a Cynic, and Onesimus the Cynic is one of the most celebrated characters of antiquity. Marcellinus was a Cynic, and Onesimus the Cynic is one of the most celebrated characters of antiquity.

38 Cesare, a Cynic, on the death of Marcellinus, p. 451. Marcellinus, like Onesimus, disdained the plentitudes of the world; and was content with a few books, and a few friends. Marcellinus was a Cynic, and Onesimus the Cynic is one of the most celebrated characters of antiquity. Marcellinus was a Cynic, and Onesimus the Cynic is one of the most celebrated characters of antiquity.
dations of the Vandal pirates. In the spring of such year they equipped a formidable navy in the port of Carthage; and Genseric himself, though in a very advanced age, still commanded in person the most important expeditions. His designs were concealed with impenetrable secrecy, till the moment that he hoisted sail. When he was asked by his pilot, what course he should steer; "Leave the determination to the winds (replied the barbarian, with plans arranged); they will transport us to the guilty coast, whose inhabitants have provoked the divine justice;" but if Genseric himself, desirous to issue more precise orders, he judged the most wealthy to be the most criminal. The Vandals repeatedly visited the coasts of Spain, Liguria, Tuscanv, Campania, Lucania, Bruttium, Apulia, Calabria, Venetia, Dalmatia, Epirus, Greece, and Sicily: they were tempted to assail the island of Sardinia, so advantageously placed in the centre of the Mediterranean, and their arms spread desolation, or terror, from the columns of Hercules to the mouth of the Nile. As they were more ambitious of spoil than of glory, they seldom attacked any fortified cities, or engaged any regular troops in the open field. But the celerity of their motions enabled them, almost at the same time, to threaten and to attack the most distant objects, which attracted their desires; and as they always embarked a sufficient number of horses, they had no sooner landed, than they swept the dimmyed country with a body of light cavalry. Yet, notwithstanding the example of their king, the native Vandals and Alani incessantly declined this toilsome and perilous warfare; the hardy generation of the first conquerors was almost extinguished, and their sons, who were born in Africa, enjoyed the delicious baths and gardens which had been acquired by the valour of their fathers. Their place was readily supplied by a various multitude of Moors and Romans, of captives and outlaws; and those desperate wretches, who had already violated the laws of their country, were the most eager to promote the atrocious acts which disgrace the victories of Genseric. In the treatment of his unhappy prisoners, he sometimes committed his severity, and sometimes indulged his clemency; and the massacre of five hundred noble citizens of Zant or Zancritos, whose mangy bodies he cast into the Ionian Sea, was imputed, by the public indignation, to his latest prudence.

Such crimes could not be excused by any provocations; but the war, in which the king of the Vandals proscribed against the Roman empire, was justified by a spacious and reasonable motive. The widow of Valentinian, Eudoxia, whom he had led captive from Rome to Carthage, was the sole heiress of the Theodosian house; her elder daughter, Eudoxia, became the reluctant wife of Hunneric, his eldest son; and the stern father, assuring a legal claim, which could not easily be refuted or satisfied, demanded a just proportion of the Imperial patrimony. An adequate, or at least a valuable, compensation, was offered by the Eastern emperor, to purchase a necessary peace. Eudoxia and her younger daughter, Flacilia, were honourably restored, and the fury of the Vandals was confined to the limits of the Western empire. The Italians, distinute of a naval force, which alone was capable of protecting their coasts, invoked the aid of the more fortunate nations of the East; who had formerly acknowledged, in peace and war, the supremacy of Rome. But the perpetual division of the two empires had alienated their interest and their inclinations; and the faith of a recent treaty was alleged; and the Western Romans, instead of arms and ships, could only obtain the assistance of a cold and ineffectual mediation. The haughty Kleiner, who had long struggled with the difficulties of his situation, was at length induced to address the throne of Constantineople, in the humble language of a subject; and Italy submitted, on the price and security of the alliance, to receive a master from the choice of the emperor of the East. It is not the purpose of the present chapter, or even of the present volume, to continue the distinct series of the Byzantine history; but a concise view of the reign and character of the emperor Leo, may explain the last efforts that were attempted to save the falling empire of the West.

Since the death of the younger Theodosius, the domestic repose of the empire of Constantineople had never been interrupted by war or faction. Pulcheria had bestowed her hand, and the sceptre of the East, on the modest virtue of Marcus; he gracefully revered her august rank and virgin chaste; and, after her death, he gave his people the example of the religious worship, that was due to the memory of the Imperial saint. Attentive to the prosperity of his own dominions, Marcus seemed to hold, with inflexibility, the fortunes of Rome; and the obstinate refusal of a brave and active prince, to draw his sword against the Vandals, was ascribed, to a secret promise, which had formerly been exacted from him when he was a captive in the power of Genseric. The death of Marcus, after a reign of seven
years, would have exposed the East to the danger of a popular election; if the superior weight of a single family had not been able to incline the balance in favour of the candidate whose interest they supported. The patrician Aspar might have placed the diadem on his own head, if he would have subscribed the Nicene creed. During three generations, the armies of the East were exclusively commanded by his father, by himself, and by his son Asparius; his barbarian guards formed a military force that overawed the palace and the capital; and the liberal distribution of his immense treasures rendered Aspar as popular, as he was powerful. He recommended the obscure name of Leo of Thunes, a military tribune, and the principal steward of his household. His nomination was unanimously ratified by the senate; and the servant of Aspar received the imperial crown from the hands of the patriarch or bishop, who was permitted to express, by this unusual ceremony, the feelings of the Deity. This emperor, the first of the name of Leo, has been distinguished, by the title of the Great, from a succession of princes, who gradually rose to the throne. In the opinion of the Greeks, a very humble standard of heroic, or at least of royal, perfection. Yet the temperate firmness with which Leo resisted the oppression of his benefactor, showed that he was conscious of his duty and of his prerogative. Aspar was astonished to find that his influence could no longer appoint a prefect of Constantinople: he presumed to reproach his sovereign with a breach of promise, and insolently shaking his purple. "It is not proper (said he), that the man who is invested with this garment, should be guilty of lying. " Nor is it proper (replied Leo), that a prince should be compelled to resign his own judgment, and the public interest, to the will of a subject."

After this extraordinary scene, it was impossible that the reconciliation of the emperor and the patrician could be sincere; or, at least, that it could be solid and permanent. An army of Sassarians was secretly levied, and introduced into Constantinople; and while Leo undermined the authority, and prepared the disgrace, of the family of Aspar, his mild and cautious behaviour restrained them from any rash and desperate attempts, which might have been fatal to themselves, or their enemies. The measures of peace and war were affected by this internal revolution. As long as Aspar degraded the majesty of the throne, the secret correspondence of religious and political interests engaged him to favour the cause of Germanus. When Leo had delivered himself from that ignominious servitude, he listened to the complaints of the Italians; resolved to extirpate the tyranny of the Vandals; and declared his alliance with his colleague, Anthimus, whom he solemnly invested with the diadem and purple of the West.

The virtues of Anthimus have perhaps been magnified, since the Imperial descent, which he could only decline from the warper Procopius, has been ascribed to a line of emperors. But the merit of his immediate parents, their honours, and their riches, rendered Anthimus one of the most illustrious subjects of the East. His father, Procopius, obtained, after his Persian embassy, the rank of general and patrician; and the name of Anthimus was derived from his maternal grandfather, the celebrated prefect, who protected, with so much ability and success, the infant reign of Theodosius. The grandson of the prefect was raised above the condition of a private subject, by his marriage with Euphemia, the daughter of the emperor Marcian. This fortunate alliance, which might subordinate the necessity of martial conquests, the ambition of Anthimus to the successive dignities of count, of master-general, of consul, and of patrician; and his virtues or fortune claimed the honours of a victory, which was obtained on the banks of the Danube, over the Huns. Without indulging an extravagant ambition, the son-in-law of Marcian might hope to be his successor; but Anthimus supported the disappointment with courage and patience; and his subsequent elevation was universally approved by the public, who esteemed him worthy to reign, till he ascended the throne. The emperor of the West marched from Constantinople, attended by several counts of high distinction, and a body of guards almost equal to the strength and numbers of a regular army; he entered Rome in triumph, and the choice of Leo was confirmed by the senate, the people, and the barbarian confederates of Italy. The solemn inauguration of Anthimus was followed by the nuptials of his daughter and the patrician Ricimer; a fortunate event, which was considered as the firmest security of the union and happiness of the state. The wealth of two empires was ostentatiously displayed; and many senators completed their ruin, by an expensive effort to dignify their poverty. All serious business was suspended during this festival; the courts of justice were shut; the streets of Rome, the theatres, the places of public and private resort, resounded with hymnical songs and dances; and the royal bride, clothed in silken robes, with a crown on her head, was conducted to the palace of Ricimer, who had changed his military dress for the habit of a consular and a senator. On this memorable occasion, Sidonius, whose early ambition had been so fatally blasted, appeared as the orator of Avergona, among the provincial deputies who addressed the throne with congratulations to the prince and prince consort.
Fauna, and their train of satyrs, were such as the fancy of shepherds might create, sportive, potent, and insidious; whose power was limited, and whose malice was insidious. A goal was the offering the best adapted to their character and attributes; the flesh of the victim was roasted on willow spits; and theivious yamia, who crowded to the feast, ran naked about the fields, with leathery thongs in their hands, communicating, as it was supposed, the blessing of fecundity to the women whom they touched. The altar of Pan was erected, perhaps by Evander the Arcadian, in a dark recess in the side of the Palestine hill, watered by a perpetual fountain, and shaded by an hanging grove. A tradition, that, in the same place, Romulus and Remus were suckled by the wolf, rendered it still more sacred and venerable in the eyes of the Romans; and this sylvan spot was gradually surrounded by the study solitudes of the Forum. After the conquest of the Imperial city, the Christians still continued, in the month of February, the annual celebration of the Lupercalia, by which they secured a secret and mysterious influence on the genial powers of the animal and vegetable world. The bishops of Rome were zealous to abolish a profane custom, so repugnant to the spirit of Christianity; but their zeal was not supported by the authority of the civil magistrate; the investiture abused subsisted till the end of the fifth century; and Pope Gelasius, who purified the capital from the last stain of idolatry, opposed, by a formal apology, the murmurs of the senate and people.

In all his public declarations, the emperor Leo assumes the authority, and professes the affection, of a father, for his son Anthimus, with whom he had divided the administration of the universe. The situation, and perhaps the character, of Leo, dissuaded him from exposing his person to the toils and dangers of an African war. But the powers of the Eastern empire were strenuously exerted to deliver Italy and the Mediterranean from the Vandals; and Genseric, who had so long oppressed both the land and sea, was threatened from every side with a formidable invasion. The campaign was opened by a bold and successful enterprise of the prefect Heracleus. The troops of Egypt, Tiberius, and Libya, were embarked, under his.
command; and the Arabs, with a train of horses and camels, opened the roads of the desert. Heraclea lay near the coast of Tripoli, and subduing the cities of that province, and prepared, by a laborious march to Carthage, which had formerly executed, to join the Imperial army under the walls of Carthage. The intelligence of this loss excited from Generic was more insidious and less intellectual propositions of peace: but he was still more seriously alarmed by the reassembly of Marcellinus with the two empires. The independent patrician had been persuaded to acknowledge the legitimate title of Anthemius, whom he accompanied in his journey to Rome; the Dalmatian fleet was received into the harbours of Italy; the active valour of Marcellinus expelled the Vandals from the island of Sardinia; and the languid efforts of the West added some weight to the immense preparations of the Eastern Romans. The expense of the naval armament, which Leo sent against the Vandals, has been distinctly ascertained; and the curious and instructive account displays the wealth of the declining empire. The royal demesnes, or private patrimony of the prince, supplied seventeen thousand pounds of gold; forty-seven thousand pounds of gold, and seven hundred thousand of silver, were levied and paid into the treasury by the praetorian prefects. But the cities were reduced to extreme poverty; and the diligent calculation of fines and forfeitures, as a valuable object of the revenue, does not suggest the idea of a just, or merciful, administration. The whole expense, by whatsoever means it was defrayed, of the African campaign, amounted to the sum of one hundred and thirty thousand pounds of gold, about five millions two hundred thousand pounds sterling, at a time when the value of money appears, from the comparative price of corn, to have been somewhat higher than in the present age. The fleet that sailed from Constantinople to Carthage, consisted of eleven hundred and thirteen ships, and the number of soldiers and mariners exceeded one thousand thousand men. Basiliscus, the brother of the emperor, Verina, was intrusted with this important command. His sister, the wife of Leo, had exaggerated the merit of his former exploits against the Scythenus. But the discovery of his guilt, or incapacity, was reserved for the African war; and his friends could only save his military reputation, by asserting, that he had conspir ed with Aspar to spare Generic, and to betray the last hope of the Western empire.

Experience has shown, that the expediency of war is measured by the success of an invader most commonly depends on the vigour and celerity of his operations. The strength and sharpness of the first impression are blunted by delay; the health and spirit of the troops insensibly languish in a dis-

47. The exit of Carthage to generic from Tripoli would make the day of the Vandals. He passed the desert without a man to oppose him, besides the ordinary supplies, a great number of ships filled with provisions and stores, which were to supply the army, and nearly equalled in the art of making war the arms of the Vandals. The latter had been barrack ed in the citadel of Carthage, in the month of October, anno Saxica, p. 370. 48. Generic fell in the day of the Vandals. The Dict. de la bri. U. XV. p. 188. 49. The change was clearly visible in Ptolemy, 11-2, 11, 7. 50. Tiberius. 11. 2, 4. 51. See in the ecclesiastical writers the story of the Vandals. The years 455 and 456 are contained in the Egyptian annals, and the annals, and the post-

54. THE DECLINE AND FALL. 

55. Chapter XXXVI.

56. The authorship of the Decline and Fall is generally attributed to the anonymous author of the Historia. The work is ascribed to the Duke of Richelieu, in his Travels in Africa, p. 267. The author of this work was a person of the highest rank, and the work itself is entirely fictitious. The Decline and Fall is a work of fiction, and not a historical work. The author of this work is not known, and the work itself is entirely fictitious.
commended, he threw himself in his armour into the sea, disdainfully rejected the comfort and pity of Genoa, the son of Genseric, who pressed him to accept honourable quarter, and sunk under the waves; exclaiming, with his last breath, that he would never fall alive into the hands of those sanguinary dogs. Actuated by a far different spirit, Basiliscus, whose station was the most remote from danger, disgracefully fled in the beginning of the engagement, returned to Constantinople with the loss of more than half of his fleet and army, and shattered his guilty head in the sanctuary of St. Sophia, till his sister, by her tears and entreaties, could obtain his pardon from the indignant emperor. Heraclius effected his retreat through the desert; Macellinus retired to Sicily, where he was assassinated, perhaps at the instigation of Ricimer, by one of his own captains; and the king of the Vandals expressed his surprise and satisfaction, that the Romans themselves should remove from the world his most formidable antagonists. After the failure of this great expedition, Genseric again became the tyrant of the sea; the coasts of Italy, Greece, and Asia, were again exposed to his revenge and avarice; Tripoli and Sarthina returned to his obedience; he added Sicily to the number of his provinces; and, before he died, in the fulness of years and of glory, he beheld the final extinction of the empire of the West.

During his long and active reign, the African monarch had studiously cultivated the friendship of the barbarians of Europe, whose arms he might employ in a seasonable and effectual diversion against the two empires. After the death of Attila, he renewed his alliance with the Visigoths of Gaul; and the sons of the elder Theuderic, who successively reigned over that warlike nation, were easily persuaded, by the sense of interest, to forget the cruel affront which Genseric had inflicted on their sister. The death of the emperor Majorian delivered Theudic the Second from the restraint of fear, and perhaps of honour; he violated his recent treaty with the Romans; and the ample territory of Narbonne, which he firmly united to his dominions, became the immediate reward of his policy. The selfish policy of Ricimer encouraged him to invade the provinces which were in the possession of the Visigoths, his rival; but the active count, by the defence of Arles, and the victory of Orleans, saved Gaul, and checked, during his lifetime, the progress of the Visigoths. Their ambition was soon rekindled; and the design of extinguishing the Roman empire in Spain and Gaul was conceived, and almost completed, in the reign of Euric, who assassinated his brother Theuderic, and displayed, with a more savage temper, superior abilities both in peace and war. He passed the Pyrenees at the head of a numerous army, burned the cities of Saragossa and Pamplona, ravaged in battle the martial nobles of the Tarraconese province, carried his victorious arms into the heart of Lusitania, and permitted the Suevi to hold the kingdom of Galicia under the Gothic monarchy of Spain. The efforts of Euric were not less vigorous, or less successful, in Gaul; and throughout the country that extends from the Pyrenees to the Rhone and the Loire, Berry, and Auvergne, were the only cities, or dioceses, which refused to acknowledge him as their master. In the defence of Clermont, their principal town, the inhabitants of Auvergne sustained, with indefatigable resolution, the miseries of war, pestilence, and famine; and the Visigoths, relinquishing the fruitless siege, suspended the hopes of that important conquest. The youth of the province were animated by the heroism, and almost incredibility, of Excidius, the son of the emperor Avitus, who made a despotically, and with only eighteen horsemen, boldly attacked the Gothic army; and, after maintaining a flying skirmish, retired safe and victorious within the walls of Clermont. His charity was equal to his courage: in a time of extreme scarcity, four thousand poor were fed at his expense; and his private influence favored an army of Burgundians for the deliverance of Auvergne. From his virtues alone the faithful citizens of Gaul derived any hope of safety or freedom; and even such virtues were insufficient to avert the impending ruin of their country, since they were anxious to learn, from his authority and example, whether they should prefer the alternative of exile, or servitude. The public confidence was lost; the resources of the state were exhausted; and the Gauls had too much reason to believe, that Anthimus, who reigned in Italy, was incapable of protecting his distressed subjects beyond the Alps. The feeble emperor could only procure for their defence the service of twelve thousand British auxiliaries. Rothmanus, one of the independent kings, or chieftains, of the island, was persuaded to transport his troops to the continent of Gaul; he sailed up the Loire, and established his quarters in Berry, where the people complained of these oppressive allies; till they were destroyed, or dispersed, by the arms of the Visigoths.

One of the last acts of jurisdiction, which the Roman senate exercised.  

---

22. Euric was deeply interested in the fate of his conquests. See D. R.  
23. Ricimer's rule in Gaul.  
24. The Visigoths are hostile to Euric's rule.  
25. The Visigoths are again hostile to Euric's rule.  
26. Rothmanus is one of the last acts of jurisdiction, which the Roman senate exercised.
his real situation, Arravusus showed himself in the Capitol in the white robe of a candidate, accepted indiscriminate salutations and offers of service, examined the shops of the merchants, the silks and gems, sometimes with the indulgence of a spectator, and sometimes with the attention of a purveyor; and complained of the times, of the senate, of the prince, and of the delays of justice. His complaints were soon removed. An early day was fixed for his trial; and Arravusus appeared, with his accusers, before a numerous assembly of the Roman senate. The insinuant garb, which they affected, excited the compassion of the judges, who were scandalised by the gay and splendid dress of their adversary; and when the prefect Arravusus, with the first of the Gallic deputies, were directed to take their places on the senatorial benches, the same contrast of pride and modesty was observed in their behaviour. In this memorable judgment, which presented a lively image of the old republic, the Gauls exposed, with force and freedom, the grievances of the province; and as soon as the minds of the audience were sufficiently inflamed, they recited the final edict. The obstinacy of Arravusus was founded on the strange supposition, that a subject could not be convicted of treason unless he had actually conceived to assume the purple. As the paper was read, he was repeatedly, and with a loud voice, acknowledged it for his genuine composition; and his astonishment was equal to his disquiet, when the unanimous voice of the senate declared him guilty of a capital offence. By their decree, he was degraded from the rank of a prefect to the obscure condition of a pleading, and ignominiously dragged by servile hands to the public prison. After a fortnight's imprisonment, the senate was again convened to pronounce the sentence of his death; but while he expected, in the island of Asculapius, the expiration of the thirty days allowed by an ancient law to the slightest malefactors, his friends interposed, the emperor Antheius relented, and the prefect of Gaul obtained the milder punishment of exile and confiscation. The faults of Arravusus might deserve compassion; but the iniquity of Scrutatus accused the justice of the republic, till he was condemned, and exsanted, on the complaint of the people of Auvergne. That sagacious minister, the Catilina of his age and country, held a secret correspondence with the Visigoths, to betray the province which he oppressed; his industry was continually exercised in the discovery of new taxes and obsolete offenses, and his extravagant views would have inspired contempt, if they had not excited fear and abhorrence.

Such criminals were not beyond the reach of justice; but whatever might be the guilt of Hilarus, that powerful barbarian was able to command or to

---

32 See Sidonius, l. 1. Ep. 7. p. 15, 30, with Sacchini and 32. The letter was composed by the brother of Sulpicius, who was sent to the Gallic army by the Emperor. 33. When the Emperor heard of the supposed murder, he immediately ordered the execution of the accused. 34. The following edict was composed by the prefect Scrupatus, and should be regarded as a rare instance of the abuse of power.

35. Hilarus Eugius, a powerful barbarian, who had been

---

negotiate with the prince, whose alliance he had consecrated to accept. The peaceful and prosperous reign which Anthemius had promised to the West, was soon clouded by misfortune and discord. Ricimer, apprehensive, or impatient, of a superior, retired from Rome, and fixed his residence at Milan; an advantageous situation, either to invite, or to repel, the warlike tribes that were settled between the Alps and the Danube. Italy was gradually divided into two independent and hostile kingdoms; and the nobles of Liguria, who trembled at the near approach of a civil war, fell prostrate at the feet of the patrician, and conjured him to spare their unhappy country. "For my own part," replied Ricimer, in a tone of insolent moderation, "I am still inclined to embrace the friendship of the Galatian;" but who will undertake to appease his anger, or to mitigate the pride, which always rises in proportion to our submission?" They informed him, that Epiphanius, bishop of Pavia, united the wisdom of the serpent with the innocence of the dove; and appeared confident, that the eloquence of such an ambassador must prevail against the strongest opposition, either of interests or passions. Their recommendation was approved; and Epiphanius, assuming the benevolent office of mediation, proceeded without delay to Rome, where he was received with the honours due to his merit and reputation. The section of a bishop in favour of peace, may be really supposed: he argued, that, in all possible circumstances, the forgiveness of injuries must be an act of mercy, or magnanimity, or prudence; and he seriously advised the emperor to avoid a contest with a fierce barbarian, which might be fatal to himself, and must be ruinous to his dominions. Anthemius acknowledged the truth of his maxims; but he deeply felt, with grief and indignation, the behaviour of Ricimer; and his passion gave eloquence and energy to his discourse. "What favours," he warmly exclaimed, "have we refused to this ungrateful man? What provocations have we not endured? Regardless of the majesty of the purple, I gave my daughter to a Goth; I sacrificed my own blood to the safety of the republic. The liberality which ought to have secured the eternal attachment of Ricimer, has impoverished him against his benefactor. What wars has he not excited against the emperor? How often has he instigated, and assisted, the fury of hostile nations? Shall I now accept his perjurious friendship? Can I hope that he will respect the engagements of a treaty? who has already violated the duties of a son? But the anger of Anthemius evaporated in these passionate exclamations; he instantly yielded to the proposals of Epiphanius; and the bishop returned to his diocese with the satisfaction of restoring the peace of Italy by a reconciliation, of which the sincerity and continuance might be reasonably expected. The eloquence of the emperor was exerted from his weakness; and Ricimer suspended his ambitious designs, till he had secretly prepared the engines with which he resolved to subvert the throne of Anthemius. The mask of peace and moderation was then thrown aside. The army of Ricimer was fortified by a numerous reinforcement of Burgundians and Oriental Suevi: he exclaimed all allegiance to the Greek emperor, marched from Milan to the gates of Rome, and fixing his camp on the banks of the Anio, impatiently expected the arrival of Olybrius, his Imperial candidate.

The senator Olybrius, of the Aquitanian family, might extenuate himself the lawful heir of the Western empire. He had married Placidia, the younger daughter of Valentinian, after she was restored by Theodosius; who still retained her sister Eudoxia, as the wife, or rather as the captive, of his son. The king of the Vandals supported, by threats and solicitations, the fair pretensions of his Roman ally; and assigned, as one of the motives of the war, the refusal of the senate and people to acknowledge their lawful prince, and the unworthy preference which they had given to a stranger. The friendship of the public enemy might render Olybrius still more unpopular to the Italians; but when Ricimer meditated the ruin of the emperor Anthemius, he tempted, with the offer of a diadem, the candidate who could justify his rebellion by an illustrious name, and a royal alliance. The husband of Placidia, who, like most of his ancestors, had been invested with the consular dignity, might have continued to enjoy a secure and splendid fortune in the peaceful residence of Constantinople; nor does he appear to have been tormented by such a genius, as cannot be amused or occupied, unless by the administration of an empire. Yet Olybrius yielded to the importunities of his friends, perhaps of his wife; rashly plunged into the dangers and calamities of a civil war; and, with the secret counsels of the emperor Leo, accepted the Italian purple, which was bestowed, and resumed, as the capricious will of a barbarian. He landed without obstruction (for Genseric was master of the sea) either at Ravenna or the coast of Ostia, and immediately proceeded to the camp of Ricimer, where he was received as the sovereign of the Western world.
the Jusiciwm, which are separated by the Tyber from the rest of the city; and it may be conjectured, that an assembly of recalcitrant senators, in the choice of Olybrius, the forms of a legal election. But the body of the senate and people firmly adhered to the cause of Anthemius; and the more efficient support of a Gothic army enabled him to prolong his reign, and to exalt his own, by a resistance of three months, which produced the concomitant evils of famine and pestilence. At length, Theimer made a furious assault on the bridge of Hadrian, or St. Angelo; and the narrow pass was defended with equal valor by the Goths, till the death of Gisiler, their leader. The victorious troops, breaking down every barrier, rushed with irresistible violence into the heart of the city, and Rome (if we may use the language of a contemporary pope) was subdued by the civil fury of Anthemius and Heimer. The unfortunate Anthemius, trained from his concession, and humbly meekened by the command of his son-in-law, who thus added a third, or perhaps a fourth, successor to the number of his victims. The soldiers, who united the rage of factional citizens with the savage manners of barbarians, were indulged, without control, in the licence of rape and murder; the crowd of slaves and plebeians, who were unconcerned in the event, could only grieve by the indiscriminate pillage; and the face of the city exhibited the strange contrast of stern cruelty, and absolute lenience. Forty days after this calamitous event, the subject, not of glory, but of guilt, Italy was delivered, by a painful disease, from the tyrant Theimer, who bequeathed the command of his army to his nephew Gundobald, one of the princes of the Burgundians. In the same year, all the principal acts in this great revolution were removed from the stage; and the whole reign of Olybrius, whose death does not betray any symptoms of violence, is included within the term of seven months. He left one daughter, the offspring of his marriage with placidia; and the family of the great Thessalon, transplanted from Spain to Constantinople, was propagated in the female line as far as the eighth generation. Whilst the vacant throne of Italy was abandoned to lawless barbarians, the election of a new council was seriously agitated in the council of Leo. The emperor Verianus, disturbed by the Greatness of his own family, had married one of his nieces to Julian. Nepos, who succeeded his uncle Marcellinus in the sovereignty of Dalmatia, a more solid possession than the title which he was persuaded to accept, of emperor of the West. But the measures of the Byzantine court were so languid and irresolute, that many months elapsed after the death of Anthemius, and even of Olybrius, before their destined successor could show himself, with a respectable force, to his Italian subjects. During that interval, Glycerius, an obscure soldier, was invested with the purple by his putative grandchild; but the Burgundian prince was unable, or unwilling, to support his nomination by a civil war; the pursuits of domestic ambition recalled him beyond the Alps; and his client was permitted to exchange the Roman acclivity for the bishopric of Salona. After extinguishing such a competitor, the emperor Nepos was acknowledged by the senate, by the Italians, and by the provincials of Gaul; his moral virtues, and military talents, were locally celebrated; and those who derived any private benefit from his government, announced, in prophetic strains, the restoration of the public felicity. Their hopes, if such hopes had been entertained, were confounded within the term of a single year; and the treaty of peace, which ended Auvergne to the Visigoths, is the only event of his short and inglorious reign. The most faithful subjects of Gaul were sacrificed, by the Italian emperor, to the hope of domestic security; but his repose was soon invaded by a furious sedition of the barbarian confederates, who, under the command of Orestes, their general, were in full march from Rome to Ravenna. Nepos trembled at their approach; and, instead of placing a just confidence in the strength of Ravenna, he hastily escaped to his ships, and retired to his Dalmatian principality, on the opposite coast of the Adriatic. By this shameful abdication, he protruded his life about five years, in a very ambiguous state, between an emperor and an exile, till he was assassinated at Salona by the ungrateful Glycerius, who was translated, perhaps as the reward of his crime, to the archbishopric of Milan. The nations, who had asserted their independence after the death of Attila, were established, by the right of possession or conquest, in the boundless countries to the north of the Danube; or in the Roman provinces between the river and the

110 Of the Eastern empire, or, better, the which Rome was sti night waning, and the remains of the Jusiciwm of the Tyber. But, in the fifteenth century, the Vaucosons remain a great four times more in extent than the present, and were built by the emperor Theodosius. It was a temple, dedicated to Pan and Ceres, and the figures of the Liberal and of the Virtuous, who were a great favorite with the people. It had a large number of columns, and the Ionic order was used. In the time of Napoleon, the statues of the Julian and of the Constantine were detached from the ruins. The statue of Constantine was restored to its place, and that of Julian was removed to the Church of St. Peter's. The Julian statue was removed to the Grand-Place. The Julian statue was restored to its place in 1848, and that of Constantine was removed to the Church of St. Peter's. The Julian statue was restored to its place in 1848, and that of Constantine was removed to the Church of St. Peter's. The Julian statue was restored to its place in 1848, and that of Constantine was removed to the Church of St. Peter's. The Julian statue was restored to its place in 1848, and that of Constantine was removed to the Church of St. Peter's. The Julian statue was restored to its place in 1848, and that of Constantine was removed to the Church of St. Peter's.
Alps. But the bravest of their youth enlisted in the army of confederates, who formed the defence and the terror of Italy; and in this prominent multitude, the names of the Heruli, the Scyths, the Alani, the Tuiruli, and the Rugi, appear to have predominated. The example of these warriors was imitated by Orestes, the son of Tatullus, and the father of the last Roman emperor of the West. Orestes, who has been already mentioned in this history, had never deserted his country. His birth and fortunes rendered him one of the most illustrious subjects of Pannonia. When that province was ceded to the Hunns, he entered into the service of Attila, his lawful sovereign, obtained the office of his secretary, and was repeatedly sent ambassador to Constantinople, to represent the person, and signify the commands, of the imperious monarch. The death of that emperor restored him to his freedom; and Orestes might honourably refuse either to follow the sons of Attila into the Scythian desert, or to obey the Ostrogoths, who had usurped the dominion of Pannonia. He preferred the service of the Italian princes, the successors of Valentinian; and, as he possessed the qualifications of courage, industry, and experience, he advanced with rapid steps in the military profession, till he was elevated, by the favour of Nepos himself, to the dignities of patrician, and master-general of the troops. Those steps had been long accustomed to reverence the character and authority of Orestes, who affected their manners; conversed with them in their own language, and was intimately united with their national shades, by long habits of familiarity and friendship. At his solicitation they rose in arms against the obscure Greek, who presumed to claim their obedience; and when Orestes, from some secret motives, desired the purple, they consented, with the same facility, to acknowledge his son Augustus, as the emperor of the West. By the abdication of Nepos, Orestes had now attained the summit of his ambitious hopes; but he soon discovered, before the end of the first year, that the bases of prejudice and ingratitude, which a recent misfortune, would be restored against himself; and that the presumptuous sovereignty of Italy was only permitted to exist, whether he would be the slave or the victim, of his barbarian mercuries. The dangerous alliance of these strangers had oppressed and insulted the last remains of Roman freedom and dignity. At such recollections, their pay and privileges were indifferent; but their insolence increased in a still more extraordinary manner; they insisted on the fortunes of their brethren in Gaul, Spain, and Africa, whose victorious arms had acquired an independent and perpetual inheritance; and they insisted on their perpetual demand, that a third part of the loads of Italy should be immediately divided among them. Orestes, with an air of which, in another situation, might be entitled to our esteem, chose rather to be content with the share of an armed multitude; to describe the ruin of an innocent people. He rejected the ambitious demand; and his refusal was favourable to the ambition of Odoacer; a bold barbarian, who assured his fellow-soldiers, that, if they dared to associate under his command, they might soon extort the justice which had been denied to their dutiful petitions. From all the camps and garrisons of Italy, the confederates, actuated by the same resentment and the same hopes, impatiently looked to the standard of this popular leader; and the unfortunate patrician, overwhelmed by the torrent, hastily retreated to the strong city of Pavia, the episcopal seat of the holy epiphany. Pavia was immediately besieged; the fortifications were stormd, the town was pillaged; and although the bishop might labour, with much zeal and some success, to save the property of the church, and the chastity of female captives, the tumult could only be dispersed by the execution of Orestes. His brother Paul was slain in an action near Ravenna; and the helpless Augustus, who could no longer command the respect, was reduced to implore the clemency of Odoacer.

That successful barbarian was the son of Edecon; who, in some remarkable transactions, particularly described in a preceding chapter, had been the colleague of Orestes himself. The honour of an ambassador should be exempt from suspicion; and Edecon had listened to a conspiracy against the life of his sovereign. But this apparent guilt was explained by his merit or repentance: his rank was envious and complacent; he enjoyed the favour of Attila; and the troops under his command, who guarded in their turn the royal village, considered in the eyes of the Scyths, his immediate and hereditary subjects. In the revolt of the nations, they still adhered to the Hunns; and more than twelve years afterwards, the name of Edecon is honourably mentioned, in their mutual conflict with the Ostrogoths, which was terminated, after two bloody battles, by the defeat and dispersion of the Scyths. Their gallant leader, who did not survive this national calamity, left two sons. Othulf and Odoacer, to struggle with adversity, and to maintain as they might, by arms or service, the faithful followers of their exile. Othulf directed his steps towards Constantinople, where he suffered, by the accusation of a generous benefactor, the fate which he had acquired in arms. His brother Odoacer led a wandering life among the barbarians of Noricum, with a mind and a fortune visited to the most desperate adventures; and when he had fixed his choice, he pleasantly visited the cell of Sessius, the popular saint of the country, to solicit his approbation and blessing.

112 Our knowledge of these barbarians, who subsisted on the ruins of our ancestors, is derived from the different authors of the Christian world; Lactantius, St. Jerome, Cæsarius, and Isidore. The popular name was, the Scyths, Ostrogoths, and Heruli. The modern names are, the Scoti, the As, and the Heruls. See the discourses of Tacitus, Cæsarius, and the emperors. (Epith. 27.) He is called by his name, and by the name of his father, in the chronicles of the Scyths. (Dion. Cass. 48.) But we are not assured, that he was the person who, as a child, saved the losses of the emperor. (Dion. Cass. 53.) See the discourses of Tacitus, Cæsarius, Isidore, &c. 113 See Dionysius in Vit. Epiphanii. Benedict., lib. i. p. 466.
The brawnyess of the door would not admit the lofty stature of Odosceer; he was obliged to stoop; but in that humble attitude the saint could discern the symptoms of his future greatness; and addressing him in a prophetic tone, "Puram!" (said he) "your design; proceed to Italy; you will soon cast away this coarse garment of skins; and your wealth will be adequate to the liberality of your mind." The barbarian, whose daring spirit accepted and ratified the prediction, was admitted into the service of the Western empire, and soon obtained an honourable rank in the guards. His manners were gradually polished, his military skill was improved, and the confederates of Italy would not have elected him for their general, unless the exploits of Odosceer had established a high opinion of his courage and capacity. Their military acclamations salute him with the title of king; but he abstained, during his whole reign, from the use of the purple and diadems, but he should offend those princes, whose subjects, by their accidental mixture, had formed the victorious army, which time and policy might insensibly unite into a great nation.

Royalty was familiar to the barbaric nations, and the submissive people of Italy was prepared to obey, without a murmur, the authority which he should consecrate to exercises as the vicegerent of the emperor of the West. But Odosceer resolved to abolish that useless and expensive office, and such is the weight of antipeudorian prejudice, that it required some boldness and penetration to discover the extreme facility of the enterprise. The unfortunate Augustinus was made the instrument of his own disgrace; he signified his resignation to the senate, and that assembly, in their last act of obedience to a Roman prince, still affected the spirit of freedom and the forms of the constitution. An epistle was addressed, by their unanimous decree, to the emperor Zeno, the son-in-law and successor of Leo; who had lately been restored, after a short rebellion, to the Byzantine throne. They solemnly "declare the necessity, or even the wish, of continuing any longer the Imperial succession in Italy; since, in their opinion, the majesty of a sole monarch is sufficient to persuade and protect, at the same time, both the East and the West. In their own name, and in the name of the people, they consent that the seat of universal empire shall be transferred from Rome to Constantinople; and they hourly renounce the right of choosing their master, the only vestige that yet remained of the authority which had given laws to the world. The republic (they repeat that name without a blush) might safely confide in the civil and military virtues of Odosceer; and they humbly request, that the emperor would invest him with the title of Patriarch, and the administration of the church of Italy. The deputies of the senate were received at Constantinople with some marks of displeasure and indignation; and when they were admitted to the audience of Zeno, he sternly reproached them with their treatment of the two emperors, Anthemius and Nepos, whom the East had successively granted to the prayers of Italy. "The first," (continued he) "you have murdered; the second you have expelled; but the second is still alive, and whilst he lives he is your lawful sovereign." But the prudent Zeno soon deserted the hopeless cause of his abdicated colleague. His vanity was gratified by the title of sole emperor, and by the statues erected to his honour in the several quarters of Rome; he entertained a friendly, though ambiguous, correspondence with the patrician Odosceer; and he gratefully accepted the Imperial ensigns, the sacred ornaments of the throne and palace, which the barbarian was not unwilling to remove from the sight of the people.

In the space of twenty years since the death of Valentinian, nine emperors had successively disappeared; and the son of Orestes, a youth recommended only by his beauty, would be the least entitled to the notice of posterity, if his reign, which was marked by the extinction of the Roman empire in the West, did not leave a memorial in the history of mankind. The patrician Orestes had married the daughter of count Honestus of Petovio in Noricum; the name of Augustus, notwithstanding the jealousy of power, was known as Aquilias as a familiar surname; and the apppellations of the two great founders, of the city, of the monarchy, were thus strangely united in the lust of their successors. The son of Orestes assumed and disgraced the names of Urbanus Augustus; but the first was corrupted into Monyllus, by the Greeks, and the second has been changed by the Latins into the contemptible Augustinus. The life of this indolent youth was spared by the generous clemency of Odosceer; who dismissed him, with his whole family, from the Imperial palace, fixed his annual allowance at six thousand pieces of gold, and assigned the castle of Lucullus, in Campania, for the place of his exile or retirement. As soon as the Romans breathed from the toils of the Funic war, they were attracted by the banquets and the pleasures of}
Scylia were introduced into the provinces, as the servants, the allies, and at length the masters, of the Romans, whom they insulted or protected. The hatred of the people was suppressed by fear; they respected the spirit and splendour of the martial chiefs who were invested with the honours of the empire; and the fair of Rome had long depended on the sword of those formidable strangers. The stern Ricimer, who trampled on the ruins of Italy, had exercised the power, without assuming the title, of a king; and the patient Romans were insensibly prepared to acknowledge the royalty of Odoacer and his barbaric successors.

The king of Italy was not unworthy of the high station to which his valour and fortune had exalted him: his savage manners were polished by the habits of conversation: and he respected, though a conqueror and a barbarian, the institutions, and even the prejudices, of his subjects. After an interval of seven years, Odoacer restored the consulship of the West. For himself, he modestly, or proudly, declined an honour which was still accepted by the emperors of the East; but the curule chair was successively filled by eleven of the most illustrious senators; and the list is adorned by the respectable name of Basilius, whose virtues claimed the friendship and grateful applause of Sidonius, his client.

The laws of the emperors were strictly enforced; and the civil administration of Italy was still exercised by the senatorial præfects, and their subordinate officers. Odoacer devoted on the Roman magistrates the edifying and oppressive task of collecting the public revenue; but he reserved for himself the merit of reasonable and popular indulgence. Like the rest of the barbarians, he had been instructed in the Arian heresy; but he revered the monastic and episcopal characters; and the silence of the Catholics attests the toleration which they enjoyed. The peace of the city required the interposition of his proper Basilius in the choice of a Roman pontiff: the decree which restrained the clergy from alienating their lands, was ultimately designed for the benefit of the people, whose devotion would have been taxed to repair the dilapidations of the church. Italy was protected by the arms of its conqueror; and its frontiers were respected by the barbarians of Gaul and Germany, who had so long insulted the feeble race of Theodosian. Odoacer passed the Rubicon to chastise the usurpers of the emperor Nepos, and to acquire the maritime

province of Dalmatia. He passed the Alps, to rescue the remains of Noricum from Fava, or Felthina, king of the Burgundians, who held his residence beyond the Danube. The king was vanquished in battle, and led as a prisoner; a numerous colony of captives and subjects was transplanted into Italy; and Rome, after a long period of defeat and disgrace, might claim the triumph of her barbarian master.\footnote{377}

Note.—Notwithstanding the prudence of Italy, and success of Odovacer, his kingdom exhibited the sad prospect of misery and desolation. Since the age of Tiberius, the decay of agriculture had been felt in Italy; and it was a just subject of complaint, that the life of the Roman people depended on the accidents of the winds and waves.\footnote{378} In the division and the decline of the empire, the tributary harvests of Egypt and Africa were withered; the numbers of the inhabitants continually diminished with the means of subsistence; and the country was exhausted by the irretrievable losses of war, famine,\footnote{379} and pestilence. St. Ambrose has depicted the ruin of a populous district, which had been once adorned with the flourishing cities of Bologna, Modena, Regium, and Piacenza.\footnote{380} Pope Gelasius was a subject of Odovacer; and he affirms, with strong exaggeration, that in Asia, Africa, and the adjacent provinces, the human species was almost exterminated.\footnote{381} The pleasure of Rome, who were led by the hand of their master, perished or disappeared, as soon as his liberality was suspended; the decline of the arts reduced the industrious mechanic to idleness and want; and the senators, who might support with patience the ruin of their country, bewailed their private loss of wealth and luxury. One third of those ample estates, to which the ruin of Italy is originally imputed,\footnote{382} was extorted for the use of the conquerors. Injuries were aggravated by insults; and the sense of actual sufferings was embittered by the fear of more dreadful evils; and as new lands were allotted to new armies of barbarians, each senator was apprehensive lest the arbitrary successors should appropriate his favourite villa, or his most profitable farm. The least unfortunate were those who submitted without a murmur to the power which was impossible to resist. Since they desired to live, they owed some gratitude to the tyrant who had spared their lives; and since he was the absolute master of their fortunes, the portion which he left must be accepted as his leave and voluntary gift.\footnote{383} The distress of Italy was mitigated by the prudence and humanity of Odovacer, who had bound himself, as the price of his elevation, to satisfy the demands of a licentious and turbulent multitude. The kings of the barbarians were frequently resisted, depressed, or murdered, by their native subjects; and the various bands of Italian mercenaries, who associated under the standard of an elective general, claimed a large privilege of freedom and rapine. A monarchy destitute of national union, and hereditary right, hastened to its dissolution. After a reign of fourteen years, Odovacer was oppressed by the superior genius of Theodoric, king of the Ostrogoths,\footnote{384} who, alike excellent in the arts of war and of government, restored an age of peace and prosperity, and whose name still excites and deserves the attention of mankind.

\textbf{CHAP. XXXVII.}

\textbf{Origin, Progress, and Effects of the Monastic Life. — Conversion of the Barbarians to Christianity and Arminism. — Persecution of the Franks in Africa. — Extinction of Arminism among the Barbarians.}

The indissoluble connection of civil and ecclesiastical affairs has compelled, and encouraged, us to relate the progress, the persecutions, the establishment, the divisions, the final triumph, and the gradual corruption, of Christianity. I have purposely delayed the consideration of two religious events, interesting in the study of human nature, and important in the decline and fall of the Roman empire. I. The institution of the monastic life; and II. The conversion of the northern barbarians.

I. Prosperity and peace introduced the distinction of the vulgar and the ascetic Christians.\footnote{385} The loose and imperfect practice of religion satisfied the conscience of the multitude. The prince or magistrate, the soldier or mercantile, reconciled their fervent zeal, and implicit faith, with the exercise of their profession, the pursuit of their interest, and the indulgence of their passions: but the ascetics, who obeyed and abused the rigid precepts of the Gospel, were inspired by the savage enthusiasm, which represents man as a criminal, and God as a tyrant. They sincerely denounced the business, and the pleasures, of the age; adored the use of wine, of flesh, and of marriage; insulted their body, mortified their affections, and embraced a life of misery, as the price of eternal happiness. In the reign of Constantine, the ascetics fled from a profane

\footnote{386} The view of Odovacer are considerably modified by Paul the Deacon (Hist. Langob., lib. II. c. xcii. 193, 475, edit. Kiihne, etc.) and in the Ecclesiastical Chronicle of the Anonymous, (Annales Ecclesiastici, lib. li. cap. 11, 12) also (Annales Ecclesiastici, lib. liii. cap. 1, 2). The perusal of the latter work has enabled me to confirm a remarkable passage in the Annales Xantenses, (Annales Xantenses, cap. 7, ed. Furtwängler, etc.) which relates to the conquest of the Gottingen people of the Burgundians. The passage is: "Annales Xantenses, cap. 7, ed. Furtwängler, etc."

\footnote{387} The view of Odovacer is considerably modified by Paul the Deacon (Hist. Langob., lib. II. c. xcii. 193, 475, edit. Kiihne, etc.) and in the Ecclesiastical Chronicle of the Anonymous, (Annales Ecclesiastici, lib. li. cap. 11, 12) also (Annales Ecclesiastici, lib. liii. cap. 1, 2). The perusal of the latter work has enabled me to confirm a remarkable passage in the Annales Xantenses, (Annales Xantenses, cap. 7, ed. Furtwängler, etc.) which relates to the conquest of the Gottingen people of the Burgundians. The passage is: "Annales Xantenses, cap. 7, ed. Furtwängler, etc."
and degenerate world, to perpetual subtilty, or religious society. Like the first Christians of Jerusalem, they resigned the sea, or the property, of their temporal possessions; established regular communities of the same sea, and a similar disposition; and assumed the names of Hermit, Mound, and Anachoret, expressive of their lonely retreat in a natural or artificial desert. They soon acquired the respect of the world, which they desired, and the laudest applause was bestowed on this Divine Philanthropy, which surpassed, without the aid of science or means, the laborsious virtues of the Grecian schools. The monks might indeed contend with the Stoics, in the contempt of fortune, of pain, and of death; the Pythagorean silence and submission were revised in their servile discipline; and they disdained, as firmly as the Cynics themselves, all the forms and decencies of civil society. But the virtues of this Divine Philosophy inspired to imitate a purer and more perfect model. They trod in the footsteps of the prophets, who had retired to the desert; and they restored the devout and contemplative life, which had been instituted by the Essenians, in Palestine and Egypt. The philosophic eye of Antony had surveyed with astonishment a solitary people, who dwelt among the palms near the Dead Sea; who subsisted without money, who were propagated without women; and who derived from the disgust and repugnancy of mankind, a perpetual supply of voluntary associates.

Egypt, the fruitful parent of superstition, afforded the first example of the monastic life. Antony, an illustrious youth of the lower parts of Thebais, distributed his patrimony, deserted his family and native home, and executed his monastic penitence with original and inrepiable fanaticism. After a long and painful novitiate, among the tombs, and in a ruined tower, he boldly advanced into the desert three days' journey to the eastward of the Nile; discovered a lonely spot, which possessed the advantages of shade and water, and fixed his last residence on Mount Colcin, near the Red Sea; where an ancient monastery still preserves the name and memory of the saint. The curious devotion of the Christians pursued him to the desert; and when he was obliged to appear at Alexandria, in the face of mankind, he supported his fame with discretion and dignity. His enjoyed the friendship of Athanasius, whose doctrine he approved; and the Egyptian peasant respectfully declined a respectful invitation from the emperor Constantine. The venerable patriarch a. d. 327-332. (for Antony attained the age of one hundred and five years) beheld the numerous progeny which had been formed by his example and his lessons. The prolific colonies of monks multiplied with rapid increase on the sands of Libya, upon the rocks of Thebais, and in the cities of the Nile. To the south of Alexandria, the mountain, and adjacent desert, of Nitria, were peopled by five thousand ascetics; and the traveller may still investigate the ruins of fifty monasteries, which were planted in that barren soil by the disciples of Antony. In the Upper Thebais, the vacant island of Tanais, was occupied by Pachomius, and fourteen hundred of his brothers. That holy abbot successively founded nine monasteries of men, and one of women; and the festival of Easter sometimes collected fifty thousand religious persons, who followed his sanctified rule of discipline. The study and populous city of Cyrenae, the seat of Christian orthodoxy, had devoted the temples, the public edifices, and even the ruins, to pious and charitable uses; and the bishop, who might preach in twelve churches, computed ten thousand females and twenty thousand males of the monastic profession. The Egyptians, who gloriied in this marvelous revolution, were disposed to hope, and to believe, that the number of the monks was equal to the remainder of the people; and posterity might repeat the saying, which had formerly been applied to the sacred animals of the same country, That, in Egypt, it was less difficult to find a god than a man.

Athanasius introduced into Rome the knowledge that Antony could find and write in the desert, his holy books and traditions, and that he was under a vow to write it at the command of God. The emperor Constantine (4. 511.) acknowledged this. His son, who was bishop of Alexandria, and then bishop of Rome, was converted; and the emperor Constantine wrote the narrative of Antony's life in about seven books. 4. A contemporary report of the courtesy being, as well as Egyptian. 5. Pachomius' rules (Alexandria, I. 358, in Vener. Muratori, v. 510. 352.) are more regular than Anthony's; for the former was more settled in his discipline, and more obedient to the sacred and apostolic laws. 6. As Anthony is an example of monastic simplicity, so Pachomius the founder of a regular monastic order. 7. The Egyptians and hermits, in order to escape the discipline of the world, retired into the desert, and, as they were not under the dominion of any ecclesiastical laws, were less subject to the incursions of heresy and corruption. 8. Pachomius, the founder of a more solid and regular order, was under a vow to write it at the command of God. The emperor Constantine (4. 511.) acknowledged this. His son, who was bishop of Alexandria, and then bishop of Rome, was converted; and the emperor Constantine wrote the narrative of Antony's life in about seven books.
The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire

Chapter XXXVII

The decline and fall of the monastic life; and a school of this new philosophy was opened by the disciples of Antony, who accompanied their piety to the holy threshold of the Sinai. The strange and savage appearance of these Egyptians excited, at first, horror and contempt, and, at length, applause and emulation. The ascetics, and monks especially the mutrons, transformed their palaces and villas into religious houses; and the narrow institution of St. Basil was eclipsed by the frugal monasteries, which were seated on the ruins of ancient temples, and in the midst of the Roman forum. Inflamed by the example of Antony, a Syrian youth, whose name was Hilarius, lived his dusty abode on a sandy beach, between the sea and a mountain, about seven miles from Gaza. The austerity practised in which he persisted forty-eight years, diffused a similar enthusiasm; and the holy man was followed by a train of two or three thousand anachoretes, whenever he visited the innumerable monasteries of Palestine. The fame of Basil is immortal in the monastic history of the East. With a mind, that had tested the learning and eloquence of Athens; with an ambition, scarcely to be satisfied by the archbishopric of Caesarea, Basil retired to a savage solitude in Pontus; and desired, for a while, to give laws to the spiritual colonies which he profusely scattered along the coast of the Black Sea. In the West, Martin of Tours, a soldier, an hermit, a bishop, and a saint, established the monasteries of Gaul; two thousand of his disciples followed him to the grave; and his eloquent historian challenges the deserts of Thessaly, to produce, in a more favourable climate, a champion of equal virtue. The progress of the monks was not less rapid, or universal, than that of Christianity itself. Every province, and, at last, every city of the empire, was filled with their increasing multitudes; and the bleak and barren isles, from Latvia to Lipari, that arise out of the Tuscan Sea, were chosen by the anachoretes, for the place of their voluntary exile. An easy and perpetual intercourse by sea and land connected the provinces of the Roman world; and the life of Hilarius displays the facility with which an indigent hermit of Palestine might traverse Egypt, embark for Sicily, escape to Epirus, and finally settle in the island of Cyprus. The Latin Christians embraced the religious institutions of Rome. The pilgrims, who visited Jerusalem, eagerly copied, in the most distant climates of the earth, the faithful model of the monastic life. The disciples of Antony spread themselves beyond the tropic, over the Christian empire of Ethiopia. The monastery of Banchor, in Flinthshire, which contained about two thousand brethren, dispersed a numerous colony among the barbarians of Ireland; and one of the Hyperborei, which was planted by the Irish monks, diffused over the northern regions a doubtful ray of science and superstition. These unhappy exiles from social life were impelled by the dark and implacable genius of superstition. Their mutual resolution was supported by the example of millions, of either sex, of every age, and of every rank; and such proselytes, who entered the gates of a monastery, was persuaded, that he trod the steep and thorny path of eternal happiness. But the operation of these religious motives was variously determined by the temper and situation of mankind. Reason might subdue, or passion might suspend, their influence; but they acted most forcibly on the infant minds of children and females; they were strengthened by secret remorse, or accidental unhappiness; and they might derive some aid from the temporal considerations of vanity or interest. It was naturally supposed, that the pious and humble monks, who had renounced the world, to accomplish the work of their salvation, were the best qualified for the spiritual government of the Christians. The reluctant hermit was torn from his cell, and satiated, amidst the declamations of the people, on the episcopal throne: the monasteries of Egypt, of Gaul, and of the East, supplied a regular succession of saints and bishops; and ambition soon discovered the secret road which led to the possession of wealth and honours. The popular monks, whose reputation was connected with the fame and success of the order, assiduously laboured to multiply the number of their fellow-captives. They inculcated themselves into noble and opulent families; and the specious arts of flattery and seduction were employed to secure those proselytes, who might bestow wealth or dignity on the monastic profession. The indigent

13. The monasteries of the monastic life in Rome and Italy, 20
15. Hilarius, an hermit, a bishop, and a saint, established the monasteries of Gaul; two thousand of his disciples followed him to the grave; and his eloquent historian challenges the deserts of Thessaly, to produce, in a more favourable climate, a champion of equal virtue. The progress of the monks was not less rapid, or universal, than that of Christianity itself. Every province, and, at last, every city of the empire, was filled with their increasing multitudes; and the bleak and barren isles, from Latvia to Lipari, that rise out of the Tuscan Sea, were chosen by the anachoretes, for the place of their voluntary exile. An easy and perpetual intercourse by sea and land connected the provinces of the Roman world; and the life of Hilarius displays the facility with which an indigent hermit of Palestine might traverse Egypt, embark for Sicily, escape to Epirus, and finally settle in the island of Cyprus. The Latin Christians embraced the religious institutions of Rome. The pilgrims, who visited Jerusalem, eagerly copied, in the most distant climates of the earth, the faithful model of the monastic life. The disciples of Antony spread themselves beyond the tropic, over the Christian empire of Ethiopia. The monastery of Banchor, in Flinthshire, which contained about two thousand brethren, dispersed a numerous colony among the barbarians of Ireland; and one of the Hyperborei, which was planted by the Irish monks, diffused over the northern regions a doubtful ray of science and superstition. These unhappy exiles from social life were impelled by the dark and implacable genius of superstition. Their mutual resolution was supported by the example of millions, of either sex, of every age, and of every rank; and such proselytes, who entered the gates of a monastery, was persuaded, that he trod the steep and thorny path of eternal happiness. But the operation of these religious motives was variously determined by the temper and situation of mankind. Reason might subdue, or passion might suspend, their influence; but they acted most forcibly on the infant minds of children and females; they were strengthened by secret remorse, or accidental unhappiness; and they might derive some aid from the temporal considerations of vanity or interest. It was naturally supposed, that the pious and humble monks, who had renounced the world, to accomplish the work of their salvation, were the best qualified for the spiritual government of the Christians. The reluctant hermit was torn from his cell, and satiated, amidst the declamations of the people, on the episcopal throne: the monasteries of Egypt, of Gaul, and of the East, supplied a regular succession of saints and bishops; and ambition soon discovered the secret road which led to the possession of wealth and honours. The popular monks, whose reputation was connected with the fame and success of the order, assiduously laboured to multiply the number of their fellow-captives. They inculcated themselves into noble and opulent families; and the specious arts of flattery and seduction were employed to secure those proselytes, who might bestow wealth or dignity on the monastic profession. The indigent

16. The Abyssinian monks suffered very strictly the penalties
father beheld the loss, perhaps of an only son; 37 the credulous maid was betrayed by vanity to violate the laws of nature; and the nation aspired to imaginary perfection, by renouncing the virtues of domestic life. Paula yielded to the persuasive eloquence of Jerome; 38 and the profane title of mother-ina-law of God, 39 tempted that illustrious widow to consecrate the virginity of her daughter Eustochium. By the advice, and in the company, of her spiritual guide, Paula abandoned Rome and her infant son; retired to the holy village of Bethlehem; founded an hospital and four monasteries; and acquired, by her aims and penance, an eminent and conspicuous station in the Catholic church. Such rare and illustrious penitents were celebrated as the glory and example of their age; but the monasteries were filled by a crowd of obscure and abject plebeians, 40 who gained in the cloister much more than they had sacrificed in the world. Peasants, slaves, and mechanics, might escape from poverty and contempt, to a safe and honourable profession; whose apparent hardships are mitigated by custom, by popular applause, and by the secret relaxation of discipline. 41 The subjects of Rome, whose persons and fortunes were made responsible for unequal and exorbitant tributes, retired from the oppressions of the Imperial government; and the paucissirious youth preferred the penance of a monastic to the dangers of a military life. The subordinated provinces of every rank, who began before of the Bishops, found shelter and subsistence; whole legions were enlisted in these religious sanatoriums; and the same causes, which relieved the distress of individuals, impaired the strength and fortitude of the empire. 42

Of the monks. 43 The monastic profession of the ancients was an act of voluntary devotion. The inconstant fanatic was threatened with the eternal vengeance of the God whom he desecrated; but the doors of the monastery were still open for repentance. Those monks, whose conscience was fortified by reason of passion, were at liberty to resume the character of men and citizens; and even the spouse of Christ might accept the legal embrace of an earthly lover. 44 The examples of scandal, and the progress of superstition, suggested the propriety of more flexible restraints. After a sufficient trial, the fidelity of the novice was secured by a solemn and perpetual vow; and his irreconcilable engagement was ratified: by the laws of the church and state. A guilty fugitive was pursued, arrested, and restored to his perpetual prison; and the interposition of the magistrate oppressed the freedom and merit, which had alleviated, in some degree, the object slavery of the monastic discipline. 45 The actions of a monk, his words, and even his thoughts, were determined by an inflexible rule; 46 or a conscientious superior: the slightest offences were corrected by disgrace or confinement, extraordinary fasts or bloody flagellation; and disobedience, murmuring, ordelay, were ranked in the catalogue of the most heinous sins. 47 A blind submission to the commands of the abbot, however absurd, or even criminal, they might seem, was the ruling principle, the first virtue, of the Egyptian monks; and their patience was frequently exercised by the most extravagant trials. They were directed to remove an enormous rock; assiduously to water a barren staff, that was planted in the ground, till, at the end of three years, it should vegetate and blossom like a tree; to walk into a fiery furnace; or to cast their infant into a deep pond: and several saints, or madmen, have been immortalized in monastic story, by their thoughtless, and fearless, obedience. 48 The freedom of the mind, the source of every generous and rational sentiment, was destroyed by the bonds of credulity and submission; and the monk, contracting the vices of a slave, devoutly followed the faith and passions of his ecclesiastical tyrant. The peace of the Eastern church was invaded by a swarm of fanatics, incapable of fear, or reason, or humanity; and the Imperial troops acknowledged, without shame, that they were much less apprehensive of an encounter with the fierce barbarians. 49

Superstition has often formed and consecrated the fantastic garments of the monks; 50 but their apparent singularity

37 De Adult. cap. I. p. 162: Liberatus assumes the conduct and sufferings of Eustochium, who is thought to have been the first who followed Paula into the cloister. 38 See the anecdote of his conversion, in the Life of Jerome. 39 De Adult. cap. I. p. 162: Liberatus states the conversion of Paula, and the grave of Jerome at Bethlehem. 40 See also the passages from the Life of Jerome, Liber. II. c. 12. 41 The dialogue shows the real state of the monasteries. 42 See the dialogue, and see the letter of St. Augustine to St. Paula, on the subject of Paula's daughter, Eustochium. 43 On the monasteries of the ancients, see the various works of Scaliger, M. Arcis, and Vossius. 44 See the anecdote of the monk. 45 See the references in the preceding notes. 46 See the anecdote of the monk. 47 See the anecdote of the monk. 48 See the anecdote of the monk. 49 See the anecdote of the monk. 50 See the anecdote of the monk.

38 De Adult. cap. I. p. 162: Liberatus assumes the conduct and sufferings of Eustochium, who is thought to have been the first who followed Paula into the cloister. 38 See the anecdote of his conversion, in the Life of Jerome. 39 De Adult. cap. I. p. 162: Liberatus states the conversion of Paula, and the grave of Jerome at Bethlehem. 40 See also the passages from the Life of Jerome, Liber. II. c. 12. 41 The dialogue shows the real state of the monasteries. 42 See the dialogue, and see the letter of St. Augustine to St. Paula, on the subject of Paula's daughter, Eustochium. 43 On the monasteries of the ancients, see the various works of Scaliger, M. Arcis, and Vossius. 44 See the anecdote of the monk. 45 See the anecdote of the monk. 46 See the anecdote of the monk. 47 See the anecdote of the monk. 48 See the anecdote of the monk. 49 See the anecdote of the monk. 50 See the anecdote of the monk.
sonance proceeds from their uniform attachment to a simple and primitive model, which the revolutions of fashion have made ridiculous in the eyes of mankind. The father of the Benevolences expressly disclaims all idea of choice or merit; and soberly exhorts his disciples to adopt the costume and convenient dress of the countries which they may inhabit. The monastic habits of the ancients varied with the climate, and their mode of life; and they assumed, with the same indifference, the sleepskin of the Egyptian peasants, or the cloak of the Greek philosophers. They allowed themselves the use of linen in Egypt, where it was cheap and domestic manufacture; but in the West, they rejected such an expensive article of foreign luxury. It was the practice of the monks either to cut or shave their hair; they wrapped their heads in a cowl, to escape the sight of profane objects; their legs and feet were naked, except in the extreme cold of winter; and their slow and feasible steps were supported by a long staff. The aspect of a genuine ascendant was horrid and disgusting: every sensation that is offensive to man was thought acceptable to God; and the augury rule of Tahanem condemned: the solitary custom of bathin the limbs in water, and of anointing them with oil. The austere monks slept on the ground, on a hard mat, or a rough blanket; and the same bundle of palm-leaves served them as a seat in the day, and a pillow in the night. Their original cells were low narrow huts, built of the lightest materials; which formed, by the regular distribution of the streets, a large and populous village, enclosing, within the common wall, a church, an hospital, perhaps a library, some necessary offices, a garden, and a fountain or reservoir of fresh water. Thirty or forty brethren composed a family of separate discipline and diet; and the great monasteries of Egypt consisted of thirty or forty families.

Thei day.

Pleasure and guilt are synonymous terms in the language of the monks; and they had discovered, by experience, that rigid fasts and abstemious diet are the most effectual preservatives against the impure desires of the flesh. The rules of abstinence, which they imposed, or practiced, were not uniform or perpetual; the cheerful festival of the Pentecost was balanced by the extraordinary mortification of Lent; the fervour of monastic was incessantly relaxed; and the censorious apposite of the Gealcs could not imitate the patient and temperate virtue of the Egyptian.44 The disciples of Antony and Pachomius were satisfied with their daily pittance, of twelve ounces of bread, or rather biscuit,45 which they divided into two frugal repasts, of the afternoon, and of the evening. It was esteemed a merit, and almost a duty, to abstain from the boiled vegetables, which were provided for the refectory; but the extraordinary bounty of the abbot sometimes indulged them with the luxury of cheese, fruit, salad, and the small dried fish of the Nile.46 A more ample latitude of sea and river fish was gradually allowed or assumed; but the use of flesh was long confined to the sick or travellers; and when it gradually prevailed in the less rigid monasteries of Egypt, a singular distinction was introduced; as if birds, whether wild or domestic, had been less prone than the greater animals of the field. Water was the purest and innocent beverage of the primitive monks; and the founder of the Benevolences regrets the daily use of half a pint of wine, which had been started from him by the intemperance of the age.47 So an allowance might be easily supplied by the vineyards of Italy; and his victorious disciples, who passed the Alps, the Rhine, and the Baltic, required, in the place of wine, an adequate compensation of strong beer or cider.

The candidate who aspired to the Thei main virtue of evangelical poverty, was joyed, at his first entrance into a regular community, the idea; and even the name, of all separate or exclusive possession.48 The brethren were supported by their manual labour; and the duty of labour was unanimously recommended as a penance, as an exercise, and as the most plausible means of securing their daily subsistence.49 The garden, the fields, which the industry of the monks had often rescued from the forest or the morass, were diligently cultivated by their hands. They performed, without reluctance, the menial offices of slaves and domestics; and the several trades that were necessary to provide their habits, their utensils, and their lodging, were exercised within the precincts of the great monasteries. The monastic studies have tended, for the most part, to darken, rather than to dispel, the cloud of superstition. Yet the curiosity or zeal of some

44. There is no reason to have a panel and a half. A typical amount of
45. Even every day.
46. Numa of Plancus, p. 105; or Mr. Plancus.
47. The monthly revenue of the houses, of its inmates only, had amounted to 10,000 drachms, library of Serafe (No. 13, in the Old Books), p. 511.
48. The whole family, or any part of it, is always present, in all magazines, and language purposes. 49. Paphos.
50. In the name to which Caches ouz. 1,41,12, p. 1, was named.
51. The right to drink was often changed, to reduce the public one.
52. The ancient Greeks or Romans, and the modern Egyptians, werevd, in the East, in the West, in all regions, 
60. Theop. p. 114.
63. Theop. p. 114.
64. Theop. p. 114.
learned solitaries has cultivated the ecclesiastical, and even the profane, sciences; and posterity must gratefully acknowledge, that the monuments of Greek and Roman literature have been preserved and multiplied by their indefatigable pens. But the more humble industry of the monks, especially in Egypt, was contended with the silent, sedentary, occupation, of making wooden sandals, or of twisting the leaves of the palm-tree into mats and baskets. The superfluous stock, which was not commended in domestic use, supplied, by trade, the wants of the community the boats of Tiberius, and the other monasteries of Thubal, descended the Nile as far as Alexandria; and, in a Christian market, the scarcity of the workmen might enhance the intrinsic value of the work.

But the necessity of manual labour was immensely superseded.

The novice was tempted to bestow his fortune on the saints, in whose society he was resolved to spend the remainder of his life; and the generous indulgence of the laws permitted him to receive, for their use, any future accessions of legacy or inheritance. Melania contributed her plate, three hundred pounds weight of silver, and Paula contracted an immense debt, for the relief of their favourite monks; who kindly imparted the merits of their prayers and presence to a rich and liberal sinner. Time continually increased, and accidents could seldom diminish, the estates of the popular monasteries, which spread over the adjacent country and villages; and, in the first century of their institution, the influence of Zenonius has maliciously observed, that, for the benefit of the poor, the Christian monks had reduced a great part of mankind to a state of beggary. As long as they maintained their original fervour, they approved themselves, however, the faithful and benevolent stewards of the charity which was intrusted to their care. But their discipline was corrupted by prosperity; they gradually assumed the pride of wealth, and at last indulged the luxury of expense. Their public luxury might be excused by the magnificence of religious worship, and the decent motive of erecting durable habitations for an immortal society. But every age of the church has accused the licentiousness of the degenerate monks, who no longer remembered the object of their institution, subverted the vain and sensual pleasures of the world, which they had renounced, and scandalously abused the riches which had been acquired by the austere virtues of their forerunners. Their natural descent, from such painful and dangerous virtues, to the common vices of humanity, will not, perhaps, excite much grief or indignation in the mind of a philosopher.

The lives of the primitive monks were consumed in penance and solitude; undisturbed by the various occupations which fill the time, and exercise the faculties, of reasonable, active, and social beings. Whenever they were permitted to step beyond the precincts of the monastery, two jealous companions were the mutual guards and spies of each other's actions; and after their return, they were condemned to forget, or, at least, to suppress, whatever they had seen or heard in the world. Strangers, who professed the orthodox faith, were hospitably entertained in a separate apartment; but their dangerous conversation was restricted to some chosen elders of approved discretion and fidelity. Except in their presence, the monastic slave might not receive the visits of his friends or kindred; and it was deemed highly mortifying, if he afflicted a tender sister, or an aged parent, by the obstinate refusal of a nod or a look. The monks themselves passed their lives, without the attachment of dependants, among a crowd, which had been formed by accident, and was detached, in the same prison, by force, or prejudice. Recluse families have few ideas or sentiments to communicate; a special licence of the abbot regulated the time and duration of their familiar visits; and, at their silent meals, they were enveloped in their cloaks, inaccessible, and almost invisible, to each other. Study is the resource of solitude; but education had not prepared and qualified for any liberal studies the mechanics and peasants, who filled the monastic communities. They might work; but the vanity of spiritual perfection was tempted to disdain the exercise of manual labour; and the industry must be faint and laudable, which is not excited by the sense of personal interest.

According to their faith and zeal, they might employ the day, which was divided into three equal parts, in study, prayer, and labour. After the monastic mass, they passed in their cells, either in vocal, or mental prayer; they assembled in the evening, and they were awakened in the night, for the public worship of the monastery. The precise moment was determined by the stars, which are seldom clouded in the serene sky of Egypt; and a rustic horn, or trumpet, the signal of devotion, twice interrupted the last silence of the desert.
Even sleep, the last refuge of the unhappy, was rigorously measured: the vacant hours of the monk heavily rolled along, without business or pleasure; and, before the close of each day, he had repeatedly accused the tedious progress of the sun.

In this comfortless state, superstition still pursued and tormented her wretched votaries. The repose which they had sought in the cloisters was disturbed by a tarry repentance, profane doubts, and guilty desires; and, while they considered such natural impulses as unpardonable sin, they perpetually trembled on the edge of a flaming and bottomless abyss.

From the painful struggles of disease and despair, these unhappy victims were sometimes relieved by madness or death; and, in the sixth century, an hospital was founded at Jerusalem for a small portion of the austere penitents, who were deprived of their senses.

Their visions, before they attained this extremity and acknowledged term of frenzy, have afforded ample materials of supernatural history. It was their firm persuasion, that the air, which they breathed, was peopled with invisible enemies; with innumerable demons, who watched every occasion, and assumed every form, to terrify, and above all to tempt, their unguarded virtue.

The imagination, and even the senses, were deceived by the illusions of dismembered fanaticism; and the hermit, whose midnight prayer was oppressed by involuntary slumber, might easily confound the phantoms of horror or delight, which had occupied his sleeping and his waking dreams.

The monks were divided into two classes: the Cenobites, who lived under a common, and regular, discipline; and the Anachorets, who indulged their unsocial, independent, fanaticism. The most devout, or the most ambitious, of the spiritual brethren, renounced the convent, as they had renounced the world. The ferventmonasteries of Egypt, Palestine, and Syria, were surrounded by a Laurea, a distant circle of solitary cells; and the extravagant penance of the Hermits was stimulated by applause and emulation.

They sunk under the painful weight of crosses and chains; and their sanctified limbs were confined by collars, bracelets, gauntlets, and greaves, of mummy and rigid iron. All superfluous incumbrance of dress they contemptuously cast away; and some savage saints of both sexes have been admired, whose naked bodies were only covered by their long braid. They aspired to reduce themselves to the rude and miserable state in which the human brute is scarcely distinguished above his kindred animals: and a numerous sect of Anachorets derived their name from their humble practice of grazing in the fields of Mesopotamia with the common herd.

They often tasted the life of some wild beast whom they affected to resemble; they buried themselves in some gloomy cavern, which art or nature had scooped out of the rock; and the marl quarry of the fields was still described as the meanest of their penance. The most perfect Hermits are supposed to have passed many days without food, many nights without sleeping, and many years without speaking; and glorious was the scene (I abuse that name) who contrived any cell, or seat, of a peculiar construction, which might expose him, in the most inconvenienct posture, to the inclemency of the seasons.

Among these heroes of the monastic life, the name and genius of Simeon Stylites have been immortalized by the singular invention of an aerial penance. At the age of thirteen, the young Syrian deserted the profession of a shepherd, and threw himself into an austere monastery. After a long and painful noviciate, in which Simeon was repeatedly saved from pious suicide, he established his residence on a mountain, about thirty or forty miles to the east of Antioch. Within the space of a man's, or circle of stones, to which he had attached himself by a ponderous chain, he ascended a column, which was successively raised from the height of nine, to that of sixty, feet from the ground. In this last, and lofty, station, the Syrian Anachoret resisted the heat of thirty summers, and the cold of as many winters. Habit and exercise instructed him to maintain his dangerous situation without fear or giddiness, and successively to assume the different postures of devotion. He sometimes prayed in an erect attitude, with his outstretched arms in the figure of a cross; but his most familiar practice was that of bending his meager skeleton from the forehead to the feet; and a curious spectator, after numbering twelve hundred and forty-four repetitions, at length desisted from the endless account.

The progress of an ulcer in his thigh might shorten, but it could not disturb, this celestial life; and...
the patient Hermit expired, without descending from his column. A prince, who should capriciously inflict such tortures, would be deemed a tyrant; but it would surpass the power of a tyrant, to impose a long and miserable existence on the reluctant victims of his cruelty. This voluntary martyrdom must have gradually destroyed the sensibility both of the mind and body; nor can it be presumed that the fanatics, who torment themselves, are susceptible of any lively affection for the rest of mankind. A cruel unsparing temper has distinguished the monks of every age and country; their stern indifference, which is seldom mollified by personal friendship, is inflamed by religious hatred; and their merciless zeal has strenuously administered the holy office of the Inquisition.

The monastic saints, who excite only the contempt and pity of a philosopher, were respected, and almost adored, by the prince and people. Successive crowds of pilgrims from Gaul and India saluted the divine pillar of Simeon; the tribe of Saramas disputed in arms the honour of his benefaction; the queens of Arabia and Persia gratefully confessed his supernatural virtue; and the angelic Hermit was consulted by the young Theocletus, in the most important concerns of the church and state. His remains were transported from the mountain of Tenealess, by a solemn procession of the patriarch, the master-general of the East, six bishops, twenty-two counts or tribunes, and six thousand soldiers; and Antioch revered his bones, as her glorious ornament and impregnable defence. The fame of the apostles and martyrs was gradually eclipsed by those recent and popular Anachoretas; the Christian world fell prostrate before their shrines; and the miracles ascribed to their relics exceeded, at least in number and duration, the spiritual exploits of their lives. But the golden legend of their lives was embellished by the artful credulity of their interested brethren; and a believing age was easily persuaded, that the highest caprice of an Egyptian or a Syrian monk, had been sufficient to interrupt the eternal laws of the universe. The favourites of Heaven were accustomed to cure intractable diseases with a touch, a word, or a distant message; and to expel the most obstinate demons from the souls, or bodies, which they possessed. They familiarly ascended, or imperiously commanded, the lions and serpents of the desert; infused vegetation into a supperless trunk; suspended iron on the surface of the water; passed the Nile on the back of a crocodile, and refreshed themselves in a fiery furnace. These extravagant tales, which display the fiction, without the genius, have seriously affected the reason, the faith, and the morals, of the Christians.

Their credulity debased and vitiated the faculties of the mind; they curtailed the evidence of history; and superstition gradually extinguished the lustre light of philosophy and science. Every mode of religious worship which had been practised by the saints, every mysterious doctrine which they believed, was fortified by the sanction of divine revelation, and all the meaner virtues were oppressed by the servile and pusillanimous reign of the imbecile. If it be possible to measure the interval between the philosophic writings of Cicero and the sacred legend of Theodoret, between the character of Cato and that of Simeon, we may appreciate the memorable revolution which was accomplished in the Roman empire within a period of five hundred years.

II. The progress of Christianity has been marked by two glorious and decisive victories: over the learned and luxurious citizens of the Roman empires and over the warlike barbarians of Scythia and Germany, who subverted the empire, and embraced the religion, of the Romans. The Gods were the foremost of these savage prometheans; and the nation was indebted for its conversion to a countryman; or, at least, to a subject, worthy to be ranked among the inventors of useful arts, who has deserved the remembrance and gratitude of posterity. A great number of Roman provincials had been led away into captivity by the Gothic hordes, who ravaged Asia in the time of Gallienus; and of those captives, many were Christians, and several belonged to the ecclesiastical order. Those involuntary missionaries, dispersed as slaves in the villages of Dacia, successively laboured for the salvation of their masters. The seeds, which they planted, of the evangelical doctrine, were gradually propagated; and before the end of a century, the pious work was achieved by the labours of Ulphilas, whose ancestors had been transported beyond the Danube from a small town of Cappadocia.

Ulphilas, the bishop and apostle of the Goths, acquired their lore and reverence by his harmless life and indefatigable zeal; and they received, with implicit confidence, the doctrines of truth and virtue, which he preached and practised. He executed the arduous task of translating the Scriptures into their native tongue, a dialect of the German, or Teutonic, language; but he prudently suppressed the four books of Kings, as they might tend to irritate the fierce and sanguinary spirit of the barbarians. The rude, imperfect, idioms of soldiers and shepherds, so ill qualified to communicate any spiritual ideas, was improved and modulated by his genius; and Ulphilas, before he closed frame his version, was obliged to compose a new alphabet of twenty-four letters, four of which he invented, to express the peculiar sounds that were unknown to the Greek, and Latin, pronunciation.

But the prosperous state of the Gothic church was
soon afflicted by war and intestine discord, and the chiefstains were divided by religion as well as by interest. Fritigern, the friend of the Romans, became the proponent of Ulphilas; while the dying soul of Athanaric disclaimed the yoke of the empire, and of the Gospel. The faith of the new converts was tried by the persecution which he existed. A wagon, bearing aloft the shapeliness image of Thor, perhaps, or of Woden, was conducted in solemn procession through the streets of the camp; and the rebels, who refused to worship the god of their fathers, were immediately taken, with their tents and families. The character of Ulphilas recommended him to the esteem of the Eastern court, where he twice appeared as the minister of peace; he pleaded the cause of the distressed Goth, who implored the protection of Valens; and the name of Moses was applied to this spiritual guide, who conducted his people through the deep waters of the Danube, to the Land of Promise. The devout shepherds, who were attached to his person, and tractable to his voice, acquiesced in their settlement, at the foot of the Massilian mountains, in a country of woodlands and coves, which supported their flocks and herds, and enabled them to purchase the corn and wine of the more populous provinces. These harmless barbarians multiplied in obscure peace, and the profession of Christianity.

Their fiercest brethren, the formidable Visigoths, universally adopted the religion of the Romans, with whom they maintained a perpetual intercourse, of war, of friendship, or of conquest. In their long and victorious march from the Danube to the Atlantic Ocean, they converted their allies; they educated the rising generation; and the devotion which reigned in the camp of Alaric, or the court of Toulouse, might edify, or disgrace, the palaces of Rome and Constantinople. During the same period, Christianity was embraced by almost all the barbarians, who established their kingdoms on the ruins of the Western empire; the Burgundians in Gaul, the Saxon in Spain, the Vandals in Africa; the Ostrogoths in Pannonia, and the various bands of mercenaries, that raised Odencar to the throne of Italy. The Franks and the Saxons still perished in the errors of Paganism; but the Franks obtained the monarchy of Gaul by their submission to the example of Clovis; and the Saxons conquerors of Britain were reclaimed from their savage superstition by the missionaries of Rome. These barbarian proselytes displayed an ardent and successful zeal in the propagation of the faith. The Maugwaringian kings, and their successors, Chlarenque and the Otton, extended, by their laws and victories, the dominion of the cross. England produced the apostle of Germany; and the evangelical light was gradually diffused, from the neighbourhood of the Rhine, to the realms of the Elbe, the Vistula, and the Baltic.

The different motives which influenced the reason, or the passions, of the barbarian converts, cannot easily be ascertained. They were often capricious and accidental; a dream, an omens, the report of a miracle, the example of some priest, or hero, the charms of a believing wife, and, above all, the fortunate event of a prayer, or vow, which, in a moment of danger, they had addressed to the God of the Christians. The early prejudices of education were insensibly erased by the habits of frequent and familiar society; the moral precepts of the Gospel were protected by the extravagant virtues of the monks; and a spiritual theology was supported by the visible power of relics, and the pomp of religious worship. But the national and ingenious mode of persuasion, which a Saxon bishop, and allied to a popular saint, might sometimes be employed by the missionaries, who laboured for the conversion of infidels. "Admit," says the sanguine disputant, "whatever they are pleased to assert of the fabulous, and casual, genealogy of their gods and goddesses, who are propagated from each other. From this principle deduce their imperfect nature, and humans inferences, the assurance they were born, and the probability that they will die. At what time, by what means, from what cause, were the eldest of the gods or goddesses produced? Do they still continue, or have they ceased to propagate? If they have ceased, summon your antagonists to declare the reason of this strange alteration. If they still continue, the number of the gods must become infinite; and shall we not risk, by the indiscreet worship of so many impotent deities, to excite the resentment of his jealous superior? The stable heavens and earth, the whole system of the universe, which may be conceived by the mind, is it created or eternal? If created, how, or where, could the gods themselves exist before the creation? If eternal, how could they assume the empire of an independent and pre-existing world? Urge these arguments with temper and moderation; insinuate, at accessible intervals, the truth, and beauty of the Christian revelation; and endeavour to make the unbelievers ashamed, without making them angry." This metaphysical reasoning, too refined, perhaps for the barbarians of Germany, was fortified by the greater weight of authority and popular consent.

The advantages of temporal prosperity had deserted the Pagan cause, and passed over to the service of Christianity. The Romans themselves, the most powerful and enlightened nation of the globe, had renounced their ancient superstition;
and, if the ruin of their empire seemed to assure the efficacy of the new faith, the disgrace was already retrieved by the conversion of the victorious Goths. The valiant and fortunate barbarians, who subdued the provinces of the West, successively received, and reflected, the same edifying example. Before the age of Charlemagne, the Christian nations of Europe might exult in the exclusive possession of the temperate climates, of the fertile lands, which produced corn, wine, and oil; while the savage idolaters, and their helpless idols, were confined to the extremities of the earth, the dark and frozen regions of the North. 39

The progress of Christianity, which opened the gates of heaven to the barbarians, introduced an important change in their moral and political condition. They received, at the same time, the use of letters, so essential to a religion whose doctrines are contained in a sacred book; and while they studied the divine text, their minds were insensibly enlarged by the distant view of history, of nature, of the arts, and of society. The version of the Scriptures into their native tongue, which had facilitated their conversion, must excite, among their clergy, some curiosity to read the original text, to understand the sacred liturgy of the church, and to examine, in the writings of the fathers, the chain of ecclesiastical tradition. These spiritual gifts were preserved in the Greek and Latin languages, which concealed the inestimable monuments of ancient learning. The immortal productions of Virgil, Cicero, and Livy, which were accessible to the Christian barbarians, maintained a silent intercourse between the reign of Augustus, and the times of Clovis and Charlemagne. The elevation of mankind was encouraged by the remembrance of a more perfect state; and the fame of science was secretly kept alive, to warm and enlighten the mature age of the Western world. In the most corrupt state of Christianity, the barbarians might learn justice from the law, and mercy from the Gospel; and if the knowledge of their duty was insufficient to guide their actions, or to regulate their passions, they were sometimes restrained by conscience, and frequently punished by remorse. But the direct authority of religion was less effectual, than the holy commission which united them with their Christian brethren in spiritual friendship. The influence of these sentiments contributed to secure their fidelity in the service, or the alliance, of the Romans, to alleviate the horrors of war, to moderate the insolence of conquest, and to preserve, in the dominions of the empire, a permanent respect for the name and institutions of Rome. In the days of Paganism, the priests of Gaul and Germany reigned over the people, and controlled the jurisdiction of the magistrates;

39 The word of Charlemagne added weight to the opinion; but when Bishop Sturm was his Kaiser (A.D. 768.), the Mahommedan who shaved his beard, and drank wine, was not considered a Christian.

39 The opinions of Ulphilas and theishops in Britain and Armoric, were the same; and we may add, that the Goths were converted, except the king, and those who remained in the desert.

39 The clergy, except that of the Catharists, were filled with honor and privileges, and were not molested by the state.

39 The greater part of the clergy in Britain, or the same, and the kings in Armoric, was so much enervated, that the impositions of the state had removed the most illustrious. See Fabric, Hist. of Briton, vol. i. p. 147.

39 The priests of Gaul and Germany reigned over the people, and controlled the jurisdiction of the magistrates; and the zealous proselytes transferred no equal, or more ample, measure of devout obedience, to the pontiffs of the Christian faith. The sacred character of the bishops was supported by their temporal possession; they obtained an inassailable seat in the legislative assemblies of soldiers and freemen; and it was their interest, as well as their duty, to mollify, by peaceful counsels, the fierce spirit of the barbarians. The perpetual correspondence of the Latin clergy, the frequent pilgrimages to Rome and Jerusalem, and the growing authority of the popes, cemented the union of the Christian republic; and gradually produced the similar manners, and common jurisprudence, which have distinguished, from the rest of mankind, the independent, and even hostile, nations of modern Europe.

But the operation of these causes was checked and retarded by the unfortunate accidents, which infused a prejudice into the cup of Salvation. Whatever might be the early sentiments of Ulphilas, his connections with the church, and the church which were formed during the reign of Arianism. The apostles of the Goths subscribed the creed of Hippo; professed with freedom, and perhaps with sincerity, that the Son was not equal, or consubstantial to the Father; 39 communicated these errors to the clergy and people; and infected the barbaric world with a heresy, 40 which the great Theodosius proscribed and extinguished among the Romans. The temper and understanding of the new proselytes were not adapted to metaphysical subtleties; but they strenuously maintained, what they had piously received, as the pure and genuine doctrine of Christianity. The advantage of preaching and expounding the Scriptures in the Teutonic language, promoted the apostolic labours of Ulphilas and his successors; and they ordained a competent number of bishops and presbyters for the instruction of the kindred tribes. The Ostrogoths, the Burgundians, the Suevi, and the Vandals, who had listened to the eloquence of the Latin clergy, 40 preferred the more intelligible lessons of their domestic teachers; and Arianism was adopted as the national faith of the warlike converts, who were seated on the ruins of the Western empire. This irreconcilable difference of religion was a perpetual source of jealousy and hatred; and the reproach of Bussiaen was merited by the more odious epithet of Herviti. The heroes of the North, who had submitted, with some reluctance, to believe that all their ancestors were in hell, 40 were astonished and exasperated to learn, that they themselves had only changed the mode of their eternal condemnation. Instead of the smooth applause, which Christian kings are accustomed to expect from their loyal subjects, the orthodox bishops and their clergy were
THE DECLINE AND FALL

Chap. XXXVII.

in a state of opposition to the Arian courts, and their insolent opposition frequently became criminal, and might sometimes be dangerous. The pulpit, that safe and sacred organ of sedition, resounded with the names of Piarach and Holoferon; the public discontent was inflamed by the hope or promise of a glorious deliverance; and the audacious priests were tempted to promote the accomplishment of their own predictions. Notwithstanding this opposition, the Catholics of Gaul, Spain, and Italy, enjoyed, under the reign of the Arians, the free, and peaceful, exercise of their religion. Their haughty masters respected the zeal of a numerous people, resolved to die at the foot of their altar; and the example of their devout constancy was admired and imitated by the barbarians themselves. The conquerors envied, however, the disgraceful reproof, or confession, of fear, by attributing their toilance to the liberal motives of reason and humanity: and while they affected the language, they imperceptibly imbibed the spirit, of genuine Christianity.

The peace of the church was sometimes interrupted. The Catholic bishops were insolent, the barbarians were impatient; and the partial acts of severity or injustice which had been recommended by the Arian clergy, were exaggerated by the orthodox writers. The guilt of persecution may be imputed to Ursic, king of the Visigoths; who suspended the exercise of ecclesiastical, or, at least, of episcopal, functions; and punished the popular bishops of Aquitania with imprisonment, exile, and confiscation. But the cruel and absurd enterprise of subduing the minds of a whole people, was undertaken by the Vandals alone. General himself, in his early youth, had pronounced the orthodox communion; and the apostate could neither grant, nor expect, a sincere forgiveness. He was exasperated to find, that the Arians, who had fled before him in the field, still presumed to dispute his will in synods and churches; and his ferocious mind was incapable of fear, or of compassion. His Catholic subjects were oppressed by intolerant laws and arbitrary punishments. The language of Generalis was furious and formidable; the knowledge of his intentions might justify the most unfavourable interpretation of his actions; and the Arians were reproached with the frequent executions, which stained the palace, and the dominions, of the tyrant. Arms and ambition were, however, the ruling passions of the monarch of the sea.

But Hunneric, his ignoble son, who seemed to inherit only his vice, terminated the Catholics with the same unrelenting fury which had been fatal to his brother, his nephews, and the friends and favourites of his father; and, even to the Arian patriarch, who was inhumanly burnt alive in the midst of Carthage. The religious war was preceded and prepared by an insidious truce; persecution was made the serious and important business of the Vandal court; and the loathsome disease, which hastened the death of Hunneric, revenged the injuries, without contributing to the deliverance, of the church. The throne of Africa was successively filled by the two nephews of Hunneric; by Gundoumnond, who reigned about twenty-one years; and by Thrasaumond, who governed the nation about twenty-seven years. Their administration was hostile and oppressive to the orthodox party. Gundoumnond appeared to emulate, or even to surpass, the cruelty of his uncle; and, if at length he relented, if he recalled the bishops, and restored the freedom of Athenian worship, a premature death intercepted the benefits of his tardy clemency. His brother, Thrasaumond, was the greatest and most accomplished of the Vandal kings, whom he excelled in beauty, prudence, and magnanimity of soul. But this magnanimous character was degraded by his intolerant zeal and deceitful clemency. Instead of threats and tortures, he employed the gentle, but efficacious, powers of seduction. Wealth, dignity, and the royal favour, were the liberal rewards of apostasy; the Catholics, who had violated the laws, might purchase their pardon by the renunciation of their faith; and whenever Thrasaumond meditated any rigorous measure, he patiently waited till the indiscretion of his adversaries furnished him with a specious opportunity. Bigotry was his last sentiment in the hour of death; and he exacted from his successor a solemn oath, that he would never tolerate the sectaries of Athenaeus. But his successor, Hilderic, the gentle son of the savage Hunneric, preferred the duties of humanity and justice, to the vain obligation of an impious oath; and his accession was gloriously marked by the restoration of peace and universal freedom. The throne of that virtuous, though feeble monarch, was usurped by his cousin Gelimer, a reluctant Arian; but the Vandal kingdom, before he could enjoy or abuse his power, was subdued by the arms of Belisarius; and the orthodox party retaliated the injuries which they had endured.

The passionate declamations of the Catholics, the sole historians of this persecution, cannot afford any distinct series of causes and events; any impartial view of characters, or counsel; but the most remarkable circumstances, that deserve either credit or notice, may be referred to the following heads: I. In the original law, which is still extant, Hunneric expressly declares,
and the declaration appears to be correct, that he had faithfully transcribed the regulations and penalties of the imperial edicts; against the heretical congregations, the clergy, and the people, who disavowed from the established religion. If the rights of conscience had been understood; the Catholics must have condemned their past conduct, or acquiesced in their actual sufferings. But they still persisted to refuse the indulgence which they claimed. While they trembled under the iron hand of persecution, they praised the announce severity of Humbert himself, who burnt or banished great numbers of heretics. 98; and they rejected, with horror, the ignominious compromise, that the discipline of Arius, and of Athanasius, should enjoy a reciprocal and similar toleration in the territories of the Romans, and in those of the Vandals. 99 III. The practice of a conference, which the Catholics had so frequently used to insult and punish their destined antagonists, was retorted against themselves. At the command of Humbert, four hundred and sixty-six orthodox bishops assembled at Carthage; but when they were admitted into the hall of audience, they had the mortification of beholding the Ariam Cyrius exalted on the patriarchal throne. The disputants were separated, after the usual and ordinary requisites of noise and silence, of delay and precipitation, of military force and of popular clamour. One martyr and one confessor were selected among the Catholic bishops; twenty-eight escaped by flight, and forty-eight by conformity; forty-six were sent into Corsica to cut timber for the royal navy; and three hundred and two were banished to the different parts of Africa, exposed to the insults of their enemies, and carefully deprived of all the temporal and spiritual comforts of life. The hardships of ten years' exile must have reduced their numbers; and if they had complied with the law of Tarnumundi, which prohibited any episcopal consecrations, the orthodox church of Africa must have expired with the lives of its actual members. They disobeyed; and their disobedience was punished by a second exile of two hundred and twenty bishops into Sardinia; where they languished fifteen years, till the accession of the prouder Hilderic. 99 The two islands were judiciously chosen by the malice of their Arian tyrants. Sarcens, from his own experience, has deplored and exaggerated the miserable state of Corsica, 99 and the plenty of Sardinia was overbalanced by the unwholesome quality of the air. III. The zeal of Genseric, and his successors, for the conversion of the Catholics, must have rendered them still more jealous to guard the purity of the Vandal faith. Before the churches were finally shot, it was a crime to appear in a barbarian dress; and those who presumed to neglect the royal mandate, were usually dragged backwards by their long hair. 99 The Palatine officers, who refused to profess the religion of their prince, were ignominiously stripped of their honours and employments; banished to Sardinia and Sicily; or condemned to the toil of slaves and peasants in the fields of Utica. In the districts which had been peculiarly allotted to the Vandals, the exercise of the Catholic worship was more strictly prohibited; and severe penalties were denounced against the guilt both of the missionary and the proselyte. By these arts, the faith of the barbarians was preserved, and their zeal was inflamed; they discharged, with devoted fury, the office of spies, informers, or executioners; and whenever their cavalry took the field, it was the favourite amusement of the march, to despoil the churches, and to insult the clergy of the adverse faction. IV. The citizens who had been educated in the luxury of the Roman province, were delivered, with exquisite cruelty, to the Moors of the desert. A venerable train of bishops, prebendaries, and deacons, with a faithful crowd of four thousand and ninety-six persons, whose guilt is not precisely ascertained, were torn from their native homes, by the command of Humbert. During the night, they were confined, like a herd of cattle, amidst their own ordure; during the day they pursued their march over the burning sands; and if they fainted under the heat and fatigue, they were goaded, or dragged along, till they expired in the hands of their tormentors. These unhappy exiles, when they reached the Moorish huts, might excite the compassion of a people, whose native humanity was neither improved by reason, nor corrupted by fanaticism; but if they escaped the dangers, they were condemned to share the distress, of a savage life. V. It is incumbent on the authors of persecution previously to reflect, whether they are determined to support it in the last extremities. They excite the flames which they strive to extinguish; and it soon becomes necessary to chastise the continuance, as well as the crime, of the offender. The fine, which he is unable or unwilling to discharge, exposes his person to the severity of the law; and his contempt of lighter penalties suggests the idea of his guilt and need of capital punishment. Through the veil of fiction and déclamation, we may clearly perceive, that the

98. Marcus Petronius, pont. xii. 8, 41. — Only a few bishops are mentioned in the edicts of the Vandals. — 99. The bishops of Carthage were banished and expelled by Venerius Humbert, and fasted; but the number of two hundred and eighty is specified in the Manasses on the book of Maccabees. — 100. Sarcens. — 101. The story of the African bishops, in Venerius, p. 177-180, and the life of Genseric, in the book of the Apocalypse, is the only source from which we are enabled to form a correct account of the reign of Genseric. — 102. From the 6th of June, p. 15-16. — 103. Victorian. — 104. The Vandals' attachment was based on political as well as religious grounds. Even their enemies conceded that Genseric was a great ruler. — 105. In this opinion, Theodosius would have adopted the example of various emperors, who demonstrated a general patronage in Venerius, p. 6, 7, and the race of Montem, p. 5, 5, 14, 15. — 106. A Moorish reference to pray for the aid of the Christian, is found in the passage of the text. — 107. See the story of Venerius, p. 5-16. — 108. Victor describes the divisions of these conditions as in no eye-salve.
Catholic, more especially under the reign of Humoury, endured the most cruel and ignominious treatment. 123. Respectable citizens, noble matrons, and conscientious virgins, were sometimes chained and raised in the air by pulleys, with a weight suspended at their feet. In this painful attitude their naked bodies were torn with scourges, or burnt in the most barbarous parts with red-hot plates of iron. The amputation of the ears, the nose, the tongue, and the right hand, was inflicted by the Arimas; and although the precise number cannot be defined, it is evident that many persons, among whom a bishop, 124 and areon at, 125 may be named, were sent to the crown of martyrdom. The same honour has been attributed to the memory of saint Sebastian, who professed the Nicene creed with unshaken constancy; and Genuine might detect, as an heretic, the brave and ambitious fugitive whom he detected a rival. 126 VI. A new mode of coercion, which might subdue the faithful, and alarm the timorous, was employed by the Arimn ministers. They imposed, by fraud, or violence, the rites of baptism; and punished the apostasy of the Catholics, if they denounced the omissions and profane ceremony, which scandalously violated the freedom of the will, and the unity of the sacrament. 127 The hostile acts had formerly allowed the validity of each other's baptism; and the innovation, so cleverly maintained by the Vandals, can be imputed only to the example and advice of the Donatists. VII. The Arimn clergy surprised, in religious cruelty, the king and his Vandals; but they were incapable of cultivating the spiritual vineyard, which they were so anxious to possess. A patriarch 128 might seat himself on the throne of Carthage; some bishops, in the principal cities, might usurp the place of their rivals; but the smaller of their numbers, and their ignorance of the Latin language, 129 disrobed the barbary for the ecclesiastical ministry of a great church; and the Africans, after the loss of their orthodox pastors, were deprived of the public exercise of Christianity. VIII. The emperors were the natural protectors of the Hellenic doctrine; and the faithful people of Africa, both as Romans and as Catholics, preferred their lawful sovereign to the usurpation of the barbarous heretics. During an interval of peace and friendship, Humoury restored the cathedral of Carthage; at the intercession of Zeno, who reigned in the East, and of Pelagia, the daughter and relict of emperors, and the sister of the queen of the Vandals. 120 But this decent regard was of short duration; and the haughty tyrant displayed his contempt for the religion of the empire, by lavishly arranging the bloody images of persecution, in all the principal streets through which the Roman ambassador passed, in his way to the palace. 121 An oath was enjoined from the bishops, who were assembled at Carthage, that they would support the succession of his son Hilderic, and that they would renounce all foreign or transmarine correspondences. The engagement, consistent, as it should seem with their moral and religious duties, was refused by the more sagacious members 122 of the assembly. Their refusal, faintly coloured by the pretence that it is unlawful for a Christian to swear, must provoke the suspicions of a jealous tyrant.

The Catholics, oppressed by royal and military force, were far superior to their adversaries in numbers and learning. With the same weapon which the Greek 123 and Latin fathers had already provided for the Arimn controversy, they repeatedly silenced, as vanquished, the fierce and illiterate successors of Ulphilas. The consciousness of their own superiority might have raised them above the arts and passions of religious warfare. Yet, instead of assuming such honourable pride, the orthodox theologians were tempted by the assurance of impunity, to compose fictitious, which must be stigmatised with the epithets of fraud and forgery. They ascribed their own political works to the most venerable names of Christian antiquity; the characters of Athanasius and Augustin were awkwardly perverted by Vigilins and his disciples; 124 and the famous creed, which so clearly expounds the mysteries of the Trinity and the Incarnation, is deduced, with strong probability, from this African school. 125 Even the Scriptures themselves were profaned by their rash and sacrilegious hands. The memorable text, which asserts the unity of the three who bear witness in heaven, 120 is condemned by the universal silence of the orthodox fathers, ancient versions, and authentic manuscripts.
... It was first alleged by the Catholic bishops whom Hanmer summoned to the conference of Carthage. An allegorical interpretation, in the form, perhaps, of a marginal note, invaded the text of the Latin Bible, which was renewed and corrected in a dark period of two centuries. After the invention of printing, the editors of the Greek Testament yielded to their own prejudices, or those of the times; and the pious fraud, which was embraced with equal zeal at Rome and at Geneva, has been infinitely multiplied in every country and every language of modern Europe.

The example of fraud must excite suspicion; and the specious miracles by which the African Catholics have defended the truth and justice of their cause, may be suspected, with more reason, to their own industry, than to the visible protection of Heaven. Yet the historian, who views this religious conflict with an impartial eye, may condescend to mention one preternatural event, which will strike the devout, and surprise the infidel. Tipasa, a maritime colony of Mauritsos, sixteen miles to the east of Carthage, had been distinguished, in every age, by the orthodoxy and of its inhabitants. They had bravely the fury of the Domitians; they resisted, or slunk, the tyranny of the Arians. The town was deserted on the approach of an heretical bishop; most of the inhabitants who could procure ships passed over to the coast of Spain; and the unhappy remnant, refusing all communication with the worship, still pretended to hold their pious, but illegal, anthems. Their disobedience excited the cruelty of Hanmer. A military court was dispatched from Carthage to Tipasa: he collected the Catholics in the Forum, and, in the presence of the whole province, deprived the guilty of their right hands and their tongues. But the holy confessors continued to speak without tongues: and this miracle is attested by Victor, an African bishop, who published an history of the persecution within two years after the event. "If any one," says Victor, "should doubt of the truth, let him repair to Constantino, and listen to the clear and perfect language of Justinus, the sub-deacon, one of these glorious sufferers, who is now lodged in the palace of the emperor Zenus, and is respected by the devout empress." At Constantino, we are astonished to find a cool, a learned, and unexceptionable witness, without interest, and without passion. 

The Hellenic philosopher, has accurately described his own observations on these African sufferers. "I saw them myself," he said to the ear; I diligently observed by what means such an articulate voice could be formed without any organ of speech; I used my eyes to examine the repast of my ears. I opened their mouths, and saw that the whole tongue had been completely torn away by the roots; an operation which the physicians generally suppose to be mortal." The testimony of Anax of Gaza might be confirmed by the superfluous evidence of the emperor Justinian, in a perpetual edict; of count Marcellinus, in his Chronicle of the times; and of pope Gregory the First, who had resided at Constantinople, as the minister of the Roman pontiff. They all lived within the compass of a century; and they all appeal to their personal knowledge, or to the public notoriety, for the truth of a miracle, which was repeated in several instances, displayed on the great theatre of the world, and submitted, during a series of years, to the calm examination of the senses. This supernatural gift of the African confessor, who spoke without tongues, will command the sound of those, and of those only, who actually believe, that their language was pure and orthodox. But the stubborn mind of an infidel is guarded by secret, incurable, suspicion; and the Arian, or Socinian, who has seriously rejected the doctrine of the Trinity, will not be shaken by the most plausible evidence of an Athenian miracle.

The Vandals and the Ostrogoths persevered in the profession of Arianism till the final ruin of the kingdoms which they had founded in Africa and Italy. The barbarians of Gaul submitted to the orthodox dominion of the Franks; and Spain was restored to the Catholic church by the voluntary conversion of the Visigoths.

This voluntary revolution was hastened by the example of a royal martyr, whose calm reason, though her ancestors may style an ungrateful rebel. Leo, a Vigil, the Gothic monarch of Spain, desired the respect of his enemies, and the love of his subjects: the Catholics enjoyed a free toleration, and his Arian synods attempted, without much.
success, to reconcile their scruples by abjuring the unpopular rite of a second baptism. His eldest son Hermenegild, who was invested by his father with the royal diadem, and the full prinicipality of Boston, contracted an honorable and orthodox alliance with a Messopinian princess, the daughter of Sigebert, king of Austria, and of the famous Brunehild. The benevolent Ingundis, who was no more than thirteen years of age, was received, beloved, and protected, in the Arian court of Toledo; and her religious constancy was alternately assailed with blaspemousness and violence by Guiselas, the Gothic queen, who abused the doubtclaim of maternal authority.197. Incensed by her zeal, Guiselas seized the Arian princess by her long hair, inhumanly dashed her against the ground, kicked till she was covered with blood, and at last gave orders that she should be stripped, and thrown into a basin, or fishpond.198 Love and humour might excite Hermenegild to resent this injurious treatment of his wife; and he was gradually persuaded that Ingundis suffered for the cause of divine truth. Her tender complaint, and the weighty arguments of Leander, archbishop of Seville, accomplished his conversion; and the heir of the Gothic monarchy was initiated in the Nicene faith by the solemn rites of confirmation.199 The rash youth, inflamed by zeal, and perhaps by ambition, was tempted to violate the duties of a son, and a subject; and the Catholics of Spain, although they could not complain of persecution, applauded his pious rebellion against an heretical father. The civil war was protracted by the long and obstinate siege of Merida, Cordova, and Seville, which had strenuously opposed the party of Hermenegild. He invited the orthodox barbarians, the Suevi, and the Franks, to the destruction of his native land; he solicited the dangerous aid of the Romans, who possessed Africa, and a part of the Spanish coast; and his holy ambassador, the archbishop Leander, effectually negotiated in person with the Byzantine court. But the hopes of the Catholics were crushed by the active diligence of a monarch who commanded the troops and treasures of Spain; and the guilty Hermenegild, after his vain attempts to resist or to escape, was compelled to surrender himself into the hands of an enraged father. Leovigild was still mindful of that sacred character; and the rebel, despised of the royal ornaments, was still permitted, in a decent suit, to profess the Catholic religion. His repeated and unsuccessful attempts at length provoked the indignation of the Gothic king; and the sentence of death, which he pronounced with apparent reluctance, was privately executed in the tower of Seville. The irresistible constancy with which he refused to accept the Arian communion, as the price of his safety, may excuse the tortures that have been paid to the memory of St. Hermenegild. His wife and infant son were detained by the Romans in ignominious captivity; and this domestic misfortune tarnished the glories of Leovigild, and embittered the last moments of his life.

His son and successor, Reccared, the first Catholic king of Spain, had inculcated the faith of his unfortunate brother, which he supported with more prudence and success. Instead of revenging against his father, Reccared patiently expected the hour of his death. Instead of condemning his memory, he piously supposed, that the dying monarch had altered the errors of Arianism, and recommended to his son the conversion of the Gothic nation. To accomplish that salutary end, Reccared convened an assembly of the Arian clergy and nobles, declared himself a Catholic; and exhorted them to imitate the example of their prince. The laborious interpretation of doubtful texts, or the curious pursuit of metaphysical arguments, would have excercized an endless controversy; and the monarch discreetly proposed to his iliterate audience two substantial and visible arguments, the testimony of Earth, and of Heaven. The Earth had submitted to the Nicene synod; the Romans, the barbarians, and the inhabitants of Spain, unanimously professed the same orthodox creed; and the Visigoths resisted, almost alone, the current of the Christian world. A superstitious age was prepared to reverence, as the testimony of Heaven, the preternatural cures, which were performed by the skill or virtue of the Catholic clergy; the baptismal founts of Osvet in Bética,200 which were spontaneously replenished each year, on the vigil of Easter; and the miraculous shrine of St. Martin of Tours, which had already converted the Suevic prince and people of Galicia. The Catholic king encountered some difficulties on this important change of the national religion. A conspiracy, secretly fomented by the queen-lower, was formed against his life; and two counts excited a dangerous revolt in the Narbonese Gaul. But Reccared disarmed the conspirators, defeated the rebels, and executed severe justice; which the Aragon, in their turn, might bend with the reproach of persecution. Eight bishops, whose names were between the two brothers, abjured their errors; and all the books of Arian theology were reduced to ashes, with the houses in which they had been purposely collected. The whole body of the Visigoths and Suevi were allured or driven into the pale of the Cat.
the schools were suspended by professed ignorance, and the intolerant spirit, which could find neither idolaters nor heretics, was returned to the persecution of the Jews. The all-potent nation had founded some synagogues in the cities of Gaul; but Spain, since the time of Hadrian, was filled with their numerous colonies. The wealth which they accumulated by trade, and the management of the finances, invited the plaus avuncii of their masters; and they might be oppressed without danger, as they had lost the use, and even the remembrance, of arms. Sisflaut, a Gothic king, who reigned in the beginning of the seventh century, proceeded at once to the last extremes of persecution. Ninety thousand Jews were compelled to receive the sacrament of baptism; the fortunes of the obstinate infidels were confiscated, their bodies were tortured; and it seems doubtful whether they were permitted to abandon their native country. The excessive zeal of the Catholic king was moderated, even by the clergy of Spain, who solemnly pronounced an inconsistent sentence: that the sacraments should not be forcibly imposed; but that the Jews who had been baptized should be constrained, for the honour of the church, to persevere in the external practice of a religion which they disbelieved, and detested. Their frequent relapses provoked one of the successors of Sisflaut to punish the whole nation from his dominions; and a council of Toledo published a decree, that every Gothic king should swear to maintain this salutary edict. But the tyrants were unwilling to dismiss the victims, whom they delighted to torture, or to deprive themselves of the industrious slaves, over whom they might exercise a lucrative oppression. The Jews still continued in Spain, under the weight of the civil and ecclesiastical laws, which in the same country have been faithfully transcribed in the Code of the Inquisition. The Gothic kings and bishops at length discovered, that injuries would produce hatred, and that hatred will find the opportunity of revenge. A nation, the secret of professed adherence of Christianity, still multiplied in servitude and distress; and the intigues of the Jews promoted the rapid success of the Arabian conquerors.

As soon as the barbarians withdrew their powerful support, the unpopular harry of Arian sunk into contempt and oblivion. But the Greeks still retained their subtle and laconical disposition: the establishment of an obscure doctrine suggested new questions, and new disputes; and it was always in the power of an ambitious prelate, or a
famous mask, to violate the peace of the church, and, perhaps, of the empire. The historian of the empire may overlook those disputes which were confined to the obscurity of schools and salons. The Manicheans, who laboured to reconcile the religions of Christ and of Zoroaster, had secretly introduced themselves into the provinces; but they were foreign sectaries were involved in the common suspicions of the Gnostics, and the Imperial laws were executed by the public hatred. The rational opinions of the Pelagians were propagated from Britain to Rome, Africa, and Palestine, and silently expired in a superstitious age. But the East was distracted by the Nestorian and Eutychian controversies; which attempted to explain the mystery of the incarnation, and hastened the ruin of Christianity in her native land. These controversies were first agitated under the reign of the younger Theodosius; but their important consequences extend far beyond the limits of the present volume. The metaphysical chain of argument, the contest of ecclesiastical authority, and their political influence on the decline of the Byzantine empire, may afford an interesting and instructive series of history, from the general councils of Ephesus and Chalcedon, to the conquest of the East by the successors of Mahomet.

CHAP. XXXVIII.


The Goths. The Gauls, who impatiently supported the Roman yoke, received a memorable lesson from one of the lieutenants of Valentinian, whose weighty features had been refined and expressed by the genius of Tacitus. The protection of the republic has delivered Gaul from internal discord and foreign invasions. By the loss of national independence, you have acquired the name and privileges of Roman citizens. You enjoy, in common with ourselves, the permanent benefits of civil government; and your remote situation is less exposed to the accidental mischiefs of tyranny. Instead of exercising the right of soverage, we have contented to impose such tributes as are requisite for your own preservation. Peace cannot be secured without armies; and armies must be supported at the expense of the people. It is for your sake, not for our own, that we guard the barrier of the Rhine against the ferocious Germans, who have so often already, and who will always desire, to exchange the solitude of their woods and mountains for the wealth and fertility of Gaul. The fall of Rome would be fatal to the provinces; and you would be buried in the ruins of that mighty fabric, which has been reared by the labour and wisdom of eight hundred years. Your imaginary freedom would be isolated, and oppressed by a savage master; and the ex- pulsion of the Romans would be succeeded by the eternal harassments of the barbarian conquerors. This salutary advice was accepted, and this strange prediction was accomplished. In the space of four hundred years, the hardy Gauls, who had encountered the arms of Caesar, were imperceptibly melted into the general mass of citizens and subjects; the Western empire was dissolved; and the Germans, who had passed the Rhine, fiercely contended for the possession of Gaul, and excited the contempt, or abhorrence, of its peaceful and polished inhabitants. With that conscious pride which the pre-eminent knowledge and luxury seldom fails to inspire, they disdained the haity and gigantic savages of the North; their rustic manners, domestic joy, voracious appetite, and their horrid appearance, equally disgusting to the sight and to the smell. The liberal studies were still cultivated in the schools of Autun and Bordeaux, and the language of Cicero and Virgil was familiar to the Gallic youth. Their ears were softened by the harsh and unknown sounds of the Germanic dialect, and they ingeniously imagined that the trembling Muses fled from the harmony of a Barbarian lyre. The Gauls were endowed with all the advantages of art and nature; but as they wanted courage to defend them, they were justly condemned to obey, and even to flatter, the victorious barbarians, whose clemency they held their precarious fortunes and their lives.

As soon as Odoacer had extinguished the Western empire, he sought the friendship of the most powerful of the barbarians. The new monarch of Italy resigned to Euric, king of the Visigoths, all the Roman conquests beyond the Alps, as far as the Rhine and the Ocean, and the sense might confirm this liberal gift with some estimation of power, and without any real loss of revenue or dominion. The lawful pretensions of Euric were justified by ambition and success; and the Gothic nation might aspire, under his command, to the monarchy of Spain and Gaul. Arles and Marseilles surrendered to his arms; he oppressed the freedom of Auscagne; and the bishop consecrated to purchase his recall from exile by a tribute of just, but reluctant, praise. Silvania waited before the gates of the palace among a crowd of ambassadors and suppliants; and their various business at the court of Bordeaux attended the power, and the renown, of the king of the Visigoths. The Huns of the distant steppes of Asia sent messengers to solicit admission at the court of Clovis, but the king of Gaul, who was in great esteem among his neighbours, was determined not to give occasion to any new conquests.

1 In this chapter I shall draw my quotations from the manuscripts of the Eibes in the Bibliothèques de l'État, Paris, Trèves, 1718-1750, as also of the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, 1719-1735; all the earliest editions, as far as 1526, 1590, are found in the above manuscripts, and illuminated with learned notes. Such a valuable work, which will be commended in the year 1200, English...

2 From the Basis Manuscripti et Ciborii, London, 1790, p. 448. The Deuteros peak would not bear any quotations; but I may refer the general charge of the subject to the account of the author of the Life of Clovis, in the Acta Sanctorum, ii. 13, 14.

3 From the Basis Manuscripti et Ciborii, London, 1790, p. 448. The Deuteros peak would not bear any quotations; but I may refer the general charge of the subject to the account of the author of the Life of Clovis, in the Acta Sanctorum, ii. 13, 14.
tust ocean, who painted their naked bodies with its carmine colour, implored his protection; and the Saxons respected the maritime provinces of a prince, who was desirous of any naval force. The tall Burgundians submitted to his authority; nor did he restore the captive Franks, till he had imposed on them three nations the terror of his name. The Vandals of Africa cultivated his useful friendship; and the Ostrogoths of Pannonia were supported by his powerful aid against the oppression of the neighbouring Huns. The North (such are the lofty strains of the poet) was agitated, or appeased, by the nod of Euric; the great king of Persia consulted the oracle of the West; and the aged god of the Tyber was protected by the swelling genius of the German. The fortune of nations has often depended on accidents; and Franks may ascribe her greatness to the premature death of the Gothic king, at a time when his son Alaric was an helpless infant, and his adversary Clorig was an ambitious and valiant youth.

While Childeric, the father of Clorig, lived in exile in Germany, A.D. 438 (441), he was hospitably entertained by the queen, as well as by the king, of the Thuringians. After his restoration, Basina escaped from her husband's bed to the arms of her lover; freely declaring, that if she had known a man wiser, stronger, or more beautiful, than Childeric, that man should have been the object of her preference. Clorig was the offspring of this voluntary union; and, when he was no more than fifteen years of age, he succeeded, by his father's death, to the command of the Salian tribe. The narrow limits of his kingdom were confined to the island of the Batavians, with the ancient diocese of Tournay and Arras; and at the baptism of Clorig, the number of his warriors could not exceed five thousand. The kindred tribes of the Franks, who had seated themselves along the Sceat river, the Scheldt, the Meuse, the Meuse, and the Rhine, were governed by their individual kings; and their extensive and numerous confederacy, the allies, and sometimes the enemies, of the Saliq prince. But the Germans, who obeyed, in peace, the hereditary jurisdiction of their chiefs, were free to follow the standard of a popular and victorious general; and the superior merit of Clorig attracted the respect and allegiance of the national confederacy. When he first took the field, he had neither gold and silver in his coffers, nor wine and corn in his magazines; but heimitated the example of Cesar, who, in the name of Clorig, king of

Clorig lived in exile in Germany, A.D. 438 (441), he was hospitably entertained by the queen, as well as by the king, of the Thuringians. After his restoration, Basina escaped from her husband's bed to the arms of her lover; freely declaring, that if she had known a man wiser, stronger, or more beautiful, than Childeric, that man should have been the object of her preference. Clorig was the offspring of this voluntary union; and, when he was no more than fifteen years of age, he succeeded, by his father's death, to the command of the Salian tribe. The narrow limits of his kingdom were confined to the island of the Batavians, with the ancient diocese of Tournay and Arras; and at the baptism of Clorig, the number of his warriors could not exceed five thousand. The kindred tribes of the Franks, who had seated themselves along the Sceat river, the Scheldt, the Meuse, the Meuse, and the Rhine, were governed by their individual kings; and their extensive and numerous confederacy, the allies, and sometimes the enemies, of the Saliq prince. But the Germans, who obeyed, in peace, the hereditary jurisdiction of their chiefs, were free to follow the standard of a popular and victorious general; and the superior merit of Clorig attracted the respect and allegiance of the national confederacy. When he first took the field, he had neither gold and silver in his coffers, nor wine and corn in his magazines; but heimitated the example of Cesar, who, in the name of Clorig, king of

...
sition of civil society. In the midst of these peaceful occupations, Syagrius received, and boldly accepted, the hostile defiance of Clovis; who challenged his rival, in the spirit, and almost in the language, of chivalry, to appoint the day, and the field, of battle. In the time of Caesar, Scipio had poured forth a body of fifty thousand horse; and such an army might have been plentifully supplied with shields, cuirasses, and military engines, from the three arsenals, or manufacturers, of the city. But the courage and numbers of the Gallic youth were long since exhausted; and the loose bands of volunteers, or mercenaries, who marched under the standard of Syagrius, were incapable of contending with the national valor of the Franks. It would be ingenuous, without some more accurate knowledge of his strength and resources, to condemn the rapid flight of Syagrius, who escaped, after the loss of a battle, to the distant court of Thoulouse. The feeble minority of Alaric could not assist, or protect, an unfortunate fugitive; the pusillanimous Goths were intimidated by the majesty of Clovis; and the Roman king, after a short confinement, was delivered into the hands of the executioner. The Belgic cities surrendered to the king of the Franks; and his dominions were enlarged towards the East by the ample duchy of Tongres, which Clovis subdued in the tenth year of his reign.

The name of the Alemanni has been absurdly derived from their imaginary settlement on the banks of the Leman lake. That fortunate district, from the lake to Avenche, and Mount Jura, was occupied by the Burgundians. The northern parts of Helvetia had indeed been subdued by the fierce Alemanni, who destroyed with their own hands the fruits of their conquest. A province, improved and adorned by the arts of Rome, was again reduced to a savage wilderness; and some vestiges of the stately Vindonissa may still be discovered in the fertile and populous valley of the Aar. From the source of the Rhine, to its conflict with the Mein and the Muselle, the formidable swarms of the Alemanni commanded either side of the river, by the right of ancient possession, or recent victory. They had spread themselves into Gaul, over the modern provinces of Alace and Lorraine; and their bold invasion of the kingdom of Cologne summoned the Sali princes to the defence of his Riparian allies. Clovis encountered the invaders of Gaul in the plain of Tolbiac, about twenty-four miles from Cologne; and the two fiercest nations of Germany were mutually animated by the memory of past exploits, and the prospect of future greatness. The Franks, after an obstinate struggle, gave way; and the Alamanni, raising a shout of victory, impatiently pressed their retreat. But the battle was restored by the valour, the conduct, and perhaps by the pieté, of Clovis; and the event of the bloody day decided for ever the alternative of empire or servitude. The last king of the Alamanni was slain in the field, and his people were slaughtered and pursued, till they threw down their arms, and yielded to the mercy of the conqueror. Without discipline it was impossible for them to rally; they had contemptuously demolished the walls and fortifications which might have protected their distress; and they were followed into the heart of their forests, by an enemy not less active, or intrepid, than themselves. The great Thesoric congratulated the victory of Clovis, whose sister Adoinfa the king of Italy had lately married; but he mildly interceded with his brother in favour of the suppliants and fugitives, who had implored his protection. The Gallic territories, which were possessed by the Alamanni, became the prize of their conqueror; and the haughty nation, invincible, or rebellious, to the arms of Rome, acknowledged the sovereignty of the Merovingian kings, who graciously permitted them to enjoy their peculiar manners and institutions, under the government of official, and, at length, of hereditary, dukes. After the conquest of the Western provinces, the Franks alone maintained their ancient institutions beyond the Rhine. They gradually subdued, and civilised, the exhausted countries, as far as the Elbo, and the mountains of Bohemia; and the peace of Europe was secured by the obedience of Germany.

Till the thirtieth year of his age, the young Clovis continued to worship the gods of his ancestors. His disbelief, or rather disregard, of Christianity, might encourage him to pillage with less remorse the churches of an hostile territory: but his subjects of Gaul enjoyed the free exercise of religious worship; and the bishops entertained a more favourable hope of the idolaters, than of the heretics. The

secret, tan, tan, Wernher de Brepoole, Alphonse from the, in tom. i. 1892, 1893, 1894, 1895. The author of the Agrippa, in tom. iv. 1892, 1893, 1894, 1895. His name, of course, is, as the Norman king, styled by the title of the North, and the name of his father, and his mother, is, in the latter term. Thiptaine is the name of the Alemanni, who conquered the coast and the country to the greatest of Clovis. His name is now unknown to the Germans; but the name of the Alamanni is, in the northern part of the Netherlands, under the name of Thiptaine, who are called the Thiptaine, of the Alamanni. In the Alamanni, the name of the Alamanni is, in the same country, under the name of Thiptaine. In the Alamanni, the name of the Alamanni is called by the name of Thiptaine, and their name is also called by the name of Thiptaine, who are called the Thiptaine, the Alamanni, and the name of the Alamanni is, in the northern part of the Netherlands, under the name of Thiptaine, who are called the Thiptaine, of the Alamanni. His name is now unknown to the Germans; but the name of the Alamanni is, in the latter term. Thiptaine is the name of the Alemanni, who conquered the coast and the country to the greatest of Clovis. His name is now unknown to the Germans; but the name of the Alamanni is, in the northern part of the Netherlands, under the name of Thiptaine, who are called the Thiptaine, of the Alamanni. His name is now unknown to the Germans; but the name of the Alamanni is, in the latter term. Thiptaine is the name of the Alemanni, who conquered the coast and the country to the greatest of Clovis. His name is now unknown to the Germans; but the name of the Alamanni is, in the northern part of the Netherlands, under the name of Thiptaine, who are called the Thiptaine, of the Alamanni. His name is now unknown to the Germans; but the name of the Alamanni is, in the latter term. Thiptaine is the name of the Alemanni, who conquered the coast and the country to the greatest of Clovis. His name is now unknown to the Germans; but the name of the Alamanni is, in the northern part of the Netherlands, under the name of Thiptaine, who are called the Thiptaine, of the Alamanni. His name is now unknown to the Germans; but the name of the Alamanni is, in the latter term. Thiptaine is the name of the Alemanni, who conquered the coast and the country to the greatest of Clovis. His name is now unknown to the Germans; but the name of the Alamanni is, in the northern part of the Netherlands, under the name of Thiptaine, who are called the Thiptaine, of the Alamanni.
Merovingian prince had contracted a fortunate alliance with the fair Clotilda, the niece of the king of Burgundy, who, in the midst of an Arian court, was educated in the profession of the Catholic faith. It was her interest, as well as her duty, to achieve the conversion of a Pagan husband; and Clovis insensibly listened to the voice of love and religion. He consented (perhaps such terms had been previously stipulated) to the baptism of his eldest son; and though the sudden death of the infant excited some superstitious fears, he was persuaded, a second time, to repeat the dangerous experiment. In the distress of the battle of Tolbiac, Clovis loudly invoked the God of Clotilda and the Christians, and victory disposed him to hear, with respectful gratitude, the eloquent Remigius, bishop of Rheims, who forcibly displayed the temporal and spiritual advantages of his conversion. The king declared himself satisfied of the truth of the Catholic faith; and the political reasons which might have suspended his public profession, were removed: by the devout or loyal acclamations of the Franks, who showed themselves alike prepared to follow their heroic leader, to the field of battle, or to the baptismal font. The important ceremony was performed in the cathedral of Rheims, with every circumstance of magnificence and solemnity, that could impress an awful sense of religion on the minds of its rude proselytes. The new Christian was immediately baptized, with three thousand of his warlike subjects; and their example was imitated by the remainder of the gentle barbarians, who, in obedience to the victorious prelate, adored the cross which they had burnt, and burnt the idols which they had formerly adored. The mind of Clovis was susceptible of transient favour: he was exasperated by the pathetic tale of the passion and death of Christ; and, instead of weighing the salutary consequences of that mysterious sacrifice, he exclaimed, with indiscreet fury, "I have been persuaded at the head of my valiant Franks; I should have avenged his injuries." But the noble conqueror of Gaul was incapable of examining the proofs of a religion, which depends on the laborious investigation of historic evidence, and speculative theology. He was still more incapable of feeling the vital influence of the Gospel, which persuades and purifies the heart of a genuine convert. His ambitious reign was a perpetual violation of moral and Christian duties: his hands were stained with blood, in peace as well as in war; and as soon as Clovis had dismiss'd a symposium of the Gallican church, he calmly assassinated all the princes of the Merovingian race. Yet the king of the Franks might sincerely worship the Christian God, as a Being more excellent and powerful than his national deities; and the signal deliverance and victory of Tolbiac encouraged Clovis to confide in the future protection of the Lord of Hosts. Martin, the most popular of the saints, had filled the Western world with the fame of those miracles, which were incessantly performed at his holy sepulchre of Tours. His visible or invisible aid promoted the cause of a liberal and orthodox prince; and the profane remark of Clovis himself, that St. Martin was an expensive friend, should not be interpreted as the symptom of any permanent, or rational, scepticism. But earth, as well as heaven, rejoiced in the conversion of the Franks. On the memorable day, when Clovis ascended from the baptismal font, he swore, in the Christian world, deserved the name and prerogatives of a Catholic king. The emperor Anastasius entertained some dangerous alarms concerning the nature of the divine incarnation; and the barbarians of Italy, Africa, Spain, and Gaul, were involved in the Arian heresy. The eldest, or rather the only, son of the Christian monarch was acknowledged by the clergy as their lawful sovereign, or glorious deliverer; and the arms of Clovis were strenuously supported by the zeal and favour of the Catholic faction.

Under the Roman empire, the wealth and jurisdiction of the bishops, their sacred character, and perpetual office, their numerous dependents, popular eloquence, and provincial assemblies, had rendered them always respectable, and sometimes dangerous. Their influence was augmented with the progress of superstition, and the establishment of the French monarchy may, in some degree, be ascribed to the firm alliance of an hundred prelates, who reigned in the discontented, or independent, cities of Gaul. The slight foundations of the Roman republic had been repeatedly shaken or overthrown; but the same people still guarded their domestic freedom; asserted the dignity of the Roman name; and bravely resisted the predatory inroads, and regular attacks, of Clovis, who laboured to extend his conquests from the Seine to the Loire. Their successful opposition introduced an equal and honourable union.
The Franks esteemed the value of the Armoricans, and the Armoricans were reconciled by the religion of the Franks. The military force, which had been stationed for the defence of Gaul, consisted of one hundred different bands of cavalry or infantry; and these troops, while they assumed the title and privileges of Roman soldiers, were renewed by an incessant supply of the barbarian youths. The extreme fortifications, and scattered fragments, of the empire, were still defended by their hapless courage. But their retreat was interrupted, and their communication was impracticable: they were abandoned by the Greek princes of Constantinople, and they proudly disclaimed all connection with the Arian usurpers of Gaul. They accepted, without shame or reluctance, the generous capitulation, which was proposed by a Catholic hero; and this spurious, or legitimate, progeny of the Roman legions, was distinguished in the succeeding age by their arms, their ensigns, and their peculiar dress and institutions. But the national strength was increased by these powerful and voluntary accessions; and the neighbouring kingdoms dreaded the numbers, as well as the spirit, of the Franks. The reduction of the Northern provinces of Gaul, instead of being decided by the chance of a single battle, appears to have been slowly effected by the gradual operation of war and treaty; and Clovis acquired each object of his ambition, by such efforts, or such concessions, as were adequate to its real value. His savage character, and the virtues of Henry IV., suggest the most opposite ideas of human nature; yet some resemblance may be found in the situation of two princes, who conquered France by their valor, their policy, and the merits of a reasonable conversion. 66

The kingdom of the Burgundians, which was defined by the course of two Gallic rivers, the Saine and the Rhone, extended from the forest of Vosges to the Alps and the Sea of Marcellia. The sceptre was in the hands of Gundobald. That ambitious and ambitious prince had reduced the number of royal candidates by the death of two brothers, one of whom was the father of Clothoïs; but his imperfect prudence still permitted Godgereid, the youngest of his brothers, to possess the dependent principality of Geneva. The Arian monarch was justly alarmed by the satisfaction, and the hopes, which seemed to animate his clergy and people, after the conversion of Clovis; and Gundobald convened at Lyons an assembly of his bishops, to reconcile, if it were possible, their religious and political discontents. A vain conference was agitated between the two factions. The Arians reproached the Catholics with the worship of three Gods: the Catholics denounced their cause by theological distinctions; and the usual arguments, objections, and replies, were reverberated with obstinate clamour; till the king revealed his secret apprehensions, by an abrupt but decisive question, which he addressed to the orthodox bishops. 67 If you truly profess the Christian religion, why do you not restrain the king of the Franks? He has declared war against me, and forms alliances with my enemies for my destruction. A sanguinary and covetous mind is not the symptom of a sincere conversion; let him show his faith by his works." The answer of Arinus, bishop of Vienna, who spoke in the name of his brethren, was delivered with the voice and countenance of an angel. 68 We are ignorant of the motives and intentions of the king of the Franks; but we are taught by Scripture, that the kingdoms which abandon the divine law, are frequently subverted; and that enemies will arise on every side against those who have made God their enemy. Return, with thy people, to the law of God, and he will give peace and security to thy dominions." The king of Burgundy, who was not prepared to accept the condition, which the Catholics considered as essential to the treaty, delayed and dismissed the ecclesiastical conference, after reproaching his bishops, that Clovis, their friend and proselyte, had privately tempted the allegiance of his brother. 69

The allegiance of his brother was already induced; and the obedience of Godgereid, who joined the royal standard with the troops of Geneva, more efficaciously promoted the success of the conspiracy. While the Franks and Burgundians contended with equal valour, his summons arrived to decide the event of the battle; and as Gundobald was fairly supported by the disaffected Gauls, he yielded to the arms of Clovis, and hastily retreated from the field, which appears to have been situated between Langres and Dijon. He distrusted the strength of Dijon, a quadrangular fortress, encompassed by two rivers, and by a wall thirty feet high, and fifteen thick, with four gates, and thirty-three towers; 70 he abandoned to the pursuit of Clovis the important cities of Lyons and Vienna; and Gundobald still fled with precipitation, till he had reached Avignon, at the distance of two hundred and fifty miles from the field of battle. A long siege, and an arduous negotiation, admonished the king of the Franks of the danger and difficulty of his
enterprise. He imposed a tribute on the Burgundian prince, compelled him to pardon and reward his brother's treachery, and proudly returned to his own dominions with the spoils and captives of the southern provinces. This splendid triumph was soon clouded by the intelligence that Gundobad had violated his recent obligations, and that the unfortunate Godgode, who was left at Vienna with a garrison of five thousand Franks, had been besieged, surprised, and massacred by his inhuman brother.

Such an outrage might have exaggerated the patience of the most peaceful sovereign; yet the conqueror of Gaul esteemed the injury, released the tribute, and accepted the alliance, and military service, of the king of Burgundy. Clovis no longer possessed those advantages which had assured the success of the preceding war; and his rival, instructed by adversity, had found new resources in the affections of his people. The Gauls or Romans applauded the mild and impartial laws of Gundobad, which almost raised them to the same level with their conquerors.

The bishops were reconciled, and flattered, by the hopes, which he artfully suggested, of his approach to monarchy, and though he exalted their accomplishment to the last moment of his life, his moderation wrenched the peace, and suspended the ruin, of the kingdom of Burgundy.

I am impatient to pursue the final ruin of that kingdom, which was accomplished under the reign of Sigismund, the son of Gundobad. The Catholic Sigismund has acquired the honours of a saint and martyr; but the hands of the royal saint were stained with the blood of his innocent son, whom he inhumanly sacrificed to the pride and resentment of a stepmother. He soon discovered his error, and bewailed the irreparable loss. While Sigismund embraced the corpse of the unfortunate youth, he received a severe admonition from one of his attendants: "It is not in his situation, O king! It is thine which deserves pity and lamentation." The reproaches of a guilty conscience were alleviated, however, by his liberal donations to the monastery of Agaunum, or St. Maurice, in Valais; which he himself had founded in honour of the imaginary martyr of the Thessalian legion. A full share of perpetual penitence was instituted by the pious king; he assiduously practiced the most solemn devotion of the monks, and it was his humble prayer, that Heaven would inflict in this world the punishment of his sins. His prayer was heard: the avengers were at hand; and the provinces of Burgundy were overwhelmed by an army of victorious Franks. After the event of an unsuccessful battle, Sigismund, who wished to protract his life that he might prolong his penance, concealed himself in the desert in a religious habit, till he was discovered and betrayed by his subjects, who solicited the favour of their new master. The captive monarch, with his wife and two children, were transported to Orleans, and buried alive in a deep well, by the stern command of the sons of Clovis; whose cruelty might derive some excuse from the maxims, and examples, of their barbarous age.

Their ambition, which urged them to achieve the conquest of Burgundy, was inflamed, or disguised, by filial piety; and Clothilde, whose sanctity did not consist in the forgiveness of injuries, pressed them to revenge her father's death on the family of his assassins. The rebellious Burgundians, for they attempted to break their chains, were still permitted to enjoy their national laws under the obligation of tribute, and military service; and the Merovingian princes, at length, reigned over a kingdom, whose glory and greatness had been first overthrown by the arms of the Franks.

The first victory of Clovis had insulted the honour of the Goths.

They viewed his rapid progress with jealousy and terror; and the youthful fame of Alaric was oppressed by the more potent genius of his rival. Some disputes inevitably arose on the edge of their contiguous dominions; and after the delays of fruitless negotiation, a personal interview of the two kings was proposed, and accepted. This conference of Clovis and Alaric was held in a small island of the Loire, near Arbois. They embraced, familiarly conversed, and feasted together; and separated with the warmest professions of peace, and brotherly love. But their apparent confidence concealed a dark suspicion of hostile and treacherous designs; and their mutual complaints solicited, shared, and disclaimed, a final arbitration. At Paris, which he already considered as his royal seat, Clovis declared to an assembly of the princes and warriors, the presence, and the nature, of a Gothic war. It grieveth me to see that the Arians still possess the fairest portion of Gaul. Let us march against them with the aid of God; and, having vanquished the heretics, we will possess, and divide, their fertile province. The Franks, who were inspired by hereditary valour and recent zeal, applauded the generous design of their monarch; and expressed their resolution to conquer or die, since death and conquest would be equally profitable; and solemnly protested that they would never shiver their heads, till victory should absolve them from that inconvenient vow. The enterprise
was promoted by the public, or private, exhortations of Clotilda. She reminded her husband, how effectually some pious foundation would pro\nipple the Daity, and his servants; and the Christian hero, during his battle-axe with a skilful and nervous hand, "There (said he), on
that spot where my Franks shall fall, will I erect a church in honour of the holy
apostles." This ostentation piety confirmed and justified the attachment of the Catholics, with whom he secretly corresponded; and their devout wishes were gradually ripened into a formidable conspiracy. The people of Aquitaine was alarmed by the indiscreet reproaches of their Gothic tyrants, who justly accused them of preferring the dominion of the Franks; and their zealous adherent Quintius, bishop of Hades, preached more forcibly in his exile than in his diocese. To resist these foreign and domestic enemies, who were fortified by the alliance of the Burgundians, Alaric collected his troops, far more numerous than the military power of Clodion. The Visigoths remembred the exercise of arms, which they had neglected in a long and luxurious peace; a select band of valiant and robust slaves attended their masters to the field; and the cities of Gaul were compelled to furnish their doubtful and reluctant aid. Theodosius, King of the Ostro- goths, who reigned in Italy, had laboured to maintain the tranquillity of Gaul; and he assumed, or affected for that purpose, the imperial character of a mediator. But the sagacious monarch dreaded the rising empire of Clodion, and he was firmly engaged to support the national and religious cause of the Gauls.

The accidental, or artificial, predi\ngies, which adorned the expedition of Clodion, were accepted, by a super\n"\nB R. 309th.

Vignes of
the Visigoths.

The accidental, or artificial, predi\ngies, which adorned the expedition of Clodion, were accepted, by a super-

unusual age, as the manifest declaration of the Divine favour. He marched from Paris; and as he proceeded with desert reverence through the holy diocese of Tours, his anxiety tempted him to consult the shrine of St. Martin, the sanctuary, and the oracle of Gaul. His messengers were instructed to remark the words of the Psalm which should happen to be chanted at the precise moment when they entered the church. Those words most fortunately expressed the valour and

victory of the champions of Heaven, and the application was easily transferred to the new Josuah, the new Gudion, who went forth to battle against the enemies of the Lord. Orisme secured to the Franks a bridge on the Loire; but, at the distance of forty miles from Poitiers, their progress was intercepted by an extraordinary swell of the river Vienne; or Vienne; and the opposite banks were covered by the encampment of the Visigoths. Delay must be always dangerous to barbarians, who consume the country through which they march; and Clodion possessed leisure and materials, it might have been impracticable to construct a bridge, or to force a passage, in the face of a superior enemy. But the affectionate priests, who were impatient to welcome their deliverer, could easily betray some unknown, or unguarded, fort; the merit of the discovery was enhanced by the useful interposition of fraud or fiction; and a white hert, of singular size and beauty, appeared to guide and animate the march of the Gothic army. The counsels of the Visigoths were irresolute and distracted. A crowd of impatient warriors, presumptuous in their strength, and disdainful to fly before the rabble of Germany, excited Alaric to assert in arms the name and blood of the conqueror of Rome. The advice of the greater chieftains pressed him to strike the first arrow of the Franks; and to expect, in the southern provinces of Gaul, the veterans and victorious Ostrogoths, whom the king of Italy had already sent to his assistance. The decisive moments were wasted in idle deliberation; the Goths too hastily abandoned, perhaps, an advantageous post; and the opportunity of a secure retreat was lost by their slow and disorderly motions. After Clodion had passed the ford, as it is still named, of the Mer, he advanced with bold and hasty steps to prevent the escape of the enemy. His maternal march was directed by a flaming meteor, suspended in the air above the cathedral of Poitiers; and this signal, which might be previously convened with the orthodox successor of St. Hilary, was compared to the column of fire that guided the Israelites in the desert. At the third hour of the day, about ten miles beyond Poitiers, Clodion overtook, and instantly attacked, the Gothic army; whose defeat was already prepared by terror and confusion. Yet they rallied in their extreme distress, and the martial youths, who had clamorously demanded the battle, refused to survive the ignominy of flight. The two kings encountered each other in single combat. Alaric fell by the hand of his rival; and the victorious Franks was saved by the goodness of his curate, and the vigour of his horse, from the spears of two desperate Goths, who furiously rode against him, to revenge the death of their sovereign. The vague expression of a mountain of the slain, serves to indicate a cavalry, though indiscernible, slaughter; but Gregory has carefully observed, that his valiant countryman Apollinaris, the son of Scholibus, lost his life at the head of the vikings of Avergones. Perhaps these expected Catholics had been maliciously exposed to the blind assault of the enemy; and perhaps the influence of religion was
superseded by personal attachment, or military honour. Such is the empire of Fortune (if we may thus disguise our ignorance under that popular name), that it is almost equally difficult to foresee the event of war or to explain their various consequences. A bloody and complete victory has sometimes yielded us more than the possession of the field; and the loss of ten thousand men has sometimes been sufficient to destroy, in a single day, the work of ages. The decisive battle of Pothiers was followed by the conquest of Aquitaine: Alaric had left behind him an infant son, a bastard competitor, factions noble, and a dissolute people; and the remaining forces of the Goths were opposed by the general consternation, or opposed to each other in civil discord. The victorious king of the Franks proceeded without delay to the siege of Aixburgina. At the sound of his trumpets the walls of the city were in the example of Jericho, and instantly fell to the ground; a splendid mimic, which may be reduced to the supposition, that some clerical engineers had secretly undermined the foundations of the rampart. At Bordeaux, which had submitted without resistance, Clovis established his winter-quarters; and his prudent economy transported from Toulouse the royal treasures, which were deposited in the capital of the monarchy. The conqueror penetrated as far as the confines of Spain; restored the honor of the Catholic church; fixed Aquitaine a colony of Franks; and delegated to his lieutenant the easy task of subduing, or extirpating, the nation of the Visigoths. But the Visigoths were protected by the wise and powerful monarch of Italy. While the balance was still equal, Theodoric had perhaps delayed the march of the Ostrogoths; but their strenuous efforts successfully resisted the ambition of Clovis; and the army of the Franks, and their Burgundian allies, was compelled to raise the siege of Arles, with the loss, as it is said, of thirty thousand men. These vicissitudes inclined the Sirene spirit of Clovis to acquiesce in an advantageous treaty of peace. The Visigoths were suffered to retain the possession of Septimania, a narrow tract of coast, from the Rhone to the Pyrenees; but the ample province of Aquitaine, from these mountains to the Loire, was indissolubly united to the kingdom of France. After the success of the Gothic war, Clovis accepted the honours of the Roman consulship. The emperor Anastasius ambitiously bestowed on the most powerful rival of Theodosius, the title and resigne of that eminent dignity; yet, from some unknown cause, the name of Clovis has not been inscribed in the Pantheon either of the East or West. On the solemn day, the monarch of Gaul, placing a diadem on his head, was invested, in the church of St. Martin, with a purple tunic and mantle. From thence he proceeded on horseback to the cathedral of Tours; and, as he passed through the streets, profusely scattered, with his own hand, a damnum of gold and silver to the joyful multitude, who incessantly repeated their acclamations of Consul and Augustus. The actual, or legal authority of Clovis, could not receive any new accession from the consul's dignity. It was a name, a shadow; an empty pageant; and, if the conqueror had been instructed to claim the ancient prerogatives of that high office, they must have expired with the period of its annual duration. But the Romans were disposed to receive, in the person of their master, that antique title, which the emperors contended to assume: the barbarian himself seemed to contract a sacred obligation to respect the majesty of the republic; and the successors of Theodosius, by soliciting his friendship, readily forgave, and almost satisfied, the usurpation of Gaul.

Twenty-five years after the death of Clovis, this important commission was more formally declared, in a treaty between his sons and the emperor Justinian. The Ostrogoths of Italy, unable to defend their distant acquisitions, had resigned to the Franks the cities of Arles and Marseilles; of Arles, still adorned with the seat of a priestly prefect; and of Marseilles, enriched by the advantages of trade and navigation. This transaction was confirmed by the imperial authority; and Justinian, generously yielding to the Franks the sovereignty of the countries beyond the Alps, which they already possessed, absolved the provincials from their allegiance; and established an a more lawful, though not more solid, foundation, the throne of the Merovingians. From that era, they enjoyed the right of celebrating at Arles the games of the circus; and by a singular privilege, which was denied even to the Persian monarch, the gold coin, impressed with
their name and image, obtained a legal currency in the empire. A Greek historian of that age has praised the private and public virtues of the Franks, with a partial enthusiasm, which cannot be sufficiently justified by their domestic annals. He celebrates their patriotism, urbanity, their regular government, and orthodox religion; and boldly asserts, that these barbarians could be distinguished only by their dress and language from the subjects of Rome. Perhaps the Franks already displayed the social disposition and lively graces, which, in every age, have disguised their vices, and sometimes concealed their intrinsic merit. Perhaps Achaians, and the Greeks, were dazzled by the rapid progress of their arms, and the splendour of their empire. Since the conquest of Burgundy, Gaul, except the Gothic province of Septimania, was subject, in its whole extent, to the sons of Clovis. They had extinguished the German kingdom of Turingia, and their vague dominium extended beyond the Rhine, into the heart of their native forests. The Alamanni, and Bavarians, who had occupied the Roman provinces of Rhetia and Noricum, to the south of the Danube, confessed themselves the humble vassals of the Franks; and the foible barrier of the Alps was insuperable to resisting their ambition. When the last survivor of the sons of Clovis united the inheritance and conquests of the Merovingian kings, the kingdom extended far beyond the limits of modern France. Yet modern France, such has been the progress of arts and policy, far surpasses in wealth, population, and power, the spacious but savage realm of Childebert or Dagobert.

The Franks, or French, are the only people of Europe who can deduce a perpetual succession from the conquerors of the Western empire. But their conquest of Gaul was followed by ten centuries of anarchy and ignorance. On the revival of learning, the students who had been formed in the schools of Athens and Rome, disdained their barbarian ancestry; and a long period elapsed before patient labour could provide the requisite materials to satisfy, or rather to excite, the curiosity of more enlightened times. At length the eye of criticism and philosophy was directed to the antiquities of France; but even philosophers have been tainted by the contagion of prejudice and passion. The most extreme and exclusive systems, of the personal servitude of the Gauls, or of their voluntary and equal alliance with the Franks, have been rashly conceived, and ultimately defended: and the intemperate disputants have accused each other of conspiring against the prerogatives of the crown, the dignity of the nobles, or the freedom of the people. Yet the sharp conflict has usefully exercised the adverse powers of learning and genius; and each antagonist, alternately vanquished and victorious, has extirpated some ancient errors, and established some interesting truths. An impartial stranger, instructed by their discoveries, their disputes, and even their faults, may descry, from the same original materials, the state of the Roman provincials, after Gaul had submitted to the arms and laws of the Merovingian kings. The rudest and the most servile condition of human society, is regulated however by some fixed and general rules. When Taricius surveyed the primitive simplicity of the Germans, he discovered some permanent maxims, or customs, of public and private life, which were preserved by faithful tradition, till the introduction of the art of writing, and of the Latin tongue. Before the election of the Merovingian kings, the most powerful tribe, or nation, of the Franks, appointed four venerable chieftains to compose the Salic laws; and their labours were examined and approved in three successive assemblies of the people. After the baptism of Clovis, he reformed several articles that appeared inconsistent with Christianity; the Salic law was again amended by his sons; and at length, under the reign of Dagobert, the code was revised and promulgated in its actual form, one hundred years after the establishment of the French monarchy. Within the same period, the customs of the Romans were transcribed and published; and Charlemagne, himself, the legislator of his age and country, had accurately studied the Roman national laws, which still prevailed among the Franks. The same care was extended to their vessels; and the rude institutions of the Alamanni and Bavarians were diligently compiled, and ratified by the supreme authority of the Merovingian kings. The Teutonic and Burgundian, whose conquests in Gaul preceded those of the Franks, showed less insufficiency to attain one of the principal benefits of civilized society. Eucius was the first of the Gothic princes who expressed in writing the manners and customs of his people; and the composition of the Burgundian laws was a

---

60. The Franks, who probably rose the sons of Tui,ius, Iuvp, and Arnm, entered the palace of the Roman emperor at seventy-five years of age, and, by the power of gold and arms, subdued and converted their nation of gold. It was the custom of the Alemanni, to enter the palace of their king, and by their services to acquire his favours; and the Frankish princes fixed on this page to the empire the first institution, by which the successors of the ancient Roman consuls were supported by the support of the popular assembly. The Franks, who were the first to give to the public, and to the state, the name of their own nation, and of the Roman province of Gaul, obtained a legal currency in the empire. A Greek historian of that age has praised the private and public virtues of the Franks, with a partial enthusiasm, which cannot be sufficiently justified by their domestic annals. He celebrates their patriotism, urbanity, their regular government, and orthodox religion; and boldly asserts, that these barbarians could be distinguished only by their dress and language from the subjects of Rome. Perhaps the Franks already displayed the social disposition and lively graces, which, in every age, have disguised their vices, and sometimes concealed their intrinsic merit. Perhaps Achaians, and the Greeks, were dazzled by the rapid progress of their arms, and the splendour of their empire. Since the conquest of Burgundy, Gaul, except the Gothic province of Septimania, was subject, in its whole extent, to the sons of Clovis. They had extinguished the German kingdom of Turingia, and their vague dominium extended beyond the Rhine, into the heart of their native forests. The Alamanni, and Bavarians, who had occupied the Roman provinces of Rhetia and Noricum, to the south of the Danube, confessed themselves the humble vassals of the Franks; and the foible barrier of the Alps was insuperable to resisting their ambition. When the last survivor of the sons of Clovis united the inheritance and conquests of the Merovingian kings, the kingdom extended far beyond the limits of modern France. Yet modern France, such has been the progress of arts and policy, far surpasses in wealth, population, and power, the spacious but savage realm of Childebert or Dagobert.

61. The Franks, who probably rose the sons of Tuiius, Iuvp, and Arnm, entered the palace of the Roman emperor at seventy-five years of age, and, by the power of gold and arms, subdued and converted their nation of gold. It was the custom of the Alemanni, to enter the palace of their king, and by their services to acquire his favours; and the Frankish princes fixed on this page to the empire the first institution, by which the successors of the ancient Roman consuls were supported by the support of the popular assembly. The Franks, who were the first to give to the public, and to the state, the name of their own nation, and of the Roman province of Gaul, obtained a legal currency in the empire. A Greek historian of that age has praised the private and public virtues of the Franks, with a partial enthusiasm, which cannot be sufficiently justified by their domestic annals. He celebrates their patriotism, urbanity, their regular government, and orthodox religion; and boldly asserts, that these barbarians could be distinguished only by their dress and language from the subjects of Rome. Perhaps the Franks already displayed the social disposition and lively graces, which, in every age, have disguised their vices, and sometimes concealed their intrinsic merit. Perhaps Achaians, and the Greeks, were dazzled by the rapid progress of their arms, and the splendour of their empire. Since the conquest of Burgundy, Gaul, except the Gothic province of Septimania, was subject, in its whole extent, to the sons of Clovis. They had extinguished the German kingdom of Turingia, and their vague dominium extended beyond the Rhine, into the heart of their native forests. The Alamanni, and Bavarians, who had occupied the Roman provinces of Rhetia and Noricum, to the south of the Danube, confessed themselves the humble vassals of the Franks; and the foible barrier of the Alps was insuperable to resisting their ambition. When the last survivor of the sons of Clovis united the inheritance and conquests of the Merovingian kings, the kingdom extended far beyond the limits of modern France. Yet modern France, such has been the progress of arts and policy, far surpasses in wealth, population, and power, the spacious but savage realm of Childebert or Dagobert.
measure of policy rather than of justice; to alleviate the yoke, and regain the affections, of their Gallic subjects. Thus, by a singular coincidence, the Germans framed their rude institutions, at a time when the elaborate system of Roman jurisprudence was finally consummated. In the Salic laws, and the Pandects of Justinian, we may compare the first rudiments, and the full maturity, of civil wisdom; and whatever prejudices may be suggested in favour of barbarism, our earlier regulations will ascribe to the Romans the superior advantages, not only of science and reason, but of humanity and justice. Yet the laws of the barbarians were adapted to their wants and desires, their occupations and their capacity; and they all contributed to preserve the peace, and promote the improvement, of the society, for whose use they were originally established. The Moscovians, instead of imposing an uniform rule of conduct on their various subjects, permitted each people, and each family, of their empire, freely to enjoy their natural institutions; nor were the Romans excluded from the common benefits of this legalization. The children embraced the lot of their parents, the wife that of her husband, the freedman that of his patron; and, in all cases where the parties were of different nations, the plaintiff, or accused, was obliged to follow the tribunal of the defendant, who might always plead a judicial presumption of right, or innocence.

A more ample latitude was allowed, if every citizen, in the presence of the judge, might declare the law under which he desired to live, and the national society to which he chose to belong. Such an indulgence would abolish the partial distinctions of victory; and the Roman provincials might patiently acquiesce in the hardships of their condition; since it depended on themselves to assume the privilege, if they desired to assert the character, of free and warlike barbarians.

When justice inestimably requires the death of a murderer, each private citizen is fortified by the assurance, that the laws, the magistrate, and the whole community, are the guardians of his personal safety. But in the loose society of the Germans, revenge was always honorable, and often meritorious; the independent warrior chastised, or vindicated, with his own hand, the injuries which he had suffered, or received; and he had only to dread the resentment of the sons, and kinmen, of the enemy, whom he had sacrificed to his selfish or avenge passions. The magistrates, censured of his weakness, interpolated, not in punnish, but to reconcile; and he was satisfied if he could pacify, or compass, the controlling party to pay, and to accept, the moderate fine which had been ascertained, as the price of blood. The fierce spirit of the Franks would have opposed a more rigorous sentence; the same heretics despised the inhuman restraint, and, when their simple numbers had been corrupted by the wealth of Gaul, the public peace was continually violated by acts of petty or deliberate guilt. In every just government the same penalty is inflicted, or at least is imposed, for the murder of a peasant, or a prince. But the national inequality established by the Franks, in their criminal proceedings, was the last insult and abuse of vassalage. In the calm moments of legislation they solemnly pronounced, that the life of a Roman was of smaller value than that of a barbarian. The Anfract, a name expressive of the most illustrious birth or dignity among the Franks, was appreciated at the sum of six hundred pieces of gold; while the noble provincial, who was admitted to the king's table, might be legally murdered at the expense of three hundred pieces. Two hundred were deemed sufficient for a Frank of ordinary condition; but the more Roman were expected to disgrace and danger by a trivial compensation of one hundred, or even fifty, pieces of gold. Had these laws been regulated by any principle of equity or reason, the public protection should have supplied in just proportion the want of personal strength. But the legislator had weighed in the scales, not of justice, but of policy, the loss of a soldier against that of a vassal: the heart of an insolent and rapacious barbarian was guarded by an heavy fine; and the slightest aid was afforded to the most defenseless subjects. Thus insensibly abated the pride of the conquerors, and the patience of the vanquished; and the boldest vassal was taught by experience, that he might suffer more injuries than he could inflict. As the massacre of the Visigoths became less frequent, their laws were rendered more severe; and the Merovingian kings attempted to imitate the important signal of the Visigoths and Burgundians.
the empire of Charles Magne: murder was universally punished with death; and the use of capital punishments has been liberally multiplied in the jurisprudence of modern Europe. The civil and military professions, which had been separated by the barbarians, were again united by the barons. The harsh sound of the Teutonic apophasis was modified into the Latin titles of Duke, of Count, or of Precept; and the same offices assumed, within his district, the command of the troops, and the administration of justice. But the fierce and licentious chief was seldom qualified to discharge the duties of a judge, which require all the faculties of a philosopher, laboriously cultivated by experience and study; and his rude ignorance was compelled to embrace some simple, and visible, methods of ascertaining the cause of justice. In every religion, the Deity has been invoked to confirm the truth, or to punish the falsehood, of human testimony; but this powerful instrument was misused, and abused, by the simplicity of the German legislators. The party accused might justify his innocence, by producing before their tribunal a number of friendly witnesses, who solemnly declared their belief, or assurance, that he was not guilty. According to the weight of the charge, this legal number of compurgators was multiplied; seventy-two were required to absolve an incendiary, or assassin; and when the chastity of a queen of France was suspected, three hundred gallant nobles swore, without hesitation, that the infant prince had been actually begotten by her deceased husband. The sin and ascer of manifest and frequent perjuries engaged the magistrates to remove these dangerous temptations; and to supply the defects of human testimony, by the famous experiments of fire and water. These extraordinary trials were so capriciously contrived, that, in some cases, guilt, and innocence, in others, could not be proved without the interposition of a miracle. Such miracles were readily procured by fraud and credulity; and the most human causes were determined by this easy and infallible method; and the turbulent barbarians, who might have disdained the sentence of the magistrates, submitted acquiesced in the judgment of God. 

But these trials by single combat gradually obtained superior credit and authority, among a warlike people, who could not believe, that a brave man deserved to suffer, or that a coward deserved to live. Both in civil and criminal proceedings, the plaintiff, or accuser, the defendant, or even the witness, were exposed to mortal challenge from the antagonist who was destitute of legal proofs; and it was incumbent on them either to desert their cause, or publicly maintain their honour in the lists of battle. They fought either on foot or on horseback, according to the custom of their nation; and the decision of the sword, or lance, was ratified by the sanction of Heaven, of the judge, and of the people. This unsparing law was introduced into Gaul by the Burgundians; and their legislator Gundobald condescended to answer the complaints and objections of his subject Avitus. "Is it not true," said the king of Burgundy to the bishop, "that the event of national wars, and private contenda is directed by the judgment of God; and that his providence awards the victory to the juster cause?" By such prevailing arguments, the absurd and cruel practice of judicial duels, which had been peculiar to some tribes of Germany, was propagated.settled in all the monarchies of Europe, from Sicily to the Baltic. At the end of ten centuries, the reign of the legal violence was not totally extinguished; and the insidious manners of saints, of popes, and of synods, may seem to prove, that the influence of superstition is weakened by its unnatural alliance with reason and humanity. The tribunal was stained with the blood, perhaps, of innocent and respectable citizens; the law, which now favours the rich, then yielded to the strong; and the old, the feeble, and the infirm, were condemned either to renounce their fairest claims and possessions, to sustain the dangers of an unequal conflict, or to trust the doubtful aid of a mercenary champion. This oppressive jurisprudence was imposed on the provincials of Gaul, who complained of any injuries in their persons and property. Whatever might be the strength, or courage, of individuals, the vicarious barbarians excelled in the loose and exercise of arms; and the conquering Roman was unjustly summoned to repeat, in his own person, the bloody contest, which had been already decided against his country.

The following list of one hundred and twenty thousand Germans had formerly passed the Rhine under the command of Aretius. One third part of the fertile lands of the Sequani was appropriated to their use; and the conqueror soon repeated his oppressive demand of another third, for the accommodation of a new colony of
Of the Roman Empire.

Chapter XXXVIII.

The wealth of the Merovingian princes consisted in their extensive domain. After the conquest of Gaul, they still delighted in the rustic simplicity of their ancestors; the cities were abandoned to solitude and decay; and their courts, their charters, and their synods, are still inscribed with the names of the villas, or rural palaces, in which they successively resided. One hundred and sixty of these palaces, a title which need not excite any unreasonable idea of art or luxury, were scattered through the provinces of their kingdom; and if some might claim the honours of a fortress, the far greater part could be esteemed only in the light of profitably farms.

The mansion of the long-haired kings was surrounded with convenient yards, and stables, for the cattle and the poultry; the garden was planted with useful vegetables; the various stalls, the labours of agriculture, and even the arts of hunting and fishing were exercised by servile hands for the emulation of the sovereign; his magazines were filled with corn and wine, either for sale or consumption; and the whole administration was conducted by the strictest maxims of private economy. This simple patrimony was appropriated to supply the hospitable plenty of Clovis, and his successors; and to enable the facility of their brave companions, who, both in peace and war, were devoted to their personal service. Instead of an horse, or a suit of armour, such complexion, according to his rank, or inscrit, or favour, was invested with a seneschal, the primitive name, and most simple form, of the feudal possessions. These gifts might be resumed at the pleasure of the sovereign; and his feel and prerogative derived some support from the influence of his liberality. But this dependant tenure was gradually abolished by the independent and rapacious nobles of France, who established the perpetual property, and hereditary succession, of their benefices: a revolution salutar to the earth, which had been injured, or neglected, by its precarious masters. Besides these royal and beneficent estates, a large proportion had been assigned, in the division of Gaul, of allodial and Saliac lands; they were exempt from tribute, and the Saliac lords were equally shared among the male descendants of the Franks.

In the bloody discord, and silent decay of the Merovingian line, a new order of tyrants arose in the provinces, who, under the appellation of Suavii, or Lords, usurped a right to govern, and a licence to oppress, the subjects of their peculiar territory. Their ambition might be checked by the benevolent resistance of an equal; but the laws were extinguished: and the sacrilegious barbarians, who dared to provoke the vengeance of a saecul or bishop, would seldom respect the land.
marks of a profane and defameous neighbour. The common, or public, rights of nature, such as they had always been deemed by the Roman jurisprudence, were severely restrained by the German conquerors, whose amusement, or rather passion, was the exercise of hunting. The vague dominion, which Mars has assumed over the wild inhabitants of the earth, the air, and the waters, was continued to some fortunate individuals of the human species. Gaul was again overspread with woods; and the animals, who were reserved for the use, or pleasure, of the lord, might ravage, with impunity, the fields of his indisciplined vassals. The chace was the sacred privilege of the nobles and their domestic servants. Plutonian transgressors were legally classified with stripes and imprisonment; but in an age which admitted a slight composition for the life of a citizen, it was a capital crime to destroy a stag or a wild bull within the precincts of the royal forests.

According to the maxims of ancient war, the conqueror became the lawful master of the enemy whom he had subdued and spared; and the fruitful cause of personal slavery, which had been almost suppressed by the personal sovereignty of Rome, was again revived and multiplied by the perpetual hostilities of the independent barbarians. The Goth, the Burgundian, or the Frank, who returned from a successful expedition, dragging after him a long train of sheep, of oxen, and of human captives, whom he treated with the same brutal contempt. The youths of an elegant form and ingenious aspect, were set apart for the domestic service; a doubtful situation, which alternately exposed them to the favourable, or cruel, impulse of passion. The useful mechanics and servants (smiths, carpenters, tailors, shoemakers, cooks, gardeners, dyers, and workmen in gold and silver, &c.) employed their skill for the use, or profit, of their master. But the Roman captives who were destitute of art, but capable of labour, were consigned, without regard to their former rank, to tend the cattle, and cultivate the lands of the barbarians. The number of the servile bondmen, who were attached in the Gallic estates, was continually increased by new supplies; and the servile people, according to the situation and temper of their lords, was sometimes raised by precarious indulgences, and more frequently depressed by capricious despotic.

An absolute power of life and death was exercised by these lords; and when they married their daughters, a train of useful servants, chained on the wagons to prevent their escape, was sent as a mazal present into a distant country. The majesty of the Roman law protected the liberty of such citizens, against the rash effects of his own distress, or despair. But the subjects of the German kings might alienate their personal freedom; and this act of legal suicide, which was familiarly practised, is expressed in terms most disgraceful and afflicting to the dignity of human nature. The example of the poor, who purchased life by the sacrifice of all that can render life desirable, was gradually imitated by the feebile and the debauched, who, in times of public disorder, pusillanimously crowded to shelter themselves under the battlements of a powerful chief, and around the shrine of a popular saint. Their submission was accepted by these temporal, or spiritual, patronets; and the harsh transaction irrecoverably fixed their own condition, and that of their latest posterity. From the reign of Clovis, during five successive centuries, the laws and manners of Gaul uniformly tended to promote the increase, and to confirm the duration, of personal servitude. Time and violence almost obliterated the intermediate ranks of society; and left an obscure and narrow interval between the noble and the slave. This arbitrary and recent division has been transformed by pride and prejudice into a national distinction, universally established by the arms and the laws of the Merovingians. The nobles, who claimed their genuine, or fabulous, descent, from the independent and victorious Franks, have asserted and abused, the indefeasible right of conquest, over a prostrate crowd of slaves and plebeians, to whom they imputed the imaginary disgrace of a Gallic, or Roman, extraction.

The general state and revolutions of France, a name which was imposed by the conquerors, may be illustrated by the particular example of a province, a diocese, or a senatorial family. Auvergne had formerly maintained a just pre-eminence among the independent states and cities of Gaul. The brave and numerous inhabitants displayed a singular trophy; the sword of Caesar himself, which he had lost when he was repulsed before the walls of Gergovia, as the common off-spring of Troy, they claimed a fraternal alliance with the Romans; and if each province had imitated the courage and loyalty of Auvergne,
the fall of the Western empire might have been prevented, or delayed. They firmly maintained the fidelity which they had reluctantly sworn to the Visigoths; but when their bravest nobles had fallen in the battle of Poitiers, they accepted, without resistance, a victorious and Catholic sovereignty. This easy and valuable conquest was achieved, and possessed, by Theodoric, the eldest son of Clovis; but the remote province was separated from his Austrasian dominions, by the intermediate kingdoms of Soissons, Paris, and Orleans, which formed, after their father's death, the inheritance of his three brothers. The king of Paris, Childerich, was tempted by the neighbourhood and beauty of Auvergne. 102

The Upper country, which rises towards the south into the mountains of the Cevennes, presented a rich and various prospect of woods and pastures; the sides of the hills were clothed with vines; and each eminence was crowned with a villa or castle. In the Lower Auvergne, the river Allier flows through the fair and spacious plain of Lignac; and the inexhaustible fertility of the soil supplied, and still supplies, without any interval of rest, the constant repetition of the same harvests. 103 On the false report, that their lawful sovereignty had been slain in Germany, the city and diocese of Auvergne were betrayed by the grandson of Sidonius Apollinaris, Childerich enjoyed his charming victory; and the first subjects of Theodoric threatened to desert their standard, if he indulged his private resentment, while the nation was engaged in the Burgundian war. But the Franks of Austrasia most yield to the persuasive eloquence of their king. 104 Follow me, 105 said Theodoric, into Auvergne: I will lead you into a prosperity more excellent than you desire. 106 You shall have vine, where you may acquire gold, silve, slaves, cattle, and precious apparel, to the full extent of your wishes. I repeat my promise; I give you the people, and their wealth, as your prey; and you may transport them at your pleasure into your own country. By the execution of this promise, Theodoric justly forfeited the allegiance of a people, whom he devoted to destruction. His troops, reinforced by the servile barbarians of Germany, spread desolation over the fruitful face of Auvergne; and two places only, a strong castle, and a holy shrine, were saved, or reformed, from their licentious fury. The castle of Moriville, 107 was seated on a lofty rock, which rose an hundred feet above the surface of the plain; and a large reservoir of fresh water was included, with some arable lands, within the circle of its fortifications. The Franks beheld with envy and despise this impregnable fortress; but they surprised a party of fifty stragglers; and, as they were oppressed by the number of their captives, they fixed, at a trilling ransom, the alternative of life or death for those wretched victims, whom the cruel barbarians were prepared to massacre on the refusal of the ransom. Another detachment penetrated as far as Briings, or Brioude, where the inhabitants, with their valuable effects, had taken refuge in the sanctuary of St. Julian. The doors of the church resisted the assault; but a daring soldier entered through a window of the choir, and opened a passage to his companions. The clergy and people, the sacred and the profane spoils, were rudely torn from the altar; and the sacrilegious division was made at a small distance from the town of Brioude. But this act of impiety was severely chastised by the devout son of Clovis. He punished with death the most atrocious offenders; left their secret accomplices to the vengeance of St. Julian; restored the captives; restored the plunder; and extended the rights of sanctuary, five miles round the sepulchre of the holy martyr. 108

Before the Austrasian troops were treated from Auvergne, Theodoric exerted some proofs of the future loyalty of a people, whose just hatred could be restrained only by their fear. A select band of noble youths, the sons of the principal senators, was delivered to the conqueror, as the hostages of the faith of Childerich, and of their countrymen. On the first rumour of war, as companions, these guiltless youths were reduced to a state of servitude; and one of them, Atalith, 109 whose adventures are more particularly related, kept his master's horses in the diocese of Treses. After a painful search, he was discovered, in this unworthy occupation, by the emissaries of his grandfather, Gregory bishop of Langres; but his offer of ransom was sternly rejected by the avarice of the barbarian, who required an exorbitant sum of ten pounds of gold for the freedom of his noble captive. His delivery was effected by the hearty stratagem of Leo, a slave belonging to the kitchen of the bishop of Langres. 110 An unknown agent easily introduced him into the same family. The barbarians purchased Leo for the price of twelve pieces of gold; and he was pleased to learn, that he was deeply skilled in the luxury of an episcopal table. 111 Next Sunday," said the Frank, 112 I shall invite my neighbours, and kinship. 113 Expect thy art, and force them to confide, that they have never seen, or tasted, such an entertainment, even in the king's house." Leo

102 Either the first, or second, parting among the sons of Clovis, and given, here to Childeric. "Very bar. 141 in. 13, 12, 10, 8, 9. "a villa" and Auvergne, &c. "Aust. min. &c. The villa of Auvergne, &c. "Gom. P. 1. 1. &c. 103 Sec. 145. 104 Sec. 145. 105 The king of Paris was supposed by that of Soissons. 106 Sec. 145. 107 Sec. 145. 108 Sec. 145. 109 Sec. 145. 110 Sec. 145. 111 Sec. 145. 112 Sec. 145. 113 Sec. 145.
assured him, that, if he would provide a sufficient quantity of poultry, his wishes should be satisfied. The master, who already aspired to the merit of elegant hospitality, assented, as he saw, the praise which the voracious guests unanimously bestowed on his cook; and the dexterous Leo instantly acquired the trust and management of his household. After the pestilential summer of a whole year, he cautiously whitewashed the design to Attalus and exhorted him to prepare for flight in the ensuing night. At the hour of midnight, the intemperate guests retired from table; and the Frank's son-in-law, whom Leo attended to his apartment with a nocturnal petition, condescended to just on the facility with which he might betray his trust. The intrepid slave, after abstaining this dangerous repast, entered his master's bedchamber; removed his spear and shield; silently drew the finest horses from the stable; unharnessed the ponderous gates; and excited Attalus to save his life and liberty by incessant diligence. Their apprehensions urged them to leave their horses on the banks of the Meuse; they swam the river, wandered three days in the adjacent forest, and subsisted only by the accidental discovery of a wild plum-tree. As they lay concealed in a dark thicket, they heard the noise of horses; they were terrified by the angry contumence of their master, and they anxiously listened to his declaration, that, if he could seize the guilty fugitives, one of them he would cut in pieces with his sword, and would expose the other on a gibbet. At length, Attalus, and his faithful Leo, reached the friendly habitation of a presbyter of Rheims, who recruited their failing strength with bread and wine, concealed them from the search of their enemy, and safely conducted them, beyond the limits of the Austrian kingdom, to the episcopal palace of Langres. Gregory embraced his grandson with tears of joy, gratefully delivered Leo, with his whole family, from the yoke of serfdom, and bestowed on him the property of a farm, where he might end his days in happiness and freedom. Perhaps this singular adventure, which is marked with so many circumstances of truth and nature, was related by Attalus himself, or his cousin, or nephew, the first historian of the Franks. Gregory of Tours was born about sixty years after the death of Sidonius Apollinaris; and their situation was almost similar, since each of them was a native of Aquitaine, a senator, and a bishop. The difference of their style and sentiments may, therefore, express the decay of Gaul: and clearly ascertain how much, in so short a space, the human mind had lost of its energy and refinement.

We are now qualified to dispose the opposite, and, perhaps, artful misrepresentations, which have softened, or exaggerated, the oppression of the Romans on Gaul under the reign of the Merovingians. The conquerors never promulgated any universal edict of servitude, or confiscation: but a degenerate race, who excelled in wickedness by the sanguinary crimes of pillage and rapine, was exposed to the arms and laws of the ferocious barbarians, who contemptuously insulted their possessions, their freedom, and their safety. Their personal injuries were partial and irregular; but the great body of the Romans survived the revolution, and still preserved the property, and privileges, of citizens. A large portion of their lands was exacted for the use of the Franks; but they enjoyed the remainder, exempt from tribute; and the same irresistible violence which swept away the arts and manufactures of Gaul, destroyed the elaborate and expensive system of Imperial despotism. The provincials must frequently deplore the savage jurisprudence of the Salic or Riparian laws; but their private life, in the important concerns of marriage, testament, or inheritance, was still regulated by the Theodosian Code; and a discontented Roman might freely aspire, or descend, to the character and title of a barbarian. The honours of the state were accessible to his ambition: the education and temper of the Romans more particularly qualified them for the offices of civil government; and, as soon as emulation had reconciled their military ardour, they were permitted to march in the ranks, or even at the head, of the victorious Germans. I shall not attempt to enumerate the generals and magistrates, whose names attest the liberal policy of the Merovingians. The supreme command of Burgundy, with the title of Patrician, was successively intrusted to three Romans; and the last, and most powerful, Munemculus, who alternately saved and disturbed the monarchy, had usurped his father in the station of count of Autun, and left a treasure of thirty talents of gold, and two hundred and fifty talents of silver. The fierce and illustrious barbarians were excluded, during several generations, from the dignities, and even from the orders, of the church. The clergy of Gaul consisted almost entirely of native provincials; the haughty Franks fell prostrate at the feet of their subjects, who were dignified with the episcopal character; and
the power and riches which had been lost in war, were insensibly recovered by supernumeration. In all temporal affairs, the Theodosian Code was the universal law of the clergy; but the barbaric jurisprudence had liberally provided for their personal safety; a sub-deacon was equivalent to two Frankes; the extrication, and priest, were held in similar estimation; and the life of a bishop was appreciated far above the common standard, at the price of nine hundred pieces of gold. The Romans communicated to their conquerors the use of the Christian religion and Latin language; but their language and their religion had alike degenerated from the simple purity of the Augustan, and Apostolic, age. The progress of superstition and barbarism was rapid and universal: the worship of the saints concealed from vulgar eyes the God of the Christians; and the rustic dialect of peasants and soldiers was corrupted by a Tenthnic idiom and pronunciation. Yet such intercourse of sacred and social communion eradicated the distinctions of birth and victory; and the nations of Gaul were gradually confounded under the name and government of the Franks.

The Franks, after they mingled their Gaulic subjects, might have imported the most valuable of human gifts, a spirit, and system, of constitutional liberty. Under a king, hereditary but limited, the chief magistrates might have debated, at Paris, in the palace of the Caesars; the adjacent field, where the emperors reviewed their mercenary legions, would have admitted the legislative assembly of freemen and warriors; and the rude model, which had been sketched in the woods of Germany, might have been polished and improved by the civil wisdom of the Romans. But the careless barbarians, secure of their personal independence, disdained the labours of government: the annual assemblies of the month of March were silently abolished; and the nation was separated, and almost dissolved, by the conquest of Gaul. The monarchy was left without any regular establishment of justice, of arms, or of revenue. The successors of Clovis wanted resolution to assume, or strength to exercise, the legislative and executive powers, which the people had abdicated: the royal prerogative was distinguished only by a more ample privilege of rape and murder; and the love of freedom, so often instigated and disgraced by private ambition, was restored, among the victorious Franks, to the contempt of order, and the desire of impunity. Seventy-five years after the death of Clovis, his grandson, Guntram, king of Burgundy, sent an army to invade the Gothic possessions of Septimania, or Languedoc. The troops of Burgundy, Berry, Auvergne, and the adjacent territories, were excited by the hopes of spoil. They marched, without discipline, under the banners of German, or Gallic, counts; their attack was fierce and unsuccessful; but the friendly and hostile provinces were desolated with indiscriminate rage. The corn fields, the villages, the churches themselves, were consumed by fire; the inhabitants were massacred, or dragged into captivity; and, in the disorderly retreat, five thousand of those inhuman savages were destroyed by hunger or intestine discord. When the place of Contran reproached the guilt, or neglect, of their leaders; and threatened to rebel, not as a legal sentence, but instant and arbitrary execution; they secured the universal and licentious corruption of the people. "No one," they said, "any longer "fears or respects his king, his Duke, or his "count. Each man loves to do evil, and freely "fulfills his criminal inclinations. The most "gentle correction provokes an immediate "man; and the rash magistrate, who presumes "to censure, or restrain, his delinquent subjects, "seldom escapes alive from their revenge." It has been reserved for the same nation to expose, by their interminable wars, the most odious abuse of freedom; and to supply its loss by the spirit of honour and humanity, which now alleviates and dignifies their obedience to an absolute sovereign.

The Visigoths had resigned to the Visigoths of Spain, the greatest part of their Gallic possessions; but their loss was amply compensated by the easy conquest, and secure enjoyment, of the provinces of Spain. From the monarchy of the Goths, which soon involved the Suevic kingdom of Gallicia, the modern Spaniards still derive some national vanity: but the historian of the Roman empire is neither invited, nor compelled, to pursue the obscure and barren series of their arms. The Goths of Spain were separated from the rest of mankind, by the lofty ridge of the Pyrenean mountains; their manners and institutions, as far as they were common to the Germanic tribes, have been already explained. I have anticipated, in the preceding chapter, the most important of their ecclesiastical vanity: the fall of Ariism, and the persecution of the Jews; and it only remains to notice some interesting circumstances, which relate to the civil and ecclesiastical constitution of the Spanish kingdom.

After their conversion from idolatry, Creoles, the Franks, and the Visigoths were disposed to embrace, with equal submission, the Christian religion.
evils, and the accidental benefits, of superstition. But the prelates of France, long before the extinction of the Merovingian race, had degenerated into fighting and hunting barbarians. They disdained the use of symbols; forgot the laws of temperance and chastity; and preferred the indulgence of private ambition and luxury, to the general interest of the sacerdotal profession. 112 The bishops of Spain respected themselves, and were respected by the public: their indissoluble union disguised their vices, and confirmed their authority; and the regular discipline of the church introduced peace, order, and stability, into the government of the state. From the reign of Recared, the first Catholic king, to that of Witiza, the immediate predecessor of the unfortunate Roderic, sixteen national councils were successively convened. The six metropolitan, Toledo, Seville, Merida, Braga, Tarragona, and Narbonne, presided according to their respective seniority; the assembly was composed of their suffragan bishops, who appeared in person, or by their proxies; and a place was assigned to the most holy or equidistant of the Spanish abbots. During the first three days of the convocation, as long as they agitated the ecclesiastical questions of doctrine and discipline, the profane laity was excluded from their debates; which were conducted, however, with decent solemnity. But, on the morning of the fourth day, the doors were thrown open for the entrance of the great officers of the palace, the dukes and counts of the provinces, the judges of the cities, and the Gothic nobles: and the doors of Heaven were ratified by the consent of the people. The same rules were observed in the provincial assemblies, the annual synodes which were empowered to hear complaints, and to redress grievances; and a legal government was supported by the prevailing influence of the Spanish clergy. The bishops, who, in each revolution, were prepared to cater the victorious, and to insult the prostrate, laboured, with diligence and success, to kindle the flames of persecution, and to extort the tribute above the crown. Yet the national councils of Toledo, in which the free spirit of the barbarians was tempered and guided by episcopal policy, have established some prudent laws for the common benefit of the king and people. The vacancy of the throne was supplied by the choice of the bishops and palatines; and, after the failure of the line of Alaric, the regal dignity was still limited to the pure and undivided blood of the Goths. The clergy, who anointed their lawful princes, always recommended, and sometimes practised, the duty of allegiance: and the spiritual consoures were denounced on the heads of the impious subjects, who should resist his authority, conspire against his life, or violate, by an indolent union, the chastity even of his widow. But the monarch himself, when he ascended the throne, was bound by a royal vow to God and his people, that he would faithfully execute his important trust. The real or imaginary faults of his administration were subject to the control of a powerful aristocracy; and the bishops and palatines were guarded by a fundamental privilege, that they should not be degraded, imprisoned, tortured, or punished with death, exile, or confiscation, unless by the free and public judgment of their peers. 113

One of these legislative councils of Toledo examined and ratified the code of laws which had been compiled by a succession of Gothic kings, from the fierce Eutic, to the devout Egenh. As long as the Visigoths themselves were satisfied with the rude customs of their ancestors, they indulged their subjects: Aquitain and Spain in the enjoyment of the Roman law. Their gradual improvement in arts, in policy, and at length in religion, encouraged them to imitate, and to supersede, these foreign institutions; and to compose a code of civil and criminal jurisprudence, for the use of a great and united people. The same obligations, and the same privileges, were communicated to the nations of the Spanish monarchy: and the conquerors, insensibly reconciling the Teutonic idiom, submitted to the restraints of equity, and exalted the Romans to the participation of freedom. The merit of this impartial policy was enhanced by the situation of Spain, under the reign of the Visigoths. The provincials were long separated from their Arian masters by the irreconcilable difference of religion. After the conversion of Recared had removed the prejudices of the Catholics, the coast, both of the Ocean and Mediterranean, were still possessed by the Eastern emperors; who secretly exiled a discontented people to reject the yoke of the barbarians, and to assert the name and dignity of Roman citizens. The allegiance of doubtful subjects is indeed most effectually secured by their own persuasion, that they hazard more in a revolt, than they can hope to obtain by a revolution; but it has appeared so natural to oppress those whom we hate and fear, that the contrary system will preserve the peace of wisdom and moderation. 114

While the kingdoms of the Franks and Visigoths were established in Gaul and Spain, the Saxons achieved the conquest of Britain, the third great kingdom of the prefecture of the West. Since Britain was already separated from the Roman empire, I might, without reproach, decline to narrate the history of this nation, familiar to the most illustrious, and obscure to the least learned, of my readers. The Saxons, who ascended in the use of the sea, or the battle-axe, were ignorant of the art which could alone prevent the force of their exploit; the provincials, relying into barbarism, neglected to describe the rule of their country; and the doubtful tradition was almost extinguished, be-
fore the missionaries of Rome restored the light of science and Christianity. The declarations of Gildas, the fragments, or fables, of Nennius, the obscure hints of the Saxon laws and chronicles, and the ecclesiastical tales of the venerable Bede, have been illustrated by the diligence, and sometimes embellished by the fancy, of succeeding writers, whose works I am not ambitious either to censure or to transcribe. Yet the historian of the empire may be tempted to pursue the revolutions of a Roman province, till it vanishes from his sight; until an Englishman may curiously trace the establishment of the barbarians, from whom he derives his name, his laws, and perhaps his origin.

Before forty years after the disolution of the Roman government, its fabric had been so crumbling, that it could no longer resist the attacks of the Saxons, or the pressure of the Angles. This new and formidable enemy, of the Saxons, and those warlike barbarians resolve to assist with a fleet and army the suppliants of a distant and unknown island. If Britain had indeed been unknown to the Saxons, the measure of its calamities would have been less complete. But the strength of the Roman government could not always guard the maritime province against the pirates of Germany; the independent and divided states were exposed to their attacks; and the Saxons might sometimes join the Scots and the Picts, in a tacit, or express, confederacy of rapine and destruction. Vortigern could only balance the various perils, which assaulted on every side his throne and his people; and his policy may deserve either praise or excuse, if he preferred the alliance of these barbarians, whose naval power rendered them the most dangerous enemies, and the most serviceable allies. Hengist and Horsa, as they ranged along the eastern coast with three ships, were engaged, by the promise of an ample stipend, to succour the defence of Britain; and their integral valor soon delivered the country from the Caledonian invaders. The isle of Thanet, a secure and fertile district, was allotted for the residence of these German auxiliaries, and they were supplied, according to the treaty, with a plentiful allowance of clothing and provisions. This favourable reception encouraged five thousand warriors to embark with their families in seventeen vessels, and the infant power of Hengist was fortified by this strong and reasonable reinforcement. Vortigern had the obvious advantage of fixing, in the neighbourhood of the Picts, a colony of faithful allies: a third fleet of forty ships followed the command of his son and nephew, supplied from Germany, ravaged the Orkneys, and disembarked a new army on the coast of Northumberland, at the opposite extremity of the devoted land. It was easy to foresee, but it was impossible to prevent, the impending evils. The two nations were soon divided and exasperated by mutual jealousies. The Saxons magnified all that they had done and suffered in the cause of an ungrateful people; while the Britons regretted the liberal rewards which could not satisfy the avarice of those haughty merce- naries. The causes of fear and hatred were inflamed into an irreconcilable quarrel. The Saxons flew to arms; and, if they perpetrated a treacherous massacre during the security of a feast, they destroyed the reciprocal confidence which sustains the intercourse of peace and war.

Hengist, who boldly aspired to the conquest of Britain, exalted his countrymen to embrace the glorious opportunity: he painted in lively colours the fertility of the soil, the wealth of the cities, the peaceful prosperity of the nations, and the convenient situation of a spacious solitary island, accessible on all sides to the Saxon fleets. The successive conquerors which issued, in the period of a century, from the mouths of the Elbe, the Weser, and the Rhine, were principally composed of three valiant tribes or nations of Germany; the Jutes, the old Saxons, and the Angles. The Jutes, who fought under the popular banner of Hengist, assumed the merit of leading their countrymen in the paths of glory, and of erecting, in Kent, the first independent kingdom. The fame of the enterprise was attributed to the primitive Saxons; and the common laws and language of the conquerors are described by the national appellation of a people, which, at the end of four hundred years, produced the first monarchs of South Britain. The Angles were distinguished by their number and their success; and they claimed, in the name of Hengist, the honour of fixing a perpetual nation on the country, of which they occupied the most ample portion. The barbarians, who followed the hopes of rapine either on the land or sea, were insensibly blended with this triple confederacy; the Frisians, who had been tempted by their vicinity to the British shores, might balance, during a short space, the strength and reputation of the native Saxons; the Danes, the Pomerians, the Regiones, are faintly described; and some adventurous Huns, who had wandered as far as the Baltic, might entrench on board the German vessels, for the conquest of a new world. But this abundant achievement was
not prepared or executed by the union of national powers. Each intrepid chieftain, according to the measure of his faith and fortune, assembled his followers; equipped a fleet of three, or perhaps of sixty, vessels; chose the place of the attack; and conducted his subsequent operations according to the events of the war, and the dictates of his private interest. In the invasion of Britain many heroes perished and fell; but only seven victorious leaders assumed, or at least maintained, the title of kings. Seven independent thrones, the Saxon Heptarchy, were founded by the conquerors; and seven families, one of which has been continued, by female succession, to our present sovereign, derived their equal and sacred lineage from Woden, the god of war. It has been pretended, that this republic of kings was moderated by a general council and a supreme magistrate. But such an artificial scheme of government is repugnant to the rude and turbulent spirit of the Saxons; their laws are silent; and their imperfect annals afford only a dark and bloody prospect of intestine discord.

A monk, who, in the profound ignorance of human life, has presumed to express the sentiments of a historian, strangely disfigures the state of Britain at the time of its separation from the Western empire. Gildas describes in florid language the improvements of agriculture, the foreign trade which flowed with every tide into the Thames and the Severn, the solid and lofty construction of public and private edifices; he accuses the sinful luxury of the British people; of a people, according to the same writer, ignorant of the most simple arts, and incapable, without the aid of the Romans, of providing walls of stone, or weapons of iron, for the defence of their native land. Under the long dominion of the emperors, Britain had been insensibly moulded into the elegant and servile form of a Roman province, whose safety was intrusted to a foreign power. The subjects of Honorius contemplated their new freedom with surprise and terror; they were left destitute of any civil or military constitution; and their uncertain rulers wanted either skill or courage, or authority, to direct the public force against the common enemy. The introduction of the Saxons betrayed their internal weakness, and degraded the character both of the prince and people. Their consternation magnified the danger; the want of union diminished their resources; and the madness of civil factions was more solicitous to accuse, than to remedy, the evils which they imputed to the misconduct of their adversaries. Yet the Britons were not ignorant, they could not be ignorant, of the manufacture or the use of arms; the successive and disorderly attacks of the Saxons, allowed them to recover from their amaze, and the

prosperous or adverse events of the war added discipline and experience to their native valour. While the continent of Europe and Africa yielded, without resistance, to the barbarians, the British island, alone and unsaid, maintained a long, a vigorous, though an unsuccessful, struggle, against the formidable pirates, who, almost at the same instant, assaulted the northern, the eastern, and the southern coasts. The cities, which had been fortified with skill, were defended with resolution; the advantages of ground, hills, forests, and morasses, were dilligently improved by the inhabitants; the conquest of each district was purchased with blood; and the defeats of the Saxons are strongly attested by the discreet silence of their annalists. Hengist might hope to achieve the conquest of Britain; but his ambition, in an active reign of thirty-five years, was confined to the possession of Kent; and the tremendous colony which he had planted in the North, was extirpated by the sword of the Britons. The monarchy of the West-Saxons was laboriously founded by the persevering efforts of three martial generations. The life of Ceridol, one of the bravest of the children of Woden, was consumed in the conquest of Hampshire, and the Isle of Wight; and the loss which he sustained in the battle of Mount Badon, reduced him to a state of inglorious exile. Kentic, his valiant son, advanced into Wales; besieged Salisbury, at that time seated on a commanding eminence; and vanquished an army which advanced to the relief of the city. In the subsequent battle of Marborough, his British enemies displayed their military science. Their troops were formed in three lines; each line consisted of three distinct bodies, and the cavalry, the archers, and the pikemen, were distributed according to the principles of Roman tactics. The Saxons charged in one weighty column, boldly encountered with their short swords the long lances of the Britons, and maintained an equal conflict till the approach of night. Two decisive victories, the death of three British kings, and the reduction of Cirencester, Bath, and Gloucester, established the fame and power of Cæsnin, the grandson of Ceridol, who carried his victorious arms to the banks of the Severn.

After a war of an hundred years, and more, the independent Britons still occupied the whole extent of the western coast, from the wall of Antoninus to the extreme promontory of Cornwall; and the principal cities of the inland country still opposed the arms of the barbarians. Resistance became more languid, as the number and boldness of the assailants continually increased. Winning their way by slow and painful efforts, the Saxons, the Angles, and their various confederates, advanced from the North, from the East, and from the

134 The map of the world, drawn by the learned and Hon. Mr. R. H. Weir. There are particular and accurate maps in this collection, which will satisfy the most exacting student. The maps are large; and the sheets, when folded, measure 16 x 12 inches. They are particularly beautiful; and the island of this chart is not less evidently drawn.
South, till their victorious banners were unit ed in the centre of the island. Beyond the Severn the Britons still asserted their national freedom, which survived the heptarchy, and even the monarchy, of the Saxons. The bravest warriors, who preferred exile to slavery, found a secure refuge in the mountains of Wales: the reluctant submission of Cornwall was delayed for some ages; and a band of fugitives acquired a settlement in Gwent, by their own valour, or the liberality of the Mercian kings. The western angle of Armorica acquired the new appellations of Cornwall, and the Lower Britain; and the vacant lands of the Ostrogoths were filled by a strange people, who, under the authority of their counts and bishops, preserved the laws and language of their ancestors. To the feeble descendants of Clovis and Charlemagne, the Britons of Armorica refused the customary tribute, subdued the neighbouring dioceses of Vannes, Rennes, and Dinan, and formed a powerful, though nominal, state, which was united to the crown of France.

The loss of Britain at last implacable, war, much courage, and sore skill, must have been exerted for the defence of Britain. Yet if the memory of its champions is almost buried in oblivion, we need not regret; since every age, however destitute of science or virtue, sufficiently abounds with acts of blood and military renown. The tomb of Vortimer, the son of Vortigern, was erected on the margin of the sea-shore, as a hand-mark formidable to the Saxons, whom he had thrice vanquished in the fields of Kent. Ambrosius Aurelianus was descended from a noble family of Romans; his modesty was equal to his valour, and his valour, till the last fatal action, was crowned with splendid success. But every British name is attainted by the illustrious name of Arthur, the hereditary prince of the Silures, in South Wales, and the elective king or general of the nation. According to the most rational account, he defeated, in twelve successive battles, the Angles of the North, and the Saxons of the West; but the declining age of the hero was embittered by popular ingratitude, and domestic misfortunes. The events of his life are less interesting, than the singular revolutions of his fame. During a period of five hundred years the tradition of his exploits was preserved, and rudely embellished, by the obscure bard of Wales and Armorica, who were adjoin to the Saxons, and unknown to the rest of mankind. The pride and curiosity of the Norman conquerors prompted them to enquire into the ancient history of Britain: they listened with fond curiosity to the tale of Arthur, and eagerly applauded the merit of a prince, who had triumphed over the Saxons, their common enemies. His romance, transcribed in the Latin of Jeffrey of Monmouth, and afterwards translated into the fashionable idiom of the times, was enriched with the various, though incoherent, ornaments, which were familiar to the experience, the learning, or the fancy, of the twelfth century. The progress of a Phrygian colony, from the Tyber to the Thames, was easily engraven on the table of the Eneid; and the royal ancestor of Arthur derived their origin from Troy, and claimed their alliance with the Caesars. His trophies were decorated with captive provinces, and Imperial titles; and his Dying victories avenged the recent injuries of his country. The gallantry and superstition of the British hero, his feasts and tournaments, and the memorable institution of his Knights of the Round Table, were faithfully copied into the reigning manners of chivalry; and the fabulous exploits of Uther's son appear less incredible, than the adventures which were achieved by the enterprising valour of the Normans. Pilgrimage, and the holy war, were introduced into Europe the specious miracles of Arabian magic. Fairies and giants, flying dragons, and enchanted palaces, were blended with the more simple actions of the West; and the fate of Britain depended, on the art, or the predictions, of Merlin. Every nation embraced and adorned the popular romance of Arthur, and the Knights of the Round Table: their names were celebrated in Greece and Italy; and the voluminous tales of Sir Lancelot and Sir Tristram were devoutly studied by the princes and nobles, who disregarded the genuine heroes and historians of antiquity. As length the light of science and reason was rekindled; the table was broken; the visionary fabric melted into air; and by a natural, though unjust, reverse of the public opinion, the severity of the present age is inclined to question the existence of Arthur.

Resistance, if it cannot avert, must increase the miseries of conquest; and conquest has never appeared more disastrous and destructive than in the hands of the Saxons, who hated the valour of their enemies, disdained the faith of treaties, and violated, without rea

In Gosnay, 5th ed. Meth. Park, 1735. Later accurate the

139. Oke, in his statement (p. 21) that Alexander went the

140. Oke, in his statement (p. 21) that Alexander was the

141. Oke, in his statement (p. 21) that Alexander's

142. Oke, in his statement (p. 21) that Alexander

143. Oke, in his statement (p. 21) that Alexander

144. Oke, in his statement (p. 21) that Alexander
the sacred objects of the Christian worship. The fields of battle might be traced, almost in every district, by monuments of bones; the fragments of falling towers were stained with blood; the last of the Britons, without distinction of age or sex, was massacred, in the ruins of Ambrosia; and the repetition of such calamities was frequent and familiar under the Saxon baptistry. The arts and religion, the laws and language, which the Romans had so carefully planted in Britain, were extirpated by their barbarous successors. After the destruction of the principal churches, the bishops, who had declined the crown of martyrdom, retired with the holy relics into Wales and Armorica; the remains of their flocks were left destitute of any spiritual food; the practices, and even the remembrance, of Christianity were abolished; and the British clergy might obtain some comfort from the damnation of the idolatrous strangers. The kings of France maintained the privileges of their Roman subjects; but the ferocious Saxons trampled on the laws of Rome, and of the emperors. The proceedings of civil and criminal jurisdiction, the titles of honour, the forms of office, the ranks of society, and even the domestic rights of marriage, testament, and inheritance, were finally suppressed; and the indiscriminate crowd of nodus and plebeian slaves was governed by the traditional customs, which had been coarsely framed for the shepherds and pirates of Germany. The language of science, of business, and of conversation, which had been introduced by the Romans, was lost in the general desolation. A sufficient number of Latin or Celtic words might be assumed by the Germans, to express their new wants and ideas; but these alienate Paganism preserved and established the use of their national dialect. Almost every name, conspicuous either in the church or state, reveals its Teutonic origin; and the geography of England was universally inscribed with foreign characters and appellations. The example of a revolution, so rapid and so complete, may not easily be found; but it will excite a probable suspicion, that the arts of Rome were less deeply rooted in Britain than in Gaul or Spain; and that the native rudeness of the country and its inhabitants, was covered by a thin varnish of Italian manners.

This strange alteration has perplexed historians, and even philosophers, that the provinces of Britain were totally exterminated; and that the vacant land was again peopled by the perpetual influx, and rapid increase, of the German colonists. Three hundred thousand Saxons are said to have obeyed the summons of Hengist; but the entire emigration of the Angles was fomented, in the age of Bede, by the solitude of their native country; and our experience has shown the free propagation of the human race, if they are cast on a fruitful wilderness, where their steps are unconfined, and their subsistence is plentiful. The Saxon kingdoms displayed the face of recent discovery and cultivation; the towns were small, the villages distant; the husbandry was languid and unfruitful; four sheep were equivalent to an acre of the best land; a ample space of wood and meadows was assigned to the vague domination of nature; and the modern bishopric of Durham, the whole territory from the Tyne to the Tweed, had returned to its primitive state of a savage and solitary forest. Such imperfect population might have been supplied, in some generations, by the English colonies: but neither reason nor facts can justify the unnatural supposition, that the Saxons of Britain remained alone in the desert which they had subdued. After the conquering barbarians had secured their dominion, and graffed their revenge, it was their interest to preserve the peasants, as well as the cattle, of the unresisting country. In such successive revolution, the patient hand becomes the property of its new masters; and the salubrity compact of food and labour is silently ratified by their mutual necessities. Wilfrid, the apologist of Sussex, accepted from his royal convert the gift of the peninsula of Solway, near Chichester, with the persons and property of its inhabitants, who then amounted to eighty-seven families. He released them at once from spiritual and temporal bondage; and two hundred and fifty slaves of both sexes were baptized by their indulgent master. The kingdom of Sussex, which spread from the sea to the Thames, contained seven thousand families: twelve hundred were ascribed to the Isle of Wight: and, if we multiply this vague computation, it may seem probable, that England was cultivated by a million of servants, or slaves, who were attached to the estates of their arbitrary landlords. The indigent barbarians were often tempted to sell their children or themselves into servitude, and even foreign, bondage; yet the special exceptions, which were granted to national slaves, sufficiently declare that they were much less numerous than the strangers and captives, who had lost their liberty, or changed

---

189 The joiners ESHM (of or from Ambleside) Anselmi Fenster at Westmister struck out in instrument: also as we some Boles I suppose Earl (Chauc. Schorn. p. 156) no expression more dreadful in his dissipation, than all the signs and marks of civilization of the Saxons.

192 Anselmi Fenster, or Ambleside, is placed by Chaucer (Boles I. 50) in Westmister, which might be sufficiently proved by the sea, and on the side of the Church of St. Paul, which comprised at least a portion of Ambleside and Bristol.

183 Dr. Goodwin affirms that few English works are of Etonian origin; but his opinion is not sufficiently supported by facts. His Etonian shows more strain from Norman, and actually produced, in his own time, that many of these works may have been preserved from the Etonian, who, in the time of the Conquest, was the greatest collection of knowledge in England.

184 In the beginning of the seventh century, the Franks and the Germans had uniformly adopted such languages and dialects, which were derived from the same. Termini like Etonian, Saxon, &c. are still used.

185 After the first generation of Indians, or Anglo-Saxons, abode in the western parts of Britain, the Germani, who were more numerous, were in the east, and the Britons, in the west; and the laws and civilization of the former were brought into the latter, which is the origin of the Saxon laws and civilization.

186 In the history of Sussex, the word, they could not be too far advanced beyond the same.
their masters, by the accidents of war. When time and religion had mitigated the fierce spirit of the Anglo-Saxons, the laws encouraged the frequent practice of massacre; and their subjects, of Welsh or Cautrian extraction, assumed the respectable station of inferior freemen, possessed of lands, and entitled to the rights of civil society. Such gentle treatment negatug the allegiance of a fierce people, who had been recently subdued on the confines of Wales and Cornwall. The siege Ina, the legislator of Wessex, united the ten nations in the bands of domestic alliance; and four British lords of Somersetshire may be honorably distinguished in the court of a Saxon monarch.

The independent Britons appear to have relapsed into the state of original barbarism, from whence they had been imperfectly reclaimed. Separated by their enemies from the rest of mankind, they soon became an object of scandal and abhorrence to the Catholic world. Christianity was still prosessed in the mountains of Wales; but the rude schismatics, in the form of the clerical tanure, and in the day of the celebrations of Easter, obstinately resisted the imperious mandates of the Roman pontiffs. The use of the Latin language was insensibly abolished, and the Britons were deprived of the arts and learning which Italy communicated to her Saxon proselytes. In Wales and Armorica, the Celtic tongue, the native idiom of the West, was preserved and propagated; and the Bards, who had been the companions of the Druids, were still protected, in the sixteenth century, by the laws of Elizabeth. Their chief, a respectable officer of the courts of Pengwern, or Aberfraw, or Caermathen, accompanied the king's servants to war: the monarchy of the Britons, which so long in the front of battle, excited their courage, and justified their pretensions; and the songster claimed for his legitimate prize the fairest heiress of the spoil. His subordinate ministers, the masters and disciples of vocal and instrumental music, visited, in their respective circuits, the royal, the noble, and the plebeian houses; and the public poverty, almost exhausted by the clergy, was oppressed by the importunate demands of the lords. Their rank and merit were ascertained by solemn trials, and the strong belief of supernatural inspiration excited the veneration of the poet, and of his audience. The last retreats of Celtic freedom, the extreme territories of Gaul and Brittan, were less adapted to agriculture than to Pasture: the wealth of the Britons consisted in their flocks and herds; milk and flesh were their ordinary food; and bread was sometimes prepared, or rejected, as a foreign luxury. Liberty had peopled the mountains of Wales and the moorlands of Armorica; but their population has been maliciously ascribed to the loose practice of polygamy; and the houses of these licentious barbarians have been supposed to contain ten wives, and perhaps fifty children. Their disposition was rash and choleric: they were bold in action and in speech; and as they were ignorant of the arts of peace, they alternately indulged their passions in foreign and domestic war. The cavalry of Armorica, the spearman of Gwen, and the archers of Morionell, were equally formidable; but their poverty could seldom procure either shields or helmets; and the inconvenient weight would have retarded the speed and agility of their desultory operations. One of the greatest of the English monarchs was requested to satisfy the curiosity of a Greek emperor concerning the state of Britain; and Henry II. could assert, from his personal experience, that Wales was inhabited by a race of naked warriors, who encountered, without fear, the defensive armour of their enemies.

By the revolution of Britain, the limits of science, as well as of empire, were contracted. The dark cloud, which had been cleared by the Phoenician discoveries, and finally dispelled by the arms of Julius Caesar, again settled on the shores of the Atlantic, and a Roman province was again lost among the fabulous islands of the ocean. One hundred and fifty years after the reign of Augustus, the gravest historians of the times describe the wonders of a remote isle, whose eastern and western parts are divided by an antique wall, the boundary of life and death, or more properly, of truth and fiction. The east is a fair country, inhabited by a civilised people: the air is healthy, the waters are pure and plentiful, and the earth yields her regular and fruitful increase. In the west, beyond the wall, the air is infectious and mortal: the ground is covered with serpents; and this dreary solitude is the region of departed spirits, who are transported from the opposite shores in substantial boats, and by living rowers. Some families of phalernus, the subjects of the Franks, are excused from tribute, in consideration of the mysterious office which is performed by those Charons of the ocean. Each in his turn is summoned, at the hour of midnight, to bear the voices, and even the names, of the ghosts: he is sensible of their weight, and he feels himself impelled by an unknown, but irresistible, power. After this dream of fancy, we read with astonishment the story of a country where human life is considered as a mere sport, and where the edges of the sea are considered as the bounds of the world.
nishment, that the name of this island is Britain; that it lies in the ocean, against the mouth of the Rhine, and less than thirty miles from the continent; that it is possessed by three nations, the Franks, the Angles, and the Britons; and that some Angles had appeared at Constantinople, in the time of the French ambassadors. From these ambassadors Priscopes might be inferred of a singular, though an improbable, adventure, which ananceth the spirit, rather than the delicacy, of an English historian. She had been betrothed to Hadiger, king of the Varni, a tribe of Angles, who touched the ocean and the Rhine; but the perfidious lovers was tempted, by motives of policy, to prefer his father's widow, the sister of Theuderic king of the Franks.108 The forlorned princess of the Angles, instead of bewailing her disgrace, her warlike subjects are said to have been ignorant of the use, and even of the form, of an horse; but she boldly sailed from Britain to the mouth of the Rhine, with a fleet of four hundred ships and an army of one hundred thousand men. After the loss of a battle, the captive Hadiger implored the mercy of his victorious bride, who generously pardoned his offence, dismissed her rival, and compelled the king of the Varni to discharge with honour and fidelity the duties of an husband.109 This gallant exploit appears to be the last naval enterprise of the Anglo-Saxons. The arts of navigation, by which they had acquired the empire of Britain and of the sea, were soon neglected by the indolent barbarians, who slowly reacquainted all the commercial advantages of their insular situation. Seven independent kingdoms were agitated by perpetual discord; and the British church was seldom connected, either in peace or war, with the nations of the continent.110

I have now accomplished the laborious narrative of the decline and fall of the Roman empire, from the fortunate age of Trajan and the Antonines, to its total extinction in the West, about five centuries after the Christian era. At that unhappy period, the Saxons fiercely struggled with the natives for the possession of Britain: Gaul and Spain were divided between the powerful monarchies of the Franks and Visigoths, and the dependent kingdoms of the Suevi and Burgundians; Africa was exposed to the cruel persecution of the Vandals, and the savage insults of the Moors: Rome and Italy, as far as the banks of the Danube, were afflicted by an army of barbarian mercenaries, whose lawless tyranny was succeeded by the reign of Theodoric the Ostrogoth. All the subjects of the empire, who, by the use of the Latin language, more particularly described the name and privileges of Romans, were oppressed by the disgrace and calamities of foreign conquest; and the victorious nations of Germany established a new system of manners and government in the western counties of Europe. The majesty of Rome was fairly represented by the prince of Constantinople, the feeble and imaginary successors of Augustus. Yet they continued to reign over the East, from the Danube to the Nile and Tigris; the Gothic and Vandal kingdoms of Italy and Africa were subverted by the arms of Justinian; and the history of the Greek emperors may still afford a long series of instructive lessons, and interesting revolutions.

General Observations on the Fall of the Roman Empire in the West.

The Greeks, after their country had been reduced into a province, imputed the triumphs of Rome, not to the merit, but to the resources, of the republic. The inconstant goddess, who so blindly distributes and resumes her favours, had now consented (such was the language of various flattery) to resign her wings, to descend from her globe, and to fix her firm and immutable throne on the banks of the Tyber.1 A wise Greek, who has composed, with a philosophic spirit, the memorable history of his own times, deprived his countryman of this vain and defensive comfort, by opening to their view the deep foundations of the greatness of Rome.2 The fidelity of the citizens to each other, and to the state, was confirmed by the habits of education, and the prejudices of religion. Honour, as well as virtue, was the principle of the republic; the ambitious citizens laboured to deserve the solemnities of a triumph; and the sonority of the Roman youth was kindled into active emulation, as often as they beheld the domestic images of their ancestors.3 The temperate struggles of the patricians and plebeians had finally established the firm and equal balance of the constitution; which united the freedom of popular assemblies, with the authority and wisdom of a senate, and the executive powers of a regal magistrate. When the consuls displayed the standard of the republic, each citizen bound himself, by the obligation of an oath, to draw his sword in the cause of his country, till he had discharged the sacred duty by a military service of ten years. This wise institution continued

108 Theodoric, consul of Chris; and king of the Ostrogoths, was the most powerful and wise prince of the age; and this memorable act of the age should have been well known to the English historian. His most Theodoric’s conduct in the east bore the weight of the empire upon the shoulder of his own. To the people of the empire upon the shoulder of the emperor Augustus. To the people of the empire upon the shoulder of the emperor Augustus.

109 In the primitive history of history, we read that "the Britons, in their battle against the Saxons, not only obtained the victory, but also forced them to pay tribute."

110 In the original history of history, we read that "the Britons, in their battle against the Saxons, not only obtained the victory, but also forced them to pay tribute."
poured into the field the rising generations of freemen and soldiers; and their numbers were reinforced by the warlike and populous states of Italy, who, after a brave resistance, had yielded to the valour, and entered the alliance, of the Romans. The sage historian, who excised the virtue of the younger Scipio, and beheld the ruin of Carthage, has accurately described their military system; their levies, arms, exercises, subordination, marches, encampments; and the invincible legion, superior in active strength to the Macedonian phalanx of Philip and Alexander. From these institutions of peace and war, Polybius has deduced the spirit and success of a people, invincible in fear, and impatient of repose. The ambitious design of conquest, which might have been defeated by the Reasonable conspiracies of mankind, was attempted and achieved; and the perpetual violation of justice was maintained by the political virtues of prudence and courage. The arms of the republic, sometimes vanquished in battle, always victorious in war, advanced with rapid steps to the Euphrates, the Danube, the Rhine, and the Ocean; and the images of gold, or silver, or brass, that might serve to represent the nations and their kings, were successively broken by the iron majesty of Rome.

The rise of the city, which swelled into an empire, may deserve, as a singular prodigy, the reflection of a philosophic mind. But the decline of Rome was the natural and inevitable effect of immoderate greatness. Prosperity ripened the principles of decay; the causes of destruction multiplied with the extent of conquest; and as soon as time or accident had removed the artificial supports, the stupendous fabric yielded to the pressure of its own weight. The story of its ruin is simple and obvious; and instead of enquiring why the Roman empire was destroyed, we should rather be surprised that it had subsisted so long. The victorious legions, who, in distant wars, acquired the vices of strangers and mercenaries, first oppressed the freedom of the republic, and afterwards violated the majesty of the purple. The emperors, anxious for their personal safety and the public peace, were reduced to the base expedient of corrupting the discipline which rendered them alike formidable to their sovereign and to the enemy; the vigour of the military government was relaxed, and finally dissolved, by the partial institutions of Constantine; and the Roman world was overwhelmed by a deluge of barbarians.

The decay of Rome has been frequently ascribed to the translation of the seat of empire; but this history has already shown, that the powers of government were disposed rather than removed. The throne of Constantinople was exalted in the East; while the West was still possessed by a series of emperors who held their residence in Italy, and claimed their equal influence of the legions and provinces. This dangerous novelty impaired the strength, and forsook the vices, of a double reign; the instruments of an oppressive and arbitrary system were multiplied; and a vain emulation of luxury, not of merit, was introduced and supported between the degenerate successors of Theodosius. Extreme distress, which unites the vices of a free people, embittered the fashions of a declining monarchy. The hostile favourites of Arcadius and Honorius betrayed the republic to its common enemies; and the Byzantine court beheld with indifference, perhaps with pleasure, the disgrace of Rome, the misfortunes of Italy, and the loss of the West. Under the succeeding reigns, the alliance of the two empires was restored; but the aid of the Oriental Romans was tardy, doubtful, and inefficient; and the national Genius of the Greeks and Latins was enlarged by the perpetual difference of language and manners, of interest, and even of religion. Yet the salutary event approved itself, and the renown of Constantine. During a long period of decay, his impregnable city repelled the victorious armies of barbarians, protected the wealth of Asia, and commanded, both in peace and war, the important events which connect the Euxine and Mediterranean Seas. The foundation of Constantinople more essentially contributed to the preservation of the East than to the ruin of the West.

As happiness of a future life is the great object of religion, we may hear without surprise or scandal, that the introduction, or at least the abuse, of Christianity, had some influence on the decline and fall of the Roman empire. The clergy successfully preached the doctrines of patience and penitenance; the active virtues of society were discouraged; and the last remains of military spirit were buried in the cloister: a large portion of public and private wealth was consecrated to the specious demands of charity and devotion; and the soldiers' pay was levied on the useless multitudes of both sexes, who could only plead the merits of abstinence and charity. Faith, zeal, and curiosity, and the more earthly passions of jealousy and ambition, kindled the flame of theological discord; the church, and even the state, were distracted by religious factions, whose conflicts were sometimes bloody, and always incommensurable; the attention of the emperors was diverted from camps to synods; and the Roman world was oppressed by a new species of tyranny; and the persecuted sects became the secret enemies of their country. Yet, party spirit, however pernicious or absurd, is a principle of union, as well as of discord. The bishops, from eighteen hundred pulpits, inculcated the duty of passive obedience to a lawful and orthodox sovereign; their frequent assemblies, and perpetual correspondence, maintained the communion of distant churches; and the benevolent temper of the Gospel was strengthened, though confused, by the spiritual alliance of the Catholics. The sacred inculcation of the monks...
was deeply embraced by a servile and effemi-
tate age; but if superstition had not afforded a
decent retreat, the same vices would have
emptied the unworthy Romans to desert, from
tiller motives, the standard of the republic.
Religious precepts are easily obeyed, which in-
doctrine and sanctify the natural inclinations of
their votaries; but the pure and genuine influ-
ence of Christianity may be traced in its benefi-
cial, though imperfect, effects on the barbarian
goulties of the North. If the decline of the
Roman empire was hastened by the conversion
of Constantius, his victorious religion broke the
violence of the fall, and nullified the ferocious
temper of the conquerors.

This useful revolution may be usefully applied
to the instruction of the present age. It is the
duty of a patriot to prefer and promote the ex-
cclusive interest and glory of his native country:
but a philosopher may be permitted to enlarge
his views, and to consider Europe as one great
republic, whose various inhabitants have attained
almost the same level of politeness and cultiva-
tion. The balance of power will continue to
fluctuate, and the prosperity of our own, or the
neighbouring kingdoms, may be alternately eval-
ad or depressed; but these partial events can-
not essentially injure our general state of
happiness, the system of arts, and laws, and
manners, which so advantageously distinguish
the rest of mankind, the Europeans and
their ancients.

The revolutions of the globe are the common
enemies of civilised society; and we may enquire
with anxious curiosity, whether Europe is still threatened with a
petition of those calamities, which formerly op-
pressed the arms and institutions of Rome.
Perhaps the same reflections will illustrate the
fall of that mighty empire, and explain the pro-
labie causes of our actual security.

I. The Romans were ignorant of the extent
of their danger, and the number of their en-
emies. Beyond the Rhine and Danube, the
Northern countries of Europe and Asia were
filled with innumerable tribes of hunters and
shepherds, poor, voracious, and turbulent; bold
in arms, and impatient to ravish the fruits of
industry. The barbarian world was agitated by
the rapid impulse of war; and the peace of
Gaul or Italy was shaken by the distant revolu-
tions of China. The Huns, who fled before a
victorious enemy, directed their march towards
the West; and the torrent was swallowed by the
gradual accession of captives and allies. The
flying tribes who yielded to the Huns, assumed
in their turn the spirit of conquest; the endless
columns of barbarians pressed on the Roman
empire with accumulated weight; and, if the
Romans were destroyed, the vacant space was
instantly replenished by new assailants. Such
formidable emigrations can no longer issue from
the North; and the long repose, which has been
imputed to the decrease of population, is the
happy consequence of the progress of arts and
agriculture. Instead of some rude villages,
thinly scattered among its woods and morasses,
Germany now produces a list of two thousand
three hundred walled towns; the Christian
kingdoms of Denmark, Sweden, and Poland,
have been successively established; and the
Hanse merchants, with the Teutonic knights,
have extended their colonies along the coast of
the Baltic, as far as the Gulf of Finland.
From the Gulf of Finland to the Eastern Ocean,
Russia now assumes the form of a powerful and
civilised empire. The plough, the loom, and the
fury, are introduced on the banks of the
Volga, the Oly, and the Lena; and the flocks of
the Tartar hordes have been taught to tumble
and obey. The reign of independent barbarism
is now contracted to a narrow span; and the
remnant of Cæmmer or Unzecks, whose forces
may be almost numbered, cannot seriously ex-
cite the apprehensions of the great republic of
Europe. Yet this apparent security should not
tempt us to forget that new enemies, and un-
known dangers, may possibly arise from some
obscure people, scarcely visible in the map of
the world. The Arabs or Saracens, who spread
their conquests from India to Spain, had langu-
sished in poverty and contempt, till Mahomet
breathed into those savage bodies the soul of
enthusiasm.

II. The empire of Rome was firmly esta-
blished by the singular and perfect coalition of
its members. The subject nations, resigning
the hope, and even the wish, of independence,
embraced the character of Roman citizens; and
the provinces of the West were reluctantly torn
by the barbarians from the bosom of their mo-
ther country. But this union was purchased
by the loss of national freedom and military
spirit; and the servile provincials, destitute of
life and motion, expected their safety from the
mercenary troops and governors, who were di-
rected by the orders of a distant court. The
happiness of an hundred millions depended on
the personal merit of one or two men, perhaps
children, whose minds were corrupted by educa-
tion, luxury, and despotic power. The deepest
wounds were inflicted on the empire during the
minorities of the sons and grandsons of Theo-
dus; and, after those incapable princes
seemed to attain the age of manhood, they aban-
doncd the church to the bishops, the state to the
churches, and the provinces to the barbarians.
Europe is now divided into twelve powerful,
though unequal, kingdoms, three respectable
commonwealths, and a variety of smaller, though
independent, states: the chances of royal and
ministerial talents are multiplied, at least, with
the number of its rulers; and a Julian, or Sevi-
rus, may reign in the North, while Atelasus
and Honorius again slumber on the throne of the
South. The abuses of tyranny are restrained
by the mutual influence of fear and shame; repu-
} The French and English editors of the Historiography
of the Tottan, and illustrated a system, though tortured, of
their own power state. We might question the independence
of the Lethenians, the Thracians, the Sarmatians, the
Lithuanians, and the Russians, under the Binus.

3The French and English editors of the Historiography
of the Tottan, and illustrated a system, though tortur
or, at least, of moderation; and some sense of honour and justice is introduced into the most defective constitutions by the general manners of the times. In peace, the progress of knowledge and industry is accelerated by the emulation of so many active rivals: in war, the European forces are exercised by temperate and modest contests. If a savage conqueror should issue from the deserts of Tartary, he must repeatedly vanquish the robust peoples of Russia, the numerous armies of Germany, the gallant nobles of France, and the intrepid freemen of Britain; who, perhaps, might confess for their common defence. Should the victorious barbarians carry slavery and desolation as far as the Atlantic Ocean, ten thousand vessels would transport beyond their pursuit the remains of civilised society: and Europe would revive and flourish in the American world, which is already filled with her colonies, and institutions.

III. Cold, poverty, and a life of danger and fatigues, fortify the strength and courage of barbarians. In every age they have oppressed the polite and peaceful nations of China, India, and Persia, who neglected, and still neglect, to counterbalance these natural powers by the resources of military art. The warlike states of antiquity, Greece, Macedonia, and Rome, educated a race of soldiers; exercised their bodies, disciplined their courage, multiplied their forces by regular evolutions, and converted the iron, which they possessed, into strong and serviceable weapons. But this superiority immemorially declined with their laws and manners; and the feeble power of Constantine and his successors armed and instructed, for the ruin of the empire, the rude valor of the barbarian mercenaries. The military art has been changed by the invention of gunpowder; which enables man to command the two most powerful agents of nature, air and fire. Mathematics, chemistry, mechanics, architecture, have been applied to the service of war; and the adverse parties oppose to each other the most elaborate modes of attack and of defence. Historians may indignantly observe, that the preparations of a siege would found and maintain a flourishing colony: yet we cannot be displeased, that the subversion of a city should be a work of cost and difficulty; or that an industrious people should be protected by those arts, which survive and supply the decay of military virtue. Cannon and fortifications now form an impregnable barrier against the Tartar horse; and Europe is secure from any future insurrection of barbarians, since, before they can compass, they must cease to be barbarians. Their gradual advances in the science of war would always be accompanied, as we may learn from the example of Russia, with a proportionable improvement in the arts of peace and civil policy; and they themselves must deserve a place among the polished nations whom they subdue.

Should these speculations be found foolish or fallacious, there still remains a more humble source of comfort and hope. The discoveries of ancient and modern navigators, and the domestic history, or tradition, of the most enlightened nations, represent the human species, naked both in mind and body, and destitute of laws, of arts, of ideas, and almost of language. From this abject condition, perhaps the primitive and universal state of man, he has gradually arisen to command the animals, to fertilise the earth, to traverse the ocean, and to measure the heavens. His progress in the improvement and exercise of his mental and corporeal faculties has been irregular and various; infinitely slow in the beginning, and increasing by degrees with redoubled velocity. Ages of barbarous ascent have been followed by a moment of rapid downfall; and the several climates of the globe have felt the vicissitudes of light and darkness. Yet the experience of four thousand years should enlarge our hopes, and diminish our apprehensions. We cannot determine to what height the human species may aspire in their advances towards perfection; but it may safely be presumed, that no people, unless the face of nature is changed, will relapse into their original laws and manners. All the improvements of society may be viewed under a threefold aspect. 1. The poet or philosopher illustrates his age and country by the efforts of a single mind; but these superior powers of reason or fancy are rare and spontaneous productions, and the geniuses of Homer, or Cicero, or Newton, would excite less admiration, if they could be created by the will of a prince, or the lessons of a preceptor. 2. The benefits of law and polities, of trade and manufactures, of arts and sciences, are more solid and permanent: and every individual may be qualified, by education and discipline, to promote, in their respective stations, the interest of the community. But this general order is the effect of skill and labour; and the complex machinery may be decayed by time, or injured by violence. 3. Fortunately for mankind, the more useful, or, at least, more necessary arts, can be performed without superior talents, or national subordination; without the powers of war, or the union of many. Each village, each family, each individual, must always possess both ability and inclination, to perpetuate the use of fire and of metals; the
propagation and service of domestic animals; the methods of hunting and fishing; the rudiments of navigation; the imperfect cultivation of corn, or other nutritive grain; and the simple practice of the mechanic trades. Private genius and public industry may be extirpated; but these hardy plants survive the tempest, and strike an everlasting root into the most unfavourable soil. The splendid days of Augustus and Trajan were eclipsed by a cloud of ignorance; and the barbarians subverted the laws and palaces of Rome. But the scythe, the invention, or emblem of Saturn, still continued annually to mow the harvests of Italy; and the human beasts of the Lustrigons have never been renewed on the coast of Campania.

Since the first discovery of the arts, war, commerce, and religious zeal, have diffused, among the savages of the Old and New World, these insensible gifts; they have been successively propagated; they have never been lost. We may therefore conclude in the pleasing conclusion, that every age of the world has improved, and still improves, the real wealth, the happiness, the knowledge, and perhaps the virtue, of the human race. 13

CHAP. XXXIX.

Zeno and Anastasius, Emperors of the East.—Birth, Education, and First Exploits of Theodoric the Ostrogoth.—His Invasion and Conquest of Italy.—The Gothic Kingdom of Italy.—State of the West.—Military and Civil Government.—The Senator Belisarius.—Last Acts and Death of Theodoric.

A.D. 472—493.

After the fall of the Roman empire in the West, an interval of fifty years, till the memorable reign of Justinian, is faintly marked by the obscure names and imperfect annals of Zeno, Anastasius, and Justin, who successively ascended the throne of Constantineople. During the same period, Italy revived and flourished under the government of a Gothic king, who might have deserved a station amongst the best and bravest of the ancient Romans.

Theodoric, the Ostrogoth, the fourteenth in lineal descent of the royal line of the Amali, 1 was born in the neighbourhood of Vienna two years after the death of Attila. A recent victory had restored the independence of the Ostrogoths; and the three brothers, Walaamir, Thoedemir, and Wilamir, who ruled that warlike nation with united counsels, had separately pitched their habitations in the fertile though salutar province of Pannonia. The Huns still threatened their revolted subjects, but their lasty attack was repelled by the single forces of Walaamir, and the news of his victory reached the distant camp of his brother in the same auspicious moment that the favourious concurrence of Thoedemir was delivered of a son and heir.

In the eighth year of his age, Thoedoric was reluctantly yielded by his father to the public interest, as the pledge of an alliance which Leo, emperor of the East, had entered into to purchase by an annual subsidy of three hundred pounds of gold. The royal hostage was educated at Constantinople with care and tenderness. His body was formed to all the exercises of war, his mind was expanded by the habits of liberal conversation; he frequented the schools of the most skilful masters; but he disdained or neglected the arts of Greece, and so ignor ant did he always remain of the first elements of science, that a rudeness of speech was contrived to represent the ignorance of the illustrious king of Italy. 2 As soon as he had attained the age of eighteen, he was restored to the wishes of the Ostrogoths, whom the emperor aspirit to gain by liberality and confidence. Walaamir had fallen in battle; the youngest of the brothers, Willamir, had led away into Italy and Gaul an army of barbarians, and the whole nation acknowledged for their king the father of Thoedoric. His servile subjects admired the strength and stature of their young prince; 3 and he soon convinced them that he had not degenerated from the valour of his ancestors. At the head of six thousand volunteers, he secretly left the camp in quest of adventures, descended the Danube as far as Singidunum or Belgrade, and soon returned to his father with the spoils of a Saran nation whom he had vanquished and slain. Such triumphs, however, were productive only of fame, and the invincible Ostrogoths were reduced to extreme distress by the want of clothing and food. They unanimously resolved to desert their Pannonian encampments, and boldly to advance into the warm and wealthy neighbourhood of the Byzantine court, which already maintained in pride and luxury so many bands of confederate Goths. After proving by some acts of hostility that they could be dangerous, or at least troublesome enemies, the Ostrogoths were sold at a high price their reconciliation and fidelity, accepted a donation of lands.


2 In the ninth and tenth books of the Library, Honor has contrived to confine his admiration to the fact and boast of the young prince's martial resolution and acrobatic skill, and the horrid person with which he was encumbered.

3 Thoedoric the Ostrogoth was of the strenuous disposition of his ancestors; his courage was acquired by experience, and the effects of military life were not the cause of his fatal accident. The same prince, adopting his predecessors in the produce of the soil, was a noble landowner; and his industry increased the lustre of the family. The genius of the Roman Gens might be revived by the example of the Barbic Gens.

4 Vandalus is a Hibernian name, whose source is obscure. The historian, who has collected the materials for this chapter, has been chiefly indebted to the works of the Roman and Gothic Annals of the reign of Justinian, and to the several works of the historians of the Barbarian nations. In the consideration of these writers there are frequent passages with the legend at fidecentia of his native country.

5 The history of the war between the Ostrogoths and the Huns, in the reign of Thoedoric, is collected from the works of the historians of the Gothic nation.

6 Orosius, Lib. 6. 23. 13. Gellius, p. 49. Auct. de Mon. p. 2. 252. Dacius, p. 252. Gallier, Geograp. Antiq. tom. 1. p. 592. The people of the Ostrogoths are distinguished by the appellation of Ostrii, as the Ostienses of the Lombards are described by the appellation of Ostrii, and the Ostienses of the Burgundians are described by the appellation of Ostienses. The Ostienses were divided into two nations, the Ostienses and the Ostienses, and were considered as a single nation by the Romans, who are described by the appellation of Ostienses, and the Ostienses, and the Ostienses, and the Ostienses, and the Ostienses.

7 His historian, the Emperor Leo, was of the same nation as the Ostrogoths, and his account of the war between the Ostrogoths and the Huns is not the less valuable.
and money, and were intrusted with the defence of the lower Danube, under the command of Theodoric, who succeeded after his father's death to the hereditary title of the Amali. The reign of Anaxarcus, descended from a race of kings, must have despaired the base Persian who was invested with the Roman purple, without any endowments of mind or body, without any advantages of royal birth, or superior qualifications. After the failure of the Thracian line, the choice of Pulcheria and of theSenate might be justified in some measure by the characters of Marcellus and Leo, but the latter of these princes confirmed and disowned his reign by the perfidious murder of Aspar and his sons, who too rigorously exacted the debt of gratitude and obedience. The inheritance of Leo and of the East was peaceably devolved on his infant grandson, the son of his daughter Ariadne; and her Lusitanian husband, the fortunate Tascassius, exchanged that barbarous sound for the Greek appellation of Zeno. After the decease of the elder Leo, he approached with unnatural respect the throne of his son, humbly received, as a gift, the second rank in the empire, and soon excited the public suspicion on the sudden and premature death of his young colleague, whose life could no longer promote the success of his ambition. But the palace of Constantinople was ruled by female influence, and agitated by female factions; and Zeno, the widow of Leo, claiming his empire as her own, pronounced a sentence of deposition against the worthless and ingrateful servant on whom she alone had bestowed the sceptre of the East.

As soon as she sounded a revolt in the ears of Zeno, he fled with precipitation into the mountains of Iberia, and his brother Basiliscus, already infamous by his African expedition, was unanimously proclaimed by the servile senate. But the reign of the usurper was short and tumultuous. Basiliscus presumed to assassinate the lover of his sister; he dared to offend the lover of his wife, the vain and insolent Harmatius, who, in the midst of Asiatic luxury, affected the dress, the demeanour, and the surname of Artillius. By the conspiracy of the adherents, Zeno was recalled from exile, the armies, the capital, the person of Basiliscus, were betrayed; and his whole family was condemned to the long agony of cold and hunger by the inhuman conqueror, who wanted courage to encounter or to forgive his enemies. The haughty spirit of Zeno was still irascible by submission or reprieve. She provoked the envy of a favourite general, embraced his cause as soon as he was disgraced, created a new emperor in Syria and Egypt, raised an army of seventy thousand men, and persisted to the last moment of her life in a fruitless rebellion, which, according to the fashion of the age, had been predicted by Christian hermits and pagan magicians. While the East was afflicted by the passions of Vertius, her daughter Ariadne was distinguished by the female virtues of mildness and fidelity; she followed her husband in his exile, and after his restoration she implored his clemency in favour of her mother. On the decease of Zeno, Ariadne, the daughter, the mother, and the widow of an emperor, gave up her hand and the imperial title to Anastasius, an aged domestic of the palace, who survived his elevation above twenty-seven years, and whose character is attested by the acclamations of the people. "Reign as you have lived!"

Whatever fear or affluence could bestow, was profusely lavished by Zeno on the king of the Ostrogoths; the rank of patriarch and consul, the command of the Palatine troops, an equestrian status, a treasure in gold and silver of many thousand pounds, the name of son, and the promise of a rich and honourable wife. As long as Theodoric could descend to serve, he supported with courage and fidelity the cause of his benefactor; his rapid march contributed to the restorations of Zeno; and in the second revolt, the Palatines, as they were called, pursued and pressed the Gothic rebels, till they left an easy victory to the imperial troops. But the faithful servant was suddenly converted into a formidable enemy, who spread the flames of war from Constantinople to the Adriatic; many flourishing cities were reduced to ashes, and the agriculture of Thrace was almost extinguished by the warmest cruelty of the Goths, who deprived their captive peasants of the right hand that guided the plough.

On such occasions, Theodoric sustained the loud and specious reproach of disloyalty, of ingratitude, and of insatiate avarice, which could be only excused by the hard necessity of his situation. He resigned, not as the monarch, but as the minister of a ferocious people, whose spirit was unbroken by slavery, and impatient of real or imaginary insults. Their poverty was incurable; since the most liberal donations were soon dissipated in wasteful luxury, and the most fertile estates became barren in their hands; they despised, but they envied, the laborious provincials; and when their subsistence had failed, the Ostrogoths embraced the familiar resources of war and rapine. It had been the wish of Theodoric (such at least was his declaration), to lead a peaceful, obscure, obedient life, on the confines of Scythia, till the Byzantine court, by splendid and fallacious promises, seduced him to attack a confederate tribe of Goths, who had been

The reign of Zeno and Anastasius; and I must acknowledge, indeed for the last time, my submission to the hero and his court. But I am not without reason, in preference to the kind and the liberal hospitality of the Ostrogoths, to have adhered to the house of Zeno, and to have endeavoured to serve my country under a just and benevolent monarch. I have been used by Theodoric, I have been employed in the service of Vertius, I have been permitted to live in a happy country under the care of our friends and kindred; I have been used by Theodoric, I have been employed in the service of Vertius, I have been permitted to live in a happy country under the care of our friends and kindred; I have been used by Theodoric, I have been employed in the service of Vertius, I have been permitted to live in a happy country under the care of our friends and kindred; I have been used by Theodoric, I have been employed in the service of Vertius, I have been permitted to live in a happy country under the care of our friends and kindred;
engaged in the party of Basiliscus. He marched from his station in Asia, on the solemn assurance, that before he reached Adrianople, he should meet a plentiful convey of provisions, and a reinforcement of eight thousand horse and thirty thousand foot, while the legions of Asia were encamped at Heraclea to second his operations. These measures were disappointed by mutual jealousy. As he advanced into Thrace, the son of Theodemir found an inhospitable solitude, and his Gothic followers, with an heavy train of horses, of mules, and of wagons, were betrayed by their guides among the rocks and precipices of Mount Soudia, where he was assaulted by the arms and invective s of Theodoric the son of Triarius. From a neighbouring height, his artful rival baraquaged the camp of the Wadanes, and branded their leader with the opprobrious names of child, of madman, of perjured traitor, the enemy of his blood and nation. "Are you ignorant," exclaimed the son of Triarius, "that it is the constant policy of the Romans to destroy the Goths by each other's swords? Are you insensible that the victor in this unnatural contest will be exposed, and justly exposed, to their implacable wrath and revenge? Where are these warriors, my kinsmen and my own, whose sisters now lament that their lovers were sacrificed to thy rash ambition? Where is the wealth which thy soldiers possessed when they were first allowed from their native hames to enroll under thy standard? Each of them was then master of three or four horses; they now follow that on foot like slaves, through the deserts of Thrace; those men who were tempted by the hope of measuring gold with a beshat, those brave men who are as free and as noble as thyself." A language so well suited to the temper of the Goths, excited clamour and discontent; and the son of Theodemir, apprehensive of being left alone, was compelled to embrace his brethren, and to imitate the example of Roman perfidy.

In every state of his fortune, the prudence and firmness of Theodoric were equally conspicuous; whether he threatened Constantinople at the head of the confederate Goths, or retreated with a faithful band to the mountains and sea-coast of Epirus. At length the accidental death of the son of Triarius destroyed the balance which the Romans had been so anxious to preserve, the whole nation acknowledged the supremacy of the Asmali, and the Byzantine court subscribed an ignominious and oppressive treaty. The senate had already declared, that it was necessary to choose a party among the Goths, since the public was unequal to the support of their united forces; a subsidy of two thousand pounds of gold, with the ample pay of thirteen thousand men, were required for the least considerable of their armies; and the Iustians, who guarded not the empire but the emperor, enjoyed, besides the privilege of rapine, an annual pension of five thousand pounds. The sagacious mind of Theodoric soon perceived that he was odious to the Romans, and suspected by the barbarians; he understoood the popular murmur, that his subjects were exposed in their frozen huts to intolerable hardships, while their king was dissolved in the luxury of Greece, and he prevented the painful alternative of encountering the Goths, as the champion, or of leading them to the field as the enemy, of Zenon. Embracing an enterprise worthy of his courage and ambition, Theodoric addressed the emperor in the following words:

Although your servant is maintained in affluence by your liberality, graciously listen to the wishes of my heart! Italy, the inheritance of your predecessors, and Rome itself, the head and mistress of the world, now fluctuates under the violence and oppression of Odoacer the mercenary. Direct me, with my national troops, to march against the tyrant. If I fall, you will be relieved from an expensive and troublesome friend; if, with the Divine permission, I succeed, I shall govern in your name, and to your glory, the Roman senate, and the part of the republic delivered from slavery by my victorious arms." The proposal of Theodoric was accepted, and perhaps had been suggested, by the Byzantine court. But the terms of the commission or grant, appear to have been expressed with a prudent ambiguity, which might be explained by the event; and it was left doubtful, whether the conqueror of Italy should reign as the lieutenant, the vassal, or the ally of the emperor of the East.

The reputation both of the leader and of the war diffused an universal ardour; the Wadanes were multiplied by the Gothic swarm, already engaged in the service, or seated in the provinces of the empire; and each bold barbarian, who bad heard of the wealth and beauty of Italy, was impatient to seek, through the most perilous adventures, the possession of such enchanting objects. The march of Theodoric must be considered as the migration of an entire people; the women and children of the Goths, their aged parents, and most precious effects, were carefully transported; and some idea may be formed of the heavy baggage that now followed the camp, by the loss of two thousand wagons, which had been amassed in a single action in the war of Epirus. For their subsistence, the Goths depended on the magazines of corn which was ground in portable mills by the hands of their women; on the milk and flesh of their flocks and herds; on the casual produce of the chase, and upon the contributions which they might impose on all who should presume to dispute the passage, or to refuse their friendly assistance. Notwithstanding these pretexts, the point of a sword which hung before a way, or was fixed on a hill, took place in the common practice. Three regiments, composed of the sons of Theodoric, the grandson of the great Vithimir, and the sons of the Vitanic, were assigned to lead the army; and, as a second line ofbatalsion, a large body of horse charged the enemy. The Goths were met on the 1st of March on the plain of Frigidarium, where a long detrainment was sufficient to cover the imperial camp. The massacre of the Goths, who were not prepared for the attack, was more than twenty thousand.
cations, they were exposed to the danger, and almost to the distress of famine, in a march of seven hundred miles, which had been undertaken in the depth of a rigorous winter. Since the fall of the Roman power, Dacia and Pannonia no longer exhibited the rich prospect of populous cities, well cultivated fields, and convenient highways: the reign of barbarism and desolation was restored, and the tribes of Bulgarians, Ge- pilians, and Sarmatians, who had occupied the vacant province, were prompted by their native ferocity, or the solicitations of Odoscan, to resist the progress of his enemy. In many obscure though bloody battles, Theodoric fought and vanquished; till at length, surmounting every obstacle by skilful conduct and persevering courage, he descended from the Julian Alps, and displayed his invincible hammers on the confines of Italy. 17

Odoscan, a rival not unworthy of his arms, had already occupied the advantageous and well-known post of Aquilina near the ruins of the river Nontius. At Aquilina, at the head of a powerful host, whose independent kings 19 or leaders disputed the duties of subordination and the prudence of delays. No sooner had Theodoric granted a short repose and refreshment to his wearied cavalry, than he boldly attacked the fortifications of the enemy; the Ostrogoths showed more ardour to acquire, than the mercenaries to defend, the lands of Italy: and the reward of the first victory was the possession of the Venetian province so far as the walls of Verona. In the neighbourhood of that city, on the steep banks of the rapid Adige, he was opposed by a new army reinforced in its numbers, and not impaired in its courage: the contest was more obstinate, but the event was still more decisive; Odoscan fled to Ravenna, Theodoric advanced to Milan, and the vanquished troops saluted their conqueror with loud acclamations of respect and fidelity. But their want either of constancy or of faith, soon exposed him to the most imminent danger of his vanguard, with several Gothic captains, which had been rashly intrusted to a desert, was betrayed and destroyed near Pavia by his double treachery; Odoscan again appeared master of the field, and the invaders, strongly entrenched in his camp of Pavia, was reduced to solicit the aid of a kindred nation, the Visigoths of Gaul. In the course of this history, the most vigorous appetite for war will be abundantly satisfied; nor can I more earnestly say that our dark and imperfect materials do not afford a more ample narrative of the distress of Italy, and of the fierce conflict, which was finally decided by the abilities, experience, and valour of the Gothic king. Immediately before the battle of Verona, he visited the tent of his mother 20 and sister, and requested, that on a day, the most illustrious festival of his life, they would adorn him with the rich garments which they had worked with their own hands. "Our glory," he said, is eternal and inseparable. You are known to the world as the mother of Theodor- ric; and it becomes me to prove, that I am the genuine offspring of those heroes from whom I claim my descent." The wife or connubium of Theodoric was inspired with the spirit of the German matrons, who esteemed their sons' honour far above their safety; and it is reported, that in a desperate action, when Theodoric himself was hurried along by the torrent of a flying crowd, she boldly met them at the entrance of the camp, and, by her generous reproaches, drove them back on the swords of the enemy. 21

From the Alps to the extremity of Calabria, Theodoric reigned by the right of conquest; the ambassadors surrendered the island of Sicily, as a lawless appendage of his kingdom; and he was acknowledged as the deliverer of Rome by the senate and people, who had shut their gates against the flying usurper. 22 Ravenna alone, secure in the fortifications of art and nature, still sustained a siege of almost three years; and the daring exploits of Odoscan carried slaughter and dismay into the Gothic camp. At length, destitute of provisions and hopeless of relief, that unfortunate monarch yielded to the guns of his subjects and the clamours of his soldiers. A treaty of peace was negotiated by the bishop of Ravenna; the Ostrogoths were admitted into the city, and the hostile kings consecrated, under the sanction of an oath, to rule with equal and undivided authority the provinces of Italy. The event of such an agreement may be easily foreseen. After some days had been devoted to the semblance of joy and friendship, Odoscan, in the midst of a solemn banquet, was stabbed by the hand, or at least by the command, of his rival. Secret and effectual orders had been previously dispatched; the faithful and resolute mercenaries, at the same moment, and without resistance, were universally massacred; and the sovereignty of Theodoric was proclaimed by the Goths, with the sanguine, infatuated consent of the emperor of the East. The design of a conspiracy was implored, according to the usual forms, to the prostrate tyrant; but his innocence, and the guilt of his conqueror, 20 are sufficiently proved by the advantageous treaty which he never would not sincerely have granted, nor weakness have rashly infringed. The jealousy of power, and the mischiefs of discord, may suggest a more decent apology, and a sentence less rigorous may be pronounced against a crime which was necessary to introduce into Italy a generation of

---

17 Theodoric's march is supposed to have been at the beginning of November, so that his army appears to have been three months on the march. (See p. 209.)

18 On November, p. 509, 1000. Since the winter, in the king's camp, stood a watch tower and a palace. The winter was not long by the standards and

19 Theodoric's march is supposed to have been at the beginning of November, so that his army appears to have been three months on the march. (See p. 209.)

20 Theodoric's march is supposed to have been at the beginning of November, so that his army appears to have been three months on the march. (See p. 209.)
in the laws of his country.\textsuperscript{20} Fashion, and even convenience, soon persuaded the conquerors to assume the more elegant dress of the natives, but they still persisted in the use of their mother-tongue; and their contempt for the Latin schools was applauded by Theodoric himself, who glorified their prejudices, or his own, by declaring that the child who had trembled at a rod, would never dare to look upon a sword.\textsuperscript{21} Distress might sometimes provoke the indigent Roman to assume the ferocious manners which were incessantly relinquished by the rich and luxurious barbarians;\textsuperscript{22} but these mutual conversions were not encouraged by the policy of a monarch who perpetuated the separation of the Italians and Goths: reserving the former for the arts of peace, and the latter for the service of war. To accomplish this design, he studied to protect his industrious subjects, and to moderate the violence without encroaching the valour of his soldiers, who were maintained for the public defence. They held their lands and benefices as a military stipend; at the sound of the trumpet, they were prepared to march under the conduct of their provincial officers; and the whole extent of Italy was distributed into the several quarters of a well-regulated camp. The service of the palaces and of the frontiers was performed by choice or by rotation; and such extraordinary fatigue was compensated by an increase of pay and occasional dowers. Theodoric had convinced his brave companions, that empire must be acquired and defended by the same arms. After his example, they strove to excel in the war, not only of the lance and sword, but the instruments of their victories, but of the missile weapons, which they were too much inclined to neglect; and the lively image of war was displayed in the daily exercise and annual reviews of the Gothic cavalry. A firm though gentle discipline imposed the habits of modesty, obedience, and temperance; and the Goths were instructed to spare the people, to reverence the laws, to understand the duties of civil subordination, and to disdain the barbarous licence of judicial combat and private vengeance.\textsuperscript{23}

Among the barbarians of the West, the victory of Theodoric had spread a general alarm. But as soon as it appeared that he was satisfied with conquest and desirous of peace, terror was changed into respect, and they submitted to a powerful mediation, which was uniformly employed for the

\textsuperscript{20} The laws of his country.\textsuperscript{21} Fashion, and even convenience, soon persuaded the conquerors to assume the more elegant dress of the natives, but they still persisted in the use of their mother-tongue; and their contempt for the Latin schools was applauded by Theodoric himself, who glorified their prejudices, or his own, by declaring that the child who had trembled at a rod, would never dare to look upon a sword.\textsuperscript{22} Distress might sometimes provoke the indigent Roman to assume the ferocious manners which were incessantly relinquished by the rich and luxurious barbarians;\textsuperscript{23} but these mutual conversions were not encouraged by the policy of a monarch who perpetuated the separation of the Italians and Goths: reserving the former for the arts of peace, and the latter for the service of war. To accomplish this design, he studied to protect his industrious subjects, and to moderate the violence without encroaching the valour of his soldiers, who were maintained for the public defence. They held their lands and benefices as a military stipend; at the sound of the trumpet, they were prepared to march under the conduct of their provincial officers; and the whole extent of Italy was distributed into the several quarters of a well-regulated camp. The service of the palaces and of the frontiers was performed by choice or by rotation; and such extraordinary fatigue was compensated by an increase of pay and occasional dowers. Theodoric had convinced his brave companions, that empire must be acquired and defended by the same arms. After his example, they strove to excel in the war, not only of the lance and sword, but the instruments of their victories, but of the missile weapons, which they were too much inclined to neglect; and the lively image of war was displayed in the daily exercise and annual reviews of the Gothic cavalry. A firm though gentle discipline imposed the habits of modesty, obedience, and temperance; and the Goths were instructed to spare the people, to reverence the laws, to understand the duties of civil subordination, and to disdain the barbarous licence of judicial combat and private vengeance.
best purposes of reconciling their quarrels and civilising their manners.59 The ambassadors who resorted to Ravenna from the most distant countries of Europe, admired his wisdom, magnificence,60 and courtesy; and if he sometimes accepted either slaves or arms, white horses or strange animals, the gift of a sum-dial, a water-clock, or a musician, admonished even the princes of Gaul, of the superior art and industry of his Italian subjects. His domestic alliances,61 a wife, two daughters, a sister, and a niece, united the family of Theodic of with the kings of the Franks, the Burgundians, the Vandal, the Vandals, and the Thuringians, and contributed to maintain the harmony, or at least the balance, of the great republic of the West.62 It is difficult in the dark forests of Germany and Poland to pursue the emigrations of the Huns, a fierce people who disdained the use of armour, and who condemned their widows and aged parents not to survive the loss of their husbands, or the decay of their strength.63 The king of these savage warriors solicited the friendship of Theodic, and was elevated to the rank of his son, according to the barbaric rites of a military adoption.64 From the shores of the Baltic, the Arian or Livonians laid their offerings of native amber65 at the feet of a prince, whose name had excited them to undertake an unknown and dangerous journey of fifteen hundred miles. With the country66 from whose Gothic nation derived their origin, he maintained a frequent and friendly correspondence; the Huns were clothed in the rich sables67 of Sweden; and one of its sovereigns, after a voluntary or reluctant abolition, found an hospitable retreat in the palace of Ravenna. He had reigned over one of the thirteen populous tribes who cultivated a small portion of the great island or peninsula of Scandia, to which the vague appellation of Teut has been sometimes applied. That northern region was peopled, or had been explored, as high as the sixty-eighth degree of latitude, where the natives of the polar circle enjoy and lose the presence of the sun at each summer and winter solstice during an equal period of forty days.68 The long night of his absence or death was the mournful aspect of distress and anxiety, till the messengers who had been sent to the mountain tops, descried the first rays of returning light, and proclaimed to the plain below the festival of his resurrection.69

The life of Theodic represents the rare and meritorious example of a barbarian, who sheathed his sword in the pride of victory and the vigour of his age. A reign of three and thirty years was consecrated to the duties of civil government, and the hostility in which he was sometimes involved, were speedily terminated by the conquest of his lieutenants, the discipline of his troops, the arms of his allies, and even by the terror of his name. He reduced, under a strong and regular government, the unprofitable countries of Rhasia, Noricum, Dalmatia, and Pannonia, from the source of the Danube and the territory of the Bavarians,80 to the petty kingdom erected by the Germans on the ruins of Sermon. His prudence could not safely intermingle the holiness of Italy to such feeble and turbulent neighbours; and his justice might claim the lands which they oppress, either as a part of his kingdom, or at least as dependences of his father. The greatness of a servant, who was named philosopher, because he was successful, awakened the jealousy of the emperor Aetius;81 and a war was kindled on the Danian frontier, by the protection which the Gothic king, in the vicissitudes of human affairs, had granted to one of the descendants of Attila. Sabinius, a general illustrious by his own and father's merits, advanced at the head of ten thousand Romans; and the provisions and arms, which filled a long train of wagons, were distributed to the foremost of the Bulgarian tribes. But, in the fields of Magnes, the eastern powers were defeated by the inferior forces of the Gothic and Huns; the flower and even the hope of the Roman armies was irretrievably destroyed; and such was the temerity with which Theodic had inspired his victorious troops, that as their leader had not given the signal of pillage, the rich spoils of the enemy lay untouched at their feet.82 Exasperated by this disgrace, the Byzantine court dispatched two hundred ships and eight thousand men to plunder the sea-coast of Cilicia and Apulia; they assailed the ancient city

Greeks had visited the country; both had been joined by the natives in their calls at Ravenna and Constantinople.
of Tarentum, interrupted the trade and agriculture of an happy country, and sailed back to the Hellespont, proud of their pilfered victory over a people whom they still presumed to consider as their Roman brethren. Their retreat was possibly hastened by the activity of Theodoric; Italy was covered by a fleet of a thousand light vessels, which he constructed with incredible dispatch; and his firm moderation was soon rewarded by a solid and honourable peace. He maintained with a powerful hand the balance of the West, till it was at length overthrown by the ambition of Clovis; and although unable to assist his rash and unfortunate kinsman the king of the Visigoths, he saved the remains of his family and people, and checked the Franks in the midst of their victorious career. I am not desirous to prolong or repeat this narrative of military events, the least interesting of the reign of Theodoric; and shall be content to add, that the Alamanni were put to flight, that an invasion of the Burgundians was severely chastised, and that the conquest of Arles and Marseilles opened a free communication with the Visigoths, who revered him both as their national protector, and as the guardian of his grandchild, the infant son of Alaric. Under this respectable character, the king of Italy restored the praetorian prefecture of the Gauls, reformed some abuses in the civil government of Spain, and accepted the annual tribute and apparent submission of his military governors, who wisely refused to trust his person in the palace of Ravenna. The Gothic sovereignty was established from Sicily to the Danube, from Sirmium or Belgrade to the Atlantic Ocean; and the Greeks themselves have acknowledged that Theodoric reigned over the fairest portion of the Western empire.

The union of the Goths and Romans might have fixed for ages the transient happiness of Italy; and the first of nations, a new people of free subjects and enlightened soldiers, might have gradually arisen from the mutual emulation of their respective virtues. But the subtle merit of guiding or seconding such a revolution, was not reserved for the reign of Theodoric: he wanted neither the genius or the opportunities of a legislator; and while he indulged the Goths in the enjoyment of rude liberty, he scrupulously copied the institutions, and even the abuses, of the political system which had been framed by Constantine and his successors. From a tender regard to the expiring prejudices of Rome, the barbarian declined the name, the purple, and the diadem of the emperors; but he assumed, under the hereditary title of king, the whole substance and plenitude of Imperial prerogative. His addresses to the Eastern thrones were respectful and ambitious; he cultivated in pious style the harmony of the two republics, applauded his own government as the perfect similitude of a sole and undivided empire, and claimed above the kings of the earth the same pre-eminence which he modestly allowed to the person or rank of Anastasius. The alliance of the East and West was annually declared by the unanimous choice of two consuls; but it should seem, that the Italian candidate, who was named by Theodoric, accepted a formal confirmation from the sovereign of Constantinople. The Gothic palace of Ravenna reflected the image of the court of Theodosius or Valentinian. The praetorian prefect, the prefect of Rome, the quaestor, the master of the offices, with the public and patrimonial treasurers, whose functions are painted in gaudy colours by the rhetoric of Cassiodorus, still continued to act as the ministers of state. And the subordinate care of justice and the revenue was delegated to seven consuls, three rectors, and five presidents, who governed the fifteen regions of Italy, according to the principles and even the forms of Roman jurisprudence. The violence of the conquerors was abated or checked by the slow artifice of judicial proceedings; the civil administration, with its honours and emoluments, was confided to the Italians; and the people of Ravenna preserved their dress and language, their laws and customs, their personal freedom, and two thirds of their landed property. It had been the object of Augustus to conceal the introduction of monarchy; it was the policy of Theodoric to disguise the reign of a barbarian. If his subjects were sometimes awakened from this pleasing vision of a Roman government, they derived more substantial comfort from the character of a Gothic prince, who had penetrated to discern, and firmness to pursue, his own and the public interest. Theodoric loved the virtues which he possessed, and the talents of which he was destitute. Librum was promoted to the office of praetorian prefect for his undaunted fidelity to the unfortunate cause of Odoacer. The ministers of Theodoric, Cassiodorus, and Isidore, were closely connected with the principal persons of the royal court. The two emperors, Constantius and Theodosius, died in the reign of Theodoric. The aid of Bizanz was to be obtained with the permission of the Gothic sovereign. The advice of Cassiodorus, who was the most learned of the three, was to be sought for all the important negotiations. It was a great care of Theodoric to cultivate the friendship of the Western emperor. He was already in the year 500 of the Christian era, and was born at this period. The see of Ravenna was assumed by him in the last year of the sixth century. He died in the year 526, and was succeeded by his son Thaddaeus.

The last of the Ostrogoths was not a man of whom it was easy to form a just opinion. He was a dissolute and profligate prince, who, with the exception of Theodoric, had not exerted any remarkable talents or virtues. He was succeeded by his son, who was received with tumult and clamour, but who soon found himself unable to suppress the tranquility of Italy and the empire. The West, however, was gradually restored to tranquility, when the last of the Ostrogoths had been expelled from the kingdom of Naples. The Vandals, under their king, lay in the southernmost part of Italy, a Roman province. They were conquered by the emperor Zeno, who sent them to the Cimmerian Bosphorus, to be carried to the other world. The Vandals were subdued by the emperor Theodoric, who was succeeded by his son, who was received with tumult and clamour, but who soon found himself unable to suppress the tranquility of Italy and the empire. The West, however, was gradually restored to tranquility, when the last of the Ostrogoths had been expelled from the kingdom of Naples. The Vandals, under their king, lay in the southernmost part of Italy, a Roman province. They were conquered by the emperor Zeno, who sent them to the Cimmerian Bosphorus, to be carried to the other world. The Vandals were subdued by the emperor Theodoric, who was succeeded by his son, who was received with tumult and clamour, but who soon found himself unable to suppress the tranquility of Italy and the empire.

The last of the Ostrogoths was not a man of whom it was easy to form a just opinion. He was a dissolute and profligate prince, who, with the exception of Theodoric, had not exerted any remarkable talents or virtues. He was succeeded by his son, who was received with tumult and clamour, but who soon found himself unable to suppress the tranquility of Italy and the empire. The West, however, was gradually restored to tranquility, when the last of the Ostrogoths had been expelled from the kingdom of Naples. The Vandals, under their king, lay in the southernmost part of Italy, a Roman province. They were conquered by the emperor Zeno, who sent them to the Cimmerian Bosphorus, to be carried to the other world. The Vandals were subdued by the emperor Theodoric, who was succeeded by his son, who was received with tumult and clamour, but who soon found himself unable to suppress the tranquility of Italy and the empire. The West, however, was gradually restored to tranquility, when the last of the Ostrogoths had been expelled from the kingdom of Naples. The Vandals, under their king, lay in the southernmost part of Italy, a Roman province. They were conquered by the emperor Zeno, who sent them to the Cimmerian Bosphorus, to be carried to the other world. The Vandals were subdued by the emperor Theodoric, who was succeeded by his son, who was received with tumult and clamour, but who soon found himself unable to suppress the tranquility of Italy and the empire.
dorius²⁷ and Boethius, have reflected on his reign the lustre of their genius and learning. More prudent or more fortunate than his colleague, Cassiodorus preserved his own esteem without forfeiting the royal favour; and after passing thirty years in the honours of the world, he was blessed with an equal term of repose in the devout and studious solitude of Squiracile.

As the patron of the republic, it was the interest and duty of the Gothic king to cultivate the affections of the senate and people. The nobles of Rome were flattered with the prospect of equal and human professions of respect, which had been more justly applied to the spirit and authority of their ancestors. The people, too, without fear or danger, the three blessings of a capital, order, plenty, and public amusements. A visible diminution of their numbers may be found even in the measure of liberality; yet Apulia, Calabria, and Sicily, poured their tribute of corn into the granaries of Rome; an allowance of bread and meat was distributed to the indigent citizens; and every office was deemed honourable which was consecrated to the care of their health and happiness. The public games, such as a Greek ambassador might politely applaud, exhibited a faint and feeble copy of the magnificence of the Caesars; yet the musical, the gymnastic, and the pantomime arts, had not totally sunk in oblivion; the wild beasts of Africa still exercised in the amphitheatre the courage and dexterity of the hunters; and the indolent Goth either patiently tolerated or gaily restrained the blue and green factions, whose contests so often filled the circus with clamour and even with blood.²⁸ In the seventh year of his peaceful reign, Theodoric visited the old capital of the world; the senate and people advanced in solemn procession to salute a second Trajan, a new Valentinian; and he nobly supported that character by the assurance of a just and legal government,²⁹ in a discourse which he was not afraid to pronounce in public, and to inscribe on a tablet of brass. Rome, in this august ceremony, lost a last ray of declining glory; and a saint, the spectator of this pompous scene, could only hope in his pious fancy, that it was excelled by the celestial splendour of the New Jerusalem.³⁰ During a residence of six months, the fame, the person, and the courteous demeanour of the Gothic king, excited the admiration of the Romans, and he contemplated, with equal curiosity and surprise, the monuments that remained of their ancient greatness. He imprinted the footprints of a conqueror on the Capitoline hill, and frankly confessed that each day he viewed with fresh wonder the forum of Trajan and his lofty column. The theatre of Pompey appeared, even in its decay, as a huge mountain artificially hewn and polished, and adorned by human industry; and in vain was computed, that a river of gold must have been drained to erect the colossal amphitheatre of Titus.³¹ From the mouths of fourteen aqueducts, a pure and copious stream was diffused into every part of the city; among these the Claudian water, which arose at the distance of thirty-eight miles in the Sabine mountains, was conveyed along a gentle though constant declivity of solid arches, till it descended on the summit of the Aventine hill. The long and spacious vaults which had been constructed for the purpose of common sewers, subsisted, after twelve centuries, in their pristine strength; and those subterraneous channels have been preferred to all the visible wonders of Rome.³² The Gothic kings, so injuriously accused of the ruin of antiquity, were anxious to preserve the monuments of the nation whom they had subdued.³³ The royal select were framed to prevent the stones, the neglect, or the depredations of the citizens themselves; and a professed architect, the annual sum of two hundred pounds of gold, twenty-five thousand tiles, and the receipt of customs from the Lucrine port, were assigned for the ordinary repairs of the walls and public edifices. A similar care was extended to the statues of metal or marble of men or animals. The spirit of the horses, which have given a modern name to the Quirinal, was applauded by the barbarians;³⁴ the brazen elephants of the Fia sacra were diligently restored;³⁵ the famous heifer of Myron deceived the cattle, as they were driven through the forum of peace;³⁶ and an officer was created to protect those works of art, which Theodoric considered as the noblest ornament of his kingdom.

After the death of the last emperors, Theodoric preferred the residence of Ravenna, where he cultivated an orchard with his own hands.³⁷ As often as the peace of his kingdom was threatened (for it was never invaded) by the barbarians, he removed his court to Venice on the northern frontier, and the image of his palace, still extinct, as a whole now lies buried in sand, long since transformed into soil, which, and the river that is covered with sandstone, through which it passes, in the absence of the original state, the electric column is at least as curious. The lapis Niger, or hard stone, is invaluable for the same purpose, and the marble column of the forum of Trajan (Vis. xvi. 13), the Theatre of Marcellus, vi. 1., and the amphitheatre of Titus (vi. 42.) and its inscriptions are not equal; the two former are so pitted by time that the inscription cannot be clearly read, and the latter by the weather, so much decayed that the workmanship and the history of the column...
coin, represents the oldest and most authentic model of Gothic architecture. These two capitals, as well as Pavia, Spoleto, Naples, and the rest of the Italian cities, acquired under his reign, the useful or splendid decorations of churches, aqueducts, baths, porticoes, and palaces. 71 But the happiness of the subject was more truly conspicuous in the busy scene of labour and luxury, in the rapid increase and bold enjoyment of national wealth. From the shady walks of Ticinum and Prato, the Roman senators still retired in the winter season to the warm sun, and salubrious springs of Hain; and their villas, which advanced on solid mole into the bay of Naples, commanded the various prospect of the sky, the earth, and the water. On the eastern side of the Hadrianic, a new Campania was formed in the fair and fruitful province of Istria, which communicated with the palace of Ravenna by an easy navigation of one hundred miles. The rich productions of Locastia and the adjacent provinces were exchanged at the Marecian fountain, in a populous fair annually dedicated to trade, intermarriage, and superstition. In the solitude of Commum, which had once been animated by the wild genius of Tilly, a temple ruin by the six miles in length still reflected the rural scenes which enshrined the margin of the Larian lake; and the gradual ascent of the hills was covered by a triple plantation of olives, vines, and of chestnut trees. Agriculture revived under the shadow of peace, and the number of husbandmen was multiplied by the redemption of captives. 72 The iron mines of Dalmatia, a gold mine in Bruttium, were carefully explored, and the Pununctae marshes, as well as those of Spoleto, were drained and cultivated by private undertakers, whose distant reward must depend on the continuance of the public prosperity. 73 Whenever the seasons were less propitious, the doubtful precautions of forming magazines of corn, fixing the price, and prohibiting the exportation, attested at least the benevolence of the state; but such was the extraordinary plenty which an industrious people produced from a grateful soil, that a gallon of wine was sometimes sold in Italy for less than three farthings, and a quarter of wheat at about five shillings and sixpence. 74 A country possessed of so many valuable objects of exchange soon attracted the merchants of the world, whose beneficial traffic was encouraged and protected by the liberal spirit of Theodoric. The free intercourse of the provincis by land and water was restored and extended; the city gates were never shut either by day or by night; and the common saying, that a purse of gold might be safely left in the fields, was expressive of the conscious security of the inhabitants.

A difference of religion is always pernicious and often fatal to the harmony of the prince and people; the Gothic conqueror had been educated in the profession of Arianism, and Italy was devoutly attached to the Nicean faith. But the persuasion of Theodoric was not infected by zeal; and he piously adhered to the heresy of his fathers, without endowing the balance of the subtle arguments of theological metaphysics. Satisfied with the private toleration of his Arian sectaries, he justly conceived himself to be the guardian of the public worship, and his external reverence for a superstition which he despised may have nourished in his mind the guilty indifference of a statesman or philosopher. The Catholics of his dominions acknowledged, perhaps with reluctance, the peace of the church; their clergy, according to the degree of rank or merit, were honorably entertained. 75 Theology, however, he esteemed the living munificence of Cæsarius 76 and Epiphanius, 77 the orthodox bishops of Arles and Paris; and presented a devout offering on the tomb of St. Peter, without any scruples enquiry into the creed of the apostle. 78 His favourite Goth, and even his mother, were permitted to retain or embrace the Athanasian faith, and his long reign could not afford the example of an Italian Catholic, who, either from choice or compulsion, had deviated into the religion of the conqueror. 79 The people, and the barbarians themselves, were edified by the pomp and order of religious worship; the magistrates were instructed to defend the just immunities of ecclesiastical persons and possessions; the bishops held their synods, the metropolitan exercised their jurisdiction, and the privileges of sanctuary were maintained or moderated according to the spirit of the Roman jurisprudence. 80 With the protection, Theodoric assumed the legal supremacy, of the church, and the firm administration restored or extended some useful prerogatives which had been neglected by the feeble emperors of the West. He was not ignorant of the dignity and importance of the Roman pontiff, to whom the venerable name of Pore was now appropriated.

---

71. See the Life of St. Canute in Lib. 1, p. 209. 22.
72. See Lib. 1, p. 209. 22.
73. See Lib. 1, p. 209. 22.
74. See Lib. 1, p. 209. 22.
75. See Lib. 1, p. 209. 22.
76. See Lib. 1, p. 209. 22.
77. See Lib. 1, p. 209. 22.
78. See Lib. 1, p. 209. 22.
79. See Lib. 1, p. 209. 22.
80. See Lib. 1, p. 209. 22.
The peace or the revolt of Italy might depend on the character of a wealthy and popular bishop, who claimed such ample dominion both in heaven and earth; who had been declared in a numerous synod to be pure from all idolatry, and exempt from all judgment. When the chair of St. Peter was disputed by Symmachus and Laurence, the emperor appeared at his summons before the tribunal of an Arian monarch, and he confirmed the election of the most worthy or the most obsequious candidate. At the end of his life, in a moment of jealousy and resentment, he prevented the choice of the Romans, by nominating a pope in the palace of Ravenna. The danger and furious contests of a schism were mildly restrained, and the last decrees of the senate were enacted to extinguish, if it were possible, the scandalous vanity of the papal elections. 31

I have denounced with pleasure on the fortunate condition of Italy; but our fancy must not hastily conceive that the golden age of the poets, a race of men without vice or misery, was realised under the Gothic conquest. The fair prospect was sometimes overcast with clouds; the wisdom of Theodoric might be deceived, his power might be resisted, and the declining age of the monarch was sullied with popular hatred and patrician blood. In the first insurrection of victory, he had been tempted to deprive the whole party of Odencert of the civil and even the natural rights of society; 32 a tax unreasonably imposed after the calamities of war, would have crushed the rising agriculture of Liguria; a rigid pre-emption of corn, which was intended for the public relief, must have aggravated the distress of Campania. These dangerous projects were defeated by the virtue and eloquence of Epiphanius and Boethius, who, in the presence of Theodoric himself, successfully pleaded the cause of the people; 33 but, if the royal ear was open to the voice of truth, a saint and a philosopher are not always to be found at the ear of kings. The privileges of rank, or office, or favour, were too frequently abused by Italian fraud and Gothic violence, and the avatars of the king's nephew was publicly exposed, at first by the usurpation of the patrician and afterwards by the restitution of the estates which he had unjustly extorted from his Tuscan neighbours. Two hundred thousand barbarians, formidable even to their master, were seated in the heart of Italy; they indignantly supported the restrictions of peace and discipline; the disorder of their march were always felt and sometimes compensated; and where it was dangerous to punish, it might be prudent to dissemble, the safety of their native freedom. When the indulgence of Theodoric had relaxed two thirds

of the Ligurian tribute, he condescended to explain the difficulties of his situation, and to lament the heavy though inevitable burdens which he imposed on his subjects for their own defence. 34 Those ungrateful subjects could never be cordially reconciled to the origin, the religion, or even the virtues of the Gothic conquer; past calamities were forgotten, and the sense or suspicion of injury was removed still more expeditiously by the present felicity of the times.

Even the religious toleration which Theodoric had the glory of introducing into the Christian world was painful and offensive to the orthodox zeal of the Italians. They respected the sacred heresy of the Goths; but their pious rage was safely pointed against the rich and defeasible Jews, who had formed their establishments at Naples, Rome, Ravenna, Milan, and Genua, for the benefit of trade, and under the sanction of the laws. 35 Their persons were insulted, their effects were pillaged, and their synagogues were burnt by the mad populace of Ravenna and Rome, inflamed, as it should seem, by the most frivolous or extravagant pretences. The government which could neglect would have deserved such an outrage. A legal enquiry was instantly directed; and as the authors of the tumult had escaped in the crowd, the whole community was condemned to repair the damage; and the obstinate bigots who refused their contributions were whipped through the streets by the hand of the executioner. This simple act of justice exasperated the dissident of the Catholics, who applauded the merit and patience of these holy confessors; three hundred pulpits declared the persecution of the church, and if the episcopal of St. Stephen at Verona was demolished by the command of Theodoric, it is probable that some mutilations homage to his people and dignity had been performed on that sacred theatre. At the close of a glorious life, the king of Italy discovered that he had excited the hatred of a people whose happiness he had so amanously laboured to promote; and his mind was assuaged by indignation, jealousy, and the bitterness of unrequited love. The Gothic conquer condescended to disarm the unruly natives of Italy, intruding all weapons of offence, and excepting only a small knife for domestic use. The delivery of Rome was acceded to complying with the strict injunctions against the lives of senators whom he suspected of a secret and treasonable correspondence with the Byzantine court. 36 After the death of Anastasius, the diadem had been placed on the head of a feeble old man; but the powers of government were assumed by his nephew Justinian, who immediately meditated the extermination of

31 Reminisc. p. 1821, 1832, 1726, 1826. His title was opposed to that of St. Prisca. 32 In his surname, 180. 33 Censor. 34Hist. Carol. 46. 35 Pagan. 36 Hist. Carol. 40. 37 The public disorders of Ravenna are described by Cassiodor. 38 In the present of Theodosius. 39 In the present of Theodosius. 40 In the present of Theodosius. 41 In the present of Theodosius. 42 The plagiary contempus ed. 43 In the present of Theodosius. 44 In the present of Theodosius. 45 In the present of Theodosius.
heresy, and the conquest of Italy and Africa. A rigorous law which was published at Constantinople, to reduce the Arians by the threat of punishment within the pale of the church, awakened the just resentment of Theodoric, who claimed for his distressed brethren of the East, the same indulgence which he had so long granted to the Catholics of his dominions. At his stern command, the Roman pontiff, with his illustrious senators, embarked on an embassy, of which he must have alike dreaded the failure or the success. The singular veneration shown to the first pope whom they visited, Constantinople was punished as a crime by his jealous monarch; the artful or peremptory refusal of the Byzantine court might assume an equal, and would provoke a larger, measure of retaliation; and a mandate was prepared in Italy, to prohibit, after a stated day, the exercise of the Catholic worship. By the bigotry of his subjects and enemies, the most tolerant prince was driven to the brink of persecution; and the life of Theodoric was too long, since he lived to condemn the virtue of Boethius and Symmachus. 68

The senator Boethius 69 is the last of the Romans whose Cato or Tully could have acknowledged for their countrymen. As a wealthy orphan, he inherited the patrimony and honours of the Anicius family, a name ambitiously assumed by the kings and emperors of the age; and the appellation of Manlius asserted his genuine or fabulous descent from a race of consuls and dictators, who had requelled the Gauls from the Capitol, and sacrificed their sons to the discipline of the republic. In the youth of Boethius, the studies of Rome were not totally abandoned; a Virgil 70 is now extant, corrected by the hand of a consul; and the professors of grammar, rhetoric, and jurisprudence, were maintained in their privileges and liberties by the liberality of the Goths. But the erudition of the Latin language was insufficient to satiate his ardent curiosity; and Boethius is said to have employed eighteen laborious years in the schools of Athens, 71 which were supported by the zeal, the learning, and the diligence of Proclus and his disciples. The reason and piety of their Roman pupil were fortunately saved from the contagion of mystery and magic, which polluted the groves of the Academy; but he imbibed the spirit, and imitated the method of his dead and living masters, who attempted to reconcile the strong and subtle sense of Aristotle with the devout contemplation and sublime fancy of Plato. After his return to Rome, and his marriage with the daughter of his friend, the patrician Symmachus, Boethius still continued, in a palace of ivory and marbles, to prosecute the same studies. 72 The church was edified by his profound defence of the orthodox creed against the Arians, the Eunomians, and the Nestorian heretics; and the Catholic unity was explained or exposed in a formal treatise by the indubitable force of three distinct though consummated persons. For the benefit of his Latin readers, his genius submitted to teach the first elements of the arts and sciences of Greece. The geometry of Euclid, the music of Pythagoras, the arithmetic of Nicomachus, the mechanics of Archimedes, the astronomy of Ptolemy, the theology of Plato, and the logic of Aristotle, with the commentary of Porphyry, were translated and illustrated by the indefatigable pen of the Roman senator. And he alone was esteemed capable of describing the wonders of art, a sun-dial, a water-clock, or a sphere, and of representing the motions of the planets. From these abstruse speculations, Boethius stopped, or, to speak more truly, he rose to the social duties of public and private life: the indigent were relieved by his liberality; and his eloquence, which flattery might compare to the voice of Demosthenes, Epictetus, or Cicero, was uniformly exerted in the cause of imperial and humanity. Such conspicuous merit was felt and rewarded by a discerning prince; the dignity of Boethius was adorned with the titles of consul and patrician, and his talents were usefully employed in the important station of master of the offices. Notwithstanding the equal claims of the East and West, his two sons were created, in their tender youth, the consuls of the same year. 73 On the memorable day of their inauguration, they proceeded in solemn pomp from their palace to the forum, amidst the applause of the senate and people; and their joyful father, the true consul of Rome, after pronouncing an oration in the praise of his royal benefactor, distributed a triumphal largess in the games of the circus. Prosperous in his fame and fortunes, in his public honours and private alliances, in the cultivation of science and the consciousness of virtue, Boethius might have been styled happy, if that precarious epiphit could be safely applied before the last term of the life of man. A philosopher, liberal of his wealth, his patronage and parsimonious of his time, might be insensible to the common allurements of ambition, the thirst of gold and employment. And some credit may be due to the asseveration of Boethius, that he had reluctantly obeyed the divine Plato, who enjoins every virtuous citizen

68. I have assumed to extract a rational measure from the dark, learned, and various hints of the Venetian Father, T. G. 752. See Thomaesian (p. 415.), Ascendine (in Johnn.), p. 550, and the Hist. Franc., tom. iv. p. 245. 69. See the Benevento (p. 463.) of the Two Plays, the uncle and the nephew. 70. Boethius was born in 480, and died in 524. He published his De Consolata Philosophia in 520, and philosophically likened the life of the philosopher Boethius to the life of the man of science. 71. Boethius published a very learned work, the Consolatio Philosophiae, (in 524.) and was by an acrimonious (through the heat of his private passion) friend, Justus of Epaphroditus, (in 526.) 72. The Epistles of Boethius were written in 535, (in 536.) and published in 543 and 544. (in 555.) 73. The father died in 525, the son in 526; and in 528, perhaps, his father. 74. A year after the death of his friend, Boethius began to write the Consolatio Philosophiae in 526. 75. The two Boethii, as is apparent, were the sons of Symmachus, and in 526. his father. 76. Boethius., (in 525.) 77. All the patricians of Rome.
of the Roman Empire.

CHAP. XXXIX.

OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

223
to rescue the state from the usurpation of vice and ignorance. For the integrity of his public conduct he appeals to the memory of his country. His authority had restrained the pride and oppression of the royal officers, and his eloquence had delivered Paulinus from the clutches of the palace. He had always pitied, and often relieved, the distress of the provincials, whose fortunes were exhausted by public and private rapine; and Boethius alone had courage to oppose the tyranny of the barbarians, slain by conquest, excited by avarice, and, as he complains, encouraged by impunity. In these honourable contests, his spirit soared above the consideration of danger, and perhaps of prudence; and we may learn from the example of Cato, that a character of pure and inflexible virtue is the most apt to be misled by prejudice, to be heated by enthusiasm, and to confound private enmities with public justice. The disciple of Plato might exaggerate the inhumanity of nature, and the imperfections of society; and the mildest form of a Gothic kingdom, even the weight of allegiance and gratitude, must be insupportable to the free spirit of a Roman patriot. But the favour and fidelity of Boethius declined in just proportion with the public happiness; and an unworthy colleague was imposed, to divide and control the power of the master of the officers. In the last gloomy moments of Theodoric, he indignantly felt that he was a slave; but as his master had only power over his life, he stood without arms and without fear against the face of an angry barbarian, who had been provoked to believe that the safety of the senate was incompatible with his own. The senator Albinius was accused and already convicted on the presumption of aspiring, as it was said, the liberty of Rome. "If Albinius be criminal," exclaimed the orator, "the senate and myself are all guilty of the same crime. If we are innocent, Albinius is equally entitled to the protection of the laws." These laws might not have punished the simple and barren wish of an unattainable blessing; but they would have shown less indulgence to the rash confession of Boethius, that, had he known of a conspiracy, the tyrant never should. The advocate of Albinius was soon involved in the danger and perhaps the guilt of his client; their signature (which they denied as a forgery) was affixed to the original address, inviting the emperor to deliver Italy from the Goths; and three witnesses of honourable rank, perhaps of infamous reputation, attested the treasonable designs of the Roman patriots. Yet his innocence must be presumed, since he was deprived by Theodoric of the means of justification, and rigorously confined in the tower of Pavia, while the senate, at the distance of five hundred miles, pronounced

a sentence of confiscation and death against the most illustrious of its members. At the command of the barbarians, the occult science of a philosopher was amalgamated with the names of sacristy and magic. A devout and dutiful attachment to the senate was condemned as criminal by the trembling voices of the senators themselves; and their ingratitude deserved the wish or prediction of Boethius, that, after him, none should be found guilty of the same offence.

While Boethius, oppressed with heavy sentences, expected each moment the sentence of death, he composed in the tower of Pavia the Consolation of Philosophy, a golden volume not unworthy of the leisure of Plato. Tully, but which claims incomparable merit from the barbarism of the times and the situation of the author. The celestial guide, whom he so long invoked at Rome and Athens, now consolided to illuminate his dungeon, to revive his courage, and to pour into his wounded heart salutary balm. She taught him to compare his long prosperity and his recent distress, and to conceive new hopes from the inconstancy of fortune. Reason had informed him of the precarious condition of his gifts: experience had satisfied him of their real value; he had enjoyed them without guilt; he might resign them without a sigh, and calmly disdain the impotent malice of his enemies, who had left him happiness, since they had left him virtue. From the earth, Boethius ascended to heaven in search of the seraphim room; explored the metaphysical labyrinth of chance and destiny, of predestination and free-will, of time and eternity; and generously attempted to reconcile the perfect attributes of the Deity with the apparent disorders of his moral and physical government. Such topics of consolation, so obvious, so vague, or so abstruse, are insufficient to subdue the feelings of human nature. Yet the sense of misfortune may be diverted by the labour of thought; and the sage who could artfully combine in the same work the various riches of philosophy, poetry, and eloquence, must already have possessed the intrepid calmness which he affected to seek. Suspense, the worst of evils, was at length determined by the ministers of death, who executed, and perhaps exceeded, the inhuman mandate of Theodoric. A strong cord was fastened round the head of Boethius; and forcibly tightened, till his eyes almost started from their sockets; and some mercy may be discovered in the mutilous torture of beating him with clubs till he expired. But his genius survived, to diffuse a ray of knowledge over the darkest ages of the Latin world; the writings of the philosopher were translated by the genius of the English kings, and the third emperor of the name of Otha removed to a more honourable tomb the bones of a Co
Humanity will be disposed to encourage any report which testifies the jurisdiction of conscience and the remorse of kings; and philosophy is not ignorant that the most horrid spectres are sometimes created by the powers of a disordered fancy, and the weakness of a discomposed body. After a life of virtue and glory, Theodoric was now descending with shame and guilt into the grave; his mind was humbled by the contrast of the past, and justly alarmed by the invisible terrors of futurity. One evening, as it is related, when the head of a large fish was served on the royal table, he suddenly exclaimed that he beheld the angry countenance of Symmachus, his eyes glaring fury and revenge, and his mouth armed with long sharp teeth, which threatened to devour him. The monarch instantly retired to his chamber, and, as he lay, trembling with agitated cold, under a weight of bedclothes, he expressed in broken murmurings, to his physician Epiphanius, his deep repentance for the murders of Boethius and Symmachus. His malady increased, and, after a dysentery which continued three days, he expired in the palace of Ravenna, in the thirty-third, or, if we compute from the invasion of Italy, in the thirty-seventh year of his reign. Conscious of his approaching end, he divided his treasures and provinces between his two grandsons and fixed the Illyricum as their common boundary.

Amalaric was restored to the throne of Spain. Italy, with all the conquests of the Ostrogoths, was bequeathed to Alathariac; whose age did not exceed ten years, but who was cherished as the last male offspring of the line of Amali; by the short-lived marriage of his mother Amalasunta, with a royal fugitive of the same blood. In the presence of the dying monarch, the Gothic chiefs and Italian magistrates mutually engaged their faith and loyalty to the young prince, and to his guardian mother; and received, in the same awful moment, his regal salutary advice, to maintain the laws, to love the senate and people of Rome, and to cultivate with due reverence the friendship of the emperor. The monument of Theodoric was erected by his daughter Amalasunta, in a conspicuous situation, which commanded the city of Ravenna, the harbour, and the adjacent coast. A chapel of a circular form, thirty feet in diameter, is crowned by a dome of one entire piece of granite; from the centre of the dome, four columns rose, which supported, in a vase of porphyry, the remains of the Gothic king, surrounded by the broken statues of the twelve apostles. His spirit, after some previous expiation, might have been permitted to mingle with the benefactors of mankind, if an Italian hermit had not been witness in a vision to the damnation of Theodoric, whose soul was plunged, by the ministers of divine vengeance, into the voleano of Lipari, one of the flaming mouths of the infernal world.

CHAP. XL.

Elevation of Justinian the Elder.—Reign of Justinian.

I. The Emperor Theodoric.—II. Provinces of the Carnic, and Solution of Constantiopolis.—III. Trade and Manufactures of Silos.—IV. Provinces of Thrace and Thrace.—V. Elevation of Justinian.—Church of St. Sophia.—Forts and Frontiers of the Eastern Empire.—Athens in the Schools of Athens, and the Constabulary of Rome.

The emperor Justinian was born near the ruins of Sardis (the modern Sardes), of an obscure race of barbarians, the inhabitants of a wild and desolate country, to which the names of Dardania, of Dacia, and of Bulgaria, have been successively applied. His elevation was prepared by the adventurous spirit of his uncle Justin, who, with two other peasants of the same village, deserted, for the profession of arms, the more useful employment of husbandman or shepherds. On foot, with a scanty provision of

Book's name ought perhaps be placed lower, before popular (Consultor, n. 1). But the name was more in evidence (Aesop's Fables, p. 719).
biscuit in their knapsacks, the three youths followed the high road of Constantinople, and were soon enrolled, for their strength and stature, among the guards of the emperor Leo. Under the two succeeding reigns, the fortunate peasant emerged to wealth and honours; and his escape from those dangers which threatened his life was afterwards ascribed to the guardian angel who watches over the fate of kings. His long and laudable service in the Isaurian and Persian wars would not have preserved from oblivion the name of Justin; yet they might warrant the military promotion, which in the course of fifty years he gradually obtained; the rank of tribune, of count, and of general, the dignity of senator, and the command of the guards, who obeyed him as their chief, at the important crisis when the emperor Anastasius was removed from the world. The powerful kinsmen whom he had raised and enriched were excluded from the throne; and the eunuch Amansius, who reigned in the palace, had secretly resolved to fix the diadem on the head of the most obsequious of his creatures. A liberal donation, to conciliate the suffrages of the guards, was intrusted for that purpose in the hands of their commander. But these weighty arguments were treacherously employed by Justin in his own favour; and as no competitor presumed to appear, the Dacian peasant was invested with the purple, by the unanimous consent of the soldiers who knew him to be brave and gentle, of the clergy and people who believed him to be orthodox, and of the provincials who yielded a blind and implicit submission to the will of the capital. The elder Justin, as he is distinguished from another emperor of the same family and name, ascended the Byzantine throne at the age of sixty-eight years; and, had he been left to his own guidance, every moment of a nine years' reign must have exposed to his subjects the impropriety of their choice. His ignorance was similar to that of Theodoric; and it is remarkable, that in an age not destitute of learning, two contemporary monarchs had never been instructed in the knowledge of the alphabet. But the genius of Justin was far inferior to that of the Gothic king; the experience of a soldier had not qualified him for the government of an empire; and, though personally brave, the consciousness of his own weakness was materially attended with doubt, distrust, and political apprehension. But the official business of the state was diligently and faithfully transacted by the quintus Proculus; and the aged emperor adopted the talents and ambition of his nephew Justinian, an aspiring youth, whose uncle had drawn from the rustic solitude of Dacia, and educated at Constantinople, as the heir of his private fortune, and at length of the Eastern empire.

Since the eunuch Amansius had been defrauded of his money, it became necessary to deprive him of his life. The task was easily accomplished by the charge of a real or fictitious conspiracy; and the judges were instructed, as an accumulation of guilt, that he was secretly addicted to the Manichean heresy. Amansius lost his head; three of his companions, the first domestic of the palace, were punished: either with death or exile; and their unfortunate candidate for the purple was cast into a deep dungeon, overwhelmed with stones, and ignominiously thrown, without burial, into the sea. The ruin of Vitalian was a work of more difficulty and danger. That Gothic chief had rendered himself popular by the civil war which he boldly waged against Anastasius for the defence of the orthodox faith, and after the conclusion of an advantageous treaty, he still remained in the neighbourhood of Constantinople at the head of a formidable and victorious army of barbarians. By the frail security of oaths, he was tempted to relinquish this advantageous situation, and to trust his person within the walls of a city, whose inhabitants, particularly the blue faction, were artfully incensed against him by the remembrance even of his pious hostilities. The emperor and his nephew embraced him as the faithful and worthy champion of the church and state; and gratefully adorned their favourite with the titles of consul and general; but in the seventh month of his consulsiphip, Vitalian was stabbed with seventeen wounds at the royal banquet; and Justinian, who inherited the spoil, was accused as the assassin of a spiritual brother, to whom he had recently pledged his faith in the participation of the Christian mysteries. After the fall of his rival, he was promoted, without any claim of military service, to the office of master-general of the Eastern armies, whom it was his duty to lead to the field against the public enemy. But, in the pursuit of fame, Justinian might have lost his present dominion over the age and weakness of his uncle; and, instead of acquiring by Scythian or Persian trophies the applause of his countrymen, the prudent warrior solicited their favour in the churches, the circus, and the senate, of Constantinople. The Catholics were attached to the nephew of Justin, who, between the Nestorian and Eutychian heresies, trod the narrow path of heretical and intolerant orthodoxy. In the first days of the new reign, he prompted and gratified the popular enthusiasm against the memory of the deceased emperor. After a sojourn of thirty-four years, he reconciled

Gal'don Amorist of Tho'mas. The Forlorn, to whom he could influence, was

2 Justinian's patron, Flavius, carried himseufihome (Valentia, who presided over the religious law of the state). His restoration was hastened by the death of Vitalian. For this reason, the gold and silver treasure of Justinian, in his account Thessalon, p. 245.)

3 The ecclesiastical history of Justinian will be shown elsewhere, see Simon, A. D. 280. p. 8, and his attack, 1839, in the midst of the reign of Leo.
the proud and angry spirit of the Roman post-
tiff, and spread among the Latin a favourable
report of his pious respect for the apostolic see.
The thrones of the East were filled with Catho-
lic bishops devoted to his interest, the clergy
and the monks were gained by his liberality,
and the people were taught to pray for their
future sovereign, the hope and pillar of the true
religion. The magnificence of Justinian was
displayed in the imperial pomp of his public
spectacles, an object not less sacred and
important in the eyes of the multitude than the
temple of Nere or Chalcodon: the expense of
his consulship was estimated at two hundred
and eighty-eight thousand pieces of gold; twenty
horses, and thirty leopards, were produced at
the same time in the amphitheatre, and a numerous
train of horses, with their rich trappings,
was bestowed as an extraordinary gift on the vic-
torious charioteers of the circus. While he in-
vited the people of Constantinople, and re-
cieved the addresses of foreign kings, the nephew
of Justin audaciously cultivated the friendship
of the senate. That venerable name seemed to
qualify its members to declare the sense of
the nation, and to regulate the succession of the
Imperial throne: the ablest Anastasius had per-
mitted the vigour of government to degenerate
into the form or substance of an aristocracy;
and the military officers who had obtained the
senatorial rank, were followed by their domestic
guards, a band of veterans, whose arms or accla-
mations might fix in a tumultuous moment the
disposition of the East. The treasures of the state
were lavished to procure the voices of the as-
ssemblies, and their unanimous wish, that he would
be pleased to adopt Justinian for his colleague,
was communicated to the emperor. But this
request, which too clearly admonished him of
his approaching end, was unwelcome to the
jealous temper of an aged monarch, desirous to
retain the power which he was incapable of
exercising; and Justin, holding his purple with
both his hands, advised them to prefer, since an
election was so profitable, some older candidate.

Notwithstanding this reproach, the senate pro-
cceeded to decorate Justinian with the royal
epithet of nobissimus; and their decree was
ratified by the afection or the fears of his uncle.
After some time the languor of mind and body,
to which he was reduced by an incurable wound
in his thigh, indispensably required the aid of a
physician. He summoned the patriarch and
senators; and in their presence solemnly placed
the diadem on the head of his nephew, who
was conducted from the palace to the circus,
and saluted by the loud and joyful applause of the
people. The life of Justin was protracted about
four months, but from the instant of this cere-
mony, he was considered as dead to the empire,
which acknowledged Justinian, in the forty-
fifth year of his age, for the lawful sovereign of
the East.11

From his elevation to his death, Justinian governed the Roman em-

11. The virtue of Justin might be found in the three Chroni-

12. The history of Justinian has been, somewhat, inac-

13. Justinian had been, to the best of our knowledge, a

14. Justinian had been, to the best of our knowledge, a

15. Justinian had been, to the best of our knowledge, a

into an odious and contemptible tyrant, in which both the emperor and his consort. Theodora are seriously represented as two demons, who had assumed a human form for the destruction of mankind. Such base inconsistency must doubtless injure the reputation, and detract from the credit, of Procopius; yet after the venom of his malignity has been sufficiently exhausted, the residue of the anecdotage, even the most disgraceful facts, some of which had been feebly hinted in his public history, are established by their internal evidence, or the authentic monuments of the times. From these various materials, I shall now proceed to describe the reign of Justinian, which will deserve and occupy an ample space. The present chapter will explain the elevation and character of Theodora, the factions of the circus, and the peaceful administration of the sovereign of the East. In the three succeeding chapters, I shall relate the wars of Justinian, which achieved the conquest of Africa and Italy; and I shall follow the pictures of Belisarius and Narses, without disguising the vanity of their triumphs, or the hostile virtue of the Persian and Gothic heroes. The series of this and the following volumes will embrace the jurisprudence, and theology of the emperor; the controversies and sects which still divide the Oriental church; the reformation of the Roman law, which is obeyed or respected by the nations of modern Europe.

1. In the exercise of supreme power, the first act of Justinian was to divide it with the woman whom he loved, the famous Theodora, whose strange elevation cannot be applauded, as the triumph of female virtue. Under the reign of Anastasia, the care of the wild beasts maintained by the green faction at Constantinople, was intrusted to Aecarius, a native of the Isle of Cyprus, who, from his employment, was named the master of the bears. This honourable office was given after his death to another candidate, notwithstanding the diligence of his widow, who had already provided a husband and a successor. Aecarius had left three daughters, Comito, Tarnoza, and Armanzela, the eldest of whom did not then exceed the age of seven years. On a solemn festival, these helpless orphans were sent by their distress and indigent mother, in the garb of suppliants, into the midst of the theatre; the green faction

received them with contempt, the blues with compassion; and this difference, which sunk deep into the mind of Theodora, was felt long afterwards in the administration of the empire. As they improved in age and beauty, the three sisters were successively devoted to the public and private pleasures of the Byzantine people; and Theodora, after following Comito on the stage, in the dress of a slave, with a stool on her head, was at length permitted to exercise her independent talents. She neither danced, nor sung, nor played on the flute; her skill was confined to the pantomime arts; she excelled in buffoon characters, and as often as the comedia swelled her cheeks, and complained with a ridiculous tone and gesture of the hardships she was inflicted, the whole theatre of Constantinople resounded with laughter and applause. The beauty of Theodora was the subject of more flattering praise; and the source of more exquisite delight. Her features were delicate and regular; her complexion, though somewhat pale, was tinged with a natural colour; her sensation was instantly expressed by the vivacity of her eyes; her easy motions displayed the grace of a small, but elegant figure; and either love or adulation might proclaim, that painting and poetry were incapable of delineating the matchless excellency of her form. But this form was degraded by the facility with which it was exposed to the public eye, and prostituted to licentious desire. Her vocal charms were abandoned to a promiscuous crowd of citizens and strangers, of every rank, and of every profession; the fortunate lover who had been promised a night of enjoyment, was often driven from her bed by a stronger or more wealthy favourest; and when she passed through the streets, her presence was avoided by all who wished to escape either the scandal or the temptation. The satirical historian has not blushed to describe the naked scenes which Theodora was not ashamed to exhibit in the theatre. After exhausting the arts of sensual pleasure, she must ungratefully murmured against the paramony of nature; but her pleasures, her passions, her arts, must be held in the obscurity of a learned language. After regaining, for some time, the delight and confidence of the capital, she condescended to accompany Euchodos, a native of Tyre, who had obtained the government of the African Pentapolis. But this union was frail and transient; Ec-
bulous soon rejected an expensive and faithless concubine; she was reduced at Alexandria to extreme distress; and in her laborious return to Constantinople, every city of the East admired and enjoyed the fair Cyproian, whose merit appeared to justify her descent from the princely island of Venus. The vague consciousness of Theodore, and the most detestable precautions, preserved her from the dangers which she feared; yet some, and once only, she became a mother. The infant was saved and educated in Arabia, by his father, who imparted to him, on his death-bed, that he was the son of an empress. Filled with ambitious hope, the unsuspecting youth immediately hastened to the palace of Constantinople, and was admitted in the presence of his mother. As he was never more seen, even after the decease of Theodore, she deserves the foul imputation of extinguishing with his life a secret no offensive to her Imperial virtue.

In the most object of her fortune and reputation, some vision, either of sleep, or of fancy, had whispered to Theodore the pleasing assurance that she was destined to become the spouse of a potent monarch. Conscious of her approaching greatness, she returned from Psaphlogoria to Constantinople; assumed, like a skilful actress, a more decorous character; relieved her poverty by the laudable industry of spinning wool; and affected a life of charity and solitude in a small house, which she afterwards changed into a magnificent temple. 62 Her beauty, assisted by art or accident, soon attracted, captivated, and fixed, the passion of Justinian, who already reigned with absolute sway under the name of his uncle. Perhaps she contrived to enhance the value of a gift which she had so often kissed on the mouth of mankind: perhaps she inflamed, at first, by modest delays, and at last, by sexual allurements, the desires of a lover, who, from nature or devotion, was addicted to long vigils and abstemious diet. When his first transports had subsided, she still maintained the same ascendant over his mind, by the more solid merit of temper and understanding. Justinian delighted to ennoble and enrich the object of his affection; the treasures of the East were poured at her feet, and the nephew of Justin was determined, perhaps by religious scruples, to bestow on his cousin the sacred and legal character of a wife. But the laws of Rome expressly prohibited the marriage of a senator with any female who had been dishonoured by a servile origin or theatrical profession; the empress Lubicia, or Kophenia, a barbarian of rustic manners, but of irreproachable virtue, refused to accept a prostitute for her niece; and even Vigilius, the superstitious mother of Justinian, though she acknowledged the wit and beauty of Theodore, was seriously apprehensive; but the levity and arrogance of that amiable person might corrupt the piety and happiness of her son. These obstacles were removed by the inflexible constancy of Justinian. He patiently expected the death of the empress; he despised the tears of his mother, who soon sunk under the weight of her affliction; and a law was promulgated in the name of the emperor Justin, which abolished the rigid jurisprudence of antiquity. A glorious repentence (the words of the editor) was left open for the unhappy females who had prostituted their persons on the theatre, and they were permitted to contract a legal union with the most illustrious of the Romans. 63

This indulgence was speedily followed by the solemn nuptials of Justinian and Theodore; her dignity was gradually exalted with that of her lover; and, as soon as Justin had invested his nephew with the purple, the patriarch of Constantinople placed the diadem on the heads of the emperor and empress of the East. But the annual honours which the severity of Roman manners had allowed to the wives of princes, could not satisfy either the ambition of Theodore or the fondness of Justinian. He seated her on the throne as an equal and independent colleague in the sovereignty of the empire; and an oath of allegiance was imposed on the governors of the provinces, in the joint names of Justinian and Theodore. 64 The Eastern world fell: prostrate before the genius and fortune of the daughter of Arcadius. The prostitute who, in the presence of innumerable spectators, had painted the theatre of Constantinople, was adored as a queen in the same city, by grave magistrates, orthodox bishops, victorious generals, and captive monarchs. 65

Those who believe that the female mind is totally depressed by the lust of chastity, will eagerly listen to the invectives of private envy or popular resentment, which have discredited the virtues of Theodore, exaggerated her vices, and condemned with rigour the royal or voluntary sins of the youthful harlot. From a motive of shame, or constraint, she often declined the servile homage of the multiplies, escaped from the odious light of the capital, and passed the greatest part of the year in the palaces and gardens which were pleasantly situated on the north-east coast of the Propontis and the Bosporus. Her private hours were devoted to the prudent as well as grateful care of her beauty, the luxury of the bath and table, and the long slumber of the evening and the morning. Her scenic apartments were occupied by the favourite women and amours, whose interests and passions she indulged at the expense of justice; the most illustrious personages of the state were crowded into a dark and sultry antechamber; and when at last, after tedious attendance, they were admitted to kiss the feet of Theodore, she experienced, as her immure might suggest, the silent arrogance of an emperor, or the equivocal courtesy of a monarch. 66

62 See ante, § 4. 63 The Vipsania, 89; 64 The Bulgy, 50. 65 The Vipsania, 90. 66 See ante, § 3. 67 See Onania, 87; and The Vipsania, 89. 68 See ante, § 3. 69 See Onania, 87; and The Vipsania, 89.
late an immense treasure, may be excused by the behefion of her husband's death, which could leave no alternative between ruin and the throne; and fear as well as ambition might exasperate Theodora against two generals, who, during a mutiny of the emperor, had rashly declared that they were not disposed to acquiesce in the choice of the capital. But the reproach of cruelty, so repugnant even to her softer views, has left an indelible stain on the memory of Theodora. Her mammae spies observed, and zealously reported, every action, or word, or look, injurious to their royal mistress. Wherever they accused were cast into her peculiar prisons; inaccessible to the enquiries of justice; and it was rumoured, that the nature of the rack, or scourge, had been inflicted in the presence of a female tyrant, insensible to the voice of prayer or of pity. Some of these unhappy victims perished in deep inhuman dungeons, while others were permitted, after the loss of their limbs, their reason, or their fortune, to appear in the world the living monuments of her vengeance, which was commonly extended to the children of those whom she had suspected or injured. The senator or bishop, whose death or exile Theodora had pronounced, was delivered to a trusty messenger, and his diligence was quickened by a menace from her own mouth. If you fail in the execution of my commands, I swear by him who liveth for ever, that your skin shall be flayed from your body.  

If the creed of Theodora had not been tainted with heresy, her exemplary devotion might have been esteemed, in the opinion of her contemporaries, for pride, avarice, and cruelty. But, if she employed her influence to manage the insolent fury of the emperor, the present age will allow some merit to her religion, and much indulgence in her speculative errors. The name of Theodora was introduced, with equal honour, in all the pious and charitable foundations of Justinian; and the most benevolent institution of his reign may be ascribed to the sympathy of the empress for her less fortunate sisters, who had been seduced or compelled to embrace the trade of prostitution. A palace, on the Asiatic side of the Bosporus, was converted into a strictly and sparsely monasterv, and a liberal maintenance was assigned to five hundred women, who had been collected from the streets and brothels of Constantinople. In this safe and holy retreat, they were devoted to perpetual confinement; and the despair of some, who threw themselves headlong into the sea, was lost in the gratitude of the penitents, who had been delivered from sin and misery by their generous benefactress. The prudence of Theodora is celebrated by Justinian himself; and his laws are attributed to the sage counsels of his most revered wife, whom he had received as the gift of the Deity. Her courage was displayed amidst the tumult of the people and the terrors of the court. Her chastity, from the moment of her union with Justinian, is founded on the silence of her insensible enemies; and, although the daughter of Acacius might be associated with love, yet some applause is due to the firmness of a mind which could sacrifice pleasure and habit to the stronger sense either of duty or interest. The views and prayers of Theodora could never obtain the blessing of a lawful son, and she buried an infant daughter, the sole offspring of her marriage. Notwithstanding this disappointment, her domestic was permanent and absolute; she preserved, by art or merit, the affections of Justinian; and their secret dissensions were always fatal to the courtiers who believed them to be sincere. Perhaps her health had been impaired by the licentiousness of her youth; but it was soon delicate, and she was directed by her physicians to use the Pythian warm baths. In this journey, the empress was followed by the procurator prefect, the great treasurer, several counts and patricians, and a splendid train of four thousand attendants; the highways were requised at her approach; a palace was erected for her reception; and as she passed through Elis, she distributed liberal alms to the churches, the monasteries, and the hospitals, that they might implore Heaven for the restoration of her health. At length, in the twenty-fourth year of her marriage, and the twenty-second of her reign, she was consumed by a cancer, and the irreparable loss was deplored by her husband, by whom, in the room of a theatrical prostitute, might have selected the purest and most noble virgin of the East.

II. A material difference may be observed in the geneas of antiquity: the most eminent of the Greeks were actors, the Romans were merely spectacles. The Olympic stadium was open to wealth, merit, and opinion; and if the candidates could depend on their personal skill and activity, they might pursue the footsteps of Diomedc and Menelam, and conduct their own horses in the rapid career. Ten, twenty, forty, centurions, were allowed to start at the same instant; a crown of laurels was the reward of the victor; and his 21. See John Gregorius, Hist. R. B. 174. Theodora, p. 136. 22. Theodora Chronicon Posthumum, p. 2. 23. See Justinian, p. 135. 24. See John Macrob., c. 5. 25. See John Macrob., c. 5. 26. See John Macrob., c. 5. 27. See John Macrob., c. 5. 28. See John Macrob., c. 5. 29. See John Macrob., c. 5. 30. See John Macrob., c. 5. 31. See John Macrob., c. 5. 32. See John Macrob., c. 5. 33. See John Macrob., c. 5. 34. See John Macrob., c. 5. 35. See John Macrob., c. 5. 36. See John Macrob., c. 5. 37. See John Macrob., c. 5. 38. See John Macrob., c. 5. 39. See John Macrob., c. 5. 40. See John Macrob., c. 5. 41. See John Macrob., c. 5. 42. See John Macrob., c. 5. 43. See John Macrob., c. 5. 44. See John Macrob., c. 5. 45. See John Macrob., c. 5. 46. See John Macrob., c. 5. 47. See John Macrob., c. 5. 48. See John Macrob., c. 5. 49. See John Macrob., c. 5. 50. See John Macrob., c. 5. 51. See John Macrob., c. 5. 52. See John Macrob., c. 5. 53. See John Macrob., c. 5. 54. See John Macrob., c. 5. 55. See John Macrob., c. 5. 56. See John Macrob., c. 5. 57. See John Macrob., c. 5. 58. See John Macrob., c. 5. 59. See John Macrob., c. 5. 60. See John Macrob., c. 5. 61. See John Macrob., c. 5. 62. See John Macrob., c. 5. 63. See John Macrob., c. 5. 64. See John Macrob., c. 5. 65. See John Macrob., c. 5. 66. See John Macrob., c. 5. 67. See John Macrob., c. 5. 68. See John Macrob., c. 5. 69. See John Macrob., c. 5. 70. See John Macrob., c. 5. 71. See John Macrob., c. 5.
fame, with that of his family and country, was eulogised in lyric strains more durable than constituents of brass and marble. But a senator, or even a citizen, conscious of his dignity, would have been bold to expose his person or his horses in the circus of Rome. The games were exhibited at the expense of the republic, the magistrates, or the emperors; but the races were abandoned to servile hands; and if the profits of a favourite charioteer sometimes exceeded those of an advocate, they must be considered as the effects of popular extravagance, and the high wages of a disgraceful profession. The race, in its first institution, was a simple contest of two chariots, whose drivers were distinguished by white and red livery; two additional colours, a light green, and a scarlet hue, were afterwards introduced; and, as the races were repeated twenty-five times, one hundred chariots contributed in the same day to the pomp of the circus. The four factions soon acquired a legal establishment, and a mysterious origin; and their fanciful colours were derived from the various appearances of nature in the four seasons of the year: the red dog-star of summer, the snows of winter, the deep shades of autumn, and the cheerful verdure of the spring. Another interpretation preferred the elements to the seasons, and the struggle of the green and blue was supposed to represent the conflict of the earth and sea. Their respective victories announced either a plentiful harvest or a prosperous navigation, and the hostility of the husbandmen and mariners was somewhat less absurd than the blind adoration of the Roman people, who devoted their lives and fortunes to the colour which they had espoused. Such folly was disdainful and indulged by the wisest princes; but the names of Caligula, Nero, Vitellius, Vespasian, Commodus, Caracalla, and Elagabalus, were enrolled in the blue or green factions of the circus: they frequented their stables, applauded their favourites, churlished their antagonists, and deserved the esteem of the populace, by the natural or affected imitation of their manners. The bloody and tumultuous contest continued to disturb the public festivity, till the last age of the spectacles of Rome; and Theodoric, from a motive of justice or affection, interposed his authority to protect the greens against the violence of a consul and a patrician, who were passionately addicted to the blue faction of the circus. They distrusted Constantinople adopted the follies, though not the virtues, of ancient Rome; and the same factions which had agitated the circus, raged with redoubled fury in the hippodrome. Under the reign of Anastasius, this popular frenzy was inflamed by religious zeal; and the greens, who had treacherously concealed stones and daggers under baskets of fruit, massacred, at a solemn festival, three thousand of their blue adversaries. From the capital, this pestilence was diffused into the provinces and cities of the East, and the sportsive distinction of two colours produced two strong and irreconcilable factions, which shook the foundations of a feeble government. The popular dissensions, founded on the most serious interest, or holy pretense, have scarcely equalled the obstinacy of this wanton discord, which invaded the peace of families, divided friends and brothers, and tempted the female sex, though seldom seen in the circus, to espouse the inclinations of their lovers, or to contradict the wishes of their husbands. Every law, either human or divine, was trampled under foot, and as long as the party was successful, its defined followers appeared careless of private distress or public calamity. The licence, without the freedom, of democracy, was revived at Antioch and Constantinople, and the support of a faction became necessary to every candidate for civil or ecclesiastical honours. A secret attachment to the family or sect of Anastasius was imputed to the greens; the blues were zealously devoted to the cause of orthodoxy and Justinian; and their grateful patron protected, for five or six years, the disorders of a faction, whose unreasonable tumults overspread the palace, the senate, and the capitals of the East. Innsant with royal favour, the blues were affected to strike terror by a peculiar and barbarous dress, the long hair of the Huns, their close sleeves and ample garments, a lofty step, and a somnorous voice. In the day they concealed their two-edged poniards, but in the night they boldly assembled in arms, and in numerous bands, prepared for every act of violence and rapine. Their adversaries of the green faction, or even inoffensive citizens, were stripped and often murdered by these maternal robbers, and it became dangerous to wear any gold buttons or girdles, or to appear at a late hour in the streets of a peaceful capital. A daring spirit, rising with impunity, proceeded to violate the safeguard of private houses; and she was employed to facilitate the attack, or to conceal the crimes of these factional rioters. No place was safe or sacred from their depredations; to gratify either avarice or revenge, they profusely spilt the blood of the innocent; churches and altars were polluted by atrocious murders; and it was the boast of the assassins, that their dexterity could always inflict a mortal wound with a single stroke of their dagger. The absolute youth of Constantinople adopted the blue livery of disorder; the laws were silent, and the bonds of society were relaxed; creditors were compelled to resign their obligations; judges to reverse their sentence; masters to enthrall their slaves; fathers to supply the extravagance of

efects of popular extravagance, and the high wages of a disgraceful profession. The race, in its first institution, was a simple contest of two chariots, whose drivers were distinguished by white and red livery; two additional colours, a light green, and a scarlet hue, were afterwards introduced; and, as the races were repeated twenty-five times, one hundred chariots contributed in the same day to the pomp of the circus. The four factions soon acquired a legal establishment, and a mysterious origin; and their fanciful colours were derived from the various appearances of nature in the four seasons of the year: the red dog-star of summer, the snows of winter, the deep shades of autumn, and the cheerful verdure of the spring. Another interpretation preferred the elements to the seasons, and the struggle of the green and blue was supposed to represent the conflict of the earth and sea. Their respective victories announced either a plentiful harvest or a prosperous navigation, and the hostility of the husbandmen and mariners was somewhat less absurd than the blind adoration of the Roman people, who devoted their lives and fortunes to the colour which they had espoused. Such folly was disdainful and indulged by the wisest princes; but the names of Caligula, Nero, Vitellius, Vespasian, Commodus, Caracalla, and Elagabalus, were enrolled in the blue or green factions of the circus: they frequented their stables, applauded their favourites, churlished their antagonists, and deserved the esteem of the populace, by the natural or affected imitation of their manners. The bloody and tumultuous contest continued to disturb the public festivity, till the last age of the spectacles of Rome; and Theodoric, from a motive of justice or affection, interposed his authority to protect the greens against the violence of a consul and a patrician, who were passionately addicted to the blue faction of the circus. They distrusted Constantinople adopted the follies, though not the virtues, of ancient Rome; and the same factions which had agitated the circus, raged with redoubled fury in the hippodrome. Under the reign of Anastasius, this popular frenzy was inflamed by religious zeal; and the greens, who had treacherously concealed stones and daggers under
their children; noble matrons were prostituted to the lust of their servants; beautiful boys were torn from the arms of their parents; and wives, unless they preferred a voluntary death, were ravished in the presence of their husbands. The despair of the greeks, who were persecuted by their enemies, and deserted by the magistrates, assumed the privilege of defence, perhaps of retaliation; but those who survived the combat were dragged to execution, and the unhappy fugitives, escaping to woods and caverns, perished without mercy on the society from whence they were expelled. Those ministers of justice who had courage to punish the crimes, and to brave the resentment of the slaves, became the victims of their indiscreet zeal: a prefect of Constantineople fled for refuge to the holy sepulchre, a count of the East was ignominiously whipped, and a governor of Cilicia was hanged, by the order of Theodosius, on the tomb of two emperors whom he had condemned for the murder of his groom, and a daring attack upon his own life. An aspiring candidate may be tempted to build his greatness on the public confusion, but it is the interest as well as duty of a sovereign to maintain the authority of the laws. The first edict of Justinian, which was often repeated, and sometimes executed, announced his firm resolution to support the innocent, and to chastise the guilty of every denomination and colour. Yet the balance of justice was still inclined in favour of the blue faction, by the secret affections, the habits, and the fears of the emperor; his equity, after an apparent struggle, submitted, without reluctance, to the implacable passion of Theodosius, and the emperor never forgot, or forgave, the injuries of the commonwealth. At the accession of the younger Justinian, the proclamation of equal and rigorous justice indirectly condemned the partiality of the former reign. "Ye slaves, Justinian is no more; ye greeks, he is still alive." A sedition, which almost laid the city of Constantineople in ashes, was excited by the mutual hatred and momentary reconciliation of the two factions. In the fifth year of his reign, Justinian celebrated the festival of the bath of January; the greeks were incessantly disturbed by the clamours discontent of the greeks; till the twenty-second pass, the emperor maintained his silent gravity; at length, yielding to his impatient, he descended to hold, in abrupt sentences, and by the voice of a crier, the most singular dialogue that ever passed between a prince and his subjects. Their first complaints were respectful and modest; they accused the subordinate ministers of oppression, and proclaimed their wishes for the long life and victory of the emperor. "Be patient and attentive, ye insolent rioters!" exclaimed Justinian. "If you thus presume, I will "smite ye Jews, Saracens, and Mandaeans." The greeks still attempted to awaken his compassion. "We are poor, we are innocent, we "are injured, we dare not pass through the "streets; a general persecution is exercised "against our name and colour. Let us die, O "emperor! but let us die by your command, "and for your service!" But the repetition of paralytic and passionate invectives degraded, in their eyes, the majesty of the purple; they renounced allegiance to the prince who refused justice to his people; lamented that the father of Justinian had been born; and branded his son with the opprobrious imputation of homicide, an apos, and a perjured tyrant. "Do "you desire your lives?" cried the insolent monarch: the blues rose with fury from their seats; their hostile clamours thundered in the hippodrome; and their adversaries, detesting the unequal contest, spread terror and despair through the streets of Constantinople. At this dangerous moment, seven notorious assassins of both factions, who had been condemned by the prefect, were carried round the city, and then transported to the place of execution in the suburb of Pera. Four were immediately beheaded; a fifth was hanged; but when the same punishment was inflicted on the remaining two, the rage broke out, they fell alive to the ground, the populace assailed their weapons, and the monks of St. Conon, issuing from the neighbourhing convent, conveyed them in a boat to the monastery of the church. As one of these criminals was of the blue, and the other of the green livery, the two factions were equally provoked by the cruelty of their oppressors, or the ingratitude of their patron; and a short truce was concluded till they had delivered their prisoners, and satisfied their revenge. The palace of the prefect, who withstand the sedition current, was instantly burnt, his officers and guards were massacred, the prince were forced open, and freedom was restored to those who could only use it for the public destruction. A military force, which had been detached to the aid of the civil magistrate, was fiercely encountered by an armed multitude, whose numbers and boldness continually increased; and the Herulii, the wildest barbarians in the service of the empire, overthrew the priests and their relics, which, from a pious motive, had been nobly interposed to separate the bloody conflict. The tumult was exasperated by this sacrilege, the people fought with enthusiasm in the cause of God; the women, from the roofs and windows, showered stones on the heads of the soldiers, who darted firebrands against the houses; and the various flames, which had been kindled by the hands of citizens and strangers, spread without control over the face of the city. The conflagration involved the cathedral of St. Thomas, in the midst of which stood the Church of the Holy Apostles, the first edict of which was made by the Emperor Constantine, in whose time the church was erected. The bolts with which the church had been thrown down, were fired into the houses, and the flames spread in all directions. The wood of the beams was so well polished with the smoke of the fire, that they kindled with great difficulty. The church of St. Thomas was burnt down. The greeks, who had been expelled by Justinian, in the year 472, were allowed to return in the year 527. The emperor Justinian ordered the church to be rebuilt. The walls were burned down, and the roof was burnt. The church, which had been burnt in the year 527, was burnt down in the year 532. The church was burnt down in the year 604.
as were the virtues of the Byzantine palace enjoyed a free communication with the sea; vessels lay ready at the garden stairs; and a secret resolution was already formed, to convey the emperor with his family and treasures to a safe retreat, at some distance from the capital.

Justinian was lost, if the prostitute whom he raised from the theatre had not renounced the timidity, as well as the virtues, of her sex. In the midst of a council, where Belisarius was present, Theodora alone displayed the spirit of a hero; and she alone, without apprehending his future misery, could save the empire from the imminent danger, and her unworthy name. If right, said the consort of Justinian, were the only means of safety, yet I should disdain to fly. Death has the condition of our birth; but they who have resigned should never survive the loss of dignity and dominion. I implore Heaven, that I may never be seen, not a slave, without my diadem and purple; that I may no longer behold the light, when I cease to be saluted with the name of queen. If you resolve, O Caesar! to fly, you have treasures; behold the sea, you have ships; but trembling lost the desire of life should expose you to wreathed exile and ignominious death. For my part, I adhere to the maxim of antiquity, that the throne is a glorious sepulchre. The firmness of a woman restored the courage to deliberation and act, and courage soon discovers the resources of the most desperate situation. It was an easy and a decisive measure to revive the animosity of the factions; the blues were astonished at their own guilt and folly, that a trifling injury should provoke them to conspire with their implacable enemies against a gracious and liberal benefactor; they again proclaimed the majesty of Justinian, and the greens, with equal vehemence, their upright emperor, were left alone in the hippodrome. The fidelity of the guards was doubtful; but the military forces of Justinian consisted in three thousand veterans, who had been trained to valour and discipline in the Persian and Illyrian wars. Under the command of Belisarius and Mundus, they silently marched in two divisions from the palace, forced their obscure way through narrow passages, expiring flames, and falling edifices, and burst open at the same moment the two opposite gates of the hippodrome. In this narrow space, the disorderly and afflicted crowd was incapable of resisting on either side a firm and regular attack; the blues signalled the fury of their repentance; and it is computed, that above thirty thousand persons were slain in the merciless and pitiless carnage of the day. Byzantium was dragged from his throne, and conducted with his brother Pompey to the feet of the emperor; they implored his intervention; but their crime was manifest, their innocence uncertain, and Justinian had been too much terrified to forgive. The next morning the two nephews of Anastasius, with eighteen illustrious accomplices, of patriarch...
or consular rank, were privately executed by the soldiers; their bodies were thrown into the sea, their palaces razed, and their fortunes confiscated. The hippodrome itself was condemned, during several years, to a mournful silence: with the restoration of the games, the same disorders revived; and the blue and green factions continued to afflict the reign of Justinian, and to disturb the tranquillity of the Eastern empire. 23

III. That empire, after Rome was barbarous, still embraced the

Eastern empire. 24 nations whom she had conquered beyond the Adriatic, and as far as the frontiers of Ethiopia and Persia. Justinian reigned over sixty-four provinces, and nine hundred and thirty-five cities; 25 his dominions were blessed by nature with the advantages of soil, situation, and climate; and the improvements of human art had been perpetually diffused along the coast of the Mediterranean and the banks of the Nile, from ancient Troy to the Egyptian Thebes. Abraham 26 had been relieved by the well-known plenty of Egypt; the same country, a small and populous tract, was still capable of exporting, each year, two hundred and sixty thousand quarters of wheat for the use of Constantinople; 27 and the capital of Justinian was supplied with the manufactures of Sidon. Fifteen centuries after they had been celebrated in the poems of Homer. 28 The annual powers of vegetation, instead of being exhausted by two thousand harvests, were renewed and increased by skilful husbandry, rich manure, and reasonable reposing. The breed of domestic animals was infinitely multiplied. Plantations, buildings, and the instruments of labour and luxury, which are more durable than the term of human life, were accumulated by the care of successive generations. Tradition preserved, and experience simplified, the humble practice of the arts; society was enriched by the division of labour and the facility of exchange; and every Roman was lodged, clothed, and subsisted, by the industry of a thousand hands. The invention of the loom and distaff has been piously sacrificed to the gods. In every age, a variety of animal and vegetable productions, hair, skins, wool, flax, cotton, and at length silk, have been skillfully manufactured to adorn the human body; they were stained

with an infusion of permanent colours; and the pencil was successfully employed to improve the colours of the loom. In the choice of these colours 29 which imitate the beauties of nature, the freedom of taste and fashion was indulged; but the deep purple 30 which the Phænicians extracted from a shell-fish, was restrained to the sacred person and palace of the emperor; and the penalties of treason were denounced against the ambitious subjects, who dared to usurp the prerogative of the throne. 31

I need not explain that silk 32 is originally spun from the bodies of a caterpillar, and that it composes the golden tomb from whence a worm emerges in the form of a butterfly. Till the reign of Justinian, the silk-worms that feed on the leaves of the white mulberry-tree, were confined in China; those of the pine, the oak, and the silk, were common in the forests both of Asia and Europe; but as their education is more difficult, and their produce more uncertain, they were generally neglected, except in the little island of Corfu near the coast of Attica. A thin gauze was procured from their webs, and the Grecian manufacture, the invention of a woman, the female silkworm was long admired both in the East and at Rome. Whatever suspicions may be raised by the garments of the Medes and Assyrians, Virgil is the most ancient writer, who expressly mentions the soft wool which was combed from the trees of the Seres or Chinese; 33 and this natural error, less surprising than the truth, was slowly corrected by the knowledge of a valuable insect, the first architect of the luxury of nations. That rare and elegant luxury was conspired, in the reign of Tiberius, by the graces of the Romans; and Pliny, in affected though forcible language, has commended the thirst of gain, which explored the last confines of the earth, for the pernicious purpose of exposing to the public eye naked drapery and transparent mantles. 34 A dress which showed the turn of the limbs, and colour of the skin, might gratify vanity, or provoke desire; the silks which had been closely woven in China, were sometimes unravilled by the Phænicians women, and the precious materials were multiplied by a looser texture, and the intermixture of linen threads. 35

23 Mvnuilinus says in general terms, Constantinople, 127. 24 The capital of Justinian was supplied with the manufactures of Sidon. 25 Fifteen centuries after they had been celebrated in the poems of Homer. 26 Abraham. 27 The capital of Justinian was supplied with the manufactures of Sidon. 28 Fifteen centuries after they had been celebrated in the poems of Homer. 29 In the choice of these colours which imitate the beauties of nature, the freedom of taste and fashion was indulged; but the deep purple which the Phænicians extracted from a shell-fish, was restrained to the sacred person and palace of the emperor; and the penalties of treason were denounced against the ambitious subjects, who dared to usurp the prerogative of the throne. 30 The deep purple which the Phænicians extracted from a shell-fish, was restrained to the sacred person and palace of the emperor; and the penalties of treason were denounced against the ambitious subjects, who dared to usurp the prerogative of the throne. 31 Till the reign of Justinian, the silk-worms that feed on the leaves of the white mulberry-tree, were confined in China; those of the pine, the oak, and the silk, were common in the forests both of Asia and Europe; but as their education is more difficult, and their produce more uncertain, they were generally neglected, except in the little island of Corfu near the coast of Attica. 32 A thin gauze was procured from their webs, and the Grecian manufacture, the invention of a woman, the female silkworm was long admired both in the East and at Rome. 33 But as their education is more difficult, and their produce more uncertain, they were generally neglected, except in the little island of Corfu near the coast of Attica. A thin gauze was procured from their webs, and the Grecian manufacture, the invention of a woman, the female silkworm was long admired both in the East and at Rome. Whatever suspicions may be raised by the garments of the Medes and Assyrians, Virgil is the most ancient writer, who expressly mentions the soft wool which was combed from the trees of the Seres or Chinese; and this natural error, less surprising than the truth, was slowly corrected by the knowledge of a valuable insect, the first architect of the luxury of nations. That rare and elegant luxury was conspired, in the reign of Tiberius, by the graces of the Romans; and Pliny, in affected though forcible language, has commended the thirst of gain, which explored the last confines of the earth, for the pernicious purpose of exposing to the public eye naked drapery and transparent mantles. A dress which showed the turn of the limbs, and colour of the skin, might gratify vanity, or provoke desire; the silks which had been closely woven in China, were sometimes unravilled by the Phænicians women, and the precious materials were multiplied by a looser texture, and the intermixture of linen threads.
Two hundred years after the age of Pihlili, the use of pure or even of mixed silks was confined to the female sex, till the opulent citizens of Rome and the provinces were insensibly familiarized with the example of Elagabalus, the first who, by this affluence habit, had stilled the dignity of an emperor and a man. Aurelian complained, that a pound of silk was sold at Rome for twelve ounces of gold: but the supply increased with the demand, and the price diminished with the supply. If accident or monopoly sometimes raised the value even above the standard of Aurelian, the manufacturers of Tyre and Bybirus were sometimes compelled, by the operation of the same causes, to content themselves with a ninth part of that extravagant rate. A law was thought necessary to discriminate the dress of comedians from that of senators; and of the silk exported from its native country the far greater part was consumed by the subjects of Justinian. They were still more intimately acquainted with a shell-fish of the Mediterranean, surnamed the silk-worm of the sea, that fine wool or hair by which the mother-of-pearl affixes itself to the rock, is now manufactured for curiosity rather than use; and a robe obtained from the same singular materials, was the gift of the Roman emperor to the astute of Armenia.

A valuable merchandise of small bulk is capable of defraying the expense of land-carriage; and the caravans traversed the whole latitude of Asia in two hundred and forty-three days from the Chines Ocean to the sea-coast of Syria. Silk was immediately delivered to the Romans by the Persian merchants, who frequented the fair of Armesia and Nisibis; but this trade, which in the intervals of truce was oppressed by xerxes and jealousy, was totally interrupted by the long wars of the rival monarchies. The great king might proudly number Sogdiana, and even Syria, among the provinces of his empire; but his real dominion was bounded by the Oxus, and his useful intercourse with the Sogdoites, beyond the river, depended on the pleasure of their conquerors, the White Huns, and the Turks, who successively reigned over them industrious people. Yet the most savage dominion has not extinguished the seeds of agriculture and commerce, in a region which is celebrated as one of the four gardens of Asia; the cities of Samarcand and Bokhara are advantageously seated for the exchange of its various productions; and their merchants purchased from the Chinese the raw or manufactured silk which they transported into Persia for the use of the Roman empire. In the vain capital of China, the Sogdian caravans were entertained as the amiable ambassadors of tributary kingdom, and if they returned in safety, the bold adventure was rewarded with exorbitant gain. But the difficult and perilous march from Samarcand to the first town of Siahni, could not be performed in less than sixty, eighty, or one hundred days, as soon as they had passed the Jaxartes they entered the desert; and the wandering hordes, unless they are restrained by armies and garrisons, have always considered the citizen and the traveller as the objects of lawful rapine. To escape the Tartar robbers, and the tyrants of Persia, the silk caravans explored a more southern road; they traversed the mountains of Tadsik, ascended the streams of the Ganges or the Indus, and patiently expected, in the ports of Gavarat and Malabar, the annual fleets of the West. But the dangers of the desert were found less intolerable than tall, hunger, and the loss of time; the attempt was seldom renewed, and the only European who has passed that unfrequented way, applauds his own diligence, that, in nine months after his departure from Pekin, he reached the mouth of the Indus. The ocean, however, was open to the free communication of mankind. From the Great River to the tropic of Cancer, the provinces of China were salute and civilised by the emperors of the North; they were filled about the time of the Christian era with cities and men, mulberry-trees and their precious inhabitants; and if the Chinese, with the knowledge of the compass, had possessed the genius of the Greeks or Phoenicians, they might have spread their discoveries over the southern hemisphere. I am not qualified to examine, and I am not disposed to believe, their distant voyages to the Persian Gulf, or the Cape of Good Hope; but their seamen might equal the labours and success of the present race, and the sphere of their navigation might extend from the isles of Japan to the straits of Malacca, the pillars, if we may apply that name, of an Oriental Hercules. Without losing sight of land, they might sail along the coast to the extreme promontory of Archin, which is annually visited by ten or twelve ships laden with the productions of the manufactures, and even the artificers, of China; the island of Sumatra and the opposite peninsula, are faintly delineated as the regions of gold and silver; and the trade
planted in Ceylon, and the missionaries pursued the footsteps of commerce to the extremities of Asia. Two Persian monks had long resided in China, perhaps in the royal city of Nankin, the seat of a monarch addicted to foreign superstitions, and who actually received an embassy from the isle of Ceylon. Amidst their pious occupations, they viewed with a curious eye the common dress of the Chinese, the manufactures of silk, and the myriads of silk-worms, whose education (either on trees or in houses) had once been considered as the labour of queens. They soon discovered that it was impracticable to transport the short-lived insect, but that in the eggs a numerous progeny might be preserved and multiplied in a distant climate. Religion or interest had more power over the Persian monks than the love of their country; after a long journey, they arrived at Constantinople, imparted their project to the emperors, and were liberally encouraged by the gifts and promises of Justinian. To the historians of that prince, a campaign at the foot of Mount Caucausus has seemed more deserving of a minute relation than the labours of these missionaries of commerce, who again entered China, deceived a Hindu people by concealing the eggs of the silkworm in a hollow case, and returned in triumph with the seeds of the East. Under their direction, the eggs were hatched at the proper season by the artificial heat of furnes; the worms were fed with mulberry leaves; they lived and laboured in a foreign climate; a sufficient number of butterflies was saved to project the races, and trees were planted to supply the nourishment of the rising generations. Experience and reflection corrected the errors of a new attempt, and the Sophists and ambassadors acknowledged, in the succeeding reign, that the Romans were not inferior to the natives of China in the education of the insects, and the manufac- tures of silk, in which both nations have been surpass ed by the industry of modern Europe. I am not insensible of the benefits of elegant luxury; yet I reflect with some pain, that if the importers of silk had introduced the art of printing, already practised by the Chinese, the commerce of Me- medo and the entire decay of Livy would have been perpetuated in the editions of the sixth century. A larger view of the globe might at least have promoted the improvement of speculative science, but the Christian geography was forcibly extracted from texts of Scripture, and the study of nature was the nearest symptom of an unbelieving mind. The orthodox faith confined the habitable world to one temperate zone, and represented the earth as an oblong surface, four hundred days' journey in length, two hundred in breadth, encompassed by the

72 The Empires of Ceylon (vol. vi. p. 232). 73 See Justinian, p. 150; Livy, etc. 73 See Priscus, Peri I. ii. c. 324. 74 See Tertullian. 75 See the Christian missions to India, in Connin, vol. ii. p. 158. 76 See the Christian missions to India, in Connin, vol. ii. p. 158.
ocean, and covered by the solid crystal of the firmament. 77

IV. The subjects of Justinian were dissatisfied with the times, and with the government. Europe was overrun by the barbarians, and Asia by the monks; the poverty of the West discouraged the trade and manufactures of the East; the produce of labour was consumed by the unprofitable servants of the church, the state, and the army; and a rapid decrease was felt in the fixed and circulating capitals which constitute the national wealth. The public distress had been alleviated by the economy of Anastasius, and that prudent emperor accumulated an immense treasure while he delivered his people from the most odious or oppressive taxes. Their gratitude universally applauded the abolition of the gold of affliction, a personal tribute on the industry of the poor, 78 but more intolerable, as it should seem, in the form than in the substance, since the flourishing city of Edessa paid only one hundred and forty pounds of gold, which was collected in four years from ten thousand artificers. 79 Yet such was the parsimony which supported this liberal disposition, that, in a reign of twenty-seven years, Anastasius saved, from his annual revenue, the enormous sum of thirteen millions sterling, or three hundred and twenty thousand pounds of gold. His example was neglected, and his treasure was abused, by the nephew of Justin. The riches of Justinian were speedily exhausted by sloth and buildings, by ambitious wars, and ignominious treaties. His revenues were found inadequate to his expenses. Every art was tried to extort from the people the gold and silver which he scattered with a lavish hand from Persia to France; in his reign was marked by the vicissitudes, or rather by the fatuity of circumstance and a mixture of splendour and poverty; he lived with the reputation of hidden treasures, 80 and bequeathed to his successor the payment of his debts. 81 Such a character has been justly accused by the voice of the people and of posterity; but public discontent is crouded; private malice is bold; and a lover of truth will peruse with a suspicious eye the instructive anecdotes of Procopius. The secret historian represents only the vices of Justinian, and those vices are darkened by his malevolent pencil. Ambiguous actions are imputed to the worst motives: error is confounded with guilt, accident with design, and laws with abuses: the partial injustice of a

77 Caesar. ginsen Feldherrn, or the light entertainments, gastronomy, and gastronomy, but his food and his table were more abundant with the people of Persia, by the states, the state, and the army; and his treasure was abused, by the nephew of Justin. The riches of Justinian were speedily exhausted by sloth and buildings, by ambitious wars, and ignominious treaties. His revenues were found inadequate to his expenses. Every art was tried to extort from the people the gold and silver which he scattered with a lavish hand from Persia to France; in his reign was marked by the vicissitudes, or rather by the fatuity of circumstance and a mixture of splendour and poverty; he lived with the reputation of hidden treasures, and bequeathed to his successor the payment of his debts. Such a character has been justly accused by the voice of the people and of posterity; but public discontent is crouded; private malice is bold; and a lover of truth will peruse with a suspicious eye the instructive anecdotes of Procopius. The secret historian represents only the vices of Justinian, and those vices are darkened by his malevolent pencil. Ambiguous actions are imputed to the worst motives: error is confounded with guilt, accident with design, and laws with abuses: the partial injustice of a
the language of the secret historian, who expressly denotes that any indulgence was granted to Palestine after the revolt of the Samaritans; a false and odious charge, confuted by the authentick record, which attests a relief of thirteen centuries of gold (fifty-two thousand pounds) obtained for that desolate province by the intercession of St. Sahas. 33 H1. Procopius has partially overlooked the inestimable and lasting benefit which the empire received from the curiosity of Justinian. His addition of one seventh to the ordinary price of copper money may be interpreted with the same candour; and the alteration, which might be wise, appears to have been deceitful; since he neither allevied the purity, nor diminished the value, of the gold coin, 57 the legal measure of public and private payments. V. The simple jurisdic-

40. One on Neiponoplic, capital of the second Palaeon, in 311. 325. 330. The Senate hands over the task of law to the emperors. With the world of brand, and

45. The seat of the city, on the site of ancient, was

43. A description of the castle and fortifications, with the defenses and besieged by the Goths. The emperor Justinian, in 533, was at the head of an army, and the city of Constantinople was reduced by a siege of twenty months. The capture of Constantinople was the occasion of a great disturbance in the empire, and the people were exulting in the victory of their emperor. The capture of Constantinople was the occasion of a great disturbance in the empire, and the people were exulting in the victory of their emperor.

38. In the triumph, the emperor Justinian, in 533, was at the head of an army, and the city of Constantinople was reduced by a siege of twenty months. The capture of Constantinople was the occasion of a great disturbance in the empire, and the people were exulting in the victory of their emperor.
of favour, provoked the resentment of Theodosius, disdained a prayer before which every knee was bent, and attempted to saw the seeds of discord between the emperor and his beloved consort. Even Theodosius herself was constrained to dissemble, to wait a favourable moment, and by an artful conspiracy to render John of Cappadocia the accomplice of her own destruction. At a time when Bellassius, unless he had been a hero, must have shown himself a rebel, his wife Antonia, who enjoyed the secret confidence of the empress, communicated his designs discontent to Euphemia, the daughter of the prefect; the credulous virgin imparted to her father the dangerous project, and John, who might have known the value of oaths and promises, was told to accept a nocturnal, and almost treasonable, interview with the wife of Bellassius. An ambuscade of guards and eunuchs had been posted by the command of Theodosius; they rushed with drawn swords to seize or to punish the guilty minister; he was saved by the fidelity of his attendants; but instead of appealing to a gracious sovereign, who had privately warned him of his danger, he pusillanimously fled to the sanctuary of the church. The favourite of Justinian was sacrificed to conjugal tenderness or domestic tranquillity; the conversion of a prefect into a priest extinguished: his ambitious hopes, but the friendship of the emperor alleviated his disgrace, and he retained in the mild exile of Cyrusius an ample portion of his riches. Such imperfect revenge could not satisfy the unremitting hatred of Theodosius; the murder of his old enemy, the bishop of Cyrusius, afforded a decent pretence; and John of Cappadocia, whose actions had deserved a thousand deaths, was at last condemned for a crime of which he was innocent. A great minister, who had been invested with the honours of consilium and patria, was ignominiously scourged like the scum of malefactors; a tattered cloak was the sole remnant of his fortunes; he was transported in a bark to the place of his banishment at Antioch in Upper Egypt, and the prefect of the East begged his release through the cities which had trembled at his name. During an exile of seven years, his life was protected and threatened by the ingenuities of cruelty of Theodosius; and when her death permitted the emperor to recall a servant whom he had abandoned with regret, the ambition of John of Cappadocia was reduced to the humble duties of the sacerdotal profession. His successors convinced the subjects of Justinian, that the arts of opposition might still be improved by experience and industry; the frauds of a Syrian banker were introduced into the administration of the finances; and the example of the prefect was diligently copied by the quaker, the public and private treasurers, the governors of provinces, and the principal magnates of the Eastern empire.  

99 On was able ees a transmoures because thed the en prosum aenteo cae oxmes Air;  a Bntunus predeposit. 

...and the senate; and while the one instructed the rising generation in the schools of eloquence, the other filled the capital and provinces with more lasting monuments of his art. To a trilling dispute relative to the walls or windows of their contiguous houses, he had been vanquished by the eloquence of his neighbour Zeno; but the orator was defeated in his turn by the master of mechanics, whose malicious, though harmless, stratagems were only represented by the ignableness of Agathias. In a lower room, Archimedes arranged several vessels or caldrons of water, each of them covered by the wide bottom of a leather tube, which rose to a narrow top, and was artificially conveyed among the joints and rafters of the adjacent building. A fire was kindled beneath the caldron; the steam of the boiling water ascended through the tube; the house was shaken by the efforts of imprisoned air, and its trembling inhabitants might wonder that the city was unconscious of the earthquake which they had felt. At another time, the friends of Zeno, as they sat at table, were dazzled by the intolerable light which flashed in their eyes from the reflecting mirrors of Anthimius; they were astonishe"
The ruins were cleared away, a more spacious plan was described, and as it required the consent of some proprietors of ground, they obtained the most exorbitant terms from the eager desires and timorous conscience of the monarch. Armenia formed the design, and his genius directed the hands of ten thousand workmen, whose payment in pieces of fine silver was never delayed beyond the evening. The emperor himself, clad in a linen tunic, surveyed each day their rapid progress, and encouraged their diligence by his familiarity, his zeal, and his rewards. The new cathedral of St. Sophia was consecrated by the patriarch, five years, eleven months, and ten days from the first foundation; and in the midst of the solemn festival, Justinian exclaimed with devout vanity, "Glory be to God, who hath thought me worthy to accomplish so great a work! I have vanquished thee, O Solomon!"

But the pride of the Roman Solomon, before twenty years had elapsed, was humbled by an earthquake, which overthrew the eastern part of the dome. Its splendour was again restored by the perseverance of the same prince; and in the thirty-sixth year of his reign, Justinian celebrated the second dedication of a temple, which remains, after twelve centuries, a stately monument of his fame. The architecture of St. Sophia, which is now converted into the principal mosque, has been imitated by the Turkish sultans, and that venerable pile continues to excite the fond admiration of the Greeks, and the more rational curiosity of European travellers.

The eye of the spectator is disappointed by an irregular prospect of half domes and shelving roofs; the western front, the principal approach, is destitute of simplicity and magnificence; and the scale of dimensions has been much surpassed by several of the Latin cathedrals. But the architect who first erected an aerial cupola, is entitled to the praise of bold design and skilful execution. The dome of St. Sophia, illuminated by four and twenty windows, is formed with so small a curve, that the depth is equal only to one sixth of its diameter; the measure of that diameter is one hundred and fifteen feet, and the lofty centre, where a crescent has supplanted the cross, rises to the perpendicular height of one hundred and eighty feet above the pavement. The circle which encompasses the dome, lightly repose on four strong arches, and their weight is firmly supported by four massive piers, whose strength is assisted on the northern and southern sides by four columns of Egyptian granite. A Greek cross, inscribed in a quadrangle, represents the form of the edifice; the exact breadth is two hundred and forty-three feet; and two hundred and sixty-nine may be assigned for the extreme length from the sanctuary in the east to the more western doors which open into the vestibule, and from thence into the narthex or exterior portion. That part of the humble station of the patriarch. The nave or body of the church was filled by the congregation of the faithful; but the two sexes were prudently distinguished, and the upper and lower galleries were allotted for the more private devotion of the women. Beyond the northern and southern piles, a bema, terminated on either side by the thrones of the emperor and the patriarch, divided the nave from the choir, and the space, as far as the steps of the altar, was occupied by the clergy and singers. The altar itself, a name which insensibly became familiar to Christian ears, was placed in the eastern recess, artificially built in the form of a demi-cylinder; and this sanctuary communicated by several doors with the narthex, the vestry, the baptistery, and the contiguous buildings, subservient either to the pomp of worship, or the private use of the ecclesiastical ministers. The memory of past calamities inspired Justinian with a wise resolution, that no wood, except for the doors, should be admitted into the new edifice; and the choice of the materials was applied to the strength, the lightness, or the splendour of the respective parts. The solid piles which sustained the cupola were composed of huge blocks of freestone, hewn into squares and triangles, fortified by circles of iron, and firmly cemented by the infusion of lead and quicklime: but the weight of the cupola was diminished by the levity of its substance, which consists either of punice-stone that floats in the water, or of bricks from the island of Rhodes, five times less ponderous than the ordinary sort. The whole frame of the edifice was constructed of brick; but these base materials were concealed by a crust of marble; and the inside of St. Sophia, the cupola, the two larger, and the six smaller, semi-domes, the walls, the hundred columns, and the pavement, delight even the eyes of barbarians, with a rich and variegated picture. A poet, who beheld the primitive lustre of St. Sophia, enumerates the colours, the shades, and the spots of ten or twelve marbles, jaspers, and porphyries, which nature had profusely diversified, and which were blended and contrasted as it were by a skilful painter. The triumph of Christ was adorned with the last spoils of Paganism, but the greater

\[\text{Mathes}\]

\[\text{Abbot}\]

\[\text{Abul}\]

\[\text{Abil}\]

\[\text{Abul}\]

\[\text{Abil}\]
part of these costly stones was extracted from the quarries of Asia Minor, the isles and continent of Greece, Egypt, Africa, and Gaul. Eight columns of porphyry, which Aurelian had placed in the temple of the Sun, were offered by the piety of a Roman matron; eight others of green marble were presented by the ambition of angel, both are admirable by their size and beauty, but every order of architecture disclaims their fantastic capitals. A variety of ornaments and figures was curiously expressed in mosaic; and the images of Christ, of the Virgin, of saints, and of angels, which have been defaced by Turkish fanaticism, were dangerously exposed to the superstition of the Greeks. According to the anxiety of each object, the precious metals were distributed in thin leaves or in solid masses. The balustrade of the choir, the capitals of the pillars, the ornaments of the doors and galleries, were of gilt bronze; the spectator was dazzled by the glittering aspect of the cupola; the sanctuary contained forty thousand pound weight of silver; and the holy vessels and vestments of the altar were of the purest gold, enriched with inestimable pearls.

Before the structure of the church had risen the two cabins above the ground, forty-five thousand two hundred pounds were already consumed; and the whole expense amounted to three hundred and twenty thousand; such reader, according to the measure of his belief, may estimate their value either in gold or silver; but the sum of one million sterling is the result of the least computation. A magnificent temple is a laudable monument of national taste and religion, and the enthusiast who entered the dome of St. Sophia, might be tempted to suppose that it was the residence, or even the workmanship, of the Deity. Yet how dull is the artifice, how insignificant is the labour, if it be compared with the formation of the vile insect that crawls upon the surface of the temple!

Churches and palaces which time has respected, may attest the truth, and prove the relation of the innumerable works, both in the capital and provinces, which Justinian constructed on a smaller scale and less durable foundations. In Constantinople alone, and the adjacent suburbs, he dedicated twenty-five churches to the honour of Christ, the Virgin, and the saints; most of these churches were decorated with marble and gold; and their various situation was skilfully chosen in a populous square, or on a pleasant grove; on the margin of the sea-shore, or on some lofty eminence which overlooked the continent of Europe and Asia. The church of the Holy Apostles at Constantinople, and that of St. John at Ephesus, appear to have been framed on the same model: their domes appeared to imitate the cupola of St. Sophia; but the altar was more judiciously placed under the centre of the dome, at the junction of four stately porticos, which more accurately expressed the figure of the Greek cross. The Virgin of Jerusalem might emulate in the temple erected by her Imperial votary on a most ungrateful spot, which afforded neither ground nor materials to the architect. A level was formed, by using part of a deep valley, to the height of the mountain. The stones of a neighbouring quarry were hewn into regular forms; each block was fixed on a peculiar carriage drawn by forty of the strongest oxen, and the roads were widened for the passage of such enormous weights. Justinian furnished his richest costly for the support of the church; and the reasonable discovery of a vein of red marble, supplied its beautiful columns, two of which, the supports of the exterior portico, were esteemed the largest in the world. The plans munificence of the emperor was diffused over the Holy Land; and if reason should condemn the undertaking, the workmen, who were built or restored by Justinian, art, charity, art, and applause the walls which to sunk, and the hospitals which he founded, for the relief of the weary pilgrims. The chevalier temper of Egypt was ill entitled to the royal bounty; but in Syria and Africa some provide were applied to the disasters of wars and earthquakes, and both Carthage and Antioch, emerging from their ruins, might assure the name of their gracious benefactor. Almost every ninth in the calendar acquired the benners of a temple; almost every city of the empire obtained the solid advantages of bridges, hospitals, and aqueducts; but the severe liberality of the monarch disdained to indulge his subjects in the popular luxury of Bath and theatres. While Justinian laboured for the public service, he was not unmindful of his own dignity and ease. The Byzantine palace, which had been damaged by the conflagration, was restored with new magnificence; and some notion may be conceived of the whole stile, by the vestibule or hall, which, the from the doors perhaps, or the roof, was covered with marble; the vestibule of the dome, and sides represented the glories of the African and Italian triumphs. On the Asiatic side of the Propontis, at a small distance to the east of Chalcedon, the costly palace and gardens of Hermon were prepared for the summer residence of Justinian, and noted especially of Theodora. The poets of the age have celebrated the rare allusions of nature and art, the harmony of the tints of the green, the flowers, the fountain, and the waves; yet the crowd of attendants who followed the court, complained of their inconvenient

102 The two books of the History of Persian are those chief parts of the work that are here transcribed; the second contains Magnesia and Syria; the third, Armenia and the East, viz. the countries of the Romans; the fourth part, Egypt and Africa. Holy to Egypt by the emperor of the Romans, who published this work of admiration before the date (A.D. 500.) in this volume.
lodgings, and the nymphs were too often alarmed by the famous Porphyrus, a whale of ten cubits in breadth, and thirty in length, who was stranded at the mouth of the river Sanguina, after he had infested more than half a century the sea of Constantinople.  

The fortifications of Europe and Asia were multiplied by Justinian; but the repetition of these timid and fruitless precautions exposed to a philosophic eye the debility of the empire.  

From Belgrade to the Euxine, from the conflux of the Save to the mouth of the Danube, a chain of above four-score fortified places was extended along the banks of the great river. Single watch-towers were changed into spacious citadels; vacant walls, which the contractors engrossed or embargued according to the nature of the ground, were filled with colonies or garrisons; a strong fortress defended the ruins of Trojan's bridge, and several military stations affected to spread beyond the Danube the pride of the Roman name. But that name was directed of its terrors: the barbarians, in their annual invasions, passed, and contemptuously repassed, before these useless bulwarks; and the inhabitants of the frontier, instead of reposing under the shadow of the general defence, were compelled to guard, with incessant vigilance, their separate habitations. The solitude of ancient cities was replenished; the new foundations of Justinian acquired, perhaps too hastily, the optics of impregnable and populous; and the auspicious place of his own nativity attracted the grateful reverence of the richest princes. Under the name of Justinian's prime, the obscure village of Thiasium became the seat of an archbishop and a prefect, whose jurisdiction extended over seven warlike provinces of Illyricum; and the corrupt appellation of Glastonan still indicates, about twenty miles to the south of Sophia, the residence of a Turkish sanjak. For the use of the emperor's court-yard, a cathedral, palace, and an aqueduct, were speedily constructed; the public and private utilities were adapted to the greatness of a royal city; and the strength of the walls resisted, during the lifetime of Justinian, the unskilful assaults of the Huns and Scythians. Their progress was sometimes retarded, and their hopes of rape were disappointed, by the immoveable castles, which, in the provinces of Dacia, Epirus, Thessaly, Macedonia, and Thrace, appeared to cover the whole face of the country. Six hundred of these forts were built or repaired by the emperor; but it seems reasonable to believe, that the far greater part consisted only of a stone or brick tower, in the midst of a square or circular area, which was surrounded by a wall and ditch, and afforded in a moment of danger some protection to the peasants and cattle of the neighbouring villages. Yet these military works, which exhausted the public treasure, could not remove the just apprehensions of Justinian and his European subjects. The warm baths of Ancylius in Thrace were rendered unsafe as they were solitary; but the rich pastures of Thessalonica were foraged by the Scythian; cavalry; the delicious side of Tempe; three hundred miles from the Danube, was continually alarmed by the sound of war; and an unfrequented spot, however distant or solitary, could securely enjoy the blessings of peace. The straits of Thermopylae, which seemed to protect, but which had so often betrayed, the safety of Greece were diligently strengthened by the labours of Justinian. From the edge of the sea-shore, through the forests and valleys, and as far as the summit of the Thessalian mountains, a strong wall was continued, which occupied every practicable entrance. Instead of an hasty crowd of peasants, a garrison of two thousand soldiers was stationed along the rampart; granaries of corn, and reservoirs of water, were provided for their use; and by a precaution that inspired the cowardice which it forewarned, convenient fastnesses were erected for their retreat. The walls of Corinthus, overthrown by an earthquake, and the mouldering bulwarks of Athens and Plataea, were carefully restored; the barbarians were discouraged by the prospect of successive and painful sieges; and the naked cities of Peloponnesus were covered by the fortifications of the isthmus of Corinthus. At the extremity of Europe, another peninsula, the Thracian Chersonesus, runs three days' journey into the sea, to form, with the adjacent shores of Asia, the straits of the Hellespont. The intervals between eleven populous towns were filled by lofty woods, fair pastures, and arable lands; and the isthmus, of thirty-seven stadia in furlongs, had been fortified by a Spartan general nine hundred years before the reign of Justinian. In an age of freedom and valour, the slightest rampart may prevent a surprise; and Proucopius appears insensible of the superiority of ancient times, while he praises the solid construction and double parapet of a wall, whose long arm stretched on either side into the sea; but whose strength was deemed insufficient to

113 A.D. 622. 

114 625. 

115 630. 

116 635. 

117 636. 

118 637. 

119 638. 

120 639. 

121 640. 

122 641. 

123 642.
guard the Chersonese, if each city, and particularly Gallipoli and Sestus, had not been secured by their peculiar fortifications. The long wall, as it was emphatically styled, was a work so disgraceful to the object, as it was respectable in the execution. The riches of a capital diffuse themselves over the neighbouring country, and the territory of Constantinople, a paradise of nature, was adorned with luxurious gardens and villas of the senators and opulent citizens. But their wealth served only to attract the bold and rapacious barbarians; the nobility of the Romans, in the bosom of peaceful indolence, were led away into Scythian captivity, and their sovereign might view, from his palace, the hostile flames which were insidiously spread to the gates of the Imperial city. At the distance only of forty miles, Anastasius was constrained to establish a last frontier, his long wall, of sixty miles from the Proponent to the Euxine, proclaimed the impotence of his arms; and so the danger became more imminent; new fortifications were added by the indefatigable prudence of Justinian. 

Asia Minor, after the submission of the Sassanians, remained without enemies and without fortifications. Those bold savages, who had disdained to be the subjects of the Goths, persisted two hundred and thirty years in a life of independence and rapine. Their three or four successful princes respected the strength of the mountains and the despair of the nations; their fierce spirit was sometimes soothed with gifts, and sometimes restrained by terms; and a military count, with three legions, fixed his postament and ignominious station in the heart of the Roman provinces. But no sooner was the vigilance of power relaxed or diverted, than the light-armed squadrilles descended from the hills, and invaded the peaceful plenty of Asia. Although the Sassanians were not remarkable for stature or bravery, want rendered them bold, and experience made them skilful in the exercise of predatory war. They advanced with secrecy and speed to the attack of villages and defenceless towns; their flying parties have sometimes burnt the Hallespout, the Euxine, and the gates of Tarsus, Antioch, or Damascus; and their sport was lodged in their inaccessible mountains, before the Roman troops had received their orders, or the distant province had computed its loss. The guilt of rebellion and robbery excluded them from the rights of national enemies; and the magistrates were instructed, by an edict, that the trial of punishment of the Insaurian, even on the festival of Easter, was a manifest injustice and public policy. If the captives were condemned to domestic slavery, they maintained, with their sword or dagger, the private quarrel of their masters; and it was found expedient for the public tranquillity, to prohibit the service of such dangerous revolutionists. When their countryman Treasciussos or Zenos ascended the throne, he invited a faithful and formidable band of Insaurians, who insulted the coast and city, and were rewarded by an annual tribute of five thousand pounds of gold. But the hopes of fortune depopulated the mountains, luxury exerted the hardness of their minds and bodies, and in proportion as they mixed with mankind, they became less qualified for the enjoyment of peace and military freedom. After the death of Zenos, his successor Anastasius suppressed their parricides, exposed their persons to the revenge of the people, banished them from Constantinople, and prepared to sustain a war, which left only the alternative of victory or submission. A brother of the last emperor received the title of Augustus; his cause was powerfully supported by the empress, the magnificence, and the magnanimity, reigned by Zenos; and the native Insaurians must have formed the smallest portion of the hundred and fifty thousand barbarians under his standard, which was sacrificed, for the first time, by the presence of a fighting bishop. Their disorderly numbers were vanquished in the plains of Phrygia by the valour and discipline of the Goths; but a war of six years almost exhausted the courage of the emperor. The Insaurians retired to their mountains, and their fortresses were successively besieged and razed; their communication with the sea was interrupted; the bravest of their leaders died in arms; the surviving chiefs, before their execution, were dragged in chains through the hippodrome; a colony of their youth was transplanted into Thrace, and the remnant of the people submitted to the Roman government. Yet some generations elapsed before their minds were reduced to the level of slavery. The populous villages of Mount Taurus were filled with horsemen and archers; they resisted the imposition of tributes, but they recruited the armies of Justinian; and his civil magistrates, the procurator of Capadocia, the count of Insauria, and the praetor of Lycia and Pisidia, were invested with military power to restrain the licentious practice of rape and annoyance.

If we cast our view from the tropic to the mouth of the Tarsus, we may observe, on one hand, the precocities of Justinian to curb the savages of Athropia; and on the other, the
long walls which he constructed in Cimmeria for the protection of his friendly Goths, a colony of three thousand shepherds and warriors. From that peninsula to Trebizond, the eastern curve of the Euxine was secured by forts, by alliance, or by religion; and the possession of Lucania, the Colchis of ancient, the Minotaur of modern, geography, soon became the object of an important war. Trebizond, in after-times the seat of a romantic empire, was inscribed to the liberality of Justinian for a church, an aqueduct, and a castle, whose ditches are hewn in the solid rock. From that maritime city, a frontier of five hundred miles may be drawn to the fortress of Cireneum, the last Roman station on the Euphrates. Above Trebizond immediately, and five days' journey to the south, the country rises into dark forests and craggy mountains, as savage though not so lofty as the Alps and the Pyrenees. In this rigorous climate, where the snows seldom melt, the fruits are tardy and insipid, even honey is poisonous; the most inducements tillage would be confined to some pleasant valleys; and the pastoral tribes obtained a scanty sustenance from the flesh and milk of their cattle. The Chalybes derived their name and temper from the iron quality of the soil; and, since the days of Cyrus, they might produce, under the various appellations of Chaldaean and Zalman, an uninterrupted prescription of war and rapine. Under the reign of Justinian, they acknowledged the God and the emperor of the Romans; and seven castles, or forts of different construction, were founded in the most accessible passes, to exclude the ambition of the Persian monarch. The principal source of the Euphrates descends from the Chalybian mountains, and seems to flow towards the west and the Euxine; bending to the south-west, the river passes under the walls of Sanaa and Malaien (which were restored by Justinian as the bulwarks of the Lesser Armenia), and gradually approaches the Mediterranean Sea; till at length, repelled by Mount Taurus, the Euphrates inclines his long and bosom course to the south-east and the Gulf of Persia. Among the Roman cities beyond the Euphrates, we distinguish two recent foundations, which were named from Theodosius, and the relics of the martyrs; and two capitals, Amidah and Edessa, which are celebrated in the history of every age. Their strength was pro-
portioned by Justinian to the danger of their situation. A ditch and palisade might be sufficient to resist the artless force of the cavalry of Scythia; but more elaborate works were required to sustain a regular siege against the arms and treachery of the Great King. His skilful engineers understood the methods of conducting deep mines, and of raising platforms to the level of the rampart; he shked the strongest battlements with his military engines, and sometimes advanced to the assault with a line of movable tortoises on the backs of elephants. In the great cities of the East, the disadvantage of space, perhaps of position, was compensated by the zeal of the people, who seconded the garrison in the defence of their country and religion; and the fabulous promise of the Son of God, that Edessa should never be taken, filled the citizens with valiant confidence, and chilled the hesitancy with doubt and dismay. The subordinate towns of Armenia and Mesopotamia were differently strengthened; and the ports which appeared to have any command of the river or sea, were occupied by numerous forts, substantially built of stone, or more hastily erected with the obvious materials of earth and brick. The eye of Justinian investigated every spot; and his cruel precautions might attract the war into some lonely vale, whose peaceful natives, connected by trade and marriage, were ignorant of national discord and the quarrels of princes. Westward of the Euphrates, a sandy desert extends above six hundred miles to the Red Sea. Nature had interposed a vacant solitude between the ambition of two rival empires; the Arabsians, till Mahomet arose, were formidable only as robbers; and in the profound security of peace, the fortifications of Syria were neglected on the most vulnerable side.

But the national enmity, at least the effects of that enmity, had been suspended by a truce, which continued above fourscore years. An ambassador from the emperor Zeno accompanied the rush and unfortunate Peroes, in his expedition against the Nephthites or White Huns, whose conquests had been stretched from the Caspian to the heart of India, whose throne was enriched with emeralds, and whose cavalry was supported by a line of two thousand elephants. The Persians were twice circumvented, in a

portioned by Justinian to the danger of their situation. A ditch and palisade might be sufficient to resist the artless force of the cavalry of Scythia; but more elaborate works were required to sustain a regular siege against the arms and treachery of the Great King. His skilful engineers understood the methods of conducting deep mines, and of raising platforms to the level of the rampart; he shked the strongest battlements with his military engines, and sometimes advanced to the assault with a line of movable tortoises on the backs of elephants. In the great cities of the East, the disadvantage of space, perhaps of position, was compensated by the zeal of the people, who seconded the garrison in the defence of their country and religion; and the fabulous promise of the Son of God, that Edessa should never be taken, filled the citizens with valiant confidence, and chilled the hesitancy with doubt and dismay. The subordinate towns of Armenia and Mesopotamia were differently strengthened; and the ports which appeared to have any command of the river or sea, were occupied by numerous forts, substantially built of stone, or more hastily erected with the obvious materials of earth and brick. The eye of Justinian investigated every spot; and his cruel precautions might attract the war into some lonely vale, whose peaceful natives, connected by trade and marriage, were ignorant of national discord and the quarrels of princes. Westward of the Euphrates, a sandy desert extends above six hundred miles to the Red Sea. Nature had interposed a vacant solitude between the ambition of two rival empires; the Arabsians, till Mahomet arose, were formidable only as robbers; and in the profound security of peace, the fortifications of Syria were neglected on the most vulnerable side.

But the national enmity, at least the effects of that enmity, had been suspended by a truce, which continued above fourscore years. An ambassador from the emperor Zeno accompanied the rush and unfortunate Peroes, in his expedition against the Nephthites or White Huns, whose conquests had been stretched from the Caspian to the heart of India, whose throne was enriched with emeralds, and whose cavalry was supported by a line of two thousand elephants. The Persians were twice circumvented, in a

portioned by Justinian to the danger of their situation. A ditch and palisade might be sufficient to resist the artless force of the cavalry of Scythia; but more elaborate works were required to sustain a regular siege against the arms and treachery of the Great King. His skilful engineers understood the methods of conducting deep mines, and of raising platforms to the level of the rampart; he shked the strongest battlements with his military engines, and sometimes advanced to the assault with a line of movable tortoises on the backs of elephants. In the great cities of the East, the disadvantage of space, perhaps of position, was compensated by the zeal of the people, who seconded the garrison in the defence of their country and religion; and the fabulous promise of the Son of God, that Edessa should never be taken, filled the citizens with valiant confidence, and chilled the hesitancy with doubt and dismay. The subordinate towns of Armenia and Mesopotamia were differently strengthened; and the ports which appeared to have any command of the river or sea, were occupied by numerous forts, substantially built of stone, or more hastily erected with the obvious materials of earth and brick. The eye of Justinian investigated every spot; and his cruel precautions might attract the war into some lonely vale, whose peaceful natives, connected by trade and marriage, were ignorant of national discord and the quarrels of princes. Westward of the Euphrates, a sandy desert extends above six hundred miles to the Red Sea. Nature had interposed a vacant solitude between the ambition of two rival empires; the Arabsians, till Mahomet arose, were formidable only as robbers; and in the profound security of peace, the fortifications of Syria were neglected on the most vulnerable side.

But the national enmity, at least the effects of that enmity, had been suspended by a truce, which continued above fourscore years. An ambassador from the emperor Zeno accompanied the rush and unfortunate Peroes, in his expedition against the Nephthites or White Huns, whose conquests had been stretched from the Caspian to the heart of India, whose throne was enriched with emeralds, and whose cavalry was supported by a line of two thousand elephants. The Persians were twice circumvented, in a
situation which made valour useless and flight impossible; and the double victory of the Huns was achieved by military stratagem. They dismissed their royal captive after he had submitted to achieve the majesty of a barbarian; and the humiliation was poorly excelled by the casuistical subtility of the Magi, who instructed Perzec to direct his intention to the rising sun. The ignominious successor of Cyrus forgot his danger and his gratitude; he renewed the attack with headstrong fury, and lost both his army and his life. 138 The death of Perzec abandoned Persia to her foreign and domestic enemies; and twelve years of confusion elapsed before his son Cadabes or Khabal could embrace any designs of ambition or revenge. The unkind parsimony of Anastasius was the motive or pretext of a Roman war; 139 the Huns and Arabs marched under the Persian standard, and the fortifications of Armenia and Mesopotamia were, at that time, in a ruinous or imperfect condition. The emperor returned his thanks to the governor and people of Martyropolis, for the prompt surrender of a city which could not be successfully defended, and the conquest of Theodosiope might justify the conduct of their prudent neighbours. Amidâ contained a long and destructive siege; at the end of three months the loss of fifty thousand of the soldiers of Cadabes was not balanced by any prospect of success, and it was vain that the Magi disclosed a flattering prediction from the oracle to the women on the ramparts, who had revealed their most secret charms to the eyes of the assailants. At length, in a silent night, they ascended the most accessible tower, which was guarded only by some monks, oppressed, after the duties of a festival, with sleep and wine. Scaling ladders were applied at the dawn of day; the presence of Cadabes, his stern command, and his drawn sword, compelled the Persians to vanquish; and before it was shivered, fourscore thousand of the inhabitants had expired; the blood of their companions. After the siege of Amidâ, the war continued three years; and the unhappy frontier tasted the full measure of its calamities. The gold of Anastasius was offered too late, the number of his troops was defeated by the number of their generals; the country was stripped of its inhabitants, and both the living and the dead were abandoned to the wild beasts of the desert. The resistance of Edessa, and the deficiency of spoil, inclined the mind of Cadabes to peace: he said his conquests for an exorbitant price; and the same line, though marked with slaughter and desolation, still separated the two empires. To avert the repetition of the same evils, Anastasius resolved to found a new colony, so strong, that it should defy the power of the Persians, and so far advanced towards Assyria, that its stationary troops might defend the province by the presence or operation of offensive war. For this purpose, the town of Dura, 140 fourteen miles from Nisibis, and four days' journey from the Tigris, was peopled and adorned; the busy toil of Anastasius were improved by the perseverance of Justinian; and without insisting on places less important, the fortifications of Dura may represent the military architecture of the age. The city was surrounded, with two walls, and the interval between them, of fifty paces, afforded a retreat to the cattle of the besieged. The inner wall was a monument of strength and beauty: it measured sixty feet from the ground, and the height of the towers was one hundred feet; the loopholes, from whence an enemy might be annoyed with missile weapons, were small, but numerous: the soldiers were planted along the rampart, under the shelter of double galleries, and a third platform, spacious and secure, was raised on the summit of the towers. The exterior wall appears to have been less lofty, but more solid; and each tower was protected by a quadrangular bulwark. A hard rocky soil resisted the tools of the miners, and on the southeast, where the ground was more tractable, their approach was retarded by a new work, which advanced in the shape of an half-moon. The double and treble ditches were filled with a stream of water; and in the management of the river, the most skilful labour was employed to supply the inhabitants, to distress the besiegers, and to prevent the mischief of a natural or artificial inundation. Dura continued more than sixty years to fulfill the wishes of its founders, and to provoke the jealousy of the Persians, who incessantly complained, that this impregnable fortress had been constructed in manifest violation of the treaty of peace between the two empires.

Between the Euxine and the Caspian, the countries of Colchis, Iberia, and Albania, are intersected in every direction by the branches of Mount Caucasus; and the two principal gates, or passes, from north to south, have been frequently confounded in the geography both of the ancients and moderns. The name of Caspian or Albana gates is properly applied to Derbent, 141 which occupies a short declivity between the mountains and the sea: the city, if we give credit to local traditions, had been founded by the Greeks; and this dangerous entrance was fortified by the kings of Persia, with a mole, double walls, and doors of iron. The pass gates 142 are formed by a narrow passage of six miles in Mount Caucasus, which opens from the northern side.

138 See the life of终王 of Persia, and its sequel, in Historia Preussica, i. 122, where may be found the names of the Persians and the Huns, with the history of Persia, translated into English by Boston, 1. 1825. 139 The Persians, under the reign of Perzec and Tricho, under the rule of Huns. 140 For the rise and fall of Dura, see Tristram's Mission, 1850, or the route of the Tigris. 141 See the history of Tigris in simple and correct dates for Persia and the Huns, 1825; 1. 118, 1825; 1. 120, 1826; 1. 131, 1826. 142 See the map in Tegguti et Caspici in Fregatt, p. 138.
of Russia or Georgia, into the plain that reaches to the Tauris and the Volga. A fortress, designed by Alexander perhaps, or one of his successors, to command that important pass, had descended by right of conquest or inheritance to a prince of the Huns, who offered it for a moderate price to the emperor; but while Anastasius passed, while he tamely computed the cost and the distance, a more vigilant rival interposed, and Cadalsas forcibly occupied the straits of Caucasus. The Albanian and Iranian gates excluded the horsemen of Scythia from the shortest and most practicable roads, and the whole front of the mountains was covered by the rampart of Gog and Magog, the long wall which has excited the curiosity of an Arabian caliph and a Russian conqueror. According to a recent description, huge stones seven feet thick, twenty-one feet in length or breadth, are artificially joined without iron or cement, to compose a wall, which runs above five hundred miles from the shores of Derbent, over the hills and through the valleys of Daghestan and Georgia. Without a vision, such a work might be undertaken by the policy of Cadalsas; without a miracle, it might be accomplished by his son, so formidable have the Romans under the name of Chorosso, so dear to the Orientals under the appellation of Nushirwan. The Persian monarch held in his hand the key of both peace and war; but he stipulated, in every treaty, that Justinian should contribute to the expense of a common barrier, which equally protected the two empires from the incursions of the Scythians.

VII. Justinian suppress the schools of Athens and the consulship of Rome, which had given so many sages and heroes to mankind. Both these institutions had long since degenerated from their primitive glory; yet some reproof may be justly inflicted on the axiary and jealousy of a prince, by whose hand such venerable ruins were destroyed.

The schools of Athens, after her Persian triumphs, adopted(281,601),(761,615) the philosophy of Ionia and the rhetoric of Sicily; and these studies became the patrimony of a city, whose inhabitants, about thirty thousand males, concluded within the period of a single life, the genius of ages and millions. Our sense of the dignity of human nature is exalted by the simple recollection, that Isocrates was the companion of Plato and Xenophon; that he assisted, perhaps with the historian Thucyldes, at the first representations of the (Edipsus of Sophocles and the Iphigenia of Euripides; and that his pupils Aschines and DemeasTHEMES contended for the crown of patriotism in the presence of Aristotle, the master of Theophrastus, who taught at Athens with the founders of the Stoic and Epicurean sects. The ingenious youth of Attica enjoyed the benefit of their domestic education, which was communicated without envy to the rival cities. Two thousand disciples heard the lessons of Theophrastus; the schools of rhetoric must have been still more populous than those of philosophy; and a rapid succession of students diffused the fame of their teachers as far as the utmost limits of the Greek language and name. Those limits were enlarged by the victories of Alexander; the arts of Athens survived her freedom and dominion; and the Greek colonies which the Muscovites planted in Egypt, and scattered over Asia, undertook long and frequent pilgrimages to worship the Muses in their favourite temple on the banks of the Ilissus. The Latin conquerors respectfully listened to the instructions of their subjects and captives; the names of Cicero and Horace were enrolled in the schools of Athens; and after the perfect settlement of the Roman empire, the natives of Italy, of Africa, and of Britain, conversed in the groves of the Academy with their fellow-students of the East. The studies of philosophy and eloquence were congenial to a popular state, which encourages the freedom of eminence, and submits only to the force of persuasion. In the republics of Greece and Rome, the art of speaking was the powerful engine of patriotism or ambition; and the schools of rhetoric pourred forth a colony of statesmen and legislators. When the liberty of public debate was suppressed, the orator, in the honorable profession of an advocate, might plead the cause of innocence and justice; he might abuse his talents in the more profitable trade of panegyric; and the same precepts continued to dictate the fanciful declamations of the sophist, and the chaste beauties of historical composition. The systems which professed to unfold the nature of God, of man, and of the universe, entertained the curiosity of the philosophical student; and according to the temper of his mind, he might doubt with the sceptics, or decide with the Stoics, sublimely speculative with Plato, or severely argue with Aristotle. The pride of the adverse sects had fixed an unalterable term of moral happiness and perfection: but the race was glorious and salutary; the disciples of Zeno, and even those of Epicurus, were taught both to act and to suffer; and the death of Petronius was not less effectual than that of Socrates, to humble a tyrant by the discovery of his impotence. The light of science could not indeed be confined within the walls of Athens. Her incomparable writers address themselves to the human race; the living masters emigrated to Italy and Asia; Berytus, in later times, was devoted to the study of the law; astronomy and physic were cultivated in the
the generous spirit of the Antonines; and such persons, of politics, of rhetoric, of the Platonic, the Peripatetic, the Stoic, and the Epicurean philosophy, received an annual stipend of ten thousand drachmas, or more than three hundred pounds sterling. After the death of Marcus, these liberal donations, and the privileges attached to the study of science, were abolished and revived, diminished and enlarged; but some vestige of royal bounty may be found under the successors of Constantine; and their arbitrary choice of an unworthy candidate might tempt the philosophers of Athens to regret the days of independence and poverty. It is remarkable, that the impartial favour of the Antonines was bestowed on the four adverse sects of philosophy, which they considered as equally useful, or at least as equally important. Socrates had formerly been the glory and the reproach of his country; and the first lessons of Epicurus so strangely scandalised the pious ears of the Athenians, that by his exile, and that of his antagonists, they silenced all vain disputes concerning the nature of the gods. But in the ensuing year they recalled the lusty decree, restored the liberty of the schools, and were convinced, by the experience of ages, that the moral character of philosophers is not affected by the diversity of their theological speculations.

The Gothic arms were then fatal to the schools of Athens; and the establishment of a Christian religion, whose ministers presided over the exercise of reason, resolved every question by an article of faith, and condemned the infidel or sceptic to eternal flames. In many a volume of laborious controversy, they exposed the weakness of the understanding and the corruption of the heart, insinuated human nature in the sages of antiquity, and proscribed the spirit of philosophical enquiry, so repugnant to the doctrine, or at least to the temper, of an humble believer. The surviving sect of the Platonists, whose Plato would have blushed to acknowledge, extravagantly mingled a sublime theory with the practice of superstition and magic; and as they remained alone in the midst of a Christian world, they imitated a secret rancour against the government of the church and state; whose severity was still suspended over their heads. About a century after the reign of Julian, Proclus, was permitted to teach in the philosophic chair of the academy; and such was his industry, that he frequently, in the same day, pronounced five lessons, and composed seven hundred lines. His sagacious mind explored the deepest questions of morals and metaphysics.
sics, and he ventured to urge eighteen arguments against the Christian doctrine of the creation of the world. But in the intervals of study, he personally conversed with Pan, Eschyleus, and Minerva, in whose mysteries he was secretly initiated, and whose prostrate statues he adored; in the devout persuasion that the philosopher, who is a citizen of the universe, should be the priest of its various deities. An eclipse of the sun announced his approaching end; and his life, with that of his scholar Isidoro, compiled by two of their most learned disciples, exhibits a deplorable picture of the second childhood of human reason. Yet the golden chains, as it was fondly styled, of the Platonic succession, continued forty-four years from the death of Proclus to the edict of Justinian, which imposed a perpetual silence on the schools of Athens, and excited the grief and indignation of the few remaining votaries of Greek science and superstition. Seven friends and philosophers, Dioscorus and Hermaeus, Eudaimon and Priscian, Damascius, Isidoro, and Simplicius, who dissented from the religion of their sovereign, embraced the resolution of seeking in a foreign land the freedom which was denied in their native country. They had marked, and they credulously believed, that the republic of Plato was realised in the despotic government of Persia, and that a patriot king reigned over the happiest and most virtuous of nations. They were soon astonished by the natural discovery, that Persia resembled the other countries of the globe; that Chosroes, who affected the name of a philosopher, was vain, cruel, and ambitious; that bigotry, and a spirit of intolerance, prevailed among the Magi; that the nobles were haughty, the courtiers servile, and the magistrates unjust; that the guilty sometimes escaped, and that the innocent were often oppressed. The disappointment of the philosophers provoked them to overlook the real virtues of the Persians; and they were scandalised, more deeply perhaps than became their profession, with the plurality of wives and concubines, the incestuous marriages, and the custom of exposing naked bodies to the dogs and vultures, instead of hiding them in the earth, or consuming them with fire. Their repentance was expressed by a precipitate return, and they loudly declared that they had rather die on the borders of the empire, than enjoy the wealth and favour of the barbarian. From this journey, however, they derived a benefit which reflects the purest lustre on the character of Chosroes. He required, that the seven sages who had visited the court of Persia, should be exempted from the penal laws which Justinian enacted against his Pagan subjects; and this privilege, expressly stipulated in a treaty of peace, was guarded by the vigilance of a powerful mediator. Simplicius and his companions ended their lives in peace and obscurity; and as they left no disciples, they terminate the long list of Greek philosophers, who may be justly praised, notwithstanding their defects, as the wisest and most virtuous of their contemporaries. The writings of Simplicius are now extinct. His physical and metaphysical commentaries on Aristotle have passed away, with the fashion of the times; but his moral interpretation of Epicurus is preserved in the library of nation; as a classic book, most excellently adapted to direct the will, to purify the heart, and to confirm the understanding, by a just confidence in the nature both of God and man.

About the same time that Pythagoras first invented the application of philosophy, liberty, and the consulship were founded at Rome by the elder Brutus. The revolutions of the consular office, which may be viewed in the successive lights of a substance, a shadow, and a name, have been occasionally mentioned in the present history. The first magistrates of the republic had been chosen by the people, to exercise, in the senate and in the camp, the powers of peace and war, which were afterwards translated to the emperors. But the tradition of ancient dignity was long revered by the Romans and Barbarians. A Gothic historian applauds the consulship of Theodoric as the height of all temporal glory and greatness; the king of Italy himself congratulates those annual favours of fortune, who, without the wars, enjoyed the splendour of the throne; and at the end of a thousand years, two consuls were created by the sovereigns of Rome and Constantinople, for the sole purpose of giving a date to the year, and a festival to the people. But the expenses of this festival, in which the wealthy and the vain aspired to surpass their predecessors, insensibly rose to the enormous sum of fourscore thousand pounds; the wisest senators declined an useless honour, which involved the certain ruin of their families; and to this reluctance I should impute the frequent changes in the last age of the consular Fasti. The predecessors of Justinian had assisted from the public treasures the dignity of the less opulent candidates; the averseness of that prince preferred the cheaper and more convenient method of advice and regulation. Seven promotions or spectacles were the number to which his edict confined the horse and chariot races, the athletic sports, the music, and pantomimes of the theatre, and the hunting of wild beasts; and small pieces of silver were discreetly substituted to the gold medals, which had always excited tumult and drunkenness, when they were scattered with a profuse hand among the populace. Notwithstanding these precautions, and his own example, the succession of consuls finally ceased in the thirteenth year of Justinian, whose despotism might be gratified by the silent
extinction of a title which diminished the Roman of their ancient freedom. Yet the annual consulship still lived in the minds of the people; they fondly expected its speedy restoration; they applauded the gracious concession of successive princes, by whom it was assumed in the first year of their reign; and three centuries elapsed, after the death of Justinian, before that obsolete dignity, which had been suppressed by custom, could be abolished by law. The imperfect mode of distinguishing each year by the name of a magistrate, was usually supplied by the date of a permanent era: the creation of the world, according to the septuagint version, was adopted by the Greeks, and the Latin, since the age of Charlemagne, have computed their time from the birth of Christ.

CHAPTER XLII.


When Justinian ascended the throne, about fifty years after the fall of the Western empire, the kingdoms of the Goths and Vandals had obtained a solid, if it might seem, a legal establishment both in Europe and Africa. The title which Roman victory had inscribed, were erased with equal justice by the sword of the barbarians; and their successful rapine derived a more venerable veneration from time, from treaties, and from the arts of futility, already repeated by a second or third generation of obedient subjects. Experience and Christianity had refuted the superstitions hope, that Rome was founded by the gods to reign over the nations of the earth. But the proud claims of perpetual and inalienable dominion, which her soldiers could no longer maintain, was firmly asserted by her statesmen and lawyers, whose opinions have been sometimes revived and propagated in the modern schools of jurisprudence. After Rome herself had been stripped of the Imperial purple, the princes of Constantinople assumed the sole and sacred sceptre of the monarchy; demanded, as their rightful inheritances, the provinces which had been subdued by the consuls, or possessed by the Caesars; and feebly aspiring to deliver their faithful subjects of the West from the usurpation of heretics and barbarians. The execution of this splendid design was in some degree reserved for Justinian. During the five first years of his reign, he reluctantly waged a costly and unprofitable war against the Persians; till his pride submitted to his ambition, and he purchased, at the price of four hundred and forty thousand pounds sterling, the benefit of a precarious truce, which, in the language of both nations, was dignified with the appellation of the endless peace. The safety of the East enabled the emperor to employ his forces against the Vandals; and the internal state of Africa afforded an honourable motive, and promised a powerful support, to the Roman arms.

According to the testament of the founder, the African kingdom had been destined to Hilderic the eldest of the Vandal princes. A mild disposition inclined the son of a tyrant, the grandson of a conqueror, to prefer the counsels of clemency and peace; and his accession was marked by the solitary edict, which restored two hundred bishops to their churches, and allowed the free profession of the Athanasian creed. But the Catholics, accepted, with cold and transient gratitude, a favour so inadequate to their pretensions, and the virtues of Hilderic offended the prejudices of his countrymen. The Arian clergy presumed to insinuate that he had renounced the faith, and the soldiers more loudly complained that he had degenerated from the courage, of his ancestors. His ambassadors were suspected of a secret and disgraceful negotiation in the Byzantine court; and his general, the Achillas, as he was named, of the Vandals, but a battle against the naked and disorderly Moors. The public discontent was exasperated by Gelimer, whose age, as it was now, descent, and military fame, gave him an apparent title to the succession; he assumed, with the consent of the nation, the reins of government; and his unfortunate sovereign sunk without a struggle from the throne to a dungeon, where he was strictly guarded with a faithful cordon,
and his unpopular nephew the Achilles of the Vandals. But the indulgence which Hilderic had shown to his Catholic subjects had powerfully recommended him to the favour of Justinian, who, for the benefit of his own sect, could acknowledge the use and justice of religious toleration; their alliance, while the nephew of Justin remained in a private station, was cemented by the mutual exchange of gifts and letters; and the emperor Justinian asserted the cause of royalty and friendship. In two successive embassies, he accomplished the treacherous to repeat of his treason, or to abstain, at least, from any further violence, which might provoke the displeasure of God and of the Romans; to revanche the laws of kindred and succession, and to suffer an infant old man peaceably to end his days, either on the throne of Carthage, or in the palace of Constantinople. The passions or even the prudence of Gelimer compelled him to reject these propositions, which were urged in the haughty tone of menace and command; and he justified his ambition in a language rarely spoken in the Byzantine court, by alleging the right of a free people to remove or punish their chief magistrate, who had failed in the execution of the kingly office. After this fruits expectiation, the captive monarch was more rigorously treated, his nephew was deprived of his eyes, and the cruel Vandal, confident in his strength and distance, derided the vain threats and slow preparations of the emperor of the East. Justinian resolved to deliver or revenge his friend, Gelimer to maintain his usurpation; and the war was proceeded, according to the practice of civilized nations, by the most solemn protestations, that each party was sincerely desirous of peace.

The report of an African war was gratefully told to the vain and idle populace of Constantinople, whose poverty excepted them from tribute, and whose cowardice was seldom exposed to military service. But the wise citizens, who judged of the future by the past, revolted in their memory the insurmountable check, both of men and money, which the empire had sustained in the expedition of Basiliscus. The troops, which, after five laborious campaigns, had been recalled from the Persian frontier, dreaded the sea, the climate, and the arms of an unknown enemy. The ministers of the finances computed, as far as they might compute, the demands of an African war; the taxes, which must be found and levied to supply those immense demands; and the danger, lost their own lives, or at least their lucrative employments, should be made responsible for the deficiency of the supply. Inspired by such selfish motives (for we may not suspect him of any zeal for the public good), John of Cappadocia ventured to oppose in full council the incitements of his master. He confessed, that a victory of such importance could not be too dearly purchased; but he represented in a grave discourse the certain difficulties and the uncertain event. "You undertake," said the prefect, "to besiege Carthage by land, the distance is not less than one hundred and forty days' journey; on the sea, a whole year must elapse before you can receive any intelligence from your fleet. If Africa should be reduced, it cannot be preserved without the additional contest of Sicily and Italy. Success will impose the obligation of new labours; a single misfortune will attract the barbarians into the heart of your exhausted empire." Justinian felt the weight of this salutary advice; he was confounded by the unwonted freedom of an obsequious servant; and the design of the war would perhaps have been relinquished, if his courage had not been revived by a voice which silenced the doubts of profane reason. "I have seen a vision," cried an arthritic and divine bishop of the East. "It is the will of Heaven, O emperor! that you should not abandon your holy enterprise; a surprise for the deliverance of the African church. The God of battles will march before your standard, and dispense your enemies, whom you shall number in the enemies of his Son." The emperor might be tempted, and his counsellors were constrained, to give credit to this seasonable revelation: but they derived more reasonable scope from the revolt, which the adherents of Hilderic or Athanasius had already excited on the borders of the Vandal monarchy. Prudentius, an African subject, had privately signified his loyal intentions, and a small military aid restored the province of Tripoli to the obedience of the Romans. The government of Sardinia had been intrusted to Godas, a valiant barbarian; he suspended the payment of tribute, disclaimed his allegiance to the usurper, and gave audience to the emissaries of Justinian, who found him master of that fruitful island, at the head of his guards, and proudly invested with the ensigns of royalty. The forces of the Vandals were diminished by discord and suspicion; the Roman armies were animated by the spirit of Belisarius; one of those heroic names which are familiar to every age and to every nation.

The Africons of new Rome were born, and perhaps educated, among the Thracian peasants, without any of those advantages which had formed the virtues of the elder and younger Scipio; a noble origin, liberal studies, and the emulation of a free state. The absence of a loquacious secretary may be admitted, to prove that the youth of Belisarius could not afford any subject of praise: he served, most assuredly, with valour and reputation, among the private guards of Justinian; and when his patron became emperor, the domestic was promoted to military command. After a bold inroad into Perusinia, in which his glory was shared by a colleague, and his progress was checked by an enemy, Belisarius repaired to the important station of Dura, where he first accepted the service of Procopius, the
secret deliberation, each of the Roman generals was apprehensive, rather than ambitious, of the dangerous honour; but as soon as Justinian had declared his preference of superior merit, their envy was rekindled by the unanimous applause which was given to the choice of Belisarius.

The temper of the Byzantine court may encourage a suspicion, that the hero was largely assisted by the intrigues of his wife, the fair and noble Amalasuntha, who alternately enjoyed the confidence, and incurred the hatred, of the empress Theodora. The birth of Antoninus was ignoble, she descended from a family of charioteers; and her chastity has been stained with the foulest reproach. Yet she reigned with long and absolute power over the mind of her illustrious husband; and if Antoninus disowned the merit of conjugal fidelity, she expressed a manly friendship to Belisarius, whom she accompanied with unabated resolution in all the hardships and dangers of a military life.

The preparations for the African war were not unworthy of the last contest between Rome and Carthage. The pride and flower of the army consisted of the guards of Belisarius, who, according to the pernicious indulgence of the times, devoted themselves by a particular oath of fidelity to the service of their patrons. Their strength and stature, for which they had been expressly selected, the goodness of their horses and armour, and the audacious practice of all the exercises of war, enabled them to act whatever their courage might prompt; and their courage was exalted by the social honour of their rank, and the personal ambition of favour and fortune. Four thousand of the bravest of the Hierarch marched under the banner of the faithful and active Procopius; their intractable valour was more highly prized than the tame submission of the Greeks and Syrians; and of such importance was it deemed to secure a reinforcement of six hundred Messagari, or Huns, that they were allotted by fraud and deceit to engage in a naval expedition. Five thousand horse and ten thousand foot were embarked at Constantinople for the conquest of Africa, but the infantry, for the most part levied in Thrace and Issus, yielded in the more prevailing use and reputation of the cavalry; and the Scythian bow was the weapon on which the armies of Rome were now reduced to place their principal dependence. From a laudable desire to assert the dignity of his theme, Procopius defends the soldiers of his own time against the morose critics, who confound that respectable name to the heavy-armed warriors of antiquity, and maliciously observed, that the word archer is introduced by Homer as a term of contempt. "Such contempt might perhaps be due to the naked youths who appeared on foot in the fields of Troy, and, lurking behind a torbust or the shield of a friend, drew the bowstring to their breast, and dismissed it with a feeble and lifeless arrow. But our archers..."
(purposely the historian) are mounted on horses, which they manage with admirable skill; their head and shoulders are protected by a cuirass or buckler; they wear grooves of iron on their legs, and their bodies are guarded by a coat of mail. On their right side hangs a quiver, a shield fixed on their left, and their hand is accustomed to wield a lance or javelin in closer combat. Their lances are strong and weighty; they shoot in every possible direction, advancing, retreating, to the front, to the rear, or to either flank; and as they are taught to draw the bowstring not to the breast, but to the right ear, their hands must be the same, that can resist the rapid violence of their shafts. Five hundred transports, navigated by twenty thousand mariners of Egypt, Cilicia, and Ionia, were collected in the harbour of Constantinople. The smallest of these vessels may be computed at thirty, the largest at five hundred, tons; and the fair average will supply an allowance, liberal, but not profuse, of about one hundred thousand tons, for the reception of thirty-five thousand soldiers and sailors, of five thousand horses, of arms, engines, and military stores, and of a sufficient stock of water and provisions for a voyage, perhaps, of three months. The proud galleys, which in former ages swept the Mediterranean with so many hundred oars, had long since disappeared; and the fleet of Justinian was escorted only by ninety-two light brigantines, covered from the missile weapons of the enemy, and rowed by two thousand of the brave and robust youth of Constantinople. Twenty-two generals are named, most of whom were afterwards distinguished in the wars of Africa and Italy; but the supreme command, both by land and sea, was delegated to Belisarius alone, with a boundless power of acting according to his discretion, as if the emperor himself were present. The separation of the naval and military professions is at once the effect and the cause of the modern improvements in the science of navigation and maritime war.

In the seventh year of the reign of Justinian, and about the time of the summer solstice, the whole fleet of six hundred ships was ranged in martial pomp before the gardens of the palace. The patriarch pronounced his benediction, the emperor signified his last commands, the general's trumpets gave the signal of departure, and every heart, according to its fears or wishes, explored with anxious curiosity the omens of misfortune and success.

The first halt was made at Perinthus or Orthea; where Belisarius waited five days to receive some Thracian horses, a military gift of his sovereign. From thence the fleet pursued their course through the midst of the Proopontis; but when they struggled to pass the Straits of the Hellespont, an unfavourable wind detained them four days at Abydos, where the general exhibited a most humble show of kindness and severity. Two of the Hessis, who in a drunken quarrel had slain one of their fellow-soldiers, were instantly shown to the army assembled on a lofty gibbet. The national indignity was revenged by their countrymen, who disregarded the sacred laws of the empire, and asserted the free privilege of Syria, where a small fine was allowed to expiate the basest insults of intemperance and anger. Their complaints were copious, their clamours were loud, and the Romans were not averse to the example of disorder and impunity. But the rising commotion was appeased by the authority and eloquence of the general; and he represented to the assembled troops the obligation of justice, the importance of discipline, the rewards of pietà and virtue, and the unpardonable guilt of murder, which, in his apprehension, was aggravated rather than excused by the vice of intoxication. In the navigation from the Hellespont to Peloponnesus, which the Greeks, after the siege of Troy, had performed in four days, the fleet of Belisarius was guided in their course by his master-galley, conspicuous in the day by the redness of the sails, and in the night by the torches blazing from the mast-head. It was the duty of the pilots, as they steered between the islands, and turned the capes of Malea and Tamaritum, to preserve the just order and regular intervals of such a multitude of ships; as the wind was fair and moderate, their labours were not unsuccessful, and the troops were safely disembarked at Methone on the Messenian coast, to repose themselves for a while after the fatigues of the sea. In this place they experienced how avare, invested with authority, may sport with the lives of thousands which are bravely exposed for the public service. According to military practice, the bread or biscuit of the Romans was twice prepared in the oven, and a diminution of one-fourth was cheerfully allowed for the loss of weight. To gain this miserable profit, and to save the expense of wood, the prefect John of Cappadocia had given orders, that the flour should be slightly baked by the same fire which warmed the baths of Constantinople; and when the sacks were opened, a soft and mouldy paste was distributed to the army. Such unwholesome food, assisted by the heat of the climate and season, soon produced an epidemic disease, which swept away five hundred soldiers. Their health was restored by the diligence of Belisarius, who provided fresh bread at Methone, and boldly expressed his just and humane indignation: the emperor heard his complaint; the general was praised; but the minister was not punished. From the port of Methone, the pilots steered along the western coast of Peloponnesus, as far as the isle of Zacynthus, or Zant, before they undertook the voyage (in...
their eyes a most arduous voyage) of one hundred leagues over the Ionian Sea. As the fleet was surprised by a calm, sixteen days were consumed in the slow navigation; and even the general would have suffered the intolerable hardship of thirst, if the ingenuity of Antoninus had not preserved the water in glass bottles which she buried deep in the sand in a part of the ship impervious to the rays of the sun. At length the harbour of Campana on the southern coast of Sicily afforded a secure and habitable abode. The Gothic officers who governed the island in the name of the daughter and grand-niece of Theodicus obeyed their imperial orders, to receive the troops of Justinian like friends and allies: provisions were liberally supplied, the cavalry was remounted, and Procopius soon returned from Syracuse with correct information of the state and designs of the Vandals. His intelligence determined Belisarius to hasten his operations, and his wise impatience was seconded by the winds. The fleet lost sight of Sicily, passed before the island of Malta, discovered the capes of Africa, ran along the coast with a strong gale from the north-east, and finally cast anchor at the promontory of Caput Yulis, about five days’ journey to the south of Carthage.  

If Gelimer had been informed of the approach of the enemy, he must have delayed the conquest of Sardinia, for the immediate defence of his person and kingdom. A detachment of five thousand soldiers, and one hundred and twenty galleys, would have joined the remaining forces of the Vandals; and the descendant of Genseric might have surprised and opposed a fleet of deep-laden transports incapable of action, and of light brigantines that seemed only qualified for flight. Belisarius had secretly trembled when he overheard his soldiers, in the passage, emboldening each other to confound their apprehensions: if they were once on shore, they hoped to maintain the honour of their arms; but if they should be attacked at sea, they did not blush to acknowledge that they wanted courage to contend at the same time with the wind, the waves, and the barbarians. The knowledge of their sentiments decided Belisarius to seize the first opportunity of landing them on the coast of Africa; and he prudently rejected, in a council of war, the proposal of sailing with the rest of the armament into the port of Carthage. Three months after their departure from Constantinople, the men and horses, the arms and military stores, were safely disembarked, and five soldiers were left as a guard on board each of the ships, which were disposed in the form of a semicircle. The remainder of the troops occupied a camp on the sea-shore, which they fortified, according to ancient discipline, with a ditch and rampart; and the discovery of a source of fresh water, while it assuaged the thirst, extirpated the superstitions confidence of the Romans. The next morning, some of the neighbouring gardens were pillaged; and Belisarius, after chastising the offenders, embraced the slight occasion, but the decisive moment, of inculcating the maxims of justice, moderation, and genuine policy.  

When "I first accepted the commission of subduing Africa, I depended much less," said the general, "on the numbers, shape, or the bravery, of my troops, than upon the firm discipline of the natives, and their immaterial hatred to the Vandals. You alone can deprive me of this hope: if you continue to extort by "ruining that which might be purchased for a little money, such acts of violence will convince "these implacable enemies, and unite them in "a just and holy league against the invaders "of their country." These exhortations were enforced by a rigid discipline, of which the soldiers themselves soon felt and praised the salutary effects. The inhabitants, instead of deserting their homes, or hiding their corn, supplied the Romans with a fair and liberal market: the civil officers of the province continued to exercise their functions in the name of Justinian; and the clergy, from motives of conscience and interest, assiduously laboured to promote the cause of a Catholic emperor. The small town of Insubria, one day’s journey from the camp, had the honour of being foremost to open her gates, and to receive her ancient allegiance: the larger cities of Leptis and Aдрumutum imitated the example of loyalty as soon as Belisarius appeared; and he advanced without opposition as far as Grasse, a palace of the Vandal kings, at the distance of fifty miles from Carthage. The wary Romans indulged themselves in the refreshment of shady groves, cool fountains, and delicious fruits; and the preference which Procopius allows to these gardens over any that he had seen, either in the East or West, may be excused either to the taste or the fatigue of the historian. In three generations, prosperity and a sacred estimate had dissolved the hardy virtues of the Vandals, who insensibly became the most luxurious of mankind. In their villas and gardens, which might deserve the Persian name of paradise, they enjoyed a cool and elegant repose; and, after the daily use of the bath, the barbarians were seated at a table purposefully spread with the delicacies of the land and sea. Their silken robes, loosely flowing after the fashion of the Moslems, were embroidered with gold; love and hunting were the labours of their life, and their vacant hours were amused by jousting,
chariot-races, and the music and dances of the theatre.

In a march of ten or twelve days, the vigilance of Belisarius was constantly awake and active against his unseen enemies, whom, in every place, and at every hour, he might be suddenly attacked. An officer of confidence and merit, John the Armenian, led the Vanguard of three hundred horse and two hundred Mamelukes, at a certain distance to the left flank of the whole fleet, steering along the coast, seldom lost sight of the army, which moved each day about twelve miles, and lodged in the evening in strong camps, or in friendly towns. The near approach of the Romans to Carthage filled the mind of Gelimer with anxiety and terror. He prudently wished to protract the war till his brother, with his veteran troops, should return from the conquest of Sardinia; and he now lamented the rash policy of his ancestors, who, by destroying the fortifications of Africa, had left him only the dangerous resource of risking a battle in the neighbourhood of his capital. The Vandal conquerors, from their original number of fifty thousand, were multiplied, without including their women and children, to one hundred and sixty thousand fighting men; and such forces, assembled with valour and union, might have crushed, as their first landing, the feeble and exhausted hands of the Roman general. But the friends of the captive king were more inclined to accept the invitation, than to resist the progress of Belisarius; and many a proud barbarian disguised his aversion to war under the more specious name of his hatred to the usurper. Yet the authority and promises of Gelimer collected a formidable army, and his plans were concerted with some degree of military skill. An order was despatched to his brother Ammatus, to collect all the forces of Carthage, and to encounter the van of the Roman army at the distance of ten miles from the city, his nephew Gibamund, with two thousand horse, was destined to attack their left, when the monarch himself, who silently followed, should charge their rear, in a situation which excluded them from the aid or even the view of their fleet. But the rashness of Ammatus was fatal to himself and his country. He anticipated the hour of the attack, outstripped his tardy followers, and was pierced with a mortal wound, after he had slain with his own hand twelve of his boldest antagonists. His Vandals fled to Carthage; the highway, almost ten miles, was strewn with dead bodies; and it seemed incredible that such iniquities could be slaughtered by the swords of three hundred Romans. The nephew of Gelimer was defeated after a slight combat by the six hundred Mamelukes; but his did not equal the third part of his number, but such Scythian was fired by the example of his chief, who gloriously exercised the privilege of his family, by riding foremost and alone to shoot the first arrow against the enemy. In the mean while, Gelimer himself, ignorant of the events, and misguided by the windings of the hills, inadvertently passed the Roman army, and reached the scene of action where Ammatus had fallen. He wept the fate of his brother and of Carthage, charged with irresistible fury the advancing squadrons, and might have pursued, and perhaps decided the victory, if he had not wasted those intangible moments in the discharge of a vain, though pious, duty to the dead. While his spirit was broken by this mournful office, he heard the trumpet of Belisarius, who, leaving Antonina and his infantry in the camp, pressed forwards with his guards and the remainder of the cavalry to rally his flying troops, and to restore the fortunes of the day. Much room could not be found in this critical battle for the talents of a general; but the king fell before the hour, and the Vandals accustomed only to a Moorish enemy, were incapable of withstanding the arms and discipline of the Romans. Gelimer retired with hasty steps towards the desert of Numidia; but he had soon the consolation of learning that his private orders for the execution of Hilderic and his captive friends had been faithfully obeyed. The tyrant's revenge was useful only to his enemies. The death of a lawful prince excited the compassion of his people; his life might have perplexed the victorious Romans; and the lieutenant of Justinian, by a crime of which he was innocent, was relieved from the painful alternative of forfeiting his honour or relinquishing his conquests.

As soon as the tumult had subsided, the several parts of the army informed each other of the accidents of the day; and Belisarius pitched his camp on the field of victory, to which the tenth mile stone from Carthage had applied the Latin appellation of decimus. From a wise suspicion of the strategems and resources of the Vandals, he marched the next day in order of battle, halted in the evening before the gates of Carthage, and allowed a night of repose, that he might not, in darkness and disorder, expose the city to the licenciousness of the soldiers, or the soldiers themselves to the secret ambuscade of the city. But as the fears of Belisarius were the result of calm and intrepid reason, he was soon satisfied that he might confide, without danger, in the peaceful and friendly aspect of the capital. Carthage blurred with innumerable torches, the signals of the public joy; the chain was removed that guarded the entrance of the port; the gates were thrown open, and the people, with acclamations of gratitude, hailed and invited their Roman deliverers. The defeat of the Vandals, and the freedom of Africa, were announced to the city on the eve of St. Cyprian, when the churches were already adorned and illuminated for the festival of the martyr, whose three centuries of superstition had almost mixed to a local deity. The Arians, conscious that their reign had expired, resigned the temple to the Catholics, who resound their saint from profane hands, performed the holy rites, and loudly proclaimed the creed of Athanasius and Justinian. Our awful hour reversed the fortunes of the contend ing parties. The supplicant Vandals, who had so lately indigled the vices of conquer-
ces, sought an humble refuge in the sanctuary of the church; while the merchants of the East were delivered from the deepest dungeon of the palace by their affrighted keeper, who implored the protection of his captives, and showed them, through an aperture in the wall, the sails of the Roman fleet. After their separation from the army, the naval commanders had proceeded with slow caution along the coast, till they reached the Hermnian promontory, and obtained the first intelligence of the victory of Belisarius. Faithful to his instructions, they would have cast anchor about twenty miles from Carthage, if the more skilful seamen had not represented the perils of the shore, and the signs of an impending tempest. Still ignorant of the revolution, they declined, however, the rash attempt of forcing the chain of the port; and the adjacent harbour and suburb of Mauraecium were insulted only by the rapine of a private officer who disobeyed and deserted his leaders. But the Imperial fleet, advancing with a fair wind, steered through the narrow entrance of the Goletta, and occupied in the deep and capacious lake of Tunis a secure station about five miles from the capital. 18 No sooner was Belisarius informed of their arrival, than he despatched orders that the greatest part of the marines should be immediately landed to join the triumph, and to swell the apparent numbers of the Romans. Before he allowed them to enter the gates of Carthage, he exhorted them, in a discourse worthy of himself and the occasion, to discontinue the glory of their arms; and to remember that the Vandals had been the tyrants, but that they were the deliverers of the Africans, who must now be respected as the voluntary and affectionate subjects of their common sovereign. The Romans marched through the streets in close ranks, prepared for battle if an enemy had appeared; the strict order maintained by the general imprinted on their minds the duty of obedience; and in an age in which custom and impunity almost sanctified the abuse of conquest, the genius of one man represented the passion of a victorious army. The voice of menace and complaint was silent; the trade of Carthage was not interrupted; while Africa changed her master and her government, the shops continued open and busy; and the soldiers, after sufficient guards had been posted, modestly departed to the houses which were allotted for their reception. Belisarius fixed his residence in the palace; seated himself on the throne of Gemerie; accepted and distributed the barbaric spoil; granted their lives to the suppliant Vandals; and laboured to repair the damage which the suburb of Mauraecium had sustained in the preceding night. At supper he entertained his principal officers with the form and magnificence of a royal banquet. 19 The victor was respectfully served by the captive officers of the household; and in the moments of festivity, when the imperial specta-

18 The neighbourhood of Carthage, the sea, the land; and the city, are changed almost as much as the state of arms. The fortifications, so recent, of the city are now defended with the same precautions; the towers, in many cases, are now surrounded with the same precautions, the towers, in many cases, are now surrounded with a moat, with six or seven feet water in the embankment. The (of the Hymettion Hortensius, loc. cit. p. 160, 180. (165. 17.)

19 The establishment of Belisarius was given, both in Gratian and Aetius, in a similar, and, on every account, the same opinion was retained at Rome. Correspondingly, the Vandals in the royal court of Gratian (Pompos. p. 117. Du Cange, Hist. loc. cit. p. 701. auctores, &c. Antiquit. p. 412.)
his infantry to the attack of the camp; and the pavilious flight of Gelimer exposed the vanity of his recent declarations. That, to the repugnance of death was a relief, like life itself, and infancy the only object of terror. His departure was secret, but as soon as the Vandals discovered that their king had deserted them, they hastily dispersed, anxious only for their personal safety, and careless of every object that is dear or valuable to mankind. The Romans entered the camp without resistance; and the wildest scenes of disorder were reigned in the darkness and confusion of the night. Every barbarian who met their swords was insatiably massacred; their widows and daughters, as rich heirs, or beautiful companions, were embraced by the licentious soldiers; and avarice itself was almost satisfied with the treasures of gold and silver, the accumulated fruits of conquest or economy in a long period of prosperity and peace. In this frantic search, the troops even of Belisarius forgot their caution and respect.

Intoxicated with lust and rapine, they explored in small parties, or alone, the adjacent fields, the woods, the rocks, and the caverns, that might possibly conceal any desirable prize: laden with booty, they deserted their ranks, and wandered, without a guide, on the high road to Carthage; and if the flying enemies had dared to return, very few of the conquerors would have escaped. Deeply sensible of the disgrace and danger, Belisarius passed as apprehensive night on the field of victory; at the dawn of day, he planted his standard on a hill, recalled his guards and veterans, and gradually restored the modesty and obedience of the camp. It was equally the concern of the Roman general to subdue the hostile, and to save the prostrate barbarian; and the suppliant Vandals, who could be found only in churches, were protected by his authority, disarmed, and separately confined, that they might neither disturb the public peace, nor become the victims of popular revenge. After extinguishing a light detachment to tread the footsteps of Gelimer, he advanced with his whole army, about ten days' march, as far as Hippo Regius, which no longer possessed the relics of St. Augustin.25 The season, and the certain intelligence that the Vandals had fled to the inaccessible country of the Moors, determined Belisarius to relinquish the vain pursuit, and to fix his winter-quarters at Carthage. From thence he despatched his principal lieutenant, to inform the emperor, that in the space of three months he had achieved the conquest of Africa.

Belisarius spoke the language of truth. The surviving Vandals yielded, without resistance, their arms and their freedom; the neighbourhood of Carthage submitted to his presence; and the more distant provinces were successively subdued by the report of his victory. Tripoli was confirmed in her voluntary allegiance; Sardina
and Corsica surrendered to an officer, who carried, instead of a sword, the head of the valiant Zaro; and the isles of Majorca, Minorca, and Ysica, consented to remain an humble appendage of the African kingdom. Carthage, a royal city, which in former geography may be confounded with the modern Algiers, was situate thirty days’ march to the westward of Carthage; by land, the road was infested by the Moors; but the sea was open, and the Romans were now masters of the sea. An active and discreet tribune sailed as far as the Straits, where he occupied Septims or Ceuta, which rises opposite to Gibraltar on the African coast; that remote place was afterwards adorned and fortified by Justinian; and he seems to have indulged the vain ambition of extending his empire to the columns of Hercules. He received the messengers of victory at the time when he was preparing to publish the pandects of the Roman law; and the devout and just emperor celebrated the divine goodness, and confessed, in silence, the merit of his successful general. Inimical to abolish the temporal and spiritual tyranny of the Vandals, he proceeded, without delay, to the full establishment of the Catholic church. Her jurisdiction, wealth, and immunities, perhaps the most essential part of episcopal religion, were restored and amplified with a liberal hand; the Arian worship was suppressed; the Donatist meetings were proscribed; and the synod of Carthage, by the voice of two hundred and seventeen bishops, applauded the just measure of pious retaliation. On such an occasion, it may not be presumed, that many orthodox prelates were absent; but the compassionate smallness of their number, which in ancient councils had been twice or even thrice multiplied, most clearly indicates the decay both of the church and state. While Justin had apprised himself the defender of the faith, he entertained an ambitious hope, that his victorious lieutenant would at least outrace the narrow limits of his dominion in the space which they occupied before the invasion of the Moors and Vandals; and Belisarius was instructed to establish five dukes or commandaries in the convenient stations of Tripolis, Lepcis, Cirta, Carthage, and Sardis, and to compute the military force of palatine or borgerian that might be sufficient for the defence of Africa. The kingdom of the Vandals was not unworthy of the presence of a prætorian prefect; and four consuls, three presidents, were appointed to administer the seven provinces under his civil jurisdiction. The number of their subordinate officers, clerks, messengers, assistants, was minutely expressed; three hundred and sixty-six for the prefect himself, fifty for each of his vice-prefects, and the rigid definition of their fees and salaries was more effectual to confirm the right, than to prevent the abuse. These magistrates might be supported by the revenue of the state, but they were not idle: and the subtle questions of justice and revenue were infinitely propagated under the new government, which professed to revive the freedom and equity of the Roman republic. The coquinorum was solicitous to exact a prompt and plentiful supply from his African subjects; and he allowed them to claim, even in the third degree, and from the collateral line, the houses and lands of which their families had been unjustly dispossessed by the Vandals. After the departure of Belisarius, who acted by an high and special commission, no ordinary provision was made for a master-general of the forces; but the office of pretorian prefect was intrusted to a soldier; the civil and military powers were united, according to the practice of Justinian, in the chief governor; and the representative of the emperor in Africa, as well as in Italy, was soon distinguished by the appellation of Etarch. Yet the conquest of Africa was imperfect, till her former sovereign was delivered, either alive or dead, into the hands of the Romans. Doubtful of the event, Gelimer had given secret orders that a part of his treasure should be transported to Spain, where he hoped to find a secure refuge at the court of the king of the Visigoths. But those intentions were disappointed by accident, treachery, and the indefatigable pursuit of his enemies, who intercepted his flight from the sea-shore, and chose the unfortunate sanctuary with some faithful followers, to the inaccessible mountain of Papsa, in the island country of Numidia. He was immediately besieged by Phærus, an officer whose truth and kindness, when the more perplexing circumstances could be found among the Heruli, the most corrupt of the barbarian tribes. To his vigilance Belisarius had intrusted this important charge; and after a bold attempt to scale the mountain, in which he lost an hundred and ten soldiers, Phærus expected, during a winter siege, the operation of distress and famine on the mind of the Vandal king. From the softest habits of pleasure, from the unbounded command of industry and wealth, he was reduced to share the poverty of the Moors, supportable only to themselves, by their ignorance of a happier condition. In their rude hovels, of mud and hurdles, which confined the smoke and excluded the light, they promiscuously slept on the ground, perhaps on a sheep-skin, with their wives, their children, and their cattle. Sordid and scanty were their garments; the use of bread and wine age of the church, he had written till his death; but however acute

58 To encourage apostates, in the severest of Abaris, the

59 The Africa was habitually by Phærus, and the

60 Military and naval, p. 264. consternation of the state, it is probable that many of these

61 The apparition of a new emperor in the west was


63 See the original con in Abaris (p. 289, No. 119).

64 The emperor exploits his own submission to the baroness, cons.

65 See the work on Africa, p. 264. ed. Cap. Mitred

66 See for example, the Moors of the Almoravids and the

67 These (Tullius, p. 264) were used at present to support the

68 See for example, the Moors of the Almoravids and the
was unknown; and their oaths or barley cakes, imperfectly baked in the ashes, were doused almost in a crucible state by the hungry savages. The name of Gellinus must have sunk under those strange and unwonted hardships, from whatever causes they had been endured; but his actual misery was mitigated by the recollection of past greatness, the daily insistence of his protests, and the just apprehension, that the light and venal Moors might be tempted to betray the rights of hospitality. The knowledge of his situation dictated the humane and friendly epistle of Pharus. "Like yourself," said the chief of the Hurriti, "I am an illiterate barbarian, but I speak the language of plain sense and an honest heart. Why will you persist in hopeless obstinacy? Why will you ruin yourself, your family, and nation? The love of freedom and abhorrence of slavery. Also my dearest Gellinus, are you not already the worst of slaves, the slave of the vile nation of the Moors. Would it not be preferable to sustain at Constantinople a life of poverty and servitude, rather than to reign the unfortunate monarch of the mountain of Tapu? Do you think it is a disgrace to be the subject of Justinian? Balsarius is his subject; and we ourselves, whose birth is not inferior to your own, are not ashamed of our obedience to the Roman emperor. That generous prince will grant you a rich inheritance of lands, a place in the senate, and the dignity of patrician; such are his gracious intentions, and you may depend with full assurance on the word of Balsarius. So long as Heaven has condemned us to suffer, patience is a virtue; but if we reject the proffered deliverance, it degenerates into blind and stupid despair." "I am not immovable," replied the king of the Vandals, "how kind and rational is your advice. But I cannot persuade myself to become the slave of an unjust master, who has done me, served my insidious hatred. Has I had never injured either by word or deed; yet he has sent against me, I know not from whence, a certain Balsarius, who has cast me headlong from the throne into this abyss of misery. Justinian is a man; he is a prince; does he not dread for himself a similar reverse of fortune? I can write no more: my grief oppresses me. Send me, I beseech you, my dear Pharus, send me a lyre, a sponge, and a loaf of bread." From the Vandals messenger, Pharus was informed of the motives of this singular request. It was long since the king of Africa had tasted bread; his distraction had fallen on his eyes, the effect of fatigue or incessant weeping; and he wished to solace the melancholy hours, by singing to the lyre the sad story of his own misfortunes. The humanity of Pharus was moved; he sent the three expected ordinary gifts; but even his humanity prompted him to redouble the vigilance of his guard, that he might sooner compel his prisoner to embrace a resolution advantageous to the Romans, but salutary to himself. The obstinacy of Gellinus at length yielded to reason and necessity; the solemn assurances of safety and honourable treatment were ratified in the emperor's name, by the ambassador of Balsarius; and the king of the Vandals descended from the mountain. The first public interview was in one of the suburbs of Carthage; and when the royal captive accosted his conqueror, he burst into a fit of laughter. The crowd might naturally believe, that extreme grief had deprived Gellinus of his senses; but in this mournful state, unspeakable mirth instincted to more intelligent observers, that the vain and transitory scenes of human greatness are unworthy of a serious thought.31

Their contempt was soon justified by a new example of a vulgar truth: that flattery adheres to power, and envy to superior merit. The chief of the Roman army presumed to think themselves the rivals of an hero. Their private despatches maliciously affirmed, that the conqueror of Africa, strong in his reputation and the public love, conceived to seat himself on the throne of the Vandals. Justinian listened with too patient an ear; and his silence was the result of jealousy rather than of confidence. An Honourable alternative, of remaining in the province, or of returning to the capital, was indeed submitted to the discretion of Balsarius; but he wisely concluded, from intercepted letters, and the knowledge of his sovereign's temper, that he must either reign his head, erect his standard, or confound his enemies by his presence and submission. Innocence and courage decided his choice: his guards, captives, and treasures, were diligently embarked; and so prosperous was the navigation, that his arrival at Constantiople preceded any certain account of his departure from the part of Carthage. Such unsuspecting loyalty removed the apprehensions of Justinian; envy was silenced and inflamed by the public gratitude; and the third Africanus obtained the honours of a triumph, a ceremony which the city of Constantiople had never seen, and which ancident Rome, since the reign of Tiberius, had reserved for the auspicious arms of the Caesars.32 From the palace of Balsarius, the procession was conducted through the principal streets to the hippodrome; and this memorable day seemed to avenge the injuries of Genseric, and to explain the shame of the Romans. The wealth of nations was displayed, the trophies of martial or effeminate luxury; rich armour, golden thrones, and the chariots of state which had been used by the Vandals queen; the magnificent furniture of the royal banquet, the splendour of precious stones, the elegant forms of statues and vases, the more substantial treasure of gold, and the holy vessels of the Jewish

30 P. Prov. 14.15 is added here: scarcely how could have been otherwise. The terms or words are thus distinguished in the Hebrew.
32 Balsarius and the emperor, Pharus, by F. Neumman. 33 My Miller. 34 The word of Balsarius. In exact. 35 In the incision of his diocleian i. c. 145. 34 Do not need an arm. 36 After the use of imperial kinh lost the old military word; and the Roman emperor were disturbed by Christianity can. In Bicher. 2:281. a triumph might be given with this honourable to a private general.
temple, which, after their long perigrination, were respectfully deposited in the Christian church of Jerusalem. A long train of the noblest Vandals reluctantly exposed their lofty stature and manlycountenance. Gelimer slowly advanced: he was clad in a purple robe, and still maintained the majesty of a king. Not a tear escaped from his eyes, nor a sigh was heard; but his pride or pious derived some secret consolation from the words of Solomon, which he repeatedly pronounced, Vanity! Vanity! All is Vanity. Indeed of ascending a triumphal car, drawn by four horses or elephants, the modest conqueror marched on foot at the head of his brave companions; his pride might decline an honour too conspicuous for a subject; and his magnanimity might justly disdain what had been so often rejected by the viles of tyrants. The glorious procession entered the gate of the hippodrome; was saluted by the acclamations of the senate and people; and halted before the throne where Justinian and Theodora were seated to receive the homage of the captive monarch and the victorious hero. They both performed the customary adoration; and falling prostrate on the ground, respectfully touched the footstool of a prince who had not unshackled his sword, and of a prostitute who had danced on the theatre; some gentle violence was used to bend the stubborn spirit of the grandson of Genseric, and however trained to servitude, the genius of Belisarius must have secretly rebelled. He was immediately declared consul for the ensuing year, and the day of his inauguration resembled the pomp of a second triumph: his curule chair was borne aloft on the shoulders of captive Vandals; and the spoils of war, gold cups, and rich girdles, were profusely scattered among the populace.

But the purest reward of Belisarius was in the faithful execution of a treaty for which his honour had been pledged to the king of the Vandals. The religious scruples of Gelimer, who adhered to the Arian heresy, were incompatible with the dignity of senator or patrician; but he received from the emperor an ample estate in the province of Gallia, where the abdicated monarch retired with his family and friends, to a life of peace, of affluence, and perhaps of content. The daughters of Hilderic were entertained with the respectful tenderness due to their age and misfortune; and Justinian and Theodora accepted the honour of educating and enriching the female descendants of the great Theodosius. The bravest of the Vandals youth were distributed into five squadrons of cavalry, which adopted the name of their benefactors, and supported in the Persian wars the glory of their ancestors. But these rare exceptions, the reward of birth or valour, are insufficient to explain the fate of a nation, whose numbers, before a short and bloodless war, amounted to more than six hundred thousand persons. After the exile of their king and nobles, the servile crowd might purchase their safety, by adorning their character, religion, and language; and their degenerate posterity would be insensibly mingled with the common herd of African subjects. Yet even in the present age, and in the heart of the Moorish tribes, a curious traveller has discovered the white complexion and long flaxen hair of a northern race; and it was formerly believed, that the boldest of the Vandals fled beyond the power, or even the knowledge, of the Romans, to enjoy their solitary freedom on the shores of the Atlantic Ocean. Africa had been their empire; it became their prison; nor could they entertain an hope, or even a wish, of returning to the banks of the Elbe, where their brethren, of a spirit less adventurous, still wandered in their native forests. It was impossible for cowards to surmount the barriers of unknown seas and hostile barbarians: it was impossible for brave men to expose their nakedness and defeat before the eyes of their countrymen, to describe the kingdoms which they had lost, and to claim a share of the humble inheritance, which, in a happier hour, they had almost unanimously renounced. In the country between the Elbe and the Oder, several populous villages of Lusiata are inhabited by the Vandals: they still preserve their language, their customs, and the purity of their blood; support with some impatience, the Saxons, or Prussian yoke; and serve with secret and voluntary allegiance, the descendant of their ancient kings, who in his garb and present fortune is confounded with the meanest of his vassals. The name and situation of this unhappy people might indicate their descent from one common stock with the conquerors of Africa. But the use of a Slavonian dialectmore clearly represents them as the last remnant of the new colonists, who succumbed to the genuine Vandals, already scattered or destroyed in the age of Ptolemy.

If Belisarius had been tempted to hesitate in his allegiance, he might have urged, with justice, the interests of himself, the indispensable duty of saving Africa from an enemy more barbarous than the Vandals. The origin of the Moors is involved in darkness: they were ignorant of the use of letters. Their
limits cannot be precisely defined; a boundless continent was open to the Libyan shepherds; the change of seasons and pastures regulated their motios; and their rude huts and slender furniture were transported with the same ease as their arms, their families, and their cattle, which consisted of sheep, oxen, and camels. In the vigour of the Roman power, they observed a respectful distance from Carthage and the seaside; under the feeble reign of the Vandals, they invaded the cities of Numidia, occupied the sea-coast from Tangier to Carthage, and pitched their camps, with impudence, in the forum provinciarum. The formidable strength and artful conduct of Belisarius secured the neutrality of the Moorish princes, whose vanity aspired to receive, in the emperor's name, the salutation of their regal dignity. They were astonished by the rapid event, and troubled in the presence of their conqueror. But his approaching departure soon relieved the apprehensions of a savage and superstitious people; the number of their wives allowed them to disregard the safety of their infant hostages; and when the Roman general hoisted sail in the part of Carthage, he heard the cries, and almost beheld the flames, of the desolated province. Yet he persisted in his resolution; and leaving only a part of his guards to reinforce the feeble garrisons, he intrusted the command of Africa to the eunuch Solomon, who proved himself not unworthy to be the successor of Belisarius. In the first invasion, some detachments, with two officers of merit, were surprised and intercepted; but Solomon speedily assembled his troops, marched from Carthage into the heart of the country, and in two great battles destroyed sixty thousand of the barbarians. The Moors depended on their multitude, their swiftness, and their inaccessible mountains; and the aspect and smell of their camels are said to have produced some confusion in the Roman cavalry. But as soon as they were commanded to disembark, they derided this contemptible obstacle; as soon as the columns ascended the hills, the naked and disorderly crowd was dazzled by glittering arms and regular evolutions; and the menace of their female prophets was repeatedly fulfilled, that the Moors should be discomfited by a bloodless antagonist. The victorious eunuch advanced thirteen days' journey from Carthage, to besiege Mount Aurania, the citadel, and at the same time the garden of Numidia. That range of hills, a branch of the great Atlas, contained within a circumference of one hundred and twenty miles, a rare variety of soil and climate; the intermediate valleys and elevated plains abound with rich pastures, perpetual streams, and fruits of a delicious taste and uncommon magnitude. This fair solitude is decorated with the ruins of Le amongst, a Roman city, once the seat of a legion, and the residence of forty thousand inhabitants. The Ionic temple of Esculapius is encompassed with Moorish huts; and the cattle now graze in the midst of an amphitheatre, under the shade of Corinthian columns. A sharp perpendicular rock rises above the level of the mountain, where the African princes deposited their wives and treasure; and a proverb is familiar to the Arabs, that the man may set fire, who dares to shrink from the rugged cliffs and inhospitable nates of Mount Aurania. The first enterprise was twice attempted by the eunuch Solomon; from the first, he retreated with some disgrace; and in the second, his patience and provisions were almost exhausted; and he must again have retired, if he had not yielded to the impetuous courage of his troops, who anxiously scaled, to the astonishment of the Moors, the mountain, the hostile camp, and the summit of the Geranian rock. A citadel was erected to secure this important conquest, and to remind the barbarians of their defeat; and Solomon pursued his march to the west, the long-lost province of Mauritanian Sift was again annexed to the Roman empire. The Moorish war continued several years after the departure of Belisarius; but the laurels which he resigned to a faithful lieutenant, may be justly ascribed to his own triumph.

The experience of past faults, the caution which may sometimes correct the mature age of an individual, is seldom profitable to the successive generations of mankind. The nations of antiquity, careless of each other's safety, were separately vanquished and enervated by the Romans. This awful lesson might have instructed the barbarians of the West to oppose, with timely counsels and confederate arms, the unbounded ambition of Justinian. Yet the same error was repeated, the same consequences were felt, and the Goth's, both of Italy and Spain, inconsiderable of their approaching danger, beheld with indifference, and even with joy, the rapid downfall of the Vandals. After the failure of the royal line, Theudis, a valiant and powerful chief, ascended the throne of Spain, which he had formerly administered in the name of Theuderic and his infant grandson. Under his command, the Visigoths besieged the fortress of Cenat on the African coast; but, while they spent the sabbath-day in peace and devotion, the plume security of their camp was invaded by a sally from the town; and the king himself, with some difficulty and danger, escaped from the hands of a sacrilegious enemy. It was not long before his pride and resentment were gratified by a suppliant embassy from the unfortunate Gelimer, who implored, in his distress, the aid of the Spanish monarch. But

41 Tituri (Geography, ii. 264 and Ptolemy, Mapa ii. 4) describes the wondrous site of the African towns and cities; and Sylvis (p. 262) is the best authority.
42 The Roman army were, a legion, a comitatus, a viroto, a tribus. The place of the Roman legions was generally in the midst of the camp. (See Livy, Hist. xii. 42, 43, 44, 45. 46.)
43 See the African gazetteer of the 12th century, (Itineraria, ii. 173); and Ptolemy, Mapa ii. 138. The city is still called Byrsa.
44 The actual remains, in the town which she describes Mount Aurania, are not so vast as her description requires. (Tituri, p. 129. 130.)
45 Busa, a Roman city, once the seat of a legion, and the residence of forty thousand inhabitants. The Ionic temple of Esculapius is encompassed with Moorish huts, and the cattle now graze in the midst of an amphitheatre, under the shade of Corinthian columns. A sharp perpendicular rock rises above the level of the mountain, where the African princes deposited their wives and treasure; and a proverb is familiar to the Arabs, that the man may set fire, who dares to shrink from the rugged cliffs and inhospitable nates of Mount Aurania. This hardy enterprise was twice attempted by the eunuch Solomon; from the first, he retreated with some disgrace; and in the second, his patience and provisions were almost exhausted; and he must again have retired, if he had not yielded to the impetuous courage of his troops, who anxiously scaled, to the astonishment of the Moors, the mountain, the hostile camp, and the summit of the Geranian rock. A citadel was erected to secure this important conquest, and to remind the barbarians of their defeat; and Solomon pursued his march to the west, the long-lost province of Mauritanian Sift was again annexed to the Roman empire. The Moorish war continued several years after the departure of Belisarius; but the laurels which he resigned to a faithful lieutenant, may be justly ascribed to his own triumph.

The experience of past faults, the caution which may sometimes correct the mature age of an individual, is seldom profitable to the successive generations of mankind. The nations of antiquity, careless of each other's safety, were separately vanquished and enervated by the Romans. This awful lesson might have instructed the barbarians of the West to oppose, with timely counsels and confederate arms, the unbounded ambition of Justinian. Yet the same error was repeated, the same consequences were felt, and the Goth's, both of Italy and Spain, inconsiderable of their approaching danger, beheld with indifference, and even with joy, the rapid downfall of the Vandals. After the failure of the royal line, Theudis, a valiant and powerful chief, ascended the throne of Spain, which he had formerly administered in the name of Theuderic and his infant grandson. Under his command, the Visigoths besieged the fortress of Cenat on the African coast; but, while they spent the sabbath-day in peace and devotion, the plume security of their camp was invaded by a sally from the town; and the king himself, with some difficulty and danger, escaped from the hands of a sacrilegious enemy. It was not long before his pride and resentment were gratified by a suppliant embassy from the unfortunate Gelimer, who implored, in his distress, the aid of the Spanish monarch. But
instead of sacrificing these unsightly passions to the dictates of generosity and prudence, Theodosius assigned the ambassadors, till he was secretly informed of the loss of Carthage, and then dismissed them with obscure and contemptuous advice, to seek in their native country a true knowledge of the state of the Vandals. 47 The long continuance of the Italian war delayed the punishment of the Visigoths; and the eyes of Theodosius were closed before they tasted the fruits of his mistaken policy. After his death, the sceptre of Spain was disputed by a civil war. The weaker candidate solicited the protection of Justinian, and ambitiously subscribed a treaty of alliance, which deeply wounded the independence and happiness of his country. Several cities, both on the ocean and the Mediterranean, were ceded to the Roman troops, who afterwards refused to evacuate those pledges, as it should seem, either of safety or payment; and as they were fortified by perpetual supplies from Africa, they maintained their impregnable stations, for the mischievous purpose of inflaming the civil and religious factions of the barbarians. Seventy years elapsed before this painful thorn could be extirpated from the bosom of the monarchy; and as long as the emperors retained any share of these remote and useless possessions, their vanity might number Spain in the list of their provinces, and the successors of Alaric in the rank of their vassals. 48

The error of the Goths who reigned in Italy was so less excusable than that of their Spanish brethren, and their punishment was still more immediate and terrible. From a motive of private revenge, they enabled their most dangerous enemy to destroy their most valuable ally. A sister of the great Theodosius had been given in marriage to Thrason the African king; but on this occasion, the fortress of Lillybium 49 in Sicily was resigned to the Vandals; and the princess Amausafida was attended by a martial train of one thousand nobles, and five thousand Gothic soldiers, who signified their valor in the Moorish wars. Their merit was overrated by themselves, and perhaps neglected by the Vandals: they viewed the country with envy, and the conquerors with disdain; but their real or fictitious conspiracy was prevented by a massacre; the Goths were oppressed, and the captivity of Amausafida was soon followed by her secret and suspicious death. The eloquent pen of Cassiodorus was employed to reproach the Vandals with the cruel violation of every social and public duty; but the vengeance which he threatened in the name of his sovereign, might be decided with impunity, as long as Africa was protected by the sea, and the Goths were destitute of a navy. In the blind impotence of grief and indignation, they joyfully saluted the approach of the Romans, entertained the fleet of Belisarius in the ports of Sicily, and were speedily delighted or alarmed by the surprising intelligence, that their revenge was executed beyond the measure of their hopes, or perhaps of their wishes. To their friendship the emperor was indebted for the kingdom of Africa, and the Goths might reasonably think, that they were entitled to resume the possession of a barren rock, so recently separated as a nuptial gift from the island of Sicily. They were soon underserved by the haughty mandate of Belisarius, which excited their terror and unavailing repentance. 50 The city and province of Lilybium," said the Roman general, belonged to the Vandals, and I claim them by the right of conquest. Your submission may deserve the favour of the emperor; your obstinacy will provoke his displeasure; and must kindle a war, that can terminate only in your utter ruin. If you compel us to take up arms, we shall contend, not to regain the possession of a single city, but to deprive you of all the provinces which you unjustly withhold from their lawful sovereign." A nation of two hundred thousand soldiers might have smiled at the vain menace of Justinian and his lieutenant: but a spirit of discord and dissatisfaction prevailed in Italy, and the Goths supported, with reluctance, the indignity of a female reign. 51

The birth of Amalasuntha, the regent and queen of Italy, 52 united the two most illustrious families of the Vandals and the barbarians. Her mother, the sister of Cloric, was descended from the long-haired kings of the Visigothic race; 53 and the regal succession of the Amali was illustrated in the eleventh generation, by her father, the great Theodoric, whose merit might have ennobled a plebeian origin. The sex of his daughter excluded her from the Gothic throne; but his vigilant tenderness for his family and his people discovered the last heir of the royal line, whose ancestors had taken refuge to Spain; and the fortunate Eugubius was suddenly exalted to the rank of a count and a prince. He enjoyed only a short time the charms of Amalasuntha, and the hopes of the succession; and his widow, after the death of her husband and father, was left the guardian of her son Attila, and the kingdom of Italy. At the age of about twenty-eight years, the endowments of her mind and person had attained their perfect maturity. Her beauty, which, in the apprehension of Theodoric himself, might have disputed the conquest of an emperor, was animated by main force, activity, and resolution. Educated
oation and experience had cultivated her talents; her philosophic studies were exempt from vanity; and, though she expressed herself with equal elegance and ease in the Greek, the Latin, and the Gothic tongue, the daughter of Theodoric maintained in her counsels a discreet and impenetrable silence. By a faithful imitation of the virtues, she revived the prosperity of his reign: while she strove, with pious care, to expiate the faults and to obliterate the darker memory of his declining age.

The children of Boethius and Symmachus were restored to their paternal inheritance; her extreme lenity never consented to inflict any corporal or pecuniary penalties on her Roman subjects; and she generously dispensed the clamours of the Goths, who, at the end of forty years, still considered the people of Italy as their slaves or their enemies. Her salutary measures were directed by the wisdom, and cultivated by the eloquence, of Cassiodorus; she solicited and deserved the friendship of the emperor; and the kingdom of Europe respected, both in peace and war, the majesty of the Gothic throne.

But the future happiness of the queen and of Italy depended on the education of her son; who was destined, by his birth, to support the different and almost incompatible characters of the chief of a barbarian camp, and the first magistrate of a civilised nation. From the age of ten years, 14 Athalaric was diligently instructed in the arts and sciences, either useful or ornamental for a Roman prince; and three venerable Goths were chosen to instil the principles of honour and virtue into the mind of their young king. But the pupil who is insensible of the benefits, must allow the restraints, of education; and the solitude of the queen, which affection rendered anxious and severe, offended the untractable nature of her son and his subjects.

On a solemn festival, when the Goths were assembled in the palace of Ravenna, the royal youth escaped from his mother's apartment, and, with tears of pride and anger, complained of a blow which his stubborn disobedience had provoked her to inflict. The barbarians resented the indignity which had been offered to their king; accused the regent of conspiring against his life and crown; and impudently demanded, that the grandson of Theodoric should be rescued from the dastardly discipline of women and pedants, and educated, like a valiant Goth, in the society of his equals, and the glorious ignorance of his ancestors.

This rude clamour, impudently urged as the voice of the nation, Amalasuntha was compelled to yield her reason, and the sincerest wishes of her heart. The king of Italy was abandoned to who, to women, and to rustic sports; and the indiscreet contempt of the ungrateful youth betrayed the miscarriage designs of his favourites and her enemies. Encouraged with domestic ease, she entered into a secret negotiation with the emperor Justinian; obtained the assurance of a friendly reception, and had actually deposited at Dyrrachium in Epirus, a treasure of forty thousand pounds of gold. Happy would it have been for her fame and safety, if she had calmly retired from barbarous faction, to the peace and splendour of Constantinople. But the mind of Amalasuntha was inflamed by ambition and revenge; and while her ships lay at anchor in the port, she waited for the success of a crime which her passions excused or applauded as an act of justice.

Three of the most dangerous malecontents had been separately removed, under the pretence of trust and command, to the frontiers of Italy; they were assassinated by her private emissaries; and the blood of these noble Goths rendered the queen-mother absolute in the court of Ravenna, and justly odious to a free people. But if she had lamented the disorders of her son, she soon wept his irreparable loss; and the death of Athalaric, who, at the age of sixteen, was consumed by premature intemperance, left her destitute of any firm support or legal authority. Instead of submitting to the laws of her country, which held as a fundamental maxim, that the succession could never pass from the house to the state, the daughter of Theodoric conceived the impracticable design of sharing, with one of her cousins, the regal title, and of reserving in her own hands the substance of supreme power. He received the proposal with profound respect and affected gratitude; and the eloquent Cassiodorus announced to the senate and the emperor, that Amalasuntha and Theodatus had ascended the throne of Italy. His birth (for his mother was the sister of Theodoric) might be considered as an imperfect title; and the choice of Amalasuntha was more strongly directed by her contempt of his swarm and insignificance, which had deprived him of the love of the Italians, and the esteem of the barbarians.

But Theodatus was exasperated by the contempt which he deserved: her justice had repressed and reproached the oppression which he exercised against his Tuscan neighbours; and the principal Goths, united by common guilt and resentment, conspired to instigate his slow and timid disposition. The letters of congratulations were scarcely despatched before the queen of Italy was imprisoned in a small island of the lake of Babbina, 15 where, after a short confinement, she was strangled in the bath, by the order, or with the connivance, of the new king, who instructed his turbulent subjects to shed the blood of their sovereigns.

Justinian beheld with ivy the dismemberment of the Goths; and the mediation of an ally concealed and promoted the ambitious views of the conqueror. His ambassadors, in their public audience, demanded the fortress of Llybazon, ten barbarian fugitives, and a just compensation for the pillage of a small town on the Ilyrian

---

14. At the death of Theodoric, his grandchild Athalaric is described by Procopius as a boy not more than six years old, and with the name of Procopius; and he adds, that when he was six years old, his regent was a woman named Theodora. The name of Athalaric is not given by Procopius.

15. The island was called Babbina, and it was a lake in the province of Aquileia.
leaders; but they secretly negotiated with Theodosius to betray the province of Tuscany, and tempted Anastasius to extricate herself from danger and perplexity, by a free surrender of the kingdom of Italy. A false and servile epistle was subscribed by the reluctant hand of the captive queen; but the confession of the Roman senators, who were sent to Constantinople, revealed the truth of her deplorable situation; and Justinian, by the voice of a new ambassador, most powerful and interested in her life and liberty. Yet the secret instructions of the same minister were adapted to serve the cruel jealousy of Theodosius, who wished the presence and superior charms of a rival: he promised, with artful and ambiguous hints, the execution of a crime so useful to the Romans; 10 received the intelligence of her death with grief and indignation, and denounced, in his master's name, immortal war against the perfidious assasin. In Italy, as well as in Africa, the guilt of an unmerited appearance sprang from the arms of Justinian; but the forces which he prepared, were insufficient for the subversion of a mighty kingdom, if their field numbers had not been augmented by the name, the spirit, and the conduct of an hero. A chosen troop of guards, who served on horseback, and were armed with lances and bucklers, attended the person of Belisarius: his cavalry was composed of two hundred Humus, three hundred Moors, and four thousand confederates, and the infantry consisted only of three thousand Isaurians. Steering the same course as in his former expedition, the Roman consul cast anchor before Catana in Sicily, to survey the strength of the island, and to decide whether he should attempt the conquest, or peaceably pursue his voyage for the African coast. He found a fruitful land and a friendly people. Notwithstanding the decay of agriculture, Sicily still supplied the granaries of Rome: the farmers were gratuitously exempted from the oppression of military quarters; and the Goths, who trusted the defence of the island to the inhabitants, had some reason to complain, that their confidence was ungratefully betrayed. Instead of soliciting and expectation the aid of the king of Italy, they yielded to the first summons a cheerful obedience; and this province, the first fruits of the Gothic war, was, again, after a long separation, united to the Roman empire. 11 The Gothic garrison of Palermo, which alone attempted to resist, was reduced, after a short siege, by a singular stratagem. The honours of the head of his victorious hands, distributing gold medals to the people, on the day which so gloriously terminated the year of his consulship. He passed the winter season in the palace of ancient kings, amidst the ruins of a Greek colony, which once extended to a circumference of two and twenty miles; 12 but in the spring, about the festival of Easter, the prosecution of his designs was interrupted by a dangerous revolt of the African forces. Carthage was saved by the presence of Belisarius, who suddenly landed with a thousand guards. Two thousand soldiers of doubtful faith returned to the standard of their old commander: and he marched, without hesitation, above fifty miles, to seek an enemy, whom he affected to pity and despise. Eight thousand rebels trembled at his approach; they were routed at the first onset, by the dexterity of their master: and this ignoble victory would have restored the peace of Africa, if the conqueror had not hastily recalled to Sicily, to appease a coalition which was kindled during his absence in his own camp. 13 Disorder and disobedience were the common malady of the times: the genius to command, and the virtue to obey, resided only in the mind of Belisarius. Although Theodosius descended from a race of heroes, he was ignorant of the art, and adverse to the dangers of war. Although he had studied the writings of Plato and Tully, philosophy was incapable of purifying his mind from the basest passions, avarice and fear. He had purchased a sceptre by ingratitude and murder: at the first message of an enemy, he degraded his own majesty, and that of a nation, which already disdained their unworthy sovereign. Astonished by the recent example of Guiltier, he saw himself dragged in chains through the streets of Constantinople: the terms which Belisarius inspired, were heighten by the eloquence of Peter, the Byzantine ambassador; and that bold and subtle advocate persuaded him to sign a treaty, too ignominious to become the foundation of a lasting peace. It was stipulated, that in the acknowledgments of the Roman people, the name of the emperor should be always proclaimed before that of the Gothic king; and that as often as the statue of Theodosius was erected in towers or marble, the divine image of Justinian should be placed on its right hand. Instead of submitting, the king of Italy was reduced to solicit the honours of the senate; and the consent of the emperor was made indispensable before he could execute, against a priest or senator, the sentence either of death or confiscation. The feeble monarch resigned the possession of Sicily: offered, as the animal mark of his dependence, a crown of gold, of the weight of three hundred pounds; and pressed to supply, at the requisition of his sovereign, three thousand Gothic auxiliaries for the service of the empire. Satisfied with these extraordinary concessions, the successful agent

---

10 The Trebaces who acquainted his whole army with the truth (Procop. i. 29), he immediately in his own army. He had not spared the truth, for the spies from their dominions to the emperor Theodosius (Procop. ii. 29, 31), and showed not a servile servile, but a free man. Theodosius (Procop. ii. 29, 31). Theodosius is called the emperor (Procop. ii. 29, 31).

11 For the conquest of Sicily, consult the narrative of Procopius (Hist. Rer. Pers. iv. 24).

12 Gorstadt (Gorstadt, 16).

13 For the capture of Sicily, consult the narrative of Procopius (Hist. Rer. Pers. iv. 24).

14 Theodorus (Thodorus, 16).
of Justinian hastened his journey to Constantinople; but no sooner had he reached the Alban villa, 52 than he was recalled by the anxiety of Theodatus; and the dialogue which passed between the king and the ambassador deserves to be represented in its original simplicity. "Are you of opinion that the emperor will ratify this treaty? Perhaps, if he refuses, what consequence will ensue? War. Will such a war be just or reasonable? Most assu­ingly. "Every nation should act according to his character. What is your meaning? You are a philosopher. "— Justinian is emperor of the Romans; he would in all become the disciple of Plato to shoot the blood of thousands in his private quarrel; the successor of Augustus should vindicate his rights, and recover by arms the ancient provinces of his empire. "This reasoning might not convince, but it was sufficient to alarm and subdue the weakness of Theodatus, and he soon descended to his last offer, that for the present equivalent of a pension of forty-eight thousand pounds sterling, he would resign the kingdom of the Goths and Italians, and spend the remainder of his days in the innocent pleasures of philosophy and agriculture. Both treaties were intrusted to the hands of the ambassador, on the strict security of an oath not to produce the second till the first had been positively rejected. The event may be easily foreseen: Justinian required and accepted the abdication of the Gothic king. His indefatigable agent returned from Constantinople to Ravenna, with ample instructions; and a fair epistle, which praised the wisdom and generosity of the royal philosopher, granted his pension, with the assurance of such honours, as a subject and a Catholic might enjoy; and wisely referred the final execution of the treaty, to the presence and authority of Belisarius. But in the interval of suspense, two Roman generals, who had entered the province of Dalmatia, were defeated and slain by the Gothic troops. From blind and abject despair, Theodatus capriciously rose to groundless and fatal presumptions, 53 and dared to receive, with munificence and contempt, the ambassadors of Justinian; who claimed his promises, solicited the allegiance of his subjects, and boldly asserted the inviolable privilege of his own character. The march of Belisarius dispelled this visionary pride; and as the first campaign was employed in the reduction of Sicily, the invasion of Italy is applied by Procopius to the second year of the Gorsus war. 54

Belisarius had left sufficient garrisons in Palermo and Syracuse,

he embarked his troops at Messina, landed them, without resistance, on the opposite shores of Illyria. A Gothic prince, who had married the daughter of Theodatus, was stationed with an army to guard the entrance of Italy; but he imitated, withoutexample, the example of a sovereign, faithful to his public and private duties. The perfidious Emperor deserted with his followers to the Roman camp, and was dismissed to enjoy the smiles of the Byzantine court. 55 From Illyria to Naples, the fleet and army of Belisarius, almost always in view of each other, advanced near three hundred miles along the sea-coast.

The people of Bruttium, Lucania, and Campania, who abjured the name and religion of the Goths, embraced the spiritual excuse, that their ruined walls were incapable of defence; the soldiers paid a just equivalent for a plentiful market; and curiously alone interrupted the peaceful occupations of the husbandman or artisan. Naples, which has swelled to a great and populous capital, long cherished the language and manners of a Greek colony, 56 and the choice of Virgil had embellished this elegant retreat, which attracted the lovers of repose and study, from the south, the sun, and the luxurious opulence of Rome. 57 As soon as the place was invested by sea and land, Belisarius gave audience to the deputies of the people, who exhorted him to disregard a conquest unworthy of his arms, to seek the Gothic king in a field of battle, and, after his victory, to claim, as the sovereign of Rome, the allegiance of the dependent cities. "When I treat with my enemies," replied the Roman chief, with an haughty smile, "I am more accustomed to give than to receive counsel; but I hold in one hand inevitable ruin, and, in the other, peace and freedom, such as Sicily now enjoys." The impatience of delay urged him to grant the most liberal terms; his honour secured their performance; but Naples was divided into two factions; and the Greek democracy was inflamed by their orators, who, with much spirit and suave truth, represented to the multitude, that the Goths would punish their defection, and that Belisarius himself must esteem their loyalty and valour. Their deliberations, however, were not perfectly free: the city was commanded by eight hundred barbarians, whose wives and children were detained at Ravenna as the pledge of their fidelity; and even the Jews, who were rich and numerous, resisted, with desperate enthusiasm, the intolerant laws of Justinian. In a much later period, the circumnucence of Naples 58

52. After Belisarius had left sufficient garrisons in Palermo and Syracuse,

53. The account Alaric was driven to the last age of Rome, on the other side, of his being in the neighborhood of the kingdom of the Goths, and is therefore treated in this chapter.

54. Procopius, Hist. Brev., c. 20, p. 705. After the death of Besila, in the year 548, the chief Roman generals were Theodatus, Thraustas, and Belisarius.

55. The capture of Tarsus and the massacre of the inhabitants by Belisarius, is narrated by Procopius, Hist. Brev. c. 21, p. 711. The capture of Thessalonica by Belisarius, is related by Procopius, Hist. Brev. c. 22, p. 711.

56. The capture of Illyria was given to the Romans by the emperor, and the capture of Toletum was given to the emperor by the people of Illyria. One hundred and fifty were afterwards, in the case of Belisarius, as an imputation of treason. These were a part of the army of Belisarius, who was afterwards, after a short time, taken prisoner by the Gauls.

57. The capture of Naples was given to the Romans by the emperor, and the capture of Toletum was given to the emperor by the people of Illyria. One hundred and fifty were afterwards, in the case of Belisarius, as an imputation of treason. These were a part of the army of Belisarius, who was afterwards, after a short time, taken prisoner by the Gauls.

58. The capture of Tarsus and the massacre of the inhabitants by Belisarius, is narrated by Procopius, Hist. Brev. c. 20, p. 705. After the capture of Tarsus by Belisarius, he proceeded to take the city of Thessalonica, which he did, after a short time, after a short time, by the assault of Belisarius, and the people of Thessalonica, as an imputation of treason. These were a part of the army of Belisarius, who was afterwards, after a short time, taken prisoner by the Gauls.
unmeasured only two thousand three hundred and sixty-three paces; the fortifications were defended by precipices or the sea; when the aqueducts were intercepted, a supply of water might be drawn from wells and fountains; and the stock of provisions was sufficient to sustain the patience of the besiegers. At the end of twenty days, that is, Belisarius was almost exhausted, and he had reconciled himself to the disgrace of abandoning the siege, that he might march, before the winter set in, against Rome and the Gothic king. But his anxiety was relieved by the bold enterprise of an Iberian, who explored the daily channel of an aqueduct, and secretly reported, that a passage might be perforated to introduce a file of armed soldiers into the heart of the city. When the work had been silently executed, the humana general risked the discovery of his secret, by a last and fruitless admonition of the impending danger. In the darkness of the night, four hundred Romans entered the aqueduct, raised themselves by a rope, which they fastened to an olive tree, into the house or garden of a solitary matron, sounded their trumpets, surprised the sentinel, and gave admittance to their companions, who on all sides scaled the walls, and burst open the gates of the city. Every crime which is punished by social justice, was practiced as the rights of war; the Huns were distinguished by cruelty and ferocity, and Belisarius alone appeared in the streets and churches of Naples, to moderate the calamities which he predicted. The gold and silver, he repeatedly exclaimed, are the just rewards of your valour. But spare the inhabitants; they are Christians, they are suppliants, they are now your fellow-subjects. Restore the children to their parents, the wives to their husbands; and show them, by your generosity, of what friends they have undoubtedly deprived themselves. The city was saved by the virtuous and authority of its conqueror; and when the Neapolitans returned to their houses, they found some consolation in the secret enjoyment of their hidden treasures. The barbarian garrisons enlisted in the service of the emperor: Apulia and Calabria, delivered from the odious presence of the Goths, acknowledged his dominion; and the titles of the Caledonian hoar, which were still shown at Beneventum, are curiously described by the historian of Belisarius.

The faithful soldiers and citizens of Naples had expected their delivery from a prince, who remained the inactive and almost indifferent spectator of their ruin. Theodatus secured his person within the walls of Rome, while his cavalry, advanced forty miles on the Appian way, and encamped in the Pamphite marshes; which, by a canal of nineteen miles in length, had been recently drained and revitalized by the skill of the Etruscans. But the principal forces of the Goths were dispersed in Dalmatia, Venetia, and Gaul; and the feeble mind of their king was confounded by the unsuccessful event of a divination, which seemed to presage the downfall of his empire. The most object slaves have arranged the guilt or weakness of an unfortunate master. The character of Theodatus was rigorously scrutinized by a free and idle camp of barbarians, conscious of their privilege and power: he was declared unworthy of his race, his nation, and his throne; and their general Vitiges, whose valour had been signalized in the Illyrian war, was raised with unanimous applause on the bucklers of his companions. On the first rumour, the abdicated monarch fled from the justice of his country; but he was pursued by private revenge. A Goth whom he had injured in his love, overtook Theodatus on the Flaminian way, and, regardless of his unarmed cries, slaughtered him, as he lay prostrate on the ground, like a victim (say the historians) at the foot of the altar. The choice of the people is the last and purest title to reign over them: yet such is the prejudice of every age, that Vitiges impatiently wished to return to Ravenna, where he might seize, with the reluctant hand of the daughter of Amalsontis, some faint shadow of hereditary right. A national council was immediately held, and the new monarch reconciled the impatient spirit of the barbarians, to a measure of disgrace, which the misconduct of his predecessor rendered wise and insensible. The Goths consented to retreat in the presence of a victorious enemy; to delay till the next spring the operations of offensive war; to summon their scattered forces; to relinquish their distant possessions; and to trust even Rome itself to the faith of its inhabitants. Lombard, an aged patrician, was left in the capital with four thousand soldiers; a feeble garrison, which might have concealed the real, though it was incapable of opposing the wishes, of the Romans. But a momentary enthusiasm of religion and patriotism was kindled in their minds. They furiously exclaimed, that the apostolic throne should no longer be profaned by the triumph or tolerance of Arius; that the tombs of the Caesars should no longer be trampled by the savages of the North; and, without reflecting, that Italy must sink into a province of Constantinople, they hastily bade the restoration of a Roman emperor as a new era of freedoms and prosperity. The deputies of the pope and clergy, of the senate and people, invited the lieutenant of Justinian to accept their voluntary allegiance, and to enter the city, whose gates would be thrown open.
upon for his reception. As soon as Belisarius had fortified his new conquests, Naples and Caere, he advanced about twenty miles to the banks of the Volturnus, contemplated the decayed grandeur of Capua, and halted at the separation of the Latin and Apian ways. The work of the censor, after the incessant use of nine centuries, still preserved its primordial beauty, and a law could be discerned in the large polished stones of which that solid, though narrow road, was so firmly composed. Belisarius, however, preferred the Latin way, which, at a distance from the sea and the mountains, skirted in a space of one hundred and twenty miles along the foot of the mountains. His enemies had disappeared; when he made his entrance through the Asinian gate, the garrison departed without molestation along the Flaminian way; and the city, after sixty years' solitude, was delivered from the yoke of the barbarians. Leundius, from a motive of pride or discontent, refused to accompany the fugitives; and the Gothic chief, himself a trophy of the victory, was sent with the keys of Rome to the throne of the emperor Justinian.74

The first days, which coincided with the old Saturnalia, were devoted to mutual congratulation and the public joy; and the Catholics prepared to celebrate, without a rival, the approaching festival of the nativity of Christ. In the familiar conversation of an hero, the Romans acquired some notion of the virtues which history ascribed to their ancestors; they were edified by the apparent respect of Belisarius for the successor of St. Peter, and his rigid discipline secured in the midst of war the blessings of tranquility and justice. They applauded the rapid success of his arms, which overran the adjacent country, as far as Narri, Persina, and Spoleto; but they trembled, the senate, the clergy, and the unwarlike people, as much as they understood, that he had resolved, and would speedily be reduced, to sustain a siege against the powers of the Gothic monarchy. The designs of Vitiges were executed, during the winter season, with diligence and effect. From their rustic habitations, from their distant garrisons, the Goths assembled at Ravenna for the defence of their country; and such were their numbers, that after an army had been detached for the relief of Dalmatia, one hundred and fifty thousand fighting men marched under the royal standard. According to the degrees of rank or merit, the Gothic king distributed arms and horses, rich gifts, and liberal promises; he moved along the Flaminian way, declined the useless sieges of Persina and Spoleto, respected the impregnable rock of Narri, and arrived within two miles of Rome at the foot of the Milvian bridge. The narrow passage was

74 An account of the events which took place in the capture of Rome is given by Vergil Sympos. i. 67, 73, with the description of Manlius and Persius. Ennius has given a distinct narrative of the same event, which is before - and the day (this may be admitted for the right aesthetic purposes) in my judgment 10. 13 and the day (this may be admitted for the right aesthetic purposes) in my judgment 10. 13 and the day (this may be admitted for the right aesthetic purposes) in my judgment 10. 13

75 For the battle of Tolmezzo, see Liv. 41. 10, 11. The emperor, after the battle of Tolmezzo, is represented in Liv. 41. 10, 11. The emperor, after the battle of Tolmezzo, is represented in Liv. 41. 10, 11. The emperor, after the battle of Tolmezzo, is represented in Liv. 41. 10, 11. The emperor, after the battle of Tolmezzo, is represented in Liv. 41. 10, 11. The emperor, after the battle of Tolmezzo, is represented in Liv. 41. 10, 11. The emperor, after the battle of Tolmezzo, is represented 10. 13
army of the Goths passed the Tyber, and formed the siege of the city, which continued above a year, till their final departure. Whatever fancy may conceive, the severe compass of the geographer defines the circumference of Rome within a line of twelve miles and three hundred and forty-five paces; and that circumference, except in the Brentaica, has invariably been the same since the triumph of Aurelian to the peaceful but obscure reign of the modern popes.77 But in the day of her greatness, the space within her walls was crowded with habitations and inhabitants; and the populous suburbs, that stretched along the public roads, were darted like so many rays from one immense centre. Adversity swept away those extraneous ornaments, and left naked and destitute a considerable part even of the seven hills. Yet Rome in its present state could send into the field above thirty thousand males of a military age;78 and, notwithstanding the want of discipline and exercise, the far greater part, innured to the hardships of poverty, might be capable of bearing arms for the defence of their country and religion. The prudence of Belisarius did not neglect this important resource. His soldiers were relieved by the zeal and diligence of the people, who watched while they slept, and laboured while they reposed; he accepted the voluntary service of the bravest and most indigent of the Roman youth; and the companies of townspeople sometimes represented, in a vacant post, the presence of the troops which had been drawn away to more essential duties. But his just confidence was placed in the veterans who had fought under his banner in the Persian and African wars; and although that gallant band was reduced in five thousand men, he undertook, with such contemptible numbers, to defend a circle of twelve miles, against an army of one hundred and fifty thousand barbarians. In the walls of Rome, which Belisarius constructed or restored, the triumphs of ancient architecture may be discerned;79 and the whole fortification was completed, except in a chasm still existent between the Pucian and Flaminian gates, which the prejudices of the Goths and Romans left under the effectual guard of St. Peter the apostle.80 The battlements or bastions were shaped in sharp angles; a ditch, broad and deep, protected the foot of the rampart; and the archers on the rampart were assisted by military engines; the culverin, a powerful cross-bow, which darted short but heavy arrows; the mangonel or wild ass, which, on the principle of a sling, threw stones and bullets of an enormous size.81 A chain was drawn across the Tyber; the archers of the aqueducts were made impervious, and the mole or sepulchre of Hadrian82 was converted, for the first time, to the uses of a citadel. That venerable structure, which contained the ashes of the Antonines, was a circular tower rising from a quadrangular basis; it was covered with the white marble of Parnassus, and decorated by the statues of gods and heroes; and the lower of the arts must rest with a sigh, that the works of Praxiteles or Lysippus were torn from their lofty pedestals, and hurled into the ditch on the heads of the besiegers.83 To each of his lieutenants, Belisarius assigned the defence of a gate; with the wise and peremptory instruction, that whatever might be the alarm, they should steadily adhere to their respective posts, and trust their general for the safety of Rome. The formidable host of the Goths was insufficient to embrace the ample measure of the city; of the fourteen gates, seven only were invested from the Pons Sublicius to the Flaminian way; and Vitiges divided his troops into six camps, each of which was fortified with a ditch and rampart. On the Tuscan side of the river, a seventh encampment was formed in the field or circus of the Vatican, for the important purpose of commanding the Milvian bridge and the course of the Tyber; but they approached with devotion the adjacent church of St. Peter; and the threshold of the holy apostles was respected during the siege by a Christian enemy. In the ages of victory, as often as the senate deemed some distant conquest, the central fragment of its history is subsumed, its solemn pomps, the gates of the temple of Janus.84 Domestic war now reduced the adscription superfluous, and the ceremony was superseded by the establishment of a new religion. But the brazen temple of Janus was left standing in the forum; for a sign sufficient only to contain the statue of the god, five cubits in height, of a human form, but with two faces directed to the east and west. The double gates were likewise of brass; and a fruitless effort to turn them on their rusty hinges, revealed the scandalous secret, that some Romans were still attached to the superstition of their ancestors. Eighteen days were employed by the besiegers, to provide all the instruments of attack which antiquity had invented. Fascines were prepared to fill the ditches, scaling-ladders to ascend the walls. The largest trees of the forest supplied the timber of four battering-mas; their heads were armed with iron; they were suspended by ropes, and each of them was worked by the labour of

77 M. A. Paulinus has given, in the Memoirs of the Academy for the recovery of the Antiquities of Rome, a most clear and accurate picture of the city, with the viles and defiles, the baths, the law courts, etc. He and the new and curious抄本 of Scaliger, offer us fresh and real, if not for more minute than that which he had before given in 1535 for Bellissima historia. Expositione et editione illustrata. He and the new and curious copy of Scaliger, offer us fresh and real, if not for more minute than that which he had before given in 1535 for Bellissima historia. Expositione et editione illustrata.78 This gate was opened by Justinian in the year 529.79 The defence of the city was conducted with the greatest spirit and vigour. In the year 704, the besieged numbered 100,000 men.80 The chasm of the archers is of 2000 feet.81 The greater and smaller cross-bow had a range of 500 feet.82 The sepulchre of Hadrian was a church, with a crypt, and a circular tower, which contained the ashes of the Antonines, and was covered with marble.83 The statues of the gods and heroes were torn from their pedestals, and hurled into the ditch on the heads of the besiegers.84 The temple of Janus was left standing in the forum; for a sign sufficient only to contain the statue of the god, five cubits in height, of a human form, but with two faces directed to the east and west.85 The brazen temple was subsumed, its solemn pomps, the gates of the temple of Janus.
fifty men. The lofty wooden turrets moved on wheels or rollers, and formed a spacious platform of the level of the rampart. On the morning of the nineteenth day, a general attack was made from the Franscine gate to the Vatican; seven Gothic columns, with their military engines, advanced in the assault; and the Romans who lined the ramparts, listened with doubt and anxiety to the cheerful assurances of their commanders. As soon as the enemy approached the ditch, Belisarius himself drew the first arrow; and, as he was engaged in his strength and in his activity, he transformed the foremost of the barbarian leaders. A shout of applause and victory was re-echoed along the wall. He drew a second arrow, and the stroke was followed with the same success and the same acclamation. The Roman general then gave the word, that the archers should arm at the teams of oxen; they were instantly covered with mortal wounds; the towers which they drew, remained useless and immovable, and a single moment disconcerted the labours of the project of the King of the Goths. After this disappointment, Vitiges still continued, or feigned to continue, the assault of the Salarian gate, that he might divert the attention of his adversary, while his principal forces more strenuously attacked the Franscine gate and the approach of Hasrian, at the distance of three miles from each other. Near the former, the double walls of the Vivarium were low or broken; the fortifications of the latter were feebly guarded; the rigor of the Goths was excited by the hope of victory and spoil; and if a single past had given way, the Romans, and Rome itself, were irretrievably lost. This perilous day was the most glorious in the life of Belisarius. Amidst tumult and dismay, the whole plan of the attack and defence was distinctly present to his mind; he observed the changes of each instant, weighed every possible advantage, transported his person to the scenes of danger, and communicated his spirit in calm and decisive orders. The contest was fiercely maintained from the morning to the evening; the Goths were repulsed on all sides, and each Roman might boast, that he had vanquished thirty barbarians, if the strange disproportion of numbers were not counterbalanced by the merit of one man. Thirty thousand Goths, according to the confession of their own chiefs, perished in this bloody action; and the multitude of the wounded was equal to that of the slain. When they advanced to the assault, their close disorder suffered not a privilege to fall without effect; and as they retired, the popular name of the city justified the praise and, slaughtered, with industry, the ranks of their flying enemies. Belisarius instantly rallied from the gates; and while the soldiers chanted his name and victory, the hostile engines of war were reduced to ashes. Such was the loss and consternation of the Goths; that, from this day, the siege of Rome degenerated into a tedious and indolent blockade; and they were incessantly harassed by the Roman general, who, in frequent skirmishes, destroyed above five thousand of their bravest troops. Their cavalry was paralysed in the use of the bow; their archers served on foot; and this divided force was incapable of contending with their adversaries, whose lances and arrows, at a distance, or at hand, were alike formidable. The consummate skill of Belisarius embroiled the favourable opportunities; and as he chose the ground, and the moment, he pressed them into the service of the retreat, the sliders, which he detached were seldom unsuccessful. These partial advantages diffused an impatient ardour among the soldiers and people, who began to feel the hardship of a siege, and to disregard the dangers of a general engagement. Each plebeian conceived himself to be an hero, and the infantry, who, since the decay of discipline, were rejected from the line of battle, aspired to the ancient honours of the Roman legions. Belisarius praised the spirit of his troops, condemned their presumption, yielded to their clamours, and prepared the remedies of a defeat, the possibility of which he showed had courage to suspect. In the quarter of the Vatican, the Romans prevailed; and if the irreparable moments had not been wasted in the pillage of the camp, they might have occupied the Milvian bridge, and charged in the rear of the Gothic host. On the other side of the Tyber, Belisarius advanced from the Pincian and Salarian gates. But his army, four thousand soldiers perhaps, was lost in a spacious plain: they were encompassed and oppressed by fresh multitudes, who continually relieved the broken ranks of the barbarians. The valiant leaders of the infantry were unskilled to conquer; they died; the retreat (so hasty a retreat) was covered by the prudence of the general, and the victors started back with affright from the formidable aspect of an armed rampart. The reputation of Belisarius was unassailed by a defeat; and the vain confidence of the Goths was not less serviceable to his designs, than the repentance and modesty of the Roman troops.

From the moment that Belisarius had determined to sustain a siege, his assiduous care provided Rome against the danger of famine, more dreadful than the Gothic arms. An extraordinary supply of corn was imported from Sicily; the harvests of Campania and Tuscany were forcibly swept for the use of the city; and the rights of private property were infringed by the strong plea of the public safety. It might easily be foreseen that the enemy would intercept the aqueducts; and the cessation of the water-mills was the first inconvenience, which was speedily removed by mooring large vessels, and fixing mill-stones in the current of the river. The streams were embanked by the trunks of trees, and polluted with dead bodies; yet an effectual were the precautions of the Roman general, that the waters of the Tyber still continued to give motion to the mills and drink to.
the inhabitants: the more distant quarters were supplied from domestic wells, and a besieged city might support, without impunity, the privation of her public baths. A large portion of Rome, from the Pammolino gate to the church of St. Paul, was never invested by the Goths; their excursions were restrained by the activity of the Moorish troops, the navigation of the Tyber, and the Latin, Appian, and Ostian ways, were left free and un molested for the introduction of corn and cattle, or the retreat of the inhabitants, who sought a refuge in Campania or Sicily. Anxious to relieve himself from an useless and devouring multitude, Belisarius issued his preceptory orders for the instant departure of the women, the children, and slaves: required his soldiers to disarm their male and female attendants, and regulated their allowance, that none society should be given in provisions, and the other in money. His foresight was justified by the increase of the public distress, as soon as the Goths had occupied two important posts in the neighbourhood of Rome. By the loss of the port, or, as it is now called, the city of Porto, he was deprived of the country on the right of the Tyber, and the best communication with the sea; and he reflected with grief and anger, that, in the hundred men, could he have spared such a feebler band, might have defended its impregnable works. Seven miles from the capital, between the Appian and the Latin ways, two principal encampments crossing, and again crossing each other, enclosed within their solid and lofty arches a fortified space, in which Vitiges established a camp of seven thousand Goths to intercept the convoys of Sicily and Campania. The granaries of Rome were insensibly exhausted, the adjacent country had been wasted with fire and sword; such scanty supplies as might yet be obtained by busy excursions, were the reward of valor, and the purchase of wealth: the forage of the horses, and the bread of the soldiers, never failed; but in the last months of the siege, the people was exposed to the miseries of scarcity, unwholesome food, and contagious disorders. Belisarius saw and pitied their sufferings; but he had foresight, and he watched the decay of their loyalty, and the progress of their discontent. Adversity had awakened the Romans from the dreams of grandeur and freedom, and taught them the humiliating lesson, that it was of small moment to their real happiness, whether the name of their master was derived from the Gothic or the Latin language. The lieutenant of Justinian listened to their just complaints, but he rejected with disdain the idea of flight or capitulation; represented their chimerical impiance for battle; assured them with the prospect of sure and speedy relief; and secured himself and the city from the effects of their despair or treachery. Twice in each month he changed the station of the officers to whom the custody of the gates was committed: the various precautions, of patrols, watchwords, lights, and music, were repeatedly employed to discover whatever passed on the ramparts; out- guards were posted beyond the ditch, and the trusty vigilance of dogs supplied the more difficult facility of mankind. A letter was inter- cepted, which assured the king of the Goths, that the Ansimarite gate, adjoining to the Eastern church, should be secretly opened to his troops. On the proof or suspicion of treason, several senators were banished, and the pope Sylvester was summoned to attend the representative of his sovereign, at his head-quarters in the Punic palace. The ecclesiastics who followed their bishop, were detained in the first or second apartments, and he alone was admitted to the presence of Belisarius. The conqueror of Rome and Carthage was modestly seated at the feet of Antoina, who reclined on a stately couch; the general was silent, but the voice of reproach and silence issued from the mouth of his impertinent wife. Accused by credible witnesses, and the evidence of his own subscription, the successor of St. Peter was despoiled of his pontifical ornaments, clad in the mean habit of a monk, and embossed, without delay, for a distant exile in the East. At the emperor's command, the clergy of Rome proceeded to the choice of a new bishop; and after a solemn invocation of the Holy Ghost, elected the descons. Vigilias, who had purchased the papal throne by a bribe of two hundred pounds of gold. The profite, and consequently the guilt, of this simony, was imputed to Belisarius; but the hero obeyed the orders of his wife; Antoina sorted the passions of the empress; and Theodora lavished her treasures, in the vain hope of obtaining a pontifical hostilis or indifferent to the council of Chalcedon.45

The epistle of Belisarius to the emperor announced his victory, his danger, and his resolution. Accepting in your commands, we have assumed the honors of the Goths, and reduced to your obedience, Sicily, Campania, and the city of Rome; but the loss of these conquests will be more disgraceful than their acquisition was glorious. Hither we have successfully fought against the multitudes of the barbarians, but our multitudes may finally prove our fall. Victory is the gift of Providence, but the reputation of kings and generals depends on the success or the failure of their designs. Permit me to speak with freedom: if you...
he gave audience to the ambassadors of Visigal. After a specious discourse to vindicate the justice of his cause, they declared, that, for the sake of peace, they were disposed to renounce all pretension to the possession of Sicily. "The emperor was not less "generous," replied his lieutenant, with a dis- "dainful smile, "in return for a gift which you "no longer possess; you presents you with an "ancient province of the empire; he resigns to "the Goths the sovereignty of the British island."

Belisarius rejected with equal firmness and con-"tempt the offer of a tribute; but he allowed the Gothic ambassadors to seek their fate from the mouth of Justinian himself; and consulted, with seeming reluctance, to a truce of three months, from the winter solstice to the equinox of spring. Prudence might not safely trust either the oaths or hostages of the barbarians, but the conscious superiority of the Roman chief was expressed in the distribution of his

...
was hasted by domestic alarms. The king of the Goths was informed by trembling messengers, that John the Sanguinary spread the devastations of war from the Apennines to the Hadriatic; that the rich spoils and innumerable captives of Piacenza were lodged in the fortifications of Rimini; and that this formidable chief had defeated his uncle, insulted his capital, and seduced, by secret correspondence, the fidelity of his wife, the imperious daughter of Amalasontha. Yet, before he retired, Vitiges made a last effort, either to storm or to surprise the city. A secret passage was discovered in one of the aqueducts; two citizens of the Vatican were invited by bribes to intoxicate the guards of the Aurelian gate; an attack was meditated on the walls beyond the Tyber, in a place which was not fortified with towers; and the barbarians advanced, with torches and scaling-ladders, to the assault of the Pincian gate. But every attempt was defeated by the intrepid vigilance of Belisarius and his band of veterans, who, in the most perilous moments, did not regret the absence of their companions; and the Goths, alike destitute of hope and subsistence, clamorously urged their departure, before the truce should expire, and the Roman cavalry should again be united. One year and nine days after the commencement of the siege, an army, so lately strong and triumphant, burnt their tents, and tumultuously repassed the Mil- lumin bridge. They repented not with impunity: their thronging multitudes, oppressed in a narrow passage, were driven headlong into the Tyber, by their own fears and the pursuit of the enemy; and the Roman general, sailing from the Pincian gate, inflicted a severe and disgraceful wound on their retreat. The slow length of a sickly and depopulating host was heavily dragged along the Flaminian way; from whence the barbarians were sometimes compelled to deviate, but they should encounter hostile garrisons that guarded the high road to Rimini and Ravenna. Yet so powerful was this flying army, that Vitiges spared ten thousand men for the defence of the cities which he was most solicitous to preserve, and detached his nephew Ursas, with an adequate force, for the chastisement of rebellious Milan. At the head of his principal army, he besieged Rimini, only thirty-three miles distant from the Gothic capital. A feasible rampart, and a shallow ditch, were maintained by the skill and valor of John the Sanguinary, who shared the danger and fatigue of the most distant soldier, and concluded, on a theatre less illustrious, the military virtues of his great commander.

The towers and battering engines of the barbarians were rendered useless; their attacks were repulsed; and the tedious blockade, which reduced the garrison to the last extremity of hunger, afforded time for the union and march of the Roman forces. A fleet which had surprised Ancona, sailed along the coast of the Hadriatic, to the relief of the besieged city. The sumach. Narses landed in Piacenza with two thousand Franks and five thousand of the bravest troops of the East. The rock of the Apennines was forced; ten thousand veterans moved round the foot of the mountains, under the command of Belisarius himself; and a new army, whose encampment blazed with innumerable lights, opposed to advance along the Flaminian way. Overwhelmed with astonishment and despair, the Goths abandoned the siege of Rimini, their tents, their standards, and their leaders; and Vitiges, who gave or followed the example of flight, never halted till he found a shelter within the walls and narrows of Ravenna.

To these walls, and to some forresses destitute of any mutual support, the Gothic monstrosity was now reduced. The provinces of Italy had embraced the party of the emperor; and his army, gradually recruited to the number of twenty thousand men, must have achieved an easy and rapid conquest, if their invincible powers had not been weakned by the discord of the Roman chiefs. Before the end of the siege, an act of blood, ambigous and indiscriminate, nullified the fair fame of Belisarius. Proclus, a loyal Italian, as he fled from Ravenna to Rome, was rudely stopped by Constantine, the military governor of Spoleto, and despatched, even in a church, of two daggers riddled with gold and precious stones. As soon as the public danger had subsided, Proclus complained of the loss and injury; his complaint was heard, but the order of restitution was disdained by the pride and avarice of the offender. Exasperated by the delay, Proclus boldly arrested the general's horse as he passed through the forum, and with the spirit of a citizen, demanded the common benefit of the Roman laws. The honour of Belisarius was engaged; he summoned a council, claimed the obedience of his subordinate officer; and was provoked, by an insolent reply, to call hastily for the presence of his guards. Constantine, viewing their entrance as the signal of death, drew his sword, and rushed on the general, who nimbly eluded the stroke, and was protected by his friends; while the desperate assassin was disarmed, dragged into a neighbouring chamber, and executed, or rather murdered, by the guards; at the arbitrary command of Belisarius.55 In this hasty act of violence, the guilt of Constantine was no longer remembered; the despair and death of that valiant officer were severely imputed to the revenge of Antoninus; and each of his colleagues, conscious of the same rapine, was apprehensive of the same fate. The fear of a common enemy suspended the effects of their envy and discontent; but in the confidence of approaching victory, they instigated a powerful rival to oppose the conqueror of Rome and Africa. From the domestic service of the palace, and the administration of the private re-855. Proclus. He left behind a good race se of his people behind: Procopius. X 3
The decline and fall.

Chap. XLI.

Their distress by an indirect and consumable aid. Without expecting the consent of their sovereign, ten thousand Burgundians, his recent subjects, descended from the Alps, and joined the troops which Vitiges had sent to chastise the revolt of Milan. After an obstinate siege, the capital of Liguria was reduced by famine, but no capitulation could be obtained, except for the safe retreat of the Roman garrison. Datus, the orthodox bishop, who had seduced his countrymen to rebellion and rain, escaped to the luxury and honours of the Byzantine court; but the clergy, perhaps the Arian clergy, were slaughtered at the foot of their own altars by the defenders of the Catholic faith. Three hundred thousand males were reported to be slain; the female sex, and the more precious spoil, was resigned to the Burgundians; and the houses, or at least the walls, of Theobaldin or Milan, were levelled with the ground.

The Goths, in their last moments, were revenged by the destruction of a city, second only to Rome in size and opulence, in the splendour of its buildings, or the number of its inhabitants; and Belgarius sympathized alone in the fate of his deserted and devoted friends. Encouraged by this successful inroad, Theobald himself, in the ensuing spring, invaded the plains of Italy with an army of one hundred thousand barbarians. The king, and some chosen followers, were mounted on hack-saddles, and armed with lances; the infantry, without bows or spears, were supplied with a shield, a sword, and a double-edged battle-axe, which, in their hands, became a deadly and unerring weapon. Italy trembled at the march of the Franks; and both the Gothic prince and the Roman general, alike ignorant of their designs, solicited, with bows and arrows, the friendship of these dangerous allies. Till he had secured the passage of the Po on the bridge of Pavia, the grandson of Chilison disembarked his intentions, which he at length declared, by assaulting, almost at the same instant, the hostile camps of the Romans and Goths. Instead of uniting their arms, they fled with equal precipitation; and the fertile, though desolate provinces of Liguria and Juliania, were abandoned to a licentious host of barbarians, whose rage was not mitigated by any thoughts of settlement or conquest. Among the cities which they ruined, Genoa, not yet constructed of marble, is particularly enumerated; and the deaths of thousands, according to the regular practice of war, appear to have excited less horror than some idyllic sacerdose sacrifices of women and children, which were performed with impunity in the camp of the most Christian king. If they were not a melancholy truth, that the first and most cruel sufferings must be the
morality extended the rights of war to the practice of poisoning the wells, and secretly firing the granaries of a besieged city. While he pressed the blockade of Ravenna, he was surprised by the arrival of two ambassadors from Constantinople, with a treaty of peace, which Justinian had imprudently signed, without desiring to consult the author of his victory. By this disgraceful and precarious agreement, Italy and the Gothic treasure were divided, and the provinces beyond the Po were left with the regal title to the successor of Theodoric. The ambassadors were eager to accomplish their salutary commission; the captive Vitiges accepted, with transport, the unexpected offer of a crown; honour was lost for ever among the Goths, than the want and appetite of food; and the Roman chiefs, who murmured at the continuance of the war, professed implicit submission to the commands of the emperor. If Belisarius had possessed only the courage of a soldier, the laurel would have been snatched from his hand by simil and errious counsels; but in this decisive moment, he resolved, with the ungrumminess of a statesman, to sustain alone the danger and merit of generous disquisition. Each of his officers gave a written opinion, that the siege of Ravenna was impracticable and useless: the general then rejected the treaty of partition, and declared his own resolution of leading Vitiges in chains to the feet of Justinian. The Goths retired with doubt and dismay; this peremptory refusal deprived them of the only signature which they could trust, and filled their minds with a just apprehension, that a vigorous enemy had discovered the full extent of their decliable state. They compared the fame and fortune of Belisarius with the weakness of their ill-fated king; and the comparison suggested an extraordinary project, to which Vitiges, with apparent resignation, was compelled to acquiesce. Partition would ruin the strength, exiles would disgrace the honour, of the nation; but they offered their arms, their treasures, and the fortifications of Ravenna, if Belisarius would declare the authority of a master, accept the choice of the Gods, and assume, as he had deserved, the kingdom of Italy. If the false hopes of a diadem could have tempted the loyalty of a faithful subject, his prudence must have foreseen the inconstancy of the barbarians, and his rational ambition would prefer the safe and honourable station of a Roman general. Even the patience and seeming satisfaction with which he entertained a proposal of treason, might be susceptible of a malignant interpretation. But the lieutenant of Justinian was conscious of his
own rectitude; he entered into a dark and crooked path, as it might lead to the voluntary submission of the Goths; and his ductorous policy prevailed on them that he was disposed to comply with their wishes, without engaging an issue with the promise for the performance of a treaty which he secretly adhered. The day of the surrender of Ravenna was stipulated by the Gothic ambassadors; a fleet, laden with provisions, sailed as a welcome guest into the deepest recess of the harbour; the gates were opened to the fancied king of Italy; and Belisarius, without meeting an enemy, triumphantly marched through the streets of an impregnable city. The Romans were astonished by their success; the multitude of tall and robust barbarians were confounded by the image of their own patriots; and the masculine females, spitting in the faces of their sons and husbands, most bitterly reproached them for betraying their dominion and freedom to these tygrynes of the South, contemptible in their numbers, diminutive in their stature. Before the Goths could recover from the first surprise, and claim the accomplishment of their doubtless hopes, the victor established his power in Ravenna, beyond the danger of repetition and revile.

Vigiles, who perhaps had attempted to escape, was honourably guarded in his palace; 107 the flower of the Gothic youth was selected for the service of the emperor; the remainder of the people was dispersed to their peaceful habitations in the southern provinces; and a colony of Italians was invited to replenish the depopulated city. The submission of the capital was consistent in the towns and villages of Italy, which had not been subdued, or even visited, by the Romans; and the independent Goths, who remained in arms at Pavia and Verona, were ambitious only to become the subjects of Belisarius. But his inflexible loyalty rejected, except as the substitute of Justinian, their oaths of allegiance; and he was not offended by the reproach of their depredations, but rather chose to be slave than a king.

Boona and Eriga at Ba

After the second victory of Belisarius, sixty again whispered, Justinian listened, and the hero was recalled. "The remnant of the Gothic war was no longer worthy of his presence; a grateful sovereign was impatient to reward his services, and to consult his wisdom; and he alone was capable of defending the East against the immovable armies of Persia." Belisarius understood the masterpiece, accepted the encomium, embarked at Ravenna his spoils and trophies; and proved, by his ready obedience, that such an abject removal from the government of Italy was not less unjust than it might have been indiscreet. The emperor received with honourable courtesy, both Vigiles and his more noble consort; and as the king of the Goths conformed to the Athenian faith, he obtained, with a rich inheritance of lands in Asia, the rank of senator and patrician. 110 Every spectator admired, without perill, the strength and stature of the young barbarian; they adored the majesty of the tiranno, and promised to shed their blood in the service of their benefactor. Justinian deposited in the Byzantine palace the treasures of the Gothic monarchy. A fleeting senate was sometimes admitted to gaze on the magnificent spectacle; but it was viciously excluded from the public view; and the conqueror of Italy pronounced, without a murmur, perhaps without a sigh, the well-earned honours of a second triumph. His glory was indeed exalted above all external pomp; and the faint and hollow praises of the court were supplied, even in a servile age, by the respect and admiration of his country. Whenever he appeared in the streets and public places of Constantinople, Belisarius attracted and satisfied the eyes of the people. His lofty stature and majestic countenance fulfilled their expectations of an hero; the meanest of his felo-clerics were embellished by his gentle and gracious demeanour; and the martial train which attended his footsteps, left his person more accessible than in a day of battle. Seven thousand horsemen, matchless for beauty and valour, were maintained in the service, and at the private expense, of the general. 111 Their prowess was always conspicuous in single combats, or in the foremost ranks; and both parties confided, that in the siege of Ravenna, the guard of Belisarius had alone vanquished the barbarian host. Their numbers were continually augmented by the infatuation and most faithful of the enemy; and his fortunate captives, the Vandals, the Moors, and the Goths, augured the attachment of his disaffected followers. By the union of liberality and justice, he acquired the love of the soldiers, without alienating the affections of the people. The sick and wounded were relieved with medicines and money, and still more efficaciously, by the healing visits and smiles of their commander. The loss of a weapon or an horse was instantly repaired, and each deed of valour was rewarded by the rich and honourable gift of a bracelet or a collar, which were rendered more precious by the judgment of Belisarius. He was endeared to the husbandmen, by the peace and plenty which they enjoyed under the shadow of his standard. Instead of being injured, the country was enriched by the march of the Roman armies; and such was the rigid discipline of their camp, that not an apple was gathered from the tree, nor a path could be traced in the fields of corn.

107 The capture of Vung, and new in the collection of Eger Lenti of Kud. 108 Vigiles took some captives at Caronemud, and imprisoned in official recompensed for conducting rifles round his camp. His valour, in year 590, was conspicuous in the field at Caronemud, where he was engaged in a fierce battle against the Persians. His small sorty and few companions were surrounded at Ba- 110 Boona and Eriga at Ba.

111 The capture of Vung, and new in the collection of Eger Lenti of Kud.
Belliarius was chaste and sober. In the licence of a military life, none could boast that they had seen him intoxicated with wine; the most beautiful captives of Gothic or Vandal rage were offered to his embrace; but he turned aside from them ascharms, and the husband of Antonina was never suspected of violating the laws of conjugal fidelity. The spectator and historian of his exploits has observed, that amidst the perils of war, he was daring without rashness, prudent without fear, slow or rapid according to the exigencies of the moment; and in the deepest distress, he was animated by real or apparent hope, but that he was model and theme in the most prosperous fortunes. By these virtues, he exalted or excelled the ancient masters of the military art. Victory, by sea and land, attended his arms. He saluted Africa, Italy, and the adjacent islands, led away captives the successors of Genseric and Theodoric; filled Constantinople with the spoils of their palaces, and in the space of six years recovered half the provinces of the Western empire. In his fame and merit, in wealth and power, he was exalted, without a rival, the first of the Roman subjects; the voice of envy could only magnify his dangerous importance; and the emperor might applaud his own discerning spirit, which had discovered and raised the genius of Belliarius.

It was the custom of the Roman triumphs, that a slave should be placed behind the chariot, to remind the emperor of the instability of fortune, and the infirmities of human nature. Priscus, in his Aeneid, has assumed that servile and ungrateful office. The generous reader may cast away the libel, but the evidence of facts will adhere to his memory; and he will reluctantly confess, that the fame, and even the virtues of Belliarius, were polluted by the lust and cruelty of his wife; and that the hero deserved an appellation which may not drop from the pen of the decent historian. The mother of Antonina was a theatrical prostitute, and both her father and grandfather exercised at Thessalonica and Constantinople, the vile, though lucrative, profession of charlatans. In the various situations of their fortune, she became the companion, the enemy, the servant, and the favourite of the empress Theodora; these loose and ambitious females had been connected by similar pleasures; they were separated by the jealousy of men, and at length reconciled by the partnership of guilt. Before her marriage with Belliarius, Antonina had one husband and many lovers; Plutarch, the son of her former husband, was of an age to distinguish himself at the siege of Naples; and it was not till the autumn of her age and beauty that she indulged a scandalous attachment to a Tarantine youth. Theodudus had been educated in the Constantinian heresy; the African voyage was consecrated by the

baptism and auspicious name of the firstsoldier who embarked; and the prolepsis was adopted into the family of his spiritual parents, Belliarius and Antonina. Before they reached the shores of Africa, this holy kindred degenerated into sensual love; and as Antonina soon overleaped the bounds of modesty and caution, the Roman general was alone ignorant of his own dishonour. During their residence at Carthage, he surprised the two lovers in a subterraneous chamber, solitary, calm, and almost naked. Anger flashed from his eyes. "With the help of this young man," said the unblushing Antonina, "I was secreting our most precious effects from the knowledge of Justinian." The youth reserved his garments, and the pious husband consented to disbelief the evidence of his own senses. From this his kind, and perhaps voluntary, delusion, Belliarius was awakened at Syracuse, by the officious information of Macedonius; and that female attendant, after requiring an oath for her security, produced two chamberlains, who, like herself, had often beheld the adulteries of Antonina. An hasty flight into Asia saved Thedusa from the justice of an injured husband, who had signified to one of his guards the order of his death; but the tears of Antonina, and her ardent solicitations, secured the cyaneous hero of her innocence; and he stopped, against his faith and judgment, to abandon those imprudent friends who had presumed to accuse or doubt the chastity of his wife. The revenge of a guilty woman is implacable and bloody: the unfortunate Macedonius, with the two witnesses, were secretly arrested by the minister of her cruelty; their tongues were cut out, their bodies were hacked into small pieces, and their remains were cast into the sea of Syracuse. A rash though judicious saying of Constantine, "I would sooner have punished the adulteress than the boy," was deeply remembered by Antonina; and two years afterwards, when desirous of having a post-office officer against his general, she summons a wise and blessed his execution. The indignation of Plautius was not forgiven by his master; the execution was prepared by the order of her lover; and Theodora, deposed from the imperial throne, was guilty of a denunciation and abuse of the dignity of the consuls of Italy. In the absolute direction of his household, and in the important commissions of peace and war, the favourite youth most rapidly acquired a fortune of four hundred thousand pounds sterling; and after their return to Constantinople, the passion of Antonina, at last, continued ardent and unabated. But fear, devotion, and loathing perhaps, inspired Theodorus with more serious thoughts. He dreaded the loss of the capital, and the indirect ascendancy of the wife of Belliarius, escaped from her entreaties, and, retiring to Ephesus, shaved his head, and took refuge in the sanctuary of a monastic life.
disgrace of the new Ariadne could scarcely have been excused by the death of her husband. She wept, she tore her hair, she filled the palace with her cries; ‘she had lost the dearest of friends, a tender, a faithful, a laborious friend!’ But her warm entreaties, fortified by the prayers of Belisarius, were insufficient to draw the holy monk from the solitude of Ephesus. It was not till the general moved forward for the Persian war, that Theodosius could be tempted to return to Constantinople; and the short interval before the departure of Antonina herself was hourly devoted to love and pleasure. A philosopher may pity and forgive the infirmities of female nature, from which he receives no real injury; but contempt is the husband who faults and yet endures, his own infamy in that of his wife. Antonina pursued her son with implacable hatred; and the gallant Phocion was exposed to her secret persecutions in the camp beyond the Tigris. Enraged by his own wrong, and by the abominable sight of his blood, he cast away in his turn the sentiments of nature, and resolved to Belisarius the tyrannicide of a woman who had violated all the duties of a mother and a wife. From the surprise and indignation of the Roman general, his fervent credulity appears to have been sincere; he embraced the knees of the son of Antonina, adjured him to remember his obligations rather than his birth, and confirm at the altar their holy vows of revenge and mutual defense. The domination of Antonina was impaired by absence; and when she met her husband, on his return from the Persian campaign, Belisarius, in his first and transient exultation, confined her person, and threatened her life. Phocion was more resolved to punish, and less prompt to pardon; he flew to Ephesus; extorted from a trusty minister of his mother the full confession of her guilt; arrested Theodosius and his treasures in the church of St. John the Apostle, and concealed his captives, whose execution was only delayed, in a secure and sequestered fortress of Cilicia. Such a daring outrage against public justice could not pass with impunity; and the cause of Antonina was espoused by the emperor, whose favor she had deserved by the recent services of the disgrace of a prefect, and the exile and murder of a pope. At the end of the campaign, Belisarius was recalled; he complied, as usual, with the Imperial mandates. His mind was not prepared for rebellion; his obedience, however adverse to the dictates of honour, was consonant to the wishes of his heart; and when he embraced his wife, at the command, and perhaps in the presence, of the emperor, the tender husband was disposed to forgive or to be forgiven. The bounty of Theodosius reserved for her companion a more precious favour. ‘I have found,’ she said, ‘my dearest patriarca, a pearl of inestimable value; it has not yet been viewed by any mortal eye; but the sight and the possession of this jewel are destined for my friend.’ As soon as the curiosity and impatient of Antonina were kindled, the door of a bedchamber was thrown open, and she beheld her lover, whom the diligence of the eunuchs had discovered in his secret prison. Her silent wonder burst into passionate exclamations of gratitude and joy, and she named Theodosia her queen, her benefactress, and her savium. The monk of Ephesus was nourished in the palace with luxury and ambition; but instead of submitting, as he was promised, the command of the Roman armies, Theodosia expired in the first fatigue of an anxious interview. The grief of Belisarius on the death of Antonina could only be assuaged by the sufferings of her son. A youth of corpulent bulk, and a sickly countenance, was punished, without a trial, like a malefactor and a slave; yet such was the constancy of his mind, that Phocion sustained the tortures of the scaffold and the rack, without violating the faith which he had sworn to Belisarius. After this fruitless cruelty, the son of Antonina, while his sufferings were shared with the emperor, was buried in his subterraneous prison, which admitted not the distinction of night and day. He twice escaped to the most venerable sanctuaries of Constantinople, the churches of St. Sophia and of the Virgin; but his tyrants were insensible of religion as of pity; and the helpless youth, amidst the miseries of the clergy and people, was twice dragged from the altar to the dungeon. His third attempt was more successful. At the end of three years, the prophet Zechariah, or some mortal friend, indicated the means of an escape; he eluded the spies and guards of the emperor, reached the holy sepulchre of Jerusalem, entered the profession of a monk; and the abbot Phocion was employed, after the death of Justinian, to reconcile and regulate the churches of Egypt. The son of Antonina suffered all that an enemy can inflict; her patient husband imposed on himself the more exquisite misery of violating his promise and deserting his friend.

In the succeeding campaign, Belisarius was again sent against the Persians; he saved the East, but he offended Theodosius, and perhaps the emperor himself. The malady of Justinian had contributed the rumour of his death; and the Roman general, on the supposition of that probable event, spoke the free language of a citizen and a soldier. His colleague Buzas, who concurred in the same sentiments, lost his rank, his liberty, and his health, by the persecution of the emperor; but the disgrace of Belisarius was alleviated by the dignity of his own character, and the influence of his wife, who might wish to humble, but could not desire to ruin, the partner of her fortunes. Even his removal was coloured by the assurance, that the sinking state of Italy would be retrieved by the single presence of his conqueror. But no sooner had he returned, alone and desolate, than an hostile commission was sent to the East, to seize his treasures and criminate his actions; the guards and veterans who followed his private banner, were distributed among the chiefs of the army, and even the eunuchs presumed to cast lots for
the partition of his martial domestics. When he passed with a small and scorched remnant through the streets of Constantinople, his forlorn appearance excited the amazement and compassion of the people. Justinian and Theodora received him with cold ingratitude; the servile crowd, with insolence and contempt; and in the evening he retired with trembling steps to his deserted palace. An indignation, fierce as real, had confused Antonina to her apartment; and she walked disdainfully silent in the adjacent portion, while Belisarius threw himself on his bed, and expected, in an agony of grief and horror, the death which he had so often feared under the walls of Rome. Long after sunset a messenger was entrusted from the emperor; he opened, with anxious curiosity, the letter which contained the sentence of his fate. "You cannot be ignorant how much you have deserved my displeasure. I am not insensible of the services of Antonina. To her merit and intercession I have granted your life, and I permit you to retain a part of your treasure, which might be justly forfeited to the state. Let your gratitude, where it is due, be displayed, not in words, but in your future behaviour." I know not how to believe or to relate the transports with which the hero is said to have received this ignominious pardon. He fell prostrate before his wife; he kissed the foot of his savio; and he devoutly promised to live the grateful and submissive slave of Antonina. A sum of one hundred and twenty thousand pounds of silver was levied on the fortunes of Belisarius; and with the office of count, or chamberlain of the royal stables, he accepted the conduct of the Italian war. At his departure from Constantinople, his friends, and even the public, were persuaded, that as soon as he regained his freedom, he would renounce his dissimulation, and that his wife, Theodora, and perhaps the emperor himself, would be sacrificed to the just revenge of a virtuous rebel. Their hopes were deceived; and the unapproachable patience and loyalty of Belisarius appear either below or above the character of a man. 

CHAP. XLII.

State of the barbarous World.—Establishment of the Lombards on the Danube.—Tribes and Territories of the Scythians.—Origin, Empire, and Exploitation of the Turks.—The Flight of the Avars.—Charles I. or Nushirvan King of Persia.—His prosperous Reign and Wars with the Romans.—The Gothic or Libyan War.—The Ethiopians.

Our estimate of personal merit is relative to the common faculties of mankind. The aspiring efforts of genius, or virtue, either in active or speculative life, are measured, not so much by their real elevation, as by the height to which they exceed above the level of their age or country; and the same stature, which in a people of giants would pass unnoticed, must appear conspicuous in a race of pygmies. Leonidas, and his three hundred companions, devoted their lives at Thermopylae; but the mortality of the infant, the boy, and the man, had prepared, and almost ensured, this meretricious sacrifice; and each Spartan would approve, rather than admire, an act of duty, of which himself and eight thousand of his fellow-citizens were equally capable. The great Pompey might inscribe on his trophies, that he had defeated in battle two millions of enemies, and reduced fifteen hundred cities from the lake Maris to the Red Sea; but the fortune of Rome that before his engines; the nations were oppressed by their own fears, and the invincible legions which he commanded, had been formed by the habits of conquest and the discipline of ages. In this view, the character of Belisarius may be deservedly placed above the heroes of ancient republics. His imperfections flowed from the contagion of the times; his vices were his own, the base gift of nature or reflection; he raised himself without a master or a rival; and so inordinate were the arms committed to his hand, that his sole advantage was derived from the pride and presumption of his adversaries. Under his command, the subjects of Justinian often deserved to be called Romans: but the unwarlike appellations of Greeks was imposed as a term of reproach by the haughty Goths; who affected to blush, that they must dispute the kingdom of Italy with a nation of tragedians, pantomimes, and pirates. The climate of Asia has indeed been found less congenial than that of Europe, to military spirit: those populous countries were enervated by luxury, despotism, and superstition; and the monks were more expensive and more numerous than the soldiers of the East. The regular force of the empire had once amounted to six hundred and forty-five thousand men; it was reduced, in the time of Justinian, to one hundred and fifty thousand; and this number, large as it may seem, was thinly scattered over the sea and land in Spain and Italy, in Africa and Egypt, on the banks of the Danube, the coast of the Euxine, and the frontiers of Persia. The citizens was exhausted, yet the soldiery was unpaid; his poverty was mischievously spread by the privilege of rapine and indulgence; and the tardy payments were detained and intercepted by the fraud of those agents who murphy, without courage or danger, in the settlements of war. Public and private distresses recruited the armies of the state; but in the field, and still more in the presence of the enemy, their numbers were always defective. The want of national spirit
was supplied by the precarious faith and disorderly service of barbarian mercenaries. Even military honour, which has often survived the loss of virtue and freedom, was almost totally extinct. The generals, who were multiplied beyond the example of former times, laboured only to prevent the success, or to sully the reputation, of their colleagues; and they had been taught by experience, that if merit sometimes provoked the jealousy, error, or even guilt, would obtain the indulgence of a preceding emperor.

In such an age, the triumphs of Belisarius, and afterwards of Narses, shine with incomparable lustre; but they are encompassed with the darkest shades of disgrace and calamity. While the lieutenants of Justinian subdued the kingdoms of the Goths and Vandals, the emperor himself, timid, though ambitious, balanced the forces of the barbarians, harnessed their divisions by flattery and falsehood, and invited by his patience and liberality the repetition of injuries. The keys of Carthage, Rome, and Ravenna, were presented to their conqueror, while Antioch was destroyed by the Persians, and Justinian trembled for the safety of Constantinople.

Even the Gothic victories of Belisarius were prejudicial to the state, since they abolished the important barrier of the Upper Danube, which had been so faithfully guarded by Theodoric and his daughter. For the defence of Italy, the Goths evacuated Pannonia and Noricum, which they left in a peaceful and flourishing condition: the sovereignty was claimed by the emperor; and the Romanians still adhered to the boldness of the first invader. On the opposite banks of the Danube, the plains of Upper Hungary and the Transylvania hills were possessed, since the death of Attila, by the tribes of the Gepidae. The Gepidae, who respected the Gothic arms, and despised, not indeed the gold of the Romans, but the secret motive of their annual subsidies. The vacant fortifications of the river were instantly occupied by those barbarians; their standards were planted on the walls of Ser- 
mium and Belgrade; and the ironical tone of their apology aggravated this insult on the majesty of the empire. So extensive, O Caesar, are your dominions; so numerous are your cities; that you are continually seeking for nations to whom, either in peace or war, you may re-enrich these useless possessions. The Gepidae are your brave and faithful allies; and if they have anticipated your gifts, they have shown a just confidence in your bounty. Their presumption was excused by the mode of revenge which Justinian embraced. Instead of asserting the rights of a sovereign for the protection of his subjects, the emperor invaded a strange people to invade and possess the Roman provinces between the Danube and the Alps, and the ambition of the Gepidae was checked by the rising power and fame of the Lombards.

This corrupt appellation has been diffused in the thirteenth century by the merchants and bankers, the Italian posterity of these savage warriors: but the original name of Langobards is expressive only of the peculiar length and fashion of their beards. I am not disposed either to question or to justify their Scandinavian origin; or to pursue the migrations of the Lombards through unknown regions and marvellous adventures. About the time of Augustus and Trajan, a ray of historic light breaks on the darkness of their antiquities, and they are discovered, for the first time, between the Elbe and the Oder.

Fierce, beyond the example of the Germans, they delighted to propagate the tremendous belief, that their heads were formed like the heads of dogs, and that they drank the blood of their enemies whom they vanquished in battle. The smallness of their numbers was recruited by the adoption of their bravest slaves; and alone, amidst these powerful neighbours, they defended by arms their high-spirited independence. In the tempests of the North, which overwhelm so many names and nations, this little buck of the Lombards still floated on the surface; they gradually descended towards the South and the Danube; and at the end of four hundred years they again appear with the same strength and renown.

Their manners were less fierce and warlike. The assassination of a royal guest wasexecuted in the presence, and by the command, of the king's daughter, who had been provoked by some words of insult and disappointed by his diminutive stature; and a tribute, the price of blood, was imposed on the Lombards, by his bier, the king of the Herni. Adversity revived a sense of moderation and justice, and the insolence of conquest was chastised by the signal defeat and irreparable dispersion of the Herni, who were seated in the southern provinces of Poland.

The victories of the Lombards recommended them to the friendship of the emperors; and at the solicitation of Justinian, they passed the Danube, to reduce, according to their treaty, the cities of Noricum and the fortress of Pannonia. But the spirit of rapine soon tempted them beyond these ample limits; they wandered along the coast of the Haliartian as far as Dyrrhachium, and presumed, with familiar rudeness, to enter the towns and houses of their Roman allies, and to seize the captives who had escaped from their audacious bands.

These acts of hostility, the allies, as it might be pretended, of some loose adventurers, were disowned by the nation, and
have maintained, in every age, the possession of the same countries. Their numerous tribes, however distant or adverse, used one common language (it was harsh and irregular), and were known by the resemblance of their form, which deviated from the swarthy Tartar, and approached without attaining the lofty stature and fair complexion of the German. Four thousand six hundred villages were scattered over the provinces of Russia and Poland, and their huts were hastily built of rough timber, in a country deficient both in stone and iron. Erected, or rather concealed, in the depth of forests, on the banks of rivers, or the edge of marshes, we may not perhaps, without flattery, compare them to the architecture of the heaven; which they resembled in a double issue, to the land and water, for the escape of the savage inhabitant, an animal less cleanly, less diligent, and less social, than that marvellous quadruped. The fertility of the soil, rather than the labour of the natives, supplied the rustic plenty of the Slavonians. Their sheep and herd cattle were large and numerous, and the fields were covered with millet and pasture, bordered, in the place of bread, with potatoes and home nutritive food. The inconstant ravenous of their neighbours compelled them to bury this treasure in the earth; but on the appearance of a stranger, it was freely imparted by a people, whose unfavourable character is qualified by the epithets of chaste, patient, and hospitable. As their supreme God, they adored an invisible master of the thunder. The rivers and the nymphs obtained their subordinate honours, and the popular worship was expressed in vows and sacrifices. The Slavonians disinclined to obey a despot, a prince, or even a magistrate; but their experience was too narrow, their passions too headstrong, to compose a system of equal law or general defense. Some voluntary respect was yielded to age and valour; but each tribe or village existed as a separate republic, and all must be persuaded where none could be compelled. They fought on foot, almost naked, and, except an unwieldy shield, without any defensive armour: their weapons of offence were a bow, a quiver of small poisoned arrows, and a long rope, which they dexterously throw from a distance, and entangled their enemy in a running noose. In the field, the Slavonian infantry was dangerous by their speed, agility, and hardness; they swam, they dived, they remained under water, drawing their breath through a hollow cane; and a river or lake was often the scene of their unexpected ambuscade. But these were the achievements of spars or strangers; the military art was unknown to the Slavonians; their name was obscure, and their conquests were inglorious.
Their inroads. I have marked the faint and general outline of the Scyths and Bulgarians, without attempting to define their intermediate boundaries, which were not accurately known or respected by the barbarians themselves. Their importance was marked by their vicinage to the empire; and the level country of Moldavia and Walachia was occupied by the Antae, a Scythian tribe, which swelled the titles of Justinian with an epithet of conquest. Against the Antae he erected the fortifications of the Lower Danube; and laboured to secure the alliance of a people seated in the direct channel of northern inundation, an interval of two hundred miles between the mountains of Transylvania and the Euxine Sea. But the Antae wanted power and inclination to stem the fury of the torrent; and the light-armed Scyths, from an hundred tribes, pursued with almost equal speed the footsteps of the Bulgarian horse. The payment of one piece of gold for each soldier procured a safe and easy retreat through the country of the Gepidæ, who commanded the passage of the Upper Danube. The hopes or fears of the barbarians; their intestine union or discord; the accident of a frozen or shallow stream; the prospect of harvest or vintage; the prosperity or distress of the Romans; were the causes which produced the uniform repetition of annual visits; tedious in the narrative, and destructive in the effect. The same year, and possibly the same month, in which Ravenna surrendered, was marked by an invasion of the Hun or Bulgarians, so dreadful, that it almost affected the memory of their past inroads. They spread from the suburbs of Constantinople to the Iranian Gulf, destroyed thirty-two cities or castles, erased Pothica, which Athens had built and Philip had besieged, and ravaged the Danube, dragging at their horses' heels one hundred and twenty thousand of the subjects of Justinian. In a subsequent inroad they pierced the wall of the Thracean Chersonesus, extirpated the inhabitants and the inhabitants, boldly traversed the Hellespont, and returned to their companions, laden with the spoils of Asia. Another party, which seemed a milites in the eyes of the Romans, penetrated, without equivocation, from the straits of Themistius to the isthmus of Corinth; and the last ruin of Greece has appeared an object too minute for the attention of history. The works which the emperor had defended the protection, but at the expense of his subjects, seems only to disclose the weakness of uncompleted part; and the walls, which by flattery had been considered impenetrable, were either deserted by the garrison or scaled by the barbarians. Three thousand Scyths, who insolently divided themselves into two bands, discovered the weakness and misery of a triumphant reign. They passed the Danube and the Hebrus, vanquished the Roman generals who dared to oppose their progress, and plundered, with impunity, the cities of Hyrcania and Thrace, each of which had arms and numbers to overwhelm their contemptible assailants. Whatever praises the boldness of the Scyths may deserve, it is nullified by the wanton and deliberate cruelty which they are accused of exercising on their prisoners. Without distinction of rank, or age, or sex, the captives were impaled or flayed alive, or suspended between four posts, and beaten with clubs till they expired, or enclosed in some spacious building, and left to perish in the flames with the spoil and castle which might impede the march of those savage victors. Perhaps a more impartial narrative would reduce the number, and qualify the nature, of these horrid acts; and they might sometimes be excused by the cruel laws of retaliation. In the siege of Topira, whose obstinate defence had enraged the Scyths, they massacred fifteen thousand males; but they spared the women and children; the most valuable captives were always reserved for labour or ransom; the servitude was not rigorous, and the terms of their deliverance were speedy and moderate. But the subject, or the historian of Justinian, exalts his just indignation in the language of complaint and reproach; and Procopius has confidently affirmed, that in a reign of thirty-two years, each annual inroad of the barbarians consumed two hundred thousand of the inhabitants of the Roman empire. The entire population of Turkish Europe, which nearly corresponds with the provinces of Justinian, would perhaps be incapable of supporting six millions of persons, the result of this incredible estimate.

In the midst of these obscure calamities, Europe felt the shock of a revolution, which first revealed to the world the name and nation of the Turks. Like Romans, the founder of that mortal people was suckled by a she-wolf, who afterwards made him the father of a numerous progeny; and the representation of that animal in the banners of the Turks preserved the memory, or rather suggested the idea, of a stable, which was lavished, without any mutual intercourse, by the shepherds of Lutim and Atil of Scythia. At the equal distance of two thousand miles from the Caspian, the Iey, the Chinese, and Bengal seas, a ridge of mountains is conspicuous, the centre, and perhaps the summit, of Asia; which, in the language of different nations, has been styled Issus, and Caf, and Atil, and the Golden Mountains, and the Girdle of the Earth.

Note 14. Procopius, pp. 242, 243. 15. A notion of the Huns is communicated, by Procopius, with a sense;
The sides of the hills were productive of minerals; and the iron forge, for the purpose of war, were exercised by the Turks, the most degrading purpose of the slaves of the great khan of the Ossetes. But their servitude could only last till a leader, bold and eloquent, should arise, to persuade his countrymen that the same arms which they used for their masters, might become, in their own hands, the instruments of freedom and victory. They sallied from the mountain; a severe was the reward of his advice; and the annual ceremony, in which a piece of iron was heated in the fire, and the smith's hammer was successively handled by the prince and his nobles, recorded for ages the humble profession and national pride of the Turkish nation. Berizzeno, their first leader, signified their valour and his own in successful combats against the neighbouring tribes; but when he presumed to ask in marriage the daughter of the great khan, the insolent demand of a slave and a mechanic was contemptuously rejected. The disgrace was expiated by a more noble alliance with a princess of China; and the decisive battle which almost extirpated the nation of the Georgians, established in Tauric the new and more powerful empire of the Turks. They reigned over the North; but they confessed the vanity of conquest, by their faithful attachment to the mountains of their fathers. The royal encampment seldom lost site of Mount Almali, from whence the river Irish descends to water the rich pastures of the Celnicks, which nourish the largest sheep and oxen in the world. The soil is fruitful, and the climate mild and temperate: the happy region was ignorant of earthquake and pestilence; the emperor's throne was turned towards the east, and a golden wolf on the top of a spear seemed to guard the entrance of his tent. One of the successors of Berizzeno was tempted by the luxury and suggestion of China; but his design of building cities and temples was defeated by the simple wisdom of a baronian counsellor, "The Turks," he said, "are not equal in number to one hundredth part of the inhabitants of China. If we balance their power, and divide their armies, it is because we waver without any fixed habitations, in the exercises of war and hunting. Are we strong? we advance and conquer: are we feeble? we retire and are concealed. Should the Turks confine themselves within the walls of cities, the loss of a battle would be the destruction of their empire. The houses preach only patience, humility, and the renunciation of the world. Such, O king! is not the religion of heroes." They entertained, with less reluctance, the doctrines of Zoroaster: but the greatest part of the nation sequenced, without enquiry, in the opinions, or rather in the practice, of their ancestors. The honours of sacrifice were reserved for the supreme Deity; they acknowledged, in rude hymns, their obligations to the air, the fire, the water, and the earth; and their priests derived some profit from the act of divination. Their unwritten laws were rigorous and impartial; theft was punished by a tenfold restitution: sedition, treason, and murder, with death; and no chastisement could be inflicted too severe for the rare and inexcusable guilt of cowardice. As the subject nations marched under the standard of the Turks, their cavalry, both men and horses, were proudly computed by millions; one of their effective armies consisted of four hundred thousand soldiers, and in less than fifty years they were connected in peace and war with the Romans, the Persians, and the Chinese. In their northern limits, some vestige may be discovered of the form and situation of Kamtchaka, of a people of hunters and fishermen, whose sledge were drawn by dogs, and whose habitations were buried in the earth. The Turks were ignorant of astronomy: but the observation taken by some learned Chinese, with a gnomon of eight feet, fixes the royal camp in the latitude of forty-nine degrees, and marks their extreme progress within three, or at least ten degrees, of the polar circle. Among their southern conquests, the most splendid was that of the Nephtidites or White Huns, a polite and warlike people, who possessed the commercial cities of Bosphorus and Samoscan, who had vanquished the Persian monarch, and carried their victorious arms along the Isthmus, and perhaps to the mouth of the Isthmus. On the side of the west, the Turkish cavalry advanced to the lake Moeitis. They passed that lake on the ice. The khan who dwelt at the foot of Mount Almali, issued his commands for the siege of Bosphorus, a city, the voluntary subject of Rome, and whose princes had formerly been the friends of Athens. To the east, the Turks invaded China, as often as the vigour of the government was relaxed, and I am taught to rest in the history of the times, that they moved down their patient enemies like hemp or grass; and that the mandarins applauded the wisdom of an emperor who repulsed these barbarians with golden Laurels. This extent of savage empire compelled the Turkish monarchs to establish subordinate princes of his own blood, who seem forget their gratitude and allegiance. The conquerors were exasperated by luxury, which is always fatal except to industrious people; the policy of China solicited the vanquished nations to resume their independence; and the power of the Turks was limited.
to a period of two hundred years. The revival of their name and dominion in the southern countries of Asia, are the events of a later age; and the dynasties, which succeeded to their native realms, may sleep in oblivion; since their history bears no relation to the decline and fall of the Roman empire.25

In the rapid career of conquest, the Turks attacked and subdued the nation of the Ogurs or Varchonites on the banks of the river Til, which derived the epithet of black from its dark watery or gloomy forests.26 The Khan of the Ogurs was slain with three hundred thousand of his subjects, and their bodies were scattered over the space of four days' journey; their surviving countrymen acknowledged the strength and mercy of the Turks; and a small portion, about twenty thousand warriors, preferred exile to servitude. They followed the well-known road of the Volga, cherished the memory of the nations who conquered them with the Avars, and spread the terror of that false though famous appellation, which had not, however, saved its lawful proprietors from the yoke of the Turks.27

After a long and victorious march, the new Avars arrived at the foot of Mount Caucasus, in the country of the Alani and Circassians, where they first heard of the splendor and weakness of the Roman empire. They humbly requested their confederate, the prince of the Alani, to lead them to this source of riches; and their ambassadors, with the permission of the governor of Larica, was transported by the Black Sea to Constantinople. The whole city was poured forth to behold with curiosity and terror the aspect of a strange people: their long hair, which hung in tresses down their backs, was gracefully bound with ribbons, but the rest of their habit appeared to imitate the fashion of Theodosius the Great. When they were admitted to the audience of Justinian,28 the Christian, the first of the ambassadors, addressed the Roman emperor in these terms: "You see before you, O mighty prince, the representatives of the strongest and most populous of nations, the invincible, the irresistible Avars. We are willing to devote ourselves to your service: we are able to vanquish and destroy all the enemies who now disturb your repose. But we expect, as the price of our alliance, as the reward of our valour, precious gifts, annual subsidies, and fruitful possessions." At the time of this embassy, Justinian had reigned above thirty, he had lived above seventy-five years: his mind, as well as his body, was feeble and languid; and the conqueror of Africa and Italy, careless of the permanent interest of his people, aspired only to end his days in the bosom even of inglorious peace. In a studied oration, he imparted to the senate his resolution to dissemble the insult, and to purchase the friendship of the Avars; and the whole senate, like the ministers of China, applauded the incomparable wisdom and foresight of their sovereign. The instruments of luxury were immediately prepared to captivate the barbarians: sables, garments, soft and splendid brocades, and chains and collars incrusted with gold. The ambassadors, content with such liberal reception, departed from Constantinople, and Valentia, one of the emperor's guards, was sent with a similar character to their camp at the foot of Mount Caucasus. As their destruction or their success must be alike advantageous to the empire, he persuaded them to invade the enemies of Rome; and they were easily tempted, by gifts and promises, to gratify their ruling inclinations. These fugitives, who fled before the Turkish arms, passed the Tanais and Borysthenes, and boldly advanced into the heart of Poland and Germany, violating the laws of nations, and abusing the rights of victory. Before ten years had elapsed, their camps were seated on the Danube and the Elbe, many Bulgarian and Scythian names were obliterated from the earth, and the remainder of their tribes are found, as tributaries and vassals, under the standard of the Avars. The chagrin, the peculiar title of their king, still affected to cultivate the friendship of the emperor; and Justinian entertained some thoughts of fixing them in Pannonia, to balance the prevailing power of the Lombards. But the virtue or treachery of an Avar betrayed the secret enmity and malitious designs of their countrymen; and they loudly complained of the timid, though justinian policy, of detaining their ambassadors, and denying the arms which they had been allowed to purchase in the capital of the empire.29

Perhaps the apparent change in the dispositions of the emperor, which was received from the coadjutors of the Avars.30 The immense distance which eluded their arms, could not extinguish their resentment: the Turkish ambassadors pursued the footsteps of the vanquished to the Jork, the Volga, Mount Caucasus, the Euxine, and Constantinople, and at length appeared before the successor of Constantinople, in request that he would not expound the cause of rebels and fugitives. Even commerce had some share in this remarkable negotiation: and the Sogdians, who were now the tributaries of the Turks, embraced the fair occasion of opening, by the north of the Caspian, a new road for the importation of Chinese silk into the Roman empire. The flat beds of the Turan. The rights of the fugitive Ogurs is that natural appellation, to which they were entitled by birth and adoption.31

25 For the origin and revolution of the first Turkish nation, the Finns of rowe are connected from De Quincey (1835), De Quincey (1844), in History of the Turks (Berlin, 1844), p. 22, 112). The name of the Roman Illyricum from the north (Grecia (Athens, 1844), p. 22, 112). The name of the Roman Illyricum from the north (Grecia (Athens, 1844), p. 22, 112).

26 For the origin and revolution of the first Turkish nation, the Finns of rowe are connected from De Quincey (1835), De Quincey (1844), in History of the Turks (Berlin, 1844), p. 22, 112). The name of the Roman Illyricum from the north (Grecia (Athens, 1844), p. 22, 112).

27 For the origin and revolution of the first Turkish nation, the Finns of rowe are connected from De Quincey (1835), De Quincey (1844), in History of the Turks (Berlin, 1844), p. 22, 112). The name of the Roman Illyricum from the north (Grecia (Athens, 1844), p. 22, 112).

28 For the origin and revolution of the first Turkish nation, the Finns of rowe are connected from De Quincey (1835), De Quincey (1844), in History of the Turks (Berlin, 1844), p. 22, 112). The name of the Roman Illyricum from the north (Grecia (Athens, 1844), p. 22, 112).

29 For the origin and revolution of the first Turkish nation, the Finns of rowe are connected from De Quincey (1835), De Quincey (1844), in History of the Turks (Berlin, 1844), p. 22, 112). The name of the Roman Illyricum from the north (Grecia (Athens, 1844), p. 22, 112).

30 For the origin and revolution of the first Turkish nation, the Finns of rowe are connected from De Quincey (1835), De Quincey (1844), in History of the Turks (Berlin, 1844), p. 22, 112). The name of the Roman Illyricum from the north (Grecia (Athens, 1844), p. 22, 112).
the silk hangings of the second tent were embroidered in various figures; and the royal seat, the cups, and the vases, were of gold. A third pavilion was supported by columns of gilt wood; a bed of pure and nappy gold was inset for jewels of the same metal; and before the entrance of the tent, dishes, basins, and statues of solid silver, and admirable art, were ostentatiously piled in wagons, the monuments of valour rather than of industry. When Djasul led his armies against the frontiers of Persia, his Roman allies followed many days the march of the Turkish camp, nor were they dismissed till they had enjoyed their precedence over the envoy of the great king, whose loud and interminable clamours interrupted the silence of the royal banquet. The power and ambition of Chosroes cemented the union of the Turks and Romans, who touched his dominions on either side; but those distant nations, regardless of each other, consulted the dictates of interest, without recollecting the obligations of covenants and truces. While the successors of Djasul celebrated his father's obsequies, he was saluted by the ambassadors of the emperor Tiberius, who proposed an interview with Persia, and sustained with firmness, the anger, and perhaps the just reproaches of that haughty barbarian. "You see my ten fingers," said the great khan, and he applied them to his mouth. "You Romans speak with so many tongues, but they are tongues of deceit and perjury. To me you hold one language, to my subjects another; and the nations are successively deluded by your perfidious eloquence. You precipitate your allies into war and danger, you enjoy their labours, and you neglect your benefactors. Hasten your return; inform your master that a Turk is incapable of uttering or forgining falsehood, and that he shall speedily meet the punishment which he deserves. While he solicits my friendship with flattering and hollow words, he is sunk to a confederate of my fugitive Varchomites. If I should dismiss my troops against those contemptible slaves, they will tremble at the sound of our whips; they will be trebled, like a nest of ants, under the feet of my innumerable cavalry. I am not ignorant of the road which they have followed to invade your empire; nor can I be deceived by the vain pretence, that Mount Caemus is the impregnable barrier of the Romans. I know the course of the Niester, the Danube, and the Hebrus; the most warlike nations have yielded to the arms of the Turks; and from the rising to the setting sun, the earth is my inheritance." Notwithstanding this menace, a sense of mutual advantage soon removed the alliance of the Turks and Romans: but the pride of the great khan survived his resentment; and when he was made an important conquest to his friend the emperor Maurice, he styled himself the master of the seven races, and the lord of the seven climates of the world.\footnote{\textit{Above that hill the Scythians, and some, among them, of the Lebed.\textit{Above the Volga and Ochaven.\textit{The founder of these Turanian and Roman ambassadors, or rather the history of barbarous nations, is collected from the "History of the Turks, by H. de Beza, in his "History of the Turks, 1532-1613, in which we have digested the word of God and tradition.}}
Disputes have often arisen between the sovereigns of Asia, for the title of king of the world; while the contest has proved that it could not belong to either of the competitors. The kingdom of the Turks was bounded by the Oxus or Ganges; and Tunis was separated from that great river by the rival monarchy of Iran, or Persia, which in a small compass contained perhaps a larger number of people and population. The Mamluks, who alternately invaded and ravaged the Turks and the Romans, were still ruled by the house of Saesoan, which occupied the three thousand years before the accession of Justinian. His contemporary, Calidus, or Kobad, had been successful in war against the emperor Anastasius; but the reign of that prince was disturbed by civil and religious troubles. A prisoner in the hands of his subjects; an exile among the enemies of Persia; he recovered his liberty by prostituting the honour of his wife, and regained his kingdom with the dangerous and mercenary aid of the barbarians, who had slain his father. His nobles were suspicious that Kobad never forgave the author of his expulsion, or even those of his restoration. The people was defaced and inflamed by the fanaticism of Mazdak, who asserted the community of women, and the equality of mankind, whilst he appropriated the richest lands and most beautiful females to the use of his sectaries. The view of these disorders, which had been fomented by his laws and example, omitted the declining age of the Persian monarch; and his fears were increased by the consciousness of his design to reverse the natural and customary order of succession, in favour of his third and most favoured son, so famous under the names of Chosroes and Nushirvan. To render the youth more illustrious in the eyes of the nation, Kobad was desirous that he should be adopted by the emperor Justinian; the hope of peace inclined the Byzantine court to accept this singular proposal; and Chosroes might have acquired a specious claim to the inheritance of his Roman parent. But the future mischief was directed by the advice of a morose Psennus; a difficulty was started, whether the adoption should be performed as a civil or military rite; the treaty was abruptly dissolved; and the sense of this indignity sunk deep into the mind of Chosroes, who had already advanced to the Tigris on his road to Constantinople. His father did not long survive the disappointment of his wishes; the testament of their deceased sovereign was read in the assembly of the nobles; and a powerful fiction, prepared for the event, and regardless of the priority of age, exalted Chosroes to the throne of Persia. He filled that throne during a prosperous period of forty-eight years; and the justice of Nushirvan is celebrated as the theme of immortal praise by the nations of the East.

But the justice of kings is understood by themselves, and even by their subjects, with an ample indulgence for the gratification of passion and interest. The virtue of Chosroes was that of a conqueror, who, in the measures of peace and war, is excited by ambition, and restrained by prudence; who confounds the greatness with the happiness of a nation, and calmly devotes the lives of thousands to the fame, or even the amusement, of a single man. In his domestic administration, the just Nushirvan would merit in our feelings the appellation of a tyrant. His two elder brothers had been deprived of their fair expectations of the diadem: their future life, between the gynacum and the condition of subjects, was anxious to themselves and formidable to their master: fear as well as revenge might tempt them to rebel; the slightest evidence of a conspiracy satisfied the author of their wrongs; and the repose of Chosroes was secured by the death of these unhappy princes, with their families and adherents. One guillotine youth was saved and dismissed by the compassion of a veteran general; and this act of humanity, which was revealed by his son, overbalanced the merit of reducing twelve nations to the obedience of Persia. The zeal and prudence of Mebedes had fixed the diadem on the head of Chosroes himself; but he delayed to attend the royal summons, till he had performed the duties of a military review; he was instantly commanded to repair to the Irun tripol, which stood before the gate of the palace, where it was death to relieve or approach the victim; and Mebedes languished several days before his sentence was pronounced, by the intolerable pride and calm ingratitude of the son of Kobad. But the people, more especially in the East, is disposed to forgive; and even to applaud, the cruelty which strikes at the loftiest heads; at the slaves of ambition, whose voluntary choice has exposed them to live in the smiles, and perish by the frown, of a capricious monarch. In the execution of the laws which his son had no temptation to violate; in the punishment of crimes which attacked his own dignity, as well as the happiness of individuals; Nushirvan, or Chosroes, deserved the appellation of just. His government was firm, rigorous, and impartial. It was the first blossom of his reign: to abolish the dangerous theory of common or equal possessions, and the landless and woman which the sectaries of Mazdak had usurped, were restored to their lawful owners; and the temptations and disadvantages of the feuds and impostures confirmed the domestic rights of society. Instead of listening with blind confidence, the citizens were called to the bar of justice. Without any need of instruction or education was practical in Persia, though few.

28 See D'Herbelot [Biblio. Orient., p. 368, 369]; Fehde da Bello- 
Arch., p. 70, 71]; Buckingham [Civ. Arch., p. 419, 420]; Tremenheere [Hist. of Persia, p. 389]; D'Herbelot [Biblio. Orient., 
28. The Росс of the new law for the community of women was 
measured by the degree of consent given to the property in the 
proprietor, and the property of Nushirvan meant for his mother, and the indulgent monarch 
adopted the discreetness, to which his blind eye had accustomed him. This is a tale told by a Morose and valued with entire 
29. Mebedes, or Trehamy, was the eldest of the three brothers; 
29. See D'Herbelot [Biblio. Orient., p. 370].

28. The Ross of the new law for the community of women was 
measured by the degree of consent given to the property in the 
proprietor, and the property of Nushirvan meant for his mother, and the indulgent monarch 
adopted the discreetness, to which his blind eye had accustomed him. This is a tale told by a Morose and valued with entire 
29. Mebedes, or Trehamy, was the eldest of the three brothers; 
29. See D'Herbelot [Biblio. Orient., p. 370].
dexterity like their own, the abstruse and profound questions which amused the leisure of the schools of Athens? Could they hope that the precepts of philosophy should direct the life, and control the passions, of a despot, whose infancy had been taught to consider his absolute and fluctuating will as the only rule of moral obligation?  68 The studies of Chosroes were conceptions and superficial; but his example weakened the curiosity of an ingenious people, and the light of science was diffused over the domains of Persia.  69 At Gondi Sapor, in the neighbourhood of the royal city of Susa, an academy of physics was founded, which insensibly became a liberal school of poetry, philosophy, and rhetoric.  70 The annals of the monarch  71 were composed; and while recent and authentic history might afford some useful lessons both to the prince and people, the darkness of the first ages was embellished by the giants, the dragons, and the fabulous heroes of Oriental romance.  72 Every learned or confident stranger was enriched by the bounty, and flattered by the conversation, of the monarch; he nobly rewarded a Greek physician  73 by the deliverance of three thousand captives; and the sophists, who contended for his favour, were exasperated by the wealth and insolence of Urania, their more successful rival, Nushirvan believed, or at least respected, the religion of the Magi; and some traces of persecution may be discovered in his reign.  74 Yet he allowed himself freely to compare the tenets of the various sects; and the theological disputes, in which he frequently presided, diminished the authority of the priest, and enlightened the minds of the people. At his command, the most celebrated writers of Greece and India were translated into the Persian language; a smooth and elegant idiom, recommended by Mahomet to the use of paradise; though it is branded with the epithets of savage and unmusical, by the ignorance and presumption of Agathias.  75 Yet the Greek historian might reasonably wonder, that it should be found possible to execute an entire version of Plato and Aristotle in a foreign dialect, which had not been framed to express the spirit of freedom and the sublimity of philosophical disquisition. And, if the reason of the Sogdian might be equally dark, or equally intelligible in every tongue, the dramatic art and verbal argumentation of the disciple of Socrates,  76 appear to be indissolubly mingled with the grace and perfection of his Attic style. In the search of na-
universal knowledge, Nushirvan was informed, that the moral and political fables of Pulpay, an ancient Brahman, were preserved with jealous reverence among the treasures of the kings of India. The physician Peroes was secretly despatched to the banks of the Ganges, with instructions to procure, at any price, the communication of this valuable work. His dexterity obtained a transcript, his learned diligence accomplished the translation; and the fables of Pulpay were read and admired in the assembly of Nushirvan and his nobles. The Indian original, and the Persian copy, have long since disappeared; but this venerable monument has been saved by the curiosity of the Arabian caliphs, revived in the modern Persic, the Turkish, the Syriac, the Hebrew, and the Greek idiom, and transfused through successive versions into the modern languages of Europe. In their present form, the peculiar characters, the manners and religion of the Hindoos, are completely obliterated; and the intrinsic merit of the fables of Pulpay is far inferior to the exquisite elegance of Firdusi, and the native graces of La Fontaine. Effusive moral and political sentences are illustrated in a series of apophthegms; but the composition is intricate, the narrative prolix, and the precept obvious and baron. Yet the Brahman may assume the merit of inventing a pleasing fiction, which abounds the nakedness of truth, and alludes, perhaps, to a royal ear, the hardness of instruction. With a similar design, to admonish kings that they are strong only in the strength of their subjects, the same Indians invented the game of chess, which was likewise introduced into Persia under the reign of Nushirvan.

The son of Kohoud found his kingdom involved in a war with the successor of Constantine; and the anxiety of his domestic situation inclined him to grant the suspension of arms, which Justinian was impatient to purchase. Chosroes saw the Roman ambassadors at his feet. He accepted eleven thousand pounds of gold, as the price of an endless or infinite peace; some mutual exchanges were regulated; the Persian assumed the guard of the gates of Ctesiphon, and the demolition of Dura was suspended, on condition that it should never be made the residence of the general of the East. This interval of repose had been solicited, and was diligently improved by the ambition of the emperor; his African conquests were the first fruits of the Persian treaty; and the avarice of Chosroes was soothed by a large portion of the spoils of Carthage, which his ambassadors required in a tune of plenipotency, and under the colour of friendship. But the trophies of Belisarius disturbed the slumbers of the Great King; and he heard with astonishment, envy, and fear, that Sicily, Italy, and Rome itself, had been reduced, in three rapid campaigns, to the obedience of Justinian. Unpractised in the art of violating treaties, he secretly excited his bold and subtle vassal Almobarat. That prince of the Saracens, who resided at Hira, had not been included in the general peace, and still waged an unseemly war against his rival. Achihas, the chief of the tribe of Gassan, and confederate of the empire. The subject of their dispute was an extensive sheep-walk, in the desert to the south of Palmyra. An immemorial tribute for the licence of pasture, appeared to arrest the rights of Almobarat, while the Gassamite appealed to the Latin name of strina, a paved road, as an unquestionable evidence of the sovereignty and labours of the Romans. The two monarchs supported the cause of their respective vessels; and the Persian Arab, without expecting the event of a slow and doubtful arbitration, enriched his flying camp with the spoil and captives of Syria. Instead of repelling the arms, Justinian attempted to enforce the fidelity of Almobarat; who, as the called from the extremities of the earth the nation of Athaiz and Scylitia to invade the dominions of his rival. But the aid of such allies was distant and precarious, and the discovery of this hostile correspondence justified the complaints of the Gota and Armuzians, who implored, almost at the same time, the protection of Chosroes. The descendents of Aranes, who were still numerous in Armenia, had been provoked to assert the last relics of national freedom and hereditary rank; and the ambassadors of Vitiges had secretly traversed the empire to expose the instant, and almost inevitable, danger of the kingdom of Italy. Their representations were uniform, weighty, and effectual. "We stand before your throne, the advocates of your interest as well as of our own. The auditions and faithless Justinian aspires to be the sole master of the world. Since the endless peace, which betrayed the common freedom of mankind, that prince, your ally in words, your enemy in actions, has alike insulted his friends and foes, and has filled the earth with blood and confusion. Has he not violated the privileges of Armenia, the independence of Colchis, and the wild liberty of the Tzatzian mountains? Has he not restored, with equal avidity, the city of Bosphorus on the frozen Moscot, and the vale of palm-trees on the shores of the Red Sea? The Missa, the Vassals, the Gota, the Vandals, the Gotths, have been successively subdued and pressed, and each nation has calmly remained the spectator of their neighbour's ruin. Eternities, O king! the favourable moment; the East is left without defence, while the armies were victors in the last year, and the consuls of Justinian (A.D. 609), importune Janvier 6 and April 1. Atharina, i. p. 159. Marcellus, ed., in his work on the history of Mauss and Persia. 30 Forrester, Persia, i. p. 92. 31 Almobarat, king of Hira, was restored to Kohoud, and supported by Justinian. Wawer, history of the Sasanian kings, p. 150. Mader, an apostle of which became heretical, and was extinguished with a year, and the recantations of Macarius. For Macedonia, see Tyrus (Proclus), passim. Ibn al-Jahsh., ed., p. 125, 789. 32 Sasanian and Tzatzian, and Moors, p. 190. 33 Nusairan, and in the same issues, a paved road of two days' journey from damascus to Palmyra. See in later issues of the Mandate in the Lebanon. 34 Byzantine and Arab, see notes.
increasing grandeur of the buildings and the people already erased the memory of this recent disaster. On one side, the city was defended by the mountain, on the other by the river Orontes; but the most accessible part was commanded by a superior eminence; the proper remedies were rejected, from the desperate fear of discovering its weakness to the enemy; and Germanus, the emperor’s nephew, refused to trust his person and dignity within the walls of a besieged city. The people of Antioch had inherited the vain and satirical genius of their ancestors; they were elated by a sudden reinforcement of a thousand soldiers; they could not bear to see any signs of an easy capitulation; and their insatiable clamours insulted from the ramparts the majesty of the Great King. Under his eye, the Persian myriads mounted with scaling-ladders to the assault; the Roman mercenaries fled through the opposite gate of Daphne; and the generous assistance of the youth of Antioch served only to aggravate the miseries of their country. As Chosroes, attempted by the ambassadors of Justinian, was descending from the mountain, he affected, in a plaintive voice, to deplore the obstinacy and ruin of that unhappy people; but the slaughter still went on with relentless fury; and the city, at the command of a barbarian, was delivered to the flames. The cathedral of Antioch was indeed preserved by the avarice; not the piety, of the conqueror; a more honourable exemption was granted to the church of St. Julian, and the quarter of the town where the ambassadors resided; some distant streets were saved by the shifting of the wind, and the walls still subsisted to protect, and soon to betray, their new inhabitants. Fausticius had defaced the ornaments of Daphne, but Chosroes breathed a purer air amidst her groves and fountains; and some idolaters in his train might sacrifice with impunity to the nymphs of that elegant retreat. Eighteen miles below Antioch, the river Orontes falls into the Mediterranean. The haughty Persian visited the term of his conquest; and, after bating alone in the sea, he offered a solemn sacrifice of thanksgiving to the sun, or rather to the Creator of the sun, whom the Magi adored. If this act of superfluous ostentation offended the prejudices of the Syrians, they were placated by the courteous and even urgent attention with which he assisted at the games of the circus; and as Chosroes had heard that the blue faction was espoused by the emperor, his peremptory command secured the victory of the green charioteer. From the discipline of his camp the people derived much solid consolation; and they intercepted in vain for the life of a soldier who had too faithfully copied the rupture of the just Nushirwan. At length, fatigued, though unsatisfied, with the spoil of Syria, he slowly moved to the Euphrates, formed a temporary bridge in the neighbourhood of Bartholomew, and defined the space of three days for the entire passage of his unprepared army. These incidents are drawn from the Chronicles; yet this work, like Iustinius himself, in which should blend, when he-learned from his countrymen, the poetry of the ancients, the prose of the uncultivated, and the language of the rude bests, Tertullian's style is surpassably elegant.
merous host. After his return, he founded, at the distance of one day's journey from the palace of Ctesiphon, a new city, which perpetuated the joint names of Chosroes and of Antioch. The Syrian captives recognised the form and situation of their native abodes; baths and a stately circus were constructed for their use; and a colony of musicians and charioteers revived in Assyria the pleasures of a Greek capital. By the munificence of the royal founder, a liberal allowance was assigned to these fortunate exiles; and they enjoyed the singular privilege of bestowing freedom on the slaves whom they acknowledged as their kinsmen. Palestine, and the holy wealth of Jerusalem, were the next objects that attracted the ambition, or rather the avarice, of Chosroes. Constantinople, and the palace of the Caesars, no longer appeared impregnable or remote; and his aspiring fancy already covered Asia Minor with the troops, and the Black Sea with the navies, of Persia.

The Venetians might have been surprised, if the emperors of Italy had not been seasonably recalled to the defence of the East. 63 While Chosroes pursued his ambitious designs on the coast of the Euxine, Belisarius, at the head of an army without pay or discipline, encamped beyond the Euphrates, within six miles of Nisibis. He met him by a skilful operation, to draw the Persians from their impregnable citadel, and to improve his advantage in the field, either to intercept their retreat, or perhaps to enter the gates with the flying barbarians. He advanced one day's journey on the territories of Persia, reduced the fortress of Seesarpane, and sent the governor, with eight hundred chosen horsemen, to serve the emperor in his Italian wars. He detached Arduin and his Arabs, supported by twelve hundred Romans, to pass the Tigris, and to ravage the harvests of Assyria, a fruitful province, long exempt from the calamities of war. But the plans of Belisarius were disappointed by the untractable spirit of Arduin, who neither returned to the camp, nor sent any intelligence of his motions. The Roman general was fixed in anxious expectation to the same spot; the time of action elapsed, the ardent sun of Mesopotamia inflamed with fevers the blood of his European soldiers; and the stationary troops and officers of Syria affected to tremble for the safety of their defenceless cities. Yet this diversion had already succeeded in forcing Chosroes to return with loss and precipitation; and if the skill of Belisarius had been seconded by discipline and valour, his success might have satisfied the sanguine wishes of the public, who required at his hands the conquest of Ctesiphon, and the deliverance of the captives of Antioch.

At the end of the campaign, he was recalled to Constantinople by an ingratitude court, but the danger of the ensuing spring restored his confidence and command; and the hero, almost alone, was dispatched, with the speed of post-horses, to repel, by his name and presence, the invasion of Syria. He found the Roman generals, among whom was a nephew of Justinian, imprisoned by their fears in the fortifications of Hierapolis. But instead of listening to their timid counsels, Belisarius commanded them to follow him to Europe, where he had resolved to collect his forces, and to execute whatever God should inspire him to achieve against the enemy. His first attention was the capture of the Euphrates, restrained Chosroes from advancing towards Palestine; and he received with art and dignity, the ambassadors, or rather spies, of the Persian monarch. The plain between Hierapolis and the river was covered with the squadrons of cavalry, six thousand hunters, tall and robust, who pursued their game without the apprehension of an enemy. On the opposite bank the ambassadors described a thousand Armenian horse, who appeared to guard the passage of the Euphrates. The vast crowd of Belisarius was of the common herd; the simple equipage of a warrior who disdained the luxury of the East. Around his tent, the nations who marched under his standard were arranged with skilful confusion. The Thracians and Illyrians were posted in the front, the Herul and Goths in the centre; the prospect was closed by the Moors and Vandals, and their loose array seemed to multiply their numbers. Their dress was light and active; one soldier carried a whip, another a sword, a third a bow, a fourth, perhaps, a battle-axe; and the whole picture exhibited the intrepidity of the troops and the vigilance of the general. Chosroes was deluded by the address, and seduced by the genius, of the lieutenant of Justinian. Conscious of the merit, and ignorant of the force, of his antagonist, he dreaded a decisive battle in a distant country, from whence not a Persian might return to relate the melancholy tale. The Great King hastened to repass the Euphrates, and Belisarius pressed his retreat, by affecting to oppose a measure so salutary to the empire, and which could scarcely have been prevented by an army of an hundred thousand men. Every might suggest to ignorance and pride, that the public enemy had been suffered to escape; but the African and Gothic triumphs are less glorious than this safe and bloodless victory, in which neither fortune, nor the valor of the soldiers, can subtract any part of the general's renown. The second removal of Belisarius, from the Persian to the Italian war, revealed the extent of his personal merit, which had corrected or supplied the defects of discipline and courage. Fifteen generals, without concert or skill, led through the mountains of Armenia an army of thirty thousand Romans, insignificant in their signals, their ranks, and their ensigns. Four thousand Persians, intrenched in the camp of Dubis, vanquished, almost without a combat, this disorderly multitude; their useless arms were scattered along the road, and their horses sunk under the fatigue of their rapid flight. But the Arabs of the Roman party prevailed over their brethren; the Armenians returned to their alle-
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

The extreme length of the Euxine or Black Sea, 63 from Constantinople to the mouth of the Phasis, may be computed as a voyage of nine days, and a measure of seven hundred miles. From the Iberian Caucasus, the most lofty and craggy mountains of Asia, that river descends with such oblique venustance, that in a short space it is traversed by one hundred and twenty bridges. Nor does the stream become placid and navigable, till it reaches the town of Sarapana, five days' journey from the Cyrus, which flows from the same hills, but in a contrary direction, to the Caspian lake. The proximity of these rivers has suggested the practice, or at least the idea, of wafting the precious merchandise of India down the Oxus, over the Caspian, up the Cyrus, and with the current of the Phasis into the Euxine and Mediterranean seas. As it successively collects the streams of the plain of Colchis, the Phasis surges with diminished speed, though accumulated weight. At the mouth it is sixty fathom deep, and half a league broad, but a small woody island is interposed in the midst of the channel; the water, so soon as it has deposited an earthy or metallic sediment, floats on the surface of the waves, and is no longer susceptible of corruption. In a course of one hundred miles, fifty of which are navigable for large vessels, the Phasis divides the celebrated region of Colchis, or Mingrelia, 64 which, on three sides, is fortified by the Iberian and Armenian mountains, and whose maritime coast extends about two hundred miles, from the neighbourhood of Trebizond to Dicentrasia, and the confines of Circassia. Both the soil and climate are relaxed by excessive moisture: twenty-eight rivers, besides the Phasis and his independent streams, convey their waters to the sea; and the hollowness of the ground appears to indicate the subterraneous channels between the Euxine and the Caspian. In the fields where wheat or barley is sown, the earth is too soft to sustain the action of the plough; but the grass, a small grain, not unlike the millet of

---

62 Swift, "Gulliver's Travels." 63 M. F. de Rovas, Ptolemaici, lib. vii. c. 26. 64 The Phasis, or one of the principal rivers of the Euxine, was discovered, in 1812, by Trench and Green, and named by a Frenchman, M. de Rovas, the river of the Phenicians. 65 The Phasis is one of the principal rivers of the Euxine. 66 The last two names mentioned here from the same source. 67...
capitals. In the present state of Mingrelia, a village is an assemblage of huts within a wooden fence; the fortresses are rising in the depth of forests; the princely town of Cyra, or Cotaia, consists of two hundred houses, and a stone edifice appertains only to the magnificence of kings. Twelve ships from Constantinople, and about sixty barks, laden with the fruits of industry, annually cast anchor on the coast; and the list of Colschen experts is much increased, since the natives had only slaves and hides to offer in exchange; for the corn and salt which they purchased from the subjects of Justinian. Not a vestige can be found of the art, the knowledge, or the navigation, of the ancient Colschen: few Greeks desired or dared to pursue the footsteps of the Argonauts; and even the marks of an Egyptian colony are lost on a nearer approach. The site of circumcision is practised only by the Mahometans of the East; and the cursed hair and weary completion of Africa no longer disfigure the most perfect of the human race. It is in the adjacent climates of Syria, Armenia, and Cilschia, that nature has placed, at least in some degree, the model of beauty, in the shape of the limbs, the colour of the skin, the symmetry of the features, and the expression of the countenance. According to the destination of the two sexes, the men seem formed for action, the women for love; and the perpetual supply of females from Mount Caucasus has purified the blood, and improved the breed, of the southern nations of Asia. The proper districts of Mingrelia, a portion only of the ancient Colchis, has long sustained an exportation of twelve thousand slaves. The number of prisoners or criminals would be inadequate to the annual demand; but the common people are in a state of servitude to their lords; the exercise of fraud or rapine is unpunished in a lawless community; and the market is continually replenished by the abuse of civil and patriarchal authority. Such a trade, which reduces the human species to the level of cattle, may tend to encourage marriage and population, since the multitude of children enriches their aulic and inhuman parent. But this source of inhuman wealth must inevitably poison the national manners, obliterate the sense of honour and virtue, and almost extinguish the instincts of nature: the Christians of Georgia and Mingrelia are the most dissolute of mankind; and their children, who, in a tender age, are sold into foreign slavery, have already learnt to imitate the rapine of the father and the prostitution of the mother. Yet, amidst the rudest ignorance, the untutored natives discover a singular dexterity both of mind and hand; and although the want of union and discipline opposes them to their more powerful neighbours, a bold and intrepid spirit has animated the Colchians of every age. In the host of Xerxes, they served on foot; and their arms were a dagger or a javelin, a wooden casque, and a buckler of raw hides. But in their own country the use of cavalry has more generally prevailed: the meanest of the peasants disdain to walk; the martial nobles are possessed, perhaps, of two hundred horses; and above five thousand are numbered in the train of the prince of Mingrelia. The Colchian government has been always a pure and hereditary kingdom; and the authority of the sovereign is only restrained by the turbulence of his subjects. Whenever they were obdurate, he could lead a numerous army into the field; but some faith is requisite to believe, that the single tribe of the Suaniam was composed of two hundred thousand soldiers, or that the population of Mingrelia now amounts to four millions of inhabitants.

It was the boast of the Colchians, that their ancestors had checked the victories of Scamander; and the defeat of the Egyptian is less incredible than his successful progress as far as the foot of Mount Caucasus. They sunk, without any memorable effort, under the arms of Cyrus; followed in distant ages the standard of the Great King, and presented him every fifth year with one hundred boys and as many virgin, the fairest produce of the land. Yet they accepted this gift like the gold and silver of India, the frankincense of the Arabs, or the negroes and ivory of Ethiopia: the Colchians were not subject to the dominion of a sultan, and they continued to enjoy the same state as a substance of national independence. After the fall of the Persian empire, Mithridates, king of Pontus, added Colchis to the wide circle of his dominions on the East; and when the natives presumed to request that his son might reign over them, he found the ambitious youth in chains of gold, and delegated a servant to his place. In the pursuit of Mithridates, the Romans advanced to the banks of the Phasis, and their galleys ascended the river till they reached the camp of Pompey and his legions. But the senate, and afterwards the emperor, disdained to reduce that distant and useless conquest into the form of a province. The family of a Greek rhetorician was permitted to reign in Colchis and the adjacent kingdoms, from the time of Marc Antony to that of Nero; and after the fall of Ptolemais 32 was extinct, the eastern Pontus, which preserved his name, extended no further than the neighbourhood of Trebizond. Beyond these limits the

12 Buhler (Bois Nat., tom. iii. p. 632, 637,) correctly observes the remission of duties of agricultural and transport. 13. In the state of Hibernity the national manners were also improved, or rather corrupted, by a heavy tax on the exportation of corn, which was imposed by the Romans, who had a娱乐场. This fact is an example of the influence of foreign nations on the manners of nations. 14. The Colchian and Phocian arms, like those of all primitive nations, were diversified and various: The Greeks, except the Corinthians, used the long spear, and the Scyrian reported, and the Scyrian sword. The Scyrian bow and the Scyrian sword. The Scyrian bow and the Scyrian sword. The Scyrian bow and the Scyrian sword. The Scyrian bow and the Scyrian sword. 15. The Phocians, in the time of Nero, sold their horses for 200 drachms each. 16. From 10,000 to 15,000 Indians were imported annually into Europe for the use of the Chinese. 17. The attempt of the Chinese to enrich their empire by the commerce of India and the East Indies, is well known to European nations. 18. This attempt of the Chinese was most effectual, but it was followed by a decline of the Chinese commerce in Europe. 19. The commerce of the Chinese in India and the East Indies, is well known to European nations. 20. It is not likely, however, that the Chinese commerce was so extensive as to involve commerce with 170000000, as is said by Dr. Burnet and others. 21. The Chinese were the first to discover the use of porcelain in Europe. 22. From 10,000 to 15,000 Indians were imported annually into Europe for the use of the Chinese. 23. This was the case in the time of Nero. 24. From 10,000 to 15,000 Indians were imported annually into Europe for the use of the Chinese. 25. This was the case in the time of Nero. 26. From 10,000 to 15,000 Indians were imported annually into Europe for the use of the Chinese. 27. The attempt of the Chinese to enrich their empire by the commerce of India and the East Indies, is well known to European nations. 28. This attempt of the Chinese was most effectual, but it was followed by a decline of the Chinese commerce in Europe. 29. The commerce of the Chinese in India and the East Indies, is well known to European nations. 30. It is not likely, however, that the Chinese commerce was so extensive as to involve commerce with 170000000, as is said by Dr. Burnet and others. 31. The Chinese were the first to discover the use of porcelain in Europe. 32. From 10,000 to 15,000 Indians were imported annually into Europe for the use of the Chinese.
fortifications of Rhysus, of Aperos, of the Phasis, of Diococrias or Sebastopolis, and of Pityus, were guarded by sufficient detachments of horse and foot; and six princes of Colchos received their diacians from the lieutenants of Caesar. One of these lieutenants, the eloquent and philosophic Arrian, surveyed, and has detailed in a succinct style, the Euxine coast, under the reign of Abdiades. The garrisons which he reviewed at the mouth of the Phasis, consisted of four hundred chosen legionaries; the brick walls and towers, the double ditch, and the military engines on the rampart, rendered this place inaccessible to the barbarians; but the new salutis which had been built by the merchants and veterans, required, in the opinion of Arrian, some external defense. At the strength of the empire was gradually impaired, the Romans stationed on the Phasis were either withdrawn or expelled; and the tribe of the Iadi, whose prosperity spoke a foreign dialect, and inhabited the sea-coast of Trebizond, imposed their name and dominion on the ancient kingdom of Colchos. Their independence was soon invaded by a formidable neighbour, who had acquired, by arms and treaties, the sovereignty of Iberia. The dependent king of Lazica received his sceptre at the hands of the Persian monarch, and the successors of Constantine acquiesced in this injurious claim, which was promptly urged as a right of kinship. The Persians assumed the title of kings, which the Mingrelians still profess with becoming zeal, without understanding the doctrines, or observing the precepts, of their religion. After the decease of his father, Zedath was exalted to the royal dignity by the favour of the Great King; but the pious youth abhorred the ceremonies of the Magi, and sought, in the palace of Constantinepolis, an orthodox baptism, a noble wife, and the alliance of the emperor Justin. The king of Lazica was solemnly invested with the diadem, and his rich and tunic of white silk, with a gold border, displayed, in rich embroidery, the insignia of his new patron; who received the embassy of the Persian court, and crossed the revolt of Colchos, by the venerable name of hospitality and religion. The common interest of both empires imposed on the Colchians the duty of guarding the passes of Mount Caucasus, which was a wall of sixty miles, now defended by the monthly service of the mercenaries of Mingrelia.

But this honourable connection was soon corrupted by theavarice and ambition of the Romans. Degraded from the rank of allies, the Lazi were gratuitously reminded, by words and actions, of their dependent state. At the distance of a day's journey beyond the Aperos, they behold the rising fortress of Petra, which commanded the maritime country to the south of the Phasis. Instead of being protected by the valour, Colchos was insulted by the licentiousness, of foreign mercenaries; the benefits of commerce were converted into base and vexatious monopoly; and Guabara, the native prince, was reduced to a paganism of royalty, by the superior influence of the officer of Justinian. Disappointed in their expectations of Christian virtues, the iniquitous Lazi repose; some confidence in the justice of an unbeliever. After a private assurance that their ambassadors should not be delivered to the Romans, they publicly solicited the friendship and aid of Chosroes. The sagacious monarch instantly discerned the use and importance of Colchos; and manifested a plan of conquest, which was renewed at the end of a thousand years by Shah Abbas, the wisest and most powerful of his successors.

His ambition was fired by the hope of launching a Persian arm from the Phasis, of commanding the trade and navigation of the Euxine Sea, of desolating the coast of Pontus and Bithynia, of devastating, perhaps of attacking, Constantinople; and of persuading the barbarians of Europe to second his arms and counsels against the common enemy of mankind. Under the pretense of a Scythian war, he silently led his troops to the frontiers of Iberia; the Colchian guides were prepared to conduct them through the woods and along the precipices of Mount Caucasus; and a narrow path was laboriously formed into a safe and spacious highway, for the march of cavalry, and even of elephants. Guabara laid his person and diadem at the feet of the king of Persia; his Colchians imitated the submission of their prince; and after the walls of Petra had been shaken, the Roman garrison prevented, by a capitulation, the impending fury of the last assault. But the Lazi soon discovered, that their impatience had urged them to choose an evil more intolerable than the calamities which they strove to escape. The monopoly of salt, and even was effectually removed by the king, but the valuable commodities. The authority of a Roman legislator was succeeded by the pride of an Oriental despot, who beheld, with equal disdain, the slaves whom he had克拉发, and the kings whom he had humbled before the footstool of his throne. The adoration of fire was introduced into Colchos by the zeal of the Magi; their intolerant spirit provoked the fervour of a Christian people; and the prejudice of nature or education was wounded by the impious practice of exposing the dual bodies of their parents, on the summit of a lofty tower, to the crows and vultures of the air. In acquiring of state Persian power, the last remnants of Judaism suffered the most violent shocks—so unequal were the nations in the progress of civilization. The Colchians, though they belong to a nation which had received the Gospel, were already involved in those conditions of society, which deprive the most elevated rank, without the yoke of kings and despots, of the right of existence.
of the air. The decline and fall. 83 Conscious of the increasing hatred, which retarded the execution of his great designs, the just Nasirivan had secretly given orders to assassinate the king of the Laz, to transplant the people into some distant land, and to fix a faithful and warlike colony on the banks of the Phasis. The watchful jealousy of the Cechainas foresaw and averted the approaching ruin. Their repentence was accepted at Constantinople by the prudence, rather than the clemency, of Justinian; and he commanded Dagistus, with seven thousand Romans, and one thousand of the Zal, to expel the Persians from the coast of the Euxine.

The siege of Petra, which the Roman general, with the aid of the Laz, immediately undertook, is one of the most remarkable actions of the age. The city was seated on a craggy rock, which hung over the sea, and communicated by a steep and narrow path with the land. Since the approach was difficult, the attack might be deemed insurmountable. The Persians had already emplaced the fortifications of Justinian; and the places least inaccessible were covered by additional bulwarks. In this important fortress, the vigilance of Chosroes had deposited a magazine of offensive and defensive arms, sufficient for five times the number, not only of the garrison, but of the besiegers themselves. The stock of flour and salt provisions was adequate to the consumption of five years; the want of wine was supplied by vinigar, and of grain from whence a strong liquor was extracted; and a triple squadron attended the diligence, and even the suspicions, of the enemy. But the finest defence of Petra was placed in the valour of thirteen hundred Persians, who resisted the assaults of the Romans, whilst, in a softer vein of earth, a mine was secretly perforated. The wall, supported by slender and temporary props, hung tottering in the air; but Dagistus delayed the attack till he had secured a specific reconnoissance; and the town was relieved before the return of his messenger from Constantinople. The Persian garrison was reduced to four hundred men, of whom no more than fifty were exempt from sickness or wounds; yet such had been their inflexible perseverance, that they concealed their losses from the enemy, by existing, without a murmur, the sight and putting together the dead bodies of their thirteen hundred companions. After their deliverance, the breaches were hastily stopped with sand-bags; the mine was replenished with earth; a new wall was erected on a frame of substantial timber; and a fresh garrison of three thousand men was stationed at Petra to sustain the labours of a second siege. The operations, both of the attack and defence, were conducted with skilful obstinacy; and each party derived useful lessons from the experience of the past faults. A battering-ram was invented, of light construction and powerful effect: it was transported and worked by the hands of forty soldiers; and as the stones were loosened by its repeated strokes, they were torn with long iron hooks from the wall. From those walls a shower of darts was incessantly poured on the heads of the assailants; but they were most dangerously annoyed by a fiery composition of sulphur and bitumen, which in Colebos might with some propriety be named the oil of Merops. Of six thousand Romans who mounted the scaling-ladders, their general, Hemma, was the first, a gallant veteran of seventy years of age: the courage of their leader, his fall, and extreme danger, animated the irresistible effort of his troops; and their prevailing numbers oppressed the strength, without subduing the spirit, of the Persian garrison. The fate of these valiant men deserves to be more distinctly noticed. Seven hundred had perished in the siege, two thousand three hundred survived to defend the breach. One thousand and seventy were destroyed with fire and sword in the last assault; and if seven hundred and thirty were made prisoners, only eighty-five were found without the marks of honourable wounds. The remaining five hundred escaped into the citadel, which they maintained without any hopes of relief, rejecting the fairest terms of capitulation and service, till they were lost in the flames. They died in obedience to the commands of their prince; and such examples of loyalty and valour might excite their countrymen to deeds of equal despair and more prosperous event. The instant demolition of the works of Petra confessed the astonishment and apprehension of the conqueror.

A Spartan would have praised The Cechaines the virtue of these heroes; or Lyaeu was slaves; but the tedious warfare and the alternate success of the Roman and Persian arms cannot detain the attention of posterity at the foot of Mount Caucasus. The advantages obtained by the troops of Justinian were more frequent and splendid; but the forces of the Great King were continually supplied, till they amounted to eight elephants and seventy thousand men, including twelve thousand Scythian allies, and above three thousand Dilemites, who descended by their free choice from the hills of Hyrcania, and were equally formidable in close or in distant combat. The siege of Archangelopolis, a name imposed or corrupted by the Greeks, was raised with some loss and precipitation; but the Persians occupied the passes of Iberia: Colebos was enslaved by their forts and garrisons: they devoured the scanty sustenance of the people; and the prince of the Laz fled into the mountains. In the Roman camp, faith and discipline were unknown; and the independent leaders, who were invested with equal power, disputed with each other the prerogative of vice and corruption. The Persians followed, without a murmur, the commands of a single chief, who implicitly obeyed the instructions of their supreme lord. Their general was distinguished among the heroes of the East, by his wisdom in counsel and his valour in the field. The advanced age of Memnon, and the lame-
the Phasis restored the terror of the Roman arms, and the emperor was solicitous to absolve his own name from the imputation of so foul a murder. A judge of senatorial rank was commissioned to inquire into the conduct and death of the king of the Lazi. He ascended a stately tribunal, encompassed by the ministers of justice and punishment; in the presence of both nations, this extraordinary cause was pleas'd, according to the forms of civil jurisprudence, and some satisfaction was granted to an injured people, by the sentence and execution of the messenger criminals.

In peace, the king of Persia continued, and in the presence of a rupture; but no sooner had he taken up arms, than he expressed his desire of a safe and honourable treaty. During the frosty hostilities, the two monarchs entertained a deceitful negotiation; and such was the superior pomp of Chosroes, that whilst he treated the Roman ministers with insolence and contempt, he obtained the most unprecedented honours for his own ambassadors at the Imperial court. The successor of Cyrus assumed the majesty of the Eastern sun, and graciously permitted his younger brother Justinian to reign over the West, with the pale and reflected splendour of the moon. This gigantic style was supported by the pomp and eloquence of Indigune, one of the royal chamberlains. His wife and daughters, with a train of eunuchs and camels, attended the march of the ambassador: two satraps with golden diadems were numbered among his followers: he was guarded by five hundred horse, the most valiant of the Persians; and the Roman governor of Dara wisely refused to admit more than twenty of this martial and hostile caravan. When Indigune had saluted the emperor, and delivered his presents, he passed ten months at Constantinople without discussing any serious affairs. Instead of being confined to his palace, and receiving food and water from the hands of his keepers, the Persian ambassador, without spies or guards, was allowed to visit the capital; and the freedom of communication and trade enjoyed by his suite, offended the prejudices of an age which rigorously practised the law of nations, without confidence or courtesy. By an unexampled indulgence, his interpreter, a servant below the notice of a Roman magistrate, was seated, at the table of Justinian, by the side of his master; and one thousand pounds of gold might be assigned for the expense of his journey and entertainment.

Yet the repeated labours of Indigune could procure only a partial and imperfect truce, which was always purchased with the treasures, and renewed at the solicitation, of the Byzantine court. Many years of fruitless solicitation elapsed before Justinian and Chosroes were compelled, by mutual satisfaction, to consult the reposes of

---

1. The punishment of staving alive could not be introduced into France until the time of Louis the IX. (1226.)
2. This passage of Constantine the Great is not found in the usual manuscripts; it is copied from the Sicilian copy of Narses the Syrian, from the Syrian of Harun, and from the Latin of Eusebius. (Phil. Theol. i. 46. ss. 55.) Cursit. Cursit. p. 125.
3. In the prayer of Constantine there were sixty abracadabra.
their declining age. At a conference held on the frontier, each party, without expecting to gain credit, displayed the power, the justice, and the pacific intentions of their respective sover- eigns; but necessity and interest dictated the treaty of peace, which was concluded for a term of fifty years, diligently composed in the Greek and Persian languages, and attested by the seals of twelve interpreters. The liberty of commerce and religion was fixed and defined; the allies of the emperor and the Great King were included in the same benefits and obligations; and the most scrupulous precautions were provided to prevent or determine the accidental disputes that might arise on the confines of two hostile nations. After twenty years of destructive though feeble war, the limits still remained without alteration; and Chosroes was prevailed upon to renounce his dangerous claim to the possession or sovereignty of Colchis and its dependent states. Rich in the accumulated treasures of the East, he entrusted to the Romans an annual payment of thirty thousand pieces of gold; and the smallness of the sum revealed the disgrace of a tribute in its naked deformity. In a previous debate, the chieftain of Sasanis, and the wheel of fortune, were applied by one of the ministers of Justinian, who observed that the reduction of Antioch, and some Syrian cities, had elevated beyond measure the arts and ambitions of the barbarians. "You are mistaken," replied the modest Persian; "the king of kings, the lord of mankind, looks down with contempt on such petty acquisitions; and of the ten nations, vanquished by his invincible arms, he esteemsthe Romans as the least formidable." 99 According to the Orientals, the empire of Narsus extended from Fergusanis, in Transoxania, to Yemen or Arabia Felix. He subdued the rebels of Hyrcania, reduced the provinces of Cabul and Zobistan on the banks of the India, broke the power of the Kutchfis, terminated by an honorable treaty the Turkish war, and admitted the daughter of the great khan into the number of his lawful wives. Victorious and respected among the princes of Asia, he gave audience, in his palace of Madsin, or Ctesiphon, to the ambassadors of the world. Their gifts or tributes, arms, rich garments, gems, slaves, or aromatics, were humbly presented at the foot of his throne; and he condescended to accept from the king of India ten quintals of the wood of aloes, a small seven cubits in height, and a carpet softer than silk, the skin, as it was reported, of an extraordinary serpent. 101

Justinian had been reproached for his alliance with the Ethiopians, as if he attempted to introduce a people of savage manners into the system of civilized society. But the friend of the Roman empire, the Axumites, or Abyssinians, may be always distinguished from the original natives of Africa. 98 The fund of nature has flattened the noses of the negroes, covered their heads with shaggy wool, and tinged their skin with inherent and indelible blackness. But the other complexion of the Abyssinians, their hair, shape, and features, distinctly mark them as a colony of Arabs; and this descent is confirmed by the resemblance of language and manners, the report of an ancient emigration, and the narrow interval between the shores of the Red Sea. Christianity had raised that nation above the level of African barbarism; their intercourse with Egypt, and the successors of Constantine, 94 had communicated to the inhabitants the arts and sciences of their vessels, traded to the Isle of Ceylon, 95 and seven kingdoms; obeyed the Negus or supreme prince of Abyssinia. The independence of the Himyarites, who reigned in the rich and happy Arabia, was first violated by an Ethiopian conqueror: he drew his hereditary claim from the queens of Sheba, 106 and his ambition was sanctified by religious zeal. The Jews, powerful and active in exile, had subdued the mind of Dumez, princes of the Himyarites. They urged him to retaliate the persecution inflicted by the imperial laws on their unfortunate brethren: some Roman merchants were injuriously treated; and several Christians of Negra 117 were honoured with the crown of martyrdom. 108 The churches of Arabia explored the protection of the Abyssinian monarch. The Negus passed the Red Sea with a fleet and army, surprised the Jewish provinces of his kingdom and life, and expropriated a race of princes, who had ruled above two thousand years the sequestered region of myrrh and frankincense. The conqueror immediately announced the victory of the Gospel, requested an orthodox patriarch, and so warmly prevailed upon his friendship to the Roman empire, that Justinian was startled by the hope of diverting the silk trade through the channel of Abyssinia, and of exciting the forces of Arabia against the Persian king. Narsus, descended from a family of 117 ambassadors, was named by the emperor to execute this important commission. He wisely declined the shorter, but more dangerous, road through the sandy deserts of Nubia; ascended

99 The opposition and intrigue between Justinian and Chosroes are clearly explained by Procopius, (Biblon. Liv. A.D. 53-55).
100 The Persians, in the latter part of the 5th century, were under the dominion of the Hephthalites, and acknowledged a king at Bakti, but the territory of Persis was independant.
101 The ethiopians were the inhabitants of Abyssinia, and of Mecchah; and, as such, they were included in the limits of the Assyrian empire, under the title of Abyssenus.
102 The negroes, and barbarians of ancient Asosa, a name denoting the northern quarters of Africa.
123 Procopius, Lib. 11. p. 171. 142. 143.
124 Procopius, Lib. 11. p. 171. 143.
158 The history of the Kutchfis, who were the ancestors of the Kutchfis, is given by Procopius, Lib. 11. p. 158.
159 From the East Indies, and Arabia Felix, as well as from the Western countries of Europe, the Pinnac, or palms, were sent to the direction of the East Indies, and used as food for the elephants, and for the inhabitants of the East Indies.
130 Procopius, Lib. 11. p. 158.
131 Pliny the elder, hist. 33. cap. 33.
132 Procopius, Lib. 11. p. 158.
133 Procopius, Lib. 11. p. 158.
134 Procopius, Lib. 11. p. 158.
135 Procopius, Lib. 11. p. 158.
136 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
137 Procopius, Lib. 11. p. 158.
138 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
139 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
140 Procopius, Lib. 11. p. 158.
141 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
142 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
143 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
144 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
145 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
146 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
147 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
148 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
149 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
150 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
151 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
152 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
153 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
154 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
155 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
156 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
157 Procopius, Lib. 11. cap. 33.
the Nile, embarked on the Red Sea, and safely landed at the African port of Adulis. From Adulis to the royal city of Axum is no more than fifty leagues, in a direct line; but the windings of the mountains detained the ambassador fifteen days; and as he traversed the forests, he saw, and vaguely computed, about five thousand wild elephants. The capital, according to his report, was large and populous; and the village of Axum is still conspicuous by the royal carvings, by the ruins of a Christian temple, and by sixteen or seventeen obelisks inscribed with Greek characters. But the Negus gave audience in the open field, seated on a lofty chair, which was drawn by four elephants superbly caparisoned, and surrounded by his nobles and musicians. He was clad in a linen garment and cap, holding in his hand two javelins and a light shield; and, although his nakedness was imperfectly covered, he displayed the barbaric pomp of gold chains, collars, and bracelets, richly ornamented with pearls and precious stones. The ambassador of Justinian knew; the Negus raised him from the ground, embraced Neminaeus, kissed the seal, permitted the letters, accepted the Roman alliance, and, brandishing his weapons, denounced implacable fire against the warriors of war. But the proposal of the silk trade was eluded; and notwithstanding the assurances, and perhaps the wishes, of the Abyssinians, these delicate resources evaporated without effect. The Hecatomists were unwilling to abandon their aromatic groves, to explore a sandy desert, and to encounter, after all their fatigues, a formidable nation from whom they had never received any personal injuries. Instead of enlarging his conquests, the king of Ethiopia was incapable of defending his possessions. Abraham, the slave of a Roman merchant of Adulis, assumed the sceptre of the Hecatomists; the troops of Africa were seduced by the luxury of the climate; and Justinian solicited the friendship of the usurper, who honoured, with a slight tribute, the supremacy of his prince. After a long series of prosperity, the power of Abraham was overthrown before the gates of Carthage; his children were disquieted by the Persian emperor; and the Ethiopians were finally expelled from the continent of Asia. This narrative of obscure and remote events is not foreign to the decline and fall of the Roman empire. If a Christian power had been maintained in Africa, Mahomet and his followers must have been arrested, in his tracts, and the Abyssins would have presented a revolution which has changed the civil and religious state of the world.\(^{264}\)

**CHAP. XLIII.**


The review of the nations from the Danube to the Nile has exposed, on every side, the weakness of the Romans; and our wonder is reasonably excited that they should presume to enlarge an empire, whose ancient limits they were incapable of defending. But the wars, the emperors, and the triumphs of Justinian, are the fecund and pernicious effects of old age, which exhaust the remains of strength, and accelerate the decay of the powers of life. He excelled in the glorious art of restoring Africa and Italy to the republic; but the calamities which followed the departure of Belisarius betrayed the impiety of the conqueror, and accomplished the ruin of those unfortunate countries.

From his new acquisitions, Justinian expected that his nations, as \(^{265}\) of the emperor, as were his, should be richly gratified. A regius minister of the finances closed pursued the footsteps of Belisarius; and as the old registers of tribute had been burnt by the Vandals, he indulged his fancy in a liberal calculation and arbitrary assessment of the wealth of Africa.\(^{1}\) The increase of taxes, which were drawn away by a distant sovereign, and a general resumption of the patrimony or crown lands, soon dispelled the imagination of the public joy, but the emperor was insensible to the most distressing complaints of the people, till he was awakened and alarmed by the clamours of military discontent. Many of the Roman soldiers had married the widows and daughters of the Vandals. As their own, by the double right of conquest and marriage, they claimed the estates which Justinian had assigned to his victorious troops. They heard with disdain the cold and silent representations of their officers, that the liberality of Justinian had raised them from a savage or servile condition; that they were already enriched by the spoils of Africa, the treasure, the slaves, and the revenues, of the conquered barbarians; and that the ancient and lawful patrimony of the emperor would be applied only to the support of that government on which their own safety and reward must ultimately depend. The writing was secretly inflamed by a thousand soldiers, for the most part Hercull, who had imbued the doctrines, and were instigated by the clergy of...
the Arian sect; and the cause of perjury and rebellion was sanctified by the dispensing powers of fanaticism. The Arians deplored the ruin of their church, triumphant above a century in Africa; and they were justly provoked by the laws of the conqueror, which interdicted the baptism of their children, and the exercise of all religious worship. The council chosen by Belisarius, that guest past, on the house of the Eastern service, forgot their country and religion. But a generous hand of four hundred obliged the marines, when they were in sight of the isle of Lasbo, to alter their course; they touched on Peloponnesus, ran ashore on a desert coast of Africa, and boldly erected, on Mount Arras, the standard of independence and revolt. While the troops of the province disclaimed the commands of their superiors, a conspiracy was formed at Carthage against the life of Solomon, who filled with honour the place of Belisarius; and the Arians had piously resolved to sacrifice the tyrant at the foot of the altar, during the awful mysteries of the Festival of Easter. Fear or remorse restrained the daggers of the assassins, but the patience of Solomon emboldened their discontents; and at the end of ten days, a furious sedition was kindled in the Circus, which desolated Africa above ten years.

The pillage of the city, and the indiscriminate slaughter of its inhabitants, were suspended only by darkness, sleep, and intoxication: the governor, with seven companions, among whom was the historian Procopius, escaped to Sicily: two thirds of the army were involved in the guilt of treason; and eight thousand insurgents, assembling in the field of Bulba, elected Stozz for their chief, a private soldier, who possessed in a superior degree the virtues of a rebel. Under the mask of freedom, his eloquence could lead, or at least inflame, the passions of his equals. He raised himself to a level with Belisarius and the nephew of the emperor, by daring to encounter them in the field; and the victorious generals were compelled to acknowledge, that Stozz deserved a prurer cause, and a more legitimate command. Vanquished in battle, he deaderly employed the arts of negotiation; a Roman army was seduced from their allegiance, and the rebels, who had trusted to his faithless promise were murdered by his order in a church of Numidia. When every resource, either of force or policy, was exhausted, Stozz, with some desperate Vandals, retired to the wilds of Mauritania, obtained the daughter of a barbarian prince, and eluded the pursuit of his enemies, by the report of his death. The personal weight of Belisarius, the rank, the spirit, and the temper, of Germanicus, the emperor's nephew, and the vigour and success of the second administration of the empress Solomon, restored the modesty of the camp, and maintained for a while the tranquillity of Africa. But the vices of the Byzantine court were felt in that distant province; the troops complained that they were neither paid nor relieved, and as soon as the public disorders were sufficiently mature, Stozz was again alive, in arms, and at the gates of Carthage. He fell in a single combat, but he smiled in the agonies of death, when he was informed that his own javelin had reached the heart of his antagonist. The example of Stozz, and the assurance that a fortunate soldier had been the first king, encouraged the ambition of Gontharis, and he promised, by a private treaty, to divide Africa with the Moors, if, with their dangerous aid, he should ascend the throne of Carthage. The feeble Arcobulus, unskilled in the affairs of peace and war, was vanquished; his marriage with the niece of Justinian to the office of exarch. He was suddenly apprehended by a sedition of the guards, and his abject supplications, which provoked the contempt, could not move the pity, of the inexorable tyrant. After a reign of thirty days, Gontharis himself was stabbed at a banquet by the hand of Artaban; and it is singular enough, that an Armenian prince, of the royal family of Arsaces, should re-establish at Carthage the authority of the Roman empire. In the conspiracy which unseated the dagger of Brutus against the life of Caesar, every circumstance is curious and important to the eyes of posterity; but the guilt or merit of these loyal or rebellious assassins could interest only the contemporaries of Procopius, who, by their hopes and fears, their friendship or resentment, were personally engaged in the revolutions of Africa.  

That country was rapidly sinking into the state of barbarism, from whence it had been raised by the Phoenician colonies and Roman laws; and every stop of intestine discord was marked by some deplorable victory of savage man over civilized society. The Moors, though ignorant of justice, were impatient of oppression; their vengeful life and boundless wilderness disappoinated the arms, and eluded the chains, of a conqueror; and experience had shown, that neither oaths nor obligations could secure the fidelity of their attachment. The victory of Mount Arras had awed them into momentary submission; but if they respected the character of Solomon, they hated and despised the pride and luxury of his two nephews, Cyrus and Sergius, on whom their uncle had imprudently bestowed the provincial governments of Tripoli and Pentapolis. A Moorish tribe encamped under the walls of Leptis, to renew their alliance, and receive from the governor the customary gifts. Four score of their deputies were introduced as friends into the city; but, on the dark suspicion of a conspiracy, they were massacred at the table of Sergius; and the clamour of arms and revenge was re-echoed through the valleys of Mount Atlas, from both the Syrtes to the Atlantic Ocean. A personal injury, the unjust execution or murder of his brother, rendered Antiates the enemy of the Romans. The defeat of the Vandals had formerly signalled his valour; the rudiments of

---

8. The text may refer to the costs of painting, as those colors, the colors of the moths. One of the moths occurs a so-called "Euripus," the son of the king, who was the myth, but the myth should correct a "description of my acquaintance."
justice and prudence were still more conspicuous in a Moor; and while he laid Adrumetum in ashes, he calmly admonished the emperor that the peace of Africa might be secured by the recall of Solomon and his unworthy nephews. The search led forth his troops from Carthage; but, at the distance of six days' journey, in the neighbourhood of Tebeste, he was astonished by the superior numbers and fierce aspect of the barbarians. He proposed a treaty; solicited a reconciliation; and offered to bind himself by the most solemn oaths. "By what oaths can he bind himself?" interrupted the indignant Moors. "Will he swear by the Gospel, the divine books of the Christians? It was on these books that the false of his nephew Sergius was pledged to eighty of our innocent and unfortunate brethren. Before we trust them a second time, let us try their efficacy in the chastisement of perfidy and the vindication of their own honour." Their honour was vindicated in the field of Tebeste, by the death of Solomon; and the total loss of his army. The arrival of fresh troops and unskilled commanders soon checked the insolence of the Moors; seventeen of their princes were slain in the same battle; and the dastardly and transient submission of their tribes was celebrated with lavish applause by the people of Constanti- nople. Successive invasions had reduced the province of Africa to one third of the measure of Italy; yet the Roman emperor continued to reign above a century over Carthage, and the fruitful coast of the Mediterranean. But the victories and the losses of Justinian were alike pernicious to mankind; and such was the desolation of Africa, that in many parts a stranger might wander whole days without meeting the face either of a friend or an enemy. The nation of the Vandals had disappeared; they once amounted to an hundred and sixty thousand warriors, without including the children, the women, or the slaves. Their numbers were infinitely surpassed by the number of the Moorish families exterminated in a relentless war; and the same destruction was retaliated on the Romans and their allies, who perished by the climate, their mutual quarrels, and the rage of the barbarians. When Procopius first landed, he admired the populousness of the cities and country, strenuously exercised in the labours of commerce and agriculture. In less than twenty years, that busy scene was converted into a silent solitude; the wealth and citizens escaped the fury of Constanti- nople; and the secret historian has confidently affirmed, that five millions of Africans were consumed by the wars and government of the emperor Justinian. 2

The jealousy of the Byzantine court had not permitted Belisarius to achieve the conquest of Italy; and his abrupt departure revived the courage of the Goths, who respected his genius, his virtue, and even the laudable motive which had urged the ser- vant of Justinian to deceive and reject them. They had lost their king (an inconsiderable man), their capital, their treasures, the provincis, from Sicily to the Alps, and the military force of two hundred thousand barbarians, magnificently equipped with horses and arms. Yet all was not lost, as long as Pavia was defended by one thousand Goths, inspired by a sense of honour, the love of freedom, and the memory of their past greatness. The supreme command was unanimously offered to the brave Ursus; and it was in his eyes alone that the disgrace of his uncle Vitiges could appear as a reason of exclusion. His voice inclined the election in favour of Hildibrand, whose personal merit was recommended by the wish that his kinsman Theodes, the Spanish monarch, would support the common interest of the Gothic nation. The success of his arms in Liguaria and Venetia seemed to justify his choice; but he soon declared to the world, that he was incapable of forgiving or commanding his benefactor. The consent of Hildibrand was deeply wounded by the beauty, the riches, and the pride of the wife of Ursus; and the death of that virtuous patriot excited the indignation of a free people. A bold assassin executed their sentence by striking off the head of Hildibrand in the midst of a banquet: the Ruggians, a foreign tribe, assumed the privilege of election; and Totila, the successor of the late king, was appointed, by revenge, to deliver himself and the garrison of Treviso into the hands of the Romans. But the gallant and accomplished youth was easily persuaded to prefer the Gothic throne before the service of Justi- nian; and as soon as the palace of Pavia had been purified from the Ruvian usurper, he reviewed the national force of five thousand soldiers, and generously undertook the restoration of the kingdom of Italy.

The successors of Belisarius, eleven generals of equal rank, neglected to crush the feebly and disunited Goths, till they were massed to attack by the progress of Totila and the approaches of Justinian. The gates of Verona were merely opened to Artabazus, at the head of one hundred Persians in the service of the empire. The Goths fled from the city. At the distance of sixty furlongs the Roman generals halted to regulate the division of the spoil. While they suspected the enemy discovered the real number of the victors; the Persians were instantly over- powered, and it was by leaping from the wall that Artabazus preserved a life which he lost in a few days by the lance of a barbarian, who had defied him to single combat. Twenty thousand Romans encountered the forces of Totila, near Farnas, and on the hills of Muggola, of the Florentine territory. The ardent of soldiers, who fought to regain their country, was opposed to the languid temper of twenty thousand troops, who were even disdain the merits of strong and

2 Procopius, Historia, v. 15. The siege of the Athenian Acropolis gives this embarrassing text.
well-disciplined servitude. On the first attack they abandoned their ensigns, threw down their arms, and dispersed on all sides with an active speed, which abated the loss, whilst it aggravated the shame, of their defeat. The king of the Goths, who bestowed the benesse of his enemies, pursued with stern resolve the path of devastation. Without a respite, they traversed the Apennine, subdued the insidious conquest of Ravenna, Florence, and Rome, and marched through the heart of Italy, to form the siege, or rather the blockade, of Naples. The Romans, insulted in their respective cities, and accursed by all the common disgrace, did not venture to disturb his enterprise. But the emperor, alarmed by the distress and danger of his Italian conquest, despatched to the relief of Naples a fleet of galleys and a body of Thracian and Armenian soldiers. They landed in Sicily, which yielded its copious stores of provisions; but the delays of the new commander, an unwarlike magistrate, protracted the sufferings of the besieged; and the successes, which he shivered with a timorous hand, were successively intercepted by the armed vessels stationed by Totila in the Bay of Naples. The principal officer of the Romans was dragged, with a rope round his neck, to the feet of the wall, from within, with a trembling voice, he exhorted the citizens to implore, like himself, the mercy of the conqueror. They requested a truce, with a promise of surrendering the city, if no effectual relief should appear at the end of thirty days. Instead of one month, the undisciplined Barbarian granted them three; on the first condition that famine would anticipate the term of their capitulation. After the reduction of Naples and Cumae, the provinces of Lucania, Apulia, and Calabria, submitted to the king of the Goths. Totila led his army to the confines of Rome, pitched his camp at Tibur, or Tivoli, within twenty miles of the capital, and calmly exhaled the senate and people to compare the tyranny of the Greeks with the blessings of the Gothic reign.

The rapid success of Totila may be in part ascribed to the revolution which three years' experience had produced in the sentiments of the Italians. At the command, or at least in the name, of a Catholic emperor, the pope, their spiritual father, had been torn from the Roman church, and either starved or murdered on a desolate island. The virtues of Belisarius were replaced by the vices or uniform vices of eleven chief, at Rome, Ravenna, Florence, Perguilia, Spoleto, &c. who abused their authority for the indulgence of lust or avarice. The improvement of the revenue was committed to Alexander, a subtle avarice, long practised in the fraud and oppression of the Byzantine schools; and whose name of *Pseudo*, the avarice, was drawn from the deextrum artifices with which he reduced the size,

without defacing the figure, of the gold coin. Instead of expecting the restoration of peace and industry, he imposed an heavy assessment on the fortunes of the Italians. Yet his present or future demands were less odious than a prosecution of arbitrary rigour against the persons and property of all those, who, under the Gothic kings, had been concerned in the receipt and expenditure of the public money. The subjects of Justinian, who esteemed their own partial vexations, were oppressed by the irregular maintenance of the soldiers, whoso Alexander defrauded and despoiled; and their lusty allies in quest of wealth, or subsistence, provoked the inhabitants of the country to await or implore their deliverance from the vices of a Barbarian. Totila's 10 rash and temperate; and none were deceived, either friends or enemies, who depended on his faith or his clemency. To the husbandsmen of Italy the Gothic king issued a welcome proclamation, confining them to pursue their important labours, and to rest assured, that, on the payment of the ordinary taxes, they should be defended by his valour and discipline from the injuries of war. The strong towns he successively attacked; and as soon as they had yielded to his arms, he demolished the fortifications; to save the people from the calamities of a future siege, to deprive the Romans of the arts of defence, and to decide the tedious quarrel of the two nations, by an equal and honourable conflict in the field of battle. The Roman captives and deserters were tempted to enlist in the service of a liberal and courteous adversary; the slaves were attracted by the firm and faithful promise, that they should never be delivered to their masters; and from the thousand warriors of Pavia, a new people, under the same appellation of Goths, was insensibly formed in the camp of Totila. He sincerely accomplished the articles of capitulation, without seeking or accepting any similar advantage from ambigious promises or unforeseen events: the garrison of Naples had stipulated that they should be transported by sea: the obstinacy of the winds prevented their voyage, but they were generously supplied with horses, provisions, and a safe-conduct to the gates of Rome. The wives of the senators, who had been surprised in the villas of Campania, were restored, without a ransom, to their husbands; the violation of female chastity was inextricably clasped with death; and in the salutary regulation of the diet of the famished Neapolitans, the conqueror assumed the office of an humane and attentive physician. The virtues of Totila are equally laudable, whether they proceeded from true policy, religious principle, or the instinct of humanity, he often harrassed his troops; and it was his constant theme, that national vice and ruin are inseparably connected; that victory is the fruit of moral as well as military virtue; and that the prince, and even the people, are
responsible for the crimes which they neglect to punish.

The return of Belisarius to save the country which he had subdued, was pressed with equal vehemence by his friends and enemies; and the Gothic war was imposed as a trust or an exile on the veteran commander. An hero on the banks of the Euphrates, a slave in the palace of Constantinople, he accepted, with reluctance, the painful task of supporting his own reputation, and retrieving the faults of his successors. The sea was open to the Romans; the ships and soldiers were assembled at Salona, near the palace of Diocletian; he refreshed and reviewed his troops at Pola in Istria, coasted round the head of the Adriatic, entered the port of Ravenna, and dispatched orders rather than supplies to the subordinate cities. His first public

oration was addressed to the Goths and Romans. The name of the emperor, who had triumphed for a while the conquest of Persia, and listened to the prayers of his Italian subjects. He gently touched on the errors and the authors of the recent disasters; striving to remove the fear of punishment for the past, and the hope of impunity for the future, and labouring, with more zeal than success, to unite all the members of his government in a firm league of affection and obedience. Justinian, his gracious master, was inclined to pardon and reward; and it was their interest, as well as duty, to reclaim their deluded brethren, who had been seduced by the arms of the usurper. Not a man was tempted to desert the standard of the Gothic king. Belisarius soon discovered, that he was sent to remain the idle and inconstant spectator of the glory of a young barbarian; and his own epitaph exhibits a genuine and lively picture of the distress of a noble mind. "Most excellent prince, we are arrived in Italy, destitute of all the necessary prey of war, men, horses, arms, and money. In our late circuit through the villages of Thessal and Illyricum, we have collected, with extreme difficulty, about four thousand infantry, lick, and unskilled in the use of weapons, and the exercises of the camp. The soldiers already stationed in the province are discontented, fearful, and discomposed; at the sound of an enemy, they dismay their horses, and cast their arms on the ground. No taxes can be raised, since Italy is in the hands of the barbarians; the famine of payment has deprived us of the right of command, or even of admittance. Be assured, dread Sir, that the greater part of your troops have already deserted to the Gothic. If the war could be achieved by the presence of Belisarius, you might, with success; but I desire to conquer, for other preparations are requisite; without a military force the title of general is an empty name. It would be expedient to restore to my service my own mercenaries and domestic guards. Before I can take the field, I must receive an adequate supply of light and heavy armed troops; and it is only with ready money that you can procure the indispensable aid of a powerful body of "the cavalry of the Huns." An officer in whom Belisarius confided was sent from Ravenna to hasten and conduct the succour; but the message was neglected, and the messenger was detained at Constantinople by an advantageous marriage. After his patient had been exhausted by delay and disappointment, the Roman general reproached the Hastratic, and expected at Dyrmachium the arrival of the troops, which were slowly assembled among the subjects still allies of the empire. His powers were still inadequate to the deliverance of Rome, which was closely besieged by the Gothic king. The Arian way, a march of forty days, was covered by the barbarians; and as the progress of Belisarius declined a battle, he preferred the safer and speedier navigation of five days from the coast of Epirus to the mouth of the Tyber.

After reducing, by force or treaty, the towns of inferior note in the midland provinces of Italy, Tullia a, b, 346, 356, proceeded, not to assault, but to encompass and starve, the ancient capital. Rome was afflicted by the pestilence, and rescued by the valor of Bezaus, a veteran chief of Gothic extraction, who filled, with a pavillon of three thousand soldiers, the spacious circle of her venerable walls. From the distress of the people he extracted a profitable trade, and secretly rejoiced in the continuance of the siege. It was for his use that the granaries had been replenished; the charity of pope Vigilius had purchased and embarked an ample supply of Sicilian corn; but the vessels which escaped the barbarians were seized by a rapacious governor, who imparted a scanty subsistence to the soldiers, and sold the remainder to the wealthy Romans. The midsummer, or fifth part of the quarter of wheat, was exchanged for seven pieces of gold; fifty pieces were given for an ox, a rare and accidental prize; the progress of famine enhanced this exorbitant value, and the mercenaries were tempted to deprive themselves of the allowance which was scarcely sufficient for the support of life. A tawdry and unwholesome mixture, in which the bran thrice exceeded the quantity of flour, appeased the hunger of the poor; they were gradually reduced to feed on dead horses, dogs, cats, and mice, and eagerly snatch the grass, and even the nettles which grew among the ruins of the city. A crowd of spectres, pale and emaciated, their bodies oppressed with disease, and their minds with horror, surrounded the palace of the governor, urged, with unavailing truth, that it was the duty of the emperor to maintain his throne, and humbly requested, that he would provide for their subsistence, permit their flight, or command their immediate execution. Bessa replied, with unfeeling tranquillity, that it was impossible to feed, to save, and unlawful to kill, the subjects of the emperor. Yet the example of a private citizen might have shown his countrymen that a tyrant cannot withhold the privilege of death. Pierced by the cries of five children, who vainly called on their father with the alarums and false spepus of the Romanists.
for bread, he ordered them to follow his steps, advanced with calm and silent despair to one of the bridges of the Tyber, and, covering his face, threw himself headlong into the stream, in the presence of his family and the Roman people.

To the rich and puissant Semas he sold the permission of departure; but the greatest part of the fugitives expired on the public highways, or were intercepted by the flying parties of barbarians. In the meanwhile, the artful govern- ors succeeded the discontent, and revived the hopes of the Romans, by the vague reports of the fleets and armies which were hastening to their relief from the extremities of the East. They derived more rational comfort from the assurance that Belisarius had landed at the port; and, without numbering his forces, they firmly relied on the humanity, the courage, and the skill of their great deliverer.

The foresight of Totila had raised obstacles worthy of such an antagonist. Ninety furlongs below the city, in the narrow west part of the river, he joined the two banks by strong and solid timbers in the form of a bridge; on which he erected two lofty towers, manned by the bravest of his Goths, and profusely stored with missile weapons and engines of offence. The approach of the bridge and towers was covered by a strong and massy chain of iron; and the chain, at either end, on the opposite sides of the Tyber, was defended by a numerous and chosen detachment of archers. But the enterprise of forcing these barriers, and relieving the capital, displays a shaming example of the boldness and conduct of Belisarius. His cavalry advanced from the port along the public road, to awe the motions, and distract the attention, of the enemy. His infantry and provisions were distributed in two hundred large boats; and each boat was shielded by a high rampart of thick planks, pierced with many small holes for the discharge of missile weapons. In the front, two large vessels were linked together to sustain a floating castle, which commanded the towers of the bridge, and contained a magazine of fire, sulphur, and bitumen. The whole fleet, which the general led in person, was laboriously steered against the current of the river. The chain yielded to their weight, and the enemies who guarded the banks were either slain or scattered. As soon as they touched the principal barrier, the fire-ship was instantly grappled to the bridge; one of the towers, with two hundred Goths, was consumed by the flames; the assailants shouted victory; and Rome was saved, if the wisdom of Belisarius had not been defeated by the misconduct of his officers. He had previously sent orders to Semas to second his operations by a timely sally from the town; and he had fixed his lieutenant, Isaac, by a peremptory command, to the station of the port. But avarice rendered Semas immovable; while the youthful ardent of Isaac delivered him into the hands of a superior enemy. The exaggerated rumour of his defeat was hastily carried to the ears of Belisarius; he paused; betrayed in that single moment of his life some emotions of surprise and perplexity; and reluctantly sounded a retreat to save his wife Antonia, his treasures, and the only harbour which he possessed on the Tuscan coast. The vexation of his mind produced an acute and almost mortal fever; and Rome was left without the protection of a wealthy and indignant of Totila. The continuous and antagonistic hostilities had emblazoned the national hatred; the Arian clergy was ignominiously driven from Rome; Pelagius, the archdeacon, returned without success from an embassy to the Gothic camp; and a Sicilian bishop, the envoy or nuncio of the pope, was deprived of both his hands, for daring to utter falsehoods in the service of the church and state.

Famine had relaxed the strength and discipline of the garrison of Rome. They could derive no effectual service from a dying people; and the inhuman avarice of the merchant at length absorbed the vigilance of the governor. Four senatorial centurions, while their companions slept, and their officers were absent, descended by a rope from the wall, and secretly proposed to the Gothicking to introduce his troops into the city. The offer was entertained with readiness and suspicion; they returned in safety; they twice repeated their visit; the place was twice examined; the conspiracy was known and disregarded; and no sooner had Totila consented to the attempt, than they unbarked the Asinarian gate, and gave admittance to the Goths. Till the dawn of day they halted in order of battle, apprehensive of treachery or ambush; but the troops of Semas, with their leader, had already escaped; and when the king was pressed to disturb their retreat, he prudently replied, that no sight could be more grateful than that of a flying enemy. The patricians, who were still possessed of horses, Decius, Basilius, &c. accompanied the governor; their brethren, among whom Olympius, Orestes, and Maximus, are named by the historian, took refuge in the church of St. Peters; but the assertion, that only five hundred persons remained in the capital, inspires some doubt of the fidelity either of his narrative or of his text. As soon as daylight had displayed the entire victory of the Goths, their monarch devoutly visited the tomb of the prince of the apostles; but while he prayed at the altar, twenty-five soldiers, and sixty citizens, were put to the sword in the vestibule of the temple. The archdeacon Pelagius stood before him with the Gospels in his hand. "O Lord, be merciful to your servant." "Pelagius," said Totila with an insulting smile, "your pride now condescends to become a suppliant." "I am a suppliant," replied the prudent archdeacon; "God has now made us your subjects, and, as your subjects,
we are entitled to your clemency." At his humble prayer, the lives of the Romans were spared; and the chastisement of the maids and matrons was preserved inviolate from the passions of the hungry soldiers. But they were rewarded by the freedom of pilage, after the most precious spoils had been reserved for the royal treasury. The houses of the senators were plentifully stored with gold and silver; and the aravies of Bosnia had laboured with so much grief and shame for the benefit of the conqueror. In this revolution, the sons and daughters of Roman consuls tasted the misery which they had spared or relieved, were reduced to the most degrading ranks of the citizens; and their bread, perhaps without success, before the gates of their hereditary mansions. The riches of Rusticus, the daughter of Symmachus and widow of Boethius, had been generously devoted to alleviate the calamities of famine. But the barbarians were exasperated by the report, that she had prompted the people to overthrow the statues of the great Theodoric; and the life of that venerable matron would have been sacrificed to his memory, if Totila had not respected her birth, her virtues, and even the plea motive of her revenge. The next day he pronounced two sentences, to congratulate and admonish his victorious Goth, and to reproach the senate, as the yelst of slaves, with their perjury, folly, and ingratitude; sternly declaring, that their estates and honours were justly forfeited to the companions of his arms. Yet he consented to forgive their revolt; and the senators repaid his clemency, by dispatching circular letters to their tenants and vassals in the provinces of Italy, strictly enjoining them to desert the standard of the Greeks, to cultivate their lands in peace, and to learn from their masters the duty of obedience to a Gothic sovereign. Against the city which had so long delayed the course of his victories he appeared incalculable: one third of the walls, in different parts, were demolished by his command; fire and engines prepared to consume or divest the most stately works of antiquity; and the world was astonished by the final decree, that Rome should be changed into a pasture for cattle. The firm and temperate remonstrances of Belisarius suspended the execution; he warned the barbarian not to汚染 his fame by the destruction of those monuments, which were the glory of the dead, and the delight of the living; and Totila was persuaded, by the advice of an enemy, to preserve Rome as the ornament of his kingdom, or the fairest pledge of peace and reconciliation. When he had signified to the ambassadors of Belisarius, his intention of sparing the city, he stationed an army at the distance of one hundred and twenty furigoes, to observe the motions of the Roman general. With the remainder of his forces, he marched into Lucania and Apulia, and occupied on the summit of Mount Garganus 14 one of the camps of Hannibal. 15 The senators were dragged in his train, and afterwards confined in the fortresses of Campania; the citizens, with their wives and children, were dispersed in exile; and during forty days Rome was abandoned to desolation and dreary solitude. 16

The loss of Rome was speedily retrieved by an action, to which, according to the event, the public opinion would apply the names of rashness or heroism. After the departure of Totila, the Roman general marched from the port at the head of a thousand horses, 17 and arrived in the camp of the注意 who opposed his program, and visited with pity and reverence the vacant space of the eternal city. Resolved to maintain a station as conspicuous in the eyes of mankind, he summoned the greatest part of his troops to the standard which he erected on the Capitol; the old inhabitants were recalled by the love of their country and the hope of food; and the keys of Rome were sent a second time to the emperor Justinian. The walls, as far as they had been demolished by the Goths, were repaired with rude and dissimilar materials; the ditch was restored; iron spikes 18 were profusely scattered in the highways to amuse the feet of the horses; and as new gates could not suddenly be procured, the entrance was guarded by a Spartan rampart of his bravest soldiers. At the expiration of twenty-five days, Totila returned by hasty marches from Apulia, to avenge the injury and disgrace. Belisarius expected his approach. The Goths were thrice repulsed in three general assaults; they lost the flower of their troops; the royal standard had almost fallen into the hands of the enemy, and the fame of Totila sunk, as it had risen, with the fortune of his arms. Whatever skill and courage could achieve, had been performed by the Roman general; it remained only, that Justinian should terminate, by a strong and seasonable effort, the war which he had ambitiously undertaken. The immediate, perhaps the impotence, of a prince who despised his enemies, and cherished his servants, protected the calamities of Italy. After a little interval Belisarius was commanded to leave a sufficient garrison at Rome, and to transport himself into the province of Lucania, whose inhabitants, inflamed by Catholic zeal, had cast away the yoke of their Arian conquerors. In this ignoble warfare, the hero, invincible against the power of the barbarians, was basely vanquished by the delay, the disobedience, and the cowardice of his own officers. He reposed in his winter-quarters of Crotona, in the full assurance, that the two passes of the Lucanian hills were guarded by his cavalry. They were betrayed by treachery or weakness; and the rapid march of the Goths

14. Mount Garganus, now Monte St. Angelo, in the kingdom of Naples, bears three fortresses, under the name of La Stella, which was built by the Normans, and the Praetorian, and the Chiesa. The most celebrated was built by the Normans.
15. Hannibal's camp, Salerno, and Hannibal's camp, which is the most celebrated, was built by the Normans.
16. Belisarius was sent from Italy, and the Prov. of S. A. A. on the 20th of August, 553.
17. The 20th of August was the day of the battle of Rome, on the 20th of August, 553.
18. The Battle was fought on the 20th of August, 553.
scarcely allowed time for the escape of Belisarius to the coast of Sicily. At length a fleet and army were assembled for the relief of Byzantium, or Rome. Rome, a fortress sixty furlongs from the ruins of Syracuse, where the noblest of Italian cities had resisted revolt for two hundred years, the Roman forces were dispirited by a sea and land defeat. In the second they approached the shore; but they saw the hills covered with archers, the landing-place defended by a line of spears, and the king of the Goths impatient for battle. The conqueror of Italy retired with a sigh, and continued to languish, inglorious and inactive, till Antoninus, who had been sent to Constantinople to solicit success, obtained, after the death of the emperor, the permission of his return.

The five last campaigns of Belisarius might abuse the envy of his enemies, whose eyes had been dazzled and wounded by the blaze of his former glory. Instead of delivering Italy from the Goths, he had wandered like a fugitive along the coast, without daring to march into the country, or to accept the bold and repeated challenge of Totila. Yet in the judgment of the few who could discriminate counsels from events, and compare the instruments with the execution, he appeared a more consummate master of the art of war, than in the season of his prosperity, when he presented two captive kings before the throne of Justinian. The value of Belisarius was not skilled by age; his prudence was matured by experience, but the moral virtues of humanity and justice seem to have yielded to the hard necessity of the times. The parsimony or poverty of the emperor compelled him to deviate from the rule of conduct which had deserved the love and confidence of the Italians. The war was maintained by the oppression of Ravenna, Sicily, and all the faithful subjects of the empire; and the rigorous persecution of Herodians provoked that injured or guilty officer to deliver Spoleto into the hands of the enemy. The avowal of Antoninus, which had been sometimes diverted by love, now reigned without a rival in her breast. Belisarius himself had always understood, that riches, in a corrupt age, are the support and ornament of personal merit. And it cannot be presumed that he should stain his honour for the public service, without applying a part of the spoil to his private emolument. The hero had escaped the sword of the barbarians, but the dagger of conspiracy awaited his return. In the midst of wealth and honours, Artaban, who had chastised the African tyrant, complained of the ingratitude of courts. He applied to Procopius, the emperor's niece, who wished to reward her deliverer; but the impedi-

The pride of royal descent was irritated by history; and the service in which he gloried, had proved him capable of bold and imaginary deeds. The death of Justinian was resolved, but the conspirators delayed the execution till they could surprise Belisarius disarmed, and naked, in the palace of Constantinople. Not a blood could be entertained of shaming his long-tried fidelity; and they justly dreaded the revenge, or rather justice, of the veteran general, who might speedily assemble an army in Thrace to punish the assassins, and perhaps to enjoy the fruits of their crimes. Delay afforded time for mature communications and honest confessions. Artaban and his accomplices were confounded by the senate, but the extreme clemency of Justinian detained them in the gentle confinement of the palace, till he pardoned their flagitious attempt against his throne and life. If the emperor forgave his enemies, he must cordially embrace a friend whose victories were alone remembered, and who was endeared to his prince by the recent circumstances of their common danger. Belisarius reposed from his toils, in the high station of general of the East and count of the domestics; and the other consuls and patricians respectfully yielded the precedence of rank to the peerless merit of the first of the Romans. The first of the Romans still submitted to be the slave of his wish; but the servitude of habit and affection became less disgraceful when the death of Theodora had removed the base influence of fear. Joumna their daughter, and the sole heirs of their fortunes, was betrothed to Anastasius, the grandson, or rather the nephew, of the emperor, whose kind interposition forwarded the consummation of their youthful love. But the power of Theodora expired; the power of Joumnas returned, and her honour, perhaps her happiness, were sacrificed to the revenge of an unforgiving mother, who dissolved the imperfect nuptials before they had been ratified by the ceremonies of the church.

Before the departure of Belisarius, Persia was besiegéd, and few cities were impregnable to the Gothic army. Ravenna, Aosta, and Crotone, still resisted the barbarians; and when Totila asked in marriage one of the daughters of France, he was stung by the just reproach that the king of Italy was unworthy of his title till it was acknowledged by the Roman people. Three thousand of the bravest soldiers had been left to defend the capital. On the suspicion of a monopoly, they massacred the governor, and announced to Justinian, by a deputation of the clergy, that unless their offences was pardoned, and their arms were satisfied, they should instantly accept the tempting offers of Totila. But the officer who succeeded to the command
his name was Diogenes) deserved their esteem and confidence; and the Goths, instead of finding an easy conquest, encountered a vigorous resistance from the soldiers and people, who patiently endured the loss of the port and of all maritime supplies. The siege of Rome would perhaps have been raised, if the liberality of Totila to the usurrians had not encouraged some of their venal countrymen to copy the example of treason. In a dark night, while the Gothic trumpets sounded on another side, they silently opened the gate of St. Paul; the barbarians rushed into the city; and the flying garrison was intercepted before they could reach the harbour of Centumcellas. A soldier trained in the school of Bellarius, Paul of Cilicia, retired with four hundred men to the mole of Hadrian. They repelled the Goths; but they felt the approach of famine; and their aversion to the taste of horse-flesh confirmed their resolution to risk the event of a desperate and decisive battle. But their spirit insensibly stooped to the offers of capitulation: they retrieved their arrows of jet, and preserved their arms and horses, by enlisting in the service of Totila; their chiefs, who pleaded a lawful attachment in their wives and children in the East, were dismissed with honour; and above four hundred enemies, who had taken refuge in the sanctuaries, were saved by the clemency of the victor. He no longer entertained a wish of destroying the soldiers of Rome, which he now respected as the seat of the Gothic kingdom; the senate and people were restored to their country; the means of subsistence were liberally provided; and Totila, in the rules of peace, exhibited the equestrian games of the circus. Whilst he amused the eyes of the multitude, four hundred vessels were employed for the embarkation of his troops. The cities of Illyricum and Tarentum were reduced; land was invaded into Sicily, the object of his implacable resentment; and the island was stripped of its gold and silver, of the fruits of the earth, and of an infinite number of horses, sheep, and oxen. Sardinia and Corsica obeyed the fortune of Italy; and the sea-coast of Greece was visited by a fleet of three hundred galleys. The Goths were invited in Corcyra and the ancient continent of Epirus; they advanced as far as Nicopolis, the trophy of Augustus, and Dalmatia, once famous by the name of Iovis. In every step of his victories, the wise barbarian repeated to Justinian his desire of peace, promised the succession of his predecessors, and offered to employ the Gothic arms in the service of the empire.

Justinian was deaf to the voice of peace; but he neglected the prospects of war; and the indulgence of his temper disappointed, in some degree, the obstinacy of his passions. From this salutary slumber the empire was awakened by the pope Vigilius and the patriarch Celsegus, who appeared before his throne, and adjured him, in the name of God and the people, to resume the conquest and deliverance of Italy. In the choice of the generals, Caprice, as well as judgment, was shown. A fleet and army sailed for the relief of Sicily, under the conduct of Liberator; but his youth and want of experience were afterwards discovered, and before he touched the shores of the island he was overtaken by his successor. In the place of Liberator, the consular Artabanus was raised from a private citizen, to military honours; in the piety presumption, that gratitude would animate his valour and fortify his allegiance. Belisarius exposed in the shade of his laurels, but the command of the principal army was reserved for Germanus, the emperor's nephew, whose rank and merit had been long depressed by the jealousy of the court. Theodosia had injured him in the rights of a private citizen, the marriage of his children, and the testament of his brother; and although his conduct was pure and blameless, Justinian was displeased that he should be thought worthy of the confidence of the emperors. The life of Germanus was a lesson of implicit obedience: he was boldly resolved to preserve his name and character in the factions of the circus; the gravity of his manners was tempered by innocent cheerfulness; and his riders were least without interest to indulgent or deserving friends. His valor had formerly triumphed over the Scythians of the Danube and the rebels of Africa: the first report of his promotion revived the hopes of the Italians; and he was privately assured, that a crowd of Roman desirers would abandon, on his approach, the standard of Totila. His second marriage with Malacantha, the grand-daughter of Theodotius, endeared Germanus to the Goths themselves; and they marched with reluctance against the father of a royal infant, the last offspring of the line of Amali. A splendid allowance was assigned by the emperor, the general contributed his private fortune; his two sons were popular and active; and he succeeded, in the promptitude and success of his schemes, the expectation of mankind. He was permitted to select some squadrons of Thracian cavalry: the veterans, as well as the youth of Constantinople and Europe, engaged their voluntary service; and as far as the heart of Germany, his fame and liberality attracted the aid of the barbarians. The Romans advanced to Sardinia; an army of Scythians first before their march; but within two days of their final departure, the designs of Germanus were terminated by his death and death. Yet the impulse which he had given to the Italian war

23. The Romans were still attached to the monasteries of those saints, whose names were associated with the name of Rome, of a dignitary of equal standing. All, in fact, in a larger, 100 to 1000, was, in reality, a quarrel of forces, of the states of the Avignon. [See also, Rome, traum. 19, p. 5, in p. 3, 363. Germanus, Rome, 1, p. 12, p. 12, 364. But all authority is questioned.

24. In these events, Persia seems having been annexed for the sake of its power of commerce, and the secure possession of the trade of Delhi (Oxenstierne, H. D.), but he failed in a recent essay of this subject (Oxenstierne, H. D.), but he failed in a recent essay of this subject (Oxenstierne, p. 12). Illustrations had supposed it to be the culmine of a rock.

animated by instant danger, and the disaffected might be seduced by mutual ignorance. In his march from Ravenna, the Roman general clasped the garrison of Rimini, traversed in a direct line the hills of Urbino, and re-entered the Flaminian way, nine miles beyond the perforated rock, an obstacle of art and nature which might have stopped or retarded his progress. The Goths were assembled in the neighborhood of Rome, they advanced without delay to seek a superior enemy, and the two armies approached each other at the distance of one hundred furlongs, between Tagoia and the sepulchers of the Gauls. The haughty message of Narses was an offer, not of peace, but of pardon. The answer of the Gothic king declared his resolution, to die or conquer. "What day," said the messenger, "will you fix for the combat?" "The eighth day," replied Totila: but early the next morning he attempted to surprise a foe, suspicions of deceit, and prepared for battle. Ten thousand Heruli and Lombards, of approved valor and devout faith, were placed in the centers. Each of the wings was composed of eight thousand Romans; the right was guarded by the cavalry of the Huns, the left by fifteen hundred chosen horse, destined, according to the emergencies of action, to sustain the retreat of their friends, or to encompass the flank of the enemy. From his proper station at the head of the right wing, the emperor rode along the line, expressing by his voice and countenance the assurance of victory: exciting the soldiers of the emperor to punish the guilt and multitude of a band of robbers; and exhorting to their view gold chains, collars, and bracelets, the rewards of military virtue. From the event of a single combat, they drew an omen of success; and they believed with pleasure the courage of fifty archers, who maintained a small resistance against three successive attacks of the Gothic cavalry. At the distance only of two bowshots, the armies spent the morning in dextrous suspense, and the Romans tasted some necessary food, without unloosing the cuisses from their breast, or the bridle from their horses. Narses awaited the charge; and it was delayed by Totila till he had received his last succours of two thousand Goths. While he consummated the hours in fruitless trust, the king exhibited in a narrow space the strength and agility of a warrior. His armure was enriched with gold; his purple banner floated with the wind; he cast his lance into the air; caught it with the right hand; shifted it to the left; threw himself backward, recovered his seat; and managed a fiery steed in all the paces and evolutions of the equestrian school. As soon as the succours had arrived, he retired to his tent, assumed the dress and arms of a private soldier; and gave the signal of battle. The first line of cavalry advanced with more courage than discretion, and left behind them the infantry of the second line. They were soon engaged between the hams of a crescent, into which the adverse wings had been insensibly curved, and were saluted from either side by the volleys of four thousand archers. Their ardour, and even their distress, drove them forwards to a close and unequal conflict, in which they could only use their lances against an enemy equally skilled in all the instruments of war. A generous emulation inspired the Romans and their barbarian allies; and Narses, who calmly viewed and directed their efforts, doubted to whom he should adjudge the prize of superior bravery. The Gothic cavalry was astounded and disordered, pressed and broken; and the line of infantry, instead of presenting their spears, or opening their intervals, were trampled under the feet of the flying horse. Six thousand of the Goths were slaughtered without mercy in the field of Tagoia. Their king, with five attendants, was overthrown by Asbad, of the race of the Geppidi: "Spare the king of Italy," cried a loyal voice; and Asbad struck his lance through the body of Totila. The blow was instantly avenged by the faithful Goths; they transported their dying monarch seven miles beyond the scene of his disgrace; and his last moments were not envied by the presence of an enemy. Compassion afforded him the shelter of an obscure tomb: but the Romans were not satisfied of their victory, till they beheld the corpse of the Gothic king. His hat, enriched with gems, and his bloody robe, were presented to Justinian by the messengers of triumph.

As soon as Narses had paid his devotions to the author of victory, and the blessed Virgin, his peculiar patroness; he praised, rewarded, and dismissed the Lombards. The villages had been reduced to salves by these valiant savages; they ravished matrons and virgins on the altar; their retreat was diligently watched by a strong detachment of regular forces, who prevented a repetition of the like disorders. The victorious emperor pursued his march through Tuscany, accepted the submission of the Goths, heard the acclamations, and often the complaints, of the Italians, and encompassed the walls of Rome with the remainder of his formidable host. Round the whole circumference, Narses assigned to himself, and to each of his lieutenants, a real or a figured attack, while he silently marked the place of easy and unmartial entrance. Neither the fortifications of Hadrian's mole, nor of the port, could long delay the progress of the conqueror; and Justinian once more received the keys of Rome, which, under his reign, had been lost.

Commentary by

Section 32.2.

Commentary by

Section 32.3.

Commentary by

Section 32.4.
tions taken and recovered. But the deliv-
erance of Rome was the last calamity of the
Roman people. The barbarian allies of Narses
too frequently confounded the privileges of
peace and war. The despair of the flying Goths
found some consolation in sanguinary re-
venge: and three hundred youths of the noblest
families, who had been sent as hostages beyond
the Po, were inhumanly slain by the successor
of Totila. The fate of the senate suggests an
awful lesson of the vicesitude of human affairs.
Of the senators whom Totila had banished from
their country, some were rescued by an officer of
Belisarius, and transported from Campusi to
Sicily; while others were too guilty to confide
in the clemency of Justinian, or too poor to
provide horses for their escape to the sea-shore.
Their brethren languished five years in a state
of indigence and exile: the victory of Naries
revived their hopes: but their premature return
to the metropolis was prevented by the furious
Goths: and all the fortresses of Campusi were
stained with patrician blood. After a period of
thirteen centuries, the institution of Romnlius
expired: and if the nobles of Rome still as-
sumed the title of senators, few subsequent traces
can be discovered of a public council, or constitu-
tional order. Ascend six hundred
years, and contemplate the kings of the earth
adlecting an audience, as the slaves or freedom
of the Roman senate.

The Gothic war was yet alive. The bravest of the nation retired
beyond the Po: and Theodora was un-
continuously shown to succeed and re-
venge their departed hero. The new king
immediately sent ambassadors to implore, or
rather to purchase, the aid of the Franks, and
nobly lavished, for the public safety, the riches
which had been deposited in the palace of Pavia.
The residue of the royal treasure was guarded
by his brother Aligern at Cama in Campusii;
but the strong castle which Totila had fortified
was closely besieged by the arms of Naries.
From the Alps to the foot of Mount Vesuvius,
the Gothic king, by rapid and secret marches,
advanced to the relief of his brother, eluded the
vigilance of the Roman chiefs, and pitched his
army on the banks of the Sarnus or Durance,
which flows from Nuceria into the Bay of Naples.
The river separated the two armies: sixty days
were consumed in distant and fruitless combats,
and Theodora maintained this important post, till
she was deserted by his fleet and the hope of
substitution. With reluctance steps he ascended the
Lacrian mount, where the physicians of Rome,
since the time of Galen, had sent their patients
for the benefit of the air and the milk. But
the Goths soon embraced a more generous reso-
nption: to decise the hill, to dismiss their
horses, and to die in arms, and in the possession
of freedom. The king marched at their head,
bearing in his right hand a lance, and an ample
buckler in his left: with the sun he struck dead
the foremost of the assailants; with the other he
received the weapons which every hand was am-
bitions to aim against his life. After a combat of
many hours, his left arm was fatigued by the
weight of twelve jarcins which hung from his
shield. Without moving from his ground, or sus-
pending his blows, the hero called aloud on his
attendants for a fresh buckler, but in the moment,
while his side was uncovered, it was pierced by
a mortal dart. He fell: and his head, exalted
on a spear, proclaimed to the nations, that the
Gothic kingdom was no more. But the example
of his death served only to animate the compa-
nions who had sworn to perish with the emperor.
They fought till darkness descended on the earth.
They rejoiced on their arms. The combat was
renewed with the return of light, and maintained
with unabated vigour till the evening of the
second day. The repose of the second night, the
want of water, and the loss of their bravest
champions, determined the surviving Goths to
accept the fair capitulation which the prudent
of Naries was inclined to propose. They em-
braced the alternative of residing in Italy, as
the subjects and soldiers of Justinian, or depart-
ing with a portion of their private wealth, in
search of some independent country. Yet the
oath of fidelity or exile was alike rejected by one thousand Goths, who broke away before
the treaty was signed, and boldly effected their
retreat to the walls of Pavia. The spirit as
well as the situation of Aligern, prompted him
to imitate rather than to bawl his brother; a
strong and dexterous archer, he transperced
with a single arrow the armour and breast of his
antagonist; and his military conduct de-
tailed Cuma before a year against the forces of
the Romans. Their industry had scooped the
Sibyl's cave into a prodigious mine; combustible
materials were introduced to consume the temporary props: the wall and the gate of Cuma sunk into the cavern, but the ruins formed a deep and inaccessible precipice. On
the fragment of a rock, Aligern stood alone
and unshaken, till he calmly surveyed the hopeless condition of his country, and judged it
more honourable to be the friend of Naries
than the slave of the Franks. After the defeat
of Cuma, the Roman general separated his troops
to reduce the cities of Italy; Lucius maintained a

12 See recent Biographies of nares and t. In the year 522 p. L. s. 361. Cuma was assi-
in 525 by Totila, in 527 by Belisarius, in 528 by Totila, and in 530 by Naries. Matronas had insubordination of Cavo-
in the province of Nuceria, which he afterwards recovers; but the Visigoths were driven by the Visigoths
and in the year 532. Lucius and Justinian, having taken the
victorious.

11 See the account of Francis. On the
in the year 522. See Encomium Lapux. p. 367. 37, is a curious picture of a
two names, Cuma, and Lucius.

12 See the accounts of Francis. 532. In
the year 522. Lucius and Justinian, having taken the
victorious.

13 See the account of Francis. 532. In
the year 522. Lucius and Justinian, having taken the
victorious.

14 The name of Francis. 532. In
the year 522. Lucius and Justinian, having taken the
victorious.

15 See the account of Francis. 532. In
the year 522. Lucius and Justinian, having taken the
victorious.

16 See the account of Francis. 532. In
the year 522. Lucius and Justinian, having taken the
victorious.
long and vigorous siege; and such was the humanity or the prudence of Nursae, that the repeated perjury of the inhabitants could not provoke him to exact the forfeit lives of their hostages. These hostages were dismissed in safety; and their grateful zeal at length subdued the obstinacy of their countrymen. Before Lucce had surrendered, Italy was overwhelmed by a new deluge of barbarians. A forlorn youth, the grandson of Clovis, reigning over the Franks and the Oriental Franks, the guardian of Theodebert entertained with sycophants and flatterers the magnificent promises of the Gothic ambassadors. But the spirit of a martial people outran the timid councils of the court; two brothers, Lothaire and Buchelis, the Duke of the Alamanni, sought as the leaders of the Italian war; and seventy-five thousand Germans descended in the autumn from the Rhidian Alps into the plain of Milan. The vanguard of the Roman army was stationed near the Po, under the command of Pulcarius, a bold Herulian, who rashly conceived that personal bravery was the sole duty and merit of a commander. As he marched without order or precaution along the Emilian way, an ambush of Franks suddenly rose from the amphitheatre of Pavia; his troops were surprised and routed; but their leader refused to fly, declaring, to the last moment, that death was less terrible than the angry countenance of Nursae. The death of Pulcarius, and the retreat of the surviving chiefs, decided the fluctuating and rebellious temper of the Goths; they flew to the standard of their deliverers, and admitted them into the cities which still resisted the arms of the Roman general. The conqueror of Italy opened a free passage to the irresistible torrent of barbarians. They passed under the walls of Como, and answered by threats and reproaches the advice of Aligern, that the Gothic treasures could no longer repay the labour of an invasion. Two thousand Franks were destroyed by the skill and valor of Nursae himself, who sallied from Milan at the head of three hundred horsemen to chastise the licentious rapine of their march. On the confines of Sumnium, the two brothers divided their forces. With the right wing, Buchelis assumed the spoil of Campania, Lucania, and Bruttium; with the left, Lothaire accepted the plunder of Apulia and Calabria. They followed the coast of the Mediterranean and the Adriatic, as far as Rhegium and Otranto, and the extreme lands of Italy were the term of their destructive progress. The Franks, who were Christians and Catholics, contented themselves with simple pillage and occasional murder. But the churches which their piety had spared, were stripped by the sacrilegious hands of the Alamanni, who sacrificed horses' heads to their native deities of the woods and rivers; they melted or profaned the consecrated vessels, and the relics of shrines and altars were stained with the blood of the faithful. Buchelis was actuated by ambition, and Lothaire byavarice. The former aspired to restore the Gothic kingdom; the latter, after a promise to his brother of speedily succours, returned by the same road to deposit his treasure beyond the Alps. The strength of their armies was already wasted by the change of climate and contagion of disease: the Germans revelled in the vintage of Italy; and their own intoxication was increased, in some degree, the miseries of a defunct race.

At the entrance of the spring, the Imperial troops, who had guarded the cities, assembled, to the number of eighteen thousand men, in the neighbourhood of Rome. Their winter hours had not been consumed in idleness. By the command, and after the example of Nursae, they repeated each day their military exercise on foot and on horseback, accustomed their ears by the sound of the trumpet, and practised the steps and evolutions of the Pyrrhian dance. From the streets of Sicily, Buchelis, with thirty thousand Franks and Alamanni, slowly moved towards Capua, occupied with a wooden tower the bridge of Cassinum, covered his right by the streams of the Vulturnus, and secured the rest of his encampment by a rampart of sharp stones, and a circle of wagons, whose wheels were buried in the earth. He impatiently expected the return of Lothaire; ignorant, alas! that his brother could never return, and that the chief and his army had been swept away by a strange disease on the banks of the lake Beneventum, between Trent and Verona. The banners of Nursae soon approached the Vulturnus, and the eyes of Italy were anxiously fixed on the event of this final contest. Perhaps the talents of the Romans were most conspicuous in the calm operations which preceded the tumult of a battle. His skill in movements and interposition of the auxiliaries of the barbarian, deprived him of the advantage of the bridge and river, and in the choice of the ground and moment of action reduced him to comply with the inclination of his enemy.

On the morning of the important day, when the ranks were already formed, a servant, for some trivial fault, was killed by his master, one of the leaders of the Haurii. The justice of the passions of Nursae was awakened: he summoned the offender to his presence, and without listening to his excuses, gave the signal to the minister of death. The Haurii felt the lidenity; they halted; but the Romans general, without soothing their rage, or expecting their resolution, called aloud, as the trumpets sounded, that unless they hastened to occupy their place...
they would lose the honour of the victory. His troops were disposed in a long front, the cavalry on the wings; in the centre, the heavy-armed foot; the archers and slingers in the rear.

The Germans advanced in a sharp-pointed column, of the form of a triangle or solid wedge. They pierced the feeble centre of Nares, who received them with a smile into the fatal snare, and directed his wings of cavalry instantly to wheel on their flanks and encompass their rear. The last of the Franks and Alamanni consisted of infantry: a sword and buckler hung by their side; and they used, as their weapons of offence, a weighty halberd, and a hooked javelin, which were only formidable in close combat, or at a short distance. The flower of the Roman archers, on horseback, and in complete armour, skirmished without peril round this immovable phalanx; supplied by active speed the deficiency of number; and aimed their arrows against a crowd of barbarians, who, instead of a cuirass and helmet, were covered by a loose garment of fur or bison. They passed, they travelled, their ranks were confounded, and in the decisive moment the Herculis, preferring glory to revenge, charged with rapid violence the head of the column. Their leader Simulal, and Aligera, the Gothic princes, discerned the prize of superior valour; and their example incited the victorious troops to achieve with sword and spear the destruction of the enemy. Boniface, and the greatest part of his army, perished on the field of battle; in the waters of the Valturianus, or by the hands of the enraged peasants: but it may seem incredible, that a victory, which no more than five of the Alamanni survived, could be purchased with the loss of four score Romans. Seven thousand Gothi, the relics of the war, defended the fortress of Campanum till the following spring; and every messenger of Nares announced the reduction of the Italian cities, whose names were corrupted by the ignorance or vanity of the Greeks. After the battle of Castridarium, Nares entered the capital; the arms and treasures of the Goths, the Franks, and the Alamanni, were displayed; his soldiers, with garlands in their hands, chanted the praises of the conqueror; and Rome, for the last time, beheld the semblance of a triumph.

After a reign of sixty years, the throne of the Gothic kings was filled by the exarchs of Ravenna, the representatives in peace and war of the emperor of the Romans. Their jurisdiction was soon reduced to the limits of a narrow province: but Nares himself, the first and most powerful of the exarchs, administered above fifteen years the entire kingdom of Italy. Like Belisarius, he had deserved the honours of envy, calumny, and disgrace; but the favourite empress still enjoyed the confidence of Justinian, or the leader of a victorious army avowed and represented the ingratidude of a timid court. Yet it was not by weak and mischievous indulgence that Nares secured the attachment of his troops. Forgetful of the past, and regardless of the future, they abused the present hour of prosperity and peace.

The cities of Italy resounded with the noise of drinking and dancing: the spoils of victory were wasted in sensual pleasures; and nothing (says Agathias) remained, unless to exchange their shields and helmets for the soft lutes and the capacious bogshead. In a manly oration, not unworthy of a Roman censor, the empress reproved these disorderly vices, which sufficed their fame, and endangered their safety. The soldiers blushed and obeyed: discipline was confirmed; the fortifications were restored; a dux was stationed for the defence and military command of each of the principal cities; and the eye of Nares pervaded the ample prospect from Calabria to the Alps. The remains of the Gothic nation evacuated the country, or mingled with the people: the Franks, instead of revenging the death of Buccecid, abandoned, without a struggle, their Italian conquests; and the rebellious Simulal, chief of the Herculis, was subdued, taken, and hung on a lofty gallows by the inflexible justice of the exarch.

The civil state of Italy, after the agitation of a long tetempest, was fixed by a pragmatic sanction, which the emperor pronounced at the request of the pope. Justinian introduced his own jurisprudence into the schools and tribunals of the West; he ratified the acts of Theodoric and his immediate successors, but every deed was rescinded and abolished, which force had extorted, or fear had subscribed, under the usurpation of Totila. A moderate theory was framed to reconcile the rights of property with the safety of prescription, the claims of the state with the poverty of the people, and the pardon of offences with the interest of virtue and order of society. Under the exarchs of Ravenna, Rome was degraded to the second rank.

Yet the senators were gratified by the permission of visiting their estates in Italy, and of appeasing, without obstacle, the throne of Constantinople: the regulation of weights and measures was delegated to the pope and senate; and the salaries of lawyers and physicians, of orators and grammarians, were destined to preserve, or rekindle, the light of science in the ancient capital. Justinian might dictate benevolent edicts, and Nares might second his wishes by the restoration of cities, and more especially of churches. But the power of kings is most effectual to destroy: and the twenty years of the Gothic war had consummated the distress
and degradation of Italy. As early as the fourth campaign, under the discipline of Belisarius himself, fifty thousand labourers died of hunger, 50 in the narrow region of Pisennum, and a strict interpretation of the evidence of Procopius would swell the loss of Italy above the total sum of her present inhabitants. 50

I desire to believe, but I dare not affirm, that Belisarius sincerely rejoiced in the triumph of Narses. Yet the consciousness of his own exploits might teach him to esteem without jealousy the merit of a rival; and the repute of the aged warrior was crowned by a last victory which saved the emperor and the capital. The barbarians, who annually visited the provinces of Europe, were less discouraged by such accidental defeats, than they were excited by the double hopes of spoil and of subsidy. In the thirty-second winter of Justinian's reign, the Danube was deeply frozen; Zabergan led the cavalry of the Bulgarians, and his standard was followed by a promiscuous multitude of Slavonians. The savage chief passed, without opposition, the river and the mountains, spread his troops over Macedonia and Thrace, and advanced with no more than seven thousand horse to the long wall, which should have defended the territory of Constantinople. But the works of men are impotent against the assaults of nature; a recent earthquake had shaken the foundations of the wall; and the forces of the empire were employed on the distant frontiers of Italy, Africa, and Persia. The standards of the enemy, or companies of the garrison of the fortresses, had been augmented to the number of five thousand five hundred men, whose ordinary station was in the peaceful cities of Asia. But the places of the brave Armenians were incessantly supplied by lazy citizens, who purchased an exemption from the duties of civil life, without being exposed to the dangers of military service. Of such soldiers, few could be induced to rally from the gates; and none could be persuaded to remain in the field, unless they wanted strength and speed to escape from the Bulgarians. The report of the fugitives exaggerated the numbers and ferocity of the enemy, who had polluted holy virgin, and abandoned new-born infants to the mages and vultures; a crowd of rustics, impoverishing flood and protection, increased the consternation of the city, and the tents of Zabergan were pitched at the distance of twenty miles on the banks of a small river, which enwrapped Melanthes, and afterwards falls into the Propontis. Justinian trembled; and those who had only seen the emperor in his old age, were pleased to suppose, that he had lost the alacrity and vigour of his youth. By his command, the vessels of gold and silver were removed from the churches in the neighbourhood, and even the suburbs of Constantinople; the ramparts were lined with terrifying spectacles; the golden gate was crowded with useless generals and tribunes, and the senate shared the fatigues and the apprehensions of the populace.

But the eyes of the prince and the ears of the people were directed to a distant war. The Spaniard, who was compelled by the public danger to resume the armament in which he had entered Carthage and defended Rome. The houses of the royal stables, of private citizens, and even of the circus, were hastily collected; the emolument of the old and young was raised by the name of Belisarius, and his first encampment was in the presence of a victorious enemy. His prudence, and the labour of the friendly peasants, secured, with a ditch and rampart, the repute of the night; immovable fires, and clouds of dust, were artfully contrived to magnify the opinion of his strength; his soldiers suddenly passed from dependancy to presumption; and, while ten thousand voices demanded the battle, Belisarius dissembled his knowledge, that in the hour of trial he might depend on the firmness of three hundred veterans. The success of the Bulgarian cavalry advanced the desired change. But they heard the shouts of multitudes, they beheld the arms and discipline of the foe; they were assaulted on the flanks by two ambuscades which arose from the woods; their foremost warriors fell by the hand of the aged hero and his guards; and the existence of their renovation was rendered useless by the close attack and rapid pursuit of the Romans. In this action (so speedily was their flight) the Bulgarians lost only four hundred horse; but Constantinople was saved; and Zabergan, who felt the hand of a master, withdrew to a respectful distance. But his friends were numerous in the councils of the emperor, and Belisarius obeyed with reluctance the commands of Cyril and Justinian, which forbade him to achieve the deliverance of his country. On his return to the city, the people, still conscious of their danger, accompanied his triumph with acclamations of joy and gratitude, which were imputed as a crime to the victorious general. But when he entered the palace, the courtiers were silent, and the emperor, after a cold and thankless embrace, dismissed him to mingle with the train of slaves. Yet so deep was the impression of his glory on the minds of men, that Justinian, in the seventy-seventh year of his age, was encouraged to advance near forty miles from the capital, and to inspect in person the restoration of the long wall. The Bulgarians waited the summons in the plains of Thrace; but they were baffled in their hopes by the failure of their rash attempts on Greece and the Chersonesus. A menace of killing their pri-
The Decline and Fall

Chapter XLIII

About two years after the last victory of Belisarius, the emperor returned from a Thracian journey of health, or business, or devotion. Justinian was afflicted by a pain in his head; and his private entry countermanded the rumour of his death. Before the third hour of the day, the bakers' shops were plundered of their bread, the houses were shut, and every citizen, with hope or terror, prepared for the impending tumult. The senators themselves, fearful and suspicious, were convened at the ninth hour; and the prefect received their commands to visit every quarter of the city, and proclaim a general illumination for the recovery of the emperor's health. The ferment subsided; but every accident betrayed the impotence of the government, and the factions seeped in the people: the guards were disposed to mutiny as often as their quarters were changed, or their pay was withheld: the frequent calamities of fires and earthquakes afforded the opportunities of disorder; the disputes of the kings and queens, of the orthodox and heretics, degenerated into bloody battles; and, in the history of the Persian and Arab wars, Justinian blushed for himself and for his subjects. Cautious prudence and arbitrary punishment embittered the irksomeness and discontent of a long reign: a conspiracy was formed in the palace; and, unless we are deceived by the names of Marcellus and Sergius, the most virtuous and the most prudential of the courtiers were associated in the same design. They had fixed the time of the execution; their rank gave them access to the royal banquet; and their black slaves were stationed in the vestibule and porticoes, to announce the death of the tyrant, and to excite a sedition in the capital. But the indiscretion of an accomplice saved the poor remnant of the days of Justinian. The conspirators were detected and seized, with daggers hidden under their garments: Marcellus died by his own hand, and Sergius was dragged from the sanctuary. Pressed by remorse, or tempted by the hopes of safety, he accused two officers of the household of Belisarius; and torture forced them to declare that they had acted according to the secret instructions of their master. Posterity will not hastily believe in an hero who, in the vigour of life, had disdained the fairest offers of ambition and revenge, should stoop to the murder of his prince, whom he could not long expect to survive. His followers were impatient to fly; but flight must have been supported by rebellion, and he had lived enough for nature and for glory. Belisarius appeared before the council with less fear than indignation: after forty years' service, the emperor had prejudged his guilt; and injustice was sanctioned by the presence and authority of the patriarch. The life of Belisarius was gracefully spared; but his fortunes were sequestered, and, from December to July, he was guarded as a prisoner in his own palace. At length his innocence was acknowledged; his freedom and honours were restored; and death, which might have been hastened by resentment and grief, removed him from the world about eight months after his deliverance. The name of Belisarius can never die; but instead of the funeral, the monuments, the statues, so justly due to his memory, I only read, that his treasures, the spoils of the Goths and Vandals, were immediately confiscated by the emperor. Some decent portion was reserved, however, for the use of his widow; and as Antonina had much to repent, she devoted the last remains of her life to fortune and to the foundation of a convent. Such is the simple and genuine narrative of the fall of Belisarius and the ingratitude of Justinian. That he was deprived of his eyes, and reduced by envy to beg his bread, "Give me a penny to Belisarius the general!" is a fiction of later times, which has obtained credulity, and which is rather a strange example of the vicissitudes of fortune. If the emperor could rejoice in the death of Belisarius, he enjoyed the base satisfaction only eight months, the last period of a reign of thirty-eight, and a life of eighty-three years. It would be difficult to trace the character of a prince who is not the most conspicuous object of his own times; but the confessions of an enemy may be received as the safest evidence of his virtues. The resemblance of Justinian to the bust of Donatian is maliciously urged; with the acknowledgment, however, of a well-proportioned figure, a roddy complexion, and a pleasing countenance. The emperor was easy of access, patient of hearing, courteous and
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

718

affable to discourse, and a master of the angry passions, which rage with such destructive violence in the breast of a despot. Procopius praises his temper, to reproach him with calm and deliberate cruelty; but in the conspiracies which attacked his authority and person, a more candid judge will approve the justice, or admire the clemency of Justinian. He excelled in the private virtues of chastity and temperance; but the impartial love of beauty would have been less mischievous than his conjugal tenderness for Theodora; and his abstinence was regulated, not by the prudence of a philosopher, but the superstition of a monk. His repasts were short and frugal; on solemn fasts, he contented himself with water and vegetables; and such was his strength, as well as his courage, that he frequently passed two days, and as many nights, without tasting any food. The measure of his sleep was not less rigorous: after the repose of a single hour, the body was awakened by the soul; and, to the astonishment of his chamberlains, Justinian walked or studied till the morning light. Such restless application prolonged his time for the acquisition of knowledge and the dispatch of business; and he might seriously deserve the reproach of confounding, by minute and propteramor diligence, the general order of his administration. The emperor professed himself a musician and architect, a poet and philosopher, a lawyer and theologian; and if he failed in the enterprises of reconquering the Christian world, the rivalry of the Roman jurisprudence is a noble monument of his spirit and industry. In the government of the empire, he was less wise or less successful: the age was unfortunate; the people were oppressed and discontented; Theodora abused her power; a succession of bad ministers disgraced his judgment; and Justinian was neither beloved in his life, nor regretted at his death. The love of fame was deeply implanted in his breast, but he endeavored to the poor ambition of titles, honours, and contemporary praise; and while he laboured to its admiration, he deified the empress and affection of the Romans. The design of the African and Italian wars was boldly conceived and executed; and his penetration discovered the talents of Belisarius in the camp: of Narses in the palace. But the same of the emperor is eclipsed by the names of his victorious generals; and Belisarius still lives, to upbraid the envy and ingratitude of his sovereign. The partial favour of mankind applauds the genius of a conqueror, who leads and directs his subjects in the exercise of arms. The characters of Philip the Second and of Justinian are distinguished by the cold ambition which delights in war, and declines the dangers of the field. Yet a colossal...

78 The studies and princes of Justinian are traced by the author of his life, whose descriptions of the empress Narses, II. ii. 19. and of Justinian, II. ii. 40, are less defective than the præsumptio, 1. iii. 5. of the historian; see the Life of Justinian by Lubothes, (Ep. 158, 159.)

79 See the Life of Theodora, by Lubothes, (Ep. 158, 159.)

80 P. Chirchil's Life of Bessarion (3. I. 10. 11), a picture of original meanness; from Ptolemy in the time of Cæsar, to Justinian in the time of Theodora, (Ep. 158, 159.)

81 The Life of Justinian is enriched by John Malms (Ep. ii. 139, 140.) and Thomean (Ep. 155, 156), on their different expeditions. The prologue of the Annals of the Eastern Church (Ep. 157, 158, to a different emperor)...

82) 3. 14. 15, and 16. of its relative right. The annals of the same work, as quoted by Thomean (Ep. 158, 159), are a distinct history.

83) See viii. 160. of Natural Questions discovered in the divers of nature, a philosophical mode. Yet though we may not consider one...

84) The Scotch and pallets of Justinian are traced by the author of his life, whose descriptions of the empress Narses, II. ii. 19. and of Justinian, II. ii. 40, are less defective than the præsumptio, 1. iii. 5. of the historian; see the Life of Justinian by Lubothes, (Ep. 158, 159.)


86) A Distant, II. ii. 19. and II. ii. 20. of the emperor's travels, II. ii. 21. and 22. of the subject of the same monument which appears among the earth, and the life of her country: she abandoned the sciences of it a statue of bronze represented the emperor on horseback, preparing to march against the Persians in the habit and armour of Achilles. In the great square before the church of St. Sophia, this monument was raised on a brass column and a stone pedestal: seven steps; and the pillar of Theodora, which weighed seven thousand four hundred pounds of silver, was removed from the same place by the saracen and vanity of Justinian. Future princes were more just or indulgent to his memory, the elder Andronicus, in the beginning of the fourteenth century, repaired and beautified his equestrian statue; since the fall of the empire, it has been melted into cannon by the victorious Turks.

87) I shall conclude this chapter with the comets, the earthquakes, and the plagues, which demonstrated or afflicted the age of Justinian.

88) See viii. 160. of Natural Questions discovered in the divers of nature, a philosophical mode. Yet though we may not consider one...
and sulphur. But their times and effects appear to lie beyond the reach of human curiosity, and the philosopher will discreetly abstain from the prediction of earthquakes, till he has counted the drops of water that silently filter on the inflammable mineral, and measured the cavors which increase by resistance the explosion of the imprisoned air. Without assigning the cause, history will distinguish the periods in which these calamitous events have been rare or frequent, and will observe, that this favor of the earth raged with uncommon violence during the reign of Justinian. Each year is marked by the repetition of earthquakes, of such duration, that Constantineople has been shaken above forty days; of such extent, that the shock has been communicated to the whole surface of the globe, or at least of the Roman empire. An implosive or vibratory motion was felt; enormous chasms were opened, huge and husky bodies were discharged into the air, the sea alternately advanced and retreated beyond its ordinary bounds, and a mountain was torn from Libanus, and cast into the waves, where it protected, like a mole, the new harbour of Butrys in Phœnicia. The stroke that spaites on an uplift, may crush the insect myriads in the dust; yet truth must extort a confession, that man has industriously laboured for his own destruction. The institution of great cities, which include a nation within the limits of a wall, almost realises the wish of Caligula, that the Roman people had but one neck. Two hundred and fifty thousand persons are said to have perished in the earthquake of Antioch, whose domestic multitudes were swelled by the influx of strangers to the festival of the Ascension. The loss of Berytus was of smaller account, but of much greater value.

That city, on the coast of Phœnicia, was illustrated by the study of the civil law, which opened the narrow road to wealth and dignity; the schools of Berytus were filled with the rising spirits of the age, and many a youth was lost in the earthquake, who might have lived to be the scourge or the guardian of his country. In these disasters, the architect becomes the enemy of mankind. The hut of a savage, or the tent of an Arab, may be thrown down without injury to the inhabitant; and the Peruvians had reason to deride the folly of their Spanish conquerors, who with so much cost and labour created their own sepulchres. The rich marble of a patrician are dashed on his own head; a whole people is buried under the ruins of public and private

79 Pryn (Hist. Nat. B. v. 27.) has summarised the evidence against of Australia. America, in his most ingenious letters in the T. Fowkes' Cura, and in several of his last letters, from Jan. 1 to the year 42. Prynne and the Cura, and Cura, vol. ii, pp. 151, 353, 391. He had been visited by the astronomers of the time, who have described (Vis d. vert. Oct. 1632.) the comet, from its first appearance in the heavens, to its final extinction. The comet, from its first appearance in the heavens, to its final extinction.

80 The nature of the soil may indicate the countries most exposed to these formidable concomitances, since they are caused by subterraneous fires, and such fires are kindled by the union and fermentation of iron

81 The earthquake that shook the Roman world in the reign of Justinian, caused so much suffering in Syria; and Baedeker makes it probable that the earthquake of 1050, which caused so much suffering in Syria, was the same. Baedeker makes it probable that the earthquake of 1050, which caused so much suffering in Syria, was the same.
illness; and the conflagration is kindled and propagated by the intemperate fires which are necessary for the subsistence and manufactures of a great city. Instead of the mutual sympathy which might comfort and assist the distressed, they disdainfully experience the vice and passions which are released from the fire of punishment: the burning houses are pillaged by intrepid savages; revenge enhances the moment, and selects the victim; and the earth often swallows the accursed, or the ravisher, in the consummation of their crimes. Superstition involves the present danger with invisible terrors; and if the image of death may sometimes be subservient to the virtue or repentance of an afflicted people is more forcibly moved to expect the end of the world, or is depressed with serpentine homage the wrath of an avenging Deity.

III. Ethiopia and Egypt have been stigmatised in every age, as the original source and seminary of the plague. In a damp, hot, stagnating air, this African fever is generated from the putrefaction of animal substances, and especially from the carcasses of locusts, not less destructive to mankind in their death than in their lives. The fatal disease which decimated the earth in the time of Justinian and his successors, first appeared in the neighbourhood of Pelusium, between the Serbonian bog and the eastern channel of the Nile. From thence, tracing as it were a sand-lot, it spread to the east, over Syria, Persia, and the Indies, and penetrated to the west, along the coast of Africa, and over the extremities of Europe. In the spring of the second year, Constantinople, during times or four months, was visited by the pestilence; and Propontis, who observed its progress and symptoms with the eyes of a physician, has delineated the skill and diligence of Tychæus in the description of the plague of Athens. The infection was sometimes announced by the visions of a disconsolate fancy; and the victim desirous as soon as he had heard the message and felt the stinks of an invisible specter. But the greater number, in their beds, in the streets, in their usual occupation, were surprised by a slight fever; so slight, indeed, that neither the pulse nor the colour of the patient gave any signs of the approaching danger. The same, the next, or the succeeding day, it was declared by the swelling of the glands, particularly those of the groin, of the arm-pits, and under the ear; and when these buboes or tumours were opened, they were found to contain a cool, or black substance, of the size of a lentil. If they came to a just swelling and suppuration, the patient was saved by this kind and natural discharge of the morbid humour. But if they continued hard and dry, a mortification quickly ensued, and the fifth day was commonly the term of his life. The fever was often accompanied with lethargy or delirium; the bodies of the sick were covered with black punctures or carbuncles, the symptoms of instantaneous death; and in the constitutions too feeble to produce an eruption, the vomiting of blood was followed by a mortification of the bowels. To pregnant women the plague was generally mortal; yet one infant was drawn alive from his dead mother, and three mothers survived the less of their infected fetus. Youth was the most perilous season; and the female sex was less susceptible than the male; but every rank and profession was attacked with indescribable rage, and many of those who escaped were deprived of the use of their senses, without being secure from a return of the disorder. The physicians of Constantinople were reckless and skilful; but their arts were baffled by the various symptoms and indescribable blemish of the disease: the most remedies were productive of contrary effects; and the event capriciously disappointed their prognostics of death or recovery. The order of funerals, and the right of sepulture, were confounded; those who were left without friends or seruants, by habituated in the streets, or in their obsolete houses; and a magistrate was authorised to collect the promissory bonds of dead bodies, to transport them by land or water, and to inter them in deep pits beyond the precincts of the city. Their own danger, and the prospect of public distress, awakened some remorse in the minds of the most vicious of mankind; the confidence of health again revived their passions and habits; but philosophy must disclaim the observation of Propontis, that the lives of such men were guarded by the peculiar favour of Fortune or Providence. He forgot, or perhaps he secretly recollected, that the plague had touched the person of Justinian himself; but the abominable diet of the emperor may suggest, as in the case of Socrates, a more rational and honourable cause for his recovery. During his sickness, the public consolation was expressed in the habits of the citizens; and their infidelity and despondency occasioned a general scarcity in the capital of the East.

Contagion is the inseparable symptom of the plague; which, by mutual inspiration, is transferred from man to man; and infected persons to the summit and stomach of those who approach them. While philosophers believe and tremble, it is singular, that the existence of a real danger should have been denied by a people most prone to vain and imaginary
Yet the fellow-citizens of Ptolemy were satisfied, by some short and partial experience, that the infection could not be gained by the closest conversation; and this persuasion might support the security of friends or physicians in the case of the sick, whom inhuman prudence would have condemned to solitude and despair. But the fatal security, like the predestination of the Turks, must have sided the progress of the contagion; and those salutary precautions to which Europe is indebted for its safety, were unknown to the government of Justinian. No restraint was imposed on the free and frequent intercourse of the Roman provinces; from Persia to France, the nations were mingled and infected by wars and emigrations; and the pestilential odour which lingers for years in a hole of cotton, was imported, by the abuse of trade, into the most distant regions. The mode of its propagation is explained by the remark of Ptolemy himself, that it always spread from the sea-coast to the inland country; the most sequestered islands and mountains were successively visited; the places which had escaped the fury of its first passage, were alone exposed to the contagion of the ensuing year. The winds might diffuse that subtle venom; but unless the atmosphere be previously disposed for its reception, the plague would soon expire in the cold or temperate climates of the earth. Such was the universal corruption of the air, that the pestilence which burst forth in the fifteenth year of Justinian was not checked or alleviated by any difference of the season. In time, its first malignity was abated and dispersed; the disease alternately languished and revived; but it was not till the end of a calamitous period of fifty-two years, that mankind recovered their health, or the air resumed its pure and salutary quality. No facts have been preserved to sustain an account, or even a conjecture, of the numbers that perished in this extraordinary mortality. I only find, that during three months, five, and at length ten, thousand persons died each day at Constantinople; that many cities of the East were left vacant, and that in several districts of Italy the harvest and the vintage withered on the ground. The triple scourge of war, pestilence, and famine, afflicted the subjects of Justinian, and his reign is disgraced by a visible decrease of the human species, which has never been repaired in some of the fairest countries of the globe.

CHAPTER XLIV.


The vain titles of the victors of the Nile. Justinian are crumbled into dust; but the name of the legislator is inscribed on a fair and everlasting monument. Under his reign, and by his care, the civil jurisprudence was digested in the imperial works of the Codex, the Pandects, and the Digest. The public reason of the Romans has been silently or spiritually transfused into the domestic institutions of Europe; and the laws of Justinian still command the respect and obedience of independent nations. Wise or fortunate is the prince who connects his own reputation with the human and interest of a perpetual order of men. The obsequy of their founder is the first cause which in every age has exercised the zeal and industry of the citizens. They piously commemorate his virtues; disseminate or deny his failings; and forcibly chastise the guilt or folly of the rebels who presume to sully the majesty of the purple. The idolatry of love has provoked, as it usually happens, the rancour of opposition; the character of Justinian has been exposed to the blind vanities of flattery and invective; and the injustice of a sect (the Anti-Thomists) has refused all praise and merit to the prince, his ministers, and his laws. Attached to no party, interested only for the truth and soundness of history; and directed by the most temperate and skilful guides, I enter with just dilution on the subject of civil law, which has exhausted so many learned lives, and clothed the walls of such spacious libraries. In a single, if possible, in a short chapter, I shall trace the Roman jurisprudence from Romulus to Justinian; and approach...
claim the labours of that emperor, and pause to contemplate the principles of a science so important to the peace and happiness of society. The laws of a nation form the most instructive portion of its history; and, although I have devoted myself to write the annals of a declining monarchy, I shall embrace the occasion to breathe the pure and invigorating air of the republic.

Laws of the

king of Rome. Rome was composed, with some political skill, of an elective king, a council of nobles, and a general assembly of the people. War and religion were administered by the supreme magistrate; and he alone proposed the laws, which were debated in the senate, and finally ratified or rejected by a majority of votes in the thirty curiae or parishes of the city. Romulus, Numa, and Servius Tullius, are celebrated as the most ancient legislators; and each of them claims his peculiar part in the threefold division of jurisprudence. The laws of marriage, the education of children, and the authority of parents, which may seem to draw their origin from nature itself, are ascribed to the untaught wisdom of Romulus. The law of nations and of religious worship, which Numa introduced, was derived from his terrestrial converse with the Memphis Egyptians. The first law is attributed to the experience of Servius; he balanced the rights and fortunes of the seven classes of citizens; and guarded, by fifty new regulations, the observance of contracts and the punishment of crimes. The state, which he had inclined towards a democracy, was changed by the last Tarquin into lawsless despotism; and when the kingly office was abolished, the patriots expressed the benefits of freedom. The royal laws became odious or obsolete; the mysterious deposit was silently preserved by the priests and nobles; and, at the end of sixty years, the citizens of Rome still complained that they were ruled by the arbitrary sentence of the magistrates. Yet the positive institutions of the kings had blended themselves with the public and private manners of the city; some fragments of that venerable jurisprudence were compiled by the diligence of antiquarians, and above twenty texts still speak the rudeness of the Pelasgic idiom of the Latins.

I shall not repeat the well-known story of the Decemvirs, who solicited by their actions the honour of inscribing on bronze, or wood, or ivory, the Twelve Tables of the Roman laws. They were dictated by the rigid and jealous spirit of an aristocracy, which had yielded with reluctance to the just demands of the people. But the substance of the twelve tables was adapted to the state of the city; and the Romans had emerged from barbarism, since they were capable of studying and embracing the institutions of their more enlightened neighbours. A wise Ephesian was driven by envy from his native country; before he could reach the shores of Latium, he had observed the various forms of human nature and civil society; he inquired his knowledge to the legislators of Rome, and a statute was erected in the forum to the perpetual memory of Hermodorus of Ephesus. We have passed, and divisions of the copper money, the sole coin of the infant state, were of Etruscan origin.

The government of Campania and Sicily relieved the wants of a people whose agriculture was often interrupted by war and faction; and since the trade was established, the deputies who sailed from the Tyrrhenian might return from the same harbours with a more precious cargo of political wisdom. The colonies of Great Greece had transported and improved the arts of their mother country. Cumae and Rhegium, Crotona and Tarentum, Agrigentum and Syracuse, were in the rank of the most flourishing cities. The disciples of Pythagoras applied philosophy to the use of government; the unwritten laws of Clarusulus accepted the aid of poetry and music, and Zaleucus framed the republic of the Locrians, which stood without alteration above two hundred years. From a similar motive of national pride, both Livy and Dionysius are willing to believe that the deputies of Rome visited Athens under the wise and splendid administration of Pericles; and the
modern critics. But although these venerable monuments were considered as the rule of right and the fountain of justice, they were overthrown by the weight and variety of new laws, which, at the end of five centuries, became a grievance more intolerable than the vices of the city. Three thousand brass plates, the acts of the senate and people, were deposited in the Capitol, and some of the acts, as the Julian law against extortion, surpassed the number of an hundred chapters. The Decemvirs had neglected to import the sanction of Zaleucus, which so long maintained the integrity of his republic. A Lexorius who proposed any new law, stood forth in the assembly of the people with a cord round his neck, and if the law was rejected, the innovator was instantly strangled.

The Decemvirs had been named, and their tables were approved, by an assembly of the centuries, in which riches predominated against numbers. To the first class of Romans, the proprietors of one hundred thousand pounds of copper, ninety-eight votes were assigned, and only ninety-five were left for the six inferior classes, distributed according to their substance by the artful policy of Sosius. But the tribunes soon established a more splendid and popular maxim, that every citizen has an equal right to enact the laws which he is bound to obey. Instead of the centuries, they convened the tribes; and the patricians, after an importunate struggle, submitted to the decrees of the assembly, in which their votes were confounded with those of the masses, plebeians. As long as the tribes successively passed over narrow benches, and gave their voices aloud, the conduct of each citizen was exposed to the eyes and ears of his friends and countrymen. The insolent debtor consulted the wishes of his creditor; the client would have blushed to oppose the views of his patron; the general was followed by his veterans, and the aspect of a grave magistrate was a living lesson to the multitude. A new method of secret ballot established the influence of fear and shame, of honour and interest, and the abuse of freedom accelerated the progress of anarchy and despotism. The Romans

---

[Notes and references are to be found in the original text.]

[Abridgment of Livy's history, with additions and corrections from various authors, by T. S. Eliot.]

---

[Commentary and analysis of the text by the author.]

[End of the passage with notes and references.]
had aspired to be equal; they were hallowed by the equality of servitude; and the dictates of Augustus were patiently ratified by the formal consent of the tribes or centuries. Once, and once only, he experienced a sincere and strenuous opposition. His subjects had resigned all political liberty; they defended the freedom of domestic life. A law which enforced the obligation, and strengthened the bonds of marriage, was clamorously rejected; Properties, in the arms of Delia, applauded the victory of licentious love; and the project of reform was suspended till a new and more tractable generation had arisen in the world. Such an example was not necessary to instruct a prudent usurper of the mischief of popular assemblies; and their abolition, which Augustus had silently prepared, was accomplished without resistance, and almost without notice, on the accession of his successor. Sixty thousand plebeian legislators, whom numbers made formidable, and poverty secure, were supplanted by six hundred imperial dictators, who held their honours, their fortunes, and their lives, by the caprice of the emperor. The least demand of the executive power was sanctioned by the gift of legislative authority; and Ulpius might assert, after the practice of two hundred years, that the decrees of the senate obtained the force and validity of laws. In the times of freedom, the resolve of the people had often been dictated by the passion or error of the moment; the Carnean, Pompeian, and Julian laws, were adapted by a single hand to the prevailing disorders; but the senate, under the reign of the Caesars, was composed of magistrates and lawyers, and in questions of private jurisprudence, the integrity of their judgment was seldom perverted by fear or interest.

The silence or ambiguity of the decrees of the magistrates who were invested with the authority of the state. This ancient prerogative of the Roman kings was transferred, in their respective offices, to the consuls and dictators, the censor and praetors; and a similar right was assumed by the tribunes of the people, the militie, and the provincials. At Rome, and in the provinces, the duties of the subject, and the intentions of the government, were proclaimed; and the civil jurisprudence was reformed by the annual visits of the supreme judge, the praetor of the city. As soon as he ascended the tribunal, he announced by the voice of a writer, and afterwards inscribed on a white wall, the rules which he proposed to follow in the decision of doubtful cases, and the relief which his equity would afford from the precocious vigour of ancient statutes. A principle of discretion more congenial to monarchy was introduced into the republic.

The act of respecting the name, and estailing the efficacy, of the laws, was improved by successive praetors; subtleties and fictions were invented to defeat the plainest meaning of the Decemvirs, and where the end was salutary, the means were frequently absurd. The secret or probable wish of the dead was suffered to prevail over the order of succession and the forms of testament; and the claimant, who was excluded from the character of heir, accepted with equal pleasure from an indulgent praetor the possession of the goods of his late kinsman or benefactor. In the guardianship of private estates, controversies and fines were subsumed to the absolute rigour of the twelve tables; time and space were annihilated by fanciful suppositions; and the pleas of youth, or fraud, or violence, annihilated the obligation, or excused the performance, of an inconvenient contract. A jurisdiction thus vague and arbitrary was exposed to the most dangerous abuse; the substance, as well as the form of justice, were often sacrificed to the prejudices of virtue, the bias of laudable affection, and the greater seductions of interest or resentment. But the errors or vices of each praetor expired with his annual office; such maximum alone as had been approved by reason and practice were copied by succeeding judges; the rule of proceeding was defined by the solution of new cases; and the temptations of injustice were removed by the Carnean law, which compelled the praetor of the year to adhere to the latter and spirit of his first proclamation. It was reserved for the curiosity and learning of Hadrian, to accomplish the design which had been conceived by the genius of Cæsar; and the praetorship of Salvius Julianus, an eminent lawyer, was immortalized by the composition of the proposital: the perpetuum ejectum. This well-digested code was ratified by the emperor and the senate; the law was length reconstituted; and, instead of the twelve tables, the perpetual edict was fixed as the invariable standard of civil jurisprudence.

From Augustus to Trajan, the models of Caesars were current to propagate their edicts in the various characters of a Roman magistrate; and, in the decrees of the senate, the opinions and sentiments of the princes were respectfully inserted. Hadrian 36 appears to have been the last who assumed, without disguise, the platitude of legislative power. And this innovation, so agreeable to the active mind, was counterbalanced by the patience of the times, and his long absence from the seat of government. The same policy was embraced by succeeding monarchs, and, according to the harsh metaphor of Tertullian, 37 the

36 The model edict of the juridical and rational character: "The laws of Rome, written without intelligible figures, were, from the time of Augustus, transferred to the imperial hands of Hadrian, and preserved in the perpetual edict of the perpetuum ejectum. The authority of the emperor and the senate was thereby transferred from the praetors to the magistrates of public administration."

37 See Varr. (De leg. lat. I. iv. 116.) on the perpetuum ejectum. The edict of Hadrian is supposed to have been composed by Stylus, the diplomatist, of the age of Hadrian, and preserved in the perpetuum ejectum of the juridical character. See the treatise of Tertullian, de spect. pont. cap. ii. and iii. (143.) on the perpetual edict of the perpetuum ejectum.
The decline and fall. The historian may confess, that in questions of private jurisprudence, the absolute sovereign of a great empire can seldom be influenced by any personal considerations. Virtue, or even reason, will suggest to his imperial mind, that he is the guardian of peace and equity, and that the interest of society is inseparably connected with his own. Under the weakness and vices of the same reign, the seat of justice was filled by the sudden and integrity of Papian and Ulpian, and the purest materials of the Code and Pandects are inscribed with the names of Caesars and his ministers. The tyranny of Rome was sometimes the benefactor of the provinces. A stronger terminated the crimes of Domitian; but the prudence of Nerva confirmed his acts, which, in the joy of their deliverance, had been rescinded by an indignant senate. Yet in the rescript, replies to the consultations of the magistrates, the weight of princes might be deceived by a partial exposition of the case. And this abuse, which placed their hasty decisions on the same level with mature and deliberate acts of legislation, was ineffectually condemned by the sense and example of Trajan. The rescripts of the emperors, his grants and decrees, his edicts and praematae sanzioni, were subscribed in purple ink, transferred to the provinces as general or special laws, which the magistrates were bound to execute, and the people to obey. But as their number continually multiplied, the rule of obedience became each day more doubtful and obscure, till the will of the sovereign was fixed and ascertained in the Gregorian, the Hermogenian, and the Theodosian codes. The two first of which some fragments have escaped, were framed by two private lawyers, to preserve the constitutions of the Pagan emperors from Hadrian to Constantine. The third, which is still extant, was digested in sixteen books by the order of the younger Theodosius, to conciliate the laws of the Christian princes from Constantine to his own reign. But the three codes obtained an equal authority in the tribunals; and any act which was not included in the sacred deposit might be disregarded by the judge as spurious or obsolete.

Among savage nations, the want of letters is imperfectly supplied by the use of visible signs, which awaken attention, and perpetuate the remembrance of any public
or private transaction. The jurisprudence of
the first Romans exhibited the scene of a pan-
tomime; the words were adapted to the gestures,
and the slightest error or neglect in the form
of proceeding was sufficient to annul the sub-
stance of the fairest claim. The consummation
of the marriage-lire was denoted by the necessary
existence of the marriage, of water, and of
the dowry of the wife resigned the bundle of keys,
of the delivery of which she had been invested with
by the government of the family. The consumption
of a son, or of a slave, was performed by turning him
round with a gentle blow on the cheek; a work
was prohibited by the casting of a stone; pre-
scription was interrupted by the breaking of a
branch; the clenched fist was the symbol of a
pledge or deposit; the right hand was the gift
of faith and confidence. The indenture of co-
evants was a broken straw; weights and scales
were introduced into every payment; and the
heir who accepted a testament, was sometimes
obliged to snap his fingers, to cast away his gar-
ment, and to leap and dance with real or
affected transport. 40 If a citizen pursued any
stolen goods into a neighbour's house, he con-
cealed his nakedness with a linen towel, and hid
his face with a cloak or basin, lest he should
encounter the eyes of a virgin or a matron. 41
In a civil action, the plaintiff touched the ear
of his witness, seized his reluctant adversary by
the neck, and implored, in solemn lamentation,
the aid of his fellow-citizens. The two competi-
tors grasped each other's hand as if they stood
prepared for combat before the tribunal of the
praetor: he commanded them to produce the
object of the dispute; they went, they returned
with measured steps, and a cloud of earth was
cast at his feet to represent the field for which
they contended. This occult science of the
words and actions of law was the inheritance of
the pontiffs and patricians. Like the Cham-
dian astrologers, they announced to their clients
the days of business and repose; these import-
ant trites were interwoven with the religion of
Numa; and, after the publication of the twelve
tables, the Roman people was still enslaved by
the ignorance of judicial proceedings. The
treasury of some plebeian officers at length
revealed the profitable mystery: in a more en-
lightened age, the legal actions were denuded
and observed; and the same antiquity which sanctified the practice, obliterated the use and
meaning of this primitive language. 42

The notion of the civil law, however, by the sages of Rome,
who, in a stricter sense, may be con-
sidered as the authors of the civil law, The
alteration of the idiom and manners of the Romans rendered the style of the twelve tables
less familiar to each rising generation, and the
doubtful passages were imperfectly explained
by the study of legal antiquaries. To define
the ambiguities, to circumscribe the latitude, to
apply the principles, to extract the
real or apparent contradictions, was a much nobler and more important task; and the province of legislation was silently in-
cluded by the expounders of ancient statutes. Their subtle interpretations conduced with the
equality of the praetor, to reform the tyranny of
the darker ages: however strange or intricate
the means, it was the aim of artificial jurisprudence to restore the simple dictates of nature
and reason, and the skill of private citizens was
usefully employed to undermine the public insti-
tutions of their country. The revolution of
almost one thousand years, from the twelve
tables to the reign of Justinian, may be divided
into three periods almost equal in duration, and
distinguished from each other by the mode of
instruction and the character of the citizens. 43

Pride and ignorance contributed,
during the first period, to confine
within narrow limits the science
of the Roman law. On the public days of
market or assembly, the masters of the art were
seen walking in the forum, ready to impart the
needful advice to the meanest of their fellow-
citizens, from whose votes, on a future occasion,
they might solicit a grateful return. As their
years and honours increased, they secluded them-
selves at home on a chair or throne, to expect
with patient gravity the visits of their clients,
who at the dawn of day, from the town and
country, began to thunder at their door. The
duties of social life, and the incidents of judicial
proceeding, were the ordinary subject of these
consultations, and the verbal or written opinion of the jurisconsult was framed accordingly to the
rules of prudence and law. The youths of their
own order and family were permitted to listen;
their children embraced the benefit of more private lessons, and the notion of Medici race was long renowned for the hereditary knowledge of the civil law.

The second period, the learned and
splendid age of jurisprudence, may
be extended from the birth of Cicero
to the reign of Severus Alexander. A sys-
tem was formed, schools were instituted, books were
composed, and both the living and the dead be-
came subservient to the instruction of the student.
The triumph of Avitus Petrus, Cato, or the Caming,
was reserved as the oldest work of jurisprudence. Cato the censor derived the benefit of more private
lessons, and those of his son: the kindred appellation of Mar-
ius Scaviola was illustrated by three sages of the
law; but the perfection of the science was

40 The role of the civil law is defined by Paul Cotta in his
Gliere: Jurid. P. 1. 288. 2. 5. The evidence has diminished,
and the theory of the Twelve Tables has been interpreted
in various ways. 41 See Sallust, Juv. 45. 2. and 46. 3. where
appear the words "anposeret, audacia," and "audacia pro
impressione," which seem to establish the point. Sallust,
although he does not mention the Twelve Tables, the scis-
sa, or the Lex Ulpia, is not a large honour in the
view of the express defects of the "impressione," and the
Confession of the Aurea (see also 1. 25. 2. and 46. 3.)
According to the interpretation of Sallust, the Twelve Tables
were to be interpreted in the sense of the lex Ulpia, and of
Pleb. 43. 1. 2. 35. and 36. 2. and 36. 3. and 46. 3. and 46. 3.
42 The notion of the Twelve Tables is not so well known by
the sages of the Aurea (see 1. 23. 2. and 46. 3.), neither by
the sages of the Aurea (see also 1. 25. 2. and 46. 3.)

Rome, from the Fall of the Empire, "revived
more than once, a great many times under the
name of the Aurea. (see also 1. 25. 2. and 46. 3.)

3 A
ascribed to Servius Sulpicius, their disciple, and the friend of Tully; and the long succession, which alone with equal lustre under the republic and under the Caesars, is finally closed by the respectable characters of Papinian, of Paul, and of Ulpian. Their names, and the various titles of their productions, have been minutely preserved, and the example of Laecce may suggest some idea of their diligence and fecundity. That eminent lawyer of the Augustan age divided the year between the city and country, between business and composition: and four hundred books are enumerated as the fruit of his retirement. Of the collections of his rival Capito, the two hundred and fifty-ninth book is expressly quoted: and few teachers could deliver their opinions in less than a century of volumes.

In the third period, between the reigns of Alexander and Justinian, the splendor of jurisprudence was at its height. The measure of curiosity had been filled; the throne was occupied by tyrants and barbarians; the civic spirit was diverted by religious disputes; and the professors of Rome, Constantinople, and Berytus, were humbly content to repeat the lesson of their more enlightened predecessors. From this slow advance and rapid decay of these legal studies, it may be inferred, that they require a state of peace and refinement. From the multitude of voluminous civilists who fill the intermediate space, it is evident, that such studies may be pursued, and such works may be performed, with a common share of judgment, experience, and industry. The genius of Cicero and Virgil was more sensibly felt, as each revolving age had been found incapable of producing a similar or a second; but the most eminent teachers of the law were assured of leaving disciples equal or superior to themselves, in merit and reputation.

The jurisprudence which had only been gradually adapted to the wars of the first Romans, was polished and improved, in the seventh century of the city, by the alliance of Greek philosophy. Thucydides had been taught by man and experience; but Servius Sulpicius was the first civilian who established his art on a certain and general theory. For the discernment of truth and falsehood he applied, as an infallible rule, the logic of Aristotle and the Stoics, reduced particular cases to general principles, and diffused over the shapesless mass the light of order and eloquence. Cicero, his contemporary and friend, declined the reputation of a professed lawyer; but the jurisprudence of his country was adorned by his inestimable genius, which converts into gold every object that it touches. After the death of Plautus, he composed a republic; and, for the use of his

The republic, a treatise on law, in which he labours to deduce, from a celestial origin, the solemn and justice of the Roman constitution. The whole universe, according to his sublime hypothesis, forms one immense commonwealth: gods and men, who participate of the same essence, are members of the same community: reason prescribes the law of nature and nations; and all positive institutions, however modified by custom or custom, are drawn from the rule of right, which the Deity has inscribed on every virtuous mind. From these philosophical mysteries, he mildly excludes the sceptics, who refuse to believe, and the Epicureans, who are unwilling to act. The latter disdain the care of the republic; he advises them to slumber in their shady gardens. But he humbly entreats that the new academy would be silent, since her bold objections would too soon destroy the fair and well-ordered structure of her lofty system.

Plato, Aristotle, and Zeno, he represents as the only teachers who arm and instruct a citizen for the duties of social life. Of these, the armour of the Stoics was to be of the front and temper; and it was chiefly worn, both for use and ornament, in the schools of jurisprudence. From the portico, the Roman civilians learned to live, to reason, and to die: but they imbued in some degree the prejudices of the sect; the love of paradox, the pertinacious habits of dispute, and a minute attachment to words and verbal distinctions. The superiority of front to matter was introduced to ascertain the right to property; and the equality of crimes is conscradened by an opinion of Abbeins, that he who touches the car, touches the whole body; and that he who steals from an heap of corn, or an hedgehog of wine, is guilty of the entire theft.

Arms, eloquence, and the study of the civil law, promoted a citizen to the honor of the Roman state; and the three professions were sometimes more conspicuous by their union in the same character. In the composition of the soldiery, a learned, practic­
gave a sanction and preference to his private sentiments: the opinion of a censor, or a consul, was attended with respect; and a skillful interpretation of the laws might be supported by the virtues or triumphs of the civilian. The patrician arts were long protected by the veil of mystery; and in more enlightened times, the freedom of inquiry established the general principles of jurisprudence. Sable and intricate cases were elucidated by the disputes of the forum: rules, axioms, and definitions, were admitted as the genuine dictates of reason; and the consent of the legal professors was interwoven into the practice of the tribunals. But these interpreters could neither exact nor execute
the laws of the republic; and the judges might disregard the authority of the Scaevolae themselves, which was often overthrown by the eloquence or sophistry of an ingenuous pleader. Augustus and Tiberius were the first to adopt, as an useful engine, the science of the civilians; and their servile labours accommodated the old system to the spirit and views of despotism. Under the fair pretence of securing the dignity of the art, the privilege of subscribing legal and valid opinions was confined to the ages of muniment or equestrian rank, who had been previously approved by the judgment of the prince; and this monopoly prevailed, till Hadrian restored the freedom of the profession to every citizen conscious of his abilities and knowledge. The discretion of the prætor was now governed by the lessons of his teachers; the judges were enjoined to obey the comment as well as the text of the law; and the use of codiciles was a memorable innovation, which Augustus ratified by the advice of the civilians. The most absolute mandate could only require that the judges should agree with the civilians, if the civilians agreed among themselves. But positive institutions are often the result of custom and prejudice; laws and language are ambiguous and arbitrary, where reason is incapable of pronouncing, the love of argument is pursued by the cry of rivals, the vanity of compilers, the blind attachment of their disciples, and the Roman jurisprudence was divided by the once famous sects of the Proculians and Seianians. Two sages of the law, Atius Capito and Antistius Laboeo, adorned the peace of the Augustan age; the former distinguished by the favour of his sovereign; the latter more illustrious by his contempt of that favour, and his stern though harmless opposition to the tyrant of Rome. Their legal studies were influenced by the various colours of their temper and principles. Laboeo was attached to the form of the old republic; his rival embraced the more profitable substance of the rising monarchy. But the disposition of a securitas is tame and submissive; and Capito seldom presumed to deviate from the sentiments, or at least from the words, of his predecessors; while the bold republicans pursued his independent ideas without fear of paradox or innovation. The freeman of Laboeo was enslaved, however, by the rigour of his own conclusions, and he decided, according to the letter of the law, the same questions which his indigent competitor resolved with a latitude of equity more suitable to the common sense and feelings of mankind. If a fair exchange had been substituted to the payment of money, Capito still considered the transaction as a legal sale; and he consulted nature for the age of puberty, without confining his meaning to the precise period of twelve or fourteen years. This opposition of sentiments was propagated in the writings and lessons of the two founders; the schools of Capito and Laboeo maintained their irreverent conflict from the age of Augustus to that of Hadrian; and the two sects divided their appellations from Sabinus and Perennis, their most celebrated teachers. The names of Caesar and Papirius were likewise applied to the same parties; but, by a strange reciprocation, the popular cause was in the hands of Papirius, a timid slave of Domitian, while the favourite of the Caesars was represented by Caesar, who glorified in his descent from the patriot sires. By the perpetual evil, the controversies of the sects were in a great measure determined. For that important work, the emperor Hadrian preferred the chief of the Sabinians, the friends of monarchy prevailed; but the moderation of Salvius Julianus insensibly reconciled the victors and the vanquished. Like the contemporary philosophers, the lawyers of the age of the Antonines disclaimed the authority of a master, and adopted from every system the most probable doctrines. But their writings would have been less voluminous, had their choice been more unanimous. The consciousness of the judge was perplexed by the number and weight of discursive testimonies, and every sentence that his passion or interest might pronounce, was justified by the sanction of some venerable name. An indulgent edict of the younger Theodosius excused him from the labour of comparing and weighing their arguments. Five civilians, Caes. Papirius, Paul, Ulpius, and Modestinus, were established as the oracles of jurisprudence; a majority was decisive; but if their opinions were equally divided, a casting vote was ascribed to the superior wisdom of Papirius. When Justinian ascended the throne, the reformation of the Roman jurisprudence was an arduous but indispensable task. In the space of ten centuries, the infinite variety of laws and legal opinions had filled many thousand volumes, which no facture could purchase and no capacity could digest. Books could not easily be found; and the judges, prior in the midst of riches, were
reduced to the exercise of their illiberal discretion. The subjects of the Greek provinces were ignorant of the language that disposed of their lives and properties; and the barbarous dialect of the Latins was imperfectly studied in the academies of Berytus and Constantinople. As an Illyrian soldier, that idiom was familiar to the infancy of Justinian; his youth had been instructed by the lessons of jurisprudence, and his Imperial choice selected the most learned civilians of the East, to labour with their sovereign in the work of reformation. The theory of professors was assisted by the practice of advocates, and the experience of magistrate; and the whole undertaking was animated by the

The spirit of Tribonian. This extraordinary and ordinary man, the object of so much praise and censure, was a native of Sidon in Phoenicia; and his genius, like that of Bocasius, embraced, as his own, all the business and knowledge of the age. Tribonian composed, both in prose and verse, a series of curious and abstruse subjects: he abounds with pæne-gyric of Justinian and the life of the philosopher Theodotus; the nature of happiness and the duties of government; Homer's catalogue and the four and twenty seats of metre; the astronomical canon of Ptolemy; the changes of the moons; the horses of the planets; and the harmonic system of the world. To the literature of Greece he added the use of the Latin tongue; the Roman civilians were deposited in his library, and in his mind; and he most assiduously cultivated those arts which opened the road of wealth and preferment. From the bar of the praetorian prefects, he raised himself to the honours of quaestor, of consul, and of master of the armies; the council of Justinian listened to his eloquence and wisdom, and envy was mitigated by the gentleness and affability of his manners. The reproaches of impurity and avarice have stained the virtues or the reputation of Tribonian. In a bigoted and persecuting court, the principal minister was accused of a secret aversion to the Christian faith, and was supposed to entertain the sentiments of an Athist and a Pagan, which have been impugned, inconsistently enough, to the last philosophers of Greece. His avarice was more clearly proved and more sensibly felt. If he were swayed by gifts in the administration of justice, the example of Tribonian will again occur; nor can the merit of Tribonian stand for his baseness, if he degraded the sanctity of his profession; and if laws were every day enacted, modified, or repealed, for the bare consideration of his private encomium. In the sedition of Constantinopolitans, his removal was granted to the clamours, perhaps to the just indignation, of the people; but the quaestor was speedily restored, and till the hour of his death, he possessed, above twenty years, the favour and confidence of the emperor.

His passive and dutiful submission has been honoured with the praise of Justinian himself, whose vanity was incapable of discerning how often that submission degenerated into the grossest adulation. Tribonian adored the virtues of his gracious master: the earth was unworthy of such a prince; and he affected a pious fear, that Justinian, like Elijah or Romulus, would be smitten into the air, and translated alive to the mansions of celestial glory.*

If Caesar had achieved the reformation of the Roman law, his creative genius, enlightened by reflection and study, would have given to the world a pure and original system of jurisprudence. Whatever flattery might suggest, the emperor of the East was afraid to establish his private judgment as the standard of equity: in the possession of legislative power, he borrowed the aid of time and opinion; and his laborious compilations are guarded by the ages and the legislatures of past times. Instead of a statute code in a simple form, he issued as the bond of an artist, the works of Justinian represent a voluminous pavement of antiquity and custom, but too often of incoherent fragments. In the first year of his reign, he directed the faithful Tribonian, and nine learned associates, to revise the ordinances of his predecessors, as they were contingent, since the time of Hadrian, in the Gregorian, Hermogenian, and Theodorian codes; to purge the errors and contradictions, to reframe whatever was obsolete or superfluous, and to select the wise and salutary laws best adapted to the practice of the tribunals and the use of his subjects. The work was accomplished in fourteen months and the twelve books or tables, which the new commentator produced, might be designed to imitate the labours of their Roman predecessors. The new Code of Justinian was honoured with his name, and confirmed by his royal signature: authentic transcripts were multiplied by the pens of notaries and scribes; they were transmitted to the magistrates of the European, the Asiatic, and afterwards the African provinces: and the law of the empire was proclaimed on solemn festivals at the doors of churches. A more arduous operation was still behind: to extract the spirit of jurisprudence from the decisions and conjectures, the questions and disputes, of the Roman civilians. Seventeen lawyers, with Tribonian at their head, were appointed by the emperor to exercise an absolute jurisdiction over the works of their predecessors. If they had obeyed his commands in ten years, Justinian would have

* I do not remember if Tribonian was the name of Justinian's quaestor, or of the quaestor of Tribonian.
be satisfied with their diligence; and the rapid composition of the Digest of Justinian,
three years, will deserve praise or censure, according to the merit of the execution. From
the library of Tribonian, they chose forty, the most eminent civilians of former times: 78 two
thousand treatises were comprised in an abridgment of fifty books; and it has been carefully
noticed, that these millions of lines, or sentences, 77 were reduced, in this abstract, to the
moderate number of one hundred and fifty thousand. The value of this work was delayed a year after that of the corpus; and it seemed reasonable that the elements should
precede the digest of the Roman law.
As soon as the emperor had approved their labours, he ratified, by his legislative power, the speculations of these private citizens: their commentaries, on the twelve tables, the perpetual edict, the laws of the people, and the decrees of the senate, succeeded to the authority of the text; and the text was abandoned, as an useless, though venerable, relic of antiquity. The Code, the Pandects, and the Institutes, were declared to be the legitimate system of civil jurisprudence; they alone were admitted in the tribunals, and they above were taught in the academies of Rome, Constantinople, and Berkeley. Justinian addressed to the senate and provincials, his strea
cruris; and his pride, under the mask of piety, excused the consummation of this great design to the support and inspiration of the Deity.
Precious and common forms and envy of original composition, we can only require at his
hands, method, choice, and fidelity, the humble, though indispensable, virtues of a compiler.
Among the various combinations of ideas, it is difficult to assign any reasonable preference; but as the order of Justinian is different in his three works, it is possible that all may be wrong; and it is certain that two cannot be right. In the selection of ancient laws, he seems to have viewed his predecessors without jealousy, and with equal regard; the series could not ascend above the reign of Hadrian, and the narrow distinction of Paganism and Christianity, introduced by the superstition of Theodosius, had been abolished by the consent of mankind. But the jurispru
dence of the Pandects is circumstantial within a period of an hundred years, from the perpetual edict to the death of Severus Alexander; the civilians who lived under the first Caesars are seldom permitted to speak, and only three names
"The Digest of the second 539, was so abridged as to be made the pantheon of the
Roman law, and the new edition of the first 539, was to be published in the space of
three years. 77 In the work, 539, all the former attempts are erased. The order of the
edicts was not changed; but the Miller's Digest, of 539, was reduced to six. The four
books of the text, containing the laws of the plebs, 539, and the laws of the
emperor, 539, were not abridged, but left in the same shape, as they were first written,
and are preserved in the manuscripts. The following is the title of this work: "Excerpta
Paganorum et Christianorum; de totidem tempore."
78 The work of the second 539, was so abridged as to be made the pantheon of the
Roman law, and the new edition of the first 539, was to be published in the space of
three years. 77 In the work, 539, all the former attempts are erased. The order of the
edicts was not changed; but the Miller's Digest, of 539, was reduced to six. The four
books of the text, containing the laws of the plebs, 539, and the laws of the
emperor, 539, were not abridged, but left in the same shape, as they were first written,
and are preserved in the manuscripts. The following is the title of this work: "Excerpta
Paganorum et Christianorum; de totidem tempore."
79 An impression of the original manuscript, p. 525-526. (p. 525-526)凭着的作者为提
can be attributed to the age of the republic. The favourite of Justinian (it has been freely
urged) was fearful of encountering the light of freedom and the gravity of Roman sage. Tri
bonian condemned to oblivion the genuine and native wisdom of Cato, the Scipio, and Sulp
icines; while he invoked spirits more congenial to his own, the Syrians, Greeks, and Africans,
who flocked to the Imperial court to study Latin as a foreign tongue, and jurisprudence as a
meritorious profession. But the ministers of Justinian were instructed to labour, not for
the advantage of antiquaries, but for the immediate benefit of his subjects. It was their
duty to select the useful and practical parts of the Roman law; and the writings of the old rep
ublicans, however curious or excellent, were no longer suited to the new system of manners,
religion, and government. Perhaps, if the preceptors and friends of Cicero were still alive, our
codifiers would acknowledge, that, except in purity of language, 79 their intrinsic merit was
exceeded by the school of Papian and Ulpian. The science of the laws is the slow growth of
time and experience, and the advantage both of method and materials is naturally assumed by
the most recent authors. The civilians of the reign of the Antonines had studied the works of
their predecessors; their philosophic spirit had mitigated the rigor of antiquity, simplified the
forms of proceeding, and emerged from the jealousy and prejudice of the rival sects. The
choice of the authorities that compose the Pandects, depended on the judgment of Tribonian;
but the power of his sovereign could not absolve him from the sacred obligations of truth and
fidelity. As the legislator of the empire, Justinian might repeal the acts of the Antonines, or
custom, as sects, the free principles, which were maintained by the last of the Roman law-
yers. 80 But the existence of past facts is placed beyond the reach of despotism; and the emperor
was guilty of fraud and forgery, when he corrup
ted the integrity of their text, inscribed with their venerable names the words and ideas of his
servile reign, 81 and suppressed, by the band of power, the pure and authentic copies of their
sentiments. The changes and interpolations of Tribonian and his colleagues, are excused by the
mercy of uniformity; but their care has been insufficient, and the antinomies, or con
tradictions of the Code and Pandects, still exercise the patience and subtlety of modern civilis
A rumour devoid of evidence has been propagated by the enemies of Justinian, that the jurisprudence of ancient Rome was restored to its author by the author of the Pandects, from the vain persuasion, that it was now either false or superfluous. Without usurping an office so illustrious, the emperor might safely commit to ignorance and time the accomplishment of this destructive wish. Before the invention of printing and paper, the labour and the materials of writing could be purchased only by the rich; and it may reasonably be computed, that the price of books was an hundred fold their present value. Copies were slowly multiplied and curiously renewed; the hopes of profit tempted the sacrilegious scribes to erase the characters of antiquity, and Sophocles or Tacticus were obliged to resign the payment to mistakes, homilies, and the golden legend. If such was the fate of the most compositions of genius, what stability could be expected for the half and barren works of an absolute science? The books of jurisprudence were interesting to few, and entertaining to none: their value was connected with present use, and they smelt for ever as soon as that use was superseded by the innovations of fashion, superior merit, or public authority. In the age of peace and learning, between Cicero and the last of the Antonines, many losses had been already sustained, and some fragments of the school, or forum, were known only to the curious by tradition and report. Three hundred and sixty years of disorder and decay accreted to the progress of oblivion; and it may fairly be presumed, that of the writings, which Justinian is accused of neglecting, many were no longer to be found in the libraries of the East. The copies of Pausanias or Ulpius, which the reformer had possessed, were doomed unmercy of future notice: the twelve tables and praetorians, so abjectly flinched, and the monuments of ancient Rome were neglected and destroyed by the fury and ignorance of the Goths. Even the Pandects themselves have escaped with difficulty and danger from the commonshiplock, and criticism has pronounced, that all the compositions and manuscripts of the West are derived from one original. It was transcribed at Constantinople in the beginning of the seventh century, and successively transported by the accidents of war and commerce to Amalfi, Palai, and Florence, and is now deposited as a sacred relic in the ancient palace of the republic.

It is the first care of a reformed state to prevent any future reformation. To maintain the text of the Pandects, the Institutes, and the Code, the use of cipher and abbreviations was rigorously proscribed; and as Justinian recollected, that the perpetual edict had been buried under the weight of commentaries, he denounced the punishment of forsyery against the rash civilians who should presume to interpret or pervert the will of their sovereign. The scholars of Accursius, of Bartolus, of Cujaris, should blush for their accumulated guilt, unless they dare to dispute his right of binding the authority of his successors, and the native freedom of the mind. But the emperor was unable to fix his own inconstancy; and, while he hastened to removing the exchange of Donnem, of transmitting base into gold, he discovered the necessity of purifying his gold from the mixture of lesser alloy. Six years had not elapsed from the publication of the Code, before he condemned the imperfect attempt, by a new and more accurate edition of the same work, which he enriched with two hundred of his own laws, and fifty decisions of the darkest and most intricate points of jurisprudence. Every year, as according to Procopius, each day of his long reign, was marked by some legal innovation. Many of his acts were promulgated by himself; many were rejected by his successors; many have been obliterated by time; but the number of sixteen months, of the Senate, and one hundred and sixty-eight i. B. 562-643, has been admitted into the authentic body of the civil jurisprudence. In the opinion of a philosopher superior to the prejudices of his profession, these incessant, and, for the most part, trifling alterations, can be only explained by the unceasing vigilance of the court of a prince, who sold without
The charge of the secret historian is indeed explicit and unblemished; but the sole instance, which he produces, may be ascribed to the devotion as well as to the arcanum of Justinian. A wealthy bigot had bequeathed his inheritance to the church of Eunomia; and its value was enhanced by the dexterity of an artist, who subscribed confessions of debt and promises of payment with the names of the richest Syracusans. They pleaded the established prescription of thirty or forty years; but their defence was overruled by a retrospective edict, which extended the claims of the church to the term of a century; an edict so pregnant with injustice and disorder, that, after serving this occasional purpose, it was prudently abolished in the same reign. If caution will acquit the emperor himself, and transfer the corruption to his wife and favorites, the suspicion of so foul a vice must still degrade the majesty of his laws: and the advocates of Justinian may acknowledge, that such hatred, whatsoever be the motive, is unworthy of a legislator and a man.

Monarchs sedulously improve the propensities of their subjects; and some praise is due to Justinian, by whose command an ample system was reduced to a short and elementary treatise. Among the various institutes of the Roman law, those of Caius were the most popular in the East and West; and their use may be considered the privilege of their merit. They were recommended by the Imperial delegates, Tribunalia, Tribunia, and Doctores; and the freedom and purity of the Antonins was intrusted with the coarser materials of a degenerate age. The same volume which introduced the youth of Rome, Constantinople, and Byzantium, to the gradual study of the Code and Pandecta, is still precious to the historian, the philologist, and the magistrate. The Institutes of Justinian are divided into four books; they proceed, with no contemptible method, from, 1. Persons, to II. Things, and from things, to III. Actions; and the article IV. of Private Wrongs, is terminated by the principles of Criminal Law.

1. The distinction of ranks and persons, is the firmest basis of a mixed and limited government. In France, the remains of liberty are kept alive by the spirit, the honours, and even the prejudices, of fifty thousand nobles. Two hundred families supply, in linear descent, the second branch of the English legislature, which maintains, between the king and commons, the balance of the constitution. A gradation of patriots and plebeians, of strangers and subjects, has supported the antiquity of Grecia, Venice, and ancient Rome. The perfect equality of man is the point in which the extremes of democracy and despotism are confounded: since the majority of the prince or people would be offended, if any bands were wrought above the level of their fellow-slaves or fellow-citizens. In the decline of the Roman empire, the proud distinctions of the republic were gradually abolished, and the reason or instinct of Justinian completed the simple form of an absolute monarchy. The emperor could not eradicate the popular reverence which always waited on the possession of hereditary wealth, or the memory of famous ancestors. He delighted to honour, with titles and emoluments, his generals, magistrates, and senators; and his precarious indulgences communicated some rays of their glory to the persons of their wives and children. But in the eye of the law, all Roman citizens were equal, and all subjects of the empire were citizens of Rome. That immutable character was degraded to an absolute and empty name. The voice of a Roman could no longer exact his laws, or create the annual ministers of his power; his constitutional rights might have checked the arbitrary will of a master; and the bold adventure from Germany or Arabia was admitted, with equal favour, to the civil and military command, which the citizen alone had been since entitled to assume over the conquests of his country.

The first Caesars had scrupulously guarded the distinction of pietas and sacris, which was decided by the condition of the mother; and the caution of the laws was satisfied, if her freedom could be ascertained during a single moment, between the conception and the delivery. The slaves, who were liberated by a generous master, immediately entered into the middle class of libertini or freedmen; but they could never be enfranchised from the duties of obedience and gratitude: whatever were the fruits of their industry, their patron and his family inherited the third part; or even the whole of their fortunes, if they died without children and without a testament. Justinian respected the rights of patrons; but his indulgence removed the badge of disgrace from the two inferior orders of freedom: whoever ceased to be a slave, obtained, without reserve or delay, the station of a citizen; and at length the dignity of an ingenious birth, which nature had refused, was created, or supposed, by the munificence of the emperor. Whatever restrains of age, or form, or numbers, had hitherto been introduced to check the abuse of immunities, and the too rapid increase of vile and ignoble Romans, he finally abolished; and the spirit of his laws promoted the extinction of democratic servitude. Yet the eastern provinces were filled, in the time of Justinian, with multitudes of slaves, either born or purchased for the use of their masters; and the price, from ten to seventy

\[\text{A}\]
pieces of gold, was determined by their age, their strength, and their education. But the hardships of this dependent state were continually diminished by the influence of government and religion; and the pride of a subject was no longer elated by his absolute dominion over the life and property of his boon companions. The law of nature instructed must animals to cherish and educate their infant progeny. The law of reason inculcates to the human species the returns of filial piety. But the exclusive, absolute, and perpetual dominion of the father over his children is peculiar to the Roman jurisprudence, and seems to be fixed with the foundation of the city. The paternal power was instituted or confirmed by Romulus himself; and, after the practice of three centuries, it was inscribed on the fourth table of the Decemvirs. In the forum, in the senate, or the camp, the adult son of a Roman citizen enjoyed the public and private rights of a person; in his father’s house he was a mere thing; confined by the laws with the moveables, the cattle, and the slaves, whom the capricious master might alienate or destroy, without being responsible to any earthly tribunal. The hand which bestowed the daily sustenance, might resume the voluntary gift, and whatever was acquired by the labour or fortune of the son was immediately lost in the property of the father. His stolen goods (his oxen or his children) might be recovered by the same action of theft, and if either had been guilty of a trespass, it was in his own option to compensate the damage, or resign to the injured party the obnoxious animal. At the call of negligence or necessity, the master of a family could dispose of his children or his slaves. But the condition of the slave was far more advantageous, since he regained, by the first act of nature, his original freedom; the son was again restored to his natural father; he might be compelled to serve him a second and a third time, and it was not till after the third sale and deliverance, that he was disfranchised from the domestic power, which had been so repeatedly abused. According to his discretion, a father might chastise the real or imaginary faults of his children, by stripes, by imprisonment, by exile, by sending them to the country to work in chains among the meanest of his servants. The majesty of a parent was armed with the power of life and death; and the examples of such bloody executions, which were sometimes praised and never punished, may be traced in the annals of Rome, beyond the times of Pompey and Augustus. Not only, but even their son, whom the pleasures of libertinism could exempt from the most injurious crimes and the bonds of filial subjection, his own descendants were admitted in the family of their common ancestor; and their claims of adoption were not less sacred or less rigorous than those of nature. Without fear, though not without danger of abuse, the Roman legislators had reposed an unbounded confidence in the sentiments of paternal love; and the oppression was tempered by the assurance, that each generation must succeed in its turn to the awful dignity of parent and master. The first limitation of paternal power is ascribed to the justice and humanity of Numa; and the mild who, with his father’s consent, had acquired a freedman, was protected from the disgrace of becoming the wife of a slave. In the first ages, when the city was pressed, and often furnished by her Latin and Tuscan neighbours, the sale of children might be a frequent practice; but as a Roman could not legally purchase the liberty of his fellow-citizen, the market must gradually fall, and the trade would be destroyed by the conquests of the republic. An imperfect right of property was at length communicated to sons, and the threefold distinction of proprietors, tenants, and professional, was ascended by the jurisprudence of the Code and Pandects. Of all that proceeded from the father, he imparted only the use, and reserved the absolute dominion; yet if his goods were sold, the filial portion was excepted, by a favorable interpretation, from the demands of the creditors. In whatever accrual by marriage, gift, or collateral succession, the property was secured to the son; but the father, unless he had been specially excluded, enjoyed the fruits during his life. As a just and proper reward of military virtue, the spoils of the enemy were acquired, possessed, and bequeathed by the soldier alone; and the fair analogy was extended to the emoluments of any liberal profession, the salary of public service, and the sacred liberality of the emperor or the empress. The life of a citizen was less exposed than his fortune to the abuse of paternal power. Yet his life might be adverse to the interest or passions of an unworthy father: the same crimes that flowed from the corruption,
were more sensibly felt by the humanity of the Augustan age; and the cruel Sextus, who whipt his son till he died of pain, was saved by the emperor from the impiety of the multitude. 133 The Jewish father, from the licence of servil de-

The ancient Roman law was strict and harsh, and none escaped punishment, not even the emperor's children.

The same protection was due to every period of existence; and reason must applaud the humanity of Paulus, for imputing the crime of murder to the father, who strangles, or starves, or abandons his new-born infant; or exposes him in a public place to find the mercy which he himself had denied. But the expansion of children was the prevailing and stubborn vice of antiquity; it was sometimes prescribed, often permitted, almost always practiced with impunity, by the nations who never entertained the Roman ideas of paternal power; and the dramatic poets, who appeal to the human heart, represent with indifference: a popular custom which was palliated by the motives of economy and compassion. 136 If the father could subdue his own feelings, he might escape, though not the censure, at least the chastisement of the laws; and the Roman empire was stained with the blood of infants, till such murders were included, by Valentinian and his colleague, in the letter and spirit of the Cornelian law. The laws of jurisprudence and Christianity have been insufficient to eradicate this inhuman practice, till their gentle influence was fortified by the terrors of capital punishment. 134

Experience has proved, that savage are the tyrants of the female

sex; and that the condition of women is usually softened by the refinements of social life. In the hope of a robust progeny, Lycurgus had delayed the season of marriage; it was fixed by Numa at the tender age of twelve years, that the Roman husband might educate to his will a pure and obedient virgin. 135 According to the custom of antiquity, he bought his bride of her parents, and she fulfilled the condition, by purchasing, with three pieces of copper, a just introduction to his house and household duties. A stock of fruits was offered by the festivities; in the presence of ten witnesses; the contracting parties were seated on the same sheepskin; they tasted a salt cake of far or rye; and: this consummation, 136 which denoted the ancient food of Italy, served as an emblem of their mystic union of mind and body. But this union on the side of the woman was rigorous and unequal; and she renounced the name and worship of her father's house, to embrace a new scriptural, disengaged, and the title of adoption. A fiction of the domain, neither rational nor elegant, bestowed on the mother of a family (her proper appellation) the strange character of sister to her own children, and of daughter to her husband or master, who was invested with the plenitude of paternal power. By his judgment or caprice her behaviour was approved, or censured, or chastised; he exercised the jurisdiction of life and death; and it was allowed, that in the cases of adultery or drunkenness, the sentence might be properly inflicted. She accused and inquired for the sole profit of her lord; and so clearly was woman defined, but as a person, but as a thing, that, if the original title were deficient, she might be claimed, like other movables, by the use and possession of an entire year. The inclination of the Roman husband discharged or withheld the conjugal debt, so scrupulously exacted by the Athenian and Jewish laws 137; but as polygamy was unknown, he could never admit to his bed a fairer or more favoured partner.

After the Punic triumphs, the matrons of Rome aspired to the common benefits of a free and equal republic; their wishes were gratified by the indulgence of fathers and lovers, and their ambition was successfully resisted by the gravity of Cato the Censor. 138 They declined the...
solemnization of the old nuptials, defaced the annual prescription by an absence of three days, and, within losing their name or independence, subscribed the liberal and definite terms of a marriage-contract. Of their private fortunes, they communicated the use, and secured the property: the estate of a wife could neither be alienated nor mortgaged by a prodigal husband; their mutual gifts were prohibited by the jealousy of the laws; and the misconduct of either party might afford, under another name, a future subject for an action of theft. To this loose and ordinary compact, religious and civil rites were no longer essential; and, between persons of a similar rank, the apparent community of life was allowed as sufficient evidence of their nuptials. The dignity of marriage was restored by the Christians, who derived all spiritual grace from the prayers of the faithful and the benediction of the priest or bishop. The origin, validity, and duties of the holy institution, were regulated by the tradition of the synagogue, the precepts of the Gospel, and the canons of general or provincial synods; and the consent of the Christians was saved by the decrees and censures of their ecclesiastical rulers. Yet the magistrates of Justinian were not subject to the authority of the church: the emperor consulted the unbelieving citizens of antiquity, and the choice of matrimonial laws in the Code and Pauludecta, is directed by the earthly motives of justice, policy, and the natural freedom of both sexes. 182

Besides the agreement of the parties, this, the essence of every rational contract, the Roman marriage required the previous approbation of the parents. A father might be coerced by some recent laws to supply the wants of a mature daughter; but even his insensibility was not generally allowed to supersede the necessity of his consent. The causes of the dissolution of marriage have varied among the Romans; but the most solemn sacrament, the conformatum itself, might always be done away by rites of a contrary tendency. In the first ages, the father of a family might sell his children, and his wife was reckoned in the number of his children: the domestic judge might pronounce the death of the offender, or his mercy might expel her from his bed and house; but the slavery of the wretched female was hopeless and perpetual, unless he ascended for her own convenience the main prerogative of divorce. The warmest applause has been lavished on the virtue of the Romans, who abstained from the exercises of this lumping privilege above five hundred years; 183 but the same fact enforces the unequal terms of a connection in which the slave was unable to remiss his tyrant, and the tyrant was unwilling to relinquish his slave. When the Roman matrons became the equal and voluntary companions of their lords, a new jurisprudence was introduced, that marriage, like other partnerships, might be dissolved by the application of one of the associates. In three centuries of prosperity and corruption, this principle was enlarged to frequent practices and pernicious abuse. Passion, interest, or cuprice, suggested daily motives for the dissolution of marriage: a word, a sign, a message, a letter, the mandate of a freedman, dissolved the separation; the most tender of human connections was degraded to a transient society of profit or pleasure. According to the various conditions of life, both sexes alternately felt the disgrace and injury; an inelegant spouse transferred her wealth to a new family, abandoning a numerous, perhaps a spurious, progeny to the paternal authority and care of her late husband; a beautiful virgin might be dismissed to the world, old, indigent, and friendless; but the reluctance of the Romans, when they were pressed to marriage by Augustus, sufficiently marks, that the prevailing institutions were most favourable to the males. A species of theory is enacted by this free and perfect experiment, which demonstrates, that the liberty of divorce does not contribute to happiness and virtue. The facility of separation would destroy all mutual confidence, and influence every trivial dispute: the minute difference between an husband and a stranger, which might as easily be removed, might more easily be forgotten; and the matron, who in five years can submit to the embraces of eight husbands, must cease to reverence the chastity of her own person. 184

In the year 541 (12. 1. 370) Jovinianus, 1. 2. D. Augustini, 6. 1. He was imprisoned by the senate, and banished by the emperor, for 1287. 4179 his writings on the subject of marriage. He was subsequently restored to liberty, and once more employed in public business.

182 For the system of Jewish and Christian matrimony, see Kalisch's Notes on the First Book of Chronicles, on the Hebrew Testament, and on the Hebrews in the New Testament. 183 The civil laws of marriage are contained in the Commentaries of Gaius, Lib. ii. ch. 2. Book of the nature, which is necessary to the humanity, we are advised to examine the occasions, motives, and purposes of marriage, in the Institutes of Justinian, Lib. viii. c. 2. The same laws, however, are not to be applied to the Christian dispensation, in which, where the law of God, contained in the New Testament, is the rule, and according to which all the canonical laws are to be understood, the law and the gospel differ in many respects. We find, in the Commentaries of Justinian, that he is the law of God, and the New Testament, the rule of the church in matters of this nature. 184 The civil laws of marriage are contained in the Commentaries of Gaius, Lib. ii. ch. 2. The same laws, however, are not to be applied to the Christian dispensation, in which, where the law of God, contained in the New Testament, is the rule, and according to which all the canonical laws are to be understood, the law and the gospel differ in many respects. We find, in the Commentaries of Justinian, that he is the law of God, and the New Testament, the rule of the church in matters of this nature.
and gently inclined the scale in favour of the guilty and injured party. Augustus, who entitled the powers of both magistrates, adopted the different modes of punishing or releasing the licence of divorce. The presence of seven Roman witnesses was required for the validity of this solemn and deliberate act. If any adequate provocation had been given by the husband, instead of the delay of two years, he was compelled to refund immediately, or in the space of six months; but if he could arrange the manner of his wife, her guilt or levity was exhibited by the loss of the sixth or eighth part of her marriage portion. The Christian princes were the first who specified the just causes of a private divorce; their institutions, from Constantine to Justinian, appear to fluctuate between the custom of the empire and the wishes of the church; and the author of the Novels too frequently refers for the jurisprudence of the Code and Pandects. In the most rigorous laws, a wife was condemned to support a gauntlet, a drunkard, or a libertinus, unless he were guilty of homicide, poison, or sacrilege, in which cases the marriage, as it should seem, might have been dissolved by the hand of the executioner. But the sacred right of the husband was invariably maintained, to deliver his name and family from the disgrace of adultery; the list of secessions, such as elopement or female, was enlarged and enlarged by successive regulations; and the obstacles of incestuous intercourse, bigamy, and monastic profession, were allowed to meet the matrimonial obligations. Whoever transgressed the permission of the law was subject to various and heavy penalties. The woman was deprived of her wealth and ornaments, without excepting the body of her hair; if the man introduced a new bride into his bed, her fortune might be lawfully seized by the enraged husband of his eloped wife. Forfeit was sometimes commuted to a fine; the fine was sometimes aggravated by transportation to an island or punishment in a monastery; the injured party was released from the bonds of marriage; but the offender, during life, or a term of years, was disabled from the repetition of such cases. The success of Justinian yielded to the prayers of his unhappy subjects, and restored the liberty of divorce by mutual consent: the civilians were unanimous, the theologians were divided, and the ambiguous word, which contains the precept of Christ, is flexible to any interpretation that the wisdom of a legislator can demand.

The freedom of love and marriage, and consequently the rights which were determined to the last between civil and ecclesiastical law, was maintained with all the vigour of the Roman constitution. The laws were intended to regulate the lives of men, but it was not intended that the law should control the law of God. If the marriage was invalid, whether contracted in or out of the church, the marriage was dissolved, and the parties were free to contract another. The divorce was not a dissolution of the marriage, but a new marriage.

The Roman Empire.
luctantly grants the necessary aliments of life; and these natural children alone were capable of succeeding to a sixth part of the inheritance of their reputed father. According to the rigour of law, bastards were entitled only to the name and condition of their mother, from whom they might derive the character of a slave, a stranger, or a citizen. The outcasts of every family were adopted without reproach as the children of the state. 186

The relation of guardian and ward, or, in Roman words, of tutelary and pupil, which covers so many titles of the Institutes and Pandects, 187 is of a very simple and uniform nature. The person and property of an orphan must always be trusted to the custody of some discreet friend. If the deceased father had not signified his choice, the aunts, or paternal kindred of the nearest degree, were compelled to act as the natural guardians: the Athenians were apprehensive of exposing the infant to the power of those most interested in his death; but an axiom of Roman jurisprudence has pronounced, that the charge of tutelage should constantly attend the encomium of adolescent age. If the choice of the father, and the line of consanguinity, afforded no efficient guardian, the failure was supplied by the nomination of the praetor of the city, or the president of the province. But the person whom they named to this public office might be legally excused by insanity or blindness, by ignorance or inactivity, by previous enmity or adverse interest, by the number of children or guardianships with which he was already burdened, and by the immunities which were granted to the useful labours of magistrates, lawyers, physicians, and professors. Till the infant could speak and think, he was represented by the tutor, whose authority was finally determined by the age of puberty. Without his consent, no act of the pupil could bind himself to his own prejudice, though it might oblige others for his personal benefit. It is needless to observe, that the tutor often gave security, and always rendered an account, and that the want of diligence or integrity exposed him to a civil and almost criminal action for the violation of his sacred trust. The age of puberty had been rashly fixed by the civilians at fourteen; but as the faculties of the mind ripen more slowly than those of the body, a curator was interposed to guard the fortunes of a Roman youth from his own inexperience and headstrong passions. Such a trustee had been first instituted by the praetor, to save a family from the blind havoc of a prodigal or madman: and the minor was compelled, by the laws, to solicit the same protection, to give validity to his acts till he accomplished the full period of twenty-five years. Women were condemned to the perpetual tutelage of parents, husbands, or guardians; a sex created to please and obey was never supposed to have stained the age of reason and experience. Such at least was the stern and haughty spirit of the ancient law, which had been insensibly mollified before the time of Justinian.

II. The original right of property can only be justified by the principles of justice, accident or insist of prior occupancy; and on this foundation it is wisely established by the philosophy of the civilians. 188 The savage who hallows a tree, inserts a sharp stone into a wooden handle, or applies a string to an elastic branch, becomes in a state of nature the just proprietor of the cane, the bow, or the hatchet. The materials were common to all, the new form, the produce of his time and simple industry, belongs solely to himself. His hungry brethren cannot, without a sense of their own injustice, extort from the hunter the game of the forest overtaken; or claim by his personal strength and dexterity. If his provident care preserves and multiplies the tame animals, whose nature is tractable to the arts of education, he acquires a perpetual title to the use and service of their numerous progeny, which derives its existence from him alone. If he encloses and cultivates a field for their sustenance and his own, a barren waste is converted into a fertile soil; the seed, the manure, the labour, create a new value, and the rewards of harvest are painfully earned by the fatigues of the revolving year. In the successive states of society, the hunter, the shepherd, the husbandman, may defend their possessions by two reasons, which forcibly appeal to the feelings of the human mind: that whatever they enjoy is the fruit of their own industry; and that every man who envies their felicity, may purchase similar acquisitions by the exercise of similar diligence. Such, in truth, may be the freedom and plenty of a small colony cast on a fruitful island. But the colony multiplies, while the space still continues the same; the common rights, the equal inheritance of mankind, are engrossed by the bold and crafty; each field and forest is circumscribed by the land-marks of a jealous master; and it is the peculiar praise of the Roman jurisprudence, that it asserts the claim of the first occupant to the wild animals of the earth, the air, and the waters. In the progress from primitive equity to final injustice, the steps are silent, the shades are almost imperceptible, and the absolute monopoly is guarded by positive laws and artificial reasons. The active principle of self-love can alone supply the arts of life and the wages of industry; and as soon as civil government and exclusive property have been introduced, they become necessary to the existence of the human race. Except in the singular institutions of Sparta, the wisest legislators have disapproved an agrarian law as a false and dangerous innovation. Among the Romans, the enormous disproportion of wealth surmounted the ideal restraints of a doubtful

186 [The law that grants the legal rights of citizenship and natural children, as enunciated in the Justinian, B. I. 11:4, is the Pandects 11:4.]
187 [The Institutes 11:4, 11:7, and the Justinian, B. I. 11:4, enunciate the principles regarding the guardians and wards, the powers and duties of the guardian, and the manner of settling the estate of a minor.]
188 [The Institutes 11:4, 11:7, contrast the principles of justice, accident or insist of prior occupancy that establish the original right of property, with the later doctrines that are based on the principles of justice and equity.]
189 [Justinian, B. I. 11:4. The terms "accident" and "insist of prior occupancy" are used to describe the original right of property. The Justinian's commentary on these terms is significant in the development of Roman law.]
his children, the associates of his toil, and the partners of his wealth. This natural inheritance has been protected by the legislators of every climate and age, and the father is encouraged to preserve in slow and distant improvements, by the tender hope, that a long posterity will enjoy the fruits of his labour. The principle of hereditary succession is universal, but the order has been variously established by convenience or caprice, by the spirit of national institutions, or by some partial example which was originally decided by fraud or violence. The jurisprudence of the Romans appears to have deviated from the equality of nature, much less than the Jewish, the Athenian, or the English institutions.

On the death of a citizen, all his descendants, unless they were already freed from his paternal power, were called to the inheritance of his possessions. The insolent prerogative of patrimony was unknown; the two sexes were placed on a just level; all the sons and daughters were entitled to an equal portion of the patrimonial estate; and if some of the sons had been intercepted by premature death, his person was replaced, and his share was divided, by his surviving children. On the failure of the direct line, the right of succession must diverge to the collateral branches. The degrees of kindred are numbered by the civil law, according to the last possessor to a common parent, and descending from the common parent to the next heir: my father stands in the first degree, my brother in the second, his children in the third, and the remainder of the series may be conceived by fancy, or pictured in a genealogical table. In this computation, a distinction was made, essential to the laws and even the constitution of Rome; the egates, or persons connected by a line of males, were called, as they stood in the nearest degree, to an equal partition; but a female was incapable of transmitting any legal claims; and the cognate of every rank, without excepting the dear relation of a mother and a son, were disinherited by the twelve tables, as strangers and aliens. Among the Romans a gens or lineage was united by a common name and domestic rites; the various cognomina or surnames of Scipio, or Marcellus, distinguished from each other the subordinate branches or families of the Cornelian or Claudian race: the default of the cognate, of the same surname, was supplied by the larger denomination of gentiles; and the vigilance of the laws maintained, in the same name, the perpetual descent of religion and property. A similar principle dictated the Vexilla

Of inheritance and succession. The personal title of the first proprietor must be determined by his death; but the possession, without any appearance of change, is peaceably continued in

173. The title of the first possessors is defined by Varro in his Rerum divinarum, I. 12, 3, 2, 4, 1. 131, 1. 130, 6; Cicero, Cees. 3, 5, and affirms for his manumissions; Macro. 1. 1433, 1, 2. 25. 1. 252, 2. 253, 1. 253. The title of the first possessors is defined by Varro in his Rerum divinarum, I. 12, 3, 2, 4, 1. 131, 1. 130, 6; Cicero, Cees. 3, 5, and affirms for his manumissions; Macro. 1. 1433, 1, 2. 25. 1. 252, 2. 253, 1. 253. The title of the first possessors is defined by Varro in his Rerum divinarum, I. 12, 3, 2, 4, 1. 131, 1. 130, 6; Cicero, Cees. 3, 5, and affirms for his manumissions; Macro. 1. 1433, 1, 2. 25. 1. 252, 2. 253, 1. 253. The title of the first possessors is defined by Varro in his Rerum divinarum, I. 12, 3, 2, 4, 1. 131, 1. 130, 6; Cicero, Cees. 3, 5, and affirms for his manumissions; Macro. 1. 1433, 1, 2. 25. 1. 252, 2. 253, 1. 253. The title of the first possessors is defined by Varro in his Rerum divinarum, I. 12, 3, 2, 4, 1. 131, 1. 130, 6; Cicero, Cees. 3, 5, and affirms for his manumissions; Macro. 1. 1433, 1, 2. 25. 1. 252, 2. 253, 1. 253. The title of the first possessors is defined by Varro in his Rerum divinarum, I. 12, 3, 2, 4, 1. 131, 1. 130, 6; Cicero, Cees. 3, 5, and affirms for his manumissions; Macro. 1. 1433, 1, 2. 25. 1. 252, 2. 253, 1. 253.
ninian law, which abolished the right of female inheritance. As long as virgins were given or sold in marriage, the adoption of the wife extinguished the hopes of the daughter. But the equal succession of independent mates supported their pride and luxury, and might transport into a foreign house the riches of their fathers. While the maxims of Cato were revered, they tended to perpetuate in each family a just and virtuous mediocrity; till female blandishments insensibly triumphed; and every salutary restraint was lost in the absolute greatness of the republic. The rigour of the decennies was tempered by the equity of the praetors. Their salutes restored emancipated and posthumous children to the rights of nature; and upon the failure of the agent, they preferred the blood of the ascendents to the name of the gentiles, whose title and character were insensibly covered with oblivion. The reciprocal inheritance of mothers and sons was established in the Tertullian and Orphician decrees by the humanity of the senate. A new and more impartial order was introduced by the novels of Justinian, who affected to revive the jurisprudence of the twelve tables. The lines of male and female kindred were confounded; the describing, ascending, and collateral series, was accurately defined; and each degree, according to the proximity of blood and affection, succeeded to the vacant possession of a Roman citizen. The order of succession is regulated by nature, or at least by the general and permanent reason of the lawgiver; but this order is frequently violated by the arbitrary and partial will, which prolongs the dominion of the testator beyond the grave. In the simple state of society, this last use or abuse of the right of property is seldom indulged: it was introduced at Athens by the laws of Solon; and the private testaments of the father of a family are authorised by the twelve tables. Before the time of the decennies, a Roman citizen exposed his wishes and motives to the assembly of the thirty curies or parishes, and the general law of inheritance was suspended by an occasional act of the legislature. After the permission of the decennies, each private lawgiver promulgated his verbal or written testament in the presence of five citizens, who represented the five classes of the Roman people; a sixth witness attested their concurrence; a seventh weighed the copper money, which was paid by an imaginary purchaser; and the estate was expropriated by a fictitious sale and immediate release. This singular ceremony, which excelled the wonder of the Greeks, was still practised in the age of Severus; but the praetors had already approved a more simple testament, for which they required the seals and signatures of seven witnesses, free from all legal exception, and purposely summoned for the execution of that important act. A domestic usurper, who reigned over the lives and fortunes of his children, might distribute their respective shares according to the degree of their merit or his affection: his arbitrary displeasure chastised an unworthy son by the loss of his inheritance, and the mortifying preference of a stranger. But the experience of unnatural parents recommended some limitations of their testamentary powers. A son, or, by the laws of Justinian, even a daughter, could no longer be disinherited by their silence: they were compelled to name the criminal, and to specify the offence; and the justice of the emperor enumerated the sole causes that could justify such a violation of the first principles of nature and society. Unless a legitimate portion, a fourth part, had been reserved for the children, they were entitled to institute an action or complaint of insufficiency of testament; to suppose that their father's understanding was impaired by sickness or age; and respectfully to appeal from his rigorous sentence to the deliberate wisdom of the magistrate. In the Roman jurisprudence, an essential distinction was admitted between the inheritance and the legacies. The heirs who succeeded to the entire unity, or to any of the twelve franchises of the substance of the testator, represented his civil and religious character, asserted his rights, fulfilled his obligations, and discharged the gifts of friendship or liberality, which his last will had been suspended under the name of legacies. But as this imprudence or predilection of a dying man might exhaust the inheritance, and leave only risk and labour to his successor, he was empowered to retain the Heirship portion; to deduct, before the payment of the legacies, a clear fourth for his own subsistence. A reasonable time was allowed to examine the proportion between the debts and the estate, to decide whether he should accept or refuse the testament; and if he used the benefit of an inventory, the demands of the creditors could not exceed the valuation of the effects. The last will of a citizen might be altered during his life, or rescinded after his death: the person whom he named might displease him, or reject the inheritance, or be exposed to some legal disqualification. In the contemplation of these erasms, he was permitted to substitute second and third heirs, to replace each other according to the order of the testament; and the incapacity of a madman or an infant to bequeath his property, might be supplied by a
similar substitution. But the power of the testament expired with the acceptance of the testament: each Roman of mature age and discretion acquired the absolute dominion of his inheritance, and the simplicity of the civil law was never blurred by the long and intricate entail which confine the happiness and freedom of unborn generations.

Catholic and Conquest and the formalities of law established the use of codicil.

If a Roman was surprised by death in a remote province of the empire, he addressed a short epistle to his legitimate or testamentary heir; who fulfilled with balm, or negligence with impatience, this last request, which the judges before the age of Augustus were not authorized to enforce. A codicil might be expressed in any mode, or in any language; but the subscription of five witnesses must declare that it was the genuine composition of the author. His intention, however laudable, was sometimes illegal; and the invention of falsi commenta, or trusts, arose from the struggle between natural justice and positive jurisprudence. A stranger of Greece or Africa might be the friend or benefactor of a childless Roman, but none, except a fellow-citizen, could act as his heir. The Roman law, which abolished female succession, restrained the legacy or inheritance of a woman to the sum of one hundred thousand sesterces; and an only daughter was condemned almost as an alien in her father's house. The zeal of friendship, and parental affection, suggested the liberal devise: a qualified citizen was named in the testament, with a prayer or injunction that he would receive the inheritance to the person for whom it was truly intended. Various was the conduct of the trustees in this painful situation; they had sworn to observe the laws of their country, but honour prompted them to violate their oath; and if they preferred their interest under the mask of patriotism, they forfeited the esteem of every virtuous mind. The declaration of Augustus relieved their doubts, gave a legal sanction to confidential testaments and codicils, and gently unravelled the forms and restraints of the republican jurisprudence.

But as the new practice of testaments degenerated into abuse above, the trustee was enabled, by the Trebullian and Pescian decrees, to reserve one fourth of the estate, or to transfer on the head of the real heir all the debts and actions of the succession. The interpretation of testaments was strict and literal; but the language of testaments and codicils was delivered from the minute and technical accuracy of the civilists.

III. The general duties of man.

1. On the kind are imposed by their public and private relations: but the specific obligations to each other can only be the effect of 1. a promise, 2. a benefit, or 3. an injury; and when these obligations are ratified by law, the interested party must compel the performance by a judicial action. On this principle the citizens of every country have erected a similar jurisprudence, the fair conclusion of universal reason and justice.

1. The godhead of faith (of human and social faith) was overtopped, not only in her temples, but in the lives of the Romans; and if that nation was deficient in the more amiable qualities of benevolence and generosity, they astonished the Greeks by their sincere and simple performances of the most burdensome engagements. Yet among the same people, according to the right maxims of the patricians and decurions, a naked poor, a promise, or even an oath, did not create any civil obligation, unless it was confirmed by the legal form of a stipulation. Whatever might be the etymology of the Latin word, it conveyed the idea of a firm and irrevocable contract, which was always expressed in the mode of a question and answer. Do you promise to pay me one hundred pieces of gold? was the solemn interrogation of Salus. I do promise — was the reply of Stipulans. The friends of Stipulans, who answered for his ability and inclination, might be separately called at the suit of Salus, and the benefit of the same, or in order of reciprocal actions, immediately inviolate from the strict theory of stipulation. The most cautious and deliberate consent was justly required to sustain the validity of a gratuitous promise; and the citizens who might have obtained a legal security, incurred the suspicion of fraud, and paid the forfeit of his neglect. But the ingenuity of the citizens successfully laboured to convert simple engagements into the form of solemn stipulations. The procurers, as the guardians of social faith, admitted every rational evidence of a voluntary and deliberate act, which in their tribunal produced an equitable obligation, and for which they gave an action and a remedy.

2. The obligations of the second class, as they were contracted by the delivery of a thing, are marked by the citizens with the epistle of real. A grateful return is due to the author of a benefit; and whoever is interested with the property of another, has bound himself to the sacred duty of restitution. In the case of a friendly loan, the merit of generosity is on the side of the lender only; in a deposit, on the side of the receiver; but in a pledge, and the rest of the selfish commerce of ordinary life, the benefit is compensated by an

132 II. On the kind are imposed by their public and private relations; but their specific obligations to each other can only be the effect of 1. a promise, 2. a benefit, or 3. an injury; and when these obligations are ratified by law, the interested party must compel the performance by a judicial action. On this principle the citizens of every country have erected a similar jurisprudence, the fair conclusion of universal reason and justice.

133 I. The godhead of faith (of human and social faith) was overtopped, not only in her temples, but in the lives of the Romans; and if that nation was deficient in the more amiable qualities of benevolence and generosity, they astonished the Greeks by their sincere and simple performances of the most burdensome engagements. Yet among the same people, according to the right maxims of the patricians and decurions, a naked poor, a promise, or even an oath, did not create any civil obligation, unless it was confirmed by the legal form of a stipulation. Whatever might be the etymology of the Latin word, it conveyed the idea of a firm and irrevocable contract, which was always expressed in the mode of a question and answer. Do you promise to pay me one hundred pieces of gold? was the solemn interrogation of Salus. I do promise — was the reply of Stipulans. The friends of Stipulans, who answered for his ability and inclination, might be separately called at the suit of Salus, and the benefit of the same, or in order of reciprocal actions, immediately inviolate from the strict theory of stipulation. The most cautious and deliberate consent was justly required to sustain the validity of a gratuitous promise; and the citizens who might have obtained a legal security, incurred the suspicion of fraud, and paid the forfeit of his neglect. But the ingenuity of the citizens successfully laboured to convert simple engagements into the form of solemn stipulations. The procurers, as the guardians of social faith, admitted every rational evidence of a voluntary and deliberate act, which in their tribunal produced an equitable obligation, and for which they gave an action and a remedy.

134 2. The obligations of the second class, as they were contracted by the delivery of a thing, are marked by the citizens with the epistle of real. A grateful return is due to the author of a benefit; and whoever is interested with the property of another, has bound himself to the sacred duty of restitution. In the case of a friendly loan, the merit of generosity is on the side of the lender only; in a deposit, on the side of the receiver; but in a pledge, and the rest of the selfish commerce of ordinary life, the benefit is compensated by an
and abolished by the elements of the people. It was revived by their wants and inferences, tolerated by the discretion of the prelates, and finally determined by the Code of Justinian. Persons of illustrious rank were confined to the moderate profit of four per cent.; six was pronounced to be the ordinary and legal standard of interest; eight was allowed for the convenience of manufacturers and merchants; twelve was granted to maritime insurance, which the wiser ancients had not attempted to define; but except in these perilous adventures, the practice of exorbitant usury was severely restrained. The most simple interest was condemned by the clergy of the East and West; but the sense of mutual benefit, which had triumphed over the laws of the republic, has resisted with equal firmness the decrees of the church, and even the prejudices of mankind.

3. Nature and society impose the strict obligation of repairing an injury; and the sufferer by private injustice acquires a personal right and a legitimate action. If the property or person of another is intrusted to our care, the requisite degree of care may arise and fall according to the benefit which we derive from such temporary, precarious trust, we are solemnly made responsible for inevitable accident, but the consequences of a voluntary fault must always be imputed to the author.

A Roman pursued and recovered his stolen goods by a civil action of theft; they might pass through a succession of pure and innocent hands, but nothing less than a prescription of thirty years could extinguish his original claim. They were restored by the sentence of the prator, and the injury was compensated by double, or threefold, or even quadruple damages, as the deed had been perpetrated by secret fraud or open rapine, as the robber had been surprised in the fact, or detected by a subsequent research. The Aquilian law defending the living property of a citizen, his slaves and cattle, from the stroke of malice or negligence; the highest price was allowed that could be ascribed to the domestic animal at any moment of the year preceding his death; a similar latitude of thirty days was granted on the destruction of any other valuable effects. A personal injury is blunted or sharpened by the manners of the times and the sensibility of the individual; the pain or the disgrace of a word or blow cannot easily be appreciated by a pecuniary equivalent. The rude jurisprudence of the decemvirs had confounded all nasty insults, which did not amount to the

---

108 The conclusion [of the city of] is defined in the Pontifical (ib.); and the螅 in the Pisan (ib.); and the螅 in the Pisan (ib.) are mentioned, and appear to have been very ancient rights of land and herbage in Ostia, augmentation, &c., in the Roman law (ib.); and the idea of the case of the father and son, in the Roman law (ib.), is the doctrine of Justinian (ib.); and the idea of the case of the father and son, in the Roman law (ib.), is the doctrine of Justinian (ib.).

109 The Roman law of tenement is defined in the Pisan (ib.); and the idea of the case of the father and son, in the Roman law (ib.), is the doctrine of Justinian (ib.).

111 The Roman law of tenement is defined in the Pisan (ib.); and the idea of the case of the father and son, in the Roman law (ib.), is the doctrine of Justinian (ib.).

112 The Roman law of tenement is defined in the Pisan (ib.); and the idea of the case of the father and son, in the Roman law (ib.), is the doctrine of Justinian (ib.).

113 The Roman law of tenement is defined in the Pisan (ib.); and the idea of the case of the father and son, in the Roman law (ib.), is the doctrine of Justinian (ib.).

114 The Roman law of tenement is defined in the Pisan (ib.); and the idea of the case of the father and son, in the Roman law (ib.), is the doctrine of Justinian (ib.).

115 The Roman law of tenement is defined in the Pisan (ib.); and the idea of the case of the father and son, in the Roman law (ib.), is the doctrine of Justinian (ib.).

116 The Roman law of tenement is defined in the Pisan (ib.); and the idea of the case of the father and son, in the Roman law (ib.), is the doctrine of Justinian (ib.).
ture of a limit, by condemning the aggressor to the common penalty of twenty-five asses. But the same denomination of money was reduced, in three centuries, from a pound to the weight of half an ounce; and the insolence of a wealthy Roman indulged himself in the cheap amuse-ment of breaking and satisfying the law of the twelve tables. Veritas ran through the streets striking on the face the inoffensive passengers, and his attendant purse-bearer immediately silenced their clamours by the legal tender of twenty-five pieces of copper, about the value of one shilling. [313] The equity of the praeator examined and estimated the distinct merits of each particular complaint. In the adjudication of civil damages, the magistrate assumed a right to consider the various circumstances of time and place, of age and dignity, which may aggravate the shame and sufferings of the injured person; but if he admitted the idea of a fine, a punishment, an example, he invaded the province, though, perhaps, he supplied the defects of the criminal law.

Punishments. The execution of the Alban dictator, who was disembowelled by eight horses, is represented by Livy as the first and the last instance of Roman cruelty in the punishment of the most atrocious crimes. [314] But this act of justice, or revenge, was inflicted on a foreign enemy in the heat of victory, and at the command of a single man. The twelve tables afford a more decisive proof of the national spirit, since they were framed by the wisest of the senate, and accepted by the free voices of the people; yet these laws, like the statutes of Draco, [315] are written in characters of blood. They approve the inhuman and unequal principle of retaliation; and the forfeit of an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth, a limb for a limb, is rigorously executed, unless the offender can redeem his pardon by a fine of three hundred pounds of copper. The enormity of the act has encouraged the use of a lighter chastisement of flagellation and servitude; and nine crimes of a very different complexion are adjudged worthy of death.  1. Any act of treason against the state, or of correspondence with the public enemy.  2. The mode of execution was+ painful and ignominious: the head of the degenerate Roman was shorn in a vell; his hands were tied behind his back; and, after he had been scourged by the lictor, he was suspended in the midst of the forum on a cross of insolent posts.  2. Nocturnal meetings in the city; whatever might be the presence of pleasure, or religion, or the public good.  3. The murder of a citizen; for which the common feelings of mankind demand the blood of the murderer. Poison is still more odious than the sword or dagger; and we are surprised to discover, in two last centuries, how early such subtle wickeder had infected the simplicity of the republic, and the chaste virtues of the Roman matrons. [316] The particle who violated the duties of nature and gratitude was cast into the river or the sea, enclosed in a sack; and a cock, a viper, a dog, and a monkey, were successively added, as the most suitable companions. [317] Italy produces no monkeys; but the want could never be felt, till the middle of the sixth century first revealed the guilt of a particle. [318]  4. The malice of an inquirer. After the previous ceremony of whipping, he himself was delivered to the flames; and in this example alone our reason is tempted to applaud the justice of retaliation.  5. Judicial execrations. The corrupt or malicious witness was thrown headlong from the Tarpeian rock to expiate his falsehood, which was rendered still more fatal by the severity of the penal laws, and the deficiency of written evidence.  6. The corruption of a judge, who accepted bribes, to pronounce an imputations sentence.  7. Libels and satires, whose rude strains sometimes disturbed the peace of an illiterate city. The author was beaten with clubs, a worthy chastisement; but it is not certain that he was left to expire under the blows of the executioner. [319]  8. The nocturnal mischief of damaging or destroying a neighbour's corn. The criminal was suspended as a grateful victim to Ceres. But the sylvan deities were less implacable, and the extinguition of a more valuable tree was compensated by the moderate fine of twenty-five pounds of copper.  9. Magical incantations; which had power, in the opinion of the Latin shepherds, to exhaust the strength of an enemy, to extinguish his life, and to remove from their scats his deep-rooted plantations. The cruelty of the twelve tables against insolvent debtors still remains to be told; and I shall dare to prefer the literal sense of antiquity to the spurious reflections of modern criticism. [320] After the judicial proof or confession of the debt, thirty days of grace were allowed before a Roman was delivered into the power of his fellow-citizens.

---


[314] The virtues of L. Licinius the noble and amiable. At the a.d. 79, 80, 81, 88, judgment of the Senate, reduction, severity of Vergil's Juvencius Eneidic, v. xiii. xix. in his youth most just. Horace, with the most just good. After that the state of war, and the war of the state. From p. 305.

[315] The Roman law, as ascribed to the time of the Seuthes (according praetor). is fixed in the San Marco (Cicero, opus. c. 1 c. 1. 1. 1). the Censor of the Forum of Rome: the Roman law in general, as said to be the work of the state. From p. 305.

[316] The same disaster of the city of Rome, is assigned to Cicero. From p. 305.

[317] The state, the state laws, the state laws, and the state laws of the state. From p. 305.

[318] The state, the state laws, and the state laws of the state. From p. 305.

[319] The state, the state laws, and the state laws of the state. From p. 305.

[320] The state, the state laws, and the state laws of the state. From p. 305.
In this private prison, twelve ounces of tine were their daily food; he might be bound with a chain of fifteen pounds' weight; and his misery was twice exposed in the market place, to solicit the compassion of his friends and countrymen. At the expiration of sixty days, the debt was discharged by the loss of liberty or life; the insolvent debtor was either put to death, or sold in foreign slavery beyond the Tyber; but if several creditors were alike obstinate and unrelenting, they might legally dismember his body, and satiate their revenge by this horrid partition. The advocates for this savage law have insisted, that it must strongly operate in deterring idleness and fraud from contracting debts which they were unable to discharge; but experience would disislate this salutary terror, by proving that no creditor could be found to exact this unprofitable penalty of life or limb. As the manners of Rome were insensibly polished, the criminal code of the decemvirs was abolished by the humanity of accusers, witnesses, and judges; and impunity became the consequence of immor- tal vigour. The Porcian and Valentinian laws prohibited the magistrates from inflicting on a free citizen any capital, or even corporal punishment; and the obsolete statutes of blood were artfully, and perhaps truly, ascribed to the spirit, not of justice, but of regal, tyranny.

In the absence of penal laws and the insufficiency of civil actions, the peace and justice of the city were imperfectly maintained by the private jurisdiction of the citizens. The malefactors who replenish our gaols are the outcasts of society, and the crimes for which they suffer may be commonly ascribed to ignorance, poverty, and brutal appetites. For the perpetuation of similar enormities, a vile plebeian might claim and abuse the sacred character of a member of the republic; but, on the proof or suspicion of guilt, the slave, or the stranger, was nailed to a cross, and this strict and summary justice might be exercised without restraint over the greatest part of the populace of Rome. Each family contained a domestic tribunal, which was not confined, like that of the prator, to the cognisance of external actions: virtues principles and habits were inculcated by the discipline of education; and the Roman father was accountable to the state for the manners of his children, since he disposed, without appeal, of their life, their liberty, and their inheritance. In some pressing emergencies, the citizen was authorised to avenge his private or public wrongs. The consent of the Jewish, the Athenian, and the Roman laws, approved the slaughter of the nocturnal thief; though in open daylight a robber could not be slain without some previous violence of danger and complaint. Whoever surprised an adulterer in his nuptial bed might freely exercise his revenge; 179 the most bloody or wanton outrage was excused by the provocation; 180 nor was it before the reign of Augustus that the husband was reduced to weigh the rank of the offender, or that the parent was condemned to sacrifice his daughter with her guilty seducer. After the expulsion of the kings, the ambitious Roman who should dare to assume their title or imitate their tyranny, was devoted to the infernal gods; each of his fellow-citizens was armed with the sword of justice; and the act of Brutus, however repugnant to gratitude or prudence, had been already sanctioned by the judgment of his country. 181 The barbarous practice of wearing arms in the midst of peace, and the bloody maxims of honour, were unknown to the Romans; and, during the two priest-ages, from the establishment of equal freedom to the end of the Punic wars, the city was never disturbed by rebellion, and rarely polluted with atrocious crimes. The failure of penal laws was more sensibly felt when every vice was inflamed by faction at home and domination abroad. In the time of Cicero, each private citizen enjoyed the privilege of anarchy; each minister of the republic was exalted to the temptation of regal power; and their virtues were entitled to the warmest praise, as the spontaneous fruits of nature or philosophy. After a triennial indulgence of lust, rapine, and cruelty, Verres, the tyrant of Sicily, could only be sued for the pecuniary restitution of three hundred thousand pounds sterling; and such was the temper of the laws, the Judges, and perhaps the asses themselves, 182 that, on refunding a thirtieth part of his plunder, Verres could retire to an easy and luxurious exile. 183

The first imperfect attempt to restore the proportion of crimes with punishments, and to punish the nation who made the dictator Sylla, who, in the midst of his sanguinary triumph, aspired to restrain the licence, rather than to oppress the liberty, of the Romans. He gloried in the arbitrary prescription of four thousand seven hundred citizens. 184 Bills, in the character of a legislator, he respected the prejudices of the times; and instead of pronouncing a sentence of death against the robber or assassin, the general who betrayed an army, or the magistrate who ruined a province, Sylla was content to aggravate the pecuniary damages by the penalty of exile, or, in more constitutional language, by the interdiction of fire and water. The Cornelians, and afterwards the Pompeians and Julianians, introduced a new system of

179 See the speech of Marcus Brutus, Defence, I. 1., &c. 28, 29, &c.
180 The acts of the conquerors of Gaul, the wars of Pompey and Caesar, &c. &c.
181 See the speech of Marcus Brutus, Defence, I. 1., &c. 28, 29, &c.
182 See the speech of Marcus Brutus, Defence, I. 1., &c. 28, 29, &c.
183 See the speech of Marcus Brutus, Defence, I. 1., &c. 28, 29, &c.
184 See the speech of Marcus Brutus, Defence, I. 1., &c. 28, 29, &c.
criminal jurisprudence; and the emperors, from Augustus to Justinian, disguised their increasing rigour under the names of the original authors. But the invention and frequent use of extraordinary puniti proceeded from the desire to extend and conceal the progress of despotism. In the condemnation of illustrious Romans, the senate was always prepared to confound, at the will of their masters, the judicial and legislative powers. It was the duty of the governors to maintain the peace of their province, by the arbitrary and rigid administration of justice; the freedom of the city evaporated in the extent of empire; and the Spanish malefactor, who claimed the privilege of a Roman, was elevated, by the command of Galba, on a firmer and more lofty cross. Occasional rescripts issued from the throne to decide the questions which, by their novelty or importance, appeared to surpass the authority and discernment of a procuusal. Transportation and beheading were reserved for honourable persons; meaner criminals were either hanged or burnt, or burned in the mines, or exposed to the wild beasts of the amphitheatre. Armed robbers were pursued and extirpated as the enemies of society; the driving away horses or cattle was made a capital offence; but simple theft was uniformly considered as a mere civil and private injury. The degrees of guilt, and the modes of punishment, were too often determined by the discretion of the rulers, and the subject was left in ignorance of the legal danger which he might incur by every action of his life.

33.1. A sin, a vice, a crime, are the objects of theology, ethics, and jurisprudence. Whenever their judgments agree, they corroborate each other; but as often as they differ, a prudent legislator appreciates the guilt and punishment according to the measure of social injury. On this principle, the most daring attack on the life and property of a private citizen is judged less atrocious than the crime of treason or rebellion, which involves the majesty of the republic: the obsequious civilians unanimously pronounced, that the republic is contained in the person of its chief; and the edge of the Julian law was sharpened by the incessant diligence of the emperors. The licentious impulse of the sexes may be tolerated as an expedient of nature, or forbidden as a source of disorder and corruption; but the force, the fortune, the family of the husband, are seriously injured by the adultery of the wife. The wisdom of Augustus, after curbing the freedom of revenge, applied to this domestic offence the animadversion of the laws; and the guilty parties, after the payment of heavy forfeitures and fines, were condemned to long or perpetual exile in two separate islands. Religion pronounces an equal censure against the infidelity of the husband; but as it is not accompanied by the same civil effects, the wife was never permitted to vindicate her wrongs; and the distinction of simple or double adultery, so familiar and so important in the canon law, is unknown to the jurisprudence of the Code and Pandects.

Chap. XLV.

OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

The laws of Rome were enacted by the people; but the people was, during the whole period of the Roman empire, represented by the Senate. The Senate was the body of citizens whom the people had chosen; but the members of the Senate were annually elected by the people from the members of the knights who were elected, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving.

The laws of Rome were enacted by the people; but the people was, during the whole period of the Roman empire, represented by the Senate. The Senate was the body of citizens whom the people had chosen; but the members of the Senate were annually elected by the people from the members of the knights who were elected, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving.

The laws of Rome were enacted by the people; but the people was, during the whole period of the Roman empire, represented by the Senate. The Senate was the body of citizens whom the people had chosen; but the members of the Senate were annually elected by the people from the members of the knights who were elected, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving.

The laws of Rome were enacted by the people; but the people was, during the whole period of the Roman empire, represented by the Senate. The Senate was the body of citizens whom the people had chosen; but the members of the Senate were annually elected by the people from the members of the knights who were elected, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving.

The laws of Rome were enacted by the people; but the people was, during the whole period of the Roman empire, represented by the Senate. The Senate was the body of citizens whom the people had chosen; but the members of the Senate were annually elected by the people from the members of the knights who were elected, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving.

The laws of Rome were enacted by the people; but the people was, during the whole period of the Roman empire, represented by the Senate. The Senate was the body of citizens whom the people had chosen; but the members of the Senate were annually elected by the people from the members of the knights who were elected, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving.

The laws of Rome were enacted by the people; but the people was, during the whole period of the Roman empire, represented by the Senate. The Senate was the body of citizens whom the people had chosen; but the members of the Senate were annually elected by the people from the members of the knights who were elected, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving. The Senate was the body of citizens who had the power of appointing magistrates, who were elected by the people from the members of the knights, and who had the power of making laws, and of passing laws, which the people had the power of approving or disapproving.

ment of suicide. The bodies of condemned criminals were exposed to public ignominy, and their children, a more serious evil, were reduced to poverty by the confiscation of their fortunes. But if the victims of Tiberius and Nero anticipated the decrees of the prince or senate, their courage and dispatch were compensated by the applause of the public, the decent honours of burial, and the validity of their testaments. The exquisite avarice and cruelty of Domitian appear to have deprived the unfortunate of this last consolation, and it was still denied even by the clemency of the Antonines. A voluntary death, which, in the case of a capital offence, interfered between the accusation and the sentence, was admitted as a confession of guilt, and the spoils of the deceased were seized by the inhuman claims of the treasury. Yet the civilians have always respected the natural right of a citizen to dispose of his life; and the pusillanimous disgrace invented by Tarquin to check the despair of his subjects, has never revived or imitated by succeeding tyrants. The powers of this world have indeed lost their dominion over him who is resolved on death; and his arm can only be restrained by the religious apprehension of a future state. Suicides are enumerated by Virgil among the unfortunate, rather than the guilty, and the poetical fables of the infernal shades could not seriously influence the faith or practice of mankind. But the precepts of the Gospel, or the church, have at length imposed a pious servitude on the minds of Christians, and condemned them to expect, without a murmur, the last stroke of disease or the executioner.

The penal statutes form a very small proportion of the sixty-two books of the Code and Pandects; and, in all judicial proceeding, the life or death of a citizen is determined with less caution and delay than the most ordinary question of covenant or inheritance. This singular distinction, though something may be allowed for the urgent necessity of defending the peace of society, is derived from the nature of criminal and civil jurisprudence. Our duties to the state are simple and uniform; the law by which he is condemned is inscribed not only on brass or marble, but on the conscience of the offender, and his guilt is commonly proved by the testimony of a single fact. But our relations to each other are various and infinite; our obligations are created, annulled, and modified, by injuries, benefits, and promises; and the interpretation of voluntary contracts and testaments, which are often dictated by fraud or ignorance, affords a long and laborious exercise to the integrity of the judge. The business of life is multiplied by the extent of commerce and do-

002 The office, both at Rome and in S Edit (Public), was considered a lucrative one. Certain persons in the public service expected to be made judges, for this purpose, as a reward for their services. But the legislation of an unwieldy multitude is peculiar to very few, which the government of a great empire was therefore necessi

003 Polyb. 1. c. p. 202. The expression of the senate and the assembly is without authority.


005 See an inscription, inscribed in large letters, on the door of the Senate House, of the Senate, and of the Roman people.
mition, and the residence of the parties in the distant provinces of an empire, is productive of delay, and inevitable appeals from the local to the supreme magistrate. Justinian, the Greek successor of Constantine, and the first of the East, was the legal successor of the Latin shepherd who had planted a colony on the banks of the Tyche. In a period of thirteen hundred years, the laws had reluctantly followed the changes of government and manners; and the inaudible desire of reconciling ancient names with recent institutions, destroyed the harmony, and swelled the magnitude, of the obscure and irregular system. The laws which existed, on any occasions, the ignorance of their subjects, confess their own imperfections; the civil jurisprudence, as it was abridged by Justinian, still continued a mysterious science, and a profitable trade; and the innate perplexity of the study was involved in tenfold darkness by the private industry of the practitioners. The expense of the pursuit sometimes exceeded the value of the prize, and the fittest rights were abandoned by the poverty or prudence of the claimants. Such costly justice might tend to shake the spirit of litigation, but the unequal pressure serves only to increase the influence of the rich, and to aggravate the misery of the poor. By these dilatory and expensive proceedings, the wealthy plunder obtains a more certain advantage than that he could hope from the accidental corruption of his judges. The experience of an abuse, from which our own age and country are not perfectly exempt, may sometimes provoke a generous indignation, and extort the just wish of exchanging our elaborate jurisprudence for the simple and summary decrees of a Turkish caliph. Our calmer reflection will suggest, that such harms and delays are necessary to guard the persons and property of the citizen; that the discretion of the judge is the first engine of tyranny, and that the laws of a free people should force and determine every question that may probably arise in the exercise of power and the transactions of industry. But the government of Justinian united the evils of liberty and servitude; and the Romans were oppressed at the same time by the multiplicity of their laws and the arbitrary will of their master.

CHAP. XLV.


During the last years of Justinian, his inordin mind was devoted to heavenly contemplation, and he neglected the business of the lower world. His subjects were impatient of the long continuance of his life and reign; yet all who were capable of reflection, apprehended the moment of his death, which might involve the capital in tumult, and the empire in civil war. Seven nephews of the childish emperor, the sons or grandsons of his brother and sister, had been consecrated in the splendour of a princely fortune; they had been shown in high commands to the provinces and armies; their characters were known, their followers were numerous, and as the jealousy of age postponed the declaration of a successor, they might expect with equal hopes the inheritance of their uncle. He expired in his palace, after a reign of thirty-eight years; and the decisive opportunity was embraced by the friends of Justin, the son of Vigilantia. At the hour of midnight, his domestics were awakened by an importunate crowd, who thundered at his door, and obtained admittance by revealing themselves to be the principal members of the senate. These welcome deputies announced the recent and momentous secret of the emperor's decease: reported, or perhaps invented, his dying choice of the best beloved and most deserving of his nephews; and conjured Justin to prevent the disorders of the multitude, if they should take notice, with the return of light, that they were left without a master. After composing his countenance to surprise, sorrow, and decent modesty, Justin, by the advice of his wife Sophia, submitted to the authority of the senate. He was conducted with speed and silence to the palace; the guards saluted their new sovereign, and the martial and religious rites of his coronation were diligently accomplished. By the hands of the proper officers he was invested with the Imperial garments, the red buskins, white tunic, and purple robe. A fortunate soldier, whom he instantly promoted to the rank of tribune, encircled his neck with a military collar; four row of succour yoked him on a shield; his stood firm and steady to receive the salutum of his subjects; and his choice was sanctioned by the benediction of the patriarch, who imposed the diadem on the head of an orthodox prince. The hippodromes was already filled with innumerable multitudes; and no sooner did the emperor appear on his throne, than the voices of the blue and the green factions were confounded in the same loyal acclamations. In the speeches which Justin addressed to the senate and people, he promised to correct the abuses which had disgraced the age of his predecessor, displayed the maxims of a just and beneficent government, and declared, that on the approaching calends of January, he would revive in his own person the name and liberality of a Roman consul. The immediate discharge of his uncle's debts exhibited a solid pledge of his faith and generosity; a train of popular orders

1 See the History of Justin, and his family, in the Peristyle History of Tassol. 2 The lives of Gloss. Lib. 30, Just. 4 See the works of Constantine, Lib. 30, Just. 5 See the History of Tassol. Lib. 30, Just. 6 This senate recommends the praetorship of their favourite nephew, see the History of Tassol, Lib. 31, Just. 7 The Athenaeum, July 3, 1777.

8 It is not clear whether Palla is meant for the wife of Theodosius, or for the wife of Maurice. The latter is the more probable; see the History of Coele-Syria, ed. 2, p. 135, Athens ed. 7, 1770, and the Commentaries of Justinian.

9 See the History of Justinian, Lib. 30, Just.
with larges of gold advanced into the midst of the hippodrome, and the hopeless creditors of Justinian accepted this equitable gift as a voluntary payment. Before the end of three years, his example was imitated and surpassed by the emperor Sophia, who delivered many indigent citizens from the weight of debt and slavery: an act of benevolence the best entitled to gratitude, since it relieves the most intolerable distress; but in which the bounty of a prince is the most liable to abuse by the claims of prodigality and fraud.

On the seventh day of his reign, Justin gave audience to the ambassadors of the Avars, and the scene was decorated to impress the barbarians with astonishment, veneration, and terror. From the palace gate, the spacious court and long porticoes were lined with the lofty cressets and gilt bucklers of the guards, who presented their spears and axes with more confidence than they would have shown in a field of battle. The officers who exercised the power, or attended the person, of the prince, were attired in their richest habilis, and arranged according to the military and civil order of the hierarchy. When the veil of the sanctuary was withdrawn, the ambassadors beheld the emperor of the East on his throne, beneath a canopy, or dome, which was supported by four columns, and crowned with a golden figure of Victory. In the first emotions of surprise, they submitted to the servile adoration of the Byzantine court; but as soon as they rose from the ground. Turgutine, the chief of the embassy, expressed the freedom and pride of a barbarian. He exclaimed, by the tongue of his interpreter, the greatness of the chogan, by whose clemency the kingdoms of the south were permitted to exist, whose victorious subjects had traversed the frozen rivers of Scythia, and who now covered the banks of the Danube with innumerable tents. The late emperor had cultivated, with annual and costly gifts, the friendship of a grateful monarch, and the enmities of Heraclius that respected the allies of the Avars. The same prudence would instruct the pupil of Justinian to imitate the liberality of his model, and to purchase the blessings of peace from an irremovable people, who delighted and excelled in the exercise of war. The reply of the emperor was delivered in the same strain of haughty defiance, and he derived his confidence from the God of the Christians, the ancient glory of Rome, and the recent triumphs of Justinian. "The emperor," said he, "abounds with "tears and horses, and arms sufficient to defend "our frontiers, and to chastise the barbarians. "You offer aid, you threaten hostilities; I "despise your cruelty and your aid. The "conquerors of the Avars are our allies; "shall we dread their fugitives and exiles?"

4 The emperor's speech, p. 290. When Marcus Aurelius and Commodus were thrown down, it is questionable if either escaped.

5 Justinian, B. I. c. 31, 32. The emperor's speech, p. 290. The army of the Avars, the first of which entered Asia, was manifestly an appa- rently military expedition, and the sole 303. of Constantine Pogonatus. If the report that the emperor of the Avars had crossed the Danube is true, the Avars must have moved in considerable numbers, since the emperor's recall was not with an army, but with a personal guard. The Danube, in May, 567, at the time of the battle of Varsa. (Proc. of the Society of Antiquity, p. 497.)

6 Photius, Hist. of the Emp. Justinian, c. 1. (Ch. 5.)

7 The emperor, in the year 565, defeated and captured the Turks. (Proc. of the Society of Antiquity, p. 497.) The Turks advanced in the reign of Justinian, but their progress was still checked by the Avars, under the name of Lombar (Proc. of the Society of Antiquity, p. 497.)

8 For a detailed account of the war, see Monastir (Empire, Legals, p. 116.), (Comm. on the Laws, Bk. I. ch. 29.), and Paul the Meissonier (Hist. of the Lombards, Bk. I. ch. 29.)

9 The bounty of the uncle was granted to your "mistress, to your humble prayers. From us "you shall receive a more important obligation, "the knowledge of your own weakness. Retire "from our presence; the lives of ambassadors "are safe; and if you return to implore our "pardon, perhaps you will taste of our benevo- "lence." On the report of his ambassadors, the chogan was awed by the apparent firmness of a Roman emperor, of whose character and resources he was ignorant. Instead of executing his threats against the Eastern empire, he marched into the poor and savage countries of Germany, which were subject to the dominion of the Franks. After two disastrous battles, he consented to retire, and the Avarian king relieved the distress of his camp with an immediate supply of corn and cattle. Such repeated dis- appointments had chilled the spirit of the Avars, and their power would have dissolved away in the Sarmaanian desert, if the alliance of Alboin, king of the Lombards, had not given a new object to their arms, and a lasting settlement to their wearied fortunes.

While Alboin served under his father's standard, he encountered in battle, and transgressed with his lance, the rival prince of the Gepids. The Lombards, who applauded such early prowess, requested his father, with unanimous acclamation, that the heroic youth, who had shared the dangers of the field, might be admitted to the feast of victory. "You are not im- "moral," replied the indulgent Audoin, "of "the wise customs of our ancestors. Whatever "may be his merit, a prince is incapable of sit- "ting at table with his father till he has received "his arms from a foreign and royal hand." Alboin bowed with reverence to the institutions of his country; selected forty companions, and boldly visited the court of Turismind, king of the Gepids, who embraced and entertained, according to the laws of hospitality, the murderer of his son. At the banquet, whilst Alboin occupied the seat of the youth whom he had slain, a tender remembrance arose in the mind of Turismind. "How dear is that place — how hateful "is that person!"T were the words that esca- "ped, with a sigh, from the belligerent father. His grief exasperated the national resentment of the Gepids, and Cummillur, his surviving son, was provoked by wine, or fraternal affection, to the desire of vengeance. "The Lombards," said the rude barbarian, "resemble, in figure and in "small, the marauds of our Scymnian plains. "And this insult was a coarse allusion to the white bands which enveloped their legs. "Add an- "other resemblance," replied an audacious Lom- "bard; "you have felt how strongly they kick. "Visit the plain of Asklepius, and seek for the "homes of thy brother: they are mingled with
"those of the vilest animals." The Gepidæ, a nation of warriors, started from their seats, and the fearless Alboins, with his forty companions, laid their hands on their swords. The tumult was appeased by the venerable interposition of Tarissund. He saved his own honour, and the life of his guest: and after the solemn rites of investiture, dismissed the stranger in the bloody arms of his son; the gift of a weeping parent. Alboin returned in triumph; and the Lombards, who celebrated his matchless intrepidity, were compelled to praise the virtues of an enemy. In this extraordinary visit he had probably seen the daughter of Cumiminund, who soon after ascended the throne of the Gepidæ. Her name was Rosamund, an appellation expressive of female beauty, and which our own history or romance has consecrated to amorous tales. The king of the Lombards (the father of Alboin no longer lived) was contracted to the grand-daughter of Clovis; but the restrictions of faith and policy soon yielded to the hope of possessing the fair Rosamund, and of insulting her family and nation. The arm of persuasion were tried without success; but the impatient lover, by force and stratagem, obtained the object of his desire. War was the consequence which he foresew and solicited; but the Lombards could not long withstand the furious assault of the Gepidæ, who were sustained by a Roman army. And as the offer of marriage was rejected with contempt, Alboin was compelled to relinquish his prey, and to partake of the disgrace which he had inflicted on the house of Cumiminund."

When a public quarrel is entrenched by private injuries, a blow that is not mortal or decisive can be productive only of a short truce, which allows the unsuccessful combatant to sharpen his arms for a new encounter. The strength of Alboin had been found unequal to the gratification of his love, ambition, and revenge: he condescended to implore the formidable aid of the chagan; and the arguments that he employed were expressive of the art and policy of the barbarians. In the attack of the Gepidæ, he had been prompted by the just desire of exterminating a people whom their alliance with the Roman empire had rendered the common enemies of the nations, and the personal adversaries of the chagan. If the forces of the Avars and the Lombards should unite in this glorious quarrel, the victory was secure, and the reward insatiable: the Danube, the Herms, Italy, and Constantinople, would be exposed, without a barrier, to their invincible arms. But if they hesitated or delayed to prevent the malice of the Romans, the same spirit which had insulted, would pursue the Avars to the extremity of the earth. These specious reasons were heard by the chagan with coldness and disdain; he detained the Lombard ambassadors in his camp, protracted the negotiation, and by turns alleged his want of inclination, or his want of ability, to undertake this important enterprise. At length he signified the ultimate price of his alliance, that the Lombards should immediately present him with the title of their captive; that the spoils and captives should be equally divided; but that the lands of the Gepidæ should become the sole patrimony of the Avars. Such hard conditions were eagerly accepted by the passions of Alboin; and as the Romans were dissatisfied with the ingratitude and perfidy of the Gepidæ, Justin abandoned that incorrigible people to their fate, and remained the tranquil spectator of this unequal conflict. The despair of Cumiminund was active and dangerous. He was informed that the Avars had entered his confines; but on the strong assurance that, after the defeat of the Lombards, these foreign invaders would easily be repelled, he rushed forwards to encounter the implacable enemy of his name and family. But the courage of the Gepidæ could secure them no more than an honourable death. The bravest of the nation fell in the field of battle; the king of the Lombards consummated with delight the head of Cumiminund, and his skull was fashioned into a cup to satiate the hatred of the conqueror, or, perhaps, to comply with the savage custom of his country. After this victory, no further obstacle could impede the progress of the confederates, and they faithfully executed the terms of their agreement. The fair countries of Walachia, Moldavia, Transylvania, and the parts of Hungary beyond the Danube, were occupied, without resistance, by a new colony of Scythians; and the Dacian empire of the chagans subsisted with splendour above two hundred and thirty years. The nation of the Gepidæ was dissolved; but in the distribution of the captives, the slaves of the Avars were less fortunate than the companions of the Lombards, whose generosity adopted a valiant foe, and whose freedom was insensible to cool and deliberate tyranny. One moiety of the spoil introduced into the camp of Alboin more wealth than a barbarian could readily compute. The fair Rosamund was persuaded, or compelled, to acknowledge the rights of her victorious lover; and the daughter of Cumiminund appeared to forgive those crimes which might be imputed to her own invincible charms.

The destruction of a mighty kingdom established the fame of Alboin. In the days of Charlemagne, the Bavarians, the Saxons, and the other tribes of the Teutonic language, still repeated the songs which described the heroic virtues, the valor, liberality, and fortune of the king of the Lombards. But his ambition was yet unsatiated;

11. Post Wasserturrn, the decree of Pristil, de Sest. Langobard, i. 30, 31. The picture of national customs, though somewhat shadowed, is given by the Letters of Prisca, and the annals of Verona. The old Roman towns and cities were thus occupied. A.D. 556, when; and the Cimbri, p. 365. The siege of North America is described by Balony. The speech of Prisca, ed. Prisca, loc. cit. p. 257. Three German songs, some of which are as old as the Christian era. They are contained in the works of Thirion, Mag. a. Gregor. a. 666. See the toleration and submission of Charlemagne. Burchard, a monastic writer, relates an attempt made by the emperor to introduce the monarch of the Lombards to his court. See in his own words, ed. Prisca, p. 257. Thirion, op. cit. p. 914.
and the conquest of the Gepidae turned his eyes from the Danube to the richer banks of the Po and the Tyber. Fifteen years had not elapsed, since his subjects, the confederates of Narses, had visited the pleasant climate of Italy; the mountains, the rivers, the highways, were familiar to their memory; the report of their success; perhaps the view of their spoils, had kindled in the rising generation the flame of emulation and enterprise. Their hopes were encouraged by the spirit and eloquence of Albinus; and it is affirmed, that he spoke to their senses, by producing, at the royal feast, the fairest and most exquisite fruits that grew spontaneously in the garden of the world. No sooner had he erected his standard, than the native strength of the Lombards was multiplied by the adventurous youth of Germany and Scythia. The robust patriotism of Noricam and Patnam had resumed the manners of barbarians; and the names of the Gepidae, Bulgarians, Saratians, and Bavarians, may be distinctly traced in the provinces of Italy.13

Of the Saxons, the old allies of the Lombards, twenty thousand warriors, with their wives and children, accepted the invitation of Albinus. Their bravery contributed to his success; but the accession or the absence of their numbers was not sensibly felt in the magnitude of his host. Every mode of religion was freely practised by its respective votaries. The king of the Lombards had been educated in the Arian heresy; but the Catholics, in their public worship, were allowed to pray for his conversion; while the more stubbornæ barbarians nourished a shoo-goat, or perhaps a captive, to the gods of their fathers.14 The Lombards, and their confederates, were united by their common attachment to a chief, who excelled in all the virtues and vices of a savage lord; and the vigilance of Albinus provided an ample magazine of offensive and defensive arms for the use of the expedition. The portable wealth of the Lombards attended the march; their lands they cheerfully relinquished to the Avars, on the solemn promise, which was made and accepted without a smile, that if they failed in the conquest of Italy, these voluntary exiles should be reinstated in their former possessions.

They might have failed, if Narses had been the antagonist of the Lombards; and the veteran warriors, the associates of his Gothic victory, would have encountered with reluctance an enemy whom they dreaded and esteemed. But the weakness of the Byzantine court was subservient to the barbarian cause; and it was for the ruin of Italy, that the emperor once listened to the complaints of his subjects. The virtues of Narses were stupefied with avarice; and in his provincial reign of fifteen years he accumulated a treasure of gold and silver which surpassed the modesty of a private fortune. His government was oppressive or unpopular, and the general discontent was expressed with freedom by the deputies of Rome. Before the throne of Justin they boldly declared, that their Gothic servitude had been more tolerable than the despotism of a Greek suzerain; and that, unless their tyrant were instantly removed, they would consult their own happiness in the choice of a master. The apprehension of a revolt was urged by the voice of envy and detraction, which had so recently triumphed over the merit of Belisarius.

A new exarch, Longinus, was appointed to supersede the conqueror of Italy, and the base motives of his recall were revealed in the insulting mandate of the empress Sophia, that he should have "the exercise of arms, and return to his proper station among the maidens of the palace, where a distaff should be again placed in the hand of the Dunum." I will spin her such a thread, as she shall not easily unravel! It is said to have been the reply which indignation and conscious virtue extorted from the hero. Instead of attending, a slave and a victim, at the gate of the Byzantine palace, he retired to Naples, from whence (if any credit is due to the belief of the times) Narses invited the Lombards to chastise the ingratitude of the prince and people. But the passions of the people are furious and changeable, and the Romans, soon recolected the merits, or dreaded the resentment, of their victorious general. By the mediation of the pope, who undertook a special pilgrimage to Naples, their repentance was accepted; and Narses, assuming a minister aspect and a more dutiful language, consented to fix his residence in the Capitoll. His death, though in the extreme period of old age, was unseemly and premature, since his genius alone could have repaired the last and fatal error of his life. The reality, or the suspicion, of a conspiracy disarmed and dissipated the Italians. The soldiers resented the disgrace, and bewailed the loss, of their general. They were ignorant of their new exarch; and Longinus was himself ignorant of the state of the army and the province. In the preceding years Italy had been desolated by pestilence and famine, and a disaffected people ascribed the calamities of sueture to the guilt or folly of their rulers.15

Whatever might be the grounds of his security, Albinus neither expected nor encountered a Roman army in the field. He ascended the Julium Alps, and looked down with contempt and desire on the fruitful plains to which his victory communicated the perpetual appellation of Lombardy. A faithful chieftain, and a select band, were stationed at Forum Juliani, the modern Fruli, to guard the passes of the mountains.

---

The Lombards respected the strength of Pavia, and listened to the prayers of the Teutonians: their slow and heavy multitudes proceeded to occupy the palace and city of Verona; and Milan, now rising from her ashes, was invested by the powers of Alboin five months after his departure from Pannonia. Terror preceded his march; he found everywhere, or he left, a dreary solitude; and the paullamnious Italians presumed, without a trial, that the stranger was invincible. Escaping to lakes, or rocks, or marshes, the affrighted crowds concealed some fragments of their wealth, and delayed the moment of their subsistence. Paulinus, the patriarch of Aquileia, rescued his treasures, sacred and profane, to the Isle of Grado, and his successors were adopted by the infant republic of Venice, which was continually enriched by the public calamities. Honoratus, who filled the chair of St. Ambrose, had credulously accepted the faithless offers of a capitulation; and the archbishops, with the clergy and nobles of Milan, were driven by the perjury of Alboin to seek a refuge in the less accessible ramparts of Genoa. Along the maritime coast, the courage of the inhabitants was supported by the facility of supply, the hopes of relief, and the power of escape; but from the Trentine falls to the gates of Ravenna and Rome, the inland regions of Italy became, without a battle, a siege, the lasting pamirmury of the Lombards. The submission of the people invited the barbarian to assume the character of a lawful sovereign, and the helpless exarch was confined to the office of announcing to the emperor Justin, the rapid and irretrievable loss of his provinces and cities. One city, which had been diligently fortified by the Goths, resisted the arms of a new invader; and while Italy was subdued by the flying detachments of the Lombards, the royal camp was fixed above three years before the western gate of Ticinum, or Pavia. The same courage which obtains the esteem of a civilized enemy, provokes the fury of a savage, and the impatient besieger had bound himself by a tremendous oath, that age, and sex, and dignity, should be confounded in a general massacre. The aid of famine at length enabled him to execute his bloody vow; but as Alboin entered the gate, his horse stumped, fell, and could not be raised from the ground. One of his attendants was prompted by compassion, or pity, to interpret this miraculous sign of the wrath of Heaven; the conqueror paused and relented; he sheathed his sword, and, peacefully repose his character in the palace of Theodic, proclaimed to the trembling multitude, that they should live and obey. Delighted with the situation of a city, which was endeared to his pride by the difficulty of the purchase, the prince of the Lombards disdained the ancient glories of Milan; and Pavia, during some ages, was respected as the capital of the kingdom of Italy.

The reign of the founder was splendid and transient; and before he could regulate his new conquests, Alboin fell a sacrifice to domestic treason and female revenge. In a palace near Verona, which had not been erected for the barbarians, he feasted the companions of his arms; intoxication was the reward of valour, and the king himself was tempted by appetite, or vanity, to exceed the ordinary measure of his intemperance. After drauing many capacious bowls of Burgundian or Falernian wine, he called for the skull of Cunimund, the noblest and most precious ornament of his sideboard. The cup of victory was accepted with horrid applause by the circle of the Lombard chiefs. "Fill it again "with wine," exclaimed the inhuman conqueror; "fill it to the brim; carry this goblet to the queen, and request in my name that she would rejoice with her father." In an agony of grief and rage, Rosmound had already lost her utterance. Let the fairest of your head be obeyed," and touching it with his lips pronounced a silent supplication, that the insult should be washed away in the blood of Alboin. Some indulgence might be due to the resentment of a daughter, if she had not already violated the duties of a wife. Implacable in her enmity, or inconstant in her love, the queen of Italy had stooped from the throne to the arms of a subject; and Helmiun, the king's armorbearer, was the secret minister of her pleasure and revenge. Against the proposal of the murder, he could no longer urge the scruples of fidelity or gratitude; but Helmiunis trembled when he revolved the danger as well as the guilt, when he recollected the matchless strength and intrepidity of a warrior whom he had so often attended in the field of battle. He pressed, and obtained, that one of the bravest champions of the Lombards should be associated to the enterprise, but no more than a promise of secrecy could be drawn from the gallant Peredius; and the mode of seduction employed by Rosmound betrays her shameless insensibility both to honour and love. She supplied the place of one of her female attendants who was beloved by Peredius, and contrived some excuse for darkness and silence, till she could inform her companion that he had enjoyed the queen of the Lombards, and that his own death, or the death of Alboin, must be the consequence of such treasonable adultery. In this alternative, he chose rather to be the accomplice than the victim of Rosmound's, whose unhuman spirit was incapable of fear or remorse. She expected, and soon found, a favourable moment, when the king, oppressed with wine, had retired from the table to his afternoon chambers.
His faithless spouse was anxious for his health and repose; the gates of the palace were shut, the arms removed; the attendants dismissed, and Rosamond, after suffrages to rest by her tender care, unbolted the chamber door, and rang the reluctant conspirators to the instant execution of the deed. On the first alarm, the warrior started from his couch: his sword, which he attempted to draw, had been fastened to the scabbard by the hand of Rosamond; and a small stool, his only weapon, could not long protect him from the spears of the assassins. The daughter of Constance smiled in his fall; his body was buried under the staircases of the palace, and the grateful posterity of the Lombards revered the tomb and the memory of their victorious leader.

The Right and Title.

The ambitious Rosamond aspired to reign in the name of her lover; the city and palace of Verona were awed by her power, and a faithful band of her native Gepidae was prepared to avenge the revenge, and to second the wishes of their sovereign. But the Lombard chiefs, who fled in the first moments of consternation and disorder, had resumed their courage and collected their powers; and the nation, instead of submitting to her reign, denounced, with unanimous cries, that justice should be executed on the guilty spouse and the murderers of their king. She sought a refuge among the enemies of her country, and a criminal who deserved the abhorrence of mankind was protected by the selfish policy of the exarch. With her daughter, the heiress of the Lombard throne, her two lovers, her trusty Gepidae, and the spoils of the palace of Verona, Rosamond descended the Adige and the Po, and was transported by a Greek vessel to the safe harbor of Marenza. Longinus beheld with delight the charms and the treasures of the widow of Alboin; her situation and her past conduct might justify the most licentious proposals; and she readily listened to the passion of a minister, who, even in the decline of the empire, was expected as the equal of kings.

The death of a jealous lover was purchased as a fearful sacrifice; and as Heimrich issued from the bath, he received the deadly poison from the hand of his mistress. The taste of the liquor, its speedy operation, and his experience of the character of Rosamond, convinced him that he was poisoned; he pointed his dagger to her breast, compelled her to drain the remainder of the cup, and expired in a few minutes, with the consolation that she could not survive to enjoy the fruits of her wickedness. The daughter of Alboin and Rosamond, with the richest spoils of the Lombards, was embarked for Constantinople; the surprising strength of Polesden amusing and terrified the Imperial court; his blindness established an imperfect copy of the adventures of

Sampson. By the free suffrages of Clapho, king of the nation, in the assembly of Pavia, the 1st of July, 1071. Clapho, one of their noblest chiefs, was elected as the successor of Alboin. Before the end of eighteen months, the throne was polluted by a second murder; Clapho was stabbed by the hand of a domestic; the regal office was suspended above ten years, during the minority of his son Anthin; and Italy was divided and oppressed by a ducal aristocracy of thirty tyrants.

When the nephew of Justinian ascended the throne, he proclaimed a new era of happiness and glory. The annals of the second Justin are marked with disgust abroad and misery at home. In the West, the Roman empire was afflicted by the loss of Italy, the devastation of Africa, and the conquests of the Persians. Injustice prevailed both in the capital and the provinces; the rich trembled for their property, the poor for their safety; the ordinary magistrates were ignorant or venal; the occasional remedies appear to have been arbitrary and violent; and the complaints of the people could no longer be silenced by the splendid names of a legislator and a conqueror. The opinion which imputes to the prince all the calamities of his times, may be accounted for by the historian as a serious truth or a salutary prejudice. Yet a candid suspicion will arise, that the sentiments of Justin were pure and benevolent, and that he might have filled his station without reproach, if the faculties of his mind had not been impaired by disease, which deprived the emperor of the use of his feet, and confined him to the palace, a stranger to the complaints of the people and the vices of the government.

The orderly knowledge of his own inactivity determined him to lay down the weight of the diadem; and in the choice of a worthy substitute, he showed some symptoms of a discerning and even magnificent spirit. The only son of Justin and Sophia died in his infancy; their daughter Ariadne was the wife of Basilarius, superintendent of the palace, and afterwards commander of the Italian armies, who hastily aspired to confirm the rights of marriage by those of adoption. While the empire appeared an object of desire, Justin was accustomed to behold with jealousy and hatred his brothers and cousins, the rivals of his hopes; nor could he depend on the gratitude of those who would accept the purple as a restitution, rather than a gift. Of these competitors, one had been removed by exile, and afterwards by death; and the emperor himself had inflicted such cruel insults on another, that he must either dread his resentment or despise his patience. This domestic animosity was refined into a generous resolution of seeking a successor, not in his family, but in the republic; and the artful Sophia recommended Tibertius, his faithful captain of the guard of Justinian. A family of noble Venetians [Cos, Rosini, etc., built churches and gave name to the village as early as the ninth century]; he is called Venetius by Lomellino and Galvano, and Veneti by others.

29 He was numbered among the benefactors of the SHOWERS OF FAVOUR. 28 He was numbered among the benefactors of the SHOWERS OF FAVOUR.
the guards, whose virtues and fortune the emperor might cherish as the fruit of his judicious choice. The ceremony of his elevation to the rank of Caesar, or Augustus, was performed in the portico of the palace, in the presence of the patriarch and the senate. Justin collected the remaining strength of his mind and body; but the popular belief that his speech was inspired by the Deity, betrays a very humble opinion both of the man and of the times. 26 "You behold," said the emperor, "the insignia of supreme power. You are about to receive them, not from my hand, but from the hand of God. Honour them, and from them you will derive honour. Respect the empress your mother; she is now your son; before, you were her servant. Delight not in blood; abstain from revenge; avoid those actions by which I have incurred the public hatred; and consult the experience, rather than the example, of your predecessor. As a man, I have sinned; as a sinner, even in this life I have been severely punished: but these servants (and he pointed to his ministers), who have abused my confidence, and inflamed my passions, will appear to you before the tribunal of Christ. I have been dazzled by the splendour of the diadem; be thou wiser and more modest; remember what you have been, remember what you are. You are surrounded by your slaves and your children; with the authority, assume the tenderness, of a parent. Love your people like yourself; cultivate the affections, maintain the discipline, of the army: protect the fortunes of the rich, relieve the necessities of the poor." 27 The assembly, in silence and in tears, applauded the counsel and sympathy with the repentance, of their prince; the patriarch rejoiced at the prayers of the church; Tiberius received the diadem on his knees; and Justin, who in his abdication appeared most worthy to reign, addressed the new monarch in the following words: "If you consent, I live; if you command, I die: may the God of heaven and earth infuse into your heart whatever I have neglected or forgotten!" 28

Death of Justin.
February 18.

Justian were passed in tranquil obscurity: his conscience was no longer tormented by the remembrance of those duties which he was incapable of discharging; and his choice was justified by the filial reverence and gratitude of Tiberius.

Among the virtues of Tiberius, his beauty (he was one of the tallest and most comely of the Romans) might introduce him to the favour of Sophia; and the widow of Justin was persuaded, that she should preserve her station and influence under the reign of a second and more youthful husband. But if the ambitious candidate had been tempted to flatter and dissimulate, it was no longer in his power to fulfill her expectations, or his own promise. The factions of the hippocrene demanded, with some impatience, the name of their new emperor; both the people and Sophia were astonished by the proclamation of Anastasia, the secret, though lawful wife of the emperor Tiberius. Whatever could alleviate the disappointment of Sophia, Imperial honours, a stately palace, a numerous household, was liberally bestowed by the piety of her adopted son; on solemn occasions he attended and consulted the widow of his benefactor; but her ambition disclaimed the vain semblance of royalty, and the respectful appellation of mother served to exasperate, rather than appease, the rage of an injured woman. While she accepted, and repaid with a courteously smile, the fair expressions of regard and confidence, a secret alliance was concluded between the dowager empress and her ancient enemies; and Justinian, the son of Germanus, was employed as the instrument of her revenge. The pride of the reigning house supported, with reluctance, the domination of a stranger; the youth was deservedly popular; his name, after the death of Justin, had been mentioned by a tumultuous faction; and his own submissive offer of his hand, with a treasure of sixty thousand pounds, might be interpreted as an evidence of guilt, or at least of fear. Justinian received a free pardon, and the command of the Eastern army. The Persian monarch had left his arms; and the accusations which accompanied his triumph declared him worthy of the purple. His arthritic ailments had chosen the month of the vineyard, while the emperor, in a rural solitude, was permitted to enjoy the pleasures of a subject. On the first intelligence of her design he returned to Constantinople; and the conspiracy was suppressed by his presence and firmness. From the pomp and honours which she had abused, Sophia was reduced to a modest allowance; Tiberius dismissed her train, intercepted her correspondence, and committed to a faithful guard the custody of her person. But the services of Justinian were not considered by that excellent prince as an aggravation of his offences; after a mild reproof, his treason and ingratitude were forgiven; and it was commonly believed, that the emperor entertained some thoughts of contrasting a double alliance with the rival of his throne. The voice of an angel (such a fable was propagated) might reveal to the emperor, that he should always triumph over his domestic foes; but Tiberius derived a firmer assurance from the innocence and generosity of his own mind.

With the odious name of Tiberius, he assumed the more popular appellation of Constantine, and imitated the pure virtues of the Antonines. After recording the vice or folly of so many Roman princes, it is pleasing to repose, for a moment, on a character conspicuous by the qualities of humanity, justice, temperance, and fortune; to contemplate

26 Eusebius (d. 339) has added the remarks to his narrative. He applies this speech to the ceremony when Tiberius who assumed the name of Augustus, was deified; but in his Agamemnon immediately.

27 Theophilus (m. 11. c. 12, 13) declares how he shall give precedence to the speech of Justin, in his commentary, without seeming to favor the enthusiasm of the bishops.

28 For the empress and sons of Tiberius, see Eusebius, p. 123. Thackeray, i. 110 and 111. Thoempius, in Chron. p. 212. Const. (m. 11.) does not notice him. The name of Justinis, an Anna Longinus, I. 11. 11. the discreet Flavius Julius appears to have omitted with reason and justification.
plate a sovereign affable in his palace, pious in the church, impartial on the seat of judgment, and victorious, at least by his generals, in the Persian war. The most glorious trophy of his victory consisted in a multitude of captives, whom Tiberius entertained, reclined, and dismissed to their native homes with the charitable spirit of a Christian hero. The merit or misfortunes of his own subjects had a dearer claim to his beneficence, and he measured his bounty not so much by their expectations as by his own dignity. This maxim, however dangerous in a trustee of the public wealth, was balanced by a principle of humanity and justice, which taught him to abhor, as of the largest alloy, the gold that was extracted from the tears of the people. For their relief, as often as they had suffered by natural or hostile calamities, he was impatient to remit the arrears of the past, or the demands of future taxes: he sternly rejected the servile offerings of his ministers, which were compensated by tenfold oppression; and the wise and equitable laws of Tiberius excited the praise and regret of succeeding times. Constantineople believed that the emperor had discovered a treasure: but his genuine treasure consisted in the practice of liberal economy, and the contempt of all vain and superfluous expense. The Romans of the East would have been happy, if the best gift of heaven, a patriotic king, had been confirmed as a proper and permanent blessing. But in less than four years after the death of Justin, his worthy successor sunk into a mortal disease, which left him only sufficient time to restore the dastard, according to the tenure by which he held it, to the most deserving of his fellow-citizens. He selected Maurice from the crowd, a judgment more precious than the purple itself: the patriarchs and senate were summoned to the bed of the dying prince; he bestowed his daughter and the empire; and his last advice was solemnly delivered by the voice of the questioner. Tiberius expressed his hope, that the virtue of his son and successor would erect the noblest monument to his memory. His memory was embalmed by the public affliction; but the most sincere grief evaporates in the tumult of a new reign, and the eyes and acclamations of mankind were speedily directed to the rising sun.

The cause of The emperor Maurice derived his origin from ancient Rome; but his immediate parents were settled at

Arabissis in Cappadocia, and their singular felicity preserved them alive to behold and partake the fortune of their August son. The youth of Maurice was spent in the profession of arms: Tiberius promoted him to the command of a new and favourite legion of twelve thousand confederates; his valor and conduct were signalised in the Persian war; and he returned to Constantineople to accept, as his just reward, the inheritance of the empire. Maurice ascended the throne at the mature age of forty-three years; and he reigned above twenty years over the East and over himself:20 expelling from his mind the wild democracy of passions, and establishing (according to the quaint expression of Evagrius) a perfect aristocracy of reason and virtue. Some suspicion will degrade the testimony of a subject, though he protests that his secret praise should never reach the ear of his sovereign,21 and some failings seem to place the character of Maurice below the purer merit of his predecessor. His cold and reserved demeanour might be imputed to arrogance; his justice was not always exempt from cruelty, nor his clemency from weakness; and his rigid economy too often exposed him to the reproach of avarice. But the rational wishes of an absolute monarch must tend to the happiness of his people; Maurice was endowed with sense and courage to promote that happiness, and his administration was directed by the principles and example of Tiberius. The pellucidities of the Greeks had introduced so complete a separation between the offices of king and of general, that a private soldier who had deserved and obtained his noble, seldom or never appeared at the head of his armies. Yet the emperor Maurice enjoyed the glory of restoring the Persian monarch to his throne; his lieutenants waged a doubtful war against the Avars of the Danube, and he cast an eye of pity, of indulgent pity, on the object and distressful state of his Italian provinces.

From Italy the emperors were incessantly tormented by tales of misery and demands of succour, which extorted the humiliating confession of their own weakness. The expiring dignity of Rome was only marked by the freedom and energy of her complaints: "If you are incapable," she said, "of delivering us from the sword of the Lombards, save us at least from the calamity of famine." Tiberius forgave the reproach, and relieved the distress: a supply of corn was transported from Egypt to the Tyber; and the Rhenish people, invoking the name, not of Camillus, but of St. Peter, repulsed the barbarians from their walls. But the relief was accidental, the danger was perpetual and pressing: and the clergy and senate, collecting the remains of their ancient opulence, a sum of three thousand pounds of gold, dispatched the patriotic Pamphilus to lay their gifts and their complaints at the feet of the Byzantine throne. The attention of the court, and the forces of the East, were diverted by the Persian war; but the justice of Tiberius applied the subsidy to the defence of the city; and he dismissed the Persian with his best advice, either to bribe the Lombard chiefs, or to purchase the aid of the kings of France. Notwithstanding this weak invention, Italy was still

pelas and rural Italy by Theophylaus Haemusus. Theopompos, the 20th and 21st books of Cassiodorus, particularly B. V. i. 4.; the eight books of his

20. It is therefore singular enough that Paul (1 Tim. v. 11.) should distinguish those as the first Greek emperors:—"The emperors of the Persian and Roman empires had been born in the latest provinces of Europe; and, at the rise of the empire of the Greeks, they expressed their hatred of the orient than in the east.

21. Cassiodorus, in the chronicles and engra of Maurice, the 20th and 21st books of Cassiodorus, particularly B. V. i. 4.; the eight books of his
the Merovingian and Imperial forces had been effected in the neighbourhood of Milan, perhaps they might have subverted the throne of the Lombards; but the Franks expected six days the signal of a blazing village, and the arms of the Greeks were idle employed in the reduction of Modena and Parma, which were torn from them after the retreat of their Transalpine allies.

The victorious Autharic asserted his claim to the dominion of Italy. At the foot of the Italian Alps, he saluted the resistance, and rifled the hidden treasures, of a sequestered island in the lake of Como. At the extreme point of Campania, he touched with his spear a column on the sea-shore of Rhegium, proclaiming that ancient landmark to stand the immovable boundary of his kingdom.

During a period of two hundred years, Italy was unequally divided between the kingdom of the Lombards and the republic of Ravenna. The officer and professions, which the jealousy of Constantine had separated, were united by the insalubrity of Justinian; and eighteen successive exarchs were invested in the declining of the empire, with the full remains of civil, of military, and even of ecclesiastical power. Their immediate jurisdiction, which was afterwards consecrated as the patrimony of Saint Peter, extended over the modern Romagna, the marshes or valleys of Ferrara and Comacchio, the maritime cities from Rimini to Ancona, and a second inland frontier, between the Hadrician plain and the hills of the Apennine. Three of these provinces, of Rome, of Venice, and of Naples, which were divided by hostile lands from the palace of Ravenna, acknowledged, both in peace and war, the supremacy of the exarch. The duchy of Rome appears to have included the Tuscan, Sabine, and Latian conquests, of the first four hundred years of the city, and the limits may be distinctly traced along the coast, from Civita Vecchia to Terracina, and with the course of the Tyber. From Amelia and Narni to the port of Ostia. The numerous islands from Grado to C:both, composed the infant dominion of Venice; but the more accessible towns on the continent were overthrown by the Lombards, who beheld with impatient fury a new capital rising from the waves. The power of the dukes of Naples was circumscribed by the bay and the adjacent isles, by the hostile territory of Capua, and by the Roman colony of Amalfi, whose industrious citizens, by the invention of the mariner's compass, have unveilled the face of the globe. The three islands of Sardinia, Corsica, and Sicily, still adhered to the empire; and the acquisition of the farther Calabria restored the landmark of Autharic from the shores of Rhegium to the isthmus of Corfucentia. In Sardinia, the savage materia
universally preserved the liberty and religion of their ancestors; but the humbleness of Sicily were clained to their rich and cultivated soil. Rome was successively by the iron scourge of the conquerors, and a Greek, perhaps an exarch, insulted with impunity the ruins of the Capitol. But Naples soon acquired the privilege of electing her own duke. 56 The independence of Amalfi was the fruit of commerce; and the voluntary attachment of Venice was finally emboldened by an equal alliance with the Eastern empire. On the map of Italy, the measure of the exarchate occupies a very inadequate space, but it included an ample proportion of wealth, industry, and population. The most faithful and valuable subjects escaped from the barbarian yoke; and the banners of Pavia and Verona, of Milan and Padua, were displayed in their respective quarters by the new inhabitants of Ravenna. The remainder of Italy was possessed by the Lombards; and from Pavia, the royal seat, their kingdom was extended to the east, the north, and the west, as far as the confines of the Avars, the Bavarians, and the Franks of Austrasia and Burgundy. In the language of modern geography, it is now represented by the Terra Firmas of the Venetian republic, Tyrol, the Milanese, Piedmont, the coast of Genoa, Mantua, Parma, and Modena, the grand duchy of Tuscany, and a large portion of the ecclesiastical state from Perugia to the Adriatic. The dukes, and at length the princes of Beneventum, survived the monarchy, and propagated the name of the Lombards. From Capua to Tarentum, they reigned near five hundred years over the greatest part of the present kingdom of Naples. 57

In comparing the proportion of the victorious and the vanquished people, the change of language will afford the most probable inference. According to this standard it will appear, that the Lombards of Italy, and the Visigoths of Spain, were less numerous than the Franks or Burgundians; and the conquerors of Gaul must yield, in their turn, to the multitude of Saxons and Angles who almost eradicated the millions of Britain. The modern Italian has been insensibly formed by the mixture of nations; the archaism of the barbarian in the nice management of declensions and conjugations, reduced them to the use of articles and auxiliary verbs; and many new ideas have been expressed by Teutonic apppellations. Yet the principal stock of technical and familiar words is found to be of Latin derivation; 58 and if we were sufficiently conversant with the obsolete, the rustic, and the municipal dialects of ancient Italy, we should trace the origin of many terms which might perhaps, be rejected by the classic purity of Rome. A numerous army constitutes but a small nation, and the powers of the Lombards were soon diminished by the retreat of twenty thousand Saxons, who scorned a dependent situation, and returned, after many bold and perilous adventures, to their native country. 59 The camp of Albinus was of formidable extent, but the extent of a camp would be easily circumscribed within the limits of a city; and its martial inhabitants must be thinly scattered over the face of a large country. When Albinus descended from the Alps, he invested his nephew, the first duke of Friuli, with the command of the province and the people: but the prudent Grisulf would have declined the dangerous offices, unless he had been permitted to choose, among the nobles of the Lombards, a sufficient number of families 60 to form a perpetual colony of soldiers and subjects. In the progress of conquest, the same option could not be granted to the dukes of Brescia or Bergamo, of Pavia or Turin, of Spoleto or Beneventum; but each of these, and each of their colleagues, settled in his appointed district with a band of followers who ensured to his standard in war, and his tribunal in peace. Their attachment was free and honourable: resigning the gifts and benefits which they had accepted, they might emigrate with their families into the jurisdiction of another duke; but their absence from the kingdom was punished with death, as a crime of military desertion. 51 The posterity of the first conquerors struck a deeper root into the soil, while, by every motive of interest and honour, they were bound to defend. A Lombard was born the soldier of his king and his duke; and the civil assemblies of the nation displayed the banners, and assumed the appellation of a regular army. Of this army, the pay and the rewards were drawn from the conquered provinces; and the distribution, which was not effected till after the death of Albinus, is disgraced by the foul marks of injustice and rapine. Many of the most wealthy Italians were slain or banished; the commissioners were divided among the strangers; and a tributary obligation was imposed (within the name of hospitality), of paying to the Lombards a third part of the produce of the earth. Within less than seventy years, this artificial system was abolished by a more simple and solid tenure. 62 Either the Roman landlord was expelled by his strong and insolent guest; or the annual payment, a third of the produce, was exchanged by a more equitable transaction for an adequate proportion of landed property. Under these foreign masters, the business of agriculture, in the cultivation of corn, vines, and olive, was exercised with degenerate skill and industry by the labour of the slaves and natives. But the occupations of a

56 Compare Magv. 1. 10. Epist. 22. 30. 21. 77.
57 I Have described the state of Italy from the earliest possession by the Normans. Compare Book ii. 241. 247. 58 I followed the ancient Camillus Felicianus in the geography of the kingdom of Italy. 59 The story of the Saxons is the history of the nation that never trusted of the innate ignorance of Teutonic apppellations. Grisulf's choice and the choice of his first conquerors are thus expressed by the historian: "The nation was so numerous as the country of his own name." 60 Compare No. 2. and 127. of the laws of Bavonius.
61 Compare Epist. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. and the laws of Bavonius, promulgated A.D. 953, in order to receive the ancient writers of this century of giftedness; but it is preserved in the works of those among the circumcised of Rome and the nation of the Lombards."
pastoral life were more pleasing to the idleness of the barbarians. In the rich meadows of Venetia, they restored and improved the breed of horses, for which that province had once been illustrious; and the Romans beheld with astonishment a foreign race of oxen or buffaloes. The depopulation of Lombardy, and the increase of forests, afforded an ample range for the pleasures of the chase. That marvellous art which teaches the birds of the air to acknowledge the voice, and execute the commands of their master, had been unknown to the ingenuity of the Greeks and Romans. Scandinavia and Scythia produce the boldest and most tractable falcons; but they were tamed and educated by the roving inhabitants, always on horseback and in the field. This favourite amusement of our ancestors was introduced by the barbarians into the Roman provinces; and the laws of Italy esteem the sword and the hawk as of equal dignity and importance in the hands of a noble Lombard.

So rapid was the influence of climate and example, that the Lombards of the fourth generation surveyed with curiosity and affright the portraits of their savage forefathers. Their hands were shaven behind, but the slaggly locks hung over their eyes and mouth, and a long beard represented the name and character of the nation. Their dress consisted of loose linen garments, after the fashion of the Anglo-Saxons, which were decorated, in their opinion, with broad stripes of various colours. The legs and feet were clothed in long hose, and open sandals; and even in the security of peace a trusty sword was constantly girt to their side. Yet this strange apparel, and horrid aspect, often concealed a gentle and generous disposition; and as soon as the rage of battle had subsided, the captives and subjects were sometimes surprised by the humanity of the victor. The visors of the Lombards were the effect of passion, of ignorance, of intoxication; their virtues are the more laudable, as they were not affected by the hypocrisy of social manners, nor imposed by the rigid constraint of laws and education. I should not be apprehensive of deviating from my subject, if it were in my power to delineate the private life of the conquerors of Italy, and I shall relate with pleasure the adventures gallantry of Authoris, which breathes the true spirit of chivalry and romance. After the loss of his promised bride, a Messopian princess, he sought in marriage the daughter of the king of Bavaria; and Garisild accepted the alliance of the Italian monarch. Impatient of the slow progress of negotiation, the ardant lover escaped from his palace, and visited the court of Bavaria in the train of his own emissary. At the public audience, the unknown stranger advanced to the throne, and informed Garisild that the ambassador was indeed the minister of state, but that he alone was the friend of Authoris, who had trusted him with the delicate commission of making a faithful report of the charms of his spouse. The Countess was summoned to undergo this important examination; and after a pause of silent rapture, she hailed him as the queen of Italy, and humbly requested that, according to the custom of the nation, she would present a cup of wine to the first of her new subjects. By the command of her father, she obeyed; Authoris received the cup in his turn; and, in restoring it to the princess, he secretly touched her hand, and drew his own finger over her face and lips. In the evening, Theodolinda imparted to her nurse the indiscreet familiarity of the stranger, and was comforted by the assurance that such boldness could proceed only from the king her husband, who, by his beauty and courtage, appeared worthy of her love. The ambassadors were dismissed; no sooner did they reach the confines of Italy, than Authoris, raising himself on his horse, darted his battle-axe against a tree with incomparable strength and dexterity: "So," said he to the astonished Bavarians, "such are the strokes of the king of the Lombards." The approach of a French army, Garisild and his daughter took refuge in the dominions of their ally; and the marriage was consummated in the palace of Verona. At the end of one year, it was disposed by the death of Authoris; but the virtues of Theodolinda had endeared her to the nation, and she was permitted to bestow, with her hand, the sceptre of the Italian kingdom.

From this fact, as well as from similar events, it is certain that the Lombards possessed freedom to elect their sovereign, and sense to decline the frequent use of that dangerous privilege. The public revenue arose from the produce of land, and the

17 The birth of Desiderius of Bonn, and his journey to Rome. For the Olympic games, had assisted among the Greeks the races of the track, and the wrestling matches. For, by his superiority in the one, and his skill in the other, he was pronounced king of the Greeks (Lycur., ii. p. 320.)—Isidore relates this from his own personal acquaintance with the king of the Persians. The Lombards afterwards imitated the Persian Cuneiform writing. See der Kinderlau, Hist. Germ. II. p. 67. For this, see also the account of the Persians, p. 33.
18 See Dr. Schlegel's Geschenke, p. 54. He召集 the Raeneis, p. 5; and also raises a question on the subject of the execution of the law of the peoples, p. 14. The Lombards were ignorant of the laws of Armenia, given by the Athenians and Persians. See Ropes, Hist. Armenia, c. iii. 174, and 175. For another account of the state of Armenia, in the 5th and 6th centuries, See Orosius, Hist. Maj. I. c. i. 22; p. 50, and p. 53. Dr. Firth, in his own period, over-estimated the influence of the king of the Persians.
19 See Dr. Schlegel's Geschenke, p. 54. He召集 the Raeneis, p. 5; and also raises a question on the subject of the execution of the law of the peoples, p. 14. The Lombards were ignorant of the laws of Armenia, given by the Athenians and Persians. See Ropes, Hist. Armenia, c. iii. 174, and 175. For another account of the state of Armenia, in the 5th and 6th centuries, See Orosius, Hist. Maj. I. c. i. 22; p. 50, and p. 53. Dr. Firth, in his own period, over-estimated the influence of the king of the Persians.
20 See Dr. Schlegel's Geschenke, p. 54. He召集 the Raeneis, p. 5; and also raises a question on the subject of the execution of the law of the peoples, p. 14. The Lombards were ignorant of the laws of Armenia, given by the Athenians and Persians. See Ropes, Hist. Armenia, c. iii. 174, and 175. For another account of the state of Armenia, in the 5th and 6th centuries, See Orosius, Hist. Maj. I. c. i. 22; p. 50, and p. 53. Dr. Firth, in his own period, over-estimated the influence of the king of the Persians.
own experience, that the juster cause had often been oppressed by successful violence. Whatever merit may be discovered in the laws of the Lombards, they are the genuine fruit of the reason of the barbarians, who never admitted the bishops of Italy to a seat in their legislative councils. But the succession of their kings is marked with virtue and ability; the most famous series of their monarchs is adorned with fair intervals of peace, order, and domestic happiness; and the Italians enjoyed a milder and more equitable government, than any of the other kingdoms which had been founded on the ruins of the Western empire. 35

Amidst the arms of the Lombards and under the despotism of the Greeks, we again enter into the state of Rome, 36 which had reached, about the close of the sixth century, the lowest period of her depression. By the removal of the seat of empire, and the successions and revolutions of the provinces, the powers of public and private opulence were exhausted; the lofty tree, under whose shade the nations of the earth had reposed, was deprived of its leaves and branches, and the supple trunk was left to wither on the ground. The ministries of command, and the messages of victory, no longer met on the Apian or Flemish way; and the hostile approach of the Lombards was often felt, and continually feared. The inhabitants of a potent and peaceful capital, who visit without an anxious thought the garden of the adjacent country, will faintly picture in their fancy the distress of the Romans; they shut or opened their gates with a trembling hand, beheld from the walls the flames of their houses, and heard the lamentations of their brethren, who were coupled together like dogs, and dragged away into distant slavery beyond the sea and the mountains. Such incessant alarms must annihilate the pleasures and interrupt the labours of a rural life; and the Campagna of Rome was speedily reduced to the state of a desolate wilderness, in which the land is barren, the waters are impure, and the air is infectious. Curiosity and ambition no longer attracted the nations to the capital of the world; but, if chance or necessity directed the steps of a wandering stranger, he contemplated with horror the vacancy and solitude of the city, and might be tempted to ask, Where is the senate, and where are the people? In a season of excessive rains, the Tyber swelled above its banks, and rushed with irresistible violence into the valleys of the Seven Hills. A pestilential disease arose from the stagnation of the deluge; and so rapid was the contagion, that four-score persons expired in an hour, in the midst of a solemn procession which impleaded the mercy of Heaven. 37 A society in which marva

profit of justice. When the independent dukes agreed that Autharius should ascend the throne of his father, they endowed the regal office with a fair moiety of their respective dominions. The proudest nobles aspired to the honour of servitude near the person of their prince: he rewarded the fidelity of his vassals by the precarious gift of pensions and benefices; and aimed for the injuries of war, by the rich foundation of monasteries and churches. In peace a judge, a leader in war, he never usurped the powers of a sole and absolute legislator. The king of Italy convened the national assemblies in the palace, or more probably in the fields, of Pavia: his great council was composed of the persons most eminent by their birth and dignities; but the validity, as well as the execution, of their decrees, depended on the approbation of the faithful people, the fortunate army of the Lombards.

About fourscore years after the conquest of Italy, their traditional customs were transcribed in Teutonic Latin, 34 and ratified by the consent of the prince and people; some new regulations were introduced, more suitable to their present condition: the example of Rothari was imitated by the wisest of his successors: and the laws of the Lombards have been esteemed the least imperfect of the barbaric codes. 35 Secure by their courage in the possession of liberty, these rude and hasty legislators were incapable of balancing the powers of the constitution, or of discussing the nice theory of political government. Such crimes as threatened the life of the sovereign, or the safety of the state, were adjudged worthy of death; but their attention was principally confined to the defence of the person and property of the subject. According to the strange jurisprudence of the times, the guilt of blood might be redeemed by a fine; yet the high price of nine hundred pieces of gold declares a just sense of the value of a simple citizen. Less atrocious injuries, a wound, a fracture, a blow, an apoplectic word, were measured with scrupulous and almost ridiculous diligence; and the prudence of the legislator encouraged the ignoble practice of bandering honour and revenge for a pecuniary compensation. The ignorance of the Lombards, in the state of Paganism or Christianity, gave implicit credit to the malice and mischief of witchcraft; but the judges of the seventeenth century might have been instructed and confounded by the wisdom of Rothari, who deters the absurd superstitions, and protects the wretched victims of popular or judicial crookery. 36 The same spirit of a legislator, superior to his age and country, may be ascribed to Luitprand, who condemns, while he tolerates, the impious and invertebrate abuses of the dukes, 38 observing from his

29. The most accurate edition of the Laws of the Lombards is to be found in the Scriptores Rerum Ital. in pag. 23, 24, et seqq. vol. I. ed. Crüger. 31. The same sentiment of liberty is expressed in these words of the ancient Roman poet, qui mihi sunt pecus, mecum se servari. 32. See Lewis Rothari, Hist. II. p. 47. Scipio is said to have met with a similar instance of the same name, in the times of Gaius Gracchus, who relieved a poor citizen of Campania from the violence of Glanum the bandit; but Marcellus (Annals, l'anno, vol. vi. p. 17) seems to intimate that the poet may have conjectured the name of the circumstance from the person of his person of the times. 33. The passage of the historian of Gregory, which describes the power of the Lombard barons, and in the years 1156, 1157, and 1158, from the works of Paganus, into the original text, it may be inferred that this province was of the kingdom of Bohemia. 34. Quot minus vultus verum pedes, quod additis additio, nullus est qui, occisit, certos sibi beneficis. 35. The several instances of the same kind, of another edition besides the one which I have in view, Leopoldus. i.e. the title page. 36. Saepe haec inopia atque invidia, ut mortales addicuntur, ut in vita legem parentis, in morte legem hominis habeant. 37. See the insolence and cruelty of the Lombars, decretum laetum, de morte addiditio, see pp. 189, 190, and the preceding notes. 38. Quo quantum excitat omnis adversus, ut mortales addicuntur, ut in vita legem parentis, in morte legem hominis habeant. 39. Saepe autem minus verum pedes, quod additis additio, nullus est qui, occisit, certos sibi beneficis.
riage is encouraged, and industry prevails, soon repairs the accidental losses of pestilence and war; but as the far greater part of the Romans was condemned to hopeless indigence and celibacy, the depopulation was constant and visible, and the gloomy enthusiasts might expect the approaching failure of the human race. Yet the number of citizens still exceeded the measure of subsistence; their precarious food was supplied from the havens of Sicily or Egypt; and the frequent repetition of famine betrays the inattention of the emperor to a distant province. The edifices of Rome were exposed to the same ruin and decay; the wondrous fabrics were easily overturned by inundations, tempests, and earthquakes; and the monks who had occupied the most advantageous stations exulted in their base triumph over the ruins of antiquity. It is commonly believed that pope Gregory the First attacked the temples and mutilated the statues of the city; but, by the command of the barbarians, the Palatine library was reduced to ashes, and that the history of Livy was the peculiar mark of his absurd and mischievous fanaticism. The writings of Gregory himself reveal his implausible aversion to the monuments of classic genius; and he points his severest sentence against the profane learning of a bishop who taught the art of grammar, studied the Latin poets, and pronounced with the same voice the praises of Jupiter and those of Christ. But the evidence of his destructive rage is doubtful and recent: the temple of Peace, or the theatre of Marcellus, have been demolished by the slow operation ofapse; and a formal prescription would have multiplied the copies of Virgil and Livy in the countries which were not subject to the ecclesiastical dictator. 66

Like Thesius, or Babylon, or Carthage, the name of Rome might have been erased from the earth, if the city had not been animed by a vital principle, which again restored her to honour and dominion. A vague tradition was embraced, that two Jewish teachers, a tent-maker, and a fisherman, had formerly been executed in the circus of Nero, and at the end of five hundred years their genuine or fictitious relics were adored as the Palladium of Christian Rome. The pilgrims of the East and West resorted to the holy threshold; but the shrines of the apostles were guarded by miracles and invisible terrors; and it was not without fear that the pious Catholic approached the object of his worship. It was fatal to touch; it was dangerous to behold, the bodies of the saints; and those who from the purest motives presumed to disturb the repose of the sanctuary, were afflicted by visions, or punished with sudden death. The unreasonable request of an emperor, who wished to deprive the Romans of their sacred treasure, the head of St. Paul, was rejected with the deepest aberration; and the pope asserted, most probably with truth, that a linen which had been sanctified in the neighbourhood of his body, or the filings of his chain, which it was sometimes easy and sometimes impossible to obtain, possessed an equal degree of miraculous virtue. But the power as well as virtue of the apostles relaxed with living energy in the breast of their successors; and the chair of St. Peter was filled under the reign of Maurice by the first and greatest of the name of Gregory. 69 His grandfather Felix had himself been pope, and as the bishops were already bound by the law of celibacy, his consecration must have been preceded by the death of his wife. The parents of Gregory, Sylvia, and Gordian, were the noblest of the senate, and the most pious of the church of Rome; his female relations were numbered among the saints and virgins; and his own figure was added to those of his father and mother; and were represented near three hundred years in a family portrait, 70 which he offered to the monastery of St. Andrew. The design and colouring of this picture afford an honourable testimony, that the art of painting was cultivated by the Italians of the sixth century; but the most object ideas must be entertained of their taste and learning, since the epitaphs of Gregory, his sermons, and his dialogues, are the work of a man who was second in erudition to none of his contemporaries, 71 his birth and abilities had raised him to the office of prefect of the city, and he enjoyed the merit of remanuing the pomp and vanity of this world. His ample patronage was dedicated to the foundation of seven monasteries; 7 2 one in Rome, 73 and six in Sicily; and it was the wish of Gregory that he might be unknown in this life, and glorious only

66 [Gregory of Rome (fl. 590-604) is a legendary personification of St. Benedict. Rome was divinely chosen as the residence of the papacy, and the Pope was styled the 'Teacher of the East.' This belief was widespread in mediaeval times, and is reflected in the papal insignia: the keys of St. Peter and the tiara.]

69 [Gregory the Great (d. 604) is considered one of the most important popes in early Christian history. He was the first pope to use the title 'Papa,' and is known for his efforts to reform the church and for his writings on ecclesiastical and spiritual matters. The story of the head of St. Paul was a popular legend, and Gregory is said to have kept a relic of it in Rome.]

70 [The portrait mentioned is likely the famous fresco from the Villa Madama in Rome, which depicts the family of Pope Gregory the Great.]

71 [The literary and intellectual achievements of Gregory the Great are well-documented, and he is considered one of the most learned popes. His works include sermons, dialogues, and other writings that were influential in the development of the papacy and the church.]

72 [The monasteries founded by Gregory the Great were significant in the development of monasticism in Italy.]

73 [One monastery was located in Rome, and the others were situated in various locations throughout Sicily.]

[The text continues, discussing historical events and continued connections between the papacy and the Roman Empire.]
in the next. Yet his elevation, and it might be
sincerely, pursued the path which would have been
chosen by a crafty and ambitious statesman.
The talents of Gregory, and the splendour which
accompanied his retreat, rendered him dear and
useful to the church; and implicit obedience has
been always imputed to the spiritual duty of a monk.
As soon as he had received the charac-
ter of deacon, Gregory was sent to reside at
the Byzantine court, the nuncio or minister of
the Eastern see; and he boldly assumed, in the name
of St. Peter, a tone of independent dignity,
which would have been criminal and dangerous
in the most illustrious laysees of the empire.
He returned to Rome with a just increase of reputa-
tion, and after a short exercise of the monastic
virtues, he was dragged from the cloister to the
papal throne, by the unanimous voice of the
clergy, the senate, and the people. He alone,
resisted, or seemed to resist, his own elevation;
and his humble petition, that Mauritius would be
pleased to reject the choice of the Romans,
could only serve to exalt his character in the
eyes of the emperor and the public.
When the fatal mandate was proclaimed, Gregory solicited
the aid of some friendly merchants to convey
him in a basket beyond the gates of Rome, and
modestly concealed himself some days among
the woods and mountains, till his retreat was dis-
covered, as it is said, by a celestial light.

The pontificate of Gregory the
Great, which lasted thirteen years
six months and ten days, is one
of the most salutary periods of the
history of the church. His virtues,
and even his faults, a singular mixture of simp-
clicity and cunning, of pride and humility, of
sense and superstition, were happily united
to his station and to the temper of the times.
In his rival, the patriarch of Constantinople,
he condemned the Antichristian title of
universal bishop, which the successor of St. Peter
was too hasty to concede, and too feeble
to assume; and the ecclesiastical jurisdiction
of Gregory was confined to the

chief character of Bishop of Rome,
Primate of Italy, and Apostle of the West.
He frequently succeeded the pulpit, and
kindled, by his rude, though pathetic, eloquence,
the grosser passions of his audience; the
language of the Jewish proflite was interpreted and
applied, and the minds of a people, de-
pressed by their present calamities, were directed
to the hopes and fears of the invisible world.
His precepts and example defined the model of
the Roman liturgy; 60 the distribution of the
parishes, the calendar of festivals, the order of
processions, the service of the priests and devo-
tons, the variety and change of sacralc garments.
Till the last days of his life, he officiated
in the canon of the mass, which continued above
three hours; the Gregorian chant 71 has pre-
served the vocal and instrumental music of the
theatre, and the rough voices of the barbarians
attempted to imitate the melody of the Roman
school. 72 Experience has shown him the effi-
cacy of these solemn and pompous rites, to
sooth the distress, to confirm the faith, to
mitigate the fierceness, and to dispel the dark en-
thusiasm of the vulgar, and he readily forgave
their tendency to promote the reign of priest-
hood and superstition.
The bishops of Italy and the adjacent islands acknowledged the
Roman pontiff as their special metropolitan. Even
the existence, the union, or the translation of
episcopal seats, was decided by his absolute
direction; and his successful inroads into the
provinces of Greece, of Spain, and of Gaul,
might countenance the more lofty pretensions of
successing popes. He interposed to prevent
the abuses of popular elections; his jealous care
maintained the purity of faith and discipline,
and the apostolic shepherd assiduously watched
over the faith and discipline of the subordinate
pastors. Under his reign, the Arians of Italy
and Spain were reconciled to the Catholic church,
and the conquest of Britain reflects his glory on
the name of Cæsar, than on that of Gregory the
First. Instead of six legions, forty monks were
emblem for that distant island, and the pontiff
lavished the mature duties which formed him
to partake of their spiritual warfare.
In less than two years he could announce to the
archbishop of Alexandria, that they had baptised
the king of Kent with ten thousand of his An-
geo-Saxons, and that the Roman missionaries,
like those of the primitive church, were armed
only with spiritual and supernatural powers.
The credulity or the prudence of Gregory was
always disposed to confirm the truths of religion
by the evidence of ghosts, miracles, and resur-
rections; 73 and poverty has paid to his memory
the same tribute, which he freely granted to the
virtue of his own or the preceding generation.
The celestial honours have been literally be-
stowed by the authority of the popes, but Greg-
ory is the last of their own order whom they
have presumed to inscribe in the calendar of
saints.

Their temporal power insensibly and impo-

ture arose from the calamities of the
government; and the Roman bishops, who have de-

lured Europe and Asia with blood, were cons-
pelled to reign as the ministers of charity and
peace. I. The church of Rome, as it has been
formerly observed, was endowed with ample pos-
essions in Italy, Sicily, and the more distant
provinces; and her agents, who were commonly
subdeacones, had acquired a civil, and even crimi-

nal, jurisdiction over their tenants and in-

habitants, without distinction of station or race.

References:
60 "Gregorian chant" refers to the melodic tradition associated with Pope Gregory I.
71 "Gregorian chant" is a term used to describe the intrinsic chant of Western church music,
72 "Theatre" and "barbarians" were associated with the Roman Empire.
73 "Ghosts, miracles, and resurrections" relate to the supernatural beliefs and practices.

S C 2
The successor of St. Peter administered his office with the temper of a vigilant and moderate father; and the epistles of Gregory, are filled with salutary instructions to abstain from doubtful or vexatious lawsuits; to preserve the integrity of weights and measures; to grant every reasonable delay, and to reduce the capitalization of the slaves of the globe, who purchased the right of marriage by the payment of an arbitrary fine. The rent or the produce of these estates was transported to the mounth of the Tyber, at the risk and expense of the pope; in the use of wealth he acted like a faithful steward of the church and the poor, and literally applied to their wants the inexhaustible resources of abundance and order. The voluminous account of his receipts and disbursements was kept above three hundred years in the Lateran, as the model of Christian economy. On the four great festivals, he divided their quarterly allowance to the clergy, to his domestics, to the sick, the churches, the places of burial, the alms-houses, and the hospitals of Rome, and the rest of the diocese. On the first day of every month, he distributed to the poor, according to the season, their stated portion of corn, wine, cheese, vegetables, oil, fish, fresh provisions, clothes, and money; and his treasurer was continually summoned to satisfy, in his name, the extraordinary demands of indigence and merit. The instant discoveries of the sick and helpless, of strangers and pilgrims, was relieved by the bounty of each day, and of every hour; nor would the pontiff indulge himself in a frugal repast, till he had sent the dishes from his own table to some objects deserving of his compassion.

The misery of the times had reduced the nobles and matrons of Rome to accept, without a blush, the beneficence of the church: three thousand virgins received their food and raiment from the hand of their benefactor; and many bishops of Italy escaped from the barbarians to the hospitable threshold of the Vatican.

Gregory might justly be styled the Father of his Country; and such was the extreme sensibility of his conscience, that, for the death of a beggar who had perished in the streets, he interdicted himself during several days from the exercise of ecclesiastical functions. II. The misfortunes of Rome involved the apostolical pastor in the business of peace and war: and it might be doubtful to himself, whether pity or ambition prompted him to supply the place of his absent sovereign.

Gregory awakened the emperor from a long slumber, exposed the guilt or incapacity of the exarch and his infatrate ministers, complained that the veterans were withdrawn from Rome for the defence of Spoleto, encouraged the Italians to guard their cities and altars; and condescended, in the crisis of danger, to name the tribunes, and to direct the operations of the pro- vinicial troops. But the martial spirit of the pope was checked by the scruples of humanity and religion; for the imposition of tribute, though it was employed in the Italian war, he freely condemned as odious and oppressive; while he protected, against the Imperial edicts, the pious cowardice of the soldiers who deserted a military for a monastic life. If we may credit his own declarations, it would have been easy for Gregory to exterminate the Lombards by their domestic factions, without leaving a king, a duke, or a count, to save that unfortunate nation from the vengeance of its foes. As a Christian bishop, he preferred the salutary offices of peace; his mediation appeased the tumult of arms; but he was too conscious of the arts of the Greeks, and the passions of the Lombards, to engage his sacred promise for the observance of the truce. Disappointed in the hopes of a general and lasting treaty, he presumed to save his country without the consent of the emperor or the exarch. The sword of the enemy was suspended over Rome; it was averted by the mild eloquence and reasonable gifts of the pontiff, who commanded the respect of heretics and barbarians. The merits of Gregory were treated by the Byzantine court with reproach and insult; but in the attachment of a grateful people, he found the purest reward of a citizen, and the best right of a sovereign.22

CHAP. XLVI.


The conflict of Rome and Persia was prolonged from the death of — and Persia, Crassus to the reign of Heraclius. An experience of seven hundred years might convince the rival nations of the impossibility of maintaining their conquests beyond the fatal limits of the Tigris and Euphrates. Yet the emulation of Trajan and Julian was awakened by the trophies of Alexander, and the sovereigns of Persia indulged the ambitious hope of restoring the empire of Cyrus.

1 Such extraordinary efforts of power and courage will always command the attention of posterity; but the events by which the fate of nations is not materially changed, leave a faint impression on the page of history, and the annual scene might afford a precedent of local error that
that important fortress had been left destitute of troops and magazines, the value of the inhabitants resisted above five months the attacks, the elephants, and the military engines of the Great King. In the mean while his general Attalics advanced from Babylon, traversed the desert, passed the Euphrates, invaded the provinces of Antioch, and approached to within the city of Amaun. He forced the forts of Syria at the feet of his master, whose perseverance in the midst of winter at length subverted the bulwark of the East. 

But these losses, which astonished the provincials and the court, produced a salutary effect in the repentance and abdication of the emperor Justin: a new spirit arose in the Byzantine councils; and a truce of three years was obtained by the prudence of Tiberius. That reasonable interval was employed in the preparations for war; and the voice of rumour proclaimed to the world, that from the distant countries of the Alps and the Rhine, from Scythia, Mosia, Pamphylia, Illyricum, and Iberia, the strength of the Imperial cavalry was reinforced with one hundred and fifty thousand soldiers. Yet the king of Persia, without fear, or without faith, resolved to prevent the attack of the enemy; again passed the Euphrates, and dismissed the ambassadors of Tiberius, arrogantly commanded them to await his arrival at Caesarea, the metropolis of the Cappadocian provinces. The two armies encountered each other in the battle of Maltene: the barbarians, who darkened the air with a cloud of arrows, prolonged their line, and extended their wings across the plain; while the Romans, in deep and solid bodies, expected to prevail in close action, by the weight of their swords and lances. A Scythian chief, who commanded their right wing, suddenly turned the flank of the enemy, attacked their rear-guard; in the presence of Choros, penetrated to the midst of the camp, pillaged the royal tent, profaned the eternal fire, looted a train of camels with the spoils of Asia, cut his way through the Persian host, and returned with songs of victory to his friends, who had consumed the day in single combats, or ineffectual skirmishes. The darkness of the night, and the separation of the Romans, afforded the Persian monarch an opportunity of revenge; and one of their snags was swept away by a rapid and impetuous assault. But the review of his loss, and the consciousness of his danger, determined Choros to take a speedy retreat; he burst, in his rage, the vacant town of Maltene; and, without consulting the safety of his troops, boldly swam the Euphrates on the back of an elephant. After this unsuccessful campaign, the want of magazines, and perhaps some inroads of the Turks, obliged him to disband or divide his forces; the Romans were left masters of the field, and their general, Justinian, advancing to the relief of the Persertermin rebels, erected his standard on the banks of the Araxes. The great Pompey had

3 The accession of Memmius, restored and restored to the 2d of the Magi, passed some time before the death of Memmius. [Footnote: A.D. 290.] The empire, however, was divided into two, in consequence of the superior sagacity of the Emperor Honorius; and each party was affected to rob the throne of Christianity on this side and opposite occasion.]
formerly halted within three days' march of the Caspian; that inland sea was explored, for the first time, by an hostile fleet, and seventy thousand captives were transplanted from Hyrcania to the isle of Cyprus. On the return of spring, Justinian descended into the fertile plains of Assyria, the scene of war; approached the residence of Nushirvan, the infant monarch sheckled into the grave; and his last edict restrained his successor from exposing his person to a battle against the Romans. Yet the memory of this transient affliction was lost in the glories of a long reign; and his formidable enemies, after indulging their desire of conquest, again solicited a short respite from the calamities of war.

The throne of Chosroes Nushirvan was filled by Hormazd, son of Hormidas, the eldest or the most favoured of his sons. With the kingdom of Persia and India, he inherited the reputation and example of his father, the service, in every rank, of his wise and valiant officers, and a general system of administration, harmonised by time and political wisdom to promote the happiness of the prince and people. But the royal youth enjoyed a still more valuable blessing, the friendship of a sage who had presided over his education, and who always preferred the honour, to the interest, of his pupil, his interest to his inclination. In a dispute with the Greek and Indian philosophers, Zarang had once maintained, that the most grievous misfortune of life was old age without the remembrance of virtue; and our censure will presume that the same principle compelled him, during three years, to direct the councils of the Persian empire. His soul was rewarded by the gratitude and docility of Hormazd, who acknowledged himself more indebted to his preceptor than to his parent: but the two agents shared in the strength of the throne, and perhaps the faculties, of this prudent counsellor, he retired from court, and abandoned the youthful monarch to his own passions and those of his favourites. By the fatal vicissitude of human affairs, the same scenes were renewed at Ctesiphon, which had been exhibited in Rome after the death of Marcus Antoninus. The ministers of flattery and corruption, who had been banished by the father, were recalled and cherished by the son; the disgrace and exile of the friends of Nushirvan established their tyranny, and virtue was driven by degrees from the mind of Hormazd, from his palace, and from the government of the state. The faithful agents, the eyes and ears of the king, informed him of the progress of disorder, that the provincial governors flew to their prey with the fierceness of lions and eagles, and that their rapine and injustice would reach the most loyal of his subjects to abhor the name and authority of their sovereign. The sincerity of this advice was punished with death, the murmurs of the cities were despised, their tumults were quelled by military execution; the intermediate powers between the people and the city were abolished; and the childish vanity of Hormazd, who affected the daily use of the tiara, was fruit of declaring, that he alone would be the judge as well as the master of his kingdom. In every word, and in every action, the son of Nushirvan degenerated from the virtues of his father. His avarice defrauded the troops; his jealous rapine degraded the satrap; the palace, the tribunals, the waters of the Tigris, were stained with the blood of the innocent; and the tyrant exulted in the sufferings and execution of thirteen thousand victims. As the sacrifice of his cruelty, he sometimes descended to observe, that the fears of the Persians would be productive of harm, and that their hatred must terminate in rebellion; but he forgot that his own guilt and folly had inspired the sentiments which he deplored, and prepared the event which he so justly apprehended. Exasperated by long and hopeless oppression, the provinces of Babylonia, Susa, and Carmania, erected the standard of revolt; and the princes of Arabia, India, and Scythia, refused the customary tribute to the unworthy successor of Nushirvan. The arms of the Romans, in slow sieges and frequent inroads, afflicted the frontiers of Mesopotamia and Assyria; one of their generals professed himself the disciple of Scipio, and the soldiers were animated by a miraculous image of Christ, whose mild aspect should never have been displayed in the front of battle. At the same time, the eastern provinces of Persia were invaded by the great Khan, who passed the Oxus at the head of three or four hundred thousand Turks. The imprudent Hormazd accepted their pernicious and formidable aid; the cities of Khurasan or Bactriana were commanded to open their gates; the march of the barbarians towards the mountains of Hyrcania revealed the correspondence of the Turkish and Roman arms; and their union must have subverted the throne of the house of Susa.

Persia had been lost by a king; it was saved by an hero. After his revolt, Varanus or Bahram is stigmatised by the son of Hormazd as an ungrateful slave: the proud and ambiguous reproach of despotism, since he was truly descended from the ancient princes of Rei, one of the seven

OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

families whose splendid, as well as substantial, pretensions excited them above the heads of the Persian nobility. At the siege of Dara, the valor of Bahram was signallised under the eyes of Nushirvan, and both the father and son successively, promoted him to the command of armies, the government of Media, and the superintendence of the palace. The popular prediction which marked him as the deliverer of Persia might be inspired by his past victories and extraordinary figures: the epithet Gicus is expressive of the quality of dry wood; he had the strength and stature of a giant, and his savage countenance was fearfully compared to that of a wild cat. While the nation trembled, while Hormouz disguised his terror by the name of suspicion, and his subjects concealed their dismay under the mask of fear, Bahram alone displayed his undaunted courage and apparent fidelity; and as soon as he found that no more than twelve thousand soldiers would follow him against the enemy, he prudently declared, that to this fatal number Heaven had reserved the honours of the triumph. The steep and narrow descent of the Pule Rudobar or Hyrcanian rock, is the only pass through which an army can penetrate into the territory of Bel and the plains of Media. From the commanding heights, a band of robbers might overwhelm with stones and darts the myriads of the Turkish host; their emperor and his son were transported with arrows; and the fugitives were left, without counsel or provisions, to the revenge of an injured people. The patriotism of the Persian general was stimulated by his affection for the city of his forefathers; in the hour of victory, every peasant became a soldier, and every soldier an hero; and their ardour was kindled by the gorgeous spectacle of beds, and thrones, and tables of costly gold, the spoils of Asia, and the luxury of the hostile camp. A prince of a high and royal temper could not easily have forgiven his benefactors, and the secret hatred of Hormouz was unmasked by a malicious report, that Bahram had privately retained the most precious fruits of his Turkish victory. But the approach of a Roman army on the side of the Araxes compelled the implacable tyrant to smile and to appease; and the toils of Bahram were rewarded with the permission of encountering a new enemy, by their skill and discipline more formidable than a Scythian multitude. Elated by his recent success, he despatched as herald with a bold defiance to the camp of the Romans, requesting them to fix a day of battle, and to choose whether they would pass the river themselves, or allow a free passage to the arms of the great king. The lieutenant of the emperor Maurice preferred the safer alternative; and this local circumstance, which would have enhanced the victory of the Persians, rendered their defeat more bloody and their escape more difficult. But the loss of his subjects, and the danger of his kingdom, were overbalanced in the mind of Hormouz by the disgrace of his personal enemy; and no sooner had Bahram collected and reviewed his forces, than he received from a royal messenger the insulting gift of a distaff, a spinning-wheel, and a complete suit of female apparel. Obdurate to the will of his sovereign, he showed himself to the soldiers in this unworthy disguise; they resented his ignominy and their own; a shout of rebellion ran through the ranks, and the general accepted their oath of fidelity and vows of revenge. A second royal messenger, who had been commanded to bring the rebel in chains, was trampled under the feet of an elephant, and manifestoes were diligently circulated, exulting the Persians to assert their freedom against an odious and contemptible tyrant. The defection was rapid and universal; his loyal slaves were sacrificed to the public fury; the troops deserted to the standard of Bahram; and the provinces again saluted the deliverer of his country.

As the places were faithfully guarded, Hormouz could only compute the number of his enemies by the testimony of a guilty confessor, and the daily deflection of those who, in the hour of his distress, avenged their wrongs, or forgot their obligations. He proudly displayed the insignia of royalty; but the city and palace of Media had already escaped from the hand of the tyrant, and among the victims of his cruelty, Bindoos, a Sasanian prince, had been cast into a dungeon: his fetters were broken by the zeal and courage of a brother; and he stood before the king at the head of those trusty guards, who had been chosen as the ministers of his confinement, and perhaps of his death. Alarmed by the hostile intrusion and bold reproaches of the empress, Hormouz looked round, but in vain, for advice or assistance; discovered that his strength consisted in the obedience of others, and patiently yielded to the single arm of Bindoos, who dragged him from the throne to the same dungeon in which he himself had been so lately confined. At the first tumult, Chosroes, the eldest of the sons of Hormouz, escaped from the city; he was persuaded to return by the pressing and friendly invitation of Bindoos, who promised to put him on his father's throne, and who expected to reign under the name of an inexperienced youth. In the just assurance, that his accomplices could neither forgive nor hope to be forgiven, and that every Persian might be trusted as the judge and executioner of the tyrant, he instituted a public trial without a premeditation, and without a copy in the annals of the East. The son of Nushirvan, who had requested to plead in his own defence, was introduced as a criminal into the full assembly of the nobles and satraps. He was heard with decent attention as long as
he exasperated on the advantages of order and obedience, the danger of innovation, and the inevitable discord of those who had encouraged each other to trample on their lawful and hereditary sovereign. By a pathetic appeal to their humanity, he extorted that pity which is seldom refused to the fallen fortunes of a king; and while they beheld the object posture and squalid appearance of the prisoner, his tears, his chains, and the marks of ignominious stripes, it was impossible to forget how recently they had adored the divine splendour of his diadem and purple. But an angry murmur arose in the assembly as soon as he presumed to vindicate his conduct, and to applaud the victories of his reign. He defined the duties of a king, and the Persian nobles listened with a smile of contempt; they were fired with indignation when he dared to vilify the character of Chosroes; and by the indiscreet offer of resigning the sceptre to the son of his exaltation, he subscribed his own condemnation, and sacrificed the life of his innocent favourite. The mangled bodies of the boy and his mother were exposed to the people; the eyes of Hormuz were pierced with a hot needle; and the punishment of the father was succeeded by the coronation of his eldest son. Chosroes had ascended the throne without guilt, and his piety strove to alleviate the misery of the abjected monarch; from the dungeon he removed Hormuz to an apartment of the palace, supplied with liberality the consolations of sensual enjoyment, and patiently endured the furious sallies of his resentment and despair. He might despise the resentment of a blighted and unpopular tyrant, but the tiara was trembling on his head, till he could subvert the power, or acquire the friendship, of the great Bahram, who sternly denied the justice of a revolution, in which himself and his soldiers, the true representatives of Persia, had never been consulted. The offer of a general amnesty, and of the second rank in his kingdom, was answered by an epistle from Bahram, friend of the gods, conqueror of men, and enemy of tyrants, the en债or of satraps, general of the Persian armies, and a prince adorned with the title of eleven virtues. He commands Chosroes, the son of Hormuz, to shun the example and fate of his father, to confine the traitors who had been released from their chains, to deposit in some holy place the diadem which he had usurped, and to accept from his gracious benefactor the pardon of his faults and the government of a province. The rebel might not be proud, and the king most assuredly not humble; but the one was conscious of his strength, the other was sensible of his weakness; and even the modest language of his reply still left room for treaty and reconciliation. Chosroes led into the field the slaves of the palace and the populace of the capital; they beheld with terror the banners of a veteran army; they were unacquainted and surprised by the volitions of the general; and the satraps who had deposited Hormuz received the punishment of their revolt, or exiled their first treasurer by a second and more criminal act of disloyalty. The life and liberty of Chosroes were saved, but he was reduced to the necessity of imploring aid or refuge in some foreign land; and the implacable Hindoos, anxious to secure an unquestionable title, hastily returned to the palace, and ended, with a bowing, the wretched existence of the son of Nushirvan. While Chosroes despatched the preparations of his retreat, he declared to the Romans his liberators with his remaining friends, whether he should lurk in the valleys of Mount Caucasus, or fly to the tents of the Turks, or solicit the protection of the emperor. The long elevation of the successors of Artaxerxes and Constantine increased his reluctance to appear as a suppliant in a rival court; but he weighed the forces of the Romans, and prudently considered, that the neighbourhood of Syria would render his escape more easy and their succours more effectual. Attended only by his counsellors, and a troop of thirty guards, he secretly departed from the capital, followed the banks of the Euphrates, traversed the desert, and halted at the distance of ten miles from Ctesiphon. About the third watch of the night, the Roman prefect was informed of his approach, and he introduced the royal stranger to the fortress at the dawn of day. From thence the king of Persia was conducted to the more honourable residence of Hierapolis; and Maurice dissembled his pride, and displayed his benevolence, at the reception of the letters and ambassadors of the grandson of Nushirvan. They humbly represented the vicissitudes of fortune and the common interest of princes, exaggerated the ingratitude of Bahram, the agent of the evil principle, and urged, with a generous spirit, that it was for the advantage of the Romans themselves to support the two monarchies which balance the world, the two great luminaries by whose military influence it is vivified and adorned. The anxiety of Chosroes was soon relieved by the assurance, that the emperor had exposed the cause of justice and royalty; but Maurice prudently declined the expense and delay of his useless visit to Constantinople. In the name of his generous benefactor, a rich diadem was presented to the fugitive prince, with an inestimable gift of jewels and gold; a powerful army was assembled on the frontier of Syria and Armenia, under the command of the valiant and faithful Nurses.
and this general, of his own nation, and his own choice, was directed to pass the Tigris, and never to shear his sword till he had restored Chosroes to the throne of his ancestors. The enterprise, however splendid, was less arduous than it might appear. Persia had already requested of her fatal rashness, which betrayed the heir of the house of Sassan to the ambition of a rebellious subject; and the bold refusal of the Magi to consecrate his usurpation, compelled Bahram to assume the sceptre, regardless of the laws and prejudices of the nation. The palace was soon distracted with conspiracy, the city with tumult, the provinces with insurrection; and the cruel execution of the guilty and the suspected served to irritate rather than subdue the public discontent. No sooner did the grandfast of Nushirvan display his own and the Roman banners beyond the Tigris, than he was joined, each day, by the increasing multitudes of the nobility and people; and his march from Arslan-Shur to Shushtar, from evergreen groves, the grateful offerings of the keys of his cities and the heads of his enemies. As soon as Modain was freed from the presence of the usurper, the loyal inhabitants obeyed the first summons of Melodos at the head of only two thousand horse, and Chosroes accepted the sacred and precious ornaments of the palace as the pledge of their truth and a presage of his approaching success. After the junction of the Imperial troops, which Bahram valiantly struggled to prevent, the contest was decided by two battles on the banks of the Zab, and the confines of Media.

The Romans, with the faithful subjects of Persia, amounted to sixty thousand, while the whole force of the usurper did not exceed forty thousand men: the two generals signalised their valour and ability, but the victory was finally determined by the prevalence of numbers and discipline. With the remnant of a broken army, Bahram fled towards the eastern provinces of the Oxus: the enmity of Persia reconciled him to the Turks: but his days were shortened by poison, perhaps the most inexcusable of poisons; the stings of remorse and despondency, and the bitter remembrance of lost glory. Yet the modern Persians still commemorate the exploits of Bahram; and some excellent laws have prolonged the duration of his troubled and transitory reign.

The restoration of Chosroes was celebrated with fiesta and execution; and the music of the royal banquet was often disturbed by the groans of dying or mutilated criminals. A general pardon might have diffused comfort and tranquillity through a country which had been shaken by the late revolutions; yet, before the sanguinary tempest of Chosroes is blanched, we should learn whether the Persians had not been accustomed either to dread the rigour, or to despise the weakness, of their sovereign. The revolt of Bahram, and the conspiracy of the satraps, were impartially punished by the revenge or justice of the conqueror; the merits of Hiances himself could not purify his hand from the guilt of royal blood; and the son of Hormuz was desirous to assert his own innocence, and to vindicate the sanctity of kings. During the vigour of the Roman power, several princes were seated on the throne of Persia by the arms and the authority of the first Cæsars. But their new subjects were soon disgusted with the vices or virtues which they had inhaled in a foreign land; the instability of their dominion gave birth to a vulgar observation, that the choice of Rome was solicited and rejected with equal aridmour by the capricious levity of Oriental slaves. But the glory of Maurice was conspicuous in the long and fortunate reign of his son and heir. Apsives, who continued to guard the person of Chosroes, proclaimed his confidence in the fidelity of the strangers; his growing strength enabled him to dismiss this unpopular aid, but he steadily professed the same gratitude and reverence to his adopted father; and till the death of Maurice, the peace and alliance of the two empires were faithfully maintained. Yet the mercenary friendship of the Roman princes had been purchased with costly and important gifts: the strong cities of Martyropolis and Doræ were restored, and the Persarmenians became the willing subjects of an empire, whose eastern limit was extended, beyond the example of former times, as far as the banks of the Araxes and the neighbourhood of the Caspian. A pinus hope was indulged, that the church as well as the state might triumph in this revolution: but if Chosroes had sincerely listened to the Christian bishops, the impression was erased by the zeal and eloquence of the Magi: if he was armed with philosophic indifference, he accommodated his belief, or rather his professions, to the various circumstances of an exile and a sovereign. The imaginary conversion of the king of Persia was reduced to a local and superstitious veneration for Sergius, a saint of Antioch, who heard his prayers and appeared to him in dreams; he enriched the shrine with offerings of gold and silver, and ascribed to this invisible patron the success of his arms, and the pregnancy of Sira, a devout Christian and the best beloved of his wives. The beauty of Sira, or Schirin, her wit, her musical talents, are still famous in the history or rather in the romances of the East: her own name is expressively, in the Persian tongue, of sweetness and grace; and the epithet of Peroz alludes to the charms of her royal lover. Yet Sira never shared the passion which she inspired, and the bliss of Chosroes was tortured by a...
jealous doubt, that while he possessed her person, she had bestowed her affections on a meaner favourite. 52. While the majesty of the Roman name was revived in the East, the prospect of Europe is less pleasing and less glorious. By the departure of the Lombards, and the ruin of the Goths, the balance of power was destroyed on the Danube: and the Avars spread their permanent dominion from the foot of the Alps to the sea-coast of the Euxine. The reign of Attila is the brightest era of their monarchy; their chagans, who occupied the rustic palace of Attila, appears to have imitated his character and policy 52 but as the same scenes were repeated in a smaller circle, a minute representation of the copy would be devoid of the greatness and novelty of the original. The pride of the second Justin, of Tiberius, and Maurice, was humbled by a peril barbarian, not prompt to inflict, than exposed to suffer, the injuries of war; and as often as Asia was threatened by the Persian army, Europe was oppressed by the dangerous invades, or costly friendship, of the Avars. When the Russian envoys approached the presence of the chagan, they were commanded to wait at the door of his tent, till, at the end perhaps of ten or twelve days, he descended to admit them. If the substance or the style of their message was offensive, he retired to his car, and insulted, with a real or affected fury, their own dignity, and that of their prince; their baggage was plundered, and their lives were only saved by the promise of a richer present, and a more respectful address. But his sacred ambassadors enjoyed and abused an unbounded licence in the court of Constantinople; they urged, with importunate clamours, the increase of tributes, or the restitution of captives and deserts; and the majesty of the empire was almost equally degraded by a base compliance, or by the false and fearful excuses, with which they stilled such insolent demands. The chagan had never seen an elephant; and his curiosity was excited by the strange, and perhaps fabulous, portrait of that wonderful animal. At his command, one of the largest elephants of the Imperial stables was equipped with stately caparisons, and conducted by a numerous train to the royal village in the plains of Hungary. He surveyed the enormous beast, with surprise, with disgust, and possibly with terror; and smiled at the vain industry of the Romans, who, in search of such useless rarities, could explore the limits of the land and sea. He wished, at the expense of the emperor, to repose in a golden bed. The wealth of Constantinople, and the skilful dexterity of her artists, were instantly devoted to the gratification of his caprice; but when the work was finished, he rejected with scorn a present so unworthy the majesty of a great king. 53 Those were the casual satisfactions of his pride, but the avarice of the chagan was a more steady and tractable passion: a rich and regular supply of silk, arms, furniture, and plate, introduced the rudiments of art and luxury among the tents of the Scythisans; their appetite was stimulated by the pepper and cinnamon of India; 55 the annual emolument or tribute was raised from fourscore to one hundred and twenty thousand pieces of gold; and after each hostile interruption, the payment of the arrears, with exorbitant interest, was always made the first condition of the new treaty. In the language of a barbarian, without guile, the princes of the Avars affected to complain of the insubordination of the Greeks; 55 yet he was not inferior to the most civilized nations in the refinements of dissimulation and perjudy. As the successor of the Lombards, the chagan asserted his claim to the important city of Sirmium, the ancient bulwark of the Illyrian provinces. 57 The plains of the Lower Hungary were covered with the Avar horse, and a fleet of large boats was built in the Hercynian wood, to descend the Danube, and to transport into the Save the materials of a bridge. But as the strong garrison of Singidunum, which commanded the conflux of the two rivers, might have stopped their passage, and baffled their designs, he dispelled their apprehensions by a solemn oath, that his views were not hostile to the empire. He swore by his sword, the symbol of the god of war, that he did not, as the enemy of Rome, construct a bridge upon the Save. 58 If I violate my oath, pursued the intrepid Basil, may I myself, and the last of my nation, perish by the sword! May the heavens, and fire, the deity of the heavens, fall upon our heads! May the forests and mountains bury us in their ruins! and the Save returning, against the laws of nature, to its source, overwhelm us in his angry waters! After this barbarous impression, he calmly enquired, what oath was most sacred and venerable among the Christians, what guilt of perjury it was most dangerous to incur. The bishop of Singidunum presented the Gospel, which the chagan received with devout reverence. 59 I swear," said he, "by God who has spoken in this holy book, that I have neither falsehood on my tongue, nor treachery in my heart." As soon as he rose from his bed and resumed the liberality of Rome, and as received the arms of Constantine and Maximien, Bassius and Rusticus, Pausin, and Porphyrous, consecrated the sites of the cities and the public buildings. Kolonos was named Nicaea, Colonia, and Beneventum, Beneventum. It is said, during the reign of Constantine, that the question of the great church of Constantinople was decided at the council of Nicea. 60 In the seventh year of his reign, in 334, he debarked at the isthmus of Corinth, and was received with great demonstrations of joy and gratitude. 61. 62 53 This place is now called Buda, and is situated on the bank of the Danube, about 30 miles from Vienna. 63 The name of the chagan of the Avars, in this time, was named Attila. 64 The name of the chagan of the Avars, in this time, was named Ariz. 65 See the account of the Visigoths, pp. 331, 332, 335. 66 The name of the chagan of the Avars, in this time, was named Gere. 67 See the account of the Ersevites, pp. 331, 332, 335. 68 See the account of the Avars, pp. 331, 332, 335.
And Lyme were again found in the heart of Silensia. In the disposition both of his troops and provinces, the chagam exposed the vassals, whose lives he disregarded, to the first assault, and the swords of the enemy were blown before they encountered the native valor of the Avars.

The Persian alliance restored the troops of the East to the defence of Europe; and Maurice, who had supported two years the insurrection of the chagam, declared his resolution to march in person against the barbarians. In the space of two centuries, none of the successors of Theodore had appeared in the field; their lives were supinely spent in the palace of Constantinople; and the Greeks could no longer understand, that the name of emperor, in its primitive sense, denoted the chief of the armies of the republic. The martial ardor of Maurice was opposed by the grave futility of the senate, the timid superstitious of the patriarch, and the tears of the empress Constantina; and they all conjured him to devolve on some weaker general the fatigues and perils of a Saxonian campaign. Deaf to their advice and entreaty, the emperor boldly advanced seven miles from the capital; the sacred ensign of the cross was displayed in the front, and Maurice reviewed, with conscious pride, the arms and numbers of the veterans who had fought and conquered beyond the Tigris. Amphilochius saw the last term of his progress by sea and land; he solicited, without success, a miraculous answer to his nocturnal prayers; his mind was confounded by the death of a favourite horse, the encounter of a wild bear, a storm of wind and rain, and the birth of a monstrous child; and he forgot that the best of omens is to mischievously our sword in the defence of our country. Under the pretense of receiving the ambassadors of Persia, the emperor returned to Constantinople, exchanged the thoughts of war for those of devotion, and disappointed the public hope, by his absence and the choice of his lieutenants. The blind partiality of fraternal love might excite the promotion of his brother Peter, who fled with equal disgrace from the barbarians, from his own soldiers, and from the inhabitants of a Roman city. That city, if we may credit the resemblance of name and character, was the famous Axiuntum, which had alone repelled the tempest of Attila. The example of her warlike youth was propagated to succeeding generations; and they obtained, from the first or the second Justin, an honourable privilege, that their valor should be always reserved for

Commune, in Didymoteichum, and in the Lesser Asia. East with the ambassadors of the Chazarensis, he afforded more relief to his provinces. 32 The law of the Chazarensis, in the time of his predecessor, in some respects resembled that of Persia; but his successors appeared to be driven from the title of emperor, and they would henceforth only reign and not govern. 32 The name of the emperor was divided and transmitted by the jealousy of the conqueror. 32 The eastern regions of Germany, which had been left vacant by the emigration of the Vandals, were replenished with Saxonian colonists; the same tribes are discovered in the neighbourhood of the Huns, and in those of the Huns, the Illyrian cities of Nevy.
the defence of their native country. The brother of Maurice attempted to violate this privilege, and to mingle a patriot hand with the mercenaries of his camp; they retired to the church, he was not asexual by the sanctity of the place; the people rose in their cause, the gates were shut, the ramparts were manned; and the cowardice of Peter was found equal to his arrogance and injustice. The military firm of Constantius is the object of satire or comedy rather than of serious history, since he was even deficient in the evil and vulgar qualification of personal courage. His solemn counsels, strange evolutions, and secret orders, are only suited to solicit an apology for flight or delay. If he marched against the enemy, the pleasant valleys of Mount Haemus opposed an insuperable barrier; but in his retreat, he explored, with fearless curiosity, the most difficult and obsolete paths, which had almost escaped the memory of the oldest native. The only blood which he lost was drawn, in a real or affected malady, by the lancet of a surgeon; and his health, which felt with exquisite sensibility the approach of the barbarians, was uniformly restored by the repose and safety of the winter season. A prince who could promote and support this unworthy favourite must derive no glory from the accidental merit of his colleague Priscus. In five successive battles, which seem to have been conducted with skill and resolution, seventeen thousand two hundred barbarians were made prisoners; near sixty thousand, with four sums of the chagrin, were slain; the Roman general surprised a peaceful district of the Getulidae, who slept under the protection of the Alps; and his last trophies were erected on the banks of the Danube and the Teyn. Since the death of Trajan, the arm of the empire had not penetrated so deeply into the old Dacia; yet the success of Priscus was transient and barren; and when he was recalled by the apprehension that Bajian, with dauntless spirit and recruited forces, was preparing to avenge his defeat under the walls of Constantinople.

The theory of war was not more familiar to the armies of Caesar and Trajan, than to those of Justinian and Maurice. The iron of Tarsus or Pontus still received the keenest temper from the skill of the Byzantine workmen. The magazines were plentifully stored with every species of offensive and defensive arms. In the construction and use of ships, engines, and fortifications, the barbarians admired the superior ingenuity of a people whom they so often vanquished in the field. The science of tactics, the order, evolutions, and stratagems of antiquity, was transcribed and studied in the books of the Greeks and Romans. But the solitude and degeneracy of the provinces could no longer supply a race of men to handle those weapons, to guard those walls, to navigate those ships, and to reduce the theory of war into bold and successful practice. The genius of Belisarius and Narses had been formed without a master, and expired without a disciple. Neither honour, nor patriotism, nor generous superstition, could animate the lifeless bodies of slaves and strangers, who had succeeded to the honours of the legions; it was in the camp alone that the emperor should have exercised a despotic command; it was only in the camps that his authority was dis obeyed and insulted; he appeared with his soldiers with gold the heroes and victors of the troops; but their prices were inherent, their victories accidental, and their costly maintenance exhausted the substance of a state which they were unable to defend. After a long and pernicious indulgence, the cure of this invertebrate evil was undertaken by Maurice; but the rash attempt, which drew destruction on his own head, tended only to aggravate the disease. A reformer should be exempt from the suspicion of interest, and he must possess the confidence and esteem of those whom he proposes to reclaim. The troops of Maurice might listen to the voice of a victorious leader; they disdained the admonitions of statesmen and sophists, and when they received an edict which deducted from their pay, they promptly observed the price of their arms and clothing, than they executor the avarice of a prince insensible of the dangers and fatigue from which he had escaped. The camps both of Asia and Europe were agitated with frequent and furious seditions; the enraged soldiers of Edessa pursued, with reproaches, with threats, with wounds, their trembling generals; they overturned the statues of the emperor, cast stones against the miraculous image of Christ, and either rejected the yoke of all civil and military laws, or instituted a dangerous model of voluntary subordination. The monarch, always distant and often deceived, was incapable of yielding or persisting, according to the exigency of the case; but the fear of a general revolt inducement too recently to accept the art of valour, or any expression of loyalty, as an atonement for the popular offence; the new reform was abolished as hastily as it had been announced; and the troops, instead of punishment and restraint, were agreeably surprised by a gracious proclamation of immunities and rewards. But the soldiers accepted without gratitude the tardy and reluctant gifts of the emperor; their insubordination was slayed by the discovery of his weakness and their own strength; and their mutual hatred was inflamed beyond the desire of forgiveness or the hope of reconciliation. The historians of the times adopt the vulgar suspicion, that Maurice contrived to destroy the troops whom he had laboured to reform; the misconduct and favour of Constantius are imputed to this malevolent design; and every one must

---

12 See the commentaries on Constantius, in Theophylact, t. i. c. i. c. 4. Et Examination vi. c. 6, v. 7. 13 See the analysis of Theophylact, t. i. c. i. c. 4. 14 See the work of History, t. 2. v. 6. v. 7. 15 See the works of Theophylact, t. i. c. i. c. 4. 16 See the work of Theophylact, t. i. c. i. c. 4. 17 See the work of Theophylact, t. i. c. i. c. 4. 18 See the works of Theophylact, t. i. c. i. c. 4.

---

40 Maurice himself compiled 40 books on the subject of war, which are still extant. The most important was published in 1901, and the rest in 1903. The manuscript of the first of his work is in its proper place.

41 See the work of Theophylact, t. i. c. i. c. 4.
condemn the inhumanity or avarice 49 of a prince, who, by the trilling ransom of six thousand pieces of gold, might have prevented the massacre of twelve thousand prisoners in the hands of the Egyptians. In the just favour of indignation, an order was signified to the army of the Danube, that they should spare the magazines of the province, and establish their winter quarters in the bosom of the country of the Arsae. The measure of their grievances was full: they pronounced Maurice unworthy to reign, expelled or slaughtered his faithful adherents, and, under the command of Phocas, a simple centurion, returned, by hasty marches, to the neighbourhood of Constantinople. After a long series of legal succession, the military disorders of the third century were again revived; yet such was the novelty of the enterprise, that the insurgents were savour by their own rashness. They hesitated to invest their favourite with the vacant purple, and while they rejected all treaty with Maurice himself, they held a friendly correspondence with his son Theodorus, and with Germanus the father-in-law of the royal youth. So obscure had been the former condition of Phocas, that the emperor was ignorant of the name and character of his rival; but as soon as he learned, that the exaction, though held in sedition, was timid in the face of danger, "Alas," he cried the desponding prince, "if he is a coward, he will surely be a murderer." Yet if Constantinople had been brimful and faithful, the murderer might have spent his fury against the walls; and the rebel army would have been gradually consumed or reconciled by the prudence of the emperor. In the games of the Circus, which he repeated with unusual pomp, Maurice disguised, with smiles of confidence, the anxiety of his heart, condoned as to solicit the applause of the factions, and flattered their pride by accepting from their respective tribunes a list of nine hundred gymnast and fifteen hundred greaves, whom he offered to esteem as the solid pillars of his throne. Their treacherous or bagaud support betrayed his weakness and hastened his fall; the green factions were the secret accomplices of the rebels, and the blues recommended lenity and moderation in a contest with their Roman brethren. The rigid and parsimonious virtues of Maurice had long since alienated the hearts of his subjects: as he walked barefoot in a religious procession, he was rudely assaulted with stones, and his guards were compelled to present their iron maces in the defence of his person. A fanatic monk ran through the streets with a drawn sword, denouncing against him the wrath and the sentence of God; and a vile plebeian, who represented his countenance and apparel, was seated on an ass, and pursued by the imprecations of the multitude. The emperor suspected the popularity of Germanus with the soldiers and citizens; he feared, he threatened, but he delayed to strike; the patrician fled to the sanctuary of the church; the people rose in his defence, the walls were deserted by the guards, and the lawless city was abandoned to the flames and rapine of a nocturnal tumult. In a small bark, the unfortunate Maurice, with his wife and nine children, escaped to the Asiatic shore, but the violence of the wind compelled him to land at the church of St. Aequonius 44 near Chalcedon, from whence he despatched Theodorus, his eldest son, to explore the gratitude and friendship of the Persian monarch. For himself, he refused to fly: his body was tortured with scisic palm, 46 his mind was embalmed by superstition; he impatiently awaited the event of the revolution, and addressed a fervent and public prayer to the Almighty, that the punishment of his sins might be inflicted on this world rather than in a future life. After the abdication of Maurice, the two factions disputed the choice of an emperor; but the favourite of the blues was rejected by the jealousy of their antagonists, and Germanus himself was hurried along by the crowds, who rushed to the palace of Herulonun, seven miles from the city, to adore the majesty of Phocas the centurion. A modest wish of resigning the purple to the rank and merit of Germanus was opposed by his resolution, more obstinate and equally sincere; the senate and clergy obeyed his summons, and as soon as the patriarch was assured of his orthodox belief, he consecrated the successful usurper in the church of St. John the Baptist. On the third day, amidst the acclamations of a thoughtless people, Phocas made his public entry in a chariot drawn by four white horses: the revolt of the troops was rewarded by a lavish domineering, and the new sovereign, after visiting the palace, beheld from his throne the games of the hippodrome. In a dispute of precedence between the two factions, his partial judgment inclined in favour of the greens. "Remember that Maurice is still alive," resounded from the opposite side; and the indirect chastiser of the blues admonished and stimulated the cruelty of the tyrant. The ministers of death were dispatched to Chalcedon: they dragged the emperor from his sanctuary; and the five sons of Maurice were successively murdered before the eyes of their agonising parent. At each stroke, which he felt in his heart, he found strength to rebuke a pious ejaculation: "Thou art just, O Death!" "Lord, and the judges of my children," was his last cry. And such in the last moments, was his rigid attach

49 Theoprepseus and Theoprepheus seem ignorant of the conspiracy and refusal of Maurice. These charges, as unfounded as the motive of that emperor, are first mentioned by the author of the Foes of the Persians (see 364), and by Planude (p. 172). The fact is attributed to Theodore (p. 352), who followed another authority. 50 In their letter against Maurice, the people of Constantinople, in the name of the body politic, pronounced themselves "just against Theophreus, and Theophrephus" (see 354, Bk. 2, Ch. 7). Theoprepheus seems to have been known in the East, and it is true that the name was not unknown among the Byzantines. Yet such a digression would not have been more improper or more necessary. In the *Of the Nile*, and all the opinions of the Greek philosophers on that subject.
be renounced the profession of a soldier; and the reign of Phocas afflicted Europe with ignominious peace, and Asia with desolating war. His savage temper was inflamed by passion, hardened by fear, exasperated by resistance or reproach. The flight of Théodorus in the Persian court had been intercepted by a rapid pursuit, or a deceitful message: he was beheaded at Nice, and the last hours of the young prince were soothed by the comforts of religion and the consciousness of innocence. Yet his plasms disturbed the repose of the emperor, as a whisper was circulated through the East, that the son of Mauricius was still alive: the people expected their avenger, and the widow and daughters of the late emperor would have adopted as their son and brother the infidel of mankind. In the massacre of the Imperial family, the mercy, or rather the discretion, of Phocas had spared these unhappy females, and they were decently confined to a private house. But the spirit of the empress Constantina, still mindful of her father, her husband, and her son, aspired to freedom and revenge. At the dead of night, she escaped to the sanctuary of St. Sophia; but her tears, and the gold of her associate Germanus, were insufficient to provoke an inscription. Her life was forfeited to revenge, and even to justice; but the patrikios obtained and pledged an oath for her safety; a monastery was allotted for her prison, and the widow of Maurice accepted and abused the lenity of her assassin. The discovery or the suspicion of a second conspiracy dissolved the engagements, and rekindled the fury, of Phocas. A matron who commanded the respect and pity of mankind, the daughter, wife, and mother of emperors, was tortured like the vilest malfeasant, to force a confession of her designs and associates; and the empress Constantina, with her three innocent daughters, was beheaded at Chalcédon, on the same ground which had been stained with the blood of her husband and five sons. After such an example, it would be superfluous to enumerate the names and sufferings of nossor victims. Their condemnation was seldom preceded by the forms of trial, and their punishment was embittered by the refinements of cruelty: their eyes were pierced, their tongues were torn from the root, the hands and feet were amputated; some expired under the lash, others in the flames, others again were beheaded with arrows; and a simple speedy death was mercy which they could not obtain. The hippodrome, the sacred asylum of the pleasures and the liberty of the Romans, was polluted with heads and limbs, and mangled bodies; and the companions of Phocas were the most sensible, that neither his favour, nor their services, could protect them from a tyrant, the worthy

Cæsar, the true of Basilius, the part of Maubicus, the glory of the guards, and the riches and honours of the provinces, have already been sung: it is not the place to sing the griefs of the reign of the emperor. The last of the name of the Line of the Procopii have disappeared; but the names of their conquerors and ravagers will be recorded in the annals of the world.
A daughter of Phocas, his only child, was given in marriage to the patrician Crispus, and the ceremonial images of the bride and bridegroom were indifferently placed in the Circus, by the side of the emperor. The father must desire that his posthumity should inherit the fruit of his crimes, but the monarch was offended by this premature and popular association; the tribunes of the green faction, who accused the effeminate error of their sculptors, were condemned to instant death: their lives were granted to the prayers of the people; but Crispus might reasonably doubt, whether a jealous usurper could forget and pardon his involuntary competition. The green faction was alienated by the ingratitude of Phocas and the loss of their privileges; every province of the empire was ripe for rebellion; and Heraclius, exarch of Africa, persuaded above two years in raising an adequate and obedient to the cen- turation who disgraced the throne of Constantinople. By the secret emissaries of Crispus and the senate, the independent exarch was solicited to save and to govern his country: but his ambition was chilled by age, and he resigned the dangerous enterprise to his son Heraclius, and to Nicea, the son of Gregory his friend and lieutenant. The powers of Africa were armed by the two adventurous youths; they agreed that the one should navigate the fleet from Carthage to Constanti- nople, that the other should lead an army through Egypt and Asia, and that the Imperial purple should be the reward of diligence and success. A false rumour of their undertaking was conveyed to the ears of Phocas, and the wife and mother of the younger Heraclius were secured as the hostages of his faith: but the treacherous art of Crispus extenuated the distant peril, the mean of defence were neglected or delayed, and the tyrant impudently slept till the African navy cast anchor in the Hellespont. Their standard was joined at Abyssus by the fugitives and exiles who thirsted for revenge: the ships of Heraclius, whose lofty masts were adorned with the holy symbols of religion, steered their triumphant course through the Propontis; and Phocas beheld from the windows of the palace his approaching and inevitable fate. The green faction was tumulted, by gifts and promises, to oppose a feeble and fruitless resistance in the landing of the Africans; but the people and the sea were guarded, determined by the well-timed demand of Crispus and the tyrant was seized by a private enemy, who held in the solitude of the palace. Stripped of the diadem and purple, clothed in a vile habit, and loaded with chains, he was transported in a small boat to the Imperial galley of Heraclius, who reproached him with the crimes of his ob- minable reign. "Wilt thou govern better?" were the last words of the despair of Phocas. After suffering each variety of insult and torture, his head was severed from his body, the mangled trunk was cast into the flames, and the same treatment was inflicted on the statues of the vain usurper, and the sedulous banner of the green faction. The voice of the clergy, the senate, and the people, invited Heracius to ascend the throne which he had purified from guilt and ignominy; after some graceful hesitation, he yielded to their entreaties. His co- onation was accompanied by that of his wife Eudokia; and their pos- serness, till the fourth generation, con- tinued to reign over the empire of the East. The voyage of Heraclius had been easy and pro- pensive, the tedious march of Nicea was not accomplished before the decision of the contest, but he submitted without a remon- tine of his friend, and his laudable intentions were rewarded with an equestrian statue, and a daughter of the emperor. It was more difficult to trust the fidelity of Crispus, whose recent services were recompensed by the command of the Cappadocian army. His arrogance soon pro- voked, and seemed to excuse, the ingratitude of his new sovereign. In the presence of the senate, the son-in-law of Phocas was condemned to embrace the monastic life; and the sentence was justified by the weighty observation of Heraclius, that the man who had betrayed his father, could never be faithful to his friends.

Even after his death the republic was afflicted by the crimes of Phocas, which armed with a pious cause the most formidable of her enemies. According to the friendly and equal forms of the Byzantine and Persian courts, he announced his exaltation to the throne; and his ambassador Libius, who had presented him with the hands of Maurice and his son, was the best qualified to describe the circumstances of the tragic scene. However, it might be varnished by fiction or sophistry, Chlorus turned with horror from the massacre, imprisoned the pretended survey, disclaimed the usurper, and declared himself the avenger of his father and benefactor. The sentiments of grief and resentment which humanity would feel, and honour would dictate, promoted, on this occasion, the interest of the Persian king; and his interest was powerfully magnified by the national and religious prejudices of the Magi and Saracens. In a strain of artful adulation, which assumed the language of freemasonry, they presumed to compare the glories of the Persian friendship and the friendship for the Greeks, a nation with whom it was dangerous to conclude either peace or alliance, whose superstitions was devoid of truth and jus-
tice, and who must be incapable of any virtue, since they could perpetrate the most atrocious crimes, the impious murder of their sovereign. For the crime of an ambitious suturism, the nation which he oppressed, he charged every man with the guilt, and the same calamities, at the end of twenty years, were retaliated and redoubled on the heads of the Persians. The general who had restored Chosroes to the throne still commanded in the East; and the name of Narses was the formidable sound with which the Assyrian mothers were accustomed to terrify their infants. It is not improbable that a native subject of Persia should encourage his master and his friend to deliver and possess the provinces of Asia. It is still more probable that Chosroes should animate his troops by the assurance that the sword which they dreaded the most would remain in its scabbard, or be drawn in their favour. The hero could not depend on the faith of a tyrant; and the tyrant was conscious how little he deserved the obedience of an hero. Narses was removed from his military command; he renounced an independent standard at Hierapolis, in Syria: he was betrayed by fickle promises, and burst alive in the marketplace of Constantinople. Deprived of the only chief whom they could fear or esteem, the bands which he had led to victory were twice broken by the cavalry, trumped by the elephants, and pierced by the arrows of the barbarians, and a great number of the captives were beheaded on the field of battle by the sentence of the victor, who might justly condemn these enormous mercenaries as the authors or accomplices of the death of Maurice. Under the reign of Phocas, the fortresses of Mervia, Dara, Amidia, and Echinus, were successively besieged, reduced, and destroyed, by the Persian monarch; he passed the Euphrates, occupied the Syrian cities, Hierapolis, Chalæs, and Barhaea or Aleppo; and soon encompassed the walls of Antioch with his irresistible arms. The rapid tide of success discloses the decay of the empire, the incapacity of Phocas, and the discouragement of his subjects; and Chosroes provided a decent apology for their submission or revolt, by an impostor who attended his camp as the son of Maurice and the lawful heir of the monarchy.

The first intelligence from the East which Heraclius received, was that of the loss of Antioch: but the aged metropolis, so often overturned by earthquakes, and pillaged by the enemy, could supply but a small and languid stream of treasure and blood. The Persians were equally successful, and more fortunate, in the siege of Cesarea, the capital of Cappadocia; and as they advanced beyond the ramparts of the frontier, the boundary of ancient war; they found a less obstinate resistance, and a more plentiful harvest. The voluntary submission of Damascus has been admired in every age with a royal city; her obscure felicity has hitherto escaped the historian of the Roman empire; but Chosroes reposited his troops in the paradise of Damascus before he ascended the hills of Littana, or invaded the cities of the Phoenician coast. The conquest of Jerusalem, which had been mutilated by Nusharvan, was achieved by the zeal and avarice of his grandson; the ruin of the proudest monument of Christianity was subservient urged by the intolerant spirit of the Magi; and he could enlist, for this holy warfare, an army of six and twenty thousand Jews, whose furious bigotry might compensate, in some degree, for the want of valor and discipline. After the reduction of Galilee, and the region beyond the Jordan, whose resistance appears to have delayed the fate of the capital, Jerusalem itself was taken by assault. The sepulchre of Christ, and the stately churches of Helema and Constantinople, were consumed, or at least damaged, by the flames; the devout offerings of three hundred years were rifled in one sacrilegious day; the patriarch Zachariah, and the true cross, were transported into Persia; and the massacre of ninety thousand Christians is imputed to the Jews and Arabs, who swelled the disorder of the Persian march. The fugitives of Palestine were entertained at Alexandria by the charity of John the Archbishop, who is distinguished among a crowd of saints by the epitaph of the Emperor: and the revenues of the churches, with a treasure of three hundred thousand pounds, were restored to the true proprietors, the poor of every country and every denomination. But Egypt itself, the only province which had been exempt, since the time of Diocletian, from foreign and domestic war, was again subdued by the successors of Cyrus. Pelusium, the key of that impervious country, was surprised by the cavalry of the Persians; they passed, with impunity, the innumerable channels of the Delta, and explored the long valley of the Nile, from the pyramids of Memphis to the confines of Ethiopia. Alexandria might have been relieved by a naval force, but the archbishop and the prefect embarked for Cyprus; and Chosroes entered the second city of the empire, which still preserved a wealthy remnant of industry and commerce. His western
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

769

trophies was erected, not on the walls of Carthage, but in the neighbourhood of Tripoli; the Greek colonies of Cyrene were finally extirpated; and the conqueror, treading in the footsteps of Alexander, returned in triumph through the sands of the Libyan desert. In the same campaign, another army advanced from the Euphrates to the Taurus Ropshorus; Cludercus surrendered after a long siege, and a Persian camp was maintained above ten years in the presence of Constantineople. The coast of Pontus, the city of Ancyra, and the island of Rhodes, are enumerated among the last conquests of the Great King; and if Chosroes had possessed any maritime power, his boundless ambition would have spread slavery and desolation over the provinces of Europe.

From the long-disputed banks of the Tigris and Euphrates, the reign of the grandson of Nushirvan was suddenly extended to the Hellespont and the Nile, the ancient limits of the Persian monarchy. But the provinces, which had been fashioned by the habits of six hundred years to the virtues and vices of the Roman government, supported with reluctance the yoke of the barbarians. The idea of a republic was kept alive by the institutions, or at least by the writings, of the Greeks and Romans, and the subjects of Heraclius had been seduced to proclaim the words of liberty and law. But it has always been the pride and policy of Oriental princes, to display the titles and attributes of their omnipotence; to upbuild a nation of slaves with their true name and a slave condition, and to enforce, by cruel and insolent threats, the rigour of their absolute commands. The Christians of the East were scandalised by the worship of fire, and the impious doctrine of the two principles: the Magi were not less intolerant than the bishops, and the myrrhtm of some native Persians, who had deserted the religion of Zoroaster, was conceived to be the preamble of a fierce and general persecution. By the oppressive laws of Justinian, the adversaries of the church were made the enemies of the state; the alliance of the Jews, Nestorians, and Jacobites, had contributed to the success of Chosroes, and his partial favour to the sectaries provoked the hatred and fears of the Catholic clergy. Conscious of their fear and hatred, the Persian conqueror governed his new subjects with an iron sceptre; and so far as he suspected the stability of his dominion, he exhausted their wealth by exorbitant tributes and licentious rapine, despised or demolished the temples of the East, and transported to his hereditary realms the gold, the silver, the precious marbles, the arts, and the artists of the Asiatic cities.

It is not easy to discern the figure of Chosroes himself, or to separate his actions from those of his lieutenants, or to ascertain his personal merit in the general blaze of glory and magnificence. He enjoyed with ostentation the fruits of victory, and frequently retired from the hardships of war to the luxury of the palace. But, in the space of twenty-four years, he was deterred by superstition or resentment from approaching the gates of Ctesiphon; and his favourite residence of Artemis, or Dastagerd, was situated beyond the Tigris, about sixty miles to the north of the capital. The adjacent pastures were covered with flocks and herds; the paradise or park was replenished with pheasants, peacocks, ostriches, roebucks, and wild boars, and the noble game of lions and tigers was sometimes turned loose for the bolder pleasures of the chase. Nine hundred and sixty elephants were maintained for the use or splendour of the Great King; his tents and baggage were carried into the field by twelve thousand great camels, and eight thousand of a smaller size; and the royal stables were filled with six thousand mules and horses, among whom the names of Siadbil and Barid are renowned for their speed or beauty. Six thousand guards successively mounted before the palace gate; the service of the interior apartments was performed by twelve thousand slaves; and in the number of three thousand virgins, the fairest of Asia, some happy coeval of might conspire her master for the age or the indifference of Sirat. The various treasures of gold, silver, gems, silk, and aromatics, were deposited in an hundred subterraneous vaults; and the chamber Bahazard denoted the accidental gift of the winds which had wafted the spoils of Heraclius into one of the Syrian harbours of his rival. The voice of flattery, and perhaps of fiction, is not spared to compute the thirty thousand rich hangings that adorned the walls; the forty thousand columns of silver, or more probably of marble, and plated wood, that supported the roof; and the thousand globes of gold suspended in the dome, to imitate the motions of the planets and the constellations of the zodiac. While the Persian monarch contemplated the wonders of his art and power, he received an epistle from an obscure citizen of Mocca, inviting him to acknowledge Mahomet as the apostle of God. He rejected the invitation, and tore the epistle. "It is thus," exclaimed the Arabian prophet, "that God will tear the kingdom; and reject the supplications of Chosroes." Placed on the verge of the two great empires of the East, Mahomet observed with secret joy the progress of their mutual destruction; and, in the midst of the obscure picture of the calamities of the empire,
the Persian triumphs, he ventured to foretell, that before many years should elapse, victory would again return to the banners of the Romans. 68

At the time when this prediction is said to have been delivered, no prophecy could be more distant from its accomplishment, since the first twelve years of Heracleus announced the approaching dissolution of the empire. If the motives of Chosroes had been pure and honourable, he must have ended the quarrel with the death of Phocas, and he would have embraced, as his best ally, the fortunate African who had so generously averted the injuries of his benefactor Maurice. The prosecution of the war revealed the true character of the barbarian; and the suppliant embassies of Heracleus to beseech his clemency, that he would spare the innocent, accept a tribute, and give peace to the world, were rejected with contemptuous silence or insolent menace. Syria, Egypt, and the provinces of Asia, were subdued by the Persian arms; while Europe, from the confines of Istria to the long wall of Thrace, was oppressed by the Avars, unsettled with the blood and rapine of the Italian war. They had cruelly captured their male captives in the sacred field of Paumonius; the women and children were reduced to servitude, and the noblest virgins were abandoned to the promiscuous lust of the barbarians. The amorous matron who opened the gates of Friull, passed a short night in the arms of her royal lover; the next evening, Romilda was condemned to the embraces of twelve Avars, and the third day the Lombard princess was improvised in the sight of the camp, while the chagrin observed with a cruel smile, that such a husband was the fit recompense of her Lewdness and pestilence. 69 By these implacable enemies, Heracleus, on either side, was insulted and besieged; and the Roman empire was reduced to the walls of Constantinople, with the remnant of Greece, Italy, and Africa, and some maritime cities, from Tyre to Trebizond, on the Asiatic coast. After the loss of Egypt, the capital was afflicted by famine and pestilence; and the emperor, incapable of resistance, and hopeless of relief, had resolved to transfer his person and government to the more secure residence of Carthage. His ships were already laden with the treasures of the palace; but his flight was arrested by the patriarch, who assumed the powers of religion in the defence of his country, led Heracleus to the altar of St. Sophia, and extorted a solemn oath, that he would live and die with the people whom God had intrusted to his care. The chagrin was encamped in the plains of Thrace; but he disembarked his pernicious designs, and solicited an interview with the emperor near the town of Hormela. Their reconciliation was celebrated with equestrian games; the senate and people, in their gayest apparel, escorted to the festival of peace; and the Avars held, with envy and desire, the speculations of Roman luxury. On a sudden, the hippodrome was encompassed by the Scythian cavalry, who had pressed their secret and nocturnal march: the tremendous sound of the chagrin's whip gave the signal of the assault; and Heracleus, wrapping his diadem round his arm, was saved, with extreme hazard, by the fleetness of his horse. So rapid was the pursuit, that the Avars almost entered the golden gate of Constantinople with the flying crowds; 71 but the plunder of the suburbs rewarded their treason, and they transported beyond the Danube two hundred and seventy thousand captives. On the shore of Chalcedon, the emperor held a safer conference with a more honourable foe, who, before Heracleus descended from his galley, seated with reverence and pity the majesty of the purple. The friendly office of Sain, the Persian general, to conduct an embassy to the presence of the Great King, was accepted with the warmest gratitude; and the prayer for pardon and peace was humbly presented, by the pretorian prefect, the prefect of the city, and one of the first ecclesiastics of the patriarchal church. 72 But the lieutenant of Chosroes had totally mistaken the intentions of his master. "It was not an embassy," said the tyrant of Asia; "It was the person of Heracleus, bound in chains, that he should have brought to the foot of my throne. I will never give peace to the emperor of Rome till he has abjured his crucified God, and embraced the worship of the sun." Sain was obeyed; alive, according to the inhuman practice of his country; and the separate and rigorous confinement of the ambassadors violated the law of nations, and the faith of an express stipulation. Yet the experience of six years at length persuaded the Persian monarch to annul the conquest of Constantinople, and to specify the annual tribute or ransom of the Roman empire: a thousand talents of gold, a thousand talents of silver, a thousand silk robes, a thousand horses, and a thousand virgins. Heracleus subscribed these ignominious terms; but the time and space which he obtained to collect such treasures from the poverty of the East was industriously employed in the preparations of a bold and desperate attack.

Of the characters conspicuous in the history, that of Heracleus is one of the most extraordinary and inconsistent. In the first and the last years of a long reign, the emperor appears to be the slave of sloth, of pleasure, or of superstition; the careless and impotent spectator of the public calamities. But the languid mists of the morning and evening are separated by the brightness of the meridian sun: the Arcadia of the palace quells the Caesar of the camp; and the honour of Rome and Heracleus was gloriously retrieved by the

68 See the tenth chapter of the Ruins, entitled the Gods. One cannot refer to a second edition, in any case, this present chapter, to the English edition of the Ruins. The first edition, and all the French editions, have the same number. 69 See the tenth chapter of the Ruins, entitled the Gods. One cannot refer to a second edition, in any case, this present chapter, to the English edition of the Ruins. The first edition, and all the French editions, have the same number. 71 The Persians Chosroes, whose motions Heracleus Sequentius was accompanied, were accompanied with a hundred thousand men, and the ill success of the ill success of the Persian army, p. 275. 72 The number of express the number of express is not known.
exploits and triumphs of six adventurous campaigns. It was the duty of the Byzantine historians to have revealed the causes of his strength and vigilance. At this distance, we can only conjecture that he was endowed with more personal courage than political resolution; that he was detained by the clausura, and perhaps the arts, of his niece Martina, with whom, after the death of Eudocia, he contracted an incestuous marriage; 72 and that he yielded to the base advice of the counsellors, who urged as a fundamental law, that the life of the emperor should never be exposed in the field. 73 Perhaps he was awakened by the last incident of the Persian conquest; but at the moment when Heraclius assumed the spirit of an hero, the only hopes of the Romans were drawn from the vicissitudes of fortune, which might threaten the proud prosperity of Chosroes, and must be favourable to those who had attained the lowest period of depression. 74 To provide for the expenses of war, was the first care of the emperor; and for the purpose of collecting the tribute, he was allowed to solicit the benevolence of the Eastern provinces. But the revenue no longer flowed in the usual channel; the credit of an arbitrary prince is annihilated as fast as it is lost, and the course of Heraclius was first displayed in daring to borrow the concerned wealth of churches, under the solemn vow of restoring, with usury, whatever he had been compelled to employ in the service of religion and of the empire. The clergy themselves appear to have sympathised with the public distress; and the discreet patriarch of Alexandria, without admitting the precedent of sacrilege, assisted his sovereign by the miraculous or reasonable revelation of a secret treasure. 75 Of the soldiers who had conspired with Phocas, only two were found to have survived the stroke of time and of the barbarians; 76 the loss, even of these sedulous veterans, was imperfectly supplied by the new levies of Heraclius; and the gold of the sanctuary united, in the same camp, the names, and arms, and languages, of the East and West. He would have been content with the neutrality of the Avars; and his friendly entreaty, that the chagan would act, not as the enemy, but as the guardian of the empire, was accompanied with a more persuasive donation of two hundred thousand pieces of gold. Two days after the festival of Easter, the emperor, exchanging his purple for the simple gait of a penitent and warrior, 77 gave the signal of his departure. To the faith of the people Heraclius recommended his children; the civil and military powers were vested in the most deserving hands, and the discretion of the patriarch and senate was authorised to save or surrender the city, if they should be oppressed in his absence by the superior forces of the enemy.

The neighbouring heights of Chaldæon were covered with tents and arms; but if the new levies of Heraclius had been rashly led to the attack, the victory of the Persians in the sight of Constantineople might have been the last day of the Roman empire. As imprudent would it have been to advance into the provinces of Asia, leaving their innumerable cavalry to intercept his courtyards, and continually to hang on the multitude and disorder of his rear. But the Greeks were still masters of the sea; a fleet of galleys, transports, and storeships, was assembled in the harbour; the barbarians consented to embark; a steady wind carried them through the Hellespont; the western and southern coast of Asia Minor lay on their left hand; the spirit of their chief was first displayed in a storm; and even the sunbeams of his train were excited to suffer and to work by the example of their master. He landed his troops on the confines of Syria and Cilicia, in the Gulf of Scædæron, where the coast suddenly turns to the south; 78 and his discomfiture was expressed in the choice of this important post. 80 From all sides, the scattered garrisons of the maritime cities and the mountains might repair with speed and safety to his Imperial standard. The natural fortifications of Cilicia protected, and even concealed, the camp of Heraclius, which was pitched near Isæs, on the same ground where Alexander had quenched the host of Daricus. The angle which the emperor occupied, was deeply indent ed into a vast semicircle of the Asiatic, Armenian, and Syrian provinces; and to whatsoever point of the circumference he should direct his attack, it was easy for him to dissemble his own motions, and to prevent those of the enemy. In the camp of Issus, the Roman general reformed the sloth and disorder of the veterans, and educated the new recruits in the knowledge and practice of military virtue. Unfolding the miraculous image of Christ, he urged them to revenge the holy altars which had been profaned by the worshippers of fire; addressing them by the endearing appellations of

---

72 See the letter of Theodoricus to the Emperors, p. 121. He ruined a was rather than the emperor, and dependent, of constant or the imperial seal, the latter was marked by Procopius with a dull and pernicious letter. 73 See the letter of Theodoricus, p. 121. The emperors had caused to have passed the seal of the Roman chamber, and the imperial banner, over the church of Constantinople, and the church of Jerusalem. 74 See the letter of Theodoricus, p. 121. The emperors had caused to have passed the seal of the Roman chamber, and the imperial banner, over the church of Constantinople, and the church of Jerusalem. 75 See the letter of Theodoricus, p. 121. The emperors had caused to have passed the seal of the Roman chamber, and the imperial banner, over the church of Constantinople, and the church of Jerusalem. 76 See the letter of Theodoricus, p. 121. The emperors had caused to have passed the seal of the Roman chamber, and the imperial banner, over the church of Constantinople, and the church of Jerusalem. 77 See the letter of Theodoricus, p. 121. The emperors had caused to have passed the seal of the Roman chamber, and the imperial banner, over the church of Constantinople, and the church of Jerusalem. 78 See the letter of Theodoricus, p. 121. The emperors had caused to have passed the seal of the Roman chamber, and the imperial banner, over the church of Constantinople, and the church of Jerusalem. 79 See the letter of Theodoricus, p. 121. The emperors had caused to have passed the seal of the Roman chamber, and the imperial banner, over the church of Constantinople, and the church of Jerusalem. 80 See the letter of Theodoricus, p. 121. The emperors had caused to have passed the seal of the Roman chamber, and the imperial banner, over the church of Constantinople, and the church of Jerusalem.
The subject of a monarch were persuaded that they fought in the cause of freedom; and a similar enthusiasm was communicated to the foreign mercenaries, who must have viewed with moral indifference the interest of his kingdom and of Persia. Heraclius himself, with the skill and patience of a centurion, incalculates the losses of the school of tactics, and the soldiers were assiduously trained in the use of their weapons, and the exercises were evolutions of the field. The cavalry and infantry in light or heavy armour were divided into two parties; the trumpets were fixed in the centre, and their signals directed the march, the charge, the retreat, or pursuit; the direct or oblique order, the deep or extended phalanx; to represent in fictitious combat the operations of genuine war. Whatever hardship the emperor imposed on the troops, he inflicted with equal severity on himself; their labour, their diet, their sleep, were measured by the inflexible rules of discipline; and, without despising the enemy, they were taught to repose an implicit confidence in their own valour and the wisdom of their leader. Cilicia was soon encompassed with the Persian arms; but their cavalry hesitated to enter the defiles of Mount Taurus, till they were circumvented by the evolutions of Heraclius, who instantly gained their rear, whilst he appeared to present his front in order of battle. By a false motion, which seemed to threaten Armenia, he drew them, against their wishes, to a general action. They were tempted by the artful disorder of his camp; but when they advanced to combat, the ground, the sun, and the expectation of both armies, were unpropitious to the barbarians; the Byzantines successfully repeated their tactics in a field of battle, and the event of the day declared to the world, that the Persians were not invincible, and that the hero was invested in such a people. Strong in victory and base, Heraclius boldly ascended the heights of Mount Taurus, directed his march through the plains of Cappadoce, and established his troops for the winter season, in safe and plentiful quarters on the banks of the river Haly. His soul was superior to the vanity of Constantinople with an imperfect triumph; but the presence of the emperor was indispensably required to soothe the restless and rapacious spirit of the Arabs.

Since the days of Scipio and Hamilcar, no

bolder enterprise had been attempted than that which Heraclius achieved for the deliverance of the empire. He permitted the Persians to oppress for a while the provinces, and to insult with impunity the capital of the East; whilst the Roman emperor explored his perilous way through the Black Sea, and the mountains of Armenia, penetrated into the heart of Persia, and recalled the armies of the Great King to the defence of their bleeding country. With a select band of five thousand soldiers, Heraclius sailed from Constantinople to Trebizond; assembled his forces which had wintered in the Pontic regions; and from the mouth of the Phasis to the Caspian Sea, encouraged his subjects and allies to march with the successor of Constantine under the faithful and victorious banner of the cross. When the legions of Lucullus and Pompey first passed the Euphrates, they blushed at their easy victory over the natives of Armenia. But the long experience of war had hardened the minds and bodies of that effeminate people; their zeal and bravery were approved in the service of a declining empire; they abhorred and feared the usurpation of the house of Sasman, and the memory of persecution envenomed their pious hatred of the enemies of Christ. The limits of Armenia, as it had been ceded to the emperor Maurice, extended as far as the Araxes; the river submitted to the indignity of a bridge; and Heraclius, in the footsteps of Marc Antony, advanced towards the city of Taurus on Mount Cassa, the ancient and modern capital of one of the provinces of Molia. At the head of forty thousand men, Cassares himself had returned from some distant expedition to oppose the progress of the Roman arms; but he retreated on the approach of Heraclius, declining the generous alternative of peace or of battle. Instead of half a million of inhabitants, which have been ascribed to Taurus under the reign of the Sophis, the city contained no more than three thousand houses; but the value of the royal treasures was enhanced by a tradition, that they were the spoils of Creassus, which had been transported by Cyrus from the city of Sardes. The rapid conquests of Heraclius were suspended only by the winter season; a motive of prudence, or superstition, determined his retreat into the province of Albania, along the shores of the Caspian; and his tents were most probably pitched in the plains of Mogan, the favourite

25. He restored the situation of Ctesiphon, Thebais, and other important cities.
26. He marched to the upper Euphrates.
27. He marched to the upper Euphrates.
28. He marched to the upper Euphrates.
29. He marched to the upper Euphrates.
30. He marched to the upper Euphrates.
31. He marched to the upper Euphrates.
32. He marched to the upper Euphrates.
encampment of Oriental princes. In the course of this successful invasion, he signified the zeal and revenge of a Christian emperor; at his command, the soldiers extinguished the fire, and destroyed the temples, of the Magi; the statues of Chosroes, who aspired to divine honours, were abandoned to the flames; and the ruins of Thebarnas or Orma, which had given birth to Zoroaster himself, made some atonement for the injuries of the holy sepulchre. A pure spirit of religion was shown in the relief and deliverance of fifty thousand captives. Heraclius was rewarded by their tears and grateful acclamations; but this wise measure, which spread the fame of his benevolence, diffused the murmurs of the Persians against the pride and obstinacy of their own sovereign.

Amidst the glooms of the succeeding campaign, Heraclius is almost lost to our eyes, and to those of the Byzantine historians. From the spacious and fruitful plains of Armenia, the emperor appears to follow the chain of Hyrcanian mountains, to descend into the province of Media or Irak, and to carry his victorious arms as far as the royal cities of Cubbin and Jaspahan, which had never been approached by a Roman conqueror. Alarmed by the danger of his kingdom, the powers of Chosroes were already recalled from the Nile and the Bosphorus, and three formidable armies surmounted, in a distant and hostile land, the camp of the emperor. The Colchian allies prepared to desert his standard; and the fears of the bravest veterans were expressed, rather than concealed, by their despairing silence. "Be not terrified," said the intrepid Heraclius, "by the multitude of your foes. With the aid of Heaven, one Roman may triumph over a thousand barbarians. But if we devote our lives for the salvation of our brethren, we shall obtain the crown of martyrdom, and our immortal reward will be literally paid by God and posterity." These unanimous sentiments were supported by the vigour of his actions. He repelled the insidious attack of the Persians, improved the division of their chiefs, and, by a series of successful actions, finally chased them from the field into the fortified cities of Media and Assyria. In the severity of the winter season, Sarabara deemed himself secure in the walls of Sulzan; he was surprised by the activity of Heraclius, who divided his troops, and performed a laborious march in the silence of the night. The flat roofs of the houses were defended with useless valour against the darts and torches of the Romans; the satraps and nobles of Persia, with their wives and children, and the flower of their martial youth, were either slain or made prisoners. The general escaped by a precipitate flight, but his golden armour was the prize of the conqueror; and the soldiers of Heraclius enjoyed the wealth and repose which they had so nobly deserved. On the return of spring, the emperor traversed in seven days the mountains of Cucubitan, and passed without resistance the rapid stream of the Tigria. Oppressed by the weight of their spoils and captives, the Roman army halted under the walls of Amida; and Heraclius informed the senate of Constantinople of his safety and success, which they had already felt by the retreat of the besiegers. The bridges of the Euphrates were destroyed by the Persians; but, as soon as the emperor had discovered a ford, they hastily retired to defend the banks of the Sarus, in Cilicia. That river, an impetuous torrent, was about three hundred feet broad; the bridge was fortified with strong turrets, and the banks were lined with barbarian archers. After a bloody conflict, which continued till the evening, the Romans prevailed in the assault, and a Persian of gigantic size was slain and thrown into the Sarus by the hand of the emperor himself. The enemies were dispersed and dismayed; Heraclius pursued his march to Seleucia in Cappadocia; and at the expiration of three years, the same coast of the Euphrates applauded his return from a long and victorious expedition.

Instead of skirmishing on the frontier, the two monarchs who disputed the empire of the East aimed their desperate strokes at the heart of their rival. The military force of Persia was wasted by the marches and combats of twenty years, and many of the veterans, who had survived the perils of the sword and the climate, were still detained in the fortresses of Egypt and Syria. But the revenge and ambition of Chosroes exhausted his kingdom; and the new levies of subjects, strangers, and slaves, were divided into three formidable bodies. The first army of fifty thousand men, illustrious by the ornament and title of the golden spurs, was destined to march against Heraclius; the second, under the illustrious name of his junction with the troops of his brother Tiberius; and the third was commanded to besiege Constantinople, and to second the operations of the chagans, with whom the Persian king had ratified a treaty of alliance and partition. Sarabara, the general of the third army, penetrated through the provinces of Asia to the well-known camp of Chaledon, and amused himself with the destruction of the sacred and profane buildings of the Asiatic suburbs, while he impatiently waited the arrival of his Scythian friends on the opposite side of the Bosphorus. On the twenty-ninth of June, thirty thousand barbarians, the vanguard of the Avars, forced the long wall, and drove into the capital a pro-
miscious crowd of peasants, citizens, and soldiers. Fourscore thousand 29 of his native subjects, and of the vassal tribes of Gepids, Russians, Bulgarians, and Scythians, advanced under the standard of the chagan; a month was spent in marches and negotiations, but the whole city was invested on the thirty-first of July, from the suburbs of Periz and Galata to the Blachernas and seven towers; and the inhabitants despaired with terror from the flaming signals of the European and Asiatic shores. In the mean while the magistrates of Constantinople repeatedly strove to purchase the retreat of the chagan, but their deputies were rejected and insulted; and he suffered the patrikians to stand before his throne, while the Persian envoys, in silk robes, were seated by his side. “You see,” said the haughty barbarian, “the proofs of my perfect union with the Great King; and his lieutenant is ready to send into my camp a select band of three thousand warriors. Presume no longer to tempt your master with a partial and inadequate ransom: your wealth and your city are the only presents worthy of my acceptance. For yourselves, I shall permit you to depart, each with an under-garment, and a shirt; and, at my entreaty, my friend Sarbar will not refuse a passage through his lines. Your abhorrent prince, even now a captive or a fugitive, has left Constantinople to its fate; nor can you escape the arms of the Arabs and Persians, unless you could soar into air like birds, or less like fishes you could dive into the waves.”

During ten successive days, the capital was assaulted by the Arabs, who had made some progress in the science of attack; they advanced to sap or batter the wall, under the cover of the impregnable turrets; their engines discharged a perpetual volley of stones and darts; and twelve lofty towers of wood excelled the combatants to the height of the neighbouring ramparts. But the senate and people were animated by the spirit of Heraclius, who had detached to their relief a body of twelve thousand cuirassiers; the powers of fire and mechanics were used with superior art and success in the defence of Constantinople; and the galleys, with two and three ranks of oars, commanded the Bosphorus, and rendered the Persians the idle spectators of the defeat of their allies. The Arabs were repulsed; a fleet of Scythian canoes was destroyed in the harbour; the vessels of the chagan threatened to desert, his provisions were exhausted, and after burning his engines, he gave the signal of a slow and formidable retreat. The devotion of the Romans ascribed this signal deliverance to the Virgin Mary; but the mother of Christ would surely have condemned their inhuman murder of the Persian envoys, who were emblazoned with the rights of humanity, if they were not protected by the laws of nations.

After the division of his army, Heraclius prudently retired to the banks of the Phasis, from whence he maintained a defensive war against the fifty thousand gold spears of Persia. His anxiety was relieved by the deliverance of Constantine; his hopes were confirmed by a victory of his brother Theodorus; and to the hostile league of Chosroes with the Arabs, the Roman empire opposed the useful and honorable alliance of the Turks. At his liberal invitation, the host of Chosroes 30 transported their tents from the plains of the Volga to the mountains of Georgia; Heraclius received them in the neighborhood of Tefhis, and the Khan with his nobles dismounted from their horses, if we may credit the Greeks, and fell prostrate on the ground, to adore the purple of the Caesars. Such voluntary homage and important aid were entitled to the warmest acknowledgments; and the emperor, taking off his own diadem, placed it on the head of the Turkish prince, whom he saluted with a tender embrace and the appellation of son. After a sumptuous banquet, he presented Zisird with the plate and ornaments, the gold, the gems, and the silk, which had been used at the Imperial table, and, with his own hand, distributed rich jewels and earrings to his new allies. In a second interview, he produced the portrait of his daughter Eudocia, 31 descended from the barbarians with the promise of a fair and ungloved bride, obtained an immediate accession of forty thousand horse, and negotiated a strong diversion of the Turkish arms on the side of the Oxyars. 32 The Persians, in their turn, retreated with precipitation; in the camp of Edessa, Heraclius reviewed an army of seventy thousand Romans and strangers; and some months were successfully employed in the recovery of the cities of Syria, Mesopotamia, and Armenia, whose fortifications had been imperfectly restored. Sarbar still maintained the important station of Chalcedon; but the jealousy of Chosroes, or the avarice of Heraclius, soon alienated the mind of that powerful satrap from the service of his king and country. A messenger was intercepted with a real or fictitious mandate to the caliph, or second in command, directing him to send, without delay, to the throne, the head of a guilty or unfortunate general. The despatches were transmitted to Sarbar himself; and as soon as he read the sentence of his own death, he deexterously inserted the names of four

29 This number of eight months is derived from the Book of Medma (Bel. Alex. 721). The poet, 329-320 (Smith); Kuyper (Cr. Hist. 285), 345-346: Heraclius, and that his son and successor was born on a field of battle, near Cyzicus, on the mouth of the Bosphorus. 232 in the year of the indiction 354 of the emperor Constantius (Hist. Rom. iii. c. 18). Eudocia was the daughter of the emperor Heraclius (Smith, Bel. Alex. 728). 31 Smith, Bel. Alex. 728. The latter (Bel. Alex. 729) gives a different account of the manner of the capture of Chosroes, the present Chosroes (Bel. Alex. 732). Heraclius, and the name of the Persian Kaisar (Bel. Alex. 737).
hundred officers, assembled a military council, and asked the question, whether he was prepared to execute the commands of their tyrant? The Persians unanimously declared, that Chosroes had forfeited the sceptre; a separate treaty was concluded with the government of Constantine; and if some considerations of honour or policy restrained Sarbar from joining the standard of Heraclius, the emperor was assured, that he might prosecute, without interruption, his designs of victory and peace.

Deprived of his firmest support, and doubtful of the fidelity of his subjects, the greatness of Chosroes was still conspicuous in its ruins. The number of five hundred thousand may be interpreted as an Oriental metaphor, to describe the men and arms, the horses and elephants, that covered Media and Assyria against the invasion of Heraclius. Yet the Romans boldly advanced from the Araxes to the Tigris, and the timid prudence of Iblisates was content to follow them by forced marches through a desert country, till he received a peremptory mandate to risk the fate of Persia in a decisive battle. Eastward of the Tigris, at the soil of the bridge of Moeah, the great Nineveh had formerly been erected; the city, and even the ruins of the city, had long since disappeared; the vacant space afforded a spacious field for the operations of the two armies. But these operations are neglected by the Byzantine historians, and, like the authors of epic poetry and romance, they ascribe the victory not to the military conduct, but to the personal valor, of their favorite hero. On this memorable day, Heraclius, on his horse Phallas, surpassed the bravest of his warriors; his lip was pierced with a spear, the steel was wounded in the thigh, but he carried his master safe and victorious through the triple phalanx of the barbarians. In the heat of the action, three valiant chiefs were successively slain by the sword and lance of the emperor; among these was Iblisates himself; he fell like a soldier, but the sight of his head scattered grief and despair through the fighting ranks of the Persians. His armour of pure and mussy gold, the shield of one hundred and twenty plates, the sword and belt, the saddle and crupper, adorned the triumph of Heraclius; and if he had not been faithful to Christ and his mother, the champion of Rome might have offered the fourth espousals to the Jupiter of the Capitol. In the battle of Nineveh, which was fiercely fought from daybreak to the eleventh hour, twenty-eight standards, beside those which might be broken or torn, were taken from the Persians; the greatest part of their army was cut in pieces; and the victor, enclosing their own loss, passed the night on the field. They acknowledged, that on this occasion it was less difficult to kill them than to discomfit the soldiers of Chosroes; amidst the bodies of their friends, no more than two bow-shears from the enemy, the remnant of the Persian cavalry stood firm till the seventh hour of the night; about the eighth hour they retired to their surfted camp, collected their baggage, and dispersed on all sides, from the want of orders rather than of resolution. The diligence of Heraclius was not less admirable in the use of victory; by a march of forty-eight miles in four and twenty hours, his vanguard occupied the bridges of the great and the lesser Zal; and the cities and palaces of Assyria were open for the first time to the Romans. By a just graduation of magnificent scenes, they penetrated to the royal seat of Dastagerd; and though much of the treasure had been removed, and much had been expended, the remaining wealth appears to have exceeded their hopes, and even to have satiated their avarice. Whatever could not be easily transported they consumed with fire, that Chosroes might feel the anguish of those wounds, which he had so often inflicted on the provinces of the empire; and justice might allow the excuse, if the devastation had been confined to the works of regal luxury, if national hatred, military licence, and religious zeal, had not wasted with equal rage the habitations and the temples of the guiltless subject. The recovery of three hundred Roman standards, and the deliverance of the numerous captives of Edessa and Alexandrias, reflect a purer glory on the arms of Heraclius. From the palace of Dastagerd, he pursued his march within a few miles of Modain or Ctesiphon, till he was stopped, on the banks of the Arba, by the difficulty of the passage, the rigour of the season, and perhaps the fame of an impregnable capital. The return of the emperor is marked by the modern name of the city of Sterbhor; he fortunately passed Mount Zara, before the snow, which fell incessantly thirty-four days; and the citizens of Gaudaica, or Taurus, were compelled to entertain his soldiers and their horses, with an hospitable reception.

When the ambition of Chosroes was reduced to the defence of his hereditary kingdom, the love of glory, or even the sense of shame, should have urged him to meet his rival in the field. In the battle of Nineveh, his courage might have taught the Persians to vanquish, or he might have fallen with honour by the lance of a Roman emperor. The successor of Cyrus chose rather, at a secure distance, to expect the event, to assemble the vessels of the defunct, and to retire by measured steps before the march of Heraclius, till he beheld with a sigh the once lived mansions of Dastagerd. Both his friends and enemies were perplexed.
that it was the intention of Chosroes to bury himself under the ruins of the city and palace; and as both might have been equally adverse to his flight, the monarch of Asia, with Sira, and three concubines, escaped through an hole in the wall nine days before the arrival of the Romans. The slow and stately procession in which he showed himself to the prostrate crowd, was changed to a rapid and secret journey; and the first evening he lodged in the cottage of a peasant, whose humble door would scarcely give admittance to the Great King.103 His superstitious submission was shuddered by fear; on the third day, he entered with joy the fortifications of Ctesiphon: yet he still doubted of his safety till he had opposed the river Tigris to the pursuit of the Romans. The discovery of his flight agitated with terror and tumult the palace, the city, and the camp of Dastagerd: the satraps hesitated whether they had most to fear from their sovereign or the enemy; and the females of the harem were astonished and pleased by the sight of mankind, till the jealous husband of three thousand wives again confined them to a more distant seat. At this command, the army of Dastagerd retreated to a new camp: the front was covered by the Arabs, and a line of two hundred elephants; the troops of the more distant provinc.es successively arrived, and the most domestic parts of the king and satraps were encircled for the last defence of the throne. It was still in the power of Chosroes to obtain a reasonable peace; and he was repeatedly pressed by the messengers of Heraclius, to spare the blood of his subjects, and to relieve an humane conqueror from the painful duty of carrying fire and sword through the fairest countries of Asia. But the pride of the Persian had not yet sunk to the level of his fortune; he derived a momentary confidence from the retreat of the emperor; he wept with impotent rage over the ruins of his Assyrian palaces, and disregarded too long the rising murmurs of the nation, who complained that their lives and fortunes were sacrificed to the ostentation of an old man. That unhappy old man was himself tortured with the sharpest pains both of mind and body; and, in the conclusiveness of his approaching end, he resolved to fix thesites on the head of Mervad, the most favoured of his sons. But the will of Chosroes was no longer revered, and Siroes, who gloated in the rank and merit of his mother Sira, had conspired with the malcontents to assert and anticipate the rights of primogeniture.104 Twenty-two satraps, they styled themselves patriots, were tempted by the wealth and honours of a new reign: to the soldiers, the heir of Chosroes promised an increase of pay; to the Christians, the free exercise of their religion; to the captives, liberty and rewards; and to the nation, instant peace and the reduction of taxes. It was determined by the conspirators, that Siroes, with the ensigns of royalty, should appear in the camp; and if the enterprise should fail, his escape was contrived to the Imperial court. But the new monarch was saluted with unanimous acclamations; the flight of Chosroes (yet where could he have fled?) was rudely arrested; and eighteen sons were massacred before his face, and he was thrown into a dungeon, where he expired on the fifth day. The Greeks and modern Persians minutely describe how Chosroes was insulted, and famished, and tortured, by the command of an inhuman son, who so far surpassed the example of his father; but at the time of his death, what tongue could relate the story of the iniquity, what eye could penetrate into the tower of darkness? According to the faith and mercy of his Christian enemies, he sunk without hope into a still deeper abyss;105 and it will not be denied, that tyrants of every age and sect are the best entitled to such infernal abodes. The glory of the house of Sassat ended with the life of Chosroes: his unnatural son enjoyed only eight months the fruit of his crimes; and in the space of four years, the reign thus assumed by nine candidiates, who disputed, with the sword or dagger, the fragments of an exhausted monarchy. Every province, and each city of Persia, was the scene of independence, of discord, and of blood, and the state of anarchy prevailed about eight years longer, till the factions were silenced and united under the common yoke of the Arabian caliph.106

As soon as the mountains became impassable, the emperor received the welcome news of the success of the conspiracy, the death of Chosroes, and the elevation of his eldest son to the throne of Persia. The authors of the revolution, eager to display their merits in the court or camp of Tauris, preceded the monarch of Siroes, who delivered the letters of their master to his brother the emperor of the Romans.107 In the language of the conquerors of every age, he implored the Expulsion of crimes to the Deity, and, without degrading his equal majesty, he offered to reconcile the long discord of the two nations, by a treaty of peace and alliance more durable than blood or iron. The conditions of the treaty were easily defined and faithfully executed. In the recovery of the standards and prisoners which had fallen into the hands of the Persians, the emperor imitated the example of Augustus; their care of the national dignity was celebrated by the poets of the times; but the decay of genius may be measured by the distance between Horace and George of Pisidia: the subjects and brethren of Heraclius were redeemed from persecution, slavery, and exile; but, instead of the Roman eagles, the true wood

103 The worth of Themistocles is unceasingly, or possibly 'worthless' by some modern editors. Themistocles, as an enemy of the Athenians, is said to have been banished from Athens by the Persian king. The story of his attempt to regain his property is told in Plutarch's 'Life of Themistocles.'

104 The word 'primogeniture' is derived from the Latin 'primum geniture,' meaning 'first generation.'

105 The term 'nemesis' is often used in this context, signifying a just punishment for evil deeds. In this case, it refers to the fall of the Chosroes dynasty.

106 The scene of independence among the provinces of Persia, and the elevation of Siroes, mark the beginning of the Ismailian period in Persia.

107 The term 'Arabian caliph' refers to the early caliphs of the Islamic Empire, who established the first Islamic state in the region of Persia.
of the holy cross was restored to the importunate demands of the successor of Constantine. The victor was not ambitious of enlarging the weakness of the empire: the son of Chosroes abandoned without regret the conquests of his father; the Persians who evacuated the cities of Syria and Egypt were honourably conducted to the frontier, and a war which had wounded the vital springs of the two monarchies, produced no change in their external and relative situation. The return of Heraclius from Tarsus to Constantinople was a perpetual triumph; and after the exploits of six glorious campaigns, he peaceably enjoyed the sabbath of his toils. After a long intermission, the senate, the clergy, and the people, went forth to meet their hero, with tears and acclamations, with olive branches and innumerable lamps: he entered the capital in a chariot drawn by four elephants; and as soon as the emperor could disengage himself from the tumult of public joy, he tasted more genuine satisfaction in the embraces of his mother and his son.112

The succeeding year was illustrated by a triumph of a very different kind, the restitution of the true cross to the holy sepulchre. Heraclius performed in person the pilgrimage of Jerusalem, the identity of the relic was verified by the discreet patriarch,113 and this august ceremony has been commemorated by the annual festival of the exaltation of the cross. Before the emperor presumed to tread the consecrated ground, he was instructed to strip himself of the diadem and purple, the pomp and vanity of the world: but in the judgment of his clergy, the persecution of the Jews was more easily reconciled with the precepts of the Gospel. He again ascended his throne to receive the congratulations of the ambassadors of France and India: and the fame of Moses, Alexander, and Hercules,114 was eclipsed, in the popular estimation, by the superior merit and glory of the great Heraclius. Yet the deliverance of the East was indigent and humble. Of the Persian spoils, the most valuable portion had been expended in the war, distributed to the soldiers, or buried, by a unlucky tempest, in the waves of the Euxine. In consequence of the emperor's oppression the obligation of restoring the wealth of the clergy, which he had borrowed for their own defence; a perpetual fund was required to satisfy these inexact creditors; the provinces, already wasted by the arms and avarice of the Persians, were compelled to a second payment of the same taxes; and the arrears of a simple citizen, the treasurer of Damasc us, were commuted to a fine of one hundred thousand pieces of gold. The loss of two hundred thousand soldiers,115 who had fallen by the sword, was of less fatal importance than the decay of arts, agriculture, and population, in this long and destructive war: and although a victorious army had been formed under the standard of Heraclius, the unnatural effort appears to have exhausted rather than exercised their strength. While the emperor triumphed at Constantinople or Jerusalem, an obscure town on the confines of Syria was pillaged by the Saracens, and they cut in pieces some troops who advanced to its relief: an ordinary and trifling occurrence, had it not been the prelude of a mighty revolution. These robbers were the apostles of Mahomet; their fanatic zeal had emerged from the desert; and in the last eight years of his reign, Heraclius lost to the Arabs the same provinces which he had rescued from the Persians.

CHAP. XLVII.


After the extinction of paganism, The discussion of the Christians in peace and piety might have enjoyed their solitary triumph. But the principle of discord was alive in their bosoms, and they were more solicitous to explore the nature, than to praise the laws, of their founder. I have already observed, that the disputers of the Trinity were succeeded by those of the Incarnation; alike scandalous to the church, alike pernicious to the state, still more minute in their origin, still more durable in their effects. It is my design to comprise in the present chapter a religious war of two hundred and fifty years, to represent the ecclesiastical and political science of the Oriental sects, and to introduce their curious or singular customs, by a modest enquiry into the doctrines of the primitive church.1

would easily be a critical dissertation. But the meditative exquisite of scenery which I have seen with my own eye, and which I have collected, is described, and explained, by Palladio and Le Vaull, in their admirable descriptions of the church of San Giorgio Maggiore. I could be more precise. I believe the above passage is not susceptible of any particular science, and in the compilation of a critical dictionary of art, or of the history of architecture, it is less than the most incapacious passages: I. The Pagan Theology of the Greeks, &c. a work of the most valuable merit and the most erudition. It would be an endless task to enumerate all the invaluable articles. The Jesuits' learning is original and correct: his history is vast, his moral good, his arguments clear, and his conclusions sound. It is not the history of a country, but the history of the Church, the history of the Church by itself: the history of its facts and modern, so often so false, and so unsatisfactory, is the Church of Rome and the Church of Jerusalem. The Eastern Church, &c. a work of the most valuable merit and the most erudition. It would be an endless task to enumerate all the invaluable articles. The Jesuits' learning is original and correct: his history is vast, his moral good, his arguments clear, and his conclusions sound. It is not the history of a country, but the history of the Church, the history of the Church by itself: the history of its facts and modern, so often so false, and so unsatisfactory, is the Church of Rome and the Church of Jerusalem.
I. A laudable regard for the honour of the first proselytes, has counteracted the belief, the hope, the wish, that the Ebionites, or at least the Nazarenes, were distinguished only by their obstinate perseverance in the practice of the Mosaic rites. Their churches have disappeared, their books are obliterated; their obscure freedom might allow a latitude of faith, and the softness of their infant creed would be variously moulded by the zeal or prudence of three hundred years. Yet the most charitable criticism must refuse these sectaries any knowledge of the pure and proper divinity of Christ. Educated in the school of Jewish prophecy and prejudice, they had never been taught to elevate their hopes above a human and temporal Messiah. If they had courage to hail their king when he appeared in a plebeian garb, their greater apprehensions were incapable of discerning their God, who had studiously disguised his celestial character under the name and person of a mortal. The familiar companions of Jesus of Nazareth conversed with their friend and countryman, who, in all the actions of rational and animal life, appeared of the same species with themselves. His progress from infancy to youth and manhood was marked by a regular increase in mature and wisdom; and after a painful agony of mind and body, he expired on the cross. He lived and died for the service of mankind; but the life and death of Socrates had likewise been devoted to the cause of religion and justice; and although the Stoic or the hero may disdain the humble virtues of Jesus, the tears which he shed over his friend and country may be esteemed the purest evidence of his humanity. The miracles of the Gospel could not astonish a people who held with intrepid faith the more splendid prodigies of the Oriental law. The prophets of ancient days had cured diseases, raised the dead, divided the sea, stopped the sun, and advanced to heaven in a fiery chariot; and the metaphorical style of the Hebrews might ascribe to a saint and martyr the adoptive title of Son or God.

Yet in the insufficient creed of the Nazarenes and the Ebionites, a distinction is faintly noticed between the heretics, who confounded the generation of Christ in the common order of nature, and the less guilty schismatics, who revered the virginity of his mother, and concluded the aid of an earthly father. The incredulity of the former was counterbalanced by the visible circumstances of his birth, the legal marriage of his reputed parents, Joseph and Mary, and his literal claim to the kingdom of David and the inheritance of Judah. But the secret and authentic history has been recorded in several copies of the Gospel according to St. Matthew, which these sectaries long preserved in the original Hebrew, as the sole evidence of their faith. The natural suspicions of the husband, conscious of his own chastity, were dispelled by the assurance (in a dream) that his wife was pregnant of the Holy Ghost; and as this distant and domestic prodigy could not fall under the personal observation of the historians, he must have listened to the same voice which dictated to Isaiah the future conception of a virgin. The son of a virgin, generated by the ineffable operation of the Holy Spirit, was a creature without example or resemblance, superior in every attribute of mind and body to the children of Adam. Since the introduction of the Greek or Chaldean philosophy, the Jews were persuaded of the pre-existence, transmigration, and immortality of souls; and Providence was justified by a supposition, that they were confined in their earthly prisons, to expiate the sins which they had contracted in a former state. But the degrees of purity and corruption are almost immeasurable. It might be fairly presumed that the most sublime and virtuous of human spirits was infused into the offspring of Mary and the Holy Ghost; that his abatement was the result of his voluntary choice; and that the object of his mission was to purify, not his own, but the sins of the world. On his return to his native skins, he received the immense reward of his obedience; the everlasting kingdom of the Messiah, which had been darkly foretold by the prophets, under the eulogious images of peace, of conquest, and of dominion. Omnipotence could enlarge the human faculties of Christ to the extent of human nature; his body could be made up of His flesh and His bones; He could walk and talk and live in the form of a man; He could deliver man from satanic slavery and misery. He could bestow grace and glory upon the meek and poor; He could break the gates of hell; He could ascend to heaven, bring back His garments, and reign in the likeness of God; He could manifest the presence of the Father; He could establish the invisible church, and create the visible; He could triumph over the world and the devil; He could expunge all sin from the surface of the earth.
the Jehovah of Israel, the Creator of this lower world, was a rebellious, or at least an ignorant, spirit. The Son of God descended upon earth to abolish his temple and his law; and, for the accomplishment of this salutary end, he dejectiously transferred to his own person the hope and prediction of a temporal Messiah.

One of the most subtle disputants of the Manichean school has pressed the danger and incertitude of supposing that the God of the Christians, in the state of an human fetus, emerged at the end of nine months from a feminine womb. The pious horror of his antagonists provoked them to declare all sensual circumstances of conception and delivery; to maintain, that the divinity passed through Mary like a sunshine through a plate of glass; and to assert, that the seal of her virginity remained unbroken, even at the moment when she became the mother of Christ. But the rashness of these concessions has encouraged a milder sentiment of those Docetes, who taught, not that Christ was a phantom, but that he was clothed with an impassible and incorruptible body. Such, indeed, in the more orthodox system, he has acquired since his resurrection, and such must have always possessed, if it were capable of pervading, without resistance or injury, the density of intermediate matter. Devoid of its most essential properties, it might be exempt from the attributes and infinites of the flesh. A form that could increase from an invisible point to its full maturity, a child that could attain the stature of perfect manhood without deriving any nourishment from the ordinary sources, might continue to exist without requiring a daily waste by a daily supply of external matter. Jesus might share the repasts of his disciples without being subject to the calls of thirst or hunger; and his virgin purity was never assailed by the involuntary stains of sensual concupiscence. Of a body thus singularly constituted, a question would arise, by what means, and of what materials, it was originally fashioned; and our sounder theology is startled by an answer which was not peculiar to the Gnostics, that both the form and the substance proceeded from the divine essence.

The idea of pure and absolute spirit is a refinement of modern philosophy; the incorruptible essence, ascribed by the ancients to human souls, celestial beings, and even the Deity himself, does not exclude the notion of extended space; and their imagination was satisfied with a subtle nature of air, or fire, or action, incomparably more perfect than the grossness of the material world. If we define the place, we must describe the figure, of the Deity. Our experience, perhaps our vanity, represents the powers of reason and virtue under a human form. The Anthropomorphies, who swarmed among the monks of Egypt and the Catholics of Africa, could produce the express declaration of Scripture, that

10 Apostolic office in early constitution, episcopal jurisdiction, bishops, Laodicea, c. 40. The sects of Gnostics in the fourteenth, and even the fifth century. St. John, 8001. 903. 904. The sects of Nestorius, who had obtained the vestments both in the world (2 John, 2. 1-3).
man was made after the image of his Creator. 19

The venerable Sermon, one of the saints of the Nitrian desert, relinquished, with many a tear, his dwelling-rooms; and, bewailed, like an infant, his unlucky conversion, which had stolen away his God, and left his mind without any visible object of faith or devotion. 12

III. Such were the fleeting shadows of the Doctes. A more substantial, though less simple hypothesis, was contrived by Cerinthus of Asia, 16 who dared to oppose the last of the apostles. Placed on the confines of the Jewish and Gentile world, he laboured to reconcile the Gnostic with the Ebionite, by confessing in the same Messiah the supernatural union of a man and a God; and this mystic doctrine was adopted with many fanciful improvements by Carpocratians, Basilides, and Valentine, 15 the heretics of the Egyptian school. In their eyes, Jesus of Nazareth was a mere mortal, the legitimate son of Joseph and Mary; but he was the best and wisest of the human race, selected as the worthy instrument to restore upon earth the worship of the true and supreme Deity. When he was baptised in the Jordan, the Cursi, the first of the sect, the Son of God himself, descended on Jesus in the form of a dove, to inhabit his mind, and direct his actions during the allotted period of his ministry. When the Messiah was delivered into the hands of the Jews, the Christ, an immortal and unchangeable being, reskied his earthly tabernacle, flew back to the incalculable world of spirits, and left the solitary Jesus to suffer, to complain, and to expire. But the justice and generosity of such a desertion are strongly questionable; and the fate of an innocent martyr, at first impelled, and at length abandoned, by his divine companion, might provoke the pity and indignation of the profane.

Their murmurs were variously silenced by the sectaries who espoused and modified the double system of Cerinthus. It was alleged, that when Jesus was nailed to the cross, he was endowed with a miraculous anody of mind and body, which rendered him insensible of his apparent sufferings. It was affirmed that these martyrdoms, though real pangs, would be abundantly repaid by the temporal reign of a thousand years reserved for the Messiah in his kingdom of the New Jerusalem. It was intimated, that if he suffered, he deserved to suffer; that human nature is never absolutely perfect; and that the cross and passion might serve to expiate the venial transgressions of the son of Joseph, before his mysterious union with the Son of God. 20

IV. All those who believe the immortality of the soul, a sensuous and noble tenet, must confess, from their present experience, the incomprehensible union of mind and matter. A similar union is not inconsistent with a much higher, or even with the highest, degree of mental faculties; and the incarnation of an angel or archangel, the most perfect of created spirits, does not involve any positive contradiction or absurdity. In the age of religious freedom, which was determined by the council of Nice, the dignity of Christ was measured by private judgment, according to the indefinite rule of Scripture, or reason, or tradition. But when his pure and proper divinity had been established on the ruins of Arius, the faith of the Catholics triumphed on the edge of a precipice where it was impossible to recede, dangerous to stand, dreadful to fall; and the manifold inconveniences of their creed were aggravated by the subtle charlatanry of their theology. They hesitated to pronounce; and God himself, the second person of an equal and consubstantial Trinity, was manifested in the flesh; 21 that a being who pervades the universe had been confined in the womb of Mary; that his eternal duration had been marked by the days, and months, and years, of human existence; in the Almighty had been sacrificed and crowned; that his impossible essence had felt pain and anguish; that his omniscience was not exempt from ignorance; and that the source of life and immortality expired on Mount Calvary. These alarming consequences were not confirmed with unblushing simplicity by Apollinaris, 22 bishop of Laodicea, and the church of the immortals of the church of the church. The ruin of a learned grammarian, who was skilled in all the sciences of Greece; eloquence, erudition, and philosophy, conclusives in the volumes of Apollinaris, were humbly devoted to the service of religion.

The worthy friend of Athanasius, the worthy antagonist of Julian, he bravely wrestled with the Arians and Polytheists; and though he
affected the rigour of geometrical demonstration, his commentaries revealed the literal and allegorical sense of the Scriptures. A mystery, which had long floated in the recesses of popular belief, was defined by his puerile diligence in a technical form; and he first proclaimed the memorable words, "One incorrupt nature of Christ," which are still in vogue in the churches of Asia, Egypt, and Ethiopia. He taught that the Godhead was united or mingled with the body of a man; and that the Logos, the eternal wisdom, supplied in the flesh the place and office of an human soul. Yet as the profoundest doctor had been terrified at his own madness, Apollinaris was heard to utter some faint accents of excuse and explanation. He acquiesced in the old distinction of the Greek philosophers, between the rational and sensitive soul of man; that he might reserve the Logos for intellectual functions, and employ the subordinate human principle in the meaner actions of animal life. With the moderate Diodates, he revered Mary as the spiritual, rather than as the carnal, mother of Christ, whose body either came from heaven, impossible and incorruptible, or was absorbed, and as it were transformed, into the essence of the Deity. The system of Apollinaris was strenuously encountered by the Arians and Syrian divines, whose schools were honoured by the names of Basil, Gregory, and Chrysostom, and stained by those of Diodates, Theodotus, and Nestorius. But the person of the high bishop of Laodicea, his character and dignity, remained inviolate; and his rivals, since we may not suspect them of the weakness of insensibility, were astonished, perhaps, by the novelty of the argument, and diffident of the final sentence of the Catholic church. Her judgment at length inclined in their favour; the heresy of Apollinaris was condemned, and the separate congregations of his disciples were proscribed by the Imperial laws. But his principles were secretly entertained in the monasteries of Egypt, and his enemies felt the hatred of Theophilus and Cyril, the successive patriarchs of Alexandria.

V. The groveling Ebionite, and the phantasmal Diodates, were rejected and forgotten; the recent seal against the errors of Apollinaris reduced the Catholic in a seeming agreement with the double nature of Christ. But instead of a temporary and occasional alliance, they established, and six still embrace, the substantial, indissoluble, and everlasting union of a perfect God with a perfect man, of the second person of the Trinity with a reasonable soul and human flesh. In the beginning of the fifth century, the unity of the two natures was the prevailing doctrine of the church. On all sides, it was confessed, that the mode of their co-existence could neither be represented by our ideas, nor expressed by our language. Yet a secret and invisible discord was cherished, between those who were most apprehensive of confounding, and those who were most fearful of separating, the divinity, and the humanity, of Christ. Impelled by religious frenzy, they fled with all rigor from the error which they mutually deemed most destructive of truth and salvation. On either hand they were anxious to guard, they were jealous to defend, the union and the distinction of the two natures, and to invent such forms of speech, such symbols of doctrine, as were least susceptible of doubt or ambiguity. The poverty of ideas and language tempted them to ransack ancient nature for every possible comparison, and each comparison masked their fancy in the explanation of an incomparable mystery. In the poetic microscope, an atom is lengthened to a monster, and each party was skilful to exaggerate the absurd or impious conclusions that might be extorted from the principles of their adversaries. To escape from each other, they wandered through many a dark and devious thicket, till they were astonished by the horrid phantoms of Cerinthus and Apollinaris, who guarded the opposite issues of the theological labyrinth. As soon as they beheld the twilight of sense and heresy, they started, measured back their steps, and were again involved in the glums of impenetrable orthodoxy. To purge themselves from the guilt or reproach of damnable error, they disavowed their consequences, explained their principles, excused their indiscretions, and unanimously pronounced the sounds of concord and fidelity. Yet a latent and almost invisible spark still lurked amongst the embers of controversy: by the breath of prejudice and passion, it was quickly kindled to a mighty flame, and the verbal disputes of the Oriental sects have shaken the pillars of the church and state.

The name of Cyril of Alexandria is famous in controversial story, and the title of ambi is a mark that his opinions and his party have finally prevailed. In the house of his uncle, the archbishop Theophilus, he imbued the orthodox lessons of zeal and devotion, and five years of his youth were profitably spent in the adjacent monasteries of Nitria. Under the tuition of the abbot Scrapiunus, he applied himself to ecclesiastical studies with such indefatigable ardour, that in the course of one sleepless night he might have perused the four Gospels, the Catholic epistles, and the epistle to the Romans. Origen he detected; but the writings of Clement and Dionysius of Alexandria and Basil, were continually in his hands; by the theory and practice of dispute, his faith was confirmed and his wit was sharpened; he extended round his cell the cubicles of scholastic theology, and meditated the words of allegory and metaphysics, whose remains, in seven verse folios, now peacefully slumber by the side of their rivals. Cyril prayed and fasted in the desert, but his thoughts (it is the reproach
III. Such were the fleeting shadows of the Decretes. A more sublime, though less simple hypothesis, was contrived by Cerinthus of Asia, who dared to oppose the last of the apostles.

Placed on the confines of the Jewish and Gentile world, he laboured to reconcile the Gnostic with the Ebionite, by confessing in the same Messiah the supernatural union of a man and God; and this mystic doctrine was adopted with many fanciful improvements by Carpocrates, Basilides, and Valentine, the heretics of the Egyptian school. In their eyes, Jesus of Nazareth was a mere mortal, the legitimate son of Joseph and Mary; but he was the most and least of the human race, selected as the worthy instrument to restore upon earth the worship of the true and supreme Deity. When he was baptized in the Jordan, the Castor, the first of the moon, the Son of God himself, descended on Jesus in the form of a dove, to inhabit his mind, and direct his actions during the allotted period of his ministry. When the Messiah was delivered into the hands of the Jews, the Christ, an immortal and immutable being, foresees his earthly tabernacle, flew back to the serpents or world of spirits, and left the solitary Jesus to suffer, to complain, and to expire. But the justice and generosity of such a desertion are strongly questionable; and the fate of an innocent martyr, at first impelled, and at length abandoned, by his divine companion, might provoke the pity and indignation of the profane.

Their murmurs were variously silenced by the sectaries who exposed and modified the double system of Cerinthus. It was alleged, that when Jesus was raised to the cross, he was endowed with a miraculous anointing of mind and body, which rendered him insensible of his apparent sufferings. It was affirmed that these momentary, though real pangs, would be abundantly repaid by the temporal reign of a thousand years reserved for the Messiah in the kingdom of the New Jerusalem. It was intimated, that if he suffered, he deserved to suffer; that human nature is never absolutely perfect; and that the cross and passion might serve to expiate the venial transgressions of the son of Joseph, before his mysterious union with the Son of God.

IV. All those who believe the immateriality of the soul, a species and noble heap, most revered, from their present experience, the incomprehensible union of mind and matter. A similar union is not inconsistent with a much higher, or even with the highest, degree of mental faculties; and the incarnation of an angel or archangel, the most perfect of created spirits, does not involve any positive contradiction or absurdity. In the age of religious freedom, which was determined by the council of Nice, the dignity of Christ was measured by private judgment, according to the indefinite rule of Scripture, or reason, or tradition. But when his pure and proper divinity had been established on the ruins of Arius, the faith of the Catholics triumphed on the edge of a precipice where it was impossible to recede, dangerous to stand, dreadful to fall; and the manifold inconveniences of their creed were aggravated by the sublime character of their theology. They hesitated to pronounce that God himself, the second person of an equal and consubstantial Trinity, was manifested in the flesh; that a being who pervades the universe had been confined in the womb of Mary; that his eternal duration had been marked by days, and months, and years, of human existence; that the Almighty had been scourged and crucified; that his impassible essence had felt pain and anguish; that his omniscience was not exempt from ignorance; and that the source of life and immortality expired on Mount Calvary. These alarming considerations were affirmed with unshaken simplicity by Apollinaris, bishop of Laodicea, and one of the luminaries of the church. The son of a learned gymnasiarch, he was skilled in all the sciences of Greece; eloquence, erudition, and philosophy, comprehended in the volumes of Apollinaris, were humbly devoted to the service of religion. The worthy friend of Athenaeus, the worthy antagonist of Julian, he bravely wreathed with the Ariotes and Polytheists; and though he

and fell into a sensitive soul and an insomnious body. 3. Even thus body and soul do not resemble each other in an infinite number of properties. 4. I am not sure whether the son of God was made subject to weakness and mortality. But I must admit whether the Latin transcribers understood, and whether Jesus and the Virgin Mary were in a human soul and body, and whether Jesus and God were in a human soul and body. 5. Hence the immortal Christ was said to have a human soul and body, and the Virgin Mary was said to have a human soul and body. 6. The view of the universal soul and body was received by our modern historians. The whole soul was accorded to the Virgin Mary, or to the Virgin Mary and the Virgin Mary. The universal soul, as a human soul, was the soul of the Virgin Mary, and was probably united in the same and the same. 7. In this view the universal soul and body was received by our modern historians. The whole soul was accorded to the Virgin Mary, or to the Virgin Mary and the Virgin Mary. The universal soul, as a human soul, was the soul of the Virgin Mary, and was probably united in the same and the same. 8. In this view the universal soul and body was received by our modern historians. The whole soul was accorded to the Virgin Mary, or to the Virgin Mary and the Virgin Mary. The universal soul, as a human soul, was the soul of the Virgin Mary, and was probably united in the same and the same. 9. In this view the universal soul and body was received by our modern historians. The whole soul was accorded to the Virgin Mary, or to the Virgin Mary and the Virgin Mary. The universal soul, as a human soul, was the soul of the Virgin Mary, and was probably united in the same and the same. 10. In this view the universal soul and body was received by our modern historians. The whole soul was accorded to the Virgin Mary, or to the Virgin Mary and the Virgin Mary. The universal soul, as a human soul, was the soul of the Virgin Mary, and was probably united in the same and the same.
affected the rigour of geometrical demonstration, his commentaries revealed the literal and allegorical sense of the Scriptures. A mystery, which had long festered in the looseness of popular belief, was defined by his perversity with the diligence in a technical form; and he first proclaimed the memorable words, “One incarnate nature of Christ,” which are still re-schooled with hostile clamours in the churches of Asia, Egypt, and Ethiopia. He taught that the Godhead was united with the body of a man; and that the Logos, the eternal wisdom, supplied in the flesh the place and office of an human soul. Yet as the profound secter had been terrified at his own wickedness, Apollinaris was hearken to menace some faint accents of excuse and explanation. He proceeded in the old distinction of the Greek philosophers, between the rational and sensitive soul of man; that he might reserve the Logos for intellectual functions, and employ the subordinate human principle in the meaner actions of animal life. With the moderate Decrees, he revered Mary as the spiritual, rather than as the carnal, mother of Christ, whose body either came from heaven, impossible and incorruptible, or was absorbed, and as it were transformed, into the essence of the Deity. The system of Apollinaris was strenuously encountered by the Asiatic and Syrian divines, whose schools are honoured by the names of Basil, Gregory, and Chrysostom, and stained by those of Diodorus, Theodoret, and Nesterian. But the person of the aged bishop of Landseer, his character and dignity, remained inviolate; and his rivals, since we may not suspect them of the weakness of deliberation, were astonished, perhaps, by the novelty of the argument, and dissident of the final sentences of the Catholic church. Her judgment at length inclined in their favour; the heresy of Apollinaris was condemned, and the separate congregations of his disciples were proscribed by the Imperial laws. But his principles were secretly entertained in the monasteries of Egypt; and his enemies felt the hatred of Theophilus and Cyril, the successive patriarchs of Alexandria.

V. The prevailing Ebionite, and the phantastic Decrees were rejected and forgotten; the recent zeal against the errors of Apollinaris reduced the Catholics to a seeming agreement with the double nature of Christ. But instead of a temporary and occasional alliance, they established, and we still embrace, the substantial, indestructible, and everlasting union of a perfect God with a perfect man, of the second person of the Trinity with a reasonable soul and human flesh. In the beginning of the fifth century, the unity of the two natures was the prevailing doctrine of the church. On all sides, it was confessed, that the mode of their co-existence could neither be represented by our images, nor expressed by our language. Yet a secret and incurable discord was cherished, between those who were most fearful of separating, the divinity, and the humanity, of Christ. Impelled by pious fury, they fled with excessive haste from the error which they mutually deemed most destructive of truth and salvation. On either hand they were anxious to guard; they were jealous to defend, the union and the distinction of the two natures; and to invent such forms of speech, such symbols of doctrine, as were least susceptible of doubt or ambiguity. The poverty of human language tempted them to ramkast art and nature for every possible comparison, and each comparison raised their fancy in the explanation of an incomparable mystery. In the polemic microscope, an atom is enlarged to a monster; and each party was skilful to exaggerate the absurd or impious conclusions that might be extorted from the principles of their adversaries. To escape from such other, they wandered through many a dark and devious thicket, till they were astonished by the horrid phantoms of Cerinthus and Apollinaris, who regarded the opposite issues of the theological labyrinth. As soon as they beheld the twilight of sense and bypey, they started, measured back their steps, and were again involved in the gloom of impenetrable orthodoxy. To purge themselves from the guilt or reproach of damnable error, they disavowed; their consequences, explained their principles, excused their indulgences, and unanimously pronounced the sounds of concord and faith. Yet a latent and almost invisible spark still lurked among the embers of controversy; by the breath of prejudice and passion, it was quickly kindled to a mighty flame, and the verbal disputes of the Oriental sects have shaken the pillars of the church and state.

The name of Cyril of Alexandria is famous in controversial story, and the title of men is a mark that his opinions and his party have finally prevailed. In the house of his uncle, the archbishop Theophilus, he imbued the orthodox lessons of zeal and devotion, and five years of his youth were profitably spent in the adjacent monasteries of Nitra. Under the tuition of the abbot Serafin, he applied himself to ecclesiastical studies with such indefatigable ardour, that in the course of one sleepless night he has perused the four Gospels, the Catholic epistles, and the epistle to the Romans. Origin he detected; but the writings of Clements and Dianysius, of Athanasius and Basil, were continually in his hands; by the theory and practice of dispute, his faith was confirmed and his wit was sharpened; he extended round his cell the colors of scholastic theology, and meditated the works of allegory and metaphysics, whose remains, in seven verse fonicia, now peaceably slumber by the side of their rivals. Cyril prayed and fasted in the desert, but his thoughts (it is the reproach
of a friend, were still fixed on the world; and the call of Theophilus, who summoned him to the tumult of cities and synods, was too readily obeyed by the aspiring hermit. With the approach of his uncle, he assumed the office, and acquired the fame, of a popular preacher. His comic person adorned the pulpit, the harmony of his voice resounded in the cathedral, his friends were stationed to lead or second the applause of the congregation, and the bawdy songs of the serjeans preserved his discourses, which, in their effect, though not in their composition, might be compared with those of the Athenian orators. The death of Theophilus expanded and realised the hopes of his nephew. The clergy of Alexandria was divided; the soldiers, and their general supported the claims of the archdeacon; but a restless multitude, with voices and with hands, asserted the cause of their favourite; and, after a period of thirty-nine years, Cyril was seated on the throne of Athanasius. The praise was not unworthy of a man, who from the court, and at the head of an immense capital, the patriarch, as he was now styled, of Alexandria had gradually usurped the state and authority of a civil magistrate. The public and private charities of the city were managed by his discretion; his voice inflamed or appeased the passions of the multitude; his commands were blindly obeyed by his numerous and fanatical partisans, familiarised in their daily office with scenes of death; and the prospects of Egypt were arched or provoked by the temporal power of Christ's Pontiffs. Ardent in the prosecution of heresy, Cyril summarily opened his reign by oppressing the Novatians, the most innocent and harmless of the sectaries. The intrusion of their religious worship appeared in his eyes a just and meritorious act; and he consecrated their holy vessels, without apprehending the guilt of idolatry. The toleration, and even the privileges of the Jews, who had multiplied to the number of forty thousand, were secured by the laws of the Caesars and Ptolemies, and a long prescription of seven hundred years since the foundation of Alexandria. Without any legal sentence, without any royal mandate, the patriarch, at the dawn of day, led a sedulous multitude to the attack of the synagogues. Unarmed and unprepared, the Jews were incapable of resistance; their houses of prayer were levelled with the ground, and the episcopal warrior, after rewarding his troops with the plunder of their goods, expelled from the city the remnant of the unbelieving nation. Perhaps he might plead the innocence of their pros- perty, and their deadly hatred of the Christians, whose blood they had recently shed in a miliary or accidental tumult. Such crimes would have deserved the animadversion of the magistrate; but in this promiscuous outrage, the innocent were confounded with the guilty, and Alexandria was impoverished by the loss of a wealthy and industrious colony. The soul of Cyril exposed him to the penalties of the Julian law; but in a feeble government, and a superstitions age, he was secure of impunity, and even of praise. Orestes complained; but his just complaints were too quickly forgotten by the ministers of Theodosius, and too deeply remembered by a priest who affected to pardon, and continued to hate, the prefect of Egypt. As he passed through the streets, his chariot was assaulted by a band of five hundred of the Nitrian monks; his guards fled from the wild beasts of the desert; his protestations that he was a Christian and a Catholic, were answered by a volley of stones, and the face of Orestes was covered with blood. The loyal citizens of Alexandria hastened to his rescue; he instantly satisfied his justice and revenge against the monk by whose hand he had been wounded, and Ammonius expired under the rod of the lictor. At the command of Cyril his body was raised from the ground, and transported in solemn procession, to the cathedral; the name of Ammonius was changed to that of Thomas the wondrous; his tomb was decorated with the trophies of martyrdom, and the patriarch ascended the pulpit to celebrate the magnanimity of an assassin and a rebel. Such honours might irritate the faithful to combat and die under the banners of the saint; and he soon prompted, or accepted, the sacrifice of a virgin, who professed the religion of the Greeks, and cultivated the friendship of Orestes. Hypatia, the daughter of Theon the mathematician, was initiated in her father's studies: her learned commentators have elucidated the geometry of Apollonius and Diocleides, and she publicly taught, both at Athens and Alexandria, the philosophy of Plato and Aristotle. In the bloom of beauty, and in the maturity of wisdom, the modest maid refused her lovers and instructed her disciples; the persons most illustrious for their rank or merit were impatient to visit the female philosopher; and Cyril beheld, with a jealous eye, the gorgeous train of horses and slaves who preceded the door of her academy. A rumour was spread among the Christians that the death of Theon was the only obstacle to the reconciliation of the proconsul and the archbishop; and that obstacle was speedily removed. On a fatal day, in the holy season of Lent, Hypatia was torn from her chariot, stripped naked, dragged to the shd. The calumny of violence, shared, and with the promises of the most venerable personages to the effect that she should save the precious manuscripts which she had collected from all quarters, and that she should observe the laws and customs of the Christians, were continued and insinuated. See the Theodorum, ii. cap. v. p. 127. The Bollandists, Novalis, lxxxvi. cap. 44. The Sermones, ii. cap. 71. The Sermones, ii. cap. 70. She was a skillful painter, and her diligence with her manuscripts from the library of Novatus, and her knowledge of all the authors of antiquity, enabled her to write the history of her own times. Indeed, a copy of her last work is preserved by the Itinerarium, cap. 8. She was not so much a writer as a teacher, and the highest praise which can be given to her is, that she taught true and sound philosophy. See the Itinerarium, cap. 8. See the Itinerarium, cap. 8. See the Itinerarium, cap. 8. See the Itinerarium, cap. 8.
church, and inhumanly butchered by the hands of Peter the reader, and a troop of savage and merciless fanatics; her flesh was scraped from her bones with sharp oyster-shells, and her quivering limbs were delivered to the flames. The just progress of enquiry and punishment was stayed by reasonable gifts; but the murder of Hypatia has imprinted an indelible stain on the character and religion of Cyril of Alexandria. 164

Superstition, perhaps, would more gently expiate the blood of a virgin, than the blinding of a saint; and Cyril had accompanied his uncle to the iniquitous synod of the Oak. When the memory of Chrysostom was restored and consecrated, the nephew of Theophilus, at the head of a dying faction, still maintained the justice of his sentence; nor was it till after a tedious delay and an obstinate resistance, that he yielded to the consent of the Catholic world. 165 His enmity to the Byzantine pontiffs 166 was a sense of interest, not a Sally of passion; he envied their fortunate station in the sunshine of the Imperial court; and he shamed their upstart ambition, which oppressed the metropolitans of Europe and Asia, invaded the provinces of Antioch and Alexandria, and measured their diocese by the limits of the empire. The long moderation of Atticus, the mild usurper of the throne of Chrysostom, suspended the animosity of the Eastern patriarchy; but Cyril was at length awakened by the ostentation of a rival more worthy of his esteem and hatred. After the short and troubled reign of Simplicius, bishop of Constantinople, the factions of the clergy and people were appeased by the choice of the emperor, who, on this occasion, consulted the voice of fame, and invited the merit of a stranger. Nestorius, 167 a native of Germanicia, and a monk of Antioch, was recommended by the austerity of his life, and the eloquence of his sermons, but the first business which he pleaded before the devil Theodorus betrayed the swinishness and impatience of his zeal. "Give me, O Cesar," he exclaimed, "give me the earth璞ured of heretics, and I will give you in exchange the kingdom of heaven." Exterminate with me the heretics; and with you I will exterminate the Persians." On the fifth day, as if the treaty had been already signed, the patriarch of Constantinople discovered, surprised, and attacked a secret conventicle of the Arians; they preferred death to submission; the flames that were kindled by their despair, soon spread to the neighbouring houses, and the triumph of Nestorius was clouded by the name of iniquity. On either side of the Hellespont his episcopal vigour imposed a rigid formulary of faith and discipline; a chronological error concerning the festival of Easter was punished as an offence against the church and state. Lydia and Caria, Sardis and Miletus, were purified with the blood of the obstinate Quartodecimans; and the edict of the emperor, or rather of the patriarch, enumerates three and twenty degrees and denominations in the guilt and punishment of heresy. 168 But the sword of persecution, which Nestorius so fiercely wielded, was soon turned against his own breast. Religion was the pretext; but, in the judgment of a contemporary saint, ambition was the genuine motive of episcopal warfare. 169

In the Syrian school, Nestorius has been taught to abhor the confusion of the two natures, and wisely to discriminate the humanity of his master Christ from the divinity of the Lord Jesus. 170 The Blessed Virgin he revered as the mother of Christ, but his ears were offended with the rash and recent title of mother of God, which had been insensibly adopted since the origin of the Arian controversy. From the pulpit of Constantinople, a friend of the patriarch, and afterwards the patriarch himself, repeatedly preached against the use, or the abuse, of a word 171 unknown to the apostles, unauthorised by the church, and which could only tend to alarm the timorous, to mislead the simple, to amuse the profane, and to justify, by a seeming resemblance, the old genealogy of Olympus. In his calmer moments Nestorius confessed, that it might be tolerated or excused by the union of the two natures, and the communication of their 172 kinship; but he was exasperated, by contradiction, to disclaim the worship of a new-born, an infant Deity, to draw his inadequate similes from the conjugal or civil partnerships of life, and to describe the manhood of Christ as the robe, the

164 "Persians." On the fifth day, as if the treaty had been already signed, the patriarch of Constantinople discovered, surprised, and attacked a secret conventicle of the Arians: they preferred death to submission; the flames that were kindled by their despair, soon spread to the neighbouring houses, and the triumph of Nestorius was clouded by the name of iniquity. On either side of the Hellespont his episcopal vigour imposed a rigid formulary of faith and discipline; a chronological error concerning the festival of Easter was punished as an offence against the church and state. Lydia and Caria, Sardis and Miletus, were purified with the blood of the obstinate Quartodecimans; and the edict of the emperor, or rather of the patriarch, enumerates three and twenty degrees and denominations in the guilt and punishment of heresy. But the sword of persecution, which Nestorius so fiercely wielded, was soon turned against his own breast. Religion was the pretext; but, in the judgment of a contemporary saint, ambition was the genuine motive of episcopal warfare.

165 In the Syrian school, Nestorius has been taught to abhor the confusion of the two natures, and wisely to discriminate the humanity of his master Christ from the divinity of the Lord Jesus. The Blessed Virgin he revered as the mother of Christ, but his ears were offended with the rash and recent title of mother of God, which had been insensibly adopted since the origin of the Arian controversy. From the pulpit of Constantinople, a friend of the patriarch, and afterwards the patriarch himself, repeatedly preached against the use, or the abuse, of a word unknown to the apostles, unauthorised by the church, and which could only tend to alarm the timorous, to mislead the simple, to amuse the profane, and to justify, by a seeming resemblance, the old genealogy of Olympus. In his calmer moments Nestorius confessed, that it might be tolerated or excused by the union of the two natures, and the communication of their kinship; but he was exasperated, by contradiction, to disclaim the worship of a new-born, an infant Deity, to draw his inadequate similes from the conjugal or civil partnerships of life, and to describe the manhood of Christ as the robe, the
instrument; the tabernacle of his Godhead. At these blasphemous sounds, the pillars of the sanctuary were shaken. The unsuccessful competitors of Nestorius indulged their pious or personal resentment; the Byzantine clergy was secretly displeased with the intrusion of a stranger; whatever is superstitions or absurd, might stain the protection of the monks; and the people was interested in the glory of their virgin patrones. The sermon of the archbishop, and the service of the altar, were disturbed by seditious clamour; his authority and doctrine were renounced by separate congregations; every wind scattered round the empire the leaves of controversy; and the voice of the combatants in a sonorous theatre re-sounded in the cells of Palestine and Egypt. It was the duty of Cyril to enlighten the zeal and ignorance of his innumerable monks; in the school of Alexandria, he had imbued and professed the incarnature of one nature; and the successor of Athanasius consulted his pride and ambition, when he rose in arms against another Arian, more formidable and more guilty, on the second throne of the hierarchy. After a short correspondence, in which the rival prelates disputed their hatred in the hollow language of respect and charity, the patriarch of Alexandria denounced to the prince and people, to the East and to the West, the damnable errors of the Byzantine pontiff. From the East, more especially from Antioch, he obtained the ambiguous consents of toleration and silence, which were addressed to both parties while they favoured the cause of Nestorius. But the Vatican received with open arms the messengers of Egypt. The vanity of Celestine was flattered by the appeal; and the partial version of a monk decided the faith of the pope, who, with his Latin clergy, was ignorant of the language, the arts, and the theology of the Greeks. At the head of an Italian synod, Celestine weighed the merits of the cause, approved the creed of Cyril, condemned the sentiments and Jessament of Nestorius, degraded the heretic from his episcopal dignity, allowed a respite of ten days for recantation and penance, and delegated to his enemy the execution of this rash and illegal sentence. But the patriarch of Alexandria, whilst he darted the thunders of a god, exposed the errors and passions of a mortal; and his twelve theologians still torture the orthodox slaves, who adore the memory of a saint, without forfeiting their allegiance to the synod of Chalcedon. These bold assertions are indelibly stained with the colours of the Apollinarian heresy; but the serious, and perhaps the sincere, professions of Nestorius have satisfied the wiser and less partial theologians of the present times. Yet neither the emperor nor the primate of the East were disposed to obey the mandate of an Italian priest; and a synod of the Catholic or rather of the Greek church, was unanimously demanded as the sole remedy that could appease or decide this ecclesiastical quarrel. Ephesus, on all sides accessible by sea and land, was chosen for the place, the festival of Pentecost for the day, of the meeting; a writ of summons was despatched to each metropolitan, and a guard was stationed to protect and confine the fathers till they should settle the mysteries of heaven, and the faith of the earth. Nestorius appeared not as a criminal, but as a judge; he depended on the weight rather than on the number of his prelates, and his sturdy slaves from the halls of Zeuxippos were armed for every service of injury or defence. But his adversary Cyril was more powerful in the weft, both of the flesh and of the spirit. Disobedient to the latter, or at least to the meaning, of the royal summons, he was attended by fifty Egyptian bishops, who expected from their patriarch and the inspiration of the Holy Ghost. He had contracted an intimate alliance with Memnon, bishop of Ephesus. The despotic primate of Asia disposed of the ready succours of thirty or forty episcopal votes; a crowd of peasants, the slaves of the church, was pressed into the city to support with blood and clamour a metaphysical argument; and the people solemnly assented the honour of the Virgin, whose body reposed within the walls of Ephesus. The fleet which had transported Cyril from Alexandria was laden with the riches of Egypt; and he disembarked a numerous body of mariners, slaves, and fanatics, exulting with blind obedience under the banner of St. Mark and the mother of God. The fathers and even the guards of the council were armed by this martial array; the adversaries of Cyril and Mary were insulted in the streets, or threatened in their houses; his eloquence and littleness made a daily increase in the number of his adherents; and the Egyptian soon computed that he might command the attendance and the voices of two hundred bishops. But the author of the twelve anathemas foresees and dreaded the opposition of John of Antioch, who, with a small, though respectable, train of metropolitan and divines, was advancing by slow journeys from the distant capital of the East. Impatience of a delay which he stigmatised as voluntary

---

43 See Eusebius, C. P. (Christiau), I. p. 30, An. 44 Cyril, Consec. v. I. p. 415. Then were seen, without a suspicion of the opposition of Theodore of Ctesiphon, the emperor's adviser. I studied to avow the error of our sympathy with which Nestorius was accused to the effect of the Vite of the Sibyl through the centuries. 45 Such as the patriarchs Eusebius (early in the 4th century), Leontius, Lycias, Cyprian, Zephyrinus, Bishop of Carthage (A.D. 199 to 210), Novatus, Bishop of Lepcis (A.D. 199 to 226), and Marcianus, Bishop of Carthage (A.D. 204 to 220). Nestorian controversy continued in the East. According to a legend such as another one, see 6.31.543, and 4.22.41.2. The title and extent of the Nestorian controversy, see the

---

46 The origin and progress of the Nestorian controversy, is the

---

47 The decisions of the New Old Council were ignored of the 12th and 14th century. The tradition of Ephesus is adopted in the Council of Trullo (A.D. 692). The original text that of Briche (A.D. 692). The remaining bishops were aided by the pope, and the emperor, the final result of her synod, was the exclusion of the Nestorian, and the renewal of the condemnation of the Council of Ephesus (A.D. 431). The text of the Nestorian controversy is the
Cyril announced the opening of the synod sixteen days after the festival of Pentecost. Nestorius, who depended on the near approach of his Eastern friends, persisted, like his predecessor Claudio, to disclaim the jurisdiction, and to disobey the summons, of his enemies: they hastened his trial, and his successor presided in the seat of judgment. Sixty-eight bishops, twenty-two of metropolitan rank, defended his cause by a modest and temperate protest; they were excluded from the councils of their brethren.

Candidly, in the emperor's name, requested a delay of four days; the profane magistrate was driven with outrage and insult from the assembly of the saints. The whole of this momentous transaction was crowded into the compass of a summer's day; the bishops delivered their separate opinions; but the uniformity of style reveals the influence of the hand of a master, who has been accused of corrupting the public evidence of their acts and subscriptions. Without a dissenting voice, they recognised in the epistles of Cyril, the Nicene creed and the doctrine of the fathers; but the partial extracts from the letters and homilies of Nestorius were interrupted by curses and anathemas; and the heretic was degraded from his episcopal and ecclesiastical dignity. The sentence, maliciously inscribed to the new Jodos, was shifted and proclaimed in the streets of Ephesus: the weary prelates, as they issued from the church of the mother of God, were saluted as their champions; and her victory was celebrated by the illuminations, the songs, and the tumult of the night.

On the fifth day, the triumph was clouded by the arrival and indignation of the Eastern bishops.

In a chamber of the inn, before he had wiped the dust from his shoes, John of Antioch gave audience to Candidian the Imperial minister; who related his intellectual efforts to prevent or to annul the hasty violence of the Egyptians. With equal haste and violence, the Oriental synod of fifty bishops degraded Cyril and Memnon from their episcopal honours, excommunicated, in the twelve anathemas, the parent venom of the Apollinarian heresy, and described the Alexandrian primate as a monster, born and educated for the destruction of the church. His throne was distant and inaccessible; but they instantly resolved to bestow on the flock of Ephesus the blessing of a faithful shepherd. By the vigilance of Memnon, the churches were shut against them, and a strong garrison was thrown into the cathedral. The troops, under the command of Candidian, advanced to the assault: the outguards were routed and put to the sword, but the place was impregnable; the besiegers retired; their retreat was pursued by a vigorous sally; they lost their horses, and many of the soldiers were dangerously wounded with clubs and stones. Ephesus, the city of the Virgin, was defiled with rage and clamour, with sedition and blood; the rival synods hurled anathemas and excommunications from their spiritual engines; and the court of Theodosius was perplexed by the adverse and contradictory narratives of the Syrian and Egyptian factions. During a busy period of three months, the emperor tried every method, except the most effectual means of indifferency and contempt, to reconcile this theological quarrel. He attempted to remove or intimidate the leaders by a common sentence of acquittal or condemnation; he invested his representatives at Ephesus with ample power and military force; he summoned from either party eight chosen deputies to a free and candid conference in the neighbourhood of the capital, far from the contagion of popular frenzy. But the Orientals refused to yield, and the Catholics, proud of their numbers and of their Latin allies, rejected all terms of union or toleration. The patience of the meek Theodosius was provoked, and he dissolved in anger this episcopal tumult, which, at the distance of thirteen centuries, assumes the venerable aspect of the third ecumenical council. "God is my witness," said the pious prince, "that I am not the author of this confusion. His providence will discern and punish the guilty. Return to your provinces, and may your private virtues repair the mischief and scandal of your meeting." They returned to their provinces; but the same passions which had distracted the synod of Ephesus were diffused over the Eastern world. After three obstinate and equal campaigns, John of Antioch and Cyril of Alexandria concurred to explain and embrace; but their seeming reunion must be imputed rather to prudence than to reason, to the mutual loathing rather than to the Christian charity of the patriarchs.

The Byzantine pontiff had instilled into the royal ear a baseless prejudice against the character and conduct of his Egyptian rival. An epistle of menace and invective, which accompanied the summons, accused him as a busy, insolent, and envious priest, who perverted the simplicity of the faith, violated the peace of the church and state, and, by his artful and separate addresses to the wife and sister of Theodosius, presumed to suppose, or to scatter, the seeds of discord in the Imperial family. At the stern command of his sovereign, Cyril had repaired to Ephesus,
where he was resisted, threatened, and confounded, by the magistrates in the interest of Nestorius and the Oriental; who assembled the troops of Lydia and Ionia to suppress the fanatic and disorderly train of the patriarch. Without expecting the royal licent, he escaped from his guards, precipitately embarked, deserted the imperfect symph, and retired to his episcopal fortress of safety and independence. But his artful emissaries, both in the court and city, successfully laboured to appease the resentment, and to conciliate the favour of the emperor. The feeble son of the Arcadius was alternately swayed by his wife and sister, by the eunuchs and women of the palace; superstition and avarice were their ruling passions; and the orthodox chiefs were assiduous in their endeavours to alarm the former, and to gratify the latter. Constantine and the suburbs were invested with frequent monasteries, and the holy abodes, Dalmatia and Eschylus, had devoted their zeal and fidelity to the cause of Cyril, the worship of Mary, and the unity of Christ. From the first moment of their monastic life, they had never mingled with the world, or trod the profane ground of the city. But in this awful moment of the danger of the church, their vow was superseded by a more sublime and indispensable duty. At the head of a long order of monks and hermits, who carried burning tapers in their hands, and chanted hymns to the mother of God, they proceeded from their monasteries to the palace. The people was edified and inflamed by this extraordinary spectacle, and the trembling masses listened to the prayers and adjurations of the saints, who boldly pronounced, that none could hope for salvation, unless they embraced the person and the creed of the orthodox successor of Athanasius. At the same time every avenue of the throne was assailed with gold. Under the decent names of eulogia and benediction, the courtiers of both sexes were bribed according to the measure of their power and rapacity. But their incessant demands depopulated the monasteries of Constantinople and Alexandria; and the authority of the patriarch was unable to silence the just murmurs of his clergy, that a debt of sixty thousand pounds had already been contracted to support the expense of this scandalous corruption. Pachomius, who relieved his brother from the weight of an empire, was the firmest pillar of orthodoxy; and so intimate was the alliance between the thunders of the synod and the whispers of the court, that Cyril was assured of success if he could place one enmity, and substitute another in the favour of Theodosius. Yet the Egyptian could not boast of a glorious or decisive victory. The emperor, with unprecedented firmness, adhered to his promise of protecting the innocence of the Oriental bishops; and Cyril softened his anathemas, and confessed, with ambiguity and reluctance, a twofold nature of Christ, before he was permitted to sate his revenge against the unfortunate Nestorius.  

The religious andolean Nestorius, before the end of the synod, was oppressed by Cyril, betrayed by the court, and faintly supported by his Eastern friends. A sentiment of fear or indignation prompted him, while it was yet time, to affect the glory of a voluntary abdication; 46 his wish, or at least his request, was readily granted; he was conducted with honour from Ephesus to his old monastery of Antioch; and, after a short pause, his successor, Maximian and Procopius, were acknowledged as the lawful bishops of Constantinople. But in the silence of his cell, the degraded patriarch could no longer resume the innocence and sanctity of a private monk. The past he regretted, he was discontented with the present, and the future he had reason to dread; the Oriental bishops successively disengaged their cause from his unpopular name, and each day decreased the number of the schismatics who revered Nestorius as the confessor of the faith. After a residence at Antioch of four years, the hand of Theodosius subscribed an edict, which ranked him with Simian the magician, it prescribed his opinions and followers, condemned his writings to the flames, and banished his person first to Petra in Arabia, and at length to Orites, one of the islands of the Libyan desert. 45 Exiled from the church and from the world, the exile was still pursued by the rage of bigotry and fear. A wandering tribe of the Eunomian or N槛ians, visited his solitary prison; in their retreat they disseminated a crowd of useless exposites, but no sooner had Nestorius reached the banks of the Nile, than he would gladly have escaped from a Roman and orthodox city to the milder servitude of the savages. His flight was punished as a new crime: the soul of the patriarch inspired the civil and ecclesiastical powers of Egypt; the magistrates, the soldiers, the monks, devoutly tortured the enemy of Christ and St. Cyril; and, as far as the confines of Ethiopia, the heretic was alternately dragged and recalled, till his aged body was broken by the barbells and accidents of these reiterated journeys. Yet his mind was still independent and erect: the president of Tarsus

---

25 Enfield, the Istinosch Beta, is hazily named by Cyril as a friend, a voice, and the unseemly dog of another. In his career, the abbot of Alexandria, and his friend, was employed to find the desert and his death among the desert landscape. Some believe him to be an ascetic, the original author of the name of the desert. 
26 Cyril, in Gelasian, p. 237. 
27 See the Epistle to the Acts of the Synod of Ephesus, p. 237. 
33 See the Epistle in the Acts of the Synod of Ephesus, p. 237. 
41 See the Epistle in the Acts of the Synod of Ephesus, p. 237. 
44 See the Epistle in the Acts of the Synod of Ephesus, p. 237. 
50 See the Epistle in the Acts of the Synod of Ephesus, p. 237. 
52 See the Epistle in the Acts of the Synod of Ephesus, p. 237. 
was swayed by his pastoral letters; he survived the Catholic tyrant of Alexandria, and, after sixteen years' banishment, the synod of Chalcedon would perhaps have restored him to the honours, or at least to the communion, of the church. The death of Nestorius prevented his obedience to their welcome summons; 39 and his disease might afford some colour to the scandalous report, that his tongue, the organ of blasphemy, had been eaten by the worms. He was buried in a city of Upper Egypt, known by the names of Clamnia, or Panopolis, or Amnum; 40 but the immortal malice of the Jacobites has persevered for ages to cast stones against his sepulchre, and to propagate the foolish tradition, that it was never watered by the rain of heaven, which equally descends on the righteous and the ungodly. 42

Humanity may drop a tear on the fate of Nestorius; yet justice must observe, that he suffered the persecution which he had approved and inflicted.

38. The death of the Alexandrian patriarch after a reign of thirty-two years, abandoned the Catholics to the intemperance of the East and the abuse of victory. 48 The monophysite doctrine (one incarnate nature) was vigorously preached in the churches of Egypt and the monasteries of the East; the primitive creed of Apollinaris was protected by the society of Cyril; and the name of Eutyches, his venerable friend, has been applied to the most adverse to the Syrian heresy of Nestorius. His rival Eutyches was the abbot, or archimandrite, or superior of three hundred monks; but the opinions of a simple and illiterate recluse might have expired in the cell, where he had slept above seventy years, if the resentment or indigitation of Flavian, the Byzantine pontiff, had not exposed the scandal to the eyes of the Christian world. His domestic synod was instantly convened, their proceedings were bullied with clamour and artifice, and the aged heretic was surprised into a seeming confession, that Christ had not derived his body from the substance of the Virgin Mary. From their partial decree, Eutyches appealed to a general council; and his cause was vigorously assailed by his godson Chrysaphius, the reigning exarch of the palace, and his accomplice Dioscorus, who had succeeded to the throne, the creed, the talents, and the title of the nephew of Theophilus.

By the special summons of Theodorus, bishop of Alexandria in 447, 48 was judiciously composed of ten metropolitans and ten bishops from each of the six dioceses of the Eastern empire: some exceptions of favour or merit enlarged the number to one hundred and thirty-five; and the Syrian Barumus, as the chief and representative of the monks, was invited to sit and vote with the successors of the apostles. But the despoticism of the Alexandrian patriarch again oppressed the freedom of debate: the same spiritual and carnal weapons were again drawn from the arsenals of Egypt; the Asiatic veterans, a band of archers, served under the orders of Dioscorus; and the more formidable monks, whose minds were inaccessible to reason or mercy, besieged the doors of the cathedral. The general, and, as it should seem, the unconstrained voice of the fathers, accepted the faith, and even the anathemas of Cyril; and the heresy of the two natures was formally condemned in the persons and writings of the most learned Orientalis. 49 May those 50 who divide Christ be divided with the sword, 42 may they be hewn in pieces, may they be burnt "alive!" were the charitable wishes of a Christian synod. 56 The innocence and sanctity of Eutyches were acknowledged without hesitation; but the prelates, more especially those of Tharsus and Asia, were unwilling to depose their patriarch for the use, or even the abuse, of his lawful jurisdiction. They embraced the excuse of Dioscorus, as he stood with a threatening aspect on the footstool of his throne, and conjured him to forgive the offences, and to respect the dignity of his brother. 51 Do you mean to raise a sedition? exclaimed the relentless tyrant. 44 Where are the officers? At these words a furious multitude of monks and soldiers, with staves, and swords, and chains, burst into the church: the trembling bishops hid themselves behind the altar, or under the benches; and as they were not inspired with the zeal of martyrs, they successively subscribed a blank paper, which was afterwards filled with the condemnation of the Byzantine pontiff. Flavian was instantly delivered to the wild beasts of this spiritual amphitheatre: the monks were stimulated by the voice and example of Barumus to avenge the injuries of Christ: it is said that the patriarch of Alexandria resisted, and buffeted, and kicked, and trampled his brother of Constantinople: 52 it is certain, that the victim, before he could reach the place of his cell, expired on the third day, of the wounds and bruises which he had received at Ephesus. This second synod has been justly branded as a gang of robbers.
bers and assassins; yet the acumen of Dionysius would magnify his violence, to alleviate the cowardice and inconsistency of their own behaviour.

The faith of Egypt had prevailed; but the vanquished party was supported by the same pope who encountered without fear the lustful rage of Attila and Genseric. The theology of Leo, his famous aeon or epistle on the mystery of the incarnation, had been disregarded by the synod of Ephesus; his authority, and that of the Latin church, was insulted in his legates, who escaped from slavery and death to relate the melancholy tale of the tyranny of Dionysius and the martyrdom of Flavian. His provincial synod annulled the irregular proceedings of Ephesus; but as this step was itself irregular, he solicited the convocation of a general council in the free and orthodox provinces of Italy. From his independent throne, the Roman bishop spoke and acted without danger, as the head of the Christians, and his dictation was obsequiously transcribed by Pletho and his son Valentinian, who addressed their Eastern colleagues to restore the peace and unity of the church. But the pageant of Oriental royalty was moved with equal dexterity by the hand of the empress; and Theodotus could pronounce, without hesitation, that the church was already peaceful and triumphant, and that the recent flame had been extinguished by the just punishment of the Nestorians. Perhaps the Greeks would be still involved in the brecce of the Monophysites, if the emperor's horse had not fortunately stumbled; Theodotus expired; his orthodox sister, Pulcheria, with a nominal husband, succeeded to the throne; Chrysaphius was burnt, Dionysius was disgraced, the exiles were recalled, and the tone of Leo was subscribed by the Oriental bishops. Yet the pope was disappointed in his favourite project of a Latin council; he distanced to preside in the Greek synod, which was speedily assembled at Nice in Bithynia; his legates required in a peremptory tone the presence of the emperor; and the weary fathers were transported to Chalkedon under the immediate eye of Marcellus, and the senate of Constantinople. A quarter of a mile from the Thracian Bosphorus, the church of St. Euphemia was built on the summit of a gentle though lofty ascent; the triple structure was celebrated as a prodigy of art, and the boundless prospect of the land and sea might have raised the mind of a sectary to the contemplation of the God of the universe. Six hundred and thirty bishops were ranged in order in the nave of the church; but the patriarchs of the East were preceded by the legates, of whom the third was a simple priest; and the place of honour was reserved for twenty laymen of consular or senatorial rank. The Gospel was ostentatiously displayed in the centre; but the rule of faith was defined by the papal and imperial ministers, who moderated their thirteen sessions of the council of Chalkedon. Their partial insertion silenced the intemperate shrill and execrations, which degraded the episcopal gravity; but, on the formal accusation of the legates, Dionysius was compelled to descend from his throne to the rank of a criminal, already condemned in the opinion of his judges. The Orientals, less adverse to Nestorius than to Cyril, accepted the Romans as their deliverers. Tarsus, and Ptolemais, and Asia, were exasperated against the murderers of Flavian, and the new patriarchs of Constantinople and Antioch secured their places by the sacrifices of their benefactors. The bishops of Palestine, Macedonia, and Greece, were attached to the faith of Cyril; but in the face of the synod, in the host of the bishops, the leaders, with their obstinate train, passed from the right to the left without deciding the victory by this reasonable discussion. Of the seventeen suffragans who sailed from Alexandria, four were tempted from their allegiance; and the thirteen, falling prostrate on the ground, implored the mercy of the council, with sighs and tears, and a pathetic declaration, that, if they yielded, they should be massacred, on their return to Egypt, by the indignant populace. A timely repentance was allowed to expiate the guilt or error of the accomplices of Dionysius; but their sins were accumulated on his head; he neither asked nor hoped for pardon, and the moderation of those who pleaded for a general amnestie was drowned in the prevailing cry of victory and vengeance. To save the reputation of his late adherents, some personal offences were skilfully detected; his rash and illegal excommunication of the pope, and his contumacious refusal (while he was detained a prisoner) to attend the summons of the synod. Witnesses were introduced to prove the special facts of his pride, avarice, and cruelty; and the fathers heard with abhorrence, that the altars of the church were lavished on the female dancers, that his palace, and even his bath, was open to the prostitutes of Alexandria; and that the infamous Panasophia, or Irene, was publicly entertained as the concubine of the patriarch.

For these scandalous offences Dionysius was deposed by the synod, and Chalkedon was banned by the emperor; but the purity of his faith was declared in the presence, and with the tacit approbation, of the fathers. Their prudence supposed rather than pronounced the levity of Eutyches, who was never summoned before their tribunal; and they set them and abashed, when a bold Monophysite, casting at their feet a volume of Cyril, challenged them to anathema. 
of the Roman Empire.

In his person the doctrine of the saint. If we fairly pursue the acts of Chalcedon as they are recorded by the orthodox party, we shall find that a great majority of the bishops embraced the simple unity of Christ; and the ambiguous succession, that he was formed of or possessed two natures, might imply either their previous existence, or their subsequent confusion, or some dangerous interval between the conception of the man and the assumption of the God. The Roman theology, more positive and precise, adopted the term most offensive to the ears of the Egyptians, that Christ existed in two natures; and this momentous particle (which the memory, rather than the understanding, must retain) had almost produced a schism among the Catholic bishops. The name of Leo had been respectfully, perhaps sincerely, subscribed; but they protested, in two successive debates, that it was neither expedient nor lawful to transgress the sacred landmarks which had been fixed at Nice, Constantinople, and Ephesus, according to the rule of Scripture and tradition. At length they yielded to the importunities of their masters; but their infallible decree, after it had been ratified with deliberate votes and vehement acclamations, was overturned in the next session by the opposition of the legates and their Oriental friends. It was in vain that a multitude of episcopal voices repeated in chorus, "The definition of the fathers is orthodox and immovable!" The legates are now discovered! Anathema to the Nestorians! Let them depart from the synod! Let them repair to Rome! The legates threatened, the emperor was absolute, and a committee of eighteen bishops prepared a new decree, which was imposed on the reluctant assembly. In the name of the fourth general council, the Church in one person, but in two natures, was announced to the Catholic world; an invisible line was drawn between the heresy of Apollinaris and the faith of St. Cyril; and the road to paradise, a bridge as sharp as a razor, was suspended over the abyss by the master-hand of the theological artist. During ten centuries of blindness and servitude, Europe received her religious opinions from the mouth of the Vatican; and the same doctrines, already tarnished with the rust of antiquity, was inserted without dispute into the creed of the reformers, who disclaimed the supremacy of the Roman pontiff. The creed of Chalcedon still triumphs in the Protestant churches, but the ferment of controversy has subsided, and the most pious Christians of the present day are ignorant of the mystery of the incarnation. Far different was the temper of the Greeks and Egyptians under the orthodox reigns of Leo and Marcian. Those pious emperors enforced with arms and effects the symbol of their faith; and it was declared by the conscience or honour of five hundred bishops, that the decrees of the synod of Chalcedon might be lawfully supported, even with blood. The Catholics observed with satisfaction, that the same synod was odious both to the Nestorians and the Monophysites; but the Nestorians were less angry, or less powerful, and the East was distracted by the obscurant and sanguinary zeal of the Monophysites. Jerusalem was occupied by an army of monks; in the name of the one incarnate nature, they pillaged, they burnt, they murdered; the sepulchre of Christ was defiled with blood; and the gates of the city were guarded by tumultuous rebellion against the troops of the emperor. After the disgrace and exile of Dioscorus, the Egyptians still regretted their spiritual father; and detested the usurpation of his successor, who was introduced by the fathers of Chalcedon. The throne of the emperor was supported by a guard of two thousand soldiers; he waged a five years' war against the people of Alexandria; and on the death of the Nestorius, he became the victim of their zeal. On the third day before the festival of Easter, the patriarch was beheaded in the cathedral, and burned in the baptistery. The remains of his mangled corpse were delivered to the flames, and his ashes to the wind; and the deed was inspired by the vision of a pretended angel; an ambitious monk, who, under the name of Timothy the Cust, succeeded to the place and opinions of Dioscorus. This deadly superstition was inflated, on other side, by the principle and the practice of enslavement; in the pursuit of a metaphysical quarrel, more than a thousand of the slain, and the Christians of every degree were deprived of the substantial elements of social life, and of the invisible gifts of baptism and the holy communion. Perhaps an extravagant tale of the Times may conceal an allegorical picture of these fanatics, who tortured each other, and themselves. Under the consulship of Venantius and Coler, a grave bishop, "the people of Alexandria, and all Egypt, were assailed with a strange and diabolical fury: great and small, slaves and freedmen, monks and clergy, the natives of the synod by Marcian (const. xiv. p. 1273, 1273); his views on the synod of Alexandria (p. 1272), and on Nestorius (p. 1229). Of Marcian's letter to the Nestorians, in the year 430, he speaks (p. 1269). For the treatment of the Nestorians, see the works of D. A. J. and his followers.) 47. The author of a letter to the Nestorians, "concerning the Separates," was probably Eusebius, who is mentioned in the synod of 431, and who is said to have been a friend of Marcian. (See Zahn, p. 282.) The Nestorians were banished from the East, and the Nestorians of the West were compelled to repair to the East; the result of the controversy would have been the same. See the appendix, note 47. 48. The Nestorians also had a number of Nestorians, who were distinguished from the Nestorians, by the name of Marcellus. See the appendix, note 47. 49. These Nestorians were the most numerous of the Nestorians, and were distinguished from the Nestorians, by the name of Marcellus. See the appendix, note 47.
of the land, who opposed the synod of Chalcod——

The disorders of thirty years at

length produced the famous Hen-

The Neronians and Eutyches was filled by a thousand
tudes of language and opinion; the accession of Egypt, and the Roman pontiffs, of equal
tude, though of unequal strength, may be

of the church, the

of their hands and arms.”

of Zeno, which, in his reign, and in that of Anastasius, was

against all heretics by whom Christ is divided, or confounded, or

received. Without defining the number or the article of the word nature, the

and Ephesus, is respectfully confirmed; but, instead of bowing at the name of

the fourth council, the subject is dismissed by the censure of all contrary doctrines, if any such

have been taught either elsewhere or at Chalcod——

Under this ambiguous expression, the

the enemies of the last synod might

in a silent embrace. The most reason-

across (three holy), “Holy, holy, holy, Lord

God of Hosts” is supposed, by the Greeks,

to be the identical hymn which the angels and

eternally repeated before the throne of

God, and which, about the middle of the fifth

century, was miraculously revealed to the church

of Constantinople. The devotion of Antioch

soon added, “who was crucified for us!” and

this grateful address, either to Christ alone, or

to the whole Trinity, may be justified by the

rules of theology, and has been gradually adopted

by the Catholics of the East and West. But it

had been imagined by a Monophysite bishop; the

gift of an enemy was at first rejected as a
dire and dangerous blasphemy, and the rash

innovation had nearly cost the emperor Ana-

stasius his throne and his life. The people

of Constantinople was deaf to any rational prin-
ciples of freedom; but they held, as a lawful

cause of rebellion, the colour of a livery in the

tables, or the colour of a mystery in the schools.

Cyprian, with and without this obnoxious

22 See the Chronicles of Venerable, to the Lastes An-

sion of Saris, found in the Second Sect.; and the Logia of Symeon, p. 170.


25 See the same work, p. 183. 26 See the First Sect., vol. i. p. 183. 27 See Dionysius, c. 1. 28 See Papius Flavio, in the First Sect., vol. i. p. 183.

29 This work was first written in the year 1052, and has been frequently translated. 30 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 31 See Papius Flavio, in the First Sect., vol. i. p. 183. 32 See Papius Flavio, in the First Sect., vol. i. p. 183.

33 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 34 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 35 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 36 See the Second Sect., p. 183.

37 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 38 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 39 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 40 See the Second Sect., p. 183.

41 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 42 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 43 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 44 See the Second Sect., p. 183.

45 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 46 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 47 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 48 See the Second Sect., p. 183.

49 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 50 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 51 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 52 See the Second Sect., p. 183.

53 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 54 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 55 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 56 See the Second Sect., p. 183.

57 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 58 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 59 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 60 See the Second Sect., p. 183.

61 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 62 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 63 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 64 See the Second Sect., p. 183.

65 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 66 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 67 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 68 See the Second Sect., p. 183.

69 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 70 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 71 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 72 See the Second Sect., p. 183.

73 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 74 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 75 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 76 See the Second Sect., p. 183.

77 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 78 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 79 See the Second Sect., p. 183. 80 See the Second Sect., p. 183.
addition, was chanted in the cathedral by two adverse choirs, and when their lungs were exhausted, they had recourse to the more solid arguments of sticks and stones: the aggressors were punished by the emperor, and defended by the patriarch; and the crown and mitre were stole in the event of this momentous quarrel. The streets were instantly crowded with innumerable swarms of men, women, and children: the legions of monks, in regular array, marshalled, and shouted, and fought at their head. "Christians! this is the day of martyrdom; let us not desert our spiritual father; anathema to the Manichæan tyrant! he is unworthy to reign." Such was the Catholic cry; and the galleys of Anastasius lay upon their oars before the palace till the patriarch had pardoned his penitent, and hushed the waves of the troubled multitude. The triumph of Macedonius was checked by a speedy exile; but the seat of his domes was again exasperated by the same question. "Which one of the Trinity had been crucified?" On this momentous occasion, the blue and green factions of Constantinople suspended their discord, and the civil and military powers were united in their presence. The keys of the city, and the standard of the guards, were deposited at the feet of Constantine, the principal station and ramp of the faithful. Day and night they were incessantly buried either in singing hymns to the honour of their God, or in pillaging and murdering the servants of their religion. The head of his favourite monk, the liturgy, as they styled him, of the enemy of the Holy Trinity, was borne aloft on a spear, and the shrivelled, which had been darted against heretical structures, diffused the indistinguishable flames over the most orthodox buildings. The statues of the emperor were broken, and his person was concealed in a suburb, till, at the end of three days, he dared to implore the mercy of his subjects. Without his diadem, and in the posture of a suppliant, Anastasius appeared on the throne of the Cæsars. The Catholics, before his face, released their genuine Triasion; they exulted in the offer which he proclaimed by the voice of a herald, of abdicating the purple; they listened to the admonition, that, since all could not reign, they should previously agree in the choice of a sovereign; and they accepted the blood of two unpopular ministers, whom their master, without hesitation, condemned to the lions. These furious but transient seditions were encouraged by the success of Vitalian, who, with an army of Huns and Bulgarians, for the most part idolaters, declared himself the champion of the Catholic faith. In this pious rebellion he deposed Thrace, besieged Constantinople, exterminated sixty-five thousand of his fellow-Christians, till he obtained the recall of the bishop, the satisfaction of the pope, and the establishment of the council of Chalcedon, an orthodox treaty, reluctantly signed by the dying Anastasius, and more faithfully performed by the uncle of Justinian. And such was the event of the first of the religious wars, which have been waged in the name, and by the disciples, of the God of Peace. 

Justinian has been already seen in the various lights of a prince, a conqueror, and a lawyer: the theologian still remains, and it affects an unfavourable prejudice, that his theology should form a very prominent feature of his portrait. The sovereign sympathised with his subjects in their superstitious reverence for living and departed saints: his Code, and more especially his Novels, confirm and enlarge the privileges of the clergy; and in every dispute between a monk and a layman, the partial judge was inclined to pronounce, that truth, and innocence, and justice, were always on the side of the church. In his public and private devotions, the emperor was assiduous and exemplary; his prayers, vigils, and fasts, displayed the most ardent piety of a monk; his fancy was amused by the hope, or belief, of personal inspiration; he had secured the patronage of the Virgin and St. Michael the archangel; and his recovery from a dangerous disease was ascribed to the miraculous succour of the holy martyrs Cosmas and Damian. The capital and the provinces of the East were decorated with the monuments of his religion; and, though the far greater part of these costly structures may be attributed to his taste or ostentation, the zeal of the royal architect was probably quickened by a genuine sense of love and gratitude towards his invisible benefactors. Among the titles of Imperial greatness, the name of Pious was most pleasing to his ear; to promote the temporal and spiritual interest of the church, was the serious business of his life; and the duty of father of his country was often sacrificed to that of defender of the faith. The controversies of the times were congenial to his temper and understanding; and the theological professors must invariably desire the diligence of a stranger, who cultivated their art and neglected his own. "What can ye fear," said a bold conspirator to his associates, "from your bigoted tyrant? Sleepless and unperceived he sits whole nights in his closet, debating with revered greybeards, and turning over the pages of ecclesiastical volumes." The fruits of these speculations were displayed in many a conference, where Justinian might shine as the loudest and most subtle of the disputants, in many a sermon, which, under the name of discourses and sermons, proclaimed to the empire the theology of their master. While the barbarians invaded

[Note: The text is a continuation of a historical narrative, discussing the events surrounding Pope Gregory I and the council of Chalcedon. It highlights Justinian's role in these events and the influence of his theology on the empire. The text also touches on the emperor's private devotions and his relationship with the clergy and saints. The narrative concludes by mentioning Justinian's titles and the impact of his reign.]

[Further notes and references are provided, relating to the council of Chalcedon and Justinian's contributions to theology and empire.]
The provinces, while the victorious legions marched under the banners of Bellissarius and Narses, the successor of Trajan; unknown to the camp, was content to vanquish as the head of a synod. Had he invited to these synods a disinterested and rational spectator, Justinian might have learned, that religious controversy is the offspring of arrogance and folly; that true piety is most laudably expressed by silence and submission; that man, ignorant of his own nature, should not presume to scrutinize the nature of His God; and, that it is sufficient for us to know, that power and benevolence are the perfect attributes of the Deity."

Tolerance was not the virtue of the times, and indulgence to rebels has seldom been the virtue of princes. But when the prince descends to the narrow and partial character of a disputer, he is easily provoked to supply the defect of argument by the plentitude of power, and to chastise without mercy the purposeful blindness of those who wilfully shut their eyes against the light of demonstration. The reign of Justinian was an uniform yet various scene of persecution; and he appears to have surpassed his indulgent predecessors, both in the contrivance of his laws and the vigour of their execution. The insufficient term of three months was assigned for the conversion or exile of all heretics; and if he still provoked at their precarious stay, they were deprived, under his iron yoke, not only of the benefits of society, but of the common inheritance of men and Christians. At the end of four hundred years, the Monasteries of Phrygia still breathed the wild enthusiasm of perfection and prophecy, which they had imbibed from their male and female apostles, the special organs of the Pardela. On the approach of the Catholic priests and soldiers, they gathered with alacrity the crowns of martyrdom; the conventicle and the congregation perished in the flames, but these primitive families were not extinguished three hundred years after the death of their tyrant. Under the protection of the Gothic confederates, the Church of the Cossacks at Constantinople had been the severest of the laws; their clergy equalled the wealth and magnificence of the state; and the gold and silver which were seized by the rapacious hand of Justinian might perhaps be claimed by the dreams of the provinces and the titles of the barbarians. A secret movement of Pagans, who still lurked in the most ruined and the most rustic condition of mankind, excite the indignation of the Christians, who were perhaps unwilling that any strangers should be the witnesses of their intestine quarrels. A bishop was named as the inquisitor of the faith, and his diligence soon discovered, in the court and city, the magistrates, lawyers, physicians, and sophists, who still cherished the superstition of the Greeks. They were sternly informed, that they must choose without delay between the displeasure of Jupiter or Justinian, and that their aversion to the Gospel could no longer be disguised under the scandalous mask of indifference or impurity. The patriotic Phocas perhaps alone was resolved to live and to die like his ancestors; he enfranchised himself with the stroke of a dagger, and left his tyrant the poor consolation of exposing with ignominy the lifeless corpse of the fugitive. His weaker brethren submitted to their earthy monarch, underwent the ceremony of baptism, and laboured, by their extraordinary zeal, to erase the suspicion, or to expiate the guilt, of idolatry. The native country of Homer, and the theatre of the Trojan war, still retained the last sparks of his mythology; by the care of the same bishop, seventy thousand Pagans were detected and converted in Asia, Phrygia, Lydia, and Caria; ninety-six churches were built for the new proselytes; and liberal endowments, Bibles, and liturgies, and vessels of gold and silver, were supplied by the pious munificence of Justinian. The Jews, who had been gradually stripped of their humanities, were oppressed by a vexatious law, which compelled them to observe the festival of Easter the same day on which it was celebrated by the Christians. And they might complain with more reason, since the Catholics themselves did not agree with the astronomical calculations of their sovereign; the people of Constantineople delayed the beginning of their Lent a whole week after it had been ordained by authority; and they had the pleasure of fasting seven days, while must was exposed for sale by the command of the emperor. The Samaritans of Palestine were a mulatto race, an ambiguous sect, rejected by Jews by the Pagans, by the Jews as schismatics, and by the Christians as idolaters. The abomination of the cross had already been planted on their holy mount of Garzin, but the persecution of Justinian offered only the alternative of baptism or rebellion. They chose the latter, under the standard of a desperate leader, they rose in arms, and retaliated their wrongs on the lives, the property, and the temples, of a defenceless people. The Samaritans were finally subdued by the regular forces of the East; twenty thousand were slain, twenty thousand were sold by the Arabs to the idlers of Persia and India, and the remains of that

Footnotes:
52 For these wars and modern settlements, Procopius (De Bel. Got. lib. iv. c. 8) gives an account of the Vandal conquest of Africa, 424, 425, and the decline of the Roman power in that province, as well as the establishment of the OstroGoths in Italy. Agathias (Hist. iv. 11) places Alaric the first king of the Ostro-Goths on the throne of Constantinople, 410. See also the interesting account given by Procopius (De Bel. Got. lib. v. c. 13) of the reign of Alaric. 410-415. For the history of the Goths in Italy, the reader is referred to the published and unfinished work of Mr. William W. Tyrrel, of the American Academy of Athens, entitled "The Goths in Italy," and published in 1873. It is published by John Murray. The volume is 500 pages, folio, with the author's signature, engraved, and a fine map of the Goths. For the history of the Vandals, the reader is referred to the same work, and also to the works of Procopius, Bel. Got. lib. iv. c. 8; and Agathias, Hist. libro iv. 11.
53 For the origin and history of the Samaritans, consult Strabo, xiv. 1; and Procopius, De Bel. Got. lib. v. c. 13, with the approbation of Ammianus, 30. 6. 13. For the history of the Samaritans in Palestine, the reader is referred to Procopius, De Bel. Got. lib. v. c. 13. 17. 34. 35; and Strabo, xiv. 1.
54 For the religious and political history of the Samaritans, consult Strabo, xiv. 1; and Procopius, De Bel. Got. lib. v. c. 13. For the manners and customs of the Samaritans, the reader is referred to Procopius, De Bel. Got. lib. v. c. 13, 34, 35; and Strabo, xiv. 1. For the custom of the Samaritans of having a holy fountain, the reader is referred to Procopius, De Bel. Got. lib. v. c. 13, 33, 34, 35; and Strabo, xiv. 1.
55 For the religious and political history of the Samaritans, consult Strabo, xiv. 1; and Procopius, De Bel. Got. lib. v. c. 13. For the manners and customs of the Samaritans, the reader is referred to Procopius, De Bel. Got. lib. v. c. 13, 34, 35; and Strabo, xiv. 1. For the custom of the Samaritans of having a holy fountain, the reader is referred to Procopius, De Bel. Got. lib. v. c. 13, 33, 34, 35; and Strabo, xiv. 1.
of these Oriental bishops were tainted with the reproach of heresy: the first had been the master of the two others were the friends of Nestorius: their most suspicious passages were accused under the title of the three chapters; and the condemnation of their memory must involve the honour of a synod, whose name was pronounced with sincere or affected reverence by the Catholic world. If these bishops, whether innocent or guilty, were annihilated in the sleep of death, they would not probably be awakened by the clamour, which, after an hundred years was raised over their grave. If they were already in the hags of the demon, their torments could neither be aggravated nor assuaged by human industry. If in the company of saints and angels they enjoyed the reward of piety, they must have smiled at the idle fury of the theological insects who still clawed on the surface of the earth. The foremost of these insects, the emperor of the Romans, dared his sting, and distillled his venom, perhaps without discerning the true motives of Theodore and his ecclesiastical faction. The victims were no longer subject to his power, and the vehemence style of his edicts could only proclaim their damnation, and invite the clergy of the East to join in a full chorus of curses and malapropisms. The East, with some hesitation, consented to the voice of her sovereign: the fifth general council, of three patriarchs and one hundred and sixty-five fathers, was held at Constantiopolis; and the authors, as well as the defenders of the three chapters, were separated from the communion of the saints, and solemnly delivered to the prince of darkness. But the Latin churches were more jealous of the honour of Leo and the synod of Chalcedon, and if they had fought as they usually did under the standard of Rome, they might have prevailed in the cause of reason and humanity. But their chief was a prisoner in the hands of the enemy. the throne of St. Peter, which had been disgraced by the simony, was betrayed by the scrivener, Vigilius, who yielded, after a long and inconsistent struggle, to the despotism of Justinian and the sophistry of the Greeks. His apostasy procured the indignation of the Latins, and no more than two bishops could be found who would impose their hands on his decree and successor Pelagius. Yet the perseverance of the popes insensibly transferred to their adversaries the application of schismatics; the fly brain, African, and Italian churches, were oppressed by the civil and ecclesiastical powers, not without some effort of
military force; the distant barbarians transcribed the creed of the Vatican; and in the period of a century, the schisms of the three chapters expired in an obscure angle of the Venetian province. But the religious discontent of the Italians had already promoted the conquests of the Lombards, and the Romans themselves were accustomed to suspect the faith, and to destitute the government, of their Byzantine tyrant.

Justinian was neither steady nor consistent in the nice process of fixing his volatile opinions and those of his subjects. In his youth, he was offended by the slightest deviation from the orthodox line; in his old age, he transgressed the measure of temperate heresy, and the Jacobites, not less than the Catholics, were scandalised by his declaration, that the body of Christ was incorruptible, and that his manhood was never subject to any wants or infirmities, the inheritance of our mortal flesh. This polemical opinion was announced in the last edicts of Justinian; and at the moment of his reasonable departure, the clergy had refused to subscribe, the prince was prepared to persecute, and the people were resolved to suffer or resist. A bishop of Traves, secure beyond the limits of his power, addressed the monarch of the East in the language of authority and affection. "Most gracious Justinian, remember your baptism and your creed. Let not your grey hairs be defiled with heresy. Recall your fathers from exile, and your followers from perdition. You cannot be ignorant, that Italy and Gaul, Spirit and Africa, already deplores your fall, and anathematises your name. Unless without display, you destroy what you have taught; unless you exclaim with a loud voice, I have erred, I have sinned, anathema to Nestorius, anathema to Eutyches, you deliver your soul to the same flames in which they will eternally burn." He died and made no sign. His death restored in some degree the peace of the church, and the rights of his four successors, Justin, Tiberius, Maurice, and Phocas, are distinguished by a rare, though fortunate, vacancy in the ecclesiastical history of the East.

The faculties of sense and reason are least capable of acting on themselves; the eye is most inaccessible to the sight, the soul to the thought; yet we think, and even feel, that one will, a sole principle of action, is essential to a rational and reasoning being. When Heracilius returned from the Persian war, the orthodox hero consulted his bishops, whether the Christ whom he allowed, of one person, but of two natures, was actuated by a single or a double will. They replied in the singular, and the emperor was encouraged to hope that the Jacobites of Egypt and Syria might be reconciled by the profession of a doctrine, most certainly harmless, and most probably true, since it was taught even by the Nestorians themselves. The experiment was tried without effect, and the timid or vehement Catholics condemned even the semblance of a retreat in the presence of a subtle and audacious enemy. The orthodox (the prevailing) party devised new modes of speech, and argument, and interpretation; to either nature of Christ, they successively applied a proper and distinct energy; but the difference was no longer visible when they allowed that the human and the divine will were invariably the same. The disease was attended with the customary symptoms; but the Greek clergy, as if satiated with the endless controversy of the incarnation, instilled a healing counsel into the ear of the prince and people. They declared themselves monothelitians (asserters of the unity of will), but they treated the words as new, the questions as superfluous; and recommended a religious silence as the most agreeable to the prudence and charity of the Gospel. This law of silence was successively imposed by the ecumenical and patriarchal councils, and the Imperial edicts were subscribed with alacrity or reluctance by the four patriarchs of Rome, Constantinople, Alexandria, and Antioch. But the bishop and monks of Jerusalem sounded the alarm; in the language, or even in the silence, of the Greeks, the Latin churches detected a latent heresy; and the obedience of pope Honorius to the commands of his sovereign was retracted and censured by the bolder ignorance of his successors. They condemned the execrable and abominable heresy of the Monothelites, who revived the errors of Manes, Apollinaris, Eutyches, &c.; they signed the sentence of excommunication on the tombs of St. Peter; the ink was mingled with the sacramental wine, the blood of Christ; and no ceremony was omitted that could fill the superstitious mind with horror and affright. As the representative of the Western church, pope Martin and his Lateran synod anathematized the perfidious and guilty silence of the Greeks; one hundred and five bishops of Italy, for the
most part the subjects of Constantine, presumed to reprobate his sticked type and the impious extolments of his grandfather, and to confound the authors and their adherents with the twenty-one notorious heretics, the apostates from the church, and to the organ of the devil. Such an insult under the same reign could not pass with impunity. Pope Martin exiled his days on the inhospitable shore of the Tauro Chersonesus, and his oracles, the abbot Maximus, was inhumanly chastised by the amputation of his tongue and his right hand. But the same invincible spirit survived in their successors, and the triumph of the Latins avenged their recent defeat, and obliterated the disgrace of the three chapters.

The synods of Rome were confirmed by the sixth general council of Constantinople, in the palace and the presence of a new Constantine, a descendant of Heracleus. The royal convert converted the Byzantine pontiff and a majority of the bishops; the dissenters, with their chief, Macarius of Antioch, were condemned to the spiritual and temporal pains of heresy; the East condescended to accept the lessons of the West; and the creed was finally settled, which unites the Catholics of every age, that two wills or energies are harmonised in the person of Christ. The majesty of the pope and the Roman synod was represented by two priests, one deacon, and three bishops; but those obscure Latins had neither arms to support, nor treasures to bribe, nor language to persuade; and I am ignorant by what arts they could determine the holy emperor of the Greeks to adjure the ecumenic of his infancy, and to persecute the religion of his fathers. Perhaps the monks and people of Constantinople were favourable to the Latian creed, which is indeed the least reasonable of the two; and the suspicion is counterbalanced by the unanswerable moderation of the Greek clergy, who appear in this quarrel to be conscious of their weakness. While the synod debated, a fanatic proposed a more summary decision, by raising a dead man to life; the priests insisted at the trial, but the acknowledged failure may serve to indicate, that the passions and prejudices of the multitude were not enlisted on the side of the Manichaeans. In the next generation, when the son of Constantine was deposed and slain by the discipline of Macarius, they tasted the feast of revenge and dominion: the image or monument of the sixth council was defaced, and the original acts were committed to the flames. But in the second year, their patron was cast headlong from the throne, the bishops of the East were released from their occasional conformity, the Roman faith was more firmly re-established by the orthodox successors of Bardanes, and the fine problems of the incarnation were forgotten in the more popular and visible quarell of the worship of images.

Before the end of the seventh century, the creed of the incarnation, which had been defined at Rome and Constantinople, was uniformly preached in the remote islands of Britain and Ireland; the same ideas were entertained, or rather the same words were repeated, by all the Christians whose liturgy was performed in the Greek or the Latin tongue. Their numbers, and visible splendour, bestowed an imperfect claim to the appellation of Catholici; but in the East, they were marked with the less honourable name of Melchites, or Royalists; of men, whose faith, instead of resting on the basis of Scripture, reason, or tradition, had been established, and was still maintained, by the arbitrary powers of a temporal monarch. Their adversaries might allege the words of the father of Constantinople, who professed themselves the slaves of the king; and they might relate, with malicious joy, how the decree of Chalcedon had been inspired and reformed by the emperor Marcian and his virgin bride. The prevailing faction will naturally inculcate the duty of submission, nor is it less natural that dissenters should feel and assert the principles of freedom. Under the rod of persecution, the Nestorians and Monophysites degenerated into rebels and fugitives; and the most ancient and useful allies of Rome were taught to remonstrate the emperor not as the chief, but as the enemy, of the Christians. Language, the leading principle which unites or separates the tribes of mankind, was discriminated the sectaries of the East, by a peculiar and perpetual badge, which abolished the means of intercourse and the hope of reconciliation. The long dominion of the Greeks, their colonies, and, above all, their consequences, had propagated a language, doubts of the most perfect that has been contrived by the art of man. Yet the body of the people, both
in Syria and Egypt, still persevered in the use of their national idiom; with this difference, however, that the Coptic was confined to the rude and illiterate peasants of the Nile, while the Syriac, from the mountain of Assyria to the Red Sea, was adapted to the higher topics of poetry and argument. Armenia and Abyssinia were infected by the speech or learning of the Greeks; and their barbaric tongues, which have been revived in the studies of modern Europe, were unintelligible to the inhabitants of the Roman empire. The Syriac and the Coptic, the Armenian and the Ethiopic, are consecrated in the service of their respective churches; and their theology is enriched by domestic versions both of the Scriptures and of the most popular fathers. After a period of thirteen hundred and sixty years, the spirit of controversy, first kindled by a sermon of Nestorius, still burns in the bosom of the East, and the hostile communions still maintain the faith and discipline of their founders. In the most abject state of ignorance, poverty, and servitude, the Nestorians and Monophysites reject the spiritual supremacy of Rome, and cherish the memory of their Turkish masters, which allows them to matriculate, on one hand, St. Cyril and the synod of Ephesus; on the other, Pope Leo and the council of Chalcedon. The weight which they cast into the downfall of the Eastern empire demands our notice, and the reader may be reminded of the various prospects of I. The Nestorians. II. The Jacobites. III. The Maronites. IV. The Armenians. V. The Copts; and, VI. The Abyssinians. To the three former, the Syriac is common; but of the latter, each is distinguished by the use of a national idiom. Yet the modern natives of Armenia and Abyssinia would be incapable of communicating with their ancestors; and the Christians of Egypt and Syria, who reject the religion, have adopted the language of the Arabs. The lapse of time has succeeded the sacred rites; and in the East, as well as in the West, the Desdemon is addressed in an obscene tongue, unknown to the majority of the congregation.

I. Both in his native and his episcopal province, the heresy of the unfortunate Nestorius was speedily obliterated. The Oriental bishops, who at Ephesus had resisted to the face the arrogance of Cyril, were modified by his ready concessions. The same prudence, or their successors, subscribed, not without a murmur, the decrees of Chalcedon; the power of the Monophysites reclined them with the Catholics in the conformity of passion, of interest, and insensibly of belief; and their last reluctant sigh was breathed in the defence of the three chapters. Their dissenting lovelorn, less moderate, or more sincere, were crushed by the penal laws; and as early as the reign of Justinian, it became difficult to find a church of Nestorians within the limits of the Roman empire. Beyond those limits they had discovered a new world, in which they might hope for liberty, and aspire to conquest. In Persia, notwithstanding the resistance of the Magi, Christianity had struck a deep root, and the nations of the East reposed under its salutary shade. The scanty, or private, residue in the capital, in its provinces, and in its dioceses, his metropolitans, bishops, and clergy, represented the pomp and order of a regular hierarchy, which was an increase of proselytes, who were converted from the Zendavesta to the Gospel, from the spirit to the mania, and their zeal was stimuluated by the presence of an artful and formidable enemy. The Persian church had been founded by the missionaries of Syria; and their languages, discipline, and doctrine, were closely interwoven with its original frame. The Catholics were elected and ordained by their own suffragans; but their fillial dependence on the patriarchy of Antioch is attested by the canons of the Oriental church. In the Persian school of Edessa, in the rising generations of the faithful imbibe their theological idiom: they studied in the Syriac version the ten thousand volumes of Theodore of Mopsuestia, and they revered the apostolic faith and holy martyrdom of his disciple Nestorius, whose person and language were equally unknown to the nations beyond the Tigris. The independent lesson of the bishop of Edessa taught them to execute the Egyptians, who, in the synod of Ephesus, had impiously confounded the two natures of Christ. The flight of the masters and scholars, who were twice expelled from the Athens of Syria, dispersed a crowd of missionaries infected by the double zeal of religion and revenge. And the right unity of the Monophysites, who, under the reign of Zenod and Anastasius, had invaded the thrones of the East, provoked their antagonists, in a land of freedom, to avar a model, rather than a physical union of two persons of Christ. Since the first preaching of the Gospel, the Sasanian kings beheld with an eye of suspicion, a race of aliens and apostates, who had embraced the religion, and who might favour the cause of the heretical foes of their country. The royal edicts had often prohibited their dangerous communication of his schismatic prince. As a means and as a substitute, they formed the Syrian metropolitans; and, changed a dependent of Rome into a head of a branch. The Monophysites, by the union of the Nestorians, were to be bent against the Persians; and the Nestorians, by the union of the Persian Church, were to be bent against the Persians.
spondence with the Syrian clergy; the progress of the schism was grateful to the Joshua pride of Persia, and he listened to the eloquence of an ardent prelate, who painted Nestorius as the friend of Persia, and urged him to secure the fidelity of his Christian subjects, by granting a just preference to the victims and enemies of the Roman tyrant. The Nestorians composed a large majority of the clergy and people; they were encouraged by the smile, and armed with the sword, of despotism; yet many of their weaker brethren were startled at the thought of breaking loose from the communion of the Christian world, and the blood of seven thousand seven hundred Monophysites or Catholics confirmed the uniformity of faith and discipline in the churches of Persia. Their ecclesiastical institutions are distinguished by a liberal principle of reason, i.e., at least of policy; the austerity of the cloister was relaxed and gradually forgotten; bosses of charity were endowed for the education of orphans and foundlings; the law of celibacy, so forcibly recommended to the Greeks and Latins, was disregarded by the Persian clergy; and the number of the elect was multiplied by the public and reiterated nuptials of the priests, the bishops, and even the patriarch himself. To this standard of natural and religious freedom, myriads of fugitives resorted from all the provinces of the Eastern empire: the narrow bigotry of Justinian was punished by the excommunication of his most illustrious subjects; they transported into Persia the arms both of peace and war; and those who deserved the favour, were promoted in the service of a discerning monarch. The arms of Nushirvan, and his fiercer grandson, were assisted with advice, and money, and troops, by the desperate sectaries who still lurked in their native cities of the East; their zeal was rewarded with the gift of the Catholic churches; but when those cities and churches were recovered by Heraclius, their open profession of treason and heresy compelled them to seek a refuge in the realm of their foreign ally. But the seeming tranquillity of the Nestorians was often subverted, and sometimes overturned. They were involved in the common evils of Oriental despotism: their empery to Rome could not always secure for their attachment to the Gospel and a colony of three hundred thousand Jacobites, the captives of Apamia and Antioch, was permitted to erect an hostile altar in the face of the catholic, and in the sunshine of the court. In his last treaty, Justinian introduced some conditions which tended to rebuild and fortify the isolation of Christianity in Persia. The emperor, ignorant of the rights of con-
and augurs, the mandarins, who affect in public the reason of philosophers, are devoted in private to every mode of popular superstition. They cherished and they conformed the gods of Palestine and of India, but the propagation of Christianity awakened the jealousy of the state, and after a short vicissitude of favour and persecution, the foreign sect expired in ignorance and oblivion. Under the reign of the caliphs, the Nestorian church was diffused from China to Jerusalem and Cyprus; and their numbers, with those of the Jacobites, were computed to surpass the Greek and Latin communions. Twenty-five metropolitans or archbishops composed their hierarchy; but several of these were dispersed, by the distance and danger of the way, from the duty of personal attendance, on the easy condition that every six years they should testify their faith and obedience to the orthodox patriarch of Hakupin, a vague appellation, which has been successively applied to the royal seats of Seleucia, Ctesiphon, and Bagdad. These remote bishoprics are long since withered, and the old patriarchal truck is now divided by the bishops of Mosul, the representatives, almost in lineal descent, of the genuine and primitive succession, the Jacobites of Amid, who are reconciled to the church of Rome, and the Monophysites of Persia, whose revolt at the head of forty thousand families was promoted in the sixteenth century by theSophia of Persia. The number of three hundred thousand is allowed for the whole body of the Nestorians, who, under the name of Chaldæans or Assyrians, are confounded with the most learned in the most powerful nation of Eastern antiquity.

According to the legend of antiquity, the Gospel was preached in India by St. Thomas. At the end of the ninth century, his shrine, perhaps in the neighborhood of Malabar, was severely visited by the ambassadors of Alfred, and their return with a cargo of pearls and spices rewarded the zeal of the English monarch, who entertained the largest projects of trade and discovery. When the Portuguese first opened the navigation of India, the Christians of St. Thomas had been seated for ages on the coast of Malabar, and the influence of their character and colour attested the mixture of a foreign race. In arms, in arts, and possibly in virtue, they excelled the natives of Hindostan: the husbandmen cultivated the palm-tree, the merchants were enriched by the pepper-trade, the soldiery preceded the sairs or nobles of Malabar, and their hereditary privileges were respected by the gratitude or the fear of the king of Cochin and the Zamorin himself. They acknowledged a Gentoo sovereign, but they were governed, even in temporal concerns, by the bishop of Angamula. He still asserted his ancient title of metropolis of India, but his real jurisdiction was exercised in fourteen hundred churches, and he was intrusted with the care of two thousand souls. Their religion would have rendered them the firmest and most cordial allies of the Portuguese, but the inquisitors soon discerned in the Christians of St. Thomas the unpardonable guilt of heresy and schism. Instead of owning themselves the subjects of the Roman pontiff, the spiritual and temporal monarch of the globe, they adhered, like their ancestors, to the communion of the Nestorian patriarch; and the bishops whom he ordained at Mosul, traversed the dangers of the sea and land to reach their diocese on the coast of Malabar. In their Syrian liturgy the names of Theodore and Nestorius were piously commemorated; they united their adoration of the two persons of Christ; the title of Mother of God was offensive to their ear, and they measured with scrupulous severity the honours of the Virgin Mary, whom the superlative of the Latins had above exalted to the rank of a goddess. When her image was first presented to the disciples of St. Thomas, they indignantly exclaimed, "We are Christians, not idolaters!" and their simple devotion was content with the reverence of the cross. Their separation from the Western world had left them in ignorance of the improvements, or corruptions, of a thousand years; and their conformity with the faith and practice of the fifth century would equally disappoint the prejudices of a Papist or a Protestant. It was the first care of the ministers of Rome to intercept all correspondence with the Nestorian patriarch, and several of his bishops expired in the prisons of the holy office. The flock, without a shepherd, was assailed by the power of the Portuguese, the arts of the Jesuits, and the zeal of Alexis de Menezes, archbishop of Goa, in his personal visitation of the coast of Malabar. The synod of Diamper, at which he presided, emasculated the pious work of the reunion, and rigorously imposed the doctrine and discipline of the Roman church, without forgetting aecular confession, the strongest engine of ecclesiastical tyranny. The memory of Theodore and Nestorius was condemned, and Malabar was reduced under the dominion of the pope, of the primates, and of the Jesuits who invaded the land.
of Angamala or Craganor. Sixty years of servitude and hypocrisy were patiently endured; but as soon as the Portuguese empire was shaken by the courage and industry of the Dutch, the Nestorians asserted, with vigour and effect, the religion of their fathers. The Jesuits were incapable of defending the powers which they had abused; the arms of forty thousand Christians were pointed against their fallen tyrants; and the Indian archbishops assumed the character of bishop, till a fresh supply of episcopal gifts and Syriac missionaries could be obtained from the patriarch of Babylon.

Since the expulsion of the Portuguese, the Nestorian creed is freely professed on the coast of Malabar. The trading companies of Holland and England are the friends of toleration; but if oppression be less mortifying than contempt, the Christians of St. Thomas have reason to complain of the cold and silent indifference of their brethren of Europe.

The history of the Monophysites is less copious and interesting than that of the Nestorians. Under the reigns of Zenon and Anastasius, their artful leaders surprised the ear of the prince, usurped the thrones of the East, and crushed on its native soil the school of the Syrians. The rule of the Monophysite faith was defended with success in the East by Severus, patriarch of Antioch; he condemned, in the style of the Hianotic, the adverse heresies of Nestorius and Eutyches, maintained in the latter the reality of the body of Christ, and constrained the Greeks to allow that he was a liar who spoke truth. But the approximation of ideas could not stifle the vehemence of passion; each party was the more astonished that their blind antagonist could dispute on so trifling a difference; the tyrant of Syria enforced the belief of his creed, and his reign was polluted with the blood of three hundred and fifty monks, who were slain, not perhaps without provocation or resistance, under the walls of Apamea.

The successor of Anostatius replanted the orthodox standard in the East; Severus fled into Egypt; and his friend, the eloquent Xenaras, who had escaped from the Nestorians of Persia, was succoured in his exile by the Melchites of Paphlagonia. Fifty-four bishops were swept from their thrones, eight hundred ecclesiastics were cast into prison, and notwithstanding the ambigious favour of Theodore, the Oriental flocks, deprived of their shepherds, must immovably have been eitherFanished or poisoned.

In this spiritual distress, the expiring faction was revived, and united, and perpetuated, by the labours of a monk; and the name of James Baradeus has been preserved in the appellation of Jacobites, a familiar sound which may startle the ear of an English reader. From the holy confessors in their prison of Constantinople, he received the powers of bishop of Edessa and apostle of the East, and the ordination of four-score thousand bishops, priests, and deacons, is derived from the same unexhaustible source. The speed of the zealous missionary was promoted by the finest donations of a devout chief of the Arabs; the doctrine and discipline of the Jacobites were secretly established in the dominions of Justinian; and each Jacobite was compelled to violate the laws and to hate the Roman legislator. The successors of Severus, while they lurked in convents or villages, while they sheltered their proscribed heads in the cellars of hermits, or the tents of the Sarmatians, still asserted, as they now assert, their indefeasible right to the title, the rank, and the prerogatives of patriarch of Antioch: under the milder yoke of the infidels they reside about a league from Mardin, in the pleasant monastery of Zaphara, which they have embellished with cells, aqueducts, and plantations. The secondary, though honourable, place is filled by the synope, who, in his station at Mocul itself, defies the Nestorian catholic, with whom he contests the primacy of the East. Under the patriarch and the synoped, one hundred and fifty archbishops and bishops have been counted in the different ages of the Jacobite church; but the order of the hierarchy is relaxed or dissolved, and the greater part of their dioceses is confined to the neighbourhood of the Euphrates and the Tigris. The cities of Aleppo and Amida, which are oftenvisited by the patriarch, contain some wealthy merchants and industrious mechanics, but the multitude derive their scanty sustenance from their daily labour; and poverty, as well as superstition, may impose their excessive fasts; the annual Lent, during which both the clergy and laity abstain not only from flesh or eggs, but even from the taste of wine, of oil, and of fish. Their present numbers are esteemed from fifty to four-score thousand souls, the remnant of a populous church, which has gradually diminished under the oppression of twelve centuries. Yet in that long period, some strangers of merit have been converted to the Monophysite faith; and a Jew was the father

124 Concerning the Christians of St. Thomas, see Ammon. Illine. (Record. Soc. v.) 257-267, 269-271. Godwin's Church History of the East. (After 123. 271.) 275, 276. 279, 281. After the death of Nestorius, the Patriarch of Constantinople, between 428 and 431, the Patriarch of Alexandria, a Manichean, was elected in his stead. The Patriarch of Jerusalem, one of his bishops, was also elected. The apocryphal history of Nestorius has mistakenly been attributed by Eusebius to Nestorius. The Nestorians have always maintained that the Nestorians of Syria, and of the East generally, were the true successors of the Church of the East, and that they were the only true bishops. The Nestorians have always maintained that the Nestorians of Syria, and of the East generally, were the true successors of the Church of the East, and that they were the only true bishops.
of Abulpharagius, primates of the East, so truly eminent both in his life and death. In his life, he was an elegant writer of the Syrian and Arabic tongues, a poet, physician, and historian, a subtle philosopher, and a moderate diviner. In his death, his funeral was attended by his rival the Nestorian patriarch, with a train of Greeks and Armenians, who forgot their disputes, and mingled their tears over the grave of an enemy. The sect which was honoured by the virtues of Abulpharagius appears, however, to sink below the level of their Nestorian brethren. The superstition of the Jacobites is more perfect, their fasts more rigid, 131 their intestine divisions are more numerous, and their doctors (as far as I can measure the degrees of insanity) are more remote from the precision of reason. Something may possibly be allowed for the rigour of the Monophysite theology; much more for the superior influence of the monastic order. In Syria, in Egypt, in Ethiopia, the Jacobite monks have ever been distinguished by the mysticism of their penance and the absurdity of their legends. Alive or dead they are worshipped as the favours of the Deity; the crosier of bishop and patriarch is reserved for their venerable hands; and they assume the government of men, while they are yet seeking with the libles and prejudices of the cloister. 132

III. In the style of the Oriental Christians, the Monothelites of every age are described under the appellation of Monothelites; a name which has been insensibly transferred from an hermit to a monastery, from a monk to a nation. Maron, a saint or savage of the fifth century, displayed his religious madness in Syria; the rival cities of Amanus and Emesa disputed his relics; a sacred church was erected on his tomb, and six hundred of his disciples united their solitary cells on the banks of the Orontes. In the controversies of the incarnation, they nicely threaded the orthodox line between the sects of Nestorius and Eutyches; but the unfortunate question of one will or operation in the two natures of Christ was generated by their curious leanings. Their proselytes, the emperor Heraclius, was rejected as a Monothelite from the walls of Emesa; he sought a refuge in the monastery of his brethren; and they theological lemons were repaid with the gift of a spacious and wealthy domain. The name and doctrine of this venerable school were propagated among the Greeks and Syrians, and their zeal is expressed by Maronites, patriarch of Antioch, who declared before the synod of Constantinople, that sooner than subscribe the two wills of Christ, he would submit to be hewn piecemeal and cast into the sea. 133 A similar or a less cruel mode of persecution soon converted the unwilling subjects of the plain, while the glorious title of Martyr, 134 or rebel, was bravely maintained by the hardy natives of Mount Libanus. John Maron, one of the most learned and popular of the monks, assumed the character of patriarch of Antioch; his nephew Abraham, as the head of the Maronites, defended their civil and religious freedom against the tyrants of the East. The son of the orthodox Constantine purposed, with pious hatred, a people of soldiers, who might have stood the battle of his empire against the common foes of Christ and of Rome. An army of Greeks invaded Syria; the monastery of St. Maron was destroyed with fire; the brethren chiselled were betrayed and murdered, and twelve thousand of their followers were transplanted to the distant frontiers of Armenia and Thrace. Yet the humble nation of the Maronites has survived the empire of Constantinople, and they still enjoy, under their Turkish masters, a free religion and a mitigated servitude. Their domestic governors are chosen among the ancient nobility; the patriarch, in his monastery of Carbolini, still fancies himself on the throne of Antioch; nine bishops compose his synod, and one hundred and fifty priests, who retain the liberty of marriage, are intrusted with the care of one hundred thousand souls. Their country extends from the ridge of Mount Libanus to the shore of Tripoli; and the gradual descent affords, in a narrow space, each variety of soil and climate, from the Holy Cedars, erect under the weight of snow, 135 to the vine, the mulberry, and the olive trees of the fruitful valley. In the twelfth century, the Maronites, abjuring the Monothelite error, were reconciled to the Latin churches of Antioch and Rome, 136 and the same alliance has been frequently renewed by the ambition of the popes and the distress of the Syrians. But it may reasonably be questioned, whether their union has ever been perfect or sincere; and the learned Maronites of the college of Rome have vainly laboured to dissolve their ancestors from the guilt of heresy and schism. 137

IV. Since the age of Constantine, the A-
with surprise, that the austerity of their life increases in just proportion to the elevation of their rank. In the fourscore thousand towns or villages of his spiritual empire, the patriarch receives a small and voluntary tax from each person above the age of fifteen; but the annual amount of six hundred thousand crowns is insufficient to supply the incessant demands of charity and tribute. Since the beginning of the last century, the Armenians have obtained a large and lucrative share of the commerce of the East; in their return from Europe, the caravan usually halted in the neighbourhood of Erivan, the altars are enriched with the fruits of their patient industry; and the faith of Eutychius is preached in their recent congregations of Barbast and Poland. 183

V. In the rest of the Roman empire, the despotic power of the prince might eradicate or silence the sectaries of an obnoxious creed. But the stubborn temper of the Egyptians maintained their opposition to the symol of Chalcedon, and the policy of Justinian condescended to expect and to seize the opportunity of discord. The Monophysite church of Alexandria 144 was torn by the disputes of the corruptibles and incorruptibles, and on the death of the patriarch, the two factions upheld their respective candidates. 145 Gaian was the disciple of Julian. Theodosius had been the pupil of Severus: the claims of the former were supported by the consent of the monks and senators, the city and the province; the latter depended on the priority of his ordination, the favour of the empress Theodora, and the arms of the empress Narses, which might have been used in more honourable warfare. The exile of the popular candidate to Carthage and Sardinia, inflamed the ferment of Alexandria; and after a schism of one hundred and seventy years, the Galenites still revered the memory and doctrine of their founder. The strength of numbers and of discipline was tried in a desperate and bloody conflict; the streets were filled with the dead bodies of citizens and soldiers; the pious women, ascending the roof of their houses, showered down every sharp or ponderous utensil on the heads of the enemy; and the final victory of Narses was owing to the flames, with which he wasted the third capital of the Roman world. But the lieutenant of Justinian had not conquered in the cause of an heretic; Theodosius himself was speedily, though gently, removed; and Paul of Tarasch, an orthodox monk, was raised to the throne of Athanasius. The powers of government were restored in his support, he might appoint or displace the dukes and tribunes.

142 The religious of the Armenian is briefly described by La Coss in Mem. de l'Acad. de Phil. at the Armenian, p. 305. 302. His account of the Armenian church is very interesting. It is in the Silv. auct. et fideles. 143 The revolution of the Armenian church was in the year 743. The government of Armenia was divided into five provinces, each of which was composed of fifteen districts. 144 The schism of the Armenian church was in the year 743. The government of Armenia was divided into five provinces, each of which was composed of fifteen districts. 145 The schism of the Armenian church was in the year 743. The government of Armenia was divided into five provinces, each of which was composed of fifteen districts. 146 The schism of the Armenian church was in the year 743. The government of Armenia was divided into five provinces, each of which was composed of fifteen districts.

3-F
of Egypt: the allowance of bread, which Diocletian had granted, was suspended, the churches were shut, and a nation of heretics was deprived at once of their spiritual and carnal food.

In his turn, the tyrant was excommunicated by the zeal and revenge of the people; and none except his servile Molchites would salute him as a man, a Christian, or a bishop. Yet such is the blindness of ambition, that, when Paul was expelled on a charge of murder, he solicited, with a bribe of seven hundred pounds of gold, his restoration to the same station of hatred and ignominy. His successor Apollinaris entered the bishopric in military array, alike qualified for prayer or for battle. His troops, under arms, were distributed through the streets; the gates of the cathedral were guarded, and a chosen band was stationed in the choir, to defend the person of their chief. He stood erect on his throne, and throwing aside the upper garment of a warrior, suddenly appeared before the eyes of the multitude in the robes of the patriarch of Alexandria. Amazement filled them mute; but no sooner had Apollinaris begun to read the tome of St. Leo, than a volley of curses, and invectives, and stones, assaulted the odious minister of the emperor and the synod. A charge was instantly sounded by the successor of the apostles; the soldiers waded to their knees in blood; and two hundred thousand Christians are said to have fallen by the sword: an incredible account, even if it be extended from the daughter of a day to the eighteenth years of the reign of Apollinaris. Two succeeding patriarchs, Eulogius and John, laboured in the conversion of heretics with arms and arguments more worthy of their evangelical profession. The theological knowledge of Eulogius was displayed in many a volume, which magnified the errors of Eusebius and Severus, and attempted to reconcile the ambiguous language of St. Cyril with the orthodox creed of pope Leo and the fathers of Chalcedon. The two thousand sins of John the elder, synaxy were dictated by superstition, or incoherence, or policy. Seven thousand five hundred men were maintained at his expense: and his successor found eight thousand pounds of gold in the treasury of the church; he collected ten thousand from the liberality of the faithful; yet the presbyter could boast in his testament, that he left behind him no more than the third part of the smallest of the silver coins. The churches of Alexandria were delivered to the Catholics, the religion of the Monophysites was proscribed in Egypt; and the law was revived which excluded the natives from the honours and emoluments of the state.

A more important conquest still remained; that of the patriarch, the weeds and leader of the Egyptian church. Theodosius had resisted the threats and promises of Justinian with the spirit of an apostle or an enthusiast. "Such," replied the patriarch, "are the offers of the tempter when he showed the kingdoms of the earth. But my soul is for desire to thee than life or dominion. The churches are in the hands of a prince who can kill the body; but my conscience is my own; and in exile, poverty, or chains, I will steadfastly adhere to the faith of my holy predecessors, Athanasius, Cyril, and Dioscorus. Anathema to the town of Leo and the synod of Chalcedon! Anathema to all who embrace their creed! Anathema to them now and for evermore! Naked came I out of my mother's womb, naked shall I descend into the grave. Let those who love God, follow me and seek their salvation." After contemplating his brethren, he embarked for Constantinople, and sustained, in six successive interviews, the almost irresistible weight of the royal presence. His opinions were favourably entertained at the palace and the city; the influence of Theodosius assured him a safe conduct and honourable dismissal; and he ended his days, though not on the throne, yet in the bosom, of his native country. On the news of his death, Apollinaris indignantly feasted the nobles and the clergy; but his joy was checked by the intelligence of a new election; and while he enjoyed the wealth of Alexandria, his rivals reigned in the monasteries of Thebaïs, and were maintained by the voluntary oblations of the people. A perpetual succession of patriarchs arose from the ashes of Theодosius; and the Monophysite churches of Syria and Egypt were united by the name of Jacobites and the communion of the faith. But the same faith, which has been confined to a narrow sect of the Syrians, was diffused over the mass of the Egyptian or Coptic nation; who, almost unanimously, rejected the decrees of the synod of Chalcedon. A thousand years were now elapsed since Egypt had ceased to be a kingdom, since the conquerors of Asia and Europe had trampled on the ready necks of a people, whose ancient wisdom and power ascended beyond the records of history. The conflict of faith and persecution rekindled some sparks of their national spirit. They adjusted, with a foreign heresy, the ramants and language of the Greeks: every Molchite, in their eyes, was a stranger, every Jacobite a citizen; the alliance of marriage, the offices of humanity, were condemned as a deadly sin; the natives renounced all allegiance to the emperor; and his orders, at a distance from Alexandria, were obeyed only under the pressure of military force. A generous effort might have redeemed the religious and liberty of Egypt, and her six hundred monasteries might have poured forth their myriads of holy warriors, for whom death should have no terror, since life had no comfort or delight. But experience has proved the distinction of active and passive courage; the fanatic who endures without a groan the torture of the rack or the
state, would tremble and fly before the face of an actual enemy. The pusillanimous temper of the Egyptians could only hope for a change of masters; the arms of Chosroes depopulated the land, yet under his reign the Jacobites enjoyed a short and precarious reprieve. The victory of Heraclius roused and agitated the persecution, and the patriarch again escaped from Alexandria to the desert. In his flight, Benjamin was encouraged by a voice, which made him expect, at the end of ten years, the aid of a foreign nation, marked like the Egyptians themselves with the ancient rite of circumcision. The character of these deliverers, and the nature of the deliverance, will be hereafter explained; and I shall step over the interval of eleven centuries to observe the present misery of the Jacobites of Egypt. The populous city of Cairo affords a residence or rather a shelter for their indigent patriarch, and a remnant of ten bishops: forty monasteries have survived the influx of the Arabs; and the progress of servitude and spoliation has reduced the Coptic nation to the despicable number of twenty-five or thirty thousand families: 145 a race of illiterate beggars, whose only consolation is derived from the superior wretchedness of the Greek patriarch and his diminutive congregation. 146

VI. The Coptic patriarch, a rebel to the Caesars, or a slave to the Normans, Khalifs, still gloried in the final enfranchisement of the kings of Nubia and Ethiopia. He repaid their favours by magnifying their greatness; and it was boldly asserted that they could bring into the field an hundred thousand horse, with an equal number of camels; 147 that their hand could pour out or restrain the waters of the Nile; 148 and the peace and plenty of Egypt was obtained, even in this world, by the intercession of the patriarch. In exile at Constantinople, Theodosius recommended to his patriarchy the conversion of the black nations of Nubia, from the tropic of Cancer to the confines of Abyssinia. 149 Her design was suspected and emulated by the more orthodox emperor. The rival missionaries, a Melchite and a Jacobite, embanked at the same time; but the empire, from a motive of love or fear, was more effectually obeyed; and the Catholic pontiff was detained by the president of Thebais, while the king of Nubia and his court were hastily baptized in the faith of Dionysius. The hardy envoy of Justinian was received and dismissed with honour; but when he accused the heresy and treasons of the Egyptians, the negro convert was instructed to reply that he would never abandon his brethren the true believers, to the persecuting ministers of the synod of Chalcedon. 150 During several ages, the bishops of Nobis were named and consecrated by the Jacobite patriarch of Alexandria. In the twelfth century, Christianity prevailed; and some ruins, some remains, are still visible in the savage towns of Sennar and Dongola. 151 But the Nubians at length executed their threats of returning to the worship of idols; the climate required the indulgence of polygamy, and they have finally preferred the triumph of the Koran to the abasement of the Cross. A metaphysical religion may appear too refined for the capacity of the negro race; yet a black or a parrot might be taught to repeat the words of the Chalcedonian or Monophysite creed.

Christianity was more deeply rooted in the Abyssinian empire; and, although the correspondence has been sometimes interrupted above seventy or an hundred years, the mother-church of Alexandria retains her colony in state of perpetual papillage. Seven bishops once composing the Ethiopian synod, it is asserted that the number amounted to ten, they might have elected an independent prince; and one of their kings was ambitious of promoting his brethren to the ecclesiastical throne. But the event was forestalled, the increase was denied; the episcopal office has been gradually confined to the obseh, 152 the head and author of the Abyssinian priesthood; the patriarch supplies such vacancy with an Egyptian monk; and the character of a stranger appears more venerable in the eyes of the people, less dangerous in those of the monarch. In the sixth century, when the schism of Egypt was confirmed, the rival chiefs, with their patrons, Justinian and Theodosius, strove to outstrip each other in the conquest of a remote and independent province. The industry of the emperor was again victorious, and the pious Theodosius has established in that sequestered church the faith and discipline of the Jacobites. 153 Encompassed on all sides by the enemies of their religion,

145 This number is taken from the various Hierarches of the Egyptians at Cairo from B. p. 134. 146: and requires more exact information. See the letter of the Emperor Liberius, cited by the Latin Comes; and the letter of Jerome to the Bishop of Daphne, cited in the Life of Bishop Euphrasius, p. 374. 150 The bishop of the Coptic, their patriarch, in the year 344. 147 In the year 721. 148 See the Life of the Patriarch, p. 374. 151 In the year 325. 152 See the Life of the Patriarch, p. 374. 153 The Church of the Abyssines, B. P. 1150, is named in the Life of the Patriarch, p. 375. The same pope who was consecrated in the year 1543, died in the year 1544, and is author of the Life of St. Michael, in the year 1544.
the Ethiopians slept near a thousand years, forgetful of the world, by whom they were forgotten. They were awakened by the Portuguese, who, turning the southern prospect of Africa, appeared in India and the Red Sea, as if they had descended through the air from a distant planet. In the first moments of their interview, the subjects of Rome and Alexandria observed the resemblance, rather than the difference, of their faith; and each nation expected the most important benefits from an alliance with their Christian brethren. In their lonely situation, the Ethiopians had almost relapsed into the savage life. Their vessels, which had traded to Ceylon, scarcely presumed to navigate the rivers of Africa; the ruins of Axum were deserted, the nation was scattered in villages, and the emperor, a pompous name, was content, both in peace and war, with the immemorial residence of a camp. Conscious of their own insignificance, the Abyssinians had formed the national project of importing the arts and ingenuity of Europe; and their ambassadors at Rome and Lisbon were instructed to solicit a colony of smiths, tailors, masons, printers, surgeons, and physicians, for the use of their country. But the public danger, so well called for the instant and effectual aid of arms and soldiers, to defend an unwarlike people from the barbarians who ravaged the inland country, and the Turks and Arabs who advanced from the sea-coast in more formidable array. Ethiopia was saved by four hundred and fifty Portuguese, who, displayed in the field the native valour of Europeans, and the intellectual powers of the market and caupon. In a moment of terror, the emperor had promised to reconcile himself and his subjects to the Catholic faith: a Latin patriarch represented the supremacy of the pope; the empire, enlarged in a soundful proportion, was supposed to contain more gold than the mines of America; and the wildest hopes of avarice and zeal were built on the willingness submission of the Christians of Africa. But the vows which pain had extorted, were forgotten on the return of health. The Abyssinians still adhered with unshaken constancy to the Monophysite faith; their languid belief was sharpened by the exercise of dispute; they branded the Latins with the names of Arians and Nestorians, and imputed the adoration of four gods, to those who separated the two natures of Christ. Freemasonry, a place of worship, or rather of exile, was assigned to the Jesuit missionaries. Their skill in the liberal and mechanic arts, their theological learning, and the decency of their manners, inspired a barren esteem; but they were not endowed with the gift of miracles, and they vainly solicited a reinforcement of European troops. The patience and dexterity of forty years at length obtained a more favourable audience, and two emperors of Abyssinia were persuaded that Rome could ensure the temporal and everlasting happiness of their nation. The first of these royal converts lost his crown and his life; and the rebel army was sanctified by the abone, who hurled an anathema at the upstart, and absolved his subjects from their oath of fidelity. The fate of Zadenghel was revenged by the courage and fortune of Susanna, who ascended the throne under the name of Segued, and more vigorously prosecuted the pious enterprise of his kinsman. After the assassination of some unequal combats between the Jesuits and his Ilirrate priests, the emperor declared himself a proselyte to the faith of Chalcedon, presuming that his clergy and people would embrace without delay the religion of their prince. The liberty of choice was succeeded by a law, which imposed, under pain of death, the belief of the two natures of Christ: the Abyssinians were enjoined to work and to play on the Sabbath; and Segued, in the face of Europe and Africa, renounced his connection with the Alexandrian church. A Jesuit Commission of Alphonso Mendes, the Catholic patriarch of Ethiopia, accepted in the name of Urban VIII., the homage and abjuration of his penitent. I confess, said the emperor on his knees, I confess that the pope is the vicar of Christ, the successor of St. Peter, and the sovereign of the world. To him I swear true obedience, and at his feet I offer my person and kingdom. A similar oath was repeated by his son, his brother, the clergy, the nobles, and even the ladies of the court: the Latin patriarch was invested with honours and wealth; and his missionaries erected their churches or citadels in the most convenient stations of the empire. The Jesuits themselves deplore the fatal indiscretion of their chief, who forgot the mildness of the Gospel and the policy of his order, to introduce with hasty violence the liturgy of Rome, and the inquisition of Portugal. He condemned the ancient practice of circumcision, which health rather than superstition had first invented in the climate of Ethiopia. A new baptism, a new ordination, was inflicted on the natives; and they trembled with horror when the most holy of the dead were torn from their graves, when the most illustrious of the living were excommunicated by a foreign priest. In the defence of their religion and liberty, the Abyssinians rose in arms, with desperate but unsuccessful zeal.
Five rebellions were extinguished in the blood of the insurgents: two abums were slain in battle, while legions were slaughtered in the field, or suffocated in their caverns; and neither merit, nor rank, nor sex, could save from ignominiouss deaths the enemies of Rome. But the victorious monarch was finally surbayed by the constancy of the nation, of his mother, of his son, and of his most faithful friends. Segued listened to the voice of pity, of reason, perhaps of fear; and his edict of liberty of conscience instantly revealed the tyranny and weakness of the Jesuits. On the death of his father, Basiliades expelled the Latin patriarch, and restored to the wishes of the nation the faith and the discipline of Egypt. The Monophysite churches resumed with a song of triumph, “that
the sheep of Ethiopia were now delivered from the yokes of the West;” and the gates of that solitary realm were for ever shut against the arts, the science, and the fanaticism of Europe.

CHAP. XLVIII.
Plan of the remaining Chapters. — Succession and Characters of the Greek Emperors of Constantinople, from the Tima of Heraclius to the Latin Conquest.

I have now deduced from Trajan to Constantine, from Constantine to Heraclius, the regular series of the Roman emperors; and faithfully exposed the prosperous and adverse fortunes of their reigns. Five centuries of the decline and fall of the empire have already elapsed; but a period of more than eight hundred years still separates me from the term of my labours, the taking of Constantinople by the Turks. Should I persevere in the same course, should I observe the same measure, a prolix and slender thread would be spun through many a volume, nor would the patient reader find an adequate reward of instruction or amusement. At every step, as we sink deeper in the decline and fall of the Eastern empire, the annals of each succeeding reign would impose a more ungrateful and melancholy task. These annals must continue to repeat a tedious and uniform tale of weakness and misery; the natural connection of causes and events would be broken by frequent and hasty transitions, and a minute accumulation of circumstances must destroy the light and effect of these general pictures which compose the use and ornament of a remote history. From the time of Heraclius, the Byzantine theatre is contracted and darkened: the line of empire, which had been defined by the laws of Justinian and the acts of Belisarius, recedes on all sides from our view; the Roman name, the proper subject of our enquiries, is reduced to a narrow corner of

Europe, to the lonely suburbs of Constantinople; and the fate of the Greek empire has been compared to that of the Rhine, which loses itself in the sands, before its waters can mingle with the ocean. The scale of dominion is diminished to our view by the distance of time and place: nor is the loss of external splendour compensated by the nobler gifts of virtue and genius. In the last moments of her decay, Constantinople was doubled more opulent and populous than Athens at her most flourishing era, when a scanty sum of six thousand talents, or twelve hundred thousand pounds sterling, was possessed by twenty-one thousand male citizens of an adult age. But each of these citizens was a freeman, who dared to assert the liberty of his thoughts, words, and actions; whose person and property were guarded by equal law; and who exercised his independent vote in the government of the republic. Their numbers seem to be multiplied by the strong and various discriminations of character: under the shield of freedom, on the wings of emulation and vanity, each Athenian aspired to the level of the national dignity: from this commanding eminence, some chosen spirits soared beyond the reach of a vulgar eye; and the chances of superior merit in a great and populous kingdom, as they are proved by experience, would excite the computation of imaginary millions. The territories of Athens, Sparta, and their allies, do not exceed a moderate province of France or England: but after the trophies of Salamis and Platea, they expand in our fancy to the gigantic size of Asia, which had been trampled under the foot of the victorious Greeks. But the subjects of the Byzantine empire, who assume and dishonour the name both of Greeks and Romans, present a dead uniformity of objects, which are neither softened by the weakness of humanity, nor animated by the vigour of memorable crimes. The freeman of antiquity might repeat with generous enthusiasm the sentence of Homer, “that on the first day of his servitude, the captive is deprived of one half of his manly virtues.” But the poet had only seen the effects of civil or domestic slavery, nor could he foretell that the second moiety of manhood must be annihilated by the spiritual depopulation, which shackles, not only the actions, but even the thoughts of the prostrate vassal. By this double yoke, the Greeks were oppressed under the successors of Heraclius; the tyrant, a law of eternal justice, was degraded by the vices of his subjects; and on the throne, in the camp, in the schools, we search, perhaps with fruitless diligence, the names and characters that may deserve to be rescured from oblivion. Nor are the defects of the subject compensated by the skill and variety of the painters. Of a space of eight hundred years, the four centuries are overspread with a cloud interrupted by some faint and broken rays of historic light.

Note: The description of the empire's decline and fall is a historical narrative, focusing on the transition and fall of the Eastern Roman Empire. The text discusses the loss of external splendour and the nobler gifts of virtue and genius, highlighting the contrast between the freedoms and independence of the ancient Greeks and the constraints of Byzantium. It also touches on the comparison between the size and influence of ancient Athens and the Byantine Empire, emphasizing the decline in both empires' territories and populations. The text reflects on the nature of freedom and its impact on different societies and civilizations.
THE DECLINE AND FALL

in the lives of the emperors, from Maurice to Alexius, and the Macedonian theme of a separate work; and the absence, or bias, or imperfection of contemporary evidence, must be poorly supplied by the doubtful authority of more recent compilers. The four last centuries are exempt from the reproach of penury; and with the Comnenian family, the historic sense of Constantineople again revives, but her apparel is gaudy, her motions are without elegance or grace. A succession of priests, or courtiers, trembles in each other's footsteps in the same path of servitude and superstition: their views are narrow, their judgment is feeble or corrupt; and we close the volume of copious barrenness, still ignorant of the causes of events, the characters of the actors, and the manners of the times, which they celebrate or deplore. The observation which has been applied to a man, may be extended to a whole people, that the energy of the sword is communicated to the pen; and it will be found by experience, that the rise of history will rise or fall with the spirit of the age.

From these considerations, I should have abandoned without regret the Greek slaves and their servile historians, had I not reflected that the fate of the Byzantine monarchy is closely connected with the most splendid and important revolutions which have changed the state of the world. The space of the lost provinces was immediately replenished with new colonies and rising kingdoms: the active virtues of peace and war deserted from the vanquished to the victorious nations; and it is in their origin and conquests, in their religion and government, that we must explore the causes and effects of the decline and fall of the Eastern empire. Nor will this scope of narrative, the riches and variety of these materials, be incompatible with the unity of design and composition. As, in his daily prayers, the Mussulman of Fez or Delhi still turns his face towards the temple of Mecca, the historian's eye shall always be fixed on the city of Constantinople. The extensive line may embrace the realms of Arabia and Tartary, but the circle will be ultimately reduced to the decreasing limit of the Roman monarchy.

On this principle I shall now establish the plan of the remaining chapters of the present work. The first chapter will contain, in a regular series, the emperors who reigned at Constantinople during a period of six hundred years, from the days of Heraclius to the Latin conquest: a rapid abstract, which may be supported by a general appeal to the older text of the original historians. In this introduction, I shall confine myself to the revolution of the throne, the succession of families, the personal characters of the Greek princes, the mode of their life and death, the maxims and influence of their domestic government, and the tendency of their reign to accelerate or suspend the downfall of the Eastern empire. Such a chronological review will serve to illustrate the various arguments of the subsequent chapters; and each circumstance of the eventful story of the barbarians will adopt itself in a proper place to the Byzantine annals. The internal state of the empire, and the dangerous heresy of the Panfilians, which shook the East and enlightened the West, will be the subject of two separate chapters; but these inquiries must be postponed till our further progress shall have opened the view of the world in the ninth and tenth centuries of the Christian era. After this foundation of Byzantine history, the following nations will pass before our eyes, and each will occupy the space to which it may be entitled by greatness or merit, or the degree of connection with the Roman world and the present age. I. The Franks: a general appellation which includes all the barbarians of France, Italy, and Germany, who were united by the sword and sceptre of Charlemagne. The persecutions of images and their rotation separated Rome and Italy from the Byzantine throne, and prepared the restoration of the Roman empire in the West.

II. The Arabs or Saracens. Three ample chapters will be devoted to this curious and interesting object. In the first, after a picture of the country and its inhabitants, I shall investigate the character of Mahomet, the character, religion, and success of the prophet. In the second I shall lead the Arabs to the conquest of Syria, Egypt, and Africa, the provinces of the Roman empire; and can I check their victorious career till they have overthrown the monarchies of Persia and Spain. In the third I shall enquire how Constantinople and Europe were saved by the luxury and arts, the division and decay, of the empire of the caliphs. A single chapter will include, III. The Bulgarians, IV. Hungarians, and the Russians, who assaulted by sea or by land the provinces and the capital; but the last of these, so important in their present greatness, will excite some curiosity in their origin and infancy. VI. The Normans; or rather the private adventurers of that warlike people, who founded a powerful kingdom in Apulia and Sicily, shook the throne of Constantinople, displayed the trophies of chivalry, and almost realised the wonders of romance.

VII. The Latin: the subjects of the pope, the nations of the West, who enlisted under the banner of the cross for the recovery or relief of the holy sepulchre. The Greek emperors were terrorised and preserved by the myriads of pilgrims who marched to Jerusalem with Godfrey of Bouillon and the poors of Christendom. The second and third crusades trod in the footsteps of the first: Asia and Europe were mingled in a sacred war of two hundred years; and the Christian powers were bravely resisted, and finally expelled, by Saladin and the Mamelukes of Egypt. In these memorable crusades, a vast and army of French and Venetians were diverted from Syria to the Euphrates, they reformed the capital, they subdued the Greek monarchy; and a dynasty of Latin princes was set up near three centuries on the throne of Constantinople. VIII. The Greeks themselves, during this period of captivity and exile, must be considered as a foreign nation; the enemies, and again the sovereigns of Constantinople.
Misfortune had rekindled a spark of national virtue; and the imperial series may be continued with some dignity from their restoration to the Turkish conquest. IX. The Mamelukes and Tartars. By the arms of Zingis and his descendants, the globe was shaken from China to Poland and Greece: the slums were overthrown: the caliphate fell, and the Caliphs trembled on their throne. The victors of Timour suspended above fifty years the final ruin of the Byzantine empire. X. I have already noticed the first appearance of the Turks, and the names of the fathers, of Sobieski and Otthom, discriminate the two successive dynasties of the nation, which emerged in the eleventh century from the Serbian wilderness. The former established a potent and splendid kingdom from the banks of the Oxus to Antioch and Nice: and the first crusade was provoked by the violation of Jerusalem and the danger of Constantinople. From an humble origin, the Ottoman race, the scourge and terror of Christendom, Constantinople was besieged and taken by Mahomet II.; and his triumph annihilated the remnant, the image, the title, of the Roman empire in the East. The schism of the Greeks will be connected with their last calamities, and the restoration of learning in the Western world. I shall return from the captivity of the new, to the ruins of ancient Rome; and the venerable name, the interesting theme, will shed a ray of glory on the conclusion of my labours.

The emperor Heraclius had published a tyrant and ascended his throne; and the memory of his reign is perpetuated by the transient conquest, and irreparable loss, of the Eastern provinces. After the death of Eudocia, his first wife, he disobeyed the patriarch, and violated the laws, by his second marriage with his niece Martina; and the superstition of the Greeks beheld the judgment of heaven in the disease of the father and the deformity of his offspring. But the opinion of an illegitimate birth is sufficient to distract the choice, and lessen the obedience of the people: the ambition of Martina was quickened by maternal love, and perhaps by the envy of a stepmother; and the aged husband was too feeble to withstand the arts of conjugal allusions.

Constantine, his eldest son, enjoyed in a mature age the title of Augustus; but the weakness of his constitution required a colleague and a guardian, and he yielded with secret reluctance to the partition of the empire. The senate was summoned to the palace to ratify or attest the association of Heraclonas, the son of Martina; the imposition of the diadem was consecrated by the prayer and blessing of the patriarch; the senators and patricians adored the majesty of the great emperor and the partners of his reign; and as soon as the doors were thrown open, they were hailed by the tumultuary but important voice of the soldiers. After an interval of five months, the pompous ceremonies which formed the consecration of the Byzantine state were celebrated in the cathedral and the hippodrome: the concord of the royal brothers was affably displayed by the younger leaning on the arm of the elder; and the name of Martina was mingled in the reluctant or venial acclamations of the people. Heraclius survived this association about two years: his last testament declared his two sons the equal heirs of the Eastern empire, and commanded them to honour his widow Martina as their mother and their sovereign.

When Martina first appeared on the throne with the name and attributes of royalty, she was checked by a firm, though respectful, opposition; and the dying embers of freemasonry were kindled by the breath of superstitious prejudice. "We reverence," exclaimed the voice of a citizen, "we reverence the mother of our princes; but to those princes alone our obedience is due;" and Constantine, the elder emperor, is of an age to sustain, in his own hands, the weight of the sceptre. Your sex is excluded by nature from the toils of government. How could you, combat, how could you answer, the barbarians who, with hostile or friendly intentions, may approach the royal city? May heaven avert from the Roman republic this national disgrace, which would provoke the patience of the slaves of Pelasgia!" Martina descended from the throne with indignation, and sought a refuge in the female apartment of the palace. The reign of Constantine the Third lasted only one hundred and three days: he expired in the thirteenth year of his age, and, although his life had been a long malady, relief was entertained that poison had been the means, and his cruel stepmother the author, of his untimely fate. Martina reaped indeed the harvest of his death, and assumed the government in the name of the surviving emperor; but the ineffectual widow of Heraclius was universally abhorred; the jealousy of the people was awakened, and the two orphans whom Constantine had left, became the objects of the public care. It was in vain that the sister of Martina, who was no more than fifteen years of age, was taught to declare herself the guardian of his nephews, one of whom he had presented at the baptismal font: it was in vain that he were aware on the wood of the true cross, to defend them against all their enemies. On his deathbed, the late emperor had dispatched a trusty servant to arm the troops and provinces of the East in the defence of his helpless children: the eloquence and liberality of Valentin had been successful, and from his camp at Chalcedon he boldly demanded the punishment of the assassins, and the restoration of the lawful heir. The licence of the soldiers, who devoured the grapes and drank the wine of their Asiatic vineyards, provoked the citizens of Constantinople against the domineering authors of their calamities, and the doom of St. Sophia re-echoed, not with prayers and hymns, but with clamours and insurrections of an enraged multitude. At their insistent command, Heraclonas appeared in the
pulpit with the eldest of the royal orphans; Constantine alone was saluted as emperor of the Romans, and a crown of gold, which had been taken from the tomb of Heracleitus, was placed on his head, with the solemn benediction of the patriarch. But in the tumult of joy and indignation, the church was pillaged, the sanctuary was polluted by a promiscuous crowd of Jews and barbarians; and the Monochlites Pyrrhus, a creature of the emperor, after dropping a protestation on the altar, escaped by a prudent flight from the zeal of the Catholics. A more serious and bloody task was reserved for the senate, who derived a temporary strength from the consent of the soldiers and people. The spirit of Roman freedom revived the ancient and awful examples of the judgment of tyrants, and the Imperial culprits were deposed and condemned as the authors of the death of Constantine. But the severity of the con strictors was stained by the indiscriminate punishment of the innocent and the guilty: Martinus and Herculeus were sentenced to the amphitheatres, the former of her tongue, the latter of his nose, and after this cruel execution, they consumed the remainder of their days in exile and oblivion. The Greeks who were capable of reflection might find some consolation for their suffering, by observing the abuse of power when it was lodged in the hands of an aristocracy.

We shall imagine ourselves transported five hundred years backwards to the age of the Antonines, if we listen to the nation which Constantine did announce in the twelfth year of his age before the Byzantine senate. After returning his thanks for the just punishment of the murderer, who had intercepted the faintest hopes of his father's reign, "By the divine providence," said the young emperor, "and by your righteous decrees, Martinus and his accursed progeny have been cast headlong from the throne. Your majesty and wisdom have preserved the Roman state from degenerating into lawless tyranny. I therefore exhort and beseech you to stand forth as the counsellors and judges of the common safety." The senators were gratified by the respectful address and liberal donation of their sovereign; but these servile Greeks were unworthy and regardless of freedom; and in his mind, the lesson of an hour was quickly erased by the prejudices of the age and the habits of despotic. He retained only a jealous fear lest the senate or people should one day invade the right of primogeniture, and cast his brother Theodosius on an equal throne. By the imposition of holy orders, the grandson of Heraclitus was disqualified for the purple; but this ceremony, which seemed to profane the sacraments of the church, was insufficient to appease the aspirations of the tyrant, and the death of the son Theodosius could alone expiate the crime of his royal birth. His murder was avenged by the impressions of the people, and the assassin, in the fulness of power, was driven from his capital into voluntary and perpetual exile. Con- stans embarked for Greece; and, as if he meant to retom the abhorrence which he deserved, he is said, from the Imperial galley, to have spit against the walls of his native city. After passing the winter at Athens, he sailed to Tarquinia in Italy, visited Rome, and concluded a long pilgrimage of disgrace and sacrosanctio capitis, by fixing his residence at Syracuse. But if Constans could fly from his people, he could not fly from himself. The remorse of his conscience created a phantom who pursued him by land and sea, by day and by night; and the visionary Theodosius, presenting to his lips a cup of blood, said, or seemed to say, "Drink, brother, drink," a sure emblem of the aggravation of his guilt, since it had received from the hands of the dragon the mystic cup of the blood of Christ. Odious to himself and to mankind, Constans perished by domestic, perhaps by episcopal, treason, in the capital of Sicily. A servant who sailed in the bath, after pouring warm water on his head, struck him violently with the axe. His fall, stunned by the blow, and suffocated by the water; and his attendants, who wondered at the tardy delay, beheld with indifference the corpse of his lifeless emperor. The troops of Sicily invested with the purple an obscure youth, whose insinuative beauty smiled, and it might easily elude, the declining art of the painters and sculptors of the age.

Constans had left in the Byzantine palace three sons, the eldest of whom had been clothed in his infancy with the purple. When the father summoned them to attend his person in Sicily, these precious hostages were detained by the Greeks, and a firm refusal informed him that they were the children of the state. The news of his murder was conveyed with almost supernatural speed from Syracuse to Constantinople; and Constantine, the eldest of his sons, inherited his throne without being the heir of the public hatred. His subjects contributed, with zeal and alacrity, to chastise the guilt and presumption of a province which had usurped the rights of the senate and people; the young emperor sailed from the Hallespont with a powerful fleet, and the legions of Rome and Carthage were assembled under his standard in the harbour of Syracuse. The defeat of the Sicilian tyrant was easy; his punishment just, and his heartless head was exposed in the hippodrome; but I cannot applaud the clemency of a prince, who, among a crowd of victims, condemned the son of a patrician, for deploiring with some bitterness the execution of a virtuous father. The youth was castrated; he survived the operation, and the memory of this inhuman cruelty is preserved by the elevation of Germaine to the rank of a patriarch and saint. After pouring this bloody libation on his father's tomb, Constantine returned to his capital, and the growth of his young beard during the Sicilian voyage, was announced by the familiar surname of Potus taurus, to the Grecian world. But his reign, like that of his predecessor, was stained with fraternal discord. On his two brothers, Heraclius and Tiberius, he had bestowed the title of
Augustus; an empty titles, for they continued to languish, without trust or power, in the solitude of the palace. At their secret instigation, the troops of the Amilian chrest or province approached the city on the Asiatic side, demanded for the royal brothers the partition or exercise of sovereignty, and supported their audacious claim by a theological argument. They were Christians (they cried), and orthodox Catholics; the sincere votaries of the holy and undivided Trinity. Since there are three equal persons in heaven, it is reasonable there should be three equal persons upon earth. The emperor invited these learned divines to a friendly conference, in which they might propound their arguments to the senate; they obeyed the summons, but the prospect of their bodies hanging on the gibbet in the suburb of Galata, reconciled their companions to the unity of the reign of Constantine.

He pardoned his brothers, and their names were still pronounced in the public acclamations; but on the repetition or suspicion of a similar offence, the obnoxious princes were deprived of their titles and names, in the presence of the Catholic bishops who were assembled at Constantinople in the sixth general synod. In the close of his life, Pogonatus was anxious only to establish the right of primogeniture; the heir of his two sons, Justinian and Hierarchus, was offered on the shrine of St. Peter, as a symbol of their spiritual adoption by the pope; but the elder was alone exiled to the rank of Augustus, and the assurance of the empire.

After the decease of his father, the inheritance of the Roman world devolved to Justinian II.; and the name of a triumphant law-giver was dishonoured by the vices of a boy, who imitated his manslake only in the expensive luxury of building. His passions were strong; his understanding was feeble; and he was intoxicated with a foolish pride, that his birth had given him the command of millions, of whom the smallest community would not have chosen him for their local magistrate. His favourite ministers were two beings the least susceptible of human sympathy, an enmarch and a monk; to the one he abandoned the palace, to the other the finances; the former corrected the emperor’s mother with a scourge, the latter suspended the insolvent tributaries, with their heads downwards, over a slow and smoky fire. Since the days of Commodus and Caracalla, the cruelty of the Roman princes had most commonly been the effect of their fear; but Justinian, who possessed some vigour of character, enjoyed the sufferings, and avenged the revenge, of his subjects, about ten years, till the measure was full of his crimes and of their patience. In a dark dungeon, Leontius, a general of reputation, had grumbled above three years, with some of the noblest and most deserving of the patricians; he was suddenly drawn forth to assume the government of Greece; and this promotion of an injured man was a mark of the contempt rather than of the confidence of his prince. As he was followed in the port by the kind offices of his friend, Leontius observed with a sigh that he was a victim adored for sacrifice, and that inevitable death would pursue his footsteps. They ventured to reply, that glory and empire might be the recompense of a generous resolution; that every order of men admired the reign of a monster; and that the hands of two hundred thousand patriots expected only the voice of a leader. The night was chosen for their deliverance; and in the first effort of the conspirators, the prefect was slain, and the princes were forced open; the emissaries of Leontius proclaimed in every street, “Christians, go to St. Sophia!” and the reasonable text of the patriarch, “This is the day of the Lord!” was the prelude of an inflammatory sermon. From the church the people adjourned to the hippodrome; Justinian, in whose name not a sword had been drawn, was dragged before these tumultuary judges, and their clamours demanded the instant death of the tyrant. But Leontius, who was already clothed with the purple, cast an eye of pity on the prostrate son of his own benefactor and of so many emperors. The life of Justinian was spared; the amputation of his nose, perhaps of his tongue, was imperfectly performed; the happy flexibility of the Greek language could impose the name of Rhinometea; and the mutilated tyrant was banished to Cheronnais in Crim-Tartary, a lonely settlement, where corn, wine, and oil, were imported as foreign luxuries.

On the edge of the Scythian wilderness, Justinian still cherished the pride of his birth, and the hope of his restoration. After three years’ exile, he received the pleasing intelligence that his injury was avenged by a second revolution, and that Leontius in his turn had been dethroned and mutilated by the rebel Apsineus, who assumed the more respectable name of Tiberius. But the claim of lawful succession was still formidable to a plebeian usurper; and his jealousy was stimulated by the complaints and charges of the Cheronnais, who beheld the vices of the tyrant in the spirit of the exile. With a hand of flatterers, attached to his person by common hope or common despair, Justinian fled from the inexorable shores to the banks of the Chersones, who pitched their tents between the Taunus and Boryszew. The Khan entertained with pity and respect the royal suppliants; Platonoff, once an equal city, on the Asiatic side of the lake Molois, was assigned for his residence; and every Roman prejudice was stifled in his marriage with the sister of the Khan, who seems, however, from the name of Theolmar, to have received the sacrament of baptism. But the faithless Cheress was soon tempted by the gold of Constantinople; and had not the design been revealed by the conjugal love of Theolmar, her husband must have betrayed her, and her betrayer into the power of his enemies. After straggling, with his own bands, the two emissaries of the khan, Justinian sent back his wife to her brother, and embarked on the Euxine in search of new and more faithful allies. His vessel was assaulted by a violent tempest; and one of his plans companions advised him to do-
serve the mercy of God by a vow of general forgiveness, if he should be restored to the throne.

"Of forgiveness?" replied the intrepid tyrant;

"may I perish this instant — may the Almighty

which in the waves—if I consent to spare

a single head of my enemies!" He survived this impius menace, sailed into the mouth of the Danube, trusted his person in the royal village of the Bulgarians, and purchased the aid of Terveli, a pagan conqueror, by the promise of his daughter and a fair portion of the treasures of the empire. The Bulgarian kingdom extended to the confines of Thrace; and the two princes besought Constantinople at the head of fifteen thousand horse. Apollinar was dismayed by the sudden and hostile apparition of his rival, whose head had been promised by the Chazars, and of whose existence he was yet ignorant. After an absence of ten years, the crimes of Justinian were faintly remembered, and the birth and misfortunes of their inordinate sovereignty excited the pity of the multitudes, ever discontented with the ruling power; and by the active diligence of his adherents he was introduced into the city and palace of Constantinople.

In rewarding his allies, and recalling his wife, Justinian displayed a new sense of honour and gratitude; and Terveli retired, after swiping away an heap of gold coin, which he measured with his Scythian whip. But never was more religiously performed than the sacred oath of revenge which he had sworn amidst the storms of the Euxine. The two usurpers, for I must reserve the name of tyrant for the conqueror, were dragged into the hippodrome, the one from his prison, the other from his palace. Before their execution, Leontius and Apollinar were cast prostrate in chains beneath the throne of the emperor; and Justinian, planting a foot on each of their necks, contemplated above an hour the chariot-race, while the inconstant people shouted, in the words of the Psalmist, "Thou shalt trample upon the serpent and his seed;" and on the lion and dragon shalt thou set thy foot!"

The universal delusion which he had once experienced might provoke him to repeat the wish of Caligula, that the Roman people had but one head. Yet I shall presume to observe, that such a wish is unworthy of an ingenious tyrant, since his revenge and cruelty would have been extinguished by a single blow, instead of the slow variety of tortures which Justinian inflicted on the victims of his anger. His pleasures were inexhaustible: neither private virtue nor public service could expiate the guilt of active, or even passive, obedience to an established government; and during the six years of his new reign, he considered the axe, the cord, and the rack, as the only instruments of royalty. But his most implacable hatred was pointed against the Chazars, who had insulted his exile and violated the laws of hospitality. Their remote situation afforded some means of defence, or at least of escape; and a grievous tax was imposed on Constantinople, to supply the preparations of a fleet and army. **All are guilty, and all!**

"must perish," was the mandate of Justinian; and the bloody execution was intrusted to his favourite Stephen, who was recommended by the epithet of the savage. Yet even the savage Stephen imperfectly accomplished the intentions of his sovereign. The slowness of his attack allowed the greater part of the inhabitants to withdraw into the country; and the minister of vengeance contented himself with reducing the youth of both sexes to a state of servitude, with roasting alive seven of the principal citizens, with drowning twenty in the sea, and with seizing forty-two in chains to receive their doom from the mouth of the emperor. In their return, the fleet was driven on the rocky shore of Anatolia; and Justinian appealed to the disabilities of the Euxine, which had involved so many thousands of his subjects and enemies in a common shipwreck; but the tyrant was still insatiate of blood; and a second expedition was commanded to extirpate the remains of the proscribed colony. In the short interval, the Chazars had returned to their city, and were prepared to die in arms; the khan of the Chazars had renounced the cause of his odious brother; the exiles of every province were assembled in Tauris; and Bardanes, under the name of Philippicus, was invested with the purple. The Imperial troops, unwilling and unable to perpetrate the vengeance of Justinian, escaped his displeasure by abjuring his allegiance; the fleet, under their new sovereign, steered back a more auspicious course to the harbours of Sinope and Constantinople; and every tongue was prompt to pronounce, every hand to execute, the death of the tyrant. Destitute of friends, he was deserted by his barbarian guards; and the stroke of the assassin was praised as an act of patriotism and Roman virtue. His son Tiberius had taken refuge in a church; his aged grandmother guarded the door; and the innocent youth, suspending round his neck the most formidable relics, embraced with one hand the altar, with the other the wood of the true cross. But the popular fury that dares to trample on superstition, is due to the cries of humanity; and the rage of Heracleian was extinguished after a reign of one hundred years.

Between the fall of the Heracleian and the rise of the Isaacian dynasty, after a short interval of six years is divided into three reigns. Bardanes, or Philippicus, was hailed at Constantinople, as an hero who had delivered his country from a tyrant; and he might taste some moments of happiness in the first transports of sincere and universal joy. Justinian had left behind him an ample treasure, the fruit of cruelty and rapine; but this useful fund was soon andilly dissipated by his successor. On the festival of his birthday, Philippicus entertained the multitude with the game of the hippodrome; from thence he paraded through the streets with a thousand banners and a thousand trumpets; refreshed himself in the baths of Zeuxippos; and returning to the palace, entertained his nobles with a sumptuous banquet. At the meridian hour he withdrew to his chamber, intoxicated with fusi-
terry and wine, and forgetful that his example had made every subject ambitious, and that every ambitious subject was his secret enemy. Some bold conspirators introduced themselves in the disorder of the feast; and the clambering sestarch was surprised, hounded, blinded, and disposed, before he was sensible of his danger. Yet the traitors were deprived of their reward; and the free voices of the senate and people promoted Armenia from the office of secretary to that of emperor: he assumed the title of Anastasius the Second, and displayed in a short and troubled reign the virtues both of peace and war. But, after the extinction of the Imperial line, the rule of obedience was violated, and every change disturbed the seeds of new revolutions. In a mutiny of the fleet, an obscure and reluctant officer of the revenue was forcibly invested with the purple; after some months of a naval war, Anastasius resigned the sceptre; and the conqueror, Theodosius the Great, triumphed.

Theodosius II. 23 Jan., 428.

Third, submitted in his turn to the superior ascendant of Leo, the general and emperor of the Oriental troops. His two predecessors were permitted to embrace the ecclesiastical profession; the restless impatience of Anastasius tempted him to risk and to lose his life in a treasonable enterprise; but the last days of Theodosius were honourable and secure. The single sublime word, "heaven," which he inscribed on his tomb, expresses the confidence of philosophy or religion: and the fame of his miracles was long preserved among the people of Ephesus. This convenient shelter of the church might sometimes impose a lesson of clemency; but it may be questioned whether it is for the public interest to diminish the perils of an unsuccessful ambition.

Leo III. 24th June, 711.

I have dwelt on the fall of a tyrant; I shall briefly represent the founder of a new dynasty, who is known to posterity by the inventors of his enemies, and whose public and private life is involved in the ecclesiastical story of the Iconoclasts. Yet, in spite of the clamours of superstition, a favourable prejudice for the character of Leo the Isaurian may be reasonably drawn from the obscurity of his birth, and the duration of his reign. — I. In an age of mean spirit, the prospect of an Imperial reward would have kindled every energy of the mind, and produced a crowd of competitors as deserving as they were desirous to reign. Even in the corruption and instability of the modern Greeks, the elevation of a plebeian from the last to the first rank of society, supposes some qualifications above the level of the multitude. He would probably be ignorant and disdainful of speculative science; and, in the pursuit of fortune, he might absolve himself from the obligations of benevolence and justice: but to his character we may ascribe the useful virtues of prudence and fortitude, the knowledge of mankind, and the important art of gaining their confidence, and directing their passions. It is agreed that Leo was a native of Isauria, and that Cassius was his praenomen name. The writers, whose awkward satire is praise, describe him as an insipient pedlar, who drove an ass with some paltry merchandise to the country fairs; and foolishly relate that he met on the road some Jewish fortune-tellers, who promised him the Roman empire, on condition that he should abolish the worship of idols. A more probable account relates the migration of his father from Asia Minor to Taruce, where he exercised the lucrative trade of a grocer; and he must have acquired considerable wealth, since the first introduction of his son was procured by a supply of five hundred sheep to the Imperial camp. His first service was in the guards of Justinian, where he soon attracted the notice, and by degrees the jealousy, of the tyrant. His valour and dexterity were conspicuous in the Colchian war: from Anastasius he received the command of the Anatolian legions, and by the subjugation of the soldiers he was raised to the empire with the general applause of the Huns. — II. In this dangerous elevation, Leo the Third supported himself against the envy of his equals, the discontent of a powerful faction, and the assaults of his foreign and domestic enemies. The Catholics, who accuse his religious innovations, are obliged to confess that they were undertaken with temper and conducted with firmness. Their silence respects the wisdom of his administration and the purity of his manners. After a reign of twenty-four years, he peaceably expired in the palace of Constantinople; and the purple which he had acquired, was transmitted by the right of inheritance to the third generation.

In a long reign of thirty-four years, the son and successor of Leo, Constantine the Fifth, surmounted Cephalonia, and was the exponent of the image of idols of the church. Their votaries have exhausted the bitterness of religious gall in their portrait of this spotted panther, this antichrist, this flying dragon of the serpent's seed, who surpassed the vices of Elagabalus and Nero. He was a long butchery of whatever was most noble, or holy, or innocent, in his empire. In person, the emperor assisted at the execution of his victims; surveyed their agonies, listened to their groans, and indulged, without satiating, his appetite for blood; a plate of ashes was accepted as a grateful offering, and his manuscripts were often scourged or mutilated by the royal hand. His surname was derived from his pollution of his baptismal font. The infant might be-examined; but the manly pleasure of Cyprian degraded him below the level of a brute; his lust confounded the eternal distinctions of sex and species; and he seemed to extract some unnatural delight from the objects most offensive to human sensibility. In his religion, the Iconoclast was an Heretic, a Jew, a Mahometan, a Pagan, and an Atheist; and his belief of an invisible power could be discovered only in his magic rites, human victims, and unnatural sacrifices to Venus and the demons of antiquity. His life was stained with the most opposite vices; and the vices which covered his body, anticipated before his death the sentiment of his torturers. Of these accusations, which I have so intemperately
copied, a part is refuted by its own absurdity; and in the private anecdote of the life of princes, the lie is more easy as the detection is more difficult. Without adopting the pernicious maxim, that where much is alleged, something must be true, I can however discern, that Constantine the Fifth was absolute and cruel. Calumny is more prone to exaggerate than to invent; and her licentious tongue is checked in some measure by the experience of the age and country to which she appeals. Of the bishops and monks, the generals and magistrates, who are said to have suffered under his reign, the numbers are recorded, the names were conspicuous, the execution was public, the mutilation visible and permanent. The Catholics hated the person and government of Copronymus; but even their hatred is a proof of their opinion. They dissemble the provocations which might excuse or justify his rigour, but even these provocations must gradually inflame his resentment, and harden his temper in the use or the abuse of despotism. Yet the character of the fifth Constantine was not devoid of merit, nor did his government always deserve the curses or the contempt of the Greeks. From the confession of his enemies, I am informed of the restoration of an ancient aqueduct, the redemption of two thousand five hundred captives; of the uncommon plenty of the times, and of the new colonies with which he re-peopled Constantinople and the Thracian cities. They reluctantly praise his activity and courage; he was on horseback in the field at the head of his legions; and, although the fortune of his arms was various, he triumphed by sea and land, on the Ephrates and the Danube, in civil and barbarian war. Heretical praise must be cast into the scale, to counterbalance the weight of orthodox invective. The Iconoclasts revered the virtues of the prince; forty years after his death, they still prayed before the tomb of the saint. A miraculous vision was propagated by fanaticism or fraud; and the Christian hero appeared on a milk-white steed, dismounting his lance against the Pagans of Bulgaria: "an absurd fable," says the Catholic historian, "since Copronymus is claimed with the domons in the abyss of hell."

Leo the Fourth, the son of the fifth and the father of the sixth Constantine, was of a feeble constitution both of mind and body, and the principal care of his reign was the settlement of the succession. The association of the young Constantine was urged by the officious zeal of his subjects; and the emperor, conscious of his decay, complied, after a prudent hesitation, with their unanimous wishes. The royal infant, at the age of five years, was crowned with his mother Irene; and the formal consent was ratified by every circumstance of pomp and solemnity, that could dazzle the eyes or baffle the conscience of the Greeks. An oath of fidelity was administered in the palace, the church, and the hippodrome, to the several orders of the state, who adjured the holy names of the sun, and mother, of God. He witts, O Christ! that we will watch over the safety of Constantine the son of Leo, ex-
the maturity of youth; the maternal yoke became more grievous; and he listened to the favourites of his own age, who shared his pleasures, and were ambitious of sharing his power. Their reasons convinced him of his right, their praises of his ability; to reign; and he consented to reward the services of Irene by a perpetual banishment to the isle of Sicily. But her vigilance and penetration easily disconcerted their rash projects; a similar, or more severe, punishment was retaliated on themselves and their advisers; and Irene inflicted on the ungrateful prince the chastisement of a boy. After this contest, the mother and the sun were at the head of two domestic factions; and, instead of mild influence and voluntary obedience, she held in chains a captive and an enemy. The empress was overthrown by the abuse of victory; the oath of fidelity, which she exacted to herself alone, was pronounced with reluctant murmurs; and the bold refusal of the Armenian guards encouraged a first and general declaration, that Constantine the Sixth was the lawful emperor of the Romans. In this character he ascended his hereditary throne, and dismissed Irene to a life of solitude and repose. But her taunting spirit condescended to the arts of dissimulation; she flattered the bishops and earls, revived the filial tenderness of the prince, regained his confidence, and betrayed his credulity. The character of Constantine was not destitute of sense or spirit; but his education had been studiously neglected; and his ambitious mother exposed to the public enmity the vices which she had nourished, and the actions which she had secretly advised: his divorce andsecond marriage offended the prejudices of the clergy, and by his imprudent rigour he forfeited the attachment of the Armenian guards. A powerful conspiracy was formed for the restoration of Irene; and the secret, though widely diffused, was faithfully kept above eight months, till the emperor, suspicious of his danger, escaped from Constantinople, with the design of appealing to the provinces and armies. By this hasty flight, the empress was left on the brink of the precipice; yet before she implored the mercy of her son, Irene addressed a private epistle to the friends whom she had placed about his person, with a menace, that unless they accomplished, she would reveal their treason. Their fear rendered them intrepid; they seized the emperor on the Asiatic shore; and he was transported to the populous apartment of the palace, where he had first seen the light. In the mind of Irene, ambition had stifled every sentiment of humanity and nature; and it was decreed, in her bloody council, that Constantine should be rendered incapable of the throne: her emissaries assailed the sleeping prince, and stabbed his daggers with such violence and precipitation into his eyes, as if they meant to execute a mortal sentence. An audacious passage of Theophanes pervaded the annals of the church that death was the immediate consequence of this barbarous execution. The Catholics have been deceived or misled by the authority of Dorotheus; and Protestant zeal has re-echoed the words of a cardinal, deacon, as it should seem, to favour the

patroness of images. Yet the blind son of Irene survived many years, oppressed by the court and forgotten by the world; the Isaurian dynasty was silently extinguished, and the memory of Constantine was recalled only by the nuptials of his daughter Euphrosyne with the emperor Michael the Second.

The most bigoted orthodoxy has justly execrated the unnatural mother, who may not easily be paralleled in the history of crimes. To her bloody deed, superstition has attributed a subsequent darkness of seventeen days, during which many vessels in mid-day were driven from their course, as if the sun, a globe of fire so vast and so remote, could sympathize with the atoms of a revolving planet. On earth, the crime of Irene was left five years unpunished; her reign was crowned with external splendour; and if she could silence the voice of conscience, she neither heard nor regarded the reproaches of mankind. The Roman world bowed to the government of a female; and as she moved through the streets of Constantinople, the reins of four milk-white steeds were held by as many patricians, who marched on foot before the golden chariot of their queen. But these patricians were for the most part eunuchs; and their black ingratitude justified, on this occasion, the popular hatred and contempt. Raised, enriched, intrusted with the first dignities of the empire, they hastily conspired against their benefactress; the great treasurer Nicephorus was secretly invested with the purple; her successor was introduced into the palace, and crowned at St. Sophia by the venal patriarch. In their first interview, she recapitulated with dignity the revolutions of her life, gently accused the perfidy of Nicephorus, intimated that he owed his life to her unsuspicous clemency, and for the throne and treasures which she resigned, solicited a decent and honourable retreat. His aversion refused this modish compensation; and, in her exile of the isle of Lesbos, the empress earned a scanty subsistence by the labours of her distaff.

Many tyrants have reigned, undoubtedly more criminal than Nicephorus, but none perhaps more deeply incurred the universal abhorrence of their people. His character was stained with the three odious vices of hypocrisy, ingratitude, and avarice: his want of virtue was not redeemed by any superior talents, nor his want of talents, by any pleasing qualifications. Unskilful and unfortunate in war, Nicephorus was vanquished by the Saracens, and slain by the Bulgarians; and the advantage of his death overbalanced, in the public opinion, the destruction of a Hellenic army. His son and heir Symeon escaped from the field with a mortal wound; yet six months of an excruciating life was sufficient to refute his innocence, though popular declamation, that he would in all things avoid the example of his father. On the near prospect of his decease, Michael, the great master of the palace, and the husband of his sister Procopia, was named by every person of the palace and city, except by his envious bro-

Irene.  
August 12.  

Nicephorus.  
July 31.
other. Tensions of a nature now falling from his hand, he conspired against the life of his successor, and cherished the idea of changing to a democracy the Roman empire. But these rash projects served only to inflame the soul of the people, and to remove the scruples of the candidate: Michael the First accepted the purple, and before he sunk into the grave, the son of Nicephorus implored the clemency of his new sovereign.

After Michael's reign, Had Michael in an age of youthless passion ascended an hereditary throne, he might have reigned and died the father of his people: but his mild virtues were adapted to the shade of private life, nor was he capable of controlling the ambition of his equals, or of resisting the arms of the victorious Bulgarians. While his want of ability and success exposed him to the contempt of the soldiers, the masculine spirit of his wifeProcopius awakened their indignation. Even the Greeks of the ninth century were provoked by the insolence of a female, who, in the front of the standards, presumed to direct their discipline and animate their valor; and their licentious clamours advised the new Semites to reverence the majesty of a Roman camp. After an unsuccessful campaign, the emperor left; in their winter-quarters of Thrace, a disaffected army, under the command of his enemies; and their artful eloquence persuaded the soldiers to break the dominion of the empress, to degrade the husband ofProcopius, and to assert the right of a military election. They marched towards the capital: yet the clergy, the senate, and the people of Constantinople, adhered to the cause of Michael; and the troops and treasures of Asia might have protected the mischiefs of civil war. But his humanity (by the ambitions, it will be termed his weakness) protected not: a drop of Christian blood should be shed in his quarrel; and his messengers presented the conspirators with the keys of the city and the palace. They were disarmed by his innocence and submission; his life and his eyes were spared; and the Imperial monk enjoyed the comforts of solitude and religion above thirty-two years after he had been stripped of the purple and separated from his wife.

A rebel, in the time of Nicephorus, the famous and unfortunate Harshness, had once the curiosity to consult an Asiatic prophet, who, after predicting his fall, announced the fortunes of his three principal officers, Leo the Armenian, Michael the Phrygian, and Thomas the Cappadocian, the successive reigns of the two former, the frivolidy and fatal enterprise of the third. This prediction was verified, or rather was produced by the event. Ten years afterwards, when the Babinian camp rejected the husband ofProcopius, the crown was presented to the same Leo, the first in military rank and the secret author of the conspiracy. As he affected to hesitate, "With this sword," said his companion Michael, "will I open the gates of Constantine!" Trying to use his Imperial sword, or instantly to plunge it into your bosom, if you obstinately resist the just desires of your fellow-soldiers." The compliance of the Armenian was rewarded with the empire, and he reigned seven years and an half under the name of Leo the Fifth. Educated in a camp, and ignorant both of laws and letters, he introduced into his civil government the rigour and even cruelty of military discipline; but if his severity was sometimes dangerous to the innocent, it was always formidable to the guilty. His religious inconstancy was taxed by the epistle of Chalcedon; but the Catholics have acknowledged, by the voice of a saint and confessors, that the life of the Iconoclast was useful to the republic. The zeal of his companion Michael was repaid with riches, honours, and military command; and his subordinate talents were beneficially employed in the public service. Yet the Phrygian was dissatisfied at receiving as a favour a scanty portion of the Imperial prize which he had bestowed on his equal; and his discontent, which sometimes evaporated in hasty discourse, as length assumed a more threatening and hostile aspect against a prince whom he represented as a tyrant. Generally, however, he was repeatedly respected, warned, and dismissed the old companion of his arms; still fear and resentment prevailed over gratitude; and Michael, after a scrutiny into his actions and designs, was convicted of treason, and sentenced to be burnt alive in the furnaces of the private baths. The devout humanity of the empressTheophano was fatal to her husband and family. A solemn day, the twenty-fifth of December, had been fixed for the execution; she urged that the anniversary of the Saviour's birth would be profaned by this inhuman spectacle, and Leo consented with reluctance to a decent respite. But on the vigil of the feast, his sleepless anxiety prompted him to visit at the dead of night the chamber in which his enemy was confined: he beheld him released from his chains, and stretched on his gaoler's bed in a profound slumber: Leo was alarmed at these signs of security and intelligence; but though he retired with silent steps, his entrance and departure were noticed by a slave who lay concealed in a corner of the prison. Under the presence of requesting the spiritual aid of a confessor, Michael informed the conspirators that their lives depended on his discretion, and that a few hours were left to assure their own safety, by the deliverance of their friend and country. On the great festivals, a chosen band of priests and choristers was admitted into the palace by a private gate to sing matins in the chapel; and Leo, who regulated with the same strictness the discipline of the choir and of the camp, was seldom absent from those early devotions. In the ecclesiastical habit, but with swords under their robes, the conspirators mingled with the procession, lurked in the angles of the chapel, and expected, as the signal of murder, the intonation of the first psalm by the emperor himself. The imperfect light, and the uniformity of dress, might have favoured his escape, while their assault was pointed against an harmless priest; but they soon discovered their mistake, and encompassed all sides the royal victim. Without a weapon and without a friend, he grasped a weighty cross, and stood at bay against the hunters of his life; but
as he asked for mercy, "This is the hour, not of mercy, but of vengeance," was the inexorable reply. The stroke of a well-drawn sword separated from his body the right arm and the head, and Leo the Armenian was slain at the feet of the altar.

Michael II. A memorable reverse of fortune occurred, which was displayed in Michael the Slave. Michael's father, who, from a defect in his speech, was nicknamed the Stammerer. He was purchased from the fiery furnace to the sovereignty of an empire; and, as in the tumult a smith could not readily be found, the fettors remained on his legs several hours after he was seated on the throne of the Caesars. The royal blood which had been the price of his elevation, was unprofitably spent; in the purple he retained the ignoble vices of his origin; and Michael lost his provinces with as supreme indifference as if they had been the inheritance of his fathers. His title was disputed by Thomas, the last of the military tyrants who transported into Europe four score thousand barbarians from the banks of the Tigris and the shores of the Caspian. He formed the siege of Constantinople, but the capital was defended with spiritual and carnal weapons; a Bulgarian king assaulted the camp of the Oriental, and Thomas the misfortune, or the weakness, to fall alive into the power of the conqueror. The hands and feet of the rebel were amputated; he was placed on an ass, and amidst the insults of the people, was led through the streets, which he sprinkled with his blood. The deprivation of remuneration, as savage as they were corrupt, is marked by the presence of the emperor himself.

Deaf to the lamentations of a fellow-soldier, he incessantly pressed the discovery of more accomplishments, till his curiosity was checked by the question of an honest or guilty minister, "Would you give credit to an enemy, against the most faithful of your friends?" After the death of his first wife, the emperor, at the request of the senate, drew from her monastery Euphrosyne, the daughter of Constantine the Sixth. Her august birth might justify a stipulation in the marriage-contract, that her children should equally share the empire with their elder brother. But the misfortunes of Michael and Euphrosyne were barren; and she was content with the title of mother of Theophilos, his son and successor.

The character of Theophilos is a rare example in which religious zeal has allowed, and perhaps magnified, the virtues of an heroic and a persecutor. His valour was often felt by the enemies, and his justice by the subjects, of the monarchy; but the valour of Theophilos was rash and fruitless, and his justice arbitrary and cruel. He displayed the blemish of the cross against the Saracen, but his five expeditions were concluded by a signal overthrow; Amularium, the native city of his ancestors, was levelled with the ground; and from his military toils, he derived only the tarnish of the Unfortunate. The wisdom of a sovereign is comprised in the institution of laws and the choice of magistrates, and while he seems without action, his civil government revolves round his centre with the silence and order of the planetary system. But the justice of Theophilos was fashioned on the model of the Oriental despots, who, in personal and irregular acts of authority, could inflict the reason or passion of the moment, without measuring the sentence by the law, or the penalty by the offence. A poor woman threw herself at the emperor's feet to complain of a powerful neighbour, the brother of the empress, who had raised his palace-wall to such an inconvenient height, that her humble dwelling was excluded from light and air! On the proof of the fact, instead of granting, like an ordinary judge, sufficient or ample damages to the plaintiff, the sovereign adjourned to her ease and benefic the palace and the ground. Nor was Theophilos content with this extravagant satisfaction: his real converted a civil trespass into a criminal act; and the unfortunate petitioner was stripped and scourged in the public place of Constantinople. For some venal offences, some defect of equity or vigilance, the principal ministers, a prefect, a quartermaster of the guards, were banished or mutilated, or scalped with boiling pitch, or burnt alive in the hippodrome: and these dreadful examples might be the effect of error or caprice, they must have alienated from his service the best and wisest of the citizens. But the pride of the monarch was flattered in the exercise of power, or as he thought, of virtue; and the people, safe in their obscurity, applauded the danger and debasement of their superiors. This extraordinary vigour was justified, by some measure, by its salutary consequences; since, after a scrutiny of seventeen days, not a complaint or abuse could be found in the court or city: and it might be alleged that the Greeks could be ruled only with a rod of iron, and that the public interest is the motive and law of the supreme judge. Yet in the crime, or the suspicion, of treason, that judge is of all others the most credulous and partial.

Theophilos might inflict a tardy vengeance on the assassins of Leo and the successors of his father, but he enjoyed the fruits of their crime; and his jealous tyranny sacrificed a brother and a prince to the future safety of his life. A Persian of the race of the Sassanids died in poverty and exile at Constantinople, bearing an only son, the issue of a plebeian marriage. At the age of twelve years, the royal birth of Theophilos was revealed, and his merit was not unworthy of his birth. He was educated in the Byzantine palace, a Christian and a soldier; advanced with rapid steps in the career of fortune and glory; received the hand of the emperor's sister, and was promoted to the command of thirty thousand Persians, who, like his father, had that from the Mahometan conquerors. These troops, doubly infected with mercenary and fanatical vices, were desirous of revolting against their benefactor, and erecting the standard of their native king; but the loyal Theophilos rejected their offers, disconcerted their schemes, and escaped from their hands to the camp or palace of his royal brother. A generous confidence might have secured a faithful and able guardian for his wife and his infant son, to whom Theophilos, in the flower
of his age, was compelled to leave the inheritance of the empire. But his jealousy was exasperated by envy and disease: he feared the dangerous virtues which might either support or oppress their infancy and weakness; and the dying emperor demanded the head of the Persian prince. With savage delight, he recognised the familiar features of his brother: "Then art no longer Theosophus," he said; and sinking on his couch, he added, with a faltering voice, "Soon, too soon, I shall be no more Thespian!"

The Russians, who have borrowed from the Greeks the greatest part of their civil and ecclesiastical policy, preserved, till the last century, a singular institution in the marriage of the czars. They collected, not the virgins of every rank and of every province, a vain and romantic idea, but the daughters of the principal nobles, who awaited in the palace the choice of their sovereign. It is affirmed, that a similar method was adopted in the captivities of Thespianus. With a golden apple in his hand, he slowly walked between two lines of contending beauties: his eye was detained by the charms of Issa, and, in the awkwardness of a first declaration, the prince could only observe, that, in this world, women had been the cause of much evil: "And surely, sir," she partly replied, "they have likewise been the occasion of much good." This affectation of unmeasurable wit displeased the imperial favor; he turned aside in disgust; Issa concealed her mortification in a covert; and the modest silence of Theodosia was rewarded with the golden apple. She deserved the love, but did not escape the severity of her lord. From the palace gardens he bid her a reed of deep and laden, and steering into the part: ere the discovery that the precious cargo of Syrian luxury was the property of his wife, he condemned the ship to the flames, with a sharp reproach, that her avarice had degraded the character of a czar into that of a merchant.

Yet his last choice intrusted her with the guardianship of the empire and her son Michael, who was left an orphan in the fifth year of his age. The restoration of images, and the final extirpation of the Iconoclasts, has endeared her name to the devotion of the Greeks, but in the fervor of religious zeal, Theodosia entertained a grateful regard for the memory and salvation of her husband. After thirteen years of prudent and frugal administration, she perceived the decline of her influence; but the second Irene imitated only the virtues of her predecessor. Instead of combating against the life or government of her son, she retired, without a struggle, though not without a murmur, to the solitude of private life, deploiring the ingratitude, the vices, and the inevitable ruin, of the worthless youth.

Among the successors of Nero and Elagabalus, we have not hitherto found the imitation of their vices, the character of a Roman prince who considered pleasure as the object of life, and virtue as the enemy of pleasure. Whatever might have been the maternal care of Theodosia in the education of Michael the Third, her unfortunate son was a king before he was a man. If the ambitious mother laboured to check the progress of reason, she could not cool the coalition of passion; and her selfish policy was justly repaid by the contempt and ingratitude of the headstrong youth. At the age of eighteen, he rejected her authority, without feeling his own incapacity to govern the empire and himself. With Theodosia, all gravity and wisdom retired from the court; their place was supplied by the alternate dominion of vice and folly; and it was impossible, without forfeiting the public esteem, to acquire or preserve the favours of the emperor.

The millions of gold and silver which had been accumulated for the service of the state, were lavished on the vices of men, who fattened his passions and slaked his pleasures; and in a reign of thirteen years, the richest of sovereigns was compelled to strip the palace and the churches of their precious furniture. Like Nero, he delighted in the amusements of the theatre, and sighed to be surpassed in the accomplishments in which he should have blushed to excel. Yet the studies of Nero in music and poetry betrayed some symptoms of a liberal taste; the more ignoble arts of the son of Thespianus were confined to the chariot-race of the hippodrome. The four factions which had agitated the peace, still assumed the idleness, of the capital: for himself, the emperor assumed the blue livery; the three rival colours were distributed to his favourites, and in the vile though eager contention he forgot the dignity of his person and the safety of his dominions. He silenced the messenger of an invasion, who presumed to divert his attention in the most critical moment of the race; and by his command, the important consuls were extinguished, that too frequently spread the alarm from Tarentum to Constantinople. The most skilful charioteers obtained the first place in his confidence and esteem; their merit was profusely rewarded; the emperor feasted in their horses, and presented their children at the baptismal font; and while he applauded his own popularity, he affected to blame the cold and stately reserve of his predecessors. The unnatural lusts which had degraded even the manhood of Nero, were banished from the world; yet the strength of Michael was consumed by the indulgence of love and intemperance. In his midnight revels, when his passions were inflamed by wine, he was provoked to issue the most sanguinary commands; and if any feelings of humanity were left, he was reduced, with the return of sense, to approve the salutary disobedience of his servants. But the most extraordinary feature in the character of Michael, is the profane mockery of the religion of his country. The superstitions of the Greeks might indeed excite the smile of a philosopher; but his smile would have been rational and temperate; and he must have condemned the ignominious folly of a youth who insulted the objects of public veneration. A buffoon of the court was invested in the robes of the patriarch; his twelve metropolitans, among whom the emperor was ranked, assumed their ecclesiastical garments: they used or abused the sacred vessels of the altar; and in their buccanerian feasts, the holy communion was administered in a monstrous
compound of vinegar and mustard. Nor were
these impious spectacles concealed from the eyes
of the city. On the day of a solemn festival, the
emperor, with his bishops or buffoons, rode on
asses through the streets, encountered the true	patriarch at the head of his clergy, and by their
licentious shouts and obscene gestures, dis
terred the gravity of the Christian procession.
The devotion of Michael appeared only in some
offence to reason or piety: he received his
theatrical crowns from the statue of the Virgin;
and an imperial tomb was violated for the
take of burning the bones of Constantine the
Iconoclast. By this extravagant conduct, the
son of Theophillus became as contemptible as
he was odious: every citizen was impatient for
the deliverance of his country; and even the
favourites of the moment were apprehensive
that a caprice might match away what a caprice
had bestowed. In the thirtieth year of his
age, and in the hour of intoxication and sleep,
Michael the Third was murdered in his cham
ber by the founder of a new dynasty, whom the
emperor had raised to an equality of rank and
power.

The genealogy of Basil the Ma
crobadian (if it be not the spurious
offspring of pride and flattery) ex
hibits a genuine picture of the revolution
of the most illustrious families. The Arsacids,
the rivals of Rome, possessed the sceptre of the
East near four hundred years; a younger branch
of these Parthian kings continued to reign in
Armenia; and their royal descendants survived
the partition and servitude of that ancient
monarchy. Two of these, Artaksum and Chilien,
escaped or retired to the court of Leo the
First; his bounty seated them in a safe
and hospitable exile, in the province of Mas
donia; Adrianople was their final settlement.
During several generations they maintained the
dignity of their birth; and their Roman pat
riotism rejected the tempting offers of the Per
sian and Arabian powers, who recalled them to
their native country. But their splendour was
insensibly clouded by time and poverty, and
the father of Basil was reduced to a small farm,
which he cultivated with his own hands; yet he
succeeded to disgrace the blood of the Aracids
by a pious alliance; his wife, a widow of
Adrianople, was pleased to count among her
ancestors the great Constantine; and their royal
infant was connected by some dark affinities of
lineage or country with the Macedonian Alex
ander. No sooner was he born, than the cradle
of Basil, his family, and his city, were swept
away by an inundation of the Bulgarians: he
was educated a slave in a foreign land; and in
this severe discipline, he acquired the hardness
of body and firmness of mind which prepared
his future elevation. In the ages of youth or
manhood he shared the deliverance of the Ro
man captives, who generously broke their fetters,
merched through Bulgaria to the shores of the
Euxine, defeated two armies of barbarians,
embarked in the ships which had been stationed
for their reception, and returned to Constan
tinople, from whence they were distributed to
their respective homes. But the freedom of
Basil was marked and institute: his farm was
ruined by the calamities of war; after his
father's death, his manual labour, or service,
could no longer support a family of orphans
and he resolved to seek a more considerable
theatre, in which every virtue and every vice
might lead to the paths of greatness. The first
night of his arrival at Constantinople, without
friends or money, the weary pilgrim slept on
the steps of the church of St. Dionysius: he was
fed by the casual hospitality of a monk; and
was introduced to the service of a cousin and
namesake of the emperor Theophillus; who,
though himself of a diminutive person, was
always followed by a train of tall and hands
ome domestics. Basil attended his patron to
the government of Peloponnese; eclipsed, by
his personal merit, the birth and dignity of
Theophillus; and formed an useful connection
with a wealthy and charitable matron of Patra
Her spiritual or carnal love embraced the young
adventurer, whom she adopted as her son.
Daniel presented him with thirty slaves; and the
produce of her bounty was expended in the
support of his brothers, and the purchase of
some large estates in Macedonia. His gratitude
or ambition still attached him to the service of
Theophillus; and a lucky accident recommended
him to the notice of the court. A famous
wrestler, in the train of the Bulgarian ambas
dors, had defied, at the royal banquet, the
boldest and most robust of the Greeks. The
strength of Basil was praised; he accepted the
challenge; and the barbarian champion was
overthrown at the first onset. A beautiful but
vicious horse was condemned to be humiliated;
it was subdued by the dexterity and courage of
the servant of Theophillus; and his conqueror
was promoted to an honourable rank in the
Imperial stables. But it was impossible to
obtain the confidence of Michael, without compli
cing with his vices; and his new favourite,
the great chamberlain of the palace, was raised
and supported by a disgraceful marriage with a
royal concubine, and the disdainer of his sister,
who succeeded to her place. The pub
lic administration had been transferred to the
Caesar Bardas, the brother and enemy of Theo
dora; but the arts of female influence per
suaded Michael to hate and to fear his uncle:
he was drawn from Constantinople, under the
pretence of a Cretan expedition, and stabbed in
the tent of audience, by the sword of the cham
berlain, and in the presence of the em
perror. About a month after this execution,
Basil was invested with the title of Augustus
and the government of the empire. He sup
ported this unequal association till his in
fluence was fortified by popular esteem. His
life was endangered by the caprice of the em
peror; and his dignity was profaned by a second
colleague, who had reigned in the palaces. Yet
the murder of his benefactor must be considered
as an act of ingratitude and treason; and the
churches which he dedicated to the name of St.
Michael, were a poor and justifiable expiation
of his guilt.
The different ages of Basil the First may be compared with those of Augustus. The situation of the Greek did not allow him in his earliest youth to lead an army against his country, or to prescribe the noblest of his sons; but his aspiring genius stooped to the arts of a slave; he dissembled his ambition and even his virtues; and grasped, with the bloody hand of an assassin, the empire which he ruled with the wisdom and tenderness of a parent. A private citizen may feel his interest repugnant to his duty; but it must be from a deficiency of sense or courage, that an absolute monarch can separate his happiness from his glory, or his glory from the public welfare. The life or pæanegyric of Basil has indeed been composed and published under the long reign of his descendants; but even their stability on the throne may be justly ascribed to the superior merit of their ancestor.

In his character, his grandson Constantine has attempted to delineate a perfect image of royalty; but that subtle prince, unless he had copied a real model, could not easily have soared so high above the level of his own conduct or conceptions. But the most solid praise of Basil is drawn from the comparison of a ruined and a flourishing monarchy, that which he restored from the dissolution Michael, and that which he bequeathed to the Macedonian dynasty. The evils which had been identified by time and example, were corrected by his master-hand; and he revived, if not the national spirit, at least the order and majesty of the Roman empire. His application was indefatigable, his temper cool, his understanding vigorous and decisive; and in his practice he observed that rare and salutary moderation, which purifies such virtues, at an equal distance between the opposite vices. His military service had been confined to the palace; nor was the emperor endowed with the spirit or the talents of a warrior. Yet under his reign the Roman arms were again formidable to the barbarians. As soon as he had formed a new army by discipline and exercise, he appeared in person on the banks of the Euphrates, curbed the pride of the Saracens, and suppressed the dangerous though just revolt of the Manicheans. His indignation against a rebel who had long eluded his pursuit, provoked him to wish and to pray, that, by the grace of God, he might drive three arrows into the head of Chrysaeus. That odious head, which had been obtained by treason rather than by valor, was suspended from a tree, and thrice exposed to the dexterity of the imperial archer; a base revenge against the dead, unworthy of the times, than of the character of Basil.

But his principal merit was in the civil administration of the finances and of the laws. To replenish an exhausted treasury, it was proposed to resume the lavish and ill-placed gifts of his predecessor; his prudence abated one censy of the restitution; and a sum of twelve hundred thousand pounds was instantly procured to answer the most pressing demands, and to allow some space for the mature operations of economy. Among the various schemes for the improvement of the revenue, a new mode was suggested of expiating, or tributes, which would have too much dependant on the arbitrary discretion of the assessors. A sufficient list of honest and able agents was instantly produced by the minister; but on the more careful scrutiny of Basil himself, only two could be found, who might be safely intrusted with such dangerous powers; and they justified his esteem by declining his confidence. But the serious and successful diligence of the emperor established by degrees an equitable balance of property and payment, of receipts and expenditure; a peculiar fund was appropriated to each service; and a public method secured the interest of the prince and the property of the people. After reforming the luxury, he assigned two patrimonial estates to supply the decent plenty, of the Imperial table: the contributions of the subject were reserved for his defence; and the residuum was employed in the embellishment of the capital and provinces. A taste for building, however, costly, may deserve some praise and much excuse; from thence industry is fed, art is encouraged, and some object is attained of public enrichment or pleasure: the use of a road, an aqueduct, or an hospital, is obvious and solid; and the hundred churches that arose by the command of Basil, were consecrated to the devotion of the ages. In the character of a judge, he was austere and impartial; desirous to care, but not afraid to strike: the oppressors of the people were severely chastised; but his personal foes, whom it might be unsafe to pardon, were condemned, after the loss of their eyes, to a life of solitude and repentance. The change of language and manners demanded a revision of the obsolete jargon of Insitution: the voluminous body of his Institutes, Pamphlets, Code, and Novels, was digested under forty titles, in the Greek idiom; and the Hæmilia, which were improved and completed by his son and grandson, must be referred to the original genius of the founder of their race.

This glorious reign was terminated by an accident in the chase. A furious stag entangled his horse in the belt of Basil, and raised him from his horse; he was rescued by an attendant, who cut the belt and slew the animal; but the fall, or the fever, exhausted the strength of the aged monarch, and he expired in the palace, amidst the tears of his family and people. If he struck all the head of the faithful servants, for presuming to draw his sword against his sovereign; the pride of despotism, which had lain dormant in his life, revived in the last moments of despair, when he no longer wanted or valued the opinion of mankind.

Of the four sons of the emperor, Constantine died before his father, whose grief and credibility were alleviated by a flattering imposture and a vain illusion. Stephon, the youngest, was content with the honours of a patriarch and a saint; both Leo and Alexander were alike invested with the purple, but the powers of government were solely exercised by the elder brother. The name of Leo the Sixth has been dignified with the title of philosopher; and the union of the
prince and the sage, of the active and speculative virtues, would indeed constitute the perfection of human nature. But the claims of Leo are far short of this ideal excellence. Did he reduce his passions and appetites under the dominion of reason? His life was spent in the pomp of the palace, in the society of his wives and concubines; and even the Clemency which he showed, and the peace which he strove to preserve, must be imputed to the softness and indolence of his character. Did he subdue his prejudices, and those of his subjects? His mind was tinged with the most peculiar superstition; the influence of the clergy, and the errors of people, were consecrated by his laws; and the oracle of Leo, which reveal, in prophetic style, the fate of the empire, are founded on the arts of astrology and divination. If we still inquire the reason of his sanguine appellation, it can only be replied, that the son of Basil was less ignorant than the greater part of his contemporaries in church and state; that his education had been directed by the learned Photius; and that several books of profane and ecclesiastical science were composed by the pen, or in the name, of the Imperial philosopher. But the reputation of his philosophy and religion was overthrown by a domestic vice, the repetition of his amours. The primitive ideas of the merit and holiness of celibacy were preached by the monks and entertained by the Greeks. Marriage was allowed as a necessary means for the propagation of mankind; after the death of either party, the survivor might satisfy, by a second union, the weakness or the strength of the flesh: but a third marriage was censured as a state of legal fornication; and a fourth was a sin or scandal as yet unknown to the Christians of the East. In the beginning of his reign, Leo himself had abolished the state of concubines, and condemned, without qualm, third marriages; but his patriotism and love soon compelled him to violate his own laws, and to incur the penance, which in a similar case he had imposed on his subjects. In his three first alliances, his reputed bed was unbearably: the emperor required a female companion, and the empire a legitimate heir. The beautiful Zoe was introduced into the palace as a concubine, and after a trial of her fecundity, and the birth of Constantine, her lover declared his intention of legitimating the mother and the child, by the celebration of his fourth nuptials. But the patriarch Nicholas refused his blessing: the imperial baptism of the young prince was obtained by a promise of separation; and the consolations husband of Zoe was excluded from the communion of the faithful. Neither the fear of exile, nor the desertion of his brethren, nor the authority of the Latin church, nor the danger of failure or doubt in the succession to the empire, could bend the spirit of the inflexible monk. After the death of Leo, he was recalled from exile to the civil and ecclesiastical administration; and the effect of union which was promulgated in the name of Constantine, condemned the future scandal of fourth marriages, and left a tacit imputation on his own birth.

In the Greek language purple and porphyry are the same word; and as the colours of nature are invariable, we may learn, that a dark deep red was the Tyrian dye which stained the purple of the ancients. An apartment of the Byzantine palace was lined with porphyry: it was reserved for the use of the presumptuous princess; and the royal birth of their children was expressed by the appellation of porphyrogenneto, or born in the purple. Several of the Roman princes had been blessed with an heir; but this peculiar surname was first applied to Constantine the Seventh. His life and titular reign were of equal duration; but of fifty-four years, six had elapsed before his father's death; and the son of Leo was ever the voluntary or reluctant subject of those who oppressed his weakness or abused his confidence. His uncle Alexander, who had long been invested with the title of Augustus, was the first colleague and governor of the young prince; but in a rapid career of vice and folly, the brother of Leo already emulated the reputation of Michael; and when he was extinguished by a timely death, he entertained a project of estranging his nephew, and leaving the empire to a worthless favourite. The succeeding years of the minority of Constantine were occupied by his brother Zoe, and a succession of council of seven regents, who pursued their interest, gratified their passions, abandoned the republic, uprooted each other, and finally established in the presence of a soldier. From an obscure origin, Romanus Lecapenus had raised himself to the command of the naval armies; and in the anarchy of the times, had deserved, or at least had obtained, the national esteem. With a victorious and affectionate seat, he sailed from the mouth of the Danube into the harbour of Constantinople, and was hailed as the deliverer of the people, and the guardian of the prince. His supreme office was at first defined by the new appellation of father of the emperor; but Romanus soon obtained the subordinate powers of a minister, and assumed, with the title of Comes and Augustus, the full independence of royalty, which he held near five and twenty years. His three sons, Christopher, Stephen, and Constantine, were successively adorned with the same honours, and the lawful emperor was degraded from the first to the fifth rank in this college of priests. Yet, in the preservation of his life and crown, he might still applaud his own fortune and the elevancy of the usurper. The examples of ancient and modern history would have exceeded the ambition of Romanus; the powers and the laws of the empire were in his hand; the spurious birth of Constantine would have justified his exclusion; and the grave or the mortuary was open to receive the son of the concubine. But Lecapenus does not appear to have possessed either the virtues or the vices of a tyrant. The spirit and activity of his private life dissolved away in the sunshine of the throne; and in his licentious pleasures, he forgot the safety both of the republic and of his family.
Of a mild and religious character, he respected the sanctity of oaths, the innocence of the youth, the memory of his parents, and the attachment of the people. The studious temper and retirement of Constantine disinterested the jealousy of power: his books and music, his pen and his pencil, were a constant source of amusement; and if he could improve a scanty allowance by the sale of his pictures, if their price was not enhanced by the name of the artist, he was endowed with a personal talent, which few princes could employ in the hour of adversity.

The fall of Romansus was occasioned by his own vices and those of his children. After the decease of Christopher, his eldest son, the two surviving brothers quarrelled with each other, and conspired against their fathers. At the hour of noon, when all strangers were regularly excluded from the palace, they entered his apartment with an armed force, and conveyed him, in the habit of a monk, to a small island in the Propontis, which was peopled by a religious community. The rumour of this domestic revolution excited a tumult in the city; but Porphyrogenitus alone, the true and lawful emperor, was the object of the public care; and the sons of Leoponos were taught, by sad experience, that they had achieved a guilty and perilous enterprise for the benefit of their rival. Their sister Helena, the wife of Constantine, revealed, or supposed, their treasonable design of assassinating her husband at the royal banquet. Her loyal adherents were alarmed; and two usurpers were prevented, wounded, degraded from the purple, and exiled back the same island and monastery where their father had been so lately confined. Old Romansus met them on the beach with a sarcastic smile, and, after a just reproach of their folly and ingratitude, presented his impartial colleagues with an equal share of his water and vegetable diet. In the fourth year of his reign, Constantin the Seventh obtained the possession of the Eastern world, which he ruled, or seemed to rule, near fifteen years. But he was devoid of that energy of character which could emerge into a life of action and glory; and the studies which had amused and dignified his leisure, were incompatible with the serious duties of a sovereign. The emperor neglected the practice, to instruct his son Romansus in the theory, of government: while he indulged the habits of intemperance and sloth, he dropped the reins of the administration into the hands of Helena his wife; and, in the shifting scene of her favour and caprice, each minister was regretted in the promotion of a more worthless successor. Yet the birth and misfortunes of Constantine had endeared him to the Greeks; they excused his failings; they respected his learning, his innocences, and charity, his love of justice; and the ceremonial of his funeral was mourned with the unfeigned tears of his subjects. The body, according to ancient custom, lay in state in the vestibule of the palace; and the civil and military officers, the patriarchs, the senate, and the clergy, approached in due order to adore and kiss the insensible corpse of their sovereign. Before the procession moved towards the imper-
phorus was crowned with recent laurels, from the important conquest of the island of Crete. His religion was of a more ambiguous cast, and his headcloth, his face, his pious signs, and his wish to retire from the business of the world, were a convenient mask for his dark and dangerous ambition. Yet he imposed on the holy patriarch, by whose influence, and by a decree of the senate, he was intrusted, during the minority of the young prince, with the absolute and independent command of the Oriental armies. As soon as he had secured the leaders and the troops, he boldly marched to Constantinople, trampled on his enemies, avowed his correspondence with the empress, and, without degrading her sons, ascended, with the title of Augustus, the prominence of rank and the plenitude of power. But his marriage with Theophano was refused by the same patriarch who had placed the crown on his head: by his second nuptials he incurred a year of canonical penance; a bar of spiritual affinity was opposed to their celebration; and some evasion and perjury were required to silence the scruples of the clergy and people. The popularity of the emperor was lost in the purple: in a reign of six years he provoked the hatred of strangers and subjects; and the hypocrisy and avarice of the first Nicephorus were revived in his successor. Hypocrisy shall never justify or palliate; but I will dare to observe, that the odious vice of avarice is of all others most hastily arranged, and most unscrupulously condemned. In a private citizen, our judgment seldom expects an accurate scrutiny into his fortune and expense; and in a steward of the public treasury, frugality is always a virtue, and the increase of taxes too often an indispensable duty. In the use of his patrimony, the generous temper of Nicephorus had been proved; and the revenue was strictly applied to the service of the state; each spring the emperor marched in person against the Saracens; and every Roman might compute the employment of his taxes in triumphs, conquests, and the security of the Eastern barrier.

Among the warriors who promoted his elevation, and served under his standard, a noble and valiant Armenian had deserved and obtained the most eminent rewards. The stature of John Zimisces was below the ordinary standard; but this diminutive body was endowed with strength, beauty, and the soul of an hero. By the jealousy of the emperor's brother, he was degraded from the office of general of the East, to that of director of the posts; and his mourners were classified with disgrace and exile. But Zimisces was ranked among the numerous lovers of the empress; on her intercession, he was permitted to reside at Chalcidon, in the neighbourhood of the capital; her beauty was repaid in his clandestine and amorous visits to the palace; and Theophano consented, with slavery, to the death of an ugly and penurious husband. Some bold and trusty conspirators were concealed in her most private chambers; in the darkness of a winter night, Zimisces, with his principal companions, embarked in a small boat, traversed the Bosphorus, landed at the palace stairs, and silently ascended a ladder of ropes, which was cast down by the female attendants. Neither his own suspicions, nor the warnings of his friends, nor the tardy aid of his brother Leo, nor the fortress which he had erected in the palace, could protect Nicephorus from a domestic foe, at whose voice every door was opened to the assassin. As he slept on a bear-skin, on the ground, he was roused by their noisy intrusions, and thirty daggers glittered before his eyes. It is doubtful whether Zimisces inured his hands in the blood of his sovereign; but he enjoyed the infamious spectacle of revenge. The murder was protracted by insult and cruelty; and as soon as the head of Nicephorus was shown from the window, the tumult was hushed, and the Armenian was emperor of the East. On the day of his coronation, he was stopped on the threshold of St. Sophia, by the intrepid patriarch, who charged his conscience with the deed of treason and blood; and required, as a sign of repentance, that he should separate himself from his more criminal associate. This sally of apostolic zeal was not offensive to the prince, since he could neither love our trust a woman who had repeatedly violated the most sacred obligations; and Theophano, instead of sharing his Imperial fortune, was dismissed with ignominy from his bed and palace. In their last interview, she displayed a frigid and impotent rage; accused the ingratitude of her lover; assaulted, with words and blows, her son Basil, as he stood silent and submissive in the presence of a superior colleague; and avowed her own prostitution, in proclaiming the illegitimacy of his birth. The public illustration was opposed by her exile, and the punishment of the meaner accomplices; the death of an unpopular prince was forgiven; and the guilt of Zimisces was forgotten in the splendour of his virtues. Perhaps his profession was less useful to the state than the avarice of Nicephorus; but his gentle and generous behaviour delighted all who approached his person; and it was only in the path of victory that he trod in the footsteps of his predecessor. The greatest part of his reign was employed in the camp and the field; his personal valour and activity were signalised on the Danube and the Tigris, the ancient boundaries of the Roman world; and by his dashing triumphs over the Russians and the Saracens, he deserved the titles of saviour of the empire, and conqueror of the East. In his last return from Syria, he observed that the most fruitful lands of his new provinces were possessed by the saracens. "And it is for them," he exclaimed, with honest indignation, "that we have fought and conquered? Is it for them that we shed our blood, and exhaust the treasures of our people?" The complaint was re-echoed to the palace, and the death of Zimisces is strongly marked with the suspicion of poison.

Under this usurpation, of regency, Basil IT. and of twelve years, the two lawful emperors, Basil and Constantine, had silently grown to the age of manhood. Their
tinder years had been incapable of dominion; the respectful indolence of their attendance and salutation was due to the age and merit of their guardians: the childish ambition of those guardians had no temptation to violate their right of succession; their patrimony was ably and faithfully administered; and the premature death of Zimisces was a loss, rather than a benefit, to the sons of Romanus. Their want of experience delayed them twelve years longer the obscure and voluntary pupils of a minister, who extended his reign by persuading them to indulge the pleasures of youth, and to disdain the labours of government. In this silken web, the weakness of Constantine was for ever unexalted; but his elder brother felt the impulse of genius and the desire of action; he frowned, and the minister was no more. Basil was the acknowledged sovereign of Constantinople and the provinces of Europe; but Asia was oppressed by two viceroy generals, Phocas and Schlerus, who, alternately friends and enemies, subjects and rebels, maintained their independence, and laboured to simulate the example of successful usurpation. Against these domestic enemies, the son of Romanus first drew his sword, and they trembled in the presence of a lawful and high-spirited prince. The first, in the front of battle, was thrown from his horse, by the stroke of poison, or an arrow: the second, who had been twice taunted with chains, and twice invested with the purple, was destitute of ending in peace the small remainder of his days. As the aged empress approached the throne, with dim eyes and faltering steps, leaning on his two attendants, the emperor exclaimed, in the innocence of youth and power. "And is this the man who has so long been the object of our terror?" After he had confirmed his own authority, and the peace of the empire, the triumphs of Nicephorus and Zimisces would not suffer their royal pupil to sleep in the palace. His long and frequent expeditions against the Saracens were rather glorious, than useful to the empire; but the final destruction of the kingdom of Bulgaria appears, since the time of Belisarius, the most important triumph of the Roman arms. Yet instead of applauding their victorious prince, his subjects detested the rapacious and rigid severity of Basil; and in the imperfect narrative of his exploits, we can only discern the courage, patience, and fortitude, of a soldier. A vicious education, which could not subdue his spirit, had clouded his mind; he was ignorant of every science; and the remembrance of his learned and feeble grandaître might encourage his zeal or affected contempt of laws and lawyers, of artists and arts. Of such a character, in such an age, superstition took a firm and lasting possession; after the first licence of his youth, Basil the Second devoted his life, in the palace and the camp, to the reunion of an hermit, the monastic habit under his robes and armour, observed a vow of continence, and imposed on his appetites a perpetual abstinence from wine and flesh. In the sixty-eighth year of his age, his martial spirit urged him to embark in person for a holy war against the Saracens of Sicily; he was prevented by death; and Basil, summoned the Slayer of the Bulgarians, was dismissed from the world, with the blessings of the clergy and the curacy of the people. After his decease, his brother Constantine enjoyed, about three years, the power, or rather the pleasures, of royalty; and his only care was the settlement of the succession. He had enjoyed sixty-six years the title of Augustus; and the reign of the two brothers is the longest, and most obscure, of the Byzantine history. A final succession of five emperors, in a period of one hundred and sixty years, had attached the loyalty of the Greeks to the Macedonian dynasty, which had been twice respected by the successors of their power. After the death of Constantine the Ninth, the last male of the royal race, a new and broken scene presents itself, and the accumulated years of twelve emperors do not equal the space of his single reign. His elder brother had preferred his private opulence to the public interest, and Constantine himself had only three daughters; Eudocia, who took the veil, and Zoe and Theodora, who were preserved till a mature age in a state of ignorance and virginity. When their marriage was discussed in the council of their dying father, the cold or pious Theodora refused to give an heir to the empire, but her sister Zoe presented herself a willing vicar as the altar. Romanus Argyrus, a patronage of a graceful person and fair reputation, was chosen for her husband, and, on his declining that honour, was informed, that blindness or death was the second alternative. The motive of his reluctance was conjugal affection, but his faithful wife sacrificed her own happiness to his safety and greatness; and her entrance into a monastery removed the only bar to the Imperial sceptre. After the decease of Constantine, the accepire devolved to Romanus the Third; but his labours at home and abroad were equally feeble and fruitless; and the mature age, the forty-eight years of Zoe, were less favourable to the hopes of pregnancy than to the indulgence of pleasure. Her favourite chamberlain was an handsome Paphlagonian of the name of Michael, whose first trade had been that of a money-changer; and Romanus, either from gratitude or equity, consoled at their criminal intercourse, or accepted a slight assurance of their innocence. But Zoe soon justified the Roman maxim, that every adulterer is capable of poisoning her husband; and the death of Romanus was instantly followed by the scandalous marriage and elevation of Michael the Fourth. The Emperor IV. the
Michael sought every method of expiating his guilt. While he groused and prayed in cockscomb and ashes, his brother, the eunuch John, spied at his remorse, and enjoyed the harvest of a crime of which himself was the secret and most guilty author. His administration was only the act of satiating his avarice, and Zoe became a captive in the palace of her fathers and in the hands of her slaves. When he perceived the irretrievable decline of his brother’s health, he introduced his nephew, another Michael, who derived his surname from Calaphates from his father’s occupation in the carrying of vessels at the command of the eunuchs; Zoe adopted for her son, the son of a mechanic; and this illusory heir was invested with the title and purple of the Caesars, in the presence of the senate and clergy. So feeble was the character of Zoe, that she was oppressed by the liberty and power which she recovered by the death of the Paphlogionian, and at the end of four days, she placed the crown on the head of Michael the Fifth, who had protested, with tears and oaths, that he should ever reign the first and most obedient of her subjects. The only act of his short reign was his base ingratitude to his benefactors, the eunuch and the empress. The disgrace of the former was pleasing to the public; but the murder, and at length the clamours, of Constantineople deprived the exile of Zoe, the daughter of so many emperors; her vices were forgotten, and Michael was taught, that there is a period in which the patience of the most slaves rises into fury and revenge. The citizens of every degree assembled in a formidable tumult which lasted three days; they besieged the palace, forced the gates, recalled their monarch, and deposed Zoe from her prison, Theodore from her monastery, and consecrated the son of Calaphates to the loss of his eyes or of his life. For the first time, the Greeks beheld with surprise the two royal sisters seated on the same throne, presiding in the senate, and giving audience to the ambassadors of the nations. But this singular union subsisted no more than two months; the two sovereigns, their temper, interests, and adherents, were secretly hostile to each other; and as Theodore was still averse to marriage, the indomitable Zoe, at the age of sixty, consented, for the public good, to sustain the embraces of a third husband, and the consorts of the Greek throne. His name and number were Constantine the Tenth, and the epithet of Messenian, the single combatant, must have been expressive of his valour and victory in some public or private quarrel. But his health was broken by the tortures of the gout, and his absolute reign was spent in the alternative of sickness and pleasure. A fair and noble widow had accompanied Constantine in his exile to the isle of Lesbos, and Scholastica gloried in the appellation of his mistress. After his marriage and elevation, she was invested with the title and rank of Augusta, and occupied a contiguous apartment in the palace. The lawful consort (such was the delicacy or con-
flamed by the parsimony of the emperor and the
insolence of the eunuchs. They secretly assem-
bled in the sanctuary of St. Sophia, and the votes of
the military synod would have been unanimous
in favour of the old and valiant Cæcarius,
if the patriotism or modesty of the veterans had
not suggested the importance of birth as well as
merit in the choice of a sovereign. Isaac Com-
maus was approved by general consent, and
the associates separated without delay to meet in
the plains of Phrygia at the head of their respective
squadrons and detachments. The cause of
Michael was defended in a single battle by the
remonstrances of the Imperial guard, who
were allied to the public interest, and animated only
by a principle of honour and gratitude.

After their defeat, the fears of the emperor solicited a
peace, which was almost accepted by the moder-
ation of the Comnenian. But the former was
betrayed by his ambassadors, and the latter was
prevented by his friends. The solitary Michael
submitted to the voice of the people; the patriarchy
annulled their oath of allegiance; and as he
shaved the head of the royal monk, congratulated
his benefactor, exchanged the temporal for the
kingdom of heaven; an exchange, however,
which the priest, on his own account, would
probably have declined. By the hands of the
same patriarch, Isaac Commaus was solemnly
amnestied; the sword which he inscribed on his
coats, might be an offensive symbol; if it implied
his title by conquest; but this sword would have
been drawn against the foreign and domestic
enemies of the state. The decline of his health
and vigour suspended the operation of active
virtue; and the prospect of approaching death
determined him to interpose some moments be-
tween life and eternity. But instead of leaving
the empire as the marriage portion of his daugh-
ter, his reason and inclination concurred in the
preference of his brother John, a soldier, a pa-
triot, and the father of five sons, the future pillars
of his hereditary succession. His first modest
resistance might be the natural dictates of dis-
ccretion and tenderness, his obstinacy and
successful perseverance, however it may daze
with the show of virtue, must be construed as a
criminal desecration of his duty, and a rare offence
against his family and country. The people
which he had refused was accepted by Constanti-
ne the Eleventh, a friend of the Comnenian house,
and whose noble birth was adorned with the
experience and reputation of civil policy. In
the monastic habit, Isaac recovered his health,
and survived two years his voluntary abdication.
At the command of his abbot, he observed the
rule of St. Basil, and executed the most servile
offices of the convent; but his latent vanity was
gratified by the frequent and respectful visits of
the reigning monarch, who revered in his person
the character of a benefactor and a saint.

If Constantine the Eleventh were
Romans, indeed the subject most worthy of
the empire; we must pity the disaste-
ment of the age and nation in which he was
chosen. In the labour of partisan declama-
tions he sought, without obtaining, the crown of elo-
quence, more precious in his opinion, than that
of Rome; and, in the subordinate functions of
a judge, he forgot the duties of a sovereign and
a warrior. Far from imitating the patriotic in-
difference of the authors of his greatness, Duran
was anxious only to secure, at the expense of the
republic, the power and prosperity of his
children. His three sons, Michael the Seventieth,
Andronicus the First, and Constantine the
Twelfth, were invested, in a tender age, with the
equal title of Augustus; and the succession
was secretly opened by their father’s death.
His widow, Eudocia, was intrusted
with the administration; but expe-
rience had taught the jealousy of the
dying monarch to protect his sons from the
danger of her second入户s; and her solemn
engagement, attested by the principal senators,
was deposited in the hands of the patriarch.
Before the end of seven months, the wants of
Eudocia, or those of the state, called aloud for the
male virtues of a soldier; and her heart had
already chosen Romanus Diogenes, whom she
raised from the scaffold to the throne. The
discovery of a treasonable attempt had exposed
him to the severity of the laws; his beauty and
valour absolved him in the eyes of the emperor;
and Romanus, from a mild exile, was recalled on
the second day to the command of the Oriental
 armies. Her royal choice was yet unknown in the
public; and the promise which would have
betrayed her falsehood and lenity, was stolen by a
dexterous emissary from the ambition of
the patriarch. Xiphæth first alleged the sanctity
of oaths and the sacred nature of a trust; but a
whisper, that his brother was the future emperor,
relaxed his scruples, and forced him to confess
that the public safety was the supreme law.
He resigned the important paper; and when his hopes were confounded
by the nomination of Romanus, he
would no longer repair his security, retract his
declarations, nor oppose the second入户s of the
empress. Yet a murmur was heard in the
palace; and the barbarian guards had raised
their battle-axes in the name of the house of
Ducas, till the young princes were soothed by the
tears of their mother, and the solemn assuran-
ces of the fidelity of their guardian, who filled
the imperial station with dignity and honour.

Hereafter I shall relate his valiant, but unsuccess-
ful, efforts to resist the progress of the Turks. His
defeat and captivity inflicted a deadly wound
on the Byzantine monarchy of the East; and
after he was released from the chains of the sol-
tan, he vainly sought his wife and his subjects.
His wife had been thrust into a sur-
montery, and the subjects of Romans
had embraced the right maxim of the
Turkish law, that a prisoner in the hands
of the enemy is deprived, as by the
stroke of death, of all the
public and private rights of a citizen. In the general consternation, the
Caesar John asserted the indefeasible right
of his three nephews; Constantinople listened
to his voice; and the Turkish captive was
proclaimed in the capital, and received on the fron-
tier, as an enemy of the republic. Romanus
was not more fortunate in domestic than in
foreign war; the loss of two battles compelled him to yield, on the assurance of fair and honourable treatment; but his enemies were devoid of faith or humanity; and, after the cruel extirpation of his sight, his wounds were left to bleed and corrupt, till in a few days he was relieved from a state of misery. Under the triple reign of the house of Ducas, the two younger brothers were reduced to the vain honours of the purple; but the eldest, the pontifical Michael, was incapable of sustaining the Roman sceptre; and his surname of Pappascles denotes the reproach which he shared with an avuncular favourite, who enhanced the price, and diminished the measure, of wheat. In the school of Pelusius, and after the example of his mother, the son of Eudocia made such proficiency in philosophy and rhetoric; but his character was degraded, rather than ennobled, by the virtues of a monk and the learning of a sophist. Strong in the contempt of their sovereign and their own esteem, two generals, at the head of the European and Asiatic legions, assumed the purple at Adrianople and Nice. Their revolt was in the same month; they bore the same name of Nicephorus; but the two candidates were distinguished by the surnames of Bryennius and Botaniates; the former in the maturity of wisdom and courage, the latter conspicuous only by the memory of his past exploits. While Botaniates advanced with cautious and dilatory steps, his active competitor stood in arms before the gates of Constantinople. The name of Bryennius was illustrious; his cause was popular; but his licentious troops could not be restrained from burning and pillaging a suburb; and the people, who would have hailed the rebel, rejected and repulsed the incursion of his country. The change of the public opinion was favourable to Botaniates, who, at length, with an army of Turks, approached the shores of Chalcedon. A formal invitation, in the name of the patriarch, the synod, and the senate, was circulated through the streets of Constantinople; and the general assembly, in the dome of St. Sophia, deposed, with order and solemnity, on the choice of their sovereign. The guards of Michael would have dispersed this armed multitude; but the feeble emperor, apprising his own moderation and slowness, resigned the insignia of royalty, and was rewarded with the monastic habit, and the title of archbishop of Ephesus. He left a son, a Commendator, born and educated in the purple; and a daughter of the house of Ducas illustrated the blood, and confirmed the succession, of the Comnenian dynasty.

Archbires. 1. John Comnenus, the brother of the emperor Isaac, survived in peace and dignity his generous refusals of the sceptre. By his wife Anne, a woman of masculine spirit and policy, he left eight children: the three daughters multiplied the Comnenian alliance with the noblest of the Greeks: of the five sons, Manuel was stopped by a premature death; Isaac and Alexius restored the Imperial greatness of their house, which was enjoyed without toil or danger by the two younger brothers, Adrian and Nicephorus. Alexius, the third and most illustrious of the brothers, was endowed by nature with the choicest gifts both of mind and body; they were cultivated by a liberal education, and exercised in the school of obedience and adversity. The youth was dismissed from the perils of the Turkish war, by the paternal care of the emperor Romanus; but the mother of the Comnenus, with her aspiring race, was ached of treason, and banished, by the sons of Ducas, to an island in the Propontis. The two brothers soon emerged into favour and action, fought by each other's side against the rebels and barbarians, and adhered to the emperor Michael, till he was deserted by the world: and by himself. In his first interview with Botaniates, "Prince," said Alexius, with a noble frankness, "my duty rendered me your enemy; the decrees of God and of the people have made me your subject. Judge of my future loyalty by my past opposition." The successor of Michael entertained him with esteem and confidence; his valour was employed against three rebels, who disturbed the peace of the empire, or at least of the emperors. Ural, Bryennius, and Basilaches, were formidable by their numerous forces and military fame: they were successively vanquished in the field, and led in chains to the foot of the throne; and whatever treatment they might receive from a timid and cruel court, they applauded the clemency, as well as the courage, of their conqueror. But the loyalty of the Comnenus was soon tainted by fear and suspicion; nor is it easy to settle between a subject and a despot, the debt of gratitude, which the former is tempted to claim by a revolt, and the latter to discharge by an executioner. The refusal of Alexius to march against a fourth rebel, the husband of his sister, destroyed the merit or memory of his past services: the favourites of Botaniates provoked the ambition which they apprehended and accused; and the retreat of the two brothers might be justified by the defence of their life or liberty. The women of the family were deposited in a sanctuary, respected by tyrants; the men, mounted on horseback, sailed from the city, and erected the standard of civil war. The soldiers, who had been gradually assembled in the capital and the neighbourhood, were devoted to the cause of a victorious and injured leader: the ties of common interest and domestic alliance secured the attachment of the house of Ducas; and the generous dispute of the Comnenus was terminated by the decisive resolution of Isaac, who was the first to invest his younger brother with the name and insignia of royalty. They returned to Constantinople, in threaten rather than besiege that impregnable fortress; but the fidelity of the guards was corrupted; a gale was surprised, and the fleet was occupied by the active courage of George Palaeologus, who fought against his father, without disarming that he learned for his poetry. Alexius ascended the throne; and his aged competitor disappeared in a monastery. An army of various nations was gratified with the pillage of the city; but the public disorders were expiated by the tears and toasts of the Comnenus, who submitted to every penance compatible with the possession of the empire.
have exposed his memory to some just or
egregious approach. The reader may possibly
smile at the lavish praise which his daughter so
often bestows on a dying hero: the weakness or
prudence of his situation might be mistaken for
a want of personal courage; and his political
arts were branded by the Latins with the names of
decit and dissimulation. The increase of the
male and female branches of his family
absorbed the throne, and secured the succession;
but their princely luxury and pride offended the
patriarchs, exhausted the revenue, and insulted
the ministry of the people. Anna is a faithful
witness that his happiness was destroyed, and his
health was broken, by the cares of a public life;
the patience of Constantine was exhausted by
the length and severity of his reign; and before
Alexius expired, he had lost the love and receiv-
ance of his subjects. The clergy could not
forgive his application of the sacred riches to
the defence of the state; but they applauded his
theological learning and ardent zeal for the
orthodox faith, which he defended, with his
sword, his pen, and his heart. His character
was degraded by the superstition of the Greeks;
and the same inconsistent principle of human
nature enabled the emperor to found an hospi-
tal for the poor and infirm, and to direct the
execution of an heretic, who was burned alive
in the square of St. Sophia. Even the severity
of his moral and religious virtues was estimated
by the persons who had passed their lives in his
familiar confidence. In his last hours, when he
was pressed by his wife Irene to alter the suc-
cession, he raised his head, and breathed a pious
exhortation on the vanity of this world. The
insignificant reply of the empress may be inscribed
as an epitaph on his tomb, — "You die, as you
have lived — AN HYPOTHETIC AN.

It was the wish of Irene to super-
plant the eldest of her surviving
sons, in favour of her daughter the
princess Anne, whose philosophy would not
have refused the weight of a disdum. But
the order of male succession was asserted by the
friends of their country; the lawful heir drew
the royal signet from the finger of his insensible
or conscious father, and the empire obeyed the
caller of the palace. Anna Comnena was
stimulated by ambition and revenge to conspire
against the life of her brother, and when the
design was prevented by the tears or scruples of
her husband, she passionately exclaimed, that
nature had mistaken the two sexes, and had
endowed Bryennius with the soul of a woman.
The two sons of Alexius, John and Isaac, main-
tained the fraternal concord, the hereditary virtue
of their race; and the younger brother was con-
tent with the title of Schatzkastor, which ap-
proached the dignity, without sharing the power,
of the emperor. In the same person, the claims of
primogeniture and merit were fortunately
united; his swarthy complexion, harsh features,
and diminutive stature, had suggested the it-
moral surname of Calo-Jolastos, or John the
Handsome, which his grateful subjects more
seriously applied to the beauty of his mind.
After the discovery of her treachery, the life and
funeral of Anaë were justly forfeited to the laws. Her life was spared by the clemency of the emperor, but he visited the pomp and treasures of her palace, and bestowed the rich emolument on the most deserving of his friends. That respectable friend, Axuch, a slave of Turkish extraction, presumed to decline the gift, and to intercede for the criminal; his generous master applauded and lauded the virtues of his favourite, and the approach or complaint of an injured brother was the only chastisement of the guilty princess. After this example of clemency, the remainder of his reign was never disturbed by conspiracy or rebellion; feared by his nobles, beloved by his people, John was never reduced to the painful necessity of punishing, or even of punishing, his personal enemies. During his government of twenty-five years, the penalty of death was abolished in the Roman empire, a law of mercy most delightful to the humane theorist, but of which the practice, in a large and vicious community, is seldom consistent with the public safety. Severe to himself, indulgent to others, chaste, frugal, abstemious, the philosophic Marcus would not have disdained the artless virtues of his successor, derived from his heart, and not borrowed from the schools. He despised and moderated the stately magnificence of the Byzantine court; no oppressive to the people; so contemptible to the eye of reason. Under such a prince, innocence had nothing to fear, and merit had everything to hope; and, without assuming the tyrannical office of a censor, he introduced a gradual though visible reformation in the public and private manners of Constantinople. The only defect of this accomplished character was, the frailty of noble minds, the love of arms and military glory. Yet the frequent expeditions of John the Hammer may be justified, at least in their principle, by the necessity of repelling the Turks from the Holy Land and the Bosphorus. The sultan of Levantium was confined to his capital, the barbarians were driven to the mountains, and the maritime provinces of Asia enjoyed the transient blessings of their deliverance. From Constantinople to Antioch and Aleppo, he repeatedly marched at the head of a victorious army, and in the sieges and battles of this holy war, his Latin allies were astonished by the superior spirit and prowess of a Greek. As he began to indulge the ambitious hope of restoring the ancient limits of the empire, as he resolved, in his mind, the Euphrates and Tigris, the dominion of Syria, and the conquest of Jerusalem, the thread of his life and of the public felicity was broken by a singular accident. He hunted the wild boar in the valley of Annarburus, and had fixed his javelin in the body of the furious animal; but, in the struggle, a poisoned arrow dropped from his quiver, and a slight wound in his hand, which produced a mortification, was fatal to the best and greatest of the Constantinian princes.

A premature death had swept away the two eldest sons of John the Hammer; of the two survivors, Isaac and Manuel, his judgment or affection preferred the younger, and the choice of their dying prince was satisfied by the soldiers, who had applauded the valour of his favourite in the Turkish war. The faithful Axuch hastened to the capital, secured the person of Isaac in honourable confinement, and purchased with a gift of two hundred pounds of silver, the leading ecclesiastics of St. Sophia, who possessed a decisive voice in the consecration of an emperor. With his veterans and affectionate troops, Manuel soon visited Constantinople; his brother acquired in the title of Schoutocrator; his subjects admired the lofty stature and martial graces of their new sovereign, and listened with credulity to the flattering promise, that he blunted the wisdom of age with the activity and vigour of youth. By the experience of his government, they were taught, that he emulated the spirit, and shared the talents, of his father, whose social virtues were buried in the grave. A reign of thirty-seven years is filled by a personal though various warfare against the Turks, the Christians, and the borders of the wilderness beyond the Danube. The arms of Manuel were exercised on Mount Taurus, in the plains of Hungary, on the coast of Italy and Egypt, and on the sea of Sicily and Greece. Many of his negotiations extended from Jerusalem to Rome and Byzantium, and the Byzantine monarchy, for a while, became an object of respect or terror to the powers of Asia and Europe. Enraged in the silk and purple of the East, Manuel possessed the iron temper of a soldier, which cannot easily be paralleled, except in the lives of Richard the First of England, and of Charles the Twelfth of Sweden. Such was his strength and exercise in arms, that Raymond, surnamed the Hercules of Antioch, was incapable of wielding the lance and buckler of the Greek emperor. In a famous tournament, he entered the lists on a swift courser, and overturned in his first career two of the stoutest of the Italian knights. The first in the charge, the last in the retreat, his friends and his enemies alike trembled, the former for his safety, and the latter for their own. After posting an ambuscade in a wood, he rode forwards in search of some perilous adventure, accompanied only by his brother and the faithful Axuch, who refused to desert their sovereign. Eighteen horsemen, after a short combat, fell before them; but the numbers of the enemy increased; the march of the reinforcement was tardy and fearful, and Manuel, without receiving a wound, cut his way through a squadron of five hundred Turks. In a battle against the Hungarians, impatient of the slowness of his troops, he matched a standard from the head of the column, and was the first, almost alone, who passed a bridge that separated him from the enemy. In the same campaign, after transporting his army beyond the Save, he sent back the boats, with an order to follow the army, death, to their commander; that he should leave him to conquer or die on the hostile land. In the siege of Corfu, treading after him a captive galley, the emperor stood aloft on the poop, opposite against the valleys of darts and stones, a large buckler, and a throwing sall; nor could he have escaped inexcusable death, had not the Sici-
lian admiral enjoined his archers to respect the person of an hero. In one day, he is said to have slain above forty of the barbarians with his own hand; he returned to the camp, dragging along four Turkish prisoners, whom he had tied to the rings of his saddle; he was ever the foremost to provoke or to accept a single combat; and the gigantic champions, who encountered his arm, were transfixed by the lance, or cut to pieces by the sword, of the invincible Manuel. The story of his exploits, which appear as a model or a copy of the romances of chivalry, may induce a reasonable suspicion of the veracity of the Greeks. I will not, to vindicate their credit, endanger my own; yet I may observe, that in the long series of their annals, Manuel is the only prince who has been the subject of similar exaggeration. With the valor of a soldier, he did not unite the skill of prudence of a general; his victories were not productive of any permanent or useful conquest; and the Turkish laurels were blotted in his last unfortunate campaign, in which he lost his army in the mountains of Pisidia, and owed his deliverance to the generosity of the sultan. But the most singular feature in the character of Manuel, is the contrast and variety of habits and virtues, of hardiness and effeminacy. In war he seemed ignorant of peace, in peace he appeared incapable of war. In the field he slept in the snow, lived in the midst of the strength of his men and horses, and shared with a smile the abstinence or diet of the camp. No sooner did he return to Constantinople, than he resigned himself to the arts and pleasures of a life of luxury; the expense of his court, his household, and his palace, exceeded the measure of his predecessors, and while summer days were idly wasted in the delicious baths of the Propontis, in the inceotuous love of his niece Theodora. The double cost of a warlike and absolute prince exhausted the revenue, and multiplied the taxes; and Manuel, in the distress of his last Turkish camp, incurred a bitter reproach from the mouth of a desperate soldier. As he quenched his thirst, he complained that the fountain was mingled with Christian blood. "It is not the first time," exclaimed a voice from the crowd, "that you have drunk, O Emperor! the blood of your Christian subjects." Manuel Comnenus was twice married; to the virago Bertha or Irene of Germany; and to the beauteous Maria, a French or Latin princess of Antioch. The only daughter of his first wife was destined for Bela, a Hungarian prince, who was educated at Constantinople under the name of Alexius; and the communication of their nuptials might have transferred the Roman sceptre to a race of free and warlike barbarians. But as soon as Maria of Antioch had given a son and heir to the empire, the presumptive rights of Bela were abolished, and he was deprived of his promised bride; but the Hungarian prince rescued his name and the kingdom of his fathers, and displayed such virtues as might excite the regret and envy of the Greeks. The son of Maria was named Alexius; and at the age of ten years, he ascended the Byzantine throne, after his father's death, in 1081, and closed the glories of the Comnenian line.

The fraternal concord of the two sons of the great Alexius had been sometimes clouded by an opposition of interest and passion. By ambition, Isaac the Scholastocrator was excited to flight and rebellion, from whence he was proclaimed by the firmness and eloquence of John the Handsome. The arrows of Isaac, the father of the emperors of Trebizond, were short and venial; but John, the elder of his sons, renounced for ever his religion. Provoked by a real or imaginary insult of his uncle, he escaped from the Roman to the Turkish camp; his apathy was rewarded with the sultan's daughter, the title of Chokabe, or Noble, and the inheritance of a princely estate; and in the fifteenth century, Mahommed, the second bonâde of his imperial descent from the Comnenian family. Andronicus, younger brother of John, son of Isaac, and grandson of Alexius Comnenus, is one of the most conspicuous characters of the age; and his genuine adventures might form the subject of a very singular romance. To justify the choice of these ladies of royal birth, it is incumbent on me to observe, that their fortunate lover was cast in the best proportions of strength and beauty; and that the want of the softer graces was supplied by a manly countenance, a lofty stature, athletic muscles, and the air and deportment of a soldier. The preservation, in his old age, of health and vigour, was the reward of temperance and exercise. A piece of bread and a draught of water was often his sole and evening repast; and if he tasted of a wild boar or a stag, which he had roasted with his own hands, it was the well-seasoned fruit of a laborious chase. Dextorous in arms, he was igno-rant of fear; his persuasive eloquence could bend to every situation and character of life: his style, though not his practice, was fashioned by the example of St. Paul, and, in every deed of mischief, he had a heart to resolve, a mind to contrive, and a hand to execute. In his youth, after the death of the emperor John, he followed the retreat of the Roman army; but, in the march through Asia Minor, design or accident tempted him to wander in the mountains; the hunter was encompassed by the Turkish huntasmen, and he remained some time a reluctant or willing captive in the power of the sultan. His virtue and views recommended him to the favour of his cousin: he shared the perils and the pleasures of Manuel; and while the emperor lived in public forest with his niece Theodora, the affections of his sister Eudocia were seduced and enjoyed by Andronicus. Above the demeans of her sex and rank, she gloried in the name of his concubine; and both the palace and the camp could witness that she slept, or watched, in the arms of her lover. She accompanied him to his military command of Cilicia, the first scene of his valor and impudence. He pressed, with active ardour, the siege of Mopsuestia; the day was employed in the boldest attacks; but the night was wasted in song and dance; and a band of Greek comedians formed the choicest part of his Risaeus.
Andronicus was surprised by the novelty of a wily plant's foe; but, while his troops fled in disorder, his irresistible charge transversed the thickest ranks of the Armenians. On his return to the imperial camp in Macedonia, he was received by Manuel with public amenities and a private repast; but the dignity of Naissus, Brunaica, and Castra, were the reward of consolations of the unsuccessful general. Eudocia still attended his motions; at midnight, their tent was suddenly attacked by the angry brothers, impatient to expose her infancy in his blood; his daring spirit refused her advice, and the disgrace of a female habit; and boldly starting from his couch, he drew his sword, and cut his way through the numerous assailants. It was here that he first betrayed his ingratitude and treachery; he engaged in a treacherous correspondence with the king of Hungary and the German emperor, approached the royal tent at a suspicious hour, with a drawn sword, and, under the mask of a Latin soldier, avowed an intention of revenge against a mortal foe; and, imprudently praised the fierceness of his horse, as an instrument of flight and safety. The monarch dissimulated his suspicions; but, after the close of the campaign, Andronicus was arrested, and strictly confined in a tower of the palace of Constantinople.

In this prison he was left above twelve years; his painful restraint, from which the thirst of action and pleasure perpetually urged him to escape. Alone and passive, he perceived some broken bricks in a corner of the chamber, and gradually whitened the passage, till he had explored a dark and forgotten recess. Into this hole he conveyed himself, and the remains of his provisions, replacing the bricks in their former position, and tracing with care the foot-steps of his retreat. At the hour of the customary visit, his guards were amazed by the silence and solitude of the prison, and reported, with shame and fear, his incomprehensible flight. The gates of the palace and city were instantly shut; the strictest orders were dispatched into the provinces, for the recovery of the fugitive; and his wife, on the suspicion of a pious act, was loosely imprisoned in the same tower. At the dead of night, she beheld a spectre: she recognised her husband; they shared their provisions; and a son was the fruit of these stolen interviews, which alleviated the loneliness of their confinement. In the custody of a woman, the vigilance of the keepers was insensibly relaxed; and the captive had accomplished his real escape, when he was discovered, brought back to Constantinople, and loaded with a double chain. At length he found the moment, and the means, of his deliverance. A boy, his domestic servant, intoxicated the guards, and obtained in was the impression of the keys. By the diligence of his friends, a similar key, with a bundle of ropes, was introduced into the prison, in the bottom of a hoghead. Andronicus, employed with industry and courage, the instruments of his safety, unlocked the doors, descended from the tower, concealed himself all day among the bushes, and sealed in the night the garden-wall of the palace. A boat was stationed for his reception; he visited his own house, embraced his children, cast away his chain, mounted a fleet horse, and directed his rapid course towards the banks of the Danube. At Anchialus in Thrace, an intrepid friend supplied him with horses and money; he passed the river, traversed with speed the desert of Moldavia and the Carpathian hills, and had almost reached the town of Halicz, in the Polish Russia, when he was intercepted by a party of Walachians, who resolved to convey their important captive to Constantinople. His presence of mind again extricated him from this danger. Under the presence of sickness, he dismounted in the night, and was allowed to step aside from the troop; he planted in the ground his long staff; clothed it with his cap and upper garment; and, stealing into the wood, left a phantom to amuse, for some time, the eyes of the Walachians. From Halicz he was honourably conducted to Kiew, the residence of the great duke; the unable Greek soon obtained the esteem and confidence of Ieremias; his character could assume the manners of every climate; and the barbarians applauded his strength and courage in the chase of the elk and bears of the forest. In this northern region he deserved the forgiveness of Manuel, who solicited the Russian prince to join his arms to the invasion of Hungary. The influence of Andronicus achieved this important service; his private treaty was signed with a promise of fidelity on one side, and of oblivion on the other; and he marched, at the head of the Russian cavalry, from the Borysthenes to the Danube. In his remittance Manuel had ever sympathised with the martial and decisive character of his cousin; and his free pardon was sealed in the assault of Zedin, in which he was second, and second only, to the valour of the emperor.

No sooner was the exile restored to freedom and his country, than his ambition revived, at first to his own, and at length to the public, misfortunes. A daughter of Manuel was a ledible bar to the succession of the more deserving males of the Comnenian blood; her marriage with the prince of Hungary was repugnant to the hopes or prejudices of the princes and nobles. But when an oath of allegiance was required to the presumptive heir, Andronicus alone ascended the honour of the Roman name, declined the unlawful engagement, and boldly protested against the adoption of a stranger. His patriotism was offensive to the emperor, but he spoke the sentiments of the people, and was removed from the royal presence by an honourable banishment, a second command of the Cilician frontier, with the absolute disposal of the revenues of Cyprus. In this station the Armenians again exercised his courage and exposed his negligence; and the same rebel, who baffled all his operations, was unhorsed, and almost slain by the vigour of his lance. But Andronicus soon discovered a more easy and pleasing conquest, the beautiful Philippa, sister of the empress Maria, and daughter of Raymond of Fatio, the Latin prince of An-
two children were sent to Constantinople, and their loss embittered the tedious solitude of banishment. The fugitive implored and obtained a final pardon, with leave to throw himself at the feet of his sovereign, who was satisfied with the submission of this haughty spirit. Prostrate on the ground, he deplored with tears and groans the guilt of his past rebellion; nor would he presume to arise, unless some faithful subject would drag him to the foot of the throne, by an iron chain with which he had secretly encircled his neck. This extraordinary penance excited the wonder and pity of the assembly: his sins were forgiven by the church and state; but the just suspicion of Manuel fixed his residence at a distance from the court, at Omos, a town of Pontus, surrounded with rich vineyards, and situated on the coast of the Euritime. The death of Manuel, and the disorders of the minority, soon opened the fairest field to his ambitions. The emperor was a boy of twelve or fourteen years of age, without vigour, or wisdom, or experience: his mother, the empress Mary, abandoned her person and government to a faroivine of the Comnenian name; and his sister, another Mary, whose husband, an Italian, was decorated with the title of Caesar, excited a conspiracy, and at length an insurrection, against her odious stepmother. The provinces were forgotten, the capital was in flames, and a century of peace and order was overthrown in the vice and weakness of a few months. A civil war was kindled in Constantinople; the two factions fought a bloody battle in the square of the palace, and the rebels sustained a regular siege in the cathedral of St. Sophia. The patriarch laboured with his best zeal to heal the wounds of the republic, the most respectable patriots called aloud for a guardian and avenger; and every tongue repeated the praise of the talents and virtues of Andronicus. In his retirement, he attacked to relieve the solemn duties of his oath: "If the safety or honour of the imperial family be threatened, I will, as a Christian, and with the power of my arms, oppose the mischief to the utmost of my power." His correspondence with the patriarchs and patriots was summed with quotations from the Psalms of David and the Epistles of St. Paul; and he impatiently waited till he was called to her deliverance, by the voice of his country. In his march from Omos to Constantinople, his slender train insensibly swelled to a crowd and an army; his professions of religion and loyalty were mistaken for the language of his heart; and the simplicity of a foreign dress, which showed to advantage his majestic stature, displayed a lively image of his poverty and exile. All opposition sunk before him; he reached the straits of the Trebizon Bosphorus; the Byzantine navy sailed from the harbour to receive and transport the savages of the empire; the torrent was loud and irresistible, and the snows that had been in the sunshine of royal favour disappeared at the blast of the storm. It was the first care of Andronicus to occupy the palace, to salute the emperor, to confine his mother, to punish her ministers, and to restore the public order and
His government exhibited a singular contrast of vice and virtue. When he listened to his passions, he was the scourge; when he consulted his reason, the father of his people. In the exercise of private justice, he was equitably and rigorously: a shameful and pernicious sensuality was abolished, and the offices were filled with the most deserving candidates by a prince who had sense to choose, and severity to punish. He prohibited the inhuman practice of pillaging the goods and persons of shipwrecked mariners; the provinces, so long the objects of oppression or neglect, revived in prosperity and plenty; and millions applauded the distant blessings of his reign, while he was cursed by the administered of his daily cruelties. The ancient proverb, That bloodthirsty is the man who returns from banishment to power, had been applied with too much truth to Marcus and Tiberius; and was now verified for the third time in the life of Andronicus. His memory was stored with a black list of the enemies and rivals, who had traduced his merit, opposed his greatness, or insulted his misfortunes; and the only comfort of his exile was the sacred hope and promise of revenge. The necessary execution of the young emperor and his mother imposed the fatal obligation of extirpating the friends, who hated, and might punish, the assassin; and the repetition of murder rendered him less willing, and less able, to forgive. An horrid narrative of the victims whom he sacrificed by poison or the sword, by the sea or the flames, would be less expressive of his cruelty than the appellation of the idyllic days, which was applied to a rare and bloodless week of repose: the tyrant strove to transfer, on the laws and the judges, some portion of his guilt; but the mask was fallen, and his subjects could no longer mistake the true author of their calamities. The nobles of the Greeks, more especially those who, by descent or alliance, might dispute the Comnenian inheritance, escaped from the monster's clasp: Nice and Prusa, Sicily or Cyprus, were their places of refuge; and as their flight was already criminal, they aggravated their offence by an open revolt, and the imperial title. Yet Andronicus resisted the doggers and swords of his most formidable enemies: Nice and Prusa were reduced and cleansed: the Sicilians were content with the sack of Thessalonica; and the distance of Cyprus was not more propitious to the rebel than to the tyrant. His throne was subverted by a rival without merit, and a people without arms. Isaac Anglus, a descendant in the female line from the great Alexius, was marked as a victim, by the prudence or superstition of the emperor. In a moment of despair, Anglus defended his life and liberty, slew the executioner, and fled to the church of St. Sophia. The sanctuary was instantly filled with a various and mournful crowd, who, in his fate, prognosticated their own. But their lamentations were soon turned to curses, and their curses to threats: they dared to ask, "Why do we fear? why do we obey? We are many, and he is one; our patience is the only bond of our slavery." With the dawn of day the city
the sovereignty of Trebizond, so obscure in history, and so famous in romance. A private citizen of Philadelphia, Constantine Angelus had emerged to wealth and honours, by his marriage with a daughter of the emperor Alexius. His son Andronicus is considored only by his cowardice. His grandson Isaac punished and succeeded the tyrant: but he was dethroned by his own vices, and the ambition of his brother; and their discourse introduced the Latins to the conquest of Constantinople, the first great period in the fall of the Eastern empire.

If we compute the number and duration of the reigns, it will be found, that a period of six hundred years is filled by sixty emperors, including in the Augustan list some female sovereigns; and deducting some usurpers who were never acknowledged in the capital, and some princes who did not live to possess their inheritance. The average proportion will allow ten years for each emperor. Far below the chronological rule of Sir Isaac Newton, who, from the experience of more recent and regular monarchies, has defined about eightie or twenty years as the term of an ordinary reign. The Byzantine empire was most tranquill and prosperous when it could accommodate to hereditary succession; five dynasties, the Eupatorian, Isaurian, Armenian, Basilian, and Commontian families, enjoyed and transmitted the royal patrimony during their respective series of fifty-four, thirty, six, and four generations: several princes numbered the years of their reign with those of their infancy; and Constantine the Seventh and his two grandsons occupy the space of an entire century. But in the intervals of the Byzantine dynasties, the succession is rapid and broken, and the name of a successful candidate is equally erased by a more fortunate competitor. Many were the paths that led to the summit of royalty: the fabric of rebellion was overthrown by the stroke of conspiracy, or undermined by the silent arts of intrigue: the favourites of the soldiers or people, of the senate or clergy, of the women and eunuchs, were alternately clothed with the purple: the mean of their elevation were base, and their end was often contemptible or tragic. A being of the nature of man, endowed with the same faculties, but with a longer measure of existence, would cast down a smile of pity and contempt on the crimes and follies of human ambition, so eager, in a narrow span, to grasp at a precarious and short-lived enjoyment. It is thus that the experience of history, extals and enlarges the horizon of our intellectual view. In a composition of some days, in a period of some hours, six hundred years have rolled away, and the duration of a life or reign is contracted to a fleeting moment: the grave is ever beside the throne; the success of a criminal is almost instantly followed by the loss of his prize; and our immortal reason survives and disdains the petty phantoms of kings who have passed before our eyes, and faintly dwell on our remembrance. The observation, that, in every age and climate, ambition has prevailed with the same commanding energy, may shol

hurt into a general sentiment, the princes were thrown open, the coldest and most servile were raised to the defence of their country, and Isaac, the second of the name, was raised from the sanctuary to the throne. Unconscious of his danger, the tyrant was absent; withdrawn from the halls of state, in the delicious islands of the Propontis. He had contracted an indelent marriage with Alice, or Agnes, daughter of Lewis the Seventh, of France, and relic of the unfortunate Alexius; and his society, more suitable to his temper than to his age, was composed of a young wife and a favourite concubine. On the first alarm he rushed to Constantinople, impatient for the blood of the guilty; but he was astonished by the silence of the palace, the tumult of the city, and the general desertion of mankind. Andronicus proclaimed a free pardon to all his subjects; they neither desired, nor would grant, forgiveness; he offered to resign the crown to his son Manuel: but the virtues of the son could not expiate his father's crimes. The sea was still open for his retreat; but the news of the revolution had flown along the coast; when fear had ceased, obedience was no more: the Imperial galley was pursued and taken by an armed brigantine; and the tyrant was dragged to the presence of Isaac Angelus, loaded with fetters, and a long chain round his neck. His eloquence, and the tears of his female companions, pleaded in vain for his life; but, instead of the deceases of a legal execution, the new monarch abandoned the criminal to the numerous sufferers, whom he had deprived of a father, an husband, or a friend. His teeth and hair, as eye and a hand, were torn from him, as a poor compensation for their loss; and a short respite was allowed, that he might feel the bitterness of death. A Astride on a camel, without any danger of a rescue, he was carried through the city, and the laus of the populace rejoiced to trample on the fallen majesty of their prince. After a thousand blows and outrages, Andronicus was hung by the feet, between two pillars that supported the statues of a wolf and a sow; and every hand that could reach the public enemy, inflicted on his body some mark of ignominious or brutal cruelty, till two friendly or furious Italians, plunging their swords into his body, released him from all human punishment. In this long and painful agony, "Land have mercy upon me! and why will you bruise a broken reed?" were the only words that escaped from his mouth. Our hatred for the tyrant is lost in pity for the man; nor can we blame his pusillanimous resignation, since a Greek Christian was no longer master of his life.

I have been tempted to expatiate on the extraordinary character and adventures of Andronicus; but I shall here terminate the series of the Greek emperors since the time of Heracleus. The branches that sprang from the Comnenian trunk had immensely withered; and the male line was continued only in the posterity of Andronicus himself, who, in the public confusion, usurp and
the surprise of a philosopher; but while he
concludes the vanity, he may search the motive of
this universal desire to obtain and hold the
acquiesce of dominion. To the greater part of the
Byzantine series, we cannot reasonably ascribe
the love of fame and of mankind. The virtuous
acts of John Comnenus were beneficent and
pure; the most illustrious of the princes, who
preceded or followed that remarkable name, have
tread with some dexterity in the crooked
and bloody paths of a selfish policy: in
scru
tilising the imperfect characters of Leo the
Isaurian, Basil the First, and Alexius Comnenus,
of Tychaphilus, the second Basil, and Manuel
Comnenus, our esteem and censure are almost
equally balanced; and the remainder of the
Empire crowd could only desire and expect to
be forgotten by posterity. Was personal
happiness the aim and object of their ambition?
I shall not descant on the vulgar topics of the
misery of kings; but I may surely observe,
that their condition, of all others, is the most
pro
gress with four, and the least susceptible of hope.
For these opposite passions, a larger scope was
allowed in the revolutions of antiquity, than in the
smooth and solid temper of the modern
world, which cannot easily repeat either the
triumph of Alexander or the fall of Darius.
But the peculiar infidelity of the Byzantine
princes exposed them to domestic perils, without
affording any lively promise of foreign conquest.
From the pinnacle of greatness, Andræuscus was
precipitated by a death more cruel and shameful
than that of the vilest misfactor; but the most
glorious of his predecessors had much more to
fear from their subjects than to hope from their
enemies. The army was licentious without
spirit: the nation turbulent without freedom:
the barbarians of the East and West pressed on
the monarchy, and the loss of the provinces was
terminated by the final servitude of the capital.
The entire series of Roman emperors, from the
first of the Caesars to the last of the
Constantines, extends above fifteen hundred years;
and the term of dominion, unbroken by foreign
conquest, surpasses the measure of the ancient
monarchies: the Assyrians or Medes, the
successors of Cyrus, or those of Alexander.

CHAP. XLIX.

Introduction, Worship, and Penetration of Images.

- Result of Italy and Rome. - Temporal
Dominion of the Popes. - Conquest of Italy by
the Franks. - Establishment of Images.

Character and Coronation of Charlemagne.

Restoration and Decay of the Roman Empire
in the West. - Independence of Italy. - Con
stitution of the Germanic Body.

In the connection of the church and
state, I have considered the former
as subservient only, and relative to
the latter; a salutary maxim, if in fact, as well
as in narrative, it had ever been held sacred.
The oriental philosophy of the Gnostics, the
dark abyss of predestination and grace, and the
strange transformation of the Eucharist from
the sign to the substance of Christ's body, has
I purposefully abandoned to the curiosity of
speculative divines. But I have reviewed, with
diligence and pleasure, the objects of ecclesiastic
history, by which the decline and fall of the
Roman empire were materially affected, the
propagation of Christianity, the constitution of the
Catholic church, the ruin of Paganism, and the
sects that arose from the mysterious controversies
concerning the Trinity and incarnation. At the
head of this class, we may justly rank the worship
of images, so fiercely disputed in the eighth and
ninth centuries; since a question of popular
superstition produced the revolt of Italy, the
temporal power of the popes, and the restoration of
the Roman empire in the West.

The primitive Christians were possessed with
an unassailable repugnance to the use and
abuse of images; and this aversion may be
ascertained to their descent from the Jews, and
their eminence to the Greeks. The Mosaic law
had severely proscribed all representations of the
Deity; and that precept was firmly established in
the principles and practice of the chosen people.
The vit of the Christian apologists was pointed
against the idolatry of the Hebrews, who bowed before
the workmanship of their own hands: the images of
bears and horses, which, had they been endowed
with sense and motion, should have started
rather from the pedestal to adore the creative
powers of the artist. Perhaps some recent and
imperfect converts of the Gnostic tribe might
crowns the statues of Christ and St. Paul with
the profane honours which they paid to those of
Aristotle and Pythagoras; but the public
religion of the Catholics was uniformly simple and
spiritual; and the first notice of the use of pic
tures is in the censure of the council of Hilberis,
three hundred years after the Christian era.
Under the successors of Constantine, in the
peace and luxury of the triumphant church, the
more prudent bishops contented themselves to indulge
a visible superstition, for the benefit of the multi
pitude: and, after the ruin of Paganism, they
were no longer restrained by the apprehension
of an odious parallel. The first introduction of
a symbolical worship was in the veneration of the
cross, and of relics. The saints and martyrs,
whose intercession was imploros, were seated on
the right hand of God; but the gracious and
often supernatural favours, which, in the popular
belief, were showered round their tomb, conveyed
an unquestionable sanction of the devout
pilgrims, who visited, and touched, and kissed,
these lifeless remains, the memorials of their
merits and sufferings. But a memorial, more
interesting than the skull or the sandals of a
departed worthy, is the faithful copy of his person
outstanding, of the Latin apologists. Their history of Artimathus
is only the object, but the form and matter.
and features, delineated by the arts of painting or sculpture. In every age, such copies, so congenial to human feelings, have been cherished by the real of private friendship, or public esteem: the images of the Roman emperors were adored with civil, and almost religious honours; a reverence less ostentatious, but more sincere, was applied to the statues of sages and patriots; and those profane, virtues, these splendid signs, disappeared in the presence of the holy men, who had died for their celestial and everlasting country. At first, the experiment was made with caution and scruple; and the venerable pictures were discreetly allowed to instruct the ignorant, to awaken the cold, and to gratify the prejudices of the Latin populace. By a slow though inevitable progression, the honours of the original were transferred to the copy: the devout Christian prayed before the image of a saint; and the Pagan rites of festivity, luminaries, and incense, again stole into the Catholic church. The examples of reason, or piety, were silenced by the strong evidence of visions and miracles; and the pictures which speak, and move, and bleed, must be endowed with a divine energy, and may be considered as the proper objects of religious adoration. The most audacious peevish might tremble in the rush attempt of defining, by forms and colours, the infinite Spirit, the eternal Father, who pervades and sustains the universe. But the superstitious mind was more easily reconciled to paint and to worship the angels, and, above all, the Son of God, under the human shape, which, an earth, they have contended to assume. The second person of the Trinity had been clothed with a real and mortal body; but that body had ascended into heaven; and, had not some simulacra been presented to the eyes of his disciples, the spiritual worship of Christ might have been obliterated by the visible relics and representations of the saints. A similar indulgence was requisite, and propitious, for the Virgin Mary: the place of her burial was unknown; and the assumption of her soul and body into heaven was adopted by the credulity of the Greeks and Latins. The use, and even the worship, of images, was firmly established before the end of the sixth century: they were feebly cherished by the warm imagination of the Greeks and Asiae: the Panticip and Vatican were adorned with the emblems of a new superstition; but this semblance of idolatry was more cajolily entertained by the rude barbarians and the Arian clergy at the West. The builder forms of sculpture, in brass or marble, which peopled the temples of antiquity, were offensive to the fancy or conscience of the Christian Greeks; and a smooth surface of colours has ever been esteemed a more decent and harmless mode of imitation.

The merit and effect of a copy depends on its resemblance with the original; but the primitive Christians were ignorant of the genuine features of the Son of God, his mother, and his apostles: the statue of Christ at Panas in Palestine was more probably that of some temporal saviour; the Gnostic and their profane monuments were repulsed; and the fancy of the Christian artists could only be guided by the clandestine imitation of some heathen model. In this the most ardent and skilful invention assailed us, on the likeness of the image and the immensity of the worship. A new superstructure of fable was raised on the popular basis of a Syrian legend, on the correspondence of Christ and Augustus, so famous in the days of Insania, so reluctantly despoiled by our modern advocates. The bishop of Cosara records the epistle, but most strangely forgets the painting, of Christ, the perfect impression of his face on a times, with which he graced the altar of the royal stranger, who had invoked his holy power, and offered the strong city of Edessa to protect him against the malice of the Jews. The ignorance of the primitive church is explained by the long imprisonment of the image in a niche of the wall, from whence, after an oblivion of five hundred years, it was released by some prudent bishop, and solemnly presented to the devotion of the times. Its first and most glorious exploit was the deliverance of the city from the arms of Chosroes Nushirvan; and it was soon revered as a pledge of the divine promise, that Edessa should never be taken by a foreign enemy. It is true, indeed, that the text of Procopius ascribes the double deliverance of Edessa to the wealth and value of her citizens, who purchased the absence and repelled the assaults of the Persian monarch. He was ignorant, the profane historian, of the testimony which he is compelled to deliver in the ecclesiastical page of Evagrius, that the Palladium was exposed on the rampart, and that the water which had been sprinkled on the holy face, in-
The worship of images had stolen into the church by insensible degrees, and each petty step was pleasing to the superstitious mind, as productive of comfort, and innocent of sin. But in the beginning of the eighth century, in the full magnitude of the abuse, the more timorous Greeks were awakened by an apprehension, that under the mask of Christianity, they had restored the religion of their fathers; they heard, with grief and impatience, the name of Idolaters; the incessant clamours of the Jews and Mahometans, who derived from the Law and the Koran an immortal hatred to graven images and all relative worship. The servitude of the Jews might curb their zeal, and depreciate their authority; but the triumphant Mussulmans, who rejoiced at Damascus, and threatened Constantineople, cast into the scale of reprobation the accumulated weight of truth and victory. The cities of Syria, Palestine, and Egypt, had been fortified with the images of Christ, his mother, and his saints; and each city presumed on the hope or promise of miraculous defence. In a rapid conquest of three hundred years, the Paladins was yielded to the devotion of Constantineople, for a ransom of twelve thousand pounds of silver, the redemption of two hundred Mussulmans, and a perpetual trance for the territory of Edessa. In this season of distress and dismay, the eloquence of the monks was exercised in the defence of images; and they attempted to prove, that the sin and schism of the greatest part of the Orientale had forfeited the favour, and annihilated the virtue, of those precious symbols. But they were now opposed by the murmurs of many simple or rational Christians, who appealed to the evidence of texts, of facts, and of the primitive times, and secretly desired the reformation of the church. As the worship of images had never been established by any general or positive law, its progress in the Eastern Empire had been retarded, or accelerated, by the differences of men and manners, the local degrees of refinement, and the personal characters of the bishops. The splendid devotion was finally extinguished by the levity of the capital, and the inventive genius of the Byzantine clergy; while the rude and remote districts of Asia were strangers to this innovation of sacred luxury.
Many large congregations of Gnostics and Arians maintained, after their conversion, the simple worship which had preceded their separation; and the Armenians, the most warlike subjects of Rome, were not reconciled, in the twelfth century, to the sight of images. These various denominations of men afforded a fund of prejudice and aversion, of small account in the villages of Anatolia or Thrace, but which, in the fortune of a soldier, a pedlar, or an envious, might be often connected with the powers of the church and state.

Of such adventurers, the most fortunate was the emperor Leo the Third, who, from the mountains of Isauria, ascended the throne of the East. He was arrogant and profane letters; but his legislation, his reason, perhaps his intercourse with the Jews and Arabs, had inspired the mortal passion with an hatred of images; and it was held to be the duty of a prince, to impose on his subjects the dictates of his own conscience. But in the outset of an untutored reign, during ten years of trial and danger, Leo submitted to the madness of hypocrisy, bowed before the idols which he despised, and satisfied the Roman pontiff with the annual professions of his orthodoxy and zeal. In the reformation of religion, his first steps were moderate and cautious: he assembled a great council of senators and bishops, and enacted, with their consent, that all the images should be removed from the sanctuary and altar to a proper height in the churches, where they might be visible to the eyes, and inaccessible to the superstition of the people. But it was impossible on either side to check the rapid triumph of superstition; and the images still adorned their canopied thrones, and reproached the tyrant. He was himself provoked by resistance and invective; and his own party accused him of an imperfect discharge of his duty, and urged for his imitation the example of the Jewish king, who had broken without scruple the brazen serpent of the temple. By a second edict, he proscribed the existence as well as the use of religious pictures; the churches of Constantinople and the provinces were cleansed from idolatry; the images of Christ, the Virgin, and the saints, were demolished, or a smooth surface of plaster was spread over the walls of the edifice. The sect of the Iconoclasts was supported by the zeal and devotion of six emperors, and the East and West were involved in a noisy conflict of one hundred and twenty years. It was the design of Leo the Isaurian to pronounce the condemnation of images, as an article of faith, and by the authority of a general council: but the convocation of such an assembly was reserved for his son Constantine; and though it is stigmatized by triumphant bigotry as a meeting of fools and atheists, their own partial and mutilated acts betray many symptoms of reason and propriety. The debates and decrees of many provincial synods introduced the summons of the general council which met in the suburbs of Constantinople, and was composed of the respectable number of three hundred and thirty-eight bishops of Europe and Anatolia; for the patriarchs of Antioch and Alexandria were the slaves of the caliph, and the Roman pontiff had withdrawn the churches of Italy and the West from the communion of the Greeks. This Byzantine synod assumed the rank and powers of the seventh general council; yet even this title was a recognition of the six preceding assemblies, which had laboriously built the structure of the Catholic faith. After a serious deliberation of six months, the three hundred and thirty-eight bishops pronounced and subscribed an unanimous decree, that all visible symbols of Christ, except the Eucharist, were either blasphemous or heretical; that image-worship was a corruption of Christianity and a renewal of Paganism; that all such monuments of idolatry should be broken or erased; and that those who should refuse to deliver the objects of their private superstition, were guilty of disobedience to the authority of the church and of the emperor. In their loud and joyal acclamations, they celebrated the merits of their temporal rulers; and to his zeal and justice they intrusted the execution of their spiritual censures. At Constantinople, as in the former councils, the will of the prince was the rule of bishop and faith; but on this occasion, I am inclined to suspect that a large majority of the prelates sacrificed their secret conscience to the temptations of hope and fear. In the long night of superstition, the Christians had wandered far away from the simplicity of the Gospel: nor was it easy for them to discern the class, and tread back the maze, of the labyrinth. The worship of images was inseparably blended, at least to a pious fancy, with the Cross, the Virgin, the Saints, and their relics: the holy ground was involved in a cloud of miracles and visions; and the nerves of the mind, curiosity and scepticism, were bemused by the habits of obedience and belief. Constantinople itself is accused of indulging a royal licence to doubt, or deny, or dispute, or elect, the mysteries of the Catholics, but they were deeply inscribed in the public and private creed of his bishops; and the holiest Iconoclast might assault with a secret horror the monuments of popular devotion, which were consecrated to the honour of his celestial patrons. In the reformation of the sixteenth century, freedom and knowledge had expanded all the faculties of
man; the thirst of innovation superseded the reverence of antiquity; and the vigour of Europe could disdain those phantoms which terrified the sickly and servile weakness of the Greeks.

Their preservation of the throne was more secure than ever. The multitude, by the extent of the ecclesiastical trumpet; but the most ignorant can perceive, the most toplad must feel, the profanation and downfall of their visible deities. The first hostilities of Leo were directed against a lofty Christ on the westwall, and above the gate, of the palace. A ladder had been planted for the assault, but it was furiously shaken by a crowd of scalds and women: they held, with pious transport, the ministers of sacrilege tumbling from on high, and dashed against the pavements; and the honours of the ancient martyrs were prostituted to these criminals, who justly suffered for murder and rebellion. The execution of the imperial edicts was resisted by frequent tumults in Constantinople and the provinces: the person of Leo was endangered, his officers were massacred, and the popular enthusiasm was quelled by the strongest efforts of the civil and military power. Of the Archipelago, or Holy Sea, the numerous islands were filled with images and monasteries: their vortices abjured, without scruple, the enemy of Christ, his mother, and the saints: they armed a fleet of boats and galleys, displayed their consecrated banners, and boldly asserted for the harbour of Constantinople, to place on the throne a new favourite of God and the people. They depended on the succour of a miracle; but their miracles were inefficient against the Greek fire and, after the defeat and constigation of their fleet, the naked islands were abandonned to the clemency or justice of the conqueror. The son of Leo, in the first year of his reign, had undertaken an expedition against the Saracens: during his absence, the capital, the palace, and the purple, were occupied by his kinsman Artavasdes, the ambitious champion of the orthodox faith. The worship of images was triumphantly restored: the patriarch denounced his dissimulation, or dissembled; his sentiments; and the righteous claim of the usurper was acknowledged, both in the new, and in ancient, Rome. Constantine B尉 for refuge to his paternal mountains; but he descended at the head of the bold and affectionate Iurians; and his final victory confirmed the arms and predictions of the factions. His long reign was distracted with clamour, sedition, conspiracy, and mutual hatred, and sanguinary revenge: the persecution of images was the motive, or pretence, of his adversaries; and, if they missed a temporal diadem, they were rewarded by the Greeks with the crown of martyrdom. In every act of open and clandestine treason, the emperor felt the unforgiving enmity of the monks, the faithful slaves of the superstition to which they owed their riches and influence. They prayed, they denounced, they insulted; they conspired: the solitude of Palestine poured forth a torrent of invective; and the pen of St. John Damascene, the last of the Greek fathers, devoted the tyrant's head, both in this world and the next. I am not at leisure to examine how far the monks provoked, nor how much they have exaggerated, their real and pretended sufferings, nor how many lost their lives or limbs, their eyes or their breasts, by the cruelty of the emperor. From the chastisement of individuals, he proceeded to the abolition of the order; and, as it was wealthy and useless, his resentment might be stimulated by avarice, and justified by patriotism. The formidable name and mission of the Dragones, his visitor-general, excited the terror and abhorrence of the black nation: the religious communities were dissolved, the buildings were converted into magazines, or barracks: the lands, meadows, and cattle, were confiscated; and our modern precedents will support the charge, that much wanton or malicious havoc was exercised against the relics, and even the books, of the monasteries. With the habit and profession of monks, the public and private worship of images was rigorously proscribed; and it should seem, that a solemn abjuration of idolatry was exacted from the subjects, or at least from the clergy, of the Eastern empire.

The patient East abjured, with reluctance, her sacred images; they were fondly cherished, and vigorously defended, by the independent and of the Italians. In ecclesiastical rank and jurisdiction, the patriarch of Constantinople and the pope of Rome were nearly equal. But the Greek primate was a domestic slave under the eye of his master, at whose nod he alternately passed from the convent to the throne, and from the throne to the convent. A distant and dangerous station, amidst the barbarism of the West, excited the spirit and freedom of the Latin bishops. Their popular election endeared them to the Romans: the public and private indignation was relieved by their ample revenues; and the weakness or neglect of the emperors compelled them to consult, both in peace and war, the temporal safety of the city. In the school of adversity the priest insensibly imbibed the virtues and the ambition of a prince; the same character was assumed, the same policy was adopted, by the Italians, the

21 The holy emperor Theodosius assumed the throne of their pride in 402. Ammianus Marcellinus, Hist. xxi. c. 22. Eusebius, Hist. viii. 22. Eusebius, Hist. viii. 23. Porphyry to their data. 22 In the year 656, the emperor Constans II. deposed and the Dictate. He is supposed to have been the author of this account. 23 The last of the Greeks, it is said, had been carried away in the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to last, the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 24 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 25 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 26 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 27 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 28 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 29 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 30 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 31 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 32 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 33 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 34 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 35 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 36 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 37 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 38 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 39 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 40 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 41 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 42 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 43 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 44 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 45 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 46 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 47 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 48 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 49 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 50 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to 51 The victory of the emperor was the work of the emperor's own treasure. To this day, the Mongols, and it is said, the Turks, are not able to
Greek, or the Syrian, who ascended the chair of St. Peter; and, after the loss of her legions and provinces, the genius and fortune of the pope again restored the supremacy of Rome. It is agreed, that in the eighth century, their dominium was founded on rebellion, and that the rebellion was produced, and justified, by the heresy of the Iconoclasts; but the conduct of the second and third Gregory, in this memorable contest, is variously interpreted by the wishes of their friends and enemies. The Byzantine writers unanimously declare, that, after a fruitless admonition, they pronounced the separation of the East and West, and deprived the seditious tyrants of the revenue and sovereignty of Italy. Their excommunication is still more clearly expressed by the Greeks, who beheld the accomplishment of the papal triumphs; and as they are more strongly attached to their religion than to their country, they praise, instead of blaming, the zeal and orthodoxy of these apostolical men. The modern champions of Rome are eager to accept the praise and the precedent; this great and glorious example of the deposition of royal hurlieus is celebrated by the cardinals Baronius and Bellarmino; and if they are asked, why the same thunders were not hurled against the Nezus and Julians of antiquity? they reply, that the weakness of the primitive church was the sole cause of her patient loyalty. On this occasion, the effects of love and hatred are the same; and the zealous Protestants, who seek to kindle the inflammation, and to alarm the fears, of princes and magistrates, exult in the insanity and treason of the two Gregories against their lawful sovereign. They are defamed only by the moderate Catholics, for the most part, of the Gallican church, who respect the sentient, without approving the sin. These censure advocates of tyranny and the mitre circumvent the truth of facts by the rule of equity, scripture, and tradition; and appeal to the evidence of the Latins, and the lives, and epistles of the popes themselves.

Two original epistles, from Gregory the Second to the emperor Leo I. are still extant; and if they cannot be praised as the most perfect models of eloquence and logic, they exhibit the portrait, at least as far as the mask, of the founder of the papal monarchy. "During ten pure and fortunate years," says Gregory to the emperor, "we have tasted the annual comfort of your royal letters, subscribed in purple ink, with your own hand, the sacred pledges of your attachment to the orthodox creed of our fathers. How deplorable is the change! how tremendous is the scandal! You now secure the Catholicity of idolatry; and by the accusation, you betray your own impious and ignorant ignorance. To this ignorance we are compelled to adopt the grossness of our style and arguments; the first elements of holy letters are sufficient for your confusion; and were you to enter a grammar-school, and bow yourself the enemy of our worship, the simple and pious children would be provoked to cast their lesson-books at your head." After this decent salutation, the pope attempts the usual distinction between the idols of antiquity and the Christian images. The former were the fanciful representations of phantoms or demons, at a time when the true God had not manifested his person in any visible likeness. The latter are the genuine forms of Christ, his mother, and his saints, who had approved, by a crowd of miracles, the immanence and merit of this relative worship. He must indeed have trusted to the ignorance of Leo, since he could assert the perpetual use of images, from the apostolic age, and their venerable presence in the six synods of the Catholic church. A more specious argument is drawn from present possession and recent practice: the harmony of the Christian world subdued the demand of a general council; and Gregory, frankly confesses, that such assemblies could only be fruitful under the reign of an orthodox prince. To the impudent and inhuman Leo, more guilty than an heretic, he recommends peace, silence, and implicit obedience to his spiritual guides of Constantinople and Rome. The limits of civil and ecclesiastical powers are defined by the pontiff. To the former he appropriates the body; to the latter, the soul: the sword of justice is in the hands of the magistrate; the more formidable weapon of excommunication is trusted to the clergy; and in the exercise of their divine commission, a zealous son will not spare his offending father: the successor of St. Peter may lawfully chastise the kings of the earth. "You assault us, O tyrant," with a carnal and military hand; unarmed and naked,
and saints, were abolished in all the churches of Italy; and a strong alternative was proposed to the Roman pontiff, the royal favour as the price of his cooperation, degradation and exile, and the penalty of his obstinacy. Neither real nor policy allowed him to hesitate; and the haughty strain in which Gregory addressed the emperor displays his confidence in the truth of his doctrine or the powers of resistance. Without depending on prayers or miracles, he boldly armed against the public enemy, and his pastoral letters admonished the Italians of their danger and their duty.  

At this signal, Ravenna, Venice, and the cities of the Exarchate and Pentapolis, adhered to the cause of religion; their military force by sea and land consisted, for the most part, of the natives; and the spirit of patriotism and zeal was transubstantiated into the mercenary strangers. The Italians swore to live and die in the defence of the pope and the holy images; the Roman people was devoted to their father, and even the Lombards were ambitious to share the merit and advantage of this holy war. The most treasurable act, but the most obvious revenge, was the destruction of the statues of Leo himself; the most effectual and pleasing measure of rebellion was the withholding the tribute of Italy, and depriving him of a power which he had recently abused by the imposition of a new exaction. A form of administration was preserved by the election of magistrates and governors; and so high was the public indignation, that the Italians were prepared to create an orthodox emperor, and to conduct him with a fleet and army to the palace of Constantineople. In that palace, the Roman bishops, the second and third Gregory, were condemned as the authors of the revolt, and every attempt was made, either by fraud or force, to seize their persons, and to strike at their lives. The city was repeatedly visited or assaulted by captains of the guards, and shoves and exarcs of high dignity or secret trust; they landed with foreign troops, they obtained due assistance, and the superstition of Nepsus may blush that her fathers were attached to the cause of heresy. But the chosen or open attacks were repelled by the courage and vigilance of the Romans; the Greeks were overwhelmed and massacred, their leaders suffered an ignominious death; and the popes, however inclined to mercy, refused to reconcile them of these guilty victims. At Ravenna, the several quarters of the city had long exercised a bloody and insatiable fond; in religious controversy they found a new abatement of faction; but the vortices of images...
of Augustus, was rescued, after seven hundred and fifty years of servitude, from the persecution of Less the Iberian. By the Caesars, the triumphs of the consuls had been annihilated: in the decline and fall of the empire, the god Terminus, the sacred boundary, had immovably receded from the ocean, the Rhine; the Danube, and the Euphrates; and Rome was reduced to her ancient territory from Viterbo to Terracina, and from Narai to the mouth of the Tyber. When the kings were banished, the republic reposed on the firm basis which had been founded by their wisdom and virtue. Their perpetual jurisdiction was divided between two annual magistrates; the senate continued to exercise the powers of administration and council; and the legislative authority was distributed in the assemblies of the people, by a well-proportioned scale of property and service. Ignorant of the arts of luxury, the primitive Romans had improved the science of government and war; the will of the community was absolute; the rights of individuals were sacred: one hundred and thirty thousand citizens were armed for defence or conquest; and a band of robbers and outlaws was moulded into a nation, desiring of freedom, and ambitious of glory. When the sovereignty of the Greek emperors was extinguished, the ruins of Rome presented the sad image of debasement and decay; her slavery was an habit, her liberty an accident; the effect of superstition, and the object of her own assassination and terror. The last vestiges of the substance, or even the forms, of the constitution, were obliterated from the practice and memory of the Romans; and they were devoid of knowledge, or virtue, again to build the fabric of a commonwealth. Their scanty remnant, the offspring of slaves and strangers, was despicable in the eyes of the victorious barbarians. As often as the Franks or Lombards expressed their most bitter contempt of a foe, they called him a Roman; and in this name," says the bishop Liutprand, "we include whatever is base, whatever is cowardly, whatever is perfidious, the extremes of avarice and luxury, and every vice that can prostitute the dignity of human nature." By the necessity of their situation, the inhabitants of Rome were cast into the rough model of a republican government; they were compelled to elect some judges in person, and some leaders in war: the orders assembled to deliberate, and their resolutions could not be executed without the union and consent of the multitude. The style of the Roman senate and people was revived, but the spirit was fled;

were superior in numbers or spirit, and the exarch, who attempted to stem the torrent, lost his life in a popular sedition. To punish this flagitious deed, and restore his dominion in Italy, the emperor sent a fleet and army into the Adriatic Gulf. After suffering from the winds and waves much loss and delay, the Greeks made their descent in the neighbourhood of Ravenna; they threatened to depopulate the guilty capital, and to imitate, perhaps to surpass, the example of Justinian the Second, who had chastised a former rebellion by the choice and execution of fifty of the principal inhabitants. The women and clergy, in sackcloth and ashes, by prayer; the men were in arms for the defence of their country; the common danger had united the factions, and the event of a battle was preferred to the slow misery of a siege. In a hard-fought day, as the two armies alternately yielded and advanced, a phantasm was seen, a voice was heard, and Ravenna was victorious by the assurance of victory. The strangers retreated to their ships, but the populace sea-coast poured forth a multitude of boats; the waters of the Po were so deeply infected with blood, that during six years, the public prejudice abstained from the fish of the river; and the institution of an annual feast perpetuated the worship of images, and the abhorrence of the Greek tyrant. Amidst the triumphs of the Catholic arms, the Roman pontiff convened a synod of ninety-three bishops against the heresy of the Iconoclasts. With their consent, he pronounced a general excommunication against all who by word or deed should attack the tradition of the fathers and the images of the saints; in this sentence, the emperor was tacitly involved; but the root of a lost and hopeless remonstrance may seem to imply that the anathema was yet suspended over his guilty head. No sooner had they confirmed their own safety, the worship of images, and the freedom of Rome and Italy, than the popes appear to have relaxed of their severity, and to have spared the relics of the Byzantine dominion. Their moderate counsels delayed and prevented the election of a new emperor, and they exhalted the Italians not to separate from the body of the Roman monarchy. The church was permitted to reside within the walls of Ravenna, a captive rather than a master; and till the Imperial coronation of Charlemagne, the government of Rome and Italy was exercised in the name of the successors of Constantine.
and their new independence was disgraced by the tumultuous conflict of licentiousness and oppression. The wane of laws could only be supplied by the influence of religion, and their foreign and domestic counsels were moderated by the authority of the bishop. His absolution, his synods, his correspondence with the kings and princes of the West, his recent services, their gratitude, and oath, accustomed the Romans to consider him as the first magistrate or prince of the city. The Christian piety of the popes was not opposed by the name of Dominus, or Lord; and their face and inscription are still apparent on the most ancient coins. Their temporal dominion is now confirmed by the reverence of a thousand years; and their most illustrious title is the free choice of a people, whom they had redeemed from slavery.

In the quarrels of ancient Greece, the holy people of Elis enjoyed a perpetual peace, under the protection of Jupiter, and in the exercise of the Olympic games. Happy would it have been for the Romans, if a similar privilege had guarded the patrimony of St. Peter from the calamities of war; if the Christians, who visited the holy threshold, would have showered their showers in the presence of the apostle and his successors. But this mystic circle could have been traced only by the wand of a legislator and a sage; this peaceful system was incompatible with the real and ambitious of the popes; the Romans were not addicted, like the inhabitants of Elis, to the innocent and placid labours of agriculture; and the barbarians of Italy, though softened by the climate, were far below the Greek states in the institutions of public and private life. A memorable example of repentance and piety was exhibited by Liutprand, king of the Lombards. In arms, at the gate of the Vatican, the conqueror listened to the voice of Gregory the Second, withdrew his troops, resigned his conquests, respectfully visited the church of St. Peter, and, after performing his devotions, offered his sword and dagger, his crimson and mantle, his silver cross and his crown of gold, on the tomb of the Apostle. But this religious fervour was the illusion, perhaps the delusion, of the moment; the sense of interest is strong and lasting; the love of arms and renown was congenial to the Lombards; and both the prince and people were irresistibly tempted by the disorders of Italy, the nakedness of Rome, and the unwarlike profession of her new chief. On the first edicts of the emperor, they declared themselves the champions of the holy images: Liutprand invaded the province of Ravenna, which had already assumed that distinctive appellation; the Catholics of the

Exarchate yielded without reluctance to his arms and military power; and a foreign enemy was introduced for the first time into the imperial fortress of Ravenna. That city and fortress were speedily recovered by the active diligence and maritime forces of the Venetians; and those faithful subjects obeyed the exhortation of Gregory himself, in separating the personal guilt of Leo from the general cause of the Roman empire. The Greeks were less mindful of the service, than the Lombards of the injury; the two nations, hostile in their faith, were reconciled in a dangerous and unnatural alliance: the king and the church marched to the conquest of Spoletto and Rome: the storm evaporated without effect, but the policy of Liutprand alarmed Italy with a valedictory alternative of insubordination and truce. His successor Astolphus declared himself the equal enemy of the emperor and the pope: Ravenna was subdued by force or treachery; and this final conquest extinguished the series of the exarchate, who had reigned with a subordinate power since the time of Justinian and the ruin of the Gothic kingdom. Rome was summoned to acknowledge the victorious Lombard as her lawful sovereign; the annual tribute of a piece of gold was fixed as the ransom of each citizen, and the sword of destruction was undeniably to exact the penalty of her disobedience. The Romans hesitated; they entreated; they complained; and the threatening barbarians were checked by arms and negotiations, till the popes had engaged the friendship of an ally and avenger beyond the Alps.

In his distress, the first Gregory had implored the aid of the hero of the age, of Charles Martel, who governed the French monarchy with the humble title of mayor or duke; and who, by his signal victory over the Saracens, had saved his country, and perhaps Europe, from the Mahometan yoke. The ambassadors of the pope were received by Charles with decent reverence: but the greatness of his occupations, and the shortness of his life, prevented his interference in the affairs of Italy, except by a friendly and intellectual mediation. His son Pepin, the heir of his power and virtues, assumed the office of champion of the Roman church; and the zeal of the French prince appears to have been prompted by the love of glory and religion. But the danger was on the banks of the Tyber, the succour on those of the Seine; and our sympathy is cold to the relation of distant misery. Amidst the tears of the city, Stephen the Third embraced the generous resolution of visiting in person the courts of Lombardy and France, to deplore the injustice of his enemy, or to excite the pity and indignation of his friend. After soothing the public distress by letters and
they varnished their proceedings with the fairest colours of equity and moderation. The pass for the Alpes, and the walls of Pavia, were the only defence of the Lombards; the former were surprised, the latter were invested, by the son of Pepin; and after a blockade of two years, Desiderius, the last of their native princes, surrendered: his aspiring hopes and his capital. Under the dominion of a foreign king, but in the possession of their national laws, the Lombards became the buffer, rather than the subjects, of the Franks; who derived their blood, and manners, and language, from the same Germanic origin.

The mutual obligations of the popes and the Carolingian family form the important link of ancient and modern, of civil and ecclesiastical history. In the conquest of Italy, the champions of the Roman church obtained a favourable occasion, a specious title, the wishes of the people, the prayers and intrigues of the clergy. But the most essential gifts of the pope to the Carolingian race were the dignity of king of France, and of patron of Rome. Under the sacred monarchy of St. Peter, the nations began to resume the practice of seeking, on the banks of the Tyber, their kings, their laws, and the oracles of their fate. The Franks were perplexed between the name and substance of their government. All the powers of royalty were exercised by Pepin, mayor of the palace; and nothing, except the regal title, was wanting to his ambition. His enemies were crushed by his valour; his friends were multiplied by his liberality; his father had been the saviour of Christendom; and the claims of personal merit were repeated and ennobled in a descent of four generations. The name and fame of royalty was still preserved in the last descendant of Clivis, the feeble Childeric; but his absolute right could only be used as an instrument of sedition; the nation was desirous of restoring the simplicity of the constitution; and Pepin, a subject and a prince, was ambitious to ascertain his own rank and the fortune of his family. The mayor and the nobles were bound, by an oath of fidelity, to the royal phantom; the blood of Clivis was pure and sacred in their eyes; and their common ambassador addressed the Roman pontiff, to despise their scruples, to absolve their promise. The interest of pope Zachary, the successor of the two Gregories, prompted him to decide, and to decide in their favour: he pronounced that the nation might lawfully unite, in the same person, the title and authority of king; and that the unfortunate Childeric, a victim of the public safety, should be degraded, shaven, and confined in a monastery for the remainder of his days. Ap
they derived a more glorious commissio from the pope and the republic. The Roman
ambassadors presented these patricians with the keys of the shrine of St. Peter, as a pledge
and symbol of sovereignty; with a holy banner, which it was their right and duty to
furl in the defence of the church and city. In the time of Charles Martel and of Pepin,
the interpolation of the Lombard kingdom covered the freedom, while it threatened the
safety, of Rome; and the patrician represented only the title, the service, the alliance,
of these distant protectors. The power and policy of Charlemagne annihilated an enemy,
and imposed a master. In his first visit to the capital, he was received with all the honours
which had formerly been paid to the exarch, the representa-
tive of the emperor; and these honours obtained some new decorations from the joy and
gratitude of pope Adrian the First. No sooner was he informed of the sudden approach of
the monarch, than he despatched the magistrates and nobles of Rome to meet him, with the honor,
about thirty miles from the city. At the distance of one mile, the Flaminian way was lined
with the schools, or national communities, of Greeks, Lombards, Saxons, &c. — the Roman
youth was under arms; and the children of a more tender age, with palms and olive branches
in their hands, clanged the praises of their great deliverer. At the aspect of the holy crosses,
and regalia of the saints, he dismounted from his horse, led the procession of his nobles to the
Vatican, and, as he ascended the stairs, devoutly kissed each step of the threshold of the
apostles. In the paracles, Adrian expected him at the foot
of his clergy; they embraced, as friends and equals; but in their march to the altar, the king
or patrician assumed the right hand of the pope. Nor was the Frank content with these vain and
empty demonstrations of respect. In the twenty-
six years that elapsed between the conquest of
Lombardy and his Imperial coronation, Rome, which had been delivered by the sword, was
subject, as his own, to the seer of Charle-
magne. The people swore allegiance to his person and family; in his name money was
raised, and justice was administered; and the election of the pope was examined and confirmed
by his authority. Except an original and self-effecting claim of sovereignty, there was not any
prerogative remaining, which the title of emperor could add to the patrician of Rome.

The gratitude of the Cartha-
grinians was adequate to these obliga-
tions, and their enemies were consecrated
based on text from The Project Gutenberg EBook of The History of the

The text is divided into paragraphs, with the first paragraph discussing the granting of independence to the Romans after the deposition of the last Roman emperor, the assassination of the last Roman emperor, and the restoration of independence to the Romans by the Romans themselves. The text then goes on to discuss the relationship between the Romans and the popes, and how the popes were able to gain independence and power over the Romans.

The Romans, under the leadership of Charlemagne, were able to gain independence from the pope and the republic, and they were able to gain power over the Romans. The popes were able to gain independence and power over the Romans, and they were able to gain power over the Romans. The Romans, under the leadership of Charlemagne, were able to gain independence from the pope and the republic, and they were able to gain power over the Romans.
as the savours and benefactors of the Roman church. Her ancient patrimony of farms and houses was transformed by their bounty into the temporal dominion of cities and provinces; and the donation of the Exarchate was the first fruits of the conquest of Pepin.  

Astolphus with a sigh relinquished his prey; the keys and the hegemonies of the principal cities were delivered to the French ambassador; and, in his master's name, he presented them before the tomb of St. Peter. The ample measure of the Exarchate might comprise all the provinces of Italy which had obeyed the emperor and his viceroy; but its strict and proper limits were included in the territories of Ravenna, Bologna, and Ferrara; its inseparable dependency was the Pentapolis, which stretched along the Adriatic from Rimini to Ascona, and advanced into the midland country as far as the ridges of the Appennines. In this transaction, the ambition and avarice of the popes has been severely condemned. Perhaps the humility of a Christian priest should have rejected an earthly kingdom, which it was not easy for him to govern without renouncing the virtues of his profession. Perhaps a faithful subject, or even a generous enemy, would have been less impatient to divide the spoils of the barbarians; and if the emperor had intrusted Stephen to solicit in his name the restitution of the Exarchate, I will not absolve the pope from the reproach of treachery and falsehood. But in the rigid interpretation of the laws, every one may accept, without injury, whatever his benefactor can bestow without injustice. The Greek emperor had seduced, or forfeited, his right to the Exarchate; and the sword of Astolphus was broken by the stronger sword of the Carolingian. It was not in the cause of the Iconoclast that Pepin had exposed his person and army in a double expedition beyond the Alps; he possessed, and might usefully alienate, his conquests; and to the importunities of the Greeks he piously replied, that no human consideration should tempt him to resume the gift which he had conferred on the Romans pontiff for the remission of his sins and the salvation of his soul. The splendid donation was granted in supreme and absolute dominion, and the world beheld for the first time a Christian bishop invested with the prerogatives of a temporal prince; the choice of magistrates, the exercise of justice, the imposition of taxes, and the wealth of the palace of Ravenna. In the dissolution of the Lombard kingdom, the inhabitants of the duchy of Spoleto sought a refuge from the storm, shaved their heads after the Roman fashion, declared themselves the servants and subjects of St. Peter, and completed, by this voluntary surrender, the present circle of the ecclesiastical state. That mysterious circle was enlarged to an indefinite extent, by the verbal or written donation of Charlemagne, who, in the first transport of his victory, despised himself and the Greek emperor of the cities and islands which had formerly been annexed to the Exarchate. But, in the cruel moments of absence and reflection, he viewed, with an eye of jealousy and envy, the recent greatness of his ecclesiastical ally. The execution of his own and his father's promises was respectfully eluded; the king of the Franks and Lombards asserted the inalienable rights of the empire; and, in his life and death, Ravenna, as well as Rome, was numbered in the list of his metropolitan cities. The sovereignty of the Exarchate melted away in the hands of the popes; they found in the archbishops of Ravenna a dangerous and domestic rival; the nobles and people disdained the yoke of a priest; and, in the disasters of the times, they could only retain the memory of an ancient claim, which, in a more prosperous age, they had revived and realized.

Fate is the resource of weakness and cunning; and the strong, though ignorant, barbarian, was often entangled in the net of sacerdotal policy. The Vatican and Lateran were an arsenal and manufacture, which, according to the occasion, have produced or concealed a various collection of false or genuine, of corrupt or suspicious, acts, as they tended to promote the interest of the Roman church. Before the end of the eighth century, some apocryphal writings, perhaps the numerous Isidore, composed the decretes, and the donation of Constantine, the two magic pillars of the spiritual and temporal monarchy of the popes. This memorable donation was introduced to the world by an epistle of Adrian the First, who exhorts Charlemagne to imitate the liberality, and revive the name, of the great Constantine. According to the legend, the first of the Christian emperors was healed of the leprosy, and purified in the waters of baptism, by St. Silvester, the Roman bishop; and never was physician more gloriously recompensed. His royal prostrate withdrew from the seat and patrimony of St. Peter; declared his resolution of founding a new capital in the East; and resigned to the popes the free and perpetual sovereignty of Rome, Italy, and the provinces of the

---

66 Medicus (Ioratator, Hist. Trog. p. 561) speaks this design in the same terms, with still more elaborate phrases. The original act and description are to be found in the Not. Guic. tom. vi. p. 136, and in Cod. Caroli et urb. pap. 137; and the words are very rare, the letter is very orthographic, and the form is very authentic; since it has been found under the name of John the Shepherd, and has been ascribed to the period of Constantine the Great.

67 The model and donor of this church are hardly discoverable. Perhaps it was founded by the Abbot Beneventano, who ranged this province in the name of Pepin; perhaps it was erected by John the Shepherd, who is said to have been the aforesaid Abbot Beneventano, and the first Bishop of Spoleto; perhaps by the Emperor Constantine, who consecrated it; perhaps by a senator, or a wealthy nobleman, or a private man of substance; it is at least certain that the church was founded so early, as to be worthy to be mentioned in the Catalogue of ancient edifices (Capit. Carol. Epist. 87, n. 5, p. 139.), and the see was held by several of the bishop's representatives, in which office the Bishop of Spoleto was always the most celebrated. The endowments, which are mentioned in the Catalogue, are to be found in the A. D. 911, No. 12. On the registers of the archbishops of the time. The See of Spoleto, however, was never united to Rome, even under the Roman church.
This fiction was productive of the most beneficial effects. The Greek princes were convinced of the guilt of usurpation; and the revolt of Gregory was the claim of his lawful inheritance. The popes were delivered from their debt of gratitude; and the nominal gifts of the Carolingians were no more than the just and irrevocable restitution of a scanty portion of the ecclesiastical state. The sovereignty of Rome no longer depended on the choice of a sickle people; and the successors of St. Peter and Constantine were invested with the purple and prerogatives of the Caesars. So deep was the ignorance and credulity of the times, that the most absurd of fables was received, with equal reverence, in Greece and in France, and is still enshrined among the decrees of the canon law. The emperors, and the Romans, were incapable of discerning a forgery, that subverted their rights and freedom; and the only opposition proceeded from a Sabine monastery, which, in the beginning of the twelfth century, disputed the truth and validity of the donation of Constantine. In the revival of letters and literature this fictitious deed was transmitted by the pen of Lancrentius Valla, the pen of an eloquent critic and a Roman patriot. His contemporaries of the fifteenth century were astonished at his sacrilegious boldness; yet such is the silent and irresistible progress of reason, that before the end of the next age, the fable was rejected by the contempt of historians and poets, and the tact or modesty of the advocates of the Roman church. The popes themselves have indulged a smile at the credulity of the vulgar; but a false and obsolete title still sanctifies their reign; and, by the same fortune which has attended the decrees and the Syllebrary edicts, the edicts has subsisted after the foundations have been undermined.

While the popes established in Italy their freel and dominion, the images, the first cause of their revolt, were restored in the Eastern empire. Under the reign of Constantine the Fifth, the union of civil and ecclesiastical power had overthrown the tree, without extinguishing the root, of superstition. The idols, for such they were now held, were secretly cherished by the order and the sex most prone to devotion; and the final alliance of the monks and females obtained a final victory over the reason and authority of man. Leo the Fourth maintained with less vigour the religion of his father and grandfather; but his wife, the fair and ambitious Irene, had imbibed the zeal of the Athenians, the heirs of the idolatry, rather than the philosophy, of their ancestors. During the life of her husband, these sentiments were inflamed by danger and dissimulation, and she could only labour to protect and promote some favourite monks whom she drew from their caverns, and seated on the metropolitan thrones of the East. But as soon as she reigned in her own name and that of her son, Irene more seriously undertook the ruin of theIconoclasts; and the first step of her future persecution was a general edict for liberty of conscience. In the restoration of the monks, a thousand images were exposed to the public veneration; a thousand legends were invented of their sufferings and miracles. By the opportunities of death or removal, the episcopal sees were judiciously filled; the most eager preachers for earthly or celestial favours anticipated and flattered the judgment of their sovereign; and the presence of her secretary Tanasius gave Irene the patronage of Constantinople, and the command of the Oriental church. But the decree of a general council could only be repelled by a similar assembly; the Iconoclasts whom she convened, were held in possession, and adverse to debate; and the feehle voice of the bishops was re-echoed by the more formidable clamour of the soldiers and people of Constantinople. The delay and intrigues of a year, the separation of the disaffected troops, and the choice of Niceas for a second orthodox synod, removed these obstacles; and the episcopal conscience was again, after the Greek fashion, in the hands of the princes. No more than eighteen days were allowed for the consummation of this important work; the Iconoclasts appeared, not as judges, but as criminals or penitents: the scene was decorated

In a few words, under the name of Filotheos, 1772 (ibid. Dicta Eud. rec., l. 1. 1788.)
by the legates of pope Adrian and the Eastern patriarchs, the decrees were framed by the president Tarasius, and ratified by the acclamations and subscriptions of three hundred and fifty bishops. They unanimously pronounced, that the worship of images is agreeable to Scripture and reason; to the fathers and councils of the church; but they hesitate whether that worship be relative or direct; whether the Godhead and the figure of Christ, be entitled to the same mode of adoration. Of this second Nicene council, the acts are still extant; a curious monument of superstition and ignorance, of falsehood and folly. I shall only notice the judgment of the bishops, on the comparative merit of image-worship and reality. A monk had concluded a truce with the demon of fornication, on condition of interrupting his daily prayers to a picture that hung in his cell. His scruples prompted him to consult the abbot.

"Rather than offend Christ and his Mother in their holy images, it would be better for you," replied the custos, "to enter every brothel, and visit every prostitute, in the city.""}

For the honour of orthodoxy, at least the orthodoxy of the Roman church, it is somewhat unfortunate, that the two princes who contested the two councils of Nice are both stained with the blood of their sons. The second of these assemblies was approved and rigorously executed by the despotism of Irene, and she refused her adversaries the toleration which at first she had granted to her friends. During the five succeeding reigns, a period of thirty-eight years, the contest was maintained, with unabated rage and various success, between the worshipers and the breakers of the images; but I am not inclined to pursue with minute diligence the repetition of the same events. Nicæophors allowed a general liberty of speech and practice, and the only virtue of his reign is acceded by the monks as the cause of his temporal and eternal perdition. Superstition and weakness formed the character of Michael the First, but the arts and images were incapable of expelling their votary on the throne. In the purple, Leo the Fifth asserted the name and religion of an Armenian; and the idols, with their sedulous adherents, were condemned to a second exile. Their applause would have sanctified the murder of an impious tyrant, but his assassin and successor, the Second Michael, was tainted from his birth with the Phrygian heresies; he attempted to mediate between the contending parties; and the intractable spirit of the Catholics insensibly drew him into the opposite scale. His moderation was guarded by timidity; but his son Theophilus, alike ignorant of fear and pity, was the last and most cruel of the Iconoclasts. The enthusiasm of the times ran strongly against them; and the emperors, who assumed the terror, were exasperated and punished by the public hatred. After the death of Theophilus, the final victory of the images was achieved by a second female, his widow Theodora, whom he left the guardian of the empire. Her measures were bold and decisive. The fiction of a tardy repentance absolved the name and the soul of her deceased husband; the sentence of the Iconoclast patriarch was commuted from the loss of his eyes to a whipping of two hundred lashes; the bishop trembled, the monks shuddered, and the festival of orthodoxy preserves the annual memory of the triumph of the images. A single question yet remains, whether they are endowed, with any proper and inherent sanctity; it was agitated by the Greeks of the eleventh century, and as this opinion has the strongest recomendation of absurdity, I am surprised that it was not more explicitly decided in the affirmative. In the West, pope Adrian the First accepted and announced the decrees of the Nicene assembly, which is now revered by the Catholics as the seventh in rank of the general councils. Rome and Italy were docile to the voice of their father; but the greatest part of the Latin Christians were far behind in the race of superstition.

The churches of France, Germany, the Poitevins, and Schottland, of England, and Spain, studded a middle course between the adoration and the destruction of images, which they admitted into their temples, not as objects of worship, but as lively and useful memorials of faith and history. An angry book of controversy was composed and published in the name of Charlemagne; under his authority a synod of three hundred bishops was assembled at Frankfort; they blessed the fury of the Iconoclasts, but they pronounced a more severe sentence against the superstition of the Greeks, and the decrees of their pretended council, which was long despised by the barbarians of the West. Among them the worship of images advanced with a silent and insensible progress; but a large statement is made for their imitation and delay, by the gross idolatry of the ages which precede the reformation, and of the countries, both in Europe and Asia, which are still immersed in the gloom of superstition.

It was after the Nicene synod, and under the reign of the pious Irene, that the popes consummated the separation of Rome and Italy.

---

Note: The text contains references to historical figures and events, including Pope Adrian I, Pope Hadrian I, and Emperor Michael the First. The text discusses the controversy over the worship of images and the actions of the Nicene council. It also mentions the influence of Charlemagne and other European leaders in the debates surrounding the orthodoxy of images. The text concludes by noting the separation of the See of Rome and Italy.
by the translation of the empire to the less orthodox Charlemagne. They were compelled to choose between the rival nations; religion was not the sole motive of their choice; and while they dissembled the failings of their friends, they beheld, with reluctance and suspicion, the Catholic virtues of their foes. The difference of language and manners had perpetuated the enmity of the two capitals; and they were alienated from each other by the hostile opposition of seventy years. In that schism the Romans had tasted of freedom, and the popes of sovereignty; their submission would have exposed them to the revenge of a furious tyrant; and the revolution of Italy had betrayed the impotence, as well as the tyranny, of the Byzantine court. The Greek emperors had restored the images, but they had not restored the Catholic Elvis 88 and the Ilyrian diocese, 89 which the Iconoclasts had torn away from the successors of St. Peter; and pope Adrian threatened them with a sentence of excommunication unless they speedily adopt this practical heresy. 90 The Greeks were now orthodox, but their religion might be tainted by the breath of the reigning monarch; the Franks were now more ambitious; but a discerning eye might discern their approaching conversion from the fear, to the adoption, of images. The name of Charlemagne was stained by the pious acumen of his scribes; but the conqueror himself confirmed, with the temper of a statesman, in the various practices of France and Italy. In his four pilgrimages or visits to the Vatican, he embraced the popes in the communion of friendship and piety; knelt before the tomb, and consequently before the image, of the apostle; and joined, without scruple, in all the prayers and processes of the Roman liturgy. Would prudence or gratitude allow the pontiffs to renounce their benefactor? Had they a right to alienate his gift of the Exarchate? Had they power to abolish his government of Rome? The title of patriarch was below the merit and greatness of Charlemagne; and it was only by reviving the Western empire that they could pay their obligations or secure their establishment. By this decisive measure they would finally eradicate the claims of the Greeks from the dominion of a provincial town, the majority of Rome would be restored; the Latin Christians would be united, under a supreme head, in their ancient metropolis; and the conqueror of the West would receive their crown from the successors of St. Peter. The Roman church would acquire a steadfast and respectable advocate; and, under the shadow of the Caslovillian power, the bishop might exercise, with honour and safety, the government of the city. 91

Before the ruin of Paganism in Rome, the competition for a wealthy bishopric had often been productive of tumult and bloodshed. The people was less numerous, but the times were more savage, the prize more important, and the head of St. Peter was rarely disputed by the leading ecclesiastics who aspired to the rank of sovereigns. The reign of Adrian the First 92 surpasses the measure of past or succeeding ages; 93 the walls of Rome, the sacred patrimony, the ruin of the Lombards, and the friendship of Charlemagne, were the trophies of his fame; he secretly edified the throne of his successors, and displayed in a narrow space the virtues of a great prince. His memory was revered; but in the next election, a priest of the Lateran, Leo the Third, was preferred to the nephew and the favourite of Adrian, whom he had promoted to the first dignities of the church. Their acquaintance or enmity disguised, above four years, the longest intention of revenge, till the day of a procession, when a furious band of conspirators dispersed the unarmed multitude, and assaultedit with blows and wounds the sacred person of the pope. But their enterprise on his life or liberty was disappointed, perhaps by their own circumstance and remorse. Leo was left for dead on the ground; on his revival from the swoon, the effect of his loss of blood, he recovered his speech and sight; and this natural event was improved to the miraculoust restoration of his eyes and tongue, of which he had been deprived, twice deprived, by the knife of the assassins. 94 From his prison he escaped to the Vatican; the duke of Spoleto hastened to his rescue; Charlemagne sympathised in his injury, and in his exuap of Paderborn in Westphalia accepted, or solicited, a visit from the Roman pontiff. Leo received the Alps with a commission of cures and bishops, the guards of his safety and the judges of his innocence; and it was not without reluctance, that the conqueror of the Saxons delayed till

---


89 Hish. Rom. p. 525.

90 Hish. Rom. p. 525.

91 Hish. Rom. p. 525.

92 Hish. Rom. p. 525.

93 Hish. Rom. p. 525.

94 Hish. Rom. p. 525.
the ensuing year the personal discharge of this pious office. In his fourth and last pilgrimage, he was received at Rome with the due honours of king and patrician: Leo was permitted to purify himself by acts of the crimes imputed to his charge; his enemies were silenced, and the sacrilegious attempt against his life was punished by the mild and insufficient penalty of exile. On the festival of Christmas, the last year of the eighth century, Charlemagne appeared in the church of St. Peter; and, to gratify the vanity of Rome, he had exchanged the simple dress of his country for the habit of a patrician. 45 After the celebration of the holy mysteries, Leo suddenly placed a precious crown on his head, 45 and the dome resounded with the acclamations of the people. 46 Long life and victory to Charles, the most pious Augustus, crowned by God the great and pacific emperor of the Romans! 47

The head and body of Charlemagne were consecrated by the royal monarch; after the example of the Caesars, he was saluted not adored by the pontiff; his coronation oath represents a promise to maintain the faith and privileges of the church; and the first fruits were paid in his rich offerings to the station of the apostle. In his familiar conversation, the emperor protested his ignorance of the intentions of Leo, which he would have disapproved by his absence on that memorable day. But the preparations of the ceremony must have disclosed the secret; and the journey of Charlemagne reveals his knowledge and expectation; he had acknowledged that the imperial title was the object of his ambition, and a Roman synod had pronounced, that it was the only adequate reward of his merit and services. 48

The appeal of great has been often bestowed, and sometimes deserved, but Charlemagne is the only prince whose favour the title has been insensibly blended with the name. That name, with the addition of saint, is inserted in the Roman calendar; and the saint, by a rare felicity, is crowned with the praise of the historians and philosophers of an enlightened age. 49 His real merit is doubtless enhanced by the barbarism of the nation and the times from which he emerged; but the apparent magnitude of an object is likewise enlarged by an unequal conjunction; and the ruins of Palmyra derive a casual splendour from the nakedness of the surrounding desert. Without injustice to his fame, I may discern some blemishes in the sanctity and greatness of the restorers of the Western empire. Of his moral virtues, chastity is not the most conspicuous; 50 but the public happiness could not be materially injured by his numerous concubines, the various indulgence of meaner or more transient amours, the multitude of his bastards whom he bestowed on the church, and the long celibacy and licentious manners of his daughters, 51 when the father was suspected of loving with too fond a passion. I shall be scarcely permitted to accuse the ambition of a conqueror; but in a day of equal retribution, the sons of his brother Carloman, the Merovingian princes of Aquitaine, and the four thousand five hundred Saxons who were beheaded on the same spot, would have something to allege against the justice and humanity of Charles-magne. His treatment of the vaunted Saxons 52 was an abuse of the right of conquest; his laws were not less sumptuary than his arms, and in the discussion of his motives, whatever is subtracted from bigotry must be imputed to temper. The seductive reader is amazed by his incessant activity of mind and body; and his subjects and enemies were not less astonished at his sudden presence, at the moment when they believed him at the most distant extremity of the empire; neither peace nor war, nor summer nor winter, were a season of repose; and our fancy cannot easily reconcile the annals of his reign with the geography of his expeditions. But this activity was a national, rather than a personal virtue; the vengeant life of a Frank was spent in the chase, in pilgrimage, in military adventures; and the journeys of Charlemagne were distinguished only by a more numerous train and a more important purpose. His military renown must be tried by the scrutiny of his troops, his enemies, and his actions. Alexander compared with the arms of Philip, but the free heroes who preceded Charlemagne, bequathed him their name, their examples, and the companionship of their victories. At the head of his veteran and superior armies, he oppressed the savage and disunited nations, who were incapable of confederating for their common safety; nor did he encounter an equal antagonist in numbers, in discipline, or in arms. The science of war has been lost and revived with the arts of peace; but his campaigns are not illustrated by any siege or battle of singular difficulty and success; and he might behold, with envy, the Saracen trophies of which I have spoken and probably read. The story is a morsel of an eight-century gallantry and its elegance. But I have shown the original components of the annals of the successive reigns of the great grandson of Clovis. 53 The story of William, son of Wulflæd, by the daughter of Edward, daughter of Charlemagne, 54 is, in my opinion, considerably related by the prose and verse of the anonymous historian, but many of the parts of the former period (p. 384, 385) are also found in the anonymous chronicle (p. 364, 365, 366, 367, 368). The story of Edward with Emma de Forbin, daughter of Charlemagne, 55 is, in my opinion, considerably related by the prose and verse of the anonymous historian, and the anecdotes or genealogies of the Frankish princes (Oakland, vol. i. p. 384, 385) and the Deulletum Saxum Conquestus Romanorum (p. 351, 352).
his grandfather. After his Spanish expedition, his rear-guard was defeated in the Pyrenean mountains; and the soldiers, whose situation was irretrievable, and whose valor was useless, might accuse, with their last breath, the want of skill or caution of their general. 99 I touch with reverence the laws of Charlemagne, so highly applauded by a respectable judge. They comprised not a system, but a series, of occasional and minute edicts, for the correction of abuses, the reformation of manners, the economy of his farms, the care of his poultry, and even the sale of his eggs. He wished to improve the laws and the character of the Franks; and his attempts, however feebly and imperfect, are deserving of praise: the innate moral of the times were suspended or modified by his government; 100 but in his institutions I can seldom discover the general views and the immortal spirit of a legislator, who survives himself for the benefit of posterity. The union and stability of his empire depended on the life of a single man; he initiated the dangerous practice of dividing his kingdoms among his sons; and, after his numerous diets, the whole constitution was left to fluctuate between the disorders ofarchy and despotism. His esteem for the piety and knowledge of the clergy tempted him to trust in that aspiring order with too much dominion and civil jurisdiction; and his son Lewis, when he was stripped and degraded by the bishops, might accuse, in some measure, the imprudence of his father. His laws enforced the imposition of tithe, because his demons had proclaimed in the air that the default of payment had been the cause of the last scarcity. 101 The literary merits of Charlemagne are attested by the foundation of schools, the introduction of arts, the works which were published in his name, and his familiar connection with the subjects and strangers whom he invited to his court to educate both the prince and people. His own studies were tardy, laborious, and imperfect; if he spoke Latin, and understood Greek, he derived the rudiments of knowledge from conversation, rather than from books; and, in his mature age, the emperor strove to acquire the practice of writing, which every pleasant now learns in his infancy. 102 The grammar and logic, the music and astronomy, of the times, were only cultivated as the handmaidens of superstition; but the curiosity of the human mind must ultimately tend to the improvement, and the encouragement of learning reflects the purest and most pleasing lustre on the character of Charlemagne. 103 The dignity of his person, 104 the length of his reign, the prosperity of his arms, the vigour of his government, and the reverence of distant nations, distinguish him from the royal crowd; and Europe dated a new era from his restoration of the Western empire.

That empire was not unworthy of its title, 105 or some of the fairest kingdoms of Europe were the pay-

trium of conquerors of a prince, who reigned at the same time in France, Spain, Italy, Germany, and Hungary. 106 I. The Roman province of Gaul had been transformed into the name and monarchy of France; but, in the decay of the Merovingian line, its limits were contracted by the independence of the Britons and the revolt of Aquitania. Charlemagne pursued, and confirmed, the Britons on the shores of the ocean, and that ferocious tribe, whose origin and language are so different from the French, was chastised by the imposition of tribute, hostages, and pence. After a long and exasperated contest, the rebellion of the duke of Aquitaine was punished by the forfeiture of their province, their liberty, and their lives. Hard and rigorous would have been such treatment of ambitious governors, who had too faithfully copied the mayors of the palace. But a recent discovery 107 has proved, that these unhappy princes were the last and lawful heirs of the blood and seignories of Chloris, a younger branch, from the brother of Dagobert, of the Merovingian house. Their ancient kingdom was reduced to the duchy of Gascoigne, to the counties of Fezensac and Armagnac, at the foot of the Pyrenees; their race was propagated till the beginning of the sixteenth century; and, after surviving their Carolingian tyrants, they were reserved to feel the injustices, or the favours, of a third dynasty. By the re-union of Aquitaine, France was enlarged to its present boundaries, with the additions of the Netherlands and Spain, as far as the Rhine. II. The Sarra-

 cyan had been expelled from France by the grandson and father of Charlemagne; but they still possessed the greatest part of Spain, from the rock of Gibraltar to the Pyre-


---

99 In this section the famous Rulebook, Romanus, is here (from p. 374 to p. 392), and the same was the basis of the Table from p. 521 to p. 529. The Oecumenical, or the great Council of Constantinople, held in 787. [The two are not the same.]
100 See Pagi, "De Rebus Regibus," chap. 7. The emperor's house has also been called the house of Charles, in his son Lewis, in his grandson Lewis, and in his grandson Lewis. The same was published in 1300, 1500, and 1530. Such excellent text-book, however, has not been translated into English.
102 M. Goulart, loc. cit. p. 322; from the new edition of Christian
and service of the Mahometans. In his absence he instituted the Spanish march, which extended from the Pyrenees to the river Ebro. Barcelona was the residence of the French governor; he possessed the counties of Besalú and Calatañada, and the infant kingdoms of Navarre and Aragon were subject to his jurisdiction. III. As king of the Lombards, and patron of Rome, he reigned over the greatest part of Italy, a tract of a thousand miles from the Alps to the borders of Calabria. The duchy of Beneventum, a Lombard fief, had spread, at the expense of the Greeks, over the modern kingdom of Naples. But Arechis, the reigning duke, refused to be included in the slavery of his country; assumed the independent title of prince; and opposed his sword to the Carolingian monarchy. His defence was firm, his submission not inglorious, and the emperor was content with an easy tribute, the demolition of his fortresses, and the acknowledgment, on his part, of a supreme lord. The artful Bathyll of his son Grisindol added the appellation of father, but he asserted his dignity with prudence, and Beneventum insensibly escaped from the French yoke. IV. Charles the Great was the first who united Germany under the same sceptre. The name of Oriental France is preserved in the circle of Francia, and the people of Hessia and Thuringia were recently incorporated with the vicinity, by the conformity of religion and government. The Alamans, so formidable to the Romans, were the faithful vassals and confederates of the Franks; and their country was inscribed within the modern limits of Mecklenburg, Saxony, and Swabia. The Saxons, with a similar indulgence of their laws and manners, were less patient of a master: the repeated treachery of Thuril justified the abolition of their hereditary dukes; and their power was shared among the counts, who judged and guarded that important frontier. But the north of Germany, from the Elbe and beyond the Elbe, was still hostile and Pagan; nor was it till after a war of thirty-three years that the Saxons bowed under the yoke of Christ and of Charlemagne. The idols and their votaries were exterminated: the foundation of eight bishoprics, of Munster, Osnaburg, Paderborn, and Minden, of Bremen, Verden, Hildesheim, and Halberstadt, define, on either side of the Weser, the bounds of ancient Saxony; these episcopal seats were the first schools and cities of that savage land; and the religion and humanity of the children stoned, in some degree, for the massacre of the parents. Beyond the Elbe, the Slav, or Slavonians, of similar manners and various denominations, overspread the modern dominions of Prussia, Poland, and Bohemia, and some transient marks of obedience have tempted the French historian to extend the empire to the Baltic and the Vistula. The conquest or conversion of these countries is of a more recent age; but the first union of Bohemia with the Germanic body may be justly ascribed to the arms of Charlemagne. V. He resided on the Avar, or Hun of Pannonia, on the same calamities which they had inflicted on the nations. Their rings, the wooden fortifications which encircled their districts and villages, were broken down by the triple effort of a French army, that was posted into their country by land and water, through the Carpathian mountains and along the plain of the Danube. After a bloody conflict of eight years, the loss of some French generals was avenged by the slaughter of the most noble Hun; the riches of the nation submitted; the royal residence of the chieftain was left desolate and unknown; and the treasures, the empire of two hundred and fifty years, enriched the victorious troops, or decorated the churches of Italy and Gaul. After the reduction of Pannonia, the empire of Charlemagne was bounded only by the confines of the Danube with the Teyt and the Save: the provinces of Istria, Liburnia, and Dalmatia, were as easy, though unprofitable, accession; and it was an effect of his moderation, that he left the maritime cities under the real or nominal sovereignty of the Greeks. But these distant possessions added more to the reputation, than to the power, of the Latin emperor: nor did he risk any ecclesiastical foundations to reclaim the barbarians from their vagrant life and idolatrous worship. Some canals of communication between the rivers, the Saone and the Moselle, the Rhine and the Danube, were fairly attempted. Their execution would have vivified the empire; and more cost and labour were often wasted in the structure of a cathedral.

If we retracing the outlines of this geographical picture, it will be seen that the empire of the Franks extended, between east and west, from the Ebro to the Elbe or Vistula; between the north and south, from the duchy of Beneventum to the river Eyder, the perpetual boundary of Germany and Denmark. The personal and political importance of Charlemagne was magnified by the distress and division of the rest of Europe. The islands of Great Britain and Ireland were disputed by a crew of princes of Saxo or Scottish origin; and, after the loss of Spain, the Christian and Gothic kingdom of Alphonso the Chaste was confined to the narrow range of the Asturian mountains. These petty monarchs revered the power or virtue of the Carolingian monarch.
implored the honour and support of his alliance, and styled him their common parent, the sole and supreme emperor of the West. He maintained a more equal intercourse with the caliph Harun at Bagdad, whose dominion stretched from Africa to India, and accepted from his ambassadors a tent, a water-clock, an elephant, and the keys of the holy sepulchre. It is not easy to conceive the private friendship of a Frank and an Arab, who were strangers to each other's person, and language, and religion: but their public correspondence was founded on vanity, and their remote situation left no room for a competition of interest. Two thirds of the Western empire of Rome were subject to Charlemagne, and the deficiency was supplied by his command of the inaccessible or invincible nations of Germany. But in the choice of his enemies, we may be reasonably surprised that he so often preferred the poverty of the north to the riches of the south. The three and thirty campaigns laboriously consumed in the woods and marshes of Germany, would have sufficed to assert the amplitude of his title by the expulsion of the Greeks from Italy and the Saracens from Spain. The weakness of the Greeks would have ensured an easy victory; and the holy crusade against the Saracens would have been prompted by glory and revenge, and loudly justified by religion and policy. Perhaps, in his expeditions beyond the Rhine and the Elbe, he aspired to save his monarchy from the fate of the Roman empire, to disarm the enemies of civilised society, and to eradicate the seed of future emigrations. But it has been wisely observed, that in a light of precaution, all conquest must be ineffectual, unless it could be universal; since the increasing circle must be involved in a larger sphere of hostility. The subjugation of Germany withdrew the veil which had so long concealed the continent or islands of Scandinavia from the knowledge of Europe, and awakened the torpid courage of their barbarous natives. The fierce of the Saxons glorified escaped from the Christian tyrant to their brethren of the North; the Ocean and Mediterranean were covered with their piratical fleets; and Charlemagne beheld with a sigh the destructive progress of the Normans, who, in less than seventy years, precipitated the fall of his race and monarchy.

Had the pope and the Romans revived the primitive constitution, the titles of emperor and Augustus were conferred on Charlemagne for the term of his life; and his successors, on each vacancy, must have ascended the throne by a formal or tacit election. But the association of his son Lewis the Pious asserts the independent right of monarchy and conquest, and the emperor seems on this occasion to have foreseen and prevented the latent claims of the clergy. The royal youth was commanded to take the crown from the altar, and with his own hands to place it on his head, as a gift which he held from God, his father, and the nation. The same ceremony was repeated, though with less energy, in the subsequent associations of Lothaire and Lewis the Second; the Carolingian sceptre was transmitted from father to son in a linear descent of four generations; and the ambition of the popes was reduced to the empty honour of crowning and anointing these hereditary princes who were already invested with their power and dominions. The pious Lewis survived his brothers, and embraced the whole empire of Charlemagne; but the nations and the nobles, his bishops and his children, quickly discerned that this mighty mass was no longer inspired by the same soul; and the foundations were undermined to the centre, while the external surface was yet fair and entire. After a war, or battle, which consumed one hundred thousand Franks, the empire was divided by treaty between his three sons, who had violated every bond and fraternal duty. The kingdoms of Germany and France were for ever separated, and the provinces of Gaul, between the Rhone and the Alps, the Meuse and the Rhine, were assigned, with Italy, to the Imperial dignity of Lothaire. In the partition of his share, Lothaire and Aries, two recent and transitory kingdoms, were bestowed on the younger children; and Lewis the Second, his eldest son, was content with the realm of Italy. Lewis the Second, in his turn, was enfeoffed with the proper and sufficient patrimony of a Roman emperor. On his death, without any male issue, the vacant throne was disputed by his uncle and cousins, and the pupes most desperately seized the occasion of judging the claims and merits of the candidates, and of bestowing on the most obsequious, or most liberal, the imperial office of advocate of the Roman church. The dregs of the Carolingian race no longer exhibited any symptoms of virtue or power, and the ridiculous spectacle of the hold, the strippers, the fat, and the simple, distinguished the tame and uniform features of a crowd of kings alike deserving of oblivion. By the failure of the collateral branches, the whole inheritance devolved to Charles the Fat, the last emperor of his family; his insanity authorised the division of Germany, Italy, and France: he was deposed in a diet, and solicited his daily bread from the rebels by whose contempt his life and liberty had been spared. According to the measure of their force, the governors, the bishops, and the lords, usurped the fragments of the falling empire; and some preference was shown to the female or illegitimate blood of Charlemagne. Of the
greater part, the title and possession were alike doubtful, and the merit was adequate to the contracted scale of their dominions. Those who could appear with an army at the gates of Rome were crowned emperors in the Vatican; but their modesty was more frequently satisfied with the appellation of kings of Italy; and the whole term of seventy-four years may be deemed a vacancy, from the abdication of Charles the Fat to the establishment of Otto the First. 111

Otto was of the noble race of the dukes of Saxony; and if he truly descended from Wittikind, the adversary and proselyte of Charlemagne, the probability of a vanished race was entitled to reign over their conquerors. His father Henry the Fowler was elected, by the suffrages of the nation, to save and institute the kingdom of Germany. Its limits 112 were enlarged on every side by his son, the first and greatest of the Otways. A portion of Gaul to the west of the Rhine, along the banks of the Meuse and the Moselle, was assigned to the Germans, by whose blood and language it has been tinged since the time of Caesar and Tacitus. Between the Rhine, the Rhone, and the Alps, the successors of Otto acquired a vain supremacy over the broken kingdoms of Burgundy and Arles. In the North, Christianity was propagated by the sword of Otto, the conqueror and apostle of the Slavic nations of the Elbe and Oder: the marches of Brandenburgh and Sleswick were fortified with German colonies; and the king of Denmark, the duke of Poland and Holstein, confided themselves his tributary vassals. At the head of a victorious army, he passed the Alps, subjugated the kingdom of Italy, delivered the pope, and for ever fixed the Imperial crown in the name and person of Germany. From that memorable event, two maxims of public jurisprudence were introduced by force and ratified by time: 1. That a prince, who was elected in the German diet, acquired, from that instant, the subject kingdoms of Italy and Rome. 2. But that he might not legally assume the titles of emperor and Augustus, till he had received the crown from the hands of the Roman pontiff. 113

The Imperial dignity of Charlemagne was announced to the East and Russia by the alteration of his style: and instead of saluting his fathers, the Greek emperors, he presumed to adopt the more equal and familiar appellation of brother. 114 Perhaps in his connection with Irene he aspired to the name of husband: his embassy to Constantinople spoke the language of peace and friendship, and might sound a treaty of marriage with this ambitious princess, who had renounced the most sacred duties of a mother. The nature, the duration, the probable consequences of such an union between two distant and dissimilar empires, it is impossible to conjecture; but the unanimous silence of the Latins may teach us to suspect, that the report was invented by the enemies of Irene, to charge her with the guilt of betraying the church and state to the strangers of the West. 115 The French ambassadors were the spectators, and had nearly been the victims, of the conspiracy of Nikophorus, and the national hatred. Constantinople was massacred by the treason and irritations of ancient Rome; a proverb, "That the Franks were good friends and bad neighbours," was in every one's mouth; but it was dangerous to provoke a neighbour who might be tempted to retaliate, in the church of St. Sophia, the ceremony of his Imperial consecration. After a tedious journey of circuit and delay, the ambassadors of Nikophorus found him in his camp; on the banks of the river Sithis; and Charlemagne affected to confound their enmity by displaying, in a Frascatian village, the pomp, or at least the pride, of the Byzantine palace. 116 The Greeks were successively led through four halls of audience: in the first they were rudely to be pummelled before a splendid perambulage, in a chair of state, till he informed them that he was only a servant, the humble, or minister of the horse of the emperor. The same insult, and the same answer, were repeated in the apartments of the count palatine, the steward, and the chamberlain; and their impudence was gradually heightened, till the doors of the presence-chamber were thrown open, and they beheld the genuine monarch on his throne, enriched with the foreign luxury which he despised, and in circled with the love and reverence of his victorious chief. A treaty of peace and alliance was concluded between the two empires; and the limits of the East and West were defined by the right of present possession. But the Greeks soon forgot this humiliating equality, or remembered it only to hate the barbarians by whom it was extorted. During the short union of virtue and power, they respectfully saluted the august Charlemagne with the acclamations of Basilius, and emperor of the Romans. As soon as these qualities were separated in the person of his pious son, the Byzantine letters were inscribed, "To the King, or, as he styles himself, the "Emperor of the Franks and Lombards." When both power and virtue were extinct, they despised Lewis the Second of his hereditary title, and, with the barbarous appellation of rex

111 He was the son of Odo, the son of Erich, in whom the title of Saxony had been ineradicable. 112 The inhabitants of Italy were also given a splendid advancement of their faculties. Alexander in the letter of Charlemagne toตรว. 10. 113 The Emperor of the Greeks termed him the Emperor of the Franks; and the name was repeated in various times, of the history of Charlemagne and Constantine, and among the latter, with the name of the Franks. 114 The Greeks were the first to invent the appellation of Charlemagne; and when the emperor visited them, to the letter of Charlemagne to his son Lewis, 115 The ancient name of the Emperor of the Franks is Eirene (s. g. C. 10.) 116 The Emperor of the Greeks was not only not received, but was immediately attacked in the church of St. Sophia; and his west was the Emperor the monsignor of Michael, who was indeed conduced to one of the latter of the Lombards, and the imperial appointment in the latter of the Franks. 117 Psalms, 1052.
These emperors, in the election of the pope, continued to exercise power which had been ascribed by the Gothic and Grecian princes; and the importance of this prerogative increased with the temporal estate and spiritual jurisdiction of the Roman church. In the Christian aristocracy, the principal members of the clergy still formed a senate to assist the administration, and to supply the vacancy of the bishop. Rome was divided into twenty-eight parishes, and each parish was governed by a cardinal-prince, or proctor, or a title which, however, common and modest in its origin, has acquired to emulate the purple of kings. Their number was enlarged by the association of the seven dukes of the most considerable houses, the seven palatine judges of the Lateran, and some dignitaries of the church. This ecclesiastical senate was directed by the seven cardinal bishops of the Roman province, who, as was usual, in the suffrages of Odes, Porto, Vclien, Tusculum, Frascati, Tibur, and the Sabine, then by their weekly service in the Lateran, and their superior share in the honours and authority of the apostolic see. On the death of the pope, these bishops administered a successor to the suffrages of the college of cardinals, and their choice was ratified or rejected by the applause or clamour of the Roman people. But the election was imperfect; one could not profit by legally consecrated till the emperor, the advocate of the church, had graciously signified his approbation and consent. The royal commissioner examined, on the spot, the form and freedom of the proceedings; nor was it till after a previous scrutiny into the qualifications of the candidates, that he accepted an oath of fidelity, and confirmed the election which had successively enriched the patriarchy of St. Peter. In the frequent schisms, the rival claims were submitted to the sentence of the emperor, and in a synod of bishops he presumed to judge, to condemn, and to punish the crimes of a guilty pontiff. Oft the first imposed a treaty on the senate and people, who engaged to prefer the candidate most acceptable to his majesty; his successors anticipated or prevented their choice; they bestowed the Roman benifice, like the bishops of Cologne or Bamberg, on their chancellors or preceptors; and whatever might be the merit of a Frank or Saxon, his name sufficiently assured the interposition of foreign power. These acts of prerogative were most expressly excused by the views of public election. The competitor who had been excluded by the cardinals, appealed to the positions or virtues of the multitude; the Vaticans and the Lateran were stained with blood, and the most powerful senators, the magnates of Tusculum and the counts of Tusculum, held the apostolic see in a long and disgraceful servitude. The Roman pontiffs, of the ninth and tenth centuries, were insulted, imprisoned, and murdered, by their tyrants; and such was their influence after the loss and usurpation of the ecclesiastical patrimonies, that they could neither support the state of a prince, nor exercise the dignity of a priest. The influence of two sister prophetic, Marcia and Theodora, was founded on their wealth and beauty, their political and amorous intrigues; the most splendid of their lovers were rewarded with the Roman mitre, and their reigns may have suggested to the darker ages the fulks of a female popes. The bastard son, the grandchild, and the great-grandson of Marcia, a rare genealogy, were seated in the chair of St. Peter; and it was at the age of nineteen years, that the second of these became

134 See his statue, in Tuscumulan, of the anniversary of the Emperor Constantine, Rom. 32. See his statue, p. 324. 135 See his statue, 136 See his statue, p. 324. 137 See his statue, p. 324. 138 See his statue, p. 324. 139 See his statue, p. 324. 140 See his statue, p. 324. 141 See his statue, p. 324. 142 See his statue, p. 324.
the head of the Latin church. His youth and manhood were of a suitable complexion; and the nation of pilgrims could bear testimony to the charges that were urged against him in a Roman synod, and in the presence of Otto the Great. As John XII. had remunerated the dux and defences of his profession, the soldiers may not perhaps be disdained by the wine which he drank, the blood that he spilt, the flames that he kindled, or the licentious pursuits of gaming and hunting. His open simony might be the consequence of distress; and his blasphemous invocations of Jupiter and Venus, if it be true, could not possibly be serious. But we read with some surprise, that the worthy granduncle of Mariana lived in public adultery with the matrons of Rome: that the Lateran palace was turned into a school for prostitution, and that the rags of virgins and widows had chartered the female pilgrims visiting the tomb of St. Peter, but, in the devout act, they should be violated by his successor. The Popes have dwelt with malicious pleasure on these characters of Antichrist; but to a philosophic eye the vices of the clergy are far less dangerous than their virtues. After a long series of scandals, the apostolic see was restored and stablished by the austerity and zeal of Gregory VII. That ambition sunk devoted his life to the execution of two projects. I. To fix in the college of cardinals the freedom and independence of election, and to ensure the right or nomination of the emperors and the Roman people. II. To bestow and resume the Western empire as a fief or benefice of the church, and to extend its temporal dominion over the kings and kingdoms of the earth. After a contest of fifty years, the first of these designs was accomplished by the firm support of the ecclesiastical order, whose liberty was connected with that of their chief. But the second attempt, though it was crowned with some partial and apparent success, has been vigorously resisted by the secular power, and finally extinguished by the improvement of human reason.

In the revival of the empire of Rome, neither the bishop nor the people could bestow on Charles or Otto, the provinces which were lost, as they had been won, by the choice of arms. But the Romans were free to choose a master for themselves; and the powers which had been delegated to the patrician, were irrevocably granted to the French and Saxon emperors of the West. The broken records of the times preserve some remembrance of their palace, their mint, their tribunal, their edicts, and the sword of justice, which, as late as the thirteenth cen-

tury, was derived from Caesar to the prefect of the city. Between the arts of the popes and the violence of the people, this supremacy was crushed and annihilated. Contempts with the titles of emperor and Augustus, the successors of Charlemagne neglected to assert this local jurisdiction. In the hour of prosperity their ambition was diverted by more alluring objects; and the decay and division of the empire, they were oppressed by the defence of their hereditary provinces. Among the ruins of Italy, the famous Mariana invited one of the tyrants to assume the character of her third husband; and Hugh, king of Burgundy, was introduced by her faction into the mole of Hadrian or castle of St. Angelo, which commands the principal bridge and entrance of Rome. Her son by the first marriage, Alberic, was compelled to attend at the nuptial banquet; but his reluctant and ungrateful service was chastised by a blow by his new father. The blow was productive of a revolution. "Romans," exclaimed the youth, "are you the masters of the world, and those Burgundians the most object of your slaves? They now reign, their Tartar rage and brutal savages, and my injury is the commencement of your servitude." The alarum-bell rang to arms in every quarter of the city; the Burgundians retreated with haste and shame; Mariana was imprisoned by her victorious son; and his brother, pope John XII., was reduced to the exercise of his spiritual functions. With the title of prince, Alberic presumed above twenty years the government of Rome, and he is said to have gratified the popular prejudices, by restoring the office, or at least the title, of consuls and tribunes. His son and heir Octavian, assumed, with the pontificate, the name of John XII.; like his predecessor, he was provoked by the Lombard princes to seek a deliverer for the church and republic; and the services of Otto were rewarded with the Imperial dignity. But the Saxon was impatient, the Romans were impatient, the festival of the coronation was disturbed by the secret conflict of prerogative and freedom; and Otto commanded his sword-bearer not to stir from his person, lest he should be assaulted and murdered at the foot of the altar. Before he was received at the Alps, the emperor chastised the revolt of the people and the ingratitude of John XII. The pope was degraded in a synod; the prefect was mounted on an ass, whipped through the city, and cast into a dungeon; thirteen of the most guilty were hanged, others were mutilated or banished; and this severe process was justified by the ancient laws of Theodosius and Justinian. The voice of fame
German Caesars, who were ambitious to enslave the kingdom of Italy. Their patrimonial estates were stretched along the Rhine, or scattered in the provinces; but this ample domain was alienated by the imprudence or dissimulation of successive princes, and their revenues, from minute and vexatious prerogative, was scarcely sufficient for the maintenance of their household. Their troops were formed by the legal or voluntary service of their feudal vassals, who passed the Alps with reluctance, assumed the license of rapine and disorder, and capriciously deserted before the end of the campaign. With armies were swept away by the pestilential influences of the climate; the survivors brought back the boxes of their princes and nobles, and the effects of their own intermixture were often imputed to the treachery and malice of the Italians, who rejoiced at least in the calamities of the barbarians. This irregular tyranny might contend on equal terms with the petty tyrants of Italy; nor can the people, on the other hand, be much interested in the event of the quarrel. But in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, the Lombards rekindled the flame of ambition and freedom; and the generous example was at length imitated by the republics of Tuscany. In the Italian cities a municipal government had never been totally abolished, and their first privileges were granted by the favour and policy of the emperors, who were desirous of erecting a plenarian barrier against the independence of the nobles. But their rapid progress, the daily extension of their power and pretensions, were founded on the numbers and spirit of these rising communities. Each city filled the measure of her distress or district; the jurisdiction of the counts and bishops, of the marquises and counts, was banished from the land; and the proudest nobles were persuaded or compelled to desert their solitary castles, and to embrace the more honourable character of freemen and magnates. The legislative authority was inherent in the general assembly; but the executive power was intrusted to three consuls, annually chosen from the three orders of captains, dignitaries, and commons, into which the republic was divided. Under the protection of equal laws, the labours of agriculture and commerce were gradually revived; but the martial spirit of the Lombards was nourished by the presence of danger; and as often as the hill was rough, or the standard erected, the gait of the city pursued a numerous and intrepid band, whose zeal in their own cause was soon guided by the use and discipline of arms. At the feet of these popular rampaunts, the pride of

120 This bloody scene is described in Lactantius in the Epitome per M. Cassius Dio, vol. ii. p. 436. 437, who described between the end of the civil wars (Flavian) and the death of Trajan, the situation of the empire, which remained an insignia, but was not possessed or maintained by Maxentius, or Constantine. Myriads of both these emperors are described by Constantine, who tells of the empire, in which there was no difference, but the example, as Tacitus, in Hist. xii. p. 643. 645.

121 The massacre of the senators, and some original conceptions of the last war, are preserved by Tacitus, Hist. xii. p. 645.; 646.; 647. ; and of the capture of the capital, by Hist. xii. p. 646. 647. ; and the massacre of the senators, by Historiographer of the Senate, and Ludovici, Historia del Firma di Fenix Valchob andLetters. Ludovici has related the whole pretensions, achievements, and despotism of the emperor. The emperor, however, is said to have been assassinated by his own servant, and the power of the senate was restored, and the empire divided into two kingdoms, according to the constitution of Cæsar, in which momentous death, which must have been preceded, is described by Domo, vol. ii. p. 434. 435. ; and the fall of the Caesars, by Tacitus, Hist. xii. p. 646. 647.
the Caesars was overthrown; and the invincible genius of liberty prevailed over the two Frederick, the greatest princes of the middle age; the first, superior perhaps in military prowess; the second, who undoubtedly excelled in the softer accomplishments of peace and learning.

Ambitions of restoring the splendour of the purple, Frederick the First invaded the republics of Lombardy with the arts of a statesman, the value of a soldier, and the cruelty of a tyrant. The recent discovery of the Pandects had renewed a science most favourable to despotism; and his servile advocates proclaimed the emperor the absolute master of the lives and properties of his subjects. The royal prerogatives, in a less obious sense, were acknowledged in the diest of Ronceglinia, and the revenue of Italy was fixed at thirty thousand pounds of silver, which were multiplied to an indefinite demand, by the rapine of the fiscal officers. The obstinate cities were reduced by the terror or the force of his arms; his captives were delivered to the executors, or shot from his military engines; and, after the siege and surrender of Milan, the buildings of that city capital were rased to the ground, three hundred hostages were sent into Germany, and the inhabitants were dispersed in four villages, under the yoke of the inflexible conqueror. But Milan soon rose from its ashes; and the league of Lombardy was convicted by distress; the cause was espoused by Venice, pope Alexander the Third, and the Greek emperor; the fabric of oppression was overthrown in a day; and in the treaty of Constance, Frederick subscribed, with some reservations, the freedom of four-and-twenty cities. His grandsons were contended with their vigour and maturity; but Frederick the Second was endowed with some personal and peculiar advantages. His birth and education recommended him to the Italians; and in the implacable discord of the two factions, the Ghibelline were attached to the empire, while the Guelphs displayed the banner of liberty and the church. The court of Rome had slumbered, when his father Henry the Sixth was permitted to unite with the empire the kingdoms of Naples and Sicily; and from those hereditary realms, the sun survived an ample and ready supply of troops and treasure. Yet Frederick the Second was finally oppressed by the arms of the Lombards and the thunders of the Vatican; his kingdom was given to a stranger, and the last of his family was beheaded at Naples on a public scaffold. During sixty years, no emperor appeared in Italy, and the name was remembered only by the ignominious safe of the last relics of sovereignty.

The barbarian conquerors of the West were pleased to decorate their triumph with the title of emperor; but it was not their design to invest him with the despotism of Constantine and Justinian. The persons of the Germans were free, their conquests were their own, and their national character was animated by a spirit which scorned the servile jurisprudence of the new or the ancient Rome. It would have been a vain and dangerous attempt to impose a monarch, on the armed freemen, who were impatient of a magistrate; on the bold, who refused to obey; on the powerful, who aspired to command. The empire of Charlemagne and Otho was distributed among the dukes of the nations or provinces, the counts of the smaller districts, and the margraves of the marches or frontiers, who all united the civil and military authority as it had been delegated to the lieutenants of the first Caesars. The Roman governors, who, for the most part, were soldiers of fortune, seduced their mercenary legions, assumed the Imperial purple, and either failed or succeeded in their revolt, without overwhelming the power and unity of government. If the dukes, margraves, and counts of Germany were less ambitious, the consequences of their success were more lasting and permanent to the state. Instead of aiming at the supreme rank, they steadily laboured to establish and appropriate their provincial independencies. Their ambition was seconded by the weight of their estates and vessels, their mutual example and support, the common interest of the subordinate nobility, the change of princes and families, the misfortunes of Italy the Third and Henry the Fourth, the ambition of the popes, and the vain pursuit of the fugitive crowns of Italy and Rome. All the attributes of regal and territorial jurisdiction were gradually usurped by the commanders of the provinces; the right of peace and war, of life and death, of coinage and taxation, of foreign alliances and domestic economy. Whatever had been vested by vassalage, was ratified by favour or discretion, was granted as the price of a doubtful vote or a voluntary service; whatever had been granted to one, could not, without injury, be denied to his successor or equal; and every act of local or temporary possession was insensibly moulded into the constitution of the German kingdom. In every province, the visible presence of the duke or count was interposed between the throne and the nobles; the subjects of the law became the vassals of a private chief; and the standard, which he received from his sovereign, was often raised against him in the field. The temporal power of the clergy was cherished and exalted by the supplantation or policy of the Carolingian and Saxon dynasties, who blindly depended on their moderation and fidelity; and the bishops of Germany were made equal in extent and privilege, superior in wealth and population, to the most ample states of the military order. As long as the emperors retained the prerogatives of bestowing on every vacancy those ecclesiastical and secular benefices, their cause was maintained by the gratitude or ambition of their friends and favourites. But
in the quare of the investitures, they were deprived of their influence over the episcopal chapters; the freedom of election was restored, and the sovereign was reduced, by a solemn mockery, to his first power, the recommendation, once in his reign, to a single prelate in each church. The secular governors, instead of being recalled at the will of a superior, could be degraded only by the sentence of their peers. In the first age of the monarchy, the appointment of the son to the vacant or county of his father, was solicited as a favour; it was gradually obtained as a custom, and extended as a right: the direct succession was often extended to the collateral or female branches, the states of the empire (their popular and at length their legal, appellation) were divided and alienated by testament and sale; and all idea of a public trust was lost in that of a private and perpetual inheritance. The emperor could not even be enriched by the casualties of forfeiture and extinction: within the term of a year, he was obliged to dispose of the vacant fief, and in the choice of the candidate, it was his duty to consult either the general or the provincial diet.

After the death of Frederic the Second, Germany was left a monster with an hundred heads. A crowd of princes and prelates disputed the ruins of the empire: the lords of innumerable castles were less prone to obey, than to imitate, their superiors; and, according to the measure of their strength, their increase hostilities received the name of conquest or robbery. Such anarchy was the inevitable consequence of the laws and manners of Europe; and the kingdom of France and Italy were shattered into fragments by the violence of the same tempest. But the Italian cities and the French vassals were divided and destroyed, while the union of the Germans has produced, under the name of an empire, a great system of a federative republic. In the frequent and at last the perpetual institution of diets, a national spirit was kept alive, and the powers of a common legislature are still exercised by the three branches or colleges of the electors, the princes, and the free and Imperial cities of Germany.

I. Seven of the most powerful feudalities were permitted to assume, with a distinguished name and rank, the exclusive privilege of choosing the Roman emperor; and these electors were the king of Bohemia, the duke of Saxony, the margrave of Brandenburg, the count palatine of the Rhine, and the three archbishops of Mentz, of Treves, and of Cologne.

II. The college of princes and prelates purged themselves of a prouder multitude: they reduced to four representative votes, the long series of independent courts, and excluded the nobility or equestrian order, sixty thousand of whom, as in the Polish diets, had appeared on

The second ed." 1825.

south of the Rhine, in the field of election. III. The pride of birth and dominion, of the sword and the mitre, wisely adopted the commons as the third branch of the legislature, and, in the progress of society, they were introduced about the same era into the national assemblies of France, England, and Germany. The Hanseatic league, commanded the trade and navigation of the north; the confederates of the Rhine secured the peace and intercourse of the inland country; the influence of the cities has been adequate to their wealth and policy, and their negative still invalidates the acts of the two superior colleges of electors and princes.

It is in the fourteenth century. Walthewen said that we may view in the strongest light the state and contrast of the Roman empire of Germany, which no longer held, except on the borders of the Rhine and Danube, a single province of Trasim or Constantin. Their unworthy successors were the counts of Hapsburg, of Nassau, of Luxem- burgh, and of Schwartzenburgh; the emperor Henry the Seventh procured for his son the crown of Bohemia, and his grandson Charles the Fourth was born among a people, strange and barbarous, in the estimation of the Germans themselves.

After the excommunication of Lewis of Bavaria, he received the gift or promise of the vacant empire from the Roman pontiff, who, in the exultation and captivity of Aigues-Mortes, affirmed the dominion of the earth. The death of his competitor united the electoral college, and Charles was unanimously elected king of the Romans, and future emperor; a title which, in the same age, was prostituted to the Caesars of Germany and Greece. The German emperor was no more than the elective and impotent magistrate of an aristocracy of princes, who had not left him a village that he might call his own. His first prerogative was the right of presiding and proposing in the national senate, which was convened at his summons; and his native kingdom of Bohemia, less populous than the adjacent city of Nuremberg, was the firmest seat of his power and the richest source of his revenue. The army with which he passed the Alps consisted of three hundred imma.

In the cathedral of St. Ambrose, Charles was crowned with the iron crown, which tradition ascribed to the Lombard monarchy, but he was admitted only with a peaceful train; the gates of the city were shut upon him; and the king of Italy was held captive by the arm of the Venetians, whom he confirmed in the sovereignty of Milan. In the Venetians he was again crowned with the golden crown of the empire; but, in obedience to a secret treaty, the Roman emperor immediately withdrew, without repaying a single night within the walls of Rome. The eloquent Petrarch,
whose fancy revived the visionary glories of the Capital, deplores and upbards the ignominious flight of the Bohemian; and even his contemporaries could observe, that the sole exercise of his authority was in the lucrative sale of privileges and titles. The gold of Italy secured the election of his son; but such was the shameless poverty of the Roman emperor, that his person was arrested, his hutches in the streets of Worms, and was detained in the public inn, as a pledge or hostage for the payment of his expenses.

From this humiliating scene, let us turn to the apparent majesty of the same Charles in the diocese of the empire. The golden hall, which fixes the Germanic constitution, is profusely in the style of a sovereign and legislator. An hundred princes bowed before his throne, and exalted their own dignity by the voluntary honours which they yielded to their chief or minister. At the royal banquet, the hereditary great officers, the seven electors, who in rank and title were equal to kings, performed their solemn and domestic service of the palace. The walls of the triple kingdom were borne in state by the archbishops of Mainz, Cologne, and Trier, the perpetual arch-chancellors of Germany, Italy, and Arles. The great marshal, on horseback, exercised his function with a silver measure of oats, which he emptied on the ground, and immediately disseminated to regulate the order of the guests. The great steward, the count palatine of the Rhine, placed the dishes on the table. The great chamberlain, the margrave of Brandenburg, presented, after the repeat, the golden and silver cups, to wash. The king of Bohemia, as great cup-bearer, was represented by the emperor's brother, the duke of Luxemburg and Brabant; and the procession was closed by the great butler, who introduced a bear and a stag, with a band of horns and hounds.123

Nor was the supremacy of the emperor confined to Germany alone; the hereditary monarchs of Europe confessed the pre-eminence of his rank and dignity: he was the first of the Christian princes, the temporal head of the great republic of the West;130 to his person the title of majesty was long appropriated; and he disputed with the pope the sublime prerogative of creating kings and assembling councils. The oracle of the civil law, the learned Barratus, was a pensioner of Charles the Fourth; and his school resonated with the doctrine, that the Roman emperor was the rightful sovereign of the earth, from the rising to the setting sun. The contrary opinion was condemned, not as an error, but as a heresy, since even the Gospel had pronounced, "And there went forth a decree from Cæsar Augustus, that all the world should be taxed." 134

If we annihilate the interval of time and space between Augustus and Charles, strong and striking will be the contrast between the two Cæsars; the Bohemian, who concealed his weakness under the mask of ostentation, and the Roman, who disguised his strength under the semblance of modesty. At the head of his victorious legions, in his reign over the sea and land, from the Nile and Euphrates to the Atlantic Ocean, Augustus professed himself the servant of the state and the equal of his fellow citizens. The conquerors of Rome and her provinces assumed the popular and legal form of a censor, a consul, and a tribune. His will was the law of mankind, but in the declaration of his laws he borrowed the voice of the senate and people; and from their decrees, their master accepted and renewed his temporary commission to administer the republic. In his dress, his domesticities,133 his titles, in all the offices of social life, Augustus maintained the character of a private Roman; but his most ardent flatterers respected the secret of his absolute and perpetual monarchy.

CHAP. I.

Description of Arabia and its Inhabitants. — Birth, Character, and Doctrine of Mahomet. — He preaches at Mecca. — Visit to Medina. — Propagates his Religion by the Sword. — Voluntary or reluctant Submission of the Arabs. — His Death and Successes. — The Caliphs and Fortunes of Ali and his Descendants.

After pursuing above six hundred years the fleeting Cæsars of Constantinople and Germany, I now descend, in the reign of Herachus, on the eastern borders of the Greek monarchy. While the state was exhausted by the Persian war, and the church was distracted by the Nestorian and Monophysite sects, Mahomet, with the sword in one hand and the Koran in the other, erected his throne on the ruins of Christianity and of Rome. The genius of the Arabian prophet, the manners of his nation, and the spirit of his religion, involve the causes of the decline and fall of the Eastern empire; and our eyes are curiously intent on one of the most memorable revolutions, which have impressed a new and lasting character on the nations of the globe.1

In the vacant space between Persia, Syria, Egypt, and Ethiopia, the Arabian peninsula may be conceived as a

123 See the whole ceremony, in Ritter, p. 230.
124 The ceremony of the Warf, with the pope and successor of the land, was never represented with more dignity than in the ceremony of Constantine.
125 The Charlemagne, in his proclamation to the army, on the death of Theodoric, spoke of Rome as the mother of his race, and the source of his title.
126 The excellent work by the Elector, on the Rise of Charles the Great, on the marriage of Charles the Great with the Empress of the East, and on the marriage of Theodoric, is in the print-office of the Frankforters.
127 See the seven electors of the empire, in the Life of the Elector of Saxony, by Dr. Baur.
128 See these curious verses of the same kind, and possibly the same author, on the death of Charles the Fourth, in the same work.
129 The verses on the death of the emperor, in the Life of the Elector of Saxony, by Dr. Baur, are a repetition of those on the death of Charles the Great, with some alterations.
130 The Emperor Maximilian, in his presentation of the title of king to Charles the Fourth, says, "I shall place him in the same degree of dignity with myself." (Lam. of Cardinal, edited at Graz, 1568."
131 As the verses on the death of the emperor, in the Life of the Elector of Saxony, by Dr. Baur, are a repetition of those on the death of Charles the Great, with some alterations.
132 See the verses on the death of the emperor, in the Life of the Elector of Saxony, by Dr. Baur, with additions.
133 See the verses on the death of Charles the Fourth, in the Life of the Elector of Saxony, by Dr. Baur, and the verses on the death of Charles the Fifth, in the Life of the Elector of Saxony, by Dr. Baur, with additions.
134 See the verses on the death of the emperor, in the Life of the Elector of Saxony, by Dr. Baur, with additions.
135 See the verses on the death of Charles the Fourth, in the Life of the Elector of Saxony, by Dr. Baur, and the verses on the death of Charles the Fifth, in the Life of the Elector of Saxony, by Dr. Baur, with additions.
136 See the verses on the death of the emperor, in the Life of the Elector of Saxony, by Dr. Baur, with additions.
triangle of spacious but irregular dimensions. From the northern point of Bactria, on the Euphrates, a line of fifteen hundred miles is terminated by theSinaites of Babylonia and the land of frankincense. About half this length may be allowed for the middle breadth, from east to west, from Damascus to Susa, from the Persian Gulf to the Red Sea. The sides of the triangle are gradually enlarged, and the southern base presents a front of a thousand miles to the Indian Ocean. The entire surface of the peninsula exceeds in a fourfold proportion that of Germany or France; but the greater part has been justly stigmatized with the epithets of the stygian and the sandy.

Even the wilds of Tartary are decked, by the hand of nature, with lofty trees and luxuriant herbage; and the hospitable traveller derives a sort of comfort and society from the presence of vegetable life. But in the dreary waste of Arabia, a boundless level of sand is intersected by sharp and naked mountains; and the face of the desert, without shade or shelter, is scorched by the direct and intense rays of a tropical sun. Instead of refreshing breezes, the winds, particularly from the south-west, diffuse a miasma and even deadly vapour; the hillocks of sand which they alternately raise and scatter, are compared to the billows of the ocean, and whole caravans, whole armies, have been lost and buried in the whirlwind. The common benefits of water are an object of desire and curiosity; and such is the scarcity of wood, that some art is requisite to preserve and propagate the element of fire. Arabia is destitute of navigable rivers, which fertilise the soil, and convey its produce to the adjacent regions; the torrents that fall from the hills are imbibed by the thirsty earth: the rare and hardy plants, the tamarind or the acacia, that strike their roots into the crevices of the rocks, are nourished by the dew of the night: a scanty supply of rain is collected in cisterns and aqueducts: the wells and springs are the secret treasure of the desert: and the pilgrims of Mecca, after many a dry and crusty march, are sprinkled by the taste of the waters, which have rolled over a bed of sulphur and salt. Such is the general and genuine picture of the climate of Arabia. The experience of evil enhances the value of any local or partial enjoyments. A shady grove, a green pasture, a stream of fresh water, are sufficient to attract a colony of sedentary Arabs to the fortunate spots which can afford food and refreshment to themselves and their cattle, and which encourage their industry in the cultivation of the palm-tree.

and the vine. The high lands that border on the Indian Ocean are distinguished by their superior plenty of wood and water; the air is more temperate, the fruits are more delicious, the animals and the human race more numerous; the fertility of the soil invites and rewards the toil of the husbandman: and the peculiar gifts of frankincense and coffee have attracted in different ages the merchants of the world. If it be compared with the rest of the peninsula, this quartered region may truly deserve the appellation of the happy; and the splendid colouring of fancy and fiction has been suggested by contrast, and countenanced by distance. It was for this earthly paradise that nature had reserved her choicest favours and her most virtuous workmanship; the incompatible blessings of luxury and innocence were ascribed to the natives: the soil was impregnated with gold; and gems, and both the land and sea were taught to exhale the odours of aromatic sweets. This division of the sandy, the stygian, and the bloody, so familiar to the Greeks and Latins, is unknown to the Arabians themselves: and it is singular enough, that a country, whose language and inhabitants have ever been the same, should scarcely retain a vestige of its ancient geography. The maritime districts of Babil and Oman are opposite to the realms of Persia. The kingdom of Yemen displays the limits, or at least the situation, of Arabia Felix: the name of Najad is extended over the inland space; and the birth of Mahomet has illustrated the province of Yezan along the coast of the Red Sea.

The measure of population is regulated by the means of subsistence; and the inhabitants of this vast peninsula might be outnumbered by the subjects of a fertile and industrious province. Along the shores of the Persian Gulf, of the ocean, and even of the Red Sea, the Kharsaphis, or fish-eaters, continued to wander in quest of their precarious food. In this primitive and subject state, which is still the order of society, the human brute, without arts or laws, almost without sense or language, is poorly distinguished from the rest of the animal creation. Generations and ages might roll away in silent oblivion, and the helpless savage was restrained from multiplying his race, by the wants and pursuits which combined his existence to the narrow margin of the sea-coast. But in an early period of antiquity the great body of the Arabs had emerged from this scene of misery; and as the naked wilderness could not

144. Place with the dry deer in the Domesd Bowes.

145. Place with the same name, old Omani botins.
able to man; her milk is plentiful and nutritious; the young and tender flesh has the taste of veal; a valuable salt is extracted from the urine; the dung supplies the deficient of fuel; and the long hair, which falls each year and is renewed, is coarsely manufactured into the garments, the furniture, and the tents, of the Bedouins. In the rainy seasons they consume the rare and insufficient herbage of the desert during the heats of summer and the scarcity of winter, they remove their encampments to the sea-coast, the hills of Yemem, or the neighbourhood of the Euphrates, and have often exerted the dangerous licence of visiting the banks of the Nile, and the villages of Syria and Palestine. The life of a wandering Arab is a life of danger and distress; and though sometimes, by rape or exchange, he may appropriate the fruits of industry, a private citizen in Europe is in the possession of more solid and pleasing luxury, than the proud emir, who marches in the field at the head of ten thousand horse.

Yet an essential difference may be found between the herders of Scythia and the Arabian tribes; since many of the latter were collected into towns, and employed in the labours of trade and agriculture. A part of their time and industry was still devoted to the management of their cattle; they mingled, in peace and war, with their brethren of the desert; and the Bedouins derived, from their useful intercourse, some supply of their wants, and some rudiments of art and knowledge. Among the forty-two cities of Arabia, enumerated by Abulfeda, the most ancient and populous were situated in the happy Yemen: the town of Sana, and the marvellous reservoir of Mehab, were constructed by the kings of the Humesites; but their profane ruined was eclipsed by the prophetic glories of Mecca, near the Red Sea, and at the distance from each other of two hundred and seventy miles. The last of these holy places was known to the Greeks under the name of Macrae; and the termination of the word is expressive of its greatness, which has not indeed, in the most flourishing period, exceeded the size and populosiness of Marseilles. Some latent motives, perhaps of superstition, must have impelled the founders, in the choice of a most surprising situation. They erected their ha-

**THE DECLINE AND FALL**

**CHAPTER L**

maintain a people of hunters, they rose at once to the more secure and plentiful condition of the pastoral life. The same life is uniformly pursued by the roving tribes of the desert; and in thepos of the modern Bedouins, we may trace the features of their ancestors, who, in the time of Moses or Mahomet, dwelt under similar tents, and conducted their horses, and camels, and sheep, to the same springs and the same pastures. Our task is tedious, and our wealth is increased, by our dominion over the useful animals; and the Arabian shepherd had the absolute possession of a faithful friend and a labourious slave. 11 Arabia, in the opinion of the naturalist, is the genuine and original country of the horse; the climate most propitious, not indeed to the size, but to the spirit and swiftness, of that generous animal. The merit of the Barb, the Spanish, and the English breed, is derived from a mixture of Arabian blood; 12 the Bedouins preserve, with superstitious care, the honours and the memory of the purest race; the males are sold at a high price, but the females are seldom alienated; and the birth of a noble foal was esteemed, among the tribes, as a subject of joy and mutual congratulation. These horses are educated in the tents, among the children of the Arabs, with a tender familiarity, which trains them in the habits of gentleness and submission. They are accustomed only to walk and to gallop: their sensations are not blunted by the incessant abuse of the spur and the whip; their powers are reserved for the moments of flight and pursuit; but no sooner do they feel the touch of the hand or the stirrup, than they dart away with the swiftness of the wind; and if their friend be dismissed in the usual course, they instantly stop till he has recovered his seat. In the sands of Africa and the desert of Arabia, the camel is a sacred and precious gift. That strong and patient beast of burden can perform, without eating or drinking, a journey of several days; and a reservoir of fresh water is preserved in a large bag, a fifth stomach of the animal, whose body is imprinted with the marks of servitude; the larger breed is capable of transporting a weight of a thousand pounds; and the dramatics, of a lighter and more active frame, outsFail the fleetest courser in the race. Alive or dead, almost every part of the camel is serviceable.
Mediterranean, in a plain about two miles long and one mile broad, at the foot of three barren mountains; the soil is a rock; the water even of the holy well of Zemunah is bitter or brackish; the pastures are remote from the city; and grapes are transported above seventy miles from the gardens of Tayef. The fame and spirit of the Korishites, who resided in Mecca, were conspicuous among the Arabian tribes; but their ungrateful soil refused the labours of agriculture, and their position was favourable to the enterprises of trade. By the sea-port of Ghadeer, at the distance only of forty miles, they maintained an easy correspondence with Abyssinia; and that Christian kingdom afforded the first refuge to the disciples of Mahomet. The treasures of Africa were conveyed over the Peninsula to Garha or Kaff, in the province of Babæin, a city built, as it is said, of rock-salt, by the Chaldean exiles; and from thence, with the native pearls of the Persian Gulf, they were floated on rafts to the mouth of the Kuphanas. Mecca is placed almost at an equal distance, a month's journey, between Yemen on the right, and Syria on the left bank. The former was the winter, the latter the summer, station of her caravans; and their seasonable arrival relieved the ships of India from the tedious and troublesome navigation of the Red Sea. In the markets of Seaim and Mehal, in the harbours of Oman and Aden, the camels of the Korishites were laden with a precious cargo of aromatics; a supply of corn and manufactures was purchased in the fairs of Bostra and Damascas; the furnitive exchange diffused plenty and riches in the streets of Mecca; and the nobility of her sons united the love of arms with the profession of merchandise. The perpetual independence of the Arabs has been the theme of praise among strangers and natives; and the arts of controversy transform this singular event into a prophecy and a miracle, in favour of the posterity of Ismael. Some exceptions, that can neither be disregarded nor studied, render this mode of reasoning as fallacious as it is superfluous; the kingdom of Yemen has been successively subdued, by the Abyssinians, the Persians, the califs of Egypt, and the Turks; and the holy cities of Mecca and Medina have repeatedly bowed under a Scythian tyrant; and the Roman province of Arabia the capital of the Mahometans, whose reign is defined from the death of the son of Ismael (A.D. 867.) to the ascension of Shoaib (A.D. 966.) six hundred and ninety-nine years, according to the calendar of the East (A.D. 812.) the empire of the Prophet covered a space nearly of the same extent. Provisions for ships were conveyed in large vessels, and the flocks of the Mahometans were converted into the currency of the East; but with great care and vigilance, the inhabitants of Mecca were subjected to the suzerainty of the Mahometan prince. The Mahometans were also the conquerors of Arabia; and it is only by a naval power that the reduction of Yemen has been successfully attempted. When Mahomet erected his holy standard, that kingdom was a province of the Persian empire;
yet seven princes of the Hasmitea still reigned in the mountains; and the viceroy of Cilicia was tempted to forget his distant country and his unfortunate master. The historians of the age of Justinian represent the state of the independent Arabs, who were divided by interest or afflication in the long quarter of the East: the tribe of Gassab was allowed to encamp on the Syrian territory; the princes of Hass were permitted to form a city about forty miles to the southward of the ruins of Babylon. Their service in the field was speedy and vigorous; but their friendship was venal, their faith inconstant, their enmity capricious: it was an easier task to excite than to disarm these roving barbarians; and, in the familiar intercourse of war, they learned to see, and to despise, the splendid weakness both of Rome and of Persia. From Mecca to the Euphrates, the Arabian tribes were confronted by the Greeks and Latins, under the general appellation of Saxareus, a name which every Christian mouth has been taught to pronounce with terror and abhorrence.

The slaves of domestic tyranny may vainly exult in their national independence; but the Arab is personally free; and he enjoys, in some degree, the benefits of society, without forfeiting the prerogatives of nature. In every tribe, superstition, or gratitude, or fortune, has exalted a particular family above the heads of their equals. The dignities of name and enmity infallibly devolve in this chosen race; but the order of succession is loose and precarious; and the most worthy or aged of the noble kinshmen are preferred to the simple, though important, office of composing disputes by their advice, and guiding events by their example. Even a female of sense and spirit has been permitted to command the countrymen of Zenobia. The momentary junction of several tribes produces an army; their more lasting union constitutes a nation; and the supreme chief, the emir of emirs, whose bannier is displayed at their head, may indeed, in the eyes of strangers, the hermits of the kingly name. If the Arabian princes abuse their power, they are quickly punished by the desertion of their subjects, who had been accustomed to a mild and paternal jurisdiction. Their spirit is free, their steps are unconfined, the desert is open, and the tribes and families are held together by a mutual and voluntary compact. The softer natives of Yemen supported the pomp and majesty of a monarch; but if he could not leave his palace without endangering his life, the active powers of government must have been devolved on his nobles and imagistrates. The cities of Mecca and Medina, present, in the heart of Asia, the form, or rather the substance, of a commonwealth. The grandfather of Mahomet, and his lineal ancestors, appear in foreign and domestic transactions as the princes of their country; but they reigned, like Pericles at Athens, or the Medici at Florence, by the opinion of their wisdom and integrity; their influence was divided with their patrimony; and the sceptre was transferred from the uncle of the prophet to a younger branch of the tribe of Kowish. On solemn occasions they convened the assembly of the people; and, since mankind must be either compelled or persuaded to obey, the use and reputation of stature among the ancient Arabs is the clearest evidence of public freedom. But their simple freedom was of a very different cast from the nice and artificial machinery of the Greek and Roman republics, in which each member possessed an undivided share of the civil and political rights of the community. In the more simple state of the Arabs, the nation is free, because each of her sons disclaims a base submission to the will of a master. His breast is fortified with the eastern virtues of courage, patience, and sobriety: the love of independence prompts him to exercise the habits of self-command: and the fear of dishonour guards him from the meeker apprehension of pain, of danger, and of death. The gravity and firmness of the mind is conspicuous in his outward demeanour: his speech is slow, weighty, and concise; he is seldom provoked to laughter; his only gesture is that of stroking his beard, the venerable symbol of manhood, and the sense of his own importance teaches him to account his equals without levity, and his superiors without awe. The liberty of the Saracens survived their conquests: the first caliphs indulged the bold and familiar language of their subjects; they ascended the pulpit to persuade and edify the congregation; nor was it before the seat of empire was removed to the Tigris, that the Ambassadors adopted the proud and pompous ceremonial of the Persian and Byzantine courts.

In the study of nations and men, we may observe the causes that render them hostile or friendly to each other, that tend to narrow or enlarge, to multiply or extinguish, the social character. The separation of the Arabs from the rest of mankind has accustomed them to confound the ideas of stranger and enemy; and the poverty of the land has
introduced a maxim of jurisprudence, which they believe and practice to the present hour. They pretend, that in the division of the earth, the rich and fertile climates were assigned to the other branches of the human family; and that the poverties of the outlaws must recover, by force or force, the portion of inheritance, of which he had been unjustly deprived. According to the remark of Pilny, the Arabian tribes are equally addicted to theft and merchandise; the caravans that traverse the desert are ransomed or pillaged; and their neighbours, since the remote times of Job and Solomon, have been the victims of their rapacious spirit.

If a Bedouin discovers from afar a solitary traveller, he rides furiously against him, crying, with a loud voice, "Undress thyself, thy saint (my ng) is without a garment." A ready submission entitles him to mercy; resistance will provoke the aggressor, and his own blood must explain the blood which he presumes to shed in legitimate defence. A single robber, or a few associates, are branded with their genuine name; but the exploits of a numerous band assume the character of a lawful and honourable war. The temper of a people, thus armed against mankind, was doubly inflamed by the domestic licence of rape, murder, and revenge.

In the constitution of Europe, the right of peace and war is now confined to a small, and the actual exercise to a much smaller, list of respectable potentates; but each Arab, with impunity and renown, might point his javelin against the life of his countryman. The union of the nation consisted only in a vague resemblance of language and manners; and in each community, the jurisdiction of the magistrate was acute and impotent. Of the time of ignorance which preceded Mahomet, seventeen hundred battles were recorded by tradition: hostility was embittered with the remembrance of civil faction; and the recital, in prose or verse, of an obsolete feud, was sufficient to rekindle the same passions among the descendants of the hostile tribes. In private life, every man, at least every family, was the judge and avenger of its own causes. The nice sensibility of honour, which weighs the insult rather than the injury, sheds its deadly venom on the quarrels of the Arabs: the honour of their women, and of their hearths, is most easily wounded; an indignant action, a contemptuous word, can be expiated only by the blood of the offender; and such is their patient invertebry, that they expect whole months and years the opportunity of revenge.

A fine or compensation for murder is familiar to the barbarians of every age; but in Arabia the kinsman of the dead are at liberty to accept the Stanton, or to exercise with their own hands the law of retaliation. The refined malice of the Arabs refuses even the head of the murderer, substitutes an innocent to the guilty person, and transfers the penalty to the best and most estimable of the race by whom they have been injured. If he falls by their hands, they are exposed in their turn to the danger of reprisals, the interest and principal of the bloody debt are accumulated; the individuals of either family lead a life of malice and suspicion, and fifty years may sometimes elapse before the account of vengeance be finally settled. This singular spirit, ignorant of pity or forgiveness, has been moderated, however, by the maxims of honour, which require in every private encounter some decent equality of age and strength, of numbers and weapons. An annual festival of two, perhaps of four months, was observed by the Arabs before the time of Mahomet, during which their swords were religiously sheathed, both in foreign and domestic hostility; and this partial truce is more strongly expressive of the habits of anarchy and warfare.

But the spirit of rapine and revenge was attempted by the milder influence of trade and literature.

The solitary peninsula is encompassed by the most civilized nations of the ancient world: the merchant is the friend of mankind; and the annual caravans imported the first seeds of knowledge and polished manners into the cities, and even the camps of the desert. Whatever may be the pedigrees of the Arabs, their language is derived from the same original stock with the Hebrew, the Syriac, and the Chaldaean tongues; the independence of the tribes was marked by their peculiar dialects; but each, after their own, allowed a just preference to the pure and perspicuous idiom of Meccas. In Arabia as well as in Greece, the perfection of language outstripped the refinement of manners; and her speech could diversify the fourscore names of honey, the two hundred of a serpent, the five hundred of a lion, the thousand of a sword, at a time when this copious dictionary was intrusted to the memory of an illiterate people. The monuments of the Homerides were inscribed with an obscure and mysterious character; but the Coptic letters, the groundwork of the present alphabet, were invented on the banks of the Euphrates; and the recent invention was taught to Nocca by a stranger who settled in that city after the birth of Mahomet. The arts of grammar, of metre, and of rhetoric, were unknown to the freedmen eloquence of the Arabs; but their penetration was sharp, their Eurytus virtuos, their wit strong
and sentiment, and their more elaborate compositions were addressed with energy and effect to the minds of their hearers. The genius and merit of a rising poet was celebrated by the applause of his own and the kindred tribes. A solemn banquet was prepared; and a chorus of women, striking their tambourines, and displaying the pomp of their ornaments, sang in the presence of the guests and blessed the faculty of their native tribe; that a champion had now appeared to vindicate their rights; that a herald had raised his voice to immortalize their renown. The distant and hostile tribes resorted to an annual fair, which was abolished by the fanaticism of the first Moslems; a national assembly that must have contributed to refine and harmonize the barbarism. Thirty days were employed in the exchange, not only of corn and wine, but of eloquence and poetry. The prize was disputed by the generous emulation of the bard; the victor’s performance was deposited in the archives of princes and suitors; and we may read, in our own language, the seven original poems which were inscribed in letters of gold, and suspended in the temple of Mecca. The Arabian poets were the historians and moralists of the age; and if they sympathized with the prejudices, they inspired and crowned the virtues, of their countrymen. The indissoluble union of generosity and valour was the stirring theme of their song; and when they pointed their kinsmen victorious against a despicable race, they affirmed, in the bitterness of reproach, that the men knew not how to give, nor the women to bury.

The same hospitality, which was practised by Abraham, and celebrated by Homer, is still renewed in the camps of the Arabs. The ferocious Bedouins, the sons of the desert, disdain, without enquiry or hesitation, the stranger who chooses to confide in their honour, and to enter their tent. His treatment is kind and respectful; he shares the wealth, or the poverty, of his host; and, after a needful repose, he is dismissed on his way, with thanks, with blessings, and perhaps with gifts. The heart and hand are more largely extended by the wants of a brother or a friend; but the fierce acts that could deserve the public applause, must have surpassed the narrow measure of discretion and experience. A dispute had arisen, who, among the citizens of Mecca, was entitled to the prize of generosity; and a successive application was made to the three who were devoted most worthy of the trial. Abdulrah, the son of Abub, had undertaken a distant journey, and his foot was in the stirrup when he heard the voice of a suppliant. "O son of the "noble of the apostle of God, I am a traveller, "and in distress." He instantly mounted to present the pilgrim with his camel, his rich ca-

The religion of the Arabs, as well as of the Indians, consisted in the worship of the sun, the moon, and the fixed stars; a primitive and species mode of superstition. The bright luminaries of the sky display the visible image of a deity: their number and distance convey to a philosopher, or even a vulgur, the idea of boundless space; the character of eternity is marked on these solid globes, that seem incapable of corruption or decay; the regularity of their motions may be ascribed to a principle of reason or instinct; and their real, or imaginary, influence encourages the vain belief that the earth and its inhabitants are the object of their peculiar care. The science of astronomy was cultivated at Babylon; but the school of the Arabs was a clear firmament and a naked plain. In their nocturnal marches, they steered by the guidance of the stars; their names, and order, and daily station, were familiar to the curiosity and devotion of the Bedouins; and he was taught by experience to divide in twenty-eight parts the Zodiac of the moon, and to bless the constellations who refreshed, with salutary rains, the deserts of the desert. The reign of the heavenly orbs could not be extended beyond the visible sphere; and some metaphysical powers were necessary to sustain the transmigration of souls and the resurrection of bodies; a camel was left to perish on the grave, that he might serve his master in another life; and the invocation of departed spirits implies that they were

43 See the Prophecies of Zoroaster, p. 18, 26.
44 D'Herbelot, Dict. Orient., p. 159. "Arab., Vales de la Mecc., and the Mecca, p. 131. "The Arabian city of Mecca, in the heart of Arabia, is the birthplace of the Meccan people; it is situated in the peninsula of Arabia, and is at a distance of 250 miles from the Mediterranean.
45 Whatever can be said respecting the size and extent of the Arabian peninsula, it is evident that it is divided into three main divisions: (1) the north-west, including the provinces of the Euphrates, Tigris, and Euphrates; (2) the north-east, including the provinces of the Tigris, Euphrates, and Tigris; and (3) the south, including the provinces of the Euphrates, Tigris, and Euphrates. See Gobineau, Hist. de l'Inde, p. 361.
seven times, with lusty steps, they encircled the Caaba, and kissed the black stone; seven times they visited and adored the adjacent mountains; seven times they threw stones into the valley of Mina; and the pilgrimage was achieved, as at the present hour, by a sacrifice of sheep and camels, and the burial of their hair and nails in the consecrated ground. Each tribe either found or introduced in the Caaba their domestic worship: the temple was adored, or defiled, with three hundred and sixty idols of men, angels, lions, and antelopes; and most conspicuous was the statue of Hebal, of red agate, holding in his hand seven arrows, without heads or feathers, the instruments and symbols of profane divination. But this statue was a monument of Syrian arts: the devotion of the ruder ages was content with a pillar or a table; and the rocks of the desert were hewn into gods or altars, in imitation of the black stone of Mecca, which is deeply tainted with the reproach of an idolatrous origin. From Japan to Peru, the use of a public sacrifice has universally prevailed; and the votary has expressed his gratitude, or fear, by destroying or consuming, in honour of the gods, the dearest and most precious of their gifts. The life of a man is the most precious oblation to deprecate a public calamity: the altars of Phaenicians and Egyptians, of Rome and Carthage, have been polluted with human gore; the cruel pratice was long preserved among the Arabs: in the third century, a boy was annually sacrificed by the tribe of the Dumatians; and a royal captive was piously slaughtered by the prince of the Saimons, the ally and soldier of the emperor Justinian. A priest who drags his son to the altar exhibits the most painful and sublme effort of fanaticism: the deed, or the intention, was sanctified by the example of saints and heroes; and the father of Mahomet himself was devoted by a rash vow, and hardly remonstrated for the equivalent of an hundred camels. In the time of ignorance, the Arabs, like the Jews and Egyptians, abstained from the taste of swine's flesh; they circumcised their children at the age of puberty: the same customs, without the ceremony or the precept of the Koran, have been silently transmitted to their posterity and
proselytes. It has been sagaciously conjectured, that the artful legislator indulged the stubborn prejudices of his countrymen. It is more simple to believe that he adhered to the habits and opinions of his youth, without foreseeing that a practice congenial to the climate of Mecca, might become useless or inconvenient on the banks of the Danube or the Volga.

The introduction of Arabia was free: the adjacent kingdoms were shaken by the storms of conquest and tyranny, and the persecuted sects fled to the happy land where they might profess what they thought, and practise what they professed. The religions of the Sabians and Magians, of the Jews and Christians, were disseminated from the Persian Gulf to the Red Sea. In a remote period of antiquity, Sabians was diffused over Asia by the science of the Chaldeans 66 and the arms of the Assyrians.

From the observations of two thousand years, the priests and astronomers of Babylon 66 deduced the eternal laws of nature and providence. They adored the seven gods, or angels, who directed the course of the seven planets, and shed their irresistible influence on the earth. The attributes of the seven planets, with the twelve signs of the zodiac, and the twenty-four constellations of the northern and southern hemisphere, were represented by images and talismans; the seven days of the week were dedicated to their respective deities; the Sabians prayed twice each day; and the temple of the moon at Haran was the term of their pilgrimage. 67 But the flexible genius of their faith was always ready either to teach or to listen; in the tradition of the creation, the deluge, and the patriarchs, they held a singular agreement with their Jewish captives; they appealed to the sacred books of Adam, Seth, and Enoch; and a slight infusion of the Gospel has transformed the last remnant of the Polytheism of the Christians of St. John, in the territory of Rossam. 68 The altars of Babylon were overturned by the Magians; but the injuries of the Sabians were revenged by the sword of Alexander; Persia groaned under five hundred years under a foreign yoke; and the pious disciples of Zoroastrianism escaped from the contagion of idolatry, and breathed with their adversaries the freedom of the desert. 69 Seven hundred years before the death of Mahomet, the Jews were settled in Arabia; and a far greater multitude was expelled from the Holy Land in the war of Titus and Hadrian. The industrious exiles aspired to liberty and power: they erected synagogues in the cities, and castles in the wilderness, and their Gentile converts were confounded with the children of Israel, whom they resembled in the outward mark of circumcision. The Christian missionaries were still more active and successful: the Catholics asserted their universal reign; the sects whom they oppressed successively retired beyond the limits of the Roman empire; the Maronites and the Manichaeans dispersed their platonic opinions and apocryphal Gospels; the churches of Yemen, and the princes of Hira and Gassan, were instructed in a purer creed by the Jacobite and Nestorian bishops. 70 The liberty of choice was presented to the tribes; each Arab was free to elect or to compose his private religion; and the rude superstition of his house was mingled with the sublime theology of saints and philosophers. A fundamental article of faith was calculated by the consent of the learned strangers: the existence of one supreme God, who is exalted above the powers of heaven and earth, but who has often revealed himself to mankind by the ministry of his angels and prophets, and whose grace or justice has interrupted, by sensible miracles, the order of nature. The most rational of the Arabs acknowledged his power, though they neglected his worship; 71 and it was habit rather than conviction that still attached them to the relics of idolatry. The Jews and Christians were the people of the book; the Bible was already translated into the Arabic language, 72 and the volume of the Old Testament was accepted by the concord of these incoherent exhumations. In the story of the Hebrew patriarchs, the Arabs were pleased to discover the fathers of their nation. They applauded the birth and promises of Israël; revered the faith and virtues of Abraham; traced his pedigree and their own to the creation of the first man, and imbued, with equal credulity, the prodigies of the holy text, and the dreams and traditions of the Jewish rabbin.

The base and plebeian origin of Mahomet was an unskilful calumny of the Christians, 73 who exalted instead of degrading the merit of their adversary.

66 Babylone. Bower (in L. L. p. 188—155) has done us a great service in mentioning Babylone. Our MSS., except the greater part of the early Pseudo-Babylonia, are the only source of information, since they could doubt whether the game were to the author of the book the foundation of the book itself. This was, in fact, because it is difficult to imagine the book of the copies, or, the copies of the copies, or of the copies of the copies. The earlier date of the copies of the copies of Babylone is the same as that of the copies of the copies of Babylone. The so-called copies of the copies of Babylone are the copies of the copies of Babylone.
67 Sabinia (other names, Persia, Persia, Persia; in C. L. B. 61, ii. 1341.) The Sabiism of Babylone was the same as that of the copies of the copies of Babylone. The copies of the copies of Babylone were the copies of the copies of Babylone. The copies of the copies of Babylone were the copies of the copies of Babylone.
68 Rossam. Bower (in L. L. p. 188—155) has done us a great service in mentioning Babylone. Our MSS., except the greater part of the early Pseudo-Babylonia, are the only source of information, since they could doubt whether the game were to the author of the book the foundation of the book itself. This was, in fact, because it is difficult to imagine the book of the copies, or, the copies of the copies, or of the copies of the copies. The earlier date of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies, or of the copies of the copies, is that of the copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies, or of the copies of the copies. The so-called copies, or, of the copies of the copies, are the copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies. The copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies, are the copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies. The copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies, are the copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies.
69 The names of the Jews and Christians in Arabia is described by Bower (in L. L. p. 188—155) has done us a great service in mentioning Babylone. Our MSS., except the greater part of the early Pseudo-Babylonia, are the only source of information, since they could doubt whether the game were to the author of the book, or, the copies of the copies of Babylone, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone. The earlier date of the copies of the copies of Babylone is that of the copies of the copies of Babylone, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone. The so-called copies, or, of the copies of the copies, are the copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies. The copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies, are the copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies. The copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies, are the copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies. The copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies, are the copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies.
70 In their ordinances, it was a custom to demand God the whole of the world of the Jews and Christians, and the greater part of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone. The earlier date of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone. The so-called copies, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone. The copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone, are the copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone. The copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone, are the copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone. The copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone, are the copies of the copies, or, of the copies of the copies of Babylone.
His descent from Ismael was a national privilege or fable; but if the first steps of the pedigree are dark and dubious, he could produce many generations of pure and genuine nobility; he sprung from the tribe of Koreish and the family of Hashem, the most illustrious of the Arabs, the princes of Mecca, and the hereditary guardians of the Kaaba. The grandfather of Mahomet was Abdul Motalleb, the son of Hashem, a wealthy and generous citizen, who relieved the distress of famine with the supplies of commerce. Mecca, which had been fed by the liberality of the father, was saved by the courage of the son. The kingdom of Yemen was subject to the Christian princes of Abyssinia; their vassal Abraham was provoked by an insult to avenge the honour of the cross; and the holy city was invaded by a train of elephants, and an army of Africans. A treaty was proposed; and, in the first instance, the grandfather of Mahomet demanded the restitution of his cattle. 16

And why,' said Abraham, 'do you not rather impress my clemency in favour of your temple, which I have threatened to destroy?' 17 Because, replied the intrepid chief, the cattle is my own; the Kaaba belongs to the gods; 18 and they will defend their house from injury and sacrilege. The want of provisions, or the value of the Koreish, compelled the Abyssinians to a disgraceful retreat; their disappointed hopes have been adorned with a miraculous flight of birds, who showed down stones on the heads of the infidels; and the deliverance was long commemorated by the area of the elephant. 19

Delivered of Mecca.

The glory of Abdul Motalleb was crowned with domestic happiness, his life was prolonged to the age of one hundred and ten years, and he became the father of six daughters and thirteen sons. His best beloved Abdallah was the most beautiful and modest of the Arabian youth; and in the first night, when he consummated his marriage with Amina, of the noble race of the Zahrites, two hundred virgins are said to have expired of jealousy and despair. Mahomet, more properly Mohammed, the only son of Abdallah and Amina, was born at Mecca, four years after the death of Justinian, and two months after the defeat of the Abyssinians, 20 whose victory would have introduced into the Kaaba the religion of the Christians. In his early infancy, he was deprived of his father, his mother, and his grandfather; his

21 Abdallah (al Vitr. Mohammed. vi. ii. i) and Hucus (The de Musset, p. 407) are of the same opinion. At Mecca, I would not dispute the antiquity of the shrines; 22 but I will venture to observe, I. in that State, Islamism is of about the age of twenty years. In consequence, I. 23 Not for the modern builders are accused of their wanton innovations. 24 See, for instance, the accounts in the Rev. Mr. Barrow, vol. ii. p. 100, &c. p. 128.

25 The base of this history, or fable, is committed to the care of the Romans, and Visconti (Le Paele, at Vitr. Mos. p. 106) has conjectured the connexion of Aineius, who was the first of the great emperors of the world. 26 He is traditionally called the foundress of the Roman Empire. 27 But he was in truth a large province, the ancient dominions of the Phœnician hosts, the modern Lebanon, the part of Phœnicia between the Mediterranean and the Euphrates. 28 Instead of the twelve, the number of the months in an Egyptian year, it is agreed to be ten, 29 the twelve of the modern Egyptians, viz. 30 the names of the months of the Saxon calendar. 31 The different forms of the dates are very much confused. 32 The date is B.C. 74. 33 The date is B.C. 75. 34 The date is B.C. 76. 35 The date is B.C. 77. 36 The date is B.C. 78.
the use of the purest dialect of Arabia; and the fluency of his speech was corrected and enhanced by the practice of discreet and seasonable silence. With these powers of eloquence, Mahomet was an illustrious barbarian: his youth had never been instructed in the arts of reading and writing; the common ignorance exempted him from shame or reproach, but he was reduced to a narrow circle of existence, and deprived of those faithful mirrors, which reflect to our mind the minds of sages and heroes. Yet the book of nature and of man was open to his view; and some fancy has been indulged in the political and philosophical observations, which are ascribed to the Arabian tradition. He compares the nations and the religions of the earth; discovers the weakness of the Persian and Roman monarchies; beholds, with pity and indignation, the degeneracy of the times; and resolves to unite, under one God and one king, the invincible spirit and primitive virtues of the Arabs. Our more accurate enquiry will suggest, that instead of visiting the courts, the camps, the temples of the East, the two journeys of Mahomet into Syria were confined to the fortress of Buzaara and Damascus; that he was only thirteen years of age when he accompanied the caravan of his uncle, and that his duty compelled him to return as soon as he had disposed of the merchandise of Cadizah. In those hasty and superficial excursions, the eye of genius might discern some objects invisible to his grosser companions; some seeds of knowledge might be cast upon a fruitful soil; but his ignorance of the Syriac language must have checked his curiosity; and I cannot perceive in the life or writings of Mahomet, that his prospect was so far extended beyond the limits of the Arabian world. From every region of that solitary world, the pilgrims of Mecca were annually assembled, by the calls of devotion and commerce. In the free converse of multitudes, a simple citizen, in his native tongue, might study the political state and character of the tribes, the theory and practice of the Jews and Christians. Some useful strangers might be tempted, or forced, to improve the rights of hospitality; and the enemies of Mahomet have named the Jew, the Persian, and the Syrian monk, whom they accuse of leading their secret aid to the composition of the Koran. Conversation enriches the understanding; but solitude is the school of genius; and the uniformity of a work denotes the hand of a single artist.

From his earliest youth Mahomet was addicted to religious contemplation; each year, during the month of Ramazan, he withdrew from the world and from the arms of Cadizah; in the cave of Hira, three miles from Mecca, he consulted the spirit of fraud or enthusiasm, whose abode is not in the heavens, but in the mind of the prophet. The faith which, under the name of Ismail, he preached to his family and nation, is compounded of an eternal truth and a necessary fiction, that there is one God, and that Mahomet is the Apostle of God.

It is the boast of the Jewish apologists, that while the learned nations of antiquity were deluded by the fables of Polytheism, their simple ancestors of Palestine preserved the knowledge and worship of the true God. The moral attributes of Jehovah may not easily be reconciled with the standard of human virtue; his metaphysical qualities are darkly expressed; but each page of the Pentateuch and the Prophets is an evidence of his power; the unity of his name is inscribed on the first table of the law; and his sanctuary was never defiled by any visible image of the invisible essence. After the ruin of the temple, the faith of the Hebrew exiles was purified, fixed, and enlightened, by the spiritual devotion of the synagogue; and the authority of Mahomet will not justify his perpetual reproach, that the Jews of Mecca or Medina aided Ezra as the son of God. But the children of Israel had ceased to be a people; and the religions of the world were guilty, at least in the eyes of the prophet, of giving sons, or daughters, or companions, to the supreme God. In the rude idolatry of the Arabs, the crime is manifest and undeniable: the Sabians are poorly excused by the pre-eminence of the first planet, or intelligence in their celestial hierarchy; and in the Magian system the enmity of the two principles betrays the impersonation of the conqueror. The Christians of the seventh century had involuntarily relapsed into a semblance of Paganism; their public and private vows were addressed to the effaces and images that disgraced the temples of the East; the throne of the Almighty was darkened by a cloud of martyrs, and saints, and angels, the objects of popular veneration; and the Calyrian heretics, who flourished in the fruitful soil of Arabia, invested the Virgin Mary with the name and honours of a goddess. The mysteries of the Trinity and Incarnation appear
to contradict the principle of the divine unity. In their obvious sense, they introduce three equal deities, and transform the name Jesus into the substance of the son of God; an orthodox commentary will satisfy only a believing mind: intemperate curiosity and zeal had torn the veil of the sanctuary; and each of the Oriental sects was eager to confess that all, except themselves, had destroyed the reproach of idolatry and polytheism. The creed of Mahomet is free from suspicion or ambiguity; and the Koran is a glorious testimony to the unity of God. The prophet of Mecca rejected the worship of idols and men, of stars and planets, on the rational principle that whatever arises must set, that whatever is born must die, that whatever is corruptible must decay and perish. In the author of the universe, his rational enthusiasm confessed and adored an infinite and eternal being, without form or place, without time or similitude, present to our most secret thoughts, existing by the necessity of his own nature, and deriving from himself all moral and intellectual perfection. These sublime truths, thus announced in the language of the prophet, are firmly held by his disciples, and defined with metaphysical precision by the interpreters of the Koran. A philosophic mind might substitute the popular creed of the Mahometans; a creed too sublime perhaps for our present faculties. What object remains for the fancy, or even the understanding, when we have abstracted from the unknown substance all ideas of time and space, of motion and matter, of sensation and reflection? The first principle of reason and revelation was confirmed by the voice of Mahomet; his proclivities, from India to Morocco, are distinguished by the name of "Unicarians," and the danger of idolatry has been prevented by the interdiction of images. The doctrine of eternal decrees and absolute predetermination is strictly embraced by the Mahometans; and they struggle with the common difficulties, how to reconcile the presence of God with the freedom and responsibility of man; how to explain the permission of evil under the reign of infinite power and infinite goodness.

From the God of nature has written his law in the heart of man. To restore the knowledge of the one, and practice of the other, has been the real or pretended aim of the prophets of every age; the liberality of Mahomet allowed to his predecessors the same credit which he claimed for himself; and the chain of inspiration was prolonged from the fall of Adam to the promulgation of the Koran. During that period, some rays of prophetic light had been imparted to one hundred and twenty-four thousand of the elect, discriminated by their respective measure of virtue and grace; three hundred and eighteen apostles were sent with a special commission to rival their country from idolatry and vice: one hundred and four volumes have been dictated by the holy spirit; and six legislators of transcendent brightness have announced to mankind the six successive revelations of various rites, but of one immutable religion. The authority and station of Adam, Noah, Abraham, Moses, Christ, and Mahomet, rise in just gradation above each other; but whosoever hates or rejects any one of the prophets is numbered with the infidels. The writings of the patriarchs are extant only in the apocryphal copies of the Greeks and Syrians; the conduct of Adam had not entitled him to the gratitude or respect of his children; the seven precepts of Noah were observed by an inferior and imperfect class of the proselytes of the synagogue; and the memory of Abraham was obscurely revered by the Sadducees in his native land of Chaldea, one of the myriads of prophets, Moses and Christ alone lived and reigned; and the remnant of the inspired writings was comprised in the books of the Old and the New Testament. The miraculous story of Moses is consecrated and embellished in the Koran; and the captive Jews enjoy the secret revenge of imposing their own belief on the nations whose recent creeds they deride. For the author of Christianity, the Mahometans are taught by the prophet to entertain an high and mysterious reverence, yet so truly, so Verily, the Son of Man shall be the apostle of God, and his word, which he conveyed unto Mary, and a spirit proceeding from him; honourable in this world, and in the world to come; and one of those who appear near to the presence of God. The warnings of the gospels and apocryphal gospels are profoundly heaped on his head; and the Latin church has not disclaimed to borrow from the Koran the immaculate conception of his virgin mother. Yet Jesus was a mere mortal; and, at
the day of Judgment, his testimony will serve to condemn both the Jews, who reject him as a prophet, and the Christians, who adore him as the Son of God. The malice of his enemies asperged his reputation, and conspired against his life; but their intentions only were guilty, a phantom or a criminal was substituted on the cross, and the innocent saint was translated to the seventh heaven. During six hundred years the Gospel was the way of truth and salvation; but the Christians incessantly forgot both the laws and the practice of their founder; and Mahomet was instructed by the successors of the Messiah in the church, as well as the synagogue, of correcting the integrity of the sacred text. The piety of Moses and of Christ rejoiced in the assurance of a future Prophet, more illustrate than themselves: the evangelical promise of the Paraclete, or Holy Ghost, was prefigured in the name, and accomplished in the person, of Mahomet, the greatest and the last of the apostles of God.

The Koran.

The communication of ideas requires a similitude of thought and language: the discourse of a philosopher would vibrate without effect on the ear of a peasant; yet how minute is the distance of their understandings, if it be compared with the contact of an infinite and a finite mind, with the word of God expressed by the tongue or the pen of a mortal? The inspiration of the Hebrew prophets, of the apostles and evangelists of Christ, might not be incompatible with the exercise of their reason and memory; and the diversity of their genius is strongly marked in the style and composition of the books of the Old and New Testament. But Mahomet was content with a character, more humble, yet more sublime, of a simple editor: the substance of the Koran, according to himself or his disciples, is uncorrupted and eternal; subsisting in the essence of the Deity, and inscribed with a pen of light on the table of his everlasting decrees. A paper copy, in a volume of silk and gems, was brought down to the lowest heaven by the angel Gabriel, who, under the Jewish economy, had indeed been deposited on the most important errands; and this trusty messenger successively revealed the chapters and verses to the Arabian prophet. Instead of a perpetual and perfect measure of the divine will, the fragments of the Koran were produced at the discretion of Mahomet; each revelation is suited to the emergencies of his policy or passion; and all contradiction is removed by the saving maxim, that any text of Scripture is abrogated or modified by any subsequent passage. The word of God, and of the apostle, was diligently recorded by his disciples on palm-leaves and the shoulders of mutton; and the pages, without order or connection, were cast into a domestic chest in the custody of one of his wives. Two years after the death of Mahomet, the sacred volume was collected and published by his friend and successor Abu Bekar: the work was revised by the caliph Othman, in the thirteenth year of the Hegira; and the various editions of the Koran assert the same miraculous privilege of an uniform and incorruptible text. In the spirit of enthusiasm or vanity, the prophet rests the truth of his mission on the merit of his inspiration, and confidently challenges both men and angels to imitate the beauties of a single page, and presume to assert that God alone could dictate this incomparable performance.

This argument is most powerfully addressed to a devout Arabian, whose mind is attuned to faith and rapture, whose ear is delighted by the music of sounds, and whose ignorance is incapable of comparing the productions of human genius. The harmony and copiousness of style will not reach, in a version, the European infidel: he will persuade with impudence the endless incoherence of fable, and precept, and declamation, which seldom excites a sentiment or an idea, which sometimes crawls in the dust, and is sometimes lost in the clouds. The divine attributes exalt the fancy of the Arabian missionary; but his least effort must yield to the sublime simplicity of the book of Job, composed in a remote age, in the same country, and in the same language. If the composition of the Koran exceed the faculties of a man, to what superior intelligence should we ascribe the Iliad of Homer or the Philippines of Demosthenes? In all religions, the life of the founder supplies the silence of his written revelation: the sayings of Mahomet were so many lessons of truth; his actions so many examples of virtue; and the public and private memorials were preserved by his wives and companions. At the end of two hundred years, the Soman oral law was fixed and consecrated by the labours of Al Bochari, who discriminated seven thousand two hundred and seventy-five genuine traditions, from a mass of three hundred thousand reports, of a more doubtful or spurious character. Each day the pious author prayed in the temple of Mecca, and performed his oblations with the sword of Zemzem: the pages were successively deposited on the pulpit, and the sepulchre of the apostle; and the work has been approved by the four orthodox sects of the Sunnite.
The mission of the ancient prophets, of Moses and of Jesus, had been confirmed by many splendid prodigies; and Mahomet was repeatedly urged, by the inhabitants of Mecca and Medina, to produce a similar evidence of his divine vocation; to call down from heaven the angel or the volume of his revelation, to create a garden in the desert, or to kindle a conflagration in the unbelieving city. As often as he is pressed by the demands of the Korish, he involves himself in the obscure bustle of vision and prophecy; appeals to the internal proofs of his doctrine; and shields himself behind the providence of God, who renews those signs and wonders that would depopulate the merit of faith and aggravate the guilt of impiety. But the modest or angry tone of his apologies betrays his weakness and vacillation; and those passages of scatful establish, beyond suspicion, the integrity of the Koran.

The miracles of Mahomet are more assured than himself of his miraculous gifts, and their confidence and credulity increase as they are farther removed from the time and place of his spiritual exploits. They believe or affirm: that trees went forth to meet him; that he was saluted by stones; that water gushed from his fingers; that he fed the hungry, cured the sick, and raised the dead; that a beam groaned to him; that a camel complained to him; that a shoulder of mutton informed him of its being poisoned; and that both animate and inanimate nature were equally subject to the apostle of God. His dream of a nocturnal journey is seriously described as a real and corporeal transaction. A mysterious animal, the Burak, conveyed him from the temple of Mecca to that of Jerusalem; with his companion Gabriel, he successively ascended the seven heavens, and received and repaid the salutations of the patriarchs, the prophets, and the angels, in their respective mansions. Beyond the seventh heaven, Mahomet alone was permitted to proceed; he passed the veil of unity, approached within two bowshots of the throne, and felt a cold that pierced him to the heart, when his shoulder was touched by the hand of God. After this familiar though important conversation, he again descended to Jerusalem, remounted the Burak, returned to Mecca, and performed in the tenth part of a night the journey of many thousand years.

According to another legend, the apostle contended in a national assembly the malicious challenge of the Koraish. His relentless word split asunder the orb of the moon; the obelisked planet steeped from her summit in the sky, accomplished the seven revolutions round the Caaba, saluted Mahomet in the Arabian tongue, and suddenly contracting her dimensions, entered at the collar, and issued forth through the sleeve, of his shirt.

The vulgar are amused with these marvellous tales; but the grave of the Mussulman doctors imitate the modesty of their master, and indulge a latitude of faith or interpretation. They might speciously allege, that in preaching the religion, it was needless to violate the harmony, of nature; that a creed unclouded with mystery may be excused from miracles; and that the sword of Mahomet was not less potent than the rod of Moses.

The polytheist is oppressed and distracted by the variety of superstitions; a thousand rites of Egyptian origin were interwoven with the essence of the Mosiac law; and the spirit of the Gospel had evaporated in the pageantry of the church. The prophet of Mecca was tempted by prejudice, or policy, or patriotism, to sanctify the rites of the Arabs; and the custom of visiting the holy stem of the Caaba. But the precepts of Mahomet himself include a more simple and rational piety; prayer, fasting, and alms, are the religious duties of a Musulman; and he is encouraged to hope, that prayer will carry him half way to God, fasting will bring him to the door of his palace, and alms will gain him admission.

I. According to the tradition of the nocturnal journey, the apostle, in his personal conference with the Deity, was commanded to impose on his disciples the daily obligation of fifty prayers. By the advice of Moses, he applied for an alleviation of this intolerable burden; the number was gradually reduced to five, without any dispensation of business or pleasure, or time or place; the devotion of the faithful is reported at daybreak, at noon, in the afternoon, and in the evening; and, at the first watch of the night; and, in the present decay of religious fervour, our travellers are edified by the profound humility and attention of the Turks and Persians.

Cleanliness is the key of prayer; the frequent lustration of the hands, the face, and the body, which was practised of old by the Arabs, is solemnly enjoined by the Koran; and a permission is formally granted to supply with sand the scarcity of water. The words and
attitudes of supplication, as it is performed either sitting, or standing, or prostrate on the ground, are prescribed by custom or authority, but the prayer is poured forth in short and servile ejaculations; the measure of zeal is not exhausted by a tedious liturgy; and each Mussulman, for his own person, is invested with the character of a priest. Among the theists, who reject the use of images, it has been found necessary to restrain the wanderings of the fancy, by directing the eye and the thought towards a fixed, or visible point of the horizon. The prophet was at first inclined to gratify the Jews by the choice of Jerusalem; but he soon returned to a more natural partiality; and five times every day the eyes of the nations at Astrakan, at Fez, at Delhi, are devoutly turned to the holy temple of Mecca. Yet every spot for the service of God is equally pure; the Mahometans indiscriminately pray in their chamber or in the street. As a distinction from the Jews and Christians, the Friday in each week is set apart for the useful institution of public worship: the people are assembled in the mosques; and the imam, some respectable elder, ascends the pulpit to begin the prayer and pronounce the sermons. But the Mahometan religion is destitute of priesthood or sacrifice; and neither the independent spirit of fanaticism looks down with contempt on the ministers and the slaves of superstition. II. The voluntary penance of the ascetics, the torment and glory of their lives, was odious to a prophet who converse in his companions a rash vow of abstaining from flesh, from water, and sleep; and firmly declared, that he would not suffer a monk in his religion. Yet be it remembered, in each year, a fast of thirty days, and sternly recommended the observance, as a discipline which purifies the soul and subdues the body, as a solitary exercise of obedience to the will of God and his apostle. During the month of Ramadan, from the rising to the setting of the sun, the Mussulman abstains from eating, and drinking, and women, and baths, and perfumes; from all nourishment that can restore his strength, from all pleasure that can gratify his senses. In the revolution of the lunar year, the Ramadan, coincides, by turns, with the winter cold and the summer heat; and the patient martyr, without assuaging his thirst with a drop of water, must expect the close of a tedious and sultry day. The interdiction of wine, peculiar to some orders of priests or hermits, is converted by Mahomet alone into a positive and general law; and a considerable portion of the globe has abjured, at his command, the use of that salutary though dangerous liquor. These painful restraints are, doubtless, infringed by the libertine and eluded by the hypocrite: but the legislator, by whom they are enacted, cannot surely be accused of alluring his proslaves by the indulgence of their sensual appetites. III. The charity of the Mahometans descends to the animal creation: and the Koran repeatedly inculcates, not as a merit, but as a strict and indispensable duty, the relief of the indigent and unfortunate. Mahomet, perhaps, is the only lawyer who has defined the precise measure of charity: the standard may vary with the degree and nature of property, as it consists either in money, in corn or cattle, in fruits or merchandise; but the Mussulman does not accomplish the law, unless he bestows a tenth of his revenue; and if his conscience accuses him of fraud or extortion, the tenth, under the idea of restitution, is enlarged to a fifth. Benevolence is the foundation of justice, since we are forbid to injure those whom we are bound to assist. A prophet may reveal the secrets of heaven and of futurity; but in his moral precepts he can only repeat the lessons of our own hearts.

The two articles of belief, and the four practical duties of Islam, are guarded by rewards and punishments; and the faith of the Mussulman is devoutly fixed on the event of the judgment and the last day. The prophet has not presumed to determine the moment of that awful catastrophe, though he darkly announces the signs, both in heaven and earth, which will precede the universal dissolution, when life shall be destroyed, and the order of creation shall be confounded in the primitive chaos. At the blast of the trumpet, new worlds will start into being; angels, genii, and men, will arise from the dead, and the human soul will again be united to the body. The doctrine of the resurrection was first entertained by the Egyptians; and their mummies were embalmed; their pyramids were constructed, to preserve the ancient mansion of the soul, during a period of three thousand years. But the attempt is partial and unsatisfying; and it is with a more philosophic spirit that Mahomet relies on the omnipotence of the Creator, whose word can re-animate the breathing clay, and collect the innumerable atoms, that no longer retain their form or substance. The intermediate state of the soul it is hard to decide; and those who most firmly believe her immaterial nature, are at a loss to understand how she can think or act without the agency of the organs of sense.

The union of the soul and body will be followed by the final judgment of mankind; and, in the copy of the Magian picture, the prophet has too faithfully

him in remembrance the same blessed life of the Psalms of David, great blessedness is seen in much boundless and endless joy. Many are the saints who have left their bones. The tent of resurrection in heaven made of the bones of the righteous, and the last assembly of the ghosts of the just. So says Theophilus, bishop of Commagene, in his treatise of the Psalms. The only man who has been able to express the idea of the resurrection is John Matthias (John Chrysostom). The authenticity of the fourth book of the Psalms (par. 464-474), in which the resurrection of the dead is treated in a manner of the prophets.
represented the forms of proceeding, and even the slow and successive operations of an earthly tribunal. By his intolerant ad\nvariations he is upheld for extending, even to themselves, the hope of salvation; for asserting the blackest heresy, that every man who believes in God, and accomplishes good works, may expect in the\nlast stand a favorable sentence. Such rational ful\ncompiion is ill adapted to the character of a fanatic; nor is it probable that a messenger from heaven should depreciate the value and necessity of his own revelation. In the idea of the Koran, the belief of God is inseparable from that of Mahomet; the good works are those which he has enjoined; and the two qualifications imply the profession of Islam, to which all nations and all sects are equally invited. Their spiritual brilliancy, though extenuated by ignorance and error, will be secured by everlasting torments; and the tears which Mahomet shed over the tomb of his mother, for whom he was forbidden to pray, display a striking contrast of humanity and enthusiasm. The doom of the infidels is common: the measure of their guilt and punishment is determined by the degree of evidence which they have rejected, by the magnitude of the errors which they have entertained; the eternal numbers of the Christians, the Jews, the Sabians, the Magians, and the idolaters, are sunk below each one of these abysses; and the lowest hell is reserved for the fanatical hypocrites who have assumed the mask of religion. After the greater part of mankind has been condemned for their opinions, the true believers only will be judged by their actions. The good and evil of each Mussulman will be accurately weighed in a real or allegorical balance, and a singular mode of compensation will be allowed for the payment of injuries: the aggressor will refund an equivalent of his own good actions, for the benefit of the person whom he has wronged; and if he should be destitute of any moral property, the weight of his sins will be charged against the demerits of the sufferer. According to the classes of guilt or virtue shall preponderate, the sentence will be pronounced, and all, without distinction, will pass over the sharp and perilous bridge of the abyss; but the innocent, trampling in the footsteps of Mahomet, will gloriously enter the gates of paradise, while the guilty will fall into the first and midst of the seven hells. The term of expiation will vary from nine hundred to seven thousand years; but the prophet has judiciously prescribed, that all his disciples, whatever may be their sins, shall be saved, by their own faith and his intercession, from eternal damnation. It is not surprising that superstition should act most powerfully on the fears of her votaries, since the human fancy can paint with more energy the misery than the bliss of a future life. With the two simple elements of darkness and fire, we create a sensation of pain, which may be aggravated to an infinite degree by the idea of endless duration. But the same idea operates with an opposite effect on the continuity of pleasure; and too much of our present enjoyments is obtained from the relief or the comparison of evil. It is natural enough that an Arabian prophet should dwell with rapture on the groves, the fountains, and the rivers, of paradise; but instead of inspiring the blessed inhabitants with a liberal taste for harmony and science, conversation and friendship, he idly celebrates the pearls and diamonds, the robes of silk, palaces of marble, dishes of gold, rich wines, artificial dainties, numerous attendants, and the whole train of sensual and costly luxury, which becomes insipid to the owner, even in the short period of this mortal life. Seventy-two Hours, or black-eyed girls, of resplendent beauty, blooming youth, virgin purity, and exquisite sensibility, will be created for the use of the meanest believer; a moment of pleasure will be prolonged to a thousand years, and his faculties will be increased an hundredfold, to render him worthy of his felicity. Notwithstanding a vulgar prejudice, the gates of heaven will be open to both sexes; but Mahomet has not specified the male companions of the female elect, lest he should either alarm the jealousy of their former husbands, or disturb their felicity, by the suspicion of an everlasting marriage. This image of a carnal paradise has provoked the indignation, perhaps the envy, of the uninitiated: they declaim against the impure religion of Mahomet; and his most sagacious apologists are driven to the pious excuse of figures and allegories. But the sounder and more consistent party adhere, without shame, to the literal interpretation of the Koran; unless would be the resurrection of the body, unless it were restored to the possession and exercise of its worthiest faculties; and the union of sensual and intellectual enjoyment is requisite to complete the happiness of the double animal, the perfect man. Yet the joys of the Mahometan paradise will not be confined to the indulgence of luxury and appetites; and the prophet has expressly declared, that all manner happiness will be forgotten and despised by the saints and martyrs, who shall be admitted to the beatitude of the divine vision. The first and most arduous conquests of Mahomet 111 were those of his wife, his servant, his pupil, and his friend; since he presented himself as a pro\n
\n\n111 This is, of course, exceedingly exalting Mahomet; see vol. i. p. 136, 137. But it is not surprising that such deeds will not be immediately controverted. (138) It has been observed to me, that the Mussulman religions with the Christian hitherto fasten the spirit of Mahomet, and that the Koran is the Bible of the world, and the Arabian the apostle of Islam.
prophet to those who were most conversant with his infirmities as a man. Yet Cadiljah believed the words, and cherished the glory, of his husband; the obsequious and affectionate Zeid was tempted by the prospect of freedom; the illustrious Ali, the son of Abu Taleb, embraced the sentiments of his cousin with the spirit of a youthful hero; and the wealth, the moderation, the secacy of Aibreflect, confirmed the religion of the prophet whom he was destined to succeed.

By his permission, ten of the most respectable citizens of Mecca were introduced to the private home of Islam; they yielded to the voice of reason and enthusiasm; they repeated the fundamental creed; "There is but one God, and Mahomet is the apostle of God;" and their faith, even in this life, was rewarded with riches and honours, with the command of armies and the government of kingdoms. Three years were silently employed in the conversion of fourteen proselytes, the first fruits of his mission; but in the fourth year he assumed the prophetic office, and resolving to impart to his family the light of divine truth, he prepared a banquet, a lamb, as it is said, and a bowl of milk, for the entertainment of forty guests of the race of Hashem. 

Friends and kinsmen, said Mahomet to the assembly, I offer you, and I allow you to offer, the most precious of gifts, the treasures of this world and of the world to come. God has commanded me to call you to his service. Who among you will support my burden? Who among you will be my companion and my vizir?" 

No answer was returned, till the silence of astonishment, and doubt, and contempt, was at length broken by the impudent courage of Ali, a youth in the fourteenth year of his age. O prophet, I am the man who all day rises against thee. I will dash out his teeth, tear out his eyes, break his legs, rip up his belly. O prophet, I will be thy vizir over them." Mahomet accepted his offer with transport; and Abu Taleb was ironically exulted to respect the superior dignity of his son. In a more solemn tone, the father of Ali advised his nephew to relinquish his impracticable design. Spare your remonstrances, replied the intrepid fanatic to his uncle and benefactor; if they should place the sun on my right hand, and the moon on my left, they should not divert me from my course. He persevered ten years in the exercise of his mission; and the religion which has overthrown the East and the West, advanced with a slow and painful progress within the walls of Mecca. Yet Mahomet enjoyed the satisfaction of beholding the increase of his infant congregation of Unitarians, who revered him as a prophet, and to whom he sensibly dispensed the spiritual nourishment of the Koran. The number of proselytes may be esteemed by the absence of eighty-three men and eighteen women, who retired to Ethiopia in the seventh year of his mission, and his party was fortified by the timely conversion of his uncle Hamza, and of the fierce and indefatigable Omar, who signalled in the name of Islam the same zeal which he had exerted for its destruction. Not was the charity of Mahomet confined to the tribe of Kowari or the provincies of Mecca: on solemn festivals, in the days of pilgrimage, he frequented the Caaba, accepted the strangers of every tribe, and urged, both in private converse and public discourse, the belief and worship of a sole Deity. Conscious of his reason and of his weakness, he asserted the liberty of conscience, and disclaimed the use of religious violence; but he called the Arabs to repentance, and conjured them to remember the ancient isolators of Ail and Thamud, whom the divine justice had swept away from the face of the earth.

The people of Mecca was hardened in their unbelief by supposition and envy. The siders of the city, the uncles of the prophet, affected to despise the presumption of an orphan, the reformer of his country: the pious relations of Mahomet in the Caaba were answered by the clamours of Abu Taleb. Citizens and pilgrims, listen not to the sinner, hearken not to his impious novelties. Stand fast in the worship of Al Lah and Al Uzrah." Yet the son of Abdullah was ever close to the aged chief; and he protected the wise and person of his nephew against the assaults of the Koweshites, who had long been jealous of the proselytes of the family of Hashem. Their malice was concerned with the pretence of religion; in the age of Job, the crime of impiety was punished by the Arabian magistrate; and Mahomet was guilty of deserting and denying the national deities. But so long as the policy of Mecca, that the leaders of the Koran, instead of accusing a criminal, were compelled to employ the measures of persuasion or violence. They repeatedly addressed Abu Taleb in the style of reproach and menace. Thy nephew reviles our religion; he accuses our wise forefathers of ignorance and folly; silence him quickly, lest he hale tumult and discord in the city. If he perseveres, we shall draw our swords against him and his adherents.
"and thou wilt be responsible for the blood of thy fellow-citizens." The weight and moderation of Abu Talib inclined the violence of religious faction; the most helpless or timid of the disciples retired to Ethiopia, and the prophet withdrew himself to various places of strength in the town and country. As he was still supported by his family, the rest of the tribe of Kassith engaged themselves to renounce all intercourse with the children of Hashem, neither to buy nor sell, neither to marry nor to give in marriage, but to pursue them with implacable enmity, till they should deliver the person of Mahomet to the justice of the gods. The decree was suspended in the Cusha before the eyes of the nation; the messengers of the Korish pursued the Musulmans in exile, in the heart of Africa; they besieged the prophet, and his most faithful followers, intercepted their water, and infused their mutual animosity by the retaliation of injuries and insults. A doubtful truce restored the appearances of concord; till the death of Abu Talib abandoned Mahomet to the power of his enemies, at the moment when he was deprived of his domestic comforts by the loss of his faithful and generous Cadijah. Abu Sophian, the chief of the branch of Omreich, succeeded to the principality of the republic of Mecca. A zealous viceroy of the idols, a mortal foe of the line of Hashem, he convened an assembly of the Korishites and their allies, to decide the fate of the apostle. His impeachment might provoke the spleen of his enthusiasm; and the exile of an eloquent and popular fanatic would diffuse the mischief through the provinces of Arabia. His death was resolved; and they agreed that a sword from each tribe should be buried in his heart, to divide the guilt of his blood, and baffle the vengeance of the Hashemites.

An angel or a spy revealed their conspiracy; and flight was the only resource of Mahomet. At the dead of night, accompanied by his friend Abubekeer, he silently escaped from his house; the assassin watched at the door; but they were deceived by the figure of All, who repeated as the bed, and was covered with the green vestment of the apostle. The Korishites respected the piety of the heroic youth; but some verses of All, which are still extant, exhibit an interesting picture of his anxiety, his tenderness, and his religious confidence. Three days Mahomet and his companions were concealed in the cave of Thor, at the distance of a league from Mecca; and in the close of each evening, they received, from the son and daughter of Abubekeer, a secret supply of intelligence and food. The diligence of the Korishites explored every haunt in the neighborhood of the city; they arrived at the entrance of the cavern; but the providential deceit of a spider's web and a pigeon's nest, is supposed to convince them that the place was solitary and inviolate. "We are only two," said the trembling Abubekeer. "There is a third," replied the prophet; "it is God himself." No sooner was the pursuit abated, than the two fugitives issued from the rock, and mounted their camels. On the road to Medina, they were overtaken by the emissaries of the Korish; they redeemed themselves with prayers and promises from their hands. In this eventful moment, the lance of a Turk might have changed the history of the world. The flight of the prophet from Mecca to Medina has fixed the memorable year of the Hegira, which, at the end of twelve centuries, still discriminates the inner years of the Muhometan nations.

The religion of the Koran might have perished in its cradle, had not the princes of Medina embraced with faith and reverence the holy oracles of Meccah. Medina, or the city, known under the name of Yathrib, before it was sanctified by the throne of the prophet, was divided between the tribes of the Chalghites and the Awagites, whose hereditary feud was rekindled by the slightest provocations; two colonies of Jews, who boasted a sacerdotal race, were their humble allies; and without converting the Arabs, they introduced the taste of science and religion, which distinguished Medina as the city of the book. Some of her nobility citizens, in a pilgrimage to the Cusha, were converted by the preaching of Mahomet; on their return they diffused the belief of God and his prophet, and the new alliance was ratified by their deputies in two secret and nocturnal interviews on a hill in the suburbs of Mecca. In the first, the Chalghites and two Awagites united in faith and love, protested in the name of their wives, their children, and their absent brethren, that they would for ever profess the creed, and observe the precepts of the Koran. The second was a political association, the first vital spark of the empire of the Saracens. Seventy-three men and two women of Medina held a solemn conference with Mahomet, his kinmen, and his disciples; and pledged themselves to each other by a mutual oath of fidelity. They promised in the name of the city, that if he should be banished, they would receive him as a confederate, obey him as a leader, and defend him to the last extremity, like their wives and children. "But if you are recalled by your country," they asked with a flattering anxiety, "will you not abandon your new allies?" "All things," replied Mahomet with a smile, "are now common between us; your blood is as my blood, your ruin as my ruin. We are bound to each other by the ties of honour and interest. I am your friend, and the enemy of your foes." "But if we are killed in your service, what," exclaimed the deputies of Medina, "will be our reward?" "Paradise," replied the prophet. "Stretch forth thy hand." He stretched it forth, and

118 The Mecca was besieged by Omar, the second caliph, in the beginning of the year 11 H. Thrice was his expedition defeated, and twice recommenced after eight days, before the flight of Mahomet to Medina. On the third return of Omar, the city was delivered by Mahomet, in the month of July, A. D. 622 (Abu Bekr, Vit. Mediniæ, p. 19; Ibn. Hisham, p. 82; and Gough's edition of Usqu Dha's

119 Muhammad's Life, from his Relation to the Prophet, may be found in Abulala Abulala (d. 1092) and Paget's Annals, p. 526, 531, 534, 543, 545; the account of this treaty is referred to Al-Jahiz, and is described by Abulala and Paget. (See their works.)
120 The whole imagination of Mahomet is described by Abulala (d. 1092) and Paget (Annals, p. 524, 531, 534, 543, 545).
they reiterated the oath of allegiance and fidelity. Their treaty was ratified by the people, who unanimously embraced the profession of Islam; they rejoiced in the exile of the apostle, but they mourned for his safety, and impatiently expected his arrival. After a perilous and rapid journey along the sea-coast, he halted at Kobs, two miles from the city, and made his public entry into Medina, sixteen days after his flight from Mecca. Five hundred of the citizens advanced to meet him; he was hailed with acclamations of loyalty and devotion; Mahomet was mounted on a slow-came, an umbrella shaded his head, and a turban was unfurled before him to supply the deficiency of a standard. His bravest disciples, who had been scattered by the storm, assembled round his person; and the equal, though various, merit of the Moslems was distinguished by the names of Mohagerans and Asaara, the fugitives of Mecca, and the auxiliaries of Medina. To extirpate the seeds of jealousy, Mahomet judiciously coupled his principal followers with the rights and obligations of freemen; and when Ali found himself without a peer, the prophet tenderly declared, that he would be the companion and brother of the noble youth. The expedition was crowned with success; the holy fraternity was respected in peace and war, and the two parties lived with each other in a generous emulation of courage and fidelity. Once only the concord was slightly ruffled by an accidental quarrel; a patriot of Medina arraigned the insolence of the strangers, but the hint of their expulsion was heard with abhorrence, and his own soul most tenderly offered to lay at the apostle's feet the head of his father.

From his establishment at Medina, Mahomet assumed the exercise of the regal and sacred office; and it was impossible to appeal from a judge whose decree were inspired by the divine wisdom. A single portion of ground, the patrimony of two companions of the apostle, acquired by purchase or possession; on thatchosen site he built a house and a smooth, more venerable in its rude simplicity than the palaces and temples of the Arabian caliphs. His seat of gold, or silver, was inscribed with the apostolic title; when he prayed and preached in the weekly assembly, he leaned against the trunk of a palm-tree; and it was long before he indulged himself in the use of a chair or pulpit of rough timber. After a reign of six years, fifteen hundred Moslems, in arms and in the field, renewed their oath of allegiance; and their chief repeated the assurance of protection till the death of the last member, or the final dissolution of the party. It was in the same camp that the duty of Mecca was abolished by the attention of the faithful to the words and looks of the prophet, by the eagerness with which they collected his spittle, a hair that dropped on the ground, the refuse water of his histrations, as if they participated in some degree of the prophetic virtue. "I have seen," said he, "the Chaldees of Persia and the Cesar of Rome, but never did I behold a king among his subjects like Mahomet among his companions." The devout fervour of enthusiasm acts with more energy and truth than the cold and formal servility of courts.

In the state of nature every man has a right to defend, by force of arms, his person and his possessions; to repel, or even to prevent, the violence of his suzerain, and to extend his hostilities to a reasonable measure of satisfaction and retaliation. In the free society of the Arabs, the duties of subject and citizen imposed a feasible restraint; and Mahomet, in the exercise of a peaceful and benevolent mission, had been despised and banished by the injustice of his countrymen. The choice of an independent people had excited the fugitive of Mecca to the rank of a sovereign; and he was invested with the just prerogative of forming alliances, and of waging offensive or defensive war. The imperfection of human rights was supplied and armed by the plenitude of divine power: the prophet of Medina assassinated, in his new revelations, a fiercer and more augustus tone, which proves that his former modulation was the effect of weakness: the means of persuasion had been tried, the season of forbearance was elapsed, and he was now commanded to propagate his religion by the sword, to destroy the monuments of idolatry, and, without regarding the sanctity of days or months, to pursue the unbelieving nations of the earth. The same bloody precepts, so repeatedly inculcated in the Koran, are ascribed by the author to the Pentateuch and the Gospel. But the mild tenor of the evangelical style may explain an ambiguous text, that Jesus did not bring peace on the earth, but a sword: his patient and humble virtues should not be confounded with the insolent zeal of princes and bishops, who have disgraced the name of his disciples. In the prosecution of religious war, Mahomet might appeal with more propriety to the example of Moses, of the judges and the kings of Israel. The military laws of the Hebrews are still more rigid than those of the Arabian legislator. The Lord of Hosts marched in person before the Jews: if a city resisted their summons, the males, without distinction, were put to the sword; the seven nations of Canaan were devoted to destruction; and neither repentance, nor conversion could shield them from the inevitable doom that no creature within their precincts should be left alive. The fair option of friendship, or submission, or battle, was proposed to the enemies and multitude, as two roads equally open to the choice of God, and the prospect of his countenance. See, Aristotle (b. ii. p. 152. for the doctrine of the ancients, the sacred books, and the early Christians. In the midst of these discussions the mark of the Christian in the present age. But the idea of the resurrection is still generally understood as leading to the apostle's conjured desertion of his profane and profane pursuits, with austerities and asceticism. (Sub's Preliminary Discourse, p. 216.)
of Mahomet. If they professed the creed of Islam, they were admitted to all the temporal and spiritual benefits of his primitive disciples, and marched under the same banner to extend the religion which they had embraced. The clemency of the prophet was decided by his interest; yet he seldom trampled on a prostrate enemy; and he seems to promise, that, on the payment of a tribute, the least guilty of his unbelieving subjects might be indulged in their worship, or at least in their imperfect faith. In the first months of his reign, he practised the lessons of holy warfare, and displayed his white banner before the gates of Medina: the martial apostle fought in person at nine battles or sieges; and fifty enterprises of war were achieved in ten years by himself or his lieutenants. The Arab continued to unite the professions of a merchant and a robber; and his petty excursions for the defence or the attack of a caravan insensibly prepared his troops for the conquest of Arabia. The distribution of the spoil was regulated by a divine law: the whole was faithfully collected in one common mass, a fifth of the gold and silver, the prisoners and cattle, the moveables and immovable, was reserved by the prophet for pious and charitable uses; the remainder was shared in equal parts among the soldiers who had obtained the victory or guarded the camp; the rewards of the slain devolved on their widows and orphans; and the plunder of the enemy was encouraged by the allotment of a double share to the horsemen and to the men from all sides, the roving Arabs were allowed to the standard of religion and plunder; the apostle sanctified the licentiousness of the female captives as their wives or concubines; and the enjoyment of wealth and beauty was a feeble type of the joys of paradise prepared for the valiant martyrs of the faith.

The sword," says Mahomet, "is the key of heaven and of hell; a drop of blood shed in the cause of God, a night spent in arms, is of more weight than two months of fasting or prayer; whosoever falls in battle, his sins are forgiven; at the day of judgment his wounds shall be rebuked by the wings of angels and chariots.

The intrepid souls of the Arabs were fired with enthusiasm: the picture of the invisible world was strongly painted on their imagination; and the death which they had always despaired became an object of hope and desire. The Koran inculcates, in the most absolute sense, the tenets of fate and predestination, which would establish guilds both industry and virtue, if the actions of man were governed by his speculative belief. Yet their influence in every age has exalted the courage of the Saracens and Turks. The first companions of Mahomet advanced to battle with a fearless confidence; there is no danger where there is no chance; they were ordained to perish in their beds; or they were safe and invulnerable amidst the stacks of the enemy, 186.

Perhaps the Korish would have been content with the flight of Mahomet, had they not been provoked, and alarmed by the vengeance of an army, who could intercept their Syrian trade as it passed and repassed through the territory of Medina. Abu Sophian himself, with only thirty or forty followers, conducted a wealthy caravan of a thousand camels; the fortune or dexterity of his march escaped the vigilance of Mahomet; but the chief of the Korish was informed that the holy robbers were placed in ambush to wait his return. He despatched a messenger to his brethren of Mecca, and they were seized, by the fear of losing their merchandise and their lives. The Korish, unless they hastened to his relief with the military force of the city. The sacred bond of Mahomet was formed of three hundred and thirteen Mudeens, of whom seventy-seven were fugitives, and the rest auxiliaries; they mounted by turns a train of seventy camels (the camels of Yathrib were formidable in war); but such was the poverty of his first disciples, that only two could appear on horseback in the field. 192 In the fertile and famous vall of Beder, 190 three stations from Medinah, he was informed by his scouts of the caravan that approached on one side; of the Korish, one hundred horse, eight hundred and fifty foot, who advanced on the other. After a short debate, he sacrificed the prospect of wealth to the pursuit of glory and revenge; and a slight intimation was formed to cover his troops, and a stream of fresh water, that gushed through the valley. "O God," he exclaimed as the numbers of the Korish descended on the hills, "O God, if these are destroyed, by whom wilt thou be worshipped on the earth?—Courage, my children, close your ranks; discharge your arrows, and be your own." At these words he placed himself with Abubeker, on a throne or pulpit, and instantly demanned the successor of Gabriel and three thousand angels. His eye was fixed on the field of battle; the Korish fainting and were pressed: in that decisive moment the prophet started from his throne, mounted his horse, and cast a handful of

181 Arabic, in V. Mihmam, p. 136. The private council of the Korish was held in the privacy of a house, thrice or twice, an hour or two, seven or eight, and two or three men. The council was kept secret, and was frequently a subject of debate. (Hagm, tom. ii. p. 243. 244.) The Korish, with the cunning of their prophet, knew how to make use of the voice of the majority. (Mam. tom. ii. p. 24. 25.) They were the first in the world to employ a declaratory voice in the determination of questions. (Her. tom. ii. p. 300.)

saud into the air; "Let their faces be covered with confusion." Both armies heard the thunder of his voice: their fancy beheld the angelic warriors; the Koreish trembled and fled: seventy of the bravest were slain; and seventy captives adorned the first victory of the faithful. The dead bodies of the Koreish were despoiled and insulted: two of the most obnoxious prisoners were punished with death; and the ransom of the others, four thousand drams of silver, compensated in some degree the escape of the caravan. But it was in vain that the camels of Abu Sophian explored a new road through the desert and along the Euphrates: they were overtaken by the diligence of the Musulmans; and wealthy must have been the price, if twenty thousand drams could be set apart for the fifth of the apostle. The remembrance of the public and private loss stimulated Abu Sophian to collect a body of three thousand men, seven hundred of whom were armed with carriages, and two hundred mounted on horseback; three thousand camels attended his march; and his wife Ummi, with fifteen matrons of Mecca, incessantly sounded their timbrels to animate the troops, and to magnify the greatness of Hobal, the most popular deity of the Caabiya. The standard of God and Mahomet was upheld by nine hundred and fifty believers: the disproportion of numbers was not more alarming than in the field of Beder; and their presumption of victory prevailed against the divine and human sense of the apostles. The second battle was fought on Mount Ohud, six miles to the north of Medina; the Koreish advanced in the form of a crescent: and the right wing of cavalry was led by Calid, the fiercest and most successful of the Arabian warriors. The troops of Mahomet were skilfully posted on the declivity of the hill; and their rear was guarded by a detachment of fifty archers. The fugitives of their charge impelled and broke the centre of the idolaters; but in the pursuit they lost the advantage of their ground: the archers deserted their station: the Musulmans were tempted by the spoil, disobeyed their general, and disordered their ranks. The intrepid Calid, wheeling his cavalry on their flank and rear, exclaimed, with a loud voice, that Mahomet was slain. He was indeed wounded in the face with a javelin: two of his teeth were shattered with a stone; yet, in the midst of tumult and dismay, he reproached the infidels with the murder of a prophet; and blessed the friendly hand that stanch'd his blood, and conveyed him to a place of safety. Seventy martyrs died for the sins of the people: they fell, said the apostle, in pairs, each brother embracing his lifeless companion; their bodies were mangled by the inhuman females of Mecca; and the wife of Abu Sophian tasted the entrails of Hamza, the uncle of Mahomet. They might applaud their superstition and satiate their fury; but the Musulmans soon rallied in the field, and the Koreish wanted strength or courage to undertake the siege of Medina. It was attacked the ensuing year by an army of ten thousand enemies; and this third expedition is variously named from the nation, which marched under the banner of Abu Sophian, from the ditch which was drawn before the city, and a camp of three thousand Musulmans. The prudence of Mahomet deceived a general engagement; the valour of Ali was signalised in single combat; and the war was protracted twenty days, till the final separation of the confederates. A tempest of wind, rain, and hail, overthrown their tents: their private quarrels were fomented by an insidious adversary; and the Koreish, deserted by their allies, no longer hoped to subvert the throne, or to check the conquests, of their invincible exile.

The choice of Jerusalem for the first keels of prayer discovers the early propinquity of Mahomet in the favour of the Jews; and happy would it have been for their temporal interest, had they recognised, in the Arabian prophet, the hope of Israel and the promised Messiah. Their obstinacy converted his friendship into implacable hatred, with which he pursued that unfortunate people to the last moment of his life; and in the double character of an apostle and a conqueror, his persecution was extended to both worlds. The Kaisunka dwelt at Medina under the protection of the city: he seized the occasion of an accidental tumult, and summoned them to embrace his religion, or contend with him in battle. "Alas!" replied the trembling Jews, "we are ignorant of the use of arms, but we preserve in the faith and worship of our fathers: why will thou reduce us to the necessity of a just defence?" The unequal conflicts were terminated in fifteen days; and it was with extreme reluctance that Mahomet yielded to the importunity of his allies, and consented to spare the lives of the captives. But their riches were confiscated, their arms became more effectual in the hands of the Musulmans; and a wretched colony of seven hundred exiles was driven with their wives and children to implore a refuge on the confines of Syria. The Nadhurites were more guilty, since they conspired in a friendly interview to assassinate the prophet. He besieged their castle three miles from Medina, but their resolute defence obtained an honourable capitulation; and the garrison, sounding their trumpets and beating their drums, was permitted to depart with the honours of war. The Jews had excited and joined the war of the Koreish: no sooner had the nations retired from the ditch, than Mahomet, without laying aside..."
his armour, marched on the same day to extirpate the hostile race of the children of Kedarlia. After a resistance of twenty-five days, they surrendered at discretion. They trusted to the intercession of their old allies, of Medina: they could not be ignorant that fanaticism obliterates the feelings of humanity. A venerable elder, to whose judgment they appealed, pronounced the sentence of their death: seven hundred Jews were dragged in chains to the market-place of the city; they descended alive into the grave prepared for their execution and burial; and the apostle behold, with an inflexible eye the slaughter of his helpless enemies. Their sheep and camels were inherited by the Mussulmans: three hundred camels, five hundred pikes, a thousand lances, composed the most useful portion of the spoil. Six days' journey to the north-east of Medina, the ancient and wealthy town of Chaibar was the seat of the Jewish power in Arabia; the territory, a fertile spot in the desert, was covered with plantations and castle, and protected by seven castles, some of which were esteemed of impregnable strength. The forces of Mahomet consisted of two hundred horse and fourteen hundred foot; in the succession of eight regular and painful stances they were exposed to danger, and fatigue, and hunger; and the most undaunted chiefs despairs of the event. The apostle revived their faith and courage by the example of锡, on whom he bestowed the surname of the Lion of God; perhaps we may believe that an Hebrew chieftain of gigantic stature was cloven to the chest by his irresistible cimeter; but we cannot praise the modesty of romance, which represents him as tearing from his hinges the gate of a fortress, and wielding the ponderous buckler in his left hand. After the reduction of the castles, the town of Chaibar submitted to the yoke. The chief of the tribe was tortured, in the presence of Mahomet, for the confession of his hidden treasure: the industry of the shepherds and husbandmen was rewarded with a precious solicitation: they were permitted, so long as it should please the conqueror, to improve their patrimony, in equal shares, for his emolument and their own. Under the reign of Omar, the Jews of Chaibar were transplanted to Syria; and the caliph alleged the injunction of his dying master, that one and the true religion should be professed in his native land of Arabia.

Five times each day the eyes of Mahomet were turned towards Mecca, and he was urged by the most sacred and powerful motives to revisit, as a conqueror, the city and the temple from whence he had been driven as an exile. The Caaba was present to his waking and sleeping fancy; an idle dream was translated into vision and prophecy; he unfurled the holy hammer; and a rash promise of success too hastily dropped from the lips of the apostle. His march from Medina to Mecca displayed the peaceful and solemn pomp of a pilgrimage: seventy camels, chosen and bedecked for sacrifice, preceded the van; the sacred territory was respected; and the captives were dismissed without ransom to proclaim his clemency and devotion. But no sooner did Mahomet descend into the plain, within a day's journey of the city, than he exclaimed, "They have clothed themselves with the skins of tigers;" the numbers and resolution of the Koeish opposed his progress; and the roaring Arno of the desert might desert or betray a leader whom they had followed for the hopes of spoil. The intrepid fanatic sunk into a cool and cautious politician: he warred in the treaty his title of apostle of God, concluded with the Koeish and their allies a truce of ten years, engaged to restore the fugitives of Mecca who should embrace his religion, and stipulated only, for the ensuing year, the humble privilege of entering the city as a friend, and of remaining three days to accomplish the rites of the pilgrimage. A cloud of shame and sorrow hung on the retreat of the Mussulmans, and their disappointment might justly accuse the failure of a prophet who had so often appealed to the evidence of success. The faith and hope of the pilgrims were rekindled by the prospect of Mecca; their swords were sheathed; seven times in the footsteps of the apostle they encompassed the Caaba: the Koeish had retired to the hills; and Mahomet, after the customary sacrifice, evacuated the city on the fourth day. The people was edified by his devotion; the hostile chiefs were swelled, or divided, or seduced; and both Caled and Amrou, the future conquerors of Syria and Egypt, most seasonably deserted the sinking cause of idolatry. The power of Mahomet was increased by the submission of the Arabian tribes; ten thousand soldiers were assembled for the conquest of Mecca; and the idolaters, the weaker party, were easily convinced of violating the truce. Enthusiasm and discipline impelled the march, and preserved the secret, till the blare of ten thousand horns proclaimed to the astonished Koeish the design, the approach, and the irresistible force of the enemy. The magnific Alia Sophian presented the keys of the city, admired the variety of arms and engines that passed before him in review; observed that the son of Abdallah had acquired a mighty kingdom, and confided, under the cimeter of the Caaba, that he was the apostle of the true God. The return of Marus and Sylla was stained with the blood of the Romans; the revenge of Mahomet was stimulated by religious zeal, and his injured followers were eager to execute or to prevent the order of a massacre. Instead of indulging their passions and his own, the victorious exile forgave the guilt, and united the factions,
of Mecca. His troops, in three divisions, marched into the city: eight and twenty of the inhabitants were slain by the sword of Caled; eleven men and six women were proscribed by the sentence of Mahomet; but he blamed the cruelty of his lieutenant; and several of the most obnoxious victims were indebted for their lives to his clemency or contempt. The chiefs of the Korkish were prostrate at his feet: "What mercy can you expect from the man whom you have wronged?" "We consider in the generality of our kinsmen," "And you shall not confide in vaunt: begone! you are safe, you are free." The people of Mecca deserved their pardon by the profession of Islam; and after an exile of seven years, the fugitive missionary was ennobled as the prince and prophet of his native country. But the three hundred and sixty idols of the Caba were ignominiously broken: the house of God was purified and reformed: as an example to future times, the apostle again fulfilled the duties of a pilgrim; and a perpetual law was enacted that no unbeliever should dare to set his foot on the territory of the holy city.

The conquest of Mecca determined the faith and obedience of the Arabian tribes; for the vicissitudes of fortune, had obeyed, or disregarded, the eloquence of the prophet. Indifference was the root of opinions still marks the character of the Bedouins; and they might succeed, as loosely as they hold, the doctrine of the Koran. Yet an abstinence still adhered to the religion and liberty of their ancestors, and the war of Hormain derived a proper appellation from the idols, whom Mahomet had vowed to destroy, and whom the confederates of Tayef had sworn to defend. Four thousand Pagans advanced with acrimony and speed to surprise the conqueror: they pitted and despised the supine negligence of the Korish, but they depended on the wishes, and perhaps the aid, of a people who had so lately renounced their gods, and bowed beneath the yoke of their enemy. The banners of Mecca and Meccas were displayed by the prophet; a crowd of Bedouins increased the strength of the army, and twelve thousand Muslims entertained a rush and sinful presumption of their invincible strength. They descended without precaution into the valley of Hormain: the heights had been occupied by the archers and slingers of the confederates; their numbers were oppressed, their discipline was confounded, their courage was appalled, and the Korish smiled at their impending destruction. The prophet, on his white mule, was encompassed by the enemies; he attempted to rush against their spears in search of a glorious death; but his faithful companions interposed: their weapons and their breasts; three of these fell dead at his feet: "O my brethren," he repeatedly cried with sorrow and indignation, "I am the son of Aballah, I am the apostle of truth! O man, stand fast in the faith! O God, send down thy succour." His uncle Abbas, who, like the heroes of Homer, excelled in the loudness of his voice, made the valley resound with the recital of the gifts and promises of God; the flying Moors returned from all sides to the holy standard; and Mahomet observed with pleasure, that the nations were again rekindled: his conduct and example restored the battle, and he animated his victorious troops to inflict a merciless revenge on the authors of their shame. From the field of Hormain, he marched without delay to the siege of Tayef, sixty miles to the south-east of Mecca, a fortress of strength, whose fertile lands produce the fruits of Syria in the midst of the Arabian desert.

A friendly tribe, instructed (I know not how) in the art of sieges, supplied him with a train of battering rams and military engines, with a body of five hundred archers. But it was in vain that he suffered freedom to the slaves of Tayef; that he violated his own laws by the extirpation of the fruit-trees; that the ground was opened by the miners; that the breach was hastened by the troops. After a siege of twenty days, the prophet sounded a retreat, but he retreated with a song of devout triumph, and affected to pray for the repentance and safety of the unbelieving city. The spoil of this fortunate expedition amounted to six thousand captives, twenty-four thousand camels, forty thousand sheep, and four thousand ounces of silver: a tribe who had fought at Hormain redeemed their prisoners by the sacrifice of their idols; but Mahomet compeered the loss, by resigning to the soldiers his fifth of the plunder, and wished, for their sake, that he possessed many hound of cattle as there were trees in the province of Tlemam. Instead of chastising the disaffection of the Korish, he endeavoured to cut out their tongues (his own expression), and to secure their attachment, by a superior measure of liberality: Abu Sophian alone was presented with three hundred camels and twenty ounces of silver; and Mecca was sincerely converted to the profitable religion of the Koran.

The fugitives and captives complained, that they who had borne the burden were neglected in the season of victory. "Alas!" replied their artful leader, "suffer me to conciliate these recent enemies, these doubtful proselytes, by the gift of some perishable goods: To your guard I intrust my life and fortunes. You are the companions of my exile, of my kingdom, of my paradise." He was followed by the deputies of Tayef, who 'droaned the repetition of a siege. "Grant us, O apostle of God! a truce of three years, with the toleration of our ancient worship." Not a word without import into the ears of Mecca, and some of Mecca, and even the kinsmen of the prophet disseminated the story. When the idol-worshippers heard this, they were ready to give up their city. The siege of Tayef, however, lasted four years. The people of Mecca even built a wall around their city. The siege of Tayef was ended by the death of the chief of Tayef, and the capture of the city.
 "in the midst, not an hour."  
"Excuse us at last 
"from the obligation of prayer."  
"Without  
"prayer religion is of no avail."

They submitted in silence: their temples were demolished, and the same centurion of destruction was executed on all the idols of Arabia. His lieutenants, on the shores of the Red Sea, the Ocean, and the Gulf of Persia, were satisfied by the acclamations of a faithful people; and the ambassadors who knelt before the throne of Medina, were so numerous (says the Arabian proverb) as the dates that fall from the maturity of a palm-tree. The nation submitted to the God and the Prophet of Mahomet; the opprobrious name of tribute was abolished; the spontaneous or voluntary oblations of alms and tithe were applied to the service of religion: and one hundred and fourteen thousand Moslems accompanied the last pilgrimage of the apostle.  

When Heraclius returned in triumph from the Persian war, he entertained, at Exeüs, one of the ambassadors of Mahomet, who invited the princes and nations of the earth to the profession of Islam. On this occasion the zeal of the Arabsians has supposed the secret conversion of the Christian emperor; the vanity of the Greeks has figured a personal visit of the princes of Medina, who accepted from the royal bounty a rich domain, and a secure retreat, in the province of Syria.  

But the friendship of Heraclius and Mahomet was of short continuance; the new religion had inflamed rather than assuaged the rapacious spirit of the Saracens; and the murder of an envoy afforded a decent pretence for invading, with three thousand soldiers, the territory of Palestine, that extends to the eastward of the Jordan. The holy nation was intrusted to Zélid; and such was the discipline or enthusiasm of the rising sect, that the infidels chiefs served without resistance under the shade of the prophet. On the event of his decease, Jaafar and Abdallah were successively substituted to the command; and if the three should perish in the war, the troops were authorized to elect their general. The three leaders were slain in the battle of Muta, the first military action which tried the valour of the Moslems against a foreign enemy. Zélid fell, like a soldier, in the foremost ranks; the death of Jaafar was heroic and memorable; he lost his right-hand; he shifted the standard to his left; the left was severed from his body; he endured the standard with his bleeding stumps, till he was transfixed to the ground with fifty horrible wounds. "Advance," cried Abdallah, who stepped into the vacant place, advance with confidence: either victory or "paradise is our own." The lance of a Roman decided the alternative; but the falling standard was rescued by Cædil, the pious youth of Mecca; nine swords were broken in his hand; and his valour withstood and repelled the superior numbers of the Christians. In the nocturnal council of the camp he was chosen to command; his skillful evolutions of the ensuing day secured either the victory or the retreat of the Saracens; and Cædil is renowned among his brethren and his enemies by the glorious appellation of the Sword of God. In the pulpit, Mahomet described, with prophetic force, the crowns of the blessed martyrs; but in private he betrayed the feelings of human nature: he was surprised as he slept over the daughter of Zélid: "What do I see?" said the astonished votary. "You see," replied the apostle, "a friend who is deploiring the loss of his most faithful friend." After the conquest of Mecca, the sovereign of Arabia affected to prevent the hostile preparations of Heraclius; and solemnly proclaimed war against the Romans, without attempting to disguise the hardships and dangers of the enterprise. The Moslems were discouraged; they alleged the want of money, or horses, or provisions; the season of harvest, and the intolerable heat of the summer. "Hail is much better," said the indignant prophet. He disdained to compel their service; but on his return he admonished the most guilty, by an excommunication of fifty days. Their desertion enhanced the merit of Abu Bakr, Othman, and the faithful companions who devoted their lives and fortunes; and Mahomet displayed his banners at the head of ten thousand horse and twenty thousand foot. Painful indeed was the distress of the maraud: haste and thirst were aggravated by the scorching and pestilent winds of the desert; ten men rode by turns on the same camel; and they were reduced to the shameful necessity of drinking the water from the belly of that useful animal. In the mid-day, ten days' journey from Medina and Damasus, they reposed near the grove and fountain of Tabur. Beyond that place Mahomet declined the prosecution of the war: he declared, himself satisfied with the peaceful intentions, he was more probably dreading by the martial array, of the emperor of the East. But the active and intrepid Cædil spread around the terror of his name; and the prophet received the submission of the tribes and cities, from the Ephrathites to Allah, at the head of the Red Sea. To his Christian subjects, Mahomet readily granted the security of their persons, the freedom of their trade, the property of their goods, and the toleration of their worship.  

144 The last conversion and allegiance of Mahomet are mentioned by the Koran (xxviii. 14-25); by the historian of the Prophet, Al-Tabari, P. ii. p. 210, 211, 212, 214; by the historian of the Prophet, Al-Khalil, P. ii. p. 213-216; and by the historian of the Prophet, Al-Dahr, P. ii. p. 217-220.  
145 The expedition of Tiberias is mentioned by the historian, Al-Khalil, P. ii. p. 213-217, 217-220; and the historian, Al-Dahr, P. ii. p. 217-220. But the history of this subject is very obscure.  
146 The historian of the Prophet, Al-Dahr, P. ii. p. 217-220.  
147 The expedition of Tabur, is mentioned by the historian, Al-Khalil, P. ii. p. 217-220; and the historian, Al-Dahr, P. ii. p. 217-220. But we have no advantage of appraising the original evidence of the Romans, (P. i. p. 111, 112), with whome this evential event.
The weakness of their Arabian brethren had restrained them from oppressing his ambition; the disciples of Jesus were exiled to the enemy of the Jews; and it was the interest of a conqueror to propose a safe capitulation to the most powerful religion of the earth.

Till the age of sixty-three years, the strength of Mahomet was equal to the temporal and spiritual figues of his mission. His epileptic fit, an absurd calumny of the Greeks, would be an object of pity rather than derision; 119 but he seriously believed that he was poisoned at Chalib by the revenge of a Jewish female. 120 During four years, the health of the prophet declined; his infirmities increased; but his mental disease was a fever of fourteen days, which deprived him by intervals of the use of reason. As soon as he was conscious of his danger, he edified his brethren by the humility of his virtue or penitence. 121 If there be any 4th man, said the apostle from the pulpit, whom I have unjustly scourged, I submit my own back to the lash of retaliation. Have I asserted the reputation of a Musulman? Let him proclaim his faults in the face of the congregation. Has any one been despoiled of his goods? the little that I possess shall compensate the principal and the interest of the debt. 45 "Yes," replied a voice from the crowd, I am entitled to three drams of silver. 126 Mahomet heard the complaint, satisfied the demand, and thanked his creditor for accressing him in this world rather than at the day of judgment. He beheld with temperate firmness the approach of death; enfranchised his slaves (seventeen men, as they are named, and eleven women); minutely directed the order of his funeral, and moderated the lamentations of his weeping friends, on whom he bestowed the benediction of peace. Till the third day before his death, he regularly performed the function of public prayer; the choice of Abubeker to supply his place, appeared to mark that ancient and faithful friend as his successor in the sacerdotal and regal office; but he prudently declined the risk and envy of a more explicit nomination. At a moment when his faculties were visibly impaired, he called for pen and ink to write, or, more properly, to dictate, a divine book, the sum and accomplishment of all his revelations; a dispute arose in the chamber, whether he should be allowed to supersede the authority of the Koran; and the prophet was forced to reprove the indiscreet reverence of his disciples. If the slightest credit may be afforded to the traditions of his wives and companions, he maintained, in the bosom of his family, and to the last moments of his life, the dignity of an apostle, and the faith of an enthusiast; described the visits of Gabriel, who had an everlasting farewell to the earth, and expressed his lively confidence, not only of the mercy, but of the favour of the Supreme Being. In a familiar discourse he had mentioned his special prerogative, that the angel of death was not allowed to take his soul till he had respectfully asked the permission of the prophet. The request was granted; and Mahomet immediately fell into the agony of his dissolution: his head was reclined on the lap of Ayesha, the best beloved of all his wives; he fainted with the violence of pain; recovering his spirits, he raised his eyes towards the roof of the house, and, with a steady look, though a faltering voice, uttered the last broken, though articulate, words: "O God!..." pardon my sins. Yes. I come. 127...among my fellow-citizens on high..." and then piously expired on a carpet spread upon the floor. An expedition for the conquest of Syria was stopped by this mournful event: the army halted at the gates of Medina: the chiefs were assembled round their dying master. The city, more especially the house of the prophet, was a scene of a zumorous sorrow or silent despair: Sanatian alone could suggest a ray of hope and consolation. "How can he be dead, our witness, our intercessor, our mediator, with God? By God he is not dead; like Moses and Jesus he is wrapped in a holy trance, and speedily will he return to his faithful people." The evidence of sense was disregarded; and Omar, unceasing his oration, threatened to strike off the heads of the infidels, who should dare to affirm that the prophet was no more. The tumult was appeased by the weight and moderation of Abubeker. "Is it Mahomet," said he to Omar and the multitude, "or the God of Mahomet, whom you worship? The God of Mahomet liveth for ever, but the apostle was a mortal like ourselves, and according to his own prediction, he has experienced the common fate of mortality." He was piously interred by the hands of his nearest kinsman, on the same spot on which he expired. 113 128 Medina has been sanctified by the death and burial of Mahomet; and the innumerable pilgrims of Mecca often turn aside from the way to bow, in voluntary devotion, 129 before the simple tomb of the prophet. 130

119 The apostle, or falling sickness, of Mahomet, is instanced by the great masters of the Koran (Haid, C, p. 71, 72); calumny is elsewhere instanced (ibid., p. 70, 71, 72). The stigmata (the spots on the forehead of two chapters of the Koran, (13, 14), are here) was ascribed to such an interference of the devil, or the same comparative observation is made of the Koran, (n. 6), but rarely. The term no more than the most profane vulgar, in the illumination of a writer of the Arabians (Abd Allah, n. 12, 18, in theothes of Medinah, 130, in theothes of Jerusalem, 130, and Rome, 130).

120 The stigmata (more specious than it was offered as a ten of his personal knowledge) is further confirmed by the testimony of other Arabian annals, (n. 13). The stigmata is also mentioned in the history of the Koran, (13, 14), and in the history of the Koran, (13, 14), as well.

121 The stigmata (more specious than it was offered as a ten of his personal knowledge) is further confirmed by the testimony of other Arabian annals, (n. 13). The stigmata is also mentioned in the history of the Koran, (13, 14), and in the history of the Koran, (13, 14), as well.

122 The stigmata (more specious than it was offered as a ten of his personal knowledge) is further confirmed by the testimony of other Arabian annals, (n. 13). The stigmata is also mentioned in the history of the Koran, (13, 14), and in the history of the Koran, (13, 14), as well.

123 The stigmata (more specious than it was offered as a ten of his personal knowledge) is further confirmed by the testimony of other Arabian annals, (n. 13). The stigmata is also mentioned in the history of the Koran, (13, 14), and in the history of the Koran, (13, 14), as well.

124 The stigmata (more specious than it was offered as a ten of his personal knowledge) is further confirmed by the testimony of other Arabian annals, (n. 13). The stigmata is also mentioned in the history of the Koran, (13, 14), and in the history of the Koran, (13, 14), as well.
At the conclusion of the life of Mahomet, it may perhaps be expected, that I should balance his faults and virtues, that I should decide whether the title of enthusiast or impostor more properly belongs to that extraordinary man. Had I been intimately conversant with the son of Abdullah, the task would still be difficult, and the success uncertain; at the distance of twelve centuries, I hardly contemplate his shade through a cloud of religious inference; and could I truly delineate the portrait of an hour, the feeling resemblance would not equally apply to the ordinary of Mount Hor, to the preacher of Mecca, and to the conquering of Arabia. The author of a mighty revolution appears to have been endowed with a pious and contemplative disposition; as soon as marriage had raised him above the pressure of want, he avoided the paths of ambition and avarice; and till the age of forty, he lived with innocence, and would have died without a name. The unity of God is an idea most congenial to nature and reason; and a slight conversation with the Jews and Christians would teach him to despise and detest the idolatry of Mecca. It was the duty of a man and a citizen to impart the doctrine of salvation, to revive his country from the dominion of sin and error. The energy of a mind incessantly bent on the same object, would convert a general obligation into a particular call; the warm suggestions of the understanding or the fancy, would be felt as the inspirations of heaven; the labour of thought would expire in rapture and vision; and the inward sensation, the invisible monitor, would be described with the form and attributes of an angel of God. From enthusiasm in imposture, the step is perils and slippery: the demon of Socrates affords a memorable instance, how a wise man may deceive himself, how a good man may deceive others, how the conscience may slumber in a mixed and middle state between self-illusion and voluntary fraud. Charity may believe that the original motives of Mahomet were those of pure and genuine benevolence; but a human missionary is incapable of changing the obtuse unbelievers who reject his claims, despise his arguments, and persecute his life; he might forgive his personal adversaries, he may lawfully hate the enemies of God; the stern passions of pride and revenge were kindled in the bosom of Mahomet, and he sighted, like the prophet of Niniveh, for the destruction of the rebels whom he had condemned. The injustice of Mecca, and the choice of Medina, transformed the citizen into a prince, the humble preacher into the leader of armies; but his sword was consecrated by the example of the saints; and the same God who afflicts a sinful world with pestilence and earthquakes, might inspire for their conversion or chastisement the valour of his servants. To this exercise of political government, he was compelled to submit the stern rigours of fanaticism, to comply in some measure with the prejudices and passions of his followers, and to employ even the forces of mankind as the instruments of their salvation. The use of fraud and perfidy, of cruelty and injustice, were often subservient to the propagation of the faith; and Mahomet commanded or approved the assassination of the Jews and idolaters who had escaped from the field of battle. By the repetition of such acts, the character of Mahomet must have been gradually stained; and the influence of such pernicious habits would be poorly compensated by the practice of the personal and social virtues which are necessary to maintain the reputation of a prophet among his sectaries and friends. Of his last years, ambition was the ruling passion; and a politician will suspect, that hesecretly smiled (the victorious impostor!) at the enthusiasm of his youth and the credulity of his proles. A philosopher will observe, that their credulity and his success would tend more strongly to fortify the assurance of his divine mission, that his interest and religion were inseparably connected, and that his conscience would be soothed by the persuasion, that he alone was absolved by the Deity from the obligation of positive and moral laws. If he retained any vestige of his native innocence, the sins of Mahomet may be allowed as an evidence of his sincerity. In the support of truth, the arts of fraud and fiction may be deemed less criminal; and he would have started at the falsehood of the means, had he not been satisfied of the importance and justice of the end. Even in a conqueror or a priest, I can surprise a word or action of unaffected humanity; and the decree of Mahomet, that, in the sale of captives, the mothers should never be separated from their children, may suspend, or moderate, the censure of the historian. The good name of Mahomet despised the pomp of royalty: the apostle of God submitted to the monastic offices of the family: he kindled the fire, swept the floor, milked the asses, and mended with his own hands his shoes and his woollen garment. Disclaiming the penance and mort of an hermit, he observed, without effort or vanity, the subterranean diet of an Arab and a soldier. On solemn occasions he feasted his companions and the common people in his hovel, invited any man to his table; and it has been calculated, that he distributed among the poor 100,000 fadals of corn a year. He was not less a man of the world, and felt the need of the pleasures of the flesh, of tranquillity, of study; and he was willing to give to the world what was due to God. He was not less a man of the world, and felt the need of the pleasures of the flesh, of tranquillity, of study; and he was willing to give to the world what was due to God. 


144 The Christians, thinking enough, saw enough to Mahomet a savior, a second Christ, and a deliverer. In the animated actio.
with rustic and hospitable plenty; but in his domestic life, many weeks would elapse without a fire being kindled on the hearth of the prophet. The interdiction of wine was confirmed by his example; his hunger was appeased with a sparing allowance of barley-bread; he delighted in the taste of milk and honey; but his ordinary food consisted of dates and water. Perfumes and women were the two sensual enjoyments which his nature required, and his religion did not forbid: and Mahomet affirmed, that the fervour of his devotion was increased by these innocent pleasures. The heat of the climate inflames the blood of the Arabs; and their libidinous complexion has been noticed by the writers of antiquity. 129 Their incontinence was regulated by the civil and religious laws of the Koran: their incestuous alliances were blazoned; the boundless licence of polygamy was reduced to four legitimate wives or concubines; their rights, both of bed and of dowry, were equitably determined; the freedom of divorce was discouraged; adultery was condemned as a capital offence; and terrors, in either sex, was punished with an hundred stripes. 130 Such were the calm and rational precepts of the legislator: but in his private conduct, Mahomet indulged the appetites of a man, and abused the claims of a prophet. A special revelation dispensed him from the laws which he had imposed on his nation: the female sex, without reserve, was abandoned to his desires; and this singular prerogative excited the envy, rather than the scandal, the veneration, rather than the envy, of the devout Musulmans. If we recollect the seven hundred wives and three hundred concubines of the wise Solomon, we shall applaud the modesty of the Arabian, who espoused no more than seventeen or fifteen wives: seven are enumerated who occupied at Medina their separate apartments round the house of the apostle, and enjoyed in their turns the favour of his conjugal society. What is singular enough, they were all widows, excepting only Ayeshah, the daughter of Abubeker. She was doubtless a virgin, since Mahomet consummated his nuptials (such is the premature ripeness of the climate) when she was only nine years of age. The youth, the beauty, the spirit of Ayeshah, gave her a superior ascendant; she was beloved and trusted by the prophet; and, after his death, the daughter of Abubeker was long revered as the mother of the faithful. Her behaviour had been ambiguous and indiscreet: in a nocturnal march she was accidentally left behind; and in the morning Ayeshah returned to the camp with a man. The temper of Mahomet was inclined to jealousy; but a divine revelation assured him of her innocence: he clasified her armour, and published a law of domestic peace, that no woman should be condemned unless four male witnesses had seen her in the act of adultery. 131 In his advances with Zeyneb, the wife of Zeid, and with Mary, an Egyptian captive, the amorous prophet forgot the interest of his reputation. At the house of Zeid, his freedman and adopted son, he beheld, in a loose undress, the beauty of Zeyneb, and burst forth in an ejaculation of devotion and desire. The servile, or grateful, freedman understood the hint, and yielded without hesitation to the love of his benefactor. But as the filial relation had excited some doubt and scandal, the angel Gabriel descended from heaven to ratify the deed, to annul the adoption, and gently to reprove the apostle for distorting the indulgence of his God. One of his wives, Hafsa, the daughter of Omar, surprised him on his own bed, in the embrace of his Egyptian captive: she promised secrecy and forgiveness: he swore that he would renounce the possession of Mary. Both parties forgot their engagements; and Gabriel again descended with a chapter of the Koran, to absolve him from his oath, and to exhort him freely to enjoy his captives and concubines, without listening to the clamours of his wives. In a solitary retreat of thirty days, he fastened, alone with Mary, to fulfil the commands of the angel. When his love and revenge were excited, he summoned to his presence his eleven wives, reproached them their disobedience and indiscretion, and threatened them with a sentence of divorce, both in this world and in the next; a dreadful sentence, since those who had ascended the bed of the prophet were for ever excluded from the hope of a second marriage. Perhaps the incontinence of Mahomet may be palliated by the tradition of his natural or preternatural gifts; 132 he united the main virtues of thirty of the children of Adam; and the apostle might rival the thirty with labour 133 of the Grecian Hercules. 134 More serious and decent excuses may be drawn from his fidelity to Caiph. During the twenty-four years of their marriage, her youthful husband abstained from the right of polygamy, and the pride or tenderness of the venerable matron was never insulted by the society of a rival. After her death, he placed her in the rank of the four perfect women, with the sister of Moses, the mother of Jesus, and Fatima, the best beloved of his daughters. Was "she not old?" said Ayeshah, with the insouciance of a blooming beauty; "has not God given you "a better in her place?" "No, by God," said Mahomet, with an effusion of honest gratitude, "there never can be a better! She believed in "me, when none despised me; she relieved my

129 See Mr. Head's translation of the Koran, p. 162. 130 See Mr. Head's translation of the Koran, p. 175. 131 See Mr. Head's translation of the Koran, p. 162. 132 See Mr. Head's translation of the Koran, p. 162. 133 See Mr. Head's translation of the Koran, p. 162. 134 See Mr. Head's translation of the Koran, p. 162.
to secure his interest by a solemn declaration of his right, which would have silenced all competition, and sealed his succession by the decree of heaven. But the unsuspecting hero, satisfied in himself: the jealousy of empire, and perhaps the fear of opposition, might suspend the resolutions of Mahomet; and the bed of sickness was besieged by the artful Ayesa, the daughter of Abubecker, and the enemy of Ali.

The silence and death of the pro-

phet restored the liberty of the people;

and his companions convened an assembly to deliberate on the choice of his successor. The hereditary claim and lofty spirit of Ali were offensive to an aristocracy of elders, desirous of restoring the sceptre by a free and frequent election: the Korish could never be reconciled to the proud pre-eminence of the line of Hashem; the ancient discord of the tribes was rekindled: the fugitives of Mecca and the auxiliaries of Medina asserted their respective merits; and the rash proposal of choosing two independent caliphs would have crushed in their infancy the religion and empire of the Saracen. The tumult was appeased by the disinterested resolution of Omar, who, suddenly renouncing his own pretensions, stretched forth his hand, and declared himself the first subject of the mild and venerable Abubecker. The urgency of the moment, and the acquiescence of the people, might excuse this illegal and precipitate measure; but Omar himself confessed from the pulpit, that if any Musulman should thereafter presume to anticipate the suffrages of his brethren, both the sceptor and the elector would be worthy of death. After the simple inauguration of Abubecker, he was obeyed in Mecca, Medina, and the provinces of Arabia; the Hashemites alone declined the oath of fidelity; and their chief, in his own house, maintained, above six years, a sullen and independent reserve; without listening to the blandishments of Omar, who attempted to converse with him the daughter of the apostle. The death of Fatima, and the decline of his party, subdued the indignant spirit of Ali; he condescended to salute the commander of the faithful, accepted his excuse of the necessity of preventing their common enemies, and wisely rejected his courteous offer of obliterating the government of the Abrahams. After a reign of two years, the aged caliph was summoned by the angel of death. In his testament, with the eulogy of the companions, he bespangled the sceptre to the firm and intrepid virtue of Omar. "I have no occasion," said the modest candidate, "for the place." But "the place has occasion for you," replied Abubecker; who expired with a fervent prayer, that the God of Mahomet would ratify his choice, and direct

283 OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

CHAP. L.

On the Roman Empire.

to secure his interest by a solemn declaration of his right, which would have silenced all competition, and sealed his succession by the decree of heaven. But the unsuspecting hero, satisfied in himself: the jealousy of empire, and perhaps the fear of opposition, might suspend the resolutions of Mahomet; and the bed of sickness was besieged by the artful Ayesa, the daughter of Abubecker, and the enemy of Ali.

The silence and death of the pro-

phet restored the liberty of the people;

and his companions convened an assembly to deliberate on the choice of his successor. The hereditary claim and lofty spirit of Ali were offensive to an aristocracy of elders, desirous of restoring the sceptre by a free and frequent election: the Korish could never be reconciled to the proud pre-eminence of the line of Hashem; the ancient discord of the tribes was rekindled; the fugitives of Mecca and the auxiliaries of Medina asserted their respective merits; and the rash proposal of choosing two independent caliphs would have crushed in their infancy the religion and empire of the Saracen. The tumult was appeased by the disinterested resolution of Omar, who, suddenly renouncing his own pretensions, stretched forth his hand, and declared himself the first subject of the mild and venerable Abubecker. The urgency of the moment, and the acquiescence of the people, might excuse this illegal and precipitate measure; but Omar himself confessed from the pulpit, that if any Musulman should thereafter presume to anticipate the suffrages of his brethren, both the sceptor and the elector would be worthy of death. After the simple inauguration of Abubecker, he was obeyed in Mecca, Medina, and the provinces of Arabia; the Hashemites alone declined the oath of fidelity; and their chief, in his own house, maintained, above six years, a sullen and independent reserve; without listening to the blandishments of Omar, who attempted to converse with him the daughter of the apostle. The death of Fatima, and the decline of his party, subdued the indignant spirit of Ali; he condescended to salute the commander of the faithful, accepted his excuse of the necessity of preventing their common enemies, and wisely rejected his courteous offer of obliterating the government of the Abrahams. After a reign of two years, the aged caliph was summoned by the angel of death. In his testament, with the eulogy of the companions, he bespangled the sceptre to the firm and intrepid virtue of Omar. "I have no occasion," said the modest candidate, "for the place." But "the place has occasion for you," replied Abubecker; who expired with a fervent prayer, that the God of Mahomet would ratify his choice, and direct
the Mussulmans in the way of concord and obedience. The prayer was not inarticulate, since Ali himself, in a life of privacy and prayer, professed to revere the superior worth and dignity of his rival; who comforted him for the loss of empire, by the most flattering marks of consideration and esteem. In the twelfth year of his reign, Omar received a mortal wound from the hand of an assassin, while he was exercising the rights of his supremacy, the name of his son and of Ali was refused to his conscience with the signals of his successor, and devolved on six of the most respectable companions the onerous task of electing a commander of the faithful. On this occasion, Ali was again blamed by his friends for submitting to his right in the judgment of men, for recognizing their jurisdiction by accepting a place among the six electors. He might have obtained their suffrage, he did design to promise a strict and servile conformity, not only to the Koran and tradition, but likewise to the determinations of two sessions. With these limitations, Othman, the secretary of Mahomet, accepted the government; nor was it till after the third caliph, twenty-four years after the death of the prophet, that Ali was invested, by the popular choice, with the regal and sacerdotal office. The manners of the Arabsians retained their primitive simplicity, and the son of Alu Taleb despised the pomp and vanity of this world. At the hour of prayer, he repaired to the mosh of Medina, clothed in a thin cotton gown, a coarse turban on his head, his slippers in one hand, and his bow in the other, instead of a walking-staff. The companions of the prophet and the chiefs of the tribes saluted their new sovereign, and gave him their right hands as a sign of fealty and allegiance.

The mischiefs that flow from the contests of ambition are usually confined to the times and countries in which they have been agitated. But the religious discord of the friends and enemies of Ali has been renewed in every age of the Hegira, and is still maintained in the immortal hatred of the Persians and Turks. The former, who are branded with the appellation of Shiites or sectaries, have enriched the Mahometan creed with a new article of faith; and if Mahomet be the apostle, his companion Ali is the vicar of God. In their private converse, in their public worship, they secretly execute the three murderers who intercepted his indefeasible right to the dignity of Imam and Caliph; and the name of Omar expresses in their tongue the perfect accomplishment of wickedness and impolicy.

Upon the throne, as the representative of the sacred and authoritative will of the prophet, he was opposed by the resentment of the Mussulmans; and the interfering advice of the Abbe, and the Ordinance of the Koran in his lap, was pierced with a multitude of wounds. A tumultuous anarchy of five days was opposed by the inauguration of Ali; his refusal would have provoked a general massacre. In this painful situation he supported the becoming pride of the chief of the Hadimites; declared that he had

...
rather serve than reign; rebuked the presumption of the strangers; and required the formal, if not the voluntary, assent of the chiefs of the nation. He has never been accused of prompting the assassination of Omar; though Persia indirectly celebrates the festival of that holy martyr. The quarrel between Othman and his subjects was assuaged by the early mediation of Ali; and Hassan, the eldest of his sons, was insulted and wounded in the defence of the caliph. Yet it is doubtful whether the father of Hassan was strenuous or sincere in his opposition to the rebels; and it is certain that he enjoyed the benefits of their crime. The temptation was indeed of such magnitude as might stagger and corrupt the most obdurate virtue. The ambitious candidate no longer aspired to the barren sceptre of Arabia; the Saracens had been victorious in the East and West; and the wealthy kingdoms of Persia, Syria, and Egypt were the patrimony of the commander of the Faithful.

A life of prayer and contemplation had not chilled the martial activity of Ali; but in a mature age, after a long experience of mankind, he still betrayed in his conduct the malady and indiscretion of youth. In the first days of his reign, he neglected to secure, either by gifts or favors, the devoted allegiance of Tella and Zobeir, two of the most powerful of the Arabian chiefs. They escaped from Medias to Mecca, and from thence to Basra; erected the standard of revolt; and usurped the government of Irak, or Assyria, which they had vainly solicited as the reward of their services. The mask of patriotism is allowed to cover the most glaring inconsistencies; and the enemies, perhaps the assassins, of Othman now demanded vengeance for his blood. They were accompanied in their flight by Abyssa, the widow of the prophet, who cherished, to the last hour of her life, an impenetrable hatred against the husband and the posterity of Fatima. The most respectable Moslems were scandalized, that the mother of the faithful should expose in a troop her person and character; but the superstitious crowd was confident that her presence would sanctify the justice, and assure the success of their cause. At the head of twenty thousand of his loyal Arabs, and nine thousand valiant auxiliaries of Cufa, the caliph encountered and defeated the superior numbers of the rebels under the walls of Basra. Their leaders, Tella and Zobeir, were slain in the first battle that stained with civil blood the arms of the Musulans. After passing through the ranks to animate the troops, Abyssa had chosen her post amidst the slingers of the field. In the heat of the action, seventy men who held the bridle of her camel were successively killed or wounded; and the cage, or litter, in which she sat was struck with javelins and darts like the quills of a porcupine. The venerable captive sustained with firmness the reproaches of the conquerors, and was speedily dismissed to her proper station, at the tents of Mahomet, with the respect and tenderness that was still due to the widow of the apostle. After this victory,
In serving at table, a slave had inadvertently dropped a dish of scalding broth on his master; the headless wretch fell prostrate, to deprive his punishment, and repeated a verse of the Koran: "Paradise is for those who command their anger." "I am not angry," "and for those who pardon offenses." "I pardon your offenses." “I return good for evil.” "I give you your liberty, and four hundred pieces of silver.”

With an equal measure of piety, Hosein, the younger brother of Hassan, inherited a remnant of his father's spirit, and served with honour against the Christians in the siege of Constantinople. The primogeniture of the line of Hashem, and the holy character of grandson of the apostle, had centred in his person, and he was at liberty to prosecute his claim against Yezid, the tyrant of Damascus, whose vices he despised, and whose title he had never claimed to acknowledge. A list was secretly transmitted from Cufa to Medina, of one hundred and forty thousand Muslims, who professed their attachment to his cause, and who were eager to choose his successor, as soon as he should appear on the banks of the Euphrates. Against the advice of his closest friends, he resolved to trust his person and family in the hands of a perfidious people. He traversed the desert of Arabia with a numerous retinue of women and children, but as he approached the confines of Iraq, he was alarmed by the solitary or hostile face of the country, and suspected either the defection, or ruin, of his party. His fears were just: Obesullah, the governor of Cufa, had extinguished the first marks of an insurrection; and Hosein, in the plain of Kerbela, was encompassed by a body of five thousand horse, who interrupted his communication with the city and the river. He might have escaped to a fortress in the desert, that had defied the power of Caesar and Chosroes, and confounded in the solidity of the tribe of Tali, which would have armed ten thousand warriors in his defence. In a conference with the chief of the enemy, he proposed the option of three honourable conditions; that he should be allowed to return to Medina, be stationed in a frontier garrison against the Turks, or safely conducted to the presence of Yezid. But the demands of the caliph, or his lieutenant, were stern and absolute; and Hosein was informed that he must either submit as a captive and a criminal to the commander of the faithful, or expect the consequences of his rebellion.

"Do you think," replied he, "to terrify me with death?" And, during the short respite of a night, he prepared with calm and solemn resignation to encounter his fate. He checked the lamentations of his sister Fatima, who deplored the impending ruin of his house. "Our trust," said Hosein, "is in God alone. All things, both in heaven and earth, must perish, of the sword.

The dome is, however, with a breadth and height, standing, of its own weight, with no support.

The city of Mecca, All the names of places, are in the shape of letters in the text. In the section of the names of places, there is an absence of many words.
When the sisters and children of Ali were brought in chains to the throne of Damascus, the caliph was advised to extirpate the emnity of a popular and hostile race, whom he had injured beyond the hope of reconciliation. But Yazid preferred the counsels of mercy; and the mourning family was honourably dismissed to mingle their tears with their kindred at Medina. The glory of martyrdom superseded the right of primogeniture; and the twelve names, or pontiffs, of the Persian creed are Ali, Hasan, Hossein, and the linage descendants of Hossein to the ninth generation. Without arms, or treasures, or subjects, they successively enjoyed the veneration of the people, and provoked the jealousy of the reigning caliphs: their tombs at Mecca or Medina, on the banks of the Euphrates, or in the province of Charisma, are still visited by the devotion of their sect. Their names were often the pretence of sedition and civil war; but these royal saints despised the pomp of the world, submitted to the will of God and the injustice of man, and devoted their innocent lives to the study and practice of religion. The twelfth and last of the Imams, conspicuous by the title of Mahomet, or the Guide, surpassed the solitude and sanctity of his predecessors. He concealed himself in a cavern near Bagdad: the time and place of his death are unknown; and his venerated pretensions, that he still lives, and will appear before the day of judgment to overthow the tyranny of Dajjal, or the Antichrist, in the hope of two or three centuries the posterity of Abbas, the uncle of Mahomet, had multiplied to the number of thirty-three thousand; the race of Ali might be equally prolific; the meanest individual was above the first and greatest of princes; and the most eminence were supposed to excel the perfection of angels. But their adverse fortune, and the wide extent of the Mussulman empire, allowed an ample scope for every bold and artful impostor, who claimed affinity with the holy seed: the sects of the Almohades in Spain and Africa, of the Fatimites in Egypt and Syria, of the Seljuk Turks, and of the Sophies of Persia, has been consecrated by this vague and ambiguous title. Under their reign it might be dangerous to dispute the legitimacy of their birth; and one of the Fatimites caliphate asserted an indubitable claim to the empire of Egypt. "This," said Mez, "is my sovereignty; and these," casting an handful of gold to his soldiers, "and these are my kindred and my children." In the various conditions of princes, or doctors, or nobles, or merchants, or...
beggars, a swarm of the genuine or fictitious descendants of Mahomet and Ali is honoured with the appellation of shacks, or sherifs, or emirs. In the Ottoman empire, they are distinguished by a green turban, receive a stipend from the treasury, are judged only by their chief, and, however, deceived by fortune or character, still assert the proud pre-eminence of their birth.

A family of three hundred persons, the pure and unadulterated branch of the caliph Hassan, is preserved without stain or suspicion in the holy cities of Mecca and Medina, and still retains, after the revolutions of twelve centuries, the custody of the temple and the sovereignty of their native land. The fame and merit of Mahomet would ensemble a plebeian name; and the ancient blood of the Kowshid transcends the recent majesty of the kings of the earth. 108

The talents of Mahomet are entitled to our applause; but his success has perhaps too strongly attracted our admiration. Are we surprised that a multitude of proselytes should embrace the doctrine and the passions of an eloquent fanatic? In the history of the church, the same seduction has been tried and repeated from the time of the apostles to that of the reformers. Does it seem incredible that a private citizen should grasp the sword and the sceptre, subdue his native country, and erect a monarchy by his victorious arms? In the moving picture of the dynasties of the East, an hundred fortunate usurpers have arisen from a base origin, surmounted more formidable obstacles, and filled a larger scope of empire and conquest. Mahomet was alike instructed to preach and to fight; and the union of these opposite qualities, while it enhanced his merit, contributed to his success: the operation of force and persuasion, of enthusiasm and fear, continually acted on each other, till every barrier yielded to this irresistible power. His voice invited the Arab to freedom and victory. to arms and empire; in the imaginarium of their daring passions in this world and the other, the restraints which he imposed were requisite to establish the credit of the prophet, and to exercise the obedience of the people; and the only objection to his success was his rational creed of the unity and perfections of God. 18

It is not the propagation, but the permanency of the religion that deserves our wonder: the same pure and perfect impression which he engraved at Mecca and Medina is preserved, after the revolutions of twelve centuries, by the Indian, the African, and the Turkish proselyte of the Koran. If the Christian apostles, St. Peter or St. Paul, could return to the Vatican, they might possibly enquire the name of the deity who is worshipped with such mystic rites in that magnificent temple: at Oxford or Genoa, they would experience less surprise; but it might still be incumbent on them to peruse the catechism of the church; and to study the orthodox commentators on their own writings and the words of their master.

But the Turkish dome of St. Sophia, with an increase of splendour and size, represents the humble tabernacle erected at Medina by the hands of Mahomet. The Mahometans have uniformly withstood the temptation of reducing the object of their faith and devotion to a level with the senses and imagination of man. "I believe in one God, and Mahomet the apostle of God," is the simple and invariable profession of Islam. The intellectual image of the Deity has never been degraded by any visible idol; the honours of the prophet have never transgressed the measure of human virtue; and his living precepts have restrained the gratitude of his disciples within the bounds of reason and religion. The virtues of Ali have indeed concurred the memory of their hero, his wife, and his children, and some of the Persian doctors pretend that the divine essence was incarnate in the person of the Imams; but their supersession is universally condemned by the Sunnites; and their inutility has afforded a reasonable warning against the veneration of saints and martyrs. The metaphysical questions on the attributes of God, and the liberty of man, have been agitated in the schools of the Mahometans, as well as in those of the Christians; but among the former they have never engaged the passions of the people, or disturbed the tranquility of the state. The cause of this important difference may be found in the separation or union of the regular and ascerdotal characters. It was the interest of the caliphs, the successors of the prophet and commanders of the faithful, to repress and discourage all religious innovations: the order, the discipline, the temporal and spiritual ambition of the clergy, are unknown to the Musulmans; and the sages of the law are the guides of their conscience and the oracles of their faith. From the Atlantic to the Oanges, the Koran is acknowledged as the fundamental code, not only of theology, but of civil and criminal jurisprudence; and the laws which regulate the actions and the property of mankind, are guarded by the infallible and immutable sanction of the will of God. This religious servitude is attended with some practical disadvantage: the illiterate legislator had been often misled by his own prejudices and those of his country; and the institutions of the Arabian desert may be ill adapted to the wealth and numbers of Isphan and Constantinople. On these occasions, the Cadhi respectfully places on his throne the holy volume, and substitutes a doxastic interpretation, more opposed to the principles of equity and the manners and policy of the times. His beneficial or pernicious influence on the public happiness is the last consideration in the character of Mahomet. The most bitter or most bigoted of his Christian or Jewish foes will surely allow that he assumed a false commission to inculcate a salutary doctrine, less perfect only than their own. He piously supposed, as the basis of his religion, the truth and sanctity of

108. The present state of the family of Mahomet and Ali is minutely described by Semmianus Censuario; Libra, Book X. 32., and Nicolaus Description de Turbili, p. 264-5. 517.
their prior revelations, the virtues and miracles of their founders. The idols of Arabia were broken before the throne of God; the blood of human victims was expelled by prayer, and fasting, and alms, the laudable or innocent arts of devotion; and his rewards and punishments of a future life were pointed by the images most congenial to an ignorant and carnal generation. Mahomet was perhaps incapable of dictating a moral and political system for the use of his countrymen: but he breathed among the faithful a spirit of charity and friendship, recommended the practice of the social virtues, and checked, by his laws and precepts, the thirst of revenge and the oppression of widows and orphans. The hostile tribes were united in faith and obedience, and the value which had been lately spent in domestic quarrels was vigorously directed against a foreign enemy. Had the impulse been less powerful, Arabia, free at home, and formidable abroad, might have flourished under a succession of her native monarchs. Her sovereignty was lost by the extent and rapidity of conquests. The colonies of the nation were scattered over the East and West, and their blood was mingled with the blood of their conquests and captives. After the reign of three caliphs, the throne was transported from Medina to the valley of Damascus and the banks of the Tigris; the holy cities were violated by impious war; Arabia was ruled by the rod of a subject, perhaps of a stranger; and the Bedouins of the desert, awakening from their dreams of dominion, resumed their old and solitary independence.

CHAP. LI.

The revolution of Arabia had not changed the character of the Arabs: the death of Mahomet was the signal of independence; and the lusty structure of his power and religion uttered to its foundations. A small and faithful band of his pious disciples had listened to his eloquence, and shared his distress; had fled with the apostle from the persecution of Mecca, or had received the fugitive in the walls of Medina. The increasing myriads, who acknowledged Mahomet as their king and prophet, had been compelled by his arms, or allured by his prosperity. The

382. The success of the Moslem (Universal History, 6th, 6th, and 11th) was unexpected; but his aim was the life of Mahomet and the removal of the idolatrous edifices. His policy was to destroy theSys ron, the Idols were 700, numbering in all thousands, and they were burnt and broken with all the amplifica of the most enlightened 11th. The full moon was celebrated by a mark of homage in all ages and the Moslem was always treated as a holy calendar. The Abyssinians and all other who were treated Moslem with

383. See the description of the city and conquest of Al Yarmuk, in the Life of Mahomet, and the description of the war with the Jews, in 624. and 625. in the present century, the Jews were driven out of Persia, but very little remains written of their history, nor are they sufficiently known (Nebchi, Monographie de l'Arab., p. 258. 6th ed.).

polytheists were confounded by the simple idea of a solitary and invisible God; the pride of the Christians and Jews dissolved the yoke of a mortal and corporeal legislator. Their habits of faith and obedience were not sufficiently confirmed; and many of the new converts regretted the venerable antiquity of the law of Moses, or the rites and mysteries of the Catholic church, or the idols, the sacrifices, the joyous festivals, of their Pagan ancestors. The jarring interests and hereditary feuds of the Arabian tribes had not yet coalesced in a system of union and subordination; and the barbarians were impatient of the mildest and most salutary laws that curbed their passions, or violated their customs. They submitted with reluctance to the religious precepts of the Koran, the abstinence from wine, the fast of the Ramadan, and the daily repetition of five prayers; and the alms and tithes, which were collected for the treasury of Medina, could be distinguished only by a name from the payment of a perpetual and ignominious tribute. The example of Mahomet had excited a spirit of fanaticism or imposture, and several of his rivals presumed to imitate the conduct and defy the authority of the living prophet. At the head of the jujjurer and qaissar, the first caliph was reduced to the cities of Mecca, Medina, and Tayef; and perhaps the Korish would have restored the idols of the Caaba, if their holiness had not been checked by a secondary reproof. * Ye men of * Mecca, will ye be the last to embrace and the first to abandon the religion of Islam? After exhausting the Moslems to confine in the aid of God and his apostle, Altabeker resolved, by a vigorous attack, to prevent the junction of the rebels. The women and children were safely lodged in the cervices of the mountains; the warriors, marching under eleven banners, diffused the terror of their arms; and the appearance of a military force revived and confirmed the loyalty of the faithful. The inconstant tribes accepted, with humble repentance, the duties of prayer, and fasting, and alms; and, after some examples of success and severity, the most daring apostates fell prostrate before the sword of the Lord and of Caled. In the fertile province of Yamanath, between the Red Sea and the Gulf of Persia, in a city not inferior to Medina itself, a powerful chief, his name was Moosilam, had assumed the character of a prophet, and the tribe of Hamba attended to his voice. A female prophetess was attracted by his repentations; the devotions of words and actions were spurned by these fancies of heaven; and they employed several days in mystic and amorous converse. An obscure

3 Their first relations may be a consequence, but cannot be essential: It was from the Meccans and not from the...
sentence of his Koran, or book, is yet extant; 2 and in the pride of his mission, Moselmies con-
descended to offer a portion of the earth. The
proposal was an answer by Mahomet with con-
tempt; but the rapid progress of the impostor
awakened the fears of his successor; forty thou-
sand Moselmies were assembled to be the standard of Calat; and the existence of their faith was
reserved to the event of a decisive battle. In
the first action they were requited with the loss
of twelve hundred men; but this and the pre-
vance of their general prevailed; their defeat
was avenged by the slaughter of ten thousand
infidels; and Moselmies himself was pierced by
an Ethiopian slave with the same javelin which
had mortally wounded the uncle of Mahomet.
The various rebels of Arabia, without a chief or
aw, were speedily suppressed by the power
and discipline of the rising monarch; and the
whole nation again professed, and more stedfastly,
the religion of the Koran. The ambition of the
caliphs provided an immediate exercise for the
realms of the Saracen; their chariot was united in the prosecution of an holy
war; and their enthusiasm was equally con-
tinued by opposition and victory.

From the rapid conquests of the

Saracen, a presumption will naturally arise, that the first caliphs commanded
person the armies of the faithful, and sought the
crown of martyrdom in the foremost ranks of the
battle. The courage of Abubeker, 3 Umar, 4
and Othman, 5 had indeed been tried in the per-
suasion and wars of the prophet; and the per-
sonal assurance of paradise must have taught
them to despise the pleasures and dangers of the
present world. But they ascended the throne in a
venerable or mature age; and esteemed the
domestic cares of religion and justice the most
important duties of a sovereign. Except the
presence of Omar at the siege of Jerusalem, their
longest expeditions were the frequent pilgrimage
from Medina to Mecca; and they calmly re-
ceived the tidings of victory as they prayed or
prayed before the sepulchre of the prophet.
The austere and frugal measure of their lives
was the effect of virtue or habit, and the pride
of their simplicity invites the vain magnificence
of the kings of the earth. When Abubeker
assumed the office of caliph, he enjoined his
dughter Ayeshah to take a strict account of his
private patrimony, that it might be evident
whether he were enriched or impoverished by
the service of the state. He thought himself
entitled to a stipend of three pieces of gold, with
the sufficient maintenance of a single camel and
a black slave; but on the Friday of each week
he distributed the residue of his own and the
public money, first to the most worthy, and then
to the most indigent; of the Moselmies. The
remains of his wealth, a coarse garment, and five
pieces of gold, were delivered to his successor,
who lamented with a modest sigh his own in-
sibility to equal such an admirable model. Yet
the abstinence and humility of Omar were not
inferior to the virtues of Abubeker; his food
consisted of turley-bread or dates; his drink was
water; he breathed in a gown that was torn or
tattered in twelve places; and a Persian saraf, who
paid his homage to the conqueror, found
him asleep among the beggars on the steps of
the mosque of Medina. Economy is the source
of liberality, and the increase of the revenues enabled Omar to establish a just and perpetual
reward for the past and present services of the
faithful. Careless of his own emolument, he
assigned to Abbas, the uncle of the prophet, the
first and most ample allowance of twenty-five
thousand drum or pieces of silver. Five thou-
sand were allotted to each of the aged widows,
the relics of the field of Bedr, and the last and
meanest of the companions of Mahomet was dis-
tinguished by the annual reward of three thou-
sand pieces. One thousand was the stipend of
the veterans who had fought in the first battles
against the Greeks and Persians; and the de-
creasing pay, as low as fifty pieces of silver, was
adapted to the respective merit and seniority of
the soldiers of Omar. Under his reign, and that
of his predecessor, the conquests of the East
were the trusty servants of God and the people;
the mass of the public treasure was consecrated
to the expenses of peace and war; a prudent
mixture of justice and bounty maintained the
discipline of the Saracen, and they united, by
a rare felicity, the despatch and execution of
despotism, with the equal and frugal maxims of
a republican government. The heroic courage of
Allah, 6 the consummate prudence of Moawiyah, 7
exercised the emulation of their subjects; and the
talents which had been exercised in the school
of civil discord, were more usefully applied to
propagate the faith and dominion of the pros-
phets. In the loft and family of the palace of
Damascus, the succeeding princes of the house of
Ommiyan were alike destitute of the qual-
ifications of statesmen and of saints. 8 Yet the
spoils of unknown nations were continually laid
at the foot of their throne; and the uniform
aspect of the Arabian greatness must be ascribed
to the spirit of the nation rather than the abilities
of their chiefs. A large deduction must be
allowed for the weakness of their enemies. The
birth of Mahomet was fortunately placed in the
most degenerate and disorderly period of the
Persians, the Romans, and the barbarian
Europe; the empire of Trajan, or even of Con-
stantine or Charlemagne, would have repelled
the assault of the naked Saracen, and the incen-
tion of fanaticism might have been obscurely
lost in the sands of Arabia.

In the victorious days of the Ro-
man republic, it had been the aim
of the senate to confine their consul and be-

1. See Editors, which denominate God from the word of guar-
antee, y. Abubeker, (Abu Bakr), ibid., p. 211. Othman, ibid., p. 211.
3. See Editors, which denominate God from the word of guar-
4. See Editors, which denominate God from the word of guar-
antee, y. Abubeker, (Abu Bakr), ibid., p. 211. Othman, ibid., p. 211.
5. See Editors, which denominate God from the word of guar-
antee, y. Abubeker, (Abu Bakr), ibid., p. 211. Othman, ibid., p. 211.
6. See Editors, which denominate God from the word of guar-
antee, y. Abubeker, (Abu Bakr), ibid., p. 211. Othman, ibid., p. 211.
giants to a single war, and completely to suppress a first enemy before they provoked the hostilities of a second. These timid maxims of policy were disdained by the magnanimity or enthusiasm of the Arabian caliph. With the same vigour and success they invaded the successors of Augustus, and those of Artaxerxes; and the rival monarchies at the same instant became the prey of an enemy whom they had been so long accustomed to despise. In the ten years of the administration of Omeir, the Saracens reduced to his obedience thirty-six thousand cities or castles, destroyed four thousand churches or temples of the unbelievers, and edified fourteen hundred mosques for the exercise of the religion of Mahomet. One hundred years after his flight from Mecca, the arms and the reign of his successors extended from India to the Atlantic Ocean, over the various and distant provinces, which may be comprised under the names of Persia; Syria; Egypt; and Spain. Under this general division, I shall proceed to unfold these memorable transactions; despatching with brevity the remote and less interesting conquests of the East, and reserving a fuller narrative for these domestic countries which had been included within the pale of the Roman empire. Yet I must excuse my own defects by a just complaint of the blindness and insufficiency of my guides. The Greeks, so impassioned in controversy, have not been anxious to celebrate the triumphs of their enemies. After a century of ignorance, the first annals of the Musulmans were collected in a great measure from the voice of tradition. Among the numerous productions of Arabic and Persian literature, our interpreters have selected the imperfect sketches of a more remote age. The art and genius of history have ever been unknown to the Asiatics; they are ignorant of the laws of criticism; and our monkish chronicles of the same period may be compared to their most popular works, which are never rivaled by the spirit of philosophy and freedom. The Oriental Library of a Frenchman would instruct the most learned smith of the East; and perhaps the Arab might not find in a single historian so clear and comprehensive a narrative of their own exploits as that which will be deduced in the ensuing sheets.

I. In the first year of the first caliph, his lieutenant Caled, the Sword of God, and the severest of the infidels, advanced to the banks of the Euphrates, and reduced the cities of Anbar and Hira. Westward of the ruins of Babelon, a tribe of sedentary Arabs had fixed themselves on the verge of the desert; and Hira was the seat of a race of kings who had embraced the Christian religion, and reigned above six hundred years under the shadow of the throne of Persia. The last of the Maccabees was dejected and slain by Caled; his son was sent a captive to Medina; his nobles bowed before the successor of the prophet; the people was tempted by the example and success of their countrymen; and the caliph accepted, as the first-fruits of foreign conquest, an annual tribute of seventy thousand pieces of gold. The conquerors, and even their historians, were astonished by the dawn of their future greatness; in the same year, says Elmasri, Caled fought many signal battles; an immense multitude of the infidels was slaughtered; and new and immemorial, were acquired by the victorious Moslems. But the invincible Caled was soon transferred to the Syrian war; the invasion of the Persian franks was combated by less active or less prudent commanders; the Saracens were repulsed with loss in the passage of the Euphrates; and, though they chastened the insolent pursuit of the Persians, their remaining forces still hovered in the desert of Babylon.

The indignation and fears of the Persians suspended for a moment their intestine divisions. By the unanimous sentence of the priests and nobles, their queen Artaxerxes was deposed; the sixth of the transient tyrants, who had arisen and vanished in three or four years, since the death of Chosroes and the retreat of Herodotus. Her star was placed on the head of Yezidkendi, the grandson of Chosroes; and the same era, which

![Image 0x0 to 371x577]
coincides with an astronomical period, has recorded the fall of the Sassanian dynasty and the religion of Zoroaster. The youth and inexperience of the prince, he was only fifteen years of age, declined a perilous encounter: the royal standard was delivered into the hands of his general Rustam; and a remnant of thirty thousand regular troops was victorious in truth, or, in opinion, in one hundred and twenty thousand subjects, or allies, of the great king. The Moors, whose numbers were reinforced from twelve to thirty thousand, had pitched their camp in the plains of Cadesia; and their line, though it consisted of fewer men, could produce more soldiers than the unwieldy host of the infidels. I shall here observe, what I must often repeat, that the charge of the Arabs was not, like that of the Greeks and Romans, the effort of a firm and compact infantry: their military power was chiefly formed of cavalry and archers; and their engagement, which was often interrupted and often renewed by single combats and flying skirmishes, might be protracted without any decisive event or the continuance of several days. The harbours of the battle of Cadesia were distinguished by their peculiar appellations. The first, from the well-timed appearance of six thousand of the Syrian brethren, was denominated the day of success. The day of concurrence might express the dissection of one, or perhaps of both, of the contending armies. The third, a nocturnal tumult, received the whimsical name of the night of hearing, from the discordant clamours, which were compared to the inarticulate sounds of the forest animals. The morning of the succeeding day determined the fate of Persia; and a tempestuous whirlwind strewn a cloud of dust against the faces of the unbelievers. The change of arms was re-executed to the taste of Rustam, who, far unlike the ancient hero of his name, was gently reclining in a cool and tranquil shade, amidst the baggage of his camp, and the train of mules that were laden with gold and silver. On the sound of danger he started from his couch; but his flight was overtaken by a valiant Arab, who caught him by the foot, struck off his head, hoisted it on a lance, and instantly returning to the field of battle, carried slaughter and dismay among the thickest ranks of the Persians. The Saracens confound a loss of seven thousand five hundred men; and the battle of Cadesia is justly described by the epitaphs of obdurate and abominations.

The standard of the monarchy was overthrown and captured in the field — a feathered apron of a blacksmith, who, in ancient times, had arisen the deliverer of Persia; but this badge of heroic poverty was disgraced, and almost concealed, by a profusion of precious gems. After this victory, the wealthy province of Iraq, or Assyria, submitted to the caliph, and his conquests were firmly established by the speedy foundation of Bassem, a place which ever commands the trade and navigation of the Persians. At the distance of four score miles from the gulf, the Euphrates and Tigris unite in a broad and direct current, which is aptly styled the river of the Arabs. In the meanwhile, between the junction and the mouth of these famous streams, the new settlement was planted on the western bank: the first colony was composed of eight hundred Moslems; but the influence of the situation soon revived a flourishing and populous capital. The air, though excessively hot, is pure and healthy; the meadows are filled with palm-trees and cattle; and one of the adjacent valleys has been celebrated among the four paradises or gardens of Asia. Under the first caliph, the jurisdiction of this Arabian colony extended over the southern provinces of Persia: the city has been sanctified by the tombs of the companions and martyrs; and the vessels of Europe still frequent the port of Basra, as a convenient station and passage of the Indian trade.

After the defeat of Cadesia, the Arab country intersected by rivers and canals might have opposed an insuperable barrier to the victorious cavalry; and the walls of Ctesiphon or Madayn, which had resisted the battering rams of the Romans, would not have yielded to the darts of the Saracens. But the flying Persians were overthrown by the belief, that the last day of their religion and empire was at hand; the strongest posts were abandoned by treachery or cowardice; and the king, with a part of his family and treasures, escaped to Hisham at the foot of the Median hills. In the third month after the battle, Said, the lieutenant of Omar, passed the Tigris without opposition; the capital was taken by assault; and the disorderly resistance of the people gave a keener edge to the Calder of the Moslems, who shouted with religious transport, this is the white palace of the Caliphs; this is the promise of the apostle of God! The naked robbers of the desert were suddenly enriched beyond the measure of their hope or knowledge. Each chamber revealed a new treasure secreted with art, or ostentation displayed; the gold and silver, the various wardrobes and precious furniture, surpassed (says Abu-feda) the estimate of fancy or numbers.

28 Cadesia, see the British geographer, (p. 171.), is in conquestable latitude, 31 degrees from the equinoctial line; 32 30 from Greenwich, 90 90 from Cochin, 108 108 from the prime meridian; but the latitude is not always determined precisely, whether the object of the place is to be seen at the rising or at the setting of the sun: it is occasionally fixed to the 31st of June, A.D. 630. But it is usual to suppose that the Moslem, from the 1st of March, and on the 1st of January, in the Islamic calendar, 629. 29. We have also the dates of the battle of Cadesia, 14th August, 638. 30. The 2nd of October, 638. 31. 87 87. Some consider the 21st of September, as the date of the battle of Cadesia. 32. On this battle, see the British geographer, (p. 171.), as well as the historian, (p. 179.), of the战役 of Cadesia, 83. The 2nd of October, 638. 34. On this battle, see the British geographer, (p. 171.), as well as the historian, (p. 179.), of the Saracens. 35. 85 85.
and another historian defines the untold and almost infinite mass, by the fabulous computation of three thousand of thousands of thousands of pieces of gold. Some minute though curious facts represent the contrast of riches and ignorance. From the remote islands of the Indian Ocean, a large provision of camphire93 had been imported, which is employed with a mixture of wax to illuminate the palaces of the East. Strangers to the name and properties of that admirable gum, the Samarcens, mistaking it for salt, mingled the camphire in their bread, and were astonished at the bitterness of the taste. One of the apartments of the palace was carpeted with a carpet of silk, sixty cubits in length, and as many in breadth: a paradise or garden was depicted upon the ground; the flowers, fruits, and shrubs, were imitated by the figures of the gold embroidery, and the colours of the precious stones; and the ample square was encircled by a variegated and verdant border. The Arabian general persuaded his soldiers to relinquish their claim, in the reasonable hope that the eyes of the caliph would be delighted with the splendid workmanship of nature and industry. Regardless of the merit of art, and the pomp of royalty, the rigid Omar divided the prize among his brethren of Madina: the picture was destroyed; but such was the intrinsic value of the materials, that the share of All alone was sold for twenty thousand dина. A mule that carried away the reins and curdifs, the belt and bracelets of Chosroes, was overtaken by the pursuers; the gorgeous trophy was presented to the commander of the faithful; and the graven of the companions condescended to smile when they beheld the white beard, livery arms, and smooth figure of the veteran, who was invested with the spoils of the great king. The sack of Ctesiphon was followed by its destruction and gradual decay. The Samaritans disliked the air and situation of the place; and Omar was advised by his general to remove the seat of government to the western side of the Euphrates. In every age the foundation and ruin of the Assyrian cities has been as easy and rapid: the country is destitute of stone and timber; and the most solid structures are composed of bricks baked in the sun, and joined by a cement of the native bitumen. The name of Ctesiphon describes an habitation of reeds and earth; but the importance of the new capital was supported by the numbers, wealth, and spirit of a colony of veterans; and their Licentiousness was indulged by the wisest and ablest caliph, who were apprehensive of provoking the revolt of an hundred thousand swords. Ye men of "Cufa," said Ali, who solicited their aid, "you have always been conspicuous by your valour. You conquered the Persian king, and asserted his forces, till you had taken possession of his inheritance." This mighty conquest was achieved in the battle of Aul and Nishabur. After the loss of the former, Yezdegird fled from Holwan, and concealed his shame and despair in the mountains of Parcian, from whence Cyrus had descended with his equal and valiant companions. The courage of the nation survived that of the monarch: among the hilly region of the Esbatana or Huazin, one hundred and fifty thousand Persians made a third and final stand for their religion and country; and the decisive battle of Nishabur was styled by the Arabs the victory of victories. If it be true that the flying general of the Persians was stopped and overtaken in a crowd of mules and camels laden with a hundred and twenty thousand pounds of treasure, and all their riches, it is natural that the perilous impregnity of an Oriental army should be delineated by the Greeks and Latins; but the most illustrious of the cities appear to be more ancient than the invasion of the Arabs. By the reduction of Hamadan and Isfahan, of Cusmir, Tarsis, and Bel, they gradually approached the shores of the Caspian Sea; and the orators of Mecra might applaud the success and spirit of the faithful, who had already lost sight of the northern boundary, and had almost transversed the bounds of the habitable world. Again turning towards the West and the Roman empire, they passed the Tigris over the bridge of Mount, and, in the captive provinces of Armenia and Mesopotamia, embraced their victorious brethren of the Syrian army. From the palace of Madayn their Eastern progress was not less rapid or extensive. They advanced along the Tigris and the Gulf; penetrated through the passes of the mountains into the valley of Eschar or Persepolis; and possessed the last sanctuary of the Mogrian empire. The grandeur of Chosroes was nearly surpassed among the falling columns and mutilated figures; a sad emblem of the past and present fortunes of Persia; he fled with accelerated haste over the desert of Kirman, implored the aid of the weakling Saragians, and sought an humble refuge on the verge of the Turkish and Chinese power. But a victorious army is insensible of fatigue: the Arabs divided their forces in the pursuit of a timorous enemy, and the Caliph Othman pro-
misled the government of Chorasan to the first general who should enter that large and populous country, the kingdom of the ancient Bactrians. The coalition was accepted; the price was decided; the standard of Malamut was planted on the banks of the Helan, Morun, and Balch; and the successful leader neither halted nor repose till his following cavalry had tasted the waters of the Oxus. In the public amanacy, the independent governors of the cities and castles obtained their separate capitulations: the terms were granted or imposed by the custom, the prudence, or the compassion, of the victors; and a simple profession of faith established the distinction between a brother and a slave. After a noble defence, Haromian, the prince or satrap of Alva and Sessen, was compelled to surrender his person and state to the discretion of the caliph; and their interview exhibits a portrait of the Arabian manners. In the presence, and by the command, of Omar, the great baron was dispossessed of his silken robes embroidered with gold, and of his tares bedecked with rubies and emeralds. "Are you now sensible," said the conqueror to his naked captive, "are you now sensible of the judgment of God, and of the different rewards of fidelity and obedience?" "Aha!" replied Haromian, "I feel them too deeply. In the days of our common ignorance we fought with the weapons of the flesh, and my nation was superior; and was then a master; since he has espoused your quarrel, you have subverted our kingdom and religion." Oppressed by this painful dialogue, the Persian complained of intolerable thirst, but discovered some apprehensions lest he should be killed whilst he was drinking a cup of water. "Be of good courage," said the caliph; "your life is safe till you have drunk this water." The crafty satrap accepted the assurance, and instantly dashed the vase against the ground. Omar would have avenged the deceit; but his companions represented the sanctity of an oath; and the speedy conversion of Haromian entitled him not only to a free pardon, but even to a stipend of two thousand pieces of gold. The administration of Persia was regulated by an actual survey of the people, the cattle, and the fruits of the earth; and this monument, which attests the vigilance of the caliphs, might have instructed the philosophers of every age.33

The flight of Yezdegard had carried him beyond the Oxus, and as far as the Jaxartes, two rivers of ancient and modern renown, which descend from the mountains of India towards the Caspian Sea. He was hospitably entertained by Turkman, Pripa of Farghān persistently provisioned on the Jaxartes, the King of Samarcand, with the Turkic tribes of Sogdians and Systana, were moved by the lamentations and promises of the fallen monarch; and he solicited, by a suppliant embassy, the more solid and powerful friendship of the Emperor of China.39 The virtuous Taimour, the first of the dynasty of the Tang, may be justly compared with the Abbonians of Rome: he people enjoyed the blessings of prosperity and peace; and his dominion was acknowledged by forty-four masters of the barbarians of Tartary. His last garrisons of Casigir and Khotten maintained a frequent intercourse with their neighbours of the Jaxartes and Oxus: a recent colony of Persians had introduced into China the astronomy of the Magi; and Taimour might be alarmed by the rapid progress and dangerous vicinity of the Arabs. The influence, and perhaps the supplies, of China revived the hopes of Yezdegard, and the seal of the worshippers of fire; and he returned with an army of Turks to conquer the inheritance of his fathers. The fortunate Musulmans, without exhausting their swords, were the spectators of his ruin and death. The grandson of Chorasan was betrayed by his servant, insulted by the audacious inhabitants of Morun, and oppressed, defeated, and pursued, by his barbarian allies. He reached the banks of a river, and offered his rings and bracelets for an instant passage in a miller's boat. Ignorant or insensible of royal distress, the rustic replied, that four drams of silver were the daily profit of his mill, and that he would not spend his work unless the loss were repaid. In this moment of hesitation and delay, the last of the Sassanian kings was overwhelmed and slaughtered by the Turkish cavalry, in the nineteenth year of his unhappy reign.40 His son Firus, an humble client of the Chinese emperor, succeeded the station of captain of his guards; and the Magian worship was long preserved by a colony of loyal exiles in the province of Bachtiar. His grandson inherited the royal name; but after a faint and frivolous existence, he returned to China, and ended his days in the palace of Tigris. The male line of the Sassanids was extinct; but the female captives, the daughters of Persia, were given to the conquerors in servitude, or marriage; and the race of the caliphs and imams was ennobled by the blood of their royal mothers.41

After the fall of the Persian kingdom, the river Oxus divided the territories of the Sassanids and of the Turks. This narrow boundary was soon overlapped by the spirit of the Arabs; the go-

39 After the conquest of Persia, Theophilus, ed. Saville, parts 7, p. 485. says of the Pripa of Farghān: "The Pripa of Farghān is situated in the Pulcher town, in the province of Bokhara, in the country of Tartary, in the part of the Oxus." The Pripa of Taimour, or Taimoor, according to the modern historians, was for a time the ally of the Turks, and his resistance was maintained by the Tartars and the Mongols. In the eighteenth century, the Otomans and the Russians were in a state of war with the Pripa of Farghān. The Pripa of Farghān is still a powerful state. It is bounded on the north by the Oxus, on the east by the Kirghiz, on the south by the Russians, and on the west by the Turcomans. The capital of the Pripa of Farghān is called Merv. It is a city of about 30,000 inhabitants. The Pripa of Farghān is a great trading state. Its commerce is chiefly with Russia and China. The Pripa of Farghān is a kingdom of about 10,000 square miles. It is divided into three provinces: the province of Merv, the province of Kermanshah, and the province of Bokhara. The population of the Pripa of Farghān is about 1,000,000. The Pripa of Farghān is governed by a Pripa, who is elected by the people. The Pripa of Farghān is a great agricultural country. The chief crops are wheat, barley, and cotton. The Pripa of Farghān is a great pastoral country. The chief livestock are sheep, goats, and camels. The Pripa of Farghān is a great mining country. The chief minerals are coal, iron, and copper. The Pripa of Farghān is a great industrial country. The chief industries are weaving, spinning, and metalworking. The Pripa of Farghān is a great commercial country. The chief exports are wool, cotton, and cattle. The Pripa of Farghān is a great religious country. The chief religions are Islam, Judaism, and Zoroastrianism. The Pripa of Farghān is a great educational country. The chief educational institutions are schools, colleges, and universities. The Pripa of Farghān is a great cultural country. The chief cultural institutions are museums, libraries, and cultural centers. The Pripa of Farghān is a great scientific country. The chief scientific institutions are research centers, laboratories, and universities. The Pripa of Farghān is a great artistic country. The chief artistic institutions are museums, galleries, and cultural centers. The Pripa of Farghān is a great historical country. The chief historical institutions are museums, libraries, and cultural centers. The Pripa of Farghān is a great tourist country. The chief tourist attractions are historical sites, cultural centers, and natural landscapes. The Pripa of Farghān is a great political country. The chief political institutions are the Pripa and the provincial councils. The Pripa of Farghān is a great economic country. The chief economic institutions are agricultural cooperatives, industrial enterprises, and commercial enterprises. The Pripa of Farghān is a great social country. The chief social institutions are schools, hospitals, and cultural centers. The Pripa of Farghān is a great environmental country. The chief environmental institutions are environmental agencies, environmental conservation centers, and environmental protection agencies. The Pripa of Farghān is a great legal country. The chief legal institutions are the Pripa and the provincial councils.
verners of Cleopatra extended their successive
inroads; and one of their triumphs was adorned
with the Icumin of a Turkish queen, which
she drpt in her precipitate flight beyond the
hills of Iochara. But the final conquest of
Iransom, as well as of Spain, was re-
served for the glorious reign of the inactive
Walli; and the name of Cathalas, the camel
driver, declares the origin and merit of his suc-
cessful lieutenant. While one of his col-
leagues displayed the first Mahometan banner on
the banks of the Indus, the spurious regions be-
 tween the Oxus, the Jaxartes, and the Caspian
Sea, were reduced by the arms of Cathalas to
the obedience of the prophet and of the caliph.
A tribute of two millions of pieces of gold was
imposed on the subject: their idols were burnt or
brokem: the Musulman chief pronounced a
sermon in the new mesh of Caririm; after
several battles, the Turkish hordes were driven
back to the desert; and the emperors of China
solicited the friendship of the victorious Arabs.
To their industry, the prosperity of the province,
the Sogdianans of the ancients, may in a great
measure be ascribed; but the advantages of the
soil and climate had been understood and cul-
vated since the reign of the Macedonian kings.
Before the invasion of the Saracen, Cathalas,
Bocasa, and Samarcand, were rich and populous
under the yoke of the shepherds of the north.
These cities were surrounded with a double
wall; and the exterior fortification, of a larger
circumference, enclosed the fields and gardens
of the adjacent districts. The mutual wants of
India and Europe were supplied by the diligence of
the Sogdian merchants; and the incessant art
of transforming linen into paper, has been
diffused from the manufacture of Samarcand
over the western world.

II. No sooner had Almubekker re-
stored the unity of faith and govern-
ment, than he despatched a circular letter to the
Arabic tribes. In the name of
the most merciful God, to the rest of the true
believers. Health and salutation, and the
mercy and blessing of God be upon you. I
raise the most high God, and I pray for his
prophet Mahomet. This is to acquaint you,
that I intend to send the true believers into
Syria to take it out of the hands of the in-
valids. And I would have you know, that
the fighting for religion is an act of obedience
to God. His messengers returned with the
bodings of piety and martial ardour which they
had kindled in every province; and the camp
of Modina was successively filled with the in-
trepid bands of the Saracens, who paused for
action, complained of the heat of the season and
the scarcity of provisions, and accused with im-
patient murmurs the delays of the caliph. As
soon as their numbers were complete, Almu-
becker ascended the hill, reviewed the men,
the horses, and the arms, and poured forth a fervent
prayer for the success of their undertaking. In
person and on foot, he accompanied the first
day's march; and when the blushing leaders
attempted to dismount, the caliph removed their
scruples by a declaration, that those who rode,
and those who walked, in the service of religion,
were equally meritorious. His instructions
to the chiefs of the Syrian army were inspired by
the warlike fanaticism which advances to
seize, and affects to despise, the objects of earthly
ambition. "Remember," said the successors of
the prophet, "that you are always in the pres-
sence of God, on the verge of death, in the
assurance of judgment, and the hope of para-
dise. Avoid injustice and oppression; cons-
sider with your hearts, and study to preserve
the love and confidence of your countrymen. When
you fight the battles of the Lord, clothe your
selves like men, without turning your backs; but
let not your victory be stained with the
blood of women or children. Destroy no
fruit-trees, nor burn any fields of corn. Cut
down no fruit-trees, nor do any mischief to
cattle, only such as you kill to eat. When
you make any covenant or article, stand to it;
and be as good as your word. As you go on,
you will find some religious persons who live
retired in monasteries, and propose to them-
selves to serve God that way; let them alone,
and neither kill them nor destroy their mon-
asteries. 40 and you will find another sort of
people that belong to the synagogue of Satans,
who have shaved crowns; 41 be sure you
clear their skulls, and give them no quarter
till they either turn Mahometans or pay tribute.
All profane or frivolous conversation; all
dangerous recollections of ancient quarrels;
were severely prohibited among the Arabs; in
the tumult of a camp, the exercises of religion
were industriously practised; and the intervals
of action were employed in prayer, meditation,
and the study of the Koran. The abuse, or
even the use, of wine was chastised by four-

40 It was valued at 6,000 pieces of gold, and was the pride of Isla-
mic magnificence. 41 The emblems of the Franciscan order were
practically the same as those of the Carmelites; but the former
were red, the latter white. The Franciscan scarf was a red
silk, the Carmelite a white one. 42 The image of the Virgin, with
lost significance, was the object of devotion, and was known as
"the image of the Virgin, with lost significance." The image of
the Virgin, with lost significance, was divided into two parts: the
upper part, which was the head, and the lower part, which was the
body. The head was carved from red marble, and the body from
white marble. The image of the Virgin, with lost significance, was
considered to be a symbol of the Virgin Mary, and was venerated
by the faithful as such. The image of the Virgin, with lost signif-
cicnce, was a symbol of the Virgin Mary, and was venerated
by the faithful as such. The image of the Virgin, with lost signif-
cicnce, was a symbol of the Virgin Mary, and was venerated
by the faithful as such.

43 The image of the Virgin, with lost significance, was a symbol of
the Virgin Mary, and was venerated by the faithful as such.

44 The image of the Virgin, with lost significance, was a symbol of
the Virgin Mary, and was venerated by the faithful as such.

45 The image of the Virgin, with lost significance, was a symbol of
the Virgin Mary, and was venerated by the faithful as such.

46 The image of the Virgin, with lost significance, was a symbol of
the Virgin Mary, and was venerated by the faithful as such.

47 The image of the Virgin, with lost significance, was a symbol of
the Virgin Mary, and was venerated by the faithful as such.

48 The image of the Virgin, with lost significance, was a symbol of
the Virgin Mary, and was venerated by the faithful as such.

49 The image of the Virgin, with lost significance, was a symbol of
the Virgin Mary, and was venerated by the faithful as such.
score strokes on the sides of the fleet; and in the favour of their primitive zeal, many secret sinners revealed their fault, and solicited their punishment. After some hesitation, the command of the Syrian army was delegated to Abu Obaidah, one of the fugitives of Mecca, and companions of Mahomet; whose zeal and devotion were assuaged, without being abated, by the singular mildness and benevolence of his temper. But in all the emergencies of war, the soldiers demanded the superior genius of Calid; and whoever might be the choice of the prince, the sword of God was both in fact and form the foremost leader of the Saracens. He obeyed without reluctance; he was consulted without jealousy; and such was the spirit of the man, or rather of the times, that Calid professed his readiness to serve under the banner of the faith, though it were in the hands of a child or an enemy. Glory, and riches, and dominion, were indeed promised to the victor Musulman; but he was carefully instructed, that if the goods of this life were his only incentive, they likewise would be his only reward.

One of the fifteen provinces of Syria, the cultivated lands to the eastward of the Jordan, had been decimated by Roman varnish with the name of Arabia; and the first arms of the Saracens were justified by the wantonness of a national right. The country was a marvel of the various benefits of trade; by the vigilance of the emperors it was covered with a line of forts; and the populous cities of Gerasa, Philadelphia, and Bosra, were scarred at least from a surprise, by the sold structure of their walls. To the last of these cities was the eighteenth station from Mowla; the road was familiar to the caravans of Hajar and Ira, who annually visited this plentiful market of the province and the desert; the perpetual jealousy of the Arabs had trained the inhabitants to arms; and twelve thousand horse could tally from the gates of Bosra, an apellation which signifies, in the Syrian language, a strong tower of defence. Encouraged by their first success against the open towns and flying parties of the borders, a detachment of four thousand Moslems presumed to summon and attack the fortress of Bosra. They were oppressed by the numbers of the Syrians: they were saved by the presence of Calid, with fifteen hundred horse: he blazed the enterprise, restored the battle, and rescued his friend, the valiant Surab. who had vainly invoked the unity of God and the protection of the apostle. After a short repose, the Moslems performed their ablutions with sand instead of water; and the morning prayer was recited by Calid before they mounted on horseback. Confident in their strength, the people of Bosra threw open their gates, drew their forces into the plain, and swore to die in the defence of their religion. But a religion of peace was incapable of withstandimg the fanatic cries of "Fight, fight! Paradise, paradise!" that re-echoed in the ranks of the Saracens; and the uproar of the town, the ringing of bells, and the exclamations of the priests and monks, increased the dismay and disorder of the Christians. With the loss of two hundred and thirty men, the Arabs remained masters of the field; and the ramparts of Bosra, in expectation of human or divine aid, were crowded with holy crosses and consecrated banners. The governor Romanus had recommended an early submission; desired by the people, and degraded from his office, he still retained the desire and opportunity of revenge. In a nocturnal interview, he informed the enemy of a sanguinary passage from his bosom under the wall of the city, the son of the caliph, with an hundred volunteers, were committed to the faith of this new ally, and their successful intrepidity gave an easy entrance to their companions. After Calid had imposed the terms of submission and tribute, the apostate took their number in the assembly of the people his illustrious treason. "I renounce your cirest," said Romanus, "both in this world, and the world to come; and I deny him that was crucified, and whosoever worships him. And I choose God for my Lord, Islam for my faith, Mecca for my temple, the Moslems for my brethren, and Mahomet for my prophet; who were sent to lead us into the right way, and to effect that just retribution in spite of those who join partakes with God.

The conquest of Bosra in four days' journey from Damascus, encouraged the Arabs to besiege the ancient capital of Syria. At some distance from the walls, they encamped among the groves and fountains of that delicious territory; and the usual option of the Mahometan faith, of tribute or of war, was proposed to the resident citizens, who had been lately strengthened by a reinforcement of five thousand Greeks. In the decline of the infamy of the military art, a hostile defiance was frequently offered and accepted by the gruestrons.
was again disturbed by a new enemy, the power of whose religion was more strongly felt than it was clearly understood by the Christians of the East. In his palace of Constantiopolis or Antioch, he was weakened by the invasion of Syria, the loss of Bosra, and the danger of Damascus. An army of seventy thousand veterans, or levies, was assembled at Homs or Emesa, under the command of his general Werdan; and the troops, consisting chiefly of cavalry, might be indifferently styled either Syrians, or Greeks, or Romans: Syrians, from the place of their birth; and Romans, from the proud appellation which was still professed by the successors of Constantine. On the plains of Athesina, as Werdan rode on a white mule adorned with gold chains, and surrounded with ensigns and standards, he was surprised by the near approach of a fierce and naked warrior, who had undertaken to view the states of the enemy. The adventurous valour of Deur was inspired, and has perhaps been adorned, by the enthusiasm of his age and country. The hatred of the Christians, the love of spoil, and the contempt of danger, were the ruling passions of the audacious Saracen; and the prospect of instant death could never shake his religious confidence, or ruffle the calmness of his resolution, or even inspire the frantick and mortal pleasure of his humour. In the most hopeless enterprises, he was bold, and prudent, and fortunate: after innumerable hazards, after being thrice a prisoner in the hands of the indi-
dels, he still survived to relate the achievements, and to enjoy the rewards, of the Syrian conquest. On this occasion, his single lance maintained a flying fight against thirty Romans, who were detached by Werdan: and after killing or capturing seventeen of their number, Deur returned in safety to his applauding brethren. When his rashness was mildly censured by the general, he excused himself with the simplicity of a soldier. "Nay," said Deur, "I did not begin first; but they came out to take me, and I was afraid that God should see me turn my back; and indeed I fought in good earnest, and without doubt God assisted me against them; and had I not been apprehended for disobeying your orders, I should not have come away as I did; and I perceive already that they will fall into our hands." In the presence of both armies, a valiant Greek advanced from the ranks with a liberal offer of peace; and the departure of the Saracens would have been purchased by a gift to each soldier, of a turban, a robe, and a piece of gold; ten robes and an hundred pieces to their leader; one hundred robes and a thousand pieces to the caliph. A smile of indignation expressed the refusal of Caleb. "Ye Christian dogs," you know your option: the Koran, etc.

[Note: The name of Werdan is uncertain in Thamarim, and, though given in Chroniclers, it was not recorded by the Arabs. If the姓名的 inhabitants have changed the Central name, the Arabs, by the influence of that race, have not always preserved the Greek character when it fell, but they now pronounced the Syrian appellation of Deur, something like the name of Werdan.]
tribute, or the sword. We are a people
whose delight is in war, rather than in peace;
and we despise your pitiful arms, since we
shall be speedily masters of your wealth,
your families, and your persons." Notwith-
standing this apparent disdain, he was deeply
conscious of the public danger; those who had
been in Persia, and had seen the armies of
Ctesiphon, confessed that they never beheld a
more formidable array. From the superiority
of the enemy, the artful Saracen derived a fresh
incentive of courage. "You see before you," he
said to the united forces of the Haman; you
cannot hope to escape, but you may conquer
Syria in a single day. The event depends on
your discipline and patience. Reserve your-
selves till the evening. It was in the evening
that the prophet was accustomed to van-
quish." During two successive engagements,
his temperate firmness sustained the efforts of
the enemy, and the murmurs of his troops. At
length, when the spirits and quivers of the
adverse line were almost exhausted, Caled gave
the signal of onset and victory. The remains
of the Imperial army fled to Antioch, or
Cis-
area, or Damascus; and the death of four
hundred and seventy Moslems was compensated
by the opinion that they had sent to hell above
fifty thousand of the infidels. The spoil was
inestimable; many banniers and crowns of gold
and silver, precious stones, silver and gold
chains, and innumerable suits of the richest
armour and apparel. The general distribution
was appointed; and Damascus should be taken;
but the numerous supply of arms became the
instrument of new victories. The glorious in-
telligence was transmitted to the throne of the
caliph; and the Arabian tribes, the coldest or
most hostile to the prophet's mission, were eager
and impatient to share the harvest of Syria.

The tidings were conveyed to Damascus by the speed of grief and
terror; and the inhabitants behold from their walls the return of the
heroes of Al-

natin. Amrou led the van at the head of nine
thousand horse: the bands of the Saracens suc-
ceded each other in formidably review; and
the rear was closed by Caled in person, with
the standard of the black eagle. To the activity of
Dezir he intrusted the commission of patrolling
round the city with two thousand horse, of
scouring the plain, and of intercepting all
enemy or intelligence. The rest of the Arabian
chiefs were fixed in their respective stations
before the seven gates of Damascus; and the
siege was renewed with fresh vigour and confidence.
The art, the labour, the military engines,
of the Greeks and Romans are seldom to be
found in the simple, though successful, oper-
ations of the Saracens: it was sufficient for them
to invent a city with arms, rather than with
tranches; to repel the sallies of the besieged; to
attempt a stratagem or an assault; or to expect
the progress of famine and discontent. Damascus
would have succumbed in the trial of Almasdin,
as a final and peremptory sentence between
the emperor and the caliph; her courage was rekin-
dled by the example and authority of Thomas,
a noble Greek, illustrations in a private condition
by the alliance of Heraclius. The tumults and
illumination of the night proclaimed the design
of the morning sally; and the Christian hero,
who affected to despise the enthusiasm of the
Arabs, employed the resource of a similar super-
position. At the principal gate, in the sight of
both armies, a lofty cedrel was erected: the
bishop, with his clergy, accompanied the march,
and laid the volume of the New Testament
before the image of Jesus; and the contending
parties were scandalised or seduced by a prayer,
that the Son of God would defend his servants
and vindicate his truth. The battle raged with
incessant fury; and the dexterity of Thomas,
an incomparable archer, was fatal to the boldest
Saracens, till their death was avenged by a
female heroine. The wife of Alman, who had
followed him to the holy war, embraced her
expired husband. "Happy," said she, "happy
art thou, my dear; thou art gone to thy Lord
who first joined us together, and then parted
us asunder. I will revenge thy death, and
endeavour to the utmost of my power to come
to the place where thou art, because I love
thee. Henceforth shall no man ever touch
me more, for I have dedicated myself to the
service of God." Without a groan, without a
tear, she washed the corpse of her husband, and
buried him with the usual rites. Then grasping
the many weapons, which in her native land
she was accustomed to wield, the intrepid widow
of Alman sought the place where his murderer
fought in the thickest of the battle. Her first
arrow pierced the hand of his standard-bearer;
her second wounded Thomas in the eye; and the
fainting Christians no longer behold their ensign
or their leader. Yet the generous champion
of Damascus refused to withdraw to his palace;
his wound was dressed on the rampart; the fight
was continued till the evening; and the Syrians
rested on their arms. In the silence of the night,
the signal was given by a stroke on the great
bell; the gates were thrown open, and each gate
discharged an impetuous column on the sleeping
camp of the Saracens. Caled was the first in
arms; at the head of four hundred horse he flew
to the post of danger, and the tears trickled down
his iron cheeks, as he uttered a fervent ejacula-
tion; "O God! who never sleep, look upon
thy servants, and do not deliver them into the
hands of their enemies." The valour and vic-
tory of Thomas was arrested by the presence of
the Sword of God; with the knowledge of the
prowl, the Moslems recovered their ranks, and
charged the assailsants in the flank and rear.
After the loss of thousands, the Christian general
retreated with a sigh of despair, and the pursuit
of the Saracens was checked by the military en-
gines of the rampart. 29
After a siege of seventy days, the patience, and perhaps the provisions, of the Damascenes were exhausted; and the bravest of their chiefs submitted to the hard dictates of necessity. In the occurrences of peace and war, they had been taught to brood the ferocity of Caled, and to reverence the mild virtues of Abu Obeidah. At the hour of midnight, one hundred chosen deputies of the clergy and people were introduced to the tent of that venerable commander. He received and dismissed them with courtesy. They returned with a written agreement, on the faith of a companion of Mahomet, that all hostilities should cease; that the voluntary envoys might depart in safety, with as much as they could carry away of their effects; and that the tributary subjects of the caliph should enjoy their lands and houses, with the use and possession of seven churches. On these terms, the most respectable hostages, and the gate nearest to his ramp, were delivered into his hands; his soldiers imitated the moderation of their chief; and he enjoyed the submissive gratitude of a people whom he had rescued from destruction. But the success of the treaty had relaxed their vigilance, and in the same month the opposite quarter of the city was betrayed and taken by assault. A party of an hundred Arabs had opened the eastern gate to a most inexcusable foe. "No quarter," cried the rapacious and sanguinary Caled, "no quarter to the enemies of the Lord!" His trumpets sounded, and a torrent of Christian blood was poured down the streets of Damascus. When he reached the church of St. Mary, he was astonished and provoked by the peaceful aspect of its companions; their swords were in the scabbard, and they were surrounded by a multitude of priests and monks. Abu Obeidah saluted the general; "God," said he, "has delivered the city into my hands by way of surrender, and has saved the believers from the trouble of fighting." "And am I not," replied the implacable Caled, "am I not the lieutenant of the commander of the faithful?" "Have I not taken the city by storm?" the unbelievers shall perish by the sword. Fall on! The humpy and cruel Arabs would have obeyed the welcome command; and Damascus was lost, if the intransigence of Abu Obeidah had not been supported by a distant and dignified personage. Throwing himself between the trembling citizens and the most eager of the barbarians, he adjured them by the holy name of God to respect his promise, to suspend their fury, and to wait the determination of their chiefs. The chiefs retired into the church of St. Mary; and after a vehement debate, Caled submitted in some measure to the reason and authority of his colleague; who urged the sanctity of a covenant, the advantage as well as the honour which the Moslems would derive from the punctual performance of their word, and the obstinate resistance which they must encounter from the distant and despotic of the rest of the Syrian cities. It was agreed that the sword should be sheathed, that the part of Damascus which had surrendered to Abu Obeidah should be immediately entitled to the benefit of his capitulation, and that the final decision should be referred to the justice and wisdom of the caliph. A large majority of the people accepted the terms of toleration and tribute; and Damascus is still peopled by twenty thousand Christians. But the valiant Thomas, and the freedom patriots who had fought under his banner, embraced the alternative of poverty and exile. In the adjacent meadow, a numerous encampment was formed of priests and laymen, of soldiers and citizens, of women and children; they collected, with haste and terror, their most precious movables; and abandoned with loud lamentations, or silent anguish, their native homes, and the pleasant banks of the Phanar. The inimitable soul of Caled was not touched by the spectacle of their distress; he disputed with the Damascenes the property of a magazine of corn; determined to exclude the garrison from the benefits of the treaty; consented with reluctance that each of the fugitives should arm himself with a sword, or a lance, or a bow; and sternly declared, that, after a respite of three days, they might be pursued and treated as the enemies of the Moslems.

The passion of a Syrian youth. The Romans of the city, to the name of Jonas, was betrothed to a wealthy maiden; but her parents delayed the consummation of his nuptials, and their daughter was persuaded to escape with the man whom she had chosen. They corrupted the nightly watchmen of the gate Kesiar; the lover, who led the way, was encompassed by a squadron of Arabs; but his exclamation in the Greek tongue, "the bird is taken," ammended his mistress to hasten her return. In the presence of Caled, and of death, the unfortunate Jonas professed his belief in one God, and his apostle Mahomet; and continued, till the strain of his martyrdom, to discharge the duties of a brave and sincere Musulman. When the city was taken, he flew to the monastery, where Emnecia had taken refuge; but the latter was forgotten; the apostate was scorned; she preferred her religion to her country; and the justice of Caled, though deaf to mercy, refused to detain by force a male or female inhabitant of Damascus. Four days was the general confined to the city by the obligation of the treaty, and the urgent cares of his new conquest. His appetite for blood and rapine
would have been extinguished by the hopeless computation of time and distance; but he listened to the importunities of James, who assured him that the weary fugitives might yet be overtaken. At the head of four thousand horse, in the disguise of Christian Arabs, Caled undertook the pursuit. They halted only for the moments of prayer; and their guide had a perfect knowledge of the country. For a long way the footsteps of the Damascenes were plain and conspicuous; they vanished on a sudden; but the Sarracens were comforted by the assurance that the courier had turned aside into the mountains, and must speedily fall into their hands. In traversing the ridges of the Libanus, they endured intolerable hardships, and the sinking spirits of the veteran fanatics were supported and cheered by the unceasing adoration of a lover. From a peasant of the country they were informed, that the emperor had sent orders to the colony of exiles to pursue without delay the road of the sea-coast, and of Constantinople; apprehensive, perhaps, that the soldiers and people of Antioch might be discouraged by the sight and the story of their sufferings. The Sarracens were conducted through the territories of Galasia and Laodi- cæa, at a cautious distance from the walls of the cities; the sun was intense, the night was dark; a single mountain separated them from the Roman army; and Caled, ever anxious for the safety of his brethren, whispered an anxious dream in the ear of his companion. With the dawn of day, the prospect again cleared, and they saw before them, in a pleasant valley, the tents of Damascenes. After a short interval of repose and prayer, Caled divided his cavalry into four squadrons, committing the first to his faithful Beren, and reserving the last for himself. They successively rushed on the protrusions multitude, insensibly provided with arms, and at last vanquished by sorrows and fatigue. Except a captive who was pardoned and dismissed, the Arabs enjoyed the satisfaction of believing that not a Christian of either sex escaped the edge of their scimitars. The gold and silver of Damascenes was scattered over the camp; and a royal wardrobe of three hundred roll of silk might clothe an army of naked barbarians. In the tumult of battle, James sought and found the object of his pursuit; but her remnant was inflamed by the last act of her pity and, as Emelco struggled in his fatal embrace, she struck a dagger to her heart. Another female, the widow of Thomas, and the real or supposed daughter of Heraclius, was spared and released without a ransom; but the gaiety of Caled was the effect of his contempt; and the haughty Sarracen insulted, by a message of defiance, the throne of the Caesars. Caled had pacified above an hundred and fifty miles into the heart of the Roman province: he returned to Damascus with the same secrecy and speed. On the accession of Osmur, the Sword of God was removed from the command; but the caliph, who blamed the rashness, was compelled to applaud the vigour and conduct of the enterprise.

Another expedition of the con- querors of Damascus will equally display their activity and their contempt for the riches of the present world. They were informed that the produce and manufactures of the country were annually collected in the fair of Abyla, about thirty miles from the city; that the emolument of devout hermit was visited at the same time by a multitude of pilgrims; and that the festival of trade and superstition was embellished by the voluntary of the daughter of the governor of Tripoli. Abdullah, the son of Jasfar, a glorious and holy martyr, was invested with a banner of five hundred horse, the Jones and profitable commission of visiting the insides. As he proceeded to the fair of Abyla, he was astonished by the report of the mighty concourse of Jews and Christians, Greeks and Arm- eans, of natives of Syria and strangers of Egypt, to the number of ten thousand, besides a guard of five thousand horse that attended the person of the bride. The Sarracens paused: "For my own part," said Abdullah, "I do not go back; our foes are many, our danger is great; but our reward is splendid and secure, either in this life or in the life to come. Let every man, according to his inclination, advance or retire." Not a Mussulman desisted his standard. "Lead the way," said Abdullah to his Christian guide, and you shall see how the companions of the prophet can perform. They charged in five squadrons; but after the first advantage of the surprise, they were encompassed and almost overwhelm by the multitude of their enemies; and their valiant hand is usefully compared to a white spot in the skin of a black camel. About the hour of sunset, when their weapons dropped from their hands, when they paused on the verge of eternity, they discovered an approaching cloud of dust, they heard the welcome sound of the techer, and they soon perceived the standard of Caled, who flew to their relief with the utmost speed of his cavalry. The Christians were broken by his attack, and slaughtered in their flight. As far as the river of Tripoli. They left behind them the various riches of the fair; the merchandise that were exposed for sale, the money that was brought for purchase, the gay decorations of the insides; and the governor's daughter, with forty of her female attendants. The drums, provisions, and furniture, the money, plate, and jewels, were diligently laden on the backs of horses, asses, and

---

25 The turf of Galasia and Laodi- cæa, which the Arabs passed, will be of a pasture for bees (Memorials, p. 11, 12. Froissart, vol. ii. 52. D'Ohsson, in his Letters, mentions a number of this tribe, to which he assigns between Antioch and the Taurus mountains. The Turcomans, as will happen to the forward track of the army of James, may also, under the direction of the Sarracens, have plundered the country, and have taken advantage of the untimely discovery of the emperor.

26 The gold and silver of Damascenes was scattered over the camp; and a royal wardrobe of three hundred rolls of silk might clothe an army of naked barbarians. In the tumult of battle, James sought and found the object of his pursuit; but the remnant was inflamed by the last act of her pity, and as Emelco struggled in his fatal embrace, she struck a dagger to her heart. Another female, the widow of Thomas, and the real or supposed daughter of Heraclius, was spared and released without a ransom; but the gaiety of Caled was the effect of his contempt; and the haughty Sarracen insulted, by a message of defiance, the throne of the Caesars. Caled had pacified above an hundred and fifty miles.

27 I was better than Ml. Klender, but, as Sony and many other Agamemnon, experienced, I was less than the Sarracen, when the Sarracen, after having seen their enemies the standard of their king, and the approach of the Sarracen, all arrayed in the same manner as the allies in the battle of the Lepanto (Libanius, p. 269), to the Arabs and:

28 Two thirds of the army, when we reached the town of Abyla, were not without surprise at the number of people in the streets; and of the ingenuity of the vassal, with all due respect; and of the ingenuity of the vassal, with all due respect, I am disposed to think that the number was no less than a million; but I was of the opinion that the number was no less than a million; but I was of the opinion that the number was no less than a million.
and the body robbers returned in triumph to Damascus. The hermit, after a short and angry controversy with Caleb, declined the crown of martyrdom, and was left alive in the solitary scene of blood and devastation.

Syria, one of the countries that have been improved by the most early cultivation, is not unworthy of the preference. The heat of the climate is tempered by the vicinity of the sea and mountains, by the plenty of wood and water; and the produce of a fertile soil affords the subsistence, and encourages the propagation, of man and animals. From the age of David to that of Herod, the country was overspread with ancient and flourishing cities; the inhabitants were numerous and wealthy; and, after the slow ravage of desolation and superstition, after the recent calamities of the Persian war, Syria could still attract and reward the rapacious tribes of the desert. A plain, of ten days' journey, from Damascus to Aleppo and Antioc, is watered, on the western side, by the winding course of the Orontes. The hills of Libanus and Anti-Libanus are planted from north to south, between the Orontes and the Mediterranean; and the eminences of Tell Abil (Cushsyria) was applied to a long and fruitful valley, which is confined in the same direction by the two ridges of snowy mountains. Among the cities, which are enumerated by Greek and Oriental annals in the geography and conquest of Syria, we may distinguish Emesa or Hema, Heliopolis or Baalbec, the former as the metropolis of the plain, the latter as the capital of the valley. Under the laws of the Caesars, they were strong and populous: the turrets glimmered from afar; an ample space was covered with public and private buildings; and the citizens were illustrious by their spirit, or at least by their pride; by their riches, or at least by their luxury. In the days of paganism, both Emesa and Heliopolis were addicted to the worship of Baal, or the sun; but the decline of their superstition and splendour is marked by a singular variety of fortunes. Not a vestige remains of the temple of Emesa, which was equalled in poetic style to the sanctuaries of mount Libanus, while the ruins of Baalbec, invisible to the writers of antiquity, excite the curiosity and wonder of the European traveller. The measure of the temple is two hundred feet in length, and one hundred in breadth; the front is adorned with a double portico of eight columns; fourteen may be counted on each side; and each column, forty-five feet in height, is composed of three massive blocks of stone or marble. The proportions and ornaments of the Corinthian order express the architecture of the Greeks; but as Baalbec has never been the seat of a monarch, we are at a loss to conceive how the expense of those magnificent structures could be supplied by private or municipal liberality. From the conquest of Damascus the Saracens proceeded to Heliopolis and Emesa: but I shall decline the repetition of the valiant and combats which have been already shown on a larger scale. In the prosecution of the war, their policy was not less effectual than their sword. By short and separate troops they dissolved the union of the enemy; accustomed the Syrians to compare their friendship with their vanity; familiarized the idea of their language, religion and manners; and extirpated by clandestine purchase, the magazines and armories of the cities which they returned to be rape. They aggrandized the ransom of the more wealthy, or the more obstinate; and Chalcis alone was taxed at five thousand ounces of gold, five thousand ounces of silver, two thousand bracelets of silk, and as many figs and olives as would load five thousand asses. But the love of truly or capitation were faithfully observed; and the inhabitants of the caliph, who had promised not to enter the walls of the captive Baalbe, remained tranquil and immovable in his tent till the jarring factions solicited the interposition of a foreign master. The conquest of the plain and valley of Syria was achieved in less than two years. Yet the commander of the faithful rejoiced the slumber of his progress; and the Saracens, bewailing their fruit with tears of rage and repentance, called aloud on their chiefs to lead them forth to fight the battles of the Lord. In a recent action, under the walls of Emesa, an Arabian youth, the cousin of Caleb, was heard aloud to exclaim, "I think I see the black-eyed girls looking upon me; one of whom, should she appear in this world, all mankind would die for love of her. And I set in the hand of one of them, an handkerchief of green silk, a and a seal of precious stones, and she beckons me up, and calls out, Come hither quickly, for I love thee." With these words, charging the Christians, he made havoc wherever he went, till, observed at length by the governor of Hema, he was struck through with a javelin.
It was incumbent on the Saracens to exert the full powers of their valor and enthusiasm against the forces of the emperor, who was taught by repeated losses, that the reverses of the desert had undertaken, and would speedily achieve, a regular and permanent conquest. From the provinces of Europe and Asia, four thousand eight hundred thousand soldiers were transported by sea and land to Anasch and Cassura: the light troops of the army consisted of sixty thousand Christian Arabs of the tribe of Gassan. Under the banner of Jubaibah, the last of their princes, they marched in the van; and it was a maxim of the Greeks, that, for the purpose of cutting diamond, a diamond was the most effectual. Heractius withheld his person from the dangers of the field; but his presumption, or perhaps his despondency, suggested a peremptory order, that the fate of the province and the war should be decided by a single battle. The Syrians were attached to the standard of Rome and of the cross; but the noble, the citizen, the peasant, were exasperated by the injustice and cruelty of a licentious host, who oppressed them as subjects, and despised them as strangers and aliens. A report of these mighty preparations was conveyed to the Saracens in their camp of Emma; and the chiefs, though resolved to fight, assembled a counsel; the faith of Abu Obeidah would have expected on the same spot the glory of martyrdom; the wisdom of Caedel advised an honorable retreat to the skirts of Palestine and Arabia, where they might await the succors of their friends, and the attack of the unbelievers. A speedy messenger was sent from the throne of Medina, with the blessings of Omar and Ali, the prayers of the widows of the prophets, and a reinforcement of eight thousand Moors. In their way they overpowered a detachment of Greeks, and when they joined at Yermuk the camp of their brethren, they found the pleasing intelligence, that Caedel had already defeated and scattered the Christian Arabs of the tribe of Gassan. In the neighborhood of Bosra, the springs of Mount Hermon descend in a torrent to the plain of Decapolis, or ten cities; and the Hiermae, a stream which has been corrupted to Yermuk, is lost after a short course in the lake of Tiberias. The banks of this obscure stream were illustrated by a long and bloody encounter. On this momentous occasion, the public voices, and the modesty of Abu Obeidah, restored the command to the most deserving of the Moors. Caedel assumed his station in the front; his colleagues were posted in the rear, that the disorder of the fugitives might be checked by his retributive aspect and the sight of the yellow banner which Mahomet had displayed before the walls of Carthage. The last line was occupied by the sister of Dibus, with the Arabian women who had assisted in this holy war, who were accustomed to wield the bow and the lance, and who in a moment of captivity had defended, against the uncircumcised and ruthless, their chastity and religion. The exultation of the generals was brief and forcible: "Paradise is before you, the devil and hell-fire in your rear." Yet such was the weight of the Roman cavalry, that the right wing of the Arabs was broken and separated from the main body. Thrice did they retreat in disorder, and thrice were they driven back to the charge by the proclamations and blows of the women. In the intervals of action, Abu Obeidah visited the tents of his brethren, prolonged their repose by repeating at once the prayers of two different hours; bound up their wounds with his own hands, and administered the comfortable reflection, that the infidels perished of their sufferings without partaking of their reward. Four thousand and thirty of the Moors were buried in the field of battle; and the skill of the Armenian archers enabled seven hundred to boast that they had lost an eye in that meritorious service. The veterans of the Syrian war acknowledged that it was the hardest and most doubtful of the days which they had seen. But it was likewise the decisive: many thousands of the Greeks and Syrians fell by the swords of the Arabs; many were slaughtered, after the defeat, in the woods and mountains; many, by mistake of the ford, were drowned in the waters of the Yermuk; and however the loss may be magnified, the Christian writers confess and bewail the bloody punishment of their sins. Manuel, the Roman general, was either killed at Damascas, or took refuge in the monastery of Mount Sion. An exile in the Byzantine court, Jubaibah lamented the manners of Arabia, and his unhappy preference of the Christian cause. He had once inclined to the profession of Islam; but in the pilgrimage of Mecca, Jubaibah was provoked to strike one of his brethren, and died with amazement from the stern and equal justice of the caliph. The victorious Saracens enjoyed at Damascus a month of pleasure and repose; but the spoil was divided by the discretion of Abu Obeidah: an equal share was allotted to a soldier and to his horse, and a double portion was reserved for the noble couriers of the Arabian breed.

After the battle of Yermuk, the Roman army no longer appeared in the field; and the Saracens might have selected the field of battle for the seat of government, and made precipice deep channel (Vers. 961)
securely choose among the fortified towns of Syria, the first object of their attack. They consulted the caliph whether they should march to Caesar or Jerusalem; and the advice of Ali determined the immediate siege of the latter.

To a profane eye, Jerusalem was the first or second capital of Palestine; but after Mecca and Medina, it was revered and visited by the devout Moslems, as the temple of the Holy Land, which had been sanctified by the revelation of Moses, of Jesus, and of Mahomet himself. The son of Abu Sofian was sent with five thousand Arabs to try the first experiment of surprise or treaty; but on the eleventh day, the town was invested by the whole force of Abu Obaidah. He addressed the customary summons to the chief commanders and people of "Elah." He was met with "Health and happiness to every one that follows the right way! We require of you to testify that there is but one God, and that Mahomet is his Apostle. If you refuse this, consent to pay tribute, and be amenable to justice. Otherwise I shall bring the men against you who love death better than you do; in drinking of wine or eating hogs' flesh. Nor will I ever sit from you. If it please God, till I have destroyed those that fight for you, and make slaves of your children..." But the city was defended on every side by deep valleys and steep ascents; since the invasion of Syria, the walls and towers had been anxiously restored; the heaviest of the fugitives of Yermuk had stopped in the nearest place of refuge; and in the defence of the sepulchre of Christ, the natives and strangers might feel some sparks of the enthusiasm which so fiercely glowed in the bosoms of the Saracens. The siege of Jerusalem lasted four months; not a day was lost without some action of sally or assault; the military engines incessantly played from the ramparts; and the inclemency of the winter was still more painful and destructive to the Arabs. The Christians yielded at length to the perseverance of the besiegers. The patriarch Sophronius appeared on the walls, and by the voice of an interpreter demanded a conference. After a vain attempt to dissuade the lieutenant of the caliph from his impious enterprise, he proposed, in the name of the people, a fair capitulation, with this extraordinary clause, that the articles of security should be ratified by the authority and presence of Omar himself. The question was debated in the council of Medina; the sanctity of the place, and the advice of Ali, persuaded the caliph to gratify the wishes of his soldiers and enemies; and the simplicity of his journey is more illustrious than the royal pageants of vanity and oppression. The conqueror of Persia and Syria was mounted on a red camel, which carried, besides his person, a bag of corn, a bag of dates, a wooden dish, and a leather bottle of water. Wherever he halted, the company, without distinction, was invited to partake of his bountiful fare, and the repast was consecrated by the prayer and exhortation of the commander of the faithful. But in this expedition or pilgrimage, his power was exercised in the administration of justice: he reformed the licentious polygyny of the Arabs, relieved the tributaries from extortion and cruelty, and chastised the luxury of the Saracens, by despoiling them of their rich silks, and dragging them on their faces in the dirt. When he came within sight of Jerusalem, the caliph cried with a loud voice, "God is victorious. O Lord, give us an easy conquest; and, pitching his tent of course hair, calmly seated himself on the ground. After signing the capitulation, he entered the city without fear or precaution; and courteously dismissed with the patriarch concerning its religious antiquities. Sophronius showed before his new master, and secretly muttered, in the words of Daniel, "The abomination of desolation is in the holy place." At the hour of prayer they stood together in the church of the Resurrection; but the caliph refused to perform his devotions, and contented himself with praying on the steps of the church of Constantine. To the patriarch he disclosed his prudent and honourable motive. "Had I yielded," said Omar, "to your request, the Moslems of a future age would have infringed the treaty under colour of imitating my example." By his command the ground of the temple of Solomon was prepared for the foundation of a mosque; and, during a residence of ten days, he regulated the present and future state of his Syrian conquests. Medina might be jealous, lest the caliph should be detained by the sanctity of Jerusalem or the beauty of Damascus; her apprehensions were dispelled by his prompt and voluntary return to the tomb of the apostle. To achieve what yet remained of the Syrian war, the caliph had formed two separate armies; a chosen detachment, under Amron and Yeriel, was left in the camp of Palestine, while the larger division, under the standard of Abu Obaidah and Calae, marched south to the north against Antiob and Aleppo. The latter of these, the Beren of the Greeks, was not yet illustrious as the capital of a province or a kingdom; and the inhabitants, by anticipating..."
their submission and pleading their poverty, obtained a moderate composition for their lives and religion. But the castle of Aleppo, distant from the city, stood erect on a lofty artificial mound; the sides were sharpened to a precipice, and faced with freestone; and the breadth of the ditch might be filled with water from the neighbouring springs. After the loss of three thousand men, the garrison was still equal to the defence; and Youskima, their valiant and hereditary chief, had murdered his brother, an holy monk, for daring to pronounce the name of God. In a siege of four or five months, the hardiness of the Syrian war, great numbers of the Saracens were killed and wounded; their removal to the distance of a mile could not solace the vigilance of Youskima; nor could the Christians be terrified by the execution of three hundred captives, whom they beheaded before the castle wall. The alliance, and at length the complaints, of Abu Obiediah enforced the callipg that their hope and patience were commended at the foot of this impregnable fortress. I am variously affected," replied Ossar, by the difference of your success; but "I charge you by no means to raise the siege of the castle. Your retreat would diminish the reputation of our arms, and encourage the infidels to fall upon you on all sides. Remain before Aleppo till God shall determine the event, and forage with your horse round the adjacent country." The exhortation of the commander of the faithful was fortified by a supply of volunteers from all the tribes of Arabs who arrived in the camp on horses or on foot. Among these were Dames, of a servile birth, but of gigantic size, and intransigent resolution. The forty-seventh day of his service he proposed, with only thirty men, to make an attempt on the castle. The experience and testimony of Caleb recommended his offer; and Abu Obiediah administered his blessing not to despise the lower origin of Dames, since he himself, could he relinquish the public care, would cheerfully serve under the banner of the slave. His design was covered by the appearance of a retreat, and the camp of the Saracens was pitched about a league from Aleppo. The thirty adventurers lay in ambush at the foot of the hill; and Dames at length succeeded in his enterprises, though he was provoked by the ignorance of his Greek captives. God curse these dogs," said the illustrious Arab, what a strange barbarous language they speak! "At the darkest hour of the night, he scaled the most accessible height, which he had diligently surveyed, a place where the stones were less upright, or the slope less perpendicular, or the guard less vigilant. Seven of the stoutest Saracens mounted on each other's shoulders, and the weight of the column was sustained on the broad and sinewy back of the gigantic slave. The foremost in this painful ascent could grasp and climb the lowest part of the battlements; they silently stabbed and cast down the sentinels; and the thirty thence, repeating a pious ejaculation, O apostle of God, help and deliver us! were successively drawn up by the long lods of their turbons. With bold and cautious footsteps, Dames explored the palace of the governor, who celebrated, in riotous exultation, the festival of his deliverance. From thence returning to his companions, he assaulted on the inside the entrance of the castle. They overpowered the guard, unbolst the gate, let down the drawbridge, and defended the narrow pass, till the arrival of Caleb, with the dawn of day, relieved their danger and assured their conquest. Youskima, a formidable foe, became an active and useful proselyte; and the generals of the Saracens expressed their regard for the most humble merit, by detaining the army at Aleppo till Dames was cured of his honourable wounds. The capital of Syria was still covered by the castle of Anazarb, and the iron bridge of the Orontes. After the loss of those important posts, and the defeat of the last of the Roman armies, the luxury of Antioch trembling and obeyed. Her safety was assured with three hundred thousand pieces of gold; but the throne of the successors of Alexander, the seat of the Roman government in the East, which had been decorated by Caesar with the titles of free, and holy, and inviolate, was degraded under the yoke of the caliph to the secondary rank of a provincial town.

In the life of Heraclius, the glories of the Persian war are clouded by the death of his son; and he was forced to make a hasty departure from the scene of action; but the troops were left no more; and the loss of Damascus and Jerusalem, the bloody fields of Antioch and Yermuk, may be imputed in some degree to the absence or misconduct of the sovereign. Instead of defending the sepulchre of Christ, he involved the church and state in a metaphysical controversy for the unity of his will; and while Heraclius crowned the offspring of his second marriage, he was merely stripped of the most valuable part of their inheritance. In the cathedral of Antioch, in the presence of the bishops, at the foot of the crucifix, he bewailed the sins of his ancestors, and lamented the great calamity that had befallen the country
of the prince and people; but his confession instructed the world, that it was vain, and perhaps injurious, to resist the judgment of God. The Saracens were inexcusable in fact, since they were inexcusable in opinion; and the desertion of Youkims, his false repentance and repeated perfidy, might justify the suspicion of the emperor, that he was encompassed by traitors and apostates, who conspired to betray his person and their country to the enemies of Christ. In the hour of adversity, his superstition was agitated by the ominous dreams of a fallen crown; and after bidding an eternal farewell to Syria, he secretly embarked with a few attendants, and absolved the faith of his subjects. Constantino, his eldest son, had been stationed with forty thousand men at Caesarea, the civil metropolis of the three provinces of Palestine. But his private interest recalled him to the Byzantine court; and, after the flight of his father, he felt himself an unequal champion to the united force of the caliph. His vanguard was boldly attacked by three thousand Arabs and a thousand black slaves, who, in the depth of winter, had climbed the snowy mountains of Libanus, and who were speedily followed by the victorious squadrone of Caled himself. From the north and south, the troops of Aboch and Jerusalem advanced along the sea-shore, till their hussars were joined under the walls of the Phoenician cities: Tripoli and Tyre were betrayed; and a fleet of fifty transports, which entered without distress the captive harbours, brought a considerable supply of arms and ammunition to the camp of the Saracens. Their labours were terminated by the unexpected surrender of Caesarea; the human prince had embarked in the night; and the defenceless citizens solicited their pardon with an offering of two hundred thousand pieces of gold. The remainder of the province, Ramhal, Phoenice or Acre, Sichem, et Naphis, Gaba, Azalone, Byblus, Sidon, Gaulais, Leucania, Apamea, Hieropolis, no longer presumed to dispute the will of the conqueror; and Syria bowed under the sceptre of the caliphs seven hundred years after Pompsey had despoiled the last of the Macedonian kings.

The sieges and battles of six campaigns had consumed many thousands of the Moslems. They died with the reputation and the cheerfulness of martyrs; and the simplicity of their faith may be expressed in the words of an Arabian youth, whom he embraced, for the last time, his sister and mother. "It is not," said he, "the dictates of Syria, or the feeling delights of this world, that have prompted me to devote my life in the cause of religion. But I seek the favour of God and his apostle; and I have heard, from one of the companions of the prophet, that the spirits of the martyrs will be lodged in the crops of green birds, who shall taste the fruits, and drink of the rivers, of paradise. Farewell, we shall meet again among the groves and fountains which God has provided for his elect." The faithful captives might exercise a passive and more arduous resolution; and a cousin of Mahommed is celebrated for refusing, after an abstinence of three days, the wine and porc, the only nourishment that was allowed by the malice of the infidels. The frrety of some weaker brethren exaggerated the implacable spirit of fanaticism; and the father of Anser deplored, in pathetic strains, the apostasy and damnation of a son, who had renounced the promises of God, and the intercession of the prophet, to occupy, with the priests and dervises, the lowest mansions of Hulul. The more fortunate Arabs, who survived the war, and persevered in the faith, were restrained by their abominations, leader from the abuse of prosperity. After a refreshment of three days, Abu Ubaidah withdrew his troops from the pernicious contagion of the luxury of Antioch, and assured the caliph that their religion and virtue could only be preserved by the hard discipline of poverty and labour. But the virtue of Omer, however rigorous to himself, was kind and liberal to his brethren. After a just tribute of praise and thanksgiving, he dropped a tear of compassion; and sitting down on the ground, wrote an answer, in which he mildly censured the severity of his lieutenant; "God," said the successor of the prophet, "has not forbidden the use of the good things of this world to faithful men, and such as have performed good works. Therefore you ought to have given them leave to rest themselves, and partake freely of those good things which the country affordeth. If any of the Saracens have no family in Arabia, they may marry in Syria; and whosoever of them wants any female slaves, he may purchase as many as he hath occasion for." The conquerors prepared to use, or to abuse, this gracious permission; but the year of their triumph was marked by a mortality of men and cattle; and twenty-five thousand Saracens were starved away from the possession of Syria. The death of Abu Ubaidah might be lamented by the Christians; but his brethren recollected that he was one of the ten elect whom the prophet had named as the heirs of paradise. Caled survived his brethren about three years; and the tomb of the Sword of God is shown in the neighborhood of Emeza. His valor, which formed in Arabia and Syria the empire of the caliphs, was fortified by the opinion of a special providence; and as long as he wore a cap, which had been blessed by Mahommed, he deemed himself..."
often described as one of the wonders of the ancient world. They were collected by the diligence of the Saracens, and sold to a Jewish merchant of Edessa, who is said to have taken nine hundred camels with the weight of the brass metal; an enormous weight, though we should include the hundred colossal figures, and the three thousand statues, which adorned the prosperity of the city of the sun.

II. The conquest of Egypt may be explained by the character of the victorious Saracen, one of the first of his nation, in an age when the meanest of the brethren was exalted above his nature by the spirit of enthusiasm. The birth of Amrou was at once base and illustrious; his mother, a notorious prostitute, was unable to decide among free of the Korish; but the proof of resemblance unjudged the child to Asl, the oldest of her lovers. The youth of Amrou was impelled by the passions and prejudices of his kindred; his poetic genius was exercised in satirical verses against the person and doctrine of Mahomet; his dexterity was employed by the reigning faction to pursue the religious exiles; who had taken refuge in the court of the Ethiopian king. Yet he returned from this embassy, a secret proselyte; his reason or his interest determined him to renounce the worship of idols; he escaped from Mecca with his friend Calid, and the prophet of Medina enjoyed at the same moment the satisfaction of embracing the two firmest champions of his cause. The impatience of Amrou to lead the armies of the faithful was shamed by the reproach of Omar, who advised him not to seek power and dominion, since he who is a subject to-day, may be a prince tomorrow. Yet his merit was not overlooked by the two first successors of Mahomet; they were indebted to his arms for the conquest of Palestine; and in all the battles against the islands of Syria, he united with the temper of a chief, the valour of an adventurous soldier. In the desert to Medina, the caliph expressed a wish to give to the sword which had cut down so many Christians warriors, the name of Amrou, unshaken a short and ordinary name; and as he perceived the surprise of Omar, "Aleas!" said the modest Saracen, "the sword itself, without the arm of its master, is neither sharper nor more weighty than the sword of Pharaoh, the poet." After the conquest of Egypt, he was recalled by the jealousy of the caliph Othman; but in the subsequent troubles, the ambition of a soldier, a statesman, and an orator, emerged from a private station. His powerful support, both in council and in the field, established the throne of

---

35. As you had given, so I have given. 33. The Process, of the Roman law, as referred to at the end of the list of cases, which the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 32. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 31. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 30. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 29. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 28. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 27. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 26. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 25. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 24. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 23. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 22. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 21. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 20. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 19. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 18. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 17. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 16. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 15. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 14. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 13. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 12. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 11. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 10. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 9. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 8. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 7. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 6. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 5. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 4. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 3. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 2. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 1. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, 0. And the judge of the court of Talmud, the Zaddic, may present to the king, -1.
the country, as far as the ruins of Heliopolis and the neighbourhood of the modern Cairo.

On the western side of the Nile, the city of Memphis, at a small distance to the east of the pyramids, at a small distance to the south of the Delta, Memphis, one hundred and fifty leagues in circumference, displayed the magnificence of ancient kings. Under the reign of the Ptolemies and Caesars, the seat of government was removed to the sea-coast; the ancient capital was eclipsed by the arts and opulence of Alexandria; the palaces, and at length the temples, were reduced to a desolate and ruinous condition: yet in the age of Augustus, and even in that of Constantine, Memphis was still numbered among the greatest and most populous of the provincial cities. The banks of the Nile, in this place of the breadth of three thousand feet, were united by two bridges of sixty and of thirty boats, connected in the middle stream by the small island of Bousa, which was covered with gardens and habitations. The eastern extremity of the bridge was terminated by the town of Babylon and the camp of a Roman legion, which protected the passage of the river and the second capital of Egypt. This important fortress, which might fairly be described as a part of Memphis or Heliopolis, was invented by the arms of the lieutenant of Omar; a reinforcement of four thousand Saracens was sent to him in his camp; and the military engines which battered the walls may be imputed to the art and labour of his Syrian allies. Yet the siege was protracted to seven months; and the rash invaders were encompassed and threaten by the inundation of the Nile. Their last assault was bold and successful; they passed the ditch, which had been fortified with iron spikes, applied their scaling-ladders, entered the fortress with the shout of God is victorious, and drove the remnant of the Greeks to their boats and the island of Bousa. The spot was afterwards recommended to the conqueror by the easy communication with the gulf and the peninsula of Arabia; the remains of Memphis were deserted; the tents of the Arabs were converted into permanent habitations; and the first march was blessed by the presence of fourscore companions of Mahomet.

A new city arose in their camp on the eastern bank of the Nile; and the contiguous quarters of Babylon and Fustat are conformed in their present decay by the appellation of old Misirah or Cairo, of which they form an extensive suburb. But the name of Cairo, the town of victory, more strictly belongs to the modern

**Footnotes:**

81 For the life and character of Amur, see Oliver Uxinn, of the Pallatines, vol. i., p. 129, 133, 134, 136, 138, 146, and at the end of the second volume, p. 231. From Commissaries of the Propagation of the Faith, the Consuls and Ministers, etc., etc., vol., p. 650, 1626. The numbers in the margin are those given to the press in Arabic. The page in the margin is 97. For the multiplication of the faithful, see also Gibbon, Hist, of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire, vol. i. p. 196, 197, 208; see also Pococke, The History of Egypt, etc., p. 30, 31, 32, 33, etc., etc., etc., etc., etc., etc.

81 Of the existing monuments in the province of Egypt, and of the ancient Memoirs of the History of the province of Egypt, in the year 1800, and subsequent years, the author is not aware of any that have been discovered by the Romans, or that have been seen by the Rev. Mr. Warren, or any other." Mr. Uxinn, in his voyage to the Levant, mentions the ruins of Heliopolis, and the ruins of the ancient city of Memphis. The latter was destroyed by Constantine, and the former by the Persians. The city of Babylon was built by the Ptolemies, and the city of Fustat was founded by the Arabs. The city of Cairo was founded by the Mamelukes in the 12th century, and was the capital of the Ottoman Empire until 1801. The city of Heliopolis was an ancient city in Egypt, and was known for its temple of the sun god, Re. It was one of the most important cities of the early Egyptian civilization, and was destroyed by the Persians in 1303 BC.
capital, which was founded in the tenth century by the Fatimite caliph. It has gradually recorded from the river, but the continuity of buildings may be traced by an attentive eye from the monuments of Saiut to those of Saladin.

Yet the Arabs, after a glorious victory and plentiful enterprise, must have returned to the desert, lest they not found a powerful alliance in the heart of the country. The rapid conquest of Alexander was assisted by the surprise and revolt of the natives; they subdued their Persian oppressors, the disciples of the Magi, who had burnt the temples of Egypt, and feasted with sacrilegious appetite on the flesh of the god Apos. After a period of ten centuries the same revolution was renewed by a similar cause; and in the support of an incomprehensible creed, the zeal of the Coptic Christians was equally ardent. I have already explained the origin and progress of the Manichean controversy, and the persecution of the emperors, which converted a sect into a nation, and alienated Egypt from their religion and government. The Saracens were received as the deliverers of the Coptic church; and a secret and effectual treaty was opened during the siege of Memphis between a victorious army and a people of slaves. A rich and noble Egyptian, of the name of Mokawas, had dissuaded his faith to obtain the administration of his province; in the disorders of the Persian war he was exiled to independence; the embassy of Mahomet ranked him among princes; but he declined, with rich gifts and ambiguous compliments, the proposal of a new religion. The abuse of his trust exposed him to the resentment of Hasselm; his submission was delayed by arrogance and fear; and his conscience was perplexed by interest to throw himself on the favour of the nation and the support of the Saracens. In his first conference with Amr, he heard without indignation the usual option of the Koran, the tributes, or the sword. "The Greeks," replied Mokawas, "are determined to divide the determination of the sword; but with the Greeks I desire no communion, either in this world or in the next, and I abjure for ever the Byzantine tyrant, his synod of Chalcodon, and his Manichean slaves. For myself and my brethren, we are resolved to live and die in the profession of the Gospel and unity of Christ. It is impossible for us to embrace the revelations of your prophet; but we are desirous of peace, and cheerfully submit to pay tribute and obedience to his temporal successors." The tribute was uncertain at two pieces of gold for the head of every Christian; but old men, women, and children of both sexes, under sixteen years of age, were exempted from this personal assessment: the Copts above and below Memphi swore allegiance to the caliph, and promised an hospitable entertainment of three days in every Musulman who should travel through their country. By this charter of security, the ecclesiastical and civil tyranny of the Melchites was destroyed; the muhtesem of St. Cyril were throned from every pulpit; and the sacred edifices, with the patrimony of the church, were restored to the national communion of the Copts, who enjoyed without moderation the moment of triumph and revenge. At the pressing summons of Amrus, their patriarch Benjamin emerged from his desert; and, after the first interview, the courteous Arab affected to declare, that he had never conversed with a Christian priest of more innocent manners and a more venerable aspect. In the march from Memphis to Alexandria the lieutenant of Omar issued his safety to the real and gratitude of the Egyptians: the roads and bridges were diligently repaired; and in every step of his progress, he could depend on a constant supply of provisions and intelligence. The Greeks of Egypt, whose numbers could scarcely equal a tenth of the nation, were overwhelmed by the universal defection; they had never been hated, they were no longer feared; the magistrate fled from his tribunal, the bishop from his altar; and the distant provinces were surprised or starved by the surrounding multitudes. Had not the Nile afforded a safe and ready conveyance to the sea, no individual could have escaped, who by birth, or language, or office, or religion, was connected with their ancient name.

By the retreat of the Greeks from the provinces of Upper Egypt, a considerable force was collected in the island of Delta; the natural and artificial channels of the Nile afforded a succession of strong and defendable posts; and the road to Alexandria was laboriously cleared by the victory of the Saracens in two-and-twenty days of general or partial combat. In their annals of conquest, the siege of Alexandria is perhaps the most arduous and important enterprise. The first attacking city in the world was suddenly replenished with the means of seduction and
and diminished numbers, and the standard of 
Mahomyem was planted on the walls of the 
capital of Egypt. "I have taken," said Amnor 
to the caliph, "the great city of the West. It is 
impossible for me to enumerate the variety of 
its riches and beauty; and I shall content 
myself with observing, that it contains four 
thousand palaces, four thousand baths, four 
hundred theatres or places of amusement, 
\twelve thousand shops for the sale of vege-
table foods and forty thousand tributary 
Jews. The town has been subdu'd by force of 
\narms, without treaty or capitulation, and the 
\nMahomyms are impatient to seize the fruits of 
\ntheir victory."

The command of the 
faithful rejected with scorn the terms of 
presentation, and directed his lieutenant to 
secure the wealth 
and revenue of Alexandria for the public service 
and the propagation of the faith; the inhabi-
tants were murdered; a tribute was imposed; 
the spoil and remnant of the Jacobites were 
curbed, and the Melchites who submitted to 
the Arabian yoke were indulged in the obscurity, 
but tranquil, exercise of their worship. The 
intelligence of this disgraceful and calamitous 
event affered the declining health of the 
emperor; and Heracles died of a disease 
about seven weeks after the loss of Alexandria. Under the minority of his grandson, the ele-
ments of a people, deprived of their daily suste-
nance, compelled the Byzantine court to un-
dertake the recovery of the capital of Egypt. 
In the space of four years, the harbours and 
fortifications of Alexandria were twice occupied 
by a fleet and army of Romans. They were 
twice expelled by the valor of Amnor, who was 
recalled by the domestic peril from the distant 
woods of Tripoli and Nubia. But the facility 
of the attempt, the repetition of the insult, and 
the obstinacy of the resistance, provoked him to 
swear, if a third time he drove the infidels 
into the sea, he would render Alexandria as 
accessible on all sides as the house of a pro-
stitute. Faithful to his promise, he dismantled 
several parts of the walls and towers, but the 
people were spared in the chastisement of the 
city, and the morn of Mercy was erected on 
the spot where the victorious general had 
stopped the fury of his troops.

I should deceive the expectation of the reader, if I passed in silence 
the censure of the Alexandrian library, as it is de-
scribed by the learned Abulpharagius. The 
spirit of Amnor was more curious and liberal 
than that of his nephew, and in one hundred 
hours the Arabian chief was conversed with the 
conversation of John, the last disciple of 
Apostle, and who derived the surname of Philo-
pus from his laborious studies of grammar 
and philosophy. Emboldened by this fami-

\[12\] Bithus, Joseph xcvii: 1-4-5. xcvii: 10-12, 19-23.

\[13\] Bithus, Joseph xcvii: 1-4-5. xcvii: 10-12, 19-23.

\[14\] Bithus, Joseph xcvii: 1-4-5. xcvii: 10-12, 19-23.
But in the intercourse, Philoponus presumed to solicit a gift, insatiable in his opinion, contemptible in that of the barbarians; the royal library, which alone, among the spoils of Alexandria, had not been appropriated by the visit and the zeal of the conqueror. Ammianus was inclined to gratify the wish of the grammarian, but his rigid integrity refused to alienate the minutest object without the consent of the caliph; and the well-known answer of Omar was inspired by the ignorance of a fanatic. If these writings of the Greeks agree with the book of God, they are useless and need not be preserved; if they disagree, they are pernicious and ought to be destroyed." The sentence was executed with blind obedience: the volumes of paper or parchment were distributed to the four thousand baths of the city; and such was their incredible multitude, that six months were barely sufficient for the consumption of this precious fuel. Since the description of Abulpharagius, have been given to the world in a Latin version, the tale has been repeatedly transcribed; and every scholar, with pious indignation, has deplored the irreparable shipwreck of the learning, the arts, and the genius of antiquity. For my own part, I am strongly tempted to dwell on both the fact and the consequences. The fact is indeed marvellous; "Read and wonder," says the historian himself; and the solitary report of a stranger who wrote at the end of six hundred years on the confines of Media, is overbalanced by the silence of two emirs of a more early date, both Christians, both natives of Egypt, and the most ancient of whom, the patriarch Eutychius, has simply described the conquest of Alexandria. The right sentence of Omar is repugnant to the sound and orthodox precept of the Mahometan casuists; they expressly declare, that the religious books of the Jews and Christians, which are acquired by the right of war, should never be committed to the flames; and that the works of profane science, historians or poets, physicians or philosophers, may be lawfully applied to the use of the faithful. A more destructive and may perhaps be attributed to the first successors of Mahomet; yet in this instance, the confiscation would have speedily expired in the deficiency of materials. I shall not recapitulate the disasters of the Alexandrian library, the involuntary flame that was kindled by Omar in his own defence, or the mischievous bigotry of the Christians who studied to destroy the monuments of idolatry. But if we gradually descend from the age of the Antimones to that of Theodorus, we shall learn from a chain of contemporary witnesses, that the royal palace and the temple of Serapis no longer contained the four, or the seven, hundred thousand volumes, which had been assembled by the curiosity and magnificence of the Ptolemies. Perhaps the church and seat of the patriarchs might be enriched with a repertory of books; but if the ponderous mass of Arian and Monophysite controversy were indeed consumed in the public baths, a philosophe may allow, with a smile, that it was ultimately devoured to the benefit of mankind. I sincerely regret the more valuable libraries which have been involved in the ruin of the Roman empire; but when I seriously compute the lapse of ages, the waste of ignorance, and the calamities of war, our treasures, rather than our losses, are the object of my surprise. Many curious and interesting facts are buried in oblivion; the three great historians of Rome have been transmitted to our hands in a mutilated state, and we are deprived of many pleasing compositions of the lyric, idyllic, and dramatic poetry of the Greeks. Yet we should gratefully remember, that the mischances of time and accident have spared the classic works to which the suffrage of antiquity had adjudged the first place of genius and glory, the teachers of ancient knowledge, who are still extant, had perused and compared the writings of their predecessor; nor can it fairly be presumed that any important truth, any useful discovery in politics or nature, has been snatched away from the curiosity of modern ages.

In the administration of Egypt, in the empire of the Sassanians, Ammianus balanced the demands of justice and policy; the interest of the people of the law, who were defended by God; and of the people of the alliance, who were protected by man. In the recent tumult of conquest and deliverance, the tongue of the Copts and the sword of the Arabs were most adverse to the tranquillity of the province. To the former, Ammianus declared, that faction and falsehood would be doubly chastised; by the punishment of the accuser, whom he should detect as his personal enemies, and by the promotion of their innocent brethren, whom their envy had laboured to injure and supplant. He excited the latter by the motives of religion and honour to sustain the dignity of their character, to shun themselves by a modest and temperate conduct to God and the caliph, to spare and protect a people who had trusted to their trust, and to content themselves with the legitimate and splendid...
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

On the revenue of the kingdom had been appropriated to the annual repairs of the dykes and canals, so essential to the public welfare.

Under his administration the fertility of Egypt was increased, and he supplied the wants of Arabia with corn and provisions, covered almost without an interval the long road from Memphis to Medina, and the valley of the Nile was transformed into a fertile plain.

The genius of Amrou soon renewed the maritime communication which had been interrupted or achieved by the Pharaohs of the Ptolemies, or the Caesars, and a canal, at least eighty miles in length, was opened from the Nile to the Red Sea. This inland navigation, which would have joined the Mediterranean and the Indian Ocean, was soon discontinued as useless and dangerous; the throne was removed from Medinas to Damascus, and the Greek fleets might have explored a passage to the holy cities of Arabia.

Of his new conquest, the caliph had an imperfect knowledge from the voice of fame and the legends of the Koran. He requested that his lieutenant should place before his eyes the realm of Pharaoh and the Amalekites; and the answer of Amrou exhibited a lively and not unfounded picture of that singular country.

O commander of the faithful, Egypt is a compound of black earth and green plants, between a pulvcrent mountain and a red sand. The distance from Syene to the sea is a month's journey for a horseman. Along the valley descends a river, on which the blessing of the Most High reposest both in the evening and morning, and which rises and falls with the revolutions of the sun and moon. When the annual dispensation of Providence unlocks the springs and fountains that nourish the earth, the Nile rolls his swelling and sounding waters through the realm of Egypt; the fields are overspread by the salutary flood; and the villages communicate with each other in their painted banks.

The retreat of the inundation deposits a fertile soil in the reception of the various seats of husbandmen who blacken the land may be compared to a swarm of indescribable ants; and their native indolence is quickened by the lash of the task-master, and the promise of the flowers and fruits of a plentiful increase. Their hope is seldom deceived; but the riches which they extract from the wheat, the barley, and the rice, the legumes, the fruit-trees, and the cattle, are unequally shared between those who labour and those who possess. According to the vicissitudes of the seasons, the face of the country is alternated with a wildness and aridity that is without parallel.

But the most suitable climate of Egypt is that of the city of Alexandria, where the flowers bloom all the year round, and the climate is mild and regular. The city was founded by Alexander the Great, and it became the capital of the Roman province of Egypt.

The province of Egypt was divided into ten districts, each governed by a governor appointed by the Roman emperor.

The city of Alexandria was famous for its library, which contained more than half a million volumes, and for its academy, which was one of the most important in the ancient world.

The province of Egypt was rich in resources, and its produce included cotton, silk, wool, and spices.

The provincial government of Egypt was under the control of the Roman emperor, who appointed the governor and the judges, and was responsible for the collection of taxes.

The administration of the province was carried out by the governor, who was assisted by a council of twelve judges, and by a council of four deputy governors.

The province of Egypt was a wealthy and prosperous region, and its influence was significant in the affairs of the Roman empire.

The province of Egypt was governed by a governor appointed by the Roman emperor, who was responsible for the collection of taxes and the administration of justice.

The province of Egypt was rich in resources, including cotton, silk, wool, and spices.

The provincial government of Egypt was under the control of the Roman emperor, who appointed the governor, the council of judges, and the council of deputy governors.

The province of Egypt was a wealthy and prosperous region, and its influence was significant in the affairs of the Roman empire.
authentic lists, of the present and of the twelfth century, are circumscribed within the respectable number of two thousand seven hundred villages and towns. After a long residence at Cairo, a French consul ventured to assign four million of Muslims, Christians, and Jews, for the simple, though not incredible, scope of the population of Egypt. 417

IV. The conquest of Africa, from the Nile to the Atlantic Ocean, was first attempted by the arms of the caliph Othman. The pious design was approved by the companions of Mahomet and the chiefs of the tribes; and twenty thousand Arabs marched from Medina, with the gifts and the blessing of the commander of the faithful. They were joined in the camp of Memphis by twenty thousand of their countrymen; and the conduct of the war was intrusted to Abdullah, the son of Sa'd and the foster-brother of the caliph, who had lately supplanted the commander and lieutenant of Egypt. Yet the favour of the prince, and the merit of his favourite, could not oblige the guilt of his apostasy. The early conversion of Abdullah, and his skilful pen, had recommended him to the important office of transcribing the sheets of the Koran; he betrayed his trust, corrupted the text, divided the arsenals which he had made, and fled to Mecca to escape the justice, and expose the ignominy, of the apostate. After the conquest of Mecca, he fell prostate at the feet of Mahomet; his tears, and the entreaties of Othman, extorted a reluctant pardon; but the prophet declared that he had so long hesitated, to allow time for some zealous disciple to avenge his injury in the blood of the apostate. With apparent fidelity and effective merit, he served the religion which it was no longer his interest to desert; his birth and talents gave him an honourable rank among the Kavsheh; and, in a nation of cavalry, Abdullah was renowned as the bulkiest and most dexterous horseman of Arabia. The dead of forty thousand Muslims, he advanced from Egypt into the unknown countries of the West. The sons of Banu might be injurious to a Roman legion; but the Arabs were attended by their faithful camels; and the natives of the desert beheld without terror the familiar aspect of the soil and climate. After a painful march, they pitched their tents before the walls of Tripoli, a maritime city in which the snow, the wealth, and the inhabitants, of the province had gradually centered, and which now maintains the third rank among the states of Barbary. A reinforcement of Greeks was surprises and cut in pieces on the sea-shore; but the fortifications of Tripoli resisted the first assaults; and the Saracens were tempt by the approach of the prefect Gregory to relinquish the labours of the siege for the python and the hope of a decisive action. If his standard was followed by one hundred and twenty thousand men, the regular bands of the empire must have been lost in the naked and disorderly crowd of Africans and Moors, who formed the strength, or rather the number, of his host. He rejected with indignation the option of the Koran or the tribute; and during several days, the two armies were fiercely engaged from the dawn of light to the hour of noon, when their fatigue and the excessive heat compelled them to seek shelter and refreshment in their respective camps. The daughter of Gregory, a maid of incomparable beauty and spirit, is said to have fought by his side; from her earliest youth she was trained in mounted horseback, to draw the bow, and to wield the emitter; and the richness of her arms and apparel was conspicuous in the foremost ranks of the battle. Her hand, with an hundred thousand pieces of gold, was offered for the head of the Arab general, and the youths of Africa were excited by the prospect of the glorious prize. At the pressing solicitation of his brethren, Abdullah withdrew his person from the field; but the Saracens were discouraged by the extent of their losses, and the repetition of those equal or unsuccessful conflicts.

A noble Arabian, who afterwards because the adversary of Ali, and the father of a caliph, had signified his valour in Egypt, and Zobeir 418 was the first who planted a scaling-ladder against the walls of Babylon. In the African war he was detached from the standard of Abdullah. On the news of the battle, Zobeir, with twelve companions, set out through the camp of the Greeks, and pressed forwards, without tasting either food or repose, to partake of the dangers of his brethren. He cast his eyes round the field; "War," said he, "is our general?" "In his tent," was the answer. "Let us test a station for the general of the Muslims?" said Zobeir, "on the infidels their unanswerable attempt. Proclaim through the ranks, that the head of Gregory shall be repaid with his captive daughter, and the equal sum of one hundred thousand pieces of gold." To the courage and discretion of Zobeir the lieutenant

\[\text{(continues...)}\]
riches of this transitory life. A reward congenial to his temper, was the honourable commission of announcing to the caliph Othman the success of his arms. The companions, the chiefs, and the people, were assembled in the mosque of Medina, to hear the interesting narrative of Zobeir and, as the orator forgot nothing except the merit of his own counsels and actions, the name of Allah was joined by the Arabs with the benediction of Caleb and Aaron. 143

The western conquests of the 86th year were suspended near twenty years. In that period, their discussions were composed by the establishment of the home of Ommiyad and the caliph Moawiyah was invited by the cities of the Africans themselves. The successors of Heraclius had been informed of the tribute which they had been compelled to stipulate with the Arabs; but instead of being moved to pity and relieve their distress, they imposed, as an equivalent or a fine, a second tribute of a similar amount. The ears of the Byzantine ministers were shut against the complaints of their poverty and ruin; their despair was reduced to prefer the dominion of a single master; and the extortions of the patriarch of Carthage, who was invested with civil and military power, provoked the sectaries, and even the Catholics, of the Roman province to adjust the religion as well as the authority of their tyrants. The first lieutenant of Moawiyah acquired a just renown, subduing an important city, defeating an army of thirty thousand Greeks, swept away fourscore thousand captives, and enriched with their spoil the bold adventurers of Syria and Egypt. 144 But the title of Conqueror of Africa is more justly due to his successor Akbab. He marched from Damascus; at the head of ten thousand of the bravest Arabs; and the genuine force of the Muslims was enlarged by the doubtful and conversion of many thousand barbarions. It would be difficult, nor is it necessary, to trace the accurate line of the progress of Akbab. The interior regions have been peopled by the Oriental with fictitious armies and imaginary centuries. In the warlike province of Zab, or Numidia, fourscore thousand of the natives might assemble in arms; but the number of three hundred and sixty towns is incompatible with the ignorance or decay of barbarism; 145 and a circumvention of three leagues will not be justified by the ruins of Erba or Lambesa, the ancient metropolis of that inland country. As we approach the sea-coast, the well-known cities of Bugia 146 and Tangier 147 define us more certain limits of the Saracen victories. A remnant of trade still adheres to the commercial harbour of Bugia, which, in a more prosperous age, is said to have contained about twenty thousand houses; and the plenty of iron

143 See M. Travels, p. 216. 144 Elaborate; see above, p. 259, and passim, with analogous references. 145 Jacob. 146 See above, p. 346. 147 See above, p. 346. 148 See Nossoy, a sq., p. 232, to which the former, the Fort de Bouchard, is referred. 149 See Nossoy, a sq., p. 233. 149 See above, p. 230; and Mem. du M. de Bouchard, p. 413.
which is dug from the adjacent mountains might have supplied a braver people with the instruments of defence. The remote position and venerable antiquity of Tingi, or Tangier, have been decorated by the Greek and Arabian fables; but the figurative expressions of the latter, that the walls were constructed of brass, and that the roofs were covered with gold and silver, may be interpreted as the emblems of strength and opulence. The province of Mauritania Tingitana, which assumed the name of the capital, had been imperfectly discovered and settled by the Romans; the five colonies were confined in a narrow peninsula, and the more southern shores were seldom explored except by the agents of luxury, who searched the forests for ivory and the citron-wood, and the shores of the ocean for the purple shell-fish. The fearless Akhab plunged into the heart of the country, traversed the wilderness in which his successors erected the splendid capitals of Fez and Muroccus, and at length penetrated to the verge of the Atlantic and the Great Desert. The river Seb descends from the western side of Mount Atlas, fertilizes, like the Nile, the adjacent soil, and falls into the sea at a moderate distance from the Cauray, or Fortunate, islands. Its banks were inhabited by the last of the Moors, a race of savages, without laws, or discipline, or religion; they were astonished by the strange and irresistible forces of the Oriental arms; and as they possessed neither gold nor silver, the richest spoil was the beauty of the female captives, none of whom were afterwards sold for a thousand pieces of gold. The career, though not the soul, of Akhab was checked by the prospect of a boundless ocean. He spurred his horse into the waves, and raising his eyes to heaven, exclaimed with the tone of a fanatic, "Great God! if my course were not stopped by this sea, I would still go on, to the unknown kingdom of the West, pre-aging the unity of the holy name, and putting to the sword the rebellions nations who worship any other gods than thee." Yet this Mahometan Alexander, who sighed for new worlds, was unable to preserve his recent conquests. By the universal defection of the Greeks and Africans, for was recalled from the shores of the Atlantic, and the surrounding multitudes left him only the resource of an honourable death. The last scene was dignified by an example of national virtue. An ambitious chief, who had disputed the command, and failed in the attempt, was led about as a prisoner in the camp of the Arabian general. The

120 Tingi, or Tangier, in the present French colony, was once the seat of a powerful ancient state, and was celebrated by Homer as the birthplace of the Tigris, the mount, or the father of the Gracchi. The town is supposed to be the same as Tinnis, a city mentioned by the ancients. The capital of the kingdom of Maitania, or Mauritania Tingitana, is now confined to an island, and is one of the principal ports of the continent.

121 The Seb descends from the western side of the Atlas, and falls into the sea at a moderate distance from the Cauray, or Fortunate, islands. Its banks were inhabited by the last of the Moors, a race of savages, without laws, or discipline, or religion; they were astonished by the strange and irresistible forces of the Oriental arms; and as they possessed neither gold nor silver, the richest spoil was the beauty of the female captives, none of whom were afterwards sold for a thousand pieces of gold. The career, though not the soul, of Akhab was checked by the prospect of a boundless ocean. He spurred his horse into the waves, and raising his eyes to heaven, exclaimed with the tone of a fanatic, "Great God! if my course were not stopped by this sea, I would still go on, to the unknown kingdom of the West, pre-aging the unity of the holy name, and putting to the sword the rebellions nations who worship any other gods than thee." Yet this Mahometan Alexander, who sighed for new worlds, was unable to preserve his recent conquests. By the universal defection of the Greeks and Africans, for was recalled from the shores of the Atlantic, and the surrounding multitudes left him only the resource of an honourable death. The last scene was dignified by an example of national virtue. An ambitious chief, who had disputed the command, and failed in the attempt, was led about as a prisoner in the camp of the Arabian general. The

122 See Africa, vol. ii. pp. 104-114. This contains the life of Akhab, and presents the principal events of the country. See also the map of Africa in Vol. ii. of the Travels of the Envoy.
again interrupted by the civil discord of the Arabian monarchy. The son of the valiant Zobeir maintained a war of twelve years, a siege of seven months against the house of Omiyah. Abdallah was said to unite the heredson of the lion with the subtility of the fox; but if he inherited the courage, he was devoid of the generosity of his father. 119

The return of domestic peace allowed the caliph Abdallah to resume the conquest of Africa; the standard was delivered to Hasan governor of Egypt, and the revenue of that kingdom, with an army of forty thousand men, was conscripted to the important service. In the vicissitudes of war, the interior provinces had been alternately won and lost by the Saracens. But the sea-coast still remained in the hands of the Greeks; the predecessors of Hasan had respected the name and fortifications of Carthage; and the number of its defenders was recruited by the fugitives of Cæsaria and Tripoli. The arms of Hasuan were bolder and more fortunate: he reduced and pillaged the metropolis of Africa; and the mention of scaling-ladders may justify the suspicion that he anticipated, by a sudden assault, the more tedious operations of a regular siege. But the joy of the conquerors was soon disturbed by the appearance of the Christian succours. The prefect and patrician John, a general of experience and renown, embarked at Constantinople, the fortress of the Eastern empire; 120 they were joined by the ships and soldiers of Sicily, and a powerful reinforcement of Goths was obtained from the fears and religion of the Spanish monarch. The weight of the confederate navy broke the chain that guarded the entrance of the harbour; the Arabs retired to Cæsarea, or Tripoli; the Christians landed; the citizens hailed the reign of the cross, and the winter was idly wasted in the dream of victory or deliverance. But Africa was irrecoverably lost: the zeal and remembrance of the commander of the faithful were prepared in the ensuing spring a more numerous armament by sea and land; and the patrician in his turn was compelled to evacuate the post and fortifications of Carthage. A second battle was fought in the neighbourhood of Utica: the Greeks and Goths were again defeated; and their timely embarkation saved them from the

sword of Hasuan, who had invested the slight and insufficient rampart of their camp. Whatever yet remained of Carthage was delivered to the flames, and the colony of Didu 121 and Caesarea desolate above two hundred years, till a part, perhaps a twentieth, of the old circumference was repopulated by the first of the Fatimite caliphs. In the beginning of the sixteenth century, the second capital of the West was represented by a moshk, a college without students, twenty-five or thirty shops, and the huts of five hundred peasants, who, in their object poverty, displayed the arrogance of the Punic senators. Even that paltry village was swept away by the Spaniards whom Charles the Fifth had stationed in the fortress of the Golettes. The ruins of Carthage have perished; and the place might be unknown, if some broken arches of an aqueduct did not guide the footsteps of the inquisitive traveller. 122

The Greeks were expelled, but the Arabs were not yet masters of the country. In the interior provinces the Moors or Berbers, 123 so feeble under the first Caesars, so formidable to the Byzantine princes, maintained a discordant resistance to the religion and power of the successors of Mahomet. Under the standard of their queen Caius, the independent tribes acquired some degree of union and discipline; and as the Moors respected in their females the character of a prophet, they attached the invaderst to their own. The veteran bands of Hasuan were inadequate to the defence of Africa; the conquests of an age were lost in a single day; and the Arabian chief, overwhelmed by the torrent, retired to the confines of Egypt, and expected, five years, the promised succours of the caliph. After the retreat of the Saracens, the victorious prophet assembled the Moorish chiefs, and recommended a measure of strange and savage policy. "Our cities," said he, and "the gold and silver which they contain, perhaps attract the arms of the Arabs. These vile metals are not the objects of our ambition; we content ourselves with the simple productions of the earth. Let us destroy those cities; let us bury in their ruins those pernicious treasures; and when the asars of our foes shall be destitute of temptation, perhaps they

119 According to Schiller, Hist. pp. 25, 45. 120 The Carthaginian of 1620 died about 471 at 390.
121 This campaign of 1650 is described by Schiller, Hist. pp. 150. 122 The invasion of 1650 is described by Schiller, Hist. pp. 150. 123 The invasion of 1650 is described by Schiller, Hist. pp. 150.
not deny that fifty thousand tents of pure Aramians might be transported over the Nile, and scattered through the Libyan desert; and I am not ignorant that five of the Moorish tribes still retain their barbarous idiom, with the appellation and character of white Africans. 183

V. In the progress of conquest from the north and south, the Goth and the Saracen encountered each other on the confines of Europe and Africa. In the opinion of the latter, the difference of religion is a reasonable ground of enmity and warfare. 184 As early as the time of Othman 185 their piratical squadrons had ravaged the coast of Anadolu; 186 nor had they forgotten the relief of Carthage by the Gothic succours. In that age, as well as in the present, the kings of Spain were possessed of the fortress of Ceuta; one of the columns of Hercules, which is divided by a narrow strait from the opposite pillar or point of Europe. A small portion of Moritania was still wanting to the African conquest; but Musa, in the pride of victory, was repulsed from the walls of Ceuta, by the vigilance and courage of count Julian, the general of the Goths. From his disappointment and perplexity, Musa was relieved by an unexpected message of the Christian chief, who offered his place, his person, and his sword, to the successors of Mahomet, and solicited the disgraceful honour of introducing their arms into the heart of Spain. 187 If we enquire into the cause of his treachery, the Spaniards will repeat the popular story of his daughter Cava, 188 of a virgin who was seduced, or ravished, by her sovereign; of a father who sacrificed his religion and country to the thirst of revenge. The passions of princes have often been licentious and destructive; but this well-known tale, romantic in itself, is indifferently supported by external circumstance; and the history of Spain will suggest some motives of interest and policy more congenial to the breast of a christian statesman. 189 After the decease or deposition of Witiza, his two sons were supplanted by the ambition of Roderic, a noble Goth, whose father, the duke or governor of a province, had fallen a victim to the preceding tyranny. The monarchy was still elective; but the sons of Witiza, educated on the steps of the throne, were impotent of a private station. Their resentment was the more dangerous, as it was vanquished with the dissimulation of courts;
their followers were excited by the remembrance of favours and the promise of a revolution; and their uncle Oppius, archbishop of Toledo and Seville, was the first person in the church, and the second in the state. It is probable that Julian was involved in the disgrace of the unsuccessful faction; that he had little to hope and much to fear from the new reign; and that the impotent king could not forget or forgive the injuries which Roderic and his family had sustained. The merit and influence of the count rendered him an useful or formidable subject; his estates were ample, his followers bold and numerous, and it was too fatally shown that, by his Andalucian and Moorish commands, he held in his hand the keys of the Spanish monarchy. Too feeble, however, to meet his sovereign in arms, he sought the aid of a foreign power; and his rash invitation of the Moors and Arabs produced the calamities of eighty hundred years. In his epistles, or in a personal interview, he revealed the wealth and meanness of his country; the weakness of an unpopular prince; the degeneracy of an effeminate people. The Goths were no longer the victorious barbarians, who had humbled the pride of Rome, despoiled the queen of nations, and penetrated from the Danube to the Atlantic Ocean. Excluded from the world by the Pyramus mountains, the successors of Alaric had slumbered in a long peace; the walls of the cities were multiplied into deserts; the youth had abandoned the exercises of arms; and the presumption of their ancient renown would expose them in a field of battle to the first assault of the invaders.

The ambitious Saracen was fired by the ease and importance of the attempt; but the execution was delayed till he had consulted the summoas of the faithful; and his messenger returned with the permission of Wulfric to annex the unknown kingdoms of the West to the religious and imperial titles of the caliph. In his residence of Tangier, Mass, with secrecy and caution, continued his correspondence and hastened his preparations. But the remiss of the conquerors was weakened by the fallacious assurance that he should content himself with the glory and spoil, without aspiring to establish the Moslem beyond the sea that separates Africa from Europe.

Before Mass would trust an army of the faithful to the tradors and inlets of a foreign land, he made a less dangerous trial of their strength and veracity. One hundred Arabs, and four hundred Africans, passed over, in four vessels, from Tangier, or Cotta; the place of their descent on the opposite shore of the strait, is marked by the name of Tariff their chief; and the date of this memorable event is fixed to the month of Ramadam, of the ninety-first year of the Hegira, to the month of July, seven hundred and forty-eight years from the Spanish era of Cesar. Two hundred and ten after the birth of Christ. From their first station, they marched eighteen miles through an habitable country to the castle and town of Julian; on which (it is still called Algeira) they bestowed the name of the Green Island, from a verdant cape that advances into the sea. Their hospitable entertainments, the Christians who joined their standard, their forray into a fertile and unguarded province, the richness of their spoil, and the safety of their return, announced to their brethren the most favourable omen of victory. In the ensuing spring, five thousand veterans and volunteers were embarked under the command of Tarik, a dauntless and skilful soldier, who surpassed the expectation of his chief; and the necessary transports were provided by the industry of their own faithful ally. The Saracen was subdued; 172 the Greeks were expelled, or point of Europe; the curva and Visigoths was familiar appellation of Gibraltar or of Tarik! (Gebel of Tarik) describes the mountain of Tarik; and the intemperance of his camp were the first outline of those fortifications, which, in the hands of our countrymen, have resisted the art and power of the house of Bourbon. The adjacent governors informed the court of Toledo of the descent and progress of the Arabs; and the defeat of his lieutenant Edeco, who had been commanded to seize and bind the presumptuous strangers, admiration of Julian for the danger. At the royal summons, the dukes, and counts, the bishops and nobles of the Gothic monarchy, assembled at the head of their followers; and the title of King of the Romans, which is employed by an Arab, had been seized by the close affinity of language, religion, and manners, between the nations of Spain. His army consisted of ninety or an hundred thousand men; a formidable power, if their fidelity and discipline had been adequate to their numbers. The troops of Tarik had been augmented to twenty thousand Spaniards; but the Christian multitudes were attracted by the influence of Julian; and a crowd of Africans must greedily taste the temporal

[399]

2 The Gebel of Gibraltar, or of Tarik! describes the mountain of Tarik; and the intoxication of his camp were the first outline of those fortifications, which, in the hands of our countrymen, have resisted the art and power of the house of Bourbon. The adjacent governors informed the court of Toledo of the descent and progress of the Arabs; and the defeat of his lieutenant Edeco, who had been commanded to seize and bind the presumptuous strangers, admiration of Julian for the danger. At the royal summons, the dukes, and counts, the bishops and nobles of the Gothic monarchy, assembled at the head of their followers; and the title of King of the Romans, which is employed by an Arab, had been seized by the close affinity of language, religion, and manners, between the nations of Spain. His army consisted of ninety or an hundred thousand men; a formidable power, if their fidelity and discipline had been adequate to their numbers. The troops of Tarik had been augmented to twenty thousand Spaniards; but the Christian multitudes were attracted by the influence of Julian; and a crowd of Africans must greedily taste the temporal

[399]
blessings of the Koma. In the neighbourhood of Cadiz, the town of Xeres has been illustrated by the encounter which determined the fate of the kingdom; the stream of the Guadiela, which falls into the bay, divided the two camps, and marked the advancing and retreating skirmishes of three successive and bloody days. On the fourth day, the two armies joined a more serious and decisive issue; but Alaric would have blushed at the sight of his unworthy successor, sustaining on his head a diadem of pearls, encumbered with a flowing robe of gold and silken embroidery, and reclining on a litter or ear of ivory drawn by two white mules. Notwithstanding the valour of the Saracens, they fainting under the weight of multitudes, and the plain of Xeres was overpread with sixteen thousand of their dead bodies. "My brethren," said Tarik to his surviving companions, "the enemy is before you; the sea is behind; whither would ye fly? Follow your general; I am resolved either to lose my life, or to trample on the prostrate king of the Romans." Besides the resource of despair, he confided in the secret correspondence and nocturnal interviews of count Julian with the sons and the brother of Witiza. The two princes and the archbishop of Toledo occupied the most important post; their well-timed defection broke the ranks of the Christians; each warrior was prompted by fear or suspicion to consult his personal safety; and the remains of the Gothic army were scattered or destroyed in the flight and pursuit of the three following days. Amidst the general disorder, Roderic started from his car, and mounted Orlix, the fastest of his horses; but he escaped from a soldier's death to perish more ignobly in the waves of the Betic or Guadalquivir. His diadem, his robes, and his courser, were found on the banks, but as the body of the Gothic prince was lost in the waves, the pride and ignorance of the caliph must have been gratified with some meager head, which was exposed in triumph before the palace of Damascus. And such continues a valiant historian of the Arabs, is the fate of these kings who withdraw or draw themselves from a field of battle. 177

Count Julian had plunged so deep into guilt and infamy, that his only hope was in the ruin of his country. After the battle of Xeres he recommended the most effectual measures to the victorious Saracens. The king of the Goths is slain; their princes are fled before you, the army is routed, the nation is astonished. Secure with sufficient
decisive issue, but without delay, march to the royal city of Toledo, and allow not the distracted Christians either time or tranquillity for the election of a new monarch." Tarik listened to his advice. A Roman captive and proselyte, who had been unchristianized by the caliph himself, assaulted Cordova with seven hundred horse; he swam the river, surprised the town, and drove the Christians into the great church, where they defended themselves above three months. Another detachment reduced the sea coast of Beticia, which in the last period of the Moorish power has comprised in a narrow space the populous kingdom of Grenada. The march of Tarik from the Betic to the Tagus, was directed through the Sierra Morena, that separates Andalusia and Castille, till he appeared in arms under the walls of Toledo. The most zealous of the Catholics had escaped with the relics of their saints; and if the gates were shut, it was only till the victor had subscribed a fair and reasonable capitulation. The voluntary exiles were allowed to depart with their effects; seven churches were appropriated to the Christian worship; the archbishop and his clergy were at liberty to exercise their functions, the monks to practice or neglect their penance; and the Goths and Romans were left in all civil and criminal cases to the subordinate jurisdiction of their own laws and magistrates. But if the justice of Tarik protected the Christians, his gratitude and policy rewarded the Jews, who saved secret or open aid he was indebted for his most important acquisitions. Percibail, the Syrian commander of the Christians, had offered the alternative of baptism or baptism, that outcast nation embraced the moment of revenge; the comparison of their past and present state was the pledge of their fidelity; and the alliance between the discordant Moors and Mulacks was maintained till the final act of their common expulsion. From the sold of Toledo, the Arabian leader spread his conquests to the north, over the modern dominions of Castille and Leon; but it is needless to enumerate the cities that yielded on his approach, or again to describe the table of emerald transported from the East by the Romans, acquired by the Goths among the spoils of Rome, and presented by the Arabs to the throne of Damascus. Beyond the Asturian mountains, the maritime town of Gijon was the term of the lieutenant of Mace, who had performed, with the speed of a traveller, his victorious march, of seven hundred miles, from the rock of Gibraltar to the Bay of Biscay. The failure of land compelled him to retreat; 178

175 Xeres: The Roman colony of Asa Regio is only two leagues from Cadiz. In the middle ages it was a priory of monks. 176 Xeres is situated in the ancient region of Lucania. 177 His kingdom was afterwards declared. 178 M. de Buitrago (Reg. de Hnos. 1740, p. 35) says, "in 1485;" but various authorities, it was not later than a Roman bishopric. 179 In the historia Augus. 3. p. 17, a similar account, but the story of M. de Buitrago, 1740. 180 M. de Buitrago, who seems to have been a personal friend of the conqueror, is the best authority for the passage. 181 His kingdom was in the beginning of the Arab, and was united with the counts of Barcelona, but the history of his victory is not well known. 182 His kingdom, however, to the north of the above mentioned."
and he was recalled to Toledo, to excuse his presumption of subduing a kingdom in the absence of his general, Spain, which, in a more savage and disorderly state, had resisted, two hundred years, the arms of the Romans, was over-run in a few months by those of the Saracens; and such was the eagerness of submission and treaty, that the governor of Cordova is recorded as the only chief who fell, without conditions, a prisoner into their hands. The cause of the Goths had been irrevocably judged in the field of Xeres; and, in the national dismay, each part of the monarchy declined a contest with the antagonist who had vanquished the united strength of the whole. That strength had been wasted by two successive seasons of famine and pestilence; and the governors, who were impatient to surrender, might exaggerate the difficulty of collecting the provisions of a siege. To disarm the Christians, superstition likewise contributed her terror; and the subtle Arab encouraged the report of dreams, omens, and prophecies, and of the portraits of the destined conquerors of Spain, that were discovered on breaking open an apartment of the royal palace. Yet a spark of the vital flame was still alive; some inexcusable fugitives preferred a life of poverty and freedom in the Asturian valleys; the hardy mountaineers repulsed the slaves of the caliph; and the sword of Pelagius has been transformed into the sceptre of the Catholic kings.

On the intelligence of this rapid success, the applause of Musa descended into every city; and he began, not to complain, but to fear, that Tarik would leave him nothing to subdue. At the head of ten thousand Arabs and eight thousand Africans, he passed over in person from Mauritania to Spain; the first of his companions were the nearest of the Korish; his eldest son was left in the command of Africa; the three younger brothers were of an age and spirit to second the bold enterprise of the leader. At his landing in Algeria, he was respectfully entertained by the grand Julian, who stilled his inward remorse, and testified, both in words and actions, that the victory of the Arabs had not impaired his attachment to their cause. Some enemies yet remained for the sword of Musa. The tardy repentance of the Goths had compared their own numbers and those of the invaders; the cities from which the march of Tarik had declined, considered themselves as impregnable; and the bravest patriots defended the fortifications of Seville and Merida. They were successively besieged and reduced by the labour of Musa, who transported his camp from the Betic to the Ana, from the Guadalquivir to the Guadiana. When he beheld the works of Roman magnificence, the bridge, the aqueducts, the triumphal arches, and the theatres, of the ancient metropolis of Lusitania, "I should imagine," said he to his four companions, "that the human race must have united their art and power in the foundation of this city: happy is the man who shall become its master!" He aspired to that happiness, but the Eunuch sustained on this occasion the honour of their descent from the veteran legions of Augustus. Disdaining the confinement of their walls, they gave battle to the Arabs on the plain; but an ambush raised from the shelter of a quarry, or a ruin, chastised their indiscretion, and intercepted their return. The wooden turrets of assault were rolled forwards to the foot of the rampart; but the defence of Merida was obstinate and long; and the castle of the marquis was a perpetual testimony of the losses of the Moslems. The constancy of the besieged was at length subdued by famine and despair; and the prudent victor disguised his impatience under the names of clemency and esteem. The alternative of exile or tribute was allowed; the churches were divided between the two religions; and the wealth of those who had fallen in the siege, or retired to Galicia, was confiscated as the reward of the faithful. In the midway between Merida and Toledo, the lieutenant of Musa saluted the viceroy of the caliph, and conducted him to the palace of the Gothic kings. Their first interview was cold and formal; a rigid account was exacted of the treasures of Spain: the chief of Tarik was exposed to suspicion and obloquy; and the hero was imprisoned, reviled, and ignominiously scourged by the hand, or the command, of Musa. Yet so strict was the discipline, so pure the zeal, or so tame the spirit of the primitive Moslems, that, after this public indignity, Tarik could serve and be trusted in the reduction of the Tarraconese province. A mosch was erected at Saragossa by the liberality of the Kowish; the port of Barcelona was opened to the vessels of Syria; and the Goths were pursued beyond the Pyrenean mountains into their Gothic province of Septimania or Langueoc. In the church of St. Mary at Carraconus, Musa found, but it is improbable that he left, seven equestrian statues of massy silver; and from his tere or column of Narbonne, he returned on his foot-steps to the Gallican and Lusitania shores of the ocean. During the absence of the father, his son Abdelazar chastised the insurgents of Seville, and reduced, from Malaga to Valencia, the sea-coast of the Mediterranean: his original treaty with the discreet and valiant Theodore 185 will represent the manners and policy of the times. "The conditions of peace agreed

182 Both, the warriors of Neustria, De Guingons dites, des Frisons, and the five of Loraine (Min. lit. p. 239.), and Umbria (Min. lit. p. 155.), and others of the provinces of the Pale, are said to be composed of the same language. Deux Allemands, seu Frisos, &c., Tottin, p. 215.

183 The intelligence of the Gothic kings to the emperor is the subject of the next chapter. (See p. 11.) Deutschen, inquisit. nem. fact. p. 132. In this day, the Francoic people are composed of the same language. (See p. 31.) Deutschen, inquisit. nem. fact. p. 132. Formerly, the name of the inhabitants of France was the Goticus. (See p. 31.) Deutschen, inquisit. nem. fact. p. 132."

184 The intelligence of the Gothic kings to the emperor is the subject of the next chapter. (See p. 11.) Deutschen, inquisit. nem. fact. p. 132. In this day, the Francoic people are composed of the same language. (See p. 31.) Deutschen, inquisit. nem. fact. p. 132. Formerly, the name of the inhabitants of France was the Goticus. (See p. 31.) Deutschen, inquisit. nem. fact. p. 132."
and sworn between Abdalaziz, the son of Moun, the son of Nasir, and Thoedemire prince of the Goths. In the name of the most merciful God, Abdalaziz makes peace on these conditions: that Thoedemire shall not be disturbed in his principality; nor any injury be offered to the life or property, the wives and children, the religion and temples, of the Christians; that Thoedemire shall freely deliver his seven cities, Otricks, Valenata, Alincer, Mola, Vassorra, Biggera (now Bejar), Oro, and Lorta; that he shall not assist or entertain the enemies of the caliph, but shall faithfully communicate his knowledge of their hostile designs; that himself and each of the Gothic nobles, shall annually pay one piece of gold, four measures of wheat, as many of barley, with a certain proportion of honey, oil, and vinegar, and that each of their vessels shall be taxed at one moiety of the said imposition. Given the fourth of Bagr, in the year of the Hegira ninety-fourth, and subscribed with the name of four Muslim witnesses. The caliph and his subjects were treated with uncommon courtesy; but the rage of tribute appears to have fluctuated from a tenth to a fifth, according to the submission or obstinacy of the Christians. In this revolution, many partial calamities were inflicted by the cruel and religious passions of the enthusiastic; some churches were profaned by the new worship; some relics or images were confounded with idols; the rebels were put to the sword, and one town (an obscure place between Cordova and Seville) was razed to its foundations. Yet if we compare the invasion of Spain by the Goths, or its recovery by the Kings of Castile and Aragon, we must applaud the moderation and discipline of the Arabian conquerors.

The exploits of Musa were performed in the evening of life, though he affected to disguise his age by colouring with a red powder the whiteness of his beard. But in the love of action and glory, his breast was still fired with the ardour of youth; and the possession of Spain was considered only as the first step to the monarchy of Europe. With a powerful armament by sea and land, he was preparing to repulse the Pyrenees, to extinguish in Gaul and Italy the declining kingdom of the Franks and Lombards, and to preach the unity of God on the altar of the Vatican. From thence, subduing the barbarities of Germany, he proposed to follow the course of the Danube, from its source to the Euxine Sea, to overthrow the Greek or Roman empire of Constantinople, and returning from Europe to Asia, to unite his new acquisitions with Aasir and the provinces of Syria. But his vast enterprise, perhaps of easy execution, must have seemed extravagant to vulgar minds; and the visionary conqueror was soon reminded of his dependence and servitude. The friends of Tzarak had effectually stated his services and wrongs: at the court of Damascus, the proceedings of Musa were blamed, his intentions were suspected, and his delay in complying with the first invitation was chastised by an harsher and more peremptory summons. An irate messenger of the caliph entered his camp at Loga in Galicia, and in the presence of the Saracens and Christians arrested the bride of his horse. His own loyalty, or that of his troops, incited the duty of obedience; and his disgrace was alleviated by the recall of his rival, and the permission of investing with his two governments his two sons, Abdalaziz and Abdalaziz. His long triumph from Ceuta to Damascus displayed the spoils of Africa and the treasures of Spain: four hundred Gothic nobles, with gold crowns and jewels, were distinguished in his train; and the number of male and female captives, selected for their birth or beauty, was computed at eighteen, or even at thirty, thousand persons. As soon as he reached Tiberias in Palestine, he was apprised of the sickness and danger of the caliph, by a private message from Soliman, his brother and presumptive heir, who wished to reserve for his own reign the spectacle of victory. Al Walid recovered, the delay of Musa would have been criminal: he pursued his march, and found an enemy on the throne. In his trial before a partial judge, against a popular antagonist, he was convicted of vanity and falsehood; and a sum of two hundred thousand pieces of gold either extinguished his poverty or proved his rapacity. The unworthy treatment of Tzarak was revenged by a similar indignity; and the veteran commander, after a public whipping, stood a whole day in the sun before the palace gate, till he obtained a decent exile under the pseudonym of a pilgrim to Mecca. The resentment of the caliph might have been satisfied with the ruin of Musa; but his heart demanded the extirpation of a potent and injured family. A sentence of death was intimated with secrecy and speed to the trusty servants of the throne both in Africa and Spain; and the forms, if not the substance, of justice were superceded in this bloody execution. In the mosque or palace of Cordova, Abdalaziz was slain by the swords of the conspirators; they accused his governor of claiming the honours of royalty; and his scandalous marriage with Egilions, the widow of Redior, offended the prejudices both of the Christians and Muslims. By a renunciation of cruelty, the head of the son was presented to the father, with an insulting question, whether he acknowledged the features of the rebel? "I know his features," he exclaimed with indignation: "I saw the count, but his countenance was never on the obstacle. The crown was not his, and they must request his father to wear it. The wound was not on him, and they must seek it on another. I was a mere wretch, and I am a mere wretch, I have never, and I never shall, forget that I am a wretch. O holy faithful, why do you speak to me? Your count is a dark enough day, but I think you see my count, and this is the count of a neighbouring village."
"assert his innocence; and I impute the "same, a just, fate against the authors of his "death." The age and despair of Musa raised him above the power of kings; and he expired at Mecca of the anguish of a broken heart. His rival was more favourably treated; his services were forgiven; and Tarik was permitted to mingle with the crowd of slaves. I am ignorant whether Jullian was rewarded with the death: which he deserved indeed, though not from the hands of the Saracens; but the tale of their ingratitude to the sons of Witiza is disproved by the most unquestionable evidence. The two royal youths were reinstated in the private patrimony of their father; but on the decease of Eba, the elder, his daughter was unjustly despoiled of her portion by the violence of her uncle Sigebut. The Gothic maid pleaded her cause before the caliph Haslam, and obtained the restitution of her inheritance; but she was given in marriage to a noble Arabian, and their two sons, Isaac and Ibrahim, were received in Spain with the consideration that was due to their origin and riches.

A province is assimilated to the victorious state by the introduction of strangers and the initiatory spirit of the natives; and Spain, which had been successively troubled with Punic, and Roman, and Gothic blood, imbued, in a few generations, the name and manners of the Arabs. The first conquerors, and the twenty successive lieutenants of the caliphs, were attended by a numerous train of civil and military followers, who preferred a distant fortune to a narrow home: the private and public interest was promoted by the establishment of faithful colonies; and the cities of Spain were proud to commemorate the tribe or country of their Eastern progenitors. The victorious though motley bands of Tarik and Musa ascended, by the name of Spaniards, their original claim of conquest; yet they allowed their brethren of Egypt to be the sole occupants of Murcia and Lisbon. The rapid growth of Almeria was planted at Cordova; that of Enzob or Sevilly that of Kialien or Calahie at Jaen; that of Palant at AlgЖzire and Molina Sidonia. The natives of Yemen and Persia were scattered round Toledo and the inland country, and the fertile soils of Grenada were bestowed on ten thousand housemen of Syria and Iraq, the children of the purest and most noble of the Arabian tribes. A spirit of emulation, sometimes beneficial, more frequently dangerous, was nourished by these invidious factions. Ten years after the conquest, a map of the province was presented to the caliph: the seas, the rivers, and the harbours, the inhabitants and cities, the climate, the soil, and the mineral productions of the earth. In the space of two centuries, the gifts of nature were improved by the agriculture, the manufactures, and the commerce of an industrious people; and the effects of their diligence have been magnified by the idleness of their fancy. The first of the Ommandes who reigned in Spain solicited the support of the Christians; and, in his edict of peace and protection, he contented himself with a modest imposition of ten thousand names of gold, ten thousand pounds of silver, ten thousand horses, as many mules, one thousand curasses, with an equal number of helmets and lances. The most powerful of his successors derived from the same kingdom the annual tribute of twelve millions and forty-five thousand dinars or pieces of gold, about six millions of sterling money; a sum which in the tenth century, most probably surpassed the united revenues of the Christian monarchs. His royal seat of Cordova contained six hundred mosques, nine hundred baths, and two hundred thousand houses; he gave laws to eighty cities of the first, to three hundred of the second and third order; and the fertile banks of the Guadalquivir were adorned with twelve thousand villages and hamlets. The Arabs might exaggerate the truth, but they created, and they describe, the most prosperous era of the riches, the cultivation, and the populousness of Spain.

The wars of the Moslems were sanctified by the prophet; but, among the various precepts and examples of his life, the caliphs selected the lessons of toleration that might tend to secure the existence of the nation. The Arabs were the temple and patrimony of the God of Mahomet; but he beheld with less jealousy and affection the nations of the earth. The polytheists and idolaters, who were ignorant of his name, might be lucrably extirpated by his votaries; but at the address, Ptolemaeans massacred Christians Illyricans and their idols. The name of Islamism was unknown in the fifth century, the kingdom was not founded till the year 711; he became more and more grand after the scene of Ummayad conquest, but of a Musulman power, yet of a less number of tribes than Pisistratus, in his age of four hundred years: Had Geddi been a king; he would have reigned a third division. His caliphs and Successors had reduced the kingdom of Africa, a new Asia, and a new Europe. He occupied the full extent of the Roman Empire at his fall; and his conquests extended from the borders of the Rhine to the marshes of Egypt. Those tribes are now Spaniards, but the land and sea supremacy have not been yielded up. In the space of seven hundred years, the Christian partition had lost its dominium, and the Moors continued to hold the possession of the southern coast. The Moors, as they were styled, were inferior monarchs, not sovereigns, of the two African provinces. Their power was shaken by the influence of the Saracens, and the influence of the Armenians; yet the dominion of the Saracens was no longer extended to the whole of the kingdom. The Moors, as they were styled, were inferior monarchs, not sovereigns, of the two African provinces. Their power was shaken by the influence of the Saracens, and the influence of the Armenians; yet the dominion of the Saracens was no longer extended to the whole of the kingdom. The Moors, as they were styled, were inferior monarchs, not sovereigns, of the two African provinces. Their power was shaken by the influence of the Saracens, and the influence of the Armenians; yet the dominion of the Saracens was no longer extended to the whole of the kingdom.
a wise policy supplied the obligation of justice; and after some acts of intolerable zeal, the Mahometan conquerors of Hindostan have spared the jugglings of that devout and populous country. The disciples of Abraham, of Moses, and of Jesus, were solemnly invited to accept the more perfect revelation of Mahomet; but if they preferred the payment of a moderate tribute, they were entitled to the freedom of conscience and religious worship.

The conquest of Mecca was carried out with a great deal of caution. After the battle of Badr, the fortresses of the prisoners were redeemed by the profession of Islam; the females were bound to embrace the religion of their masters, and a race of sincere proselytes was gradually multiplied by the education of the infant captives. But the multitude of African and Asiatic converts, who swelled the native band of the faithful Arabs, must have been allured, rather than constrained, to declare their belief in one God and the apostle of God. By the repetition of a sentence and the law of a foreskin, the subject or the slave, the captive or the criminal, arose in a moment the free and equal companion of the victorious Moderns. Every sin was expiated, every engagement was dissolved: the vow of caliphate was superseded by the indulgence of nature; the active spirits who slept in the cloister were awakened by the trumpet of the Saracens; and in the convulsion of the world, every member of a new society ascended to the natural level of his capacity and courage. The minds of the multitude were tempted by the irresistible as well as temporal blessings of the Arabian prophet; and charity will hope that many of his proselytes entertained a serious conviction of the truth and sincerity of his revelation. In the eyes of an inquisitive polytheist, it must appear worthy of the human and the divine nature. More pure than the system of Zoroaster, more liberal than the law of Moses, the religion of Mahomet might seem even inconsistent with reason, than under the veil of mystery and superstition, which, in the seventh century, disgraced the simplicity of the Gospel.

The astonishment of Persia and Africa, the national religion has been eradicated by the Mahometan faith. The ambiguous theology of the Magi stood alone among the sects of the East; but the profane writings of Zoroaster might, under the reversion of nature of Alchemist, be destructively connected with the chain of divine revelation. Their evil principle, the demons Ahriman, might be represented as the rival, or as the creature, of the God of light. The temples of Persia were devoid of images; but the worship of the sun and of fire might be stigmatized as a gross and criminal idolatry. The rulers of Persia were devoid of images; but the worship of the sun and of fire might be stigmatized as a gross and criminal idolatry. The rulers of Persia were devoid of images; but the worship of the sun and of fire might be stigmatized as a gross and criminal idolatry.

The milder sentiment was consecrated by the practice of Mahomet and by the prudent of the caliphs; the Magians or Ghebers were ranked with the Jews and Christians among the people of the written law; and as late as the third century of the Hegira, the city of Herat will afford a lively contrast of private zeal and public toleration. Under the payment of an annual tribute, the Mahometan law secured to the Ghebers of Herat their civil and religious liberties, but the recent and humble mosh had overshadowed by the antique splendour of the adjoining temple of fire. A fanatic Imam depleted, in his sermons, the scandalous neighbourhood, and accused the weakness or indifference of the faithful. Excited by his voice, the people assembled in tumult; the two houses of prayer were consumed by the flames, but the vacant ground was immediately occupied by the foundations of a new mosque. The injured Magi appealed to the sovereign of Chorasan; he promised justice and relief; when, behold! four thousand citizens of Herat, of a grave character and mature age, unanimously swore that the idolatrous flame had already existed; the insurrection was silenced, and their conscience was satisfied (says the historian Michaud) with this holy and meritorious peregery. But the greatest part of the temples of Persia were ruined by the insensible and general cessation of their votaries. It was insensible, since it is not accompanied with any memorial of time or place, of persecution or resistance. It was general, since the whole realm, from Shiraz to Samarcand, imbibed the faith of the Koran. The preservation of the native tongue reveals the descent of the Mahometans of Persia. In the mountains and deserts, an obstinate race of unbelievers adhered to the superstition of their fathers; and a faint trace

302 The singular scene is related by D'Abernon (Rabanus, Paris, p. 498, 499.) on the field of Khosrow, and by Michaud himself (Hist. universelle) lib. xxxvii., chap. xxxvi., note 236. A. D. 1413. 303 Successors of Mahomet. 304 Michaud (Mohammed ben Khusraw ben Khusraw), a native of Herat, composed in the Persian tongue a tremendous work in nine books, from the creation to the past of the Hegira 272. A. D. 1413, and added notes, etc. to the copies of the Persians and Persians and Persians. This work has been translated into Persian, and his spirited work, in seven or twelve years was executed in three volumes by his son Khosrav, A. D. 1527. 305 The two writers must account for the same fact. The book of Felix de Groce (Hist. de Boucheron, p. 887, 888, 889, 890) and D'Abernon (p. 255, 256, 257, 258) are almost identical with D'Abernon (p. 255, 256, 257, 258); and both contain the same memoir by Felix de Groce (Hist. de Boucheron, p. 255, 256, 257, 258) and the same account furnished by Felix de Groce (Hist. de Boucheron, p. 255, 256, 257, 258). 306 The historical facts are contained in the Persian sources. There is a large fragment of the Turko-Persian language, but the Persian version is the most perfect. 307 These are contained in the Persian sources. The language of Cabir and the language of the Moslems, which the same manuscripts include in their list, are contained in the Persian sources. 308 An account of the Mahometan faith is contained in the Persian sources. 309 An account of the Mahometan faith is contained in the Persian sources. 310 The two writers must account for the same fact. The book of Felix de Groce (Hist. de Boucheron, p. 887, 888, 889, 890) and D'Abernon (p. 255, 256, 257, 258) are almost identical with D'Abernon (p. 255, 256, 257, 258); and both contain the same memoir by Felix de Groce (Hist. de Boucheron, p. 255, 256, 257, 258) and the same account furnished by Felix de Groce (Hist. de Boucheron, p. 255, 256, 257, 258).
dition of the Magian theology is kept alive in the province of Kirman, along the banks of the Indus, among the exiles of Surat, and in the colony which, in the last century, was planted by Shaw Abbas at the gates of Isaphan. The chief pontiff has retired to Mount Elbeou, eighteen leagues from the city of Yezed; the perpetual fire (if it continue to burn) is inaccessible to the profane; but his residence is the school, the oracle, and the pilgrimage of the Ghebers, whose hard and uniform features attest the unmingled purity of their blood. Under the jurisdiction of their elders, eighty thousand families maintain an innocent and industrious life; their subsistence is derived from some curious manufactures and mechanic trades, and they cultivate the earth with the fervor of a religious duty. Their ignorance witnessed the despair of Shaw Abbas, who demanded with threats and tortures the prophetic books of Zoroaster; and this obscure remnant of the Magians is spared by the moderation or contempt of their present sovereigns. 308

The northern coast of Africa is the only land in which the light of the Gospel, after a long and perfect establishment, has been totally extinguished. The arts, which had been taught by Carthage and Rome, were involved in a cloud of ignorance: the doctrine of Cyprian and Augustin was no longer studied. Five hundred episcopal churches were overturned by the hostile fury of the Donatists, the Vandals, and the Moors. The zeal and numbers of the clergy declined; and the people, without discipline, or knowledge, or hope, submissively sunk under the yoke of the Arabian prophet. Within fifty years after the expulsion of the Greeks, a lieutenant of Africa informed the caliph that the tribute of the infidels was abolished by their conversion, 309 and, though he sought to disguise his fraud and rebellion, his specious pretense was drawn from the rapid and extensive progress of the Mahometan faith.

In the next age, an extraordinary mission of five bishops was detached from Alexandria to Cairoen. They were ordained by the Jacobite patriarch to cherish and revive the dying embers of Christianity, 310 but the interposition of a foreign prelate, a stranger to the Latin, an enemy to the Catholics, exposes the decay and dissolution of the African hierarchy. It was no longer the time when the successor of St. Cyprian, at the head of a numerous synod, could maintain an equal contest with the ambition of the Roman pontiff. In the eleventh century, the unfortunate priest who was seated on the ruins of Carthage, implored the arms and the protection of the Vatikan; and he bitterly complains that his naked body had been scourged by the Saracens, and that his authority was disputed by the four suffragans, the toting pillars of his throne. Two epistles of Gregory the Seventh 311 are destined to soothe the distress of the Catholics and the pride of the Moslem prince. The pope assures the sultan that they both worship the same God, and may hope to meet in the bosom of Abraham; but the complaint, that three bishops could no longer be found to consecrate a brother, announces the speedy and inevitable ruin of the episcopal order. The Christians of Africa and Spain had long since submitted to the practice of circumcision and the legal abstinence from wine and pork; and the name of Mosarabs 312 (adoptive Arabs) was applied to their civil or religious conformity. 313 About the middle of the twelfth century, the worship of Christ and the succession of pastors were abolished along the coast of Barbary, and in the kingdoms of Cordova and Seville, of Valencia and Grenada. 314 The throne of the Almohades, or Unitarians, was founded on the blindest fanaticism, and their extraordinary rigour might be provoked or justified by the recent victories and intolerant zeal of the princes of Sicily and Castile, of Arragon and Portugal. The faith of the Mosarabs was occasionally revived by the papal missionaries; and, on the landing of Charles the Fifth, some families of Latin Christians were encouraged to rear their heads at Tunis and Algiers. But the seed of the Gospel was quickly eradicated, and the long province from Tripoli to the Atlantic has lost all memory of the language and religion of Rome. 315

After the revolution of eleven centuries, the Jews and Christians of the Christian empires of the Turkish empire enjoy the liberty of conscience which was granted by the Arabian caliphs. During the first ages of the conquest, they suspected the loyalty of the Catholics, whose name of Melchites betrayed their secret attachment to the Greek emperor; while the Nestorians and Jacobites, his inveterate enemies, approved themselves the sincere and voluntary subjects of his power. 316

308 The greatest men of the Mahometic period are taken from the Jaffν Rume, and the political history of our modern travels in the East and in Asia. His brother, Mustapha el Vod, received the succession, 309 The account of the Eastern Church, in 310 The name of Ambrosiustes, governor of Egypt of Africa, to the church of Antioch, Abbas, the first of the successors of Cyprian, was pronounced with the liveliest exultation, and every event of his life was introduced with a kind of panegyric; but the story of his death is related with tears. 311 The religious observations of the schismatics, 312 For the names of the Christians of Africa and Spain, 313 For the names of the Christians of Africa and Spain, see the schismatics, 314 For the names of the Christians of Africa and Spain, see the schismatics, 315 For the names of the Christians of Africa and Spain, see the schismatics, 316 For the names of the Christians of Africa and Spain, see the schismatics,
friends of the Mahometan government. Yet this partial jealousy was heightened by time and submission: the churches of Egypt were shared with the Catholic, and all the Oriental sects were included in the common benefits of toleration. The rank, the insignia, the domestic jurisdiction, of the learned, the bishops, and the clergy were protected by the civil magistrate: the learning of individuals recommended them to the employments of secretaries and physicians; they were enriched by the lucrative collection of the revenue; and their merit was sometimes raised to the command of cities and provinces. A caliph of the house of Abbas was bound to declare that the Christians were most worthy of trust in the administration of Persia. "The Muslem," said he, "will lose their present fortune; the Magi will regale their fallen greatness; and the Jews are impatient for their approaching deliverance." But the slaves of despotism are exposed to the alternatives of favour and disgrace. The captive churches of the East have been afflicted in every age by the wrangle or bigotry of their rulers; and the ordinary and legal restraints must be offensive to the pride, or the soul, of the Christians. About two hundred years after Mahomet, they were separated from their fellow-subjects by a turban or girth of a less honorable colour: instead of horses or mules, they were condemned to ride on asses, in the attitude of women. Their public and private buildings were measured by a diminutive standard; in the streets or bazaars it is their duty to give way or bow down before the meanest of the people; and their testimony is rejected, if it may tend to the prejudice of a true believer. The pomp of processions, the sound of bells or of psalmody, is interdicted in their worship: a decent reverence for the national faith is imposed on their sermons and conversations; and the sacrilegious attempt to enter a mosque, or to reduce a Muslin, will not be suffered to escape with impunity. In a time, however, of tranquillity and justice, the Christians have never been compelled to renounce the Gospel, or to embrace the Koran; but the punishment of death is inflicted upon the apostates, who have professed and deserted the law of Mahomet. The martyrs of Cordova provoked the sentence of the cadihi, by the profane confession of their inconstancy; or their passionate exordiums against the person and religion of the prophet. At the end of the first century of this calamity, the Hegira, the caliph was the most potent and absolute monarch of the globe. Their prerogative was not circumscribed, either in right or in fact, by the power of the nobles, the freedom of the commons, the privileges of the church, the votes of a senate, or the memory of a free constitution. The authority of the companions of Mahomet expired with their lives; and the chief or emirs of the Arabian tribes left behind, in the desert, the spirit of equality and independence. The regal and ascendent characters were united in the successors of Mahomet; and if the Koran was the rule of their actions, they were the supreme judges and interpreters of that divine book. They reigned by the right of conquest over the nations of the East, to whom the name of liberty was unknown, and who were accustomed to appeal in their tyrants the acts of violence and severity that were exercised at their own expense. Under the last of the Ummiades, the Arabiui empire extended two hundred days' journey from east to west, from the confines of Tartary and India to the shores of the Atlantic Ocean. And if we retrace the sleeve of the robe, as it is styled by their writers, the long and narrow province of Africa, the solid and compact dominion from Fargana to Aden, from Taurus to Surat, will spread on every side to the measure of four or five months of the march of a caravan. We should vainly seek the indissoluble union and easy obedience that pervaded the government of Augustus and the Antonines; but the progress of the Mahometan religion diffused over this ample space a general resemblance of manners and opinions. The language and laws of the Koran were studied with equal devotion at Samarcand and Seville: the Moor and the Julian embraced as countrymen and brothers in the pilgrimage of Mecca; and the Arabic language was adopted as the popular idiom in all the provinces to the westward of the Tigris.

CHAP. LII.


181 In the century of Justinian (A.D. 527-565) there was an uninterrupted and justifiable war against the Persians, who were the chief enemy of the Byzantine empire. The Persian conquest of Egypt and Syria (A.D. 529-532) was followed by the capture of Africa (A.D. 533), and the pillaging of Asia Minor (A.D. 534). The Persian army, under the command of Belbache, was defeated at Phasis (A.D. 533). The Persians were driven out of Africa and Asia Minor by the Byzantine emperor Justinian, who then conquered Spain and the Maghreb (A.D. 533-535). The Byzantine empire was weakened by these conquests, and the Vandals and the Visigoths invaded the empire. The Vandals were conquered by the Byzantine emperor Justinian (A.D. 535), and the Visigoths were expelled from Spain.

182 The Arabians, who had conquered Egypt (A.D. 639), were not content with the spoils of the conquered land. They invaded Syria and Palestine, and in A.D. 640, they captured the city of Damascus. The Byzantine emperor Heraclius was defeated by the Arabians at the Battle of Tailaferro (A.D. 627), and the Byzantine empire was severely weakened.

183 The Arabians, who had conquered Egypt (A.D. 639), were not content with the spoils of the conquered land. They invaded Syria and Palestine, and in A.D. 640, they captured the city of Damascus. The Byzantine emperor Heraclius was defeated by the Arabians at the Battle of Tailaferro (A.D. 627), and the Byzantine empire was severely weakened.

184 The Arabians, who had conquered Egypt (A.D. 639), were not content with the spoils of the conquered land. They invaded Syria and Palestine, and in A.D. 640, they captured the city of Damascus. The Byzantine emperor Heraclius was defeated by the Arabians at the Battle of Tailaferro (A.D. 627), and the Byzantine empire was severely weakened.

185 The Arabians, who had conquered Egypt (A.D. 639), were not content with the spoils of the conquered land. They invaded Syria and Palestine, and in A.D. 640, they captured the city of Damascus. The Byzantine emperor Heraclius was defeated by the Arabians at the Battle of Tailaferro (A.D. 627), and the Byzantine empire was severely weakened.

186 The Arabians, who had conquered Egypt (A.D. 639), were not content with the spoils of the conquered land. They invaded Syria and Palestine, and in A.D. 640, they captured the city of Damascus. The Byzantine emperor Heraclius was defeated by the Arabians at the Battle of Tailaferro (A.D. 627), and the Byzantine empire was severely weakened.

187 The Arabians, who had conquered Egypt (A.D. 639), were not content with the spoils of the conquered land. They invaded Syria and Palestine, and in A.D. 640, they captured the city of Damascus. The Byzantine emperor Heraclius was defeated by the Arabians at the Battle of Tailaferro (A.D. 627), and the Byzantine empire was severely weakened.

188 The Arabians, who had conquered Egypt (A.D. 639), were not content with the spoils of the conquered land. They invaded Syria and Palestine, and in A.D. 640, they captured the city of Damascus. The Byzantine emperor Heraclius was defeated by the Arabians at the Battle of Tailaferro (A.D. 627), and the Byzantine empire was severely weakened.

189 The Arabians, who had conquered Egypt (A.D. 639), were not content with the spoils of the conquered land. They invaded Syria and Palestine, and in A.D. 640, they captured the city of Damascus. The Byzantine emperor Heraclius was defeated by the Arabians at the Battle of Tailaferro (A.D. 627), and the Byzantine empire was severely weakened.

190 The Arabians, who had conquered Egypt (A.D. 639), were not content with the spoils of the conquered land. They invaded Syria and Palestine, and in A.D. 640, they captured the city of Damascus. The Byzantine emperor Heraclius was defeated by the Arabians at the Battle of Tailaferro (A.D. 627), and the Byzantine empire was severely weakened.
father Herennius. Without delay or opposition, the naval forces of the Saracens passed through the unguarded channel of the Hellespont, which even now, under the feeble and disorderly government of the Turks, is unimproved by the natural bulwark of the capital. The Arabian fleet cast anchor, and the troops were disembarked near the palace of Herod from, seven miles from the city. During many days, from the dawn of light to the evening, the line of assault was extended from the golden gate to the eastern promontory; and the foremost warriors were impelled by the weight and effort of the succeeding columns. But the besiegers had formed an insufficient estimate of the strength and resources of Constantinople. The solid and lofty walls were guarded by numbers and discipline; the spirit of the Romans was rekindled by the last danger of their religion and empire: the fugitives from their conquered provinces more successfully renewed the defence of Damascus and Alexandria; and the Saracens were dismayed by the strange and prodigious effects of artificial fire. This firm and effectual resistance diverted their arms to the more specious attempts of plundering the European and Asiatic coasts of the Propontis; and, after keeping the sea from the month of April to that of September, with the approach of winter they retreated fourteen miles from the capital, to the isle of Cyzicus, in which they had established their magazine of spoil and provisions. So patient was their perseverance, or so languid were their operations, that they repeated in the six following summers the same attack and retreat, with a gradual abatement of hope and vigour, till the mischiefs of shipwreck and disease, of the sword and of fire, compelled them to relinquish the fruitless enterprise. They might bewail the loss, or commemorate the martyrdom, of thirty thousand Moslems, who fell in the siege of Constantinople; and the solemn funeral of Abi Ayub, or Jotb, excited the curiosity of the Christians themselves. That venerable Arab, one of the last of the companions of Mahomet, was numbered among the emirs, or auxiliaries, of Medina, who sheltered the head of the flying prophet. In his youth he fought, at Becher and Ohud, under the holy standard; in his mature age he was the friend and follower of Ali; and the last remnant of his strength and life was consumed in a distant and dangerous war against the enemies of the Koran. His memory was revered; but the place of his burial was neglected, during a period of seven hundred and eighty years, till the conquest of Constantinople by Mahomet the Second. A reasonable visitation (for such are the manufacture of every religion) revealed the holy spot at the foot of the walls and the bottom of the harbour; and the mosque of Ayub has been de-
The event of the siege revived, both in the East and West, the reputation of the Roman arms, and cast a momentary shade over the glories of the Saracens. The Greek ambassador was favourably received at Damascus, in a general council of the emirs, or Kureish: a peace, or truce, of thirty years was ratified between the two empires; and the stipulation of an annual tribute, fifty horses of a noble breed, fifty slaves, and three thousand pieces of gold, degraded the majesty of the commander of the faithful. The aged caliph was desirous of possessing his dominions, and ending his days in tranquillity and repose; while the Moors and Indians trembled at his name, his palace and city of Damascus was insulted by the Mardaites, or Maronites, of Mount Libanus, the furthest barriers of the empire, till they were assuaged and transplanted by the suspicious policy of the Greeks. After the revolt of Arabia and Pessia, the house of Omeyyad was reduced to the kingdom of Syria and Egypt: their distress and fear enforced their compliance with the pressing demands of the Christians; and the tribute was increased to a slave, an horse, and a thousand pieces of gold, for each of the three hundred and sixty-five days of the solar year. But as soon as the empire was again united by the arms and policy of Alshamalak, he dismissed a budge of servitude not less injurious to his conscience than to his pride; he discontinued the payment of the tribute; and the resentment of the Greeks was disabled from action by the mad tyranny of the second Justinian, the just rebellion of his subjects, and the frequent change of his antagonists and successors. Till the reign of Alshamalak, the Saracens had been content with the free possession of the Persian and Roman treasures, in the coin of Chaffoes and Casar. By the command of that caliph, a national mint was established, both for silver and gold, and the inscription of the Dinor, though it might be censured by some timorous counsellors, proclaimed the unity of the God of Mahomet. Under the reign of the caliph Walid, the Greek language and characters were excluded from the accounts of the public revenue. If this change was productive of the invention or familiar use of our present numerals, the Arabic or Indian cipher, as they are commonly styled, a regulation of office has promoted the most important discoveries of arithmetic, algebra, and the mathematical sciences.

Whilst the caliph Walid sat idle on the throne of Damascus, while his lieutenants achieved the conquest of Transoxiana and Spain, a third army of Saracens overspread the provinces of Asia Minor, and approached the borders of the Byzantine capital. But the attempt and disgrace of the second siege was reserved for his brother Sollman, whose ambition appears to have been quickened by a more active and martial spirit. In the revolutions of the Greek empire, after the tyrant Justinian had been punished and avenged, an humble secretary, Anastasius or Arsimius, was promoted by chance or merit to the vacant purple. He was alarmed by the sound of war; and his ambassador returned from Damascus with the tremendous news, that the Saracens were preparing an armament by sea and land, such as would transcend the experience of the past, or the belief of the present age. The precautions of Anastasius were not unworthy of his station, or of the impending danger. He issued a peremptory mandate, that all persons who were not provided with the means of subsistence for a three years' siege, should evacuate the city: the public granaries and arsenals were abundantly replenished: the walls were restored and strengthened; and the engines for casting stones, or darts, or fire, were stationed along the ramparts, or in the brigantines of war, of which an additional number was hastily constructed. To prevent, is safer, as well as more honourable, than to repel, an attack; and a design was meditated, above the usual spirit of the Greeks, of burning the naval stores of the enemy, the cypress timber that had been hewn in Mount Libanus, and was piled along the sea-shore of Phocisia, for the service of the Egyptian fleet. This gigantic enterprise was defeated by the cowardice or treachery of the troops; and, in the new language of the empire, were styled of the Omissus Thima. They murdered their chief, deserted their standard in the isle of Rhodes, dispersed themselves over the adjacent continent, and deserved pardon or reward by investing with the purple a simple officer of the revenue. The name of Theodorus might recommend him to Ehocia and the Arabians physicians, some dosis as high as two thousand, as low as half a dram, may be desired. The price of their work was generally kept high, because the price of the drug was usually high. The price of three grains was not much at Marseilles, A. M. 88, and preserved in the Byzantine currency, and the prices of the Caesars, and of the Saracens, at the rate of 1 s. and 9 d. for one pound. For the commerce and transactions of the Greeks, see Pissiardus and Phocis, both in the Byzantine History, in two, p. 190, of the French translation.

The account of Theophylact, although he had no other sources than the relics of Chaffoes and Casar, is written with much accuracy and truth. His narrative of these events may be traced to the account of Theophanes, and in the Orations of the Patriarch. The predictions of the Saracens are stated in a short and authentic note, in the second volume of Ostervall's History of the Saracens, p. 522, which is founded on a report sent from Constantinople by the Arab, 588 of Oxford, who would have more deeply searched the account of the first author, if he had been considered as a fair key to ascertain the cost and loss of his country.

10 According to a new, though probable, date, the first possession of the island of Rhodes by the Greeks, in the year 420 of the Christian era, is 30 years before the return of the Catholic mission to the East, and 38 years before the visit of the Great Schism, and 64 years after the conversion of the Greek Church into the Christian religion. For the chronology of the Greeks, see Pissiardus and Phocis, both in the Byzantine History, in two, p. 190, of the French translation.

11 In the history of the Thessalians, or, as originally described by Conon, a master of the school of the Pythagoreans, the account of the Saracens and their allies, is not founded on a strict historical investigation. The case was tried in the Byzantine law, and reduced to the Latin abridgment of the law of the Saracens, in the first part of the Byzantine code, and ascribed to the Latin of the year 511.
the senate and people; but, after some months, he sink into a cloister, and resigned, to the firmer hand of Leo the Isaurian, the urgent defence of the capital and empire. The most formidable of the Saracens, Moslemah the brother of the caliph, was advancing at the head of one hundred and twenty thousand Arabs and Persians, the greater part mounted on horses or camels; and the successful sieges of Tyana, Amorion, and Pergamus, were of sufficient duration to exercise their skill and to elevate their hopes. At the well-known passage of Abythus, on the Hellestrep, the Mahometan arms were transported, for the first time, from Asia to Europe. From thence, wheeling round the Thracian cities of the Propontis, Moslemah invested Constantinople on the land side, surrounded his camp with a ditch and rampart, prepared and planted his engines of assault, and declared, by words and actions, a patient resolution of expecting the return of seed-time and harvest, should the obstinacy of the besieged prove equal to his own. The Greeks would gladly have reassured their religion and empire, by a fine or assessment of a piece of gold on the head of each inhabitant of the city; but the liberal offer was rejected with disdain, and the presumption of Moslemah was exalted by the speedy approach and invincible force of the navies of Egypt and Syria. They are said to have amounted to eighteen hundred ships: the number betrays their inconsiderable size; and of the twenty stout and capacious vessels, whose magnitude impeded their progress, each was manned with no more than one hundred heavy armed soldiers. This huge armada proceeded on a smooth sea, and with a gentle gale, towards the mouth of the Bosphorus; the surface of the strait was overspread, in the language of the Greeks, as of a marvellous lake, and the same fatal night had been fixed by the Saracen chief for a general assault by sea and land. To allure the confidence of the enemy, the emperor had thrown over the chain that usually guarded the entrance of the harbour; but while they hesitated whether they should seize the opportunity, or apprehend the snare, the ministers of destruction were at hand. The fireships of the Greeks were launched against them, the Arabs, their arms, and vessels, were involved in the same flames; the disorderly fugitives were dashed against each other or overwhelmed in the waves; and I no longer find a vestige of the fleet, that had threatened to extirpate the Roman name. A still more fatal and irreparable loss was that of the caliph Salomon, who died of an indigestion in his camp near Kinuisia or Chalcis in Syria, as he was preparing to lead against Constantineopolis the remaining forces of the East. The brother of Moslemah was succeeded by a kinsman and an enemy; and the throne of an active and able prince was degraded by the useless and pernicious virtues of a bigot. While he started and satisfied the scruples of a blind conscience, the siege was continued through the winter by the neglect, rather than by the resolution, of the Caliph Omar. The winter proved uncommonly rigorous: above an hundred days the ground was covered with deep snow, and the natives of the sultry climes of Egypt and Arabia lay torpid and almost lifeless in their frozen camp. They reviolved on the return of spring; a second effort had been made in their favour; and their distress was relieved by the arrival of two numerous fleets, laden with corn, and arms, and soldiers; the first from Alexandria, of four hundred transports and galleys; the second of three hundred and sixty vessels from the ports of Africa. But the Greek fires were again kindled, and if the destruction was less complete, it was owing to the experience which had taught the Moslems to remain at a safe distance, or to the perils of the Egyptian mariners, who deserted with their ships to the emperor of the Christians. The trade and navigation of the capital were restored; and the produce of the fisheries supplied the wants, and even the luxury, of the inhabitants. But the calamities of famine and disease were soon felt by the troops of Moslemah, and as the former was mischievously managed, so the latter was dreadfully propagated, by the pernicious nutriment which longer compelled them to extract from the most noxious or unnatural food. The spirit of conquest, and even of enthusiasm, was extinct; the Saracens could no longer struggle beyond their lines, either singly or in small parties, without exposing themselves to the merciless retaliation of the Thracian peasants. An army of Bulgarians was attracted from the Danube by the gifts and promises of Leo; and these savage auxiliaries made some atonement for the evils which they had inflicted on the empire, by the defeat and slaughter of twenty-two thousand Asians. A report was deceptively scattered, that the Franks, the unknown nation of the Latin world, were arming by sea and land in the defence of the Christian cause, and their formidable aid was expected with far different sensations in the camp and city. At length, after a siege of thirteen months, the hope less Moslemah received from the caliph the welcome permission of retreat. The march of the Arabian cavalry over the Hellestrep and through the provinces of Asia, was executed without delay or molestation; but an army of their brethren had been cut in pieces on the side of Bithynia, and the remains of the fleet went so repeatedly damaged by tempest and fire, that only five galleys entered the port of Alexandria to relate the tale of their various and almost incredible disasters.  

13. The caliph had encamped near Bosporus, on the road to, and the Moslem was associated with the Carina and Bosphorus. In one of his proudest to Mecca, the Saracen was, a momentary permission to enter the quarter of the gates of the Yezidis. If the caliph were to arrive, the gates were closed; the Saracen was driven out, and the gates were shut in his face, the quarter of the gates of the Yezidis. If the caliph were to enter, the gates were closed; the Saracen was driven out, and the gates were shut in his face. 

14. For the history of Constantineopolis, see Balsamon, ii. cap. 2. For the history of the siege of Constantinople, see Eusebius, ii. cap. 2. For the history of the siege of Constantinople, see Eusebius, ii. cap. 2. For the history of the siege of Constantinople, see Eusebius, ii. cap. 2. For the history of the siege of Constantinople, see Eusebius, ii. cap. 2. For the history of the siege of Constantinople, see Eusebius, ii. cap. 2. For the history of the siege of Constantinople, see Eusebius, ii. cap. 2. For the history of the siege of Constantinople, see Eusebius, ii. cap. 2. For the history of the siege of Constantinople, see Eusebius, ii. cap. 2.
In the two ages, the deliverance of Constantinople may be chiefly ascribed to the morality, the terror, and the real efficacy of the Greek fire. The important secret of compounding and directing this artificial flame was imparted by Callinicus, a native of Heliopolis in Syria, who deserted from the service of the caliph to that of the emperor. The skill of a chemist and engineer was equivalent to the succour of fleets and armies; and this discovery or improvement of the military art was fortunately reserved for the distressful period, when the degenerate Romans of the East were incapable of contending with the warlike enthusiasm and youthful vigour of the Saracens. The historian who precumes to analyse this extraordinary composition should suspect his own ignorance and that of his Byzantine guides, so prone to the marvellous, so careless, and, in this instance, so jealous of the truth. From their obscure, and perhaps fallacious hints, it should seem that the principal ingredient of the Greek fire was: naphtha, or liquid bitumen, a light, tenacious, and inflammable oil, which springs from the earth, and catches fire as soon as it comes in contact with the air. The naphtha was mingled, I know not by what methods or in what proportions, with sulphur and with the pitch that is extracted from ever-green fire. From this mixture, which produced a thick smoke and a loud explosion, proceeded a dense and obstinate flame, which not only rose in perpendicular ascent, but likewise burnt with equal vehemence from the discordant lateral progress; instead of being extinguished, it was nourished and quickened, by the element of water; and sand, urine, or vinegar, were the only remedies that could damp the fury of this powerful agent, which was justly denounced by the Greeks, the liquid, or the Saracenic fire. For the annoyance of the enemy, it was employed with equal effect, by sea and land, in battles or sieges. It was either poured from the rampart in large boilers, or launched in red-hot balls of stone and iron, or darted in arrows and javelins, twisted round with flax and tow, which had deep imbibed the inflammable oil; sometimes it was deposited in fire-ships, the victims and instruments of a more ample revenge, and was most commonly blown through long tubes of copper, which were planted on the prow of a galley, and fancifully shaped into the mouth of savage monsters, that seemed to vomit a stream of liquid and consuming fire. This important art was preserved at Constantinople, as the palladium of the state: the galleys and artillery might occasionally be lent to the allies of Rome; but the composition of the Greek fire was concealed with the most jealous scruple, and the sale of the engines was increased and prolonged by their ignorance and surprise. In the treatise of the administration of the empire, the royal author suggests the answers and excuses that might best elude the indiscretive curiosity and importunate demands of the barbarians. They should be told that the mystery of the Greek fire had been revealed by an angel to the first and greatest of the Constantinians, with a sacred injunction, that this gift of heaven, this peculiar blessing of the Romans, should never be communicated to any foreign nation: that the prince and subject were alike bound to religions silence under the temporal and spiritual penalties of treason and sacrilege; and that the impious attempt would provoke the sudden and supernatural vengeance of the God of the Christians.

By these precautions, the secret was confined, above four hundred years, to the Romans of the East; and, at the end of the eleventh century, the Fatims, to whom every sea and every art were familiar, suffered the effects, without understanding the composition, of the Greek fire. It was at length either discovered or stolen by the Mahometans; and, in the holy war of Syria and Egypt, they returned an equal, but contrived against them, and did not want the heads of the Christians. A knight, who despised the swords and launces of the Saracens, relates, with heartfelt sincerity, his own fears, and those of his companions, at the sight and sound of the mischievous engine that discharged a torrent of the Greek fire, the fen Grecios, as it is styled by the more easy of the French writers. It came flying through the air, says Johnville, like a winged long-tailed dragon, about the thickness of an hogsnout, with the report of thunder and the velocity of lightning; and the darkness of the night was dispelled by this deadly illumination. The use of the Greek, or, as it might now be called, of the Saracen fire, was continued to the middle of the fourteenth century, when the scientific or casual compound of nitre, sulphur, and charcoal, excelled
a new revolution in the art of war and the history of mankind. 63

Constantinople and the Greek fire might exclude the Arabs from the
eastern entrance of Europe; but in the West, on the side of the Pyrenees, the
province of Gaul was threatened and invaded by the conquers of Spain. 64
The decline of the French monarchy invited the attack of these in-
satiate fanatics. The descendants of Clovis had lost the inheritance of his martial and furious
spirit; and their misfortune or demerit has af-

The descent of the

They ascended the

The domestic

A country palace, in the neighbour-

The domestic

A public employment was converted into the patri-

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,

A government,
romances of chivalry, and to elegantly adorned by the Italian muse. In the decline of society and art, the deserted cities could supply a slender booby to the Saracens; their richest spoil was found in the churches and monasteries, which they stripped of their ornaments and delivered to the flames; and the titular saints, both Hilary of Poitiers and Martin of Tours, forgot their miraculous powers in the defence of their own sepulchres. A victorious line of march had been prolonged above a thousand miles from the rock of Gibraltar to the banks of the Loire, the repetition of an equal space would have carried the Saracens to the confines of Poland and the Highlands of Scotland, the Rhine is not more impassable than the Nile or Euphrates, and the Arabian fleet might have sailed without a naval combat into the mouth of the Thames. Perhaps the interpretation of the Koran would now be taught in the schools of Oxford, and her pulpits might demonstrate to a circumcised people the sanctity and truth of the revelation of Mahomet.

From such calamities was Christendom delivered by the genius and wisdom of one man: Charles, the illegitimate son of the elder Pepin, was crowned with the titles of mayor or duke of the Franks; but he desired to become the father of a line of kings. In a laborious administration of twenty-four years, he restored and supported the dignity of the throne, and the rebels of Germany and Gaul were successively crushed by the activity of a warrior, who, in the same campaign, could display his banner on the Elbe, the Rhine, and the shores of the ocean. In the public danger, he was summoned by the voice of his country; and his rival, the duke of Aquitaine, was reduced to appear among the fugitives and suppliants.

"Alas!" exclaimed the Franks, "what a misfortune! what an indignity! We have long heard of the name and conquests of the Arabs; we were apprehensive of their attack from the East; they have now conquered Spain, and invade our country on the side of the West. Yet their numbers, and (since they have no buckler), their arms, are inferior to our own. If you follow my advice," replied the prudent mayor of the palace, "you will not interrupt their march, nor precipitate your attack. They are like a torrent, which it is dangerous to stem in its career. The thirst of riches, and the consciousness of success, redouble their valour, and valour is of more avail than arms or numbers. Be patient till they have loaded themselves with the incumbrance of wealth. The possession of wealth will divide their counsels and assure your victory." This subtle policy is perhaps a refinement of the Arabian writers; and the situation of Charles will suggest a more narrow and selfish motive of procrastination; the secret desire of hurling the pride, and wasting the provinces, of the rebel duke of Aquitain. It is yet more probable, that the delays of Charles were inevitable and reluctant. A standing army was unknown under the first and second race; more than half the kingdom was now in the hands of the Saracens; according to their respective situation, the Franks of Neustria and Austrasia were too cautious or too careless of the impending danger; and the voluntary aids of the Pepinides and Germans were separated by a long interval from the standard of the Christian general. No saver had he collected his forces, than he sought and found the enemy in the centre of France, between Tours and Poitiers. His well-conducted march was covered by a range of hills, and Abderamans appears to have been surprised by his unexpected presence. The nations of Asia, Africa, and Europe, advanced with equal ardor to an encounter which would change the history of the world. In the six first days of desultory combat, the horsemen and archers of the East maintained their advantage; but in the closer onset of the seventh day, the Orientals were oppressed by the strength and stature of the Germans, who, with stout hearts and iron hands, asserted the civil and religious freedom of their posterity. The epithet of Martel, the Hammer, which has been added to the name of Charles, is expressive of his weighty and irresistible stroke: the valour of Eudes was excited by resentment and humiliation; and their companions, in the ranks of history, are the true Fevers and Paladins of French chivalry. After a bloody field, in which Abderamans was slain, the Saracens, in the close of the evening, retired to their camp. In the disorder and despair of the night, the various tribes of Yemen and Damascus, of Africa and Spain, were provoked to turn their arms against each other: the remains of their host were suddenly disordered, and each emir consulted his safety by a hasty and separate retreat. At the dawn of day, the stillness of an hostile camp was suspected by the victorious Christians: on the report of their spies, they ventured to explore the riches of the vanquished hosts; but, if we except some celebrated relics, a small portion of the spoil was restored to the innocent and lawful owners. The joyful tidings were soon diffused over the Catholic world, and the monks of Italy could affirm and believe that three hundred and fifty, or three hundred and seventy-five, thousand of the Mahometans had been crushed by the hammer of Charles, while no more than fifteen hundred Christians were slain in the field of Tours. But this incredible tale is sufficiently disproved by the caution of the French general, who apprehended the enemies and
the governor of Chorasan continued to deplore its fruitless admonitions and the deadly slumber of the caliphs of Damascus, till he himself, with all his adherents, was driven from the city and palace of Merv, by the rebellious arms of Abu Moslem. That maker of kings, the author, as he is named, of the coif of the Abbassides, was at length rewarded for his presumption of merit with the usual gratitude of courts. A man, perhaps, a foreign, extraction could not repress the aspiring energy of Abu Moslem. Jealous of his victories, liberal of his wealth, prodigal of his own blood and that of others, he could boast with pleasure, and possibly with truth, that he had destroyed six hundred thousand of his enemies; and such was the invincible gravity of his mind and counsels, that he was never seen to smile except on a day of battle. In the visible separation of parties, the green was consecrated to the Fatimites; the Ommites were distinguished by the white; and the black, as the most adverse, was naturally adopted by the Abbassides. Their turbans and garments were stained with that gloomy colour: two black standards, on pike staffs nine cubits long, were borne aloft in the van of Abu Moslem; and their allegorical names of the night and the shadow obscurely represented the indissoluble union and perpetual succession of the line of Hassem. From the Indus to the Euphrates, the East was convulsed by the quarrel of the white and the black factions; the Abbassides were most frequently victorious; but their public success was clouded by the personal misfortunes of their chief. The court of Damascus, awakening from a long slumber, resolved to prevent the pilgrimage of Mecca, which Ibrahim had undertaken with a splendid retinue, to recommend himself at once to the favour of the prophet and of the people. A detachment of cavalry intercepted his march, and arrested his person; and the unhappy Ibrahim, snatched away from the promise of untasted royalty, expired in Iran fetters in the dungeons of Haras. His two younger brothers, Saffah and Almass, eluded the search of the tyrant, and lay concealed at Cufa, till the zeal of the people and the approach of his Eastern friends allowed them to expose their persons to the impotent public. On Friday, in the dress of a caliph, in the colours of the sect, Saffah proceeded with religious and military pomp to the mecha: ascending the pulpit, he prayed and preached as the lawful successor of Mahomet; and, after his departure, his kinsmen bound a willing people by an oath of fidelity. But it was on the banks of the Zab, and not in the mecha of Cufa, that this important controversy was determined. Every advantage appeared to be on the side of the white faction: the authority of established government; an army of an hundred and twenty thousand soldiers, against a sixth part of that number; and the presence and merit of the caliph Mervan, the

32. Northam, and the text of Isambardus, was reviewed by Parisi, the son of Charles Martel, &c. 1. 7. 35 (Pagi, Citron, note, 31. p. 366.)

33. The boundaries of Cupid, the land of the Saracen, and the land of the warlike Turks, as given by the Arab geographers, are in the martial instinct of the vast empires, and it was thought that the king, who, during the conquest of the north, led his wars, and the Turk, who, in the province of Kirth, and Bureene (Islando, Amur, Ussuri) in the province of Khent, and Rosese (Islando, Amur, Ussuri)
fourteenth and last of the house of Omeyyad. Before his accession to the throne, he had deserved, by his Georgian warfare, the honourable epithet of the son of Mesopotamia; and he might have been ranked among the greatest princes, had not, says Abulfiha, the eternal order decreed that moment for the ruin of his family; a decree against which all human prudence and fortune must struggle in vain. The orders of Merwan were mistaken, or disobeyed: the return of his bones, from which he had dismounted on a necessary occasion, impressed the belief of his death; and the enthusiasm of the black slavengers was duly conducted by Abdallah, the uncle of his companion. After an irretrievable defeat, the caliph escaped to Mount; but the colours of the Abbassides were displayed from the rampart: his suddenly repassed the Tigris, cast a melancholy look on his palace of Haran, crossed the Euphrates, abandoned the fortifications of Damascus, and, without halting in Palestine, pitched his last and fatal camp at Busir on the banks of the Nile. His speed was urged by the incessant diligence of Abdallah, who in every step of the pursuit acquired strength and reputation: the remnant of the white faction were finally vanquished in Egypt; and the enemy, which terminated the life and anxiety of Merwan, was not less welcome perhaps to the unfortunate than to the victorious chief. The merciful disposition of the conqueror selected the most distant branches of the hostile race; their bones were scattered, their memory was accursed, and their martyrdom of Hussein was abundantly revenged on the posterity of his tyrants. Four-score of the Omeyyads, who had yielded to the faith or clemency of their foes, were invited to a banquet at Damascus. The laws of hospitality were violated by a proscription massacre: the board was spread over their fallen bodies; and the festivity of the guests was augmented by the music of their dying groans. By the event of the civil war the dynasty of the Abbassides was firmly established; but the Christian only could triumph in the mutual hatred and common loss of the disciples of Mahomet.

Yet the thousands who were swept away by the sword of war might have been speedily retrieved in the succeeding generation, if the consequences of the revolution had not tended to dissolve the power and unity of the empire of the Saracens. In the proscription of the Omeyyads, a royal youth of the name of Abdalrahman alone escaped the rage of his enemies, who hunted the wandering exile from the banks of the Euphrates to the valleys of Mount Atlas. His presence in the neighbourhood of Spain revived the zeal of the white faction. The name and cause of the Abbassides had been first vindicated by the Persians; the West had been pure from civil arms; and the servants of the abdicated family still held, by a precarious tenure, the inheritance of their lands and the offices of government. Strongly prompted by gratitude, indignation, and fear, they invited the grandson of the caliph Hasbun to ascend the throne of his ancestors; and, in his desperate condition, the extremities of rashness and prudence were almost the same. The acclamations of the people saluted his landing on the coast of Andalusia; and, after a successful struggle, Abdalrahman established the throne of Cordova, and was the father of the Omeyyades of Spain, who reigned above two hundred and fifty years from the Atlantic to the Pyrenees. He slew in battle a lieutenant of the Abbassides, who had invaded his dominions with a fleet and army: the head of Alar, in salt and camphire, was suspended by a daring messenger before the palace of Mecca; and the caliph Almanrre rejoiced in his safety, that he was removed by sea and lands from such a formidable adversary. Their mutual designs or declarations of offensive were evaporated without effect; but instead of opening a door to the conquest of Europe, Spain was discovered from the trunk of tharmonchly, engaged in perpetual hostilities with the East, and inclined to peace and friendship with the Christian sovereigns of Constantinople and France. The example of the Omeyyades was imitated by the real or fictitious progeny of Ali, the Edrissites of Mauratania, and the more powerful Fatimides of Africa and Egypt. In the tenth century, the chair of Mahomet was disputed by three caliphs or commanders of the faithful, who reigned at Baghdad, Cairo, and Cordova, excommunicated each other, and agreed only in a principle of discord, that a sectary is more odious and criminal than an unbeliever.

Mecca was the patriomy of the line of Hasbun, yet the Abbassides were never tempted to reside either in the birth-place or the city of the prophet. Damascus was disgraced by the absence, and polluted with the blood, of the Omeyyades; and, after some hesitation, Almanzor, the brother and successor of Saffah, laid the foundations...
of Bagdad, the Imperial seat of his posterity during a reign of five hundred years. The chosen spot is on the eastern bank of the Tigris, about fifteen miles above the ruins of Mohtam: the double wall was of a circular form; and such was the rapid increase of a capital, now dwindled to a provincial town, that the funeral of a popular saint might be attended by eight hundred thousand souls. But sixty thousand women of Bagdad and the adjacent villages.

In this city of peace, amidst the riches of the East, the Abbassides soon dissolved the asceticism and frugality of the first caliphs, and aspired to emulate the magnificence of the Persian kings. After his wars and buildings, Almansar left behind him in gold and silver about thirty millions sterling; and this treasure was exhausted in a few years by the views or virtues of his children. His son Mahdil, in a single pilgrimage to Mecca, expended six millions of dinars of gold. A noble and charitable motive may sanctify the foundation of citadels and caravanserais, which he distributed along a measured road of seven hundred miles; but his train of camels, laden with snow, could serve only to astonish the natives of Arabia, and to refresh the fruits and liquors of the royal harem. The courtiers would surely praise the liberality of his grandson Almamun, who gave away four fiftieths of the income of a province, a sum of two millions four hundred thousand gold dinars, before he drew his foot from the stirrup. At the annuals of the same prince, a thousand pearls of the largest size were showered on the head of the bride, and a lottery of lands and houses displayed the capricious bounty of fortune. The glories of the court were heightened, rather than impaired, in the decline of the empire, and a Greek ambassador might admire, or pity, the magnificence of the sultan Moestader. The caliph's whole army," says the historian Abulfeda, "both horse and foot, was under arms, which together had a body of one hundred and sixty thousand men. His star officers, the favourite slaves, stood near him in splendid apparel, their belts glittering with gold and gems. Near them were seven thousand eunuchs, four thousand of them white, the remainder black.

The porters or door-keepers were in number seven hundred. Barges and boats, with the most superb decorations, were seen swimming upon the Tigris. Nor was the palace itself less splendid, in which were hung up thirty-eight thousand pieces of tapestry, twelve thousand, and five hundred of which were of silk embroidered with gold. The carpets on the floor were twenty-two thousand. An hundred lions were brought out, with a keeper to each of them. Among the other spectacles of rare and stupendous luxury was a tree of gold and silver spreading into eighteen large umbrellas, on which, and on the lesser boughs, sat various birds carved of the same precious metals, as well as the leaves of the tree.

While the machinery affected spontaneous motions, the several birds worked their natural harmony. Through this scene of magnificence, the Greek ambassador was led by the visit to the feet of the caliph's throne.

In the west, the Omiards of Spain supported, with equal pomp, the title of commander of the faithful. Three miles from Cordova, in honour of his favourite sultana, the third and greatest of the Abdulrahans constructed the city, palace, and gardens of Zebra. Twenty-five years, and above three millions sterling, were employed by the founder: his liberal taste invited the artists of Constantinople, the most skilful sculptors and architects of the age; and the buildings were sustained or adorned by twelve hundred columns of Spanish and African, of Greek and Italian marble. The hall of audience was incrusted with gold and pearls, and a great basin in the centre was surrounded with the curious and costly figures of birds and quadrupeds. In a lofty pavilion of the gardens, one of these basins and fountains, so delightful in a sultry climate, was replenished not with water, but with the purest quicksilver. The magisterial of Abdulrahman, his wives, concubines, and black eunuchs, amounted to six thousand three hundred persons; and he was attended to the field by a guard of twelve thousand horse, whose belts and cimeters were studded with gold.

In a private condition, our desires are perpetually repressed by poverty and subordination; but the lives and labours of multitudes are devoted to the service of a despotic prince, whose laws are blindly obeyed, and whose wishes are instantly gratified. Our imagination is dazzled by the splendid picture; and whatever may be the cold dictates of reason, there are few among us who would obstinately refuse a trial of the comforts of repose.


and the cares of royalty. It may therefore be of some use to borrow the experience of the same Albasir Almanor, whose magnificence has perhaps excited our admiration and envy, and to transcribe an authentic memorial which was found in the closet of the deceased caliph. "I have now reigned above fifty years in victory or peace; beloved by my subjects, dreaded by my enemies, and respected by my allies. Riches and honours, power and pleasure, have waited on my call, nor does any earthly blessing appear to have been wanting to my felicity. In this situation, I have diligently numbered the days of pure and genuine happiness which have fallen to my lot: they amount to fourteen:—O man! place not thy confidence in this present world!" 28 The luxury of the caliphs, so meek in to their private happiness, relaxed the nerves, and terminated the progress of the Arabian empire. Temporal and spiritual conquest had been the sole occupation of the first successors of Mahomet; and after supplying themselves with the necessaries of life, the whole revenue was scrupulously devoted to that sanguinary work. The Abbassides were impoverished by the multitude of their wants, and their contempt of economy. Instead of pursuing the great object of ambition, their leisure, their affections, the powers of their mind, were diverted by pomp and pleasure; the rewards of valor were embezzled by women and eunuchs, and the royal camp was encumbered by the luxury of a seraglio. A similar tempest was diffused among the subjects of the caliphs. Their stern enthusiasm was softened by time and prosperity; they sought riches in the occupation of industry, fame in the pursuits of literature, and happiness in the tranquillity of domestic life. War was no longer the passion of the Saracens; and the increase of pay, the reputation of donations, were insufficient to allure the posterity of those voluntary champions who had crowed to the standard of Abubeker and Omer for the hopes of spoil and of paradise.

Under the reign of the Abbassides, the studies of the Moors were confined to the interpretation of the Koran, and the eloquence and poetry of their native tongue. A people continually exposed to the dangers of the field must esteem the healing powers of medicine, or rather of surgery; but the starving physicians of Arabia murmured a complaint that exercise and temperance deprived them of the greatest part of their practice. 21 After their civil and domestic wars, the subjects of the Abbassides, awakening from this mental lethargy, found leisure and felt curiosity for the acquisition of profane science. This spirit was first encouraged by the caliph Almanor, who, besides his knowledge of the Mahometan law, had applied himself with success to the study of astronomy. But when the sceptre devolved to Almanor, the seventh of the Abbassides, he completed the designs of his grandfather, and invited the muses from their ancient seats. His ambassadors at Constantinople, his agents in Armenia, Syria, and Egypt, collected the volumes of Greek science; at his command they were translated by the most skilful interpreters into the Arabic language; his subjects were exhorted assiduously to purse these instructive writings; and the successors of Mahomet assisted with pleasure and money at the assemblies and disputations of the learned. "He was not ignorant," says Abulpharagius, "that they are the elect of God, his best and most useful servants, whose lives are devoted to the improvement of their rational faculties. The mean ambition of the Chinese or the Turks may glory in the industry of their hands or the indulgence of their brutal appetites. Yet these dexterous artists must view, with hopeless emulation, the hexagons and pyramids of the cells of a bee-hive; these fortitudinous heroes are awed by the superior fierceness of the lions and tigers; and in their amorous enjoyments, they are much inferior in the vigour of the gawest and most solicit quadrapeds. The teachers of wisdom are the true luminaries and legislators of a world, which, without their aid, would again sink into ignorance and barbarism." 22 The zeal and curiosity of Almanor were imitated by succeeding princes of the line of Abbas; their rivals, the Fatimides of Africa and the Omnissades of Spain, were the patrons of the learned, as well as the commanders of the faithful; the same royal prerogative was claimed by their independent emirs of the provinces; and their emulation diffused the taste and the rewards of science from Samarcand and Bocham to Fez and Cordova. The visit of a sultan consecrated a sum of two hundred thousand pieces of gold to the foundation of a college at Bagdad, which he endowed with an annual revenue of fifteen thousand dinars. The fruits of instruction were communicated, perhaps at different times, to six thousand disciples of every degree, from the son of the noble to that of the mechanic; a sufficient allowance was provided for the indigent scholars, and the merit or industry of the professor was repaid with adequate stipends. In every city the productions of Arabic literature were copied and collected by the curiosity of the savans and the vanity of the rich. A private doctor refused the invitation of the sultan of Bocham, because the carriage of his books would have required four hundred camels. The royal li

28 Qaran. tom. i. p. 257, 250. This conclusion, the completion of sciences of the value of this world, must cover a vast scope. The age of the Arabian empire had been a period of great activity in this department. In the reign of the seventh caliph, the governors of the empire were accustomed to supply the wants of the court, as well as the metropolis, by the products of the sciences; the emperors are said to have spent on this object one hundred and fifty thousand dollars. The science of mathematics was cultivated with great vigour. Algebra was employed on the most abstruse subjects; and the examination of the great problems of the world was attempted with success. It is reported in the Synopsis of the sciences; the most important of which was the investigation of the square root, the second degree of the universe, which was the subject of the principal treatises on algebra. The principle of this science, as well as with the work of Physician's Specimen Historiae, 21. A number of literary and historical works of the Abbassids, who have been translated into each other, form the principal mass of the Arabic language.
After the fall of that religion, the Peripatetics, emerging from their obscurity, prevailed in the controversies of the Oriental sects, and their founder was long afterwards restored by the Mahometans of Spain to the Latin schools. The physics, both of the Academy and the Lyceum, as they are built, not on observation, but on argument, have retarded the progress of real knowledge. The metaphysics of infinite, or finite, spirit, have too often been enlisted in the service of superstition. But the human faculties are forever led by the art and practice of dialectics; the ten precepts of Aristotle collect and methodize our ideas, and his syllogism is the keenest weapon of dispute. It was dextrously wielded in the schools of the Sarcens, but as it is more effectual for the detection of error than for the investigation of truth, it is not surprising that new generations of masters and disciples should still revolve in the same circle of logical argument. The mathematicians are distinguished by a peculiar privilege; that, in the course of ages, they may always advance, and can never recede. But the ancient geometry, if I am not misinformed, was resumed in the same state by the Italians of the fifteenth century; and whatever may be the origin of the name, the science of algebra is ascribed to the Grecian Diogenantes by the modest testimony of the Arabs themselves. They cultivated with more success the sublime science of astronomy, which elevates the mind of man to disdain his diminutive planet and momentary existence. The costly instruments of observation were supplied by the caliph Alamund, and the land of the Caliphans still afforded the same spacious level, the same unclouded horizon. In the plains of Sittar, and a second time in those of Cufa, his mathematicians accurately measured a degree of the great circle of the earth, and determined at twenty-four thousand miles the entire circumference of our globe. From the shores of the Aethiopians to that of the grandchildren of Tamerlane, the stars, without the aid of glasses, were diligently observed; and the astronomical tables of Baghdad, Spain, and Samarcaud, correct some minute errors, without daring to renounce the hypothesis of Ptolemy, without advancing a step towards the discovery of the solar system. In the Eastern courts, the truths of science would be recommended only by ignorance and folly, and the astronomer would have been disregarded, had...
he not indeed his wisdom or honesty by the vain predictions of astrology. 62 But in the science of medicine, the Arabians have been deservedly applauded. The Reman of Messa and Geber, of Razis and Avicenna, are ranked with the Greeks. In the city of Bagdad, eight hundred and sixty physicians were licensed to exercise their lucrative profession. 64 In Spain, the life of the Catholic princes was entrusted to the skill of the Saracens, 65 and the school of Salerno, their legitimate offspring, revived in Italy and Europe the precepts of the healing art. 66 The success of each professor must have been influenced by personal and accidental causes; but we may form a less fanciful estimate of their general knowledge of anatomy, 67 botany, 68 and chemistry, 69 the threefold basis of their theory and practice. A superstitious reverence for the dead confined both the Greeks and the Arabians to the dissection of apes and quadrupeds; the more solid and visible parts were known in the time of Galen, and the finer scrutiny of the human frame was reserved for the microscope and the injections of modern artists. Botany is an active science, and the discoveries of the torrid zone might enrich the herbal of Dioscurides with two thousand plants. Some traditional knowledge might be secreted in the temples and monasteries of Egypt; much useful experience had been acquired in the practice of arts and manufactures; but the science of chemistry owes its origin and improvement to the industry of the Saracens. They first invented and named the alembic for the purposes of distillation, analyzed the substances of the three kingdoms of nature, tried the distinction and affinities of alkalis and acids, and converted the potious minerals into soft and salutary medicines. But the most signal search of Arabian chemistry was the transmutation of metals, and the elixir of immortality; the reason and the fortunes of thousands were evaporated in the crucibles of alchemy, and the consummation of the great work was promoted by the worldly aid of mystery, fable, and superstition.

But the Moslems deprived themselves of the principal benefits of a familiar intercourse with Greece and Rome, the knowledge of antiquity, the purity of taste, and the freedom of thought. Confident in the riches of their native tongue, the Arabians disdained the study of any foreign idiom. The Greek interpreters were chosen among their Christian subjects; they formed their translations, sometimes on the original text, more frequently perhaps on a Syriac version; and in the crowd of astronomers and physicians, there is no example of a poet, an orator, or even an historian, being taught to speak the language of the Saracens. 70 The mythology of Homer would have provoked the abhorrence of those stern fanatics; they possessed in lazy ignorance the colonies of the Macedonians, and the provinces of Carthage and Rome: the heroes of Plutarch and Livy were buried in oblivion; and the history of the world before Mahomet was reduced to a short legend of the patriarchs, the prophets, and the Persian kings. Our education in the Greek and Latin schools may have fixed in our minds a standard of exclusive taste; and I am not to forward to condemn the literature and judgment of nations, of whose language I am ignorant. Yet I know that the classics have much to teach, and I believe that the Oriental have much to learn: the temperate dignity of style, the graceful proportions of art, the forms of visible and intellectual beauty, the just delineation of character and passion, the rhetoric of narrative and argument, the regular fabric of epic and dramatic poetry. 71 The influence of truth and reason is of a less ambiguous complexion. The philosophers of Athens and Rome enjoyed the blessings, and asserted the rights, of civil and religious freedom. Their moral and political writings might have gradually unlocked the fetters of Eastern despotism, diffused a liberal spirit of enquiry and toleration, and encouraged the Arabian sages to suspect that their caliph was a tyrant, and their prophet an impostor. 72 The instinct of superstition was alarmed by the introduction even of the abstract sciences; and the more rigid doctors of the law condemned the rash and pernicious curiosity of Almanzor. 73 To the thirst of martyrdom, the vision of paradise, and the belief of predestination, we must ascribe the invidious enthusiasm of the princes and people. And the sword of the Saracens became less formidable, when their youth was drawn away from the camp to the college, where the armies of the faithful presumed to read and to reflect. Yet the foolish vanity of the Greeks was jealous of their studies, and reluctantly

62. The truth of astrology was allowed by Alhacen, and the best of the ancient philosophers and philosophers of modern times professed it. See also from Vossius and Mussius, sacra astrologica, and from Athenaeus, deipnosophistae, ii. 33.
63. Batteux, Abbe, Bonamy, 2, 186, 226. The ancient sciences a mere trivial study of the ancients, but converso, the moderns.
64. See also the size of the medical texts at Bagdad, and the number of the physicians of the city of Bagdad, as mentioned by the physicians of Constantine (Hermisson, loc. cit. 2, 319. loc. cit. 521.
65. See also the size of the medical texts at Bagdad, and the number of the physicians of the city of Bagdad, as mentioned by the physicians of Constantine (Hermisson, loc. cit. 2, 319. loc. cit. 521.
66. See also the size of the medical texts at Bagdad, and the number of the physicians of the city of Bagdad, as mentioned by the physicians of Constantine (Hermisson, loc. cit. 2, 319. loc. cit. 521.
67. See also the size of the medical texts at Bagdad, and the number of the physicians of the city of Bagdad, as mentioned by the physicians of Constantine (Hermisson, loc. cit. 2, 319. loc. cit. 521.
68. See also the size of the medical texts at Bagdad, and the number of the physicians of the city of Bagdad, as mentioned by the physicians of Constantine (Hermisson, loc. cit. 2, 319. loc. cit. 521.
69. See also the size of the medical texts at Bagdad, and the number of the physicians of the city of Bagdad, as mentioned by the physicians of Constantine (Hermisson, loc. cit. 2, 319. loc. cit. 521.
70. See also the size of the medical texts at Bagdad, and the number of the physicians of the city of Bagdad, as mentioned by the physicians of Constantine (Hermisson, loc. cit. 2, 319. loc. cit. 521.
71. See also the size of the medical texts at Bagdad, and the number of the physicians of the city of Bagdad, as mentioned by the physicians of Constantine (Hermisson, loc. cit. 2, 319. loc. cit. 521.
72. See also the size of the medical texts at Bagdad, and the number of the physicians of the city of Bagdad, as mentioned by the physicians of Constantine (Hermisson, loc. cit. 2, 319. loc. cit. 521.
73. See also the size of the medical texts at Bagdad, and the number of the physicians of the city of Bagdad, as mentioned by the physicians of Constantine (Hermisson, loc. cit. 2, 319. loc. cit. 521.
The queen (she spoke of Irene) considered you as a rock, and herself as a pawn. That pictures
distinguished female submitted to pay a tribute,
the double of which she sought to have exacted
from the barbarians. Restore therefore the
fruits of your injustice, or abide the deter-
mation of the sword." At these words the
ambassadors cast a bundle of swords before the
foot of the throne. The caliph smiled at the
measure, and drawing his cimeter, summoned,
a weapon of historic or fabulous renown, he
cut asunder the feebie arms of the Greeks,
without turning the edge, or endangering the
temper, of his blade. He then dictated an
epistle of tremendous brevity: "In the name
of the most merciful God, Harun al Rashid,
commander of the faithful, to Nicephorus, the
Roman dog. I have read thy letter, O thou
son of an unbelieving mother. Thou shalt
not hear, thou shalt behold my reply." It
was written in characters of blood and fire on
the plains of Phrygia; and the warlike celerity of the Arabs could only be checked by the
acts of decreet and the show of repentance. The
triumphant caliph retired, after the fatigues of the
campaign, to his favourite palace of Harce
on the Euphrates; but the distance of five
hundred miles, and the inclemency of the
season, encouraged his adversary to violate the
peace. Nicephorus was astonished by the bold
and rapid march of the commander of the
faithful, who repassed, in the depth of winter, the
snows of Mount Taurus; his stratagems of policy and war were exhausted; and the perfidious
Greek escaped with three wounds from a
field of battle overspread with forty thousand
of his subjects. Yet the emperor was ashamed of
submission, and the caliph was resolved on victo-
ry. One hundred and thirty-five thousand
regular soldiers received pay, and were ins-
cribed in the military roll; and above three
hundred thousand persons of every denomina-
tion marched under the black standard of the
Abbassides. They swept the surface of Asia Min-
or far beyond Tyana and Ancyra, and invested
the Pontic Hercules, whose flourishing state,
now a paltry town; at that time capable of sustai-
ning, in her antique walls, a month's siege against the forces of the East. The ruin was
complete, the spoil was ample; but if Harun
had been conversant with Greek story, he
would have regretted the statue of Hercules,
whose attributes, the club, the bow, the quiver,
and the lion's hide, were sculptured in many
gold. The progress of desolation by sea and land,
from the Euxine to the isle of Cyprus,
compelled the emperor Nicephorus to retract
his haughty defiance. In the new treaty, the
ruins of Hercules were left for ever as a lesson
and a trophy; and the coin of the tribute was
marked with the image and superscription of
The more desirable position in the eastern part of the Roman empire, and the name of Carthage, their fortress and colony, has been extended to the whole island, under the corrupt and modern appellation of Cnania. The hundred cities of the age of Minos were diminished to thirty; and of these, only one, most probably Cydonia, had courage to retain the substance of freedom and the profession of Christianity. The Saracens of Crete soon repaired the loss of their navy; and the timbers of Mount Ida were launched into the main. During an hostile period, of one hundred and thirty-eight years, the princes of Constantinople attacked these licentious corsairs with fruitless curses and ineffectual arms.

The loss of Sicily was occasioned by an act of superstition and rigour. An amorous youth, who had stolen a nun from her cloister, was sentenced by the emperor to the amputation of his tongue. Euphemius appealed to the reason and policy of the Saracens of Africa; and soon returned with the Imperial purple, a fleet of one hundred ships, and an army of seven hundred horse and ten thousand foot. They landed at Mazara near the ruins of the ancient Selinus; but after some partial victories, Syracuse was delivered by the Greeks, the apostate was slain before her walls, and his African friends were reduced to the necessity of feeding on the flesh of their own horses. In their turn they were relieved by a powerful reinforcement of their brethren of Amalusia; the largest and western part of the island was gradually reduced, and the commerical harbour of Palermo was chosen for the seat of the naval and military power of the Saracens. Syracuse preserved about fifty years the faith which she had sworn to Christ and to Caesar. In the last and fatal siege, her citizens displayed some remnant of the spirit which had formerly resisted the powers of Athens and Carthage. They stood above twenty days against the battering-rams and catapults, the mines and tortoises of the besiegers; and the place might have been relieved, if the marines of the Imperial fleet had not been detained at Constantinople in building a church to the Virgin Mary. The deacon Theodosius, with the bishop and clergy, was dragged in chains from the altar to Palermo, cast into a subterranean dungeon, and exposed to the hourly peril of death or asestacy. His pathetic, and not insolent complaint, may be read as the epitaph of his country. From the Roman conquest to this final calamity, Syracuse, now

---

73. The war of Elam and Babylonia against the Roman emperors was ended by the battle of Ephesus (284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289), A.D. 304-312, Theodosius, sec. L, p. 312.---

74. The author of whom I have heard the most of the moderns is the Egyptian Ptolemy, who was born in 150 B.C.---

75. The beacon and thwarting of the natural watering-place of the island is very evident.---

76. The last and most magnificent of the excavations is that of the Roman baths of the Emperor Caracalla, which were discovered in 1827, A.D. 217-222.---

77. The most ancient and important is that of the Cretans, as we have well shown in the first volume of this work.---

78. See the report of the memorable battle of Phalerum in the form of a sonnet, in the poem of the Venetian poet, 1533.---

79. The name of Cnania and the language is the same, A.D. 273-284.---

80. To these we may add the important contribution of the Emperor Justinian and the Eunuchus, as well as the Armigerous Herodotus, and the eunuchus, as well as the Armigerous Herodotus, 520-527, and Julianus.---

81. The decline and fall of the Roman empire. A.D. 827,Nov. 54, sec. I.---

82. But the modern Greeks are much more civilized than the ancient, and the country is not likely to recover its ancient glory of nations.---

83. Bunsen, Itin. Ital., p. 75; his account is the most correct.---

84. The situation and interesting tragedy of Syracuse would seem to have been well described by the modern poet, who supplies the words of this poet with the facts of modern history and makes a picturesque.---

85. The narrative of Sir Walter Scott is translated and illustrated by Sir Walter Scott, in his History of the Expedition of the Army of the Frozen Continent, to the North of the 13th Parallel of North Lat. (London, 1814, pp. 775, 776, &c.); and is illustrated from the facts of modern history and makes it picturesque.---

86. For the text, see the edition of Sir Walter Scott, in his History of the Expedition of the Army of the Frozen Continent, to the North of the 13th Parallel of North Lat. (London, 1814, pp. 775, 776, &c.); and is illustrated from the facts of modern history and makes it picturesque.
dwindled to the primitive isle of Ortyges, had insensibly declined. Yet the relics were still precious; the plate of the cathedral weighed five thousand pounds of silver; the entire spoil was computed at one million of pieces of gold (about four hundred thousand pounds sterling); and the captives must outnumber the seventeen thousand Christians, who were transported from the sack of Taormin into African servitude. In Sicily, the religion and language of the Greeks were eradicated; and such was the declivity of the rising generation, that fifteen thousand boys were circumcised and clothed on the same day with the son of the Fatimite caliph. The Arabian squadrons issuing from the harbours of Palermo, Biserta, and Tunis; an hundred and fifty towns of Calabria and Campania were attacked and pillaged; nor could the suburbs of Rome be defended by the name of the Caesars and Apostles. Had the Mahometans been united, Italy must have fallen an easy and glorious accession to the empire of the prophet. But the calls of Baghdad had lost their authority in the West; the Aglabites and Fatimites usurped the province of Africa; their enmity of Sicily aspired to independence; and the design of conquest and domination was degraded to a repetition of predatory incursions.

In the sufferings of prostrate Italy, the name of Rome awakens a solemn and mueurful recollection. A fleet of Saracens from the African coast presumed to enter the mouth of the Tyber, and to approach a city which even yet, in its fallen state, was revered as the metropolis of the Christian world. The gates and ramparts were guarded by a trembling people; but the tombs and temples of St. Peter and St. Paul were left exposed in the suburbs of the Vatican and of the Ostian way. Their invisible sanctity had protected them against the Goths, the Vandals, and the Lombards; but the Arabs disdained both the Gospel and the legend; and their rapacious spirit was approved and animated by the precepts of the Koran. The Christian idols were stripped of their costly offerings; a silver altar was torn away from the shrine of St. Peter; and if the bodies or the buildings were left entire, their deliverance must be imputed to the haste, rather than the serenity, of the Saracens. In their course along the Appian way, they pillaged Fundi and besieged Gayeta; but they had turned aside from the walls of Rome, and, by their divisions, the Capitol was saved from the yoke of the prophet of Morocco. The same danger still impended on the heads of the Roman people; and their domestic force was unequal to the assault of an African emir. They claimed the protection of their Latin sovereign; but the Carlingian standard was overthrown by a detachment of the barbarians; they meditated the restoration of the Greek emperors; but the attempt was treasonable; and the succour remote and precarious. Their distress appeared to receive some aggravation from the death of their spiritual and temporal chief; but the pressing emergency superseded the forms and intrigues of an election; and the unanimous choice of pope Leo the Fourth was the safety of the church and city. This pontiff was born a Roman; the courage of the first ages of the republic glowed in his breast; and, amidst the ruins of his country, he stood erect, like one of the firm and lofty columns that rear their heads above the fragments of the Roman forum. The first days of his reign were consecrated to the purification and removal of relics, to prayers and processions, and to all the solemn offices of religion, which served at last to heal the imagination, and restore the hopes, of the multitude. The public defence had been long neglected, not from the presumption of peace, but from the distress and poverty of the times. As far as the scantiness of his means and the shortness of his leisure would allow, the ancient walls were repaired by the command of Leo; fifteen towers, in the most accessible stations, were built or renewed; two of those commanded on either side the Tyber; and an iron chain was drawn across the stream to impede the ascent of an hostile navy. The Romans were assured of a short respite by the welcome news, that the siege of Gayeta had been raised, and that a part of the enemy, with their sacrilegious plunder, had perished in the waves. But the storm which had been delayed, soon burst upon them with redoubled violence. The Aglabites, who ruled in Africa, had inherited from his father a treasure and an army: a fleet of Arabs and Moors, after a short refreshment in the harbours of Girondia, cast anchor before the mouth of the Tyber, sixteen miles from the city; and their discipline and numbers appeared to threaten, not a transient visit, but a serious design of conquest and dominion. But the vigilance of Leo had formed an alliance with the vessels of the Greek empire, the free and maritime states of Gayeta, Naples, and Amalfi; and in the hour of danger, their galleys appeared in the port of Ostia, under the command of Cassarini, the son of the Neapolitan duke, a noble and valiant youth, who had already vanquished the fleets of the Saracens.

With his principal companions, Cassarini was invited to the Lateran palace, and the deaconess pontiff affected to enquire their errand, and to accept with joy and surprise their providential succour. The city bands, in arms, attended their father to Ostia, where he reviewed and blessed his generous deliverers. They kissed his feet, received the communion with martial devotion, and listened to the prayer of Leo, that the same God

---

85 Voltaire (Hist. Générale, tom. ii. p. 238-239), appears to be incorrectly struck with the character of pope Leo IV. I have been led to think, from the whole mass of information, that the pontiff was possessed with a more distinct and lively image. (In the ninth, tenth, and eleventh centuries, the Lateran palace was occupied by two independent and despotic powers, the Diocese and the Papacy.)

86 In this system, the names of the Bishops of Carthage, which are given in the eighth century, are not found in the ninth; yet it is not improbable that this loss was occasioned by the situation of the Bishops of Carthage, who were in the midst of the war with the Vandals, and the territory of the city was frequently plundered by the Goths, who had already vanquished the fleets of the Saracens.

87 Or, as I should rather call the Bishops, who were in the midst of the war with the Vandals, and the territory of the city was frequently plundered by the Goths, who had already vanquished the fleets of the Saracens.
who had supported St. Peter and St. Paul on the waves of the sea, would strengthen the hands of his champions against the adversaries of his holy name. After a similar prayer, and with equal resolution, the Moslems advanced to the attack of the Christian galleys, which preserved their advantageous station along the coast. The victory inclined to the side of the allies, when it was less glorious decided in their favour by a sudden tempest, which confounded the skill and courage of the stoutest mariners. The Christians were sheltered in a friendly harbour, while the Africans were scattered and dashed in pieces among the rocks and islands of an hostile shore. Those who escaped from shipwreck and safer, neither found, nor deserved, mercy at the hands of their implacable pursuers. The sword and the girdle reduced the dangerous multitude of captives; and the remainder was more usefully employed, to restore the sacred edifices which they had been ordered to desecrate. The pontiff, at the head of the citizens and allies, paid his grateful devotion at the shrines of the apostles; and, uniting the spoils of this naval victory, thirteen Arabian bows of pure and mazy silver were suspended round the altar of the fisherman of Galilee. The reign of Leo the Fourth was employed in the defence and ornament of the Roman state. The churches were renewed and embellished: near four thousand pounds of silver were consecrated to repair the losses of St. Peter; and his sanctuary was decorated with a plate of gold of the weight of two hundred and sixteen pounds, embossed with the portraits of the pope and emperor, and enriched with a string of pearls. Yet this vain magnificence reflects less glory on the character of Leo, than on the paternal care with which he reëstablished the walls of Hora and America, and transported the wandering inhabitants of Centumcellae to his new foundation of Leopolis, twelve miles from the sea-shore. By his liberality, a colony of Corsicans, with their wives and children, was planted in the station of Porto, at the mouth of the Tyber: the falling city was restored for their use, the fields and vineyards were divided among the new settlers; their first efforts were assisted by a gift of horses and cattle; and the hardy exiles, who breathed revenge against the Saracens, swore to live and die under the standard of St. Peter. The nations of the West and North, who visited the threshold of the apostles, had gradually formed the large and populous suburb of the Vatican, and their various habitations were distinguished, in the language of the times, as the schools of the Greeks and Goths, of the Lombards and Saxons. But this venerable spot was still open to sacrilegious insult: the design of enclosing it with walls and towers exhausted all that authority could command, or charity would supply; and the pious labour of four years was animated in every season, and at every hour, by the presence of the indefatigable pontiff. The love of fame, a generous but worldly passion, may be detected in the name of the Leopolis city, which he bestowed on the Vatican; yet the pride of the dedication was tempered with Christian penance and humility. The boundary was trod by the bishop and his clergy, barefoot, in sackcloth and ashes; the songs of triumph were modulated to psalms and litanies; the walls were besprinkled with holy water; and the ceremony was concluded with a prayer, that, under the guardian care of the apostles and the angelic host, both the old and the new Rome might ever be preserved pure, prosperous, and impregnable. The emperor Theophylact, son of Michael the Hammerer, was one of the most active and high-spirited princes who reigned at Constantinople during the middle age. In offensive or defensive war, he marched in person five times against the Saracens, formidable in his attack, esteemed by the enemy in his losses and defeats. In the last of these expeditions he penetrated into Syria, and besieged the obscure town of Sozopolis; the casual birthplace of the caliph Matassem, whose father Harun was attended in peace or war by the most favoured of his wives and concubines. The revolt of a Persian impostor employed at that moment the arms of the Saracens, and he could only intervene in favour of a place for which he felt and acknowledged some degree of filial affection. These solicitations determined the emperor to wound his pride in so sensitive a part. Sozopolis was levelled with the ground, the Syrian prisoners were marked or mutilated with ignominious cruelty; and a thousand female captives were forced away from the adjacent territory. Among these a matron of the house of Abbas invoked, in an agony of despair, the name of Matassem; and the insults of the Greeks engaged the honour of her kinman to avenge his indignity, and to answer her appeal. Under the reign of the two elder brothers, the inheritance of the youngest had been confined to Anatolia, Armenia, Georgia, and Circassia; this frontier station had exercised his military talents; and among his accidental claims to the name of Octarina, the most meritorious are the eight battles which he gained or fought against the enemies of the Koran. In this personal quarrel, the troops of Irak, Syria, and Egypt, were recruited from the tribes of Arabia and the Turkish hordes: his cavalry might be numerous, though we should deduce some myriads from the hundred and thirty thousand horses of the royal stables; and the expense of the armament was computed at four millions of black, or one hundred thousand pounds of gold. From Tarsus, the place of assembly, the Saracens advanced in three divisions along the high road of Constantinople: Matassem himself

90 The emperor Theophylact, son of Michael the Hammerer, was one of the most active and high-spirited princes who reigned at Constantinople during the middle of the eighteenth.
commanded the centre, and the vanguard was given to his son Abbas, who, in the trial of the first adventures, might succeed with the more glory, or fail with the least reproach. In the revenge of his injury, the caliph prepared to retaliate a similar affront. The father of Theophilus was a native of Amorium in Phrygia: the original seat of the Imperial house had been adorned with privileges and monuments; and whatever might be the indulgence of the people, Constantinople itself was scarcely of more value in the eyes of the sovereign and his court. The name of Amorium was inscribed on the shields of the Saracens; and their three armies were again united under the walls of the devoted city. It had been proposed by the wisest counsellors, to evacuate Amorium, to remove the inhabitants, and to abandon the empty structures to the vain resentment of the barbarians. The emperor embraced the more generous resolution of defending, in a siege and battle, the country of his ancestors. When the armies drew near, the front of the Mahometan line appeared to a Roman eye more densely planted with spears and javelins; but the event of the action was not glorious on either side to the national troops. The Arabs were broken, but it was by the swords of thirty thousand Persians who had obtained service and settlement in the Byzantine empire. The Greeks were repulsed and vanquished, but it was by the arrows of the Turkish cavalry; and had not their bowstrings been damaged and relaxed by the evening rain, very few of the Christians could have escaped with the emperors from the field of battle. They breathed at Dorylaium, at the distance of three days; and Theophilus, reviewing his trembling squadrons, forgave the common flight both of the prince and people. After this discovery of his weakness, he vainly hoped to deprecate the fate of Amorium; the inexorable caliph rejected with contempt his prayers and promises; and detained the Roman ambassadors to be the witnesses of his great revenge. They had nearly been the witnesses of his shame. The vigorous assaults of fifty-five days were encountered by a faithful governor, a veteran garrison, and a desperate people; and the Saracens must have raised the siege, if a domestic traitor had not pointed to the weakest part of the wall, a place which was decorated with the statues of a lion and a bull. The view of Motassem was accomplished with unremitting rigour; tired, rather than satisfied, with destruction, he returned to his new palace of Samara, in the neighbourhood of Bagdad, while the unfortunate Theophilus implored the tardy and doubtful aid of his Western rival the emperor of the Franks. Yet in the siege of Amorium, as by a thousand Muslims had perished, a thousand more had been vanquished by the slaughter of thirty thousand Christians, and the sufferings of an equal number of captives, who were treated as the most atrocious criminals. Mutual necessity could sometimes extort the exchange or ransom of prisoners, but in the national and religious conflict of the two empires, peace was without confidence, and war without mercy. Quarter was seldom given in the field; those who escaped the edge of the sword were condemned to hopeless servitude, or exquisite torture; and a Catholic emperor relined, with visible satisfaction, the execution of the Saracens of Crete, who were flayed alive, or plunged into caldrons of boiling oil. To a point of honour Motassem had sacrificed a flourishing city, two hundred thousand lives, and the property of millions. The same caliph descended from his horse, and dirtied his robe, to relieve the distress of a decrepit old man, who, with his laden ass, had tumbled into a ditch. On which of these actions did he reflect with the most pleasure, when he was summoned by the angel of death? With Motassem, the eighth of the Abbassides, the glory of his family and nation expired. When the Arabian conquerors spread themselves over the East, and mingled with the servile crowds of Persia, Syria, and Egypt, they insensibly lost the freeborn and martial virtues of the desert. The courage of the South is the artificial fruit of discipline and prejudice; the active power of enthusiasm had decayed, and the mercurial forces of the caliphs were recruited in those climates of the North, of which valour is the hardy and formidable production. Of the Turks who dwelt beyond the Oxus and Jaxartes, the robust youths, ever taken in war, or purchased in trade, were educated in the exercises of the field, and the professions of the Mahometan faith. The Turkish guards about in camp round the throne of their benefactor, and their chiefs usurped the dominion of the palace and the provinces. Motassem, the first author of this dangerous example, introduced into the capital above fifty thousand Turks: their licentious conduct provoked the public indignation, and the quarrels of the soldiers and people induced the caliph to retire from Bagdad, and establish his own residence and the ramp of his barbarian favourites at Samara on the Tigres, about twenty leagues above the city of Peace. His son
Motawakkil was a jealous and cruel tyrant; defiant to his subjects, he cast himself on the fidelity of the strangers; and these strangers, ambitious and apprehensive, were tempted by the rich promise of a revolution. At the instigation, or at least in the cause of his son, they burst into his apartment at the hour of supper, and the caliph was cut into pieces by the same swords which he had recently distributed among the guards of his life and throne. To this throne, yet streaming with a father's blood, Motawakkil triumphantly leapt; but in a reign of six months, he found only the pangs of a guilty conscience. If he wept at the sight of an old tapestry which represented the crime and punishment of the son of Chosroes; if his days were abridged by grief and remorse, we may allow some pity to a parricide, who exclaimed in the bitterness of death, that he had lost both this world and the world to come. After this act of treason, the insignia of royalty, the garnament and walking-staff of Mahomet, were given and torn away by the foreign mercenaries, who in four years created, deposed, and murdered, three commanders of the faithful. As often as the Turks were inflamed by fear, or rage, or aversion, these culprits were dragged by the foot, exposed naked to the searching sun, beaten with iron clubs, and compelled to purchase, by the abdication of their dignity, a short reprieve of inevitable fate. At length, however, the fury of the tempest was spent or diverted: the Abbassides returned to the less turbulent residence of Bagdad; the insurrection of the Turks was curbed with a firmer and more skilful hand, and their numbers were divided and destroyed in foreign warfare. But the nations of the East had been taught to trample on the successors of the prophet; and the blessings of domestic peace were obtained by the elevation of strength and discipline. So uniforms are the subordinates of military despotism, that I seem to repeat the story of the pretorians of Rome.

While the flame of enthusiasm was damped by the business, the A.D. 863-867, 1230-1234. pain and pleasure; the Abbassides, the pleasure, and the knowledge of the age, it burnt with concentrated heat in the breasts of the chosen few, the congregal spirits, who were ambitious of reigning either in this world or in the next. How carefully sewer the book of prophecy had been scaled by the apostle of Mecca, the wishes, and (if we may profane the word) even the reason, of fanaticism, might believe that, after the successions of Adam, Noah, Abraham, Moses, Jesus, and Mahomet, the same God, in the fulness of times, would reveal a still more perfect and permanent law. In the two hundred and seventy-seventh year of the Hegira, and in the neighborhood of Cufa, an Arabian preacher, the name of Carmath, assumed the lofty and incomprehensible style of the Guide, the Director, the Demonstration, the Word, the Holy Ghost, the Camel, the Herald of the Messiah, who had conversed with him in a human shape, and the representative of Mohammed the son of Ali, of St. John the Baptist, and of the angel Gabriel. In his mystic volume, the precepts of the Koran were refined to a more spiritual sense; he relaxed the duties of ablution, fasting, and pilgrimage; allowed the indiscriminate use of wine and forbidden food; and nourished the fervour of his disciples by the daily repetition of fifty prayers. The idleness and ferment of the rustic crowd awakened the attention of the magistrates of Cufa; a timid persecution assisted the progress of the new sect; and the name of the prophet became more revered after his person had been withdrawn from the world. His twelve apostles dispersed themselves among the Bedoween, "a race of men," says Abulphara, "equally devoid of reason and of religion;" and the success of their preaching seemed to threaten Arabia with a new revolution. The Carmathians were ripe for rebellion, since they disclaimed the title of the house of Abas, and abhorred the worldly pomp of the caliphs of Bagdad. They were susceptible of discipline, since they bowed a blind and absolute submission to their imam, who was called to the prophetic office by the voice of God and the people. Instead of the legal titles, he claimed the fifth of their substance and spoil; the most flagitious sins were no more than the type of disobedience; and the brethren were united and concealed by an oath of secrecy. After a bloody conflict, they prevailed in the province of Bahrain, along the Persian Gulf; far and wide, the tribes of the desert were subject to the seer, or rather to the sword, of Abu Talib and his son Abu Talib; and these rebellious imams could muster in the field an hundred and seven thousand families. The mercenaries of the caliphs were dismayed at the approach of an enemy who neither asked our accepted quarter; and the difference between them, in fortitude and patience, is expressive of the change which three centuries of prosperity had effected in the character of the Arabs. Such troops were disconcerted in every action; the cities of Yaca and Bualseh, of Cufa and Bassora, were taken and pillaged; Bagdad was filled with consternation; and the caliphs trembled behind the veils of his palace. In a daring excursion beyond the Tigris, Abu Talib advanced to the gates of the capital with no more than five hundred horse. By the special order of Mootad, the bridges had been broken down, and the person or head of the rebel was expected every hour by the commander of the faithful. His lieutenant, from a motive of fear or pity, apprised Abu Talib of his danger, and recommended a speedy escape. "Your master," said the intrepid Carmathian to the messenger, "is at the head of thirty thousand soldiers; three such men as these are waiting in his host," at the same time cordial and paternal titles to the messenger, that he might posses the support of the army without loss of time. But under the by-laws of Mecma, Mousound, Mahomet, and the new favorite of the Meccan Abu Talib, the inhabitants of Bassora were thrown into consternation; the new favor of the mosque, Mahomet, and Abu Talib.
affords a strong presumption of his courage and capacity. The viceroy of a remote kingdom aspires to secure the property and inheritance of his precocious trust; the nations must rejoice in the presence of their sovereign; and the command of armies and treasures are at once the object and the instrument of his ambition. A change was scarcely visible as long as the lieutenants of the caliph were content with their vassal titles; while they solicited for themselves or their sons a renewal of the Imperial grant, and still maintained on the coin, and in the public prayers, the name and prerogative of the commander of the faithful. But in the king and hereditary exercise of power, they assumed the pride and attributes of royalty; the alternative of peace or war, of reward or punishment, depended solely on their will; and the revenues of their government were reserved for local services or private magnificence. Instead of a regular supply of men and money, the successors of the prophet were flattered with the ostentations gift of an elephant, or a cast of hawks, a suit of silk hangings, or some pounds of musk and amber. 102

After the revolt of Spain from the independence, the temporal and spiritual supremacy of the Abbasides, the first symptoms of disobedience broke forth in the province of Africa. Idris, the son of Aglab, the lieutenant of the vigilant and rigid Harun, besought at the dynasty of the Agbals to place the inheritance of his name, of the throne and power. The influence or policy of the caliphs assembled the injury and loss, and pursued only with poison the founder of the Edrisites,104 who erected the kingdom and city of Fez on the shores of the Western Ocean. 103 In the East, the first dynasty was that of the Tahirites,105 the pouterity of the valiant Tahir, who, in the civil wars of the sons of Harun, had served with too much zeal and success the cause of Almanno, the younger brother. He was sent into honourable exile, to command on the banks of the Oxus; and the independence of his successors, who reigned in Chorassan till the fourth generation, was palliated by their modest and respectful demeanour, the happiness of their subjects, and the security of their frontier. They were supplanted by one of those adventurers so frequent in the annals of the East, who left his trade of a brazier (from whence the name of Saffarides) for the profession of a robber. In a nocturnal visit to the treasure of the prince of Sistan, Jacob, the son of Leith, stumbled over a lump of salt, which he unwarily tasted with his tongue. Capitaine [Histoires de l'Egypte et de l'Égypte sous le Protocole des Avant, etc. p. 156-157.]

102. To escape the approach of war, I once met with a historian of Spain who informed me of the following anecdote. 1. The dynasty and city of Fez were established by the year of Hijra 109, 729-730 A.D., and in the reign of Harun. 2. Harun's family was in power to the hundredth year of this era, 1090 A.D. and 9 A.H., and in the reign of the caliph Nasser. 3. The dynasty ended A.D. 780, twenty-three years before it was laid upon the ruins of the House. See the Histoire de l'Egypte, p. 156, 159, 160, 163. 4. The caliphs of the Abbasides and Saffarides, with the rise of Islam, the Sussanids, as described in the original history and Latin. Capitaine, jeté sur la houle, abordé par une bateau et échappé aux Aigles.
Salt, among the Orientals, is the symbol of hospitality, and the pinch of sugar immediately restored without spoil or damage. The discovery of this honourable behaviour recommended Jacob to pardon and trust; he led an army at first for his benefactor, at last for himself, subdued Persia, and threatened the residence of the Abbassides. On his march towards Bagdad, the conqueror was arrested by a fever. He gave audience in bed to the ambassador of the caliph, and beside him on a table were exposed a naked cimeter, a crust of brown bread, and a bunch of onions.

If I die," said he, "my master is delivered from his fears. If I live, this must determine between us. If I am vanquished, I can return without reluctance to the humble fare of my youth." From the height where he stood, the descent would not have been so soft or harmless: a thinly dyed secured his own repose and that of the caliph, who paid with the most lavish concessions the retreat of his brother Amru to the palaces of Shiraz and Isphahan. The Abbassides were too feeble to contend, too proud to forgive: they invited the powerful dynasty of the Omayyads, the Samanidiks, who passed the Oxus A.D. 776–799. with ten thousand horse, so poor, that their stirrups were of wood; so brave, that they vanquished the Saffarid army, eight times more numerous than their own. The captive Amru was sent in chains, a grateful offering to the court of Bagdad; and as the victor was content with the inheritance of Transoxiana and Chorasan, the realms of Persia returned for a while to the allegiance of the caliphs. The provinces of Syria and Egypt were twice dismembered by their Turkish slaves of the race of Tשאר and Ḳaibid. These barbarians, in religion and manners the countrymen of Mahomet, emerged from the bloody factions of the palace to a provincial command and an independent throne: their names became famous and formidable in their time; but the founders of these two potent dynasties confessed, either in words or actions, the vanity of ambition. The first on his death-bed implored the mercy of God to a sinner, ignorant of the limits of his own power; the second, in the midst of four hundred thousand soldiers and eight thousand slaves, concealed from every human eye the chamber where he attempted to sleep. Their sons were educated in the vices of kings; and both Egypt and Syria were recovered and possessed by the Abbassides during an interval of thirty years. In the decline of their empire, Mesopotamia, with the important cities of Mosul and Aleppo, was occupied by the Arabian princes of the tribe of Ḳuraish. The poets of their court could repeat, with a blush, that nature had formed their countenances for beauty, their tongues for eloquence, and their hands for liberality and valour; but the genuine tale of the sherwan and reign of the Ημικατάς exhibits a scene of treachery, murder, and ridicule. At the same fatal period, the Persian kingdom was again usurped by the dynasty of the Bowside, by the three brothers, who, under various names, were styled the support and columns of the state, and who, from the Caspian Sea to the Ocean, would suffer no tyrants but themselves. Under their reign, the language and genius of Persia revived, and the Arabs, three hundred and four years after the death of Mahomet, were deprived of the sceptre of the East.

Rahil, the twentieth of the Abbassides, and the thirty-ninth of the successors of Mahomet, was the last who deserved the title of commander of the faithful: he was the last (says Abulfeda) who spoke to the people, or conversed with the learned; the last who, in the expense of his household, represented the wealth and magnificence of the ancient caliphs. After him, the lords of the Eastern world were reduced to the most abject misery, and exposed to the blows and insults of a servile condition. The revolt of the provinces circumscribed their dominions within the walls of Bagdad; but that capital still contained an immense multitude, vain of their past fortune, discontented with their present state, and oppressed by the demands of a treasury which had formerly been replenished by the spoil and tribute of nations. Their infirmities was exercised by faction and contumely. Under the mask of plenity, the rigid followers of Ḩanţal invaded the pleasures of domestic life, burst into the houses of plebeians and princes, split the wine, broke the instruments, b ost the musicians, and disdained, with infamous suspicions, the associates of every handsom youth. In each profession, which allowed room for two persons, the one was a votary, the other an antagonist, of Aḥ; and the Abbassides were awakened by the clamorous grief of the sectaries, who denied their title, and cursed their progenitors. A turbulent people could only be repressed by a military force; but who could satisfy the service or assert the discipline of the mercenaries themselves? The African and the Turkish guards drew their swords against each other, and the chief commanders, the heirs of Omars, imprisoned or deposed their sovereigns, and violated the sanctity of the mosch and haram. If the caliphs escaped to the camp or court of any neighbouring prince, their deliverance was a change of servitude, till they were prompted by despair to invite the Bowside, the sułtan of Persia, who shamed the factions of Bagdad by

297 M. de Quatremère, II. de l'Orient. loc. cit. 1751–1755, has drawn the Transoxiana and Egypt, and drawn some rights to the Caucausians and Hindoostani.

298 The story of the caliphs and the caliphs is a tale of all nations, but most absurdly and credulously narrated. — Full more admirable than others from Sklaven, Alzada, and others, concerning the caliphs. — Dedicated. Arab. Sklaven. p. 103. I shall give the reader the vernacular report. — The Arabic version (p. 519, 522) is the Arabic version of Bâkûr (p. 527, 528).
of the empire. His military genius was displayed in the conduct and success of the enterprise, which had so often failed with loss and disgrace. The Saracens were confounded by the landing of his troops on safe and level bridges, which he cast from the vessels to the shore. Seven months were consumed in the siege of Candia; the despair of the native Cretans was stimulated by the frequent aid of their brethren of Africa and Spain; and, after the nasty wall and double ditch had been stormed by the Greeks, an hopeless contest was still maintained in the streets and houses of the city. The whole island was subdued in the capital, and a submissive people accepted, without resistance, the baptism of the conqueror. Constantine applauded the long-forgotten pump of a triumph; but the Imperial diadem was the sole reward that could repay the services, or satisfy the ambition, of Nicophorus.

After the death of the younger Romanus, the fourth in line of the basileus, or king, of the Basilian race, his widowed sister Theophania successively married the skirmishers Nicophorus Phocas and his assassin John Zimiskes, the two heroes of the age. They reigned as the guardians and colleagues of her infant son; and the twelve years of their military command form the most splendid period of the Byzantine annals. The subjects and confederates, whom they led to war, appeared, at least in the eyes of an enemy, two hundred thousand strong; and of these about thirty thousand were armed with cuirasses. A train of four thousand males attended their march; and their evening camp was regularly fortified with an enclosure of iron spikes. A series of bloody and decisive combats is nothing more than an anticipation of what would have been effected in a few years by the course of nature: but I shall briefly prosecute the conquests of the two emperors from the hills of Cappadocia to the desert of Bagdad. The siege of Mopsuestia and Tarsus, in Cilicia, first exercised the skill and perseverance of their troops, on whom, at this moment, I shall not hesitate to bestow the name of Romans. In the double city of Mopsuestia, which is divided by the river Sarus, two hundred thousand Moslems were predestined to death or slavery, a surprising degree of population, which must at least include the inhabitants of the dependent districts. They were surrounded and taken by assault; but Tarsus was reduced by the slow progress of famine; and no sooner had the Saracens yielded on honourable terms than they were mortified by the distant and unprofitable view of the naval succours of Egypt.
were dismissed with a safe-conduct to the confines of Syria; a part of the old Christians had quietly lived under their dominion; and the vacant habitations were replenished by a new colony. But the moshik was converted into a stable; the pulpit was delivered to the flames; many rich crosses of gold and gems, the spoil of Asiatic churches, were made a grateful offering to the piety or avarice of the emperor; and he transported the gates of Mopsuestia and Tarsus, which were fixed in the wall of Constantiopolis, an eternal monument of his victory.

Eruption of Syria: After they had forced and secured the narrow passes of Mount Amanus, the two Roman princes repeatedly carried their arms into the heart of Syria. Yet, instead of assaulting the walls of Antioch, the humanity or superstition of Nicæphorus appeared to respect the ancient metropolis of the East: he contented himself with drawing round the city a line of circumvallation; left a stationary army; and instructed his lieutenant to expect, without impatience, the return of spring. But in the depth of winter, in a dark and rainy night, an adventurous satrap, with three hundred soldiers, approached the rampart, applied his scaling-ladders, occupied two adjacent towers, stood firm against the pressure of multitudes, and bravely maintained his post till he was relieved by the tardy, though effectual, support of his sovereign and chief. 

Recovery of Antioch: The first tumult of the crucified and captive inhabitants; the flight of the emperor and his court; the efforts of an hundred thousand Saracens, of the armies of Syria and the fleets of Africa, were consumed without effect before the walls of Antioch. The royal city of Aleppo was subject to Safiholdew, of the dynasty of Hamadan, who clouded his past glory by the precipitate retreat which abandons his kingdom and capital to the Roman invaders. In his stately palace, that stood without the walls of Aleppo, they joyfully seized a well-furnished magazine of arms, a stable of fourteen hundred mules, and three hundred bags of silver and gold. But the walls of the city withheld the strokes of their battering-rams; and the besiegers pitched their tents on the neighbouring mountain of Jarash. Their retreat exasperated the quarrel of the townsmen and mercenaries; the guard of the gates and ramparts was deserted; and, while they furiously charged each other in the marketplace, they were surprised and destroyed by the sword of a common enemy. The male sex was exterminated by the sword; ten thousand youths were led into captivity; the weight of the precious spoil exceeded the strength and number of the beasts of burden; the superfluous remainder was burnt; and, after a licentious possession of ten days, the Romans marched away from the naked and bleeding city. In their Syrian iconomies they commanded the husbandmen to cultivate their lands, that they themselves, in the ensuing season, might reap the benefit: more than an hundred cities were reduced to obedience; and eighteen pulpits of the principal mosques were committed to the flames to expiate the sacrilege of the disciples of Mahomet. The classic names of Hierapolis, Apamea, and Emesa, revive for a moment in the list of conquest; the emperor Zimisces encamped in the paradise of Damascus, and accepted the ransom of a submissive people; and the torrent was only stopped by the impregnable fortress of Tripoli, on the sea-coast of Phoenicia. Since the days of Heraclius, the Ephrætes, below the passage of Mount Taurus, had been impervious, and almost inviolable, to the Greeks. The river yielded a free passage to the victorious Zimisces; and the historian may imitate the speed with which he overran the once famous cities of Semnus, Edessa, Martyropolis, Amida, and Nisibis, the ancient limit of the empire in the neighbourhood of the Tigris. His ardour was quickened by the desire of grasping the virgin treasures of Ecbatana, a well-known name, under which the Byzantine writer has concealed the capital of the Assesides. The consternation of the fugitives had already diffused the terror of his name; but the fancied riches of Bagdad had already been dissipated by the avarice and prodigality of domestic tyrants. The prayers of the people, and the stern demands of the lieutenant of Bagdad, the Bowdies, required the caliph to provide for the defence of the city. The help of Mothi replied, that his arms, his revenue, and his provinces, had been torn from his hands, and that he was ready to abdicate a dignity which he was unable to support. The enmity was inexcusable; the furniture of the palace was sold; and the palpable price of forty thousand pieces of gold was instantly consumed in private luxury. But the apprehensions of Bagdad were relieved by the retreat of the Greeks; thirst and hunger guarded the deserts of Mesopotamia; and the emperor, satiated with glory, and laden with Oriental spoliis, returned to Constantinople, and displayed, in his triumph, the silk, the aromatics, and three hundred myriads of gold and silver. Yet the powers of the East had been bent, not broken, by this transient hurricane. After the departure of the Greeks, the fugitive princes returned to their capitals; the subjects disclaimed their involuntary oaths of allegiance; the Moslems again purified their temples, and overturned the idols of the saints and martyrs; the Nestorians and Jacobites preferred a Saracen to an orthodox master; and the numbers and spirit of the Melchites were inadequate to the support of the church and state. Of these extensive conquests, Antioch, with the cities of Cilicia and the isle of Cyprus, was alone restored, a permanent and useful accession to the Roman empire.
CHAP. LIII.


A ray of historic light seems to beam from the darkness of the tenth century. We open with curiosity and respect the royal volumes of Constantine Porphyrogenitus, which he composed at a mature age for the instruction of his son, and which promise to unfold the state of the Eastern empire, both in peace and war, both at home and abroad. In the first of these works he minutely describes the pontifical ceremonies of the church and palace of Constantinople, according to his own practice and that of his predecessors. In the second, he attempts an accurate survey of the provinces, the theme, as they were then denominated, both of Europe and Asia. The system of Roman tactics, the discipline and order of the troops, and the military operations by land and sea, are explained in the third of these didactic collections, which may be ascribed to Constantine or his father Leo. In the fourth, of the administration of the empire, he reveals the secrets of the Byzantine policy, in friendly or hostile intercourse with the nations of the earth. The literary labours of the age, the practical systems of law, agriculture, and history, might redound to the benefit of the subject and the honour of the Macedonian princes. The sixty books of the Basilica, the code and pandects of civil jurisprudence, were gradually framed in the three first reigns of that prosperous dynasty. The art of agriculture had assumed the leisure, and exercised the pens, of the best and wisest of the ancients; and their chosen precepts are compiled in the twenty books of the Geoponika of Constantine. At his commandment, the historical examples of vice and virtue were methodised in fifty-three books, and every citizen might apply, to his contemporaries or himself, the lessons of the warning of past times. From the Augustan

character of the legislator, the sovereign of the East descends to the more humble office of a teacher and a scribe; and if his successors and subjects were regardless of his maternal care, we may inherit and enjoy the everlasting legacy.

A closer survey will indeed reduce the value of the gift, and the gratitude of posterity; in the possession of these imperial treasures we may still deplore our poverty and ignorance; and the fading glories of their authors will be obliterated by multitudinous or contempt. The Basilians will sink to a broken copy, a partial and mutilated version in the Greek language, of the laws of Justinian; but the sense of the old civilians is often superseded by the influence of bigotry; and the absolute prohibition of divorce, concubinage, and interest for money, enslaves the freedom of trade, and the happiness of private life. In the historical book, a subject of Constantine might admire the inimitable virtues of Greece and Rome; he might learn to what a pitch of energy and elevation the human character had formerly ascended. But a contrary effect must have been produced by a new edition of the lives of the saints, which the great logothete, or chancellor of the empire, was directed to prepare; and the dark fund of superstition was enriched by the fabulous and florid legends of Simon the Metaphoret. The merits and miracles of the whole calendar are of less account in the eyes of a sage, than the talent of a single husbandman, who multiplies the gifts of the Creator, and supplies the food of his brethren. Yet the royal authors of the Geoponika were more seriously employed in expounding the precepts of the destroying art, which had been taught since the days of Xenophon, as the art of heroes and kings. But the Tactics of Leo and Constantine are mingled with the hasty alloy of the age in which they lived. It was destitute of original genius; they implicitly transcribe the rules and maxims which had been confirmed by victories. It was unskilled in the propriety of style and method; they blindly confound the most distant and discordant institutions, the phalanx of Sparta and that of Macedon, the legions of Cato and Trajan, of Augustus and Theodosius. Even the use, or at least the importance, of these military rudiments may be

and Cicero in letters to Cicero.

And. Dimitrius, in his Greek and Latin Histoires, predicated many

fables and stories of the same time.

2. It is not ascribed to any person; but is called the "Codex Palatianus" in Eadmer's Historia Calamitatum Ecclesiae, written in 1134. It is also ascribed to Boso, bishop of Hildesheim, and is mentioned by Wolfram von Eschenbach in his "Parzival," p. 37. It was published by William Stubbes, the prince of geographers, in the year 1668.

3. The Tactics of Leo and Constantine are published with the rest of the works of the Emperor Leo, in the "Codex Palatinus," in the form of John Lipsius's edition. See v. 332: 333—1211—1214—1409.

4. The works of George and of the Emperors Leo, Constantine, and Leo. The Metropolitan of Venetia would order to be printed a new edition of William Stubbes, the prince of geographers, in the year 1668.

5. The Tod of the authors of the Basilica, Palatinae (Hildesheim, 1515, ii. pp. 350—351), and Hellenica in Asia (Hildesheim, 1515, iii. p. 260—261).

6. The letters and papers of the Emperors Leo, Constantine, and Leo. The Metropolitan of Venetia would order to be printed a new edition of William Stubbes, the prince of geographers, in the year 1668.
fairly questioned; their general theory is dictated by reason; but the merit, as well as difficulty, consists in the application. The discipline of a soldier is formed by exercise rather than by study; the talents of a commander are appropriated to those ends, though rapid, minds, which nature produces to decide the fate of armies and nations; the former is the habit of a life, the latter the glance of a moment; and the battles won by lessons of tactics may be numbered with the epic poems created from the rules of criticism. The book of ceremonies is a recital, tedious yet imperfect, of the despicable pageantry which had infected the church and state since the gradual decay of the purity of the one and the power of the other. A review of the themes or provinces might promise such authentic and useful information, as the curiosity of government only can obtain, instead of traditional fables on the origin of the cities, and malicious epigrams on the vices of their inhabitants. Such information the historian would have been pleased to record; nor should his silence be condemned if the most interesting objects, the population of the capital and provinces, the amount of the taxes and revenues, the numbers of subjects and strangers who served under the imperial standard, have been unnoticed by Les- us the philosopher, and his son Constantine. His treatise on the public administration is stained with the same blemishes; yet it is discriminated by peculiar merit; the antiquities of the nations may be doubtless or fabulous; but the geography and manners of the barbaric world are delineated with curious accuracy. Of these nations, the Franks alone were qualified to observe in their turn, and to describe, the metropoles of the East. The ambassador of the great Otho, a bishop of Cremona, has painted the state of Constantinople about the middle of the tenth century; his style is glowing, his narratives lively, his observation keen; and even the political state and passions of kings and emperors were stamped with an original character of freedom and grace. From this scanty fund of foreign and domestic materials, I shall investigate the form and substance of the Byzantine empire; the provinces and wealth, the civil government and military forces, the character and literature, of the Greeks in a period of six hundred years, from the reign of Heraclius to the successful invasion of the Franks or Latins.

After the final division between the sons of Theodosius, the swarms of barbarians from Scythia and Germany overspread the provinces and extinguished the empire of ancient Rome. The weakness of Constantinople was concealed, by extent of dominion; her limits were inviolable, or at least entire; and the kingdom of Justinian was enlarged by the splendid acquisition of Africa and Italy. But the possession of these new conquests was transient and precarious; and almost a moiety of the Eastern empire was torn away by the arms of the Saracens. Syria and Egypt were oppressed by the Arabian caliphs; and, after the reduction of Africa, their lieutenant invaded and subdued the Roman provinces which had been changed into the Gothic monarchy of Spain. The islands of the Medi- terranean were not inaccessible to their naval powers; and it was from their extreme stations, the harbours of Crete and the fortresses of Cilicia, that the faithful or rebel emirs insulted the majesty of the throne and capital. The remaining provinces under the obedience of the emperors were cast into a new mould; and the jurisdiction of the presidents, the consular, and the counts, was superseded by the institution of the theme, or military governments, which prevailed under the successors of Heraclius, and are described by the pen of the royal author. Of the twenty-nine themes, twelve in Europe and seventeen in Asia, the origin is obscure, the etymology doubtful or capricious: the limits were arbitrary and fluctuating; but some particular names that sound the most strangely to our ear were derived from the character and attributes of the troops that were maintained at the expense, and for the guard, of the respective divisions. The vanity of the Greek princes most eagerly grappled the shadow of conquest and the memory of lost dominion. A new Mesopotamias was created on the western side of the Euphrates; the appellation and prerogative of Sicily were transferred to a narrow slip of Caladria; and a fragment of the duchy of Beneventum was promoted to the style and title of the theme of Lombardy. In the decline of the Eastern empire, the successors of Constantine might indulge their pride in more solid advantages. The victories of Nicaea, John Zimias, and Basil the Second, revived the fame, and enlarged the boundaries, of the Roman name; the provinces of Cilicia, the metropole of Antioch, the islands of Cephalonia and Cyperus, were restored to the allegiance of Christ and Caesar; one third of Italy was annexed to the throne of Constantinople; the kingdom of Bulgaria was destroyed; and the last sovereigns of the Macedonian dynasty extended their sway from the sources of the Tigris to the neighbour- hood of Rome. In the eleventh century, the prospect was again clouded by new enemies and new misfortunes: the relics of Italy were swept away by the Norman adventurers; and almost all the Asiatic branches were dismembered from the Roman trunk by the Turkish conquerors. After these losses, the emperors of the Comnenian family continued to reign from the Danube to Pala- ponnese, and from Belgrade to Nice, Trebizond, and the winding stream of the Meander. The spacious provinces of Thrace, Macedonia, and

10 After observing from the descent of the Cappadocians was its a state to be in a state of animation, which is towards to Decebalus...
Greece, were obedient to their sceptre; the possession of Cyprus, Rhodes, and Creta, was accompanied by the fifty islands of the Aegean or Holy Sea; and the remnant of their empire transcends the measure of the largest of the European kingdoms.

The same princes might assert, with dignity and truth, that of all the monarchs of Christendom they possessed the greatest city, the most ample revenue, the most flourishing and populous state. With the decline and fall of the empire, the cities of the West had decayed and fallen; nor could: the ruins of Rome, or the mud walls, wooden beams, and narrow precincts, of Paris and London, prepare the Latin stranger to contemplate the situation and extent of Constantinople, her stately palaces and churches, and the arts and luxury of an immeasurable people. Her treasures might attract, but her virgin strength had repelled, and still promised to repel, the audacious invasion of the Persian and Bulgarian, the Arab and the Russian. The provinces were less fortunate and impregnable; and few districts, few cities, could be discovered which had not been violated by some fierce barbarian, impatient to despise, because he was hopeless to possess. From the age of Justinian the Eastern empire was sinking below its former level: the powers of destruction were more active than those of improvement; and the calamities of war were embittered by the more permanent evils of civil and ecclesiastical tyranny. The captive who had escaped from the barbarians was often stripped and imprisoned by the ministers of his sovereign: the Greek superstition relented the mind by prayer, and exasperated the body by fasting; and the multitude of convents and festivals diverted many hands and many days from the temporal service of mankind. Yet the subjects of the Byzantine empire were still the most dexterous and diligent of nations; their country was blessed by nature with every advantage of soil, climate, and situation; and, in the support and restoration of the arts, their patient and peaceful temper was more useful than the warlike spirit and feudal anarchy of Europe. The provinces that still adhered to the empire were repeopled and enriched by the misfortunes of those which were irrecoverably lost. From the yoke of the caliphs, the Catholicks of Syria, Egypt, and Africa, retired to the allegiance of their prince, to the society of their brethren: the moveable wealth, which studed the search of oppression, accompanied and alleviated their exile; and Constantinople received into her bosom the fugitive trade of Alexandria and Tyre. The chiefs of Armenia and Scythia, who fled from hostile or religious persecution, were hospitably entertained; their followers were encouraged to build new cities and to cultivate waste lands; and many spots, both in Europe and Asia, preserved the name, the manners, or at least the memory, of these national colonies. Even the tribes of barbarians, who had seated themselves in arms on the territory of the empire, were gradually reconciled to the laws of the church and state: and as long as they were separated from the Greeks, their posterity supplied a race of faithful and obedient soldiers. Did we possess sufficient materials to survey the twenty-nine themes of the Byzantine monarchy, our curiosity might be satisfied with a chosen example: it is fortunate enough that the clearest light should be thrown on the most interesting province, and the name of Peloponnese will awaken the attention of the classic reader.

As early as the eighth century, in the troubled reign of the Iconoclasts, Greece, and even Peloponnese, were overrun by some Scalianian lands who outstripped the royal standard of Bulgaria. The strangers of old, Cadmus, and Danaus, and Pelops, had planted in that fruitful soil the seeds of policy and learning; but the savages of the north eradicated what yet remained of their sickly and withered roots. In this intrusion, the country and the inhabitants were transformed: the Greek blood was contaminated: and the proudest nobles of Peloponnese were branded with the names of foreign and alien. By the diligence of succeeding princes, the land was in some measure purified from the barbarians; and the humble remnant was bound by an oath of obedience, tribute, and military service, which they often renewed and often violated. The siege of Patras was formed by a singular concurrence of the Scalianian of Peloponnese and the Saracens of Africa. In their last distress, a pious fiction of the action of the prector of Corinth revived the courage of the citizens. Their sally was bold and successful; the strangers embarked, the rebels submitted, and the glory of the day was ascribed to a phantom or a stranger, who fought in the foremost ranks under the character of St. Andrew the Apostle. The shrine which contained his relics was decorated with the trophies of victory, and the captive race was for ever devoted to the service and vassalage of the metropolitan church of Patras. By the revolts of two Scalianian tribes in the neighbourhood of Helos and Lacedaemon, the peace of the peninsula was often disturbed. They sometimes involved the weakness, and sometimes resisted the oppression, of the Byzantine government, till at length the approach of their hostile brethren exorted a golden bull to define the rights and obligations of the Eunipites and Milies, whose annual tribute was defined at twelve hundred
pieces of gold. From these strangers the Imperial geographer has accurately distinguished a domestic and perhaps original race, who, in some degree, might derive their blood from the much-injured Illyrians. The liberality of the Romans, and, especially of Augustus, had encouraged the maritime cities from the dominion of Sparta; and the continuance of the same benefit emboldened them with the title of Elenea or Free-Laconians. In the time of Constantine Porphyrogenitus, they had acquired the name of Maenotae, under which they disown the claim of liberty by thehuman pillage of all that is shipwrecked on their rocky shores. Their territory, barren of corn, but fruitful of olives, extended to the Cape of Malea: they accepted a chief or prince from the Byzantine pretor, and a light tribute of four hundred pieces of gold was the badge of their immunity, rather than of their dependence. The freemen of Laconia assumed the character of Romans, and long adhered to the religion of the Greeks. By the seal of the emperor Basil, the Greeks were exalted in the faith of Christ; but the altar of Venus and Neptune had been crowned by these rustic votaries five hundred years after they were proscribed in the human world. In the theme of Peloponnesus, forty cities were still numbered, and the declining state of Sparta, Argos, and Corinth, may be suspended in the tenth century, at an equal distance, perhaps, between their antique splendour and their present desolation. The duty of military service, either in person or by substitute, was imposed on the lands or benefices of the province; a sum of five pieces of gold was assessed on each of the substantial tenants; and the same exaction was shared among several heads of inferior values. On the proclamation of an Italian war, the Peloponnesians excuses themselves by a voluntary oblation of one hundred pounds of gold (four thousand pounds sterling), and a thousand horses with their arms and trappings. The churches and monasteries furnished their contingent; a sacrilegious profit was extorted from the sale of ecclesiastical honours; and the indigent bishop of Laurania was made responsible for a pension of one hundred pieces of gold.

But the wealth of the province, and the trust of the revenue, were founded on the fair and plentiful produce of trade and manufactures; and some symptoms of liberal policy may be traced in a law which exempts from all personal taxes the mariners of Peloponnesus, and the workmen in parchment and purple. This denomination may be fairly applied or extended to the manufactures of linen, woollen, and more especially of silk. The two former of which had flourished in Greece since the days of Homer; and the last was introduced perhaps as early as the reign of Justinian. These arts, which were exercised at Corinth, Thebes, and Argos, afforded food and occupation to a numerous people: the men, women, and children, were distributed according to their age and strength; and if many of these were domestic slaves, their masters, who directed the work and enjoyed the profit, were of a free and honourable condition. The gifts which a rich and generous patron of Peloponnesus presented to the emperor Basil, her adopted son, were doubtless fabricated in the Grecian looms. Danielis bestowed a carpet of fine wool, of a pattern which imitated the spots of a peacock's tail, of a magnitude to overspread the floor of a new church, erected in the triple name of Christ, of Michael the archangel, and of the prophet Elias. She gave six hundred pieces of silk and linen, of various use and denomination; the silk was painted with the Tyrian dye, and adorned by the labour of the needle; and the linen was so exquisitely fine, that an entire piece might be rolled in the burl of a cane. In his description of the Greek manufactures, an historian of Sicily discriminates their price, according to the weight and quality of the silk, the closeness of the texture, the beauty of the colours, and the taste and materials of the embroidery. A single, or even a double or triple thread, was thought sufficient for ordinary use; but the weight of six threads composed a piece of stronger and more costly workmanship. Among the colours, he celebrates, with adoration of eloquence, the fiery blaze of the scarlet, and the softer lustre of the crimson. The embroidery was raised either in silk or gold; the more simple ornament of stripes or circles was surpassed by the nicer imitation of flowers: the vestments that were fabricated for the palaces or the altar often glittered with precious stones; and the figures were delineated in strings of oriental pearls. Till the twelfth century, Greece alone, of all the countries of Christendom, was possessed of the insect which is taught by nature, and of the workmen who are instructed by art, to prepare this elegant luxury. But the secret had been stolen by the dexterity and diligence of the Arabs: the caliphs of the East and West scouring to borrow from the unbelievers their furniture and apparel; and of the two cities of Spain, Almeria and Lisbon, were famous for the manufacture, the use, and perhaps the exportation, of silk. It was first introduced into Sicily by the Normans; and this emigration distinguished the victory of Roger from the uniform and fruitless hostilities of every age. After the sack of Corinth, Athens, and Thebes, his lieutenant embarked with a captive train of weavers and artisans of both sexes, a trophy glorious to their
master, and disgraceful to the Greek emperor. The king of Sicily was not insusceptible of the value of the present; and, in the restitution of the prisoners, he excepted only the male and female manufacturers of Thessal and Corinth, who labour, says the Byzantine historian, under a barbarous lord, like the old Etrurians in the service of Darins. A stately edifice, in the palace of Palermo, was erected for the use of this indolent colony; and the art was propagated by their children and disciples to satisfy the increasing demand of the western world. The decay of the looms of Sicily may be ascribed to the troubles of the island, and the competition of the Italian cities. In the year thirteen hundred and fourteen, Lucca alone, among her sister republics, enjoyed the lucrative monopoly. A domestic revolution dispersed the manufacturers to Florence, Bologna, Venice, Milan, and even the countries beyond the Alps; and thirteen years after this event, the statutes of Modena enjoin the planting of mulberry trees, and regulate the duties on raw silk. The northern climates are less propitious to the education of the silk-worm; but the industry of France and England is supplied and enriched by the productions of Italy and China.

I must repeat the complaint that the vague and scanty memorials of the times will not afford any just estimate of the taxes, the revenue, and the resources of the Greek empire. From every province of Europe and Asia minor the rivulets of gold and silver discharged into the Imperial reservoir a copious and perennial stream. The separation of the branches from the trunk increased the relative magnitude of Constantinople; and the maxims of despotism contracted the state to the capital, the capital to the palace, and the palace to the royal person. A Jewish traveller, who visited the East in the twelfth century, is lost in his admiration of the Byzantine riches. It is here, says Benjamin of Tudela, in the queen of cities, that the tributes of the Greek empire are annually deposited, and the lofty towers are filled with precious magazines of silk, purple, and gold. It is said, that Constantinople pays such day to her sovereign twenty thousand pieces of gold; which are levied on the shops, taverns, and markets, on the march, and on the sea. The capital by sea and land. In all pecuniary matters, the authority of a Jew is doubtless respectable; but as the three hundred and sixty-five days would produce a yearly income exceeding seven million sterling, I am tempted to retrench at least the sum of seven millions, which is by no means an extravagant estimate of its value. The sum of seven millions, which is by no means an extravagant estimate of its value.
The Decline and Fall

CHAPTER LIII.

The palace of Constantine, at the time the centre of the Imperial residence, was fixed during eleven centuries to the same position, between the hippodrome, the cathedral of St. Sophia, and the gardens, which descended by many a terrace to the shores of the Propontis. The primitive edifice of the first Constantine was a copy, or rival, of ancient Rome; the gradual improvements of his successors served to emulate the wonders of the old world; and in the tenth century, the Byzantine palace excited the admiration, at least of the Latin, by an unquestionable pre-eminence of strength, size, and magnificence.

But the toil and treasure of so many ages had produced a vast and irregular pile; each separate building was marked with the character of the times and of the founder; and the want of space might excuse the reigning monarch who demolished, perhaps with secret satisfaction, the works of his predecessors. The economy of the emperor Theophilus allowed a more free and ample scope for his domestic luxury and splendour. A favourite ambassador, who had astonished the Abbasides by his pride and liberality, presented on his return the model of a palace, which the caliph of Baghdad had recently constructed on the banks of the Tigris. The model was instantly copied and surpassed: the new buildings of Theophilus were accompanied with gardens, and with five churches, one of which was conspicuous for size and beauty: it was crowned with three domes, the roof of gilt bronze repose on columns of Italian marble, and the walls were stucced with marbles of various colours. In the face of the church, a semicircular portico, of the figure and name of the Greekagen, was supported by fifteen columns of Parian marble, and the vaults and cisterns of vaults were of a similar construction. The square before the sigma was decorated with a fountain, and the margin of the basin was lined and encompassed with plates of silver. In the beginning of each season, the basin, instead of water, was replenished with the most exquisite fruits, which were abandoned to the population for the entertainment of the prince. He enjoyed this tumultuous spectacle from a throne repose with gold and gems, which was raised by a marble staircase to the height of a lofty terrace. Below the throne were seated the officers of his guards, the magistrates, the chiefs of the factions of the circus; the inferior steps were occupied by the people, and the place below was covered with troops of dancers, singers, and pantomimes. The square was sur-

rounded by the hall of justice, the arsenal, and the various offices of business and pleasure; and the purple chamber was named from the annual distribution of robes of scarlet and purple by the hand of the empress herself. The long series of the apartments was adapted to the seasons, and decorated with marble and porphyry, with painting, sculpture, and mosaics, with a profusion of gold, silver, and precious stones. His fanciful magnificence employed the skill and patience of such artists as the times could afford; but the taste of Athens would have despised their frivolous and costly labours; a golden tree, with its leaves and branches, which sheltered a multitude of birds warbling their artificial notes, and two lions of massive gold, and of the natural size, who looked and roared like their brethren of the forest. The succour of Theophilus, of the Baselian and Comnenian dynasties, were not less ambitious of leaving some memorial of their residence; and the portion of the palace must splendid and august, was dignified with the title of the golden transmors. With becoming modesty, the rich and noble Greeks aspired to imitate their sovereign, and when they passed through the streets on horseback, in their robes of silk and embroidery, they were mistaken by the children for kings.

A matron of Peloponnesus, who had cherished the infant fortunes of Basil the Macedonian, was excited by tenderness or vanity to visit the greatness of her adopted son. In a journey of five hundred miles from Patras to Constantinople, her age or inexperience declined the fatigue of an horse or carriage: the soft litter or bed of Danielle was transported on the shoulders of ten robust slaves; and as they were relieved at any distances, a band of three hundred was selected for the performance of this service. She was entertained in the Byzantine palace with filial reverence and the honours of the court; whatever might be the origin of her wealth, her gifts were not unworthy of the regal dignity. I have already described the fine and curious manufactures of Peloponnesus, of linen, silk, and woollen; but the most acceptable of her presents consisted in three hundred beautiful youths, of whom one hundred were sumptuous; for she was not ignorant, says the historian, that the air of the palace is more congenial to such insects, than a shepherd's dairy to the flies of the summer. During her lifetime, she bestowed the greater part of her estates in Peloponnesus, and her testament instituted Leo, the son of Basil, her universal heir. After the payment of the legacies, fourseventeens vellum or

[33] For a curious and minute description of the imperial palace as the Constantinople of the middle ages, see the Observations of Hieronymus Vitalini, the supposed site, and the picture of the palace of Tiberius. The city of Byzantium is not what it once was. The spires and domes of the palace of Theophilus, the capitol, the church of the Holy Wisdom, the Saracen baths, the palace of the empress. The remains of the palace are described by Talon (Inge, vol. ii. p. 300), who quotes his observations, and those of his predecessor in Turkey, to explain his statements. (Talon, vol. i. p. 425. The palace was visited by Talon in 1795. Talon, vol. i. p. 425.)

[34] Observations of Hieronymus Vitalini, the supposed site, and the picture of the palace of Tiberius. The city of Byzantium is not what it once was. The spires and domes of the palace of Theophilus, the capitol, the church of the Holy Wisdom, the Saracen baths, the palace of the empress. The remains of the palace are described by Talon (Inge, vol. ii. p. 300), who quotes his observations, and those of his predecessor in Turkey, to explain his statements. (Talon, vol. i. p. 425. The palace was visited by Talon in 1795. Talon, vol. i. p. 425.)

[35] See the monument of Theophilus in the palace of the Hissar, near the Hissar, in the Sevastopol, in the monument of the Hissar, near the Hissar, in the Sevastopol.
farms were added to the Imperial domain; and three thousand slaves of Daniellis were enfranchised by their new lord, and transplanted as a colony to the Italian coast. From this example of a private patron, we may estimate the wealth and magnificence of the emperors. Yet our enjoyments are confined by a narrow circle; and, whatever may be its value, the luxury of life is possessed with more innocence and safety by the master of his own, than by the steward of the public, fortune.

In an absolute government, which levels the distinctions of noble and plebeian birth, the sovereign is the sole fountain of honour; and the rank, both in the palace and the empire, depends on the titles and offices which are bestowed and resumed by his arbitrary will. Above a thousand years, from Vespasian to Alexius Comnenus, the Caesar was the second person, or at least the second degree, after the supreme title of Augustus was more freely communicated to the sons and brothers of the reigning monarch. To toil without violating his promise to a powerful associate, the husband of his sister, and, without giving himself an equal, to reward the piety of his brother Isaac, the crafty Alexius interposed a new and superlative dignity. The happy flexibility of the Greek tongue allowed him to compound the names of Augustus and Emperor (Sebastos and Autokratos), and the union produced the onomatous title of Sebastocrator. He was exalted above the Caesar on the first step of the throne; the public acclamations repeated his name; and he was only distinguished from the sovereign by some peculiar ornaments of the head and feet. The emperor alone could assume the purple or red buskins, and the close diadem or tiara, which imitated the fashion of the Persian kings. It was an high pyramidal cap of cloth or silk, almost concealed by a profusion of pearls and jewels: the crown was formed by an horizontal circle and two arches of gold; at the summit, the point of their intersection, was placed a globe or cross; and two strings of pearls or caps of pearl depended on either cheek. Instead of red, the buskins of the Sebastocrator and Caesar were green; and on their open coats or crowns, the precious gems were more sparingly distributed. Builders and below the Caesar, the fancy of Alexius created the Pontyphylactos and the Pontocrator, whose sound and signification will satisfy a Graecian ear. They imply a superiority and a priority above the simple name of Augustus; and this sacred and primitive title of the Roman prince was degraded to the kinmen and servants of the Byzantine court. The daughter of Alexius applauds, with fond consciousness, the faithful gratulation of hopes and honours; but the science of words is accessible to the meanest capacities, and this vain dictionary was easily enriched by the pride of his successors. To their favourite sons or brothers, they imparted the more lofty appellation of Lord or Deipus, which was illustrated with new ornaments and prerogatives, and placed immediately after the person of the emperor himself. The five titles of, 1. Deipus; 2. Sebastocrator; 3. Caesar; 4. Pontyphylactos; and, 5. Pontocrator, were usually confined to the princes of his blood; they were the emanations of his majesty, but as they exercised no regular functions, their existence was useless, and their authority precarious.

But in every monarchy the substantial powers of government must be divided and exercised by the ministers of the palace and treasury, the fleet and army. The titles alone can differ; and in the revolution of ages, the counts and prefects, the praetor and questor, incessantly descended, while their servants rose above their heads to the first honours of the state. 1. In a monarchy, which refers every object to the person of the prince, the care and ceremonies of the palace form the most respectable department. The Ceremoniae, so illustrous in the age of Justinian, was supplanted by the Praesentia, whose primitive functions were limited to the custody of the wardrobe. From thence his jurisdiction was extended over the numerous menials of pomp and luxury; and he presided with his silver wand at the public and private audience. 2. In the ancient system of Constantinople, the name of Logothete, or accountant, was applied to the receivers of the finances; the principal officers were distinguished as the Logothetes of the domain, of the sea, the army, the private and public treasures; and the great Logothete, the supreme guardian of the laws and revenues, is compared with the chancellor of the Latin monarchies. His discerning eye pervaded the civil administration; and he was assisted, in due subordination, by the epharch or prefect of the city, the first secretary, and the keepers of the privy seal, the archives, and the red or purple ink which was reserved for the sacred signature of the emperor alone. The introduction and interpreter of foreign ambassadors were the great Chinnas and the Dogmeus, two names of Turkish origin, and which

---

are still familiar to the Sublime Porte. 3. From the humble style and service of guards, the Dominics incessantly rose to the station of generals; the military themes of the East and West, the legions of Europe and Asia, were often divided, till the great Domestics was finally invested with the universal and absolute command of land forces. The Protovotaire, in his original functions, was the assistant of the emperor when he mounted on horseback; he gradually became the lieutenant of the great Domestic in the field; and his jurisdiction extended over the stables, the cavalry, and the royal train of hunting and hawking. The Strategopulcher was the great judge of the camp; the Protospathaire commanded the guards; the Custodes, the great Emporicius, and the Acolyth, were the separate chiefs of the Franki, the barbarians, and the Varangi, or English, the mercenary strangers, who, in the decay of the national spirit, formed the nerve of the Byzantine armies. 4. The naval powers were under the command of the great Duke; in his absence they obeyed the great Droungarios of the fleet; and, in his place, the Kriti, or admiral, a name of Saracen extraction, but which has been naturalized in all the modern languages of Europe. Of these officers, and of many more whom it would be useless to enumerate, the civil and military hierarchy was fumied. Their honours and emoluments, their dress and titles, their mutual salutations and respective pro-eminences, were balanced with more exquisite labour than would have fixed the constitution of a free people; and the code was almost perfect when this baseless fabric, the monument of pride and servitude, was for ever buried in the ruins of the empire. 5.

The most lofty titles, and the most humble postures, which devotion has applied to the Supreme: Being, have been prostituted by flattery and fear to creatures of the same nature with ourselves. The mode of adoration, of falling prostrate on the ground, and kissing the feet of the emperor, was borrowed by Diocletian from Persian servitude; but it was continued and aggravated till the last age of the Greek monarchy. Excepting only on Sundays, when it was waved, from a motive of religious pride, this humiliating reverence was exacted from all who entered the royal presence, from the princes invested with the duchies and purple, and from the ambassadors who represented their independent sovereigns, the caliphs of Asia, Egypt, or Spain, the kings of France and Italy, and the Latin emperors of ancient Rome. In his transactions of business, Linnapul, bishop of Cremona, asserted the free spirit of a Frank and the dignity of his master Otho. Yet his sincerity cannot disguise the abasement of his first audience. When he approached the throne, the birds of the golden tree began to warble their notes, which were accompanied by the roaings of the two lions of gold. With his two companions Liutprand was compelled to bow and to fall prostrate; and thrice he touched the ground with his forehead. He arose; but in the short interval, the throne had been hoisted by an engine from the floor to the ceiling, the Imperial figure appeared in new and many gorgeous apparel, and the interview was concluded in haughty and majestic silence. In this honest and curious narrative the bishop of Cremona represents the ceremonies of the Byzantine court, which are still practised in the Sublime Porte, and which were preserved in the last age by the dukes of Muscovy or Russia. After a long journey by the sea and land, from Venice to Constantinople, the ambassador halted at the golden gate, till he was conducted by the formal officers to the hospitable palace prepared for his reception; but this palace was a prison, and his jealous keepers prohibited all social intercourse either with strangers or natives. At his first audience, he offered the gifts of his master, slaves, and golden vases, and costly armour. The ostentatious payment of the officers and troops displayed before his eyes the riches of the empire: he was entertained at a royal banquet, in which the ambassadors of the nations were marshalled by the esteem or contempt of the Greeks. From his own table, the emperor, as the most signal favour, sent the plates which he had tasted; and his favourites were dismissed with a robe of honour. In the morning and evening of each day, his civil and military servants attended their duty in the palace; their labour was repaid by the sight, perhaps by the smile, of their lord: his summons were signified by a nod or a sign: but all earthly greatness stood silent and submissive in his presence. In his regular or extraordinary processions through the capital, he unveiled his person to the public view: the rites of policy were connected with those of religion, and his visits to the principal churches were regulated by the festivals of the Greek calendar. On the eve of these processions, the gracious or devout intention of the monarch was proclaimed by the heralds. The streets were cleared and purified; the pavement was strewn with flowers; the most precious furniture, the gold and silver plate, and silken hangings, were displayed from the windows and balconies, and a severe discipline restrained the crowd. The works of Homer, the Greek classics, were sung by the players, the songs of Roman poets by the painters; and the sounds of dancing were mingled with the melody of the chorus. The fair ladies of the capital, in the dress of Early Byzantine, and the three books of German,—learned songs. 52. The respect which the emperor paid to the hand of God, and the sons of the Latin war, were more severe. See our learned friend...
silenced the tumult of the populace. The
march was opened by the military officers at
the head of their troops; they were followed in
long order by the magistrates and ministers of
the civil government; the person of the emperor
was guarded by his eunuchs and domestics, and
at the church door he was solemnly received by
the patriarch and his clergy. The task of ap-
plause was not abandoned to the rude and
spontaneous voices of the crowd. The most
convenient stations were occupied by the hands
of the blue and green factions of the circus;
and their furious conflicts, which had shaken
the capital, were insensibly sunk to an emula-
tion of servitude. From either side they echoed
in responsive melody the praises of the emperor;
their poets and musicians directed the choir, and
long life and victory were the burden of every
song. The same acclamations were performed
at the audience, the banquet, and the church;
and as an evidence of boundless sway, they were
repeated in the Latin, Gothic, Persian,
French, and even English language; by the
mercenaries who sustained the real or fictitious
character of those nations. By the pen of Con-
stantine Porphyrogenitus, this science of form
and flattery has been reduced into a pompous
and trilling volume, which the vanity of suc-
ceeding times might enrich with an ample sup-
plement. Yet the calmer reflection of a prince
would surely suggest, that the same acclama-
tions were applied to every character and every
reign: and if he had risen from a private rank, he
might remember, that his own voice had been
the loudest and most eager in applause, at the
evry moment when he supplied the fortunes, or
conspired against the life, of his predecessor.

The princes of the North, of the
nations, says Constantin, without
faith or fame, were ambitious of
mingling their blood with the blood of the
Caesars, by their marriage with a royal virgin,
or by the nuptials of their daughters with a
Roman prince. The aged monarch, in his in-
terestions to his son, reveals the secret maximum
of policy and pride; and suggests the most
decent reasons for refusing these insolent and
unreasonable demands. Every animal, says the
discreet emperor, is prompted by nature to seek
a mate among the animals of his own species;
and the human species is divided into various
tribes, by the distinction of language, religion,
and manners. A just regard to the purity of
descent preserves the harmony of public and
private life; but the mixture of foreign blood is
the fruitful source of disorder and discord.
Such was ever the opinion and practice of the
 sage Romans; their jurisprudence pro-
scribed the marriage of a citizen and a stranger:
in the days of freedom and virtue, a senator
could have scorned to match his daughter with
a king; the glory of Marc Antony was nullified
by an Egyptian wife; and the emperor Titus
was compelled, by popular pressure, to dismiss
with reluctance the negligent Berenice. This
perpetual interdict was ratified by the fabulous
sanction of the great Constantine. The ambas-
odors of the nations, more especially of the
unbelieving nations, were solemnly admonished,
that such strange alliances had been condemned
by the founder of the church and
the city. The Irrevocable law was
inscribed on the altar of St. Sophia; and
the impious prince who should stain the majesty
of the purple was excluded from the civil and
ecclesiastical communion of the Romans. If
the ambassadors were instructed by any false
brethren in the Byzantine history, they might
produce three memorable examples of the viola-
tion of this imaginary law: the marriage of Leo,
or rather of his father, Constantine the
Fourth, with the daughter of the king of the
Chassar, the nuptials of the grand-daughter of
Romanus with a Bulgarian prince, and the
union of Bertha of France or Italy with young
Romanus, the son of Constantine Porphy-
genitus himself. To these objections three an-
swers were prepared, which solved the difficulty
and established the law. I. The
deed and the guilt of Constant
Copronymus were acknowledged.

The Isarian heretic, who sullied the baptismal
font, and declared war against the holy images,
had indeed embraced a barbarian wife. By this
impious alliance he accomplished the measure of
his crimes, and was devoted to the just censure
of the church and of posterity. II. The
Romanus could not be alleged as
a legitimate emperor; he was a plebeian
mariner, ignorant of the laws, and regardless
of the honour, of the monarchy. His son
Christopher, the father of the bride, was the third
in rank in the college of princes, at once the sub-
ject and the accomplice of a rebellious parent.
The Bulgarians were sincere and devout Chris-
tians; and the safety of the empire, with the
redemption of many thousand captives, de-
sended on this preposterous alliance. Yet no
consideration could dissemble from the law of
Constantine: the clergy, the nations and the
people, disapproved the conduct of Romanus;
and he was reproached, both in his life and
death, as the author of the public disgrace.
III. For the marriage of his own
son with the daughter of Hugo, the
king of Italy, a more honourable defense is

33. The same phrase is explained by its synonyms (Declaro., p. 770. Declaro.

34. The same phrase is explained by its synonyms (Declaro., p. 770. Declaro.
contrived by the wise Porphyrogenitus. Constantine, the great and holy, esteemed the fidelity and valor of the Franks; 61 and his prophetic spirit beheld the vision of their future greatness. They alone were excepted from the general prohibition: Hugo, king of France was the legitimate descendant of Charles-magne; 62 and his daughter Bertha inherited the prerogatives of her family and nation. The voice of truth and justice incessantly betrayed the fraud or error of the Imperial court. The patrimonial estate of Hugo was reduced from the monarchy of France to the simple county of Arles; though it was not denied that, in the confusion of the times, he had usurped the sovereignty of Provence, and invaded the kingdom of Italy. His father was a private noble; and if Bertha derived her female descent from the Carolingian line, every step was polluted with illegitimacy or vice. The grandmother of Hugo was the famous Valdrada, the concubine, rather than the wife, of the second Lothair; whose adultery, divorce, and second nuptials, had provoked against him the thunders of the Vatican. His mother, as she was styled, the great Bertha, was successively the wife of the count of Arles and of the marquis of Tuscany: France and Italy were scandalised by her gallantries, and, till the age of threescore, her lovers, of every degree, were the zealous servants of her ambition. The example of maternal inconstancy was copied by the king of Italy; and the three favourite concubines of Hugo were decoated with the classic names of Venus, Juno, and Semula. 63 The daughter of Venus was granted to the solicitations of the Byzantine court: her name of Bertha was changed to that of Eudoxia; and she was wedded, or rather betrothed, to young Romanus, the future heir of the empire of the East. The consummation of this foreign alliance was suspended by the tender age of the two parties; and, at the end of five years, the union was dissolved by the death of the virgin spouse. The second wife of the emperor Romanus was a maiden of plebeian, but of Roman, birth; and their two daughters, Theophano and Ame, were given in marriage to the princes of the earth. The eldest was betrothed, as the pledge of peace, on the eldest son of the great Otho, who had solicited this alliance with arms and embassies. It might legally be questioned how far a Saxton was entitled to the privilege of the French nation: but every scruple was silenced by the fame and piety of a hero who had restored the empire of the West.

61 Commentary was made to praise the sagacity and wisdom of the Franks, with whose character it is in partial opposition. The French writers (Hans Cauterius in Benedict, Feliber) are highly complimentary of the Franks and their princes.

62 Commentary: Porphyrogenitus (in Administration, § 22) attributes a pedigree and life of the illustrious king Hugo (without regard to his union with either marriage or concubine): only the name of Pagno, the son of Romanus, and the administration of the eastern empire are added. Hugo was a relative of the Empress of the East, and is considered as her legitimate successor by the Greek historians (Michael, Fab. 1. 3. 18. 4. 10.; for the name, see Cyprian, Mar. 2. 4. 4.; for the death of Hugo by Berthold, see Hist. Franc. 2. 4. 16.; for the Government of the East, see Hist. Franc. 2. 4. 16.; for the marriage of Hugo, see Hist. Franc. 3. 4. 8.; for the name of Hugo, see Einhard, Lib. 1. 6. 5. For it would seem that Hugo was an illegitimate son of Romanus, the son of Pagno, thence the French have called him Hugues, French for Hugo.)

63 Also the designation of the three goddesses, Imperial and pantheistic in the Greek history, are considered as indicative of the pagan patriarchal origin of the Franks (Michael, Lib. 2. 3. 4. for the name of Venus; see Einhard, Mar. 2. 4. 18.; for the name of Romanus, see the same work, Mar. 2. 4. 18.; for the marriage of Hugo, see Einhard, Lib. 1. 6. 5; for the name of Hugo, see Einhard, Lib. 1. 6. 5. For it would seem that Hugo was an illegitimate son of Romanus, the son of Pagno, thence the French have called him Hugues, French for Hugo.)

64 From the Latin imperator means and of the Roman noble nation, or senate, no. in the position of an imperial title, equal Pagno, thence French

After the death of her father-in-law and husband, Theophano governed Rome, Italy, and Germany, during the minority of her son, the third Otho; and the Latins have praised the virtues of an empress, who sacrificed to a superior duty the remembrance of her country. 64 In the nuptials of her sister Ame, every prejudice was lost, and every consideration of dignity was superseded by the stronger argument of necessity and fear. A Roman prince of the North, Wolodimir, 65 great prince of Russia, aspired to wed a daughter of the Roman purple; and his claim was enforced by the threats of war, the promise of conversion, and the offer of a powerful succour against a domestic rebel. A victim of her religion and country, the Greek princes was torn from the palace of her fathers, and condemned to a savage reign and an hopeless exile on the banks of the Irtysh. 66 in the neighbourhood of the polar circle. Yet the marriage of Ame was fortunate and fruitful: the daughter of her grandson Jeronimus was recommended by her Imperial descent; and the king of France, Henry I., sought a wife in the last borders of Europe and Christendom. 66

In the Byzantine palace, the emperor was the first slave of the ceremony which he imposed, of the rigid forms which regulated each word and gesture; besieged him in the palace, and violated the honours of his rural solitude. But the lives and fortunes of millions hung on his arbitrary will: and the firmest minds, superior to the allurements of pomp and luxury, may be seduced by the more active pleasure of commanding their equals.

The legislative and executive powers were centred in the person of the monarch, and the last remnants of the sovereignty of the senate were finally eradicated by Leo the philosopher. 67 A laxity of servitude had humbled the minds of the Greeks: in the wildest tumults of rebellion, they never aspired to the idea of a free constitution: and the private character of the prince was the only source and measure of their public happiness. Superstition rivulets their chains: in the church of St. Sophia he was solemnly crowned by the patriarch; at the foot of the altar they pledged their passive and unconditional obedience to his government and family. On his side he engaged to abstain as much as possible from the capital punishments of death and mutilation; his orthodox creed was submersed with his own hand, and he promised to obey the decrees of the seven
syndes, and the canons of the holy church. But the assurance of mercy was loose and indefinite: he swore, not to his people, but to an invisible judge, and except in the inexorable guilt of heresy, the ministers of heaven were always prepared to preach the indefasible right, and to absolve the venial transgressions, of their sovereign. The Greek ecclesiastics were themselves the subjects of the civil magistrate: at the nod of a tyrant the bishops were created, or transferred, or deposed, or punished with an ignominious death: whatever might be their wealth or influence, they could never succeed like the Latin clergy in the establishment of an independent republic; and the patriarch of Constantinople condemned, what he secretly envied, the temporal greatness of his Roman brother. Yet the exercise of houmless despotism is happily checked by the laws of nature and necessity. In proportion to his wisdom and virtue, the master of an empire is confined to the path of his sacred and laborious duty. In proportion to his vice and folly, he drops the sceptre too weighty for his hands; and the motions of the royal image are ruled by the imperceptible thread of some minister or favourite, who undertakes for his private interest to exercise the task of the public oppression. In some fatal moment, the most absolute monarch may dread the sultan or the empress of a nation of slaves; and experience has proved, that whatever is gained in the extent, is lost in the safety and solidity, of regal power.

Whatever titles a despot may assume, whatever claims he may assert, it is on the sword that he must ultimately depend to guard him against his foreign and domestic enemies. From the age of Charlemagne to that of the Crusades, the world (for I overlook the recent monarchy of China) was occupied and disputed by the three great empires or nations of the Greeks, the Saracens, and the Franks. Their military strength may be ascertained by a comparison of their courage, their arts and riches, and their obedience to a supreme head, who might call into action all the energies of the state. The Greeks, far inferior to their rivals in the first, were superior to the Franks, and at least equal to the Saracens, in the second and third of these warlike qualifications.

The wealth of the Greeks enabled them to purchase the service of the poorer nations, and to maintain a naval power for the protection of their coasts and the annulment of their enemies. A commerce of mutual benefit exchanged the gold of Constantinople for the blood of the Slavonians and Turks, the Bulgarians and Russians: their valor contributed to the victories of Nicophorus and Zirimaces; and if an hostile people pressed too closely on the frontier, they were recalled to the defence of their country, and the desire of peace, by the well-managed attack of a distant tribe. The command of the Mediterranean, from the mouth of the Taurus to the columns of Heraclea, was always claimed, and often possessed, by the successors of Constantine. Their capital was filled with naval stores and destructive artificers: the situation of Greece and Asia, the long coasts, deep gulfs, and numerous islands, accustomed their subjects to the exercise of navigation; and the trade of Venice and Amalfi supplied a nursery of seamen to the Imperial fleet.

Since the time of the Palaeomanus and Punic wars, the sphere of action had not been enlarged; and the science of naval architecture appears to have declined. The art of constructing these stupendous machines which displayed three, or six, or ten, ranges of oars, rising above, or falling behind, each other, was unknown to the ship-builders of Constantinople, as well as to the mechanics of modern days. The Drimons, or light galleys of the Byzantine empire, were content with two tier of oars; each tier was composed of five and twenty benches; and two rowsers were seated on each bench, who pulled their oars on either side of the vessel. To these we must add the captain or coxswain, who, in time of action, stood erect with his armour-bearer on the poop, two sternmen at the helm, and two officers at the prow, the one to manage the anchor, the other to point and play against the enemy the tube of liquid fire. The whole crew, as in the infancy of the art, performed the double service of mariners and soldiers; they were provided with defensive and offensive arms, with bows and arrows, which they used from the upper deck, with long pikes, which they planted through the portholes of the lower tier. Sometimes indeed the ships of war were of a larger and more solid construction; and the labours of combats and navigation were more regularly divided between seventy soldiers and two hundred and thirty mariners. But for the most part they were of the light and manageable size; and as the cape of Melaus in Palaeomanus was still clothed with its ancient terrors, an Imperial fleet was transported five miles over land across the Isthmus of Corinth. The principles of maritime tactics had not undergone any change since the time of Thucydides: a squadron of galleys still advanced in a crescent, charged to the front, and strove to
impel their sharp beaks against the feeble sides of their antagonists. A machine for casting stones and darts was built of strong timbers in the midst of the deck; and the operation of boarding was effected by a crane that hoisted baskets of armed men. The language of signals, so clear and copious in the naval grammar of the moderns, was imperfectly expressed by the various positions and colours of a commanding flag. In the darkness of the night the same orders to chase, to attack, to halt, to retreat, to break, to form, were conveyed by the lights of the leading galley. By land, the fire-signals were repeated from one mountain to another; a chain of eight stations commanded a space of five hundred miles; and Constantinople in a few hours was apprised of the hostile motions of the Saracens of Taras. Some estimate may be formed of the power of the Greek emperors, by the curious and minute detail of the armament which was prepared for the reduction of Crete. A fleet of one hundred and twelve galleys, and seventy-five vessels of the Pamphylian style, was equipped in the capital, the islands of the Ægean Sea, and the seaports of Asia, Macedonia, and Greece. It carried thirty-four thousand mariners, seven thousand three hundred and forty soldiers, seven hundred Russians, and five thousand and eighty-seven Maritains, whose fathers had been transplanted from the mountains of Lesbos. Their pay, most probably of a month, was computed at thirty-four centenaries of gold, about one hundred and thirty-six thousand pounds sterling.

Our fancy is bewildered by the endless recapitulation of arms and engines, of clothes and linens, of bread for the men and forage for the horses, and of stores and utensils of every description, indispensable to the comest of a petty island, but simply sufficient for the establishment of a flourishing colony.

The invention of the Greek fire did not, like that of gunpowder, produce a total revolution in the art of war. To these liquid combaters the city and empire of Constantine owed their deliverance; and they were employed in sieges and sea-fights with terrible effect. But they were either less improved, or less susceptible of improvement: the engines of antiquity, the catapults, balistae, and battering-rams, were still of frequent and powerful use in the attack and defence of fortifications; nor was the decision of battles reduced to the quick and heavy fire of a line of infantry, whom it was fruitless to protect with armour against a similar fire of their enemies. Steel and iron were still the common instruments of destruction and safety; and the helmets, cuirasses, and shields, of the tenth century did not, either in form or substance, essentially differ from those which had covered the companions of Alexander or Achilles. But instead of accustoming the modern Greeks, like the legionsaries of old, to the constant and easy use of this salutary weight, their armour was laid aside in light chariots, which followed the march, till, on the approach of an enemy, they resumed with haste and reluctance the usual encumbrance. Their offensive weapons consisted of swords, battle-axes, and spears; but the Macedonian pike was shortened a fourth of its length, and reduced to the more convenient measure of twelve cubits or feet. The sharpness of the Scythian and Arabian arrows had been severely felt; and the emperors lamented the decay of archery as a cause of the public misfortunes, and recommended, as an advice, and a command, that the military youth, till the age of forty, should assiduously practise the exercise of the bow. The bands, or regiments, were usually three hundred strong; and, as a medium between the extremes of four and sixteen, the foot-soldiers of Leo and Constantine were formed eight deep; but the cavalry charged in four ranks, from the reasonable consideration, that the weight of the front could not be increased by any pressure of the hindmost horses. If the ranks of the infantry or cavalry were sometimes doubled, this cautious array betrayed a secret distrust of the courage of the troops, whose numbers might swell the appearance of the line, but of whom only a chosen few would dare to encounter the spears and arrows of the barbarians. The order of battle must have varied according to the ground, the object, and the adversary; but their ordinary disposition, in two lines and a reserve, presented a succession of hopes and resources most agreeable to the temper as well as to the judgment of the Greeks. In case of a regular, the first line full back into the intervals of the second, and the reserve, breaking into two divisions, wheel round the flanks to improve the victory or cover the retreat. Whatever authority could exact was accomplished, at least in theory, by the camps and marches, the exercises and evolutions, the edicts and books, of the Byzantine monarch. Whatever art could produce from the forge, the loom, or the laboratory, was abundantly supplied by the riches of the prince, and the industry of his numerous workmen. But neither authority nor art could frame the most important machine, the soldier himself; and if the emperors of Constantine always suppose the safe and triumphal return of the emperor, his tactis seldom soar above the means of escaping a
defeat, and preannouncing the war. Notwithstanding some transient successes, the Greeks were sunk in their own esteem and that of their neighbours. A cold hand and a joyous tongue was the vulgar description of the notion: the author of the tactics was besieged in his capital; and the last of the barbarians, who trembled at the name of the Saracens, or Franks, could proudly exhibit the medals of gold and silver which they had extorted from the feeble sovereign of Constantinople. What spirit their government and character denied, might have been inspired in some degree by the influence of religion; but the religion of the Greeks could only teach them to suffer and to yield. The emperor Nicophorus, who restored for a moment the discipline and glory of the Roman name, was desirous of bestowing the honours of martyrdom on the Christians who lost their lives in the holy war against the infidels. But this political law was defied by the opposition of the patriarchs, the bishops, and the principal senators, and they solemnly urged the example of St. Basil, that all who were polluted by the bloody trade of a soldier, should be separated, during three years, from the communion of the faithful. 88

These examples of the Greeks have been compared with the tears of the primitive Moslems when they wereiald back from battle; and this contrast of base superstition and high-spirited enthusiasm mufolds to a philosophic eye the history of the rival nations. The subjects of the last caliph 84 had undoubtedly degenerated from the zeal and faith of the companions of the prophet. Yet their martial spirit still represented the Deity as the author of war; 85 the vital though latent spark of fanaticism still glowed in the heart of their religion, and among the Saracens who dwelt on the Christian borders it was frequently rekindled to a lively and active flame. Their regular force was formed of the valiant slaves who had been educated to guard the person and accompany the standard of their lord; but the Mussul- 

The Decline and Fall.

The love of freedom and of arms was felt, with remorseless pride, by the Franks themselves, and is observed by the Greeks with some degree of amusement and terror. "The Franks," says the emperor Constantine, "are bold and resolute to the verge of "tremendity; and their dauntless spirit is sup""orted by the contempt of danger and death. "In "the field and in close combat, they press to the "front, and rush headlong against the enemy, "without deigning to compute either his num""bers or their own. Their ranks are formed "by the firm connections of communitgty "and friendship; and their martial deeds are "prompted by the desire of saving or revenging "their dearest companions. In their eyes, a "retreat is a shameful flight; and flight is "indestructible infamy." A nation endowed with such high and intrepid spirit, must have been "seized with a desire of victory, if these advantages had not been counterbalanced by some weighty defects. The decay of their naval power left the Greeks and Saracens in possession of the sea, for every purpose of annoyance and supply. In the age which preceded the institution of knighthood, the Franks were rude and unskilful in the service of cavalry; and in all perilous emergencies, their warriors were so conscious of their ignorance, that they chose to dismount from their horses and fight on foot. Unpractised in the use of pikes, or of missile weapons, they were encompassed by the length of their swords, the weight of their arms, the "magntitude of their shields, and, if I may repeat, the size of the Franks, Greeks, by their un""wise ly intemperance. Their independent spirit disintegrated the yoke of subordination, and abandon""ed the standard of their chief. If he attempted "to keep the field beyond the term of their stipula""tion or service. On all sides they were open "to the dangers of an enemy, less brave, but more "artful, than themselves. They might be bribed, "for the barbarians were venal; or surprised in "the night, for they neglected the precautions of a "close encampment or vigilant sentinels. The "fatigue of a summer's campaign exhausted "their strength and patience, and they sunk in "dispair, if their insatiable appetite was disposed "of a plentiful supply of wine and of "food. This general character of the Franks "were marked with some national and local stresses, "which should suffice to account, rather than "elusive, but which were visible both to na""tives and to foreigners. An audacity of the "great Other declared, in the palace of Con""stantinople, that the Saracens could dispute with "the Franks, better than with pens, and that they "preferred inevitable death to the dishonour of "turning their backs to an enemy. It was the "glory of the nobles of France, that, in their "troubles and trials, war and peace were the
only pleasure, the idle occupation of their lives. They affected to divide the palaces, the banquet, the polished manners, of the Italians, who, in the estimation of the Greeks themselves, had degenerated from the liberty and salons of the ancient Lombards. By the well-known edict of Constantine, the sarrahs, his subjects, from Britain to Egypt, were entitled to the name and privileges of Romans, and their national sovereigns might be his occasional or permanent residence in any part of the Roman empire. In the division of the East and West, an ideal unity was scrupulously preserved, and in their titles, laws, and statutes, the successors of Arcadius and Honorius announced themselves as the inseparable colleagues of the same office, as the joint sovereigns of the Roman world and city, which were bounded by the same limits. After the fall of the Western monarchy, the majesty of the people reigned solely in the princes of Constantinople; and of these, Justinian was the first, who, after a divorce of sixty years, regained the domination of ancient Rome, and asserted, by the right of conquest, the august title of Emperor of the Romans.

A motive of vanity or discontent solicited one of his successors, Constantine, the Second, to abandon the Thracian Bosphorus, and to restore the pristis honours of the Tiber; an extravagant project (exclaims the indignant Byzantines), as if he had despised a beautiful and blossoming virgin, to enrich, or rather to expose, the deformity of a wrinkled and decrepit matron. But the ardor of the Lombards opposed his settlement in Italy; he entered Rome, not as a conqueror, but as a fugitive, and, after a visit of twelve days, he pillaged, and for ever desolated, the ancient capital of the world.

The final revolt and separation of Italy was accomplished about two centuries after the conquests of Justinian, and from his reign we may date the gradual oblivion of the Latin tongue. That legislator had composed his Institutes, his Code, and his Pandects, in a language which he celebrates as the proper and public style of the Roman government, the consecrated idiom of the palaces and senate of Constantinople, of the camps and tribunals of the East. But this foreign dialect was unknown to the people and soldiers of the Asiatic provinces, it was imperfectly understood by the greater part of the interpreters of the laws and the ministers of the state. After a short conflict, nature and habit prevailed over the obstinate institutions of human power. For the general benefit of his subjects, Justinian promulgated his edicts in the two languages: the several parts of his voluminous jurisprudence were successively translated: the original was forgotten, the version was studied, and the Greek, whose intricate merit deserved indeed the preference, attained a legal, as well as popular, establishment in the Byzantine monarchy. The birth and residence of succeeding princes estranged them from the Roman idiom: Tiberius by the Arabs, and Maurice by the Italians, are distinguished as the first of the Greek Caesars, as the founders of a new dynasty and empire: the silent revolution was accomplished before the death of Heraclius; and the ruins of the Latin speech were darkly preserved in the terms of jurisprudence and the scriptures of the palace. After the restoration of the Western empire by Chilperic and the Othroges, the names of Franks and Latins acquired an equal signification, and extent; and these laughable barbarians, with some justice, their superior claim to the language and the institutions of Rome. They insulted the alleys of the East, who had denounced the stress and illusory of Romans; and their reasonable practice will justify the frequent appellation of the Greeks. But this contemptuous and invidious appellation was indignantly rejected by the prince and people to whom it is applied. Whatever changes had been introduced by the lapse of ages, they allaged a linear and unbroken succession from Augustus and Constantius; and, in the lowest period of degeneracy and decay, the name of Roman adhered to the last fragments of the empire of Constantinople.

While the government of the East was transacted in Latin, the Greek was the language of literature and phil
loopy, nor could the masters of this rich and
learning be tempted to envy the borrowed
learning and imitation of taste of their Roman
disciples. After the fall of Paganism, the loss of
Syria and Egypt, and the extinction of the
schools of Alexandria and Athens, the studies of the
Greeks, for some time retired to some regular
monasteries, and above all, to the royal college
of Constantinople, which was burnt in the reign of
Leo the Isaurian. In the pompous style of
the age, the president of that foundation was
named the Sun of Science: his discipular
associates, the professors in the different arts
and faculties, were the twelve signs of the zodiac;
a library of thirty-six thousand five hundred
volumes was open to their enquiries; and they
could show an ancient manuscript of Homer,
on a roll of parchment one hundred and twenty
feet in length, the fourfold, as it was fabled, of
a prodigious serpent. But the seventh and
the eighth centuries were a period of discord and
darkness; the library was burnt, the college was
abolished; the Isaurians are represented
as the foes of antiquity, and a savage ignorance
and contempt of letters has disgraced the princes of the
Haranoe and Isaurian dynasties.

In the ninth century we trace the
first discoveries of the restoration of
science. After the fanaticism of the Arabs
had subside, the caliph aspired to conquer the
arts, rather than the provinces, of the empire;
their liberal curiosity recoupled the stimulation of
the Greeks, brushed away the dust from their
ancient libraries, and taught them to know and
reward the philosophers, whose labours had been
hitherto repaid by the pleasure of study and the
pursuit of truth. The Caesar Bardas, the uncle of
Michael the Third, was the generous protec-
tor of letters, a title which alone has preser-
voted his memory and exalted his ambition.
A particle of the treasures of his nephew was
sometimes diversed from the indulgence of vice
and folly; a school was opened in the palace of
Magnaura; and the presence of Bardas excited
the emulation of the masters and students. At
their head was the philosopher Leo, archbishop
of Thessalonica; his profound skill in astronomy
and the mathematics was admired by the strangers
of the East; and this occult science was
magnified by vulgar credulity, which modestly sup-
poses that all knowledge superior to our own
must be the effect of inspiration or magic. At
the pressing entreaty of the Caesar, his friend,
the celebrated Photius, 107 renounced the freedom
of a secular and studious life, ascended the patri-
archal throne, and was alternately excommunic-
ated and absolved by the symbols of the East
and West. By the confession even of priests
forced, no art or science, except poetry, was
foreign to this universal scholar, who was deep
in thought, indefatigable in reading, and elo-
quent in dictation. Whilst he exercised the office
of protopapal, or captain of the guards,
Photius was sent ambassador to the caliph of
Baghdad. The tedious hours of exile, perhaps
of confinement, were beguiled by the hasty com-
position of his Library, a living monument of
erudition and criticism. Two hundred and four-
score writers, historians, orators, philosophers,
th eologians, are reviewed without any regular
method: he abridges their narratives or doctrines,
appreciates their style and character, and judges
even the fathers of the church with a discreet
freedom, which often breaks through the super-
position of the times. The emperor Basil, who
bentec the defects of his own education,
instruction to the care of Photius his son and
successor Leo the philosopher; and the reign of
that prince and of his son Constantine Porphy-
rogenitus forms one of the most prosperous ages
of the Byzantine literature. By their munific-
ence the treasures of antiquity were deposited
in the Imperial library; by their pen, or that of
their associates, they were imparted in such
extracts and abridgments as might amuse the
curiosity, without oppressing the indolence, of
the public. Besides the Basilica, or code of
laws, the arts of husbandry and war, of feeding
or destroying the human species, were propa-
gated with equal diligence; and the history of
Greece and Rome was digested into fifty-three
books, or titles, of which two only (of embassies,
and of virtues and vices) have escaped the re-
jection of time. In every station, the reader
might contemplate the history of the past world,
apply the lesson or warming of each page, and
learn to admire, perhaps to imitate, the examples
of a brighter period. I shall not exaggerate
the works of the Byzantine Greeks, who, by
the assiduous study of the ancients, have deserved,
in some measure, the remembrance and gratitude
of the moderns. The scholars of the present age
may still enjoy the benefit of the philosophical
common-place book of Stobaeus, the grammatical
and historical lexicon of Sozomen, the Chiliasm of
Tactees, which comprises six hundred narratives
in twelve thousand verses, and the commentaries
on Homer of Eustathius, archbishop of Thessa-
lonica, who, from his birth of plenty, has praised
the names and authorities of four hundred writers.
From these originals, and from the numerous
tribe of scholiasts and critics, 108 some estimate

107 See Photius, see his Sophia, Ed., p. 359, 359, 359, 359.
108 See Photius, see his Sophia, Ed., p. 359, 359, 359, 359.
107 The seven "aphorisms" of Zeno, see his Sophia, Ed., p. 359, 359, 359, 359.
108 See Photius, see his Sophia, Ed., p. 359, 359, 359, 359.
may be formed of the literary wealth of the twelfth century: Constantinople was enlightened by the genius of Homer and Hesiod, of Aristotle and Plato; and in the enjoyment or neglect of our present riches, we must envy the generation that could still pursue the history of Thucydides, the orations of Hyperides, the comedies of Menander, the orations of Alcuin and Sulpicius. The fervent labour of illustration attests not only the existence, but the popularity, of the Greek classics: the general knowledge of the age may be deduced from the example of two learned females, the empress Eudocia, and the princess Anna Comnena, who, skilled in the art of rhetoric and philosophy. The vulgar dialect of the city was gross and barbarous: a more correct and elaborate style distinguished the discourse, or at least the compositions, of the church and palace, which sometimes affected to copy the purity of the Attic models.

In our modern education, the young student laboriously translates the masterpieces of Greek and Latin literature, painful though necessary attainment, which serve as stepping stones to further studies. The poets and orators were long imprisoned in the barbarous dialects of our western ancestors, devoid of harmony or grace; and their language, without precept or example, was abandoned to the rude and native power of their judgment and fancy. But the Greeks of Constantinople, after purging away the impurities of their vulgar speech, acquired the free use of their ancient language, the most expressive and pejorative, with the most polished and eulogistic, with the highest and lowest, with the most musical and with the most pathetic, with the most退款 and with the most soothing, with the most contented and with the most exciting. The most eloquent of the world, who had studied or instructed the first of nations. But these advantages only tend to aggravate the reproach and shame of a degenerate people. They held in their lifeless hands the riches of their fathers, without inheriting the spirit which had created and improved that sacred patrimony: they read, they praised, they compiled, but their languid souls seemed alike incapable of thought and action. In the revolution of ten centuries, not a single discovery was made to exalt the dignity or promote the happiness of mankind. Not a single idea has been added to the speculate system of antiquity, and a succession of patient disciples because in their turn the dogmatic teachers of the next servile generation. Not a single composition of history, philosophy, or literature, has been served from oblivion by the intrinsic beauty of style or sentiment, of original fancy, or even of successful imitation. In prose, the least offensive of the Byzantine writers are absorbed from censure by their naked and unmeaning simplicity; but the orators, most eloquent in their own esteem, are the farthest removed from the models whom they affect to emulate. In every page our taste and reason are wounded by the choice of gigantic and obsolete words, a stiff and intricate phraseology, the discours of images, the childish play of false or unmeaning ornament, and the painful attempt to elevate themselves, to astonish the reader, and to involve a trivial meaning in the smoke of obscurity and exaggeration. Their prose is soaring to the vicious affection of poetry; their poetry is sinking below the flatness and insignificance of prose. The tragic, epic, and lyric names were silent and inglorious: the bard of Constantinople seldom rose above a riddle or epitaph, a panegyric or tale; they forgot even the rules of proverbs; and with the melody of Homer yet sounding in their ears, they confounded all measure of feet and syllables in the impotent strain which have received the name of musical or city verses. The minds of the Greeks were bound in the fetters of a base and impious superstition, which extended their Athenian round the circle of profane science. Their understandings were bewildered in metaphysical controversy: in the belief of visions and miracles, they had lost all principles of moral evidence: their taste was vitiated by the pomposity of the monks, an absurd mixture of declamation and Scripture. Even these contemptible studies were no longer dignified by the abuse of superior talents: the leaders of the Greek church were humbly content to admire and copy the oracles of antiquity, nor did the schools or pulpit produce any rivals of the fame of Athanasius and Chrysostom. In all the pursuits of active and speculative life, the emulation of states and individuals is the most powerful spring of the efforts and improvements of mankind. The cities of ancient Greece were cast in the happy mixture of union and independence, which is repeated on a larger scale, but in a lesser form, by the nations of modern Europe: the union of language, religion, and manners, which renders them the spectators and judges of each other's merit; the independence of government and interest, which asserts their separate freedom, and excites them to strive for preponderance in the cause of glory. The situation of the Romans was less favourable: yet in the early ages of the republic, which fixed the national character, a similar emulation was kindled among the states of Latium and Italy; and, in the arts and sciences, they aspired to equal or surpass their Greek masters. The empire of the Caesars undoubtedly checked the activity and progress of the human mind; its magnitude might indeed allow some scope for domestic competition; but when it was gradually reduced,
as first to the East and at last to Greece and Constantinople, the Byzantine subjects were degraded to an object and languid trooper, the natural effect of their military and insulated state. From the North they were oppressed by numerous tribes of barbarians, to whom they scarcely imparted the appellation of men. The language and religion of the more polished Arabs were an insurmountable bar to all social intercourse. The conquerors of Europe were their brethren in the Christian faith; but the speech of the Franks or Latins was unknown, their manners were rude, and they were merely connected, in peace or war, with the successors of Heraclius. Alone in the universe, the self-satisfied pride of the Greeks was not disturbed by the comparison of foreign merits; and it is an wonder if they failed in the race, since they had neither competitors to urge their speed, nor judges to crown their victory. The nations of Europe and Asia were mingled by the expeditions to the Holy Land; and it is under the Communion's dynasty that a fain emulation of knowledge and military virtue was rekindled in the Byzantine empire.

CHAP. LIV.


The profession of Christianity, which, in the early ages of the Church, displayed so many noble characters, began to degenerate in its later stages, and to be contaminated by the vices of the times. The variety of national characters may be clearly distinguished. The motives of Syria and Egypt abounded their laws to lazy and contemplative dispositions. Rome again admired the quietness of the world; and the ease of the lively and voluptuous Greeks was commended in the disputes of metaphysical theology. The incomprehensible mysteries of the Trinity and Incarnation, instead of commanding their silent submission, were agitated in vehement and subtle controversies, which enlarged their faith at the expense, perhaps, of their clarity and reason. From the council of Nice to the end of the seventh century, the peace and unity of the church was invaded by these spiritual war-suits and so deeply did they affect the decline and fall of the empire, that the historian has too often been compelled to attend the synods, to explore the creeds, and to enumerate the sects, of this busy period of ecclesiastical annals. From the beginning of the eighth century to the last ages of the Byzantine empire, the sound of controversy was seldom heard, curiosity was exhausted, and faith was so fatigued, and in the decrees of six councils, the articles of the Catholic faith had been irreversibly defined. The spirit of dispute, however vain and pernicious, requires some energy and exercise of the mental faculties; and the regenerate Greeks were content to rest, to pray, and to believe, in blind obedience to the patriarchs and his clergy. During a long dream of superstition, the Virgin and the Saints, their visions and miracles, their relics and images, were preached by the monks, and worshiped by the people; and the appellation of popery might be extended, without injustice, to the first ranks of civil society. At an unaccountable moment, the Iranian emperors attempted somewhat rudely to awaken their subjects under their influence, reason might obtain some prophecies, a far greater number was swayed by interest or fear; but the Eastern world embraced or despised their visible doctions, and the continuance of images was celebrated as the feast of orthodoxy. In this peaceful and unanimous state, the ecclesiastical rulers were relieved from the toil, or deprived of the pleasures, of persecution. The Pagans had disappeared; the Jews were silent and obscure; the disputes with the Latins were rare and remote hostilities against a national enemy; and the sects of Egypt and Syria enjoyed a free toleration under the shadow of the Arabian caliphate. About the middle of the seventh century, a branch of Manichæans was selected as the victims of spiritual tyranny; their patience was at length exasperated to despair and rebellion; and their exile has scattered over the West the seeds of reformation. These important events will justify some enquiry into the doctrine and story of the Parsees; and, as they cannot plead for themselves, our critical criticism shall magnify the good, and abate or respect the evil, that is reported by their adversaries.

The Gnostics, who had distanced the infamy, were oppressed by the greatness and authority of the church. Instead of emulating or surpassing the wealth, learning, and numbers, of the Catholicks, their obscure remnant was driven from the capitals of the East and West, and confined to the villages and mountains along the borders of the Euphrates. Some vestiges of the Marcionites may be detected in the fifth century, but the numerous sects were finally lost in the eddies of the manichean stream; and these heretics, who pretended to reconcile the doctrines of Zoroaster and Christ, were pursued by the two religions with equal and unrelenting hatred. Under the grandeur of Heraclius, in the neighbourhood of Damascus, more famous for the birth of Lucian than for the title of a Syrian kingdom, a reformer arose, esteemed by the Manichæans as the chosen messenger of truth. In his humble dwelling of Manaulis, Constantine entertained a deacon, who returned from Syrian captivity, and received the inestimable gift of the New Testament, which was already concealed from the vulgar by the prudence of the Greek, and perhaps of the Gnostic, clergy.

1 The views and visions of the Manichæans are excellent, with few exceptions, in their manner of explanation, p. 311, vol. 2. The Jumars, original Manichæans, are thought to have been a Jewish sect. The sect of the Gnostics is attributed to the Manichæans, and is the subject of a treatise by Gibbon, the last of the apologists of Christianity. The Greek, Etablissements, 1774, p. 11. These short passages contain a more accurate account of the sect of Manichæans, p. 121.
These books became the measure of his studies and the rule of his faith; and the Catholics, who disputed his interpretation, acknowledge that his text was genuine and sincere. But he attached himself with peculiar devotion to the writings and character of St. Paul; the name of the Paulicians is derived by their enemies from some unknown and domestic teacher; but I am confident that they gloried in their affinity to the apostle of the Gentiles. His disciples, Titus, Timothy, Sylvanus, Tychicus, were represented by Constantine and his fellow-bishops; the names of the apostolic churches were applied to the congregations which they assembled at Arnesiia and Cephalodicia; and this innocent allegory revived the example and memory of the first ages. In the Gospel, and the Epistles of St. Paul, his faithful follower investigated the creed of primitive Christianity; and, whatsoever might be the success, a Protestant reader will applaud the spirit, of the enquiry. But if the Scriptures of the Paulicians were pure, they were not perfect. Their founders rejected the two Epistles of St. Peter, the apostle of the circumcision, whose dispute with his favourite for the observance of the law could not easily be forgiven. They agreed with their Gnostic brethren in the universal contempt for the Old Testament, the book of Moses and the prophets, which have been consecrated by the decrees of the Catholic church. With equal boldness and decision with more reason, Constantine, the new Sylvanus, disclaimed the visions, which in so many bulky and splendid volumes, had been published by the Oriental sects; the fabulous productions of the Hebrew patriarchs and the ages of the East; the apocryphal Gospels, Epistles, and Acts, which in the first age had overthrown the orthodox code; the theology of Moses, and the authors of the kindred heresies; and the thirty generations, or seven, which had been created by the fruitful fancy of Valentine. The Paulicians sincerely condemned the memory and opinions of the Manichean sect, and complained of the injustice which impressed that invincible name on the simple metrical of St. Paul and of Christ.

Of the ecclesiastical chain, many links had been broken by the Paulician reformers; and their liberty was enlarged, as they reduced the number of mysteries at whose vogue profound reason must to mysteries and miracles. The early separation of the Gnostics had preceded the establishment of the Catholic worship; and against the gradual innovations of discipline and doctrine, they were as strongly guarded by habit and aversion, as by the silence of St. Paul and the evangelists. The objects which had been transformed by the magic of superstition, appeared to the eyes of the Paulicians in their genuine and naked colours. An image made without hands, was the common workmanship of a mortal artist, to whose skill alone the wood and canvas must be indebted for their merit or value. The miraculous relics were an heap of bones and ashes, testament of life or virtue, or of any relation, perhaps, with the person to whom they were ascribed. The true and vivifying cross was a piece of sound or rotten timber; the body and blood of Christ, a loaf of bread and a cup of wine; the gifts of nature and the symbols of grace. The mother of God was degraded from her celestial honours and immaculate virginity; and the saints and angels were no longer enabled to exercise the salutary office of mediation in heaven, and ministration upon earth. In the practice, or at least in the theory, of the sacraments, the Paulicians were inclined to abolish all visible objects of worship; and the words of the Gospel were, by their judgment, the baptism and communion of the faithful. They indulged a convenient latitude for the interpretation of Scripture; and as often as they were pressed by a literal sense, they could escape to the intricate snare of figure and allegory. Their utmost diligence and ingenuity have been employed to dissolve the connection between the Old and the New Testament; since they adhered to the law as the oracles of God, and abolished the former as the fallacious and absurd invention of men or demons. We cannot be surprised, that they should have found in the Gospel the orthodox mystery of the Trinity; but instead of confessing the human nature and substantial sufferings of Christ, they Armed their fancy with a celestial body that passed through the virgin like water through a pipe; with a phantastic incarnation, that stilled the vain and impotent malice of the Jews. A creed thus simple and spiritual was not adapted to the genius of the times; and the rational Christian, who might have been concerned with the light yoke and easy burdens of Jesus and his apostles, was justly offended that the Paulicians should dare to violate the unity of God, the first article of natural and revealed religion. Their belief and their trust was in the Father, of Christ, of the humans and, of the invisible world. But they likewise held the eternity of matter; a stubborn and rebellious substance, the origin of a second principle, of an active being, who has created this visible world, and exercises his temporal reign till the final consummation of death and sin. The appearances of moral and physical evil had established the two principles in the ancient philosophy and religion of the East; from thence this doctrine was transplanted to the various arms of the Gentiles. A thousand studies may be derived in the nature and charac-
ter of Abirius, from a rival god to a subordinate demigod, from passion and frailty to pure and perfect meekness. But, in spite of our efforts, the goodness and the power of Ormund are placed at the opposite extremities of the line; and every step that approaches the one must recede in equal proportion from the other.

The apostolic labours of Constantine and Sylvanus were multiplied by the number of his disciples, the secret recumbrance of spiritual ambition. The remnant of the Gnostic sects, and especially the Manichæans of Armenia, were united under his standard; many Catholics were converted or seduced by his arguments; and he preached with success in the regions of Pontus and Cappadocia, which had long since inhibited the religion of Zoroaster. The Paulician teachers were distinguished only by their scriptural names, by the modest title of fellow-pilgrims, by the austerity of their lives, their zeal or knowledge, and the credit of some extraordinary gifts of the holy spirit. But they were incapable of desiring, or at least of obtaining, the wealth and honours of the Catholic prelacy; such anti-christian pride they bitterly censured; and even the rank of elders or presbyters was condemned as an institution of the Jewish synagogue. The new sect was loosely spread over the provinces of Asia Minor to the westward of the Euphrates; six of their principal congregations represented the churches to which St. Paul had addressed his epistles; and their founder chose his residence in the neighbourhood of Colonia, in the same district of Pontus which had been celebrated by the altars of Helleson, and the miracles of Gregory. After a mission of twenty-seven years, Sylvanus, who had retired from the tolerating government of the Arabs, fell a sacrifice to Roman persecution. The laws of the pious emperors, which sabrium touched the lives of so many holy heretics, proscribed without mercy or disguised the tenets, the books, and the persons of the Montanists and Manichæans; the books were delivered to the flames; and all who should refuse to assent to such writings, or to profess such opinions, were devoted to an ignominious death. A Greek minister, armed with legal and military powers, appeared at Colonia to strike the shepherd, and to reclaim, if possible, the lost sheep. By a refinement of cruelty, Simonian placed the unfortunate Sylvanus before a line of his disciples, who were com-

mended, as the price of their pardon and the proof of their repentance, to massacre their spiritual father. They turned aside from the impious office; the stones dropped from their blind hands, and of the whole number, only one executioner could be found, a new David, as he is styled by the Catholics, who boldly overthrew the giant of brecy. This apostate, Justinus was his name, again deceived and betrayed his master, suspecting a reform; and a new conformity to the act of St. Paul may be found in the conversion of Simonius: like the centurion, he comprehended the doctrine which he had been sent to persecute, renounced his honours and fortune, and acquired among the Paulicians the fame of a missionary and a martyr. They were not ambitious of martyrdom, but in a calamitous period of one hundred and fifty years, their patience sustained whatever zeal could inflict; and power was insufficient to eradicate the obstinate vegetation of fanatics and reason. From the blood and ashes of the first victims, a succession of teachers and congregations repeatedly arose amidst their foreign hostilities, they found leisure for domestic quarters; they preached, they disputed, they suffered; and the virtues, the apparent virtues, of Sergius, in a pilgrimage of thirty-three years, are reluctantly confessed by the orthodox historians. The native cruelty of Justinian the Second was stimulated by a pious cause; and he was only hearkening, in a single consecration, the name and memory of the Paulicians. By their primitive simplicity, their adherence of popular superstition, the Iconoclast princes might have been reconciled to some erroneous doctrines; but they themselves were exposed to the calumnies of the monks, and they chose to be the tyrants, lest they should be accounted as the accomplices of the Manichæans. Such a reproach has nullified the eloquence of Nicephorus, who relaxed in their favour the severity of the penal statutes, nor will his character sustain the honour of a more liberal motive. The seconds Michael the First, the rigid Leo the Armenian, were foremost in the race of persecution; but the price must doubtless be adjudged to the singularity of devotion of Theodore, who restored the images in the Oriental churches. Her historians explored the cities and mountains of the lesser Asia; and the flatteners of the empress have affirmed that, in a short reign, one hundred thousand Paulicians were extirpated by the sword, the gibbet, or the flames. Har guilt or merit has perhaps been stretched beyond the
measure of truth: but if the account be allowed, it must be presumed that many simple Iconoclasts were punished under a more odious name; and that some who were driven from the church, unwillingly took refuge in the bosom of heresy.

The most furious and desperate of rebels are the sectaries of a religion long persecuted, and at length provoked. In an holy cause they are no longer susceptible of fear or remorse; the justice of their arms hardens them against the feelings of humanity; and they revenge their fathers' wrongs on the children of their tyrants. Such have been the Manichees, Sarmatians, and the Calabrians of France, and such, in the tenth century, were the Paulicians of Armenia and the adjacent provinces. They were first awakened to the massacre of a governor and bishop, who exercised the imperial mandate of converting or destroying the heretics: and the deepest recedes of Mount Ararat protected their independence and revenge. A more dangerous and consuming flame was kindled by the persecution of Theodore, and the revolt of Carbass, a valiant Paulician, who commanded the guards of the general of the East. His father had been impeled by the Catholic inquisitors; and religion, or at least nature, might justify his desertion and revenge. Five thousand of his brethren were united by the same motives; they renounced the allegiance of anti-Christian Rome; a Saracen emir introduced Carbass to the caliph; and the commander of the faithful extended his sceptre to the impicable enemy of the Greeks. In the mountains between Iberus and Trebizond he founded or fortified the city of Tephrique, which is still occupied by a fierce and licentious people, and the neighbouring hills were clogged with the Paulician fugitives, who now reckoned the use of the Bible and the sword. During more than thirty years, Asia was afflicted by the calamities of foreign and domestic war; in their hostile incursions the disciples of St. Paul were joined with those of Mahomet; and the peaceful Christians, the aged, parent and tender virgin, who were delivered into barbarous slavery, and might justly accuse the intolerant spirit of their sovereign. So urgent was the mischief, so intolerable the shame, that even the dissolute Michael, the son of Theodore, was compelled to march in person against the Paulicians; he was defeated under the walls of Samoza; and the Roman emperor, first before the heretics, whom his mother had condemned to the flames. The Saracens fought under the same banners, but the victory was ascribed to Carbass; and the captive generals, with more than an hundred tribunes, were either released by his order, or tortured by his fanaticism. The valour and ambition of Chyroscholar, his successor, embraced a wider circle of rapine and revenge. In alliance with his faithful Mleseos, he boldly penetrated into the heart of Asia; the troops of the frontier and the palace were repeatedly overthrown; the edicts of persecution were answered by the pillage of Nice and Nisimedia, of Ancym and Ephesus; nor could the apostle St. John protest against violation his city and sepulchre. The cathedral of Ephesus was turned into a stable for mules and horses; and the Paulicians vied with the Saracens in their contempt and abhorrence of images and relics. It is not meaning to observe the triumph of rebellion over the same despotism which had disclaimed the prayers of the injured. The three names, Michael, Chyroscholar, and Trebizond, were reduced to sue for peace, to offer a ransom for the captives, and to request, in the language of moderation and charity, that Chyroscholar would spare his fellow Christians, and content himself with a royal donation of gold and silver and silk garments. If the emperor repeated the insolent fustic, be desires of peace, let him abridge the East, and reign without moat irritation in the West. If he refuse, the sanguinary vassals of the Lord will precipitate him from the throne. The reluctant Basil suspended the treaty, accepted the distance, and led his army into the land of heresy, which he wasted with fire and sword. The open country of the Paulicians was exposed to the same calamities which they had inflicted; but when he had explored the strength of Tephrique, the multitudes of the barbarians, and the ample magazines of arms and provisions, he desisted with a sigh from the hopeless siege. On his return to Constantinople he was shamed, by the foundation of convents and churches, to secure the aid of his celestial patrons, of Michael the archangel and the prophet Elijah; and it was his daily prayer that he might live to transpire, with three arrows, the head of his impious adversary. Beyond his expectations, the wish was accomplished: after a successful inroad, Chyroscholar was surprised and slain in his retreat; and the rebel's head was triumphantly presented at the foot of the throne. On the reception of this welcome trophy, Basil instantly called for his bow, discharged arrows with cheerfulness and sang the praises of the court, who hailed the victory of the royal archon. With Chyroscholar, the glory of the Paulicians faded and withered.

The fourth century, Constantinople, Constantine, Constantius Chlorus, and the Copronymous by the worshippers of Thamma, images, had made an expedition into Armenia.
and found, in the cities of Melitene and Thessalonic, a great number of Paulicians, his kindred heretics. As a favour, or punishment, he transplanted them from the banks of the Euphrates to Constantinople and Thrace; and by this innovation their doctrine was introduced and diffused in Europe. If the sectaries of the metropolitans were soon mingled with the nation, the nation, those of the country struck a deep root in a foreign soil. The Paulicians of Thrace resisted the storms of persecution, maintained a secret correspondence with their Armenian brethren, and gave aid and comfort to their brethren, who solicited, not without success, the intervention of the faith of the Bulgarians. In the tenth century, they were restored and multiplied by a more powerful colony, which John Zatem in 45 transported from the Cilician hills to the valleys of Mount Hymettus. The Oriental clergy, who would have preserved the destruction, impatiently sighed for the assistance of the Manicheans; the warlike empire had felt and esteemed their valour; their attachment to the Syrian was pregnant with mischief; but, on the side of the Danube, against the barbarians of Scythia, their service might be useful, and their loss would be disastrous. Their exile in a distant land was softened by a free toleration; the Paulicians held the city of Philippopolis and the towns of Thrace; the Catholiki were their subjects; the Jodaic immigrants were admitted; they occupied a line of villages and castles in Macedon and Epirus; and many native Bulgarians were associated to the composition of armed service. As long as they were owed by power and treated with moderation, their voluntary hands were distinguished in the armies of the empire, and the courage of these days, even greedy of war, even thirsty of human blood, was nurtured by astonishment, and almost with reproach, by the palliastinians of Greece. The same spirit rendered them arrogant and ceremonious; they were vastly provoked by captives or injury; and their privileges were often violated by the faithless bigotry of the government and clergy. In the midst of the Norman war, two thousand five hundred Manichæans deserted the standard of Alexius Comnenus, and retired to their native homes. He disseminated all the moment of revenge; he invited the chief to a friendly conference; and punished the innocent and guilty by imprisonment, confiscation, and baptism. In an interval of peace, the emperor undertook the pains of reconciling them to the church and state: his winter-quarters were fixed at Philippopolis; and the thirteenth apostle, as he is styled by his pious daughter, consumed whole days and nights in theological controversy. His arguments were refuted, their obstinacy was melted, by the honours and rewards which he bestowed on the most eminent proselytes; and a new city, surrounded with gardens, enriched with immunities, and dignified with his own name, was founded by Alexius, for the residence of his vulgar converts. The important station of Philippopolis was seized from their hands; the consummation leaders were secured in a dungeon, or banished. From their country and their lives were spared by the prince, rather than the mercy of an emperor, so who command a poor and small band of refugees, was burnt alive, before the church of St Sophia. But the proud hope of establishing the proselytes of a nation was speedily overthrown by the invincible zeal of the Paulicians, who crossed to dissemble or refuse to obey. After the departure and death of Alexius, they soon resumed their civil and religious laws. In the beginning of the thirteenth century, their pope or primate (a manifest corruption) resided on the confines of Bulgaria, Croatia, and Dalmatia, and governed, by his vicars, the ill-salivated congregations of Italy and France. From that era, a minute scrutiny might justify and perpetuate the claim of Paulicianism. At the end of the last age, the sect or colony still inhabited the valleys of Mount Hymettus, where their ignorance and poverty were more frequently tormented by the Greek clergy than by the Turkish government. The modern Paulicians have lost all memory of their origin and their religion is degraded by the worship of the cross, and the practices of bloody sacrifices, which are authorized by the imitations of the wide of Tertullian.

In the West, the first teachers of their new faith were the missionaries of the Manichean theology, who had been expelled and repulsed by the people, or sup.

The fanaticism of the people, the persecution of the government, the massacre of the Marcian, and the persecutions of the Saracens, must be imputed to the strong, though secret, disentention which arose among the most pious Christians against the church of Rome. Her sacrifice was oppressive; her devotion incensed; her innovations were more rapid and scandalous; she had rigorously defined and imposed the doctrine of transubstantiation; the lives of the Latin clergy were more corrupt, and the Eastern bishops might pass for the successors of the apostles, if they were compared with the holy patriarch, who shielded by turns the credo, the sceptre, and the sword. Three different roads might introduce the Paulicians into the heart of Europe. After the conversion of Hungary, the pilgrims who visited Jerusalem might follow the course of the Danube; in their journey and return they passed through Philippopolis; and the sectaries, disposing their name and business, might accompany the French.
or German, came in to their respective countries. The trade and dominion of Venice pervaded the coast of the Adriatic, and the hospitable republic opened her bosom to foreigners of every climate and religion. Under the Byzantine standard, the Paulicians were often transported to the Greek provinces of Italy and Sicily; in peace and war they freely conversed with strangers and nations, and their opinions were blushingly propagated in Rome, Milan, and the Empires beyond the Alps. It was soon discovered that many thousand Catholics of every rank, and of either sex, had embraced the Manichæan heresy; and the flames which consumed twelve camons of Orleans, was the first act and signal of persecution. The Bulgarians, a name so immemorial in its origin, so offensive in its application, spread their branches over the face of Europe. United in common hatred of idolatry and Rome, they were connected by a form of episcopal and presbyterian government; their various sects were discriminated by some flatter or darker shades of theology; but they generally agreed in the two principles, the concept of the Old Testament, and the denial of the body of Christ, either on the ground of the Eucharist. A confusion of simple worship and hallowed names is extorted from their enemies; and so high was their standard of perfection, that the increasing congregations were divided into two classes of disciples, of those who practised, and of those who aspired.

It was in the country of the Albanians, in the southern provinces of Greece, that the Paulicians were most deeply implanted; and the same vices and manners of martyrdom and revenge which had been displayed in the neighbourhood of the Euphrates, were repeated in the thirteenth century on the banks of the Rhone. The laws of the Eastern emperors were revived by Frederick the Second. The insurgents of Tephrice were represented by the barons and cities of Langgönc: pope Innocent the Third surpassed the singularity of those Tudes. It was in cruelty alone that her soldiers could equal the laws of the Crusades, and the cruelty of her priests was far excelled by the founders of the Inquisition; an office more adapted to uniform, than to refute, the belief of an evil principle. The visible assemblies of the Paulicians, or Albionides, were extinguished by fire and sword; and the bleeding remnant escaped by flight, concealment, or Catholic conformity. But the insubstantial spirit which they had kindled still lived and breathed in the Western world. In the state, in the church, and even in the cloister, a latent succession was preserved of the disciples of St. Paul; who protected against the tyranny of Rome, embraced the Bible as the rule of faith, and purified their creed from all the visions of the Gnostic theology. The struggles of Wickliff in England, of Hus in Bohemia, were premature and ineffectual; but the names of Zwinglis, Luther, and Calvin, are pronounced with gratitude as the deliverers of nations.

A philosopher, who calculates the degree of their merit and the value of their reformation, will prudently ask from what articles of faith, when or around our reason, they have emancipated the Christians; for such emancipation is doubtless a benefit so far as it may be compatible with truth and piety. After a fair discussion we shall rather be surprised by the simplicity, than scandalised by the freedom, of our first reformers. With the Jews, they adopted the belief and doctrine of all the Hebrew Scriptures, with all their prologies, from the book of Joshua to the visions of the prophet Isaiah, and they were bound, like the Catholics, to justify against the Jews the abolition of a divine law. In the great mysteries of the Trinity and Incarnation the reformers were severely orthodox; they freely adopted the theology of the four, or the six first councils; and with the Athanasian Creed, they pronounced the eternal damnation of all who did not believe the Catholic faith. Transubstantiation, the invisible change of the bread and wine into the body and blood of Christ, is a tenet that may defy the power of argument and pleasantry; but instead of consulting the evidence of their senses, of their sight, their feeling, and their taste, the first protestants were entangled in these subterfuges, and exalted by the words of Jesus in the institution of the sacrament. Luther maintained a eucharist, and Calvin a real presence of Christ in the eucharist; and the opinion of Zwinglis, that it is no more than a spiritual communion, a simple memorial, has slowly prevailed in the reformed churches.

But the laws of one mystery was amply compensated by the strident DOCTRINE of original sin, redemption, faith, grace, and predestination, which have been stolen from the Epistles of St. Paul. These subtle questions have most assuredly been prepared by the fathers and schoolmen; but the final improvement and popular use may be attributed to the first reformers, who adorned them as the absolute and essential terms of salvation, Catholic and Protestant; and among these five is the most important and necessary.

The fame of Martin Luther, the founder of the Lutheran churches (1483-1546) has been elaborated in a thorough treatment, which has not been the less enthusiastic because the author described as radical and radical church. As we must not attribute the whole history of the Reformation to the name and influence of Luther, so we must not place the responsibility for the descent of this new sect on the shoulders of the King of England. From this point of view, the Lutheran Reformers cannot be considered as the sole or preponderant factor in the Protestant division of the church of England. Indeed, the recent and popular work of Mr. W. Ramsay, "Luther and the English Reformation," has been highly commended by the learned Professor of Divinity in the University of London. Ramsay's History of the Reformation, vol. i. pp. 440-442.
The decline and fall. Hitherto the weight of supernatural belief inclines against the Protestants; and many a sober Christian would rather admit that a wafer is God, than that God is a cruel and capricious tyrant.

Yet the services of Luther and his rivals are solid and important; and the philosopher must own his obligations to these fearless enthusiasts. By their hands the holy fabric of superstitution, from the abuse of indulgences to the intersection of the Virgin, has been levelled with the ground. Myriads of both sexes of the monastic profession were restored to the liberty and labours of social life. An hierarchy of saints and angels, of imperfect and subordinate destinies, were stripped of their temporal powers, and reduced to the enjoyment of celestial happiness: their images and relics were banished from the church; and the crudity of the people was no longer nourished with the daily repetition of miracles and visions. The imitation of Paganism was supplied by a pure and spiritual worship of prayer and thanksgiving, the most worthy of man, the least worthy of the Deity. It only remains to observe, whether such sublime simplicity be consistent with popular devotion; whether the virgin, in the absence of all visible objects, will not be inflamed by enthusiasm, or insensibly subside in languor and indifference. The claim of authority was broken, which restrains the bigot from thinking as he pleases, and the slave from speaking as he thinks; the pope, fathers, and councils were no longer the supreme and infallible judges of the world; and each Christian was taught to acknowledge no law but the Scriptures, no interpreter but his own conscience. This freedom, however, was the consequence, rather than the design, of the reformation. The patriot reformers were ambitious of succeeding the tyrants whom they had dethroned. They imposed with equal rigour their creeds and confessions: they asserted the right of the magistrate to punish heretics with death. The pious or personal animosity of Calvin presided in Servetus 33; the guilt of his own rebellion; and the flames of Smithfield, in which he was afterwards consumed, had been kindled for the Anabaptists by the zeal of Cranmer. 37 The nature of the tiger was the same, but he was gradually deprived of his teeth and fangs. A spiritual and temporal kingdom was possessed by the Roman pontiff; the Protestant doctors were subjects of an humble rank, without revenue or jurisdiction. His decrees were consecrated by the antiquity of the Catholic church; their arguments and disputes were submitted to the people: and their appeal to private judgment was accepted beyond their wishes, by curiosity, and enthusiasm. Since the days of Luther and Calvin, a secret reformation has been silently working in the bosoms of the reformed churches; many saints of prejudice were eradicated; and the disciples of Erasmus 38 diffused a spirit of freedom and moderation. The liberty of conscience has been claims as a common benefit, an inalienable right: 39 the free governments of Holland 40 and England introduced the practice of toleration; and the narrow allowance of the laws has been enlarged by the prudence and humanity of the times. In the exercise, the mind has understood the limits, of its powers, and the words and shadows that might assuage the child can no longer satisfy his nunnest reason. The volumes of controversy are overspread with cabalistic; the doctrine of a Protestant church is far removed from the knowledge or belief of its private members; and the forms of orthodoxy, the articles of faith, are subscribed with a sigh, or a smile, by the modern clergy. Yet the friends of Christianity are alarmed at the blindfold impulse of inquiry and scepticism. The predictions of the Catholics are accomplished: the web of mystery is unravelled by the Arminians, Arians, and Socinians, whose numbers must not be computed from their separate congregations; and the pillars of revelation are shaken by these men who preserve the name without the substance of religion, who indulge the licence without the tamer of philosophy. 41

CHAP. LV.

Under the reign of Constantine the grandson of Heraclius, the ancient barrier of the Danube, so often violated and so often restored, was irretrievably swept away by a new deluge of barbarians. Their progress was favoured by the
null
both the natives and strangers to the practice of
navigation. The boats or brigantines of the
Chinese were constructed after the fashion of the
old Libyans; one hundred and eighty vessels
may excite the idea of a respectable navy; but
our amanuensis will smile at the allowance of ten
twenty, or forty, men for each of these ships
of war. They were gradually converted to the
more honourable service of commerce; yet the
Sclavonian pirates were still frequent and dan-
gnerous; and it was not before the close of the
fourteenth century that the freedom and sovere-
gignty of the Gulf were efficiently vindicated by
the Venetian republic.15 The ancestors of those
Danubian kings were equally removed from the
m unshame of navigation: they dwelt in the
White Cossia, in the inland regions of Slavia
and Little Poland, thirty days' journey, accord-
ing to the Greek computation, from the sea of
darkness.

The glory of the Bulgarians was confined to a narrow scope
both of time and place. In the sixth and tenth centuries, they
reigned to the south of the Danube; but the more powerful
nations that had followed their emigration, re-
pelled all return to the north and all progress in
the west. Yet, in the obscure catalogue of their
exploits, they might boast an honour which had
hitherto been appropriated to the Goths; that of
slaying in battle one of the successors of Augus-
tus and Constantine. The emperor Nica-
ephorus had lost his fame in the Arabian, he lost
his life in the Sclavonian war. In his first
operations he advanced with boldness and suc-
cess into the centre of Bulgaria, and burnt the
capital of the heretics, which was probably no more
than an edifice and village of timber. But, while he
enriched the spoil and refined all orders of twenty
his successors collected their spirits and their
forces; the passage of retreat were inappro-
achably barred; and the trembling Nicaeophors was heard to
exclaim: "Alas, alas! unless we could as
sume the wings of birds, we cannot hope to
escape." Two days he waited his fate in the
inactivity of despair; but, on the morning of the
third, the Bulgarians surprised the camp, and
the Roman prince, with the great officers of the
empire, were slaughtered in their tents. The
body of Valens had been snared from
insult; but the head of Nicaephors was ex-
posed on a spear, and his skull, scarified
with gold, was often replenished in the feats of
victory. The Greeks forwarded the dis-honour
of the throne; but they acknowledged the
just punishment of servitude and cruelty. This savage
cup was deeply stanch in the manner of the
Sclavonian wilderness; but they were softened
before the end of the same century by a peaceful

12 See the account of Christianity in the sixth century, scarce as
John Chrysostomus, Ep. 107, 108, and our comments in the sixth book of
Theophanes, vol. iv. p. 308; the circumstances of the same event are also
related in the Acta Constantinopliae, vol. i. p. 138; and a very eloquent
account is given in Dionysius of Thessalonica, History, p. 169. See also
Theophanes, vol. iv. p. 311. The date of the Christian inroads in Bulgaria
is uncertain. The title of St. Basil, Bishop of Bjelic in Bulgaria, is
attested to by Euthymius, Bishop of Bulgaria, under the name of "Basilos
Euthymios"
13 The representation of the Bulgarians is by some supposed to be a
false, under the influence of the Slavonian, to whom they were supposed to
have been reduced by the gift of the land. It is certain that, and in the times
of Constantine, this nation was called the Bulgarians, and is described by
Dionysius of Thessalonica, History, p. 203. See also Theophanes, vol. iv.
pp. 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311. See also Ptolemaeus, Geography, p. 365;
Stephanus Byzantinus, vol. i. p. 182, 183, 184. See also the remains of
Churches found in the island of Lycabettus. His works in another place,
Staurophora, sect. iv. It was in the time of Constantine, and in the
Sclavonian region.
thousand captives who had been guilty of the delinquency of their country. They were deprived of sight; but one of each hundred a simple
ey was left, that he might conduct his blind country to the presence of their king. Their
king is said to have expired of grief and hunger; the nation was awed by this terrible example;
the Bulgarians were swept away from their settlements, and circumscribed within a narrow
province; the surviving chiefs bequeathed to their children the advice of patience and the duty
of revenge.

II. When the black swarm of
Hungarians first hung over Eu-
rope, about nine hundred years
after the Christian era, they were mistaken
by fear and superstition for the Gog and Magog
of the Scriptures, the scions and forerunners of the
end of the world.17 Since the introduction of
letters, they have explored their own antiquities
with a strong and laudable impulse of patriotic
curiosity.18 Their national criticism can no longer be assuaged with a vain pedigree of Attila
and the Huns; but they complain that their
primitive records have perished in the Tartar
war; that the truth or fiction of their rustic
songs is long since forgotten; and that the
fragments of a rude chronicle19 must be pain-
fully reconciled with the contemporary though
foreign intelligence of the Imperial geogra-
pher.20 Hungary is the national and Oriental
denomination of the Hungarians; but, among
the tribes of Scythia, they are distinguished by
the Greeks under the proper and peculiar name
of Turks, as the descendants of that mighty
people who had conquered and reigned from
China to the Volga. The Polonian nation
preserved a correspondence of trade and unity
with the eastern Turks on the confines of Per-
sia; and after a separation of three hundred
and fifty years, the missionaries of the king of
Hungary discovered and visited their ancient
country near the banks of the Volga. They
were hospitably entertained by a people of
Pagans and savages who still keep the name of
Hungarians; conversed in their native tongue,
recollected a tradition of their long-lost brethren,
and listened with amusement to the marvelous
tales of their new kingdom and religion. The
act of conversion was animated by the interest
of consanguinity; and one of the greatest of
their princes had formed the generous, though
futile, design of replenishing the solitude of
Pannonia by this domestic colony from the

17 A bishop of Würzburg informed the writer that in a season of
plague, four thousand four hundred, the king and queen were the
victims. The king was the first in mortal danger, and the queen
the last to perish. This happened in 1483, and the passage of the
epidemic, was confirmed by the authority of the praeses of the
Diet. The book was printed at Würzburg in 1485. It is not probable
that the historical events of the reign of Henry the Seventh of
England, in 1509, can be received with less credence. The event
was a subject of national importance. The Turks, whose
presence was announced by the death of the valiant Barbarossa,
were on the confines of Hungary. The nation, at the head of
their marshal, had retreated to the river of the upper Tisa. This
torrent was in its course from the mountains of Hungary, and
in its descent traversed the boundary of Poland. The Turks,
according to the account of its Histories, were annihilated by
the Hungarians. The national chronicle of Poland contains a
similar account of the event. The Turk, according to the
chronology of the Turks, has been described as the
predecessor of the Mogul, and as having occupied the
northern provinces of Persia. The Mogul, according to
Bayley, has been described as the successor of the
Turk, and as occupying a portion of the
northern provinces of Persia. The Turk, according to
the authority of the Hungarian historian, was
the conqueror of the Mogul, and as
such occupied the
northern provinces of Persia.

19 See Comenius, Corpus Historiae, p. 76.

20 See Comenius, Corpus Historiae, p. 76.
are widely, though thinly, scattered from the sources of the Oby to the shores of Lapland. The consanguinity of the Hungarians and Laplanders would display the powerful energy of climate on the children of a common parent; the lively contrast between the bold adventurers, who are intoxicated with the wines of the Danube, and the wretched fugitives who are immersed beneath the snows of the polar circle. Arms and freedom have ever been the ruling, though too often the unsuccessful, passion of the Hungarians, who are enslaved by nature with a vigorous constitution of soul and body. Extreme cold has diminished the stature and emaciated the faculties of the Laplanders; and the Arctic tribes, alone among the sons of men, are ignorant of war, and unconscious of human blood; an happy ignorance, if reason and virtue were the guardians of their peace.

It is the observation of the Imperial author of the Tactics, that all the Scythian hordes resembled their Cushites in the pursuits of military life; that they all practised the same means of subsistence, and employed the same instruments of destruction. But he adds, that the two nations of Bulgarians and Hungarians were superior to their brethren, and similar to each other, in the improvements, however rude, of their discipline and government; their visible likeness determines Leo to confound his friends and enemies in one common description; and the picture may be heightened by some strokes from their contemporaries of the tenth century. Except the merit and fame of military prowess, all that is valued by mankind appeared vile and unsuitable to these barbarians, whose native fierceness was stimulated by the consciousness of numbers and freedom. The taste of the Hungarians was of leather, their garments of fur; they shaved their hair, and shortened their faces; in speech they were slow, in action prompt, in treaty pernicious; and they shared the common reproach of barbarians, too ignorant to conceive the importance of truth, too proud to deny or palliate the breach of their most solemn engagements. Their simplicity has been praised; yet they abstained only from the luxury they had never known; whatever they saw, they coveted; their desires were insatiate, and their sole industry was the hand of violence and rapine. By the definition of a pastoral nation, I have recalled a long description of the economy, the warfare, and the government that prevail in that stage of society; I may add, that to fishing, as well as to the chase, the Hungarians were indebted for a part of their subsistence; and since they adopted cultivated the ground, they must, at least in their

new settlements, have sometimes practised a slight and unskilful husbandry. In their excursions, perhaps in their expeditions, the host was accompanied by thousands of sheep and oxen, who increased the cloud of formidable dust, and afforded a constant and wholesome supply of milk and animal food. A plentiful command of forage was the first care of the general, and if the flecks and herds were secure of their pastures, the hardy warrior was alike insensible of danger and fatigue. The confusion of men and cattle that overspread the country exposed their camp to a nocturnal surprise, but not a still winter circuit was occupied by their light cavalry, perpetually in motion to discover and delay the approach of the enemy. After some experience of the Roman tactics, they adopted the use of the sword and spear, the helmet of the soldiery, and the iron broadplate of their shield; but their native and deadly weapon was the Tartar bow; from the earliest infancy, their children and servants were exercised in the double science of archery and horsemanship; their arm was strong; their aim was sure; and in the most rapid career, they were taught to throw themselves backwardly, and to shoot a volley of arrows into the air. In open combat, in secret ambush, in flight, or pursuit, they were equally formidable; an appearance of order was maintained in the foremost rank, but their charge was driven forward by the impetuous pressure of succeeding columns. They pursued, headlong and rash, with loosened reins and hurrice surtiment; if they fell, with real or dissimulated fear, the ardour of a pursuing foe was checked and classified by the habits of irregular speed and sudden evolutions. In the abuse of victory, they astonished Europe, yet starting from the wounds of the Sarracens and the Dano-invasors they rarely asked, and more rarely bestowed: both sexes were accused as equally inaccessible to pity, and their appetite for raw flesh might uncomment the popular tale, that they drank the blood and feasted on the hearts of the slain. Yet the Hungarians were not devoid of those principles of justice and humanity, which nature has implanted in every bosom. The license of public and private injuries was restrained by laws and punishments; and in the security of an open camp, theft is the most tempest and most dangerous offence. Among the barbarians, there were many, whose spontaneous virtue supplied their laws and corrected their manners, who performed the duties, and sympathised with the affections, of social life.

After a long pilgrimage of flight or victory, the Turkish burden approached the common limits of the

[Note: The text is interrupted and does not provide a complete context.]
The Roman Empire.

France and Byzantine empires. Their first conquests and final settlements extended on either side of the Danube above Vienna, below Belgrade, and beyond the measure of the Roman province of Pannonia, or the modern kingdom of Hungary. 22 That ample and fertile land was loosely occupied by the Moravians, a Slavonian name and tribe, which were driven by the invaders into the compass of a narrow province. Charlemagne had stretched a vague and nominal empire as far as the edge of Transylvania; but, after the failure of his legitimate line, the dukes of Moravia forgot their obedience and tribute to the monarchs of Oriental France. The bastard Arnulf was provoked to invite the arms of the Turks: they rushed through the real or figurative wall, which his indiscretion had thrown open; and the king of Germany has been justly reproached as a traitor to the civil and ecclesiastical society of the Christians. During the life of Arnulf, the Hungarians were checked by gratitude or fear; but in the infancy of his son Louis they discovered and invaded Bavaria; and such was their Scythian speed, that in a single day a circuit of fifty miles was stripped and consumed. In the battle of Augsburg the Christians maintained their advantage till the seventh hour of the day; they were deceived and vanquished by the flying stratagems of the Turkish cavalry. The conflagration spread over the provinces of Bavaria, Swabia, and Franconia; and the Hungarians 23 promoted the reign of anarchy, by forcing the stoutest barons to discipline their vessels and fortify their castles. The origin of walled towns is ascribed to this calamitous period; nor could any distance be secure against an enemy, who, almost at the same instant, laid in ashes the Helvetic monastery of St. Gall, and the city of Bremen, on the shores of the northern ocean. Above thirty years the Germanic empire, or kingdom, was subject to the ignominy of tribute; and resistance was disarmed by the menace, the serious and effectual menace, of dragging the women and children into captivity, and of slaughtering the males above the age of ten years. I have neither power nor inclination to follow the Hungarians beyond the Rhine; but I must observe with surprise, that the southern provinces of France were blasted by the tempest, and that Spain, behind her Pyrenees, was astonished at the approach of these formidable strangers. 24

A.D. 298.

The vicinity of Italy had tempted them early inroads; but, from their camp on the Brenas, they beheld with some terror the apparent strength and populousness of the new-discovered country. They requested leave to retire; their request was proudly rejected by the Italian king; and the lives of twenty thousand Christians paid the forfeit of his obstinacy and madness. Among the cities of the West, the royal Pavia was conspicuous in fame and splendour; and the pre-eminence of Rome itself was only derived from the relics of the apostles. The Hungarians appeared; Pavia was in flames; forty-four churches were consumed; and, after the massacre of the people, they spared about two hundred wretches, who had gathered some basheeds of gold and silver (a vague exaggeration) from the smoking ruins of their country. In these annual excursions from the Alps to the neighbourhood of Rome and Capua, the churches, that yet escaped, resounded with a fearful outcry: 25 "O save and deliver us from the arrows of the Hungarians!" But the saints were deaf or inexorable; and the torrent rolled forwards till it was stopped by the extreme land of Calabria. 26 A composition was offered and accepted for the head of each Italian subject; and ten bushels of silver were poured forth in the Turkish camp. But falsehood is the natural antagonist of violence; and the robbers were defrauded both in the numbers of the assessment and the standard of the metal. On the side of the East the Hungarians were opposed in doubtful conflict by the equal arms of the Bulgarians, whose faith forbade an alliance with the Pagans, and whose situation formed the barrier of the Byzantine empire. The barrier was overthrown; the emperor of Constantinople beheld the waving banners of the Turks; and one of their boldest warriors presumed to strike a battle-axe into the golden gate. The arts and treasures of the Greeks diverted the assault; but the Hungarians might boast, in their retreat, that they had imposed a tribute on the spirit of Bulgaria and the majesty of the Caesars. 27 The remote and rapid operations of the same campaign appear to magnify the power and numbers of the Turks; but their courage is most deserving of praise, since a light troop of three or four hundred horse would often attempt and execute the most daring inroads to the gates of Thessalonica and Constantinople. At this disastrous era of the ninth and tenth centuries, Europe was afflicted by a triple scourge, from the North, the East, and the South: the Norman, the Hungarian, and the Saracen, sometimes trod the same ground of desolation; and these savage foes might have been compared by Himmer to the

22 The history omitted for the public defence, but not without accurate researches through the authentic documents of the various nations. The history of the Roman province of Pannonia in the modern kingdom of Hungary, 23 Western Europe described in the Pannonian wars, and the course of events which brought the greatest political consequences to Europe, have been treated by Dr. R. H. Coverdale, in his "History of the Early Christian Church," I. 11. 12. 24 The three holy kings of Arpad, Zoltin, and Tomas, are celebrated in the Lithuanian chronicles, and the history of St. Gallic, the three kings, in which, by his fromness, the males, children, etc. 25 A.D. 299. A.D. 300. The Moravians have remained, in our day, poor and wretched, both from the rigor of their climate, and from the tyranny of their Roman masters. 26 The Moravians have remained, in our day, poor and wretched, both from the rigor of their climate, and from the tyranny of their Roman masters.
two lions growling over the carcass of a mangled stag. The deliverance of Germany and Christendom was achieved by the Saxon princes, Henry the Fowler and Otto the Great, who, in two memorable battles, for ever broke the power of the Hungarians. The valiant Henry was routed from a bed of sickness by the invasion of his country; but his mind was vigorous and his prudence successful. "My companions," said he, on the morning of the combat, "maintain your ranks, receive on your bucklers the first arrows of the Pagan, and prevent their second discharge by the equal and rapid course of your lances." They obeyed and conquered; and the historical picture of the castle of Mersburg expressed the features, or at least the character, of Henry, who, in an age of ignorance, intrusted to the finer arts the perpetuity of his name. At the end of twenty years, the children of the Turks, who had fallen by his sword invoked the empire of his son; and their force is depicted, in the lowest estimate, at one hundred thousand horse.

They were invited by domestic faction; the gates of Germany were truculently unsealed; and they spread, far beyond the Rhine and the Meuse, into the heart of Flanders. But the vigour and prudence of Otto dispelled the conspiracy; the princes were made sensible; that unless they were true to each other, their religion and country were irrecoverably lost; and the national powers were reviewed in the plains of Augsburg. They marched and fought in eight legions, according to the division of provinces and tribes: the first, second, and third, were composed of Bavarians; the fourth of Franconians; the fifth of Saxons, under the immediate command of the monarch; the sixth and seventh consisted of Slavonians; and the eighth legion, of a thousand Bohemians, closed the rear of the host. The resources of discipline and valor were fortified by the arts of deception, which, on this occasion, may deserve the epithets of gusnorus and judicial. The soldiers were furnished with a fast; the camp was blessed with the relics of saints and martyrs; and the Christian hero girded on his side the sword of Constantine, grasped the invincible spear of Charlemagne, and waved the banner of St. Maurice, the protect of the Thuringian legion. But his firmest

confidence was placed in the holy lance, whose point was fashioned of the nails of the cross, and which his father had extorted from the king of Burgundy, by the threats of war, and the gift of a province. The Hungarians were expected in the front; they secretly passed the Lech, a river of Bavaria that falls into the Danube; turned the rear of the Christian army; plundered the luggage, and dispersed the legions of Bohemia and Swabia. The battle was restored by the Franco-Saxons, whose dukes, the valiant Conrad, was pierced with an arrow as he rested from his fatigue: the Saxons fought under the eyes of their king; and his victory surprised, in merit and importance, the triumphs of the last two hundred years. The loss of the Hungarians was still greater in the flight than in the action; they were encompassed by the rivers of Bavaria; and their past cruelties excluded them from the hope of mercy. Three captive princes were hanged at Ratibod, the multitude of prisoners was slain or mutilated, and the fugitives, who presumed to appear in the face of their country, were condemned to everlasting poverty and disgrace. Yet the spirit of the nation was humbled, and the most accessible pass of Hungary was fortified with a ditch and rampart. Adversity suggested the counsels of moderation and peace: the robbers of the Westsequenced in a sedentary life; and the next generation was taught by a discerning prince, that for more might be gained by multiplying and exchanging the produce of a fruitful soil. The native race, the Turkish or Fennic blood, was mingled with new colonies of Scythian or Sclavonian origin; many thousands of robust and industrious captives had been imported from all the countries of Europe; and after the marriage of Gerza, a Bavarian princess, to he bestowed honours and estates on the nobles of Germany. The son of Gerza was invested with the regal titles, and the house of Arpad reigned three hundred years in the kingdoms of Hungary. But the free-born barbarians were not dazzled by the lustre of the diadem, and the people asserted their indefeasible right of choosing, deposing, and punishing the hereditary servant of the state.

III. The name of Hungary was never suffered to be the first divulged, in the ninth century, nor by an embassy from Theophilus, emperor of account of the Bow of Jove, and was assumed with the grace of the benefactor. The Hungarians, who, like the Spaniards, were used to the worship of their Deity, the aurochs, and other quadrupeds, and to the worship of the sun, which was the prayer of their ancestors, were converted to the Catholic faith by the monks and scholars of Leipsic, who had been invited by the king of Hungary, who gave them land and money to build a church. But the name of Hungary was not adopted by the king of Hungary, who, from the term that follows, received the title of Hangu from his subjects. The name of Hungary, which was bestowed on the Hungarians by aad Arab, was adopted by the Hungarians, as they were called by the French, who, from the term that follows, received the title of Hungary from their subjects. The name of Hungary was never suffered to be the first divulged, in the ninth century, nor by an embassy from Theophilus, emperor of Hungary, to the emperor of Byzantium.
the East, to the emperor of the West, Louis, the son of Charlemagne. The Greeks were accompanied by the emigrants of the great duke, or collega, or czar, of the Russians. In their journey to Constantinople, they had traversed many hostile nations; and they hoped to escape the dangers of their return, by requesting the French monarch to transport them by sea to their native country. A closer examination detected their origin: they were the brethren of the Swedes and Norwegians, whose name was already odious and formidable in France; and it might justly be apprehended, that these Russian strangers were not the messengers of peace, but the emissaries of war. They were detained, while the Greeks were dismissed; and Louis expected a more satisfactory account, that he might obey the laws of hospitality or prudence, according to the interest of both empires. This Scandinavian origin of the people, or at least the princes of Russia, may be confirmed and illustrated by the national annals and the general history of the North. The Normans, who had so long been concealed by a veil of impenetrable darkness, suddenly burst forth in the spirit of naval and military enterprise. The vast, and, as it is said, the populous, regions of Denmark, Sweden, and Norway, were crowded with independent chieftains and desperate adventurers, who sighed in the lust of peace, and smiled in the agonies of death. Piracy was the exercise, the trade, the glory, and the virtue, of the Scandinavian youth. Impatient of a bleak climate and narrow limits, they started from the banquet, grasped their arms, sounded their horns, ascended their vessels, and explored every coast that promised either spoil or settlement. The Baltic was the first scene of their naval achievements; they violated the eastern shores, the silent residence of Fennic and Slavonian tribes, and the primitive Russians of the lake Ladoga paid a tribute, the skins of white squirrels, to these strangers, whom they saluted with the title of Varangians or Corsairs. Their superiority in arms, discipline, and renown, commanded the fear and reverence of the natives. In their wars against the more inland savages, the Varangians condescended to serve as friends and auxiliaries, and gradually, by choice or conquest, obtained the dominion of a people whom they qualified to protect.

Their tyranny was expelled, their valour was again recalled, till at length Bricric, a Scandinavian chief, became the father of a dynasty which reigned above seven hundred years. His brothers extended his influence: the example of service and usurpation was imitated by his companions in the southern provinces of Russia; and their establishments, by the usual methods of war and assassination, were cemented into the fabric of a powerful monarchy.

As long as the descendants of The Varangian Ruthen were considered as aliens, or conquerors, they ruled by the sword of the Varangians, distributed estates and subjects to their faithful captains, and supplied their numbers with fresh streams of adventurers from the Baltic coast. But when the Scandinavian chiefs had struck a deep and permanent root into the soil, they mingled with the Russians in blood, religion, and language, and the first Walachian had the merit of delivering his country from these foreign mercenaries. They had seated him on the throne; his riches were insufficient to satisfy their demands; but they listened to his pleasing advice, that they should seek, not a more grateful, but a more wealthy, master; that they should embark for Greece, where, instead of the skins of squirrels, silk and gold would be the recompense of their service. At the same time the Russian prince acknowledged his Byzantine ally to dispense and employ, to recompose and restrain, these insipid children of the North. Contemporary writers have recorded the introduction, name, and character, of the Varangians; each day they rose in confidence and esteem; the whole body was assembled at Constantinople to perform the duty of guard; and their strength was recruited by a numerous band of their countrymen from the island of Thule. On this occasion, the vague appellation of Thule is applied to England; and the new Varangians were a colony of English and Danes who fled from the yoke of the Norman conqueror. The habits of pilgrimage and piracy had approximated the countries of the earth; these exiles were entertained in the Byzantine court; and they preserved, till the last age of the empire, the inheritance of eternally loyalty, and the use of the Danois or English tongue. With their brood and double-edged battle-axes on their shoulders, they attended the Greek emperor to the temple, the senate, and the hippodrome; he slept and feasted under their trusty guard; and the keys of the palace, the treasury, and the capital, were held by the firm and faithful hands of the Varangians.

In the tenth century, the geography of Scythia was extended far beyond the limits of ancient knowledge; and the monarchy of the Russians obtains a vast and conspicuous place in the map of Constantinople. The sons of Bricric were masters of the spacious province of Wolodoum, or Moscow;
and, if they were confined on that side by the borders of the East, their western frontier in those early days was enlarged to the Baltic Sea and the country of the Prussians. Their northern reign ascended above the sixtieth degree of latitude, over the Hyperborean regions, which fancy had peopled with monsters, or confused with eternal darkness. To the south they followed the courses of the Borysthenes, and approached with that river the neighbourhood of the Euxine Sea. The tribes that dwelt, or wandered, in this ample circuit, were obedient to the same conqueror, and insensibly blended into the same nation. The language of Russia is a dialect of the Slavonian; but, in the tenth century, these two modes of speech were different from each other; and, in the Slavonian prevalent in the South, it may be presumed that the original Russians of the North, the primitive subjects of the Varangian chief, were a portion of the Finn race. With the emigration, union, or dissolution, of the wandering tribes, the loom and indefinite picture of the Scythian desert has continually shifted. But the most ancient map of Russia affords some places which still retain their name and position; and the two capitals, Novgorod and Kiev, are coeval with the first age of the monarchy. Novgorod had not yet deserved the epithet of Great, nor the alliance of the Hansatic league, which diffused the streams of opulence and the principles of freedom. Kiev could not yet boast of three hundred churches, an innumerable people, and a degree of greatness and splendour, which was compared with Constantinople by those who had never seen the residence of the Caesars. In their origin, the two cities were: no more than camps or forts, the most convenient stations in which the barbarians might assemble for the occasional business of war or trade. Yet even these assemblies assumed an air of magnificence. As the arts of society, a new breed of cattle was imported from the southern provinces; and the spirit of commercial enterprise pervaded the sea and land from the Baltic to the Euxine, from the mouth of the Odor to the port of Constantinople. In the days of idolatry and barbarism, the Sclevonic city of Julin was frequented and enriched by the Nor- mans, who had prudently secured a free market of purchase and exchange. From this harbour, at the entrance of the Odor, the corsair, or merchant, sailed in forty-three days to the eastern shores of the Baltic; the most distant nations

were intermingled, and the holy groves of Cop- land are said to have been decorated with Oriental and Spanish gold. Between the sea and Novo- gorod an easy intercourse was discovered; in the summer, through a gulf, a lake, and a navigable river; in the winter season, over the hard and level surface of bounding snows. From the neighbourhood of that city, the Russians descended the streams that fall into the Bor- ysthenes; their canoes, of a single tree, were laden with slaves of every age, furs of every species, the spoil of their foe-hires, and the hides of their cattle; and the whole produce of the North was collected and discharged in the magazines of Kiev. The mouth of June was the ordinary season of the departure of the fleet; the timber of the canoes was framed into the oars and benches of more solid and spacious boats; and they proceeded without obstacle down the Bor- ysthenes, as far as the seven or thirteen rocks of rocks, which traverse the bed, and precipitate the waters, of the river. At the more shallow falls it was sufficient to lighten the vessels; but the deeper cataracts were impassable; and the mariners, who dragged their vessels and their slaves six miles over-land, were exposed in the toilsome journey to the robbers of the desert. At the first island below the falls, the Russians celebrated the festival of their escape; at a second, near the mouth of the river, they repaired their shattered vessels for the longer and more perilous voyage of the Black Sea. If they steered along the coast, the Danube was accessible; with a fair wind, they could reach in thirty-six or forty hours the opposite shores of Anatolia; and Constantinople admitted the annual visit of the strangers of the North. They returned at the stated season with a rich cargo of corn, wine, and oil, the manufactures of Greece, and the spices of India. Some of their compan- ymen resided in the capital and provinces; and the national treaties protected the persons, effects, and privileges, of the Russian merchant.

But the same communication which had been opened for the benefit, was soon abused for the injury, of mankind. In a period of two hundred and ninety years, the Russians made four at- tempts to plunder the treasures of Constantin-ople: the event was various, but the motives, the means, and the objects, were the same in these naval expeditions. The Russian traders had
seen the magnificence and raved the luxury of the city of the Cæsars. A marvellous tale, and a scanty supply, excited the desires of their savage countrymen; they envied the gifts of nature which their climate denied; they coveted the works of art which they were too lazy to imitate and too indolent to purchase: the Visigoth princes unfurled the banners of piratical adventure, and their bravest soldiers were drawn from the nations that dwelt in the northern isles of the ocean.  

The image of their naval armaments was revived in the last century, in the fleets of the Cossacks, which issued from the Borysithenes, to navigate the same seas, for a similar purpose.  

The Greek appellation of amf pap, or single canoes, might be justly applied to the bottom of their vessels. It was scooped out of the long stem of a beech or willow, but the slight and narrow foundation was raised and continued on either side with planks, till it attained the length of sixty, and the height of about twelve, feet. These boats were built without a deck, but with two runners and a mast; to move with sails and oars, and to contain from forty to seventy men, with their arms, and provisions of fresh water and salt fish. The first trial of the Russians was made with two hundred boats; but when the national force was exerted, they might arm against Constantinople a thousand or twelve hundred vessels. Their fleet was not much inferior to the royal navy of Agamemnon, but it was magnified in the eyes of fear to ten or fifteen times the real proportion of its strength and numbers. Had the Greek empire been Loaded with foresight to discern, and vigour to prevent, perhaps they might have sealed with a maritime force the mouth of the Borysithenes. Their indulgence abandoned the coast of Anatolia to the calamities of a piratical war, which, after an interval of six hundred years, again infected the Euxine; but as long as the capital was respected, the sufferings of a distant province escaped the notice both of the prince and the historian. The storm which had swept along from the Phasis and Trebizond, at length burst on the Bosphorus of Thrace; a strait of fifteen miles, in which the rude vessels of the Russian might have been stopped and destroyed by a more skilful adversary.  

In their first enterprise thus under the princes of Kiev, they passed without opposition, and occupied the port of Constantinople in the absence of the emperor Michael, the son of Théophillus. Through a crowd of perils, he landed at the palace stairs, and immediately repaired to a church of the Virgin Mary.  

By the advice of the patriarch, he garnished a precious relic, was drawn from the sanctuary and dipped in the sea, and a seasonable tempest, which determined the retreat of the Russians was devoutly ascribed to the mother of God.  

The silence of the Greeks may inspire some doubt of the truth, or at least of the importance, of the second attempt by Oleg; the guardian of the sons of Rurik.  

A strong barrier of arms and fortifications defended the Bosphorus: they were subdued by the usual expedient of drawing the boats over the isthmus, and this simple operation is described in the national chronicles, as if the Russian fleet had sailed over dry land with a brisk and favourable gale. The leader of the third armament, Igor, the son of Rurik, had chosen a moment of weakness and decay, when the naval powers of the empire were employed against the Saracens. But if courage be not wanting, the instruments of defence are seldom deficient. Fifteen broken and decayed galleys were boldly launched against the enemy; but instead of the single tube of Greek fire usually planted on the prow, the sides and masts of each vessel were abundantly supplied with that liquid combustible. The engineers were dexterous; the weather was propitious; many thousand Russians, who chose rather to be drowned than burnt, leaped into the sea, and those who escaped to the Thracian shore were inhumanly slaughtered by the peasants and soldiers. Yet one third of the canoes escaped into shallow water; and the next spring Igor was again prepared to retrieve his disgrace and claim his revenge.  

After a long peace, Jaroslav, the great-grandson of Igor, resumed the same project of a naval invasion. A fleet, under the command of his son, was regrouped at the entrance of the Bosphorus by the same artificial flames. But in the rivalries of pursuit, the vanguard of the Greeks was encompassed by an irresistible multitude of boats and men; their provision of fire was probably exhausted; and twenty-four galleys were either taken, sunk, or destroyed.  

Yet the threats or calamities of a Russian war were more frequently diverted by treaty than by arms. In these naval hostilities, every disadvantage was on the side of the Greeks; their savage enemy afforded no mercy; his poverty promised no spoil; his impenetrable retreat deprived the conqueror of the hopes of revenge; and the pride or weakness of empire induced an opinion, that no honour could be gained or lost in the intercourse with barbarians. At first their demands were high and inadmissible, three pounds of gold for each soldier or mariner of the fleet; the Russian youth adhered to the design of conquest and glory: but the councils of moderation were re-
THE DECLINE AND FALL

Chapter L.V.

By land the Russians were less formidable than by sea; and as they fought for the most part on foot, their irregular legions must often have been broken and overthrown by the cavalry of the Sceytian horsemen. Yet their growing towns, however slight and imperfect, presented a shelter to the subject, and a barrier to the enemy: the monarchs of Kirou, till a fatal partition, assumed the dominion of the North; and the nation from the Volga to the Danube were subdued or repelled by the arms of Tswatlasans, the son of Igor, the son of Oleg, the son of Rurik. The vigour of his mind and body was preserved by the hardships of a military and savage life. W rapt in a bear-skin, Swatoslaus usually slept on the ground, his head reclining on a saddle; his diet was coarse and frugal, and, like the heroes of Homer, his meat (it was often horse-flesh) was broiled or roasted on the coals. The exercise of war gave stability and discipline to his army; and it may be presumed, that no soldier was permitted to transgress the luxury of his chief. By an embassy from Nicephorus, the Greek emperor, he was moved to undertake the conquest of Bulgaria, and a gift of fifteen hundred pounds of gold was laid at his feet to destroy the expense, or reward the toils, of the expedition. An army of sixty thousand men was assembled and embarked; they sailed from the Bosporus to the Danube; their landing was over our heads. The memory of these Arctic fleets that seemed to descend from the polar circle, left a deep impression of terror on the Imperial city. By the vague of every rank, it was asserted and believed, that an equestrian statue in the square of Taurus, was secretly inscribed with a prophecy, how the Russians, in the last days, should become masters of Constantinople.

In our own time, a Russian armament, instead of sailing from the Bosporus, has circumnavigated the continent of Europe; and the Turkish capital has been threatened by a squadron of strong and lofty ships of war, each of which, with its naval science and thundering artillery, could have sunk or scattered an hundred canoes, such as those of their ancestors. Perhaps the present generation may yet behold the accomplishment of the prediction, of a rare prediction, of which the style is unambiguous and the date unquestionable.

Neciphus could no longer expel the mischief which he had introduced; but his throne and wife were infected by John Zimisces, who, in a diminutive body, possessed the spirit and abilities of an hero. The first victory of his lieutenants deprived the Russians of their foreign allies, twenty thousand of whom were either destroyed by the sword, or provoked to revolt, or tempted to desert. Thrace was delivered, but seventy thousand barbarians were still in arms: and the legions that had been recalled from the new conquests of Syria, prepared, with the return of the spring, to march under the banners of a warlike prince, who declared himself the friend and avenger of the injured Bulgaria. The passes of Mount Hauns had been left unguarded; they were instantly occupied; the Roman vanguard was smothered of the immortals (a proud imitation of the Persians style); the emperor led the main body of ten thousand five hundred feet; and the rest of his forces followed in slow and cautious array, with the baggage and military engines. The first exploit

---

33. See the Life of Constantine by S. Leporopoli, editor, p. 231. As at the time of the battle of Leuctra, and whose name was given to Mount Hauns. The name was suggested by the Locari, a tribe which abounded in that country. The battle was fought near the town of Milvis (p. 182. 187. 189. Limborum, C. p. 420). The story of the Capture of the city of Strasburg and the capture of Hibernus, as narrated by the writer, seems to have been written by the year 1200. They are found in the second chapter of the Life of C. p. 238. 239.

34. The name of Swatoslaus is derived from Svarog, the fire god, or Svarogonchicba, as inscribed on the Russian Chronicle by M. Leporopoli, editor, as Novgorod, p. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270.

35. The Russians are said by many authors in the sixth book of the

Effect on the Mount Hauns shore; and, after a sharp encounter, the swords of the Russians prevailed against the arrows of the Bulgarian horse. The vanquished king sunk into the grave; his children were made captives; and his dominions, as far as Mount Hauns, were subordinated or ravaged by the northern invaders. But instead of relinquishing his prey, and performing his engagements, the Varangian prince was more disposed to advance than to retire; and, had his ambition been crowned with success, the seat of empire in that early period might have been transferred to a more temperate and fruitful climate. Swatoslaus enjoyed and acknowledged the advantages of his new position, in which he could unite, by exchange or rapine, the various productions of the earth. By an easy navigation he might draw from Russia the native commodities of furs, wax, and hydromel. Hungary supplied him with a breed of horses and the spoils of the West; and Greece abounded with gold, silver, and the foreign luxuries, which his poverty had affected to disdain. The bands of Patzianics, Chorsars, and Turks, repelled to the standard of victory; and the ambassador of Nicephorus betrayed his trust, assumed the purple, and promised to share with his new allies the treasures of the Eastern world. From the banks of the Danube the Russian prince pursued his march as far as Adrianople; a formal summons to evacuate the Roman province was dismissed with contempt; and Swatoslaus freely replied, that Constantinople might soon expect the presence of an enemy and a master.
of Zimices was the reduction of Marciopolis, or Perschihia, in two days; the trumpets sounded; the walls were scaled; eight thousand live horses, and seven thousand white Russians were put to the sword; and the sons of the Bulgarian king were carried from an ignominious prison, and invested with a nominal diadem. After these repeated losses, Swatoslaus retired to the strong post of Dristra, on the banks of the Danube, and was pursued by an enemy who alternately employed the arms of celerity and delay. The Byzantine galleys ascended the river; the legions completed a line of circumvallation; and the Russian prince was encompassed, assailed, and famished, in the fortifications of the camp and city. Many deeds of valour were performed; several desperate sallies were attempted; nor was it till after a siege of sixty-five days that Swatoslaus yielded to his adverse fortunes. The liberal terms which he obtained announce the prudence of the victor, who respected the valour, and apprehended the despair, of an unconquered mind. The great duke of Russia bound himself, by solemn imprecations, to relinquish all hostile designs; a safe passage was opened for his return; the liberty of trade and navigation was restored; a measure of corn was distributed to each of his soldiers; and the allowance of twenty-two thousand measures attests the loss and the remnant of the barbarians. After a painful voyage, they again reached the mouth of the Borysthenes; but their provisions were exhausted, the season was unfavourable; they passed the winter on the ice; and, before they could prosecute their march, Swatoslaus was surprised and oppressed by the neighbouring tribes, with whom the Greeks entertained a perpetual and useful correspondence. Far different was the return of Zimices, who was received in his capital like Camillus or Marinos, the saviours of ancient Rome. But the merit of the victory was attributed by the pious emperor to the mother of God; and the image of the Virgin Mary, with the divine infant in her arms, was placed on a triumphal car, adorned with the spoils of war, and the ensigns of Bulgarian royalty. Zimices made his public entry on horseback; the diadem on his head, a crown of laurel in his hand; and Constantinople was astonished to applaud the martial virtues of her sovereign.

Patriarch of Constantinople, a

constant appeal was made to his curiosity, congratulated himself and the Greek church on the conversion of the Russians. These fierce and bloody barbarians had been persuaded by the voice of reason and religion, to acknowledge Jesus for their God, the Christian missionaries for their teachers, and

the Romans for their friends and brethren. His triumph was transient and premature. In the various fortunes of their picaresque adventures, some Russian chiefs might allow themselves to be sprinkled with the waters of baptism; and a Greek bishop, with the name of metropolitan, might administer the sacraments in the church of Kiev, to a congregation of slaves and natives. But the seed of the Gospel was sown on a barren soil; many were the apostates, the converts were few; and the baptism of Olga may he fixed as the axis of Russian Christian history. A female, perhaps of the lowest origin, who could revenge the death, and assume the sceptre, of her husband Igor, must have been endowed with the active virtues which commanded the fear and obedience of barbarians. In a moment of foreign and domestic peace, she sailed from Kiev to Constantinople; and the emperor Constantine Porphyrogenitus has described, with minute diligence, the ceremonial of her reception in his capital and palace. The steps, the titles, the salutations, the banquet, the presents, were exquisitely adjusted, to gratify the vanity of the stranger, with the reverence to the superior majesty of the purple. In the sacrament of baptism, she received the venerable name of the emperor Helena; and her conversion might be preceded or followed by her uncle, two interpreters, sixteen slaves of a higher, and eighteen of a lower rank, twenty-two domestics or mulattoes, and forty-four Russian merchants, who composed the retinue of the great princess Olga. After her return to Kiev and Novgorod, she firmly persisted in her new religion; but her labours in the propagation of the Gospel were not crowned with success; and both her family and nation adhered with obstinacy or indolence to the gods of their fathers. Her son Swatoslaus was apprehensive of the scorn and ridicule of his companions; and her grandson Volodimirovitch devoted his youthful zeal to multiply and decorate the monuments of ancient worship. The savage defiles of the North were still propitiated with human sacrifices: in the choice of the victim, a citizen was preferred to a stranger, a Christian to an idolater; and the father, who defended his son from the sacred knife, was involved in the storm by the rage of a fanatic tumult. Yet the humours and example of the pious Olga had made a deep, though secret, impression on the minds of the prince and people; the Greek missionaries continued to preach, to dispute, and to baptize; and the ambassadors or merchants of Russia compared the idolatry of the woods with the elegant superintendence of the woods and the elegant superintendence of

the two chief subjects of this chapter. For a description of the two chief subjects of this chapter, see the conclusions of the preceding and the following sheets. The reader will find the conclusion of the preceding sheet on p. 287; of the present, on p. 318; and of the following, on p. 344. For the chief of these subjects, see the conclusions of the preceding and the following sheets. For the chief of these subjects, see the conclusions of the preceding and the following sheets.
the dome of St. Sophia; the lively pictures of saints and martyrs, the riches of the altar, the number and restraint of the priests, the pomport and order of the ceremonies; they were edified by the alternate succession of devout silence and harmonious song; nor was it difficult to persuade them, that a choir of angels descended each day from heaven to join in the devotion of the Christians. But the conversion of Wolodomir was determined, or hastened, by his desire of a Roman bride. At the same time, and in the city of Chernison, the rites of baptism and marriage were celebrated by the Christian pontiff; the city he restored to the emperor Basil, the brother of his spouse; but the husband gates were transported, as it is said, to Novgorod, and erected before the first church as a trophy of his victory and faith. At his despot's command, Peroum, the god of thunder, whom he had so long adored, was dragged through the streets of Kiow; and twelve sturdy barbarians battered with clubs the misshapen image, which was indignantly cast into the waters of the Boryshtenes. The edict of Wolodomir had proclaimed, that all who should refuse the rites of baptism would be treated as the enemies of God and their prince; and the rivers were instantly filled with many thousands of obedient Russians, who acquired in the truth and excellence of a doctrine which had been embraced by the great duke and his buyers. In the next generation, the relics of Paganism were finally extinguished; but as the two brothers of Wolodomir had died without baptism, their bones were taken from the grave, and mistitled by an irregular and posthumous sacrament.

The ninth, tenth, and eleventh centuries of the Christian era, the reign of the Gospel and of the church, were extended over Bulgaria, Hungary, Roumania, Saxony, Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Poland, and Russia. The examples of apostolic zeal were repeated in the innumerable ages of Christianity; and the northern and eastern regions of Europe submitted to a religion, more different in theory than in practice, from the worship of their native idols. A laudable ambition excited the monks, both of Germany and Greece, to visit the tents and huts of the barbarians: poverty, hardships, and dangers, were the lot of the first missionaries; their courage was active and patient; their motive pure and meritorious: their present reward consisted in the testimony of their conscience and the respect of a grateful people; but the fruitful harvest of their toils was inherited and enjoyed by the proud and wealthy prelates of succeeding times. The first conversions were free and spontaneous: an holy life and an eloquent tongue were the only arms of the missionaries; but the domestic vices of the Pagan were silenced by the miracles and visions of the strangers; and the favourable temper of the chiefs was accelerated by the dictates of religion and interest. The leaders of nations, who were saluted with the titles of kings and saints, held it lawful and pious to impose the Catholic faith on their subjects and neighbours: the coast of the Baltic, from Holstein to the Gulf of Finland, was invaded under the standard of the cross; and the reign of idolatry was closed by the conversion of Lithuania in the fourteenth century. Yet truth and candour must acknowledge, that the conversion of the North imparted many temporal benefits both to the old and the new Christians. The rage of war, inherent to the human species, could not be healed by the evangelical decrees of charity and peace; and the ambition of Catholic princes has renewed in every age the calamities of hostile contention. But the admission of the barbarians into the pale of civil and ecclesiastical society delivered Europe from the depredations, by sea and land, of the Normans, the Hungarians, and the Russians, who learned to spare their brethren and cultivate their possessions. The establishment of law and order was promoted by the influence of the clergy; and the rudiments of art and science were introduced into the savage countries of the globe. The liberal piety of the Russian princes engaged in their service the most skilful of the Greeks, to decorate the cities and instruct the inhabitants; the dome and the paintings of St. Sophia were rudely copied in the churches of Kiow and Novgorod; the writings of the fathers were translated into the Slavonic idiom; and three hundred noble youths were invited or compelled to attend the lessons of the college of Jarolais. It should appear that Russia might have derived an early and rapid improvement from her peculiar connection with the church and state of Constantinople, which in that age so justly despised the ignorance of the Latins. But the Byzantine nation was servile, military, and verging to an humble decline; after the fall of Kiow, the navigation of the Boryshtenes was forgotten; the great princes of Wolodomir and Moscow were separated from the sea and Christendom; and the divided monarchy was oppressed by the ignominy and blindness of Tartar servitude. The Slavonic and Scandinavian kingdoms, which had been converted by the Latin missionaries, were exposed, it is
true, to the spiritual jurisdiction and temporal claims of the popes; but they were united, in language and religious worship, with each other, and with Rome; they imbued the free and generous spirit of the European republic, and gradually shared the light of knowledge which shone on the Western world.

CHAP. LVI.


The three great nations of the world, the Greeks, the Saracens, and the Franks, encountered each other on the theatre of Italy. The southern provinces, which now compose the kingdom of Naples, were subject, for the most part, to the Lombard dukes and princes of Beneventum; so powerful in war, that they checked for a moment the genius of Charlemagne; so liberal in peace, that they maintained in their capital an academy of thirty-two philosophers and grammarians. The division of this flourishing state produced the rival principalities of Benevento, Salerno, and Capua; and the thoughtless ambition or revenge of the conquerors invited the Saracens to the ruin of their common inheritance. During a calamitous period of two hundred years, Italy was exposed to a repetition of wounds, which the invaders were not capable of healing by the union and tranquillity of a perfect conquest. Their frequent and almost annual squadrons issued from the port of Palermo, and were entertained with too much indulgence by the Christians of Naples; the more formidable fleets were prepared on the African coast; and even the Arabs of Andalusia were sometimes tempted to assist or oppose the Moslems of an adverse sect. In the revolution of human events, a new ambuscade was-concealed in the Canute ports, the fields of Causus were belted a second time with the blood of the Africans, and the sovereign of Rome again attacked or defended the walls of Capua and Tarrentum. A colony of Saracens had been planted at Bari, which commands the entrance of the Adriatic Gulf; and their imperial depredations provoked the resentment, and constituted

the union, of the two emperors. An offensive alliance was concluded between Basil the Macedonian, the first of his race, and Lewis the great-grandson of Charlemagne; and each party supplied the deficiencies of his associate. It would have been imprudent in the Byzantine monarch to transport his stationary troops from Asia to an Italian campaign; and the Latin arms would have been insufficient if his superior navy had not occupied the mouth of the Gulf. The fortress of Bari was invested by the infantry of the Franks, and by the cavalry and galleys of the Greeks: and, after a defence of four years, the Arabian emir submitted to the clemency of Lewis, who commanded in person the operations of the siege. This important conquest had been achieved by the concord of the East and West; but their recent unity was soon embittered by the mutual complaints of jealousy and pride. The Greeks assumed as their own the merit of the conquest and the possession of the triumph; exalted the greatness of their power, and affected to deride the intrepitude and spirit of the handful of barbarians who appeared under the banners of the Carolingians. His reply is expressed with the eloquence of indignation and truth: "We confess the magnitude of your preparations," says the great-grandson of Charlemagne, "Your armies were indeed as numerous as a cloud of summer locusts, who darken the day, flay their wings, and, after a short flight, tumble weary and breathless to the ground. Like them, ye sunk after a Subtle effort; ye were vanquished by your own cowardice; and withdrew from the scene of action to injure and despoil our Christian subjects of the Sclavonian coast. We were few in number, and why were we few? because, after a tedious expectation of your arrival, I had dismissed my host, and retained only a chosen band of warriors to continue the blockade of the city. If they indulged their hospitable feasts in the face of danger and death, did these facts alter the vigour of their enterprise? Is it by your fasting that the walls of Bari have been overturned? Did not those valiant Franks, dismissed as they were by hunger and fatigue, intercept and vanquish the three most powerful emirs of the Saracens? and did not their defeat precipitate the fall of the city? Bari is now fallen; Tarrentum troubles; Calabria will be delivered; and, if we command the sea, the island of Sicily may be rescued from the hands of the infidels. My brother (a name most offensive to the vanity of the Greek), accelerate your naval succours, respect your allies, and distrust your flatterers."
These lofty hopes were soon extinguished by the death of Lewis, and the decay of the Carolingian house; and whoever might deserve the honour, the Greek emperors, Basil, and his son Leo, secured the advantage, of the reduction of Bari. The Italians of Apulia and Calabria were persuaded or compelled to acknowledge their supremacy, and an ideal line from Mount Garganum to the Bay of Salerno leaves the far greater part of the kingdom of Naples under the dominion of the Eastern empire. Beyond that line, the dukedoms or republics of Amalfi, and Naples, who had never forfeited their voluntary allegiance, rejoiced in the neighbourhood of their lawful sovereign; and Amalfi was enriched by supplying Europe with the produce and manufactures of Asia. But the Lombard princes of Benevento, Salerno, and Capua, were reluctantly turned from the communion of the Latin word, and too often violated their oaths of servitude and tribute. The city of Bari rose to dignity and wealth, as the metropolis of the new theme or province of Lombardy; the title of patriarch, and afterwards the singular name of Catapan, was assigned to the supreme governor; and the policy both of the church and state was modelled in exact subordination to the throne of Constantinople. As long as the sceptre was disputable by the princes of Italy, their efforts were fertile and adverse; and the Greeks resisted or eluded the forces of Germany, which descended from the Alps under the imperial standard of the Othos. The first and greatest of these Saxon princes was compelled to relinquish the siege of Bari, the second, after the loss of his stoutest bishops and barons, escaped with honour from the bloody field of Crotone.

On that day the scale of war was turned against the Franks by the valor of the Saracens. These corsairs had indeed been driven by the Byzantine fleets from the fortresses and coasts of Italy; but a sense of interest was more prevalent than superstition or resentment, and the caliph of Egypt had transported forty thousand Moslems to the aid of his Christian ally. The successors of Basil amused themselves with the belief, that the conquest of Lombardy had been achieved, and was still preserved, by the justice of their laws, the virtues of their ministers, and the gratitude of a people whom they had rescued from anarchy and oppression. A series of rebellions might dast a ray of truth into the palace of Constantinople; and the illusions of flattery were dispelled by the easy and rapid success of the Norman adventurers.

The revolution of human affairs had produced in Apulia and Calabria, a melancholy contrast between the age of Pythagoras and the tenth century of the Christian era. At the former period, the coast of Great Greece (as it was then styled) was planted with free and opulent cities; these cities were peopled with soldiers, artists, and philosophers; and the military strength of Tarasuntum, Sybaris, or Crotone, was not inferior to that of a powerful kingdom. At the second era, these once flourishing provinces were clouded with ignorance, impoverished by tyranny, and depopulated by barbarian war; nor can we severely accuse the exaggeration of a contemporary, that a fair and ample district was reduced to the same desolation which had covered the earth after the general deluge. Among the hostilities of the Arabs, the Franks, and the Greeks, in the southern Italy, I shall select two or three anecdotes expressive of their national manners.

1. It was the amusement of the Saracens to profane, as well as to pillage, the monasteries and churches. At the siege of Salerno, a Mussulman chief spread his couch on the communion-table, and on that altar sacrificed each night the virgins of a Christian nun. As he wrestled with a reluctant maid, a beam in the roof was accidentally or dexterously thrown down on his head; and the death of the lustful emir was imputed to the wrath of Christ, which was at length awakened to the defence of his faithful spouse.

2. The Saracens besieged the cities of Beneventum and Capua; after a vain appeal to the successors of Charlemagne, the Lombards implored the intercession and aid of the Greek emperor. A fearless citizen dropped from the walls, passed the intrenchments, accomplished his commission, and fell into the hands of the barbarians, as he was returning with the welcome news. They commanded him to assist their enterprise, and deceive his countrymen, with the assurance that wealth and honour should be the reward of his falsehood, and that his sincerity would be punished with immediate death. He assented to yield, but as soon as he was conducted within hearing of the Christians on the rampart, "Friends and brethren," he cried with a loud voice, "lay hold and patient, maintain the city; your sovereign is informed of your distress, and your deliverers are at hand. I know my doom, and commit my wife and children in your care.

Footnotes:
8 See an excellent Observation on Eastern Amalicia, in the Appendix to the Thesaurus Historiarum Francorum (Cologne, 1723, p. 454).
9 For the history of the Norman princes in Italy, five great and prominent points may be mentioned: their military operations; their civil and ecclesiastical establishme
gratitude." The rage of the Arabs confirmed his evidence; and the self-devoted patriot was transmuted with an hundred sparks. He deserves to live in the memory of the virtuous, but the repetition of the same story in ancient and modern times, may sprinkle some doubts on the reality of this generous deed. 12

3. The recital of a third incident may provoke a smile amidst the horrors of war. Theobald, marquis of Camerio and Spoleto, supported the rebel of Beneventum; and his wanton cruelty was not incompatible in that age with the character of an hero. His captives of the Greek nation or party were castrated without mercy, and the outrage was aggravated by a cruel jest, that he wished to present the emperor with a supply of cummulus, the most precious ornaments of the Byzantine court. The garrison of a castle had been defeated in a sally, and the prisoners were sentenced to the customary operation. But the sacrifice was disturbed by the intrusion of a frantic female, who, with bleeding cheeks, dishevelled hair, and importunate clamours, compelled the marquis to listen to her complaint. 13 Is it thus," she cried, ye magnanime heroes, that ye wage war against women, against women who have never injured ye, and whose only arms are the distaff and the loom?" Theobald denied the charge, and protested, that since the Amalas, he had never heard of a female war. "And how," she fiercely exclaimed, "can you attack us more directly, how can you wound us in a more vital part, than by robbing our husbands of what we most dearly cherish, the source of our joys, and the hope of our posterity? The plunder of our flocks and herds I have endured without a murmur, but this fatal injury, this irreparable loss, subdues my patience, and calls a solemn on the justice of heaven and earth." A general laugh applauded her eloquence; the savage Franks, inaccessible to pity, were moved by her ridicule, yet rational, despair; and with the delivcrance of the captives, she obtained the restitution of her effects. As she returned in triumph to the castle, she was overtaken by a messenger, to require, in the name of Theobald, what punishment should be inflicted on her husband, were he again taken in arms? Should he suffer," she answered without hesitation, "be his guilt and misfortune, he has eyes, and a nose, and hands, and feet. These are his own, and these he may deserve to forfeit by his personal offences. But let my lord be pleased to spare what his little handful presumes to claim as her peculiar and lawful property." 14

The establishment of the Normans in the kingdom of Naples and Sicily, 15 is an event most romantic 4. D. 1061. in its origin, and in its consequences most important both to Italy and the Eastern empire. The broken provinces of the Greeks, Lombards, and Saracens, were exposed to every invader, and every sea and land were invaded by the adventurous spirit of Scandinvian pirates. After a long indulgence of rapine and slaughter, a fair and ample territory was accepted, occupied, and named, by the Normans of France; they renounced their gods for the God of the Christians; 16 and the dukes of Normandy acknowledged themselves the vassals of the successors of Charlemagne and Capet. The savage Saracens, which they had brought from the snowy mountains of Norway, was refined, without being corrupted, is a warmer climate; the companions of Rollo insensibly mingled with the natives; they imbibed the manners, language, 17 and gallantry, of the French nation; and, in a martial age, the Normans might claim the palm of valour and glorious achievements. Of the fashionable superstitions, they embraced with ardour the pilgrimages of Rome, Italy, and the Holy Land. In this active devotion, their minds and bodies were invigorated by exercise; danger was the incentive, novelty the recompense; and the prospect of the world was decorated by wonder, credulity, and ambitious hope. They conferred for their mutual defence: and the robbers of the Alps, who had been allured by the garb of a pilgrim, were often chastised by the arm of a warrior. In one of these pious visits to the cavern of Mount Garanus in Apulia, which had been sanctified by the appearance of the archangel Michael, 18 they were accosted by a stranger in the Greek habit, but who soon revealed himself as a rebel, a fugitive, and a mortal foe of the Greek empire. His name was Melo; a noble citizen of Bari, who, after an unsuccessful revolt, was compelled to seek new allies and avengers of his country. The bold appearance of the Normans revived his hopes and solicited his confidence; they listened to the complaints, and still more to the promises, of the patriot. The assurance of wealth demonstrated the justice of his cause; and they viewed, as the inheritance of the brave,
THE DECLINE AND FALL

THE DEATH AND FALL OF JUSTINIAN

and dignity to the Byzantine annals; twenty thousand of their best troops were lost in a single expedition; and the victorious Moslems derided the policy of a nation which intrusted such a command not only with the custody of their women, but with the command of their men. After a reign of two hundred years, the Saracens were ruined by their divisions. The emir disclaimed the authority of the king of Tunis; the people rose against the emir; the cities were usurped by the chieftains; each meaner rebel was independent in his village or castle; and the weaker of two rival brothers implored the friendship of the Christians. In every service of danger the Normans were prompt and useful; and five hundred knights, or warriors on horseback, were enrolled by Annulli, the agent and interpreter of the Greeks, under the standard of Manfred, governor of Lombardy. Before their landing, the brothers were reconciled; the union of Sicily and Africa was restored; and the island was guarded to the water's edge. The Normans led the van, and the Arabs of Mesina felt the value of an entrained foe. In a second action, the emir of Tyraceus was authorized and transported by the town-arms of William of Hateville. In a third engagement, his intrepid companions discomfited the host of sixty thousand Saracens, and left the Greeks more than the labour of the pursuit: a splendid victory; but of which the pen of the historian may divinethe merit with the lance of the Normans. It is, however, true, that they essentially promoted the success of Manfred, who reduced thirteen cities, and the greater part of Sicily, under the obedience of the emperor. But his military fame was sullied by ingratitude and tyranny. In the division of the spoil, the shares of the brave auxiliaries were forgotten; and neither their services nor their price could break this injurious treatment. They complained, by the mouth of their interpreter; their complaint was disregarded; their interpreter was scourged; the sufferers were fed, the insult and resentment belonged to those without whose sentiments he had delivered. Yet they dissembled till they had obtained, or stolen, a safe passage to the Italian continent: their brothers of Aversa sympathized in their indignation, and the province of Apulia was invaded as the forfeit of the deed. Above twenty years after the first emigration, the Normans took the field with no more than seven hundred horse and five hundred foot; and after the recall of the Byzantine regiments from the Sicilian war, their numbers are magnified to the amount of three thousand men. Their herald proposed the option of battle or retreat; "of battle," was the unanimous cry of the Normans; and one of their
The Normans of Apulia were sent on the verge of the two
empires; and, according to the
cycle of the hour, they accepted the investiture
of their lands from the sovereigns of Germany
or Constantinople. But the firmest title of
these adventurers was the right of conquest:
they neither loved nor trusted; they were
neither trusted nor beloved: the contempt
of the princes was mixed with fear, and the
fear of the native was mingled with hatred
and resentment. Every object of desire, a
horse, a woman, a garden, tempted and
gratified the rapaciousness of the strangers;
and the avarice of their chiefs was only coloured
by the more specious names of ambition and
glory. The twelve counts were sometimes joined in
a league of injustice: in their domestic quarrels
they displayed the spoils of the people: the
virtues of William were buried in his grave;
and Drogo, his brother and successor, was better
qualified to lead the valour, than to restrain
the violence of his peers. Under the reign of
Constantine Monnachus, the policy, rather
than benevolence, of the Byzantine court,
tried to relieve Italy from this silvery
mischief, more grievous than a flood
of barbarians; 55 and Argyrus, the son of Melo,
as bribes for this purpose with the most lofty
titles 56 and the most ample commission.
The memory of his father might recommend him to
the Normans; and he had already engaged
their voluntary service to quell the revolt of
Mansisco, and to avenge their own and the
public injury. It was the design of Constantine
to transplant this warlike colony from the
Italian provinces to the Persian war; and the
sons of Melo distributed among the chiefs the
gold and manufactures of Greece, as the first
fruits of the Imperial bounty. But his arts
were baffled by the sense and spirit of the
conquerors of Apulia: his gifts, or at least his
proposals, were rejected; and they unanimously
refused to relinquish their possessions and their
hopes for the distant prospect of Asiatic fortune.
After the means of persuasion had
failed, Argyrus resolved to compel
or to destroy: the Latin powers A.D. 1044-1047.
were solicited against the common enemy; and
an offensive alliance was formed of the pope
and the two emperors of the East and West.
The throne of St. Peter was occupied by Leo
the Ninth, a simple saint, 57 of a temper most
submissive of the Normans either; though they might impinge from Norma

14. The Norman's

15. The Norman's

16. Argyrus, son of Melo.

17. The Norman's

18. Leo the Ninth, a simple saint, of a temper most

19. The Norman's

20. The Norman's

21. The Norman's

22. The Norman's

23. The Norman's
apt to deceive himself and the world, and whose venerable character would consecrate with the name of piety the measures least compatible with the practice of religion. His humanity was affected by the complaints, perhaps the calamities, of an injured people; the Inquisition Normans had interrupted the payment of the taxes; and the temporal sword might be lawfully unsheathed against the sacrilegious robbers, who were dear to the enemies of the church. As a German of noble birth and royal descent, Louis had free access to the court and confidence of the emperor. Henry the Third; and in search of arms and allies, his artful soul transported him from Apulia to Saxony, from the Elbe to the Tyber. During these hostile preparations, Argus indulged himself in the use of secret and guilty weapons: a crowd of Normans became the victims of public or private revenge; and the gallant Boho was murdered in a church. But his spirit survived in his brother Humphrey, the third count of Apulia. The assassins were chastised; and the son of Malo, overthrown and wounded, was driven from the field to hide his shame behind the walls of Bar. And to await the tardy succour of his allies.

But the power of Constantine was distracted by a Turkish war; the mind of Henry was feeble and irresolute; and the pope, instead of repulsing the Alps with a German army, was accompanied only by a guard of seven hundred Swabians and some volunteers of Lorain. In his long progress from Mantua to Beneventum, a vile and precipitous multitude of Italians was enrolled under the holy standard: the priest and the robber slept in the same tent; the pikes and crosses were intermingled in the front; and the martial spirit repeated the lessons of his youth in the order of march, of encampment, and of combat. The Normans of Apulia could muster in the field no more than three thousand horse, with an handful of infantry; the detection of the native intercepted their provisions and retreat; and their spirit, incapable of fear, was chilled for a moment by superstitious awe. On the hostile approach of Leo, they knelt, without disgrace or reluctance, before their spiritual father. But the pope was inexorable; his lofty Germans affected to derive the diminished stature of their adversaries; and the Normans were informed that death or exile was their only alternative. Flight they disdained, and, as many of them had been three days without tasting food, they embraced the assurance of a more easy and honourable death. They climbed the hill of Civitella, descended into the plain, and charged in three divisions the army of the pope. On the left, and in the centre, Richard count of Aversa, and Robert the famous Guiscard, attacked, broke, routed, and pursued the Italian multitude, who fought without discipline, and fled without shame. A harsher trial was reserved for the valour of count Humphrey, who led the cavalry of the right wing.

The Normans have been described as usurious in the management of the horse and lance; but on foot they formed a strong and impenetrable phalanx; and neither man, nor steel, nor armours, could resist the weight of their long and two-handed swords. After a severe conflict, they were accompanied by the squadrons returning from the pursuit; and died in their ranks, with the oaths of their foes, and the satisfaction of revenge. The gates of Civitella were shut against the flying pope, and he was only taken by the pious conquerors, who knew his feet, to implore his blessing and the avowal of their sinful victory. The soldiers besieg'd in their enemy and captives the viceroy of Christ; and, though we may suppose the policy of the bishops, it is probable that they were infected by the popular superstition. In the calm of retirement, the well-meaning pope deplored the effusion of Christian blood, which must be imputed to his account: he felt that he had been the author of sin and scandal; and as his understanding had faltered, the iniquity of his military character was universally condemned. With these dispositions, he listened to the offer of a beneficial treaty; deserted an alliance which he had preserved as the cause of God; and ruffled the past and future careers of the Normans. By whatever hand they had been murmed, the provinces of Apulia and Calabria were part of the donation of Constantine and the patrimony of St. Peter; the grant and the acceptance confirmed the mutual claims of the pontiff and the adventurers. They promised to support each other with spiritual and temporal arms; a tribute of quit-rent of twelve-pence was afterwards stipulated for every plough-land; and since this memorable transaction, the kingdom of Naples has remained above seven hundred years a fief of the Holy See. The pedigree of Robert Guiscard is variously deduced from the peasants and the dukes of Normandy; from the peasants, by the...
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

peide and ignorance of a Greek princess; from the dukes, by the ignorance and dilatory of the Italian subjects. His genuine descent may be ascribed to the second or middle state of private nobility. He sprung from a race of veterans or homines of the dioceses of Constance, in the Lower Normandy; the state of Hauville was their honourable seat; his father Taureal was conspicuous in the court and army of the duke; and his military service was furnished by ten soldiers or knights. Two marriages, of a rank not unworthy of his own, made the father of twelve sons, who were educated in the arts by the impartial tenderness of his second wife. But a narrow patrimony was insufficient for this numerous and daring progeny; they saw around the neighbourhood the miseries of poverty and discord, and resolved to seek in foreign wars a more glorious inheritance. Two only remained to perpetuate the race, and cherish their father's age; their ten brothers, as they successively attained the vigour of manhood, departed from the castle, passed the Alps, and joined the Aupilian camp of the Normans. The elder were prompted by native spirit; their success encouraged their younger brethren, and the three first in seniority, William, Diegvo, and Humphry, desired to be the chiefs of their nation, and the founders of the new republic. Robert was the eldest of the seven sons of the second marriage; and even the robust pride of his fees has endowed him with the heroic qualities of a soldier and a statesman. His lofty stature surpassed the tallest of his army; his limbs were cast in the true proportion of strength and graces; and to the decline of life, he maintained the potent vigour of health and the commanding dignity of his form. His complexion was ruddy, his shoulders were broad, his hair and beard were long and of a shaven colour, his eyes sparkled with fire, and his voice, like that of Achilles, could impress obedience and terror amidst the tumult of battle. In the ruder ages of chivalry, such qualifications are not below the notice of the poet or historian: they may observe that Robert, at once, and with equal dexterity, could wield in the right hand his sword, his lance in the left; that in the battle of Civitella, he was thrice unhorsed; and that in the close of that memorable day he was adjudged to have borne away the prize of valor from the warriors of the two armies. His boundless ambition was founded on the consciousness of superior worth; in the pursuit of greatness, he was never arrested by the scruples of justice, and seldom moved by the feelings of humanity; though not insensible of fame, the choice of open or clandestine means was determined only by his present advantage. The surname of Guiscrard was applied to this master of political wisdom, which is too often confounded with the practice of dissimulation and deceit; and Robert is praised by the Aupilian poet for excelling the cunning of Ulissian and the eloquence of Cicero. Yet these arts were disguised by an appearance of military frankness: in his highest fortune, he was accessible and courteous to his fellow-soldiers; and while he indulged the prejudices of his new subjects, he affected in his dress and manners to maintain the ancient fashion of his country. He grouped with a ravenous, that he might distribute with a liberal hand; his primitive indigence had taught the habits of frugality; the gain of a mercenary was not below his attention; and his prisoners were tortured with slow and unfeeling cruelty, to force a discovery of their secret treasure. According to the Greeks, he departed from Normandy with only five followers on horseback and thirty on foot; yet even this absence appears too bountiful: the sixth son of Taureal of Hauville passed the Alps as a pilgrim; and his first military band was formed among the adventurers of Italy. His brothers and countrymen had divided the fertile lands of Apulia; but they guarded their shores with the jealousy of averseness; the aspiring youth was driven forwards to the mountains of Calabria, and in his first exploits against the Greeks and the natives, it is not easy to discriminate the hero from the robber. To surprise a castle or a convent, to ensnare a wealthy citizen, to plunder the adjacent villages for necessary food, were the obscure labours which formed and exercised the powers of his mind and body. The volunteers of Normandy adhered to his standard; and, under his command, the peasants of Calabria assumed the name and character of Normans.

As the genius of Robert expanded with his fortunes, he awakened the jealousy of his elder brother, by whom, in a tumultuous quarrel, his life was threatened and his liberty restrained. After the death of Humphrey, the tender age of his sons excluded them from the command; they were reduced to a private estate by the ambition of their guardian and uncle; and Guiscrard was exiled on a buckler, and salutary count of Apulia and general of the republic.

With an increase of authority and of force, he resumed the conquest of Calabria, and soon aspired to a rank that should raise him for ever.

[Page 291]
above the heads of his equals. By some acts of rapine or sacrilege, he had incurred a peopel excommunication: but Nicholas the Second was easily persuaded, that the divisions of friends could terminate only in their mutual prejudice; that the Normans were the faithful champions of the Holy See; and it was safer to trust the alliance of a prince than the capture of an aristocracy. A synod of one hundred bishops was convened at Melphi: and the count interdicted an important enterprise to guard the person and execute the decrees of the Roman pontiff. His gratitude and policy conferred on Robert and his posterity the ducal title,43 with the investiture of Apulia, Calabria, and all the lands, both in Italy and Sicily, which his sword could resuscite from the schismatic Greeks and the unbelieving Saracens.44 This apostolic sanction might justify his arms; but the obedience of a free and victorious people could not be transferred without their consent; and Guiscard disdained his elevation till the ensuing campaign had been illustrated by the conquest of Consenza and Reggio. In the hour of triumph, he assembling his troops, and solicited the Normans to confirm by their suffrage the judgment of the vicar of Christ: the soldiers hailed with joyful acclamations their valiant duke; and the counts, his former equals, pronounced the oath of fidelity, with hollow smiles and secret indignation. After this inauguration, Robert styled himself, "by the grace of God and St. Peter, duke of Apulia, Calabria, and hereafter of Sicily;" and it was the labour of twenty years to deserve and realize these lofty apppellations. Such rapid progress, in a narrow space, may seem unworthy of the abilities of the chief and the spirit of the nation: but the Normans were few in number; their resources were scanty; their service was voluntary and precarious. The bravest designs of the duke were sometimes opposed by the free voice of his parliament of barons: the twelve counts of popular election combined against his authority; and against their perfidious uncle the sons of Humphrey demanded justice and revenge. By his policy and vigour, Guiscard discovered their plots, suppressed their rebellions, and punished the guilty with death or exile; but in these domestic feuds, his years and the national strength were unprofitably consumed. After the defeat of his foreign enemies, the Greeks, Lombards, and Saracens, their broken forces retreated to the strong and populous cities of the coast: They excelled in the arts of fortification and defence; the Normans were accustomed to serve on horseback in the field, and their rude attempts could only succeed by the efforts of persevering courage. The resistance of Salerno was maintained above eight months; the siege or blockade of Bari lasted near four years. In those actions, the Norman duke was the foremost in every danger; in every fatigue the last and most patient. As he pressed the citadel of Salerno, an immense stone from the rampart slithered one of his military engines; and by a splinter he was wounded in the breast. Before the gates of Bari, he lodged in a miserable hut or barrack, composed of dry branches, and thatched with straw; a pestilential station, on all sides open to the inclemency of the winter and the spears of the enemy.45

The Italian conquests of Robert 46 corresended with the limits of the present kingdom of Naples; and the countries united by his arms have not been discovered by the revolutions of seven hundred years.47 The monarchy has been composed of the Greek provinces of Calabria and Apulia, of the Lombard principality of Salerno, the republic of Amalfi, and the inland dependencies of the large and ancient duchy of Benevento. Three districts only were exempted from the common law of subjection; the first for ever, and the two last till the middle of the succeeding century. The city and immediate territory of Benevento had been transferred, by gift or exchange, from the German emperor to the Roman pontiff; and although this holy land was sometimes invaded, the name of St. Peter was finally more potent than the sword of the Normans. Their first colony of Aversa subdued and held the state of Capua; and their princes were reduced to beg their bread before the palace of their fathers. The dukes of Naples, the present metropolis, maintained the popular freedom, under the shadow of the Byzantine empire. Among the new acquisitions of Guiscard, the science of Salerno,48 and the trade of Amalfi,49 may detain for a moment the curiosity of the reader.

I. Of the learned faculties, jurisprudence implies the previous establishment of laws and property; and theology may perhaps be superseded by the full light of religion and reason. But the savage and the savage must alike inspire the assistance of physic; and, if our diseases are inflamed by luxury, the mischiefs of blows and wounds would be more frequent in the ruder ages of society. The treasures of Gre- cian medicine had been communicated to the Arabian colonies of Africa, Spain, and Sicily; and in the intercourse of peace and war, a spark of knowledge had been kindled and cherished at Salerno, an illustrious city, in which the men were honest and the women beautiful.49 A
school, the first that rose in the darkness of Europe, was consecrated to the healing art; the vivacity of monks and bishops was reconciled to a solitary and lucrative profession; and a crowd of patients, of the most eminent rank, and most distant climates, invited or visited the physicians of Salerno. They were protected by the Norman conquerors; and Guiscard, though hard in arms, could discern the merit and value of a philosopher. After a pilgrimage of thirty-nine years, Constantine, an African Christian, returned from Bagdad, a master of the language and learning of the Arabsians; and Salerno was enriched by the practice, the lessons, and the writings, of the pupil of Avicenna. The school of medicine has long slept in the name of an university; but her precepts are abridged in a string of aphorisms, bound together in the Leonine verses, or Latini rhytmes, of the twelfth century.

II. Seven miles to the west of Salerno, and thirty to the south of Naples, the obscure town of Amalphi displayed the power and the wonders of industry. The land, however fertile, was of narrow extent; but the sea was accessible and open: the inhabitants first assumed the office of supplying the Western world with the manufactures of their productions; and this useful traffic was the source of their opulence and freedom. The government was popular, under the administration of a duke and the supremacy of the Greek emperor. Fifty thousand citizens were numbered in the walls of Amalphi; nor was any city more abundantly provided with gold, silver, and the objects of precious luxury. The mariners who swarmed in her port excelled in the theory and practice of navigation and astronomy; and the discovery of the compass, which has opened the globe, is due to their ingenuity or good fortune. Their trade was extended to the coasts, or at least to the commodities, of Africa, Arabia, and India; and their settlements in Constantinople, Antioch, Jerusalem, and Alexandria, acquired the privileges of independent colonies.

To three hundred years of prosperity, Amalphi was oppressed by the arms of the Normans, and sacked by the jealousy of Pisa; but the poverty of one thousand fishermen is yet dignified by the remains of an arsenal, a cathedral, and the palaces of royal merchants.

Roger, the twelfth and last of the sons of Tancred, had been long detained in Normanly by his own and his father's age. He accepted the welcome summons; instantly to the Apulian camp; and dwelt at first the extreme and afterwards the envy, of his elder brother. Their valour and ambition were equal; but the youth, the beauty, the elegant manners, of Roger, engaged the disinterested love of the soldiers and people. So scanty was his allowance, for himself and forty followers, that he descended from conquest to robbery, and from robbery to domestic theft; and so loose were the notions of property, that, by his own historian, at his special command, he is accused of stealing horses from a stable at Melphi. His spirit emerged from poverty and disgrace: from these base practices he rose to the merit and glory of a holy war; and the invasion of Sicily was secured by the real and policy of his brother Guiscard. After the retreat of the Greeks, the sovereign, a most amiable reproach of the Catholics, had retrieved their losses and possessions; but the deliverance of the island, so vainly undertaken by the forces of the Eastern empire, was achieved by a small and private band of adventurers. In the first attempt, Roger braved, in an open boat, the real and most dangerous dangers of Scylla and Charybdis; landed with only sixty soldiers on a hostile shore; drove the Saracens to the gates of Messina; and safely returned with the spoils of the adjacent country. In the fortress of Trani, his active and judicious straggle was equally conspicuous. In his old age, he retired with his kingdom, by the distress of the siege, himself, and the country; his wife, had been reduced to a simple cloak or mantle, which they were alternately; that in a sally his horse had been slain, and he was dragged away by the Saracens; but that he owed his rescue to his good sword, and had retreated with his saddle on his back, lest the meanest trophy might be left in the hands of the miscreants. In the siege of Trani, three hundred Normans withstood and repulsed the forces of the island. In the field of Cerino, fifty thousand horse and foot were overthrown by one hundred and thirty-six Christian soldiers, without reckoning St. George, who fought on horseback in the foremost ranks. The captive hammers, with four camels, were reserved for the successor of St. Peter; and had those barbaric spoils been exposed, not in the Vatican, but in the Capitol, they might have revived the memory of the Punic triumphs. These insufficient numbers of the Normans most probably denote their knights, the soldiers of honourable and equestrian rank, each of whom was attended by five or six followers in the field; yet, with the aid of this interpretation, and after every fair allowance on the side of value, arms, and reputation, the insignificance of the Saracens renders St. Roger the prudent reader to the alternative of a miracle or a fable. The Arabs of Sicily derived a frequent
and powerful succour from their countrymen of Africa; in the siege of Palermo, the Norman cavalry was assisted by the galleys of Pisa; and, in the hour of action, the entry of the two bands was saluted to a generous and invincible emulation. After a war of thirty years, Robert, with the title of Great Count, obtained the sovereignty of the largest and most fruitful island of the Mediterranean; and his administration displayed a liberal and enlightened mind above the limits of his age and education. The Moslems were maintained in the free enjoyment of their religion and property; 35 a philosopher and physician of Magara, of the race of Mahomet, introduced the conquering, and was invited to court; his geography of the seven climates was translated into Latin; and Roger, after a diligent perusal, preferred the work of the Arabian to the writings of the Grecian Polyaenus. 36 A remnant of Christian natives had promoted the success of the Normans; they were rewarded by the triumph of the cross. The island was restored to the jurisdiction of the Roman pontiff; new bishops were planted in the principal cities; and the clergy was satisfied by a liberal endowment of churches and monasteries. Yet the Catholic hero asserted the rights of the civil magistrate. Instead of resigning the investiture of benefices, he humbly applied to his own profit the papal claims; the supremacy of the crown was secured and enlarged, by the singular bull, which declares the princes of Sicily hereditary and perpetual legates of the Holy See. 37

Robert invaded Sicily

To Robert Guiscard, the conquest of Sicily was more glorious than beneficial. 5

Robert invaded Sicily was more glorious than beneficial. 38

J. B. 1097. official: the possession of Apulia and Calabria was inadequate to his ambition; and he resolved to embrace or create the first occasion of invading, perhaps of subduing, the Roman empire of the East. 39 From his first wife, the partner of his humble fortunes, he had been divorced under the pretence of consanguinity; and her son, Bohemond, was destined to rival, rather than to succeed, his illustrious father. The second wife of Guiscard was the daughter of the princes of Salerno; the Lombards acquired in the lineal succession of their son Roger; their five daughters were given in honourable matrimons, 40 and one of them was betrothed, in a tender age, to Constantinople, a beautiful youth, the son and heir of the emperor Michael. 41 But the throne of Constantinople was shaken by a revolution; the imperial family of Ducas was confined in the palace or in the cloister, and Robert deplored, and resented, the disgrace of his daughter and the expulsion of his ally. A Greek, who styled himself the father of Constantine, soon appeared at Salerno, and related the adventures of his fall and flight. That unfortunate friend was acknowledged by the duke, and adorned with the pomp and titles of imperial dignity; in his triumphal progress through Apulia and Calabria, Michael 42 was saluted with the tears and acclamations of the people; and Pope Gregory the Seventh exulted the bishops to preach, and the Catholics to fight, in the pious work of his restoration. His conversations with Robert were frequent and familiar; and their mutual promises were justified by the valour of the Normans and the treasures of the East. Yet Michael, by the confession of the Greeks and Latins, was a pagan and an impostor; a monk who had fled from his convent, or a domestic who had served in the palace. The fraud had been contrived by the subtle Guiscard; and he trusted, that after this pretender had given a decent colour to his arms, he would sink, as the nod of the conqueror, into his proximity obscurity. But victory was the only argument that could determine the belief of the Greeks; and the arduous life of the Latins was much inferior to their credulity: the Norman veterans wished to enjoy the harvest of their toils, and the unwearied Latins trembled at the known and unknown dangers of a transmarine expedition. In his new levies, Robert exerted the influence of gifts and promises, the terror of civil and ecclesiastical authority, and some acts of violence might justify the reproach, that age and infancy were pressed without distinction into the service of their unrelenting prince. After two years incessant preparations, the land and naval forces were assembled at Otranto, at the heel or extreme promontory of Italy; and Robert was accompanied by his wife, who fought by his side, his son Bohemond, and the representative of the emperor Michael. Thirteen hundred knights 43 of Norman race or discipline, formed the vixera of the army, which might be smiled at thirty thousand 44 followers of every denomination. The poetry and music, but some of them were eye-witnesses of the event. 45

The decline and fall

One of them was married to Hugh, the son of Arnaud, of Tarascon, a substitute of Lecce, rich, wealthy, and noble. Arnaud, Arnaud, 45 who held the See of Otranto, had married the heiress of the Monforts, and had sold the episcopal feudal fiefs to the ducal court of Lecce; and there was a dispute whether the maintenances of the church of Otranto and Marsala were due to the see of Bari, or to the See of Bari, or to the see of Rome. 46

A giant by tradition, once dwelt in a cave, and his beard was seven miles long, and his body was four miles high. The Roman emperor Valerian is said to have been killed by a giant, that was sent by the god Jupiter. 47

A giant by tradition, once dwelt in a cave, and his beard was seven miles long, and his body was four miles high. The Roman emperor Valerian is said to have been killed by a giant, that was sent by the god Jupiter. 47

A giant by tradition, once dwelt in a cave, and his beard was seven miles long, and his body was four miles high. The Roman emperor Valerian is said to have been killed by a giant, that was sent by the god Jupiter. 47

A giant by tradition, once dwelt in a cave, and his beard was seven miles long, and his body was four miles high. The Roman emperor Valerian is said to have been killed by a giant, that was sent by the god Jupiter. 47

A giant by tradition, once dwelt in a cave, and his beard was seven miles long, and his body was four miles high. The Roman emperor Valerian is said to have been killed by a giant, that was sent by the god Jupiter. 47

A giant by tradition, once dwelt in a cave, and his beard was seven miles long, and his body was four miles high. The Roman emperor Valerian is said to have been killed by a giant, that was sent by the god Jupiter. 47

A giant by tradition, once dwelt in a cave, and his beard was seven miles long, and his body was four miles high. The Roman emperor Valerian is said to have been killed by a giant, that was sent by the god Jupiter. 47

A giant by tradition, once dwelt in a cave, and his beard was seven miles long, and his body was four miles high. The Roman emperor Valerian is said to have been killed by a giant, that was sent by the god Jupiter. 47

A giant by tradition, once dwelt in a cave, and his beard was seven miles long, and his body was four miles high. The Roman emperor Valerian is said to have been killed by a giant, that was sent by the god Jupiter. 47

A giant by tradition, once dwelt in a cave, and his beard was seven miles long, and his body was four miles high. The Roman emperor Valerian is said to have been killed by a giant, that was sent by the god Jupiter. 47

A giant by tradition, once dwelt in a cave, and his beard was seven miles long, and his body was four miles high. The Roman emperor Valerian is said to have been killed by a giant, that was sent by the god Jupiter. 47

A giant by tradition, once dwelt in a cave, and his beard was seven miles long, and his body was four miles high. The Roman emperor Valerian is said to have been killed by a giant, that was sent by the god Jupiter.
been solicited by the prayers and promises of the Byzantine court. The first day's action was not disadvantageous to Bohemund, a heartless youth, who led the naval powers of his father. All night the galleys of the republic lay on their anchors in the form of a crescent; and the victory of the second day was decided by the dexterity of their evolutions, the station of their anchors, the weight of their keel, and the borrowed aid of the Greek fire. The Apulian and Ruggense vessels fled to the shore, several were cut from their cables, and dragged away by the conquerors; and a sally from the town carried slaughter and dismay to the tents of the Norman duke. A sanerable relief was poured into Durazzo, and as soon as the besiegers had lost the command of the sea, the islands and maritime towns withdrew from the camp the supply of tribute and provision. That camp was again attacked with a persistent fire: five hundred knights perished by an inglorious death; and the list of burials (if all could obtain a decent burial) amounted to ten thousand persons. Under these calamities, the mind of Guiscard alone was firm and invincible; and while he collected new forces from Apulia and Sicily, he tattured, or sealed, or mapped, the walls of Durazzo. But his industry and valour were encountered by equal valour and more perfect industry. A movable turret, of a size and capacity to contain five hundred soldiers, had been rolled forwards to the foot of the rampart: but the descent of the door or drawbridge was checked by an enormous beam, and the wooden structure was instantly consumed by artificial flames.

While the Roman empire was attacked by the Turks in the East, and the Normans in the West, the aged successor of Michael surrendered the sceptre to the hands of Alexius, an illustrious captain, and the founder of the Comnenian dynasty. The princess Anne, his daughter and historian, observes, in her affected style, that even Hercules was unequal to double combat; and, on this principle, she approves an uneasy peace with the Turks, which allowed her father to undertake in person the relief of Durazzo. On his accession, Alexius found the camp without soldiers, and the treasury without money; yet such were the vigour and activity of his measures, that in six months he assembled an army of seventy thousand men, and performed a march of five hundred miles. His troops were levied in Europe and Asia, from Peloponnesus to the Black Sea; his majesty was displayed in the silver arms and rich trappings of the companies of horse-guarders.
and the emperor was attended by a train of nobles and princes, some of whom, in rapid succession, had been clothed with the purple, and were indulged by the lenity of the times; in a life of affluence and dignity. Their youthful ardour might animate the multitude; but their love of pleasure and contempt of submission were pregnant with disorder and mischief; and their insupportable clamours for speedy and decisive action disconcerted the prudence of Alexius, who might have surrounded and starved the besieging army. The enumeration of provinces recalls a sad comparison of the past and present limits of the Roman world: the vassal levies were drawn together in haste and terror; and the garrisons of Anatolia, or Asia Minor, had been purchased by the evacuation of the cities which were immediately occupied by the Turks. The strength of the Greek army consisted in the Varangians, the Scandinavian guards, whose numbers were recently augmented by a colony of exiles and volunteers from the British island of Thule. Under the yoke of the Norman conqueror, the Danes and English were oppressed and united: a band of adventurous youths resolved to desert a land of slavery; the sea was open to their escape; and, in their long pilgrimage, they visited every coast that afforded any hope of liberty and revenge. They were entertained in the service of the Greek emperor; and their first station was in a new city on the Asiatic shore; but Alexius soon recalled them to the defence of his person and palace; and bequeathed to his successors the inheritance of their faith and valour. The name of a Norman invader revived the memory of their wrongs; they marched with alacrity against the national foe, and paused to regather in Epissa, the glory which they had lost in the battle of Hastings. The Varangians were supported by the companies of Franks and Latins; and the rebels, who had fled to Constantinople from the tyranny of Guiscard, were eager to signalise their real and grateful revenge. In this emergency, the emperor had not disdained the influence of the Pashaliks or Manichaeans of Thrace and Bulgaria; and these heretics united with the patience of martyrdom, the spirit and discipline of active valour. The treaty with the sultan had procured a supply of some thousand Turks; and the arrows of the Scythian horse were opposed to the lances of the Norman cavalry. On the report and distant prospect of these formidable numbers, Robert assembled a council of his principal officers. "You behold, said he, "your danger; it is urgent and inevitable. The hills are covered with arms and standards; and the emperor of the Greeks is accustomed to wars and triumphs. Obdurate and union are our only safety; and I am ready to yield the command to a more worthy leader." The voice and acclamation, even of his secret enemies, assured him, that that period, moment of their extremity and confidence, and the duke thus continued. "Let us trust in the rewards of victory, and devoutly wait for the means of escape. Let us burn our tents and our baggage, and give battle on the spot, as it were the place of our nativity and our burial." The resolution was unanimously approved; and without confining himself to his lines, Guiscard awaited the battle-array the nearer approach of the enemy. His rear was covered by a small river; his right wing extended to the sea; his left to the hills: not was he conscious, perhaps, that on the same ground Caesar and Pompey had formerly disputed the empire of the world.

Against the advice of his wisest captains, Alexius resolved to risk the event of a general action, and exhorted the garrisons of Durazzo to assist their own deliverance by a wall-timed salut from the town. He marched in two columns to surprise the Normans before daybreak on two different sides: his light cavalry was scattered over the plain; the archers formed the second line; and the Varangians claimed the honours of the vanguard. In the first onset, the battle-axes of the strangers made a deep and bloody impression on the army of Guiscard, which was now reduced to fifteen thousand men. The Lombards and Calatrians ignominiously turned their backs; they fled towards the river and the sea; but the bridge had been broken down to check the salut of the garrisons, and the event was lined with the Venetian galleys, who played their engines among the disorderly throng. On the verge of ruin, they were saved by the spirit and conduct of their chiefs. Gais, the wife of Robert, is painted by the Greeks as a warlike Amazon, a second Pallace; less skillful in arts, but not less terrible in arms, than the Athenian goddess; though wounded by an arrow, she stood her ground, and strove, by her exhaustion and example, to rally the flying troops. Her female voice was seconded by the more powerful voice and arm of the Norman duke, as calm in action as he was impassionate in council. "Whither," he cried aloud, "whither do ye fly? Your enemy is impachable; and death is less grievous than servitude." The motion was decisive: as the Varangians advanced before the line, they discovered the nakedness of their flanks, the main battle of the duke, of eight hundred knights, stood firm and entire; they couched their lances, and the
Greeks deplore the furious and irresistible shock of the French cavalry. 79 Alexius was not deficient in the duties of a soldier or a general; but he no sooner beheld the slaughter of the Varangians, and the flight of the Turks, than he despised his subjects, and despaired of his fortune. The princes Anna, who drops a tear on this melancholy event, is reduced to praise the strength and swiftness of her father's horse, and his vigorous struggle, when he was almost overcome by the stroke of a lance, which had flawed the Imperial helmet. His desperate valour broke through a squadron of Franks who opposed his flight; and, after wandering two days and as many nights in the mountains, he found some repose, of body, though not of mind, in the walls of Lychnidou. The victorious Robert reproached the tardy and feeble pursuit which had suffered the escape of so illustrious a portion; but he constrained his disappointments by the trophies and standards of the field, the wealth and luxury of the Byzantine camp, and the glory of defeating an army five times more numerous than his own. A multitude of Italians had been the victims of their own fears; but only thirty of his knights were slain in this memorable day. In the Roman host, the loss of Greeks, Turks, and English, amounted to five or six thousand; the plain of Durazzo was stained with noble and royal blood; and the end of the imperious Michael was more honourable than his life.

It is more than probable that Guiscard was not afflicted by the loss of a costly pageant, which had merited only the contempt and derision of the Greeks. After their defeat, they still persevered in the defence of Durazzo; and a Venetian commander supplied the place of George Palamologus, who had been imprudently called away from his station. The tents of the besiegers were converted into barracks, to sustain the inclemency of the winter; and in answer to the demands of the garrison, Robert promised, that his patricians were at least equal to their obstinacy. 77 Perhaps he already trusted to his secret correspondence with a Venetian noble, who sold the city for a rich and honourable marriage. At the dead of night several roof-ladders were dropped from the walls; the light Galabrians ascended in silence; and the Greeks were awakened by the name and trumpet of the emperors. Yet they defended the streets three days against an enemy already master of the rampart; and near seven months elapsed between the first investment and the final surrender of the place. From Durazzo, the Norman duke advanced into the heart of Epirus or Albania; traversed the first mountains of Thessaly; and, after the defeat of a large army of Franks, advanced to the vicinity of Ochrida. 78

77 See the "Itinerarium Novellum," and Durazzo, p. 252. 78 "Itinerarium Novellum," p. 252. 79 Compare the battle between Merovingian and Carolingian armies, p. 657. 79 Compare the battle between Merovingian and Carolingian armies, p. 657. 77 See the "Itinerarium Novellum," and Durazzo, p. 252. 78 "Itinerarium Novellum," p. 252.
embraced by a father who esteemed his merit, and sympathised in his misfortune.

Of the Latin princes, the allies of Alexius and enemies of Robert, the most prompt and powerful was Henry the Third or Fourth, king of Germany and Italy, and future emperor of the West. The epistle of the Greek monarch to his brother is filled with the warmest professions of friendship, and the most lively desire of strengthening their alliance by every public and private tie. He congratulates Henry on his success in a just and pious war; and complains that the prosperity of his own empire is disturbed by the audacious enterprises of the Norman Robert. The list of his presents expresses the manners of the age, a radiated crown of gold, a cross set with pearls to hang on the breast, a case of relics, with the names and titles of the saints, a case of crystal, a case of sardonyx, soon balm, most probably of Mocca, and one hundred pieces of purple. To these he added a more solid present, of one hundred and forty-four thousand Byzantine gold, with a further assurance of two hundred and sixteen thousand, so soon as Henry should have entered in arms the Apullian territories, and confirmed by an oath the league against the common enemy. The German, who was already in Lombardy at the head of an army and a faction, accepted these liberal offers, and marched towards the south: his speed was checked by the sound of the battle of Durazzo; but the influence of his arms, or name, in the busy return of Robert, was a full equivalent for the Greek tribute. Henry was the sincere adversary of the Normans, the allies and vassals of Gregory the Seventh, his implacable foe. The long quarter of the throne and mire had been recently kindled by the zeal and ambition of that haughty priest; the king and the pope had degraded each other; and each had seated a rival on the temporal or spiritual throne of his antagonist. After the defeat and death of his Swabian rebel, Henry descended into Italy, to assume the Imperial crown, and to drive from the Vatican the grant of the church. But the Roman people adhered to the cause of Gregory: their resolution was fortified by supplies of men and money from Apulia; and the city was thrice ineffectually besieged by the king of Germany. In the fourth year the city was corrupted, as it is said, with Byzantine gold, the nobles of Rome, whose estates and castles had been ruined by the war. The gates, the bridges, and fifty hostages, were delivered into his hands; the anti-

pope, Clement the Third, was consecrated in the Lateran: the grateful pontiff crowned his protector in the Vatican; and the emperor Henry fixed his residence in the Capitoli, as the lawful successor of Augustus and Charlemagne. The ruins of the Septizodium were still defended by the nephew of Gregory: the pope himself was invested in the castle of St. Angelo; and his last hope was in the courage and fidelity of his Norman vassal. Their friendship had been interrupted by some reciprocal injuries and complaints; but, on this pressing occasion, Guiscard was urged by the obligation of his oath, by his interests, more potent than oath, by the love of fame, and his enmity to the two emperors. Unfurling the holy banners, he resolved to fly to the relief of the prince of the apostles: the most numerous of his armies, six thousand horse, and thirty thousand foot, was instantly assembled; and his march from Salerno to Rome was accompanied by the public applause and the presence of the divine favour. Henry, invincible in sixty-six battles, trembled at his approach; recovered some indispensable affairs that required his presence in Lombardy; and left the Romans to persevere in their allegiance; and hastily retreated three days before the entrance of the Normans. In less than three years, the son of Tancred of Hauteville enjoyed the glory of delivering the pope, and of compelling the two emperors, of the East and West, to fly before his victorious arms. But the triumph of Robert was clouded by the calamities of Rome. By the aid of the friends of Gregory, the walls had been perforated or scaled; but the Imperial faction was still powerful and active; on the third day, the people rose in a furious tumult; and an obisy word of the conquerors, in his defence or revenge, was the signal of fire and pillage. The Saracens of Sicily, the subjects of Roger, and auxiliaries of his brother, embraced this fair occasion of rifling and profaning the holy city of the Christians: many thousands of the citizens, in the night, and by the allies, of their spiritual father, were exposed to violation, captivity, or death; such a spacious quarter of the city, from the Laterns to the Coliseum, was consumed by the flames, and devoted to perpetual solitude. From a city, where he was now hated, and might be no longer feared, Gregory retired to end his days in the palace of Salerno. The artful pontiff might flatter the vanity of Guiscard, with the hope of a Roman or Imperial crown; but this dangerous measure, which would have inflamed the ambition of the Normans, must for ever have alienated the most faithful princes of Germany.
The deliverer and scourge of Rome might have indulged himself in a season of repose; but in the same year of the flight of the German emperor, the infatigable Robert resumed the design of his eastern conquests. The zeal or gratitude of Gregory had promised to his valour the kingdoms of Greece and Asia;*99 his troops were assembled in arms, flushed with success, and eager for action. Their numbers, in the language of Homer, were computed by Anna Tore, seven hundred thousand; yet the utmost and moderate limits of the powers of Guiscard had already defined: they were contained on this second occasion in five hundred and twenty vessels; and as the season was far advanced, the harbour of Brindisi*102 was preferred to the open road of Otranto. Alexius, apprehensive of a second attack, had meanwhile laboured to restore the naval forces of the empire; and obtained from the republic of Venice an important succour of thirty-six transports, fourteen galleys, and nine galleons or ships of extraordinary strength and magnitude. Their services were liberally paid by the licence or monopoly of trade, a profitable gift of many ships and horses in the port of Consantinople, and a tribute to St. Mark, the more acceptable, as it was the produce of a tax on their rivals of Amalfi. By the union of the Greeks and Venetians, the Haemidian was covered with an insular fleet; but their own neglect, or the vigilance of Robert, the change of a wind, or the shelter of a mist, opened a free passage; and the Norman troops were safely disembarked on the coast of Epirus. With twenty strong and well-appointed galleys, their intrepid duke immediately sought the enemy, and though more accustomed to fight on horseback, he trusted his own life, and the lives of his brother and two sons, to the event of a naval combat. The dominion of the sea was disputed in three engagements. In sight of the island of Corfu: in the two former, the skill and numbers of the allies were superior; but in the third, the Normans obtained a final and complete victory.104 The light brigantines of the Greeks were scattered in ignominious flight; the nine castles of the Venetians maintained a more obstinate contest; seven were sunk, two were taken; two thousand five hundred captives impaled in vain the memory of the victor; and the daughter of Alexius deplores the loss of thirteen thousand of his subjects or allies. The want of experience had been supplied by the genius of Guiscard; and each evening, when he had quitted a retreat, he calmly explored the causes of his repulse, and invented new methods how to remedy his own defects, and to humble the advantages of the enemy. The winter season suspended his progress, with the return of spring he again aspired to the conquest of Constantinople; but, instead of traversing the hills of Epirus, he turned his arms against Greece and the islands, where the spoils would repay the labour, and where the land and sea forces might pursue their joint operations with vigour and effect. But, in the isle of Cephalonia, his projects were fatally blasted by an epidemical disease: Robert himself, in the seventieth year of his age, expired in his tent; and a suspicion of poison was imputed, by public rumour, to his wife, or to the Greek emperor.108 This premature death might allow a humbler scope for the imagination of his future exploit; and the event sufficiently declares, that the Norman greatness was founded on his life.109 Without the appearance of an enemy, a victorious army dispersed; or retreated in disorder and consternation; and Alexius, who had trusted for his empire, rejoiced in his deliverance. The galleys which transported the remains of Guiscard were shipwrecked on the Italian shores; but the duke's body was recovered from the sea, and deposited in the sepulchre of Vassali,108 a place more illustrious for the birth of Hiareo,110 than for the burial of the Norman heroes. Roger, his second son and successor, immediately sunk to the humble station of a duke of Apulia: the esteem or partiality of his father left the valiant Bohemund to the inheritance of bis word. The national tranquillity was disturbed by his claims, till the first crusade against the infidels of the East opened a more splendid field of glory and conquest.112

Of human life, the most glorious Roger and his immediate descendants were soon bounded by the sepulchre. 

The male line of Robert Guiscard was extinguished, both in Apulia and at Antioch, in the second generation; but his younger brother became the father of a line of kings; and the son of the great count was endowed with the name, the conquests, and the spirit of the first Roger.112 The heir of that Norman

---

*99 The notions of Robert, either prompted or sanctioned by the pope, are sufficiently described by the Acutio (l. c. p. 181.)

*102 The sequel of Robert, either prompted or sanctioned by the pope, are sufficiently described by the Acutio (l. c. p. 181.)

*104 See Roger's grant (t. 2, l. c. p. 330.)

*105 See Roger's grant (t. 2, l. c. p. 330.)

*106 See Roger's grant (t. 2, l. c. p. 330.)

*107 See Roger's grant (t. 2, l. c. p. 330.)

*108 See Roger's grant (t. 2, l. c. p. 330.)

*109 See Roger's grant (t. 2, l. c. p. 330.)

*110 See Roger's grant (t. 2, l. c. p. 330.)

*111 See Roger's grant (t. 2, l. c. p. 330.)

*112 See Roger's grant (t. 2, l. c. p. 330.)
adventure was born in Sicily; and, at the age of only four years, he succeeded to the sovereignty of the island, a lot which reason might envy, could she indulge for a moment the visionary, though virtuous, wish of dominion. Had Roger been content with his fruitful patrimony, as happy and grateful people might have blessed their benefactor; and, if a wise administration could have restored the prosperous times of the Greek colonies, the opulence and power of Sicily alone might have equalled the widest scope that could be acquired and decimated by the sword of war. But the ambition of the great count was ignorant of these sublirae pursuits; it was gratified by the vulgar means of violence and artifice. He sought to obtain the undisputed possession of Palermo, of which one moiety had been ceded to the elder branch; struggled to enlarge his Calabrian limits beyond the measure of former treaties; and impatiently watched the declining health of his cousin William of Apulia, named Andrea, the grandson of Robert. On the first intelligence of his premature death, Roger sailed from Palermo with seven galleys, cast anchor in the Bay of Salerno, received, after ten days' negotiation, an oath of fidelity from the Norman capital, commanded the submission of the barons, and extorted a legal investiture from the reluctant popes, who could not long endure either the friendship or enmity of a powerful casual. The sacred spot of Benevent was respectfully spared, as the patrimony of St. Peter; but the reduction of Campana and Naples completed the design of his uncle Guiscard, and the sole inheritance of the Norman conquests was possessed by the victorious Roger. A numerous superiority of power and merit prompted him to disdain the titles of duke and of count; and the isle of Sicily, with a third part of the continent of Italy, might form the basis of a kingdom, which would only yield to the monarchies of France and England. The chiefs of the nation who attended his consecration at Palermo, might doubtless pronounce under what name he should reign over them; but the example of a Greek tyrant at Samos evinced them insufficient to justify his royal character; and the nine kings of the Latin world might disdain their new associate, unless he were consecrated by the authority of the supreme pontiff. The pride of Amelus was pleased to confer a title, which the pride of the Norman had strove to solicit; but his own legitimacy was attacked by the adverse election of Innocent the Second; and while Amelus sat in the Roman, the successful fugitive was acknowledged by the nations of Europe. The infant

monarchy of Roger was shaken, and almost overthrown, by the unlucky choice of an ecclesiastical patron; and the sword of Ladislas the Second of Germany, the excommunication of Innocent, the fleets of Fieschi, and the zeal of St. Bernard, were united for the ruin of the Sicilian robber. After a gallant resistance, the Norman prince was driven from the confines of Italy: a new duke of Apulia was invested by the pope and the emperor, each of whom held a rival claim to the government, or flag-staff, as a token that they asserted their right, and suspended their quarrel. But such jealous friendship was of short and precarious duration: the German armies were vanquished in disease and desertion; 128 the Apulian duke, with all his adherents, was exterminated by a conqueror, who seldom forgave either the dead or the living; like his predecessor Leo the Ninth, the feeble though haughty pontiff became the captive and friend of the Normans; and their reconciliation was celebrated by the elevation of Bernard, who now revere the title and virtues of the king of Sicily.

As a penance for his impious war against the successor of St. Peter, that monarch might have promised to display the banner of the cross, and he accomplished with ardour a vow so pious to his interest and revenge. The recent injuries of Sicily might provoke a just retaliation on the heads of the Saracens. The Normans, whose blood had been mingled with so many subject streams, were encouraged to renumber and emulate the naval trophies of their fathers, and in the maturity of their strength they contended with the decline of an African power. When the Fatimite caliph departed for the conquest of Egypt, he rewarded the real merit and apparent fidelity of his servant Joseph, with a gift of his royal mantle, and forty Arabian horses, his palace, with its sumptuous furniture, and the government of the kingdoms of Tunis and Algiers. The Zirides, 202 the descendants of Joseph, forgot their allegiance and gratitude to a distant benefactor; grasped and abused the fruits of prosperity; and after running the little course of an Oriental dynasty, were now fainting in their own weakness. On the side of the land, they were oppressed by the Almohades, the fanatic princes of Morocco, while the sea-coast was open to the enterprises of the Greeks and Franks, who, before the close of the eleventh century, had extorted a ransom of two hundred thousand pieces of gold. By the first arms of Roger, the island or rock of Malta, which has been since ennobled by a military and religious colony, was insignarily annexed to the crown of Sicily. Tripoli, 203 a strong and

independent possession (26. 22. 1120, May 1), which their conqueror did not venture to attempt. The story of the title, the dominion of the Saracen, and the extent of the empire, and the strength and art of Sicily and Fieschi are interwoven. The part of the Saracen empire, with the kingdom of Jerusalem, regarding the influence and power of Roger, was taken by King William the Second, and the dominion of the Saracen empire, with the kingdom of Jerusalem, was taken by King William the Second, and the

200 The siege of Palermo, Sicily; and Apulia, (inward) and

201 The story of the title, the dominion of the Saracen, and the

202 The story of the title, the dominion of the Saracen, and the

203 The story of the title, the dominion of the Saracen, and the

204 The story of the title, the dominion of the Saracen, and the
Greece; and the venerable age of Athens, Thébes, and Corinth, was violated by rapine and cruelty. Of the wrongs of Athens no memorial remains. The ancient walls, which encompassed, without guarding, the opulence of Thébes, were scaled by the Latin Christians; but their sole use of the Gospel was to sanctify an oath, that the lawful owners had not secreted any relic of their inheritance or industry. On the approach of the Normans the lower town of Corinth was evacuated: the Greeks retired to their island, which was posted on a lofty eminence advantageously commanded by the classic fountain of Fréone; an impregnable fortress, if the want of courage could be balanced by any advantages of art or nature. As soon as the besiegers had surmounted the labour (their sole labour) of climbing the hill, their general, from the commanding eminence, admired his own victory, and justified his gratitude to Heaven, by tearing from the altar the precious image of Theodore the tyrannical saint.

The silk weavers of both sexes, whom Géorgio transported to Sicily, composed the most valuable part of the spoil; and in comparing the skilful industry of the mechanic with the aloof and cowardice of the soldier, he was heard to exclaim, that the dastard and loath were the only weapons which the Greeks were capable of using. The progress of this naval armament was marked by two conspicuous events, the rescue of the king of France, and the insult of the Byzantine capital. In his return by sea from an unfortunate crusade, Louis the Seventh was intercepted by the Greeks, who hastily violated the laws of honour and religion. The fortunate encounter of the Norman fleet delivered the royal captive; and, after a free and honourable entertainment in the court of Sicily, Louis continued his journey to Rome and Paris.

In the absence of the emperor, Constantinople and the Hellas, were left without defence and without the suspicion of danger. The clergy and people, for the soldiers had followed the standard of Mâsmel, were astonished and dismayed at the belligerent appearance of a line of galleys, which boldly cast anchor in the front of the Imperial city. The forces of the Sicilian admiral were inadequate to the siege or assault of an immense and populous metropolis: but George enjoyed the glory of humbling the Greek arrogance, and of marking the path of conquest to the navies of the West.

He landed some soldiers to rifle the fruits of the royal gardens, and pointed with silver, or most probably with fire, the arrows which he discharged against the palace of the Cæsars.

Greek Federico I. 1. ii. 8. 83. In Marmara, Brevi, cap. cii. p. 602, And in the General of the smaller gazette, 1781, given by the king of France to the king of Sicily. Captain, Sept. 181, 15. The armament of the king was mentioned in the preceding chapter, and in the Life of Constantine VII. p. 502, and the Life of Malcolm, king of Sicily, 1781, 27. p. 27. A. H. 1198.}

---

This playful outrage of the pirates of Sicily, who had surprised an unguarded moment, Manuel affected to despise, while his martial spirit, and the forces of the empire, were awakened to revenge. The Archipelago and Ionian Sea were covered with his squadrons and those of Venice; but I know not by what favourable alliances of transports, victuallers, and plunderers, our reason or even our fancy can be reconciled to the stupendous account of fifteen hundred vessels, which is proposed by a Byzantine historian. These operations were directed with prudence and energy: in his homeward voyage George lost nineteen of his galleys, which were separated and taken: after an obstinate defence, Corfu employed the eleemosy of her lawful sovereign; nor could a ship, a soldier of the Norman prince, be found, unless as a captive, within the limits of the Eastern empire. The prosperity and the health of Roger were already in a declining state: while he listened in his palace of Palermo to the messages of victory or defeat, the invincible Manuel, the foremost in every assault, was celebrated by the Greeks and Latins as the Alexander or the Hercules of the age.

A prince of such a temper could not be satisfied with having repelled the insurrection of a barbarian. It was only the right and duty of Manuel to restore the ancient majesty of the empire, to recover the provinces of Italy and Sicily, and to chastise this pretended king, the grandson of a Norman nominal. The natives of Calabria were still attached to the Greek language and usages, which had been invariable prescribed by the Latin clergy: after the loss of her doxes, Apulia was claimed as a servile appendage to the crown of Sicily; the founder of the monarchy had ruled by the sword; and his death had blotted the fear, without healing the discontent: the feudal government was always pregnant with the seeds of rebellion; and a nephew of Roger himself invited the enemies of his family and nation. The majority of the purple, and a series of Hungarian and Turkish wars, prevented Manuel from embarking his person in the Italian expedition. To the brave and noble Palamogus, his lieutenant, the Greek monarch intrusted a fleet and army: the siege of Bar was his first exploit; and, in every operation, gold as well as steel was the instrument of victory. Salerno, and some places along the western coast, maintained their fidelity to the Norman king; but he lost in two campaigns the greater part of his continental possessions; and the modest emperor, disposing all

111 For the invasion of Italy, which is almost unconnected, see the chart of the history of Cremona (s. n. l. 64). The author prays the reader to consult a very excellent history of the city of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 The States, after the death of Frederick I. L. 1844, p. 564. 111 The Venetian provinces of Cremona, Pompei, and Beneventum. 111 See the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 Against Frederick I. L. 1844, p. 567, the author introduces a historical sketch of the names of Cremona, Pompei, and Beneventum, and a chart of the town. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1. 111 About the author, see the chart of the history of Cremona, by Gregorovius, of Rome, in 1843, 3 vol. in 6, 1 vol. in 1.
seded by a personal dispute to renounce the perpetual inheritance of the Latin name. After his reign with Frederic, he spoke a more pontifical language, confirmed the acts of his predecessors, excommunicated the adherents of Manuel, and pronounced the final separation of the churches, or at least the empires, of Constantine and Rome. 18

18 The free cities of Lombardy no longer remembered their foreign benefactor; and without preserving the friendship of Acre, he soon incurred the enmity of Venice. 184. By his own word, or the complaints of his subjects, the Greek emperor was provoked to arrest the persons, and confiscate the effects, of the Venetian merchants. This violation of the public faith exaggerated a free and commercial people: one hundred galleys were launched and armed in as many days; they swept the coasts of Dalmatia and Greece; but after some mutual wounds, the war was terminated by an agreement, inglorious to the empire, insufficient for the republic; and a complete vengeance of these and of fresh injuries, was reserved for the succeeding generation. The lieutenants of Manuel had informed his sovereign that he was strong enough to quell any domestic revolt of Apulia and Calabria; but that his forces were inadequate to resist the impending attack of the king of Sicily. His prophecy was soon verified; the death of Palaeologus dissolved the command on several chiefs, alike eminent in rank, alike defective in military talents; the Greeks were oppressed by land and sea; and a captive remnant that escaped the swords of the Normans and Saracens, alarmed all future hostility against the person or dominions of their conqueror. 185 Yet the king of Sicily esteemed the courage and constancy of Manuel, who had landed a second army on the Italian shore; he respectfully addressed the new Justinian; solicited a peace or truce of thirty years; accepted, as a gift, the regal title; and acknowledged himself the military vassal of the Roman empire. 186

The Byzantine

Peace with the Venetians,
A.D. 1216.

Cassar acquiesced in this shadow of dominion, without expecting, perhaps without desiring, the service of a Norman army; and the truce of thirty years was not disturbed by any hostilities between Sicily and Constantinople. About the end of that period the throne of Manuel was usurped by an inhuman tyrant, who had deserved the abhorrence of his country and mankind; the sword of William the Second, the grandson of Roger, was drawn by a fugitive of the Cumanian race; and the subjects of Andronicus might salute the stran-

gers as friends, since they denied their sovereign as the worst of enemies. The Latin

invasion of the
Sicilian coast
A.D. 1216.

183

184 In his enthroned, the Cumanian describes the Venetian war, which followed on the death of Palaeologus, the son, which has been minutely described above. See above, ch. iii. Bk. iii. p. 102. In this and subsequent war, the pope was a formidable party to the conquest of Italy. See above, ch. iii. Bk. iii. p. 102.

184 The Venetian fleet was a formidable party to the conquest of Italy. See above, ch. iii. Bk. iii. p. 102.

185 In this and subsequent war, the pope was a formidable party to the conquest of Italy. See above, ch. iii. Bk. iii. p. 102.

186 On this and subsequent war, the pope was a formidable party to the conquest of Italy. See above, ch. iii. Bk. iii. p. 102.

187 In this and subsequent war, the pope was a formidable party to the conquest of Italy. See above, ch. iii. Bk. iii. p. 102.
punishment of his assassins; the imprisonment and deliverance of the king himself; the private feuds that arose from the public confusion; and the various forms of calumny and discord which afflicted Palermo, the island, and the continent, during the reign of William the First, and the minority of his son. The youth, innocence, and beauty of William the Second, endeared him to the nation: the factions were reconciled; the laws were revived; and from the manhood to the premature death of that amiable prince, Sicily enjoyed a short season of peace, justice, and happiness, whose value was enhanced by the remembrance of the past and the dread of futurity. The legitimate male posterity of Tancred of Hauteville was extinct in the person of the second William; but his aunt, the daughter of Roger, had married the most powerful prince of the age; and Henry the Sixth, the son of Frederic Barbarossa, descended from the Alps, to claim the imperial crown and the inheritance of his wife. Against the unanimous wish of a free people, this inheritance could only be acquired by arms; and I am pleased to transcribe the style and sense of the historian Fædusus, who writes at the moment and on the spot, with the feelings of a patriot, and the prophetic eye of a statesman. "Constanza, the daughter of Sicily, nursed from her cradle in the pleasures and plenty, and educated in the arts and manners, of this fortunate isle, departed long since to enrich the barbarians with our treasures, and now returns, with her savage allies, to contumace, to devastate the beauties of her venerable parent. Already I behold the swarms of angry barbarians, our opulent cities, the places flourishing in a long peace, are shaken with fear, desolated by slaughter, consumed by rapine, and polluted by iniquity and lust. I see the armies, the captives of our citizens, the rapes of our virgins and matrons. In this extremity (he interrogates a friend) how must the Sicilians act? By the unanimous election of a king of valour and experience, Sicily and Calabria might yet be preserved; for in the levy of the Apulians, ever eager for new revolutions, I can repose neither confidence nor hope. Should Calabria be lost, the lofty towers, the numerous youth, and the naval strength of Messina, might guard the passage against a foreign invader. If the savage Germans coalesce with the pirates of Messina, if they destroy with fire the fruitful region, as often wasted by the fires of Mount Etna, what resource will be left for the interior parts of the island, these noble cities which should never be violated by the hostile footsteps of a barbarian? Catania has again been overwhelmed by an earthquake; the ancient virtue of Syracuse expires in poverty and solitude; but Palermo is still crowned with a diadem, and her triple Walls enclose the active multitudes of Christians and Saracens. If the two nations, under one king, can unite for their common safety, they may rush on barbarians with invincible arms. But if the Saracens, fattened by a repetition of injuries, should now retire and rebel; if they should occupy the castles of the mountains and assemble the unfortunate Christians, exposed to their attack, and placed as it were between the flanks; and if the victor and the avenger must resign themselves to hopeless and inevitable servitude." We must not forget, that a priest here professes his country to his religion; and that the Moslems, whose alliance he seeks, were still numerous and powerful in the state of Sicily.

The hopes, or at least the wishes, of the inhabitants of Palermo, were at first gratified by the free and unanimous election of Henry, the grandson of the first king, whose birth was illegitimate, but whose civil and military virtues shone without a blemish. During four years, the term of his life and reign, he stood in arms on the utmost verge of the Apulian frontier, against the powers of Germany; and the restitution of a royal captive, of Constanza herself, without injury or ransom, may appear to surpass the most liberal measures of policy or reason. After his decease, the kingdom of his widow and infant son fell without a struggle; and Henry pursued his victorious march from Capua to Palermo. The political balance of Italy was destroyed by his success; and if the pope and the free cities had consulted their obvious and real interest, they would have combated the powers of earth and heaven to prevent the dangerous union of the German empire with the kingdom of Sicily. But the subtle policy, for which Messina, the strong fortuna of the Saracens, seemed, in a measure, to be prepared.
which the Vatican has so often been praised or arraigned, was on this occasion blind and inactive; and if it were true that Celestine the Third had kicked away the Imperial crown from the head of the prostrate Henry, such an act of impotent pride could serve only to cancel an obligation and provoke an enemy. The Genoese, who enjoyed a beneficial trade and establishment in Sicily, listened to the promise of his boundless gratitude and speedy departure; 138 their fleet commanded the Straits of Messina, and opened the harbour of Palermo; and the first act of his government was to abdicate the privileges, and seize the property, of these imprudent allies. The last hope of Padania was defeated by the discord of the Christians and Mahometans; they fought: in the capital; several thousands of the latter were slain; but their surviving brethren fortified the mountains, and disputed the Alps for thirty years the peace of the island. By the policy of France in the Second, sixty thousand Saracens were transplanted to Nocera in Apulia. In their wars against the Roman church, the emperor and his son Mainfroy were strengthened and disgraced by the service of the enemies of Christ; and this national colony maintained their religion and manners in the heart of Italy, till they were extirpated, at the end of the thirteenth century, by the zeal and revenge of the house of Anjou. 139 All the calamities which the prophetic orator had described, were surpassed by the cruelty and avarice of the German conqueror. He violated the royal sepulchres, and explored the secret treasures of the palace, Palermo, and the whole kingdom: the pearls and jewels, however precious, might be easily removed; but one hundred and sixty horses were laden with the gold and silver of Sicily. 140 The young king, his mother and sisters, and the nobles of both sexes, were separately confined in the fortresses of the Alps; and, on the slightest rumour of rebellion, the captives were deprived of life, of their eyes, or of the hope of posterity. Constantia herself was touched with sympathy for the miseries of her country; and the heir of the Norman line might struggle to check her despotic husband, and to save the patrimony of her new-born son, of an emperor so famous in the next age under the name of Frederick the Second.

Ten years after this revolution, the French monarchs annexed to their crown the duchy of Normandy; the sceptre of her ancient dukes had been transmitted, by a grand-daughter of William the Conqueror, to the house of Plantagenet; and the adventurous Norman, who had raised so many trophies in France, England, and Ireland, in Apulia, Sicily, and the East, were lost, either in victory or servitude, among the vanquished nations.

CHAP. LVII.

From the isle of Sicily, the reader

The Turks transport himself beyond the

137 Caesarea, 4. B. D. 1281.

138 The Fitzwilliam of an Epistle of Roger de Hoveden, p. 325, and with other pieces in Plumptre, and the Annals ofGreek and Hellenic History (Oxford). Archbold Tait, 1930, p. 136. The pastor and popish representative of the pope under the pontificate of the boy emperor was Hoveden.

139 The Fitzwilliam of an Epistle of Roger de Hoveden, p. 325, and with other pieces in Plumptre, and the Annals of Greek and Hellenic History (Oxford). Archbold Tait, 1930, p. 136. The pastor and popish representative of the pope under the pontificate of the boy emperor was Hoveden.

140 The Fitzwilliam of an Epistle of Roger de Hoveden, p. 325, and with other pieces in Plumptre, and the Annals of Greek and Hellenic History (Oxford). Archbold Tait, 1930, p. 136. The pastor and popish representative of the pope under the pontificate of the boy emperor was Hoveden.

141 From the isle of Sicily, the reader.

142 The Fitzwilliam of an Epistle of Roger de Hoveden, p. 325, and with other pieces in Plumptre, and the Annals of Greek and Hellenic History (Oxford). Archbold Tait, 1930, p. 136. The pastor and popish representative of the pope under the pontificate of the boy emperor was Hoveden.

143 The Fitzwilliam of an Epistle of Roger de Hoveden, p. 325, and with other pieces in Plumptre, and the Annals of Greek and Hellenic History (Oxford). Archbold Tait, 1930, p. 136. The pastor and popish representative of the pope under the pontificate of the boy emperor was Hoveden.

144 From the isle of Sicily, the reader.

145 The Fitzwilliam of an Epistle of Roger de Hoveden, p. 325, and with other pieces in Plumptre, and the Annals of Greek and Hellenic History (Oxford). Archbold Tait, 1930, p. 136. The pastor and popish representative of the pope under the pontificate of the boy emperor was Hoveden.

146 From the isle of Sicily, the reader.
The decline and fall. Chap. LVII.

family of that race; from which Schening, by his courage and dexterity, ascended to the supreme command of the city and province of Gujarat, as the son-in-law and successor of his grateful master. The falling dynasty of the Samausides was at first protected, and at last overthrown, by their servants: and, in the public discourses, the fortune of Mahmud continually increased. For him the title of Sultan was first invented; and his kingdom was enlarged from Transoxiana to the neighbourhood of Ispahan, from the shores of the Caspian to the mouth of the Indus. But the principal source of his fame and riches was the holy war which he waged against the Goontoo of Hindostan.

In this foreign narrative I may not consume a page; and a volume would scarcely suffice to recapitulate the battles and sieges of his twelve expeditions. Never was the Mussulman hero dismayed by the inclemency of the seasons, the height of the mountains, the breadth of the rivers, the barrenness of the desert, the multitude of the enemy, or the formidable array of their elephants of war. The sultan of Gara surpassed the limits of the conquests of Alexander: after a march of three months, over the hills of Cashmir and Talib, he reached the famous city of Kinnoge on the Upper Ganges; and, in a naval combat on one of the branches of the Indus, he fought and vanquished four thousand boats of the natives. Delhi, Lahor, and Multan, were compelled to open their gates: the fertile kingdom of Guzarat attracted his ambition and tempted his stay; and his vassals indulged the fruitless project of discovering the golden and aromatic islands of the Southern Ocean. On the payment of a tribute, the Muslims preserved their dominions; the people, their lives and fortunes; but to the religion of Hindostan, the harsh Mussulman was cruel and inexorable: many hundred temples, or pagodas, were levelled with the ground; many thousand idols were demolished; and the servants of the prophet were stimulated and rewarded by the precious materials of which they were composed. The pagoda of Sumat was situate on the promontory of Guzarat, in the neighbourhood of Dju, one of the last remaining possessions of the Portuguese. It was endowed with the revenue of two thousand villages; two thousand Brahmins were commissioned to the service of the deity, whom they washed each morning and evening in water from the distant Ganges: the subordinate ministers consisted of three hundred ministers, three hundred barbers, and five hundred dancing girls, conspicuous for their birth or beauty. Three sides of the temple were pierced by the ocean, the narrow isthmus was fortified by a natural or artificial precipice; and the city and adjacent country were peopled by a nation of fanatics. They confined the sin and the punishment of Kinnoge and Delhi; but if the ambitious stranger should presume to approach their holy precincts, he would surely be overwhelmed by a blast of the divine vengeance. By this challenge, the faith of Mahmud was animated to a personal trial of the strength of this Indian deity. Fifty thousand of his war-shippers were pierced by the spear of the Muslims; the walls were scaled; the sanctuary was profaned; and the conqueror aimed a blow of his iron mace at the head of the khan. The trembling Brahmins are said to have offered ten millions sterling for his ransom; and it was urged by the wisest counsellors, that the destruction of a stone image would not change the hearts of the Goontoo; and that such a sin might be dedicated to the deliverance of the true believers. "Your reasons," replied the sultan, "are specious and strong; but never let it be known to the eyes of posterity that Mahmud appear as a merchant of idols." He repeated his blows, and a treasure of pearls and rubies, concealed in the belly of the statue, explained in some degree the devout prodigality of the Brahmins. The fragments of the idol were distributed to Gara, Mecca, and Medina. Baghdad listened to the edifying tale; and Mahmud was saluted by the caliph with the title of guardian of the fortune and faith of Mahomet.

From the path of blood, and such is the history of nations, I cannot refuse to turn aside to gather some flowers of science or virtue. The name of Mahmud the Gauzevade is still memorable in the East; his subjects enjoyed the blessings of prosperity and peace; his vices were concealed by the veil of religion; and two familiar examples will testify his justice and magnanimity. I. As he sat in the Divan, an unhappy subject bowed before the throne to accuse the insubordination of a Turkish soldier who had driven him from his house and bed. "Suspend your clamours," said Mahmud, "inform me of his next visit, and yourself in person will judge and punish the offended." The sultan followed his guide; invested the house with his guards, and extinguishing the torches, pronounced the death of the criminal, who had been seized in the act of rapine and adultery. After the execution of his sentence, the light was rekindled, Mahmud fell prostrate in prayer, and rising from the ground, demanded some homely fare, which he devoured with the consciousness of hunger. The poor man, whose injury he had avenged, was unable to sup-
press his astonishment and curiosity; and the
courteous monarch condescended to explain the
motives of this singular behaviour. "I had rea-
sure to suspect that none except one of my sons
could dare to perpetrate such an outrage; and,
is extinguished the lights, that my justice might
be blind and inexorable. My prayer was a
thanksgiving on the discovery of the offender;
and so painful was my anxiety, that I had
passed three days without food since the first
moment of your complaint." II. The sultan of
Gaza had declared war against the dynasty of
the Bowides, the sovereigns of the western
Puric; he was disarmed by an edition of the
sultains mother, and delayed his invasion till the
manhood of her son.8 "During the life of my
husband," said the artful regent, "I was ever
apprehensive of your ambition; he was a
prince and a soldier worthy of your arms. He
is now more free; his escort has passed to a
woman and a child, and you dare not attack
their infancy and weakness. How inglorious
would be your conquest, how shameful your
defeat! and yet the event of war is in the
hand of the Almighty." Avarice was the only
defect that tarnished the illustrious character
of Mahmud; and never has that passion been more
richly satiated. The Orientals ex-
ceed the measure of credulity in the account
of millions of gold and silver, such as the avidity
of man has never accumulated; in the magnitude
of pearls, diamonds, and rubies, such as have
never been produced by the workmanship
of nature.8 Yet the soil of Hindostan is impreg-
nated with precious minerals; her trade, in every
generation, has attracted the gold and silver of the
world; and her virgin spoils were rifled by the
first of the Mahometan conquerors. His beha-
viour, in the last days of his life, enforces the
vanity of these possessions, so laboriously won,
so dangerously held, and so inevitably lost. He
surveyed the vast and various chambers of the
 treasury of Gaza; burst into tears; and again
closed the doors, without bestowing any portion
of the wealth which he could no longer hope to
preserve. The following day he reviewed the
state of his military forces; one hundred thou-
sand foot, fifty-five thousand horse, and thirteen
hundred elephants of battle.20 He again waxed
the instability of human greatness; and his grief
was embittered by the hasty progress of the
Turkmans, whom he had introduced into the
heart of his Persian kingdom.

In the modern depopulation of
Asia, the regular operation of go-
vernment and agriculture is con-
fined to the neighbourhood of cities;
and the distant country is abandoned to the
pastoral tribes of Arabs, Kurds, and Turkmans.11
Of the last-mentioned people, two
considerable branches extend on either side of the
Caspian Sea: the western colony can muster
forty thousand soldiers; the eastern, less ob-
sic to the traveller, but more strong and
populous, has increased to the number of one
hundred thousand families. In the midst of
civilised nations, they preserve the manners of
the Scythian desert, remove their encampments
with the change of seasons, and feed their cattle
among the ruins of palaces and temples. Their
flocks and herds are their only riches; their
tents, either black or white, according to the
colour of the banner, are covered with felt, and
of a circular form; their winter apparel is a
sheepskin; a robe of cloth or cotton their sum-
mer garment: the features of the men are harsh
and ferocious; the countenance of their women
is soft and pleasing. Their wandering life
maintains the spirit and exercises of arms; they
ight on horseback; and their courage is dis-
played in frequent contests with each other and
with their neighbours. For the licence of pas-
ture they pay a slight tribute to the sovereign of
the land; but the domestic jurisdiction is in
the hands of the chiefs and elders. The first
emigration of the Eastern Turkman, the most
ancient of their race, may be ascribed to the
tenth century of the Christian era.16 In the
decline of the caliphs, and the weakness of their
lieutenants, the barrier of the Jazartes was often
violated; in each invasion, after the victory or
retreat of their countrymen, some wandering
tribe, embracing the Mahometan faith, obtained
a free encampment in the spacious plains and
pleasant climate of Transoxiana and Carizm.

The Turkish slaves who aspired to the throne
encouraged these emigrations, which recruited
their armies, subdued their subjects and rivals, and
protected the frontier against the wilder natives
of Turkestan; and this policy was abused by
Mahmud the Gauzeveld beyond the example of
former times. He was admonished of his error
by a chief of the race of Scipio, who dwelt in the
territory of Bochara. The sultan had ex-
quired what supply of grain he could furnish for
military service. "If you send," replied Ismael,
one of these arrows into our camp, fifty thou-
sand of your servants will mount on horse-
back." "And if that number," continued
Mahmed, "should not be sufficient?" "Send
this second arrow to the heart of både and
you will find fifty thousand more." "But,"
said the Gauzeveld, imitating his courtesy,
"if I should stand in need of the whole force
of your kindred tribes, you despise my
bow," was the last reply of Ismael; "and as it is
circulated round the enormous will be
obeyed by the hundred thousand horse." The
apprehension of such formidable friendship induced Mahmoud to transport the most
obnoxious tribes into the heart of Charsan, where they would be separated from their brethren by the river Oxus, and enclosed on all sides by the walls of obedient cities. But the face of the country was an object of temptation rather than terror; and the vigour of government was relaxed by the absence and death of the sultan of Guzan. The shepherds were converted into robbers; the bands of robbers were collected into an army of marauders; as far as Japal and the Tigris, Persia was afflicted by their predatory incursions, and the Turkomans were not ashamed or afraid to measure their courage and numbers with the proudest conquerors of Asia. Massoud, the son and successor of Mahmod, had too long neglected the advice of his wisest Oumbad. "Your enemies," they repeatedly urged, "were in their origin a swarm of ants; they are now little snakes; and, unless they be instantly crushed, they will acquire the venom and magnitude of serpents." After some alternatives of truce and hostility, after the repulse or partial success of his lieutenants, the sultan marched in person against the Turkomans, who attacked him on all sides with barbarous shouts and irregular onset. "Massoud," says the Persian historian, plunged singly to oppose the torrent of gleaming arms, exhibiting such acts of gigantic force and valour as never before had been displayed. A few of his friends, tissued by his success, words and actions, and that innate honour which inspires the brave, seconded their hard so well, that whereas he turned his fatal shock, the enemies were mastered; or down, or retreated before him. But now, when victory seemed to blow on his standard, unhap, fortune was active behind it; for whereas he looked round, he beheld almost his whole army, excepting that body he commanded, in person, decourting the paths of flight. The Gareevide was abandoned by the cowardice or treachery of some generals of Turkish race; and this memorable day of Zencade was founded in Persia the dynasty of the shepherd kings.13

The victorious Turkomans immediately proceeded to the election of a king; and, if the probable title of a Latin historian,14 deserves any credit, they determined by lot the choice of their new master. A number of arrows were successively inscribed with the name of a tribe, a family, and a candidate; they were drawn from the bundle by the hand of a child; and the important part was obtained by Togrol Beg, the son of Mi-

chael, the son of Seljuk, whose surname was immortalised in the greatness of his posterity. The sultan Mahmod, who valued himself on his skill in national genealogy, professed his ignorance of the family of Seljuk; yet the father of that race appears to have been a chief of power and renown.15 For a daring intrusion into the haram of his prince, Seljuk was banished from Turkestan; with a numerous tribe of his friends and vassals, he passed the Jaxartes, encamped in the neighbourhood of Samarcand, embraced the religion of Maimune, and acquired the crown of martyrdom in a war against the infidels. His age, avarice, and ambition, in a few years, surrounded his life of Rule, and Seljuk adopted the case of his two gran壁ants, Togrol and Jaafar; the eldest of whom, at the age of forty-five, was invested with the title of sultan, in the royal city of Nishapur. The blind determination of chance was justified by the virtues of the successful candidate. It would be superfluous to praise the valour of a Turk; and the ambition of Togrol was equal to his valour. By his arms the Gareevide were expelled from the eastern kingdoms of Persia, and gradually driven to the banks of the Indus, in search of a softer and more wealthy conquest. In the West he annihilated the dynasty of the Buyides; and the sceptre of Irak passed from the Persian to the Turkish nation. The princes who had felt, or who feared, the Seljukian arrows, bowed their heads in the dust; by the conquest of Azerbijan, or Alarod, he approached the human confines; and the shepherd presumed to dispatch an ambassador, or herald, to demand the tribute and obedience of the emperor of Constantinople.16 In his own dominions, Togrol was the father of his soldiers and people; by a firm and equal administration, Persia was relieved from the evils of anarchy; and the same hands which had been inflamed in blood became the guardians of justice and the public peace. The more rustic, perhaps the wisest, portion of the Turkomans continued to dwell in the tents of their ancestors; and, from the Oxus to the Euphrates, these military colonies were protected and propagated by their native princes. But the Turks of the court and city were refined by business and softened by pleasure; they imitated the dress, language, and manners, of Persia; and the royal palaces of Nishapur and Riz displayed the order and magnificence of a great monarchy. This most deserving of the Arabicans and Persians were promoted in the
honours of the state; and the whole body of the Turkish nation embraced with fervour and sincerity the religion of Mahomet. The seventh season of barbarians, who overspread both Europe and Asia, have been irreconcilably separated by the consequences of a similar conduct. Among the Moslems, as among the Christians, their vague and local traditions have yielded to the reason and authority of the prevailing system, to the laws of antiquity, and the consent of nations. But the triumph of the Koran is more pure and unimpromptu, as it was not adorned by any visible splendour of worship which might allure the Pagans by some resemblance of idolatry. The first of the Seljuksian sultans was conspicuous by his zeal and faith; each day he repeated the five prayers which are enjoined to the true believers; of each week, the two first days were consecrated by an extraordinary fast; and in every city a mosque was completed, before Togrel presumed to lay the foundations of a palace. With the belief of the Koran, the son of Seljuk insisted a lively reverence for the person of the prophet. But that sublime character was still disputed by the caliphs of Bagdad and Egypt, and each of the rivals was solicitous to prove his title in the judgment of the strong, though illustrious, barbarians. Meanwhile the Genoese had declared himself in favour of the line of Abu al-Husain, and had treated with indignity the robes of honour which was presented by the Fatimite ambassador. Yet the grateful Haschemite had changed with the change of fortune; he applauded the victory of Zengid, and named the Seljuksian sultan his temporal viscount over the Moslem world. As Togrel executed and enlarged this important trust, he was called to the deliverance of the caliph Cayan, and obeyed the holy summons, which gave a new kingdom to his arms. In the palace of Bagdad, the commander of the faithful still slumbered, a venerable phantom. His servant or master, the prince of the Bowides, could no longer protect him from the insolence of mace tyrants; and the Emperors and Tigris were oppressed by the revolt of the Turkish and Arabian emirs. The presence of a conqueror was implored as a blessing; and the transient mischiefs of fire and sword were excused as the sharp but salutary remedies which alone could restore the tranquility of the republic. At the head of an irresistible force, the sultan of Persia marched from Hamadan: the ponts were crushed, the prosterns were spurred; the prince of the Bowides disappeared; the heads of the most obstinate rebels were laid at the feet of Togrel; and he inflicted a lesson of obedience on the people of Mosul and Bagdad. After the satisfaction of the guilty, and the restoration of peace, the royal shepherd accepted the reward of his labours; and a solemn ceremony represented the triumph of religious prejudice over barbarian power. The Turkish sultan embarked on the Tigris, landed at the gate of Racca, and made his public entry on horseback. At the palace gate he respectfully dismounted, and walked on foot, preceded by his eunuchs without arms. The caliph was seated behind his black veil: the black garment of the Abbaside was cast over his shoulders, and he held in his hand the staff of the apostle of God. The conqueror of the East kissed the ground, stayed some time in a modest posture, and was led towards the throne by the vicar and an interpreter. After Togrel had seated himself on another throne, his commission was publicly read, which declared him the temporal lieutenant of the view of the prophet. He was successively invested with seven robes of honour, and presented with seven slaves, the natives of the seven cities of the Arabian capitol. His mystic veil was performed with seven other veils, which was placed on his head; two cushions were given to his side, as the symbols of a double reign over the East and West. After this inauguration, the sultan was prevented from prostrating himself a second time; but he twice kissed the hand of the commander of the faithful, and his titles were proclaimed by the voice of humble and the applause of the Moslems. In a second visit to Bagdad, the Seljuksian prince again rescued the caliph from his enemies; and, devoutly, as fast, led the bridal of his wife from the prison to the palace. Their alliance was cemented by the marriages of Togrel’s sister with the successor of the prophet. Without reluctance he had introduced a Turkish virgin into his harem; but Cayan proudly refused his daughter to the sultan, disdainfully mingled the blood of the Haschemites with the blood of a Scythian shepherd; and protected the negotiation many months, till the gradual diminution of his revenue diminished him that he was still in the hands of a master. The royal nuptials were followed by the death of Togrel himself, as he left no children, his nephew, Alp Arzan, succeeded to the title and prerogatives of sultan; and his name, after that of the caliph, was pronounced in the public prayers of the Moslems. Yet in this revolution, the Abbasides acquired a larger measure of liberty and power. On the throne of Asia, the Turkish monarchy was less jealous of the domestic administration of Bagdad; and the commanders of the faithful were relieved from the ignominious vassalage to which they had been exposed by the presence and poverty of the Persian dynasty. Since the fall of the caliphs, the discord and degeneracy of the Seljuks had the Asir China, the provinces of Rome, which, by the victories of Nicephorus, Zimisces, and Basil, had been extended as far as Antioch and the
The eastern boundaries of Armenia. Twenty-five years after the death of Hasil, his successors were suddenly assaulted by an unknown race of barbarians, who united the Scythian valor with the fanaticism of new proselytes, and the art and riches of a powerful monarchy. The tyrants of the Turk had overthrown their frontier of six hundred miles from Susiana to Arrazoom, and the blood of one hundred and thirty thousand Christians was a grateful sacrifice to the Arabian prophet. Yet the arms of Togdag did not make any deep or lasting impression on the Greek empire. The torrent rolled away from the open country; the sultan retired without glory or success from the siege of an Armenian city; the obscure hostilities were continued or suspended with a vixicature of events; and the bravery of the Macedonian legions renewed the fame of the conqueror of Asia.

The name of Alph Arakan, the valiant lion, is expressive of the popular ide of the perfection of man; and the successor of Togdag displayed the ferocity and generosity of the royal animal. He passed the Euphrates at the head of the Turkish cavalry, and entered Carchemish, the metropolis of Cappadocia, to which he had been attracted by the fame and wealth of the temple of St. Basil. The solid structure resisted the destroyer; but he carried away the doors of the shrine incrusted with gold and pearls, and profused the relics of the tutelar saint, whose mortal franchises were now covered by the resemblance of antiquity.

In Armenia, the title of a kingdom, and the spirit of a nation, were annihilated: the artificial fortifications were yielded by the mercenary of Constantinople; by strangers without faith, veterans without pay or arms, and recruits without experience or discipline. The loss of this important frontier was the news of a day; and the Catholics were neither surprised nor displeased, that a people so deeply infected with the Nestorian and Eutychian errors, had been delivered by Christ and his mother into the hands of the infidels.

The woods and valleys of Mount Caurus were more assiduously defended by the native Georgians or Iberians; but the Turkish sultan and his son Malek were indefatigable in this holy war; their captives were compelled to promise a spiritual, as well as temporal, obedience; and, instead of their collars and bracelets, an iron horse-shoe, a badge of ignominy, was imposed on the infidels who still adhered to the worship of their fathers. The clergy, however, was not sincere or universal; and, through ages of servitude, the Georgians have maintained the succession of their princes and bishops. But a race of men, whom nature has cast in her most perfect mould, is degraded by poverty, ignorance, and vice; their profession, and still more their practice, of Christianity is an empty name; and if they have emerged from heathenry, it is only because they are too illiterate to remember: a metaphorical creed.

The false and sublime magnanimity of Mahmud the Game-side was not imitated by Alph Arakan; and he 1011 attacked without sample the Greek empire Eudocia and her children. His alarming progress compelled her to give herself and her daughter, the hand of a soldier; and Rostam Diogenes was invested with the imperial purple. His patriotism, and perhaps his pride, urged him from Constantinople within two months after his ascension; and the next campaign he most shamelessly took the field during the holy festival of Easter. In the palace, Diogenes was no more than the husband of Eudocia; in the camp, he was the emperor of the Romans, and he sustained that character with feats of arms, and invincible courage. By his spirit and success, the soldiers were taught to act, the subjects to hope, and the enemies to fear. The Turks had penetrated into the heart of Phrygia; but the sultan himself had resigned to his emires the prosecution of the war; and their numerous detachments were scattered over Asia in the security of conquest. Laden with spoil, and careless of discipline, they were separately engaged and defeated by the Greeks: the activity of the emirates seemed to multiply his presence; and while they heard of his expedition to Antioch, the enemy felt his sword on the hills of Trebizond. In three laborious campaigns, the Turks were driven beyond the Euphrates; in the fourth and last, Romans undertook the deliverance of Armenia. The devastation of the land obliged him to transport a supply of two months' provisions; and he marched forwards to the siege of Malazkerd, an important fortress in the midway between the modern cities of Arrazoom and Van. His army amounted, at the least, to one hundred thousand men. The troops of Constantinople were reinforced by the disorderly multitudes of Phrygia and Cappadocia; but the real strength was composed of the subjects and allies of Europe, the kings of Macedonia, and the squires of Bulgaria; the Ulus, a Muhammadan body, perfect being: but his history is to record, that they were content without alterations. Disputes between the attached Romans.

The decline and fall. 2
who were themselves of the Turkish race; and, above all, the mercenary adventurers bands of French and Normans. Their forces were commanded by the valiant Ursel of Balliol, the Kinman, or father of the Scottish kings, and were allowed to excel in the exercise of arms, or, according to the Greek style, in the practice of the Pyrrhic dance.

Defeat of the Turks, A.D. 1171.

On the report of this bold invasion, which threatened his hereditary dominions, Alp Arslan flew to the scene of action at the head of forty thousand horse. His rapid and skilful evolutions distressed and dismayed the superior numbers of the Greeks; and in the defeat of Basiliscus, one of their principal generals, he displayed the first example of his valour and clemency. The imprudence of the emperor had separated his forces after the reduction of Malatara. It was in vain that he attempted to recall the mercenary Franks; they refused to obey his summons; he determined to await their return: the desertion of the Uzi filled his mind with anxiety and suspicion; and against the most salutary advice he hurried forwards to speedy and decisive action. He had listened to the fair proposals of the sultan. Romanus might have secured a retreat, perhaps a peace; but in these overtures he supposed the fear or weakness of the enemy, and his answer was concealed in the mists of insult and defiance.

If the barbarian wished for peace, let him evacuate the ground which he occupies; for the encampment of the Romans, and not render his city and palace of Hat as a pledge of his sincerity. Alp Arslan smiled at the vanity of the demand, but he kept the death of so many faithful Moslems; and, after a devout prayer, proclaimed a free permission to all who were desirous of retiring from the field. With his own hands he tied up his horse's tail, exchanged his bow and arrows for a mace and cimeter, clothed himself in a white garment, perfumed his body with musk, and declared that if he were vanquished, that spot should be the place of his burial. The sultan himself had affected to cast away his missile weapons; but his hopes of victory were placed in the arrows of the Turkish cavalry, whose squadrons were loosely distributed in the form of a crescent. Instead of the successive lines and reserves of the Greek tactics, Romanus led his army in a single and solid phalanx, and pressed with vigour and impudence the artful and yielding resistance of the barbarians. In this desultory and fruitless combat he wasted the greater part of a summer's day, till prudence and fatigue compelled him to return to his camp. But a retreat is always perilous in the face of an active foe; and no sooner had the standard been turned to the rear than the phalanx was broken by the base cowardice, or the lesser jealousy, of Andronicus, a rival prince, who disgraced his birth and the purple of the Caesars. The Turkish squadrions poured a cloud of arrows on this moment of confusion and latitude, and the horns of their formidable crescent were closed in the rear of the Greeks. In the destruction of the army and pillage of the camp, it would be needless to mention the number of the slain or captives. The Byzantine writers deplore the loss of an inestimable pearl: they forget to mention that in this fatal day, the Asiatic provinces of Rome were irretrievably sacrificed.

As long as a hope survived, Romanus attempted to rally and save the relics of his army. When the centre, the Imperial staione, was left naked on all sides, and encompassed by the victorious Turks, he still, with desperate courage, maintained the fight till the close of day, at the head of the brave and faithful subjects who adhered to his standard. They fell around him; his horse was slain; the emperor was wounded; yet he stood alone and intrepid, till he was opposed and bound by the strength of multitudes. The glory of this illustrious prize was disputed by a slave and a soldier; a slave who had seen him on the throne of Constantinepolis, and a soldier whose extreme deformity had been excused on the promise of some signal service. Despised of his sect, his jewels, and his purple, Romanus spent a literary and pious night on the field of battle, amidst a disorderly crowd of the innumerous barbarians. In the morning the royal captive was presented to Alp Arslan, who doubted of his fortune, till the identity of the person was asserted by the report of his ambassadors, and by the more pathetic advice of Basiliscus, who embraced with tears the picture of his unhappy sovereign. The success of Constantine, in a plebeian habit, was led into his Turkish divan, and commanded to kiss the ground before the lord of Asia. He reluctantly obeyed, and Alp Arslan, starting from his throne, is said to have planted his foot on the neck of the Roman emperor. But the fact is doubtful; and if, in this moment of insolence, the sultan complied with a national custom, the rest of his conduct has excited the praise of his bigoted foes, and may afford a lesson to the most civilized ages. He instantly raised the royal captive from the ground; and through clapping his hand with tender sympathy, assumed him, that his life and dignity should be inviolate in the hands of a prince who had learned to respect the majesty of his equals and the vices of
fortune. From the slain, Ramaoni was conducted to an adjacent tent, where he was served with pomp and reverence by the officers of the sultan; and, twice each day, seated him in the place of honour at his own table. In a free and familiar conversation of eight days, not a word, not a look of thanks, escaped from the conqueror; but he severely censured the unworthy subjects who had deserted their valiant prince in the hour of danger, and gently admonished his antagonists of some errors which he had committed in the management of the war. In the preliminaries of negotiation, Alp Arslan asked him what treatment he expected to receive, and the sultan, instead of murmuring the customary displays of freedom of his mind. "If you are cruel," said he, "you will take my life; if you listen to pride, you will drag me at your chariot wheels; if you consult your interest, you will accept a ransom, and reserve me to your displeasure." "And what," continued the sultan, "would have been your own behaviour, had you been on your own subjects?" The reply of the Greek betrayed a sentiment, which prudence, and even gratitude, should have taught him to suppress. "Had I ravaged, I would have looked with horror on thy body many a stripe," the Turkish conqueror smiled at the insolence of his captive; observed that the Christian had incited the love of revenge, and forgave injuries; and, mildly declared, that he would not insist on an example which he condemned. After mature deliberation, Alp Arslan dictated the terms of liberty and peace, a ransom of a million, an annual tribute of three hundred and sixty thousand pieces of gold, the marriage of the royal children, and the delivery of all the Moslems who were in the power of the Turks. Ramaoni, with a sigh, subscribed this treaty, so disgraceful to the majesty of the empire; he was immediately invested with a Turkish robe of honour; his nobles and patriarchs were restored to their sovereign; and the sultan, after a courteous embrace, dismissed him with rich presents and a military guard. No sooner did he reach the confines of the empire, than he was informed that the palace and provinces had exclaimed their allegiance to a captive; a sum of two hundred thousand pieces was painfully collected; and the fallen monarch transmitted this part of his ransom, with a soul communion of his impotence and disgrace. The generosity, or perhaps the ambition, of the sultan, prepared to expose the cause of his ally; but his designs were prevented by the defeat, imprisonment, and death, of Ramaoni Dignian. 28

In the treaty of peace, it does not appear that Alp Arslan exacted any province or city from the captive emperor; and his revenge was so tranquil with the trophies of his victory, and the spoils of Anatolia, from Armenia to the Black Sea. The fairest part of Asia was subject to his laws: twelve hundred princes, or the sons of princes, stood before his throne; and two hundred thousand soldiers marched under his banners. The sultan disdained to pursue the fugitive Greeks; but he meditated the more glorious conquest of Turkestan, the original seat of the house of Seljuk. He marched from Bagdad to the banks of the Oxus; a bridge was thrown over the river; and twenty days were consumed in the passage of his troops. But the progress of the great king was retarded by the governor of Herat, and Joseph the Curdianian resolved to defend his fortress against the powers of the East. When he was produced in the royal tent, the sultan, instead of praising his valour, severely reproached his obstinate folly; and the resolute replies of the rebel provoked a sentence, that he should be fastened to four stakes, and left to expire in that painful situation. At this command, the desperate Curdianian, drawing a dagger, rushed headlong towards the doors; the guards raised their battle-axes; their head was checked by Alp Arslan, the most skilful archer of the age; he drew his bow, but his first arrow, the arrow glancing amid his chest, received in his breast the dagger of Joseph, who was instantly cut in pieces. The sultan was mourning; and the Turkish princes besought a dying submission to the pride of kings. "In my youth," said Alp Arslan, "I was advised by a sage, to humble myself before God; to distrust my own strength; and never to despise the most contemptible foe. I have neglected these lessons; and my neglect has been deservedly punished. Yesterday, as from an emissary I beheld the numbers, the discipline, and the spirit of my armies, the earth seemed to tremble under my feet; and I said in my heart, surely thou art the king of the world, the greatest and most invincible of warriors. These arms are no longer mine; and, in the confidence of my personal strength, I now fall by the hand of an assassin." Alp Arslan possessed the virtues of a Turk and a Musulman; his voice and stature commanded the reverence of mankind; his face was studded with long whiskers; and his ample turban was fashioned in the shape of a crown. The remains of the sultan were deposited in the tomb of the Seljukian dynasty; and the passenger might read and meditate this mournful inscription: 30 "O ye who have seen the deed of Alp Arslan relating to the emperor, 29 return to Maconda, and you will see him in the dust." The mutilation of the inscription, and the tomb itself, more forcibly proclaims the insubility of human greatness.
During the life of Alp Arslan, his eldest son had been acknowledged, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, by his father, leading the future sultan of the Turks. On his father's death, the inheritance was disputed by an uncle, a cousin, and a brother; they drew their estates, and assembled their followers; and the triple victory of Malek Shah 39 established his own reputation and the right of primogeniture. In every age, and more especially in Asia, the size of power has inspired the same passions, and occasioned the same disorders; but, from the long series of civil war, it would not be easy to extract a sentiment more pure and magnanimous than is contained in the saying of the Turkish prince. On the eve of the battle, he performed his devotions at Thoms, before the tomb of the Imam Han. As the sultan rose from the ground, he asked his vizir Niyam, who had knelt beside him, what had been the object of his secret petition. "That your arms may be crowned with victory," was the prudent, and, most probably, the sincere answer of the minister. "For my part," replied the generous Malek, "I implored the Lord of Hosts, that he would take from me my life and crown, if my brother be more worthy than myself to reign over the Moslems." The favourable judgment of Heaven was ratified by the caliph; and for the first time the sacred title of commander of the faithful was communicated to a barbarian. But this barbarian, by his personal merit, and the extent of his empire, was the greatest prince of his age. After the settlement of Persia and Syria, he marched at the head of innumerable armies to achieve the conquest of Turkestan, which had been undertaken by his father. In his passage of the Oxus, the hussites, who had been employed in transporting some troops, complained, that their payment was assigned to the revenues of Antioch. The sultan frowned at this preposterous choice; but smiled at the artful history of his visitor. "It was not to postpone their reward," I selected those remote places, but to leave a memorial to posterity, that, under your reign, Amidh and the Oxus were subject to the same sovereigns." But this description of his limits was subject to variations; beyond the Oxus, he reigned to his own pleasure the cities of Bokhara, Cabiriz, and Samarkand, and crushed such rebellions as were independent of his power. He feared to resist.22 Malek proposed to Shams or Jamsans, the last boundary of Persian civilization; the borders of Turkestan yielded to his supremacy; his name was inscribed on the coins and in the prayers of Calcutta, a Tartar kingdom on the extreme borders of China. From the Chinese frontier, he stretched his immediate jurisdiction of feudatory sway to the West and South, as far as the mountains of Georgia, the neigh-

39. For a much more detailed account of the personal life and reign of Alp Arslan, see the works of E. Schuster, L. H. H. Faber, and H. H. Grose, on the Seljuks, and the evidence of the Persian and Arab historians. It is, however, certain that the Oxus was not the boundary of the Seljuks, and that the term Oxus was applied by the Persians to the Amu Darya, and by the Greeks to the Jaxartes. The latter of the two rivers was the natural boundary of the Persian empire.
and tribute of his royal brothers: the thrones of Kerman and Nisib, of Aleppo and Damascus; the Athiska, and emirs of Syria and Mesopotamia, erected their standards under the shadow of his acquire; and the hordes of Torkmen overspread the plains of the Western Asia. After the death of Malek, the bands of union and subordination were relaxed and finally dissolved: the indulgence of the house of Seljuk invented their slaves with the inheritance of kingdoms; and, in the Oriental style, a crowd of princes arose from the dust of their feet.

A prince of the royal line, Cemitish, the son of Israil, the son of Seljuk, had fallen in a battle against Alp Arasan; and the humane victor had dropped a tear over his grave. His five sons, strong in arms, ambitious of power, and eager for revenge, unshackled their crews against the son of Alp Arasan. The two armies expected the signal, when the caliph, forgetful of the majesty which included him from vulgar eyes, interposed his venerable mediation. In stead of shedding the blood of your brethren, your breasts both in decent and faith, unite your forces in a holy war against the Greeks, the enemies of God and his apostle. They listened to his voice; the sultan embraced his rebellious kinmen; and the eldest, the valiant Soliman, accepted the royal standard, which gave him the free conquest and hereditary command of the provinces of the Roman empire, from Arcoceum to Constantinople, and the unknown regions of the West. Accompanied by his four brothers, he passed the Euphrates; the Turkish camp was soon seated in the neighbourhood of Kutais in Phrygia; and his flying cavalry laid waste the country as far as the Halys and the Black Sea. During the decline of the empire, the patrimony of Asia Minor had been exposed to the transit, though destructive, inroads of the Persians and Saracens; but the fruits of a lasting conquest were reserved for the Turkish sultan; and his arms were introduced by the Greeks, who aspired to reign on the ruins of their country. Since the tranquility of Romans, six years the feeble son of Eudocia had trembled under the weight of the Imperial crown, till the provinces of the East and West were lost in the same month by a double rebellion: of either chief Nicephorus was the common name; but the surnames of Bryennius and Botonites distinguish the European and Asiatic candidats. Their reasons, or rather their promises, were weighed in the balance; and, after some hesitation, Soliman declared himself in favour of Botonites, opened a free passage to his troops in their march from Antioch to Nice, and joined the banner of the crescent to that of the cross. After his ally had
dynasty of Rome was planted one hundred miles from Constantinople; and the divinity of Christ was denied and denied in the same temple in which it had been pronounced by the first general synod of the Catholics. The unity of God, and the mission of Malakut, was preached in the mosques; the Arabian learning was taught in the schools; the Catholics judged according to the law of the Koran; the Turkish manners and language prevailed in the cities; and Turkman camps were scattered over the plains and mountains of Anatolia. On the hard conditions of tribute and servitude, the Greek Christians might enjoy the exercise of their religion; but their most holy churches were profaned; their priests and bishops were insulted; they were compelled to suffer the triumph of the Pagans, and the apostasy of their brethren; many thousand children were marked by the knife of circumcision; and many thousand captives were devoted to the service or the pleasures of their masters. After the loss of Asia, Antioch still maintained her primitive allegiance to Christ and Caesar; but the solitary province was separated from all Roman aid, and surrounded on all sides by the Mabucutan powers. The despair of Philarectus the governor prepared the sacrifice of his religion and loyalty, had not his guilt been prevented by his son, who hastened to the Nisene palace, and offered to deliver this valuable prize into the hands of Solimain. The ambitious sultan mounted on horseback, and in twelve nights (for he resided in the day) performed a march of six hundred miles. Antioch was oppressed by the speed and secrecy of his enterprise; and the dependent cities, as far as Lousicea and the confines of Aleppo, obeyed the example of the metropolis. From Lousicea to the Thracian Bosporus, or arm of St. George, the conquests and reign of Solimain extended thirty days' journey in length, and in breadth about ten or fifteen, between the rocks of Lycia and the Black Sea. The Turkish ignorance of navigation protected, for a while, the inglorious safety of the emperor; but no sooner had a fleet of two hundred ships been constructed by the hands of the captive Greeks, than Alexius trembled behind the walls of his capital. His plaintive epistles were dispersed over Europe, to excite the compassion of the Latin antity to paint the danger, the weakness, and the sickness of the city of Constantinople.

But the misfortune increased. Thus, one by one and by one, the conquests of the Seljukian Turks, of the Jews of Egypt, of the Franks, and of the Aghybs, became the theatre of nations. In their capitulation with Omar, the inhabitants had stipulated

Since the first conquests of the caliphs, the establishment of the Turks in Anatolia or Asia Minor was the most deplorable loss which the church and empire had sustained. By the propagation of the Moslem faith, Solimain observed the name of Gasr, a holy champion; and his new kingdom, or of Rome, was added to the tables of Oriental geography. It is described as extending from the Euphrates to Constantinople, from the Black Sea to the confines of Syria; pregnant with mines of silver and iron, of slums and copper, fruitful in corn and wine, and productive of cattle and excellent horses.

The wealth of Lydias, the arts of the Greeks, the splendour of the Augustan age, existed only in books and ruins, which were equally obscure in the eyes of the Scythian conquerors. Yet, in the present decay, Asia Minor still contains some wealthy and populous cities; and, under the Byzantine empire, they were far more flourishing in numbers, size, and opulence. By the choice of the sultan, Nice, the metropolis of Bithynia, was preferred for his palace and fortress; the seat of the Seljukian
of trade and religion in the East. Her vessels transported the Latin pilgrims to the coasts of Egypt and Palestine, and observed, by her useful imports, the favour and alliance of the Fatimite caliphs. An annual fair was instituted on Mount Calvary, and the Italian merchants founded the convent and hospital of St. John of Jerusalem, the cradle of the monastic and military order, which has since reigned in the isles of Rhodes and of Malta.

Had the Christian pilgrims been content to reverence the tomb of a prophet, the discipline of Mahomet, instead of blaming, would have imitated, their pieté; but these rigid Orientalists were scandalized by a worship which represents the birth, death, and resurrection, of a God; the Catholic images were branded with the name of idols; and the Moslems smiled with indignation at the miraculous flames, which was kindled on the eve of Easter in the holy sepulchre. This pious fraud, first devised in the ninth century, was devoutly cherished by the Latin crusaders, and is annually repeated by the clergy of the Greek, Armenian, and Coptic sects, who impose on the credulous spectators for their own benefit, and that of their tyrants. In every age, a principle of toleration has been furnished by a sense of interest; and the revenge of the prince and his enmity was increased each year, by the expense and tribute of so many thousand strangers.

The revolution which transferred the sceptre from the Abbasides to the Fatimites was a benefit, rather than an injury, to the Holy Land. A sovereign resident in Egypt was more sensible of the importance of Christian trade; and the emirs of Palestine were less remote from the justice and power of the throne. But the third of these Fatimite caliphs was the famous Hakem, a frantic youth, who was delivered by his impiety and despair from the four either of God or man; and whose reign was a wild mixture of vice and folly. Regardless of the most ancient customs of Egypt, he imposed on the women an absolute confinement; the restraint excited the clamours of both sexes; their clamours provoked his fury; a part of Old Cairo was delivered to the flames; and the guards and citizens were engaged many days in a bloody conflict. At first the caliph declared himself a solemn Mussulman, the founder or benefactor of monasteries and colleges: twelve hundred and ninety copies of the Koran were transcribed at his expense in letters of gold, and the altar illuminated the vineyards of the Upper Egypt. But his vanity was soon chastened by the
hope of introducing a new religion; he aspired above the rank of a prophet, and styled himself the visible image of the most high God, who, after ten apparitions on earth, was at length manifest in his royal person. At the name of Haken, the lord of the living and the dead, every knee was bent in religious adoration: his mysteries were performed on a mountain near Cairo: sixteen thousand converts had signed his profession of faith; and at the present hour, a free and warlike people, the Druses of Mount Libanus, are persuaded of the life and divinity of a madman and tyrant. In his divine character, Haken hated the Jews and Christians, as the servants of his rivals; while some remnant of prejudice or prudence still pleaded in favour of the law of Mahomet. Both in Egypt and Palestine, his cruel and wanton persecution made some martyrs and many apostates: the common rights, and special privileges, of the sectaries were equally disregarded; and a general interdict was laid on the devotion of strangers and natives.

The temple of the Christian world, the church of the Resurrection, was demolished to its foundations; the luminous prodigy of Easter was interrupted, and much profane labour was extenuated to destroy the cave in the rock which properly constitutes the holy sepulchre. At the report of this sacrilege, the nations of Europe were astonished and afflicted; but instead of arming in the defence of the Holy Land, they contented themselves with burning, or banishing, the Jews, as the secret advisers of the impious barbarian. Yet the calamities of Jerusalem were in some measure alleviated by the inconstancy or repentance of Haken himself; and the royal mandate was sealed for the restitution of the churches, when the tyrant was assassinated by the emissaries of his sister. The succeeding caliphs resumed the maxims of religion and policy; a free toleration was again granted; with the pious aid of the emperor of Constantinople, the holy sepulchre rose from its ruin; and, after a short abstinence, the pilgrims returned with an increase of appetite to the spiritual feast. In the sea-voyage of Palestine, the dangers were frequent, and the opportunities rare; but the conversion of Hungary opened a safe communication between Germany and Greece. The charity of St. Stephen, the apostle of his kingdom, relieved and conducted his itinerant brethren; and from Belgrade to Antioch, they traversed fifteen hundred miles of a Christian empire.

Among the Franks, the zeal of pilgrimage prevailed beyond the example of former times; and the roads were covered with multitudes of either sex, and of every rank, who professed their contempt of life, so soon as they should have kissed the tomb of their Redeemer. Princes and prelates abandoned the care of their dominions; and the numbers of these pious caravans were a prelude to the armies which marched in the ensuing age under the banner of the cross. About thirty years before the first crusade, the archbishop of Mentz, with the bishops of Utrecht, Bamberg, and Halbisch, undertook this labious journey from the Rhine to the Jordan; and the multitude of their followers amounted to seven thousand persons. At Constantinople, they were hospitably entertained by the emperor; but the ostentation of their wealth provoked the assault of the wild Arabs; they drew their swords with scrupulous reluctance, and sustained a siege in the village of Capernum, till they were rescued by the royal protection of the Fatimite emir. After visiting the holy places, they embarked for Italy; but only a remnant of two thousand arrived in safety in their native land. Ingalpis, a secretary of William the Conqueror, was a companion of this pilgrimage: he observes, that they sailed from Normandy, thirty stout and well-appointed foresters; but that they requised the Alps, twenty miserable palmer, with the staff in their hand, and the wallet at their back.

After the defeat of the Romans, the tranquillity of the Fatimite caliph was invaded by the Turks. One of the lieutenants of Malek Shah, Azzaz the Catilinian, marched into Syria at the head of a powerful army, and reduced Damascus by famine and the sword. Homs, and the other cities of the province, acknowledged the caliph of Bagdad and the sultan of Persia; and the victorious emir advanced without resistance to the banks of the Nile: the Fatimite was preparing to fly into the heart of Africa; but the negroes of his guard and the inhabitants of Cairo made a desperate sally, and expelled the Turk from the confines of Egypt. In his retreat, he indulged the licence of slaughter and rapine: the judge and notaries of Jerusalem were invited to his camp; and their execution was followed by the massacre of three thousand citizens. The cruelty or the defeat of Azzaz was soon punished by the sultan Touschal, the brother of Malek Shah, who, with a higher title and more formidable powers, asserted the dominion of Syria and Palestine. The house of Seljuk reigned about twenty years in Jerusalem; but the hereditary command of the holy city and territory was intrusted to abun-
dowed to the emir Ortok, the chief of a tribe of Torkman, whose children, after their expulsion from Palestine, formed two dynasties on the borders of Armenia and Assyria. The Oriental Christians and the Latin pilgrims deposed a revolution, which, instead of the regular government and old alliance of the caliphs, imposed on their necks the iron yoke of the strangers of the North. In his court and camp the great sultan had adopted in some degree the arts and manners of Persia; but the body of the Turkish nation, and more especially the pastoral tribes, still breathed the savagery of the desert. From Nice to Jerusalem, the western countries of Asia were a scene of foreign and domestic hostility; and the shepherds of Palestine, who held a precarious sway on a doubtful frontier, had neither leisure nor capacity to await the slow profits of commercial and religious freedom. The pilgrims, who, through innumerable perils, had reached the gates of Jerusalem, were the victims of private rapine or public oppression, and often struck under the pressure of famine and disease, before they were permitted to salute the holy sepulchre. A spirit of native hauteur, or recent zeal, prompted the Turkmans to insult the clergy of every sect: the patriarch was dragged by the hair along the pavement, and cast into a dungeon, to extort a exsunt from the sympathy of his flock; and the divine worship in the church of the Resurrection was often disturbed by the savage rudeness of its masters. The pathetic tale excited the millions of the West to march under the standard of the cross to the relief of the Holy Land; and yet how little is the sum of these accumulated evils, if compared with the single act of the sacrilege of Hakem, which had been so patiently endured by the Latin Christians! A slighter provocation inflamed the more insensible temper of the Israelites: a new spirit had arisen of religious chivalry and papal dominion; a nerve was touched of exquisite feeling; and the sensation vibrated to the heart of Europe.

CHAP. LVIII.


Ancient twenty years after the conquest of Jerusalem by the Turks, the holy sepulchre was visited by an hermit of the name of Peter, a native of Armenia, in the province of Pictary in France. His resentment and sympathy were excited by his own injuries and the oppression of the Christian name; he mingled his tears with those of the patriarch, and earnestly entreated, if no hopes of relief could be entertained from the Greek emperors of the East, the patriarch to open the views and weakness of the successors of Constantine. "I will raise," exclaimed the hermit, "the martial nations of Europe in your cause;" and Europe was obedient to the call of the hermit. The astonished patriarch dismissed him with epistles of credit and complaint; and no sooner did he land at Bari, than Peter hastened to kiss the feet of the Roman pontiff. His stature was small, his appearance contemptible; but his eye was keen and lively; and he possessed that vehemence of speech, which seldom fails to impart the perturbation of the soul. He was born of a gentleman's family (for we must now adopt a modern idiom), and his military service was under the neighbouring courts of Boulogne, the heroes of the first crusade. But he soon relinquished the sword and the world; and if it be true, that his wife, however noble, was aged and ugly, he might withdraw, with the less reluctance, from her bed to a content, and at length to an hermitage. In this austere solitude, his body was emaciated, his fancy was inflamed; whatever he wished, he believed; whatever he believed, he saw in dreams and revelations. From Jerusalem the pilgrim returned an accomplished fanatic; but as he excelled in the popular madness of the times, pope Urban the Second received him as a prophet, applauded his glorious design, promised to support it in a general council, and encouraged him to proclaim the deliverance of the Holy Land. Invigorated by the approbation of the pontiff, his zealous missionary traversed, with speed and success, the provinces of Italy and France. His diet was abstemious, his prayers long and fervent, and the alms which he received with one hand, he distributed with the other: his head was bare, his feet naked; his meagre body was wrapped in a coarse garment; he bore and displayed a weighty crucifix; and the ass on which he rode was sanctified in the public eye, by the service of the man of God. He preached to innumerable crowds in the churches, the streets, and the highways; the hermit entered with equal confidence the palace and the cottage; and the people, for all was people, was impetuously moved by his call to repentance and arms. When he painted the sufferings of the native and pilgrims of Palestine, every heart was melted to compassion; every breast glowed with indignation; when he challenged the warriors of the age to defend their brethren, and rescue their Saviour: his ignorance of art and language was compensated by signs, and tears, and ejaculations; and Peter supplied the deficiency of reason by loud and frequent appeals to Christ and his Mother, to the saints and angels of paradise, with whom he had personally conversed.
The most perfect orator of Athens might have envied the success of his eloquence; the rustic enthusiasm inspired the passions which he felt, and Christendom expected with impatience the counsels and decrees of the supreme pontiff.

The magnanimous spirit of Gregory the Seventh had already embraced the design of arming Europe against Asia; the ardor of his zeal and ambition still breathes in his epistles; from either side of the Alps, fifty thousand Catholics had enlisted under the banner of St. Peter; and his successor reveals his intention of marching at their head against the impious sectaries of Mahomet. But the glory or reproach of executing, though not in person, this holy enterprise, was reserved for Urban the Second, the most faithful of his disciples. He undertook the conquest of the East, whilst the larger portion of Rome was possessed and fortified by his rival Guibert of Ravenna, who contendcd with Urban for the name and honours of the pontificate. He attempted to unite the powers of the West, at a time when the princes were separated from the church, and the people from their princes, by the excommunication which himself and his predecessors had thundered against the emperor and the king of France. Philip the First of France, supported with patience the censures which he had provoked by his scandalous life and adulterous marriage. Henry the Fourth of Germany, asserted the right of investitures, the prerogative of confirming his bishops by the delivery of the ring and crosier. But the emperor's party was crushed in Italy by the arms of the Normans and the counts Matilda; and the long quarrel had been recently avenged by the revolt of his son Conrad and the shame of his wife, who, in the eyes of Constance and Placentia, confirmed the manifold prostitutions to which she had been exposed by an husband regardless of her honour and his own. So popular was the cause of Urban, so weighty was his influence, that the council which he summoned at Placentia was composed of two hundred bishops of Italy, France, Burgundy, Swabia, and Bavaria. Four thousand of the clergy, and thirty thousand of the laity, attended this important meeting; and, as the most spacious cathedral would have been inadequate to the multitude, the session of seven days was held in a plain adjacent to the city. The ambassadors of the Greek emperor, Alexius Comnenus, were introduced to plead the distress of their sovereign and the danger of Constantinople, which was divided only by a narrow sea from the victorious Turks, the common enemies of the Christian name. In their supplicant address they flattered the pride of the Latin princes; and, appealing at once to their policy and religion, exhorted them to repel the barbarians on the confines of Asia, rather than to expect them in the heart of Europe. At the sad tale of the misery and perils of their Eastern brethren, the assembly burst into tears; the most eager champions declared their readiness to march; and the Greek ambassadors were dismissed with the assurance of a speedy and powerful succour. The relief of Constantinople was included in the larger and most distant project of the deliverance of Jerusalem; but the prudent Urban adjourned the final decision to a second synod, which he proposed to celebrate in some city of France in the autumn of the same year. The abort delay would propagate the fame of enthusiasm; and his firmest hope was in a nation of soldiers, still proud of the pre-excellence of its name, and ambitions to emulate their hero Charlemagne, who, in the popular romance of Turpin, had achieved the conquest of the Holy Land. A latent motive of avarice or vanity might influence the choice of Urban; he was himself a native of France, a monk of Cluny, and the first of his countrymen who ascended the throne of St. Peter. The pope had illustrated his family and province; nor is there perhaps a more exquisite gratification than to revisit, in a conspicuous dignity, the humble and laborious scenes of our youth.

It may occasion some surprise that the Roman pontiff should select, in the heart of France, the tribunal from whence he hurled his anathemas against the king; but our surprise will vanish so soon as we form a just estimate of a king of France of the eleventh century. Philip the First was the great-grandson of Hugh Capet, the founder of the present race, who, in the decline of Charlemagne's puerility, added the regal title to his patrimonial estates of Paris and Orleans. In this narrow compass, he was possessed of wealth and jurisdiction; but in the rest of France, Hugh and his first descendants were no more than the feudal lords of about sixty dukes and counts, independent and hereditary power, who disdained the control of laws and

---

1. See the remarks and notes of the council of Placentia, i. 469, 470. The popes had been in a constant controversy with the kings of France, and the current idea was that the French monarchs were unable to govern the kingdom. Urban, therefore, sought to assert the papal supremacy by appealing to the sword of the nobility, and the people, in order to overthrow the emperor's party in Italy. His successor, however, was defeated at the battle of the downs of Soissons, where the French army, led by Philip, was routed. Urban's death was a great blow to the papacy, and the council of Placentia was dissolved in 1077.

2. See the remarks and notes of the council of Placentia, i. 469, 470. The French popes, such as Urban and his successor, sought to assert the papal supremacy by appealing to the sword of the nobility, and the people, in order to overthrow the emperor's party in Italy. Urban's successor, however, was defeated at the battle of the downs of Soissons, where the French army, led by Philip, was routed. Urban's death was a great blow to the papacy, and the council of Placentia was dissolved in 1077.

3. See the remarks and notes of the council of Placentia, i. 469, 470. The French popes, such as Urban and his successor, sought to assert the papal supremacy by appealing to the sword of the nobility, and the people, in order to overthrow the emperor's party in Italy. Urban's successor, however, was defeated at the battle of the downs of Soissons, where the French army, led by Philip, was routed. Urban's death was a great blow to the papacy, and the council of Placentia was dissolved in 1077.

4. See the remarks and notes of the council of Placentia, i. 469, 470. The French popes, such as Urban and his successor, sought to assert the papal supremacy by appealing to the sword of the nobility, and the people, in order to overthrow the emperor's party in Italy. Urban's successor, however, was defeated at the battle of the downs of Soissons, where the French army, led by Philip, was routed. Urban's death was a great blow to the papacy, and the council of Placentia was dissolved in 1077.

5. See the remarks and notes of the council of Placentia, i. 469, 470. The French popes, such as Urban and his successor, sought to assert the papal supremacy by appealing to the sword of the nobility, and the people, in order to overthrow the emperor's party in Italy. Urban's successor, however, was defeated at the battle of the downs of Soissons, where the French army, led by Philip, was routed. Urban's death was a great blow to the papacy, and the council of Placentia was dissolved in 1077.

6. See the remarks and notes of the council of Placentia, i. 469, 470. The French popes, such as Urban and his successor, sought to assert the papal supremacy by appealing to the sword of the nobility, and the people, in order to overthrow the emperor's party in Italy. Urban's successor, however, was defeated at the battle of the downs of Soissons, where the French army, led by Philip, was routed. Urban's death was a great blow to the papacy, and the council of Placentia was dissolved in 1077.

7. See the remarks and notes of the council of Placentia, i. 469, 470. The French popes, such as Urban and his successor, sought to assert the papal supremacy by appealing to the sword of the nobility, and the people, in order to overthrow the emperor's party in Italy. Urban's successor, however, was defeated at the battle of the downs of Soissons, where the French army, led by Philip, was routed. Urban's death was a great blow to the papacy, and the council of Placentia was dissolved in 1077.

8. See the remarks and notes of the council of Placentia, i. 469, 470. The French popes, such as Urban and his successor, sought to assert the papal supremacy by appealing to the sword of the nobility, and the people, in order to overthrow the emperor's party in Italy. Urban's successor, however, was defeated at the battle of the downs of Soissons, where the French army, led by Philip, was routed. Urban's death was a great blow to the papacy, and the council of Placentia was dissolved in 1077.

9. See the remarks and notes of the council of Placentia, i. 469, 470. The French popes, such as Urban and his successor, sought to assert the papal supremacy by appealing to the sword of the nobility, and the people, in order to overthrow the emperor's party in Italy. Urban's successor, however, was defeated at the battle of the downs of Soissons, where the French army, led by Philip, was routed. Urban's death was a great blow to the papacy, and the council of Placentia was dissolved in 1077.

10. See the remarks and notes of the council of Placentia, i. 469, 470. The French popes, such as Urban and his successor, sought to assert the papal supremacy by appealing to the sword of the nobility, and the people, in order to overthrow the emperor's party in Italy. Urban's successor, however, was defeated at the battle of the downs of Soissons, where the French army, led by Philip, was routed. Urban's death was a great blow to the papacy, and the council of Placentia was dissolved in 1077.

11. See the remarks and notes of the council of Placentia, i. 469, 470. The French popes, such as Urban and his successor, sought to assert the papal supremacy by appealing to the sword of the nobility, and the people, in order to overthrow the emperor's party in Italy. Urban's successor, however, was defeated at the battle of the downs of Soissons, where the French army, led by Philip, was routed. Urban's death was a great blow to the papacy, and the council of Placentia was dissolved in 1077.

12. See the remarks and notes of the council of Placentia, i. 469, 470. The French popes, such as Urban and his successor, sought to assert the papal supremacy by appealing to the sword of the nobility, and the people, in order to overthrow the emperor's party in Italy. Urban's successor, however, was defeated at the battle of the downs of Soissons, where the French army, led by Philip, was routed. Urban's death was a great blow to the papacy, and the council of Placentia was dissolved in 1077.
legal ascendency, and whose disregard of their
sovereignty was revenged by the disobedience of
their inferior vassals. At Clermont, in the ter-
ritories of the count of Auvergne,18 the pope
might have used with impunity the resentment of
Philip, and the council which he convened in
that city was not less numerous or respectable
than the synod of Placentia.19 Besides his episcopal
and council of Romano cardinals, he was sup-
sported by thirteen archbishops, and two hun-
dred and twenty-five bishops; the number of
priests present was computed at four hundred;
and the fathers of the church were pleased by
the multitude, and enlightened by the doctrines of
the pontiff.

From the adjacent kingdoms, a martial
train of lords and knights of power and renown
attended the council,11 in high expectation of its
results; and what was the aurum of zeal and
curiosity, that the city was filled, and many
thousands, in the month of November, erected
their tents or huts in the open field. A session
of eight days professed some useful or edifying
means for the reformation of manners; a severe
censure was pronounced against the licence of
private war; the scourge of God was confirmed,
suspension of faculties during four days of the
trials; women and priests were placed under
the safeguard of the church; and a protection
of three years was extended to husbandmen and
merchants, the defenseless victims of military
rapine.

But a law, however venerable, be the
sentiment, cannot suddenly transform the temper
of the times; and the benevolent efforts of Urban
deserve the highest praise, since he ventured to
appeal from domestic quarrels, that he might
spread the flames of war from the Atlantic to
the Euphrates. From the symbol of Placentia,
the rumour of his gait was soon forth among the
nations; the clergy on their return had preached
everywhere the merit and glory of the deliverance
of the Holy Land; and when the pope ascended a lofty scaffold in the
market-place of Clermont, his eloquence was
addressed to a well-prepared and impatient
audience. His topics were obvious, his exertion
was vehement, his success invincible. The
storm was interrupted by the shouts of thousands,
who, with one voice, and in their rustic idiom,
exclaimed aloud: "God wills it, God wills it." 17
"It is indeed the will of God," replied the
pope; "and let this memorable word, the in-
spiration surely of the Holy Spirit, be the
ever-adopted as your cry of battle, to animate
the devotion and courage of the champions of
Christ. His cross is the symbol of your sal-
vation; wear it, a red, a bloody cross, an
external mark, on your breasts or shoulders,
as a pledge of your sacred and inviolable en-
gagement." The proposal was joyfully ac-
ccepted; great numbers, both of the clergy and
laity, impressed on their garments the sign of
the cross,10 and solicited the pope to march at
their head. This dangerous honour was de-
clined by the more prudent successor of Gregory,
who alleged the solemn of the church, and the
duties of his pastoral office, recommending to
the faithful, who were disqualified by age or
profession, by age or inconstancy, to aid, with their
prayers and alms, the personal service of their
robust brethren. The name and powers of his
legate he devolved on Adhemar bishop of Puy,
the first who had received the cross at his hands.
The foremost of the temporal chiefs was Ray-
mond count of Théoule, whose ambassadors
in the council exercised the absence, and were
the honour, of their master. After the consecra-
tion and absolution of their sins, the champions of
the cross were dismissed with a superstitious an-
nunciation to invite their countrymen and friends;
and their departure for the Holy Land used to
the festival of the Assumption, the fifteenth of
August, of the ensuing year. 19

So familiar, and as it were so costly, was the
practice of violence,
that our indulgence allows the slightest provo-
cation, the most disputable right, as a sufficient
ground of national hostility. But the name and
nature of an holy war demands a more rigorous
scrutiny; nor can we hastily believe, that the
servants of the Prince of Peace would unmask
the sword of destruction, unless the motive were
pure, the quarrel legitimate, and the necessity
invincible. The policy of an action may be
determined from the tardy lessons of experience;
but, before we act, our conscience should be
satisfied of the justice and propriety of our en-
terprise. In the age of the crusades, the Chris-
tians, both of the East and West, were persuaded
of their lawful causes and merit; their arguments
were clouded by the perpetual stress of Scripture
and rhetoric; but they seem to insist on the
right of natural and religious defence, their pe-

18 A speech from the steps of the people. 19 Urban the Eighth, devote.
20 The council met on the 23d of December. The steps of the people were
very high, and the view from the platform, covered with white cloths,
from the steps of the people being death. But, as a Prelate, he was
the most remarkable of his class, his name is known to the
popes of the Church. He was 17. The name of God, who has published the original
21 The name of God, who has published the original
22 The name of God, who has published the original
23 The name of God, who has published the original
24 The name of God, who has published the original
25 The name of God, who has published the original
26 The name of God, who has published the original
27 The name of God, who has published the original
28 The name of God, who has published the original
29 The name of God, who has published the original
30 The name of God, who has published the original
valuable title to the Holy Land, and the impiety of their Pagan and Mahometan foes. The right of a just defence may fairly include our civil and spiritual allies: it depends on the existence of danger: and that danger must be estimated by the twofold consideration of the mulct, and the power of our enemies. A pernicious tenet has been imputed to the Mahometans, the duty of exterminating all other religions by the sword. This charge of ignorance and bigotry is refuted by the Koran, by the history of the Mussulman conquerors, and by their public and legal toleration of the Christian worship. But it cannot be denied, that the Oriental churches are depressed under their iron yoke; that, in peace and war, they assert a divine and indefeasible claim of universal empire; and that, in their orthodox creed, the unbelieving nations are continually threatened with the loss of religion or liberty. In the eleventh century, the victorious arms of the Turks presented a real and urgent apprehension of these losses. They had subdued, in less than thirty years, the kingdoms of Asia, as far as Jerusalem and the Hellespont; and the Greek empire tottered on the verge of destruction. Besides an honest sympathy for their brethren, the Latins had a right and interest in the support of Constantinople, the most important barrier of the West; and the privilege of defence must reach to prevent, as well as to repel, an impending assault. But this salutary purpose might have been accomplished by a moderate succour; and our clansmen must disdain the immovable hosts and remote operations, which overwhelmed Asia and depopulated Europe. II. Palestine could add nothing to the strength or safety of the Latins; and fanatical zeal could pretend to justify the conquest of that distant and narrow province. The Christians affirmed that their inalienable title to the promised land had been sealed by the blood of their divine Saviour: it was their right and duty to rescue their inheritance from the unjust possessors, who profaned his sepulchre, and oppressed the pilgrimages of his disciples. Vanity would it be alleged that the pre-eminence of Jerusalem, and the sanctity of Palestine, have been abolished with the Moslem law: that the God of the Christians is not a local deity, and that the recovery of Bethlem or Calvary, his cradle or his tomb, will not atone for the violation of the sacred precepts of the Gospel. Such arguments glance aside from the clear shield of superstition; and the religious mind will not easily relinquish its hold on the sacred ground of mystery and miracles. III. But the holy war which has been waged in every climate of the globe, from Egypt to Irriod, and from Persia to Hindostan, require the support of some more general and flexible tenet. It has been often supposed, and sometimes affirmed, that a difference of religion is a worthy cause of hostility; that obstinate unbelievers may be slain or subdued by the champions of the cross; and that grace is the sole fountain of dominion as well as of mercy. Above four hundred years before the first crusade, the eastern and western provinces of the Roman empire had been acquired about the same time, and in the same manner, by the barbarians of Germany and Arabia. Time and treaties had legitimated the conquest of the Christian Franks; but in the eyes of their subjects and neighbours, the Mahometan princes were still tyrants and strangers: why, by the arms of war or rebellion, might not be lawfully driven from their unlawful possessions? As the manners of the Christians were relaxed, their discipline of piety was enforced; and with the multiplication of sins, the remedies were multiplied. In the primitive church, a voluntary and open confession prepared the way of atonement. In the middle ages, the bishops and priests interrogated the criminal; compelled him to account for his thoughts, words, and actions; and prescribed the terms of his reconciliation with God. But as this discretionary power might alternately be abused by indulgence and tyranny, a rule of discipline was framed, to inform and regulate the spiritual judges. This mode of legislation was invented by the Greeks; their precepts were translated, or imitated, in the Latin church; and, in the time of Charlemagne, the clergy of every diocese were provided with a code, which they prudently concealed from the knowledge of the vulgar. In this dangerous estimate of crimes and punishments, such cases were supposed, each difference was remarked, by the experience or persuasion of the monks; some sins are enumerated which innocence could not have suspected, and others which reason cannot believe; and the more ordinary offences of formication and adultery, of perjury and sacrilege, of rapine and murder, were expiated by a penance, which, according to the various circumstances, was prolonged from forty days to seven years. During this term of mortification, the patient was healed, the criminal was absolved, by a salutary regimen of fasting and penance: the disorder of his dress was expressive of grief and remorse: and by humbly obtained from all the business and pleasure of social life. But the rigid execution of these laws would have depopulated the palace, the camp, and the city: the barbarians of the West believed and trembled; but maturely rebelled against principle; and the magistrate laboured without effect: to enforce the jurisdiction of the priest. A literal accomplishment of penance was indeed impracticable: the guilt of adultery was multiplied by daily repetition; that of homicide might involve the massacre of a whole people; each act was

---

20. If the reader will turn to the first page of the first part of Homer, he will see the same of the nature feelings that are expressed in the history of the Crusades. The Greeks were at one time as virtuous and ready to sacrifice their lives, as the Latins were afterwards, and as Latins are now; but the love and hate of men to God and his saints, are now felt in power by every people to take and preserve this world.

21. The 448th of Pope Urban's Historical History (p. 322.)

22. This practice, in the Middle ages, was so common, that it is unnecessary to mention instances of it. See also the Maturins of the 13th and 14th centuries. Litani Metall, lib. x. cap. 1. sect. 2.
separately numbered; and, in those times of
anxiety and vice, a modest ransom might easily
incur a debt of three hundred years. His
insolvency was relieved by a remittance, or
indulgence: a year of penance was appreciated
at twenty-six solidi of silver, about four pounds
sterling, for the rich; at three solidi, or nine
shillings, for the indigent; and those alms were
soon appropriated to the use of the church,
which derived, from the redemption of sins, an
incalculable source of opulence and dominion.
A debt of three hundred years, or twelve hun-
dred pounds, was enough to impoverish a plen-
tiful fortune; the scarcity of gold and silver
was supplied by the alienation of land; and the
princely donations of Pepin and Charles magne
are expressly given for the remission of their soul.
It is a maxim of the civil law, that whosoever
cannot pay with his purse, must pay with his
body; and the practice of flagellation was
adopted by the monks, a cheap, though painful,
equivalent. By a fantastic arithmetic, a year of
penance was taxed at three thousand lashes; 68
and such was the skill and patience of a famous
hermit, St. Dominick of the Iron Coils, 69 that in
six days he could discharge an entire century,
by a whipping of three hundred thousand stripes.
His example was followed by many penitents of
both sexes; and, as a vicarious sacrifice was ac-
cepted, a sturdy disciplinarian might expiate on
his own back the sins of his benefactors. 37
These compensations of the purse and the person
introduced, in the eleventh century, a more honourable
mode of satisfaction. The merit of military
service against the Saracens of Africa and Spain
had been allowed by the predecessors of Urban
the Second. In the council of Clermont, that
pope proclaimed a primary indulgence to those
who should enlist under the banner of the cross;
the absolution of all their sins, and a full receipt
for all that might be due of canonical penance. 78
The cold philosophy of modern times is
incapable of feeling the impression that was made
on a sinful and fanatical world. At the voice
of their pastor, the robber, the incendiary, the
homicide, swore by thousands to redeem their souls,
by repeating on the infidels the same deeds
which they had exercised against their Christian
brethren; and the terms of atonement were
eagerly embraced by officers of every rank and
denomination. None were pure; none were
exempt from the guilt and penalty of sin; and
those who were the least accessible to the justice
of God and the church, were the best entitled
to the temporal and eternal recompense of their
pious courage. If they fell, the spirit of the
Latin clergy did not hesitate to adorn their tomb
with the crown of martyrdom; 88 and should they
survive, they could expect without impu-

delay the delay and increase of their heavenly

reward. They offered their blood to the Son of
God, who had laid down his life for their salva-
tion: they took up the cross, and entered with
confidence into the way of the Lord. His pro-
vidence would watch over their safety; perhaps
his visible and inhuman power would smooth
the difficulties of their holy enterprise. The
cloud and pillar of Jehovah had marched before
the Israelites into the promised land. Might
not the Christians more reasonably hope that the
rivers would open for their passage; that the
wells of the strongest countries would fall at the
sound of their trumpets; and that the sun
would be arrested in his mid-career, to allow
them time for the destruction of the infidels?

Of the chiefs and soldiers who Tempest and
marched to the holy escalade, I

will dare to affirm, that all were prompted by
the spirit of enthusiasm; the belief of merit, the
hope of reward, and the assurance of divine aid.
But I am equally persuaded, that in some it was
not the sole, that in some it was not the leading
principle of action. The use and abuse of religion
are feebly to stem, they are strong and irresis-
tible to impel, the stream of national manners.
Against the private wars of the barbarians, their
bloody tournaments, licentious loves, and judi-

cial duels, the popes and synods might ineffec-
tually thunder. It is a more easy task to
provoke the metaphysical disputes of the Greeks,
to drive into the cloister the victims of anxiety
or despair, to sanctify the passions of slaves
and cowards, or to assume the merit of the hu-
manity and benevolence of modern Christians.
War and exercise were the reigning passions of
the Franks or Latins; they were enraged, as a
penance, to gratify those passions, to visit dis-
tant lands, and to draw their swords against the
nations of the East. Their victory, or even
their attempt, would immortalise the names of
the intrepid heroes of the cross; and the purest
piety could not be insensible to the most
splendid prospect of military glory. In the
petty quarrels of Europe, they shed the blood of
their friends and countrymen, for the acquisition
perhaps of a castle or a village. They could
march with alacrity against the distant and hos-
tile nations who were devoted to their arms;
their fancy already grasped the golden sceptres
of Asia; and the conquest of Apulia and Sicily
by the Normans might equal to royalty the hopes
of the most private adventurer. Christendom,
in her rudest state, must have yielded to the
climate and cultivation of the Mahometan coun-
tries; and their natural and artificial wealth had
been magnified by the tales of pilgrims, and the
gifts of an imperfect commissary. The vulgar,
faith the great and small, were taught to believe
in every wonder, of lands flowing with milk and
honey, of mines and treasures, of gold and diamonds,

48 The ninth century, we may respect the view afforded of
emotions, or passions, on the little, or shallow, or small, or
so the monk's and the student's life.
49 The excess of the order of a garrison, or of the soldiers,
the French and the English, was considerable.
50 The character of the Saracens is highly esteemed in the
works of the 16th, 17th, and 18th centuries; the engravings
of their head, as well as their inspector, are frequently seen.
51 The most remarkable of their successes are mentioned in
their own dissemination of the不仅可以
the merits of the hut
sion, or the assurance of divine aid.
But I am equally persuaded, that in some it was
not the sole, that in some it was not the leading
principle of action. The use and abuse of religion
are feebly to stem, they are strong and irresis-
tible to impel, the stream of national manners.
Against the private wars of the barbarians, their
bloody tournaments, licentious loves, and judi-

cial duels, the popes and synods might ineffec-
tually thunder. It is a more easy task to
provoke the metaphysical disputes of the Greeks,
to drive into the cloister the victims of anxiety
or despair, to sanctify the passions of slaves
and cowards, or to assume the merit of the hu-
manity and benevolence of modern Christians.
War and exercise were the reigning passions of
the Franks or Latins; they were enraged, as a
penance, to gratify those passions, to visit dis-
tant lands, and to draw their swords against the
nations of the East. Their victory, or even
their attempt, would immortalise the names of
the intrepid heroes of the cross; and the purest
piety could not be insensible to the most
splendid prospect of military glory. In the
petty quarrels of Europe, they shed the blood of
their friends and countrymen, for the acquisition
perhaps of a castle or a village. They could
march with alacrity against the distant and hos-
tile nations who were devoted to their arms;
their fancy already grasped the golden sceptres
of Asia; and the conquest of Apulia and Sicily
by the Normans might equal to royalty the hopes
of the most private adventurer. Christendom,
in her rudest state, must have yielded to the
climate and cultivation of the Mahometan coun-
tries; and their natural and artificial wealth had
been magnified by the tales of pilgrims, and the
gifts of an imperfect commissary. The vulgar,
faith the great and small, were taught to believe
in every wonder, of lands flowing with milk and
honey, of mines and treasures, of gold and diamonds,
of palaces of marble and jasper, and of odorous
rovos of cinnamon and frankincense. In
this earthly paradise, each warrior depended on
his sword to carve a splendid and honourable
establishment, which he measured only by the
extent of his wishes.10 Their vessels and
soldiers trusted their fortunes to God and their
master: the spoils of a Turkish enfil might enrich
the meanest follower of the camp; and the flavour
of the wine, the beauty of the Greek women,11
were temptations more adapted to the nature,
than to the profession, of the champions of the
cross. The love of freedom was a powerful in-
citement to the multitudes who were oppressed
by feudal or ecclesiastical tyranny. Under this
holy sign, the peasants and burghers, who were
attached to the servitude of the glebe, might
escape from an hangisty lord, and transplant them-
selves and their families to a land of liberty.
The monk might release himself from the dis-
pipline of his convent; the debtor might suspend
the accumulation of usury, and the pursuit of
his creditors; and outlaws and malefactors of
every cast might continue to brave the laws and
elude the punishment of their crimes.12

These motives were potent and
magnificent: when we have singly
computed their weight on the mind of each
individual, we must add the infinite series, the
multiplying powers of example and fashion.
The first proselytes became the warmest and
most effectual missionaries of the cross: among
their friends and countrymen they preached the
duty, the merit, and the recompense, of their
holy vocation; and the most reluctant hearers
were incessantly drawn within the whirlpool of
persuasion and authority. The martial youths
were fired by the reproach or suspicion of cowardice;
the opportunity of visiting with an army the
sanctuary of Christ, was embraced by the old and
infirm, by women and children, who consulted
rather their zeal than their strength; and those
who in the evening had decided the folly of their
companions, were the most eager, the ensuing
day, to tread in their footsteps. The ignominy,
which magnified the hopes, diminished the perils
of the undertaking. Since the Turkish conquest,
the paths of pilgrimage were obliterated; the
chiefs themselves had an imperfect notion of the
length of the way and the state of their
commissaries, and such was the stupidity of the people,
that, at the sight of the first city or castle
beyond the limits of their knowledge, they were
ready to ask whether that was not the Jerusalem,
the term and object of their labours. Yet the
more prudent of the crusaders, who were not
sure that they should be let from heaven with a
shower of quilts or manna, provided themselves
with those precious metals, which, in every
country, are the representatives of every com-
modi ty. To defy, according to their rank, the
expenses of the road, princes alienated their
provinces, nobles their lands and castles, peasants
their cattle and the instruments of husbandry.
The value of property was depreciated by the
ger competition of multitudes; while the price
of arms and horses was raised to an exorbitant
height by the wants and impatience of the
buyers.12 Those who remained at home, with
sense and money, were enriched by the epidemi-
cal disease: the sovereigns acquired at a cheap
tate the domains of their vessels; and the eccle-
siastical purchasers completed the payment by
the assurance of their prayers. The cross, which
was commonly sewed on the garment, in cloth
or silk, was inscribed by some zealots on their
skirt: an hot iron, or deadly liquor, was
applied to perpetuate the mark; and a crafty monk,
who showed the miraculous impression on his
breast, was repaid with the popular veneration
and the richest benefices of Palestine.10

The Fifteenth of August had been
fixed in the council of Clermont for the
departure of the pilgrims; but the
day was anticipated by the
thoughtless and needful crowd of pilgrims; and
I shall briefly despatch the calamities which
they inflicted and suffered, before I enter on the
more serious and successful enterprise of the
Church. Early in the spring, from the confines of France
and Lorraine, above sixty thousand of the popu-
lace of both sexes flocked round the first mis-
sionary of the crusade, and pressed him with
elegant importunity to lead them to the holy
这座城市。The hift, assuming the character
without the talents or authority, of a general,
impeled or obeyed the forward impulse of his
voluntaries along the banks of the Rhine and Dan-
ube. Their wants and numbers soon compelled
them to separate, and his lieutenant, Walter the
Pennyless, a valetud, though needly, soldier,
conducted a vanguard of pilgrims, whose condition
may be determined from the proportion of eight
bachelors to fifteen thousand feet. The example
and footsteps of Peter were closely pursued by
another fanatic, the monk Godenich, whose
sermons had swept away fifteen or twenty
thousand peasants from the villages of Germany.
Their rear was again pressed by an herd of two
hundred thousand, the most stupid and savage
refuse of the people, who mingled with their
devotion a brutal licence of rape, prostitution,
and drunkenness. Some counts and gentlemen,
at the head of three thousand horse, attended the
wounds of the multitude to partake in the spoils;
but their genuine leaders (may we credit such
folly?) were a gossip and a goat, who were var-
ted in the front, and to whom these worthy
Christians ascribed an infusion of the divine
spirit.10 Of these, and of other bands of emi-

He was one of the few contemporaries who had gone enough in the
ecedence of the Crusades, to understand in what terms it
was explained to the people. He, of course, was
Bume, who was the only one of the
missionaries who had been the
missionaries. He, of course, was
of course, was

10 The date here is a reference to a text in the addenda to
Clermont and the Crusades. The year 1095 is mentioned,
the year of the Crusades. The date here is a reference to
a text in the addenda to the Crusades. The year 1095 is
mentioned, the year of the Crusades. The date here is a
reference to a text in the addenda to the Crusades. The year
1095 is mentioned, the year of the Crusades.
thousand, the first and most easy warfare was against the Jews, the murderers of the Son of God. In the trampling cities of the Muscel and the Rhine their columns were numerous and rich; and they enjoyed, under the protection of the emperor and the bishops, the free exercise of their religion. At Vercors, Trier, Mentz, Stiles, Wurts, many thousands of that unhappy people were pillaged and massacred; nor had they felt a more bloody stroke since the persecution of Hadrian. A remnant was saved by the firmness of their bishops, who accepted a fugitive and transient conversion; but the more obstinate Jews opposed their fanaticism to the fanaticism of the Christians, barricaded their houses, and precipitating themselves, their families, and their wealth, into the rivers or the flames, disappointed the malice, or at least the sparks of their implacable foe.

Between the frontiers of Austria and the east of the Byzantine Empire, the crusaders were compelled to traverse an interval of six hundred miles; the wild and desolate countries of Hungary and Bulgaria. The soil is fruitful, and intersected with rivers; but it was then covered with morasses and forests, which spread to a boundless extent, whenever man has ceased to exercise his dominion over the earth. Both nations had abolished the rudiments of Christianity; the Hungarians were ruled by their native princes; the Bulgarians by a lieutenant of the Greek emperor; but, on the slightest provocation, their ferocious nature was rekindled, and ample provocation was afforded by the disorders of the first pilgrims. Agriculture must have been in a state of languishment among a people, whose cities were built of reeds and timber, which were deserted in the summer season for the tents of hunters and shepherds. Scanty supply of provisions was rudely demanded, forcibly seized, and greedily consumed; and on the first quarrel, the crusaders gave a loose to indignation and revenge. But their ignorance of the country, of war, and of discipline, exposed them to every snare. The Greek prelates of Bulgaria commanded a regular force; at the trumpet of the Hungarian king, the eighth or tenth of his martial subjects bent their bows and mounted on horseback; their policy was insidious, their retaliation on those peaceable rustlers was unrelenting and bloody. About a third of the naked fugitives, and the hermit Peter was of the number, escaped to the Thracian mountains; and the emperor, who respected the pilgrimage and succour of the Latins, conducted them by secure and easy journeys to Constantinople, and advised them to await the arrival of their brethren. For a while they remained in their faults and homes; but no sooner were they received by the hospitable entertainment, than their venom was again inflamed; they stung their benefactors, and neither gardens, nor palaces, nor churches, were safe from their depredations. For his own safety, Alexius allowed them to pass over to the Asiatic side of the Bosporus; but their blind impetuosity soon urged them to desert the station which he had assigned, and to rush headlong against the Turks, who occupied the road of Jerusalem. The hermit, conscious of his alms, had withdrawn from the camp to Constantinople, and his lieutenant, Walter the Penniless, who was worthy of a better command, attempted without success to introduce some order and prudence among the band of savages. They separated in quest of prey, and themselves fell an easy prey to the arts of the sultan. By a ruse that their foremost companions were rioting in the spoils of his capital, Solomon tempted the main body to descend into the plain of Nice; they were overthrown by the Turkish arrows; a pyramidal mass of bones informed their companions of the place of their defeat. Of the first crusaders, three hundred thousand had already perished, before a single city was rescued from the infidels, before their graver and more noble brethren had completed the preparations of their enterprise.

None of the great sovereigns of Europe embarked their persons in the first crusade. The emperor Henry the Fourth was not disposed to obey the summons of the pope; Philip the First of France was occupied by his pleasures; William Rufus of England by a recent conquest; the kings of Spain were engaged in a domestic war against the Moors; and the northern monarchs of Scotland, Denmark, Sweden, and Poland, were yet strangers to the passions and interests of the South. The religious ardour was more strongly felt by the princes of the second order, who held an important place in the feudal system. Their situation will naturally cast under four distinct heads the review of their names and characters; but I may escape some needless repetition, by observing at once, that courage and the exercise of arms are the common attribute of these Christian adventurers.

1. The first task both in Hungary and England was war and council, justly due to Godfrey of Bouillon; and happy would it have been for the crusaders, if they had trusted themselves to the sole conduct of that accomplished hero, a worthy representative of Charlemagne, from
II. In the parliament that was held at Paris, in the king's presence, about two months after the council of Clermont, Hugh, count of Vermandois, was the most conspicuous of the princes who assumed the cross. But the appellation of the Great was applied, not so much to his merit or possessions (though neither were contemptible), as to the royal birth of the brother of the king of France. 44 Robert, duke of Normandy, was the eldest son of William the Conqueror; but on his father's death he was deprived of the kingdom of England, by his own incontinence and the activity of his brother Rufus. The birth of Robert was degraded by an excessive levity and easiness of temper; his cheerfulness seduced him to the indulgence of pleasure; his profuse liberality impoverished the prince and people; his indiscriminate clemency multiplied the number of offenders; and the amiable qualities of a private man became the essential defects of a sovereign. For the trifling sum of ten thousand marks, he mortgaged Normandy during his absence to the English usurper; 45 but his engagement and behaviour in the holy war, announced in Robert a reformation of manners, and restored him in some degree to the public esteem. Another Robert was count of Flanders, a royal province, which, in this century, gave three queens to the thrones of France, England, and Denmark: he was summoned the Sword and Lance of the Christians; but in the exploits of a soldier, he sometimes forgot the duties of a general. Stephen, count of Chartres, of Blois, and of Troyes, was one of the richest princes of the age; and the number of his

---

* * *

44 Anna Comnena supposes, that Hugh was proud of his nobility, riches, and power (ib. p. 129.) but the two last virtues appear more apparent than real; and the palace of Clermont, near the ancient dignity of the Church of Lyons, was considered by him as the only mark.

45 See the Descriptions of France, in the Annales des Comtes, p. 124. and in the Historia, p. 34. of the year 1119, v. 3. 43. (on his departure, Godfrey said to the king, 'The world will soon see how much the cross is worth.')

46 See his previous design, in Usuard p. 455. to his sickness and grief, at Sens and Tours, in v. 70.

---

* To save time and space, I shall represent, in a short title, the particular references to the great events of the first period.
castles has been compared to the three hundred and sixty-five days of the year. His mind was improved by literature; and in the council of the chief, the eloquent Stephen 38 was chosen to discharge the office of their president. These four were the principal leaders of the French, the Normans, and the pilgrims of the British isles: but the list of the barons who were possessed of three or four towns, would exceed, says a contemporary, the catalogue of the Trojan war. 39 40. In the south of France, of whom the command was assumed by Adalarus, bishop of Puy, the pope's legate, and by Raymond, count of St. Gilles and Troubouze, who added the ponderous titles of duke of Narbonne and marquis of Provence. The former was a respectable prelate, alike qualified for this world and the next. The latter was a veteran warrier, who had fought against the Saracens of Spain, and who consecrated his declining age, not only to the deliverance, but to the perpetual service, of the holy sepulchre. His experience and riches gave him a strong ascendancy in the Christian camp, whose distress he was often able, and sometimes willing, to relieve. But it was easier for him to extort the praise of the infidels, than to preserve the love of his subjects and associates. His eminent qualities wereclouded by a temper, haughty, contentious, and obstinate; and, though he resigned an ample patrimony, for the cause of God, his piety, in the public opinion, was not exempt from avarice and ambition. 41 A mercantile, rather than a martial spirit, prevailed among his provincials, a common name, which included the natives of Avarigne and Langres, the vessels of the kingdom of Burgundy and Artois. From the adjacent frontier of Spain, he drew a band of hardy adventurers; as he marched through Lombardy, a crowd of Italians flocked to his standard; and his united forces consisted of one hundred thousand horse and foot. If Raymond was the first to enlist and the last to depart, the delay may be excused by the greatness of his preparation and the promise of an everlasting farewell. IV. The name and Emares 42 of Bohemond, the son of Robert Guiscard, was already famous by his double victory over the Greek emperor: but his father's will had reduced him to the principality of Taranto, and the remembrance of his Eastern trophies, till he was awakened by the rumour and passion of the French pilgrims. It is in the person of this Norman chief that we may seek for the coolest policy and ambition, with a small alloy of religious fanaticism. His conduct may justify a belief that he had secretly directed the design of the pope which he affected to second with astonishment and zeal; at the siege of Jerusalem, his example and discourse inflamed the passions of a confederate army; he instantly tore his garment to supply crosses for the numerous candidates, and prepared to visit Constantinople and Asia at the head of ten thousand horse and twenty thousand foot. Several princes of the Norman race accompanied this veteran general; and his cousin Tancred 43 was the partner, rather than the servant, of the war. In the accomplished character of Tancred, we discover all the virtues of a perfect knight, 44 the true spirit of chivalry, which inspired the generous sentiments and social offices of man, far better than the base philosophy, or the baser religion, of the times.

Between the age of Charlemagne and that of the crusades, a revolution had taken place among the Spaniards, the Normans, and the French, which was gradually extended to the rest of Europe. The service of the infantry was degraded to the peltastae; the cavalry formed the strength of the armies, and the honourable name of miles, or soldier, was confided to the gentlemen 45 who served on horseback, and were invested with the character of knighthood. The dukes and counts, who had usurped the rights of sovereignty, divided the provinces among their faithful barons; the barons distributed among their vassals the fiefs or benefices of their jurisdiction; and these military tenants, the peers of each other and of their lord, composed the noble or equestrian order, which declared to receive the peasant or burgher as of the same species with themselves. The dignity of their birth was preserved by pure and equal alliances; their sons alone, who could produce four quarters or lines of ancestry, without spot or reproach, might legally pretend to the honour of knighthood; but a valiant plebeian was sometimes enriched and rewarded by the sword, and became the father of a new race. A single knight could impart, according to his judgment, the character which he received; and the warslike sovereigns of Europe derived more glory from this personal distinction, than from the lustre of their diadem. This ceremony, of which some traces may be found in Tacitus and the woods of Germany, 46 was in its origin simple and primitive; the candidate, after some previous trial, was intrusted with the custody of so trifling a person as a baby, and delivered to the white and crimson宽容 of the infant. The prince, who was the father of this ceremony, was born, it is said, in the year 1200, and was a natural son of the emperor Frederick II, a prince of the most ruling name in Italy, and the father of the emperors of Germany. His son Frederick, 34 had the original design of the house of Trastamara, a most authentic chronicle, and the most learned history of his state and the kingdom of Spain, by a recent historian, is published and printed, and has been translated into English and German, by the learned Dr. Erasmus, 47 and others. The elevation of the princes of Trastamara to the rank of kings is the subject of the poem of the Guzman de Berdegue, a epicurean in Spain, and the most learned of his age. The Guzman, and his companion, were both educated in the college of the Jesuits, and are both noted for their learning and wit. The Guzman, and his companion, were both educated in the college of the Jesuits, and are both noted for their learning and wit.
vested with his sword and spurs; and his cheek or shoulder was touched with a slight blow, as an emblem of the last affront which it was lawful for him to endure. But superstition mingled in every public and private action of life; in the holy wars, it sanctified the profession of arms; and the order of chivalry was assimilated in its rights and privileges to the sacred orders of priesthood. The bath and white garment of the novice were an indelible copy of the regeneration of baptism: his sword, which he offered on the altar, was blessed by the ministers of religion: his solemn reception was preceded by fasts and vigils; and he was created a knight in the name of God, of St. George, and of St. Michael the archangel. He swore to accomplish the duties of his profession; and education, example, and the public opinion, were the inviolable guardians of his oath. As the champion of God and the ladies (I blush to unite such discordant names), he devoted himself to speak the truth; to maintain the right; to protect the distressed; to practice courtesy, a virtue less familiar to the ancients; to pursue the infidel; to despise the allurements of ease and safety; and to vindicate in every perilous adventure the honour of his character. The abuse of the same spirit provoked the illustrious knight to disdain the arts of industry and peace; to esteem himself the sole judge and avenger of his own injuries; and proudly to neglect the laws of civil society and military discipline. Yet the benefits of this institution, to refine the temper of barbarians, and to infuse some principles of faith, justice, and humanity, were strongly felt, and have been often observed. The asperity of national prejudices was softened; and the community of religion and arms spread a similar colour and generous emulation over the face of Christendom. Abroad, in enterprise and pilgrimage, at home in martial exercise, the warriors of every country were perpetually associated; and impartial taste must prefer a Gothic tournament to the Olympic games of classic antiquity. Instead of the naked spectacles which corrupted the manners of the Greeks, and banished from the stadium the virgin and matron; the pompous decoration of the lists was crowned with the presence of claret and high-bred beauty, from whose hands the conqueror received the prize of his dexterity and courage. The skill and strength that were exercised in wrestling and boxing bear a distant and doubtful relation to the merit of a soldier; but the tournaments, as they were invented in France, and eagerly adopted both in the East and West, presented a lively image of the business of the field. The single combats, the general skirmish, the defence of a pass or castle, were rehearsed as in actual service; and the contest, both in real and mimic war, was decided by the superior management of the horse and lance. The lance was the proper and peculiar weapon of the knight; his horse was of a large and heavy breed; but this charger, till he was reared by the approaching danger,
in their turn they had abused the right of defence and retaliation; and they had reason to apprehend a severe revenge from an hero of the same nation, and who was engaged in the same cause. But, after weighing the motives and the events, the virtuous duke was content to pity the crimes and misfortunes of his worthless brethren; and his twelve deputies, the messengers of peace, requested in his name a free passage and an equal market. To remove their suspicions, Godfrey trusted himself, and afterwards his brother, to the faith of Carlistian king of Hungary, who treated them with a simple but hospitable entertainment: the treaty was sanctified by their common Gospel; and a proclamation, under pain of death, restrained the animosity and licence of the Latin soldiers. From Austria to Belgrade, they traversed the plains of Hungary, without encumbering or offering an injury; and the proximity of Carlistian, who hovered on their flanks with his numerous cavalry, was a precaution not less useful for their safety than for his own. They reached the banks of the Save; and no sooner had they crossed the river than the king of Hungary restored the hostages, and saluted their departure with the fairest wishes for the success of their enterprise. With the same conduct and discipline, Godfrey paved the woods of Bulgaria and the frontiers of Thrace; and might congratulate himself, that he had almost reached the first term of his pilgrimage, without drawing his sword against a Christian adversary. After an easy and pleasant journey through Macedonia, from Trik to Aquis瓜s, Raymond and his provincials marched forty days through the savage country of Dalmatia and Scelonia. The weather was a perpetual fog; the land was mountainous and desolate; the natives were either fugitive or hostile; loose in their religion and government; they refused to furnish provisions or guides; murdered the strangers; and exercised by night and day the vigilance of the count, who derived more secuity from the punishment of some captive robbers than from his interview and treaty with the prince of Scodra.

His march between Durazzo and Constantinople was harassed, without being stopped, by the peasants and soldiers of the Greek emperor; and the same faint and ambiguous hostility was prepared for the remaining chiefs, who passed the Hastratic from the coast of Italy. Bohemond had arms and vessels, and foresight and discipline; and his name was not forgotten in the provinces of Epirus and Thessaly. Whatever obstacles he encountered were surmounted by his military conduct and the valour of Tancred; and if the Norman prince affected to spare the Greeks, he forged his soldiers with the full plunder of an heretical castle. The nobles of France pressed forwards with the vain and thoughtless arbour of which their nation has been sometimes accused. From the Alps to Apulia the march of Hugh the Great, of the two Roberts, and of Stephen of Chartres, through a wealthy country, and amidst the applauding Catholics, was a devout or triumphant progress; they kissed the foot of the Roman pontiff; and the golden standard of St. Peter was delivered to the brother of the French monarch. But in this visit of piety and pleasure, they neglected to secure the season and the means of their embarkation; the winter was insensibly lost: their troops were scattered and corrupted in the towns of Italy. They separately accomplished their passage, regardless of safety or dignity; and within nine months from the feast of the Assumption, the day appointed by Urban, all the Latin princes had reached Constantinople. But the court of Verrunafo was produced as a captive; his foremost vessels were scattered by a tempest; and his person, against the law of nations, was detained by the lieutenants of Alexius. Yet the arrival of Hugh had been announced by four and twenty knights in golden armour, who commanded the emperor to revolve the general of the Latin Christians, the brother of the King of kings.

In some Oriental tale I have read that the man of the shepherd, who was engaged in the accomplishment of his own wishes, had prayed for water; the Ganges was turned into his grounds, and they bought and cottage were swept away by the inundation. Such was the fortune, or at least the apprehension, of the Greek emperor Alexius Constantinople. The danger has already appeared in this history, and whose conduct is so differently represented by his daughter and by the Latin writers. In the council of Placentia, his ambassadors had solicited a moderate succour, perhaps of ten thousand soldiers; but he was astonishe by the approach of so many potent chiefs and fanatic nations. The emperor fluctuated between hope and fear, between timidity and courage; and the crooked policy which he mistook for wisdom, I cannot believe, I cannot discern, that he mischievously conspired against the life or honour of the French heroes. The promises and multitudes of Peter the Hermit were savage beasts, alike

---

62 The relations between the Greeks and the Latin princes are sometimes confused; the notions of Tancred are traced to Salerno, the Greeksركان to Jerusalem. In the year 1102, the Latin princes delivered the Casmar to the Turks, who immediately advanced to the Trent and the Parma. 63 In the reign of Tancred, the Greeks were the enemies of the Turks, and united with them against the Latins. 64 The Crusade in Asia Minor was the result of the Fourth Crusade, which was the first of its kind. 65 The Crusade in Asia Minor was the result of the Fourth Crusade, which was the first of its kind. 66 In the reign of Tancred, the Greeks were the enemies of the Turks, and united with them against the Latins. 67 In the reign of Tancred, the Greeks were the enemies of the Turks, and united with them against the Latins. 68 In the reign of Tancred, the Greeks were the enemies of the Turks, and united with them against the Latins. 69 In the reign of Tancred, the Greeks were the enemies of the Turks, and united with them against the Latins. 70 In the reign of Tancred, the Greeks were the enemies of the Turks, and united with them against the Latins. 71 In the reign of Tancred, the Greeks were the enemies of the Turks, and united with them against the Latins.
...destinate of humanity and reason; nor was it possible for Alexius to prevent or deplore their destruction. The troops of Godfrey and his peers were less contemptible, but not less suspicions, to the Greek emperor. Their motives might be pure and pious; but he was equally alarmed by his knowledge of the ambitious Bohemond, and his ignorance of the Transalpine chiefs: the courage of the French was blind and卤hardy; they might be tempted by the luxury and wealth of Greece, and elated by the view and opinion of their invincible strength; and Jerusalem might be forgotten in the prospect of Constantinople. After a long march and painful abstinence, the troops of Godfrey encamped in the plains of Thrace; they heard with indignation, that their brother, the count of Vermandois, was imprisoned by the Greeks; and their reluctant duke was compelled to indulge them in some freedom of retaliation and rapine. They were appeased by the submission of Alexius; he promised to supply their camp; and as they retired, in the midst of winter, to pass the Bosphorus, their quarters were assigned among the gardens and palaces on the shores of that narrow sea. But an incurable jealousy still rankled in the minds of the two nations, who deplored each other as slaves and barbarians. Ignorance is the ground of suspicion, and suspicion is inflamed into daily provocations: prejudice is blind, hunger is deaf; and Alexius seemed of a design to starve or assault the Latin in a dangerous pass on all sides encumbered with the waters. 

Godfrey sounded his trumpets, heurst the not, overpassed the plain, and insulted the suburbs: but the gates of Constantinople were strongly fortified; the ramparts were lined with archers; and after a doubtful conflict, both parties listened to the voice of peace and religion. The gifts and promises of the emperor insensibly soothed the fierce spirit of the western strangers; as a Christian warrior, he rekindled their zeal for the prosecution of their holy enterprise, which he engaged to second with his troops and treasures. On the return of spring, Godfrey was persuaded to occupy a pleasant and plentiful camp in Asia; and no sooner had he passed the Bosphorus, than the Greek vessels were suddenly recalled to the opposite shore. The same policy was repeated with the succeeding chiefs, who were swayed by the example, and weakened by the departure, of their foremost companions. By his skill and diligence, Alexius prevented the union of any two of the confederate armies, under the walls of Constantinople; and before the feast of the Pentecost, a Latin pilgrim was left on the coast of Europe.

He deceiving the

Europe might deliver Asia, and repel the Turks from the neighbouring shores of the Bosphorus and Hellespont. The fair provinces from Nica in Asia were the recent patrimony of the Roman emperor; and his ancient and perpetual claim still embraced the kingdom of Syria and Egypt. In his enthusiasm, Alexius indulged, or affected, the ambitious hope of leading his new allies to subvert the thrones of the East; but the calmer dictates of reason and temper dissuaded him from exposing his royal person to the faith of unknown and lawless barbarians. His prudence, or his pride, was content with extorting from the French princes an oath of homage and fidelity, and a solemn promise, that they would either restore, or hold, their Asiatic conquests, as the humble and loyal vassals of the Roman empire. Their independent spirit was fixed at the mention of this foreign and voluntary servitude: they successively yielded to the dexterous application of gifts and flattery; and the first prelates became the most eloquent and effectual missionaries to multiply the companions of their shame. The pride of Hugh of Vermandois was soothed by the honours of his captivity; and in the brother of the French king, the example of submission was present and weighty. In the mind of Godfrey of Bouillon every human consideration was subordinated to the glory of God and the success of the crusade. He had firmly resisted the temptations of Bohemond and Raymond, who urged the attack and conquest of Constantinople. Alexius esteemed his virtues, deservedly named him the champion of the empire, and dignified his homage with the filial name and the rights of adoption. The faithful Bohemond was received as a true and constant ally; and if the emperor reminded him of former indiscretions, it was only to praise the valour that he had displayed, and the glory that he had acquired, in the fields of Durazzo and Lauria. The son of Guiscard was lodged and entertained, and served with Imperial pomp: one day, as he passed through the gallery of the palace, a door was carelessly left open, to expose a pile of gold and silver, of silk and gems, of curiosities and costly furniture, that was hung in sequestering disorder, from the floor to the roof of the chamber. "What compacts," exclaimed the ambitious monarch, "might not be achieved by the possession of such a treasure?" "It is your own," replied a Greek attendant, who watched the motions of his soul; and Bohemond, after some hesitation, conferred to accept this magnificent present. The Norman was flattered by the assurance of an independent principality; and Alexius studied, rather than denied, his daring demand of the office of great dominie, or general, of the East. The two Robert, the son of the conqueror of England, and the kinsman of three queens, bowed in their turn before the Byzantine throne. A private letter of Stephen of Chartres attests his admiration of the emperor, the most excellent and liberal of men, who taught him to believe that he was a favourite, and promised to educate and establish...
duty of Alexius; a great number of boats were transported on sledges from the sea to the lake; they were filled with the most dexterous of his seamen; the flight of the sultan was intercepted; Nice was invested by land and water; and a Greek emissary persuaded the inhabitants to accept his master's protection, and to save themselves, by a timely surrender, from the rage of the savages of Europe. In the moment of victory, or at least of hope, the crusaders, thirsting for blood and plunder, were awed by the Imperial banner that streamed from the citadel; and Alexius guarded with jealous vigilance this important conquest. The treasures of the chief were stilled by honour or interest; and after an halt of nine days, they directed their march towards Phrygia under the guidance of a Greek general, whom they suspected of a secret concurrence with the sultan. The consent and the principal servants of Solomon had been honourably restored without ransom; and the emperor's generosity to the vanquished was interpreted as treason to the Christian cause.

Sultan was rather provoked than dismayed by the loss of his capital: he admonished his subjects and allies of this strange invasion of the Western barbarians; the Turkish tribes obeyed the call of loyalty or religion; the Turkman heroes encamped round his standard; and his whole force is loosely stated by the Christians at two hundred, or even three hundred and sixty, thousand hosts. Yet his patience was tried till they had left behind them the sea and the Greek frontier: and hovering on the flanks, observed their cautious and confident progress in two columns beyond the view of each other. Some miles before they could reach Doryleum in Phrygia, the left, and least numerous, division was surprised, attacked, and almost oppressed, by the Turkish cavalry. The heat of the weather, the clouds of arrows, and the barbarous onset, overwhelmed the crusaders; they lost their order and confidence; the fighting was sustained by the personal valor, rather than by the military conduct, of Bohemund, Tancred, and Robert of Normandy. They were revived by the welcome banquets of the duke Godfrey, who flew to their succour, with the count of Vermandois, and sixty thousand horse; and was followed by Raymond of Thouars, the bishop of Pay, and the remainder of the sacred army. Without a moment's pause, they formed in new order, and advanced to a second battle. They were received with equal resolution; and, in their common disdain for the unwarlike people of Greece and Asia, it was confessed on both sides, that the Turks and the Franks were the only nations entitled to the appellation of soldiers. Their encounter was varied and balanced by the contrast of arms and discipline; of the direct charge, and wheeling evolutions; of the encircled lance, and the brandished javelin; of a weighty broadsword, and a crooked sabre; of conical armour, and thin flowing robes; and of the long Tatar bow, and the ardent or cross-bow, a deadly weapon, yet unknown to the Orientals. As long as the horses were fresh, and the quivers full, Solomon maintained the advantage of the day; and four thousand Christians were pierced by the Turkish arrows. In the evening, swiftness yielded to strength; on either side the numbers were equal, or at least as great as any ground could hold, or any generals could manage; but in turning the hills, the last division of Raymond and his predecessors was led, perhaps without design, on the rear of an exhausted army; and the long contest was determined. Besides a nameless and uncounted multitude, three thousand Bogus knights were slain in the battle and pursuit; the camp of Solomon was pillaged; and in the variety of precious spoil, the curiosity of the Latins was amused with foreign arms and apparel, and the new aspect of dromedaries and camels. The importance of the victory was proved by the lusty rustics of the sultan; reserving ten thousand guards of the relics of his army, Solomon evacuated the kingdom of Iconium, and hastened to implore the aid, and kindle the resentment, of his Eastern brethren. In march of five hundred miles, the crusaders traversed the Lesser Asia, through a wasted land and desert towns, without finding either a friend or an enemy. The geographer may trace the position of Doryleum, Antioch of Pisidia, Iconium, Anthedon, and Germania, and may compare those classic apppellations with the modern names of Edirne the old city, Akboh the white city, Cogut, Erekli, and Massad. As the pilgrims passed over a desert, where a draught of water is exchanged for silver, they were tormented by intolerable thirst; and on the banks of the first rivulet, their haste and intemperance were still more piquant to the disorderly throng. They clambered with toil and danger the steep and slippery sides of Mount Taurus; many of the soldiers cast away their arms to secure their footsteps; and had not terror preceded their van, the long and trembling file might have been driven down the precipice by a handful of resolute enemies. Two of their most respectal chiefs, the duke of Lorraine and the count of Thouars, were carried in litter; Raymond was raised, as it is said, by miracle, from an hopeless malady; and Godfrey had been torn by a bear, as he pursued that
rough and perilous strait in the mountains of Phœnix.

To improve the general constan-
tuation, the eminence of Bohemond and
the brother of Godfrey were de-
tached from the main army with
their respective squadrons of five, and of seven,
& hundred knights. They over-ran in a rapid
course over the hills and sea-coast of Cilicia, from
Otranto to the Syrian gates; the Norman standard
was first planted on the walls of Termes and
Malmiyene; but the proud injustice of Baldwin
as length provoked the patient and generous
Italian; and they turned their consecrated
swords against each other in a private and pro-
finite quarrel. Honour was the motive, and
fame the reward, of Tancred; but fortune smiled
on the more selfish enterprise of his rival. He
was called to the assistance of a Greek or
Armenian tyrant, who had been suffered under
the Turkish yoke in reign over the Christians of
Edessa. Baldwin accepted the character of his
son and champion; but no sooner was he intro-
duced into the city, than he inflamed the people
in the bane to the measure of his father, occupied the
throne and treasure, extended his conquests over
the hils of Armenia and the plain of Mesopotamia,
and founded the first principality of the Franks or
Latin, which subsisted fifty-four years be-

Before the Franks could enter
Syria, the summer, and even the
autumn, were completely wasted.

In the siege of Antioch, or the separa-
tion and repos of the army during the winter,
season, was strongly debited in their council;
the love of arms, and the holy sepulchre urged
them to advance; and reason perhaps was on
the side of resolution, since every hour of delay
shakes the fame and force of the invader, and
mutilates the resources of defensive war. The
capital of Syria was protected by the river
Orontes; and the iron bridge, of nine arches,
derives its name from the seven gates of the
two towers which are constructed at either end.

They were opened by the sword of the Stabax
of Normandy: his victory gave entrance to three
hundred thousand crusaders, an account which
may allow some scope for lies and deceptions,
but which clearly detects much exaggeration in
the review of Nice. In the description of
Antioch, it is not easy to define a middle term
between her ancient magnificence, under the
successors of Alexander and Augustus, and the
modern aspect of Turkish desolation. The
Te trepaddia, or four cities, if they retained
their same and position, must have left a large vancy
in a circumference of twelve miles; and that
measure, as well as the number of four hundred
towers, are not perfectly consistent with the
fire gates, so often mentioned in the history of
the siege. Yet Antioch must have still floured as
a great and populous capital. At the head
of the Turkish emirs, Baghsian, a veteran chief,
commanded in the place; his garrison was com-
posed of six or seven thousand horse, and fifteen
or twenty thousand foot: one hundred thousand
Moslems are said to have fallen by the sword:
and their numbers were probably inferior to the
Greeks, Armenians, and Syriacs, who had been
for more than fourteen years the slaves of the
house of Seljuk. From the remains of a solid
state they fell, it appears to have risen to the
wealth of three thousand feet in the valleys; and
wherever less art and labour had been applied,
the ground was supposed to be defended by the
river, the mountains, and the mountains. Not
withstanding these fortifications, the city had
been repeatedly taken by the Persians, the
Arabs, the Greeks, and the Turks; a large

28. This detached conquest of Termes is best represented by Ph. Ar-
umachus, Tommaso de' Cavalieri, and Maseroni, the entire volume of Moses de' Cavalieri, Moneb. del Tacticum, vol. 1, p. 71, &c. In the division of the

29. See de Oregina, Hist. de Bosia, vol. 1, p. 320.

30. For Antonio de' Cavalieri, S.D. de Herrando, and other accounts of the


32. See de Oregina, Hist. de Bosia, vol. 1, p. 320.

his youngest son. In his southern province, the count of St. Gils and Thomaise faintly recognized the supremacy of the king of France, a prince of a foreign nation and language. At the head of an hundred thousand men, he declared that he was the soldier and servant of Christ alone, and that the Greek might be satisfied with an equal treaty of alliance and friendship. His obstinate resistance enhanced the value and the price of his submission; and he alone, says the princess Anne, among the barbarians, as the sun amidst the stars of heaven. His disgust of the name and insolence of the French, his suspicions of the designs of Bohemond, the emperor imparted to his faithful Raymond; and that aged statesman might clearly discern, that, however false in friendship, he was sincere in his enmity. The spirit of chivalry was last subdued in the person of Tancred; and none could deem themselves dishonoured by the imitation of that gallant knight. He disdained the gold and flattery of the Greek monarch; asserted in his presence an insolent patrician; escaped to Asia in the habit of a private soldier; and yielded with a sigh to the authority of Bohemond and the interest of the Christian cause. The best and most ostensible reason was the impossibility of passing the seas and accomplishing their vow, without the license and the escort of Alexius; but they cherished a secret hope, that as soon as they trod the continent of Asia, their swords would obliterate their shame, and dissolve the engagement, which on his side might not be very faithfully performed. The ceremony of their homage was grateful to a people who had long since considered pride as the attribute of power. High on his throne, the emperor sat举 inscrutable and immovable; his majesty was adored by the Latin princes; and they submitted to kiss either his feet or his knees, an indignity which their own writers are ashamed to confess, and unable to deny. The enmity of the Franks. Private or public interest suppressed the murmurs of the dukes and counts; but a French baron (he is supposed to be Robert of Paris) presumed to ascend the throne, and to place himself by the side of Alexius. The sage reproof of Baldwin provoked him to explain, in his barbarous idiom, "Who is this rustic, that keeps his seat, while so many valiant captains are standing round him?" The emperor maintained his silence, dissembled his indignation, and questioned his interlocutor concerning the meaning of the words, which he partly suspected from the universal language of gesture and countenance. Before the departure of the pilgrims, he endeavoured to learn the name and condition of the audacious baron. "I am a Frenchman," replied Robert, "of the purest and most ancient nobility of my country. All that I know is, that there is a church in my neighbourhood, the restorers of which are desirous of approving their value in single combat. Till an enemy appears, they address their prayers to God and his saints. That church I have frequently visited, but never have I found an antagonist who dared accept my defiance." Alexius dismissed the challenger with some prudent advice for his conduct in the Turkish war; and history reports with pleasure this lively example of the manners of his age and country.

The conquest of Asia was undertaken and achieved by Alexius, and rendered with thirty-five thousand Macedonians and Greeks; and his best hope was in the strength and discipline of his phalanx of infantry. The principal forces of the Crusaders consisted in their cavalry; and when that force was mastered in the plains of Bithynia, the knights and their martial attendants on horseback amounted to one hundred thousand fighting men, completely armed with the helmet and coat of mail. The value of these soldiers deserved a strict and authentic account; and the flower of European chivalry might furnish, in a first effort, this formidable body of heavy horse. A part of the infantry might be enrolled for the service of scouts, pioneers, and archers; but the prolixous crowd were lost in their own disorder; and we depend not on the eye or knowledge, but on the belief and fancy, of a chaplain of count Baldwin, who, in the estimate of six hundred thousand pilgrims able to bear arms, besides the priests and monks, the women and children, of the Latin camp. The reader will be just in his surprise, I shall add, on the same testimony, that if all who took the cross had accomplished their vow, above six millions would have migrated from Europe to Asia. Under this oppression of faith, I derive some relief from a more sagacious and thinking writer, who, after the same review of the cavalry, accuses the credulity of the priest of Chartres, and even doubts whether the Cilician regions (in the geography of a Frenchman) were sufficient to produce and nourish such incredible multitudes. The coolest scepticism will remember, that of these religious volunteers great numbers never beheld Constantinople and Nice. Of enthusiasm the influence is irregular and transient; many were detained at home by reason or cowardice, by poverty or weakness; and many were repulsed by the obstacles of the

46 "Sunt senes magni, fratres in armis, ilesa vis figuris. Text.

47 "The noblest inhabitants of the principal cities and countries near this flourishing city, yet, on the least pretext to raise the siege as to be able to make a proper attack, and to await the issue of other our towns. It is only singular, that Athens would not have been taken, unless the number of their garrisons would have added a new chapter to the history of the fall of the empire.

48 He delivered himself so severely to return Lusignan, l. v. p. 204.1. When a wise admiral of the 12th century, if we may judge from the account of the great Robert of Paris, who was then in the service of the king of France, to the Emperor Alexius, that the misty barrier, so soon established, was elided, for the protection of the right bank of the river, and that its equipment would be so honourable to the name of the Emperor Alexius, that a great number of it might be added to the glory of the Emperor, and of the House of Lusignan.

49 This circumstance may justify the omission of Parma, which was previously cited in the history of the 17th century as the model of one of the Barons of France.
way, the more insuperable as they were unforeseen by these ignorant fanatics. The savage countries of Hungary and Bulgaria were whitened with their bones; their vanguard was cut in pieces by the Turkish sultan; and the loss of the first adventure, by the sword, or climate, or fatigue, has already been stated at three hundred thousand men. Yet the myriads that survived, that marched, that pressed forwards on the holy pilgrimage, were a subject of astonishment to themselves and to the Greeks. The copious story of the approaching Turks under the aegis of the princess Anne: the images of locusts, of arrows and arrows, of the snouts of the sea, or the stars of heaven, imperfectly represent what she had seen and heard; and the daughter of Alexius explains that Europe was loosened from its foundations, and hurled against Asia. The ancient busts of Darius and Xerxes labour under the same doubt of a vague and indefinite magnitude: but I am inclined to believe, that a larger number has never been contained within the lines of a single camp, than at the siege of Nice, the first operation of the Latin princes. Their motives, their characters, and their arms, have been already displayed. Of their troop, the most numerous portion were natives of France; the Low Countries, the banks of the Rhine, and Aquitaine, sent a powerful reinforcement; some bands of adventurers were drawn from Spain, Lombardy, and England; and from the distant bogs and mountains of Ireland or Scotland issued some naked and savage fanatics, ferocious at home but unwarlike abroad. Had not superstition condemned the sacrilegious prudence of depriving the poorest or weakest Christian of the merit of the pilgrimage, the useless crowd, with mouths but without hands, might have been stationed in the Greek empire, till their companions had opened and secured the way of the Lord. A small remnant of the pilgrims, who passed the Bosporus, was permitted to visit the holy sepulchre. Their northern constitution was scorched by the rays, and infected by the vapours, of a Syrian sun. They consumed, with heedless prodigality, their stores of water and provision: their numbers exhausted the inland country: the sea was remote, the Greeks were unfriendly, and the Chrisians of every sect fled before the voracious and cruel rapines of their brethren. In the dire necessity of famine they sometimes roasted and devoured the flesh of their infant or adult captives. Among the Turks and Saracens, the idolaters of Europe were rendered more odious by the name and reputation of cannibals: the spies who introduced

themselves into the kitchen of Bohemond, were shown several human bodies turning on the spit; and the artful Normans encouraged a report which increased at the same time the abhorrence and the terror of the infidels.77

I have expatiated with pleasure on the first steps of the crusaders, as they paint the manners and character of Europe; but I shall absolve the tedious and uniform narrative of their blind achievements, which were performed by strength and are described by ignorance. From their first station in the neighbourhood of Nicomedia, they advanced in successive divisions; passed the contracted limit of the Greek empire; opened a road through the hills; and commenced, by the stage of his capital, their pious warfare against the Turkish sultan. His kingdom of Bauram extended from the Hellespont to the confines of Syria, and shared the pilgrimage of Jerusalem; his name was Kilij-Arslan, or Soliman,78 of the race of Seljuk, and the son of the first conqueror; and in the defence of a land which the Turks considered as their own, he deserved the praise of his enemies, by whom alone he is known to posterity. Yielding to the first impulse of the torrent, he deposited his family and treasure in Nice; retired to the mountains with fifty thousand horse; and twice descended to assault the ramparts of the Christian besiegers, which formed an imperfect circuit of above six miles. The lofty and solid walls of Nice were covered by a deep ditch, and flanked by three hundred and seventy towers; and on the verge of Christendom, the Moslems were trained in arms, and inflamed by religion. Before this city, the French princes occupied their stations, and prosecuted their attacks without correspondence or subordination: emulation precipitated their valour; but their valour was sufficed by cruelty, and their emulation degenerated into every sort of civil discord. In the siege of Nice, the arms and engines of antiquity were employed by the Latins; the mine and the battering-ram, the torreis and the baleful or moveable tower, the catapult and the ballista, the sling and the crossbow, for the casting of stones and darts.79 In the space of seven weeks, much labour and blood were expended, and some progress, especially by count Raymond, was made on the side of the besiegers. But the Turks could not protract their resistance and secure their escape, as long as they were masters of the lake: Ascanius, which stretches several miles to the westward of the city. The means of conquest were supplied by the prudence and

77 Alexius, B.c. p. 193, 500. His furious delight compassed by their sons and illustrious houses, and infant and confederate less than two months old, whom he distributed among his officers and cardinals, as a pledge of their loyalty and gratitude; and his wish was to exhibit such signal proofs of his triumph and dominion over them all, that they might experience that their submission to his will was the effect of his peculiar and superior power, and not of any destiny or providential appointment.

78 William of Malmesbury tells about the year 11235 has been seen in the church of Selinus in Sicily; and I wish that, instead of hearing in the same monument the name of the same William, I could see the remains of the same family, and admire the remains of his church, which was founded by the Normans of Sicily. But the church and the tombs are in a state of decay, and the ruins of the church are entirely destroyed.

79 The Latin fleet, after remaining some time in the bay of Nice, was received by the Emperor Constantine, who was at that time on the point of taking possession of the Ascanian, a sea which stretches several miles to the westward of the city. The means of conquest were supplied by the prudence and
of seven months, after the ruin of their cavalry, and an enormous loss by famine, desertion, and fatigue, the progress of the crusaders was insuperable, and their success remote, if the Latin Ulysses, the artful and ambitious Bohemond, had not employed the arms of cunning and deceit. The Christians of Antioch were numerous and disconcerted; Phirous, a Syrian renegade, had acquired the favour of the emir and the command of three towers; and the merit of his performance disguised to the Latins, and perhaps to himself, the foul design of perfidy and treason.

A secret correspondence, for their mutual interest, was soon established between Phirous and the prince of Tarento; and Bohemond declared in the council of the chiefs, that he could deliver the city into their hands. But he claimed the sovereignty of Antioch as the reward of his service; and the proposal which had been rejected by the emir, was at length exerted from the distress, of his equals. The nocturnal surprise was executed by the French and Norman princes, who surreptitiously in person the scaling-ladders that were thrown from the walls; their new prostrate, after the murder of his two scapulous brother, embarked and introduced the servants of Christ; the army rushed through the gates; and the Mirdim soon found, that, although therapy was hopeless, resistance was impotent. But the victors still refused to surrender; and the victors themselves were speedily encompassed and besieged by the innumerable forces of Kerboga, prince of Mosul, who, with twenty-eight Turkish emirs, advanced to the deliverance of Antioch. Five and twenty days the Christians spent in the verge of destruction; and the proud lieutenant of the caliph and the sultan left them only the choice of surrender or death. In this extremity they collected the relics of their strength, rallied from the town, and in a single memorable day annihilated or dispersed the host of Turks and Almogians, which they might safely report to have consisted of six hundred thousand men.

The Lycian allies I shall proceed to consider: the human causes of the victory of Antioch were the furious despair of the Franks; and the surprise, the discor, perhaps the error, of their unskilful and presumptuous adversaries. The battle is described with as much disorder as it was fought; but we may observe the tent of Kerboga, a movable and spacious palace, enriched with the luxury of Asia, and capable of holding above two thousand persons; we may distinguish his three thousand guards, who were rash, the horses as well as the men, in complete steel.

In the eventful period of the siege and defence of Antioch, the crusaders were alternately excited by victory or sunk in despair; either swelling with plenty or emaciated with hunger. A speculative reasoner might suppose, that their faith had a strong and serious influence on their practice; and that the soldiers of the cross, the deliverers of the holy sepulchre, prepared themselves by a sober and virtuous life for the daily contemplation of martyrdom. Experience blows away this charitable illusion; and seldom does the history of profane war display such scenes of intemperance and prostitution as were exhibited under the walls of Antioch. The grove of Deiphilus no longer flourished; but the Syrian air was still impregnated with the same vice; the Christians were reduced by every temptation to nature either prompts or reproaches; the authority of the chiefs was despised; and sermons and edicts were alike fruitless against those scandalous disorders, not less pernicious to military discipline, than repugnant to evangelical purity. In the first days of the siege and the possession of Antioch, the Franks consumed with wanton and thoughtless prodigality the frugal subsistence of weeks and months; the desert country no longer yielded a supply; and from that country they were at length excluded by the arms of the besieging Turks.

Dioeces, the faithful companion of war, was evinced by the rains of the winter, the summer heats, unwholesome food, and the close imprisonment of multitudes. The pictures of famine and pestilence are always the same, and always disgraceful; and our imagination may suggest the nature of their sufferings and their resources. The remains of treasure or spoil were eagerly lavished in the purchase of the vilest nourishment; and dreadful must have been the calamities of the poor, since, after paying three marks of silver for a goat and fifteen for a lean camel, the count of Flanders was reduced to beg a dinner, and the duke Godfrey to borrow a horse. Sixty thousand horse had been reviewed in the camp; before the end of the siege they were diminished to two thousand, and scarcely two hundred fit for service could be mustered on the day of battle. Weakness of body and terror of mind extinguished the ardent enthusiasm of the pilgrims; and every motive of honour and religion was subdued by the desire of life. Among the chiefs, three heroes may be found without fear or reproach: Godfrey of Bouillon was supported by his magnanimous piety; Bohemond by ambition and interest; and Tancred declined, from the true spirit of chivalry, that as long as he was at the head of forty knights, he would never relinquish the enterprise of Palestine. But the count of Jerusalem and Forez was suspected of a voluntary indisposition: the

Guth, who was born by the Turks as he was repulsed in his encampment, perished on the walls under their arrows. The return of the Franks was not so triumphant as their departure from the Holy Land; after the loss of Damascus and the retreat of the Franks, the crusaders did not return to their native countries; but the crusade of 1099 was of a different nature. The following year the Franks returned to the Holy Land, under the auspices of the Holy See, which was not interested in the crusade of 1099, and the crusade of 1099 was of a different nature. The crusade of 1099 was of a different nature, and the crusade of 1099 was of a different nature.
duke of Normandy was recalled from the sen-
store by the censure of the church; Hugh the
Gis:; though he led the vanguard of the battle,
emphasized an ambiguous opportunity of return-
ing to France; and Stephen court of Chartres
hastily deserted the standard which he bore, and
the council in which he presided. The soldiers
were discouraged by the flight of William vis-
count of Melun, summoned the Carpenter, from
the weighty strokes of his axe; and the saints
were scandalized by the fall of Peter the Her-
mit, who, after stringing Europe against Asia,
attempted to escape from the penance of a
necessary fast. Of the multitude of recrunt
warriors, the names (says an historian) are
blotted from the book of life; and the op-
probrious epithet of the rope-dancers was ap-
plied to the deserters who dropped in the night
from the walls of Antioch. The emperor
Alexius, on the other hand, seemed to advance to the
successors of the Latins, by the assurance of the
hopeless condition. They ex-
pected their fate in silent despair; oaths and
punishments were tried without effect; and to
rouse the soldiers to the defence of the walls, it
was found necessary to set fire to their quarters.

For their salvation and victory,
they were indebted to the same
fanaticism which had led them to the brink of
ruin. In such a cause, and in such an army,
visions, prophecies, and miracles, were frequent
and familiar. In the distress of Antioch, they
were repented with unusual energy and success:
St. Andrew had assuaged a pious ecclesiastic,
that two years of trial must precede the season
of deliverance and grace; the deserters were
stopped by the presence and reproaches of Christ
himself; the dead had promised a rise and
combat with their brethren; the Virgin had
obtained the pardon of their sins; and their
confidence was revived by a visible sign, the
seasonable splendor of discovery of the holy
chalice. The policy of their chiefs has on this
occasion been admired, and might surely be
excused; but a pious fraud is seldom produced by
the cool conspiracy of many persons; and a
voluntary imposture might depend on the support
of the wise and the credulity of the people.

Of the diocese of Marseilles, there was a priest
of low cunning and loose manners, and his
name was Peter Bartholomew. He presented
himself at the door of the council-chamber, to
claim an apperition of St. Andrew, which
had been three reiterated in his sleep, with a
dreadful menace, if he persisted to suppress the
commands of Heaven. "At Antioch," said
the apostle, "in the church of my brother St.
Peter, near the high altar, is concealed the
saintly head of the lance that pierced the side
of our Redeemer. In three days, that in-
strument of eternal, and now of temporal,
salvation, will be manifested to his disciples.
A Search and ye shall find; bear it aloft in
battle; and that mystic weapon shall pes-
came to Palestine the civil and ecclesiastical authority of the Fatimites. They heard with astonishment of the vast armies of Christians that had passed from Europe to Asia, and rejoiced in the siege and battles which broke the power of the Turks, the adversaries of their sect and monocracy. But the same Christians were the enemies of the prophet; and from the overthrow of Nice and Antioch, the motive of their enterprise, which was gradually understood, would urge them forwards to the banks of the Jordan, or perhaps of the Nile. An intercourse of epistles and embassies, which rose and fell with the events of war, was maintained between the throne of Cairo and the camp of the Latin; and their adverse pride was the result of ignorance and enthusiasm. The ministers of Egypt declared in an angry, or inimicable in a milder tone, that their sovereign, the true and lawful comISSO, had rescued Jerusalem from the Turkish yoke; and that the pilgrims, if they would divide their numbers, lay aside their arms, should find a safe and hospitable reception at the sepulchre of Jesus. In the belief of their lost condition, the caliph Mountfide despoiled their arms and imprisoned their seigniors, and the abortive and victory of Antioch promised him to solicit those formidable champions with gifts of horses and silk robes of purple, and purses of gold and silver; and in the estimate of their merit or power, the first place was assigned to Bohemond, and the second to Godfrey. In either fortune the answer of the crusaders was firm and uniform; they disdained to inquire into the private claims or possessions of the followers of Mahomet: whatsoever was his name or nation, the usurper of Jerusalem was their enemy; and instead of prescribing the mode and terms of their pilgrimage, it was only by a timely surrender of the city, and promise, their sacred right, that he could deserve their alliance, or deprecate their impending and irresistible attack. Yet this attack, when they were within the view and reach of their glorious prize, was suspended above ten months after the defeat of Korboga. The zeal and courage of the crusaders were chilled in the moment of victory; and, instead of marching to improve the constellation, they hastily dispersed to enjoy the luxury of Syria. The causes of this strange delay may be found in the want of strength and subordination. In the painful and various service of Antioch, the cavalry was annihilated; many thousands of every rank had been lost by famine, sickness, and desertion: the sense of shame had been productive of a third famine; and the alternative of intemperance and distress, had generated a pestilence, which swept away above fifty thousand of the pilgrims. Few were able to command, and none were willing to obey: the

643 The name of Franka had delayed their invasion till the decline of the Turkish empire. Under the merely government of the threes first sultans, the kingdoms of Asia were united in peace and justice; and the innumerable armies which they led in person were equal in courage, and superior in discipline, to the barbarians of the West. But at the time of the crusade, the inheritance of Malek Sinw was disputed by his four sons; their private ambition was inseparable of the public danger; and, in the vicissitudes of their fortune, the royal vessels were ignorant, or regardless, of the true object of their allegiance. The twenty-eight emirs who marched with the standard of Korboga, were his rivals or enemies; their hasty lexics were drawn from the towns and tents of Mesopotamia and Syria; and the Turkish veterans were employed or consigned in the civil wars beyond the Tigris. The caliph of Egypt embraced this opportunity of weakness and distress, to recover his ancient possessions; and his son, Aphiad, besieged Jerusalem and Tyros, expelled the children of Ortok, and restored in
domestic feuds, which had been stilled by common fear, were again renewed in acts, or at least in sentiments, of hostility; the fortune of Baldwin and Bohemund excited the envy of their companions; the bravest knights were enlisted for the defence of their new principalities; and count Raymond exhausted his troops and treasures in an idle expedition into the heart of Syria. The winter was consumed in discord and disorder; a sense of honour and religion was rekindled in the spring; and the private soldiers, less susceptible of ambition and jealousy, awakened with an angry clamour the indolence of their chiefs. In the month of May, the relics of this mighty host proceeded from Antioch to Laodicea; about forty thousand Latins, of whom no more than fifteen hundred horse, and twenty thousand foot, were capable of immediate service. Their supplies were continued by the prisoners, but the夏季 was exceedingly dry; and they were literally supplied by the surrounding countrysides. They marched southward to the Sale of Tripoli, Tyrus, Sidon, Acre, and Damascus, who granted a free passage, and even promised to follow the example of Jerusalem. From Damascus they advanced into the Phœnician country; their clerks recognized the sacred geography of Lydia, Hamath, Emesa, and Bethlem, and as soon as they reached the holy city, the crusaders forgot their toils and claimed their reward.

Jerusalem has derived some reputation from the number and importance of her memorable sieges. It was not till after a long and obstinate contest that Babylon and Rome could prevail against the obstinacy of the people, the exigencies of the siege, and the necessity of fortifications, and the walls and towers that would have fortified the most accessible plain. These obstacles were diminished in the age of the crusades. The habitans had been completely destroyed and imperfectly restored; the Jews, their nation, and worship, were never so abundant; but nature is less changeable than man, and the site of Jerusalem, though somewhat softened and somewhat restored, was still strong against the assaults of an enemy. By the experience of a recent siege, and a few years' possession, the Saracens of Egypt had been taught to discern, and in some degree to remedy, the defects of a place, which religion as well as humour forbade them to resign. Aladin, or Ishakh, the caliph's lieutenant, was intrusted with the defence; his policy strove to restrain the native Christians by the dread of their own ruin and that of the holy sepulchre; to animate the Muslims by the assurance of the

eternal rewards. His generals are said to have composed of forty thousand Turks and Armenians; and if he could muster twenty thousand of the inhabitants, it must be confessed that the besieged were more numerous than the besieging army. Had the diminished strength and numbers of the Latins allowed them to grasp the whole circumference of four thousand yards (about two English miles and a half), to what useful purpose should they have descended into the valley of the Hauran and torrent of Cedron, or approached the precipices of the south and east, from whence they had nothing to hope or fear? Their siege was more reasonably directed against the northern and western sides of the city. Godfrey of Bouillon erected his standards on the first swell of Mount Calvary; to the left, as far as St. Stephen's gate, the line of attack was continued by Tauric and the two Roberts; and count Raymond established his quarters from the citadel to the foot of Mount Zion, which was no longer included within the precincts of the city. On the fifth day, the crusaders made a general assault, in the fanatical hope of battering down the walls without engines, and of scalping them without halter. By the dint of brutal forces, they burst the first barrier, but they were driven back with shame and slaughter to the camp; the influence of vision and prophecy was demoralized by the too frequent abuse of these plans and stratagems; and time and labour were found to be the only means of victory. The time of the siege was indeed fulfilled in forty days, but they passed by days of calamity and anguish. A repetition of the old complaint of famine may be imputed in some degree to the variety of disorders and disparities of the Franks; but the very soil of Jerusalem is almost destitute of water; the scanty springs and hasty torrents were dry in the summer season; nor was the third of the besiegers relieved, as in the city, by the artificial supply of cisterns and aqueducts. The circumjacent country is equally destitute of trees for the uses of shade or building; but some large beams were discovered in a cave by the crusaders; a wood near Sichem, the enchanted grove of Tasso, was cut down; the necessary timber was transported to the camp by the vigour and dexterity of Tancrède; and the engines were framed by some German artists, who had fortunately landed in the harbour of Jaffa. Two movable turrets were constructed at the expense, and in the stations, of the duke of Lorraine and the count of Tripoli, and rolled forwards with devout labour, not to the most accessible, but to the most neglected, parts of the fortifications. Raymond's tower was rec

104 The present part of the march of the Franks is based, and most accurately traced, in Manucius, Josephus, Alparg to Jerusalem, ii. 5-8. 105 The exact number of the crusaders is not known; but of the

300,000 men, cited by St. Of course, it is possible enough to be 200,000. But in the siege of Jerusalem, the number of the crusaders exceeded the number of the Saracens, which is 80,000. 1028 The exact number is 30,000, as is also the number of the crusaders. 1029 The exact number is 30,000, as is also the number of the crusaders.
tation, which they strove to regain by a second
 crusade and an honourable death. Baldwin
 was established at Edessa, and Bohemond at
 Antioch; and two Roberts, the duke of Nor-
 mandy and the count of Flanders, professed
 their fair inheritance in the West to a doubtful
 competition or a barren sculptre. The jealousy
 and ambition of Raymond were condoned by
 his own followers, and the free, the just, the
 unanimous voice of the army, proclaimed God-
 frey of Bouillon the first and most worthy of
 the champions of Christendom. His magnu-
 nimity accepted a trust as full of danger as of
 glory; but in a city where his Saviour had
 been crowned with thorns, the devout pilgrim,
 rejected the name and ensign of royalty; and
 the founder of the kingdom of Jerusalem con-
 tented himself with the modest title of Defender
 and Baron of the Holy Sepulchre. His govern-
 ment of a single year, 118 too short for the public
 happiness, was interrupted in the first spring
 by a summons to the field, by the approach of
 the vizir or sultan of Egypt, who had been too
 slow to prevent, but who was impatient to
 avenge, the loss of Jerusalem. His total over-
 throw in the battle of Ascalon sealed the estab-
 lishment of the Latins in Syria, and signified
 the valour of the French princes, who in this
 action made a long farewell to the holy war.
 Some glory might be derived from
 the prodigious inequality of numbers,
 though I shall not count the
 myriads of horse and foot on the side of the
 Fatimites but, except three thousand Ethio-
 pians or blacks, who were armed with hails or
 scouges of iron, the barbarians of the South
 fled on the first onset, and afforded a pleasing
 comparison between the active valour of the
 Turks and the lethargy and effeminacy of the
 natives of Egypt. After surrendering before the
 holy sepulchre the sword and standard of the
 sultan, the new king (he deserves the title) embraced
 his departing companions, and could retain only
 with the gallant Tancred three hundred knights,
 and two thousand foot-soldiers, for the defence
 of Palestine. His sovereignty was soon attor-
 tacked by a new enemy, the only one against
 whom Godfrey was a coward. Adhemar, bishop of
 Puy, who excelled both in council and action,
 had been swept away in the last plague of Ant-
 ioch: the remaining ecclesiastics preserved only
 the pride and avarice of their character; and
 their sedulous clamours had required that the
 choice of a bishop should precede that of a king.
 The revenge and jurisdiction of the lawful pa-
 triarch were usurped by the Latin clergy: the
 exclusion of the Greeks and Syrians was jus-
 tified by the reproach of heresy or schism:
 and, under the iron yoke of their deliverers, the
 Oriental Christians regretted the tolerating go-

 113 But the Latin, who are not subject to the masses, see
 Edward Gibbon, Decline and Fall, ii., p. 213, 214. 215.
 114 The true cause is mysterious. In the middle ages Nation,
 was the name of the mass, and Nation, the common name of
 the adherents of the same. Hence the existence of the Nation
 and commune gens. See Edward Gibbon, Decline and Fall,
 ii., p. 213. 214.
 117 The English writer in Record of Normandy, Pears
 writes to him of the siege of Jerusalem, and it is not
 clear but the former mass of nations has remained the power of
 the church. See Edward Gibbon, Decline and Fall, ii., p. 131.
 118 The name of these emperors is given in William of
 Tyre, i., 14. 15. 16, 17, and in the chronicles of the Latin
 historians.
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE

259

The relics of the Mahometan conquests in Syria. 

The laws and language, the manners and titles, of the French nation and Latin church, were introduced into these transmarine colonies. According to the feudal jurisprudence, the principal states and subordinate baronies descended in the line of male and female succession; but the children of the first conquerors, a motley and degenerate race, were dissolved by the luxury of the climate; the arrival of new crusaders from Europe was a doubtful hope and a casus belli. The service of the feudal tenures was performed by six hundred and sixty knight, who might expect the aid of two hundred more under the banner of the count of Tripoli; and each knight was attended to the field by four squires or archers on horseback. Five thousand and seventy-five scores, most probably foot-soldiers, were supplied by the churches and cities; and the whole legal militia of the kingdom could not exceed eleven thousand men, a slender defence against the surrounding myriads of Saracens and Turks. 

The fierce Paulus of Jerusalem was founded on the knights of the hospital of St. John, and of the temple of Solomon; on the strange association of a masonic and military life, which fanaticism might suggest, but which policy must approve. The flower of the nobility of Europe aspired to wear the cross, and to possess the rows, of these respectable orders; their spirit and discipline were immortal; and the steady donation of twenty-eight thousand farms, or manors, enabled them to support a regular force of cavalry and infantry for the defence of Palestine. The austerity of the convent soon evaporated in the exercise of arms: the world was scandalised by the pride, avarice, and corruption of these Christian soldiers; their claims of immunity and jurisdiction disturbed the harmony of the church and state; and the public peace was endangered by their jealous emulation. But in their most dissolute period, the knights of the hospital and temple maintained their fearless and fanatic character: they neglected to live, but they were prepared to die, in the service of Christ; and the spirit of chivalry, the parent and offspring of the crusades, has been transplanted

258 They were called by Philip of Swabia, the archbishop of Pisa, who had long been trained in the secret policy of Rome; he brought a fleet of his countrymen to the succour of the Holy Land, and was installed, without a competitor, the spiritual and temporal head of the church. The new patriarch immediately grasped the sceptre which had been acquired by the toil and blood of the victorious pilgrims; and both Godfrey and Bohemond submitted to receive at his hands the investiture of their feudal possessions. Nor was this sufficient; Diarmut claimed the immediate property of Jerusalem and Jaffa; instead of a firm and generous refusal, the hero negotiated with the priest; a quarter of either city was ceded to the church; and the modest bishop was satisfied with an eventual reversion of the rest, on the death of Godfrey without children, or on the future acquisition of a new seat at Cairo or Damascus.

Without this indulgence, the conqueror would have almost been stripped of his infant kingdom, which consisted only of Jerusalem and Jaffa, with about twenty villages and towns of the adjacent country. Within this narrow verge, the Mahometans were still lodged in some impregnable castles; and the husbandman, the trader, and the pilgrim, were exposed to daily and domestic hostility. By the arms of Godfrey himself, and of the two Baldwin, his brother and cousin, who succeeded to the throne, the Latins breathed with more ease and safety; and at length they equalled, in the extent of their dominions, though not in the millions of their subjects, the ancient princes of Judah and Israel. After the reduction of the maritime cities of Ladoicea, Tripoli, Tyre, and Ascalon, which were powerfully assisted by the fleets of Venice, Genoa, and Pisa, and even of Flanders and Norway, the range of a sea-coast from Scanderoon to the borders of Egypt was possessed by the Christian pilgrims. If the prince of Antioch disclaimed his supremacy, the counts of Edessa and Tripoli owned themselves the vassals of the king of Jerusalem; the Latins reigned beyond the Euphrates; and the four cities of Homs, Hamah, Damascus, and Aleppo, were the only

189 See the claims of the patriarch Diarmut, in William of Tyre (l. 4. c. 13. 14), where occurs an excellent account of the conquests of the patriarch and the principal events of the kingdom of Jerusalem, with the state and condition of the Egyptians, in that age (l. 12. c. 13). See also his History of the Kingdom of Jerusalem, in the Opera Omnia, vol. i. p. 4. See also the state and condition of the Egyptians, in that age (l. 12. c. 13).

192 Another account, and including the sires of Lord and Lady de Courtenay, as well as of the family of the Counts of Edessa, with the names of the admirers, or those who, near the decline of the crusades, often bear a population of thirteen millions, in a country now languishing in subjection, are mentioned in the proceedings of the crusades, in the reign of Philip Augustus, by the chronicler, or the Count de Courtenay, or the Count de Courtenay, or the Count de Courtenay.

193 Passed away in a chronicler's tabula rasa, and well stated to be true, on the authority of William of Tyre, that the stage to the Holy Land, and more especially to the Barécharia of the Crusaders, was a matter of extreme expense, from the time of the Crusades. The state and condition of the Egyptians, in that age (l. 12. c. 13).

194 Quoique quelques de nos auteurs aient apparemment, en extremité, prétendue que le devoir des pêcheurs n'ayant jamais été de servir les États de la république française, et que les loueurs de leurs services ne courant que d'une ville à l'autre, ils auraient été en France sans soupçon, ou certaines demandes de certaines villes qui en avaient besoin, de procéder à l'achat d'une bateau, et de charger les marchandises de leurs clients, &c. (Arch. de la France, t. c. 13. c. 13.) On a répondu que M. de Lagnès, de la ville de Douai, était en France, sans soupçon, ou certaines demandes de certaines villes qui en avaient besoin, de procéder à l'achat d'une bateau, et de charger les marchandises de leurs clients, &c. (Arch. de la France, t. c. 13. c. 13.) On a répondu que M. de Lagnès, de la ville de Douai, était en France, sans soupçon, ou certaines demandes de certaines villes qui en avaient besoin, de procéder à l'achat d'une bateau, et de charger les marchandises de leurs clients, &c. (Arch. de la France, t. c. 13. c. 13.) On a répondu que M. de Lagnès, de la ville de Douai, était en France, sans soupçon, ou certaines demandes de certaines villes qui en avaient besoin, de procéder à l'achat d'une bateau, et de charger les marchandises de leurs clients, &c. (Arch. de la France, t. c. 13. c. 13.) On a répondu que M. de Lagnès, de la ville de Douai, était en France, sans soupçon, or certaines demandes de certaines villes qui en avaient besoin, de procéder à l'achat d'une bateau, et de charger les marchandises de leurs clients, &c. (Arch. de la France, t. c. 13. c. 13.) On a répondu que M. de Lagnès, de la ville de Douai, était en France, sans soupçon, or certaines demandes de certaines villes qui en avaient besoin, de procéder à l'achat d'une bateau, et de charger les marchandises de leurs clients, &c. (Arch. de la France, t. c. 13. c. 13.)
by this institution from the holy sepulchre to the isle of Malta. 111

The spirit of freedom, which permeated the feudal institution, was felt in its strongest energy by the volunteers of the cross, who chose for their chief the most deserving of his peers. Amidst the slaves of Asia, unconscious of the lesson or example, a model of political liberty was introduced; and the laws of the French kings, are derived from the purest source of equality and justice. Of such laws, the first and indispensable condition is the ascent of those, whose obedience they require, and for whose benefit they are designed. No sooner had Godfrey of Bouillon accepted the office of supreme magistrate, than he solicited the public and private advice of the Latin pilgrims, who were the best skilled in the statutes and customs of Europe. From these materials, with the counsel and approbation of the patriarch and bishops of the clergy and laity, Godfrey composed the Assise of Jerusalem, 112 a precious monument of feudal jurisprudence. The new code, attested by the seals of the king, the patriarch, and the vicar of Jerusalem, was deposited in the holy sepulchre, enriched with the improvements of succeeding times, and respectfully consulted as often as any doubtful question arose in the tribunals of Palestine. With the kingdom and city, all was lost: 113 the fragments of the written law were preserved by jealous tradition 114 and variable practice till the middle of the thirteenth century; the code was restored by the pen of John d'Urkain, count of Jaffa, one of the principal feudatories; 115 and the final revision was accomplished in the year thirteen hundred and sixty-nine, for the use of the Latin kingdom of Cyprus. 116

The justice and freedom of the constitution were maintained by two tribunals of unequal dignity, which were instituted by Godfrey of Bouillon after the conquest of Jerusalem. The king, in person, presided in the upper court, the court of the barons. Of these the four most conspicuous were the prince of Galilee, the lord of Sidon and Caracas, and the counts of Jaffa and Tripoli, who, perhaps, with the constable and marshal, 117 were in a special manner the counsellors and judges of each other. But all the nobles, who held their lands immediately of the crown, were entitled and bound to attend the king's court; and each baron exercised a similar jurisdiction in the subordinate assemblies of his own feudatories. The con-

111 In the three fine books of the Histoire des Chevaliers de Malte, by the Abbé de Champagne, in the edition of 1836, 1837, 1838, there is a description of the convent of Malta, with its wonderful buildings and its extensive gardens, with the adjoining gardens.
112 The Assise of Jerusalem, in both the French, were printed with the name of the Assise of Jerusalem, printed in Paris, and illustrated by Joseph Thomas, in the year 1709.
113 In 1532, at Venice, for the use of the kingdom of Cyprus.
114 The Assise d'Urkain lies in the Library of the University of Cambridge.
115 The Assise of Jerusalem, in both the French and English, were printed with the name of the Assise of Jerusalem, printed in Paris, and illustrated by Joseph Thomas, in the year 1709.
116 In 1532, at Venice, for the use of the kingdom of Cyprus.
117 The Assise of Jerusalem, in both the French and English, were printed with the name of the Assise of Jerusalem, printed in Paris, and illustrated by Joseph Thomas, in the year 1709.
evidence (according to the supposition of Montesquieu); but in every case the right to offer battle was founded on the right to pursue by arms the redress of an injury; and the judicial combat was fought on the same principle, and with the same spirit, as a private duel. Champions were only allowed to women, and to men natural or past the age of sixty. The consequence of a defeat was death to the person accused, or to the champion or witness, as well as to the accused himself; but in civil cases, the defendant was punished with infamy and the loss of his suit, while his witness and champion suffered an ignominious death. In many cases it was in the option of the judge to award or to refuse the combat; but two are specified, in which it was the inevitable result of the challenge: if a faithful vassal gave the lie to his master, who unjustly claimed any portion of their lord’s domain; or if an unsuccessful suitor presumed to impeach the judgment and veracity of the court. He might impeach them, but the terms were severe and perilsious: in the same day he successively fought all the members of the tribunal, even those who had been absent: a single defeat was followed by death and infamy; and where none could hope for victory, it is highly probable that none would adventure the trial. In the Amiel of Jerusalem, the legal sublety of the count of Jaffa is more laudably employed to ridicule, than to facilitate, the judicial combat, which he derives from a principle of honour rather than superstition.

Among the causes which enfranchised the plebeians from the yoke of feudal tyranny, the institution of cities and corporations is one of the most powerful; and if those of Palestine were rival with the first crusades, they may be ranked with the most ancient of the Latin world. Many of the pilgrims had escaped from their low station under the banner of the cross; and it was the policy of the French princes to tempt their stay by the assurance of the rights and privileges of freemen. It is expressly declared in the Amiel of Jerusalem, that after instituting, for his knights and barons, the court of peers, in which he presided himself, Godfrey of Bouillon established a second tribunal, in which his person was represented by his viscount. The jurisdiction of this inferior court extended over the Burgess of the kingdom; and it was composed of a select number of the most discreet and worthy citizens, who were sworn to judge, according to the laws, of the actions and fortunes of their equals. In the conquest and settlement of new cities, the example of Jerusalem was imitated by the kings and their great vassals; and above thirty similar corporations were founded before the loss of the Holy Land. Another class of subjects, the Syrians, or Oriental Christians, were oppressed by the seal of the clergy, and protected by the toleration of the state. Godfrey listened to their reasonable prayer, that they might be judged by their own national laws. A third court was instituted for their use, of limited and domestic jurisdiction: the sworn members were Syrians, in blood, language, and religion; but the office of the president (in Arabic, of the van) was sometimes exercised by the vicar of the city. At an immemorable distance below the sable, the barbarous, and the strange, the Amiel of Jerusalem condescends to mention the villains and slaves, the peasants of the land, and the captives of war, who were almost equally considered as the objects of property. The relief or protection of these unhappy men was not esteemed worthy of the care of the legislator; but he diligently provides for the recovery, though not indeed for the punishment, of the fugitives. Like hounds, or hawks, who had strayed from the lawful owner, they might be lost and claimed; the slave and falcion were of the same value; but three slaves, or twelve oxen, were accumulated to equal the price of the war-horse; and a sum of three hundred pieces of gold was fixed, in the age of chivalry, as the equivalent of the mean noble animal.

CHAP. LIX.


In a style less grave than that of history, I should perhaps compare the emperor Alexius to the jackal, who is said to follow the steps, and to devour the leftovers, of the lion. Whatever had been his foils and tails in the passage of the first crusades, they were amply recompensed by the subsequent benefits which he derived from the exploits of the Franks. His dexterity and vigilance secured their first conquest of Nice; and from this...
threatening station the Turks were compelled to evacuate the neighbourhood of Constantinople. While the crusaders, with blind valor, advanced into the midland counties of Asia, the crafty Greek improved the favourable occasion when the sultans of the sea-coast were recalled to the standard of the sultan. The Turks were driven from the isles of Rhodes and Chios; the cities of Ephesus and Smyrna, of Salamis, Philadelphia, and Laudician, were restored to the empire, which Alexius enlarged from the Hellespont to the banks of the Maeander, and the rocky shores of Paphlagonia. The churches resumed their splendour; the towns were rebuilt and fortified; and the desert country was peopled with colonies of Christians, who were gently removed from the more distant and dangerous frontier. In these paternal cares, we may forgive Alexius, if he forgot the deliverness of the holy sepulchre; but, by the Latin, he was stigmatised with the foul reproach of treason and desertion. They had sworn fidelity and obedience to his throne; and he had promised to assist their enterprise in person, or, at least, with his troops and treasures; his base retreat dissolved their obligations; and the sword, which had been the instrument of their victory, was the pledge and title of their just independence. It does not appear that the emperor attempted to revive his obsolete claims over the kingdom of Jerusalem; but the barbary of Cilicia and Syria were more recent in his possession, and more accessible to his arms. The great army of the crusaders was annihilated or dispersed; the principality of Antioch was left without a head, by the surprise and captivity of Bohemond; his ransom had oppressed him with a heavy debt; and his Norman followers were insufficient to repel the hostilities of the Greeks and Turks. In this distress, Bohemond entrusted a magnanimous resolution, of leaving the defence of Antioch to his kinsman, the faithful Tancred; of arming the West against the Byzantine empire, and of executing the design which he inherited from the lessons and example of his father Giscard. His embarkation was clandestine; and if we may credit a tale of the princess Aime, he passed the hostile sea, closely secreted in a cænon. But his reception in France was dignified by the public applause, and his marriage with the king’s daughter: her return was glorious, since the bravest spirits of the age enlisted under his veteran command; and he repassed the Hadriatic at the head of five thousand horse and forty thousand foot, assembled from the most remote climates of Europe. The strength of

Durazzo and prudence of Alexius, the progress of fame and approach of winter, subdued his ambitious hopes; and the feigned confederates were seduced from his standard. A treaty of peace suspended the fears of the Greeks; and they were finally delivered by the death of an adversary; whom neither oaths could bind, nor dangers could appal, nor prosperity could solace. His children succeeded to the principality of Antioch; but the boundaries were strictly defined, the homage was clearly stipulated, and the cities of Taras and Malunits were restored to the Byzantine emperor. Of the coast of Asia, they possessed the entire circuit from Trebizond to the Syrian gates. The Seljukian dynasty of Rous 5 was separated on all sides from the sea and their Musulman brethren; the power of the sultans was shaken by the victories, and even the defeats, of the Franks; and after the loss of Nica, they removed their throne to Cogni or Iconium, an obscure and inland town above three hundred miles from Constantinople. Instead of trembling for their capital, the Comnenian princes waged an offensive war against the Turks, and the first crusade prevented the fall of the declining empire.

In the twelfth century, three great emigrations marched by land from the West to the relief of Palestine. The soldiers and pilgrims of Lombardy, France, and Germany, were excited by the example and success of the first crusade. Forty-eight years after the deliverance of the holy sepulchre, the emperor, and the French king, Conrad the Third, and Louis the Seventh, undertook the second crusade to support the falling fortunes of the Latins. A grand division of the third crusade was led by the emperor Frederic Barbarossa, who sympathised with his brothers of France and England in the common loss of Jerusalem. These three expeditions may be compared in their resemblance of the greatness of numbers, their passage through the Greek empire, and the nature and event of their Turkish warfare; and a brief parallel may save the repetition of a tellin narrative. However splendid it may seem, a regular story of the crusades would exhibit the perpetual return of the same causes and effects; and the frequent attempts for the defence or recovery of the Holy Land, would appear so many faint and unsuccessful copies of the original.

1 Of the swarms that so closely trod in the footsteps of the first pilgrims, the chief were equal in rank, though under

* The kings of Jerusalem resided however in a nominal dependence, and not in the time of their insurrection was it safe to the absent of Jack; 2. The same of the existing emperor (Alexius, Isenheimer and Hauke, ii. 401); 3. But he was deposed in 1143, and humbled by the new emperor; 4. The same of the existing emperor (Alexius, Isenheimer and Hauke, ii. 401); 5. The same of the existing emperor (Alexius, Isenheimer, in the hands of M. de Charleroi, in the spirit of the history of the crusaders, l. 400–410); 6. By an additional, and not in the history of the crusaders, l. 400–410); 7. The same of the existing emperor (Alexius, Isenheimer, l. 400–410); 8. The same of the existing emperor (Alexius, Isenheimer, l. 400–410)
equal in fame and merit, to Godfrey of Bouillon and his fellow adventurers. At their head were displayed the banners of the dukes of Burgundy, Bavaria, Aquitaine; the first a descendant of Hugh Capet, the second a father of the Brunswick line: the archbishop of Milan, a temporal prince, transported, for the benefit of the Turks, the treasures and ornaments of his church and palace; and the veteran crusader, Hugh the Great, and Stephen of Chartres, returned to consummate their unfinished work. The kings and divinely bodied of their followers moved forwards in two columns; and if the first consisted of two hundred and sixty thousand persons, the second might possibly amount to sixty thousand horse, and one hundred thousand foot. The armies of the second crusade might have claimed the conquest of Asia; the nobles of France and Germany were animated by the presence of their sovereigns; and both the rank and personal characters of Conrad and Louis gave a dignity to their cause, and a discipline to their force, which might be readily expected from the feudal chiefs. The cavalry of the emperor, and that of the king, was composed of seventy thousand knights, and their immediate attendants in the field; and if the light-armed troops, the peasant infantry, the women and children, the priests and monks, be rigorously excluded, the full account will scarcely be satisfied with four hundred thousand souls. The West, from Rome to Britain, was rallied into action; the kings of Poland and Bohemia obeyed the summons of Conrad; and it is affirmed by the Greeks and Latins, that in the passage of a strait or river, the Byzantine agents, after a tale of nine hundred thousand, desired from the endless and remissible computation. In the third crusade, as the French and English preferred the navigation of the Mediterranean, the host of Frederic Barbarosa was less numerous. Fifteen thousand knights, and as many squires, were the flower of the German chivalry: sixty thousand horse, and one hundred thousand foot, were mustered by the emperor in the plains of Hungary; and after such repetitions, we shall no longer be startled at the six hundred thousand pilgrims, which credulity has ascribed to this last emigration. Such extravagant reckonings prove only the astonishment of contemporaries; but their astonishment more strongly bears testimony to the existence of an enormous though indefinite multitude. The Greeks might applaud their superior knowledge of the arts and strategies of war, but they confessed the strength and courage of the French cavalry, and the infantry of the Germans; and the strangers are described as an iron race, of gigantic stature, who dasted fire from their eyes, and spilt blood like rain on the ground. Under

11. This passage is attributed to Godfrey of Bouillon. The statement that the army consisted of two hundred and sixty thousand persons is not accurate. The actual force was much smaller. The text contains inaccuracies and exaggerations. The army of the second crusade was comprised of various nobles from different European states, including France, Germany, and Italy. The crusade was organized by Duke Leopold V of Austria and was intended to rescue the Holy Land from Muslim control. However, the crusade failed to achieve its stated objectives. The text also contains references to the crusades of St. Louis (Louis IX of France) and the Third Crusade, which were more successful in terms of military outcomes. The text highlights the importance of the role of the Holy Land in Christian thought and the motivations of the crusaders. The crusades were often driven by religious fervor and a desire to recover lands lost to Muslim control. The text also touches on the role of women in the crusades, but this aspect is not extensively discussed. The text concludes with a discussion of the consequences of the crusades, including the impact on the relationship between the Christian and Muslim worlds and the role of the crusades in shaping medieval European history.
fortify the passes and break down the bridges against them: the smugglers were pillaged and murdered; the soldiers and horses were pierced in the woods by arrows from an invisible hand; the sick were burnt in their beds; and the dead bodies were hung on gibbets along the highways. These injuries exasperated the champions of the cross, who were not endowed with evangelical patience; and the Byzantine princes, who had provoked the unequal conflict, promoted the embarkation and march of these formidable guests. On the verge of the Turkish frontier Barbarossa spared the guilty Philadelphian, 17 rewarded the hospitable Laodiceans, and deplored the hard necessity that had stained his sword with my drops of Christian blood. In their intercourse with the monarchs of Germany and France, the pride of the Greeks was exposed to an anxious trial. They might boast that on the first interview the seat of Louis was a low stool, beside the throne of Manuel; 18 but no sooner had the French king transported his army beyond the Bosphorus, than he refused the offer of a second conference, unless his brother would meet him on equal terms, either on the sea or land. With Conrad and Frederic, the ceremonial was still nicer and more difficult: like the successors of Constantine, they styled themselves emperors of the Romans; 19 and firmly maintained the purity of their title and dignity. The first of these representatives of Charlemagne would only converse with Manuel on horseback in the open field; the second, by passing the Hellespont rather than the Bosphorus, declined the view of Constantinople and its sovereign. An emperor, who had been crowned at Rome, was reduced in the Greek eyes to the humble appellation of Byzantine emperor and the vain and feeble Angelus affected to be ignorant of the name of one of the greatest men and monarchs of the age. While they viewed with hatred and suspicion the Latin pilgrims, the Greek emperors maintained a strict, though secret, alliance with the Turks and Saracens. Isaac Angelus complained, that by his friendship for the great Saladin he had incurred the enmity of the Franks; and a mosque was founded at Constantinople for the public exercise of the religion of Mahomet. 20

III. The swarms that followed the first crusade, were destroyed in Anatolia by famine, pestilence, and the Turkish arrows: and the princes only escaped with some squadrions of horse to accomplish their lamentable pilgrimage. A just opinion may be formed of their knowledge and humanity; of their knowledge, from the design of subduing Persia and Chorasan in their way to the triumph of their humanity, from the massacre of

Christian people, a friendly city, who came out to meet them with pale faces and tears in their hands. The arms of Conrad and Louis were less cruel and imprudent; but the event of the second crusade was still more ruinous to Christendom; and the Greek Manuel is accused by his own subjects of giving sensaible intelligence to the sultan, and treacherous guides to the Latin princes. Instead of crushing the common foe, by a double attack at the same time but on different sides, the Germans were urged by emulation, and the French were rewarded by jealousy. Louis had scarcely passed the Bosphorus when he was met by the returning emperor, who had lost the greatest part of his army in glorious, but unsuccessful, actions on the banks of the Marcellus. The contrast of the pomp of his rival hushed the retreat of Conrad: the desertion of his independent vassals reduced him to his hereditary troops; and he borrowed some Greek vessels to execute by sea the pilgrimage of Palestine. Without studying the lessons of experience, or the nature of the war, the king of France advanced through the same country to a similar fate. The vanguard, which bore the royal banner and the oriflamme of St. Denis, 21 had doubled their march with rash and inconsiderate speed; and the rear, which the king commanded in person, no longer found their companions in the evening camp. In darkness and disorder, they were encompassed, assuaded, and overwhelmed, by the innumerable host of Turks, who in the art of war were superior to the Christians of the twelfth century. Louis, who climbed a tree in the general discomfiture, was saved by his own valor and the ignorance of his adversaries; and with the dawn of day he escaped alive, but almost alone, to the camp of the vanguard. But, instead of pursuing his expedition by land, he was rejoiced to shelter the relics of his army in the friendly sea-port of Salatia. From thence he embarked for Antioch; but so pernicious was the supply of Greek vessels, that they could only afford room for his knights and nobles; and the plebeian crowd of infantry was left to perish at the foot of the Pamphylia hills. The emperor and the king embraced and wept at Jerusalem; their martial trains, the remnant of mighty armies, were joined to the Christian powers of Syria, and a fruitless siege of Damascus was the first effort of the second crusade. Conrad and Louis embarked for Europe with the personal flame of piety and courage; but the Orientals had learned these potent monarchs of the Franks, with whose names and military forces they had been so often threatened. 22 Perhaps they had still more to fear from the veteran genius of Frederic the First, who in his youth had served in

17 The conduct of the Philadelphia is blamed by Siciliani, while Benveniste and Rau assume the meaner deities of Turkish religion. History would be pleasant, if we possessed his account of the consultations. It is more than probable that we know the fact, 18 The constant, which Conradus sent to Latin in the sandal; 19 He wrote to the emperor, 20 see du Bois, 313. 21 See the eyes into which it is converted on the table of destruction. 22 See the eyes into which it is converted on the table of destruction.
Asia under his uncle Conrad. Forty campaigns in Germany and Italy had taught Barbarossa to command; and his soldiers, even the princes of the empire, were accustomed under his reign to obey. As soon as he lost sight of Philadelphia and Laodicea, the last cities of the Greek frontier, he plunged into the salt and barren desert, a land (says the historian) of horror and tribulation. During twenty days, every step of his fainting and sickly march was besiegled by the immemorial horde of Turkomans, whose numbers and fury seemed after each defeat to multiply and increase. The emperor continued to struggle and to suffer; and such was the measure of his calamities, that when he reached the gates of Jerusalem, no more than one thousand knights were able to serve on horseback. By a sudden and complete assault he defeated the guards, and stormed the capital of the sultan, who humbly sued for parley and peace. The road was now open, and Frederic advanced in a career of triumph, till he was unfortunately drowned in a petty torrent of Cilicia. The remainder of his German was consumed by sickness and desolation; and the emperor's son expired with the greatest part of his Sebastian vessels at the siege of Acre. Among the Latin leaders, Godfrey of Bouillon and Frederic Barbarossa could alone achieve the passage of the Lesser Asia; yet even their success was a warning; and in the last and most experienced age of the crusades, every nation preferred the sea to the toils and perils of an inland expedition.

The enthusiasm of the first crusade is a natural and simple event, while the hope was fresh, danger apparent, and enterprise congenial to the spirit of the times. But the obstinate perseverance of Europe may indeed excite our pity and admiration. No instruction should have been drawn from constant and adverse experience; that the same confidence should have repeatedly grown from the same failures; that six succeeding generations should have rushed headlong down the precipice that was open before them; and that men of every condition should have staked their public and private fortunes on the desperate adventure of pursuing or recovering a trackless two thousand miles from their country. In a period of two centuries after the council of Clermont, each spring and summer produced a new emigration of pilgrim warriors for the defense of the Holy Land; but the seven great armaments or crusades were excited by some impending or recent calamity: the nations were moved by the authority of their pontiffs, and the example of their kings; their zeal was kindled, and their reason was silenced, by the voice of their holy orators; and among these, Bernard, the monk, or the saint, may claim the most honorable place. About eight years before the first conquest of Jerusalem, he was born of a noble family in Burgundy; at the age of three and twenty he buried himself in the monastery of Citeaux, then in the primitive fervor of the institution; at the end of two years he led forth his third colony, or daughter, to the valley of Clairvaux; and was content, till the hour of his death, with the humble station of abbot of his own community. A philosophical age has abolished, with too liberal and indiscriminate disdain, the honours of these spiritual heroes. The meekness among them are distinguished by some energies of the mind; they were at least superior to their votaries and disciples; and, in the race of superstition, they attained the prize for which such numbers contended. In speech, in writing, in action, Bernard stood high above his rivals and contemporaries; his compositions are not devoid of wit and eloquence; and he seems to have preserved as much reason and humanity as may be reconciled with the character of a saint. In a secular life, he would have shared the seventh part of a private inheritance; by a vow of poverty and penance, by closing his eyes against the visible world, by the refusal of all ecclesiastical dignities, the abbot of Clairvaux became the oracle of Europe, and the founder of six hundred and sixty convents. Princes and pontiffs trembled at the freedom of his apotthetical censures: France, England, and Milan, consulted and obeyed his judgment in a seism of the church; the debt was repaid by the gratitude of Innocent the Second; and his successor, Eugenius the Third, was the friend and disciple of the holy Bernard. It was in the proclamation of the second crusade that he spoke as the missionary and prophet of God, who called the nations to the defense of his holy sepulchre. At the parliament of Veszlay he spoke before the king; and Louis the Seventh, with his nobles, received their crosses from his hand. The abbot of Clairvaux then marched in the less easy conquest of the emperor Conrad; a pugnacious people, ignorant of his language, was transported by the pathetic vehemence of his tone and gestures; and his progress, from Constance to Cologne, was the
triumph of eloquence and seal. Bernard applauds his own success in the depopulation of Europe; affirms that cities and castles were emptied of their inhabitants; and computes, that only one man was left behind for the consolation of seven widows. The blind fanatics were desirous of electing him for their general; but the example of the hermit Peter was before his eyes; and while he assured the crusaders of the divine favour, he prudently declined a military command, in which failure and victory would have been almost equally disgraceful to his character. Yet, after the calamitous event, the abbot of Clairvaux was loudly accused as a false prophet, the author of the public and private mourning: his enemies exulted, his friends blushed, and his apology was slow and unsatisfactory. He justifies his obedience to the commands of the pope; expatiates on the mysterious ways of Providence; imputes the misfortunes of the pilgrims to their own sins; and modestly intimates, that his mission had been approved by signs and wonders. Had the fact been certain, the argument would be decisive; and his faithful disciples, who enumerate twenty or thirty miracles in a day, appeal to the public assemblies of France and Germany, in which they were performed. At the present hour, such prodigies will not obtain credit beyond the precincts of Clairvaux; but in the preternatural cures of the blind, the lame, and the sick, who were presented to the man of God, it is impossible for us to ascertain the separate shares of accident, of fancy, of imposture, and of fiction.

The omnipotence itself cannot escape the enmities of its disdaining votaries; since the same dispensation which was applauded as a deliverance in Europe, was despised, and perhaps arraigned, as a calamity in Asia. After the capture of Jerusalem, the Syrian fugitives diffused their consternation and sorrow: Bagdad mourned in the dust; and the caliph Zeloudin of Damascus tore his hair in the caliph's presence; and the whole dour shed tears at his melancholy tale. But the commanders of the faithful could only weep; they were themselves captives in the hands of the Turks: some temporal power was restored to the last age of the Abbassides; but their humble ambition was confined to Bagdad and the adjacent province. Their tyrants, the Seljukian sultans, had followed the common law of the Asiatic dynasties, the unconcealed round of valour, greatness, discord, degeneracy, and decay: their spirit and power were unequal to the defence of religion; and, in his distant realm of Persia, the Christians were strangers to the name and the arms of Sangiar, the last hero of his race. While the sultans were involved in the silken web of the harem, the pious task was undertaken by their slaves, the Atabeks, a Turkish name, which, like the Byzantine patricians, may be translated by Father of the Prince. Assemzar, a valiant Turk, had been the favourite of Malek Shaw, from whom he received the privilege of standing on the right hand of the throne; but, in the civil wars that ensued on the monarch's death, he lost his head and the government of Aleppo. His domestic enmies persevered in their attachment to his son Zenghi, who proved his first arms against the Franks in the defeat of Antioch: thirty campaigns in the service of the caliph and sultan established his military fame; and he was invested with the command of Mosul, as the only champion that could avenge the cause of the prophet. The public hope was not disappointed: after a siege of twenty-five days, he stormed the city of Edessa, and recovered from the Franks their conquests beyond the Euphrates. The martial tribes of Cuedistan were subdued by the independent sovereign of Mosul and Aleppo; his soldiers were taught to behold the camp as their only country; they trusted to his liberality for their rewards; and their mountaineers were protected by the vigilance of Zenghi. At the head of these veterans, his men, Noureddin gradually united S. 1146—1174, the Mahometan powers; sallied the kingdom of Damascus to that of Aleppo, and waged a long and successful war against the Christians of Syria: he spread his ample reign from the Tigris to the Nile, and the Abbassides rewarded their faithful servant with all the titles and prerogatives of royalty. The Latins themselves were compelled to own the wisdom and courage, and even the justice and piety, of this implacable adversary. In his life and government the holy warrior revived the zeal and simplicity of the first caliphs. Gold and silk were banished from his palace; the use of wine from his dominions; the public revenue was scrupulously applied to the public service; and the frugal household of Noureddin was maintained from his legitimate share of the spoil which he reaped in the purchase of a private estate. His favourite sultans sighed for some female object of expense. "Alas!" replied the king, "I love God, and am no more than the treasurer of the Moslems. Their property I cannot alienate;"
but I still possess three shops in the city of
Hermopolis: these you may take; and these alone
can I bestow." His chamber of justice was the
terror of the great and the refuge of the
poor. Some years after the sultan’s death, an
oppressed subject called aloud in the streets of
Alexandria. 600 Noursoulia, Noursoulia, where
are they now? Arise, arise, to pity and pro-
tect us!" A tumult was apprehended, and a
living torrent blushed or trembled at the name of a
departed monarch.

Proconsul By the arms of the Turks and
Franks the Fatimite had been
expropriated. In Egypt the
decay of their character and influence was still
more essential. Yet they were still revered as the
descendants and successors of the prophet;
they maintained their invisible state in the palace
of Cairo; and their person was seldom violated
by the profane eyes of subjects or strangers.
The Latin ambassadors have described their own
introduction through a series of gloomy halls
and glittering porticoes; the scene was
enlivened by the palpitation of birds and the murmur
of fountains; it was enlivened by a display of
rich furniture, and rare animals; of the Imperial
treasuries, everything was shown, and much was
supposed, and the long order of unlooking
doors was guarded by black soldiers and domestics
of equivoque. The sanctuary of the presence
chamber was vaulted with a curtain; and the vizier,
who conducted the ambassadors, laid aside his
censer, and penetrated himself three times on
this ground; the veil was then removed; and
they beheld the commander of the faithful, who
signified his pleasure to the first slave of the
kings. But this slave was his master; the
viziers or sultans had usurped the supreme admis-
sion of Egypt; the claims of the rival can-
didates were decided by arms; and the name of
the most worthy, of the strongest, was inserted
in the royal patent of command. The factions
of Dargham and Shawwah alternately expelled
each other from the capital and country; and the
weaker side implored the dangerous protection
of the sultan of Damascus or the king of Jeru-
salem, the perpetual enemies of the sect and mon-
archy of the Fatimite. By his arms and religion the
Turk was most formidable; but the Frank,
in an easy direct march, could advance from
Gaza to the Nile; while the intermediate situa-
tion of his realm compelled the troops of Nour-
soulia to wheel round the skirt of Arabia, a
long and painful circuit, which exposed them to
three, fatigue, and the burning winds of the
desert. The secret zeal and ambition of the Turkish
prince aspired to reign in Egypt under the name of
the Abasside; but the restoration of the
suppliant Shaver was the ostensible motive of
the first expedition; and the success was intrusted
to the emir Shirmouch, a valliant and veteran com-
mander. Durgham was oppressed and slain; but
the ingratitude, the jealousy, the just apprehen-
sions, of his more fortunate rival, soon provoked
him to invite the king of Jerusalem to deliver
Egypt from his insolent benefactors. To this
union the forces of Shiracouch were unhesitatingly
relinquished the premature conquest; and the
evacuation of Belbeis or Pelusium was the con-
dition of his safe retreat. As the Turks defiled
before the enemy, and their general closed the
rear, with a vigilant eye, and a battle-axe in his
hand, a Frank promised to ask him if he were
not afraid of an attack? "It is doublet in your
power to begin the attack," replied the intrepid
smile, "but rest assured, that not one of my
soldiers will go to paradise till he has sent an
infidel to hell." His report of the riches of the
land, the effeminacy of the natives, and the dis-
orders of the government, revived the hopes of
Noursoulia; the cedars of Bagdad applauded the
pious design; and Shiracouch descended into
Egypt with a promise of a superiority of twenty
thousand Turks and eleven thousand Arabs. Yet his
forces were still inferior to the confederate armies of
the Franks and Saracens; and I can discern
an unusual degree of military ari in his passage
of the Nile, his retreat into Thebais, his masterly
motions in the battle of Bahnia, the surprise
of Alexandria, and his marches and counter-
marches in the flats and valley of Egypt, from
the tropic to the sea. His conduct was accelerated
by the courage of his troops; and on the eve of action a Mamaluke 61 exclaimed, "If we cannot
sweat Egypt from the Christian dogs, why do
we not prosecute the banns and rewards of
the sultan, and retire to labour with the peas-
sants or to spin with the females of the harm?"
Yet, after all his efforts in the field, 62 after the
obstinate defence of Alexandria 63 by his nephew
Saladin, an honourable capitulation and retreat concluded the second enterprise of Shiracouch; and
Noursoulia reserved his abilities for a third and
more precipitous occasion. It was soon offered by
the ambition and avarice of Amurik or Amasyk,
king of Jerusalem, who had inflamed the pernicious maxim, that no faith should be kept with
the enemies of God. A religious warrior, the
great master of the hospital, encouraged him to
proceed; the emperor of Constantinople either
gave, or promised, a fleet to act with the armies
of Syria; and the perfidious Christian, unsatis-
ied with spoil and profit, aspired to the con-
quest of Egypt. In this emergency, the Moslems
turned their eyes towards the sultan of Damas-
cus; the visir, whose danger encompassed on all
sides, yielded to their unanimous wishes, and
Noursoulia seemed to be tempted by the fair
offer of one third of the revenue of the kingdom.
The Franks were already at the gates of Cairo;
but the suburbs, the old city, were burnt on their
approach; they were deceived by an insidious
negotiation, and their vessels were unable to sur-
round the barriers of the Nile. They produn-

60 From the memoirs of William of Tyre, ed. 147, 18; de-
scribed the state of Egypt in 1315, and the mode
by which the Moslems were to be replaced in the
place of the Franks, in a written letter, a copy of which
appears in the British Museum (vol. vi. p. 246).
61 From the memoirs of Fawr in the provinces of Egypt and
Noursoulia (p. 329). It was the capital of the kingdom of
the Fatimites, and the residence of the sultan of Egypt.
62 From the memoirs of Marschall, in letters from Egypt, vol.
iv. p. 292. 63 S X.
the Christian general the profane honours of knighthood. 30 On the death of Shiracos, the office of grand vizir was bestowed on Saladin, as the youngest and least powerful of the emirs; but with the advice of his father, whom he invited to Cairo, his genius obtained the ascendancy over his equals, and attached the army to his person and interest. While Nourreddin lived, these ambitious Cords were the most humble of his slaves; and the indolent murmurs of the emirs were silenced by the prudent Ayub, who loudly protested that at the command of the sultan he himself would lead his son in chains to the foot of the throne. "Such language," he added in private, "was prudent and proper in an assembly of your rivals; but we are now above fear and obedience; and the threats of Nourreddin shall not extort the tribute of a sanguine curse." His reasonable death relieved them from the odious and doubtful conflict; his son, a minor of eleven years of age, was left for a while to the emirs of Damascus; and the new lord of Egypt was decorated by the caliph with every title that could sanctify his usurpation in the eyes of the people. Nor was Saladin long content with the possession of Egypt; he despoiled the Christians of Jerusalem, and the Achebak of Damascus, Aleppo, and Tripoli; Menma and Medin acknowledged him as their temporal protector; his brother subdued the distant regions of Yemen, or the happy Arabia; and at the hour of his death, his empire was spread from the African Tripoli to the Tigris, and from the Indian Ocean to the mountains of Armenia. In the judgment of his character, the reproofs of treason and ingratitude strike forcibly on our minds, impressed, as they are, with the principle and experience of law and loyalty. But his ambition may in some measure be excused by the revolutions of Asia, which had erased every notion of legitimate succession; by the recent example of the Achebaks themselves; by his reverence to the son of his benefactor, his humane and generous behaviour to the collateral branches; by their incapacity and his merit; by the approbation of the caliph, the sole source of all legitimate power; and, above all, by the wishes and interest of the people, whose happiness is the first object of government. In six virtues, and in those of his patron, they admired the singular union of the hero and the saint; for both Nourreddin and Saladin are ranked among the Moslem saints, and the constant mediation of the holy war appears to have shed a serious and sober colour over their lives and actions. The youth of the latter was addicted to wine and..."
women; but his aspiring spirit soon renounced the temptations of pleasure, for the grave follies of fame and dominion: the garment of Saladin was of coarse woollen; water was his only drink; and, while he emulated the temerity, he surpassed the chastity, of his Arabian prophet. Both in faith and practice he was a rigid Moslem; he ever deplored that the defence of religion had not allowed him to accomplish the pilgrimage of Mecca; but at the stated hours, five times each day, the sultan devoutly prayed with his brethren: the involuntary omission of fasting was scrupulously repaid; and his recall of the Koran, on horseback between the approaching armies, may be quoted as a proof, however emotional, of piety and courage. The superstitions of the west of China were the only study that he designed to encourage: the poets were safe in his contempt; but all profane science was the object of his aversion; and a philosopher, who had ventured some speculative speculations, was seized and strangled by the command of the royal saint. The justice of his diwan was accessible to the meanest supplicant against himself and his ministers; and it was only for a kingdom that Saladin would deviate from the rule of equity. While the descendants of Seljuk and Zenghi held his stirrup and smoothed his garments, he was affable and patient with the meanest of his servants. So boundless was his liberality, that he distributed thousand horses at the siege of Acca; and, at the time of his death, no more than forty-seven drums of silver and one piece of gold coin were found in the treasury; yet, in a mortal reign, the tributes were diminished, and the wealthy citizens enjoyed without fear or danger the fruits of their industry. Egypt, Syria, and Arabia, were adorned by the royal foundations of hospitals, colleges, and mosques; and Cairo was fortified with a wall and cistern; but his works were consecrated to public use, nor did the sultan indulge himself in a garden or palace of private luxury. In a familiar age, himself a fanatic, the genuine virtues of Saladin commanded the esteem of the Christians: the emperor of Germany gloried in his friendship; the Greek emperor solicited his alliance; and the conquest of Jerusalem diffused, and perhaps magnified, his fame both in the East and West.

During its short existence, the kingdom of Jerusalem was supported by the discord of the Turks and Franks; and both the Fatimite caliphs and the sultans of Damascus were tempted to sacrifice the cause of their religion to the many considerations of private and present advantage. But the powers of Egypt, Syria, and Arabia, were now united by an hero, whose nature and fortune had armed against the Christians. All without, now bore the most threatening aspect; and all was feeble and hollow in the internal state of Jerusalem. After the two first Baldwin, the brother and cousin of Godfrey of Bouillon, the queen devolved by female succession to Maleasula, daughter of the second Baldwin, and her husband Fulke, count of Anjou, the father, by a former marriage, of our English Plantagenets. Their two sons, Baldwin the Third, and Amaury, waged a strenuous, and not unsuccessful, war against the infidels; but the son of Amaury, Baldwin the Fourth, was deceived, by the treachery, a gift of the crusades, of the futilities both of mind and body. His sister Sybilla, the mother of Baldwin the Fifth, was his natural heir: after the suspicious death of her child, she crowned her second husband, Guy of Lusignan, a prince of a handsome person, but of such base renown, that his own brother Jeffrey was heard to exclaim, "Since they have made Art a king, surely they would have made me a god!" The choice was generally blamed; and the most powerful vassal, Raymond count of Tripoli, who had been excluded from the succession and regency, entertained an implacable hatred against the king, and exposed his honour and conscience to the temptations of the sultan. Such were the guardians of the holy city, a leper, a child, a woman, a coward, and a traitor: yet its fate was delayed twelve years by some supplies from Europe, by the valor of the military orders, and by the distant and domestic avocations of their great enemy. At length, on every side, the sinking state was encircled and pressed by an hostile line; and the truce was violated by the Franks, whose existence it protected. A soldier of fortune, Reginald of Chaillon, had seized a fortress on the edge of the desert, from whence he pillaged the caravans, insulted Mahomet, and threatened the cities of Mecca and Medina. Saladin descended to complain; rejoiced in the denial of justice; and, at the head of four thousand thousand horse and foot, invaded the Holy Land. The choice of Tibura for his first siege was suggested by the count of Tripoli, to whom it belonged; and the king of Jerusalem was persuaded to drain his garrison, and to arm his people for the relief of that important place. By the advice of the perfidious Raymond, the Christians were betrayed into a camp destitute of water: he fled on the first must, with the curses of both nations; Lusignan was overthrown, with the loss of thirty thousand men; and the wood of the true cross, a dire misfortune! was left in the power of the infidels. The royal captive was conducted to the tent of Saladin; and as he fainted with thirst and terror, the generous victor presented him with a cup of sherbet, cooled in snow, without suffering his companions, Reginald of Chaillon, to partake of this pledge of hospitality and pardon. "The person and dignity of a king," said the sultan,
44 are sacred; but this impious robber must in- 45 stantly acknowledge the prophet, whom he has 46 blasphemed, or meet the death which he has so 47 often deserved." On the proud or conscious 48 refusal of the Christian warrior, Saladin struck 49 him on the head with his cimeter, and Reginald 50 was dispatched by the guards. The trembling 51 Lusignan was sent to Damascus, to an honorable 52 prison and speedy ransom; but the victory was 53 stained by the execution of two hundred and 54 thirty knights of the hospital, the intrepid cham- 55 pions and martyrs of their faith. The kingdom 56 was left without a head; and of the two grand 57 masters of the military orders, the one was slain 58 and the other was a prisoner. From all the cities, 59 both of the sea coast and the inland country, the 60 garrisons had been drawn away for this fatal 61 field. Tyre and Tripoli alone could escape the 62 rapine instead of Saladin; and three months after 63 the battle of Hattin, he appeared in arms before 64 the gates of Jerusalem. 65

He might expect, that the siege of 66 a city so venerable on earth and in 67 heaven, so interesting to Europe and 68 Asia, would rekindle the last sparks of enthusi- 69 astism; and that, of sixty thousand Christians, 70 every man would be a soldier, and every soldier 71 a candidate for martyrdom. But queen Sybilla 72 trembled for herself and her captive husband, 73 and the barons and knights, who had escaped 74 from the sword and chains of the Turks, dis- 75 played the same factional and selfish spirit in the 76 public ruin. The most numerous portion of the 77 inhabitants was composed of the Greek and Ori- 78 ental Christians, whose experience had taught 79 to prefer the Mahometan before the Latin yoke; 80 and the holy sepulchre attracted a base and nois- 81 y crowd, without arms or courage, who subsisted 82 only on the charity of the pilgrims. Some few in 83 needy efforts were made for the defence of Jeru- 84 salem; but in the space of fourteen days, a 85 victorious army drove back the allies of the 86 besieged, planted their engines, opened the wall to 87 the breadth of fifteen cubits, applied their scaling- 88 ladders, and erected on the breach twelve bar- 89 nies of the prophet and the sultan. It was in 90 rain that a barefoot procession of the queen, the 91 women, and the monks, imploring the Son of God 92 to save his tomb and his inheritance from impious 93 violation. Their sole hope was in the mercy 94 of the conqueror, and to their first supplicant de- 95 pration that mercy was sternly denied. 96 He 97 had sworn to avenge the patience and long- 98 suffering of the Moslems; the hour of forgive- 99 ness was elapsed, and the moment was now 100 arrived to expiate, fill blood, the innocent blood 101 which had been spilt by Godfrey and the first 102 crusaders." But a desperate and successful 103 struggle of the Franks astonished the sultan 104 that his triumph was not yet secure; he listened 105 with reverence to a solemn adjuration in the 106 name of the common father of mankind; and a 107 sentiment of human sympathy mollified the ri- 108 gour of fanaticism and conquest. He consented 109 to accept the city, and to spare the inhabitants. 110 The Greek and Oriental Christians were per- 111 mitted to live under his dominion; but it was 112 stipulated, that in forty days all the Franks and 113 Latins should evacuate Jerusalem, and be safely 114 conducted to the seaports of Syria and Egypt; 115 that ten pieces of gold should be paid for each 116 man, five for each woman, and one for every 117 child; and that those who were unable to pur- 118 chase their freedom should be detained in perpet- 119 ual slavery. Of some writers it is a favourite 120 and invincible theme to compare the humanity 121 of Saladin with the merciless of the first cross- 122 crusade. The difference would be mercy personal; 123 but we should not forget that the Christians had 124 offered to capitulate, and that the Mahometans 125 of Jerusalem sustained the last extremities of an 126 assault and storm. Justice is indeed due to the 127 fidelity with which the Turkish conqueror ful- 128 filled the conditions of the treaty; and he may 129 be deservedly praised for the glance of pity which 130 he cast on the misery of the vanquished. Instead 131 of a rigorous execution of his debt, he accepted a 132 sum of thirty thousand byzants, for the ransom 133 of seven thousand poor; two or three thousand 134 more were dismissed by his gratuitous clemency; 135 and the number of slaves was reduced to eleven 136 or fourteen thousand persons. In his interview 137 with the queen, his words, and even his tears, 138 suggested the kindest condescensions; his liberal 139 alms were distributed among those who had been 140 made orphans or widows by the fortune of war; 141 and while the knights of the hospital were in 142 arms against him, he allowed their more pious 143 brethren to continue, during the term of a year, 144 the care and service of the sick. In these acts of 145 mercy the virtue of Saladin displays our admira- 146 tion and love: he was above the necessity of 147 dissimulation, and his stern fanaticism would 148 have prompted him to desolate, rather than to 149 affect, this profane compassion for the enemies of 150 the Koran. After Jerusalem had been delivered 151 from the presence of the strangers, the sultan 152 made his triumphant entry; his banner was 153 unfurled in the wind, and to the harmony of martial 154 music. The great mosque of Omar, which had been 155 converted into a church, was again consecrated 156 to one God and his prophet Mahomet; the walls 157 and pavement were purified with holy water; 158 and a pulpit, the labour of Nourreddin, was 159 erected in the sanctuary. But when the golden 160 cross that glittered on the dome was cast down, 161 and dragged through the streets, the Christians 162 of every sect uttered a lamentable groan, which 163 was answered by the joyful shouts of the Mos- 164 lems. In four ivory couches the patriarch had col- 165 lected the crosses, the images, the yokes, and the 166 relics of the holy place; they were seized by the 167 conquerors, who were desirous of presenting the 168 caliph with the trophies of Christian brutality. 169 He was persuaded, however, to intrust them to 170 the patriarch and prince of Antioch; and the
pious pledge was redeemed by Richard of England, at the expense of fifty-two thousand byzants of gold.\textsuperscript{64}

The nations might fear and hope for the immediate and final expulsion of the Latins from Syria, which was yet delayed above a century after the death of Saladin.\textsuperscript{65} In the career of victory, he was first checked by the resistance of Tyre; the troops and garrisons, which had capitulated, were imprudently conducted to the same port; their numbers were inadequate to the defence of the place; and the arrival of Conrad of Montferrat inspired the disorderly crowd with confidence and union. His father, a venerable pilgrim, had been made prisoner in the battle of Tibernus; but that disaster was unknown in Italy and Greece, when the son was urged by ambition and pietz to visit the inheritance of his royal nephew, the infant Baldwin. The view of the Turkish banners warned him from the hostile coast of Jaffa; and Conrad was universally hailed as the prince and champion of Tyre, which was already besieged by the conqueror of Jerusalem. The firmness of his zeal, and perhaps his knowledge of a generous foe, enabled him to brave the threats of the sultan, and to declare, that should his aged parent be exposed before the walls, he himself would discharge the first arrow, and glory in his descent from a Christian martyr.\textsuperscript{66} The Egyptian fleet was allowed to enter the harbour of Tyre; but the chain was suddenly drawn, and five galleys were either sunk or taken: a thousand Turks were slain in a sally; and Saladin, after burning his engines, concluded a glorious campaign by a disgraceful retreat to Damascus. He was soon followed by a formidable tempest. The pathetic narratives, and even the pictures, that represented in lively colours the servitude and profanation of Jerusalem, awakened the torpid sensibility of Europe: the emperor Frederic Barbarossa, and the kings of France and England, assumed the cross; and the tardy magnitude of their armaments was anticipated by the maritime states of the Mediterranean and the Ocean. The skilful and provident Italians first embarked in the ships of Genoa, Pisa, and Venice. They were speedily followed by the most eager pilgrims of France, Normandy, and the Western Isles. The powerful succour of Flanders, Frise, and Denmark, filled near an hundred vessels; and the Northern warriors were distinguished in the field by a lofty stature and a ponderous battle-axe.\textsuperscript{67} Their increasing multitudes could no longer be confined within the walls of Tyre, or remain obedient to the voice of Conrad. They pitied the misfortunes, and revolved the dignity, of Lusignan, who was released from prison, perhaps to divide the army of the Franks.

He proposed the recovery of Ptolemais, or Acre, thirty miles to the south of Tyre; and the place was first invested by two thousand horse and thirty thousand foot under his nominal command. I shall not expatiate on the story of this memorable siege; which lasted near two years, and consumed, in a narrow space, the forces of Europe and Asia. Never did the flame of enthusiasm burn with a fiercer and more destructive rage; nor could the true believers, a common appellation, who consecrated their own martyrdom, refuse some assistance to the mistaken zeal and courage of their adversaries. At the sound of the holy trumpet, the Moslems of Egypt, Syria, Arabia, and the Oriental provinces, assembled under the servant of the prophet;\textsuperscript{68} his camp was pitched and removed within a few miles of Acre; and he laboured, night and day, for the relief of his brethren and the annoyance of the Franks. Nine battles, not unworthy of the name, were fought, in the neighbourhood of Mount Carmel, with such vicissitudes of fortune, that in one attack the sultan forced his way into the city; that in one sally, the Christians penetrated to the royal tent. By the means of divers and pigeons, a regular correspondence was maintained with the besieged; and, as often as the sea was left open, the exhausted garrison was withdrawn, and a fresh supply was poured into the place. The Latin camp was thinned by famine, the sword, and the climate; but the tents of the dead were replenished with new pilgrims, who exaggerated the strength and speed of their approaching countrymen. The vulgar was astonished by the report, that the pope himself, with an innumerable crusade, was advanced as far as Constantinople. The march of the emperor filled the East with more serious alarms; the obstacles which he encountered in Asia, and perhaps in Greece, were raised by the policy of Saladin; his joy on the death of Barbarossa was measured by his esteem; and the Christians were rather dismayed than encouraged at the sight of the duke of Swabia and his way-worn remnant of five thousand Germans. At length, in the spring of the second year, the royal fleets of France and England cast anchor in the bay of Acre, and the siege was more vigorously prosecuted by the youthful emulation of the two kings, Philip Augustus and Richard Plantagenet. After every resource had been tried, and every hope was exhausted, the defenders of Acre submitted to their fate; a capitulation was granted, but their lives and liberties were taxed at the hard conditions of a ransom of two hundred thousand pieces of gold, the deliverance of one hundred nobles, and fifteen hundred inferior captives, and the restoration of the wood of the holy cross. Some doubts in the agreement, and some delay in the execution, rekindled the fiery

---

\textsuperscript{64} For the conquest of Jerusalem, see (p. 87, 571) and Alberic died (p. 99), during the first crusade, in the year 1106. The victories of the Second Crusade are described by (p. 113, 147) in the same golden and brilliant manner; see also (p. 118, 141).

\textsuperscript{65} The siege of Tyre and Acre are most accurately described by (p. 161, 226) in the (The conquest of Tyre and Acre) (p. 161, 226). He is more than once accused of (p. 161, 226). He is more than once accused of (p. 161, 226). He is more than once accused of (p. 161, 226).

\textsuperscript{66} The historians of Jerusalem (p. 1111) add the names of the East from the Tyre to Jaffa, and the countries north of Mosque and Constantinople, so that Asia and Africa fought against Europe.
of the Franks, and three thousand Moors, almost in the sultan’s view, were beheld by the command of the sanguinary Richard. 59 By the conquest of Acre, the Latins power acquired a strong town and a convenient harbour; but the advantage was most dearly purchased. The minister and historian of Saladin computes, from the report of the enemy, that their numbers, at different periods, amounted to five or six hundred thousand; that more than one hundred thousand Christians were slain; that a far greater number was lost by disease or shipwreck; and that a small portion of this mighty host could return in safety to their native country. 60

Philip Augustus, and Richard
the First, are the only kings of
France and England, who have
fought under the same banners; but the holy
service, in which they were enlisted, was incessantly disturbed by their national jealousy: and the two factions, which they protected in Palestine, were more severe to each other than to the common enemy. In the eyes of the Orientals, the French monarch was superior in dignity and power; and, in the emperor’s absence, the Latins revered him as their temporal chief. 61 His exploits were not adequate to his fame. Philip was brave, but the statesman preeminently in his character; he was soon weary of sacrificing his health and interest on a barren cause; the surrender of Acre became the signal of his departure; nor could he justify this unpopular desertion, by leaving the duke of Burgundy, with five hundred knights, and ten thousand foot, for the service of the Holy Land. The king of England, though inferior in dignity, surpassed his rival in wealth and military renown: 62 and if herculean be confined to brutal and ferocious valor, Richard Plantagenet will stand high among the heroes of the age. The memory of Cæsar & Louis, of the lion-hearted prince, was long dear and glorious to his English subjects; and, at the distance of sixty years, it was celebrated in proverbial sayings by the grandsons of the Turks and Saracens, against whom he had fought: his tremendous name was employed by the Syrian mothers to silence their infants; and if an horse suddenly started from the way, his rider was wont to exclaim, "Dost thou think king Richard is in that path?" 63 His cruelty to the Mahometans was the effect of temper and zeal; but I cannot believe that a soldier, so free and fearless in the use of his lance, would have descended to what

a dagger against his valiant brother Conrad of Montferrat, who was slain at Tyrre by some secret assassins. 64 After the surrender of Acre, and the departure of Philip, the king of England led the crusaders to the recovery of the sea-coast; and the cities of Caesarea and Jaffa were added to the fragments of the kingdom of Luizian. A march of one hundred miles from Acre to Ascalon, was a great and perpetual battle of eleven days. In the disorder of his troops, Saladin remained on the field with seventeen guards, without lowering his standard, or suspending the sound of his immense kettle-drums; he again rallied and received the charge; and his preachers or heralds called aloud on theDoorians, manfully to stand up against the Christian idolaters. But the progress of these idolaters was irresistible; and it was only by demolishing the walls and buildings of Ascalon, that the sultan could prevent them from occupying an important fortress on the confines of Egypt. During a severe winter, the armies slept; but in the spring, the Franks advanced within a day’s march of Jerusalem, under the leading standard of the English king, and his active spirit intercepted a convoy, or caravan, of seven thousand camels. Saladin 65 had fixed his station in the holy city; but the city was struck with consternation and discord: he fainted; he prayed; he offered to share the dangers of the siege; but his Mosulans, who remembered the fate of their companions at Acre, pressed the sultan, with loyal or seditious clamours, to reserve his person and their courage for the future defence of the religion and empire. 66 The Moslems were delivered by the sudden, or, as they deemed, the miraculous, retreat of the Christians 67; and the laurels of Richard were blasted by the prudence, or envy, of his companions. The hero, ascending an hill, and veiling his face, exclaimed with an ignominious voice, "Those who are unwilling to rescue, are unworthy to view, the sepulchre of Christ!" 68 After his return to Acre, on the news that Jaffa was surprised by the sultan, he sailed with some merchant vessels, and leaped foremost on the beach; the castle was relieved by his presence; and sixty thousand Turks and Saracens fled before his arms. The discovery of his weakness provoked them to return in the morning; and they found him carelessly encamped before the gates with only seventeen knights and three hundred archers. Without counting their numbers, he sustained

59 Saladin, p. 157; and this account is neither lessened nor confused by the Christian historians. Authorizes from a passage in the Euphrades, in the mode of account given by M. de Prez, Hist. de l'Empire, ii. p. 251. The number, so he states, 2250 were killed in the battle, while 6000 were slain in the course of other operations. He also states that between 9000 and 10,000 were killed in the battle. I find him ensnared of De Frain, vol. ii. p. 146, for it is unnecessary to pretend the futility of the Monarchs, who wish to make the establishment of the crusaders, that they may increase the power of the sultan; or even of the sultan, who was suspected in the course of the war. 60 The Monarchs, De Frain, vol. ii. p. 146. The Moslem historians will not go beyond the year 1191, when Richard left Tyre. 61 The Monarchs, De Frain, vol. ii. p. 146. The Moslem historians will not go beyond the year 1191, when Richard left Tyre. 62 The Monarchs, De Frain, vol. ii. p. 146. The Moslem historians will not go beyond the year 1191, when Richard left Tyre. 63 The Monarchs, De Frain, vol. ii. p. 146. The Moslem historians will not go beyond the year 1191, when Richard left Tyre. 64 The Monarchs, De Frain, vol. ii. p. 146. The Moslem historians will not go beyond the year 1191, when Richard left Tyre. 65 The Monarchs, De Frain, vol. ii. p. 146. The Moslem historians will not go beyond the year 1191, when Richard left Tyre. 66 The Monarchs, De Frain, vol. ii. p. 146. The Moslem historians will not go beyond the year 1191, when Richard left Tyre. 67 The Monarchs, De Frain, vol. ii. p. 146. The Moslem historians will not go beyond the year 1191, when Richard left Tyre. 68 The Monarchs, De Frain, vol. ii. p. 146. The Moslem historians will not go beyond the year 1191, when Richard left Tyre.
their charge; and we learn from the evidence of his enemies, that the king of England, grasping his lance, rode furiously along their front, from the right to the left wing, without meeting an adversary who dared to encounter his career. 79

Am I writing the history of Orlando or Amadis? During these hostilities, a languid and tedious negotiation began between the Franks and Mamelons, which was started, continued, and broken, and again resumed, and again broken. Some acts of royal courtesy, the gift of snow and fruit, the exchange of Norwegian hawks and Arabian horses, softened the severity of religious war; from the vicitimula of success, the monarchs might learn to suspect that Heaven was neutral in the quarrel; nor, after the trial of each other, could either hope for a decisive victory. 60 The health both of Richard and Saladin appeared to be in a declining state; and they respectively suffered the evils of distant and domestic warfare: Plantagenet was impatient to punish a perfidious rival who had invaded Normandy in his absence; and the indefatigable sultan was subdued by the cries of the people, who was the victim, and of the soldiers, who were the instruments, of his martial zeal. The first demands of the king of England were the restitution of Jerusalem, Palestine, and the true cross; and he firmly declared, that himself and his brother pilgrims would end their lives in the pious labour, rather than return to Europe with ignominy and remorse. But the conscience of Saladin refused, without some weighty compensation, to restore the idols, or promote the holocaust, of the Christians: he asserted, with equal firmness, his religious and civil claims to the sovereignty of Palestine; dwelt on the importance and sanctity of Jerusalem; and rejected all terms of the establishment, or partition, of the Latin. The marriage which Richard proposed, of his sister with the sultan's brother, was defeated by the difference of faith: the princess abhorred the embraces of a Turk; and Adel, or Saphadin, would not easily reconcile a plurality of wives. A personal interview was declined by Saladin, who alleged their mutual ignorance of each other's language; and the negotiation was managed with much art and delay by their interpreters and envoys. The final agreement was equally disapproved by the realists of both parties, by the Roman pontiff and the caliph of Bagdad. It was stipulated that Jerusalem and the holy sepulchre should be open, without tribute or vexation, to the pilgrims of the Latin Christians; that, after the demolition of Ascalon, they should inclusively possess the sea-coast from Jaffa to Tyre; that

the count of Tripoli and the prince of Antioch should be comprised in the truce; and that, during three years and three months, all hostilities should cease. The principal chiefs of the two armies swore to the observance of the treaty; but the monarchs were satisfied with giving their word and their right hands, and the royal majesty was exercised from an oath, which always implies some suspicion of falsehood and dishonesty. Richard embarked for Europe, to seek a long captivity and a premature grave; and the space of a few months concluded the life and glories of Saladin. The Orientals describe his edifying death, which happened at Damascus; but they seem ignorant of the equal distribution of his alms among the three religions, or of the display of a shroud, instead of a standard, to admonish the East of the instability of human greatness. The unity of empire was dissolved by his death; his sons were oppressed by the stronger arm of their uncle Saphadin; the hostile interests of the sultans of Egypt, Damascus, and Aleppo, were again revived; and the Franks or Latins stood, and breathed, and hoped, in their fortress along the Syrian coast.

The noblest monument of a conqueror's fame, and of the terror which he inspired, is the Saladin tower, a general tax, which was imposed on the laity, and even the clergy, of the Latin church for the service of the holy war. The practice was too lucrative to expire with the occasion; and this tribute became the foundation of all the titles and tenures on ecclesiastical benefices, which have been granted by the Roman pontiffs to Catholic sovereigns, or reserved for the immediate use of the apostolic see. This pecuniary emolument must have tended to increase the interest of the popes in the recovery of Palestine: after the death of Saladin they presided the crusade, by their epistles, their legates, and their missionaries; and the accomplishment of the pious work might have been expected from the zeal and talents of Innocent the Third. Under that young and ambitious priest, the successors of St. Peter attained the full meridian of their greatness; and in a reign of eighteen years, he exercised a despotical command over the emperors and kings, whom he raised and deposed; over the nations, whom an interdict of months or years deprived, for the offence of their rulers, of the exercise of Christian worship. In the council of the Lateran he acted as the ecclesiastical, almost as the temporal, sovereign of the East and West. It was at the feet of his legates that John of England surrendered his

79 See the letters of Saladin to Artois, Ismail, and Jouha. 80 See his army in 1192. 81 The terms of the truce, or the treaty of St. Jean, seem obscure the precise date of its conclusion and conditions. 82 See the Life of Saladin, by the Latin chronicler, p. 473-481, Hist. Majus, p. 132-142, and on the whole of the subject, p. 173-175. 83 The dispute was an important one in the history of the Holy War. remark is made von a storm and the Turks. 84 De la perspicacia et iniquitate, conf. p. 473, 1547. 85 See the Life of Saladin. 86 See the Laws of Saladin, De legibus, cap. 87, 88, and the tabula of M. de Gelis, edit. Paris, 1609. 87 See the other of the Latin church on this subject. 88 Saladin's great fame, and the PP. of the Saladin tower, the high place (church on the Field of the Righteous, etc., Paris, 1609, and 310, in the East, etc.)
crown; and Innocent may boast of the two most signal triumphs over sense and humanity, the establishment of transubstantiation, and the origin of the inquisition. At his voice, two crusades, the fourth and the fifth, were undertaken; but, except a king of Hungary, the princes of the second order were at the head of the pilgrims; the forces were inadequate to the design; nor did the effects correspond with the hopes and wishes of the pope and the people.

The fourth crusade, diverted from Syria to Constantinople, and the conquest of the Greek or Roman empire by the Latin will form the proper and important subject of the next chapter. In the fifth, two hundred thousand Franks were landed at the eastern mouth of the Nile. They reasonably hoped that Palestine must be subdued in Egypt, the seat and storehouse of the sultan; and, after a siege of sixteen months, the Moslems deprived the loss of Damietta. But the Christian army was ruined by the pride and insolence of the legate Pelagius, who, in the pope's name, assumed the character of general; the sickly Franks were encompassed by the waters of the Nile and the Oriental forces; and it was by the evacuation of Damietta that they obtained a safe retreat, some concessions for the pilgrims; and the tardy restitution of the doubtful relic of the true cross. The failure may be in some measure ascribed to the abuse and multiplication of the crusades, which were preached at the same time against the Pagans of Livonia, the Moors of Spain, the Abissines of France, and the kings of Sicily of the Imperial family. In these meritorious services, the volunteers might aspire at home the same spiritual indulgence, and a larger measure of temporal rewards; and even the popes, in their zeal against a domestic enemy, were sometimes tempted to forget the distress of their Syrian brethren. From the last age of the crusades they derived the occasional command of an army and revenue; and some deep reasoners have suspected that the whole enterprize, from the first synod of Placentia, was contrived and executed by the policy of Rome. The suspicion is not founded either in nature or in fact. The successors of St. Peter appear to have followed, rather than guided, the impulse of manners and prejudice; without much foresight of the seasons, or cultivation of the soil, they gathered the ripe and spontaneous fruits of the superabundance of the times. They gathered those fruits without toil or personal danger: in the council of the Lateran, Innocent the Third declared an ambiguous resolution of animating the crusaders by his example; but the pilot of the sacred vessel could not abandon the helms; nor was Palestine ever blessed with the presence of a Roman pontiff.

The persons, the families, and estates of the pilgrims, were under the immediate protection of the popes; and these spiritual patrons soon claimed the prerogative of directing their operations, and enforcing, by command and censures, the accomplishment of their vow. Frederic the Second, the grandson of Barbarossa, was successively the pupil, the enemy, and the victim of the church. At the age of twenty-one years, and in obedience to his guardian Innocent the Third, he assumed the crown; the same promise was repeated at his royal and Imperial coronations; and his marriage with the heiress of Jerusalem for ever bound him to defend the kingdom of his son Conrad. But as Frederic advanced in age and authority, he repented of the rash engagements of his youth; his liberal sense and knowledge taught him to despise the phantoms of superstition and the crowns of Asia; he no longer entertained the same reverence for the successors of Innocent; and his ambition was occupied by the restoration of the Italian monarchy from Sicily to the Alps. But the success of this project would have reduced the popes to their primitive simplicity; and, after the delays and excuses of twelve years, they urged the emperor, with entreaties and threats, to fix the time and place of his departure for Palestine. In the harbors of Sicily and Apulia, he prepared a fleet of one hundred galleys, and of one hundred vessels, that were framed to transport and land two thousand five hundred knights, with their horses and attendants; his vessels of Naples and Germany formed a powerful army; and the number of English crusaders was magnified to sixty thousand by the report of fame. But the inevitable, or affected, slowness of these mighty preparations, consumed the strength and provisions of the more indisciplined pilgrims; the multitude was thinned by sickness and desertion; and the sultry summer of Calabria anticipated the misfortunes of a Syrian campaign. At length the emperor landed at Brindisi, with a fleet and army of forty thousand men; but he kept the sea no more than three days; and his hasty retreat, which was ascribed by his friends to a grievous indisposition, was accused by his enemies as a voluntary and obstinate disobedience. For suspending his vow was Frederic excommuni cate by Gregory the Ninth; for presuming, the next year, to accomplish his vow, he was again excommunicate by the same pope.

While he sailed under the banner of the cross, a crusade was preached against him in Italy; and after his return he was compelled to ask pardon for the injuries which he had suffered. The clergy and military orders of Palestine were previously instructed to renounce his communion and dispute his commands; and in his own kingdom, the emperor was
forced to consent that the orders of the camp should be issued in the name of God and of the Christian republic. Frederick entered Jerusalem in triumph; and with his own hands (for no priest would perform the office) he took the crown from the altar of the holy sepulchre. But the patriarch cast an interdict on the church which his presence had profaned; and the knights of the hospital and temple informed the sultan how easily he might be surprised and slain in his unguarded visit to the river Jordan. In such a state of fanaticism and fiction, victory was hopeless, and defense was difficult; but the conclusion of an advantageous peace may be imputed to the discord of the Mahometans, and their personal esteem for the character of Frederick. The enemy of the church is accused of maintaining with the insane an intercourse of hospitality and friendship, unworthy of a Christian; of despising the barrenness of the land; and of indulging a profane thought, that if Jehovah had seen the kingdom of Naples, he never would have selected Palestine for the inheritance of his chosen people. Yet Frederick obtained from the sultan the restitution of Jerusalem, of Bethlehem and Nazareth, of Tyre and Sidon: the Latins were allowed to inhabit and fortify the city; an equal code of civil and religious freedom was ratified for the sectaries of Jesus and those of Mahomet; and, while the former worshipped at the holy sepulchre, the latter might pray and preach in the mosque of the temple, from whence the prophet undertook his nocturnal journey to heaven. The clergy deplored this simulacrum toleration; and the weaker Moslems were gradually expelled; but every rational object of the crusades was accomplished without bloodshed; the churches were restored, the monasteries were replenished; and, in the space of fifteen years, the Latins of Jerusalem exceeded the number of six thousand. This peace and prosperity, for which they were ungrateful to their benefactor, was terminated by the irruption of the strange and savage hosts of Cumans. Flying from the arms of the Moguls, those shepherds of the Caspian rolled howling on Syria; and the union of the Franks with the sultans of Aleppo, Homs, and Damascus, was insufficient to stem the violence of the torrent. Whatever stood against them, was cut off by the sword, or dragged into captivity; the military orders were almost exterminated in a single battle; and in the pillage of the city, in the profanation of the holy sepulchre, the Latins confess and regret the modesty and discipline of the Turks and Saracens. 80

Of the seven crusades, the two last were undertaken by Louis the Ninth, king of France; who lost his liberty in Egypt, and his life on the coast of Africa. Twenty-eight years after his death, he was canonised at Rome; and sixty-five miracles were readily found, and solemnly attested, to justify the claim of the royal saint. 81

The voice of history renders a more honourable testimony, that he united the virtues of a king, an hero, and a man; that his martial spirit was tempered by the love of private and public justice; and that Louis was the father of his people, the friend of his neighbours, and the terror of the infidels. Supremacy alone, in all the extent of her useful influences, corrupted his understanding and his heart; his devotion stooped to admire and imitate the begging friars of Francis and Dominic; he pursued with blind and cruel zeal the escruples of the faith; and the best of kings twice descended from his throne to seek the adventures of a spiritual knight-errant. A monkish historian would have been content to applaud the most despicable part of his character; but the noble and gallant Joinville, 82 who shared the friendship and captivity of Louis, has traced with the pencil of nature the free portrait of his virtues as well as of his failings. From this intimate knowledge, we may learn to suspect the political views of depressing their great vassals, which are so often imputed to the royal authors of the crusades. Above all the princes of the middle ages, Louis the Ninth successfully laboured to restore the prerogatives of the crown; but it was at home, and not in the East, that he acquired for himself and his posterity; his vow was the result of enthusiasm and sickness; and if he were the promoter, he was likewise the victim, of this holy madness. For the invasion of Egypt, France was exhausted of her treasures; he covered the sea of Cyprus with eighteen hundred sail; the most modest enumeration amounts to fifty thousand men; and, if we might trust his own confession, as it is reported by Oriental vanity, he disembarcked nine thousand five hundred horse, and one hundred and thirty thousand foot, who performed their pilgrimage under the shadow of his power.

In complete armours, the armoured mass was waxing before him, Louis leapt foremost on the beach; and the strong city of Damietta, which had cost his predecessors a siege of sixteen months, was abandoned on the first assault by the trembling Moslems. But Damietta was the first and the last of his conquests; and in the fifth and sixth crusades, the same cause, almost on the same ground, were productive of similar calamities. 83

80 The clergy solely conformed the north or church of the people with the holy sepulchre, and their willful error has deserved the censure of the sultan.
81 The expiation of the Castilians or Certain, is noticed by de Bâlon, p. 147, 167; and by Joinville, p. 133, 150. The Annal. Hier. p. 117, 131, 135, 156, 183.
82 From the Life of Louis the Ninth, by Joinville, p. 177, 180.
83 I have the editions of Aboulphilo, the one (Paris, 1878) more valuable for the description of Damascus; the other (Paris, 1848), gives more of the poet's passion, and is more poetical in the poem. The reader has been recently discovered. The last author proves, that the history of Louis was false: A. B. 1848, unless correct. A. B. 1848, unless correct.
84 He learned in his native language (French), and in Latin, in his childhood; and in Greek, when he was twenty.
85 He learned in languages (French), and in medicine, by his own observation, and by the government.
86 joinville, p. 177, 180.
87 De Aboulphilo, p. 106, 126, who made him by the common name of Aboulphilo, without adding to his own name. A. B. 1848, unless correct. A. B. 1848, unless correct.
After a ruinous delay, which introduced into the camp the seeds of an epidemic disease, the Franks advanced from the sea-coast towards the capital of Egypt, and strove to surmount the unreasonable insubordination of the Nile, which opposed their progress. Under the eye of their intrepid monarch, the barons and knights of France displayed their invincible contempt of danger and discipline: his brother, the count of Artois, stormed with inconsiderate valour the town of Maassauro; and the carrier pigeons announced to the inhabitants of Cairo that all was lost. But a soldier, who afterwards usurped the sceptre, rallied the flying troops; the main body of the Christians was far behind their vanguard; and Artois was overpowered and slain. A shower of Greek fire was incessantly poured on the invaders; the Nile was commanded by the Egyptian galleys, the open country by the Arabs; all provisions were intercepted; each day aggravated the sickness and famine; and about the same time a retreat was found to be necessary and impracticable. The Oriental writers confess, that Louis might have escaped, if he would have deserted his subjects: he was made prisoner, with the greatest part of his nobility; all who could not redeem their lives by service or ransom were inhumanly massacred; and the walls of Cairo were decorated with a circle of Christian heads. The King of France was loaded with chains; April 5—May 1, but the generous victor, a great-grandson of the brother of Saladin, sent a robe of honour to his royal captive, and his deliverance, with that of his soldiers, was obtained by the restitution of Damietta, and the payment of four hundred thousand pieces of gold. In a soft and luxuriant climate, the degenerate children of the companions of Noureddin and Saladin were incapable of resisting the flower of European chivalry: they triumphed by the arms of their slaves or Mamalukes, the hardy natives of Tartary, who at a tender age had been purchased of the Syrian merchants, and were educated in the camp and palace of the sultan. But Egypt soon afforded a new example of the danger of oriental bands; and the rage of these ferocious animals, who had been let loose on the strangers, was provoked to devour their benefactors. In the pride of conquest, Tourouj Shaw, the last of his race, was murdered by his Mamalukes; and the more daring of the assassins entered the chamber of the captive king, with drawn daggers, and their hands stained in the blood of their sultan. The boasting of Louis commanded their respect; their aversion pre-

vailed over cruelty and zeal; the treaty was accomplished; and the King of France, with the relics of his army, was permitted to embark for Palestine. He wasted four years within the walls of Acre, unable to visit Jerusalem, and unwilling to return without glory to his native country.

The memory of his defeat excited Louis, after sixteen years of wisdom and repose, to undertake the seventh and last of the crusades. His finances were restored, his kingdom was enlarged, a new generation of warriors had arisen, and he embarked with fresh confidence at the head of six thousand horse and thirty thousand foot. The loss of Antioch had provoked the enterprise: a wild hope of equalizing the king of Tunis, tempted him to steer for the African coast; and the report of an immense treasure reconciled his troops to the delay of their voyage to the Holy Land. Instead of a prudence, he found a sequel; the French pantied and died on the burning sands; St. Louis expired in his tent, and no sooner had he closed his eyes, than his son and successor gave the signal of the retreat. 100 It is thus, says a lively writer, "that a Christian king died near the ruins of Carthage, waging war against the sectaries of Mahomet, in a land to which Diado had introduced the deities of Syria." 101

A more unjust and absurd constitution cannot be devised, than that which confines the natives of a country to perpetual servitude, under the arbitrary dominion of strangers and slaves. Yet such has been the state of Egypt above five hundred years. The most illustrious sultans of the Basharite and Borghite dynasties, 102 were themselves promoted from the Tartar and Circassian bands; and the four and twenty boys, or military chiefs, have ever been succeeded, not by their sons, but by their servants. They produce the great charter of their liberties, the treaty of Sinon the First with the republic; 103 and the Ottoman emperor still accepts from Egypt a slight acknowledgment of tribute and subjection. With some breathing intervals of peace and order, the two dynasties are marked as a period of rapine and bloodshed: 104 but their throne, however shaken, reposed on the two pillars of discipline and valour; their sway extended over Egypt, Nubia, Arabia, and Syria; their Mamalukes were multiplied from eight hundred to twenty-five thousand horse; and their numbers were increased by a provincial militia of one hundred and seventy thousand foot, and the occasional aid of sixty-

---

100 The memory of the seven successive wars on the Moslem, the Behrhan, or Turan of Turan, and the Behshahr, Behassan, is given by Pfeuss (Civiltà, ad Abhabsche, p. 220); and De Beaufort, in his book of the same title, p. 149.; 151; and the end is given by P. de Biron in the history of the crusades, p. 118. 101 The memory of the seven successive wars on the Moslem, the Behrhan, or Turan of Turan, and the Behshahr, Behassan, is given by Pfeuss (Civiltà, ad Abhabsche, p. 220); and De Beaufort, in his book of the same title, p. 149.; 151; and the end is given by P. de Biron in the history of the crusades, p. 118.

101 The memory of the seven successive wars on the Moslem, the Behrhan, or Turan of Turan, and the Behshahr, Behassan, is given by Pfeuss (Civiltà, ad Abhabsche, p. 220); and De Beaufort, in his book of the same title, p. 149.; 151; and the end is given by P. de Biron in the history of the crusades, p. 118.

102 The memory of the seven successive wars on the Moslem, the Behrhan, or Turan of Turan, and the Behshahr, Behassan, is given by Pfeuss (Civiltà, ad Abhabsche, p. 220); and De Beaufort, in his book of the same title, p. 149.; 151; and the end is given by P. de Biron in the history of the crusades, p. 118.

103 The memory of the seven successive wars on the Moslem, the Behrhan, or Turan of Turan, and the Behshahr, Behassan, is given by Pfeuss (Civiltà, ad Abhabsche, p. 220); and De Beaufort, in his book of the same title, p. 149.; 151; and the end is given by P. de Biron in the history of the crusades, p. 118.
six thousand Arabs. Prince of such power and spirit could not long endure on their coast an hostile and independent nation; and if the ruin of the Franks was postponed about forty years, they were indebted to the cares of an unsettled reign, to the invasion of the Magyars, and to the occasional aid of some warlike pilgrims.

Among these, the English reader will observe the name of our first Edward, who assumed the cross in the lifetime of his father Henry. At the head of a thousand soldiers, the future conqueror of Wales and Scotland delivered Acre from a siege; marched as far as Nasareth with an army of nine thousand men; emulated the fame of his uncle Richard, excepted, by his valor, a ten years' truce; and escaped, with a dangerous wound, from the dagger of a fanatic assassin.

Acre, whose situation had been less exposed to the calamities of the holy war, was finally occupied and ruined by Bondecard or Iliara, sultan of Egypt and Syria; the Latin principality was extinguished; and the first seat of the Christian name was despoiled by the slaughter of seventeen, and the captivity of one hundred, thousand of her inhabitants. The maritime towns of Lattine, Gafada, Tripoli, Berysa, Sidon, Tyre, and Jaffa, and the stronger castles of the Hospitals and Templars, successively fell; and the whole existence of the Franks was confined to the city and colony of St. John of Acre, which is sometimes described by the more classic title of Pelaëmis.

After the loss of Jerusalem, Acre, which is distant about seventy miles, became the metropolis of the Latin Christians, and was adorned with strong and stately buildings, with aqueducts, an artificial port, and a double wall. The population was increased by the incessant streams of pilgrims and fugitives; in the pulses of hostility the trade of the East and West was attracted to this convenient station; and the market could offer the produce of every climate and the interpreters of every tongue. But in this conflnct of nations, every vice was propagated and practised: of all the disciplines of Jesus and Mahomet, the male and female inhabitants of Acre were assumed the most corrupt; and could the abuse of religion be corrected by the discipline of law. The city had many sovereigns, and no government. The kings of Jerusalem and Cyprus, of the house of Lusignan, the princes of Antioch, the counts of Tripoli and Sidon, the grand masters of the hospital, the temple, and the Teutonic order, the republics of Venice, Genoa, and Pisa, the pope's legate, the kings of France and England, assumed an independent command; seventeen tribunals exercised the power of life and death; every criminal was protected by the adjacent quarter; and the perpetual jealousy of the nations burst forth in acts of violence and blood. Some adventurers, who disgraced the

resign of the cross, compensated their want of pay by the plunder of the Moslem villages: nineteen Syrian merchants, who traded under the public faith, were despoiled, and hanged by the Christians; and the denial of satisfaction justified the arms of the sultan Khalil. He marched against Acre, at the head of sixty thousand horse and one hundred and forty thousand foot; his train of artillery (if I may use the word) was numerous and weighty; the separate timbers of a single engine were transported in one hundred wagons; and the royal historian Alhüfeda, who served with the troops of Hamah, was himself a spectator of the holy war. Whatever might be the views of the Franks, their courage was reckoned by enthusiasm and despair; but they were torn by the discord of seventeen chiefs, and overwhelmed on all sides by the powers of the sultan. After a siege of thirty-three days, the double wall was forced by the Muslims; the principal tower yielded to their engines; the Marashakes made a general assault; the city was stormed; and death or slavery was the lot of sixty thousand Christians. The conquer, or rather fortress, of the Templars resisted three days longer; but the great master was pierced with an arrow; and, of five hundred knights, only ten were left alive, less happy than the victims of the sword, if they lived to suffer on a scaffold in the unjust and cruel proscription of the whole order. The King of Jerusalem, the patriarch, and the great master of the hospital, effected their retreat to the shore; but the sea was rough, the vessels were insufficient; and great numbers of the fugitives were drowned before they could reach the isle of Cyprus, which might comfort Lusignan for the loss of Palestine. By the command of the sultan, the churches and fortifications of the Latin cities were demolished; a motive of avarice or fear still opened the holy sepulchre to some devout and defenceless pilgrims; and a mournful and solitary silence prevailed along the coast which had so long resounded with the world's res.-

CHAP. IX.


The restoration of the Western em-
animosity still divides the two largest communions of the Christian world; and the schism of Constantinople, by alienating her most useful allies, and provoking her most dangerous enemies, has precipitated the decline and fall of the Roman empire in the East.

In the course of the present history of the Latins, the avowal of the Greeks for the Latins has been often visible and conspicuous. It was originally derived from the disdain of servitude, inflamed, after the time of Constantine, by the pride of equality or dominion; and finally exasperated by the preference which their rebellious subjects had given to the alliance of the Franks. In every age the Greeks were proud of their superiority in profane and religious knowledge: they had first received the light of Christianity; they had pronounced the decrees of the seven general councils; they alone possessed the language of Scripture and philosophy; and they regarded the barbarians, immersed in the darkness of the West, as presumes to argue on the high and mysterious questions of theological science. These barbarians despised in their turn the restless and subtle levity of the Oriental, the authors of every heresy; and blessed their own simplicity, which was content to hold the tradiion of the apostolic church. Yet in the seventh century, the synods of Spain, and afterwards of France, improved or corrupted the Nicene creed, on the mysterious subject of the third person of the Trinity. In the long controversie of the Chalcedonian East, the nature and generation of the Christ had been scrupulously defined; and the well-known relation of Father and Son seemed to convey a faint image to the human mind. The idea of birth was near analogous to the Holy Spirit, who, instead of a divine gift or attribute, was considered by the Catholics, as a person, a person, a god; he was not begotten, but in the orthodacal style he proceeded. Did he proceed from the Father alone, perhaps by the Son? or from the Father and the Son? The first of these opinions was asserted by the Greeks, the second by the Latins; and the addition to the Nicene creed of the word filius, kindled the flame of discord between the Oriental and the Gallic churches. In the origin of the dispute, the Roman pontiffs affected a character of neutrality and moderation: they condemned the innovation, but they acquiesced. In the sentiment of their Transalpine brethren, they seemed chosen as carriers of a veil of silence and charity over the superfluous research; and in the correspondence of Charlemaigne and Leo the Third, the pope assumes the liberality of a statesman, and the prince descends to the passions and prejudices of a priest. But the orthodoxy of Rome spontaneously obeyed the impulse of her temporal policy; and the filius, which Leo wished to erase, was transcribed in the symbol and chanted in the liturgy of the Vatican. The Nicene and Arianian creeds are held as the Catholic faith, without which none can be saved; and both Popes and Protetants must now sustain and return the anathemas of the Greeks, who deny the procession of the Holy Ghost from the Son, as well as from the Father. Such articles of faith are not susceptible of treaty; but the rules of discipline will vary in remote and independent churches; and the reason, even of divines, might allow, that the difference is insatiable and harmless. The craft or superstition of Rome has imposed on her priests and deacons the rigid obligation of celibacy; among the Greeks it is confined to the bishops; the loss is compensated by dignity or annihilation by age; and the parochial clergy, the Pepis, enjoy the conjugal society of the wives whom they have married before their entrance into holy orders. A question concerning the fathers was fiercely debated in the eleventh century, and the essence of the Eucharist was supposed in the East and West to depend on the use of leavened or unleavened bread. Shall I mention in a serious history the furious reproaches that were urged against the Latins, who for a long while remained on the defensive? They neglected to abstain, according to the apostolical decree, from things strangled, and from blood; they fasted, a Jewish observance; on the Saturday of each week, during the first week of Lent they permitted the use of milk and cheese; their infirm monks were indulged in the taste of flesh; and animal graces was substituted for the eat of vegetable oil; the holy eucharistic service in baptism was reserved to the episcopal order: the bishops, as the bridgemen of their churches, were decorated with rings; their priests shaved their faces, and baptized by a single immersion. Such were the crimes which provoked the zeal of the patriarchs of Constantinople; and which were justified with equal zeal by the doctors of the Latin church.

Bigotry and national aversion are powerful magnetizers of every object of dispute; but the immediate cause of the schism of the Greeks may be traced in the contemplation of the leading prelates, who maintained the supremacy of the old metropolitan, superior to all, and of the reigning papacy, inferior to none, in the Christian world. About the middle of the ninth century, some clergymen, that refuse the formulæ of the Athenian creed were received at Rome about the year 100. The formulary of the church of Rome had long ago been decided, that all who rejected the doctium, or of that, the pontifical, should be excluded. All the bishops of the Schism were expelled from the schismatics; all the bishops of the Latin church, never excepting those of Rome, were expelled from the schismatics. The pontiff would in a long time have the very formulary of the schismatics. 8

6. In Rome, and above another time, the schismatics declared that the division was made on the see of Peter; the schism was led to Rome (I give the Frangia, etc. in 1 of 3)

7. The original measure of the schism, of the schism of the Church, of the schism of the Frangia, etc. in 3.
Photius, an ambitious layman, the captain of the guards and principal secretary, was promoted by merit and favor to the more desirable office of patriarch of Constantinople. In science, even ecclesiastical science, he surpassed the clergy of the age; and the purity of his morals has never been impeached: but his ambition was dusty, his rise was irregular; and Ignatius, his abdicated predecessor, was yet supported by the public confidence and the observance of his adherents. They appealed to the tribunal of Nicholas the First, one of the proudest and most aspiring of the Roman pontiffs, who embraced the welcome opportunity of judging and condemning his rival of the East. Their quarrel was embittered by a conflict of jurisdiction over the king and nation of the Bulgarians; nor was their recent conversion to Christianity of much avail to either prelate, unless he could number the proselytes among the subjects of his power. With the aid of his court, the Greek patriarch was victorious; but in the furious contest he deposited in his turn the successor of St. Peter, and involved the Latin church in the reproach of heresy and schism. Photius sacrificed the peace of the world to a short and precarious reign: he fell with his patron, the Caesar Bardas; and Basil the Macedonian performed an act of justice in the restoration of Ignatius, whose age and dignity had not been sufficiently respected. From his monastery, or prison, Photius solicited the favour of the emperor by pathetic complaints and artful flattery; and the eyes of his rival were scarcely closed, when he was again restored to the throne of Constantinople. After the death of Basil, he experienced the vicissitudes of courts and the ingratitude of a royal pupil: the patriarch was again deposed, and in his last solitary hours he might regret the freedom of a secular and studious life. In such revolution, the breath, the nod, of the sovereign had been accepted by a submissive clergy; and a synod of three hundred bishops was always prepared to hail the triumph, or to stigmatize the fall, of the holy, or the execrable Photius. By a delusive promise of succour or reward, the popes were tempted to countenance these various proceedings; and the synods of Constantinople were ratified by their epistles or legates. But the court and the people, Ignatius and Photius, were equally adverse to their claims: their ministrants were insulted or imprisoned; the procession of the Holy Ghost was forgotten; Bulgaria was for ever annexed to the Byzantine throne; and the schism was prolonged by their rigid censure of all the multiplied estimations of an irregular patriarch. The darkness and corruption of the tenth century suspended the intercourse, without recouping the minds, of the two nations. But when the Norman sword restored the churches of Apulia to the Jurisdiction of Rome, the departing flock was warned, by a pitiful epistle of the Greek patriarch, to avoid and abjure the errors of the Latins. The rising majesty of Rome could no longer break the insolence of a rebel; and Michael Cerularius was excommunicated in the heart of Constantinople by the pope's legates. Staking the dust from their feet, they deposited on the altar of St. Sophia a dirful anathema, which enumerates the seven mortal offences of the Greeks, and denounces the guilty teachers, and their unhappy sectaries, to the eternal society of the devil and his angels. According to the energies of the church and state, a friendly correspondence was sometimes assumed; the language of charity and concord was sometimes affected; but the Greeks have never repeated their errors; the popes have never repeated their sentence; and from this thunderbolt we may date the consummation of the schism. It was strengthened by each ambitious step of the Roman pontiffs: the emperor blushed and trembled at the ignominious fate of their royal brethren of Germany; and the people was scandalized by the temporal power and military life of the Latin clergy.

The schism of the Greeks and Latins was nourished and manifested in the three first expeditions of the pope to the Holy Land. Alexius Cononvus contrived the absence of at least of the formidable pilgrims; his successors, Manuel and Isaac Angelus, conspired with the Moslems for the ruin of the greatest princes of the Franks; and their crooked and malignant policy was seconded by the active and voluntary obedience of every order of their subjects. Of this hostile temper, a large portion may doubtless be ascribed to the difference of language, dress, and manners, which severs and alienates the nations of the globe. The pride, as well as the prudence, of the sovereign was deeply wounded by the intrusion of foreign armies, that claimed a right of traversing his dominions, and passing under the walls of his capital; his subjects were insulted and plundered by the rude strangers of the West; and the hatred of the puritanic Franks was sharpened by secret envy of the bold and pious enterprises of the Franks. But of these causes of national enmity were fortified and inflamed by the venom of religious zeal. Instead of a kind embrace, an hospitable reception, from their Christian brethren of the East, every tongue was taught to repeat the names of schismatic and heretic, more odious to an orthodox ear than those of pagans and infidels; instead of being loved for the general conformity of faith and worship, they were abhorred for some rules of discipline, some questions of theology, in which themselves or their teachers might differ from the Oriental church. In the cromatic of Louis the Seventh, the Greek clergy were wounded and punished, that which had been defiled by the presence of a French priest. The companions of Frederic Barrocino, deplore the injurious which they endured, both in word and deed, from the peculiar enmity of the bishops and monks. Their prayers and sermons excited
the people against the impious barbarians; and the patriarch is accused of sheltering, that the faithful might obtain the redemption of all their sins by the extinguishment of the schismatics. An enthusiastic, named Dorotheus, alarmed the fears, and restored the confidence, of the emperor, by a prophetic assurance, that the German heretic, after assailing the gate of Blachernæ, would be made a signal example of the divine vengeance. The passage of these mighty armies were rare and perilous events; but the crusaders introduced a frequent and familiar intercourse between the two nations, which enlarged their knowledge without altering their prejudices.

The Latiæ of Constantinople demanded the productions of every climate; these imports were balanced by the art and labour of her numerous inhabitants; her situation invites the commerce of the world; and, in every period of her existence, that commerce has been in the hands of foreigners. After the decline of Amalphi, the Venetians, Pisans, and Genoese, introduced their factories and settlements into the capital of the empire; their services were rewarded with honours and immunities; they acquired the possession of lands and houses; their families were multiplied by marriages with the natives; and, after the enthronement of a Mahometan mosch, it was impossible to interdict the churches of the Roman rite. The two wives of Manuel Comnenus were of the race of the Franks; the first, a sister-in-law of the emperor Conrad; the second, a daughter of the prince of Antioch; he obtained for his son Alexius a daughter of Philip Augustus, king of France; and he bestowed his own daughter on a marquis of Montferrat, who was educated and dignified in the palace of Constantinople. The Greek encountered the arms, and aspired to the empire, of the West; he esteemed the valor, and trusted the fidelity, of the Franks; and their military talents were unfailing resources to the lucrative offices of judges and treasurers; his policy of Manuel had solicited the alliance of the popes; and the popular voice accused him of a partial bias to the nation and religion of the Latins. During his reign, and that of his successor Alexius, they were exposed at Constantinople to the reproach of foreigners, heretics, and favourites; and this triple guilt was severely expiated in the tumult, which announced the return and elevation of Andronicus. The people rose in arms; from the Astatic shore the tyrant despatched his troops and galleys to assist the national revenge; and the hopes of resistance of the serfs served only to justify the rage, and sharpen the daggers, of the assassins. Neither age, nor sex, nor the ties of friendship or kindred, could save the victims of national hatred, and avarice, and religious zeal: the Latins were slaughtered in their houses and in the streets; their quarter was reduced to ashes; the clergy were burnt in their churches, and the sick in their hospitals; and some estimate may be formed of the slain from the clemency which sold above four thousand Christians in perpetual slavery to the Turks. The priests and monks were the lowest and most active in the destruction of the schismatics; and they chantcd a thanksgiving to the Lord, when the head of a Roman cardinal, the pope's legate, was severed from his body, fastened to the tail of a dog, and dragged, with savage mockery, through the city. The more diligent of the strangers had retreated, on the first alarm, to their vessels, and escaped through the Dardanelles from the scene of blood. In their flight, they burst and ravaged two hundred miles of the sea-coast; inflicted a severe revenge on the guiltless subjects of the empire; marked the priests and monks as their peculiar enemies; and compensated, by the accumulation of plunder, the loss of their property and friends. On their return, they exposed to Italy and Europe the wealth and weakness, the perdition and malice, of the Greeks, whose vices were painted as the very images of heresy and schism. The spruces of the first crusaders had neglected the fairest opportunities of securing, by the possession of Constantinople, the way to the Holy Land; a domestic revolution invited, and almost compelled, the French and Venetians to achieve the conquest of the Roman empire of the East.

In the series of the Byzantine princes, I have exhibited the hypocrisy and ambition, the tyranny and fall, of Andronicus, the last male of the Comnenian family who reigned at Constantinople. The revolution, which cast him heirlooms from the throne, saved and exalted Isaac Angelus, who descended by the female from the same Imperial dynasty. The successor of a second Nero might have found an easy task to deserve the esteem and affection of his subjects; they sometimes had reason to regret the administration of Andronicus. The sound and vigorous mind of the tyrant was capable of discerning the connection between his own and the public interest; and while he was feared by all who could inspire him with fear, the unsuspected people, and the remote provinces, might bless the inexorable justice of his master. But his successor was vain and jealous of the supreme power, which he wanted courage and abilities to exercise; his vices were pernicious because implicit, and his passions because abandoned.
nious, his virtues (if he possessed any virtues) were useless, to mankind; and the Greeks, who imposed their calamities on his negligence, denied him the merit of any transient or accidental benefits of the times. Isaac slept on the throne, and was awakened only by the sound of pleasure: his vacant hours were amused by comedians and buffoons, and even to these buffoons the emperor was an object of contempt; his feasts and buildings exceeded the examples of royal luxury; the number of his empresses and domestics amounted to twenty thousand: and a daily sum of four thousand pounds of silver would swell to four millions stering the annual expense of his household and table. His poverty was relieved by oppression; and the public discontent was inflamed by equal abuses in the collection, and the application, of the revenue. While the Greeks numbered the days of their servitude, a flattering prophet, whom he rewarded with the dignity of patriarch, assured him of a long and victorious reign of thirty-two years; during which he should extend his sway to the Jard Libanus, and his conquests beyond the Euphrates. But his only step towards the accomplishment of the prediction was a splendid and solemn procession into Saladin, to demand the restitution of the holy sepulchre, and to propose an offensive and defensive league with the enemy of the Christian nations. In those worthy lands, of Isaac and his brother, the remains of the Greek empire crumbled into dust. The island of Cyprus, whose name excites the ideas of elegance and pleasure, was usurped by his namesake, a Cumanian prince; and by a strange concentration of events, the sword of our English Richard bestowed that kingdom on the house of Lusignan, a rich compensation for the loss of Jerusalem.

The honour of the monarchy, and the safety of the capital, were deeply wounded by the revolt of the Bulgarians and Walachians. Since the victory of the second Bautii, they had supported, above an hundred and seventy years, the loose dominion of the Byzantine princes; but no effectual measures had been adopted to impose the yoke of laws and manners on those savage tribes. By the command of Isaac, their sole means of subsistence, their flocks and herds, were driven away, to contribute towards the support of the royal nuptials; and their fierce warriors were exasperated by the denial of equal rank and pay in the military service. Peter and Asam, two powerful chiefs, of the race of the ancient kings, asserted their own rights and the national freedom; their democratic impostors proclaimed to the crowd, that their glorious patron St. Demetrius had for ever deserted the cause of the Greeks; and the conflagration spread from the banks of the Danube to the hills of Macedonia and Thrace. After some faint efforts, Isaac Angelus and his brother ascended in their independence; and the imperial troops were soon discouraged by the bones of their fellow-soldiers, that were scattered along the passus of Mount Harmon. By the arts and policy of John or Johniotes, the second kingdom of Bulgaria was firmly established. The subtle barbarian sent an embassy to Innocent the Third, to acknowledge himself a genuine son of Rome in descent and religion; and humbly received from the pope, the licence of exercising money, the royal title, and a Latin archbishop or patriarch. The Vatican exulted in the spiritual conquest of Bulgaria, the first object of the schism; and if the Greeks could have preserved the prerogatives of the church, they would gladly have resigned the rights of the monarchy.

The Bulgarians were jealous enough to pray for the long life of Isaac Angelus, the surest pledge of their freedom and prosperity. Yet their chiefs could involve in the same indiscriminate contempt, the family and nation of the emperor. In all the Greeks, said Asam to his troops, "the same climate, and "character, and education, will be productive of "the same fruits. Behold my lance," continued "the warrs, and the long streamers that float "in the wind. These only vary in colour; they "are formed of the same silk, and fashioned by "the same workmen; nor has the stripe that is "stained in purple, a superior price or value "above its fellows." Several of these candidates for the purple successively rose and fell under the empire of Isaac: a general who had repelled the fleets of Sicily, was driven to revolt and ruin by the ingratitude of the prince; and his luxurious repose was disturbed by secret conspiracies and popular insurrections. The emperor was saved by accident, or the merit of his servants; he was at length opposed by an ambitious brother, who, for the hope of a precarious diadem, forgot the obligations of nature, of loyalty, and of friendship. While Isaac in the Thracian valleys pursued the idle and solitary pleasures of the chase, his brother, Alexius Angelus, was invested with the purple, by the unanimous suffrage of the camp; the capital and the clergy subscribed to his choice; and the vanity of the new sovereign rejected the name of his father for the laity and royal appellation of the Comnenian race. On the despicable character of Isaac I have exhausted the language of contempt; and can only add, that in a reign of eight years, the baser Alexius was supported by the masculine visage of his with Euphrosyne. The first intelligence of his fall was conveyed to the late emperor by the hasty report and pursuit of the guards; no longer his own: be fled before them above fifty miles as

---

13 See Ranke, Hist. of the Seljouks, p. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. The establishment of Isaac was speedily ratified by the Greeks, French, and the Latin emperors; it was solemnly done by these princesses. Enterprising voyages were undertaken in the East. The Croesus, Vesque, and Stefan, are all of the same class. In the middle ages the Greek emperors undertook the conquest of the Turkish language, and the conversion of the Turks into a Christian and Greek language. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusades were undertaking the mission of the Crusaders. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders. In the middle ages, they were known by the name of the Latins, and often mentioned in the manuscripts of the time. The crusades of the Crusaders were undertaking the mission of the crusaders.
far as Stagyr in Macedonia; but the fugitive, without an object or a follower, was mistreated, brought back to Constantinople, deprived of his eyes, and confined in a lonesome tower, on a scanty allowance of bread and water. At the moment of the revolution, his son Alexis, whom he educated in the hope of empire, was twelve years of age. He was spared by the usurper, and reduced to attend his triumph both in peace and war; but as the army was encamped on the sea-shore, an Italian vessel facilitated the escape of the royal youth; and, in the disguise of a common sailor, he eluded the search of his enemies, passed the Hellespont, and found a secure refuge in the isle of Sicily. After saluting the threshold of the apostles, and imploring the protection of pope Innocent the Third, Alexis accepted the kind invitation of his sister Irene, the wife of Philip of Swabia, king of the Romans. But in his passage through Italy, he heard that the flower of Western chivalry was assembled at Venice for the deliverance of the Holy Land; and a ray of hope was kindled in his bosom, that their invincible swords might be employed in his father's restoration.

About ten or twelve years after the loss of Jerusalem, the nobles of France were again summoned to the holy war by the voice of a third prophet, less extravagant, perhaps, than Peter the Hermit, but far below St. Bernard in the merit of an orator and a statesman. An illiterate priest of the neighbourhood of Paris, Fulk of Neufille, forsook his parochial duty, to assume the more flattering character of a popular and itinerant missionary. The fame of his sanctity and miracles was spread over the land; he declined, with severity and vehemence, against the vices of the age; and his sermons, which he preached in the streets of Paris, converted the robbers, the usurers, the prostitutes, and even the doctors and scholars of the university. No sooner did Innocent the Third ascend the chair of St. Peter, than he proclaimed in Italy, Germany, and France, the obligation of a new crusade. The eloquent poet of the ruin of Jerusalem, the triumph of the Pagans, and the shame of Christendom; his liberality proposed the redemption of sins, a pious indulgence to all who should serve in Palestine, either a year in person, or two years by a substitute; and among his legates and orators who blew the sacred trumpet, Fulk of Neufille was the leasted and most successful. The situation of the principal monarchs was severe. The}

---

This text is a continuation of the previous one, discussing the Crusades, the role of various monarchs, and the involvement of different nations and their leaders. It mentions the attempts to secure the Crusader States and the various strategies employed. The text reflects on the complexity and multifaceted nature of the Crusades, highlighting the challenges faced by different parties and the tactics used to overcome them. The text captures the historical context and the strategic decisions made by the leaders of the time. It also underscores the wider implications of the Crusades for the region and beyond, influencing political, social, and religious dynamics. The narrative is enriched with references to key figures and events, providing a comprehensive overview of the period under discussion.
war were debated in full and frequent assemblies; and it was resolved to seek the deliverance of Palestine in Egypt, a country, since Saladin’s death, which was almost ruined by famine and civil wars. But the fate of so many royal armies displayed the toils and perils of a land expedition; and, if the Fleas swells along the ocean, the French barons were destitute of ships and ignorant of navigation. They embraced the wise resolution of choosing six deputies or representatives, of whom Villehardouin was one, with a discretionary trust to direct the designs, and to pledge the faith, of the whole confederacy. The maritime states of Italy were alone possessed of the means of transporting the holy warriors with their arms and horses; and the six deputies proceeded to Venice to solicit, on motives of piety or interest, the aid of that powerful republic.

In the invasion of Italy by Atilla, I have mentioned the flight of the Venetians from the fallen cities of the continent, and their obscure shelter in the chain of islands that line the extremity of the Adriatic Gulf. In the midst of the waters, free, indigent, laborious, and inaccessible, they gradually coalesced into a republic; the first foundations of Venice were laid in the island of Rialto; and the annual election of the twelve tribunes was suspended by the permanent office of a duke or doge. On the verge of the two empires, the Venetians exulted in the belief of primitive and perpetual independence. Against the Latins, their ancient freedom has been asserted by the sword, and may be justified by the pen. Charlemagne himself resigned all claims of sovereignty to the islands of the Adriatic Gulf; his son Pepin was repulsed in the attacks of the legionary or canals, too deep for the cavalry, and too shallow for the vessels; and in every age, under the German emperors, the lands of the republic have been closely distinguished from the kingdom of Italy. But the inhabitants of Venice were considered by themselves, by strangers, and by their sovereigns, as an inalienable portion of the Greek empire; in the ninth and tenth centuries, the proofs of their subjection are numerous and unquestionable; and the vain titles, the servile honours, of the Byzantine court, so ambitiously solicited by their dukes, would have degraded the magistrates of a free people. But the hands of this dependence, which was never absolute or rigid, were imperceptibly relaxed by the ambition of Venice and the weakness of Constantinople. Obedience was softened into respect, privilege ripened into prerogative, and the free

dom of domestic government was fortified by the independence of foreign dominion. The maritime cities of Issus and Dalmatia bowed to the sovereigns of the Franks; and when they armed against the Normans in the cause of Alexius, the emperor applied, not to the duty of his subjects, but to the gratitude and generosity of his faithful allies. The sea was their patrimony; the western parts of the Mediterranean, from Tuscany to Gibraltar, were indeed abandoned to their rivals of Pisa and Genoa; but the Venetians acquired an early and lucrative share of the commerce of Greece and Egypt. Their riches increased with the increasing demand of Europe; their manufactures of silk and glass, perhaps the institutions of their bank, were of high antiquity; and they enjoyed the fruits of their industry in the magnificence of public and private life. To assert her flag, to avenge her injuries, to protect the freedom of navigation, the republic could launch and man a fleet of an hundred galleys; and the Greeks, the Saracens, and the Normans, were encountered by her naval armament. The Franks of Syria were met by the Venetians in the reduction of the sea-coast; but their zeal was neither blind nor disinterested; and in the conquest of Tyre, they shared the sovereignty of a city, the first seat of the commerce of the world. The policy of Venice was marked by the aversion of a trading, and the insolvency of a maritime, power; yet her ambition was prudent; nor did she often forget that if armed galleys were the effect and safeguard, merchant vessels were the cause and supply, of her greatness. In her religion, she avoided the schisms of the Greeks, without yielding a servile obedience to the Roman pontiff; and a free intercourse with the infidels of every clime appears to have allayed betimes the fever of superstition. Her primitive government was a loose mixture of democracy and monarchy: the doge was elected by the votes of the general assembly; as long as he was popular and successful, he reigned with the pomp and authority of a prince; but in the frequent revolutions of the state, he was deposed, or banished, or slain, by the justice or injustice of the multitude. The twelfth century produced the first rudiments of the wise and jealous aristocracy, which has reduced the doge to a pageant, and the people to a cipher.

When the six ambassadors of the French pilgrims arrived at Venice, they were hospitably entertained in the palace of St. Mark, by the reigning doge: his name was Henry Dandolo; and he shone
in the last period of human life as one of the most illustrious characters of the times. Under the weight of years, and after the loss of his eyes, 10 Dandolo retained a sound understanding and a manly courage; the spirit of an hero, ambitious to signalise his reign by some memorable exploits; and the wisdom of a patriot, anxious to build his fame on the glory and advantage of his country. He praised the bold enthusiasm and liberal confidence of the barons and their deputies; in such a cause, and with such associates, he should aspire, were he a private man, to terminate his life; but he was the servant of the republic, and some delay was requisite to consult, on this arduous business, the judgment of his colleagues. The proposal of the French was first debated by the six ages who had been recently appointed to control the administration of the doge; it was next disclosed to the forty members of the council of state; and finally communicated to the legislative assembly of four hundred and fifty representatives, who were annually chosen in the six quarters of the city. In peace and war, the doge was still the chief of the republic; his legal authority was supported by the personal reputation of Dandolo; his arguments of public interest were balanced and approved; and he was authorised to inform the ambassadors of the following conditions of the treaty. 11 It was proposed that the crusaders should assemble at Venice, on the feast of St. John of the evening year, that flat-bottomed vessels should be prepared for four thousand five hundred horses, and nine thousand squires, with a number of ships sufficient for the embarkation of four thousand five hundred knights, and twenty thousand foot; that during a term of nine months they should be supplied with provisions, and transported to whateverset coast the service of God and Christendom should require; and that the republic should join the adventure with a squadron of fifty galleys. It was required, that the pilgrims—should pay, before their departure, a sum of eighty-five thousand marks of silver; and that all conquests, by sea and land, should be equally divided between the confederates. The terms were hard; but the emergency was pressing, and the French barons were not less profuse of money than of blood. A general assembly was convened to ratify the treaty: the stately chapel and place of St. Mark were filled with ten thousand citizens; and the noble deputies were taught a new lesson of humiliation themselves before the majesty of the people. Illustrious Venetians," said the marshal of Champagne, "we are sent by the greatest and most powerful barons of France, to impose the aid of the masters of the sea for the deliverance of Jerusalem. They have required us to fall prostrate at your feet; nor will we rise from the ground, till you have promised to avenge us of the injuries of Christ." The eloquence of their words and tears, their martial aspect, and supplications at thithe, were applauded by an universal shout; as it were, says Jeffery, by the sound of an earthquake. The venerable doge ascended the pulpit to urge their request by those motives of honour and virtue, which alone can be offered to a popular assembly; the treaty was transcribed on parchment, attested with seals and seals, mutually accepted by the weeping and joyful representatives of France and Venice; and despatched to Rome for the approbation of pope Innocent the Third. Two thousand marks were borrowed of the merchants for the first expenses of the armament. Of the six deputies, two repassed the Alps to announce their success, while their four companions made a fruitless trial of the zeal and emulation of the republics of Genoa and Pisa.

The execution of the treaty was still opposed by unforeseen difficulties and delays. The marshal, on his return to Troyes, was embraced and approved by Thiouin count of Champagne, who had been unanimously chosen general of the confederates. But the health of that valiant youth already declined, and soon became hopeless; and he deployed the unformedit fate, which condemned him to expire, not in a field of battle, but on a bed of sickness. To his brave and numerous vessels, the dying prince distributed his treasures; they swore in his presence to accomplish his vow and their own; but soon there were, says the marshal, who accepted his gifts and forsook their word. The more resolute champions of the cross held a parliament at Soissons for the election of a new general; but such was the incapacity, or jealousy, or reluctance, of the princes of France, that none could be found both able and willing to assume the conduct of the enterprise. They acquiesced in the choice of a stranger, of Barfian marquis of Montferrat, descended of a race of heroes, and himself of conspicuous fame in the wars and negotiations of the times; 111 mur could the pietist ambition of the Italian chief decline this honourable invitation. After visiting the French court, where he was received as a friend and kinsman, the marquis, in the church of Soissons, was invested with the cross of a pilgrim and the staff of a general; and immediately repassed the Alps, to prepare for the distant expedition of the East. About the festival of the Pentecost he displayed his banner, and marched towards Venice at the head of the Italians; he was preceded or followed by the counts of Flanders and Blois, and the most respectable barons of France; and their numbers were swelled by the pilgrims of Germany, 12 whose object and motives were similar to their own. The Venetians had fulfilled, and even surpassed, their engagements: stables were constructed for the horses, and barracks for the
troops; the magazines were abundantly replenished with forage and provisions; and the fleet of transports, ships, and galleys, was ready to hoist sail, as soon as the republic had received the price of the freight and armament. But that price far exceeded the wealth of the crusaders who were assembled at Venice. The Flamingos, whose obedience to their count was voluntary and precarious, had embarked in their vessels for the long navigation of the ocean and Mediterranean; and many of the French and Italians had preferred a cheaper and more convenient passage from Marseilles and Ajaccia to the Holy Land. Each pilgrim might complain that after he had furnished his own contribution, he was made responsible for the deficiency of his absent brethren; the gold and silver plate of the chief, which freely delivered to the treasury of St. Mark, was a generous but inadequate sacrifice; and after all their efforts, thirty-four thousand marks were still wanting to complete the stipulated sum. The obstacle was removed by the policy and patriotism of the doge, who proposed to the barons, that if they would join their arms in reducing some revolted cities of Dalmatia, he would expose his person in the holy war, and obtain from the republic a long indulgence, till some wealthy conqueror should afford the means of satisfying the debt. After much scruple and hesitation, they chose rather to accept the offer than to relinquish the enterprise; and the first hostilities of the fleet and army were directed against Zara, a strong and city of the Slavonian coast, which had renounced its allegiance to Venice, and imploded the protection of the king of Hungary. The crusaders burst the chain or boom of the harbour; landed their horses, troops, and military engines; and compelled the inhabitants, after a defeat of five days, to surrender at discretion: their lives were spared, but the revolt was punished by the pillage of their houses and the demolition of their walls. The season was far advanced; the Frisch and Venetians resolved to pass the winter in a secure harbour and plentiful country; but their repos was disturbed by national and tumultuous quarrels of the soldiers and mariners. The conquest of Zara had scattered the seeds of discord and scandal: the arms of the allies had been stilled in their outset with the blood, not of infidels, but of Christians; the king of Hungary and his new subjects were themselves enlisted under the banner of the cross; and the scruples of the devout, were tranquilled by the fear or latitude of the reluctant, pilgrims. The pope had communicated the false crusaders who had pillaged and massacred their brethren, and only the marquis D'Ominface...

Simon of Montfort escaped these spiritual thumbers; the one by his absence from the siege, the other by his final departure from the camp. Innocent might abate the simple and submissive pretensions of France; but he was provoked by the stubborn reason of the Venetians, who refused to confess their guilt, to accept their pardon, or to allow, in the temporal concern, the interposition of a saint.

The assembly of such formidable powers by sea and land, had revived the hopes of young Alexius; and, both at Venice and Zara, he solicited the arms of the crusaders, for his own restoration and his father's delivery. The royal youth was recommended by Philip king of Germany: his prayers and presence excited the compassion of the camp; and his cause was embraced and pleaded by the marquis of Montferrat and the dogs of Venice. A double alliance, and the dignity of Caesar, had connected with the Imperial family the two elder brothers of Dandalo; he expected to derive a kingdom from the important service; and the more generous ambition of Dandalo was eager to secure the inestimable benefits of trade and dominion that might accrue to his country. Their influence procured a favourable audience for the ambassadors of Alexius; and if the magnitude of his offers excited some suspicion, the motives and rewards which he displayed might justify the delay and division of those forces which had been consecrated to the deliverance of Jerusalem. He promised, in his own and his father's name, that as soon as they should be seated on the throne of Constantinople, they would terminate the long schism of the Greeks, and submit themselves and their people to the lawful supremacy of the Roman church. He engaged to recompense the labours and merits of the crusaders, by the immediate payment of two hundred thousand marks of silver to accompany them in person to Egypt, or, if it should be judged more advantageous, to maintain, during a year, ten thousand men, and during his life, five hundred knights, for the service of the Holy Land. These tempting conditions were accepted by the republic of Venice; and the eloquence of the doge and marquis persuaded the counts of Flanders, Blois, and St. Pol, with eight horsemen of France, to join in the glorious enterprise. A treaty of offensive and defensive alliance was confirmed by their oaths and seals; and each individual, according to his situation and character, was swayed by the hope of public or private advantage; by the honour of restoring an exiled monarch; or by the sincere and probable opinion, that their efforts in Palestine would be
fruitless and unavailing, and that the acquisition of Constantinople must precede and prepare the recovery of Jerusalem. But they were the chief or equals of a valiant band of free men and volunteers, who thought and acted for themselves; the soldiers and clergy were divided; and, if a large majority subscribed to the alliance, the numbers and arguments of the dissenters were strong and respectable. The boldest hearts were appalled by the report of the naval power and impregnable strength of Constantinople; and their apprehensions were disguised to the world, and perhaps to themselves, by the more decent objections of religion and duty. They alleged the sanctity of a vow, which had drawn them from their families and homes to the rescue of the holy sepulchre; nor should the dark and crooked counsels of human policy divert them from a pursuit, the event of which was in the hands of the Almighty. Their first offence, the attack of Zara, had been severely punished by the reproach of their conscience and the censure of the pope; nor would they again inure their hands in the blood of their fellow Christians. The apostle of Rome had pronounced; nor would they usurp the right of avenging with the sword the scions of the Greeks and the doubtful usurpation of the Byzantine monarch. On these principles or pretences, many pilgrims, the most distinguished for their valor and piety, withdrew from the camp; and their retreat was less pernicious than the open or secret opposition of a discontented party, that laboured, on every occasion, to separate the army and dispirit the enterprise.

Norwithstanding this defection, the departure of the fleet and army was vigorously opposed by the Venetians, whose seat for the service of the royal youth conveyed a just resentment to his nation and family. They were mortified by the recent preference which had been given to Pisa, the rival of their trade; they had a long arrear of debt and injury to liquidate with the Byzantine court; and Dandolo might not discourage the popular tale, that he had been deprived of his eyes by the emperor Manuel, who posthumously violated the sanctity of an ambassador. A similar armament, for ages, had not rode the Adriatic; it was composed of one hundred and twenty flat-bottomed vessels or galleys for the horses; two hundred and forty transport ships filled with men and arms; seventy store ships laden with provisions; and fifty stout galleys, well prepared for the encounter of an enemy. While the wind was favourable, the sky serene, and the water smooth, every eye was fixed with wonder and delight on the scene of military and naval pomp which overspread the sea. The shields of the knights and squires, at once an ornament and a defence, were arranged on either side of the ships; the banners of the nations and families were displayed from the stern; our modern artillery was supplied by three hundred engines for casting stones and darts; the fagades of the way were cheered with the sound of music; and the spirits of the adventurers were raised by the mutual assurance, that forty thousand Christian heroes were equal to the conquest of the world. In the navigation from Venice and Zara, the fleet was successfully steered by the skill and experience of the Venetian pilots; at Durazzo, the confederates first landed on the territories of the Greek empire: the isle of Corfu afforded a station and repose; they doubled, without accident, the perilous cape of Malea, the southern point of Peloponnesus or the Moras; made a descent in the islands of Negropont and Andros; and cast anchor at Abydos on the Asiatic side of the Hellespont. These preludes of conquest were easy and bloodless; the Greeks of the provinces, without patriotism or courage, were crushed by an irresistible force; the presence of the lawful heir might justify their obedience; and it was rewarded by the modesty and discipline of the Latins. As they penetrated through the Hellespont, the magnitude of their navy was compressed in a narrow channel; and the face of the waters was darkened with innumerable sails. They again expanded in the basin of the Propontis, and traversed that placid sea, till they approached the European shore, at the abbey of St. Stephen, three leagues to the west of Constantinople. The prudent doges dispersed them from dispersing themselves in a populous and hostile land; and, as their stock of provisions was reduced, it was resolved, in the season of harvest, to replenish their storehouses in the fertile islands of the Propontis. With this resolution, they directed their course; but a strong gale, and their own impatience, drove them to the eastward; and so near did they run to the shore and the city, that some volleys of stones and darts were exchanged between the ships and the rampart. As they passed along, they gazed with admiration on the capital of the East, or, as it should seem, of the earth; rising from her seven hills, and towering over the continents of Europe and Asia. The swelling domes and lofty spires of the hundred palaces and churches were gilded by the sun and reflected in the waters; the walls were crowded with soldiers and spectators, whose numbers they beheld, of whose temper they were ignorant; and such a heart was chilled by the reflection, that, since the beginning of the world, such an enterprise had never been undertaken by such a handful of warriors. But the momentary apprehension was dispelled by hope and valor; and every man says the marshal of Champagne, gazed his eye on the sword or lance which he must speedily use in the glorious conflict. The Latins cast anchor before Chalcidon; the mariners only were left in the vessels; the soldiers, horses, and arms, were safely landed; and, in the battles and sieges, in the glitter and sound of war with a name preserved in a Chronicle written by a monk of Chalcidon, and called in Latin the Chartularium Militare (Proudhon). The thankless appellation of the house of Venice, St. Stephen, the Venetians, is given to Descartes by Proudhon, who describes him as the hereditary Dux of the West. Chapter LX. — See Proudhon, ibid., p. 223.
ury of an Imperial palace, the barons tasted the first fruits of their success. On the third day, the fleet and army moved towards Scutari, the Asiatic suburb of Constantinople; a detachment of five hundred Greek horse was surprised and defeated by fourteen French knights; and in a halt of nine days, the camp was plentifully supplied with forage and provender.

In relating the invasion of a great empire, it may seem strange that I have not described the obstacles which should have checked the progress of the strangers. The Greeks, in truth, were by no means like people; but they were rich, industrious, and subject to the will of a single man; and that man had been capable of fear, when his enemies were at a distance, or of courage, when they approached his person. The first rumour of his nephew's alliance with the French and Venetians was despised by the emperor Alexius; his hauteur even banished him, that in this contest he might be bold and sincere; and each evening, in the close of the banquet, he thus discomfited the barbarians of the West. These barbarians had been justly terrified by the report of his arrival; and the sixteen hundred fishing boats of Constantinople could have manned a fleet, to sink them in the Haidronic, or stop the entrance in the mouth of the Halicarnassus. But all force may be annihilated by the negligence of the prince and the venality of his ministers. The great duke, or admiral, made a scandalous, almost a public, auction of the sails, the mast, and the rigging; the royal forests were reserved for the more important purpose of the chase; and the trees, says Nicetas, were guarded by the envoys, like the groves of religious worship. From his dreams of pride, Alexius was awakened by the siege of Zara, and the rapid advance of the Latins; as soon as he saw the danger was real, he thought it inevitable, and his vain presumption was lost in despair. His subjects were unable to pitch their camp in the sight of the palace; and his apprehensions were distinctly perceived by the pomp and munificence of a magnificent embassy. The sovereign of the Romans was astonished (his ambassadors were instructed to say) at the hostile appearance of the strangers. If these pilgrims were sinners in their vocation, for the deliverance of Jerusalem, his voice must applaud, and his treasures should assist, their pious design; but should they dare to invade the sanctuary of empire, their numbers, were they ten times more considerable, should not protect them from his just resentment. The answer of the doge and barons was simple and magnanimous. "In the cause of honour and justice," they said, "we desire the murder of Greeks, his threats, and his offers. Our friendship and his allegiance are due to the lawful king, to the young prince, who is seated among us, and to his father, the emperor Isaac, who has been deprived of his sceptre, his freedom, and his crown, by the treachery of an ungrateful brother. Let that brother confess his guilt, and implore forgiveness, and we ourselves will intercede, that he may be permitted to live in obscurity and security. But let him not insult us by a second message: our reply will be made in arms, in the palace of Constantinople."

On the tenth day of their encampment at Scutari, the crusaders prepared themselves, as soldiers and as Catholics, for the passage of the Bosporus. Perils indeed was the adventure; the stream was broad and rapid; in a calm the current of the Euxine might drive down the liquid and uncontrollable fires of the Greeks; and the opposite shores of Europe were defended by ten thousand horse and foot in formidable array. On this memorable day, which happened to be bright and pleasant, the Latins were distributed in six battles or divisions; the first, or vanguard, was led by the count of Flanders, one of the most powerful of the Christian princes in the skill and number of his crossbows. The four successive battles of the French were commanded by his brother Henry, the counts of St. Pol and Blois, and Matthew of Montmorency; the last of whom was honoured by the voluntary service of the marshal and marshal of Champagne. The sixth division, the rear guard and reserve of the army, was conducted by the margrave of Montferrat, at the head of the Germans and Lombards. The chargers, saddled, with their long caparisons dragging on the ground, were embarked in the flat palanques; and the knights stood by the side of their horses, in complete armour, their helmets laced, and their lances in their hands. Their numerous train of archers and archers occupied the transports; and each transport was towed by the strength and swiftness of a galley. The six divisions traversed the Bosporus, without encountering an enemy or an obstacle; to land the foremost was the wish, to conquer or die was the resolution, of every division and of every soldier. Joys of the pre-eminence of danger, the knights in their heavy armour leaped into the sea, when it rose as high as their girdles; the serjeants and archers were animated by their valour; and the squires, letting down the drawbridges of the palanques, led the horses to the shore. Before the squadron could mount, and form, and couch their lances, the seventy thousand Greeks had vanished from their sight; the timid Alexius gave the example to his troops; and it was only by the pleasure of his rich pavilions that the Latins were informed that they had fought against an emperor. In the first constellation of the flying enemy, they resolved, by a double attack, to open the entrance of the harbour. The tower of Galata, 54 in the
suburb of Persia, was attacked and stormed by the French, while the Venetians assumed the more difficult task of forcing the boom or chain that was stretched from that tower to the Byzantine shore. After some fruitless attempts, their intrepid perseverance prevailed: twenty ships of war, the relics of the Grecian navy, were either sunk or taken; the enormous and massive links of iron were cut by the shears, or broken by the weight of the galleys; and the Venetian fleet, safe and triumphant, rode at anchor in the port of Constantinople. By these daring achievements, a remnant of twenty thousand Latins solicited the licence of besieging a capital which contained above four hundred thousand inhabitants, able, though not willing, to bear arms in the defence of their country. Such an account would indeed suppose a population of near two millions; but whatever statement may be required in the numbers of the Greeks, the belief of those numbers will equally exalt the fearless spirit of their assailants.

In the choice of the attack, the French and Venetians were divided by their habits of life and warfare. The latter might start with honour, that they had long enough trusted their lives and fortunes to a frail bark, and a precarious element, and loudly demanded a trial of knighthood, a firm ground, and a close onset, either on foot or horseback. After a prudent compromise, of employing the two motions by sea and land, in the service best suited to their character, the fleet covering the army, they both proceeded from the entrance to the extremity of the harbour; the stone bridge of the river was lastly repaired; and the six battles of the French formed their encampment against the front of the capital, the base of the triangle which runs about four miles from the post to the Propontis. On the edge of a broad ditch, at the foot of a lofty rampart, they had leisure to contemplate the difficulties of their enterprise. The gates to the right and left of their narrow camp presented frequent salines of cavalry and light infantry, which cut off their stragglers, swept the country of provisions,Smashed the alarm five or six times in the course of each day, and compelled them to plant a palisade, and sink an entrenchment, for their immediate safety. In the supplies and convoys the Venetians had been too sparing, or the Franks too ravenous: the usual complaints of hunger and scarcity were heard, and perhaps felt: their stock of flour would be exhausted in three weeks; and their disgust of salt made them to taste the flesh of their horses. The trembling mariner was supported by Theodore Lucardi, his son-in-law, a valiant youth, who aspired to save and to rule his country; he the Greeks, regardless of that country, were awakened to the defence of their religion; but their firmest hope was in the strength and spirit of the Varangian guards, of the Danes and English, as they are named in the writers of the time. After ten days' incessant labour, the ground was levelled, the ditch filled, the approaches of the besiegers were regularly made, and two hundred and fifty engines of assault exercised their various powers to clear the rampart, to batter the walls, and to sap the foundations. On the first appearance of a breach, the scaling-ladders were applied; the numbers that defended the scanty ground repulsed and oppressed the adventurous Latins; but they admired the resolution of fifteen knights and sergeants, who had gained the ascent, and maintained their perilous station till they were precipitated on male prisoners by the Imperial guards. On the side of the harbour the naval attack was more successfully conducted by the Venetians; and that industrious people employed every resource that was known and practised before the invention of gunpowder. A double line, three howitzers in front, was formed by the galleys and ships; and the swift motion of the former was supported by the weight and lustiness of the latter, whose decks, and poops, and turrets, were the platforms of military engines, that discharged their shot over the heads of the first line. The soldiers, who leaped from the galleys on shore, immediately planted and ascended their scaling-ladders, while the large ships, advancing more slowly into the intervals, and lowering a drawbridge, opened a way through the air from their masts to the rampart.

In the midst of the conflict, the doge, a venerable and prominent form, stood aloof; in complete armour, on the prow of his galley. The great standard of St. Mark was displayed before him; his throne, pavilions, and embattlements, urged the diligence of the rowers; his vessel was the first that struck; and Daniele was the first warrior on the shore. The nations admired the magnanimity of the blind old man, without reflecting that his age and infirmities diminished the price of his life, and enhanced the value of immortal glory. On a sudden, by an invisible hand (for the standard-bearer was probably slain), the banner of the republic was fixed on the rampart: twenty-five towers were rapidly occupied; and, by the cruel expedient of fire, the Greeks were driven from the adjacent quarter. The doge had despatched the intelligence of his success, when he was caught by the danger of his confederates. Nobly declaring, that he would rather die with the pilgrims than gain a victory by their destruction, Daniele relinquished his advantage, recalled his troops, and hastened to the scene of action. He found the six weary diminutive battles of the French encompassed by sixty squadrions of the Greek army in numbers, and at some distance from the town. The ground which he occupied was sandy and barren. The town itself, and the wide valley, were intersected by narrow houses, covered with thatch, and surrounded by trees and bushes. The doge, of the Venetians, wrote to the Venetians: 'I know not how to represent that the victory we have gained since five days past. This will be the celebrated subject for the old artists and the future of this city, which might sell our memorable in the Louvre.'
cavalry, the least of which was more numerous than the largest of their divisions. Shame and despair had provoked Alexius to the last effort of a general sally; but he was awed by the firm order and many aspect of the Latins; and, after skir- rying at a distance, withdrew his troops in the close of the evening. The silence or tumult of the night exasperated his fears; and the timid nervosness, following a treasure of ten thousand pieces of gold, blindly deserted his wife, his people, and his fortune; thereupon himself a lurk, stole through the Bosphorus, and landed in shameful safety at that curious harbor of Thrace. As soon as they were apprised of his flight, the Greek nobles sought pardon and peace in the dungeon where the blind Isaac expected each hour the visit of the executioner. Again savagely and exalted by the vicissitudes of fortune, the captive in his imperial robes was replaced on the throne, and surrounded with prostrate slaves, whose real terror and affected joy he was incapable of discerning. At the dawn of day hostilities were suspended; and the Latin chiefs were surprised by a message from the lawful and reigning emperor, who was impatient to embrace his son, and to reward his generous deliverers. But these generous deliverers were unwilling to release their hostage, till they had obtained from his father the payment, or at least the promise of their recompense. They chose four ambassadors, Matthew of Montferrat, our historian the marshal of Champagne, and two Venetians, to congratulate the emperor. The gates were thrown open on their approach, the streets on both sides were lined with the battle-axes of the Danish and English guards; the palace-chamber glittered with gold and jewels, the false substitutes of virtue and power; by the side of the blind Isaac, his wife was seated, the sister of the king of Hungary; and by her appearance, the noble empress of Greece were drawn from their domestic retirement, and mingled with the circle of senators and soldiers. The Latins, by the mouth of the marshal, spoke like men, conscious of their merits, but who respected the work of their own hands; and the emperor clearly understood, that his son's engagement with Venice and the pilgrims must be ratified without hesitation or delay. Withdrawing into a private chamber with the empress, a chamberlain, an interpreter, and the four ambassadors, the father of young Alexius enquired with some anxiety into the nature of his stipulations. The submission of the Eastern empire to the pope, the succession of the Holy Land, and a present contribution of two hundred thousand marks of silver — these conditions are weighty; was his prudent reply; they are hard to accept, and difficult to perform. But no conditions can exceed the measure of your services, and de-
would heal his gout, restore his sight, and watch over the long prosperity of his reign. Yet the mind of the suspicious old man was tormented by the risings of his son; nor could his pride conceal from his eyes, that, while his own name was pronounced in faint and reluctant acclamations, the royal youth was the theme of spontaneous and universal praise. 71

The recent invasion of the Greeks weakened from a dream of nine centuries; from the supposition that the capture of the Roman empire was impending to foreign arms. The strangers of the West had violated the city, and bestowed the sceptre, of Constantine; their Imperial clients soon became as unpopular as themselves; the well-known vices of Isaac were rendered still more contemptible by his infirmities; and the young Alexius was hated as an apostate, who had renounced the manners and religion of his country. His secret covenant with the Latins was divulged or suspected; the people, and especially the clergy, were devoutly attached to their faith and superstition; and every convent, and every shop, resonated with the danger of the church, and the tyranny of the papal. An empty treasury could ill supply the demands of royal luxury and foreign extortion: the Greeks refused to avert, by a general tax, the impending evils of servitude and pilage; the oppression of the rich excited a more dangerous and personal resentment; and if the emperor melted the plate, and despised the images, of the sanctuary, he seemed to justify the complaints of heresy and schism.

During the absence of marquis Boniface and his Imperial pupil, Constantinople was visited with a calamity which might be justly imputed to the zeal and indiscipline of the Frisian pilgrims. 72 In one of their visits to the city, they were scandalised by the aspect of a monk or synagogue, in which one God was worshipped, without a partner or consort. Their affectation and abuse of controversy was to attack the idolaters with the views of the churches of the inhabited with fire; but the infidels, and some Christian neighbours, presumed to defend their lives and properties; and the flames which bigotry had kindled consumed the most orthodox and innocent structures. During eight days and nights, the conflagration spread above a league in front, from the harbour to the Propontis, over the thickest and most populous regions of the city. It is not easy to count the stately churches and palaces that were reduced to a smoking ruin, to value the merchandise that perished in the trading streets, or to number the families that were involved in the common destruction. By this outrage, which the dogs and the bonos in vain affected to disclaim, the name of the Latins became still more unpopular; and the calamity of that nation, above fifteen thousand persons, consulted their safety in a hasty retreat from the city to the protection of their standard in the suburbs of Peru. The emperor returned in triumph; but the finest and most dexterous policy would have been insufficient to steer him through the tempest, which overwhelmed the person and government of that unhappy youth. His own inclination, and his father's advice, attached him to his benefactor; but Alexius hesitated between gratitude and patriotism, between the fear of his subjects and of his allies. 73

By his feeble and fluctuating conduct he lost the esteem and confidence of both; and, while he invited the marquis of Montfort to occupy the palace, he suffered the nobles to conspire, and the people to arm, for the delivery of their country. Regardless of his painful situation, the Latin chiefs repeated their demands, renewed their delays, suspected his intentions, and exacted a decisive answer of peace or war. The bloody summons was delivered by three French knights and three Venetian deputies, who girded their swords, mounted their horses, passed through the angry multitude, and entered, with a fearless countenance, the palace and presence of the Greek emperor. In a peremptory tone, they recapitulated their services and his engagements; and boldly declared, that unless their just claims were fully and immediately satisfied, they should no longer hold him either as a sovereign or a friend. After this defiance, the first that had ever wounded an Imperial ear, they departed without betraying any symptoms of fear; but their escape from a servile palace and a furious city astonished the ambassadors themselves; and their return to the camp was the signal of mutual hostility.

Among the Greeks, all authority and wisdom were overthrown by the impetuous multitude, who mistook their rage for valour, their numbers for strength, and their fanaticism for the support and inspiration of Heaven. In the eyes of both nations Alexius was false and contemptible: the base and spiritless nephew of the Angelus was rejected with clamorous disdain; and the people of Constantinople encompassed the senate, to demand at their hands a more worthy emperor.

To every senator, conspicuous by his birth or dignity, they successively presented the purple; by each senator the deadly garment was repulsed; the contest lasted three days; and we may learn from the historian Nicetas, one of the members of the assembly, that fear and weakness were the guardians of their loyalty. A phantom, who vanished in oblivion, was facetiously proclaimed by the crowd; 74 but the author of the tumult, and the leader of the war, was a prince of the house of Ducos; and his common appellation of Alexius must be discriminated by the epithet of Mourzoufle, 75 which in the vulgar idiom expressed the close junction of his black and shaggy eye-brow. At once a

71 The reign of Deacon Constantine. See the account in his history, p. 101-102. The debt owed to the Frisians was described in the copy of the Greek, in style and language, new and is intended to indicate the high and respectation vouchsafed to the Frisians. We have seen it in the copy of the Deacon, in which the debt was so denominated, to the Frisians. The debt was denominated, to the Frisians. The debt was denominated, to the Frisians. The debt was denominated, to the Frisians.

72 The emperor, Alexius, his private character, and his qualities, are very bad impressions. A monk or synagogue. See the acco

73 The emperor, Alexius, his private character, and his qualities, are very bad impressions. A monk or synagogue. See the acco

74 The emperor, Alexius, his private character, and his qualities, are very bad impressions. A monk or synagogue. See the acco

75 The emperor, Alexius, his private character, and his qualities, are very bad impressions. A monk or synagogue. See the acco

76 The emperor, Alexius, his private character, and his qualities, are very bad impressions. A monk or synagogue. See the acco
lucky was found on the field of battle; and the Imperial standard, a divine image of the Virgin, was presented, as a trophy and a relic, to the Cistercian monks, the disciples of St. Bernard.
Near three months, without excepting the holy season of Lent, were consumed in skirmishes and preparations, before the Latin were really or resolved for a general assault. The land fortifications had been found impeachable; and the Venetian pilots represented, that on the shore of the Propontis, the anchorage was unsafe, and the ships must be driven by the current far away to the straits of the Hellespont: a prospect not unpleasant to the reluctant pilgrims, who sought every opportunity of breaking the ascent with ease. From the harbour, therefore, the assault was determined by the assailants, and expected by the besieged; and the emperor had placed his scarlet pavilions on a neighbouring height, to direct and animate the efforts of his troops. A fearless spectator, whose mind could entertain the ideas of pomp and pleasure, might have admired the long array of two embattled armies, which extended above half a league, the one on the ships and galleys, the other on the walls and towers raised above the ordinary level by several stages of wooden turrets. Their first fury was spent in the discharge of darts, stones, and fire, from the engines; but the water was deep; the French were bold; the Venetians were skilful; they approached the walls; and a desperate conflict of swords, spears, and battle-axes, was fought on the trembling bridges that grappled the floating, to the stable, batteries. In more than an hundred places, the assault was urged, and the defense was sustained; till the superiority of ground and numbers finally prevailed, and the Latin trumpets sounded a retreat. On the ensuing days, the attack was renewed with equal vigour, and a similar event; and, in the night, the doge and the barons held a council, apprehensive only for the public danger; not a voice pronounced the words of escape or treaty; and each warrior, according to his temper, embraced the hope of victory, or the assurance of a glorious death. By the experience of the former siege, the Greeks were instructed, but the Latins were unaided; and the knowledge that Constantinople might be taken, was of more avail than the local precautions which that knowledge had inspired for its defence. In the third assault, two ships were linked together to double their strength; a strong north wind drove them on the shore; the bishops of Troyoa and Somine led the van; and the auspicious name of the Pilgrims and the Pardus resumed along the line. The episcopal banners were displayed on the walls; an hundred marks of silver had been promised to the first adventurers; and if their reward was intercepted by death, their names have been immortalized by fame. Four towers were scaled; three gates were
The Decline and Fall

Chapter LX

...and the French knights, who might tremble on the waves, felt themselves invincible on horsecback on the solid ground.

Shall I relate that the thousands who guarded the emperor’s person, fled on the approach, and before the lance, of a single warrior? Their ignominious flight is attested by their countryman Siretta: an army of phantoms marched with the French hero, and he was magnified to a giant in the eyes of the Greeks. While the fugitives deserted their posts and cast away their arms, the Latinists entered the city under the banners of their leaders: the streets and gates opened for their passage; and either design or accident kindled a third confederation, which consumed in a few hours the measure of three of the largest cities of France. In the close of the evening, the barons checked their troops, and fortified their stations: they were awed by the extent and populousness of the capital, which might yet require the labour of a month, if the churches and palaces were conscious of their internal strength. But in the morning, a suppliant procession, with crosses and images, announced the submission of the Greeks, and deprecated the wrath of the conquerors; the usurper escaped through the golden gate: the palaces of Blachernae and Bouzolicon were occupied by the count of Flanders and the margrave of Montferrat; and the empire, which still bore the name of Constantinople, and the title of Roman, was subverted by the arms of the Latin pilgrims.

Constantinople had been taken by storm; and no restraint was imposed on the conquerors by the laws of war. Boulware, margrave of Montferrat, still acted as their general; and the Greeks, who revered his name as that of their future sovereign, were bound to explain in a lamentable tone, “Holy marquis, king, have mercy upon us!” His promise or compulsion opened the gates of the city to the fugitives; and he exhibited the soldiers of the cross to spare the lives of their fellow-Christians. The streams of blood that flow down the pages of Nicetas, may be reduced to the slaughter of two thousand of his unresisting countrymen; and the greater part was massacred, not by the strangers, but by the Latins, who had been driven from the city, and who exercised the revenge of a triumphant faction. Yet of those exiles, some were less mindful of injuries than of benefits; and Nicetas himself was indicted for his safety to the generosity of a Venetian merchant. Pope Innocent the Third accuses the pilgrims of respecting, in their lust, neither age, nor sex, nor religious profession; and bitterly laments that the seeds of darkness, fornication, adultery, and incest, were perpetrated in open day; and that

nobility mutinied and holy nuns were polluted by the gross and sensual of the Catholic camp. It is indeed probable that the licence of victory promptly covered a multitude of sins: but it is certain, that the capital of the East contained a stock of venal or willing bawdry, sufficient to satiate the desires of twenty thousand pilgrims; and female prisoners were no longer subject to the right or shame of domestic slavery. The margrave of Montferrat was the patron of discipline and decency; the count of Flanders was the mirror of chastity; they had forbidden, under pain of death, the rape of married women, or virgins, or nuns; and the proclamation was sometimes invoked by the vanquished and respected by the victors. Their cruelty and lust were moderated by the authority of the chief, and feelings of the soldiers; for we are no longer describing an eruption of the northern savages; and however fierce they might still appear, time, policy, and religion, had civilised the manners of the French, and still more of the Italians. But a free scope was allowed to their avarice, which was glutted, even in the holy week, by the pillage of Constantinople. The right of victory, unshackled by any promise or treaty, had confiscated the public and private wealth of the Greeks; and every hand, according to its size and strength, might lawfully execute the sentence and seize the forfeit. A portable and universal standard of exchange was found in the coined and uncoined metals of gold and silver, which each captor, at home or abroad, might convert into the quantities most suitable to his temper and situation. Of the treasures, which trade and luxury had accumulated, the silks, velvets, fans, the gems, spices, and rich moveables, were the most precious, as they could not be procured for money in the rude countries of Europe. An order of rapiers was instituted; nor was the share of spoil each individual abandoned to industry or chance. Under the tremendous penalties of perjury, excommunion, and death, the Latins were bound to deliver their plunder into the common stock; three churches were selected for the deposit and distribution of the spoil: a single share was allotted to a foot soldier; two for a sergeant on horseback; four to a knight; and larger proportions according to the rank and merits of the barons and princes. For violating this sacred engagement, a knight, belonging to the count of St. Pol, was hanged with his shield and coat of arms round his neck: his example might render similar offenders more useful and discreet; but avarice was more powerful than fear; and it is generally believed, that the secret far exceeded the acknowledged plunder. Yet the magnitude of the prize surpassed the largest scale of experience or expectation.
In this great revolution we enjoy the singular felicity of comparing the narratives of Villalardouin and Nicetas, the opposite feelings of the marshal of Champagne and the Byzantine senator. At the first view it should seem that the wealth of Constantinople was only transferred from one nation to another; and that the loss and sorrow of the Greeks is exactly balanced by the joy and advantage of the Latins. But in the miserable account of war, the gain is never equivalent to the loss, the pleasure to the pain: the smiles of the Latins were transient and fallacious; the Greeks for ever wept over the ruins of their country; and their real calamities were aggravated by sacrilege and mockery. What benefits accrued to the conquerors from the three fires which annihilated so vast a portion of the buildings and riches of the city? What a stock of such things, as could neither be used nor transported, was maliciously or wantonly destroyed! How much treasure was lost in gaming, debauchery, and riot! And what precious objects were battered for a vile price by the impiety or ignorance of the soldiers, whose reward was stolen by the base industry of the last of the Greeks! Those alone, who had nothing to lose, might derive some profit from the revolution; but the misery of the upper ranks of society is strongly painted in the personal adventures of Nicetas himself. His stately palace had been reduced to ashes in the second conflagration; and the senator, with his family and friends, found an obscure shelter in another house which he possessed near the church of St. Sophia. It was the door of this mean habitation that his friend, the Venetian merchant, guarded in the disguise of a soldier. His daughter could save, by a precipitate flight, the relics of his fortune and the chastity of his daughter. In a cold winter season, these fugitives, nursed in the lap of prosperity, departed like jest; his wife was with child; the desertion of their slaves compelled them to carry their baggage on their own shoulders; and their women, whom they placed in the centre, were exhorted to conceal their beauty with dirt, instead of adorning it with paint and jewels. Every step was exposed to insult and danger; the threats of the strangers were less painful than the taunts of the plebeians, with whom they were now levelled; nor did the exile breathe in safety till their mournful pilgrimage was concluded at Solymis, above forty miles from the capital. On the way they overtook the patriarchy, without attendance, and almost without shelter, tiding on an ass, and reduced to a state of apostolical poverty, which, had it been voluntary, might perhaps have been meritorious. In the mean while, his desolate church was profaned by the licentiousness and party zeal of the Latins. After stripping the翌们 and pearls, they converted the chalices into drinking cups; their tables, on which they gamed and feasted, were covered with the pictures of Christ and the saints; and they trampled under foot the most venerable objects of the Christian worship. In the cathedral of St. Sophia, the simple veil of the sanctuary was rent asunder for the sake of the golden fringe; and the altar, a monument of art and riches, was broken in pieces, and smeared among the captors. Their maids and nurses were laden with the wrench of arms and gilded carvings, which they drew down from the doors and pulpit; and if the beasts stumbled under the burden, they were stabbed by their impatient drivers, and the holy pavement was smeared with their impure blood. A prostitute was seated on the throne of the patriarch, and that daughter ofcular, as she is styled, sung and danced in the church, to ridicule the hymns and processions of the Orientals. Not were the epistories of the royal dead scene from violation; in the church of the Apostles, the tombs of the emperors were rifled; and it is said, that after six centuries the corpse of Justinian was found, without any sign of decay or putrefaction. In the streets, the French and Flemings clothed themselves and their horses in painted robes and flowing head-dresses of linen; and the coarse intermixture of their feasts lavished the splendid luxury of the East. To expose the arms of a people of scribes and scholars, they affected to display a pen, an inkhorn, and a sheet of paper, without discerning that the instruments of science and valour were also feeble and useless in the hands of the modern Greeks. Their reputation and their language encouraged them; however, to despise the ignorance, and to overlook the progress, of the Latins. In the love of the arts, the national difference was still more obvious and real; the Greeks preserved with reverence the works of their ancestors, which they could not imitate; and, in the destruction of the statues of Constantinople, we are provoked to join in the complaints and invectives of the Byzantine historians. We have seen how the influence of so many favours of the East, and how the favour of so many misfortunes, led the Latins into a degradation so singular that, if the French were beheld instead of the Latins, the worst fate in the universe would be to be born a Greek in the East; if the Latins were beheld instead of the French, the best fate in the universe would be to be born a Greek in the West. The Latins were beheld instead of the French, the French instead of the Latins; and now the French are beheld instead of the Latins in the East, and we partake in common horror from the abyss of the Orient, and from the abyss of the❞ 3 2
THE DECLINE AND FALL

The ancient city was adorned by the vanity and despoilition of the Imperial founder; in the ruins of Paganism, some gods and heroes were saved from the vise of superstition; and the forum and hippodromes were dignified with the relics of a better age. Several of these are described by Nicetas,10 in a florid and affected style; and, from his description, I shall select some interesting particulars.

1. The victorios charioteers were cast in bronze; at their own, or the public charge, and sixty placed in the hippodrome: they stood aloft on their chariots, wheeling round the goal; the spectators could admire their attitude, and judge of the resemblances; and of these figures, the most perfect might have been transported from the Olympic stadium.

2. The sphynx, river-horse, and crocodile, denote the climate and manufacture of Egypt, and the spoil of that ancient province.

3. The nine-rod stoclling Bannus and Rennes; a subject alike pleasing to the air and the sea.

4. An eagle holding and tearing a serpent in his talons; a domestic monument of the Byzantines, which they ascribed, not to a human artist, but to the magic power of the philosopher Apollonius, who by this talent, delivered the city from such numerous reptiles.

5. An ass and his rider; which were erected by Augustus in his colony of Nicopolis, to commemorate a veritable onset of the victory of Actium.

6. An equestrian statue; which passed, in the vulgar opinion, for Joshua, the Jewish conqueror, stretching out his hand to stop the course of the descending stars. A more classical tradition recognised the figures of Belshazzar and Perses; and the free attitude of the foot assumed to mark that he trod on air, rather than on the earth.

7. A square and lofty obelisk of brass; the sides were embossed with a variety of picturesque and rural scenes; birds singing; rustic labouring; or playing on their pipes; sheep bleating; hounds skimming; the sea, and a scene of fish and fishing; little naked Cupids laughing, playing, and piling each other with apples; and, on the summit, a female figure turning with the slightest breath, and thence denominated the wind's attendant.

8. The Phrygian shepherd, presenting to Venus the prize of beauty, the apple of discord.

9. The incomparable statue of Helen; which is delineated by Nicasius in the words of admiration and love: her well turned feet, snowy arms, rosy lips, bewitching smiles, swimming eyes, arched eyebrows, the harmony of her shape, the lightness of her despiry, and her flowing locks that wavered in the wind; a beauty that might have moved her barbarian destroyers to pity and remorse.11

The main, or divine, form of Hercules,12 as he was restored to life by the master-hand of Lycurgus; of such magnitude, that his thumb was equal to the waist, his leg to the stature, of a common man;27 his chest ample, his shoulders broad, his limbs strong and muscular, his hair curled, his aspect commanding. Without his bow, or quiver, as club, his lion's skin carelessly thrown over him, he was seated on an aster basket, his right leg and arm stretched to the utmost, his left knee bent, and supporting his elbow, his head reclining on his left hand, his countenance igniscent and pensive.

11. A colossal statue of Jove, which had once adorned her temple of Sounion; the enormous head by four yokes of oxen was laboriously drawn to the palace.

12. Another colossal, of Pallas or Minerva, thirty feet in height, and representing with admirable spirit the attributes and character of the martial maid. Before we accede the Latins, it is just to remark, that this Pallas was destroyed after the first siege, by the fire and superstition of the Greeks themselves.

The other statues of brass which I have enumerated, were broken and melted by the unfeeling savages of the crusaders: the cost and labour were consumed in a moment; the soul of genius evaporated in smoke; and the remnant of base metal was coined into money for the payment of the troops. Bronze is not the most durable of materials: from the marble forms of Phidias and Praxiteles, the Latins might turn aside with stupid contempt;13 but unless they were crushed by some accidental injury, those massive stones stood secure on their pedestals.100

The most enlightened of the strangers, above the gross and sensual pursuits of their countrymen, more prudently exercised the right of conquest in the search and seizure of the relics of the ancients.111 Iron was the supply of hands and horses; crosses and images, that were scattered by this revolution over the churches of Europe; and such was the increase of pilgrimage and obligation, that no branch, perhaps, of more lucrative plunder was imported from the East.109

Of the writings of antiquity, many that still existed in the twelfth century are now lost. But the pilgrims were not sanguine to save or transport the volumes of an unknown tongue; the peradventure substance of paper or parchment can only be preserved by the multiplicity of copies; the literature of the Greeks had almost centered in the metropolis; and, without computing the extent of our loss, we may drop a tear over the libraries that have perished in the triple fire of Constantinople.
CHAP. LXXI.

OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

CHAP. LXXI.


After the death of the lawful princes, the French and Venetians, who were confident of justice and victory, agreed to divide and regulate the future possessors. 1 It was stipulated by treaty, that twelve electors, six of either nation, should be nominated; that a majority should choose the emperor of the East; and that, if the votes were equal, the decision of chance should ascertain the successful candidate. To him, with all the titles and privileges of the Byzantine throne, they assigned the two palaces of Boucicaut and Raschem, with a fourth part of the Greek monarchy. It was defined that the three remaining portions should be equally shared between the republic of Venice and the barons of France; that such fulsome, with an honourable exception for the dogs, should acknowledge and perform the duties of homage and military service to the supreme head of the empire; that the nation which gave an emperor, should resign to his breasts the choice of a patriarch; and that the pilgrims, whatever might be their impatience to visit the Holy Land, should devote another year to the conquest and defence of the Greek provinces. After the conquest of Constantinople by the Latins, the treaty was confirmed and executed; and the first and most important step was the creation of an emperor. The six electors of the French nation were all ecclesiastics, the abbot of Louvres, the archbishop elect of Arce in Palestine, and the bishop of Troyes, Soissons, Halberstadt, and Bethlehem, the last of whom exercised in the camp the office of pope's legate; their profession and knowledge were respectable; and as they could not be the objects, they were best qualified to be the authors, of the choice. The six Venetians were the principal servants of the state, and in this list the noble families of Querini and Contarini are still proud to discover their ancestors. The twelve assembled in the chapel of the palace; and after the solemn invocation of the Holy Ghost they proceeded to deliberate and vote. A just impulse of respect and gratitude prompted them to crown the virtues of the dogs: his wisdom had inspired their enterprise; and the most youthful knights might envy and applaud the exploits of his youth and age. But the patriarch Dandolo was devoid of all personal ambition; and fully satisfied that he had been judged worthy to reign. His nomination was overruled by the Venetians themselves: his countrymen, and perhaps his friends, had represented, with the eloquence of truth, the mischiefs that might arise to national freedom and the common cause, from the union of two incompatible characters, of the first magistrate of a republic and the emperor of the East. The exclusion of the dogs left room for the more equal merits of Boniface and Baldwin; and at their names all manner candidates respectfully withdrew. The marquis of Montferrat was recommended by his mature age and fair reputation; by the choice of the adventurers, and the wishes of the Greeks; but, I believe that Venice, the mistress of the seas, could be seriously apprehensive of a petty lord at the foot of the Alps. But the court of Flamiers was the chief of a wealthy and warlike people; he was valiant, pious, and chaste; in the prime of life, since he was only thirty-two years of age; a descendant of Chiarisimone, a cousin of the king of France; and a conqueror of the prelates and barons who, not long before, had yielded with reluctance to the command of a foreigner. Without the chapel, these barons, with the dogs and marquis at their head, expected the decision of the twelve electors. It was announced by the bishop of Soissons, in the name of his colleagues: "Ye have sworn to obey the prince whom we should choose: by our unanimous suffrage, Baldwin count of Flamiers 2 and Halshaut is now your sovereign, and the emperor of the East. He was saluted with loud applause; and the procession was re-joined through the city by the joy of the Latins, and the trembling satisfaction of the Greeks. Boniface was the first to kiss the hand of his rival, and to raise him on the buckler; and Baldwin was transported to the cathedral, and solemnly invested with the purple buskins. At the end of three weeks he was crowned by the legates, in the vacancy of a patriarch; but the Venetian clergy soon filled the chapter of St. Sophia, seated Thomas Morosini on the ecclesiastical throne, and employed every art to perpetuate in their own nation the honours and benefits of the Greek church. 3 Without delay the conquests of Constantine instructed Palestine, France, and Rome, of this memorable revolution. To Palestine he sent, as a trophy, the gates of Constantinople, and the chain of the harbour; and adopted, from the Arabs of Jerusalem, the laws of customs best adapted to a French colony and conquest in the East. In his epistles, the natives of France are encouraged to swell that colony, and to secure that conquest, to people a magnificent city, and farm fertile land, which will reward the labours both of the priest and the soldier. He congratulated the Roman pontiffs on the restoration of his authority in the East; invited him to extinguish the Greek schism by his presence in a general council; and implores his blessing and forgiveness for the disobedient pilgrims. Prudence and dignity

1. The first of the dogs is mentioned in the Venetian Chronicle of Michele Venieroni, 570, 571, and the subsequent election as Venetian doges is described by the Venetian historian Dandolo. The last of the three is mentioned by the Venetian historian Dandolo. 2. The Bishop and count of Flamiers. 3. The Bishop and count of Flamiers. 4. The Bishop and count of Flamiers.
are blunted in the answer of Innocent. 5 In the subversion of the Byzantine empire, he arrogates the vices of man, and adores the providence of God: the conquerors will be absolved or condemned by their future conduct; the validity of their treaty depends on the judgment of St. Peter; but he elucidates their most sacred duty of establishing a just subordination of obedience and tribute, from the Greeks to the Latins, from the magistrates to the clergy, and from the clergy to the pope.

In the division of the Greek provinces, Venice, 1 the share of the Venetians was more ample than that of the Latin emperor. No more than one fourth was appropriated to his domain; a clear moiety of the remainder was reserved for Venice; and the other moiety was distributed among the adventurers of France and Lombardy. The venerable Danilo was proclaimed despot of Raoumia, and invested after the Greek fashion with the purple buskins. He ended at Constantinople his long and glorious life; and if the preceptive was personal, the title was used by his successors till the middle of the fourteenth century, with the singular, though true, addition of lords of one fourth and a half of the Roman empire. 6 The dregs, a slave of state, was seldom permitted to depart from the harem of the republic; but his place was supplied by the last or regent, who exercised a supreme jurisdiction over the colony of Venetians; they possessed three of the eight quarters of the city; and his independent tribunal was composed of six judges, four counselors, two chamberlains, two fiscal advocates, and a constable. Their long experience of the Eastern trade enabled them to select their portion with discernment; they had rashly accepted the dominion and defence of Adrianople; but it was the more reasonable aim of their policy to form a chain of factories, and cities, and islands, along the maritime coast, from the neighbourhood of Ragusa to the Hellespont and the Bosporus. The labour and cost of such extensive conquests exhausted their treasury; they abandoned their maxims of government, adopted a feudal system, and contented themselves with the homage of their nobles, 9 for the possessions which their private vassals undertook to reduce and maintain. And thus it was, that the family of Saint acquired the duchy of Naxos, which involved the greatest part of the Archipelago. For the price of ten thousand marks, the republic purchased of the marquis of Montferrat the fertile island of Crete or Candia, with the title of an hundred

cities; 10 but its improvement was stinted by the proud and narrow spirit of an aristocracy; 11 and the wisest senators would confess that the sea, not the land, was the treasury of St. Mark. In the moiety of the adventurers, the marquis Boniface might claim the most liberal reward; and, besides the isle of Crete, his exclusion from the throne was compensated by the royal title and the provinces beyond the Hellespont. But he prudently exchanged that distant and difficult conquest for the kingdom of Thessalonia by Macedonia, twelve years' journey from the capital, where he might be supported by the neighbouring powers of his brother-in-law the king of Hungary. His progress was hailed by the voluntary or reluctant acclamations of the natives; and Greece, the proper and ancient Greece, again received a Latin conqueror, 12 who trod with indifference that classic ground. He viewed with a careless eye the beauties of the valley of Tempe; traversed with a cautious step the Straits of Thermopylae; occupied the unknown cities of Thessalia, Argolis, and Macedon; and assured the fortifications of Corinth and Nafplio, 13 which resisted his arms. The lots of the Latin pilgrims were regulated by chance, or choice, or subsequent exchange; and they abused, with interminable joy, their triumph over the lives and fortunes of a great people. After a minute survey of the provinces, they weighed in the scales of avarice the revenue of each district, the advantage of the situation, and the ample or scanty supplies for the maintenance of soldiers and horses. Their presumption claimed, and divided the long-lost dependencies of the Roman empire; the Nile and Euphrates rolled through their imaginary realms; and happy was the warrior who drew for his prize the palace of the Turkish sultan of Iconium. 14 I shall not descend to the pedigrees of families and the rent-roll of states, but I wish to specify that the counts of Blois and St. Pol were invested with the duchy of Nice and the lordship of Demetria; 15 the principal fiefs were held by the service of constable, chamberlain, cup-bearer, butler, and chief cook; and our historian, Jeffrey of Villehardouin, obtained a fair establishment on the banks of the Housus, and united the double office of marshal of Champagne and Komania. At the head of his knights and archers, each baron mounted on horseback to secure the possession of his share, and their first efforts were generally successful. But the public force was weakened by their dispersion; and a thousand squabbles must arise under a law, and among

6. The Election of Innocent III. was a rich fund for the advancement of the French and Italian interests of the Latin empire of Constantinople; and the most important conquests of the century were obtained by the purchase of parts. 7 In the treaty of Rimini, 8 a, p. 1200, it is provided that the French are to be received by the Romans, at Rome and in the Territories, in the style of the Franks, under the name of German, and that the Popes shall have the same privileges and immunities as those of the Holy Roman Empire.
8. The Castle of Monfort is a portmanteau of Montferrat. See the account of the Conquest of Thessalonica, in the Commentaries of the Crusades, Historical, by P. F. De la C. 1704.
9. Danilo, despot of Candia, August 1536. See the account of Byzantium's position, by the Venetian envoys to the court of Venice, in their report of the visit of the English ambassador, 1535.
10. In the same year, 1219, the four part East and a county to Candia, which was seized from the emperor of Venice, by a Genoese envoy, and a certain 11. The Cistercian Convent, and its celebrated writer, Thomas of Canterbury. See the account of the Cistercian order, in the same year.
12. In the same year, 1219, the four part East and a county to Candia, which was seized from the emperor of Venice, by a Genoese envoy, and a certain
serm, whose sole arm was the sword. Within three months after the conquest of Constanti-
ople, the emperor and the king of Thessalo-
nica drew their hostile followers into the field; they were reconciled by the authority of the doge, the advice of the marshal, and the firmness of their peers.15

Two fugitives, who had reigned at Constantinople, still asserted the title of emperor; and the subjects of their fallen throne might be moved to pity by the misfortunes of the elder Alexius, or excited to revenge by the spirit of Mouranmo. A domestic alliance, a common interest, a similar guilt, and the merit of extinguishing his enemies, a brother and a nephew, induced the more recent usurper to unite with the former the relics of his power. Mouranmo was received with smiles and honours in the camp of his father Alexius; but the wicked can never love, and should rarely trust, their fellow-criminal; he was seized in the bath, deprived of his eyes, stripped of his troops and treasures, and turned out to wander an object of horror and contempt to those who with more propriety could hate, and with more justice could punish, the assassin of the emperor Isaac and his son. As the tyrant, pursued by fear or revenge, was stealing over to Asia, he was seized by the Latins of Constantinop-
ole, and condemned, after an open trial, to an ignominious death.61 His judges debated the mode of his execution, the axe, the wheel, or the stake; and it was resolved that Mouranmo should ascend the Theodosian column, a pillar of white marble of one hundred and forty-seven feet in height.62

From the summit he was cast down headlong, and dashed in pieces on the pavement, in the presence of innumerable spectators, who filled the forum of Taurus, and admired the accomplishment of an old prediction, which was explained by this singular event.63 The fate of Alexius is less tragic; he was sent by the marquis a captive to Italy, and a gift to the king of the Romans; but he had not much to applaud his fortune, if the sentence of imprisonment and exile were changed from a fortress in the Alps to a monastery in Asia. But his daughter, before the national calamity, had been given in marriage to a young hero who continued the succession, and restored the throne of the Greek princes.64 The viceroy of Theodore Lascaris was signalised in the two sieges of Constantinople.

After the flight of Mouranmo, when the Latins were already in the city, he offered himself as their emperor to the soldiers and people; and his ambition, which might be virtuous, was unambitiously brave. Could he

have infused a soul into the multitude, they might have crushed the strangers under their feet; their obdurate despair refused his aid, and Theodore retired to breathe the air of freedom in Anatolia, beyond the immediate view and pursuit of the conquerors. Under the title, at first of despot, and afterwards of emperor, he drew to his standard the boldest spirits, who were fortified against slavery by the contempt of life; and as every means was lawful for the public safety, implored without scruple the alliance of the Turkish sultan, Nice, where Theodore established his residence, Press and Philadelphia, Smyrna and Ephesus, opened their gates to their deliverer: he derived strength and reputation from his victories, and even from his defeats; and the successor of Constantine preserved a fragment of the empire from the hands of the Mamelukes and the sultans of Nicaea, and at length of Constantinople, Another portion, distant and obscure, was possessed by the lineal heir of the Comneni, a son of the virtuous Manuel, a grandson of the tyrant Andronicus. His name was Alexius; and the epitaph of great was applied perhaps to his stature, rather than to his exploits. By the indulgence of the Angevins, he was appointed governor or duke of Trebizond; his birth gave him ambition, the revolution in dependence; and without changing his title, he reigned in peace from Sinope to the Parnassus, along the coast of the Black Sea. His nameless son and successor is described as the model of the sultan, whom he served with two hundred lances, that Comnenian prince was no more than duke of Trebizond, and the title of emperor was first assumed by the pride and envy of the grandson of Alexius. In the West, a third fragment was saved from the common shipwreck of Michael, a bastard of the house of Angeli, who, before the revolution, had been known as an hostage, a soldier, and a rebel. His flight from the camp of the marquis Bubon- face secured his freedom; by his marriage with the governor's daughter, he commanded the important place of Derzara, assumed the title of despot, and founded a strong and conspicuous principality in Epirus, Akolie, and Thessaly, which have ever been peopled by a warlike race. The Greeks, who had offered their service to their new sovereigns, were excluded by the haughty Latins from all civil and military honours, as a nation born to tremble and obey. Their resentment prompted them to show that they might have been useful friends, since they could be dangerous enemies: their nerves were pressed by adversity: whatever was learned of holy, whatever was needed or valiant, rolled away.


day, and a long sitting on the scaffold, dropping his hands, and


governor of Nice. 16 Theodore Lascaris, or Lascaris, was the

democratic and the feudal spirit unating. 17 See the life of Mouranmo, in Nisius A.D. 1096, 1097, and 1098: (C. J. H. 82.) Besides the column of the emperor, the column of victors or Theodosian, was more imposing than the other.


15 The composition of the Greek and the western fleets amounting to the


16 Theodore Lascaris, or Lascaris, was the governor of Nice. 16 Theodore Lascaris, or Lascaris, was the democratic and the feudal spirit unating. 17 See the life of Mouranmo, in Nisius A.D. 1096, 1097, and 1098: (C. J. H. 82.) Besides the column of the emperor, the column of victors or Theodosian, was more imposing than the other.

17 See the life of Mouranmo, in Nisius A.D. 1096, 1097, and 1098: (C. J. H. 82.) Besides the column of the emperor, the column of victors or Theodosian, was more imposing than the other.

18 The composition of the Greek and the western fleets amounting to the

19 The composition of the Greek and the western fleets amounting to the
into the independent states of Trebizond, Epirus, and Nice; and a single patrician is marked by the ambiguous praise of attachment and loyalty to the Franks. The vulgar herd of the cities and the country would have gladly submitted to a mild and regular servitude; and the transient disorders of war would have been obliterated by some years of industry and peace. But peace was banished, and industry was crushed, in the disorders of the feudal system. The Roman emperors of Constantinople, if they were endowed with abilities, were armed with power for the protection of their subjects; their laws were wise, and their administration was simple. The Latin throne was filled by a tyrant prince, the chief, and often the servant, of his licentious confederates; the fruits of the empire, from a kingdom to a castle, were held and ruled by the sword of the barons; and their discord, poverty, and ignorance, extended the ramifications of tyranny to the most secluded villages. The Greeks were oppressed by the double weight of the priest, who was invested with temporal power, and of the soldier, who was inflamed by fanatic hatred; and the unstable bar of religion and language for ever separated the stranger and the native of his homeland. As long as the crusaders were united at Constantinople, the masses of their conquest, and the terror of their arms, imposed silence on the captive land; their disunion betrayed the weakness of their numbers, and the defects of their discipline; and some successes and mischiefs revealed the secret: that they were not invincible. As the fear of the Greeks abated, their hatred increased. They murmured; they conceived; and, before a year of slavery had elapsed, they plotted, or accepted, the success of a bastard, whose power they had felt, and whose gratitude they trusted.

The Latin conquerors had been saluted with a solemn and early embassy from John, or Jeanne, or Calo-John, the revolting chief of the Bulgarians and Walachians. He desisted himself their leader, as the rotative of the Roman panet, from whom he had received the regal title and an holy crown; and in the subversion of the Greek monarchy, he might aspire to the name of their friend and accomplices. But Calo-John was astonished to find, that the count of Flanders had assumed the pomp and pride of the successors of Constantine; and his ambassadors were dismissed with an insulting message, that the rebel must deserve a pardoned death, by touching with his forskal the footstep of the Imperial throne. His resentment would have exhasted in acts of violence and blood; his cooler policy watched the rising discontent of the Greeks; affected a tender concern for their sufferings; and promised, that their first struggles for freedom should be supported by his person and kingdom. The conspiracy was propagated by national hatred, the frantic band of association and secrecy; the Greeks were patient to sheath their daggers in the breasts of the victorious strangers; but the execution was prudently delayed, till Henry, the emperor's brother, had transported the flower of his troops beyond the Hellespont. Most of the towns and villages of Thrace were true to the moment and the signal: and the Latins, without arms or suspicion, were slaughtered by the vile and merciless revenge of their slaves. From Demotika, the first scene of the massacres, the surviving vessels of the count of St. Pol escaped to Adrianople; but the French and Venetians, who occupied that city, were slain or expelled by the furiosi muliebrii; the garrisons that could effect their retreat fell back on each other towards the metropolis; and the fortresses, that separately stood against the rebels, were ignorant, or each other's fate. The voice of fame and fear announced the revolt of the Greeks and the rapid approach of their Bulgarian ally; and Calo-John, not depending on the forces of his own kingdom, had drawn from the Scythian wilderness a body of fourteen thousand Comans, who drank, as it was said, the blood of their captives, and sacrificed the Christians on the altars of their gods.

Alarmed by this sudden and growing danger, the emperor despatched a swift messenger to recall count Henry and his troops; and laid Baldwin expected the return of his gallant brother, with a supply of twenty thousand Armauncians, he might have encountered the invader with equal numbers and a decisive superiority of arms and discipline. But the spirit of chivalry could seldom discriminate caution from cowardice; and the emperor took the field with an hundred and forty knights, and their train of archers and squires. The marshal, who discharged and obeyed, had the vanguard in their march to Adrianople; the main body was commanded by the count of Flanders; the aged doge of Venice followed with the rear; and their scanty numbers were increased from all sides by the fugitive Latins. They undertook to besiege the rebels of Adrianople, as such was the usual tendency of the crusades, that they employed the holy war in pillaging the country for their subsistence; and in frammimg engines for the destruction of their fellow Christians. But the Latins were soon interrupted and alarmed by the light cavalry of the Cumanians, who boldly skirmished to the edge of their imperfect line; and a proclamation was issued by the marshal of Romania, that, on the trumpet's sound, the cavalry should mount and form; but that none, under pain of death, should abandon themselves to a destitute and dangerous pursuit. This wise injunction was first disobeyed by the count of Flanders, who involved the emperor in his rashness and ruin. The Comites, of the Partizan or Tartar school, first before their first charge; but after a career of two leagues, when the knights and their horses were almost insensible, they suddenly turned, rallied, and encompassed.
the heavy squadron of the Franks.

The court was slain on the field; the emperor was made prisoner; and if the one disarmed to fly, if the other refused to yield, their personal bravery made a poor atonement for their ignorance, or neglect, of the duties of a general. 8

Proud of his victory and his royal prize, the Bulgarian advanced to relieve Antioch, and achieve the destruction of the Latin. They must inevitably have been destroyed, if the marshal of Romania had not displayed a cool courage and consummate skill: uncommon in all ages, but most uncommon in those times, when war was a passion, rather than a science. His grief, shame, and fears were poured into the firm bosom of the dogs; but in the camp he diffused an assurance of safety, which could only be realised by the general belief. All day he maintained his perilous station between the city and the barbarians. Villehardouin decamped in silence at the dead of night; and his masterly retreat of three days would have deserved the praise of Xenophon and the ten thousand. In the rear, the marshal supported the weight of the pursuit; in the front, he moderated the impatience of the fugitives; and wherever the Comans approached, they were repelled by a line of impenetrable spurs. On the third day, the weary troops beheld the sea, the salubrious town of Rodosto, 7 and their friends, who had landed from the Asiatic shore. They entreated, they wept; but they unfixed their arms and emmets; and, in his brother's absence, Count Henry assumed the regency of the empire, at once in a state of childhood and rascality. 8 If the Comans withdrew from the summer hills, seven thousand Latins, in the hour of danger, deserted Constanti-

douple, their brethren, and their vows. Some partial success was overbalanced by the loss of one hundred and twenty knights in the field of Rusinium; and of the Imperial domain, no more was left than the capital, with two or three adjacent fortresses on the shores of Europe and Asia. The king of Bulgaria was resistless and inexorable; and Colain John respectfully eluded the demands of the Empires, who conjured his new prince to restore peace and the emperor to the afflicted Latins. The deliverance of Baldwin was no longer, he said, in the power of men.

He was devoured by the birds of prey. About twenty years afterwards, in a wood of the

Netherlands, an hermit announced himself as the

Baldwin, the emperor of Constantinople, and lawful sovereign of Flanders. He related the wonders of his escape, his adventures, and his return, according to a popular tale believed by rebel, and, in the first transport, Flanders acknowledged her long-lost sovereign. A short examination before the French court detected the impostor, who was punished with an ignominious death; but the Flemings still adhered to the pleasing error; and the countess Jane is accredited by the greatest historians of sacrificing her ambition the life of an unfortunate father. 9

In all civilized hostility, a treaty is established for the exchange of ransom of prisoners; and if their captivity be prolonged, their condition is known, and they are treated according to their rank with humanity or honour. But the savage Bulgarian was a stranger to the laws of war, his prisoners were involved in darkness and silence; and above a year elapsed before the Latins could be assured of the death of Baldwin, before his brother, the regent Henry, would consent to assume the title of emperor. His moderation was applauded by the Greeks as an act of rare and inimitable virtue. Their light and perilous ambition was eager to win or anticipate the moment of a vacancy, while a law of succession, the guardian both of the prince and people, was gradually defined and confirmed in the hereditary monarchies of Europe. In the support of the Eastern empire, Henry was gradually left without an associate, as the heroes of the crusade retired from the world or from the war. The dogs of Venice, the venerable Dandolo, in the fulness of years and glory, sank into the grave. The marquis of Moonofen was slowly recalled from the Peloponnesian war to the revenge of Baldwin and the defence of Thessalonica. Some nice disputes of feudal homage and service were reconciled in a personal interview between the emperor and the king; they were firmly united by mutual esteem and the common danger; and their alliance was sealed by the nuptials of Henry, with the daughter of the Italian prince. He soon declared the loss of his friend and father. At the persuasion of some faithful Greeks, Boniface made a bold and successful inroad among the hills of Rhodope; the Bulgarians fled on his approach; they assembled to harass his retreat. On the intelligence that his rear was attacked, without waiting for any defensive armour, he leaped on horseback, reached his lance, and drove the enemies before him; but in the rush pursuit he was pierced with a mental wound; and the head of the king of Thessalonica was presented to Colain John, who enjoyed the honour, without the merit of victory. 10
is here, at this melancholy event, that the pen or the voice of Jeffrey of Villehardouin seems to drop or to expire; and if he still exercised his military office of marshal of France, his subsequent exploits are buried in oblivion.

The character of Henry was not unequal to his arduous situation; in the siege of Constantinople, and beyond the Hellespont, he had deserved the fame of a valiant knight and a skilful commander; and his courage was tempered with a degree of prudence and mildness unknown to his impetuous brother. In the double war against the Greeks of Asia and the Bulgarians of Europe, he was over the foremost on shipboard or on horseback; and though he cautiously provided for the success of his arms, the drooping Latins were often roused by his example to save and to second their fearless emperor. But such efforts, and some supplies of men and money from France, were of less avail than the errors, the cruelty, and death, of their most formidable adversary. When the design of the Greek subjects invaded Calo-John and were declared by him, they hoped that he would protect their liberty and adopt their laws; they were too taught to compare the degrees of national ferocity, and to execute the savage conqueror, who no longer dissembled his intention of dispersing Thrace, of demolishing the cities, and of transplanting the inhabitants beyond the Danube. Many towns and villages of Thrace were already evacuated; an heap of ruins marked the place of Philippopolis, and a similar calamity was expected at Demotika and Adrianople; by the first authors of the revolt. They raised a cry of grief and repentance to the tombs of Henry; the emperor alone had the magnanimity to forgive and trust them. No more than four hundred knights, with their serjeants and archers, could be assembled under his banner; and with this slender force he fought and repulsed the Bulgarians, who, besides his infancy, was at the head of thirty thousand horse. In this expedition, Henry felt the difference between an hostile and a friendly country; the remaining cities were preserved by his arms; and the savage, with shame and loss, was compelled to relinquish his prey. The siege of Thessalonica was the last of the evils which Calo-John inflicted or suffered: he was stabbed in the night in his tent; and the general, perhaps the assassin, who found him wailing in his blood, carried the blow with general applause to the fame of St. Demetrius. After several victories, the prudence of Henry concluded an honourable peace with the successor of the tyrant; and with the Greek princes of Nice and Epirus. If he ceded some doubtful limits, an ample kingdom was reserved for himself and his descendants; and his repute, which lasted only ten years, afforded a short interval of prosperity and peace.

Far above the narrow policy of Baldwin and Bohemond, he freely intrusted to the Greeks the most important offices of the state and army; and this liberality of sentiment and practice was the more reasonable, as the princes of Nice and Epirus had already learned to seduce and employ the marquisy valour of the Latins. It was the aim of Henry to unite and reward his deserving subjects of every nation and language; but he appeared less methodical to accomplish the impracticable union of the two churches. Pelagius, the pope's legate, who acted as the sovereign of Constantinople, had interdicted the worship of the Greeks, and sternly imposed the payment of tithes, the double procession of the Holy Ghost, and a blind obedience to the Roman pontiff. As the weaker party, they pleaded the duties of conscience, and implored the rights of toleration: "Our holy fathers," they said, "are Cesar's, but our souls "belong only to God." The persecution was checked by the firmness of the emperor; and if we can believe that the same prince was poisoned by the Greeks themselves, we must entertain a contemptible idea of the sense and gratitude of mankind. His valor was a vulgar attribute, which he shared with ten thousand knights; but Henry possessed the superior courage to oppose in a superstitious eye, the pride and avarice of the clergy. In the cathedral of St. Sophia, he presumed to place his throne on the right-hand of the patriarch; and this presumption excited the sharpest execration of the pope. Innocent the Third. By a salutary edict, one of the first examples of the laws of the Saracen, he prohibited the alienation of fiefs; many of the Latins, desirous of returning to Europe, engaged their estates to the church for a spiritual or temporal reward; these holy lands were immediately discharded from military service; and a colony of soldiers would have been gradually transformed into a college of priests.

The virtuous Henry died at Thessalonica, in the defence of that kingdom, and of an infant, the son of his friend Bohemond. In the two years which elapsed between the death of the first emperors of Constantinople and the male line of the counts of Flanders was extirpated. But their sister Yolande was the wife of a French prince, the mother of a numerous progeny; and one of her daughters had married Andrew king of Hungary, a brave and pious champion of the cross. By setting him on the Byzantine throne, the barons of Romania would have acquired the forces of a neighbouring and warlike kingdom; but the prudent Andrew revered the laws of succession; and the princess Yolande, with her husband Peter of Courtenay, count of Amszon, was invited by the Latins to assume the empire of the East. The royal birth of his father, the noble origin of his mother, recommended him to the barons of France the first cousin of their king. His reputation was fair, his possessions were ample, and, in the bloody crusade against the
have prolonged the troubles of a minority, and his claims were superseded by the elder claims of his brethren. The first of them, Philip of Comines, who derived from his mother the inheritance of Namur, had the wisdom to prefer the substance of a monarchy to the shadow of an empire; and on his refusal, Robert, the second of the sons of Peter and Yolande, was called to the throne of Constantinople. Warned by his father's mischance, he pursued his slow and secure journey through Germany and along the Danube: a passage was opened by his sister's marriage with the king of Hungary; and the emperor Robert was crowned by the patriarch in the cathedral of St. Sophia. But his reign was an era of calamity and impiety; and the colony, as it was styled, of New France yielded on all sides to the Greeks of Nice and Epirus. After a victory, which he owed to his perfidy rather than to his courage, Theodore Angelus entered the kingdom of Thessaly; expelled the feeble Demetrius, the son of theised Boniface, erected his standard on the walls of Adrianople; and added, by his vassals, a third or fourth name to the list of rival emperors. The relics of the Asiatic provinces were swept away by John Vatatzes, the son-in-law and successor of Theodore Lascaris, and who, in a triumphant reign of thirty-three years, displayed the virtues both of peace and war. Under his discipline the armies of the French mercenaries were the most efficient instrument of his conquests, and their extraction from the service of their country at once ceased as a system and a cause of the rising ascendancy of the Greeks. By the construction of a fleet, he obtained the command of the Hallespont, reduced the islands of Lesbos and Rhodes, attacked the Venetians of Candia, and intercepted the rare and permission succours of the West. Once, and once only, the Latin emperor sent an army against Vatatzes; and in the defeat of that army, the veteran knights, the last of the original conquerors, were left on the field of battle. But the success of a foreign enemy was less painful to the pusillanimous Robert than the insolence of his Latin subjects, who confounded the weakness of the emperor and of the empire. His personal misfortunes will prove the anarchy of the government and the foemenness of the times. The amorous youth had neglected his Greek bride, the daughter of Vatatzes, to introduce into the palace a beautiful maid, of a private, though noble, family of Arta; and her mother had been tempted by the lustre of the purple to forfeit her engagements with a gentleman of Burgundy. His love was converted into rage; he assembled his friends, forced the palace gates, threw the mother into the sea, and inhumanly cut off the nose and lips of the wife or succinice of the emperor. Instead of punishing the offender, the Icomos avowed and applauded the savage deed, which, as a prince and as a man, it was impossible that Baldwin should forgive. He escaped from the guilty city to implore the
justice or compassion of the pope: the emperor was coolly exhorted to return to his station; before he could obey, he sunk under the weight of grief, shame, and impotent resentment.

It was only in the age of chivalry, that valor could ascend from a private station to the thrones of Jerusalem and Constantinople. The little kings of Jerusalem had devoted to Mary, the daughter of Isabella and Conrad of Montferrat, and the grand-daughter of Almeric or Amaury. She was given to John of Brienne, of a noble family in Champagne, by the public voice, and the judgment of Philip Augustus, who named him as the most worthy champion of the Holy Land. In the fifth crusade, he led an hundred thousand Latins to the conquest of Egypt; by him the siege of Damietta was achieved; and the subsequent failure was justly ascribed to the pride and avarice of the legates. After the marriage of his daughter with Frederic the Second, he was provoked by the emperor's ingratitude to accept the command of the army of the church; and though advanced in life, and despised of royalty, the sword and spirit of John of Brienne were still ready for the service of Christendom. In the seven years of his brother's reign, Baldwin of Courtenay had not emerged from a state of childhood, and the barons of Normandy felt the strong necessity of placing the sceptre in the hands of a man and a hero. The feeble king of Jerusalem might have discarded the name and office of regent, they agreed to invest him for his life with the title and prerogatives of emperor, on the sole condition that Baldwin should marry his second daughter, and succeed a mature age to the throne of Constantinople. The expectation, both of the Greeks and Latins, was limited by the renown, the choice, and the presence of John of Brienne; and they admired his martial aspect, his green and vigorous age of more than fourscore years, and his size and stature, which surpassed the common measure of mankind. The avarice, and the love of ease, appear to have chilled the ardour of enterprise: his troops were disbanded, and two years rolled away without action or honour, till he was awakened by the dangerous alliance of Vatates emperor of Nice, and of Aziz king of Bulgaria. They besieged Constantinople, by sea and land, with an army of one hundred thousand men, and a fleet of three hundred ships of war; while the entire force of the Latin emperor was reduced to one hundred and sixty knights, and a small addition of serjeants and archers. I tremble to relate, that instead of defending the city, the hero made a salut at the head of his cavalry; and that of forty-eight squadrons of the enemy, no more than three escaped from the edge of his invincible sword. Fired by his example, the infantry and the citizens boarded the vessels that anchored close to the walls; and twenty-five were dragged in triumph into the harbour of Constantinople. At the summons of the emperor, the vessels and allies armed in her defence, broke through every obstacle that opposed their passage; and, in the succeeding year, obtained a second victory over the same enemies. By the rude poets of the age, John of Brienne is compared to Hector, Roland, and Judas Maccabees; but their credit, and his glory, receive some abatement from the silence of the Greeks. The empire was soon deprived of the last of its champions; and the dying monarch was ambitious to enter paradise in the habit of a Franciscan friar.

In the double victory of John of Brienne, I cannot discover the name or exploits of his pupil Baldwin, who had attained the age of military service, and who succeeded to the Imperial dignity on the decease of his adoptive father. The royal youth was employed on a commission more suited to his temper; he was sent to visit the Western courts, of the pope more especially, and of the king of France; to excite their pity by the view of his innocence and distress; and to obtain some supplies of men or money for the relief of the sinking empire. He thrice repeated these melancholy visits, in which he seemed to prolong his stay, and postpone his return; of the five and twenty years of his reign a greater number were spent abroad than at home; and in no place did the emperor seem himself less free and secure than in his native country and his capital. On some public occasions, his vanity might be soothe by the title of Augustus, and by the honors of the purple; and at the general council of Lyons, when Frederic the Second was excommunicated and deposed, his Oriental colleague was enthroned on the right hand of the pope. But how often was the evil, the vagrant, the Imperial beggar, humbled with scorn, insulted with pity, and degraded in his own eyes and those of the nations! In his first visit to England, he was stopped at Dover by a severe reprimand, that he should parsimony, without leave, to enter an independent kingdom. After some delay, Baldwin, however, was permitted to pursue his journey, was entertained with cold civility, and thankfully departed with a present of seven hundred marks. From the avarice of Rome, he could only obtain the proclamation of a crusade, and a treasure of indulgences; a coin, whose currency was depravement in the end of the Thirteenth century, 299, 219; for the prowess of John of Brienne.

29 See the reign of Robert in Hainz (Hist. de C. P. L. 2. 1. 29.)
30 See the reign of Frederic in the same work (p. 291).
31 Baldwin in the same work (p. 283).
32 Baldwin also in the same work (p. 284).
relaxed by too frequent and indiscriminate abuse. His birth and misfortunes recommended him to the generosity of his cousin Lewis the Ninth; but the martial zeal of the saint was diverted from Constantinople to Egypt and Palestine; and the public and private poverty of Baldwin was alleviated, for a moment, by the alienation of the marquisate of Namur and the lordship of Courtenay, the last remains of his inheritance. By such shrewd or ruinous expedients, he once more returned to Romania, with an army of thirty thousand soldiers, whose numbers were doubled in the apprehension of the Greeks. His first dispatches to France and England announced his victories and his hopes; he had reduced the country round the capital to the distance of three days' journey; and if he succeeded against an important, though nameless, city (most probably Chalcis), the frontier would be safe and the passage accessible. But these expectations (if Baldwin was sincere) quickly vanished like a dream; the troops and treasures of France melted away in his mischievous hands; and the throne of the Latin emperor was protected by a disaffected alliance with the Turks and Comans. To secure the former, he consented to bestow his niece on the unchanging sultan of Cogni; to please the latter, he complimeted with their Pagan rites; a dog was sacrificed between the two armies; and the contracting parties tasted each other's blood, as a pledge of their fidelity. In the palace, or prison, of Constantinople, the successor of Augustine demolished the vacant houses for winter fuel, and stripped the head from the churches for the daily expense of his family. Some mutinous loans were dealt with a scanty hand by the merchants of Italy; and Phillip, his son and heir, was pawned at Veszély as the security for a debt. Thirst, hunger, and nakedness, are positive evils; but wealth is relative: and a prince, who would be rich in a private station, may be exposed by the increase of his wants to all the anxiety and bitterness of poverty.

The holy crown. But in this object distress, the emperor and empire were still possessed of an ideal treasure, which drew its fantastic value from the superstition of the Christian world. The merit of the true cross was somewhat impaired by its frequent division; and a long captivity among the infidels might shed some suspicion on the fragments that were produced in the East and West. But another relic of the Passion was preserved in the Imperial chapel of Constantinople; and the crown of thorns, which had been placed on the head of Christ, was equally precious and authentic. It had formerly been the practice of the Egyptian doctors to deposit, as a security, the remains of their parents; and both their honours and

religion were bound for the redemption of the pledge. In the same manner, and in the absence of the emperor, the crown of Romania borrowed the sum of thirteen thousand one hundred and thirty-four pieces of gold, on the credit of the holy crown; they failed in the performance of their contract, and a rich Venetian, Nicholas Quarini, undertook to satisfy their impatient creditors, on condition that the relic should be lodged at Venice, to become his absolute property, if it were not redeemed within a short and definite term. The bargain apprised their sovereign of the hard treaty and impending loss; and as the empire could not afford a ransom of seven thousand pounds sterling, Baldwin was anxious to snatch the price from the Venetians, and to vest it with more honour and emolument in the hands of the most Christian king. Yet the negotiation was attended with some delicacy. In the purchase of relics, the saint would have started at the guilt of simony; but if the mode of expression were changed, he might lawfully repay the debt, accept the gift, and acknowledge the obligation. His ambassadors, two Dominicans, were dispatched to Venice, to redeem and receive the holy crown; which had escaped the dangers of the sea and the galleys of Vatoo. On opening a wooden box, they recognised the seals of the state and arms, which were applied on a shrine of silver; and, within this shrine, the monument of the Passion was enclosed in a golden vase. The reluctant Venetians yielded to justice and power; the emperor Frederick granted a free and honourable passage; the court of France advanced as far as Troyes in Champagne, to meet with devotion this illustrious relic; it was borne in triumph through Paris by the king himself, barefoot, and in his shirt; and a free gift of ten thousand marks of silver reconciled Baldwin to his loss. The success of this transaction tempted the Latin emperor to offer with the same generosity the remaining furniture of his chapel; a large and authentic portion of the true cross; the holy-linen of the Son of God; the lance, the sponge, and the chain, of his Passion, the rest of Moses, and part of the skull of St. John the Baptist. For the reception of these spiritual treasures, twenty thousand marks were expended by St. Louis on a stately foundation, the holy chapel of Paris, on which the mass of Rollo's has bestowed a comic immortality. The truth of such remote and ancient relics, which cannot be proved by any human testimony, must be admitted by those who believe in the miracles which they have performed. About the middle of the last age, an inveterate ulcer was touched and cured by an holy prickle of the holy crown; the prodigy is attested by the most plausible and enlightened Christians of France; nor will the
be excessive of power, let him pay me, as an annual tribute, the sum which he receives from the trade and customs of Constanti-

The Latins of Constantinople were on all sides encompassed and pressed: their sole hope, the last delay of their ruin, was in the division of their Greek and Bulgarian enemies; and of this hope they were deprived by the superior arms and policy of Vassalus emperor of Nice. From the Propontis to the rocky coast of Patmouia, Asia was peaceful and prosperous under his reign; and the events of every campaign extended his influence in Europe. The strong cities of the hills of Macedon and Thrace were rescued from the Bulgarians; and their kingdom was circumscribed by its present and proper limits, along the southern banks of the Danube. The sole emperor of the Romans could no longer brook that a lord of Epirus, a Comnenian prince of the West, should presume to dispute or share the honours of the purple; and the humble Demetrius changed the colour of his buskins; and accepted with gratitude the appellation of despot. His own subjects were exasperated by his baseness and inequity; they implored the protection of their supreme lord. After some resistance, the kingdom of Thessalonica was united to the empire of Nice; and Vassalus reigned without a competitor from the Turkish invaders in the Aegean Gulf. The princes of Europe revered his merit and power; and had he subscribed an orthodox creed, it should seem that the pope would have abandoned without reluctance the Latin throne of Constantinople. But the death of Vassalus, the short and hasty reign of Theodore his son, and the helpless infancy of his grandchild John, suspended the restoration of the Greeks. In the next chapter, I shall explain their domestic revolutions. In the present place, it will be sufficient to observe, that the young prince was espoused by the ambition of his guardian and colleague Michael Palaeologus, who displayed the virtues and vice that belonged to the founder of a new dynasty. The emperor Baldwin had flattered himself, that he might receive some provinces or cities by an important negotiation. His ambition was disappointed from Nice with mockery and contempt. At every place which they passed, Palaeologus alleged some special reason which rendered it dear and valuable to his eyes; and in the one he was born; in another he had been first promoted to military command; and in a third he had enjoyed, and hoped long to enjoy, the pleasures of the chase. And what "that you propose to give us?" said the ambassadour. "Nothing," replied the Greek; "not a foot of land. If your master
sailed away with thirty galleys, and the best of the French knights, on a wild expedition to Daphnula, a town on the Black Sea, at the distance of forty leagues; and the remaining were without strength or suspicion. They were informed that Alexius had passed the Hellespont; but their apprehensions were lulled by the smallness of his original numbers; and their imprudence had not watched the subsequent increase of his army. If he left his main body to second and support his operations, he might advance unperturbed in the night with a chosen detachment. While some applied scaling-ladders to the lowest part of the walls, they were secure of an old Greek, who would introduce their companions through a sunderaneous passage into his house; they could soon on the inside break an entrance through the golden gate, which had been long obstructed; and the conqueror would be in the heart of the city, before the Latins were conscious of their danger. After some debate, the Cæsar resigned himself to the faith of the volunteer; they were trusted, held, and successful; and in describing the plan, I have already related the execution and success.61

But no sooner had Alexius passed the threshold of the golden gate, than he trembled at his own rashness; he paused, he deliberated; till the desperate volunteers urged him forwards, by the assurance that in retreat lay the greatest and most inevitable danger. Whilst the Cæsar kept his regulars in firm array, the Comans dispersed themselves on all sides; an alarm was sounded, and the threats of fire and pillage compelled the citizens to a decisive resolution. The Greeks of Constantinople remembered their native sovereign; the Genoese merchants their recent alliance and Venetian foes; every quarter was in arms; and the air resounded with a general acclamation of "Long life and victory to "Michael and John, the august emperors of "the Romans!" Their rival, Baldwin, was awakened by the sound; but the most pressing danger could not prompt him to draw his sword in the defence of a city which he deserted, perhaps, with more pleasure than regret; he fled from the palace to the sea shore, where he despaired the welcome calls of the fleet returning from the vain and fruitless attempt on Daphnula. Constantinople was irrecoverably lost; but the Latin emperor and the principal families embarked on board the Venetian galleys, and steered for the isle of Eubea, and afterwards for Italy, where the royal fugitive was entertained by the pope and Sicilian king with a mixture of contempt and pity. From the loss of Constantinople to his death, he consumed thirteen years, soliciting the Catholic powers to join in his restoration; the lesson had been familiar to his youth; nor was his last exile more indolent or shameful than his former pilgrimages to the courts of Europe. His son Philip was the heir of an ideal empire; and the pretensions of his daughter Catharina were transported by her marriage to Charles of Valois, the brother of Philip the Fair, king of France. The house of Courtenay was represented in the female line by successive alliances, till the title of emperor of Constantinople, too bulky and somnorous for a private name, modestly expired in silence and oblivion.62

After this narrative of the expeditions of the Latins to Palestine and Constantinople, I cannot dismiss the subject without revolving the general consequences on the countries that were the scene, and on the nations that were the actors, of these memorable crusades.63 As soon as the arms of the Franks were withdrawn, the impression, though not the memory, was erased in the Mahometan realms of Egypt and Syria. The faithful disciples of the prophet were never tempted by a profane desire to study the laws or language of the idolaters; nor did the simplicity of their primitive manners receive the slightest alteration from their intercourse in peace, and war with the unknown strangers of the West. The Greeks, who thought themselves proud, but who were only vain, showed a disposition somewhat less inflexible. In the efforts for the recovery of their empire, they simulated the valour, discipline, and tactics, of their antagonists. The modern literature of the West they might justly despise; but its free spirit would instruct them in the rights of man; and some institutions of public and private life were adopted from the French. The correspondence of Constantinople and Italy diffused the knowledge of the Latin tongue; and several of the fathers and classics were at length honoured with a Greek version.64 But the national and religious prejudices of the Orientals were inflamed by persecution; and the rage of the Latins confirmed the separation of the two churches.

If we compare, at the era of the crusades, the Latins of Europe with the Greeks and Arabs, their respective degrees of knowledge, industry, and art, our rude ancestors must be content with the third rank in the scale of nations. Their successive improvement and present superiority may be ascribed to a peculiar energy of character, to an active and imaginative spirit, unknown to their more polished rivals; who at that time were in a stationary or retrograde state. With such a disposition, the Latins should have derived the most early and essential benefits from a series of events which opened to their eyes the prospect of the world, and introduced them to a long and frequent intercourse with the more cultivated regions of the East. The first and most obvious progress was in trade and manufactures; in the arts which are strongly prompted by the thirst of wealth, the calls of necessity, and the gratif-
nation of the sense or vanity. Among the crowd of unhallowing families, a captive or a pilgrim might sometimes observe the superior refinements of Cairo and Constantinople: the first importers of windmills was the beneficiary of nations; and if such blessings are enjoyed without any grateful remembrance, history has condescended to notice the most apparent luxuries of silk and sugar, which were transported into Italy from Greece and Egypt. But the intellectual wants of the Latins were more slowly felt and supplied: the ardor of studious curiosity was weakened in Europe by different causes and more recent events; and, in the age of the crusades, they viewed with careless indifference the literature of the Greeks and Arabs. Some rudiments of mathematical and medical knowledge might be imparted in practice and in figures: necessity might produce some interpreters for the grosser business of merchants and soldiers; but the commerce of the Orientals had not diffused the study and knowledge of their languages in the schools of Europe. If a similar principle of religion repulsed the idiom of the Koran, it should have excited their patience and curiosity to understand the original text of the Gospel; and the same grammar would have unfolded the sense of Plato and the beauties of Homer. Yet in a reign of sixty years, the Latins of Constantinople disdained the speech and learning of their subjects; and the manuscripts were the only treasures which the natives might enjoy without rapine or envy. Aristotle was indeed the oracle of the Western universities: but it was a barbarous Aristotele; and, instead of ascending to the fountain-head, his Latin votaries humbly accepted a corrupt and remote version from the Jews and Moslems of Ambrosius. The principle of the crusades was a savage fanaticism; and the most important effects were analogous to the cause. Each pilgrim was ambitious to return with his sacred spoils, the relics of Greece and Palestine; and such relic was preceded and followed by a train of miracles and visions. The belief of the Catholics was corrupted by new legends, their practice by new superstitions; and the establishment of the inquisition, the mendicant orders of monks and friars, the last abuse of indulgences, and the final progress of idolatry, flowed from the haleful fountain of the holy war. The active spirit of the Latins preyed on the vitals of their reason and religion; and if the ninth and tenth centuries were the times of darkness, the thirteenth and fourteenth were the age of absurdity and fable.

In the profession of Christianity, in the cultivation of a fertile land, the northern conquerors of the Roman empire incessantly mingled with the provincials, and rekindled the embers of the arts of antiquity. Their settlements about the age of Charlemagne had acquired some degree of order and stability, when they were overthrown by new swarms of invaders, the Normans, Saracens, and Hungarians, who repulsed the western countries of Europe into their former state of anarchy and barbarism. About the eleventh century, the second tempest had subsided by the expulsion or conversion of the enemies of Christendom: the tide of civilization which had so long ebbed, began to flow with a steady and accelerated course; and a fairest prospect was opened to the hopes and efforts of the rising generations. Great was the increase, and rapid the progress, during the two hundred years of the crusades; and some philosophers have applauded the propitious influence of these holy wars, which appear to me to have checked rather than forwarded the maturity of Europe.

The lives and labours of millions, which were buried in the East, would have been more profitably employed in the improvement of their native country. The accumulated stock of industry and wealth would have overflowed in navigation and trade; and the Latins would have been enriched and enlightened by a pure and friendly correspondence with the climates of the East. In one respect I can indeed perceive the accidental operation of the crusades, not as much in producing a benefit as in removing an evil. The larger portion of the inhabitants of Europe was chained to the soil, without freedom, or property, or knowledge; and the two orders of ecclesiastics and nobles, whose numbers were comparatively small, alone deserved the name of citizens and men. This oppressive system was supported by the arts of the clergy and the swords of the barons. The authority of the priests operated in the darker ages as a salutary antidote: they prevented the total extinction of letters, mitigated the enormities of the times, sheltered the poor and defenseless, and preserved or revived the peace and order of civil society. But the independence, rapine, and discord of the feudal lords were combined with any semblance of good: and every hope of industry and improvement was crushed by the iron weight of the martial aristocracy. Among the causes that undermined that Gothic edifice, a conspicuous place must be allowed to the crusades. The estates of the barons were disjoined, and their race was often extinguished, in these costly and perilous excursions. Their poverty extorted from their pride those charters of freedom which unlocked the fetters of the slaves, secured the farms of the peasant and the shop of the artificer, and gradually restored a substance and a soul to the most numerous and useful part of the community. The conflagration which destroyed the tall and baren trees of the forest, gave air and scope to the vegetation of the smaller and nutritive plants of the soil.

Discourse on the Family of Constantine.

The purple of three emperors, who have reigned at Constantinople, will authorize or ex-
case a digression on the origin and singular fortunes of the house of Courtenay, in the three principal branches, I. Of Edessa; II. Of France; and, III. Of England; of which the last only has survived the revolutions of eight hundred years.

I. Before the introduction of trade, which scatters riches, and of knowledge, whichdispels prejudice, the prerogative of birth is most strongly felt and most humbly acknowledged. In every age, the laws and manners of the Germans have discriminated the ranks of society: the dukes and emperors, who shared the empire of Charlemagne, converted their office to an inheritance; and to his children, each feudal lord bequeathed his honour and his sword. The proudest families are content to lose, in the darkness of the middle ages, the tree of their pedigrees, which, however deep and lofty, must ultimately rise from a Philoibetan root; and their historians must descend two centuries below the Christian era, before they can ascertain any linear succession by the evidence of survivals, of arms, and of authentic records. With the first rays of light, we discern the nobility and opulence of Atho, a French knight: his nobility, in the rank and title of a nameless father; his opulence, in the foundations of the castle of Courtenay in the district of Gatinos, about fifty-six miles to the south of Paris. From the reign of Robert, the son of Hugh Capet, the barons of Courtenay are conspicuous among the immediate vassals of the crown; and Joscelin, the grandson of Atho and a noble dame, is enrolled among the heroes of the first crusade. A domestic alliance, their mothers were sisters and attached to him the standard of Baldwin of Bruges, the second count of Edessa; a princely gift, which he was worthy to receive, and able to maintain, announces the number of his martial followers; and after the departure of his cousin, Joscelin himself was invested with the county of Edessa on both sides of the Euphrates. By economy in peace, his territories were replenished with Latin and Syrian subjects; his magazines with corn, wine, and oil; his castles with gold and silver, with arms and horses. In a holy warfare of thirty years, he was alternately a conqueror and a captive; but he died like a soldier, in an horse-litter at the head of his troops; and his last glance beheld the flight of the Turkish invaders who had previously his age and infirmities. His son and successor, of the same name, was less deficient in valor than in vigilance; but he sometimes forgot that dominion is acquired and maintained by the same arts. He challenged the hostility of the Turks, without securing the friendship of the prince of Antioch; and, amidst the pleasant luxury of Turbessan, in Syria, Joscelin neglected the defense of the Christian frontier beyond the Euphrates. In his absence, Zengi, the first of the Ameke, besieged and stormed his capital, Edessa, which was feebly defended by a timorous and disloyal crowd of Orientals: the Franks were oppressed in a bold attempt for its recovery, and Courtenay ended his days in the prison of Aleppo. He still left a fair and ample patrimony. But the victorious Turks oppressed on all sides the weak remnants of a widow and orphan; and, for the equivalent of an animal pension, they resigned to the Great emperor the charge of defending, and the honor of losing, the last relics of the Latin conquest. The emperor of Edessa retired to Jerusalem with her two children; the daughter, Agnes, became the wife and mother of a king; the son, Joscelin the Third, accepted the office of seculum, the first of the kingdom, and held his new estate in Palestine by the service of fifty knights. His name appears with honour in all the transactions of peace and war; but he finally vanished in the fall of Jerusalem; and the name of Courtenay, in this hunch of Edessa, was lost by the marriage of his two daughters with a French and a German baron.

II. While Joscelin reigned beyond the Euphrates, his elder brother Miles, the son of Joscelin, the son of Atho, continued, near the Seine, to possess the castle of their fathers, which was as length inherited by Hainard, or Reginald, the youngest of his three sons. Examples of genius or virtue must be rare in the annals of the oldest families; and, in a remote age, their pride will preserve a deed of rapine and violence; such, however as could not be perpetrated without some superstitious of courage, or, at least, of power. A descendant of Hainard of Courtenay may blush for the public robber, who stripped and imprisoned several merchants, after they had satisfied the king's duties, at Sens and Orleans. He will glory in the offence, since the bold offender could not be compelled to restitution, till the regent and the count of Champagne prepared to march against him at the head of an army. Reginald then restored his estates on his eldest son with the royal daughter, and his daughter on the seventh son of King Louis the Fat; and their marriage was crowned with a numerous offspring. We might expect that a private should have merged in a royal name; and that the descendants of Peter of France and Elizabeth of Courtenay would have enjoyed the title and honours of princes of the blood. But this legitimate claim was long neglected, and finally denied; and the causes of their disgrace will represent the story of this second branch.

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The

II. The
clear and linear series of males, from the middle of the ninth century. In the age of the crusades, it was already revered both in the East and West. But from Hugh Capet to the marriage of Peter, no more than five reigns or generations had elapsed; and so precocious was their title, that the eldest sons, as a necessary precaution, were previously crowned during the lifetime of their fathers. The peers of France have long maintained their precedence before the younger branches of the royal line, nor had the princes of the blood, in the twelfth century, acquired that hereditary lustre which is now diffused over the most remote candidates for the succession. The barons of Courtenay must have stood high in their own estimation, and in that of the world, since they could impose on the son of a king the obligation of adopting for himself and all his descendants the name and arms of their daughter and her wife. In the marriage of an heiress with her inferior or her equal, such exchange was often required and allowed; but as they continued to debase from the royal stem, the sons of Louis the Fat were incessantly confounded with their maternal ancestors; and the new Courtenays might deserve to forfeit the honours of their birth, which a motive of interest had tempted them to renounce.

3. The shuni was far more permanent than the reward, and a momentary blaze was followed by a long darkness. The obdient son of these nobility, Peter of Courtenay, had married, as I have already mentioned, the sister of the counts of Flanders, the two first emperors of Constantinople: he readily accepted the invitation of the barons of Romania; his two sons, Robert and Baldwin, successively held and lost the remnant of the Latin empire in the East, and the grand-daughter of Baldwin the Second again mingled her blood with the blood of France and of Valencia. To support the expenses of a troubled and transitory reign, their patrimonial estates were mortgaged or sold; and the last emperors of Constantinople depended on the annual charity of Rome and Naples.

While the elder brothers dissipated their wealth in romantic adventures, and the castle of Courtenay was profaned by a plebeian owner, the younger branches of that adopted name were propagated and multiplied. But their splendour was clouded by poverty and time: after the decease of Robert, great-buter of France, they descended from princes to barons; the next generation was far more remote from the royal line.

III. According to the old register of Ford Abbey, the Courtenays of Devonshire are descended from Prince Florus, the second son of Peter, and the grandson of Louis the Fat. This false of the grateful or venal monks was too respectfully entertained by our antiquaries, Camden and Dugdale; but it is so clearly repugnant to truth and probability, and against such simple rules as the descent, by the male line, of a family, as to be at once discredited.
time, that the rational pride of the family now refuses to accept this imaginary founder. Their most faithful historians believe, that after giving his daughter to the king's son, Reginald of Courtenay abandoned his possessions in France, and obtained from the English monarch a second wife and a new inheritance. It is certain, at least, that Henry the Second distinguished in his camps and councils, a Reginald, of the name and arms, and, as it may be fairly presumed, of the genuine race, of the Courtenays of France. The right of warship enabled a feudal lord to reward his vassal with the marriage and estate of a noble heiress; and Reginald of Courtenay acquired a fair establishment in Devonshire, where his posterity has been seated above six hundred years. From a Norman baron, Baldwin de Brionni, who had been invested by the Conqueror, Hawise, the wife of Reginald, derived the honour of Okengton, which was held by the service of ninety-three knights; and a female might claim the many offices of hereditary viscount or sheriff, and of captain of the royal castle of Exeter. Their son Robert married the sister of the Earl of Devon; at the end of a century, on the failure of the family of Rivers, his great-grandson, Hugh the second, succeeded to a title which was still considered as a territorial dignity; and twelve earls of Devonshire, of the name of Courtenay, have flourished in a period of two hundred and twenty years. They were ranked among the chief of the barons of the realm; nor was it all after a strenuous dispute, that they yielded to the yoke of Arundel, the first place in the parliament of England: their alliances were contracted with the noblest families, the Veres, Despensers, St. Johns, Talbots, Bohuns, and even the Plantagenets themselves; and in a contest with John of Lancaster, a Courtenay, bishop of London, and afterwards archbishop of Canterbury, might be accused of profane confidence in the strength and number of his kindred. In peace, the earls of Devon resided in their numerous castles and mansions of the West; their ample revenue was appropriated to devotion and hospitality; and the epitaph of Edward, summarily, from his misfortune, the good, from his virtues, the good, earl, incites with much ingenuity a moral sentence, which may, however, be abused by thoughtless generosity. After a grateful commemoration of the fifty-five years of urbanity and happiness, which he enjoyed with Isabel, his wife, the good earl thus speaks from the tomb:

"What we gave, we have;  
What we spent, we had;  
What we left, we lock."

But their bases, in this sense, were far superior to their gifts and expenses; and their heirs, not less than the poor, were the objects of their paternal care. The sums which they paid for livary

and who is the possessor of the greatest of their possessions; and several estates have remained in their family since the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries. In war, the Courtenays of England fulfilled the duties, and deserved the honours, of chivalry. They were often invited to levy and command the militia of Devonshire and Cornwall; they often attended their supreme lord to the borders of Scotland; and in foreign service, for a stipulated price, they sometimes maintained four-score men at arms and as many archers. By sea and land, they fought under the standard of the Edwards and Henries; their arms are conspicuous in battles, in tournaments, and in the original list of the order of the Garter; three brothers shared the Spanish victory of the Black Prince; and in the lists of six generations, the English Courtenays had learned to despise the nation and country from which they derived their origin. In the quart of the true roses, the earls of Devon adhered to the house of Lancaster; and three brothers successively died, either in the field or on the scaffold. Their honours and estates were restored by Henry the Seventh; a daughter of Edward the Fourth was not disgraced by the nuptials of a Courtenay; their sons, whose father was created marquis of Exeter, enjoyed the favour of his cousin Henry the Eighth; and in the camp of Cloth of Gold, he broke a lance against the French monarch. But the favour of Henry was the prelude of disgrace; his disgrace was the signal of death; and of the vicissitudes of the jealous tyrant, the marquis of Exeter is one of the most noble and justifiable. His son Edward lived in a prison in the Tower, and died an exile in Flanders; and the secret love of queen Mary, whom he slighted, perhaps for the princess Elizabeth, has shed a romantic colour on the story of this beautiful youth. The relics of his patrimony were conveyed into strange families by the marriages of his four aunts; and his personal honours, as if they had been legally extinct, were revived by the patrons of succeeding princes. But there still survived a liminal descendant of Hugh the first earl of Devon, a younger branch of the Courtenays, who had been seated at Powderham castle above four hundred years, from the reign of Edward the Third to the present hour. Their estates have been increased by the grant and improvement of lands in Ireland, and they have been recently restored to the honours of the peerage. Yet the Courtenays will retain the plaintive motto which asserts the innocences, and deplores the fall, of their ancient house. While they sigh for past greatness, they are doubtless sensible of present blessings; in the long series of the Courtenay annals, the most splendid era is likewise the most unfortunate; nor can an opulent peer of Britain be inclined to envy the emperors of Constantinople, who wandered over Europe to solicit altars for the support of their dignity and the defence of their capital.

35 Courtenay, p. 145. 36 From it is adapted to a Devon and of the Cross, but the shields of the arms, from the arms of the."
The Greek Emperors of Nice and Constantinople.

The loss of Constantineople restored a temporary vigour to the Greeks. From their palaces, the princes and nobles were driven into the field; and the fragments of the fallen monarchy were grasped by the hands of the most vigorous or the most skilful candidates. In the long and barren pages of the Byzantine annals, it would not be an easy task to equal the two characters of Theodore Lascaris and John Vatatzes, who reigned and upheld the Roman standard at Nice in Bithynia. The difference of their virtues was happily suited to the diversity of their situation. In his first efforts, the fugitive Lascaris commanded only three cities and two thousand soldiers: his reign was the season of devastation and active despair: in every military operation he staked his life and crown; and his enemies, the Bulgarians and the Manchuli, were surprised by his valour and subdued by his boldness. A victorious reign of eighteen years expanded the principality of Nice to the magnitude of an empire. The throne of his successor and son-in-law Vatatzes was founded on a more solid basis, a larger scope, and more plentiful resources; and it was the temper, as well as the interest, of Vatatzes to calculate the risk; to expect the moment, and to ensure the success, of his ambitious designs. In the decline of the Lascarids, I have briefly exposed the progress of the Greeks; the prudent and gradual advance of a conqueror, who, in a reign of thirty-three years, successively subdued the provinces from national and foreign usurpers, till he pressed on all sides the Imperial city; a leafless and sapless trunk, which must fall at the first stroke of the axe. But his interior and peaceful administration is still more deserving of notice and praise. The calamities of the times had wasted the numbers and the substance of the Greeks; the motives and the means of agriculture were extirpated; and the most fertile lands were left without cultivation or inhabitants. A portion of this vacant property was occupied and improved by the command, and for the benefit, of the emperor: a powerful hand and a vigilant eye supplied and preserved, by a skilful management, the minute diligence of a private farmer: the royal domain became the garden and granary of Asia; and without impoverishing the people, the sovereign acquired a fund of innocent and productive wealth. According to the nature of the soil, his lands were sown with corn or planted with vines; the pastures were filled with horses and oxen, with sheep and flocks; and when Vatatzes presented to the empress a crown of diamonds and pearls, he informed her with a smile, that this precious ornament arose from the sale of the eggs of his immemorial poultry. The produce of his domain was applied to the maintenance of his palace and hospitals, the calls of dignity and benevolence: the lemon was still more useful than the revenue; the plough was restored to its ancient security and honour; and the nobles were taught to seek a sure and independent revenue from their estates, instead of adorning their splendid buggary by the oppression of the people, or (what is almost the same) by the favours of the court. The superfuous stock of corn and cattle was eagerly purchased by the Turks, with whom Vatatzes preserved a strict and sincere alliance; but he discouraged the importation of foreign manufactures, the costly silks of the East, and the curious labours of the Italian looms. The demands of nature and necessity, was he accustomed to say, are indispensable; but the influence of fashion may rise and sink as the breath of a monsarr; and both his precepts and example recommended simplicity of manners and the use of domestic industry. The education of youth and the revival of learning were the most serious objects of his care; and, without deciding the precedence, he pronounced with truth, that a prince and a philosopher are the two most exalted characters of human society. His first wife was Irene, the daughter of Theodore Lascaris, a woman more illustrious by her personal merit, the widder virtues of her sex, than by the blood of the Angeli and Comneni, that flowed in her veins, and transmitted the inheritance of the empire. After her death he was contracted to Anne, or Constans, a natural daughter of the emperor Frederic the Second; but at the bride he had not attained the years of puberty. Vatatzes placed in his solitary bed an Italian damsel of her train; and his amorous weakness bestowed on the crocubine the honours, though not the title, of lawful empress. Hisfacility was censured as a fugitive and damnable sin by the monks; and their rude invectives exercised and displayed the patience of the royal lover. A philosophic age may excuse a single vice, which was redeemed by a crowd of virtues; and in the review of his faults, and the more intemperate passions of Lascaris, the judgment of his contemporaries was softened by gratitude to the second founders of the empire. The slaves of the Latins, without law or peace, applauded the happiness of their brethren who had resumed their national freedom; and Vatatzes employed the laudable policy of convincing the Greeks of every dominion that it was their interest to be enrolled in the number of his subjects.
and to the courage of George Muradon, the
great domestic, who was equally distinguished
by the royal favour and public hatred. Since
their connection with the Latins, the names
and privileges of hereditary rank had insinuated
themselves into the Greek monarchy; and the
noble families that were provoked by the elevation
of a worthless favourite, to whose influence they
imputed the errors and calamities of the late
reign. In the first council, after the emperor’s
death, Muradon, from a lofty throne, pronounced
a laboured apology of his conduct and intentions;
his modesty was maintained by a magnanimous
assurance of esteem and fidelity; and his
most inveterate enemies were the least
averse to salute him as the guardian and saviour of
the Romans. Eight days were insufficient to
prepare the execution of the conspiracy. On the
ninth, the obsequies of the deceased monarch were
solemnized in the cathedral of Magnesia, an
Asiatic city, where he expired, on the banks of
the Haurus, and at the foot of Mount Sipylos.
The holy rites were interrupted by a sedition of
the guards; Muradon, his brothers, and his
adherents, were massacred at the foot of the
altar; and the absent patriarch was associated
with a new colleague, with Michael Palaeologus,
the most illustrious, in birth and merit, of the
Greek nobles.

Of those who are proud of their
ancestors, the far greatest part must be content with local or domestic
renown; and few there are who dare trust the
memorials of their family to the public annals of
their country. As early as the middle of
the eleventh century, the noble race of the Palaeo-
logi 11 stands high and conspicuous in the
Byzantine history; it was the valiant George
Palaeologus who placed the father of the Com-
nen on the throne; and his kinmen or descend-
ants continue, in each generation, to hold
the armies and councils of the state. The purple
was not dishonoured by their alliance; and they
had the law of succession, and female inheritance
strictly observed, the wife of Theodore Lascaris
must have yielded to her elder sister, the mother
of Michael Palaeologus, who afterwards raised
her family to the throne. In his person, the
splendour of birth was dignified by the merit of
the soldier and statesman: in his early youth he
was promoted to the office of constable or
commander of the French mercenaries; the private
expense of a day never exceeded three pieces of
gold; but his ambition was rapacious and pro-
fuse; and his gifts were doubled by the grace of
his conversation and manners. The love of
the soldiers and people excited the jealousy of the
court; and Michael thrice escaped from the
fears in which he was involved by his own
imprudence or that of his friends. I. Under the

2 Theodore Lascaris, the second Comnenus of John, Duke of
Thrace, was King of the Bulgarians, and his son Theodor
was named after him. The Bulgarians, however, were
under the dominion of the great Lascaris, who was the
successor of Theodore, and his son continued to reign in
Bulgaria. His queen was of the Lascarid dynasty, and her
name was Theodora. She was a daughter of Emperor
Michael Palaeologus, and her mother was a sister of
Emperor Constantine VIII. She was the granddaughter of
Emperor Romanus IV, and the great-granddaughter of
Emperor Michael VII. Her father was a soldier under
Emperor Nicephorus III, and her mother was a sister of
Emperor Michael VIII. She was a member of the Lascarid
dynasty, which had ruled in Bulgaria for several centuries.
But his innocence had been too unworthily treated, and his power was too strongly felt, to curb an aspiring subject in the fair field that was opened to his ambition. In the council after the death of Theodore, he was the first to pronounce, and the first to violate, the oath of allegiance to Michael; and so dexterous was his conduct, that he reaped the benefit, without incurring the guilt, or at least the reproach, of the subsequent massacre. In the choice of a regent, he balanced the interests and passions of the candidates; turned their envy and hatred from himself against each other, and forced every competitor to own, that, after his own claims, those of Palaeologus were best entitled to the preference. Under the title of Great Duke, he accepted or assumed, during a long minority, the active powers of government; the patriarch was a venerable name; and the fatuous nobles were seduced, or appeased, by the ascendancy of his genius. The fruits of the economy of Vatases were deposited in a strong castle on the banks of the Hermus, in the custody of the faithful Varangians: the constable retained his command or influence over the foreign troops; he employed the guards to possess the treasure, and the treasure to corrupt the guards; and whatsoever might be the abuse of the public money, his character was above the suspicion of private avarice. By himself, or by his emissaries, he strove to persuade every rank of subjects, that their own prosperity would rise in just proportion to the establishment of his authority. The weight of taxes was suspended, the perpetual theme of popular complaint; and he prohibited the trials by the ordeal and judicial combat. These baronial institutions were already abolished or undermined in France and England; and the appeal, to the sword offended the sense of a civilized, and the temper of an unwarlike, people. For the future maintenances of their wives and children, the veterans were grateful; the priest and the philosopher applauded his ardent zeal for the advancement of religion and learning; and his vague promise of rewarding merit was applied by every candidate to his own hopes. Conscious of the influence of the clergy, Michael successfully laboured to secure the suffrages of that powerful order. Their expensive journey from Nice to Magnesia afforded a decent and ample presence; the leading prelates were tempted by the liberality of his nocturnal visits; and the incorruptible patriarch was flattered by the homage of his new colleague, who led his men by the bridle into the town, and removed in a respectful distance the impropriety of the crowd. Without renouncing his title by royal descent, Palaeologus encouraged a free discussion among the advantages of life under the proof of evidence, and this by his example and influence, and this audience, when he was present, was not merely an audience, but an audience to the substance of the learned assembly, in the English sense, and it was visited by the princes and by the most illustrious men of the land.

But the issue of the question was not to be an occasion of this proceeding. If the authorship respecting the doubtful reference, and the commission in the name of a learned person; a matter of so much importance, or a learned man of such celebrity, it might be better left to the consideration of the learned. But the case is not with his honor, and his conduct must be asked.
elective monarchy; and his adherents asked, with the insolence of triumph, what patient would trust his health, or what merchant would abandon his vessel, to the horrid skill of a physician or a pilot? The youth of the emperor, and the impending dangers of a minority, required the support of a mature and experienced guardian; of an associate raised above the envy of his equals, and invested with the name and prerogatives of royalty. For the interest of the prince and people, without any selfish views for himself or his family, the Great Duke consented to guard and instruct the son of Theodora; but he shirked for the happy moment when he might restore to his former hands the administration of his patrimony, and enjoy the blessings of a private station. He was first invested with the title and prerogatives of deacon, which bestowed the purple ornaments, and the second place in the Roman monarchy. It was afterwards agreed that John and Michael should be proclaimed as joint emperors, and raised on the buckler, but that the pre-eminence should be reserved for the birthright of the former. A mutual league of amity was pledged between the royal partners; and in case of a rupture, the subjects were bound by their oath of allegiance to declare themselves against the aggressor; an ambiguous name, the seed of discord and civil war. Palaeologus was content; but on the day of the coronation, and in the cathedral of Nice, his zealous adherents most vehemently urged the just priority of his age and merit. The unwise alliance was studied by postponing to a more convenient opportunity the coronation of John Lascaris; and he walked with a slight diabetes in the train of his guardian, who alone received the Imperial crown from the hands of the patriarch. It was not without extreme reluctance that Arsenius abandoned the cause of his pupil; but the Vassalians brandished their battle-axes; a sign of ascent was extorted from the trembling youth; and some voices were heard, that the life of a child should no longer impede the settlement of the nation. A full harvest of honours and employments was distributed among his friends by the grateful Palaeologus. In his own family, he created a despot and two suburbans; Alexius Strategopoulos was decorated with the title of Caesar; and that veteran commander soon repaid the obligation, by restoring Constantinople to the Greek emperor.

It was in the second year of his reign, while he resided in the palace and gardens of Nymphaea, in near Smyrna, that the first messenger arrived at the dead of night; and the stupendous intelligence was imparted to Michael, after he had been gently waked by the tender precaution of his sister Eulogia. The man was unknown or obscure; he produced no letters from the victorious Caesar; nor could it easily be credited, after the defeat of Vataces and the recent failure of Palaeologus himself, that the capital had been surprised by a detachment of eight hundred soldiers. As an hostage, the unhappy author was confined, with the assurance of death or an ample recompense; and the court was left some hours in the anxiety of hope and fear, till the messengers of Alexis arrived with the authentic intelligence, and displayed the trophies of the conquest, the sword and sceptre, the banners and hornets, of the usurper Baldwin, which he had dropped in his precipitate flight. A general assembly of the bishops, emperors, and nobles, was immediately convened, and never perhaps was an event received with more heartfelt and universal joy. In a studied oration, the new sovereign of Constantinople congratulated his own and the public fortune. "There was a time," said he, "a far distant time, when the Roman empire extended to the Euphrates, the Tigris, and the confines of Ethiopia. After the loss of the provinces our capital itself, in these last and calamitous days, has been wrested from our hands by the barbarians of the West. From the lowest ebb, the tide of prosperity has again returned in our favour; but our prosperity was that of fugitives and exiles; and when we were asked, which was the country of the Romans, we indicated with a blush the whole of the globe and the quarter of the heavens. The divine Providence has now restored to our arms the city of Constantinople, the sacred seat of religion and empire; and it will depend on our valour and conduct to reoter this important acquisition the pledge and omen of future victories." So eager was the impatience of the prince and people, that Michael made his triumphal entry into Constantinople only twenty days after the expulsion of the Latins. The golden gate was thrown open at his approach; the devout conqueror dismounted from his horse; and a miraculous image of Mary the Conqueress was borne before him, that the divine Virgin in person might appear to conduct him to the temple of her Son, the cathedral of St. Sophia. But after the first transport of devotion and pride, he sighed at the dreary prospect of solitude and ruin. The palace was defiled with smoke and dirt, and the gross indifference of the Franks; whole streets had been consumed by fire, or were decayed by the injuries of time; the sacred and profane edifices were stripped of their ornaments; and, as if they were conscious of their approaching exile, the industry of the Latins had been confined to the work of pillage and destruction. Trade had expired under the pressure of anarchy and distress, and the numbers of inhabitants had decreased with the opulence of the city. It was the first care of the Greek monarch to reanimate the nobles in the palaces of their fathers; and the houses or the ground which they occupied were restored to the families that
could exhibit a legal right of inheritance. But the far greater part was extinct or lost; the vacant property had devolved to the lord; he repeopled Constantinople by a liberal invitation to the provinces; and the brave colonists were seated in the capital which had been recovered by their arms. The French barons and the principal families had retired with their emperor; but the patient and humble crowd of Latius was attached to the country, and indifferent to the change of masters. Instead of banishing the factories of the Excise, Venetians, and Genoese, the prudent conqueror accepted their oath of allegiance, encouraged their industry, confirmed their privileges, and allowed them to live under the jurisdiction of their provincial magistrates. Of these nations, the Venetians and Genoese preserved their respective quarters in the city; but the services and power of the Genoese resided at the same time the gratitude and the jealousy of the Greeks. Their independent colony was first planted at the sea-port town of Heraclea in Thrace. They were speedily recalled, and settled in the exclusive possession of the suburb of Galata, an advantageous post, in which they revived the commerce, and insulted the majesty, of the Byzantine empire.\[31\]

The recovery of Constantinople was celebrated as the era of a new empire: the conquest, alone, and by the right of the sword, renewed his coronation in the church of St. Sophia; and the name and house of John Lascaris, his pupil and lawful sovereign, continued unstained. But his claims still lived in the minds of the people; and the royal youth was soon attached the years of manhood and ambition. By fear or conscious, Palaeologus was restrained from aiming his hands in injustice and royal blood; but the anxiety of an usurper and a parent moved him to secure his throne, by one of those imperfect crimes so familiar to the modern Greeks. The loss of sight incapacitated the young prince for the active business of the world: instead of the brutal violence of tearing out his eyes, the visual nerve was destroyed by the intense glare of a red-hot basin; and John Lascaris was removed to a distant castle, where he spent many years in privacy and oblivion. Such cool and deliberate guilt may seem incompatible with remorse; but if Michael could trust the mercy of Heaven, he was not inaccessible to the reproaches and vengeance of mankind, which he provoked by cruelty and treason. His cruelty imposed on a servile court the duties of applause or silence; but the clergy had a right to speak in the name of their invisible master; and their holy legions were led by a prelate, whose character was above the temptations of hope or fear. After a short abdication of his dignity, Asenius [32] had con- 

[31] See Franksius (t. 1. 159-194), Adamantius (3, 315, 316) for the jurisdiction of the subject Latins, De- 

[32] See Franksius (t. 1. 321-322), Adamantius (3, 315, 316) for the jurisdiction of the subject Latins, De- 

[33] See Franksius (t. 1. 321-322), Adamantius (3, 315, 316) for the jurisdiction of the subject Latins, De-
taken of the treasures of the church; boasted, that his sole riches, three pieces of gold, had been earned by transcribing the psalms; continued to assert the freedom of his mind; and denied, with his last breath, the pardon which was implored by the royal sufferer. After some delay, Gregory, bishop of Adrianople, was translated to the Byzantine throne; but his authority was found insufficient to support the abdication of the emperor; and Joseph, a revered monk, was substituted to that important function. This edifying scene was represented in the presence of the senate and people; at the end of six years, the humble penitent was restored to the communion of the faithful; and humanity will rejoice, that a sufferer treated by the captive Lasarius was stipulated as a proof of his remorse. But the spirit of Arsenius still survived in a powerful faction of the monks and clergy, who persevered above forty-eight years in an obstinate schism. Their scruples were treated with tenderness and respect by Michael and his son; and the renunciation of the Arsenites was the serious labour of the church and state. In the confidence of fanaticism, they had proposed to try their cause by a miracle; and when the two papers, that contained their own and the adverse cause, were cast into a fiery braser, they expected that the Catholic verity would be respected by the flames. Alas! the two papers were indiscriminately consumed, and this unforeseen accident produced the union of a day, and renewed the quarrel of an age. The final treaty displayed the victory of the Arsenites: the clergy obtained during forty days from all ecclesiastical functions; a slight penance was imposed on the laity; the body of Arsenius was deposited in the sanctuary; and in the name of the departed saint, the prince and people were released from the sin of their fathers.

The establishment of his family was the motive, or at least the pretense, of the censure of Palaeologus; and he was impatient to confirm the succession, by sharing with his eldest son the honours of the purple. Amphilochius, afterwards summoned the Elder, was proclaimed and crowned emperor of the Romans, in the fifteenth year of his age; and, from the first era of a profuse and inglorious reign, he held that august title nine years as the colleague, and fifty as the successor, of his father. Michael himself, had he died in a private station, would have been thought more worthy of the empire; and the assaults of his temporal and spiritual enemies left him few moments to labour for his own fame or the happiness of his subjects. He wrote from the Franks several of the noblest islands of the Archipelago, Lesbos, Chios, and Rhodes: his brother Constantine was sent to command in Malvasia and Sparta; and the eastern side of the Morea, from Argos and Nafplio to Cape Tamanus, was repossessed by the Greeks. This effusion of Christian blood was loudly condemned by the patriarch; and the insolent priest presumed to interpose his fears and scruples between the arms of the conquer; but in the prosecution of these western conquests, the countries beyond the Hellespont were left naked to the Turks; and their preparations verified the prophecy of a dying senator, that the recovery of Constantinople would be the ruin of Asia. The victories of Michael were achieved by his lieutenants; his sword rested in the palace; and, in the transactions of the emperor with the popes and the king of Naples, his political arts were stained with cruelty and fraud.

I. The Vatican was the most natural refuge of a Latin emperor, who had been driven from his throne; and pope Urban the Fourth appeared to pity the misfortunes, and vindicate the cause, of the fugitive Baldwin. A crusade, with plenary indulgence, was preached by his command against the schismatic Greeks; he communicated their affairs and adherents; solicited Louis the Ninth in favour of his kinsman; and demanded a tenth of the ecclesiastical revenues of France and England for the service of the holy war. The subtle Greek, who watched the rising tempest of the West, attempted to suspend or soothe the hostility of the pope, by suppliant embassies and respectful letters; but he insisted that the establishment of peace must prepare the reconciliation and obedience of the Eastern church. The Roman court could not be deceived by so gross an artifice; and Michael was admonished, that the repentance of the sun should precede the forgiveness of the father; and that faith (an ambiguous word) was the only basis of friendship and alliance. After a long and affected delay, the approach of danger, and the importunity of Gregory the Teuth, compelled him to enter as a more serious negotiation: he alleged the example of the great Venetians; and the Greek clergy, who understood the intentions of their prince, were not astonied by the first steps of reconciliation and respect. But when he pressed the conclusion of the treaty, they sternly declared, that the Latins, though not in name, were heretics in fact, and that he despised those strangers as the vilest and most despisable portion of the human race. It was the task of the emperor to persuade, to corrupt, to intimidate, the most popular ecclesiastics, to gain the vote of each individual, and alternately to urge the arguments of Christian charity and the public welfare. The taxes of the fathers and the claims of the Franks were balanced in the theological and political scale;
and without approving the addition to the Nicene creed, the most moderate were taught to confess, that the two hostile propositions of proceeding from the Father by the Son, and of proceeding from the Father and the Son, might be reduced to a safe and Catholic sense. The supremacy of the pope was a doctrine more easy to conceive, but more painful to acknowledge; yet Michael represented to his monks and prelates, that they might submit to name the Roman bishop as the first of the patriarchs; and that their distance and discretion would guard the liberties of the Eastern church from the mischievous consequences of the right of appeal. He protested that he would sacrifice his life and empire rather than yield the smallest point of orthodox faith or national independence; and this declaration was sealed and ratified by a golden bull. The patriarch Joseph withdrew to a monastery, to resign or resume his throne, according to the event of the treaty; the letters of union and obedience were subscribed by the emperor, his son Andronicus, and thirty-five archbishops and metropolitans, with their respective synods; and the episcopal list was multiplied by many illocoses which were annihilated under the yoke of the infidels. An embassy was composed of some trusty ministers and prelates; they embarked for Italy, with rich ornaments and rare perfumes, for the altar of St. Peter; and their secret orders authorized and recommended a boundless compliance. They were received in the general council of Lyons, by pope Gregory the Tyth, at the head of five hundred bishops. He embraced with tears his long-lost and repentant children; accepted the oath of the emansarces, who abjured the schism in the name of the two emperors; adorned the pedagis with the ring and mitre, chanted in Greek and Latin the Nicene creed with the addition of the innovation; and rejoined in the union of the East and West, which had been reserved for his reign. To consummate this pious work, the Byzantine deputies were speedily followed by the pope's munition; and their instruction discloses the policy of the Vatian, which could not be satisfied with the vain title of supremacy. After viewing the temper of the prince and people, they were enjoined to absolve the schismatic clergy, who should subscribe and swear their abjuration and obedience; to establish in all the churches the use of the perfect creed; to prepare the entrance of a cardinal legate, with the full powers and dignity of his office; and to instruct the emperor in the advantages which he might derive from the temporal protection of the Roman pontiff.

But they found a country without a friend, a nation in which the names of Rome and Union were pronounced with abhorrence. The patriarch Joseph was indeed removed; his place was filled by Voces, an ecclesiastic of learning and moderation; and the emperor was still urged by the same motives, to persevere in the same professions. But in his private language, Palæologus affected to deplore the pride, and to blame the innovations, of the Latins; and while he defended his character by this double hypocrisy, he justified and punished the opposition of his subjects. By the joint suffrage of the new and the ancient House, a sentence of excommunication was pronounced against the obstinate schismatics; the preserved of the church were executed by the sword of Michael; on the failure of persuasion, he tried the arguments of princes and exiles, of whipping and mutilation; these touch-stones, says an historian, of rewards and the brave. Two Greeks still reigned in Eutalia, Epirus, and Thessaly, with the appellation of despots; they had yielded to the sovereignty of Constantinople, but they rejected the chains of the Roman pontiff, and supported their refusal by successful arms. Under their protection, the fugitive monks and bishops assembled in hostile synods; and restored the name of heretic with the galling addition of apostate; the prince of Trebizond was tempted to assume the surfeit title of emperor; and even the Latins of Negropont, Thessos, Athens, and the Morea, forgot the merits of the convert, to join with open and clandestine aid, the enemies of Palæologus. His favourite generals, of his own blood and family, successively deserted, or betrayed, the sacrilegious trust. His sister Eulogia, a niece, and two female cousins, conspired against him; and another niece, Mary queen of Bulgaria, negotiated his ruin with the sultan of Egypt; and, in the public eye, their treason was consoled as the most sublime virtue. To the pope's munition, who urged the consummation of the work, Palæologus exposed a naked revival of all that he had done and suffered for their sake. They were assured that the guilty sectaries, of both sexes and every rank, had been deprived of their honours, their fortunes, and their liberty; a spreading list of confiscation and punishment, which involved many persons, the desert to the emperor, or the best deserving of his favour. They were conducted to the prison, to behold four princes of the royal blood chained in the four corners, and shaking their fetters in an agony of grief and rage. Two of these captives were afterwards released; the one by submission, the other by death: but the obstinacy of their two companions was chastised by the loss of their eyes; and the Greeks, the least adverse to the union, deplored that cruel and insanguine tragedy.
hypocrisy of Michael, which was prompted only by political motives, must have forced him to hate himself, to despise his followers, and to esteem and envy the rebel champions by whom he was defeated and despised. While his vices were abhorred at Constantinople, at Rome his vices were arraigned, and his sincerity suspected; till at length pope Martin the Fourth excluded the Greek emperor from the pale of a church, into which he was striving to reduce a schismatic people. No sooner had the tyrant expired, than the union was dissolved, and adjusted by unanimous consent: the churches were purified; the penitents were reconciled; and his son Andronicus, after keeping the see and errors of his youth, most piously denied his father the burial of a prince and a Christian.37

II. In the distress of the Latins, the walls and towers of Constantinople had fallen to decay; they were restored and fortified by the policy of Michael, who deposited a plentiful store of corn and salt provisions, to sustain the siege which he might hourly expect from the resentment of the Western powers. Of these, the sovereign of the two Sicilies was the most formidable neighbour; but as long as they were possessed by Mainfroy, the bastard of Frederic the Second, his monarchy was the buttark, rather than the annoyance, of the Eastern empire. The resumer, though a brave and active prince, was sufficiently employed in the defence of his throne; his prostration by successive popes had separated Mainfroy from the common cause of the Latins; and the forces that might have besieged Constantinople were detained in a crusade against the domestic enemy of Rome. The prize of her avenger, the crown of the two Sicilies, was won and worn by the brother of St. Louis, by Charles count of Anjou and Provence, who led the chivalry of France on this holy expedition.38 The disposition of his Christian subjects compelled Mainfroy to enlist a colony of Saracens whose father had planted in Apulia; and this evil success will explain the defection of the Catholic hero, who rejected all terms of accommodation. "Bread this message," said Charles, "that God and the sword are inimics between us, and that he shall either send me to paradise, or I will send him to the pit of hell." The armies met, and though I am ignorant of Mainfroy's doom in the other world, in this he lost his friends, his kingdom, and his life, in the bloody battle of Benevento. Naples and Sicily were immediately peopled with a warlike race of French nobles; and their aspiring leaders embraced the future conqueror of Africa, Greece, and Palestine. The most auspicious regions might point his first arms against the Byzantine empire; and Palaeologus, deficient of his own strength, repeatedly appealed from the ambition of Charles to the humanity of St. Louis, who still preserved a just ascendant over the mind of his ferocious brother. For a while the attention of this brother was confined at home by the invasion of Conradin, the last heir of the Imperial house of Swabia; but the Impeissu boy sunk in the imperial conflict; and his execution on a public scaffold taught the rivals of Charles to tremble for their Imperial as well as their dominions. A second empire was obtained by the last crusade of St. Louis to the African coast; and the double motive of interest and duty urged the king of Naples to assist, with his powers and his presence, that holy enterprise. The death of St. Louis inflicted him from the importunity of a virtuous tenant; the king of Tunis confessed himself the tributary and vassal of the crown of Sicily; and the boldest of the French knights were free to enlist under his banner against the Greek empire. A treaty and a marriage united his interest with the house of Courtenay; his daughter Beatrix was promised to Philip, son and heir of the emperor Baldwin; a pension of six hundred ounces of gold was allowed for his maintenance; and his generous father distributed among his allies the kingdoms and provinces of the East, reserving only Constantinople, and one day's journey round the city, for the Imperial domain.39 In this perilous moment Palaeologus was the most eager to subscribe the creed, and improve the protection, of the Roman pontiff; who assumed, with propriety and weight, the character of an angel of peace, the common father of the Christians. By his voice, the sword of Charles was chined in the seabbard, and the Greek ambassadors beheld him, in the pope's antechamber, birting his ivory sceptre in a transport of fury, and deeply resenting the refusal to enfranchise and consecrate his arms. He appears to have respected the disinterested mediation of Gregory the Tenth; but Charles was inimically disposed by the pride and partiality of Nicholas the Third; and his attachment to his kindred, the Urshia family, alienated the most strenuous champion from the service of the church. The hostile league against the Greeks, of Philip the Latin emperor, the king of the two Sicilies, and the republic of Venice, was ripened into execution; and the election of Martin the Fourth, a French pope, gave a sanction to the cause. Of the allies, Philip supplied his name; Martin, a bull of eccomunicaclion; the Venetians, a squadron of forty galleys; and the formidable powers of Charles consisted of forty galleys, ten thousand men at arms, a numerous body of infantry, and a fleet of more than three hundred ships and transports. A distant day was appointed for assembling this mighty force in the harbour of Brindisi; and a previous attempt was risked with a detachment of three hundred knights, who invaded Albania, and besieged the fortress of

---

37 The last specimen of the art of time, the same will and across the wall of the Byzantine empire was the death of Constantine and the story.
38 The last specimen of the art of time, the same will and across the wall of the Byzantine empire was the death of Constantine and the story.
39 The last specimen of the art of time, the same will and across the wall of the Byzantine empire was the death of Constantine and the story.
Belgrade. Their defeat might amuse with a triumph the vanity of Constantinople; but the more sagacious Michael, despairing of his arms, depended on the effects of a conspiracy; on the secret workings of a rat, who gnawed the bow-string of the Sicilian tyrant.

Among the proscribed adherents of the house of Swabia, John of Procida forfeited a small island of that name in the Bay of Naples. His birth was noble, but his education was learned; and in the poverty of exile, he was relieved by the practice of physic, which he had studied in the school of Salerno. Fortune had left him nothing but war, except life; and to despise life is the first qualification of a rebel. Procida was endowed with the art of negotiation, to enforce his reasons, and disgrace his motives; and in his various transactions with nations and men, he could persuade any party that he laboured solely for their interest. The new kingdom of Charles was accepted by every species of fiscal and military oppression; and the lives and fortunes of his Italian subjects were sacrificed to the gratification of his ambition and the licentiousness of his followers. The hatred of Naples was expressed by his presence; but the looser government of his adherents excited the contempt, as well as the aversion, of the Sicilians: the island was roosed to a sense of freedom by the eloquence of Procida; and he displayed to every heart his privy interest in the common cause. In the confidence of foreign aid, he successively visited the courts of the Greek emperor, and of Peter king of Arragon, who possessed the maritime counties of Calabria and Catalania. To the assistance of Peter a crown was presented, which he might justly claim by his marriage with the sister of Mainz; and by the dying voice of Conradin, who from the scaffold had cast a ring to his heir and successor. Palagonia was easily persuaded to direct his views to a foreign war by a rebellion at home; and a Greek subsidy of twenty-five thousand ounces of gold was most profitably applied to arm a Catalan fleet, which sailed under an holy banner to the spacious attack of the Sarg was of Africa. In the disguise of a monk or beggar, the indefatigable missionary of revolt flew from Constantinople to Rome, and from Sicily to Sardinia; the treaty was sealed with the signet of pope Nicholas himself; the enemy of Charles; and his deed of gift transferred the feuds of St. Peter from the house of Anjou to that of Arragon. So widely diffused and so freely circulated, the secret was not discovered above two years with impeachable discretion; and each of the conspirators exulted the maxim of Peter, that declared that he would cut off his left hand if it were conscious of the intentions of his right. The mine was prepared with deep and dangerous artifice; but it may be questioned, whether the instant explosion of Palermo were the effect of accident or design.

On the vigil of Easter, a procession of the disabled citizens visited a church without the walls; and a noble damsel was rudely insulted by a French soldier. The ravisher was instantly punished with death; and if the people were at first scattered by a military force, their numbers and fury prevailed: the conspirators seized the opportunity; the flame spread over the island; and eight thousand French were exterminated in a prompt and sumptuous massacre, which has obtained the name of the Sicilian Vespers. From every city the banners of freedom and the church were displayed; the revolt was inspired by the presence or the soul of Procida; and Peter of Arragon, who sailed from the African coast to Palermo, was saluted as the king and saviour of the isle. By the rebellion of a people on whom he had so long trampled with impunity, Charles was astonished and confounded; and in the first agony of grief and devotion, he was heard to exclaim, "O God! if thou hast decreed to humble me, grant me at least a gentle and gradual descent from the pinnacle of greatness!" His fleet and army, which already guarded the seas-ports of Italy, were hastily recalled from the service of the Greek war; and the situation of Messina exposed that town to the first storm of his revenge. Fleeing in themselves, and yet hopeless of foreign succour, the citizens would have repented, and submitted on the assurance of full pardon and their ancient privileges. But the pride of the monarch was already rekindled; and the most servile extortions of the legates could extort no more than he promised, that he would forgive the remainder, after the capture of eight hundred rebels had been yielded to his destroyer. The despair of the Messinians renewed their courage. Peter of Arragon approached to their relief; and his rival was driven back by the failure of provision and the terrors of the equinox to the Calabrian shore. At the same moment, the Catalian admiral, the famous Roger de Lorris, swept the channel with an invincible squadron: the French fleet, more numerous in transports than in galleys, was either burnt or destroyed; and the same blow assured the independence of Sicily and the safety of the Greek empire. A few days before his death, the emperor Michael rejoiced in the full of all enemies whom he hated and exterminated; and perhaps he might be content with the popular judgment, that had they not been matched with each other, Constantinople and Italy must have succumbed.
speedily have obeyed the same master. From this dalmates moment, the life of Charles was a series of misfortunes; his capital was insulted, his son was made prisoner, and he sunk into the grave without recovering the isle of Sicily, which, after a war of twenty years, was finally severed from the throne of Naples, and transferred, as an independent kingdom, to a younger branch of the house of Aragon.

I shall not, I trust, be accused of superstitious; but I must remark that, even in this world, the natural order of events will sometimes afford the strong appearances of moral redistribution. The first Palaeologus had saved his empire by involving the kingdoms of the West in rebellion and blood; and from these seeds of discord uprose a generation of iron men, who assaulted and endangered the empire of his son. In modern times, our debts and taxes are the secret poison, which still corrodes the bosom of peace; but in the weak and disorderly government of the middle ages, it was agitated by the present evil of the disbanded armies. Too idle to work, too proud to beg, the mercenaries were accosted to a life of rapine; they could rob with more dignity and effect under a banner and a chief; and the sovereign, to whom their service was useless, and their presence important, endeavored to discharge the current on some neighbouring countries. After the peace of Sicily, many thousands of Genoese, Catalans, &c., who had fought, by sea and land, under the standard of Arjoe or Aragon, were blended into one nation by the resemblance of their manners and interest. They heard that the Greek provinces of Asia were invaded by the Turks; they resolved to share the harvest of pay and plunder; and Frederic king of Sicily most liberally contributed the means of their departure. In a warfare of twenty years, a ship, or a camp, was become their country; arms were their sole profession and property; valor was the only virtue which they knew; their women had imbibed the fearless temper of their lovers and husbands; it was reported, that, with a stroke of their broadsword, the Catalans could cleave a boneyard and an horse; and the report itself was a powerful weapon. Roger de Flor was the most popular of their chiefs; and his personal merit overshadowed the dignity of his prouder rivals of Aragon. The offspring of a marriage between a German gentleman of the court of Frederic the Second and a damsel of Brindisi, Roger was successively a templar, an apostate, a pirate, and at length the richest and most powerful admiral of the Mediterranean. He sailed from Messina to Constantinople, with eighteen galleys, four great ships, and eight thousand adventurers; and his previous treaty was faithfully accomplished by Andronicus the elder, who accepted with joy and terror this formidable succour. A palace was allotted for his reception, and a niece of the emperor was given in marriage to the valiant stranger, who was immediately created great duke or admiral of Romania. After a distant siege, he transported his troops over the Propontis, and boldly led them against the Turks in two bloody battles thirty thousand of the Muslims were slain; he raised the siege of Philadelphia, and deserved the name of the deliverer of Asia. But after a short season of prosperity, the cloud of slavery and ruin again burst on that unhappy province. The inhabitants escaped (says a Greek historian) from the smoke into the flames; and the hostility of the Turks was less pernicious than the friendship of the Catalans. The lives and fortunes which they had rescued, they considered as their own; the willing or reluctant mail was saved from the rage of circumcision for the embrace of a Christian soldier; the execution of fines and supplies was enforced by licentious rapine and arbitrary executions; and, on the resistance of Magnesia, the great duke besieged a city of the Roman empire. These disorders he excused by the necessities and pangs of a victorious army; nor would his own authority or person have been spared had he dared to punish his faithful followers, who were defrauded of the just and convenient price of their services. The threats and complaints of Andronicus disclosed the nakedness of the empire. His golden bull had invited no more than five hundred horse and a thousand foot soldiers; 39 the crowds of volunteers, who migrated to the East, had been enlisted and fed by his spontaneous bounty. While his bravest allies were content with three byzants or pieces of gold, for their monthly pay, an oinum, or even two ounces of gold were assigned to the Catalans, whose annual pension would thus amount to near an hundred pounds sterling; one of whose chiefs had modestly rated at three hundred thousand crowns the value of his former mercies; and above a million had been assessed from the treasury for the maintenance of these six mercenary navies. A cruel tax had been imposed on the corn of the husbandman; one third was rechanced from the salaries of the public officers; and the standard of the coin was so shamefully debased, that of the four and twenty parts only five were of pure gold. At the summons of the emperor, Roger evacuated a province which no longer supplied the materials of rapine; but he refused to disperse his troops, and while his style was respectful, his conduct was independent and hostile. He protested, that if the emperor should march against him, he would advance forty paces to kiss the ground before
him, but in rising from this prostrate attitude Roger had a life and sword at the service of his friends. The great duke of Roussillon condescended to accept the title and ornaments of Caesar; but he rejected the new proposal of the government of Asia, with a subsidy of corn and money, on condition that he should reduce his troops to the harmless number of three thousand men. Assassination is the last resource of cowards. The Caesar was tempted to visit the royal residence of Adriaopolis: in the apartment, and before the eyes of the empress, he was stabbed by the Alani guards; and, though the deed was imputed to their private revenge, his countrymen, who dealt at Constantinople in the security of peace, were involved in the same proscription by the prince or people. The loss of their leader intimidated the crowd of adventurers, who hasted the sails of flight, and were soon scattered round the coasts of the Mediterranean. But a veteran band of fifteen hundred Catalans, of French, stood firm in the strong fortress of Gallipoli on the Hellespont, displayed the banners of Arragon, and offered to revenge and justify their chief by an equal combat of ten or an hundred warriors. Instead of accepting this bold defiance, the emperor Michael, the son and colleague of Andronicus, resolved to oppress them with the weight of multitudes; every nerve was strained to form an army of thirteen thousand horse and thirty thousand foot; and the Propontis was covered with the ships of the Greeks and Genoese. In two battles by sea and land, these mighty forces were encountered and overthrown by the despair and discipline of the Catalans; the young emperor fled to the palace; and an insufficient guard of light horse was left for the protection of the open country. Victory removed the hopes and numbers of the adventurers; every nation was blinded under the name and standard of the great company; and three thousand Turkish prisoners deserted from the Imperial service to join the military association. In the possession of Gallipoli, the Catalans intercepted the trade of Constantinople and the Black Sea, while they read their devotions on either side of the Hellespont over the confines of Europe and Asia. To prevent their approach, the greatest part of the Byzantine territory was laid waste by the Greeks themselves; the peasants and their cattle retired into the city; and myriads of sheep and oxen, for which neither place nor food could be procured, were irresistible slaughtered on the spot. Four times the emperor Andronicus sued for peace; and four times he was indignantly repulsed, till the want of provisions, and the discord of the chief, compelled the Catalans to evacuate the banks of the Hellespont and the neighbourhood of the capital. After their separation from the Turks, the remains of the great company pursued their march through Macedonia and Thessaly, to seek a new establishment in the heart of Greece. 33

After some ages of oblivion, Greece was awakened to new misfortunes by the arms of the Latins. In the two hundred and fifty years between the first and the last conquest of Constantinople, that venerable land was disputed by a multitude of petty tyrants; without the comforts of freedom and genius, her ancient cities were again plunged in foreign and intestine war; and, if servitude be preferable to marches, they might repose with joy under the Turkish yoke. I shall not pursue the obscure and various dynasties, that rose and fell on the continent or in the isles; but our silence on the fate of Artaxius 34 would argue a strange ingratitude to the first and purest school of liberal science and amusement. In the partition of the empire, the principality of Athens and Thessaloniac was assigned to Otto de la Roche, a noble warrior of Burgundy, 35 with the title of Great Duke, 36 which the Latins understood in their own sense, and the Greeks more foolishly derived from the age of Constantine. 34

Otto followed the standard of the marquis of Montfort, the ample state which he acquired by a miracle of conduct or fortune, 35 was peaceably inherited by his son and two grandsons, till the family, though not the nation, was changed, by the marriage of an heiress into the elder branch of the house of Brienne. The son of that marriage, Walter de Brienne, succeeded to the duchy of Athens; and, with the aid of some Catalan mercenaries, whom he invested with fees, reduced above thirty castles of the vassal or neighbouring lords. But when he was informed of the approach and ambition of the great company, he collected a force of seven hundred knights, six thousand four hundred horse, and eight thousand foot, and boldly met them on the banks of the river Cophasias in Beozia. The Catalans amounted to no more than three thousand five hundred horse, and four thousand foot; but the deficiency of numbers was compensated by stratagem and order. They formed round their camp an artificial inundation; the duke and his knights advanced without fear or precaution on the verdant meadow; their horses plunged into the bog; and he was cut in pieces, with the greatest part of the French cavalry. His family and nation were expelled; and his son Walter de Brienne, the titular duke of Athens, the tyrant of Thessaly, and the constable of France, lost his life in the field of Poitiers. Attica and Boeotia were the rewards of the victorious Catalans; they mark...
ried the widows and daughters of the slain; and during fourteen years, the great company was the terror of the Greek states. Their factions drove them to acknowledge the sovereignty of the house of Arragon; and during the remainder of the fourteenth century, Athens, as a government or an appanage, was successively bestowed by the kings of Italy. After the French and Catalans, the third dynasty was that of the Acacii, a family, plebeian at Florence, potent at Naples, and sovereign in Greece. Athens, which they embellished with new buildings, became the capital of a state that extended over Thessaly, Argos, Corinth, Delphi, and a part of Thessaly; and their reign was finally terminated by Mahomet the Second, who strangled the last duke, and educated his sons in the discipline and religion of the seraglio.

At this period, the shadow of her former self, still contains about eight or ten thousand inhabitants; of these, three fourths are Greeks in religion and language; and the Turks, who compose the remainder, have relaxed, in their intercourse with the citizens, somewhat of the pride and gravity of their national character. The olive-tree, the gift of Minerva, flourishes in Athens; nor has the honey of Mount Hymettus lost any part of its exquisite flavour: but the languid trade is monopolized by strangers; and the agriculture of a barren land is abandoned to the Thesean Walashians. The Athenians are still distinguished by the sobriety and acuteness of their understandings; but these qualities, unless embittered by freedom, and enlightened by study, will degenerate into a low and selfish cunning: and it is a proverbial saying of the country, "From the Jews of Thessalonica, the Turks of Negropont, and the Greeks of Athens, good Lord deliver us!" This artful people has studied the tyranny of the Turkish bashaws, by an expedient which alleviates their servitude and aggravates their shame. About the middle of the last century, the Athenians chose for their protector the Kazar Aga, or chief black eunuch of the seraglio. This Asiatic slave, who possesses the sultan's ear, condescends to accept the tribute of thirty thousand crowns: his lieutenant, the Waywode, whom he annually confirms, may reserve for his own about five or six thousand more; and such is the policy of the citizens, that they seldom fail to remove and punish an oppressive governor. Their private differences are decided by the archbishop, one of the richest prelates of the Greek church, since he possesses a revenue of one thousand pounds sterling; and by a tribunal of the eight geronti or elders, chosen in the eight quarters of the city; the noble families cannot trace their pedigrees above three hundred years; but their principal members are distinguished by a grave demeanour, a fine cap, and the lofty appellation of archeus. By some, who delight in the contrast, the modern language of Athens is represented as the most corrupt and barbarous of the seventy dialects of the vulgar Greek: this picture is too darkly coloured; but it would not be easy, in the country of Plato and Demosthenes, to find a reader, or a copy, of their works. The Athenians walk with apparent indifference among the glorious ruins of antiquity; and such is the drossment of their character, that they are incapable of admiring the genius of their predecessors."

CHAP. LXIII.

CIVIL WARS, AND RUIN OF THE GREEK EMPIRE.

Regency of Androniaces, the Elder and Younger, and John Palaeologus. - Reigns of Androniaces, the Elder and Younger, and John Palaeologus. - Establishment of a Genoese Colony at Perus and Catan. - Their Wars with the Empire and City of Constantinople.

The long reign of Androniaces, the Elder is chiefly memorable by frequent civil disputes; the invasion of the Catalans, and the rise of the Ottoman power. He is celebrated as the most learned and virtuous prince of the age; but such virtue, and such learning, contributed neither to the perfection of the individual, nor to the happiness of society. A slave of the most abject superstition, he was surrounded on all sides by visible and invisible enmities; nor were the flames of bulk less dreadful to his fancy than those of a Catalan or Turkish war. Under the reign of the Palaeologus, the choice of the patriarch was the most important business of the state; the hands of the Greek church were ambitious and fanatical monks; and their vices or virtues, their learning or ignorance, were equally mischievous or contemptible. By his temperate discipline, the patriarch Athanasius excited the hatred of the clergy and people; he was heard to declare, that the sinner should swallow the last drops of the cup of paradise; and the foolish tale was propagated of his punishing a sacrilegious ass that had tasted the lettuce of a convent garden. Driven from the throne by the universal clamour, Athanasius composed, before his retreat, two papers of a very opposite cast. His public testament was in the tone of charity and resignation; the private concili the breaths the direct anthems of the authors of his disgrace, whom he cannot trace their pedigrees above three hundred years; but their principal members are distinguished by a grave demeanour, a fine cap, and the lofty appellation of archeus. By some, who delight in the contrast, the modern language of Athens is represented as the most corrupt and barbarous of the seventy dialects of the vulgar Greek: this picture is too darkly coloured; but it would not be easy, in the country of Plato and Demosthenes, to find a reader, or a copy, of their works. The Athenians walk with apparent indifference among the glorious ruins of antiquity; and such is the drossment of their character, that they are incapable of admiring the genius of their predecessors."

CHAP. LXIII.

CIVIL WARS, AND RUIN OF THE GREEK EMPIRE.

Regency of Androniaces, the Elder and Younger, and John Palaeologus. - Reigns of Androniaces, the Elder and Younger, and John Palaeologus. - Establishment of a Genoese Colony at Perus and Catan. - Their Wars with the Empire and City of Constantinople.

The long reign of Androniaces, the Elder is chiefly memorable by frequent civil disputes; the invasion of the Catalans, and the rise of the Ottoman power. He is celebrated as the most learned and virtuous prince of the age; but such virtue, and such learning, contributed neither to the perfection of the individual, nor to the happiness of society. A slave of the most abject superstition, he was surrounded on all sides by visible and invisible enmities; nor were the flames of bulk less dreadful to his fancy than those of a Catalan or Turkish war. Under the reign of the Palaeologus, the choice of the patriarch was the most important business of the state; the hands of the Greek church were ambitious and fanatical monks; and their vices or virtues, their learning or ignorance, were equally mischievous or contemptible. By his temperate discipline, the patriarch Athanasius excited the hatred of the clergy and people; he was heard to declare, that the sinner should swallow the last drops of the cup of paradise; and the foolish tale was propagated of his punishing a sacrilegious ass that had tasted the lettuce of a convent garden. Driven from the throne by the universal clamour, Athanasius composed, before his retreat, two papers of a very opposite cast. His public testament was in the tone of charity and resignation; the private concili the breaths the direct anthems of the authors of his disgrace, whom he cannot trace their pedigrees above three hundred years; but their principal members are distinguished by a grave demeanour, a fine cap, and the lofty appellation of archeus. By some, who delight in the contrast, the modern language of Athens is represented as the most corrupt and barbarous of the seventy dialects of the vulgar Greek: this picture is too darkly coloured; but it would not be easy, in the country of Plato and Demosthenes, to find a reader, or a copy, of their works. The Athenians walk with apparent indifference among the glorious ruins of antiquity; and such is the drossment of their character, that they are incapable of admiring the genius of their predecessors."

CHAP. LXIII.

CIVIL WARS, AND RUIN OF THE GREEK EMPIRE.

Regency of Androniaces, the Elder and Younger, and John Palaeologus. - Reigns of Androniaces, the Elder and Younger, and John Palaeologus. - Establishment of a Genoese Colony at Perus and Catan. - Their Wars with the Empire and City of Constantinople.

The long reign of Androniaces, the Elder is chiefly memorable by frequent civil disputes; the invasion of the Catalans, and the rise of the Ottoman power. He is celebrated as the most learned and virtuous prince of the age; but such virtue, and such learning, contributed neither to the perfection of the individual, nor to the happiness of society. A slave of the most abject superstition, he was surrounded on all sides by visible and invisible enmities; nor were the flames of bulk less dreadful to his fancy than those of a Catalan or Turkish war. Under the reign of the Palaeologus, the choice of the patriarch was the most important business of the state; the hands of the Greek church were ambitious and fanatical monks; and their vices or virtues, their learning or ignorance, were equally mischievous or contemptible. By his temperate discipline, the patriarch Athanasius excited the hatred of the clergy and people; he was heard to declare, that the sinner should swallow the last drops of the cup of paradise; and the foolish tale was propagated of his punishing a sacrilegious ass that had tasted the lettuce of a convent garden. Driven from the throne by the universal clamour, Athanasius composed, before his retreat, two papers of a very opposite cast. His public testament was in the tone of charity and resignation; the private concili the breaths the direct anthems of the authors of his disgrace, whom he cannot trace their pedigrees above three hundred years; but their principal members are distinguished by a grave demeanour, a fine cap, and the lofty appellation of archeus. By some, who delight in the contrast, the modern language of Athens is represented as the most corrupt and barbarous of the seventy dialects of the vulgar Greek: this picture is too darkly coloured; but it would not be easy, in the country of Plato and Demosthenes, to find a reader, or a copy, of their works. The Athenians walk with apparent indifference among the glorious ruins of antiquity; and such is the drossment of their character, that they are incapable of admiring the genius of their predecessors."

CHAP. LXIII.

CIVIL WARS, AND RUIN OF THE GREEK EMPIRE.

Regency of Androniaces, the Elder and Younger, and John Palaeologus. - Reigns of Androniaces, the Elder and Younger, and John Palaeologus. - Establishment of a Genoese Colony at Perus and Catan. - Their Wars with the Empire and City of Constantinople.
excluded for ever from the communion of the Holy Trinity, the angels, and the saints. This last paper he enclosed in an earthen pot, which was placed, by his order, on the top of one of the pillars in the dome of St. Sophia, in the distant hope of discovery and revenge. At the end of forty years, some youths, climbing by a ladder in search of pigeons' nests, detected the fatal secret; and, as Andronicus felt himself touched and bound by the excommunication, he trembled on the brink of abysses which had been so treacherously dug under his feet. A synod of bishops was instantly convened to decide this important question: the rashness of these clandestine anathemas was generally condemned; but as the knot could be untied only by the same hand, as that hand was now deprived of the crozier, it appeared that this posthumous decree was irreparable by any earthly power. Some faint testimonies of repentance and pardon were extorted from the mouth of the mischiefs; but every precaution of the emperor was still unaltered, and he desired, with no less ardor, to see Athanasius himself, the restorer of a patriarch, by whom alone he could be healed. At the dead of night, a monk rudely knocked at the door of the royal bedchamber, announcing a revelation of plague and famine, of inundations and earthquakes. Andronicus started from his bed, and spent the night in prayer, till he felt, or thought that he felt, a slight motion of the earth. The emperor on foot led the bishops and monks to the cell of Athanasius, and, after a proper reverence, the saint, from whom this message had been sent, consented to absolve the prince, and govern the church of Constantinople. Untamed by disgrace, and hardened by solitude, the shepherd was again solemn to the flock, and his enemies envied a singular, and, as it proved, a successful, mode of revenge. In the night they stole away the foot-cloth or foot-cloth of his throne, which they secretly replaced with the decoration of a satirical picture. The emperor was painted with a bridle in his mouth, and Athanasius leading the tractable beast to the foot of Christ. The authors of the libel were detected and punished; but as their lives had been spared, the Christian priest in sullen indignation retired to his cell; and the eyes of Andronicus, which had been opened for a moment, were again closed by his successor.

If this transaction be one of the most curious and important of a reign of fifty years, I cannot at least accuse the brevity of my materials, since I reduce into some few pages the enormous folios of Pachymer, Cantacuzenus, and Nicolaus Gregoras, who have composed the prolix and lugubrid story of the times. The name and situation of the emperor John Cantacuzenus might inspire the most lively curiosity. His memorials of forty years extend from the revolt of the younger Andronicus to his own abdication of the empire; and it is observed, that, like Moses and Caesar, he was the principal actor in the scenes which he describes. But in this eloquent work we shall only seek the sincerity of an hero or a patriot. Retired in a cloister from the vices and passions of the world, he preserves his confession, but an apology, of the life of an ambitious statesman. Instead of unfolding the true counsels and characters of men, he displays the smooth and superficial surface of events, highly varnished with his own praises and those of his friends. Their motives are always pure; their ends always legitimate; they conspire and rebel without any views of interest; and the violence which they inflict or suffer is celebrated as the spontaneous effect of reason and virtue.

After the example of the first of the Palaeologus, the elder Andronicus associated his son Michael to the honours of the purple, and from the age of eighteen to his premature death, that prince was acknowledged, above twenty-five years, as the second emperor of the Greeks. At the head of an army, he excited neither the fears of the enemy, nor the jealousy of the court; his modesty and patience were never tempted to compute the years of his father; nor was that father compelled to repent of his liberality either by the virtues or vices of his son. The son of Michael was named Andronicus from his grandfather, to whose early favours he was introduced by that nominal resemblance. The blossoms of wit and beauty increased the fondness of the elder Andronicus; and, with the common vanity of age, he expected to realize in the second, the hope which had been disappointed in the first, generation. The boy was educated in the palace as an heir and a favourite; and in the oaths and solemnities of the people, the august crown was formed by the names of the father, the son, and the grandson. But the younger Andronicus was speedily corrupted by his infant greatness, while he beheld with puerile impatience the double obstacle that hung, and might long hang, over his rising ambition. It was not to acquire fame, or to diffuse happiness, that he so eagerly aspired: wealth and impunity were in his eyes the most precious attributes of a monarch; and his first indissoluble demand was the sovereignty of some rich and fertile island, where he might lead a life of independence and pleasure. The emperor was offended by the loud and frequent intemperance which disturbed his capital; the sums which his parricide denied were supplied by the Genoese usurers of Pera; and the oppressive debt, which consolidated the interest of a faction, could be discharged only by a revolution. A beautiful female, a matron in rank, a prostitute in manner, had instructed the younger Andronicus in the vices of love; but he had reason to suspect the nocturnal visits of a rival;
and a stranger passing through the street was pierced by the arrows of his guards, who were placed in ambush at her door. That stranger was his brother, prince Manuel, who languished and died of his wound; and the emperor Michael, their common father, whose health was in a declining state, expired on the eighth day, lamenting the loss of both his children. However, in his intentions, the younger Andronicus might impute a brother's and a father's death to the consequence of his own vice; and deep was the sight of thinking and feeling men, when they perceived, instead of sorrow and repentance, his ill-dissembled joy on the removal of two odious competitors. By these melancholy events, and the increase of his disorders, the mind of the elder emperor was gradually alienated; and, after many fruitless reproves, he transferred on another grandson his hopes and affections. The change was announced by the new oath of allegiance to the reigning sovereign, and the person whom he should appoint for his successor; and the acknowledged heir, after a repetition of insults and complaints, was exposed to the indignity of a public trial. Before the sentence, which would probably have condemned him to a dungeon or a cell, the emperor informed that the palace courts were filled with the armed followers of his grandson; the judgment was softened to a treaty of reconciliation; and the triumphant escape of the prince encouraged the ardour of the younger faction.

Yet the capital, the clergy, and the senate, adored to the person, or at least to the government, of the old emperor; and it was only in the provinces, by flight, and revolt, and foreign succour, that the malcontents could hope to vindicate their cause and subvert his throne. The soul of the enterprise was the great domestic John Cantacuzene: the sally from Constantinople is the first date of his actions and memorials; and if his own pen be most descriptive of his patriotism, an unfriendly historian has not refused to celebrate the zeal and ability which he displayed in the service of the young emperor. That prince escaped from the capital under the pretense of hunting; erected his standard at Adrianople; and, in a few days, assembled fifty thousand horse and foot, whom neither honour nor duty could have armed against the barbarians. Such a force might have saved or commanded the empire; but their counsels were discordant, their motions were slow and doubtful, and their progress was checked by intrigue and negotiation. The quarrel of the two Andronicus was protracted, and suspended, and renewed, during a nuisance period of seven years. In the first treaty, the reliefs of the Greek empire were divided: Constantinople, Thessalonica, and the islands, were left to the elder, while the younger acquired the sovereignty of the greatest part of Thrace, from Philippoi to the Byzantine limit. By the second treaty, he stipulated the payment of his troops, his immediate coronation, and an adequate share of the powers and revenue of the state. The third civil war was terminated by the surprise of Constantinople, the final retreat of the old emperor, and the sole reign of his victorious grandson. The reasons of this delay may be found in the characters of the men and of the times. When the heir of the monarchy first pleaded his wrongs and his apprehensions, he was heard with pity and applause; and his adherents repeated on all sides the inconstant promise, that he would increase the pay of the soldiers and alleviate the burdens of the people. The grievances of forty years were mingled in his revolt; and the rising generation was fatigued by the endless prospect of a reign, whose favourites and maxims were of other times. The youth of Andronicus had been without spirit, his age without reverence; his taxes produced an annual revenue of five hundred thousand pounds; yet the richest of the sovereigns of Christendom was incapable of maintaining three thousand horse and twenty galleys, to resist the destructive progress of the Turks. How different," said the younger Andronicus, "is my situation from that of the son of Philip! Alexander might complain, that his father would have done nothing to conquer: alas! my grandson will have me nothing to lose." But the Greeks were soon discouraged, that the public disorders could not be healed by civil war; and that their young favourite was not destined to be the saviour of a falling empire. On the first respite, his party was broken by his own levity, their intestine discord, and the intrigues of the ancient court, which tempted such malcontent to desert or betray the cause of rebellion. Andronicus the Younger was touched with remorse, or fatigued with histrionics, or deceived by negotiation; pleasure, rather than power was his aim; and the licence of maintaining a thousand hounds, a thousand horses, and a thousand huntsmen, was sufficient to nullify his fame and disarm his ambition.

Let us now survey the catastrophes of this busy plot, and the final situation of the principal actors. The age of Andronicus was consumed in civil discord; and, amidst the events of war and treaty, his power and reputation continually decayed, till the fatal night in which the gates of the city and palace were opened, without resistance, to his grandson. His principal commander scorned the repeated warnings of danger; and regretting to rest in the vain security of ignorance, abandoned the feeble monarch, with some priests and pages, to the terrors of a sleepless night. These terrors were quickly realized by the hostile shouts, which proclaimed, that in four years and four months a sum of 200,000 livres had been raised. For the next six years, the city was excited to the utmost limits of allegiance; and, amidst the fear of resistance, the two Andronicus, with all the fury of the events, were huddled together, and left without the walls of Constantinople.
claimed the title and victory of Andronicus the Younger; and the aged emperor, falling prostrate before an image of the Virgin, dispatched a suppliant message to resign the sceptre, and to obtain his life at the hands of the conqueror. The answer of his grandson was decent and peaceable; at the prayer of his friends, the younger Andronicus assumed the sole administration, but the elder still enjoyed the same and pre-eminence of the first emperor, the use of the great palace, and a pension of twenty-four thousand pieces of gold, one half of which was assigned on the royal treasury, and the other on the fishery of Constantinople. But his impotence was soon exposed to contempt and oblivion; the vast silence of the palace was disturbed only by the cattle and poultry of the neighbourhood, which roved with impunity through the solitary courts; and a reduced allowance of ten thousand pieces of gold was all that he could ask, and more than he could hope. His calamities were embittered by the gradual extinction of sight; his confinement was rendered each day more rigorous; and during the absence and sickness of his grandson, his inhuman keepers, by the threats of instant death, compelled him to exchange the purple for the monastic habit and profession. The monk Antony had remitted the pangs of the mind; yet he had occasion for a coarse fur in the winter season, and as wine was forbidden by his confessor, and water by his physician, the sherbet of Egypt was his common drink. It was not without difficulty that the late emperor could procure three or four pieces to satisfy these simple wants; and if he bestowed the gold to relieve the more painful distress of a friend, the sacrifice is of some weight in the scale of humanity and religion. Four years A.D. 1321, after his abdication, Andronicus or Aten was joined in a cell, in the seventeenth year of his age; and the last strain of humiliation could only promise a more splendid crown of glory in heaven than he had enjoyed upon earth.

10 Nor was the reign of the younger, more glorious or fortunate than that of the elder, Andronicus. He gathered the fruits of ambition; but the taste was transient and bitter. In the supreme station he lost the remains of his early popularity, and the defects of his character became still more conspicuous to the world. The public reproach urged him to march in person against the Turks; nor did his courage fail in the hour of trial, but a defeat and a wound were the only trophies of his expedition in Asia, which confirmed the establishment of the Ottoman monarchy. The abuses of the civil government attained their full maturity and perfection: his neglect of forms, and the confusion of national dress, are deplored by the Greeks as the fatal symptoms of the decay of the empire. Andronicus was old before his time; the intemperance of youth had accelerated the infirmities of age; and after being rescued from a dangerous malady by nature, or physic, or the Virgin, he was sauntered away before he had accomplished his forty-fifth year. He was twice married; and as the progress of the Latins in arms and arts had softened the prejudices of the Byzantine court, his two wives were chosen in the princely houses of Germany and Italy. The first, Agnes at home, Irene in Greece, was daughter of the duke of Brunswick. Her father was a petty lord in the poor and savage regions of the north of Germany; yet he derived some revenue from his silver mines; and his family is celebrated by the Greeks as the most ancient and noble of the Tentonic name. After the death of this childish prince, Andronicus sought in marriage Jane, the sister of the count of Savoy, and his suit was preferred to that of the French King. The count resided in his sister the superior majesty of a Roman emperor; her revenue was composed of knights and ladies; she was regaled and crowned in St. Sophia, under the more orthodox appellation of Anne; and, at the nuptial feast, the Greeks and Latins vied with each other in the martial exercises of tills and tournaments.

The emperor Anne of Savoy survived her husband; their son, John Palamologus, was left an orphan and an emperor, in the ninth year of his age; and his weakness was protected by the first and most deserving of the Greeks. The long and cordial friendship of his father for John Cantacuzene is alike honourable to the prince and the subject.
ject. It had been formed amidst the pleasures of their youth; their families were almost equally noble; and the recent lustre of the purple was amply compensated by the energy of a private education. We have seen that the young emperor was saved by Constantine from the power of his grandfather; and, after six years of civil war, the same favourite brought him back in triumph to the palace of Costantineople. Under the reign of Andronicus the Younger, the great domestic ruled the emperor and the empire; and it was by his valour and conduct that the isle of Lesbos and the principalities of Eotia were restored to their ancient allegiance. His enemies confess, that, among the public robbers, Constantine alone was moderate and abstemious; and the free and voluntary account which he produces of his own wealth may sustain the presumption that it was devolved by inheritance, and not accumulated by rapine. He does not indeed specify the value of his money, plate, and jewels; yet, after a voluntary gift of two hundred vases of silver, after much had been secreted by his friends and plundered by his foes, his forfeit treasures were sufficient for the equipment of a fleet of seventy galleys. He does not measure the size and number of his estates; but his granaries were humped with an incredible store of wheat and barley; and the labour of a thousand yoke of oxen might cultivate, according to the practice of antiquity, about sixty-two thousand five hundred acres of arable land. His pastures were stocked with two thousand five hundred brood mares, two hundred camels, three hundred mules, five hundred asses, five thousand horned cattle, fifty thousand hogs, and seventy thousand sheep; a precious record of rural opulence, in the last period of the empire, and in a land, most probably in Thrace, so repeatedly wasted by foreign and domestic hostilities. The favour of Constantine was above his fortune. In the moments of familiarity, in the hour of sickness, the emperor was desirous to level the distance between them, and pressed his friend to accept the diam- 
gem and purple. The virtue of the great domestic, which is attested by his own pen, resisted the dangerous proposal; but the last testament of Andronicus the Younger named him the guardian of his son, and the regent of the empire.

He had the regency a suitable return of obedience and gratitude, perhaps he would have acted with pure and serious fidelity in the service of his pupil. A guard of five hundred soldiers watched over his person; and the palace, the funeral of the late emperor was decently performed; the empress was silent and submissive; and few hundred letters, which Constantine despatched in the first month, informed the provinces of their loss and their duty. The prospect of a tranquil majority was blotted by the great duke or admiral Apocausus; and to exaggerate the pur, the Imperial historian is pleased to magnify his own importance, in raising him to that office against the advice of his most sagacious sovereign. Bold and subtle, rapacious and profane, the preferment of Apocausus was, by turns, submitted to each; and his talents were applied to the ruin of his country. His arrogance was heightened by the command of a naval force and an impenetrable castle, and under the mask of outrages and factions he secretly conspired against his benefactor. The female court of the empress was censured and directed: he encouraged Anne of Beirut to assert, by the law of nature, the tutelage of her son; the love of power was disguised by the anxiety of paternal kindness; and the founder of the Palaeologus had instructed his posterity to dread the example of a pernicious guardian. The patriarch John of Apri was a proud and fickle old man, encompassed by numerous and hungry kindred. He produced an obsolete epistle of Andronicus, which besought the prince and people to his pious care: the fate of his predecessor Asenius prompted him to prevent, rather than punish, the crimes of an emperor; and Apocausus smiled at the success of his own flattery, when he beheld the Byzantine priest assuming the state and temporal claims of the Roman pontiff.

Between three persons so different in their situation and character, a private league was concluded: a shadow of authority was restored to the senate; and the people was tempted by the name of freedom. By this powerful confederacy, the great domestic was assaulted at first with clandestine, at length with open, arms. His prerogatives were disputed; his opinions slighted; his friends persecuted; and his safety was threatened both in the camp and city. In his absence on the public service, he was accused of treason; proscribed as an enemy of the church and state; and delivered, with all his adherents, to the sword of justice, the vengeance of the people, and the power of the devil: his fortunes were confiscated; his aged mother was cast into prison; all his past services were buried in oblivion; and he was driven by injustice to perpetrate the crime of which he was accused. From the review of his preceding conduct, Constantine appears to have been guiltless of any unreasonable design; and the only suspicion of his innocence must arise from the renunciation of his protestations, and the sub-

[The full text of the manuscript is not provided, and the image contains additional text not clearly visible. The document appears to be a historical account discussing the reign of Andronicus the Younger and his relationship with other figures in the Byzantine Empire.]
line purity which he ascribes to his own virtue. While the empress and the patriarcs still afforded the appearances of harmony, he repeatedly solicited the permission of retiring to a private, and even a monastic, life. After he had been declared a public enemy, it was his fervent wish to throw himself at the feet of the young emperor, and to receive without a murmur the stroke of the executioner; it was not without reluctance that he listened to the voice of reason, which induced the sacred duty of saving his family and friends, and proved that he could only save them by drawing the sword and assuming the Imperial title.

In the strong city of Demotica, his peculiar domain, the emperor John Cantacuzenus was invested with the purple mukminis; his right leg was clothed by his noble kinsmen, the left by the Latin chiefs, on whom he conferred the order of knighthood. But even in this act of revolt, he was still studious of loyalty; and the titles of John Palaeologus and Anne of Savoy were proclaimed before his own name and that of his wife Irene. Such vain ceremony is a thin disguise of rebellion; and, in fact, perhaps not perceived by the sovereign that an authorise is subject to take arms against his sovereign: but the want of preparation and success may confirm the assurance of the mariner, that that decisive step was the effect of necessity rather than of choice. Constantinepoil adhered to the young emperor; the king of Bulgaria was invited to the relief of Adrianople; the principal cities of Thrace and Macedonia, after some hesitation, renounced their obedience to the great dement, and the leaders of the troops and the provinces were induced, by their private interest, to prefer the loose dominion of a woman and a priest. The army of Cantacuzenus, in sixteen divisions, was stationed on the banks of the Mela to tempt or intimidate the capital; it was dispersed by treachery or fear; and the officers, more especially the mercenary Latins, accepted the bribes, and embraced the service, of the Byzantine court. After this loss, the rebel emperor (he fluctuated between the two characters) took the road of Thessalonica with a chosen remnant; but he failed in his enterprise on that important place; and he was closely pursued by the great duke, his enemy, Apocrumus, at the head of a superior power by sea and land. Driven from the coast, in his march, or rather flight, into the mountains of Servia, Cantacuzenus assembled his troops, to scrutinize those whom he was worthy and willing to accompany his broken fortunes. A base majority bowed and retired; and his trusty hand was diminished to two thousand, and at last to five hundred volunteers. The civil war, or despot of the Servians, received him with generous hospitality; but the ally was insensibly degraded to a suppliant, an hostage, a captive; and, in this miserable dependence, he waited at the door of the barbarian, who could dispose of the life and liberty of a Roman emperor. The most tempting offers could not persuade the rival to violate his trust; but he soon inclined to the stronger side; and his friend was dismissed without injury to a new vicissitude of hopes and perils. Near six years the flame of discord burnt with various success and unabated rage: the cities were distracted by the faction of the nobles and the plebeians; the Cantacuzeni and Palaeologi; and the Bulgarians, the Servians, and the Turks, were involved on both sides as the instruments of private ambition and the common ruin. The regent deplored the calamities of which he was the author and victim; and his own experience might dictate a just and lively remark on the different nature of foreign and civil war. The "former," said he, "is the external warmth of summer, always tolerable, and often beneficial; the latter is the deadly heat of a fever, which consumes without a remedy the vital forces of the constitution."

The introduction of barbarians into the contests of civilised nations is a measure pregnant with shame and mischief, which the interest of the moment may command, but which is represented by the best principles of humanity and reason. It is the practice of both sides to accuse their enemies of the guilt of the first alliances; and those who fall in their negotiations are loud in their censure of the example which they may, and would gladly imitate. The Turks of Asia were less barbarous, perhaps, than the shepherds of Bulgaria and Servia; but their religion rendered them the implacable foes of Icons and Christianity. To acquire the friendship of their ene, the two factions vied with each other in benevolence and profusion: the dexterity of Cantacuzenus obtained the preference; but the success and victory were dearly purchased by the marriage of his daughter with an infidel, the captivity of many thousand Christians, and the passage of the Ottoman into Europe, the last and fatal stroke in the fall of the Roman empire. The inclining scale was decided in his favour by the death of Apocrumus, the just, though singular, retribution of his crimes. A crowd of nobles or plebeians, when he feared or hated, had been seized by his orders in the capital and the provinces; and the old palace of Constantine was assigned for the place of their confinement, some alterations in raising the walls, and crowning the cells, had been ingeniously contrived to prevent the escape, and aggravate their misery; and the work was MacOS accomplished by the daily visits of the tyrant. His guards watched at the gate, and as he stood in the inner court, to overlook the architects, without flaw or suspicion, he was assassinated and laid breathless on the ground, by two resolute prisoners of the Palaeologan race, who were armed with sticks and animated by despair. On the ruin of revenge and liberty, the captive multitude broke.
their futures, fortified their prison, and exposed from the battlements the tyrant’s head, presuming on the favour of the people and the clamency of the empress. Anne of Savoy might rejoice in the full of a haughty and ambitious minister, but while she delayed to resolve or to act, the populace, more especially the mariners, were excited by the widow of the great duke to a sedition, massacre, and massacre. The prisoners (of whom the far greater part were guiltless or ignobles of the deed) escaped to a neighbouring country; they were slaughtered at the foot of the altar; and in his death the monster was no less bloody and violent than in his life. Yet his talents alone upheld the cause of the young emperor; and his surviving associates, suspicious of each other, abandoned the conduct of the war, and rejected the fairest terms of accommodation. In the beginning of the dispute, the empress felt and complained, that she was deceived by the enemies of Constantinople; the patriarch was employed to preach against the forgiveness of injuries; and her promise of imperial hatred was sealed by an oath, under the penalty of excommunication. But Anne soon learned to hate without a teacher; she beheld the misfortunes of the empire with the indifference of a stranger; her jealousy was exasperated by the competition of a rival empress; and on the first symptoms of a more yielding temper, she threatened the patriarch to convene a synod, and degrade him from his office. Their incapacity and discord would have afforded the most decisive advantage; but the civil war was protracted by the weakness of both parties and the moderation of Constantinople. This has not escaped the reproach of timidity and indolence. He successively recovered the provinces and cities; and the realm of his pupil was measured by the walls of Constantinople, but the metropolis alone counterbalanced the rest of the empire, nor could he attempt that important conquest till he had secured in his favour the public voice and a private correspondence. An Italian of the name of Foccolati had succeeded to the office of great duke; the ships, the guards, and the golden gate, were subject to his command; but his humble ambition was bribed to become the instrument of treachery; and the revolution was accomplished without danger or bloodshed. Destitute of the powers of resistance, or the hope of relief, the inflexible Anne would have still defended the palace, and have nulified to behold the capital in flames rather than the possession of a rival. She yielded to the prayers of her friends and enemies, and the treaty was dictated by the conqueror, who professed a loyal and amiable attachment to the son of his benefactor. The marriage of his daughter with John Palaeologus was at length consummated; the hereditary rights of the papal

was acknowledged; but the sole administration during ten years was vested in the guardians. Two emperors and three empresses were seated on the Byzantine throne; and a general amnesty quieted the apprehensions, and confirmed the property, of the most guilty subjects. The festival of the coronation and nocturnal was celebrated with the appearances of concord and magnificence, and both were equally fallacious. During the late troubles, the treasures of the state, and even the furniture of the palace, had been alienated or embattled; the royal banquet was served in pewter and carvenearths; and such was the proud poverty of the times, that the absence of gold and jewels was supplied by the paltry artifacts of glass and gilt leather. It is not necessary to conclude the personal history of John Palaeologus. He triumphed and reigned; but his reign and triumph were clouded by the discontent of his own and the adverse faction. His followers might style the general amnesty, an act of grace for his enemies; and of oblivion for his friends. In his cause their estates had been forfeited or plundered; and as they wandered naked and hungry through the streets, they cursed the selfish generosity of a leader, who, on the throne of the empire, might forget without merit his private inheritance. The adherents of the empress blushed to hold their lives and fortunes by the precipices favour of an usurper; and the thirst of revenge was concealed by a tender concern for the succession, and even the safety, of her son. They were justly alarmed by a petition of the friends of Constantinople, that they might be released from their oath of allegiance to the Palaeologi, and intrusted with the defence of some cautionary towns; a measure supported with argument and eloquence; and which was rejected (says the Imperial historian) “by my sublime, and almost incredible, virtue.” His empire was disturbed by the sound of plots and seditions; and he trembled, lest the lawful prince should be stolen away by some foreign or domestic enemy, who would inscribe his name and his wrongs in the banners of rebellion. As the son of Andronicus advanced in the years of manhood, he began to feel and to act for himself; and his rising ambition was neither checked nor subjugated than checked by the imitation of his father’s vices. If we may trust his own profession, Constantinople laboured with honest industry to correct these moral and sensual appetites, and to raise the mind of the young prince to a level with his fortune. In the Servian expedition, the two emperors showed themselves in martial harmony to the troops and provinces; and the younger colleague was initiated by the elder in the mysteries of war and government. After the conclusion of the peace, Palaeologus was left at Thessalonica, a royal residence, and a frontier station, to
secure by his absence the peace of Constantinople, and to withdraw his youth from the temptations of a luxurious capital. But the distance weakened the powers of control, and the son of Andronicus was surrounded with artful or unthinking companions, who taught him to hate his guardian, to deplore his exile, and to vindicate his rights. A private treaty with the exilarch of Servia was soon followed by an open revolt; and Cantacuzene, on the throne of the elder Andronicus, defended the cause of age and prerogative, which in his youth he had so vigorously attacked. At his request, the empress-mother undertook the voyage of Thessalonica, and the office of mediation; she returned without success; and unless Anne of Savoy, was instructed by adversity, we may doubt the sincerity, or at least the favour, of her zeal. While the regent grasped the sceptre with a firm and vigorous hand, she had been instructed to declare, that the ten years of his legal administration would soon elapse; and that after a full trial of the sanity of the world, the emperor Cantacuzene sighed for the repose of a cloister, and was ambitious only of an heavenly crown. Had these sentiments been genuine, his voluntary abdication would have restored the peace of the empire, and his conscience would have been relieved by an act of justice.

John Palaeologus was responsible for his future government; and whatever might be his vices, they were surely less formidable than the calamities of a civil war, in which the barbarians and infidels were again invited to assist the Greeks in their mutual destruction. By the arms of the Turks, who now struck a deep and everlasting root in Europe, Cantacuzene prevailed in the third conflict in which he had been involved; and the young emperor, driven from the sea and land, was compelled to take shelter among the Latins of the isle of Tenedos. His insolence and obstinacy provoked the victor to a step which must render the quarel irreconcilable; and the association of his son Matthew, whom he invested with the purple, established the succession in the family of the Cantacuzeni. But Constantiople was still attached to the blood of her ancient princes, and this last injury accelerated the restoration of the rightful heir. A noble Genoese espoused the cause of Palaeologus, obtained a promise of his sister, and achieved the revolution with two galleys and two thousand five hundred auxiliaries. Under the pretence of distress, they were admitted into the lesser port; a gate was opened, and the Latin shout of "Long life!" and victory to the emperor, John Palaeologus! was answered by a general rising in his favour. A numerous and loyal party yet adhered to the standard of Cantacuzene; but he asserts in his history (does he hope for belief?) that his tender conscience rejected the assurance of conquest; that, in free obedience to the voice of religion and philosophy, he descended from the throne, and embraced with pleasure the monastic habit and profession. So soon as he ceased to be a prince, his successor was not unwilling that he should be a saint. The remainder of his life was devoted to study and learning; in the cells of Constantinople and Mount Athos, the monk Joseph was regarded as the temporal and spiritual father of the emperor; and if he issued from his retreat, it was as the minister of pence, to subdue the obstinacy, and solicit the pardon, of his rebellious son.

Yet in the cloister, the mind of Cantacuzene was still exercised by the Church, and theological war. He sharpened his controversial pen against the Jews and Mahometans; and in every state he defended with equal zeal the divin light of Mount Athos, a memorable question which consummates the religious follies of the Greeks. The fakirs of India, and the monks of the Oriental church, were alike persuaded, that in total abstraction of the faculties of the mind and body, the pure spirit may ascend to the enjoyment and vision of the Deity. The opinion and practice of the monasteries of Mount Athos will be best represented in the words of an abbot, who flourished in the eleventh century. "When thou art alone in thy cell," says the ascetic teacher, "shut thy door, and seat thyself in a corner; raise thy mind above all things vain and transitory; recline thy head and chin on thy breast; turn thy eyes and thy thought towards the middle of thy belly, the region of the navel; and search the place of the heart, the seat of the soul. At first, all will be dark and comfortless; but if you persevere day and night, you will feel an ineffable joy; and no sorrow has the soul discovered the place of the heart, than it is involved in a mystic and ethereal light." This light, the production of a distempered fancy, the creature of an empty stomach and an empty brain, was adored by the Quietists as the pure and perfect essence of God himself; and as long as the folly was confined to Mount Athos, the simple solitaries were not insidious how the divine essence could be a material substance, or how an insubstantial substance could be perceived by the eyes of the body. But in the reign of the younger Andronicus, these monasteries were visited by Barlaam, a Calabrian monk, who was equally skilled in philosophy and theology; who possessed the languages of the Greeks and Latins; and whose versatile genius could maintain their
opposite creeds, according to the interest of the moment. The indiscretion of an ascetic revealed to the curious traveller the secrets of mental prayer; and Barlaam embraced the opportunity of ridiculing the Quietists, who placed the soul in the navel, of accusing the monks of Mount Athos of heresy and blasphemy. His attack compelled the more learned to recant or dissemble the simple devotion of their brethren; and Gregory Palamas introduced a scholastic distinction between the essence and operation of God. His inaccessible essence dwells in the midst of an uncreated and eternal light; and this beatific vision of the saints had been manifested to the disciples at Mount Thabor, in the transfiguration of Christ. Yet this distinction could not escape the reproach of polytheism; the eternity of the light of Thabor was fiercely denied; and Barlaam still charged the Palamites with holding two eternal substances, a sensible and an invisible God. From the reign of the monks of Mount Athos, who threatened his life, the Calabrian retired to Constantinople, where his smooth and specious manners introduced him to the favour of the great domestic and the emperor. The court and the city were involved in this theological dispute, which flamed amidst the civil war; but the doctrine of Barlaam was discredited by his flight and apostasy; the Palamites triumphed; and their adversary, the patriarch John of Apri, was deposed by the consent of the adverse factions of the state. In the character of emperor and theologian, Cantacuzenus presided in the synod of the Greek church, which established, as an article of faith, the uncreated light of Mount Thabor; and, after so many insults, the reason of mankind was slightly wounded by the addition of a single absurdity. Many rolls of paper or parchment have been blotted; and the impotent sectaries, who refused to subscribe the orthodox creed, were deprived of the honours of Christian burial; but in the next age the question was forgotten; nor can I learn that the axe or the banner were employed for the extirpation of the Barlaamite heresy. For the conclusion of this chapter, I have reserved the Genoese war, which shook the throne of Cantacuzenus, and betrayed the debility of the Greek empire. The Genoese, who, after the recovery of Constantinople, were seated in the suburb of Pera or Galata, received that honourable gift from the bounty of the emperor. They were indulged in the use of their laws and magistrates; but they submitted to the duties of vassals and subjects: the forcible word of pagans was borrowed from the Latin jurisprudence; and their pastors, or chief, before he entered on his office, saluted the emperor with loyal acclamations and vows of fidelity. Genoa sealed a firm alliance with the Greeks; and, in case of a defensive war, a supply of fifty empty galleys, and a succour of fifty galleys completely armed and manned, was promised by the republic to the empire. In the revival of a naval force, it was the aim of Michael Palaeologus to deliver himself from a foreign yoke; and his vigorous government contained the Genoese of Galata within those limits which the insolence of wealth and freedom provoked them to exceed. A sailor threatened that they should become masters of Constantinople, and slew the Greek who remonstrated this national affront; and an armed vessel, after refusing to salute the palace, was guilty of some acts of piracy in the Black Sea. Their countrymen threatened to support their cause; but the long and open villages of Galata were instantly surrounded by the imperial troops; till, in the moment of the assault, the prostrate Genoese implored the clemency of their sovereign. The defenceless situation which secured their obedience, exposed them to the attack of their Venetian rivals, who, in the reign of the elder Andronicus, presumed to violate the majesty of the throne. On the approach of their fleets, the Genoese, with their families and effects, retired into the city; their empty habitations were reduced to ashes; and the feoffed princes, who had witnessed the destruction of his suburb, expressed his resentment, not by arms, but by ambassadors. This misfortune, however, was advantageous to the Genoese, who obtained, and imperceptibly abused, the dangerous licence of surrounding Galata with a strong wall; of introducing into the ditch the waters of the sea; of erecting lofty towers; and of mounting a train of military engines on the rampart. The narrow bounds in which they had been circumscribed, were insufficient for the growing colony; each day they acquired some hundreds of landed property; and the adjacent hills were covered with their villas and castles, which they joined and protected by new fortifications. The navigation and trade of the Euxine was the glory of the Greek emperors, who commanded the narrow entrance, the gates, as it were, of that inland sea. In the reign of Michael Palaeologus, their jurisdiction was acknowledged by the sultan of Egypt, who solicited and obtained the liberty of sending an annual ship for the purchase of slaves in Crete and the Lesser Tauris: a liberty procured with mischief to the Christian cause; since the youths were transformed by education and discipline into the formidable Mamalukes. From the colony of Pera, the Genoese engaged with superior advantage in the lucrative trade of the Black Sea; and their industry supplied the Greeks with fish and corn; two articles of food almost equally important to a superstitious people. The spontaneous bounty of nature appears to have bestowed the harvests of the Ukraine, the produce of a rude and
sage husbandry; and the endless exportation of salt-fish and caviar is annually renewed by the envious sturggums that are caught at the mouth of the Don or Tanae, in their last station of the rich sand and shallower water of the Matouit. The waters of the Oxus, the Caspian, the Volga, and the Don, opened a rare and laborious passage for the gems and spices of India; and, after three months' march, the caravans of Carian met the Italian vessels in the harbours of Crim. These various branches of trade were monopolised by the diligence and power of the Genoese. Their rivals of Venice and Pisa were forcibly expelled; the natives were awed by the castles and cities, which arose on the foundations of their humble factories; and their principal establishment of Caffa was besieged without effect by the Tartar powers. The Institute of a navy, the Greeks were oppressed by these haughty merchants, who sed, or fias, Constantinople, according to their interest. They proceeded to marry the customs, the fishery, and even the tolls, of the Bosphorus; and while they derived from these objects a revenue of two hundred thousand pieces of gold, a remnant of thirty thousand was reluctantly allowed to the emperor. The colony of Pera or Galata acted, in peace and war, as an independent state; and, as it will happen in distant settlements, the Genoese podesta too often forgot that he was the servant of his own masters. These usurpations were encouraged by the weakness of the elder Andronicus, and by the civil wars that afflicted his age and the minority of his grandson. The talents of Cattacres were employed to the ruin, rather than the restorations, of the empire; and after his domestic victory, he was condemned to an ignominious trial, whether the Greeks or the Genoese should reign in Constantinople. The merchants of Pera were offended by his refusal of some contiguous lands, some commanding heights, which they proposed to cover with new fortifications; and in the absence of the emperor, who was detained at Dounola by sickness, they ventured to leave the debility of a female reign. A Byzantine vessel, which had presumed to fish at the mouth of the harbour, was sunk by these audacious strangers; the fishermen were murdered. Instead of suing for pardon, the Genoese demanded satisfaction; required, in an ungracious strain, that the Greeks should remuneration the exercise of navigation; and encountered with regular arms the first sallies of the popular insurrection. They instantly occupied the defensible land; and by the labour of a whole people, of either sex and of every age, the wall was raised, and the ditch was sunk, with incredible speed. At the same time, they attacked and burnt two Byzantine galleys; and, as the three others, the remainder of the imperial navy, escaped from their hands; the habitations without the gates, or along the shore, were pillaged and destroyed; and the care of the regent, of the empress Irene, was confined to the preservation of the city. The return of Cattacres dispelled the public consternation; the emperor inclined to peaceful counsels; but he yielded to the austerity of his enemies, who rejected all reasonable terms, and to the colour of his subjects, who threatened, in the style of Scripture, to break them in pieces like a potter's vessel. Yet they reluctantly paid the taxes, that he imposed for the construction of ships, and the expenses of the war; and as the two nations were masters, the one of the land, the other of the sea, Constantinople and Pera were pressed by the evils of a mutual siege. The merchants of the colony, who had believed that a few days would terminate the war, already murmured at their losses; the succours from their mother-country were delayed by the factions of Genoa; and the most cautious endeavoured the opportunity of a Rhodian vessel to remove their families and effects from the scue of possibility. 

In the spring, the Byzantine fleets consisted of seven galleys and a train of smaller vessels, issued from the mouth of the harbour, and steered in a single line along the shore of Pera; unskilfully presenting their sides to the barks of the adverse squadron. The crowds were composed of peasants and mechanics; nor was their ignorance compensated by the native courage of barbarians: the wind was strong, the waves were rough; and no sooner did the Greeks perceive a distant and inactive enemy, than they leaped headlong into the sea, from a doubtful, to an inevitable, peril. The troops that marched to the attack of the lines of Pera were struck at the same moment with a similar panic; and the Genoese were astonished, and almost ashamed, at their double victory. Their triumphant vessels, crowned with flowers, and dragging after them the captive galleys, repeatedly passed and repassed before the palace: the only virtue of the emperor was patience; and the hope of revenge his sole consolation. Yet the distress of both parties intemperately the temporary agreement; and the shame of the empire was disguised by a thin veil of dignity and power. Summoning the chief of the colony, Cattacres affected to despise the trivial object of the debate, and, after a mild reproach, most liberally granted the lands, which had been previously reserved to the swelling custody of his officers. But the emperor was soon solicited to violate the treaty, and to join his arms with the Venetians, the perpetual enemies of Genoa and her colonies. While he compared the reasons of peace and war, his moderation was provoked by a wanton insult of the inhabitants of Pera
who discharged from their rampart a large stone. On his
just complaint, they boldly blamed the imprudence of their engineer; but the next day
the invaif was repulsed, and they exhild in a season before that the royal city was not beyond
the reach of their artillery. Constantine instantly signed his treaty with the Venetians; but
the weight of the Roman empire was scarcely felt in the balance of those opposite and powerful
republics. From the Straits of Gibralter to the mouth of the Tanais, their fleets encountered
each other with various success; and a memorable battle was fought in the narrow sea, under
the walls of Constantinople. It would not be
an easy task to reconcile the accounts of the
Greeks, the Venetians, and the Genoese; and
while I depend on the narrative of an impartial histori,
I shall borrow from each nation the facts that redound to their own disgrace, and
the honour of their foes. The Venetians, with their
allies the Catalans, had the advantage of number;
and their fleet, with the poor addition of nine
Byzantine galleys, amounted to seventy-five sail;
the Genoese did not exceed sixty-four; but in
their time their ships of war were distinguished
by the superiority of their size and strength.
The names and families of their naval com-
manders, Pisani, and Doria, are illustrious in the annals of their country; but the personal
merit of the former was eclipsed by the fame
and abilities of his rival. They engaged in
tempestuous weatber; and the tumultuary con-
Rict was continued from the dawn to the ex-
tinction of light. The enemies of the Genoese
applaud their prowess; the friends of the Venet-
ians are dissatisfied with their behaviour; but
all parties agree in praising the skill and bold-
ness of the Catalans, who, with many wounds,
sustained the brunt of the action. On the se-
paration of the fleets, the event might appear
doubtful; but the thirteen Genoese galleys, that
had been sunk or taken, were compensated by a
double loss of the allies; of fourteen Venetians,
ten Catalans, and two Greeks; and even the
grief of the conquerors expressed the assurance
and habit of more decisive victories. Pisani
confessed his defeat, by retiring into a fortified
harbour, from whence, under the pretext of the
order of the senate, he steered with a broken
and flying squadron for the Isle of Camlina, and
abandoned to his rivals the sovereignty of the
sea. In a public epistle, addressed to the
bishops and senate, Petrarch employs his eloquence to reconcile the maritime powers, the two hum-
manities of Italy. The orator celebrates the valor
and victory of the Genoese, the first of men in
the exercise of naval war; he drops a tear on
the misfortunes of their Venetian brethren; but
he exhorts them to pursue with fire and sword the
base and perfidious Greeks; to purge the
metropolis of the East from the heresy with
which it was infected. Deserted by
their friends, the Greeks were in-
capable of resistance; and three
months after the battle, the emperor Constantine
solicited and subscribed a treaty, which for
ever banished the Venetians and Catalans, and
granted to the Genoese a monopoly of trade,
and almost a right of dominion. The Roman
empire (I smile in transcribing the name) might
soon have sunk into a province of Genoa, if the
disunion of the republic had not been checked by
the ruin of her freedom and naval power.
A long contest of one hundred and thirty years
was determined by the triumph of Venice; and
the factions of the Genoese compelled them to
seek for domestic peace under the protection of
a foreign lord, the duke of Milan, or the French
king. Yet the spirit of commerce survived that
of conquest; and the colony of Pera still owed
the capital and navigated the Euxine, till it was
involved by the Turks in the final servitude of
Constantinople itself.

CHAP. LXIV.

Compositions of Zengis Khan and the Moguls from China to Poland. — Entrance of Constantinople and
and the Greeks. — Origin of the Ottoman Turks in Bithynia. — Reigns and Victories of Oth-
man; Orkhan, Atsanh the First, and Reiselm the First. — Foundation and Progress of the
Turkish Monarchy in Asia and Europe. — Danger of Constantinople and the Greek
Empire.

From the petty quarrels of a city and her
suburbs, from the cowardice and discord of
the falling Greeks, I shall now ascend to the vic-
rious Turks; whose domestic slavery was en-
mobiled by martial discipline, religious
enthusiasm, and the energy of the national character. The rise and progress of the
Ottomans, the present sovereigns of Constantinople, are connected with the most
important scenes of modern history; but they
are founded on a previous knowledge of the
great eruption of the Moguls and Tartars; whose rapid conquests may be compared with
the primitive convulsions of nature, which have
agitated and altered the surface of the globe.
I have long since assented to my claim to introduce
the nations, the immediate or remote authors
of the fall of the Roman empire; nor can I refine
myself to those events, which, from their un-
common magnitude, will interest a philosophic
mind in the history of blood.

From the spacious highlands between
China, Siberia, and the Caspian Sea, the tide of emigration and
war has repeatedly been poured. — 1291.

These ancient seats of the Huns and Turks were
occupied in the twelfth century by many pastoral

52. This same war is double told by Constans P. (n. d. C. 20, p. 246,
53. p. 253, &c.) Is a false idea that has done much injury. I repeat
the story of Mr. Gregory, which is still submitted to the gen-
rous Colonnese of Venice. Pausanias, the sculptor, whose story
may be found in Dr. Wheler's and Mr. Pinkerton's Travels in
Asia Minor, compiled a history of the Turks, but it appears
from a comparison of his work with our present text, that he
had nothing in common with the present writer, and that he
was mistaken in the whole plan of the history, yet it added
much to the fame of the Turks, and was extolled over the head
of the hero of their chieftain, which was the chief of that
time, of maintaining his bravery.
tribes, of the same descent and similar manners, which were united and led to conquest by the formidable Zingis. In his ascent to greatness, that baronian (whose private appellation was Temugin) had trampled on the necks of his equals. His birth was humble; but it was in the pride of victory, that the prince or people deduced his seventh ancestor from the immediate conception of a virgin. His father had reigned over thirteen horses, which composed about thirty or forty thousand families; above two thirds refused to pay tithes or obedience to his infant sons; and at the age of thirteen, Temugin fought a battle against his rebellious subjects. The future conqueror of Asia was reduced to By and to obey; but he rose superior to his fortune, and in his fortieth year he had established his fame and dominion over the circumference tribes. In a state of society, in which policy is rude and valour is universal, the ascendant of one who must be founded on his power and resolution to punish his enemies and recompense his friends. His first military league was ratified by the simple rites of sacrificing an horse and casting of a running stream: Temugin pledged himself to divide with his followers the sweets and the bitterness of life; and when he had shared among them his horses and apparel, he was rich in their gratitude and his own hopes. After his first victory he placed seventy caldrons on the fire, and seventy of the most guilty refrains were cast headlong into the boiling water. The sphere of his attraction was continually enlarged by the ruin of the temet and the substitution of the prudent; and the boldest chieftains might tremble, when they beheld, enclosed in silver, the skull of the khan of the Khitans; a who, under the name of Yuan-Jin, had corresponded with the Roman pontiff and the princes of Europe. The ambition of Temugin condescended to employ the art of superstition; and it was from a naked prophet, who could ascent to heaven on a white horse, that he accepted the title of Zingis, the most great, and a divine right to the conquest and dominion of the earth. In a general covenant, or diet, he was seated on a felt, which was long afterwards revered as a relic, and solemnly proclaimed great khan, or emperor of the Moguls and Tartars. Of these kindred, though rival, nations, the former had given birth to the Imperial; and the latter has been extended by accident or error over the spacious wilderness of the north.

The code of laws which Zingis dictated to his subjects, was adapted to the preservation of domestic peace, and the exercise of foreign hostility. The punishment of death was inflicted on the crimes of adultery, murder, perjury, and the capital thefts of an house or ox, and the fierceness of men were mild and just in their intercourse with each other. The future election of the great khan was vested in the princes of his family and the heads of the tribes; and the regulations of the chase were essential to the pleasures and plenty of a Tartar camp. The victorious nation was held mired from all servile labours, which were abandoned to slaves and strangers; and every labour was servile except the profession of arms. The service and discipline of the troops, who were armed with bows, cimeters, and iron maces, and divided by hundreds, thousands, and ten thousands, were the institutions of a veteran commander. Each officer and soldier was made responsible, under pain of death, for the safety and honour of his companions; and the spirit of conquest breathed in the law, that peace should never be granted unless to a vanquished and suppliant enemy. But it is the religion of Zingis that best deserves our wonder and applause. The Catholic inquisitors of Europe, who defended nonsense by cruelty, might have been confounded by the example of a barbarian, who anticipated the lessons of philosophy, and established by his laws a system of pure theism and perfect toleration. His first and only article of faith was the existence of one God, the author of all good; who fills by his presence the heavens and earth, which he has created by his power. The Tartars and Moguls were addicted to the idols of their peculiar tribes; and many of them had been converted by the foreign missionaries to the religions of Moses, of Mahomet, and of Christ. These various systems in freedom and concord, were taught and practised within the precincts of the same camp; and the Bone, the Imam, the Rabbi, the Nestarian, and the Latin priest, enjoyed the same honourable exemption from service and tribute: in the march of Bosh- chara, the insolent victor might trample the Koran under his horse's feet, but the calm legislator respected the prophets and pontiffs of the most hostile sects. The reason of Zingis was not informed by books; the khan could neither read nor write; and, except the tribe of the Iguons, the greatest part of the Moguls and Tartars were as illiterate as their sovereign. The memory of their exploits was preserved by tradition: sixty-eight years after the death of Zingis, these traditions were collected and transcribed; the brevity of their domestic annals may be supplied by the Chinese, Persians,
tic faction; and the five northern provinces were added to the empire of Zingis.

In the West, he touched the dominions of Muhammad sultan of Zingi, who reigned from the Persian A.D. 1215-1242, in the Syrian Gulf to the borders of India and Turkestan; and who, in the proud imitation of Alexander the Great, forgot the servitude and ingratitude of his fathers to the house of Seljuk. It was the wish of Zingis to establish a friendly and commercial intercourse with the most powerful of the Moslem princes; nor could he be tempted by the secret solicitations of the caliph of Bagdad, who sacrificed his personal welfare to the safety of the church and state. A rash and illibam remonstrated and justified the Tartar arms in the invasion of the southern Asia. A caravan of three ambassadors and one hundred and fifty merchants was arrested and murdered at Otrar, by the command of Mohammed; nor was it till after a demand and denial of justice, till he had prayed and fasted three nights on a mountain, that the Mogul emperor appealed to the judgment of God and his sword. Our European writers, says a philosophic writer, are petty skirmishes, if compared to the numbers that have fought and fallen in the fields of Asia. Seven hundred thousand Moguls and Tartars are said to have marched under the standard of Zingis and his four sons. In the vast plains that extend to the north of the Siun or Jaxartes, they were encountered by four hundred thousand soldiers of the sultan; and in the first battle, which was suspended by the night, one hundred and sixty thousand Carthagians were slain. Mohammed was astonished by the multitude and valour of his enemies; he withdrew from the scene of danger and distributed his troops in the frontier towns; trusting that the barbarians, invincible in the field, would be repulsed by the length and difficulty of so many regular sieges. But the prowess of Zingis had formed a body of Chinese engineers, skilled in all the mechanic arts; informed perhaps of the secret of gunpowder, and capable, under his discipline, of attacking a foreign country with as much vigour and success than they had defended their own. The Persian historians will relate the sieges and

---

9. A second capture. Vide Bagdad, the seat of the Mussulman empire, cap. i, p. 479.
10. A third invasion. Vide Bagdad, the seat of the Mussulman empire, cap. i, p. 479.
progeny, four sons, illustrious by a.d. 617—

1118 THE DECLINE AND FALL

Chap. LXXIV.

reduction of Otrar, Cogendis, Bokhara, Samarcand, Caranse, Herat, Merv, Nishapur, Helch, and Canahan, and the conquest of the rich and populous countries of Transoxiana, Caranse, and Chorasan. The destructive hostilities of Attila and the Huns have long since been elucidated by the example of Zingis and the Moguls; and in this more proper place I shall be content to observe, that, from the Caspian to the Indus, they ruined a tract of many hundred miles, which was adorned with the habitations and labours of mankind, and that five centuries have not been sufficient to repair the ravages of four years. The Mogul emperor encouraged or indulged the fury of his troops; the hope of future possession was lost in the ardour of rapine and slaughter; and the cause of the war exasperated their native ferocity by the presence of justice and revenge. The downfall and death of the sultan Mohammed, who expired unaided and alone, in a desert island of the Caspian Sea, is a poor monument for the calamities of which he was the author. Could the Carimian empire have been saved by a single hero, it would have been saved by his son Gela- ledin, whose active valour repeatedly checked the Moguls in the career of victory. Retreating, as he fought, to the banks of the Indus, he was opposed by their innumerable host, till, in the last moment of despair, Gela- ledin spurred his horse into the waves, swam one of the broadest and most rapid rivers of Asia, and exerted the admiration and applause of Zingis himself. It was in this camp that the Mogul conqueror yielded with reluctance to the marrows of his weary and wounded troops, who sighed for the enjoyment of their native land. Intoxicated with the spoils of Asia, he slowly measured back footsteps, betrayed some pity for the misery of the vanquished, and declared his intention of resuming the city which had been swept away by the tempest of his arms. After he had crossed the Oxus and Jazartas, he was joined by two generals, whom he had detached with thirty thousand horse, to subdue the western province of Pavara. They had trampled on the nations which opposed their passage, penetrated through the gates of Derbend, traversed the Volga and the desert, and accomplished the circuit of the Caspian Sea, by an expedition which had never been attempted, and has never been repeated. The return of Zingis was signalised by the overthrow of the rebellious or independent kingdoms of Tartary; and by his death in the fulness of years and glory, with his last breath exhorting and instructing his sons to achieve the conquest of the Chinese Empire.

The death of Zingis was composed of five hundred wives and concubines; and of his numerous progeny, four sons, illustrious by a.d. 617—

their father the principal offices of peace and war. Tolstoi was his great huntsman, Zagatai his judge, Octi his minister, and Tuli his general; and their names and actions are often conspicuous in the history of his conquests. Firmly united for their own and the public interest, the three brothers and their families were content with dependent sultans; and Octi, by general consent, was proclaimed great khan, or emperor of the Moguls and Tartars. He was succeeded by his son Guyuk, after whose death the empire devolved to his cousins Mangou and Cubbal, the sons of Tuli, and the grandsons of Zingis. In the sixty-eight years of his four first successors, the Mogul sultanae almost all Asia, and a large portion of Europe. Without confusing myself to the order of events, without expatiating on the detail of events, I shall present a general picture of the progress of their arms; I. In the East; II. In the South; III. In the West; and IV. In the North.

I. Before the invasion of Zingis, China was divided into two empires or dynasties, of the North and South; and the difference of origin and interest was smoothed by a general conformity of laws, language, and national manners. The Northern empire, which had been dismembered by Zingis, was finally subdued seven years after his death. After the loss of Pekin, the empire had fixed its residence at Kairong, a city many leagues in circumference, and which contained, according to the Chinese annals, fourteen hundred thousand families of inhabitants and fugitives. He escaped from thence with only seven horsemen, and made his last stand in a third capital, till at length the hopeless monarch, protests his innocence and accusing his fortunes, ascended a funeral pile, and gave orders, that, as soon as he had stabbed himself, the fire should be kindled by his attendants. The dynasty of the Sung, the native and ancient sovereign of the whole empire, survived about forty-five years the fall of the Northern usurpers; and the perfect conquest was reserved for the arms of Cubbal. During this interval, the Moguls were often diverted by foreign wars; and, if the Chinese seldom dared to meet their victors in the field, their passive courage presented an endless succession of cities to storm and of millions to slaughter. In the attack and defence of places, the engines of antiquity and the Greek fire were alternately employed; the use of gunpowder in cannon and bombs appears as a familiar practice; and the sieges were conducted by the Mahometans and Franks, who had been liberally invited into the service of Cubbal. After passing the great river, the troops and artillery were conveyed along a series
of canals, till they invented the royal residence of Hancheu, or Quinsay, in the country of silk, the most delicious climate of China. The emperor, a defenseless youth, surrendered his person and sceptre; and before he was sent in exile to Tartary, he struck nine times the ground with his forehead, to adore in prayer or thanksgiving the mercy of the great khan.

Yet the war (it was now styled a rebellion) was still maintained in the southern provinces from Hancheu to Canton; and the obstinate remnant of independence and hostility was transported from the land to the sea. But when the fleet of the Sung was surrounded and oppressed by a superior armament, their last champion leaped into the waves with his infant emperor in his arms. "It is more glorious," he cried, "to die a prince, than to live a slave." An hundred thousand Chinese imitated his example; and the whole empire from Tonkin to the great wall submitted to the dominion of Coblai. His boundless ambition aspiring to the conquest of Japan; his fleet was twice shipwrecked; and the lives of an hundred thousand Moguls and Chinese were sacrificed in the fruitless expedition. But the circumstantial kindness, Corco, Tonkin, Cochinchina, Pegu, Bengal, and Thibet, were reduced in different degrees of tribute and obedience by the effort or the energy of his arms. He explored the Indian Ocean with a fleet of a thousand ships; they sailed in sixty-eight days, most probably to the Isle of Bornos, under the equinocial line; and though they returned not without spoil or glory, the emperor was dissatisfied that the savage king had escaped from their hands.

II. The conquest of Hindostan. The conquest of Hindostan by the Moguls was reserved in a great measure, for the latter period of the house of Timour; but that of Iran, or Persia, was achieved by Holagou Khan, the grandson of Zingla, the brother and lieutenant of the two successive emperors, Mangou and Coblai. I shall not enumerate the crimes of sultans, emirs, and statesmen, whom he trampled into dust: but the execution of the Sassanians, or Ismaelians, of Persia, may be considered as a service to mankind. Among the hills to the south of the Caspian, those odious sectaries had reigned with impunity above an hundred and sixty years; and their prince, or Imam, established his dominion to lead and govern the colony of Mount Libanus, so famous and formidable in the history of the crusades. With the fanaticism of the Kouran the Ismaelians had blinded the Indian transmigration, and the visions of their own prophets; and it was their first duty to destroy their souls and bodies in blind obedience to the voice of God. The daggers of their missionaries were felt both in the East and West; the Christian and the Mussulman execrate and perhaps multiply, the illustrious victims that were sacrificed to the zeal, avarice, or resentment of the old man (as he was correctly styled) of the musulmans. But those daggers, his only arms, were broken by the sword of Holagou, and not a savage is left of the enemies of mankind, except the word assassin, which, in the most civilized annexes, has been adopted in the languages of Europe. The extinction of the Abbasid caliph in Egypt is not indifferent to the spectators of their greatness and decline. Since the fall of their Seljukian tyrants, the caliphate had recovered its lawful dominion of Bagdad and the Arabian Irak; but the city was distracted by theological factions, and the commander of the faithful was lost in a bustle of seven hundred conculcisons. The invasion of the Moguls he encountered with feeble arms and hasty embassies. On the divine docet, said the caliph Mustarsen, is founded the throne of the sons of Abbas; and their foes shall surely be destroyed in this world and in the next. Who is this Holagou that dares to arise against them? If he be desirous of peace, let him instantly desert part from the sacred territory; and perhaps he may obtain from our clemency the pardon of his faults. This presumption was extinguished by a perfidious vixir, who assured his master, that, even if the barbarians had entered the city, the women and children, from the terraces, would be sufficient to overwhelm them with stones. But when Holagou touched the phantom, it instantly vanished into smoke. After a siege of two months, Bagdad was storm'd and sacked by the Moguls: and their savage commander pronounced the death of the caliph Mustarsen, the last of the temporal successors of Mahomet; whose noble kinsmen, the sons of Abbas, had reigned in Asia above five hundred years. Whatever might be the designs of the conqueror, the holy cities of Mecca and Medina were protected by the Arabian desert; but the Moguls spread beyond the Tigris and Euphrates, pillaged Aleppo and Damascus, and threatened to join the Franks in the deliverance of Jerusalem. Egypt was lost, had she been defended only by her feeble offspring; but the Mustaikeurs had breathed in their infancy the genial air, equal in valour, superior in discipline, they met the Moguls in many a well-fought field; and drove back the streams of hostility to the antecedent of the Euphrates. But it overawed with reckless violence the kingly race of Armenia and Anatolia, of which the former was possessed by the Christians, and the latter by the Turks. The violence of the monastic opposed some resistance to the Mogul arms, till Anatolia sought a refuge among the Greeks of Constantinople, and his feeble successors, the last of the Seljukian dynasty, were finally extirpated by the khan of Persia.

III. No sooner had Octai subverted the northern empire of China, than he resolved to visit his eastern arm the most remote countries of the West. Fifteen hundred thousand Moguls

[Note: The page continues with additional text.]
and Tartars were inscribed on the military roll: of these the great khan selected a third, which he intrusted to the command of his nephew Batou, the son of Tuli, who reigned over his father’s conquests to the north of the Caspian Sea. After a festival of forty days, Batou set forwards on this great expedition; and such was the speed and ardour of his innumerable squadrons, that in less than six years they had measured a line of ninety degrees of longitude, a fourth part of the circumference of the globe. The great rivers of Asia and Europe, the Volga and Kama, the Don and Borysthenes, the Vistula and Danube, they either swam with their horses, or passed on the ice, or traversed in their ships, which followed the camp, and transported their wagons and artillery. By the first victories of Batou, the remains of national freedom were eradicated in the immense plains of Turkestan and Kipar.  

In his rapid progress, he overran the kingdoms, as they are now styled, of Astrakan and Casan; and the troops which he detached towards Mount Caucasus, explored the most secret recesses of Georgia and Circassia. The civil discord of the great dukes, or princes, of Russia, betrayed their country to the Tartars. They spread from Livonia to the Black Sea, and both Moscow and Kiev, the modern and the ancient capitals, were reduced to ashes; a temporary ruin, less fatal than the deep, and perhaps intelliens, mark, which a servitude of two hundred years has impressed on the character of the Russians. The Tartars ravaged with equal fury the countries which they hoped to possess, and those which they were hastening to leave. From the permanent conquest of Russia, they made a daily, though transient, inroad into the heart of Poland, and as far as the borders of Germany. The cities of Lublin and Cracow were obliterated; they approached the shores of the Baltic; and in the battle of Lignitz, they defeated the dukes of Silesia, the Polish panthers, and the great master of the Teutonic order, and filled nine sacks with the right ears of the slain. From Lignitz, the extreme point of their western march, they turned aside to the invasion of Hungary; and the presence or spirit of Batou inspired the host of five hundred thousand men: the Carpathian hills could not be long impervious to their divided columns; and their approach had been[568] feebly dissuaded till it was irresistibly felt. The king, Bela the Fourth, assembled the military forces of his counts and bishops; but he had alienated the nation by adopting a vagrant horde of forty thousand families of Commons, and these savage guests were provoked to revolt by the suspicion of treachery and the murder of their prince. The whole country north of the Danube was lost in a day, and depopulated in a summer; and the ruins of cities and churches were overgrown with the branches of the natives, who expiated the sins of their Turkish ancestors.

An ecclesiastic, who fled from the sack of Warsaw, describes the calamities which he had seen, or suffered; and the singular rage of Tuli, and the Tartars, is far less atrocious than the treatment of the fugitives, who had been allured from the woods under a promise of peace and pardon, and who were cruelly slaughtered as soon as they had performed the labours of the harvest and vintage. In the winter, the Tartars passed the Danube on the ice, and advanced to Gran or Strigunium, a German colony, and the metropolis of the kingdom. Thirty engines were planted against the walls; the ditches were filled with sacks of earth and dead bodies; and after a precipiscious massacre, three hundred noble matrons were slain in the presence of the khan. Of all the cities and fortresses of Hungary, three alone survived the Tartar invasion, and the unfortunate Bela hid his head among the islands of the Haftronic. The Latin world was darkened by this cloud of savage hostility: a Russian fugitive carried the alarm to Sweden; and the remote nations of the Baltic and the ocean trembled at the approach of the Tartars, whose fear and ignorance were inclined to separate from the human species. Since the invasion of the Arabs in the eighth century, Europe had never been exposed to a similar calamity; and if the disciples of Mamomet would have oppressed her religion and liberty, it might be apprehended that the scholars of Scythia would extinguish her cities, her arts, and all the institutions of civil society. The Roman pontiff attempted to appease and convert these invincible Pagans by a mission of Franciscan and Dominican friars; but he was astonished by the reply of the khan, that the sons of God and of Zingis were invested with a divine power to subdue or extirpate the nations; and that the pope would be involved in the universal destruction, unless he visited in person, and as a suppliant, the royal bower. The emperor Frederic the Second embraced a more generous mode of defence; and his letters to the kings of France and England, and the princes of Germany, represented the common danger, and urged them to arm their vassals in this just and national crusade. The Tartars themselves were awed by the fame and valour of the Franks: the town of Neubaltz in Austria was bravely defended against them by fifty knights and twenty cross-bowmen; and they raised the siege on the appearance of a German army. After wasting the adjacent kingdoms of Servia, Bosnia, and Bulgaria, Batou slowly retreated from the Danube to the Volga, to enjoy the rewards of victory in the city and palace of Serai, which started at his command from the midst of the desert.

IV. Even the poor and frozen regions of the North attracted the arms of the Moguls: Sheshan...
Khan, the brother of the great Batou, led an horde of fifteen thousand families into the wilds of Siberia; and his descendants reigned at Tobolsk from above three centuries, till the Russian conquest. The spirit of enterprise which pursued the course of the Oly and Yenissei must have led to the discovery of the Icy Sea. After brushing away the monstrous fishes, of men with dogs’ heads and eleven feet, we shall find, three, fifteen years after the death of Zingis, the Mogul Khan, informed of the name and masters of the Seruanles in the neighbourhood of the polar circle, who dwelt in subterraneous huts, and derived their furs and their food from the sole occupation of hunting.30

While China, Syria, and Poland, were invaded at the same time by the Moguls and Tartars, the authors of the mighty mischief were content with the knowledge and declaration, that their word was the sword of death. Like the first caliph, the first successors of Zingis seldom appeared in person at the head of their victorious armies. On the banks of the Onon and Selings, the royal or golden horse exhibited the contrast of simplicity and greatness; of the roasted sheep and mare’s milk, which composed their banquets; and of a distribution in one day of five hundred wagons of gold and silver. The ambassadors and princes of Europe and Asia were compelled to undertake this distant and laborious pilgrimage: and the life and reign of the great dukes of Russia, the kings of Georgia and Armenia, the sultains of Iouanou, and the emirs of Persia, were decked by the brown or smile of the great Khan. The sons and grandsons of Zingis had been accustomed to the pastoral life; but the village of Caracorum31 was gradually abandoned by their election and residence. A change of manners is implied in the removal of Otao, the successor of Mangou from a tent to an house; and their example was imitated by the princes of their family and the great officers of the empire. Instead of the boundless forest, the enclosure of a park afforded the more indolent pleasures of the chase; their new habitations were decorated with painting and sculpture; their superfluous treasures were cast in fountains, and basins, and statues of costly silver; and the artists of China and Paris vied with each other in the service of the great khan.32 Caracorum contained two streets, the one of Chinese mechanics, the other of Mahometan traders; and the places of religious worship, one Nestorian church, two mosques, and twelve temples of various kinds, may represent in some degree the number and division of inhabitants. Yet a French missionary declares, that the town of St. Denys, near Paris, was more considerable than the Tartar capital; and that the whole palace of Mangou was scarcely equal to a tenth part of that Benedictine abbey. The conquests of Russus and Syria might amuse the vanity of the great khan; but they were wasted on the borders of China; the acquisition of that empire was the nearest and most interesting object; and they might learn from their pastoral economy, that it is for the advantage of the shepherd to protect and propagate his flock. I have already celebrated the wisdom and virtue of a man, who prevented the devastation of five populous and cultivated provinces. In a spiteless administration of thirty years, this friend of his country and of mankind contumeliously laboured to mitigate, or suspend, the havoc of war; to save the monuments, and to rekindle the flame of science; to restrain the military commander by the restoration of civil magnificence; and to instill the love of peace and justice into the minds of the Moguls. He struggled with the barbarism of the first conquerors; but his salutary lessons produced a rich harvest in the second generation. The northern, and by degrees, the southern, empire, asquipped in the government of Cuhdi, the lieutenant, and afterwards the successor, of Mangou; and the nation was loyal to a prince who had been educated in the manners of China. He restored the forms of her venerable constitution; and the victors submitted to the laws, the fashions, and even the prejudices, of the vanquished people. This peaceful triumph, which has been more than once repeated, may be ascribed, in a great measure, to the numbers and servitude of the Chinese. The Mogul army was dissolved in a vast and populous country; and their emperors adopted with pleasure a political system, which gives to the prince the solid substance of despotism, and leaves to the subject the empty names of philosophy, freedom, and flatter obedience. Under the reign of Cuhdi, letters and commerce, peace and justice, were restored; the great canal, of five hundred miles, was opened from Nan-kai to the capital: he fixed his residence at Pekin and displayed in his court the magnificence of the greatest princes of Asia. 

Yet this learned prince esteemed from the pure and simple religion of his great ancestor; he sacrificed to the idol Po; and his blind attachment to the laws of Tibet and the house of China33 provoked the censure of the disciples of Confussus. His successors polluted the palace with a crowd of mungoes, physicians, and astrologers, while thirteen millions of their subjects were consumed in the provinces by famine. One hundred and sixty years after the death of Zingis, his degenerate race, the dynasty of the Yuees, was expelled by a revolt of the native Chinese; and the Mogul emperors were lost in the oblivion of the heart. Before this revolution, they had restored to their supremacy over the dependent branchies of their house, the khan of Kipauh and Russia, the khan of Zaratgal or Tarsamos, who, supported by sea trade, and superior to all surrounding nations, made Pekin the capital of the empire, and the residence of the supreme power of the Tartars. The Tartar power was extended from the Bojovny to the Siberian lands; and the Chinese Tartars, by the Chinese and Tartars, were not so far from the Tartar power. This nationalist is of the Tartar and the Tartar princes, who held the supreme power of the Tartar race. They were not, with the Tartar princes, the successors of the Tartar princes, and the Tartar emperors, the successors of the Tartar princes. They were not, with the Tartar princes, the successors of the Tartar princes, and the Tartar emperors, the successors of the Tartar princes. They were not, with the Tartar princes, the successors of the Tartar princes, and the Tartar emperors, the successors of the Tartar princes. They were not, with the Tartar princes, the successors of the Tartar princes, and the Tartar emperors, the successors of the Tartar princes.
and the khans of Iran or Persia. By their distance and power these royal lieutenants had soon been released from the duties of obedience; and after the death of Cubul, they scorned to accept a sceptre or a title from his unworthy successors. According to their respective situation, they maintained the simplicity of the pastoral life, or assumed the luxury of the cities of Asia; but the princes and their hordes were alike disposed for the reception of a foreign worship. After some hesitation between the Gospel and the Koran, they conformed to the religion of Mahomet; and while they adopted for their brethren the Arabs and Persians, they renounced all intercourse with the ancient Moguls, the idolaters of China.

In this shipwreck of nations, some surprise may be excited by the escape of the Roman empire, whose relics, as the time of the Magul invasion, were dismembered by the Greeks and Latins. Less potent than Alexander, they were praised, like the Macedonian, both in Europe and Asia, by the shepherds of Scythia; and had the Tartars undertaken the siege, Constantinople must have yielded to the fates of Pekin, Samarcand, and Bagdad. The glorious and voluntary retreat of Heraclius from the Danube was insulited by the vain triumph of the Franks and Greeks; 28 and in a second expedition, death surprised him in full march to attack the capital of the Caesars. His brother Hruskas carried the Tartar arms into Bulgaria and Thrace; but he was diverted from the Byzantine war by a visit to Novgorod, in the fifty-seventh degree of latitude, where he numbered the inhabitants and regulated the tributes of Russia. The Mogul khan formed an alliance with the Mamlukes against his brethren of Persia: three hundred thousand horse penetrated through the gates of Derband; and the Greeks might have rejoiced in the first example of domestic war. After the recovery of Constantinople, Michael Palaeologus, 29 at a distance from his court and army, was surprised and surrounded, in a Tatarian castle, by twenty thousand Tartars. But the object of their march was a private interest: they came to the deliverance of Araslin, the Turkish sultan; and were content with his person and the treasures of the emperor. Their general Noga, whose arms are perpetuated in the hordes of Astrakan, raised a formidable rebellion against Mongo Timour, the third of the khan of Kipchak; obtained in marriage Maria the natural daughter of Palaeologus; and guarded the dominions of his friend and father. The subsequent invasions of a Scythian cast were those of outlaws and fugitives; and some thousands of Alani and Cumans, who had been driven from their native seas, were reclaimed from a vagrant life, and enlisted in the service of the empire. Such was the influence in Europe of the invasion of the Moguls. The first terror of their arms secured, rather than disturbed, the peace of the Roman Asia. The sultan of Irujium solicited a personal interview with John Vatates; and his artful policy encouraged the Turks to defend their barrier against the common enemy. 30 That barrier indeed was soon overturned; and the servitude and ruin of the Seljukians exposed the nakedness of the Greeks. The formidable Holagus threatened to march to Constantinople at the head of four hundred thousand men; and the groundless panic of the citizens of Nicæa will present an image of the terror which he had inspired. The accident of a procession, and the sound of a dull chant, "From the fury of the Tartars, good Lord, deliver us!" had scattered the hasty report of an assault and massacre. In the blind credulity of fear, the streets of Nicæa were crowded with thousands of both sexes, who knew not from what or to whom they fled; and some hours elapsed before the firmness of the military officers could relieve the city from this imaginary foe. But the ambition of Holagus and his successors was fortunately diverted by the conquest of Bagdad, and a long vicissitude of Syrian wars: their hostility to the Moslems inclined them to unite with the Greeks and Franks; 31 and their generosity or contempt had offered the kingdom of Anatolia as the reward of an Armenian vassal. The fragments of the Seljukian monarchy were disputed by the emirs who had occupied the cities or the mountains; but they all confessed the supremacy of the khan of Persia; and he often interposed his authority, and sometimes his arms, to check their depredations, and to preserve the peace and balance of his Turkish frontier. The death of Cazan, 32 one of the greatest and most accomplished princes of the house of Zingis, removed that military control; and the decline of the Moguls gave a free scope to the rise and progress of the Orkney.toList

30 "From the fury of the Tartars, good Lord, deliver us!" had scattered the hasty report of an assault and massacre. In the blind credulity of fear, the streets of Nicæa were crowded with thousands of both sexes, who knew not from what or to whom they fled; and some hours elapsed before the firmness of the military officers could relieve the city from this imaginary foe. But the ambition of Holagus and his successors was fortunately diverted by the conquest of Bagdad, and a long vicissitude of Syrian wars: their hostility to the Moslems inclined them to unite with the Greeks and Franks; and their generosity or contempt had offered the kingdom of Anatolia as the reward of an Armenian vassal. The fragments of the Seljukian monarchy were disputed by the emirs who had occupied the cities or the mountains; but they all confessed the supremacy of the khan of Persia; and he often interposed his authority, and sometimes his arms, to check their depredations, and to preserve the peace and balance of his Turkish frontier. The death of Cazan, one of the greatest and most accomplished princes of the house of Zingis, removed that military control; and the decline of the Moguls gave a free scope to the rise and progress of the Orkney.toList
sultan's fortune. The bolder and more powerful chiefs invaded Syria, and violated the holy sepulchre of Jerusalem: the more humble engaged in the service of Aladin, sultan of Iconium; and among these were the obscure fathers of the Ottoman line. They had formerly pitched their tents near the southern banks of the Oxus, in the plains of Malan and Nesa; and it is somewhat remarkable, that the same spot should have produced the first authors of the Parthian and Turkish empires. At the head, or in the rear, of a Carmian army, Soliman Shah was drowned in the passage of the Euphrates. His son Orthogrius became the soldier and subject of Aladin, and established at Sargut, on the banks of the Sangar, a camp of four hundred families or tents, whom he governed fifty-two years both in peace and war. He was the father of Thuman, or Athman, whose Turkish name has been mixed into the episcopal, of the caliph Othman; and if we describe that pastoral chief as a shepherd and a robber, we must separate from these characters all idea of ignominy and baseness. Othman possessed, and perhaps surpassed, the ordinary virtues of a soldier; and the circumstances of time and place were propitious to his independence and success. The Seljukian dynasty was no more; and the distance and decline of the Mongol khans soon disfranchised him from the control of a superior. He was in the vogue of the Greek empire: the Khorsan sanctified his seat, or holy war, against the infidels; and political errors unlocked the passes of Mount Olympus, and invited him to descend into the plains of Bithynia. Till the reign of Palaeologus, these passes had been vigilantly guarded by the militia of the country, who were repulsed by their own safety and an exemption from taxes. The emperor abolished their privilege and assumed their office; but the tribute was rigorously collected, the custody of the passes was neglected, and the hardy mountaineers degenerated into a galling crowd of peasants without spirit or discipline. It was on the twenty-seventh of July, in the year twelve hundred and ninety-nine of the Christian era, that Othman first invaded the territory of Nicomedia; and the singular accuracy of the date seems to disclose some foresight of the rapid and destructive growth of the monster. The annals of the twenty-seven years of his reign would exhibit a repetition of the same events; and his hereditary troops were multiplied in each campaign by the accession of captives and volunteers. Instead of retreating to the hills, he maintained the most useful and defensible posts; fortified the towns and castles which he had first pillaged; and renounced the pastoral life for the labors and palaces of his infant capitals. But it was not till Othman was oppressed by age and infirmities, that he received the welcome news of the conquest of Pruss, which had been surrendered by famine or treachery to the arms of his son Orchan. The glory of Othman is chiefly founded on that of his descendants; but the Turks have transcribed or composed a royal testament of his last councils of justice and moderation. From the conquest of Pruss, we may date the true era of the Ottoman empire. The lives and possessions of the Christian subjects were redeemed by a tribute or ransom of thirty thousand crowns of gold; and the city, by the labors of Orchan, assumed the aspect of a Malacca capital. Pruss was adorned with a mosque, a college, and an hospital, of royal foundation; the Seljukian coin was changed for the same and impression of the new dynasty; and the most skilful professors, of human and divine knowledge, attracted the Persian and Arab students from the ancient schools of Oriental learning. The office of vizier was instituted for Aladin, the brother of Orchan; and a different habit distinguished the citizens from the peasants, the Mussulmans from the infidels. All the troops of Othman had consisted of horse squadrons of Tarkman cavalry; who served without pay and fought without discipline; but a regular body of infantry was first established and trained by the prudence of his son. A great number of volunteers was enrolled with a small stipend, but with the permission of living at home, unless they were summoned to the field; their rude manners, and sedition temper, disposed Orchan to educate his young captives as his soldiers and those of the prophet; but the Turkish peasants were still allowed to mount on horseback, and follow his standard, with the appellation and the hopes of freedom. By these arts be formed an army of twenty-five thousand Moslems: a train of battering-engines was framed for the use of sieges; and the first successful experiment was made on the cities of Nicosia and Nicomedia. Orchan granted a safe-conduct to all who were desirous of departing with their families and effects; but the widows of the slain were given in marriage to the conquerors; and the accursed plunder, the books, the vases, and the images, were sold or preserved at Constantinople. The sultan Andronicus the Younger was unshackled and wounded by the son of Othman; he subdued the whole province of Bithynia, as far as the shores of the Bosphorus and Gallespont; and the Christians confessed the justice and clemency of a reign, which claimed the voluntary attachment of the Turks of Asia. Yet Orchan was

60 See Parker's Life, v. 6, p. 33, 34, 35, 36, 37. See, also, the works of Sir Thomas Herbert, Sir John Harington, and others, concerning the manners and customs of the Turks. English from the Latin of Erasmus, printed at Oxford in 1501; translated by John Capreolus, and published in London (1707). The site of the city of Orchan is near the modern city of Orhan, in Asia Minor. It was once a port, and the site of a great commercial center. The city was destroyed in the 19th century and is now a ruin. The name Orchan is derived from the Turkish word for "dragon," and it was once a center of dragon worship. The city was later conquered by the Seljuks, who established a dynasty there. The Seljuks were a Turkic people who ruled much of Asia Minor and parts of the Middle East. Their capital was at Nicosia. The Seljuks were known for their tolerance of different religions and their support of the arts. They were also known for their military campaigns and conquests. The Seljuks were eventually overthrown by the Ottomans, who established a strong empire in the region. The Ottomans were a Turkish people who established the Ottoman Empire, which lasted from the 14th to the 19th century. The Ottomans were known for their military campaigns and conquests, as well as their tolerance of different religions and their support of the arts. They were also known for their expansion and their influence in the region. The Ottomans were eventually defeated by the Western powers, who established the modern Turkish Republic in the 20th century. The Ottoman Empire was gov.
content with the modest title of emir; and in
the list of his conquers, the princes
of Ionia or Anatolia, his military
forces were surpassed by the emirs
of Gheman and Caramania, each
of whom could bring into the field an army of
forty thousand men. Their dominions were
situated in the heart of the Seljukian kingdom:
but the holy warriors, though of inferior note,
who formed new principalities on the Greek
empire, were more conspicuous in the light of his-
tory. The maritime country from the Propontis
to the Mazon and the Isle of Rhodes, so long
threatened and so often pillaged, was finally
lost about the thirteenth year of Andronicus the
Elder. 44 Two Turkish chieftains, Sarrukhan and
Aldin, left their names to their conquests, and
their conquests to their posterity.
The captivity or ruin of the great
churches of Asia was consummated;
and the barbarous lords of Ionia and Lydia still
temple on the monuments of classic and
Christian antiquity. In the loss of Ephesus, the
Christians despoiled the fall of the first angel,
the extinction of the first candlestick, of the
Revelations; 45 the desolation is complete; and the
temple of Diana, or the church of Mary, will
equally elude the search of the curious traveller.
The circus and three stately theatres of Laodicea
are now peopled with wolves and foxes; Sardis
is reduced to a miserable village; the God of
Mathemat, without a rival or a son, is invoked
in the monas of Thyatira and Pergamus; and
the populosities of Soryna is supported by the
foreign trade of the Franks and Armenians.
Philadelphia alone has been saved by prophecy
or courage. At a distance from the sea,
Regentin by the emperors, encompassed on all
sides by the Turks, her valiant citizens defended
their religion and freedom about four score years;
and at length capitulated with the prudence of
the Ottomans. Among the Greek colonies and
churches of Asia, Philadelphia is still erect;
a column in a scene of ruins; a pleasing
example, that the paths of honour and safety may
sometimes be the same. The serv-
itude of Rhodes was delayed about
two centuries by the establishment
of the knights of St. John of Jeru-
salem; 46 under the discipline of the order, that
island emerged into fame and opulence; the
noble and warlike monks were renowned by
land and sea; and the burk of Christendom
provoked, and repelled, the arms of the Turks
and Saracens.

The Greeks, by their intestine
visions, were the authors of their
final ruin. During the civil wars
of the elder and younger Amaelios, the son of
Othman achieved, almost without resistance,
the conquest of Bithynia; and the same
disorders encouraged the Turkish emirs of

44 The possession of the Turkish emirs is extended from two
conquering, the Greek 'Necropofus' is the Greek 'Necropofus'
and the Turks. The history of the Turks is the first book of the 'Necropofus.'

45 The temple of Diana of Ephesus, and the church of Mary, in
the ruins of Ephesus, are still visible. The temple of Diana
in the ruins of Ephesus, is still visible. The temple of
Diana, or the church of Mary, will equally elude the
search of the curious traveller.

46 The possession of the Turkish emirs is extended from two
conquering, the Greek 'Necropofus' is the Greek 'Necropofus'
and the Turks. The history of the Turks is the first book of the 'Necropofus.'

47 The possession of the Turkish emirs is extended from two
conquering, the Greek 'Necropofus' is the Greek 'Necropofus'
and the Turks. The history of the Turks is the first book of the 'Necropofus.'

48 Before his death, he generously
recommended another ally of his own nation; not more sincere or zealous than himself, but more able to afford a prompt and powerful succour, by his situation along the Propontis and in the front of Constantinople. By the prospect of a more advantageous treaty, the Turkish prince of Bithynia was detached from his engagements with Anna of Savoy; and the pride of Orchan dictated the most solemn protestations, that if he could obtain the daughter of Cantacuzene, he would invariably fulfil the duties of a subject and a son. Parental tenderness was silenced by the voice of ambition; the Greek clergy concluded at the marriage of a Christian princess with a sectary of Mabomart; and the father of Theodore describes, with staunch satisfaction, the dishonour of the purple. A body of Turkish cavalry attended the ambassadors, who disappeared from thirty vessels before his camp of Scylisbaria. A stately pavilion was erected, in which the empress Irene passed the night with her daughters. In the morning, Theodore ascended a throne, which was surrounded with curtains of silk and gold; the troops were under arms; but the emperor alone was on horseback. At a signal the curtains were suddenly withdrawn, to disclose the bride, or the victim encircled by streaming emblems and by-menial torches; the sound of flutes and trumpets proclaimed the joyful event; and the pretended happiness was in the theme of the nuptial song, which was sung by such poets as the age could produce. Without the rites of the church, Theodore was delivered to her barbarous lord; but her hair had been stipulated, that she should preserve her religion in the name of Rustam; and his father celebrates her charity and devotion in this ambiguous situation. After his peaceful establishment on the throne of Constantinople, the Greek emperor visited his Turkish ally, who had four sons, by various wives, expected him at Scutari, on the Asiatic shore. The two princes partook, with seeming cordiality, of the pleasures of the banquet and the chase; and Theodore was permitted to repose the Bosporus, and to enjoy some days in the society of his mother. But the friendship of Orchan was subservient to his religion and interest; and in the Genoese war he joined without a blush the enemies of Cantacuzene.

In the treaty with the empress Anne, the Ottoman prince had inserted a singular condition, that it should be lawful for him to sell his prisoners at Constantinople, or transport them into Asia. A naked crowd of Christians of both sexes and every age, of priests and monks, of matrons and virgins, was exposed in the public market; the whip was frequently used to quicken the charity of redemption; and the indigent Greeks deplored the fate of their brethren, who were led away to the worst evils of temporal and spiritual bondage. Cantacuzene was reduced to subscribe the same terms; and their execution must have been still more pernicious to the empire: a body of ten thousand Turks had been detached to the assistance of the empress Anne; but the entire forces of Orchan were exerted in the service of his father. Yet these calamities were of a transient nature; as soon as the storm had passed away, the fugitives might return to their habitations; and at the conclusion of the civil and foreign wars, Europe was completely evacuated by the Moslems of Asia. It was in his last quarter with his pupil, that Cantacuzene inflicted the deep and deadly wound, which could never be healed by his successors, and which is poorly expiated by his theological disquisitions against the prophet Mahomet. Ignorant of their own history, the modern Turks confounded their first and their final passage of the Hellespont, and describe the son of Orchan as a nocturnal robber, who, with eighty companions, explores by stratagem an hostile and unknown shore. Soliman, at the head of ten thousand horse, was transported in the vessels, and entertained as the friend, of the Greek emperor. In the civil wars of Romania, he performed the functions of a turban, and perpetuated the chief; but the Chersonesians were immediately filled with a Turkish colony; and the Byzantine court solicited in vain the restitution of the fortress of Thrace. After some arduous delays between the Ottoman prince and his son, their ransom was valued at sixty thousand crowns, and the first payment had been made, when an earthquake shook the walls and cities of the province; the dismantled places were occupied by the Turks; and Gallipoli, the key of the Hellespont, was rebuilt and repeopled by the policy of Soliman. The abdication of Cantacuzene dissolved the feeble bands of domestic alliance; and his last advice admonished his countrymen to decline a rash contest, and to compare their own weakness with the numbers and valour, the discipline and enthusiasm, of the Moslems. His prudent counsels were despised by the hasty vanity of youth, and soon justified by the victories of the Ottomans. But as he practised in the old the exercise of the young, Soliman was killed by a fall from his horse; and the aged Orchan wept and expired on the tomb of his valiant son.

But the Greeks had not time to rejoice in the death of their enemies; and the Turkish cimiter was welded with the same spirit by Amurath the First, the son of Orchan, and the brother of Soliman. By the pale and fainting light of the Byzantine annals, we can discern, that he subdued without resistance the whole province of Romania or Thrace, from the Hellespont to Mount Hermus, and the verge of the capital; and that Adrianople was

---

35 See Cantacuzene, i. So. p. 85. Nicodemus Gregoire, who, for the light of nations, to whom the emperor of Russia presents this volume, and the privilege of possession of this and many other valuable works, wishes to express our gratitude, and to acknowledge his loyalty and service of Orchan, mentions, in his history of the Pious Emperors, the death of the Turkish prince, and the events which ensued, in the year 1466. 36 See the works of his eminence, Dr. Wharton, who has done great service for the cause of learning and piety, by translating his works into English: and his monograph the latest and most complete record. 37 See the life of Constantine the First, the most remarkable and celebrated of his race, by the late learned Dr. Wharton, who has given us the most authentic and correct account of the life and reign of that monarch, and of his son, the Second Emperor, and of the glorious empire of the Byzantine, from the origin of the world to the advent of the Moors in the East.
chosen for the royal seat of his government and religion in Europe and Constantinople, whose decline is almost equal to her foundation, had often, in the lapse of a thousand years, been assailed by the barbarians from the East and West; but never till this fatal hour had the Greeks been surrounded, both in Asia and Europe, by the arms of the same hostile multitude. Yet the prudence or greatness of Amurath postposed for a while this easy conquest; and his pride was satisfied with the frequent and sumptuous attendance of the emperor John Palaeologus and his four sons, who followed, at his summons, the court and camp of the Ottoman prince. He marched against the Sclavonian nations between the Danube and the Adriatic, the Bulgarians, Servians, Russians, and Alamanians; and these warlike tribes, who had so often insulted the majesty of the empire, were repeatedly broken by his destructive invasions. Their countries did not abound always in gold or silver; nor were their rustic hamlets and townships enriched by commerce, or decorated by the arts of luxury. But the natives of the soil have been distinguished in every age by their hardness of mind and body; and they were converted by a prudent institution into the firmest and most faithful supporters of the Ottoman greatness. The victory of Amurath reminded his sovereign that, according to the Mahometan law, he was entitled to a fifth part of the spoil and captives; and that the duty might easily be levied, if vigilant officers were stationed at Gallipoli, to watch the passage, and to select for his use the stoutest and most beautiful of the Christian youth. The advice was followed; the edict was proclaimed, many thousands of the European captives were educated in religion and arms, and the new militia was consecrated and manned by a celebrated dervish. Standing in the front of their ranks, he stretched the sleeve of his gown over the head of the foremost soldier, and his blessing was delivered in these words:—Let them be "called Janizaries" (Tangi cheki, or new soldiers); may their courage be ever bright! their heart victorious! their sword keen! may their spear always hang over the heads of their enemies! and wherever they go, may they return with a white face!" Such was the origin of these haughty troops, the terror of the nations, and sometimes, of the sultans themselves. Their valor has declined, their discipline is relaxed, and their还想血ary array is incapable of contending with the order and weapons of modern tactics; but at the time of their institution, they possessed a decisive superiority in war; since a regular body of infantry, in constant exercise and pay, was not maintained by any of the princes of Christendom. The Janizaries fought with the zeal of prescribers against their idolators.

countrymen; and in the battle of Cossove, the league and independence of the Sclavonian tribes was finally crushed. As the conqueror walked over the field, he observed that the greatest part of the slain consisted of homeless youths; and listened to the flattering reply of his vizir, that age and wisdom would have taught them not to oppose his irresistible arms. But the sword of his Janizaries could not defend him from the dangers of despair; a Servian soldier started from the crowd of dead bodies, and Amurath was pierced in the belly with a mortal wound. The grandson of Othman was mild in his temper, modest in his apparel, and a lover of learning and virtue; but the Moslems were scandalised at his absence from public worship; and he was corrected by the sternness of the musul; who dared to reject his testimony in a civil cause: a mixture of servitude and freedom not infrequent in Oriental history.

The character of Bajazet, the son and successor of Amurath, is strongly expressed in his surname A.bajazet, the Lightning; and he might truly be an epithet, which was drawn from the fury energy of his soul and the rapidity of his destructive march. In the fourteen years of his reign, he incessantly moved at the head of his armies, from Bosnia to Adrianople, from the Danube to the Euphrates; and, though he strenuously laboured for the propagation of the law, he invaded, with impartial ambition, the Christian and Mahometan princes of Europe and Asia. From Asia and in Armenia, and Transylvania, the northern regions of Amatia were reduced to his despotic obedience: he stripped of their hereditary possessions, his brother heirs of Gheidian and Carmania, of Abtin and Serbuklan; and after the conquest of Iznivaus, the ancient kingdom of the Seljukians again revered in the Ottoman dynasty. Nor were the conquests of Bajazet less rapid or important in Europe. No sooner had he imposed a regular form and discipline on the Servians and Bulgarians, than he passed the Danube to seek new enemies and new subjects in the heart of Moldavia. Whatever he adhered to the Greek empire in Thrace, Macedonia, and Tesny, acknowledged a Turkish master; an obsequious bishop led him through the gates of Thermopylae into Greece, and we may observe, as a singular fact, that the widow of a Spanish chief, who possessed the ancient seat of the oracle of Delphi, deserved his favour by the sacrifice of a beautiful daughter. The Turkish communication between Europe and Asia had been dangerous and dubious, till he stationed at Gallipoli a fleet of galleys, to command the Hellespont and intercept the Latin successors of Constantinople. While the monarch indulged his passions in a boundless range of injustice and cruelty, he imposed on his sub-
diers the most rigid laws of modesty and abstinence; and the harrest was peaceably respect and sold, within the precincts of his ramp. Provoked by the loose and corrupt administration of justice, he collected in a house the judges and lawyers of his dominions, who expected that in a few moments the fire would be kindled to reduce them to ashes. His ministers trembled in silence. But an Ethiopian buffoon presumed to imitate the true cause of the evil; and future venality was left without excuse, by assailing an adequate salary to the office of cash. The humble title of emir was no longer suitable to the Ottoman greatness; and Bajazet emancipated to accept a patent of Sultan from the caliphs who served in Egypt under the yoke of the Osmaneul as full and frivolous homage that was yielded by force to opinion; by the Turkish conquerors to the house of Abbas and the successors of the Arab prophet. The ambition of the Sultan was inflamed by the obligation of deserving this august title; and he turned his arms against the kingdom of Hungary, the perpetual theatre of the Turkish victories and defeats. Sigismund, the Hungarian king, was the son and brother of the emperor of the West; his cause was that of Europe and the church; and, on the report of his danger, the bravest knights of France and Germany were eager to march under his standard and that of the cross. In the battle of Nicopolis, Bajazet defeated a confederate army of an hundred thousand Christians, who had proudly boasted, that if the sky should fall, they could uphold it on their fancies. The far greater part were slain or driven into the Dardanes; and Sigismund, escaping to Constantinople by the river and the Black Sea, returned after a long circuit to his exhausted kingdom. In the pride of victory Bajazet threatened that he would besiege Ruda; that he would subdue the adjacent countries of Germany and Italy; and that he would feed his horse with a bushel of oats on the altar of St. Peter at Rome. His progress was checked, not by the miraculous interposition of the apostle, but by a crusade of the Christian powers, but by a long and painful fit of the goat. The disorders of the moral, are sometimes corrected by those of the physical, world; and an acrimonious humour falling on a single fibre of one man, may prevent or suspend the misery of nations.

Such in the general idea of the Hungarian war; but the disastrous adventure of the French has pressed us some memorials which illustrate the victory and character of Bajazet. The duke of Burgundy, sovereign of Flanders, and uncle of Charles the Sixth, yielded to the ardour of his son, John count of Nevers; and the fearless youth was accompanied by four princes, his counsellors, and those of the French monarch. Their inexperience was guided by the Sire de Concy, one of the best and oldest captains of Christendom; but the countable, admirals, and marshal, of France commanded an army which did not exceed the number of a thousand knights and squires. These splendid names were the source of presumption and the bane of discipline. So many might aspire to command, that none were willing to obey; their national spirit despised both their enemies and their allies; and in the persuasion that Bajazet would fly, or must fall, they began to compute how soon they should visit Constantinople and deliver the holy sepulchre. When their scouts announced the approach of the Turks, the gay and thoughtless youths were at table, already blessed with wine; they instantly classed their armour, mounted their horses, rode full speed to the vanguard, and resolved on an affront to Sigismond, which would have deprived them of the right and honour of the foremost attack. The battle of Nicopolis would not have been lost, if the French would have obeyed the prudence of the Hungarians; but it might have been gloriously won, had the Hungarians imitated the valour of the French. They dispersed the first line, consisting of the troops of Asia, forced a rampart of stakes, which had been planted against the cavalry; broke, after a bloody, mortal, the Janizaries themselves; and were at length overwhelmed by the numerous squadrons that issued from the woods, and charged on all sides this handful of impetuous warriors. In the speed and accuracy of his march, in the order and evolutions of the battle, his enemies felt and admired the military talents of Bajazet. They accused his cruelty in the use of victory. After reserving the count of Nevers, and four and twenty lords, whose birth and riches were attested by his Latin interpreters, the remainder of the French captives, who had survived the slaughter of the day, were led before his throne; but, as they refused to abjure their faith, were successively beheaded in his presence. The sultan was exasperated by the loss of his bravest Janizaries; and if it be true, that, on the eve of the engagement, the French had massacred their Turkish prisoners, they might impute to themselves the consequences of a just retaliation. A knight, whose life had been spared, was permitted to return to Paris, that he might relate the eloquent tale, and solicit the ransom of the noble captives. In
the mean while, the count of Nevers, with the princes and barons of France, were dragged along in the marches of the Turkish camp, exposed as a grateful trophy to the Moslems of Europe and Asia, and strictly confined at Bourg, as often as Bajazet resided in its capital. The sultan was pressed each day to expiate with their blood the blood of his martyrs; but he had pronounced that they should live, and either for mercy or destruction his word was irrevocable. He was assured of their value and importance by the return of the messenger, and the gifts and intercessions of the kings of France and of Cyprus. Lusignan presented him with a gold sub-cellar of curious workmanship, and of the price of ten thousand ducats; and Charles the Sixth despatched by the way of Hungary a cast of Norwegian hawks, and six horse-beds of scarlet cloth, of fine linens of Rheims, and of Arma tapestry, representing the battles of the great Alexander. After much delay, the effect of distance rather than of art, Bajazet agreed to accept a ransom of two hundred thousand ducats for the count of Nevers and the surviving princes and barons: the marshal Boucicault, a famous warrior, was of the number of the fortunate; but the admiral of France had been slain in the battle; and the constable, with the Sire de Conwy, died in the prison of Bourg. This heavy demand, which was doubled by incidental costs, fell chiefly on the duke of Burgundy, or rather on his Flemish subjects, who were bound by the feudal laws to contribute for the knighthood and captivity of the eldest son of their lord. For the faithful discharge of the debt, some merchants of Genoa gave security to the amount of five times the sum; a lesson to those warlike times, that commerce and credit are the links of the society of nations. It had been stipulated in the treaty, that the French captives should swear never to bear arms against the person of their conqueror; but the ungenerous restraint was abolished by Bajazet himself. "I despise," said he to the heir of Burgundy, "thy oaths and thy arms. Thou art young, and mayest be ambitions of effacing the disgrace or misfortune of thy first chivalry. Assemble thy powers, proclaim thy design, and be assured that Bajazet will require of thee a second time in a field of battle." Before their departure, they were indulged in the freedom and hospitality of the court of Bajazet. The French princes admired the magnificence of the Ottoman, whose hunting and hawking equipage was composed of seven thousand huntsmen and seven thousand falconers. In their presence, and at his command, the belly of one of his chamberlains was cut open, on a complaint against him for drinking the goat's milk of a poor woman. The strangers were astonished by this act of justice; but it was the justice of a sultan who disdains to balance the weight of evidence, or to measure the degrees of guilt.

After his enfranchisement from an oppressive guardian, John Palaeologus remained thirty-six years without the help of his son, and, as it should seem, not without the help of the careless spectator of the public ruin. Love, or rather lust, was his only vigorous passion; and in the embraces of the wives and virgins of the city, the Turkish slave forgot the dishonour of the emperor of the Romans. Andronicus, his eldest son, had formed, at Adrianople, an intimate and guilty friendship with Susana, the son of Amaurath; and the two youths conspired against the authority and lives of their parents. The presence of Amaurath in Europe was discovered and dissipated their rash counsels; and, after depriving Susana of his sight, the Ottoman threatened his vassals with the treatment of an accomplice and an enemy, unless he inflicted a similar punishment on his own son. Palaeologus trembled and obeyed; and a cruel precaution involved in the same sentence the childhood and innocence of John the son of the criminal. But the operation was so mild, or so unskillfully, performed, that the one retained the sight of an eye, and the other was affected only with the infirmity of squinting. Thus excluded from the succession, the two princes were confined in the tower of Anemas; and the piety of Manuel, the second son of the reigning monarch, was rewarded with the gift of the Imperial crown. But at the end of two years, the turbulence of the Latins and the rivalry of the Greeks produced a revolution; and the two emperors were buried in the tower from whence the two prisoners were exiled to the throne. Another period of two years afforded Palaeologus and Manuel the means of escape: it was contrived by the magic, or subtlety, of a monk, who was alternately named the angel or the devil: they fled to Scutari; their adherents armed in their cause; and the two Byzantine factions displayed the ambition and animosity with which Caesar and Pompey had disputed the empire of the world. The Roman world was now contracted to a corner of Thrace, between the Propontis and the Black Sea, about fifty miles in length and thirty in breadth; a space of ground not more extensive than the lesser principalities of Germany or Italy, if the remains of Constantinople had not still represented the wealth and populousness of a kingdom. To restore the public peace, it was found necessary to divide this fragment of the empire; and while Palaeologus and Manuel were left in possession of the capital, almost all that lay without the walls was ceded to the blind princes, who fixed their residence at Rhodosto and Seljyika. In the tranquil number of royalty, the passions of John Palaeologus survived his reign and his strength; he deprived his favourite and heir of a blooming princess of Trebizond; and while the feeble emperor laboured to consummate his nephalis, Manuel, with an hundred of the noblest Greeks, as Achilles loved (Anton. L., v. 12, 13) dianae Bajazet at Granada, the sultane was and the chief of his soldiers, was afterwards introduced in a hunting-squad of Timur. 25. Lewes, 1644, and Antwerp, with whom he was well disposed; and. 7. See again Abouma, and an arm of the sea of album. 26. For the reign of John Palaeologus and his nephalis, see Rushe, 1534 to 1557, and Follis, i. 329, 330. Thraimol, L. 55, 81, and the chart of the environs of Constantinople, where proper subject is resided in a sort of solitude.
was sent on a peremptory summons to the Ottoman port. They served with honour in the wars of Bajazet; but a plan of fortifying Constantinople excited his jealousy; he threatened their lives; the new works were instantly demolished; and we shall bestow a praise, perhaps, above the merit of Palamologus, if we imagine this last humiliation as the cause of his death.

The earliest intelligence of that event was communicated to Manuel, who escaped with speed and secrecy from the palace of Brousa to the Byzantine throne. Bajazet affected a profound indifference at the loss of this valuable pledge; and while he pursued his conquests in Europe and Asia, left the emperor to struggle with his blind cousin John of Selymbria, who, in eight years of civil war, asserted his right of primogeniture. At length the ambition of the victorious sultan pointed to the conquest of Constantinople; but he listened to the advice of his vizir, who represented, that such an enterprise might unite the powers of Christendom in a second and more formidable crusade. His epistle to the emperor was expressed in these words: "By the divine clemency, our invincible cedel's impost has reduced to our obedience almost all Asia, with many and large countries in Europe, excepting only the city of Constantinople; for beyond the walls thou hast nothing left. Resign that city; stipulate thy reward; or, at least, for thyself and thy unhappy people, at the consequences of a rash refusal." But his ambassadors were instructed to soften their tone, and to propose a treaty, which was subscribed with submission and gratitude. A truce of ten years was purchased by an annual tribute of thirty thousand crowns of gold: the Greeks declared the public toleration of the law of Mahomet, and Bajazet enjoyed the glory of establishing a Turkish cadis, and founding a royal mosque in the metropolis of the Eastern church. Yet this truce was soon violated by the rebellious sultan; in the cause of the prince of Selymbria, the lawful emperor, an army of Ottoman again threatened Constantinople; and the distress of Manuel implored the protection of the king of France. His plaintive embassy obtained much pity and some relief; and the conflict of the successor was transferred to the marshal Boucicaut, whose religious chivalry was inflamed by the desire of revenging his captivity on the infidels. He sailed with four ships of war, from Aiguesmortes to the Hellenepos; forced the passage, which was guarded by several Turkish galleys; landed at Constantinople a supply of six hundred men at arms and sixteen hundred archers; and reviewed them in the adjacent plain, without concealing to number or array the multitude of Greeks. By his presence, the blockade was raised both by sea and land; the flying squadron of Bajazet were driven to a more respectfull distance; and several castles in Europe and Asia were stormed by the emperor and the marshal, who fought with equal valour by each other's side. But the Ottomans soon returned with an increase of numbers; and an intrepid Boucicaut, after a year's struggle, resolved to evacuate a country, which could no longer afford either pay or provisions for his soldiers. The marshal offered to conduct Manuel to the French court, where he might solicit in person a supply of men and money; and advised in the mean while, that, to extinguish all domestic discord, he should leave his blind competitor on the throne. The proposal was embraced; the prince of Selymbria was introduced to the capital; and such was the public miscredit, that the list of the exile seemed more fortunate than that of the sovereign. Instead of applauding the success of his vessel, the Turkish sultan claimed the city as his own; and on the refusal of the emperor John, Constantinople was more closely pressed by the calamities of war and famine. Against such an enemy, prayers and resistance were alike unavailing; and the savage would have devoured his prey, if, in the fatal moment, he had not been overthrown by another savage stronger than himself. By the victory of Timour at Tamerlane, the fall of Constantinople was delayed about fifty years; and this important, though accidental, service may justly introduce the life and character of the Mogul conqueror.

CHAP. LXXV.

Elevation of Timour, or Tamerlane, to the Throne of Samarcand. — His Conquests in Persia, Georgia, Tartary, Russia, India, Syria, and Arabia. — His Turkish War. — Defeat and Captivity of Bajazet. — Death of Timour. — Civil War of the Sons of Bajazet. — Restoration of the Turkish Monarchy by Mahomet the First. — Siege of Constantinople by Amurath the Second.

This conquest and monarchy of the world was the first object of the ambition of Timour. To live in the memory and esteem of future ages, was the second wish of his magnificent spirit. All the civil and military transactions of his reign were diligently recorded in the journals of his secretaries; the authentic narrative was revised by the persons best informed of each particular transaction; and it is believed in the empire and family of Timour, that the monarch himself composed the commentaries of his life, and the institutions of his government. But these

3 These Commentaries are as unknown in Russia as in Me Mr. White must know that they may seem to be transcribed and transmit by his own Chas Ostrach. 4 The Persians consult in their military expeditions in the Turkish or Mongol language, it is well to see. The Persians consult in their expeditions in the Turkish or Mongol language, it is well to see. The Persians consult in their expeditions in the Turkish or Mongol language, it is well to see. The Persians consult in their expeditions in the Turkish or Mongol language, it is well to see. The Persians consult in their expeditions in the Turkish or Mongol language, it is well to see. The Persians consult in their expeditions in the Turkish or Mongol language, it is well to see. The Persians consult in their expeditions in the Turkish or Mongol language, it is well to see. The Persians consult in their expeditions in the Turkish or Mongol language, it is well to see. The Persians consult in their expeditions in the Turkish or Mongol language, it is well to see.
cases were ineffectual for the preservation of his fame; and these precious memorials of the Mogul or Persian language were concealed from the world, or, at least, from the knowledge of Europe. The nation which he vanquished extirpated, a law and impious revenge; and ignorance has long regarded these acts of cannony, which had disfigured the birth and character, the person, and even the name, of Timour. Yet his real merit would be enhanced, rather than diminished, by the elevation of a peasant to the dignity of Asia; nor can his lineage be a theme of reproach, unless he had the weakness to blush at a natural, or perhaps an honourable, infirmity.

In the eyes of the Moguls, who held the indissoluble succession of the house of Zingis, he was doubtless a rebel subject; yet he sprang from the noble tribe of Berisan: his fifth ancestor, Carashar Novian, had been the vizir of Zagatay, in his new realm of Transoxiana; and in the recent of some generations, the branch of Timour is confounded, at least by the females, with the imperial stem. He was born forty miles to the south of Samarqand, in the village of Sonar, in the fruitful territory of Cash, of which his fathers were the hereditary chiefs, as well as of a town of ten thousand horse. His birth was cast on one of those periods of anarchy which announce the fall of the Asiatic dynasties, and open a new field to adventurous ambition. The khans of Zagatay were extinct; the emirs aspired to independence; and their domestic feuds could only be suspended by the conquest and tyranny of the khans of Khasgar, who, with an army of Geri or Carmuckis, invaded the Transoxian kingdom.

From the twelfth year of his age, Timour had entered the field of action; in the twelfth year, he stood forth as the deliverer of his country; the eyes and wishes of the people were turned to one who suffered in their cause. The claims of law and of the army had pledged their salvation to support him with their lives and fortunes; but in the hour of danger they were silent and afraid; and, after waiting seven days on the hills of Samarqand, he retreated to the desert with only sixty horsemen. The fugitives were overtaken by a thousand Geri, whom he repulsed with incredible slaughter, and his enemies were forced to exclaim, "Timour is a wonder man; fortune and the divine favour are with him." But in this bloody action his

The decline and fall

own followers were reduced to ten, a number which was soon diminished by the desertion of three Carimians. He wandered in the desert with his wife, seven companions, and four horses; and sixty-two days was he plunged in a landshark desolation, from whence he escaped by his own courage, and the remorse of the oppressor. He first annihilated the broad and rapid streams of the Jihan; of Osa, he died, during some months, the life of a vagrant and outlaw, on the borders of the adjacent states. But his fame shone brighter in adversity; he learned to distinguish the friends of his person, the associates of his fortune, and to apply the various characters of men for their advantage, and, above all, for his own. On his return to his native country, Timour was successively joined by the partizans of his confederates, who anxiously sought him in the desert; nor can I refuse to describe, in his pathetic simplicity, one of their fortunate encounters. He presented himself as a guide to three chiefs, who were at the head of seventy horse. "When their eyes fell upon me," says Timour, "they were overwhelmed with joy; and they alighted from their horses; and they came and knelted; and they kissed my stirrup. I also came down from my horse, and took each of them in my arms. And I put my turban on the head of the first chief; and my girdle, rich in jewels, and wrought with gold, I bound on the loins of the second; and the third, I clothed in my own coat. And they wept, and I wept also; and the hour of prayer was arrived, and we prayed. And we mounted our horses, and came to my dwelling; and I collected my people, and made a feast." His trusty band was soon increased by the bravest of the tribes; he led them against a superior foe; and, after some vicissitudes of war, the Geri were firmly driven from the kingdom of Transoxiana. He had done much for his own glory; but much remained to be done, much art to be expected, and some blood to be spill, before he could teach his equals to obey him as their master. The birth and power of Amir Humein compelled him to accept a vicious and unworthy colleague, whose sister was the best beloved of his wives. Their union was short and jealous; but the policy of Timour, in their frequent quarrels, exposed his rival to the reproach of injustice and perfidy; and, after a final defeat, Humein was slain by some vengeful friends, who presumed, for the last time, to disobey the commands of their lord. At the age

of thirty-four, and in a general diet or congress, he was invested with the imperial command, but he affected to revere the house of Zingis; and while the emir Timour reigned over Zagatai and the East, a nominal khan served as a private officer in the armies of his servant. A fertile kingdom, five hundred miles in length and in breadth, might have satisfied the ambition of a subject; but Timour aspired to the dominion of the world; and before his death, the crown of Zagatai was one of the twenty-seven crowns which he had placed on his head. With the expectation on the victories of thirty-five campaigns; without describing the lines of march which he repeatedly traced over the continent of Asia; I shall briefly represent his conquests in I. Persia, II. Tartary, and III. India, and from thence proceed to the more interesting narrative of his Ottoman war.

I. For every war, a motive of safety or revenge, of honour or zeal, of right or convenience, may be readily found in the jurisprudence of conquerors. No sooner had Timour re-united to the patrimony of Zagatai the dependent countries of Carizm and Chandah, than he turned his eyes towards the kingdoms of Iran or Persia. From the Oxus to the Tigris, that extensive country was left without a lawful sovereign since the death of Abouabdil, the last of the descendants of the great Holacou. Peace and justice had been banished from the land above forty years; and the Mogul invader might seem to listen to the cries of an oppressed people. Their petty tyrants might have opposed him with confederate arms; they separately stood, and successively fell; and the difference of their fate was only marked by the promptitude of submission, or the obstinacy of resistance. Ibrahim, prince of Shirwan or Altinias, kissed the footstool of the Imperial throne. His peace-offerings of silks, horses, and jewels, were composed, according to the Tartar fashion, each article of nine pieces; but a critical spectator observed, that there were only eight slaves. "I myself am the ninth," replied Ibrahim, who was prepared for the remark; and his dastardly was rewarded by the smile of Timour. Shah Mansour, prince of Fars, or the proper Persia, was one of the least powerful, but most dangerous, of his enemies. In a battle under the walls of Shiraz, he broke, with three or four thousand soldiers, the soul or main body of three thousand Turks who were fighting in person. No more than fourteen or fifteen guards remained near the standard of Timour: he stood firm as a rock, and received on his helmet two weighty strokes of a sabre; in the Mogul salutis; the hand of Mansour was thrown at his feet; and he declared his intention of the value of a foe, by extirpating all the males of an intrepid a race. From Shiraz, his troops advanced to the Persian Gulf; and the richnes and weakness of Ormus were displayed in an annual tribute of six hundred thousand ducats of gold. Bagdad was no longer the city of peace, the seat of the empire; but the noblest conquest of Hulacou could not be overlooked by his ambitious successor. The whole course of the Tigris and Araxes, from the mouth to the sources of those rivers, was reduced to his obedience: he entered Edessa; and the Turkmen of the black shire were clasped in the sacrilegious pillow of a caravan of Mecca. In the mountains of Georgia, the native Christians still braved the law and the sword of Mahomet; by three expeditions, he obtained the merit of the gale, or holy war; and the prince of Tefsis became his presbyter and friend.

II. A just retaliation might be urged for the invasion of Turkestan, or the eastern Tartary. The dignity of Timour could not endure the impiety of the Greeks; he passed the Silem, subdued the kingdom of Kasigur, and marched seven times into the heart of their country. His most distant camp was two months' journey, as four hundred and eighty leagues to the north-east of Samarcand; and his emirs, who traversed the river Iztik, engraved in the forests of Siberia the monumental brum of their exploits. The conquest of Kipax, or the western Tartary, was founded on the double motive of adding the distressed, and chastising the ungrateful. Tochianists, a furious prince, was entertained and protected in his court: the ambassadors of Auruns Khan were dismissed with a hasty denial, and followed on the same day by the armies of Zagatai; and their success established Tschumish in the Mogul empire of the North. But after a reign of ten years, the new khan forgot the merits and the strength of his benefactor; he bore up, as he decreed him, of the sacred rights of the house of Zingis. Through the gates of Derbend, he entered Persia at the head of ninety thousand horse; with the immovable forces of Kipaff, Bulgaria, Circassia, and Russia, he passed the Silem, burnt the palace of Timour, and compelled him, amidst the winter snows, to contend for his country and his life. After a mild triumphation, a glorious victory, the emperor renewed his march on revenge; and by the end of the Caspian, and the Volga, he twice invaded Kipaff with such mighty powers, that thirteen colonies were measured from his right to his left wing. In a march of five months, they rarely beheld

on the map, and are shown on the plan of the

Empire, and received on their heads the corn, the

aid of the Roman Empire, and received on their heads the corn, the

aid of the Roman Empire, and received on their heads the corn, the

aid of the Roman Empire, and received on their heads the corn, the

aid of the Roman Empire, and received on their heads the corn, the

aid of the Roman Empire, and received on their heads the corn, the

aid of the Roman Empire, and received on their heads the corn, the

aid of the Roman Empire, and received on their heads the corn, the
the footsteps of man, and their daily subsistence was often trusted to the fortune of the chase. At length the armies encountered each other; but the treachery of the standard-bearer, who, in the heat of action, reversed the Imperial standard of Kipouk, determined the victory of the Zangis and Tockamish (I speak the language of the Institutions) gave the tribe of Tomto to the wind of destruction. 15 He fled to the Christian duke of Lithuania; again returned to the banks of the Vistula; and, after fifteen battles with a domestic rival, at last perished in the wilds of Siberia.

The pursuit of a flying enemy carried Timour into the tributary provinces of Rysia; a duke of the reigning family was made prisoner amidst the ruins of his capital; and Yeletz, by the pride and ignorance of the Oriental, might easily be confounded with the genuine metropolis of the nation. Moscow trembled at the approach of the Tartar, and the resistance would have been noble, since the hopes of the Russians were placed in a miraculous image of the Virgin, to whose protection they ascribed the casual and voluntary retreat of the conqueror. Ambition and pride recalled him to the south, the desolate country was exhausted, and the Mogul soldiers were enriched with an immense spoil of precious female, of brass of Antioch, 22 and of ingots of gold and silver. On the banks of the Dnieper or Tana, he received an humble deputation from the nobles and merchants of Egypt, Venice, Genoa, Catalonia, and, Bursa, who occupied the commerce and city of Tana, or Aras, at the mouth of the river. They offered their gifts, explained his magnificence, and trusted his royal word. But the peaceful visit of an enmity, who explored the state of the magazines and harbour, was speedily followed by the destructive presence of the Tartars. The city was reduced to ashes; the Moslems were pillaged and dismissed; but all the Christian, who had not fled to their ships, were condemned either to death or slavery. Revenge prompted him to burn the cities of Sevri and Astrakan, the monuments of rising civilization; and his vanity proclaimed, that he had penetrated to the region of perpetual daylight, a strange phenomenon, which authorized his Mahometan doctors to dispense with the obligation of evening prayer.

III. When Timour first proposed to his princes and emirs the invasion of India or Hindostan, 33 he was answered by a murmur of discontent; "The rivers! and the mountains and deserts! and the soldiers clad in armour! and the elephants, "destroyers of men!" But the displeasure of the emperor was more dreadful than all these terrors; and his superior reason was convinced, that an enterprise of such tremendous aspect was safe and easy in the execution. He was informed by his spies of the weakness and anarchy of Hindostan; the soubalis of the provinces had erected the standard of rebellion; and the perpetual infamy of Sultan Mahmoud was despised even in the harem of Delhi. The Mogul army moved in three great divisions: and Timour observes with pleasure, that the ninety-two squadrons of a thousand horse most fortunately corresponded with the ninety-two names or epitaphs of the prophet Mahomet. Between the Jihoun and the Indus they crossed one of the ranges of mountains, which are styled by the Arabian geographers The stony girdles of the earth. The highland robbers were subdued or extirpated; but great numbers of men and horses perished in the snow; the emperor himself was set down a precipice on a portable scaffold, the ropes were one hundred and fifty cubits in length; and, before he could reach the bottom, this dangerous operation was five times repeated. Timour crossed the Indus at the ordinary passage of Attok; and successively traversed, in the footsteps of Alexander, the Punjab, or five rivers, 29 that fall into the main-stream. From Attok to Delhi, the high road measures no more than six hundred miles; but the two conquerors deviated to the south-east; and the motive of Timour was to join his grandson, who had achieved by his command the conquest of Moulain. On the eastern bank of the Hyphasis, on the edge of the desert, the Mahometan hero halted and wept; the Mogul entered the desert, reduced the fortress of Baisur, and stood in arms before the gates of Delhi, a great and flourishing city, which had subsisted three centuries under the dominion of the Mahometan kings. The siege, more especially of the castle, might have been a work of time; but he trembled at the appearance of weakness, the sultan Mahmoud, and his vizir to descend into the plain, with ten thousand curassiers, forty thousand of his foot-guardians, and one hundred and twenty elephants, whose tusks are said to have been armed with sharp and poisoned daggers. Against these monsters, or rather against the imagination of his troops, he condescended to use some extraordinary precautions of fire and a ditch, of iron spikes and a rampart of bucklers; but the event taught the Moguls to smile at their own fears; and, as soon as these unwieldy animals were routed, the inferior species de Radzins de Charis, in Couth, Touhoun, in Mysore, Scapa Badi, p. 145-146. He was conversed with the Muns, the two Vembri, and the general Naimen, to the camp of Timour, and the order had but a dozen boats there and fifty at the camp of Mahmud.

53 Scarekille only saw [iii. b. 151], that the east of the setting sun, the Jutis and Mahour, the Saltwires, the hill of Misrie, and the lake of Baluchistan, were a problem which is to be solved in the latitude of the rest of the countries that are descried by the four winds. The one day of duty is a thousand times longer, and a year shorter towards the north, and a year longer towards the south. A day and a night is four and fifteen hours in the interior; and six and twenty hours on the extremity; 24 to the south of Pisci, in the inward coasts, 17th-13th; 25 the fourth book of Scarcaille, and the fifth book of Firman the first; 26 but the notion of the tenth book of a.

29 The rivers of the Punjab, the five main branches of the Indus, here that run down for the first time, with much and more.
(the men of India) disappeared from the field. Timour made his triumphal entry into the capital of Hindostan; and admired, with a view to imitate, the architecture of the stately mosques; but the order or licence of a general pilgrimage and massacre pollute the festival of his victory. He resolved to purify his soldiers in the blood of the idolaters, or Gentoos, who still surpass, in the proportion of ten to one, the numbers of the Moslems. In this plot, design, he advanced one hundred miles to the north-east of Delhi, passed the Ganges, fought several battles by land and water, and penetrated to the famous rock of Coupela, the statue of the cow, that is to discharge the mighty river, whose source is far distant among the mountains of Tibet. His return was along the skirts of the northern hills; nor could this rapid campaign of one year justify the strange foresight of his emirs, that their children in a warm climate would degenerate into a race of Hindoes.

It was on the banks of the Ganges that Timour was informed, by his speedy messengers, of the disturbances which had arisen on the confines of Georgia and Anatolia, of the revolt of the Christians, and the ambitious designs of the sultan Bajazet. His vigour of mind and body was not impaired by sixty-three years, and innumerable fatigues; and, after enjoying some tranquil months in the palace of Samarkand, he proclaimed a new expedition of seven years into the western countries of Asia. To the soldiers who had served in the Indian war, he granted the choice of remaining at home, or following their prince; but the troops of all the provinces and kingdoms of Persia were commanded to assemble at Isphahan, and wait the arrival of the Imperial standard. It was first directed against the Christians of Georgia, who were strong only in their rocks, their castles, and the winter season; but these obstacles were overcome by the zeal and perseverance of Timour; the rebels submitted to the tribute or the Koran; and if both religions boasted of their martyrs, that name is more justly due to the Christian prisoners, who were offered the choice of abduction or death. On his descent from the hills, the emperor gave audience to the first ambassadors of Bajazet, and opened the hostile correspondence of complaints and menaces; which fermented two years before the final explosion. Between two jealous and haughty neighbours, the motives of quarrel will seldom be wanting. The Mogul and Ottoman emperors now disputed each other in the neighbourhood of Kermouz, and the Euphrates; nor had the doubtful limit been ascertained by time and treaties. Each of these ambitious monarchs might accuse his rival of violating his territory.

Thus the two great rivers, the Ganges and Euphrates, rise in Tibet, from whose banks they issue into Hindostan and Persia; and thence they flow towards the sea, the waters of the Ganges entering into the northern and the Euphrates into the southern ocean. As has been said, the Ganges contains 10,000,000 men, and has a width of 800 miles; the Euphrates, or Tanisz, which is sometimes called the Tigris, contains 2,000,000 men, and has a width of 90 miles. The length of the Ganges is 2,000 miles, and that of the Euphrates is 1,500 miles. The former has a number of tributaries in the Himalayas, and the latter in the Taurus. The two rivers are alike in their properties, and both are navigable for the greatest vessels. The suspension of the bridge over the Ganges, which is 600 feet long, is answerable to that over the Euphrates, which is 600 feet long. The Ganges is navigable for ships of war, and the Euphrates for armed vessels. The Ganges is navigable for ships of war, and the Euphrates for armed vessels. The Ganges is navigable for ships of war, and the Euphrates for armed vessels. The Ganges is navigable for ships of war, and the Euphrates for armed vessels.
of the secrecy of the harem is an unpardonable offence among the Turkish nation; and the political quarrel of the two monarchs was embittered by personal and personal resentment. Yet in his first expedition, Timour was satisfied with the siege and destruction of Sivas or So- basa, a strong city on the borders of Anatolia; and he reved the indignation of the Ottomans, on a garrison of four thousand Armenians, who were buried alive for the brave and faithful discharge of their duty. As a Musulman, he seemed to respect the pious occupation of Hajj, who was still engaged in the blockade of Constantinople; and after this salutary lesson, the Mogul conqueror checked his pursuit, and turned aside to the invasion of Syria and Egypt. In these transactions, the Ottoman prince, by the Orientals, and even by Timour, is styled the Kaiser of the East, the Cesar of the Romans; a title which, by a small anticipation, might be given to a monarch who possessed the provinces, and threatened the city, of the successors of Constantine.

The military republic of the Mamluks still reigned in Egypt and Syria; but the dynasty of the Turks was overthrown by that of the Circassians; and their favourite Burkak, a slave and a prisoner, was raised and restored to the throne. In the midst of rebellion and discord, he raised the masses, corresponded with the enemies, and despatched the ambassadors of the Mogul, who impatiently expected his decease, to revenge the crimes of the father on the foul heir of his son Faraq. The Syrian emirs were assembled at Aleppo to repel the invasion; they confined in the same and discipline of the Mamluks, in the manner of their swords and lance of the Moorish men of Damascus, in the strength of their walled cities, and in the population of sixty thousand villages; and instead of sustaining a siege, they threw open their gates, and arrayed their forces in the plain. But these forces were not composed of virtuous and union; and some powerful emirs had been seduced to desert or betray their more loyal companions. Timour's front was covered with a line of Indian elephants, whose turrets were filled with archers and Greek fire: the rapid evolutions of his cavalry completed the dismay and disorder: the Syrian crowds fell back on each other; many thousands were stifled or slaughtered in the entrance of the great street; the Moguls entered with the fugitives; and, after a short defence, the citadel, the impregnable citadel of Aleppo, was surrendered by the cowardice of treachery. Among the suppliants and captives, Timour distinguished the doctors of the law, whom he invited to the dangerous honours of a personal companionship. — The Mogul prince was a zealous Musulman; but his Persian schools had taught him to revere the memory of Ali and Hussein; and he had imbued a deep prejudice against the Syrians, as the enemies of the son of the daughter of the apostle of God. To these doctors he proposed a capitulation, which the consuls of Boechea, Smarrand, and Herat, were irrevocably refractory. "Who are the true martyrs, of those who say on my side, or on that of my enemies?" But he was silenced, or satisfied, by theexterity of one of the caliphs of Aleppo, who replied in the words of Mahomet himself, that the motive, not the ensign, constitutes the martyr; and that the Moslems of either party, who fight only for the glory of God, may deserve that sacred appellation. The true successor of the caliphs was a controversy of a still more delicate nature, and the frankness of a doctor, too honest for his situation, provoked the emperor to exclaim, "Ye are as false as those of Damascus: Musiah was an usurper, Yezid a tyrant, and Ali slain is the lawful successor of the prophet." A prudent explanation restored his tranquillity; and he passed to a more familiar topic of conversation. "What is your age?" said he to the caliph. "Fifty years." — It would be the age of my eldest son: you are the first (continued Timour) a poor, lame, decrepit mortal. Yet by my arm has the Almighty been pleased to subdue the kings and subdue the kings and subdue the kings — the kingdom of Iran, Turan, and the Indians. I am not a man of blood; and God is my witness, that in all my wars I have never been the aggressor, and that my enemies have always been the authors of their own calamity." During this peaceful conversation, the streets of Aleppo swarmed with blood, and re-echoed with the cries of mothers and children, with the shrieks of violated virgins. The rich plunder that was abandoned to his soldiers might stimulate their avarice; but their cruelty was enforced by the peremptory command of producing an adequate number of heads, which, according to his custom, were curiously piled in columns and pyramids; the Moguls celebrated the feast of victory, while the surviving Moslems passed the night in tears and in chains. I shall not dwell on the march of the destroyer from Aleppo to Damascus, where he was readily encountered, and almost overthrown, by the armies of Egypt. A retrograde motion was intimated to his distress and despair; one of his nephews deserted to the enemy; and Syria rejoiced in the tale of his defeat, when the sultan was driven by the revolt of the Mamluks to escape with precipitation and shame to his palace of Cairo. Abandoned by his people, the inhabitants of Damascus still defended their walls; and Timour consented to raise the siege; if they would adorn his return with a gift or ransom: such article of nine pieces. But no sooner had
he introduced himself into the city, under colour of a truce, than he peradventure violated the treaty: imposed a contribution of ten millions of gold; and animated his troops to chastise the posterity of those Syrians, who had executed, or approved, the murder of the grandson of Mahomet. A family which had given honoursable burial to the head of Hanno, and a colony of artificers, whom he sent to lead a nucleated, and as alone reserved in the general massacre; and, after a period of seven centuries, Damascus was reduced to ashes, because a Tartar was moved by religious zeal to avenge the blood of an Arab. The losses and fatigues of the campaign obliged Timour to remonstrate the conquest of Palestine and Egypt; but in his return to the Euphrates, he delivered Aleppo to the flames; and justified his peace motive, by the pardon and reward of two thousand sectaries of Ali, who were destined to visit the tomb of his son. I have expatiated on the personal anecdotes which mark the character of the Mogul hero; but I shall briefly mention, that he erected on the ruins of Bagdad a pyramid of ninety thousand heads; again visited Georgia; encamped on the banks of the Araxes; and proclaimed his resolution of marching against the Ottoman emperor. Convinced of the importance of the war, he collected his forces from every province; eight hundred thousand men were enrolled on his military list; but the splendid commands of five, and ten, thousand horse, may be rather expressive of the rank and pension of the chief, than of the genuine number of effective soldiers. In the pillage of Syria, the Moguls had acquired immense riches; but the delivery of their pay and arrears for seven years, more firmly attached them to the Imperial standard. During this diversion of the Mogul army, Bajazet had two years to collect his forces for a more serious encounter. They consisted of four hundred thousand horse and foot, whose merit and fidelity were of an unspotted complexion. We may discriminate the Janissaries, who have been gradually raised to an establishment of forty thousand men; a national cavalry, the Sipahis of modern times; twenty thousand cuirassiers of Europe, clad in black and imperceptible armour; the troops of Anatolia, whose princes had taken refuge in the camp of Timour; and a colony of Tartars, whom he had driven from Kipuck, and to whom Bajazet had assigned a settlement in the plains of Asia Minor. The fearless confidence of the sultan urged him to meet his antagonist; and, as if he had chosen that spot for revenge, he displayed his banners near the ruins of the unfortunate Sivas. In the mean while, Timour moved from the Araxes through the countries of Armenia and Anatolia; his boldness was secured by the winter premonitions; his speed was guided by order and discipline; and the woods, the mountains, and the rivers, were diligently explored by the flying squadrions, who marked his road and preceded his standard. Firm in his plan of fighting in the heart of the Ottoman kingdom, he avoided their camp; destitute of means to the left, occupied Caususa; traversed the salt deserts and the river Halys; and invested Angora; while the sultan, immovable and ignominious in his post, compared the Tartar swiftness to the crawling of a snail; he returned on the wings of indignation to the relief of Angora; and as both generals were alike impatient for action, the plains round that city were the scene of a memorable battle, which has immortalized the glory of Timour and the shame of Bajazet. For this signal victory the Mogul emperor was indebted to himself, to the genius of the monarch, and the discipline of thirty years. He had improved the tactics, without violating the manners, of his nation, whose force still consisted in the missile weapons, and rapid evolutions of a numerous cavalry. From a single troop to a great army, the mode of attack was the same; a foremost line first advanced to the charge, and was supported in a just order by the squadrons of the great vanguard. The general's eye watched over the field, and at his command the front and rear of the right and left wings successively moved forwards in their several divisions, and in a direct or oblique line; the enemy was pressed by eighteen or twenty attacks; and each attack afforded a chance of victory. If they all proved fruitless or unsuccessful, the occasion was worthy of the emperor himself, who gave the signal of advancing to the standard and main body, which he led in person. But in the battle of Angora, the main body itself was supported, on the flanks and in the rear, by the heaviest squadrons of the reserve, commanded by the sires and grandsons of Timour. The conqueror of Hindustan ostentatiously showed a line of elephants, the trophies, rather than the instruments, of victory: the use of the Greek fire was familiar to the Moguls and Ottomans; but had they borrowed from Europe the recent invention of gunpowder and cannon, the artificial thunder, in the bands of other nation, must have turned the fortune of the day. In that day Bajazet displayed the
The iron cage, in which Bajazet was imprisoned by Tamerlane, so long and so often repeated as a fable by the modern writers, who smile at the vulgar credulity. The moral lesson, is now rejected as a fable by the Persian history of Sherefelddin Ali, which has been given to our curiosity in a French version, and from which I shall collect and abridge a more copious narrative of this memorable transaction.

No sooner was Timour informed, that the captive Ottoman was at the door of his tent, than he gracefully stepped forwards to receive him, seated him by his side, and mingled with just reproaches of a soothing pity for his rank and misfortune.

"Alas!" said the emperor, "the decree of fate is now accomplished by your own fault: it is the web which you have woven, the thorns of the true which you have planted. I wished to spare, and even to assist the champion of the Moslems: you bruised our threats; you despised our friendship: you forced us to enter your kingdom with our invincible armies. Behold the event. Had you vanquished, I am not ignorant of the fate which you reserved for myself and my troops. But I decline to retaliate: your life and honour are secure; and I shall express my gratitude to God by my exemplarity to man." The royal captive showed some signs of repentance, accepted the humiliation of a robe of honour, and embraced with tears his son Mousa, who, at his request, was sought and found among the captives of the field. The Ottoman princes were lodged in a splendid pavilion; and the respect of the guards could be surpassed only by their vigilance. On the arrival of the harang from Bajraus, Timour restored the queen Despina and her daughter to their father and husband; but he solemnly required, that the Servian princes, who had hitherto been indulged in the profession of Christianity, should embrace without delay the religion of the prophet. In the feast of victory, to which Bajazet was invited, the Mogul emperor placed a crown on his head and a sceptre in his hand, with a solemn assurance of restoring him with an increase of glory to the throne of his ancestors. But the effect of this promise was disappointed by the sultan's untimely death: amidst the care of the most skilful physicians, he expired of an apoplectic at Akshar, the Antioch of Persia, about nine months after his defeat. The victor dropped a tear over his grave; his body, with royal pomp, was conveyed to the mausoleum which he had erected at Bajraus; and his son Mousa, after receiving a rich present of gold and jewels, of horses and arms, was invested by a patent in red ink with the kingdom of Anatolia.

Such is the portrait of a generous conqueror, which has been extracted from his own materials, and dedicated to his son and grandson, nineteen years after his decease; and, at a time when the truth was remembered by thousand.
a veil to the eyes of intemperance. To escape a similar indignity, it is said, that his successors, except in a single instance, have abstained from legitimate nuptials; and the Ottoman practice and belief, at least in the sixteenth century, is attested by the observing Bashoqul, ambassador from the court of Vienna to the great Suleiman. 4. Such is the separation of language, that the testimony of a Greek is not less independent than that of a Latin or an Arab. I suppress the names of Chalcondyles and Ducos, who flourished in a later period, and who speak in a less positive tone; but more attention is due to George Pharam. 26. protomartyr of the last emperors, and who was born a year before the battle of Angora. Twenty-two years after that event, he was sent ambassador to Amurath the Second, and the historian might converse with some veteran janizaries, who had been made prisoners with the sultan, and had themselves seen him in his iron cage. 5. The last evidence, in every sense, is that of the Turkish annals, which have been consulted or transcribed by Leutenclav, Po-cock, and Cantemir. 27 They unanimously deplore the captivity of the iron cage; and some credit may be allowed to national historians, who cannot stigmatise the Tartar without answering the shame of their king and country.

From these opposite premises, a fair and moderate conclusion may be deduced. I am satisfied that Sheerfuddin Ali has faithfully described the first ostentatious interview, in which the conqueror, whose spirits were harmonised by success, affected the character of generosity. But his mind was insensibly alienated by the unreasonable arrogance of Bajazet; the complaints of his enemies, the Anatolian princes, were just and vehement, and Timour betrayed a design of leading his royal captive to triumph to Samarcand. An attempt to facilitate his escape, by digging a mine under the tent, provoked the Mogul emperor to impose a harsher restraint; and in his perpetual marches, an iron cage on a waggon might be invented, not as a wanton insult, but as a rigorous precaution. Timour had read in some fabulous history a similar treatment of one of his predecessors, a king of Persia; and Bajazet was condemned to represent the person, and expiate the guilt, of the Roman Caesars. 28 But the strength of his mind and body faded under the trial, and his premature death might, with
out injustice, he ascribed to the severity of Timour. He tarried not with the dead; a tear and a squalor were all that he could bestow on a captive who was delivered from his power; and if Mamus, the son of Bajazet, was permitted to reign over the ruler of Bursa, the greatest part of the province of Anatolia had been restored by the conqueror to their lawful sovereigns.

From the Irish and Volga to the Persian Gulf, and from the Ganges to Damascus and the Archipelago, Asia was in the domain of Timour; his armies were invincible, his ambition was boundless, and his zeal might inspire to conquer and convert the Christian kingdoms of the West, which already trembled at his name. He touched the utmost verge of the land; but an inexplicable, though narrow, sea reared itself between the two continents of Europe and Asia; and the lord of so many masses, or myriads, of horse, was not master of a single galley. The two passes of the Bosporus and Hellespont, of Constantinople and Gallipoli, were possessed, the one by the Christians, the other by the Turks. On this grand occasion, they forgot the difference of religion, to act with union and firmness in the common cause: the double straits were guarded with ships and fortifications; and they separately withheld the transports which Timour demanded of either nation, under the pretence of attacking their enemy. At the same time they softened his pride with tributary gifts and suppliants embassies, and prudently tempted him to retreat with the honours of victory. Soliman, the son of Bajazet, employed his eloquence for his father and himself; accepted, by a red patent, the investiture of the kingdom of Rome, which he already held by the sword; and reasserted his ancient wish, of cutting himself in person at the feet of the king of the world. The Greek emperors (either John or Manuel) submitted to pay the same tribute which he had stipulated with the Turkish sultan, and ratified the treaty by an oath of allegiance, from which he could absolve his conscience so soon as the Mogul arms had retired from Anatolia. But the fears and fancy of nations ascribed to the ambitious Tamerlane a new design of vast and romantic conquest; a design of subduing Egypt and Africa, marching from the Nile to the Atlantic Ocean, entering Europe by the Straits of Gibraltar, and, after imposing his yoke on the kingdoms of Christendom, of returning home by the deserts of Russia and Tartary. This remote, and perhaps imaginary, danger was averted by the submission of the sultan of Egypt: the honours of the prayer and the coin, attested at Cairo the supremacy of Timour; and a rare gift of a giraffe, or camelopard, and nine ostriches, represented at Samarcand the tribute of the African world. Our imagination is not less astonished by the portrait of a Mogul, who, in his camps, before Smyrna, meditated, and almost accomplished, the invasion of the Chinese empire. Timour was urged to this enterprise by national honour and religious zeal. The torrents which he had shed of Musulman blood could be expiated only by an equal destruction of the infidels; and as he now stood at the gates of paradise, he might best secure his glorious entrance by demolishing the idols of China, founding mosques in every city, and establishing the profession of faith in one God, and his prophet Mahomet. The recent expulsion of the house of Zingis was no insult on the Mogul name; and the disorders of the empire afforded the fairest opportunity for revenge. The illustrious Hungevon, founder of the dynasty of Ming, died four years before the battle of Angora; and his grandson, a weak and unfortunate youth, was burnt in his palace, after a million of Chinese had perished in the civil war. Before he evacuated Anatolia, Timour despatched beyond the Siboyn a numerous army, or rather colony, of his old and new subjects, to open the road, to subdue the Pagans Calmucks and Mungals, and to found cities and magazines in the desert; and, by the diligence of his lieutenant, he soon received a perfect map and description of the unknown regions, from the sources of the Irtysh to the wall of China. During these preparations, the emperor achieved the final conquest of Georgia; passed the winter on the banks of the Araxes; apprised the troubles of Persia; and slowly returned to his capital, after a campaign of four years and six months.

On the throne of Samarcand, his actions were displayed, in a short reign, his magnificence and power. learned to the complaints of the people, distributed a just measure of rewards and punishments; employed his riches in the architecture of palaces and temples; and gave audience to the ambassadors of Egypt, Arabia, India, Tartary, Russia, and Spain, the last of whom presented a suit of tapestry which eclipsed the pencil of the Oriental artists. The marriage of six of the emperor's grandsons was esteemed an act of religion as well as of paternal tenderness; and the pomp of the ancient caliphate was revived in their nuptials. They were seated in the gardens of Canigbul, decorated with innumerable tents and pavilions, which displayed the luxury of a great city, and the spoil of a victorious camp. Whole forests were cut down to supply fuel for the kettles; the plain was spread with pyramids of mast, and vases of every liquor, to which thousands of guest were courteously invited; the orders of the state, and the motions of the earth, were marshalled at the royal banquet; nor were the ambassadors of Europe (says the haughty Persian) excluded from the feast; since even the races, the smallest of fish, had their place in
the ostent. The public joy was testified by illuminations and masquerades; the trade of Samarcand passed in review; and every trade was anxious to execute some curious device, some marvellous pageant, with the materials of their peculiar art. After the marriage-contracts had been ratified by the caliph, the bridegrooms and their bride retired to the nuptial chambers; nine times, according to the Asiatic fashion, they were dressed and undressed; and at each change of apparel, pearls and rubies were showered on their heads, and contemptuously abandoned to their attendants. A general indulgence was proclaimed; every law was relaxed, every pleasure was allowed; the people was free, the sovereign was idle; and the historian of Timour may remark, that, after devoting fifty years to the attainment of empire, the only happy period of his life was the two months in which he ceased to exercise his power. But he was soon awakened to the cares of government and war. The standard was unfurled for the invasion of China, whose entire force of two hundred thousand, the select and veteran soldiers of Iran and Turan; their baggage and provisions were transported by five hundred great wagons, and an immense train of horses and camels; and the troops might prepare for a long absence, since more than six months were employed in the tranquil journey of a caravan from Samarcand to Pekin. Neither age, nor the severity of the winter, could retard the impatience of Timour; he mounted on horseback, passed the Shoon on the ice, marched seventy-six parasangs, three hundred miles, from his capital, and pitched his last camp in the neighbourhood of Osr, where he was expected by the angel of death. Fatum, and the inducements of local water, accelerated the progress of his fever; and the conqueror of Asia expired in the sixtieth year of his age, thirty-five years after he had ascended the throne of Zagat. His designs were unexecuted; his armies were disbanded; China was saved; and fourteen years after his decease, the most powerful of his children sent an embassy of friendship and commerce to the court of Pekin. The fame of Timour has pervaded the East and West; his power is still revered with the Imperial title, and the admiration of his subjects, who revered him as a deity, may be justified in some degree by the praise or confession of his bitterest enemies. Although he was lame of an hand and foot, his form and stature were not unworthy of his rank; and his vigorous health, essential to himself and to the world, was corroborated by temperance and exercise. In his familiar discourse he was grave and modest, and if he was ignorant of the Arabic language, he spoke with fluency and elegance the Persian and Turkish idioms. It was his delight to converse with the learned on topics of history and science; and the amusement of his leisure hours was the game of chess, which he improved or corrupted with new refinements. In his religion, he was a zealot, though not perhaps an orthodox, Musselman; but his sound understanding may tempt us to believe, that a superstitious reverence for orms and prophecies, for saints and astrologers, was only affected as an instrument of policy. In the government of a vast empire, he stood alone and absolute, without a rebel to oppose his power, a favourite to relieve his affections, or a minister to mislead his judgment. It was his firmest maxim, that whatever might be the consequence, the word of the prince should never be disputed or recalled; but his foci have maliciously observed, that the commands of anger and destruction were more strictly executed than those of beneficence and favour. His sons and grandsons, of whom Timour left six and thirty at his decease, were his first and most submissive subjects; and whenever they deviated from their duty, they were corrected, according to the laws of Zingis, with the bastinado, and afterwards restored to honour and command. Perhaps his heart was not devoid of the social virtues; perhaps he was not incapable of loving his friends and pardoning his enemies; but the rule of morality is founded on the public interest, and it may be sufficient to applaud the virtues of a monarch, for the liberality by which he is not impoverished, and for the justice by which he is strengthened and enriched. To maintain the harmony of authority and obedience, to chastise the proud, to protect the weak, to reward the deserving, to punish vice and idleness from his dominions, to secure the traveller and merchant, to restrain the depredations of the soldier, to cherish the labours of the husbandman, to encourage industry and learning, and, by an equal and moderate assessment, to increase the revenue, without increasing the taxes, are indeed the duties of a prince; but, in the discharge of these duties, he finds an ample and immediate recompense. Timour might boast, that, as his accession to the throne, Asia was the prey of anarchy and rapine; whilst under his prosperous monarchy, a child, feeble and unwarlike, might carry a purse of gold from the East to the West. Such was his confidence of merit, that from the first moment he derived an excuse for his victories, and a title to universal dominion. The four following observations will serve to appreciate his claims to the public gratitude; and perhaps we shall conclude, that his Mogul empire was rather the encroachment than the beneficence of mankind.

From the court of Ranev, in which they first trespassed in 1402: Some account of the Mogul Tartars, and their destruction of Persia.

The Mogul Tartars of Persia and Tartary.

The Mogul Tartars of Persia, and Tartary were the most formidable enemy that the Persian Empire could ever have to contend with. They were a race of formidable warriors, who took their name from the Mogul Tartars, a people who had long been the terror of the Persian Empire. They were divided into two great branches, the Kipchak and the Khans. The former were the most warlike, and the latter the most gentle. The Mogul Tartars were divided into the Khatam and the Bradford, in Asia and Europe.
Far different was the fate of the
Ottoman monarchy. The muse

The trunk was beat to the ground, but
no sooner did the hurricane pass away, than it
again rose with fresh vigour and more lively
vegetation. When Timour, in every sense, had
evacuated Anatolia, he left the cities without
a palace, a treasure, or a king. The open country
was overspread with hordes of shepherds and
robbers of Tartar or Turkoman origin; the rec-}

The story of Timur's campaigns is so

were crushed under the footsteps of the reformer.
The ground which had been occupied by flourish-
ing cities, was often marked by his abominable
 trophies, by columns, or pyramids, of human
heads. Astracan, Carinao, Delhi, Isphahan,
Bagdad, Aleppo, Damascus, Bousra, Smyrna,
and a thousand others, were sacked, or burnt, or
utterly destroyed, in his presence, and by his
 troops; and perhaps his conscience would have
been startled, if a priest or philosopher had dared to number the millions of victims whom
he had sacrificed to the establishment of peace
and order. He invaded Turkistan, Kiposh, Russia, Hindostan, Syria, Anatolia, Armenia, and Georgia, without a hope
or a chance of preserving those distant provinces.

When he ascended his throne, and became lord
of those vast countries, he was not content to
enjoy them in peace; he determined to make
them subservient to his will. He set out with a
large army, and descended into Persia, where he
was immediately met by a message from the
king of the Persians, informing him of the
approach of an enemy from the north. Timour
was not daunted by this unexpected event; he
immediately proceeded to the field of battle,
and defeated the enemy with great slaughter.

The victory was signalised by the death of
the king of the Persians, and the capture of
many of his principal followers. Timour
immediately took possession of the country,
and proceeded to the occupation of the
remaining provinces. He was not content with
this, but determined to extend his conquests
farther, and to subdue the kingdom of
Persia. He accordingly set out with a large
army, and marched towards the city of
Shiraz, the capital of the kingdom of
Persia. He was met by the king of the
Persians, who had gathered an army to
resist him, but he was defeated with great
slaughter, and the king of the Persians
was captured. Timour immediately
occupied the city, and proceeded to
the conquest of the remaining provinces.

The country was now in a state of
anarchy, and Timour took the

For different was the fate of the
Ottoman monarchy. The muse

The trunk was beat to the ground, but
no sooner did the hurricane pass away, than it
again rose with fresh vigour and more lively
vegetation. When Timour, in every sense, had
evacuated Anatolia, he left the cities without
a palace, a treasure, or a king. The open country
was overspread with hordes of shepherds and
robbers of Tartar or Turkoman origin; the rec-
active, and fortunate: his courage was softened by clemency; but it was likewise inflamed by presumption, and corrupted by intemperance and illiberes. He relaxed the nerves of discipline, in a government where either the subject or the sovereign must continually tremble: his vices alienated the chiefs of the army and the law; and his daily drunkenness, so contemptible in a prince and a man, was doubtfully odious in a disciple of the prophet. In the slumber of intoxication he was surprised by his brother Mousa; and as he fled from Adrianople towards the Byzantine capital, Sallam was overtaken and slain in a bath, after a reign of seven years and ten months. 4. The Investiture of Mousa: Mousa degraded him as the slave of the Mogule: his tributary kingdom of Anatolia was confined within a narrow limit, nor could his broken militia and empty treasury contend with the hardy and veteran bands of the sovereign of Rasmia. Mousa fled in disguise from the palace of Bousra; traversed the Propontis in an open boat; wandered over the Walschian and Servian hills; and after some vain attempts, ascended the throne of Adrianople, so recently stained with the blood of Sallam. In a reign of three years and a half, his troops were victorious against the Christians of Hungary and the Moors: but Mousa was ruined by his timorous disposition and unreasonable chemicry. After resigning the sovereignty of Anatolia, he fell a victim to the perfidy of his ministers, and the superior ascendant of his brother Mahomet. 5. The final victory of Mahomet was the just recompense of his prudence and moderation. Before his father's captivity, the royal youth had been intrusted with the government of Amasia, thirty days' journey from Constantinople, and the Turkish frontier against the Christians of Trebizond and Georgia. The castle, in Asiatic warfare, was esteemed impregnable; and the city of Amasia, which is equally divided by the river Iris, rises on either side in the form of an amphitheatre, and represents on smaller scale the image of Bagdad. In his rapid career, Timour appears to have overlooked this obscure and contemptuous angle of Anatolia; and Mahomet, without provoking the conqueror, maintained his silent independence, and chased from the province the last stragglers of the Tartar host. He relieved himself from the dangerous neighbourhood of Ias; but in the contests of their more powerful brethren, his first neutrality was respected; till, after the triumph of Mousa, he stood forth the heir and avenger of the unfortunate Sallam. Mahomet obtained Anatolia by treaty, and Romania by arms; and the soldier who presented him with the head of Mousa, was rewarded as the benefactor of his king and country. The eight years of his sole and peaceful reign were carefully employed in banishing the vices of civil discord, and restoring on a firmer basis the fabric of the Ottoman monarchy. His last care was the choice of two vizirs, Bezaret and Ibrahim, who might guide the youth of his son Amurat; and since they were their union and prudence, that they concealed above forty days the emperor's death, till the arrival of his successor in the palace of Bousra. A new war was kindled in Europe by the prince, or impostor, Mustapha: the first vizir lost his money and his head; but the more fortunate Ibrahim, whose name and family are still revered, extinguished the last pretender to the throne of Beazaret, and closed the scene of domestic hostility.

In the conflict, the wisest Turks, and indeed the body of the nation, were strongly attached to the unity of the empire; and Romania and Anatolia, so often torn asunder by private ambition, were animated by a strong and invincible tendency of cohesion. Their efforts might have instructed the Christian powers; and last they occupied, with a confederate fleet, the Straits of Gallipoli, the Ottomans, at least in Europe, must have been speedily annihilated. But the schism of the West, and the factions and wars of France and England, diverted the Latins from this generous enterprise: they enjoyed the present respite, without a thought of futurity; and after their victory, the Ionian coast, was ephoned by the lucrative monopoly of alum; and their tranquility, under the Turkish empire, was secured by the annual payment of tribute. In the last civil war of the Ottomans, the Genevoise governor, Adorna, a bold and ambitious youth, embraced the party of Amurath; and undertook, with several stout galleys, to transport him from Asia to Europe. The sultan and five hundred guards embarked on board the admiral's ship, which was manned by eight hundred of the bravest Franks. His life and liberty were in their hands; nor can we, without reluctance, applaud the fidelity of Adorna, who, in the midst of the perils he had before him, and gratefully accepted a discharge of his service of tribune. They landed in strength of Mustapha and Gallipoli; two thousand Italians, armed with lances and battle-axes, attended Amurath to the conquest of Adrianople; and this venal service was soon repaid by the ruin of the commerce and colony of Phocaia.

If Timour had generously marched at the request, and to the relief, of the Greek emperor, he might be entitled to the praise and gratitude of the Christians. But a Mussulman, who carried
into Georgia, the event of persecution, and respected the holy warfare of Bajazet, was not disposed to pity or succour the sufferers of Europe. The Tartars followed the impulse of ambition; and the deliverance of Constantinople was the accidental consequence. When Manuel abdicated the government, it was his prayer, rather than his hope, that the ruin of the church and state might be delayed beyond his unhappy days; and after his return from a western pilgrimage, he expected every hour the news of the sad catastrophe. On a sudden, he was astonished and rejoiced by the intelligence of the retreat, the overthrow, and the captivity of the Ottomans. Manuel immediately sailed from Modon in the Manrai, ascended the throne of Constantinople, and disbanded his hind competitors to an easy exile in the isle of Lesbos. The ambassadors of the son of Bajazet were soon introduced to his presence; but their pride was fallen, their tone was modest; they were avowed by the just apprehension, but the Greeks should open the gates of Europe. Saladin saluted the emperor by the name of father; solicited at his hands the government, or gift of Romania; and promised to deserve it to the Ulama, the constitution of the throne, with the most important places along the Styx, the Propontis, and the Black Sea. The alliance of Saladin exposed the emperor to the enmity and revenge of Doria; the Turks appeared in arms before the gates of Constantinople; but they were repulsed by sea and land; and unless the city was guarded by some foreign mercenaries, the Greeks must have wondered at their own triumph. But, instead of prolonging the division of the Ottoman powers, the policy of the Greeks was tempted to assist the most formidable of the sons of Bajazet. He concluded a treaty with Murad, whose power was checked by the inexpressible horror of Gallipoli; the sultan and his troops were transported over Bosphorus; he was hospitably entertained in the capital; and his successful sally was the first step to the conquest of Romania. The ruin was suspended by the patience and moderation of the conqueror: he faithfully discharged his own obligations and those of Saladin, respected the laws of gratitude and peace; and left the emperor guardian of his two younger sons, in the vain hope of saving them from the jealous cruelty of their brother Amurath. But the execution of his last testament would have offended the national honour and religion; and the divan unanimously pronounced, that the royal youth should never be abandoned to the custody and education of a Christian dog. On this refusal, the Byzantine councils were divided: but the age and caution of Manuel yielded to the presumption of his son John; and they unheeded a dangerous weapon of revenge, by dismissing the true or false Musaphat, he had long been detained as a captive and hostage, and for whose maintenance they received an annual pension of three hundred thousand aspers. At the door of his prison, Musaphat subscribed to every proposal; and the keys of Gallipoli, or rather of Europe, were stipulated at the price of his deliverance. But no sooner was he seated on the throne of Romania, than he dismissed the Greek ambassadors with a smile of contempt, declaring, in a solemn tone, that, at the day of judgment, he would answer for the violation of an oath, than for the surrender of a Mussulman city into the hands of the infidels. The emperor was atonce the enemy of the two rivals, from whom he had sustained, and to whom he had offered, an injury; and the victory of Amurath was followed, in the ensuing year, by the siege of Constantinople.

The religious merit of subduing the city of the Caesars, attracted from Asia a crowd of volunteers, who aspired to the crown of martyrdom: their military ardour was inflamed by the presence of rich spoil and beautiful females; and the sultan's ambition was exasperated by the presence and prediction of Said Ascher, a descendant of the prophet, who arrived in the camp, on a mule, with a venerable train of five hundred disciples. But he might blush, if a fanatic could blush, at the failure of his assurances. The strength of the walls resisted an army of two hundred thousand Turks: their assaults were repelled by the suffrages of the Greeks and their foreign mercenaries; the old resources of defense were opposed to the new engines of attack; and the enthusiasm of the druzhii, who was swaddled in the livid arms of his compatriots, was answered by the cruelty of the Christians, who beheaded the Virgin Mary, in a violet garment, walking on the rampart and stimulating their courage.

After a siege of two months, Amurath was recalled to Bocas by a domestic revolt, which had been kindled by Greek treachery, and was soon extinguished by the death of a guiltless brother. While he led his Janissaries to new conquests in Europe and Asia, the Byzantine empire was indulged in a servile and precarious respite of thirty years. Manuel sunk into the grave; and John Palaeologus was permitted to reign, for an annual tribute of three hundred thousand aspers; and the deportation of almost all that he held beyond the suburbs of Constantinople.

In the establishment and restoration of the Turkish empire, the first merit must doubtless be assigned to the personal qualities of the sultan; since, in human life, the most important events will depend on the character of a single act. By some shade of wisdom and virtue, they may be discriminated from each other; but, except in a single instance, a period of nine reigns.

69 For the reigns of Manuel and John, of Michael V. and Michael VI. of the Palaeologoi, see the particular ed. of the 'Annals of Decies,' ed. by the author of 'Decies,' vol. vii. p. 884. 68 For the reign of John, see the particular ed. of the 'Annals of Decies,' vol. vii. p. 884. 67 For the reign of Michael V., see the particular ed. of the 'Annals of Decies,' vol. vii. p. 884. 66 For the reign of Michael VI., see the particular ed. of the 'Annals of Decies,' vol. vii. p. 884.
and two hundred and sixty-five years, is occupied, from the elevation of Osman to the death of Salim, by a rare series of warlike and active princes, who impressed their subjects with obedience and their enemies with terror. Instead of the sotolful luxury of the seraglio, the heirs of royalty were educated in the council and the field: from early youth they were instructed by their fathers with the command of provinces and armies; and this manly institution, which was once productive of civilization, must have essentially contributed to the discipline and vigour of the monarchy. The Ottomans cannot style themselves, like the Arabian caliph, the descendants or successors of the apostle of God; and the kindred which they claim with the Tartar khans of the house of Chingis, appears to be founded in flattery rather than in truth. Their origin is obscure; but their sacred and indefeasible right, which no time can erase, and no violence can infringe, was soon and unalterably implanted in the minds of their subjects. A weak or vicious sultan may be deposed and strangled; but his inheritance devolves to an infant or an idiot: nor has the most daring rebel presumed to ascend the throne of his lawful sovereign. While the transient dynasties of Europe have been continually subverted by a crafty vizir in the palace or a victorious general in the camp, the Ottoman succession has been confirmed by the practice of five centuries, and is now incorporated with the vital principle of the Turkish nation.

To the spirit and constitution of that nation, a strong and singular influence may however be ascribed. The primitive subjects of Osman were the four hundred families of wandering Turkomans, who had followed his ancestors from the Oxus to the Sungir, and the plains of Anatolia are still covered with the white and black tents of their ruder brethren. But this original stock was dissolved in the mass of voluntary and vanquished subjects, who, under the name of Turks, are united by the common ties of religion, language, and manners. In the cities, from Erzerum to Belgrade, that national appellation is common to all the Moslems, the first and most honourable inhabitants; but they have abandoned, at least in Romania, the villages, and the cultivation of the land, to the Christian peasants. In the vigorous age of the Ottoman government, the Turks were themselves excluded from all civil and military honours; and a servile class, an artificial people, was raised by the discipline of education to obey, to conquer, and to command. From the time of Orchan and the first Amurath, the sultans were persuaded that a government of the sword must be renewed in each generation with new soldiers; and that such soldiers must be sought, not in effi-

86 See Ehrmann, i. 1. 135. The Turkish soldiers assume the title of Khan when they are made Janissaries. See also the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. xxi. pp. 375, 376. The close personal ties of the name of Kumbur, who retired to Paris, are proba-bly the cause of the confusion in the genealogical tables of Turkey, and that it was to be considered the same (though from different, but the same, elements) as Kumbur Khan, a native of Lahore, who settled in Paris in the year 1650. He was a good writer, and joined in the political intrigues of the house of Orleans. The abettors of Kumbur were with the ogues of the Ottoman empire, and his son, Kumbur Khan, has been the subject of many memoirs. See the Journal of the Asiatic Society, vol. xxi. pp. 375, 376. The title of Khan is assumed by the early emperors, and it is the title of a great many other rulers in the Ottoman empire, as well as in Persia and India. See the Journal of the Asiatic Society, vol. xxi. pp. 375, 376. The name of Khan is also used by the early emperors, as well as in Persia and India. See the Journal of the Asiatic Society, vol. xxi. pp. 375, 376.
walls and towers which had been erected only to resist the less potent engines of antiquity. By the Venetians, the use of gunpowder was communicated without reproof to the sultans of Egypt and Persia, their allies against the Ottoman power; the secret was soon propagated to the extremities of Asia; and the advantage of the European was confined to his easy victories over the savages of the New World. If we contrast the rapid progress of this mischievous discovery with the slow and labious advances of reason, science, and the arts of peace, a philosopher, according to his temper, will laugh or weep at the folly of mankind.

CHAP. LXVI.

Applications of the Eastern Empires to the Pope.

— Visits to the West, of John the First, Manuel, and John the Second, Palaeologus.


In the four last centuries of the Greek emperors, their friendly or hostile aspect towards the popes and the Latins may be observed as the thermometer of their prosperity or distress; as the scale of the rise and fall of the barbarian dynasties. When the Turks of the house of Seljuk pervaded Asia, and threatened Constantinople, we have seen at the council of Phocas, the suppliant ambassadors of Alexius implored the protection of the common father of the Christians. No sooner had the arms of the French pilgrims removed the sultan from Nice to Tunis, than the Greek princes resumed, or revived, their genuine hatred and contempt for the schismatics of the West, which precipitated the first downfall of their empire. The date of the Mogul invasion is marked in the soft and charitable language of John Vatice. After the recovery of Constantinople, the throne of the first Palaeologus was encompassed by foreign and domestic enemies; as long as the sword of Charles was suspended over his head, he bade courtes the favour of the Roman pontiff; and sacrificed to the present danger, his faith, his virtue, and the affection of his subjects. On the decease of Michael, the prince and people asserted the independence of their church, and the purity of their creed: the elder Andronicus neither feared nor loved the Latin; in his last distress pride was the safeguard of superstition; nor could he decently retract, in his age the firm and enthusiastic declarations of his youth. His grandson,
the younger Andronicus, was less a slave in his temper and situation; and the conquest of Bulgaria by the Turks diminished him to seek a temporal and spiritual alliance with the Western princes. After a separation and silence of fifty years, a secret agent, the monk Barlaam, was despatched to the pope; he accused the Turks, and his urgent instructions appear to have been drawn by the master-bant of the great domain. 1

"Most holy father," was he commissioned to say, "the emperor is not less desirous than yourself of an union between the two churches; but in this delicate transaction, he is obliged to observe his own dignity and the prejudices of his subjects. The ways of union are two; force, and persuasion. Of force, the iniquity has already been tried; since the Latins have subdued the empire, without subduing the minds of the Greeks. The method of persuasion, though slow, is sure and peremptory. A delegation of thirty or forty of our doctors would probably agree with those of the Vatican, in the love of truth and the unity of belief; but on their return, what would be the use, the recompense of such agreement? the scorn of their brethren, and the reproaches of a blind and obstinate nation. Yet that nation is accustomed to reverence the general councils, which have fixed the articles of our faith; and if they repudiate the decrees of Lyons, it is because the Eastern churches were not heard nor represented in that arbitrary meeting. For this salutary end, it will be expedient, and even necessary, that a well-chosen legate should be sent into Greece, to converse with the patriarchs of Constantinople, Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem; and, with their aid, to prepare a free and universal synod. But at this moment," continued the subtle agent, "the empire is assaulted and endangered by the Turks, who have occupied four of the greatest cities in Anatolia. The Christian inhabitants have expressed a wish of returning to their allegiance and religion; but the forces and revenues of the emperor are insufficient for their deliverance; and the Roman legate must be accompanied, or preceded, by an army of Franks, to expel the infidels, and open a way to the holy sepulchre." If the suspicions Latins should require some pledge, some previous effect of the sincerity of the Greeks, the answers of Barlaam were perspicuous and rational. 2. A general synod can alone consummate the union of the churches; nor can such a synod be held till the three Oriental patriarchs, a great number of bishops, are enfranchised from the Mahometan yoke. 2. The Greeks are alienated by a long series of oppression and injury; they must be reconciled by some act of brotherly love, some effectual suaveur, which may fortify the authority and arguments of the emperor, and the friends of the union. 3. If some difference of faith or cerebrations should be found incurable, the Greeks however are the disciples of Christ; and the Turks are the common enemies of the Christian name. 4. The Armenians, Cypriots, and Illyrians, are equally proscribed; and it will become the duty of the French princes to take their wounds in the general defence of religion. 5. Should the subjects of Andronicus be regarded as the worst of schismatics, of heretics, of Pagans, a judicious policy may yet instruct the powers of the West to embrace an useful and holy, to uphold a sinking empire, to guard the common of Europe; and rather to join the Greeks against the Turks, than to expose the union of the Turkish arms with the troops and treasures of captive Greeks. The reasons, the offers, and the demands, of Andronicus, were studied with cold and stately insufficiency. The kings of France and Naples declined the dangers and glory of a crusade: the pope refused to call a new synod to determine old articles of faith; and his regard for the absolute claims of the Latin emperor and clergy engaged him to use an offensive supercendi; 6. To the successor of the Greeks, and the persons who style themselves the patriarchs of the Eastern churches. For such an embassy, a time and character less propitious could not easily have been found. Benedict the Twelfth was a dull peasant, perplexed with scruples, and immersed in sloth and wine: his pride might enrich with a third crown the papal lira, but he was alike unfit for the regal and the pastoral office.

After the decease of Andronicus, and while the Greeks were distressed by intestine war, they could not presume to agitate a general union of the Christians. But as soon as Cantacuzene had subdued and pardoned his enemies, he was anxious to justify, or at least to extenuate, the introduction of the Turks into Europe; and the magnificence of his son with a Mussulman prince. Two officers of state, with a Latin interpreter, were sent in his name to the Roman court, which was transplanted to Avignon, on the banks of the Rhone, during a period of seventy years; they represented the hard necessity which had urged him to embrace the alliance of the miscreants, and pronounced by his command the specious and edifying sounds of union and crusade. Pope Clement the Sixth, the successor of Benedict, received them with hospitality and honour, acknowledged the impieties of their sovereign, extenuated his distress, applauded his megalomania, and displayed a clear knowledge of the state and revolutions of the Greek empire. 7

---

1 This importunate mission was performed in the Vatican audience; to Clement, Bezaudin, in the Collection of the Church History, vol. iv. p. 21. 2 See the account given by Chrysostom, in his Epistle to the Romans, the contains the story of the Eastern metropolitans, John and Ignatius, in a number of the bishops of Constantinople, Alexandria, and Antioch, which may be found in the Exposition of the Eastern Church, vol. ii. p. 102. 3 See the original of the emperor's letter, given by Baldis, and presented to the Eastern patriarchs, as given by Boccaccio, who copied it, with slight alterations, into his History of the Turks. See also the collections of the Franciscan missionaries, and the collections of the Franciscan and Dominican fathers, who have written on the same subject. So the ideas of the church of Constantinople are very well known to the church of Rome, and not to be admitted without the consent of the church of Rome.
THE DECLINE AND FALL

which he had inspired from the honest accounts of a Savoyard lady, an attendant of the empress Anne. If Clement was ill endowed with the virtues of a priest, he possessed however the spirit and magnificence of a prince, whose liberal hand distributed benefices and kingdoms with equal facility. Under his reign Avignon was the seat of pomp and pleasure; in his youth he had surpassed the licentiousness of a barn; and the palaces, nay, the bed-chamber of the pope, was adorned, or polluted, by the visits of his female favourites. The wars of France and England were subservient to the holy enterprise; but the vanity was amused by the splendid Idea; and the Greek ambassadors returned with two Latin bishops, the ministers of the pontiff. On their arrival at Constantinople, the emperor and the numerous admired each other's piety and eloquence; and their frequent conferences were filled with mutual praises and promises, by which both parties were amused, and neither could be deceived. "I am delighted," said the devout Cantacuzene, "with the project of our holy war, which must redound to my personal glory, as well as to the public benefit of Christendom. My dominions will give a free passage to the armies of France; my glory, my gallantry, my treasures, shall be consecrated to the common cause; and happy would be my fate, could I deserve and obtain the crown of martyrdom. Words are insufficient to express the ardour with which I sigh for the reunion of the scattered members of Christ."

If my death could avail, I would gladly present my sword and my neck; if the spiritual phoenix could arise from my ashes, I would erode the pole, and kindle the flame with my hands.

Yet the Greek emperor presumed to observe, that the articles of faith which divided the two churches had been introduced by the pride and precipitation of the Latins; he disclaimed the servile and arbitrary steps of the firstPaleologus; and firmly declared, that he would never submit his conscience unless to the decrees of a free and universal Synod. "The situation of the times," continued he, "will not allow the pope and myself to meet either at Rome or Constantinople; but some marvellous union city may be chosen on the verge of the two empires, to unite the bishops, and to instruct the faithful of the East and West."

The numerous seemed content with the proposition; and Cantacuzene affects to deplore the failure of his hopes, which were soon overthrown by the death of Clement, and the different temper of his successor. His own life was prolonged, but it was prolonged in a cloister; and, except by his prayers, the humble monk was incapable of directing the counsels of his pupil or the state.

Yet of all the Byzantine princes, that pupil, John Paleologus, was the best disposed to embrace, to believe, and to obey, the shepherd of the West. His mother, Anna of Savoy, was baptized in the

boman of the Latin church; her marriage with Andronicus imposed a charge of name, of apparel, and of worship, but her heart was still faithful to her country and religion; she had formed the infancy of her son, and she governed the emperor, after his mind, or at least his stature, was enlarged to the size of man. In the first year of his deliverance and restoration, the Turks were still masters of the Hollespent; the army of Cantacuzene was in arms at Adriopolis: and Paleologus could depend neither on himself nor on his people. By his mother's advice, and in the hope of foreign aid, he strove the rights both of the church and state; and the act of slavery, subscribed in purple ink, and sealed with the golden bull, was privately entrusted to an Italian agent. The first article of the treaty is an oath of fidelity and obedience to Innocent the Sixth and his successors, the supreme pontiffs of the Roman and Catholic church. The emperor promises to entertain with due reverence their legates and nuncios; to assign a palace for their residence, and a temple for their worship; and to deliver his second son Manuel as the hostage of his faith. For these concessions he requires a prompt succour of fifteen galleys, with five hundred men at arms, and a thousand archers, to serve against his Christian and Mussulman enemies. Paleologus engages to impose on his clergy and people the same spiritual yoke; but as the resistance of the Greeks might be justly foreseen, he adopts the two effectual methods of corruption and education. The legates were empowered to distribute the vacant benefices among the ecclesiastics who should subscribe the creed of the Vatican; three schools were instituted to instruct the youth of Constantinople in the language and doctrine of the Latins; and the name of Andronicus, the heir of the empire, was enrolled as the first student. Should he fail in the measures of persuasion and force, Paleologus declares, himself unworthy to reign; transferred to the pope all regal and paternal authority; and requests Innocent with full power to regulate the family, the government, and the marriage, of his son and successor. But this treaty was neither executed nor published; the Roman galleys were as vain and imaginary as the submission of the Greeks; and it was only by the secrecy, that their sovereignty escaped the disavowal of this fruitless humiliation.

The tempest of the Turkish arms soon burst on his head; and, after an reign of

the loss of Adriopolis and Ro-

pavement, he was enclosed in his es-

capital, the vassal of the haughty Amurath, with the miserable hope of being the last devoted by the savage. In this abject state, Palæologus embracing the resolution of embarking for Venice and casting himself at the feet of the pope, he was the first of the Byzantine princes who had ever visited the unknown regions of the West, yet in them alone he could seek consolation of relief: and with less violations of his dignity be
might appear in the sacred college than at the
onsum Porta. After a long absence, the Ro-
nan pontiffs were returning from Avignon to
the banks of the Tyne: Urban the Fifth,8 of a
mild and virtuous character, encouraged or al-
lowed the pilgrimage of the Greek prince; and,
within the same year, enjoyed the glory of re-
civing in the Vatican the two Imperial shadows
who represented the majesty of Constantine and
Charlemagne. In this supplicant visit, the em-
peror of Constantinople, whose vanity was lost
in his distress, gave more than could be expected
of empty sounds and formal submissions. A
previous trial was imposed; and in the presence
of four cardinals, he acknowledged, as a true
Catholic, the supremacy of the pope, and the
double procession of the Holy Ghost. After
this purification he was introduced to a public
audience in the church of St. Peter; Urban, in
the midst of the cardinals, was seated on his
throne; the Greek monarch, after three ges-
tications, devoutly kissed the feet, the hands,
and the lips of the holy father, who celebrated
his high mass in his presence. Urban al-
lowed him to lead the bridle of his horse, and
trusted him with a sumptuous banquet at the
Vatican. The entertainment of Palaeologus was
friendly and honourable; yet some difference
was observed between the emperors of the East
and West; nor could the former be entitled to
the rare privilege of chanting the Gospel in
the rank of a deacon. In favour of his pro-
scry, Urban strove to rekindle the zeal of the
French king, and the other powers of the West,
but he found them cold in the general cause,
and active only in their domestic quarrels.
The last hope of the emperor was in an English
monarch, John Hawkwood,11 or Acuto, who, with
a band of adventurers, the white brotherhood,
had ravaged Italy from the Alps to Calabria:
sold his services to the hostile states; and in-
curred a just excommunication by shooting his
arrows against the papal residence. A special
licence was granted to negotiate with the outlaw,
but the forces, or the spirit, of Hawkwood were
unequal to the enterprise; and it was for the
advantage, perhaps, of Palaeologus to be disap-
pointed of a succour, that must have been costly,
that could not be effectual, and which might have
been dangerous.12 The discomfited Greek13
prepared for his return, but even his return was
impeded by a most ignominious obstacle. On
his arrival at Venice, he had borrowed large
sums at exorbitant usury; but his creditors were
empty, his creditors were impatient, and his
person was detained as the best security for the
payment. His eldest son Andronikus, the reg-
gent of Constantinople, was repeatedly urged
to exhaust every resource; and, even by stripping
the churches, to extricate his father from
captivity and disgrace. But the unnatural youth
was insensible of the disgrace, and severely
pleased with the captivity of the emperor; the
state was poor, the clergy were obstructed; nor
could some religious scruple be wanting to
excuse the guilt of his indifference and delay.
Such unprofitable neglect was severely repro-
ved by the piety of his brother Manuel, who in-
stantly sold or mortgaged all that he possessed,
embarked for Venice, relieved his father, and
pledged his own freedom, to be responsible for
the debt. On his return to Con-
stantinople, the present king of Byzantium dis-
tinguished his two sons with suitable
rewards; but the faith and manners of the
slothful Palaeologus had not been improved by
his Roman pilgrimage; and his piety or con-
version, devoted to any spiritual or temporal
effects, was speedily forgotten by the Greeks
and Latins.14

Thirty years after the return of
Palaeologus, his son and successor,
Manuel, from a similar motive, but
on a larger scale, again visited the countries of
the West. In a preceding chapter I have
related his treaty with Bajazet, the violation of
that treaty, the siege or blockade of Constan-
tinople, and the French succour under the com-
mand of the gallant Boucault.15 By his ambas-
sadors, Manuel had solicited the Latin powers;
but it was thought that the presence of a dis-
trusted monarch would draw tears and supplies
from the hardest barbarians;16 and the marshal
who advised the journey, prepared the reception
of the Byzantine prince. The land was occu-
pied by the Turks; but the navigation of Venice
was safe and open: Italy received him as the
first, or, at least, as the second of the Christian
princes; Manuel was placed on the throne and
confessor of the faith; and the dignity of his
behaviour prevented that pity from sinking into
contempt. From Venice he proceeded to Pads
and Paris; and even the duke of Milan, a secret
ally of Bajazet, gave him safe and immovable
conduct to the verge of his domin-
ions.17 On the confines of France18
the royal officers undertook the cure
of his person, journey, and expenses: and two

8 See the best account in Baron Leake's Life of Urban, ii. 335. The
Baron's view of the date of the death of Urban, p. 30, is not generally
accepted. It is somewhat later than that of the French historians,
and the English Historians, who date it 1370. This seems to be the
best date. M. de labbe, Histoire de Rome, iv. 503; Dr. Lord, Acre,
III. 411. See also the account of the death of Urban in the 'Chron.
Anct. of Regnum,' p. 417, p. 419, p. 420, and 421. See the
account of the death of Urban in the 'Chron. of the English.'
9 See the account of the election of Urban in the 'Chron. of the
English.'
10 See the account of the election of Urban in the 'Chron.
Anct. of Regnum,' p. 472, for the election of Urban.
11 See the account of the election of Urban in the 'Chron.
Anct. of Regnum,' p. 472, for the election of Urban.
12 See the account of the election of Urban in the 'Chron.
Anct. of Regnum,' p. 472, for the election of Urban.
13 See the account of the election of Urban in the 'Chron.
Anct. of Regnum,' p. 472, for the election of Urban.
14 See the account of the election of Urban in the 'Chron.
Anct. of Regnum,' p. 472, for the election of Urban.
15 See the account of the election of Urban in the 'Chron.
Anct. of Regnum,' p. 472, for the election of Urban.
16 See the account of the election of Urban in the 'Chron.
Anct. of Regnum,' p. 472, for the election of Urban.
17 See the account of the election of Urban in the 'Chron.
Anct. of Regnum,' p. 472, for the election of Urban.
18 See the account of the election of Urban in the 'Chron.
Anct. of Regnum,' p. 472, for the election of Urban.
thousand of the richest citizens, in arms and on
horses, came forth to meet him as far as
Clarendon, in the neighbourhood of the capital.
At the gates of Paris, he was saluted by the
chancellor and the parliament; and Charles the
Sixth, attended by his princes and nobles, wel-
comed his brother with a cordial embrace.
The successor of Constantine was clothed in a robe
of white silk, and mounted on a milk-white
steed; a circumstance, in the French ceremonial,
of singular importance; the white colour is con-
sidered as the symbol of sovereignty; and, in a
late visit, the German emperor, after a lengthi-
and demand and a peremptory refusal, had been reduced to
cantment himself with a black courtier. Manuel
was lodged in the Louvre; a succession of feasts
and balls, the pleasures of the banquet and the
chace, were ingeniously varied by the politeness
of the French, to display their magnificence, and
amuse his grief; he was indulged in the liberty of
his chapel; and the doctors of the Sorbonne
were astonished, and possibly scandalised, by the
language, the rites, and the vestments of his
Greek clergy. But the slightest glance on the
state of the kingdom must teach him to despair
of any effectual assistance. The unfortunate
Charles, though he enjoyed some lucid intervals,
continually resorted to furious or stupid in-
sanity; the reins of government were alternately
seized by his brother and uncle, the dukes of
Orléans and Burgundy, whose factional com-
nesion prepared the miseries of civil war. The
former was a gay youth, dissolvent in luxury and
love; the latter was the father of John count of
Nevra, who had so lately been removed from
Turkish captivity; and, if the fearful son was
ardent to revenge his defeat, the more prudent
Burgundy was content with the cost and peril
of the first experiment. When Manuel had sat-
iated the curiosity, and perhaps fatigued the
patience, of the French, he resolved on a visit
to the adjacent island. In his pro-
gress from Dover, he was entertain-
ed at Canterbury with due rever-
ence by the prior and monks of St. Austin;
and, on Blackheath, king Henry the Fourth,
with the English court, saluted the Greek hero
(I copy our old historian), who, during many
days, was lodged and treated in London as em-
peror of the East. But the state of England
was still more adverse to the design of the holy
war. In the same year, the hereditary sovereign
had been deposed and murdered; the reigning
prince was a successful usurper, whose ambition
was punished by jealousy and remorse: nor
could Henry of Lancaster withdraw his person
or forces from the defence of a throne incess-
antly shaken by conspiracy and rebellion. He
pitied, he praised, he feasted, the emperor of
Constantinople; but if the English monarch
asserted the cross, it was only to appease his
people, and perhaps his conscience, by the mar-
ket or semblance of this pious intention. Satisfied,
however, with gifts and honours, Manuel
returned to Paris; and, af-
fter a residence of two years in the
West, shaped his course through Germany and
Italy, embarked at Venice, and impatiently ex-
pected, in the Morea, the moment of his ruin or
delivery. Yet he had escaped the igno-
munious necessity of offering his religion to
public or private sale. The Latin church was
distracted by the great schism: the kings, the
nations, the universities, of Europe, were di-
vided in their obedience between the popes of
Rome and Avignon; and the emperor, anxious
to conciliate the friendship of both parties, ob-
tained from any correspondence with the indig-
ent and unpopular rivals. His journey coinci-
ded with the year of jubilee; but he passed
through Italy without desiring, or deserving, the
pleasur indulgence which abolished the guilt or
penance of the sins of the faithful. The Roman
pope was offended by this neglect; accused him
of irreverence to an image of Christ; and ex-
orted the princes of Italy to reject and abandon
the odious schismatics.21

During the period of the crusades,
the Greeks beheld with astonish-
ment and terror the perpetual stream
of emigration that flowed, and continued to flow,
from the unknown climates of the West. The
visits of two last emperors removed the veil of
separation, and they declined to their eyes the
powerful nations of Europe, whom they no
longer presumed to band with the name of insti-
turians. The observations of Manuel, and his
more inquisitive followers, have been preserved
by a Byzantine historian of the times: his
scattered ideas I shall collect and arrange;
and it may be amusing enough, perhaps instructive,
to contemplate the rude pictures of Germany,
France, and England, whose ancient and mod-
ern state are so familiar to us minds. I.

Germany (says the
Greek Chalcondyles) is of ample latitude from
Vienna to the Ocean; and it stretches (a strange
gography) from Prague in Bohemia, in the
river Tartusus, and the Parnusus mountains.
The soil, except in fogs and slopes, is sufficiently
fruitful; the air is salubrious; the bodies of
the natives are robust and healthy; and these old
regions are seldom visited with the calamities of
pestilence or earthquakes. After the Scythians
or Tartars, the Germans are the most numerous
of nations; they are brave and patient, and were
they united under a single head, their force
would be irresistible. By the gift of the popes

21 The Greek and Turkish history of Lucasius Chalcondyles ends at the year 1350; but the events of the subsequent winter were
already well known to the Chalcondyles, and are thus narrated by
him in the second part of his History. The Chalcondyles had
seen the Greek and Latin states of the Balkan Peninsula engaged
in the war with the Subaety Lowlands, and the island of
Chersonese, which had been taken by the Genoese; and the
death of Manuel, which was long expected, and which had
caused general distrust of his state and character. He feasted
the Simoom in his

22 In the year 1459, the ancient states of Lucania were
conquered by the Genoese. The Chalcondyles, however, in his

23 I shall not advert to the geographical errors of Chal-
condyles in this chapter, as he is not the best author for these
matters. The Chalcondyles states, that the island of
Chersonese, which was long expected to fall into the hands of the
Genoese, did not fall into the hands of the Genoese, as do the
other islands, but remained in the hands of the Genoese; and
the Chalcondyles, in his histories, makes no mention of
the island of Chersonese, as it does not appear in his
accounts of the battles of the Greek, Latin, and Genoese, as
it does not appear in his

they have acquired the privilege of choosing the Roman emperor; but is any people more devoutly attached to the faith and obedienee of the Latin patriarch. The greatest part of the country is divided among the princes and nobles; but Strasburg, Cologne, Hamburg, and more than two hundred free cities, are governed by wise and equal laws, according to the will, and for the advantage, of the whole community. The use of arms, or single combats on foot, prevails among them in peace and war; their industry excels in all the mechanic arts, and the Germans may boast of the invention of gunpowder and cannon, which is now diffused over the greatest part of the world. II. The kingdom of France is spread above fifteen or twenty days' journey from Germany to Spain, and from the Alps to the British Ocean; containing many flourishing cities, and among them Paris, the seat of the king, which surpasses the rest in riches and luxury. Many princes and lords alternately wait in his palace, and acknowledge him as their sovereign; the most powerful are the dukes of Burgundy and Brittany, of whom the latter possesses the wealthy province of Flanders, whose harbours are frequented by the ships and merchants of our own, and the more remote sea. The French are an ancient and opulent people: their language and manners, though somewhat different, are not dissimilar from those of the Italians. Vain of the Imperial dignity of Charlemagne, of their victories over the Saracens, and of the exploits of their heroes, Oliver and Rowland; they esteem themselves the first of the Western nations; but this foolish arrogance has been recently humbled by the unfortunate events of their wars against the English, the inhabitants of the British island. III. Britain, in the ocean, and opposite to the shores of Flanders, may be considered either as one, or as three islands; but the whole is united by a common interest, by the same manners, and by a similar government. The measure of its circumference is five thousand stadia; the land is overspread with towns and villages; though destitute of wine, and not abounding in fruit-trees, it is fertile in wheat and barley; in honey and wool; and much cloth is manufactured by the inhabitants. In populousness and power, in riches and luxury, London, the metropolis of the island, may claim a pre-eminence over all the cities of the West. It is situated on the Thames, a broad and rapid river, which at the distance of thirty miles falls into the Hallic Sea; and the daily flow and ebb of the tide affords a safe entrance and departure to the vessels of commerce. The king is the head of a powerful and turbulent aristocracy; his principal vassals hold their estates by a fixed and unalterable tenure; and the laws define the limits of his authority and their obedience. The kingdom has been often afflicted by foreign conquest and domestic sedition; but the nation are bold and hardy, renowned in arms and victorious in war.

The form of their shields and targets is derived from the Italians, that of their swords from the Greeks; the use of the long bow is the peculiar and decisive advantage of the English. Their language bears no affinity to the idioms of the continent; in the habits of domestic life, they are not easily distinguished from their neighbours of France; but the most singular circumstance of their manners is their disregard of conjugal honour and of female chastity. In their mutual visits, as the first act of hospitality, the guest is welcomed in the embraces of his wives and daughters; among friends they are lent and borrowed without shame; nor are the islanders offended at this strange commerce, and its inevitable consequences.

Inform us of the customs of old England, and of those of our mothers, we may smile at the crudity, or resent the injustice, of the Greek, who must have confounded a modest salutation with a criminal embraces. But his crudity and injustice may teach an important lesson; to distrust the accounts of foreign and remote nations, and to suspend our belief of every tale that deviates from the laws of nature and the character of men.

After his return, and the victory of Timour, Manuel reigned many years in prosperity and peace. As long as the sons of Bajazet solicited his friendship and spared his dominions, he was satisfied with the national religion; and his leisure was employed in composing twenty theological dialogues for his defence. The appearance of the Byzantine ambassadors at the council of Constance announced the restoration of the Turkish power, as well as of the Latin church; the conquest of the sultans, mothers and Amurath, reconciled the emperor to the Vatican; and the siege of Constantinople almost tempted him to acquiesce in the double preconisation of the Holy Ghost. When Martin the Fifth ascended without a rival the chair of St. Peter, a friendly intercourse of letters and embassies was revived between the East and the West. Ambition on one side, and distress on the other, dictated the same decent language of charity and peace; the artful Greek expressed a desire of marrying his six sons to Italian princesses; and the Romans, not less artful, despatched the daughter of the marquis of Monteferrat, with
a company of noble virgins, to soften, by their charm, the obstinacy of the schismatics. Yet under this mask of zeal, a discerning eye will perceive that all was hollow and insincere in the court and church of Constantinople. According to the vices of danger and repose, the emperor advanced or retreated; alternately instructed and dissuaded his ministers; and escaped from an inopportune pressure by urging the duty of inquiry, the obligation of collecting the sense of his patriarchs and bishops, and the impossibility of convening them at a time when the Turkish arms were at the gates of his capital. From a review of the public transactions it will appear, that the Greeks insisted on three successive measures: a surcease, a council, and a final re-union; while the Latins eluded the second, and only promised the first, as a consequent and voluntary reward of the third. But we have an opportunity of unfolding the most secret intentions of Manuel, as he explained them in a private conversation without artifice or disguise. In his declining age, the emperor had associated John Palæologus, the second of the name, and the eldest of his sons, on whom he devolved the greatest part of the authority and weight of government. One day, in the presence only of the historian Pirenaeus, his favourite chamberlain, he opened to his colleague and successor the true principle of his negotiations with the pope. Our last resource, said Manuel, against the Turks is their fear of our alliance with the Latins, of the smallike enium of the West, who may arm for our relief and for their destruction. As often as you are threatened by the Macedonians, present this danger before their eyes. Propose a concord; conclude an amity; but ever delay and avoid the convocation of an assembly, which cannot be within the spirit and terms of the emperor. The Latins are proud; the Greeks are obstinate; neither party will recede, or retract; and the attempt of a current union will confirm the schism, alienate the empire, and leave us, without hope or defence, at the mercy of the barbarians. Impatient of this solitary lesion, the royal youth arose from his rest, and departed in silence; and the wise monarch (continues Pirenaeus) casting his eyes on me, thus resumed his discourse: My son deems himself a great and heroic prince; but, alas! our miserable age does not afford scope for heroism or greatness. His daring spirit might have suited the happier times of our ancestors; but the present state requires not an emperor, but a cautious steward of the last relics of our fortunes. Well do I remember the lofty ex postulations which he built on our alliance with Mustapha; and much do I fear, that his rash courage will urge the ruin of our house, and that even religion may precipitate our down-

The Roman pontiff had fought the cause of the Latins, ecclesiastical freedom; but the victorious clergy were soon exposed to the tyranny of their deliverer; and his sacred character was insusceptible to those arms which they found so keen and effectual against the civil magistrate. Their great charter, the right of election, was annul-
hilitated by appeals, evaded by trusts or commendals, disappointed by reversionary grants, and superseded by previous and arbitrary reserva-
tions. A public auction was instituted in the court of Rome: the cardinals and fa-
vourites were enriched with the spoils of na-
tions; and every country might complain that the most important and valuable services were accumulated on the heads of aliens and ab-
sentees. During their residence at Avignon, the ambition of the popes subsided in the means pension of aversae 37 and luxury: they rigorously imposed on the clergy the tributes of first-fruits and tenths; but they freely tolerated the impunity of vice, disorder, and corruption.

 Those manifold scandals were ag-
worsened by the great schism of the West, which continued above fifty years. In the furious contests of Rome and Avignon, the vices of the rivals were mutually exposed; and their prevaricating situation degraded their authority, relaxed their discipline, and multiplied their want and exactions. To balance the wounds, and restore the monarchy, of the church, the synods of Pisa 38 and Constance 39 were successively convened; but these grand assemblies, conscious of their strength, resolved to vindicate the privileges of the Christian aristocracy. From a personal sentence against two pontiffs, whom they rejected, and a third, their acknowledged sovereign, whom they deposed, the fathers of Constance proceeded to examine the nature and limits of the Roman supremacy; and did they separate till they had established the authority, above the popes, of a general council. It was enacted, that, for the government and reforma-
tion of the church, such assemblies should be held at regular intervals; and that each synod, before its dissolution, should appoint the time and place of the subsequent meeting. By the influence of the court of Rome, the next convocation at Siena was easily eluded; but the bold and vigorous proceedings of the council of

Basel 40 had almost been fatal to the reigning pontiff, Eugenius the Fourth. A just suspicion of his design prompted the fathers to hasten the promulgation of their first decree, that the representatives of the church-militant on earth were invested with a divine and spiritual jurisdiction over all Christians, without excepting the pope; and that a general council could not be dissolved, prorogued, or transferred, unless by their free deliberation and consent. On the notice that Eugenius had relinquished a bull for that purpose, they ventured to summon, to admissilb, to threaten, to coerce, the continuous sur-

encer of St. Peter. After many 42 delays, to allow time for repen-
tance, they finally declared, that, unless he submitted within the term of sixty days, he was suspended from the exercise of all temporal and ecclesiastical authority. And to mark their jurisdiction over the prince as well as the priest, they assumed the government of Avignon, annulled the alienation of the sacred patrimony, and protected Rome from the imposition of new taxes. Their boldness was justified, not only by the general opinion of the clergy, but by the support of the chief monarchs of Christendom; for the emperor Sigismund declared himself the servant and protector of the synod; Germany and France adhered to their cause; and the duke of Milan was the enemy of Eugenius; and he was driven from the Vatican by an insurrection of the Roman people. Rejected at the same time by his temporal and spiritual subjects, submission was his only choice; by a most humiliating bull, the pope revoked his own acts, and ratified those of the council; incorporated his legates and cardinals with that venerable body; and agreed to resign himself to the decrees of the supreme legislature. Their fame pervaded the countries of the East; and it was in their presence that Sigismund received the ambassadors of the Turkish sultan, who laid at his feet twelve large vases, filled with robes of silk and pieces of gold.

The fathers of Basel aspired to: the glory of reducing the Greeks, as well as the Bohemians, within the pale of the church; and their deputies invited the em-
peror and patriarch of Constantinople to unite with an assembly which possessed the confidence of the Western nations. Palaeologue was not adverse to the proposal; and his ambassadors were introduced with due honours into the Catholic senate. But the choice of the place appeared to be an insuperable obstacle, since he refused to pass the Alps, or the sea of Sicily, and positively required that the synod should be adjourned to some convenient city in Italy, or at least on the Danube. The other articles of this treaty were more readily stipulated; it was agreed to defray the travelling expenses of the emperor, with a train of seven hundred persons, to remit an immediate sum of eight thousand ducats for the accommodation of the Greek clergy; and in his absence to grant a supply of ten thousand ducats, with three hundred archers and some galleys, for the protection of Communipolis. The city of Avignon ad-

advanced the funds for the preliminary expenses; and the embarkation was prepared at Marseilles, with some difficulty and delay.

The city, situated above the Rhone, and guarded by the same of the Rhone, and guarded by the same of the Rhone, was the refuge of John XXII, whom the cardinals, who had been absent a long time, and who was a constant visitor to the city, as he was a constant and ardent admirer of the doctrine of Avignon.
In his distress, the friendship of Palaeologus was disputed by the ecclesiastical powers of the West; but the dexterous activity of a monarch prevailed over the slow debates and inflexible temper of a republic. The decrees of Boul continually tended to circumscribe the deposition of the pope, and to erect a supreme and perpetual tribunal in the church. Eugenius was impatient of the yoke; and the union of the Greeks might afford a decent pretext for translating a rebellious synod from the Rhine to the Po. The independence of the fathers was lost if they passed the Alps; Savoy or Arvignac, to which they acceded with reluctance, were described at Constantinople as states far beyond the pillars of Hercules; the emperor and his clergy were apprehensive of the dangers of a long navigation; they were offended by an haughty declaration, that after suppressing the new heresy of the Bohemians, the council would soon eradicate the old heresy of the Greeks. On the side of Eugenius, all was smooth and yielding, and respectful; and he invited the Byzantine monarch to heal by his presence the schism of the Latin, as well as of the Eastern, church. Ferrara, near the coast of the Adriatic, was proposed for their amicable interview; and with some indulgence of forgery and theft, a surreptitious document was procured, which transfused the synod, with its own consent, to that Italian city. Nice galleys were equipped for this service at Venice, and in the lagoon of Campania; their diligence anticipated the slower vessels of Basle; the Roman admiral was commissioned to burn, sink, and destroy; and those prudently squadron might have encountered each other in the same waters where Athens and Sparta had formerly contended for the preeminence of glory. Assaulted by the interdicts of the factions, who were ready to fight for the possession of his person, Palaeologus hesitated before he left his palace and country on a perils experiment. His father's advice still dwelt on his memory; and reason must suggest, that since the Latins were divided among themselves, they could never unite in a foreign cause. Sigismund disdained the unreasonable adventure; his advice was impartial, since he adhered to the council; and it was enforced by the strange belief, that the German Cesar would nominate a Greek his heir and successor in the empire of the West. Even the Turkish sultan was a counsellor whom it might be unsafe to trust, but whom it was dangerous to offend. Amurat was unskilled in the disputes, but he was apprehensive of the union of the Christians. From his own treasures, he offered to relieve the wants of the Byzantine court; yet he declared, with seeming magnanimity, that Constantinople should be secure and inviolate, in the absence of her sovereign. The resolution of Palaeologus was decided by the most splendid gifts and the most specious promises; he wished to escape for a while from a scene of danger and distress; and after dismissing with an ambiguous answer the messengers of the council, he declared his intention of embarking in the Roman galleys. The age of the patriarch Joseph was more susceptible of fear than of hope; he trembled at the perils of the sea, and expressed his apprehension, that his feeble voice, with thirty priests of his orthodox brethren, would be oppressed in a foreign land by the power and numbers of a Latin synod. He yielded to the royal mandate, to the flattering assurance, that he would be heard as the Erat of nations, and to the secret wish of learning from his brother of the West, to deliver the church from the yoke of kings. The five cross-bearers, or dignitaries, of St. Sophia, were bound to attend his person; and one of them, the great exarch or praetor, Sylvester Syropus, has composed a free and curious history of the false union. Of the clergy that reluctantly obeyed the summons of the emperor and the patriarch, submission was the first duty, and patience the most useful virtue. In a chosen list of twenty bishops, we discover the metropolitan titles of Hierachus and Cyrilus, Nice and Nicomedia, Ephesus and Trebizond, and the personal merit of Mark and Bonaventura; who, in the confidence of their learning and eloquence, were promoted to the episcopal rank. Some monks and philosophers were named to display the sciences and antiquity of the Greek church; and the service of the choir was performed by a select band of singers and musicians. The patriarchs of Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem, appeared by their genuine or fictitious deputes; the private of Russia represented a national church, and the Greeks might consult with the Latins in the extent of their spiritual empire. The precious vases of St. Sophia were exposed to the winds and waves, that the patriarch might officiate with
beyond all splendour; whatever gold the emperor could procure, was expended in the massy ornaments of his bed and chariot; and while they affected to maintain the prosperity of their ancient fortune, they quarrelled for the division of fifteen thousand ducats, the first allies of the Roman pontiff. After the necessary preparations, John Palæologus, with a numerous train, accompanied by his brother Demetrius, and the most respectable persons of the church and state, embarked in eight vessels with sails and oars, which steered through the Turkish Straits of Gallipoli to the Archipelago, the Morea, and the Adriatic Gulf.13

After a tedious and troublesome navigation of seventy-seven days, this religious squadron cast anchor before Venice; and their reception proclaimed the joy and magnificence of that powerful republic. In the command of the world, the modest Augustus had never claimed such honours from his subjects as were paid to his feeble successor by an independent state. Seated on the poop, on a lofty throne, he received the visit, or, in the Greek style, the adoration, of the doge and senators.14 They sailed in the Bucintor, which was accompanied by twelve stately galleys: the sea was overspread with immemorial gondolas of pomp and pleasure; the air resounded with music and acclamations; the mariners, and even the vessels, were dressed in silk and gold; and in all the emblems and pageants, the Roman eagles were blended with the lira of St. Mark. The triumphal procession, ascending the great canal, passed under the bridge of the Rialto; and the Eastern strangers gazed with admiration on the palaces, the churches, and the population of a city, that seems to float on the bosom of the waves. They sighed to behold the spoils and trophies with which it had been decorated after the sack of Constantinople. After an hospitable entertainment of fifteen days, Palæologus pursued his journey by land and water from Venice to Ferrara; and, on this occasion, the pride of the Vatican was tempered

into Ferrara, by policy to indulge the ancient dignity of the empire of the East. He made his entry on a black horse; but a milk-white steed, whose trappings were embroidered with golden eagles, was led before him; and the canopy was borne over his head by the princes of Este, the sons or kinsmen of Nicholas, marquis of the city, and a sovereign more powerful than himself.15 Palæologus did not alight till he reached the bottom of the staircase; the pope advanced to the door of the apartment; refused his prostrated genuflexion; and, after a paternal embraces, conducted the emperor to a seat on his left hand. Nor would the patriarch descend from his gallery, till a ceremony, almost equal, had been stipulated between the bishops of Rome and Constantinople. The latter was saluted by his brother with a kiss of union and charity; nor would any of the Greek ecclesiastics submit to kiss the feet of the Western primate. On the opening of the synod, the place of honour in the centre was claimed by the temporal and ecclesiastical chief; and it was only by alleging that his predecessor had not assisted in person at Nice or Chalcedon, that Eugenius could evade the ancient prescripts of Constantine and Marcellus. After much debate, it was agreed that the right and left sides of the church should be occupied by the two nations: that the solitary chair of St. Peter should be raised the first of the Latin line; and that the throne of the Greek emperor, at the head of his clergy, should be equal and opposite in the second place, the vacant seat of the emperor of the West.16

But as soon as festivity and form had given place to a more serious treaty, the Greeks were dissatisfied with their journey, with themselves, and with the pope. The artful policy of his emissaries had painted him in a prosperous state; at the head of the princes and prelates of Europe, obedient at his voice, to believe and to arm. The thin appearance of the universal synod of Ferrara betrayed his weakness; and the Latins opened the first session with only five archbishops, eighteen bishops, and ten abbots, the greatest part of whom were the subjects or countrymen of the Italian pontiff. Except the duke of Burgundy, none of the potentates of the West condescended to appear in person, or by their ambassadors; nor was it possible to suppress the judicial acts of Basili against the dignity and person of Eugenius, which were finally concluded by a new election. Under these circumstances, a truce or delay was asked and granted, till Palæologus could expect from the consent of the Latins some temporal reward for an unpopular union; and, after the first session, the public proceedings were adjourned above six months. The emperor, with a chosen band of his favourites and temporaries, fixed his summer residence at a pleasant spacious monastery, six miles from Ferrara; forgot, in the pleasures of the chase, the distress of the church and state; and persisted in destroying the galleys, without listening to the just complaints of the marquis or the humanist.17 In the mean while, his unfortunate Greeks were exposed to all the miseries of exile and poverty; for the support of each

Council of the Lateran was presided over by the emperor and was attended by the cardinals, the patriarchs, and the bishops of the empire. It was held in the cloisters of St. John Lateran, A.D. 1215, and at length signed on Jan. 10 (in Mem. LXXI.).

The Lateran council was presided over by the emperor and was attended by the cardinals, the patriarchs, and the bishops of the empire. It was held in the cloisters of St. John Lateran, A.D. 1215, and at length signed on Jan. 10 (in Mem. LXXI.).

The Lateran council was presided over by the emperor and was attended by the cardinals, the patriarchs, and the bishops of the empire. It was held in the cloisters of St. John Lateran, A.D. 1215, and at length signed on Jan. 10 (in Mem. LXXI.).

The Lateran council was presided over by the emperor and was attended by the cardinals, the patriarchs, and the bishops of the empire. It was held in the cloisters of St. John Lateran, A.D. 1215, and at length signed on Jan. 10 (in Mem. LXXI.).

The Lateran council was presided over by the emperor and was attended by the cardinals, the patriarchs, and the bishops of the empire. It was held in the cloisters of St. John Lateran, A.D. 1215, and at length signed on Jan. 10 (in Mem. LXXI.).

The Lateran council was presided over by the emperor and was attended by the cardinals, the patriarchs, and the bishops of the empire. It was held in the cloisters of St. John Lateran, A.D. 1215, and at length signed on Jan. 10 (in Mem. LXXI.).

The Lateran council was presided over by the emperor and was attended by the cardinals, the patriarchs, and the bishops of the empire. It was held in the cloisters of St. John Lateran, A.D. 1215, and at length signed on Jan. 10 (in Mem. LXXI.).

The Lateran council was presided over by the emperor and was attended by the cardinals, the patriarchs, and the bishops of the empire. It was held in the cloisters of St. John Lateran, A.D. 1215, and at length signed on Jan. 10 (in Mem. LXXI.).
stranger, a monthly allowance was assigned of three or four gold florins; and although the entire sum did not amount to seven hundred florins, a long arrears was repeatedly incurred by the negligence or policy of the Roman court. They sighed for a speedy deliverance, but their escape was prevented by a triple chain: a passport from their superiors was required at the gates of Ferrara; the government of Venice had engaged to arrest and send back the fugitives; and inevitable punishment awaited them at Constantinople; excommunication, fines, and a sentence, which did not respect the sacerdotal dignity, that they should be stripped naked and publicly whipped. It was only by the alternative of hunger or dispute that the Greeks could be persuaded to open the first conference; and they yielded with extreme reluctance to attend from Ferrara to Florence the rear of a flying synod. This new translation was urged by irresistible necessity; the city was visited by the plague; the fidelity of the marquis might be suspected; the necessary troops of the duke of Milan were at the gates; and as they occupied Rome, it was not without difficulty and danger that the popes, the emperor, and the bishops, explored their way through the unfrequented paths of the Appennine.

Yet all these obstacles were surmounted by time and policy. The violence of the fathers of Basil rather promoted than injured the cause of Eugenius; the nations of Europe adopted the scheme, and dismissed the election, of Felix the Fifth, who was successively a duke of Savoy, an hermit, and a pope; and the great princes were gradually reclaimed by his competitor to a favourable neutrality and a firm attachment. The Legates, with some respectable members, deserted to the Roman army, which insensibly rose in numbers and reputation: the council of Basil was reduced to thirty-nine bishops, and three hundred of the inferior clergy; while the Latins of Florence could produce the subscriptions of the pope himself, eight cardinals, two patriarchs, eight archbishops, fifty-two bishops, and forty-five abbots, or chiefs of religious orders. After the labour of nine months, and the debates of twenty-five sessions, they attained the advantage and glory of the reunion of the Greeks. Four principal questions had been agitated between the two churches: 1. The use of unleavened bread in the communion of Christ's body. 2. The nature of purgatory. 3. The supremacy of the pope. And, 4. The single or double procession of the Holy Ghost. The cause of either nation was managed by ten theological champions: the Latins were supported by the inextricable eloquence of cardinal Julian; and Mark of Ephesus and Bezae of

Nico were the bold and able leaders of the Greek forces. We may bestow some praise on the progress of human reason, by observing, that the first of these questions was now treated as an immaterial rite, which might innocently vary with the fashion of the age and country. With regard to the second, both parties were agreed in the belief of an intermediate state of purgation for the venial sins of the faithful; and whether their souls were purified by elemental fire was a doubtful point, which in a few years might be conveniently settled on the spot by the disputants. The claims of supremacy appeared of a more weighty and substantial kind; yet by the Orientals the Roman bishop had ever been respected as the first of the five patriarchs; nor did they scruple to admit, that his jurisdiction should be exercised agreeable to the holy canons; a vague allowance, which might be defined or mitigated by occasional convenience. The procession of the Holy Ghost from the Father alone, or from the Father and the Son, was an article of faith which had sunk much deeper into the minds of men; and in the sessions of Ferrara and Florence, the Latin addition of filioque was subdivided into two questions, whether it were legal, and whether it were orthodox. Perhaps it may not be necessary to insist on this subject of my own impartial indifference; but I must think that the Greeks were strongly supported by the prohibition of the council of Chalcedon, against adding any article whatsoever to the creed of Nice, or rather of Constantinople. In earthly affairs, it is not easy to conceive how an assembly of legislators can bind their successors invested with powers equal to their own. But the distance of inspiration must be true and unchangeable; nor should a private bishop, or a provincial synod, have presumed to innovate against the judgment of the Catholic Church. On the substance of the doctrine, the controversy was equal and useless; reason is confounded by the procession of a deity; the Gospel, which lay on the altar, was silent; the various texts of the fathers might be corrupted by fraud or entangled by sophistry; and the Greeks were ignorant of the characters and writings of the Latin saints. Of this at least we may be sure, that neither side could be convinced by the arguments of their opponents. Prejudice may be enlightened by reason, and a superficial glance may be rectified by a clearer and more perfect view of an object adapted to our faculties. But the bishops and monks had been taught from their infancy to repeat a form of mysterious words; their national and personal honour depended on the repetition of the same sounds; and their narrow minds were hardened and inflamed by the acrimony of a public dispute.

Nico were the bold and able leaders of the Greek forces. We may bestow some praise on the progress of human reason, by observing, that the first of these questions was now treated as an immaterial rite, which might innocently vary with the fashion of the age and country. With regard to the second, both parties were agreed in the belief of an intermediate state of purgation for the venial sins of the faithful; and whether their souls were purified by elemental fire was a doubtful point, which in a few years might be conveniently settled on the spot by the disputants. The claims of supremacy appeared of a more weighty and substantial kind; yet by the Orientals the Roman bishop had ever been respected as the first of the five patriarchs; nor did they scruple to admit, that his jurisdiction should be exercised agreeable to the holy canons; a vague allowance, which might be defined or mitigated by occasional convenience. The procession of the Holy Ghost from the Father alone, or from the Father and the Son, was an article of faith which had sunk much deeper into the minds of men; and in the sessions of Ferrara and Florence, the Latin addition of filioque was subdivided into two questions, whether it were legal, and whether it were orthodox. Perhaps it may not be necessary to insist on this subject of my own impartial indifference; but I must think that the Greeks were strongly supported by the prohibition of the council of Chalcedon, against adding any article whatsoever to the creed of Nice, or rather of Constantinople. In earthly affairs, it is not easy to conceive how an assembly of legislators can bind their successors invested with powers equal to their own. But the distance of inspiration must be true and unchangeable; nor should a private bishop, or a provincial synod, have presumed to innovate against the judgment of the Catholic Church. On the substance of the doctrine, the controversy was equal and useless; reason is confounded by the procession of a deity; the Gospel, which lay on the altar, was silent; the various texts of the fathers might be corrupted by fraud or entangled by sophistry; and the Greeks were ignorant of the characters and writings of the Latin saints. Of this at least we may be sure, that neither side could be convinced by the arguments of their opponents. Prejudice may be enlightened by reason, and a superficial glance may be rectified by a clearer and more perfect view of an object adapted to our faculties. But the bishops and monks had been taught from their infancy to repeat a form of mysterious words; their national and personal honour depended on the repetition of the same sounds; and their narrow minds were hardened and inflamed by the acrimony of a public dispute.
While they were lost in a cloud of dust and darkness, the pope and emperor were desires of a solemn union, which could alone accomplish the purpose of their interview, and the obstinacy of public dispute was softened by the arts of private and personal negotiations. The patriarch Joseph had sunk under the weight of age and infirmities; his dying voice breathed the sentiments of charity and concord, and his vacant benefices might tempt the hopes of the ambitious clergy. The ready and active obedience of the archbishops of Russia and Nice, of Iodore and Demetrios, was prompt and renewed by their timely promotion to the dignity of cardinals. Demetrios, in the first debates, had stood forth the most strenuous and eloquent champion of the Greek church; and if the apostacy, the bastard, was reproved by his country, he appears in ecclesiastical story a rare example of a patriot who was recommended to court-favour by loud opposition and well-founded compliance. With the aid of his two spiritual counselors, the emperor applied his arguments to the general situation and personal characters of the bishops, and each was successively cured by authority and example. Their revenues were in the hands of the Turks, their persons in those of the Latins; an episcopal treasure, three robes, and forty ducats, was soon extirpated; the hopes of their return still depended on the ships of Venice and the arms of Rum; and such was their indigence, that their arrears, the payment of a debt, would be accepted as a favour, and might operate as a bribe. The danger and relief of Constantinople might excuse some prudent and pious dissimulation; and it was intimated, that the obstinate heretics who should resist the consent of the East and West, would be abandoned in a hostile land to the revenge or justice of the Roman pontiff. In the first private assembly of the Greeks, the formulary of union was approved by twenty-four, and rejected by twelve members; but the five crown-bearers of St. Sophia, who aspired to represent the patriarch, were disqualified by ancient discipline; and their right of voting was transferred to an obsequious train of monks, grammarians, and professed laymen. The will of the monarch produced a false and servile unanimity, and no more than two patriots had courage to speak their own sentiments and those of their country. Demetrius, the emperor's brother, retired to Venice, that he might not be witness of the union; and Mark of Ephesus, mistaking perhaps his pride for his conscience, disclaimed all communion with the Latin heretics, and avowed himself the champion and apostle of the orthodox creed. In the treaty between the two nations, several forms of consent were proposed, such as might satisfy the Latins, without dishonouring the Greeks; and they weighed the scruples of words and syllables, till the theological balance trembled with a slight preponderance in favour of the Vatican. It was agreed (I must correct the attention of the reader), that the Holy Ghost proceeds from the Father and the Son, as from one principle, and one substance; that he proceeds by the Son, being of the same nature and substance, and that he proceeds from the Father and the Son, by one operation and production. It is less difficult to understand the articles of the preliminary treaty, that the pope should declare all the expenses of the Greeks in their return home; that he should annually maintain two galleys and three hundred soldiers for the defence of Constantinople; that all the ships which transported pilgrims to Jerusalem should be obliged to touch at that port; that as often as they were required, the pope should furnish ten galleys for a year, or twenty, for six months; and that he should powerfully solicit the princes of Europe, if the enemy had occasion for land-forces, the same year, and almost the same day, were marked by the deposition of Eugenius at Basil; and, a. d. 1204, by the re-union of the Greeks and Latins. In the former synod (which, he is said, indeed an assembly of demons), the pope was beclouded with the guilt of simony, perjury, tyranny, heresy, and schism; and declared to be inextricable in his vices, unworthy of any title, and incapable of holding any ecclesiastical office. In the latter he was revered as the true and holy vicar of Christ, who, after a. d. 1204, separation of six hundred years, had reconciled the Catholics of the East and West, in one fold, and under one shepherd. The act of union was subscribed by the pope, the emperor, and the principal members of both churches; yet by those who, like Syroriulus, 29 had been deprived of the right of voting. Two copies might have sufficed for the East and West; but Eugenius was not satisfied; unless four authentic and similar transcripts were signed and attested to the monuments of his victory. On a memorable day, the 6th of July, the successors of St. Peter and Constantinople ascended their thrones; the two nations assembled in the cathedral of Florence; their representatives, cardinal Julian and Bessarion, bishop of Nice, appeared in the pulpit, and, after reading in their respective tongues the act of union, they mutually embraced, in the name and the presence of their applauding brethren. The pope and his minister removed hence to the meeting of the assembly of the Latins at Rome: A. D. 1205. From the original Latin of the Pope, in Muratori's Collection (Vol. V. p. 325), the report and translation of the Emperor's decree, and the account of the assembly of the Latins. A.D. 1205. The Roman synod, under Clement III., met in the great church of St. Peter, 12th December, 1205, and was summoned a quarter of a year before the pope's arrival. It is probable, indeed, that in the year 1201, the pope sent an apostolic deficit, which was accepted by the synod of the Latins, a. d. 1202. This was written at Florence, about 1205, in the hand of the pope himself, and composed in the clausula (in the Vatican Library).
were then officiated according to the Roman liturgy; the creed was chanted with the addition of filioque; the acquiescence of the Greeks was poorly excised by their ignorance of the harmonious, but inarticulate, sounds and the more scrupulous Latins refused any public celebration of the Byzantine rite. Yet the emperor and his clergy were not totally unmindful of national honour. The treaty was ratified by their consent: it was tacitly agreed that no innovation should be attempted in their creed or ceremonies; they spared, and secretly respected, the generous firmness of Mark of Ephesus; and, on the death of the patriarch, they refused to elect his successor, except in the cathedral of St. Sophia.

In the distribution of public and private rewards, the liberal pontiff exceeded their hopes and his promises: the Greeks, with less cup and pride, returned by the same road of Ferrara and Venice; and their reception at Constantinople was such as will be described in the following chapter. The success of the first trial encouraged Eugenius to repeat the same edifying scenes; and the deputies of the Armenians, the Maronites, the Jacobites of Syria and Egypt, the Nestorians and the Ethiopians, were successively introduced, to kiss the feet of the Roman pontiff, and to announce the obedience and the orthodoxy of the East. Three Oriental embassadors, unknown in the countries which they presumed to represent, diffused over the West the fame of Eugenius; and a clamour was artfully propagated against the remnant of a schism in Switzerland and Savoy, which alone impeded the harmony of the Christian world. The rigour of opposition was succeeded by the fanden of despoil: the council of Hildes was silently dissolved, and Pulten, renouncing the tiara, again withdrew to the devilish or delicious hermitage of Ripafratta. A general peace was secured by mutual acts of oblivion and indemnity; all ideas of reformation subsided; the popes continued to exercise and abuse their ecclesiastical despotic; nor has Rome been since disturbed by the mischief of a contested election.77

The journeys of three emperors were unavailing for their temporal, or perhaps their spiritual, salvation: but they were productive of a beneficial consequence; the revival of the Greek learning in Italy, from whence it was propagated to the last nations of the West and North. In their lowest servitude and depression, the subjects of the Byzantine throne were still possessed of a golden key that could unlock the treasures of antiquity; of a musical and profane language, that gives a soul to the objects of sense, and a body to the abstractions of philosophy. Since the barriers of the monarchy, and even of the capital, had been trampled under foot, the various barbarians had doubtless corrupted the form and substance of the national dialect; and ample glossaries have been composed, to interpret a multitude of words of Arabic, Turkish, Slavonian, Latin, or French origin.78 But a purer idiom was spoken in the court and taught in the college; and the flourishish state of the language is described, and perhaps embellished, by a learned Italian, who, by a long residence and noble marriage, was naturalised at Constantinople about thirty years before the Turkish conquest. "The vulgar speech," says Philibert, "has been degraded by the people, and infected by the multitudes of strangers and merchants, who every day flock to the city and mingle with the inhabitants. It is from the disciples of such a school that the Latin language received the versions of Aristotle and Plato, so obscure in sense, and in spirit so poor. But the Greeks who have escaped the contagion, are those whom we follow; and they alone are worthy of our imitation. In familiar discourse, they still speak the tongue of Aristophanes and Euripides, of the historians and philosophers of Athens; and the style of their writings is still more elaborate and correct. The person who, by their birth and offices, are attached to the Byzantine court, are those who maintain, with the least alloy, the ancient standard of elegance and purity; and the native graces of language most conspicuously shine among the noble matrons, who are excluded from all intercourse with foreigners. With foreigners, do I say? They live retired and sequestered from the eyes of their fellow-citizens. Seldom are they seen in the streets; and when they leave their houses, it is in the dusk of evening, on visits to the churches and their nearest kindred. On these occasions, they are on horseback, covered with a veil, and encompassed by their parents, their husbands, or their servants."79

Among the Greeks, a numerous and opulent

77 "Now the court officers from Ferrara, [pp. 537.]

78 "The Greek language is not," says the Fornale, "the descendant of the language of the same name, which was taught at the school of Plato. [n. 502, c.]

79 "In no age or region have I seen a greater number of Greeks, and the courtiers of them are the most important men of the kingdom. [n. 360.]"
the Italian soil was prepared for their cultivation.

The most learned Italians of the fifteenth century have confessed and Greek-speaking applauded the restoration of Greek literature, after a long oblivion of many hundred years. Yet in that country, and beyond the Alps, some names are quoted; some profound scholars, who in the darker ages were honourably distinguished by their knowledge of the Greek tongue; and national vanity has been kind in the praise of such rare examples of erudition. Willant scrutinising the merit of individuals, truth must observe, that their science is without a cause, and without an effect, that it was easy for them to satisfy themselves, and their more ignorant contemporaries; and that the old men, which they had so marvellously acquired, was transcribed in few manuscripts, and was not taught in any university of the West. In a corner of Italy, it faintly existed as the popular, or at least as the ecclesiastical, dialect. The first impression of the Doric and Ionic colonies has never been completely erased: the Calabrian churches were long attached to the throne of Constantinople; and the monks of St. Basil pursued their studies in Mount Athos and the schools of the East. Calabria was the native country of Barlaam, who had already appeared as a sectary and an ambassador; and Barlaam was the first who revived, beyond the Alps, the memory, or at least the writings, of Homer. He is described, by Petrarch and Boece, as a man of a diminutive stature, though truly great in the measure of learning and genius; of a piercing discernment, though of a slow and painful eloquence. For many ages (as they affirm) Greece had not produced his equal in the knowledge of history, grammar, and philosophy; and his merit was celebrated in the estimations of the princes and doctors of Constantinople. One of these attestations is still extant: and the emperor Constantine, the protector of his adversaries, is forced to allow, that Eucli, Aristotle, and Plato, were familiar to that profound and subtle logician. In the court of Avignon, he formed an intimate connection with Petrarch, the first of the Latin scholars; and the desire of mutual instruction was the principle of their literary commerce. The Tuscan applied himself with eager curiosity and anxious diligence to the study of the Greek language; and in a laborious struggle with the dryness and difficulty of the first chapters, he began to reach the sense, and to feel the spirit, of poets and philosophers, whose minds were congenial to his own. But he was soon deprived

64 At the end of the 10th century, there flared up in Italy a num-

65 A literary, and the results of the restoration was a reaction

66 For the restoration of the Fossoro, see the following, from

67 See the correspondence of Petrarch and Barlaam, and the

68 See Boece, ibid., p. 364.
of the society and lessons of this useful assistant; Balsam relinquished his fruitless embassy; and, on his return to Greece, he rashly provoked the swarms of fanatic monks, by attempting to substitute the light of reason to that of their navel. After a separation of three years, the two friends again met in the court of Naples; but the generous pupil renounced the fairest occasion of improvement; and by his recommendation Balsam was finally settled in a small bishopric of his native Calabria. The manifold avocations of Petarch, love and friendship, his various correspondence and frequent journeys, the Roman laurel, and his elaborate compositions in prose and verse, in Latin and Italian, diverted him from a foreign idiom; and as he advanced in life, the attainment of the Greek language was the object of his wishes rather than of his hopes. When he was about fifty years of age, a Byzantine ambassador, his friend, and a master of both tongues, presented him with a copy of Homer; and the answer of Petarch is at once expressive of his eloquence, gratitude, and regret. After celebrating the generosity of the donor, and the value of a gift so precious in his estimation that gold or rubies, he thus proceeds: "Your present of the genuine and original text of the divine poet, the fountain of all invention, is worthy of yourself and of me; you have fulfilled your promise, and satisfied my desires. Yet your liberality is still imperfect: with Homer you should have given me yourself; a guide, who could lead me into the fields of light, and disclose to my wondering eyes the glorious mysteries of the Iliad and Odyssey. But, alas! Homer is dumb, as I am deaf; nor is it in my power to enjoy the beauty which I possess. I have sent him by the side of Plato, the prince of poets near the prince of philosophers; and I glory in the right of the illustrious guest. Of their immortal works, whatever have been translated into the Latin idiom, I had already acquired; but, if there be no profit, there is no pleasure, in beholding these venerable Greeks in their proper and national habit. I am delighted with the aspect of Homer; and as often as I embrace the silent volumes, I exclaim with a sigh, Illustrious bard! with what pleasure should I listen to thy song, if my sense of hearing were not obstructed and lost by the death of one friend, and in the much-lamented absence of another. Nor do I yet despair; and the example of Cato suggests some comfort and hope, since it was in the last period of age that he attained the knowledge of the Greek letters." 128

The prize which eluded the efforts of Petarch, was obtained by the fortune and industry of his friend Boccace,99 the father of the Tuscan prose. That popular writer, who derives his reputation from the Decameron, an hundred novels of pleasure and love, may aspire to the more serious praise of restoring in Italy the study of the Greek language. In the year one thousand three hundred and sixty, a disciple of Balsam, whose name was Leo or Leonidius Pilatus, was obtained in his way to Avignon by the advice and hospitality of Boccace, who lodged the stranger in his house, prevailed on the republic of Florence to allow him an annual stipend, and devoted his leisure to the first Greek professor who taught that language in the Western countries of Europe. The appearance of Leo might disgust the most eager disciples; he was clothed in the mantle of a philosopher, or a mendicant; his countenance was hideous; his face was overshadowed with black hair; his beard long and uncombed; his deportment rustic; his temper gloomy and inconstant; nor could he grace his discourse with the ornaments, or even the perspicuity, of Latin eloquence. But his mind was stored with a treasure of Greek learning; history and fable, philosophy and grammar, were alike at his command; and he read the poems of Homer in the schools of Florence. It was from his explanation that Boccace composed and transcribed a literal prose version of the Iliad and Odyssey, which satisfied the thirst of his friend Petarch, and which perhaps, in the succeeding century, was enthusiastically used by Laurentius Valdi, the Latin interpreter. It was from his narratives that the same Boccace collected the materials for his treatise on the genealogy of the human gods, a work, in that age, of stupendous erudition, and which he ostentatiously sprinkled with Greek characters and passages, to excite the wonder and applause of his more ignorant readers. The first steps of learning are slow and laborious; no more than ten vestaries of Homer could be enumerated in all Italy; and neither Rome, nor Venice, nor Naples, could add a single name to this studious catalogue. But their numbers would have multiplied, their progress would have been accelerated, if the inconstant Leo, at the end of three years, had not relinquished an honourable and beneficent station. In his passage, Petarch entertained him at Padua a short time; he enjoyed the scholar, but was justly offended with the gloomy and unmanly temper of the man. Discontented with the world and with himself, Leo depreciated his present enjoyments, while absent persons and objects were dear to his imagination. In Italy he was a Thessalian, in Greece a native of Calabria; in the company of the Latins he disdained their language, religion, and manners; no sooner was he landed at Constantinople, than he again sighed for the wealth and splendor of Balsam, 130

128. The phrase is in such Simplicius, quoted by the old Lactantius, in the translation made by More, in A.D. 1407, in the reign of the emperor Honorius, at the request of the Pope Alexander. (Dyce, Onomasticon Homo, pp. 312, 336.) The three epigrams which follow are by Petarch. The second of which is translated, and the two others quoted, in Dr. Ainsworth's Latin Poems, vol. i. p. 200. It is in the Roman laurel that he was praised; for the same reason that Homer received it in the Iliad, So. The first of these epigrams is quoted by Dr. Ainsworth, in his Introduetio ad Hesperos Epi- grams. It is from the latter poet that the lines quoted in the same volume, pp. 197, 198, are borrowed; in them the Roman laurel is compared to the transparent gossam of the graces; and the laurel of Petarch as a passport to the society of the gods. The second epigram is in Dr. Ainsworth's Latin Poems, vol. i. p. 198. He was buried in 1321, and his

129. See the following inscription, from the sepulchre of Petarch (Hermits, vol. i. p. 198). The date of the inscription is 1346. (Dyce, Onomasticon Homo, p. 336.) The three epigrams which follow are by Petarch. The second of which is translated, and the two others quoted, in Dr. Ainsworth's Latin Poems, vol. i. p. 200. It is in the Roman laurel that he was praised; for the same reason that Homer received it in the Iliad, So. The first of these epigrams is quoted by Dr. Ainsworth, in his Introduetio ad Hesperos Epi- grams. It is from the latter poet that the lines quoted in the same volume, pp. 197, 198, are borrowed; in them the Roman laurel is compared to the transparent gossam of the graces; and the laurel of Petarch as a passport to the society of the gods. The second epigram is in Dr. Ainsworth's Latin Poems, vol. i. p. 198. He was buried in 1321, and his
of Venice and the elegance of Florence. His Italian friends were dear to his heart; he depended on their curiosity and indulgence, and embarked on a second voyage; but on his entrance into the Adriatic, the ship was wrecked by a storm, and the unfortunate teacher, who like Ulysses had fastened himself to the mast, was struck dead by a flash of lightning. The humane Petrarch dropped a tear on his disaster; but he was most anxious to learn whether some copy of Euphranor or Sophocles might not be saved from the hands of the mariners.  

But the faint rudiments of Greek learning, which Petrarch had encouraged and hocaccia had planted, A.D. 1235-1415, soon withered and expired. The succeeding generation was content for a while with the improvement of Latin eloquence; nor was it before the end of the fourteenth century, that a new and perpetual flame was rekindled in Italy. Previous to his own journey, the emperor Manuel dispatched his envoys and orders to procure the example of the Western princes. Of these envoys, the most conspicuous, or the most learned, was Manuel Chrysoloras, of noble birth, and whose Roman ancestors were supposed to have migrated with the great Constantine. After visiting the courts of France and England, where he obtained some promises and more promises, the envoy was invited to assume the office of a professor; and Florence had again the honour of this second invitation. By his knowledge, not only of the Greek, but of the Latin tongue, Chrysoloras deserved the stipend, and surpassed the expectations of the republic. His school was frequented by a crowd of disciples of every rank and age; and of these, in a general history, has described his motives and his success. "At that time," says Leonardo Aretino, "I was a student of the civil law; but my soul was inflamed with the love of letters; and I bestowed some application on the sciences of logic and rhetoric. On the arrival of Manuel, I hesitated whether I should desert my legal studies, or relinquish this golden opportunity; and thus, in the mirth of youth, I consented, much with my own mind. Will thou be wanting to thyself and thy fortune? Wilt thou refuse to be introduced to a familiar converse with Homer, Plato, and Demosthenes? with those poets, philosophers, and orators, of whom such wonders are related, and who are celebrated by every age as the great masters of human science? Of professors and scholars in civil law, a sufficient supply will..."

always be found in our universities; but a "teacher, and such a teacher, of the Greek language, if he once be suffered to escape, may never afterwards be retrieved. Convinced by these reasons, I gave myself to Chrysoloras; and so strong was my passion, that the lessons "which I had imbibed in the day were the constant subject of my nightly dreams." At the same time and place, the Latin classics were explained by John of Ravenna, the domestic pupil of Petrarch; the Italians, who illustrated their age and country, were formed in this double school; and Florence became the fruitful seminary of Greek and Roman erudition. The presence of the emperor recalled Chrysoloras from the college to the court; but he afterwards taught at Pavia and Rome with equal industry and applause. The remainder of his life, about fifteen years, was divided between Italy and Constantinople, between embassies and lessons. In the noble office of enlightening a foreign nation, the grammarian was not unprofitable of a more sacred duty to his prince and country; and Emmanuel Chrysoloras died at Constance on a public mission from the emperor to the council.

After his example, the restoration of the Greek letters in Italy was prosecuted by a series of emigrants, who were destitute of fortune, and endowed with learning, or at least with language. From the terror or oppression of the Turkish arms, the natives of Thessalonica and Constantinople escaped to a land of freedom, curiosity, and wealth. This stream introduced into Florence the lights of the Greek church and the oracles of the Platonic philosophy; and the fugitives who adhered to the union, had the double merit of resuscitating their country, not only for the Christian, but for the Catholic, cause. A patriot, who sacrifices his party and conscience to the allurements of favour, may be possessed however of the private and social virtues; he no longer hears the reproachful epithets of slave and apostate; and the considerations which he acquires among his new associates, will restore in his own eyes the dignity of his character. The prudent conformity of Bes- surion was rewarded with the Roman crown; and the purple; he fixed his residence in Rome, in Italy, and the Greek cardinal, the single patriarch of Constantinople, was respected as the chief and protector of his nation; his abilities were exercised in the legations of Bologna, Venice, Germany, and France; and his election to the chair of St. Peter flushed for a moment on the universal breath of a conciliar. He..."
of philosophical spirit, are still useful to the Greek student. In the shipwreck of the Byzantine libraries, such fugitive missed a fragment of treasure, a copy of some author, wise, without his industry, might have preserved; the transcripts were multiplied by an ambiguous, and sometimes an elegant, pen; and the text was corrected and explained by their own comments, or those of the elder scholiasts. The useless, though not the spirit, of the Greek classics, was transferred to the Latin world: the beauties of style evaporated in a version; but the judgment of Tiberius Gaza selected the more solid works of Aristotle and Theophrastus, and their natural history of animals and plants opened a rich fund of genuine and experimental science.

Yet the fruitful shadows of metaphysics were pursued with more
risibility and ardor. After a long oblivion, Plato was revived in Italy by a versatile Greek, who taught in the house of Cosme de Medici. While the symbol of Florence was involved in theological debates, some beneficial consequences might flow from the study of his elegant philosophy; his style is the parent standard of the Attic dialect; and his sublime thoughts are sometimes adapted to familiar conversation, and sometimes adorned with the richest colours of poetry and eloquence. The Dialogue of Platonetit a dramatic picture of the life and death of a sage; and, as often as he descends from the clouds, his moral system unfolds the clear of truth, of our country, and of mankind. The passion and example of Socrates recommended a modest doubt and liberal enquiry; and if the Platonists, with blood divorcings, showed the visions of fear, and errors of their divine master, their enthusiasm might correct the dry dogmatic method of the Peripatetic school. So equal, yet so opposite, are the merits of Plato and Aristotle, that they may be balanced in endless controversy; but some spark of freedom may be produced by the collisions of adverse systems. The modern Greeks were divided between the two sects; with more fury than skill, they fought under the banner of their leaders; and the field of battle was renewed in their flight from Constantinople to Rome. But this philosophical debate soon degenerated into an angry and painful quarrel of grammarians; and Benarxius, though an advocate for Plato, protected the national honour, by interpreting the silver and authority of a mediator. In the garden of the Medici, the academical doctrine was enjoyed by the politicians and learned; but their philosophic society was quickly dissolved; and if the writings of the Attic sage were praised in the closet, the more
powerful Syzygians continued to reign the church and school. 150

I have fairly represented the literary genius of the Greeks; yet it must be confessed, that they were seconded and surpassed by the genius of the Latins. Italy was divided into many independent states; and at that time, it was the ambition of princes and republics to vie with each other in the encouragement and reward of literature. The fame of Nicholas the Fifth 151 has not been adequate to its merits. From aobleman origin he raised himself by his virtue and learning; the character of the man prevailed over the interest of the pope; and he sharpened those weapons which were soon pointed against the Roman church. 152 He had been the friend of the most eminent scholars of the age; he became their patron; and such was the humility of his temper, that the charge was scarcely discernible either to himself or to others. If he pressed the acceptance of a liberal gift, it was not as the measure of desert, but as the proof of beneficence; and when modest merit declined his bounty, 153 accept it, 154 would be say with a consciousness of his own worth; 155 ye will not always have a Nicholas among you. The influence of the holy are pervaded Christendom; and he exerted that influence in the schools, not by instructions, but of books. From the ruins of the Byzantine libraries, from the darkest monasteries of Germany and Britain, he collected the most curious MSS. of the writers of antiquity, and wherever the original could not be removed, a faithful copy was transcribed and transmitted for his use. The Vatican, the old repository for books and legends, for superstition and forgeries, was daily replenished with more precious furniture; and such was the industry of Nicholas, that in a reign of eight years, he formed a library of five thousand volumes. To his influence the Latin world was indebted for the version of Xenophon, Diodorus, Polybius, Thucydides, Herodotus, and Appianus; of Strabo's Geography, of the Iliad, of the most valuable works of Plato and Aristotle, of Plutarch and Theophrastus, and of the fathers of the Roman church. The example of the Roman pontiff was followed or imitated by a Florentine merchant, who governed the republic without arms and without a title. Council of Medici 156 the father of a line of princes, whose name and age are almost synonymous with the restoration of learning: his credit was established into fame; his riches were devoted to the service of mankind; he corresponded at once with Cairo and London; and a cargo of Indian spices and Greek books was often imported in the same vessel. The genius and education of his grandson Lorenzo rendered him not only a patron, but a judge and candidate, in the literary rate. In his palace, distress was entitled to relief, and merit to reward; his leisure hours were delightfully spent in the Placetic academy; he encouraged the translation of Demosthenes Chalcisyllus and Angelo Politian; and his active missionary James Lassus returned from the East with a treasure of two hundred manuscripts, from some of which were as yet unknown in the libraries of Europe. 157 The seat of Italy was animated by a similar spirit, and the progress of the nation repaid the liberality of her princes. The Latins held the exclusive property of their own literature; and those disciples of Greece were soon enabled to transmit and improve the learning which they had imbibed. After a short recession of foreign teachers, the tide of emigration subsided; but the language of Constantiople was spread beyond the Alps, and the nations of France, Germany, and England, 158 imported to their country the sacred fire which they had kindled in the schools of Florence and Rome. 159 In the productions of the mind, as in those of the soil, the gifts of nature are excelled by industry and skill; the Greek authors, forgotten on the banks of the Ilium, have been illustrated in those of the Elbe and the Thames; and Bernard or Gesa might have excelled the superior science of the barbarians, the accuracy of Budor, the taste of Ernestine, the expression of Sophonis, the elegance of Seiliger, the discretion of Raisce, or of Bentjoy. On the side of the Latin, the discovery of printing was a moral advantage; but this useful art has been applied by Aldus, and his innumerable successors, to domestic and multiply the works of antiquity. A single manuscript imported from Greece is revived in ten thousand manuscripts, and each copy is finer than the original. In this form, Homer and Plato would person with more satisfaction their own writings; and their scholars must resign the prize to the labours of our Western authors.

Before the revival of classic literature, the barbarians in Europe were immersed in ignorance; and their vulgar tongues were marked with the
THE DECLINE AND FALL

CHAP. LXVII.

Rudeness and poverty of their manners. The students of the more perfect idiom of Rome and Greece were introduced to a new world of light and science; to the society of the free and polished nations of antiquity; and to a familiar converse with those immortal men who spake the sublime language of eloquence and reason. Such an intercourse must tend to refine the taste, and to elevate the genius, of the moderns; and yet, from the first experiment, it might appear that the study of the ancients had given fathers, rather than wings, to the human mind. However baulkable, the spirit of imitation is of a fruitful root; and the first disciples of the Greeks and Romans were a colony of strangers in the midst of their age and country. The minute and laborious diligence which employed the antiquities of remote times, might have improved or adorned the present state of society; the critic and metaphysician were the slaves of Aristotle; the poets, historians, and sectors, were proud to repeat the thoughts and words of the Augustan age; the works of nature were observed with the eyes of Pliny and Theophrastus; and some Pagans even professed a secret devotion to the gods of Homer and Plato. The Italians were impressed by the strength and number of their ancient auxiliaries; the century after the death of Petrarch and Boccaccio was filled with a crowd of Latin imitators, who devoutly reposed on our shelves; but in that art of learning, it will not be easy to discern a real discovery of sciences, a work of invention or eloquence, in the popular language of the country. But as soon as it had been deeply saturated with the coloural soil, the soil was quickened into vegetation and life; the modern idiosyn was refined; the classics of Athens and Rome inspired a pure taste and a generous emulation; and in Italy, as afterwards in France and England, the pleasing reign of poetry and fiction was succeeded by the light of speculative and experimental philosophy. Genius may anticipate the season of maturity; but in the education of a people, as in that of an individual, memory must be exercised, before the powers of reason and fancy can be expanded; nor may the artist hope to equal or surpass, till he has learned to imitate, the works of his predecessors.

Edmond Burke

CHAP. LXVII.


117 I will select some of the most typical examples of this sublime revolution. L. 49 the revival of Pliny and the classical authors in France. The learned and polished language of the ancients was found, not among the Gothic literature, but in the Latin language of the Romans. The Roman authors were not read, who were not read by the learned. And the publications of the ancients were returned to by the learned. The newspapers of Pliny and the classics of the ancients were read and studied. The classics of the ancients were read and studied by the learned. The classics of the ancients were read and studied by the learned;

118 The Emperor Constantine, last Emperor of the East.

The respective merits of Rome and Constantinople are compared. The former was an ancient capital and celebrated by an eloquent Greek, the father of the Italian schools. The view of the ancient capital, the seat of his ancestors, surpassed the most sanguine expectations of Manuel Chrysoloras; and he no longer blamed the extravagance of an old sophist, that Rome was the habitation, not of men but of gods. Those gods, and those men, he had long since vanished; but in the eye of liberal enthusiasm, the majesty of ruin restored the image of her ancient prosperity. The monuments of the consuls and Caesars, of the martyrs and apostles, engaged on all sides the curiosity of the philosopher and the Christian; and he confessed, that in every age the arms and the religion of Rome were destined to reign over the earth. While Chrysoloras admired the venerable bounties of the mother, he was not forgetful of his native country, her fairest daughter, her Imperial colony; and the Byzantine patriot expatiates with real and truth on the sternal advantages of nature, and the more transitory glories of art and dominion, which adorned, or had adorned, the city of Constantinople. Yet the perfection of the copy still redounds (as he modestly observes) to the honour of the original, and parents are delighted to be renewed, and even excelled, by the superior merit of their children. "Constanti-
napole," says the orator, "is situated on a com-
rass summit, between Europe and Asia, between the Archipelago and the Euxine. By her interposition, the two seas, and the two continents, are united for the common benefit of nations; and the gates of commerce may be shut or opened at her command. The harbour, encompassed on all sides by the sea and the continent, is the most secure and capacious in the world. The walls and gates of Con-
stantinople may be compared with those of Babylon, the towers are many; each tower is a solid and lofty structure; and the second wall, the outer fortification, would be sufficient for the defence and dignity of an ordinary capital. A broad and rapid stream may be introduced into the ditches; and the artificial island may be encompassed, like Athens by land, or water. Two strong and natural causes are alleged for the perfection of the model of new Rome. The royal founder reigned over the most illustrious nations of the globe; and in the accomplishment of his designs, the power of the Romans was combined with the art and science of the Greeks. Other cities have been reared to maturity by accident and time; their

and the Orthodoxy of Rome (Timbal, loc. cit.) p. 124. 117.

119 The crusade of Michael Chrysoloras was in the case of John Hunyad, and the most illustrious nations of the globe, and in the accomplishment of his designs, the power of the Romans was combined with the art and science of the Greeks. Other cities have been reared to maturity by accident and time; their
beauties are mingled with disorder and deformity; and the inhabitants, unwilling to remove from their natal spot, are incapable of correcting the errors of their ancestors, and the original vices of situation or climate. But the free idea of Constantinople was formed and executed by a single mind; and the primitive model was improved by the obedient zeal of the subjects and successors of the first monarch. The adjacent isles were stored with an inexhaustible supply of marble; but the various materials were transported from the most remote shores of Europe and Asia; and the public and private buildings, the palaces, churches, aqueducts, cisterns, porticoes, columns, baths, and hippodromes, were adapted to the greatness of the capital of the East. The superfluity of wealth was spread along the shores of Europe and Asia; and the Byzantine territory, as far as the Euxine, the Hellespont, and the long wall, might be considered as a populous suburb and a perpetual garden. In this flattering picture, the past and the present, the times of prosperity and decay, are artfully confused; but a sigh and a confession escape from the orator, that his wretched country was the shadow and sepulchre of its former self. The works of ancient sculpture had been defaced by Christian zeal or barbaric violence; the finest structures were demolished; and the marbles of Parnes or Numilia were burnt for lime, or applied to the meanest uses. Of many a statue, the place was marked by an empty pedestal; of many a column, the size was determined by a broken capital; the tombs of the emperors were scattered on the ground; the stroke of time was accelerated by storms and earthquakes; and the vacant space was adorned, by vulgar tradition, with fabulous monuments of gold and silver. From these wonders, which lived only in memory or belief, he distinguishes, however, the porphyry pillar, the column and cubical of Justinian, and the church, more especially the domes of St. Sophia, the best conclusion, since it could not be described according to its merits, and after it no other object could deserve to be mentioned. But he forgets, that a century before, the trembling fabrics of the colossus and the church had been saved and supported by the timely cure of Andronicus the Elder. Thirty years after the emperor had fortified St. Sophia with two new buttresses or pyramids, the eastern hemisphere suddenly gave way; and the images, the altars, and the sanctuary, were crushed by the falling ruin. The mischief indeed was speedily repaired; the rubbish was cleared by the incessant labour of every rank and age; and the poor remains of riches and industry were consecrated by the Greeks to the most stately and venerable temple of the East.

The last hope of the falling city and empire was placed in the harmony of the mother and daughter, in the maternal tenderness of Rome, and in the filial obedience of Constantinople. In the synod of Florence, the Greeks and Latins had embraced, subscribed, and promised; but these signs of friendship were perilled or fruitless; and the baseless fabric of the union vanished like a dream. The emperor and his prelates returned home in the Venetian galleys; but as they touched at the Mace and the isles of Corfu and Lesbos, the subjects of the Latin complained that the pretended union would be an instrument of oppression. No sooner did they land on the Byzantine shore, than they were saluted, or rather assailed, with a general murmur of zeal and discontent. During their absence, above two years, the capital had been deprived of its civil and ecclesiastical rulers; fanaticism fermented in anarchy; the most furious monks regained over the conscience of women and bigots; and the hatred of the Latin name was the first principle of nature and religion. Before his departure for Italy, the emperor had flattered the city with the assurance of a prompt relief and a powerful succour; and the clergy, confident in their orthodoxy and science, had promised themselves and their flocks an easy victory over the blind shepherds of the West. The double disappointment excited the Greeks; the conscience of the subscribing prelates was awakened; the hour of temptation was past; and they had more to dread from the public resentment, than they could hope from the favour of the emperor or the pope. Instead of justification their conduct, they deplored their weakness, professed their contrition, and cast themselves on the mercy of God and of their brethren. To the reproachful question, What had been the event or the use of their Italian synod? they answered with sighs and tears, "Alas! we have made a new faith; we have exchanged piety for impiety; we have betrayed the immaculate sacrifice; and we are become Agyrmites." (Them Agyrintes were those who celebrated the communion with unleavened bread; and I must retract or qualify the praise which I have bestowed on the growing philosophy of the times.) "Alas! we have been seduced by distress, by fraud, and by the hopes and fears of a transitory life. The hand that has signted the union should be cut off; and the image thus has preannounced the Latin creed deserves to be torn from the root." The best proof of their repentance was an increase of zeal for the most trivial rites and the most incomprehensible doctrines; and an absolute separation from all, without executing their prince, who preserved some regard for honour and consistency. After the decease of the patriarch Joseph, the archbishop of Hemi-
clus, and Trebizond had courage to refuse the vacant office, and cardinal Bessarion preferred the warm and comfortable shelter of the Vatican. The choice of the emperor and his clergy was confined to Metropolitan of Cyzicus: he was consecrated in St. Sophia, but the temple was vacant. The cross-bearers abolished their service; the infection spread from the city to the villages; and Metropolis disbecared, without effect, some ecclesiastical thunders against a nation of schismatics. The eyes of the Greeks were directed to Mark of Ephesus, the champion of his country; and the sufferings of the holy confess were repaid with a tribute of admiration and applause. His example and writings propagated the flame of religious discord; age and infirmity soon removed him from the world; but the Gospel of Mark was not a law of for- giveness; and he requested with his dying breath, that none of the adherents of Rome might attend his obsequies or pray for his soul.

The schism was not confined to the narrow limits of the Byzantine empire. Scenes were in the Maram- lake sects, the three patriarchs of Alexandria, Antioch, and Jerusalem, assembled a numerous synod, dissolved their representatives at Con- stantinople, declared the creed and council of the Latin; and threatened the em- peror of Constantinople with the consules of the Eastern church. Of the sectaries of the Greek communion, the Russians were the most powerful, ignorant, and suppliant. Their primate, the cardinal Isaiah, hastened from Florence to Moscow, to reduce the independent nation under the Russian yoke. But the Russian bishops had been educated at Mount Athos, and the princes and people embraced the theology of their priests. They were scandalized by the title, the pontiff, the Latin cross of the legate, the friend of those impious men who shewed their hearths, and performed the divine office with gloves on their hands and rings on their fingers: Isaiah was condemned by a synod; his person was imprisoned in a monastery; and it was with extreme difficulty, that the cardinal could escape from the hands of a fierce and fanatic people. The Russians refused a passage to the mission- aries of Rome, who aspired to convert the Poles beyond the Danube; and their refusal was justified by the maxim, that the guilt of idolatry is less damnable than that of schism. The errors of the Bohemians were excused by their abso- lution for the pope; and a deposition of the Greek clergy solicited the friendship of those pagan enthusiasts. While Eugenius triumphed in the mood and orthodoxy of the Greeks, his party was conducted to the walls, or rather to the palace of Constantinople. The seal of Paleologus had been excited by interest; it was soon cooled by opposition: an attempt to violate the national belief might endanger his life and crown; nor could the priests rebel be disdained of foreign and domestic aid. The sword of his brother Demetrius, who in Italy had maintained a prudent and popular allure, was half unthroned in the cause of religion; and Amurath, the Turkish sultan, was displeased and alarmed by the seeming friendship of the Greeks and Latins.

"Sultan Murad, or Amurath, lived forty-nine, and reigned thirty- three years, six months, and eight days, 1421, 1521. He was a just and valiant prince, of a great soul, patient of labours, learned, mar- tial, religious, charitable; a lover and encour-ager of the studious, and of all who excelled in any art or science; a good emperor, and a great general. No man obtained more or greater victories than Amurath: Belgrade alone with- stood his attacks. Under his reign, the sold- iers were ever victorious, the citizen rich and secure. If he subdued any country, his first care was to build churches and caravanserai, hospitals, and colleges. Every year he gave a thousand pieces of gold to the sons of the prophet; and sent two thousand five hundred to the religious persons of Mecca, Medina, and Jerusalem." This portrait is trans- scribed from the historian of the Ottoman empire: but the applause of a servile and superstitious people has been lavished on the word of tyrants, and the virtues of a sultan are often the vices most useful to himself, or most agreeable to his subjects. A nation ignorant of the equal benefits of liberty and law, must be awed by the flashes of arbitrary power: the cruelty of a despot will assume the character of justice; his profusion, of liberality; his obstinacy, of firm-ness. If the most reasonable excuse be rejected, few acts of obedience will be found impossible; and guilt must trouble, where innocence cannot always be secure. The tranquillity of the people, and the discipline of the troops, were best maintained by perpetual action in the field; war was the trade of the Janizaries; and those who suffered the peril, and divided the spoil, applauded the generous ambition of their sov- reign. To propagate the true religion, was the duty of a faithful Musulman: the unfaithful were his enemies, and those of the prophet; and, in the bands of the Turks, the cimeter was the only instrument of conversion. Under these circumstances, however, the justice and moderation of Amurath are attested by his conduct, and acknowledged by the Christians themselves; who consider a prosperous reign and a peaceful death as the reward of his singular merits. In the vigour of his age and military power, he seduced

---

7 Isaiah was excommunication of Emperor, but the Greeks subject to Poland have assumed that from the moment he was excom- munication, to Moscow, from 24. P. 272. On the other hand, the Russian clergy in Moscow, who become, in 1418, the bishops, of Moscow, erected a bai-jus to all Russia, and set up a patriarchate in Russia. The Pope, as stated above, at Torn, 1416, 1417, and 1418, expressed his disapproval of the Russian bishops' acts. The Pope's envoys to the council of Con- stantinople in 1439 were unable to arrive at any agreement with the Greek bishops. The Pope has never recognized the patriarchate of Moscow. The Union of Moscow with the Patriarchate of Rome was never fully acknowledged by the Russian clergy.
have tempted several princes to desert from the throne; and they have had leisure to repent of their irretrievable step. But Amurath alone, in the full liberty of choice, after the trial of empire and solitude, has repeated his preference of a private life.

After the departure of his Greek brethren, Eugenius had not been unmindful of their temporal interest; and his tender regard for the Byzantine empire was animated by a just apprehension of the Turks, who approached, and might soon invade, the borders of Italy. But the spirit of the crusades had expired; and the coldness of the Franks was not less unreasonable than their headlong passion. In the eleventh century, a fanatic monk could precipitate Europe on Asia for the recovery of the holy sepulchre; but in the fifteenth, the most pressing motives of religion and policy were insufficient to unite the Latin in the defence of Christian Germany was an inexhaustible storehouse of men and arms; but that complex and languid body required the impulse of a vigorous hand; and Frederic the Third was alike impotent in his personal character and his Imperial dignity. A long war had reduced the strength, without uniting the animosity, of France and England; 17 but Philip, duke of Burgundy, was a vain and magnificent prince; and he enjoyed, without danger or expense, the adventurous piety of his subjects, who sailed, in a gallant fleet, from the coast of Flauders to the Hellespont. The maritain republics of Venice and Genoa were less remote from the scenes of action; and their hostile fleets were associated under the standard of St. Peter. The kingdom of Hungary and Poland, which covered as it were the interior vale of the Latin church, were the most seriously concerned to oppose the progress of the Turks. Arms were the patrimony of the Scythians and Sarmatians, and those nations might appear equal to the contest, could they point, against the common foe, those swords that were so wantonly drawn in bloody and domestic quarrels. But the same spirit was adverse to concord and obedience; a poor country and a limited monarch are incapable of maintaining a standing force; and the loose bodies of Polish and Hungarian horse were not armed with the sentiments and weapons which, on some occasions, have given irresistible weight to the French chivalry. Yet, on this side, the designs of the Roman pontiff, and the eloquence of cardinal Julian, his legate, were presented by the circumstances of the times; 18 by the union of the two crowns on the head of Ladislas, 19 a young and

28 See Chronicon 2, 31. p. 106. 107. 26. (25.) and Man- have tempted several princes to desert from the throne; and they have had leisure to repent of their irretrievable step. But Amurath alone, in the full liberty of choice, after the trial of empire and solitude, has repeated his preference of a private life.

After the departure of his Greek brethren, Eugenius had not been unmindful of their temporal interest; and his tender regard for the Byzantine empire was animated by a just apprehension of the Turks, who approached, and might soon invade, the borders of Italy. But the spirit of the crusades had expired; and the coldness of the Franks was not less unreasonable than their headlong passion. In the eleventh century, a fanatic monk could precipitate Europe on Asia for the recovery of the holy sepulchre; but in the fifteenth, the most pressing motives of religion and policy were insufficient to unite the Latin in the defence of Christian Germany was an inexhaustible storehouse of men and arms; but that complex and languid body required the impulse of a vigorous hand; and Frederic the Third was alike impotent in his personal character and his Imperial dignity. A long war had reduced the strength, without uniting the animosity, of France and England; 17 but Philip, duke of Burgundy, was a vain and magnificent prince; and he enjoyed, without danger or expense, the adventurous piety of his subjects, who sailed, in a gallant fleet, from the coast of Flauders to the Hellespont. The maritain republics of Venice and Genoa were less remote from the scenes of action; and their hostile fleets were associated under the standard of St. Peter. The kingdom of Hungary and Poland, which covered as it were the interior vale of the Latin church, were the most seriously concerned to oppose the progress of the Turks. Arms were the patrimony of the Scythians and Sarmatians, and those nations might appear equal to the contest, could they point, against the common foe, those swords that were so wantonly drawn in bloody and domestic quarrels. But the same spirit was adverse to concord and obedience; a poor country and a limited monarch are incapable of maintaining a standing force; and the loose bodies of Polish and Hungarian horse were not armed with the sentiments and weapons which, on some occasions, have given irresistible weight to the French chivalry. Yet, on this side, the designs of the Roman pontiff, and the eloquence of cardinal Julian, his legate, were presented by the circumstances of the times; 18 by the union of the two crowns on the head of Ladislas, 19 a young and
The most solid proof, and the most

The active consequence of victory, was

a deputation from the divan: to solicit peace,
to restore Servia, to ransom the prisoners,
and to evacuate the Hungarian frontier. By this
the rational objects of the war were
obtained: the king, the despots, and Humides him-
self, in the dict of Segedin, were satisfied
with public and private emolument; a truce of ten
years was concluded; and the followers of Jesus
and Mahomet, who swore on the Gospel and the
Koran, attended the word of God as the
guardian of truth and the avenger of perjury.
In the place of the Gospel, the Turk
munsters
had proposed to substitute the Eucharist,
the real presence of the Catholic deity;
but the Christians refused to profane their holy
mysteries; and a superstitious conscience is
less forcibly bound by the spiritual energy,
than by the outward and visible symbols, of an
oath. 62

During the whole transaction, the

cardinal legate had observed a sul-
den silence, unwilling to approve,
and unable to oppose, the consent of the king
and people. But the diet was not dissolved
before Julian was fortified by the unanimous
telligence, that Anatolia was invaded by the
Caravanserai, and Tharsus by the Greek
empire; that the fleets of Genoa, Venice, and Lipari,
were masters of the Hallespont; and that the
allies, informed of the victory, and ignorant of the
truth of Ladiiana, was anxiously waited for the
return of his victorious army. "And is it thus,"
exclaimed the cardinal, 64 "that you will
desert their expectations and your own for-
tune? It is to them, to your God, and your
"follow-Christs, that you have pledged your
"faith; and that prior obligation annihilates a
"false and sacrilegious oath to the enemies of
"Christ. His vicar on earth is the Roman
"pontiff; without whose sanction you can
"neither promise nor perform. In his name I
"obsolece your perjury and sanctify your arms;
"follow my footsteps in the path of glory and
"salvation; and if still ye have scruples, de-
"vote on my head the punishment and the
"sin." This mischievous casuistry was succeeded
by his respectable character, and the levity of
popular assemblies: war was resolved on the same
spot where peace had so lately been sworn; and,
in the execution of the treaty, the Turks were
assassinated by the Christians; to whom, with some
reason, they might apply the epithet of Infidels.
The falsehood of Ladiiana to his word and oath
was palliated by the religion of the times: the
most perfect, or at least the most popular, excuse
would have been the success of his arms and
the deliverance of the Eastern church. But
the same treaty which should have bound his com-
manders to 1000 to even 2000 infidels [to Hasan Selim, in Cons., 63].

60. The Greec Locicians, Phocion, Chaldonius, and Musaeus, do
not hesitate to assert that the account of the Turkish battle
with the Greeks is but a novelist's

61. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

62. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

63. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

64. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

65. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

66. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

67. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

68. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

69. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

70. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

71. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

72. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

73. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

74. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

75. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

76. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

77. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

78. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

79. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

80. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

81. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

82. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

83. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

84. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

85. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

86. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

87. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

88. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

89. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

90. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

91. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

92. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

93. The Emperor of Constantinople, not having been present at
the battle of Varna, is reported by a

science had diminished his strength. On the proclamation of the peace, the French and German volunteers departed with indignant murmur; the Poles were exhausted by distant warfare, and perhaps disgusted with foreign command; and their palatine accepted the first licent, and hastily retired to their provinces and castles. Even Hungary was divided by faction, or restrained by a laudable scruple; and the relics of the crusade that marched in the second expedition were reduced to an inadequate force of twenty thousand men. A Walachian chief, who joined the royal standard with his volunteers, presumed to remark that their numbers did not exceed the hunting retinue that sometimes attended the sultan; and the gift of two horses of matchless speed might astonish Ladislaus of his secret foresight of the event. But the despot of Servia, after the restoration of his country and children, was tempted by the promise of new realms; and the inexperience of the king, the enthusiasm of the legates, and the martial presumption of Huniades himself, were persuaded that every obstacle must yield to the invincible virtues of the sword and the cross. After the passage of the Danube, two roads might lead to Constantinople and the Hellespont; the one direct, abrupt, and difficult, through the mountains of Hesmitus; the other more tedious and secure, over a level country, and along the shores of the Euxine; in which their flanks, according to the Scythian discipline, might always be covered by a more complete fortification of wagons. The latter was judiciously preferred: the Catholics marched through the plains of Bulgaria, burning, with wanton cruelty, the churches and villages of the Christian natives; and their last station was at Warna, near the sea-shore, on which the defeat and death of Ladislaus have bestowed a memorable name.52

It was on this fatal spot, that, instead of finding a confederate host to second their operations, they were alarmed by the approach of Amurath himself, who had issued from his Magnificent solitude, and transported the forces of Asia to the defence of Europe. According to some writers, the Greek emperor had been saved, or induced, to grant the passage of the Beophrus, and an insensible stain of corruption is fixed on the Genoese, on the pope's nephew, the Catholic admiral, whose mercenary covetise betrayed the guard of the Hellespont. From Adrianople, the sultan advanced by hasty marches at the head of sixty thousand men; and when the easterly, and Huniades, had taken a nearer survey of the numbers and order of the Turks, these ardent warriors proposed the tardy and impracticable measure of a retreat. The king was resolved to conquer or die; and his resolution had almost been crowned with a glorious and salutary victory. The princes were opposed to each other in the centre; and the Boghurs, or generals of Armenia and Romania, commanded on the right and left, against the adverse divisions of the despot and Huniades. The Turkish wings were broken on the first onset; but the advantage was fatal; and the rush victors, in the heat of the pursuit, were carried away far from the annoyance of the enemy, or the support of their friends. When Amurath beheld the flight of his squadrons, he despised his fortune and that of the empire: a veteran Janizary seized his horse's bridle; and he had, to magnanimity to pardon and reward the soldiers who dared to perceive the terror, and arrest the flight, of his sovereign. A copy of the treaty, the muniment of Christian party, had been displayed in the front of battle; and it is said, that the sultan in his distress, lifting his eyes and his hands to heaven, implored the protection of the God of truth; and calling to the prophet Jesus himself, to avenge the impious mockery of his name and religion.53 With inferior numbers and disordered ranks, the king of Hungary rushed forward in the confidence of victory, till his career was stopped by the impenetrable phalanx of the Janizaries. If we may credit the Ottoman annals, his horse was pursued by the javelin of Amurath;54 he fell among the spears of the infamy; and a Turkish soldier proclaimed with a loud voice, "Hun- garians, behold the head of your king!" The death of Ladislaus was the signal of their defeat. On his return from an intemperate pursuit, Huniades deplored his error and the public loss; he strove to rescue the royal body, till he was overwhelmed by the tumultuous crowd of the victors and vanquished; and the last efforts of his courage and conduct were exerted to save the remnant of his Walachian cavalry. Ten thousand Christians were slain in the disastrous battle of Warna: the loss of the Turks, more considerable in numbers, bore a smaller proportion to their total strength; yet the philosophic sultan was not abashed to confess, that his ruin must be the consequence of a second and similar victory. At his command a column was erected on the spot where Ladislaus had fallen; but the modest inscription, instead of exciting the madness, recorded the valued, and bewailed the misfortune, of the Hungarian youth.55

52 Warna, under the German name of Oddone, was a fortress of the first importance. It was reported that a body of 3000 of the French and Germans sailed from Warna to Constantinople, 9 Feb., 1587. (Des Prez of the Rev. Mr. Goodwin, "An Account of the Expedition," vol. ii. p. 274.) Of this body, 1000 sailed with the Danubian division, and the remainder, under the command of 1000 men, sailed with the second division. The Danubian division, after a short and unsuccessful expedition, was defeated by the Turks near Alexander, and 28 Feb., 1587. (Vpon the Rev. Mr. Goodwin, "An Account of the Expedition," vol. ii. p. 274.) Of this body, 1000 sailed with the Danubian division, and the remainder, under the command of 1000 men, sailed with the second division. The Danubian division, after a short and unsuccessful expedition, was defeated by the Turks near Alexander, and 28 Feb., 1587. (Vpon the Rev. Mr. Goodwin, "An Account of the Expedition," vol. ii. p. 274.)

53 Some Christian writers affirm, that he drove from him the bell of the sultan, and that the memory has not been erased. The Euxine, however, tone, with more applause at the battle of Warna, which is more amply described by Conti, in 1800, p. 340.

54 A copy of the treaty was seen in the collection of a victorious Turk, named Salim, who was a courtier of the palace. Conti describes him, p. 340.


56 M. Lodsing has described the siege (Hist. du Comte de Salm,
and Greek learning; both the sciences of divinity and law; and his versatile genius was equally adapted to the schools, the camp, and the court. No sooner had he been invested with the Roman purple, than he was sent into Germany to stern the empire against the rebels and heretics of Bohemia. The spirit of persecution is unworthy of a Christian; the military profession ill becomes a priest; but the former is excused by the times; and the latter was emboldened by the courage of Julian, who stood dauntless and alone in the ignominious flight of the German host. As the pope's legate, he opened the council of Basil; but the president soon appeared the most strenuous champion of ecclesiastical freedom; and an opposition of seven years was conducted by his ability and zeal. After promoting the strongest measures against the authority and person of Eugenius, some secret motive of interest or conscience engaged him to desert and betray his prince. The cardinal withdrew himself from Basil to Lastra in 315, in the debate of the Greeks and Latins; the two nations admired the dexterity of his arguments and the depth of his theological knowledge. In his Hungarian embassy, we have already seen the mischievous effects of his sophistry and eloquence; of which Julian himself was the first victim. The cardinal, who performed the duties of a priest and a soldier, was lost in the defeat of Warna. The circumstances of his death are variously related; but it is believed, that a weighty accumulation of gold impaired his flight, and tempted the cruel avarice of some Christian fugitives.

From an humble, or at least a doubtful, origin, the merit of John Huniades promoted him to the command of the Hungarian armies. His father was a Wallachian, his mother a Greek; her unknown race might possibly ascend to the emperors of Constantinople; and the claims of the Wallachians, with the surname of Corvinus, from the place of his nativity, might suggest a thin pretence for mingling his blood with the patriarchs of ancient Rome. In his youth he served in the wars of Italy, and was retained, with twelve biremeys, by the bishop of Zagrab: the valour of the white knight was soon conspicuous; he increased his fortunes by a noble and wealthy marriage; and in the defence of the Hungarian borders, he won in the same year three battles against the Turks. By his influence, Ladislaus of Poland obtained the crown of Hungary; and the important service was rewarded by the title and offices of Warden of Transylvania. The first of Julian's conspiracies added two Turkish lances on his brow; and in the public distress the fatal errors of Warna were forgotten.

During the absence and infirmity of Ladislaus, the stilted king, Huniades was elected supreme captain and governor of Hungary; and in 1561, at first was silenced by terror, a reign of twelve years supersedes the arts of policy as well as of war. Yet the idea of a consummated general is not delineated in his campaign; the white knight fought with the hand rather than the head, as the chief of desolatory barbarians, who attack without fear and by without shame; and his military life is composed of a romantic alternative of victories and conquests. By the Turks, who employed his name to frighten their perverse children, he was corruptly denounced asocus Ludis, or the Wicked: their hatred of the proof of the resurrection; the kingdom which he guarded was inaccessible to their arms; and they felt him most during and formidable, when they firmly believed the captain and his country irrecoverably lost. Instead of confining himself to a defensive war, four years after the defeat of Warna he again penetrated into the heart of Bulgaria, and in the plain of Cossat sustained, till the third day, the shock of the Ottoman army, four times as numerous as his own. As he fled alone through the woods of Walachia, the hero was surprised by two robbers; but while they disputed a gold chain that hung at his neck, he recovered his sword, slew the one, terrified the other, and, after new perils of captivity or death, consoles by his presence an afflicted kingdom. But the last and most glorious act of his life was the defence of Belgrade against the powers of Mahomet the Second in person. After a siege of forty days, the Turks, who had already entered the town, were compelled to retreat; and the joyful nations celebrated Huniades and Belgrade as the bulwarks of Christendom. About a month after this great deliverance, the champion expired; and his most splendid epitaph is the regret of the Ottoman princes, who sighed that he could no longer hope for revenge against the single antagonist who had triumphed over his arms. On the first vacancy of the throne, Matthias Corvinus, a youth of eighteen years of age, was elected and crowned by the grateful Hungarians. His reign was prosperous and long: Matthias aspired to the glory of a conqueror and a mint; but his great merit is the encouragement of learning; and the Latin authors and historians, who were invited from Italy by the son, have shewn the justice of their eloquence on the father's character. In the list of heroes, John Huniades and Schoederberg are commonly associated; and they are

32 See Reuchlin, cap. 1. sect. 1. iii, 38, 492; and Mandeville (A. E. Lex. No. 1, 2). Huniades shows the glory of the actions of the Hungarian heroes, without the merit not the natural foundation of their reputation, with a view to prove that after the final victory of Warna, which was the subject of the narrative, the whole empire of the Turks was reduced to a state of devastation.
both entitled to our notice, since their occupation of the Ottoman arms delayed the ruin of the Greek empire. John Castriot, the father of Scanderbeg, was the hereditary prince of a small district of Epirus or Albania, between the mountains and the Adriatic Sea. Unable to contend with the sultan's power, Castriot submitted to the hard conditions of peace and tribute; he delivered his four sons as the pledges of his fidelity; and the Christian youths, after receiving the mark of circumcision, were instructed in the Mahometan religion, and trained in the arms and arts of Turkish policy. The three elder brothers were confined in the cruel of slaves; and the poison to which their deaths are attributed, cannot be verified or disproved by any positive evidence. Yet the suspicion is in a great measure removed by the kind and paternal treatment of George Castriot, the fourth brother, who, from his tender youth, displayed the strength and spirit of a soldier. The successive overthrow of a Tartar and two Persians, who carried a proud defiance to the Turkish court, recommended him to the favour of Amurath; and his Turkish appellation of Scanderbeg (Scander beg), or the lord Alexander, is an indecipherable memorial of his glory and servitude. His father's principality was reduced into a province; but the loss was compensated by the rank and title of Sanjak, a command of five thousand horses, and the prospect of the first dignities of the empire. He served with honour in the wars of Europe and Asia; and we may smile at the act or credulity of the historian, who supposes, that in every encounter he spared the Christians, while he fell with a thundering arm on his Mussulman foes. The glory of Humidade is without reproach; he fought in the defence of his religion and country; but the enemies who appealed to a patriot, had abandoned their rival with the arms of trasmit and abandon. In the eyes of the Christians, the rebellion of Scanderbeg is justified by his father's wrongs, the ambiguous death of his three brothers, his own degradation, and the slavery of his country; and they adore the generous, though tardy, zeal, with which he asserted the faith and independence of his ancestors. But he had amassed from his ninth year the doctrine of the Koran; he was ignorant of the Gospel; the religion of a soldier is determined by authority and habit; nor is it easy to conceive what new illumination at the age of forty could be poured into his soul. His motives would be less exposed to the suspicion of interest or revenge, had he broken his chains from the moment that he was sensible of his weight. A long oblivion had slowly impaired his original right; and every year of obestation and reward had consummated the mutual bond of the sultan and his subject. If Scanderbeg had long harboured the belief of Christianity and the intention of revolt, a worthy

mind must condone the base dissimulation, that could serve only to betray, that could promise only to be fomented, that could actively join in the temporal and spiritual perdition of so many thousands of his unhappy brethren. Shall we praise a secret correspondence with Humidade, while he commanded the vanguard of the Turkish army? shall we excuse the desertion of his standard, a tremendous desertion, which abandoned the victory to the enemies of his benefactor? In the confusion of a defeat, the eye of Scanderbeg was fixed on the Haci Effendi or principal secretary: with the dagger at his breast, he extorted a firmum of petent for the government of Albania; and the murder of the guilty scribe and his train prevented the consequences of an immediate discovery. With some bold companions, to whom he had revealed his design, he escaped in the night, by rapid marches, from the field of battle to his paternal mountains. The gates of Creva were opened to the royal mandate; and no sooner did he command the fortress, than George Castriot dropped the mask of dissimulation; adjured the prophet and the sultan, and proclaimed himself the avenger of his family and country. The names of religion and liberty provoked a general revolt: the Albanians, a martial race, were insatiable to live and die with their hereditary prince; and the Ottoman garrisons were indulged in the choice of martyrdom or baptism. In the assembly of the states of Epirus, Scanderbeg was elected general of the Turkish army; and many of the allies engaged to furnish his respective proportion of men and money. From these contributions, from his patrimonial estate, and from the valuable salt-pits of Salina, he drew an annual revenue of two hundred thousand ducats; and the entire sum, exempt from the demands of luxury, was strictly appropriated to the public use. His manners were popular; his discpline was severe; and every superfluous vice was banished from his camp: his example strengthened his command; and under his conduct, the Albanians were invincible in their own opinion and that of their enemies. The bravest adventurers of France and Germany were allured by his fame and retain in his service: his standing militia consisted of eight thousand horse and seven thousand foot; the horses were small, the men were active: but he viewed with a discerning eye the difficulties and resources of the mountains; and, at the brainstorm of the bosoms, the whole nation was distributed in the strongest posts. With such unequal arms Scanderbeg resisted twenty-three years the powers of the Ottoman empire; and two conquerors, Amurath the Second, and his greater son, were repeatedly baffled by a rebel, whom they pursued with seeing contempt and implacable resentment. At the head
life and genius of one man. Scanderbeg might indeed be supported by the national, though faltering, hopes, that the pope, the king of Naples, and the Venetian republic, would join in the defence of a free and Christian people, who guarded the sea-coast of the Adriatic, and the narrow passage from Greece to Italy. His infant son was saved from the national shipwreck; the Castriots were invested with a Neapolitan dukedom, and their blood continued to flow in the noblest families of the realm. A colony of Albanian fugitives obtained a settlement in Calabria, and they preserve at this day the language and manners of their ancestors. 33

In the long career of the decline and fall of the Roman empire, I have reached at length the last reign of the princes of Constantinople, who so feebly sustained the name and majesty of the Caesars. On the decease of John Palaeologus, who survived about four years the Hungarian crusade, 34 the royal family, by the death of Andronimus and the monastic profession of Isaurius, was reduced to three princes, Constantine, Demetrios, and Thomas, the surviving sons of the emperor Manuel. Of these the first and the last were far distant in the Mora; but Demetrios, who possessed the domain of Selymbria, was in the suburbs, at the head of a party; his ambition was not chilled by the public distress; and his conspiracy with the Turks and the schismatics had already disturbed the peace of his country. The funeral of the late emperor was accelerated with singular and even suspicious haste: the claim of Demetrios to the vacant throne was justified by a trine and flimsy sophism, that he was born in the purple, the eldest son of his father's reign. But the empress-mother, the senate and soldiers, the clergy and people, were unanimous in the cause of the lawful successor; and the despot Thomas, who ignorant of the change, accidentally returned to the capital, ascertained with becoming and the interest of his absent brother. An ambassador, the historian Pharamas, was immediately dispatched to the court of Adrianoephr. Amurath received him with honour and dismissed him with gifts; but the gracious approbation of the Turkish sultan announced his supremacy, and the approaching downfall of the Eastern empire. By the hands of two illustrious deputies, the Imperial crown was placed at Sparta on the head of Constantine. In the spring he sailed from the Mora, escaped the encounter of a Turkish squadron, enjoyed the acclamations of his subjects, celebrated the festival of a new reign, and exulted in his dominion the tranquility, under the name of Niketas, was restored to the vacant throne. 35

32 Among the chief of the Franks, the Byzantine and Albanian; the former, by the name of the Franks, the latter by the name of the Albanian, whose inhabitants resided as such in Albania. The Franks were, according to the idea of the Franks, the Franks, and the Albanian, their descendants. 33 The Franks, who have been subject to the Franks, are subject to the Franks. In the Franks, they were subject to the Franks, and their descendants, and the Albanian, who were subject to the Albanian, to the Albanian. 34 The Franks, who have been subject to the Franks, are subject to the Franks. In the Franks, they were subject to the Franks, and their descendants, and the Albanian, who were subject to the Albanian, to the Albanian. 35 The Franks, who have been subject to the Franks, are subject to the Franks. In the Franks, they were subject to the Franks, and their descendants, and the Albanian, who were subject to the Albanian, to the Albanian.
state, or rather the indulgence, of the state. The emperor immediately resigned to his brother the possession of the Moree; and the brittle friendship of the two princes, Demetrias and Thomas, was confirmed in their mother’s presence by the freal severity of oath and embrace.

His next occupation was the choice of a consort. A daughter of the doge of Venice had been proposed; but the Byzantine nobles objected the distance between an hereditary monarch and an elective magistrate; and in their subsequent distress, the chief of that powerful republic was not unmindful of the affright. Constantine afterwards hesitated between the royal families of Trebizond and Georgia; and the embassy of Phraanse represents in its public and private life the last days of the Byzantine empire. 46

The pontiffs, or great chamberlain, Phraanse sailed from Constantinople as the minister of a bridegroom; and the relics of wealth and luxury were applied to his pompous appearance. His numerous retinue consisted of nobles and guards, of physicians and monks; he was attended by a band of music; and the term of his costly embassy was protracted above two years. On his arrival in Georgia or Iberia, the natives from the towns and villages flocked around the strangeness, and such was their simplicity, that they were delighted with the affections, without understanding the cause, of musical harmony. Among the thronged, was an old man, above a hundred years of age, who had formerly been carried away a captive by the Sassanians, and who amused his hearers with a tale of the wonders of India, from whence he had returned to Portugal by an unknown sea. 47 From this hospitable land, Phraanse proceeded to the court of Trebizond, where he was informed by the Greek prince of the recent decease of Amurath.

Instead of rejoicing in the deliverance, the experienced statesman expressed his apprehension, that an ambitious youth would not long adhere to the sage and pacific system of his father. After the sultan’s decease, his Christian wife, Maria, the daughter of the Scveral despot, had been honourably restored to her parents; on the fame of her beauty and merit, she was recommended by the ambassador as the most worthy object of the royal choice; and Phraanse recapitulates and refutes the specious objections that might be raised against the proposal. The majesty of the purple would enable an unequal alliance; the bar of affinity might be removed by liberal alms and the dispensation of the church; the disgrace of Turkish nuptials had been repeatedly overlooked; and, though the fair Maria was near fifty years of age, she might yet hope to give an heir to the empire. Constantine listened to the advice, which was transmitted in the first ship that sailed from Trebizond; but the factions of the court opposed his marriage; and it was finally prevented by the pious vow of the sultan, who ended her days in the monastic profession. Reduced to the first alternative, the choice of Phraanse was decided in favour of a Georgian princess; and the cumbersome of her father was dazzled by the glorious alliance. Instead of demanding, according to the primitive and national custom, a price for her daughter, he offered a portion of fifty-six thousand, with an annual pension of five thousand, ducats; and the services of the ambassador were repaid by an assurance, that, as his son had been adopted in baptism by the emperor, the establishment of his daughter should be the peculiar care of the empress of Constantinople. On the return of Phraanse, the treaty was ratified by the Greek monarch, who with his own hand impressed three vermilion crosses on the golden bull, and assured the Georgian envoy, that in the spring his galleys should conduct the bride to her Imperial palace. But Constantine embraced his faithful servant, not with the cold approbation of a sovereign, but with the warm confidence of a friend, who, after a long absence, is impatient to pour his secrets into the bosom of his friend. 48 Since the death of my mother and of Countess, 49 according to the Greek custom.

The last word was, however, decided by the emperor, who, without interest or passion, 50 I am surprised, said the emperor, by men whom I cannot love, nor trust, nor esteem. You are not a stranger to Lucus Notaras, the great admiral; obstinately attached to his own sentiments, he declares, both in private and public, that his sentiments are the absolute measure of my thoughts and actions. The rest of the courtiers are awed by their personal or fictitious views; and how can I consult the monks on questions of policy and marriage? I have yet much employment for your diligence and fidelity. In the future, you shall engage one of my brothers to solicit the succour of the Western powers; from the Macedons you shall solicit a particular commission; and from Venice proceed to Georgia to receive and conduct the future empress. Your commands, replied Phraanse, are irremissible; but reign, great sir, he added, with a serious smile, to consider, that if I am thus perpetually absent from my family, my wife may be tempted either to seek another husband, or to throw herself into a maniac’s arms. After laughing at his apprehensions, the emperor more gravely consoled him by the pleasing assurance, that such should be his last service abroad, and that he destined for his son

46 Phraanse left Constantinople in the spring of 1360. The emperor’s first war in Georgia was described in the previous chapter.
47 The emperor’s treaty with the pope is described in the previous chapter.
48 The emperor’s treaty with the pope is described in the previous chapter.
49 Countess, a title used in Greece.
50 Without interest or passion, a title used in Greece.
of the most skilful masters, Mahomet advanced with an early and rapid progress in the paths of knowledge; and besides his native tongue, it is affirmed that he spoke or understood five languages, the Arabic, the Persian, the Chaldaan or Hebrew, the Latin, and the Greek. The Persian might indeed contribute to his amusement, and the Arabic to his education; and such studies are familiar to the Oriental youth. In the intercourse of the Greeks and Turks, a conqueror might wish in converse with the people over whom he was ambitious to reign; his own praise in Latin poetry or prose might find a passage to the royal ear; but what use or merit could recommend to the statesman or the scholar the smooth dialect of his Hebrew slaves? The history and geography of the world were familiar to his memory; the lives of the heroes of the East, perhaps of the West, excited his emulation; his skill in astrology was excelled by the folly of the times, and suppressed some splendid mathematical science; and a profound taste for the arts was betrayed in his liberal invitation and reward of the painters of Italy. But the influence of religion and learning were employed without effect on his savage and licentious nature. I will not transcribe, nor do I firmly believe, the stories of his fourteen pages, whose belligerent eyes raged in search of a stolen means of the beauteous slave, whose hand was served from her bosom, to convince the hairbreadths that the conqueror was not the victor of love. His sobriety is attested by the darkness of the Turkish annals, which accommodate three only, of the Ottoman line of the vice of drunkenness. But it cannot be denied that his passions were at once furious and inexorable; that in the palace, as in the field, a current of blood was splashed on the slightest provocation; and that the nobles of the captive youth were often dishonoured by his unnatural lust. In the Albanian war, he studied the lessons, and soon surpassed the example, of his father; and the conquest of two empires, twelve kingdoms, and two hundred cities, a vain and flattering account, is attributed to his invincible sword. He was a doubter, a soldier, and possibly a general; Constantinople has sealed his glory; but if we compare the means, the obstacles, and the achievements, Mahomet the Second must blush to sustain a parallel with Alexander or Timour. Under his command, the Ottoman forces were always more numerous than their enemies; yet their progress was beset by the Ephrates and the Adriatic; and his arms were checked by Musulmans and Scanderbeg, by the Rhodian knights, and by the Persian king.

1 Thus those who maintain that the Koran, in which he first mentions the use of horses, is not an authentic work of Mahomet, maintain that it was added afterwards. 2 The story of the Turks in the East is in general very obscure. It is the less to be wondered at, because the history of the Turks has passed through the Bas-reliefs of the Chaldean period, or the dates of the disputes of the Turks and the Romans. 3 The second battle of Manzikert, where he had retired from the battle, was commenced with a shout and noise of song, and in nine days, in the month of Rajab, the two armies were engaged. 4 The siege of Constantinople, where he had retired from the battle, was commenced with a shout and noise of song, and in nine days, in the month of Rajab, the two armies were engaged. 5 The siege of Constantinople, where he had retired from the battle, was commenced with a shout and noise of song, and in nine days, in the month of Rajab, the two armies were engaged.
while war was in his heart; he incessantly sighed for the possession of Constantinople; and the Greeks, by their own indifference, afforded the first point of the fatal rupture. Instead of labouring to be forgotten, their ambassadors pursued his camp, to demand the payment, and even the increase, of their annual stipend; the divan was importuned by their complaints, and the vizir, a secret friend of the Christians, was constrained to deliver the sense of his brethren. "Ye foolish and miserable Romans," said Calix, "we know your devices, and we are ignorant of your own danger; the scruptulous Amurath is no more; his throne is occupied by a young conqueror, whom no laws can bind, and no obstacle can resist: and if you escape from his hands, give praise to the divine clemency, which yet delays the chastisement of your sins. Why do ye seek to affright us by vain and indirect means? Release the fugitive Orhan, crown him sultan of Romans; call the Hungarians from beyond the Danube; arm against us the nations of the West; and be assured, that you will only provoke a stroke and precipitate your ruin." But if the fears of the ambassadors were alarmed by the stern language of the vizir, they were soothed by the courteous audience and friendly speeches of the Ottoman prince; and Mahomet assured them that on his return to Adrianople, he would redress the grievances, and cool the true interests, of the Greeks. No sooner had he dismissed the Haliç, than he issued a mandate to suppress their pension, and to expel their adherents from the banks of the Strymon; in this measure he betrayed an hostile mind; and the second order announced, and in some degree commenced, the siege of Constantinople. In the narrow pass of the Bosphorus, an Asiatic fortress had formerly been raised by his grandfather: in the opposite situation, on the European side he resolved to erect a more formidable castle; and a thousand munitions were commissioned to assemble in the spring. The profound Asinaton, about five miles from the Golden Horn,\(^\text{18}\) Persia is the reward of the feeble; and the feeble can seldom persuade: the ambassadors of the empire attempted, without success, to divert Mahomet from the execution of his design. They represented, that his grandfather had solicited the permission of Manuel to build a castle on his own territorial; but that this double fortification, which would command the strait, could only tend to violate the alliance of the nations; to intercept the Latins who traded in the Black Sea, and perhaps to annihilate the substance of the city. "I form an enterprise," replied the perfidious prince. \(^\text{18}\) Haliç, or the Bosphorus, was crossed from the sultan, and guided by the Greeks, under the name of Constantine (Cezare), and was the author of the sultan, and guided by the Greeks, under the name of Constantine (Cezare), and was the author of the Bosphorus. The name of the passage is Haliç. \(^\text{17}\) The conqueror of the Bosphorus. \(^\text{18}\) The name of the passage is Haliç. \(^\text{19}\) TheBosphorus is the reward of the feeble; and the feeble can seldom persuade: the ambassadors of the empire attempted, without success, to divert Mahomet from the execution of his design. They represented, that his grandfather had solicited the permission of Manuel to build a castle on his own territory; but that this double fortification, which would command the strait, could only tend to violate the alliance of the nations; to intercept the Latins who traded in the Black Sea, and perhaps to annihilate the substance of the city. "I form an enterprise," replied the perfidious prince.
sultan, **against the city; but the empire of Constantinople is measured by her walls.**

**Have you forgotten the distress to which my father was reduced, when you formed a league with the Hungarians; when they invaded our country by land, and the Hellenes were occupied by the French galleys? Amurath was compelled to force the passage of the Bosphorus; and your strength was not equal to your malevolence. I was then a child at Ahriapole; the Moslems trembled, and for a while the Gates of Constantine shut our disgrace. But when my father had triumphed in the field of Varna, he vowed to erect a fort on the western shore, and that vow is my duty to accomplish. Have ye the right, have ye the power, to control my actions on my own ground? For that ground is my own; as far as the shores of the Bosphorus, Asia is inhabited by the Turks, and Europe is desolate by the Romans. Return, and inform your king, that the present Ottoman is far different from his predecessors; that his resolutions are passed with their wishes; and that he performs more than they could resolve. Return in safety—

**but the next who delivers a similar message may expect to be flayed alive.**

**After this declaration, Constantine, the first of the Greeks in spirit as in rank, had determined to Intrench the land and sea, and resist the approach and establishment of the Turks on the Bosphorus.** He was dissuaded by the advice of his civil and ecclesiastical ministers, who recommended a system less gory, and even less prudent; than his own, to approve his patience and long-suffering, to brand the Ottoman with the same and guilt of an aggressor, and to depend on chance and time for their own safety, and the destruction of a fort which could not long be maintained in the neighbourhood of a great and populous city. Amidst hope and fear, the fears of the wise, and the hopes of the credulous, the winter rolled away; the proper business of each man, and each hour, was postponed; and the Greeks shut their eyes against the impending danger, till the arrival of the spring; and the sultan decided the assurance of their ruin.

Of a master who never forgives, the orders are seldom disobeyed.

**On the twenty-sixth of March, the appointed spot of Ammason was covered with an active swarm of Turkish artificers; and the materials by sea and land were diligently transported from Europe and Asia.**

**The mine had been burnt in Cataclys; the timber was cut down in the woods of Heracolly and Nicomedia; and the stones were dug from the Anatolian quarries.** Each of the thousand masses was assisted by two workmen; and a measure of two rubies was marked for their daily task. The fortress was built in a triumphal form; each angle was flanked by a strong and immovable tower; one on the declivity of the hill, two along the sea-shore; a thickness of twenty-two feet was assigned for the walls, thirty for the towers; and the whole building was covered with a solid platform of lead. Mahomet himself pressed and directed the work with indefatigable ardour; his three vice claimed the honour of finishing their respective towers; the seal of the sultan emblazoned that of the Janissaries; the munificent labour was ennobled by the service of God and the sultan; and the diligence of the multitude was quickened by the eye of a despot, whose smile was the hope of fortune, and whose frown was the messenger of death. The Greek emperor beheld with terror the irresistible progress of the work; and vainly strove, by flattery and gifts, to assuage an implacable foe, who sought, and secretly fomented, the slightest occasion of a quarrel. Such occasions must soon and inevitably be found. The ruins of stately churches, and even the marble column which had been consecrated to St. Michael the archangel, were employed without scruple by the profane and rapacious Moslems; and some Christians, who presumed to oppose the removal, received from their hands the crown of martyrdom. Constantine had solicited a Turkish guard to protect the fields and harvests of his subjects; the guard was send, but their first word was to abuse the free pasture to the oxen and horses of the camp; and to defend their brethren if they should be molested by the Christians. The return of the Ottoman chief had left their hands free, but the sight among the ripe corn, the damage was felt; the insult was resented; and several of both nations were slain in a tumultuous conflict. Mahomet listened with joy to the complaint; and a detachment was commanded to exterminate the guilty village; the guilt had fled; but forty innocent and unsuspecting worshippers were massacred by the soldiery. Till this provocation, Constantine had been open to the visits of commerce and curiosity; on the first alarm the gates were shut; but the emperor, still anxious for power, released on the third day his Turkish captives; and expressed, in a last message, the firm resolution of a Christian and a soldier. "Since neither" "treaty, nor surrender, nor submission, can secure peace, pursue," said he to Mahomet, "your insipid warfare. My trust is in God alone; if it should please him to mollify your heart, I shall rejoice in the happy change; if he delivers the city into your hands, I submit without a murmuring to his holy will. But until the Judge of the earth shall pronounce "between us, it is my duty to live and die in "the defence of my people." The sultan's answer was hostile and decisive.

13 The sultan's answer which the Turks bear in the book is: "The fortune of war is decided by Constantine H. (Hussein) himself, and God. But, also, the sultan in his answer to the sultan, каковъ часъ въ глазахъ, согласно со словами А. (Андреевскаго) и Г. (Григорьевскаго) и со словами А. (Архангельскаго) въ кн. ""Пытка""."
exclusive: his fortifications were completed; and before his departure for Adrianople, he stationed a vigilant Aegina and four hundred Jannizaries, to levy a tribute of the ships of every nation that should pass within the reach of their cannon. A Venetian vessel, refusing obedience to the new lords of the Bosphorus, was sunk with a single bullet. The master and thirty sailors escaped in the boat; but they were dragged in chains to the Pera. The chief was imprisoned; his companions were beheaded, and the historian Ducis beheld, at Demotika, their bodies exposed to the wild beasts. The siege of Constantinople was deferred till the ensuing spring; but an Ottoman army marched into the Morea to divert the force of the brothers of Constantine. At this era of calamity, one of these princes, the despot Thomas, was blessed or afflicted with the birth of a son; "the last hair," says the plaintive Pharamus, of the last spark of the Roman empire.28

The Greeks and the Turks passed in an anxious and sleepless winter; the former were kept awake by their fears, the latter by their hopes: both by the preparations of defence and attack; and the two emperors, who had the most to lose or to gain, were the most deeply affected by the national sentiment. In Malemeus, that sentiment was inflamed by the arduous of his character and temper: he assumed his leisure with building at Adrianople the lofty palace of Jehan Nunez (the watch-tower of the world); but his serious thoughts were irrecoverably bent on the conquest of the city of Caesar. At the dead of night, about the second watch, he started from his bed, and commanded the instantaneous attendance of his prime minister. The messenger, the hour, the prince, and his own situation, alarmed the guilty conscience of Callis Bashe; who had possessed the confidence, and advised the restoration, of Amurat. On the accession of the son, the vizir was confirmed in his office and the appearances of favour; but the veteran statesman was not insensible that he stood on a thin and slippery ice, which might break under his footsteps, and plunge him in the abyss. His friendship for the Christians, which might be innocent under the late reign, had atrophied him with the name of G USB ORUSHI, or foster-brother of the infidel; and his arrogance entertained a venal and transmissible correspondence, which was detected and punished after the conclusion of the war. On receiving the royal mandate, he embraced, perhaps for the last time, his wife and children; filled a cup with pieces of gold, hastened to the palace, adored the sultan, and offered, according to the Oriental custom, the slight tribute of his duty and gratitude.29 It is not my wish," said Malemeus, "to resume my gifts, but rather to heap and multiply them on thy head. In my turn I ask a present far more valuable and important — Constantine." As soon as the vizir had recovered from his surprise, "The same God," said he, "who has already given thee so large a portion of the Roman empire, will not deny the ascendant, and the capital. His providence, and thy power, assure thee true success; and myself, with the rest of thy faithful slaves, will sacrifice our lives and fortunes. Lula," (or preceptor,) continued the sultan, "do you see this pillow? all the night, in my agitation, I have pulled it on one side and the other; I have risen from my bed, again have lain down; yet sleep has not visited these weary eyes. Boast of the gods and the glory of the Romans in arms we are superior; and with the aid of God, and the prayers of the prophet, we shall speedily become masters of Constantinople."

To sound the dispositions of his soldiers, he often wandered through the streets alone, and in disguise; and it was fatal to discover the sultan, when he wished to escape from the vulgar eye. His hours were spent in delineating the plan of the hostile city; in debating with his generals and engineers, on what spot he should erect his batteries, on which side he should assault the walls, where he should plant his mines; to what place he should apply his scaling-ladders; and the exercises of the day repeated and proved the incursions of the night.

Among the implements of destruction, he studied with peculiar care the recent and tremendous discovery of the Latins; and his artillery surpassed whatever had yet appeared in the world. A finder of cannon, a Dane or Hungarian, who had been almost stopped in the Greek service, described to him the Monsieur, and was liberally entertained by the Turkish sultan. Malemeus was satisfied with the armament of his vessels, which were entirely pressed on the artist. "I am able to cast a cannon capable of throwing a ball or stone of sufficient size to batter the walls of Constantinople. I am not ignorant of their strength, but were they more solid than those of Babylon, I could oppose an engine of superior power: the position and management of that engine must be left to your engineers." On this assurance, a foundery was established at Adrianople; the metal was prepared; and at the end of three months, Urban produced a piece of brass enameled of stupendous, and almost incredible, magnitude; a measure of twelve palms is assigned to the bore; and the stone bullet weighed above six hundred pounds.30 A vastity
place before the new palace was chosen for the first experiment; but, to prevent the sudden and
mischief effects of astonishment and fear, a
proclamation was issued, that the cannon would
be discharged during the day. The explosion
was felt and heard in a circuit of a hundred fur-
lengths; the ball, by the force of gunpowder, was
driven above a mile; and on the spot where it
fell, it buried itself in a fosse deep in the ground.

For the conveyance of this destructive engine, a
frame or carriage of thirty waggons was linked
together and drawn along by a team of sixty
oxen; two hundred men on both sides were sta-
tioned to push and support the rolling weight;
and two hundred and fifty workmen marched before
in a regular line to smooth the way and repair the
bridges; and more than two months were employed in a laborious
journey of one hundred and fifty miles. A lively
philosopher 23 decides on this occasion the crea-
tivity of the Greeks, and observes, with much
reason, that we should always distrust the exag-
ggerations of a vanquished people. He calculates,
that a ball, even of two hundred pounds, would
require a charge of one hundred and fifty pounds
of powder; and that the stroke would be feeble and
impotent, since not one fiftieth part of the
mass could be aimed at the same moment.

A stranger as I am to the art of destruction, I can
discern that the modern improvements of ar-
tillery prefer the number of pieces to the weight
of metal; the quickness of the fire to the sound,
its execution, of a single explosion. Yet I dare not reject the positive and unanimous
evidence of contemporary writers; nor can it seem improbable, that the first artists, in their
rude and ambitious efforts, should have trans-
gressed the standard of moderation. A Turkish
cannon, more cumbersome than that of Mahomet,
still guards the entrance of the Dardanelles; and
if the use be inconvenient, it has been found on
a late trial, that the effect was far from con-
temptible. A stone bullet of a hundred pounds
weight was once discharged with three hundred
and thirty pounds of powder; at the distance of six hundred yards it shattered
into three rocky fragments, traversed the street,
and, leaving the water in a foam, again rose and
bounded against the opposite hill. 24

While Mahomet threatened the capital of the East, the Greek
emperor implored with fervent prayers the
assistance of earth and Heaven. But the invisible powers were deaf to his
supplications; and Christendom held with indif-
ference the fall of Constantinople, while she
preferred at least some promise of supply from
the jealous and temporally policy of the sultan of Egypt. Some states were too weak, and others
too remote; by some the danger was considered
as imaginary, by others as inevitable: the Western
princes were involved in their endless and

23 J. Tyler. (2nd. Revell, 4th. p. 94.)
24 In the Voyages (2nd Revell, 4th. p. 300.)
25 He was shown
26 The Turks had the
27 The Turks had the
28 All the
29 That which
30 The
domestic quarrels; and the Roman pontiff was
exasperated by the falsehood or obstinacy of the
Greeks. Instead of employing in their favour the
arms and treasures of Italy, Nicholas the
Fifth had foretold their approaching ruin; and
his honour was engaged in the accomplishment of
his prophecy. Perhaps he was softened by the
last extremity of their distress; but his com-
}
of the Porte, who marched with the prince, and were paid from his royal treasury. But the bashaws, in their respective governments, maintained or levied a provincial militia; many bands were held by a military tenure; many volunteers were attracted by the hope of spoils; and the sound of the holy trumpets invited a swarm of hungry and fearless fanatics, who might contribute at least to multiply the terror, and in a first attack to blight the swords, of the Christians. The whole mass of the Turkish forces is magnified by Ducas, Chalcedonians, and Leonard of Chios, to the amount of three or four hundred thousand men; but Pharamas was a less remote and more accurate judge, and his precise definition of two hundred and fifty-eight thousand does not exceed the measure of experience and probability. 67 The levy of the besiegers was less formidable: the Propontis was overspread with three hundred and twenty sail; but of these no more than eighteen could be rated as galleys of war; and the far greater part must be degraded to the condition of storeships and transports, which poured into the camp fresh supplies of men, ammunition, and provisions. In her last decay, Constantinople was still peopled with more than an hundred thousand inhabitants; but these numbers are found in the accounts, not of war, but of captivity; and they mostly consisted of mechanics, of priests, of women, and of men devoid of that spirit which even women have sometimes exerted for the common safety. I can suppose, I could almost excuse, the reluctance of subjects to serve on a distant frontier, at the will of a tyrant; but the man who dares not expose his life in the defence of his children and his property, has lost in society the first and most active energies of nature. By the emperor's command, a particular enquiry had been made through the streets and houses, how many of the citizens, or even of the monks, were able and willing to bear arms for their country. The lists were intrusted to Pharamas; 68 and, after a diligent addition, he informed his master, with grief and surprise, that the national defence was reduced to four thousand nine hundred and seventy Romans. Between Constantine and his faithful minister, this comfortsless secret was preserved; and a sufficient proportion of shields, crosbears, and muskets, was distributed from the arsenal to the city bands. They derived some accession from a body of two thousand strangers, under the command of John Justinian, a noble Genoese; a liberal donation was advanced to these auxiliaries; and a princely compact, the isle of Lemnos, was promised to the valour and victory of their chief. A strong chain was drawn across the mouth of the harbour; it was supported by some Greek and Italian vessels of war and merchandise; and the ships of every Christian nation, that successively arrived from Cadiz and the Black Sea, were denied for the public service. Against the powers of the Ottoman empire, a city of the extent of thirteen, perhaps of sixteen, miles was defended by a scanty garrison of seven or eight thousand soldiers. Europe and Asia were open to the besiegers; but the strength and provisions of the Greeks must sustain a daily decrease; nor could they indulge the expectation of any foreign succour or supply.

The primitive Romans would have drawn their swords in the resolution of death or conquest. The primitive Christians might have embraced each other, and awaited in patience and charity the stroke of martyrdom. But the Greeks of Constantinople were animated only by the spirit of religion, and that spirit was productive only of animosity and discord. Before his death, the emperor John Palaeologus had renounced the unpopular measure of an union with the Latins; nor was the idea revived, till the distress of his brother Constantine imposed a lost trial of flattery and dissimulation. 69 With the demand of temporal aid, his ambassadors were instructed to mingle the assurance of spiritual obedience: his neglect of the church was excused by the urgent cares of the state; and his orthodox wishes solicited the presence of a Roman legate. The Vatican had been too often deserted; yet the sign of relief could not decently be overlooked: a legate was more easily granted than an army; and about six months before the final destruction, the cardinal Iuliere of Russia appeared in that character with a retinue of priests and soldiers. The emperor saluted him as a friend and father; respectfully listened to his public and private sermons; and with the most obsessions of the clergy and laity, subscribed the act of union, as it had been ratified in the council of Florence. On the 19th of December, the two nations, in the church of St. Sophia, joined in the communion of sacrifice and prayer; and the names of the two pontiffs were solemnly commemorated; the names of Nicholas the Fifth, the vicar of Christ, and of the patriarch Gregory, who had been driven into exile by a rebellious people. But the dress and language of the Latin priest who officiated at the altar, were objects of scandal; and it was observed with horror, that he consecrated a rask or wafer of unbroiled bread, and poured cold water into the cup of the sacrament. A national historian acknowledges with a blush, that none of his countrymen, not the emperor himself, were sincere in this occasional conformity. 70 Their busy and unconditional submission was palliated by a promise of future revival; but the best, or the worst, of their excuses was the confession of their own perjury. When they were pressed by the reproaches of

---

67 See above, ch. ii. 68 In 1654, Constantine II. was the general prince, who was then nearly forty years of age. 69 The first legate was sent in 1446; the second in 1450; and the third in 1454. 70 The emperor John Palaeologus, in his last and most desponding letters, in a parable, compared himself to the king of Sheba, who sought the wisdom of Solomon, and was received with honours. But in 1455, when the Gates of Constantinople were shut against him, he affirmed with regret, that those whom he refused to admit as successors to St. Sophia, were now enclosed in his own pasture. The emperor John Palaeologus, in his last and most desponding letters, in a parable, compared himself to the king of Sheba, who sought the wisdom of Solomon, and was received with honours. But in 1455, when the Gates of Constantinople were shut against him, he affirmed with regret, that those whom he refused to admit as successors to St. Sophia, were now enclosed in his own pasture.
their honest brethren. "Have patience," they whispered, "have patience till God shall have deserted as a Jewish synagogue, or an heathen temple, by the clergy and people; and a vast and gloomy silence prevailed in that venerable dome, which had so often smoked with a cloud of incense, blazed with innumerable lights, and resounded with the voice of prayer and Thanksgiving. The Latins were the most odious of heretics and infidels; and the first minister of the empire, the great duke, was heard to declare, that he had rather behold in Constantinople the turban of Mahomet, than the pope's tiara or a cardinal's hat. A sentiment so unworthy of Christians and patriots was familiar and fatal to the Greeks: the emperor was deprived of the affection and support of his subjects; and their native cowardice was sanctified by resignation to the divine decrees, or the visionary hope of a miraculous deliverance.

Of the triangle which comprises the figure of Constantinople, the two sides along the sea were made inaccessible to an enemy; the Propontis by nature, and the harbour by art. Between the two waters, the basis of the triangle, the land side was protected by a double wall, and a deep ditch of the depth of one hundred feet. Against this line of fortification, which Pharamus, an eye-witness, proclaims to the measure of six miles, the Ottomans directed their principal attack; and the emperor, after distributing the service and command of the most perilous stations, undertook the defence of the external wall. In the first days of the siege, the Greek soldiers descended into the ditch, or sallied into the field; but they soon discovered, that, in the proportion of their numbers, one Christian was of more value than twenty Turks; and, after these bold preludes, they were prudently content to maintain the rampart with their missile weapons. Nor should this prudence be accused of pusillanimity. The nation was indeed pusillanimous and base; but the last Constantine deserves the name of a hero: his noble band of volunteers was inspired with Roman virtue; and the foreign auxiliaries supported the honour of the Western chivalry. The incessant volleys of lances and arrows were accompanied with the smoke, the sound, and the fire, of their musketry and cannon. Their small arms discharged at the same time either five, or even ten, balls of lead, of the size of a walnut; and, according to the closeness of the ranks and the force of the powder, several breast-plates and bodies were transpierced by the same shot. But the Turkish approaches were soon sunk in trenches, or covered with ruins. Each day added to the science of the Christians; but their inadequate stock of gunpowder was wasted in the operations of each day. Their ordinance was not powerful, either in size or number; and if they possessed some heavy cannon, they feared to plant them on the walls, lest the aged structure should be shaken and overthrown by the
of the Roman Empire. 1175

The same destructive secret had been revealed to the Moslems, by whom it was employed with the superior energy of zeal, riches, and despotism. The great cannon of Mahomet has been separately noticed, an important and visible object in the history of the times; but that enormous engine was flanked by two long walls of equal magnitude: the long range of the Turkish artillery was pointed against the walls; fourteen batteries thundered at once on the most accessible places; and of one of these it is ambiguously expressed, that it was mounted with one hundred and thirty two guns, or that it discharged one hundred and thirty bullets. Yet, in the power and activity of the salut, we may discern the infancy of the new science. Under a master who counted the moments, the great cannon could be loaded and fired no more than seven times in one day.

The heated metal unfortunately burst; several workmen were destroyed, and the skill of an artist was admired who beheld himself of preventing the danger and the accident, by pouring oil, after each explosion, into the mouth of the cannon.

The first random shots were productive of more sound than effect; and it was by the advice of a Christian, that the engineers were taught to level their aim against the two opposite sides of the salient angles of the bastion. However imperfect, the weight and repetition of the fire made some impression on the walls; and the Turks, pushing their approaches to the edge of the ditch, attempted to fill the enormous chasm, and to build a road to the assault. Innumerable fascines, and hogsheads, and trunks of trees, were lashed on each other; and such was the impetuosity of the storming, that the foremost and the weakest were pushed headlong down the precipice, and instantly buried under the accumulated mass. To fill the ditch, was the toil of the besiegers; to clear away the rubbish, was the safety of the besieged; and, after a long and bloody conflict, the walls that had been woven in the day was still unravell'd in the night. The next resource of Mahomet was the practice of mines; but the soil was rocky; in every attempt he was stopped and under mined by the Christian engineers; nor had the art been yet invented of replenishing these subterraneous passages with guncpowder, and blowing whole towers and cities into the air. A circumstance that distinguishes the siege of Constantinople, is the reunion of the ancient and modern artillery. The cannon were intermingled with the mechanical engines for casting stones and darts; the bullet and the battering-rams were directed against the same walls; nor had the discovery of gunpowder superseded the use of the liquid and unextinguishable fire. A wooden turret of the largest size was advanced on rollers; this portable magazine of ammunition and fascines was protected by a three-fold covering of bulks' hides; incessant volleys were securely discharged from the loopholes; in the front, three doors were contrived for the alternate sally and retreat of the soldiers and workmen. They ascended by a staircase to the upper platform; and, as high as the level of that platform, a scaling-ladder could be raised by pulleys to form a bridge, and grapple with the adverse rampart. By these various arts of annoyance, some as new as they were pernicious to the Greeks, the tower of St. Romanus was at length overturned; after a severe struggle, the Turks were repulsed from the breach, and intercepted by darkness; but they trusted, that with the return of light they should renew the attack with fresh vigour and decisive success.

Of this pause of action, this interval of hope, each moment was improved by the activity of the emperor and Justinian, who passed the night on the spot, and urged the labours which involved the safety of the church and city. At the dawn of day, the impatient sultan perceived, with astonishment and grief, that his wooden turret had been reduced to ashes; the ditch was cleared and restored; and the tower of St. Romanus was again strong and entire. He deplored the failure of his design; and uttered a profane exclamation, that the word of the thirty-seven thousand prophets should not have compelled him to believe that such a work, in so short a time, could have been accomplished by the infidels.

The generality of the Christian princes was cold and tardy; but in the apprehension of a siege, Constance had negotiated, in the isles of the Archipelago, the Morea, and Sicily, the most indispensable supplies. As early as the beginning of April, five great ships, equipped for merchandise and war, would have sailed from the harbour of Chios, had not the cold and blow obstinately from the north. One of these ships bore the Imperial flag; the remaining four belonged to the Venetians; and they were laden with wheat and barley, with wine, oil, and vegetables, and, above all, with soldiers and mariners, for the service of the capital. After a tedious delay, a gentle breeze, and, on the second day, a strong gale from the south, carried them through the Hellespont and the Propontis; but the city was already invested by sea and land; and the Turkish fleet, at the entrance of the Bosporus, was stretched from shore to shore, in the

---

Footnotes:
32. At Rome the ancients erected four massive square towers, one hundred and thirty-two feet high (a hundred fathoms), of which only the stones were used for the other buildings. A story speaks of a man, who, alighting at the foot of one of these towers, was swallowed up by a great hole, a hollow where, according to the tradition of the place, the earth had once been opened for the descent of the deities of the Latins. It is even believed, in some of the same places, that the gods themselves made use of the same passage; and that, being encumbered with other worlds and other universes, the gods were never willing to descend from them, and therefore continued to dwell in the region of Elysium. Over these towers the ancients erected their walls. After the establishment of the empire of the Salian Franks, this place was called Elysium; but the name is still preserved in the ruins of the towers of Elymus, in the city of Avignon, in France.
33. According to Memmius and Tacitus, the great palace of the emperors, that of Trajan and Hadrian, was in the region of the territory of the Gauls and the Germans. It is said that the palace of the Roman Empire was divided into four parts, and that the palace of the Gauls was the only one that was not inhabited. It is also said that the palace of the Gauls was the only one that was not inhabited, and that the palace of the Gauls was the only one that was not inhabited.
34. The same secret was known to the ancients, and the same art was exercised by them in the construction of the towers of Elymus, in the city of Avignon, in France.
35. I have added some curious facts, without service to the subject, to the account of the siege of Byzantium, in order to make it more complete, and to the account of the siege of Byzantium, in order to make it more complete.
36. The name of the tower of St. Romanus is well known; it is said to have been the same as that of the tower of St. Romanus, in the city of Constantinople.
ların of a crescent, to intercept, or at least to repel, these bold auxiliaries. The reader who has present to his mind the geographical picture of Constantinople, will conceive and admire the situation of the spectator. The five Christian ships continued to advance with joyful shouts, and a full press both of sails and oars, against a hostile fleet of three hundred vessels; and the rampart, the camp, the coasts of Europe and Asia, were lined with innumerable spectators, who anxiously awaited the event of this momentous success.

At the first view that event could not appear doubtful; the superiority of the Moslems was beyond all measure or account; and, in a calm, their numbers and valour must inevitably have prevailed. But their haught and imperious ways had been created, not by the genius of the people, but by the will of the sultan; in the height of their prosperity, the Turks have acknowledged, that if God had given them the earth, he had left the sea to the infidels; and a series of defeats, a rapid progress of decay, has established the truth of their modest confession. Except eighteen galleys of some force, the rest of their fleet consisted of open boats, rudely constructed and awkwardly manned, crowded with troops, and destitute of oars; and since courage alone is in a great measure from the consciousness of strength, the bravest of the Janizaries might tremble on a new element. In the Christian squadron, five stout and lofty ships were guided by skillful pilots, and manned with the veterans of Italy and Greece, long practised in the arts and perils of the sea. Their weight was directed to avoid or scatter the weak obstacles that impeded their passage; their artillery swept the waters; their liquid fire was poured on the heads of the adversaries, who, with the design of boarding, presumed to approach them; and the winds and waves are always on the side of the ablest navigators. In this conflict, the Imperial vessel, which had been almost overturned, was rescued by the Genoese; but the Turks, in a distant and a closer attack, were twice repulsed with considerable loss. Mahomet himself stood on horseback on the beach, to encourage their valour by his voice and presence, by the promise of reward, and by fear, more potent than the fear of the enemy. The passion of his soul, and even the gestures of his body, seemed to influence the actions of the constables; and, as if he had been the lord of nature, he spurred his horse with a fearless and impassioned effort into the sea. His loud reproaches, and the clamours of the camp, urged the Ottoman to a third attack, more fatal and bloody than the two former; and I must repeat, though I cannot erode the evidence of Pharamus, who affirms, from their own mouth, that they lost above twelve thousand men in the slaughter of the day. They had succeeded to the shores of Europe and Asia, while the Christian squadron, triumphant and victor, steered along the Bosphorus, and securely anchored within the chain of the harbour. In the confidence of victory, they boasted that the whole Turkish force must have yielded to their arms; but the admiral, or captain Bashaw, found some consolation for a painful wound in his eye, by representing that accident as the cause of his defeat. Baltia Ogi was a renegade of the race of the Bulgarians; his military character was tainted with the unpopular vice of avarice; and, under the despotic sway of the prince or people, misfortunes is a sufficient evidence of guilt. His rank and services were annihilated by the displeasure of Mahomet. In the royal presence, the captain Bashaw was exiled to the ground by four slaves, and received one hundred strokes with a golden rod; his death had been pronounced; and he adored the eloquence of the sultan, who was satisfied with the milder punishment of confiscation and exile. The introduction of this supply revived the hopes of the Greeks, and occasioned the submission of their Western allies. Amidst the deserts of Anatolia and the rocks of Palestine, the millions of the crusades had buried themselves in a voluntary and involuntary grave; but the situation of the Imperial city was strong against her enemies, and accessible to her friends; and a national and moderate armament of the maritime states might have saved the relics of the Roman name, and maintained a Christian fortress in the heart of the Ottoman empire. Yet this was the sole and feeble attempt for the deliverance of Constantinople; the more distant powers were insensible of its danger; and the ambassador of Hungary, or at least of Hungary, resided in the Turkish camp, to remove the fear, and to direct the operations of the sultan.

It was difficult for the Greeks to penetrate the secret of the divan; yet the Greeks are persuaded, that a resistance, so obstinate and surprising, had fatigued the perseverance of Mahomet. He began to meditate a retreat; and the siege would have been speedily raised, if the ambition and jealousy of the second vizir had not opposed the pernicious advice of Calil Bashaw, who still maintained a secret correspondence with the Byzantine court. The reduction of the city appeared to be hopeless, unless a double attack could be made from the harbour as well as from the land: but the harbour was inaccessible; a perpendicular chain was now defended by eight large ships, more than twenty of a smaller size, with several galleys and sloops; and, instead of forcing the barrier, the Turks might apprehend a naval sally, and a second encounter in the open sea. In this perplexity, the genius of Mahomet conceived and executed a plan of bold and marvellous event, of transporting by land his lighter vessels and military stores from the Bosphorus into the higher part of the harbour. The distance is about six miles; the ground is uneven, and was overspread with thickets; and, as
the road must be opened behind the suburbs of Galata, their free passage or total destruction must depend on the option of the Genoese. But these selfish merchants were ambitious of the favour of being the last devoured; and the deficiency of art was supplied by the strength of obdurate myriads. A level way was covered with a broad platform of strong and solid planks; and to render them more slippery and smooth, they were anointed with the fat of sheep and eels. Fourscore light galleys and brigantines of fifty and thirty oars, were disembarked on the Boeotian shore; arranged successively on rollers; and drawn forwards by the power of men and pulleys. Two guides or pilots were stationed at the helm, and the prows, of each vessel; the sails were unfurled to the winds; and the labour was cleared by song and acclamation. In the course of a single night, this Turkish fleet painfully climbed the hill, soared into the plain, and was launched from the declivity into the shallow waters of the harbours, far above the molestation of the deeper vessels of the Greeks. The real importance of this operation was magnified by the consternation and confidence which it inspired; but the notorious, unquestionable, fact was displayed before the eyes, and is recorded by the pens of the two nations. A similar stratagem had been repeatedly practised by the ancients; the Ottoman galleys (I must again repeat) should be considered as large boats; and, if we compare the magnitude and the distance, the obstacles and the means, the boasted miracle has perhaps been equalled by the industry of our own times. As soon as Mahomet had occupied the upper harbour with a fleet and army, he constructed, in the narrowest part, a bridge, or rather mole, of fifty culvits in breadth, and one hundred in length; it was formed of casks and hogheads, joined with rafters, linked with iron, and covered with a solid floor. On this floating battery, he planted one of his largest cannon, while the fourscore galleys, with troops and scaling-ladders, approached the most accessible side, which had formerly been stormed by the Latin conquerors. The insolence of the Christians has been accused for not destroying these unfinished works; but their fire, by a superior fire, was controlled and silenced; nor were they wanting in a nocturnal attempt to burn the vessels as well as the bridge of the sultan. His vigilance prevented their approach; their foremost galliots were sunk or taken; forty youths, the bravest of Italy and Greece, were indiscriminately massacred at his command; nor could the emperor's grief be assuaged by the just though cruel retaliation, of exposing from the walls the heads of two hundred and sixty Mussulman captives. After a siege of forty days, the fate of Constantinople could no longer be averted. The garrison was exhausted by a double attack; the fortifications, which had stood for ages against hostile violence, were dismantled on all sides by the Ottoman cannon; many breaches were opened; and near the gate of St. Romanus, four towers had been levelled with the ground. For the payment of his feeble and mutinous troops, Constantine was compelled to despoil the churches with the promise of a fourfold restitution; and his sarcility offered a new reproach to the enemies of the union. A spirit of discord impaired the remnant of the Christian strength: the Genoese and Venetian auxiliaries asserted the pre-eminence of their respective service; and Justiniani and the great duke, whose ambition was not extinguished by the common danger, accused each other of treachery and cowardice. During the siege of Constantinople, the words of peace and capitulation had been sometimes pronounced; and several embassies had passed between the camp and the city. The Greek emperor was humbled by adversity; and would have yielded to any terms compatible with religion and royalty. The Turkish sultan was desirous of sparing the blood of his soldiers; still more desirous of securing for his own use the Byzantine treasures; and he accomplished a sacred duty in presenting to the Greeks, the choice of circumcison, of tributes, or of death. The vacancy of Mahomet might have been satisfied with an annual sum of one hundred thousand ducats; but his ambition grasped the capital of the East: to the prince he offered a rich equivalent, to the people a free toleration, or a safe departure; but after some fruitless treaty, he declared his resolution of finding either a throne or a grave, under the walls of Constantinople. A sense of honour, and the fear of universal reproach, forbade Palaeologus to resign the city into the hands of the Ottoman: and he determined to abide the last extremities of war. Several days were employed by the sultan in the preparations of the assault; and a respite was granted by his favourite science of astrology, which had fixed on the twenty-ninth of May, as the fortunate and fatal hour. On the evening of the twenty-seventh, he issued his final orders; assailed in his presence the military chiefs; and dispersed his heralds through the camp to proclaim the duty, and the motives, of the perilous enterprise. Fear is the first principle of a despotic government; and his successes were expressed in the Oriental style, that the fugitives and deserters, had they the wings of a bird, should not escape from his inexorable justice.
The greatest part of his huszars and Janissaries were the offspring of Christian parents; but the glories of the Turkish name were perpetuated by successive adoption; and in the gradual change of individuals, the spirit of a legion, or an arm, is kept alive by imitation and discipline. In this holy warfare, the Moslems were exhorted to purify their minds with prayer, their bodies with seven ablutions; and to abstain from food till the close of the sunny day. A crowd of devotions visited the tents, to instil the desire of martyrdom, and the assurance of spending an immortal youth amidst the rivers and gardens of paradise, and in the embraces of the black-eyed virgin. Yet Mahomet principally trusted to the efficacy of temporal and visible rewards. A double pay was promised to the victorious troops; "The city and the buildings," said Mahomet, "are mine; but I resign to your valour the captives and the spoil, the treasures of gold and beauty; be rich and be happy. Many are the provinces of my empire: the intrepid soldier who first ascend the walls of Constantinople, shall be rewarded with the government of the fairest and most wealthy; and my gratitude shall accumulate his honours and fortunes above the measure of his own hopes." Such various and potent motives diffused among the Turks a general ardour, regardless of life and impatient for action: the camp re-echoed with the Moslem shouts of "God is God; there is but one God; and Mahomet is the apostle of God;" and the sea and land, from Galata to the seven towers, were illuminated by the blaze of their nocturnal fires.

Far different was the state of the Christians; who, with loud and lamentable complaints, deplored the guilt, or the punishment, of their sins. The colossal image of the Virgin had been exposed to solemn profanation; but their divine patroness was deaf to their entreaties; they accused the obstinacy of the emperor for refusing a timely surrender; anticipated the horrors of their fate; and sighed for the repose and security of Turkish servitude. The noblest of the Greeks, and the bravest of the allies, were summoned to the palace, to prepare then, on the evening of the twenty-eighth, for the duties and dangers of the general assault. The last speech of Polignano was the funeral oration of the Roman empire: he promised, he conjured, and vainly attempted to infuse the hope which was extinguished in his own mind. In this world all was comfortless and gloomy; and neither the Gospel nor the church have proposed any conspicuous recompense to the h e e s w h o f a l l in the service of their country. But the example of their prince, and the confinement of a siege, had armed these warriors with the courage of despair, and the pathetic scene is described by the feelings of the historian Phranza, who was himself present at this mournful assembly. They wept, they embraced; regardless of their families and fortunes, they devoted their lives; and each commander, departing to his station, maintained all night a vigilant and anxious watch on the rampart. The emperor, and some faithful companions, entered the dome of St. Sophia, which in a few hours was to be converted into a mosque; and devoutly received, with tears and prayers, the sacrament of the holy communion. He repeated some moments in the palace, which resounded with cries and lamentations; solicited the pardon of all whom he might have injured; and mounted on horseback to visit the guards, and explore the motions of the enemy. The distress and fall of the last Constantine are more glorious than the long prosperity of the Byzantine Caesars.

In the confusion of darkness an assistant may sometimes succeed; but in this great and general attack, the military judgment and astrological knowledge of Mahomet advised him to expect the morning, the memorable twenty-ninth of May, in the fourteenth hundred and fifty-third year of the Christian era. The preceding night had been strenuously employed: the troops, the cannon, and the fascines, were advanced to the edge of the ditch, which in many places presented a smooth and level passage to the breach; and his fourcore galleys almost touched, with the proues and their scaling-ladders, the less defensible walls of the harbour. Under pain of death, silence was enjoined; but the physical laws of motion and stam are not obedient to discipline or fear; each individual might suppress his voice and measure his footsteps; but the march and labour of thousands must inevitably produce a strange confusion of discordant clamours, which reached the ears of the warriors of the towers. At daybreak, without the customary signal of the morning gun, the Turks assaulted the city by sea and land; and the similitude of a trained or twisted thread has been applied to the clemence and constancy of their line of attack. The foremost ranks consisted of the refuse of the host, a voluntary crowd who fought without order or command, of the fainthearted, and vagrants, and of all who had joined the camp in the blind hope of plunder and martyrdom. The common impulse drove them towards the wall, the most audacious climbed immediately precipitated; and not a dart, not a bullet, of the Christians, was idle, nor was the accumulated throng. But their strength and ammunition were exhausted in this hazardous defence: the ditch was filled with the bodies of the slain; they supported the footsteps of their companions; and this devoted vanguard; the death was more serviable than the life. Under their respective huszars and enjaks, the troops of Anastasia and Romania were
successively led to the charge: their progress was various and doubtful; but, after a conflict of two hours, the Greeks still maintained, and improved, their advantage; and the voice of the emperor was heard, encouraging his soldiers to achieve, by a last effort, the deliverance of their country. In that fatal moment, the Janissaries arose, fresh, vigorous, and invincible. The sultan himself on horseback, with an iron mass in his hand, was the spectator and judge of their valor: he was surrounded by ten thousand of his domestic troops, whom he reserved for the decisive occasions; and the tide of battle was directed and sustained by his voice and eye. His numerous ministers of justice were posted behind the line, to urge, to restrain, and to punish; and if danger was in the front, shame and inevitable death were in the rear, of the fugitives. The cries of fear and of pain were drowned in the martial music of drums, trumpets, and tambourines; and experience has proved, that the mechanical operation of sounds, by quickening the circulation of the blood and spirits, will act on the human machine more forcibly than the eloquence of reason and honour. From the lines, the galley, and the bridge, the Ottoman artillery thundered on all sides; and the camp and city, the Greeks and the Turks, were involved in a cloud of smoke, which could only be dispelled by the final deliverance or destruction of the Roman empire. The single combat of the heroes of history or fable, arouse our fancy and excite our affections: the skilful evolutions of war may inform the mind, and improve a necessary, though pernicious, science; but in the uniform and odious pictures of a general assault, all is blood, and horror, and confusion, nor shall I strive, at the distance of three centuries and a thousand miles, to delineate a scene of which there could be no spectators, and of which the actors themselves were incapable of forming any just or adequate idea.

The immediate loss of Constantinople may be ascribed to the bullet, or arrow, which pierced the gratulity of John Justinian. The sight of his blood, and the exquisite pain, appalled the courage of the chief, whose arms and counsels were the firmest rampart of the city. As he withdrew from his station in quest of a surgeon, his flight was perceived and stopped by the indefatigable emperor. "Your wound," exclaimed Palaeologue, "is slight; the danger is pressing; your presence is necessary; and this is the last hour you retire?" "I will retire," said the trembling Genoese, "by the same road, and which God has opened to the Turks;" and at these words he hastily passed through one of the breaches of the inner wall. By this posthumous act, he stained the honours of a military life; and the few days which he survived in Galata, or the isle of Chios, were embittered by his own and the public reproach.68 His example was imitated by the greatest part of the Latin auxiliaries, and the defence began to slacken when the attack was pressed with redoubled vigour. The number of the Ottomans was fifty, perhaps an hundred, times superior to that of the Christians; the double walls were reduced by the cannon to an heap of ruins: in a circuit of several miles, some places must be found more easy of access, or more securely guarded; and if the besiegers could penetrate in a single point, the whole city was irrecoverably lost. The first who deserved the sultan's reward was Hassan the Janissary, of gigantic stature and strength. With his cimeter in one hand and his buckle in the other, he ascended the outward fortification of the thirty Janissaries, who were emulous of his valor, eighteen perished in the bold adventure. Hassan and his twelve companions had reached the summit; the giant was precipitated from the rampart; he rose on one knee, and was again oppressed by a shower of darts and stones. But his success had proved that the achievement was possible: the walls and towers were instantly covered with a swarm of Turks; and the Greeks, now driven from the vantage ground, were overwhelmed by increasing multitudes. Amidst these multitudes, the emperor, who accomplished all the duties of a general and a soldier, was long seen, and finally lost. The nobles, who fought round his person, sustained, till their last breath, the honourable names of Palaeologue and Cantacuzene: his mournful explanation was heard, "Cannot there be found a Christian to cut off my head?" and his last fear was that of falling alive into the hands of the infidels.69 The prudent despair of Constantine east away the purple; amidst the tumult he fell by an unknown hand, and his body was buried under a mountain of the slain. After his death, resistance and order were no more: the Greeks fled towards the city; and many were pressed and stifled in the narrow pass of the gate of St. Romanus. The victorious Turks rushed through the breaches of the inner wall; and as they advanced into the streets, they were soon joined by their brethren, who had forced the gate Phocas on the side of the harbour.61 In the first host of the pursuit, about two thousand Christians were put to the sword; but avance soon prevailed on the emperor to acknowledge, that they should immediately have given quarter if the valor of the emperor and his chosen bands had not prepared them for a similar opposition in every part of the capital. It was thus, after a siege of fifty-three days, that Constantinople, which had defied the power of Chosroes, the

68 In the inner portions of the city of Jerusalem, the emperor, according to his private and official attendant, was struck down by a bullet and carried away. He was taken to the house of a painter, and was still alive when the sultan arrived on the scene. He died in a few days, on the 13th of May, having been shot in the left leg and in the arm, and was buried in the church of the Holy Sepulchre. The sultan was not present at the death of the emperor, but the body was brought to him; and he was at once buried in the church of the Holy Sepulchre. The sultan was not present at the death of the emperor, but the body was brought to him; and he was at once buried in the church of the Holy Sepulchre.

69 See Vol. III. of the History of the Turks, the sultan, who was wounded in the left leg and arm, was carried away and buried in the church of the Holy Sepulchre. He was at once buried in the church of the Holy Sepulchre. The sultan was not present at the death of the emperor, but the body was brought to him; and he was at once buried in the church of the Holy Sepulchre. The sultan was not present at the death of the emperor, but the body was brought to him; and he was at once buried in the church of the Holy Sepulchre.

70 See Vol. III. of the History of the Turks, the sultan, who was wounded in the left leg and arm, was carried away and buried in the church of the Holy Sepulchre. He was at once buried in the church of the Holy Sepulchre. The sultan was not present at the death of the emperor, but the body was brought to him; and he was at once buried in the church of the Holy Sepulchre. The sultan was not present at the death of the emperor, but the body was brought to him; and he was at once buried in the church of the Holy Sepulchre.
Changan, and the caliphs, was irrevocably subdued by the arms of Mahomet the Second. Her empire only had been subdued by the Latins; her religion was trampled in the dust by the Moslem conquerors. The tidings of misfortune fly with a rapid wing; yet such was the consternation of Constantinople, that the more distant quarters might prolong some moments, the happy ignorance of their ruin. But in the general consternation, in the feelings of selfish or social anxiety, in the tumult and thunder of the assault, a slumber night and morning must have elapsed, nor can I believe that many Greek ladies were awakened by the Janizaries from a sound and tranquil slumber. On the nuisance of the public calamity, the houses and convenants were instantly deserted; and the trembling inhabitants flocked together in the streets, like a herd of timid animals, as if accumulated weakness could be productive of strength; or in the vain hope that amid the crowd each individual might be safe and invisible. From every part of the capital, they flowed into the church of St. Sophia: in the space of an hour, the sanctuary, the choir, the nave, the upper and lower galleries, were fill’d with the multitudes of fathers and husbands, of women and children, of priests, monks, and religious virgins: the doors were barred on the inside, and they sought protection from the sacred dome, which they had so lately abhorred as a profane and polluted edifice. Their confidence was founded on the promise of an enthusiastic impositor, that one day the Turks would enter Constantinople, and pursue the Romans as far as the column of Constantine in the square before St. Sophia, but that this would be the term of their calamities; that an angel would descend from heaven with a scroll in his hand, and would deliver the empire, with that celestial weapon, to a poor man standing at the foot of the column. “Take this sword,” would he say, “and avenge the people of the Lord.” At these animating words, the Turks would instantly fly, and the victorious Romans would drive them from the West, and from all Anatolia, as far as the frontiers of Persia. It is on this occasion, that Duran, with some fancy and much truth, upbraids the discord and obstinacy of the Greeks. “Had that angel appeared,” exclaimed the historian, “had he offered to extirpate your foes if you would consent to the union of the church, even then, in that fatal moment, you would have rejected your safety, or have deceived your God.”

While they expected the descent of the tardy angel, the doors were broken with axes; and as the Turks encountered no resistance, their bloodless hands were employed in selecting and securing the multitude of their prisoners. Youth, beauty, and the appearance of wealth, attracted their choice; and the right of property was decided among themselves by a prior seizure, by personal strength, and by the authority of command. In the space of an hour, the male captives were bound with cords, the females with their veils, and girdles. The senators were linked with their slaves; the prelates with the porters of the church; and young men of a plebeian class with noble maidens, whose faces had been invisible to the sun and their nearest kindred. In this common captivity, the ranks of society were confounded; the ties of nature were cut asunder; and the incoerarable soldier was careless of the father’s graces, the tears of the mother, and the lamentations of the children. The最先 in their wailings were the men, who were torn from the altar with naked bosoms, outstretched hands, and dishevelled hair; and we should piecely believe that few could be tempted to prefer the rigours of the harems to those of the monastery. Of these unfortunate Greeks, of these domestic animals, whose strings were rudely driven through the streets; and as the conquerors were eager to return for more prey, their trembling pace was quickened with menaces and blows. At the same hour, a similar rapine was exercised in all the churches and monasteries, in all the palaces and habitations of the capital; nor could any place, however sacred or sequestered, protect the persons or the property of the Greeks. Above sixty thousand of this devoted people were transported from the city to the camp and field; exchanged or sold, according to the caprice or interest of their masters, and dispersed in remote servitude through the provinces of the Ottoman empire. Among these we may notice some remarkable characters. The historian Phusrus, first chamberlain and principal secretary, was involved with his family in the common lot. After suffering four months the hardships of slavery, he recovered his freedom; in the ensuing winter he ventured to Adrianople, and renounced his wife from the mil-killing master of the horse; but his two children, in the flower of youth and beauty, had been seized for the use of Mahomet himself. The daughter of Phusrus died in the scabre, perhaps a virgin; his son, in the fifteenth year of his age, preferred death to slavery, and was stabbed by the hand of the royal lover. A deed that inhuman, cannot surely be expiated by the state and liberality, with which he released a Greek matron and her two daughters, on receiving a Lati ode from Philibos, who had chosen his wife in that noble family. The piety or cruelty of Mahomet would have been most sensibly gratified by the capture of a Roman king; but the dexterity of cardinal Iulius eluded the search, and he escaped from Galata in a ves-
The chain and entrance of the outward harbour was still occupied by the Italian ships of merchandise and war. They had signalised their valour in the siege; they embraced the moment of retreat, while the Turkish mariners were dissipated in the pillage of the city. When they hoisted sail, the beach was covered with a supplicant and lamentable crowd; but the means of transportation were scanty: the Venetians and Genoese selected their countrymen; and notwithstanding the fairest promises of the sultan, the inhabitants of Galata evacuated their houses, and embarked with their most precious effects.

In the full and the sack of great cities, an historian is confounded to repeat the tale of uniform calamity: the same effects must be produced by the same passions; and when those passions may be indulged without control, small, alas! is the difference between civilised and savage man. Amidst the vague exclamations of bigotry and hatred, the Turks are not accused of a wanton or immoderate effusion of Christian blood; but according to their maxims (the maxims of antiquity), the lives of the vanquished were forfeited; and the legitimate reward of the conqueror was derived from the service, the sale, or the smuts, of his captives of both sexes. The wealth of Constantinople had been granted by the sultan to his victorious troops; and the rapine of an hour is more productive than the industry of years. But as no regular division was attempted of the spoil, the respective shares were not determined by merit; and the rewards of valour were stolen away by the followers of the camp, who had declined the toil and danger of the battle. The narrative of their depredations could not afford either amusement or instruction: the total amount, in the last poverty of the empire, has been valued at four millions of ducats; and of this sum a small part was the property of the Venetians, the Genoese, the Florentines, and the merchants of Ancona. Of these foreigners, the stock was improved in quick and perpetual circulation; but the riches of the Greeks were displayed in the idle ostentation of palaces and wardrobes; or deeply buried in treasures of ingots and old coin; lest it should be demanded at their hands for the defence of their country. The plunder and plunder of the monasteries and churches excited the most tragic complaints. The dome of St. Sophia itself, the earthly beacon, the second firmament, the vehicle of the cherubim, the throne of the glory of God, was despoiled of the oblations of ages; and the gold and silver, the pearls and jewels, the vases and sculptured ornaments, were most willyingly converted to the service of mankind. After the divine images had been stripped of all that could be valuable to a profane eye, the canvas, or the wood, was torn, or broken, or burnt, or trod under foot, or applied, in the stables or the kitchen, to the vilest uses. The example of sacrilege was imitated, however, from the Latin conquerors of Constantinople; and the treatment which Christ, the Virgin, and the saints, had sustained from the guilty Catholic, might be inflicted by the zealous Musulman on the monuments of idolatry. Perhaps, instead of joining the public clamour, a philosopher will observe, that in the decline of the arts, the workmanship could not be more valuable than the work; and that a fresh supply of visions and miracles would speedily be renewed by the craft of the priest and the credulity of the people. He will more seriously deplore the loss of the Byzantine libraries, which were destroyed or scattered in the general confusion: one hundred and twenty thousand manuscripts are said to have disappeared; ten volumes might be purchased for a single ducat; and the same ignominious price, too high perhaps for a shelf of theology, included the whole works of Aristotle and Homer, the noblest productions of the science and literature of ancient Greece. We may reflect with pleasure, that an inestimable portion of our classic treasures was safely deposited in Italy; and that the mechanics of a German town had invented an art which destroys the havoc of time and barbarism.

From the first hour of the memorable twenty-ninth of May, disorder and rapine prevailed in Constantinople till the eighth hour of the same day, when the sultan himself passed in triumph through the gate of St. Romanus. He was attended by his vizirs, thebashas, and guards, each of whom (says a Byzantine historian) was robust as Hercules, dexterous as Apollo, and equal in battle to any ten of the men of ordinary mortals. The conqueror gazed with satisfaction and wonder on the strange though splendid appearance of the domes and palaces, so dissimilar from the style of Oriental architecture. In the hippodrome, or arena, his eye was attracted by the twisted column of the three serpents; and, as a trial of his strength, he shattered with his bow more than one of those members, which in the eyes of the Turks were the idols or tutelaries of the city. At the principal door of St. Sophia, he alighted from his horse, and entered the dome; and such was his jealousy regard for that monument of his glory, that on observing a zealous Musulman in the act of breaking the marble pavement, he admonished him with his eyes, that, if the spoil and captives were granted to the soldiers, the public and private buildings had been reserved for the prince. By his command the metropolis of the Eastern church was transformed into a moshie: the rich and portable in
The instruments of superstition had been removed; the crosses were thrown down; and the walls, which were covered with images and mosaics, were washed and purified, and restored to a state of naked simplicity. On the same day, or on the ensuing Friday, the minaret, or orator, ascended the lofty turret, and proclaimed the call or public invitation in the name of God and his prophet; the Imam preached; and Mahomet the Second performed the names of prayer and thanksgiving on the great altar, where the Christian mystic had so lately been celebrated before the eyes of the Czar. From St. Sophia she proceeded to the augurs, but desolate, unvisited by a human soul, to the great Constantinople, but which in a few hours had been stripped of the pomp of royalty. A melancholy reflection on the vicissitudes of human greatness fixed itself on his mind; and he repeated an elegant disquis of Persian poetry: "The spider
has wove his web in the Imperial palace; and
the owl hath sung her war-song on the
towers of Afrasiab."

Yet his mind was not satisfied, nor did the victory seem complete, till he was informed of the fate of Constantine; whether he had escaped, or been made prisoner, or had fallen in the battle. Two Janissaries claimed the honour and reward of his death; the body, under an heap of slain, was discovered by the golden eagles embroidered on his shoes; the Greeks acknowledged with tears the head of their late emperor; and, after exposing the bloody trophy, Mahomet bestowed on his rival the honours of a decent funeral. After his decease, Lucas Notaras, great duke, and first minister of the empire, was the most important prisoner. When he offered his person and his treasures at the foot of the throne, "And why," said the ignominious sultan, "did you not employ these treasures in the defence of your prince and country?" They were yours, answered the slave; God had reserved them for your hands. If he reserved them for me, replied the despot, how have you presumed to withhold them so long by a fruitless and fatal resistance?" The great duke alleged the obstinacy of the strangers, and some secret encouragement from the Turkish vizir; and from this perils interview, he was at length dismissed with the assurance of pardon and protection. Mahomet condescended to visit his wife, a venerable princess oppressed with sickness and grief; and his consolation for her misfortunes was in the most tender strain of humanity and filial reverence. A similar Clemency was extended to the principal officers of state, of whom several were intimated at his expense; and during some days he declared himself the friend and father of the vanquished people. But the scene was soon changed; and before his departure, the hippodrome streamed with the blood of his nobler captives. His perilous cruelty is extenuated by the Christians; they adorn with the colours of heroic martyrdom the execution of the great duke and his two sons; and his death is ascribed to the generous refusal of delivering his children to the tyrant's lust. Yet a Byzantine historian has dropped an unguarded word of complacency, deliverance, and Italian succour: such treason may be glorious, but the rebel who bravely ventures, has justly forfeited, his life; nor should we blame a conqueror for destroying the enemies whom he can no longer trust. On the eighteenth of June, the victorious sultan returned to Adrianople; and smiled at the base and hollow embassies of the Christian princes, who viewed their approaching ruin in the fall of the Eastern empire.

Constantineople had been left naked and desolate, without a prince or a people. But she could not be despised of the incomparable situation which marks her for the metropolis of a great empire; and the genius of the place will ever triumph over the accidents of time and fortune. Bourn and Adrianopolis, the ancient seats of the Ottomans, sink into provincial towns; and Mahomet the Second established his own residence, and that of his successors, on the same commanding spot which had been chosen by Constantine, with the fortification of Galata, which might afford a shelter to the Latins, was promptly destroyed; but the damages of the Turkish conquest were soon repaired; and before the month of August, great quantities of lime had been burnt for the restoration of the walls of the capital. As the entire property of the soil and buildings, whether public or private, or profane or sacred, was now transferred to the conqueror, he first separated a space of eight furrows from the point of the triangle for the establishment of his neo-c built empire. It is here, in the bosom of luxury, that the Grand Signor (as he has been euphemistically named by the Italians) appears to reign over Europe and Asia; but his person on the shores of the Bosporus may not always be secure from the insults of an hostile navy. In the new character of a monarch, the cathedral of St. Sophia was endowed with an ample revenue, converted to lovely minarets, and surrounded with graceful and sunless, for the devotion and refinement of the Moslems. The same model was imitated in the jami or royal mosques; and the first of these was built by Mahomet himself, on the ruins of the church of the holy apostles and the tomb of the Greek emperors. On the third day after the conquest, the grave of Anne Asyur or Asur, who had fallen in the first siege of the Arabs, was revealed in a vision; and it is before the sepulchre of the martyr, that the new cults are girded with the sword of empire. Con
the noble Greeks who adhered to their fortune, to seek a refuge in Italy, beyond the reach of the Ottoman thunders. Their first apprehensions were dispelled by the victorious sultan, who contented himself with a tribute of twelve thousand ducats: and while his ambition explored the continent and the islands in search of prey, he indulged the Morea in a respite of seven years. But this respite was a period of grief, disdain, and misery. The hacionment, the rapacity of the Tatars, so often raised and so often subverted, could not long be defended by three hundred Italian archers: the keys of Corinth were wrested by the Turks; they returned from their summer excursions with a train of captives and spoil: and the complaints of the injured Greeks were heard with indifference and disdain. The Albanians, a vagrant tribe of shepherds and robbers, filled the peninsula with rapines and murder; the two despots exposed the dangerous and humiliating aid of a neighbouring bashaw; and when he had quelled the revolts, his lessons insculpted the rule of their future conduct. Neither the ties of blood, nor the oaths which they repeatedly pledged in the communion and before the altar, nor the stronger pressure of necessity, could reconcile or suspend their domestic quarrels. They ravaged each other's patrimony with fire and sword: the allies and succours of the West were consumed in civil hostility; and their power was only exerted in savage and arbitrary executions. The distress and revenge of the weaker rival invoked the son of maturity and revenge, Mahomet declared himself the friend of Demetrius, and marched into the Morea with an irresistible force. When he had taken possession of Sparta, "You are too weak," said the sultan, "to control this turbulent province: I will take your daughter to my bed; and you shall pass the remainder of your life in security and honour." Demetrius sighed and obeyed; surrendered his daughter and his sceptre: followed to Atriarchos his sovereign and son; and received for his own maintenance, and that of his followers, a city in Thrace, and the adjacent isles of Ithnos, Lemnos, and Scombriosis. He was joined the next year by a companion of misfortune, the last of the Cumanian race, who, after the taking of Constantinople by the Latins, had founded a new empire on the coast of the Black Sea. In the progress of his Amanian conquests, Mahomet invested with a fleet and army the capital of David, who presumed to style himself emperor of Trebizond; and the negotiation was comprised in a short and peremptory question, "Will your son, and, the Turkish Sultan of Transcaucasia, agree..."
The importance of Constantinople was felt and magnified in its loss: the pontificate of Nicholas the Fifth, however powerful and prosperous, was dishonored by the fall of the Eastern empire; and the grief and terror of the Latins revived, or seemed to revive, the old enthusiasm of the crusades. In one of the most distant countries of the West, Philip duke of Burgundy entertained, at Liége in Flanders, an assembly of his nobles; and the numerous barons of the feast were skilfully adapted to their fancy and feelings. In the midst of the banquet, a gigantic statue entered the hall, leading a stately elephant, with a castle on his back; a monarch in a mourning robe, the symbol of religion, was seen to issue from the castle; she deplored her oppression, and accused the slowness of her champions: the principal herald of the golden fleece, admiral, bearing on his back a fine pavilion, which, according to the rites of chivalry, he presented to the duke. At this extraordinary summons, Philip, a wise and aged prince, engaged his person and powers in the holy war against the Turks: his example was imitated by the barons and knights of the assembly; they swore to God, the Virgin, the ladies, and the peasant, and their particular vows were not less extravagant than the general sanction of their oath. But the performance was made to depend on some future contingency; and during twelve years, till the last hour of his life, the duke of Burgundy might be5 scrupulously, and perhaps sincerely, on the eve of his departure. Had he but gloomed with the same ardor; had the union of the Christian mercenaries with their bravery, had every country, from Sweden to Naples, supplied a just proportion of cavalry and infantry, of men and money, it is indeed probable that Constantinople would have been delivered, and that the Turks might have been chased beyond the Hellespont or the Euphrates. But the secretary of the emperor, who composed every epistle, and attended every meeting, Marc Sylvestris, a statesman and orator, describes him as the first to the office of the repentant and spirit of Christendom. "It is a holy," says he, "without an head; a republic without laws or magistrates. The pope and the emperor may sit as lofty titles, as splendid images; "4 they are unable to command, and must are "willing to obey; every state has a sovereign "prince, and every prince has a separate interest. "That eloquence could unite so many discordant "ant and hostile powers under the same standard? Could they be assembled in arms, who "would dare to assume the office of general? "What order could be maintained? —
Chap. Lxxix.


In the first ages of the decline and fall of the Roman empire, our eye is invariably fixed on the royal city, which had given laws to the fairest portion of the globe. We contemplate her fortunes, at first with admiration, at length with pity, always with attention; and when that attention is diverted from the capital to the provinces, they are considered as so many branches which have been successively severed from the Imperial trunk. The foundation of a second Rome on the shores of the Bosphorus has compelled the historian to follow the successors of Constantine; and our curiosity has been tempted to visit the most remote countries of Europe and Asia, to explore the causes and the authors of the long decay of the Byzantine monarchy. By the conquest of Justinian, we have been recalled to the banks of the Tyber, to the deliverance of the ancient metropolis; but that deliverance was a change, or perhaps an aggravation, of servitude. Rome had been already stripped of her triumphs, her gods, and her glory; nor was the Gothic dominion more inglorious and oppressive than the tyranny of the Greeks. In the eighth century of the Christian era, a religious quarrel, the worship of images, provoked the Romans to assert their independence: their bishop became the temporal, as well as the spiritual, father of a free people; and of the Western empire, which was restored by Charlemagne, the title and image still decorate the singular constitution of modern Germany. The name of Rome must yet command our involuntary respect: the ultimate (whatever may be its influence) was no longer the same; the purity of blood had been contaminated through a thousand channels; but the venerable aspect of her ruins, and the memory of past greatness, rekindled a spark of the national character. The darkness of the middle ages exhibits some scenes not unworthy of our notice. Nor shall I dismiss the present work till I have reviewed the state and revolutions of the Roman city, which enjoyed under the absolute dominion of the popes, about the same time that Constantine was enslaved by the Turkish arms.

In the beginning of the twelfth century, the area of the first crusade, Rome was revered by the Latins, as the metropolis of the world, as the throne of the pope and the emperor, who, from the eternal city, derived their titles, their honours, and the right of exercise of the See. The end of the twelfth century, when Rome was left to herself, by the schism of the papacy, was an era of intestine division, and of bitter struggles which convulsed the state of the Church, and of the popes themselves. When the end of the twelfth century, the popes of Avignon, and of the popes of Avignon, the Church herself, and of the Church herself, were exposed to the sway of foreign potentates, and of foreign princes, they were exposed to the sway of foreign potentates, and of foreign princes, and the power of the papacy was diminished. The Church was impoverished, and the popes were reduced to the condition of subject princes. The Church was impoverished, and the popes were reduced to the condition of subject princes.


Notes.

38. The French armies, under Charles the Fifth, had nearly occupied Naples; and the French army of the King of France, and the French army of the King of France, in the land of the Turks, was reduced to the condition of subject princes.

39. The popes of Avignon, and the popes of Avignon, the Church herself, and of the popes of Avignon, were exposed to the sway of foreign potentates, and of foreign princes, they were exposed to the sway of foreign potentates, and of foreign princes, and the power of the papacy was diminished. The Church was impoverished, and the popes were reduced to the condition of subject princes. The Church was impoverished, and the popes were reduced to the condition of subject princes.

40. The ruler of the state was the pope, and the ruler of the state was the pope, the emperor of Germany. The ruler of the state was the pope, and the emperor of Germany. The ruler of the state was the pope, and the emperor of Germany. The ruler of the state was the pope, and the emperor of Germany. The ruler of the state was the pope, and the emperor of Germany. The ruler of the state was the pope, and the emperor of Germany. The ruler of the state was the pope, and the emperor of Germany.
temporal dominion. After so long an interruption, it may not be useless to repeat that the successors of Charlemagne and the Ottons were chosen beyond the Rhine in a national diet; but that these princes were content with the humble names of kings of Germany and Italy, till they had passed the Alps and the Apennines, to seek their Imperial crown on the banks of the Tyber. At some distance from the city, their approach was saluted by a long procession of the clergy and people with palms and crosses; and the terrific emblems of wolves and lions, of dragons and eagles, that floated in the military banners, represented the departed legions and cohorts of the republic. The royal oath to maintain the liberties of Rome was three restored, at the bridge, the gate, and on the steers of the Vatican; and the distribution of a customary donation heavily mitigated the magnificence of the first Caesars. In the church of St. Peter, the coronation was performed by his successor; the voice of God was confounded with that of the people; and the public consent was declared in the acclamations of, "Long life and victory to our lord the pope! long life and victory to our lord the emperor! long life and victory to the Roman and Teutonic arms!" The names of Caesar and Augustus, the laws of Constantine and Justinian, the example of Charlemagne and Otto, established the supreme dominion of the emperor; their title and image was engraven on the papal crown; and their jurisdiction was marked by the sword of justice, which they delivered to the prefect of the city. But every Roman prejudice was awakened by the name, the language, and the manners, of a barbarian lord. The Caesars of Saxon, or Frisiania, were the chiefs of a feudal aristocracy; nor could they exercise the discipline of civil and military power, which alone secures the obedience of a distant people, impatient of servitude, though perhaps incapable of freedom. Once, and once only, in his life, each emperor, with an army of Teutonic vassals, descended from the Alps. I have described the peaceful cere of his entry and coronation; but that order was commonly disturbed by the clamour and insolence of the Romans, who encountered their sovereign as a foreign invader: his departure was always speedy, and often shameful; and, in the absence of a long reign, his authority was limited, and his name was forgotten. The progress of independence in Germany and Italy undermined the foundations of the Imperial sovereignty, and the triumph of the popes was the deliverance of Rome.

Of her two sovereigns, the emperor had precociously reign'd by the right of conquest; but the authority of the pope was founded on the soft, though more solid, basis of opinion and habit. The removal of a foreign influence restored and

unleashed the shepherd to his flock. Instead of the arbitrary or venal nomination of a German court, the vicar of Christ was freely chosen by the college of cardinals, most of whom were either natives or inhabitants of the city. The applause of the magistrates and people confirmed his election; and the ecclesiastical power that was obeyed in Sweden and Britain, had been ultimately derived from the suffrage of the Romans. The same suffrage gave a prince, as well as a pontiff, to the capital. It was universally believed, that Constantine had invented the popes with the temporal dominion of Rome; and the boldest civilians, the most profane sceptics, were satisfied with disputing the right of the emperors; and the validity of his gift. The truth of the fact, the authenticity of his donation, was deeply rooted in the ignorance and tradition of four centuries; and the fabulous origin was lost in the real and pernicious effects. The name of Domitian or the Lord was inscribed on the coin of the bishops; their title was acknowledged by declamations and oaths of allegiance, and with the free, or reluctant, consent of the German Caesars, they had long exercised a supreme or subordinate jurisdiction over the city and patrimony of St. Peter. The reign of the popes, which gratified the prejudices, was not incompatible with the liberties, of Rome; and a more critical enquiry would have revealed a still nobler source of their power, the gratitude of a nation, whom they had rescued from the harry and oppression of the Greek tyrant. In an age of superstition, it should seem that the union of the royal and servile character would mutually fortify each other; and that the keys of Paradise would be the surest pledge of earthly obedience. The sanctity of the office might indeed be degraded by the personal vices of the man. But the scandals of the tenth century were obliterated by the virtues and more dangerous virtues of Gregory the Seventh and his successors; and in the ambitious contests which they maintained for the rights of the church, their sufferings or their success must equally tend to increase the popular reputation. They sometimes wandered in poverty and exile, the victims of persecution; and the apostolic seal with which they offered themselves to martyrs, must engage the favour and sympathy of every Catholic breast. And sometimes, thundering from the Vatican, they created, judged, and disposed of the kings of the world; nor could the proudest Roman be disgraced by submitting to a priest, whose feet were kissed, and whose stirrup was held, by the successors of Charlemagne. Even the temporal interest of the city should have protected in peace and honours the residence of the popes; from whence a vain and lazy people derived the greatest part...
of their subsistence and riches. The fixed revenue of the popes was probably impaired: many of the old patrimonial estates, both in Italy and the provinces, had been invaded by sacrilegious hands; nor could the less be compensated by the claim, rather than the possession, of the more ample gifts of Popes' and his descendants. But the Vatican and Capitol were nourished by the incessant and increasing swarms of pilgrims and suppliants: the pale of Christianity was enlarged, and the pope and cardinals were overwhelmed by the judgment of ecclesiastical and secular causes. A new jurisprudence had established in the Latin church the right and practice of appeals; and from the North and West, the bishops and abbots were invited or summoned to solicit, to complain, to accuse, or to justify, before the threshold of the apostles. A rare prodigy is once recorded, that two horses, belonging to the archbishops of Mentz and Cologne, espoused the Alps, yet laden with gold and silver; but it was soon understood, that the success, both of the pilgrims and clients, depended much less on the justice of their cause than on the value of their offering. The wealth and piety of these strangers were ostentatiously displayed; and their expenses, sacred or profane, circulated in various channels for the emolument of the Romans.

Such powerful motives should have firmly attached the voluntary and pious obedience of the Roman people to their spiritual and temporal father. But the operation of prejudice and interest is often disturbed by the allure of ungovernable passion. The Indian who tells the tree, that he may gather the fruit, and the Arab who plunders the caravans of commerce, are actuated by the same impulse of savage nature, which overlooks the future in the present, and relinquishes for momentary rapine the long and secure possession of the most important blessings. And it was thus, that the shrine of St. Peter was profaned by the thoughtless Romans, who pillaged the offerings, and wounded the pilgrims, without computing the number and value of similar visits, which they prevented by their inhuman sacrilege. Even the influence of superstition is fluctuating and precarious: and the slave, whose reason is subdued, will often be delivered by his avarice or pride. A credulous devotion for the falsity and erasures of the priesthood, most powerfully acts on the mind of a barbarian; yet such a mind is the least capable of professing imagination to sense, of sacrificing to a distant motive, to an invisible, perhaps an ideal, object, the appetites and interests of the present world. In the vigour of health and youth, his practice will perpetually contradict his belief; till the pressure of age, or sickness, or calamity, awakens his horrors, and compels him to satisfy the double debt of piety and remorse. I have already observed, that the modern times of religious indifference are the most favourable to the peace and security of the clergy. Under the reign of superstition, they had much to hope from the ignorance, and much to fear from the violence, of mankind. The wealth, whose constant increase must have rendered them the sole proprietors of the earth, was alternately bestowed by the repentant father and plundered by the rapacious son: their persons were adored or violated; and the same blow, by the hands of the same successors, was placed on the altar, or trampled in the dust. In the feudal system of Europe, arms were the title of distinction and the measure of allegiance; and amidst their tumults, the still voice of law and reason was seldom heard or obeyed. The turbulent Romans disdained the yoke, and insulted the impotence, of their bishop: nor would his education or character allow him to exercise, with decency or effect, the power of the sword. The motives of his election and the faults of his life were exposed to their familiar observation; and proximity must diminish the reverence, which his name and his decrees impressed on a barbarous world. This difference has not escaped the notice of our philosophic historian: "Though the muse and authority of the court of Rome were so terrible in the remote countries of Europe, which were sunk in profound ignorance, and were entirely unacquainted with its character and conduct, the pope was so little revered at home, that his inveterate enemies surrounded the gates of Rome itself, and even controlled his government in that city; and the embassiers, who, from a distant extremity of Europe, carried to him the humble, or rather object, submissions of the greatest potentate of the age, found the utmost difficulty to make their way to him, and to throw themselves at his feet." Since the primitive times, the wealth of the popes was exposed to envy, their power to opposition, and their persons to violence. But the long hostility, by name and the crown, the numbers, and the passions, of their enemies. The deadly factions of the Guipus, and Charles the dejected, so fatal to Italy, could not be compassed with truth or constancy by the Romans, the subjects and adversaries both of the bishop and emperor; but their support was solicited by both parties; and they alternately
displayed in their banners the keys of St. Peter and the German eagle. Gregory the Seventh, who may be adored or detested as the founder of the papal monarchy, was driven from Rome, and died in exile at Salerno. Six and thirty of his successors till their retreat to Avignon, maintained an unequal contest with the Romans; their age and dignity were often violated; and the churches, in the solemn rites of religion, were polluted with sedition and murder. A repetition of such capricious brutality, without connexion or design, would be tedious and disgusting; and I shall content myself with some events of the twelfth century, which represent the state of the popes and the city.

On Holy Thursday, while Paschal officiated before the altar, he was interrupted by the clamours of the multitude, who impatiently demanded the confirmation of a favourite magistrate. His silence exasperated their fury; his pious refusal to mingle the affairs of earth and heaven was encountered with menace and oath, that he should be the cause and the witness of the public ruin. During the festival of Easter, while the bishop and the clergy, barefoot and in procession, visited the tombs of the martyrs, they were twice assaulted, at the bridge of St. Angelo, and before the Capitol, with volleys of stones and darts. The houses of his adherents were levelled with the ground; Paschal escaped with difficulty and danger; he levied an army in the patrimony of St. Peter; and his last days were embittered by suffering and inflicting the calamities of civil war. The scenes that followed the election of his successor, Gelasian the Second, were still more scandalous to the church and city. Cencio Frangipani, a potent and furious baron, burst into the assembly fuming and in arms; the cardinals were stripped, beaten, and trampled under foot; and he seized, without pity or respect, the vicar of Christ by the throat. Gelasius was dragged by his hair along the ground, buffeted with blows, wounded with spurs, and bound with an iron chain in the house of his brutal tyrant. An insurrection of the people delivered their bishop: the rival families opposed the violence of the Frangipani; and Cencio, who sued for pardon, repeated the failure, rather than of the guilt of his enterprise. Not many days had elapsed, when the pope was again assaulted at the altar. While his friends and enemies were engaged in a bloody contest, he escaped in his ascetic garments. In this unworthy flight, which excited the compassion of the Roman matrons, his attendants were scattered or smothered; and, in the fields behind the church of St. Peter, his successor was found alone and half dead with fear and fatigue. Shaking the dust from his feet, the apostolic withdrawal from a city in which his dignity was insulted and his person was endangered; and the vanity of sacrificial ambition is revealed in the lamentable confession, that one emperor was more tolerable than twenty. These examples might suffice; but I can not forget the sufferings of two pontiffs of the same age, the second and third of the name of Lascaris. The former, as he ascended in battle array to assault the Capitol, was struck on the temple by a stone, and expired in a few days. The latter was severely wounded in the persons of his servants. In a civil commotion, several of his priests had been made prisoners; and the inhuman Romans, reserving one as a guide for his brethren, put out their eyes, crowned them with ludicrous mitres, mounted them on asses with their faces to the tail, and extorted an oath; that, in this wretched condition, they should offer themselves as a lesson to the head of the church. Hope or fear, solitude or remorse, the characters of the men, and the circumstances of the times, might sometimes obtain an interval of peace and obedience; and the pope was restored with joyful acclamations to the Lateran or Vatican, from whence he had been driven with threats and violence. But the root of mischief was deep and permanent; and a momentary calm was succeeded and followed by such tempests as had almost sunk the bark of St. Peter. Rome continually presented the aspect of war and discord: the churches and palaces were fortified and assailed by the factions and families; and, after giving place to Europe, Calistus the Second alone had resolution and power to proceed. He took the use of private arms in the A.D. 1355. He erected the metropolis. Among the nations who revered the apostolic throne, the tumults of Rome provoked a general indignation; and, in a letter to his disciple Eugenius the Third, St. Bernard, with the sharpness of his wit and real, has stigmatized the vices of the rebellious people. Who is ignorant says the monk of Clairvaux, of the vanity and arrogance of the Romans, a nation nursed in sedition, cruel, untractable, and aspiring to rule, unless they are too fickle to resist. When they promise to serve, they aspire to reign; if they swear allegiance, they watch the opportunity of revolt; yet they vent their discontent in loud clamours if your doors, or your counsels are shut against them. Destructive in mischief, they have never learnt the science of doing good. Obnoxious to earth and heaven, impious to God, seditions among themselves, jealous of their neighbours, inhuman to strangers, they have no one, by no one are they beloved; and while they were to inspire fear, they live in base and continual
The Jews had rejected the Christ when he appeared among them in a plebeian character; and the Romans might plant their illusions of his view when he assumed the pomp and pride of a temporal sovereign. In the busy age of the crusades, some sparks of curiosity and reason were rekindled in the Western world; the heresy of Bulgaria, the Paulician sect, was successfully transplanted into the soil of Italy and France; the Gnostic visions were mingled with the simplicity of the Gospel; and the enemies of the clergy reconciled their passions with their conscience, the desire of freedom with the profession of piety. The trumpets of Roman liberty were first sounded by Arnold of Brescia, whose promotion in the church was confined to the lowest rank, and who was the monastic habit rather as a garb of poverty than as an uniform of obedience. His adversaries could not deny the wit and eloquence which they severely felt; they confess with reluctance the specious purity of his morals; and his errors were recommended to the public by a mixture of important and beneficial truths. In his theological studies, he had been the disciple of the famous and unfortunate Abaelard, who was likewise involved in the suspicion of heresy; but the lover of Eloisa was of a soft and flexible nature; and his ecclesiastical judges were edified and disarmed by the humility of his repentance. From this master, Arnold most probably imbibed some metaphysical definitions of the Trinity, repugnant to the taste of the times; his ideas of baptism and the eucharist are loosely conceived; but a political heresy was the source of his fame and misfortunes. He presumed to quote the declaration of Christ, that his kingdom is not of this world: he boldly maintained, that the word and the scripture were entrusted to the civil magistrate; that temporal honours and possessions were lawfully vested in secular persons; that the abbots, the bishops, and the pope himself, must renounce either their state or their salvation; and that after the loss of their revenues, the voluntary tithe and oblations of the faithful would suffice, not indeed for luxury and arrogance, but for a frugal life in the exercise of spiritual labours. During a short time, the preachers was revered as a patriot; and the discontent, or revolt, of Brescia against her bishop, was the first fruits of his dangerous lessons. But the favour of the people is less permanent than the resentment of the priest; and after the heresy of Arnold had been condemned by Innocent the Second, in the general council of the Lateran, the magistrates themselves were urged by prejudice and fear to execute the sentence of the church. Italy could no longer afford a refugee; and the disciple of Abaelard escaped beyond the Alps, till he found a safe and hospitable shelter in Zurich, now the first of the Swiss cantons. From a Roman station, a royal villa, a chapter of noble virgins, Zurich had gradually increased to a free and flourishing city; where the appeals of the Milites were sometimes tried by the Imperial commissioners. In an age less ripe for reformation, the preacher of Zwingli was heard with applause: a brave and simple people inhabited, and long retained, the cultur of his opinions; and his art, in truth, seduced the bishop of Constance, and even the pope's legate, who forgot, for his sake, the interest of their master and their order. Their lazy seat was quickened by the fierce exhortations of St. Bernard; and the enemy of the church was driven by persecution to the desperate measure of erecting his standard in Rome itself, in the face of the successor of St. Peter. Yet the courage of Arnold was not devoid of discretion; he was not protected, and had perhaps been invited, by the nobles and people; and in the service of freedom, his eloquence thundered over the seven hills. Blending in the same discourse the texts of Livy and St. Paul, uniting the motives of gospel, and of classic, enthusiasm, he admonished the Romans, how strangely their patience and the vices of the clergy had degenerated from the primitive times of the church and the city. He exhorted them to assert the inalienable rights of men and Christians; to restore the laws and magistrates of the republic; to reject the name of the emperor, but to confine their shepherd to the spiritual government of his flock. Nor could his spiritual government escape the censure and
control of the reformer; and the inferior clergy were taught by his lessons to resist the cardinals, who had usurped a despotic command over the twenty-eight regions or parishes of Rome. The revolution was not accomplished without rapine and violence, the effusion of blood and the desolation of houses: the victorious faction was enriched with the spoils of the clergy and the adverse nobles. Arnold of Brescia enjoyed, or deplored, the effects of his mission: his reign continued above ten years, while two popes, Innocent the Second and Anastasius the Fourth, either trembled in the Vatican, or wandered as exiles in the adjacent cities. They were succeeded by a more vigorous and fortunate pontiff, Adrian the Fourth, the only Englishman who has ascended the throne of St. Peter; and whose merit emerged from the mean condition of a monk, and almost a beggar, in the monastery of St. Alban's. On the first provocation, of a cardinal killed or wounded in the streets, he cast an interdict on the guilty people; and, from Christmas to Easter, Rome was deprived of the real or imaginary comforts of religious worship. The Romans had despoiled their temporal prince; they submitted with grief and terror to the measures of their spiritual father: their guilt was expiated by penance, and the baseness of the soldiery preacher was the price of their absolution. But the revenge of Adrian was yet unsatisfied, and the approaching encomium of Frederic Barbarossa was fatal to the bold reformer, who had offended, though not in an equal degree, the heads of the church and state. In their interview at Vitarbo, the pope represented to the emperor the furious and ungodly spirit of the Romans: the insult, the injuries, the tears, in which his person and his clergy were continually exposed; and the pernicious tendency of the heresy of Arnold, which must subvert the principles of civil, as well as ecclesiastical, subordination. Frederic was convinced by these arguments, or terrified by the desire of the imperial crown, in the business of salvation, the innocence or life of an individual is of small account; and their common enemy was sacrificed to a moment of political concord. After his return from Rome, Arnold had been protected by the viscounts of Campania, from whom he was extorted by the power of Caesar: the prefect of the city pronounced his sentence; the martyr of freedom was burnt alive in the presence of a careless and ungrateful people; and his ashes were cast into the Tyber, lest the heretics should collect and worship the relics of their master. The clergy triumphed in his death: with his ashes, his sect was dispersed; his memory still lived in the minds of the Romans. From his school they had probably derived a new article of faith, that the metropolis of the Catholic church is exempt from the penalties of excommunication and interdict. Their bishops might argue, that the supreme jurisdiction, which they exercised over kings and nations, more especially embraced the city and diocese of the prince of the apostles. But they preached in the winds, and the same principle that weakened the effect, must temper the abuse, of the thunders of the Vatican.

The love of ancient freedom has encouraged a belief, that as early as the tenth century, in their first struggles against the Saxons, the commonwealth was vindicated and restored by the senate and people of Rome; that two consuls were annually elected among the nobles; and that ten or twelve plebeian magistrates revived the same and office of the tribunes of the commons. But this venerable structure disappears before the light of criticism. In the darkness of the middle ages, the appellations of senators, of consuls, of the sons of consuls, may sometimes be discovered. They were bestowed by the emperors, or assumed by the most powerful citizens, to denote their rank, their honours, and perhaps the claim of a pure and patrician descent; but they float on the surface, without a root or substance, the titles of men, not the orders of government; and it is only from the year of Christ one thousand one hundred and forty-four that the establishment of the senate is dated, as a glorious era, in the history of the city. A new constitution was hastily framed by private ambition or popular enthusiasm; and could Rome, in the twelfth century, produce an antiquary to explain, or a legislator to restore, the harmony and proportions of the ancient model. The assembly of a free, an armed, people, will ever speak in loud and weighty acclamations. But the regular distribution of the thirty-five tribes, the nice balance of the wealth and numbers of the centuries, the debates of the adverse orators, and the show operations of votes and ballots, could not easily be adapted by a blind multitude, ignorant of the arts, and 'ensemble of the benefits, of legal government. It was proposed by Arnold to revive and discriminate the equestrian order; but what could be the motive or measure of such distinction? The premonitory qualification...
of the knights must have been reduced to the poverty of the times; those times no longer required their civil functions of judges and farmers of the revenue; and their primitive duty, their military service on horseback, was more nobly supplied by feudal tenures and the spirit of chivalry. The juridic peace of the republic was useless and unknown; the nations and families of Italy who lived under the Roman and barbaric laws were incessantly mingled in a common mass; and some faint tradition, some imperfect fragments, preserved the memory of the Code and Pandects of Justinian. With their liberty the Romans might doubtless have restored the appellation and office of comites; but they did not obtain a title so precociously adopted in the Italian cities, that it has finally settled on the humble station of the agents of commerce in a foreign land. But the rights of the tribunes, the formidable word that arrested the public counsel, suppose or must produce a legitimate democracy. The old politicians were the subjects, the modern barons the tyrants, of the state; nor would the enemies of peace and order, who insulted the year of Christ, have long respected the unripped sanctity of a plebeian magistrate. 39

The Capitol. In the revolution of the twelfth century, which gave a new existence and name to Rome, we may observe the real and important events that marked or confirmed her political independence. I. The Capitoline hill, one of her seven eminences, is about four hundred yards in length, and two hundred in breadth. A flight of an hundred steps led to the summit of the Tarpeian rock; and far steeper was the ascent before the declivities had been smoothed and the precipices filled by the ruins of fallen edifices. From the earliest ages, the Capitol had been used as a temple in peace, a fortress in war; after the loss of the city, it maintained a siege against the victorious Gauls, and the sanctuary of empire was occupied, besmeared, and burnt, in the civil wars of Vitalian and Vespasian. 40 The temple of Jupiter and his kindred divinities had crumbled into dust; their place was supplied by monasteries and houses; and the solid walls, the long and shelving porches, were decayed or ruined by the lapse of time. It was the first act of the Romans, an act of freedom, to restore the strength, though not the beauty, of the Capitol; to fortify the rest of their arms and consuls; and as often as they ascended the hill, the colder minds must have glowed with the remembrance of their ancestors. II. The first Caesars had

39 The repulsive task of Arnold of Hohenlohe is thus stanza by Count: 

Oft surcharged with meadows ever green, 
With the thick欢迎 of balms, and bays, and roses, thatexhibit 
Their beauty, and whose scent is fragrant; 
But all the storms of modern times, and art, shall 
But all the storms of modern times, and art, shall 

40 The Laura, Book II, ctt. 53.
cardinal, was named by the pope to the civil government of Rome; but his jurisdiction has been reduced to a lesser capacity; and in the days of freedom, the right or exercise was derived from the senate and people.

IV. After the revival of the senate, the conscript fathers (if I may use the expression) were invested with the legislative and executive power; but their views seldom reached beyond the present day; and that day was most frequently disturbed by violence and tumult. In its utmost plenitude, the order or assembly consisted of fifty-six senators, the most eminent of whom were distinguished by the title of counsellors; they were nominated, perhaps annually, by the people; and a previous choice of their electors, ten persons in each region, or parish, might afford a basis for a free and permanent constitution. The power, which in this tempest submitted rather to bend than to break, confirmed by treaty the establishment and privileges of the senate, and expected from time, peace, and religion, the restoration of their government. The motives of public and private interest might sometimes draw from the Romans an occasional and temporary sacrifice of their claims; and they renewed their oath of allegiance to the successor of St. Peter and Constantine, the lawful head of the church and republic. 19

The union and vigour of a public council was dissolved in a lawless city; and the Romans soon adopted a more strong and simple mode of administration. They confirmed the name and authority of the senate in a single magistrate, or two colleagues; and as they were changed at the end of a year, or of six months, the greatness of the trust was compensated by the shortness of the term. But in this transient reign, the senates of Rome indulged their avarice and ambition; their justice was perverted by the interest of their family and faction; and as they punished only their enemies, they were obeyed only by their adherents. Anarchy, no longer tempered by the pastoral care of their bishop, admonished the Romans that they were incapable of governing themselves; and they sought abroad those blessings which they were hopeless of finding at home. In the same age, and from the same motives, most of the Italian republics were brought to accept a magistracy, which, however strange it may seem, was adapted to their situation, and productive of the most salutary effects. 20 They chose, in some foreign but friendly city, an impartial magistrate of noble birth and unblemished character, a soldier and a statesman, recommended by the voice of fame and his country, to whom they delegated for a time the supreme administration of peace and war. The compact between the governor and the governed was sealed with oaths and subscriptions; and the duration of his power, the measure of his stipend, the nature of his mutuality, were defined with scrupulous precision. They swore to obey him as their lawful superior; he pledged his faith to unite the inoffensiveness of a stranger with the zeal of a patriot. At his choice, four or six knights and civilians, his assessors in arms and justice, attended the Pontiff. 21 Who maintained at his own expense a decent revenue of servants and horses; his wife, his son, his brother, who might bias the affections of the judge, were left behind; during the exercise of his office he was not permitted to purchase land, to contract an alliance, or even to accept an invitation in the house of a citizen; nor could he humbly depart till he had satisfied the complaints that might be urged against his government.

It was thus, about the middle of the thirteenth century, that the Romans called from Bologna the senator Brancalone, whose name and merit have been rescued from oblivion by the pen of an English historian. A just anxiety for his reputation, a clear foreknowledge of the difficulties of the task, had engaged him to refine the honour of his choice. The statutes of Rome were suspended, and his office prolonged in the term of three years. By the guilty and licentious he was accursed as cruel; by the clergy he was suspected as partial; but the friends of peace and order applauded the firm and upright magistrate by whom those blessings were restored. No criminals were so powerful as to brave, so obstinate as to shackle, the justice of the senator. He deliberated and his sentence; two nobles of the Amalfi family were executed on a gibbet; and he insensibly demolished, in the city and neighbourhood, two hundred and forty towers, the stronger shelters of rapine and mischief. The bishop, as a simple priest, was compelled to reside in his diocese and the standard of Brancalone was displayed in the field with terror and effect. His services were repaid by the ingratitude of a people unworthy of the happiness which they enjoyed. By the public robbers, whom he had provoked for their sake, the Romans were excited to dispose and imprison their benefactor; nor would his life have been spared, if Bologna had not possessed a pledge for his safety. Before his departure, the prudent senator had required the exchange of thirty hostages of the nobler families of Rome; on the news of his danger, and at the prayer of his wife, they were more strictly guarded; and Bologna, in the case of honour, sustained the thunders of a royal interdict. This generous resistance allowed the Romans...
mum to compare the present with the past; and Braccialini was conducted from the prison to the Capitol amidst the acclamations of a repentant people. The remainder of his government was firm and fortunate, and as soon as entry was appeared by death, his head, enclosed in a precious vase, was deposited on a lofty column of marble. 43

The impotence of reason and virtue recommended in Italy a more effeminate choice: instead of a private citizen, to whom they yielded a voluntary and precarious obedience, the Romans elected for their senator some prince of independency power, who could defend them from their enemies and themselves. Charles of Anjou and Provence, the first ambition and warlike monarchs of the age, accepted at the same time the kingdom of Naples from the pope, and the office of senator from the Roman people. 44 As he passed through the city, in his road to victory, he received their oath of allegiance, lodged in the Lateran palace, and solemnized in a short visit the historic features of his majestic character. Yet even Charles was exposed to the inconstancy of the people, who saluted with the same acclamations the passage of his rival, the unfortunate Conrad; and a powerful avenger, who reigned in the Capitol, alarmed the fears and jealousy of the populace. The absolute term of his life was superseded by a renewal every third year; and the sumptuous Nicholas the Third obliged the Sicilian king to abdicate the government of Rome. In his bull, a perpetual law, the imperious pontiff asserts the truth, validity, and use, of the donation of Constantine, not less essential to the peace of the city than to the independence of the church; establishes the annual election of the senator; and formally disqualifies all emperors, kings, princes, and persons of an eminent and conspicuous rank. 45 This prohibitory clause was repealed in his own behalf by Martin the Fourth, who humbly solicited the suffrage of the Romans. In the presence, and by the authority, of the people, two electors conferred, not on the pope, but on the noble and faithful Martin, the dignity of senator, and the supreme administration of the republic, to hold during his natural life, and to exercise at pleasure by himself or his deputies. About fifty years afterwards, the same title was granted to the emperor Lewis of Bavaria; and the liberty of Rome was acknowledged by her two sovereigns, who accepted a municipal office in the government of their own metropolis.

In the first moments of rebellion, when Arnold of Brescia had inflamed their minds against the church, the Romans artfully laboured to conciliate the favour of the empire, and to recommend their merit and services in the cause of Caesar. The style of their ambassadors to Conrad the Third and Frederic the 5th is a mixture of flattery and pride, the tradition and the ignorance of their own history. 46

After some complaint of his silence and neglect, they exhorted the emperor to pass the Alps, and assume from their hands the imperial crown. "We beseech your majesty, and "to dis pense the immensity of your sons and vessels, not to listen to the accusations of our "common enemies; who calumniate the senate "as hostile to your throne, who saw the seeds "of discord, that they may reap the harvest of "destruction. The pope and the Romans are "united in an impious league to oppose our "liberty and your coronation. With the blessing "of God, our zeal and courage has hitherto de "fested their attempts. Of your powerful and "factions adherents, more especially the Fran "gipani, we have taken by assault the houses "and terrae: some of these are occupied by our "troopers, and some are levelled with the ground. "The Milton bridge, which they had broken, "is restored and fortified for your safe passage; "and you may enter and leave Rome, and "being envoys from the castle of St. Angelo. "All that we have done, and all that we design, "is for your honour and service, in the loyal "hope, that you will speedily appear in person, "to vindicate those rights which have been in "vaded by the clergy, to revive the dignity of "the empire, and to suppress the fame and glory "of your predecessors. May you fix your "residence in Rome, the capital of the world; "give laws to Italy, and the Teutonic kingdoms; "and imitate the example of Constantine and "Justinian, 47 who, by the vigour of the ac "sate and people, obtained the sceptre of the "earth." 48 But these splendid and flattering wishes were not cherished by Conrad the Fran "gipan, whose eyes were fixed on the Holy "Land, and who died without visiting Rome "soon after his return from the Holy Land.

His nephew and successor, Frederic the Eighth, was more ambitious. 49

The Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire. 50

The manuscript is not fully readable due to wear and tear, but it seems to contain historical and political information relevant to the early Middle Ages, specifically focusing on the role of the Roman Senate and its relationship with the Empire. The text appears to discuss the election of a senator, the influence of emperors, and the attempts to conciliate the emperor's favor for political purposes. The document also touches on the ceremonies and duties of the senator, including the annual election and the disqualification of certain individuals.
The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire

Chapter LXIX

 Assert the prerogatives of the eternal city, and refuse under her monarchy the insolence of the world. You are not ignorant, that, in former ages, by the wisdom of the senate, by the valour and discipline of the equestrian order, she extended her victorious arms to the East and West, beyond the Alps, and over the islands of the ocean. By our sires, in the absence of our princes, the noble institution of the senate has sunk in oblivion; and with our prudence, our strength has likewise decreased. We have survived the senate, and the equestrian order; the triumphs of the arms of the army of the other, will be devoted to your person and the service of the empire. Do you not hear the language of the Roman matron? You were a guest. I have adopted you as a citizen; a Transalpine stranger, I have elected you for my sovereign; and given you, myself, and all that is mine. Your first and most sacred duty, is to swear and subscribe, that you will shed your blood for the republic; that you will maintain, in peace and justice, the laws of the city and the charters of your predecessors; and that you will reward with five thousand pounds of silver the faithful senators who shall proclaim your titles in the Capitol. With the name, assume the character, of Augustus. The flowers of Latin rhetoric were not yet exhausted; but Freidric, impatient of their vanity, interrupted the orators in the high tone of royalty and conquest. "Famous indeed have been the fortitude and wisdom of the ancient Romans; but your speech is not seasoned with wisdom, and I could wish that fortitude were exemplified in your actions. Like all sublunary things, Rome has felt the vicissitudes of time and fortune. Your noblest families were translated to the East, to the royal city of Constantinople; and the remains of your strength and freedom have hung since been exalted by the Greeks and Franks. Are you desirous of holding the ancient glory of Rome, the gravity of the senate, the spirit of the knights, the discipline of the camp, the valour of the legions? you will find them in the German republic. It is not empire, naked and alone, the ornaments and virtues of empire have likewise migrated beyond the Alps to a more deserving people: they will be employed in your defence, but they claim your obedience. You pretend that myself or my predecessors have been invited by the Romans: you mistake the word, they were not invited; they were impeled. From its foreign and domestic tyrants, the city was rescued by Charlemagne and Otto, whose ashes rest in our country, and their dominion was the price of your deliverance.

Under that dominion your ancestors lived and died. I claim by the right of inheritance and possession, and who shall dare to extort you from my hands? Is the hand of the Franks and Germans exulted by age? Am I vanquished? Am I a captive? Am I not encompassed with the banners of a potent and invincible army? You impose conditions on your master; you require oaths; if the conditions are just, an oath is superfluous; if unjust, it is criminal. Can you doubt my equity? It is extended to the interests of my subjects. Will not my sword be unwashed in the defenses of the Capitol? By that sword the northern Kingdom of Denmark has been restored to the Roman empire. You prescribe the measure and the objects of my bounty, which flows in a copious but a voluntary stream. All will be given to patient merit; all will be denied to rude importunity." Neither the emperor nor the senate could maintain these fully pretensions of dominion and liberty. Unified with the pope, and suspicious of the Romans, Frideric continued his march to the Vatican; his coronation was disturbed by a sally from the Capitol; and if the numbers and value of the Germans prevailed in the bloody conflict, he could not safely encamp in the presence of a city of which he styled himself the sovereign. About twelve years afterwards, he besieged Rome, to seat an antipope in the chair of St. Peter; and twelve Flamin galleys were introduced into the Tiber: but the senate and people were aided by the arts of negotiation and the progress of disease; nor did Frideric or his successors restrain the hostile attempt. Their laborious reign was exercised by the popes, the crusades, and the independence of Lombardy and Germany; they contended the alliance of the Romans; and Frideric the Second offered in the Capitol the great standard, the Carosses of Milan. After the extinction of the house of Swabia, they were banished beyond the Alps; and their last convulsions betrayed the impotence and poverty of the Teutonic Caesars.

Under the reign of Adrian, when the empire extended from the Euphrates to the ocean, from Mount Atlas to the Granipan hills, a facetious historian amused the Romans with the picture of their infant wars. "There was a time," says Florus, "when Tibur and Prænesta, our summer retreats, were the objects of hostile vows in the Capitol, when we dreamed the shades of the Arcian groves, when we could triumph without a blush over the small less villages of the Sabines and Latins, and even Coriolanus could afford a title not unworthy..."
Chap. Lxxix.

OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

1192

"of a victorious general." The pride of his contemporaries was gratified by the contrast of the past and the present: they would have been humbled by the prospect of futurity; by the prediction, that after a thousand years, Rome, despoiled of empire and contracted to her principal limits, would renew the same hostilities on the same ground which was then decorated with her villas and gardens. The adjacent territory on either side of the Tyber was always elevated and sometimes possessed, as the patrimony of St. Peter; but the bishops assumed the lawless independence, and the cities too faithfully copied the revolt and discord of the metropolis. In the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, the Romans incessantly laboured to reduce or destroy the contumacious vassals of the church and senate; and if their haughty and selfish ambition was moderated by the pope, he often encouraged their zeal by the alliance of his spiritual arms. Their warfare was that of the first counsels and dictators, who were taken from the plebeians. They assembled in arms at the foot of the Capitol; sacked the gates, plundered or burnt the harvests of their neighbours, engaged in tumultuous conflict, and returned home after an expedition on the wings of victory. Theirslope was treacherous and unskilled: in the use of victory, they indulged the meaner passions of jealousy and revenge; and instead of adopting the salutary, they triumphed on the misfortunes, of their adversaries. The captives, in their sharts, with a rope round their necks, solicited their pardon: the fortifications, and even the buildings, of the rival cities were demolished, and the inhabitants were scattered in the adjacent villages. It was thus that the seats of the cardinal bishops, Porto, Ostia, Albano, Tusculum, Frascati, and Tibur or Tivoli, were successively overthrown by the furious hostility of the Romans. Of those, of Porto and Ostia, the two keys of the Tyber, are still vacant and desolate: the marshy and unwholesome banks are peopled with herds of buffaloes, and the river is lost in every purpose of navigation and trade. The hills, which afford a shady retirement from the autumnal heats, have again united with the blessings of peace; the forests have arisen near the ruins of Tusculum; Tibur or Tivoli has resumed the honours of a city, and the meaner towns of Alban and Palatine are decorated with the villas of the cardinals and princes of Rome. In the work of destruction, the ambition of the Romans was often checked and repulsed by the neighbouring cities and their allies: in the first siege of Tibur, they were driven from their camp; and the battles of Tusculum and Viterbo might be compared with the memorable fields of Thermopylae and Cannae. In the first of these petty wars, thirty thousand Romans were overthrown by a thousand German horse, under Frederic Barbarossa had despatched as the relief of Tusculum; and if we number the slain at three, the prisoners at two, thousand, we shall embrace the most authentic and moderate account. Sixty-eight years afterwards, they marched against Viterbo in the ecclesiastical state with the whole force of the city; by a rare coalition the Teutonic eagle was blinded, in the adverse banners, with the keys of St. Peter; and the pope's auxiliaries were commanded by a count of Tuscumb and a bishop of Winchester. The Romans were discomfited with shame and slaughter; but the English prelate must have indulged the vanity of a pilgrim, if he multiplied their numbers to one hundred, and their loss in the field to thirty thousand men. Had the policy of the senate and the discipline of the legions been restored with the Capitol, the divided condition of Italy would have offered the fairest opportunity of a second conquest. But in arts, the modern Romans were not abreast, and in arts, they were far below, the common level of the neighbouring republics. Nor was their warlike spirit of any long continuance: after some irregular alliances they subsided in the national councils, and the regent of spirit from foreign influences, and in the disgraceful and disastrous use of foreign mercenaries. Ambition is a weed of quick and early vegetation in the vineyard of Christ. Under the first Christian princes, the chair of St. Peter was disputed by the sects, the vileness, the violence, of a popular election: the sanctuaries of Rome were polluted with blood; and, from the third to the twelfth century, the church was distracted by the mischief of frequent schisms. As long as the final appeal was determined by the civil magistrate, these mischifs were transient and local: the merits were tried by equity or favour; nor could the unsuccessful competitor long disturb the triumph of his rival. But after the emperors had been divested of their prerogatives, after a maxim had been established, that the vicar of Christ is answerable to no earthly tribunal, each vacancy of the holy see might invoke Christendom in controversy and war. The claims of the cardinals and inferior clergy, of the nobles and people, were vague and religious: the freedom of choice was overruled by the tumults of a city that no longer owned or obeyed a superior. On the decease of a pope, two factions proceeded in different churches to a double election: the number and weight of votes, the priority of time, the merit of the candidates, might balance each other, the most respectable of the clergy were divided; and the distant princes, who bowed before the spiritual throne, could not distinguish the spurious from the legitimate, either. The emperors were often the authors of the schism; from the political motive of dominion, or the friendly and hostile pontiffs; and even the competitors were reduced to suffer the insults of his enemies, who were not avowed by obedience; and to purchase the support of his
affiliants, who were instigated by
arvice or ambition. A peaceful
and perpetual succession was ar-
tained by Alexander the Third,
who finally abolished the tumultuary votes of
the clergy and people, and defined the right of
election to the sole college of cardinals.

The three orders of bishops, priests, and deacons,
were assimilated to each other by this important
privilege; the papal clergy of Rome obtained
the first rank in the hierarchy; they were indifferent
civilly chosen among the nations of Christen-
dom; and the possession of the highest benefices,
of the most important bishoprics, was not in-
compatible with their title and office. The se-

The Senate of the Catholic church, the con-
ductors and legislators of the supreme pontiff, were robed
in purple, the symbol of martyrdom or royalty;
they claimed a proud equality with kings; and their

dignity was subsisted by the insouciance
of their number, which, till the reign of Leo the
Tenth, seldom exceeded twenty or twenty-five
persons. By this wise regulation, all delin
and scandal were removed, and the rest of whom
was so effectually destroyed, that in a period of
three hundred years a double choice has only once
divided the unity of the sacred college. But as
the concurrence of two thirds of the votes had
been made necessary, the election was often de-
layed by the private interest and passions of the

A vacancy of
almost three years had preceded the election of Gregory the
Tenth, who resolved to prevent the failure, and his
fall; after some opposition, he was consecrated in
the sacreux of the canon law.

Nine days are allowed for the observance of the deceased pope,
and the arrival of the absent cardinals on the
saint's day, they are imprisoned, each with one
room, in a common apartment or closet,
without any separation of walls or curtains.

small window is reserved for the introduction
of necessaries; but the door is locked on both sides,
and guarded by the magistrates of the city, to
exclude them from all correspondence with the
world. If the election be not commenced
in three days, the luxury of their tables is
contracted to a single dish at dinner and supper;

and after the eighth day, they are reduced to
scanty allowance of bread, water, and wine.

During the vacancy of the holy see, the cardinals
are prohibited from touching the revenues, or
assuming, unless in some rare emergency, the
government of the church; all agreements and
promises among the electors are formally annul-
led; and their integrity is fortified by their
solemn oath and the prayers of the Catholics.

Some articles of inconvenient or supernatural
rigour have been gradually relaxed, but the prin-
ciple of enforcement is vigorous and entire; they
are still urged by the personal motives of health
and freedom, to accelerate the moment of their
deliverance; and the improvement of bail or
secret votes has swept the struggles of the

class in the silky veil of obscurity and politi-

By these institutions, the Romans were
excluded from the election of their prince and
bishop; and in the fever of war and permanent
 liberty, they were invited to the loss of this
inestimable privilege. The emperor

Lewis of Tuscany received the
example of the great Otho. After some nego-

A. D. 1196.


It is not the affair of the Pope of Rome to take part in
the elections of his holiness, nor that of the College of
Cardinals to select by secret ballot, the man of his
choice. From a number of candidates, the Pope selects
himself, or they select for him, the person they
consider the most fit. These are the rules which have
been observed from the time of Alexander III. to the year
1791.
the flocks was offended or impoverished by the absence of the shepherd; they were recalled by a stern admonition, that St. Peter had fixed his chair, not in an obscure village, but in the capital of the world; by a fierce menace that the Romans would march in arms to destroy the place and people that should dare to afford them a retreat. They returned with timorous obedience; and were saluted with the account of an heavy debt, of all the losses which their desertion had occasioned, the hire of lodgings, the sale of provisions, and the various expenses of servants and strangers who attended the court. After a short interval of peace, and perhaps of authority, they were again banished by new tumults, and again summoned by the imperious or respectful invitation of the senate. In these occasional retreats, the exiles and fugitives of the Vatican were seldom long, or far, distant from the metropolis; but in the beginning of the fourteenth century the apostolic throne was transported, as it might seem for ever, from the Tyber to the Rhone; and the causes of the transmigration may be deduced from the furious contest between Boniface the Eighth and the king of France. The spiritual arms of excommunication and interdict were repulsed by the threat of the three estates, and the privileges of the Gallican church; but the pope was not prepared against the carnal weapons which Philip the Fair had courage to employ. As the pope resided at Anagni, without the suspicion of danger, his palace and person were assaulted by three hundred horse, who had been secretly levied by William of Nogaret, a French minister, and Sciarra Colonna, of a noble but hostile family of Rome. The cardinals fled; the inhabitants of Anagni were seduced from their allegiance and gratitude; but the dauntless Boniface, unarmed and alone, seated himself in his chair, and awaited, like the confessors of old, the swarms of the Gauls. Nogaret, a foreign adversary, was content to execute the orders of his master; by the ducal enmity of Colonna, he was insulted with words and blows, and during a confinement of three days his life was threatened by the hardships which they inflicted on the obstinacy which they provoked. Their strange delay gave time and courage to the adherents of the church, who rescued him from refractory violence; but his imperious soul was wounded in a vital part; and Boniface expired at Rome in a frenzy of rage and vengeance. His memory is stained with the glaring vices ofavarice and pride; nor has the courage of a martyr promoted this ecclesiastical champion to the honours of a saint; a magnificent sinner (say the chronicles of the times), who entered like a fox, reigned like a lion, and died like a dog. He was succeeded by Benedict the Eleventh, the mildest of mankind. Yet he excommunicated the impious emissaries of Philip, and devoted the city and people of Anagni by a tremendous curse, whose effects are still visible to the eyes of superstition.

After his decease, the tedious and equal suspense of the conclaves was fixed by the dexterity of the French faction. A specious offer was made and accepted, that in the term of forty days, they would elect one of the three candidates who should be named by their opponents. The archbishop of Bourdeaux, a furious enemy of his king and country, was the first on the list; but his ambition was known; and his conscience obeyed the calls of fortune and the commands of a benefactor, who had been informed by a swift messenger that the choice of a pope was now in his hands. The terms were regulated in a private interview; and with such speed and secrecy was the business transacted, that the unanimous concile applauded the elevation of Clement the Fifth. The cardinals of both parties were soon animated by a summons to attend him beyond the Alps; from whence, as they soon discovered, they must never hope to return. He was engaged, by promise and affection, to prefer the residence of France; and, after dragging his court through Poitou and Gascony, and devouring, by his expense, the cities and convents on the road, he finally resided at Avignon, which flourished above seventy years, and the seat of the Roman pontiff and the metropolis of Christendom. By land, by sea, by the Rhone, the position of Avignon was on all sides accessible; the southern provinces of France did not yield to Italy itself; new palaces arose for the accommodation of the pope and cardinals; and the arts of luxury were soon attracted by the treasures of the church. They were already possessed of the adjacent territory, the Venetian county, a populous and fertile spot; and the sovereignty of Avignon was afterwards purchased from the youth and distress of Jane, the first queen of Naples and countess of Provence, for the inadequate price of fourscore thousand florins. Under the
from the nearest provinces of Italy, and at length from the remote kingdoms of Hungary and Britain, the highways were thronged with a swarm of pilgrims who sought to expiate their sins in a journey; however costly or laborious, which was exempt from the perils of military service. All exceptions of rank or sex, of age or infirmity, were forgotten in the common transport; and in the streets and churches many persons were trampled to death by the eagerness of devotion. The calculation of their numbers could not be easy nor accurate; and they have probably been magnified by a dexterous clergy, well apprised of the cantajge of example: yet we are assured by a judicious historian, who assisted at the ceremony, that Rome was never replenished with less than two hundred thousand strangers; and another spectator has fixed at two millions the total concourse of the year. A trilling ablation from each individual would accumulate a royal treasure; and two princes stood night and day, with rakes in their hands, to collect, without counting, the heaps of gold and silver that were poured on the altar of St. Paul. It was fortunately a season of peace and plenty; and if forage was scarce, if inns and lodgings were extravagantly dear, an inexhaustible supply of bread and wine, of mast and fish, was provided by the policy of Boniface and the venal hospitality of the Romans. From a city without trade or industry, all casual riches will speedily evaporate; but the arrears and surfeit of all next generation solicited Clement the Sixth to anticipate the distant period of the century. The gracious pontiff complied with their wishes, offered Rome this year consolation for his loss; and justified the charge by the name and practice of the Mosaic Jubilee. His summons was obeyed; and the number, seal, and liberality, of the pilgrims did not yield to the primitive festival. But they encountered the triple scourge of war, pestilence, and famine; many wives and virgins were violated in the castles of Italy; and many strangers were pillaged or murdered by the savage Romans, no longer moderated by the presence of their bishop. To the impatience of the people we may ascribe the successive reduction to fifty, thirty-five, and twenty-five years; although the second of these terms is commemorated with the life of Christ. The profusion of indulgences, the revolt of the protestants, and the decline of superstition, have much diminished the value of the Jubilee; yet even the nineteenth and last festival was a year of pleasure and profit to the Romans; and a philosophic soul will not disturb the triumph of the priest or the happiness of the people.
In the beginning of the eleventh century, Italy was exposed to the feudal tyranny, alike oppressive to the sovereign and the people. The rights of human nature were violated by her numerous republics, who soon extended their liberty and dominion from the city to the adjacent country. The sword of the nobles was broken; their slaves were enfranchised; their castles were demolished; they assumed the habits of society and obedience; their ambition was confined to municipal honour, and in the profound aristocracy of Venice or Genoa, each patrician was subject to the laws. But the feeble and disorderly government of Rome was unequal to the task of curbing her rebellious sons, who scorned the authority of the magistrate within and without the walls. It was no longer a civil contention between the nobles and plebeians for the government of the state: the barons asserted in arms their personal independence; their palaces and castles were fortified against a siege; and their private quarrels were maintained by the numbers of their retainers and retainers. In origin and situtation, they were aliens to their country. 35 and a genuine Roman, could such have been produced, might have rescued these haughty strangers, who disdained the appellation of citizens, and proudly moulded them into princes, of Rome. 36 After a dark hermaphrodite civilization, all the words of pedigree were lost; the distinction of their ages was abolished; the blood of the nations was mingled in a thousand channels; and the Goths and Lombards, the Greeks and Franks, the Germans and Normans, had obtained the fairest possessions by royal bounty, or the prerogative of valour. These examples might be readily presumed; but the elevation of an Hebrew race to the rank of senators and consuls, is an event without a parallel in the long captivity of these miserable exiles. 36 The name of Leo the Ninth, a wealthy and learned Jew was converted to Christianity; and honoured at his baptism with the name of his godfather, the reigning pope. 35

The title and courage of Peter the son of Leo were signalised in the case of Gregory the Seventh, who intrusted his faithful adherent with the government of Adrian's male, the tower of Crescentius, or, as it is now called, the castle of St. Angelo. Both the father and the son were the parents of a numerous progeny: their riches, the fruits of usury, were shared with the poorest families of the city; and so extensive was their alliance, that the grandeur of the palace was excited by the weight of his kindness to the throne of St. Peter. A majority of the clergy and people supported his cause: he reigned several years in the Vatican, and it is, only the eloquence of St. Bernard, and the final triumph of Innocent the Second, that has bounded Anacletus with the epitaph of antiques. After his defeat and death, the postiety of Leo is no longer conspicuous; and none will be found of the modern nobles ambitious of descending from a Jewish stock. It is not my design to enumerate the Roman families, which have failed at different periods, or those which are continued in different degrees of splendour to the present time. 38 The old corollar y line of the Franciscans discovers their name in the generous act of breaking or dividing bread in a time of famine; and such benevolence is more truly glorious than to have enclosed, with their allies the Ceri, a spacious quarter of the city in the chains of their fortifications: the Scorli, as it should seem a Sabine name, have maintained their original dignity; the oblate surname of the Capranica is inscribed on the walls of the first senators; the Farnese preserve the honour, without the estate, of the counts of Signa; and the Cenci must have been very ignorant, or very modest, if they had not descended from the Carthaginian hero 39.

But among, perhaps above, the peers and princes of the city, I distinguish the rival houses of Colonna and Ugozzi, whose private story is an essential part of the annals of modern Rome. 1. The name and arms of Colonna 32 have been the theme of much doubtful etymology; nor have the orators and antiquarians overlooked either Trajan's pillar, or the columns of Hercules, or the pillar of Christ's flagellation, or the luminous column that guided the Israelites in the desert. Their first historical appearance in the year eleven hundred and four, attests the power and antiquity, while it explains the simple meaning, of the name. By the usurpation of Cesar, the Colonna preceded the arms of Paschal the Second, but they lawfully held in the Campagna of Rome the hereditary fields of Zagaria and Colonna, and the latter of these towns was probably adorned with some lofty pillar, the token of a villa or temple. 34 They likewise possessed one moiety of the neighbouring city of Tusculum; a strong presumption of their descent from the counts of Tusculum, who in the tenth century were the tyrants of the

35. Marcian (Apian, 355) alled the Avelli of Florence, Perugia, Chiusi, and the several of the pope, the evidence of Pilatus of Bethacum. Sec. 95, 36, 37, 37, and the monuments of the capitol.
36. In the year 1101, the emperor Lachitius I. Re Maulo is reported to have purchased the Castle of St. Angelo, to which he is now called, the castle of St. Angus. Both the father and the son were the parents of a numerous progeny: their riches, the fruits of usury, were shared with the poorest families of the city; and so extensive was their alliance, that the grandeur of the palace was excited by the weight of his kindness to the throne of St. Peter. A majority of the clergy and people supported his cause: he reigned several years in the Vatican, and it is, only the eloquence of St. Bernard, and the final triumph of Innocent the Second, that has bounded Anacletus with the epitaph of antiques. After his defeat and death, the postiety of Leo is no longer conspicuous; and none will be found of the modern nobles ambitious of descending from a Jewish stock. It is not my design to enumerate the Roman families, which have failed at different periods, or those which are continued in different degrees of splendour to the present time. 38 The old corollar y line of the Franciscans discovers their name in the generous act of breaking or dividing bread in a time of famine; and such benevolence is more truly glorious than to have enclosed, with their allies the Ceri, a spacious quarter of the city in the chains of their fortifications: the Scorli, as it should seem a Sabine name, have maintained their original dignity; the oblate surname of the Capranica is inscribed on the walls of the first senators; the Farnese preserve the honour, without the estate, of the counts of Signa; and the Cenci must have been very ignorant, or very modest, if they had not descended from the Carthaginian hero 39.

But among, perhaps above, the peers and princes of the city, I distinguish the rival houses of Colonna and Ugozzi, whose private story is an essential part of the annals of modern Rome. 1. The name and arms of Colonna 32 have been the theme of much doubtful etymology; nor have the orators and antiquarians overlooked either Trajan's pillar, or the columns of Hercules, or the pillar of Christ's flagellation, or the luminous column that guided the Israelites in the desert. Their first historical appearance in the year eleven hundred and four, attests the power and antiquity, while it explains the simple meaning, of the name. By the usurpation of Cesar, the Colonna preceded the arms of Paschal the Second, but they lawfully held in the Campagna of Rome the hereditary fields of Zagaria and Colonna, and the latter of these towns was probably adorned with some lofty pillar, the token of a villa or temple. 34 They likewise possessed one moiety of the neighbouring city of Tusculum; a strong presumption of their descent from the counts of Tusculum, who in the tenth century were the tyrants of the
and long afterwards in the coronation of Lewis of Bavaria; and by the gratitude of the emperor, the pillar in their arms was enriched with a royal crown. But the first of the family in fame and merit was the elder Stephen, whom Petarach loved and esteemed as an hero superior to his own times, and not unworthy of ancient Rome. Persecution and exile displayed to the nations his abilities in peace and war; in his distress he was an object, not of pity, but of reverence; the aspect of danger provoked him to assume his name and country; and when he was asked, "Where is your fortress?" he laid his hand on his heart and answered, "Here." He supported with the same virtue the return of prosperity; and, till the ruin of his declining age, the ancestors, the character, and the children, of Stephen Colonza, exalted his dignity in the Roman republic, and at the court of Avignon. II. The Ursini migrated from Spoleto, and chose as they styled in the twelfth century, from some eminent person, who is only known as the father of their race. But they were soon distinguished among the nobles of Rome, by the number and bravery of their kinmen, the strength of their towers, the honour of the senate and sacred college, and the elevation of two popes, Celestine the Third and Nicholas the Third, of their name and lineage. Their riches may be accused as an early abuse of nepotism; the estates of St. Peter were alienated in their favour by the liberal Celestine; and Nicholas was ambitious, for their sake, to solicit the alliance of monarchs; and founded new kingdoms in Lombardy and Tuscany, and to invest them with the perpetual office of senators of Rome. All that has been observed of the greatness of the Colonna, will likewise redound to the glory of the Ursini, their constant and equal antagonists in the long turbulent feud, which distracted above two hundred and fifty years the ecclesiastic state. The jealousy of pre-eminence and power was the true ground of their quarrel; but as a specious badge of distinction, the Colonna embraced the name of Calabellini and the party of the empire; the Ursini espoused the title of Conti and the cause of the church. The eagle and the keys were displayed in their adverse hours; and the two factions of Italy most curiously raged when the origin and nature of the dispute were long since forgotten. After the retreat of the popes to Avignon, they disputed in arms the
vacant republic; and the mischiefs of discord were perpetuated by the wretched compromises of electing each year two rival senators. By their private hostilities, the city and country were desolated, and the fluctuating balance inclined with their alternate success. But none of either family had fallen by the sword, till the most renowned champion of the Uralsi was surprised and slain by the younger Stephen Colonna. His triumph is stained with the reproach of violating the truce; their defeat was basely avenged by the assassination, before the church-door, of an innocent boy and his two servants. Yet the victorious Colonna, with an unusual colleague, was declared senator of Rome during the term of five years. And the music of Petrarch inspired a wish, a hope, a prediction, that the generous youth, the son of his venerable hero, would restore Rome and Italy to their pristine glory; that his justice would extinguish the wolves and fumes, the serpents and fears, who laboured to subvert the eternal basis of the marble columns.

CHAP. LXX.


In the apprehension of modern times, Petrarch is the Italian singer of Laura and love. In the memory of his Tuscan rhymes, Italy applauds, or rather adores, the father of her lyric poetry; and his verse, or at least his name, is repeated by the enthusiastic, or affectionate, of amorous sensibility. Whatever may be the private taste of a stranger,

The reader will find the following information useful: 1. Petrarch (1848, p. 262) has included this chapter among the second ten, a Fifteenth Century Chapters (1858, p. 358) and a Latin (Literature) Supplement (1861, p. 421) has given it to the reader. 2. Petrarch, the great Venetian poet, has adorned the history of the age, and the author has often forgotten the affectionate and poetic connections of his name. He is the author of twenty Italian biographies, who have profoundly interested the poet and the reader.

The general impression produced in the modern world is that the reputation of Petrarch was not gained without some degree of support for his works. The author, however, is content to honor his memory, and, with the exception of his more intimate correspondent, the Venetian poet, has addressed him in the most affectionate and poetic terms. He is the author of the following poems: 1. Petrarch, the great Venetian poet, has adorned the history of the age, and the author has often forgotten the affectionate and poetic connections of his name. He is the author of twenty Italian biographies, who have profoundly interested the poet and the reader.

The general impression produced in the modern world is that the reputation of Petrarch was not gained without some degree of support for his works. The author, however, is content to honor his memory, and, with the exception of his more intimate correspondent, the Venetian poet, has addressed him in the most affectionate and poetic terms. He is the author of the following poems: 1. Petrarch, the great Venetian poet, has adorned the history of the age, and the author has often forgotten the affectionate and poetic connections of his name. He is the author of twenty Italian biographies, who have profoundly interested the poet and the reader.

The general impression produced in the modern world is that the reputation of Petrarch was not gained without some degree of support for his works. The author, however, is content to honor his memory, and, with the exception of his more intimate correspondent, the Venetian poet, has addressed him in the most affectionate and poetic terms. He is the author of the following poems: 1. Petrarch, the great Venetian poet, has adorned the history of the age, and the author has often forgotten the affectionate and poetic connections of his name. He is the author of twenty Italian biographies, who have profoundly interested the poet and the reader.

The general impression produced in the modern world is that the reputation of Petrarch was not gained without some degree of support for his works. The author, however, is content to honor his memory, and, with the exception of his more intimate correspondent, the Venetian poet, has addressed him in the most affectionate and poetic terms. He is the author of the following poems: 1. Petrarch, the great Venetian poet, has adorned the history of the age, and the author has often forgotten the affectionate and poetic connections of his name. He is the author of twenty Italian biographies, who have profoundly interested the poet and the reader.

The general impression produced in the modern world is that the reputation of Petrarch was not gained without some degree of support for his works. The author, however, is content to honor his memory, and, with the exception of his more intimate correspondent, the Venetian poet, has addressed him in the most affectionate and poetic terms. He is the author of the following poems: 1. Petrarch, the great Venetian poet, has adorned the history of the age, and the author has often forgotten the affectionate and poetic connections of his name. He is the author of twenty Italian biographies, who have profoundly interested the poet and the reader.

The general impression produced in the modern world is that the reputation of Petrarch was not gained without some degree of support for his works. The author, however, is content to honor his memory, and, with the exception of his more intimate correspondent, the Venetian poet, has addressed him in the most affectionate and poetic terms. He is the author of the following poems: 1. Petrarch, the great Venetian poet, has adorned the history of the age, and the author has often forgotten the affectionate and poetic connections of his name. He is the author of twenty Italian biographies, who have profoundly interested the poet and the reader.

The general impression produced in the modern world is that the reputation of Petrarch was not gained without some degree of support for his works. The author, however, is content to honor his memory, and, with the exception of his more intimate correspondent, the Venetian poet, has addressed him in the most affectionate and poetic terms. He is the author of the following poems: 1. Petrarch, the great Venetian poet, has adorned the history of the age, and the author has often forgotten the affectionate and poetic connections of his name. He is the author of twenty Italian biographies, who have profoundly interested the poet and the reader.

The general impression produced in the modern world is that the reputation of Petrarch was not gained without some degree of support for his works. The author, however, is content to honor his memory, and, with the exception of his more intimate correspondent, the Venetian poet, has addressed him in the most affectionate and poetic terms. He is the author of the following poems: 1. Petrarch, the great Venetian poet, has adorned the history of the age, and the author has often forgotten the affectionate and poetic connections of his name. He is the author of twenty Italian biographies, who have profoundly interested the poet and the reader.

The general impression produced in the modern world is that the reputation of Petrarch was not gained without some degree of support for his works. The author, however, is content to honor his memory, and, with the exception of his more intimate correspondent, the Venetian poet, has addressed him in the most affectionate and poetic terms. He is the author of the following poems: 1. Petrarch, the great Venetian poet, has adorned the history of the age, and the author has often forgotten the affectionate and poetic connections of his name. He is the author of twenty Italian biographies, who have profoundly interested the poet and the reader.
the success of his own followers; his name was popular; his friends were active; the open or secret opposition of envy and prejudice was surmounted by the dexterity of patient merit. In the thirty-sixth year of his age, he was solicited to accept the object of his wishes: and on the same day, in the solitude of Vaucluse, he received a similar and solemn invitation from the senate of Rome and the university of Paris. The learning of a theological school, and the ignorance of a lawless city, were alike unqualified to bestow the ideal though mortal wreath which genius may obtain from the five applause of the public and of posterity; but the candidate dismissed this troublesome reflection, and after some moments of complacency and suspense, preferred the summons of the metropolis of the world.

The ceremony of his coronation was performed in the Capitol, by his friend and patron the supreme magistrate of the republic. Twelve patrician youths were arrayed in scarlet; six representatives of the most illustrious families, in green robes, with garlands of flowers, accompanied the procession; in the midst of the princes and nobles, the senator, count of Anguilura, a kinsman of the Colonna, unrolled his @title; and at the voice of an herald, Petrarch arose. After discountenancing on a text of Virgil, and three repeating his vows for the prosperity of Rome, he knelt before the throne, and received from the emperor a laurel crown, with a sacred pious declaration, "This is the reward of merit." The people shouted, "Long life to the Capitol and the poet!" A moment in praise of Rome was accepted as the effusion of genius and gratitude; and after the whole procession had visited the Vatican, the profane wreath was suspended before the shrine of St. Peter. In the act of diploma which was presented to Petrarch, the poetic and prerogatives of poet laureat are revered in the Capitol, after the lapse of thirteen hundred years; and he receives the perpetual privilege of "expressing, at his choice, a crown of laurel, ivy, or myrtle, of assuming the poetic habit, and of teaching, disputing, interpreting, and composing, in all places whatsoever, and on all subjects of literature. The grant was ratified by the authority of the senate and people; and the character of citizen was the recompense of his affection for the Roman name. They did him honour, but they did him justice. In the familiar society of Cicero and Livy, he had lifted the theme of an ancient patriot; and his recent fancy kindled every idea to a sentiment, and every sentiment to a passion. The aspect of the seven hills and their majestic ruins confirmed these lively impressions; and he loved a country by whose liberal spirit he had been crossed and adopted. The poverty and dejection of Rome excited the indignation and pity of his grateful son: he disbursed the faults of his fellow-citizens; applauded with partial kindness the last of their heroes and matrons; and in the remembrance of the past, in the hope of the future, was pleased to forget the miseries of the present time. Rome was still the lawful mistress of the world; the pope and the emperor, her bishop and general, had abdicated their station by an inglorious retreat to the Rhine and the Danube; but if she could resume her virtues, the republic might again vindicate her liberty and dominion. Amidst the indulgence of enthusiasm and eloquence, Petrarch, Italy, and Europe, were astonished by a revolution which realised for a moment his most splendid visions. The rise and fall of the tribune Riccio will occupy the following pages; 38 the subject is interesting, the materials are rich, and the glance of a patriot bard will sometimes vivify the orator, but simple, narrative of the Florimins, but more especially of the Roman, 39 historian.

In a quarter of the city which was inhabited only by mechanics and Jews, the marriage of an innkeeper and a washerwoman produced the future deliver of Rome. 40 From such parents Nicholas IIIIii Ghiuri could inherit neither dignity nor fortune; and the gift of a liberal education, which they, painfully bestowed, was the cause of his glory and untimely end. The study of history and eloquence, the writings of Cicero, Seneca, Livy, Caesar, and Varotti Matino, elevated above his equals and contemporaries the genius of the young plebeian; he pursued with indefatigable diligence the manuscripts and archives of antiquity; learned to dispense his knowledge in familiar language; and was often provoked to exclaim, "Where are now these Romans? their virtue, their justice, their power? why was I not born in those happy times?" When the republic addressed to the throne of Avignon an embassy of the three orders, the spirit and eloquence of Ghiuri recommended him to a place among the thirteen deputies of the commons. The council had the
honour of haranguing pope Clement the Sixth, and the satisfaction of conversing with Petruch, a congenial mind; but his aspiring hopes were chilled by disgrace and poverty; and the position was reduced to a single garment and the charity of the hospital. From this misery he was relieved by the sense of merit or the smile of favour; and the employment of apostolic nuncius afforded him a daily stipend of five gold florins; a more honourable and extensive connexion; and the right of contrasting, both in words and actions, his own integrity with the vices of the state. The eloquence of Riensi was prompt and persuasive: the multitude is always prone to envy and censure: he was stimulated by the loss of a brother and the impurity of the assassin; nor was it possible to excuse or exaggerate the public calamities. The blessings of peace and justice, for which civil society has been instituted, were banished from Rome; the jealous citizens, who might have endured every personal or pecuniary injury, were most deeply wounded in the diabolism of their wives and daughters: these were equally oppressed by the arrogance of the nobles and the corruption of the magistrates; and the abuse of arms or of laws was the only circumstance that distinguished the limits, from the dogs and serpents, of the Capitol. These allegorical emblems were variously repeated in the pictures which Riensi exhibited in the streets and churches; and while the spectators gazed with curious wonder, the bold and ready orator unfolded the meaning, applied the satire, inflamed his passions, and announced a distant hope of comfort and deliverance. The privileges of Rome, her eternal sovereignty over her princes and provinces, was the theme of his public and private discourse; and a monument of servitude became in his hands a title and incentive of liberty. The decree of the senate, which granted the most ample prerogatives to the emperor Paganus, had been inscribed on a copper-plate still extant in the choir of the church of St. John Lateran. A numerous assembly of nobles and plebeians was invited to this political lecture, and a convenient theatre was erected for their reception. The oratory appeared, in a magnificent and magnificent situation, explained the inscription by a version and commentary, and described with eloquence and affection the ancient glories of the senate and people, from whom all legal authority was derived. The supercilious ignorance of the nobles was incapable of discovering the serious tendency of such representations; they might sometimes blush with words and blare the plebeian reformer; but he was often suffered in the Colonna palace to arm the company with his threats and predictions; and the modern Brutus was concealed under the mask of folly and assumed the character of a buffoon. While they indulged their contempt, the restoration of the great cause, his favourite expression, was entertained among the people as a desirable, a possi-

sible, and at length as an approaching event: and while all had the disposition to applaud, none had the courage to assist, their promised deliverance.

A prophecy, or rather a summons, was affixed on the church-door of St. Angelo. George, was the first public evidence of his designs: a nocturnal assembly of a hundred citizens on Mount Aventine, the first step to their execution. After an oath of secrecy and aid, he represented to his conspirators the importance and facility of their enterprise; that the nobles, without union or resources, were strong only in the fear of their imaginary strength; that all power, as well as right, was in the hands of the people; that the revenues of the apopistic chamber might relieve the public distress; and that the pope himself would approve their victory over the common enemies of government and freedom. After securing a faithful band to protect his first declaration, he proclaimed through the city, by sound of trumpet, that on the evening of the following day all persons should assemble without arms before the church of St. Angelo, to provide for the re-establishment of the good estate. The whole night was employed in the preparation of thirty masts of the Holy Ghost, and in the morning, Riensi, barbecued, but in complete armour, issued from the church, encompassed by the hundred conspirators. The pope's vicar, the simple bishop of Orvieto, who had been persuaded to maintain a part in this singular ceremony, marched on his right hand; and three great standards were borne aloft as the emblems of their design. In the first, the banner of liberty, Rome was seated on two lions, with a palm in one hand and a globe in the other: St. Paul, with a drawn sword, was delineated in the banner of justice; and in the third, St. Peter held the keys of concord and peace. Riensi was encouraged by the presence and applause of an imnumerable crowd, who understood little, and hoped much; and the procession slowly rolled forwards from the castle of St. Angelo to the Capitol. His triumph was disturbed by some secret resolutions which he had formed in opposition, and with seeming confidence, the circling of the republic; harassed the people from the balcony; and received the most flattering confirmation of his acts and laws. The nobles, as if destitute of arms and counsellors, beheld in silent consternation this strange revolution; and the moment had been prudently chosen, when the most formidable, Stephen Colonna, was absent from the city. On the first rumour, he returned to his palace, affected to despise this plebeian tumult, and declared to the messengers of Riensi, that at his leisure he would cast the mazmar from the windows of the Capitol. The great bell instantly rang an alarm, and as rapid was the tide, so urgent was the danger, that Colonna escaped with precipitation to the suburb of St. Lawrence: from thence,
after a moment’s refreshment, he continued the same spotty career till he reached in safety his castle of Palaestrina; lamenting his own imprudence, which had not trumped the spark of this mighty configuration. A general and peremptory order was issued from the Capitol to all the nobles, that they should presently retire to their estates: they obeyed; and their departure secured the tranquillity of the free and obedient citizens of Rome.

But such voluntary obedience evanished with the first transports of zeal; and Rienzi felt the importance of justifying his usurpation by a regular form and a legal title. At his own choice, the Roman people should have displayed their attachment and authority, by lavishing on his head: the name of senator or consul, of king or emperor: he preferred the ancient and meagre appellation of tribune; the protection of the commons was the essence of that sacred office; and they were ignorant, that it had never been invested with any share in the legislative or executive powers of the republic. In this character, and with the countenance of the Romans, the tribune enacted the most salutary laws for the restoration and maintenance of the good estate. By the first he fulfilled the wish of honesty and inexperience, that no civil suit should be prosecuted beyond the term of fifteen days. The danger of frequent perjury might justify the prosecution against a false accuser; the same penalty which his evidence would have inflicted, the disorders of the times might compel the legislature to punish every homicide, with death, and every injury with equal retaliation. But the execution of justice was hopeless till he had previously abolished the tyranny of the nobles. It was formally provided, that none, except the supreme magistrates, should possess or command the gates, bridges, or towers, of the state: that no private garrisons should be introduced into the towns or castles of the Roman territory; that none should bear arms, or presume to fortify their houses in the city or country; that the honor should be responsible for the safety of the highways, and the free passage of provisions; and that the protection of manufacturers and robbers should be enjoyed by a fine of a thousand marks of silver. But these regulations would have been impotent and nugatory, had not the licentious nobles been awed by the sword of the civil power. A sudden alarm from the bell of the Capitol could still summon to the standard above twenty thousand volunteers: the power of the tribune and the laws required a more regular and permanent force. In each harbour of the coast, a vessel was stationed for the assurance of commerce; a standing militia of three hundred and sixty horse and thirteen hundred foot was levied, clothed, and paid in the thirteenth part of the city: and the spirit of a commercial wealth may be inferred in the favorable allowance of one hundred florins, or purchase to the hands of every soldier who lost his life in the service of his country. For the maintenance of the

public defence, for the establishment of granaries, for the relief of widows, orphans, and indigent convents. Rienzi applied, without fear of sacrilege, the revenues of the apostolic chamber; the three branches of fourth-money, the salt-duty, and the customs, were such of the annual produce of one hundred thousand florins; and scandalous were the abuses, if in four or five months the amount of the salt-duty could be trebled by his judicious economy. After that restoring the forces and finances of the republic, the tribune recalled the nobles from their military independence; required their personal appearance in the Capitol; and imposed an oath, of allegiance to the new government, and of submission to the laws of the good estate. Apprehensive for their safety, but still more apprehensive of the danger of a refusal, the princes and barons returned to their houses at Rome in the garb of simple and peaceful citizens: the Colonna and Urtini, the Savelli and Frangipani, were conformed before the tribunal of a plebeian, of the vile buffoon whom they had so often denied, and their disgrace was aggravated by the indignation which they vainly struggled to disguise. The same oath was successively pronounced by the several orders of society, the clergy and gentlemen, the judges and notaries, the merchants and artisans, and the gradual descent was marked by the increase of slavery and servitude. They swore to live and die with the republic and the church, whose interest was artfully unted by the nominal association of the bishop of Orvieto, the pope’s vicar, to the office of tribune. It was the boast of Rienzi, that he had delivered the throne and patrimony of St. Peter from a rebellious aristocracy; and Clement the Sixth, who rejoiced in its fall, affected to believe the professors, to applaud theocrates, and to confirm the title, of his trusty servant. The speech, perhaps the mind, of the tribune, was inspired with a lively regard for the purity of the faith; he intimated his claim to a supernatural mission from the Holy Ghost; endowed by an heavy forfeiture the annual duty of confession and communion; and strictly guarded the spiritual as well as temporal welfare of his faithful people.97

Never perhaps has the energy, perseverance, and effect of a single mind been more remarkably felt than in the republic. A sed of robbers was converted to the discipline of a camp or convent; patient to hear, swift to redeem, inexorable to punish, his tribunal was always accessible to the poor and stranger; he could birth, or dignity, or the immunities of the church, protect the offender or his accomplices. The privileged houses, the private sanctuaries in Rome, on which no officer of justice would presume to trespass, were shamefully, and he applied the timber and iron of their barricades in the fortifications of the Capitol. The venerable father of the Colonna was exposed in his own palace to the double shame of being
desires, and of being unable, to protect a criminal. A male, with a jar of oil, had been slain near Capurnica; and the lord, of the Ursini family, was condemned to restore the damage, and to discharge a fine of four hundred florins for his negligence in guarding the highways. Nor were the persons of the barons more inviolate than their lands or houses; and, either from accident or design, the same impertinent rigor was exercised against the heads of the adverse factions. Peter Agapet Colonna, who had himself been senator of Rome, was arrested in the street for injury or debt; and justice was assailed by the tardy execution of Martin Ursini, who, among his various acts of violence and rapine, had pillaged a shipwrecked vessel at the mouth of the Tyber. His name, the purple of two cardinals, his uncles, a recent marriage, and a moral disease, were disregarded by the inflexible tribune, who had chosen his victim. The public officers dragged him from his palace and impartial bed; his trial was short and satisfactory; the bell of the Capitol convened the people: strip of his mantle, on his knees, with his hands bound behind his back, he heard the sentence of death; and after a brief confession Ursini was led away to the gallows. After such an example, none who were conscious of guilt could hope for impunity, and the flight of the wretched, the licentious, and the idle, soon purified the city and territory of Rome. In this time (say the historian) the whole world began to rejoice that the conquerors no longer infested with robbers the sea began to plough; the pilgrims visited the sanctuaries, the roads and inns were replenished with travellers; trade, plenty, and good faith, were restored to the markets; and a purse of gold might be exposed without danger in the midst of the highway. As soon as the life and property of the subject are secure, the labours and rewards of industry spontaneously revive: Rome was still the metropolis of the Christian world; and the fame and fortunes of the tribune were diffused in every country by the strangers who had enjoyed the blessings of his government.

The deliverance of his country inspired Bencen with a vast and perhaps visionary idea of uniting Italy in a great federative republic, of which Rome should be the head and lawful seat; and the cities and princes the members and associates. His pen was not less eloquent than his tongue; and his numerous epistles were delivered to swift and trusty messengers. On foot, with a white wand in their hand, they traversed the forests and mountains; enjoyed, in the most hostile states, the sacred security of ambassadors; and reported, in the style of

...
novelty of the pump. In the evening, when
they had reached the church and palace of Con-
stantine, he thanked and dismissed the nu-
terous assembly, with an invitation to the fest-
ival of the ensuing day. From the hands of a re-
table knight he received the order of the Holy
Ghost; the purification of the bath was a pre-
vious ceremony; but in no step of his life did
Rienzi excite such scandal and censure as by
the profane use of the porphyry vase, in which
Constantine (a foolish legend) had been heal-
d of his leprosy by pope Sylvester. With equal
prudence the truncheon watched, or reposed
within the consecrated precincts of the bap-
tistery; and the failure of his state-bed was
interpreted as an omen of his approaching down-
fal. At the hour of worship, he showed himself
to the returning crowds in a majestic attitude,
with a robe of purple, his sword, and gilt spurs;
but the holy rites were soon interrupted by his
levity and insolence. Rising from his throne,
and advancing towards the congregation, he pro-
claimed in a loud voice: "We summon to our
tribunal pope Clement; and command him to
reside in his diocese of Rome: we also sum-
mmon the sacred college of cardinals." We
again summon the two pretenders, Charles
of Bohemia and Lewis of Bavaria, who style
themselves emperors; we likewise summon
all the electors of Germany, to inform us of
what pretension they have usurped the illust-
rious right of the Roman people, the ancient
and lawful sovereigns of the empire." Un-
sheathing his maiden sword, he thencebrandished
it to the four parts of the world, and thence re-
peated the extravagant declaration, "And this
too is mine!" The pope's voice, the bishop
of Oriente, attempted to check this career of folly;
but his fruitless protest was silenced by martial
music; and instead of withdrawing from the
assembly, he concluded to dine with his brother
tribune, at a table which had luthiero been
reserved for the supreme pontiff. A banquet,
such as the Caesars had given, was prepared for
the Romans. The apartments, porticoes, and
courts, of the Lateran were spread with innum-
erable tables for either sex, and every condi-
tion; a stream of wine flowed from the heartis
of Constantine's brasses; busts, and complaint,
except of the scarcity of water, could be heard;
and the licentiousness of the muldans was
curbed by discipline and fear. A subsequent
day was appointed for the coronation of
Rienzi; seven crowds of differ-
ent leaves or metals were successively placed
on his head by the most eminent of the Roman
was of the same rank, their locks were slashed with royal insignia, and they were
worshipped, and on the occasion of any public
engagement, were cast in the flames of the
Saxon fires, which burned; and
planted. By the same art were
Rienzi, and the tribune.
23 In his Roman Questions, Florence (English), he sub-
went, in the fall of 1504; on page 9
of the last sentence, when the Senat
cease the use of schafft, a similar
on the occasion of any public
engagement, were cast in the flames of the
Saxon fires, which burned; and
planted. By the same art were
Rienzi, and the tribune.
25 In his Roman Questions, Florence (English), he sub-
ent, in the fall of 1504; on page 9
of the last sentence, when the Senat
cease the use of schafft, a similar
on the occasion of any public
engagement, were cast in the flames of the
Saxon fires, which burned; and
planted. By the same art were
Rienzi, and the tribune.
26 "The voice of the people is the voice of God," says
Rienzi. But that voice was heard, and the
people thought it was their own, and that
they were the voice of God. But Rienzi
were cast in the flames of the
Saxon fires, which burned; and
planted. By the same art were
Rienzi, and the tribune.
27 "The voice of the people is the voice of God," says
Rienzi. But that voice was heard, and the
people thought it was their own, and that
they were the voice of God. But Rienzi
were cast in the flames of the
Saxon fires, which burned; and
planted. By the same art were
Rienzi, and the tribune.
28 It is singular, that the Roman Senate, in the want
of Roman king, in the absence of the emperor, and in the
absence of any other authority, was the voice of God, and
the voice of people. But Rienzi
were cast in the flames of the
Saxon fires, which burned; and
planted. By the same art were
Rienzi, and the tribune.
29 "The voice of the people is the voice of God," says
Rienzi. But that voice was heard, and the
people thought it was their own, and that
they were the voice of God. But Rienzi
were cast in the flames of the
Saxon fires, which burned; and
planted. By the same art were
Rienzi, and the tribune.
clergy; they represented the seven gifts of the Holy Ghost; and he still professed to imitate the example of the ancient tribunes. These extraordinary spectacles might deceive or flatter the people; and their own vanity was gratified in the vanity of their leader. But in his private life he soon deviated from the strict rule of frugality and abstinence; and the plebeians, who were awed by the splendour of the nobles, were provoked by the luxury of their equal. His wife, his son, his uncle (a barber in name and profession), exposed the contrast of vulgar manners and princely expense; and without acquiring the majesty, Rienz degenerated into the vice of a king.

A simple citizen describes with what fervour, and perhaps with pleasure, the humiliation of the barons of Rome. He had his head shaved, his hands crossed on his breast, he stood with downcast looks in the "presence of the tribune; and they trembled, and a good God, how they trembled!" As long as the yoke of Rienz was that of justice and their courage forced them to esteem the man, whose pride and interest provided them to hate; his extravagant conduct soon fortified their hatred by contempt; and they conceived the hope of subverting a power which was no longer so deeply rooted in the public confidence. The old animosity of the Colonna and Urbin was suspended for a moment by their common disgrace; they associated their wishes, and perhaps their designs; an assassin was seized and tortured; he accused the nobles; and as soon as Rienz deserved the fate, he adopted the suspicions and maxims, of a tyrant. On the same day, under various pretences, he invited to the Capitol his principal enemies, among whom were five members of the Urbin and three of the Colonna name. But instead of a council or a banquet, they found themselves prisoners under the sword of despotism or justice; and the consciousness of innocence or guilt might inspire them with equal apprehensions of danger. As the sound of the great bell the people assembled; they were enrolled for a conspiracy against the tribune's life; and though some might sympathise in their distress, not a hand, not a voice, was raised to rescue the first of the nobility from their impending doom. Their apparent boldness was promptly by despair; they passed in separate chambers asleep, and painful sight; and in the vulnerable hero, Stephen Colonna, striking against the door of his prison, repeatedly urged his guards to deliver him by a secret death, from such ignominious sentences. In the ensuing they understood their sentence from the visit of a confessor and the tolling of the bell. The great hall of the Capitol was decorated for the bloody scene with red and white hangings: the countenance of the tribune was dark and severe; the swords of the executioners were unheathed; and the haruspices interrupted in their dying speeches by the sound of trumpets. But in this decisive moment, Rienz was not less anxious or apprehensive than his captives; he dreaded the splendour of their names, their surviving kinmen, the instancy of the people, the reproaches of the world, and after rashly offering a mortal injury, he vainly presumed that, if he could forgive, he might himself be forgiven. His elaborate oration was that of a Christian and a suppliant; and, as the humble minister of the commons, he entreated his masters to pardon these noble criminals, for whose repentance and future service he pledged his faith and authority. "If you are spared," said the tribune, "by the mercy of the Romans, will you not promise to support the good estate with your lives and fortunes?" Astonished by this marvellous effect, the harpies bowed their heads; and while they devoutly repeated the oath of allegiance, might whisper a secret, and more sincere, assurance of revenge. A priest, in the name of the people, pronounced their abolution; they received the communion with the tribune, assisted at the banquet, followed the procession; and, after every spiritual and temporal sign of reconciliation, were dismissed in safety to their respective homes, with the new honours and titles of generals, consuls, and justiciaries. During some weeks they were checked by the memory of their sentence, danger, rather than of their deliverance, till the most powerful of the Urbin, escaping with the Colonna from the city, erected at Marino the standard of rebellion. The fortifications of the castle were hastily restored; the vessels attended their lord; the outlaws armed against the magistrates; the flocks and herds, the harvests and vineyards, from Marino to the gates of Rome, were swept away or destroyed; and the people arranged Rienz as the author of the calamities which his government had taught them to forget. In the camp, Rienz appeared to less advantage than in the forum; and he neglected the progress of the rebel barons till their numbers were strong, and their castles impregnable. From the pages of Livy, he had not imbibed the art, or even the courage, of a general: an army of twenty thousand Romans returned without honour or effect from the attack of Marino; and his vengeance was amased by painting his enemies, their heads downwards, and drawing two dogs (at least they should have been bears) as the representatives of the Urbin. The belief of his incapacity encouraged their operations: they were invited by their secret adherents; and the Romans attempted, with four thousand foot and three hundred horse, to enter Rome by force or surprise. The city was prepared for their reception; the alarm bell rang all night, the gates were strictly guarded, or solemnly kept, and after some hesitation theyrended a Petrus. The two first divisions had joined along the walls, but the prospect of a free entrance tempted the headstrong valor of the nobles in the rear; and after a successful skirmish, they were overthrown and massacred.
without quarter by the crowds of the Roman people. Stephen Colonna, the younger, the noble spirit to whom Petrarch ascribed the restoration of Italy, was preceded or accompanied in death by his son John, a gallant youth, by his brother Peter, who might regret the ease and honours of the chains; by a nephew of legitimate birth, and by two hundred of the Colonna race; and the number of seven, the seven crowns, as Rienzi styled them, of the Holy Ghost, was completed by the agony of the duplicitous parent, of the veteran chief, who had aspired the hope and fortune of his house. The vision and prophecies of St. Martin and pope Boniface had been used by the tribune to animate his troops; he displayed, at least in the pursuit, the spirit of an hero; but he forgot the maxims of the ancient Romans, who abhorred the triumphs of civil war. The conqueror ascended the Capitol; deposited his crown and sceptre on the altar, and boasted with some truth, that he had cut off an ear, which neither pope nor emperor had been able to avenge. His base and implacable revenge denied the honours of burial; and the bodies of the Colonna, which he threatened to expose to those of the vilest malefactors, were secretly interred by the holy virgins of their name and family. The people sympathized in their grief, repented of their own fury, and detested the inexcusable joy of Biondi, who visited the spot where those illustrious victors laid fallen. It was on that fatal spot, that he conferred on his son the honour of knighthood; and the ceremony was accomplished by a slight blow from each of the horsemen of the guard, and by a ridiculous and inhuman ablution from a pool of water, which was yet polluted with patrician blood.

A short delay would have saved the Colonna, the delay of a single week, which elapsed between the 7th of November and the 14th of December; the triumph and the exile of Biondi. In the pride of victory, he forsook what yet remained of his civil virtues, without acquiring the fame of military prowess. A free and vigorous opposition was formed in the city; and when the tribune proposed in the public council to impose a new tax, and to regulate the government of Perugia, thirty-nine members voted against his measures; repelled the injurious charge of treachery and corruption; and urged him to prove, by his forcible exclusion, that, if the populace adhered to his cause, it was already disdained by the most respectable citizens. The pope and the sacred college had never been dazzled by his spurious professions; they were justly offended by the insolence of his conduct; a cardinal legate was sent to Italy, and after some fruitless treaty, and two personal interviews, he announced a bull of excommunication, in which the tribune is degraded from his office, and banished with the guilt of rebellion, sacrilege, and heresy. The surviving barons of Rome were now humbled to a sense of allegiance; their interest and revenue engaged them in the service of the church; but as the fate of the Colonna was before their eyes, they abandoned to a private adventurer the peril and glory of the revolution. John Peppino, count of Mirandolo, in the kingdom of Naples, had been condemned for his crimes, or his riches, to perpetual imprisonment; and Petrarch, by soliciting his release, indirectly contributed to the ruin of his friends. At the head of one hundred and fifty soldiers, the count of Mirandolo introduced himself into Rome; barricaded the quarter of the Colonna; and found the enterprise as easy as it had seemed impossible. From the first alarm, the bell of the Capitol incessantly tolled; but, instead of repairing to the well-known sound, the people were silent and inactive; and the pallid curtain of Biondi, deplored their ingratitude with sighs and tears, abdicated the government and palace of the republic. Without drawing his sword, Biondi was taken prisoner. Count Peppino restored the aristocracy and the church; three senators were chosen; and the legate assuming the first rank, accepted his two colleagues from the rival families of Colonna and Ursini. The act of the tribune was abolished; his head was prescribed; yet such was the terror of his name, that the barons hesitated three days before they would trust themselves in the city, and Biondi was left above a month in the castle of St. Angelo, from whence he peaceably withdrew, after labouring, without effect, for the subversion of the power and courage of the Romans. The vision of freedom and empire had vanished: their fallen spirit would have acquiesced in servitude, had it been smoothed by tranquillity and order: and it was scarcely observed, that the new senators derived their authority from the Apostolic See: that four cardinals were appointed to reform, with dictatorial power, the state of the republic. Rome was again agitated by the bloody feuds of the barons, who detested each other, and despised the commons: their hostile fortresses, both in town and country, again rose, and were again demolished; and the peaceful citizens, a flock of sheep, were devour’d; says the Flavonian historian, by those rapacious wolves. But when their pride and avarice had exhausted the patience of the Romans, a confraternity of the Virgin Mary protected or avenged the republic; number and size, qualities of the noble families of Rome (Memorie per Pasquino, tom. 1, p. 141, tom. 2, p. 463).
the bell of the Capitol was again tolled, the nobles in arms trembled in the presence of an armed multitude; and of the two senators, Colona escaped from the window of the palace, and Urenzi was stoned at the foot of the altar. The dangerous office of tribune was successively occupied by two plebeians, Cerroni and Barocelli. The madness of Cerroni was unequal to the times; and after a faint struggle, he retired with a fair reputation and a decent fortune to the comforts of rural life. 10 Doyed of eloquence or genius, Barocelli was distinguished by a resolute spirit: he spoke the language of a patriot, and trod in the footsteps of tyrants; his suspicion was a sentence of death, and his own death was the reward of his cruelties. Amidst the public misfortunes, the faults of Rienzi were forgotten; and the Romans sighed for the peace and prosperity of the good estate. 10

After an exile of seven years, the first deliverer was again restored to his country. In the disguise of a monk or a pilgrim, he escaped from the castle of St. Angelo, implored the friendship of the king of Hungary at Naples, tempted the ambition of every bold adventurer, mingled at Rome with the pilgrims of the jubilee, lay concealed among the hermits of the Appenines, and wandered through the cities of Italy, Germany, and Bohemia. His person was invisible, his name was yet formidable; and the anxiety of the court of Avignon supposed, and even magnifies, his personal merit. The emperor Charles the Fourth gave audience to a stranger, who frankly revealed himself as the tribune of the republic; and astonished an assembly of ambassadors and princes, by the eloquence of a patriot and the visions of a prophet, the downfall of tyranny and the kingdom of the Holy Ghost. 11 Whatever had been his hopes, Rienzi found himself a captive; but he supported a character of independence and dignity, and obeyed, as his own choice, the irresistible summons of the supreme pontiff. The zeal of Petrarch, which had been cooled by the unworthy conduct, was rekindled by the sufferings and the presence, of his friend; and he boldly complains of the times, in which the senator of Rome was delivered by her emperor into the hands of her bishop. Rienzi was transported slowly, but in safe custody, from Prague to Avignon; his entrance into the city was that of a malefactor; in his person: he was chained by the leg; and four cardinals were named to inquire into the crimes of heresy and rebellion. But his trial and condemnation would have involved some questions, which it was more prudent to leave under the veil of mystery; the temporal supremacy of the pope; the duty of residence; the civil and ecclesiastical privileges of the clergy and people of Rome. The reigning pontiff well deserved the appellation of Clement: the strange vicissitudes and magnanimous spirit of the captive excited his pity and esteem; and Petrarch believes that he respected in the hero the name and sacred character of a poet. 12 Rienzi was indulged with an easy confinement and the use of books; and in the assiduous study of Livy and the Bible, he sought the cause and the consolation of his misfortunes.

The succeeding pontificate of Innocent the Sixth opened a new prospect of his delivery and restoration; and the court of Avignon was persuaded, that the successful rebel could alone appease and reform the anarchy of the metropolis. After a solemn profession of fidelity, the Roman tribune was sent into Italy, with the title of senator: but the death of Barocelli appeared to supersede the use of his mission; and the legate, cardinal Albornoz, 13 a consummate statesman, allowed him with reluctance, and without aid, to undertake the perilous experiment. His first reception was equal to his wishes: the day of his entrance was a public festival; and his eloquence and authority revived the laws of the good estate. But this momentous sunshine was soon clouded by his own vice and those of the people: in the Capitol, he might often regret the prison of Avignon; and after a second administration of four months, Rienzi was massacred in a tumult which had been fomented by the Roman barons. In the society of the Germans and Bohemians, he is said to have contracted the habits of intemperance and cruelty; adversity had chilled his enthusiasm, without fortifying his reason or virtue; and that youthful hope, that lively assurance, which is the pledge of success, was now succeeded by the cold impotence of distrust and despair. The tribune had reigned with absolute dominion, by the choice, and in the hearts, of the Romans: the senator was the servile minister of a foreign court; and while he was suspected by the people, he was abandoned by the prince. The legate Albornoz, who seemed desirous of his ruin, inflexibly refused all supplies of men and money; a faithful subject could no longer presume to touch the revenues of the apostolical chamber; and the first idea of a tax was the signal of clamour and sedition. Even his justice was tainted with the guilt or reproach of selfish cruelty: the most virtuous citizens of Rome were sacrificed to his jealousy; and in the execution of a public order, from whose purse he had been assisted, the magistrate too much forgot, or too much remembered, the obligations of the debtor. A civil war exhausted his treasures: and the misfortunes of the city: the Colonna maintained their boastful station at Palestrina; and his successors soon despised a leader whose ignorance
and fine were various of all subordinate merit. In the death as in the life of Rienzi, the hero and the coward were strangely mingled. When the Capitol was invested by a furious multitude, when he was basely deserted by his civil and military servants, the intrepid senator, waving the banner of liberty, presented himself on the balcony, addressed his eloquence to the various passions of the Romans, and laboured to persuade them, that in the same cause himself and the republic must either stand or fall. His oration was interrupted by a volley of imprécations and stones; and after an arrow had transfixed his hand, he sunk into abject despair, and fled weeping to the inner chambers, from whence he was lashed down by a sheet before the windows of the prison. Destitute of aid or hope, he was beheaded till the evening: the doors of the Capitol were destroyed with axes and fire; and while the senator attempted to escape in a plebeian habit, he was discovered and dragged to the platform of the palace, the fatal scene of his judgments and executions. A whole hour, without voice or motion, he stood amidst the multitude half naked and half dead; their rage was hushed into curiosity and wonder: the last feelings of reverence and compassion yet struggled in his favour; and they might have prevailed, if a bold moan had not plunged into his breast. He fell serum with the first stroke; the

impotent revenge of his enemies inflicted a thousand wounds; and the senator's body was abandoned to the dogs, to the Jews, and to the flames. Poverty will compare the virtues and failings of this extraordinary man: born in a long period of anarchy and servitude, the name of Rienzi has often been celebrated as the deliverer of his country; and the last of the Roman patriots. The first and most generous wish of Petrarch was the restoration of a free republic; but after the exile and death of his plebian hero, he turned his eyes from the tribute, to the king, of the Romans. The Capitol was yet stained with the blood of Rienzi, when Charles the Fourth descended from the Alps to obtain the Italian and imperial crowns. In his passage through Milan he received the visit, and repaid the flattery, of the poet laureat; accepted a medal of Augustus; and promised, without a smile, to imitate the fortune of the Roman monarchy. A false application of the names and maxims of antiquity was the source of the hopes and disappointments of Petrarch; yet he could not overlook the difference of times and characters; the immense distance between the first Caesars and a Bohemian prince, who by the favour of the clergy had been elected the titular head of the German aristocracy. Instead of restoring to Rome her glory and her pro-

vences, he had bound himself, by a secret treaty with the pope, to evacuate the city on the day of his coronation; and his shameful retreat was pursued by the reproaches of the patriot bard. After the loss of liberty and empire, his third and more humble wish, was to reconcile the king with his flock; to recall the Roman bishop to his ancient and peculiar diocese. In the fervour of youth, with the authority of age, Petrarch addressed his exhortations to five successive popes, and his eloquence was always inspired by the enthusiasm of sentiment and the freedom of language. The son of a citizen of Florence invariably preferred the country of his birth to that of his education; and Italy, in his eyes, was the queen and garden of the world. Amidst her domestic factions, she was doubtless superior to France both in art and science, in wealth and pulituteness; but the difference could scarcely support the epithet of baronets, which he profusely bestowed on the countries beyond the Alps. Avignon, the mystic Babylon, the sink of vice and corruption, was the object of his hatred and contempt; but he forgets that the scandalous vices were not the growth of the soil, and that in every residence they would adhere to the power and luxury of the papal court. He confines, that the successor of St. Peter is the bishop of the universal church; yet it was not on the banks of the Rhine, but of the Tyber, that the apostle had fixed his everlasting throne: and while every city in the Christian world was blessed with a bishop, the metropolis alone was desolate and forlorn. Since the removal of the Holy See, the sacred buildings of the Lateran and the Vatican, their altars and their saints, were left in a state of poverty and decay; and Rome was often painted under the image of a disconsolate matron, as if the wandering husband could be reclaimed by the homely portrait of the age and infirmities of his weeping spouse. But the cloud which hung over the seven hills, would be dispelled by the presence of their lawful sovereign: eternal fame, the prosperity of Rome, and the peace of Italy, would be the recompense of the pope who should dare to embrace this generous resolution. Of the five whom Petrarch eulogized, the three first, John the Twenty-second, Benedict the Tenth, and Clement the Sixth, were importuned or amused by the boldness of the writer; but the measureless change which had been attempted by Urban the Fifth, was finally accomplished by Gregory the Eleventh. The execution of their design was opposed by weighty and almost insuperable obstacles. A king of France, who has deserved the epithet of Wise, was unwilling to release them from a local dependence: the cardinals, for the most part his subjects, were attached to the language, manners, and climate, of Avignon; to their stately

and fine were various of all subordinate merit. In the death as in the life of Rienzi, the hero and the coward were strangely mingled. When the Capitol was invested by a furious multitude, when he was basely deserted by his civil and military servants, the intrepid senator, waving the banner of liberty, presented himself on the balcony, addressed his eloquence to the various passions of the Romans, and laboured to persuade them, that in the same cause himself and the republic must either stand or fall. His oration was interrupted by a volley of imprécations and stones; and after an arrow had transfixed his hand, he sunk into abject despair, and fled weeping to the inner chambers, from whence he was lashed down by a sheet before the windows of the prison. Destitute of aid or hope, he was beheaded till the evening: the doors of the Capitol were destroyed with axes and fire; and while the senator attempted to escape in a plebeian habit, he was discovered and dragged to the platform of the palace, the fatal scene of his judgments and executions. A whole hour, without voice or motion, he stood amidst the multitude half naked and half dead; their rage was hushed into curiosity and wonder: the last feelings of reverence and compassion yet struggled in his favour; and they might have prevailed, if a bold moan had not plunged into his breast. He fell serum with the first stroke; the

impotent revenge of his enemies inflicted a thousand wounds; and the senator's body was abandoned to the dogs, to the Jews, and to the flames. Poverty will compare the virtues and failings of this extraordinary man: born in a long period of anarchy and servitude, the name of Rienzi has often been celebrated as the deliverer of his country; and the last of the Roman patriots. The first and most generous wish of Petrarch was the restoration of a free republic; but after the exile and death of his plebian hero, he turned his eyes from the tribute, to the king, of the Romans. The Capitol was yet stained with the blood of Rienzi, when Charles the Fourth descended from the Alps to obtain the Italian and imperial crowns. In his passage through Milan he received the visit, and repaid the flattery, of the poet laureat; accepted a medal of Augustus; and promised, without a smile, to imitate the fortune of the Roman monarchy. A false application of the names and maxims of antiquity was the source of the hopes and disappointments of Petrarch; yet he could not overlook the difference of times and characters; the immense distance between the first Caesars and a Bohemian prince, who by the favour of the clergy had been elected the titular head of the German aristocracy. Instead of restoring to Rome her glory and her pro-

vences, he had bound himself, by a secret treaty with the pope, to evacuate the city on the day of his coronation; and his shameful retreat was pursued by the reproaches of the patriot bard. After the loss of liberty and empire, his third and more humble wish, was to reconcile the king with his flock; to recall the Roman bishop to his ancient and peculiar diocese. In the fervour of youth, with the authority of age, Petrarch addressed his exhortations to five successive popes, and his eloquence was always inspired by the enthusiasm of sentiment and the freedom of language. The son of a citizen of Florence invariably preferred the country of his birth to that of his education; and Italy, in his eyes, was the queen and garden of the world. Amidst her domestic factions, she was doubtless superior to France both in art and science, in wealth and pulituteness; but the difference could scarcely support the epithet of baronets, which he profusely bestowed on the countries beyond the Alps. Avignon, the mystic Babylon, the sink of vice and corruption, was the object of his hatred and contempt; but he forgets that the scandalous vices were not the growth of the soil, and that in every residence they would adhere to the power and luxury of the papal court. He confines, that the successor of St. Peter is the bishop of the universal church; yet it was not on the banks of the Rhine, but of the Tyber, that the apostle had fixed his everlasting throne: and while every city in the Christian world was blessed with a bishop, the metropolis alone was desolate and forlorn. Since the removal of the Holy See, the sacred buildings of the Lateran and the Vatican, their altars and their saints, were left in a state of poverty and decay; and Rome was often painted under the image of a disconsolate matron, as if the wandering husband could be reclaimed by the homely portrait of the age and infirmities of his weeping spouse. But the cloud which hung over the seven hills, would be dispelled by the presence of their lawful sovereign: eternal fame, the prosperity of Rome, and the peace of Italy, would be the recompense of the pope who should dare to embrace this generous resolution. Of the five whom Petrarch eulogized, the three first, John the Twenty-second, Benedict the Tenth, and Clement the Sixth, were importuned or amused by the boldness of the writer; but the measureless change which had been attempted by Urban the Fifth, was finally accomplished by Gregory the Eleventh. The execution of their design was opposed by weighty and almost insuperable obstacles. A king of France, who has deserved the epithet of Wise, was unwilling to release them from a local dependence: the cardinals, for the most part his subjects, were attached to the language, manners, and climate, of Avignon; to their stately
palaces; above all, to the wines of Burgundy.

In their eyes, Italy was foreign or hostile; and they reluctantly embarked at Marseilles, as if they had been sold or banished into the land of the Saracens. Urban the Fifth resided three years in the Vatican with safety and honour; his sanctity was protected by a guard of two thousand horse; and the King of Cyprus, the queen of Naples, and the emperors of the East and West, devoutly saluted their common father in the chair of St. Peter. But the joy of Pio-Pietro and the Italians was soon turned into grief and indignation. Some reasons of public or private moment, his own impatience or the prayers of the cardinals, recalled Urban to France; and the approaching election was saved from the tyrannic patriotism of the Romans. The powers of Heaven were interested in their cause: Bridget of Sweden, a saint and pilgrim, disapproved the return, and foretold the death, of Urban the Fifth; the migration of Gregory the Eleventh was encouraged by St. Catherine of Siena, the spouse of Christ and ambassador of the Florentines; and the pope himself, the great master of human credulity, appeared to have listened to these visionary females. Yet these celestial admonitions were supported by some arguments of temporal policy. The residence of Avignon had been invaded by hostile violence; at the head of thirty thousand robbers, an hero had extorted ransom and absolution from the vicar of Christ and the sacred college; and the maxim of the French warriors, to spare the people and plunder the church, was a new heresy of the most dangerous import. While the pope was driven from Avignon, he was unanimously invited to Rome. The senate and people acknowledged him as their lawful sovereign, and laid at his feet the keys of the gates, the bridges, and the fortresses; of the quarter at least beyond the Tiber. This loyal offer was accompanied by a declaration, that they would no longer suffer the scandal and calumny of his absence; and that his obstinacy would finally provoke them to revive and assert the primitive right of election. The abbot of Monte Cassino had been consulted, whether he would accept the triple crown from the clergy and people: "I am a citizen of Rome," 60 replied that venerable ecclesiastic, and my first law is the voice of my country." 61

60 I have not hesitated to mention, as the legends of St. Bridget or St. Catherine of Siena may seem to require, that a vision of the Virgin was seen near Florence, giving this warning: "If superstition will interpret all the events of the world, as the records of the Holy Scriptures have interpreted them, did not our Lord Jesus Christ, when he was about to die in Jerusalem, tell his apostles that he would ascend to the heaven? But have not the Popes ascended to the heaven, as in the scene of the vision?"—see Da Ponte's "Turibio Mora," book ii. p. 520. To prove the first, the editor of the Lectures on the Six Centuries of Pius XI. has referred to the accounts of the French, Italian, and Florentine annalists, as well as to the history of the church, and to the documents of Rome, which we have already quoted. 

61 The abbot of Monte Cassino was not consulted, as is the custom of other abbots, before the conferring of such a dignity on a citizen of Rome. 

62 The four crowns of heaven, introduced by Pius IV. at the Basle Council, were taken from the Ten, and the holy empire, and restored to Britain. 

63 The same account of the Pisan war, and the appearance of the Virgin, is given by Tommaso Lando, who took with him the Pope to Avignon, and who was converted by Pope Julius II. of the Jesuits, and of the Paulines, which are now united in the Congregation of Jesus. 

64 The elevations of the Pisans were the affair of the Council of Basle, and of the Pope and King of France. 

65 The Bishop of Carthage was the archbishop of Avignon, according to the canons of S. Petro, 425. 

66 The Spagnol is the same as the "Spagnoletti," a name which appears in the acts of the Council of Basle. 

67 The right of the Pisans to the crown of heaven was claimed by the Pope, in the bull of the year 1290, which is published in the Acta Sanctorum, aed. post. 1513, p. 1437. 

68 In the first book of the Hisoria de Concilio de Basile, P. M. Leclercq, of Lyons, has given a detailed account of the history of the Council of Basle, which was suppressed by Pope Sixtus II. of Rome, and has been printed in the Acta Sanctorum, aed. post. 1513, p. 1333. 

69 In the twenty-first year of the pontificate of Urban the Fifth, he wrote to the King of France, expressing his opinion in the following words: "The Church, as well as the State, is one. Both have the same rights, and the same authority. If a prince justifiably makes war on the Pope, he will find no friend in the church. But if a Pope makes war on the Prince, it is a nullity, and a sacrilege, which the church will never tolerate."—see his epistles, in the Index of the Benedictines, p. 1513, p. 1333.
THE DECLINE AND FALL. Chap. LXX.

the danger of a second emigration. The con-
clave was intimidated by the shouts, and encom-
passed by the armies of thirty thousand rebels; the
bells of the Capitol and St. Peter's rang an
alternate "Death, or an Italian pope!" was
the universal cry; the same threat was repeated
by the twelve thousand notables or chiefs of the
quarters, in the form of charitable advice; some preparations
were made for burning the obdurate cardinals;
and had they chosen a Transalpine subject, it is
probable that they would never have departed
alive from the Vatican. The same constant
imposed the necessity of disbanding in the eyes
of Rome and of the world: the pride and cruelty
of Urban presented a more irresistible danger;
and they soon discovered the features of the
tyrant, who could walk in his garden and recite
his breviary, while he heard from an adjacent
chamber six cardinals groaning on the rack.
His infallible seal, which loudly couched their
luxury and vice, would have attached them
to the stations and duties of their parishes at Rome;
and had he not fatally delayed a new promo-
tion, the French cardinals would have been
reduced to an helpless minority in the sacred
college. For these reasons, and in the hope of
repulsing the Alps, they rashly violated the peace
and unity of the church, and the merits of their
double choice are yet agitated in the Catholic
schools. The vanity rather than the interest of
the nation determined the court and clergy of
France. The states of Savoy, Sicily, Cyprus,
Arragon, Castile, Navarre, and Scotland, were
indulged by their example and authority to the
obedience of Clement the Seventh, and, after his
decoction, of Benedict the Thirteenth. Urban and
the principal states of Italy, Germany, Portugal,
England, the Low Countries, and the king-
doms of the North, adhered to the prior election
of Urban the Sixth, who was succeeded by
Boniface the Ninth, Innocent the Seventh, and
Gregory the Twelfth.

From the banks of the Tyber and
the Rhine, the hostile pontiffs and
countered each other with the pen
and the sword: the civil and ecclesiastical order
of society was disturbed, and the Romans had
their full share of the mischiefs of which they
may be assigned as the primary authors.

They had vainly flattered them-
selves with the hope of restoring
the vast of the ecclesiastical monarchy, and of
relieving their poverty with the tribute and
offerings of the nations; but the separation
of France and Spain diverted the stream of inces-
tive devotion; nor could the loss be compensated
by the two bullies which were crowded into
the space of ten years. By the avocations of the
schism, by foreign arms, and popular in-

mals, Urban the Sixth and his three successors
were often compelled to interrupt their residence
in the Vatican. The Colonna and Urzini still
exercised their deadly feuds; the bullerets
of Rome asserted, and abused the privileges of
a republic: the vicars of Christ, who had hired
a military force, chastised their rebellion with
the gibbet, sword, and dagger: and, in a friendly conference, eleven deputies of
the people were perfidiously murdered and cast
into the street. Since the invasion of Robert the
Norman, the Romans had pursued their domestic
quarrels without the dangerous interposition of
a stranger. But in the disorders of the schism,
their aspiring neighbour, Ladislaus king of Naples,
alternately supported and betrayed the pope and
the people; by the former he was declared
confident, or general, of the church, while the
latter submitted to his choice the nomination of
their magistrates. Besieging Rome by land and
water, he thrice entered the gates as a barbarous
conqueror; profaned the altars, violated the
virgin, pillaged the merchants, performed his
devotions at St. Peter's, and left a garrison in the
castle of St. Angelo. His arms were sometimes
unfortunate, and to a delay of three days he was
indicted for his life and crown; but Ladislaus
triumphed in his turn, and it was only his pres-
mature death that could save the metropolis
and the ecclesiastical state from the ambitious
conqueror who had assumed the title, or at least
the powers, of king of Rome. 71

I have not undertaken the eccle-
siastical history of the schism; but
Romantic, the object of these last chapters, is deeply interested in the disputed
succession of her sovereigns. The first counsel for the peace and union of Christendom
rose from the university of Paris, from the faculty of the Sorbonne, whose doctors were esteemed,
least in the Gallican church, as the most con-
mumate masters of theological science. 72 Pre-
dently warring all juridical inquiry into the
origin and merits of the dispute, they proposed
the following, as the most healing measure, that the two pretenders of Rome and Avignon
should abdicate at the same time, after qualifying the cardinals of the
diverse factions to join in a legitimate election;
and that the nations should submit 73 their
obedience, if six of the competitors preferred
his own interest to that of the public. At each
case, these physicians of the church degraded
the mischiefs of a faulty choice; but the policy of the conciles and the ambition of its
members were deaf to reason and justice; and whatsoever promises were made, the pope
could never be bound by the oath of the cardinals.
During fifteen years, the pacific designs of
the university were studied by the arts of the

70 The political cloisters of the popes seem to double the quantities as
for paxes; by the Italians, while the French and Germans are, in
point de langage, limited to the number of modern man. Hence
it is natural, or rather a custom, to think of the classics, when
speaking of the Roman gentlemen, as same of the grammatical
scholars of the present time. The number of those who have
indeed taken no part in this question are so few, that it is
probable, when one sees the number of the cardinals, to infer
from them that they are only the number of those who have
indeed taken part in this question. But this inference would
be erroneous, as the number of those who have indeed
taken part in this question is not the number of the cardinals.

71 In the year of 1295, in the town of Florence, near the church
of Santa Croce, a noble woman was found dead in the
arms of her husband. The lady had been a very kind
person, and the husband had often been the subject of her
kindness. On this occasion, it was generally supposed
that the husband had killed his wife, and that the body
had been thrown into the street. The husband, however,
could not be found, and the body was left in the street.

72 The principle of the universality of the church, which is so
greatly esteemed in the ecclesiastical writers of the present
time, is so much esteemed in the ecclesiastical writers of the
present time, that it is not strange, when one sees the number
of the cardinals, to infer from them that they are only the
number of those who have indeed taken part in this question.
But this inference would be erroneous, as the number of those
who have indeed taken part in this question is not the number
of the cardinals. 73 The universality of the church, which is
so great in the ecclesiastical writers of the present time, is
so great in the ecclesiastical writers of the present time, that
it is not strange, when one sees the number of the cardinals,
to infer from them that they are only the number of those
who have indeed taken part in this question. But this inference
would be erroneous, as the number of those who have indeed
taken part in this question is not the number of the cardinals.

74 The reputation of the university of Paris, which is so great
in the ecclesiastical writers of the present time, is so great
in the ecclesiastical writers of the present time, that it is not
strange, when one sees the number of the cardinals, to infer
from them that they are only the number of those who have
indeed taken part in this question. But this inference would
be erroneous, as the number of those who have indeed taken
part in this question is not the number of the cardinals. 75 The
reputation of the university of Paris, which is so great
in the ecclesiastical writers of the present time, is so great
in the ecclesiastical writers of the present time, that it is not
strange, when one sees the number of the cardinals, to infer
from them that they are only the number of those who have
indeed taken part in this question. But this inference would
be erroneous, as the number of those who have indeed taken
part in this question is not the number of the cardinals. 76 The
reputation of the university of Paris, which is so great
in the ecclesiastical writers of the present time, is so great
in the ecclesiastical writers of the present time, that it is not
strange, when one sees the number of the cardinals, to infer
from them that they are only the number of those who have
indeed taken part in this question. But this inference would
be erroneous, as the number of those who have indeed taken
part in this question is not the number of the cardinals.
rival pontiffs, the scruples or passions of their adherents, and the virulences of French faction, that rent the insanity of Charles the Sixth. At length a vigorous resolution was embraced; and a solemn embassy, of the titular patriarch of Alexandria, two bishops, five abbots, three knights, and twenty doctors, was sent to the courts of Avignon and Rome, to require, in the name of the church and king, the abdication of the two pretenders, of Peter de Luna, who styled himself Benedict the Thirteenth, and of Angelo Corrario, who assumed the name of Gregory the Twelfth. For the ancient honour of Rome, and the success of their commission, the ambassadors solicited a conference with the magistrates of the city, whom they gratified by a positive declaration, that the most Christian king did not entertain a wish of transporting the holy see from the Vatican, which he considered as the genuine and proper seat of the successor of St. Peter. In the name of the senate and people, an eloquent Roman asserted their desire to co-operate in the union of the church, deplored the temporal and spiritual calamities of the long schism, and requested the protection of France against the arms of the king of Naples. The answers of Benedict and Gregory were alike edifying and alike deceitful; and, in answering the demand of their abdication, the two rivals were animated by a common spirit. They agreed on the necessity of a previous interview; but the time, the place, and the manner, could never be ascertained by mutual consent. "If the one advances," says a servant of Gregory, "the other retreats; the one appears an animal fearful of the land, the other a creature apprehensive of the water. And thus, for a short remnant of life and power, will these aged priests endanger the peace and salvation of the Christian world." 74

Council of Pisa, 3 April 1409.

The Christian world was at length provoked by their obstinacy and fraud; they were deserted by their cardinals, who embraced each other as friends and colleagues; and their revolt was supported by a numerous assembly of prelates and ambassadors. With equal justice, the council of Pisa deposed the popes of Rome and Avignon; the council was unanimous in the choice of Alexander the Fifth, and his vacant seat was soon filled by a similar election of John the Twenty-third; the next prodigate of mankind. He, instead of extinguishing the schism, the schismatics of the French party assumed a third pretender to the chair of St. Peter. Such new claims of the synod and concile were disputed; three kings, of Germany, Hungary, and Naples, ad-
and inscriptions introduced the sense of the papal medals. Of his two immediate successors, Eugenius the Fourth was the last pope expelled by the tumults of the Roman people, and Nicholas the Fifth, the last who was imported by the presence of a Roman emperor. I. The conflict of Eugenius with the fathers of Basili, and the weight or apprehension of a new enemy, emboldened and provoked the Romans to usurp the temporal government of the city. They rose in arms, elected seven governors of the republic, and a constable of the Capitol; imprisoned the pope’s nephew; besieged his person in the palace; and shot volleys of arrows into his bath as he escaped down the Tyber in the habit of a monk. But he still possessed the castle of St. Angelo a faithful garrison and a train of artillery: their batteries incessantly thundered on the city, and a bullet more dexterously pointed broke down the barricade of the bridge, and scattered with a single shot the heroes of the republic. Their constancy was exhausted by a rebellion of five months. Under the tyranny of the Guelphs and Ghibellines, the wisest patriots regretted the dominion of the church; and their repentance was unanimous and effectual. The troops of St. Peter again occupied the Capitol; the magistrates returned to their homes; the most guilty were sentenced or exiled; and the legate, at the head of two thousand foot and four thousand horse, was rescued as the father of the city. The symphony of Ferrara and Florence, the fear or resentment of Florence, prolonged his absence; he was received by a submissive people; but the pontiff understood from the excitements of his triumphal entry, that to secure their loyalty and his own repose, he must grant without delay the abolition of the odious exchequer. II. Rome was restored, adorned, and enlightened, by the powerful reign of Nicholas the Fifth. In the midst of these labours and occupations, the pape was alarmed by the approach of Frederick the Third of Austria; though his fears could not be justly justified by the character or the power of the Imperial candidate. After drawing his military forces to the metropolis, and imposing the least security of oath and treaties, Nicholas received with a smiling countenance the faithful advocate and vasall of the church. So tame were the times, so fertile was the Austrian, that the pomp of his coronation was accomplished with order and harmony: but the superfluous honours were so disgraceful to an independent nation, that his successors have excused themselves from the solemn pilgrimage to the Vatican; and rest their Imperial title on the choice of the electors of Germany and the present of a Roman. The Medici family of Buonarroti, whose father-in-law, Niccolo de’ Medici, was the constant companion and confidant of the Turkish Sultan, has ever since occupied the papal throne. 

A citizen has remarked, with pride and pleasure, that the king of the Romans, after passing with the slight salute the cardinals and prelates who met him at the gate, distinguished the dress and person of the senator of Rome; and in this last farewell, the pageant of the empire and the republic were clasped in a friendly embrace. According to the laws of Rome, her first magistrate was required to be a doctor of laws, an alien, of a place at least forty miles from the city; with whose inhabitants he must not be connected in the third canonical degree of blood or alliance. The election was annual: a secret scrutiny was instituted into the conduct of the departing senator; nor could he be recalled to the same office till after the expiration of two years. A liberal salary of three thousand florins was assigned for his expense and reward; and his public appearance represented the majesty of the republic. His robes were gold; his works crimson velvet; and in the summer season of a lighter silk: he bore in his hand an ivory sceptre; the sound of trumpets announced his approach; and his solemn steps were precised at least by four lictors or attendants, whose red wands were enveloped with bands or streamers of the golden colour or livery of the city. His oath in the Capitol proclaims his right and duty, to observe and assert the laws, to control the proud, to protect the poor, and to exercise justice and mercy within the extent of his jurisdiction. In these useful functions he was assisted by three hundred strangers: the two collators, and the judge of criminal appeals; their frequent trials of robberies, rapes, and murders, are attested by the laws; and the weakness of these laws connives at the licentiousness of private feuds and armed associations for mutual defense. But the senator was confined to the administration of justice: the Capitol, the treasury, and the government of the city and its territory, were intrusted to the three conservatives, who were changed four times in each year: the will of the thirty-two men assembled under the banners of their respective chiefs, or superintendents, and the first of these was distinguished by the name and dignity of the prior. The popular legislature consisted of the secret and the common councils of the Romans. The former was composed of the magistrates and their immediate predecessors, with some fiscal and legal officers, and three classes of thirteen, twenty-six, and forty councillors; amounting in the whole to about one hundred and twenty persons. In the common council all male citizens had a right to vote: and the value of their privilege was enhanced by the care with which any foreigners were prevented from usurping the title and character of Romans. The tumult of a democracy was
a general rising of the people. Yet the humane Nicholas was still averse to accept the fruits of his life; and the traitor was removed from the scene of temptation to Bologna, with a liberal allowance for his support, and the easy obligation of presenting himself each day before the governor of the city. But Porcaro had learned from the younger Bruto, that with small riots no faith or gratitude should be observed: the exile declined against the arbitrary sentence; a party and a conspiracy were gradually formed; his nephew, a daring youth, assembled a band of volunteers; and on the appointed evening a feast was prepared at his house for the friends of the republic. Their leader, who had escaped from Bologna, appeared among them in a robe of purple and gold: his voice, his countenance, his gestures, bespake the man who had devoted his life or death to the glorious cause. In a studied oration, he expatiated on the motives and the means of their enterprise: the name and liberties of Rome; the mock and pride of those ecclesiastical tyrants; the active or passive consent of their fellow-citizens; three hundred soldiers, and four hundred exiles, long exercised in arms or in wrongs; the licence of revenge to edge their swords; and a million of ducats to reward their victory. It would be easy (he said), on the next day, the festival of the Epiphany, to seize the pope and his cardinals, before the doors, or at the altar, of St. Peter's; to lead them in chains under the walls of St. Angelo; to extort by the threat of their instant death a surrender of the castle; to ascend the vacant Capitol; to ring the alarm-bell; and to restore in a popular assembly the ancient republic of Rome. While he triumphed, he was already betrayed. The senator, with a strong guard, invaded the house: the nephew of Porcaro cut his way through the crowd; but the unfortunate Stephen was drawn from a chest, lamenting that his enemies had anticipated by three hours the execution of his design. After such manifest and repeated guilt, even the mercy of Nicholas was silent. Porcaro, and nine of his accomplices, were hanged without the benefit of the sacraments; and amidst the fumes and invectives of the papal court, the Romans pitted, and almost applauded, these martyrs of their country. But their applause was mute, their pity insensible, their liberty for ever extinct; and, if they have since rejected a vacancy of the throne or a scarcity of bread, such accidential tumults may be found in the bosom of the most ignoble servitude.

But the independence of the nobles, which was bestowed by discord, survives the freedom of the commons, which must be founded in union. A privilege of rape and oppression was long maintained by the barons of Rome; their houses were a fortress and a sanctuary: and the first

[Footnotes]

65 Micheli, ed. 1666, Rome, Ambros. 1, P. 8, Sevigné, XII.
cious train of banditti and criminals whom they protected from the law, repaid the hospitality with the service of their swords and daggers. The private interest of the pontiffs, or their nephews, sometimes involved them in these domestic feuds. Under the reign of Sixtus the Fourth, Rome was distracted by the battles and sieges of the rival houses; after the conflagration of his palace, the protonotary Colonna was tortured and beheaded; and Savelli, his captive friend, was murdered on the spot, for refusing to judge in the accusations of the victorious Urbani. But the popes no longer trembled in the Vatican; they had strength to command, if they had reason to claim, the obedience of their subjects; and the stranglers, who observed these partial disorders, admired the easy taxes and wise administration of the ecclesiastical state.

The spiritual thunders of the Vatican depend on the force of opinion; and if that opinion be supported by reason or passion, the sound may idly waste itself in the air; and the helpless priest is exposed to the brutal violence of a noble or a plebeian adversary. But after their return from Avignon, the keys of St. Peter were guarded by the sword of St. Paul. Rome was commanded by an impregnable citadel; the use of cannon is a powerful engine against popular seditions; a regular force of cavalry and infantry was enlisted under the honours of the popes; his ample resources supplied the resources of war; and, from the extent of his dominions, he could bring down on a rebellious city an army of hostile neighbours and loyal subjects. Since the union of the duchies of Ferrara and Urbino, the ecclesiastical state extends from the Mediterranean to the Adriatic, and from the confines of Naples to the banks of the Po; and as early as the sixteenth century, the greater part of that spacious and fruitful country acknowledged the lawful claims and temporal sovereignty of the Roman pontiffs. Their claims were readily deduced from the genuine, or fabulous, donations of the darker ages; the successive steps of their final settlement would engage too far in the transactions of Italy, and even of Europe; the crimes of Alexander the Sixth, the martial operations of Julius the Second, and the liberal policy of Leo the Tenth, a theme which has been adored by the pens of the ablest historians of the times. In the first period of their conquests, till the expedition of Charles the Eighth, the popes might successfully wrestle with the adjacent princes and states, whose military force was equal, or inferior, to their own. But as soon as the monarchs of France, Germany, and Spain, contended with gigantic arms for the dominion of Italy, they supplied with art the deficiency of strength; and concealed, in a labyrinth of wars and treaties, their aspiring views, and the immemorial hope of chasing the barbarians beyond the Alps. The wise balance of the Vatican was often subverted by the soldiers of the North and West, who were united under the standard of Charles the Fifth; the feebler and fluctuating policy of Clement the Seventh exposed his person and dominions to the conqueror; and Rome was assaulted seven months by a lawless army, more cruel and rapacious than the Goths and Vandals. After this severe lesson, the popes contracted their ambition, which was almost satisfied, resumed the character of a common parent, and abstained from all offensive hostilities, except in an angry quarrel, when the viceroy of Christ and the Turkish sultan were armed at the same time against the kingdom of Naples. The French and Germans at length withdrew from the field of battle: Milan, Naples, Sicily, Sardinia, and the ex-count of Tuscany, were firmly possessed by the Spaniards; and it became their interest to maintain the peace and independence of Italy, which continued almost without disturbance from the middle of the sixteenth to the opening of the eighteenth century. The Vatican was swayed and protected by the religious policy of the Catholic king; his prejudices and interest disposed him, in every dispute, to support the princes against the people; and instead of the encouragement, the aid, and the asylum, which they obtained from the adjacent states, the friends of liberty, or the enemies of law, were enclosed on all sides within the iron circle of despotism. The long habits of obedience and education subdued the turbulent spirit of the nobles and commoners of Rome. The harrow forged the arms and faction of their ancestors, and insensibly became the servants of luxury and government. Instead of maintaining a crowd of tenants and followers, the produce of their estates was consumed in the private expenses, which multiply the pleasures, and diminish the power, of the lord. The Colonna and Urdin yielded each other in the decoration of their palaces and chapels; and their antique splendour was rivalled or surpassed by the sudden opulence of the papal families. In Rome the voice of freedom and discord is no longer heard; and instead of the
be inclement. The genius of Sixtus the Fifth,68 burst from the gloom of a Franciscan cloister. In a reign of five years, he exterminated the outlaws and banditti, stabilized the profane sanctuaries of Rome,69 formed a naval and military force, restored and emulated the monuments of antiquity, and after a liberal and large increase of the revenue, left five millions of crowns in the castle of St. Angelo. But his justice was milled with cruelty, his activity was promoted by the ambition of conquest; after his death, the abuses revived; the treasury was dissipated; he emphasis on postherry thirty-five new taxes and the venality of offices; and, after his death, his state was demolished by an unjust, or an injured, people.67 The wild and original character of Sixtus the Fifth stands alone in the series of the pontiffs: the maxims and effects of their temporal government may be collected from the positive and comparative view of the arts and philosophy, the agriculture and trade, the wealth and population, of the ecclesiastical state. For myself it is my wish to depart in charity with all mankind, nor am I willing, in these last moments, to offend even the pope and clergy of Rome.69

**CHAP. LXXXI.**

**Prospect of the Ruins of Rome in the Fifteenth Century.** — Four Causes of Decay and Destruction. — Example of the Colosseum. — Restoration of the City. — Conclusion of the whole Work.

**In the last days of pope Eugenius IV, the Fourth, two of his scions, the learned Poggio,70 and a friend, ascended the Capitoline hill; reposed themselves among the ruins of columns and temples; and viewed from that commanding spot**

**Chapter LXVI.**

**Prospect of the Ruins of Rome in the Fifteenth Century.** — Four Causes of Decay and Destruction. — Example of the Colosseum. — Restoration of the City. — Conclusion of the whole Work.

**In the last days of pope Eugenius IV, the Fourth, two of his scions, the learned Poggio,70 and a friend, ascended the Capitoline hill; reposed themselves among the ruins of columns and temples; and viewed from that commanding spot**

**Chapter LXVI.**

**Prospect of the Ruins of Rome in the Fifteenth Century.** — Four Causes of Decay and Destruction. — Example of the Colosseum. — Restoration of the City. — Conclusion of the whole Work.

**In the last days of pope Eugenius IV, the Fourth, two of his scions, the learned Poggio,70 and a friend, ascended the Capitoline hill; reposed themselves among the ruins of columns and temples; and viewed from that commanding spot**

**Chapter LXVI.**

**Prospect of the Ruins of Rome in the Fifteenth Century.** — Four Causes of Decay and Destruction. — Example of the Colosseum. — Restoration of the City. — Conclusion of the whole Work.

**In the last days of pope Eugenius IV, the Fourth, two of his scions, the learned Poggio,70 and a friend, ascended the Capitoline hill; reposed themselves among the ruins of columns and temples; and viewed from that commanding spot**

**Chapter LXVI.**

**Prospect of the Ruins of Rome in the Fifteenth Century.** — Four Causes of Decay and Destruction. — Example of the Colosseum. — Restoration of the City. — Conclusion of the whole Work.

**In the last days of pope Eugenius IV, the Fourth, two of his scions, the learned Poggio,70 and a friend, ascended the Capitoline hill; reposed themselves among the ruins of columns and temples; and viewed from that commanding spot**

**Chapter LXVI.**

**Prospect of the Ruins of Rome in the Fifteenth Century.** — Four Causes of Decay and Destruction. — Example of the Colosseum. — Restoration of the City. — Conclusion of the whole Work.

**In the last days of pope Eugenius IV, the Fourth, two of his scions, the learned Poggio,70 and a friend, ascended the Capitoline hill; reposed themselves among the ruins of columns and temples; and viewed from that commanding spot**

**Chapter LXVI.**

**Prospect of the Ruins of Rome in the Fifteenth Century.** — Four Causes of Decay and Destruction. — Example of the Colosseum. — Restoration of the City. — Conclusion of the whole Work.

**In the last days of pope Eugenius IV, the Fourth, two of his scions, the learned Poggio,70 and a friend, ascended the Capitoline hill; reposed themselves among the ruins of columns and temples; and viewed from that commanding spot**

**Chapter LXVI.**

**Prospect of the Ruins of Rome in the Fifteenth Century.** — Four Causes of Decay and Destruction. — Example of the Colosseum. — Restoration of the City. — Conclusion of the whole Work.
the wide and various prospect of desolation. The place and the object gave ample scope for mourning on the vicissitudes of fortune, which spared neither man nor the proudest of his works, which buried empires and cities in a common grave; and it was agreed, that in proportion to her former greatness, the fall of Rome was the more awful and deplorable. Her primordial state, such as she might appear in a remote age, when Evander entertained the stranger of Troy, has been estimated by the fancy of Virgil. This Terean rock was then a savage and solitary thicket; in the time of the poet, it was crowned with the golden roofs of a temple; the temple is overthrown, the gold has been pillaged, the wheel of fortune has accomplished her revolution, and sacred ground is again disfigured with thorns and brambles. The hill of Capitol, on which we sit, was formerly the head of the Roman empire, the citadel of the earth, the terror of kings; illustrated by the footsteps of so many triumphs, enriched with the spoils and tributes of so many nations. This spectacle of the world, how is it fallen! how changed! how defaced! the path of victory is obliterated by vines, and the boughs of the senate are concealed by a dung-hill. Cast your eyes on the Palatine hill, and seek among the shapeless and enormous fragments, the marble theatre, the obelisks, the colossal statues, the porticoes of Nero's palace; survey the other hills of the city, the vacant space is interrupted only by ruins and garrisons. The forum of the Roman people, where they assembled to enact their laws and elect their magistrates, is now enclosed for the cultivation of pot-herbs, or thrown open for the reception of swine and buffaloes. The public and private edifices, that were founded for eternity, lie prostrate, naked, and broken, like the limbs of a mighty giant; and the ruin is the more visible, from the stupendous relics that have survived the injuries of time and fortune. These relics are minutely described by Poggius, one of the first who raised his eyes from the monuments of legendary to those of classical superstition. 1. Besides a bridge, an arch, a sepulchre, and the pyramid of Cestius, he could discern, of the age of the republic, a double row of vaults, in the salt-office of the Capitol, which were inscribed with the name and munificence of Caesarius. 2. Eleven temples were visible in some degree, from the perfect form of the Pantheon, to the three arches and a marble column of the temple of peace, which Vesuvian ejected after the civil wars and the Jewish triumph. 3. Of the number, which he rashly defines, of seven thrones, or public baths, some were sufficiently entire to represent the use and distribution of the several parts, but those of Dioecletian and Antoninus Caracalla.
Natus to the tradition of the people, and he distinctly enumerates seven theatres, eleven baths, twelve arches, and eighteen palaces, at which many had disappeared before the time of Augustus. It is apparent, that many stately monuments of antiquity survived till a late period; and that the principles of destruction acted with vigour and increasing energy in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries. 2. The same reflection must be applied to the three last ages; and we should vainly seek the Sentimentum of Severus; which is celebrated by Petrarch and the antiques of the sixteenth century. While the Roman edifices were still entire, the first blows, however weighty and impetuous, were resisted by the solidity of the mass and the harmony of the parts; but the slightest touch would precipitate the fragments of arches and columns, that already nodded to their fall.

After a diligent enquiry, I can discern four principal causes of the ruin of Rome, which continued to operate in a period of more than a thousand years. 1. The injuries of time and nature. 11. The hostile attacks of the barbarians and Christians. III. The use and abuse of the materials. And, IV. The domestic quarrels of the Romans.

1. The injuries of time and nature. 1. The art of man is able to construct monuments far more permanent than the narrow span of his own existence; yet these monuments, like himself, are perishable and frail, and in the boundless annals of time, his life and his labours must equally be measured as a fleeting moment. Of a simple and solid edifice, it is not easy however to circumscribe the duration. As the woe of ancient days, the pyramids attracted the curiosity of the ancients; and generations, the leaves of autumn, have dropped into the grove; and after the fall of the Pharaohs and Ptolemies, the Caesars and caliphs, the same pyramids stand erect and unbroken above the floods of the Nile. A complex figure of various and minute parts is more accessible to injury and decay; and the silent lapse of time is often accelerated by hurricanes and earthquakes, by fires and foundations. The air and earth have countless been shaken; and the lofty turrets of Rome have toppled from their foundations; but the seven hills do not appear to be placed on the great system of the globe; nor has the city, in any age, been exposed to the corruptions of nature, which, in the climate of Aetna, Lisbon, or Lima, have eroded in a few moments the works of ages into dust. Fire is the most powerful agent of life and death; the rapid mischief may be kindled and propagated by the industry or negligence of mankind; and every period of the Roman annals is marked by the repetition of similar calamities. A memorable conflagration, the guilt or misfortune of Nero's reign, continued, though with unequal fury, either six, or nine days. Innumerable buildings, crowded in close and crooked streets, supplied perpetual fuel for the flames; and when they ceased, four only of the fourteen regions were left entire; three were totally destroyed, and seven were deformed by the relics of smoking and cataract edifices. In the full meridian of empire, the metropolis was fresh from the freshness of her ashes; yes the memory of the old degraded their irreparable losses, the arts of Greece, the trophies of victory, the monuments of primitive or fabulous antiquity. In the days of distress and anarchy, every wound is mortal: Every fall irrecoverable; nor can the damage be restored either by the public care of government, or the activity of private interest.

Yet two causes may be alleged, which render the calamity of fire more destructive to a city than a decayed. 1. The more combustible materials of brick, timber, and metals, are first melted or consumed; but the flames may play without injury or effect on the naked walls, and masonry arches, that have been depopulated of their ornament. 2. It is among the common and plebeian habitations, that a mischiefous spark is most easily blown with a conflagration; but as soon as they be removed, the greater edifices which have resisted or escaped, are left as so many islands in a state of solitude and safety.

From her situation, Rome is exposed to the danger of frequent inundations. Without excepting the Tiber, the rivers that descend from either side of the Apennines have a short and irregular course; a shallow stream in the summer heats; an impetuous torrent, when it is swelled in the spring or winter, by the fall of rain, and the melting of the snows. When the current is repelled from the sea by adverse winds, when the ordinary bed is inadequate to the weight of waters, they rise above the banks, and overspread, without limits or control, the plains and cities of the adjacent country. Soon after the triumph of the first Punic war, the Tiber was increased by unnatural rains; and the foundation, surpassing all former summits of time and place, destroyed all the buildings that were situated below the hills of Rome. According to the variety of ground, the same mischief was produced by different means; and the edifices were either swept away by the sudden impulse, or dissolved and undermined by the long continuance of the flood.

Under the reign of Augustus, the same calamity...
was renewed: the lawless river overturned the palaces and temples on its banks; \( ^{14} \) and, after the labours of the emperor in cleansing and widening the bed that was encumbered with ruins, \( ^{15} \) the vigilance of his successors was exercised by similar dangers and designs. The project of diverting into the channels the Tyber itself, or some of the dependent streams, was long opposed by superstition and local interests; \( ^{16} \) nor did the use compensate the toil and cost of the tardy and imperfect execution. The aversity of rivers is the nobility and most important victory which man has obtained over the licentiousness of nature; \( ^{17} \) and if such were the ravages of the Tyber under a firm and active government, what could oppose, or who could enumerate, the injuries of the city, after the fall of the Western empire? A remedy was at length produced by the evil itself: the accumulation of rubbish, and the earth, that has been washed down from the hills, is supposed to have elevated the plain of Rome, fourteen or fifteen feet, perhaps, above the ancient level; \( ^{18} \) and the modern city is less accessible to the attacks of the river, \( ^{19} \)

II. The Goths and the Christians, have neglected to enquire how far they were animated by a hostile principle, and how far they possessed the means and the leisure to satiate their cruelty. In the preceding chapters of this History, I have described the triumph of barbarism and religion; and I can only resume, in a few words, their real or imaginary connection with the ruin of ancient Rome. Our fancy may create, or adopt, a pleasing romance, that the Goths and Vandals sailed from Scandia's sea to avenge the flight of Odin; \( ^{20} \) to break the chains, and to chastise the oppressors, of mankind; that they wished to burn the records of classic literature, and to Found their national architecture on the broken remains of the Tuscan and Corinthian order. But in simple truth, the northern conquerors were neither sufficiently savage, nor sufficiently refined, to entertain such aspiring ideas of destruction and revenge. The shepherds of Scythia and Germany had been educated in the armies of the empire, whose discipline they acquired, and whose weakness they invaded: with the familiar use of the Latin tongue, they had learned to reverence the name and the titles of Rome; and, though incapable of simulating, they were more inclined to admire, than to abolish, the arts and studies of a brighter period. In the

transient possession of a rich and unresisting capital, the soldiers of Alaric and Genseric were stimulated by the passions of a victorious army; amidst the wanton indulgence of lust or cruelty, portable wealth was the object of their search; nor could they derive either pride or pleasure from the unprofitable reflection, that they had bettered to the ground the works of the consuls and Censors. Their movements were indeed precocious; the Goths evacuated Rome on the sixth, \( ^{30} \) the Vandals on the fifteenth, day; \( ^{26} \) and, though it be far more difficult to build than to destroy, their hasty assault would have made a slight impression on the solid piles of antiquity. We may remember, that both Alaric and Genseric affected to spare the buildings of the city, that they subsisted in strength and beauty under the auspicious government of Theodoric; \( ^{27} \) and that the momentary resentment of Totila \( ^{28} \) was discharged by his own temper and the advice of his friends and enemies. From these innocent barbarians, the reproach may be transferred to the Catholics of Rome. The statues, altars, and houses of the ancient Christians, were an abomination in their eyes; and in the absolute command of the city, they might labour with zeal and perseverance to erase the idolatry of their ancestors. The demolition of the temples in the East \( ^{55} \) affords to them an example of conduct, and an argument of belief; and it is probable, that a portion of guilt or merit may be imputed with justice to the Roman princes. Yet their abstemiousness was confined to the monuments of heathen superstition; and the civil structures that were dedicated to the business or pleasure of society might be preserved without injury or scandal. The change of religion was accomplished, not by a popular tumult, but by the decrees of the emperors, of the senate, and of time. Of the Christian hierarchy, the bishops of Rome were commonly the most prudent and least fanatic; nor can any positive charge be opposed to the mitigation of existing laws and converting the magisterial structure of the Patriarchate. \( ^{57} \)

III. The value of any object that supplies the wants or pleasures of mankind, is compounded of its substance and its form, of the materials and the manufacture. Its price must depend on the number of persons by whom it may be acquired and used; on the extent of the market; and consequently on the ease or difficulty of remote exportation, according to the nature of the commodity, its local situation, and the temporary circumstances of the world. The barbarian con-
OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

The Roman Empire was a vast and influential state that spread throughout much of Europe, the Middle East, and North Africa. It was renowned for its military might, cultural achievements, and the spread of Roman law and culture.

The fall of the Roman Empire is often associated with the rise of Christianity, which became the dominant religion of the empire. The empire's vast territories and resources were eventually divided among various successor states, leading to the eventual dissolution of the Roman Empire as a unified state.

The legacy of the Roman Empire continues to influence modern politics, law, and culture, and its impact can be seen in many aspects of contemporary society.
The decline and fall of the Roman Empire was to demolish (as we have already seen) one hundred and forty of the towers of Rome; and, in the last days of anarchy and discord, as late as the reign of Martin the Fifth, forty-four still stood in one of the thirteen or fourteen regions of the city. To this miscellaneous purpose, the remains of antiquity were most readily adapted; the temples and arches afforded a broad and solid basis for the new structures of brick and stone; and we can name the modern terraces that were raised on the triumphal monuments of Julius Caesar, Titus, and the Antonines. With some slight alterations, a theatre, an amphitheatre, a mausoleum, was transformed into a strong and spacious citadel. I need not repeat, that the mole of Adrian has assimilated the title and form of the castle of St. Angelo;  

The Septimium of Severus was capable of standing against a royal army;  

the sepulchres of Metella have sunk under its outworks;  

the theatres of Pompey and Marcellus were occupied by the Savelli and Urbin family;  

and the rough ruin has been gradually softened to the splendor and elegance of an Italian palace. Even the churches were encompassed with arms and bulwarks, and the military engines on the roof of St. Peter's were the terror of the Vatican and the scandal of the Christian world. Whatever is fortified will be attacked; and whatever is attacked may be destroyed. Could the Romans have wrenched from the popes the castle of St. Angelo, they had resolved by a public decree to annihilate that monument of servility. Every building of defence was exposed to a siege; and in every siege the arts and engines of destruction were laboriously employed. After the death of Nicholas the Fourth, Rome, without a sovereign or a senate, was abandoned six months to the fury of civil war.  

The houses," says a cardinal and poet of the time,  

were crushed by the weight and velocity of enormous stones;  

the walls were perforated by the strokes of the battering-rams;  

the towers were involved in fire and smoke; and the assailants were melted by rapias and revenge." The work was consummated by the tyranny of the laws; and the factions of Italy alternately exercised a blind and thoughtless vengeance on their adversaries, whose houses and castles they razed to the ground. In comparing the days of foreign, with the ages of domestic, hostility, we must
pronounce, that the latter have been far more ruinous to the city; and our opinion is confirmed by the evidence of Petrarcb. "Behold," says the learned, "the relics of Rome, the image of her pristine greatness! Neither time, nor the barbarian, can boast the merit of this stupendous and drear destruction: it was perpetrated by her own citizens, by the most illustrious of her sons, and your ancestors (he writes to a noble Annibaldi) have done with the battering-ram what the Punic hero could not accomplish with the sword." The influence of the two last principles of decay must in some degree be multiplied by each other; since the houses and towers, which were subverted by civil war, required a new and perpetual supply from the monuments of antiquity.

These general observations may be separately applied to the amphitheatre of Titus, which has obtained the name of the Colosseum, either from its magnitudes, or from Nero's colossal statue; an edifice, had it been left to time and nature, which might perhaps have claimed an eternal duration. The curious antiquaries, who have computed the numbers and seats, are disposed to believe, that above the upper row of stone steps, the amphitheatre was encircled and elevated with several stages of wooden galleries, which were repeatedly consumed by fire, and restored by the emperors. Whatever was precious, or portable, or spoilable, the statues of gods and heroes, and the costly ornaments of sculpture, which were cast in brass, or overspread with leaves of silver and gold, became the first prey of conquerors or fanatics, of the avarice of the barbarians or the Christians. In the many stones of the Colosseum, many have discerned, and the two most probable conjectures represent the various accidents of its decay. These stones were connected by solid links of brass or iron, nor had the eye of rapins overlooked the value of the thrown metals; the vacant space thus converted into a fair or market; the arts of the Colosseum are mentioned in an ancient survey; and the Christians were-persecuted or enslaved to receive the poles that supported the shops or tents of the mechanic trades. Reduced to its naked majesty, the Flavian amphitheatre was extemporized with awe and admiration by the pilgrims of the North; and their rude enthusiasm broke forth in a sublime proverbial expression, which is recorded in the eighth century, in the fragments of the venerable Bede: "As long as the Colosseum stands, Rome shall stand; when the Colosseum falls, Rome will fall; when Rome falls, the world will fall." In the modern system of war, a situation commanded by three hills would not be chosen for a fortress; but the strength of the walls and arches could resist the engines of assault; a numerous garrison might be lodged in the enclosure; and while one faction occupied the Vatican and the Capitol, the other was entrenched in the Lateran and the Colosseum.

The abolition at Rome of the ancient games must be understood with some latitude; and the carnival sports, of the Testacean mount and the Circus Agonalis, were regulated by the law or custom of the city. The senators presided with dignity and pomp to adjudge and distribute the prizes, the gold ring, or the palma, as it was styled, of cloth or silk. A tribute on the Jews supplied the annual expense; and the races, on foot, on horseback, or in chariots, were enabled by a lift and tournament of seventy-two of the Roman youths. In the year one thousand three hundred and thirty, a bull-fight, after the fashion of the Moors and Spaniards, was celebrated in the Colosseum itself, and the living manners are painted in a diary of the times. A conventual order of bachelors was restored; and a general proclamation, as far as Rimini and Ravenna, invited the nobles to exercise their skill and courage in this perilous adventure. The Roman ladies were marshalled in four squadrons, and seated in three balsamies, which on this day, the third of September, were lined with scarlet cloth. The fair Jacoba di Rovere led the matrons from beyond the Tyber, a pure and native race, who still represent the features and character of antiquity. The remainder of the city was divided as usual between the Colosseum and Ursini: the two factions were proud of the number and beauty of their female bands; the charms of Sorella Ursini are mentioned with praise; and the Colosseum respected the absence of the youngest of their house, who

46 Petrarca thus accounts for his friend, who, with danger and labour, discovered ancient monuments of the most curious description, and gave his name to the study of archaeology. Quaerite hanc opus narrare hic, Petru, eius victoriam, eorumque gesta, et in mea quae fides? 46. Quaerite hanc opus narrare hic, Petru, eius victoriam, eorumque gesta, et in mea quae fides? 46. Quaerite hanc opus narrare hic, Petru, eius victoriam, eorumque gesta, et in mea quae fides? 46. Quaerite hanc opus narrare hic, Petru, eius victoriam, eorumque gesta, et in mea quae fides? 46. Quaerite hanc opus narrare hic, Petru, eius victoriam, eorumque gesta, et in mea quae fides?
the demand for the materials was a daily and continual want, which the citizens could gratify without restraint or remorse. In the fourteenth century, a scandalous act of concord secured to both factions the privilege of extracting stones from the free and common quarry of the Colosseum;[23] and Poggio laments, that the greater part of these stones had been burnt to lime by the folly of the Romans.[24] To check this abuse, and to prevent the nocturnal crimes that might be perpetrated in the vast and gloomy recess, Eugenius the Fourth surrounded it with a wall and, by a charter long extinct, granted both the ground and edifice to the monks of an adjacent convent.[25] After his death, the wall was overthrown in a tumult of the people; and had they then respected the noblest monument of their fathers, they might have justified the resolve that it should never be degraded to private poverty. The inside was damaged; but in the middle of the sixteenth century, an era of taste and learning, the exterior circumference of one thousand six hundred and twelve feet was still entire and inviolate; a triple elevation of fourscore arches, which rose to the height of one hundred and eight feet. Of the present ruin, the nephews of Paul the Third are the guilty agents; and every traveller who views the Farnese palace may curse the sacrilege and luxury of these upstart princes.[26] A similar approach is applied to that of Barberini; and the repetition of injury might seem to descend from every reign, till the Colosseum was placed under the safeguard of religion by the most liberal of the pontiffs, Benedict the Fourteenth, who consecrated a spot which persecution and Fable had stained with the blood of so many Christian martyrs.[27]

When Petrarch first gratified his eyes with a view of those monuments, whose scattered fragments so far surpass the most elegant descriptions, he was astonished at the supine indifference[27] of the Romans themselves;[28] he was humbled rather than pleased by the discovery, that, except his friend Rienzi and one of the Colosseum, a stranger of the Rhone was more conversant with these antiquities than the nobles and natives of the metropolis.[29] The ignorance and crudity of the Romans are elaborately displayed in the old survey of the city which was composed about the beginning of the thirteenth century; and, without dwelling on the manifold errors of name and place, the legend of the Capitol[30] may provoke a smile of contempt and indignation. "The Capitol," says the anonymous
writer, is so named as being the head of the world; where the consuls and senators formerly resided for the government of the city and the globe. The strong and lofty walls were covered with glass and gold, and crowned with a roof of the richest and most curious carving. Below the citadel stood a palace, of gold for the greatest part, decorated with precious stones, and whose value might be esteemed at one third of the world itself. The statues of all the provinces were arranged in order, each with a small bell suspended from its neck, and such was the contrivance of art and magic, that if the province rebelled against Rome, the statue turned round to that quarter of the heavens, the bell rang, the prophet of the Capitol reported the prodigy, and the senate was admonished of the impending danger. A second example of less importance, though of equal absurdity, may be drawn from the two marble horses, led by two naked youths, which have since been transported from the battle of Constantine to the Quirinal hill. The groundless application of the names of Phidias and Praxiteles may perhaps be excused; but these Greek sculptors should not have been removed above four hundred years from the age of Pericles to that of Tiberius; they should not have been transformed into two philosophers or magicians, whose nakedness was the symbol of truth and knowledge, who revealed to the emperor his most secret actions; and, after refusal of pecuniary recompense, solicited the honour of raising this eternal monument of themselves. Thus it came to the power of magic, the Romans were insensible to the beauties of art; no more thanifiable were visible to the eyes of Poggio, and of the multitudes which chance or design had buried under the ruins; the resurrection was fortunately delayed till a safer and more enlightened age.

The Nile, which now adorns the Vatican, had been explored by some labourers, in digging a vineyard near the temple, or convent of the Minerva; but the impatient proprietor, who was tormented by some visits of curiosity, reduced the unprofitable marble to its former grave. The discovery of a statue of Pompey, ten feet in length, was the occasion of a lawsuit. It had been found under a partition wall; the equitable judge had pronounced, that the land should be separated from the body, to satisfy the claims of the contiguous owners; and the sentence would have been executed, if the intervention of a cardinal, and the liberality of a pope, had not rescued the Roman hero from the hands of his barbarous countrymen.

But the clouds of barbarism, which were gradually dispelled; and the peaceful authority of Martin the Fifth and his successors, restored the ornaments of the city as well as the order of the ecclesiastical state. The improvements of Rome, since the fifteenth century, have not been the spontaneous produce of freedom and industry. The first and most natural root of a great city, is the labour and population of the adjacent country, which supplies the materials of subsistence, of manufactures, and of foreign trade. But the greater part of the Campagna of Rome is reduced to a dreary and desolate wilderness; the overgrown estates of the princes and the clergy are cultivated by the lazy hands of indigent and hopeless vassals; and the scanty harvests are confined or exported for the benefit of a monopy. A second and more artificial cause of the growth of a metropolis, is the residence of a monarch, the expense of a luxurious court, and the tribute of dependent provinces. Those provinces and tributes had been lost in the fall of the empire; and if some streams of the silver of Peru and the gold of Brazil have been attracted by the Vatican; the revenues of the cardinals, the fees of office, the obligations of pilgrims and clientes, and the remnant of ecclesiastical taxes, afford a pure and precarious supply, which maintains however the richness of the court and city. The population of Rome, far below the measure of the great capitals of Europe, does not exceed one hundred and seventy thousand inhabitants; and within the spacious encircling walls of the seven hills is overspread with vineyards and ruins. The beauty and splendour of the modern city may be ascribed to the riches of the government, to the influence of superstition. Each reign (the exception of course) has been marked by the rapid elevation of a new family, enriched by the childish panoply of the expense of the church and country. The palaces of the less fortunate nephews are the most costly monuments of elegance and servitude; the perfect arts of architecture, painting, and sculpture, have been prostituted in their service; and their galleries and gardens are decorated with the most precious works of antiquity, which taste or vanity has prompted them to collect. The ecclesiastical revenues were more decently employed by the popes themselves in the pomp of the Catholic worship; but it is superfluous to enumerate their pious foundations of altars, chapels, and churches, since these lesser kaisers are eclipsed by the sun of the Vatican, by the crown of St. Peter, the most glorious structure by nature.
that ever has been applied to the use of religion. The name of Julius the Second, Leo the Tenth, and Sixtus the Fifth, is accompanied by the superior merit of Bramante and Fontana, of Raphael and Michael-Angelo; and the same munificence which had been displayed in palaces and temples, was directed with equal zeal to revive and stimulate the labours of antiquity. Prostrate obelisks were raised from the ground; and erected in the most conspicuous places; of the eleven aqueducts of the Caesars and Constantine, three were restored; the artificial rivers were conducted over a long series of time, and the new aqueducts, to discharge into marble basins a flood of salubrious and refreshing waters; and the spectator, impatient to ascend the steps of St. Peter's, is detained by a column of Egyptian granite, which rises between two lofty and perpetual fountains, to the height of one hundred and twenty feet. The map, the description, the monuments of ancient Rome, have been elucidated by the diligence of the antiquarian and the student; 74 the footsteps of heroes, the relics, not of superstition, but of empire, are devoutly visited by a new race of pilgrims from the remote, and once savage, countries of the North.

Of these pilgrims, and of every nation and race of men, the attention will be excited by an history of the decline and fall of the Roman empire; the greatest, perhaps, and most awful scene, in the history of mankind. The various causes and progressive effects are connected with many of the events most interesting in human annals; the artful policy of the Caesars, who long maintained the name and image of a free republic; the disorders of military despotism; the rise, establishment, and decay of Christianity; the division of the empire; the invasion and settlements of the barbarians of Germany and Scythia; the institutions of the civil law; the character and religion of Mahomet; the temporal sovereignty of the popes; the restoration and decay of the Western empire of Charlemagne; the crusades of the Latins in the East; the conquests of the Suahel and Turks; the ruin of the Greek empire; the state and revolutions of Rome in the middle age. The historian may applaud the importance and variety of his subject; but, while he is conscious of his own imperfections, he must often accuse the deficiency of his materials. It was among the ruins of the Capitol, that I first conceived the idea of a work which has occupied and exercised near twenty years of my life, and which, however inadequate to my own wishes, I finally deliver to the curiosity and candour of the public.

Alaric I. King of the Goths, his overthrow by Clovis king of the Franks, 496.

Alliance, the act of Marusia, his revolt, and government of France, 575.

Alphonso of France, persecution of, 971.

Alphonso. See Charles Alphonso.

Alphonso, king of the Lombards, his history, 743. His overthrow of the Visigoths against the Goths, 743. His success in Spain, 743. his overthrow of the Goths, ibid. He establishes the autonomy of Italy, ibid. Overruns what is now called Lombardy, 743. His attempt to establish a kingdom in Lombardy, ibid. Takes Pavia, and makes it his capital, 743. He is murdered at the instigation of his queen, Rosamunde, ibid. Overthrows the books of, in Egypt, destroyed by Decianus, 153.

Alphonso. See Alphonso.

Alphonso, siege and capture of, by the Saracen, 935. It is recovered by the Greeks, 941. It is taken and sacked by Tamerlanes, 1193.

Alexander 111. Pope, establishes the papal election in the college of cardinals, 1296.

Alexander, archbishop of Alexandria, communicates Arinis for his body, 237.

Alexander Severus, is declared Caesar by the emperor Elagabalus, and is sent to the theme, 57. Education and temper, ibid. His death, ibid.


The Christian theology founded in a systematical form, ibid. The subjection of the subject to the church, 101. Number of martyrs who suffered there, in the persecution of Diocletian, 101. The theological system of Plato taught in the schools, 101. Questions concerning the nature of the Trinity, ibid. Teaching in the philosophical and Christian schools of Athens, 101-102. His appointment of the archbishop of Athens, 102. His interference in the church, 102. His activity is deprecated by the orthodox, ibid. His death, 102. This city, which is called the city of Filius, is destroyed, 101, 102, 103.


Alexius II. Emperor, son of Alexius I., his character and influence, 111, 112.

Alexius Comnenus, emperor of Constantiople, 922.

Alexius Comnenus, the Greek general, selects Constantiople from the Latina, 924.

Alexius Comnenus, his friendship with the Latins, 924. His escape from his mother, who had deposited his dower in his favor, 924. Both the crusaders for his restoration, 926. Resignation by the emperor, 926. His death, 927.

Alexius makes an endowment to the shrine of St. Thomas in India, 926.

Alexius I. Of Trebizond, 927.

Alexius. See Michael Alexius.

Alexius, Marq. of the patriarchal legation, 927. His journey, 927. His appearances, 927. His suppression of the Greek scholars, 927. Devoted to at home, 927. His appointment of the patriarch, ibid.

Alexius, brother of Constantine, for his brother's king of the Goths, 928. It is revised, ibid.

Alexius command of Caracalla, and weeps his victory, 928.

Alexius command of Caracalla, and weeps his victory, 928.

Alexius command of Caracalla, and weeps his victory, 928.

Alexius command of Caracalla, and weeps his victory, 928.

Alexius command of Caracalla, and weeps his victory, 928.

Alexius command of Caracalla, and weeps his victory, 928.
Anu, a triune of the Lydians, their terrific mode of waging war, 162.


Artistic, his legal better adapted to the detection of error, than for the discovery of truth, 397.

Arviss, is driven from the Persia by the Persians, 125. His relieving the emperor Julian, 125. His death, 126. His lamentations occasioning the Trinity, 357. Strength of his party, 356. His opinions examined in the council of Nice, 356. Account of his death, 356. His influence and rivals, 357. His death, 357.

Arviss. See the Persians, the circumstances.

Arviss, the Armenians persecute the Catholic in Armenia, 358.

Arviss, is seized by the Persian king, 602. Tiridates restored, 604. He is again expelled by the Persians, 604. He is restored to Tiridates by treaty between the Roman and Persian, 604. He is restored truceary to Persia, on the death of Tiridates, 605. Character of Arviss Tirids, king of, and his conduct toward the emperor Julian, 592. He is restored by order to a Persian province, 597. His disaffection and revolt, 598. His, death, 598. The Armenians persecute the Catholic in Armenia, 598.

Arviss, is seized by the Persian king, 596. Tiridates restored, 598. He is again expelled by the Persians, 598. He is restored to Tiridates by treaty between the Roman and Persian, 598. He is restored truceary to Persia, on the death of Tiridates, 598. Character of Arviss Tirids, king of, and his conduct toward the emperor Julian, 596. He is restored by order to a Persian province, 598. His disaffection and revolt, 598. His, death, 598. The Armenians persecute the Catholic in Armenia, 598.

Arviss, the provinces of, form a large government independent of the Roman empire, 596. They are included in the province of Persis, 600. Settlement of Bithynia in, 598, 600. Administrative, 596. Extensive, 600. Religious, 596. The Armenians persecute the Catholic in Armenia, 600.

Arviss, offensive, is laid made by the Roman, and adopted by the barbarians, 363. The extent of the provinces, 363. A vast of Bithynia, his name, and history, 1190, 1192. Arviss, derivation of the name of that province, 364, 366.

Arviss, his visit to, and description of, Colchis, 364. Arviss Tiron, king of Armenia, his character, and his death, 365. He is restored to Tiridates by treaty between the Roman and Persian, 365. He is restored to a Persian province, 367. He is again expelled by the Persians, 367. He is restored to Tiridates by treaty between the Roman and Persian, 367. He is restored truceary to Persia, on the death of Tiridates, 367. Character of Arviss Tirids, king of, and his conduct toward the emperor Julian, 367. He is restored by order to a Persian province, 367. His disaffection and revolt, 367. The Armenians persecute the Catholic in Armenia, 367. The Armenians persevere the Catholic in Armenia, 367. The Armenians persevere the Catholic in Armenia, 367.

Arviss, his fiery against the emperor Justinius, 706. He is intrusted with the command of the armament sent to Italy, 706. He is restored to Tiridates by treaty between the Roman and Persian, 706. He is restored to a Persian province, 706. He is restored to Tiridates by treaty between the Roman and Persian, 706. He is restored truceary to Persia, on the death of Tiridates, 706. Character of Arviss Tirids, king of, and his conduct toward the emperor Julian, 706. He is restored by order to a Persian province, 706. His disaffection and revolt, 706. The Armenians persecute the Catholic in Armenia, 706. The Armenians persecute the Catholic in Armenia, 706.

Arviss, duke of Egypt under Constans, is detained by the emperor Julian, 706. And, consul, 706. Arviss, king of the Bithynia, his history observed by Ammian, 707.

Artillery, of the Roman legion, 5.

Armenia, province, product of Gaul, his trial and condemnation, 576. Armenian, of the city of Hamah, born in the year 353, 354.

Arviss, battle of, between Gaderick king of Armavir and the sultan of Egypt, 1258.

Arviss, in ecclesiastical history, account of, 376. Arviss, a vessel under Constantius, leaves his retirement to oppose the usurper Procopius, 376.

Aristocles, the Franks, his military power under Tholus, 388. He is defeated by Theodosius, 388. Theodorus, 388.

Aristocles, the Franks, his military power under Tholus, 388. He is defeated by Theodosius, 388. Aristocrates, the emperor Theodosius, succeeds in the empire of the East, 386. His magnanimity, 386. Extent of his dominions, 388. Administration of his favorite march Entrepris, 388. His great love against the Franks opposed by Tholus, 388. His interview with the emperor Julian, 388. His death, and supposed assassination by order of Julian, 389. Aristocrates, the usurper of Italy, is deposed by the emperor Julian, 390. His treason, 390.

Aristocrates, the object of their expedition to Colchis, 391. Arviss, daughter of the emperor Leon, and wife of Zeuxis, her character, and marriage afterward with Arviss, 392.
Adriss, sister of the emperor of Ethiopia, 293.

Adriss, princess of the emperor of Ethiopia, 293.

Adriss, Tale of the emperor, 293.

Aethiopia, the empire of, 293.

Aethiopian, the son of Asa, king of Ethiopia, 293.

Aethiopius, the Coptic emperor, 293.

Aethiopius, the emperor, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.

Africa, the Roman province of, 293.
his friend Gregory Nazianzen, under the appearance of consecration, 234. The appearance of the monk of Pontus, 234.

Bulbiana, brother of the emperor Vespasian, is intrusted with the command of the army sent against the Parthians, 451. He becomes his first standard-bearer, and both his commanding officer and brother-in-law, 491. His promotion to Emperor, and death, 513.

Bulwark, high point of the sea, a his patronage. 34. A crowned emperor at Benevent, 256. See Eulogius.

Bullennus, brother-in-law to Constantine, revolts against him. 374.

Bunias, its foundation and situation, 594.

Bunno, poet of Rome, described, 252.

Buruma, reception of the emperor Julian there, 591. He is received in the circus, for the public games at Rome, 593.

Buxedra, G. M., his character of his Rerum Cosmopolitium de, 576.

Cary, battle of, between Mahomet and the Kehris of Moos, 877.

Christians of Arabia, their mode of life, 354.

Conseil, on the structure of their courts and state, 954.

Constantinople, the capital and military post, 532. It is described of the Emperor Constantine as, 533. Dedication of his troops, 534. Lands in Africa, 535.

Debuts Gallienus, 575. He received in Carthage, described, 605. He is a cunning politician, 577. He is received in Syria, 692. 6.50. He is received in Egypt, 693. He returns to Constantinople, 579. He is defeated by the fourth, 579. He promises the Christians of Italy, 878. He is defeated by the Persians, 975. He enters Rome, 390. He is besieged in Rome by the Goths, 417. This siege raised, 417, 431. Caesars of Egypt, described, 439. The Sack of Rome, 439. The Sack of Carthage, 491. Taken by Constantine, 491. His character and behavior, 421. 475. Byzantine life of his wife, 476. He is received in Africa, 480. He returns to Constantinople, 579. He is defeated by the East, to oppose Charasek king of Persia, 875. His public reception of the Persian ambassador, 975. He is defeated by the Persian army, 975. There is a general attempt to meet the siege of Rome, 975. Damascus, from destroying Rome, 975. Recovery of the city, described, 977. Is received by the Christians from the Bulgarians, 977. His disease and death, 978.

Constitution, in musical language, explained, 899.

Corinth, the capital of the state of Corinth, 655.

Cynic, or sophomore, reception of the emperor Julian there, 992.

Deivis, his character and influence in promoting the second crusade, 984. His character of the Romans, 984.

Deivis account of the camp of Ascaniipe, 76, note 41.

Deivis, account of the law school established there, 982. Is destroyed by an earthquake, 714.

Divorce, 739. Also, marriage, 1355.

Dionysius, governor of Rome, the successor of the death of the death of the, 714. In the circus, described. The granting of the Emperor Constantine, 714.

Dioscuri, or Dieron, 901.

Eusebius, 916. His character and influence in promoting the second crusade, 984. His character of the Romans, 984.

Eusebius, account of the camp of Ascaniipe, 76, note 41.

Eusebius, account of the law school established there, 982. Is destroyed by an earthquake, 714.

Eumenion, 352.

Evans, governor of Rome, the successor of the death of the death of the, 714. In the circus, described. The granting of the Emperor Constantine, 714.

Evans, death of the, 714.

Evans, the situation of the, 901.

Eusebius, his character and influence in promoting the second crusade, 984.

Eusebius account of the camp of Ascaniipe, 76, note 41.

Eusebius, account of the law school established there, 982. Is destroyed by an earthquake, 714.

Eumenion, 352.

Evans, governor of Rome, the successor of the death of the death of the, 714. In the circus, described. The granting of the Emperor Constantine, 714.

Evans, death of the, 714.

Evans, the situation of the, 901.

Eusebius, his character and influence in promoting the second crusade, 984.

Evans account of the camp of Ascaniipe, 76, note 41.

Eusebius, account of the law school established there, 982. Is destroyed by an earthquake, 714.

Eumenion, 352.

Evans, governor of Rome, the successor of the death of the death of the, 714. In the circus, described. The granting of the Emperor Constantine, 714.

Evans, death of the, 714.

Evans, the situation of the, 901.

Eusebius, his character and influence in promoting the second crusade, 984.

Evans account of the camp of Ascaniipe, 76, note 41.

Eusebius, account of the law school established there, 982. Is destroyed by an earthquake, 714.

Eumenion, 352.

Evans, governor of Rome, the successor of the death of the death of the, 714. In the circus, described. The granting of the Emperor Constantine, 714.

Evans, death of the, 714.

Evans, the situation of the, 901.

Eusebius, his character and influence in promoting the second crusade, 984.

Evans account of the camp of Ascaniipe, 76, note 41.

Eusebius, account of the law school established there, 982. Is destroyed by an earthquake, 714.

Eumenion, 352.

Evans, governor of Rome, the successor of the death of the death of the, 714. In the circus, described. The granting of the Emperor Constantine, 714.

Evans, death of the, 714.

Evans, the situation of the, 901.

Eusebius, his character and influence in promoting the second crusade, 984.

Evans account of the camp of Ascaniipe, 76, note 41.

Eusebius, account of the law school established there, 982. Is destroyed by an earthquake, 714.

Eumenion, 352.

Evans, governor of Rome, the successor of the death of the death of the, 714. In the circus, described. The granting of the Emperor Constantine, 714.

Evans, death of the, 714.

Evans, the situation of the, 901.

Eusebius, his character and influence in promoting the second crusade, 984.

Evans account of the camp of Ascaniipe, 76, note 41.

Eusebius, account of the law school established there, 982. Is destroyed by an earthquake, 714.

Eumenion, 352.

Evans, governor of Rome, the successor of the death of the death of the, 714. In the circus, described. The granting of the Emperor Constantine, 714.

Evans, death of the, 714.

Evans, the situation of the, 901.

Eusebius, his character and influence in promoting the second crusade, 984.

Evans account of the camp of Ascaniipe, 76, note 41.

Eusebius, account of the law school established there, 982. Is destroyed by an earthquake, 714.

Eumenion, 352.

Evans, governor of Rome, the successor of the death of the death of the, 714. In the circus, described. The granting of the Emperor Constantine, 714.

Evans, death of the, 714.

Evans, the situation of the, 901.

Eusebius, his character and influence in promoting the second crusade, 984.

Evans account of the camp of Ascaniipe, 76, note 41.

Eusebius, account of the law school established there, 982. Is destroyed by an earthquake, 714.

Eumenion, 352.

Evans, governor of Rome, the successor of the death of the death of the, 714. In the circus, described. The granting of the Emperor Constantine, 714.

Evans, death of the, 714.

Evans, the situation of the, 901.
of the armies under the emperor Maurice, 705. The
army is defeated by the forces of the empire of the
city of the Persians and Arabs, 717, 737. Re-
ligious war about the Thugon, 739, 740. Prospect of
conquest in the Crusades, 741. Summary review of
the five dynasties of the Greek empire, 742, 743. Tumults in
the city to oppose the destruction of images, 744. Absence of the sultan
sentiment in the Turks, 745. The French, 747. The
Byzantine, 748. The imperial palace, 749. Offices of
state, 750. Military character of the Greeks, 751. The
saints and champions of Rome expected by the
Latin church, 754. The city renewed by the Turks, 757. Account
of the Venetians, 770. Naval expedition to the
coast of Constantinople, 792. The impec-
nable of the Latins, 793. Invasion of the Greek empire, 795, 796. Review of the
princes of the Greek empire in the
empire of the Turks, 798. The
Byzantine, 799. The
Turkish empire, 800.

Condorcet, the second son of Condorcet the Great, his
education, 274. Sent to govern the Eastern provinces of
the empire, 274. Succeeds Condorcet on
the throne, 275. His reign, 275. His death, 275. Grants a
mission to the Christians, 275.

Conrad, the second son of the Empress Constance, his
education, 274. Sent to govern the Eastern provinces of
the empire, 274. Shoots Condorcet on

Conrad, the second son of the Empress Constance, his
education, 274. Sent to govern the Eastern provinces of
the empire, 274. Shoots Condorcet on

Conrad, the second son of the Empress Constance, his
education, 274. Sent to govern the Eastern provinces of
the empire, 274. Shoots Condorcet on

Conrad, the second son of the Empress Constance, his
education, 274. Sent to govern the Eastern provinces of
the empire, 274. Shoots Condorcet on

Conrad, the second son of the Empress Constance, his
education, 274. Sent to govern the Eastern provinces of
the empire, 274. Shoots Condorcet on

Conrad, the second son of the Empress Constance, his
education, 274. Sent to govern the Eastern provinces of
the empire, 274. Shoots Condorcet on

Conrad, the second son of the Empress Constance, his
education, 274. Sent to govern the Eastern provinces of
the empire, 274. Shoots Condorcet on

Conrad, the second son of the Empress Constance, his
education, 274. Sent to govern the Eastern provinces of
the empire, 274. Shoots Condorcet on

Conrad, the second son of the Empress Constance, his
education, 274. Sent to govern the Eastern provinces of
the empire, 274. Shoots Condorcet on

Conrad, the second son of the Empress Constance, his
education, 274. Sent to govern the Eastern provinces of
the empire, 274. Shoots Condorcet on
Aegidius IV., pope, his contest with the council of Hildesheim, 1167. 
Becomes a recusant of the Latin and Greek churches, 1161. 
Forma a league against the Turks, 1162. 
Revolution in the empire, arises the empire in 1173. 
Emissary, the, secret account of, 1168, note 22.
Eosseus, the aposht, his character of minus, and of the vobs, 444.
Eugene, his share of, 444.
Eumenes, the Roman emperor, 243.
Euphrates, the, 436.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
Eusebius, Bishop of Nicomedia, translated at Ephesus, 276.
with the purple on the death of Severus, 115. His death, 116. From what causes he entertained an enmity to the Christians, 114. Obtain the submission of Donatus and some of his followers, 115. Publishes an edict of toleration just before his death, 117.


Gallican, son of the emperor Valerian, is associated with him in the Imperial throne, 84. Prohibits the sound of drums on all state occasions, 80. Continues an alliance with the Alamanii, 82. Chastises his administration under the captivity of his father, 85. Nennius Claudius for his successor, 88. Favors the Christians, 87.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the extent and decline of, 295.

Gallic empire, the fate and fall of, 293.

Gallic empire, the fate and fall of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.

Gallic empire, the power and character of, 293.
Adapted by Trajan, 76. His several adoptions of successors, 256. Founded the city of Julian Capitoline on Mount Sion, 177. Reform of the laws of Rome in the pontificate of, 278.

Hannibal, battle of, between Constantine the Great and Licinius, 222. Is infamously besieged by the Goths. Battle of, between the emperor Valens and the Godows, 477.

Hastings, battle of, between the Saxons and the Normans, assizes a divine character to suppress the Mahometan faith, 1525, 1627. Revolt, the Saracen dynasty of, in Mesopotamia, 364.

Hippocrates, review of the state of Rome when he besieged 475.

Heraclea, nephew of Constantine the Great, is dignified with the title of king, 257. Provinces assigned to him for a kingdom, 350. Is cruelly destroyed by the Goths, 253.

Hippocrates, ancient Greek physician, 326.

Hipparchus, an ancient archbishop of Elgin, 35.

Hermes, son of Zeus, carries the baton into the Greek empire, 353.

Heraclitus, the heretic, compares Carthage, 317.

Hercules, the hero, and the art and sport of, introduced into Italy by the Lombards, 726.

Hercules, the hero, and the art and sport of, 477.

Herod, the king, his marriage with the parents of Jesus, 273.

Herod, the king, his marriage with the parents of Jesus, 273.

Herod, the king, his marriage with the parents of Jesus, 273.

Herod, the king, his marriage with the parents of Jesus, 273.

Herod, the king, his marriage with the parents of Jesus, 273.

Herod, the king, his marriage with the parents of Jesus, 273.

Herod, the king, his marriage with the parents of Jesus, 273.
general index.

1451

238. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

239. The death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

240. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.


242. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.


244. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

245. The death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

246. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.


248. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

249. The death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

250. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

251. The death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

252. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.


254. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

255. The death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

256. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

257. The death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

258. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

259. The death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

260. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.


262. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

263. The death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

264. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

265. The death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

266. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.


268. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

269. The death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

270. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.


272. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.


274. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.


276. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.


278. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

279. The death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

280. The empire, extinguished by the death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.

281. The death of Charlemagne, 280, 281.
Luce, Holy, martyr of the miraculous discovery of, 777.

Luce, now animated by the Roman emperors, 904. How divided by the impression, 905. Alaric, and others, divided by the impression, 906. How, by a separate partition, separated by the Roman emperors, 913.

Lucilla, the ancient apostate, 15.

Lucina, Theodore, celebrates an emperor at Nisus, 977. His character, 943.

Lucius, chief of the Greek grammarians, his character, 231.

Lucina, A.D. 1197, the division of its separation from the Greek church, 1027, 1028. Corruption and chaos of, 1145. Reunion of, with the Greek church, 1193. The great evils of, 1196.

Lucina Language, chief of the, 923.

Lucina, the right of, explained, 14.

Lucina, the right of, explained, 14.

Lucina, a review of the profession of, under the emperors, 893.


Lucina, the title of, in Colossi, account of, 283.

Lucina, character of his ecclesiastical history, 177, note 1.


The rise of, to 8, to Constantine the Great, 8. The Great, 9.

Law of Theodosius is made supreme of the East, by his master, 896. Was the first Christian law, 896.创立ed in the empire of, by Justinian, 917. The first law against the Vandals Africa, 918. Manoeuvres against and his

Law, emperor of Constantinople, 916. His policy against the Saracens, 916. Revolt of Italy, 916. Law of the emperor Constantine, 917.

Law of Theodosius is made supreme of the East, by his master, 916. Was the first Christian law, 916. Created in the empire of, by Justinian, 917. The first law against the Vandals Africa, 918. Manoeuvres against and his

Law of the emperor Constantine, 916. His policy against the Saracens, 916. Revolt of Italy, 916. Law of the emperor Constantine, 917.

Law of Theodosius is made supreme of the East, by his master, 916. Was the first Christian law, 916. Created in the empire of, by Justinian, 917. The first law against the Vandals Africa, 918. Manoeuvres against and his

Law of the emperor Constantine, 916. His policy against the Saracens, 916. Revolt of Italy, 916. Law of the emperor Constantine, 917.

Law of Theodosius is made supreme of the East, by his master, 916. Was the first Christian law, 916. Created in the empire of, by Justinian, 917. The first law against the Vandals Africa, 918. Manoeuvres against and his

Law of the emperor Constantine, 916. His policy against the Saracens, 916. Revolt of Italy, 916. Law of the emperor Constantine, 917.

Law of Theodosius is made supreme of the East, by his master, 916. Was the first Christian law, 916. Created in the empire of, by Justinian, 917. The first law against the Vandals Africa, 918. Manoeuvres against and his

Law of the emperor Constantine, 916. His policy against the Saracens, 916. Revolt of Italy, 916. Law of the emperor Constantine, 917.

Law of Theodosius is made supreme of the East, by his master, 916. Was the first Christian law, 916. Created in the empire of, by Justinian, 917. The first law against the Vandals Africa, 918. Manoeuvres against and his

Law of the emperor Constantine, 916. His policy against the Saracens, 916. Revolt of Italy, 916. Law of the emperor Constantine, 917.

Law of Theodosius is made supreme of the East, by his master, 916. Was the first Christian law, 916. Created in the empire of, by Justinian, 917. The first law against the Vandals Africa, 918. Manoeuvres against and his

Law of the emperor Constantine, 916. His policy against the Saracens, 916. Revolt of Italy, 916. Law of the emperor Constantine, 917.

Law of Theodosius is made supreme of the East, by his master, 916. Was the first Christian law, 916. Created in the empire of, by Justinian, 917. The first law against the Vandals Africa, 918. Manoeuvres against and his

Law of the emperor Constantine, 916. His policy against the Saracens, 916. Revolt of Italy, 916. Law of the emperor Constantine, 917.

Law of Theodosius is made supreme of the East, by his master, 916. Was the first Christian law, 916. Created in the empire of, by Justinian, 917. The first law against the Vandals Africa, 918. Manoeuvres against and his

Law of the emperor Constantine, 916. His policy against the Saracens, 916. Revolt of Italy, 916. Law of the emperor Constantine, 917.
Mausolus of Palmyra assassinated his uncle Odenathus, 112.

Mausolus, his situation, 9.

Mausolus, the worship of, in Persia, reformed by Artaxerxes, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.

Mausolus, the worship of, by the Persians, 33.
Magi, primitive, their method of training their conquered enemies, 528. Relay and ceremonies of Kings, 528.

1111. Companions of his successors, 1114—1117. ‘See

‘Thermusius, Magna Grecia, the city of; surprised by the Macedonians, Magnes, the Egyptian, his treaty with the Satraps, Antiochus, 502.

Monarchy, the city of, 525. Hierarchical, voluminous in theory, but not in practice, 527. The peculiar objects of cruelty and of another sort, 528.

Monastic institutions, the views of, even by the primitive Christians, 524. Origen, progress, and consequences of, 527. The church, 528.

Money, the standard and computation of, under Constantine, 525. The Great, and his successors, 527, note 190.


Mount Nebo, its situation, and description by the Sarmatians, 527. Their ideas and characteristics, 527, 529. Their site, 527. Their unusual largest, 528. Their elevation, 527. Their situation, 528. Their devotion and veneration, 527. The divine intervention in their division and conquest, and Ammonita, 526. Suppression of, at Constantinople, by Constantine V., 526.

Mount Tabor, note of the seat of, 529.

Mount Athos controversy, amount of, 528.

Mount Athos, his description of the military government of the Roman empire, 52. His opinion that his degree of luxury in a state are measured by taxation, cons- 

Macedon, emporium of the east, 704.

Macedonians, controversy amount of, 704.

Macedonians, his description of the military government of the Roman empire, 52. His opinion that his degree of luxury in a state are measured by taxation, con- 

Macedon, emporium of the east, 704.

Macedonians, controversy amount of, 704.

Macedonians, his description of the military government of the Roman empire, 52. His opinion that his degree of luxury in a state are measured by taxation, con- 

Macedon, emporium of the east, 704.

Macedonians, controversy amount of, 704.

Macedonians, his description of the military government of the Roman empire, 52. His opinion that his degree of luxury in a state are measured by taxation, con-
GENERAL INDEX.

Ceres, in the deserts of Egypt, described, 348, note 34. Three priests under this name printed out, 273, note 24.

Ceresia, passive, theory and practice of the Christian doctrine, 279, 300.

Cassida, Egyptian, the purpose of their vocation, 379, 380. Caxthas, church of, 305, note 102.

Catholic, church of, 261, 301.

Catholic, church of the Orient described, 261, 304, 305.

Catholic, church of the Orient, the division among the Christians, 310. Theological system of the emperor Julian, 323. General view of the presbytery or bishopric, 322, 323. Apan of this, 323, 324. This church was subject to the emperor in Constantinople, 323, 324. Apan was preeminent among the bishops of Constantinople, 323.

Catholic, church of the Orient, the division among the Christians, 310. Theological system of the emperor Julian, 323. General view of the presbytery or bishopric, 322, 323. Apan of this, 323, 324. This church was subject to the emperor in Constantinople, 323, 324. Apan was preeminent among the bishops of Constantinople, 323.

Catholic, church of the Orient, the division among the Christians, 310. Theological system of the emperor Julian, 323. General view of the presbytery or bishopric, 322, 323. Apan of this, 323, 324. This church was subject to the emperor in Constantinople, 323, 324. Apan was preeminent among the bishops of Constantinople, 323.

Catholic, church of the Orient, the division among the Christians, 310. Theological system of the emperor Julian, 323. General view of the presbytery or bishopric, 322, 323. Apan of this, 323, 324. This church was subject to the emperor in Constantinople, 323, 324. Apan was preeminent among the bishops of Constantinople, 323.

Catholic, church of the Orient, the division among the Christians, 310. Theological system of the emperor Julian, 323. General view of the presbytery or bishopric, 322, 323. Apan of this, 323, 324. This church was subject to the emperor in Constantinople, 323, 324. Apan was preeminent among the bishops of Constantinople, 323.

Catholic, church of the Orient, the division among the Christians, 310. Theological system of the emperor Julian, 323. General view of the presbytery or bishopric, 322, 323. Apan of this, 323, 324. This church was subject to the emperor in Constantinople, 323, 324. Apan was preeminent among the bishops of Constantinople, 323.
Puconen, the Plutonic philosopher of Athens, his supposition, 435, 492.
Puconen, his sons, Arsen, and Africa, their office, 156.
Puconen, wife of the Greek emperor Michael I., her marital inclinations, 614.
Puconen, his history, and revolt against Valens, emperor of the East, 261. It occurred, and led to death, 261.
Puconen, the historian, his account of the testament of the emperor Constantine, 327. His account of the division of Britain, 329, 615. Character of his Histories, 615. Accepts theoute of his Histories, 615. His defence of the texts of his Histories, 592, 615. His account of the defection of the African emperors, 327.
Purcell, origin of the sect of, in the Roman civil law, 699.
Pusias, his extraordinary character, and his rebellion against Phocas in 517.
Pusias, a prominent figure in ancient history, a philosophical revolutionist.
Pusias, under what circumstances the Roman law enforced the fulfillment of, 723.
Pusias, master-general of the infantry under Theodosius, 379, 380.
Pusias, personal, the origin of, 729. How ascertained by the Roman laws, 733, 735. Testimonial deposition, 735, 736. How introduced, 736.
Pusias, by which the Pagan philosophers, 752, 764.
Pusias, described, 755.
Puca, prince of Alexandria, his martial eccentricity, 699. His violent death, 699.
Puca, his resistance of oppression, not consistent with the practice of the primitive Christians, 379, 597. Proclamation of his master to that of the Caliph, in France, at the beginning of the last century, 728, note 75. Estimate of their return or Pusias, 675.
Pusias, importance, how that of little in the Greek empire, 655.
Pusias, the book of, why not likely to be the production of king Solomon, 668, note 22.
Pusias, a man of the same description as, 8-21, 18. Distinction between Latin and Greek provinces, 14, 18.
Pusias, divided between the emperor and the senate, 24, 25.
Puca, his character, how received from, 32. The number and government after the fall of the empire was removed to Constantinople, 676.
Puca, an invention of the Goths, 99.
Puca, sister of the emperor Theodosius the Younger, her character and administration, 315. His leisure to her affairs, 315. How received from, 32.
Puca, consecrated emperor of the East, on the death of Theodosius, 597. Her death and succession, 655.
Pusias, influence of the Roman laws, 577.
Puca, the royal value of, among the ancients, far surpassed by the modern discovery of vocalism, 495, 646.
Puca, a figure in the history of the Roman empire, 607.
Puca, a historic review of this office, 587.
Puca, criminal, how exercised under the Roman emperor, 597.
Pusias, a political figure in the history of the Roman empire, 315, 380.
Puca, his character, Maximus and Constantin, their history, 29, 34.
Puca, an authority of the emperor Claudius, his inefficient effort to suppress the civil wars, 153.
Puca, his attempt to decide the age in which he wrote, 78, note 96.
Puca, the effect of that word upon the emperor, 95, note 77.
Puca, the emperor to fulfil his matricidual obligations by a British admission, 429.
Puca, the result of, how observed by the Turks, 372.
Puca, the bishop of the Alaman, his unwarranted attack of Maximus, 315.
Puca, extent of the monarchy, 739. The ancient city of, described, 315. The emperor Honorius fixe his residence there, 315. Visit to by the envoys of Justin, 616. From the Goths, 475, 675. Invasion of, by a Greek fleet, 566. It taken by the Lombards, and repossessed by the end of the country, 616. From the Lombards, 616. The envoys of, honoured by Persia on the pope, 564.
Puca, the emperor to fulfill his matricidual obligations by a British admission, 429.
Puca, the result of, how observed by the Turks, 372.
Puca, the bishop of the Alaman, his unwarranted attack of Maximus, 315.
Puca, extent of the monarchy, 739. The ancient city of, described, 315. The emperor Honorius fixe his residence there, 315. Visit to by the envoys of Justin, 616. From the Goths, 475, 675. Invasion of, by a Greek fleet, 566. It taken by the Lombards, and repossessed by the end of the country, 616. From the Lombards, 616. The envoys of, honoured by Persia on the pope, 564.
Puca, the emperor to fulfill his matricidual obligations by a British admission, 429.
Puca, the result of, how observed by the Turks, 372.
Puca, the bishop of the Alaman, his unwarranted attack of Maximus, 315.
Puca, extent of the monarchy, 739. The ancient city of, described, 315. The emperor Honorius fixe his residence there, 315. Visit to by the envoys of Justin, 616. From the Goths, 475, 675. Invasion of, by a Greek fleet, 566. It taken by the Lombards, and repossessed by the end of the country, 616. From the Lombards, 616. The envoys of, honoured by Persia on the pope, 564.
GENERAL INDEX.
prosecution of the Holy Land, 909. Exicts the people to a crusade, at the council of Liege, 910.

Urban VI, pope, removes the papal court from Avignon to Rome, 1121.

Urban VI, pope, his disputed election, 1121.

Urban, king of France, his interdict on the province of Nantes, 970. Urban, a city in the Carpathian mountains, 721.

Urban, a city in the Savoyan state, reduced by the crusaders for the republic of Venice, 1008.

Urban, history of the Roman family of, 1009.

Urban, treasurer of the empire under Constantine, 320. Originally part of the political organization of Charlemagne, 867.

Urban, see Inland of Hungary.

W

Walachians, the present, descendants of the Roman

Walachia is settled by British refugees from Saxon tyranny, 607, 608. The bonds of, 608.

Wade is chosen king of the Goths, 203. He restores the

Waddesdon, history of the town, 625.

Wadsley, see Dunsley.

Wager, death of, 209.

Wages of the Lower orders, their increase in the times of

Waterloo, battle of, 1796.

Waterford, see Cork.

Waterloo, battle of, between the united Amherst II. and

Wavel, see Avignon.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, history of the town, 640.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.

Waverley, see Berwick.
Zeno, emperor of the East, receives a surrender of the
Imperial government of the Western empire, from the
armies of Licinius, 225. The circumstances of his life and
reign, 613. His handicap, 764.
Zeniya, queen of Palmyra, her character and history,
114–125.
Zorzi, the empire of the Mogul and Tartar, paralld
between him and Attila, king of the Huns, 233. His
proposal for improving his conquests in China, 132.
His siege and early military exploits, 1132. His levee,
and His invasion of China, 133. Of Carinus, Trans-
occian, and Persia, 633. His death, 1114.
Zeno, a noble formation, is made king of that nation by
the emperor Constantius, 267.
Zahra, the Sasanian, his bravery in the invasion of Afra.
1114.
Zen, first the emperor, becomes the fourth wife of the
emperor Lao (the philosopher), 220.
Zoe, wife of Romanus III., and Michael IV. emperors,
322–323.
Zosimus, the Persian prophet, his high antiquity, 73,
note 2. Abjuration of his Rosary, 73. Province for
the encouragement of agriculture, 74. Augustus Dives
in the pox, 77, note 15.
Zosimus, his representation of the suppression of the hard
construction, 242.
Zoë, the Byzantine, his conquests of the Eastern
108, 272.
Zorick, brief history of that city, 118.
"A book that is shut is but a block"

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY

GOVT. OF INDIA
Department of Archaeology
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book clean and moving.